



## THE MINDE OF THE FRONT.

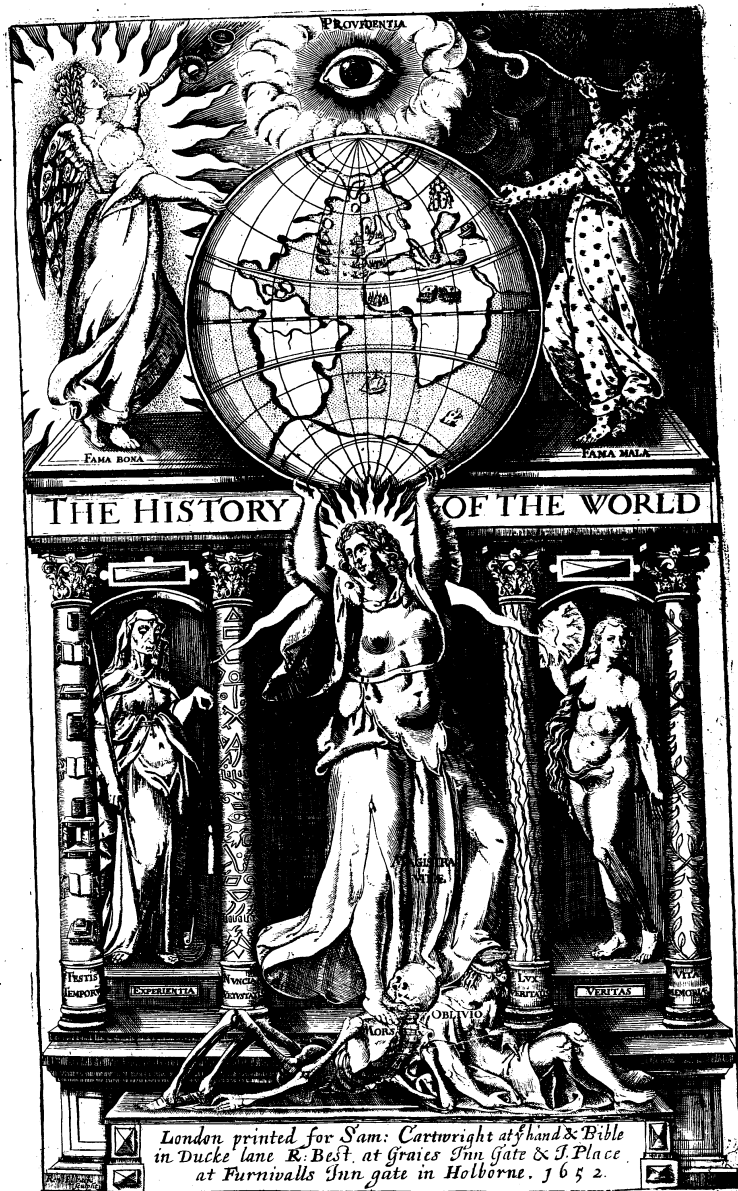
**F**rom Death and darke Oblivion (near the same)  
The Mistresse of Mans life, grave HISTORIE,  
Raising the VVorld to good, or evill FAME,  
Doth vindicate it to ETERNITIE.

High PROVIDENCE would so: that nor the Good  
Might be defrauded, nor the Great secur'd,  
But both might know their wayes are understood,  
And the reward and punishment assur'd.

This makes, that lighted by the beame hand  
Of TRUTH, which searcheth the most hidden springs,  
And guided by EXPERIENCE, whose straight VVand  
Doth mete, whose Line doth sound the depth of things;

Shee cheerfully supporteth what shee reares:  
Assisted by no strengths, but are her owne.  
Some note of which each varied Pillar beares,  
By which, as proper Titles, shee is knowne,

Times Witnesse, Herald of Antiquitie,  
The Light of Truth, & Life of Memory.



London printed for Sam: Cartwright at hand & Bible  
in Ducke lane R. Best. at Graies Inn Gate & J. Place  
at Furnivalls Inn gate in Holborne. 1652.



# THE HISTORIE OF THE WORLD.

IN FIVE BOOKES.

- 1 **T**reating of the Beginning and first Ages of the same, from the Creation unto Abraham.
- 2 Of the Times from the Birth of Abraham to the destruction of the Temple of Salomon.
- 3 From the destruction of Jerusalem, to the time of Philip of Macedon.
- 4 From the Raigne of Philip of Macedon, to the establishing of that Kingdome in the Race of Antigonus.
- 5 From the settled rule of Alexanders Successors in the East, untill the Romans (prevailing over all) made Conquest of Asia and Macedon.

By Sir WALTER RALEGH, Knight.



The true and lively portraiture  
of the Honourable and learned Knight  
Sir Walter Raleigh.





## THE PREFACE.

**H**ow unfit and how unworthy a choice I have made of my self, to undertake a work of this mixture ; mine own reason, though exceeding weak, hath sufficiently resolved me. For had it been gotten then with my first dawn of day, when the light of common knowledge began to open it self to my younger yeers, and before any wound received, either from Fortune or Time : I might yet well have doubted that the darknesse of Age and Death would have covered over both It and mee, long before the performance. For, beginning with the Creation, I have proceeded with the History of the World ; and lastly purposed (some few sallies excepted) to confine my Discourse, with this our renowned Island of Great Britain. I confesse that it had better sorted with my disability, the better part of whose times are run out in other travells, to have set together (as I could) the unjoynted and scattered frame of our English affaires, than of the universall : in whom, had there been no other defect (who am all defect) than the time of the day, it were enough ; the day of a tempestuous life, drawn on to the very evening ere I began. But those inmost and soule-piercing wounds, which are ever aking while uncured : with the desire to satisfie those few friends, which I have tried by the fire of Adversity, the former enforcing, the later perswading ; have caused me to make my thoughts legible, and my self the subject of every opinion ; wise or weak.

To the World I present them, to which I am nothing indebted : neither have others that were, (Fortune changing) sped much better in any age. For Prosperity and Adversity have evermore tyed and untied vulgar affections. And as we see it in experience, That dogs do alwayes bark at those they know not, and that it is their nature to accompany one another in those clamours : so it is with the inconsiderate multitude ; who wanting that vertue which we call Honesty in all men, and that especiall gift of G O D, which we call Charity in Christian men ; condemn without hearing, and wound without offence given : led thereunto by uncertain report onely ; which His Majesty truly acknowledgeth for the Author of all lies. Blame no man (saith Siracides) before thou have enquired the matter : understand first, and then reforme righteously. Rumor, *res sine teste, sine iudice, maligna, fallax* ; Rumour is without witnesse, without judge, malicious and deceivable. This vanity of vulgar opinion it was, that gave Saint Augustine Argument to affirm, That he feared the praise of good men, and detested that of the evill. And herein no man hath given a better rule, than this of Seneca ; *Conscientiæ satisfaciamus : nihil in famam laboremus, sequatur vel mala, dum bene merearis* ; Let us satisfie our own consciences, and not trouble our selves

*Damonolog.  
l.3.c.1.  
Ecclij.11.7.*

*Laudari à bonis  
timetis, et amari  
à malis detestor.  
Sen. de iras. 3.  
c.22.*



## The Preface.

with fame : be it never so ill, it is to be despised, so we deserve well.

For my self, if I have in any thing served my Country, and prized it before my private : the generall acceptation can yield me no other profit at this time, than doth a fair sun-shine day to a Sea-man after shipwreck; and the contrary no other harm, than an outrageous tempest after the Port attained. I know that I lost the love of many, for my fidelity towards Her, whom I must still honour in the dust; though further than the defence of her excellent person, I never persecuted any man. Of those that did it, and by what device they did it, He that is the Supreme Judge of all the world, hath taken the accompt : so as for this kinde of suffering, I must say with Seneca, Mala opinio, bene parata, delectat.

As for other men; if there be any that have made themselves Fathers of that faun, which hath been begotten for them: I can neither envie at such their purchased glory, nor much lament mine own misap in that kinde; but content my self to say with Virgil, Sic vos non vobis, in many particulars. To labour other satisfaction, were an effect of phrenzie, not of hope, seeing it is not Truth, but Opinion, that can travell the World without a pass-port. For were it otherwise; and were there not as many internall forms of the minde, as there are externall figures of men; there were then some possibility to persuade by the mouth of one Advocate, even Equity alone.

But such is the multiplying and extensive vertue of dead Earth, and of that breath-giving life which God hath cast upon slime and dust, as that among those that were, of whom we reade and hear; and among those that are, whom we see and converse with; every one hath received a severall picture of face, and every one a divers picture of minde; every one a form apart, every one a fancy and cogitation differing: there being nothing wherein Nature so much triumpheth as in dissimilitude. From whence it cometh that there is found so great diversity of opinions; so strong a contrariety of inclinations; so many naturall and unnaturall; wise, foolish, manly, and childish affections and passions in mortall men. For it is not the visible fashion and shape of plants, and of reasonable Creatures, that makes the difference of working in the one, and of condition in the other; but the form internall.

And though it hath pleased God to reserve the Art of reading mens thoughts to himself: yet, as the fruit tells the name of the Tree; so do the outward works of men (so far as their cogitations are acted) give us whereof to ghesse at the rest. Nay, it were not hard to expresse the one by the other, very neer the life, did not craft in many, fear in the most, and the Worlds love in all, teach every capacity, according to the compassse it hath, to qualifie and maske over their inward deformities for a time. Though it be also true, Nemo potest diu personam ferre fidam; cito in naturam suam residunt, quibus veritas non subest: No man can long continue masked in a counterfeited behaviour: the things that are forced for pretences, having no ground of truth, cannot long dissemble their own natures. Neither can any man (saith Plutarch) so change himself, but that his heart may be sometimes seen at his tongues end.

In this great discord and dissimilitude of reasonable Creatures; if we direct our selves to the Multitude; Omnis honesti rei malus iudex est vulgus: The common people are evill Judges of honest things, and whose Wisdome (saith Ecclesiastes) is to be despised: if to the better sort; every understanding bath

## The Preface.

bath a peculiar judgement, by which it both censureth other men, and valueth it self. And therefore unto me it will not seem strange, though I finde these my worthlesse papers torn with Rats: seeing the stobthull Censurers of all ages have not spared to taxe the Reverend Fathers of the Church, with Ambition, the severest men to themselves, with Hypocrisie; the greatest lovers of Justice, with Popularity; and those of the truest Valour and Fortitude, with Vain-glory. But of these natures which lie in wait to finde fault, and to turn good into evill, seeing Solomon complained long since: and that the very age of the world renders it every day after other more malicious; I must leave the professors to their easie wayes of reprehension, than which there is nothing of more facility.

To me it belongs in the first part of this Preface, following the common and approved custome of those, who have left the memories of time past to after-ages; to give, as neer as I can, the same right to History which they have done. Yet seeing therein I should but borrow other mens words; I will not trouble the Reader with the repetition. True it is that among many other benefits, for which it hath been honoured; in this one it triumpheth over all humane knowledge, That it hath given us life in our understanding, since the world it self had life and beginning, even to this day: yea; it hath triumphed over time, which besides it nothing but eternity hath triumphed over: for it hath carried our knowledge over the vast and devouring space of many thousands of yeers, and given so fair and piercing eyes to our mind; that we plainly behold living now (as if we had lived then) that great world, Magni Dei lapsiens opus, The wise work (saith Hermes) of a great God, as it was then, when but new to it self. By it (I say) it is, that we live in the very time when it was created: we behold how it was governed: how it was covered with waters, and again re-peopled: How Kings and Kingdoms have flourished and fallen, and for what vertue and piety God made prosperous; and for what vice and deformity he made wretched, both the one and the other. And it is not the least debt which we owe unto History, that it hath made us acquainted with our dead Ancestors; and, out of the depth and darknesse of the earth, delivered us their memory and fame. In a word, we may gather out of History a policy no lesse wise than eternall; by the comparison and application of other mens fore-passed miseries with our own like errors and ill deservings. But it is neither of Examples the most lively instruction, nor the words of the wisest men, nor the terrour of future torments, that hath yet so wrought in our blinde and stupified mindes, as to make us remember, That the infinite eye and wisdom of God doth pierce thorow all our pretences, as to make us remember, That the justice of God doth require none other accuser, than our own consciences: which neither the false beauty of our apparent actions, nor all the formality, which (to pacifie the opinions of men) we put on; can in any, or the least kinde, cover from his knowledge. And so much did that beathen wisdome confesse, no way as yet qualified by the knowledge of a true God. If any (saith Euripides) having in his life committed wickednesse, think he can hide it from the everlasting gods, he thinks not well.

To repeat GODS judgements in particular, upon those of all degrees, which have played with his mercies; would require a volume apart: for the Sea of examples bath no bottom. The marks, set on private men, are with their bodies cast into the earth; and their fortunes, written onely in the memories of those that lived with them: so as they who succeed, and have not seen the fall of others,

## The Preface.

doe not fear their own faults. GODS judgements upon the greater and greatest have been left to posterity; first, by those happy bands which the holy Ghost hath guided; and secondly, by their vertue, who have gathered the acts and ends of men mighty and remarkable in the world. Now to point far off, and to speak of the conversion of Angels into Devils, for Ambition: Or of the greatest and most glorious Kings, who have gnawed the grasse of the earth with beasts for pride and ingratitude towards GOD: Or of that wise working of Pharaoh, when he slew the Infants of Israel, ere they had recovered their Cradles: Or of the policy of Jezabel, in covering the murder of Naboth by a triall of the Elders, according to the law, with many thousands of the like: what were it other, than to make an hopelesse prooffe, that far-off examples would not be left to the same far-off respects, as heretofore? For who hath not observed, what labour, practice, perill, bloodshed, and cruelty, the Kings and Princes of the world have undergone, exercised, taken on them, and committed; to make themselves and their issues masters of the world? And yet hath Babylon, Persia, Egypt, Syria, Macedon, Carthage, Rome, and the rest, no fruit, no flower, grasse, nor leaf, springing upon the face of the earth, of those seeds: No, their very roots and ruines doe hardly remain. Omnia quæ manu hominum facta sunt, vel manu hominum evertuntur, vel stando & durando deficiunt: All that the hand of man can make, is either overturned by the hand of man, or at length by standing and continuing consumed. The reasons of whose ruines, are diversly given by those that ground their opinions on second causes. All Kingdomes and States have fallen (say the Politicians) by outward and forraign force, or by inward negligence and dissention, or by a third cause arising from both. Others observe, That the greatest have sunk down under their own weight: of which Livie both a touch: eo crevit, ut magnitudine laboret sua: Others, That the divine Providence (which Cratippus objected to Pompey) hath set down the date and period of every Estate, before their first foundation and erection. But hercof I will give my self a day over to resolve.

For seeing the first books of the following story, have undertaken the discourse of the first Kings and Kingdomes: and that it is impossible for the short life of a Preface to trawell after, and over-take far-off Antiquity, and to judge of it; I will, for the present, examine what profit hath been gathered by our own Kings, and their Neighbour Princes: who having beheld, both in divine and humane letters, the successe of infidelity, injustice, and cruelty; have (notwithstanding) planted after the same pattern.

True it is, that the judgements of all men are not agreeable; nor (which is more strange) the affection of any one man stirred up alike with examples of like nature: But every one is touched most with that which most neerly seemeth to touch his own private; Or otherwise best suited with his apprehension. But the judgements of GOD are for ever unchangeable; neither is he wearied by the long processe of time, and now to give his blessing in one age, to that which he hath cursed in another. Wherefore those that are wise, or whose wisdom of it be not great, yet is true and well grounded; will be able to discern the bitter fruits of irreligious policy, as well among those examples that are found in ages removed far from the present, as in those of later times. And that it may no lesse appear

## The Preface.

appear by evident prooffe, than by asseveration, That ill doing hath alwayes been attended with ill successe; I will here, by way of Preface, run over some examples, which the work ensuing hath not reached.

Among our Kings of the Norman race, we have no sooner passed over the violence of the Norman Conquest, than we encounter with a singular and most remarkable example of Gods Justice, upon the children of Henry the first. For that King, when both by force, craft and cruelty, he had dispossessed, over-reach, and lastly made blind: and destroyed his elder brother Robert Duke of Normandy, to make his own sons Lords of this Land: GOD cast them all, Male and Female, Nephews and Nieces (Maud excepted) into the bottome of the Sea, with above a hundred and fifty others that attended them; whereof a great many were Noble, and of the King dearly beloved.

To passe over the rest, till we come to Edward the second; it is certain, that after the murder of that King, the issue of blood then made, though it had some times of stay and stopping, did again break out, and that so often and in such abundance, as all our Princes of the Masculine race (very few excepted) died of the same disease. And although the young years of Edward the third, made his knowledge of that horrible fact no more than suspicions: yet in that he afterwards caused his own Uncle the Earle of Kent to die, for no other offence than the desire of his brothers redemption, whom the Earle as then supposed to be living; the King making that to be treason in his Uncle, which was indeed treason in himself, (had his Uncles intelligence been true) this I say made it manifest, that he was not ignorant of what had past, nor greatly desirous to have had it otherwise; though he caused Mortimer to die for the same.

This cruelty the secret and unsearchable judgement of GOD revenged on the Grand-child of Edward the third: and so it fell out, even to the last of that line, that in the second or third descent they were all buried under the ruines of those buildings, of which the Mortar had been tempered with innocent blood. For Richard the second, who saw both his Treasurers, his Chancellour, and his Steward, with divers others of his Counsellors, some of them slaughtered by the people, others in his absence executed by his enemies; yet he alwayes took himself for over-wise, to be taught by examples. The Earles of Huntingdon and Kent, Montagu and Spencer, who thought themselves as great Politicians in those dayes, as others have done in these: hoping to please the King, and to secure themselves by the murder of Gloucester; died soon after, with many other: their adherents, by the like violent hands; and far more shamefully than did than Duke. And as for the King himself (who in regard of many deeds, unworthy of his Greatnesse, cannot be excused, as the disavowing himself by breach of Faith, Characters, Pardons and Patents: ) He was in the prime of his youth deposed, and murdered by his Cousin-Germane and Vassall, Henry of Lancaster, afterwards Henry the fourth.

This King, whose Title was weak, and his obtaining the Crown traiterous: who brake faith with the Lords at his Landing, protesting to intend onely the recovery of his proper inheritance, brake faith with Richard himself; and brake faith with all the Kingdome in Parliament, to whom he swore that the deposed King should live. After that he had enjoyed this Realme some few years, and in that time had been set upon on all sides by his Subjects, and never free from

## The Preface.

conspiracies and rebellions : he saw (if souls immortall see and discern any things after the bodies death) his Grand-child Henry the sixth, and his son the Prince, suddenly and without mercy, murdered; the possession of the Crown (for which he had caused so much blood to be poured out) transferred from his race, and by the Issues of his enemies worn and enjoy'd: enemies, whom by his own practice he supposed that he had left no lesse powerlesse, than the succession of the Kingdome questionlesse, by entailing the same upon his own Issues by Parliament. And out of doubt, humane reason could have judg'd no otherwise, but that these cautious provisions of the father, seconded by the valour and signall victories of his son Henry the sixth, had buried the hopes of every Competitor, under the despaire of all reconquest and recovery. I say, that humane reason might so have judg'd, were not this passage of Causabon also true; quæ Adamantinis credebantur radicibus esse fundatæ; A day, an hour, a moment is enough to overturn the things that seemed to have been founded and rooted in Adamant.

Now for Henry the sixth, upon whom the great storm of his Grand-fathers grievous faults fell, as it formerly had done upon Richard the Grand-child of Edward: although he was generally esteemed for a gentle and innocent Prince, yet as he refused the daughter of Armagnac, of the House of Navarre, the greatest of the Princes of France, to whom he was affianced (by which match he might have defended his inheritance in France) and married the daughter of Anjou, (by which he lost all that he had in France) so in condescending to the unworthy death of his Uncle of Gloucester, the main and strong Pillar of the House of Lancaster; He drew on himself and his Kingdome the greatest joynt-losse and dishonour, that ever it sustained since the Norman Conquest. Of whom it may truly be said which a Counsellor of his own spake of Henry the third of France, Qu'il estoit une fort gentile Prince; mais son reigné est advenu en une fort mauvais temps: That he was a very gentle Prince; but his reign happened in a very unfortunate season.

It is true that Buckingham and Suffolk were the practisers and contrivers of the Dukes death: Buckingham and Suffolk, because the Duke gave instructions to their authority, which otherwise under the Queen had been absolute; the Queen in respect of her personall wound, sprætæque injuria formæ, because Gloucester dissuaded her marriage. But the fruit was answerable to the seed; the success to the counsell. For after the cutting down of Gloucester, York grew up so fast, as he dared to dispute his right both by arguments and arms; in which quarrell, Suffolk and Buckingham, with the greatest number of their adherents, were dissolved. And although for his breach of Oath by Sacrament, it pleased God to strike down York: yet his son the Earle of March, following the plain path which his father had troden out, despoiled Henry the father, and Edward the son, both of their lives and Kingdome. And what was the end now of that politick Lady the Queen, other than this, That she lived to behold the wretched ends of all her partakers: that she lived to look on, while her husband the King, and her only son the Prince, were hewn in sunder; while the Crown was set on his head that did it? She lived to see her self despoiled of her estate, and of her moveables: and lastly, her father, by rendring up to the Crown of France, the Earldome of Provence, and other places, for the payment of 50000. crowns for her Ransome, to become a stark

Beggar.

## The Preface.

Beggar. And this was the end of that subtlety, which Siracides calleth fine; but unrighteous: for other fruit hath it never yeelded since the world was. Sirach. 19.

And now it came to Edward the fourths turn (though after many difficulties) to triumph. For all the plants of Lancaster were rooted up, one onely Earl of Richmond excepted: whom also he had once bought of the Duke of Britain, but could not hold him. And yet was not this of Edward such a Plantation, as could any way promise it self stability. For this Edward the King (to omit more than many of his other cruelties) beheld and allowed the slaughter which Gloucester, Dorset, Hastings, and others, made of Edward the Prince in his own presence: of which tragicall Actiōs, there was not one that escaped the judgement of GOD in the same kinde. And he, which (besides the execution of his brother Clarence, for none other offence than he himself had formed in his own imagination) instructed Gloucester to kill Henry the sixth, his Predecessor; taught him also by the same art to kill his own sons and successors, Edward and Richard. For those Kings which have sold the blood of others at a low rate; have but made the market for their own enemies, to buy of theirs at the same price.

To Edward the fourth succeeded Richard the third, the greatest Master in mischief of all that fore-went him: who although, for the necessity of his Tragedy, he had more parts to play, and more to perform in his own person, than all the rest; yet he so well fitted every affection that plaid with him, as if each of them had but acted his own interest. For he wrought so cunningly upon the affections of Hastings and Buckingham, enemies to the Queen, and to all her kined, as he easily allured them to condescend, that Rivers and Grey, the Kings Maternall Uncle and half brother, should (for the first) be severed from him: secondly, he wrought their consent to have them imprisoned: and lastly (for the avoiding of future inconvenience) to have their heads severed from their bodies. And having now brought those his chief instruments to exercise that common precept which the Devill hath written upon every post, namely, To depresse those whom they had grieved, and to destroy those whom they had deprest; He urged that argument so far and so forcibly; as nothing but the death of the young King himself, and of his brother, could fashion the conclusion. For he caused it to be hammered into Buckinghams head, That, whensoever the King or his Brother, should have able yeers to exercise their power, they would take a most severe revenge of that curelesse wrong offered to their Uncle and Brother, Rivers and Grey. Sceleris sceleribus tuenda. Sen. de clem.

But this was not his manner of reasoning with Hastings, whose fidelity to his Masters Sons was without suspect: and yet the Devill, who never dissuades by impossibility, taught him to try him. And so he did. But when he found by Catesby, who founded him, that he was not fordable, he first resolved to kill him sitting in councell: wherein having failed with his sword, he set the Hangman upon him, with a weapon of more weight. And because nothing else could move his appetite, he caused his head to be stricken off, before he eat his dinner. A greater judgement of God, than this upon Hastings, I have never observed in any story. For the self same day that the Earle Rivers, Grey, and others, were (without triall of law, or offence given) by Hastings advice executed at Pomfret: I say Hastings himself in the same day, and (as I take it) in the same houre, in the same lawlesse manner had his head stricken off in the Tower of London. But Buckingham lived a while longer; and with an eloquent oration perswaded

the

the Londoners to elect Richard for their King. And having received the Earldome of Hereford for reward, besides the high hope of marrying his daughter to the Kings only son; after many grievous vexations of minde, and unfortunate attempts; being in the end betrayed and delivered up by his trustiest servant; he had his head severed from his body at Salisbury, without the trouble of any of his Peers. And what successe had Richard himself after all these mischieves and murders, policies, and counter-policies, to Christian Religion: and after such time as with a most mercilesse hand he had pressed out the breath of his Nephews and Naturall Lords, other than the prosperity of so short a life, as it took end, ere himself could well look over and discern it? the great out-cry of innocent blood, obtained at GODS hands the effusion of his; who became a spectacle of shame and dishonour, both to his friends and enemies.

This cruell King, Henry the seventh cut off; and was therein (no doubt) the immediate instrument of Gods Justice. A polick Prince he was, if ever there were any, who by the engine of his wisdom, beat down and overturned as many strong oppositions both before and after he wore the Crown, as ever King of England did: I say by his wisdom, because as he ever left the reins of his affections in the hands of his profit, so he alwayes weighed his undertakings by his abilities, leaving nothing more to hazard than so much as cannot be denied it in all humane actions. He had well observed the proceedings of Loys the eleventh, whom he followed in all that was royall or royall-like; but he was far more just; and begun not their processes whom he hated or feared by the execution, as Loys did.

He could never endure any mediation in rewarding his servants, and therein exceeding wise; for whatsoever himself gave, he himself received back the thanks, and the love, knowing it well that the affections of men (purchased by nothing so readily as by benefits) were trains that better became great Kings, than great subjects. On the contrary, in whatsoever he grieved his subjects, he wisely put it off on those, that he found fit ministers for such actions. Howsoever the taking off of Stanleys head, who set the Crown on his, and the death of the young Earl of Warwick, son to George Duke of Clarence, shews, as the successe also did, that he beld somewhat of the errors of his Ancestors; for his possession in the first line ended in his grand-children, as that of Edward the third, and Henry the fourth had done.

Now for King Henry the eighth, if all the pictures & patterns of a mercilesse Prince were lost in the World, they might all again be painted to the life, out of the story of this King. For how many servants did he advance in haste (but for what vertue no man could suspect) and with the change of his fancy ruined again; no man knowing for what offence? To how many others of more desert gave he abundant flowers from whence to gather hony, and in the end of harvest burnt them in the Hives? How many wives did he cut off, and cast off, as his fancy and affection changed? How many Princes of the blood (whereof some of them for age could hardly cawle towards the block) with a world of others of all degrees (of whom our common Chronicles have kept the account) did he execute? yea, in his very death-bed, and when he was at the point to have given his account to GOD for the abundance of blood already spilt: He imprisoned the Duke of Norfolk the father; and executed the Earle of Surrey the son; the one, whose deserving he knew not how to value, having never omitted any thing that concerned his own honour,

now, and the Kings service; the other never having committed any thing worthy of his least displeasure: the one exceeding valiant and advised; the other no lesse valiant than learned, & of excellent hope. But besides the sorrows which he heaped upon the Fatherlesse and Widows at home: and besides the vain enterprises abroad, wherein it is thought that he consumed more treasure, than all our victorious Kings did in their severall Conquests: what causelesse and cruell wars did he make upon his own Nephew King James the fifth? What Laws and Wills did he devise to establish this Kingdom in his own Issues? using his sharpest weapons to cut off, and cut down those branches, which sprang from the same root that himself did. And in the end (notwithstanding these his so many irreligious provisions) it pleased God to take away all his own, without increase; though, for themselves in their severall kindes, all Princes of eminent vertue. For these words of Samuel to Agag King of the Amalekites, have been verified upon many others: As thy sword hath made other women childlesse, to shall thy mother be childlesse among other women. And that blood which the same King Henry affirmed, that the cold aire of Scotland had frozen up in the North, God hath diffused by the sun-beam of his grace: from whence His Majesty now living, and long to live, is descended. Of whom I may say it truly; That if all the malice of the world were infused into one eye: yet could it not discern in his life, even to this day, any one of those foul spots, by which the consciences of all the fore-named Princes (in effect) have been defiled; nor any drop of that innocent blood on the sword of his justice, with which the most that fore-went him have stained both their hands and fame. And for this Crown of England, it may truly be avowed: That he hath received it even from the hand of God, & hath staid the time of putting it on, howsoever he were provoked to hasten it: That he never took revenge of any man, that sought to put him beside it: That he refused the assistance of Her enemies, that wore it long, with as great glory as ever Prince did: That His Majesty entered not by a breach, nor by blood; but by the Ordinary gate, which his own right set open; and into which, by a generall love and obedience, He was received. And howsoever His Majesties preceding title to this Kingdom, was preferred by many Princes (witness the Treaty at Cambray in the year 1559.) yet he never pleased to dispute it, during the life of that renowned Lady his Predecessor; no, notwithstanding the injury of not being declared Heir, in all the time of Her long reign.

Neither ought we to forget, or neglect our thankfulness to GOD for the uniting of the Northern parts of Britany to the South, to wit, of Scotland to England, which though they were severed but by small brooks and banks, yet by reason of the long continued war, and the cruelties exercised upon each other, in the affection of the Nations, they were infinitely severed. This, I say, is not the least of Gods blessings which His Majesty hath brought with him unto this Land: No, put all our petty grievances together, and heap them up to their height, they will appear but as a Mole-hill, compared with the Mountain of this concord. And if all the Historians since then have acknowledged the uniting of the Red-Rose and the White, for the greatest happinesse (Christian Religion excepted) that ever this Kingdom received from GOD, certainly the peace between the two Lions of gold and gules, and the making them one, doth by many degrees exceed the former; for by it, besides the sparing of our British blood, heretofore & during the difference, so often and abundantly shed, the state of England is more assured, the Kingdom more enabled



enabled to recover her ancient honour and rights, and by it made more invincible, than by all our former alliances, practices, policies, and conquests. It is true, that hereof we do not yet find the effect. But had the Duke of Parma in the year 1588. joyned the Army which he commanded, with that of Spain, and landed it on the South coast; and had His Majesty at the same time declared himself against us in the North, it is easie to divine what had become of the liberty of England: certainly, we would then without murmure have brought this union a far greater praise than it hath since cost us. It is true, that there was never any Common-weal or Kingdome in the world, wherein no man had cause to lament. Kings live in the world, and not above it. They are not infinite to examine every mans cause, or to relieve every mans wants. And yet in the later, (though to his own prejudice) His Majesty hath had more compassion of other mens necessities, than of his own Coffers. Of whom it may be said, as of Solomon, Dedit Deus Solomoni latitudinem cordis: Which if other men do not understand with Pineda, to be meant by Liberality, but by Latitude of knowledge; yet may it be better spoken of His Majesty, than of any King that ever England had; who as well in divine, as humane understanding hath exceeded all that fore-went him, by many degrees.

I could say much more of the Kings Majesty, without flattery: did I not fear the imputation of presumption, and withall suspect, that it might befall these papers of mine, (though the losse were little) as it did the Pictures of Queen Elizabeth, made by unskilfull and common Painters, which by her own commandment were knocked in pieces, and cast into the fire. For ill Artists, in setting out the beauty of the externall; and weak writers, in describing the vertues of the internall; do often leave to posterity, of well formed faces a deformed memory; and of the most Perfect and Princely mindes, a most defective representation. It may suffice, and there needs no other discourse; if the honest Reader but compare the cruell and turbulent passages of our former Kings, and of other their Neighbour-Princes (of whom for that purpose I have inserted this brief discourse) with His Majesties temperate, revengelesse, and liberall disposition: I say, that if the honest Reader weigh them justly, and with an even band: and withall but bestow every deformed childe on his true Parent; He shall finde, that there is no man that hath so just cause to complain, as the King himself hath. Now as we have told the successe of the trumperies and cruelties of our own Kings, and other great Personages: so we find, that GOD is every-where the same God. And as it pleased him to punish the usurpation and unnaturall cruelty of Henry the first, and of our third Edward, in their Children for many generations; so dealt he with the sons of Loys Debonaire, the son of Charles the Great, or Charlemaine. For after such time as Debonaire of France, had torn out the eyes of Bernard his Nephew, the son of Pepin the eldest son of Charlemaine, and Heire of the Empire, and then caused him to die in prison, as did our Henry to Robert his eldest brother: there followed nothing but murders upon murders, poisoning, imprisonments, and civill war; till the whole race of that famous Emperour was extinguished. And though Debonaire, after he had rid himself of his Nephew by a violent death; and of his bastard brothers by a civill death (having inclosed them with sure guard all the dayes of their lives, within a Monastery) held himself secure from all opposition: Yet God raised up against him (which he suspected not) his own sons, to vex him, to invade him, to take him prisoner, and to depose him; his own sons, with whom

(to

(to satisfy their ambition) he had shared his estate, and given them Crowns to wear, and Kingdoms to govern, during his own life. Yea, his eldest son Lothaire (for he had four, three by his first wife, and one by his second; to wit, Lothaire, Pepin, Loys, and Charles) made it the cause of his deposition, That he had used violence towards his brothers and kinsmen; and that he had suffered his Nephew (whom he might have delivered) to be slain. Eo quod, faith the Text, fratribus, & propinquis violentiam intulerit, & nepotem suum, quem ipse liberare poterat, interfici permiserit; Because he used violence to his brothers and kinsmen, and suffered his nephew to be slain, whom he might have delivered.

Yet did he that which few Kings doe; namely, repent him of his cruelty. For, among many other things which he performed in the Generall Assembly of the States, it follows: Post hæc autem palam se errasse confessus, & imitatus Imperatoris Theodosii exemplum, pœnitentiam spontaneam suscepit, tam de his, quam quæ in Bernardum proprium nepotem gesserat: After this he did openly confess himself to have erred, and following the example of the Emperour Theodosius, he underwent voluntary penance, as well for his other offences, as for that which he had done against Bernard his own Nephew.

This he did, and it was praise-worthy. But the blood that is unjustly spilt, is not again gathered up from the ground by repentance. These Medicines, ministred to the dead, have but dead rewards.

This King, as I have said, had four sons. To Lothaire his eldest he gave the Kingdom of Italy, as Charlemaine his father had done to Pepin the father of Bernard, who was to succeed him in the Empire. To Pepin the second son he gave the Kingdome of Aquitaine: to Loys, the Kingdome of Bavier: and to Charles, whom he had by a second wife, called Judith, the remainder of the Kingdome of France. But this second wife, being a mother-in-law to the rest, perswaded Debonaire to cast his son Pepin out of Aquitaine; thereby to greaten Charles, which, after the death of his son Pepin, he prosecuted to effect against his Grand-childe bearing the same name. In the mean while, being invaded by his son Loys of Bavier, he dies for grief.

Debonaire dead, Loys of Bavier, and Charles afterwards called the bald, and their Nephew Pepin of Aquitaine, joine in league against the Emperour Lothaire their eldest brother. They fight neer to Auxerre the most bloody battell that ever was stricken in France: in which, the marvellous losse of Nobility, and men of war, gave courage to the Saracens to invade Italy; to the Hunnes to fall upon Almaine; and the Danes to enter upon Normandy. Charles the bald by treason seizeth upon his Nephew Pepin, kills him in a Cloyster: Carloman rebels against his father Charles the bald, the father burns out the eyes of his son Carloman; Bavier invades the Emperour Lothaire his brother, Lothaire quits the Empire, He is assailed and wounded to the heart by his own conscience, for his Rebellion against his father, and for his other cruelties, and dies in a Monastery. Charles the bald the Uncle oppresseth his Nephews the Sons of Lothaire, he usurpeth the Empire to the prejudice of Loys of Bavier his elder brother; Baviers Armies and his son Carloman are beaten, he dies of grief, and the Usurper Charles is poisoned by Zedechias a Jew, his Physician, his son Loys le Beque dies of the same drink. Beque had Charles the simple, and

Step. Pal. where  
rebert. l. 5. c. 11.

Pass. lib. 10.

## The Preface.

and two Bastards, Loys and Carloman; they rebell against their Brother, but the eldest breaks his neck, the younger is slain by a wilde Bore; the son of Bavier had the same ill destiny, and brake his neck by a fall out of a window in sporting with his companions. Charles the grosse becomes Lord of all that the sons of Debonaire held in Germany; wherewith not contented, he invades Charles the simple: but being forsaken of his Nobility, of his wife, and of his understanding; he dies a distracted Beggar. Charles the simple is held in Wardship by Eudes Maior of the Pallace, then by Robert the brother of Eudes: and lastly, being taken by the Earle of Vermandois, he is forced to dye in the prison of Peron. Loys the son of Charles the simple breaks his neck in chasing a Wolfe, and of the two sons of this Loys, the one dies of poyson; the other dies in the prison of Orleans; after whom Hugh Capet, of another race, and a stranger to the French, makes himself King.

These miserable ends had the issues of Debonaire; who after he had once appalled in justice with authority, his sons and successors took up the fashion, and wore that Garment so long without other provision, as when the same was torn from their shoulders, every man despised them as miserable and naked Beggars. The wretched successe they had, (saith a learned French-man) shewes, que en ceste mort il y avoit plus du fait des hommes que de Dieu, ou de la justice: That in the death of that Prince; to wit, of Bernard the son of Pepin, the true heir of Charlemaine, men had more meddling than either God, or Justice had.

But to come neerer home; it is certain that Francis the first, one of the worthiest Kings (except for that fact) that ever the French-men had, did never enjoy himself, after he had commended the destruction of the Protestants of Mirandol and Cabrieres, to the Parliament of Provence, which poor people were thereupon burnt and murdered; men, women, and children. It is true that the said King Francis repented himself of the fact, and gave charge to Henry his son, to doe justice upon the Murderers, threatening his son with GODS judgements, if he neglected it. But this unseasonable care of his, GOD was not pleased to accept for payment. For after Henry himself was slain in sport by Montgomery, we all may remember what became of his foure sons, Francis, Charles, Henry, and Hercules. Of which, although three of them became Kings, and were married to beautifull and vertuous Ladies: yet were they, one after another, cast out of the world, without stock or seed. And notwithstanding their subtilty, and breach of faith; with all their Massacres upon those of the religion, and great effusion of blood, the Crown was set on his head, whom they all laboured to dissolve; the Protestants remain more in number than ever they were, and hold to this day more strong Cities than ever they had.

Let us now see if God be not the same God in Spain, as in England and France. Towards whom we will look no further back than to Don Pedro of Castile: in respect of which Prince, all the Tyrants of Sicil, our Richard the third, and the great Evan Vasilowick of Moscovia, were but petty ones: this Castilian, of all Christian and Heathen Kings, having been the most mercilesse. For, besides those of his own Blood and Nobility, which he caused to be slain in his own Court and Chamber, as Sancho Ruis, the great Master of Calatrava, Ruis Gonfales, Alphonsio Tello, and Don John of Arragon, whom he cut in pieces, and cast into the street, denying him Christian buriall: I say, besides these, and the slaughter

## The Preface.

of Gomes Mauriques, Diego Peres, Alphonsio Gomes, and the great Commander of Castile; he made away the two Infants of Arragon his Cousin-germans, his brother Don Frederick, Don John de la Cerde, Albuquerque, Nugnes de Guzman, Cornel, Cabrera, Tenorio, Mendes de Toledo, Gutierrez his great Treasurer, and all his kindred; and a world of others. Neither did he spare his two youngest brothers, innocent Princes: whom after he had kept in close prison from their Cradles, till one of them had lived sixteen years, and the other fourteen; he murdered them there. Nay, he spared not his Mother, nor his Wife the Lady Blanch of Bourbon. Lastly, as he caused the Archbishop of Toledo, and the Dean to be killed of purpose to enjoy their treasures; so did he put to death Mahomet Aben Alhamar King of Barbary, with 37. of his Nobility, that came unto him for succour, with a great summe of monye, to leviz (by his favour) some companies of souldiers to return withall. Yea, he would needs assist the Hangman with his own hand, in the execution of the old King; inasmuch as Pope Urban declareth him an enemy both to God & Man. But what was his end? Having been formerly beaten out of his Kingdome, and re-established by the valour of the English Nation, led by the famous Duke of Lancaster: He was stabbed to death by his younger brother the Earle of Astramara, who dispossesseth all his Children of their inheritance; which, but for the Fathers injustice and cruelty, had never been in danger of any such thing.

If we can parallel any man with this King, it must be Duke John of Burgoign, who, after his traiterous murder of the Duke of Orleans, caused the Constable of Armagnac, the Chancellor of France, the Bishops of Constance, Bayeux, Eureux, Senlis, Saintes, and other religious and reverend Church-men, the Earle of gran Pre, Hector of Chartres, and (in effect) all the Officers of justice of the Chamber of Accounts, Treasury, and Request, (with sixteen hundred others to accompany them) to be suddenly and violently slain. Hereby, while he hoped to govern, and to have mastered France: He was soon after stricken with an axe in the face, in the presence of the Dauphin; and, without any leisure to repent his misdeeds, presently slain. These were the Lovers of other mens miseries: and misery found them out.

Now for the Kings of Spain, which lived both with Henry the seventh, Henry the eighth, Queen Mary, and Queen Elizabeth; Ferdinand of Arragon was the first: and the first that laid the foundation of the present Austrian greatness. For this King did not content himself to hold Arragon by the usurpation of his Ancestor; and to fasten thereunto the Kingdome of Castile and Leon, which Isabel his wife held by strong hand, and his assistance, from her own Neece: the Daughter of the last Henry: but most cruelly and craftily, without all colour or pretence of right, he also cast his own Neece out of the Kingdome of Navarre: and, contrary to faith, and the promise that he made to restore it, fortified the best places, and so wasted the rest, as there was no means left for any Army to invade it. This King, I say, that betrayed also Ferdinand and Frederick Kings of Naples, Princes of his own blood, and by double alliance tied unto him; sold them to the French: and with the same Army, sent for their succour under Gonfialvo, cast them out; and shared their Kingdome with the French, whom afterwards he most shamefully betrayed.

This wife and politick King, who sold Heaven and his own Honour, to make

his son the Prince of Spain, the greatest Monarch of the world : saw him die in the flower of his yeers; and his wife great with childe, with her untimely birth, at once and together buried. His eldest daughter married unto Don Alphonso, Prince of Portugal, beheld her first husband break his neck in her presence; and being with childe by her second, died with it. A just judgement of God upon the race of John, father to Alphonso, now wholly extinguished : who had not onely left many disconsolate Mothers in Portugal, by the slaughter of their children; but had formerly slain with his own hand, the son and onely comfort of his Aunt the Lady Beatrix, Dutchesse of Viseo. The second daughter of Ferdinand, married to the Arch-Duke Philip, turned fool, and died mad and deprived. His third daughter, bestowed on King Henry the eighth, he saw cast off by the King: the mother of many troubles in England; and the mother of a daughter, that in her unhappy zeal shed a world of innocent blood, lost Calice to the French; and died heart-broken without increase. To conclude, all those Kingdoms of Ferdinand have masters of a new name; and by a strange family are governed and posselt.

Charles the fifth, son to the Arch-Duke Philip, in whose vain enterprises upon the French, upon the Almans, and other Princes and States; so many multitudes of Christian Souldiers, and renowned Captains were consumed: who gave the while a most perillous entrance to the Turks, and suffered Rhodes, the Key of Christendom, to be taken; was in conclusion chased out of France, and in a sort out of Germany; and left to the French, Mentz, Toule, and Verdun, places belonging to the Empire, stole away from Insprug; and scaled the Alpes by torch-light, pursued by Duke Maurice; having hoped to swallow up all those Dominions, wherein he conceived nothing save his own disgraces. And having, after the slaughter of so many Millions of men, no one foot of ground in either: He crept into a Cloister, and made himself a Pensioner of an hundred thousand Duckets by the yeer, to his son Philip, from whom he very slowly received his mean and ordinary maintenance.

His son again King Philip the second, not satisfied to hold Holland & Zeland, wrested by his ancestors from Jaqueline their lawfull Princeesse) and to possesse in peace many other Provinces of the Netherlands: perswaded by that mischievous Cardinall of Granville, and other Romish Tyrants; not onely forgot the most remarkable services, done to his Father the Emperour, by the Nobility of those Countries, not onely forgot the Present made him upon his entry, of forty Millions of Florens, called the Novaile aide; nor onely forgot that he had twice most solemnly sworn to the Generall States, to maintain & preserve their ancient rights, priviledges, and customes, which they had enjoyed under their thirty and five Earles before him, Conditionall Princes of those Provinces: but beginning first to constrain them, and enthrall them by the Spanish Inquisition, and then to impoverish them by many new devised and intollerable impositions, he lastly, by strong hand and main force, attempted to make himself not onely an absolute Monarch over them, like unto the Kings and Soveraignes of England and France; but Turk-like, to tread under his feet all their Naturall and Fundamentall Laws, Priviledges, and ancient Rights. To effect which, after he had easily obtained from the Pope a Dispensation of his former Oaths (which Dispensation was the true cause of the War and Bloodshed since then;) and after he had tried what he could perform, by dividing of their own Nobility, under the govern-

ment

ment of his base sister, Margaret of Austria, and the Cardinall Granville; He employed that most mercilesse Spaniard, Don Ferdinand Alvarez of Toledo, Duke of Alva, followed with a powerfull Army of strange Nations: by whom he first slaughtered that renowned Captain the Earl of Egmont, Prince of Gavare: and Philip Montmorency Earl of Horn: made away Montigue, and the Marquesse of Bergues, and cut off in those six yeers (that Alva governed) of Gentlemen and others, eighteen thousand and six hundred, by the hands of the Hangman, besides all his other barbarous murders and massacres. By whose ministry when he could not yet bring his affairs to their wished ends, having it in his hope to work that by subtilty, which he had failed to perform by force: He sent for Governour his bastard brother Don John of Austria; a Prince of great hope, and very gracious to those people. But he, using the same Papall advantage that his Predecessors had done, made no scruple to take Oath upon the holy Evangelists, to observe the Treaty made with the Generall States; and to discharge the Low-Countries of all Spaniards, & other strangers therein garrison'd: Towards whose Pay & Passport, the Netherlands strained themselves to make payment of 600000 pounds. Which monies received, he suddenly surpris'd the Citadels of Antwerp and Nemures: not doubting (being unsuspected by the States) to have posselt himself of all the mastering places of those Provinces. For whatsoever he overtly pretended, he held in secret a contrary counsell with the Secretary Escovedo, Rhodus, Barlemont, and others; Ministers of the Spanish tyranny formerly practised, and now again intended. But let us now see the effect and end of this perjury, and of all other the Dukes cruelties. First, for himself; after he had murdered so many of the Nobility; executed (as aforesaid) eighteen thousand six hundred in six yeers, and most cruelly slain Man, Woman, and Childe in Mecklin, Zutphen, Naerden, and other places: and after he had consumed six and thirty millions of treasure in six yeers: notwithstanding his Spanish want, That he would suffocate the Hollanders in their own Butter-barrells, and Milk-tubs: He departed the Country no otherwise accompanied, than with the curse and detestation of the whole Nation; leaving his Masters affaires in a tenfold worse estate, than he found them at his first arrivall. For Don John, whose haughty conceit of himself overcame the greatest difficulties; though his judgment were over-weak to mannage the least: what wonders did his fearfull breach of faith bring forth, other than the King his brothers jealousy & distrust, with the untimely death that seized him, even in the flower of his youth? And for Escovedo his sharp-witted Secretary, who in his own imagination had conquered for his Master both England and the Netherlands; being sent into Spain upon some new project, he was at the first arrivall, and before any access to the King, by certain Russians appointed by Anthony Peres (though by better warrant than his) rudely murdered in his own lodging. Lastly, if we consider the King of Spains carriage, his counsell and success in this businesse, there is nothing left to the memory of man more remarkable. For he hath paid above an hundred Millions, and the lives of above foure hundred thousand Christians, for the losse of all those Countries, which, for beauty, gave place to none; and for revenue, did equall his West-Indies: for the losse of a Nation which most willingly obeyed him; and who at this day, after forty yeers war, are in despite of all his forces become a free Estate, and far more rich and powerfull than they were, when he first began to impoverish and oppress them.

Oh by what plots, by what forswearings, betrayings, oppressions, imprisonments, tortures, poisonings, and under what reasons of State, and politick subtilty, have these fore-named Kings, both strangers; and of our own Nation, pulled the vengeance of GOD upon themselves, upon theirs, and upon their prudent ministers! and in the end have brought those things to passe for their enemies, and seen an effect so directly contrary to all their own counsels and cruelties; as the one could never have hoped for themselves; and the other never have succeeded; if no such opposition had ever been made. GOD hath said it, and performed it ever: *Pec-dam sapientiam sapientum*; I will destroy the wisdom of the wise.

But what of all this? and to what end do we lay before the eyes of the living, the fall and fortunes of the dead: seeing the world is the same that it hath been; and the children of the present time, will still obey their parents? It is in the present time, that all the wits of the world are exercised. To hold the times we have, we hold all things lawfull: and either we hope to hold them for ever; or at least we hope, that there is nothing after them to be hoped for. For as we are content to forget our own experience; and to counterfeit the ignorance of our own knowledge, in all things that concern our selves; or perswade our selves, that GOD hath given us letters patents to pursue all our irreligious affections, with a non obstante: so we neither look behinde us what hath been, nor before us what shall be. It is true, that the quantity which we have, is of the body: we are by it joyned to the earth: we are compounded of earth; and we inhabit it. The Heavens are high; far off, and unsearchable: we have sense and feeling of corporall things; and of eternall grace, but by revelation. No marvell then that our thoughts are also earthly: and it is lesse to be wondered at, that the words of worthlesse men cannot cleanse them: seeing their doctrine and instruction, whose understanding the Holy Ghost vouchsafed to inhabit, have not performed it. For as the Prophet Elay cried out long ago, Lord, who hath beleaved our reports? And out of doubt, as Elay complained then for himself and others: so are they lesse beleaved, every day after other. For although Religion, and the truth thereof be in every mans mouth, yea, in the discourse of every woman, who for the greatest number are but Idols of vanity: what is it other than an universall dissimulation? We professe that we know GOD: but by works we deny him. For Beatitude doth not consist in the knowledge of divine things, but in a divine life: for the Devils know them better than men. *Beatitudo non est divinatorum cognitio, sed vita divina.*

And certainly there is nothing more to be admired, and more to be lamented, than the private contention, the passionate dispute, the personall hatred, and the perpetuall war, massacres, and murders, for Religion among Christians: the discourse whereof hath so occupied the World, as it hath well neer driven the practice thereof out of the World. Who would not soon resolve, that took knowledge but of the religious disputations among men, and not of their lives which dispute, that there were no other thing in their desires, than the purchase of Heaven; and that the World it self were but used as it ought, and as an Inne, or place wherein to repose our selves in passing on towards our celestiall habitation? when on the contrary, besides the discourse and outward profession, the soule hath nothing but hypocrisie. We are all (in effect) become Comedians in Religion: and while we act in gesture and voice, divine vertues, in all the course of our lives we renounce our Persons, and the parts we play. For Charity, Justice, and Truth,

have

have but their being in terms, like the Philosophers *Materia prima*.

Neither is it that wisdom, which Solomon defineth to be the School-Mistresse of the knowledge of God, that hath valuation in the world: it is enough that we give it our good word: but the same which is altogether exercised in the service of the World, as the gathering of riches chiefly, by which we purchase and obtaine honour, with the many respects which attend it. These indeed be the marks, which (when we have bent our consciences to the highest) we all shoot at. For the obtaining whereof it is true, that the care is our own; the care our own in this life, the perill our own in the future: and yet when we have gathered the greatest abundance, we our selves enjoy no more thereof, than so much as belongs to one man. For the rest, He that had the greatest wisdom, and the greatest ability that ever man had, hath told us, that this is the use: When goods increaseth (saith Solomon) they also increase that eat them; and what good cometh to the Owners, but the beholding thereof with their eyes? As for those that devoure the rest, and follow us in faire weather: they again forsake us in the first tempest of misfortune, and steere away before the Sea and Winde; leaving us to the malice of our destinies. Of these, among a thousand examples, I will take but one out of Master Dannet, and use his own words: Whilest the Emperour Charles the fifth, after the resignation of his estates, stayed at Uloshing for winde, to carry him his last journey into Spain; He conferred on a time with Seldius, his brother Ferdinands Embassadour, till the deep of the night. And when Seldius should depart: the Emperour calling for some of his servants, and no body answering him, (for those that attended upon him, were some gone to their lodgings, and all the rest asleep) the Emperour took up the candle himself, and went before Seldius to light him down the staires; and so did, notwithstanding all the resistance that Seldius could make. And when he was come to the staires foot, he said thus unto him: Seldius, remember this of Charles the Emperour, when he shall be dead and gone, That Him, whom thou hast known in thy time environed with so many mighty Armies and Guards of Souldiers, thou hast also seen alone, abandoned, and forsaken, yea even of his own domestical servants, &c. I acknowledge this change of Fortune to proceed from the mighty hand of GOD, which I will by no means go about to withstand.

But you will say, that there are some things else, and of greater regard than the former. The first is, the reverend respect that is held of great men, and the Honour done unto them by all sorts of people. And it is true indeed: provided, that an inward love for their justice and piety, accompany the outward worship given to their places and power; without which what is the applause of the Multitude, but as the out-cry of an Herd of Animals, who without the knowledge of any true cause, please themselves with the noise they make? For seeing it is a thing exceeding rare to distinguish Vertue and Fortune: the most impious (if prosperous) have ever been applauded; the most vertuous (if unprosperous) have ever been despised. For as Fortunes man rides the Horse, so Fortune her self rides the Man. Who, when he is descended and on foot: the Man taken from his Beast, and Fortune from the Man; a base groom beats the one, and a bitter contempt spurnes at the other, with equall liberty.

## The Preface.

The second is the greatning of our posterity, and the contemplation of their glory whom we leave behinde us. Certainly, of those which conceive that their souls departed take any comfort therein, it may truly be said of them, which Laetantius spake of certain Heathen Philosophers, quod sapientes sunt in re stulta. For when our spirits immortall shall be once separate from our mortall bodies, and disposed by G O D : there remaineth in them no other joy of their posterity which succeed, than there doth of pride in that stone, which sleepeth in the Wall of a Kings Palace, nor any other sorrow for their poverty, than there doth of shame in that, which beareth up a Beggars cottage. Nesciunt mortui, etiam sancti, quid agunt vivi, etiam eorum filii, quia animarum mortuorum rebus viventium non inter sunt : The dead, though holy, know nothing of the living, no, not of their own children : for the souls of those departed, are not conversant with their affaires that remain. And if we doubt of Saint Augustine, we cannot of Job ; who tells us, That we know not if our sons shall be honourable : neither shall we understand concerning them, whether they shall be of low degree. Which Ecclesiastes also confirmeth : Man walketh in a shadow, and disquieteth himself in vain : he heapeth up riches, and cannot tell who shall gather them. The living (saith he) know that they shall die, but the dead know nothing at all : for who can shew unto man what shall be after him under the Sunne ? He therefore accounteth it among the rest of worldly vanities, to labour and travell in the world ; not knowing after death, whether a foole or a wise man should enjoy the fruits thereof : which made me (saith he) endeavour even to abhorre mine own labour. And what can other men hope, whose blessed or sorrowfull estates after death God hath reserved ? mans knowledge lying but in his hope, seeing the Prophet Elay confesseth of the Elect, That Abraham is ignorant of us, and Israel knows us not. But hereof we are assured, that the long and dark night of death, (of whose following day we shall never behold the dawn till his return that hath triumphed over it) shall cover us over till the world be no more. After which, and when we shall again receive Organs glorified and incorruptible, the seats of Angelicall affections : in so great admiration shall the soules of the blessed be exercised, as they cannot admit the mixture of any second or lesse joy ; nor any return of forgone and mortall affection towards friends, kindred, or children. Of whom whether we shall retain any particular knowledge, or in any sort distinguish them, no man can assure us ; and the wisest men doubt. But on the contrary ; If a divine life retain any of those faculties, which the soule exercised in a mortall body ; we shall not at that time so divide the joyes of Heaven, as to cast any part thereof on the memory of their felicities which remaine in the World. No, be their estates greater than ever the World gave, we shall (by the difference known unto us) even detest their consideration. And whatsoever comfort shall remain of all forepast, the same will consist in the charity, which we exercised living : and in that Piety, Justice, and firm Faith, for which it pleased the infinite mercy of God to accept of us, and receive us. Shall we therefore value honour and riches at nothing ? and neglect them, as unnecessary and vain ? Certainly no. For that infinite wisdom of God, which hath distinguished his Angels by degrees : which hath given greater and lesse light and beauty to heavenly bodies : which hath made differences between beasts and birds : created the Eagle

and

## The Preface.

and the Flie ; the Cedar and the Shrub ; and among stones, given the fairest tincture to the Ruby, and the quickest light to the Diamond ; hath also ordained Kings, Dukes, or Leaders of the people, Magistrates, Judges, and other degrees among men. And as honour is left to posterity, for a mark and ensigne of the vertue and understanding of their Ancestors ; so (seeing Siracides preferreth Death before Beggary : and that titles, without proportionable estates, fall under the miserable succour of other mens pity,) I account it foolishnesse to condemn such a care : Provided, that worldly goods be well gotten ; and that we raise not our own buildings out of other mens ruines. For, as Plato doth first preferre the perfection of bodily health ; secondly, the forme and beauty, and thirdly, Divities nulla fraude quasitas : so Jeremy cries, Woe unto them that erect their houses by unrighteousnesse, and their chambers without equity : And Esay the same, Woe to those that spoile, and were not spoiled. And it was out of the true wisdom of Solomon, that he commandeth us, not to drink the wine of violence ; not to lie in wait for blood, and not to swallow them up alive, whose riches we covet : for such are the wayes (saith he) of every one that is greedy of gain.

And if we could afford our selves but so much leisure as to consider, That he which hath most in the world, hath, in respect of the world, nothing in it : and that he which hath the longest time lent him to live in it, hath yet no proportion at all therein, setting it either by that which is past, when we were not, or by that time which is to come, in which we shall abide for ever : I say, if both, to wit, our proportion in the world, and our time in the world, differ not much from that which is nothing, it is not out of any excellency of understanding, that we so much prize the one, which hath (in effect) no being : and so much neglect the other, which hath no ending : coveting those mortall things of the world, as if our soules were therein immortall, and neglecting those things which are immortall, as if our selves after the world were but mortall.

But let every man value his own wisdom, as he pleaseth. Let the Rich man think all fools, that cannot equall his abundance ; the Revenger esteeme all negligent, that have not trodden down their opposites ; the Politician all gross, that cannot merchandize their faith : Yet when we once come in sight of the Port of death, to which all winds drive us, & when by letting fall that fatal Anchor, which can never be weighed again, the navigation of this life takes end : Then it is, I say, that our own cogitations (those sad & severe cogitations, formerly beaten from us by our Health & Felicity) return again, & pay us to the uttermost for all the pleasing passages of our lives past. It is then that we cry out to God for mercy ; then, when our selves can no longer exercise cruelty to others : and it is only then, that we are stricken through the soul with this terrible sentence, That God will not be mock't. For if according to S. Peter, The righteous scarcely be saved : and that God spared not his Angels : where shall those appear, who, having served their appetites all their lives, presume to think, that the severe Commandments of the All-powerfull God were given but in sport ; & that the short breath, which we draw when death presseth us, if we can but fashion it to the sound of Mercy (without any kind of satisfaction or amends) is sufficient ? O quam multi, saith a reverend Father, cum hac spe ad aternos labores & bella descendunt ! I confesse that it is a great comfort to our friends, to have it said, that we ended well ; for we all

desire

## The Preface.

desire (as Balaam did) to die the death of the righteous. But what shall we call a dis-esteeming, an opposing, or (indeed) a mocking of God: if those men do not oppose him, dis-esteem him, and mock him, that think it enough for God, to ask him forgiveness at leisure, with the remainder & last drawing of a malicious breath? For what do they otherwise, that die this kind of well-dying, but say unto God as followeth? We beseech thee, O God, that all the falsehoods, forswearings, and treacheries of our lives past, may be pleasing unto thee; that thou wilt for our sakes (that have had no leisure to do any thing for thine) change thy nature (though impossible) and forget to be a just God; that thou wilt love injuries and oppressions, call ambition wisdom, and charity foolishness. For I shall prejudice my son, (which I am resolved not to do) if I make restitution; and confesse my self to have been unjust, (which I am too proud to do) if I deliver the oppressed. Certainly, these wise worldlings have either found out a new God, or made One; and in all likelihood such a Leaden One, as Lewis the eleventh wore in his Cap; which when he had caused any that he feared or hated, to be killed, he would take it from his head and kisse it: beseeching it to pardon him this one evill act more, and it should be the last; which (as at other times) he did, when by the practice of a Cardinall and a falsified Sacrament, he caused the Earl of Armagnac to be stabbed to death: mockeries indeed fit to be used towards a Leaden, but not towards the Everliving God. But of this composition are all devout lovers of the World, that they fear all that is dwelless and ridiculous: they fear the plots and practices of their opposites, and their very whisperings: they fear the opinions of men, which beat but upon shadows: they flatter and forsake the prosperous and unprosperous, be they friends or Kings: yea, they dive under water, like Ducks, at every pebble stone, that is but thrown towards them by a powerfull hand: and on the contrary, they shew an obstinate and Giant-like valour, against the terrible judgements of the All-powerfull God: yea, they shew themselves gods against God, and slaves towards men; towards men whose bodies and consciences are alike rotten.

Now for the rest: If we truly examine the difference of both conditions; to wit, of the rich and mighty, whom we call fortunate; and of the poor & oppressed, whom we account wretched: we shall finde the happiness of the one, and the miserable estate of the other, so tied by God to the very instant, and both so subject to interchange (witness the sudden downfall of the greatest Princes, and the speedy uprising of the meanest persons) as the one hath nothing so certain, whereof to boast; nor the other so uncertain, whereof to bewail it self. For there is no man so assured of his honour, of his riches, health, or life; but that he may be deprived of either, or all, the very next houre or day to come. Quid vesper vehat, incertum est; What the evening will bring with it, it is uncertaine. And yet ye cannot tell (saith S. James) what shall be to morrow. To day, he is set up, and to morrow he shall not be found; for he is turned into dust, and his purpose perisheth. And although the aire which compasseth adversity, be very obscure: yet therein we better discern God, than in that shining light which environeth worldly glory; through which, for the cleerness thereof, there is no vanity which escapeth our sight. And let adversity seem what it will; to happy men ridiculous, who make themselves merry at other mens misfortunes; and to those under the crosse, grievous: yet this is true, That for all that is past, to the very instant, the portions remaining are equall to either. For be it that we have

## The Preface.

have lived many yeers, and (according to Solomon) in them all we have rejoiced; or be it that we have measured the same length of dayes, and therein have evermore sorrowed: yet looking back from our present being, we finde both the one and the other, to wit, the joy and the woe, sailed out of sight; and death, which doth pursue us, and hold us in chase, from our infancy, hath gathered it. Quicquid erat retro est, mors tenet: Whatsoever of our age is past, death holds it. So as whosoever be, to whom Fortune hath been a servant; and the Time a friend: let him but take the account of his memory (for we have no other keeper of our pleasures past) and truly examine what it hath reserved either of beauty and youth, or fore-gone delights; what it hath saved, that it might last, of his dearest affections, or of whatever else the amorous Spring-time gave his thoughts of contentment, then unvaluable; and he shall finde that all the Art which his elder yeers have, can draw no other vapour out of these dissolutions, than heavie, secret, and sad sighes. He shall finde nothing remaining, but those sorrows, which grow up after our fast-springing youth, over-take it, when it is at a stand; and over-top it utterly, when it begins to wither: in so much as looking back from the very instant time, and from our now being, the poor, diseased, and captive creature, hath as little sense of all his former miseries and pains, as he, that is most blest in common opinion, hath of his fore-passed pleasure and delights. For whatsoever is cast behinde us, is just nothing: and what is to come, deceitfull hope hath it: Omnia quæ eventura sunt, in incerto jacent. Only those few black Swans I must except: who having had the grace to value worldly vanities at no more than their own price; do, by retaining the comfortable memory of a well-led life, behold death without dread, and the grave without fear; and embrace both; as necessary guides to endlesse glory.

For my self, this is my consolation, and all that I can offer to others, that the sorrows of this life are but of two sorts: whereof the one hath respect to GOD; the other to the World. In the first we complain to GOD against our selves, for our offences against him; and confesse, Et tu justus es in omnibus quæ venerunt super nos; And thou, O Lord, art just in all that hath befallen us. In the second we complain to our selves against GOD: as if he had done us wrong, either in not giving us worldly goods and honours, answering our appetites: or for taking them again from us having had them; forgetting that humble and just acknowledgement of Job, The Lord hath given, and the Lord hath taken. To the first of which S. Paul hath promised blessedness; to the second, death. And out of doubt he is either a fool, or ungratefull to GOD, or both, that doth not acknowledge, how mean soever his estate be, that the same is yet far greater, than that which God oweth him: or doth not acknowledge, how sharp soever his afflictions be, that the same are yet far lesse, than those which are due unto him. And if an Heathen wise man call the adversities of the world but tributa vivendi; the tributes of living: a wise Christian man ought to know them, and bear them but as the tributes of offending. He ought to bear them man-like, and resolvedly, and not as those whining Souldiers do, qui gementes sequuntur Imperatorem.

For seeing God, who is the Author of all our tragedies, hath written out for us, and appointed us all the parts we are to play: and hath not, in their distribution, been partiall to the most mighty Princes of the World; That gave unto Darius the part of the greatest Emperour, and the part of the most miserable beggar, a beggar



a beggar begging water of an Enemy, to quench the great drought of death; That appointed Bajazet to play the Grand Signior of the Turks in the morning, & in the same day the Footstool of Tamerlane (both which parts Valerian had also plaid, being taken by Saporis :) that made Bellisarius play the most victorious Captain, and lastly the part of a blind beggar, of which examples many thousands may be produced: why should other men, who are but as the least worms, complain of wrongs? Certainly there is no other account to be made of this ridiculous world, than to resolve, That the change of fortune on the great Theater, is but as the change of garments on the lesse. For when on the one and the other, every man wears but his own skin, the Players are all alike. Now if any man out of weaknes prize the passages of this world otherwise (for saith Petrarch, Magni ingenii est revocare mentem a sensibus) it is by reason of that unhappy fantasie of ours, which forgeth in the brains of Man all the miseries (the corporall excepted) whereunto he is subject. Therein it is, that Misfortune and Adversity work all that they work. For seeing Death, in the end of the Play, takes from all, whatsoever Fortune or Force takes from any one; it were a foolish madnesse in the shipwreck of worldly things, where all sinks but the Sorrow, to save it. That were, as Seneca saith, Fortunæ succumbere, quod tristius est omni fato: To fall under Fortune, of all other the most miserable destinie.

But it is now time to sound a retreat, and to desire to be excused of this long pursuit: and withall, that the good intent, which hath moved me to draw the picture of time past (which we call History) in so large a Table, may also be accepted in place of a better reason.

The examples of divine Providence, every where found (the first divine Histories being nothing els but a continuation of such examples) have perswaded me to fetch my beginning from the beginning of all things; to wit, Creation. For though these two glorious actions of the Almighty be so neer, and (as it were) linked together, that the one necessarily implieth the other: Creation inferring Providence (for what father forsaketh the childe that he hath begotten?) & Providence presupposing Creation: Yet many of those that have seemed to excell in worldly wisdom, have gone about to dis-joyn this coherence; the Epicure denying both Creation and Providence, but granting that the World had a Beginning; the Aristotelian granting Providence, but denying both the Creation and the Beginning.

Now although this doctrine of Faith, touching the Creation in time (for by faith we understand, that the world was made by the word of God) be too weighty a work for Aristotles rotten ground to bear up; upon which he hath (notwithstanding) founded the Defences and Fortresses of all his Verball Doctrine: Yet that the necessity of infinite power, and the Worlds beginning, and the impossibility of the contrary, even in the judgement of Naturall reason, wherein he believed, had not better informed him; it is greatly to be marvelled at. And it is no lesse strange, that those men which are desirous of knowledge (seeing Aristotle hath failed in this main point; and taught little other than terms in the rest) have so retrencht their minds from the following and overtaking of truth, and so absolutely subjected themselves to the law of those Philosophicall principles; as all contrary kinde of teaching, in the search of causes, they have condemned either for phantasticall, or curious. But doth it follow, that the Positions of Heathen Philosophers are undoubted grounds and principles indeed

indeed, because so called? Or that ipsi dixerunt, doth make them to be such? Certainly no. But this is true, That where naturall reason hath built any thing so strong against it self, as the same reason can hardly assail it, much lesse batter it down: the same in every question of Nature, and infinite power, may be approved for a fundamentall law of humane knowledge. For saith Charron in his Book of Wisdome, Tout proposition humaine a autant d'autorité quel'autre, si la raison n'ou fait la difference; Every humane proposition hath equall authority, if reason make not a difference; the rest being but the fables of principles. But hereof how shall the upright and unpartiall judgement of man give a sentence, where opposition and examination are not admitted to give in evidence? And to this purpose it was well said of Laërtius, Sapientiam tibi adimunt, qui sine ullo judicio inventa majorum probant, & ab aliis pecudum more ducuntur: They neglect their owne wisdom, who without any judgement approve the invention of those that fore-went them; and suffer themselves, after the manner of beasts, to be led by them. By the advantage of which sloth and dullnesse, ignorance is now become so powerfull a Tyrant, as it hath set true Philosophy, Physick, and Divinity in a Pillory; and written over the first, Contra negantem Principia; over the second, Virtus specifica; and over the third, Ecclesia Romana.

But for my self, I shall never be perswaded, that God hath shut up all light of Learning within the lantern of Aristotles brains: or that it was ever said unto him, as unto Eldras, Accendam in Corde tuo Lucernam intellectus: that God hath given invention but to the Heathen, and that they onely invaded Nature, and found the strength and bottom thereof; the same Nature having consumed all her store, and left nothing of price to after-ages. That these and these be the causes of these and these effects, Time hath taught us; and not reason: and so hath experience without Art. The Cheese-wife knoweth it as well as the Philosopher, that sower Rennet doth coagulate her milk into a curd. But if we aske a reason of this cause, why the sowrenesse doth it? whereby it doth it? and the manner how? I think that there is nothing to be found in vulgar Philosophy, to satisfie this and many other like vulgar questions. But man to cover his ignorance in the least things, who cannot give a true reason for the Grasse under his feet, why it should be green rather than red, or of any other colour; that could never yet discover the way and reason of Natures working, in those which are far lesse noble creatures than himself; who is far more noble than the Heavens themselves: Man (saith Solomon) that can hardly discern the things that are upon the Earth, and with great labour finde out the things that are before us; that hath so short a time in the world, as he no sooner begins to learn, than to die; that hath in his memory but borrowed knowledge; in his understanding nothing truly; that is ignorant of the Essence of his own soul, and which the wisest of the Naturalists (if Aristotle be he) could never so much as define, but by the Action and Effect, telling us what it works (which all men know as well as he) but not what it is, which neither he, nor any else doth know, but GOD that created it; (For though I were perfect, yet I know not my soule, saith Job.) Man, I say, that is but an idiot in the next cause of his own life, and in the cause of all actions of his life: will (notwithstanding) examine the Art of GOD in creating the World; of GOD, who (saith Job) is so excellent as we know him not; and

Charron de Sa-  
L'aj.L'aj. de orig.  
Errois, l. 2. c. 8.

Wisd. 1. 9.

Job. 26.

## The Preface.

and examine the beginning of the worke, which had end before Mankinde had a beginning of being. He will disabie Gods power to make a world, without matter to make it of. He will rather give the mores of the Aire for a cause; cast the work on necessity or chance; bestow the honour thereof on Nature; make two powers, the one to be the Author of the Matter, the other of the Forme; and lastly, for want of a work-man, have it Eternall: which latter opinion Aristotle, to make himselfe the Author of a new Doctrine, brought into the World: and his Sectatours have maintained it; parati ac conjurati, quos sequuntur Philosophorum animis invidiis opiniones tueri. For Hermes, who lived at once with, or soon after Moses, Zoroaster, Musæus, Orpheus, Linus, Anaximenes, Anaxagoras, Empedocles, Melissus, Pherecydes, Thales, Cleanthes, Pythagoras, Plato, and many others (whose opinions are exquisitely gathered by Steuchius Eugubinus) found in the necessity of invincible reason, One eternall and infinite Being, to be the Parent of the universall. Horum omnium sententia quamvis sit incerta, eodem tamen spectat, ut Providentiam unam esse consentiant: five enim Natura, five Æther, five Ratio, five Mens, five fatalis Necessitas, five divina Lex, idem est quod a nobis dicitur Deus: All these mens opinions, (saith Lactantius) though uncertain, come to this; That they agree upon one Providence, whether the same be Nature, or Light, or Reason, or Understanding, or Destinie, or divine Ordinance, that it is the same, which we call G O D. Certainly, as all the Rivers in the world, though they have divers risings, and divers runnings; though they sometimes hide themselves for a while under ground, and seem to be lost in Sea-like Lakes; do at last finde, and fall into the great Ocean: so after all the searches that humane capacity hath; and after all Philosophicall contemplation and curiosity, in the necessity of this infinite power, all the reason of man ends and dissolves it self.

As for others; and first touching those which conceive the matter of the World to have been eternall, and that God did not create the World ex nihilo, but ex materia præexistente; the Supposition is so weak, as is hardly worthy the answering. For (saith Eusebius) Mihi videntur qui hoc dicunt, fortunam quoque Deo annexere; They seem unto me, which affirm this, to give part of the work to God, and part to Fortune: in so much as if God had not found this first matter by chance, He had neither been Author, nor Father, nor Creatour, nor Lord of the Univerfall. For were the Matter or Chaos eternall: it then follows, That either this supposed Matter did fit it self to God, or God accommodate himself to the matter. For the first; it is impossible, that things without sense could proportion themselves to the Work-mans will. For the second; it were horrible to conceive of God, That as an Artificer he applied himself, according to the proportion of matter which he lighted upon.

But let it be supposed, That this matter hath been made by any Power, not Omnipotent, & infinitely wise: I would gladly learn how it came to passe, that the same was proportionable to his intention, that was Omnipotent & infinitely wise; and no more, nor no lesse, than served to receive the form of the Univerfall. For had it wanted any thing of what was sufficient; then must it be granted, That God created out of nothing so much of new matter, as served to finish the work of the World: Or had there been more of this matter than sufficed, then God did dissolve and annihilate whatsoever remained and was superfluous. And this must every reasonable

La 3. s.

Euseb. de præp.  
Evang. l. 7. c. 8.

## The Preface.

sonable soul confesse, That it is the same work of God alone, to create any thing out of nothing. And by the same art and power, and by none other, can those things, or any part of that eternall matter, be again changed into Nothing; by which those things, that once were nothing, obtained a beginning of being.

Again; to say that this matter was the cause of it self; this, of all other, were the greatest Idiotism. For, if it were the cause of it self at any time; then there was also a time when it self was not; at which time of not being, it is easie enough to conceive, that it could neither procure it self, nor any thing else. For to be, and not to be, at once, is impossible. Nihil autem seipsum præcedit, neque seipsum componit corpus: There is nothing that doth precede it self, neither do bodies compound themselves.

For the rest, Those that feign this matter to be eternall, must of necessity confesse, that Infinite cannot be separate from Eternity. And then had infinite matter left no place for infinite form; but that the first matter was finite, the form which it received proves it. For conclusion of this part, who so ever will make choice, rather to beleve in eternall deformity, or in eternall dead matter, than in eternall light and eternall life; let eternall death be his reward. For it is a madness of that kind, as wanteth terms to expresse it. For what reason of man (whom the curse of presumption hath not stupified) hath doubted, That infinite power (of which we can comprehend but a kind of shadow, quia comprehensio est intra terminos, qui infinito repugnant) hath any thing wanting in it self, either for matter or form; yea for as many worlds (if such had been Gods will) as the Sea hath sands? For where the power is without limitation, the work hath no other limitation, than the workmans will. Yea, Reason it self finds it more easie for infinite power, to deliver from it self a finite world, without the help of matter prepared; than for a finite man, a fool and dust, to change the form of matter made to his hands. They are Dionysius his words, Deus in una existentia omnia præhabet: and again, Esse omnium est ipsa Divinitas, omne quod videt, & quod non videt; to wit, casualiter, or in better terms, non tanquam forma, sed tanquam causa universalis. Neither hath the World univversall closed up all of G O D: For the most part of his works (saith Siracides) are hid. Neither can the depth of his wisdom be opened by the glorious work of the World: which never brought to knowledge all it can; for then were his infinite power bounded, and made finite. And hereof it comes, That we seldome entitle G O D the all-shewing, or the all-willing; but the Almighty, that is, infinitely able.

But now for those, who from that ground, That out of nothing, nothing is made, inferre the Worlds eternity; and yet not so salvage therein, as those are, which give an eternall being to dead matter: It is true, if the word [Nothing] be taken in the affirmative; and the making, imposed upon Naturall Agents and finite power; That out of nothing, nothing is made. But seeing their great Doctor Aristotle himself confesseth, quod omnes Antiqui decreverunt quasi quoddam rerum principium, ipsumque infinitum: That all the Ancient decree a kind of beginning, and the same to be infinite: and a little after, more largely and plainly, Principium ejus est nullum, sed ipsum omnium cernitur esse principium, ac omnia complexi ac regere: it is strange, that this Philosopher, with his followers, should rather make choice out of falsehood, to conclude falsely; than out of truth, to resolve truly. For if we compare the World Univerfall, and all the unmeasurable

Cap. 15. v. 11.

Strac. Eng. 3.  
C. 2. v. Arjil.  
Phy. 3. 20.

ble Orbs of Heaven, and those marvellous bodies of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, with ipsum Infinitum : it may truly be said of them all, which himself affirms of his imaginary Materia prima, That they are neither quid, quale, nor quantum ; and therefore to bring finite (which hath no proportion with infinite) out of infinite (qui destruit omnem proportionem) is no wonder in Gods power. And therefore Anaximander, Melissus, and Empedocles, call the world universall, but particulam Universitatis & infinitatis ; a parcell of that which is the universality and the infinity it self. And Plato, but a shadow of God. But the other to prove the worlds eternity, urgeth this Maxime, That, A sufficient and effectuell cause being granted, an answerable effect thereof is also granted. Inferring, that God being for ever a sufficient and effectuell cause of the world, the effect of the cause should also have been for ever ; to wit, the world universall. But what a strange mockery is this in so great a Master, to confesse a sufficient and effectuell cause of the world (to wit, an almighty God) in his Antecedent ; and the same God to be a God restrained in his Conclusion ; to make God free in power, and bound in will ; able to effect, unable to determine ; able to make all things, and yet unable to make choice of the time when ? For this were impiously to resolve of God, as of naturall necessity ; which hath neither choice, nor will, nor understanding ; which cannot but work matter being present : as fire, to burn things combustible. Again he thus disputeth, That every Agent which can work, and doth not work ; if it afterward work, it is either thereto moved by it self, or by somewhat else : & so it passeth from power to act. But God (saith he) is immovable, and is neither moved by himself, nor by any other : but being alwayes the same, doth alwayes work. Whence he concludeth, If the world were caused by God, that he was for ever the cause thereof : and therefore eternall. The answer to this is very easie, For that Gods performing in due time that, which be ever determined at length to perform, doth not argue any alteration or change, but rather constancy in him. For the same action of his will, which made the world for ever, did also with-hold the effect to the time ordained. To this answer, in it self sufficient, others adde further, that the Pattern or Image of the world may be said to be eternall : which the Platonicks call, spirituale mundum ; and do in this sort distinguish the Idea and Creation in time. Spiritus ille mundus, mundi hujus exemplar, primumque Dei opus, vita aequali est Architecto, fuit semper cum illo, eritque semper. Mundus autem corporalis, quod secundum opus est Dei, decedit jam ab opifice ex parte una, quia non fuit semper : retinet alteram, quia fit semper futurus : That representative, or the intentionall word (say they) the sampler of this visible world, the first work of GOD, was equally ancient with the Architect ; for it was for ever with him, and ever shall be. This materiall world, the second work or creature of GOD, doth differ from the worker in this, That it was not from everlasting, and in this it doth agree, that it shall be for ever to come. The first point, That it was not for ever, all Christians confesse : The other they understand no otherwise, than that after the consummation of this world, there shall be a new Heaven and a new Earth, without any new creation of matter. But of these things we need not here stand to argue : though such opinions be not unworthy the propounding, in this consideration, of an eternall and unchangeable cause, producing a changeable and temporall effect, Touching which point Proclus the Platonist disputeth, That the compounded essence of the World (and because compounded,

Mar. Ficin. de  
immort. Animæ,  
l. 18. c. 1.

ponounded, therefore dissipable) is continued, & knit to the Divine Being, by an individvall & inseparable power, flowing from Divine unity ; and that the Worlds naturall appetite of God sheweth, that the same proceedeth from a good & understanding divine ; and that this vertue, by which the World is continued and knit together, must be infinite, that it may infinitely and everlastingly continue & preserve the same. Which infinite Vertue, the finite World (saith he) is not capable of, but receiveth it from the divine infinite, according to the temporall Nature it hath, successively every moment by little and little ; even as the whole materiall World is not altogether : but the abolished parts are departed by small degrees, and the parts yet to come, do by the same small degrees succeed, as the shadow of a tree in a River, seemeth to have continued the same a long time in the water, but it is perpetually renewed, in the continuall ebbing and flowing thereof.

But to return to them, which denying that ever the World had any beginning, withall deny that ever it shall have any end, & to this purpose affirm, That it was never heard, never read, never seen, no not by any reason perceived, that the Heavens have ever suffered corruption ; or that they appear any way the older by continuance ; or in any sort otherwise than they were ; which had they been subject to finall corruption, some change would have been discerned in so long a time. To this it is answered, That the little change as yet perceived, doth rather prove their newnesse, & that they have not continued so long, than that they will continue for ever as they are. And if conjecturall arguments may receive answer by conjectures : it then seemeth that some alteration may be found. For either Aristotle, Plinie, Strabo, Beda, Aquinas, and others, were grossly mistaken : or else those parts of the World, lying within the burnt Zone, were not in elder times habitable, by reason of the Suns heat, neither were the Seas under the Equinoctiall navigable. But we know by experience, that those Regions so situate, are filled with people, and exceeding temperate ; and the Sea, over which we navigate, passable enough. We reade also many Histories of Deluges : and how that in the time of Phaeton, divers places in the World were burnt up, by the Suns violent heat.

But in a word, this observation is exceeding feeble. For we know it for certain, That stone-walls, of matter moldring and friable, have stood two or three thousand yeers : that many things have been digged up out of the earth, of that depth, as supposed to have been buried by the generall Flood ; without any alteration either of substance or figure : yea, it is beleevd, and it is very probable, that the gold which is daily found in Mines, and Rocks, under ground, was created together with the Earth.

And if bodies elementary, and compounded, the eldest times have not invaded and corrupted : what great alteration should we look for in celestially and quintessentiall bodies ? And yet we have reason to think, that the Sun, by whose help all creatures are generate, doth not in these later Ages assist Nature, as heretofore. We have neither Giants, such as the eldest world had, nor mighty men, such as the elder world had ; but all things in generall are reputed of lesse vertue which from the Heavens receive vertue. Whence, if the nature of a Preface would permit a larger discourse, we might easily fetch store of proofe ; as that this world shall at length have end, as that once it had beginning.

And I see no good answer that can be made to this objection : if the World were eternall ; why not all things in the World eternall ? If there were no first,

Arist. Met. 2.  
Plin. l. 2. c. 8.  
Strab. l. 3.  
Beda de ratione  
tem. 11. c. 32.  
Thom p. 1.  
q. 102. art. 2.

## The Preface.

no cause, no Father, no Creator, no incomprehensible wisdom, but that every Nature had been alike eternall; and Man more rationall than every other Nature: Why had not the eternall reason of Man, provided for his eternall being in the World? For if all were equall, why not equall conditions to all? why should heavenly bodies live for ever, and the bodies of Men rot and die?

Again, who was it that appointed the Earth to keep the centre, and gave order that it should hang in the Air: that the Sun should travel between the Tropicks; and never exceed those bounds; nor fail to perform that Progress once in every year: the Moon to live by borrowed light: the fixed Stars (according to common opinion) to be fastned like nails in a Cart-wheel; and the Planets to wander at their pleasure? Or if none of these had power over other: was it out of Charity and Love, that the Sun by his perpetual travel within those two Circles, hath visited, given light unto, and retrieved all parts of the Earth, and the Creatures therein, by turns and times? Out of doubt, if the Sun have of his own accord kept this course in all eternity: He may justly be called eternall Charity, and everlasting Love. The same may be said of all the Stars: who being all of them most large and cleer fountains of vertue and operation, may also be called eternall Vertues: the Earth may be called eternall Patience, the Moon, an eternall Borrower and Beggar; and Man of all other the most miserable, eternally Mortall. And what were this, but to believe again in the old Play of the gods? Yea, in more gods by millions, than ever Hesiodus dream'd of. But in stead of this mad folly, we see it well enough with our feeble and mortall eyes: and the eyes of our reason discern it better. That the Sun, Moon, Stars, and the Earth, are limited, bounded, and constrained: themselves they have not constrained, nor could. Omne determinatum causam habet aliquam efficientem, quæ illud determinaverit: Every thing bounded hath some efficient cause, by which it is bounded.

Now for Nature; As by the ambiguity of this name, the school of Aristotle hath both commended many errors unto us, and sought also thereby to obscure the glory of the high Moderatour of all things, joining in the Creation, and in the governing of the World: so if the best definition be taken out of the second of Aristotles Physicks, or primo de Cælo, or out of the fifth of his Metaphysicks, I say that the best is but nominall, and serving onely to difference the beginning of Naturall motion from Artificiall: which yet the Academicks open better; when they call it, A Seminary strength, infused into matter by the Soule of the World: who give the first place to Providence, the second to Fate, and but the third to Nature. Providentia (by which they understand G O D) dux & caput; Fatum, medium ex providentia prodiens; Natura postremum. But be it what he will, or be it any of these (God excepted) or participating of all: yet that it hath choice or understanding (both which are necessarily in the cause of all things) no man hath avowed. For this is unanswerable of Lactantius, Is autem facit aliquid, qui aut voluntatem faciendi habet, aut scientiam: He onely can be said to be the doer of a thing, that hath either will or knowledge in the doing it.

But the will and science of Nature, are in these words truly exprest by Ficinus: Potest ubique Natura, vel per diversa media, vel ex diversis materiis, diversa facere: sublata vero mediorum materialiumque diversitate, vel unicum, vel similitimum operatur, neque potest quando adest materia non operari; It is the power

## The Preface.

power of Nature by diversity of meanes, or out of diversity of matter, to produce divers things: but taking away the diversity of meanes, and the diversity of matter, it then works but one or the like work; neither can it but work, matter being present. Now if Nature made choice of diversity of matter, to work all these variable works of Heaven and Earth, it had then both understanding and will; it had counsell to begin; reason to dispose; vertue and knowledge to finish, and power to govern: without which all things had been but one and the same: all of the matter of Heaven; or all of the matter of Earth. And if we grant Nature this will, and this understanding, this counsell, reason, and power: Cur Natura potius quam Deus nominetur? Why should we then call such a cause rather Nature, than God? God, of whom all men have notion, and give the first and highest place to Divine power: Omnes homines notionem deorum habent, omneque summum locum divino cuidam numini assignant. And this I say in short, that it is a true effect of true reason in man (were there no authority more binding than reason) to acknowledge and adore the first and most sublime power. Vera Philosophia, est ascensus ab his quæ fluunt, & oriuntur, & occidunt, ad ea quæ vere sunt, & semper eadem: True Philosophy is an ascending from the things which flow, and arise, and fall, to the things that are for ever the same.

For the rest; I do also account it not the meanest, but an impiety monstrous, to confound God and Nature: be it but in terms. For it is God, that onely disposeth of all things according to his own will, and maketh of one Earth, Vessels of honour and dishonour. It is Nature that can dispose of nothing, but according to the will of the matter wherein it worketh. It is God that commandeth all: it is Nature that is obedient to all. It is God that doth good unto all, knowing and loving the good he doth. It is Nature, that secondarily doth also good, but it neither knoweth nor loveth the good it doth. It is God, that hath all things in himself: Nature, nothing in it self. It is God, which is the Father, and hath begotten all things: It is Nature, which is begotten by all things, in which it lieth and laboureth, for by it selfe it existeth not. For shall we say, that it is out of affection to the Earth, that heavie things fall towards it? Shall we call it Reason, which doth conduct every River into the salt Sea? Shall we term it knowledge in fire, that makes it to consume combustible matter? If it be Affection, Reason, and Knowledge in these: by the same Affection, Reason, and Knowledge it is, that Nature worketh. And therefore seeing all things work as they do, (call it by Form, or Nature, or by what you please) yet because they work by an impulsion, which they cannot resist; or by a faculty, infused by the supremest power: we are neither to wonder at, nor to worship, the faculty that worketh, nor the Creature wherein it worketh. But herein lies the wonder: and to him is the worship due, who hath created such a Nature in things, and such a faculty, as neither knowing it selfe, the matter, wherein it worketh, nor the vertue and power which it hath; do yet work all things to their last and uttermost perfection. And therefore every reasonable man, taking to himself for a ground that which is granted by all Antiquity, and by all men truly learned that ever the World had, to wit; That there is a power infinite, and eternall (which also necessary doth prove unto us, without the help of Faith, and Reason; without the force of Authority) all things do as easily follow which have been delivered by divine letters, as the waters of a running River do successively

La. E. de ira Dei  
l. i. c. 10.

Arif. l. i. de  
Cælo. c. 3. T. 22.

## The Preface.

cessively pursue each other from the first fountains.

Thus much I say it is, that Reason it self hath taught us: and this is the beginning of knowledge. Sapientia præcedit, Religio sequitur: quia prius est Deum scire, consequens colere; Sapientia goes before, Religion follows: because it is first to know God, and then to worship him. This Sapientia Plato calleth absoluti boni scientiam, The science of the absolute good: And another, Scientiam rerum primarum, sempiternarum, perpetuarum. For Faith (saith Isidore) is not extorted by violence; but by reason and examples perswaded: Fides nequaquam vi extorquetur, sed ratione & exemplis luadetur. I confesse it, That to enquire further, as of the Essence of God, of his power, of his Art, and by what mean he created the world: Or of his secret judgement, and the causes, is not an affect of Reason: Sed cum ratione infantiunt; but they grow mad with reason, that enquire after it: For as it is no shame nor dishonour (saith a French Author) de faire ar-rest au but qu'on naiceu surpasser; For a man to rest himself there, where he findes it impossible to passe on further: so whatsoever is beyond, and out of the reach of true reason, it acknowledgeth it to be so; as understanding it self not to be infinite, but according to the Name and Nature it hath, to be a Teacher, that best knows the end of his own Art. For seeing both Reason and Necessity teach us (Reason, which is pars divini spiritus in corpus humanum meris) that the world was made by a power infinite; and yet how it was made, it cannot teach us: and seeing the same Reason and Necessity make us know, that the same infinite power is every where in the world; and yet how every where, it cannot inform us: our belief hereof is not weakened, but greatly strengthened by our ignorance, because it is the same Reason that tells us, That such a Nature cannot be said to be God, that can be in all conceived by man.

I have been already over-long, to make any large discourse either of the parts of the following Story, or in mine own excuse: especially in the excuse of this or that passage; seeing the whole is exceeding weak and defective. Among the grossest, the unsutable division of the books, I could not know how to excuse, had I not been directed to enlarge the building after the foundation was laid, and the first part finished. All men know that there is no great Art in the dividing evenly of those things, which are subject to number and measure. For the rest, it sutes well enough with a great many Books of this Age, which speak too much, and yet say little; Ipsi nobis turto subducimur; We are stolen away from our selves, setting a high price on all that is our own. But hereof, though a late good Writer make complaint, yet shall it not lay hold on me, because I beleeeve as he doth; That who so thinks himself the wisest man, is but a poor and miserable ignorant. Those that are the best men of war, against all the vanities and fooleries of the World, do al-ways keep the strongest guards against themselves, to defend them from them-selves; from self love, self estimation, and self opinion.

Generally concerning the order of the Worke, I have onely taken counsell from the Argument. For of the Assyrians, which after the down-fall of Babel take up the first part, and were the first great Kings of the World, there came little to the view of posterity: some few enterprises, greater in fame than faith, of Ninus and Semiramis, excepted.

It was the story of the Hebrews, of all before the Olympiads, that overcame the consuming disease of time, and preserved it self from the very cradle and be-ginning

## The Preface.

ginning to this day: and yet not so entire, but that the large discourses thereof (to which in many Scriptures we are referred) are no where found. The Fragments of other Stories, with the actions of those Kings and Princes which shot up here and there in the same time, I am driven to relate by way of digression: of which we may say with Virgil:

Apparent rari nantes in gurgite vasto;

They appear here and there floating in the great gulf of time.

To the same first Ages do belong the report of many Inventions therein found, and from them derived to us; though most of the Authors Names have perished in so long a Navigation. For those Ages had their Laws; they had diversity of Government; they had Kingly rule; Nobility; Policy in war; Navigation, and all, or the most of needfull Trades. To speak therefore of these (seeing in a generall History we should have left a great deal of Nakedness, by their omission) it cannot properly be called a digression. True it is, that I have made also many others: which if they shall be laid to my charge, I must cast the fault into the great heap of humane error. For seeing we digresse in all the waies of our lives: yea, seeing the life of man is nothing else but digression; I may the better be excused, in writing their lives and actions. I am not altogether ignorant in the Laws of History, and of the Kindes.

The same hath been taught by many, but by no man better, and with greater brevity, than by that excellent learned Gentleman Sir Francis Bacon. Christian laws are also taught us by the Prophets and Apostles; and every day preach't unto us. But we still make large digressions: yea, the Teachers themselves do not (in all) keep the path which they point out to others.

For the rest, after such time as the Persians had wrested the Empire from the Chaldeans, they had raised a great Monarchy, producing actions of more importance than were elsewhere to be found: it was agreeable to the Order of Story, to attend this Empire; whilst it so flourished, that the affairs of the Nations adjoining had reference therunto. The like observance was to be used towards the fortunes of Greece, when they again began to get ground upon the Persians; as also towards the affairs of Rome, when the Romans grew more mighty than the Greeks.

As for the Medes, the Macedonians, the Sicilians, the Carthaginians, and other Nations who resisted the beginnings of the former Empires, and afterwards became but parts of their composition and enlargement: it seemed best to remember what was known of them from their several beginnings, in such times and places as they in their flourishing estates opposed those Monarchies, which in the end swallowed them up. And herein I have followed the best Geographers: who seldom give names to those small brooks, whereof many, joyned together, make great Rivers; till such time as they become united, and run in main stream to the Ocean Sea. If the Phrase be weak, and the Stile not every-where like it self; the first shews their legitimation and true Parent; the second will excuse it self upon the Variety of Matter. For Virgil, who wrote his Eclogues, gracili avena, used stronger pipes, when he sounded the wars of Aeneas. It may also be laid to my charge, that I use divers Hebrew words in my first book, and elsewhere, in which language others may think, and I my self acknowledge it, that I am altogether ignorant: but it is true, that some of them I finde in Montanus, others in Latine Character in S. Senensis; and of the rest I have borrowed the interpretation of some of my friends. But say I had been beholding to neither, yet were it not to be wondered at having had

## The Preface.

an eleven yeers leasure, to attain the knowledge of that, or of any other tongue ; Howsoever, I know that it will be said by many, That I might have been more pleasing to the Reader, if I had written the Story of mine own times, having been permitted to draw water as neer the Well-head as another. To this I answer, that who soever in writing a modern History, shall follow truth too neer the heels, it may haply strike out his teeth. There is no Mistresse or Guide, that hath led her followers and servants into greater miseries. He that goes after her too far off, loseth her sight, and loseth himself : and he that walks after her at a middle distance ; I know not whether I should call that kinde of course, Temper, or Baseness. It is true, that I never travelled after mens opinions, when I might have made the best use of them : and I have now too few dayes remaining, to imitate those, that either out of extreme ambition, or extreme cowardise, or both, do yet (when death hath them on his shoulders) flatter the world, between the bed and the grave. It is enough for me (being in that state I am) to write of the eldest times : wherein also why may it not be said, that in speaking of the past, I point at the present, and taxe the vices of those that are yet living, in their persons that are long since dead ; and have it laid to my charge ? But this I cannot help, though innocent. And certainly if there be any, that finding themselves spotted like the Tigers of old time, shall finde fault with me for painting them over anew, they shall therein accuse themselves justly, and me falsely.

For I protest before the Majesty of God, That I malice no man under the Sun. Impossible I know it is to please all : seeing few or none are so pleased with themselves, or so assured of themselves, by reason of their subjection to their private passions, but that they seem divers persons in one and the same day. Seneca hath said it, and so do I : Unus mihi pro populo erat : and to the same effect Epicurus, Hoc ego non multis, sed tibi ; (or as it hath since lamentably fallen out) I may borrow the resolution of an ancient Philosopher, Satis est unus, Satis est nullus. For it was for the service of that inestimable Prince Henry ; the successive hope, and one of the greatest of the Christian World, that I undertook this Work. It pleased him to peruse some part thereof, and to pardon what was amisse. It is now left to the World without a Master : from which all that is presented, hath received both blons and thanks : Eadem probamus, eadem reprehendimus : hic exitus est omnis iudicii, in quo lis secundum plures datur. But these discourses are idle. I know that as the charitable will judge charitably ; so against those, qui gloriantur in malitia, my present adversity hath disarmed me. I am on the ground already ; and therefore have not far to fall : and for rising again, as in the Naturall privation, there is no recession to habit ; so it is seldome seen in the privation politick. I do therefore forbear to stile my Readers Gentle, Courteous, and Friendly, thereby to beg their good opinions, or to promise a second and third volume (which I also intend) if the first receive grace and good acceptance. For that which is already done, may be thought enough ; and too much : and it is certain, let us claw the Reader with never so many courteous phrases, yet shall we evermore be thought fools that write foolishly. For conclusion, all the hope I have lies in this, That I have already found more ungentle and uncourteous Readers of my Love towards them, and well-deserving of them, than ever I shall do again. For had it been otherwise ; I should hardly have had this leasure to have made my self a fool in print.



## The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, of the First Book of the First Part of the History of the World.

### CHAP. I. Of the Creation and Preservation of the WORLD.

§. I.  
**T**hat the Invisible God is seen in his  
Creatures.

§. II.  
That the wisest of the Heathen, whose Authority is not to be despised, have acknowledged the World to have been created by God.

§. III.  
Of the meaning of In Principio, Genes. i. ver. 1.

§. IV.  
Of the meaning of the words [Heaven and Earth] Gen. i. 1.

§. V.  
That the substance of the Waters, as mixed in the body of the Earth, is by Moses understood in the word [Earth :] and that the Earth, by the Attributes of Unformed and Void, is described as the Chaos of the ancient Heathen.

§. VI.  
How it is to be understood, that the Spirit of God moved upon the Waters : and that this is not to be searched curiously.

§. VII.  
Of the Light created, as the material substance of the Sun ; and of the nature of it, and difficulty of knowledge of it : and of the excellency and use of it : and of motion, and heat annexed unto it.

§. VIII.  
Of the Firmament, and of the Waters above

the Firmament : and whether there be any Crystalline Heaven, or any Primum Mobile.

§. IX.  
A conclusion, repeating the summe of the works in the Creation, which are reduced to three heads : The creation of matters ; The forming of it ; The finishing of it.

§. X.  
That nature is no Principium per se ; nor Forme, the giver of being : and of our ignorance, how second causes should have any proportion with their effects.

§. XI.  
Of Fate, and that the Stars have great influence : and that their operation may diversly be prevented or furthered.

§. XII.  
Of Prescience.

§. XIII.  
Of Providence.

§. XIV.  
Of Predestination.

§. XV.  
Of Fortune : and of the reason of some things that seem to be by Fortune, and against Reason and Providence.



# The Contents

## CHAP. II.

Of Mans estate in his first Creation, and of Gods rest.

§. I.  
Of the Image of God, according to which Man was first created.

§. II.  
Of the intellectuall minde of Man, in which there is much of the Image of God: and that this Image is much deformed by sinne.

§. III.  
Of our base and fraile bodies: and that the care thereof should yeeld to the immortall soule.

§. IV.  
Of the Spirit of life, which God breathed into man in his Creation.

§. V.  
That Man is (as it were) a little World: with a digression touching our mortality.

§. VI.  
Of the free power which Man had in his first Creation to dispose of himself.

§. VII.  
Of Gods ceasing to create any more: and of the cause thereof, because the universall created was exceeding good.

## CHAP. III.

Of the place of Paradise.

§. I.  
That the seat of Paradise is greatly mistaken, and that it is no marvell that men should erre.

§. II.  
A recitall of strange opinions touching Paradise.

§. III.  
That there was a true locall Paradise Eastward, in the Country of Eden.

§. IV.  
Why it should be needfull to intreat diligently of the place of Paradise.

§. V.  
That the Flood hath not utterly defaced the marks of Paradise, nor caused Hills in the Earth.

§. VI.  
That Paradise was not the whole Earth, as some have thought, making the Ocean to be the Fountain of those four Rivers.

## §. VII.

Of their opinion which make Paradise as high as the Moon: and of others which make it higher than the middle Region of the aire.

§. VIII.  
Of their opinion that seat Paradise under the Equinoctiall: and of the pleasant habitation under those Climates.

§. IX.  
Of the change of the names of places; and that besides that Eden in Cœlofryia, there is a Country in Babylon once of this name, as is proved out of Esay 37. and Ezech. 27.

§. X.  
Of divers other testimonies of the Land of Eden: And that this is the Eden of Paradise.

§. XI.  
Of the difficulty in the Text, which seemeth to make the four Rivers to rise from one stream.

§. XII.  
Of the strange fertility and happinesse of the Babylonian soile, as it is certain that Eden was such.

§. XIII.  
Of the river Gehon, and the land of Cush: and of the ill translating of Æthiopia for Cush, 2 Chron. 21. 16.

§. XIV.  
A conclusion, by way of repetition of some things spoken of before.

## CHAP. IV.

Of the two chief Trees in the Garden of Paradise.

§. I.  
That the Tree of Life was a materiall tree: and in what sense it is to be taken, that Man by his eating the forbidden fruit, is made subject to death.

§. II.  
Of Becanus his opinion, that the tree of Knowledge was Ficus Indica.

§. III.  
Of Becanus his not unwitty allegorizing of the story of his Ficus Indica.

§. IV.  
Of the name of the Tree of Knowledge of good and evill: with some other notes touching the story of Adams sin.

## CHAP.

# Of the second Book.

## CHAP. V.

Of divers Memorable things between the fall of Adam, and the Flood of Noah.

§. I.  
Of the cause and revenge of Cains sin: and of his going out from God.

§. II.  
Of Cains dwelling in the land of Nod: and of his City Enoch.

§. III.  
Of Moses his omitting sundry things concerning Cains generation.

§. IV.  
Of the diversities in the Age of the Patriarchs, when they begat their children.

§. V.  
Of the long lives of the Patriarchs: and some of late memory.

§. VI.  
Of the Patriarchs delivering their knowledge by Tradition: and that Enoch writ before the Flood.

§. VII.  
Of the men of War before the Flood.

§. VIII.  
That the Giants, by Moses so called, were indeed men of huge bodies: as also divers in later times.

## CHAP. VI.

Of Idolatrous corruptions; quickly rising, and hardly at length vanquishing in the world: and of the Reliques of Truth touching these ancient times, obscurely appearing in Fables and old Legends.

§. I.  
That in old corruptions we may finde some signes of more ancient truth.

§. II.  
That the corruptions themselves were very ancient: as in the Family of Noah, and in the old Egyptians.

§. III.  
That in proceesse of time these lesser errors drew on greater, as appeareth in the grosse superstitions of the Egyptians.

§. IV.  
That from the Reliques of ancient Records among the Egyptians & others, the first Idols

and Fables were invented: and that the first Jupiter was Cain, Vulcan, Tubalcain, &c.

§. V.  
Of the three chiefest Jupiters, and also the strange story of the third.

§. VI.  
Of Cham, and other wicked ones, whereof some gat, some affected the name of gods.

§. VII.  
That the wiser of the ancient Heathen had far better opinions of God.

§. VIII.  
That Heathenism, and Judaism, after many wounds, were at length about the same time under Julian miraculously confounded.

§. IX.  
Of the last refuger of the Devill, to maintain his Kingdom.

## CHAP. VII.

Of Noahs Flood.

§. I.  
Of Gods fore-warning: and some humane testimonies: and some doubting touching the truth of Noahs Flood.

§. II.  
Of the flood in the time of Ogyges: and that this was not Noahs Flood.

§. III.  
Of Deucalians flood: and that this was not Noahs Flood; nor the Umbria in Italy a remnant of any universall Flood.

§. IV.  
Of some other Records testifying the universall Flood: and of two ancient Deluges in Egypt: and of some elsewhere.

§. V.  
That the Flood of Noah was supernaturall, though some say it might have been fore-seen by the Stars.

§. VI.  
That there was no need of any new Creation of matter to make the univer; all Flood: and what are Cataractæ Cœli, Gen. 7. 11.

§. VII.  
Of some remainder of the memory of Noah among the Heathen.

§. VIII.  
Of sundry particulars touching the Ark: as the place where it was made; the matter, substance, and name.

§. IX.  
That the Ark was of sufficient capacity.

§. X.  
That the Ark rested upon part of the Hill  
a 2 Taurus

**Taurus (or Caucasus) between the East Indies and Scythia.**

|| I.  
**A** Preterition of some questions lesse materiall: with a note of the use of this question, to finde out the Metropolis of Nations.

|| II.  
A proposall of the common opinion, That the Ark rested upon some of the Hills of Armenia.

|| III.  
The first Argument against the common opinion: They that came to build Babel, would have come sooner, had they come from so near a place as Armenia.

|| IV.  
The second Argument, That the Eastern people were more ancient in populosity, and in all humane glory.

|| V.  
The third Argument; From the wonderful resistance which Semiramis found in the East-Indies.

|| VI.  
The fourth Argument; From divers considerations in the person of Noah.

|| VII.  
Of the senselesse opinion of Anniius, the Commenter upon Berosus, That the Ark rested upon Montes Caspii in Armenia; and yet upon Gordiei, which are three hundred miles distant also in Armenia, and yet in Scythia.

|| VIII.  
The fifth Argument; The Vine must grow naturally near the place where the Ark rested.

|| IX.  
An answer to an objection out of the words of the Text, The Lord scattered them from thence upon the face of the whole Earth.

|| X.  
An answer to the objection from the name of Ararat taken for Armenia; and the height of the Hills there.

|| XI.  
Of Caucasus, and divers far higher Hills than the Armenian.

|| XII.  
Of divers incongruities, if in this Story we should take Ararat for Armenia.

|| XIII.  
Of the contrary situation of Armenia unto the place noted in the Text: and that it is no marvell, that the same ledge of Hills running from Armenia to India, should keep the same name all a-long, and even in India be called Ararat.

|| XIV.

Of the best Vine naturally growing on the South side of the Mountains Caucaſi, and toward the East-Indies, and of other excellencies of the soile.

|| XV.

The conclusion, with a brief repeating of divers chief points.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the first planting of Nations after the Flood: and of the Sons of Noah; Shem, Ham, and Japhet, by whom the Earth was re-peopled.

§. I.

**W** Hether Shem and Ham were elder than Japhet.

§. II.

Of divers things that in all reason are to be presumed, touching the first planting of the World; as that all Histories must yeeld to Moses: that the World was not planted all at once, nor without great direction: and, that the known great Lords of the first Ages were of the issue of Ham.

§. III.

Of the Isles of the Gentiles in Japhets portion: of Berosus his too speedy seating Gomer the son of Japhet in Italy; and another of Japhets sons, Tubal, in Spain: and also of the antiquity of Longinque Navigation.

§. IV.

Of Gog and Magog, Tubal, and Mefech, seated first about Asia the lesse, out of Ezech. 38.39.

§. V.

Against the fabulous Berosus his Fiction, That the Italian Janus was Noah.

§. VI.

That Gomer also, and his son Togorma, of the posterity of Japhet, were first seated about Asia the lesse: and that from thence they spread West-ward into Europe; and North-ward into Samaria.

§. VII.

Of Javan the fourth son of Japhet; and of Mefech of Aram, and Melhech of Japhet.

§. VIII.

Of Afcanecz and Riphath, the two elder sons of Gomer.

§. IX.

Of the four sons of Javan: and of the double signification of Tharſis, either for a proper name, or for the Sea.

§. X.

§. X.

That the seat of Chush, the eldest son of Ham, was in Arabia, not in Æthiopia: and of strange Fables, and ill translations of Scripture, grounded upon the mistaking of this point.

|| I.

**O**F Josephus his Tale of an Æthiopheſſe, who to Moses; grounded on the mistaking of the seat of Chush.

|| II.

A dispute against the Tale of Josephus.

|| III.

Chush ill expounded for Æthiopia. Ezechiel 29.10.

|| IV.

Another place of Ezechiel, chap. 30. vers. 9. in like manner mistaken.

|| V.

A place, Esay 18. v. 1. in like manner corrupted, by taking Chush for Æthiopia.

|| VI.

That upon the like mistaking, both Terhaka, the Story of Sennacherib, and Zera in the Story of Asa, are unadvisedly made Æthiopians.

|| VII.

A farther exposition of the place, Esay 18.1.

§. XI.

Of the Plantation and Antiquities of Egypt.

|| I.

**T**hat Mizraim the chief Planter of Egypt, and the rest of the sons of Ham, were seated in order one by another.

|| II.

Of the time, about which the name of Egypt began to be known: and of the Egyptians Lunar years, which made their Antiquities seem the more fabulous.

|| III.

Of certain vain assertions of the Antiquity of the Egyptians.

|| IV.

Against Pererius, That it is not unlikely, but that Egypt was peopled within two hundred years after the Creation: at least, that both it, and the most parts of the world were peopled before the Flood.

|| V.

Of some other reasons against the opinion of Pererius.

|| VI.

Of the words of Moses, Genes. 10. ver. ult. whereupon Pererius grounded his opinion.

|| VII.

A conclusion, resolving of that which is

most likely, touching the Egyptian Antiquities: with somewhat of Phut, another son of Ham, which peopled Lybia.

§. XII.

Of the eleven sons of Canaan, the fourth son of Ham.

|| I.

**O**F the bounds of the Land of Canaan; with the names of his eleven sons.

|| II.

Of the portions of Zidon and Heth.

|| III.

Of the Jebusites and Amorites.

|| IV.

Of the Gergesites, Hevites, and Harkites.

|| V.

Of Sini and Arvadi.

|| VI.

Of Zemari.

|| VII.

Of Hamathi.

§. XIII.

Of the sons of Chush, excepting Nimrod, of whom hereafter.

|| I.

**T**hat the most of the sons of Chush were seated in Arabia the happy: and of the Sabæans that robbed Job: and of the Queen that came to Solomon.

|| II.

Josephus his opinion of Dedan, one of the issue of Chush, to have been seated in the West Æthiopia, disproved out of Ezechiel and Hieremie.

§. XIV.

Of the issue of Mizraim: and of the place of Hieremie, ch. 9. v. 7.

§. XV.

Of the issue of Sem.

|| I.

**O**F Elam, Assur, Arphaxad, and Lud.

|| II.

Of Aram, and his sons.

|| III.

Of the division of the earth in the time of Phaleg, one of the sons of Heber, &c.

|| IV.

Of the sons of Jochan, the other son of Heber.

|| V.

Of Ophir, one of Joſtans sons, and of Peru: and of that voyage of Solomon.

|| VI.

Of Havilah the son of Joſtan, who also passed into the East Indies: and of Melha, and Sepher, named in the bordering of the Families of Joſtan; with a conclusion of this Discourse, touching the Plantation of the World.

## The Contents

### CHAP. IX.

*Of the beginning and establishing of Government.*

#### §. I.

**O**F the proceeding from the first Government under the eldest of families to Regall, and from Regall absolute to Regall tempered with Laws.

#### §. II.

Of the three commendable sorts of Government, with their opposites : and of the degrees of humane Societic.

#### §. III.

Of the good Government of the first Kings.

#### §. IV.

Of the beginning of Nobility : and of the vaine vaunt thereof without vertue.

### CHAP. X.

*Of Nimrod, Belus, and Ninus : and of memorable things about those times.*

#### §. I.

**T**HAT Nimrod was the first after the Flood that reigned like Sovereigne Lord : and that his beginning seemeth to have been of just authority.

#### §. II.

That Nimrod, Belus, and Ninus, were three distinct persons.

#### §. III.

That Nimrod, not Assur, built Ninive : and that it is probable out of Elay 23.13. that Assur built Ur of the Chaldees.

#### §. IV.

Of the acts of Nimrod and Belus, as far as now they are known.

#### §. V.

That wee are not to marvell how so many Kingdomes could be erected about these times : and of Vexoris of Egypt ; and of Tanais of Scythia.

#### §. VI.

Of the Name of Belus, and other Names affixed unto it.

#### §. VII.

Of the worshipping of Images, begun from Belus in Babel.

#### §. VIII.

Of the Wars of Ninus : and lastly, of his War against Zoroaster.

### CHAP. XI.

*Of Zoroaster, supposed to have been the chief Author of Magick Arts ; and of divers kinds of Magick.*

#### §. I.

**T**HAT Zoroaster was not Cham, nor the first Inventer of Astrologie, or of Magick : and that there were divers great Magicians of this name.

#### §. II.

Of the Name of Magia : and that it was anciently far divers from Conjuring and Witchcraft.

#### §. III.

That the good knowledge in the ancient Magick is not to be condemned ; though the Devill here, as in other kinds, hath sought to obtrude evill things under the name and colour of good things.

#### §. IV.

That Daniels mistaking Nabuchodonosors condemning of the Magicians, doth not justify all their practices.

#### §. V.

The abuse of things, which may be found in all kinds, is not to condemne the right use of them.

#### §. VI.

Of the divers kinds of unlawfull Magick.

#### §. VII.

Of divers waies by which the Devill seemeth to worke his wonders.

#### §. VIII.

That none was ever raised from the dead, by the power of the devill : and that it was not the true Samuel which appeared to Saul.

### CHAP. XII.

*Of the memorable buildings of Ninus : and of his wife Semiramis : and of other her acts*

#### §. I.

**O**F the magnificent building of Ninive by Ninus : and of Babylon by Semiramis.

#### §. II.

Of the end of Ninus : and beginning of Semiramis reigne.

#### §. III.

Of Semiramis Parentage, and education : and Metamorphosis of her Mother.

#### §. IV

## Of the second Book.

### §. IV.

*Of her Expedition into India, and death after discomfiture : with a note of the improbability of her vices.*

### §. V.

*Of the Temple of Belus, built by Semiramis : and of the Pyramides of Egypt.*

## The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, in the second Book of the first Part of the History of the World.

### CHAP. I.

*Of the time of the birth of Abraham : and of the use of this question, for the ordering of the story of the Assyrian Empire.*

#### §. I.

**O**F some of the successours of Semiramis : with a brief transition to the question, about the time of the Birth of Abraham.

#### §. II.

A proposall of reasons or arguments, that are brought to prove Abraham was born in the year 292. after the Flood, and not in the year 352.

#### §. III.

The answer to one of the Objections proposed, shewing that Abraham made but one journey out of Mesopotamia into Canaan ; and it, after his fathers death.

#### §. IV.

The answer to another of the Objections proposed, shewing that it was not unlikely, that Terah should beget Abraham in his hundred and thirtieth year.

#### §. V.

The answer to two more of the Objections, shewing that we may have certainty of Abrahams age from the Scripture, though we make not Abraham the eldest son : and that there was great cause, why in the story of Abraham his two brethren should be respected.

#### §. VI.

That the naming of Abraham first of the three Brethren, Gen.11.v.26. doth not prove that he was the eldest : together with divers

reasons, proving that Abraham was not the eldest son of Terah.

#### §. VII.

A conclusion of this dispute, noting the Authors on both sides : with an admonition, that they which shorten the times, make all ancient stories the more improbable.

#### §. VIII.

A computation of the times of the Assyrians and others, grounded upon the times noted in the story of Abraham.

#### §. IX.

That Amraphel, one of the four Kings whom Abraham overthrew, Gen.14. may probably be thought to have been Ninias the son of Ninus.

#### §. X.

Of Arioch another of the four Kings : and that Ellas, whereof he is said to have been King, lies between Cœlofryia, and Arabia Petra.

#### §. XI.

Of Tidal, another of the four Kings.

#### §. XII.

That Chedorlaomer, the chief of the four Kings, was not of Assyria, but of Persia : and that the Assyrian Empire at this time was much impaired.

#### §. XIII.

That it is not improbable, that the four Kings had no Dominion in the Countries named, but that they had elsewhere with their Colonies planted themselves, and so retained the names of the Countries whence they came : which if it be so, we need not to say that Amraphel was Ninias, nor trouble our selves with many other difficulties.

### CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Kings of Egypt, from the first peopling of it after the Flood, to the time of the delivery of the Israelites from thence.

§. I.

A Brief of the Names and Times of the first Kings of Egypt: with a note of the causes of difficulty in resolving of the truth in these points.

§. II.

That by the account of the Egyptian Dynasties, and otherwise, it appears that Chams reign in Egypt began in the year after the Flood 191.

§. III.

That these Dynasties were not divers Families of Kings, but rather successions of Regents; oftentimes many under one King.

§. IV.

Of Cham, and his son Mizraim, or Ofliris.

§. V.

Of the time when Ofliris reign ended: and that Jacob came into Egypt in the time of Ofliris the son of Ofliris.

§. VI.

Of Typhon, Hercules Ægyptus, Orus, and the two Sefotres, successively reigning after Mizraim: and of divers errors about the former Sefotres.

§. VII.

Of Busris, the first oppressor of the Israelites: and of his successor Queen Thermutis, that took up Moses out of the water.

§. VIII.

Of the two brethren of Queen Thermutis: and what King it was under whom Moses was born: and who it was that perished in the Red Sea.

CHAP. III.

Of the delivery of Israel out of Egypt.

§. I.

Of the time of Moses birth: and how long the Israelites were oppressed in Egypt.

§. II.

Of divers Cities and places in Egypt, mentioned in this story, or elsewhere in the Scripture.

§. III.

Of the cruelty against the Israelites young children in Egypt: and of Moses his preservation and education.

§. IV.

Of Moses his flying out of Egypt; and the opinions of certain ancient Historians: of his War in Æthiopia, and of his marriage there: Philo his judgement of his Pastoral life: and that of Pererius of the Books of Genesis and Job.

§. V.

Of Pharaohs pursuit of the Israelites: and of their passage towards the Red Sea, so far as Succoth.

§. VI.

Of the Solar and Lunar years: and how they are reconciled: with the form of the Hebrew year, and their manner of intercalation.

§. VII.

Of the passage of Israel from Succoth, towards the Red Sea: and of the divers ways leading out of Egypt.

§. VIII.

Of their passage over the Red Sea: and of the Red Sea it self.

§. IX.

That the passage through the Red Sea was miraculous, and not at low ebb.

CHAP. IV.

Of the journeying of the Israelites from the Red Sea, to the place where the Law was given them: with a Discourse of Laws.

§. I.

A Transition, by way of recapitulation of some things touching Chronologie, with a continuation of the story, until the Amalekites met with the Israelites.

§. II.

Of the Amalekites, Madianites, and Kenites, upon occasion of the battell with the Amalekites, and Jethro's coming, who being a Kenite, was Priest of Madian.

§. III.

Of the time when the Law was given: with divers commendations of the invention of Laws.

§. IV.

Of the name and meaning of the words Law, and Right.

§. V.

§. V.

Of the definition of Laws, and of the Law eternal.

§. VI.

Of the Law of Nature.

§. VII.

Of the written Law of God.

§. VIII.

Of the unwritten Law of God, given to the Patriarchs by Tradition.

§. IX.

Of the Morall, Judiciall, and Ceremoniall Law: with a Note prefixed, How the Scripture speaketh not alway in one sense, when it nameth the Law of Moses.

§. X.

A proposall of nine other points to be considered; with a touch of the five first.

§. XI.

Of the sixth point, to wit, of the difference and agreement of the Old and New Testament.

§. XII.

Of the rest of the points proposed.

§. XIII.

Of the severall Commandments of the Decalogue: and that the difficultie is not in respect of the Commandments, but by our default.

§. XIII.

If there were not any Religion, nor Judgement to come, yet the Decalogue were most necessary to be observed.

§. XV.

Of humane Law, written, and unwritten.

§. XVI.

That onely the Prince is exempt from humane Laws, and in what sort.

CHAP. V.

The Story of the Israelites, from the receiving of the Law, to the death of Moses.

§. I.

Of the numbering and disposing of the host of Israel, for their marches through the Wilderness: with a Note of the reverence given to the worship of God, in this ordering of their Troupes.

§. II.

The Offerings of the twelve Princes: The Passover of the second year: The departing of Jethro.

§. III.

The voyage from Horeb to Kades: the murmurings by the way: and the cause of their turning back to the Red Sea.

§. IV.

Of their unwillingnesse to returne: with the punishment thereof: and of divers accidents in the returne.

§. V.

Of Moses arrivall at Zin Kades: and the accidents while they abode there.

§. VI.

Of their compassing Idumæa, and travelling to Arnon the border of Moab.

§. VII.

Of the Book of the Battells of the Lord, mentioned in this Story, and of other Books mentioned in Scripture, which are lost.

§. VIII.

Of Moses his sharing the issue of Lot, and of the Giants in those parts: and of Sehon and Og.

§. IX.

Of the troubles about the Madianites, and of Moses his death.

§. X.

Observations out of the Story of Moses, How God disposeth both the smallest occasions and the greatest resistances, to the effecting of his purpose.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Nations with whom the Israelites had dealing after their coming out of Egypt: And of the men of Renown in other Nations, about the times of Moses and Josua: with the sum of the History of Josua.

§. I.

How the Nations with whom the Israelites were to have warre, were divers waies (as it were) prepared to be their Enemies.

§. II.

Of the Kings of the Canaanites and Madianites, mentioned in the Ancient wars of the Israelites.

§. III.

Of the Amalekites and Ismaelites.

§. IV.

## The Contents

## Of the second Book.

§. IV.  
Of the *instauration of civilitie* in Europe  
about these times; and of *Prometheus* and  
Atlas.

§. V.  
Of *Ducalion* and *Phaeton*.

§. VI.  
Of *Hermes* and *Trismagistus*.

§. VII.  
Of *Jannes* and *Jambres*, and some others  
that lived about these times.

§. VIII.  
A brief of the *History of Joshua*: and of the  
space between him and *Othniel*: and of the  
remainders of the *Canaanites*; with a Note  
of some *Contemporaries* to *Joshua*: and of the  
brsach of Faith.

CHAP. VII.  
Of the Tribes of *Israel* that were plan-  
ted in the borders of *Phœnicia*: with  
sundry Stories depending  
on those places.

§. I.  
The *Proem* to the description of the whole  
Land of *Canaan*; with an exposition of  
the name of *Syria*.

§. II.  
Of the bounds of the Land of *Canaan*, and  
of the promises touching this land.

§. III.  
Of the Tribe of *Asher*.

§. I.  
The bounds of the Tribe of *Asher*.  
§. II.  
Of *Zidon*.

§. III.  
Of *Sarepta*, with a brief History of *Tyre* in  
the same Coast.

§. IV.  
Of *Protomais*, or *Acon*.

§. V.  
Of the Castle of *S. George*.

§. VI.  
Of *Acziba*, *Sandalium*, and others.

§. VII.  
Of *Thoron*, *Giscala*, and some other pla-  
ces.

§. VIII.  
Of the Rivers and Mountains of *Asher*.

§. IV.  
Of the Tribe of *Nephthalim*.

§. I.  
Of the bounds of *Nephthalim*: and of  
*Heliopolis* and *Abilia*.

§. II.  
Of *Hazor*.

§. III.  
Of *Cæsarea Philippi*.

§. IV.  
Of *Capernaum*, and the Cities of *Deca-  
polis*.

§. V.  
Of *Hamath*.

§. VI.  
Of *Reblatha*, and *Rama*, and divers other  
Towns.

§. V.  
The Tribe of *Zabulon*.

§. VI.  
The Tribe of *Issacher*.

§. VII.  
The half of the Tribe of *Manasse*.

§. I.  
Of the bounds of this half Tribe: and of  
*Scythopolis*, *Salem*, *Therfa*, and others.

§. II.  
Of *Cæsarea Palestina*, and some other  
Towns.

CHAP. VIII.  
Of the Kingdom of *Phœnicia*.

§. I.  
The bounds and chief Cities and Founders;  
and name of this Kingdom: and of the  
invention of Letters ascribed to them.

§. II.  
Of the King of *Tyre*.

§. III.  
Of *Bozius* his conceit, that the *Edumæans*,  
inhabiting along the Red Sea, were the Pro-  
genitours of the *Tyrians*: and that the *Ty-  
rians* from them received and brought into  
*Phœnicia* the Knowledge of the most true  
G O D.

CHAP. IX.  
Of the Tribe of *Ephraim*: and of the  
Kings of the Ten Tribes, whose  
Head was *E-  
phraim*

§. I.  
Of the memorable places in the Tribe of  
*Ephraim*.

§. II.

§. II.  
Of the Kings of the ten Tribes, from *Jerobo-  
am* to *Achab*.

§. III.  
Of *Achab* and his successours: with the  
Captivity of the ten Tribes.

CHAP. X.  
Of the memorable places of *Dan*, *Sime-  
on*, *Juda*, *Reuben*, *Gad* and the  
other half of *Ma-  
nasse*.

§. I.  
Of *Dan*: where of *Joppe*, *Gath*, *Accaron*,  
*Azotus*, and other towns.

§. II.  
The Tribe of *Simeon*.

§. III.  
The Tribe of *Juda*.

§. IV.  
The Tribe of *Reuben*, and his borde-  
rers.

§. I.  
The seats and bounds of *Midian*, *Moab*,  
and *Ammon*; part whereof, the *Reu-  
benites* wan from *Sehon* King of *Hel-  
bon*.

§. II.  
Of the memorable places of the *Reabe-  
nites*.

§. III.  
Of divers places bordering *Reuben*, belong-  
ing to *Midian*, *Moab*, or *Edom*,

§. I.  
Of the Dead Sea.

§. V.  
Of the Kings of *Moab*, much of whose Coun-  
try within *Amon*, *Reuben* posselt.

§. V.  
Of the memorable places of the *Gadites*, and  
the bordering places of *Ammon*.

§. VI.  
Of the *Ammonites*, part of whose Territo-  
ries the *Gadites* wan from *Og*, the King of  
*Bafan*.

§. VII.  
Of the other half of *Manasse*.

## CHAP. XI.

The History of the *Syrians*; the chief  
Borderers of the *Israelites*, that  
dwelt on the East of  
*Jordan*.

§. I.  
Of the City of *Damascus*, and overthrow  
of their power.

§. II.  
Of the first Kings of *Damascus*, and of the  
growing up of their power.

§. III.  
Of the latter Kings, and decay, and the di-  
vers fortunes thereof.

§. IV.  
Of other lesser Kingdoms of the *Syrians*,  
which being brought under the *Assyrians*, ne-  
ver recovered themselves again.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Tribe of *Benjamin*; and  
of *Jerusalem*.

§. I.  
Of divers memorable Places in the Tribe of  
*Benjamin*, where, of *Hiericho*, *Gil-  
gal*, *Mitpa*, *Bethel*, *Rama*, *Gobah*, and  
*Gibba*.

§. II.  
Of divers memorable things concerning *Je-  
rusalem*.

§. III.  
Of the destruction of *Jerusalem* by the  
*Romans*.

§. IV.  
Of the vaine and malicious reports of  
*Heathen Writers*, touching the Ancient  
*Jews*.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of the memorable things that hapned  
in the world, from the death of *Joshua* to  
the War of *Troy*: which was  
about the time of  
*Jephtha*.

§. I.  
Of the Inter-regnum after *Joshua*'s death:  
and of *Othniel*.

§. II.

## The Contents

### §. II.

Of the memorable things in this Age in other Nations : and of the difficulty in the computation of times.

### §. III.

Of Ehuds time ; and of Proserpina, Ori-thya, Tereus, Tantalus, Tityus, Admetus, and others that lived about these times.

### §. IIII.

Of Debora, and her contemporaries.

### §. V.

Of Gideon, and of Dedalus, Sphinx, Minos, and others that lived in this Age.

### §. VI.

Of the expedition of the Argonauts.

### §. VII.

Of Abimelech, Tholah, and Jair : and of the Lapithæ, and of Theſeus, Hyppolitus, &c. and of the war of Thebes which was in this Age.

### §. VIII.

Of Jephtah : and how the three hundred years which he speaketh of Judges II. verf. 28. are to be reconciled with the places, Acts 13. 20. 1 Reg. 6. 1. together with some other things touching Chronologie about these times.

## CHAP. XIII.

### Of the War of Troy.

### §. I.

Of the Genealogie of the Kings of Troy : with a Note, touching the ancient Poets, how they have observed Historicall truth

### §. II.

Of the Rape of Helen : and of the strength of both sides for the war.

### §. III.

Of the Grecians journey and Embassage to Troy : and of Helena's being detained in Egypt : and of the sacrificing of Iphigenia.

### §. IV.

Of the Aits of the Grecians at the siege.

### §. V.

Of the taking of Troy : the wooden Horse : the Book of Dares and Dycitis : the Colonies of the reliques of Troy.

### §. VI.

Of the distresses and dispersons of the Greeks, returning from Troy.

## CHAP. XV.

### Of Sampſon; Eli, and Samuel.

### §. I.

Of Sampſon.

### §. II.

Of Eli : and of the Arke taken : and of Dagon's fall : and the sending back of the Arke.

### §. III.

Of Samuel, and of his government.

## CHAP. XVI.

### Of Saul.

### §. I.

Of the deliberation to change the government into a kingdom.

### §. II.

Of the election of Saul.

### §. III.

Of the establishing of Saul by his first Victories

### §. IV.

Of Sauls disobedience in his proceedings in the wars with the Philistims and Amalekites, which caused his final rejection.

### §. V.

Of the occurrences between the rejection of Saul and his death.

### §. VI.

Of such as lived with Samuel and Saul ; of Hellen and Hercules, and also of their Issues, upon occasion of the Dores, with the Heraclidæ, entering Peloponnesus about this time.

### §. VII.

Of Homer and Hesiod, and many changes in the world that hapned about this Age.

## CHAP. XVII.

### Of David.

### §. I.

Of Davids estate in the time of Saul.

### §. II.

Of the beginning of Davids reign : and the War made by Abner for Iſobeth.

### §. III.

Of the death of Abner slain by Joab : and of Iſobeth, by Rechab and Baanah.

## Of the second Book.

### §. IIII.

Of the flourishing time of Davids Kingdom : the taking of Jerusalem : with two overthrowes given to the Philistims : and the conduccion of the Ark to the City of David.

### §. V.

The overthrow of the Philistims and Moabiters.

### §. VI.

The war which David made upon the Syrians.

### §. VII.

Of Davids troubles in his reigns : and of his forces.

### §. VIII.

Of the last aits of David : Adoniah's Faction : the revenge upon Joab and Shimei.

### §. IX.

Of the Treasures of David and Solomon.

### §. X.

Of the Philistims, whom David absolutely mastered : and of sundry other Contemporaries with David.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### Of Solomon.

### §. I.

Of the establishing of Solomon : of birth-right : and of the cause of Adoniah's death : and of Solomon's wisdom.

### §. II.

Of Solomon's buildings and glory.

### §. III.

Of Solomon's sending to Ophir : and of some seeming contradictions about Solomon's Riches : and of Pineda's conceit of two strange passages about Africk.

### §. IIII.

Of the fall of Solomon, and how long he lived.

### §. V.

Of Solomon's Writings.

### §. VI.

Of the Contemporaries of Solomon.

## CHAP. XIX.

### Of Solomons Successors untill the end of Jehofaphat.

### §. I.

Of Rehoboam his beginnings : the defection of the ten Tribes : of Jeroboam's Idolatry.

### §. II.

Of Rehoboam his impiety, for which he was punished by Selaç : of his end and Contemporaries.

### §. III.

Of the great battell between Jeroboam and Abia ; with a Colorarie of the examples of Gods judgements.

### §. IV.

Of Aſa, and his Contemporaries.

### §. V.

Of the great alteration falling out in the ten Tribes, during the reign of Aſa.

### §. VI.

A conjecture of the causes, hindering the reunion of Iſrael with Juda, which might have been effected by these troubles.

### §. VII.

Of Jehofaphat and his Contemporaries.

## CHAP. XX.

### Of Jehoram, the son of Jehofaphat ; and Ahazia.

### §. I.

That Jehoram was made King sundry times.

### §. II.

Probable conjectures of the motives inducing the old King Jehofaphat to change his purpose often, in making his son Jehoram King.

### §. III.

The doings of Jehoram when he reigned alone ; and the rebellion of Edom and Libna.

### §. IV.

Of the miseries falling upon Jehoram : and of his death.

### §. V.

Of the reign of Ahazia : and his businesse with the King of Iſrael.

### §. VI.

How Ahazia perished with the house of Ahab : and how that Family was destroyed by Jehu.

## CHAP. XXI.

### Of Athalia, and whose son he was that succeeded unto her.

### §. I.

Of Athalia her usurping the Kingdom : and what pretences she might forge.

### §. II.

How Jehu spent his time in Iſrael, so that



he could not molest Athalia.

§. III.

Of Athalia's Government.

§. IIII.

Of the prefection of Joas.

§. V.

Whose son Joas was.

†. I.

**W**Hether Joas may be thought likely to have been the son of Ahazia.

†. II.

That Joas did not descend from Nathan.

†. III.

That Joas may probably be thought to have been the son of Jehoram.

†. IIII.

Upon what reasons Athalia might seek to destroy Joas, if he were her own Grandchilde.

§. VI.

A digression, wherein is maintained the liberty of using conjecture in Histories.

§. VII.

The conspiracy against Athalia.

§. VIII.

The death of Athalia, with a comparison of her and Jezabel.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Joas and Amasia : with their Contemporaries ; where somewhat of the building of Carthage.

§. I.

**O**F Joas his doings whilest Jehojada the Priest lived.

§. II.

The death of Jehojada, and Apostacy of Joas.

§. III.

The causes and times of the Syrians invading Juda in the dayes of Joas.

§. IIII.

How Zachariah was murdered by Joas.

§. V.

How Joas was shamefully beaten by the Aramites : and of his death.

§. VI.

Of the Princes living in the time of Joas : Of the time when Carthage was built : and of Dido.

§. VII.

The beginning of Amasia his reign : And of Joas King of Israel, and Elitha the Prophet.

§. VIII.

Of Amasia his war against Edom : his Apostacy : and overthrow by Joas.

§. IX.

A discourse of the reasons hindering Joas from uniting Juda to the Crown of Israel, when he had won Hierusalem, and held Amasia prisoner. The end of Joas his reign.

§. X.

The end of Amasia his reign and life.

§. XI.

Of the Inter-regnum that was in the kingdom of Juda, after the death of Amasia.

§. XII.

Of Princes contemporary with Amasia : and more particularly of Sardanapalus.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Uzzia.

§. I.

**T**He prosperity of Uzzia, and of Jeroboam the second, who reigned with him in Israel, &c.

§. II.

The end of Uzzia, his reign and life.

§. III.

Of the Prophets which lived in the time of Uzzia, &c.

§. IIII.

Of the Assyrian Kings descending from Phul, &c.

§. V.

Of the Olympiads, and the time when they began.

§. VI.

Of Jotham, and his Contemporaries.

§. VII.

Of Achaz, and his Contemporaries.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Antiquities of Italy ; and foundation of Rome in the time of Ahaz.

§. I.

**O**F the old Inhabitants ; and of the name of Italy.

§. II.

Of the Aborigines, and other Inhabitants of Latium : and of the reason of the names of Latini and Latium.

§. III.

§. III.

Of the ancient Kings of the Latines, untill Aeneas his coming.

§. IV.

Of Aeneas, and of the Kings and Governments of Alba.

§. V.

Of the beginning of Rome : and of Romulus birth and death.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Ezechia and his Contemporaries.

**O**F the beginning of Ezekias : and of the agreeing of Ptolomies Nabonassar, Nabopolassar, and Mardocempadus, with the history of the Bible.

§. II.

Of the danger and deliverance of Judæa from Senacherib.

§. III.

Of Ezekias his sickness and recovery : and of the Babylonian King that congratulated him.

§. IV.

The Kings that were in Media during the reign of Ezekia, &c.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Kings that reigned in Egypt ; between the deliverance of Israel from thence, and the reign of Ezekia in Juda, when Egypt and Juda made a League against the Assyrians.

§. I.

**T**hat many names of Egyptian Kings found in History, are like to have belonged only to Vice-Royes : An example, proving this, out of William of Tyre, his History of the holy War.

§. II.

Of Achertes ; whether he were Uchoreus that was the eighth from Olymandyas : Of Olymandyas, and his Tombe.

§. III.

Of Cherres, Armeus, Rameffes, and Amenophis : Of Myris, and the Lake that bears his name.

§. IV.

Of the Kings that reigned in the Dynastie of the Larthes.

§. V.

Of Egyptian Kings, whose names are found

Scattering in sundry Authors, their times being not recorded, &c.

§. VI.

Of Chemmis, Cheops, Cephtenes, and other Kings recited by Herodorus and Diodorus Siculus ; which reigned between the times of Rehoboam and Ezekia.

§. VII.

Of Sethon, who reigned with Ezekia, and sided with him against Senacherib.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Manasse, and his Contemporaries.

§. I.

**T**He wickedness of Manasses : His Imprisonment, repentance, and death.

§. II.

Of Troubles in Egypt following the death of Sethon : The reign of Plammiticus.

§. III.

What reference these Egyptian matters might have to the imprisonment and enlargement of Manasses, &c.

§. IV.

Of the first and second Messenian Wars : which were in the reigns of Ezekia and Manasses, Kings of Juda.

§. V.

Of the Kings that were in Lydia and Media : whether Deioeces were that King Arphaxad, mentioned in the history of Judith.

§. VI.

Of other princes and actions that were in those times.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the times from the death of Manasses to the destruction of Jerusalem.

§. I.

**O**F Ammon and Josias.

§. II.

Of Pharo Neco, that fought with Josias : of Jehoahaz, and Jehojakim, Kings of Juda.

§. III.

Of the Kings of Babylon and Media : How it came to passe that the Kings of Babel could not give attendance on their business in Syria : which caused them to lose that Province.

§. IV.

The great expedition of the Scythians,

b 2

who

who ruled in Asia twenty eight years.

† I.  
The time of this Expedition.  
† II.  
What Nations they were that brake into Asia with the cause of their journey.  
† III.  
Of the Cimmerians war in Lydia.

The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections,  
in the third Book of the first Part  
of the History of the  
World.

CHAP. I.

Of the time passing between the Destruction of Jerusalem, and the fall of the Assyrian Empire.

§. I.  
Of the connexion of sacred and profane History.  
§. II.

A brief rehearsal of two opinions, touching the beginning of the Captivity: with an answer to the cavills of Porphyrie; inveighing against S. Matthew and Daniel, on whom the later of these opinions is founded.

§. III.  
That the 70. years of Captivity are to be numbred from the destruction of Jerusalem: not from the migration of Jeconia.

§. IIII.  
Sundry opinions of the Kings which reigned in Babylon, during the 70. years.

§. V.  
A more particular examination of one opinion touching the number, persons, and reignes of the Babylonian Kings.

§. VI.  
What may be held as probable of the Persons and Times of Nabuchodonosor for his Successors.

§. VII.  
Of the victories which Nabuchodonosor obtained, between the destruction of Jerusalem and conquest of Egypt.

§. VIII.  
That Egypt was conquered, and the King

†. IV.  
The War of the Scythians in the higher Asia.  
§. V.  
Of Princes living in divers Countries in these Ages.  
§. VI.  
The oppression of Judæa, and destruction of Jerusalem by the Chaldeans.

therein reigning, slain by Nebuchodonosor, contrary to the opinion of most Authors: Who following Herodotus and Diodorus, relate it otherwise.

§. IX.  
How Egypt was subdued, and holden by Nabuchadnezzar.

§. X.  
Of the sundry accounts drawn from sundry authors of Nabuchadnezzar: and of the destruction of Nineve by him: the time of which action is uncertain.

§. XI.  
Of the later time of Nabuchadnezzar, his buildings, madnesse, and death.

§. XII.  
Of Evilmerodach.

§. XIII.  
A private conjecture of the Author: serving to make good those things which are cited out of Berosus, concerning the successors of Evilmerodach, without wrong unto the truth: the quality and death of Balthasar.

CHAP. II.

Of the Originall and first greatnesse of the Persians.

§. I.  
That the Medes were chief Authors in the subversion of the Babylonian Empire.

§. II.  
By what means the Empire was translated from the Medes to the Persians.

§. III.  
Xenophons relation of the War which the Medes

Medes and Persians made with joynt Forces upon the Assyrians and others.  
§. IIII.  
The estate of the Medes and Persians, in times fore-going this great war.

CHAP. III.

Of Cyrus.

§. I.  
Of Cyrus his name, and first actions.  
§. II.  
Of Croesus the King of Lydia, who made war upon Cyrus.

§. III.  
Croesus his Expedition against Cyrus.

§. IIII.  
The conquest of Lydia by Cyrus.

§. V.  
How Cyrus won Babylon.

§. VI.  
The end of Cyrus.

§. VII.  
Of Cyrus his decree for building the Temple of God in Jerusalem.

§. VIII.  
Of Cyrus his issue: and whether Atossa was his daughter, or (as some think) were the same with Queen Hester.

CHAP. IIII.

The estate of things from the death of Cyrus to the reign of Darius.

§. I.  
Of the number and names of the Persian Kings.

§. II.  
Of Cambyfes; and the conquering of Egypt by him.

§. III.  
The rest of Cambyfes his acts.

§. IIII.  
Of the Inter-regnum between Cambyfes and Darius.

CHAP. V.

Of Darius the son of Hytaspes.

§. I.  
Of Darius his Linage.  
§. II.  
Of Darius his Government: and suppress-

ing the Rebellion of Babylon.  
§. III.  
Of Darius his favour to the Jews in building the Temple.

§. IIII.  
Of Darius his Scythian war.

§. V.  
Some actions of the Persians in Europe, after the Scythian war.

§. VI.  
The first occasion of the War which Darius made upon Greece; with a rehearsal of the Government in Athens, whence the quarrell grew.

§. VII.  
Of the Ionian Rebellion, which was the principall cause of the wars ensuing between Greece and Persia.

§. VIII.  
The war which Darius made on Greece: with the battell of Marathon; and Darius his death.

CHAP. VI.

Of Xerxes.

§. I.  
The preparation of Xerxes against Greece  
§. II.

Xerxes Army entertained by Pythius: his cutting off Mount Athos from the Continent: his bridge of Boats over the Hellespont: and the discourse between him and Artabanus, upon the view of his Army.

§. III.  
Of the fight at Thermopylæ, and Artemisium.

§. IV.  
The attempt of Xerxes upon Apollo's Temple, and his taking of Athens.

§. V.  
How Themistocles the Athenian drew the Greeks to fight at Salamis.

§. VI.  
How the Persians consulted about giving battell: and how Themistocles by policy held the Greeks to their resolution; with the victory at Salamis thereupon ensuing.

§. VII.  
Of things following after the battell of Salamis: and of the flight of Xerxes.

§. VIII.  
The negotiations between Mardonius and the Athenians; as also between the Athenians and Lacedæmonians; after the flight of Xerxes.

§. IX.  
The great battell of Palatææ.  
§. X.  
The battell of Mycale: with a strange accident that fell out in the beginning of it: and examples of the like.  
§. XI.  
Of the barbarous quality of Xerxes: with a transition from the Persian affaires to matters of Greece, which from this time grew more worthy of regard.

CHAP. VII.

Of things that passed in Greece from the end of the Persian War, to the beginning of the Peloponnesian.

§. I.  
How Athens was re-built and fortified.  
§. II.  
The beginning of the Athenian greatness, and prosperous wars made by that State upon the Persian.

§. III.  
The death of Xerxes, by the treason of Artabanus.

§. IIII.  
The banishment of Themistocles; his flight to Artaxerxes newly reigning in Persia, and his death.

§. V.  
How the Athenians, breaking the Peace, which to their great honour they had made with the Persian, were shamefully beaten in Egypt.

§. VI.  
Of other Wars made by the Athenians (for the most part) with good success about the same time.

§. VII.  
Of Artaxerxes Longimanus, that he was Ahasuerus, the Husband of Queen Hester.

§. VIII.  
Of the troubles in Greece, fore-going the Peloponnesian War.

CHAP. VIII.  
Of the Peloponnesian War.

§. I.  
Upon what terms the two principall Cities of Greece, Athens, and Sparta,

stood at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War.

§. II.  
How Sparta and Athens entred into war.  
§. III.  
The beginning of the Peloponnesian War.

§. IV.  
Of the great losse which the Spartans received at Pylus.

§. V.  
How the Lacedæmonians hardly, and to their great disadvantage, obtained a peace, that was not well kept.

§. VI.  
Of the negotiations and practices held between many States of Greece, by occasion of the peace that was concluded.

§. VII.  
How the peace between Athens and Sparta was ill kept, though not openly broken.

§. VIII.  
The Athenians sending two Fleets to sack Syracuse, are put to flight, and utterly discomfited.

§. IX.  
Of the troubles wherinto the State of Athens fell, after the great losse of the Fleet and Army in Sicilia.

§. X.  
How Alcibiades won many important Victories for the Athenians; was re-called from exile; made their Generall: and again deposed.

§. XI.  
The battell at Arginæ: and condemnation of the victorious Athenian Captains by the people.

§. XII.  
The battell at Egos Potamos, wherein the whole State of Athens was ruined; with the end of the Peloponnesian War.

CHAP. IX.

Of the matters concurring with the Peloponnesian War, or shortly following it.

§. I.  
How the affaires of Persia stood in these times.

§. II.  
How the thirty Tyrants got their Dominion in Athens.

§. III.  
The conspiracy against the thirty Tyrants: and their deposition.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the expedition of Cyrus the Younger.

§. I.  
The grounds of Cyrus his attempt against his brother.

§. II.  
The preparations of Cyrus, and his first entry into the war.

§. III.  
How Cyrus took his journey into the higher Asia, and came up close to his brother.

§. IIII.  
The battell between Cyrus and Artaxerxes.

§. V.  
The hard estate of the Greeks after the fight: and how Artaxerxes in vain sought to have made them yeeld unto him.

§. VI.  
How the Greeks began to return homeward.

§. VII.  
How Tissaphernes, under colour of peace, betrayed all the Captains of the Greeks.

§. VIII.  
How Xenophon heartened the Greeks, and in despite of Tissaphernes, went off safely.

§. IX.  
The difficulties which the Greek Army found, in passing through the Land of the Carduchi.

§. X.  
How Teribazus Governour of Armenia, seeking to entrap the Greeks with terms of feigned peace, was disappointed, and shamefully beaten.

§. XI.  
The passage of the Army to Trabizonde, through the Country, bordering upon the river of Phasis, and other obscure Nations.

§. XII.  
How the Army began at Trabizonde to provide a Fleet, wherewith to return home by Sea.

§. XIII.  
Of dissension which arose in the Army, and how it was embarked.

§. XIV.  
Another great dissension and destruction of the Army. How the Mutiners were beaten by the Barbarians, and rescued by Xenophon.

§. XV.  
Of divers pieces of service done by Xeno-

phon; and how the Army returned into Greece. The occasions of the War between the Lacedæmonians and the Persian.

CHAP. XI.

Of the affairs of Greece, whilest they were managed by the Lacedæmonians.

§. I.  
How the Lacedæmonians took courage by example of Xenophons Army, to make war upon Artaxerxes.

§. II.  
The prosperous beginnings of the War in Asia.

§. III.  
How the Lacedæmonians took revenge upon the Eleans for old displeasure. The discontent of the Corinthians and Thebans, conceived against the State of Sparta.

§. IV.  
The passage of Agefilas into Asia: His Way with Tissaphernes. How Tissaphernes was put to death; and the War diverted into another Province, through persuasion and gifts of Tithraustes his successour. How careless the Persian Lieutenants were of the Kings good.

§. V.  
The War and Treaty between Agefilas and Pharnabazus.

§. VI.  
The great commotions raised in Greece by the Thebans and others, that were hired with gold from the Persian.

§. VII.  
How Agefilas was called out of Asia to help his Country. A victory of the Spartans. Connon the Athenian, assisted by Pharnabazus, overcomes the Lacedæmonian Fleet: recovers the mastery of the Seas: and re-builds the walls of Athens.

§. VIII.  
Of sundry small victories gotten on each part. The Lacedæmonians lose all in Asia. The Athenians recover some part of their old Dominion.

§. IX.  
The base conditions offered unto the Persian by the Lacedæmonians. Of sundry fights, and other passages in the war. The peace of Antalcidas.

§. X.  
The War which the Lacedæmonians made upon

## The Contents

upon Olynthus. They take Thebes by treason, and Olynthus by famine.

### §. XI.

How the Thebans recovered their liberty, driving out the Lacedæmonian Garrison.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the flourishing estate of Thebes, from the Battell of Leuctra, to the Battell of Mantinæa.

### §. I.

How Thebes and Athens joynted together against Sparta. How the Athenians make peace for themselves and others: out of which the Thebans were excluded. The battell of Leuctra, and beginning of the Theban greatness.

### §. II.

How the Athenians took upon them to maintain the peace of Greece. New troubles hence arising. Epaminondas invadeth and wasteth the Territory of Lacedæmon.

### §. III.

The composition between Athens and Spar-

ta, for command in war against the Thebans; who again invade and spoile Peloponnesus. The unfortunate presumption of the Arcadians.

### §. IV.

The great growth of the Theban Estate. Embassages of the Greeks to the Persians with the reasons why he most favoured the Thebans. Troubles in the Persian Empire. The fruitless issue of the Embassages.

### §. V.

How all Greece was divided between the Athenians and Lacedæmonians, on the one side, and Thebans on the other. Of the great tumults arising in Arcadia.

### §. VI.

A terrible invasion of Peloponnesus by Epaminondas.

### §. VII.

The great battell of Mantinæa. The honourable death of Epaminondas, with his commendation.

### §. VIII.

Of the peace concluded in Greece after the battell of Mantinæa. The voyage of Agellus into Egypt. His death, and qualities: with an examination of the comparison made between him and Pompey the Roman.

## The Contents of the Chapters, Paragraphs, and Sections, in the fourth Book of the first Part of the History of the World.

## CHAP. I.

Of Philip, the Father of Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.

### §. I.

What Kings reigned in Macedon before Philip.

### §. II.

The beginning of Philips reign; and how he delivered Macedon from the troubles in which he found it entangled.

### §. III.

The good success which Philip had in many enterprizes.

### §. IIII.

Of the Phocian war, which first drew

Philip into Greece.

### §. V.

Of the Olynthian War. The ambitious practices of Philip.

### §. VI.

How Philip ended the Phocian War.

### §. VII.

How Philip with ill success attempted on Perinthus, Bizantium, and the Scythians.

### §. VIII.

How Philip, overthrowing the Greeks in the battell of Cheronæa, was chosen Captain General of Greece. The death of Philip.

### §. IX.

What good foundations of Alexanders greatness were laid by Philip. Of his laudable qualities and issue.

## CHAP.

## Of the fourth Book.

## CHAP. II.

Of Alexander the Great.

### §. I.

A brief rehearsal of all of Alexanders doings, before he invaded Asia.

### §. II.

How Alexander passing into Asia, fought with the Persians upon the River of Granicus.

### §. III.

A digression concerning the defence of hard passages. Of things following the battell of Granick.

### §. IIII.

Of the unwarlike Army levied by Darius against Alexander. The unadvised courses which Darius took in this Expedition. He is vanquished at Issus, where his Mother, Wife, and Children, are made Prisoners. Of some things following the battell of Issus.

### §. V.

How Alexander besieged, and won the City of Tyre.

### §. VI.

How Darius offered conditions of peace to Alexander. Alexander wins Gaza, and deals graciously with the Jews.

### §. VII.

Alexander wins Egypt: and makes a journey to the Temple of Hammon.

### §. VIII.

How Alexander, marching against Darius, was opposed very unskillfully by the Enemy.

### §. IX.

The new provisions of Darius. Accidents fore-going the battell of Arbela.

### §. X.

The battell of Arbela: and that it could not be so strongly fought as report hath made it.

### §. XI.

Of things following the battell of Arbela. The yielding of Babylon and Sufa.

### §. XII.

How Alexander came to Persepolis, and burnt it.

### §. XIII.

The treason of Bessus against Darius. Darius his death.

### §. XIII.

How Alexander pursued Bessus, and took into his grace Darius his Captains.

### §. XV.

Of Thalestris, Queen of the Amazons,

where, by way of digression, it is shewed, that such Amazons have been, and are.

### §. XVI.

How Alexander fell into the Persians Luxury: and how he pursued Bessus.

### §. XVII.

A conspiracy against Alexander. The death of Philotas and Parmenio.

### §. XVIII.

How Alexander subdued the Bactrians, Sogdians, and other people. How Bessus was delivered into his hands. How he fought with the Scythians.

### §. XIX.

How Alexander slew his own friends.

### §. XX.

Of Alexanders journey into India. The battell between him and Porus.

### §. XXI.

How Alexander finished his Expedition: and returned out of India.

### §. XXII.

Of Alexanders riot, cruelty, and death.

### §. XXIII.

Of Alexanders person and qualities.

## CHAP. III.

The Reigne of Aridæus.

### §. I.

Of the question about succession to Alexander.

### §. II.

The election of Aridæus, with the troubles thereabout arising: the first division of the Empire.

### §. III.

The beginning of the Lamian War.

### §. IIII.

How Perdiccas employed his Army.

### §. V.

The proceffe of the Lamian War.

### §. VI.

Of the peace granted to Athens by Antipater. Of Demosthenes his death.

### §. VII.

How Craterus and Antipater were drawn from their Etolian Wars into Asia. The grounds of the first Civil War between the Macedonian Lords.

### §. VIII.

§. VIII.  
Perdiccas his voyage into Egypt, and his death.

§. IX.  
Victories of Eumenes in the lower Asia.

§. X.  
Quarrels between Eurydice the Queen, and Python the Protector. Python resigns his office; into which Antipater is chosen.

§. XI.  
Antigonus, Lieutenant of Asia, wins a battell of Eumenes, and besiegeth him in Nora. He vanquisheth other followers of Perdiccas.

§. XII.  
Ptolomy wins Syria and Phœnicia. The death of Antipater.

§. XIII.  
Of Polysperchon, who succeeded unto Antipater in the Protectorship. The insurrection of Cassander against him.

§. XIV.  
The unworthy courses held by Polysperchon, for the keeping down of Cassander.

§. XV.  
Of the great commotions raised in Athens by Polysperchons decree. The death of Phocian.

§. XVI.  
Of Polysperchon his vain Expedition against Cassander.

§. XVII.  
Antigonus seeks to make himself an absolute Lord: and thereupon treats with Eumenes, who disappointeth him. Phrygia and Lydia won by Antigonus.

§. XVIII.  
Antigonus pursues Eumenes. Eumenes having Authority from the Court, raiseth great War against Antigonus, in defence of the Royall house.

§. XIX.  
How the Princes of Macedon stood affected mutually. Olympias takes Aridaeus and Eurydice, whom she cruelly puts to death.

§. XX.  
How Cassander was revenged upon Olympias.

†. I.  
The great Expedition of Cassander. Olympias shuts her self into Pydna, where Cassander besiegeth her. Acides King of Epirus, coming to succor Olympias, is forsaken, and banished by his own Subjects.

†. II.  
A continuation of Olympias her Story. Polysperchon defeated. Extreme famine in

Pydna. Olympias yeelds to Cassander.  
†. III.  
The death of Olympias, and her condition.

†. IV.  
Cassander celebrates the Funerall of Aridaeus and Eurydice: and seeks to make himself King of Macedon.

CHAP. IV.

Of the great Lordship which  
ANTIGONUS got in  
ASIA.

§. I.  
The journey of Eumenes into Persia. His wife dealing with those that joyned with him.

§. II.  
How Antigonus coming to set upon Eumenes, was driven off with losse.

§. III.  
Of Eumenes his cunning. A battell between him and Antigonus.

§. IV.  
Of divers stratagems practised by Antigonus and Eumenes, one against the other.

§. V.  
The conspiracy of Peucestes and others against Eumenes his life.

§. VI.  
The last Battell between Antigonus and Eumenes.

§. VII.  
How Eumenes was betrayed to Antigonus, and slain.

§. VIII.  
How Antigonus sue Python, and occupied Media. How he removed Governours of Provinces, and made himself Lord of Persia, carrying away Peucestes.

§. IX.  
How Seleucus was chased out of Babylon by Antigonus. The great riches of Antigonus.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the great Civill War between Alexanders Captains: and how they assumed the name and state of Kings.

§. I.  
The combination of Ptolomy, Cassander and others, against Antigonus. Their demands, and his answer.

§. II.  
The preparations and beginnings of the Wars.

§. III.  
How each part sought to win the assistance of Greece. Antigonus his declaration against Cassander, &c.

§. IV.  
The Ætolians rise against Cassander, in favour of Antigonus, and are beaten, &c.

§. V.  
How Lyfimachus and Cassander vanquished some Enemies, raised against them by Antigonus. The good successe of Antigonus in Asia and Greece: with the rebellion of many Cities against Cassander.

§. VI.  
Victories of Ptolomy by Sea. A great battell at Gaza, which Ptolomy and Seleucus won against Demetrius the son of Antigonus.

§. VII.  
How Seleucus recovered Babylon, and made himself Lord of many Countries in the higher Asia. The Æra of the Kingdome of the Greeks: which began with this Dominion of Seleucus.

§. VIII.  
How Ptolomy lost all that he had won in Syria. What the causes were of the quiet obedience performed unto the Macedonians, by those that had been subject unto the Persian Empire. Of divers petty enterprizes, taken in hand by Antigonus and Demetrius, with ill successe.

§. IX.  
A generall peace made and broken. How all the house of Alexander was destroyed.

§. X.  
How Demetrius, the son of Antigonus, gave liberty to Athens, expelling the Garrisons of Cassander out of those parts, &c.

§. XI.  
The great victory of Demetrius against Ptolomy in Cyprus. How Antigonus and Demetrius took on them the stile of Kings.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Wars between the Kings of Egypt, Asia, Macedon, Thrace, and others, untill all Alexanders Princes were consumed.

§. I.  
The expedition of Antigonus against Egypt, with ill successe.

§. II.  
How the City of Rhodes was besieged by Demetrius.

§. III.  
How Demetrius prevailed in Greece. Cassander desires peace of Antigonus, and cannot obtain it. Great preparations of War against Antigonus.

§. IV.  
How Antigonus was slain in a great battell at Iplius, neer unto Ephesus; wherein his whole estate was lost.

§. V.  
How Demetrius, forsaken by the Athenians, after his overthrow, was reconciled to Seleucus and Ptolomie: beginning a new Fortune, and shortly entering into new quarrels.

§. VI.  
How Demetrius won the City of Athens; and prevailed in Greece, but lost in Asia. Of troubles in Macedon, following the death of Cassander.

§. VII.  
Of Pyrrhus, and his doings in Macedon. The death of Cassander's children. Demetrius gets the Kingdom of Macedon, prevails in war against the Greeks; loseth reputation in his war against Pyrrhus, and in his civill Government; and prepares to win Asia. How all conspire against Demetrius. Pyrrhus and Lyfimachus invade him; his Army yeelds to Pyrrhus: who shares the Kingdom of Macedon with Lyfimachus.

§. VIII.  
How Demetrius, gathering forces, enterprised many things with ill successe, in Greece and Asia. How he was driven upon Seleucus, and compelled to yeeld himself. His imprisonment and death.

§. IX.  
The death of Ptolomie, of Lyfimachus, and of Seleucus, that was the last of Alexanders Captains; with other occurrences.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of divers actions passing between the first and second Punick Wars.

§. I.

OF the cruel War begun between the Carthaginians and their Mercenaries.

§. II.

Divers observations upon this War with the Mercenaries.

†. I.

OF tyrannie: and how tyrants are driven to use help of Mercenaries.

†. II.

That the tyrannie of a City over her Subjects, is worse than the tyrannie of one man: and that a tyrannicall City must likewise use mercenary Souldiers.

†. III.

The dangers growing from the use of mercenary Souldiers, and foreign auxiliaries.

†. IV.

That the moderate government of the Romans, gave them assurance to use the service of their own Subjects in the wars, &c.

§. III.

How the war against the Mercenaries, was diversely managed by Hanno and Amilcar, with variable success. The bloody counsels of the Mercenaries, and their small destruction.

§. IV.

How the Mercenaries of the Carthaginians, that were in Sardinia, rebelled: and were afterwards driven out by the Islanders. The faithlesse dealing of the Romans with the Carthaginians, in taking from them Sardinia, contrary to the peace.

§. V.

How the affairs of Carthage went, between the African rebellion, and the second Punick War.

§. VI.

The estate of Greece from the death of Pyrrhus, to the reign of Philip the son of Demetrius in Macedon.

§. VII.

How the Illyrians infested the Coast of Greece: and how they were subdued by the Romans.

§. VIII.

Of the War between the Romans and Gauls, somewhat before the coming of Hannibal into Italy.

CHAP. III.

Of the second Punick War.

§. I.

THE Wars of Hannibal in Spain. Quarrels between the Romans and Carthaginians. Hannibal besiegeth and taketh Saguntum, whilst the Romans are busied with the Illyrians, &c.

§. II.

Hannibal takes order for the defence of Spain and Africk. His journey into Italy.

§. III.

How the Romans in vain solicited the Spaniards and Gauls to take their part. The rebellion of the Cisalpine Gauls against the Romans.

§. IV.

Scipio the Roman Consul, overcome by Hannibal at Ticinum. Both of the Roman Consuls beaten by Hannibal in a great battell at Trebia.

§. V.

The departure of Hannibal from the Cisalpine Gauls into Hetruria. Flaminius the Roman Consul slain: and his Army destroyed by the Carthaginians, at the Lake of Trasymene.

§. VI.

How Q. Fabius the Roman Dictator, sought to consume the force of Hannibal, by lingring war, &c.

§. VII.

The Roman people, desirous to finish the War quickly, choose a rash and unworthy Consul. Great forces levied against Hannibal. Hannibal taketh the Romans provisions in the Cattle of Canne, &c.

§. VIII.

Dissention between the two Roman Consuls. Whether it be likely, that Hannibal was upon point of flying out of Italie, when the Romans pressed him to fight. The great battell at Canne.

§. IX.

Of things following the Battell of Canne.

§. X.

Of the great supply that was decreed at Carthage, to be sent to Hannibal in Italy. How by the malice of Hanno, and sloth or parsimony of the Carthaginians, the supply was too long deferred. That the riches of the Carthaginians grew faster than of the Romans. Of Fabius and other old Roman Historians, how partiall they were in their writings.

§. XI.

§. XI.

Strange reports of the Roman victories in Spain, before Asdrubal the son of Amilcar followed thence his brother Hannibal into Italy.

§. XII.

The great troubles that Hannibal raised in all quarters, to the City of Rome. Posthumus the Roman General, with his whole Army, is slain by the Gauls, &c.

§. XIII.

How the Romans began to recover their strength by degrees. The noble affection of the Romans, in relieving the publick necessities of their Common-weale.

§. XIV.

The Romans win some Towns back from Hannibal. Hannibal wins Tarentum. The siege of Capua. Two Victories of Hannibal. The journey of Hannibal to the gates of Rome. Capua taken by the Romans.

§. XV.

How the Carthaginians, making a party in Sardinia and Sicil, held war against the Romans in those Islands: and were overcome.

§. XVI.

How the war passed between the Romans and Hannibal in Italy, from the taking of Capua to the great victory at Metaurus.

§. XVII.

How P. Cornelius Scipio, the Roman, made entire conquest of Spain.

†. I.

How the Carthaginians were driven by Scipio, from the Continent into the Isle of Gades.

†. II.

Funerall games held by Scipio. A Duel between two Spanish Princes. A digression concerning Duels.

†. III.

The last acts of Scipio in Spain. His return to Rome: where he is chosen Consul.

§. XVIII.

Scipio obtains leave to make war in Africk: His preparations: Of Malanilla who joyned with Scipio.

§. XIX.

The Carthaginians desire truce: and do break it.

§. XX.

In what sort Hannibal spent the time, after the battell of Metaurus. The doings of Mago in Italy, &c.

§. XXI.

Hannibal in Africk prepares to fight with Scipio: treats with him about peace in vain: loseth a battell at Nadagara, &c.

CHAP. IV.

Of Philip the Father of Perseus King of Macedon, his first acts and war with the Romans, by whom he was subdued..

§. I.

How the Romans grew acquainted in the East Countries, and desirous of war there. The beginning of many Princes, with great Wars, at one time, &c.

§. II.

How Philip was mis-advised by ill Counsellors: who afterwards wrought Treason against him, and were justly punished. He invadeth the Atolians a second time: and forceth them to sue for peace: which is granted unto them.

§. III.

Philip, at the persuasion of Demetrius Pharius, enters into league with Hannibal against the Romans. The tenour of the League between Hannibal and Philip.

§. IV.

How Philip yielded to his naturall vices, being thereunto soothed by Demetrius Pharius, &c.

§. V.

Of Philipœmen, General of the Achæans, and Machanidas Tyrant of Lacedæmon. A battell between them, wherein Machanidas is slain.

§. VI.

Philip having peace with Rome, and with all Greece, prepares against Asia. Of the Kings of Pergamus, Cappadocia, Pontus, Paphlagonia, Bythinia, and their Linages. Of the Galatians.

§. VII.

The town of Cios taken by Philip, at the instance of Prusias King of Bythinia, and cruelly destroyed, &c.

§. VIII.

The Romans, after their Carthaginian War, seek matter of quarrell against Philip. The Athenians, upon slight cause, proclaim war against Philip: moved thereto by Attalus, whom they flatter. Philip wins divers Towns, &c.

§. IX.

The Romans decree war against Philip, and send one of their Consuls into Greece, as it were in defence of the Athenians their confederates. How poor the Athenians were at this time, both in quality and estate.

§. X. The

§. X.

The Town of *Chalcis* in *Eubœa*, taken and sackt by the Romans and their Associates, that lay in Garrison at *Athens*. Philip attempteth to take *Athens* by surprise: wasteth the Country about: and makes a journey into *Peloponnesus*. Of *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedemon*, and his wife. Philip offers to make war against *Nabis* for the *Acheans*. He returneth home through *Attica*, which he spoileth again: and provides against the enemies. Some exploits of the Romans. Divers Princes joyn with them. Great labouring to draw the *Ætoli*ans into the war.

§. XI.

The meeting of Philip with the Romans, and skirmishing with them on his borders, &c.

§. XII.

Villius the Roman Consul wasteth a year to no effect: War of the Gauls in Italy. An Embassy of the Romans to *Carthage*, *Masanilla* and *Vermia*, &c.

§. XIII.

The Romans begin to make war by Negotiation. T. Quintius wins a passage against Philip. Theſſaly wasteth by Philip, the Romans, and *Ætoli*ans. The *Acheans* forsaking the *Macedonian*, take part with the Romans. A treaty of peace, that was vain. Philip delivers *Argos* to *Nabis* the Tyrant, who presently enters into league with the Romans.

§. XIII.

The battell at *Cynocéphala*, wherein Philip was vanquished by T. Quintius.

§. XV.

T. Quintius falls out with the *Ætoli*ans, and grants truce unto Philip, with conditions, upon which the peace is ratified, &c.

CHAP. V.

The Wars of the Romans with Antiochus the Great, and his Adherents.

§. I.

What kings of the races of *Seleucus* and *Ptolomy* reigned in Asia and Egypt, before Antiochus the Great.

§. II.

The beginning of the great Antiochus his reign. Of *Ptolomy Evergetes*, and *Philopator*, Kings of Egypt. War between Antiochus and *Philopator*, &c.

§. III.

The lowd reign of *Ptolomy Philopator* in Egypt: with the tragick end of his favourite, when he was dead. Antiochus pre-

pares to war on the young child *Ptolomy* Epiphanes, the son of *Philopator*. His irresolution in preparing for divers wars at once: his voyage towards the *Helleſpont*. He seeks to hold amity with the Romans, who make friendly shew to him, &c.

§. IV.

The Romans hold friendly correspondence with Antiochus, during their war with Philip: after which they quarrell with him. The doings of *Hannibal*, at *Carthage*: whence he is chased by his enemies, and by the Romans: His flight unto the King Antiochus: the *Ætoli*ans murmur against the Romans in *Grecia*, &c.

§. V.

Of the long wars which the Romans had with the Gauls, *Ligurians*, and *Spaniards*. Of M. Porcius Cato. Injuries done by *Masanilla* to the *Carthaginians*: that sue unto the Romans for justice in vain.

§. VI.

The *Ætoli*ans labour to provoke Antiochus, Philip, and *Nabis* to war upon the Romans; by whom they hold themselves wronged & disgraced. *Nabis* besiegeth *Cythereum*, & wasteth some part of *Achea*. The exact skill of *Philopœmen* in his advantage of ground; whereby he utterly vanquished *Nabis*, &c.

§. VII.

Antiochus persuaded by *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, comes over into Greece, ill attended. Sundry passages between him, the *Ætoli*ans, *Chalcidians*, and others. He wins *Chalcis*, & thereby the whole Isle of *Eubœa*. The vanity of the Kings Embassadours, and the *Ætoli*ans: with the civil answer of *Titus* to their discourse, before the *Acheans*. That it concerned the Greeks to have desired peace between the Romans and Antiochus: as the best assurance of their owne liberty, &c.

§. VIII.

Lucius Scipio, having with him *Publius* the African his elder brother, for his Lieutenant, is sent into Greece. He grants long truce to the *Ætoli*ans, that so he might at leisure passe into Asia. Much troublesome business by Sea, and divers fights. An invasion upon *Eumenes* his Kingdome: with the siege of *Pergamus*, raised by an handfull of the *Acheans*. L. Scipio the Consul comes into Asia, where Antiochus most earnestly desires peace, and is denied it. The battell of *Magnaſia*: wherein Antiochus being vanquished, yeeldeth to the Romans good pleasure. The conditions of the peace. In what sort the Romans used their victory. L. Cornelius Scipio, after a most sumptuous Triumph over Antiochus, is surnamed The Asiaticque, as his brother was styled The African.

§. IX.

The *Ætoli*ans and the Gallo-Greeks, vanquished by the Roman Consuls *Fulvius* and *Manlius*, &c.

CHAP. VI.

The second Macedon War.

§. I.

The condition wherein those Princes and Estates remained, which were associates of the Romans, when the war with Antiochus was finished. The Romans quarrell with Philip, &c.

§. II.

The death of *Philopœmen*, *Hannibal*, and *Scipio*, &c.

§. III.

Philip making provision for war against the Romans, deals hardly with many of his own subjects. His Negotiation with the *Bastarnæ*. His cruelty. He suspected his son *Demetrius*. *Demetrius* accused by his Brother *Perſeus*: and shortly after slain by his Fathers appointment, &c.

§. IV.

How the *Bastarnæ* fell upon *Dardania*. The behaviour of *Perſeus* in the beginning of his reign. Some wars of the Romans: and how they suffered *Masanilla* cruelly to oppress the *Carthaginians*. The quarrell with *Perſeus*, &c.

§. V.

How *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* was besieged with *Pharnaces*, the *Rhodian*, and others. His hatred to the *Macedonian*: whom he accuseth to the Roman Senate, &c.

§. VI.

The Romans solícite the Greeks to joyn with them in the war against *Perſeus*. How the Greeks stood affected in that war. The timo-

rousness of *Perſeus*. *Martius* a Roman Embassadour deludes him with the hope of peace. His forces. He takes the field, and wins part of *Theſſaly*. The forces of *Licinius* the Roman Consul: and what assistants the Romans had in this war, &c.

§. VII.

Q. *Martius* the Roman Consul, with extreme difficulty and danger, enters into *Tempe*. The cowardize of *Perſeus* in abandoning *Tempe*. The Town of *Dium* quitted by *Martius*, repaired and fortified by the King. The Romans attempt many places, with ill success. *Martius* a cunning and a bad man.

§. VIII.

Of L. *Æmylius Paulus*, the Consul. His journey. He forceth *Perſeus* to discomp. He will not hazard battell with any disadvantage. Of an Eclipse of the Moon. *Æmylius* his superſtition. The battell of *Pydna*. *Perſeus* his flight. He forsakes his Kingdom; which hastily yeelds to *Æmylius*. *Perſeus* at *Samothrace*. He yeelds himself to the Roman Admirall: and is sent prisoner to *Æmylius*.

§. IX.

Gentius King of the *Illyrians*, taken by the Romans.

§. X.

How the Romans behaved themselves in Greece and *Macedon*, after their victory over *Perſeus*.

§. XI.

The war of Antiochus upon Egypt brought to end by the Roman Embassadours.

§. XII.

How the Romans were dreadful unto all Kings. Their demeanour towards *Eumenes*, *Prusias*, *Masanilla*, and *Cotys*. The end of *Perſeus* and his children. The instability of Kingly Estates. The triumphs of *Paulus*, *Anicius*, and *Octavius*: With the conclusion of the Work.

FINIS.





<sup>10</sup> THE FIRST PART OF THE  
HISTORY OF THE WORLD:

INTREATING OF THE BEGINNING AND  
first Ages of the same, from the Cre-  
ation unto A B R A H A M.

THE FIRST BOOK.

<sup>20</sup>

CHAP. I.

Of the Creation, and Preservation of the World.

§ I.

That the Invisible God is seen in his Creatures.

<sup>30</sup>



OD, whom the wisest men acknowledge to be a Power un-  
effable, and Vertue infinite, a Light by abundant claritie in-  
visible; and Understanding which it self can onely compre-  
hend, an Essence eternall and spirituall, of absolute pureness  
and simplicity; was, and is pleased to make himself known by  
the work of the World: in the wonderfull magnitude wher-  
of, (all which he imbraceth, filleth and sustaineth) we behold  
the Image of that glory which cannot be measured, and  
withall that one, and yet universall Nature, which cannot be  
defined. In the glorious Lights of Heaven, we perceive a sha-

<sup>40</sup> dow of his divine Countenance; in his mercifull provision for all that live, his manifold  
goodness: and lastly, in creating and making existent the World universall, by the ab-  
solute Art of his own Word, his Power and Almightiness; which Power, Light, Vertue,  
Wisedome, and Goodness, being all but Attributes of one simple Essence, and one God,  
we in all admire, and in part discern *per speculum creaturarum*, that is, in the disposition,  
order, and variety of Celestiall and Terrestriall bodies: Terrestriall, in their strange  
and manifold diversities; Celestiall, in their beauty and magnitude; which in their con-  
tinuall and contrary motions, are neither repugnant, intermixt, nor confounded. By  
these potent effects, we approach to the knowledge of the omnipotent cause, and by  
these motions, their Almighty Maker.

<sup>50</sup> In these more than wonderfull works, God (saith \*Hugo speaketh unto man, and it  
is true, that these be those discourses of God, whose effects, those that live, witness in  
themselves; the sensible, in their sensible natures; the reasonable, in their reasonable  
souls: for according to S. \*Gregory; *Omnis homo eo ipso quod rationalis conditus est, ex ipso  
ratione, illum qui se condidit, Deum esse colligere debet*; Every man, in that he is reasonable,  
out of the same reason may know, that he which made him, is God. This God all men  
behold (saith Job) which is according to the Fathers, *Dominacionem illius conspicer in  
Creaturis, To discern him in his providence by his creatures*. That God hath been other-  
wise seen, to wit, with corporal eyes, exceedeth the small proportion of my understan-

A

ding,

\*Hugo super  
Eccl. Homil. 8  
\*Greg. in Mor.  
Herm. ad fil.  
Tal. l. 5. Unus  
et originitus,  
et non distinctus  
et immutabilis  
est, omnis crea-  
turam manifestant  
per omnia appa-  
ret, et in omni-  
bus. A pater et  
filius, genitor et  
generatus, et  
pariter quoniam  
generatus.

Job 5. 3.  
1 Tim. 6. 16.  
Origen L. 2. m.  
Ep. ap. 2. c. 22.  
Cyril. & Chrys.  
in Job. hom. 14.  
Greg. Naz. L. 2.  
Treg. Hier. in  
Elaion. Aug. L. 2.  
de Trinit. c. 12. et  
13. Greg. Mag.  
L. 18. Mor. Euar.  
cyp. 1. 1. Delect.  
Alcuin L. 2. de  
Trinit. c. 15. D. A.  
resp. cap. 4. Col.  
Hier. Thom. p.  
2. q. 12. art. 11.  
De alibi. Deus  
qui natura in-  
visibilis est, ut  
a visibilibus  
passet sciri, que  
scit quod O. H.  
fcom sui visibil-  
iter manifestat  
rem, per cur-  
tum incertum  
scietur, & ille  
Deus omnium  
esse crederetur.  
Amb. in e. ill.  
ad Rom. c. 1.  
Cofin de gen.  
hizale.  
Rom. 1. 20.

A Mont. Nat.  
Hist. fol. 7.

ding, grounded on these places of S. John and S. Paul, *re have not heard his voice at any time, neither have ye seen his shape.* And again, *in hom never man saw, nor can see.* And this I am fure agreeeth with the nature of Gods simplicity, of which S. Augustine, *Ipse enim natura, vel substantia, vel quolibet alio nomine appellandum est, id ipsum quod Deus est, corporaliter videri non potest;* That nature, or that substance, or by whatsoever name perceived. And of this opinion were Origen, Cyril, Chrysostom, Gregory Nazianzenus, Hierome, Augustine, Gregory the great, Evaristus, Alcuinus, Dionysius Aropagita, Aquinas, and all others of authority. But by his own Word, and by this visible World, is God perceived of men; which is also the understood language of the Almighty, vouchsafed to all his Creatures, whose Hieroglyphicall Characters are the unnumbered Stars, the Sun and Moon; written on these large Volumes of the Firmament: written also on the Earth and the Seas, by the letters of all those living creatures, and plants, which inhabit and reside therein. Therefore said that learned CUSANUS, *Mundus universus nihil aliud est, quam Deus explicatus;* The World universall is nothing else but God exprest. And the invisible things of God (saith S. Paul) are seen by creation of the World, being considered in his creatures. Of all which, there was no other cause preceding, than his own Will, no other matter than his own Power, no other Workman than his own Word, no other consideration than his own infinite goodnesse. The example and pattern of these his Creatures, as he beheld the same in all eternity in the abundance of his own love, so was it at length in the most wise order, by his unchanged Will moved, by his high Wisdom disposed, and by his Almighty Power perfected, and made visible. And therefore (saith *Mirandula*) we ought to love God, *ex fide, & ex effectibus;* (that is) both perswaded by his Word, and by the effects of the Worlds Creation: *Neg; enim qui causa caret, ex causa & origine sciri, cognoscique potest, sed vel ex rerum, que facta sunt, queque sunt & gubernantur observatione & collatione, vel ex ipsius Dei verbo:* For he of whom there is no higher cause, cannot be known by any knowledge of cause or beginning (saith Montanus) but either by the observing and conferring of things, which he hath, or doth create and govern, or else by the word of God himself.

## §. II.

That the wisest of the Heathen, whose authority is not to be despised, have acknowledged the World to have been created by God.

His work and creation of the World, did most of the ancient and learned Philosophers acknowledge, though by divers terms, and in a different manner exprest, I mean all those who are intitled by S. Augustine, *Summi Philosophi*, Philosophers of highest judgment and understanding. *Mercurius Trismegistus* calleth God, *Principium universorum;* The original of the universall: to whom hee giveth also the attributes of *Mchs, Natura, Actus, Necessitas, Finitis, & Renovatio.* And wherein hee truly with S. Paul, calleth upon God all powers, confessing also, that the World was made by Gods Almighty Word, and not by hands: *Verbo, non manibus fabricatus est mundus.* Zoroaster (whom Heroclitus followed in opinion) took the word Fire, to expresse God by (as in Deuteronomy, and in S. Paul it is used) *Omnia ex uno igne genita sunt;* All things (saith he) are caused or produced out of one fire.

So did Orpheus plainly teach, that the World had beginning in time, from the Will of the most High God; whose remarkable words are thus converted: *Cum abcondisset omnia Jupiter summus, deinde in lumen gratum emisit, ex sacro corde operans cogitata & mirabilia:* Of which I conceive this sense: *When great Jupiter had hidden all things in himself, working out of the love of his sacred heart, he sent thence, or brought forth into grateful light, the admirable works which he had fore-thought.*

Pindarus the Poet, and one of the wisest, acknowledged also one God, the most High, to be the Father and Creator of all things: *Unus Deus, Pater, Creator summus.* PLATO calleth God the cause and original, the nature and reason of the universall: *Totius rerum natura, causa, & origo Deus.* But hereof more at large hereafter.

Now, although the curiosity of some men have found it superfluous, to remember the opinions of Philosophers in matters of Divinity: (it being true, that the Scripture hath

hath not want of any forrain testimony) yet as the *Fathers*, with others excellently learned are my examples herein, so S. Paul himself did not despise, but thought it lawful and profitable, to remember whatsoever he found agreeable to the word of God among the Heathen, that he might thereby take from them all escape, by way of ignorance, God rendering vengeance to them that know him not: as in the Epistle to Titus he cryeth *Epimenides* against the *Cretians*, and to the *Corinthians*, *Menander*; and in the seventeenth of the *Acts*, *Aratus &c.* For, Truth (saith S. Ambrose by whomsoever uttered is of the holy Ghost; *Veritas a quocunque dicitur, a spiritu sancto est:* and lastly, let those kind of men learne this rule; *Quae sacris serviant, propheta non sunt;* Nothing is prophane so that serveth to the use of holy things.

## §. III.

Of the meaning of In Principio, Genes. 1. 1.

His visible world of which *Moses* writeth, God created in the beginning, or, first of all: in which (saith *Tertullian*) things began to be. This word *Beginning* (in which the *Hebrews* seeke some hidden myserie, and which in the *Jewes Targum* is converted by the word *Sapientia*) cannot be referred to succession of time, nor to order, as some men have conceived, both which are sublequent: but only to Creation then. For before that Beginning, there was neither primarie matter to be informed, nor forme to informe, nor any being, but the Eternall. Nature was not, nor the next Parent of Time begotten, Time properly and naturally taken: for if God had but disposed of Matter already in being, then as the word *Beginning* could not be referred to all things, so must it follow, that the institution of Matter proceeded from a greater power, than that of God. And by what name shall we then call such an One (saith *Lanfantinus*) as exceedeth God in potency: for it is an act of more excellencie to make, than to dispose of things made? whereupon it may be concluded, that Matter could not be before this Beginning: except we faine a double creation, or allow of two powers, and both infinite, the impossibility whereof cometh defence. *Nam impossibile plura esse infinita: quoniam Cusan de Mente* 30 *alternum esset in alio finitum;* There cannot be more infinites than one: for one of them would limit the other.

## §. IV.

Of the meaning of the words Heaven and Earth, Genes. 2. 1.

The Universal matter of the world (which *Moses* comprehendeth under the names of Heaven and Earth) is by divers diversly understood: for there are that conceive, that by those words was meant the first matter, as the Peripatetickes understand it; to which S. Augustine and *Isidore* seeme to adhere. *Fecisti mundum* (saith S. Augustine) *de materia informi, quam fecisti de nulla re, penè nullam rem:* that is, I have made the world of a matter without forme; which matter then made of nothing, and being made, it was little other than nothing.

But this potential and imaginative *materia prima*, cannot exist without forme. *Peter Lombard*, the *Schoolemen*, *Beda*, *Lyrannus*, *Comestor*, *Tostatus*, and others affirme that it pleased God first of all to create the Emphyrean Heaven: which at the succeeding instant (saith *Beda* and *Strabo*) he filled with Angels. This Emphyrean Heaven *Stenchius Euzebius* *Beda* *Hex. Strabo* calleth *Divine* clarity, and *uncreated:* an error, for which he is sharply charged by *Eug. Cos.* & *de Paverius*, though (as I conceive) he rather failed in the subsequent, when he made it to be a place, and the seat of Angels and just soules, than in the former affirmation: for of the first, That God liveth in eternall Light, it is written; *Mysoule, praise thou the Lord* Psal. 104. 12. *Clarior divina* that covereth himselfe with light: and in the Revelation; *and the City hath no need of the Sun, neither of the Moon to shine in it: for the glory of God did light it.* And herein also it, *sed sapientia* *John Mercer* upon Genesis, differeth not in opinion from *Eugenius*: for as by Heaven created, *non creatas natas*, created in the beginning, was not meant the invisible or supercelestial, so in his judgment, because it was in all eternitie the glorious feat of God himselfe, it was not necessary to be created; *Quem mundum super calistem meo judicio creari* (saith *Mercer*) *non creatus* *cap. 7. v. 7.* *rat neceffe.*

But as *Moses* forbore to speake of Angels, and of things in visible and incorporate, for the

the weaknes of their capacities, whom he then cared to informe of those things which were more manifest, (to wit) that God did not only by a strong hand deliver them from the bondage of Egypt, according to his promise made to their forefathers; but also that he created, and was the sole cause of this aspectable and perceivable Universe: so on the other side I dare not thinke, that any supercelestial Heaven, or whatsoever else (not himselfe) was increate and eternal: and as for the place of God before the world created, the finite wisdom of mortal men hath no perception of it, neither can it limit the seat of infinite power, no more than infinite power it self can be limited: for his place is in himselfe, whom no magnitude else can containe: *How great is the house of God (saith Baruch) how large is the place of his possessions, it is great, and hath no end, it is high and unmeasurable.*

But leaving multiplicity of opinion, it is more probable and allowed, that by the words Heaven and Earth, was meant the solid matter and substance, aswell of all the Heavens, and Orbs supernal, as of the Globe of the Earth and Waters, which covered it over, (to wit) that very matter of all things, *matéria, Chaos, p[er]sibilitas, sive posse fieri.* Which matter (saith Calvin) was so called, *quod totius mundi (semper fuerit) Because it was the seed of the Universal: an opinion of ancient Philosophers long before.*

## §. V.

That the substance of the waters, as mixt in the body of the earth, is by Moses understood in the word *Earth*: and that the Earth, by the attributives of unformed and void, is described as the Chaos of the ancient Heavens.

Moses first nameth Heaven and Earth (putting waters but in the third place) as comprehending waters in the word Earth; but afterwards he nameth them apart, when God by his Spirit began to distinguish the confused Masse, and (as Basil saith) *preparare naturam aque ad fecunditatem vitalem; to prepare the nature of water to a vital fruitfulness.*

For under the word Heaven, was the matter of all heavenly bodies, & natures exprest: and by the name of Earth and Water, all was meant, whatsoever is under the Moon, and subject to alteration. Corrupt seeds bring forth corrupt plants; so which the pure heavens shall wash away like *swaaks*, saith Esay. Neither were the waters the matter of Earth: for it is written, *Let the waters under the heavens be gathered into one place, and let the dry land appear:* which proveth, that the dry land was mixt and covered with the waters and not yet distinguished; but no way, that the waters were the matter or seed of the Earth, much lesse of the Universal. *Intro in Domine terram fundisti, Thou, O Lord, in the beginning hast founded the Earth:* and againe, *The Earth was covered with the Deep* meaning with waters) as with a garment; saith David. And if by natural arguments it may be proved, that water by condensation may become earth, the same reason teacheth us also, that earth rarified may become water: water, aire, fire; and so on the contrary. *Dens ignis substantiam per ævum in aquam convertit, God turneth the substance of fire by aire into water.* For the Heavens and the Earth remained in the same state, in which they were created, as touching their substance, though there was afterwards added multiplicity of perfection, in respect of beauty and ornament. *Cælum verò & terra in statu creationis remanserunt quantum ad substantiam, licet multiplex p[er]fectio decoris & ornatus eis postmodum superaddita est.* And the word which the Hebrews call *Maim*, is not to be understood according to the Latine translation simply, and as specificall water; but the same more properly signifieth liquor. For (according to Montanus) *Est autem Maim liquor generis, & hoc nomen propter verborum penuriam, Latina lingua plurali numero aquas fecit.* For *Maim* (saith he) is a double liquor (that is, of divers natures) and this so name or word the Latines, wanting a voyce to expresse it, call it in the plural, *Aquas, Waters.*

This Masse, or indigested matter, or Chaos created in the beginning, was without forme, that is, without the proper forme, which it afterwards acquired, when the Spirit of God had separated the Earth, and digested it from the waters. *And the Earth was void:* that is, not producing any creatures, or adorned with any plants, fruits, or flowers. But after the Spirit of God had moved upon the waters, and wrought this indigested matter into that form, which it now retaineth, then did the earth bud forth the beards, which feedeth seeds, and the fruitful tree according to his kinde, and God saw that it was good; which

attribue

attribute was not given to the Earth, while it was confused; nor to the Heavens, before they had motion, and adornment. *God saw that it was good;* that is, made perfect: for perfection is that to which nothing is wanting. *Et p[er]fecti Dei p[er]fecta sunt opera;* The works of the perfect God, are perfect.

From this lump of imperfect Matter had the ancient Poets their invention of Demogorgon: Hesiodus and Anaxagoras the knowledge of that Chaos: of which Ovid;

*Ante Mare, & Terras, & (quod regebat omnia) Cælum,*

Ovid in Met.  
lib. 1.

*Unus erat toto nature vultus in Orbe,*

*Quem dixere Chaos, rudis indigestaque moles.*

Before the Sea and Land was made, and Heaven, that all doth hide,

In all the World one only face of Nature did abide:

Which Chaos hight, a huge rude heap.

## §. VI.

How it is to be understood, that the Spirit of God moved upon the waters, and that this is not to be searched curiously.

After the Creation of Heaven and Earth, then void and without form, the Spirit of God moved upon the Waters. The Seventy Interpreters use the word *superferebatur*, moved upon or over: *incubabat*, or *fovebat* (saith Hierome) out of Basil; and Basil out of a Syrian Doctor; *Equidem non meam tibi, sed viri in yndam Syri sententiam recensebo* (saith Basil Hæmam. Basil;) which words *incubare* or *fovere*, importing warmth, hatching, or quickning, have a special likenesse. *Verbum translatum est ab avibus pulcritia sue incubantibus, quoniam spiritali, & planè inenarrabili, non autem corporali modo; The word is taken of birds: hatching their young, not corporally, but in a spiritual and unexpressible manner.*

Some of the Hebrews convert it to this effect, *Spiritus Dei volitabat; The Spirit of God did flutter:* the Chaldaean Paraphrast in this sense. *Ventus à conspectu Dei sufflabat:* or as other understand the Chaldaean, *Flabat, pellebat, removebat:* The wind from the face of God did blow under, drive, or remove, or did blow upon; according to the 147 Psalm, *He caused his winde to blow, and the waters increase: but there was yet no winde nor exhalation.* Arias Montanus in these words, *Et Spiritus Elobim Merachsefer*, id est, *efficaciter motans, confervens, ac agitans super facies genim liquoris; The Spirit of God effectually and often moving, keeping warm, and cherishing, quickning and stirring upon the face of this double liquor.* For he maketh four originals, whereof three are agents, and the last passive and material, to wit, *Causa*, which is the divine goodness: *Jehi*, which is, *flat, sive erit*, Let it be, or it shall be. *Que vox verbo Dei prima prolata fuit: Which voice (saith he) was the first that was uttered by the Word of God.* The third, *Spiritus Elobim*, the Spirit of God, id est, *vis quædam divina, agilis ac p[re]sens, per omnia pertingens, omnia complens; that is, A certain divine power, or strength everywhere, active and extending, and stretching through all, filling and finishing all things.* The fourth he calleth *Maim*, id est, *materies ad omnem rem considerandam habilis; Matter apt to become every thing.* For my self, I am resolved (Cùm Deus sit supernaturalis omni ratione; Seeing God is in all reason above reason) that although the effects which follow his wonderful waies of working, may in a measure be perceived by mans understanding, yet the manner and first operation of his divine power, cannot be conceived by any minde, or spirit, compassed with a mortal body. *Animalis homo quæ Dei sunt, non percipit: For my thoughts (saith the Lord in Esay) are not your thoughts, neither are your waies my waies.* And as the world hath not known God himself: so are his waies (according to S. Paul) *past finding out.* O righteous Father, the world hath not known thee, saith Christ. And therefore, whether that motion, vitality and operation, were by incubation or how else, the manner is onely known to God. *Quomodo in omnibus sit rebus vel p[er] essentiam, vel p[er] potentiam, intellectus noster non capit; For, how God (saith S. Augustine, speaking of his Ubiquity) is in all things, either by essence, presence, or power, our understanding cannot comprehend. Nihil inter Deum hominemque distaret, si consilia, & dispositiones illius à seip[s]is eternæ, cogitatio assequeretur humanis: There would be no difference between God and man, if man's understanding could conceive the counsels and disposing of that eternal Majesty; and therefore to be over-curious in searching how the all-powerful Word of God wrought in the Creation of the World, or his all-piercing and operative spirit distinguishing, gave form to the Matter*

of the Universal, is a labour and search like unto his, who not contented with a known and safe Foord, will presume to pass over the greatest River in all parts, where he is ignorant of their depths: for so doth the one lose his life, and the other his understanding. We behold the Sun, and enjoy his light, as long as we look towards it, but tenderly, and circumspectly: we warm our selves safely, while we stand near the fire; but if we seek to out-face the one, to enter into the other, we forthwith become blind or burnt.

But to eschew curiosity: this is true, that the English word (*moved*) is most proper and significant: for of motion proceedeth all production, and all whatsoever is effected. And this omnipotent Spirit of God, which may indeed be truly called, *Principium motus*, and with *Miracula, Vis cause efficientis*, The force of the efficient cause; S. Augustine sometimes taketh for the holy Ghost; sometimes for a winde or breath, *Sub nomine Spiritus*, under the name of a Spirit, which is sometimes so taken: or for *virtualis creatura*, For a created virtuality: Tertullian and Theodoret call it also a breath or winde: *Mercurius nament it, Spiritum tenuem intelligibilem*, A pure or thin intelligible Spirit: Anaxagoras, *Mentem*: Tostatus, *Voluntatem & mentem Dei*; The will and minde of God; which *mens*, Plato in *Timæo*, maketh *Animam mundi*, The soule of the world: and in his sixth Book de *Republica*, he calleth it the Law of Heaven; in his Epistles, The Leader of things to come, and the presence of things past. But as Cyriac wrote of the incarnation of Christ our Saviour, *Mens deficit, vox silet, & non mea tantum, sed etiam Angelorum*; My minde faileth, my voice is silent, and not mine only, but even the voice of Angels: so may all men else say in the understanding and utterance of the waies and works of the Creation; for to him (saith Nazianzenus) there is not one substance by which he is, and another, by which he can, *Sed consubstantialis illi est, quicquid ejus est, & quicquid est*; Whatsoever attribute of him there is, and whatsoever he is, it is the very same substance that himself is.

But the Spirit of God which moved upon the waters, cannot be taken for a breath or winde, nor for any other creature, separate from the infinite active power of God, which then formed and distinguished, and which now sustaineth, and giveth continuance to the Universal. For the Spirit of the Lord filleth all the worlds; and the same is it which maintaineth all things, saith Solomon. If thou send forth thy Spirit (saith David) they are created: And Gregory, *Deus suo presentialis esse, dat omnibus rebus esse, ita quod si se rebus subtraheret, sicut de nihilo facta sunt omnia, sic in nihilum deficerent universa*; God giving being to all things, by being present with all things, so as if he should withdraw himself from them, then as of nothing the world was made, it would again fall away and vanish into nothing. And this working of Gods Spirit in all things, Virgil hath exprest excellently:

*Principio Cælum ac Terras, camposque liquentes,  
Lucentemque globum Lunæ, Titanique æstra,  
Spiritus intus alit: totamque insula per artem,  
Mens agitat molem, & magno se corpore miscet.*

The Heaven, and Earth, and all the liquid Mayn,  
The Moons bright Globe, and Stars Titanian,  
A Spirit within maintains: and their whole mains,  
A mind, which through each part infus'd doth pass,  
Fashions, and works, and wholly doth transpierce  
All this great Body of the Universe.

And this was the same Spirit, which moved in the Universal, and thereby both distinguished and adorned it. His Spirit hath garnished the Heavens, saith Job. So then the Spirit of God moved upon the waters, and created in them their spirituality and natural motion; motion-brought forth heat; and heat rarification, and subtilty of parts. By this Spirit (which gave heat and motion, and thereby, operation to every nature, while it moved upon the waters, which were in one indigested lump, and Chaos, disposed to all forms alike) was begotten Aire: an element superior, as lighter than the waters, through whose vast, open, subtile, Diaphanick, or transparent body, the light afterwards created, might easily transpierce: Light for the excellency thereof being the first creature which God called good, whose creation immediately followed. This Spirit Chrysostome calleth a vital Operation. *Aquis à Deo insitam, ex qua aqua non solum motu, sed & vim procreantia animalia habuerint*. He calleth it, A vital Operation given by God unto the waters, whereby the waters had not onely motion, but also power to procreate or bring forth living Creatures.

§. VII.

## §. VII.

Of the light created, as the material substance of the Sun, and of the nature of it, and difficulty of knowledge of it: and of the excellency and use of it: and of motion, and heat annexed unto it.

These waters were afterwards congregated, and called the Sea: and this Light afterwards (in the fourth day) gathered and united, and called the Sun, the Organ and Instrument of created light. For this first and dispersed light did not (as I conceive) distinguish the night from the day, but with a reference to the Suns creation, and the uniting of the dispersed light therein. This is proved by these words, Let there be lights in the Firmament, to separate the day from the night: which lights in the Firmament of Heaven, were also made for signes, and for seasons, and for daies, and for years, implying a motion instantly to follow, by which, daies and years are distinguished; after which succeeded time, or together with which, that Time (which was the measure of motion) began. For that space of the first three daies which preceded the Suns creation, or formal perfection, when as yet there was not any motion to be measured, and the day named in the fifth Verse; was but such a space, as afterwards by the Suns motion made a civil or natural day. And as Waters were the matter of Aire, of the firmament, and of the lower and upper waters, and of the Seas, and Creatures therein: Earth, the matter of Beasts, Plants, Minerals, and Mans body: so may Light (for expresse sake) be called the Chaos, or material substance of the Sun, and other lights of heaven: Howbeit, neither the Sun, nor any thing sensible, is that light it self. *Quæ causa est lucidiorum, quæ est causa quæ things are lightsome* (though it make it self Lux dicitur, quæ se, & omnia visibilia facit. Cusan. in Compens. cap. 7. & exercit. lib. 5.) but a body most illighted, which illuminateth the Moon, by whom the neighbouring Region (which the Greeks call *Aether*, the place of the supposed Element of fire) is affected and qualified, and by it all bodies living in this our aire. For this light Avicenna calleth *vehiculum & fomentum omnium celestium virtutum, & impressum*: The conductor, and preserver, or nourisher of all celestiall virtues and impressions, nothing descending of heavenly influences, but by the medium, or means of light. Aristotle calleth light a quality, inherent, or cleaving to a Diaphanous body, *Lumen est qualitas inherens Diaphano*: but this may be better avouched of the heat, which it transporteth and bringeth with it, or conducteth: which heat (say the Platonicks) *Absente lumine residet in subjecto*, The light being departed, doth reside in the subject, as warmth in the air, though the same be deprived of light. This light Plotinus and all the Academicks make incorporal, and so doth Montanus, *Cui nec duritia resistit, nec spatium*; Which neither hardness resisteth, nor space leaveth.

Aristotle findeth corporality in the beams of light; but it is but by way of repetition of other mens opinions, saith Pico Lomineus. Democritus, Leucippus, and Epicurus, give materiality to light it self, but improperly: for it passeth at an instant from the Heavens to the Earth, nor is it resisted by any hardness, because it pierceth through the solid body of glaſs, or other Crystalline matters; and whereas it is withstood by unclean and unpure earthy substances, less hard, and more easie to invade then the former, the same is, *Quod obſtaculum naturæ terrenæ atq; sordidum, non capit candidam luminis puritatem*: Because an obstacle by nature earthy and soule, doth not receive the pure cleanness of light: alluding to that most divine Light, which only shineth on those minds, which are purged from all worldly dross, and humane uncleannesses.

But of this created light, there is no agreement in opinion; neither do I marvel at it, for it cannot be found either in the Fathers, Philosophers, or School-men, or other ancient or later Writers, that any of them understood either it or themselves therein: all men (to cast off ignorance) have disputed thereof, but there is no man that hath been taught thereby. Thomas Aquinas (not inferior to any in wit) as he hath shewed little strength of argument in refuting the opinions of Beda, Hugo, Lombard, Lyranus, and others: so is his own judgement herein, as weak as any mans; and most of the School-men were rather curious in the nature of terms, and more subtile in distinguishing upon the parts of doctrine already laid down, than discoverers of any thing hidden, either in Philosophy or Divinity: of whom it may be truly said, *Nihil sapientie odiosius acuminis nimio*: Nothing is more odious to true wisdom, than too acute sharpness. Neither hath the length of time, and the search of many learned men, (which the same time hath brought

brought forth and devoured) resolved us, whether this light be substantial, corporal, or incorporeal : Corporal they say it cannot be, because then it could neither pierce the aire, nor thofe hard, folid, and Diaphanous bodies; which it doth, and yet every day we fee the aire illightned : incorporeal it cannot be, becaufe it fometime affecteth the fight of the eye with offence, and therefore by moft of the Fathers fo esteemed. Others fay (as *Patricius*) that it cannot be matter, becaufe no form fo excellent as it felt to inform it : neither can it be an accident, which is not feparable without the destruction of the fubject : for light being taken from the Sun, the Sun is no more the Sun in exiftence. Secondly, if light were proceeding from matter and forme, then either, or both muft be one of thefe, lucide or bright, darke or opaque, Diaphanous or transparent ; but darkenneffe cannot be parent of light ; and things Diaphanous ( being neither light, nor darkenneffe, but capable of either ) cannot be the caufe of either, and therefore muft the matter, or form, or both, be lucide and fhining. Lucide and fhining obtaine their fo being of the light; and therefore, if wee derive this being of light from a former, then would the progreffe goe on infinitely and againft nature ; and therefore he concludeth that light in the Sun hath his being primarily, and immediately of it felfe, and is therefore the Suns form, and the form of all lucide and fhining bodies : but what is taught hereby, let others judge.

*Lucida corpora sunt plena lux lucis, alienis tenebris impervia. Opaca sunt plena lux tenebris alienis lumine. Transparencia seu Diaphana, carent lux et lumine et tenebris : alienis et lumine et tenebris permeantur. Scal. lib. ex. 71.*

But in my understanding, *Lumen* (which may be Englifhed by the word *Shine*) is an intentional Species of that, which may be Englifhed by Light, and fo, this fhining which proceedeth from the Sun, or other lights of Heaven, or from any other light, is an Image, or intentional Species thereof; and an intentional Species may be understood by example of a red, or green colour, occasioned by the fhining of the Sun through red or green glaffe : for then we perceive the fame colour caft upon any thing oppofite ; which redneffe or other colour, we call the *intentional Species* of the colour in that glaffe. And again, as this light, touching his fimple nature, is no way yet understood : fo it is difputed, whether this light firft created, be the fame which the Sun inholdeth and cafteth forth, or whether it had continuance any longer than till the Suns creation.

But by the moft wife and unchanged order, which God obferved in the works of the World, I gather, that the Light, in the firft day created, was the fubftance of the Sun: for *Mofes* repeateth twice the maine parts of the Univerfal : firft, as they were created in matter ; fecondly, as they were adorned with forme : firft, naming the Heavens, the Earth, the Waters, all confuted; and afterward, the Waters congregated, the Earth made drie Land, and the Heavens diftinguifhed from both, and beautified. And therefore the Earth, was earth, before it was uncovered, and before it was called *Arida*, or drie Land ; and the Waters were waters, before they were congregated and called the Sea, though neither of them perfect, or enriched with their vidual formes : So the Sun although it had not his formal perfection, his circle, beauty, and bounded magnitude, till the fourth day; yet was the fubftance thereof in the firft day (under the name of Light) created ; and this Light formerly difperfed, was in the fame fourth day united, and fet in the Firmament of Heaven : for, to Light created in the firft day God gave no proper place or fixation ; and therefore the effects named by *Anticipation*, (which was to feperate Land from night) were precifely performed, after this Light was congregated and had obtained life and motion. Neither did the wifedom of God finde caufe why it fhould move (by which motion, days and nights are diftinguifhed) till then : becaufe there was not yet any Creature produced, to which, by moving, the Sun might give light, heate and operation.

But after the Earth (diftinguifhed from Waters) began to bud forth the bud of the herbe, &c. God caufed the Sun to move, and ( by enterchange of time ) to vifite every part of the inferiour world ; by his heate to ftir up the fire of generation, and to give activity to the feeds of all natures : For, as a King, which commandeth fome goodly building to be erected, doth accommodate the fame to that ufe and end, to which it was ordained ; fo it pleased God ( faith *Procopius* ) to command the Light to be ; which by his all-powerful Word he approved, and approving it, difpofed thereof, to the ufe and comfort of his future Creatures.

But in that it pleased God to afke of *Job*, *By what way is the light parted, and where is the way where light dwelleth* ; we thereby know, that the nature thereof falleth not under man's understanding ; and therefore let it fuffice, that by God's grace we enjoy the effects

*Quemadmodum Rex aliquis, &c. Procop. in Gen. 1.*

*Job 38. 24.*

fects thereof. For this light is of the treasure of God ( faith *Esdra* : ) And thofe which inhabit the Heavens, do only know the Effence thereof. *Nihil ignotum in celo, nihil notum in terra : Nothing unknowne in Heaven, nothing perfectly known on earth. Res vero sunt in mundo invisibiles ; in mundo visibiles umbræ rerum : Things themselves are in the invisible world, in the world visible, but their shadowes. Surely, if this Light be not fpiritually ; yet it approacheth neereft unto fpiritualitie ; and it have any corporalitie, then of all other the moft fubtile and pure ; for howfoever, it is of all things feen, the moft beautiful, and of the fwiftelt motion, of all other the moft neceffary and beneficiall. For it miniftreth to men, and other creatures, all celestiall influences ; it difpatcheth thofe fad thoughts and sorrowes, which the darkenneffe both begetteth and maintaineth ; it difcovereth unto us the glorious works of God, and carrieth up with an Angelical fwiftneffe, our eyes unto Heaven, that by the fight thereof, our minds being informed of his vifible marvails, may continually travell to furmount thefe perceived Heavens, and to finde out their omnipotent Caufe and Creator. *Cognitio non quiescit in rebus creatis ; Our knowledge doth not quiet it felfe in things created. Et ipsa lux facit, ut cetera mundi membra digna sint laudibus, cum suam bonitatem & decorem omnibus communicat ; It is the Light ( faith Saint Ambrose ) that maketh the other parts of the world fo worthy of praife, feeing that it felfe communicateth its goodneffe and beauty unto all. Of which *Ovid* out of *Orpheus* :**

*Ille ego sum, qui longum metior annum,  
Omnia qui video, per quem videt omnia mundus,  
Mundi oculus.*

*Ovid. Met. lib. 1.*

The World difcerns it felfe, while I the World behold,  
By me the longeft years, and other times are told,  
I the worlds eye.

Laftly, if we may behold in any creature, any one fparke of that eternall fire, or any far-off dawning of Gods glorious brightneffe, the fame in the beauty, motion, and virtue of this Light, may be perceived. Therefore was God called *Lux ipsa*, and the Light, by *Hermes* named *Lux sancta*, and *Chrift* our Saviour faid to be that *Light which lighteth every man that cometh into the world*. Yet in refpect of Gods incomprehenfible fublimitie, and puritie, this is alfo true, that God is neither a minde, nor a Spirit of the nature of other fpirits ; nor a light, fuch as can be difcerned. *Deus profecto non mens est, at verius fit mens causa est ; nec spiritus, sed causa quæ spiritus extat ; nec lumen, sed causa quæ lumen existit : God ( faith *Hermes* in *Poemandro* ) certainly is not a minde, but the caufe that the minde hath his being ; nor fpirit, but the caufe by which every fpirit is ; nor light, but the caufe by which the light exifteth.*

So then the *Muls* and *Chaos* being firft created, void, dark, and unformed, was by the operative Spirit of God, pierced and quickned ; and the Waters, having now received Spirit and motion, refolved their thinner parts into Aire, which God illightned : the Earth alfo by being contiguous, and mixt with waters (participating the fame divine virtue) brought forth the bud of the hearb that feedeth feed &c. and for a mean and organ, by which this operative virtue might be continued, God appointed the Light to be united, and gave it alfo motion and heat, which heat caufed a continuance of thofe feveral Species, which the Earth (being made fruitfull by the Spirit) produced, and with motion begat the time and times fucceeding.

## §. VIII.

Of the Firmament, and of the waters above the Firmament : and whether there be any Cryftalline Heaven, or any Primum mobile.

After that the Spirit of God had moved upon the waters, and light was created, God faid, *Let there be a Firmament in the middeft of the waters, and let it feparate the waters from the waters* : that is, thofe waters which by rarification and evaporation were afcended, and thofe of the Earth and Sea.

But thefe waters feperate above this extension, which the Latine Translation calleth *firmamentum*, or *expansum* ( for fo *Vatablus*, *Pagninus*, and *Junius* turne it ) are not the Cryftalline Heavens created in the imaginations of men ; which opinion *Basilins Magnus* calleth a childifh fuppofition, making in the fame place many learned arguments againft

*Gen. 1. 10.*

Mon. Nat. hij.  
fol. 152.

against this infancie. For the waters above the firmament, are the waters in the ayre above us, where the same is more solid and condense, which God separated from the neather waters by a firmament, that is, by an extended distance and vast space: the words *Raquia*, which *Montanus* writeth *Rakjag*, and *Shamajim*, being indifferently taken for the heaven and for ayre, and more properly for the ayre and *Aether*, than for the heavens, as the best Hebricians understand them, *Quo* *suprema ac tenuia ab infimis caelis diducit, intersectaq; distant*, for that whereby the *supreme* and *thin* bodies were placed in distance, being severed and cut off from low and grosse matters: and the waters above the firmament, exprest in the word *Majim*, are in that tongue taken properly for the waters above the ayre, or in the uppermost region of the same.

Gen. 49. 25.

\* Psal. 104. 12.  
2 Gen. 19. 24.  
Cap. 27. 28.  
Deut. 11. 11.  
Job 38. 29.  
Matth. 6. 26.

Gen. 11. 4.

And that the word Heaven is used for the Ayre, the Scriptures every where witness; as in the blessings of *Joseph*, and in the 104. Psalm: \* *By these Springs shall the fowle of the Heaven dwell; and upon Sodome and Gomorrah it rained brimstone and fire out of the Heaven; and in Isaacs blessing to Jacob: God give thee therefore of the dew of Heaven: and in Deuteronomy the 11. But the land whither you go to possess it, is a land that drinketh water of the rayne of Heaven; and in Job. Who hath ingendred the frosts of Heaven; and in S. Matthew, Behold the Fowles of Heaven, for they sow not.* So as in all the Scriptures of the Old Testament throughout, is the word Heaven very often used for Ayre, and taken also hyperbolically for any great height, as, *Let us build us a Tower, whose top may reach to Heaven &c.* And in this very place *Basil* avoucheth, that this appellation of Heaven for the Firmament, is but by way of similitude: his owne words be these; *Et vocavit Deus firmamentum celum. Hæc appellatio alii quidem propriè accommodatur, huic autem nunc ad similitudinem; And God called the firmament Heaven: This appellation (saith Basil) is properly applied to another (that is to the Starrie Heaven) but to this (that is, to the Firmament dividing the waters) it is imposed by similitude.* And if there were no other proofe, that by the firmament was meant the Ayre, and not the Heaven, the words of *Moses* in the eighth verse, conferred with the same word *Firmament* in the twentieth verse, make it manifest: for in the eighth verse it is writtten, that God called the Firmament, which divided waters from waters, Heaven; and in the twentieth verse he calleth the Firmament of Heaven, Ayre in these words: *And let the Fowle flye upon the earth in the open firmament of Heaven.* And what use there should be of this ycie or crystalline, or waterie Heaven, I conceive not, except it be to moderate and temper the heate, which the *primum mobile* would otherwise gather and increase: though in very truth, instead of this help, it would add an unmeasurable greatnes of circle, whereby the swiftnesse of that first Moveable would exceed all possibilitie of belief. *Sed nemo tenetur ad impossibilia; but no man ought to be held to impossibilities:* and faith it self (which surmounteth the height of all humane reason) hath for a forcible conductor, the Word of Truth, which also may be called *lumen omnis rationis & intellectus; the light of all reason and understanding.* Now that this supposed first Moveable, turneth it selfe so many hundred thousand miles in an instant (seeing the Scriptures teach it not) lett those that can beleve mens imagination, apprehend it, for I cannot. But of these many Heavens, let the Reader that desireth satisfaction, search *Orontius*, and of this waterie Heaven, *Basilus Magnus*, in his *Hexam. fol. 40. 41 &c.* and *Matth. Beroaldus*, his second Book and sixt chapter. For my selfe, I am perswaded, that the waters called, The waters above the Heavens, are but the clouds and waters engendred in the uppermost ayre.

#### §. IX.

A conclusion, repeating the summe of the works in the Creation, which are reduced to three heads: The creation of matter, The forming of it, The finishing of it.

To conclude, it may be gathered out of the first Chapter of *Genesis*, that this was the order of the most wise God in the beginning, and when there was no other nature, or being, but Gods incomprehensible eternitie. First, hee created the matter of all things: and in the first three dayes he distinguished and gave to every nature his proper forme; the forme of levitie to that which ascended; to that which descended, the form of gravitie: for he separated light from darkenesse, divided waters from waters, and gathered the waters under the firmament into one place. In the last three

three dayes, God adorned, beautified, and replenished the World: he set in the Firmament of Heaven, the Sun, Moone, and Stars; filled the Earth with Beasts, the Aire with Fowle, and the Sea with Fish, giving to all that have life a power generative, thereby to continue their Species and kindes; to Creatures vegetative and growing, their feeds in themselves; for he created all things, that they might have their being: and the generations of the world are preserved.

#### §. X.

That Nature is no Principium per se; nor Forme the giver of being: and of our ignorance how second causes should have any proportion with their effects.

And for this working power, which we call Nature, the beginning of motion and rest, according to *Aristotle*, the same is nothing else, but the strength and faculty, which God hath infused into every creature, having no other selfe-ability, than a Clocke, after it is wounde up by a mans hand, hath. These therefore that attribute unto this faculty, any first or sole power, have therein no other understanding, than such a one hath, who looking into the Stern of a Ship, and finding it guided by the Helme and Rudder, dorch ascribe some absolute vertue to the peece of wood, without all consideration of the hand that guides it, or of the judgement, which also directeth and commandeth that hand: forgetting in this and in alle else, that by the vertue of the first act, all Agents worke whatsoever they worke: *Virtute primi actus agunt agentia omnia quicquid agunt*: for as the minde of man seeth by the Organ of the eye, heareth by the eares, and maketh chooyce by the will: and therefore we attribute fight to the eye, and hearing to the eares, &c. and yet it is the minde only, that giveth ability, life, and motion to all these his instruments and Organs; so God worketh by Angels, by the Sun, by the Starres, by Nature, or infused properties, and by men as by severall Organs, severall effects; all second causes whatsoever, being but instruments, conduites, and pipes, which carry and disperse what they have received from the head and fontaine of the Univerfall. For as it is Gods infinite power, and everie where

30 preference (compassing, embracing, and piercing all things) that giveth to the Sun power to draw up vapours, to vapours to be made clouds, cloudes to containe rain, and rain to fall: so all second and instrumentall causes, together with Nature it selfe, without that operative faculty which God gave them, would become altogether silent, vertuelesse, and dead: of which excellently *ORPHEUS*; *Per te virescunt omnia, All things by thee spring forth in youth, full Greene.* I enforce not these things, thereby to annihilate those variable vertues which God hath given to his creatures, animate and inanimate, to heavenly and earthly bodies, &c. for all his workes in their vertues prayse him: but of the manner how God worketh in them, or they in, or with each other, which the Heathen Philosophers, and those that follow them have taken on them, to teach: I say, there is not any one among them, nor any one among us, that could ever yet conceive it, or expresse it, ever enrich his owne understanding with any certaine truth, or ever edifie others (not foolishly by selfe-flattery) therein. For (saith *Laërtius*, speaking of the wisdom of the Philosophers) *Si facultas inveniende veritatis huic studio subjaceret, aliquando esset inventa; cum vero tot temporibus, tot ingeniiis in ejus inquisitione contritis, non sit comprehensa, apparet nullam ibi esse sapientiam; If in this studie (saith he) were meanes to find out the truth, it had ere this bin found out: but seeing it is not yet comprehended, after that so much time, and so many wits have been worn out in the inquiry of it, it appeareth, that there is no wisdom there to be had. Nam si de vi præcipientia scientia haberetur, omnium rerum scientia necessario haberetur: If the precise knowledge of any one thing were to be had, it should necessarily follow, that the knowledge of all things were to be had.* And as the Philosophers were ignorant in Nature, and the waies of her working: so were they more curious, than knowing, in their first matter and Physical form. For if their first matter had any being, it were not then the first matter: for, as it is the first matter, it hath onely a power of being, which it altogether leaveth, when it doth subsist. And seeing it is neither a substance perfect, nor a substance inchoate, or in the way of perfection, how any other substance should thence take consence, it hath not been taught, neither are these formes (saith a learned Author) any thing, *se ex ea exprimitur potentia, quæ nihil est.* Again, how this first matter should be *sub-jectum*

Natura enim remota providentia &c. potentia divina, præter nihil est. Laërtius de philosophis. lib. 1. c. 28.

Cypr. de mente. l. 3.

*jeſum formarum*, and paſſive, which is underſtood to precede the forme, it is hard to conceive: for to make form, which is the cauſe, to be ſubſequent to the thing cauſed, to wit, to the firſt matter) is contrary to all reaſon, divine and humane: only it may be ſaid, that originally there is no other difference between matter and forme, than between heate and fire, of which the one cannot ſubſiſt without the other, but in a kinde of rationall conſideration. Leaving therefore theſe Riddles to their Lovers, who by certain ſcholasticall diſtinctions wiew and pervert the truth of all things, and by which *Ariſtole* hath laboured to prove a falſe eternitie of the World, I thinke it farre ſafer to aſſume with Saint AUGUSTINE, *That all ſpecies and kindes are from God, from whom, whatſoever is naturall proceedeth, of what kinde or eſtimation ſoever, from whence are the ſeeds of all formes, and the formes of all ſeeds and their motions; A quo eſt omnis ſpecies, à quo eſt quicquid naturaliter eſt, cuiuscuſq; generis eſt, cuiuscuſq; eſtimationis eſt, à quo ſunt ſemina formarum, forma ſeminum, motus ſeminarum atq; formarum.* And thus much *Auerrois* is forced to confeſſe. *For all forms* (ſaith he) *are in primo motore;* which is alſo the opinion of *Ariſtole* in the twelfth of his *Metaph.* and of *Albericus* upon *Dionyſius*.

12. Metaph.

## §. XI.

Of Fate, and that the Starres have great influence: and that their operations may diverſly be prevented or furthered.

AND, as of Nature, ſuch is the diſpute and contention concerning Fate or Deſtinie, of which the opinions of thoſe learned men that have written thereof, may be ſafely received, had they not thereunto annexed and falſtened an inevitable neceſſity, and made it more general, and univerſally powerfull than it is, by giving it Domini- on over the mind of man, and over his will, of which *Ovid* and *Juvenal*:

Juven. ſat. 7.  
201.

*Ratio fatum vincere nulla valet.  
Servis regna dabunt, captivis Fata triumphos.*

'Gainſt Fate no counſell can prevail.  
Kingdomes to Slaves by Deſtinie,  
To Captives triumphs given be.

Baſil. Epiſt. 4.  
Aug. de beſeſ.  
70. c. 35.  
Tib. cont. Genſ.  
3. cap. 8. 3.  
Petr. in 12. de  
leg.  
Cic. de ſat.

An error of the Chaldeans, and after them of the Stoicks, the Pharifees, Prifillianiſts, the Bardianiſts, and others, as *Baſil*, *Auguſtine*, and *Thomas* have obſerved: but that Fate is an obedience of ſecond cauſes to the firſt, was well conceived of *Hermes*, and *Apuleius* the Platonist. *Plotinus* out of the Aſtronomers calleth it a diſpoſition from the acts of celeſtiall Orbs, unchangeably working in inferior bodies, the ſame being alſo true enough, in reſpect of all thoſe things which a rational minde doth not order nor direct. *Ptolomie*, *Seneca*, *Democritus*, *Epicurus*, *Chryſippus*, *Empedocles*, and the Stoicks, ſome of them more largely, others more ſtrictly, aſcribe to Fate a binding and inevitable neceſſity; and that it is the ſame which is ſpoken and determined by God (*quod de unoquoque noſtrum ſatus eſt Deus*) and the definite lot of all living. And certainly it cannot be doubted, but the Stars are inſtruments of far greater uſe, than to give an obſcure light, and for men to gaze on after Sun-ſet: it being manifeſt, that the diverſity of ſeaſons, the Winters, and Summers, more hot and cold, are not ſo uncertained by the Sun and Moon alone, who alway keep one and the ſame courſe, but that the Stars have alſo their working therein.

And if we cannot deny, but that God hath given vertues to Springs and Fountains, to cold earth, to plants and ſtones, Mineralls, and to the excrementall parts of the beſt living creatures, why ſhould we robbe the beautiful Starres of their working powers? for ſeeing they are many in number, and of eminent beauty and magnitude, we may not thinke, that in the treaſury of his wiſedom, who is infinite, there can be wanting (even for every Starre) a peculiar vertue and operation; as every herbe, plant, fruit, and flower adorning the face of the Earth, hath the like. For as theſe were not created to beautifie the earth alone, and to cover and ſhadow her duſtie face, but otherwiſe for the uſe of man and beaſt, to feed them and cure them; ſo were not thoſe uncountable glorious bodies ſet in the Firmament, to no other end, than to adorne it, but for inſtruments and Organs of his divine providence, ſo farre as it hath pleaſed his juſt will

30

40

50

to

to determine. *Origen* upon this place of *Genefis*, *Let there be light in the Firmament*, &c. *af-* Gen. 1. 15.  
firmeth, that the Stars are not cauſes (meaning perchanſe binding cauſes; but are as o-  
pen Books, wherein are contained and ſet down all things whatſoever to come; but not  
to be read by the eyes of humane wiſedom: which latter part I beleve well, and this  
ſaying of *Syracides* withall: *That there are hid yet greater things than theſe be, and we have* Eccl. 4. c. 32.  
*ſeeme but a few of his workes.* And though, for the capacity of men, we know ſomewhat,  
yet in the true and uttermoſt vertues of hearbs and plants, which our ſelves ſow and  
ſet, and which grow under our feet, we are in effect ignorant; much more in the pow-  
ers and working of celeſtiall bodies. *For hardly* (ſaith *Solomon*) *can we diſcerne the things* Wſl. 9. 16.  
*that are upon the Earth, and with great labour finde we out thoſe things that are before us: who*  
*can then inveſtigate the things that are in Heaven? Multum eſt de rebus celeſtibus aliquid* Ariſtole.  
*cognoſcere: It is much to know a little of heavenly things.* But in this queſtion of Fate,  
the middle courſe is to be followed, that as with the Heathen wee doe not binde God  
to his creatures, in this ſuppoſed neceſſity of deſtiny; ſo on the contrary, we do not  
rob thoſe beautiful creatures of their powers and offices. For had any of theſe ſecond  
cauſes depoyled God of his prerogative, or had God himſelfe conſtrained the minde  
and will of man to impious acts by any celeſtiall inforcements, then ſure the impi-  
ous excuſe of ſome, were juſtifiable; of whom *S. Auguſtine*: *Impi perverſitate in malis* Aug. 20. ſuper  
*ſaſtis reſiſſime reprehendendis ingerunt accuſandum potius auctorem ſyderum, quàm commiſ-* Gen. ad lit.  
*ſorem ſcelerum. Where we reprehend them of evil deeds, they againe with wicked pervers-*  
*neſſe urge, that rather the Author and Creator of the Stars, than the doer of the evil, is to be*  
*accuſed.*

But that the Stars and other celeſtiall bodies incline the will by mediation of the ſenſitive appetite, which is alſo ſtirred by the conſtitution and complexion, it cannot be doubted. *Corpora celeſtia* (ſaith *DAMASCENE*) *conſtitunt in nobis habitus, complexi-* Gal. 1. 20. et. an.  
*ones, & diſpoſitiones. The heavenly bodies* (ſaith he) *make in us habitus, complexion, and diſ-* Gal. 1. 20. et. an.  
*poſitions: for the body* (though *Galen* inforce it further) hath undoubtedly a kinde of  
drawing after it the affections of the minde, eſpecially bodies ſtrong in humour, and  
weak in vertues: for thoſe of cholericke complexions are ſubject to anger, and the fu-  
rious effects thereof; by which they ſuffer themſelves to be tranſported, where the  
mind hath not reaſon to remember, that paſſions ought to be her Vaſſals, not her Ma-  
ſters. And that they wholly direct the reaſonleſſe minde, I am reſolved: For all thoſe  
which were created mortall, as birds, beaſts, and the like, are left to their natural ap-  
petites; over all which, celeſtiall bodies (as inſtruments and executioners of Gods pro-  
vidence) have abſolute dominion. What we ſhould judge of men, who little differ from  
beaſts, I cannot tell: for as he that contendeth againſt thoſe inforcements, may eaſily  
maſter or reſiſt them; ſo whoſoever ſhall neglect the remedies by vertue and piety  
prepared, putteth himſelfe altogether under the power of his ſenſuall appetite; *vincitur Quint.*  
*ſatum ſi reſiſtas, vincit ſi contempſeris: Fate will be overcome, if thou reſiſt it; if thou neglect,*  
*it conquereth.*

But that either the Stars or the Sun have any power over the mindes of men imme-  
diately, it is abſurd to thinke, other than as aforeſaid, as the ſame by the bodies temper  
may be effected. *Lumen ſolis ad generationem ſenſibilium corporum conſert, & ad vitam ip-* Aug. de Civit.  
*ſam movet, & nutrit, & auget, & perſicit: The light of the Sun* (ſaith *S. AUGUSTINE*) *Dei lib. 5.*  
*helleth the generation of ſenſible bodies, moveth them to life, and nowriſeth, augmenteth and*  
*perſecteth them: yet ſtill as a Miniſter, not as a Maſter: Bonus quidem eſt Sol, in miniſterio* Hex. lib. 4. de  
*non imperio: The Sun is good to ſerve, not to ſway* (ſaith *S. Ambroſe*.) And Saint AUGUSTINE. *term. 3.*  
*Dei regit inferiora corpora per ſuperiora; God ruleth the bodies below by thoſe above; but*  
*heavoucheſt not, that ſuperiour bodies have rule over mens minds, which are in-*  
*corporeall.*

But howſoever we are by the Stars inclined at our birth, yet there are many things  
both in Nature and Art, that encounter the ſame, and weaken their operations; and *Ari-*  
*ſtole* himſelfe confeſſeth, that the Heavens do not alwayes worke their effects in inferi-  
our bodies no more than the ſignes of raine and winde do alwayes come to paſſe. And  
it is divers times ſeene, that paternall vertue and vice hath his counter-working to  
theſe inclinations. *Eſt in juvenis patrum virtus: In the young off-ſpring the Fathers vertue is,* Her. lib. 4. c. 1.  
and ſo the contrary, *patrum vitia:* and herein alſo there is often found an enterchange;  
the Sons of vertuous men, by an ill conſtellation become inclinable to vice, and of vici-  
ous men, to vertue.

B

Egrotia



*Egredia est soboles scelerato nata parente :*

A worthy son is borne of a wicked father.

But there is nothing (after Gods reserved power) that so much setteth this art of influence out of square and rule, as education doth: for there are none in the World so wickedly inclined, but that a religious instruction and bringing up may fashion anew and reforme them; nor any so well disposed, whom (the reins being let loose) the continuall fellowship and familiarity, and the examples of dissolute men may not corrupt and deforme. Vessels will ever retain a favour of their first liquor: it being equally difficult either to cleanse the minde once corrupted, or to extinguish the sweet savour of vertue first received, when the minde was yet tender, open, and easily seasoned; but where a favourable constellation (allowing that the Stars incline the will) and a virtuous education doe happily arrive, or the contrary in both, thereby it is that men are found so exceeding vertuous or vicious, Heaven and Earth (as it were) running together and agreeing in one: for as the seeds of vertue may by the art and husbandry of Christian counsaile produce better and more beautiful fruit, than the strength of self-nature and Kind could have yeilded them; so the plants apt to grow wilde, and to change themselves into weeds, by being set in a soyle sutable, and like themselves, are made more unfavoury and filled with poyson. It was therefore truly affirmed, *Sapientis adjuvabit opus asprorum, quemadmodum agricola terre naturam; A wise man assisteth the work of the Stars as the Husbandman helpeth the nature of the soyle.* And Ptolemie himselfe confesseth thus much, *Sapientis, & omnia sapientis medici dominabuntur astris; A wise man, and the omnious art of a wise Physician shall prevayle against the Stars.* Lastly, we ought all to know, that God created the Stars, as he did the rest of the Universal, whose influences may be called his reserved and unwritten Lawes. But let us consider how they bind: even as the Lawes of men doe; for although the Kings and Princes of the World have by their Lawes decreed, that a Thiefe and a Murderer shall suffer death; and though their Ordinances are daily by Judges and Magistrates (the Stars of Kings) executed accordingly; yet these Lawes doe not deprive Kings of their naturall or religious compassion, or binde them without prerogative, to such a severe execution, so as that there should be nothing left of liberty to judgment, power, or conscience: the Law in his owne nature, being no other than a deafe Tyrant. But seeing that it is otherwise, and that Princes (who ought to imitate God in all they can) doe sometimes for causes to themselves knowne, and by mediation, pardon offences both against others and themselves, it were then impious to take that power and liberty from God himselfe, which his Substitutes enjoy; God being mercy, goodnesse, and charity it self. Otherwise that example of Prayer by our Saviour taught; *And let us not be led into temptation, but deliver us from evill,* had been no other but an expence of words and time; but that God (which only knoweth the operation of his owne creatures truly) hath assured us, that there is no inclination or temptation so forcible, which our humble Prayers and Desires may not make frustrate and breake asunder: for were it (as the Stoicks conceive) that Fate or Destiny, though depending upon eternall power, yet being once ordered and disposed, had such a connexion and immutable dependency, that God himself should in a kinde have shut up himselfe therein: *How miserable then were the condition of men* (saith S. Augustine) *left altogether without hope.*

And if this strength of the Stars were so transferred, as that God had quitted unto them all dominion over his creatures; be he Pagan or Christian that so beleeveth, the only true God of the one, and the imaginary gods of the other, would thereby be despoyled of all worship, reverence, or respect.

And certainly, God which hath promised us the reward of well-doing, which Christ so himself claimed at the hands of the Father, (*I have finished the work which thou gavest mee to doe:*) and the same God, who hath threatned unto us the sorrow and torment of offences, could not, contrary to his merciful nature, be so unjust, as to bind us inevitably to the Destinies or influences of the Stars, or subject our soules to any imposed necessity. But it was well said of Plotinus, that the Stars were significant, but not efficient, giving them yet something lesse than their due: and therefore as I doe not consent with them, who would make those glorious creatures of God vertuelesse: so I thinke that wee derogate from his eternall and absolute power and providence, to ascribe to them

them the same dominion over our immortal soules, which they have over all bodily substances, and perishable natures: for the soules of men, loving and fearing God, receive influence from that divine light it self, whereof the Suns clarity, and that of the Stars, is by Plato called but a shadow. *Lumen est umbra Dei, Deus est lumen luminis; Light is the shadow of Gods brightness, who is the light of light:* But to end this question, because this Destiny, together with Providence, Prefcience, and Predetermination, are often confounded, I thinke it not impertinent to touch the difference in a word or two; for every man hath not observed it, though all learned men have.

## §. XII.

### Of Prefcience.

Prefcience, or fore-knowledge (which the Greeks call *Prognosis*, the Latines *præcognitio*, or *præscientia*) considered in order and nature (if we may speak of God after the manner of men) goeth before Providence: for God fore-knew all things, before he had created them, or before they had being to be cared for; and Prefcience is no other than an infallible fore-knowledge. For whatsoever our selves fore-know, except the same be to succeed accordingly, it cannot be true that we fore-know it. But this Prefcience of God (as it is Prefcience only) is not the cause of any thing futurely succeeding: neither doth Gods fore-knowledge impose any necessity, or binde. For in that we fore-know that the Sun will rise, and set; that all men born in the World shall die again; that after Winter, the Spring shall come; after the Spring, Sommer and Harvest; and that according to the severall seeds that we sow, we shall reap severall sorts of grain; yet is not our fore-knowledge the cause of this, or any of these: neither doth the knowledge in us binde or constrain the Sun to rise and set, or men to die; for the causes (as men persuade themselves) are otherwise manifest and known to all. *The eye of man* (saith Boetius) *beholdeth those things subject to sense, as they are; the eye seeth that such a beast is an horse, it seeth men, trees, and houses, &c. but our seeing of them (as they are) is not the cause of their so being, for such they be in their own natures.* And again out of the same Author; *Divina providentia rebus generandis non imponit necessitatem, quia si omnia evenirent ex necessitate, præmia bonorum, & pœna malorum periret;* Divine Providence (saith he) imposeth no necessity upon things that are to exist; for if all come to pass of necessity, there should neither be reward of good, nor punishment of evil.

## §. XIII.

### Of Providence.

NOW Providence (which the Greeks call *Provoia*) is an intellectual knowledge, both fore-seeing, caring for, and ordering all things, and doth not onely behold all past, all present, and all to come, but is the cause of their so being, which Prefcience (simply taken) is not: and therefore Providence by the Philosophers (saith S. Augustine) is divided into Memory, Knowledge, and Care: Memory of the past; Knowledge of the present, and Care of the future: and we our selves account such a man for provident, as, remembering things past, and observing things present, can by judgement, and comparing the one with the other, provide for the future, and times succeeding. That such a thing there is as Providence, the Scriptures every where teach us; *Moses* in many places, the Prophets in their Predictions, Christ himself and his Apostles assure us hereof: and besides the Scriptures, *Hermes, Orpheus, Empirides, Pythagoras, Plato, Plotinus,* and (in effect) all learned men acknowledge the Providence of God: yea the Turks themselves are so confident therein, as they refuse not to accompany and visit each other in the most pestilent diseases, nor shun any peril whatsoever, though death therein do manifestly present it self.

The places of Scripture proving providence, are so many, both in general and particular, as I shall need to repeat but a few of them in this place: *Sing unto God* (saith David) *which covereth the Heavens with clouds, and prepareth rain for the earth, and maketh the grass to grow upon the Mountains, which giveth the beasts their food, and feedeth the young Raven that cries: All these wait upon thee, that thou mayest give them food in due season: And thou shalt drink of the River Cheareth* (saith God to Eliah) *and I have*

1 Reg. 17. 4.  
Math. 6. 26.  
Luke 12. 6. 7.

1 Pet. 5. 7.  
Psal. 36. 6.

Jer. 23. 24.

Ejy 42. 8.

Job. p. 1. 6. 4.  
ver. 8.  
God is love.

commanded the Ravens to feed thee there. Behold, the Fowles of the Ayre, they sow not, nor reap, and yet your heavenly Father seedeth them: Again, are not two Sparrowes sold for a farthinge and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father: yea, all the hayres of your head are numbered: And S. Peter, Cast all your care on him, for he careth for you: And his judgments are written, saith David.

God therefore, who is every where present, who filleth the Heavens and the Earth, whose eyes are upon the Righteous, and his countenance against them that do evil, was therefore by Orpheus called *oculus infinitus*, an infinite eye, beholding all things; and cannot therefore be esteemed as an idle looker on, as if he had transferred his power to any other: for it is contrary to his own word: *Gloriam meam alteri non dabo: I will not give my glory to another*. No man commandeth in the Kings preface, but by the Kings direction; but God is every-where present, and King of kings. The example of Gods universall Providence is seen in his creatures. The Father provideth for his children: beasts and birds and all livings for their young ones. If Providence be found in second Fathers, much more in the first and Universall: and if there be a naturall loving care in men, and beasts much more in God, who hath formed this nature, and whose Divine love was the beginning, and is the bond of the Universall: *Amor divinus rerum omnium est principium, & vinculum universi* (saith Plato) *Amor Dei est nodus perpetuus, mundi copula, partiumque ejus inmobile sustentaculum, ac universe machina fundamentum*; The love of God is the perpetuall knot, and link or chain of the world, and the immovable pillar of every part thereof, and the Basis and foundation of the universall. God therefore who could only be the cause of all, can only provide for all, and sustain all; so as to absolute power; to every-where presence; to perfect goodness; to pure and divine love; this attribute transcendent habilitie of Providence is onely proper and belonging.

#### §. XIV. Of Predestination.

Rom. 8. & 9.

Lamb. l. 1. diff.  
39.  
Ibom. part. 1.  
diff. 23.  
Bern. de Probl.  
de p. d.  
Aug. l. 15. c. 1.  
de Civit. Dei.  
Cal. in cap. 9. ad  
Rom. v. 11.  
Bey. in magn.  
encom. in cap. 9.  
ad Rom.  
Dionys. l. 3. de  
Sacr.  
Greg. Magn.  
Job. 9.  
Aug. ad Polim.  
ep. 59.

Now for Predestination, we can difference it no otherwise, from Providence and Previdence, than in this, that Previdence onely fore-seeth; Providence fore-seeth and careth for, and hath respect to all creatures, even from the brightest Angels of Heaven, to the unworthiest Worms of the Earth: and Predestination (as it is used specially by Divines) is onely of men, and yet not of all to men belonging, but of their salvation properly, in the common use of Divines, or perdition, as some have used more strictly, and for a preparation to felicity: divers of the Fathers take it more largely sometimes: among whom Saint Augustine speaking of two Cities, and two Societies, useth these words, *Quarum est una, que predestinata est in eternum regnare cum Deo, altera eternum supplicium subire cum Diabolo*; Whereof one is it, which is predestinated to reign for ever with God, but the other is to undergo everlasting torment with the Devil: for according to Nonius Marcellus, *destinare, est preparare*; and of the same opinion are many Protestant Writers, as Calvin, Beza, Buchananus, Danerus, and such like: and as for the manifold questions hereof arising, I leave them to the Divines; and why it hath pleased God to create some vessels of honour, and some of dishonour, I will answer with Gregory, who saith, *Qui in futurum Dei rationem non videt, infirmitatem suam considerans, cur non videat, rationem videt*; He that seeth no reason in the actions of God, by consideration of his own infirmity, perceiveth the reason of his blindness. And again with S. Augustine, *Occulta esse causa potest, injusta esse non potest*; Hidden the cause of his Predestination may be, unjust it cannot be.

#### §. XV.

Of Fortune: and of the reason of some things that seem to be by fortune, and against Reason and Providence.

Lastly, seeing Destiny or Necessity is subsequent to Gods Providence, and seeing that the Stars have no other dominion, than is before spoken, and that Nature is nothing, but as Plato calleth it, *Dei artem*, vel artificiosum Dei organum; The art, or artificiall Organ of God: and Cusanus, *Divini precepti instrumentum*; The

The art, or artificiall Organ of God: and Cusanus, *Divini precepti instrumentum*; The instrument of the divine precept: we may then with better reason reject that kind of Idolatry, or God of fools, called Fortune or Chance: a Goddes, the most revered, and the most reviled of all other, but not ancient; for Homer maketh her the Daughter of Oceanus, as Pausanias witnesseth in his *Messeniacis*. The Greekes call her *tyche*, signifying a relative being, or betiding, so as before Homers time this great Lady was scarce heard of; and Hesiodus, who hath taught the birth and beginning of all these counterfeit gods, hath not a word of Fortune: yet afterward she grew to great and omnipotent, as from Kings and Kingdoms, to Beggars and Cottages, she ordered all things, resisting the wisdom of the wisest, by making the success prosperous; inasmuch as the actions of men were said to be but the sports of Fortune, and the variable accidents happening in mens and often lives, but her pastimes: of which *Palladius*, *Vita hominum ludus fortuna est*; The life of man is the play of Fortune: and because it often falleth out, that enterprises guided by ill counsels, have equal success to those by the best judgment conducted, therefore had Fortune the same externall figure with Sapience; whereof *Athenens*:

*Longissimè à sapientia Fors disfidet,  
Sed multa percipit tamen similitudo.*  
From Wisedome Fortune differs far,  
And yet in works most like they are.

But I will forbear to be curious in that, which (as it is commonly understood) is nothing else but a power imaginary, to which the success of humane actions and endeavours were for their variety ascribed; for when a manifest cause could not be given, then was it attributed to fortune, as if there were no cause of those things, of which most men are ignorant; contrary to this true ground of Plato: *Nihil est otium sub Sole, cujus causa legitima non precesserit*; Nothing ever came to pass under the Sun, of which there was not a just preceding cause. But Aquinas hath herein answered in one distinction, whatsoever may be objected; for many things there are (saith he) which happen, besides the intention of the Inferior, but not besides the intention of the Superior; *Præter intentionem Inferiorem, sed non præter intentionem Superiorem*, (to wit, the ordinance of God;) and therefore (saith Melancthon) *Quod Poeta fortunam, nos Deum appellamus*; whom the Poets call Fortune, we know to be God. And that this is true, the Scripture in many places teacheth us; as in the Law of Murder, He that smiteth a man, and he dye, shall dye the death; and if a man hath not laid wait, but God hath offered him into his hands, then I will appoint thee a place whither he shall flee. Now, where the Scripture hath these words, *God hath offered him into his hands*, we say, If he hurt him by Chance: and in *Deuteronomy* the nineteenth, where the slipping of an Axe from the helve, whereby another is slain, was the work of God himself, we in our phrase attribute this accident to Chance or Fortune: and in the *Proverbs* the sixteenth, *The lot is cast into the lap, but the whole disposition thereof is of the Lord*: so as that which seemeth most casual and subject to Fortune, is yet disposed by the ordinance of God, as all things else; and herof the wiser folk, and the best learned of the Philosophers were not ignorant, as Cicero witnesseth for them, gathering the opinion of Aristotle and his Sectators, with those of Plato, and the Academics, to this effect, That the same power which they called *animam mundi*; The soul of the World, was no other than that incomprehensible wisdom, which we express by the name of God, governing every being as well in heaven as in earth; to which wisdom and power they sometime gave the title of Necessity or Fate, because it bindeth the inevitable ordinance: sometime, the style of Fortune, because of many effects there appear unto us no certain causes. To this effect speaketh S. Augustine in his questions upon Genesis the first Book: the same hath Seneca in his fourth of Benefits, which was also the doctrine of the Stoicks, of which Sect he was: *For whatsoever (saith he) thou callest God, be it Nature, Fate, or Fortune, all are but one and the same differenced by divers termes, according as he useth, and exerciseth his power diversly*.

But it may be objected, That if Fortune and Chance were not sometimes the causes of good and evil in men, but an idle voice, whereby we express success; how comes it then, that so many worthy and wise men depended upon so many unworthy and empty-headed fools; that riches and honour are given to external men, and without ker-

nell : and so many learned, vertuous, and valiant men weare out their lives in poore and dejected estates. In a word, there is no other inferiour, or apparent cause, beside the partiality of mans affection, but the flauioning and not fashioning of our selves according to the nature of the time wherein we live : for whosoever is most able, and best sufficient to discern, and hath withal an honest and open heart and loving truth ; if Princes, or those that governe, endure no other discourse than their owne flatteries, then I say such an one, whose vertue and courage forbiddeth him to be base and a dissembler, shall evermore hang under the wheele ; which kinde of deservng well and receiving ill, we alwayes fallly charge Fortune withal. For whosoever shall tell any great Man or Magistrate, that he is not Just ; the General of an Army, that he is not valiant, and great Ladies that they are not faire, shall never be made a Counsellor, a Captain, or a Courtier. Neither is it sufficient to be wise with a wife Prince, valiant with a valiant, and just with him that is just, for such a one hath no estate in his prosperity ; but he must also change with the succellor, if he be of contrary qualities ; faile with the tyde of the time, and alter forme and condition, as the Estate or the Estates Master changeth : Otherwise how were it possible, that the most base men, and separate from all imitable qualities, could so often attaine to honour and riches, but by such an ob-servant slavish course ? These men having nothing else to value themselves by, but a counterfeit kinde of wondring at other men, and by making them believe that all their vices are vertues, and all their dusty actions crystalline, have yet in all ages prospered equally with the most vertuous, if not exceeded them. For according to Menander, *Omnis insipiens arrogantia & planis capitis* ; Every foole is wonne with his owne pride, and others flattering applause : so as whosoever will live altogether out of himselfe, and study other mens humours, and observe them, shall never be unfortunate ; and on the contrary, that man which prizeth truth and vertue (except the season wherein he liveth be of all these, and of all sorts of goodnesse fruitful) shall never prosper by the possession or profession thereof. It is also a token of a worldly wise man, not to warre or contend in vaine against the nature of times wherein he liveth : for such a one is often the authour of his owne misery ; but best it were to follow the advice, which the Pope gave the Bishops of that age, out of Ovid, while the Arian Heresie raged :

*Dum furor in cursu est, currenti cede furori.*

While fury gallops on the way,  
Let no man furies gallop stay.

And if Cicero ( than whom that world begat not a man of more reputed Judgement had followed the counsell of his brother Quintus, *Potuisse* (saith Petrarch in *lethale suo mori, potuisse integro cadavere sepeliri* ; He might then have died the death of nature, and bene with an watorne and undissolved body buried ; for as Petrarch in the same place noteth : *Quid stultius quam desperantem presertim de effectu* ) *littimus perpetuis implicari* ? What more foolish than for him that desperes (especially of the effect ) to be intangled with endless contentions ; Whosoever therefore will set before him Machiavels two marks to shoot at (to wit) Riches, and Glory, must set on and take off a back of yron to a weak wooden Bow, that it may fit both the strong and the feeble ; for as he that first devised to adde sayls to rowing vessels, did either so proportion them as being fastened aloft, and towards the head of his Mast, he might abide all windes and stormes, or else he sometime or other perished by his owne invention : so that man which prizeth vertue for it selfe, and cannot endure to hoise and strike his sayles, as the divers natures of calmes and stormes require, must cut his sayles and his cloth of meane length and breadth, and content himselfe with a slow and sure navigation, (to wit) a meane and free estate. But of this dispute of Fortune, and the rest, or of whatsoever Lords or Gods, imaginary powers, or causes, the wit (or rather foolishnesse) of man hath found out : let us resolve with S. Paul, who hath taught us, that there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him ; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him ; there are diversities of operations, but God is the same which worketh all in all.

1 Cor. c.8. v.6.  
Cap. 12. v.6.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

Of man's estate in his first Creation, and of God's rest.

### §. I.

Of the Image of God, according to which man was first created.

**T**He creation of all other creatures being finished, the heavens adorned, and the earth replenished, God said, *Let us make man in our owne Image, according to our* Gen. 1.26. *likeness.*

Man is the last and most admirable of Gods works to us known : *ingens miraculum hoc* - Trif. Acl.2. & mo; Man is the greatest wonder (saith Plato out of Mercurius : ) *Nature ardentissime artificis* - de volunt. Plat. lib. 1.1. *the artificial work of the most ardent or fire-like nature* (as saith Zoroaster ) though the same be meant, not for any excellency externall, but in respect of his internall forme, both in the nature, qualities, and other attributes thereof : in nature, because it hath an essence, immortal, and spiritual ; in qualities, because the same was by God created holy and righteous in truth ; in other attributes, because Man was made Lord of the world, and of the creatures therein.

*Sanctus his animal mentisq; capacis alie*  
*Deerat ad huc : & quod dominari in cetera posset,*  
*Natus homo est.*

More holy than the rest, and understanding more,  
A living creature wants, to rule all made before :  
So man began to be.

Of this Image and Similitude of God, there is much dispute among the Fathers, Schoole-men, and late Writers : Some of the Fathers conceive, that man was made after the Image of God, in respect chiefly of Empire and Dominion, as S. Chrysostome, Ambrose, and some others : which S. Ambrose denieth to the woman in these words, *Utsic Deus unus, ab eo fieret homo unus, & quomodo ex Deo uno omnia, ita ex uno homine omne genus esset super faciem totius terre : unus igitur, unum fecit, qui unitatis ejus haberet imaginem* ; That as God is one, one man might be made by him, and that in what manner all things are of one God, likewise of one man the whole kinde should be upon the face of the whole earth : Therefore he being one, made one, that should have the Image of his unity. But whereas it is gathered out of the following words of the same Verse ; that man was after the Image of God in respect of rule and power, it is written *Dominamini* in the plurall number, and let them rule over the fish in the Sea, &c. and therefore cannot the woman be excluded. Others conceive, that man is said to be after the Image of God in respect of his immortal soule onely, because as God is invisible, so the soule of man is invisible ; as God is immortal and incorporeal, so is the soule of man immortal and incorporeal ; and as there is but one God which governeth the world ; so but one soul which governeth the body of man ; and as God is wholly in every part of the world, so is the soule of man wholly in every part of the body : *Anima est tota in toto, & tota in qualibet parte* ; The soule is wholly in the whole body, and wholly in every part thereof, according to Aristotle ; though Chalcidius, and other learned men deny that doctrine, which that it is otherwise than potentially true, all the Aristotelians in the world shall never prove. These and the like arguments do the Jewes make (saith Toftatus) and their resemblances, between the infinite God, and the finite Man.

The Schoole-men resemble the Minde or Soule of Man to God, in this respect especially ; because that as in the Minde there are three distinct powers, or faculties (to wit) Memory, Understanding and Will ; and yet all these, being of reall differences, are but one minde : so in God there are three distinct persons, the Father, Son, the holy Ghost, and yet but one God. They also make the Image and Similitude divers ; and againe, they distinguish between *Imaginem Dei*, and *ad Imaginem Dei*, and spinne into small threads with subtile distinctions, many times the plainnesse and sincerity of the Scriptures : their wits being like that strong water, that eateth thorow and dissolveth the purest gold. *Victorinus* also maketh the Image of God to be substantiall, but not the

*Sententia, quia*  
*pars potest im-*  
*mortalis anima,*  
*quia in mortali.*  
*In locum Ovid.*  
*Met. l. 1. 76.*

the similitude : *sed in substantia nomen qualitatis declarativum ; A word declaring quality in the substance.* Out of which words, and that which followeth, it is inferred, that as the image and similitude doe greatly differ, so the sinful soule doth not therefore leave to be the image of God ; but it hath not his similitude, except it be holy and righteous. S. *Augustine* also against *Adimantus* the *Manichee* affirmeth, that by sinne, the perfection of this image is lost in man ; and in his *Retractions* maintaineth the same opinion, and also affirmeth that the similitude is more largely taken, than the Image.

But howsoever the Schoolmen and others distinguish, or whatsoever the Fathers conceive, sure I am that S. *Paul* maketh the same sense of the Image, which *Victricius* doth of the similitude, who saith : *As we have borne the image of the earthly, so shall we bear the image of the heavenly ;* and it cannot be gathered out of the Scriptures, that the words *Image* and *Similitude* were used but in one sense, and in this place the better to express each other ; whatsoever *Lombard* hath said to the contrary. For God knows, what a multitude of meanings the wit of man imagineth to himself in the Scriptures, which neither *Moses*, the *Prophets*, or *Apostles*, ever conceived. Now as S. *Paul* useth the word (Image) for both : so Saint *James* useth the word (Similitude) for both in these words : *I herewith blese we God even the Father, and therewith curse we Men, which are made after the similitude of God.* Howsoever therefore S. *Augustine* seemeth, out of a kind of elegance in writing, to make some difference : as where he writeth, *Constituimus imaginem in eternitate, similitudinem in moribus inveniri ; we confesse that this image is found in eternity, but his similitude in manners,* that is, in the spiritual dispositions and qualities of the minde ; yet thus he elsewhere speaketh plainly : *Quasi verò possit esse imago aliqua, in qua similitudo non sit : si enim omnino similis non est, procul dubio nec imago est ; As if* (saith he) *there could be any image, where the similitude is not : no, out of doubt, where there is no likeness, there is no image.* The very words of the Text make this most manifest, as *Let us make man in our image, according to our likeness* : which is, *Let us make man in our image, that he may be like us ;* and in the next Verse following, *God himselfe* maketh it plaine ; for there he useth the word (Image) only as thus : *God created the man in his image, in the image of God created he him.* And to take away all dispute or ambiguity, in the first Verse of the fifth Chapter, the word (Similitude) is used againe by it selfe, as, *In the day that God created Adam, in the likeness of God made he him.* And this similitude S. *Paul* Colof. the third, calleth the Image. *In us* (saith he) *the new man which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him.* And in *Syracides* it is written, *He made them according to his image.* Now if we may believe Saint *Paul* before *Peter Lombard* and other Schoolmen, then it is as manifest as words can make it, that the image and similitude is but the same ; for S. *Paul* useth both the words directly in one sense. For they turned the glory of the incorruptible God, to the similitude of the image of a corruptible man.

*Zanchinus* laboureth to prove, that man was formed after the image of God, both in body and mind : *Nulla pars in homine que non fuerit huiusce imaginis particeps ; No part in a man* (saith he) *which was not participating Gods image : for God said, Let us make man according to our owne image.* But the soule alone is not man, but the *Hypostasis* or whole Man compounded of body and soule. The body of man (saith he) *is the image of the world, and called therefore Microcosmus ;* but the *Idea* and exemplar of the world was first in God, so that man, according to his body, must needs be the image of God. Against which opinion of this learned man, his owne objection seemeth to me sufficient, where he allegeth that it may be said, that *Moses* spake by the figure *Synecdoche*, as when a man is called a mortall man, yet is not the whole man mortall, but the body only : so when God said, *Let us make man after our image,* he meant the soule of man, and not the body of earth and dust : *Maledictus qui Deitatem ad hominis lineamenta refert* (saith Saint *Augustine*) : *Cursed is he that reserveth the Deity of God to the lineaments of mans body : Deus enim non est humane forme particeps, neq; corpus humanum divine* (saith *Philo*) : *God is not partaker of humane form, nor humane body of the forme divine.* The Hebrew word for image, is *Tselem*, which signifieth a shadow or obscure resemblance : *In imagine pertransit homo, Man passeth away in a shadow :* Let us then know and consider, that God, who is eternall and infinite, hath not any bodily shap or compositions for it is both against his Nature and his Word ; an error of the *Anthropomorphite*, against the very essence and Majesty of God.

Surely

Surely *Cicero*, who was but a *Heathen*, had yet a more divine understanding than these grofs Heretics : *Ad similitudinem Dei propriis accedebat humana virtus, quàm figura ; The virtue which is in man* (saith he) *came neerer the similitude of God, than the figure.* For God is a spirituall substance, invisable, and most simple ; God is a just God : God is Mercifull : God is Charity it self, and (in a word) Goodness it self, and nouse else simply good. And thus much it hath pleased God himselfe to teach us, and to make us know of himself. What then can be the shadow of such a substance, the image of such a nature, or wherein can man be said to resemble his unexcogitable power and perfectness ; certainly, not in Dominion alone : for the Devil is said to be the Prince of this World, Eph. 5. 12. and the Kingdom of Christ was not thereof, who was the true and perfect image of his Father ; neither because man hath an immortal soul, and therein the faculties of Memory, Understanding, and Will ; for the Devils are also immortal, and participate those faculties, being called *Demonies*, because *scientes* of Knowledge, and subtilty ; neither because we are reasonable creatures, by which we are distinguished from beasts : for who have rebelled against God ? who have made gods of the vilest beasts, of Serpents, of Cats, of Owles, yea, even of shamefull parts, of lusts and pleasures, but reasonable men ? yet do I not condemn the opinion of Saint *Chrysostome* and *Ambrose*, as *Offensives* of Justice, touching dominion, but that, in respect thereof, man was in some sort after the image of God, if we take Dominion, such as it ought to be, that is, accompanied with Justice and Piety : for God did not onely make man a Ruler and Governour over the Fishes of the Sea, the Fowles of Heaven (or of the aire) and over the Beasts of the Field ; But God gave unto man a dominion over men, he appointed Kings to govern them ; and Judges to judge them in equity. Neither do I exclude Reason, as it is the ability of Understanding. For I do not conceive, that *Irenæus* did therefore call man, the image of God, because he was animal rationale onely ; but that he understood it better, with *Sybillæ* : *Imago mea est homo, rectam rationem habens : Man that is endued with right reason is said to resemble God,* (that is) by right reason to know and confesse God his Creator, and the same God to serve, love, and obey : and therefore said S. *Augustine* (who herein came neerer the Truth) *Fecit Deus hominem ad imaginem & similitudinem suam in mente ;* God made man, in respect of the intellect, after his own Image and similitude ; and *Reynierius*, *Homo, quod habet mentem, factus est ad imaginem Dei ; Man was made after the image of God, in minde, or in that he had a minde.* Rey. de men.

## §. II.

Of the intellectuall minde of man, in which there is much of the Image of God : and that this Image is much deformed by Sin.

BUT *Mens* is not taken here for *anima physica*, according to *Aristotle*, which is *forma, vel natura hominis* : The form or nature of man ; but this faculty or gift of God, called *Mens*, is taken for *prima vis animi*, the principall strength of the minde, or soul, *cujus actus est perpetua veritatis contemplatio ; whose act, exercise, or office, is the perpetuall contemplation of truth ;* and therefore it is also called *intellectus divinus, intellectus contemplativus, & anima contemplativa.* A divine understanding, and an intellect or minde contemplative. *Etenim mentis nostra* (saith *Cusanus*) *vis comprehendendi, & totum virtuale ex omnibus comprehendendi virtutibus compositum : Our intellectuall minde* (saith he) *is a power of comprehending, even the whole, that is in this kinde powerfull, compounded of all the powers of comprehension : unto which Mercury attributeth so much (if his meaning accompany his words) that he esteemeth it to be the very essence of God* (which was also the error of the *Manichees*, and others) and no otherwise separate from God (saith he) than the light from the Sun : for this *Mens* or understanding (saith *Mercurius*) *est Deus in hominibus : Is God in men*, or rather (and which I take to be his meaning) is the image of God in man. For, as the Sun is not of the same essence or nature with the divine light, but a body illightned, and an illumination created ; so is this *Mens* or understanding in men, not of the essence of Gods infinite understanding, but a power and faculty of our soules the purest ; or the *lumen anime rationalis*, by the true and eternall light illightned. And this *Mens*, others call *animam animæ, The soul of the soul*, or with Saint *Augustine*, the eye of the soul, or receptacle of Sapience and divine knowledge, *que amorem sapientia tanquam ducem sequitur, Which followeth after*

after the love of sapience as her guide (saith Philo) between which a and reason, between which and the mind, called *anima*, between which and that power which the Latines call *animus*, there is this difference. Reason is that faculty by which we judge and discourse; *Anima*, by which we live. Hereof it is said, *Anima corpus animat, id est, vivificat*; or the *soul* is that which doth animate the body, that is, giveth it life: for death is the separation of body and soul; and the same strength (saith Philo) which God the great Director hath in the World, the same hath this *Anima*, or mind, or soul in man. *Animus*, is that, by which we will and make election; and to this Basil agreeth, which called this *Mens*, or divine understanding, *perceptive animæ partem, the perceiving part of the mind*, or the light by which the soul discerneth: *dormientium mens non anima, sopitur, & in surriosis mens extinguitur, anima manet*: In men that sleep it is this *mens* or understanding, and not the mind or soul, which resteth, during which time it is but habitual in wise men, and in mad men this *Mens* is extinguished, and not the soul: for mad men do live, though distracted.

Therefore this word being often used for the soule giving life, is attributed abusively to mad men, when we say that they are of a distracted minde, in stead of a broken understanding: which word (*Minde*) we use also for opinion, as, I am of this minde, or that minde: and sometimes for mens conditions or virtues, as, He is of an honest minde, or, a man of a just minde: sometimes for affection, as, I do this for my mind's sake; and Aristotle sometimes useth this word (*Mens*) for the phantasie, which is the strength of the imagination: sometimes for the knowledge of principles, which we have without discourse: oftentimes for Spirits, Angels and Intelligences: but as it is used in the proper signification, including both the understanding agent and possible, it is described to be a pure, simple, substantial act, not depending upon matter, but having relation to that which is intelligible, as to his first object: or more at large thus; A part or particle of the Soul, whereby it doth understand, not depending upon matter, nor needing any organ, free from passion coming from without, and apt to be differed, as, eternal from that which is mortal. Hereof excellently *Mercurius*: *Anima est imago mentis, mens imago Dei. Deus menti præst, mens animæ, anima corpori*; The Soul (meaning that which giveth life) is the Image of this understanding, or *Mens*, and this (*Mens*) or understanding is the Image of God. God is Prefident or Ruler over this understanding, this understanding over the Soule, and this Soule over the body. This division and distinction out of the Platonicks and Peripateticks, I leave to the reader to judge of. That, *Mens humana* hath no need of any organ, *Marsilius Ficinus* in his ninth Book of the Soul's immortality, laboureth to prove. *Zanchius* doth not differ from *Ficinus* in words: for (saith he) *Ad facultatem intelligentem exercendam non eget Mens organo; tanquam medio, per quod intelligat: quantum eget objecto in quod intuetur, & ex quo intellectiorem concipiat: hoc autem objectum sunt phantasmata, seu rerum à sensibus perceptarum simulacra ad phantasiam prolata: To exercise the faculty of understanding, the minde of man (saith he) needeth no instrument, as a meane, by which it may understand: but it needeth an object, whereon to look, and whence to conceive the act of understanding. This object are the phantasmes, or the resemblances of things received from the sense, and carried to the phantasie. But in effect, his conclusion seemeth to carry a contrary sense, when he maketh the Phantasie, in representing the object to the understanding, to be a corporal *Organum*; neither can it be understood to be an *Organum* of any thing, but of the understanding. And he addeth, that the resemblance of things in mans imagination, are to his understanding and minde, as colours are to the sight: whence it so followeth, that the imagination or phantasie it self is to the faculty of understanding, as the eye is to the faculty of seeing; and as this is an *organum*, so that. Of this question, How the mind in all her actions maketh use of the body, and hath communion with the body, I refer the Reader to a most grave and learned Discourse in the last Reply of M.D. *Bilson*, late Bishop of Winchester, unto *Henry Jacob*. Howsoever the Truth be determined, we must conclude, that it is neither in respect of reason alone, by which we discourse, nor in respect of the minde it self, by which we live, nor in respect of our souls simply, by which we are immortal, that we are made after the Image of God. But most safely may we resemble our selves to God in *mente*, and in respect of that pure faculty, which is never separate from the contemplation and love of God. Yet this is not all; For Saint *Bernard* maketh a true difference between the nature and faculties of the Minde or Soule, and between the infusion of qualities, endowments and gifts of grace, wherewith it is adorned and enriched, which, being*

Lib. 5. cap. 5.  
Zanch. de oper.  
Dei, part. 3. c. 1.  
cap. 2.

Page 25. & seq.  
Zanch.  
Ad imaginem  
Dei creavit se-  
lum, id est, se-  
pientia, virtutis,  
ac bonitatis com-  
pota, qui se-  
minavit Cre-  
atorem, quæcun-  
que sunt, et quæ-  
visque, in gen-  
tibus, auctori-  
tas, sibi conce-  
ratione studere.  
Exem.

being added to the nature, essence, and faculties, maketh it altogether to be after the Image of God, whose words are these: *Non propterea imago Dei est, quia sui meminit Mens, sed; intelligit & diligit* (which also was the opinion of Saint *AUGUSTINE*) *sed quia potest meminisse, intelligere ac diligere cum à quo facta est*, (that is) The Minde (or *Mens*) was not therefore the Image of God, because it remembereth, understandeth, and loveth it self, but because it can remember, understand, and love God, who created it. And that this Image may be deformed and made unprofitable, hear *BASIL*: *Homo ad imaginem & similitudinem Dei factus est, peccatum vero imaginis huius pulchritudinem deformavit, & inutilem reddidit, dum animam corruptis concupiscentiæ affectibus immergit*: Man was made after the Image and similitude of God, but sin hath deformed the beauty of this Image, and made it unprofitable, by drawing our minds into corrupt concupiscentie.

It is not therefore (as aforesaid) by reason of Immortality, nor in Reason, nor in Dominion, nor in any one of these by it self, nor in all these joyned, by any of which, or by all which we resemble, or may be called the shadow of God, though by reason and understanding, with the other faculties of the Soule, we are made capable of this print; but chiefly, in respect of the habit of Original righteousness, most perfectly infused by God into the Mind and Soule of man in his first Creation. For it is not by nature, nor by her liberality, that we were printed with the seal of Gods Image (though Reason may be said to be of her gift, which joyned to the soul, is a part of the Essential Con-stitution of our proper species) but from the bountiful grace of the Lord of all good-ness, who breathed life into Earth, and contrived within the Trunk of Dust and Clay, the inimitable hability of his own Piety and righteousness.

So long therefore (for that resemblance which Dominion hath) do those that are powerful retain the Image of God, as according to his Commandments they exercise the Office or Magistracy to which they are called, and sincerely walk in the ways of God, which in the Scriptures is called, *walking with God*; and all other men so long retain this Image, as they feare, love and serve God truly, that is, for the love of God alone, and do not bruise and deface his Seal by the weight of manifold and voluntary offences, and obstinate sins. For the unjust minde cannot be after the Image of God, seeing God is Justice it self; The blood-thirsty hath it not; for God is Charity, and Mercy it self: Falshood, cunning practice, and ambition, are properties of Satan; and therefore cannot dwell in one soul, together with God: and to be short, there is no likelihood between pure light and black darkness, between beauty and deformity, or between righteousness and reprobation. And though Nature, according to common understanding, have made us capable by the power of reason, and apt enough to receive this Image of Gods goodness, which the sensual souls of Beasts cannot perceive; yet were that aptitude natural more inclinable to follow and imbrace the false and durlous pleasures of this Stage-play World, than to become the shadow of God by walking after him, had not the exceeding workmanship of God's Wisdom, and the liberality of his Mercy, formed eyes to our souls, as to our bodies, which, piercing through the impurity of our flesh, behold the highest Heavens, and thence bring Knowledge and Object to the Minde and Soule, to contemplate the ever-during Glory, and termless Joy, prepared for those which retain the Image and similitude of their Creator, preserving undefiled and unrent the garment of the new man, which, after the Image of God, is created in Righteousness, and Holiness, as saith Saint Paul. Now whereas it is thought by some of the Fathers, as by S. *Augustine*, with whom S. *Ambrose* joyneth, that by sin, the perfection of the Image is lost, and not the Image it self; both opinions by this distinction may be well reconciled (to wit) that the Image of God, in man, may be taken two ways; for either it is considered, according to natural gifts, and consisteth therein: namely, to have a reasonable and understanding nature, &c. and in this sense, the Image of God is more lost by sin, than the very reasonable or understanding nature &c. is lost, (or sin doth not abolish and take away these natural gifts:) or, the Image of God is considered, according to supernatural gifts, namely, of Divine grace and heavenly Glory, which is indeed the perfection and accomplishment of the natural Image; and this manner of similitude and Image of God is wholly blotted out and destroyed by sin.

Gen. 5. 22.

2 Cor. 6. 14.

Cor. 3. 9.

## §. III.

Of our base and fraile bodies : and that the care thereof should yeeld to the immortal Soule.

**T**He externall man God formed out of the dust of the Earth, or according to the signification of the word, *Adam*, of *Adamath*, of red Earth, or *ex limo terre*, out of the slime of the Earth, or a mixed matter of Earth and Water. *Non ex qualibet humo, sed ex ghabbar adamath (id est) ex pinguisima & mollissima* : Not that God made an Image or Statue of Clay, but out of Clay, Earth or dust God formed and made flesh, blond, and bone, with all parts of man.

That man was formed of Earth and Dust did *Abraham* acknowledge, when in humble fear he called unto God, to save *Sodome* : Let not my Lord now be angry, if I speak, I that am but dust and ashes : And, In these Houses of Clay, whose foundation is in the dust, do our souls inhabit, according to *Job*. And though our own eyes do every where behold the sudden and restless assaults of death, and Nature assureth us by never-failing experience, and Reason by infallible demonstration, that our times upon the Earth have neither certainty nor durability ; that our Bodies are but the Anvils of pain and diseases, and our Minds the Hives of unnumbered cares, sorrows and passions : and that (when we are most glorified) we are but those painted posts, against which *Envie* and *Fortune* direct their darts ; yet such is the true unhappiness of our condition, and the dark ignorance which covereth the eyes of our understanding, that we onely prize, to ramper, and exalt this Vassall and Slave of death, and forget altogether (or onely remember at our cast-away leisure) the imprisoned immortal Soule, which can neither die with the Reprobate, nor perish with the mortal parts of virtuous men : seeing Gods justice in the one, and his goodness in the other is exercised for evermore, as the ever-living subjects of his reward and punishment. But when is it that we examine this great account ? Never while we have one vanity left us to spend : we plead for Titles, till our breath fail us ; dig for Riches, while our strength inableth us exercise malice, while we can revenge ; and then when time hath beaten from us both youth, pleasure, and health, and that Nature it self hateth the house of old age, we remember with *Job*, that we must go the way from whence we shall not return, and that our bed is made ready for us in the dark : And then, I say, looking over-late into the bottom of our conscience (which Pleasure and Ambition had locked up from us all our lives,) we behold therein the fearful Images of our actions past, and withal this terrible Inscription : That God will bring every work into judgement, that man hath done under the Sun.

But what examples have ever moved us ? what persuasions reformed us ? or what threatnings made us afraid ? we behold other men's Tragedies plaid before us, we hear what is promised and threatened : but the World's bright glory hath put out the eyes of our minds, and these betraying lights, (with which we onely see) do neither looke up towards termless joyes, nor down towards endless sorrows, till we neither know, nor can look for any thing else at the World's hands. Of which excellently *Marinus* Visior :

*Nil hostes, nil dira fames, nil deniq; morbi  
Egerunt, sumus, qui nunc sumus, isq; periculis  
Tentati, nihilo meliores reddimur unquam,  
Sub vitris nullo culpam sine manentes.*

Diseases, Famine, Enemies, in us no change have wrought,  
What erst we were, we are ; still in the same snare caught :  
No time can our corrupted manners mend,  
In Vice we dwell, in Sin that hath no end.

But let us not flatter our immortal souls herein : for to neglect God all our lives, and know that we neglect him ; to offend God voluntarily, and know that we offend him, casting our hopes on the Peace, which we trust to make at parting, is no other than a rebellious presumption, and (that which is the worst of all) even a contemptuous laughing to scorn, and deriding of God, his Laws and Precepts. *Frustra sperant qui sic de misericordia Dei sibi blandiuntur* : They hope in vain, saith *BERNARD*, which in this sort flatter themselves with Gods mercy.

## §. IV.

## §. IV.

Of the Spirit of Life, which God breathed into man in his Creation.

**I**N this frame and carcass God breathed the breath of life ; and the man was a living Soul : (that is) God gave a body of Earth and of corruptible matter, a Soul spiritual and incorruptible ; not that God had any such bodily instruments as men use, but God breathed the Spirit of Life and Immortality into man, as he breathed his grace daily into such as love and fear him. The Spirit of God (saith *ELIHU* in *Job*) hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life : In qua sententia (saith *RABANUS*) vitanda est paupertas sensus carnalis, ne forte putemus Deum, vel manibus corporeis de limo formasse corpus hominis, vel faucibus aut labiis suis inspirasse in faciem formati, ut vivere possit & spiraculum vite habere : Nam & Propheta cum ait, Manus tue fecerunt me, &c. Tropica hac locutione magis quàm propria, (id est) juxta consuetudinem, qua solent homines operari, loquutus est : In which sentence (saith he) the beggarliness of carnal sense is to be avoided, least perhaps we should think, either that God with bodily hands made mans body of slime, or breathed with jaws or lips upon his face (being formed) that he might live, and have the Spirit of life : for the Prophet also when he saith ; Thy hands have made me, spake this Tropically, rather than properly (that is) according to the custome which men use in working. Quantum est periculi his, qui Scripturas sensu corporeo legunt ? In what danger are they that read the Scriptures in a carnal sense ? By this breath was infused into man, both life and soule, and therefore this (Soule) the Philosophers call *Animam*, que vivificat corpus, & animat ; Which doth animate and give life to the body. The inspiration of the Almighty giveth understanding, saith *Job* ; and this spirit, which God breathed into man, which is the reasonable soule of man, returneth againe to God that gave it, as the body returneth unto the Earth, out of which it was taken ; according to *Ecclesiastes* : And dust shall returne to the Earth, out of which it was taken, and the spirit shall return to God that gave it. Neither is this word (Spirit) usually otherwise taken in the Scriptures, than for the soule ; as when *Stephen* cried unto God : Domine, suscipe spiritum meum ; Lord Jesus receive my spirit : and in *S. JOHN*, And Jesus bowed his head and gave up the Ghost, or Spirit ; (which was) that his life and soule left his body dead. And that the immortal Soule of man differeth from the Soules of beasts, the manner of creation maketh it manifest : for it is written, Let the waters bring forth in abundance every creeping thing, and let the Earth bring forth the living thing, according to his kinde, the beast of the Earth, &c. But of man it is written, Let us make man in our own Image, &c. and further, that the Lord breathed in his face the breath of life. Wherefore, as from the Water and Earth were those creatures brought forth, and thence received life ; so shall they again be dissolved into the same first matter, whence they were taken : but the life of breath everlasting, which God breathed into man, shall according to *Ecclesiastes*, return again to God that gave it.

## §. V.

That man is (as it were) a little World : with a digression touching our mortality.

**M**AN, thus compounded and formed by God, was an abstract or model, or brief Story of the Universal : in whom God concluded the Creation, and work of the World, and whom he made the last and most excellent of his Creatures, being internally endued with a divine understanding, by which he might contemplate and serve his Creator, after whose image he was formed, and endued with the powers and faculties of Reason and other abilities, that thereby also he might govern and rule the World, and all other God's creatures therein. And whereas God created three sorts of living natures, (to wit) Angelical, Rational, and Brutal ; giving to Angels an intellectual, and to Beasts a sensual nature, he vouchsafed unto Man, both the intellectual of Angels, the sensitive of Beasts, and the proper rational belonging unto man : and therefore (saith *GREGORY NAZIANZENE*), Homo est utriusque nature vinculum, Man is the bond and chaine which tieth together both Natures : and because in the little frame of man's bodie there is a representation of the Universal, and (by allusion) a kinde of participation of all the parts there, therefore was man called *Microcosmos*, or the little World. Deus igitur hominem factum, velut alterum quendam mundum, dnm,



*dum, in brevi magnum, atq; exiguu totum, in terris statuit; God therefore placed in the Earth the man whom he had made, as it were another World; the great and large World in the small and little World: for out of the Earth and Dust was formed the flesh of man, and therefore heavie and lumpish: the bones of his body we may compare to the hard Rockes and Stones, and therefore strong and durable; of which OVID:*

Ovid. Met. l. i.

*Inde genus durum sumus, experientq; laborum,  
Et documenta damus qua sumus origine nati:*

From thence our Kind hard-hearted is, enduring pain and care,  
Approving, that our bodies of a stony nature are.

His blood, which disperfeth it self by the branches of veines through all the body, may be resembled to those waters, which are carried by Brooks and Rivers over all the Earth; his breath to the Aire, his naturall heat to the inclosed warmth which the Earth hath in it self, which, stirred up by the heat of the Sun, assisteth Nature in the speedier procreation of those varieties, which the Earth bringeth forth; Our radical moisture, Oyl, or Balsamum (whereon the naturall heat feedeth and is maintained) is resembled to the fat and fertility of the Earth; the hairs of mans body, which adorns or over-shadows it, to the grasse, which covereth the upper face and skin of the Earth; our generative power, to Nature, which produceth all things; our determinations, to the light, wandering and unstable clouds, carried every where with uncertain winds; our eyes, to the light of the Sun and Moon; and the beauty of our youth, to the flowers of the Spring, which, either in a very short time, or with the Suns heat, dry up and wither away, or the fierce puffs of wind blow them from the stalkes; the thoughts of our mind, to the motion of Angels; and our pure understanding (formerly called *Mens*, and that which alwayes looketh upwards) to those intellectuall natures, which are alwayes present with God; and lastly our immortal soules (while they are righteous) are by God himself beautified with the title of his own Image and similitude. And although, in respect of God, there is no man just, or good, or righteous: for in *Angelis deprehenſa est ſtultitia, Behold, he found folly in his Angels* (saith *Job*) yet with such a kind of difference, as there is between the substance and the shadow, there may be found a goodness in man: which God being pleased to accept, hath therefore called man, the image and similitude of his own righteousness. In this also is the little World of man compared, and made more like the universall (man being the measure of all things; *Homo est mensura omnium rerum*, saith *Aristotle* and *Pythagoras*) that the four Complexions resemble the four Elements, and the seven Ages of man the seven Planets: Whereof our infancie is compared to the *Moon*, in which we seem onely to live and grow, as Plants; the second Age to *Mercurie*, wherein we are taught and instructed; our third Age to *Venus*, the dayes of Love, Desire, and Vanity; the fourth to the *Sun*, the strong, flourishing, and beautifull age of mans life; the fifth to *Mars*, in which we seek honour and victory, and in which our thoughts travail to ambitious ends; the sixth Age is ascribed to *Jupiter*, in which we begin to take account of our times, judge of our selves, and grow to the perfection of our understanding; the last and seventh to *Saturn*, wherein our dayes are sad and over-caſt, and in which we find by dear and lamentable experience, and by the loss which can never be repaired, that of all our vain passions and affections past, the sorrow onely abideth: Our attendants are sicknesses, and variable infirmities, and by how much the more we are accompanied with plenty, by so much the more greedily is our end desired, whom when *Time* hath made unsociable to others, we become a burthen to our selves: being of no other use, than to hold the riches we have from our Successors. In this time it is, when (as aforesaid) we, for the most part, and never before, prepare for our eternall habitation, which we passe on unto with many sighes, groanes, and sad thoughts, and in the end, by the workmanship of death, finish the sorrowfull business of a wretched life; towards which we alwayes travell both sleeping and waking: neither have those beloved companions of honour and riches any power at all to hold us any one day, by the glorious promise of entertainments; but by what crooked path soever we walk, the same leadeth on directly to the house of death, whose doors lye open at all hours, and to all persons. For this tyde of mans life, after it once turneth and declineth, ever runneth with a perpetuall Ebbe and falling Stream, but never floweth again: our Leaf once fallen, springeth no more,

10

20

30

40

50

neither

neither doth the Sun or the Summer adorn us again, with the garments of new Leaves and Flowers.

*Redditur arboribus flores revirentibus ætas,  
Ergo non homini, quod fuit ante, redit.*

To which I give this sense.

The Plants and Trees made poor and old  
By Winter envious,  
The Spring-time bounteous

10 Covers again from shame and cold:

But never man repair'd again  
His youth and beauty lost,  
Though Art, and care, and cost,  
Doe promise Natures help in vain.

And of which,

CATULLUS EPIGRAM. 55.

*Soles occidere & redire possunt:*

The Sun may set and rise:

But we contrariwise

*Nobis cum semel occidit brevis lux,  
Nox est perpetua una dormienda.  
Sleep after our short light  
One everlasting night.*

For if there were any baiting place, or rest, in the course or race of mans life, then according to the doctrine of the *Academicke*, the same might also perpetually be maintained; but as there is a continuance of motion in naturall living things, and as the sap and juyce, wherein the life of Plants is preserved, doth evermore ascend or descend; so is it with the life of man, which is alwayes either increaseth towards ripenesse and perfection, or declining and decreaseth towards rottenness and dissolution.

### §. VI.

Of the free power, which man had in his first Creation, to dispose of himself.

THESE be the miseries which our first Parents brought on all Mankind, unto whom God in his creation gave a free and unconstrained will, and on whom he bestowed the liberal choice of all things, with one onely prohibition, to try his gratitude and obedience. God set before him, a mortall and immortal Life, a nature celestiall and terrene, and (indeed) God gave man to himself, to be his own Guide, his own Workman, and his own Painter, that he might frame or describe unto himself what he pleased, and make election of his own form. God made man in the beginning (saith *SIRACIDES*), and left him in the hands of his own counsel. Such was the liberality of God, and mans felicity: whereas beasts, and all other creatures reasonless, brought with them into the World (saith *Lucilius*) and that even when they first fell from the bodies of their Dams, the nature, which they could not change; and the supernall Spirits or Angels were from the beginning, or soon after, of that condition, in which they remain in perpetuall eternity. But (as aforesaid) God gave unto man all kind of Seeds and Grafts of life (to wit) the vegetative life of Plants, the sensual of Beasts, the rational of Man, and the intellectuall of Angels; whereof which soever he took pleasure to plant and cultivate, the same should futerely grow in him, and bring forth fruit, agreeable to his own choice and plantation. This freedom of the first man *Adam*, and our first Father, was enigamatically described by *Aclepius Atheniensis* (saith *Mirandula*) in the person and Fable of *Proteus*, who was said, as often as he pleased, to change his shape. To the same end were all those celebrated *Metamorphoses* among the Pythagorians, and ancient Poets, wherein it was fained, that men were transformed into divers shapes of beasts, thereby to shew the change of mens conditions, from Reason to Brutality, from Vertue to Vice, from Meekness to Cruelty, and from Justice to Oppression. For by the lively Image of other creatures did those *Ancients* represent the variable passions, and affections of mortall men; as by Serpents were signified Deceivers; by Lyons, Oppressors, and cruell men; by Swine, Men given over to lust and sensuality; by Wolves, ravening, and greedy men; which also Saint *Matthew* resembleth to false Prophets, which come to you in sheepes clothing, but inwardly they are ravening Wolves: by the images of Stones and stocks, foolish and ignorant Men; by Vipers, ungratefull Men: of which St. JOHN BAPTIST, O ye generation of Vipers, &c.

Eccles. 15. 14.

Math. 7. 15.

Math. 3. 7.



## §. VII.

Of Gods ceasing to create any more: and of the cause thereof, because the Univerſall created was exceeding good.

Johns. 17.

Gen. 1. 28. 22. 24.

IN this work of Man, God finished the Creation; not that God laboured as a man, and therefore rested: for God commanded, and it was finished, *Cui voluisse est fecisse*; With whom, to will is to make, saith Beda. Neither did God so rest, that he left the World made, and the Creatures therein to themselves: for my Father worketh to this day (saith Christ) and I work; but God rested (that is) he created no new species or kinds of creatures, but (as aforesaid) gave unto man a power generative, and so to the rest of living creatures, and to Plants and Flowers their seeds in themselves; and commanded man to multiply and fill the Earth, and the Earth and Sea to bring forth creatures according to their severall kinds: all which being finished, God saw that his workes were good; not that he foreknew not, and comprehended not the beginning and end before they were; for God made every Plant of the field before it was in the Earth; but he gave to all things which he had created the name of good, thereby to teach men, that from so good a God there was nothing made, but that which was perfect good, and from whose simple purity and from so excellent a cause there could proceed no impure or imperfect effect. For man having a free will and liberall choice, purchased by disobedience his own death and mortality, and for the cruelty of mans heart, was the Earth afterward cursed, and all creatures of the first Age destroyed, but the righteous man Noah and his Family, with those creatures which the Ark contained, reserved by God to replenish the Earth.



## CHAP. III.

Of the place of Paradise.

## §. I.

That the seat of Paradise is greatly mistaken: and that it is no marvell that men should erre.

Concerning the first Habitation of man, we read, that the Lord God planted a Garden Eastward in Eden, and there he put the man whom he made, GEN. 2. 6. Of this seat and place of Paradise, all Ages have held dispute; and the opinions and judgments have been in effect, as divers, among those that have written upon this part of Genesis, as upon any one place therein, seeming most obscure: some there are, that have conceived the being of the terrestriall Paradise, without all regard of the Worlds Geographic, and without any respect of the East and West, or any consideration of the place where Moses wrote, and from whence he directed (by the quarters of the Heavens) the way, how to find out and judge, in what Region of the World this Garden was by God planted, wherein he was exceeding respective and precise. Others, by being themselves ignorant in the Hebrew, followed the first Interpretation, or trusting to their own judgments, understood one place for another; and one Error is so fruitful, as it begetteth a thousand Children, if the licentiousness thereof be not timely restrained. And thirdly, those Writers which gave themselves to follow and imitate others, were in all things to obsequious Followers of those Masters, whom they admired and believed in, as they thought it safer to condemn their own understanding, than to examine theirs. For (saith Vadius in his Epistle of Paradise) *Magnos errores, magnorum virorum autoritate persuasi, transmitimus*; We passe over many grosse errors, by the authority of great men led and persuaded. And it is true, that many of the Fathers were far wide from the understanding of this place. I speak it not, that I myself dare presume to censure them, for I reverence both their Learning and their Pietie, and yet not bound to follow them any further, then they are guided by truth: for they were men; *Et humanum est errare*. And to the end that no man should be proud of himself, God hath distributed unto men such a proportion of Knowledge, as the wisest may behold in themselves their own weakness:

Null

*Nulli unquam dedit omnia Deus*; God never gave the knowledge of all things to any one. Saint Paul confest that he knew not, whether he were taken up into the third Heaven in the flesh, or out of the flesh; and Christ himself acknowledged thus much, that neither Men, nor Angels knew of the latter day; and therefore, seeing knowledge is infinite, it is God (according to S. Jude) who is only wise. *Sapientia ubi invenitur*, (saith Job) but where is wisdom found? and where is the place of understanding? man knoweth not the price thereof, for it is not found in the Land of the living. And therefore seeing God found folly in his Angels, mens judgements (which inhabit in houses of Clay) cannot be without their mistakings; and so the Fathers, and other learned men, excusable in particulars, especially in those whereupon our salvation dependeth not.

## §. II.

A recitall of strange opinions touching Paradise.

Now touching Paradise, first it is to be enquired, whether there were a Paradise, or no? or whether Moses description were altogether mystical, and allegorical? as Origen, Philo, Fran. Georgius, with others have affirmed; and that under the names of those four Rivers, Pijon, Gekon, Hiddekel, and Perath, the Tree of Life, and the Tree of Knowledge, there were delivered unto us other mysteries and significations; as, that by the four Rivers were meant the four Cardinal virtues, Justice, Temperance, Fortitude, and Prudence; or (by other) Oyl, Wine, Milke and Honey. This Allegorical understanding of Paradise by Origen divulged, was again by Francisus Georgius received (saith Sixtus Senensis) whose frivolous imaginations Sixtus himself doth fully and learnedly answer, in the 34. Annotation of his fifth Book, fol. 338. the last Edition.

S. Ambrose also leaned wholly to the Allegorical construction, and set Paradise in the third Heaven, and in the virtues of the mind, & in nostro principali, which is, as I conceive it, in mente, or in our soules: to the particulars whereof he alludeth in this sort. By the place or garden of Paradise, was meant the soul or mind; by Adam, Mens, or Understanding; by Eve, the Sense; by the Serpent, Delectation; by the Tree of good and evil, Sapience; & by the rest of the Trees, the virtues of the mind, or in the mind planted, or from thence springing. Notwithstanding all which, upon the first of the Corin. c. 6. he in direct words alloweth both of a celestially and terrestriall Paradise; the one into which S. Paul was wrapt; the other, into which Adam was put by God. Aug. Chrysostomus was of opinion, that a Paradise had been, but that there was not now any mark thereof on the earth: the same being not only defaced, but withall the places now not so much as existing. To which Luther seemeth to adhere.

The Manichees also understood, that by Paradise was meant the whole Earth; to which opinion Vadius inclineth, as I conceive his words, in two severall places. First, upon this: *Fill the earth*, Gen. 1. 10. Of which he gives this judgment. *Hoc ipso etiam quod dixit, Replete terram, dominamini universis animantibus, subjicite terram, clarissime docet, totam terram extantem, & omnigenis (ut tunc erat) fructibus confitam, sedem & horum illum Adæ, & posteritatis future fuisse*; These words (saith he) in which God said, Bring forth fruit and multiply, and fill the earth, and subdue it, and rule over every creature, do clearly shew, that the Univerſall earth set or filled with all sorts of fruits (as then it was) was the garden and seat of ADAM, and of his future posterity. Afterward he acknowledged the place, out of the Acts Cap. 17. *Apostolus ex uno sancto, et omne genus humanum ideo factum docet, ut habitarent super universam faciem terre: tota igitur terra Paradisus ille erat*; The Apostle (saith he) teacheth, that God hath made of one blood all mankind, to dwell over all the face of the earth: and therefore all the earth (saith he) was that Paradise. Which conjectures I will answer in order. Gropius Becanus differeth not much from this opinion, but yet he acknowledged that Adam was first planted by God in one certain place, and peculiar Garden; which place Gropius findeth neer the River of Acesines, in the confines of India.

Tertullian, Bonaventure, and Durandus, make Paradise under the Equinoctiall, and Ptolemy quite contrary, under the North pole: the Chaldeans also for the most part, and all their Sectators, followed the opinion of Origen, or rather Origen theirs, who would either make Paradise a figure, or Sacrament only, or else would have it seated out of this sensible world, or raised into some high and remote Region of the Ayr. Strabus, Ribanus

Bed. in Gen.  
Pet. Comest. l. 1.  
Gen. 2.  
Moses Bar. de  
Par.

Rabanus, were both sick of this vanity, with Origen, and Philo: so was our venerable Bede, and Peter Comestor, and Moses Barcephas the Syrian, translated by Masius. But as Hopkins says of Philo Judeus, that he wondred, *quo malo genio afflatus*; By what evil Angel he was blown up into this error: so can I not but greatly marvel at the learned men, who so grossly and blindly wondred; seeing Moses, and after him the Prophets, do so plainly describe this place, by the Region in which it was planted, by the Kingdoms and Provinces bordering it, by the Rivers which watered it, and by the points of the Compass upon which it lay, in respect of Judea, or Canaan.

Noviomagus also upon Bede, *De natur. rerum*, beleeveeth that all the Earth was taken for Paradise, and not any one place. For the whole Earth (saith he) hath the same beauty ascribed to Paradise. He addeth, that the Ocean was that Fountain, from whence the four Rivers, Pison, Gehon, Tigris, and Euphrates, had their beginning: for he could not think it possible, that these Rivers of Ganges, Nilus, Tigris, and Euphrates (whereof the one ran through India, the other through Egypt, and the other through Mesopotamia, and Armenia) should rise out of one Fountain, were it not out of the Fountain of the Ocean.

## §. III.

That there was a true local Paradise Eastward, in the Country of Eden.

Gen. 2. 2.

TO the first therefore, that such a place there was upon the earth, the words of Moses make it manifest, where it is written, *And the Lord God planted a Garden Eastward in Eden, and there he put the man whom he had made*: and howsoever the vulgar translation, called Jeromes translation, hath converted this place thus, *Plantaverat Dominus Deus Paradisum voluptatis, à principio*; The Lord God planted a Paradise of pleasure from the beginning, putting the word (pleasure) for Eden, and (from the beginning) for Eastward: it is manifest, that in this place Eden is the proper name of a Region. For what sense hath this translation (saith our Hopkins, in his Treatise of Paradise) that he planted a Garden in pleasure, or that a River went out of pleasure to water the Garden: But the seventy Interpreters call it *Paradisum Edenis*, the Paradise of Eden, and so doth the Chaldean Paraphrast truly take it for the proper name of a place, and for a Noun appellative; which Region, in respect of the fertility of the soyle, of the many beautiful Rivers & goodly Woods, and that the Trees (as in the Indier) do always keep their leaves, was called Eden, which signifieth in the Hebrew, pleasantness, or delicacy, as the Spaniards call the Country, opposite to the Isle of Cuba, Florida: and this is the mistaking, which may end the dispute, as touching the double sense of the word, that as Florida was a Country, so called for the flourishing beauty thereof; so was Eden a Region called pleasure, or delicacy, for its pleasure, or delicacy: and as Florida signifieth flourishing; so Eden signifieth pleasure: and yet both are the proper names of Countries; for Eden being the proper name of a Region, (called pleasure in the Hebrew) and Paradise being the choise seat of all that Region, Paradise was truly the Garden of Eden, and truly the Garden of pleasure.

Now, for Eastward, to translate it, from the beginning, it is also contrary to the translation of the Seventy; to the ancient Greek Fathers, as Basil, Chrysostome, Theodoret, Gregorie; and to the Rabines, as Ramban, Rabbi Simon, R. Abraham, and Chimebis; and of the Latines, Severinus, Damascenus, &c. who plainly take Eden for the proper name of a Region, and set the word (Eastward) for ab initio: for Damascenus own words are these, *Paradisus est locus Dei manibus in Eden ad Orientem mirabiliter constructus*; Paradise is a place, miraculously planted by the hands of God, in Eden, toward the East.

And after all these Fathers, Guilielmus Parisiensis, a great learned man, and Sixtus Senensis, of latter times, do both understand these words of Eden and of the East, contrary to the vulgar Translation; Parisiensis, as indifferent to both, and Sixtus Senensis, directly against the vulgar: of which there are their own words: *After this I will begin to speak of Paradise terrestrial, which God planted from the beginning, or Eastward, &c. Post hæc incipiam loqui de Paradiso terrestri, quem plantasse Deum ab initio vel ad Orientem &c.* And then Senensis; *Moses enim clarissime prodit, Paradisum à Deo constum in regione terre Orientalis, quæ dicitur Eden: Hæden autem esse proprium nomen apparet ex quo in capite Gen. ubi legimus CHAM habitasse ad Orientalem plagam Hæden*; For MOSES (saith

(saith he) doth shew most clearly, that Paradise was planted of God in a Region of the East Country, which is called Heden: but that Heden is a proper name, it appeareth by the fourth Chapter of Genesis, where we read, that CHAM dwelt on the East border of Heden. PETERIUS endeavourth to qualify this Translation; for this particle (saith he) *ab initio*, is referred to all the time of the Creation, and not to the very first day; alledging this place of Christ, that although the Devil was said to be a Man-slayer from the beginning, yet that was meant but after the sixth day. But surely, as I think (referring my self to better judgement) the Devil was from the infant of his fall a Man-slayer in disposition, though he had not whereon to practise till mans Creation. And for conclusion, S. Hierome (if that be his translation) adviseth himself better in the end of the third Chapter of Genesis, converting the word (Eden) by (antè) and not (à principio) as, *God did set a Cherubin before the Garden of Eden; Collocavit Deus ante Paradisum voluptatis Cherubin; and Pererius himself acknowledgeth, that this is the true sense of this place, precisely taken, according to the Hebrew. Posuit à parte orientali horti Heden, Cherubin*; He set on the East-side of the Garden of Heden, a Cherubin. BECANUS affirmeth, that the Hebrew word (Be) signifieth (with) as well as (in) and so the Text beareth this sense: That God planted a Garden with pleasure (that is to say) full of pleasure. But Becanus followeth this construction, only to the end, to find Paradise upon the River of Afcenes: for there he hath heard of the Indian Fig-tree in great abundance, which he supposeth to be the Tree of knowledge, of good and evil, and would therefore draw Paradise to the Fig-Tree: which conceit of his I will answer hereafter.

Now, because Paradise was seated by Moses toward the East, thence came the custom of praying toward the East, and not by imitation of the Chaldeans: and therefore all our Churches are built East and West, as to the point where the Sun riseth in March, which is directly over Paradise (saith Damascenus) affirming, that we always pray towards the East, as looking towards Paradise, whence we were cast out; and yet the Temple of Solomon had their Priests and Sacrifices, which turned themselves in their service and divine ceremonies, always towards the West, thereby to avoid the superfluous of the Egyptians and Chaldeans.

But because East and West are but in respect of places; (for although Paradise were East from Judea, yet it was West from Persia) and the serving of God is every where in the world; the matter is not great which way we turn our faces, so our hearts stand right, other than this, that we who dwell West from Paradise, and pray turning our selves towards the East, may remember thereby to beseech God, that as by Adams fall we have lost the Paradise on earth; so by Christs death and passion we may be made partakers of the Paradise celestial, & the Kingdom of Heaven. To conclude, I conceive, that there was no other mystery in adding the word (East) to Eden by Moses, than to shew, that the Region of Eden, in which Paradise was, lay Eastward from Judea and Canaan: for the Scriptures always called the people of those Nations, the Sons of the East who inhabited Arabia, Mesopotamia, Chaldaea, and Persia: of which Ovid.

*Eurus ad Auroram, Nabateaq; regna recessit;*

*Persidaq; & radiis juga subdita matrisin*

The East wind with Aurora hath a biding  
Among the Arabian and the Persian Hills,  
Whom Phœbus first salutes at his first rising.

And if it be objected, that Hieremy the Prophet, threatening the destruction of Hierusalem, doth often make mention of Northern Nations, it is to be noted, that the North is there named, in respect of those Nations that followed Nabuchodonosor, and of whom the greatest part of his Army was compounded; not that Babylon it self stood North from Hierusalem, though inclining from the East towards the North.

Now, to the difference of this Translation, Peter Comestor giveth best satisfaction: for so he useth the word, *From the beginning, that is, from the first part of the World, (à principio) id est*, (saith he) *à prima orbis parte*; and afterward he affirmeth, that *à principio*, and *ad Orientem*, have the same signification: *From the beginning and Eastward is all one; à principio idem est quod ad Orientem.*

But to return to the proof of this place, and that this story of Mankind was not Allegorical, it followeth in the Text of the 2. Chap. & 9. Verse, in these words: *For out of the ground made the Lord God to grow every Tree pleasant to the sight*; and *good for meat* &c. so as if it appeared that God created Adam else-where as in the World at large; and then put him into the Garden: and the end why, is exprest: *that he might dress it and keep*

Verf. 18.

Verf. 10.  
Ezekiel 2. 33.

keep it; *Paradise* being a Garden or Orchard filled with Plants, and Trees, of the most excellent kinds, pleasant to behold, and (withal) good for meat: which proveth that *Paradise* was a terrestrial Garden, garnished with Fruits, delighting both the eye and taste. And to make it more plain, and to take away all opinion of Allegorical construction, he affirmeth that it was watered and beautified with a River; expressing also the Region, out of which this River sprang, which he calleth *Heden*; and that *Heden* is also a Country neer unto *Charon* in *Mesopotamia*, *Ezekiel* witnesseth.

But to all these Cabalists, which draw the Truth and Story of the Scriptures into Allegories, *Epiphanius* answereth in these words: *si Paradisus non est sensibilis, non est etiam fons, si non est fons, non est flumen, si non est flumen, non sunt quatuor principia, non Pison, non Gebon, non Tigris, nec Euphrates, non est fons, non solia, non comedit EV a de arbore, non est ADAM, non sunt homines, sed veritas jam fabula est, & omnia ad Allegorias revocantur*; If *Paradise* be not sensible, then there was no fountain, and then no river; if no river, then no such four heads or branches, and then not any such river, as *Pison*, or *Gebon*, *Tigris*, or *Euphrates*, no such fig-tree, or fruit, or leaves; *EVE* then did not eat of the fruit, neither was there any *ADAM*, or any man, the truth was but a fable, and all things esteemed are called back into Allegories. Words to the same effect hath *S. Hierome* upon *DANIEL*: *Contitescant eorum deliramenta, qui umbras & imagines in veritate sequentes, ipsam conantur evertere veritatem, ut Paradisum & flumina, & arbores putent Allegoria Legibus se debere subire: Let the dotage of them be silent, who following shadows and images in the truth, endeavour to subvert the truth it self, and think that they ought to bring *Paradise*, and the Rivers, & the Trees under the Rules of Allegory.*

Furthermore, by the continuation and order of the Story, is the place made more manifest. For, God gave *Adam* free liberty to eat of every Tree of the Garden, (the Tree of knowledge excepted) which Trees *Moses* in the ninth verse saith that they were good to eat; meaning the fruit which they bare. Besides, God left all beasts to *ADAM* to be named, which he had formerly made; and these beasts were neither in the third heaven, nor neer the circle of the Moon, nor beasts in imagination: for if all these things were Enigmatical or mystical, the same might also be said of the creation of all things. And *Ezekiel*, speaking of the glory of the Assyrian Kings, useth this speech: *All the trees of Eden, which were in the Garden of God, envied him*; which proveth both *Eden*, and *Paradise* therein seated, to be terrestrial: for the Prophets made no imaginary comparisons. But *Moses* wrote plainly, and in a simple stile, fit for the capacities of ignorant men, and he was more large and precise in the description of *Paradise*, than in any other place of Scripture; or purpose to take away all scruple from the incredulity of future ages, whom he knew (out of the gift of Prophecy) to be apt to fabulous inventions, and that if he had not described both the Region and the Rivers, and how it stood from *Canaan*, many of the unbelieving Israelites, and others after them, would have misconstrued this Story of Mankind. And is it likely, there would have been so often mention made of *Paradise* in the Scriptures, if the same had been an *Utopia*? For we finde that the Valley, wherein *Sodom* and *Gomorrah* stood, (sometimes called *Pentapolis*, of the five principal Cities therein) was before the destruction (which their unnatural sin purchased) compared to the *Paradise* of the Lord, and like to the Land of Egypt toward *Zoar*: In like manner was *Israel* resembled to the *Paradise* of God, before the Babylonians wasted it: which proveth plainly, that *Paradise* it self exceeded in beauty and fertility, and that these places had but a resemblance thereof: being compared to a feat and soyle of far exceeding excellency.

Besides, whence had *Homer* his invention of *Alecinous* Gardens, as *Justin Martyr* noteth, but out of *Moses* his description of *Paradise*? *Gen. 2.* and whence are their praises of the *Elizian* fields, but out of the story of *Paradise*? to which also appertain those verses of the Golden Age in *Ovid*:

Ovid. Metam. l. 2.

*Ver erat æternum, placidique tepentibus auris  
Mulcebant Zephyrini sine semine flores.*

The joyful Spring did ever last, Sweet flowers by his gentle blast,  
And Zephyrus did breed Without the help of Seed.

And it is manifest, that *Orpheus*, *Linus*, *Pindarus*, *Hesiodus*, and *Homer*, and after him, *Ovid*, one out of another, and all these together with *Pythagoras* and *Plato*, and their Secta-

Sectatours, did greatly enrich their inventions, by venting the stolne Treasures of Divine Letters, altered by prophane additions, and disguised by poetical conversions, as if they had bin conceived out of their own speculations and contemplations.

But besides all these testimonies, if we finde what Region *Heden* or *Eden* was; if we prove the River that ran out of it, and that the same afterwards was divided into foure Branches; together with the kingdomes of *Havila* and *Cush*, and that all these are Eastward from *Canaan*, or the Desarts of the *Amorites*, where *Moses* wrote; I then conceive that there is no man that will doubt, but that such a place there was. And yet I doe not exclude the Allegorical sense of the Scripture; for as well in this there were many figures of Christ, as in all the old Testament throughout: the Story being directly true notwithstanding. And to this purpose (saith Saint *Augustine*) *Tres sunt de Paradiso generales sententie: una est eorum, qui tantummodo corporaliter Paradisum intelligi volunt: alia eorum, qui spiritualiter tantum (id est) Ecclesiam: tertia eorum, qui utroque modo Paradisum accipiunt, (that is) There are three opinions of *Paradise*: the one of those men, which will have it altogether corporal: a second of those, which conceive it altogether spiritual, and to be a figure of the Church: the third of those which take it in both senses; which third opinion *S. Augustine* approveth, and of which *Suidas* giveth this allowable judgement: *Quemadmodum homo sensibilis, & intelligibilis simul conditus erat: sic & huius sanctissimum nemus sensibile simul & intelligibile, & duplici specie est præditum; (that is) As man was created at one time both sensible and intelligible, so was this holy Grove or Garden to be taken both wayes, and endued with a double forme.**

Aug. de Civit. Dei. l. 13. c. 21.  
Suidas in. 1722.  
Paradisi.

## §. IV.

Why it should be needful to intreat diligently of the place of *Paradise*.

BUT it may be objected, that it is needlesse, and a kind of curiositie to enquire so diligently after this place of *Paradise*, and that the knowledge thereof is of little or no use. To which I answer, that there is nothing written in the Scripture, but for our instruction; and if the truth of the Story be necessary, then by the place proved, the same is also made more apparent. For if we should conceive that *Paradise* were not on the Earth, but lifted up as high as the Moone; or that it were beyond all the Ocean, and in no part of the known World, from whence *Adam* was said to wade through the Sea, and thence to have come into *Judea*, (out of doubt) there would be few men in the World, that would give any credit unto it, For what could seeme more ridiculous than the report of such a place? and besides, what maketh this seat of *Paradise* to much disputed and doubted of, but the conceit that *Pishon* should be *Ganges*, which watereth the East *India*, and *Gebon*, *Nilus*, which enricheth *Egypt*, and these two Rivers so farre distant, as (except all the World were *Paradise*) these streames can no way be comprised therein?

Secondly, if the birrh and works, and death of our Saviour, were said to have beene in some such Countrey, of which no man ever heard tell, and that his Miracles had bin performed in the Ayre, or no place certainly knowne: I assure my selfe, that the Christian Religion would have taken but a slender root in the minds of men: for times and places are approved witnesses of worldly actions.

Thirdly, if we should rely, or give place to the judgement of some Writers upon this place of *Genesis* (though otherwise for their doctrine in generally, they are worthy of honour and reverence) I say that there is no fable among the *Grecians* or *Egyptians* more ridiculous; for who would believe that there were a piece of the World to let by it selfe and separated as to hang in the Ayre under the circle of the Moone? or who so doltish to conceive, that from thence the foure Rivers of *Ganges*, *Nilus*, *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, should fall down, and run under all the Ocean, and rise up againe in this our habitable world, and in those places where they are now found? Which lest any man think that I enforce or strain to the worst, these are *Peter Comestor*'s own words, *Est autem locus amenissimus, longo terra & maris tractu à nostra habitabili Zona secretus, adeo elevatus, ut usq; ad lunæ rem globum attingat, &c.* (that is) It is a most pleasant place, severed from our habitable Zone by a long tract of Land and Sea, elevated so that it reacheth to the globe of the Moone.

And *Moses Barcephas* upon this place writeth in this manner: *Divide hoc quogressum* *Barcephas* convert. vol. huius ed by Majin.

volumus, Paradisum multo sublimiore positum esse regione, atq; hac infra extet terra, eaq; spectant illinc per precipitium delabantur suum tanto cum impetu, quantum verbis exprimere non possis; eaq; impetu impulsu pressas sub Oceani vado rapiuntur, unde rursus proflant ebulliantq; in hoc a nobis culto orbe: which have this sense: Furthermore (saith he) we give this for an answer, that Paradise is set in a Region farre raised above this part which wee inhabit; whereby it comes to passe, that from thence these rivers fall downe with such a headlong violence, as words cannot expresse; and with that force so impulsed and pressd, they are carried under the deep Ocean, and do again rise and boyle up in this our habitable World: and to this he addeth the opinion of Ephram, which is this. Ephram dicit Paradisum ambire terram, atq; ultra Oceanum ita positum esse, ut totum terrarum orbem ab omni circumdet regione, non aliter atq; Luna orbis Lunam cingit; (which is) That Paradise doth compass or embrace the whole Earth, and is so set beyond the Ocean Sea, as it environeth the whole Orbe of the Earth on every side, as the Orbe of the Moon doth embrace the Moone. To the end therefore that these ridiculous expositions and opinions do not bring question unto Truth it selfe, or make the same subject to doubts or disputes, it is necessary to discover the true place of Paradise, which God in his wisdom appointed in the very Navell of this our World, and (as Melancthon saies) in parte terre meliore, in the best part thereof, that from thence, as from a Center, the Univerfall might be filled with people and planted; and by knowing this place, we shall the better judge of the beginning of Nations, and of the worlds inhabitation: for neere unto this did the Sons of Noah also disperse themselves after the flood into all other remote regions and countries. And if it be a generous desire in men, to know from whence their owne forefathers have come, and out of what regions and Nations, it cannot be displeasing to understand the place of our first Antecessor, from whence all the streames and branches of Mankind have followed and bin deduced. If then it doe appeare by the former, that such a place there was as Paradise, and that the knowledge of this place cannot be unprofitable, it followeth in order to examine several opinions before remembered, by the Truth it selfe; and to see how they agree with the sense of the Scripture, and with common reason, and afterward to prove directly, and to delineate the Region in which God first planted this delightful Garden.

## §. V.

That the Flood hath not utterly defaced the markes of Paradise, nor caused Hills in the Earth.

And first, whereas it is supposed by Aug. Chrysostomus, that the Flood hath altered, deformed, or rather annihilated this place, in such sort, as no man can find any mark or memorie thereof: (of which opinion there were others also, ascribing to the Flood the cause of those high Mountaines, which are found on all the Earth over, with many other strange effects) for mine own opinion, I think neither the one nor the other to be true. For although I cannot deny, but that the face of Paradise was after the Flood withered, and grown old, in respect of the first beaurie: (for both the ages of men, and the nature of all things Time hath changed) yet if there had beene no signe of any such place, or if the soile and seate had not remained, then would not Moses, who wrote of Paradise about 850. years after the Flood, have described it so particularly, and the Prophets long after Moses would not have made so often mention thereof. And though the very Garden it selfe were not then to be found, but that the Flood, and other accidents of time made it one commonfield and pasture with the Land of Eden, yet the place is still the same, and the Rivers still remaine the same Rivers. By two of which (never doubted of) to wit Tygris and Euphrates, we are sure to find in what longitude Paradise lay; and learning out one of these Rivers, so which afterward doth divide it self into foure branches, we are sure that the partition is at the very border of the Garden it self. For it is written, that out of Eden went a River to water the Garden, and from thence it was divided, and became into foure heads; Now whether the word in the Latine Translation (*Inde* from thence, be referred to Eden it self, or to Paradise, yet the division and branching of those rivers must be in the North or South side of the very Garden (if the rivers run as they doe, North and South) & therefore these rivers yet remaining, & Eden manifestly known, there could be no such defacing by the flood, as is supposed. Furthermore, as there is no likelihood,

that the place could be so altered as future ages knew it not, so is there no probability that either these Rivers were turned out of their courses, or new rivers created by the Flood which were not, or that the Flood (as aforesaid) by a violent motion, when it began to decrease, was the cause of high Hills or deep Valleys. For what descent of waters could there be in a Spherical and round body, wherein there is no high nor low? seeing that all violent force of waters is either by the strength of winde, by descent from a higher to a lower, or by the ebb or flood of the Sea. But that there was any wind (whereby the Seas are most enraged) it appeareth not, rather the contrary is probable: for it is written, Therefore God made a winde to pass upon the Earth, and the waters ceased. Gen. 8.1. So as it appeareth not, that, until the waters fank, there was any winde at all, but that God afterward, out of his goodness, caused the winde to blow, to dry up the abundant slime and mud of the Earth, and make the Land more firm, and to cleanse the Aire of thick vapours, and unwholsom mists: and this we know by experience, that all down-right rains do evermore disperse the violence of outrageous winds, and beat down, and level the swelling and mountainous billow of the Sea: for any ebbs and floods there could be none, when the waters were equall and of one height over all the face of the Earth, and when there were no Indraghs, Bayes, or Gulfs to receive a Flood, or any descent, or violent falling of waters in the round form of the Earth and Waters, as aforesaid: and therefore it seemeth most agreeable to reason, that the waters rather stood in a quiet calm, than that they moved with any raging or overbearing violence. And for a more direct proofe that the Flood made no such destroying alteration, Josephus avoweth that one of those pillars erected by Seth, the third from Adam, was to be seen in his daies; which pillars were set up above 1426. years before the Flood, counting Seth to be an hundred years old at the erection of them; and Joseph himself to have lived some forty or fifty years after Christ: of whom although there be no cause to believe all that he wrote, yet that which he avouched of his own time, cannot (without great derogation) be called in question. And therefore it may be possible, that some foundation or ruine thereof might then be seen. Now that such pillars were raised by Seth, all Antiquity hath avowed. It is also written in Berossus (to whom although I give little credit, yet I cannot condemn him in all) that the city of Enoch, built by Cain about the mountains of Libanus, was not defaced by length of time: yea the ruines thereof Annins (who commented upon that invented fragment) saith, were to be seen in his daies, who lived in the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile. And if these his words be not true, then was he exceeding impudent: for, speaking of this City of Enoch, he concludeth in this sort: Cuius maxima & ingentis molis fundamenta visuntur, & vocatur ab incolis regionis, Civitas Cain, ut nostri mercatores, & peregrini referunt; The foundation of which huge Mass is now to be seen, and the place is called by the people of that Region, the City of Cain, as both our strangers and Merchants report. It is also avowed by Pomponius Mela (to whom I give more credit in these things) that the City of Joppa was built before the Flood, over which Cepha was King: whose name, with his brother Phimeus, together with the grounds and principles of their Religion, was found graven upon certain altars of stone. And it is not impossible, that the ruines of this other Citie, called Enoch by Annins, might be seen, though founded in the first Age: but it could not be of the first City of the World, built by Cain, the place rather than the time denying it.

And to prove directly that the Flood was not the cause of mountaines, but that there were mountaines from the Creation, it is written, that the waters of the Flood overflowed by fifteen Cubits the highest Mountaine. And Masius Damascenus, speaking of the flood, writeth in this manner: Est supra Minyadam excelsum mons in Armenia (qui Baris appellatur) in quo confuentes multos sermo est diluvii tempore liberatos. And upon Minyada there is an high Mountain in Armenia (called Baris) unto which (as it is said) that many fled in the time of the Deluge, and that they saved themselves thence. Now although it is contrary to Gods Word, that any more were saved than eight persons (which Masius doth not avouch, but by report) yet it is a testimony, that such Mountaines were before the Flood, which were afterwards, and ever since, knowne by the same names; and on which Mountaines it is generally received that the Arke rested: but untruly, as I shall prove hereafter. And again it appeareth, that the Mount Sion (though by another name) was knowne before the Flood; on which the Thalmudists report, that many Giants saved them-

themselves also; but, as *Annius* saith, without all authority, either divine or humane.

Gen. 8. 11.

Lastly, it appeareth that the Flood did not so turn upside down the face of the Earth, as thereby it was made past knowledge, after the waters were decreased, by this, that when *NOAH* sent out the Dove the second time, she returned with an Olive leaf in her mouth, which he had pluckt, and which (until the Trees were discovered) she found not: for otherwise she might have found them floating on the water; a manifest proof, that the Trees were not torn up by the roots, nor swam upon the waters, for it is written: *folium Olive, raptum or decerptum, a leaf pluckt*, (which is) to take from a Tree, or to tear off. By this it is apparent, (there being nothing written to the contrary) that the Flood made no such alteration, as was supposed, but that the place of Paradise might be seen to succeeding Ages, especially unto *Moses*, by whom it pleased God to teach the truth of the Worlds Creation, and unto the Prophets which succeeded him: both which I take for my warrant, and to guide me in this Discovery.

## §. VI.

That Paradise was not the whole Earth, as some have thought: making the Ocean to be the fountain of those four Rivers.

Gen. 1. 28.  
Ab. 17. 26.

Gen. 2. 8.

3. 24.

THIS conceit of *Aug. Chysamenis* being answered, who onely giveth his opinion for reason, I will in a few words examine that of the Manichees, of *Noviomagus, Vadianus, Goropius, Becanus*, and all those that understood, that by Paradise was meant the whole Earth. But in this I shall not trouble the Reader with many words, because by those places of Scripture formerly remembered, this Universality will appear altogether improper. The places which *Vadianus* alledgeth, *Bring forth fruit and multiply, fill the Earth and subdue it, rule over every Creature, &c.* with this of the *A&rs*, and hath made of one blood all Mankind, to dwell on all the face of the Earth, do no way prove such a generality: for the World was made for man, of which he was Lord and Governour, and all things therein were ordained of God for his use. Now although all men were of one and the same fountain of blood originally; and *Adam's* posterity inhabited in process of time over all the face of the earth; yet it disproveth in nothing the particular Garden, assigned to *Adam*, to dress and cultivate, in which he lived in blessed estate before his transgression. For if there had been no other choise, but that *Adam* had bin left to the Universal; *Moses* would not then have said, *Eastward in Eden*, seeing the World hath not East nor West but respectively. And to what end had the Angel of God been set to keep the East-side, and entrance into Paradise after *Adam's* expulsion, if the Universal had been Paradise? for then must *Adam* have been chased also out of the World. For if all the earth were Paradise, that place can receive no better construction than this, That *Adam* was driven out of the World into the World, and out of Paradise into Paradise, except we should believe with *Metrodorus*, that there were infinite Worlds. Which to deny, he thinks all one, as to affirm, That in so large a field, as the Universal, there should grow but one Thistle. *NOVIOMAGUS* upon *Beda*, seemeth to be led by this, that it was impossible for those three Rivers, Ganges, Nilus, and Euphrates (which water three portions of the World so far distant) to rise out of one Fountaine, except the Ocean be taken for the Well, and the World for the Garden.

And it is true, that those four Rivers, being so understood, there could be no conjecture more probable; but it shall plainly appear, that *Pison* was fallily taken for Ganges, and *Gehon* fallily for Nilus, although Ganges be a River by *Havilah* in India, and Nilus run through Ethiopia. The *seventy* write Chus for Ethiopia, and thereby the errors of the Manichees, and the mistakings of *Noviomagus, Goropius, and Vadianus*, with others, are made manifest. Yet was their conjecture far more probable, than that of *Ephrem, Cyrillus, and Athanasius*: That Paradise was seated far beyond the Ocean Sea, and that *Adam* waded through it, and at last came toward the Country in which he was created, and was buried at Mount Calvary in Hierusalem. And certainly, though all those of the first Age were of great stature, and so continued many years after the Flood, yet *Adam's* shin-bones must have contained a thousand fadome, and much more, if he had forded the Ocean; but this opinion is so ridiculous, as it needs no argument to disprove it.

## §. VII.

## §. VII.

Of their opinion which make Paradise as high as the Moon: and of others, which make it higher than the Middle Region of the Ayre.

THIRDLY, whereas *Beda* saith, and as the Schoolemen affirme, Paradise to be a Place altogether removed from the knowledge of men, (*locus à cognitione hominum remotissimus*) and *Barcephas* conceived, that Paradise was far in the East, but mounted above the Ocean, and all the Earth, and neer the Orbe of the Moone (which opinion, though the Schoolemen charge *Beda* withall, yet *Pererius* layes it off from *Beda* upon *Strabus*, and his Master *Rabanus*;) and whereas *Rupertus*, in his Geographic of Paradise, doth not much differ from the rest, but findes it seated next or neereft heaven; It may seeme, that all these borrowed this doctrine out of *Plato*, and *Plato* out of *Socrates*: but neither of them (as I conceive) well understood; who (undoubtedly) tooke this place for Heaven it selfe, into which the Soules of the blessed were carried after death.

True it is, that these Philosophers durst not for feare of the *Areopagites* (in this and many other divine apprehensions) set downe what they believed in plain termes, especially *Plato*: though *Socrates* in the end suffered death for acknowledging one onely powerfull God; and therefore did the Devil himselfe doe him that right, as by an Oracle, to pronounce him the wisest man. *Justine Martyr* affirmeth, that *Plato* had read the Scriptures; and *S. Augustine* gave this judgement of him, as his opinion, that (few things changed) he might be counted a Christian. And it seemeth to me, that both *Tertullian* and *Ensebius* conceive, that *Socrates*, by that place aforesaid, meant the celestiall Paradise, and not this of Eden. *Solimus*, I grant, reporteth, that there is a place exceeding delightfull, and healthfull upon the top of Mount *Atho* (called *Acrothonos*) which being above all Clouds of Raine, or other inconvenience, the people (by reason of their so many yeeres) are called *Macrobiici* (that is) *Long-lived*. A further Argument is used, for proove of the height of this place, because therein was *Enoch* preserved from the violence of the Flood: approved by *Isidore*, and *Peter Lombard*: in which place also *Tertullian* conceived, that the blessed Soules were preserved till the last judgement; which *Irenaeus* and *Justine Martyr* also beleevved. But this opinion was of all *Catholique Divines* reproved, and in the Florentine Councell damned; of which Saint *Augustine* more modestly gave this judgment: *Sicut certum est, ENOCH et ELIAM nunc vivere: ita ubi nunc sunt: an in Paradiso an alibi, incertum est*; (that is) As it is certaine that *ENOCH* and *ELIAS* doe now live, so where they live, in Paradise or elsewhere it is uncertaine. But *Barcephas* gives a third cause, though of all other the weakest. For (saith he) it was necessary that Paradise should be set at such a distance and height, because the foure Rivers (had they not fallen so precipitate) could not have had sufficient force to have thrust themselves under the great Ocean, and afterward have forced their passage through the earth, and have risen again in the farre distant Regions of India, Egypt, and Armenia.

These strange fancies and dreams have been answered by divers learned men long since, and lately by *Hopkins*, and *Pererius*, writing upon this subject; of whose arguments I will repeat these few: for to use long discourse against those things, which are both against Scripture and Reason, might rightly be judged a vanity in the Answerer, not much inferior to that of the Inventer.

It is first therefore alledged, that such a place cannot be commodious to live in: for being set so neere the Moone, it had beene too neer the Sun, and other heavenly bodies. Secondly, because it must have been too joynt a Neighbour to the Element of fire. Thirdly, because the ayre in that Region is so violently moved, and carried about with such swiftness, as nothing in that place can consist or have abiding. Fourthly, because the place between the Earth and the Moon (according to *Ptolemy* and *Alfraganus*) is seventeen times the Diameter of the Earth, which makes in a gross account about one hundred and twenty thousand miles. Hereupon it must follow, that Paradise, being raised to this height, must have the compasse of the whole earth for a Basis and foundation. But had it beene so raised, it could hardly be hidden from the knowledge, or eyes of men: seeing it would deprive us of the Suns light, all the fore-part

Cicero Summ. Scip.

of the day, being seated in the East, as they suppose. Now, to fortifie the former opinions, *Tostatus* addeth this, that those people which dwell neer those fals of waters, are deaf from their infancy, like those that dwell neer the *Catadupa*, or over-fals of *Nilus*. But this I hold as feigned. For I have seen in the Indies, far greater water-fals, than those of *Nilus*, and yet the people dwelling neer them are not deaf at all. *Tostatus* (the better to strengthen himself) citeth *Basil* and *Ambrose* together: to which *Pererius*, *Sed ego hæc apud Basilium & Ambrosium in eorum scriptis, quæ nunc extant, nusquam me legere memini*; But I do not remember (saith he) that I ever read those things either in *BASIL* or *AMBROSE*.

1 Cor. 15. 35-38

1 Pet. 3. 20.

Gen. 7. 15.

Exod. 14. 21.

But for the bodies of *Enoch* and *Elias*, God hath disposed of them according to his wisdom. Their taking up might be into the celestial *Paradise*, for ought we know. For although flesh and blood, subject to corruption, cannot inherit the Kingdom of heaven, and the seed must rot in the ground before it grow, yet we shall not all die (saith Saint *Paul*) but all shall be changed: which change in *Enoch* and *Elias*, was easie to him that is Almighty. But for the rest, the Scriptures are manifest, that by the Flood all perished on the earth, saving 8 persons; and therefore in the terrestrial *Paradise* they could not be. For *Tostatus* his own opinion, who soared not altogether so high as the rest, but believed that *Paradise* was raised above the middle Region of the Aire, and twenty cubits above all Mountains, that the Flood did not therefore reach it: (which *Scotus* and other latter School-men also believed; for, say they, there were no ladders in *Paradise*, and therefore no cause to overwhelm it: ) this is also contrary to the expresse letter of the Scripture, which directly, and without admitting of any distinction, teacheth us, that the waters over-flowed all the mountains under heaven. And were it otherwise, then might we awfull give credit to *Mastus*, *Damasceus*, and the Thalmudists, who affirme, that there were of the Giants that saved themselves on the Mountain *Baris*, and on *Sion*. But to help this, *Scotus*, being (as the rest of the Schoolmen are) full of distinction, saith; That the waters stood at *Paradise*, as they did in the Red Sea, and at *Jordan*; and as the Flood was not natural, so was *Paradise* saved by miracle. And *Thomas Aquinas* qualifyeth this high conceit with this supposition, That it was not believed, that *Paradise* was so seated, as *Beda* and others seem to affirme in words, but by *Hyperbole* and comparatively, for the delicacy and beauty so resembled. But this I dare avow of all those School-men, that though they were exceeding witty, yet they better teach all their Followers to shift, than to resolve by their distinctions. Wherefore not to stay long in answering this opinion of *Tostatus*, I confess that it is written, that the Mountains of *Olympus*, *Atho*, and *Atlas*, over-reach and surmount all windes and clouds, and that (notwithstanding) there is found on the heads of the Hills both springs and fruits; and the Pagan Priests, sacrificing on these mountain tops, do not find the ashes (remaining of their sacrifices) blown thence, nor thence waft off by rains, when they returne: yet experience hath resolved us, that these reports are fabulous; and *Pliny* himself (who was not sparing in the report of wonders) avoweth the contrary. But were it granted, and yet the height of these Mountains is far under the supposed place of *Paradise*; and on these self Hills the aire is so thin (saith *S. Augustine*, whom herein I mistrust) that it is not sufficient to bear up the body of a bird, having therein no feeling of her wings, or any sensible resistance of aire to mount her self by.

## §. VIII.

Of their opinion that seat *Paradise* under the *Æquinoctial*: and of the pleasant habitation under those Climats.

Those which come neerer unto Reason, finde *Paradise* under the *Æquinoctial* Line, as *Tertullian*, *Bonaventure*, and *Durandus*: judging, that thereunder might be found most pleasure, and the greatest fertility of soile: but against it *Thomas Aquinas* objecteth the distemperate heat, which he supposeth to be in all places so directly under the Sunne; but this is (*non causa pro causa*), for although *Paradise* could not be under the Line, because *Eden* is far from it, in which *Paradise* was; and because there is no part of *Euphrates*, *Tygris*, or *Ganges* under it, ( *Ganges* being one of the foure rivers, as they suppose ) yet this conceit of distemper, (being but an old opinion) is found to be very untrue, though for the conjecture not to be condemned, considering the age when those Fathers wrote, grounded chiefly on this: that whereas it

it appeared, that every Country, as it lay by degrees neerer the Tropick, and so toward the *Æquinoctial*, did so much the more exceed in heat; it was therefore a reasonable conjecture, that those Countries which were situated directly under it, were of a distemper uninhabitable: but it seemeth that *Tertullian* conceived better, and so did *Avicenne*, for they both thought them habitable enough; and though (perchance) in those daies it might be thought a fantastical opinion (as all are which go against the vulgar) yet we now finde, that if there be any place upon the earth of that nature, beauty, and delight that *Paradise* had, the same must be found within that supposed uninhabitable burnt Zone, or within the Tropicks, and neerer to the line it self. For here, 10 of Experience hath informed Reason, and Time hath made those things apparent, which were hidden and could not by any contemplation be discovered. Indeed it hath so pleased God to provide for all living creatures, wherewith he hath filled the world, that such inconveniences which we contemplate a far off, are found by trial and the witness of men's travails, to be so qualified, as there is no portion of the earth made in vain, or as a fruitless lump to fashion out the rest. For God himself (saith *ISA Y*) that he formed the earth and made it, he that prepared it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited. Now we finde that these hottest Regions of the world, seated under the *Æquinoctial* line, or neerer it, are so refreshed with a daily gale of Easternly winde (which the Spaniards call the *Brize*) that doth evermore blow strongest in the heat of the day, 20 as the down-right beams of the Sun cannot so much murther it, that there is any inconvenience or distemperate heat found thereby. Secondly, the nights are so cold, fresh, and equal, by reason of the entire interposition of the earth, as (for those places which my self have seen, neer the Line and under it) I know no other part of the World of better, or equal temper: Only there are some tracts, which by accident of high Mountains are barr'd from this ayre and fresh winde, and some few sandy parts without trees, which are not therefore so well inhabited as the rest; and such difference of soils we finde also in all other parts of the world. But (for the greatest part) those Regions have so many goodly Rivers, Fountains, and little Brookes, abundance of high Cedars, and other stately trees, casting shade, so many sorts of delicate fruits, ever bearing, and at all times beautified with blossom and fruit both green and ripe, as it may 30 of all other parts be best compared to the *Paradise* of *Eden*: the boughs and branches are never unclothed and left naked, their sap creepeth not under ground into the root, fearing the injury of the frost: neither doth *Pomona* any time despise her withered Husband *Vertumnus*, in his winter quarters and old age. Therefore are these Countries called *Terra vitiosa*, *Vicious Countries*: for Nature being liberal to all without labour, necessity imposing no industry or travel, idleness bringeth forth no other fruits than vain thoughts, and licentious pleasures. So that to conclude this part, *Tertullian* and those of his opinion, were not deceived in the nature of the place: but *Aquinas*, who 40 mistaked this opinion, and followed a worse. And (to say the truth) all the Schoolmen were grofs in this particular.

## §. IX.

Of the change of the names of places: and that besides that *Eden* in *Cælosyria*, there is a Country in *Babylon*, once of this name, as is proved out of *ESA. 37.* and *EZEK. 27.*

These opinions answered, and the region of *Eden* not found in any of those imaginary worlds, nor under *Torrida Zona*; it followeth that now we discover and find out the seat thereof, for in it was *Paradise* by God planted. The difficulty of which search resteth chiefly in this, That as all Nations have often changed names with their 50 Masters; so are most of these places, by *Moses* remembered, forgotten by those names of all Historians and Geographers, as well ancient as modern.

Besides, we finde that the *Affryrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes* and *Persians* (*Cyrus* onely and a few other excepted) fought to extinguish the *Hebrews*. The *Grecians* hated both their Nation and their Religion; and the *Romans* despised once to remember them in any of their Stories. And as those three Monarchies succeeded each other: so did they transform the names of all those principal Places and Cities in the East: and after them, the *Turks* hath sought (what he could) to extinguish in all things, the ancient memory of those people; which he hath subjected and inthralled.



Now besides those notable marks, *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, the better to finde the way which leadeth to the Country of *Eden*, we are to take for guides these two considerations (to wit) That it lay Eastward from *Canaan* and *Judea*; and that it was of all other the most beautiful and fertile. First then in respect of situation, the next Country to *Judea* Eastward was *Arabia Petraea*; but in this Region was *Moses* himself when he wrote: and the next unto it Eastward also was *Arabia the Desert*, both which in respect of the infertility could not be *Eden*; neither have any of the *Arabians* any such Rivers, as are exprest to run out of it: So as it followeth of necessity, that *Eden* must be Eastward, and beyond both *Arabia Petraea*, and *Deserta*. But because *Eden* is by *Moses* named by it self, and by the fertility, and the rivers onely described, we must seek it in other Scriptures, and where it is by the additions of the neighbour Nations better described. In the Prophet *Isay* I find it coupled and accompanied with other adjacent Countries, in these words, spoken in the person of *Senacherib* by *RABSAKEH*: Have the gods of the Nations delivered them, which my Fathers have destroyed, as *GOSAN*, and *HARAN*, and *RESEPH*, and the children of *EDEN*, which were at *Telassar*? and in *Ezechiel*, where he prophesieth against the *Tyrians*: They of *Haran*, and *Canneh*, and *Eden*, the merchants of *Sheba*, *Assur*, and *Chilmad*, were thy merchants, &c.

But to avoid confusion, we must understand that there were two *Edens*, one of which the Prophet *Amos* remembreth, where he divideth *Syria* into three Provinces, whereof, the first he maketh *Syria Damascene*, or *Decapollitan*: the second part is that Valley called *Averis*, otherwise *Conualle*, or the tract of *Chammah*, where *Assyria* is joyned to *Arabia the Desert*, and where *Ptolomee* placeth the City of *Averia*: and the third is knowne by the name of *Domus Edenis*, or *Cœlosyria*, otherwise *Vallis cava*, or the hollow Valley, because the mountains of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, take all the length of it on both sides, and border it: for *Cœle* in Greek is *Cava* in Latine. But this is not that *Eden*, which we seek: neither doth this Province lie East from *Canaan*, but North, and so joyneth unto it, as it could not be unknown to the *Hebrews*. Yet, because there is a little City there in called *Paradisæ*, the *Jews* believed this *Cœlosyria* to be the same which *Moses* describeth. For the same cause doth *Hopkins* in his Treatise of *Paradisæ* reprehend *Beroaldus*, in that he confoundeth this *Eden*, with the other *Eden* of *Paradisæ*, though, to give *Beroaldus* his right, I conceive that he led the way to *Hopkins*, and to all other later Writers, saying, That he failed in distinguishing these two Regions, both called *Eden*: and that he altogether mis-understood two of the four Rivers (to wit) *Pison* and *Gehon*, as shall appear hereafter. Now to finde out *Eden*, which (as *Moses* teacheth us) lay Eastward from the *Deserts*, where he wrote, after he had passed the Red Sea; we must consider where those other Countries are found, which the Prophet *Isay* and *Ezechiel* joyneth with it. For (saith *ESAIAS*) *Gosan*, *Haran*, and *Reseph*, and the children of *Eden*, which were at *Telassar*. Also *Ezechiel* joyneth *Haran* with *Eden*, who together with those of *Sheba*, *Assur*, and *Chilmad*, were the Merchants that traded with the City of *Tyre*, which was then (saith *EZECHIEL*) The Mart of the people for many Isles. And it hath ever been the custome, that the *Persians* conveyed their Merchandise to *Babylon*, and to those Cities upon *Euphrates*, and *Tygris*, and from thence transported them into *Syria*, now *Soria*, and to the Port of the *Mediterrane* Sea: as in ancient times to the City of *Tyre*, afterward to *Tripoly*, and now to *Aleppo*, from whence they imbarque them at the Port of *Alexandretta*, in the Bay of *Issicus*, now *Lajazzo*. *Ezechiel* in the description of the magnificence of *Tyre*, and of the exceeding trade that it had with all the Nations of the East, as the onely Mart-towne of that part of the World, reciteth both the people, with whom they had commerce, and also what commodities every Countrey yielded; and having counted the several People and Countries, he addeth the particular trade, which each of them exercised: They were thy merchants (saith the Prophet) in all sorts of things, in raiments of blue silke, and of broyered workes, fine linnen, corral, and pearle: and afterwards speaking of the Merchants of *Sheba* and *Raamah*, and what kinds they traded, he hath these words: The merchants of *Sheba*, and *Raamah* were thy merchants, they occupied in thy Fairs, with the chief of all Spices, and with all precious stones, and gold. Now these be indeed the riches which *Persia* & *Arabia Felix* yield: and because *Sheba* and *Raamah* are those parts of *Arabia*, which border the Sea, called the *Persian Gulfe*, therefore did those Nations both vent such Spice, sweet Gummes, and Pearls, as their owne Countries yielded: and

and (withal) having trade with their Neighbours of *India*, had from them also all sorts of spices, and plenty of gold. The better to convey these commodities to that great Mart of *Tyre*, the *Shebans* or *Arabians* entred by the mouth of *Tygris*, and from the City of *Teredon* (built or enlarged by *Nebuchodonozor*, now called *Balsara*) thence sent up all these rich merchandises by boat to *Babylon*, from whence by the body of *Euphrates*, as far as it bended Westward, and afterward by a branch thereof, which reacheth within three daies journey of *Alleppo*, and then over Land they palt to *Tyre*, as they did afterward to *Tripoly*, (formerly *Hieropolis*) and thence to *Alexandretta*, as aforesaid. Now the Merchants of *Canneh*, which *Ezechiel* joyneth with *Eden*, inhabited far up the River, and received this trade from *Arabia* and *India*, besides those proper commodities which themselves had, and which they received out of *Persia*, which bordered them. Saint *Hierome* understandeth by *Canneh*, *Seleucia*, which is seated upon *Euphrates*, where it breaketh into four heads, and which took that name from *Seleucus*, who made thereof a magnificent City. *Hierosolymitanus* thinks it to be *Ctesiphon*: but *Ctesiphon* is seated down low upon *Tygris*, and *Canneh* cannot be on that side. I mean on the East-side of *Tygris*; for then were it out of the Valley of *Shinar*. *Plinie* placeth the *Schenite* upon *Euphrates*, where the same beginneth to be foordable, which is toward the border of *Syria*, after it leaveth to be the bound of *Arabia the Desert*, and where the River of *Euphrates* reflecteth from the Desert of *Palmirena*: so for these people of *Canneh* (afterward *Schenite*) inhabited both borders of *Euphrates*, stretching themselves, from their own City of *Canneh* in *Shinar* Westward along the banks of *Euphrates*, as farre as the City of *Thapsacus*, where *Ptolomee* appointed the Forods of *Euphrates*: which also agreeth with the description of the *Schenite* by *Strabo*, whose words are these: Mercatoribus ex *Syria* *Seleuciam* & *Babyloniam* emittibus, iter est per *Schenites*: The Merchants which travail from *Syria* to *Seleucia* and *Babylon*, take their way by the *Schenites*. Therefore those which take *Canneh* for *Charran*, do much mis-take it. For *Charran*, to which *Abraham* came from *Ur* in *Chaldaea* (called by God) standeth also in *Mesopotamia*; not upon *Euphrates* it self, but upon the River of *Chaboras*, which falleth into *Euphrates*: and the Merchants of *Charran* are distinctly named with those of *Canneh* in *Ezechiel* (as) They of *Haran*, and *Canneh*, and *Eden*, the Merchants of *Sheba*, *Assur* and *Chilmad* were thy merchants. Wherefore *Charran*, which is sometime called *Charre*, and *Haran*, and *Aran*, is but the same *Charran* of *Mesopotamia*; and when it is written *Aran*, then it is taken for the region of *Mesopotamia*: or *Aran fluviorum*, the Greek word (*Mesopotamia*) importing, a country between rivers: *Haran* in Greek, is *Medius* in Latine, and *Potamos*, *fluvius*; and when it is written *Haran* or *Aran*, it is then taken for the City it self, to which *Abraham* came from *Ur* (as aforesaid). For *Strabo* in the description of *Arabia*, giveth that tract of land from the borders of *Cœlosyria*, to the edge of *Mesopotamia*, to the *Schenite*, who also inhabited on both sides of *Euphrates*, and were in after-ages accounted of these *Arabians* which inhabite *Batanea*, and the North part of the *Deserts*, stretching themselves toward the uninhabited solitude of *Palmirena*, which lieth between *Syria*, and *Arabia the Desert*. So as these of *Canneh* lay in the very high-way from *Babylon* to *Tyre*, and were neighbours (indifferent) to *Charran* and to *Eden*: and therefore they are by the Prophet *Ezechiel* coupled together, They of *Haran*, and *Canneh*, and *Eden*, &c. But Saint *Hierome* made a good interpretation of *Canneh*, or *Chalne*, by *Seleucia*: for *Seleucia* was anciently called *Chalanne* (witness *Appian*) and so *Rabanus Maurus* calleth it in his Commentaries upon *Genesis*; the name by time and mixture of languages being changed from *Chalne* or *Canneh*, to *Chalanne*: of which name there are two other Cities, standing in Triangle with *Seleucia*, and almost the next unto it, (as) *Thelbe-canne*, and *Mann-canne*, the one a little to the West of *Seleucia*, and the other opposite unto it; where these rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates* are ready to joine. Therefore, which of these the ancient *Canne* was, (being all three within the bound of the Valley *Shinar*) it is uncertain: but it is a note as well of the importance of the place, as of the certain seat thereof, that so many other cities did retain a part of the name in so many ages after. Neither is it unlikely, that these additions of *Thelbe* and *Man* to the word *Canne*, were but to make difference between the East and the West, or the greater and the less *Canne*, or between *Canne* the old and the new: which additions to distinguish cities by, are ordinary in all the Regions of the World.



Jud. 1.

Now of the other city joyned with Eden, as Haran or Charran, S. Hierome on the Judges speaketh thereof in these words: *Cumq; reverterentur, pervenerunt ad Charran, quæ est in medio itinere contra Ninevum, undecimo die; When they returned, they came to Charran (which is the mid-way against Nineve) the eleventh day.*

Acts 7. 1.

This city is by the Martyr Stephen named Charran (speaking to the high Priest:) *Tee Men, Brethren, and Fathers, hearken: The God of glory appeared to our Father ABRAHAM, while he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran.* But the seat of this city is not doubted of: for it is not onely remembered in many Scriptures, but, withal, exceeding famous for the death and overthrow of *Craffus* the Romane, who for his unsatiable greediness was called *Gorgæ avariæ*; the Gulf of avarice. Whereof *Lucan:*

Lucan. l. 1. 105.

*Assyriæ Latio maculavit sanguine Carras.*

With Roman blood th' Assyrian Carre he defil'd.

Gen. 10. 10.

But this city Canne or Chalne is made manifest by *Moses* himself, where it is written of NIMROD: *And the beginning of his Kingdoms was Babel, and Erech, and Acad, and Chalm, in the land of Sinaar or Shinar:* where *Moses* sheweth the first composition of the Babylonian Empire, and what cities and people were subject unto *Nimrod*, all which lay in the said Valley of Shinar, or near it; and this Valley of Shinar is that Tract afterwards called Babylonia and Chalda, into which also Eden stretcheth it self. *Chaldea, Babylonia, Sinaar, idem sunt* (saith COMESTOR.) *Three names of one Country:* which Region of Babylonia took name of the Tower Babel; and the Tower of the confusion of tongues. And that Shinar was Babylonia, it is proved in the eleventh chapter of *Genesis*, in these words: *And as they went from the East, they found a Plain in the Land of Shinar, and there they abode:* in which Plain Babylon was built (as aforesaid.)

Vesf. 2.

Now Shinar being Babylonia, and Canneh, in the first beginning of *Nimrod's* greatness, and before he had subdued any strange, or far-off Nations, being one part of his Dominion, and also named by *Moses* to be in Shinar, it proveth that Canneh joyneth to Babylonia; which also *Ezechiel* coupleth with Eden, and (further) affirmeth that those of Eden were also the Merchants which traded with the Tyrians: and *Esay* in the threats of *Senacherib* against Jerusalem (with other Nations that *Senacherib* vaunted that his Fathers had destroyed) nameth the children of Eden- which were at Telassar.

Vesf. 7.

But before I conclude where Eden it self lieth, it is necessary to describe those other Countries, which *Ezechiel* joyneth therewith, in the places before remembered, as, those of Sheba and Raamah. It is written in *Genesis* the tenth: *Moreover the sons of HAM were CUSH, &c. And the sons of CUSH were SEBA, and HAVILAH, and SABTAH, and RAAMAH, &c. And the sons of RAAMAH were SHEBA, &c. and anon after; CUSH begat NIMROD: so as Sheba was the grand-child of CUSH, and Nimrod the son of CUSH, whose elder brother was Sebah:* though some there are that conceive to the contrary, that *Nimrod* was the elder in valour and understanding, though not in time and precedence of birth; who inhabited that part of Shinar, where Babel was built; afterwards Babylonia. His brother *Raamah* or *Hagma* took that part adjoining to Shinar, toward the Sea side and Persian gulf (called afterwards *Raama* and *Sheba*, by the Father and his Sons, which possessed it.) For (saith *EZECHIEL*) *the merchants of Raamah and Sheba were thy merchants, they occupied in buye Fairs with the chief of all spices, and all precious stones, and gold.* So as Sheba was that Tract of Country, which patteth Arabia Deserta from Arabia Felix, and which joyneth to the Sea where Tygris and Euphrates fall out, and render themselves to the Ocean. This part, and the confining Country, *Strabo* calleth Cata-baria, where the best Myrrhe and Frankincense is gathered; which people have an interchange or trade with *Elana*, lying on the East side of the Persian gulf. By this it appeareth who were the Shebans, spoken of by *Ezechiel*, and said to have been the Merchants of Tyre, for gold, spices, and precious stones: of which they had not only plenty of their own, but were also furnished from that part of India (called *Elana*, according to *Strabo*) for the exchange of their Aromaticques, and other proper commodities.

Strabo l. 16.

For as *Strabo* reporteth out of *ERATOSTHENES*: *In Persiæ ora initio Infida est, in qua multi & pretiosi solumne gigantur: in aliis vero, clari & perliciidi lapilli.* *ERATOSTHENES* (saith *Strabo*) affirmeth, that in the beginning of the Persian gulf, there is an Island, in which there are many precious pearls bred: and in other, very clear and shining stones. Now, the difference between *Sheba*, the son of *Raamah*, and *Seba* the son of *CUSH*, is in this, That *Seba* is written with the Hebrew (*Samech*;) and *Sheba* with (*Schin*;) but

but whatsoever the difference may be in the Hebrew Orthography, their Countries and Habitations are divers. For *Sheba* is that which bordereth the Persian Sea, and *Saba* (whence the Queen of Saba) neighboured the Red Sea; and so that place of the 72 Psalms expounded *Reges Arabum & Saba*, hath in the Hebrew this sense: *Reges Sheba & Saba.*

The Shebans, *Ezechiel* nameth together with the Edenites, because they inhabited upon the Out-let of the same River, upon which the Edenites were seated: and so those of Sheba, towards the Sea-coast, and upon it past up the Country, by Tygris and Euphrates, being joyned in one maine stream, and so through the Region of Eden, which Tygris boundeth, thereby the better to convey their merchandize toward Tyre. And as the Cities of Charran, and Channeh, border Eden on the West and North-west: so doth Sheba on the South, and Chilmad on the North-east: Chilmad being a Region of the higher Media, as appeareth in the Chaldaean Paraphrast; which Country by the Geographers is called *Coromitena*, (L) placed by exchange for (R) which change the Hebrews also often use.

Thus much of those Countries which border Eden, and who altogether traded with the Tyrians: of which, the chief were the Edenites, inhabiting Telassar: for these *Senacherib* vaunted, that his Fathers had destroyed; and this place of Telassar lay most convenient, both to receive the Trade from Sheba & Arabia, and also to convey it over into Syria, and to Tyrus. Now to make these things the more plaine, we must remember, that before the death of *Senacherib*, many parts of the Babylonian Empire fell from his obedience, and after his death these Monarchies were utterly dis-joyned.

For it appeareth both in *Esay* the 37. and in the second of Kings, by the threats of *Rabshake*, the while the Army of Assyria lay before Jerusalem, that the Cities of Gofan, Haran, Kefeph, and the Edenites at Telassar, had resisted the Assyrians: though by them (in a fort) mastered and recovered. *Have the gods of the Nations delivered them whom my Fathers have destroyed as Gofan, and Haran, Kefeph, & the children of Eden, which were at Telassar?* But it appeared manifestly after *Senacherib's* death, that these Nations formerly contending, were then freed from the others subjection: for *Efar-Haddon* held Assyria, and *Merodach Baladan*, Babylonia. And after that the Army of *Senacherib*, commanded by *Rabshake* which lay before Jerusalem (*Ezechias* then reigning) while *Senacherib* was in Egypt, was by the Angel of God destroyed; the King of Babel sent to *Ezechias*, both to congratulate the recovery of his health, and his victory obtained over the Assyrians. After which overthrow, *Senacherib* himselfe was slain by his own sonnes in the Temple of his Idols, *Efar-Haddon* succeeding him in Assyria. To the Babylonian Ambassadors sent by *Merodach*, *Ezechias* shewed all his treasures, as well proper as consecrate, which invited the Kings of Babylon afterward to undertake their conquest and subversion. So as, the suspicion of warre increasing between Babylon and Assyria, the Edenites which inhabited the borders of Shinar towards the North, and towards Assyria, were employed to bear off the incursions of the Assyrians; and their Garrison-place was at Telassar: and the very word (*Telassar*) saith *Junius*, signifying as much as a bulwork against the Assyrians. This place *Hiero* *Polymachus* takes for Resem, others for Seleucia: but this Telassar is the same, which *Am. Marcellinus* in the History of Julian (whom he followed in the enterprise of Persia) calleth Thilutha in stead of Telassar, who describeth the exceeding strength thereof in his 24. Booke: it is seated in an Island of Euphrates upon a steep and unsailable Rocke, in so much as the Emperour Julian durst not attempt it; and therefore it was a convenient place for a Garrison against the Assyrians, being also a passage out of Mesopotamia into Babylonia, and in which the Edenites of the Country adjoining were lodged to defend the same. This place *Polymachus* calleth Teridara, having Kefeph (which he calleth Kefepha) on the left hand, and Canneh (which he calleth Thelmo-canne) on the right hand; not far from whence is also found the City of Mann-canne upon Tygris, and all these seated together, as *Esay* and *Ezechiel* have sored them. But the understanding of these places is the more difficult, because Assyria (which the Chaldeans call Atturia) and Mesopotamia, were so often confounded; the one taken for the other by interchange of Dominion. Assyria & Mesopotamia in Babylonian names transfigur'd (saith NIGER.) Assyria and Mesopotamia took the name of Babylonia. Lastly, it appeareth by those adjacent Regions by the Prophets named, in what part of the World Eden is seated

Asia Tab. 4.

seated, as, by *Charan* or *Haran* in Mesopotamia: also by *Cannah* and *d Joseph*, according to the opinion of *Vatablus*, who in these words translateth this place: *Plantaverat autem JEHOVAH Dens hortum in Eden, ab Oriente: The Lord God planted a Garden in Eden, Eastward: that is* (saith he in his Annotations) *Jussit ut nasci arbores in Eden, Regione Orientali, in finibus Arabia & Mesopotamiae: He commanded Trees to grow in Eden, an Eastern Region in the borders of Arabia and Mesopotamia.*

## §. X.

Of divers other testimonies of the Land of Eden; and that this is the Eden of Paradise.

Uti supra.

And for a more particular pointing out of this Eden, it seemes by the two Epistles of the Nestorian Christians, that inhabit Mesopotamia: that Epistles in the year 1552. they sent to the Pope about the confirming of their Patriarch, & *Andreas Masius* hath published them, translated out of Syriac into Latine. By these Epistles (I say) it seemes we may have some farther light for the proofe of that, which we have said about the Region of Eden in those parts. For in them both there is mention of the Island of Eden in the River Tigris, or at least, Tigris in both these Epistles is called the River of Eden. This Island, as *Masius* in his Preface to these Epistles saith, is commonly called *Gozoria* (as it were, the Island, by an eminency.) It hath (saith he) ten miles in circuit, and was sometimes walled round about, which name of the Island Eden may (doubtlesse) remaine to this day; though in the rest of the Region so called, this name be swallowed up with the fame of those flourishing kingdomes of Mesopotamia, Assyria, Babylonia, and Chaldaea. This Island of Eden hath up the River, and not far beyond it, the City of *Hafan-Cepha*, otherwise *Fortis Petra*: below it, it hath *Mofal* or *Mofel*, from which (as in that which followeth it shall appear out of *Masius*) it is not above twelve miles distant. Neither is it to trouble us, that *Mofal* or *Mofel*, by *Marius Niger* is remembred among the Cities higher up Tigris, in these words, *Juxta autem Tigrim, Civitates sunt Dorbeta prope Taurum montem, quae nunc Mofel dicitur magna sane, &c.* (that is) By Tigris are these Cities, *Dorbeta* neere unto mount *Taurus*: (which is now called *Mofel*) which is a great one, &c. This opinion of *Niger*, displacing *Mofel*, and making it to be *Dorbeta* (I say) needs not here to trouble us: seeing for this matter, the testimony of *Masius*, informed by the Christians that dwelt there (the Seat of whose Patriarch it is) ought to be of credit, avowing that this *Mofal* (or *Mozal*) is in the Confines of Mesopotamia and Assyria, seated upon Tigris, and in the neighbour-hood of Nineve; and that it is the famous *Seleucia Parthorum*. The Nestorian Christians in their former Epistle, call it *Attur*, in these words: *Ex omnibus Civitatibus & pagis quae sunt circum Civitatem Mofal (hoc est) Attur in vicinia Nineve; Of all the Cities and Townes which are about the Citie of Mozal (that is) Attur in the neighbour-hood of Nineve.* As also *Niger* acknowledgeth *Ctesiphon*, a City thereabout to be called *Assur*, (which is the same as *Attur*, after the Diallect of those Nations, which change *Sh* into *T*.) Neither is it much that he should mistake *Ctesiphon*, (which is not farre off Seleucia) for Seleucia, to be *Assur*. By this then we may come somewhat neere the end of our purpose. For the Isle of Eden, which lieth in the brest of Tigris, is but twelve miles from *Mofal*, & that ancient City, which *Ptolomy* and *Tacitus* call *Ninus*, and the Scriptures *Nineve*; *Philoftratus*, and *Simeon Sethi*, *Mofula*, and *John Lean*, *Mofal*, others *Mosse*, (though it be not the same with *Mofal*) is set but a little higher upon the same River of Tigris, neere *Mofal*: so that we are like to finde this Isle of Eden hereabout. For the same *Andreas Masius*, which placeth it above *Mofal*, makes it to be below *Hafan-cephe*, which is upon the same River of Tigris.

The only difficulty is this, that some perhaps may thinke, that the words of the Nestorians in both their Epistles, speak not of any Isle in Tigris, called the Isle of Eden, but of an Isle in Tigris, a River of Eden. But this sense of their words in my opinion seemeth the more improbable. And yet if this were the meaning here, we have a testimony from the Learned of those parts, that not only Euphrates, but also Tigris was a River of Eden, and that the name of Eden in those parts is not yet quite worn out, though the Region hath been subject to the same change, that all other Kingdoms of the world have been, and hath by conquest and corruption of other Languages, received new and differing names. For the South part of Eden, which stretcheth over Euphrates, was after

after the flood called *Shinar*, and then of the Tower of *Babel*, *Babylonia*; and the North part of Eden is that Tract of *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria* and *Armenia*, which imbraceth both the banks of Tigris betweene Mount *Taurus*, and *Seleucia*. And of this Region of Eden that ancient *Ethiopic* maketh mention, (not that latter *Ethiopic*, Disciple of *Gallinius*, otherwise by *Plutarch* and *Athenaeus* called *Istribi*, who liveth in Egypt in the Reigne of *Philadelphus*; but another of a farre higher and remote time) the same being made Latine out of the Greeke by Saint *Hierome*. And though by corruption of the ancient Copie it be written in *Ethiopic*, *Adonis* for *Edenis*; yet *Adonis* being a River of *Phoenicia*, cannot be understood to be the Region named by *Ethiopic*. For *Ethiopic* makes it a Country, and not a River, and joyneth it with *Mesopotamia* and *Ethiopia*, calling the land of *Chus Aethiopia*, after the Vulgar, an Septuagint. And lastly, the River which watereth the Regions; (saith *Aethiopic*) falleth into the Gulfe of *Persia*: which River he called *Armodius*, for *Tigris*; *Tigris* being but a name imposed for the swiftnesse thereof. And out of *Armenia* both *Tigris* and *Euphrates* have their originall: for out of Eden came a River, or Rivers, to water the Garden, both which Rivers (to wit *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, come out of *Armenia*, and both of them traverse *Mesopotamia*, Regions first of all knowne by the name of *Eden* for their beaute and fertilitye. And it is very probable, that *Eden* contained also some part of *Armenia*; and the excellent fertilitye thereof in divers places, is not unworthy the name of *Eden*. For in some part thereof (saith *Strabo*) the leaves are alway green, & therefore therein a perpetual Spring. Also *STEPHANUS de urbibus*, mentioneth the Citie of *Adana* upon *Euphrates*: and the name of *Eden* was in use in *Amos* time, though he speak not of *Eden* in the East, but of *Eden* in *Calofyria*. But to the end I may not burden the Readers patience with too long a Discourse, it may suffice to know, that *Euphrates* and *Tigris* (once joyned together; and afterward separate) are two of those four heads, into which these Rivers which are said to water the Garden of Paradise were divided: whose courses being knowne, *Eden* (out of which they are said to come) cannot be unknowne. Now that *Hiddekel* and *Perath* were *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, it is agreed by all: for the Seventie and all others convert *Perath* by *Euphrates*: & *Hiddekel* *Tigrim* omnes exponunt: and all men understand *Hiddekel* by *Tigris* (saith *Vatablus*). And because that which I have said of the Isle of Eden shall not be subject to the censure of false-invention, I have here-under set downe the words out of the two generall Epistles of the Nestorians, as *Masius* (ad verbum) hath converted them into Latine. The occasion of those Letters and Supplications to the Pope, were, that the Nestorian Christians, which inhabit *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, *Persia*, *Babylonia*, and have to this day (at least in Queen *Maries* time) they had fifteen Churches in one Citie called *Seleucia Parthorum*, or *Mofel* upon the River of *Tigris*; having no sufficient authoritie to chooße themselves a Patriarch (which cannot be done without four or three Metropolitan Bishops at least) sent to the Bishop of *Rome*, in the year of Christ 1552. (as afore-said) a Petition to obtain allowance unto such an Election as themselves had made: having three hundred year before that upon the like defect, sent one *Marius* thither to be confirmed; and in this negotiation they made knowne to the Bishop of *Rome* the state of the Christian Church in those parts: for upon the death of their Patriarch (who of a covetous desire to enrich himselfe, had forborn to institute Metropolitan Bishops, when the places fell void) they all assembled themselves together to consult of the Church-government. And because all the Patriarchs for an hundred yeares had been of one House and Family to the prejudice of the Church, and that there yet remained one Bishop of the same Stocke and Kindred, who aspired to the same dignitie which his Predecessors had held; the rest of the Professors refused to allow him. Upon which occasion, and for the choise of a Governour more sufficient, the Teachers in all the Churches assembled themselves. The words of the generall Epistle to the Pope are these, about the middle of the said Epistle: *Verum nos non acceptavimus, neque proclamavimus ipsum; sed subito convertimus ex omnibus locis Orientalibus, & ex omnibus Civitatibus & pagis quae sunt circum Civitatem Mofel (hoc est) Attur, in vicinia Nineve, ex Babylonia, ex Charra, ex Arbella, ex Insula quae est in medio Tigris, sumimus Eden, ex Tauris Persiae, ex Nisibi, &c.* which is: But we did neither accept of this man, neither pronounced him; but suddenly we assembled our selves out of all parts of the East, and out of all the Cities and Villages which are about *Mofel* (or *Attur*) neighbouring *Nineve*, & out of *Babylon*, *Carra*, *Arbella*, and out of the Island which lieth in the middle of *Ti-*

griz:

gris, a River of Eden, or rather, out of the Isle of Eden, which lyeth in the River Tygris. And in a second Epistle at the same time sent, they use these words: *Nec super sunt apud nos Metropolitae, quorum est ordinare Catholicum, sed soli pauci, Episcopi, Episcopus Arbelae, Episcopus Salmasi, Episcopus Adurbeganz; en vestigio convenimus in Insulam, quae est, intra Tygrum flumen, Eden, fecimusque compadium inter nos, &c.* (which is ) Neither are there remaining among us any Metropolitan Bishops, to whom it belongs to ordaine a Patriarch, but one-ly a few Bishops, as the Bishop of Arbelae, the Bishop of Salmasus, and the Bishop of Adurbeganz: but lo, we assembled speedily in the Island Eden, which is in Tygris, and agreed betwene our selves, &c.

Now this Island of Eden Masius describeth with other places; which being well conceived, the Nestorian Epistles, and the state of the Church may be in those parts (saith he) the better understood. And after he hath distinguished the foure sorts of Christians in those parts of the World, and in the South part of Africa, which he calleth Nestorians, Jacobites, Maronite, and Coptite he goeth on in these words: *Mox audita illius morte, concurrisset aiebant tumultuario in illam quam modo dixi Tygris Insulam, quae duodecim circiter passuum millibus supra Mosal posita, decem fere millia passuum suo ambitu continet, muris undique cincta, & a paucis aliis quam Christianis hominibus habitata* : which is, New bearing of the death of the Patriarch, (as those that came to Rome reported) they ran tumultuously together into that Island of Tygris or Eden before spoken of, which Island is situated about twelve miles above Mosal, containing very near ten miles in compass, and every where so environed with a wall, inhabited by few other men than Christians. And afterward he maketh a recapitulation of the Christian Churches; among the rest he addeth the Isle of Eden by the name of Geserta, Insula Tygris: five Geserta. Furthermore, describing the City of Hofan-cepha, or Fortis Petra, he placeth it supra praedictum Tygris, Insulam rupi asperae impostam; Above the asore said Island of Tygris, being seated on a steepe Rocke. Of this Island of Geserta, Andrew Thevet maketh mention in his tenth Booke of his generall Cosmographie in these words: *Geserta ou Gesire est au milieu de la Riviere du Tygre, & pense que c'est une terre des plus fertiles de toute l'Asie; Geserta or Gesire is in the middle of Tygris, the soyle the most fertile of all Asia.*

By this wee see that the ancient name of Eden liveth, and of that Eden which lyeth Eastward from Arabia Petrea, and the Desert where Moses wrote, and that Eden which bordereth Charran according to Ezechiel, and that Eden which is seated according to the assertion of the said Prophet, and joynd with those Nations of Reseph, Canneh and Charran, and the rest which traded with the Tyrians, and is found at this day in the parting of the two Regions of Assyria, and Babylonia, where the Edenites in Thelassar were garriioned to resist the Assyrians, whose displantation Senacherib vaunted of (as above written;) and lastly, the same Eden, which embraceth Tygris, and looketh on Euphrates, two of the knowne Rivers of those four, which are by all men ascribed to Paradise.

## §. XI.

Of the difficultie in the Text, which seemeth to make the foure Rivers to rise from one stream.

**B**UT it may be objected, that it is written in the Text That a River went out of Eden, and not Rivers in the plurall; which scruple Matthew Beroaldus hath thus answered in his Chronologie: The Latine Translation, saith hee, hath these words: *Et fluvius egrediebatur de loco voluptatis ad irrigandum Paradisum, qui inde dividebatur in quatuor capita: Quae verba melius consentiunt rei narratione, & ejusdem explicatione, si ita reddantur. Et fluvius erat egrediens ex Edene, (hoc est) fluvius procedebat ex Edene regione ad regnum pomarium, & inde dividebatur, & erat in quatuor capita: which is, And a River went out of the place of pleasure to water Paradise, and thence was divided into foure heads: Which words (saith Beroaldus) do better agree with the narration and explication of the place, if they be thus translated: And a River was going forth of Eden (that is) Rivers went forth, and ran out of the Region of Eden to water the Orchard; and from thence it was divided, and they became foure heads. The Tygrine differs from the Vulgar or Latine; for it converts it thus *Et fluvius egrediebatur de deliciis; And a River went out of pleasure, in stead of Eden; and the Latine addeth the word locus, or place, Et fluvius egrediebatur de loco voluptatis; And a River went out of the place**

of pleasure: and so the word (place) may rightly be referred to Eden, which was (of all other) a Region most delightful and fertile; and so also the word (inde) and thence, was divided, hath reference to the Countrey of Eden, and not to the Garden it self.

And for the word (River) for Rivers, it is usual among the Hebrews: for it is written: *Let the Earth bud forth the bud of the Herbe that seedeth Seede, the fruitfull Tree, &c.* Gen. I. II. Here the Hebrew useth the Singular for the Plural, Herbe and Tree, for Herbs and Trees; and againe, We eate of the fruit of the Tree, in stead of (Trees;) And thirdly, The man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of God; In medio ligni Paradisi; In the middle of the tree of the Garden, for (Trees.) And of this opinion is David Kimchi, and 10 Eutablar, who upon this place of Genesis say, that the Hebrewes doe often put the Singular for the Plurall, as illud, for unumquodque illorum, and he giveth an instance in this question it selfe, as, A River (for Rivers) went out of Eden.

And this answer out of divers of the Learned, may, not without good reason, be given to the objection, That Moses speaketh but of one River, from which the heads should divide themselves. Howbeit I deny not, but with as good (and perhaps better) reason, we may expound the foure heads, to be foure notable passages into famous Countries. And so we may take the word (River) Verse the tenth for one River, (to wit) Euphrates, as this name comprehendeth all the branches thereof. For this River, (after he is past the place, where we suppose Paradise to have bene,) divides it selfe, and ere long yeeldeth foure notable passages into severall Countries, though not all the way down stream, (for this is no where in the Text) where it is noted, that following the River downward, there is conveyance into the Countries named in the Text, though part of the way to one of the Countries (to wit, to Assyria) were up Tygris.

To this end the Text speaking of Hiddekel, as it riseth from the River of Eden, doth not say it compasseth or washeth the whole Region of Assyria, (as it had used this phrase of Pison and Gehon) but that it runneth toward Assyria. The first branch Pison, is Nahar-malcha, (by interpretation) *Basilus, or flumen regium*, which runneth into Tygris under Amamia; whence ariseth the name of *Pasi-tygris*, as it were *Piso-tygris*. This leadeth to the Land of *Havila* or *Susana*. The second branch *Gehon*, is that which 30 in Historians is *Nabar-sares* or *Narragas*; for *Nabar-ragas*: both which names signifie *flumen derivatum* (a River derived,) also *Acracamus, quasi Ranolus*, by reason of the froggie Fens which it maketh: this Gehon leadeth to the first seate of Chus, about the borders of Chaldaea and Arabia, and is lost at length in the Lakes of Chaldaa. The third branch Hiddekel, may be expounded the upper stream of Pison, or *Basilus* which runneth into Hiddekel, properly so called (that is, into Tygris) above Seleucia, where it sheweth a passage up Tygris into Assyria: where, because at length it is called Hiddekel or Tygris, having before no knowne proper name, the Text in this place calleth it Hiddekel from the beginning. The fourth Perath, or Euphrates, so called *per excellentiam*, being the body of the River Euphrates, which runneth through Babylon 40 and Otis. But, be it a River or Rivers, that come out of Eden, seeing that Tygris and Euphrates are noted in the Text, there can be no doubt, but that Paradise was not farre from these Rivers: for that Perath in Moses is Euphrates, there can be no question; and (indeed) as plaine it is that Hiddekel is Tygris. For Hiddekel goeth (saith Moses) Eastward towards Assur, as we find, that Tygris is the River of Assyria proprie dicta, whose chiefe City was Nineve, as in Genesis the tenth it is written: That out of that Land (to wit) Babylonia, Nimrod went into Assur, and builded Nineve, which was the chiefe City of Assyria.

And as for the kind of speech here used in the Text, speaking of four heads; though the heads of Rivers be (properly) their Fountains, yet here are they to be understood, so to be spoken of the beginning of their division from the first stream. *Caput aquae* (saith ULPIANUS) illud est, unde aqua nascitur, si ex fonte nascatur, sors; si ex flumine, vel ex lacu, prima initia, &c. If the beginning of the water be out of a Fountain, then is the Fountain taken for the head: if out of a Lake, then the Lake; and if from a main River any branch be separate and divided, then where that branch doth first bound it self with new banks, there is that part of the River, where the branch forsaketh the main stream, called the head of the River.

## §. XII.

Of the strange fertility and happiness of the Babylonian Soyle, as it is certaine that Eden was such.

IT may also be demanded, whether this Region of Eden, by us described, be of such fertility and beauty, as Eden the seat of Paradise was: which, if it be denied, then must we also consider, that there was no part of the Earth, that retained that fertility and pleasure, that it had before the curse: neither can we ascribe the same fruitfulness to any part of the Earth, nor the same virtue to any plant thereon growing, that they had before the flood; and therefore this Region of Eden may be now 10 no such flourishing Countrey, as it was when it was first created in his perfection. Yet this I finde written of it: First, in *Herodotus*, who was an eye-witness, and speaketh of the very place it self; for the Isle of Eden is but twelve miles or thereabout from Nineve, and so from Mosál. *Ex Euphrate exiens in Tygrim, alterum flumen, iuxta quod Urbs Ninus sita erat. Hæc regio, omnium quas nos vidimus, optima est, &c.* Where Euphrates runneth out into Tygris, not far from the place where Ninus is seated. This Region, of all that we have seen, is most excellent: and he addeth afterward; *Cerevis autem fructu præcædendo adeo ferax est, ut nunquam non ferè ducenta reddat, &c.* (that is) It is so fruitful in bringing forth Corne, that it yeeldeth two hundred fold: The leaves of Wheat and 20 Barley being almost foure fingers broad. As for the height of Miller and Sesame, they are even in length like unto Trees; which although I know to be true, yet I forbear to speake hereof, well knowing, that those things which are reported of this fruitfulness, will seeme very incredible to those, which never were in the Countrey of Babylon. They have commonly in all the Countrey Palm-Trees growing of their own accord, the most of them bearing fruit, out of which they make both Meats, and Wine, and Honey, ordering them as the Fig Trees. Thus far *Herodotus*.

To this Palm-tree, so much admired in the East India, *Strabo* and *Niger* adde a fourth excellency, which is, that it yeeldeth bread; *Ex quibus panem, & mel, & vinum, & acetum conficiunt; Of which these people make Bread, Wine, Honey, and Vinegar.* But *Antonius* the Eremitte findeth a fifth commodity, not inferior to any of those foure, which is, 30 that from this self-same Tree there is drawn a kinde of fine Flax, of which people make their garments, and with which in East India they prepare the cordage for their ships. And that this is true, *Athanasius* in the life of *Antonius* the eremite, confesseth, saying: That he received a Garment made thereof from the Eremitte himself, which he brought with him out of this Region. So therefore those Trees, which the East Indies so highly esteem and so much admire (as indeed the Earth yeeldeth no plant comparable to this) those Trees (I say) are in this upper Babylon, or Region of Eden, as common as any trees of the Field. *Sunt etiam* (saith *STRABO*) *pascua per omnem Regionem palma sua sponte nascentes; There are of palms over all the whole Region, growing of their own accord.* Of this place *Quintus Curtius* maketh this report: *Euntibus a parte levia Arabia (odorum fertilitate nobilis) regio campestris inter Tygrim & Euphratem, jacens tam ubere & pingui solo, ut a pascua repelli pecora dicantur, ne satietas perimat; (that is) As you travail on the left hand of Arabia (famous for plenty of sweet Odours) there lieth a Champain Countrey placed between Tygris and Euphrates, and so fruitful and fat a soile, that they are said to drive their Cattel from pasture, lest they should perish by satiety. Bis in anno segetes Babylonii fecant; The Babylonians cut their Corn twice a year (saith *Niger*.) And as Countries generally are more fruitful to the Southward, than in the Northern parts: so we may judge the excellency of this by that report which *Strabo* maketh of the South parts of America, which is the North border of Eden, or a part thereof. His words be these in the Latine: *Tota enim hæc regio frugibus & arboribus abundat manufactis, itemque 50 semper viuentibus; This Region aboundeth with pleasant fruits, and Trees alwaies greene:* which witnesseth a perpetual Spring, not found elsewhere but in the Indies onely, by reason of the Suns neighbourhood, the life and stirrer up of Nature in a perpetual activity. In brief, so great is the fertility of the ground, that the people are constrained twice to mow down their Corn fields, and a third time to eat them up with Sheep: which husbandry the Spaniards wanting in the Valley of Mexico, for the first forty years, could not make our kinde of Wheate beare seed, but it grew up as high as the Trees, and was fruitless. Besides, those fields are altogether without weeds*

saith

(saith *Pliny*) who addeth this singularity to that soyle, That the second year the very stubble (or rather falling downe of the feedes again) yeeldeth them a harvest of corne 1. 18. c. 17. without any further labour: his words are these, *Uberratis tantæ sunt sequenti anno sponte refectibilis fiat seges.*

## §. XIII.

Of the River Pijon, and the land of Havilah.

AFTER the discoverie of Eden, and the testimonies of the fertilitie thereof, it resteth 10 to prove that *Pijon* and *Gehon* are branches of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*: For, that the knowledge and certaintie of these two Rivers should trouble so many wise men, it is strange to me, seeing necessitie it selfe (*Tygris* and *Euphrates* being knowne) findeth them out: for *Euphrates*, or *Tygris*, or both, be that River or Rivers of Eden, which water Paradise; which river or rivers *Moses* witnesseth afterward divided into four heads, whereof the one is called *Pijon*, the other *Gehon* &c. Could there be a stranger fancie in the world, than when we find both these (namely) *Tygris* and *Euphrates* in *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*, to seeke the other two in *India* and *Egypt*, making the one *Ganges*, and the other *Nilus*? Two rivers as far distant as any of fame knowne or discovered in the world: the Scriptures making it so plain, that these Rivers were divided into foure 20 branches, and with the Scriptures, Nature, reason, and Experience bearing witness. There is no error, which hath not some slipperie and bad foundation, or some appearance of probability, resembling truth, which when men (who studie to be singular) finde out, (straining reason according to their fancies) they then publish to the world matter of contention and jangling; not doubting but in the variable deformitie of mens minds, to find some partakers or sectators, the better by their helpe to nurse and cherish such weak babes, as their own inventions have begotten.

But this mistaking (and first for the River of *Pijon*) seemeth to have grown out of the not-distinguishing of that Region in *India*, called *Havilah*, from *Havilah* which adjoyneth to *Babylonia*, afterward knowne by the name of *Susiana*. For *Havilah* upon *Tygris* 30 tooke name from *Havilah* the son of *Cush*; and *Havilah* in *India*, from *Havilah* the son of *Jofan*; the one remembered by *Moses* in the description of Paradise, the other *Gen. 10. 7.* where *Moses* setteth downe the generations of *Noah*, and his sons after the Flood. For the sons of *Cush* were *Seba*, *Havilah*, *Sabtah*, and *Raamah*; and the sons of *Jofan* were *Ophir*, and *Havilah* &c. of which latter (to wit) of *Ophir* and *Havilah* the sonnes of *Jofan*, that Island of *Ophir*, (whence *Salomon* had gold) and *Havilah* adjoyning, had their names. Now because *Ganges* is a great and a famous river of the East India, and *Havilah* a Countrey of the same, and is situated upon *Ganges*, hence it came that *Ganges* 10. 29. was taken for *Pijon*, which river is said by *Moses* to water the land of *Havilah*. Or perhaps it was supposed that those foure rivers named by *Moses* must of necessitie be foure of the greatest in the world; whence (supposing that *Ganges* was the next great and famous river after *Tygris* and *Euphrates*) they chose out this river to make one of the 40 foure. And yet certainly there is another river, whom in these respects they should rather have chosen than *Ganges*: for the river *Indus* on this side *India*, for beauty, for neerenesse, and for ability, giveth no way place to *Ganges*, but exceedeth it in all. And how can any reasonable man conceive, that *Ganges* can be one of the four heads, seeing *Indus* commeth between it and *Tygris*; and between *Tygris* and *Indus* is all that large Empire of *Persia*, consisting of many Kingdomes. And againe, farther towards the East, and beyond *Indus*, are all those ample Dominions of *India intra Gangem*, which lie between those two proud rivers of *Indus* and *Ganges*, now called the Kingdome of *Mogor*. So as if *Indus* be not accounted for any of the foure, because it is removed from *Tygris* by all the breadth of *Persia*, then how much lesse *Ganges*, which falleth into the Ocean little lesse than fortie degrees to the Eastward of *Indus*: Surely, whosoever readeth the storie of *Alexander*, shall finde, that there is no river in *Asia*, that can exceede *Indus*. For *Hydaspis* was of that breadth and depth, as *Alexander* thereon in great Gallies transported himselfe, and the greatest part of his armie, and in sayling down that branch of *Indus*, found it so large and deepe, and by reason thereof so great a billow, as it endangered his whole Fleet, which was ready to be swallowed up therein: *Hydaspis* (as aforesaid) being but one of many branches of *Indus*, comparable to it and as

E

great

great as it, having besides this, the Rivers of *Coas*, of *Suaftus*, *Acefiner*, *Adris* (otherwise *Hyrotis*, *Hiphalis*, and *Zaradus*, all which make but one *Indus*, and by it are swallowed up with all their children and companions, which being all incorporated and made one stream, it crosseth athward *Asia*, and then at *Cambaia* visiteth the Ocean Sea.

Gen. 2. 15.

But because *Pifon*, which compasseth *Havilah*, as also *Gehon*, which watereth *Cush*, must some-where be joynted with the rest in one body, or at least be found to proceed out of the same Country of *Eden*, out of which the other two heads doe proceed; out of doubt they cannot either the one or the other, be *Ganges*, or *Nilus*: for *Nilus* riseth in the uttermost of the South, and runneth Northward into the *Mediterranean* Sea; and the River *Ganges* riseth out of the mountain *Imaus*, or (as others will have it) *Caucasus*,<sup>10</sup> which divides the Northern *Scythia* from *India*, and runneth from North to South into the *Indian Ocean*. And as for *Perath* and *Hiddekel* (that is, *Euphrates* and *Tygris*) the one of them is begotten in *Armenia*, neer *Georgiana* or *Iberia*, the other is not far off in the same *Armenia*, by the *Gorgiean* mountains; so as *Ganges*, who only travaileth in her own *India*, and *Nilus* through *Ethiopia* and *Egypt*, never law the land of *Eden*, or joynted themselves in one channell, either with themselves, or with either of the other; and therefore could not at any time from thence be separated, or divided into four heads or branches, according to *Moses*.

Gen. 2. v. 12.

Therefore the River *Pifon*, which iricheth *Havilah*, is the same which by joyning it self with *Tygris*, was therefore called *Pisi-tygris*, or *Piso-Tygris*, of *Pifon* and *Tygris*, which<sup>20</sup> River watereth that *Havilah*, which *Havilah* the sonne of *Cush* gave name unto, and not *Havilah* of *India*, so called of *Havilah* the sonne of *Joſtan*, who inhabited with his brother *Ophir* in the East. And this *Havilah* of the *Cushites* had also Gold, *Bdellium*, and the Onyx stone. This *Bdellium* is a Tree of the bigneſſe of an Olive, whereof *Arabia* hath great plenty, which yeldeth a certaine Gum ſweet to ſmell to, but bitter in taſte, called alſo *Bdellium*. The Hebrews take the Load-stone for *Bdellium*. *Beroaldus* affirmeth, that *Bdela* in Hebrew ſignifieth pearl: (ſo doth *Engubinus*; and *Hierom* calls it *Oleaſter*: be it what it will, a tree bearing Gum or Pearle: *Havilah* or *Suſana* hath plenty of both. Now this Country of *Suſana* or *Havilah* stretcheth it ſelf towards the North as far as the Altars of *Hercules*, and from thence embraceth all the Tract of Land Southward,<sup>30</sup> as far as the *Perſian Gulfe*, on the Eaſt ſide thereof: from which Eaſt ſide had the *Shebans* (which traded with the City of *Tyre* according to *Ezechiel*) their great plenty of gold; which *Strabo* alſo witneſſeth, as was ſhewed before.

Strabo, Hap. de Per.

The Greeks had a conceit, that *Pifon* was *Danubius*: the *Rabbins* take it for *Nilus*. *Aben-Ezra* (ſaith *Hopkins*) out of *Rabbi Sandia*, tranſlateth *Pifon* into *Nilus*: But *Nilus* findeth the ſame impoſſibility that *Ganges* doth: and *Danubius* hath the Sea of *Helleſpont* and all *Asia* the leſſe between it and *Tygris*. Now *Pifon*, which runneth through *Havilah* or *Suſana*, doth to this day retain ſome ſigne of this name; for where it and *Tygris* embraceth each other under the City of *Apamia*, there doe they agree of a joynt and compounded name, and are called *Pifo-tygris*. And it is ſtrange unto me, that from<sup>40</sup> ſo great antiquitie there ſhould be found remaining any reſembling ſound of the firſt name: for *Babylon* it ſelf, which dwelleth ſo neer theſe Rivers, is by ſome writers known by the name of *Bandas*, as, by *Poſtellus*: by *Caſtaldus*, of *Baldueh*: by *Barins*, of *Bagdad*, and of *Bongedor*, by *Andrew Thevet*; and yet all thoſe that have lately ſcene it, call it *Bagdet*. To this River of *Pifon*, *Ptolomie* indeed with many others give the name of *Baſilus* or *Regius*, and *Gehon* they term *Mahar-Sarer*, and *Marias*, and *Barſares*. So is *Euphrates*, neer the Spring and Fountain, by *Strabo* and *Plinie* called *Pixicrates*: by *Junius*, *Puckperath*, out of the Hebrew (that is) The proſuſion, or coming forth of *Euphrates*: where it bre aketh through the mountain *Taurus*, it takes the name of *Onyrra*. *Plutarch* calls it *Medus* and *Zaranda*: the Hebrews *Parath*, (ſaith *Ar. Montanus*;) <sup>50</sup> *Pagninus*, *Perath*: *Joſephus*, *Phorab*, *Euſebius*, *Zozimus*: *Ammianus*, *Chalymnicus*: *Giliſtus* and *Coliminius* term it *Cobar*: which *Ezechiel* calleth *Chebar*; but this is but a branch of *Euphrates*. The *Aſſyrians* know it by the name of *Armalchar*, or *Nahor Malcha*: but now commonly it is called *Frat*.

The ſame conſuſion of names hath *Tygris*, as *Diglite*, and *Diglath*, *Seilax*, and *Sollax*: of the Hebrews it was called *Hiddekel*: now of the inhabitants *Tegil*.

But *Mercer* upon *Genefis* conceiveth rightly of theſe Rivers: for *Euphrates* and *Tygris* (ſaith he) ſtream into four branches; two of which keep their ancient names, and the other

other two are called *Pifon* and *Gehon*. The reaſon why theſe two Rivers joynted in one (below *Apamia*) loſe their names and are called *Piſi-tigris*, and the memory of *Euphrates* extinguiſhed, is, becauſe the beſt part of *Euphrates* running through the channell of *Gehon*, lieth into the lakes of *Chaldaea*, not far from *Ur*, the City of *Abraham*, and fall not entirely into the *Perſian Sea*, as *Tigris*, accompanied with *Piſon* doth.

This error that *Pifon* was *Ganges*, was firſt broched by *Joſephus*, whoſe fields, though they be fertile, yet are they exceeding full of weeds; and other men (who take his authority to be ſufficient in matter of deſcription, whereupon depended no other important conſequence) were not curious in the examination thereof. For *Epiphanius*,<sup>10</sup> *Auguſtine*, and *Hierome*, take this for currant; whereof it followed, that as *Pifon* was tranſported into the Eaſt India to finde out *Havilah*: ſo was *Gehon* drawn into Africa to compaſſe *Ethiopia*. But if *Havilah*, whereof *Moses* ſpeaketh in the deſcription of *Paradiſe*, be found to be a Region, adjoining to *Babylon* on the one ſide, and *Cuſh* (which is falſly interpreted *Ethiopia*) faſtned to it on the other ſide, we ſhall not need then to work wonders (that is) to impoſe upon men the transportation of Rivers, from one end of the World to the other, which (among other uſes) were made to tranſport men. Now it was in the valley of *Shinar*, where *Cuſh* the ſonne of *Ham* firſt ſate down with his ſonnes *Shebah*, *Havilah*, *Sabtah*, *Raamah*, *Nimrod*, &c. and of *Havilah*, the ſonne of *Cuſh*, did that Region take name, which *Pifon* compaſſeth; and the land (called *Cuſh*)<sup>20</sup> which *Gehon* watereth, took name of *Cuſh* himſelf. For as the ſonnes of *Joſtan*, *Ophir*, and *Havilah*, ſeated themſelves as near together as they could in *India*, ſo did the ſons of *Cuſh* in *Shinar*, or *Babylonia*, where *Nimrod* built *Babel*: for *Havilah*, or *Chavilah*, was firſt *Chuſea* of *Cuſh*; then *Chuſa*, *Suſa*, and *Suſiana*.

From this *Havilah* unto the Deſarts of *Sur*, did the *Iſraelites* and *Amalekites* poſſeſſ all the interjacent Countries: for *Saul* ſmote the *Amalekites* from *Havilah* to *Sur*: which *Sur*, the *Chaldaean* Paraphraſt converteth *Hagra*, and *Hagra* bordereth the Red Sea.<sup>1 Sam. 15. 7.</sup> But this was not meant from *Sur* upon the Red Sea, to *Havilah* in the Eaſt India, for *Saul* was no ſuch Travailer or Conquerour, and therefore *Havilah* muſt be found neerer home, where the ſonnes of *Imael* inhabited, and which Country *Saul* waſted:<sup>30</sup> for *Amalek* and the *Amalekites* poſſeſt that neck of Country, between the *Perſian Sea*, and the Red Sea; *Havilah* being the extreame of the one, towards the Eaſt, and *Sur* of the other, towards *Egypt* and the Weſt, leaving that great body of *Arabia ſelix* towards the South, and they ſpread themſelves with the *Midianites* and *Edumaeans*, from the Eaſt part, or backſide of the Holy Land, to the banks of *Euphrates*, comprizing the beſt part of *Arabia Petraea* and *Deſerta*.

## §. XIII.

Of the River *Gehon*, and the Land of *Cuſh*, and of the ill tranſlating of *Ethiopia* for *Cuſh*, 2 CHRON. 21. 16.

<sup>40</sup> NOW, as *Havilah* in the Eaſt India drew *Pifon* ſo far out of his way thither, ſo I ſay did *Cuſh* (being by the Seventy tranſlated *Ethiopia*) force *Gehon* into Africa. For *Cuſh* being taken for *Ethiopia* by the Greeks, whom the Latines followed, *Gehon* conſequently was eſteemed for *Nilus*. But *Ethiopians* are, as much as black or burnt faces, whoſe proper Country called *Thebaides*, lyeth to the Southward of all *Egypt*. And although there be many other Regions of *Ethiopians*, and far South in Africa, yet thoſe of *Thebaides* are thoſe ſo often remembered in the Egyptian ſtories, and out of which Nation they had many times their Kings of *Egypt*: all which *Ethiopians* are very neer, or elſe directly under the Equinoctiall line, which is very far from that Land inhabited by the *Chuſites*, who are neither black of colour, nor in any ſort neighbouring *Torrida Zona*. But this tranſlation of the Septuagint, *Pererius* doth qualifie in this manner: There are (ſaith he) two *Ethiopia*'s, the Eaſt, and the Weſt: and this diſtinction he findeth in *Strabo*, out of *Homer*. Now becauſe there is no colour to make *Chus* *Ethiopia* in Africa, *Pererius* will make *Chuſh* and the land of the *Chuſites* (which is *Arabia Petraea*, and a part of *Arabia* the Happy, with the Region of *Madian*) to be the Eaſt *Ethiopia*.

Now if it be granted, that *Chuſh* and the land of the *Chuſites* be that tract from *Sur* to *Havilah*, according to the Scriptures: *Habitavit ISMAEL ab Havilah usq; Sur, quæ reſpicit*<sup>Gen 25. 18.</sup> *Egyptum*

Ves. 16.

2 Chron. 14.9

Gen. 10. 11. 12.  
Exod. 17. 8.

10. 19.

Plin. l. 5. c. 8.

C. 2. v. 18.

Ex. 2. 21. v. 3.  
Num. 16. 1.

Egyptine introcuntibus Affyrios, Ismael dwelt from Havilah unto Sur, that is, towards Egypt, as thou goest toward Affyria. The same sufficeth to prove that Gehon cannot be Nilus, but a River which watereth Cush, and not Æthiopia. But this place of Scripture, *Habitavit Ismael, &c.* hath this sense: *Ismael dwelt from Havilah, which is the way of Affyria, or the Countrey bordering Affyria; and Sur, which lyeth toward Egypt, which is as much to say, as, The issues of Ismael (whereof there were twelve Princes) whom God had promised to make a great people, inhabited all those Regions between the border of Egypt and Affyria. And that they were (according to the word of God) so increased and multiplyed, it well appeared, when Zearah the Chusite, which others call Tharamba, brought an Armie of ten hundred thousand against Asa King of Judah. Which Armie came not out of Æthiopia beyond Egypt; for that had been a strange progresse for such a multitude, as ten hundred thousand, having so mighty a King as the King of Egypt, between Palestina and Æthiopia. But these were the Chusites, Amalekites, Madianites, Ismaelites, and Arabians. For it is written, that after Asa (strengthened by God) had defeated this world of an Armie, he in following his victory took some of the Cities of King Zearah round about, as Gerar. Now that Gerar is a Citie of the Æthiopians, it cannot be suspected: for these be the words of the scripture disproving it: And ABRAHAM departed thence toward the South Countrey, and dwelt between Kadeh and Sur, and sojourned in Gerar: Now Sur is that part upon which Moses and the Israelites first set their feet after they passed the Red Sea, where the Amalekites in *Rephidim* let them on, supposing that they had been weary, and unable to resist. Again, in the story of Isaac it is written: *Wherefore ISAAC went to ABIMELECH, and the Philistines unto Gerar:* and I am sure *Abimelech* and the Philistines were no Æthiopians. And lastly, *Moses* himselfe, where he describeth the bounds of Canaan, hath these words: *Then the border of the Canaanites was from Sydon, as thou comest to Gerar: for Sydon was the Frontier of Canaan towards the North, and Gerar by Gaza towards the South.* But indeed, howsoever *Peregrinus* doth with an honest excuse save his translation of Chus for Æthiopia, yet it appeareth plainly, that the Septuagint and *Josephus* did altogether mis-understand this place. And first, for *Homer*: East and West Æthiopia, they are both found elsewhere: for *Plinie* in his fifth Book and eighth Chapter, citeth *Homer* for an Author of these two Æthiopia's. But the East Æthiopia is that which compasseth Nilus to the South of Egypt, and is the South border thereof; now a part of the Emphyre of the Abyssines under *Prestor John*; And the West Æthiopia is that which joyneth it self with the River Niger, which we call Senega and Gambia: for thereabouts are these Æthiopians called *Perorsi*, *Dararies*, with divers other names, which *Plinie* numbred. But all these are in Africa, and beyond the Desarts thereof, saith *Plinie* out of *Homer*, *Agrippa*, and *Joba*; which Regions indeed I mean that of Niger, and that of *Prestor John*, and the *Troglodites* lye due East and West. But as for Cush, and the Region of the Ismaelites, &c. they are extended directly North from that Æthiopia, which is beyond Egypt. Now, that *Josephus* was exceeding grosse herein, it appeareth by that fiction which he hath of *Moses* when he served *Pharao*, in the Warres against the Æthiopians: for in that (to make Chus, Æthiopia) he transporteth Madian by miracle over the Red Sea, and beyond all Egypt, and setteth it in Æthiopia, as shall bee shewed more at large in the Chapter of the Worlds Plantation. Again, that Gehon was improperly translated Nilus, *Peregrinus* confesseth, and layeth it rather to the corruption of the Greek Copie, than otherwise. And whereas the Septuagint have converted this place of the Prophet *Jeremie*; And what hast thou now to doe in the way of Egypt, to drinke the water of Nilus? *Quid tibi vis in via Egypti, ut bibis aquam Gehon?* To this saith *Peregrinus*, *profecto hebraice ibi non est vox Gehon, sed Sichor, que significat nigrum & turbidum: Truly (saith *Peregrinus*) the word Gehon in this place, is not found in the Hebrew, but Sichor, which significeth black and troubled water.**

Furthermore, this is a manifest and unanswerable argument, that Chus was ill taken for Æthiopia. *Moses* married the daughter of *Jethro*, Prince and Priest of Madian, whom both the Greek and Latine call a Madianite, and not *Æthiopiassan*, as (with *Josephus*) the Geneva converts it, though it help it a little with a margall note. Now it is without dispute, that *Zipporah* was of the Countrey of Madian, which is that part of Arabia

Arabia Petraea, bordering the Red Sea; for it is written in the second of *Exodus*, that *Moses* fled from *Pharao* into the Land of Midian, and sate down by a Well, &c. and again in the third of *Exodus*; *When Moses kept the sheep of JETHRO, his Father in Law, Priest of Madian, &c.* Indeed these four Nations are every where mixt in the Scriptures, because they dwell confusedly together (to wit) the Madianites, the Ismaelites, the Amalekites, and the Chusites, which were all in one generall word, Arabians, and in the Scriptures sometimes called by one of these names, and sometimes by another; as in *Gen. 37. v. 25. 27.* & 28. that *Joseph* was sold to the Ismaelites; and in the same Chapter, *v. 36.* it is written, that the Madianites sold *Joseph* to *Potiphar*, *Pharao's* Steward. The Genevians, in a marginal note (to avoid this confounding of the Nations) say, that *Moses* wrote according to their opinion, who took the Madianites and Ismaelites to be all one. But *Moses* wrote not after any mans opinion, he wrote the truth; and these were all Arabians: & so in this very place it appeareth by their merchandize, which they brought with them, when they bought *Joseph*: for their Camels were laden with Spicery, and Balm, and Myrrhe, which are the trades of Arabia felix: from whence chiefly, and from the East India, all the World is served with Myrrhe and Frankincense; and their spices they received from the East side of the Arabian Gulf, as aforesaid. And in the 39. Chap. it is said: That *Potiphar* bought *Joseph* of the Ismaelites, which the Chaldaean Paraphrast in the same place calleth Arabians. Now, to make this the more manifest, it is written in the sixth of *Judges*, That when Israel had sown, then came up the Madianites, and the Amalekites, and they of the East, and came upon them: they of the East, were Arabians of the Desert; so as where before in the buying of *Joseph*, the Madianites and the Ismaelites were confused, here the Madianites and Amalekites are made one Nation. For in the prosecution of the Story of *Gedon*, the Madianites only are named, as comprehending both Nations; and in the eighth Chapter, *v. 24.* these Nations are all called Ismaelites, and neither Madianites nor Amalekites. As when *Gedon* desired that every man would give him the golden ear-rings, which they had taken after the victory against *Zeba* and *Zolomna*, Kings of Arabia, amounting to 1700. shekles of gold, it is written: *For they had golden ear-rings, because they were Ismaelites.* And these Ismaelites were a great and valiant Nation, and ever in action of War. *Mannus ejus contra omnes, & manns omnium contra eum; His hand (saith God of ISMAEL) shall be against all men, and every mans hand against him.* Of these Ismaelites come the *Mahometan Arabians*, though some Writers think *Mahomet* to be of the *Schenite*. And these Ismaelites, which inhabit chiefly in Cedar, and the Desarts of Sur and Pharan (saith *Josephus*) use poyson upon their Arrowes, as the Indians doe. Towards the South-east are the Madianites, and Chusites; and beyond them, towards the Desarts of Arabia, the Amalekites, and all are one Nation, and all Arabians.

Lastly, the ill translation of Æthiopia for Chus, is among other places, made most apparent in the second of *Chronicles*, in these words: *So the Lord stirred up against JEHO RAM the spirit of the Philistines, and the Arabians, which confine the Æthiopians;* so *Hierome* reads it: the Geneva translation hath it, which were besides the Æthiopians. Now how far it is off between the Philistines and the Negro's, or the Æthiopians, every man that looketh in a Map may judge. For the Philistines and Arabians do mixe and joyn with the Land of the Chusites, and are distant from Æthiopia about two and thirty, or three and thirtie degrees; and therefore not their next neighbours; but all Egypt, and the Desert of Sur and Pharan are between them. So as this place of the second of *Chronicles*, should have been translated in these words: *So the Lord stirred up against Jehoram, the spirits of the Philistines, and the Arabians, which confine and border upon the Chusites, who indeed are their next neighbours.* \* *Nulla superest dubitatio quin Æthiopia in sacris literis sit Arabia propinqua; There remaineth no doubt (saith Steuchius) but Æthiopia in the Scriptures, is taken for that Countrey which joyneth to Arabia.*

Now, may we think, is it probable, or possible, that *Moses* could be ignorant of Nilus? No, he knew it, no living man so well, and therefore would never have named Gehon, for Nilus, or Nilus for Gehon. Surely, if *Moses* had meant Nilus, when he named Gehon, he would have called the River (into which he was cast upon reeds, and preserved by God, working compassion in the daughter of *Pharao*) a River of Egypt, wherein he was born and bred, and wrought so many miracles. Besides, the River of Nilus is often named in the Scriptures, but never by the name of Gehon. And if *Moses* had told the



Plin. l. 5. c. 1.  
C. 23. v. 3.  
C. 2. v. 18.

Israelites, that Nilus had been a River of Paradise, they might justly have thought, that he had desired them: for they had lived there all daies of their lives, and found no such Paradise at all, nor any memory, or speech thereof, except we shall believe the paradise of Hesperides, where (saith *Plinie*) there was nothing found in his time, but wilde Olives in stead of golden Apples. But Nilus was twice called *Sichor*, once in *Isay*, and once in the Prophet *Jeremie*, and yet in those places it is not said to be a River of *Aethiopia*, but of *Egypt*. For in a word, the Israelites had never any communion or acquaintance with the *Aethiopians*, nor any intelligence, or trade, beyond *Egypt*, to the South; but the enemies which they had on the South, and East parts, were these Nations of the *Chusites*, *Philistines*, *Ismaelites*, *Amalekites*, and *Madianites*: who being often governed by many little Kings, or *Reguli*, were distinguished in names, according to the Fathers or heads of those Nations; but in one generall name were all *Arabians*. On the North side of Canaan, they were afflicted with the *Cœlofryians*, with the *Magogians*, *Tubalites*, and others their adherents. And thirdly within themselves, the Nations, which remained of the ancient *Canaanites*, held the strongest Cities upon the Seacoast (as *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Acon*, *Gaza*, and many others: yea, *Jerusalem* it self was withheld from *Israel* (from the daies of *Moses*, even unto the time of *David*) by the *Jebusites*.

That which now remaineth most difficultie, is, that it doth not appear that any part of *Gehon* watereth that part of Arabia the stony, which the *Chusites* inhabited in the times of the Kings of *Israel*: and in this Desart it was that *Matt: Beraldu* lost himself in seeking out Paradise: for he was driven (to my understanding) to create two Rivers, and call them *Gehon* and *Pison*; to the end that the one might water *Chus*, and the other *Havilah*; for I finde none such in rerum natura, as he hath described: by which Rivers he also includeth within Paradise, even Arabia the Desart.

And as he well proved that *Pison* was not *Ganges*, nor *Gehon*, *Nilus*; so where to find them else, where it seemeth he knew not. Certainly this River of *Gehon*, which he maketh to fall into the *Mediterran* at *Gaza*, and whose Springs he findeth farre East in Arabia, is but imaginary; for the Current by *Gaza* is but a small stream, rising between it and the Red Sea, whose head from *Gaza* it selfe is little more than twentie English miles, as shall appear hereafter. But questionless, hence it comes that many were mistaken. They all considered of the habitations of the *Chusites*, as they were planted when the state of *Israel* stood, and when it flourished, being then their near neighbours, and never looked back to the first seats and plantation of *Chus*. For after the Flood, *Chus* and his Children never rested, till they found the Valley of *Shinar*, in which, and near which himself, with his sons, first inhabited. *Havilah* took the River-side of *Tygris* chiefly on the East, which after his own name he called *Havilah*, (now *Susiana*;) *Raamah*, and *Sheba* farther down the River, in the entrance of Arabia felix. *NIMROD* seated himself in the best of the Valley, where he built *Babel*, whereof that Region had afterwards the name of *Babylonia*. *Chus* himself and his brother *Mixraim* first kept upon *Gehon*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, and in process of time, and as their people increased, they drew themselves more westerly towards the Red or Arabian Sea: from whence *Mixraim* past over into *Egypt*, in which Tract the *Chusites* remained for many years after. Now because there could be no such River found in Arabia the stonie, which they might entitle *Gehon*, they translated *Chus*, *Aethiopia*, and *Gehon*, *Nilus*. And if we doe examine this mistaking by example, we shall the better perceive it as it was. For let us suppose, that *Brute*, or whosoever else that first peopled this Island, had arrived upon the River of *Thames*, and called the Island after his name *Britannia*, it might be said that *Thames* or *Tems* was a River that watered *Britannia*: and when afterwards in process of time, the same *Brute* had also discovered and conquered *Scotland*, which he also intituled by the same name of *Britannia*, as terages might conclude that *Scotland* was no part thereof, because the River of *Tems* is not found therein. Or let us suppose that *Europa*, the Daughter of the King of *Tyre* in *Phœnicia*, gave the name to *Europe*, according to *Herodotus*, and that the first discoverers thereof arrived in the mouth of the River in *Thrace*, which then watered as much of *Europe*, as he first discovered, shall we in like sort resolve that *France*, *Spaine*, and *Italie*, &c. are no parts of *Europe*, because that River is not found in them, or any of them: in like manner was it said by *Moses* in his description of *Gehon*, that it watered the whole Land of *Chus*; but not the whole Land which

which the *Chusites* should, or might in future time conquer people, and inhabit, seeing in after-ages they became Lords of many Nations, and they might (perchance) have been Masters in time, (as the *Saracens*, which came of them, were) of a great part of the world. For, though the *Babylonian Empire* which took beginning in *Nimrod* the sonne of *Chus*, consisted at the first but of foure Cities, (to wit) *Babel*, *Erech*, *Acad*, and *Chalne*; yet we finde, that his Successors within a few years after, commanded all the whole World in effect: and the fame of *Babel* consumed the memorie of *Chusea*. For of this Tower of Confusion did all that Land take the name of *Babylonia*: and the greatness of that Empire, founded by *Nimrod* a younger son, obscured the name and nation of his father *Cush* in those parts untill they crept farther off, and in places not yet entitled, and farther from the *Babylonian Empire*, where the *Chusites* retained their names, which also they fastned to the Soile and Territories by themselves afterwards inhabited and held. And we may not thinke, that *Chus* or any of his, could in haste creepe through those desart Regions, which the length of 130. years after the Flood had (as it were) fortified with Thickets, and permitted every Bush and Bryar, Reede and Tree to joyn themselves (as it were) into one maine body and Forrest. For if we look with judgement and reason into the Worlds plantation, we shall finde, that every Family seated themselves as neare together as possibly they could; and though necessity enforced them, after they grew full of people, to spread themselves, and creepe out of *Shinar* or *Babylonia*; yet did they it with this advice, as that they might at all times resort and succour one another by River, the fields being then (without all doubt) impassable. So *Nimrod*, who out of wit and strength usurped dominion over the rest, fate down in the very confluence of all those Rivers, which watered Paradise: for thither it was to which the greatest troupes of *Noah's* children repaired; and from the same place whence Mankind had his beginning, from thence had they again their increase. The first Father of men *Adam*, had therein his former habitation. The second Father of Mankind *Noah*, began from thence his dispersion.

Now as *Nimrod* the youngest, yet strongest, made his choice of *Babel* (as aforesaid) which both *Tygris* and *Euphrates* cleaned and enriched; so did *Havilah* place himselfe upon *Piso-Tygris*, *Raamah* and his son *Sheba* farther downe upon the same River, on the Sea coast of Arabia: *Chus* himself upon *Gehon*, the fairest branch of *Euphrates*. And when they began to spread themselves farther off, yet they alwaies fastened themselves to the Rivers sides: for *Ninive*, *Charran*, *Reseph*, *Canneh*, *Ur* in *Chaldæa*, and the other first-peopled Cities, were all founded upon these navigable Rivers, or their branches, by which the one might give succour and assistance to the other, as is already often remembered.

## §. XV.

A conclusion by way of repetition of something spoken of before.

But now to conclude this dispute, it appeareth to me by the testimonies of the Scriptures, that Paradise was a place created by God, and a part of this our Earth and habitable World, seated in the lower part of the Region of *Eden*, afterward called *Aram siveiorum*, or *Mesopotamia*, which taketh into it also a portion of *Shinar* and *Armenia*: this Region standing in the most excellent temper of all other, (to wit) 35 degrees from the *Æquinoctial*, and 55 from the North-pole: in which climate the most excellent Wines, Fruits, Oyle, Graine of all sorts, are to this day found in abundance. And there is nothing that better proveth the excellency of this said soile and temper, than the abundant growing of the Palm-trees, without the care and labour of man. For whereinsoever the Earth, Nature, and the Sun can most vaunt that they have excelled, yet shall this Plant be the greatest wonder of all their works: This Tree alone giveth unto man whatsoever his life begetteth at Natures hand. And though it may be said, that these Trees are found both in the East and West Indies, which Countries are also blessed with a perpetual Spring and Summer, yet, lay downe by those pleasures and benefits the fearful and dangerous Thunders and Lightnings, the horrible and frequent Earthquakes, the dangerous diseases, the multitude of venomous Beasts and Worms, with other inconveniences; and then there will be found no comparison between one and the other.

What

What other excellencies this Garden of Paradise had, before God (for mans ingratitude and crueltie) cursed the Earth, we cannot judge; but I may safely think, that by how much *Adam* exceeded all living men in perfection, by being the immediate workmanship of God, by so much did that chosen and particular Garden exceed all parts of the Universal World, in which God had planted (that is) made to grow the Trees of Life, of Knowledge; Plants only proper, and becoming the Paradise, and garden of so great a Lord.

The sum of all this is; That whereas the eyes of men in this Scripture have been dim-sighted (some of them finding Paradise beyond our known World: some, above the middle region of the ayre: some, elevated neer the Moon: others, as far South as the Line, or as far North as the Pole, &c.) I hope that the reader will be sufficiently satisfied, that these were but like Castles in the aire, and in mens fancies, vainly imagined. For it was Eastward in Eden (saith *Moses*) Eastward, in respect of *Judæa*, that God planted this Garden; which Eden we finde in the Prophets where it was, and whereof the name (in some part) remaineth to this day. A river went out of Eden to water this Garden, and from thence divided it selfe into foure branches; and we finde that both *Tygris* and *Euphrates* swimming through Eden, do joyne in one, and afterward taking waies apart, do water *Chus* and *Havilah*, according to *Moses*, the true seats of *Chus* and his Sons being then in the Valley of Shinar, in which *Nimrod* built Babel. That *Pijon* was *Ganges*, the Scripture, reason, and experience teach the contrary: for that which was never joyned, cannot be divided; *Ganges*, which inhabiteth India, cannot be a branch of the rivers of Eden; That *Cehon* was *Nilus*, the same distance maketh the same impossibility; and this river is a greater stranger to *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, than *Ganges* is: for although there are between *Tygris* and *Ganges* above four thousand miles, yet they both rise in the same quarter of the World; but *Nilus* is begotten in the Mountains of the Moon, almost as far off as the Cape of good hope, and falleth into the Mediterran Sea; and *Euphrates* distilleth out of the Mountains of Armenia, and falleth into the Gulf of Persia: the one riseth in the South, and travaileth North: the other riseth in the North, and runneth South, threecore and three degrees the one from the other. In this lease following, I have added a *Chorographical* description of this terrestrial Paradise, that the reader may thereby the better conceive the preceding Discourse; and this is the reward I looke for, that my labour may but receive an allowance suspended, until such time as this description of mine be reprieved by a better.

#### CHAP. IV.

Of the two chief Trees in the Garden of Paradise.

##### §. I.

That the tree of Life was a material tree; and in what sense it is to be taken, that man by his eating the forbidden fruit, is made subject to death.

For eating the forbidden fruit of the tree of Knowledge was *Adam* driven out of Paradise, in *exilium* *vitæ* *temporalis*, into the banishment of temporal life, saith *Zeda*.

That these Trees of Life and Knowledge were material Trees (though Figures of the Law and of the Gospel) it is not doubted by the most religious and learned Writers: although the wits of men, which are so volatile, as nothing can fix them, and so slippery, as nothing can fasten them, have in this also delivered to the World, so an imaginary doctrine.

The Tree of Life (say the *Hebrews*) hath a plural construction, and is to be understood, *Lignum vitarum*, the tree of lives, because the fruit thereof had a property, to preserve both the growing, sensitive, and rational life of man; and not onely (but for *Adam*'s transgression) had prolonged his own daies, but also given a durable continuance to all posterity; and that, so long, as a body compounded of Elements could last.

And although it is hard to think, that flesh and blood could be immortal, but that it must once perish and rot, by the unchanged Law of God imposed on his creatures,

Man

Man notwithstanding) should have enjoyed thereby a long, beautiful, and ungrrieved life: after which (according to the opinion of most Divines) he should have been translated, as *Enoch* was. And as before the Flood, the daies of men had the long measure of eight hundred or nine hundred years; and soon after the flood, of two hundred years and upwards, even to five hundred: so if *Adam* had not disobeyed Gods first and easie Commandment, the lives of men on earth might have continued double, treble, or quadruple to any of the longest times of the first age, as many learned men have conceived. *Chrysostome*, *Rupertus Tostatus*, and others were of belief, that (but for *Adams* fall and transgression) *Adam* and his Posterity had been immortal. But such is the infinite Wisdom of God, as he foresaw that the earth could not have contained Mankind; or else, that millions of souls must have been ungenerated, and have had no being, if the first number, wherewith the Earth was replenished, had abode thereon for ever: and therefore that of *Chrysostome* must be understood of immortality of bodies, which should have been translated and glorified.

But of what kinde or Species this Tree of Life was, no man hath taken on him to teach: in which respect many have conceived, that the same was not material, but a meer Allegorie, taking their strength out of *Solomon*, where Wisdom is compared to the Tree of Life, and from other places, where also *Christ* is called the Tree of Life; and out of the *Apocalypse*, I will give to him that overcometh, to eat of the Tree of Life which is in the Paradise of God. But to this place Saint *Augustine*'s answer may suffice, (which is) That the one doth not exclude the other, but that, as there was a terrestrial Paradise, so there was a celestiall. For although *Agar* and *Sara* were Figures of the Old, and New Testament, yet to think that they were not Women, and the Maid and Wife of *Abraham*, were meer foolishness. And so in this place the sense of the Scripture is manifest. For God brought out of the earth every Tree faire to the sight, and sweet to taste; the Tree also of Life in the midst of the Garden: which sheweth, that among the trees, which the Earth by Gods commandment produced, the tree of Life was one, and that the fruit thereof was also to be eaten. The report of this Tree was also brought to the ancient Poets: for as from the indigested matter or Chaos, *Hesiodus*, *Homer*, *Ovid*, and others, so from the invention of the created World; so from the Garden of Paradise they took the Plat-form of the Orchard of *Alcinous*, and another of the *Hesperides*: and from the Tree of Life, their *Neêar* and *Ambrosia*; for *Neêar*, according to *Suidas*, signifieth making young, and *Ambrosia*, immortality; and therefore said to be the meat and drinke of the gods.

##### §. II.

Of *BECANUS* his opinion, that the Tree of knowledge was *Ficus Indica*.

Now for the Tree of Knowledge of good and evil, some men have presumed farther, especially *Goropius Becanus*, who giveth himselfe the honour to have found out the kind of this Tree, which none of the Writers of former times could ever guess at, whereat *Goropius* much marvelled. But as he had an inventive brain, so there never lived any man, that believed better thereof, and of himself. Surely, howsoever his opinion may be valued, yet he usurpeth the praise due to others, at least if the invention be at that price at which he setteth it. For *Moses Bar-Cephais* fastened on this conjecture above six hundred years before *Becanus* was born: and *Bar-Cephais* himselfe referreth the invention to an antiquity more remote, citing for his Author *Philoxenus Maburgensis*, and others, whose very words *Goropius* useth, both concerning the Tree, and the reasons wherewith he would induce other men to that belief. For *Moses Bar-Cephais* in his Treatise of Paradise (the first Part and fol. 48.) saith, That the Tree of Knowledge was *Ficus Indica*, The Indian Fig-Tree; of which the greatest plenty (saith *Becanus*) are found upon the banks of *Acefines*, one of the Rivers which falleth into *Indus*, where *Alexander* built his Fleet of Gallies, in or neer the Kingdom of *Porus*.

This Tree beareth a fruit of the bigness of a great Peaze, or (as *Plinie* reporteth) somewhat bigger; and that it is a tree, *sempër ferens; always planting it self*; that it spreadeth it self so far abroad, as that a troupe of horsemen may hide themselves under it. *Strabo* saith, that it hath branches bending downwards, and leaves no less than a field.

*Aristobolus*



*Aristobolus* affirmeth, that fifty Horsemen may shadow themselves under one of these Trees. *Onciscritus* raiseth this number to four hundred. This tree (saith *Theophrastus*) exceeded all other in bigness, which also *Plinie* and *Onciscritus* confirm: to the trunk of which, these Authors give such a magnitude, as I shame to repeat. But it may be, they all speak by an ill-understood report. For this Indian Fig-tree is not so rare a plant, as *Becanus* conceiveth, who because he found it no where else, would needs draw the Garden of Paradise to the Tree, and set it by the River *Accefines*. But many parts of the world have them, and I my self have seen twenty thousand of them in one Valley, not far from *Paria* in *America*. They grow in moist grounds, and in this manner: After they are first shot up some twenty or thirty foot in length (some more, some less, according to the soile) they spread a very large top, having no bough nor twig in the trunk or stem: for from the utmost end of the head branches there issueth out a gummy juyce, which hangeth downward like a cord or sinew, and within a few moneths reacheth the ground; which it no sooner toucheth but it taketh root, and then being filled both from the top boughs, and from his own proper roote, this cord maketh it self a Tree exceeding hastily. From the utmost boughs of these young Trees there fall again the like cords, which in one year and less (in that World of a perpetual Spring) become also trees of the bigness of the neather part of a Lance, and as straight as art or nature can make any thing, casting such a shade, and making such a kinde of Grove, as no other Tree in the world can do. Now, one of these Trees considered with all his young ones, may (indeed) shrowd foure hundred or foure thousand Horsemen, if they please; for they cover whole Vallies of ground where these Trees grow near the Sea-bank, as they do by thousands in the inner parts of *Trinidad*. The cords which fall down over the banks into the Sea, shooting alway downward to find root under water, are in those Seas of the Indies, where Oysters breed, entangled in their beds, so as by pulling up one of these cords out of the Sea, I have seen five hundred Oysters hanging in a heap thereon; whereof the report came, That Oysters grew on Trees in *India*. But that they beare any such huge leaves, or any such delicate fruit, I could never finde, and yet I have travailed a dozen miles together under them: but to returne to *Goropius Becanus*. This Tree (saith he) was good for meat and pleasing to the sight, as the Tree of knowledge of good and evil is described to be.

Secondly, This Tree having so huge a trunk (as the former Authours report, and *Becanus* believeth) it was in this Tree that *Adam* and *Eve* hid themselves from the presence of God; for no other tree (saith he) could contain them. But first it is certaine, that this Tree hath no extraordinary magnitude, as touching the trunk or stem, for among ten thousand of them it is hard to finde any one bigger than the rest, and these are all but of a mean size. Secondly, the words of *Moses* translated, *in medio ligni*, are by all the Interpreters understood in the plural number (that is) in the midst of the Trees. But his third argument (or rather the argument of *Moses Bar-Cephos*, word for word) is, That when *Adam* and *Eve* found themselves naked, they made them breeches of Fig-leaves; which proveth (indeed) that either the tree it selfe was a Fig-tree, or that a Fig-tree grew neare it: because *Adam* being posselt with shame, did not run up and downe the Garden to seeke out leaves to cover him, but found them in the place it selfe; and these leaves of all other were most commodious by reason of their largeness; which *Plinie* avoweth in these words; *Latitudo foliorum pelte effigiem Amazonie habet*; The breadth of the leaves hath the shape of *Amazonian* shield: which also *Theophrast* confirmeth; the form of which Targets *Virgil* toucheth:

*Ducit Amazonidum lunatis agmina peltis*  
PENTHESILAEA furcens.

The Amazons with Crescent-formed shield  
PENTHESILAEA leads into the field.

Here *Becanus* desireth to be believed, or rather threatmeth us all that reade him, to give credit to this his borrowed discovery, using this confident (or rather cholerick) speech: *Quis erit tam impudenter obstinatus, si hæc à nobis de sicu hac ex antiquis scriptoribus cum MOISIS narratione comparet, ut audeat dicere aliam arborem inveniri posse, que cum illa magis quadret? Who will be so impudently obstinate, if he compare these things which*

we have reported of this Fig-tree, and out of ancient Writers delivered, with the narration of MOSES, as to dare to avow, that any other tree can be found, which doth more properly answer, or agree therewith? But for my self, because I neither finde this Tree, sorting in body, in largeness of leaves, nor in fruit to this report, I rather incline to the opinion of *Philo*. That the Earth never brought forth any of these trees neither before nor after; but I leave every man to his owne belief, for the matter is of no great weight as touching his kinde; onely thereby, and by the easie Commandment by God given to *Adam*, to forbear to feed thereon, it pleased God to make trial of his obedience: *Prohibita, non propter aliud, quàm ad commendandum puræ ac simplicis obedientie bonum; Angell. de Civit. Dei, lib. 13. c. 20.* 10 Being forbidden, not for any other respect, than thereby to commend the goodness of pure and simple Obedience.

## §. III.

OF BECANUS his not unwitty allegorizing of the story of his *Ficus Indica*.

BUT in this I must do *Becanus* right, that he hath very wittily allegorized this Tree, allowing his supposition of the Tree it selfe to be true. The effects whereof, because his discourses are exceeding ample, I have gathered in these few words. As this Tree (saith he) so did Man grow straight and upright towards God, until such time as he had transgressed and broken the Commandment of his Creator; and then like unto the boughs of this tree, he began to bend downward, and stooped toward the earth, which all the rest of *Adam's* posterity after him have done, rooting themselves therein, and fastning themselves to this corrupt world. The exceeding umbragiousness of this tree, he compareth to the dark and shadowed life of man, through which the Sun of justice being not able to pierce, we have all remained in the shadow of death, till it pleased *Christ* to climbe the tree of the Crofs for our enlightning and redemption. The little fruit which it beareth, and which is hard to finde among so many large leaves, may be compared (saith he) to the little virtue, and unperceived knowledge among so large vanities, which obscure and shadow it over. And as this fruit is exceeding sweet, and delicate to the taste and palate: so are the delights and pleasures of the world most pleasing, while they dure. But as all those things which are most mellifluous, are soonest changed into choler and bitterness: so are our vanities and pleasures converted into the bitterest sorrows and repentances. That the leaves are so exceeding large, the fruit (for such leaves) exceeding little, in this, by comparison we behold (saith he) the many cares and great labours of worldly men, their sollicitude, their outward shews, and publike ostentation, their apparent pride and large vanities; and if we seek for the fruit, which ought to be their virtuous and pious actions, we finde it of the bigness of the smallest peaze; glory, to all the world apparent; goodness, to all the world invisible. And furthermore, as the leaves, body and boughs of this Tree, by so much exceed all other Plants, as the greatest men of power and worldly abilities surpass the meanest: so is the little fruit of such men, and such trees, rather fitting and becoming the unworthiest Shrub, and humblest Bryar, or the poorest and basest Man, than such a flourishing stateliness, and magnitude. Lastly, whereas *Adam*, after he had disobeyed God, and beheld his owne nakedness and shame, sought for leaves to cover himselfe withal: this may serve to put us in minde of his and our sins, as often as we put on our garments, to cover and adorne our rotten and mortal bodies: to pamper and maintain which, we use so many uncharitable and cruel practices in this world.

## §. IV.

OF the names of the tree of Knowledge of good and evil: with some other notes touching the story of *ADAM's* sin.

NOW, as touching the sense of this tree of Knowledge of good and evil, and what operation the fruit thereof had, and as touching the propertie of the Tree it selfe, *Moses Bar-Cephos* an ancient Syrian Doctor (translated by *M. J. M.*) giveth this judgement: That the fruit of this Tree had no such virtue or quality,

as that by the tasting thereof, there was any such knowledge created in Adam, as if he had been ignorant before; but as *Jurinus* also noteth: *Arbor scientie boni & mali (id est) experientie boni & mali ab eventu.* The Tree of knowledge of good and evil (that is) the experience of good and evil by the event. For thus much we may conceive, that Adam being made (according to the Hebrew phrase) by the workmanship of Gods owne hand, in greater perfection than ever any man was produced by generation, being (as it were) the created Plant, out of whose seed, all men living have growne up; and having received immortalitye from the breath or spirit of God; he could not (for these respects) be ignorant, that the disobeying of Gods commandment was the fearefullest evil, and the observation of his precepts the happiest good. But as men in perfect health do (notwithstanding) conceive, that sickness is grievous, and yet in no such degree of torment, as by the suffering and experience in themselves they afterwards witness: so was it with Adam, who could not be ignorant of the punishments, due to neglect and disobedience; and yet felt by the prooffe thereof in himselfe another terror than he had fore-thought, or could imagine. For looking into the glasse of his own guiltie soule, he beheld therein the horror of Gods judgements, so as he then knew, he feelingly knew, and had triall of the late good, which could not be prized, and of the new purchased evil, which could not be exprest. He then saw himselfe naked both in Body and mind; that is, deprived of Gods grace and former felicitie: and therefore was this tree called the tree of Knowledge, and not because the fruit thereof had any such operation by any selfe quality or effect: for the same phrase is used in many places of the Scriptures, and names are given to Signes and Sacraments, as to acts performed, and things done. In such sort, as this tree was called the tree of Knowledge, because of the event, as is aforesaid: so was the Well of contention therefore called *Esek*, and the Well of hatred *Sinath*, because the Herdsmen of *Isaac* and *Gerar* contended for them: and the heape of Stones called the heape of witness, between *Jacob* and *Laban*; not that the stones bare witness, but for a memorie of the covenant. So *Jacob* called the house of God *Bethel*; and *Hagar*, the Well in the Desert, *Viventis*, & *videntis*.

But Adam being both betrayed and mastered by his affections, ambitious of a farther knowledge than he had perceived in himselfe, and looking but slightly (as all his issues doe) into the miseries and sorrowes incident, and greatly affecting the supposed glory which he might obtaine by tasting the fruit forbidden, he was transported and blowne forward, by the gentle winde of pleasing persuasions, unawares; his progression being strengthened by the subtile arguments of *Sathan*, who laboured to poyson mankind in the very root, which he moistened with the liquor of the same ambition, by which himselfe perished for ever.

But what meanes did the Divell find out, or what instruments did his owne subtilty present him, as fittest and aptest to work this mischief by? even the unquiet vanity of the woman; so as by Adams hearkning to the voice of his wife, contrarie to the expresse commandment of the living God, Mankind by that her incantation became the subject of labour, sorrow, and death: the woman being given to man for a comforter and companion, but not for a counsellor. But because thou hast obeyed the voyce of thy wife &c. (said God himselfe) *Cursed is the earth for thy sake, in sorrow shalt thou eat of it all thy life.* It is also to be noted, by whom the woman was tempted? even by the most ugly and unworthy of all beasts, into whom the Divell entred and perfwaded.

Secondly, what was the motive of her disobedience? even a desire to know what was most unfitting her knowledge; an affection which hath ever since remained in all the posterity of her sex. Thirdly, what was it that moved the man to yeild to her persuasions? even the same cause which hath moved all men since to the like consent; namely, an unwillingnesse to grieve her and make her sad, lest she should pine and be overcome with sorrow. But if Adam in the state of perfection, and *Solomon* the son of *David*, Gods chosen servant, and himselfe a man endowed with the greatest wisdomed, did both of them disobey their Creator, by the persuasion and for the love they bare to a woman, it is not so wonderfull as lamentable, that other men in succeeding ages have been allured to so many inconvenient and wicked practices by the persuasions of their wives, or other beloved darlings, who cover over and shadow many malicious purposes with a counterfeir passion of dissimulate sorrow and unquietnesse.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

Of divers memorable things betwene the fall of ADAM, and the Flood of NOAH.

## §. I.

Of the cause and the revenge of CAINS sinne: and of his going out from God.

**T**He same Pride and Ambition which began in Angels, and afterward possessed Adam, Cain also inherited: for Cain (envious of the acceptance of his Brothers Prayer and Sacrifice) slew him, making himselfe the first Murtherer, and his Brother the first Martyr: the revenge of which unnaturall Murther, although it pleased God to mitigate, when Cain cried out that his punishment was greater than he could beare. For the same offence chiefly (where with the Sons of Adam, as it were, urged and provoked God) he destroyed all Mankind, but Noah and his Family: for it is written, *The Earth also was corrupt before God: of which* Gen. 5. v. 11, 13, *in the same place Moses giveth a reason; for saith he, The Earth was filled with cruelty: and anon after, God himselfe made the cause knowne unto Noah, saying, An end of all flesh is come before me, for the Earth is filled with cruelty through them, and behold, I will destroy them with the Earth, or from the Earth.* Neither was this cruelty meant to have been taking away the lives of men onely, but in all sorts of Injustice and Oppression. After this Murther of ABEL, CAIN went out from the presence of the Lord, and dwelt in the Land of Gen. 4. 16. *Nod, towards the East-side of Eden:* in which words The going out of Cain from the presence of the Lord, is not to be understood after the literall sense, God being wholly in all parts of the World: *Totus in celo est, totus in terra non alternis temporibus, sed utrimq; simul;* God (saith S. AUGUSTINE) is wholly in Heaven, and wholly in Earth, not by entering changed times, but all at once; And that this is true, David witnesseth: *If I be in Heaven* Psal. 139. 81. *(saith DAVID) thou art there; in Hell, thou art there also.* But what is meant thereby? *Ex-30* *it a facie Dei* (saith CHRYSOSTOME) CAIN went out from the presence of the Lord (that is) he was left of God, disfavoured and bereaved of his protection.

## §. II.

Of CAINS dwelling in the Land of Nod: and of his City Enoch.

**T**His word Nod or Naid, S. Hierome and many others understand to signifie wandering or uncertaine habitation: vexation or agitation, saith *Jurinus*; not by entering convert it otherwise, and take Nod for the proper name of a Countrey, and so doth *Josephus*. But it seemeth to me, that Cain was rather a Vagabond or Wanderer in his cogitations, than any thing else, and that his thoughts and conscience had no quiet or rest, in regard of the Murther committed, justly fearing (by his own words) the like violence: *And who soever findeth me (saith CAIN) shall slay me.* Now that Nod or Naid was a Region wherein Cain inhabited, appeareth by the word (dwelt) for dwelling signifies an abiding: and we call those people Wanderers and Vagabonds that have no dwelling place. And to make this dwelling and abiding more manifest, *Moses* teacheth in what part of the Earth this his habitation was, which he affirmeth towards the East-side of Eden. Secondly it is said by *Moses*, that after Cain departed from the presence or favour of God, he built a City, and called it by the name of his first-born, *Enoch*; which sheweth that he feared to wander, and rather sought to fortifie himselfe against revenge. *Cyrillus* saith, that Cain and Abel were figures of Christ, and of the Jewes; and that as Cain after that he had slain Abel unjustly, had thenceforth no certain abiding in the World: so the Jewes after they had crucified the Son of God, became Runnagates: and it is true, that the Jewes had never since any certain Estate, Common-wealth, or Prince of their owne upon the Earth. Now this Land of Nod, *Jurinus* taketh to bein Arabia Deserta, a Region of Nomades; but Arabia the Desert is not Eastward, or on the East part of Eden, neither are these Nomades any particular People or Nation. For all these, in what part of the World soever, which in old time lived by Pastorage, and fed (as we

34.

1

Quotidie ali-  
quid in hoc ma-  
gno orbe muta-  
tur, nova urbi-  
bus fundamenta  
jaciuntur, nova  
Gentium nomi-  
na (extinglis  
nominibus prio-  
ribus oriuntur.  
Seneca ad Al-  
binum.  
\* Plin. l. 6. c. 9.  
11. & 16.  
Mell. l. c. 8.  
Strabo lib 11.  
Val. Flacc. l. 6.  
Lucan. l. 3. v. 37.  
V. 2.

*Plin. l.6.c.4,5-  
Ptol.tab.Afr.2*

And besides these severall Nations of the Henochii, *Stephams* findeth a Region called *Henochia*, and the same also in the East, with divers mountains about *Bactria* and *Sogdiana*, of the same name. Only the *Grecians* (according to their fabulous inventions of all things else) out of the word (*Heniochi*) which signifieth Carts or Coach-men, make these Nations to have sprung from the Waggoners of *Caster* and *Pollux* (to wit) *Amphiter* and *Telchir*, who attended them in the enterprise of *Jafon* into Colchis. and though I do not deny, but that *Jafon* with other Greeks ranged the coasts of Asia the lefts in an open Boat or kind of small Galley, \* of whom I shall speake in his own time: yet no man doubteth but that the Tale of the Golden Fleece was for the most part Poeticall; and withall that in such an open Boat, which could hardly carry their owne Rowers, being 54. there was no place, and less use of Coach-horses or Waggoners.

of MOSES his omitting sundry things concerning CAINS Generation.

And where it is written, as of *Cain*, that he built *Enoch*, so of *Solomon*, that hee built the Temple of *Jerusalem*; yet it is well known of *Solomon*, that he employed in that Work 150000. labourers: for this phrase or speech is common with our selves to say, the King invaded, when he caused an invasion to be made: & hee built, when he commanded such a building. And therefore seeing that we find that *Moses* had no regard to the ages, birth, or death of any of *Cain's* issues, it is not to be marvelled at, why hee also

Gen. 4. 17. passeth over in a word the building of *Enoch*, without addition of any circumstance: for of *Cain*, *Moses* writeth in this manner: *Cain* also knew his Wife, who conceived and bare *Enoch*, and he built a City, and called the name of the City after the name of his Sonne *Enoch*. And to *Enoch* was borne *Iradd*, and *Iradd* begat *Mehujael*, and *Mehujael* begat *Methusael*, and *Methusael* *Lamech*.

E. S. V. S. Now of *Seth*, *Moses* writeth far otherwise, and in this manner. And *SETH* lived an hundred and five yeares, and begat *Enoch*, and *SETH* lived after he begat *Enoch* 807. yeares, and begat sonnes and daughters: so as all the daies of *SETH* were 912. yeares, and he dyed: as for the yeares and times of the wicked, they were not numbered in *libro viventi-um*, saith *Cyril*. But in *Seth* was the Church of God established; from whom *Christ* descended, as touching his manhood: and therfor: this way and work *Moses* walked in, and finished it with care, passing over the reprobate Generation (as aforesaid,) Of the Line of *Adam* by *Cain*, *Moses* remembreth but eight Generations, reckoning *Adam* for one; and of the Line of *Adam* by *Seth* ten, counting *Adam* also therein, as followeth.

## I. ADAM.

2 Cain	7 Lamech, who by	2 Seth.	7 Enoch.
3 Enoch.	Adah had	3 Enoch.	8 Methusalem.
4 Iradd.	8 Jubal & Tubal, &c	4 Cainan.	9 Lamech, and
5 Methujael.	by Silla, Tubal-Cain.	5 Mahaleel.	10 Noah.
6 Methusael.	and Noëma.	6 Jared.	

Gen. 4. 20, 21, 22 These be the Generations of *Adam* by *Cain*, which the Scriptures mention: but *Joseph* giveth unto *Lamech* threecore and seventeen Sonnes and Daughters, by his two Wives *Ada* and *Sylla*: and to these three sons of *Lamech*, *Moses* ascribeth the invention of Pastorage, of Musick, and the working in Metall; for it seemeth that *Jubal* first gathered together, and made familiar those beasts which formerly were untamed, & brought them into Heards and Drovers: *Tubal* invented musick, and *Tubalcain* the working in Brasse and Iron: the one being addicted to Husbandry, the other was Mechanically, the third given to idleness and pleasure. In whom began these three meaneer degrees of 30 Shepherds, Handy-crafts-men, and Musicians. And in the issues of *Seth* began the Services of God, Divinity, Prophecie, and Astronomy: the Children of the one beheld the Heavens, the other the Earth.

## §. IV.

Of the diversities in the Ages of the Patriarchs when they begat their Children.

A Second Scruple hath been made, How it came to passe that the Patriarchs begat their children at so divers Ages, as *Cainan* or *Cenan* at seventy yeares, *Mahaleel* and *Enoch* at threecore and five yeares, whereas *Jared* begat not any of his untill 40 he was 162. yeares old: *Methusalem* begat at 187. *Lamech* at 182. and *Noah* at 500. yeares. Now this difference hath been the more enforced, because it cannot be conjectured, that either *Jared*, *Methusalem*, or *Lamech* abstained from Marriage out of the religion of Abstinence, seeing that *Enoch*, who was translated by God for his singular Sanctities, begat children before he was threecore and ten yeares old.

The apparent difference hereof ariseth in this, that *Moses* did not number the Generations before the Flood precisely, according to the first begotten and eldest sons of the Patriarchs, but he drew down the Line of *Noah* from *Seth*, and afterward from *Noah* to *Abraham*, by their true Ancestors, were they elder or younger, as he found them: for it is likely that *Enoch* was not the eldest of *Jared*, nor *Lamech* the first-born of *Methusalem*, nor *Noah* of *Lamech*; neither is there any thing known to the contrary, but that *Noah* might have had many Sons before *Shem*, *Ham*, and *Japhet*, though these three were only named, and surviving, & which by God were reserved to be the Fathers of mankind after the Flood; and therefore when we find *Mahaleel* to be begotten by *Kenan* at threecore and ten yeares, who was the first Son of *Kenan*, and then reckon that *Methusalem* begat *Lamech* in the 187. year of his life, the difference seemeth strange, where *Lamech* is taken for the eldest. But *Moses* rejecteth all the other sons of *Methusalem* but *Lamech* only, because he was the Father of *Noah*, as aforesaid. Of this Saint

Saint *Augustine* hath somewhat else in his twentieth, and one and twentieth Chapters, De Civitate Dei.

But as *Moses* counted the Generations of the first Age, and so to *Abraham*, and the children of the promise after him; so doth *S. Matthew* recite the Genealogy of *Christ*, not by the eldest sons, but from those whom God had chosen and blessed, without respect of the first-born, who have hereby the prerogative in Estates, worldly and transitory only; and therefore the Evangelist nameth *Isaac*, and not *Ismael*, though *Ismael* Mat. 1. 2. were first in time: so doth he take *Jacob* the younger, and not *Esa* the Elder; neither is *Christ* derived from any of the three eldest Patriarchs, *Reuben*, *Simoon*, or *Levi*, but from *Juda* a fourth Brother, and so from *David* a younger son of *Jesse*; and lastly, we finde, 10 that the Kingdome it self of *Juda* was not given to the Heir in nature, but to the Heir of Grace, namely *Solomon*. 1 Kings 2.

## § V.

Of the long lives of the Patriarchs, and some of late memory.

The third Objection is, that the great difference of yeares between those of the first Age, whereof some of them had well neer seen a thousand yeares, makes it disputable, whether the account of times were of the same measure as in after-Ages, seeing 20 that soon after the Flood, men lived not a third part of that time, and in succeeding Ages, and to this day, not the tenth.

They that have hereon resolved that those yeares were but Lunary yeares, (to wit) of a moneth or thereabouts, or Egyptian yeares, are easily confuted. For whereas *Seth* begat *Enoch* in the year of his life an hundred and five; if those yeares be taken but for moneths, then had *Seth* lived but eight yeares and one moneth when he begat *Enoch*; and if the time of *Enoch* have the same allowance when he begat *Kenan*, then could *Enoch* at that time have been but six yeares and forty eight weeks old; and so it may be gathered of the rest, excepting only *Adam*, who was created perfect in his kinde as were the trees in their kinde, bearing fruit and feed. But this were too ridiculous to imagine. For to 30 give an ability of generation at six, seven, or eight yeares, agreeth with the short lives of the Pigmies, and not with the constitutions of our first Fathers, who being descended from *Adam*, the workmanship of Gods hands, and begotten and born in the strong youth of the World, and length of daies, and ability of body agreeable. Again, if we allow this idle conceit of the lunary yeares, then there would follow this extremity, that those which lived longest, and upwards of nine hundred yeares, had by that account but the time of fourcore and ten and odd yeares, which were not only lesse by far than the Patriarchs lived after the Flood, but short of many mens lives in this decrepit Age of the World, wherein many exceed fourcore, and some a hundred yeares. Further (if need be) to disprove this reckoning, whereas it is written, Gen. 25. That *Abraham* died in a good Age, an old man, and of great yeares: all which (if the former account were 40 of Lunary yeares) makes but seventeen and an half of our yeares.

And if we seek for a cause of this long life in nature, then is it reasonable, that the first man, created in highest perfection, should also beget children of equal strength or little differing: for of the first and purest seed there mult of necessity spring up the fairest and fruitfulest plants. Secondly, the Earth it self was then much less corrupt, which yielded her increase, and brought forth fruit and food for man, without any such mixture of harmful quality, as since that time the curse of God, for the cruelty of mans heart, brought on it and mankind: Neither had the waters of the Flood infused such an impurity, as thereby the naturall and powerfull operation of all Plants, Herbs, and Fruits 50 upon the Earth received a qualification and harmfull change. And as all things under the Sun have one time of strength, and another of weaknesse, a youth and beauty, and then age and deformity: so time it self (under the deathfull shade of whose wings all things decay and wither) hath wasted and worn out that lively vertue of Nature in Man, and Beasts, and Plants; yea, the Heavens themselves, being of a most pure and cleaneft matter, shall wax old as a garment; and then much more the power generative in inferiour Creatures, who by the ordinance of God receive operative Vertue from the superiour.

But besides the old Age of the World, how far doth our education and simplicity of

of living differ from that old time? the tender bringing up of Children, first fed and nourished with the Milk of a strange Dugge; an unnatural curiosity having taught all Women (but the Beggar) to suckle out Nurses, which necessity, onely ought to commend unto them: The hasty Marriages in tender years, wherein, Nature being but yet green and growing, we rent from her and replant her branches, while her self hath not yet any root sufficient to maintain her own top; and such half-ripe seeds (for the most part) in their growing up wither in the bud, and wax old even in their Infancy. But above all things, the exceeding luxuriousness of this gluttonous age, wherein we press Nature with over-weighty burdens, and finding her strength defective, we take the work out of her hands, and commit it to the artificial help of strong Waters, hot Spices, and provoking Sawces; of which *Lucan* hath these elegant Verses:

Pherfal. 4.

-----O Prodigia rerum

Luxuries nunquam parvo contenta paratu:

Et quistorum terra pelagoq; ciborum

Ambitiosa famas, &amp; laute gloria mense,

O wastful Riot never well content  
With low-priz'd fare; hunger ambitious  
Of Cates by Land and Sea far fetcht and sent:  
Vain glory of a Table sumptuous,  
Learn with how little life may be preserved.  
In Gold and Myrrhe they need not to caroule,  
But with the Brook the peoples thirst is served:  
Who fed with Bread and Water are not served.

Fier. Hierig. 12

The Egyptians affirm, that the longest time of man's life is a hundred years, because the heart in a perfect body waxeth and groweth to strength fifty years, and afterwards by the same degree decayeth and withereth. *Epigenes* findeth in his Philosophy, that the life of man may reach to the period of an hundred and twenty years, and *Berosus* to a hundred and seventeen years. These opinions *Plinie* repeateth and reproveth, producing many examples to the contrary. In the last taxation, number and review of the eighth region of Italy, there were found in the Roll (saith *Plinie*) foure and fifty per-sons of an hundred years of age: seven and fifty of an hundred and ten: two, of an hundred and five and twenty: foure, of an hundred and thirty: as many that were an hundred and five and thirty, or a hundred and seven and thirty years old: and last of all, three men of an hundred and forty: and this search was made in the times of *Vespasian* the Father and the Son.

Jes. am. l. 13. c. 8  
Plin. l. 7. c. 48.

The simple dyet and temperate life of the Egiptians gave them long account of many years: so did it to the Secretaries of Egyptian Ceremonies, to the Persians Magicians, and Indian Brachmans. The Greeks ascribe out of *Homer*, that *Nestor* lived three Ages, and *Tiresias* six, *Syllia* three hundred years, *Endymion* of the Iles Asia, little less: Also *Masaniha* of Numidia lived very long, and *Dando* of Illyria. Among the kings of Arcadia many lived three hundred years (saith *Epiphorus*). *Hellanicus* affirmeth of the Epeians, that some of them lived full two hundred years, and so doth *Diodorus Siculus* of the Egyptians; and that these reports are not fabulous, *Josephus* bringeth many witnesses with himself, as *Marebon*, *Berosus*, *Mochus*, *Esdras*, *Hieronymus*, *Egyptius*, *Hecateus*, *Epiphorus*, and others. And *Anthony Fume*, an Historian of good reputation reporteth, that in the year 1570. there was an Indian presented to *Solyman*, General of the Turks Army, who had out-lived three hundred years. I my self knew the old Countess of Desmond of Inchiquin in Munster, who lived in the year 1589. and many years since, who was married in Edward the Fourth's time, and held her joynture from all the Earles of Desmond since then; and that this is true, all the Noblemen and Gentlemen of Munster can witness: so *Strozzius Cicogna*, out of *Torquemada Massius*, and the like Authours, telleth of some that have not only far exceeded the term prescribed by *Epigenes*; but been repaired from the withered estate of decrepitude to fresh youth. But for length of life, if we note but the difference between the ability of men in those daies wherein *Galen* the Physician lived, it may easily prove unto us what Reeds we are in respect of those Cedars of the first age. For *Galen* did ordinarily let blood six pound weight, whereas we (for the most part) stop at six ounces. But to conclude this part, there are three things (not counting Constellations) which are the natural causes of a long and healthful life; (to wit) strong Parents,

*Discite quum parvo liceat producere vitam:  
Et quantum Natura pesat.  
Non auro myrrhâq; bibunt: sed gurgite puro  
Vita redit: satis est populus fluvijsq; Ceresque.*

Parents, a pure and thin ayre, and temperate use of dyet, pleasure, and rest: for those which are built of rotten timber, or mouldring stone, cannot stand long upright; on ayre we feed alwaies and in every instant, and on meats but at times: and yet the beauty of abundance, wherewith we oppress and overcharge Nature, maketh her to sink unawares in the midway; and therefore with a good constitution, a pure ayre, and a temperate use of those things which nature wanteth, are the onely friends and companions of a long life.

## §. VI.

10 Of the Patriarchs delivering their knowledge by Tradition: and that *ENOCH* writ before the Flood.

A Fourth scruple hath bin made, How the certain knowledge of the Creation came to *Moses*, seeing there was no Story thereof written; and if any such had been, yet it is conceived, that all memory of Antiquity perished in the Universal Flood.

But if we consider the curiosity and policy of elder ages, we shall finde, that knowledge was the greatest treasure that men sought for, and which they also covered and hid from the vulgar sort, as Jewels of inestimable price, fearing the irreverent construction of the ignorant and irreligious: so as whatsoever was attained unto concerning God, and his working in nature, the same was not left to publique dispute, but delivered over by heart and tradition from wise men to a posterity equally zealous; *Ex animo in animum sine literis medio intercedente verbo*: From minde to minde without Letters, by way of Disc. Ascp. of Tradition or word of mouth. And it was thought by *Esdras*, *Origen*, and *Hilarius* (as *Mirandula* conceiveth) that *Moses* did not onely upon the Mount receive the Law from God, but withal, secretiorem & veram legis enarrationem; a more secret and true explanation of the Law; which (saith he, out of the same Authours,) he delivered by mouth to *Josuah*, and *Josuah* to the Elders: for to teach these mysteries, which he called secretiora, to the rude multitude, were no other quam dare sanctum canibus, & inter porcos spargere *Margaritas*; than to give holy things to Dogs, and to cast Pearls before Swine. In succeeding times this understanding and wisdom began to be written in Ciphers and Characters, and Letters bearing the form of beasts, birds, and other creatures; and to be taught onely to such as served in their Temples, and to their Kings and Priests. Of the first the Cabala of the Jews was an imitation: the invention of the other is ascribed to *Zoroaster*, *Mercurius*, *Cadmus*, and others; but falsely.

This Cabala importeth a Law, received by tradition and unwritten. Cabala in Hebrew is receptio in Latine, and a receiving in English. And this custome was also held by the Druids and Bards of our ancient Britains, and of latter times by the Irish Chroniclers called Rimers. If then such as would seem wisest in the use of reason, will not acknowledge, that the story of the Creation, or beginning of all things, was written by inspiration, the holy Ghost guiding the hand of *Moses*; yet it is manifest, that the knowledge thereof might by tradition (then used) be delivered unto him by a more certain presumption, than any or all the testimonies which prophane antiquity had preserved and left to their successors: which their wisdom (as they terme them) did lay up and defend from the injury of the time and other hazards. For, leaving to remember that *Adam* instructed *Seth*, and *Seth* his children and successors, which cannot be doubted of, it is manifest, that *Methusalem* lived together with *Adam* himself two hundred forty and three years, and *Noah* with *Methusalem* no less than five hundred years: and before *Noah* died, *Abraham* was fifty and eight years old: from whence this knowledge by an easie and ordinary way might come to Israel, and so to *Moses*.

But besides this tradition, it is questionless, that the use of letters was found out in the very infancy of the world, proved by those prophecies written on pillars of stone and brick by *Enoch*: of which *Josephus* affirmeth, that one of them remained even in his time (meaning belike some ruine or foundation thereof) which pillars by others are ascribed to *Seth*. But of these prophecies of *Enoch*, *S. Jude* testifieth; and some part of his Books (which contained the course of the Stars, their names and motions) were afterward found in *Arabia Felix*, in the Dominion of the Queen of Saba (saith *Origen*) of which *Strutian* affirmeth, that he had seen, and read some whole Pages. It is not therefore strange, that *Moses* came to the knowledge of the Creation, and story of

Cabala est scientia Theologiae non revelata. P. M. 82. Mirandula. 110. fol.

Jes. l. 1.

Jud. Ep. v. 14.

Origen. Hemil. 1. in Num.

of

of the first Age, seeing he might receive it both by tradition and letters, had not the spirit of God instructed and inspired him as it did: which also his many and strange miracles performed before he wrote the Scriptures make more manifest.

Now for the Books of *Enoch*, howsoever some men make mention of them, sure I am that *Tertullian*, *Origen*, *Augustine*, *Beda*, *Procopius*, *Gzarus* (with others) cite them in their writings: although *Medina* for an argument to prove them unwritten traditions, allegeth that *Pope Gelasius* among other the Apocryphal Scriptures (which he rejecteth) named not these of *Enoch*; but that whatsoever was remembered out of them, the same was delivered by Tradition from the Jews. But I rather think with *Pererius*, that such a Book there was, and that the same was corrupted after the death of the Apostles, and many things added thereunto by Hereticks; who took occasion upon the antiquity thereof, and out of that place of *Michael* contending with the Devil about the body of *Moses*, to frame and add thereunto many inventions of their own. One of the greatest arguments against these Books, is, that neither *Philo* nor *Josephus* (the most diligent searchers of Antiquity) make mention thereof. But against it I will set this opinion of *S. Augustine*, *Scriptisse quidem nonnulla divina Enoch, illum septimum ab Adam, negare non possumus*: That *Enoch* the seventh from Adam, did write divers divine things, we cannot deny. Now his writings which came afterwards to light, were suspected because of the antiquity, and of fables of Giants, supposed to be begotten of Angels, and others; and by so much the more, because no such Book was found amongst those Canonical Scriptures, kept by the diligence of the Hebrew Priests in *Armario Judaico* (saith *Tertullian*) who yet affirmeth that this Book might be preserved by *Noah*. Surely, that *Enoch* wrote the prophecies remembered by *Jude*, no man can deny; how they were delivered to posterity, I know not; whether by the Jews *Cabala*, or by what other means, the same is but mans conjecture. And certainly by the knowledge ascribed to *Noah* of the motions of the Heavens, and of the natures and conjunctions of the Stars; and afterwards to some of his sons, to *Zoroaster*, and then to *Abraham*, it is very probable that *Noah* had seen and might preserve this Book. For it is not likely, that so exquisite knowledge therein (as these men had) was suddenly invented and found out, but left by *Seth* to *Enoch*, and by *Enoch* to *Noah*, as hath been said before. And therefore if letters and arts were known from the time of *Seth* to *Enoch*, and that *Noah* lived with *Methusalem*, who lived with *Adam*, and *Abraham* lived with *Noah*, it is not strange (I say) to conceive how *Moses* came to the knowledge of the first Age, be it by letters, or by *Cabala* and tradition, had the undoubted word of God need of any other proof than self-authority.

## §. VII.

Of the men of renown before the Flood.

Now let us consider the relation of *Moses*, who nameth seven descents of *Cain's* children: and of *Adam* by *Seth* ten; *Seth* being given by God in stead of *Abel*: and of *Seth* was *Enosh* begotten, in whose time men began to profess Religion, and to offer sacrifice in publique. For although *Adam* instructed his children in the knowledge of God their Creator, as appeared by the sacrifice offered by *Cain* and *Abel*; yet it seemeth that after the birth of *Enosh*, men began publickly to call on the Name of the Lord, that is, they served and praised God by Communion and in publique manner, or calling upon the Name of the Lord; and thereby were the sons of God, or the godly, distinguished from the wicked. From the birth of *Enosh* the son of *Seth*, to the time of *Enoch* the son of *Jared*, there is nothing remembered by *Moses*, but their owne births, the births of their sons, the length of their lives, and deaths. But of *Enoch* it is written: That he walked with God, and he was no more scene: For God tooke him away. By that, that he walked with God, was meant, that he was a just and upright man; and that he feared, loved, and obeyed God. For the same phrase *Moses* useth of *Noah*; *Noah* was a just and upright man in his time, and *Noah* walked with God. The seventy convert it, *Enoch placuit Deo*; *Enoch pleased God*. And although *Aben-Ezra* and others understand this place, (*inuit cum Deo*) *scilicet, mortuus est*; God tooke him away, (that is) he dyed, which (indeed) agreeth both with the phrase of the Scripture, and with our manner of speech to this day, to say, God tooke him away when he died; yet the difference which *Moses* maketh between the piety of *Enoch*, and the rest of the Patriarchs

triarchs, and by omitting the word (death) which he useth to all else, makes it manifest that *Enoch* was not dissolved as the rest. For to all the rest of the Patriarchs, *Moses* useth these words, And he dyed; but of *Enoch* he spake otherwise, saying only, He was missing, or he was not scene. Et non inveniebatur (saith the Apostle to the Hebrewes) quia Deus eum transtulit; And he was not found, for the Lord tooke him away. In the same place it is expressly added, that he saw not death.

But whether this taking away of *Enoch* were not with the same kinde of changing, which *S. Paul* promiseth, when he saith, that, when the end shall come, we shall not all dye, but all shall be changed, I leave it to the learned Divines.

After *Enoch*, *Moses* passeth over to *Methusalem* and *Lamech*, remembring (as of the rest) the times of their birth and death: saying that *Lamech* prophesied of his son *Noah*, saying, This same shall comfort us concerning our works, and sorrow of our hands, as touching the earth which the Lord hath cursed. Of *Noah*, *Moses* writeth more amply than of any of the rest of *Adam's* children by *Seth*, being the last of the ten generations of the first Age, whom God (with his Family) preserved, because he was an upright man in his time, and feared God.

But of the warre, peace, government, and policy of those strong and mighty men, so able both in body and wit, there is no memory remaining: whose stories if they had bin preserved, and what else was then performed in that newesse of the world, there could nothing of more delight have been left to posterity. For the exceeding long lives of men (who to their strength of body and naturall wits, had the experience added of 800 and 900 years) how much of necessity must the same adde of wisdom and undertakings? Likely it is, that their works excelled all whatsoever can be told of aftertimes, especially in respect of this old age of the World, when we no sooner begin to know, but we begin to die; according to *Hippocrates*: *Vita brevis, ars longa, tempus præceps*; (which is) *Life is short, art is long, and time is headlong*. And that those people of the first age performed many things worthy admiration, it may be gathered out of these words of *Moses*; These were mighty men, which in old time were men of renown. But these men of renown (whom the Scripture afterwards calleth Giants, both for strength of body, and cruelty of mind) trusted so much to their owne abilities, as they forgot altogether the piety of *Seth*, and the waies wherein *Enoch* walked: for all the imaginations of their hearts were evil, only evil, and continually evil. And this wickedness was not only found in the issues of *Cain*, but it was then universal, when the children and sons of God (or of the godly) were corrupted and misled by their idolatrous wives, the daughters of *Cain*, or of those other men, loving themselves and the world only.

That these sons of God were Angels, which being taken with the beauty of women, accompanied them and begat Giants, some of the Fathers supposed; namely, *Lactantius*, and *Eusebius*, misled by *Josephus*: of whom I cannot doubt, but that they afterward changed their former opinions. And of this mistaking many Writers have taken great advantage, and have troubled themselves with large answers, and very needlesse: the question being incapable of dispute, especially since *S. Chrysostom* and *S. Augustine* have answered it largely long agoe. For, that good and godly men were honoured with the title of Gods children, it doth every where appear in the Scripture; and on the contrary, to thinke that Angels, who (as Christ witnesseth) behold the face of God, (that is) alwaies attend his commandments, should after a separation from the rest which fell with *Lucifer*, forsake the glorious presence of their Creator, and become *Incubi*, or *Succubi*, contrary both to Nature and Grace, were more than madnesse to imagine.

## §. VIII.

That the Giants by *Moses* so called, were indeed men of huge bodies: as also divers in later times.

Of these Giants which *Moses* calleth mighty men, *Coropius Becanus* an *Antwerpian* (who thought his owne wit more Gigantically than the bodies of *Nimrod* or *Hercules*) hath written a large discourse, intitled *Gigantomachia*, and strayed his braines to prove, that there were never any such men: his reasons (whoever desires to lose time) he may find them in the Treatises before named. It is true that *Cyrollus* re proves the Grecian Poets for their monstrous fictions: who affirme shamelessly, That



That the Giants have in elder times not only cast up Mountains upon Mountains, but removed Islands out of the Sea, with like fooleries. And for that invention of casting up Hills, and making war with the gods, no doubt but that the same was borrowed out of the story of *Nimrod*, as before remembered; and even out of this Scripture: That the Sons of God saw the Daughters of Men, of whom the first Giants were begotten, was that conceit taken of *Orpheus* and *Hesiodus*. That Giants were the sons of the Heaven and the Earth; meaning by the Heavens the sons of God, and by the Earth the daughters of Men: which verses of *Orpheus* are by *John Cassian* (who hath written a witty discourse of this subject) thus changed into Latine:

*Nomine cælestes illos dixere Gigantes,  
Orti quod terræ fuerint & sanguine cæli.*

From the Earth, and from thy blood, O heaven, they came,  
Whom thereupon the gods did Giants name.

But what will not Opiniators and selfe-beleeving men dispute of, and make doubt of, if they cannot conceive that there were in the first Age such kind of men; and of which there have been in all times since; seeing the Scriptures avow the one manifestly, and common experience the other?

And for that superlative straining of words, and the meaning of them, that the name of Giants was given to Oppressors and Tyrants, and not to strength of body and eminent stature: such men might with better reason call them Oppressors, because they were Giants; and therefore had ability to oppress, than say, That they were called Giants only, because Oppressors. For first, *Moses* himself calleth them mighty men; which sheweth a strength surpassing others; and afterwards men of renowne, (that is) of great undertaking and adventurous action. And if the same stature of body, and ability had not beene found among divers Nations after the generall flood, then might this place of *Moses* have more willingly hearkened to a dispute, and yielded to interpretation.

But besides all these famous Giants found in prophane Histories (which I will reserve to accompany the Giants of Albion, in the story of Britanie) the Scriptures doe cleerly and without all allegorical construction avow, That besides *Nimrod*, there were found 30 of these Giants in the time of *Abraham*, of *Moses*, of *Joshua*, and of *David*; namely, the Rephaims in Afteroth; the Zuzai or Zanzummims in Ham, and the Emims which dwelt 20. anciently in the Land of Moab: whom *Moses* (for stature) compareth with the Anakims which dwelt in Hebron; for they also were taken for Giants as the Anakims. Likewise where *Moses* speaketh of the Land of *Ammon* he useth these words: That also was taken for a land of Giants, for Giants dwelt therein afore-times: & whom the *Ammonites* call *Zanzummims*: a people that was great, and many, and tall as the Anakims. And these Giants called Rephaims in Afteroth and Karnaim, and the Zuzai or Zanzummims, *Chedorlaomer* king of Elam overthrew, assisted by other kings his associates. Also the Prophet *Amos* found among the Ammonies men of giant-like stature, whom he compareth to the Cedar, and whose strength to the Oke; and the Prophet *Baruch*, These were the Giants famous from the beginning, that were of so great stature, and so expert in war. Particularly it is written of *Og K. of Basan*, that his bed of yron was 9 cubits long, and four cubits broad: for only *Og* king of Basan remained of the remnant of the Giants, who commanded the Kingdom of Basan, foure hundred yeares after the Expedition of *Chedorlaomer*. Moreover, those Discoverers and Searchers of the Land of Promise (sent by *Moses* from Cadelbarne in Paran) made reporte at their returne of the great stature of those people in general, and especially of the sons of *Anak*, in these words: All the people which we saw in it are men of great stature: for there we saw Giants, the sons of ANAK, which come (that is) the Searchers found in their owne judgements a marvellous difference between the Anakims and themselves: inso much that the Israelites were so ftricken with fear, as they rather sought and desired to return againe into Egypt, and were more willing to endure their former slavery, than to fall by the strokes of those fearful Nations: Furthermore, the Scriptures put us out of doubt, that *Goliath* the Philistine of *Gath*, was a Giant of six cubits and a span long: the Armour which he wore weighed five thousand shekles of brasse: the shaft of his speare was like a Weavers beame, and his speare-head weighed six hundred shekles of yron. Also in *Sammel* there is mention of another *Goliath*

Gen. 14. 5.

Nim. 13. 34.

Deut. 2. v. 21.

Ves. 21.

Amos 1.

Bar. 3. v. 26.

Deut. 3. v. 11.

Num. 13. v. 34.

Cap. 14. 4.

1 Sam. 17. 4.

2 Sam. 21. v. 19

of another *Goliath*, surnamed *Gethens*, because he was of *Gath*: and of three other Giants; of which the first was slain by *Jonathan*, *David's* Nephew, who had twelve fingers, and as many toes: a man of great stature, and his fingers were by sixes, even four and twenty.

Also that *Sampson* was of surpassing strength, no man doubteth, who tore a Lion as it had been a Kid, and after three thirty of the Philistines, and (after that) a thousand more of them with a Jaw-bone of an Ass: And lastly, he took the gates of *Azzah*, and the two Posts, and lifted them away with the bars, and put them upon his shoulders, and carried them to the top of the Mountain before *Ebron*. If then it be approved by every judgement, that both Nature and the Heavens wax old, and that the great age of Time hath (with it self) infeebled and almost worn out the virtue of all things, then, I say, That as in all other kinds the Earth (before that Sin had increased the curse and corruption) brought forth her young ones more strong and beautiful, than it did in after ages: so also those Giants, those mighty men, and men of renown, as far exceeded the proportion, nature, and strength of those Giants, remembered by *Moses* of his own time, and after him their successors, as the ordinary proportion of all men in general, soon after the flood and in times far off, exceeded the bulks and bodies of men which are now born in the withered quarter and Winter of the World. If therefore Giants were common in the third and fourth age, much more in the first flourishing youth and newness of the world.

But the wickedness (especially in cruelty and oppression) of these men was such, as God therefore by the flood gave end to all flesh, but to the just *Noah* and his Family. And God repented him that he had made man: which *S. Augustine* thus expoundeth; *Neg. Gen. 6. 6. enim sicut hominem, ita Deum facti sui penitet, cuius est de omnibus omnino rebus tam fixa De Civit. Dei. sententia, quam certa presentia. Sed si non utatur Scriptura talibus verbis, non se quodammodo familiaris insinuat omni generi hominum, quibus vult esse consilium: ut & perterreat superbie, & excitet negligenter, & exerceat querentes, & alacres intelligentes; God (saith he) doth not repent him of any thing which he hath done (as men use to do): but if the Scripture did not use those words, or the like, it should not (in a sort) insinuate it self familiarly to all sorts of men, for whom it would provide: that it might terrifie the proud, stir up the negligent, exercise the searchers of the truth, and nourish those that understand.*

## CHAP. VI.

Of idolatrous corruptions, quickly rising, and hardly at length vanishing in the world: and of the Reliques of Truth touching these ancient times, obscurely appearing in Fables and old Legends.

### §. I.

That in old corruptions we may finde some signs of more ancient truth.

HERE, before we proceed any further, the occasion offereth it self for us to consider how the Greeks and other more ancient Nations, by fabulous inventions, and by breaking into parts the story of the Creation, and by delivering it over in a mystical sense, wrapping it up mixed with other their own trumpery, have sought to obscure the truth thereof; and have hoped, that after-ages, being thereby brought into many doubts, might receive those inter-mixt discourses of God and Nature, for the inventions of Poets and Philosophers, and not as any thing borrowed or stolne out of the Books of God. But as a skilful and learned Chymist can aswell by separation of visible elements draw helpful medicines out of poyson, as poyson out of the most healthful hearbs and plants (all things having in themselves both life and death): so, contrary to the purposes and hopes of the Heathen, may those which seek after God and Truth, find out every-where, and in all the ancient Poets and Philosophers, the Story of the first Age, with all the works and marvels thereof, amply and lively exprest.



## §. II.

That the corruptions themselves were very ancient; as in the Family of NoAH, and in the old Egyptians.

**B**ut this defection and falling away from God, which was first found in Angels, and afterwards in men (the one having erred but once, the other ever) as concerning Mankind it tooke such effect, that thereby (the liberal grace of God being with-drawn) all the posterity of our first Parents were afterwards born and bred in a world, suffering a perpetual Eclipse of spiritual light. Hence it was that it produced plants of such imperfection and harmful quality, as the waters of the general flood could not so wash out or depure, but that the same defection hath had continuance in the very generation and nature of mankind. Yea, even among the few sons of Noah, there were found strong effects of the former poison. For as the children of Sem did inherit the virtues of Seth, Enoch, and Noah; so the sons of Cham did possess the vices of the sons of Cain, and of those wicked Giants of the first Age. Whence the Chaldeans began soon after the Flood to ascribe divine power and honour to the Creature, which was only due to the Creator. First, they worshipped the Sun, and then the Fire. So the Egyptians and Phœnicians did not only learn to leave the true God, but created twelve several gods, and divine powers, whom they worshipped, and unto whom they built Altars and Temples. For Herodotus saith, *Duodecim Deorum nomina primos Egyptios in usu habuisse, atque Græcos ab illis cepisse mutatos, eo quæ prius Aræ, & Imagines, & Tempia Diis sibi crexissent; The Egyptians (saith he) first devised the names of the twelve gods, which the Greeks received from them, who first erected unto themselves Altars, Images, and Temples for the gods.*

Herod. in Euc.  
1. 1. p. 1.

## §. III.

That in process of time these lesser errors drew on greater: as appeareth in the gross Superstitions of the Egyptians.

**B**ut as men once fallen away from undoubted truth, do then after wander for evermore in vices unknown, and daily travail towards their eternal perdition: so did these gross and blinde Idolaters every Age after other, descend lower and lower, and shrink and slide downwards from the knowledge of one true and very God; and did not thereby erre in worshipping mortal men only, but they gave divine reverence, and had the same respect to Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Fowls, Winds, Earth, Water, Ayre, Fire, to the Morning, to the Evening, to Plants, Trees, and Roots, to Passions and Affections of the Minde, to Palenes, Sickness, Sorrows, yea to the most unworthy and basest of all these. Which barbarous blasphemy, Rhodius Anaxandrides derideth in this manner:

Nat. Com. 1. 1.  
cap. 7.

*Bovem colis, ego Deis matto bovem.  
In maximum Anguillam Deum putas: ego  
Obsoniorum credidi navissimum.*

*Carnes suillas tu caver, at gaudeo  
His maxime: canem colis, quem verbero  
Edentem ubi deprehendo sortè obsonium.*

I sacrifice to God the Beef, which you adore.  
I broyle th' Egyptian Eeles, which you (as god) implore:  
You fear to eat the flesh of Swine, I finde it sweet.  
You worship Dogs; to beat them I think meet,  
When they my store devour.

And in this manner JUVENAL.

*Porrum aut cape nefas violare aut frangere morsu:  
O sanctas gentes, quibus hæc nascuntur in hortis  
Numina!*

The Egyptians think it sin to root up, or to bite  
Their Leeks or Onyons, which they serve with holy rite:  
O happy Nations, which of their own sowing  
Have store of gods in every Garden growing!

## §. IV.

## §. IV.

That from the reliques of ancient Records among the Egyptians and others, the first Idols and Fables were invented: and the first Jupiter was Cain, Vulcan, Tubalcain, &c.

**B**ut in so great a confusion of vanities, where among the Heathens themselves there is no agreement or certainty, it were hard to finde out from what example the beginnings of these inventions were borrowed, or after what ancient pattern they erected their building, were it not certain that the Egyptians had knowledge of the first Age, and of whatsoever was done therein, partly from some inscriptions upon stone or metall remaining after the Flood; and partly from Mizraim the son of Cham, who had learnt the same of Cham, and Cham of his Father Noah: for all that the Egyptians write of their ancient Kings, and date of times, cannot be fained, and though other Nations after them had by imitation their Jupiters also, their Saturns, Vulcans, and Mercuries, with the rest, which S. Augustine out of Varro; Eusebius out of many prophane Histories; Cicero, Diodorus Siculus, Arnobius, and many more have observed, to wit, the Phœnicians, Phrygians, Cretians, Greeks, and other Nations; yet was Cain the Sonne of Adam (as some very learned men conceive) called and reputed for the first and ancient Jupiter, and Adam for the first Saturn: for Jupiter was said to have invented the founding of Cities; and the first City of the World was built by Cain, which he called Enoch, of whom were the Henochii before remembered. And so much may be gathered out of Plato in Protogoras, which also Higinius in his 275. Chapter confirmeth. For besides that many Cities were founded by divers men; *Tamen primam latissimam à primo & antiquissimo Jove edificatam: yet the first and largest was built by the first and most ancient Jupiter, seated in the East parts, or in India, according to that of Moses: And Cain dwelt towards the East side of Eden, &c.* where also the Henochii were found after the Flood. And therefore was Jupiter by the Athenians called *Poliens*, a Founder of Cities, and *Herceios*, an incloser or strengthener of Cities (say Phormutus and Pausanias); and that to Jupiter *Herceios* there were in very many places Altars and Temples erected. And that there were Cities built before the Flood, Plato also witnesseth, as may be gathered in this his affirming, that soon after mankind began to increase, they built many Cities; which, as his meaning, he delivereth in plaine termes, in his third Book of *Laves*: for he saith that Cities were built an exceeding space of time before the destruction by the great Flood.

This first Jupiter of the Ethnicks was then the same Cain, the sonne of Adam, who marrying his own Sister (as also Jupiter is said to have done) inhabited the East, where *Stephanus de Urbibus* placeth the City *Henochia*. And besides this City of *Enoch*, *Philo Indus* conceiveth that Cain built six others, as *Maich*, *Iared*, *Tebe*, *Iefca*, *Selet*, and *Gebar*: but where *Philo* had this, I know not. Now as Cain was the first Jupiter, and from whom also the Ethnicks had the invention of Sacrifice: so were *Tubal*, *Tubal*, and *Tubal-cain* (inventors of Pastorage, Smiths-craft, and Musick) the same which were called by the ancient prophane Writers, *Mercurius*, *Vulcan*, and *Apollo*; and as there is a likelihood of name between *Tubalcain* and *Vulcan*: so doth *Augustine* expound the name of *Noëma*, or *Naamath*, the sister of *Tubalcain*, to signifie *Venusita* or beautiful, *Voluptas* or pleasure; as the Wife of *Vulcan* is said to be *Venus*, the Lady of pleasure and beauty. And as Adam was the ancient and first Saturn, Cain the eldest Jupiter; *Eva*, *Rhea*, and *Noëma* or *Naamath* the first Venus: so did the Fable of the dividing of the World between the three Brethren the Sons of Saturne, arise from the true Story of the dividing of the Earth between the three Brethren the Sonnes of Noah: so also was the fiction of those Golden Apples kept by a Dragon, taken from the Serpent which tempted *Eva*: so was *Paradise* it self transported out of Asia into Africa, and made the Garden of the *Hesperides*: the Prophecies, that *Christ* should break the serpents head, and conquer the power of *Hel*, occasioned the fables of *Hercules* killing the Serpent of *Hesperides*, and descending into *Hel*, and captivating *Cerberus*: so out of the taking up of *Enoch* by God, was borrowed the conversion of their *Heroes* (the inventors of Religion, and such Arts as the life of man had profit by) into Stars and Heavenly signes, and (withall) that leaving of the World, and ascension of *Astræa*: of which *Ovid*:

*Ultima cælestium terras Astræa reliquit.*

Astræa last of heavenly Wights the Earth did leave.

G

For

Aug. l. 19. c. 22.  
De civit. Dei.  
Euseb. l. 1. p. 1.  
Evangel. c. 1.  
l. 2. c. 23.  
Cic. l. 2. de nat.  
Deorum.  
Arnob. 4. contra  
Gent.

Gen. 4. 15.

Phorm. L. de na-  
tura Deorum.  
Pausan. l. 4. 5.  
c. 10. in Pro-  
logo.

Laus. l. 4. c. 27.

Ovid. Met. 1.

For although thereby the *Ethnick*s would understand Justice it selfe to have failed, as is is a vertue abstract, and may be considered without a person, yet as it is usuall among the ancient Poets to describe Vertues and Vices by the persons of men and women, as Desire by *Cupid*, Valour by *Mars*, Beauty or Lust by *Venus*; so doe they also the persons of men by like Vertues and Vices: and therefore by Justice and *Astraea*, the justice and piety of *Enoch* being in the same manner exprest, as that of *Noah* was by *Moses*: for *Noah* was said to be a just man; And *Noah* walked with God. And was of *Enoch* it is written, That he walked with God, and he was no more seen: for God took him away.

From this Story also of the first Age, and from that part where *Moses* remembreth the Giants begotten by the sonnes of good men upon the daughters of the wicked (whom *Moses* calleth mighty men, and men of renowne) did they steale those wondrous great acts of their ancient Kings, and powerfull Giants; and again their war undertaken against the Gods, from the building of the Tower of *Babel* by the Giant *Nimrod* taken against the Gods, from the building of the Tower of *Babel* by the Giant *Nimrod*, as *S. Augustine* termeth him. Which warre of their Giants, *Cornelius Severus* thus describeth.

*Tentavere (nesas) olim detrudere mundo  
Sydera, captivos Jovis transferre Gigantes  
Imperium, & vincto leges imponere caelo.*

The Giants did advance their wicked hand  
Against the Stars to thrust them headlong down;  
And robbing Jove of his Imperiall Crown,  
On conquer'd Heavens to lay their proud command.

Whereby was meant that *Nimrod* purposed to raise the building of *Babel* to that height, as God neither by drawing waters from the deep, nor by any conjunction of the Stars, should bury them under the moisture of a second Flood, but that by this building (if they had been herein victorious) they would have given the Law to Heaven it self. Also the making of leagues, peace and covenants among Heathen Nations and Kings, confirmed by sacrifice, whereof *Virgil* both in the eighth and twelfth of his *Aeneides* hath a touch, was (as it seemeth) borrowed from *Moses*, *Exod.* 24. who when he read the Book of the Covenant, sprinkled the people with blood.

We finde also many remembrances of *Seth*, the paternall Ancestor of *Enoch* and *Noah*: for *Amenophis*, the same King of *Egypt* which reigned at such time as *Moses* carried thence the children of *Israel* (as of late some learned men, mistaking his time, supposed) called his Sonne and Succellour *Setho*, of *Seth*: and of the same *Seth* (as many men of good judgment have granted) were the Princes of *Thrace*, called *Sembes*, whereof there were many very famous. But herein was the memory of *Seth* most manifestly preserved, that the Egyptians worshipped *Seth*, as their most ancient parent, and of the first tradition: in honour of whom they called a principal Province *Sethetica*. We also finde in *Bithynia* the City of *Sethia*, and others of the same name elsewhere. And sure, from the Egyptians did the Grecians borrow this kinde of Theologie, though they scorned to acknowledge any antiquity preceding their own: and that they might not seem to learn elsewhere, they gave the same names to their own Idols, which the Egyptians did to theirs.

## §. V.

Of the three chiefeſt Jupiters, and the strange story of the third.

BUT of all those Armies of Jupiters remembred by the Ancients, *Cicero* maketh but three, because those were of most fame: which other Writers have also done, who sought out, and laboured in their originals.

The first was *Jupiter*, the sonne of *Aether* and *Dier*, so called because the one had reference to his celestiall conditions (for *ether* is as much as shining or pure fire): the other discovered his naturall vertues, which daies and times make more perfect, and are the witnesses of mens actions.

The second was said to be the son of *Caelum* or Heaven, for the same former respect, and this *Jupiter* was an *Arcadian*, and King of *Athens*.

The

The third, of whom all the Grecian fables were devised, was of *Crete* (now *Candie*) the Son of *Saturne* and *Ops*. The name derived from the Latine is taken of *Jovans pater*, from the Greek word *Zeus*, it signifieth life, but somewhat strained. *Boccae* in his Genealogie of the Gods, conceiveth, that his name was borrowed from *Jupiter* the Planet; but whether that Star had such a name before the same was given to men, I know not. *Jupiter* is hot and moist, temperate, modest, honest, adventurous, liberall, mercifull, loving, and faithfull (that is) giving these inclinations. And therefore those ancient Kings beautified with these conditions, might be called thereafter *Jupiter*: but howsoever they were, or were not with those vertues enriched, yet by imitation, all Kings in the eldest times assumed those Titles and Sir-names: great Princes affecting as high Titles of honour and reputation in the world (howsoever deserved) as the worthiest, that ever were, acquired by their well deserving. *Joves omnes Reges vocarunt antiqui*, The ancients called all Kings *Jupiters*, as *Plutarch* in his *curia historia* confirmeth; *Reges olim Joves vocarunt omnes*; In old times all Nations called their Kings *Jupiters*. But where this last and most remembred *Jupiter* was borne, it is uncertain. Some there are that make him of *Cyete*: others that he was but sent thither by his Mother *Ops*, or *Opis*, to be fostered and hidden from the fury of *Titan* his Uncle: because it was conditioned between *Saturne* and *Titan*, that *Saturne* being a younger Brother, and reigning (for his own life) by *Titan*s permission, he should put to death all his male children, lest the *Titans* might be interrupted by any of them in their succession; which agreement, because *Saturne* performed in his first borne, it is feigned that *Saturne* devoured his own children. Hereof *Lycophron* thus turned into Latine:

*Hand sit pinguior, Crudiſt ſepulchrum quid ſit ipſe filius.* | *Saturne* to be the fatter is not known, By being the grave and buriall of his own.  
This composition between *Titan* and *Saturne*, *Syllila* also witnesseth in these words;

*Conceptis verbis, Titan jurare coegit  
Saturnum, deſc natum ne nutriat ullum,  
Quo poſſint regnare jens poſt fata Nepotes.*

Things thus agreed; *Titan* made *Saturne* ſwear  
No Son to nourish, which by reigning might  
Uſurp the right of *Titan*s lawfull heire.

But *Opis* the mother of *Jupiter*, being delivered at once both of *Jupiter* and *Juno*, conveyed *Jupiter* (first called *Lysanias*) into *Crete*, as he did afterwards his two Brothers, *Neptune* and *Pluto*: where he was brought up in *Gnosius*, the chief City of that Island, by *Cressa*, the King, or by the *Cureter*, a people and nation thereof.

Others challenge him to be of *Thebes* and a *Theban*: others call him an *Arcadian*: Others make him of *Messena*. The like contention is found among the Greeks touching his education and first fostering. Some affirm that he was fed by Honey-bees: in recompence whereof he changed their black coats and skins into yellow; a reward well fitting such a God; other, that he was nourished by Bears: others, by Goats: and of all these the idle Greeks have many pretty tales. But in the end when *Titan* had knowledge that *Saturne* had broken his faith, he set on him, and took him and his wife prisoners, whom *Jupiter* again rescued and delivered.

But lastly, The Father and the Son equally ambitious, the one doubted the other. *Saturne* being the less powerfull, fled into Italy, and left his Kingdoms in Greece to his sonne. And although this Prince at the first purchased great honour, and for his many vertues, the name of *Jupiter* was given him: yet after he was once settled, and became potent, he gave himself over wholly to palliardize and adultery, without all respect of Honour, Law, or Religion. And it is reported by such as doe ascribe the actions of many to one *Jupiter*, that not therewith satisfied, he was afterwards known to offend in the sinne of Sodom with *Ganimedes* and others: and did not only begin with incest, marrying his owne Sister *Juno*, but he ravished, betrayed, stole away, and took by strong hand all the beautifull women borne in his time, within the limits of his owne Kingdoms, or bordering them. Among whom these hereafter written were of greatest fame; *Niobe*, *Laodemia*, and *Alcmena*, the Wife of *Amphitruon*, by whom he had *Pelagius*, *Sarpedon*, *Argus*, and *Hercules*: by *Taygete* he had *Taygetus*, of whom the Mountain *Taygetus* took name, with another Sonne called *Saon*, of whom *Stavon* is

G 2

by



§. VI.

thagoras. But whether it were out of the same vanity, which possessed all those learned Philosophers and Poets, that Plato also published (not under the right Authors names) those things which he had read in the Scriptures; or fearing the severity of the *Areopagites*, and the example of his Master *Socrates*, by them put to death by poyson, I cannot judge. *Iustine Martyr* (as it seemeth) ascribeth it wholly to *Platoes* feare, whose words, among many other of the same effect; are these, *Plato Molis mentionem facere, ob id, quod nunc Iohanne Deum docuerat, sibi a quid Athenienses tutum non putavit, veritus* *Areopagum*; Plato fearing the *Areopagites*, thought it not safe for him among the *Athenians* to make mention of *Moses*, that he taught that there is but one God. But for that Divinity which he hath written in *TIMÆO*; *id ipsum de Deo didicisti quod & Moses*; He disswayed and taught the same of God (saith *Iustine Martyr*) which *Moses* did. For where it pleased God by his Angell to answer *Moses*, *Ego sum existens* (which is) *I am*; and, *existens misit me ad vos*; *I am hath sent mee unto you*; herein did *Plato* (saith *Iustine Martyr*) no otherwise differ than that *Moses* used the word (*qui*) and *Plato* the word *quod*; *Moses enim qui existit* (*inquit*), *Plato quod existit*; for *Moses* saith,

H

He who is; Plato, That which is. Now of Gods incomprehensible nature, and of the difficulty either to conceive, or expresse the same, he giveth this testimony: *Genitorem Univerſitatis tam difficile eſt invenire, quam inventum poſſibile dignè proſari; It is as hard to finde out the Creator of the Univerſe, as it is impoſſible, if he were found, to ſpeak of him worthily.* And what can be more agreeable to the Majesty of Gods Nature, than this property by Plato acknowledged? *Deus bonus, & quidem, Deus cauſa bonorum: malorum autem omnium non cauſa; God is abſolutely good, and ſo (aſſuredly) the cauſe of all that is good: but of any thing that is evil, he is no cauſe at all.* And again, *Charitas Dei ſuit cauſa ſactionis mundi, & originis omnium rerum; The love of God was the cauſe of the worlds creation, and the original of all things.* Apuleius the Platonist; *Summus Deus infinitus eſt, non ſolum loci excluſione, ſed etiam nature dignitate: & nihil eſt Deo ſimilius & gratius, quam vir animo perfectò bonus; The moſt high God is alſo an infinite God, not onely by excluſion of place, but by the dignity of nature: neither is there any thing more like or more acceptable to God, than a man of a perfect heart.* THALES affirmed, that God comprehended all things, and that God was of all things the moſt ancient: *quia nunquam eſſe cepit; Becauſe he never had any beginning.* ZENO, that God beheld even the thoughts of men. *Athenodorus*, that therefore all men ought to be careful in the actions of their life, becauſe God was every where preſent, and beheld all done. But what can be more agreeable to *Moſes* ſtory of the Creation, than this opinion and deſcription of the Worlds beginning in *Euripides*, Scholar of *Anaxagoras*?

*Cælum terraque unius formæ fuit: Sed cum fuiffent abjuncta amplexu mutuo, Emerſit omnis in lucem res progenita; Arbores, æves, feræ, quæſque aſſert mare, Genſque mortalium.*

And as in *Pythagoras*, in *Socrates*, and in *Plato*; ſo we finde the ſame excellent underſtanding in *Orpheus*, who every-where expreſſed the infinite and ſole power of one God; though he uſe the name of *Jupiter*, thereby to avoid the envie and danger of the time: but that he could attribute thoſe things to the ſons of men, and mortal creatures, which he doth to this *Jupiter*, there is no man, who hath ever heard of God, that can imagine.

*Nomina Deorum (ſaith MIRANDULA) quos ORPHEUS canit, non decipientium demonum, à quibus malum & non bonum provenit; ſed naturalium virtutum divinarumque ſunt nomina; The names of thoſe Gods whom Orpheus doth ſing, are not of deceiving devils, from whom evil comes, and not goodneſſe; but they are the names of naturall and divine virtues.* Yea, that he reacheth higher, and ſpeaketh of God himſelf, this his inſtruction to *Muſæus*, and the Hymn following, teach us: *Reſpiciens verd ad divinum hunc ſermonem ei diligenter animam adverte, intendens cordis rationis capax conceptaculum: rectam autem aſcende viam, & ſolum aſpice mundi regem. Unus eſt ex ſe genitus, ex eo omnia nata ſunt: ipſe verd in illis verſatur, nec quiſquam eum intueri poteſt mortalium, ſed ipſe nihilominus omnes intuetur.*

Then marking this my ſacred ſpeech, but truly lend Thy heart, that's reaſons ſphere, and the right way aſcend, And ſee the worlds ſole King. Firſt, he is ſimply one, Begotten of himſelf, from whom is born alone All elſe; in which hee's ſtill: nor could it ere befall A mortal eye to ſee him once, yet he ſees all.

And again the ſame Author,

*Jupiter omnipotens, & primus, & ultimus idem; Jupiter eſt caput & medium: Jovis omnia munus. Jupiter eſt fundamen huius, & ſtellantis Olympi. Jupiter & mas eſt, & femina neſcia moris. Spiritus eſt cunctis, validi viſ Jupiter igitur. Et pelagi radix, Sol, Luna eſt Jupiter ipſe. Rex & origo ſumum verum eſt, & terminus idem. Nam primus oculuit, magno poſt munimine, ſacrum Cor reſtrams bonus in dulcens dedit omnia lucor.*

The firſt of all is God, and the ſame laſt is he. God is the head and midſt, yea from him all things be, God is the Baſe of earth and of the ſtarred ſkie. He is the male and female too, ſhall never die. The ſpirit of all is God, the Sun and Moone, and what is higher: The King, th' original of all, of all the end. For cloſe in holy breaſt he all did comprehend, Whence all to bleſſed light, his wondrous power did fend.

Now beſides theſe former testimonies, that all the learned men of ancient times were not ſo ſimple and ignorant, as the Egyptians, Græcians, and other Nations by them infected were, I will only repeat two or three other opinions, and leave the Reader to thoſe large and learned Collections of *Juſtine Martyr*, *Clement*, *Laſtintius*, *Enſebius*, *Engubinus*, *Peucer*, *Pleſſis*, *Danaus*, and others. For *Clembertus the Stoick*, being demanded of what nature God was, deſcribed him by theſe attributes and properties: *Bonus, juſtus, ſanctus, ſeipſum poſſidens, utilis, ſpecioſus, optimus, ſeverus, liber, ſemper commodus, iuſtus, glorioſus, charitas, &c.* Good, juſt, holy, poſſeſſing himſelf; profitable, beautifull, beſt, ſevere, free, alwaies doing good, ſafe without ſcare, glorious, and ſelf-charity. *Epicharmus* affirmed, that God who beheld all things, and pierced every nature, was onely and every where

powerful: agreeing with *Democritus*: *Rex omnium ipſe ſolus; He is the onely King of kings: and with Pindarus the Poet, Deus unus, Pater, creator ſummus, atque optimus artifex, qui progreſſus ſingulis diſcerſos ſecundum merita præbet; One God, the Father, the moſt high Creator, and beſt artifice, who giveth to every thing diſers proceedings according to their deſerts.* This God (*ſaith Antiphones*) cannot be reſembled to any thing, and therefore not eſſewhere known: *Niſi in patria illa perenni, cujus imaginem nullam habes; Save onely in that everlaſting Countrey, whoſe image thou haſt none at all.* Hereof alſo *Xenophanes Colophonius*: *Unus Deus inter deos & homines maximus, nec corpore, nec mente mortalibus ſimilis; There is one God among gods and men moſt powerful, neither corporally, nor mentally like unto mortals: and Xenophon, Deus qui omnia quatit, & omnia quieſcere facit, magnus poteſque quod omnibus pater: qualis autem forma ſit, nemini patet, niſi ipſi ſoli, qui luce ſua omnia perſuſtrat; God who ſhaketh all things, and ſetteth all things at reſt, is great and mighty; as is manifeſt to all: but of what forme he is, it is manifeſt to none, ſave onely to himſelf, who illuminateth all things with his own light.* Finally, *Plato ſaith, Totius rerum nature cauſa, & ratio, & origo Deus, ſummus animi genitor, æternus animantium ſoſſitator, aſſiduum mundi ſui opifex, ſine propagatione genitor, neque loco, neque tempore illo comprehenſus, eoque paucis cogitabilis, nemini effabilis; God is the cauſe, ground, and original of the whole nature of things, the moſt high Father of the ſoule, the eternal preſerver of living creatures, the continual framer of his world, a begetter without any propagation, comprehended neither in any place, nor time; therefore few can conceive him in thought, none can expreſſe what he*

Therefore was it ſaid by *Saint Hierome*, *Si enim cunctos Philoſophorum reſolvās libros, nec eſſe eſt in eis reperias aliquam partem uſorum Dei, ut apud Platonem, fabricatorem mundi Deum: ad Zenonem, Stoicorum Principem, inferos & immortales animas, &c.* If thou conſider all the books of the Philoſophers, thou canſt not but finde in them ſome part of the Veſſels of God, as in *Plato*, *God the Creator of the world: in Zeno*, *Prince of the Stoicks*, *Hell and immortal ſouls*, &c. And this is certain, that if we look into the wiſdom of all Ages, we ſhall finde that there never was man of ſolid underſtanding or excellent judgement: never any man whoſe minde the Art of education hath not bended; whoſe eyes a fooliſh ſuperſtition hath not afterward blinded; whoſe apprehenſions are ſober, and by a penſive inſpection adviſed; but that he hath found by an unneceſſary, one true God, and everlaſting being, all for ever cauſing, and all for ever ſuſtaining; which no man among the Heathen hath with more reverence acknowledged, or more learnedly expreſſed, than that Egyptian *Hermes*, howſoever it failed afterward in his poſterity: all being at length by divelliſh policy of the Egyptian Priests purpoſely obſcured; who invented new gods, and thoſe innumerable, beſt ſorting (as the Devil perſwaded them) with vulgar capacities, and fitteſt to keep in awe and order their common people.

## §. VIII.

*That Heathenisme and Judaisme, after many wounds, were at length about the same time under Julian miraculously confounded.*

BUT these are again vanished: for the inventions of mortal men are no less mortal than themselves. The Fire, which the Chaldeans worshipped for a god, is crept into every mans chimney, which the lack of fuel starveth, water quencheth, and want of ayre suffocate: *Jupiter* is no more vexed with *Juno's* Jealousies; *Death* hath perswaded him to chastity, and her to patience; and that time which hath devoured it self, hath also eaten up both the Bodies and Images of him and his: yea their stately Temples of Stone and dureful Marble. The houses and sumptuous buildings erected to *Baal*, can no where be found upon the earth, nor any monument of that glorious Temple consecrated to *Diana*. There are none now in Phœnicia that lament the death of *Adonis*; nor any in Lybia, Creta, Theselia, or elsewhere, that can ask counsel or help from *Jupiter*. The great god *Pan* hath broken his Pipes, *Apollos* Priests are become speechless, and the trade of riddles in Oracles, with the Devils telling men's fortunes therein, is taken up by counterfeit Egyptians, and couzening Astrologers.

But it was long ere the Devil gave way to these his overthrows and dishonours: for after the Temple of *Apollo* at *Delfos* (one of his chief mansions) was many times robbed, burnt, and destroyed; yet by his diligence the same was often enriched, repaired, and re-edified again, till by the hand of God himself it received the last and utter subversion. For it was first robbed of all the Idols and Ornaments therein by the Eubæan Pyrates: Secondly, by the Phlegians utterly sackt: Thirdly, by *Pyrrhus* the son of *Archilles*: Fourthly, by the Army of *Xerxes*: Fifthly, by the Captaines of the Phœnicians: Sixthly, by *Nero*: who carried thence five hundred brazen Images: all which were new made, and therein again set up at the common charge. But whatsoever was gathered between the time of *Nero* and *Constantine*, the Christian Army made spoile of, defacing as much as the time permitted them: notwithstanding all this, it was again gloriously re-built, and so remained till such time as *Julian* the *Apostate* sent thither to know the success of his Parthian enterprise, at which time it was utterly burnt and consumed with fire from Heaven, and the Image of *Apollo* himself, and all the rest of the Idols therein, molten down, and lost in the earth.

The like success had the Jewes in the same *Julians* time, when by his permission they assembled themselves to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem: for while they were busied to lay the foundations, their buildings were overthrown by an earthquake, and many thousands of the Jewes were overwhelmed with the ruines, and others slain, and scattered by Tempest and thunder: though *Am. Marcellinus* report it more favourably for the Jewes, ascribing this to the nature of that Element. For, saith he, *Allypius* and the Ruler of the province of Judea, being by *Julian* busied in the re-edifying of this Temple, flaming Balls of fire issuing neer the foundation, and oft consuming the Work-men, made the enterprize frustrate.

## §. IX.

*Of the last refuges of the Devil to maintain his Kingdom.*

NOW the Devil, because he cannot play upon the open stage of this World, (as in those daies) and being still as industrious as ever, finds it more for his advantage to creep into the minds of men, and inhabiting in the Temples of their hearts, works them to a more effectual adoration of himself than ever. For whereas he first taught them to sacrifice to Monsters, to dead stones cut into faces of Beasts, Birds, and other mixt Natures; he now sets before them the high and shining Idol of glory, the All-commanding Image of bright Gold. He tells them that truth is the Goddess of dangers and oppressions, that chastity is the enemy of Nature, and lastly, that as all virtue (in general) is without taste; so pleasure satisfieth and delighteth every sense: for true wisdom (saith he) is exercised in nothing else, than in the obtaining of power to oppress, and of riches to maintain plentifully our worldly delights. And if this *Arch-Politician* finde in his pupils any remorse, any feeling or feare of God's future judgement, he perswades them that God hath so great need of men's souls, that

he will accept them at any time, and upon any condition: interrupting by his vigilant endeavours all offer of timefull returne towards God, by laying those great blockes of rugged poverty and despised contempt in the narrow passage leading to his divine presence. But as the minde of man hath two Ports, the one alwaies frequented by the entrance of manifold vanities; the other desolate and over-grown with grasse, by which enter our charitable thoughts & divine contemplations: so hath that of death a double and twofold opening, worldly misery passing by the one, worldly prosperity by the other: at the entrance of the one we finde our sufferings and patience to attend us: (all which have gone before us to prepare our joies) at the other our cruelties, covetousness, licentiousness, injustice, and oppressions (the Harbingers of most fearefull and terrible sorrow) staying for us. And as the Devil our most industrious enemy was ever most diligent: so is he now more laborious than ever, the long day of Mankind drawing fast towards an evening, and the Worlds Tragedy and time neere at an end.

CHAP. VII.  
Of Noahs Flood.

## §. I.

*of God's fore-warning: and some humane testimonies: and some doubting touching the truth of Noah's Flood.*

OF this destruction it pleased God to give warning unto *Noah*: who (saith *Iosephus*) fearing to perish among the rest, *Cecedens cum suis in aliam regionem migravit: Ee departed with his children, and travailed into another region.* And of these Giants from whom *Noah* withdrew himself, *Berosus* writeth in this manner: *that they exceeded in all sorts of inhumane and unnatural wickedness; and that they were contemptores & religionis & deorum; contemptors of religion and of the Gods: among which mighty men (saith *Berosus*) unus erat qui deorum venerantior, & prudentior cunctis, &c. hinc nomen erat Noah: who was one more wise and reverencing the Gods than the rest, whose name was Noah: who with his three sons, *Sem*, *Japheth*, and *Cham*, and with their Wives, and the Wife of *Noah*, (namely, *Titea* the great, *Pandora*, *Noch*, and *Noegla*) preserved themselves in the *Arke*. This *Arke* God commanded *Noah* to prepare: And God said unto *Noah*, Make thee an *Arke* of *Pine-trees: thou shalt make make cabins in the Arke, and shalt pitch it within and without with pitch.* For God made *Noah* to know, that an end of all flesh was at hand, and that the graves of the rebellious and cruel Generations were already fashioned in the Clouds, which soon after should swallow up and cover all living creatures which breathed in the aire, *Noah* and his family excepted.*

But this universal grave of waters, and general Deluge hath not been received by all: for divine testimonies do not perswade all natural men to those things to which their own reason cannot reach: *Eum ob oculos in obscuris veritas latet: Whilste the truth lieth wrapped up in obscurity.* Many there are who have disputed against the universality of this overflowing, and have judged that this flood of *Noah* fell but in some particular places and kingdoms: moved so to think, because in elder ages there have been many other floods (as they suppose) of that nature. Hereof *Nicholas Damascenus* writeth in this manner, as his words are cited by *Iosephus*: *Eft super Minyadam excelsum mons in Armenia, qui Baris appellatur, in quo multos confugientes sermo est diluvii tempore liberatos, & quendam simul in Arca deventum in huius vertice habuisse, lignorumque reliquias multo tempore conservatas, qui fortasse is fuit de quo etiam Moses Indæorum legislator scribit: thus saith this Authour, there is (saith he) above *Minyada* (or the country of *Minya*) an exceeding high mountain in *Armenia*, called *Baris*: on which it is reported, that many having fled thither, were saved in the time of the deluge: and that one was carried in an *Arke*, and rested upon the top of the mountain, whereon there remained a long time after certain pieces thereof; and this might be the same of which *Moses* the Law-giver of the Jews makes mention. And of this opinion were*

were the *Thalmudists* (saith *Annius*) that many Giants saved themselves upon Mount Sion.

But *Berosus* (who, after *Moser*, was one of the most antient, howsoever he hath been since deformed & corrupted) doth in the substance of all agree with *Moser* as touching the generall Flood, taking from thence the beginning of his History in these words: *Ante aquarum cladem famosam, qua universus perii Orbis, &c.* Before that famous destruction of Waters, by which the World universall perished: witnessing withall, that *Noah* with his wife *Titea*, and his three sons with their wives (in all eight persons) were only saved

## §. II.

of the Flood in the time of *Ogyges*: and that this was not *Noahs* Flood.

But from the vanity of the Greekes, the Corrupters of all truth (saith *Lactantius*) who without all ground of certainty vaunt their Antiquity, came the error first of all: who therein flattering themselves also, sought to perswade the world that there was no Flood preceded the Flood of *Ogyges*, King of the Thebans in *Bæotia*, or rather of *Attica*; and therefore (saith *Rhodigimus*) *Ogygum* id appellat Poeta, tanquam perveius dixeris, ab *Ogyge* vetustissimo: The Poets gave the name of *Ogygia* to things exceeding ancient, as of *Ogyges* the most ancient.

But let *Ogyges* be as ancient as those men can make him, yet it is manifest that he lived but in *Jacob's* time (though *Eusebius* makes him later, and in *Moser's* time) and was born 67. years after him. There is also an opinion that *Ogyges* was *Cadmus* (and then was he farre later) as *Rhodigimus* in the ninth booke of his Antiquities remembreth: *Sunt tamen qui in Aegypto regnasse autumant hunc: unde sit Cadmus qui in Greciam profectus Thebas condidit, à bove jugulato sic nuncupatus; quoniam Syrorum lingua Bos dicitur Thebe. There are (saith he) who thinke that this Ogyges did reigne in Egypt, whereby he should be Cadmus, who travelling into Greece built Thebes, so named of a Beefe's time: because in the Syrian Language, a Beefe is called Thebe.*

But this Flood of *Ogyges* fell in the yeere of the World, 3440. according to *Eusebius*, who followed the account of the Septuagint: and the Flood of *Noah* in the year 2242. after the same account: and so there came 1200. between these Floods, wanting but two, though herein *Eusebius* was much mistaken, and corrected this opinion in his *Chronologie*. Now although the very year and time of this overflowing in *Achaia*, or rather *Attica*, be not precisely set downe, but that there is a great difference among Writers; yet whosoever makes it most ancient, findes above 500. yeeres difference between that and the generall flood.

For *Paulus Orosius* affirms that this tempest fell upon the Athenians, but 1040. years before Rome was built. *Bucholzernus* saith, it was 1043. elder than Rome; which was founded (according to the same *Bucholzernus*) in the worlds year 3219. though after the account which I follow (and whereof I will give my reasons in the Story of *Abraham*) it was built in the Worlds year, 3280. Now the generall Flood preceded the building of Rome (saith *Bucholzernus*) 1563. yeares: and the Flood of *Ogyges* (as before) 1043. Hence it followeth by easie calculation, that (if he place *Ogyges* in his true age) the difference between these two Floods must be 520. yeares, to which wee (allowing 60. more) find 580. And that this of *Ogyges* was not the same of *Noah* (except we call *Noah*, *Ogyges Priscus*, as some doe) it appears by this, that the Flood of *Ogyges* then King of *Attica* or *Ogygia*, did not extend it selfe any farther than the banks of *Archipelago*, or the *Aegean* Sea. For whereas *Mela*, *Pliny*, and *Solinus* witnesse, that the City of *Joppa* in *Judea* was founded before the Flood; and that (notwithstanding the weight of *Wahlers*) there remained on certaine Altars of stone, the Title of the King, and of his Brother *Phimeus*, with many of the grounds of their Religion: sure it is no where found among prophane Historians, nor in the Scriptures, that ever the Flood of *Ogyges* spread it selfe over any part of *Syria*, much lesse over all the earth. But that it drowned both the Regions of *Attica* about *Athens*, and that of *Achaia* in *Peloponnesus*, it is very probable. For it seemeth that at that time it was, when *Helice* and *Eura* were swallowed up Cities seated on the North part of *Peloponnesus*: of which *Ovid*:

*si queros Helicem, & Euran, Achaïdos urbes, Invenies sub aquis.*

*Eura* and *Helice*, on *Achaian* ground  
Are fought in vaine, but under Sea are found.

Of this Flood of *Ogyges* was invented the Fable of *Apollo* and *Diana*. For *Latona*, the daughter of *Cæus*, the son of *Titan*, being beloved and forced by *Jupiter*, and by him gotten with child, *Juno* thereat enraged, permitted her (as they say) no part of the Earth to be delivered on; and withall, caused the monstrous Serpent *Python* to follow and affright her, wherefore she travelled: till at length arriving at the Isle of *Ortygia*, she was there received; in which she was delivered, first of *Diana*, and then of *Apollo*, being Twins; whereof *Barlaam* makes this exposition: That at such time as the Deluge (which happened in *Ogyges* his reigne) ceased, out of the abundant moisture of the Earth (heat by putrefaction being thereto mixed) there were exhaled such thicke mists and foggies, that in *Attica*, and along the coasts of the *Aegean* Sea, neither the beames of the Sun by day, nor of the Moone by night, could pierce the ayre, or be perceived by the inhabitants: so as when at length (the Earth being dried, and these vapours dissipated) the ayre began to be cleare, the people of *Ortygia* espied the light of the Moone somewhat before day, and in the same morning the Sun also appeared: fabulouly (because *Diana* represented the Moone, and *Apollo* the Sun) they were reported to be borne in the Isle of *Ortygia*, thereof afterwards called *Delos*, which signifieth manifestation.

And surely it is not improbable, that the Flood of *Ogyges*, being so great, as Histories have reported it, was accompanied with much alteration of the ayre, sensibly discerned in those parts, and some unusual face of the Skyes. *Varro* in his Bookes de gente populi *Romani* (as he is cited by Saint *Augustine*) reporteth out of *Castor*, that so great a miracle happened in the Star of *Venus*, as never was seene before, nor in after-times; For the colour, the greatnesse, the figure, and the course of it, were changed. This fell out, as *Adraffus Cysicenus*, and *Dion Neapolites*, famous Mathematicians, affirmed, in the time of *Ogyges*.

Now concerning the course of that or any other Planet, I do not remember, that I have any where read of so good Astrologers, flourishing among the *Greeks*, or elsewhere in those dayes as were likely to make any calculation of the revolutions of the Planets, so exact, that it should neede no reformation: Of the colour and magnitudes I see no reason, why the difference found in the Starre of *Venus*, should be held miraculous; considering, that lesser mists and foggies than those which covered Greece with so long darknesse, do familiarly present our senses with as great alterations in the Sun and Moone. That the figure should varie, questionlesse it was very strange: Yet I cannot hold it any prodigie: for it stands well with good reason, that the side of *Venus* which the Sun beholds, being enlightened by him, the opposite halfe should remain shadowed; so whereby that Planet would, unto our eyes, delcrying only that part whereon the light falleth, appear to be horned, as the Moone doth seeme; if distance (as in other things) did not hinder the apprehension of our senses.

A worthy Astrologer now living, who by the helpe of perspective Glasses hath found in the Starres many things unknowne to the Ancients, affirmeth so much to have beene discovered in *Venus*, by his late observations. Whether some warride disposition of the ayre might present as much to them that lived with *Ogyges*, as *Galienus* hath seen through his Instruments; I cannot tell: sure I am, that the discoverie of a truth formerly unknown, doth rather convince Man of ignorance, than Nature of error. One thing herein is worthy to be noted, that this great, but particular Flood of *Ogyges*, was (as appeareth by this of Saint *Augustine*) accompanied with such unusual (and therefore the more dreadfull, though naturall) signes, testifying the concurrence of causes with effects in that inundation; whereas the Flood of *Noah*, which was generall, and altogether miraculous, may seeme to have had no other token, or fore-shewing, than the long preaching of *Noah* himselfe, which was not regarded: for they were eating and drinking, when the Flood came suddenly, and tooke them all away.



## §. III.

of DEUCALIONS Flood: and that this was not NOAH'S Flood: nor the Umbri  
in Italy a remnant of any universall Flood.

A Second Flood of great fame, and of which the time is more certain, was that of  
Deucalion in Thessalia; of which S. Augustine out of Varro: *His temporibus (ut VARRO  
scribit) regnante Atheniensibus CRANAO, successore CECROPIS (ut autem no-*  
*ftri, EUSEBIUS & HIERONYMUS) adhuc eodem CECROPE permanente, diluvium fuit, quod*  
*appellatum est DEUCALIONIS: (that is) in these times (as VARRO reporteth) CRANA-*  
*us the successor of CECROPS governing the Athenians, or (as our EUSEBIUS and HIEROME*  
*say) CECROPS yet living, that Flood (called DEUCALIONS) happened.*

And in the beginning of the eleventh Chapter of the same eighteenth Book, he ut-  
tereth these words: *Eduxit ergo MOSES ex Egypto populum Dei novissimo tempore Cecropi A-*  
*theniensium Regis, cum apud Assyrios regnaret Alcatades, apud Sicyonios Marathus, apud*  
*Argivos Tripas: MOSES led the people of God out of Egypt about the later time of CE-*  
*CROPS King of the Athenians, Alcatades reigning over the Assyrians, over the Sicyoni-*  
*ans Marathus, and over the Argives Tripas.* So as leaving the curiosity of a few  
years, more or lesse, it appeareth, that this Flood of Deucalion was either at the egressi-  
on of the children of Israel out of Egypt, or near it: and then after Noah 753. yeares,  
according to Functius, who makes Cecrops to live in the year of the World 2409. or if 20  
we follow Mercator, then 739. yeares after Noah, and in the year of the World 2395.  
But if Deucalion were borne in the age of the World 2356. according to Codoman;  
then giving unto Deucalion 40. yeares of age when this Flood happened, it falleth  
within one yeare of Mercators account. But Deucalion by all approved Historians is  
said to have been 82. yeares old at that time. Now Clemens Alexandrinus dates the  
time of this Flood of Deucalion, and the conflagration and burning in Phaëton time, by  
the Reign of Crotopus, King of the Argives; but Crotopus lived King of the Argives sixe  
yeares after Israel departed Egypt, which makes twenty yeares difference, according to  
Functius, who will have this Flood and Burning to have fallen 14. yeares before Moses  
left Egypt: for he gave of the Worlds yeares to the Flood and burning the year 2440. 30  
and to Moses his egression the year 2454. And yet Cedrenus thinks that Moses was  
more ancient, and lived with Inachus; but that cannot be true: for then had the Flood  
of Deucalion, and the burning of Phaëton, preceded the Flood of Ogyges, which is denied  
by all: for that of Thessaly (called Deucalions) followed that of Attica (called Ogygia)  
at least 250. yeares, or thereabouts. Eusebius in his Chronologie makes it 230. & so doth  
P. Orosius: Eusebius about the 50. yeare of Moses life, and Cyrillus about the 67. and  
both after Noahs Flood 770. yeares: for these be Clemens Alexandrinus his words: *Fuit*  
*autem in Græcia tempore quidem Phornei, qui fuit post Inachum, inundatio que fuit*  
*tempore Ogygis: There happened in Greece in the time of Phorneus, who lived after I-*  
*nachus, the Flood of Ogyges. Now if the Flood of Ogyges in Attica were 1020. or 40*  
*1016. yeares before the first Olympiad, according to Eusebius and Orosius (as before) then*  
*is it manifest that taking 763. out of this number of 1020. it falls out that Ogyges flood*  
*happened before the Hebrews left Egypt 250. yeares, or 260. yeares, according to the*  
*difference between the opinions of Eusebius and Orosius. And for my selfe (who rather*  
*follow those Chronologers, which give 60. yeares more to Abraham after the Flood,*  
*than the rest) I reckon the times which come between these Floods in this sort. The*  
*generall Flood was in the year of the World 1656. Jacob was borne in the year of the*  
*World 2169. so as from the beginning of the flood to Jacobs birth, there were consumed*  
*513. yeares. Ogyges flood happened 100. yeares after Jacob was borne; and there-*  
*fore after the generall flood 613. yeares. Now Deucalion was borne in the year of the*  
*World 2356. and had lived 82. yeares when his Kingdome of Thessaly was overwhelm-*  
*med; (which added to 2356. make 2438.) his flood was after Noahs flood ended, 782.*  
*yeares. And hereto Anninus his Xenophon agreeth, who makes 700. yeares between the*  
*generall flood and Deucalions birth; to which added 82. yeares of his Age (as before)*  
*and then the flood of Thessaly followed the generall 782. yeares. The words of that*  
*Xenophon are these: Ab inundatione terrarum ad ortum Deucalionis, secundo anno Spha-*  
*eri, septingenti supputantur anni, qui natus annos duos & octoginta Thessaliam vidit in-*  
*undatam: From the drowning of the World to the birth of Deucalion, in the second*  
yeare

Cedren. l. i. §. 34

Clem. Alex. l.  
stro ex Cies.

Euseb. in Chron.

year of SPHERUS, are numbered 700. yeares, and when DEUCALION was 82. yeares old,  
he saw Thessaly drowned. This Flood happened in the Winter time about Parnassus;  
witnesseth Aristotle in the first of his Meteors. And Varro (whom Saint Augustine so often  
citeth for his excellent Learning, especially in Antiquities) findeth this Flood of De-  
ucalion to have happened in the time of CRANAEUS, who succeeded CECROPS: Orosius thinks  
it somewhat later, Amphitryon reigning in Athens, the third from Cecrops: Only this  
of Deucalion was very great, and reached not only over Thessaly it self, and the Regi-  
ons adjoining Westward, but it covered the greatest part of Italy: and either the same,  
or some other particular Flood then happening, oppressed Egypt, saith Eusebius. And  
therefore did the Greeks either think it, or feigne it to be universall; and Deucalion  
then King, saving himself and some others on the Mountain of Thessaly (of all other  
the highest, saith Solinus) was by reason thereof (as Strabo witnesseth) said to bee the  
preserver of mankind. That this Flood covered a great part of Italy, Pliny, and Solinus  
make it probable, who affirm, that the people then inhabiting Italy, were therefore  
called *ἱταῖοι*: quia ab imbris diluvii superfluentes; and therefore also were they esteemed  
the most ancient Nation, as Strabo confirmeth in his first Booke, and Trezenius in his  
second: which Umbri these Authors make the Parents of the Sabines, and the Sabines to  
be the Parents of the Samnites, Piceni, Lucani, Brutii, and all others inhabiting anciently  
the banks of the Mediterranean Sea. But that these Umbri were not the Inhabiters of  
Italy before the Flood of Noah, and so took name by saving themselves upon the  
Apennine Mountaines, the Scriptures teach us shewing who, and who only then were  
preserved, which is sufficient. Report hath adventured further, telling us, that the first  
people which after the generall Flood inhabited Italy, were the Camerones; (so named  
from Camele, whom CATO in originibus, another of Anninus his Authors, names for a  
consort of Janus) which people lived altogether a savage life till such time as Saturne  
arriving on thole Coasts, devised Lawes to govern them by: the memorie of whose  
Acts in that Region, Diodor and Thallus among the Greeks, Nepos Celsus and Varro a-  
mong the Latines, have preserved; and of whom Virgil:

30 Primus ab aethereo venit SATURNUS Olympo,  
Arma JOVIS fugiens, & regnis exul ademptis,  
Is genus indocile, ac dispersum montibus aliis  
Composuit, Legesq; dedit; Latiniq; vocari  
Maluit.

SATURNE descending from the Heavens high,  
Fearing the Armes of JUPITER his Son,  
His Kingdome lost, and banisht thence, doth fly,  
Rude people on the Mountain tops he won  
To live together, and by Lawes: which done,  
He chose to call it Latium.

And afterward in the Verses following he speaketh of the Ausones, and after them, of  
the Sicani: Nations, which again sought to dis-plant the ancient Inhabiters:

Tum manus Ausonia, & gentes venire Sicani.  
Then came th' Ausonian Bands, and the Sicanian Tribes.

Of these Sicani (which left Spaine, and sate down in Italy) Thucydides and Pliny give  
testimony: who were again expelled by the Ligii, saith Thucydides. After all these  
plantations & replantations, came the Umbri, descended of the Gauls (saith Anninus) not  
of those Gauls of France, but of those of Scythia, who commanded a great part of Italy,  
even all Helvetia and Campania; as Herodotus, Pliny, and Dionysius have assured us: and  
therefore this flood of Deucalion was long after that of Noah. For all those Nations were  
planted in Italy, & dispossessed of Italy again, before the Umbri were ever heard of, or had  
being. So that Kingdome was first called Camasene, then Latium or Saturnia, then Ausonia,  
then Sicania; before the Umbri (in whose time Deucalions flood happened) possessed  
the same, about 306. yeares before the war of Troy; Lycan then governing Arcadia: who be-  
ing the father of two and twenty sons, the youngest called Oenotrius invaded Italy, who  
gave it the name of Oenotria. This name it held until Italus of the same Nation changed  
it into Italy, after his own name, about 250. yeares before the fall of Troy. After these,

Herod. l. 2.  
Plin. l. 3. c. 4.

came the *Pelasgi*, of whom *Pliny* in his third Book and fifth Chapter, and *Strabo* in his fifth, *Thucydides* in his sixth, speak at large : and after them the *Lydi*, under *Tyrrhenus* their Captain, that gave name to the *Tyrrhenis*, who casting thence the *Umbri*, tooke from them three hundred Castles, and built therein twelve Cities: to which (after they had posselt and past over the *Appennine Mountains*) they added divers others, whereof *Tellessa* (afterward *Bononia*) was one.

Now that there was not anciently such a Nation as these *Umbri* in those parts, I doe not affirm: having respect to the testimonies before repeated. And *Stephanus* thinks, that the name was derived from the Greek word *Ombros*; but that these *Umbri* of Italy were descended of the Nation of *Scythians* (called *Galli*) it shall be shewed hereafter. 10

## §. IV.

Of some other Records testifying the universall Flood : and of two ancient Deluges in Egypt : and of some elsewhere.

Euseb. de prep.  
Evang. l. 9. c. 4.

*Saint Augustine* out of *Varro* affirmeth, that the *Greeks* and *Latines* made not any mention of the Universall Flood, because they had nothing of Antiquity foregoing that of *Ogyges*; and therefore (according to *Rhodoginus*, before remembered) were all things among the *Greeks* (which antiquity had worn out of knowledge) called *Ogygia*, which we in *English* commonly call (worm-eaten) or of defaced date. But as all the parts of the Earth were successively planted and peopled; and as all Nations had their proper times, and not their beginning at once and at the instant: so did every Family, which afterward became a great people, with whom the knowledge of divine letters was not received, finde no Parent of more antiquity, than such as they had themselves, nor allow of any before their own; and as the *Grecians*, so did others vaunt themselves to be *Indigenes*, &c. growing out of the Earth, or invent some other prophane or ridiculous beginning. But the *Chaldeans* had certain knowledge of *Noah's Flood*, as *Berosus* witnesseth; and *Nicolas Damascenus* maketh particular mention thereof (as is aforesaid) though he also affirm by hear-say, that some Giants saved themselves upon the Mountains *Barris* in *Armenia*, but speaketh not thereof as from any authority approved: using the word *Sermo est*; That such a speech there was. And *Eusebius* remembereth a place out of the ancient Historian *Abydenus*: who writeth that *Sisithrus*, to preserve himself from a Flood fore-told him by *Saturnus*, fled to the hills of *Armenia* by ship ad *Armenian navigio confugebat*: who the third day (after the waters were fallen) sent forth birds, that finding no land to rest on, returned again; which he also did a second time; but at the third return the birds feet were covered with mud and slime. To this effect are *Eusebius* words out of *Abydenus*, which may seem a true description (though in other terms) of *Noah's Flood*.

Diod. l. 1.

Nar. com. l. 4. c. 6.

*Cyrillus* also affirmeth, that *Alex. Polyhistor* maketh mention of this generall Flood. And *Plato* in *Timeo* produceth an Egyptian Priest, who recounted to *Solon* out of the holy Books of *Egypt*, the story of the Flood universal, which (saith he) happened long before the *Grecian Inundations*. Frier *Annius* his *Xenophon* remembereth a third Flood, which also *Diodorus Siculus* confirmeth, somewhat more ancient than that of *Ogyges*; in *Attica*. For he named the generall Flood for the first, which happened (saith he) under the old *Ogyges*: Sub *prisco Ogyge*, which was *Noah*, he calleth the second *Niliaca*: *Hercules* and *Prometheus* then living, 44. years before that of *Attica*, in the 34. year of *Belosus* King of the *Affrians*, though I doe not believe him as touching the time. But this Flood covered a great part of the nether *Egypt*, especially all the Region subject to *Prometheus*; and hereof came the fable of the Vulture on *Prometheus* his liver, afterward slain by *Hercules* of *Egypt*: which fiction *Diod.* *Siculus* delivereth in these words: *Flovinum propter cursus velocitatem, profunditatemque aquarum, Aquilam tunc appellatum. HERCULEM tum consilii magnitudine, tum virtute, voluit & vestigio compressisse, & aquarum impetum ad priorem cursum convertisse: Unde & Graeci quidam Poeta rem gestam in fabulam vertentes, HERCULEM tradunt Aquilam PROMETHEI jecur depascentem occidisse: This Flood (meaning of *Nilus*) for the swiftnesse of his course, as also for the depth, was in those dayes called the Eagle: but *HERCULES* by his great judgement and vertue did againe compress and straighten this River, so far extended and over-spread, turning it into the old channels: Whence certain Greek poets (converting this labour and work of *HERCULES* into a fable)*

fable) devised, that *HERCULES* slew the Eagle which fed on *PROMETHEUS* liver; meaning that he delivered *Prometheus* of that sorrow and torment, which for the loss of his people and Country (by the Waters destroyed and covered over) he suffered.

A fourth Flood chanced about *Pharus* in *Egypt*, where *Alexander Macedon* built *Alexandria*, as *Annius* conceiveth out of his *Xenophon*, who in this briefe fort writeth of all these Inundations: *Inundationes plures fuerunt: prima novimebris inundatio terrarum sub prisco OGYGE: secunda Niliaca, &c. There were many Inundations* (saith the same *Xenophon*: the first, which was universall, of nine months; and this happened under the first *Ogyges*: the second was *Niliaca*, and of one moneths continuance, in the time of *Hercules* and *Prometheus*, Egyptians: a third of two moneths, under *Ogyges Atticus*: the fourth of three moneths, in *Thessalia*, under *Deucalion*: and a fifth of the lik continuance (called *Pharonica*) under *Proetus* of *Egypt*, about the time of *Helens* rape. *Diodorus* in his fifth Book and eleventh Chapter, taking the *Samotheas* for his Authors, remembereth a Flood in *Asia* the less, and elsewhere, of no less destruction than any of the other particular Inundations, saying, that the same happened before that of *Deucalion*; the Sea of *Tentus* and *Hellepont* breaking in over the Land.

But there have bin many floods in divers times and ages, not inferior to any of these two last remembered, *Niliaca* and *Pharonica* in *Egypt*: as in the year of our Redemption 590. when in October of the same year, *Gregory* then being Bishop of *Rome*, there happened a marvellous overflowing in Italy, and especially in the *Venetian Territory*, and in *Liguria*, accompanied with a most fearfull storm of thunder and lightning: after which followed the great plague at *Rome*, by reason of the many dead Serpents cast up and left upon the land after the waters decreased and returned. And in the year 1446. there perished 10000. people, by the breaking in of the Sea at *Dordrecht* in *Holland*: of which kind I take that Flood to be of *Achaia* or *Attica*. Before that, and in the year 1238. *Triethemus* speaketh of an Earthquake, which swallowed many thousands: and after that of a Flood in *Frisland*, in which there perished 100000. persons. *Strozius Sigog*, in his *Magia omnifaria*, telleth of an Inundation in Italy, in the time of Pope *Damasus*, in which also many Cities of *Sicil* were swallowed: another in the Papacie of *Alexander* the sixth: also in the year 1515. *Maximilian* being Emperor. He also remembereth a perilous over-flowing in *Polonia*, about *Cracovia*, by which many people perished. Likewise *Vignier* a French Historian speaketh of a great Flood in the South part of *Languedoc*, which fell in the year of our Lord 1557. with fo dreadfull a tempest, as all the people attended therein the very end of the World, and judgment day; saying, That by the violent descent of the Waters from the Mountains, about *Nismes* there were removed divers old heaps and mountures of ground, and many other places torne up and rent: by which accident there was found both coyn of silver and gold, divers pieces of plate and vessels of other mettall, supposed to be hidden at such time as the *Goths* invaded that Province, in the year 1156.

40

## §. V.

That the Flood of *NOAH* was supernaturall, though some say it might have been foretold by the Starres.

Now howsoever all these Floods, and many other, which have covered at severall times severall Regions, not only in these parts of the World, but in *America* also, (as I have learned of some ancient Southfayers among them) may be ascribed to naturall causes and accidents; yet that universall Flood (in the time of *Noah*) was poured over the whole face of the Earth by a power above Nature, and by the especiall commandment of God himselfe, who at that time gave strength of influence to the Stars, and abundance to the Fountains of the deep: whereby the irruption of Waters was made more forcible than any ability of nature could effect, or any second causes, by whatsoever union, could performe, without receiving from the Fountain of all power, strength, & faculties supernaturall. *Henricus Mechlunensis*, a Scholler of *Albertus Magnus* in his Commentaries upon the great conjunctions of *Albu Masar*, observeth, that before the Flood of *Noah*, the like conjunction of *Jupiter* and *Saturne* happened in the last degree of *Cancer*, against that constellation since called the Ship of *Argos*; by which the Flood of *Noah* might be fore-told, because *Cancer* is both a watry Signe, and the House

H 3

of

30 **N**OA<sup>h</sup>, commanded by God, before the fall of those Waters, entered the Ark which he had built, with his own wife, and his Sons, and his Sons Wives, taking with them of every creature which took life by generation, seven of the clean, and of the unclean, two. *Noah*, according to *Phile*, signifieth quietness: after others, and according to the prophecy of his Father *Lamech*, cessation; to whom aftertimes gave many Names, answering his antiquity, zeale, virtue, and other qualities: as, *The first Ogyges*, because in the time of the *Grecian Ogyges* there was also a great Floud of *Abacha*: *Saturn* they called him, because he was the Father of Nations: Others gave him the Name of *Promethews*, who was said to steale away *Jupiters* fire; fire in that place being taken and understood for the knowledge of God and heavenly things. Others think, that he was  
40 so called for his excellent wisdom and foresight. He had also the Name of *Jainus*, (*id est*) *vinofus*, because *Jain* signifieth Wine in the Hebrew. And so *Tertullian* findes him written in *Libris Ritumalibus*, in the *Bookes of Ceremonies*, preceeding both *Saturne*, *Venus*, and *Jove*: which three enjoyed an elder time than all the other ancientest feigned gods. And this Name *Jain* is taken from the Hebrew and Syrian, and not from the *Latine*: for it was in use before there was any *Latine* Nation, or any Kingdome by that Name knowne. Of the antiquitie of *Jainus*, *Fabius Pistor* gives this testimony: *JANI* etate nulla erat Monarchia, quia mortalibus peioribus nondum habet nulla regnandi cupiditas, &c. *Vinnus* & *Far* primus populus docuit JANUS ad sacrificia: primus enim *Aras* & *Pomeria* & *sacra* docuit, in the time of *JANUS* (saith he) there was no Monarchie: for the desire of rule  
50 had not then solded it selfe about the hearts of men. *JANUS* first taught the people to sacrifice Wine and Meale: he first set up Altars, intincted Gardens and solitarie Grooves, wherein they used to pray; with other holy Rites and Ceremonies. A greater testimonie than this there cannot be found among the Heathen, which in all agreeth so well with the Scriptures. For first, whilest *Noah* flourished, there was not any King, or Monarch; *Nimrod* being the first that tooke on him soveraigne authority. Secondly, *Noah* after the Flood was the first that planted the Vine, and became a Husbandman; and therefore offered the first-fruits of both (to wit) Wine and Meale. Thirdly, he was the first that rayfed an Altar, and offered sacrifice to God a thanksgiving  
for

for his merciful goodnes towards him. Noah was also signified in the Name of *Bifrons* (which was given to *Janus*) because he beheld the times both before and after the Flood. *Quia preterita novit, & futura profpexerit*, saith ARNOBIUS: Because he knew what was past, and provided for what was to come. He was also in the person of *Janus* shadowed by the Name of *Chaos*, and *Semen Orbis*, The seed of the World: because as out of that confused Heap was drawn all the kinds of beasts and Plants; so from Noah came all Mankind. Whereof *Ovid* in the person of *Janus*:

*Me Chaos antiqui (nam sum res prisca) vocabant,  
Asspice quàm longi temporis ætæ cano.*

The Ancient call'd me *Chaos*: my great yeers  
By those old times, of which I sing, appears.

He was also intitled *Cælum* and *Sol*, Heaven and the Sun, for his excellent knowledge in Astronomy: *Vertumnus*, *Bacchus*, and *Liber Pater*; not that latter, which *Diod. Siculus* and *Alex. Aphrodisius* so call, because he was the restorer of the *Greeks* to their former liberty, but in respect of the Flood. For the *Greeks* called *Liber* in, and his Nurles *Hyades*, of Raine, because Noah entred the Ark when the Sun joyned with the Stars *Hyades*, a constellation in the Brow or Neck of *Taurus*, and ever after a Monument of Noah's Flood. He was also by others surnamed *Triton*, a Marine god, the Son of *Neptune*; because he lived in safety on the Waters. So was he known by the name of *Dionysus*, *quasi Divinus*, *mentem pungens*, Bite-brain, or Wit-stinger; though *Diodorus* conceive otherwise, and derive that name à *Patre & Loco*; Of his Father, and the place of his Birth, (to wit) of *Jove*, and *Nisa*, a Towne of *Arabia felix*, saith *Suidas* out of *Orpheus*. He had also the by-name of *Taurus*, or *Tamophagus*; because he first yoked Oxen, and tilled the ground: according to that of *Moses*; and NOAH became an Husbandman. Now howsoever the *Grecians* vaunt of their *Theban Bacchus*, otherwise *Dionysus* it is certain, that the Name was borrowed, and the Invention stolen from Noah. But this Name came from *Noachus*, (N) being changed into (B); and it is the more probable, because it cannot be doubted but that Noah was the first planter of the Vine after the Flood: and of Noah (the first and ancient *Bacchus*) were all those fables devised; of which *Dionodorus* complaineth in his fourth Book and fifth Chapter. This first *Bacchus* (to wit) Noah, was surnamed *Nysus*, of the Mountain *Nysa* in *India*; where the *Grecian Bacchus* never came, whatsoever themselves feign of his enterprizes: and these Mountains of *Nysa* joyned with those of *Paropamisus*, and those other *Easterne* Mountains, on which the Ark of Noah rested after the Flood.

Furthermore, to the end that the memory of this second Parent of Mankind might the better be preserved, there were founded by his Issues many great Cities, which bare his Name, with many Rivers and Mountains; which oftentimes forgot that it was done in his regard, because the many Names given him brought the same confusion to places as to himself. Notwithstanding all which, we finde the City of *Noah* upon the banks of the red Sea, and elsewhere: the River of *Noas* in *Thrace*, which *Strabo* calleth *Noarus*; the Red Sea, and elsewhere: the River of *Noas* in *Thrace*, which *Strabo* calleth *Noarus*; *Ptolomy*, *Danus*; dividing *Ilyria* from *Pannonia*. Thus much for the Name.

### §. VIII.

Of sundry particulars touching the Ark: as the place where it was made, the matter, fashion, and name.

NOW in what part of the World Noah built the Ark, it doth not appear in the Scriptures, neither do I find any approved Author that hath written thereof; onely *Goropius Becanus* in his *Indo. Scythia* conceiveth, that Noah built his Ark neer the Mountains of *Caucasus*, because on those hills are found the goodliest Cedars: for when *Alex. Macedon* made the war among the people, called *Nysæi*, inhabiting the other side of *Caucasus*, he found all their Burials and Sepulchres wrought over with Cedar. To this place (saith *Becanus*) Noah repaired, both to separate himself from the reprobate Giants, who rebelled against God and Nature, as also because he would not be interrupted in the building of the Ark; to which also he addeth the conveniency of Rivers, to transport the Timber which he used, without troubling any other Carriages.

Onely

Onely this we are sure of, that the Ark was built in some part of the Eastern World; and to my understanding, not far from the place where it rested after the Flood. For Noah did not use any Malt or Sayle (as in other Ships) and therefore did the Ark no otherwise move, than the Hulk or body of a Ship doth in a calme Sea. Also, because it is not probable, that during these continuall and downe-right Raines there were any Windes at all, therefore was the Ark little moved from the place where it was fashioned and set together: for it is written, *God made a Wind to passe upon the Earth, and the Waters ceased*. And therefore it may be gathered, that during the fall of the Waters, there was not any Storme or forcible winde at all, which could drive the Ark any great distance from the place where it was first by the Waters lifted up. This is also the more probable, if that ancient opinion be true, as it is very likely, that the Ark had *fundum planum*, a flat bottom, and not rayed in forme of a Ship, with a sharpennell forward, to cut the waves, for the better speed.

This kind of Vessell the *Hebrewes* call *Thebet*, and the *Greeks* *Larnax*, for so they termed *Dwelling* Ship: and some say, that the Hill *Parnassus*, to which in eight dayes he arrived, was first called *Larnax*, and by the change of (L) into (P) *Parnassus*; but *Pausanias* thinks that it took name of a Son of the Nymph *Cleodora*, called *Parnassus*, the Inventor of *Auguration*.

*Percerus* finds the word (*Parnassus*) to have no affinity with the *Greeks*, but thinks *De Oracul. fol. 94.* it derived from the *Hebrew* word *Mahar*, which signifieth *Auguration* and *Divination*; or *Par* from *Har* or *Parat*, as in his Chapter of Oracles in the Lease before cited.

*Josephus* calls the Ark *Ma-chinai*, by the generall name of a huge Fram; and *Epiphanius* *Epiph. in An. or. out of the Hebrew, Aron*: but herein lieth the difference between *Aron* and *Thebet*. That *Aron* signifieth properly the Ark of the *Sanctuarie*, but *Thebet* such a Vessell, as swimmeth, and beareth it self upon the Waters.

Lastly, this Ark of Noah differed from the fashion of a ship in this, that it had a Cover and Roofe, with a Crest in the middle thereof, and the sides declining like the Roofe of an Houles to the end, both to cast off the Waters, and that thereunder Noah himselfe and his children might shelter, and separate themselves from the noysomnesse of the many Beasts, which filled the other roomes and parts of the Ark.

Of what Wood the Ark was built, it is uncertain. The *Hebrew* word *Gopher* once, and in this place only used, is diversely understood: & though the matter be of little importance, yet this difference there is, That the *Geneva* Translation calls it Pine-tree; the *Rabbins*, Cedar; the *Seventie*, square Timber; the *Latine*, smooth Timber. Other will have it Cypres Trees, as dedicated to the dead, because Cypres is worn at Funerals. But out of doubt, if the word *Gopher* signifie any special kind of Timber, Noah obeyed the voice of God therein; if not, he was not then curious as touching the kind or nature of the wood, having the promise of God, and his Grace and mercie for his defence. For with Noah God promised to establish his covenant: *Plinie* affirmeth, that in *Egypt* it was

the use to build ships of Cedar, which the worms ate not; and he avoweth, that he saw *Plinie* in *Utica*, in the Temple of *Apollo*, Cedar beams, laid in the time of the foundation of the Citie, and that they were still found in his time, which was about 1188. years after: proving thereby, that this kind of wood was not subject to putrefying or mouldring in a very long time. But in that it is easie to cut, light to carrie, and of a sweete savour, lasting also better than any other wood, and because neer the place where the Ark rested, there are found great store of these Cedar trees, as also in all the Mountains of the East, besides those of *Libanus*; it is probable enough that the Ark might be of that wood: which hath, besides the other commodities, the greatest length of Timber, and therefore fittest to build ships withall. *Percerus* conceiveth, that the Ark had divers sortes of Timber, & that the bottom had of one sort, the deck & partition of another; all which may be true or false, if *Gopher* may be taken for Timber in general. True it is, that Cedar will serve for all parts of a Ship, as well for the body, as for Masts and Yards. But Noah had most respect to the direction received from God: to the length, breadth, and height, and to the partitions of the Ark; and to pitch it, and to divide it into Cabines; thereby to sever the clean beasts from the unclean, and to preserve their several sorts of food; and that it might be capable of all kind of living creatures, according to the numbers by God appointed. All which when Noah had gathered together, he cast his confidence wholly on God; who by his Angels steered this Ship without a Rudder, and directed it without

Petrus.

without the helpe of a Compasse or the North star. The Pitch which Noah used, is by some supposed to have bin a kind of *Bismen*, whereof there is great quantity about the Valley of *Sodome* and *Comorab*, now the dead Sea, or *Alphaltes*, and in the Region of *Babylon*, and in the West *India*: and herein it exceedeth other Pitch, that it melts not with the Sun, but by the fire only, after the manner of hard Wax.

## §. IX.

*That the Arke was of sufficient capacite.*

De Civit. Dei.  
lib. 5. c. 25.

**T**he *Arke*, according to Gods commandment, had of length three hundred Cubits, fifty of bredth, and thirtie deepe or high: by which proportion, it had fixe parts of length to one of bredth, and ten times in length to one of depth, of which *S. Augustine*: *Præcudubio figura est peregrinantis in hoc seculo Civitatis Dei, (hoc est) Ecclesie, quæ sit salva per lignum, in quo pependit Mediator Dei & hominum, homo Jesus Christus: nam & mensura ipsa longitudinis, altitudinis, latitudinisque ejus significat corpus humanum, in cuius veritate ad homines prænuuntius est venturus, & venit, &c. Without doubt (saith he) it is a figure of the City of God travailing in this World as a stranger, (that is) of the Church, saved by the Tree, whereupon the Mediator betwene God and Man, the Man Jesus Christ did hang: for even the very measure of the length, height and breadth, answereth the shape of Mans body, in the truth whereof the coming of Christ was fore-told and performed.*

By what kinde of Cubite the *Arke* was measured, it hath bin a disputed question among the Fathers, and others; and the differences are in effect these: The first kind of Cubit (called the common) containeth one foot and a halfe, measured from the sharpe of the elbow to the point of the middle finger. The second (the Palm-Cubit) which taketh one handfull more than the common. The third is called *Regius Cubitus*, or the *Perfian* Cubit, which exceedeth the common Cubit three inches. The fourth is the sacred cubit, which containeth the common or vulgar cubit double, wanting but a quarter or fourth part. Lastly, there is a fifth Cubit, called Geometrical, which containeth six common Cubits. But of all these sorts, which were commonly measured by the vulgar cubit, the alteration and diminution of mensures hath made the difference. For as there is now a lesse proportion of bodies, fois the common Cubit, from the sharpe of the elbow to the point of the middle finger, of lesse length than it was in elder times.

Athen. dignosq.  
lib. 4.  
Plutar. in vita  
Demetrii.

*S. Augustine* considering the many sorts of Beasts and Birds which the *Arke* held, with their food and water, was sometimes of opinion, that the *Arke* had proportion after the Geometrical Cubit, which containeth almost fixe of the Common: For, measuring the *Arke* by the vulgar Cubit, it did not exceed the capacite of that Vessel built by *Hiero* of *Syracuse*, or the Ship of *Ptolomie Philopater*. But *S. Augustine* (who at the first was led by *Origen*) changed his judgement as touching the Geometrical Cubit; and found, upon better consideration, that there needed not so huge a Body to preserve all sorts of Creatures, by God appointed to be reserved. For it was not needfull to take any kindes of Fishes into the *Arke*, because they were kept living (saith *S. Augustine*) in their own element. *Non fuit necesse conservare in Arca quæ possent in aquis vivere, non solum morsâ sicut Pisces, verum super natantia, sicut multæ alites: it was not needfull to conserve those Creatures in the Arke, which could live in the Waters; and not onely Fishes which can live under water, but also those Fowles which sit and swim on them. And againe, Terra, non aqua, maledicta, quia ADAM non hujus, sed illius fructum vetitum comedit: it was the Earth, and not the Waters which God cursed; for of the forbidden fruit of the Earth, and not of the Sea, did ADAM eat. So as *S. Augustine* gathereth hereupon (as aforesaid) that so huge a Frame needed not.*

Aug. de Civit.  
Dei, lib. 5. c. 27.

And if we looke with the eyes of judgement hereunto, we shall find nothing monstrous therein; although the imaginations of men, who (for the most part) have more of mischeife and ignorance, than of any reverend reason, found many impossibilities in this worke of God. But it is manifest, and undoubtedly true, that many of the *Species*, which now seeme differing, and of severall kinds, were not then in *rerum natura*. For those Beasts which are of mixt natures, either they were not in that age, or else it was not needfull to preserve them, seeing they might be generated againe by others: as the Mules, the *Hyænaræ*, & the like; the one begotten by Asses & Mares, and the other by

by Foxes and Wolves. And whereas by discovering of strange Lands, wherein there are found divers Beasts and Birds, differing in colour or stature from those of these Northern parts; it may be supposed by a superficial consideration, that all those which wear red and pied skins, or feathers, are differing from those that are less painted, and wear plain russet or black; they are much mistaken that so think. And for my owne opinion, I find no difference, but only in magnitude, between the Cat of Europe, and the Owne of India; and even those Dogs which are become wilde in *Mexagiola*, with which the Spaniards used to devour the naked Indians, are now changed to Wolves, and begin to destroy the breed of their Cattel, and do also oftentimes teare asunder their own Children. The common Crow and Rook of India is full of red feathers in the drowned and low Islands of Caribana; and the Black-bird and Thrush hath his feathers mixt with black and carnation in the North parts of Virginia. The Dog-fish of England is the Shark of the South Ocean: For if colour or magnitude made a difference of *Species*, then were the Nigro's, which we call the Black-Mores, *non animalia rationalia*, not Men, but some kind of strange Beasts: and so the Giants of the South America should be of another kind, than the people of this part of the World. Wee also see it daily, that the natures of Fruits are changed by transplantation, some to better, some to worse, especially with the change of Clymate. Crabs may be made good Fruit by often grafting, and the best Melons will change in a year or two to common Cowcummers, by being set in a barren Soyle. Therefore, taking the kinds precisely of all Creatures, as they were by God created, or out of the Earth by his Ordinance produced; the *Ark*, after the measure of the common Cubit, was sufficiently capacious to contain of all, according to the number by God appointed: For if we adde but half a foot of measure to the common Cubit, which had a foot and a halfe of Giantly stature (and less allowance we cannot give to the difference between them and us) then did the *Arke* contain 600. foot in length, and 100. foot in bredth, and 60. foot deep.

But first of all, to make it manifest that the Geometrical Cubit is not used in the Scripture, the stature of the Giants therein named may suffice. For if the bed of *Os*, King of *Babylon*, had been nine Geometrical Cubits long, it had taken 54. Cubits of the common, which make 80. foot: and *Goliath*, who had the length of six Cubits and a handfull, which makes nine foot and a handfull (a proportion credible) if these Cubits had been Geometrical, then had been 54. foot in height, and upwards, which were monstrous and most incredible: for (according to this proportion) had the head of *Goliath* been nine foot long, and far weightier and bigger than all *David's* body, who carried it away.

Againe, if the Geometrical Cubit had been used for a Measure in the Scriptures, many Commenters have observed, then had the Altar (appointed to contain five Cubits of length, five of bredth, and three of height) have reached the length of 27. foot upright, and so must their Priests have ascended by steps or Ladders to have performed their Sacrifices thereon, which was contrary to Gods Commandment given in these words: *Thou shalt not go up with steps unto mine Altar, that thy shame be not discovered thereon*; and therefore was the Altar but three common Cubits high, which make four foot, that their Priests standing thereby might execute their Office. Wherefore I may conclude, that the Cubit mentioned in the Scriptures was not the Geometrical, but the ordinary Cubit of one foot and a half, according to the measure of Giantly stature; which measure (doubleless) might give much the more capacity to the *Ark*; although it be also probable, that as the Men were, so were the Horses whereon they rode, and all other creatures of a correspondent size. And yet (as I take it) though by this means there were not any whit the more room in the *Arke*, it were not hard to conceive, how all the distinct *Species* of Animals, whose lives cannot be preserved in the Waters, might according to their present quantities be contained in a Vessel of those dimensions which the *Ark* had; allowing to the Cubit one foot and a half of our now usual measure: whence it followeth of necessity, that those large bodies which were in the daies of *Noah* might have room sufficient in the *Ark*, which was measured by a Cubit of length proportionable.

How the appointed number of creatures to be saved, (that is, seven of the clean, two of the unclean (with necessary food) might have place in the *Arke*; *But* we have yet left

learnedly declared: the brief sum of whose discourse to that purpose, is this. *The length of the ark was three hundred Cubits, which multiplied by the breadth, namely fifty cubits, and the product by the height of thirty cubits, sheweth the whole Concavity to have been 450000. Now whereas the posts, walls, and other partitions of Lodgings may seem to have taken up a great part of the hallow: the height of the roof, which (the perpendicular being one Cubit) contained 7500 cupicall Cubes was a sufficient recompence: If therefore in a Ship of such greatness we seek room for 89 distinct species of Beasts, or (least any should be omitted) for 100. several kinds, we shall easily finde place both for them, and for the Birds, which in bigness are no way answerable to them, and for meat to sustain them all. For there are three sorts of Beasts, whose bodies are of a quantity best known; the Beef, the Sheep, and the Wolf: to which the rest may be reduced, by saying, (according to *Aristotle*) that one Elephant is answerable to four Beeves, one Lyon to two Wolves, and so of the rest. Of Beasts, some feed on vegetables, others on flesh. There are one and thirty kinds of the greater sort, feeding on vegetables: of which number, only three are clean, according to the Law of *Moses*, whereof seven of a kinde entred into the *Ark*, namely, three couples for breed, and one odde one for sacrifice: the other eight and twenty kinds were taken by two of each kinde, so that in all there were in the *Ark* one and twenty great Beasts clean, and six and fifty unclean, estimable for largeness as ninety one Beeves; yet for a supplement (lest perhaps any Species be omitted) let them be valued as a hundred and twenty Beeves. Of the lesser sort feeding on vegetables, were in the *Ark* six and twenty kinds, estimable with good allowance for supply, as fourscore Sheep. Of those which devour flesh were two and thirty kinds, answerable to threescore and foure Wolves. All these two hundred and eighty Beasts might be kept in one story or room of the *Ark*, in their several Cabines; their meat in a second: the Birds and their provision in a third, with place to spare for *NOAH* and his family, and all their necessities.*

## §. X.

That the *Ark* rested upon part of the hill *Taurus* (or *Caucasus*) between the East Indies, and *Scythia*.

## ||. I.

A preterition of some questions less material: with a note of the use of this question to finde out the Metropolis of Nations.

What time *NOAH* took to build the *Ark*, I leave to others to dispute: but here received the Commandment from God, a hundred years before the waters fell; and had therefore choice of time and leisure sufficient. As for the number of Decks and Partitions, which *Origen* divides into foure, *S. Augustine* into three, I will not trouble the Reader with the controversy: or whether those creatures which sometimes rest on the Land, other times in the Waters, as the Crocodiles (now called *Alegators*) the Sea-Cowes or Sea-Horses, were kept in the *Ark*, or no, I thinke it a needless curiosity; and yet to this faith *Pererius*, and others before him, that a Filpooles might be made as well within the *Ark*, as in *Hiero* his Ship of *Syracuse*. Lastly, to consider or labour to disprove the foolery of the *Hebrews*, who suppose that the *Ark* was lightened by a Carbuncle, or had Windows of Crystal to receive in Light, and keep out Water, were but to revive the buried vanities of former times. But that which I seek most to satisfy myself and others in, is, in what part of the World the *Ark* rested after the Flood: because the true understanding of some of these places (as the seat of the terrestrial *Paradise*, and the resting of the *Ark*) do onely and truly teach the Worlds Plantation, and the beginning of Nations; before and after the Flood; and all story, as well general as particular, thereby may be the better understood.

## ||. II.

A proposal of the common opinion, that the *Ark* rested upon some of the Hills of *Armenia*.

And first, for the true place where the *Ark* rested after the Flood, and from what part of the World the Children of *NOAH* travailed to their first settlement and plan-

plantation, I am resolved (without any presumption) that therein the most Writers were utterly mistaken. And I am not led so to thinke out of my Humour or newnesse of opinion, or singularity; but doe herein ground my selfe on the originall & first truth, which is the word of God, and after that upon reason, and the most probable circumstances thereon depending. For whereas it is written, that the *Arke* layed upon one of the mountaines of *Ararat*, which the *Chaldean Paraphrast* hath converted *Kardu*, meaning the hills *Gordai* or *Gordiai* in *Armenia* the greater: (as the words *Gordai* and *Kardu* seem to be one and the same) of which opinion also the most of our Interpreters are; I finde neither Scripture nor reason which teacheth any such thing: (to wit) that it rested on that part of *Ararat*, which is in the greater *Armenia*. *Nicolaus Damascenus* calls this mountain of *Ararat*, *Baris*; being the same which the *Chaldean* nameth *Kardu*, to which mountain the Fryer *Annus* (citing this place out of *Josephus*) makes him finde another adjoining, called *Ocala*, and to say that the *Arke* (of which *Moses* the Lawgiver of the *Hebrewes* wrote) did first take ground on this *Ocala*. But I doe not finde any such mountain in being, as this *Ocala*, neither is there any mention of it in the place of *Josephus*. *Strabo* remembereth a Promontorie in *Arabia felix* of that name; and *Plinie* findes a Mart-towne so called in the same, which *Plinios* calls *Ocalis*, *Pineus* *Acyla*, and *Niger Zidon*. But this *Ocala* of *Damascenus*, or rather of *Annus*, seemeth to be one and a part of the *Armenian* mountains. *Berosus* calleth those mountains of *Armenia* *Gordiai*, and *Curtius Cordai*: *Plinios* *Gordai* and *Gordiai*: of which the Countrey next adjoining is by *Hiero* 51. 27. this *Nicolaus Damascenus* called *Ninyada*, perhaps (as *Becanus* conjectures) for *Milyada* or rather *Minni*: which word is used for *Armenia Minor*. And the very word of *Armenia* seemes to be compounded of this word *Minni*, and *Aram*: as if we should say *Minni* Nat. hist. l. 5. cap. 12. of *Syria*; for that *Armenia* also was a part of *Syria*, *Plinie* witnesseth. *Epiphanius* placeth the *Cardyes* about these mountains, whom others call *Gordien* or *Gordien*. The mountaines are feated apart from all other to the North of that Ledge of the mountaines called *Taurus*, or *Niphates* in the plaines of *Armenia* the great, neere the Lake *Thosphiris*: whence the River of *Tygris* floweth in 75. degrees of longitude, and 41. and 52. degrees of latitude. One of the mountaines *Gordiai* (that which surmounteth the rest) 30 *Epiphanius* calls *Lubar*, which in the *Armenian* signifieth a place of descent: but this out of *Josephus*; which name (saith *Junius*) was of the event, because of *Noahs* coming downe with his children. But this also I take to be a supposed event; seeing any hill from whence on every side we must descend, may thus be called: as *Junius* corrects the place in *Josephus* *καταβας* (*Kubaris*). That the place is thus to be read, he conjectureth, because *Joseph*. l. i. c. 4. sayes, the place is called *καταβας* (as it were the descent or coming downe) and *Epiphanius*. l. i. contr. *Heref*. calls it *καταβας* which word in the *Armenian* and *Egyptian* tongue signifieth descent, of *Lubar*, which is to descend; whence also *Lubra* is a *Synagogue*, because it was commonly built on some high place: whereof also the *Latine Delubrum* may seem to be derived; and *Ath*. 6. 9. they that belonged to the *Synagogue* 40 of the *Egyptians* are called *Libertini*, for *Lubra tenu*. Yet this opinion hath bene embraced from age to age, receiving a habit of strength by time, and allowance without any farther examination; although the name of *Lubar* might otherwise rightly be given, especially to that mountain, by reason that the passage was more faire, up and downe unto it, than to any of the rest adjoining.

## ||. III.

The first argument against the common opinion. They that came to build *Babel*, would have come sooner, had they come from so neere a place as *Armenia*.

But there are many arguments to perswade me, that the *Arke* of *Noah* did not rest it selfe in any part of *Armenia*, and that the mountain *Ararat* was not *Baris*, nor any one of the *Gordian* mountaines.

For the first, it is agreed by all which follow *Berosus*, that it was in the 130. yeer, or in *Beros* l. 1. the yeer 131. after the flood, when *Nimrod* came into the valley of *Shinar*, which valley was afterward called *Babylonia*, *Chus*, and *Chaldea*. If then the *Arke* had first found land in *Armenia*, it is very unprobable, that the children of *Noah* which came into that valley could have spent so many yeers in so short a passage: seeing the Region of *Mesopotamia* was onely interjacent, which might by easie journeyes have bene past over in twenty



twenty days; and to hasten and help which passage, the navigable River of *Tygris* offered it selfe, which is every where transpassable by boats of great burden: so as where the Desert on the one side resisted their expedition, the River on the contrary side served to advance it; the River rising out of the same ledge of mountains, or at the foot of them, where the Ark of *Noah* was first supposed to settle it selfe; Then if the Nations which followed *Nimrod* still doubted the surpris of a second flood (according to the opinions of the ancient Hebrews) it foundeth ill to the ease of reason, that they would have spent many years in that low and overflown Valley of *Mesopotamia*, so called of the many rivers which imbroyder or compass it; for the effects witnessed their affections, and the works which they undertook, their unbelief; being no sooner arrived in *Shinar*, but they began to provide themselves of a defence (by erecting *Babel*) against any future or feared inundation. Now at *Babel* it was that *Nimrod* began his Kingdome, the first known City of the World, founded after the flood about 131. years, or (as others suppose) ten years later: though (for my selfe) I rather think, that they undertook that work in two respects; first, to make themselves famous *To get us a name* (saith the Text;) Secondly, thereby to usurp dominion over the rest.

## ||. IIII.

The second Argument, That the Eastern people were most ancient in populositie, and in all humane glory.

For a second Argument: The civility, magnificence, and multitude of people (wherein the East parts of the World first abounded) hath more weight than any thing which hath been, or can be said for *Armenia*, and for *Noahs* taking land there. And that this is true, the use of Printing and Artillery (among many other things which the East had) may easily perswade us, that those Sun-rising Nations were the most ancient. The certainty of this report, that the East *Indians* (time out of mind) have had Guns and Ordnance of battery, confirmed by the *Portugals* and others, make us now to understand, That the place of *Philostratus* in *vita Apollonii Tianeai*, l. 2. c. 14. is no fable, though express in fabulous words: when he saith, that the wise men which dwell between *Typhastis* and *Ganges*, use not themselves to go forth into battaile; but that they drive away their enemies with thunder and lightning sent from *Jupiter*. By which means there it is said, that *Hercules Aegyptius* and *Bacchus*, joyning their forces, were defeated there; and that this *Hercules* there cast away his golden shield. For the invention of letters was ignorantly ascribed to *Cadmus*, because he brought them first into Greece: of which the people (then rude and savage) had reason to give him the honour, from whom they received the benefit. But it is true, that letters are no lesse ancient than *Seth* or *Henoch* were: for they are said to have written on pillars of stone (as before remembred) long before the flood. But from the Eastern world it was that *John Gutenberg a Germane*, brought the device of Printing: by whom *Conradus* being instructed, 40 brought the practise thereof to *Rome*: and after that *Nicholaus Gersjon a Frenchman*, bettered both the letters and invention. And notwithstanding that this mystery was then supposed to be but newly borne, the *Chinoas* had letters long before either the *Egyptians* or *Phenicians*; and also the Art of Printing, when as the Greeks had neither any civill knowledge, or any letters among them.

And, that this is true, both the *Portugals* and *Spaniards* have witnessed, who about an hundred years since discovered those Kingdomes, and doe now enjoy their rich trades therein: for the *Chinoas* account all other nations but salvages in respect of themselves.

And to adde strength to this argument, the conquest and story of *Alex. Macedon* may justly be called to witness, who found more Cities and sumptuosity in that little Kingdome of *Porus*, which lay side by side to the East *India*, than in all his other travails and undertakings. For in *Alexanders* time, learning and greatness had not travailed so far to the West as *Rome*. *Alexander* esteeming of *Italy* but as a barbarous Country, and of *Rome* as of a Village. But it was *Babylon* that stood in his eye, and the fame of the East pierced his ears. And if we look as far as the Sun-rising, and hear *Paulus Venetus* who: he reporteth of the uttermost Angle and Island thereof, we shall finde that those Nations have sent out, and not received; lent knowledge, and not borrowed it from the West. For the farther East (to this day) the more civill, the farther West, the more Salvage. And

and of the Ile of *Japan* (now *Zippingari*) *Venetius* maketh this report: *Incolae religioni, literis, & sapientie sunt addictissimi, & veritatis indagatores acerrimi; nihil illis frequentius oratione, quam (more nostro) sacris in delubris exercent: unum cognoscunt Principem, unum Deum adorant: The Islanders are exceedingly addicted to religion, letters, and philosophy, and most diligent searchers out of truth: there is nothing among them, more frequent than prayer, which they use in their Churches, after the manner of Christians: They acknowledge one King, and worship one God. The antiquity, magnificence, civility, riches, sumptuous buildings, and policie in government, is reported to be such by those who have bin employed into those parts, as it seemeth to exceed, in those formerly named, and divers 10 other particulars all other Kingdomes of the World.*

## ||. V.

The third Argument, from the wonderfull resistance which *SEMI RAMIS* found in the East *Indies*.

But for a third argument, and also of a treble strength to the rest, I lay the invasion of *Semiramis* before the indifferent and advised Reader: who may consider in what age she lived, and how soon after the Worlds new birth she gathered her Army (as *Diodorus Siculus* out of *Ctesias* reporteth) of more than three millions to invade *India*, 20 to which he adjoynd also 500000. Horses; and 100000. Waggon: whereof if we believe but a third part, it shall suffice to prove that *India* was the first planted and peopled Country after the flood. Now as touching the time wherein she lived: All Historians consent that she was the Wife of *Nimrod*, and the most approved Writers agree, that *Ninus* was the Son of *Belus*, and *Belus* of *Nimrod*, that *Nimrod* was the Son of *Cush*, *Cush* of *Cham*, and *Cham* of *Noah*. And at such time as *Nimrod* came to *Shinar*, he was then a great Nation, as by the building of the City and Tower of *Babel* may appeare; and being then so multiplied and increased, the two descents cast between *Nimrod* and *Semiramis*, brought forth in that time those multitudes, whereof her Army was composed. Let us then see with whom she encountered in that War with this her powerful Army: even with a multitude, rather exceeding, than equalling her own conducted by *Staurobates* King of *India* beyond *Indus*; of whose multitudes this is the witness of *Diod. Siculus*. *STAUROBATES avitis majoribus, quim quae erant SEMIRAMIDIS copis: STAUROBATES gathering together greater Troops than those of SEMIRAMIS*. If then these numbers of *Indians* had bene increased but by a *Colonie* sent out from *Shinar* (and that also after *Babel* was built, which no doubt took some time in the performance) this increase in the East, and this Army of *Staurobates* must have been made of stone, or somewhat else by miracle. For as the numbers which *Semiramis* gathered might easily grow up in that time, from so great a Troop as *Nimrod* brought with him into *Babylonia* (as shall bee demonstrated hereafter in the Story of *Israel*) so 40 could not any such time, by any multiplication natural, produce so many bodies of men as were in the *Indian* Army victorious over *Semiramis*, if the *Colones* sent thither had been so late as *Babel* overturned, and the confusion of Languages. For if we allow 65. years time after the Flood, before *Nimrod* was borne: of which, thirty yeares to *Cush* ere he begat *Seba*, after whom hee had *Havilah*, *Sabtah*, *Raamah*, and *Sabtecha*: and then thirty yeares to *Raamah*, ere he begat *Sheba* and *Dedan*, both which were borne before *Nimrod*: and five yeares to his five elder brothers, which make fixty five, and then twice thirty yeares for two Generations more, as for *Nimrod*, *Sheba* and *Dedan* with others, to beget their sonnes; and that a third Generation might grow up, which makes in all an hundred twenty five yeares; there will then remaine 50 six yeares to have been spent in travelling from the East, ere they arrived in *Shinar*, in the year after the Flood 131. And so the followers of *Nimrod* might be of sufficient multitude. But as for those which make him to have arrived at *Shinar* in the year 101. and the confusion to have been at *Pelegis* birth, these men doe all by miracles: they beget whole Nations without the help of time; and build *Nimrods* Tower in the Ayre; and not on those low and marshy grounds (which require sound foundations) in the Plains of *Shinar*. For except that huge Tower were built in a day, there could be no confusion in that year 101. or at *Pelegis* birth. And therefore it is farre more probable, that *Nimrod* usurped Regall authority in the 131. year after



Glyc. in Gen. 6.  
de Turris co-  
struendae  
fol. 173.

after the Flood, (according to *Berosus*) and that the work of *Babel* lasted forty yeares (according to *GLYCAS*) *Hominihus in ea perficienda totis 40. annis incassum laborantibus; Men labouring in vain 40. yeares to finish it.* By which account it falls out that it was 170. yeares after the Flood, ere a *Colomie* was sent into *East India*; which granted (the one be-  
ing the main Body, and the other but a Troop taken thence) it can hardly be believed that *Storobates* could have exceeded *Semiramis* in numbers: who being then Emperess of all the part of that world, gathered the most of Nations into one body.

## || VII.

The fourth Argument from divers considerations in the person of NOAH.

Fourthly, it is no way probable, that *Noah*, who knew the world before the Flood, and had lived therein the long time of 600. yeares, was all that space 130. yeares after the flood without any certain habitation: No, it will fall out, and better agree with reason, that *Nimrod* was but the conductor of those people, by *Noah* destined & appointed to fill and inhabit that middle part of the earth and the Westerne Worlds; (which traivales *Noah* put over to young and able bodies) and that *Noah* himself then covered with many yeares, planted himselfe in the same place which God had assigned him; which was, where he first came down out of the Ark from the waters: for it is written, that after *Noah* came downe out of the Arke, he planted a Vineyard, and became a Husbandman, whose business was to dresse and manure the Earth; and not to range over so many parts of the world, as from *Armenia* into *Arabia felix*, where he should (if the tradition be found) have left certain Colonies: thence into *Africa* towards *Triton*, then into *Spain*, where they say he settled other companies, and built Cities after the names of *Noela* and *Noegla* his Sons Wives: from thence into *Italy*, where they say he found his Sonne *Cham* the *Saturne of Egypt*, who had corrupted the people and subjects of *Gomer* in his absence: with whom *Noah* (as they make the story) had patience for three yeares; but then finding no amendment, they say he banisht him out of *Italy*. These be but the fancies of *Berosus Ammianus*, a plain imitation of the Grecian fables. For let every reasonable man conceive, what it was to traivale far in such a forreist as the World was, when after so great a rotting of the Earth by the Flood, the samelay waste and over-grown for 130. or 140. yeares, and wherein there could hardly be found either part or passage through which men were able to creep for woods, bushes, and bryars that in those yeares were grown up.

And there are so many reasons, proving that *Noah* never came into the valley of *Shinaar*, as we need not suspect his passage into *Italy* or *Spain*: For *Noah*, who was Father of all those Nations, a man revered both for his authority, knowledge, experience and piety, would never have permitted his children and issues to have undertaken that unbelieving presumptuous work of *Babel*. Rather by his presence and prevalent perswasions he would have bound their hands from so vain labours, & by the authority which he received even from God himselfe, he would have held them in that awfull subjection, as whatsoever they had vainly conceived or feared, yet they durst not have disobeyed the personall commandment of him, who in the beginning had a kinde of Regall authority over his children and people. Certainly, *Noah* knew right well, that the former destruction of mankind was by themselves purchased through cruelty and disobedience; and that to distrust God, and to raise up building against his Almighty power, was as much as in them lay, a provocation of God to lay on them the same, if not a more sharp affliction. Wherefore, there is no probability, that ever he came so far West as *Babylonia*; but rather, that he sent those numbers which came into *Shinaar* (being the greatest troop, because they had the greatest part of the world to plant) under *Nimrod*, or those upon whom he usurped. *Nauclerus* and *Celestinus* take the testimony of *Methodius* Bishop of *Tyre* for current, that there were three Leaders of the people after their increase (to wit) *Nimrod*, *Sephene*, and *Joctan*: of which *Nimrod* commanded the issues of *Cham*, *Joctan* of *Sem*, and *Sephene* of *Japhet*. This opinion I cannot judge of, although I will not doubt, but that so great a work as the Worlds plantation, could not be effected without order and conduction.

Of the sonnes of *Sem*: *Joctan*, *Hasuilah*, and *Ophir*, are especially noted to have dwelt in the *East India*. The rest of *Sem's* issues had also the Regions of *Persia* and the other adjoining

adjoining to *Indus*, and held also a part of *Chaldea* for a time: for *Abraham* inhabited *Ur*, till he was thence called by God; and whether they were of the sons of *Joctan*, or of all the rest a certain number (*Cham* and his issue only excepted) that *Noah* kept with himselfe, it cannot be known. Of which plantation I shall speak at large in the Chapter following.

Now another reason which moves me to believe that *Noah* stayed in the East far away from all those that came into *Shinaar*, is, that *Moses* doth not in any word make mention of *Noah* in all the story of the Hebrewes, or among any of those Nations which contended with them. And *Noah* being the Father of all mankind, and the chosen servant of God, was too principall a person, to be either forgotten or neglected, had he not (in respect of his age and wearisome experience of the World) withdrawne himselfe, and rested a part with his best beloved, giving himselfe to the service and contemplation of God and heavenly things; after he had directed his children to their destined portions. For he landed in a warm and fertile soile, where he planted his Vineyard, and drest the Earth; after which, and his thank-giving to God by sacrifice, hee is not remembered in the Scriptures, because he was so farre away from those Nations of which *Moses* wrote: which were the Hebrews chiefly, and their enemies and borderers.

## || §. VII.

Of the senselesse opinion of ANNIUS the Commentor upon BEROSUS: who findes divers places where the Ark rested; as the Caspian and Gordian hills which are three hundred miles asunder, and also some places of Scythia.

It remaineth now that we examine the Arguments and Authorities of *Frier Annii*, who in his Commentaries upon *Berosus* and others, laboureth marvailously to prove that the Arke of *Noah* rested upon the Armenian Mountains called *Caspri*; which mountains separate Armenia from the upper Media, & do equally belong to both. And because all his Authors speak of the mountains *Gordiaei*, he hath no other shift to unite these opinions, but by uniting those far-distant mountains together. To effect which, he hath found no other invention, than to charge those men with error, which have so carefully over-seen, printed, and published *Plolomies* Geography, in which they are altogether dislevered. For that last edition of *Mercators*, sets these hills five degrees (which makes three hundred English miles) asunder. And certainly, if we look into those more ancient copies of *Villanovannus* and others, we shall finde nothing in them to help *Annius* withall: for in those the mountains *Caspri* stand seven degrees to the East of the *Gordiaei*, which maks 420. miles. And for those Authors by whose authority *Annius* strengtheneth himselfe, *Diodorus* whom he so much followeth, giveth this judgment upon them in the like dispute. *Aberantur vero omnes, non negligentia, sed regnorum sine ignorantia; they have altered (saith he) not through negligence, but through ignorance of the situation of Kingdomes.* But for an induction, to prove that the Ark of *Noah* stood on the mountains of Armenia, he beginneth with the antiquity of the Scythians: and to prove the same he citeth *Marcus Portius Cato*, who avoweth that 250. yeares before *Nimus*, the earth was over-flown with waters, & in Scythia *Saga renatum mortale genus; and that in Scythia the stock of mortall men was renewed.* The same Author also teacheth, that the *Umbri* before remembered (who were so called, because saved from *Deucalions* Flood) were the sonnes of the *Galli*, a Nation of the Scythians. *Ex his venisse JANUM cum DYRIM, & Gallis progenitoribus Umbrosum; From these Scythians, he saith, that JANUS came with DYRIM, and with the Galli the progenitors of the Umbri.* And againe, *Equidem principatus originis semper Scythiis tribuitur; Certainly, the Prime Antiquity of Off-spring is alway given to the Scythians.* And herein truly I agree with *Annius*, that those Regions called Scythia, and now Tartaria, and by some Writers *Sarmatia*, *Asatica*, were among the first peopled: and they held the greatest part of Asia under *Tribute* till *Nimus* time. *Allo Plinie* called the *Umbri* which long since inhabited *Italy*, *Gens antiquissima, a most ancient Nation*, who descended of these Scythians. Now that which *Annius* laboureth, is to prove that these ancient Scythians (meaning the Nephewes of *Noah*) did first inhabite that Region of the mountains, on which the Ark rested; and confessing that this great Ship was grounded in Armenia, he feigneth a nation of Scythians called *Araxea*, taking name of the mountain *Ararat*, near the River of *Araxes*. And because his Author *Cato* helpeth him in part

Berof. l. 1.

Ptol. Asia. lib. 7.

Gen. 11. 2.

L. 6. c. 17.

Tab. Asia. 7. &amp; 8.

Rbe, now

Wolga.

Com. 2. Asia.

fol. 472.

Ad meridiem  
flexo Bosporo  
pers. Ispahan  
nolis ponte Eu-  
xini usque in  
offium Caspi  
fluvii: unde re-  
fist à parte  
dextra Colchis  
Beris, Albanis  
in litus Hyrcan-  
ni: maris proce-  
dit.

Sp. hist. l. 30.

(to wit, That in Scythia mankind was restored after the great flood 250. years before Ninus) and in part utterly destroyeth his conceit of Armenia, by adding the word Sages; as, *In Scythia Sage renatum mortale genus*; in Scythia Sage mankind was restored, he therefore in the Proemio of his Commentary upon Berojus, leaveth out the addition of Sage altogether in the repetition of Cato his words, and writes, *homines in Scythia saluatos*. For Scythia Saga or Saca; is undoubtedly under the Mountaines of Paropamisus; on which, or near which it is most probable that the Arke first took ground: and from thence the East parts (according to Moses) came all those companies which erected the Tower of Babel in Shinaar or Babylonia.

But now the best authority which Amnius hath, is out of Diodorus: where he hath read that the Scythians were originally Armenians, taking name à Scythia Rege eorum, from Scythia their King. But (in a word) we may see his vanity, or rather (indeed) his fallshood in citing this place, For Diodorus, a most approved and diligent Author, beginneth in that place with these words: *Fabulantur Scythæ; The Scythians fable*; and his Interpreter in the table of that work giveth this title to that very Chapter. *Scytharum origo & successus, fabula; The original and success of the Scythians, a fable*. And (indeed) there needs no great disproof hereof, since Ptolomy doth directly delineate Scythia Saga or Saca, and sets them in 130. degrees of longitude: and the Persians (saith Herodotus) call all the Scythians, Saces; which Pliny confirmeth: for in respect that these Saca (saith Pliny) are the next Scythians to the Persians, therefore they gave all the rest that name. Now that any Nation in Armenia can neighbour the Persians, there is no man believeth. But this supposed Scythia Araxea in Armenia lieth in 78. degrees of longitude (that is) 42. degrees distant from the Saca; and the Country about Araxes Ptolomy calleth Colchene and Soduene & Sacapene without any mention of Scythia at all; and yet all those which are or were reputed Scythians either within Imaus or without, to the number of 100. several Nations, are by Ptolomy precisely feid down.

But to come to those latter Authors, whereof some have written, others have seen a great part of those North-East Regions, and searched their antiquities with great diligence: First Marius Niger boundeth Scythia within Imaus, in this manner: for Scythia without these Mountains is also beyond our purpose) Scythia inter Imaum montem ea est, que proprio vocabulo Cassaria hoc tempore dicitur: à Occasu Sarmatia Asiatica: ab Oriente Imao monte: à Septentrione terra incognita: à Meridie Saccis, Sogdianis, Margianis, usque usque Oceano in Hyrcanum mare excurrenti; & parte ipsius maris hinc usque ad Rhæsum terminatur: Scythia within the mountaine Imaus is that part of the World which in their owne speech is at this time called Cassaria; and the same is bounded on the West side by Sarmatia Asiatica (or of Asia:) on the East by the Imaum Mountaines: on the North by unknown Lands: on the South by the Saccæ (which are in the Saca) the Sogdiani, and the Margiani, to the mouth of Oxus, falling into the Hyrcan Sea, and by a part of the same Sea as far as the mouth of Rhæ.

Now if Niger lets all Sarmatia Asiatica to the West of Scythia, then Sarmatia (que à maxime sanè Regio est, & que immensas nationes complectitur) which is a great Region, comprehending innumerable nations (saith Niger) much of it being between Scythia and Armenia, doth sufficiently warrant us, that Armenia can be no part of Scythias and to make it more plain, he discovereth Sarmatia it self from any part of Armenia, by the Regions of Colchis, Iberia, and Albania, which he leaveth on the right hand of Sarmatia, and yet makes Sarmatia but the West bound of Scythia.

And for Paulus Venetus, he hath not a word of Armenia among the Tartarian or Scythian Nations; neither doth his fellow Frier John Plancarpio (cited by Vincentius in his description of Scythia) make any mention of Armenia; neither doth Haytonus, an Armenian borne of the blood of those Kings (though afterward a Monk) ever acknowledge himself for a Tartarian, or of the Scythian Races descended: though he write that (story at large, gathered by Nicholas Salcuni, and (by the commandement of Pope Clement the fifth) in the year 1307. published.

Neither doth Matthias a Michon (a Canon of Cracovia in Polonia) a Sarmatian borne, and that travelled a great part of Sarmatia Asiatica, finde Armenia any way within the compasse of Tartaria, Scythia, or Sarmatia; and yet no man (whose Travails are extant) hath observed so much of those Regions as he hath done: proving and disproving many things, heretofore subject to dispute. And among others he burieth that ancient and received

received opinion, That out of the Mountains, *Rhiphai*, and *Hyperborei* in Scythia, spring the Rivers of *Tanais* or *Don*, *Volga* or *Edel*; providing by unanswerable experience, that there are no such Mountains in rerum natura; and (indeed) the Heads and Fountains of those famous Rivers are now by the Trade of *Muscovia* knowne to every Merchant, and that they arise out of Lakes, low, woodie, and marish grounds. The River of *Tanais* or *Don*, ariseth to the South of the Citie *Tulla*, some twentie English miles, out of a Lake called *Iwanowesero*, in the great wood *Ogmitzkilies* or *Jepiphanolies*. *Volga*, which Ptolomie calls *Rba*, and the Tartars call *Edel*, riseth out of a Lake called *Fronom*, in the great Wood *Vadkonzki*: from which Lake the two other famous Rivers flow of *Bosphoruses* (now *Neyper*) and *Dniuna* or *Dividna*. And this learned *Polonian* doth in this *Sig. Herbesheim* bound the *European Sarmatia*. In Sarmatia of Europe are the Regions of *Russians*, *Lithuanians*, *Muscovians*, and those adjoining, bounded on the West by the River of *Vissa*, the Name perchance mis-printed *Vissa* for *Vistula*, a River which parts *Germania* and *Crazeus* calleth this River *Willus*, *Niger Dravum*, *Volga*, *Pon. Mela*, *Vistula* & *Plin. Vistula*. Sarmatia: and for the East border he nameth *Tanais* or *Don*. Sarmatia Asiatica he cutteth from Europe by the same River of *Tanais*, and the *Caspian Sea*, to with-hold it from stretching farther East: this *Asian Sarmatia* being part of that *Scythia* which Ptolomie calleth *Scythia intra Imaum montem*: Scythia within the Mountaine Imaus. And the same *Matthias Michon* farther affirmeth, that the *Scythians* (which Frier Amnius would make *Armenians*) came not into Sarmatia Asiatica it selfe above three hundred and a few odd yeeres before his owne time: these be his words: *Constat eam esse gentem novam, & adventitiam à partibus Orientis (mutatis sedibus) paulo plus abhinc trecentis annis Asia Sarmatiam ingressam*: It is manifest (saith he, speaking of the Scythian Nation) that this is a late planted Nation, come from the coast of the East: from whence they entred into Asia, & gat new seats a little more than 300. yeeres since: For (indeed) before that time the *Goths* or *Pouloci* inhabited Sarmatia Asiatica. And this *Matthias* lived in the year 1511 and this his Discourse of Sarmatia was printed at *Augusta* in the yeere 1506. as *Eucholzerus* in his *Chronologie* witnesseth. Now these *Scythians* (saith he) came from the East, for in the East it was that the *Ark of Noah* rested, and the *Scythæ Saca* were those people which lived at the North foot of those Mountains, of *Taurus* or *Ararat*, where they encounter or begin to mixe themselves with the great *Imaus*. And were there no other testimony than the general description of the Earth now extant, and the witness of Ptolomie, it is plaine, that betweene all parts of *Armenia*, and *Scythia*, there are not only those three Regions of *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*, but the *Caspian Sea*: on the East shore of which Sea, but not on the West, or on that part which any way toucheth *Armenia*, there are (indeed) a Nation of *Scythians* (called *Ariace*) between *Jaxartes* and *Jaisus*; but what are these *Scythians* to any *Ariace*, or *Scythia Araxea*, which Amnius placeth in *Armenia*, more than the *Scythians* of Europe?

## || VIII.

40 The first Argument, The Vine must grow naturally neere the place where the Arke rested.

TO this if we adde the consideration of this part of the Text, That *NOAH* planted a Vineyard, we shall find that the fruite of the Vine or Rayn did not grow naturally in that part of *Armenia*, where this resting of the Arke was supposed: for the Vine was a stranger in *Italie* and *France*, and brought from other Countries thither, it is not probable that it grew naturally in *Armenia*, being a farre colder Country. For *Tyrrhenus* first brought Vines into *France*, and *Saturnus* into *Latium*: yea at such times as *Brennus* and the *Gauls* invaded *Italie*, there were few or no Vines in *France*. For (saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Camilus*) the *Gauls* remained betweene the *Pyrenei* and the *Alpes*, *Servius Aeneas* neere unto the *Senones*, where they continued a long time, till they drunke Wine, which was first brought them out of *Italie*; and after they tasted thereof, they hasted to inhabit that Country, which brought forth such pleasant fruite: so as it appeareth, that the Plant of the Vine was not naturall in *France*, but from *Italie* brought thither; as by *Saturne* from else where into *Italy*.

Now it is manifest, that *Noah* travelled not far to seeke out the Vine. For the Plantation thereof is remembered, before there was any counsaile how to dispose of the world among his children; and the first thing he did, was, to till the ground, & to plant a Vineyard, after the Sacrifice and Thanksgiving to God; and wherefoever the Arke rested, there

there did the Vine grow naturally. From whence it doth no where appear, that he travelled far: for the Scriptures teach us, that he was a Husband-man, and not a wanderer.

## ||. IX.

An answer to an objection out of the words of the Text: The Lord scattered them from thence upon the face of the whole earth.

And that all the children of Noah came together into Shinar, it doth not appear, saving that it may be inferred out of these words (from thence) because it is written: So that the Lord scattered them from thence upon all the Earth; which hath no other sense, but that the Lord scattered them (to wit) those that built this Tower: for those were from thence dispersed into all the Regions of the North and South, and to the Westward. And by these words of Sybilla (as they be converted) it seemeth that all came not together into Shinar; for they have this limitation: *Quidam eorum turrem edificarunt altissimam, quasi per eam celum essent accessuri*: Certaine of them built a most high Tower, as if they meant thereby to have scaled the Heavens.

## ||. X.

An answer to the objection of the name of Ararat, taken for Armenia: and the height of the Hills there.

G. n. 8. 14.

Epiph. l. i. contr. Harq.

But before I conclude this part, it is necessarie to see and consider, what part of Scripture, and what reason may be found out, to make it true or probable, that the Arke of Noah was forsaken by the waters on the Mountains of Armenia. For the Text hath onely these words: The Arke rested on (or upon) the Mountains of Ararat, or Armenia, saith the marginall note of the Geneva: the Chaldean Paraphrast calls it Kardus; of which, the highest hath the name of Lubar, saith Epiphanius. Now this Ararat (which the Septuagint do not convert at all, but keepe the same word) is taken to be a Mountain of Armenia; because Armenia it selfe had anciently that name: so as first out of the name, and secondly out of the height (which they suppose exceeded all other) is the opinion taken, That the Arke first lay thereon.

But these suppositions have no foundation: for neither is Ararat of Armenia alone, neither is any part, or any of those Mountains of equal stature to many other Mountaines of the World; and yet it doth not follow, that the Arke found the highest Mountaine of all other to rest on: for the Plains were also uncovered before Noah came out of the Arke. Now, if there were any agreement among Writers of this Ararat, and that they did not differ altogether therein, we might give more credit to the conceit. For in the Bookes of the Sybils it is written, that the Mountains of Ararat are in Phrygia, upon which it was supposed that the Arke layed after the Flood. And the better to particularize the place and seate of these Mountaines, and to prove them in Phrygia, and not Armenia: they are placed where the City of Celenes was afterward built. Likewise in the same description the maketh mention of Marjyar, a River which runneth through part of Phrygia and afterward joyneth it selfe with the River Meander, which is far from the Gordian Mountains in Armenia. We may also finde a great mistaking in JOSEPHUS (though out of BEROSUS, who is in effect the Father of this opinion) that JOSEPHUS sets Ararat betwene ARMENIA and PARTHIA, toward ADIABENE, and affirmeth withall, that in the Province of Cæron (by others Kairos and Arnor, so called by reason that the waters have from thence no descent, nor issue out) the people vaunt that they had in those dayes reserved some peices of Noahs Arke. But Parthia toucheth no where upon Armenia; for Armenia bordereth Adiabene, a Province of Assyria: so that all Media and a part of Assyria is betwene Parthia and Armenia. Now whereas the discovery of the Mountaines Gordiei was first borrowed out of Berofus by Josephus, yet the Text which Josephus citeth out of Berofus differs far from the words of that Berofus, which wandereth up and downe in these dayes, set out by Anniius. For Berofus, cited by Josephus, hath these words: *Fertur & navigii hujus pars in Armenia apud montem Gordieorum superesse, & quosdam Bitumen inde abrasum secum reportare, quo vice annuleti loci hujus homines uti solent*: (which is) It is reported also that a part of this ship is yet remaining in Armenia upon the Gordian Mountains; and that diverse do scrape from it the Bitumen or Pitch, and carrying it with them, they use it in stead of an annulet. But Anniius his

Edition

Edition of the Fragment of Berofus useth these words: *Nam elevata ab aquis in Gordie montis vertice quiescit, cujus adhuc dicitur aliqua pars esse, & homines ex illa Bitumen tollere quo maxime utuntur ad expiationem*: For the whole Arke being lifted up by the waters, rested on the top of the Gordian Mountaines, of which it is reported that some parts remaine, and that men doe carry thence of the Bitumen to purge by sacrifice therewith: so as in these two Texts (besides the difference of words) the name is diversly written. The ancient Berofus writes Gordiei with a (C.) and the Fragment Gordias with a (G.) the one that the Bitumen is used for a preservative against Poyson or Inchantment; the other in Sacrifice. And if it be said that they agree in the generally, yet it is reported by neither from any certain knowledge, nor from any approved Authour: for one of them, useth the word (*fertur*) the other (*dicitur*) the one, that so it is reported, the other, that so it is said; and both but by heare-say, and therefore of no authority nor credit. For common bruit is so infamous an Historian, as wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it.

Furthermore, these Mountaines which Ptolomie calls Gordiei, are not those Mountaines which himselfe giveth to Armenia, but he calleth the Mountaines of Armenia, Moschici. These be his own words: *Montes Armenia nominantur ii, qui Moschici appellantur, qui protendantur usque ad superjacentem partem Ponti Cappadocum; & mons qui Paryardes dicitur: The Mountaines of Armenia are they which are called Moschici, stretch along to the higher part of Pontus of the Cappadocians: also the Hill which is called Paryardes: which Mountaines Plinie calleth Paryedri, and both which lye to the North of Gordias or Baris*, Plin. l. 6. c. 9. in 43. and 44. and a halfe; and the Gordian Mountaines in 39. and a halfe: from the Northmost of which did the Georgians take their names, who were first Gordians, and then Georgians, who amidst all the strength of the greatest Infidels of Persia and Turkie, doe still remaine Christians. Concerning the other suppositions, that the Mountaines of Gordiei, otherwise Baris, Kardus or Lubar (which Ptolomie calleth Torgodiaion) are the highest of the World, the same is absolutely false.

## ||. XI.

Of Caucasus, and divers far higher hills than the Armenian.

For the best Cosmographers with other, that have seene the Mountaines of Armenia, find them far inferior, and under-set to divers other Mountaines even in that part of the World, and else where: as the Mountaine Athos betwene Macedon and Thrace, which Ptolomie calls Olympus, now called Lacar, (saith Caspaxdar) is far surmounting any Mountaine that ever hath beene seene in Armenia: for it casteth shade three hundred furlongs, which is seven and thirtie miles and upwards: of which Plutarch; Athos ad-  
*umbrat latera Lemnie bovis: Athos shadoweth the Cow of Lemnos. Also the Mount of Olympus in Thessalie, is said to be of that height, as neither the Windes, Clouds or Raine overturn it. Again, the Mountaine of Antandrus in Mysia, not farre from Ida, whence the River Scamandrus floweth, which runneth through Troy, is also of a farre more admiration than any in Armenia, and may be seene from Constantinople. There are also in Mauritania neere the Sea the famous Mountaines of Atlas, of which HERODOTUS: Extat in hoc mari Mons cui nomen Atlas, ita sublimis esse dicitur, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non possint: Upon this Coast there is a Mountaine called Atlas, whose height is said to be such, as the eye of no mortall man can descerne the top thereof. And if we may beleeve Aristotle, then are all these inferior to Caucasus, which he maketh the most northerly both for breadth and height: Caucasus Mons omnium maximus, qui effunditur ad ortum sunt, acumine atque latitudine, cujus juga a Sole radiantur usque ad conticinium: Aris. Met. c. 1. 50m ab ortu: & iterum ab occasu: Caucasus (saith ARISTOTLE) is the greatest Mountaine both for breadth and height of all those in the North-east, whose tops are lightened by the Sunbeams, usque ad conticinium) which is, saith Macrobius betwene the first crowing after midnight and the break of day: Others affirm, that the top of this Mountaine holds the Sunbeams when it is darke in the Valley; but I cannot beleeve either, for the highest Mountaine of the World knowne, is that of Tenerife in the Canaria: which although it hath nothing to the Westward of it for 1000. Leagues together but the Ocean Sea, yet doth it not enjoy the Sun's company at any such late houres. Besides these Mountaines which Aristotle calleth Caucasus, are those which separate Colchis from Iberia*

Iberia; though (indeed) *Caucasus* doth divide both *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania* from *Sarmatia*: for he acknowledgeth that the River of *Phasis* riseth in the same Mountaine, which himself calleth *Caucasus*, and that *Phasis* springeth from those Hills which funder *Colchis* from *Iberia*, falling afterward into *Eufrates*: which River (it is manifest) yeeldeth it self to the Sea, two degrees to the North of *Trapesus* (now *Trabesunda*) howsoever *Mercurator* bring it from *Paryarden*.

## ||. XII.

Of divers incongruities if in this Story we should take *Ararat* for *Armenia*.

SO as it doth first appear, that there is no certainty what Mountain *Ararat* was: for the Books of the *Sybls* set it in *Phrygia*, and *Berosus* in *Armenia*: and as for *Berosus* authority, those men have great want of proofs that borrow from thence.

Secondly, that *Baris* was the highest Hill, and therefore most likely that the Arke grounded thereon, the assertion and supposition have equal credit: for there are many Hills, which exceed all those of *Armenia*; and if they did not, yet it doth not follow (as is before written) that the Arke should fit on the highest.

Thirdly, it cannot be proved that there is any such Hill in *Armenia*, or in *verum natura*, as *Baris*: for *Baris* (saith *Hierome*) signifieth high Towers: and so may all high Hills be called indifferently; and therefore we may better give the name of *Baris* to the 20 Hills of *Caucasus* (out of which *Indus* riseth) than to any Hills of *Armenia*. For those of *Caucasus* in the East, are undoubtedly the highest of *Asia*.

Fourthly, the Authours themselves do not agree in what Region the Mountaines *Gordies* stand: for *Ptolomie* distinguisheth the Mountaines of *Armenia* from the *Gordian*, and calleth those of *Armenia* *Moschici* and *Paryarden*, as aforesaid. Now *Paryarden* is seated neer the middle of *Armenia*, out of which on the West-side riseth, *Euphrates*, and out of the East-side, *Araxis*: and the Mountaines *Moschici* are those Hills which disjoyn *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania* (now the Country of the *Georgians*) from *Armenia*.

## ||. XIII.

Of the contrary situation of *Armenia*, to the place noted in the Text: and that it is no marvel that the same Ledge of Hills running from *Armenia* to *India*, should keep the same name all along: and even in *India* be called *Ararat*.

LASTly, we must blow up this Mountain *Ararat* it self, or else we must dig it downe, and carry it out of *Armenia*, or finde it elsewhere, and in a warmer Country, and (withal) set it East from *Shinaar*; or else we shall wound the Truth it self with the weapons of our own vain imaginations.

Therefore to make the mistaking open to every eye, we must understand, that *Ararat* (named by *Moses*) is not any one Hill, so called, no more than any one Hill among those Mountaines which divide *Italy* from *France*, is called the *Alpes*: or any one among those which part *France* from *Spain* is the *Pyrenian*; but as these being continuations of many Hills, keep one name in divers Countries: so all that long Ledge of Mountaines, which *Plinie* calleth by one name *Taurus*, and *Ptolomie* both *Taurus*, *Niphates*, *Coatras*, *Cozrus*, *Sariphi*, until they encounter and cross the Mountaines of the great *Imaus*, are of one general name, and are called the Mountaines of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, because from thence or thereabout they seem to arise. So all these Mountaines of *Hircania*, *Armenia*, *Coraxis*, *Cassii*, *Moschici*, *Amazonici*, *Heniochi*, *Scythici*, (thus diversly called by *Plinie* and others) *Ptolomie* calls by one name *Caucasus*, lying between the Seas *Caspium* and *Eufrates*: as all those Mountaines which cut asunder *America*, even from the new Kingdome of *Granado*, to the streight of *Magellan*, are by one name called *Andes*. And as these Mountaines of *Ararat* run East and West, so do those marvellous Mountaines of *Imaus* stretch themselves North and South; and being of like extent well-neer, are called by the name of *Imaus*, even as *Plinie* called these former Hills *Taurus*, and *Moses* the hills of *Ararat*. The reason of several names given by *Ptolomie*, was, thereby the better to distinguish the great Regions and Kingdoms, which these great Mountaines bound and disleaver; as *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, *Media*, *Susiana*, *Persia*, *Parthia*, *Caramania*, *Aria*, *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sogdiana*, and *Parapanisus*: having

*Plinie* in his description of *Lybia*. l. 5. c. 27.

ving all these Kingdoms either on the North or South side of them. For all the mountaines of *Asia* (both the less and the greater) have three general names, (to wit) *Taurus*, *Imaus*, and *Caucasus*: and they receive other titles, as they sever and divide particular places and Regions. For these Mountaines which funder *Cilicia* from the rest of *Asia* the less on the North side, are called *Taurus*; and those Mountaines which part it from *Comagena* (a Province of *Syria*) are called *Amannus*: the mountaines called *Taurus* running Eastward West, as *Imaus* doth North and South. Through *Taurus* the River of *Euphrates* forceth her passage, leaving the name of *Amannus* to the Mountaines on her West-bank, and on her East side the Mountaines are sometimes known by the name of *Taurus*, (as in *Ptolomie*'s three Tables of *Asia*) and sometimes *Niphates*; (as in the fourth) retaining that uncertain appellation so long as they bound *Armenia* from *Mesopotamia*: and after the River of *Lygris* cutteth them asunder, they then take the name of *Niphates* altogether, until they separate *Assyria* and *Media*; but then they call themselves *Coatras*, though between the upper and nether *Media*, they do not appear, but altogether discontinue. For at *Mazada* in *Media* they are not found, but run through the Eastern *Media* by pieces: in the middle of which Region they call themselves *Orontes*, and towards the East part *Coronus*; out of the Southerne part whereof the River of *Bagradas* riseth, which divideth the ancient *Persian* from *Caramania*: and then continuing their course Eastward by the name of *Coronus*, they give to the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians* their proper Countries. This done, they change themselves into the mountaines of *Sariphi*, out of which riseth the River *Margus*, afterward yeelding her self to *Oxus* (now *Abia*): and drawing now neer their waies end, they first make themselves the South border of *Bactria*, and are then honoured with the Title of *Parapanisus*; and lastly of *Caucasus*, even where the famous River of *Indus*, with his principal companions *Hydaspis* and *Zaredrus*, spring forth and take beginning. And here do these Mountaines build themselves exceeding high, to equal the strong Hills called *Imaus* of *Scythia*, which encounter each other in 35, 36, and 37. degrees of Latitude, and in 140. of Longitude: of the which the West parts are now called *Delanquer*, and the rest *Nagacot*; and these Mountaines in this place only are properly called *Caucasus* (saith *Ptolomie*) that is, between *Parapanisus* and *Imaus*: and improperly, between the two Seas of *Caspium* and *Pontus*.

## ||. XIV.

Of the best Vine naturally growing on the South side of the Mountaines *Caucasus*, and toward the East Indies: and of other excellencies of the soile.

NOw in this part of the World, it is where the Mountain and River *Janus*, and the Mountain *Nysus* (so called of *Bacchus Nisus* or *Noah*) are found: and on these highest Mountaines of that part of the world did *Goropius Becanus* conceive that the Ark, of *Noah* grounded after the Flood; of all his conjectures the most probable, and by best reason approved. In his *Indoicythia* he hath many good Arguments, though mixt with other fantastical opinions of this subject. And as the same *Becanus* also noteth, that as in this part of the World are found the best Vines: so it is as true, that in the same Line, and in 34, 35, & 36. degrees of Septentrional Latitude, are the most delicate Wines of the World, namely, in *Judea*, *Candia*, and other parts of *Greece*: and likewise in this Region of *Margiana*: and under these Mountaines *Strabo* affirmeth, that the most excellent Vines of the World are found; the clusters of Grapes containing two Cubits of length: and it is the more probable, because this place agreeth in Climate with that part of *Palestina*, where the searchers of the land, by *Moses* direction, found bunches of 50 equal bignets at *Ejcol*.

*Numb. 13. 24.*

The fruitfulness of this place (to wit) on the South bottome of these Hills, *Curtius* witnesseth. For in *Margiana* neer the Mountaines of *Meros* did *Alexander* feast himselfe and his Army ten daies together, finding the most delicate Wine of all other.

## ||. XV.

The conclusion, with a brief repeating of divers chief points.

AND therefore to conclude this opinion of *Ararat*, it is true, that those Mountaines do also traverse *Armenia*: yea, and *Armenia* it selfe sometime is knowne by the name

L. 5. c. 27.

name of *Ararat*. But as *Plinie* giveth to this ledge of high Hills, even from *Cilicia* to *Fa-*  
*ropontis* and *Caucasus*, the name of *Taurus*; and as the Hills of *France* and *Germanie* are  
 called the *Alpes*; and all between *France* and *Spain* the *Pyrenes*; and in *America* the con-  
 tinuation of Hills for 3000 miles together, the *Andes*: so was *Ararat* the general name  
 which *Moses* gave them; the diversity of appellations no otherwise growing, than by  
 their dividing and bordering divers Regions and divers Countries. For in the like case  
 do we call the Sea, which entrench by *Gibraltar*, the *Mediterran* and inland Sea; and  
 yet where it watheth the Coasts of *Carthage*, and over against it, it is called *Tyrrhenium*:  
 between *Italy* and *Greece*, *Ionium*: from *Venice* to *Durazzo*, *Adriaticum*: between *Athen*  
 and *Asia*, *Aegeum*: between *Sesuv* and *Abydus*, *Hellepont*: and afterward *Pontus*, *Propon-*  
*tis*, and *Bosphorus*. And as in these, so is the Ocean to the North-east part of Scotland  
 called *Denealedonycum*: and on this side, the *Brittain* Sea: to the East, the *Germane* and  
*Baltick*, and then the *Frozen*.

For a final end of this question, we must appeal to that Judge, which cannot erre,  
 even to the Word of Truth, which in this place is to be taken and followed according  
 to the plain sense: seeing it can admit neither distinction, nor other construction than  
 the words bear literally, because they are used to the very same plain purpose of a de-  
 scription, and the making of a true and precise difference of places. Surely, where the  
 sense is plain (and being so understood, it bringeth with it no subsequent inconveni-  
 ence or contrariety) we ought to be warie, how we fancie to our selves any new or so  
 strange exposition; And (withal) to resolve our selves; that every word (as aforesaid)  
 hath his weight in Gods Book. And therefore we must respect and reverence the tes-  
 timonies of the Scriptures throughout, in such sort as Saint *Augustine* hath taught us  
 touching the Gospel of CHRIST JESUS (which is) *Nequis aliter accipiat (quod narrantibus*  
*Discipulis Christi) in Evangelio legerit, quam si ipsam manum Dei, quam in proprio corpore ge-*  
*sabat, conspexerit; That no man otherwise take or understand, that which he readeth in the*  
*Gospel (the Disciples of Christ having written it) than if he had seen the very hand of the Lord,*  
*which he bare in his own body, setting it down.*

Gen. c. 11. v. 2.

The words then of *Moses* which end this dispute, are these: *And as they went from the*  
*East, they found a Playne in the land of Shinaar; and there they abode:* which proveth with-  
 out controversie, that *Nimrod*, and all with him, came from the East into *Shinaar*; and  
 therefore the *Arke* of *Noah* rested and tooke land to the Eastward thereof. For we  
 must remember, that in all places wherefoever *Moses* maketh a difference of Countries,  
 he always precisely nameth toward what quarter of the world the same were seated:  
 as where he teacheth the plantation of *Jofan*, he nameth *Sephar*, a Mount in the East:  
 where he remembreth *Cains* departure from the presence of God, he addeth; *And CAIN*  
*dwellt in the land of Nod towards the East-side of Eden:* And when he describeth the Tents  
 and Habitations of *Abraham* after he departed from *Sechem*, he useth these words: *As-*  
*terwards removing thence unto a mountain Eastward from Bethel, he pitched his Tents: be-*  
*hind Bethel on the West side, and Hai on the East:* and afterward in the ninth Verse of the  
 same Chapter it is written; *And ABRAHAM went forth journeying towards the South:* also  
 when *Ezechiel* prophesieth of *Gog* and *Magog*, he sheweth that these Nations of *Togorma*  
 were of the North quarters; and of the Queene of *Saba* it is written, that she came from  
 the South to visit *SOLOMON*: And the *Magi* (or *wisemen*) came out of the East to offer  
 presents unto Christ. And that all Regions; and these travailes were precisely set downe  
 upon the points of the Compasse and quarters of the world, it is most manifest: for  
*Eden* was due East from *Judea*; *Saba* South from *Hierusalem*: the way from *Bethel* to  
*Egypt* directly South; and the *Celocryians*, the *Tubalines* and *Magogians* inhabited the  
 Regions directly North from *Palestina*, and so of the rest. But *Armenia* answereth not  
 to this description of *Shinaar* by *Moses*. For to come out of *Armenia*, and to arrive in  
 that Valley of *Babylonia*, is not a journeying from the East, nor so neer unto the East as  
 the North: for *Armenia* is to the West of the North it selfe; and we must not say of  
*Moses* (whose hands the holy Ghost directed) that he erred toto celo, and that he knew  
 not East from west. For the body of *Armenia* standeth in forty three degrees Septentrional,  
 and the North part thereof in forty five; and those *Gordiean* Mountains, whereon  
 it was supposed that the *Ark* rested, stand in forty one. But *Babylonia*, and the valley  
 of *Shinaar* are situated in thirtie five; and for the Longitude (which maketh the differ-  
 ence between East and West) the *Gordiean* Mountaines stand in 75. degrees, and the

Gen. 10. 30.

Gen. 4. 16.

Gen. 12. 8. 9.

Ezek. 38. 6.

Matth. 12. 42.

Matth. 2. 1. 1.

the valley of *Shinaar* in 79. and 80. And therefore *Armenia* lieth from *Shinaar* North-  
 west, ninety five degrees from the East; and if *Armenia* had been but North, yet it had  
 differed from the East one whole quarter of the compasse. But *Gregory* and *Hierome*  
 warne us, *In Scripturis ne minima differentia omitti debet: nam singuli sermones, syllabae,*  
*apices, & puncta in divina Scriptura plena sunt sensibus; In the Scriptures the least*  
*difference may not be omitted: for every speech, syllable, note, or accent, and point in divine*  
*Scriptures are replenished with their meanings.* And therefore seeing *Moses* teacheth us  
 that the children of *Noah* came from the East, we may not believe Writers (of little au-  
 thority) who also speak by hear-say and by report, *ut fertur, & ut dicitur*, as *Berosus*  
 10 and *Nicolaus Damascenus*, determining herein without any examination of the Text, at  
 all adventure. But this is infallibly true, that *Shinaar* lieth West from the place where  
 the *Ark* of *Noah* rested after the flood; and therefore it first found ground in the East,  
 from whence came the first knowledge of all things. The East parts were first civil,  
 which had *Noah* himself for an instructor: and directly East from *Shinaar* in the same  
 degree of 35. are the greatest grapes, and the best wine. The great Armies also which  
 overtopped in number those millions of *Semiramis*, prove, that those parts were first  
 planted. And whereas the other opinion hath neither Scripture nor Reason sufficient:  
 for my self I build on his words, who in plain terms hath told us, that the sons of *Noah*  
 came out of the East into *Shinaar*, and there they abode. And therefore did the *Arke*  
 20 rest on those Eastern mountains, called by one generall name *Taurus*, and by *Moses* the  
 mountains of *Ararat*, and not on those mountaines of the North-west, as *Berosus* first  
 feigned, whom most part of the Writers have followed therein. It was, I say, in the  
 plentiful warm East where *Noah* rested, where he planted the Vine, where he tilled the  
 ground and lived thereon. *Placuit vero Noacho agricultura studium, in qua tractanda ipse*  
*omnium peritissimus esse dicitur: ob eamque rem sua ipsius lingua Ith-Adamath (hoc est) telu-*  
*ris vir appellatur celebratusque est. The study of Husbandry pleased Noah (saith the excellent*  
*learned man Arias Montanus) in the knowledge and order of which, it is said that Noah ex-*  
*celled all men: and therefore was he called in his own language a man exercised in the earth.*  
 Which also sheweth, that he was no wanderer; and that he troubled not himselfe with  
 30 the contentions beginning again in the World, and among men, but stayed in his desti-  
 ned places, and in that part of the World where he was first delivered out of the prison  
 of the *Arke*, whereinto God had committed him, to preserve him and mankind.



## CHAP. VIII.

Of the first planting of Nations after the Flood; and of the Sonnes of  
 NOAH, SHEM, HAM, and JAPHET, by  
 whom the Earth was re-peopled.

40

## §. I.

Whether SHEM and HAM were elder than JAPHET.

OF these Sons of *Noah*, which was the eldest, there is a question made. *S. Aug-*  
*ustine* esteemed *Shem* for the eldest, *Ham* for the second, and *Japhet* for the  
 youngest; and herein the opinions of Writers are divers. But this we finde  
 every where in the Scriptures, and especially in *Moses*, that there was ne-  
 ver any respect given to the eldest in years, but in vertue; as by the exam-  
 ples of *Enoch*, *Abraham*, *Jacob*, and *David*, is made manifest. In a few words, this is the  
 50 ground of the controversie; The *Latine* translation, and so the *Genevea*, hath converted  
 this Scripture of *Genesis* the 10. v. 21. in these words: *Unto SHEM also the Father of*  
*all the Sonnes of HEBER, and elder brother of JAPHET, were children borne.* But *Junius* al-  
 greeing with the *Septuagint*, placeth the same words in this manner: *To SHEM also*  
*the Father of all the Sons of HEBER, and brother of JAPHET the eldest Sonne, were children*  
*borne:* So the transposition of the word (elder) made this difference. For if the word  
 (elder) had followed after *Japhet*, as it is in the vulgar translation placed before it, then  
 had it been as plain for *Japhet*, as it is by these translations for *Shem*. Now (the mat-  
 ter being otherwise indifferent) seeing Gods blessings are not tyed to first and last in  
 blood

Aug. de Civit.  
Dei. l. 15. c. 2

bloud, but to the eldest in piety, yet the arguments are stronger for *Japhet* than for *Shem*. And where the Scriptures are plainly understood without any danger or inconvenience, it seemeth strange why any man of judgment should make valuation of conjecturall arguments, or mens opinions. For it appeareth that *Noah* in the five hundredth year of his life, begat the first of his three Sons, *Shem*, *Ham*, and *Japhet*: and in the six hundredth year (to wit) the hundredth year following, came the general flood; two years after which, *Shem* begat *Arphaxad*, which was in the year 602. of *Noah*'s life, and in the year of *Shem*'s life one hundred: so as *Shem* was but 100. years old, two years after the Flood: and *Noah* begat his first borne being 500. years old, and therefore were *Shem* the elder, he had then been an hundred years old at the flood, and in the six hundredth year of *Noah*'s life, and not two years after. Which seeing the Scriptures before remembered hath denied him, and that it is also written: *Then NOAH awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger sonne had done unto him (to wit) HAM*; of necessity the first place doth belong to *Japhet*. This younger son, so converted by the vulgar and *Geneva*, *Junius* turns it *filius minimus*, His youngest son; but *S. Chrysostome* takes it other wise, and finds *Cham* to be the middle or second brother, and *Japhet* the youngest sonne of all: which *Cham* for his disobedience and the contempt of his Father (whose nakedness he derided) was disinherited, and lost the preeminence of his birth, as *Elsaw* and *Ruben* did. *Pererius* conceiveth that *Ham* was called the younger in respect of *Shem* the eldest, but avoweth withall, that the *Hebrew* hath not that precise difference of younger and youngest, because it wanteth the comparative degree. It is true that *Shem* himself was always named in the first place, yet whereas in the first verse of the tenth Chapter of *Genesis*, *Shem* is accounted before *Japhet*: in the second verse *Moses* leaveth to begin with the issue by *Shem*, and reciteth the children of *Japhet* first. So the first place was given to *Shem* for his election and benediction, and for this weighty respect, that the *Hebrew* Nation, *Abraham*, the Prophets, *David*, and *Christ* our Saviour were descended of him. And therefore, whether we shall follow the vulgar *Pagninus*, and the *Geneva*, who agree in this convention, *SHEM FRATER JAPHET major*; or with the *Septuagint*, *IENUS* and *Tremelius*, *SHEM FRATIS JAPHET majoris*; or with *Pererius*, *SHEM FRATER JAPHET ille magnus*: inferring that *Shem* was the great and famous brother of *Japhet*, let the Reader judge. But for ought that I have seen to the contrary, it appeareth to me that *Japhet* was the eldest. For where *Pererius* qualifieth the strength of the former argument, That *Shem*'s age at the time of the flood did not agree with the eldership (with a supposition that the Scriptures took no account of smaller numbers) I do not finde in the Scriptures any such neglect at all: for it is written, that *SHEM* was an hundred years old, and begat *ARPHAXAD* two years after the flood; and again in the 12. verse: So *SHELA* lived after he begat *EBAR*, four hundred and three years, &c. so as the number of two years, of three years, of five yeares, and afterward of two yeares, were always precisely accounted.

## §. II.

Of divers things that in all reason are to be presumed, touching the first planting of the world; as that all Histories must yield to *MOSES*: that the world was not planted all at once, nor without great direction: and that known great Lords of the first Ages were of the issue of *HAM*.

BUT let us go unto the Worlds plantation after the flood, which being rightly understood, we shall finde that many Nations have supposed or feigned themselves those Ancestors and Fathers, which never saw or approached the bounds of their Countries, and of whom they are by no way or branch descended. For it is plain in the Scriptures how the sons & issues of *Noah* were distributed, and what Regions were first planted by them, from whence by degrees the rest of the world was also peopled. And if any prophane Author may receive allowance herein, the same must be with this caution, that they take their beginning where the Scriptures end. For so far as the story of nations is therein handled, we must know, that both the truth & antiquity of the books of God find no companions equal, either in age or authority. All record, memory & testimony of antiquity whatsoever, which hath come to the knowledge of men, the same hath

have bin borrowed thence, & therefore later than it, as all careful observers of time have noted: among which thus writeth *Eusebius* in the Proem of his Chronology: *MOSES is found more ancient than all those whom the Grecians make most ancient, as HOMER, HERODOTUS, and the Trojan Warre; and farre before HERCULES, MUSÆUS, LINUS, CHIRON, ORPHEUS, CASTOR, POLLUX, ÆSCULAPIUS, BACCHUS, MERCURIUS, and APOLLO, and the rest of the Gods of the Nations, their Ceremonies, or holy Rites, or Prophets: and before all the deeds of JUPITER, whom the Greeke have seated in the top and highest Turret of their Divinity.*

For of the three *Jupiters* remembered by *Cicero*, the ancientest was the son of *Æther* *Cicero de Nat. Dæmon. l. 3.* whose three sons begotten on *Proserpina*, were borne at *Athens*, of which *Cecrops* was the first King: and in the end of *Cecrops* time did *Moses* bring the children of *Israel* out of *Egypt*: *Edmunt MOSES populum Dei ex Egypto novissimo tempore CECROPIS Atheniensis Regis: MOSES brought the children of Israel out of Egypt in the last dayes of CECROPIS King of the Athenians*, saith *S. Augustine*: and yet was not *Cecrops* the Founder of the Citie it self, but *Theseus* long after him. But because the truth hereof is diversly proved, and by many learned Authors, I will not cut asunder the purpose in hand, by alledging many authorities in a needlesse question, but leave it to the proper place.

The Sons of JAPHET were,

Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Mesbach, and Tirrus.	The Sonnes of GOMER were,	Askenaz, Riphat, Togorma,
	The Sonnes of JAVAN were,	Elisha, Tarshis, Kittim, and Dodanim.

First, we are to consider, that the world after the flood was not planted by imagination, neither had the children of *Noah* wings to fly from *Shinaar* to the uttermost border of *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, in haste, but that these children were directed by a wife Father, who knew those parts of the World before the flood, to which he disposed his children after it, and sent them not as discoverers, or at all-adventure, but assigned and allotted to every Son and their issues, their proper parts. And not to hearken to fabulous Authors, who have no other end than to flatter Princes (as *Virgil* did *Augustus* in the fiction of *Æneas*) or else to glorifie their own nations; Let us build herein upon the Scriptures themselves, and after them upon Reason and Nature. First therefore we must call to mind and consider, what manner of face the Earth every where had in the 130. year after the great inundation, and by comparing those fruitfullest Vallies with our own barren and cold ground, inform our selves thereby, what wonderful Desarts, what impassable fastness of woods, reeds, bryars and rotten grasse, what lakes and standing pools, and what marshes, fens, and bogs, all the face of the Earth (excepting the mountains) was pestered withall. For if in this our Climate (where the dead and destroying Winter depresseth all vegetative and growing Nature, for one halfe of the year in effect) yet in twenty or thirty years, these our grounds would all overgrow and be covered (according to the nature thereof) either with woods, or with other offensive thickets and bushments: much more did all sorts of plants, reeds, and trees, prosper in the most fruitful Vallies, and in the Climate of a long and warm Summer, and having withall the start of 130. years to raise themselves without controlement.

This being considered, it will appear, that all these people which came into *Shinaar*, and over whom *Nimrod* either by order or strength took the Dominion, did after the confusion of Languages, and at such time as they grew to be a mighty people, disperse themselves into the Regions adjoining to the said Valley of *Shinaar*, which contained the best part of *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, and *Chaldea*; and from the borders thereof in time they were propagated, some of them towards the South, others towards the West and North. And although there were allotted to *Shem* many Regions, both East and West from *Shinaar*, with the Dominion of *Palestina*, which the *Canaanites* first possessed; yet could he not enjoy the Lot of his Inheritance on the sudden, but by time and degrees. For we finde, that *Abraham*, the true successeur of *Shem*, dwelt in



*Chaldea* at Ur; and from thence (called by God) he rested at *Charran* in *Mesopotamia*: from whence after the death of *Tare* he travelled to *Sichem* in *Palestina*: and yet there he had passed between *Shem* and *Abraham* (reckoning neither of themselves) seven Descents, before *Abraham* moved out of *Chaldea*; where, and in *Babylonia*, all those people, by *Nimrod* commanded, inhabited for many years, and whence *Nimrod* went out into *Affrica*, and founded *Ninive*. Indeed the great Masters of Nations (as far as we can know) were, in that Age of the illness of *Ham*; the blessing of God given by *Noah* to *Shem* and *Japhet* taking little effect, untill divers years were consumed; and untill the time arrived, which by the wisdom of God was appointed. For of *Chus*, *Mizraim*, and *Canaan*, came the people and Princes, which held the great Kingdoms of *Babylonia*, *Syria*, and *Egypt* for many Descents together.

### §. III.

*Of the Isles of the Gentiles in JAPHETS Portion : of BEROSES his too speedy seating GOMER  
the sonne of JAPHET in Italy; and another of JAPHETS sons TUBAL in Spaine :  
and of the Antiquity of Longinque Navigation.*

**T**O begin therefore (where *Moses* beginneth) with the sonnes of *Japheth* among whom the Isles of the *Gentiles* were divided: which division, as well to *Prophets* sonnes as to the rest which came into *Shinar*, was (if the division were made at *Phaleg's* birth) in the year of the World 1757. or 1758. and (by that account) in the years after the Flood one hundred and one, of which question elsewhere.

The habitations proper to the fons of *Japhet* were the Isles of the *Centiles*, which include all *Europe* with all the Islands adjoining, and compassing it about : *Europe* being also taken for an Island, both in respect that the Sea *Helleſpont* and *Aegeum*, *Bosphorus* and *Euxinus* cut it off from the great Continent of *Aſia*, as also because *Europe* it ſelf is (in effect) ſurrounded with water, ſaving that it is ſituated to *Aſia* by the North, for it hath thoſe Seas before named to the *East*, the *Mediterran* to the South and Southweſt, the Ocean to the Weſt, and *Britiſh*, *Germane*, and *Baltick* Sea, with that of *Glaciale* to the North North-eaſt, and North-weſt. Beſides, it hath about it all the *Cyclades* or *Iſles* lying between *Greece* and the leſſer *Aſia*, and the *Iſles* of *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, *Crete*, or *Canidia*, *Sicilia*, *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, *Malta*, the *Iſles* of *Brittannie* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent.

adjacent.

This partition and portion of *Japheth*, with the part which he held in *Asia*, and the North, which was also very great, and wereth to that blessing of God by *Noah*, *Dilate Dens JAPHETH*; *Let God spread abroad* (or increase the Posterity of) *JAPHETH*, and let him dwell in the Tents of *SHEM*. For though *Junius* here useth the word (*allicit*) and not *dilate*: and the *Geneva persuadeth*, yet the Septuagint have *dilate* or *amplificet*; and such was the blessing given to our Fathers, which God promised to *Abraham* and his seed for ever. And the dwelling in the Tents or Tabernacles of *Shem* was a blessing by God to the Posterity of *Japheth*: noting not only an enlargement of Territories, but that thereby they should be made participant of Gods Church. But to come to *Japheths* sonnes, of whom *Gomer* is the eldest. This *Gomer* (if we may believe *Berosus* and *Ammius*, whose authority the greatest number of all our late Writers have followed) did in the tenth year of *Nimrod*s Reign depart from *Babylonia*, and planted Italy: which also *Functius* confirmeth in these words, *Anno decimo NIMRODI, &c. In the tenth year of NIMRODS Reigne, GOMERUS GALLUS planted a Colonie in that Land afterward called Italy: and in the twelfth year of the same NIMRODS Reigne TUBAL seated himselfe in Austuria in Spaine (now called Biscay) which was in the 140. and so in the 142. yeares after the Flood, according to BEROSUS.* But this opinion is very ridiculous. For before the confusion of Tongues, the children of *Noah* did not separate themselves, at least so many of them as came with *Nimrod* into *Shinar*. Let us therefore consider with reason, what time the building of such a City & Tower required, where there was no prepared matter, nor any ready meanes to performe such a work as *Nimrod* had erected (and as *Functius* himselfe out of his Author *Berosus* witnesseth) *ad altitudinem & magnitudinem montium; To the height and magnitude of the mountains.* Sure that both this City and Tower was almost builded, the Scriptures witnesseth: but the

the Lord came down to see the *City and Tower which the Sonnes of men had builded*. Let us then but allow a time sufficient for the making of brick to such a Work, or the greatest height (and therefore of circuit and foundation answerable) that ever was. For where the universall Flood covered the highest Mountains fifteen Cubits; *Let us build us a City and Tower* (saith NIMROD) *whose top may reach unto the Heaven*: meaning, that they would raise their work above ten men Cubits higher than the highest Mountaine, otherwise they could not allure themselves from the fear of a second inundation: a great part whereof was finished before it fell, and before they left the work. They also began this building upon a ground, the most oppressed with waters of all the world: as by the great ruine which these waters, forcibly over-bearing and over-flowing, made in the time of the succeeding Emperours, is made manifest, approved also by the Prophet jeremy, speaking of Babylon in these words: *Thou that dwellest upon many waters*. It cannot be doubted but that there needed a substantiall foundation for so high a raised building on a marish ground: and to which, *Glycas* upon *Genezis* giveth forty years. For it seemeth, that the Tower was near finished when God overthrew it: it being afterward written, *So the Lord scattered them from thence upon all the Earth, and they left to build the City*. Out of which place it may be gathered (because the Tower is not then named) that they very near had performed the work of their supposed defence, which was the Tower: and that afterward they went on with the City adjoining, wherein they inhabited. It is also to be noted, that till such time as this confusion seized them (whereupon the Tower was thrown down) these nations did not disperse themselves: for from thence the Lord scattered them upon all the Earth, (that was) when they perceived not one anothers speech. Now to think that this work in the newnelle of the World (wanting all instruments and materials) could be performed in ten years; and that *Nabal and Gomer* in the same year could creep through 3000. miles of Desart, with Women, Children, and Cattell: Let those light believers, that neither tie themselves to the Scripture, nor to reason, approve it, for I doe not. And if the Ark of *Noah* was 100. years in building, or but near such a time, (and then) when the World had stood 1556. years, it were more than foolishnesse and madnesse it self, to think that such a work as this could be performed in ten; when the World (from the flood to the arrival at Babel, and beginning of this building there) had but 131. yeares, and whereof they had spent some part in travailing from the East. Again, if all Asia set to their helping hands in the building of the Temple of *Diana*, and yet they consumed in that Work 400. years (or be it but halfe that time) and in such an Age as when the World flourished in all sorts of Artificers, and with abundant plenty of materials & carriages: This work of the Tower of Babel could hardly (with all the former wants supposed) be erected in those few years remembered. And for conclusion, let all men of judgment weigh with themselves how impossible it was for a nation or family of men, with their Wives, and Children, and Cattell, to travaile 3000. miles through Woods, Bogs, and Desarts, without any Guide or Conductor; and we shall finde it rather a work of 100. years than of 100. dayes. For in the West Indies, of which the Spaniards have the experience, in those places where they found neither path nor guide, they have not entred the Country ten miles in ten years. And if *Nimrods* people spent many yeares by the account before remembered in passing from the East India, or the higher part thereof, which standeth in 115. degrees of Longitude, untill they came into *Shinaar*, which lyeth in 79. degrees (the distance between those places containing 36. degrees, which makes 720. leagues, which is 2160. miles) and did all the way keep the mountains and hard ground; then the difference between *Babylon* and *Bisgay* is much more: for the body of *Bisgay* lyeth in ten degrees; and *Babylon* or *Shinaar*, (as aforesaid) in 79. to the length of way from *Shinaar* to *Aufuria* or *Bisgay* is 69. degrees, which make 1380. leagues, or of miles 4140. And therefore if *Nimrod* took divers yeares to finde *Shinaar*, which was but 2160. miles: or (supposing that the Ark rested in *Armenia*) little above 400. miles: there is no cause to the contrary, but to allow as many yeares to *Gomer* and *Nabal* to travaile 3000. miles, to Countries less known unto them by far, than the Land of *Shinaar* was to *Nimrod*. For *Paradise* was known to *Noah* before the Flood: and so was the Region of *Eden* by *Moses* afterward remembered; but what he understood of most part of the World else it is unknowne. And therefore did *Annus* ill advise himselfe to plant *Gomer* in *Italy*, and *Nabal* in *Spain*, in the tenth and twelfth of *Noahs* rods



Ira. 65. u. 8.

rods Reigne: shall the Earth be brought forth in one day, or shall a Nation be borne at once? But it may be objected, That the Sons of Japheth might come by Sea, and so save this great travail through Desarts by Land. But we never read of any Navigation in those dayes, nor long after. Surely he that knoweth what it is to imbarke to great a people as we may justly suppose those Conductors carried with them, will not easily believe that there were any Vessels in those daies to transport Armies, and (withall) their cat-tell, by whose milke they lived and fed their children: For milke and fruit were the banqueting dishes of our Fore-Fathers. And in the eldest times, even the Kings and Fathers of Nations valued themselves by the Herds and numbers of their Cattell: who had Flocks of Sheep, and great Drowes, and Herds of their owne, and their own Shepherds and Herdsmen. Now if *Tubal* had past by Sea from any part of *Palastina*, *Syria*, or *Cilicia*, he might have made good choice within the Streights, and not have over-gone *Granado*, *Valentia*, and other Provinces in that Tract: past the Streights of *Gibraltar*, disdained all *Andalusia* and *Portugal*, with all those goodly Ports and Countries; and have fought out the iron, woody, and barren Country of the world (called *Biscay*) by a long and dangerous Navigation. But before the journey of the *Argonauts*, there were scarce any Vessels that durst cross the Seas in that part of the World: and yet that which *Jafon* had (if the Tale be true) was but a Galley, and a poore one (God knows) and perchance such as they use this day in *Ireland*: which although it carried but four and fifty Passengers, yet it was far greater than any of the former times: *Erat* enim antea parvarum navicularum usus: For in former times they used very small Vessels. I deny not but that the *Tyrians* gave themselves of old to far-off Navigations, whence *Tibullus* ascribed the invention of Ships to them:

Diod. Sicul. l. 4. c. 4. fol. 115.

Tibull. Eleg. 7. Strabo. l. 16.

Prima ratem ventis credere doctus Tyros.

Tyros knew first how Ships might use the Wind.

Diod. Sicul. l. 1. Plin. l. 7. cap. 58.

Thucid.

Plin. l. 7. c. 56. Euseb. de temp. Evang. c. 1. Tert. de Corin. mil.

And for those Boats called *longe navis*, or Gallies, *Pliny* saith that *Egeas* ascribed the device to *Paralus*: and *Philostephanus* to *Jafon*: *Ctesias* to *Samyras*, and *Sapbanus* to *Semiramis*: *Archimachus* to *Aegon*: to which invention the *Erythrei* are said to have added 30 certain numbers of Oares: and then *Aminocles* the *Corinthian* to have increased them: the *Carthaginians* afterwards to have brought them to foure Banks: the *Quinq*; *Reut* first to have been used by *Nesichthon* the *Salaminian*, with which Vessels in those parts of the World, the *Romans* served themselves in the *Punick* War. But these be perhaps but the partialities of Writers, or their ignorance. For there are that as constantly cast the devising of these Gallies on *Sesostris*, though *Semiramis* used them in the passage of her Army over *Iudus* in *Abrahams* time. So it is said, that *Danrus* was the first that brought a Ship into *Greece*: and yet the *Samothracians* challenge the invention; and yet *Tertullian* (on the contrary) gives it to *Minerva*: others to *Neptune*; *Thucydides* to the *Corinthians*. And so ignorant were the people of those Ages, as the Egyptians used to coast the shores of the Red Sea upon rafts, devised by King *Erythrus*: and in the time of the *Romans*, the *Britans* had a kinde of Boat (with which they cross the Seas) made of small twigs, and covered over with leather: of which kind I have seen at the *Dingle* in *Ireland*, and elsewhere. *Naves ex corio circumfusa in Oceano Britannico* (saith *Textor*:) of which *Lucan* the Poet:

Primum cana salix, madefacta vimine parvam  
Texitur in puppim, celoque induta juvenco.  
Vectoris patiens tumidum supererat ammen.  
Sic Venetus stagnans Pado, suscepit Britanno  
Navigat Oceano.

The moistned Osyer of the hoary Willow  
Is woven first into a little Boat:  
Then cloath'd in Bullocks hide upon the billow  
Osa proud River, lightly doth it float  
Under the Waterman:  
So on the Lakes of over-swelling *Poe*  
Sailles the *Venian*: and the *Britain* fo  
On th' out-spread Ocean.

And

And although it cannot be denied, when *Noah* by Gods inspiration was instructed in so many particulars concerning the *Arke*, that then many things concerning Navigation were first revealed; yet it appears that there was much difference between the *Arke* of *Noah*, and such Ships as were for any long Navigation. Yea, ancient Stories shew, that it was long after these times, ere any durst presume upon any long voyages to Sea, at least with multitudes of Women, and Children, and Cattell: as also common reason can tell us, that even now when this Art is come to her perfection, such Voyages are very troublesome and dangerous. So as it doth appeare, that there was not in that Age of *Nimrod* any Ship, or use of Ships fit for any long Navigation. For if *Gomer* and *Tubal* had passed themselves and their people by Sea; the exercise of Navigation would not have been dead for so many hundred yeares after. Leaving therefore the fabulous to their Fables, and all men else to their fancies, who have cast Nations into Countries far off, I know not how, I will follow herein the Relation of *Moses* and the Prophets: to which Truth there is joyned both Nature, Reason, Policie, and Necessitie: and to the rest, neither probability, nor possibilitie.

## §. IV.

Of GOG and MAGOG, TUBAL, and MESHECH, seated first about Asia the lesse; out of EZECHIEL, CAP. 38. 39.

20

NOW although many learned and reverend men have formed (I know not where by led) a Plantation of the World, which also hath been and is received; yet I hope I may be excused, if I differ altogether from them in many particulars. Certainly, that great Learned man of this latter Age, *Arias Montanus* was also in some things much mistaken: and for *Josephus*, as he hath many good things, and is a Guide to many errors withall; so was he in the Plantation of the World very grosse and fabulous; whereby both *Eusebius*, *Hierosolymitanus*, *Epiphanius*, and others, that have taken his testimonies for current, have been by him farre misle-led. But the better to conceive 30 what Regions of the World *Gomer* the first sonne of *Japheth* posselt, as also *Tubal*, it is needfull to begin with *Magog*: because the Scriptures take most knowledge of *Gog* and *Magog*: which two names have troubled many Commentators, saith *Mattib*: *Beraldus*, who hath laboured herein with great diligence, and whom (of all that ever I read) I find most judicious in the examination of this Plantation. He takes authoritie from the Prophet *Ezechiel* chiefly, who in the 38. and 39. Chapters directeth us, what Nations the *Gomerians*, *Tubalines*, and *Togormians* were, together with the *Magogians*: of which *Gog* was Prince or Chiefe Conductor in their Attempts against *Israel*. For besides the portions of *Europe*, and the North-east parts of the greater *Asia*, which *Japheth* Issues posselt, all *Asia* the lesse was peopled by them. And that those of the Issue of *Japheth* (whom *Ezechiel* speaks of) were seated hereabout, it may best appeare, if we consider the circumstances of the place, and the dependencie upon the former Prophecie in the 37. Chapter. For in that 37. Chapter, *Ezechiel* prophesieth of the uniting of the 40 two Kingdomes of *Israel* and *Juda*, after their deliverie from captivity.

By which Prophecie of *Ezechiel*, it appeareth, that God purposed to gather together his people, to give life to dead bones, &c. to rule them by one Prince. For to that purpose it is written: And DAVID my Servant shall be King over them, and they shall have one Sheep-beard, (that is) they shall be united as they were in *Dauids* time. Hereupon in the 38. Chapter, *Ezechiel* prophesieth against those Nations, which should seeke to impeach this Union, and disturbe the people of *Israel*, whom God purposed to receive to grace, and promised to restore. And so in the same Chapter are those Nations coupled together, which infected the *Israelites* after their returne, and sought to subiect them: all which were the Subjects or Allies of *Gog*, Prince of the *Magogians*, or *Calogyrans*, next bordering *Palastina*, or the holy Land, followed also by the rest of the Nations of *Asia* the lesse, which lay North from *Judea*. The words of *Ezechiel* are these: Son of man, 40 set thy face against *Gog*, and against the Land of *MAGOG*, the chiefe Princes of *MESHECH* (or *MOSCH*) and *TUBAL*: and afterward; Behold, I come against the chiefe Prince of *MESHECH* and *TUBAL*: and in the sixth verse; *GOMER* and all his Brnds, and the House of *TOGORMA* of the North quarters. Herein *Ezechiel* having first delivered the

c. 32. v. 2.

In Ezech.

L. 2. de Fide.

Strab. lib. 13.

Suid. Col. 207.

Jun. in Ezech. 38.

Strab. lib. 6.

the purpose of his Prophecie, teacheth what Nations they were that should in vanity assayle Israel. He joyneth them together under their Prince Gog, and sheweth that their habitations were on the North quarters of *Juda*, and how feated and joyned together. Gog signifieth in the Hebrew (saith Saint Hierome) *tectum* or *covering of a house*: and *Pintus* upon Ezechiel affirmeth, that by Gog is meant *Antichrist*: for (saith he) *Antichristus erit Diaboli tegumentum sub specie humana: That Antichrist shall be the covering of the Devil under humane forme*. He addeth, that *Magog* is as much to say as *Gog*: the Letter (M) being an Hebrew Preposition, and importeth as much as *of, or, from*: so he taketh *Magog* for those people which follow *Antichrist*. So far *Pintus*; at least in this not amiss, that he expoundeth *Magog* not for any one person, but for a Nation: with which agree-eth this observation of *Beroaldus*, *Magog* (saith he) in Hebrew is written *Ham-Magor*, which sheweth *Magog* to be a Region or Nation: for the Letter (H) which is used but for an Emphasis (which the Hebrews call *Hetiajedia*) is never added to proper names of men, but often to place. So as *Gog* was Prince of that Nation (called either *Magog*, or, according to others, the people of *Gog*) also Prince of *Meshech*, (or *Mosoch*) and of *Tubal*: as by the first Verse of the 29 Chapter is made manifest: *Behold I come against thee Gog the chiefe Prince of MESHECH and TUBAL*. This must needs be meant by the Successors of *Seleucus Nicator*, who did not (as other conquering Nations) seeke to make the *Jewes* their Tributaries only, but indevoured by all means, and by all kinde of violence to extinguish the Religion it selfe (which the Hebrews profest) and the acknowledging of one true God: and to force them to worship and serve the mortall and rotten gods of the Heathen: of which nothing remained but the very name, and dead Images. Saint *Ambrose* and *Isidore* take *Gog* for the Nation of the *Goths*: belike, because they invaded Europe, and sacked *Rome*, and many other places and Cities thereabout. *Hermolaus Barbarus* out of *Pomp. Mela* drives the *Turkes* from the *Scythians*, esteemed *Magogians* of *Gog*. Many take *Gog* for the proper name of a Man: others of a Region: others for a Nation inhabiting a Region, as *Junius*, who sayes that *Gog* is the name of a Nation, denominated from him whom the *Greekes* Stories call *Gyges*: who in former time having slaine *Candaules* the *Lydian*, gave his owne name to that Nation, thence after called *Gygades*: and thereof also the *Cygean* Lake; which Lake *Strabo* also findeth in *Lydia*, (of which *Gyges* was King) fortie Furlongs from *Sardinia*. *Plinie* calleth it *Gygen-lagnum*. *Hierodotus* and *Nicator* set it about the Rivers of *Hillur*, and *Manderamus*; but the difference is not great. *Marius Niger* maketh mention of this *Gyges* King of *Lydia*: who after he had subdued the Countrey about the River *Rhodus* which runneth into the *Hellepont*, called the Promontorie *Trapeze* after his owne name *Gyges*. These Opinions doe also seeme to strengthen that of *Junius*. For *Magog*, saith he, is that part of *Asia* the lesse, which *Halyattes* obtained, and after him his Son *Cresus*; who (as *Junius* further notes) having mastered all those Regions as farre South as *Libanus*, in that Border built the Citie *Gigarta* or *Gogkarta* (which in the *Syrian* signifieth the Citie of *Gog*) seated in *Celofyria*, whose people were the ancient Enemies of the *Jewes*.

Now that *Magog* is found in *Celofyria*, *Plinie* affirmeth, saying; *Celofyria habet Bambycen, quae alio nomine Hierapolis vocatur: Syris vero, Magog; Celofyria habet in it Bambyce, which by another name is called Hierapolis, but of the Syrians, Magog*. He further telleth us that the monstrous Idoll *Atergath*, called by the *Greekes* *Derceto*, was here worshipped. *Lucian* makes mention hereof, saying, that the Citie had anciently another name, which he yet expresseth not; forbearing perhaps the word *Magog*, as founding nothing elegantly in the *Greek*. But if we may beleve *Strabo*, then was *Edessa* in *Mesopotamia* the same *Bambyce* or *Hierapolis*, where the same Idoll was worshipped. *Ortelius* is doubtfull whether one of these Authors did not mistake the place of this *Bambyce* or *Hierapolis*. So It may well enough be, that the same name and Religion was common to them both. Certaine it is, that both of them lay due North from *Palestina*, and were both subject unto the Kings of the Race of *Seleucus*. Now I do not condemne the Opinion of *Hermolaus Barbarus* following *Josephus*, but grant that perhaps *Magog* might also be the Father of the *Scythians*; notwithstanding that in this place, where *Gog* is made the Prince of *Magog*, the Nations of *Celofyria*, and the North parts adjoining be meant by *Magog*: for by a latter Plantation from these parts they might bee propagated into *Scythia*. Yet it is not to be denied, that the *Scythians*

in

in old times coming out of the North-east wasted the better part of *Asia* the lesse, and posselt *Celofyria*, where they built both *Scythopolis* and *Hierapolis*, which the *Syrians* call *Magog*. And that to this *Magog* Ezechiel had reference, it is very plain: for this Citie *Hierapolis* or *Magog* standeth due North from *Judea*, according to the words of Ezechiel, that from the North quarters those Nations should come. For as the Kings of the South which infested the *Israelites* were the *Pholomies*, Kings of *Egypt*: so those of the North were the Kings of *Asia* and *Syria*, the Successors of *Seleucus*, the Successors of *Alexander Macedon*. *Gulielmus Tyrim* thinks that this *Hierapolis* is that *Rager*, mentioned in the *Storie* of *Tobias*. *Plinie* takes it not only to have been called *Bambyce*, as we have said, but also *Edessa*: not that by *Euphrates*; but another of the same name: now the known name is *Alppo*: for so *Belonius* expounds this *Hierapolis*, or *Magog*. This Citie had the Title of Sacred, as the Sacred Citie, (for so the word *Hierapolis* signifieth) yet was it a place of most detested Idolatry, and wherein was worshipped the Idoll of the *Mermayde Atergath*, or *Atergith*, according to *Plinie*, which the *Greekes* call *Derceto*. If then we confer the words of Ezechiel in the third verse of the thirty eight Chapter, wherein he joyneth together *Gog*, *Meshech* and *Tubal*; and withal remember that *Hierapolis* was the Citie of *Magog*, which also is seated directly North from *Judea*: with whom also Ezechiel coupleth *Gomer*, and all his bands of the North quarters; we may (as I conceive) safely conclude, that these Followers and Vassals of *Gog* (which were Northern Nations in respect of *Judea*) were not the *Gomerians* of *France*, nor the *Tubalines* of *Spain*, but a people of the lesser *Asia*, and *Celofyria*: and therefore that the opinions of *Berosus*, *Iosephus*, and whosoever else hath followed them therein, are to be rejected. But if *Iosephus* refer himself to later times, and think that some *Colonie* of the *Tubalines* might from *Iberia* and *Asia* passe into *Spain* (to wit) from that piece of Land between *Colchis* (or *Mengrelia*) and *Albania* (most part posselt by the *Georgians*) then is his judgement of better allowance. For without any repugnancy of opinions, it may be granted, that in process of time these people might from their first habitation, pass into the Countreys neer the *Euxine* Sea, and from thence in after-Ages into *Spain*.

*Iosephus* makes mention of the *Iberi*, saying, that they were anciently called *Tubelors*, as of *Tubal*; from whence (saith *Iustine*) they passed into *Spain* to search out the mines of that Region: having belike under stood that it was a Southerly Countrey, and Mountainous. For it seemeth that the *Tubalines* called *Chalybes* lived altogether by the exchange of Iron, and other Metals, as *Apollonius* witnesseth in these following Verses, telling how the *Argonautes* did visit them:

*Hæc gens tellurem rigida non vertit aratro,  
Sed ferri venas scindit sub montibus altis:  
Mercibus hæc mutat, quæ vitæ alimenta ministrant.*

40

The *Chalybes* plough not their barren soyle,  
But undermine high Hills for Iron Veins:  
Changing the purchase of their endless toyle  
For Merchandize, which their poor lives sustains.

But it is more probable, that *Spain* was first peopled by the *Africans*, who had ever since an affection to return thither, and to re-people it anew. This appeared by the *Carthaginians* of old, who were easily drawn to pass over the Straights into that Countrey: and after by the Moors who held *Granado*, and the South parts eight hundred yeers, till the time of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*. And either of these opinions are more probable, so than that in the twelfth yeere of *Nimrods* Reigne, *Tubal* past into *Spain*, and therein built Saint *Uval*: a poor Town, and a poor device, God knows. Certain it is, that we must finde *Meshech* or *Meshech*, and *Tubal* Neighbours, and *Gomer* and *Togarma* not far off, or else we shall wrong Ezechiel: for he called *Gog* the Leader or Prince of *Meshech* and *Tubal*, and maketh *Gomer* and *Togarma* their assistants. And that *Meshech* inhabited *Asia*, *Funfius* (though he followed *Berosus*) confesseth, for these be his words: *MESACUS, qui à MOSE MESECH, prius Mesos ab Adula monte usque ad Ponticam regionem posuit: hæc regio postea Cappadocia dicta est, in qua urbs Mazæa, &c. hæc est terra MAGOG principalis; MESACUS, whom MOSES calleth MESECH, placed the ancient*

Mesians

Mesians from the Mount Admar, unto the Coasts of Pontus. This Region was afterward called Cappadocia, in which is the Towne Mazica, &c. this is the principall Countrey of MAGOG. And this doth Annus also avow, and yet forgets that Gog was Prince both of Mesch and Tubal: and therefore that the one was a Nation of Spaniards, the other of Cappadocians, is very ridiculous: Spain lying directly West, & not North from Indea. Also Ezechiel in the 27. Chapter, where he prophesieth of the destruction of Tyre, nameth Mesch and Tubal joyntly. And for a finall prooffe, that these Nations were of a Northern Neighbour Land (how farr soever stretched) Ezechiel in the 38. Chapter makes them all Horfemen. Thou, and much people with thee, all shall ride upon Horfes, even a great multitude and a mightie. Then if any man beleve that these troups came out of Spain over the Pyrenes, and first passed over a part of France, Italie, Hungarie, and Sarmatia, and imbarqued againe about the Hellespont, or else compassed all Pontus, and Euxinus, to come into the lesser Asia, which is halfe the length or compasse of the then known World; he may be called a strong beleever, but he shall never be justified thereby. But on the contrary, it is knowne, that Seleucus was a Province neighbouring Palestina or Indea, and that Hierapolis (or Mageg) joyntly unto it: whose Princes commanded all Syria, and Asia the lesse, (namely the Selencida) and held it, till Scipio Asiaticus overthrow Antiochus the Great: after which they yet posselt Syria till the time of Tigranes: and whether Mesch be in Cappadocia, or under Iberia, yet is it of the Tubalines, and one and the same Dominion.

Of Gomer the like may be said. First, he seated himselfe with Togorma, not far from Magog and Tubal, in the borders of Syria and Cilicia. Afterward he proceeded further into Asa the lesse; and in long tract of time his valiant Issue filled all Germania, rested long in France and Brittain, and possessed the utmost borders of the earth, accomplishing (as Melancthon well notes) the signification of their parents name, which is *Vimost bordering*. But when these borderers wanted further place, wherein they might exonerate their swelling multitudes that were bounded in by the great Ocean, then did they returne upon the Nations occupying the Countries, through which they had formerly passed, oppressing first their Neighbours, afterwards the people more remote. Hereupon it was (as the worthy restorer of our Antiquities M. William Camden hath noted) that they were called *Cimbri*, which in their old Language doth signifie Robbers; necessity enforcing them to spoyle their Neighbours, to whom in their originall they were as neere joynted, as afterwards in the feates which they possessed. For that the Warlike nations of Germany were in elder Ages accustomed to be beaten by the Gauls, the authoritie of Caesar affirming it, is prooffe sufficient. But in times following they persued richer Conquests, and more easie though further distant, by which (to omit their other enterprises not here to be spoken of) they were drawne at length into Asa the lesse, and occupied those parts, which had formerly bene held by their Progenitours. I say not that they claymed those Lands as theirs by Descents: for likely it is, that they knew little of their owne Pedigree. Neyther can any man therefore deny, that they were of old seated in Asa, because in late Ages they returned thither; unless he will think, that all those Nations which from far parts have invaded and conquered the Land of shinaar, may by that Argument be proved not to have issued from thence at the first.

Now concerning Samothers, for his excellent wisdom firnamed *Dir*, whom Annus makes the Brother of Gomer and Tubal (which Brother, Moses never heard of, who spake his knowledge of Japhets sons) they must finde him in some old Poet: for *Funfius*, a great *Berosian*, confesseth: *Quis hic Samoths fuerit incertum est; Who this Samoths was, it is uncertain; neither is there any proof that he was that same Dir, whom Caesar saith the Gauls suppose to be their Ancestor; yea, and Vignier confesseth with Funfius* *ms: Mays on ne sçait qui il estoit: No man knows who he was.*

## §. V.

Against the fabulous Berosus his fiction, That the Italian Janus was Noah.

BUT before I go on with Noah his Sonnes, I thinke it is necessarie to disprove the fiction which Annus hath of Noah himselfe; an invention (indeed) very ridiculous, though warranted (as hee hath wrested) by those Authors of whom

himselfe hath Commented: as the Fragment of Berosus, Fabius, Picor, Cato, Lavinius and others. For Annus seeks to persuade us, that Noah (surnamed Janus) was the same which founded Genoa, with other Cities in Italie, wherein he lived 92. yeeres. This to disprove, by Moses silence, is a sufficient argument to me, if there were nothing else to disprove it. For if he vouchsafed to remember the building of Babel, Erec, Achad, Chalne and Nineve by Nimrod, Noah was a man of too great make to be forgotten, with all the acts hee did in 92. yeeres. But it were a needlesse labour for me to disprove the authoritie of that Berosus, on whom Annus groundeth, seeing so many learned men have so demonstratively proved that Fragment to be counterfeited. Besides that, Tavianus the Assyrian, in his Oracion against the Greekes, avoweth, that the ancient and true Berosus wrote onely three Bookes, dedicated to Antiochus the successor of Seleucus Nicator: but Annus hath devised five Bookes, wherewith he honoureth Berosus. And whereas Berosus handled onely the estate of the Chaldeans and Assyrians, Annus hath filled this Fragment with the businesse of all the World. And if we may beleve Eusebius better than Annus, then all the Kings of the Latines (before Eneas) consumed but 150. yeeres: whereas no man hath doubted, but that from Noah to Eneas arrivall into Italy there past 1126. (after the least rate of the Hebrew account) and (after Codoman) 1291. For Janus (who was the first of their Kings) lived at once with Ruth, who married Boaz in the worlds year (as some reckon) 2717. after the Flood 1064. and Noah dyed 350. yeeres after the Flood: and so there past betwene Janus of Italie and Noah surnamed Janus 704. yeeres. For Saturnus succeeded Janus, Picus after Saturnus, Fannus after Picus, and Latinius followed Fannus: which Latinius lived at once with Tautanes the 27. King of Assyria; with Pelagus of Peloponnesus; with Demophoon of Athens; and Sampson Judge of Israel. Now all these five Kings of the Latines having consumed but one hundred and fiftie yeeres, and the last of them in the time of Sampson: then reckoning upwards for one hundred and fiftie yeeres, and it reacheth Ruth, with whom Janus lived.

True it is, that the Greekes had their Janus; but this was not Noah: so had they Ion the son of Xuthus, the son of Deucalion, from whom they draw the Iones, who were indeed the children of Lavan, the fourth son of Japheth. For the vulgar Translation (where the Hebrew word is Lavan) writes Greece, and the Septuagint, Hellas; which is the same. So had they Medus the son of Madae, whom they make the Parent of the Medes though they were descended of a farre more ancient Father, (to wit) Madai the third son of Japheth.

Lastly, we see by a true experience, that the British Language hath remained among us above 2000. yeeres, and the English speech ever since the invasion of the Angles, and the same continuance have all Nations observed among themselves, though with some corruption and alteration. Therefore it is strange if either Noah (by them called Janus) had left in Italie his Grand-child Gomer after him, or Tubal in Spaine, that no plaine resemblance of the Hebrew, Syrian, or Scythian (which no time could have quite extinguished) should have bene found in the Languages of those Countries. For which reasons we doubt not but these personall Plantations of Janus, Gomer, Tubal, &c. in Italie, Spaine, or France, are merely fabulous. Let the Italians therefore content themselves with the Græcian Janus which commanded them and planted them, and who preceded the fall of Troy but 150. yeeres (saith Eusebius) which was in the time of Latinius, the fift King: which also Saint Augustine and Iustine confirme: and this agreeth with reason, time, and possibilitie. And if this be not sufficient to disprove this vanity, I may out of themselves adde thus much: That whereas some of them make Vesta (others Camasina) the wife of this Janus, who instituted the holy Fire of the Vestal Virgins in Rome (the Latines and Romans taking from Janus all their Idolatrous and Heathenish Ceremonies) there is no man so impious, as to beleve that Noah himselfe (who is said by Moses to have walked with God, to be a just man, and whom God of all Mankind made choice of) could be either ignorant of the true and only God, or so wicked and ungratefull, to set up or devise any Heathen, Salvage, or Idolatrous adoration, or have instituted any Ceremonie, contrary to that which he knew best pleasing to God himselfe.

## §. VI.



Babylonia into Greece, but tooke *Asa* the lesse in his passage; and from thence past over the nearest way, leaving his own name to some maritime Province on that side, as he did to that part of Greece to be called. But yet *Strabo* himself beleeveth, that *Ionia* tooke the name from *Ion* the son of *Xanthus*: for so much he had learned from themselves; which was also the opinion of *Pausanias*. True it is, that the *Greekes* in after-times cast themselves into that part of *Asia* the lesse, opposite unto them, which they held for divers yeeres. And howsoever the *Greekes* vaunt themselves to be Fathers of Nations, and the most ancient; yet all approved Historians (not their owne) deride and disprove their pride, and vanity therein. For this dispute of Antiquity (among prophane Writers) is bestrest between the *Scythians* and the *Egyptians*, as *Iustine* out of *Trogus*, in the warre between *Vexors* of *Egypt*, and *Tanais* of *Scythia*, witnesseth: which preceded farre the reign of *Ninus*, and was long before the name of Greece was ever heard of. And it is also manifest, that in *Cecrops* time the *Greekes* were all salvages, without law or religion, living like brute beasts in all respects: and *Cecrops* (saith Saint *Ansgilne*) lived together with *Moses*.

Lib. 18. de Civ. Dei, c. 10.

The sixth son of *Iapheth* was *Meshech*, whom the *Septuagint* call *Mosech*: (a part of those Nations commanded by *Gog* the chiefe Prince of *Meshech* and *Tubal*.) But this we must remember, that betweene *Meshech* the son of *Aram*, and *Meshech* (or *Mosech*) the son of *Iapheth*, there is little difference in name, and both by divers Interpreters diversly written. *Montanus* writes *Meshech*, the son of *Aram*, *Mez*; the *Geneva*, *Mash*; *Iunius*, *Mesch*. But it may be gathered out of the 120. Psalm: that either *Meshech* the son of *Iapheth*, was the parent of those people, or gave the name to that Province wherein *David* hid himselfe: or else (which may rather seeme) that it tooke name from *Meshech* the son of *Aram*. For *David* bewailing his exile (while he lived among a barbarous and irreligious People) useth these words: *Woe is me that I remaine in Meshech, and dwell in the Tents of Kedar*: which *Iunius* converteth thus: *Hei mihi quia peregrinor tam diu: habito tanquam Scenita Kedareni*. The *Septuagint* gives it this sense: *Woe is me because my habitation (or abode) is prolonged, who dwell with the inhabitants of Kedar*: with which this of the *Latine* agreeth; *Heu mihi, quia incolatus meus prolongatus est, habitavi cum habitantibus Kedar*. The *Chaldean* otherwise, and in these words: *O me miserum, quia peregrinatus sum Asianis, habitavi cum tabernaculis Arabum*; O wretch, that I am, for I have travailed among those of *Asia*: I have dwelt in the Tabernacles of the *Arabians*. But howsoever or which soever conversion be taken for the best, yet all make mention of *Kedar*: which is a Province of *Arabia Petraea*; and the *Chaldean* putteth *Asia* in stead of *Meshech*, but the *Hebrew* it selfe hath *Meshech*. And if it be to be taken for a Nation, (as it is most likely, because it answers to *Kedar*, the name of a Nation) seeing *Meshech* the son of *Aram*, 1 Chron. 17. is called *Meshech*, it is indifferent whether this Nation took name from *Meshech* or *Meth*, both bordering *Judea*, and *Tubal*. But as for those that take *Meshech* out of the word *Mosech* (given by the *Septuagint*) to be the *Muscovian*: sure they presume much upon the affinity of names, as aforesaid. Sure I am, that *David* never travelled so far North (for to him *Muscovia* was utterly unknown) but about the border of *Kedar* (it may be) he was often in all the time of his persecution: the same being a city on the mountains of *Senir* or *Galaad*. And yet *Arias Montanus* makes *Mosech* the Father of the *Muscovians*: and here, in also *Melanchton* runs with the tide of common opinion, and sets *Meshech* in *Muscovia*, though with some better advice of judgment; as, first seated in *Cappadocia*, and from thence travelling Northward: expounding the places of the 120. Psalm, (*Hei mihi quid exilo in Meshech*) to signifie, *Gente ejus feritatem infignem esse*; That the ferity of that Nation exceeded: which fiercenes or brutality of the *Muscovians*, *David* never proved, or (perchance) never heard of. But the same ferity or cruelty which those Northern *Muscovians* had, may aswell be ascribed to the *Arabians* and *Kedarens*. For this Country tooke name of *Kedar* the second sonne of *Ismael*, of whom a people of equall fiercenes to any of the world were begotten, both in those times and long after, even to this day (if the *Arabians*, *Ismaelites*, and *Saracens*, may be accounted one people:) the same being foretold by the speech of the Angell to *Hagar*, Gen. 16. v. 12. And he shall be a wilde man: his hand shall be against every man, and every mans hand against him. Now *Arabia* the Desert (saith *Pliny*) confronteth the *Arabians* *Cochlei* on the East, and the *Cedraei* Southward, both which joyne together upon the *Nabathaei*. So it appeareth (as before

Gen. 25. 13.

before) that *Meshech*, *Tubal*, *Gomer*, *Togarma*, and *Magog*, neighboured *Canaan* and *Israel*, and that *Kedar* also did joyn to *Meshech*: all which were Regions of *Syria*, or of *Asia* the lesse, commanded by the successours of *Selencus*, enemies of the re-establishment of *Israel* and *Juda*. But (as I have already said) it might well be, that long after the first plantation of *Meshech* (or *Mosech*) might pass into *Cappadocia*, and thence into *Hyrcania*, and give names, both to *Mazega* in the one, and to the mountains *Moschici* in the other, and from thence might send people more northerly into *Muscovia*, and so all opinions saved. But all salvage nations over-grown & uncultivated, do (for the most part) shew a late plantation, even as civility, letters, and magnificent building, witness antiquity.

10 *Tyrus*, the seventh son of *Japheth*, which *Montanus* reckons among the sons of *Gomer*, *Mont* in *Cir*, was the Father of the *Thracians*, as all Authors (worthy the examination) affirm. *Josephus* was the first that determined hereof: and because the Scriptures are altogether silent, what part of the world *Tyrus* peopled, the conjectures are indifferent, and give no ground at all of dispute. It followeth now to speak of the Sonnes of *Gomer*, which were three,

*Ascanes*, *Riphat*, and *Togorma*.

### § VIII.

of *Ascanes* and *Riphat*, the two elder Sonnes of *Gomer*.

*Ascanes* was the Father of those which the *Greeks* call *Regini*, (saith *Josephus*) but he gives no reason why.

*Ensebius* makes *Ascanes* the Father of the *Goths*. The *Jewes* in their *Targum* make him the root of the *Germane Nation*; but their expostions are commonly very idle. *Pliny* findeth *Ascania* in *Phrygia*, near the Rivers of *Hilias* and *Ciois*: *Melanchton* being of the same opinion, that the *Tuiscones* were descended of the *Ascanes*: (for *Tuiscones*, saith he, is as much to say, as of the *Ascanes*, *proprio articulo die Ascanes*) and that the word signifieth a Religious Keeper of fire: it being an ancient superstition to pray at the fire of Sacrifices, as afterwards at the Tombs of Martyrs. Not far from *Phrygia* was the lake *Ascania*, known by that name in the *Romanes* time. And among the Kings which came to the succour of *Troy*, was *Ascanius* (Deo similis, saith *Homer*) like unto God: because he was beautifull and strong: for in the same manner doth *Virgil* grace *Aeneas*, *Os humerosq; Deo similis: in face and body like one of the gods*: *Virgil* also remembreth such a River, together with the Hills *Gargara*: as, *Illos ducit amor trans Gargara, transq; sonantem Ascanium*: Appetite leads them both over the mountains *Gargara*, & the roaring *Ascanius*. But this *Pliny* maketh more plain in the description of *Phrygia*. For he placeth the City of *Brillion* upon the River *Ascanius*, which is adjoining to *Myssa*, and is near the border of the *Trojan Empire*: and the lake *Ascanes* he directs us to finde by the description of *Prussa*, founded by *Hannibal* at the foot of *Olympus*, which lyeth far within the Countreies of *Bithynia*: and then from *Prussa* to *Nicea* are accounted 25. miles, in which way this lake lieth, even between *Prussa* and *Nicea*. And so *Iunius* (as I conceive him) takes them of *Ascanes*, to be the inhabitants of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, and those North parts of *Asia*. *Stephanus de Urbibus* makes it a City of *Troas*, built by *Ascanius* the son of *Aeneas*: saying, that there was another of that name in *Myssa*. Of *Ascania* a lake of *Bithynia*, *Ptolemy* witnesseth: and *Sirabo* giveth *Ascania* both a Lake, a River, and a Town in *Myssa*, neer unto *Ciois*; which also agreeth with *Pliny*. For *Pliny* findeth *Prussa* (before spoken of) near *Ciois*, and calleth the Islands before *Troy*, *Ascanes*.

Now, whether these places took name of *Ascanes*, the son of *Gomer*, or of *Ascanius* the son of *Aeneas*, it might be questioned: sure it is, that *Ascanius* which brought succour to the *Trojans*, could not take his name from *Aeneas* sonne, who was then either exceeding young, or rather unborn: and it seemeth that the Countreies whence those succours came, were not out of any part of *Phrygia* or *Myssa*, but farther off, and from the North parts of all *Asia* the lesse, which by *Hieremy* is called *Ascanes*, by the figure *Synecdoche*, as *Iunius* thinketh. Out of those testimonies therefore which deceive not, we may confidently determine. For of the Prophet *Hieremy* wee shall learne of what Nation the *Ascanes* were, whose words are these: Set up a Standard in the Land, blow the trumpet among the Nations against her, call up the Kings of *Ararat*, *Minni*, and *Ascanes*, against

Jer. 51. 27.





the son of Philip, went forth of the Land of Cethim, and slew Darius King of the Persians, and Medes. Josephus sets Cethim in the Isle of Cyprus, in which (saith he) there remaineth the City Citium, the Countie of Zeno the Philosopher (witnesseth Laertius) which City Pin-tur upon Ezechiel affirmeth, that it stood in S. Hieromes time. So it may be that all the Islands in ancient times by the Hebrews were called the Islands of Cethim: and in that sense might Cyprus be so called also; and yet because Tharbis was the very next Port to Cyprus, and directly over against it, it is also very probable, that Cethim dwelt by his brother Tharbis: and finding that Island too straight for his people after they were increased, and that the rest of the Coasts, both on Asia side and Greece, were inhabited by his father and brothers, he sent Colonies over the Aegean Sea, & inhabited Macedonia, 10

Dodanim the fourth son of Javan, and the youngest brother (by the most opinions) fate down at Rhodes, as near Cethim, Tharbis, and Elisa, as he could. For Dodanim and Rhodanim are used indifferently by many Translators: the Hebrew (D) and the Hebrew (R) are so like, as the one may easily be taken for the other, as all Hebricians affirm. There is also found in Epirus the City of Dodona, in the Province of Molossia. And as Cethim, when he wanted soile in Cyprus: so Dodanim (seated in a far less Island) did of necessity send his people farther off; and keeping alongst the Coast, and finding Peloponnesus in the possession of Elisa, he passed a little further on the Westward, and planted in Epyrus. And though the City of Dodona was not then built, or (perchance not so ancient as Dodanim himself, yet his Posterity might give it that name in the memory of 20 their first Parent, as it happened all the World over. For names were given to Cities, Mountains, Rivers, and Provinces, after the names of Noahs children and grand-children; not in all places by themselves, but by their successors many years after: every of their Families being desirous to retain among them by those memories, out of what branch themselves were taken and grafted elsewhere. And because great Kingdomes were often by new Conquerours newly named, and the greatest Cities often fired and demolished, therefore those that hoped better to perpetuate their memories, gave their own names, or the names of their Ancestours, to Mountains and Rivers, as to things (after their judgments) free from any alteration.

Thus then did Javan settle himself and his children in the edge and frontier of Asia 30 the less, towards the Sea-shore: and afterward in Greece, and the Islands and neighbour Provinces thereof, as Japheth their Father had done in the body of the lesser Asia, together with Javans brethren, Gomer, Magog, Madai, Tubal, Mesch, and the rest round about him. And in like sort did Chus (the son of Cham) people Babylonia, Chaldeas, and the borders thereof towards the West and South-west: and the sons of Chus (all but Nimrod, who held Babylonia it self) travailed Southward in Arabia felix, & South-westward into Arabia Petrea: the rest of his children holding the Regions adjoining to Nimrod. Mizraim the brother of Chus in like manner took the way of Egypt: and his brother Canaan the Region of Palestina adjoining. The sons of Canaan had their portions in Canaan, of whom all those Nations came, which were afterward the Enemies 40 both to the Hebrews, and to those of the sons of Shem, which spread themselves towards the West, and the borders of the Mediterraen Sea: of which I shall speak hereafter. But first of the sons of Cham or Ham, which were four:

Chus, Mizraim, Phut, and Canaan.

### §. X.

That the seat of Chus the eldest son of Ham, was in Arabia, not in Ethiopia: and of strange Fables, and ill Translations of Scripture, grounded on the mistaking of this point.

### ||. I.

Of Josephus his Tale of an Ethiopesse wife of Moses, grounded on the mistaking of the seat of Chus.

That Ham was the Father of the Egyptians, it is made manifest in many Scriptures, as in the 105. Psalm, verse 23. Then Israel came to Egypt, and Jacob was a stranger in the Land of Ham: and in the 78. Psalm, Hee slew all the first-borne in Egypt, even the beginning of their strength, in the Tabernacles of Ham. There is also

also found a great City in Thebaida, called Cheramis: (as it were the City of Ham) of which name Herodotus also discovers an Island in the same Region. But because Chus (Herod. in En-107p. is the elder son of Ham, it agreeth with order to speak first of him. Now though I have already in the description of Paradise handled this question, and (I hope) proved that Chus could not be Ethiopia: yet seeing it cometh now to his turn to speak for himself, I will adde some farther proof to the former. For, the manifestation hereof lets many things straight, which had otherwise very crooked contructions, and senseless interpretations. Surely, howsoever the Septuagint and Josephus have herein failed, that Chus could not be Ethiopia, but Arabia: (to wit) both that Arabia called Petrea, and a 10 part of Arabia the Happy and the Desert: which Regions Chus and the Chusites presently planted, after they left Babylonia to Nimrod, wherein they first fate down all together. And there is nothing which lo well cleareth this Controverisie, as the true interpretation of the place, Num. 12. v. 1. where Moses his Wife is called a Chusite; together with some places which speak of Nabuchodonosors Conquests. For whereas Josephus and the Septuagint in the place Num. 12. v. 1. as also elsewhere, understand Chus for Ethiopia, we must give credit to Moses himself herein; and then it will appeare that Josephus was grossly mistaken, or vainly led by his own invention. For Josephus presuming that Chus was Ethiopia, and therefore that the wife of Moses (which in Scripture, Num. 12. v. 1. is called a woman of Chus) was a woman of the land of Ethiopia, feigneth 20 that Tharbis the Daughter of the King of Ethiopia, fell in love with the person and fame of Moses, while he besieged Saba her Father's City; and to the end, to obtain Moses for her Husband, she practised to betray both her Parents, Country, and Friends, with the City it self, and to deliver it into Moses hands: The Tale (if it be worth the reciting) lieth thus in Josephus. After he hath described the strength of the Ethiopian City Meroe, which he saith at length Chambyse called so from the name of his Sister, (the old name being Saba) he goeth on in these words: Hic cum Moses desiderare exercituum otium egre ferret, hoste non audente manus confere, tale quiddam accidit. Erat Ethiopia Regi filia nomine Tharbis, &c. which tale hath this sense in English: When Moses was grieved that his Army lay idle, because the Enemy besieged durst not sally and come to battle, 30 he strook, there happened this accident in the mean while. The Ethiopian King had a Daughter called Tharbis, who at some assaults given, beheld the person of Moses, and withal admired his valour. And knowing that Moses had not only up-held and restored, the falling estate of the Egyptians, but had also brought the conquering Ethiopians to the very brink of subversion: these things working in her thoughts, together with her own affection, which daily increased, she made means to send unto him by one of her trustiest servants, to offer her self unto him, and become his Wife; Which Moses on this condition entertained, that she should first deliver the City into his possession; whereunto she condescending, and Moses having taken oath to perform this contract, both the one and the other were instantly performed.

40

### ||. II.

A dispute against the tale of Josephus.

This Tale (whereof Moses hath not a word) hath Josephus fashioned; and therein also utterly mistaken himself, in naming a City of Arabia for a City of Ethiopia: as he names Ethiopia it self to have been the Country of Moses his Wife, when (indeed) it was Arabia. For Saba is not in Ethiopia, but in Arabia, as both Strabo and all other Geographers, ancient and modern, teach us, saying, that the Sabaeans are Arabians, and not Ethiopians; except Josephus can persuade us, that the Queen of Saba which came from the South to hear the wisdom of Solomon, was a Negro, or Black-moor. And though 50 Damians à Goes speak of certain Letters to the King of Portugal from Presler John, of the Abissines: wherein that Ethiopian King would persuade the Portugals, that he was descended of the Queen of Saba and of Solomon; yet it doth no where appeare in the Scriptures, that Solomon had any Son by that great Princess: which had it bin true, it is likely that when Sishac King of Egypt invaded Roboam, and sackt Hierusalem his Brother (the Son of Saba and Solomon) who joyned upon Egypt, would both have impeached that enterprise, as also given aid and succour to Roboam against Sishac, who drew from him ten of the twelve Tribes to his own obedience. Neither is it any thing against our opinion of Moses his Wife, to have bin an Arabian, that the Scriptures teach



us, that *Moses* married the daughter of *Jethro* Priest of *Midian* or *Adonian*: which standing on the North Coast of the Red Sea, over against the body of *Egypt*, and neer *Eilon*, where *Solomon* provided his Fleet for *India*, in the Region of *Edom*, may well be reckoned as a part of *Arabia*, as the Red Sea is called *Sinus Arabicus*. For *Edumaea* joyneeth to the Tribe of *Juda* by the North, to *Arabia Petraea* by the East, to the Mediterranean by the West, and to the Red Sea by the South-east. And if we mark the way which *Moses* took when he left *Egypt*, and conducted *Israel* thence, it will appear that he was no stranger in *Arabia*: in the border whereof, and in *Arabia* it self, he had formerly lived forty years; where it seemeth, that besides his careful bringing up in *Egypt*, he was instructed by *Jethro* in the Egyptians learning. For *Iosephus* confelleth, and Saint *Stephen* confirmeth, that he was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians. But on the other side, this Text makes much against *Iosephus*, where it is written in *Exod.* the second, Therefore *Moses* fled from *Pharao*, and dwelt in the Land of *Midian* or *Midian*, and not in *Ethiopia*. And in the third Chapter it is as plain as words can express, in what Region *Midian* was, where it is written, When *Moses* kept the sheep of *Jethro* his Father in Law Priest of *Midian*, and drove the Flock to the Desert, and came to the mountain of *God* in *Horeb*. Now that Mount *Horeb* is not in *Ethiopia*, every Infant knoweth. And if we may believe *Moses* himself, then was not the Wife of *Moses* purchased in that manner which *Iosephus* reporteth (which was for betraying her Countrey and friends) neither had she the name of *Tharbis*, but of *Sippora*, or *Zippora*: neither was she a Negro, but a *Madianite*. And as *God* worketh the greatest things by the simplest means: so it pleased him from a Shepherd to call *Moses*, and after him *David*, and by them to deliver his people first and last. For *Moses*, sitting by a Well (as disconsolate and a stranger) defended the daughters of *Reuel* from the other Shepherds, and drew them Water to water their Sheep: upon which occasion (by *God* ordained) he was entertained by *Jethro*, whose daughter he married, and not for any betraying of Townes or Countries.

From hence also came *Jethro* to *Moses* at *Rephidim*, not far from *Idumaea*, and finding the insupportable government of such a multitude, he advised him to distribute this weighty charge, and to make Governours and Judges of every Tribe and Family. And so if *Jethro* had been an *Ethiopian*, it had beene a farre progress for him to have passed through all *Egypt* with the Wife and Children of *Moses*, and to have found *Moses* in the border of *Idumaea*: the Egyptians hating *Moses* and all that favoured him. But the passing of *Moses* through *Arabia Petraea* (which joyneth to *Midian*) proveth that *Moses* was well acquainted in those parts, in which the second time he wandered forty years, and did by these late travails of his, seek to instruct the children of *Israel* in the knowledge of one true *God*, before he brought them to the Land of plenty and rest. For he found them nourished up with the milk of Idolatry, and obstinate in the Religion of the Heathen, and finding that those stiff plants could not be bowed or declined, either by persuasion or by miracle, he ware them out in the Deserts, as *God* directed, and grafted their branches anew, that from those he might receive fruit, agreeable to his own desire, and *Gods* Commandments.

Lastly, this opinion of *Iosephus* is condemned by *Augustinus Chrysamenis*, where also he reprehendeth *Apollinaris*, who avowed that *Moses* had married both *Tharbis* and *Sippora*: His own words have this beginning: *Mentitur etiam Apollinaris duas uxores habuisse Moses*, &c. *Apollinaris* also lyeth, in affirming that *Moses* had two wives: and who doth not perceive these things feigned by them? for it is manifest that the Wife of *Moses* was *Zephora*, Daughter to the Priest or President of *Midian*: and that *Midian* cannot be taken for *Ethiopia* beyond *Egypt*; being the same that joyneth to *Arabia*: So far *Chrysamenis*.

## ||. III.

*Chus* ill expounded for *Ethiopia*. *Ezech.* 29. 10.

Now as *Chus* is by the *Septuagint* converted *Ethiopia*, and the wife of *Moses* therefor called *Apollinaris*, so in the conquest of *Nebuchodonosor* is *Ethiopia* written for *Arabia*. For by the words of *Ezechiel*, it is manifest that *Nebuchodonosor* was never in *Ethiopia*. Behold (saith *Ezechiel*, speaking of the person of this great Assyrian) I came upon

upon thee and upon thy Rivers, and I will make the Land of *Egypt* utterly waste and desolate, from the Tower of *Seueneh*, even to the borders of the blacke-Moorees: which last words should have beene thus converted: From the Tower *Seueneh* to the borders of the *Chusites* or *Arabians* betwene which two is situated all *Egypt*. For to say, from the borders of *Seueneh* to the *Ethiopians*, hath no sense at all, *Seueneh* it self being the border of *Egypt*, confronting and joyning to *Ethiopia*, or the Land of the blacke-Moorees. So as if *Nabuchodonosor* conquest had beene but betwene *Seueneh* and the border of *Ethiopia*, it were as much to say, and did expresse no other victory than the conquest of all that Land and Countrey, lying betwene *Middlessex* and *Buckingham*, where both the Countreys joyn together; or all the North parts of *England* betwene *Barwick* and *Scotland*: for this hath the same sense with the former, if any man sought to expresse by these two bounds, the Conquest of *England*: *Barwick* being the North border of *England*, as *Seueneh* or *Syena* is the South bound of *Egypt*, seated in *Thebaida*, which toucheth *Ethiopia*. But by the words of *Ezechiel* it appeareth, that *Nabuchodonosor* never entered into any part of *Ethiopia*, although the *Septuagint*, the *Vulgar*, the *Geneva*, and all other (in effect) have written *Ethiopia* for *Chus*.

## ||. IV.

Another place of *Ezechiel*, cap. 30. vers. 9. in the like manner mistaken.

And as the former, so is this place of *Ezechiel* mistaken, by being in this sort converted: In die illa egredientur nuntii a facie mea in trieribus ad conterendam *Ethiopia* confidentiam: Which place is thus turned in *English* by the *Genevans*: In that day shall there Messengers goe forth from mee in ships to make the carelesse Moorses afraid. Now the *Latine* for (ships) hath the Greeke word *Trieres* for *Triremes*, which are Gallies of three bankes, and not ships. But that in this place the Translation should have been (as in the former) amended by using the word *Chus* or *Arabia* for *Ethiopia* or the black-Moorees, every man may see which meanly understandeth the Geography of the world, knowing that to passe out of *Egypt* into *Ethiopia* there need no Gallies or Ships, no more than to passe out of *Northampton* into *Leicestershire*: *Ethiopia* being the conteminate Region with *Egypt*, and not divided so much as by a River. Therefore in this place of *Ezechiel* it was meant, that from *Egypt*, *Nabuchodonosor* should send Gallies alongst the coast of the Red Sea, by which an Army might be transported into *Arabia* the Happy and the Stony (sparing the long wearisome march over all *Egypt*, and the Desert of *Pharan*) which Army might thereby surpriseth them unawares in their security and confidence. For when *Nabuchodonosor* was at *Seueneh* within a mile of *Ethiopia*, he needed neither Gallies nor Ship to passe into it; being all one large and firme Land with *Egypt*, and no otherwise parted from it, than one In-land shire is parted from another: and if he had a fancy to have rowed up the River but for pleasure, he could not have done it: for the fall of *Nilus* (tumbling over high and steepy Mountaines) called *Catadupe Nili*, were at hand.

Lastly, as I have already observed, the sons of every father seated themselves as neer together as possibly they could, *Gomer* and his sons in *Asia* the lesse; *Javen* and his sons in *Greece*, and the Islands adjoining; *Shem* in *Persia* and Eastward. So the Sons and Grand-children of *Chus* from the River of *Gehon* (their Fathers first seate) inhabited upon the same, or upon some other contiguous unto it, as *Nimrod* and *Havilah* on the one side, and *Saba*, *Sheba*, and *Sabecha* (with the rest) did on the other side. And to conclude in a word, the Hebrewes had never acquaintance or fellowship, any warre, treaty of peace, or other intelligence with the *Ethiopian* black-Moorees, as is already remembered in the Chapter of *Paradise*.

## ||. V.

A place, *Esay* 18. v. 1. in like manner converted, by taking *Chus* for *Ethiopia*.

And as in these places before remembered, so in divers others is the word *Ethiopia* put for *Arabia* or *Chus*, which puts the story (where it is so understood) quite out of square; one Kingdom thereby being taken for another. For what sense hath this part

of Scripture, *Eſay* 18. *Væ terra Cymbalorum alarum quæ eſt tranſ Jumiua Æthiopie*; or according to the Septuagint in theſe words: *Væ terra navium alarum quæ eſt tranſ Jumiua Æthiopie*, *Woe to the land ſhadowing with wings, which is beyond the Rivers of Æthiopia*, ſending Embaſſadours by ſea, even the veſſels of reeds upon the waters. *Væ terra umbræ ore*; *Woe to the Land of the ſhadie coaſt, faith Iunius*. The former Tranſlators underſtand it in this ſenſe; That the waters are ſhadowed with the ſails, which are ſignificatively called the wings of the ſhips; the other, that the coaſt of the Sea was ſhadowed by the height of the Land.

But to the purpoſe: That this Land here ſpoken of by the Prophet *Eſay*, is *Egypt*, no Interpreter hath doubted. For they were the *Egyptians* that ſent this meſſage to the *Iſraelites* which *Eſay* repeateth, and by the former tranſlation every man may ſee the tranſpoſition of Kingdomes: for hereby *Egypt* is tranſported unto the other ſide of *Æthiopia*, and *Æthiopia* ſet next unto *Judea*, when it is the Land of *Chufſ* and *Arabia* indeed that lyeth between *Judea* and *Egypt*, and not *Æthiopia*, which is ſeated under the Equinoctial Line. And of this, *Berolaldus* asketh a material queſtion, (to wit) what Region that ſhould be, of which the Prophet ſpeaketh, & placeth it beyond the rivers of *Æthiopia*. Nam de ignota aq regione dici nequit; For it cannot be ſaid that he treateth of an unknown Region. Now if *Æthiopia* it ſelf be under the Equinoctial line, with whom the Jews had never any acquaintance, why ſhould any man dream that they had knowledge of Nations far beyond it again, and beyond the Rivers of *Æthiopia*? except we ſhall impudently think that the Prophet ſpoke he knew not what, or uſed an impertinent diſcourſe of thoſe Nations, which were not diſcovered in 2000. years after, inhabiting as far South as the Cape of Good Hope, commonly known by the name of *Bona eſperanza*.

## ||. VI.

That upon the like miſtaking, both *Terraca* in the ſtory of *Senacherib*, and *Zera* in the ſtory of *Ala* are unadviciſedly made *Æthiopians*.

And by this tranſlation is the ſtory of *Senacherib* utterly miſtaken in the cauſe of his retreat. For *Senacherib* was firſt repulſed at *Peliſſum*, at the very entrance of *Egypt* from *Judea*: when having certain knowledge that *Thirrhakeh*, (which all the Inter-<sup>30</sup> preters called King of *Æthiopia*) was on the way to ſet on him, he began to withdraw himſelf: and fearing to leave his Army in two parts, he ſent threatening Meſſengers to *Ezechia* King of *Juda*, perſwading him to ſubmit himſelf: the Tenor whereof is ſet down in the ſecond of *Kings* in theſe words: *Have any of the gods of the Nations delivered his Land out of the hands of the King of Aſſur? Where is the god of Hamah, &c.* By which proud Embaſſage, if he had obtained entrance into *Jeruſalem*, he then meant to have united that great Army before *Jeruſalem*, commanded by *Rabſackeh*, with the other which lay before *Peliſſum*, a great City upon the branch of *Nihus* next *Arabia*. For *Senacherib* had already maſtered the moſt part of all thoſe cities in *Judea* & *Benjamin* with a third Army (which himſelf commanded) being then at the ſiege of *Lebna*. But upon the re-<sup>40</sup> mor of that *Arabian* Army led by the King *Thirrhakeh* (whom *Joſephus* calls *Tharſicu*) *Rabſackeh* halted from the ſiege of *Hiernſalem*, and found *Senacherib* departed from *Lachis*, and ſet down before *Lebna*, which was afterwards called *Elenthoropolis*, as ſome have ſuppoſed. But while he had ill ſucceſs at *Peliſſum* and feared *Thirrhakeh*, God himſelf, whom he leaſt feared, ſtrook his Army before *Jeruſalem* by the Angel of his power, ſo as 158000. were found dead in the place, as in the life of *Ezechia* is hereafter more largely written. And that this Army of *Thirrhakeh* was from *Arabia*, *Joſephus* himſelf makes it plain. For he confeſſeth in the tenth Book, the firſt Chapter of the *Jews* Antiquities, that it was come to *Senacherib*'s knowledge, that the Armie which was a foot (both to relieve the *Egyptians* and the *Jews*) marched towards him by the way of the Deſart: Now the Deſart which lay indifferent between *Hiernſalem* and *Peliſſum*, was that of *Pharan* or *Sin*, which alſo toucheth on the three *Arabia*'s, to wit, the *Stony*, of which it is a part: the *Deſart*, and the *Happy*; and by no other way indeed could the *Arabians* come on to ſuccour either *Peliſſum* or *Hiernſalem*. But that there is any Deſart between *Peliſſum* and the South part of *Egypt*, hath never yet bene heard of, or deſcribed by any *Coſmographer* or *Hiſtorian*. So then this deſcription of the ſecond of *Kings*, ver. the ninth, hath the ſame miſtaking as the reſt. For here the word (*Chufſ*) is alſo tranſlated *Æthiopia*; and in this ſenſe have all the Interpreters, (but *Iunius*) expreſſed the beginning of the ninth Verſe: He

He heard alſo men ſay of *Thirrhakeh* King of *Æthiopia* &c. whereas it ſhould have been thus converted with *Iunius*: *Audient autem de Thirrhakeh Rege Chufſi*; He heard alſo of *Thirrhakeh* King of the *Chufſites*. For they were the *Chufſites* and *Arabians*, whoſe houſes and Cities were next the fire, and upon whom the very ſmoake of *Juda* flaming was blown, being their neereſt Neighbours: and ſo were not the *Æthiopian* Black-Moors <sup>Plin. l. 5. c. 91.</sup> under the Equinoctial, whom neither war nor peace (which diſcovereth all Regions) ever found out, ſaith *Plinie*. For this King was no more King of *Æthiopia* than *Zera* was, who invaded *Aſa* King of *Juda*, with an Army of a Million, and three thouſand <sup>2 Chron. c. 14.</sup> Chariots. Indeed, how ſuch an Army and thoſe Chariots ſhould paſs through all *Egypt*, (the Kings of *Egypt* being mighty Kings) let all men that know how theſe Regions are ſeated, and how far diſtant, judge. For Princes do not eaſily permit Armies of a Million to run through them; neither was there ever ſuch ſtrength of Black-Moors heard of in that part of the World, or elſewhere. Neither are theſe *Æthiopians* ſuch travellers or Conquerors; and yet is this King *Zera* alſo called King of *Æthiopia*. But the word *Chufſ* being firſt ſo converted for *Æthiopia*, the reſt of the Interpreters (not looking into the ſeats of Kingdoms, or the poſſibilities of attempts, or invaſions) followed one another in the former miſtakings.

## ||. VII.

A farther expoſition of the place, *Eſay* 18. i.

Concerning theſe words in that eighteenth Chapter of *Eſay*, *Navium alarum, Wing-<sup>20</sup> ed ſhips*, (to the Septuagint turn it) or *Cymbalo alarum* (according to the Latine) ſaith *whiſtling in the winds*, or *terre umbræ ore* (after *Iunius*) the Land of a ſhadowed coaſt, or, the Land ſhadowing with wings, as our Engliſh *Geneva* bath it. The two firſt interpretations of the Septuagint and *S. Hierome*, have one ſenſe in effect. For the ſails are commonly called the wings of a ſhip; and we uſe to ſay ordinarily when our ſhips ſaile ſlowly, that the wanteth wings: (that is) when her ſails are either worn or too narrow: and we alſo uſe the ſame phraſe of the winde whiſtling in the ſails. And it may be <sup>30</sup> that the *Egyptians* employed ſo many of thoſe ſmall ſhips, as their ſails were laid to give a ſhadow over the Red Sea. But to make both interpretations good, *Pintus* (upon *Eſay*) affirmeth, that the word (*Sabal*) doth ſignifie both to ſhadow and to gingle (which is) to make a kinde of Cymbaline ſound: ſo as the meaning of this place (ſaith *Pintus*) is this: *Woe to thee, O Egypt, which doſt promiſe to others ſafeguard, under the ſhadow of thy wings*; which (indeed) ſeemeth to agree with the argument of the eighteenth Chapter of *Eſay*; and this phraſe is often elſewhere uſed, as in the ſixteenth *Plaſm*: *Sub umbra alarum tuarum protege me; Defend me under the ſhadow of thy wings*. The Boats of Reede ſpoken of are of two kinds; either of baſket-willow covered with hides (as anciently in *Brittain*) or a Tree made hollow in the bottom, and built upon both ſides with <sup>40</sup> Canes. Of the one fort I have ſeen in *Ireland*, of the other in the *Indies*.

## §. XI.

Of the plantation and antiquities of *Egypt*.

## ||. I.

That *Mizraim* the chief planter of *Egypt*: and the reſt of the ſons of *Ham*, were ſeated in order one by another.

<sup>50</sup> The ſecond ſon of *Ham* was *Mizraim*; (who according to the place of a ſecond brother) was ſent ſomewhat farther off to inhabit. For *Chufſ* firſt poſſeſt *Chufſ* on the Weſt ſide of *Gehon* chiefly: and from thence, as he increaſed in people, ſo he entred *Arabia*, and by time came to the border of the Red Sea, and to the Southeaſt ſide of *Judea*. *Mizraim* his brother (with *Phut*) paſt over into *Africa*. *Mizraim* held *Egypt*; and *Phut* (as a third brother) was thruſt farther off into *Mawritania*. *Canaan* took the Sea-coaſt, and held the ſide of *Paleſtina*: and theſe four brothers poſſeſt all that Tract of Land, from *Gehon* in *Chaldea*, as far to the Weſt as the *Mediterranean* Sea: comprehending all *Arabia* Deſerta, and *Petrea*, all *Canaan* which embraceth *Galilee*, *Samaria*, and

and *Judea*; with the two *Egypt*s, whereof the neather is bounded by *Memphis* on the South, and by the *Mediterran* Sea on the North: and *Thebaida* (called the upper *Egypt*) stretcheth it self toward the South as far as *Syene*, the border of the *Aethiopian*s or black *Moors*. All the rest of the coast of *Africa* Westward, *Phut* peopled; which brothers had not any other Nation or Family that dwelt between them. And in the same manner did all their sons again, and all the sons of the rest of *Noah*s children, sort themselves.

## §. II.

Of the time about which the name of *Egypt* began to be known: and of the *Egyptians* *Lunary* yeeres, which made their antiquities seem more fabulous.

**T**His flourishing Kingdom possessed by *Mizraim*, changed her ancient name, and became *Egypt*, at such time as *Egyptus* (otherwise *Ramesses*, as some think) the son of *Behr*, chased thence his elder brother *Danau*, shifting him into that part of *Greece* now called *Morea*, by whom the *Argives* were made *Danai*, abandoning their proper names: which happened 877. yeeres after the Flood, in the time of *Josua*, as *S. Augustine* conjectureth out of *Ensebius*. But in *Homers Odyssey* it appeareth that the *Egyptians* were so called at the time of the *Trojan* Warre. And before this, *Egypt* was knowne by divers other names, as *Oceana*, *Aria*, *Osfriana*, &c. And *Manethon* (whom *Iosephus* citeth in his first booke against *Apion*) numbred all the Kings of *Egypt* after *Moses* departure, who consumed 393 yeeres. By which other men conjecture, that the *Egyptians* took on them that name 330. yeeres after *Josua*, and about 1000. yeeres after the Flood. But where *Iosephus* in the same booke taketh *Isreal* to be those *Hyslor*, which he also calleth *Pastores* or *Shepherds*, which are said to have reigned in *Egypt* 511. yeeres: whom also he calleth his Ancestors, (meaning the Ancestors of the *Jews*) in this I am sure he was grossly deceived, or that he vainly boasted: for the *Israelites* had no such Dominion as *Manethon* saith, nor abode in *Egypt* so long a time by many yeeres.

Of the *Egyptian* Antiquities there are many fancies in *Trogus*, *Herodotus*, *Plato*, *Diod. Siculus*, *Mela*, and others. For they affirme (saith *Pomp. Mela*) that there had reigned in *Egypt* 330 Kings before *Amasis*, who was contemporary with *Cyrus*; and that they had 30 memory and story of 13000. yeeres; and that the Stars had four times changed their course, and the Sun twice set in the East. These Riddles are also rise among the *Athenians* and *Arcadians*, who dare affirm, that they are more ancient than *Jupiter* and the *Moon*; whereof *Ovid*:

*Ante Jovem genitum terras habuisse feruntur  
Arcades; & Luna gens prior illa fuit.*

The *Arcadians* the earth inhabited  
Ere yet the *Moon* did shine, or *Jove* was bred.

But for those 13000. yeeres it may well be true; seeing it is certain that the *Egyptians* reckon their yeeres by *Moneths*, which makes after that account not above 1000. or 1100. yeeres, whether we take their *Moneths* or *Lunary* yeeres to have been of the first kinde of 27. daies and eight hours; or otherwise 29. daies and twelve hours; or after any other of those five diversities of their *Lunary* yeeres.

## §. III.

Of certain vain assertions of the Antiquity of the *Egyptians*.

**G**Erardus Mercator in his *Chronology*, reasoneth for the *Egyptians* Antiquity in this manner: That the sixteenth *Dynasty* (where *Ensebius* begins to reckon the *Egyptians* times) had beginning with the general Flood; and that therefore the first of the other fifteen reached the Creation, or soon after it. To which conjecture of *Mercator*, *Pererius* maketh this answer; That therein *Mercator* was first deceived, because he taketh it for granted, that the beginning of the sixteenth *Dynasty* was at once with the general Flood: which *Ensebius* maketh 292. yeeres after, and in the time of *Abraham*. Secondly, *Mercator* maketh the beginning of the shepherds *Dynasty* (being in number 17.) in the time of their first King, *Salis*, to have been in the yeere of the World 1846. which

*Ense-*

*Ensebius* findeth in the Worlds age 2140. For the 16. *Dynasty* was begun but in the 292 yeeres after the Flood, as they account, and continued 190. yeeres. Thirdly, whereas *Mercator* maketh every *Dynasty* to endure 15. yeeres, *Ensebius* reckoneth many of them at lesse than 100. yeeres: for the 28. had but sixe yeeres, the 29. but 20. and the 30. but 18. yeeres.

Now *Amnius* in his Supplement of *Manethon* affirmeth, That all these 15. *Dynasties* lasted but 162. yeeres: and that the first of the 15. began but in the 131. yeere after the flood: so as where *Mercator* makes all the 15. to precede the flood, and the 16. to have been then in being at the time of the flood, *Amnius* makes them all after it. But the contrariety of fallshood cannot be hidden, though disguised. For *Amnius* had forgotten his former Opinion and assertion, that it was in the 131. yeere that *Nimrod*, with the sons of *Noah*, came into the Valley of *Shinar*: so he forgets the time which was consumed in the building of *Babel*: and that before the confusion of Speech there was no dispersion, nor far-off plantation at all. And though he hastily conveyed *Gomer* into *Italy*, and *Arabal* into *Spain*, in the tenth yeere of *Nimrods* reigns: (which was ten yeeres after his arrival into *Babilonia*) yet herein he is more unadvised. For he makes *Egypt* possess, and a government established in the very first yeere of the arrival of *Nimrod* into *Shinar*, before all partition, or any expedition far off or neere in question: for from thence (that is, from *Babel*) did the Lord scatter them upon all the earth.

20

## §. IV.

Against *Pererius*: that it is not unlikely, but that *Egypt* was peopled within 200. yeeres after the Creation; at least, that both it, and the most parts of the World were peopled before the Flood.

**B**ut whereas *Pererius* seeketh to overthrow this Antiquity of the *Egyptians* touching their *Dynasties*, (which *Ensebius* doth not altogether destroy, but lessen) I do not find any great strength in this opinion of *Pererius*: (to wit) that it was either unlikely or impossible that *Egypt* should be peopled within 100. or 200. yeeres after *Adam*, in the first Age. And whereas he supposeth that it was not inhabited at all before the general Flood, I do verily beleve the contrary: and that not only of *Egypt*, but the better part of all World was then peopled: *Pererius* his words are these; *Quomodo enim primos mundi ducentos, vel etiam centum annos Adami proles adeo multiplicari potuit, ut ad Egyptum usq; habitandum & complendum propagata sit, &c.* For how could the children of *Adam* be so multiplied in the first two hundred, or in the first hundred yeeres of the World, and so propagated as to inhabit and fill *Egypt*? for allowing this (saith *Pererius*) we must also confesse, that there were then both the *Assyrians* and other Nations.

Now seeing that the Scriptures are silent herein, and that it is no point of our saving beleefe, it is lawfull for every man to be guided in this and the like questions by the best reason, circumstance, and likelihood; and herein, as in the rest, I protest that I do not gainsay any mans opinion out of any crossing or cavilling humours: for I thinke it the part of every Christian, rather to reconcile differences, where there is possibility of union, than out of froward subtilty, and prejudicate resolvednesse, to maintaine factions needlesse, and dangerous contentions.

First therefore, for this opinion, that *Egypt* was not planted so soone after *Adam*, nor, not at all before the Flood, I say, that there is no reason why we should give a lesse increase to the sons of *Adam*, than to the sons of *Noah*. For their length of life, which exceeded those which came after the Flood double, and (after a few yeeres) treble, is an infallible proof of their strength and ability, to beget many Children: and at that time, as they observed no degrees of kindred, nor consanguinity. And that there was a speedy increase of people, and in great numbers, it may in some sort appeare by this, that *Cain*, who (being fearefull that the death of *Abel* would have beene revenged on him) withdrew himselfe from the rest, which were afterward begotten, and dwelt in the Land of *Nod*, and there, by the helpe of his owne issues, built a City, (called *Enoch*) after the name of his first-borne. Now if it be gathered that *Nimrod* came into the Valley of *Shinar* with so many multitudes, as sufficed to build the City and Tower of *Babel*: and that to this increase there was given but 130. yeeres by *Ezerus*, and after the account of the Scriptures (reckoning, as it is commonly understood, by the birth of *Sipbar* id.

*M*

*Selah,*

*Solub, Heber, and Phalegh*) but one hundred and one year : I see no cause to doubt, but that in the infancy of the first age, when the bodies of men were most perfect, even within 120. years, the same (if not a greater) number might be increased; and so within 70. years after (that is, by such time as the World had stood 200. years) as well *Affria, Syria, and Egypt* might be possessed before the flood, as they were within the same or lesse time after it. Neither doth it agree with the circumstance or true story of the *Babyloni- an and Assyrian Empire*, that all those people, which were increased in the first 100. or 120. years after the flood, came into *Shinar* and *Babylonia*. For that ever *Noah* himself came out of the East, as there is no Scripture or Authority to prove it, so all probable conjecture and reason it self denies it. Again, those multitudes and powerful numbers, which *Semiramis* (but the third from *Nimrod*) found in *India*, considered with her own Army of three millions, (and she left not all her Kingdomes empty) do well prove, that if the World had such plenty of people in so few years after the flood, it might also be as plentifully filled in like time before it. For after their own account, *Nimrus* governed *Babylonia* and *Affria* but 292. years after the flood of *Noah*. And these Troops of *Semiramis* were gathered out of all those Eastern Kingdomes, from *Media* to the *Mediterran* Seas; when there had now past from the flood to the time of this her invasion somewhat less or more than 260. years : for much more time the true *Chronologie* cannot allow; though I confess, that in respect of the strange greatness of *Semiramis* Army, and the incredible multitudes gathered, this is as short a time as can well be given. And if but one half be true of that which is said, That her Army consisted of 1300000. Footmen, and 500000. Horsemen, it must needs be, that long before *Semiramis* Reign, the greatest part of *Asia* (whence her huge Army was gathered) was full of people; yea *Arabia* it self (much part whereof is barren) must long before this time of *Semiramis* have been plentifully peopled; when *Nimrus* having a determination to make himself Master of all Nations, entred (notwithstanding in league with the King thereof; whom therefore he either feared, or sought his assistance. And if *Arabia* were then so well replenished, I see no cause but *Egypt* might also be peopled. Now if we may beleeve *Trogus Pompeius* (*Epit. miz. d* by *Justine*) *Egypt* was a most flourishing and magnificent nation before *Nimrus* was born. For these be his own words, speaking of *Nimrus*: *Frere quidem temporibus antiquioribus Vexoris Rex Aegypti, &c. But there were in times more ancient Vexoris King of Egypt, and Tanais King of the Scythians*: of which the one invaded *Pontus*, the other *Egypt*. And how full of people all that part of the World was, the Conquests of *Nimrus* witness, who subdued with no small force the *Armenians*, the *Medes*, and afterward the *Bactrians*; yea, all that whole body of *Asia* on this side *India*. For *Diodorus* out of *Ctesias* numbred the Armies wherewith *Nimrus* invaded *Zoroaster*, at 1700000. Footmen, and 200000. Horsemen: & the stories generally shew, that though *Zoroaster* Army was far short of this, yet it was greater than any that those parts of the world ever since beheld. But to what end should I seek for foreign authority? for no man doubteth but that *Egypt* was possessed by *Misraim*, the son of *Ham*; and that it was an established Kingdome, filled with many Cities in *Abrahams* time, the Scriptures tell us. And sure, to prepare and cultivate a desolate and overgrown ground, to beautifie it with many Cities, Lawes, and Policies, cannot be esteemed a labour of a few daies; and therefore it must be inhabited in a lesse time than 200. years after the flood; and in the same time (if not in a shorter) before the flood. For if so many millions of men were found within 300. years after the generall flood; so as not onely *Babylon*, and *Affria*, *Bactria*, *Armenia*, *Media*, *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Palestina*, yea the far-off *Lybia* on the one side, and *India* on the other, and *Scythia* (inferiour to neither) were all filled: into what small corners could then all those Nations be compressed, which 1656. years brought forth before the flood? even necessity, which cannot be resisted, cast the abundance of mens bodies into all parts of the known world; especially where death forbore the father, and made no place for the son, till he had beheld living Nations of his own body.

||. V.

||. V.

Of some other reasons against the opinion of *Pererius*.

For what a strange increase did the long lives of the first Age make, when they continued 800. or 900. years? Surely we have reason to doubt, that the World could not containe them, rather than that they were not spread over the World. For let us now reckon the date of our lives in the Age of the World: wherein if one exceed 50. years, ten for one are cut off in that passage, and yet we finde no want of people; nay we know the multitude such, as if by Wars or pestilence they were not sometimes taken off by many thousands, the earth with all the industry of man could not give them food. What strange heaps then of souls had the first Ages, who enjoyed 800. or 900. years, as aforesaid? These numbers, I say, cannot be counted nor conceived. For it would come to the same reckoning in effect, as if all those which have been borne in *Brittain* since 3. or 4. hundred years before the *Norman Conquest* (saving such as by accident or by violence were cut off) were now alive; and if to these there were added as many as by *Polygamy* might have been increased. For (to omit, that the *Gyants* and mighty ones of the first Age observed no law of Matrimony) it is to be thought that those lovers of the World and of pleasure, when they knew the long and liberal time which nature had given them, would not willingly or hastily present themselves to any danger which they could fly from or eschew. For what humane argument hath better perswasion to make men careless of life, and fearless of death, than the little time which keeps them asunder, and that short time also accompanied with so many pains and diseases, which this envious old Age of the World mingleth together, and soweth with the seeds of mankind?

Now if that *Berosus* or *Annius* may be alledged for sufficient Authours, whom *Pererius* himselfe in this question citeth, then is it by them affirmed, and by *Josephus* confirmed, that the City of *Enoch* was seated near *Libanus* in *Syria*: and if other parts of *Syria* were peopled in *Cains* time, I see no cause why *Palestina* (which is also a Province of *Syria*) and *Egypt* (which neighboureth it) could be left desolate both all the lifetime of *Cain*, and all those times between his death and the Flood, which were by estimation 700. or 800. years. And sure though this fragment of *Berosus* with *Annius* his Comment be very ridiculous in many places (the ancient Copies being corrupted or lost) yet all things in *Berosus* are not to be rejected. Therefore *Saint Hierome*, for such Authours gives a good rule: *Bona eorum eligamus, vitemus contraria*; Let us choose what is good in them, and reject the rest. And certainly in the very beginning of the first Book, *Berosus* agreeth (in effect) with *Moser*, touching the generall Flood: and in that first part *Berosus* affirmeth, that those mighty men and *Gyants* which inhabited *Enoch*, commanded over all Nations, and subjected the universal World: and though that phrase (of all the World) be often used in the Scriptures for a part thereof; as in the second of the *Acts*, That there were dwelling at *Hiernusalem Jewes*, men that feared God of every Nation under Heaven: yet by the words which follow in *Berosus*, it is plain, that his words and sense were the same: for he addeth, from the *Suns* rising to the *Suns* setting; which cannot be taken for any small part thereof. Again, we may safely conjecture that *Noah* did not part and proportion the World among his sons at adventure, or left them as Discoverers, but directed them to those Regions which he formerly knew had been inhabited. And it cannot be denied that the earth was more passable and easie to travail over before the flood, than after it. For *Pererius* himselfe confesseth, that *Attica* (by reason of mud and slime which the water left upon the earth) was uninhabited 200. years after *Ogges* flood; whereby we may gather, that there was no great pleasure in passing into far Countries, after the generall deluge, when the earth lay (as it were) inclosed for 100. or 120. years together. And therefore was the face thereof in all conjecture more beautifull, and less cumbersome to walk over, in the first Age, than after the generall overflowing.

M 2

||. VI.

## ||. VI.

of the words of Moses, Gen. 10. v. ultimo, whereupon Pererius grounded his opinion.

**I** Astly, whereas Pererius draws this Argument out of the last Verse of the tenth of Genesis; And out of these were the Nations divided after the Flood: *quo significatur talem divisionem non fuisse ante diluvium; By which it appeareth (saith Pererius) that there was no such division before the Flood;* which he also seeketh to confirm out of the eleventh of Genesis, because the division of tongues was the cause of the dispersion of the people. This consequence, *quo significatur, &c.* seemeth to me very weak: The Text it self farther teacheth the contrary: For out of these (saith Moses) were the Nations divided in the earth after the flood; inferring, that before the flood the nations were divided out of others, though after the flood out of these only. But whatsoever sense may be gathered from this place, yet it can no way be drawn to the times before the flood, or to any plantation or division in that age: for if there were none else among whom the Earth could be divided after the flood, but Noah's sons, wherein doth that necessary division controul the planting of the World before it? And whereas it is alledged that the confusion of speech was the cause of this dispersion; it is true, that it was so for that present; but if Babel had never been built, nor any confusion of languages at all, yet increase of people and time would have enforced a farther-off and general plantation: as Berosus saies well, that when mankind were exceedingly multiplied, *Ad comparandas novas sedes necessitas compellebat, They were driven by necessity to seek new Habitations.* For we finde (as it is before said) that within 300. years after the Flood, there were gathered together into two Armies such multitudes, as the Valley about Babylon could not have sustained those numbers, with their increase, for any long time; all Asia the greater and the lesser; all Scythia, Arabia, Palestina, and Egypt, with Greece, and the Islands thereof; Mauritania and Lybia, being also at that time fully peopled. And if we beleeve Berosus, then not only those parts of the World, but (within 140. years after the flood) Spain, Italy and France were also planted: much more then may we think, that within 1656. years before the flood, in the time of the chief strength of mankind, they were replenished with people. And certainly, seeing all the world was overflowed, there were people in all the World which offended.

## ||. VII.

A conclusion, resolving of that which is most likely, touching the Egyptian antiquities: with somewhat of Phut (another son of Ham) which peopled Lybia.

**T**herefore, for the Antiquity of the Egyptians, as I doe not agree with Mercator, nor judge with the Vulgar, which give too much credit to the Egyptians Antiquities: so I doe not think the report of their Antiquities so fabulous, as either Pererius or other men conceive it. But I rather incline to this, that Egypt being peopled before the flood, and 200. or 300. years more or lesse after Adam, there might remaine unto the Sons of Mizraim some Monuments in Pillars or Altars (of stone or metall) of their former Kings or Governours: which the Egyptians having added to the List and Roll of their Kings after the flood, in succeeding time (out of the vanity of glory, or by some corruption in their Priests) something beyond the truth might be inserted. And that the memory of antiquity was in such sort preserved, Berosus affirmeth it of the Chaldeans, and so doth Epigenes. For they both write, that the use of Letters and the Art of Astronomy was known to the Babylonians 5634. years before Alexanders Conquest: and this report Annins findeth to agree, and reach to the time of Enoch, who was born 1034. 50 years before the flood, and wrote of the Worlds destruction, both by Water and Fire; as also of Christ his comming in judgment, as Saint Jude hath witnessed. But leaving these Antiquities to other mens judgments, and every man to his own reason, I will conclude this Plantation of Egypt. It is agreed by all, that it was peopled by Mizraim, and that it took the name of Egypt from Egyptus the sonne of Belus, as aforesaid. Being divided into two Regions, that part from Memphis or Nicopolis to the Mediterranean Sea, was called the inferiour Egypt; surnamed also Delta: because the severall branches of Nilus breaking asunder from one body of the River, gave it the forme

of the Greek letter Delta, which is the form of a Triangle. That branch, which ran toward the North-east and embraced the Sea, next unto the Desarts of Sur & Pharan, had on it the City of Pelusium, where Senacherib was repulsed: The other branch, which yielded it self to the Salt-water towards the North-east, is beautified by that famous City of Alexandria: The upper part of Egypt is bounded between Memphis and Syene near Ethiopia, and had the name of Thebaida, of that ancient City of Thebes; which according to Homer was adorned with 100. Gates, and therefore called Civitas centum portarum; and by the Greeks Dioffolis; in the Scriptures No-hamon, which signifieth multitudes of inhabitants, exceeding belief. Josephus calls Egypt Meris of Mizraim: and Herodotus affirms that it had once the name of Thebais.

Phut the third sonne of Ham took the next portion of Land to his brother Mizraim, and inhabited Lybia: whose people were anciently called Phutæ, (saith Josephus) and Pliny mentioneth the River Phut in Mauritania: which River from the mountain Atlas (known to the inhabitants by the name of Dyris) he maketh to be distant the space of two hundred miles. It also appeareth in the thirtieth Chapter of Ezechiel, that Phut, Chush, and Lud were contermini and associates with the Egyptians.

## §. XII.

Of the eleven Sons of Canaan, the fourth Son of Ham.

## ||. I.

Of the bounds of the Land of Canaan: with the names of his eleven Sonnes.

**C**anaan (the fourth son of Ham) posselt all that Region called by the Romanes Palestina; in the Scriptures Galilea, Samaria, and Judea; in the later times knowne by the name of the Holy Land and Iurie: the limits whereof are precisely set downe by Moses, Genesis the tenth, Then the border of the Canaanites was from Zidon as thou goest to Gerar untill Aszab, and as thou goest unto Sodom and Gomorrah, and Admah, and Zeboim, even unto Laisha. Now howsoever these words of the Hebrew Text (as thou goest) be converted, Moses meaning was that Gerar was the South bound of Canaan, and Zidon the North; Sodom and Gomorrah the East, and the other Cities named, stood on the Frontiers thereof. For Gerar standeth in a right line from Gaza in the way of Egypt, the uttermost Territory of Canaan Southward: and this was properly the Land of Canaan. Now the sons of Canaan which posselt this Country, and inhabited some part of the borders thereof, were in number eleven.

1. Zidon.
2. Heth or Chetbus.
3. Jebusi or Jebuseus.
4. Emori or Emoreus, or Amoreus.
5. Girgessii or Girgeses.
6. Hevi or Chiveus.
7. Arki or Harkens.
8. Seni or Sineus.
9. Arvadi or Arvadens.
10. Zemari or Samareus, or Tzemareus.
11. Hamathi, or Hamathens, or Chamatbens.

Of which the most renowned were the Hethites, Gergesites, Amorites, Hevites, Jebusites, and Perizzites: which Perizzites were descended of Zemari or Samareus, or from some of his.

## ||. II.

Of the Portions of Zidon and Heth.

**Z**idon the first borne of Canaan, built the famous City of Zidon in Phenicia, which afterward fell in partition to the Tribe of Asser: for Asser, Zabulon, and Nephtali had a great part of the ancient Phenicia distributed among them; but the Asserites could never obtain Zidon it self.

Gen. 10. 19.

Gen. 23.

Gen. 27. 46.

Kin. 7. 5.

The second Son of Canaan was Heth or Cethus: of whom came the Hethites, or Hittites, one of those seven principal Nations (commanders of Canaan) appointed by God to be rooted out; namely, the Gergesites, the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites. The Hittites inhabited about Bersabe, and towards Hebron, near the Torrent Besor, and about Gerar, which Moses maketh the uttermost limit of Canaan, having the Defart of Pharam to the South: for about Bersabe (otherwise Putens Juramentum) four miles from Gaza dwelt Heth and his Posterity, as far to the North-east as Hebron, and Mamre; and of Ephraim the Hittite did Abraham buy the field of Sarabs buriall. Of which Nation Rebecca bewailed her self to Isaac, saying, *That she was weary of her life for the daughters of Heth.* The Giants Anakim were of these Hittites, a strong and fierce nation, whose entertainment by the Kings of Israel against them the Syrians greatly feared: as in the seventh of the Kings; *Israel hath hired against us the Kings of the Hittites.*

## ||. III.

Of the Jebusites and Amorites.

Jebuseus, the third sonne of Canaan, of whom came the Jebusites, and whose principal seat was Jebus, (afterward Hierusalem) were also a valiant and stubborn Nation, and held their City and the Country near it, till such time as David by Gods assistance recovered both: yet were not the Jebusites extinguished, but were Tributaries to Solomon. 20

Amoreus was the fourth son of Canaan, of whom the Amorites took name, who inhabited that Land to the East of Jordan below the Sea of Galilee, having Arnon and the mountains of Galaad on the East, and Jordan on the West: of whom Og (King of Basan) and Sihon (overthrown by Moses) were Princes.

The Amorites had also many other habitations dispersed within the bounds of Canaan: as behind Libanus in the edge of Celosyria, or Syria Libanica. They had also their being in the mountains of Iuda, and in Idumea near the Metropolis thereof, called Dmna. And hereof it came that all the Canaanites were sometime called Amorites: as in Genesis the fifteenth: *For the wickednesse of the Amorites is not yet full.* And that this was also a powerfull Nation, we finde in the Prophet Amos: *1st destroyed I the Amorite 30 before them, whose height was like the height of a Cedar, and hee was strong as the Oak.*

## ||. IIII.

Of the Gergesites, Hivites, and Harkites.

The fift son of Canaan was Gergesius, or Gergeson, (otherwise Girgasi) who inhabited on the East side of the Lake of Tiberias, or the Sea of Galilee, where Ptolomy sets the City Gerasa, which Iosephus calls Gesera, in the Territory of Decapolis. Here it was that Christ dispossest the possessed with devils; and the Gergesites desired him to depart 40 their Coasts: because their swine, filled with the evil spirits, drowned themselves in the Sea of Galilee. Gergesius also built Beritus (sometime Geris) afterward Felix Iulia, three miles from the River Adonis in Phenicia: in which the Romans held a Garrison: and to which Augustus gave many large privileges.

Hevus: the sixth son, and Father of the Hivites, inhabited under Libanus near Emath. These Hivites, howsoever the Caphthorim expelled a good part of them (as in Deuteronomy the second is remembered) yet many of them remained all the War of Iosua and afterward to the time of Solomon. For God was not pleased utterly to root out these nations, but they were sometimes made Tributaries to the Israelites, and at other times served (in their falling away from the true worship of God) to afflict them: for as it is 50 written, Judges the third: *They remained to prove Israel by them, whether they would obey the commandments of God.*

The seventh sonne was Araceus or Harki, who between the foot of Libanus and the Mediterran Sea, (over against Tripolis) built the City of Archas, Arce, or Arca, afterwards Arachis.

||. V.

||. V.

Of Sini and Arvadi.

Sineus the eight son, Hierosolymitanus sets at Caparorsa, which Ptolomy finds in Iudaea, not far from Jebus; to the South thereof, saith Iunius. But it is more probable, that Sineus founded Sin, which S. Hierome calls Sim: Ptolomy, Simyra: Mela and Pliny, Simyrus: Brochard, Sycon; (called Synochis) near Arca. Pterius thinks that Sineus inhabited the Defarts of Sinat, or thereabout; but hereof there is no other certainty than the report of Brochard, who took view of all these places, affirming, that Sineus built Sinochis, 10 as Zidon built Zidon. There is also another Nation of Cini written with the letter C. (otherwise Kenai) who descended of Hobab the son of Raguel the Madianite, who assisted the Israelites in their conduction through the wilderness of Pharan. But these Cinei were admitted among the Israelites, and had a portion of Land with the Nephthalims, beside Jude. 4. their habitations with the Amalekites: against these Cinei, Balaam prophecied, that they 74-19-33 should be destroyed by the Assyrians.

The ninth son was Araceus or Arvadeus, who in the Isle of Aradus built the City Aradus: opposite against which Island on the Maine of Phenicia, they founded another City of that name, which for opposition was afterwards called Antaradus. To this City came S. Peter (saith Clement) and in this Isle preached the Gospel, and founded a Church 20 in honour of our Lady: but we find no such work of his in the Acts of the Apostles. Both these two were very famous, and places of Skilfull Sea-men: whom Ezechiel remembreth in his prophecies against the Tyrians: *The inhabitants of Zidon and Arvad were 27-28 thy Mariners.*

## ||. VI.

Of Zemari.

Of Samareus, or Zemari, the tenth son, there are divers opinions. Some think that he inhabited in Celosyria at Edeffa, and founded Samaraim, which in Iosua is placed in the Tribe of Benjamin. There is also Samarajim (of the same orthography) upon the Mountaine of Ephraim (saith Beroaldus) mentioned in the second of Chr. c. 13. v. 21. 2. Beroal. in Chra. which the Latine converteth amisse (saith he) by Semeron. The Hierosolymitan Paraphrast 14 makes Samareus (of whom were the Perizzites) the parent of the Emissiani, which Pliny calls the Hemisseni, in Celosyria; and it may be that it was their first habitation, and that they afterwards inhabited those other places before remembered. But that they founded Samaria, both the Hebrew Orthographic, and this place in the 1 of Kings (speaking 40 of Omri) disproveth: *And he bought the Mountain Samaria or Shemeron of one Shemar, for two talents of Silver, and built in the Mountaine; and called the name of the City which he built, after the name of Shemar, Lord of the mountaine, Samaria.* But of all these places I shall speake more at large in the conquest of the holy Land, by the children of Israel. Of whomsoever the Samaritanes were descended, sure I am, that they were ever a perfidious Nation, and base: for as long as the state of the Jewes stood up, they always called themselves Jewes: when it suffered or sanke, they then utterly denied to be of that Nation or Family; for at such time as they were returned from their first captivity, they became a mixt Nation; partly of the Colonies of the Assyrians, and partly of the Naturals.

## ||. VII.

Of Hamathi.

The last of Canaans sons was Hamatheus, or (according to the Hebrew) Hamathi, of Hamathi (saith Beroaldus: ) of which (the aspiration taken away) the same is pronounced Emath, whereof Hamatheus was present. Iosephus and S. Hierome confound Emath with Antioch: not that Antioch which standeth on the River Orontes, on the frontier of Comagena, between the Mountaine Cassius and the Province of Periera, and Seleucia, of which Saint Peter was Bishop, and in which Saint Luke and Ignatius were borne; but Antioch, surnamed Epiphania, as Beroaldus supposeth, which standeth betwene 50

Apamea

Apamea and Emesa in Cassiotis. Yet indeed, Emath cannot be taken for either: for both that Antioch upon Orontes, and that which neighboureth Emesa, are farther off seated from Canaan, than ever any of those Nations straggled. And whereas S. Hierome setteth Emath, which he confoundeth with Epiphania, in the Tribe of Nephthali; it is manifest, that Epiphania, which standeth to the North of Emesa, hath all the Province of Laodicea betweene it and any part of the Land divided. And if Libanon it selfe were not shared among the Tribes, then could not Epiphania belong unto them: for both the Provinces among the Tribes, are between Epiphania and any part of the holy Land: and therefore Emath so taken could not be a part of Nephthali, as in the thirteenth of Josua is directly proved. For Josua counting the lands that remained unpossessed, reckoneth all Mount Libanon towards the Sun-rising, from Baalgad under Mount Hermon, until we come to Hamath. And this reason (among others) is used, that Emath was not in Nephtholim, or any way belonging to the children of Israel: because David accepted the presents of Iobab King of Emath, and (therewithall) conditions of peace: which he would not have done, if that Territory had ever belonged to the children of Israel, but would have recovered it without composition, and by strong hand, as he did the rest. But this Argument (as I take it) hath no great weight. For if the promise which God made, be considered, as it is written in Deuteronomy, then might Emath be comprehended, though seated altogether without the bounds of the land promised, according to the description of Moser and Josua: for Emath is indeed situate on the other side of the Mountain of Libanus: and is otherwise called Iturea. But whereas Hamath Hermon, which joyneth to Libanus: and is otherwise called Iturea. But whereas Hamath is named in Josua 19. v. 35. and written in the Latine version Emath, therein (saith Berwaldus) was S. Hierome mistaken. Emath or Iturea is that over the Mountaines, and the City in Nephtholim should be written Hamath: and so the Septuagint (understanding the difference) write it Ammath and not Emath, the same which indeed belongeth to the Nephthalims, seated on the South side of Libanus, to the East of Aledim: which City S. Hierome writes Emath; Josephus, Hamath; others, Emathin, or Amathicos, and the people Cap. 18. & 19. Amatheims; of which (as I take it) Rabsakeb vaunterth in the second of Kings. Where is the god of Hamath?

## §. XIII.

of the sons of Chush (excepting Nimrod) of whom hereafter.

The Sons of Chush were,	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Sheba,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Havilah,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Saba,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Raama,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Sabteca,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Nimrod.</div> </div>	And the Sons of Raama were,	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Sheba,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">and</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Dedan.</div> </div>
-------------------------	---	-----------------------------	---

## ||. I.

That most of the sons of Chush were seated in Arabia the happy: and of the Sabaeans that robbed Job: and of the Queene that came to Solomon.

Seba or Saba was the eldest son of Chush, the eldest son of Ham; to make a difference betweene Him and his Nephew Sheba, the son of his brother Raama or Regma, (or Ragma after Montanus: ) his name is written with a single (s) Samech, and Sheba the son of Regma with an (s) asperat, which is the Hebrew Schin. Seba the eldest son of Chush, Regma his brother, and Sheba the son of Regma, possesse both the shores of Arabia felix. Saba tooke that part toward the Red Sea, as neereft his Father Chush, and the Land of the Chushites: Regma and Sheba the East coast of the same Arabia, which looketh into the Gulfe of Persia; of which Pliny: Sabaei, Arabum populi, propter thura clarissimi ad utraq; maria porrectis gentibus habitant; The Sabaeans, people of Arabia, famous for their Frankincense, extending their Nations, dwell along both the Seas, (to wit) the Persian, and the Arabian or Red Sea. This Countrey was afterwards called Arabia, a populi mixtione, saith Ptolemy. To this agreeth Ptolemy, who setteth the City of Saba towards the Arabian or Red Sea, and the Citie Rhegama towards the Persian; with whom also we may leave Saba: for so much Montanus gathereth out of Ptolemy, because

because he remembereth a Nation (called Sabaei) neere the Persian Sea; and Missabathe which defended of them. But Montanus hath sent Regma, (or as he calls him) Rhama, into Carmania, for which I see no reason. Josephus, who only attended his owne fancies, hath banished Saba or Seba to the border of Ethiopia. But Berwaldus thinkes it strange, that the Sabaei, which stole away Jobs Cattle, should runne through all Egypt, and all Arabia Petraea, and finde out Job in Tracemitis, betwene Palestine and Caelefyria, 1200. miles off. Now, as this conjecture was more than ridiculous, so do I thinke, that neither the Sabaei on the Red Sea, nor those toward the Persian Sea, could by any meanes execute the stealth upon Job, which forever Berwaldus shall take for neereft. But these were the Sabaei of Arabia the Defart, where Guilandinus Melchior affirmeth out of his own experience, that the Citie Saba is seated: the same which Ptolemy calls Sive, now Semisfacae; and from this Saba in Arabia the Defart, came those Magi or Wise men, which worshipped Christ, saith Melchior, whose words are these: The Magi came neither out of Mesopotamia (as Chrysostome, Hierome, and Ambrose supposed) nor out of Arabia the Happy, as many wise men doe believe, but out of Saba in Arabia the Defart: which City, when my selfe was there, was (as I indeed it) called Semisfacae. And to approve this opinion of Guilandinus, it appeareth that these Sabaei were neighbours to Job, and lay fit to invade and rob him. For both the other Nations (as well those on the Persian Sea, as those on the Red Sea) are so disjoyned with large Defarts, as there is no possibilitie for strangers to passe so them, especially with any numbers of Cattell, both in respect of the mountaines, of the sands, and of the extreme want of water in those parts: *Ubi nec homines, nec bestiae videntur, nec arves, imò nec arbores, nec gramin aliquod, sed non nisi montes saxosi, altissimi, asperissimi*; Where there are found neither men, nor beasts, no not so much as birds, or trees, nor any pasture or grasse, but onely sharpe, and high, stonie, and cragie mountaines. Berwaldus and Peruvius conceive, that the Queen of Saba which came to visit Solomon, was of the Sabaei on the East side of Arabia felix; but the contrarie seemeth more probable, and that she was Queen of Saba towards the Red Sea: for Solomon at that time commanding all that part of Arabia Petraea, betwixt Idumea and the Red Sea, as far downe as Atidan or Madiar, and Ezion Caber: and this Queene of Saba, which inhabited the West part of Arabia Felix, being his neighbour, might without any far travell enter his Territories, free from all danger of surpris by any other Prince or Nation.

But to avoid tediousness, it is manifest that Seba or Saba, Saba, Raama, or Regma, with his Sons Sheba and Dedan, and Sabiteca, were all the possessors of Arabia the Happy, and the Defart: onely Havilah and Nimrod dwelt together on the East side of Chush, who held Arabia Petraea. Now for Saba, there is found of his name the City of Sabatha or Sabota in the same Arabia; of which both Plinie and Ptolemy; who withall nameth Sabotale, within the wals whereof there were sometimes found sixtie Temples. Ezechiel joy-neth the Father and the son together, The Merchants of Sheba and Raama were they Merchants. And that they were the Eastern Arabians, their merchandise witnesseth, formerly repeated in the Chapter of Paradise. For Josephus his fancies, that Saba was the Parent of the Ethiopians about Meroc, and Saba of the Ethiopians Asfabari, they be not worthy any farther answer than hath already beene given: especially seeing these Cities, preserving the memorie of the names of Saba, and of Saba in Arabia, were yet remaining in Ptolemies time, though in some letters changed. As also in the coasts adjoining, the names of other of the brethren of the familie of Chush, with little alterations are preserved. In Arabia the Defart is found the City Saba or Sive, (now Semisfacae) with the Citie of Rhegama: for Rhegma; and the Nation by Ptolemy himselfe called Rabeini of Raamah. In Arabia the Happie is found the Citie of Rhegama, & Rabana; which also keepeth the sound of Rhegma, the Citie of Sapiba or Sapah, not far from the East-coast of Arabia: so as also the Metropolis and chiefe Citie in the bodie of the South part of Arabia, called without difference or alteration Sabatha, and to the West of Sabatha towards the Red Sea, the great Citie of Saba; and the Nation adjoining, Sabaei; and to the South thereof againe toward the freight entrance of the Red Sea, the Region of Saba. To all these his brothers and nephews which were seated on the East side of Arabia, Havilah by the passage of Tygris was a neighbour, to whom he might passe by Boate even unto Rhegma the Citie of Raama, or Rhegma, yet neere the River of Lar towards the mouth of the Persian Sea, which stood in Ptolemies time.



## ||. II.

Josephus his opinion of Dedan, one of the issue of Chush, to have bene seated in the West Ethiopia, disproved out of Ezechiel and Hieremy.

And whereas Josephus (whom in this S. Hierome followeth, as not curious herein) sent Dedan the son of Raamah into West Ethiopia, it is strange that Ezech. should couple Sheba, Raamah, and Dedan together; Dedan in the 15. Verse, and Sheba, and Raamah in the 22. Verse, to be the Merchants of Tyre, if Dedan had dwelt in West Ethiopia, which is distant from Raamah and Sheba (the habitation of his father and brother) 10 above foure thousand miles. Besides which, the merchandise that the Dedanites brought to Tyre doth not make them naked Blacke-moores. For they of Dedan (saith Ezechiel) were thy Merchants in precious clothes for thy Chariots; and these Westerne Ethiopians never saw cloth, till the Portuguese, seeking those Coasts, traded with them: the merchandise of the Countrey being Hides, Elephants teeth, some Gold and Amber, Civet Cats, and Rice, but nothing at all of any manufacture: and all these they exchanged for linnen, or iron chiefly.

But in those dayes, the West part of Africa within the body of the land was knowne only by imagination: and, being under the burnt Zone, was held uninhabitable. And therefore that the Negroes of the West Ethiopia, which inhabite about Serra Liona, of 20 Niger, could either passe by Sea or Land to Tyre, in the bottome of the Mediterranean Sea, were a strange, or rather a foolish fancy. Now to put it out of dispute that Dedan also dwelt by the rest of the children of Chush, which seats they held by that name in the time of Hieremy the Prophet; let us heare Hieremy his owne words: Fly, ye Inhabitants of Dedan, for I have brought the destruction of Elau upon him. Hereby it appeareth, that Dedan was a Neighbour to the Idumeans: and Idumaea is a Province of Arabia Petraea: and Dedan which dwelt on the North part of Arabia felix, joyned in that part to Petraea, the seat of his Grand-father Chush; which neighbourhood and fellowship of Dedan and the Idumeans, is also confirmed by Ezechiel: I will stretch out my hand upon Edom, and destroy Min and Beast out of it, and I will make it desolate from Teman: and they of Dedan shall fall by the sword.

Ezech. 25. 15.

## §. XIII.

Of the issue of Mizraim: and of the place of Hieremie, Chap. 9. Vers. 7.

After Chush, it followeth to speake of Mizraims sons, whose names (saith Saint Augustine) were plural, to signifie the Nations, which came of them. Ludim, the elder son of Mizraim, was the Father of the Lybians in Africa: and the rest of his Brothers dispersed themselves into all the Regions adjoining. Among the sons of Shem there is also Lud; but he is differenced from Lud the son of Mizraim by the singular number: the sonne of Shem being written Lud; the sonne of Mizraim, Ludim: and yet these Names and Nations are often confounded, notwithstanding the apparent difference both of Names and Nations. For, that Ludim the son of Mizraim was the Parent of the Lybians in Africa, and that he was seated not far from Mizraim his father, appeareth by the Prophet Hieremy, who joyned them in this sort together: Come wythe Horses, and raze ye Chariots, and let the valiant men come forth, the Blacke-moores, and the Lybians which beare the shield: for those Nations assailed the Egyptians, being of one Parent descended. And in Ezechiel, Phut and Lud are joyned together. Ethiopia (or Chush) saith Ezechiel, c. 30. v. 3. and Phut, and Lud, and all the common people, and the men of the Land that are in leaue, shall fall with them by the sword: which is as much to say, as the sons of Chush, (which were the Chusites) the sons of Mizraim, (which were the Egyptians) and the Lybians (descended of his son Lud) with other the Inhabitants of Egypt and Africa, shall fall together. Hierosolymitanus finds also in Africa a Nation of the Lydians. And I beleve it: because Hieremy joyneth the Lybians, and Lydians together in the place before remembered. But Lybia in Africa is by the Hebrewes called Ludim (saith Arias Montanus) though 2 Chron. 12. 3. they seeme to bee called Libim or Libei, a name somewhat neere the word Lybie, and by which it may seeme that the truer writing

The termination in the Hebrew, is commonly a signe of the plural number, as aim, of the dual.

Cap. 46. v. 9.

writing is, not Libyes, but Lybie. Neither is it here to be omitted, that Pimius (upon the thirtieth of Ezechiel) understandeth that which is spoken in the third Verse of Lud, not to be meant of the Lybians at all: for he will have this threatening to be meant against the people of Lyda, a City (saith he) between Egypt and Palestina, which opinion I could not mislike, if the City of Lyda were so seated. But Lyda (which should be written Lyda with a double D, and is the same City which was afterward Daispolis, in which S. Peter cured Ones of the palsy) standeth neere the Torrent Gass, not far from Joppe the Port of Hierusalem. Yet it is not impossible but that this City might have Lud for the Founder. For there are many Cities of one name founded in all the Regions of the World, and far asunder; as after the names of Alexander, Seleucus, and Antiochus, many Cities called Alexandria, Seleucia, and Antiochia, so of divers others. S. Hierome maketh Lebubim to be the Father of Libys, who was the third son of Mizraim: and so doth Postellus; and either opinion may be true.

The rest of Mizraims sons have no proper Countries given them in the Scriptures, saving Caslubim and Caphtorim, of whom came the Philistims, whom the Scriptures call Peleset.

These Caslubim inhabited Cassotis, a Region lying in the enterence of Egypt from palestina, in which the Lake Sirbonis, and the Mountain Cassus are found, not far from whence Pompey was buried.

Caphtorim seated near Caslubim in that Tract of Egypt called Sethrotis, not far from Pelusium. Strabo calls it Sethrotis; Stephanus and Pliny, Sethroitis, of the City Sethron: which Ortelius takes to be the same which Ptolomy calls Hercules parva. Of the Caslubim and Caphtorim came the Philistims, which are called by the Septuagint Allophyls (which is) Alienigene, Strangers, or of a strange kindred. These Philistims inhabited the South part of the holy Land towards Egypt, of whom Palestina tooke name. For the Hebrewes (saith Isidore) do not use the letter (P) but in stead of it (ph). Their principall Cities were Gaza, Ascalon, Azotus, Geth, and Accaron: and the people of them called Gasei, Ascalonites, Azotii, Gethes, and Accaronites: Isidore affirms, that Ascalon was first called Philistim: and of that City the Countrey adjoining. But where Isidore had it, I know not.

The first knowne King of the Philistims, was that Abimelech, who had a liking to Abrahams wife; with whom Abraham made a covenant and league. This Abimelech dwelt indeed at this time in Gerar; but it is written that he was also King of the Philistims, in these words: Wherefore Isaac went to Abimelech King of the Philistims unto Gerar. Now in regard that this or some ancienter Abimelech governed the commonwealth greatly to his glory, the rest of his successors called themselves by the same name. The Philistims commanded that Tract of Land upon the mediterranean Sea to the Northward, from the Castle of Pilgrims (otherwise Casarea Palestine, or Straton's Tower) which was the South border of Phenicia, to Gaza, or to the River of Egypt. The Anakims or strong Gyants were of these Philistims: and Goliath was of Geth, one of the five Cities above named. They had sometimes five Kings, saith Lyrannus. They mastered the Israelites at severall times above 150. yeeres, and kept them Tributaries, till they were weakened by Sampson and Samuels; but in the end, this yoke was taken off by David, and laid on themselves.

It is objected, that because these Cities and the Countries adjoining, were held by the sons of Mizraim, therefore did the Israelites dispossesse the sons of Mizraim, and not of Canaan, by forcing those places.

To this saith Pererius, that although the Palestines or Philistims held it in the time of Joshua, yet at the time of the promise it was posselt by the Canaanites; as in the second of Deuteronomy. The Hevites dwelt in the Villages unto Gaza. And what marvel, if the Canaanites being the greater part the denomination were from them? For that the Philistims were of Caphtor, and so of Mizraim, and not of Canaan, besides Moses, the Prophet Hieremy witnesseth: The Lord will destroy the Philistims: the remnant of the issue of Caphtor: and in like manner in the ninth of Amos, the Philistims are said to be the reliques of Caphtorim: Have not I brought up Israel out of the Land of Egypt, and the Philistims from Astar c. 9. v. 7. Caphtor, and Aram from Kir? So I read this place with divers of the learned. For whereas the Vulgar hath, and Palestinos de Cappadocia, & Syros de Cyrene, this conversion Beroaldus condemneth; where Caphtor is taken for Cappadocia, and Cyrene for Kir. For Cyrene is a City directly West from Egypt, betwene Ptolomais or Barce and Apollonia: but Kir in Asia under the Assyrians: Junius hath it Kir, and not Cyrene: and so hath the Geneva.

But

Of which see  
in the second  
Book, Chap. 7.  
Sect. 3. II. 5.

Cap. 25. v. 9.

But *Peregrinus* calls Caphtorim Cappadocia, according to the Vulgar translation, to which he is bound: and yet it is not altogether improbable if he mean Cappadocia in Palæstina, and not that Cappadocia by the Sea Pontus in the North of Asia the lesse. For whether they inhabited Sethreites, or Cappadocia of Palæstina, it is not certainly knowne. And sure in this manner he may expound Cappadocia to be ambiguous, as well as he doth Cyrene: taking it here not for Cyrene in Africa but for a place in Media. For it is written in the second of *Kings*, that *Teglathphalaser* King of the Assyrians carried away the inhabitants of Damafcus into Kir: and so *Josephus* seemes to understand this Kir for Cyrene in Media, calling this Cyrene *Media superior*: for it was the manner and policy of the Assyrians to transplant the people conquered by them, as they did the Samaritans or Israelites, and other Nations. And hereof it came that Kir was called *Syria-Media*: because the Syrians by the Assyrians were therein captived.

# §. XV.

Of the issue of Sem.

## ||. I

Of Elam, Assur, Arphaxad, and Lud.

It remaineth lastly to speake of the Sons of *Sem*, who are these:

1. *Elam*, or *Elam*,
2. *Assur*,
3. *Arphaxad*,
4. *Lud*, and
5. *Aram*.

The posterity of *Sem*, *Moses* recounteth after the rest: because from thence he proceeded in order with the Genealogie and Story of the Hebrewes: (For of *Sem* was *Abraham* descended.)

Of these five sons, the Scriptures remember the length of the life of *Arphaxad* onely, and only the children of him & *Aram*; the rest are barely spoken of by rehearsal of their names, saying that it may be gathered, that *Assur* (who was supposed to found Ninive) was also said to be the Father of the Assyrians, whose issues, and the issues of *Cham*, instantly contended for the Empire of the East: which sometimes the Assyrians, sometimes the Babylonians obtained, according to the virtue of their Princes. This is the common opinion, which also teacheth us that all the East parts of the World were peopled by *Assur*, *Elam*, and *Lud* (saying India) which I beleeve *Noah* himselfe first inhabited: and to whom *Ophir* and *Havilah* the sons of *Joſan* afterward repaired, *Hiflizi Sem* ab *Euphrate* *fluvio partem Asia usq; ad Oceanum Indicum tenuerunt*; These sons of *Sem* (saith S. Hierome) held all those Regions from *Euphrates* to the Indian Ocean.

Jof. Ant. l. 1. c. 7.

Cap. 8. vers. 2.

Ptol. Asia tab. 5.  
Dan. 8. 2.

Of *Elam* came the Elamites, remembered, *Abi 2. v. 9.* and the Princes of Persia; which name then began to be out of use and lost, when the Persians became Masters of Babylon: the East Monarchy being established in them. Some prophane writers distinguish *Elam* from Persia, and make the Elamites a people apart. But *Susa* (which the Scriptures call *Susan*) in *Elam* was the Kings seate of Persia (witnesseth *Daniel*): And I saw (saith he) *in a vision, and when I saw it, I was in the palace of Susan, which is in the Province of Elam*. This City is embraced by the River *Euleus* (according to *Ptolomy*) in *Daniel*, *Ulat*; and seated in the border of *Susiana*.

*Assur* (as most Historians beleeve) the second son of *Sem*, was Father of the Assyrians, who disdaining the pride of *Nimrod*, parted from *Babel*, and built *Ninive*, of equal beauty and magnitude with *Babylon*, or exceeding it. But we shal in due place disprove that opinion. Every mans hand hath bene in this Story, and therefore I shal not need herein to speake much: for the Assyrians so often invaded and spoiled the Israelites, destroyed their Cities, and led them Captives, as both in Divine and Humane letters there is large, and often mention of this Nation.

But howsoever *Herodotus* and D. *Scylax* extend this Empire, and honour this Nation with

with ample Dominion; yet was not the state of the Assyrians of any such power, after such time as *Sardanapalus* lost the Empire. For *Senacherib*, who was one of the powerfulllest Princes among them, had yet the mountain *Taurus* for the utmost of his Dominion toward the North-east, and *Syria* bounded him toward the West, notwithstanding these vaunts of *Senacherib* in *Esay* the 37. Have the Gods of the Nations delivered them of whom my Fathers have destroyed: as *Gozan*, and *Haran*, and *Refeph*, and the children of *Eden* which were at *Telassar*: Where is the King of *Hamath*, and the King of *Arphad*, and the King of the City *Sebaraim*, *Hena* and *Roab*? All these were indeed but petty Kings of Cities, and small Countries, as *Haran* in *Mesopotamia*: *Refeph* in *Palmyrena*: *Hamath* or *Emath* in *Iuræa*, under *Libanus*: the Ile of *Eden*: *Sebar*, and others of this sort. Yea, *Nabuchodonosor*, who was most powerfull, before the conquest of *Egypt*, had but *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria*, with *Palæstina*, and *Phœnicia*, parts thereof. But in this question of *Assur*, I will speak my opinion freely when I come to *Nimrod*, whose plantation I have omitted among the rest of the *Chusites*, because he established the first Empire: from whom the most memorable story of the World taketh beginning.

Of *Arphaxad* came the *Chaldeans*, saith *Saint Hierome* and *Josephus*; but it must be those *Chaldeans* about *Ur*: for the sons of *Cham* possess the rest. It is true that he was the father of the Hebrewes: for *Arphaxad* begat *Shela*, and *Shela*, *Heber*, of whom hereafter.

And that *Lud*, the fourth son of *Sem*, gave name to the *Lydians* in *Asia* the lesse, is the common opinion, taken from *Josephus* and S. Hierome; but I see not by what reason he was moved to straggle thither from his friends.

## ||. II.

Of *Aram*, and his Sons.

*Aram* the fifth and last Son of *Sem* was the Parent of the Syrians: of which *Damascus* was head. Their name was changed from *Aram* or *Aramites* by *Syrus* (saith *Ensebius* out of *Josephus*) which *Syrus* lived before *Moses* was borne; the same which others call the son of *Apollo*. *Mesopotamia* also being but a Province of *Syria*, had the name of *Aram Nabarajim*, which is as much to say; as *Syria duorum fluviorum*; *Syria* compassed with two Rivers; (to wit) *Tygris* and *Euphrates*. The Scriptures call it *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and *Padan Aram*: and the Greeks *Mesopotamia* simply.

Arise and get thee to *Padan Aram* (saith *Isaac* to *Jacob*) to the house of *Ethuel* thy mothers father, and thence take thee a wife. *Strabo* also remembereth it by the ancient name of *Aram*, or *Aramea*, as these his own words converted witness: Quos nos Syros vocamus, ipse Syri Armenios & Arameos vocant; Those which we call Syrians (saith he) themselves call Aramenians and Arameans.

Against this opinion, that *Aram* the son of *Sem* was the Father and Denominator of the Syrians in general; (and not onely of those in *Syria Inter-Amnis*, which is *Mesopotamia*) some read, *Genes. 22. 21*. *Kemuel*, the Father of the Syrians: where others out of the original read *Kemuel*, the son of *Aram*. Neither is it any inconvenience for us to understand the word (*Aram*) here, not for the Nation, but for the name of some one of note; the rather, because in the history of *Abraham* and *Isaac* (which was in time long before *Kemuel*'s Posterity could be famous) we finde *Mesopotamia* called *Aram*; and that with an addition: sometimes with *Nabarajim*, and sometimes of *Padan*, to distinguish it from another *Aram*, which (as it seemes) then also was called *Aram*. For whereas *Iunius* thinks in his notes upon *Gen. 25. 20.* that *Padan Aram* ought to be restrained to some part of *Mesopotamia*, (to wit) to that part which *Ptolomy* calls *Ancobartitis* (so called from the River *Chaboras*, which dividing it, runneth into *Euphrates*) the promiscuous use of *Padan Aram*, and *Aram Nabarajim* (which latter appellation questionless comprehends the whole *Mesopotamia*) may seem to refute this opinion: especially seeing the signification of this appellation agreeth with the whole Region. For it signifieth as much as the yoke of *Syria*, which name agreeth with this Region: because the two Rivers (as it were) yoked together goe along it. The Reliques of the name *Padan* appear in the name of two Cities in *Ptolomy*, called *Aphadana*: (as *Tinius* hath well noted) the one upon *Chaboras*, the other upon *Euphrates*.

N

The

The sonnes of Aram were,   
 Uz, Or Hus.   
 Hul.   
 Gether, and   
 Mesch or Mes.

*Hierom. in trad. Hebraic.* Uz or Hus inhabited about Damascus, and built that City, saith Josephus and S. Hierome. But Josephus mistaking this opinion, both in them and in Lyra, who also followeth Josephus, affirmeth that Abrahams Steward Eliezer was the Founder thereof; though it were likely that Hus the eldest son of Aram dwelt near unto his father, who inhabited the body of Syria. For Hus was a Region of the same, adjoining to Arabia the Desert, & 10 of Batanea or Tracanit, whereof the Prophet Hieremy: Rejoyce and be glad O daughter of Edom that dwellest in the Land of Hus. Hus therefore is seated beyond Jordan, in the East Region of Tracanit, adjoining to Basan, having Batanea Golanitis, and the Mountain Seir to the East, Edrai to the South, Damascus North, and Jordan West: having in it many Cities and people, as may also be gathered out of Hieremy: And all sorts of people and all the Kings of the Land of Hus. In this Region dwelt Job, descended of Hus, the son of Nahor, the brother of Abraham (saith St. Hierome) and married Dina the daughter of Jacob, saith Philo.

*Hierom. Lam. Cap. 4. vers. 21.*

*Cap. 25. v. 20.*

Hul the second son of Aram, S. Hierome makes the Father of the Armenians, and Gether the third son, Parent to the Acarnanians, or Carians: which opinion, (because I finde not where to set him) I do not disprove, though I see no reason why Gether should leave the fellowship of his own brethren, and dwell among strangers in Asia the less. Junius gives Hul (whom he writes Chul) the Desert of Palmyrena, as far as Euphrates, where Ptolomy setteth the City of Choloe.

Gether (saith Josephus) founded the Baſtrians: but Josephus gave all Noahs children feathers, to carry them far away in all haile. For mine own opinion, I alwaies keep the rule of Neighbourhood, and think with Junius (to wit) That Gether seated himself near his brothers, in the body of Syria, and in the Province of Calistis, and Selencis, where Ptolomy placeth Gindarus, and the Nation by Pliny called Gindareni.

Junius also giveth to Mes or Mesch the North part of Syria, between Cilicia and Mesopotamia, near the mountain Masfus. The certainty of those Plantations can no otherwise be known than by this probability, that Aram the Father (of whom that great Region took name) planted his sons in the same Land about him: for he wanted no scope of Territory for himself and them; neither then when the World was newly planted, nor in many hundred years after: and therefore there is no reason to cast them in the desert parts of the World, so far asunder. And as necessity and policie held them together for a while; so ambition (which began together with Angels and Men) inhabiting the hearts of their children, set them asunder. For although the sons of Aram, and the sons of the rest of Noahs children, kept themselves within the bounds of some or large Kingdomes; yet therein every one also sought a Province apart, and to themselves; giving to the Cities therein built their own names, thereby to leave their memory to their Posterity: the use of letters being then rare, and known to few.

In this sort did the pride of the Spaniards in America cast them into so many Provinces: every one emulating and disdaining the greatness of other, as they are thereby to this day subject to invasion, expulsion, and destruction: so as (Nova Hispania and Peru excepted, because those Countries are inaccessible to strangers) an easie force will cast them out of all the rest.

*Chap. 8. Sect. 7.*

Mes the fourth son is made the Parent of the Moenians: of whom something hath bin spoken already. Arphaxad the third son of Shem, begat Shelah, and Heber. Heber had two sons, Phaleg and Joſan: and in Phalegs time was the Earth divided.

### III.

Of the division of the Earth in the time of Phaleg, one of the sonnes of Heber, of the issue of Sem.

THE many people which at the division (at Phalegs birth) were then living, and the through Plantation of all the East part of the World (at his death) hath made a doubt, whether the Earth were divided at either. The Hebrewes (saith Pererius out

of Sedar Holam, one of their Chronicles) affirm that this partition happened at the death of Phaleg: and Phaleg was borne in the year after the flood 101. and lived in all 239. years, which numbers added, makes 340. And therefore was it so many years after the flood, ere the children of Noah severed themselves. But to this opinion of the Hebrews, and the doubt they make how in so few years as 101. (the time of Phalegs birth) so many people could be increased, Pererius gives this answer, That if 70. persons of the Family of Jacob increased to 60000. fighting men in 215. years, (besides women, children, and impotent persons) how much more is it likely, that so soon after the Flood the children of Noah might in a shorter time bring forth many multitudes, having received the blessing of God, Increase and multiply, and fill the earth? What strength this answer hath, let others judge: for the children of Israel were 70. and had 215. years time: and the sons of Noah were but three, and had but 101. years of time, to the birth of Phaleg.

Others conceive that Phaleg took that name after the division, in memory thereof: as Josephus and S. Augusine, who reason in this manner. If the division were at Phalegs death (which happened in the year, which is commonly held to be the 48. of Abrahams death (which happened in the year, which is commonly held to be the 48. of Abrahams death, but was by more likely computation 12. years before his birth) then was the division 38. years after Nimus, who governed 52. years: in the 43. year of whose Reigne Abraham was borne. But when Nimus began to rule the Assyrians, 80. years before this division (as this division is placed by the Hebrewes, Hierome and Chrysostome) then was the earth so peopled in all the East and Northern parts, as greater numbers have not been found at any time since. For Nimus associating to himself Arius King of Arabia, a people who at that time (saith Diod. Siculus) plurimum opibus atq; armis præstant, Exceeded both in riches and bodies of men, subdued many Cities in Armenia; received Baram into grace; then invaded Media, and crucified Pharnus the King thereof, with his Wife and seven Children; vanquished all those Regions between Nilus and Tanais, the Egyptians, Phœnicians, the Kingdomes of Syria, and all the Nations of Persia, to the Hyrcanian Sea. For the numbers which followed Nimus (already remembered out of Ctesias) against Zoroaster and others: and Zoroaster on the other side, who made resistance with 400000. prove it sufficiently, that if the division had not happened before the death of Phaleg, there had needed no division at that time at all. For some of them were so ill satisfied with their partitions, as they sought to be masters of all, and greater Armies were there never gathered than by Nimus and Semiramis: wherefore in this opinion there is little appearance of the truth.

*Per. in Gen. lib. 15. c. 10.*

But for that conceit, that if the division had been made at the birth of Phaleg, there were not then sufficient numbers borne to fill the earth: It was never meant that the earth could be filled every where at the very instant, but by times & degrees. And surely whatsoever mens opinions have been herein, yet it is certaine, that the division of tongues and of men must goe neare together with the ceasing of the work at Babel: and that the enterprife of Babel was left off instantly upon the confusion of Languages, where followed the execution of the division; and so neither at the birth nor death of Phaleg: for Phaleg was borne in the year 101. after the Flood, which was the year that Nimrod came into Shinaar, or ten years after he arrived, saith Berofus.

Now if it be objected that Phaleg (the Etymology of whose name signifieth division) must have lived without a name, except the name had bin given him at the time of this confusion and partition: to this objection it may be answered, That the change of names upon divers accidents is not rare in the Scriptures: for Jacob was called Israel after he had wrestled with the Angel; Abraham was first Abram; and Edom, Esau; and that Phaleg being a principal man in this division had his first name upon this accident changed, it is most probable.

And lastly, whereas the Hebrewes, Saint Hierome and Chrysostome account Heber for a great Prophet, if that by giving his sonne the name of Phaleg, he foretold the division which followed: to this I say, I doe not finde that Heber deserved any such honour, if he had thereupon so called his sonne: for division and dispersion followeth increase of people of necessity; and this Prophecie (if any such had been) might also have reference to the division, which afterwards fell amongst the Hebrewes themselves.

But if we give a reasonable time to the building of the Tower and City of Babel, in which time many people (by reason and by demonstrative proof) might be increased: and that upon the fall thereof the confusion and division followed (whereupon Phaleg took name) then in this opinion there is nothing either curious or monstrous.

## ||. IV.

Of the sonnes of Joctan, the other sonne of Heber.

1. Elmodad.
2. Saleph, or Salep, or Sheleph.
3. Afamath, or Chatzar.
4. Jare, or Jaraab, or Jerath.
5. Hadoram.
6. Uzal, or Uzal.
7. Dicklach, or Dicla.
8. Obal, or Ebal, or Hobal.
9. Abimael.
10. Sheba, or Seba.
11. Ophir, or Opir.
12. Havilah, or Chavila, and
13. Jobab.

The sonnes of Joctan were,

Al those sonnes of Joctan (according to Saint Hierome) dwelled in the East parts of the World, or India, even from the River Cophe or Choa, which is one of the branches or heads of Indus.

But the certain places of those thirteen sonnes cannot be gathered out of the Scriptures, the words of Moses being general: *And their dwelling was from Melba as thou goest unto Separ a Mount in the East.* Of all these thirteen Sons, there were only three memorable, (to wit) Sheba, Ophir, and Havilah. Concerning whose names, to avoid confusion, it is to be observed, that among the sons of Chus, two of them had also the names of Sheba and Havilah. Abraham had also a third Saba, or Sheba, his grand-child by his wife Ketura. But Seba the son of Chus, and Sheba the sonne of Rbegen his Nephew, we have left in Arabia felix: and Havilah the son of Chus upon Tygris. Saba the grand-child of Abraham was (as some have thought) the Father of the Sabeans in Persia: of which Nations Dionysius de Orbis sin maketh mention. *Primum Sabaei; post hoc sunt Passagarde; prope vero hos sunt Tasci: The first are Sabeans; after these be Passagarde; and near these the Tasci.* And whereas it is written: *But unto the Sonnes of the Concubine which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts, and sent them away from Isaac his sonne (while he yet lived) Eastward to the East-Country:* Hereupon it is supposed, that this Saba the son of Abraham wandered into Persia: for Persia was accounted the furthestmost East-Country in respect of Judaea, which also Ovid setteth under the Sun-rising. Yet seeing the rest of Abraham's sons seated themselves on the borders of Judaea, I rather choole to leave Saba the sonne of Abraham in Arabia the Desert, where Ptolomy setteth a Citie of that name.

But Saba the son of Joctan, the son of Heber, (as I conceive) inhabited India it selfe. For Diodorus After in his Periegesis, (or description of the World) which he wrote in Greek verse, among the Regions of India findeth a Nation called the Sabaei. *Taxilis bos inter medius habitatis Sabaeus; In the middle of these dwell the Sabaei, and the Taxili, saith Dionysius.*

## ||. V.

Of Ophir one of Joctans sons, and of Peru, and of that voyage of Solomon.

Ophir also was an inhabitant of the East India, and (as S. Hierome understands it) in one of the Islands plentiful with gold, which are now known by the name of Molucca. Josephus understands Ophir to be one of those great head-lands in India, which by a general name are called Censones, or Peninsula: of which there are two very notorious; Calicut and Malacca. Pererius takes it rightly for an Island, as S. Hierome doth, but

but he sets it at the head-land of Malacca. But Ophir is found among the Moluccas farther East.

Arias Montanus out of the second of Chronicles, the third Chapter and sixth Verse, gathers that Ophir was Peru in America, looking into the West Ocean, commonly called Mare del Sur, or the South Sea; by others, Mare pacificum. The words in the second of the Chronicles are these: *And he over-layed the house with precious stones for beauty; and the gold was gold of Parvaim.* Junius takes this gold to be the gold of Havilah, remembered by Moses in the description of Paradise: *And the gold of that Land is good: finding a Town in Characene Province of Susana, called Barbatia; so called (as he thinks) by a corruption for Parvaim: from whence those Kings subjected by David, brought this gold, with which they presented him; and which David preferred for the enriching of the Temple.*

But this fancie of Peru hath deceived many men, before Montanus, and Plessir, who also took Ophir for Peru. And that this question may be a subject of no further dispute, it is very true that there is no Region in the world of that name: sure I am, that at least, America hath none, no not any City, Village, or Mountain so called. But when Francis Pizarro first discovered those Lands to the South of Panama, arriving in that Region which Atabaliba commanded (a Prince of magnificence, riches, and dominion inferior to none) some of the Spaniards utterly ignorant of that language, demanding by signes (as they could) the name of the Country, and pointing with their hand athwart a river or torrent, or brook that ran by, the Indians answered Peru, which was either the name of that brook, or of water in generall. The Spaniards thereupon conceiving that the people had rightly understood them, set it down in the Diurnall of their enterprise, and so in the first description made, and sent over to Charles the Emperour, all that west part of America to the South of Panama had the name of Peru, which hath continued ever since, as divers Spaniards in the Indies assured me; which also Acosta the Jesuite in his natural and moral History of the Indies confirmeth. And whereas Montanus also findeth, that a part of the Indies (called Jucatan) took that name of Joctan, who as he supposeth navigated from the utmost East of India to America: it is most true, that Jucatan is nothing else in the language of that Country, but *[What is that?]* or *[What say you?]* For when the Spaniards ask'd the name of that place (no man conceiving their meaning) one of the salvages answered Jucatan (which is) *What ask you, or What say you?* The like happened touching Paria, a mountainous Country on the South side of Trinidad, and Margarita: for when the Spaniards inquiring (as all men doe) the names of those new Regions which they discovered, pointed to the Hills afar off, one of the people answered, Paria, which is as much to say, as, *high Hills or Mountains.* For at Paria begins that marvellous ledge of mountains, which from thence are continued to the Strait of Magellan, from eight degrees of North latitude to the 52. of South: and so hath that Country ever since retained the name of Paria.

The same happened among the English, which I sent under Sir Richard Greeneville to inhabit Virginia. For when some of my people asked the name of that Country, one of the salvage answered, *Wingandacon*, which is as much to say, as *You wear good clothes*, or gay clothes. The same happened to the Spaniard in asking the name of the Island Trinidad: for a Spaniard demanding the name of that self place which the Sea incompassed, they answered, *Caerz*, which signifieth an Island. And in this manner have many places, newly discovered, been intituled, of which Peru is one. And therefore we must leave Ophir among the Moluccas, whereabout such an Island is credibly affirmed to be.

Now although there may be found gold in Arabia it self (towards Persia) in Havilah, now Susana, and all alongst that East Indian shore; yet the greatest plenty is taken up by the Philippines, certain Islands planted by the Spaniards, from the East India. And by the length of the passage which Solomons Ships made from the Red Sea (which was 3. years in going and coming) it seemeth they went to the uttermost East, as the Moluccas or Philippines. Indeed these that now goe from Portugal, or from hence, finish that navigation in two years, and sometimes lesse: and Solomons Ships went not above a tenth part of this our course from hence. But we must consider, that they evermore kept the coast, and crept by the shores, which made the way exceeding long. For before the use of the compasse was known, it was impossible to navigate athwart the Oceans and therefore Solomons Ships could not finde Peru in America. Neither was it needfull

for the *Spaniards* themselves (had it not been for the plenty of gold in the East India Islands, farre above the mines of any one place of *America*) to fail every year to the West part of *America* thither, and there to have strongly planted, and inhabited the richest of those Islands: wherein they have built a City called *Manila*. *Solomon* the refore needed not to have gone farther off than *Ophir* in the East, to have sped worse: neither could he navigate from the East to the West in those dayes, whereas he had no coast to have guided him.

*Tostatus* also gathereth a fantastical opinion out of *Rabanus*, who makes *Ophir* to be a Country, whose mountains of gold are kept by *Griffins*: which mountaines *Solinus* affirmed to be in *Scythia Asiatica*, in these words: *Nam cum auro & gemmis affluant, Griffes tenent universas, alites serocissimas, Arimassii cum his dimicant, &c.* For whereas these Countries abound in gold and rich stones, the *Griffins* defend the one and the other: a kinde of Fowle the fiercest of all other; with which *Griffins* a nation of people called *Arimassii* make War. These *Arimassii* are said to have been men with one eye onely, like unto the *Cyclopes* of *Sicilia*: of which *Cyclopes*, *Herodotus* and *Aristus* make mention: and so doth *Lucan* in his third Book: and *I alernus Flaccus*: and *D. Siculus* in the story of *Alexander Macedon*. But (for mine own opinion) I beleve none of them. And for these *Arimassii*, I take it that this name signifying one-eyed, was first given them by reason that they used to wear a vizzard of defence, with one sight in the middle to serve both eies; and not that they had by nature any such defect. But *Solinus* borroweth these things out of *Pliny*, who speaks of such a nation in the extreame North, at a place called *Gisolithon*, or the Cave of the North-east winde. For the rest, as all fables were commonly grounded upon some true stories, or other things done: so might these tales of the *Griffins* receive this moral: That if those men, which fight against so many dangerous passages for gold, or other riches of this World, had their perfect senses, and were not deprived of halfe their eye-sight (at least of the eye of right reason and understanding) they would content themselves with a quiet and moderate estate; and not subject themselves to famine, corrupt air, violent heat, and cold, and to all sorts of miserable diseases. And though this fable be feigned in this place, yet if such a tale were told of some other places of the World, where wilde Beasts or Serpents defend mountains of gold, it might be avowed. For there are in many places of the World, especially in *America*, many high and impassable mountains, which are very rich and full of gold, inhabited onely with *Tigers*, *Lions*, and other ravenous and cruel beasts: unto which if any man ascend (except his strength be very great) he shall be sure to finde the same war which the *Arimassii* make against the *Griffins*: not that the one or other had any sense of the gold, or seek to defend that mettall, but being disquieted, or made afraid of themselves or their young ones, they grow enraged and adventurous. In like sort it may be said that the *Alegartos*, (which the *Egyptians* call the *Crocodyles*) defend those pearls which lye in the Lakes of the Inland: for many times the poor *Indians* are eaten up by them, when they dive for the pearl. And though the *Alegartos* know not the pearl, yet they find favour in the flesh and blood of the *Indians*, whom they devour.

# ll. V. I.

of *Havilah* the sonne of *Joſtan*, who also passed into the East Indies: and of *Melſa* and *Sepher* named in the bordering of the Families of *Joſtan*: with a conclusion of this discourse touching the plantation of the World.

OF *Havilah* the sonne of *Joſtan*, there is nothing else to be said, but that the general opinion is, that he also inhabited in the East India in the Continent, from which *Ophir* pass into the Islands adjoining. And whereas *Ganges* is said to water *Havilah*, it is meant by *Havilah* in the East India, took name of *Havilah* the son of *Joſtan*: but *Havilah*, which *Pijon* compasseth, was so called of *Havilah*, the son of *Joſtan*, as is formerly proved by this place of Scripture: *Saul smote the Amalekites from Havilah as thou comest to Shur, which is before Egypt.* But that *Saul* ever made War in the East India, no man hath suspected. For an end we may conclude, that of the thirteen sons of *Joſtan*, these three, *Saba*, *Havilah*, and *Ophir*, though at the first seated by their brethren about the hill *Mafius* or *Mesb*, Gen. 10. 30. (to wit) between *Cilicia* and *Mesopotamia*; yet at length either themselves or their issues removed into the East India, leaving the other

other Families of *Joſtan*, to fill the Countries of their first plantation, which the Scripture defines to have been from *Mesb* unto *Sepher*. And although *S. Hierome* take *Mesb* to be a Region of the East India, and *Sepher* a Mountain of the same (which Mountain, *Montanus* would have to be the *Andes* in *America*) those fancies are far beyond my understanding. For the word (*East*) in the Scriptures, where it hath reference to *Judea*, is never farther extended than into *Persia*. But *Mesb* is that part of the Mountain of *Mafius* in the North of *Mesopotamia*, out of which the River *Chaboras* springeth, which runneth by *Charra*: and in the same Region we also finde for *Sepher* (remembered by *Moses*) *Sippara* by *Polony*, standing to the East of the Mountain *Mafius*; from whence *Joſtan* having many sons, some of them might pass into *India*, hearing of the beauty and riches thereof. But this was in proceesse of time.

The other fashion of planting I understand not, being grounded but upon mens imaginations, contrary to reason and possibility. And that this Mountain in the East was no farther off than in those Regions before remembered, it appeareth by many places of the Scripture where the same phrase is used: as in *Numbers* 25. *Bala* the King of *Moab* hath brought me from *Aram*, out of the mountaine of the East; which was from the East part of *Mesopotamia*. For *Bala* brought *Balaam* out of *Mesopotamia*, (witness this place of *Deuteronomie*;) Because they hired *Balaam* the sonne of *Beor*, of *Peſhor* in *Aram Nabarajim*, to curse thee: for *Aram Nabarajim* was *Syria* *ſeniorum*, which is *Mesopotamia*, as aforeſaid.

This plantation of the World after the flood doth best agree (as to me it seems) with all the places of Scripture compared together. And these be the reports of reason and probable conjecture; the guides which I have followed herein, and which I have chosen to goe after; making no valuation of the opinions of men, conducted by their own fancies, be they ancient or moderne. Neither have I any end herein, private or publick, other than the discovery of truth. For as the partiality of man to himself hath disguised all things: so the factious and hireling Historians of all Ages (especially of these latter times) have by their many volumes of untrue reports left Honour without a monument, and *Vertue* without memory; and (in stead thereof) have erected Statues and Trophies to those, whom the darkeſt forgetfulness ought to have buried, & covered over for evermore. And although the length & dissolving nature of time hath worn out or changed the names and memory of the Worlds first planters after the flood (I mean the greatest number and most part of them) yet all the footsteps of Antiquity (as appears by that which hath been spoken) are not quite worn out nor over-grown: for *Babylon* hath to this day the sound of *Babel*; *Phenicia* hath *Zidon*, to which City the eldest son of *Canaan* gave name; so hath *Cilicia*, *Tharſis*; and the *Armenians*, *Medes*, *Hiberians*, *Cappadocians*, *Phrygians*, the *Syrians*, *Idumeans*, *Libyans*, *Moore*, and other Nations, have preserved from the death of forgetfulness some signes of their first Founders and true Parents.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the beginning and establishing of Government.

### § I.

Of the proceeding from the first Government under the eldest of Families to Regall, and from Regall absolute, to Regall tempered with Lawes.

IT followeth now to entreat how the World began to receive Rule and Government, which (while it had scarcitie of people) under-went no other Dominion than Paternity and Eldership. For the Fathers of Nations were then 23 Kings, and the eldest of Families as Princes. Hereof it came, that the word (*Elder*) was alwayes used both for the Magistrate, and for those of Age and Gravity: the same bearing one signification almost in all Languages. For in the eleventh of *Numbers*, God commanded *Moses* to gather together 70. of the Elders of the people, and

Gover-

Governour over them: the Hebrew bearing the same sense which the Latine word *Senes* or *Seniores* doth. So it is written in *Susanna*, Then the Assembly beleaved them as those that were the Elders and Judges of the people. And so in the words of those false Judges and witnesses to *Daniel*, shew it unto us, seeing God hath given thee the office of an Elder. Demosthenes useth the same word for the Magistrate among the Grecians. Cicero in Cato giveth two other reasons for this appellation: *Apud Lacedaemonios qui amplissimum Magistratum gerunt, ut sunt, sic etiam appellantur Senes*; Among the Lacedaemonians the chiefe Magistrates, as they were, so they are called Eldermen: and again, *Ratio & prudentia nisi essent in senibus, non summum Concilium Majores nostri appellarent Senatum*; If reason and aduise ment were not in old men, our Ancestours had never called the highest Councell by the name of a Senate.

But though these reasons may well be given, yet we doubt not but in this name of (Elders) for Governours or Counsellours of State, there is a sign that the first Governours were the Fathers of Families; and under them the eldest Sons. And from thence did the French, Italian, and Spaniard take the word (*Signor*) and out of it (*Seignourie*) for Lordship and Dominion: signifying (according to *Loyseau*) puissance in proprietie, or proper power. The kinds of this *Seignourie*, *Seneca* makes two: the one, *Potestas aut imperium*, Power or command: the other, *Proprietas aut dominium*; Propriety or mastership: the correlative of the one is the subject, of the other the slave. *Ad Caesarem* (saith he) *potestas omnium pertinet; ad singulas proprietas*; Caesar hath power over all, and every man professeth himselfe his owne: and again, *Caesar omnia imperio possidet, singuli dominio*; Caesar holdeth all in his power, and every man possesseth his owne. But as men and vice began abundantly to increase: so obedience (the fruit of natural reverence, which but from excellent feed seldom ripeneth) being exceedingly over-shadwed with pride, and ill examples, utterly withered and fell away. And the soft weapons of paternal perswasions (after mankind began to neglect and forget the Original and first giver of life) became in all over-weak, either to resist the first inclination of evill, or after (when it became habitual) to constrain it. So that now, when the hearts of men were only guided and steered by their own fancies, and toft to and fro on the tempestuous Seas of the World, while wisdom was severed from power, and strength from charity: Necessity (which bindeth every nature but the immortal) made both the wife and foolish understand at once, that the estate of reasonable men would become far more miserable than that of beasts, and that a general floud of confusion would a second time over-flow them, did they not, by a general obedience to order and dominion, prevent it. For the mighty, who trusted in their own strengths, found others again (by interchange of times) more mighty than themselves: the feeble fell under the forcibles; and the equal from equal received equal harms. In somuch that the licentious disorder (which seemed to promise a liberty upon the first acquaintance) proved upon a better trial, no less perillous than unindurable bondage.

These Arguments by Necessity propounded, and by Reason maintained and confirmed, perswaded all nations which the Heavens cover, to subject themselves to a Master, & to Magistracy in some degree. Under which Government, as the change (which brought with it lesse evill, than the former mischiefs) was generally pleasing: so time (making all men wise that observe it) found some imperfection and corrosive in this cure. And therefore the same Necessity which invented, and the same Reason which approved soveraign power, be thought it self of certain equall rules, in which Dominion (in the beginning boundles) might also discern her own limits. For before the invention of Lawes, private affections in supream Rulers made their own fancies both their Treasurers and Hangmen: measuring by this yard, and waighing in this ballance, both good and evill.

For as wisdom in Eldership preceded the rule of Kings; so the will of Kings forewent the inventions of Lawes. *Populus nullis legibus tenebatur: arbitria principum pro legibus erant*; The people were not governed by any other Lawes than the wils of Princes. Hereof it followed, that when Kings left to begood, neither did those mens vertues value them which were not fancied by their Kings, nor those mens vices deforme them that were. *Amor interduum nimis videt, interdum nihil videt*; Love sees one while too much, another while stark nothing. Hence it came to passe, that after a few yeares (for direction and restraint of Royal power) Lawes were established: and that Government which

Necessitas est  
firmum iudici-  
um, & immuta-  
bilis providen-  
tia potestas.

had this mixture of equality (holding in an even ballance supreme power and common right) acquired the title of Regall: the other (which had it not) was knowne for Tyrannicall: the one God established in favour of his people: the other he permitted for their affliction.

In the infancy of this Regall authority, Princes as they were chosen for their vertues only, so did they measure their powers by a great deale of moderation. And therefore (saith *Fabius Pictor*) *Principes, quia iusti erant, & religionibus dediti, jure habiti Dii & dii*; Princes because they were just and religious, were rightly accounted and called Gods.

And though (speaking humanely) the beginning of Empire may be ascribed to Reason and Necessity; yet it was God himself that first kindled this light in the mindes of men, whereby they saw that they could not live and be preserved without a Ruler and Conductor: God himselfe by his eternall providence having ordained Kings; and the law of Nature Leaders, and Rulers over others. For the very Bees have their Prince; the Deere their Leaders; and Cranes (by order imposed) watch for their owne safety.

The most High beareth rule over the Kingdomes of Men; and appointeth over it whomsoever he pleaseth. By me (saith *Wisdom*, spoken by the Ion of God) Kings reigne; By me Princes rule; and it is God (saith *Daniel*) that setteth up Kings, and taketh away Kings. And that this power is given from God, Christ himselfe witnesseth, speaking to *Pilate*; *Thou couldst have no power at all against me, except it were given thee from above*.

It was therefore by a threefold Justice that the World hath beene governed from the beginning, (to wit) by a Justice natural: by which the Parents and Elders of Families governed their Children, and Nephewes, and Families; in which government the Obedience was called naturall Piety: Again, by a Justice divine drawne from the Lawes and Ordinances of God; and the Obedience hereunto was called Conscience: And lastly, by a Justice civill, begotten by both the former; and the Obedience to this we call Duty. That by these three thofe of the eldest times were commanded, and that the rule in generall was Paternall, it is most evident: for *Adam*, being Lord over his own Children, instructed them in the service of God his Creator; as we read, *Cain and Abel brought Oblations before God*, as they had beene taught by their Parent, the 30 Father of Mankind.

## ¶ II.

Of the three commendable sorts of Government with their opposites: and of the degrees of humane society.

What other Policy was exercised, or State founded after such time as mankind was greatly multiplied before the Floud, it cannot be certainly knowne, though it seeme by probable conjecture, that the same was not without Kings in that first Age: it being possible that many Princes of the Egyptians (remembered among their antiquities) were before the generall Floud: and very likely, that the cruell Oppressions in that Age proceeded from some tyranny in Government, or from some rougher forme of Rule, than the Paternall.

Berosus ascribeth the rule of the World in those dayes to the Gyants of *Libanus*, who mastered (saith he) all Nations from the Sun-rising to the Sun-set. But in the second Age of the World, and after such times as the rule of Elderhip failed, three severall sorts of Government were in severall times established among men, according to the divers natures of Places and People.

The first, the most ancient, most general, and most approved, was the Government of one, ruling by just Lawes, called *Monarchy*: to which *Tyranny* is opposed, being also a sole and absolute Rule, exercised according to the will of the Commander, without respect or observation of the Lawes of God, or Men. For a lawfull Prince or Magistrate (saith *Aristotle*) is the Keeper of Right and Equity: and of this condition ought every Magistrate to be, according to the rule of Gods word: *Judges and Officers shall shew make thee in thy Citie: And these shall judge the people with righteous judgement*.

The second Government, is of divers principal Persons established by order, and ruling by Lawes, called *Aristocracy*, or *Optimum potestas*; to which *Oligarchia* (or the particular faction and usurpation of a few great-ones) is opposed: as the *Decem viri*, or *Trium viri*, and the like.



The third is a State popular, (or Government of the people) called *Democratia*, to which is opposed *Ochlocratia*, or the turbulent unjust ruling of the confused multitude, seditiously swaying the State, contrary to their own Lawes and Ordinances. These three kinds of Government are briefly exprest by *Tholomæus*; *unius, paucorum, & multorum*: Of one, of few, of many.

Now as touching the beginning and order of policy since the second increase of mankind, the same grew in this sort: First of all, every Father, or eldest of the Family gave Lawes to his owne issues, and to the people from him and them increased. These, as they were multiplied into many households (man by nature loving society) joynted their Cottages together in one common Field or Village, which the Latins call *Vicius* of the 10 Greek *βύα*, which signifieth a House; or of the word (*Via*) because it hath divers waies and paths leading to it. And as the first House grew into a Village, so the Village into that which is called *Pagus*, (being a society of divers Villages) so called of the Greeke *πάγος* which signifieth a Fountaine: because many people (having their habitations not far asunder) dranke of one Spring or Streame of water. To this word the English Hundreds, or (as some thinke) Shires, answereth not unfitly.

But as men and impiety began to gather strength, and as emulation and pride between the Race of the one and the other daily increased: so both to defend themselves from out-rage, and to preserve such goods as they had gathered, they began to joyne and set together divers of their Villages, invironing them first with banks and ditches, 20 and afterwards with wals: which, being so compalled, were then called *Oppida*; either *ab opponendo se hostibus*, because wals were opposed against Enemies; or *ab opibus*, because thither they gathered their riches for safety and defence: as also they were called *Urbes*, or *urbes*, because when they were to build a City, they made a Circle with a Plough (saith *Varro*) therewith measuring and compassing the ground which they went to inclose or fortifie. And although *Urbs* and *Civitas* be often confounded, yet the difference was anciently in this, that *Urbs* signified no other than the very wals and buildings, and *Civitas* was taken for the Citizens, inhabiting therein: so called of *Civis*, and that, *ab eo quod multitudo coivit, of coming together*. But all inhabitants within these wals are not properly Citizens, but only such as are called Free-men: who bearing proportionably the charge 30 of the City, may by turnes become Officers and Magistrates thereof: the rest goe under the name of Subjects, though Citizens by the same generall name of Subjects are also known. For every Citizen is also a Subject but not every Subject a Citizen: perhaps also some Citizen (as the chiefe Magistrate, if he be to be termed one of the Citizens) is no Subject; but of this we neede not stand to inquire. The word (Magistrate) is taken of *Magister*, from a *Master*, and the word (Master) from the Adverb *Magis* (as also *Magisteria*, Precepts, of Art) or else from the Greeke word (*Μεγιστος*); and so the Greekes call them *Μεγιστανες* whom the Latines call *Magnates*, or *Magistratus*.

The office and duty of every Magistrate *Aristotle* hath written in few words. A Magistrate or Prince (saith he) is the keeper of right and equity; but the same is best taught by 40 Saint Paul, who expresth both the cause efficient, and finally, (that is) by whom Magistrates and Princes are ordained, together with their duties and office. A Magistrate is the Minister of God for thy wealth; but if thou doe evil, feare: for he beareth not the sword for nought. For he is the Minister of God, to take vengeance on him that doth evil. He also teacheth in the same place; That every soule ought to be subject to the higher powers, because they are by God ordained, and that whosoever resisteth that power, resisteth God, the giver and fountain thereof: and shall not only be therefore subject to the judgment and condemnation of Man, but of God: For ye must be subject (saith he) not because of wrath only, but also for conscience sake.

The examples are not to be numbered of Gods punishments upon those that have resisted Authority, by God ordained and established. Neither ought any subject therefore to resist the power of Kings, because they may be taxed with injustice or cruelty: for it pleaseth God sometimes to punish his people by a tyrannous hand: and the Commandement of obedience is without distinction. The Prophets and Christ himselfe subjected themselves to the power of Magistracy. Christ commanded that all due to Cæsar should be given unto him: and he payed Tribute for himselfe and Peter. Hieremy commanded the Israelites (even those that were Captives under Heathen Kings) to pray for them and for the peace of Babylon. So Abraham prayed for Abimelech; and Jacob blessed the King of

Hierem. 29. 7.  
Gen. 20. 17.  
27. 10.

of Egypt: And it is acceptable in the sight of our Saviour (saith Paul) that ye make Supplications and Prayers for Kings, and for all that are in authority: and if for such Kings as were Idolatrous, much more for Christian Kings and Magistrates. And so much did Saint Chrysostome in his Homily to the people prefer Monarchicall Government, as he rather commended the rule of Kings (though Tyrants) than that they should be wanting: *Præstat Regem tyrannum habere, quàm nullum*; Better a tyrannous King, than no King: to which also Tacitus subscribeth: *Præstat* (saith Tacitus in the first of his History) *sub malo principe esse, quàm nullo*; It is better to have a bad Prince than none at all. And be they good Kings (which is generally presupposed) then is there no liberty more safe, than to serve them: 10 *Neque enim libertas tutior ulla est* (saith *Claudius*) *quàm Domino servire bono*: No liberty (saith he) more safe for us than to be servants to the veritious. And certainly howsoever it may be dispured, yet is it safer to live under one Tyrant, than under 100000. Tyrants: under a wife man that is cruel, than under the foolish and barbarous cruelty of the multitude. For as *Agesilaus* answered a Citizen of *Sparta* that desired an alteration of the Government, That kinde of rule which a man would disdain in his owne house, were very unfit to governe great Regions by.

Lastly, as many Fathers erected many Cotages for their many children: and as (for the reason before remembered) many Households joynted themselves together, and made Villages; many Villages made Cities: so when these Cities and Citizens joynted together, and established Lawes by consent, associating themselves under one Governor, and Government; they so joynted, were called a Common-wealth: the same being sometimes governed by Kings; sometimes by Magistrates; sometimes by the people themselves.

## §. III

Of the good Government of the first Kings.

Now this first Age after the Flood, and after such time as the people were increased, and Families became strong, and the dispersed into several parts of the world, 30 was by ancient Historians called Golden: Ambition and Covetousness being as then but green, and newly grown up, the seeds and effects whereof were as yet but potential, and in the blowth and bud. For while the Law of Nature was the rule of mans life, they then fought for no larger Territory than themselves could compass and manure: they erected no other magnificent buildings, than sufficient to defend them from cold and tempest: they cared for no other delicacy of fare, or curiositie of dyet, than to maintain life: nor for any other apparel, than to cover them from the cold, the raine and the Sun.

And sure if we understand by that Age (which was called Golden) the ancient simplicity of our Fore-fathers, this name may then truly be cast upon those elder times: but if it be taken otherwise, then, whether the same may be attributed more to any 40 one time than to another, (I mean to one limited time and none else) it may be doubted. For good and Golden Kings make good and Golden Ages: and all times have brought forth of both sorts. And as the infancy of Empery, (when Princes played their Prizes, and did then only woo men to obedience) might be called the Golden Age; so may the beginning of all Princes times be truly called Golden. For be it that men affect honour, it is then best purchased; or if honour affect men, it is then that good deservings have commonly the least impediments: and if ever Liberality overflow her banks and bounds, the same is then best warranted both by policy and example. But Age and Time do not only harden and shrink the openest and most jovial hearts, but the experience which it bringeth with it, layeth Princes torne estates before their eyes, and (withal) perswadeth them to compassionate themselves. And although there be no Kings under the Sun whose means are answerable unto other mens desires: yet such as value all things by their own respects, do no sooner finde their appetites unanswered, but they complain of alteration, and account the times injurious and iron. And as this falleth out in the Reign of every King, so doth it in the life of every man, if his daies be many: for our younger years are our Golden Age; which being eaten up by time, we praise those seasons which our youth accompanied: and (indeed) the grievous alterations in our selves, and the pains and diseases which never part from us but at the grave



grave, make the times seem fo differing and displeasing: especially the quality of mans nature being also such, as it adoreth and extollethe the passages of the former, and condemneth the present (state how just soever: *Fit humane malignitatis vitio, ut semper vetera in laude, presentia in fastidio sint*: It comes to pass (saith Tacitus) by the vice of our nature, that we alwaies extoll the time past, and hold the present fastidious: For it is one of the errors of wayward Age: *Quod sint laudatores temporis adii*: That they are praisers of the fore-passed timer, forgetting this advice of Solomon: *Say not then, Why is it that the former times were better then these* for thou dost not inquire wisely of this thing: to which purpose Seneca; *Maiores nostri quæsi sunt, & nos querimus posteri querunt, eosque, esse mores, regere nequitiam, in deterius res hominum & in omne nefas labi*: Our Ancestors have complained, we do complain, our children will complain, that good manners are gone, that wickedness doth reign, and all things grow worse and worse, and fall into all evil. These are usually the discourses of Age and Misfortune. But hereof what can we add to this of Arminius: *Novares quondam; vetus fiet, & vetus temporibus: quibus cepit nova fuit & repentina. What-soever is new, in time shall be made old: and the ancientest things when they took beginning were also new and old again.* Wherefore not to stand in much admiration of these first times, which the discontentment of present times have made Golden, this we may set down for certain. That as it was the virtue of the first Kings, which (after God) gave them Crowns: so the love of their people thereby purchased, held the same Crowns on their heads. And as God gave the obedience of Subjects to Princes: so (relatively) he gave the care and justice of Kings to the Subjects; having respect, not onely to the Kings themselves, but even to the meannest of his Creatures: *Nunquam particulari bono servit omne bonum*: The infinite goodness of God doth not attend any one only: for he that made the small and great, careth for all alike: and it is the care which Kings have of all theirs, which makes them beloved of all theirs; and by a general love it is, that Princes hold a general obedience: For, *Potestas humana radicitur in voluntatibus hominum*: All humane power is rooted in the will or dispositions of men.

§. IV.

Of the beginning of Nobility: and of the vain vaunt thereof without virtue.

*Verus nobilis  
non nascitur  
sed fit.*

And with this Supreme Rule and Kingly authority began also other degrees and differences among Subjects. For Princes made election of others by the same Rule, by which themselves were chosen; unto whom they gave place, trust, and power. From which employments and Offices sprung those Titles, and those degrees of Honour, which have continued from Age to Age to these daies. But this Nobility, difference from the vulgar, was not in the beginning given to the Succession of Blood, but to Succession of Virtue, as hereafter may be proved. Though at length it was sufficient for those whose Parents were advanced, to be known for the Sons of such Fathers: and so there needed then no endeavour of well-doing at all, or any contention for them to excell, upon whom glory or worldly Nobility necessarily descended. Yet hereof had Nobility denomination in the beginning. That such as excelled others in virtue, were so called: *Hinc dictus Nobilis, quasi virtute præ aliis notabilis*. But after such time as the deserved Honour of the Father was given in reward to his Posterity, Saint Hierome judged of the Succession in this manner: *Nihil aliud video in Nobilitate appendum, nisi quod Nobiles quædam necessitate confringantur, ne ab antiquorum probitate degenerent; I see no other thing to be affected in Nobility, than that Noblemen are by a kind of necessity bound, not to degenerate from the virtue of their Ancestors*. For if Nobility be *Virtus & antiqua divitiæ; Virtus and ancient riches*, then to exceed in all those things which are *extra hominem*, as riches, power, glory, and the like, do no otherwise define Nobility, than the word (*animal*) alone doth define a reasonable man. Or if honour (according to *L. Vives*) be a witness of virtue and well-doing: and Nobility (after *Plutarch*) the continuance of virtue in a Race or Linage: then are those in whom Virtue is extinguished, but like unto painted and printed Papers, which ignorant men worship in stead of *Christ*, our Lady, and other *Saints*: men in whom there remain but the dregs and vices of ancient Virtue: Flowers, and Herbes, which by change of soile and want of manuring are turned to Weeds. For what is found praise-worthy in those waters, which had their beginning out of pure Fountains,

if in all the rest of their course they run foule, filthy, and defiled? *Ex terra fertilis pro-* Pint. in French  
*ducitur aliquando Cicuta venenosa, & ex terra sterilis pretiosum aurum;* Out of fruitful ground  
*aristeth* (sometimes paysoning Henbane, and out of barren soyle precious Gold. For as all things  
consist of matter and form, so doth Charron (in his Chapter of Nobility) call the Race  
and Linage but the matter of Nobility: the form (which gives life and perfect being)  
he maketh to be Virtue, and Quality, profitable to the Common-weale. For he is truly  
and entirely Noble, who maketh a singular profession of publike Virtue, serving his  
Prince and Country, and being defended of Parents and Ancestors that have done the  
like. And although that Nobility, which the same Authour calleth personal, (the same  
which our selves acquire by our Virtue and well deservings) cannot be ballanced with  
that which is both natural by Descent, and also personal; yet if Vertue be wanting to  
the natural, then is the personal and acquired Nobility by many degrees to be preferred:  
For (saith Charron) this Honour (to wit) by Descent, may light upon such a one,  
as in his own nature is a true Villain. There is also a third Nobility which he calleth  
Nobility in Parchment, bought with Silver or Favour: and these be indeed but Hon-  
ours of affection, which Kings with the change of their fancies with they knew well  
how to wipe off again. But surely if we had as much sense of our degenerating in wor-  
thinesse, as we have of vanity in deriving our selves of such and such Parents, we should  
rather know such Nobility (without Virtue) to be shame and dishonour, than Noble-  
ness and glory to vaunt thereof. What calamity is wanting (saith Bernard) to him that is  
born in sin, of a Posthure body and barren minde? for (according to the same Father) Dele  
suum sugat honoris huius, & male coronate nitorem glorie, &c. Wipe away the painting of  
this fleeting honour, and the glittering of the ill-crowned glory, that then thou mayest consider  
thy self nakedly: for thou camest naked out of thy Mothers wombe. Camest thou thence with  
thy Mytre, or glistering with Jewels, or garnished with Silks, or adorned with Feathers, or bus-  
sed with Gold? If thou catter and blow away all these by thy consideration as certain morning  
clouds, which do or will soon pass over, thou shalt meet with a naked, and poor, and wretched,  
and miserable man, and blushing, because he is naked, and weeping, because he is born, and re-  
pining, because he is born to labour, and not to honour.

For, as touching the matter of all men, there is no difference between it and dust: <sup>30</sup> which if thou dost not believe (saith S. Chrysostome) looke into the Sepulchres and Monu-  
ments of thy Ancestors, and they shall easily persuade thee by their own example, that thou art  
dust and dirt: so that if man seem more noble and beautiful than dust, this proceedeth not from  
the diversitie of his Nature, but from the cunning of his Creator.

For true Nobility standeth in the Trade  
Of virtuous life ; not in the fleshly Line :  
For blood is brute, but Gentry is Divine.

40 And howsoever the custome of the World have made it good, that Honours be cast by birth upon unworthy Issues: yet *Solomon* (as wise as any King) reprehendeth the same in his fellow-Princes: *There is an evil (saith he) that I have seen under the Sun, as an error that proceedeth from the face of him that ruleth: Folly is set in great excellency.* *Eccle[.] 10*

## CHAP. X.

*of Nimrod, Belus, and Ninus : and of memorable things about those times.*

§. I.

*That Nimrod was the first after the Flood that reigned like a Sovereigne Lord: and that his beginning seemeth to have been of just authority.*

**T**He first of all that reigned as Sovereigne Lord after the Flood was *Nimrod*, the Sonne of *Chus*, distinguished by *Moses* from the rest (according to *Saint Augustine*) in one of these two respects: either for his eminency, and because he was the first of fame, and that took on him to command others; or else

in that he was begotten by *Chush*, after his other children were also become Fathers; and of a later time than some of his Grand-children and Nephews. Howsoever, seeing *Moses* in expresse words calleth *Nimrod* the son of *Chush*, other mens conjectures to the contrary ought to have no respect.

This Empery of *Nimrod*, both the Fathers and many later Writers call tyrannicall: the fame beginning in *Babel*, (which is) confusion. But it seemeth to mee that *Malacthon* conceived not amiss hereof: the same exposition being also made by the Author of that work called *Onomasticum Theologicum*, who affirms that *Nimrod* was therefore called *Amarus Dominator*, *A bitter or severe Governour*, because his forme of rule seemed at first far more terrible than Paternal authority. And therefore is he in this respect also called a mighty Hunter: because he took and destroyed both beasts and Theeves, But Saint *Augustine* understands it otherwise, and converts the word (ante) by (contra) affirming therein, that *Nimrod* was a mighty Hunter against God: Sic ergo intelligendus est Gigas ille, Venator contra Dominum; So is that Giant to be understood, a Hunter against the Lord.

But howsoever this word (a mighty Hunter) be understood; yet it rather appeareth, that as *Nimrod* had the command of all those which went with him from the East into *Shinaar*: so, this charge was rather given him, than by him usurped. For it no where is found, that *Noah* himself, or any of the Sonnes of his own body came with this troop into *Babylon*: no mention at all being made of *Noah* (the years of his life excepted) in the succeeding story of the Hebrews; nor that *Sem* was in this disobedient troop, or among the builders of *Babel*.

The same is also confirmed by divers ancient Historians, that *Nimrod*, *Saphne*, and *Jathan*, were the Captains and Leaders of all those which came from the East. And though *Sem* came not himself so farre West as *Shinaar* (his lot being cast on the East parts) yet from his Sons Nephew *Heber*, the name and Nation of the Hebrewes: (according to the general opinion) took beginning, who inhabited the Southermost parts of *Chaldea*, about the City of *Urg*; from whence *Abraham* was by God called into *Charran*, and thence into *Canaan*.

And because those of the Race of *Sem* which came into *Chaldea*, were no partners in the unbelieving work of the Tower: therefore (as many of the Fathers conjecture) did they retain the first and most ancient language, which the Fathers of the first Age had left to *Noah*; and *Noah* to *Sem* and his issues: In familia Heber remansit hec lingua; In the family of Heber this language remained (saith Saint *Augustine* out of *Epiphanius*;) and this Language *Abraham* used; yea, it was anciently, and before the Flood the generall speech: and therefore first called (saith *Celestine*) lingua humana: the human tongue.

We know that *Coropius Becanus* following *Theodoret*, *Rabbi Moser*, *Egyptine*, *Vergara*, and others, is of another opinion; but howsoever we determine of this point, we may with good probability resolve, that none of the godly seed of *Sem* were the chiefe Leaders of this presumptuous multitude. And seeing it is not likely, but that some one was by order appointed for this charge, we may imagine that *Nimrod* rather had it by just authority, than violence of usurpation.

## § II.

That *Nimrod*, *Belus*, and *Ninus* were three distinct persons.

*Beza*, and out of him *Naclerus*, with others, make many *Nimrods*, *Eusebius* confounds him with *Belus*, and so doth Saint *Hierome* upon *Ofé*; and these words of *S. Augustine* seem to make him of the same opinion: *Ibi autem Ninus regnabat post mortem patris sui Beli, qui primus illic regnaverat 65. annos; There did Ninus reign after the death of his father Belus, who first governed in Babylon sixty five years.* But it could not be unknown to Saint *Augustine*, that *Nimrod* was the establisher of that Empire: *Mose*, being plain and direct therein. For the beginning of *Nimrod's* Kingdoms (saith he)

was *Babel*, *Erec*, *Accad*, and *Chalne*, in the Land of *Shinaar*; wherefore *Nimrod* was the first King of *Babel*. And certainly it best agreeth with reason, that *Ninus* was the third, and not one with *Nimrod*, as *Mercator* (led by *Clement*) supposed: for in *Ninus* time the World was marvellously replenished. And if *S. Augustine* had undoubtedly taken *Belus* for *Nimrod*, he would have given him the name which the Scriptures give him, rather than have borrowed any thing out of prophane Authors. And for those words of *S. Augustine* (qui primus illic regnaverat; Who was the first that reigned there) supposed to be meant by *Belus*: those words do not disprove that *Nimrod* was the founder of the *Babylonian* Empire. For although *Julius Caesar* overthrew the liberty of the *Romane* commonwealth, making himselfe perpetuall Dictator, yet *Augustus* was the first established Emperour: and the first that reigned absolutely by sovereign authority over the *Romans*, as an Emperour.

The like may be said of *Nimrod*, that he first brake the rule of Eldership and Paternity, laying the foundation of sovereign rule, as *Cesar* did; and yet *Belus* was the first, who peaceably, and with a generall allowance exercised such a power. *Pererius* is of opinion, that *Belus* and *Nimrod* were the same, because many things are said of them both agreeing in time: for it was about 200. yeares after the flood (as they account) that *Belus* reigned; but such agreement of times proves it not. For so *Edward* the third, and his grand-child *Richard* the second, were Kings both in one year: the one died; the other in the same year was crowned King.

And yet the opinion (that *Nimrod* and *Belus* were one) is far more probable than that of *Mercator*; who makes *Ninus* and *Nimrod* to be the same. For it is plain that the beginning of *Nimrod's* Kingdom was *Babel*, and the Towns adjoining: but the first and most famous work of *Ninus* was the City of *Ninive*.

Now whereas *D. Siculus* affirmeth, that *Ninus* overcame and suppressed the *Babylonians*, the same rather proveth the contrary, than that *Ninus* and *Nimrod* were one person. For *Ninus* established the seat of his Empire at *Ninive* in *Assyria*, whence the *Babylonians* might (perchance) in disdain thereof fall from his obedience, whom hee recovered again by strong hand; which was easie: *Babylon* being not walled till *Semiramis* time.

—Dicitur altam  
Colubilis muris cinxisse Semiramis Urbem.

*Semiramis* with wals of brick the City did inclose.

Further, where it is alledged, that as the Scriptures call *Nimrod* mighty; so *Iustine* hath the same of *Ninus*, which is one of *Mercator's* arguments; It may be answered, that such an addition might have been given to many other Kings as well. For if we may believe *Iustine*; then were *Vexoris* King of *Egypt*, and *Vanais* of *Scythia*, mighty Kings before *Ninus* was borne. And if we may compare the words of *Moses* (touching *Nimrod*) with the undertakings of *Ninus*, there will be found great difference betweene them.

For whereas *Mercator* conceiveth, that it was too early for any that lived about the time of the confusion of languages, to have invaded & maltreated those Cities so far removed from *Babel*, namely, *Erec*, *Accad*, and *Chalne*: which work he therefore ascribeth to *Ninus*, as a man of the greatest undertaking; and consequently would have *Nimrod* to have been long after the time; in which we suppose he flourished; and both those names of *Nimrod* and *Ninus* to belong to one person, to wit, to *Ninus*: to these things to make some answer. First, I doe not finde that supposition true, That ever *Nimrod* invaded any of these Cities; but that he founded them, and built them from the ground, being the first after the flood, that conducted the children of *Noah* into those parts: and therefore had nothing built or erected to his hands.

Besides, whereas these Cities in many mens opinions are found to stand far away from *Babylon*, I find no reason to bring me to that belief. The City of *Accad*, which the *Septuagint* calls *Archads* & *Epiphanius* *Arphal*; *Iustinus* takes it to be *Nisibis* in *Mesopotamia*: for the Region thereabout, the Cosmographers (saith he) call *Accadene* for *Accadene*. Others under-

understand *Nisibis* and *Ninive* to be one City: so doe *Strabo* and *Stephanus* confound it with *Charran*, but all mistaken. For *Nisibis*, *Accad*, and *Charran* are distinct places. Though I cannot deny *Accedene* to be a Region of *Mesopotamia*, the same which *Arias Montanus* out of *S. Hierome* calls *Acad*; and so doe the Hebrews also call *Nisibis*, which seemeth to be the cause of this mistaking. As for the City of *Erec*, which the *Septuagint* call *Orechs*; *S. Augustine*, *Oreg*, and *Pagninus*, *Erec*; this place *Junius* understands for *Aracca* in *Sustana*: but there is also a City in *Camagena*, called *Arace*: and indeed likelihood of name is no certain proof, without the assistance of other circumstances.

Concerning the third City (called *Chalneb*) some take it for *Calinists*: of which *Am. Marcellinus*. *S. Hierome* takes it for *Selucia*; *Hierosolymitanus* for *Cresiphon*: others doe think it to be the *Agram* upon *Euphrates*, destroyed and razed by the *Persians*. But let *Moses* be the Moderator and Judge of this dispute, who teacheth us directly, that these Cities are not feated in so divers and distant Regions; for these be his words: And the beginning of his Kingdome (speaking of *Nimrod*) was *Babel*, *Erecb*, *Accad*, and *Chalneb* in the Land of *Shinaar*: so as in the Valley of *Shinaar*, or *Babylonia*, or *Chaldea* (being all one) we must finde them. And therefore I could (rather of the two) think with *Viterbiensis*, that these four made but one *Babylon*, than that they were Cities farre removed, and in severall Provinces, did not the Prophet *Amos* precisely distinguishing *Chalneb* from *Babylon*. *Goe you* (saith *Amos*) *to Chalneb*, and from thence goe you to *Hamath*, and then to *Gath* of the *Philistims*. The *Geneva* translation favouring the former opinion, to set these Cities out of *Shinaar*, hath a marginal note expressing that *Shinaar* was here named, not that all these Cities were therein feated, but to distinguish *Babylon* of *Chaldea*, from *Babylon* in *Egypt*: but I finde little substance in that conceit. For sure I am, that in the beginning of *Nimrod's* Empire, there was no such *Babylon*, nor any City at all to be found in *Egypt*: *Babylon* of *Egypt* being all one with the great City of *Cairo*, which was built long after, not far from the place where stood *Memphis* the ancient City, but not so ancient as *Babylon* upon *Euphrates*. Now that *Chalneb* is situate in the valley of *Shinaar*; it hath been formerly proved in the Chapter of *Paradise*. So as for any argument that may be brought to the contrary, from the remote situation of these three Cities from *Babylon*, we may continue in our opinion, That *Nimrod*, *Belus*, and *Ninus*, were distinct and successive Kings.

## §. III.

That *Nimrod*, not *Assur*, built *Ninive*: and that it is probable out of *Esay* 23. 13. that *Assur* built *Ur* of the *Chaldees*.

Now as of *Nimrod*; so are the opinions of Writers different touching *Assur*, and touching the beginning of that great state of *Babylon* and *Assyria*: a controverted wearisomely disputed without any direct proove, conclusion; or certainty. But to me (of whom, where the Scriptures are silent, the voice of reason hath the best hearing) the interpretation of *Junius* is most agreeable; who, besides all necessary consequence, doth not dis-joyne the sense of the Scriptures therein, nor confuse the understanding thereof. For in this sort he converteth the Hebrew Text: *Erat enim principum Regni ejus Babel, & Erecb, & Accad, & Chalneb*, in terra *Shinaaris*: *è terra hac processit in Assyriam, ubi edificavit Ninivem*; (which is) For the beginning of his Kingdome was *Babel*, and *Erecb*, and *Accad*, and *Chalneb*, in the land of *Shinaar*: and he went forth of this land into *Assyria*, and built *Ninive*: So as *Junius* takes *Assur* in this place, not for any person, but for the Region of *Assyria*: the Land being to called in *Moses* time, and before it. For certainly, the other construction, (where the word *Assur* is taken for *Assur* the sonne of *Sem*) doth not answer the order which *Moses* observeth through all the Books of *Genesis*, but is quite contrary unto it. For in the beginning of the tenth Chapter he setteth down the sonnes of *Noah*, in these words: Now these are the Generations of the sonnes of *Noah*: *Sem*, *Ham*, and *Japheth*, unto whom, sonnes were born after the Flood: then it followeth immediately: The sonnes of *Japheth* were *Gomer*, &c. so as *Japheth* is last named among *Noah's* sonnes, be hee eldest or youngest: because he was first to bee spoken of: with whom (having last named him) he proceeds and sets downe his issue, and then the issue of his sonnes: first, the issue of *Gomer*, *Japheth's* eldest sonne; and then speaks of *Javan* and his sonnes: for of the

rest of that Familie he is silent. Anon after he numbrellth the sons of *Ham*, of which *Chush* was the eldest: and then the sons of *Chush* and *Mizraim*; and afterward of *Canaan*, leaving *Shem* for the last, because he would not dis-joyne the Story of the Hebrews. But after he beginneth with *Shem*, he continueth from thence by *Arphaxad*, *Shela*, & *Heber*, unto *Abraham*, and so to *Jacob*, and the Fathers of that Nation. But to have brought in one of the sons of *Shem* in the middle of the Generations of *Ham*, had been against orders: neither would *Moses* have past over so slightly the erection of the *Assyrian* Empire in one of the sons of *Shem*, if he had had any such meaning: it being the storie of *Shem's* sons which he most attended. For he nameth *Nimrod* apart, after the rest of the 10 sons of *Chush*, because he founded the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Empire: and in the eleventh Chapter he returnes to speake of the building of *Babel* in particular, having formerly named it in the tenth Chapter, with those other Cities which *Nimrod* founded in *Shinaar*. And as he did in the tenth Chapter, so also in the eleventh he maketh no report of *Shem*, till such time as he had finished so much of *Nimrod* as he meant to touch: and then he beginneth with the issue of *Shem*, which he continueth to *Abraham* and *Israel*. And of *Junius* opinion touching *Assur*, was *Calvin*: to which I conceive that *P. Comestor*, in *historia Scholastica*, gave an entrance, who after he had delivered this place in some other sense, he useth these words: *Vel intelligendum non est de Assur, filio Sem, &c. sed Assur (id est) Regnum Assyriorum inde egressum est, quod tempore Sarug proavi Abrahami factum est* (which is) Or else it is not to be understood of *Assur* the son of *Sem*, &c. but *Assur* (that is, the Kingdome of the *Assyrians*) came from thence (videlicet, from *Babylon*) or was made out of it: which happened in the time of *Sarug* the great Grand-father of *Abraham*. After which he reconcilith the difference in this sort: If you take the ancient *Belus* (meaning *Nimrod*) to be the first Erector of the *Assyrian* Empire, or the first Founder thereof, it is true, *Quantum ad initium*; Respecting the beginning; but others conceive that it had beginning from *Ninus*, which is also true, *Quantum ad Regni ampliationem*; Regarding the enlargement of the Empire. To this I may add the opinion of *Epiphanius*, confirmed by *Cedrenus*, who takes *Assur* to be the son of *Nimrod*: and so doth *Methodius*, and *Viterbiensis*, *Saint Hierome*, and *Cyrillus*, and now lastly *Tornicellus*: who (saith he) took upon him that name of *Assur* after he had beaten the *Assyrians*, as *Scipio* did of *Africanus*, after his Conquest in *Africa*: and that *Assur* was a common name to the Kings of *Assyria*, as it appeareth by many Scriptures, as *Psalm* 81. *Esay* 10. *Ose* 5. &c. But to help the matter, he makes *Nimrod* of the race of *Shem*, and the sonne of *Irari*. But *Rabanus Maurus*, who was Archbishop of *Metz* in the yeare of *Christ* 854. an ancient and learned Writer, understands this place with *Comestor*, or *Comestor* with him, agreeing in substance with that translation of *Junius*: to which words of *Moses* he giveth this sense: *De hac terra Assyriorum pullulavit imperium, qui ex nomine Nini, Beli filii, Ninum condiderunt urbem magnam, &c.* Out of this Land grew the Empire of the *Assyrians*, who built *Ninus* the great Citie, so named of *Ninus* the sonne of *Belus*. On the contrary *Calvin* objecteth this place of *Esay*: Behold the Land of the *Chaldeans*, this was no people, *Assur* founded it by the inhabitants of the *Wildernefs*; than which there is no one place in the Scriptures, that hath a greater diversitie in the translation and understandings; inasmuch as *Michael de Palatio* upon *Esay* (though in all else very diligent) passeth it over. But *Calvin* seemeth hereby to infer, that because *Assur* founded the state of the *Chaldeans*, therefore also *Assur* rather than *Nimrod* established the *Assyrian* Empire, and built *Ninive*: contrary to the former translation of *Junius*, & to his own opinion. Now out of the *Vulgar* (called *Hieromes* translation) it may be gathered, that *Assur* both founded and ruined this Estate or City of the *Chaldeans*, by *Esay* remembered unto which City, People, or State, he plainly telleth the *Tyrans* that they cannot trust, or hope for relief thence. Or rather it may be taken, that the Prophet maketh this City of *Chaldea*, and that Estate, an example unto those *Phenicians*, whom in this place he fore-telleth of their ruine: which City of *Chaldea* being of strength, & carefully defended, was (notwithstanding) by the *Assyrians* utterly wasted and destroyed: whereby he giveth them knowledge, and fore-telleth them, that their own City of *Tyre* (invincible as themselves thought) should also soon after be over-turned by the same *Assyrians*: as (indeed) it was by *Nabuchodonosor*. And these be the words after *Hierome*: *Eccce terra Chaldeen, talis populus non fuit, Assur fundavit eam, in captivitatem raduxerunt robustos ejus, suffoderunt domos ejus, posuerunt eam in ruinam*; (which is)

Behold the Land of the Chaldeans, such a people there were not (or, this was no people, after the Geneva) *Assur* (or the *Assyrians*) founded it, they carried away their strong men captive, they undermined their houses, and ruined their Cities. The Septuagint expresse it but in a part of another Verse, in these words: *Et in terra Chaldeorum. & hac desolata est ab Assyriis, quoniam murus ejus corruit*, making the sense perfect by the preceding Verse, which all together may be thus understood: If thou go over to *Chittim* (which is *Macedon* or *Greece*) yet thou shalt not rest (speaking to the *Tyrians*) neither in the Land of the Chaldeans, for this is made desolate by the *Assyrians*, because their walls fell together to the ground. *Paginnus* and *Vatablus* convert it thus: *Eccce terra Chaldæum, iste populus non erat illic olim; nam Assur fundavit eam muros, erexerunt arces illius; contriverunt ades ejus, posuit eam in ruinam*: which may be thus Englished: Behold the Land of the Chaldeans, this people was not once therein inhabiting: for *Assur* built it a harbour for ships, they erected the Towers thereof; and again brake down the houses thereof, and ruined it. *Junius* in the place of ships sets the word (*pro Barbaris*) that is, for the *Barbarians*; and the Geneva, by the *Barbarians*. But this is undoubted that the Prophet *Esaï* (as may be gathered by all the sense of the Chapter) did therein assure the *Tyrians* of their future destruction, which (accordingly) fell on them: wherein (for the more terror) he maketh choise to note the calamities of those places, Cities, and Regions, by whose trade the state and greatness of the *Tyrians* was maintained, as by the *Cilicians* from *Tarsis*; from the *Macedonians*, and other *Grecians* under the name of *Cittim*; also by the *Egyptians*, the *Chaldeans*, and the rest. For *Tyre* was then the Mart Town of the World most renowned. And (as it appears in our discourse of *Paradise*) not the least part of her chief merchandize came in by the City *Ur*, or *Urchoa* in *Chaldea*, where the body or chiefe stream of *Euphrates* (even that streame which runneth through *Babylon* & *Oiris*, which now falleth into *Tygris*) had his passage into the *Persian Gulf*: though now it be stopped up. For (as we have heretofore noted) the *Arabians* (that descended from *Sheba* and *Raamah*) dwelling on the East banks of the *Persian Gulf*, trading with the *Tyrians* (as those of *Eden*, *Charran*, and *Chalde* did) transported their merchandize by the mouth of *Tygris*, that is, from *Teredon*; & of *Euphrates*, that is, from *Ur*, or *Urchoa*; and then by *Babylon*, and thence by River and over land they conveyed it into *Syria*, and so to *Tyre*: as they do this day to *Aleppo*. So then *Ur* of the *Chaldees* was a Port Town, and one of those Cities which had Intelligence, Trade, and Exchange with the *Tyrians*: for it stood by the great Lakes of *Chaldea*, through which, that part of *Euphrates* ran, which passage is now stoppt up. *Ejus cursum vetustas abolevit* (saith *Niger*.) And *Pliny*: *Locus ubi Euphratis opus fuit, flumen salsum*; Time hath worn away the channell of *Euphrates*: the place where the mouth thereof was, is a Bay of salt water. These things being thus, certainly (not without good probability) we may expound the City of the *Chaldeer*, whose calamities *Esaï* here noteth for terror of the *Tyrians*, to be the City anciently called *Ur*; and by (*Hecateus*) *Camerina*; by *Ptolomy*, *Urchoa*; and by the *Greeks*, *Chaldeopolis*, The City of *Chaldea*: which the sons of *Shem*, untill *Abrahams* time inhabited. And whereas in all the Translations it is said, that *Assur* both founded it and ruined it: it may be understood, that *Assur* the Founder was the son of *Shem*; and *Assur* the destroyers were the *Assyrians*, by whom those that inhabited *Ur* of *Chaldea*, were at length oppressed and brought to ruine: which thing God fore-seeing, commanded *Abraham* thence to *Carran*, and so into *Canaan*. And if the Hebrew word by *Vatablus* and *Paginnus* converted (*by ships*) doe bear that sense, the same may be the better approved, because it was a Port Town: and the River so farre up as this City of *Ur* was in ancient time navigable, as both by *Pliny* and *Niger* appeareth. And if the word (for the *Barbarians*) or (by the *Barbarians*) be also in the Hebrew Text, it is no lesse manifest, that the most barbarous *Arabians* of the Desert were and are the confronting, and next people of all other unto it. For *Chaldea* is now called *Arachaldar*, which signifieth desert Lands, because it joyneth to that part of *Arabia* so called: and *Cicero* (calling those *Arabians* by the name of *Imraens*) addeth, that they are of all other people the most salvage; calling them, *Homines omnium maximè barbaros*.

So as this place of *Esaï*, which breedeth some doubt in *Calvin*, proveth in nothing the contrary opinion, nor in any part weakeneth the former translation of *Junius*, nor the interpretation of *Comestor* and *Rabanns*. For though other men have not conceived (for any thing that I have read) that *Assur* is in this place diversly taken (as for the son

of *Sem*, when he is spoken of as a Builder of *Ur*; and when as a Destroyer thereof, then for the *Assyrian* Nation) yet certainly the evidence of the truth, and agreement of circumstances seeme to enforce it. And so this Founding of the City of the *Chaldees* by *Assur* (into which the most of the posterity of *Sem* that came into *Shinaar*, and were separate for the Idolatrie of the *Chusites* and *Nimrodians*, retired themselves) hath nothing in it to prove that the same *Assur* built *Ninive*, or that the same *Assur* was all one with *Ninus*; except we will make *Assur*, who was the son of *Shem*, both an Idolater, and the son of *Belus*. For (out of doubt) *Ninus* was the first notorious sacrificer to Idols; and the first that set up a Statue or Image to be honoured as God. Now if *Assur* must be of that Race, and not of the Family of *Sem*, as he must be if he founded *Ninive*, then all those which seeke to give him the honour thereof, do him by a thousand parts more injurie, by taking from him his true Parent and Religion.

Besides, if this supposed *Assur* whom they make the Founder of *Ninive* (and so the son of *Belus*) were any other, and not the same with *Ninus*; then what became of him? Certainly he was very unworthy and obscure, and not like to be the Founder of such an Empire and such a City, if no man have vouchsafed to leave to posterity his expulsion thence, and how he lost that Empire againe, or quitted it to *Ninus*: whose acts and conquests are so largely written, and (according to my apprehension) far differing from truth. It will therefore be found best agreeing to Scripture and to Reason, and best agreeing with the story of that age written by prophane Authors, that *Nimrod* founded *Babel*, *Erech*, and *Accad*, and *Chalne*, the first works and beginnings of his Empire, according to *Moses*; and that these workes being finished within the Valley of *Shinaar*, he looked farther abroad, and set in hand the worke of *Ninus*, lying neere unto the same streame that *Babel* and *Chalne* did: which work his grand-child *Ninus* afterward amplified and finished, as *Semiramis* (this *Ninus* his wife) did *Babylon*. Hence it came to passe, that as *Semiramis* was counted the Foundresse of the City which the only finished: so also *Ninus* of *Ninive*: *Quam quidem Babylonem potuit insauare; She might repaire or renew Babylon*, saith *S. Augustine*. For so did *Nabuchodonosor* vaunt himselfe to be the Founder of *Babylon* also, because he built up againe some part of the wall, over-borne by the furie of the River: which work of his stood till *Alexanders* time, whereupon he vaunted thus: *Is not this great Babel which I have built?*

## § IV.

Of the Acts of *Nimrod* and *Belus*, as far as now they are known.

BUT to returne to the Storie, it is plaine in *Moses*, that *Nimrod* (whom *Philo* interpreteth *transfigium*; and *Julius Africanus* surnamed *Saturne*) was the establisher of the *Babylonian Monarchie*, of whom there is no other thing written, than that his Empire in the beginning consisted of those 4. Cities before remembered; *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalne*; and that from hence he propagated his Empire into *Assyria*, and in *Assyria* built foure more Cities (to wit) *Ninive*, *Rehoboth*, *Celab*, and *Resen*. And seeing that he spent much time in building *Babel* it selfe and those adjoining, and that his travailes were many ere he came into *Shinaar*: that worke of *Babel* (such as it was) with the other three Cities, and the large foundation of *Ninive*, and the other Cities of *Assyria* which he builded (considered with the want of materials, and with other impediments) were of greater difficulty than any thing performed by his Successors in many years after: to whose undertakings time had given so great an increase of people; and the examples and patternes of his beginning so great advancement and encouragement: in whose time (saith *Glycas*) all these Nations were called *Merope*, *a sermone linguarum terræq; diversione*; By reason that the earth and the speech were then divided.

*Belus*, or *Bel*, or *Jupiter Belus*, succeeded *Nimrod*, after he had reigned 114. yeares; of whose acts and undertakings there is little written. For it is thought that he spent much of his time in dis-burdening the low Lands of *Babylon*, and drying and making firme ground of all those great Fens and over-flowne Marishes which adjoynd unto it. For any of his Warres or conquests there is no report, other than of his begun enterprise against *Sabatius* King of *Armenia*, and those parts of *Scythia* which *Berojous* calls *Scythia Saga*, whose son and successor *Barzanes* became subiect and Tributarie to *Ninus*, that followed the warre to effect, which was by his Father *Belus* begun.



living: for so he writes of him (calling him *Arbelus*.) *Arbelus, vir superbus & arrogant, primus hominum dicitur a subditis Deitatis nomen accepisse: Perseveravit igitur Assyrii, & finitime ille gentes sacrificantes ei. Arbelus, a man very proud and arrogant, it accounted to be the first of all men that was ever honored by their subjects with title of Deities, (or with the name of God.) The Assyrians therefore, and the bordering nations have persevered, sacrificing to him. Even *Arins* also, whom *Suidas* calls *Thuras*, who succeeded next after *Ninus*, was made an Idol-god among them, if we credit *Suidas*.*

After *Ninus* (that is, after *Ninias*) *Thuras* reigned (saith *Suidas*) whom they called after the name of the Planet *Mars*: a man of sharpe and fierce disposition, who bidding battaile to *Caucasus* of the stocke of *Japheth*, slue him. The *Assyrians* worshipped him 10 for their God, and called him *Baal* (that is) *Mars*; thus far *Suidas*. Neither is it unlikely but that many among Idolatrous nations were Deified in their life-times, or soone after: though I denie not but that the most of their Images and Statues were first erected without divine worship, onely in memorie of the glorious acts of Benefactors, as *Glycas* rightly conceiveth; and so afterward the Devil crept into those wooden and brazen carcasses, when Posteritie had lost the memorie of their first invention. Hereof *Isidore* speaketh in this manner: *Quos autem Pagani Deos asserunt, homines fuerunt, & pro uniuersisq; vite meritis vel magnificentia, colunt apud suos post mortem ceperunt: sed (Demonibus persuadentibus) quos illi pro sua memoria honoraverunt, minores Deos existimabant: ad ista vero magis excolenda accesserunt Poetarum fgmenta; They were men (saith he) whom the Pa-* 20 *gans affirmed to be gods: and every one for his merits or magnificence began after his death to be honoured of his own: But at length (the Devils persuading) they accounted them lesser gods, whose memories they honoured: and the Fictions of the Poets made the opinions (concerning the honour of the dead) much more superstitious.*

And that the worshipping of Images was brought in by the Pagans, and Heathen Nations, it is not *Isidore* alone that witnesseth; but *Gregory: Gentilitas (saith he) inventrix & Greg. Necessar. Ambr. in Psl. 108. Euseb. l. 7. c. 18. Aug. c. 13. Lañ. lib. 2. c. 2.* *Gentilisme is the inventresse and ground of Images: and Anubros, Genu lignum adorant, tanquam imaginem Dei; The Gentiles adore wood, as it were the Image of God. Eusebius also affirmeth as much, and calleth the worshipping of Images a custome borrowed of the Heathen. The like hath Saint Augustine against Adimantus. Et venient* 30 *(saith Lañtinius) ne religio vana sit, si nihil videant quod adoret; They feare their Religion would be vaine, should they not see that which they worship.*

And (out of doubt) the Schoolemen shift this fearefull custome very strangely. For seeing the very workmanship is forbidden, how can the heart of a wise Christian fastise it selfe with the distinction of *Doula* and *Hyperdoula*, which can imply nothing but some difference of worshipping of those Images after they are made? And it is of all things the most strange, why religious & learned men should strain their wits to defend the use of those things, which the Scriptures have not onely no where warranted, but expressly in many places forbidden, and cursed the practisers thereof. Yet this doctrine of the Devil was so strongly and subtilly rooted, as neither the expresse Commandement of God himselfe, *Thou shalt not make any graven Image*, nor all the threatnings of *Moses* and the Prophets after him, could remove, weed it, or by fear, or by any persuasions lead the hearts of men from it. For where shall we find words of greater weight, or of plainer instruction than these? *Take therefore good heed to your selves (for ye saw no Image in the day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire) that ye corrupt not your selves, and make you a graven Image or representation of any Figure, whether it be the likeness of Male or Female.*

And besides the expresse Commandement, *Thou shalt make thee no graven Image*, and the prohibition in many Scriptures, so it is written in the Booke of *Wisefodome*, That, the invention of Idols was the beginning of *Woredome*: and the finding of them the corruption of life: for they were not from the beginning, neither shall they continue for ever.

And whereas the Schoolemen affirme, that the Prophets spake against the Worshipping of the Heathen Idols, it is manifest that *Moses* spake of Images of the living God, and not of *Baal* and the rest of that nature. For you saw no Image (saith *Moses*) that day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb. Surely it was excellently said of *Basil*; *Noti aliquam in illo formam imaginari, ne circumscriptib eum mente tua: Do not imagine any forme to be in God, least thou limit or circumscribe him in thy minde too*. Now, if the great *Basil* thought it a presumption unlawful to represent a pattern of the infinite God to our own thoughts

thoughts and minds, how far do those men presume that put him under the greazie Penill of a Painter, or the rusty Axe or other Instrument of a Carpenter or Carver?

For as this dishonour to the infinite and incomprehensible God, began in *Babel*: so did the Devil transport and spread this invention into all the Regions adjoining, and into *Egypt* and *Greece*.

The *Romans* for a while resisted the erection of these Idols and Images, refusing to set them in their Temples for 170 years; observing the Law of *Numa*, who thought it impiety to resemble things most beautiful, by things most base. But *Tarquinius Priscus* afterwards prevailing, and following the vanity of the *Grecians* (a Nation of all others 10 under the Sun most deluded by Satan) set up the Images of their gods; which (as *S. Aug. de Civit. Augustine* witnesseth) that learned *Varro* both bewailed, and utterly condemned: and which *Seneca* thus derideth; *Simulachra deorum venerantur, illis supplicant, gemis postea illa adorant; & cum hec suspiciant, fabros qui illa fecere, contemnunt; The Images of the gods are worshipped, those they pray unto, with bended knees those they adore; & while they so greatly admire them, they contemn the Handicraftsmen that made them: which also *Sedulius* the Poet in this fort scoffed at:*

*Hec miseri qui vana colunt, qui corde sinistro Religiosa sibi sculptunt simulachra, suumq; Factorem fugiunt, & que fecere, venerunt. Quis furor est & que tanta animos dementia ludit? Ut volucrem, tumentemq; bovem, torumq; Draconem, Semi-hominemq; canem supplex homo pronus adoret.*

20 Ah wretched they that worship vanities, And consecrate dumb Idols in their heart, Who their own Maker (God on high) despise, And feare the work of their own hands and art. What furie? what great madnes doth beguile Mens minds? that man should ugly shapies adore 30 Of Birds, or Bulls, or Dragons, or the vile Half-dog-half-man on knees for aid implore.

And though this device was barbarous, and first, and many yeers practised by Heathen Nations onely, till the *Jews* were corrupted in *Egypt*, yet it is not *Seneca* alone that laugheth to scorn the ignorant stupiditie of his Nation: but *Iustin Martyr* remembreth how the *Sybls* inveighed against Images: and *Hosianus*, how *Sophocles* taught, that it was pernicious to the souls of men to erect and adore those bables. *Strabo* and *Herodotus* witness, that the *Persians* did not erect or set up any Statue of their Gods. *Lycurgus* never taught it the *Lacedemonians*, but thought it impiety to represent immortal na- 40 tures by mortal Figures. *Eusebius* also witnesseth in his sixt Book de preparatione Evangelica, that it was forbidden by a Law in *Serica*, or among the Brackmans in *India*, that Images should be worshipped. The fame do *Tacitus* and *Grinimus* report of the ancient *Germans*. Many other Authours might be remembered, that witness the disdain which the Heathen themselves had of this childish Idolatry: of which *Hosianus* hath written at large in his Tract, de origine imaginum. And it was truly said, *Omnia mala exempla bonis initis orta sunt. All ill examples have sprung from good beginnings.* The Heathen at first made these Statues and Images, but in memory of such remarkable men, as had deserved best of their Countries and common-wealths: *Effigies hominum (saith Pliny) non solebant exprimi, nisi aliqua illustri causa perpetuitatem merentium: Men were not wont to 50 make Pictures, but of men which merited for some notable cause to be perpetually remembered.* And though of the more ancient *Papists*, some have borrowed of the *Gentiles* (as appears in *Lañtinius*) that defence for Images: That *Simulachra* are pro elementis literarum, ut per ea discerent homines Deum invisibilem cognoscere: Images say they, (and so before them the Heathen said) are in stead of Letters, whereby men might learn to know the invisible God: in which understanding perhaps they no otherwise esteemed them than pictures indeed; yet as that of *Baal* or *Bel* set up in memory of *Belus* the *Babylonian*, became afterward the most revered Idol of the World, by which so many Nations (and they which were appropriate to God himself) were misled and cast away: so those very stocks & stipes, and







the title of *Prophetia Cham*. *Cassianus* out of *Serenus* hath somewhat like to this of *Comestor*. These be *Cassianus* words: *Cham (filius Noah) qui superstitionibus istis & Sacilegiis suis artibus infectus, sciens nullum se posse super his memorialem librum in Arcam profectum inferre, in qua erat cum patre iusto, &c.* *Cham* (the son of *Noah*) who was infected with these superstitions and sacrilegious Arts, knowing that he could not bring any book or memoriall of that nature into the *Arke*, wherein he was to remain with his godly Father, caused the Precepts and Rules thereof to be graven in metall and hard stone.

*S. Augustine* noteth that *Zoroaster* was said to have laughd at his birth, when all other children weep; which prefiged the great knowledge which afterward he attained unto: being taken for the Inventor of naturall *Magick* and other Arts; for the Corrupter, so saith *Plinie* and *Iustine*. But I do not think that *Zoroaster* invented the doctrine of the *Horoscopes* or *Nativities*: or first found out the nature of herbs, stones, and minerals, or their Sympatheticall or Antipatheticall workings; of which, I know not what King of *Chaldea* is also made the Inventor. I rather think that these knowledges were far more ancient, and left by *Noah* to his sons. For *Abraham* who had not any acquaintance with *Zoroaster*, (as *Iosephus* reporteth) was no lesse learned herein than any other in that age, if he exceeded not all men then living: differing from the wisdom of aftertimes in this, that he knew and acknowledged the true cause, and giver of life and vertue to Nature and all Naturall things; whereas others (forgetting Gods infinite, dispersed, and universall power) admired the instruments, and did attribute proper strength to the things themselves, (from which the effects were sensible) which belonged to that wisdom, *Which being one, and remaining in it selfe, can doe all things, and reneweth all.*

Now whether this *Zoroaster* (overthrown by *Ninus*) were the same which was so excellent a Naturalist, it is doubted. For *Zoroaster* the *Magician*, *Ctesias* calls *Oxyartes*, whom *Plinie* findes of a later time. And if *Zoroaster* were taken away by a spirit (being, in the midst of his Disciples) as some Authors report, then *Zoroaster*, slain by *Ninus*, was not the *Magician*: which is also the opinion of *Scaliger*.

Again, *Iosephus* and *Cedrenus* affirm, that *Seth* first found out the Planets, or wandering Stars, and other motions of the Heavens: for if this Art had been invented by *Zoroaster*, he could not have attained to any such excellency therein, in his own life time; but being a man (as it seemeth) of singular judgement, he might adde somewhat to this kind of knowledge, and leave it by writing to posterity.

But of this *Zoroaster* there is much dispute: and no lesse jangling about the word and art of *Magick*. *Arnobius* remembreth foure, to whom the name of *Zoroaster*, or *Zorastres* was given: which by *Hermodorus* and *Dion* seemeth to be but a cognomen, or name of art, and was as much to say, as *astrorum cultor*. The first, *Arnobius* calleth the *Bactrian*, which may be the same that *Ninus* overthrew: the second, a *Chaldean*, and the *Astronomer* of *Ninus*: the third, was *Zoroaster Pamphilius*, who lived in the time of *Cyrus* and his familiar: the fourth, *Zoroaster Armenius*, the Nephew of *Hofianes*, which followed *Xerxes* into *Greece*: between whom and *Cyrus* there past threecore and eighteen years. *Suidas* remembreth a fifth, called *Persemedus sapiens*: and *Plato* speaketh of *Zoroaster* the son of *Oromasdes*; which *Picus Mirandula* confirmeth.

Now of what Nation the first and chiefe *Zoroaster* was, it is doubted. *Plinie* and *Lactius* make him a *Persian*. *Gemisthus* or *Plerho*, *Ficinus* and *Stenchiu*, make him a *Chaldean*. But by those booke of one *Zoroaster*, found by *Picus Mirandula*, it appeareth plainly, that the Author of them was a *Chaldean* by Nation, though the word (*Chaldean*) was as often given to the learned Priests peculiarly, as for any distinguishing of Nations. *Porphyrius* makes the *Chaldea* and *Magi* divers; *Picus* the same. But that this *Zoroaster* was a *Chaldean* both by Nation and Profession, it appeareth by his Bookes, which (saith *Picus*) were written in the *Chaldean* tongues, and the Comment in the same language. Now that the *Magi* and they were not differing, it may be judged by the name of those booke of *Zoroaster*, which in an Epistle of *Mirandula* to *Ficinus*, he saith, to be intituled, *Patris Ezre Zoroastri, & Melchior magorum oracula*.

## § II.

Of the name of *Magia*: and that it was anciently far divers from Conjuring and Witchcraft.

Now for *Magick* it selfe; which Art (saith *Mirandula*) pauci intelligunt, multi reprehendunt; Few understand, and many reprehend; Et scitis Canes ignotos semper allatrare; As Dogs bark at those they know not: so they condemn and hate the things they understand not: I think it not amisse (leaving *Ninus* for a while) to speak somewhat thereof. It is true that many men abhorre the very name and word (*Magos*) because of *Simon Magus*, who being indeed, not *Magus*, but *Goer*, (that is) familiar with evil spirits, usurped that title. For *Magick*, Conjuring, and Witchery, are far differing Arts, whereof *Plinie* being ignorant scoffeth thereat. For *Nero* (saith *Plinie*) who had the most excellent Magicians of the East sent him by *Tyridates* King of *Armenia*, who held that Kingdom by his grace, found the art after long study and labour altogether ridiculous.

*Magus* is a Persian word primitively, whereby is exprest such a one as is altogether conversant in things divine. And (as *Plato* affirmeth) the Art of *Magick* is the Art of worshipping God. To which effect *Apollonius* in his Epistles expounding the word (μαγος) saith, that the Persians called their gods μαγος: whence he addeth, that *Magus* is either ignis sive solis or deus ignis sive solis, (that is) that *Magus* is a name sometime of him that is a God by nature; sometimes of him that is in the service of God: in which latter sense it is taken, *Mat. 2. v. 1.* And this is the first and highest kind: which *Piccolominie* calleth divine *Magick*: and these did the Latines newly intitle *Sapientes*, or *Wisemen*: For, the fear and worship of God is the beginning of knowledge. These *Wisemen* the Greeks call *Philosophers*: the Indians, *Branchmans*: which name they somewhat neerly retain to this day, calling their Priests *Bramines*; among the Egyptians they were termed *Priests*; with the Hebrews they were called *Cabalists*, *Prophets*, *Scribes*, and *Pharisees*: amongst the Babylonians they were differenced by the name of *Chaldeans*: and among the Persians, *Magicians*: of whom *Arnobius* (speaking of *Hofianes*, one of the ancient *Magicians*) useth these words: *Et verum Deum merita maiestate prosequitur, & Angelos ministros Dei, sed veri, ejus venerationi novit assistere. Idem demonas prodit terrenus, vagos, humanitatis inimicos; Sosibenes* (for so *M. Felix* called him, not *Hofianes*) ascribeth the due majesty to the true God, and acknowledgeth that his Angels are ministers and messengers which attend the worship of the true God. He also hath delivered that there are Devils earthly and wandering, and enemies to mankind.

His Majestic also in his first Book of *Demonologie*, c. 3. acknowledgeth, that in the Persian tongue the word (*Magus*) imports as much a contemplator of divine and heavenly sciences; and unjustly so called, because the *Chaldeans* were ignorant of the true divinity. And it is also right which His Majestic avoweth, that under the name of *Magick* all other unlawfull Arts are comprehended, and yet doth His Majestic distinguish it from Necromancie, Witchcraft, and the rest: of all which he hath written largely and most learnedly. For the *Magick* which His Majestic condemneth, is of that kind whereof the Devil is a party. *Daniel* in his second chapter nameth foure kinds of those *Wise-men*: *Arioli Magi, Malefici, & Chaldei*. *Arioli* the old Latine translation calleth *Sophists*: *Vatibus* and *Paginis* Genethliacos, or *Physicos*, or *Philosophers*, or (according to the note of *Vatibus*) *Naturalists*: *Nempe sunt Magi apud Barbaros, quod Philosophi apud Græcos* (scilicet) *divinorum humanarumque rerum scientiam proficentes*; For the *Magi* are the same with the *Barbarians*, as the *Philosophers* are with the *Gracians* (that is) men that profess the knowledge of things both divine and humane. The Greek and the English call them *Inchanters*; *Junius*, *Magicians*; *Cassalon*, *Conjetturers*: in the Syrian they are all foure by one name called *Sapientes Babylonis*; *The Wisemen of Babel*.

The second sort *Vatibus*, *Paginis*, *Junius*, and our English, call *Astrologers*; *Hierome* and the *Septuagint*, *Magicians*.

The third kind are *Malefici*, or *Venefici*; in *Hierom*, *Paginis*, and the *Septuagint*, *Witches* or *Poysoners*: in *Junius*, *Prestigiatores* of *Sorcerers*, as in English.

That *Witches* are also rightly so called *Venefici*, or *Poysoners*; and that indeed there is a kind of *Malefici*, which without any Art of *Magick* or *Necromancie* use the help

of the Devil to do mischief, His Majesty confirmeth in the first Chapter of his second Book: speaking also in the fifth Chapter of their practice, to mixe the powder of dead bodies with other things by the Divell prepared; and at other times to make pictures of wax, or clay, or otherwise (as it were *Sacramentaliter*) to effect those things, which the Devil by other means bringeth to passe.

The fourth, all Translators call *Chaldeans*: who took upon them to foretell all things to come, as well natural as humane, and their events: and this they vaunted to perform by the influences of the Stars by them observed, and understood.

Such were, and to this day partly (if not altogether) are the corruptions, which have made odious the very name of *Magick*, having chiefly fought (as is the manner of all impostures) to counterfeit the highest and most noble part of it, yet so as they have also crept into the inferior degrees.

A second kinde of *Magick* was that part of *Astrologie*, which had respect to sowing and planting, and all kindes of agriculture and husbandry: which was a knowledge of the motions and influences of the Stars into those lower Elements.

De vit. sanct.  
& y. Annal.  
Jul. 180.

*Philo Judæus* goeth farther, affirming, that by this part of *Magick* or *Astrologie*, together with the motions of the Stars and other heavenly bodies, *Abraham* found out the knowledge of the true God, while he lived in *Chaldæa*: *Qui contemplatione creaturarum cognovit Creatorem*, (saith *Jo. Damascen*) *Who knew the Creator by the contemplation of the creature.* *Josephus* reporteth of *Abraham*, that he instructed the Egyptians in *Arithmetick* and *Astronomie*, who before *Abraham's* coming unto them knew none of these sciences.

And so doth *Archangelus de Burgo* in defence of *Mirandula* against *Garfias*: *Alexander & Eupolemon dicunt, quod Abraham sanctitate & sapientia omnium præstantissimus, Chaldeos primum, deinde Phœnices, demum Egyptios sacerdotes Astrologiam & divina docerit; Alexander (saith he, meaning Alexander Polyhistor) and Eupolemon affirm, that Abraham the holiest and wisest of men, did first teach the Chaldeans, then the Phœnicians; lastly, the Egyptian priests, Astrologie and divine knowledge.*

See upon his  
Comment. in  
Aug. de civit.  
Dei, l. 18. c. 2.

The third kinde of *Magick* containeth the whole Philosophie of nature; not the brabbings of the *Aristotelians*, but that which bringeth to light the inmost virtues, and draweth them out of Nature hidden below to humane use: *Virtutes in centro centratae*; *Virtues hidden in the center of the center*, according to the *Chymists*. Of this sort were *Albertus Arnouldus de villa nova*, *Raymond Bacon*, and many others: and before these in elder times, and who better understood the power of Nature, & how to apply things that work to things that suffer, were *Zoroaster* before spoken of: *Apollonius Tyaneus* remembered by *S. Hierome* to *Paulinus*; in some mens opinion *Numa Pompilius* among the Romans: among the Indians, *Jehsian*: among the Egyptians, *Hermes*: among the Babylonians, *Budda*: the Thracians had *Zamolxis*: the Hyperboreans (as is supposed) *Abbaris*; and the Italians, *Petrus Aponensis*. The *Magick* which these men profess, is thus defined: *Magia est connexio à viro sapiente agentium per naturam cum patientibus, sibi congruenter respondentibus, ut inde opera prodeant, non sine eorum admiratione qui causam ignorant: Magick is the connexion of naturall agents and patients, answerable each to other, wrought by a wise man, to the bringing forth of such effects, as are wonderful to those that know not their causes.* In all these three kinds, which other men divide into foure, it seemeth that *Zoroaster* was exceedingly learned; especially in the first and highest. For in his Oracles he confessed God to be the creator of the Universal: he beleeveth of the Trinity, which he could not investigate by any naturall knowledge; he speaketh of Angels, and of Paradise: approveth the immortality of the soule: teacheth Truth, Faith, Hope, and Love, discouraging of the Abstinence and Charity of the *Magi*: Which Oracles of his, *Psellus*, *Ficinus*, *Patritius*, and others have gathered and translated.

\*Nota in mundo  
Lucet Trias, cu-  
jus Monas est  
princeps. Cuncta  
namq; perfecti  
pater, & menti  
tradidit secun-  
da. Psel. & Fi-  
cin. de præp. E-  
vang. l. 1. c. 7.

Of this *Zoroaster*, *Eusebius* in the Theologie of the Phœnicians, using *Zoroaster's* owne words: *Hæc ad verbum scribit (saith Eusebius) Deus primus incorruptibilis, sempiternus, ingentis, expertus partium, sibi ipsi similis, bonorum omnium amica, munera non expectans, optimus, prudentissimus, pater juris, sine doctrina iustitiam perdoctus, natura perfectus, sapiens, sacra nature unicus inventor, &c.* Thus writeth *Zoroaster* word for word. *God the first incorruptible, everlasting, unbegotten, without parts, most like himselfe, the guide of all good, expecting no reward, the best, the wisest, the father of right, having learned justice without teaching, perfect, wise by nature, the only inventor thereof.*

Lib. 2. fol. 26.

*Sixtus Senensis* speaking of the wisdom of the *Chaldeans*, doth distinguish those wise men

men into five orders, (to wit) *Chascedim*, or *Chaldeans*: *Asaphim*, or *Magicians*: *Chartumim*, (which he translates *Ariolæ*, or *Sophists*) *Mechaphim*, or *Malefici*, or *Venefici*, *Whitchers*, or *Poisoners*: and *Gazarim*, *Augures*, or *Aruspices*, or *Diviners*.

*Chascedim* were those which had the name of *Chaldeans*, which were *Astronomers*: *Hi celorum motus diligentissime spectant*; *These did most diligently contemplate the motions of the heavens*: whom *Philo* in the life of *Abraham* describeth.

*Asaphim* were in the old Latine translation called *Philosophers*: of the *Septuagint* and of *Hierome*, *Magicians*: *Qui de omnium tam divinarum quam humanarum rerum causis Philosophati sunt*; *Who discoursed of the causes of all things*, as well divine as humane: of whom

10 *Origen* makes *Balaam* (the son of *Beor*) to be the first: but *Laertius* ascribeth the invention of this art to *Zoroaster* the Persian.

*Chartumim*, or *Inchanters*, the Disciples (saith *Saint Augustine*, *Plinie*, and *Iustine*) of another *Zoroaster*: who corrupted the admirable wisdom of the *Magi*, which he received from his Ancesters.

*Mechaphim*, or *Venefici*, or *Witches*, are those which we have spoken already out of His Majesty's book of *Demonologia*.

*Gazarim*, or *Aruspices* (after *Saint Hierome*) which divine from the entrails of beasts slain for sacrifices: or by *Gazarim* others understand *Augures*, who divine by the flying, singing, or feeding of birds.

20 By this distinction we may perceive the difference between those wise men which the kings of *Babylon* entertained; and that the name and profession of the *Magi* among the ancient Persians was most honest. For as *Pencer* truly observeth, *Træant religionem Persæ, ut in populo Dei Levitæ, studisque veræ Philosophiæ dediti erant: nec quisquam Rex Persarum poterat esse, qui non antea Magorum disciplinam scientiamque perciperet*; *The Magi (saith he) were the chief Ministers of the Persian Religion, as the Levites among Gods people, and they were given to the studies of true Philosophie: neither could any be King of the Persians, who had not first been exercised in the mysteries and knowledge of the Magi.* *Sixtus Senensis*, in the defence of *Origen* against *Polychronius* and *Theophilus*, hath two kindes of *Magick*, his own words are these: *Et ne quem moveant præmissa Polychronii & Theophili testimonia, sciendum est duplicem esse Magiam; alteram ubique ab Origine damnatam, quæ per fœdera cum demonibus imita aut verè aut apparenter operatur; alteram ab Origine laudatam, quæ ad præctice naturæ philosophiæ pertinet, docens admirabiles operari et applicationes mutua naturalium virtutum ad invicem agentium ac patientium; & that the testimonies of *Theophilus* and *Polychronius* (saith he) may not move any man, it is to be understood that *Magick* is of two sorts, the one every where condemned by *Origen*; which worketh (whether truly or seemingly) by covenants made with Devils; the other commended by *Origen*; which appertaineth to the practick part of naturall Philosophie, teaching to work admirable things by the mutual application of naturall virtues, agent and suffering reciprocally.*

30 This partition *Hierome* doth embrace in the first of his Commentaries upon *Daniel*: where considering of the difference which *Daniel* makes between these four kindes of wise Men formerly remembered, he useth this distinction: *Quor nos bariolos; ceteri videntes (id est) incantatores interpretati sunt, videntur mihi esse qui verbis rem peragunt; Magi, qui de singulis philosophantur; malefici, qui lægenie vivunt & victimis & sepe contingunt corpora mortuorum: porro in Chaldeis Genethliacos significari puto, quos vulgo Mathematicos vocant. Consuetudo autem communis Magos pro malefici accipit, qui aliter habentur apud gentem suam, eo quod sint Philosophi Chaldeorum: & ad artis hujus scientiam Reges quoque & Principes ejusdem gentis omnia faciunt; unde, & in navitate Domini Salvatoris, ipse primum ortum ejus intellexerunt, & venientes sanctam Bethleem, adoraverunt puerum, stella desuper ostendente; & Them whom we call Sorcerers, and others interpret Incantators, seem to me such as performe things by words; Magicians, such as handle every thing philosophically; Witches, that use blood and sacrifices, and often lay hands on the body of the dead: further, among the Chaldeans I take them to be signified by the name of Conjecturers upon nativities, whom the vulgar call Mathematicians. But common custom takes Magicians for Witches, who are otherwise reputed in their owne Nation: for they are the Philosophers of the Chaldeans: yea, King and Princes of that Nation doo all that they doe according to the knowledge of this Art: whence, at the nativity of the Lord our Saviour, they first of all understood his birth, and coming unto holy Bethleem, did worship the Child: the Starre from above shewing him unto them.* By this therefore it appeareth that there is

great difference between the doctrine of a *Magician*, and the abuse of the word. For though some Writers affirme, that *Magus* hodie dicitur, qui ex fœdere facti nititur diaboli opera adrem quancumque; That he is called a *Magician* now-a-days, who having entred league with the Diuel, useth his help to any matter: yet (as our Saviour said of Divorce) it was not so from the beginning. For the Art of *Magick* is of the wisdom of Nature; other Arts which undergoe that title, were invented by the falshood, subtilty, and envie of the Devil. In the latter there is no other doctrine, than the use of certain ceremonies, *Per malū fidem; By an evill faith*: in the former no other ill, than the investigation of those vertues and hidden properties which God hath given to his creatures, and how fely to apply things that work, to things that suffer. And though by the Jewes those excellent *Magicians*, *Philosophers*, and *Divines*, which came to worship our Saviour Christ, were termed *Mecheis*, *Chephims*, or *Mecaphims*; yet had they no other reason than common custome therein. *Conversando autem communis Magos pro maleficis accipit; Common custome* (saith S. Hierome) *understandeth Witches under the name of Magicians: And antiquity* (saith Peter Martyr) *by the word (Magi) understood good and wise men. Quid igitur expavescis Magi nomen formidolose, nomen Evangelio gratiosum, quod non maleficum & veneficum, sed sapientem, sonat & Sacerdotem? O thou fearful one* (saith Ficinus) *why doubtest thou to use the name of Magus, a name gracious in the Gospel, which doth not signifie a Witch, or Conjuror, but a wise man and a Priest? For what brought this slander to that study and profession, but only idle ignorance, the Parent of causelesse admiration? Causa fuit misericordia quorundam operum, que (re vera) opera naturalia sunt: verumtamen quia procuratio demonum, naturas ipsas vel conjungentium, vel commiscientium, vel aliter ad operandum expeditum facta sunt, opera demonum credebantur ab ignorantibus hæc. De operibus lucis modeste Magia naturalis, quam Necromantiam multi improprie vocant: The marvellousnesse of some works, which (indeed) are naturall, hath been the cause of this slander: but because these works have been done by procurement of Devils, joyning the naturæ together, or mingling them, or howsoever fitting the naturæ to their working, they were thought the work of the Devils by the ignorant. Among these works is naturall Magick, which men call very improperly Necromantie.*

Hieron. in Daniel.  
Pet. Mar. Lec.

Mar. Ficinus per  
prim. fol. 173.

Gul. Parisien de  
Leg. 4. cap. 14.

Fol. 80.

*Mirandula* in his Apologie goeth further: For by understanding (saith he) the uttermost activity of natural agents we are assisted to know the Divinity of Christ: for otherwise (to use his own words) *ignorantis terminis potentia & virtutis rerum naturalium, stat nos dubitare illa eadem opera, que fecit Christus, posse fieri per media naturalia; The termes or limits of naturall power and vertue not understood, wee must needs doubt whether those very works which Christ did, may not be done by naturall meanes: after which he goeth on in this sort: Ideo non hereticè, non superstitiosè dixi, sed verissimè & Catholicè per talem Magiam adjuvari nos in cognoscenda divinitate Christi: Therefore I said not heretically, not superstitiously, but most truly and Catholically, that by such Magick we are furthered in knowing the Divinity of Christ. And seeing the Jewes and others, the enemies of Christian Religion, do impudently and impiously object, that those Miracles which Christ wrought were not above nature, but by the exquisite knowledge thereof performed: *Mirandula*, a man for his years fuller of knowledge than any that this latter Age hath brought forth, might with good reason avow, that the uttermost of Natures workes being knowne, the workes which Christ did, and which (as himself witnesseth) no man could doe, doe manifestly testifie of themselves, that they were performed by that hand which held Nature herein but as a Pencil, and by a power infinitely supream and divine; and thereby those that were faithlesse, were either converted or put to silence.*

### §. III

That the good knowledge in the ancient Magick is not to be condemned: though the Diuel here, as in other kinds, hath sought to obtrude evill things, under the name and colour of good things.

Being therefore it is confessed by all of understanding, that a *Magician* (according to the Persin word) is no other than, *Divinorum cultus & interpres: A studious observer and expy under of divine things: and the Art of it selfe* (I meane the Art of Naturall Magick) no other, *quæ in naturalis Philosphiæ absoluta consummatio; That the absolute perfection of naturall Philosphie: Certainly then it proceeds from ignorance, and*

no

no way sorteth with wife and learned men, *promissum*, and without difference and distinction, to confound lawfull and praise-worthy knowledge with that impious, and (to use S. Pauls words) *with those beggerly rudiments*, which the Divell hath shuffled, and by them bewitcheth and befooleth gracelesse men. For if we condemn naturall *Magick*, or the wisdom of Nature, because the Divell (who knows more than any man) doth also teach witches and Poysoners the harmful parts of Herbes, Drugges, Minerals, and Excrements: then may we by the same rule condemn the Physician, and the Art of healing. For the Divell also in the Oracles of *Amphiaranus*, *Amphibolus*, *Trophonius*, and the like, taught men in Dreames what Herbes and Drugges were proper for such and such diseases. Now no man of judgement is ignorant, that the Divell from the beginning hath sought to thrust himselfe into the same employment among the Ministers and Servants of God, changing himselfe for that purpose into an Angel of Light. He hath led men to Idolatry as a Doctrine of Religion; he hath thrust in his Prophets among those of the true God; he hath corrupted the Art of *Astrologie*, by giving a divine power to the Starres, teaching men to esteeme them as gods, and not as instruments. And (as Bunting observeth) it is true, that iudiciall *Astrologie* is corrupted with many superstitions: but the abuse of the thing takes not away the Art, considering that heavenly bodies (as even generall experience sheweth) have, and exercise their operation upon the inferior. For the Sun, and the Star of *Mars* doe drie; the Moone doth moisten, and govern the Tides of the Sea. Again, the Planets, as they have severall and proper names, so have they severall and proper vertues: the Starres doe also differ in beautie and in magnitude; and to all the Starres hath God given also their proper names, which (had they not influences and vertues different) needed not: *He counteth the number of the Starres, Psal. 147. and calleth them by their names.* But into the good and profitable knowledge of the celestial influences, the Divel ceaseth not to shuffle in his Superstitions; and so to the knowledge of the secret vertues of Nature hath he fastened his doctrine of *Characters*, Numbers and Incantations; and taught men to beleve in the strength of words and Letters: (which without Faith in God are but Inke or common breath) thereby either to equal his owne with the All-powerful Word of God, or to diminish the glory of Gods creating Word, by whom are all things.

Moreover, he was never ignorant, that both the wife and the simple observe when the Sea-birds forsake the shores and fly into the Land, that commonly some great storme followeth; that the high flying of the Kite and the Swallow, broken faire weather; that the crying of Crows and bating of Ducks, foreshew raime: for they feele the Ayre moistened in their Quils. And it is written in Hieremie the Prophet, *Even the Stork in the ayre knoweth her appointed times, and the Turtle, and the Crane, and the Swallow.* Hereupon, this enemy of Mankind, working upon these as upon the rest of Gods creatures, long time abused the Heathen by teaching them to observe the flying of Fowles, and thereby to judge of good or ill successe in the War: and (withall) to looke into their entrailes for the same, as if God had written the secrets of unsearchable providence in the livers & bowels of birds and beasts. Again, because it pleased God sometimes by Dreams not only to warne and teach his Prophets and Apostles, but Heathen Princes also; as *Gen. 12. v. 17. Abimelech* to restore Sara to Abraham; because he admonished *Joseph*, and by Dreams informed *Jacob*, *Laban*, *Pharao*, *Solomon*, *Paul*, *Amias*, the *Magi* of the East, and others. *Job 33. v. 17.* For as it is remembered in *Job: In Dreames and visions of the night, when sleepe falleth upon men, &c. then God openeth the eares, that he might cause man to returne from his enterprises:* therefore, I say, doth the Divell also practise his Divinations by Dreames, or (after Parisiens) *divinitate imitationes, his mock-divinitie.* This in the end grew to common, as *G. Parisien de leg. 24. cap.* *Arifides* compiled an Ephemerides of his owne Dreames: *Mithridates* of those of his Concupines. Yea the Romans finding the inconvenience hereof, because all dreams (without distinction of cases) were drawne to Divination, forbad the same by a Law, as by the words of prohibition (aut narrandis omnium occultis aliquam artem divinandis) it may appeare. Likewise by the Law of God in *Deuteronomie, cap. 13.* seducing Dreamers were ordered to be slaine. Yet it is to be contemned, not that *Marcus Antonius* was told a remedie in his Dreame for two grievous diseases that opprest him; nor that of *Alexander Macedon* for the cure of *Pholomies* poisoned wound; nor that which *S. Augustine* reporteth of a *Millanoise*; whose son (the Father dead) being demanded a debt already paid, was told by his Father in a dream where the Acquittance lay to discharge it: not

Bunt. in Chr.

Cap. 8. ver. 7.

Gen. 12. v. 17.

Job 33. v. 17.

G. Parisien de  
leg. 24. cap.

Aug. de cura  
pro mortuis a-  
ndis.

that

that of *Afayages* of his Daughter, and many others of like nature. Of the reason of all which, for asmuch as the cause is not in our selves, this place denieth dispute.

## §. IV.

That Daniels *misliking* Nabuchodonosors condemning of the Magicians, doth not justifie all their practices.

Deut. 13. 6, 18.  
Levit. 20.

BUT it may be objected, that if such Divinations as the Heathens commonly used were to be condemned in them, who tooke on them very many and strange Revelations; how came it to passe that Daniel both condemned the haſtie ſentence of Nabuchodonosor againſt the Magicians of Chaldaea, and in a ſort forbad it? eſpecially conſidering that ſuch kind of people God himſelfe commanded to be ſlaine. To this, divers answers may be given. Firſt, it ſeemeth that Daniel had reſpect to thoſe Chaldeans, becauſe they acknowledged that the Dreame of the king, which himſelfe had forgotten, could not be knowne to any man by any Art either Natural or Diabolical: For there is none other (ſaid the Chaldeans) that can declare it before the king, except the Gods, whoſe dwelling is not with fleſh: and herein they confeſſed the power of the Ever-living God.

Secondly, it may be conjectured (and that with good reaſon) that among ſo many learned men, ſome of them did not exerciſe themſelves in any evill or unlawfull Arts, but were merely Magicians and Naturaliſts: and therefore when the king commanded to kill all, Daniel perwaded the contrary, and called it a haſty judgement, which proceeded with furie without examination. And that ſome of thoſe mens ſtudies and profeſſions were lawfull, it may be gathered by Daniels inſtruction: for himſelfe had bin taught by them, and was called chiefe of the Inchanters: of which ſome were termed Soothſayers, others *Aſtrogians*, others *Chaldeans*, others *Magi* or *Wise-men*: and therefore of diſtinct profeſſions.

Thirdly, Daniel miſliked and forbad the execution of that judgement, becauſe it was unjuſt. For howſoever thoſe men might deſerve puniſhment for the practice of unlawfull arts (though not unlawfull according to the law of that State) yet herein they were altogether guiltleſſe. For it exceeded humane power to pierce the Kings thoughts, which the Divell himſelfe could not know. So then in Daniels diſlike, and hindering of the execution of ſentence of death pronounced againſt the Magicians, there is no abſolute juſtifying of their practice and profeſſion.

## §. V.

The abuſe of things which may be found in all kinds, is not to condemne the right uſe of them.

NOTWITHSTANDING this mixture every where, of good with evill, of falſe-hood with truth, of corruption with cleannesse and purity: The good, The truth, The purity in every kind may well be embraced: As in the ancient worſhipping of God by Sacrifice, there was no man knowing God among the Elders, that therefore forebare to offer Sacrifice to the God of all power, becauſe the Divell in the Image of Baal, Aſtaroth, Chemoth, Jupiter, Apollo, and the like was ſo adored.

Eccl. ex. Arte.  
pen. & Politi.

Neither did the abuſe of *Aſtrogie* terrifie Abraham (if we may beleieve the moſt ancient and religious Hiſtorians) from obſerving the motions and natures of heavenly bodies: neither can it dehorte wife and learned men in theſe dayes from attributing thoſe virtues, influences, and inclinations to the Starres and other lights of Heaven, which God hath given to thoſe his glorious creatures.

The Sympatheticall and Antipatheticall working of Herbes, Plants, Stones, Minerals, with their other utmoſt virtues ſometimes taught by the Divell, and applied by his Miniſters to harmefull and uncharitable ends, can never terrifie the honeſt and learned Phyſician or Magician from the uſing of them to the helpe and comfort of Mankind: neither can the illuſions, whereby the Divell betrayeth ſuch men as are fallen from God, make other men reject the obſervations of Dreames; ſo far as with a good Faith and a Religious caution they may make uſe of them.

Deut. 18. 20.

Laſtly, the prohibition to marke flying of Fowles (as ſignes of good or evill ſucces) hath no reference at all to the crying of Crows againſt Raine, or to any obſervation not ſuperſtitious, and whereof a reaſon or cauſe may be given. For if we confound Arts with

with the abuſe of them, we ſhall not onely condemne all honeſt Trades and enter-charge among men (for there are that deceive in all profeſſions) but we ſhall in a ſhort time bury in forgetfulneſſe all excellent knowledg and all learning, or obſcure and cover it over with a moſt ſcornfull and beggarly ignorance: and (as *Plinie* teacheth) we ſhould ſhew our ſelves towards thoſe, who with paines and care have diſcovered unto us light in this light.

Indeed not onely theſe natural knowledges are condemned by thoſe that are ignorant; but the Mathematicks alſo and Profeſſors thereof: though thoſe, that are excellently learned, judge of it in this ſort: *In ſpeculo Mathematico verum illud, quod in omni ſcibili queritur, elucet; non modo remota ſimilitudine, ſed ſulgida quadam propinquitate; In the Glaſſe of the Mathematickes that Truth doth ſhine, which is ſought in every kind of knowledge; not in an obſcuring, but in a neere and manifeſt representation.*

## §. VI.

Of the divers kinds of unlawfull Magicke.

IT is true that there are many Arts, if we may ſo call them, which are covered with the name of Magicke: and eſteemed abuſively to be as branches of that Tree, on whoſe root they never grew. The firſt of theſe hath the name of Necromancy or Goueria: and of this againe there are divers kinds. The one is an Invocation at the graves of the dead, to whom the Divell himſelfe gives answer in ſtead of thoſe that ſeeme to appeare. For certaine it is, that the immortal ſoules of men doe not inhabit the duſt and dead bodies, but they give motion and underſtanding to the living: death being nothing elſe but a ſeparation of the body and ſoule: and therefore the ſoule is not to be found in the Graves.

A ſecond practice of thoſe men, who pay Tribute or are in league with Satan, is that of conjuring or of rayſing up Divels, of whom they hope to learne what they liſt. Theſe men are ſo diſtracted, as they believe that by terrible words they make the Divell to tremble; that being once impaled in a Circle (a Circle which cannot keepe out a Mouſe) they therein (as they ſuppoſe) inſconce themſelves againſt that great Monſter. Doubtleſſe, they forget that the Divell is not terrified from doing ill and all that is contrary to God and goodneſſe, no, not by the fearefull word of the Almighty: and that he feared not to offer to ſit in Gods ſeat, that he made no ſcruple to tempt our Saviour Chriſt, whom himſelfe called the Son of God. So, forgetting theſe proud parts of his, an unworthy wretch will yet reſolve himſelfe, that he can draw the Divell out of Hell, and terrifie him with a Phraſe: whereas in very truth, the obedience which the Divels ſeemeto uſe, is but thereby to poſſeſſe themſelves of the bodies & ſoules of thoſe which they raiſe them upas His Majeltie in his Book aforementioned hath excellently taught: *That the Divels obedience is only, ſecundum quid, ſcilicet ex paſſo; reſpectu, that is, upon bargaine.*

I cannot tell what they can doe upon thoſe ſimple and ignorant Divels, which inhabit *Iamblicus* imagination; but ſure I am the reſt are apt enough to come uncalled: and alwaies attending the cogitations of their ſervants and vaffals, doe no way need any ſuch inforcement.

Or it may be that theſe Conjurers dealt altogether with *Cardanus* mortall Divels, following the opinion of *Rabbi Aurnathan* and of *Porphyrius*, who taught that theſe kind of Divels lived not above a thouſand yeares: which *Plutarch* in his Treatiſe of *Oraculum deſectu* confirmeth, making example of the great god Pan. For were it true that the Divels were in awe of wicked men, or could be compelled by them, then would they alwaies fear thoſe words and threats, by which at other times they are willingly mastered. But the Familiar of *Simon Magnus* when he had liſted him up in the Ayre, caſt him headlong out of his clawes, when he was ſure he ſhould periſh with the fall. If this perhaps were done by *S. Peters* Prayers (of which *S. Peter* no where vaunteth) yet the ſame prankce at other times upon his owne accord the Divell played with *Theodorus*: who transported (as *Simon Magnus* was ſuppoſed to have bene) had the ſame mortall fall that he had. The like ſuccesſe had *Eudas*, a principall pillar of the Manichean Herſie, as *Soſocrates* in his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory witneſſeth: and for a manifeſt prooff hereof we ſee it every

Eccl. hijt. Eccl. lib. 5. c. 15.

Lib. 1. c. 23.

2 Theſſ. 2.

Exercit. 1. 2.

every day, that the Divell leaves all Witches and Sorcerers at the Gallows, for whom at other times he maketh himselfa *Pegasus*, to convey them in haste to places far distant, or at least makes them so thinke: For to those it is received not the truth (saith Saint Paul) *God shall send them strong illusions*: Of these their supposed transporations (yet agreeing with their confessions) His Majesty in the second Book and the fourth Chapter of the *Demonologie*, hath confirmed by unanswerable reasons, that they are merely illusive. Another sort there are who take on them to include *Spirits* in Glasses and Crystals; of whom *Cusanus*: *Falsi sunt incantatores, qui in ungue & vitro volunt spiritum includere, quia Spiritus non clauduntur corpore*: They are foolish Incanters, which will shut up their spirits within their nails or in Glasse: for a Spirit cannot be inclosed by a body.

There is also another Art besides the afore-mentioned, which they call *Theurgia*, or *White Magick*; a pretended conference with good Spirits or Angels, whom by Sacrifice and Invocation they draw out of Heaven and communicate withall. But the administering Spirits of God, as they require not any kind of adoration due unto their Creator; so seeing they are most free Spirits, there is no man so absurd to think (except the devil have corrupted his understanding) that they can be constrained or commanded out of Heaven by threats. Wherefore let the professors thereof cover themselves how they please by a professed purity of life, by the ministry of infants, by fasting and abstinence in general; yet all those that tamper with immateriall substances, and abstract natures, either by Sacrifice, Vow, or Enforcement, are men of evil faith, and in the power of *Satan*. For good Spirits or Angels cannot be constrained; and the rest are Devils, which willingly obey.

Other sorts there are of wicked Divinations; as by fire, called *Pyromantia*: by water, called *Hydromantia*: by the ayre, called *Mataotechnia*, and the like.

The last, and (indeed) the worst of all other is *Falcination* or *Witchcraft*: the Practisers whereof are no less envious and cruell, revengefull and bloudy, than the Devil himself. And these accursed creatures having fold their souls to the Devil, work two waies; either by the Devil immediately, or by the Art of poisoning. The difference between *Necromancers* and *Witches*, His Majesty hath excellently taught in a word: that the one (in a sort) command; the other obey the Devil.

There is another kind of pettie witchery (if it be not altogether deceit) which they call charming of Beasts and Birds, of which *Pythagoras* was accused, because an Eagle lighted on his shoulder in the *Olympian* fields. But if the same exceeded the Art of *Falconrie*, yet was it no more to be admired than *Mihomer's* Dove, which he had used to feed with Wheat out of his ear: which Dove, when it was hungry, lighted on *Mahomet's* shoulder, and thrust his Bill therein to find his break-fast: *Mahomet* perfwading the rude and simple *Arabians*, that it was the holy Ghost that gave him advice. And certainly if *Banks* had lived in elder times, he would have shamed all the Incanters of the World: for whosoever was most famous among them, could never master or instruct any beast as he did his Horse.

For the drawing of Serpents out of their Dens, or killing of them in the holes by Incantments (which the *Marians*, a people of *Italie*, practised: *Colobrus distrumpit Marſia cantu*: *incantant Marſia makes the snakes to burst*.) That it hath bene used it appears, *Psalme* 58.6. though I doubt not, but that many Impostures may be in this kinde, and even by natural causes it may be done. For there are many fumes that will either draw them out or destroy them; as womens haire burnt, and the like. So many things may be layed in the entrance of their holes that will allure them: and therein I find no other *Magicks* or Incantments than to draw out a Mouse with a piece of tosted Cheefe.

## §. VII.

Of divers waies by which the Divell seemeth to work his wonders.

But to the end that we may not dote with the *Manichees*, who make two powers of Gods: that we doe not give to the Divell any other dominion than he hath (not to speake of his abilitie, when he is the Minister of Gods vengeance; as when *Egypt*, according to *David*, was destroyed by evil Angels) he otherwise worketh but three waies. The first is by moving the cogitation and affections of men: the

50

second

second by the exquisite knowledge of Nature: and the third by deceit, illusion, and false semblance. And that they cannot work what they would, *G. Parisiensis* giveth three causes: the first, a natural impotency: the second, their own reason disswading them from daring overmuch, or indeed (and that which is the only certain cause) the great mercy of the Creator, *Teneos eos ligatos* (saith the same Author) *velut inmanissimas belluas*. *S. Augustine* was of opinion that the Frogs which *Pharaos* Sorcerers produced, were not natural, but that the Divel (by betraying of their senses that looked on) made them appear to be such. For as *Parus* observeth, those Frogs of the Incanters were not found corrupted as those of *Moses* were, which might argue that they were not creatures indeed. Hereof saith *S. Augustine*: *Nec sane Demones naturales creant, sed que de Deo creata sunt commutant, ut videantur esse quod non sunt*: The Devils create not any natures, but so change those that are created by God, as they seem to be that which they be not: of which in the 83. question he giveth the reason. *Demon quibusdam nebulis implet omnes meatus intelligentie, per quos aperire lumen rationis radius mentis solet*, (that is) The Devil fills with certain clouds all passages of the understanding, by which the beam of the minde is wont to open the light of reason.

Maxima vis est  
universo p. 2.  
c. 70.

And as *Levillian* in his Book *de anima* rightly conceiveth, if the Devil can possess himself of the eyes of our minds and blinde them, it is not hard for him to dazel those of the body. For (out of doubt) by the same way that God passeth out, the Devil enreth in, beginning with the fantasie, by which he doth more easily betray the other faculties of the soule: for the fantasie is most apt to be abused by vain apprehensions.

*Aquinas* on the contrary held that those Frogs were not imaginary, but such indeed as they seemed: not made *Magica artis ludibrio*, which indeed agreeth not with the Art, but (according to *Thomas*) *Per aptam & idoneam agentium & patientium applicationem*: By an apt and fit applying of agents and patients. And this I take to be more probable. For *Moses* could not be deceived by that sleight of false semblance; and Saint *Augustine* in another case like unto this (to wit) of the turning of *Diomedes* his companions into Birds, *per Activa cum passivis*, inclineth rather to this opinion: though I am not perfwaded that Saint *Augustine* believed that of *Diomedes*. And this opinion of *Thomas*, *G. Parisiensis*, a man very learned also, confirmeth. For speaking of natural *Magick* he useth these words: *De huiusmodi autem operibus & subita generatio ranarum, & pedicularum, & vermium, aliorumque animalium quorundam: in quibus omnibus sola natura operatur, verum adhibitis adiutoribus, qua ipsa semina nature confortant & accunt, ita ut opus generationis tantum accelerent, ut eis qui hoc nesciunt non opus nature videatur (que tardius talia efficere consuevit) sed potentia Demonum, &c.* to which he addeth: *Qui autem in his docti sunt, talia non mirantur, sed solum Creatorem in his glorificant*: In such works (saith he) the sodain generation of Frogs and Lice, and Worms, and some other creatures is: in all which Nature alone worketh; but by means strengthening the Seeds of Nature, and quickning them; in such wise that they so hasten the work of generation, that it seemeth to the ignorant not to be the work of Nature, which usually worketh more leisurely, but they think it is done by the powers of Devils. But they who are learned in these Arts, marvel not at such workings, but glorifie the Creator. Now by these two waies the Devils do most frequently work, (to wit) by knowing the uttermost of nature; and by illusion: for there is no incomprehensible or unsearchable power, but of God only.

For shall we say, he causeth sometimes thunders, lightnings, and tempests; and can infect the ayre, as well as move it or compress it; who knows not that these things are also natural? Or may it be objected that he fore-telleth things before they happen, which exceedeth nature, and is no illusion. It is true, that he sometimes doth it; but how? In elder ages he stole his knowledge out of the predictions of the Prophets: and he foretold the death of *Saul*, at such time as he was in his own possession and power to dispose of. And he that hath lived from the infancy of the world to this day, and observed the success of every counsaile: he that by reason of his swift motions can inform himself of all places, and preparations: he that is of counsaile with all those that study and practise subversion & destruction: he that is Prince of the ayre, &c. can thence better judge, than those that inhabit the earth: if he should not sometimes, yea if he should not very oftentimes guess rightly of things to come (where God please) not to give impediment) it were very strange. For we see that wife and learned men do

oftentimes

Ælian. 1. 6.  
nat. histor.

Lucil. in Sæpy

Eph. 2. 2. & 5.  
12.  
Dæbelus mag-  
num est re-  
rum usum: quæ  
res multam ha-  
ber momenti in  
quædam gæta.  
Aug. de Civitate  
c. 25. 27. &c.

oftentimes by comparing like causes, conceive rightly of like effects, before they happen: and yet where the Devil doubteth, and would willingly keep his credit, he ever more answereth by Riddles: as

*Cræsus Halym penetrans magnam sub vertit opum vim:*

If *Cræsus* over Halys go,  
Great Kingdoms he shall overthrow.

Which answer may be taken either way: either for the overthrow of his own Kingdom, or of his Enemies. And thus far we grant the Devil may proceed in predictions, to which (otherwise) belong to God only, as it is in *Esay*: *Shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are Gods; shew us at all times and certainly what is to come. Solus enim divine intelligentie ac sapientie est, occulta nosse & revelare: It is only proper to Gods understanding and wisdom to know and reveal hidden things.*

### §. VIII

*That none was ever raised from the dead by the power of the Devil: and that it was not the true Samuel which appeared to Saul.*

**T**O conclude, it may be objected that the Devil hath raised from the dead: and that others by his power have done the like, as in the example given of *Samuel* raised by the Witch of *Endor*: which were it true, then might it indeed be affirmed, that some of the Devils acts exceeded all the powers of nature, false semblance, and other illusions. *Justine Martyr* was sometime of the opinion, that it was *Samuel* indeed; and so was *Ambrose, Lyra, and Burgenfis*; from which authorities those men borrow strength which he believe. But *Martyr* changed his opinion; and so did *S. Augustine*, who at first seemed to be indifferent: For in his questions upon the Old and New Testament, he accounteth it detestable to think that it was *Samuel* which appeared: and these be his words elsewhere to the same effect: *In requie sunt anime priorum a corpore separate, impiorum autem penas lunt, donec istarum ad vitam eternam, illarum vero ad eternam mortem que secunda dicitur, corpora reviviscant; The souls of the godly separated from their bodies are at rest, but those of the wicked suffer punishment, till the bodies of the just rise to eternal life, and of the wicked to an eternall and second death.*

And (besides *S. Augustine*) *Justine Martyr, Helarius, Terullian, Athanasius, Chrysostome*, and others, believed firmly, and taught it: that the souls of men being once separate from their bodies, did not wander on the earth at all: *Credere debemus* (saith *Cyrril*) *quum a corporibus antiorum anime abierint, tanquam in manus clarissimi patris Bonitati divine commendari; We must believe when the souls of holy men are departed from their bodies, that they be commended to the divine Goodnesse, as into the hands of a most dear Father. If then they be in Heaven, the power of the Devil cannot stretch so high: if in Hell, ab inferno nulla est redemptio; From Hell there is no redemption. For there are but two habitations after death: Unum (saith *Augustine*) in igne eterno a alterum in regno eterno; The one in eternall fire; the other in Gods eternall Kingdom. And though it be written in *Jure Pontificio*, that many there are who believe that the dead have again appeared to the living; yet the *Glosse* upon the same Text finds it ridiculous: *Credunt, & male, quia sunt Phantasmata* (saith the *Glosse*) *They believe, and they believe amisse, because they be but Phantasmes or Apparitions. For whereas any such voyce hath been heard, saying, I am the Soule of such a one: Hac oratio a fraude atq; deceptione diabolica est; That speech is framed by the fraud and deception of the Devil, saith Chrysostome. Likewise of the same, saith Terullian: Absit ut animam cuiuslibet sancti, nedum Prophete, a demonio credamus extraham; God forbid that we should think that the soul of any holy man, much lesse of a Prophet, should be drawn up again by a Devil.**

It is true that the Scriptures call that apparition, *Samuel*; so do they the wooden images, *Cherubims*: and false brazen gods are gods, and the like. And whereas these of the contrary opinion build upon that place of the 26 of *Ecclesiasticus* (a book not numbered among the *Canonicall Scriptures*, as *S. Augustine* himself in this Treatise, if it be his, *De cura pro mortuis agenda*, confesseth) yet *Syracides*, following the littell sense and phrase of the Scriptures, proveth nothing at all: For though the Devil would willingly per-

twade

swade, that the souls (yea even of just men) were in his power; yet so far is it from the promises of the Scriptures, and from Gods just and mercifull nature, and so contrary to all divine reason, as *S. Augustine* (or whosoever wrote that book before cited) might rightly term it a detestable opinion so to think. For if God had so absolutely forsaken *Saul*, that he refused to answer him either by *Dreams*, by *Urim*, or by his *Prophets*: it were forthwith to conceive, that he would permit the Divell, or a wicked Witch, to raise a Prophet from the dead in *Sauls* respect: it being also contrary to his own divine Law to ask counsell of the dead; as in *Deuteron. 18.* and elsewhere. Therefore it was the Devil, and not the soul of a dead body, that gave answer and advice.

10 But because *Helias* and *Helizur* had raised some from the dead by the power of God; those Devils which *S. Augustine* calleth *Ludificatores animantium sibi subjectorum; Mockers of their own vassals*; casting before their eyes a semblance of humane bodies, and framing sounds to their ears like the voices of men, do also persuade their gracelesse and accursed attendants, that themselves both possesse, and have power over the souls of men. *Eldid* *Diabolus aciem tuam spectantium, tum etiam cogitantium*, saith *L. Vives*; *The Devil beguileth the (sense both of the beholders, and of those that so imagine. These then are the bounds of the Devils power, whom if we will not fear, we must fear to sin. For when he is not the instrument of Gods vengeance, he can touch no man that makes not himselfe his voluntary vassall: Potest ad malum invitare, non potest trahere*, saith *S. Augustine*; 20 *He can allure, but he cannot enforce to evil. Such as think otherwise, may go into the number remembered by Lucretius:*

*Nam veluti pueri trepidant, atque omnia cecis  
In tenebris metunt: sic nos in luce timeamus.*

We fear by light, as children in the dark.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the memorable buildings of Ninus, and of his wife Semiramis, and of other her Acts.*

### §. I.

*Of the magnificent building of Nineve by Ninus: and of Babylon by Semiramis.*

**B**Ut to come back to *Ninus* the amplifier and finisher of *Nineve*: whether hee performed it before or after the overthrow of *Zoroaster*, it is uncertain. As for the City it selfe, it is agreed by all prophane Writers, and confirmed by the Scriptures, that it exceeded all other in circuit, and answerable magnificence. For it had in compass 440 *stadia*, or furlongs; the walls whereof were an hundred foot upright, and had such a breadth as three Chariots might passe on the Rampire in front: these walls were garnished with 1500. Towers, which gave exceeding beauty to the rest, and strength, no lesse admirable for the nature of those times.

But this City (built in the Plaines of *Assyria*, and on the banks of *Tygris*, and in the region of *Eden*) was founded long before *Ninus* time; and (as ancient Historians report, and more lately *Nauclerus*) had the name of *Campfor*, at such time as *Ninus* amplified the

50 same, and gave it a wall, and called it after his own name. For these works of *Babylon* and *Nineve* begun by *Nimrod* in *Chaldea*, and in *Assyria*, *Ninus* and *Semiramis* made perfect. *Ninus* finished *Nineve*, *Semiramis* *Babylon*: where- in the sought to exceed her husband by far. Indeed in the first Age when Princes were moderate, they neither thought how to invade others, nor feared to be invaded: labouring to build Towns and Villages for the use of themselves and their people, without either Walls or Towers; and how they might discharge the earth of Woods, Briars, Bulmments, and Waters, to make it more habitable and fertile. But *Semiramis* living in that Age, when Ambition was strong in youth: and purposing to

Q

follow



follow the conquest which her husband had undertaken, gave that beauty and strength to Babylon which it had.

## § II.

Of the end of Ninus: and beginning of Semiramis reign.

THIS she did after the death of her husband *Ninus*: who after he had mastered *Babylonia*, and subjected unto his Empire all those Regions between it and the *Mediterranean Sea*, and *Helleſpont* (Asia the lesse excepted) and finished the work of *Nineus*, he left the World in the year thereof 2019. after he had reigned 52 years. *Plutarch* reporteth that *Semiramis* desired her husband *Ninus*, that he would grant unto her the absolute sovereign power for one day. *Diod. Siculus* out of *Athenaeus*, and others, speaks of five dayes. In which time (moved either with desire of rule, or licentious liberty, or with the memory of her husband *Memor*, who perished for her) she caused *Ninus* her husband to be slain. But this seemeth rather a scandall cast on her by the *Greeks*, than that it had any truth.

*Asian. lib. 7. c. 2.*  
*Dion.*

Howsoever *Ninus* came to his end, *Semiramis* took on her after his death the sole rule of the *Assyrian* Empire: of which, *Ninus* was said to be the first Monarch, because he changed his seat from *Babylonia* in *Chaldea*, to *Ninive* in *Assyria*. *Justin* reports, that *Semiramis* (the better to invest her selfe, and in her beginning without murmure or offence to take on her so great a charge) presented her selfe to the people in the person of her son *Ninias* or *Zameis*, who bare her externall form and proportion without any sensible difference.

This report I take also to be feigned, for which many arguments might be made. But as she ruled long, so she performed all those memorable acts which are written of her by the name of *Semiramis*, and subscribed that letter which she sent to the King of *India* (her last challenge and undertaken conquest) by her owne name. And were it true that her son *Ninias* had such a stature at his fathers death, as that *Semiramis* (who was very personable) could be taken for him; yet it is very unlikely that shee could have held the Empire from him 42 years after by any such subtilty: (for so long shee reigned after the death of her husband;) but it may be true that *Ninias* or *Zameis* (being wholly given to his pleasures, as it is written of him) was well pleased with his mothers prosperous government and undertakings.

## § III.

Of *Semiramis* parentage and education, and *Metamorphosis* of her mother.

SOME Writers (of which *Plutarch* is one) make this famous woman to have been of base parentage, calling her after the name of her Country, a *Syrian*. *Berosus* calls her after the name of her City wherein she was born, *Semiramis Ascalonitis*, of *Ascalon*, the ancient City and Metropolis of the *Philistims*. Others report her to be the daughter of *Derceus*, a *Cartinian* of *Ascalon*, exceeding beautifull. Others say that this *Derceus* or *Derceis*, the mother of *Semiramis*, was sometimes a Recluse, and had profest a holy and a religious life; to whom there was a Temple dedicated, seated on the bank of a Lake adjoining to *Ascalon*; and afterward falling in love with a godly young man, she was by him made with childe, which (for fear of extreme punishment) shee conveyed away, and caused the same to be hidden among the high reeds which grew on the banks of the Lake: in which (while the childe was left to the mercy of wilde beasts) the same was fed by certain birds, which used to feed upon or neer those waters. But I take this tale to be like that of *Lupa* the Harlot that fostered *Romulus*. For some one or other adjoining to this Lake, had the charge and fosteridge of this childe, who being per chance but some base and obscure creature, the mother might thereby hope the better to cover her dishonour and breach of vow; notwithstanding which the was cast from the top of her Temple into the Lake adjoining, &c. (as the Poets have feigned) changed by *Venus* into a Fish, all but her face, which still held the same beauty and humane shape. It is thought that from this *Derceis* the invention of that Idoll of the *Philistims* (called *Dagon*) was taken: for it is true, that *Dagon* had a mans face, and a fishes body: into whose Temple when the *Arke* of God was brought, the Idoll fell

fell twice to the ground: and at the second fall there remained onely the trunk of *Dagon*, the head being broken off: For so *S. Hierome* hath converted that place. *Vatablus*, *Paginus*, and *Junius*, write it by *Dagon* onely, which signifieth a fish, and so it onely appeared: the head thereof by the second fall being sundred from the body.

For my self I rather think, that this *Dagon* of the *Philistims* was an Idoll representing *Triton*, one of those imaginary Sea-gods under *Neptune*. For this City being maritime (as all those of the *Philistims* were, and so were the best of *Phœnicia*) used all their devotions to *Neptune*, and the rest of the petty gods which attended him.

## § IV.

Of her Expedition into *India*, and death after discomfiture: with a note of the improbability of her vices.

UNTIL her Pedigree, I leave it to the *Assyrian Herald*: and for her vicious life, I ascribe the report thereof to the envious and lying *Crecians*. For delicacy and ease doe more often accompany licentiousness in men and women, than labour and hazard doe. And if the one halfe be true which is reported of this Lady, then there never lived any Prince or Princesse more worthy of fame than *Semiramis* was, both for the works she did at *Babylon* and elsewhere, and for the wars she made with glorious success: all but her last enterprize of *India*, from whence both *Strabo* and *Arianus* report that she never returned: and that of all her most powerfull Army there survived but onely twenty persons: the rest being either drowned in the river of *Indus*, dead of the famine, or slain by the sword of *Stamrobates*. But as the multitude which went out are more than reason hath numbered; so were those that returned lesse than could have escaped of such an Army, as consisted of four millions and upwards. For these numbers which she levied by her Lieutenant *Derceus*, (saith *Suidas*) did consist of Foot-men three millions; of Horse-men one million; of Chariots armed with hooks on each side one hundred thousand; of those which fought upon Camels as many; of Camels for burden two hundred thousand; of raw Hides for all uses three hundred thousand; of Gallies with brazen heads three thousand, by which the might transport over *Indus* at once three hundred thousand souldiers: which Gallies were furnished with *Syrians*, *Phœnicians*, *Cilicians*, and men of *Cyprus*. These incredible and impossible numbers, which no one place of the earth was able to nourish (had every man and beast but fed upon grass) are taken from the authority of *Ctesias* whom *Diodorus* followeth. But as the one may be taxed with many frivolous reports: so *Diodorus* himselfe hath nothing of certainty, but from *Xerxes* expedition into *Greece* and afterwards: whose Army (though the same was far inferiour to that of *Semiramis*) yet it had weight enough to overload the belief of any reasonable man. For all Authors consent, that *Xerxes* transported into *Greece* an Army of 1700000. and gathered together (therein to passe the *Helleſpont*) three thousand Gallies, as *Herodotus* out of the severall Provinces whence those Gallies were taken hath collected the number.

But of what multitude soever the Army of *Semiramis* consisted, the same being broken and overthrowen by *Stamrobates* upon the banks of *Indus*, canticum cantavit extremum; she sang her last song; and (as Antiquity hath feigned) was changed by the gods into a Dove (the bird of *Venus*) whence it came that the *Babylonians* gave a Dove in their ensignes.

## § V.

Of the Temple of *Belus* built by *Semiramis*: and of the *Pyramides* of *Egypt*.

AMONG all her other memorable and more than magnificent works (besides the wall of the City of *Babylon*) was the Temple of *Bel*, erected in the middle of this City, invironed with a wall carried four square of great height and beauty, having on each square certain brazen Gates curiously engraven. In the Core of the square the raised a Tower of a furlong high, which is halfe a quarter of a mile; and upon it again (taking a Base of a lesse circuit) she set a second Tower; and so eight in all one above another, upon the top whereof the *Chaldean* Priests made the observation of the Stars; because this Tower over-topped the ordinary clouds.



Prod. in Titus  
lib. 1.

Bell. lib. 2.

By beholding the ruines of this Tower have many Travellers been deceived; who suppose that they have seen a part of Nimrod's Tower, when it was but the foundation of this Temple of Bel: (except this of Bel were founded on that of Nimrod.) There were burnt in this Temple one hundred thousand talents of frankincense every year (saith Herodotus.) This Temple did Nabuchodonosor adorn with the spoils of Hierusalem, and of the Temple of Solomon: all which vessels and ornaments Cyrus re-delivered. This Temple Xerxes evened with the soile; which Alexander is said to have repaired, by the persuasions of the Chaldeans. I deny not that it might have been in his desire to do so; but he enjoyed but a few years after Babylon taken, and therefore could not perform any such work. The Egyptians (saith Frochus) inhabiting a low and level ground, and given to the same superstition of the Stars that the Chaldeans were, erected in imitation, and for the same service and use, the Pyramides by Memphis, which were *conficue undique navigantibus*, saith Plinie. Of these Pyramides, Bellonius a carefull observer of rarities (who being in Egypt, mounted by steps to the top of the highest) maketh this report: *Le meilleur archer qui seroit a sa sommite, & tirant une fleche en l'air, & peine pourroit l'envoyer hors de sa base q' elle ne se tombast sur les degrez;* The best Archer standing on the top of one of these Pyramides, and shooting an arrow from thence into the ayre as far as he can, with great difficulty shall be able so to force the same, but that it will fall upon some of the degrees or steps.

Finis Libri primi.



# THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORIE OF THE WORLD:

## INTREATING OF THE TIMES from the birth of ABRAHAM to the destruction of the Temple of SOLOMON.

THE SECOND BOOK.

### CHAP. I.

of the time of the birth of Abraham: and of the use of this question, for the ordering of the Storie of the Assyrian Empire.

#### §. I.

of some of the successors of Semiramis: with a briefe transition to the question, about the time of the birth of Abraham.



After the death of Semiramis, Ninias or Zameis succeeded her in the Empire, on whom Berosus Annianus bestowes the conquest of Bactria, and the overthrow of Zoroaster; contrary to Diodorus, Justin, Orosius, and all other approved Writers. For Ninias being esteemed no man of war at all, but altogether feminine, and subjected to ease and delicacy, there is no probability in that opinion. Now because there was nothing performed by this Ninias of any moment, other than that out of jealousy he every year changed his Provinciaall Governours, and built Colledges for the Chaldean Priests, his Astronomers: nor by Arins his successour, whom Suidas calleth *Tkuris*; but that he reduced again the Bactrians and Caspians, revolted (as it seemeth) in Ninias his time: nor of Aralins, the successour of Arins; but that he added sumptuousity, invented jewels of gold and stone, and some engines for the war: I will for this present passe them over, and a while follow Abraham, whose wayes are warrantable, (till we meet these Assyrians again in this story) by whom and by whose issues we shall best give date to the Kings of Babylon: Abraham living at once with Ninus, Ninias, Semiramis, Arins, Aralins, and Xerxes, or Balaninus. For otherwise if we seek to prove things certain by the uncertain, and judge of those times, which the Scriptures set us downe without errour, by the reignes of the Assyrian Princes: we shall but patch up the story at adventure, and leave it in the same confusion, in which to this day it hath remained. For where the Scriptures doe not help us, *Miram non est in rebus antiquis Historiam non constare; No marcell if then in things Plus in Thesis.* every ancient, History want assurance.

The better therefore to find out, in what age of the World, and how long these Assyrian kings reigned, as also for other good causes, we must first assure the time of Abrahams birth, and in what yeer the same hapned after the flood. Now since all agree, that the

fortieth three year of *Ninus* was the birth-year of *Abraham*; by proving directly out of the Scriptures, in what year after the flood the birth of *Abraham* hapned, we shall thereby set all the rest in square and order. But of this time there is much jangling between those *Chronologers*, which follow the Hebrew account, and others: the most part making 292. or 293. years; others 352. years between *Abraham's* birth and the flood: a matter often disputed, but never concluded.

*Archilochus de temporibus* (as we find him in *Anncus*) makes but 250. years from the flood to *Ninus*: then seeing that *Abraham* was born in the fortieth three year of *Ninus*, according to *Eusebius* and *S. Augustine*, it followeth by the addition of those two numbers that the year of *Abraham's* birth was in the year after the flood 293. or, as the most part of all *Chronologers* gather, the year 292.

Now, since I do here enter into that never resolved question, and *Labyrinth* of times, it behoveth me to give reason for my own opinion: and with so much the greater care and circumspection, because I walk aside, and in a way a part from the multitude; yet not alone, and without companions, though the fewer in number: with whom I rather choose to endure the wounds of those darts, which *Envie* casteth at Novelty, than to go on safely and sleepily in the easy wayes of ancient mistakings: seeing to be learned in many errors, or to be ignorant in all things, hath little diversity.

## §. II.

A propos of all reasons or arguments, that are brought to prove *Abraham* was born in the year 292. after the Flood, and not in the year 352.

Those which seek to prove this account of 292. years, between the generall flood and *Abraham's* birth, ground themselves, first on these words of the Scripture: *So Terah lived 70. years, and begot Abraham, Nahor, and Haran*: secondly, upon the opinion of *Josephus*, *S. Augustine*, *Beda*, *Isidore*, and many of the ancient Hebrews before them: authorities (while they are slightly look't over) seeming of great weight.

From the place of Scripture last remembered, the later *Chronologers* gather these arguments. First out of the words as they lie; That *Terah* at 70. years begot *Abraham*, *Nahor*, and *Haran*: and that *Abraham* being the first named, *Abraham* being the worthiest, *Abraham* being the son of the promise, ought in this respect to be accounted the eldest son of *Terah*, and so necessarily born in the seventieth year of his life. Secondly, it was of *Abraham* that *Moses* had respect, in whom the Church of God was continued, who was heir of the blessing; and not of *Nahor* and *Haran*: for the scope of this Chapter was to set down the genealogie of *Christ*, from *Adam* to *Abraham*, without all regard of *Nahor* and *Haran*.

It is thirdly objected, that if *Abraham* were not the eldest son, then there can be no certainty of his age, and so are all future times made doubtfull. For it cannot then be proved, that *Abraham* was born more assuredly in the 130. year of *Terah's* age, than in the 131. 132. &c. *Moses* having no where set down precisely that *Abraham* went into *Canaan* that very year, in which his father died.

Fourthly, it is thought improbable, that *Terah* begot *Abraham* at 130. years: seeing *Abraham* himselfe thought it a wonder to be made a father at 100. years.

## §. III.

The answer to one of the objections proposed, shewing that *Abraham* made but one journey out of *Mesopotamia* into *Canaan*: and it, after his fathers death.

To answer all which objections, it is very easie, the way being prepared thereto by so divers learned Divines long since, and to which I will adde somewhat of mine owne, according to the small talent which God hath given me. Now forasmuch as the state of the question cannot well be scanned, unless the time of *Abraham's* journey into *Canaan* be first considered of; before I descend unto the particular examination of these arguments, I will make bold with order and method so far, as to search into a strange tradition concerning his travells, that serveth as a ground for this opinion, and a bulwark against all that can be said to the contrary.

But it is conceived that *Abraham* made two journeys into *Canaan*: the later after his fathers

Fathers death, the former presently upon his calling; which he performed without delay, not staying for his fathers death at *Haran*: a conjecture, drawne from a place in the Epistle to the Hebrews, where it is written, *By faith Abraham (when he was called) obeyed God to goe out into a place which he should afterward receive for inheritance: and he went out, not knowing whither he went.* This supposition (if it be granted) serves very well to uphold the opinion, that can ill stand without it. Let us therefore see whether we may give credit to the supposition it selfe.

Surely, that *Abraham* first departed *Charran* or *Haran* after the death of *Terah* his Father, the same is proved, without the admission of any distinction, by these words of *St. Stephen*: *And after his Father was dead, God brought him into this Land, where ye now dwell.* That was, out of *Haran* into *Canaan*. Against which place so direct and plaine, what force hath any mans fancy or supposition, perswading, that *Abraham* made two journeys into *Canaan* one before *Terah's* death, and another after: no such thing being found in Scriptures, nor any circumstance, probability, or reason to induce it? For if any man out of this place before alledged can picke any argument, proving, or affording any strong presumption, that *Abraham* past into *Canaan*, and then returned unto *Haran*, from whence he departed a second time: then I thinke it reason, that he be beleaved in the rest. But that he performed the commendement of God after his Fathers death, leaving *Ur* and *Haran* for *Canaan*, it is as true as the Scriptures themselves are true. For after 30 his Father was dead, (saith *Martyr Stephen*) *God brought him into this Land.* And as *Bezza* noteth, if *Abraham* made a double journey into *Canaan*, then must it be inferred, that *Moses* omitted the one, and *Stephen* afterwards remembered the other: and whence had *Stephen*, saith *Bezza*, the knowledge of *Abraham's* coming into *Canaan*, but out of *Moses*? For if *Stephen* had spoken any thing of those times, differing from *Moses*, he had offended the Jewes, his adversaries, too great an occasion both of scandalizing himselfe, and the Gospell of *Christ*. Indeed we shall finde small reason to make us thinke that *Abraham* passed and repassed those wayes, more often than he was enforced so to do, if we consider, that he had no other guide or comforter in this long and wearisome journey, than the strength of his faith in Gods promise: in which if any thing would have brought him to despaire, he had more cause than ever man had to fall into it. For he came into a Region of strong and stubborn nations: a nation of valiant and resolved Idolaters. He was besieged with famine at his first arrival, and driven to sleight into *Egypt* for relief. His wife was old, and he had no son to inherit the promise. And when God had given him *Isaac*, he commanded him to offer him up to himself for sacrifice: all which discomforts he patiently and constantly underwent.

Secondly, let us consider the wayes themselves, which *Abraham* had to passe over; the length whereof was 300 English miles; and through Countries of which he had no manner of experience. He was to transport himself over the great river of *Emphrates*, to travell through the dangerous and barren Desarts of *Palmyrena*, and to climb over the great and high mountains of *Libanus*, *Hermon*, or *Gilead*: and whether these were easie walkes for *Abraham* to march twice over, containing, as aforesaid, 300. miles in length, let every reasonable man judge. For if he travailled it twice; then was his journey in all 1800. miles from *Ur* to *Haran*: and from *Haran* twice into *Canaan*. But were there no other argument to disprove this fancy; the manner of *Abraham's* departing from *Haran* hath more proofe (that he had not *animum revertendi*, not any thought of looking backward) than any mans bare conjecture, be he of what antiquity or authority soever. For thus it is written of him, *Then Abraham took Sara his wife, and Lot his brothers son, and all their substance that they possessed, and the souls that they had gotten in Haran: and they departed to go to the land of Canaan, and to the land of Canaan they came.* Now if *Abraham* brought all with him that was dear unto him; his wife, and kinsmen, and his, and their goods: it is not probable that he meant to walk it back again for his pleasure, in so warm, dangerous, and barren a Country as that was: or if he could have been there-to moved, it is more likely that he would have then returned, when he was yet unsettled, and prest with extreme famine at his first arrivall. For had his Father been then alive, he might have hoped from him to receive more assured comfort and relief, than among the *Egyptians*, to whom he was a meer stranger both in Religion and Nation.

What the cause might be of *Abraham's* return to *Haran*, as I will not enquire of them, that without warrant from the Scriptures have sent him back thither, about the

Gen. 24.

Gen. 24. 35.  
36. &c.

Gen. 24. 6. &amp; 8.

Gen. 28.

2 Kin. 20.

Psal. 137.  
1 Kin. 14. 25.  
2 Kin. 23.  
v. 29.

Deut. 17. v. 15.

the time of his fathers death : so they perhaps, if they were urged, could say little else, than that without such a second voyage their opinion were not maintainable. One thing in good reason they should do well to make plain, if it be not over-troublesome. They say that *Abraham* was in *Haran* at his Father's death, or some time after, being then by their account 135 years old, or a little more. How then did it happen, that he left quite undone the business, which, as we read, was within four or five years after that time his greatest, or (as may seem) his only care? Did not he binde with a very solemn oath his principal servant, in whom he reposed most confidence, to travail into those parts, and seek out a Wife for *Isaac* his son? and doth it not appear by all circumstances, that neither he nor his servant were so well acquainted in *Mesopotamia*, 10 as *Abraham* had been there in person so lately, as within four or five years before, he would not have forgotten a matter of such importance; but would have trusted his own judgement, in choosing a woman, fit for her piety, virtue, and other desirable qualities, to be linked in marriage with his only son, who was then five and thirty years old; before which age most of the Patriarchs after the Flood had begotten children: rather than have left all at random to the consideration of a servant, that neither knew any, nor was known of any in that Country. But let it be supposed (if it may be believed) that either *Abraham* forgot his business when he was there, or that somewhat happened which no man can devise; What might be the reason, that *Abraham* man, 20 doing his Masters errand, was fain to lay open the whole story of his masters prosperity, telling it as news, that *Sarah* had borne to him a son in her old age? If *Abraham* himself, a more certain Author, had so lately been among them, would not all this have bin an idle tale? It were needles to stand long upon a thing so evident. Whether it were lawful for *Abraham* to have returned back to *Haran*, would perhaps be a question hardly answerable: considering how averse he was from permitting his son to be carried thither, even though a wife of his own kinned could not have been obtained without his personal presence, *Jacob* indeed was sent thither by his Parents, to take a Wife of his own lineage; not without Gods especial approbation, by whose blessing he prospered in that journey; yet he lived there as a servant; suffered many injuries; and 30 finally was driven to convey himself away from thence by flight. For although it be not a sentence written, yet out of all written examples it may be observed, that God alloweth not in his servants any desire of returning to the place, from whence he hath taken, and transplanted them. That brief saying, *Remember Lots wife*, contains much matter. Let us consider *Mesopotamia*, from whence *Abraham* was taken, and *Egypt*, out of which the whole Nation of the *Israelites* were delivered: we shall find, that no blessing issued from either of them, to the posterity of the *Hebrews*. When *Ezechias* was visited with an honourable Embassie from *Babel*, it seems that he conceived great pleasure in his minde, and thought it a piece of his prosperity; but the prophesie which thereupon he heard by *Esay*, made him to know, that the counsell of God was not 40 agreeable to such thoughts: which more plainly appeared in a following generation, when by the waters of *Babylon* they late down and wept. Concerning *Egypt* we read, that *Sesac* and *Neco*, Kings of *Egypt*, brought calamity upon *Israel*: also that their confidence in the *Egyptian* succours was the cause of their destruction. Where they were forbidden to return into *Egypt* I do not remember, nor can readily finde; but it is found in *Deuteronomy*, that God had said, *They should no more return that way*; which is given as the reason, why their King might not cause the people to return to *Egypt*, for the multiplying of his Horses. Whether the Lord had laid any such injunction upon *Abraham* of not returning to *Mesopotamia*, I cannot say; many things do argue it probably: That he never returned, all circumstances do (to my understanding) both strongly and necessarily conclude.

But because this double passage of *Abraham* is but an imagination; and that imaginations of men are rather valuable among children, than that they can persuade those of judgement or understanding: I take it sufficient, that *S. Stephen* hath directly taught us, that *Abraham* left *Haran*, his father being dead. And for the rest, when they shew any one Scripture to prove it, I will believe as they do. For all the travails of *Abraham* are precisely set down in the Scriptures: as first from *Ur* or *Camerina* in *Chaldea* to *Haran* or *Charan*: and then from *Haran* (after his Fathers death) to *Sichem*; from *Sichem* he

he removed to a mountain between *Bethel* and *Haie*: thence into *Egypt*; from *Egypt* he returned thither againe, where *Lot* and he parted, because their flocks and herds of *Cattell* were more than could be fed in that part: from thence the second time he removed to *Mamre*, neere *Hebron*: and thence having pursued *Amraphel*, and rescued *Lot*, he after inhabited at *Gerar*, in the border of *Idumaea* under *Abimelec*; and after neer unto it at *Berfabe*, at which time he was ready to offer up his son *Isaac* on the mountain *Moriab*. But this fiction of his retreat to *Haran* or *Charan*, appeareth not in any one story, either divine or humane. Now, if it may be supposed, that *Abraham* had made any former journey into *Canaan*, as *Levita* his *Cabala* hath fained, it should in reason be there- 10 withall beleaved, that he would in those his first travailes have provided himselfe of some certain seate, or place of abiding; and not have come a second time with his wife, kinmen, family, goods and *Cattell*, not knowing whereon to rest himself. But *Abraham* when he came from *Charan*, past through the North part of *Canaan*, thence to *Sichem*, 11 and the Plaine of *Moriab*: where finding no place to inhabit, he departed thence to *Bethel*, and *Haie*; and so from Nation to Nation, to discover and find out some fit habitation: from whence againe, as it is written in *Genesis* the eleventh, *He went forth, going and journeying towards the South*: and always unsettled. By occasion of which wandering to and fro, some say, the *Egyptians* gave him and his the name of *Hebrai*. Gen. 12. 6.

Further, to prove that he had not formerly beene in the Country, we may note, 12 that ere he came unto *Bethel* and *Haie*, and at his first entrance into *Canaan*, God appeared unto him, saying, *Unto thy seed will I give this Land*, shewing it him as unto a stranger therein, and as a Land to him unknowne. For *Abraham* without any other provident care for himselfe, beleaved in the Word of the living God: neither sending before, nor comming first to discover it; but being arrived, he received a second promise from God, that he would give those Countries unto him and his seed to inhabit and inherite.

Lastly, what should move any man to thinke, that *Moses* would have omitted any such double journey of *Abraham*, seeing he setteth downe all his passages else-where long and short? as when he moved from *Sichem*, and feared between *Haie* and *Bethel*, 30 the distance being but 20. miles: and when he moved thence to the valley of *Mamre*, being but 24. miles: and when he left *Mamre* and fate downe at *Gerar*, being lesse than six miles; No, *Moses* past over all the times of the first age with the greater brevity, to hasten him to the story of *Abraham*: shutting up all between the Creation and the flood in six chapters; which age lasted 1656. yeeres: but he bestoweth on the story of *Abraham*, fourteene chapters, beginning with his birth in the eleventh, and ending with his death in the five and twentieth; and this time endured but 175. years. It hath therefore no face of truth, that *Moses* forgot or neglected any thing concerning *Abraham*'s travels, or other actions: or that he would set down those small removes of five miles, and omit those of three hundred. For such a journey in going and coming would have ministred 40 some variety of matter, or accident, worthy the inserting and adding to *Abraham*'s story.

## §. I V.

The answer to another of the objections proposed, shewing that it was not unlikely, that *Terah* should beget *Abraham* in his hundred and thirtieth yeere.

NOW touching the objection, where it is said, that it was very unlikely that *Terah* should beget *Abraham* in his 130. yeere, seeing *Abraham* himselfe thought it a wonder to have a son at an hundred: this is hardly worth the answering. This wonder 50 is indeed mis-cast, and mistaken: *Abraham* having respect onely to *Sarah* his wife, when he spake of their many yeares. For when the Angel said unto *Abraham* in his Tent doore at *Mamre*: *Loe Sarah thy wife shall have a Son*, it followeth in the next verse, *Now Abraham and Sarah were old and stricken in age, and it ceased to be with Sarah after the manner of women: therefore Sarah laughed, &c.*

So then in that it is said, *it ceased to be with Sarah after the manner of women*, it appeareth that the wonder was wrought on her, and not on *Abraham*. For *Abraham* by his second wife *Kezrah* had many sons after *Sarah*'s death, as *Zimron*, *Jockshan*, *Medan*, *Midian*, *Ishbak*, and *Shuah*: and the eldest of these was borne 37. years after *Isaac*: and the young-est

Origen. born. 11.  
in Cln. Aug. de  
Civiti. dei. l. 16.  
c. 34. Cajet. &  
Peter. in Gen.

youngest forty years after. What strangeness then, that *Terah*, being 130 years old, should beget *Abraham*, will they say, may be gathered from this supposed despair of *Abraham* at one hundred years? For *Sarah* died in the year of the world 2145. and *Terah* was born in the year 2109. and *Abraham* did not marry *Keturah* till *Sarah* was buried. So if we deduct the number of 2109. out of this supposed wonder, and when *Abraham* was 137. years old: it is not strange that his father *Terah* should beget *Abraham* at 130. And if *Booz*, *Obed*, and *Jesse*, who lived to many years and ages after *Abraham*, began sons at 100. years, or near it, it cannot be marvelled at, that *Terah* began *Abraham* at 130. and *Abraham* others at the same age and seven years after.

## §. V.

The answer to two more of the objections: shewing that we may have certainty of *Abrahams* age from the Scripture, though we make not *Abraham* the eldest son: and that there was great cause, why in the story of *Abraham* his two brethren should be respected.

It followeth now to speak something to the objection, which brings *Abrahams* age altogether in doubt, except we allow him to be the eldest son of *Terah*, and born when *Terah* was 70. years old. For *Abrahams* age being made uncertain, all succeeding times are thereby without any perfect rule or knowledge.

But this proposition, That we cannot be certain of *Abrahams* age, unless we make him the eldest son, is false. For it is plain in the Scriptures, that when *Terah* was 205. which was the year of his death: then was *Abraham* 75. And if you ask, how I can judge of times, either preceding or succeeding, by knowing that *Abraham* departed *Haran* at that age: I answer, That *Saint Stephen* hath told us, that *Abrahams* departure followed the death of his Father *Terah*: and *Terah* died at 205. so as the 75. year of *Abraham* was the 205. year of *Terah*: which known, there can be no error in the account of times succeeding. Now to come to the objection, where it is said, That *Moses* had no respect unto *Nachor* and *Haran*, because they were out of the Church, but to *Abraham* only, with whom God established the Covenant, and of whom *Christ* descended according to the flesh, &c. I answer, that *Moses* for many great and necessary causes had respect of *Nachor* and *Haran*. For the succession of Gods Church is not witnessed by *Abraham* alone, but by the issues of *Nachor* and *Haran*, were they Idolaters or otherwise. For *Nachor* was the Father of *Bethuel*, and *Bethuel* of *Rebecca*, the mother of *Isaac*: and *Haran* was the Parent of *Lot*, *Sarah*, and *Milcab*: and *Sarah* was mother to *Isaac*, and grandmother to *Jacob*: *Milcab* also the wife of *Nachor*, and mother of *Bethuel*, was *Jacobs* great grandmother: and the age of *Sarah* the daughter of *Haran* is especially noted, in that it pleased God to give her a son at 90. years, and when by nature she could not have conceived. And therefore, though it were not in regard of themselves, yet because both *Nachor* and *Abraham* married the daughters of their brother *Haran*; and because *Isaac* married *Rebecca* the grand-child of *Nachor*; and *Jacob*, *Lea*, and *Rachel*, the daughters of *Laban*, the grand-child also of *Nachor*: it was not superfluous in *Moses* to give light of these mens times and ages. And though sometime they worshipped strange gods, as it is *Jos. 24. 2*. yet I see no cause to think, that they still continued Idolaters. For they believed and obeyed the calling of *Abraham*, leaving their natural Country, and City of *Ur in Chaldaea*, as *Abraham* did, and removed thence all, except *Haran*, who died before his father *Terah*, ere they left *Chaldaea*; but *Lot*, his son, followed *Abraham* into *Canaan*; and *Sarah*, the sister of *Lot*, *Abraham* married. *Nachor* also, who remained at *Charran*, gave his sons daughters to *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, his own kinsmen: he himself having also married in his own Family; not thinking it pleasing unto God to mix themselves with strangers and Idolaters. And that these men at length believed in the God of *Abraham*, it can no way be doubted. For when *Laban* had seen the servant of *Abraham* standing at the Well beside *Charran*, he invited him to his Fathers house in this manner: Come in, thou blessed of *Jehovah*, &c. And when this servant of *Abrahams* demanded an answer as touching *Rebecca*, then answered *Laban* and *Bethuel*, and said, This thing is proceeded of *Jehovah*: meaning, that it was the will of the true God it should be so; wherein he acknowledged Gods providence. Likewise in the following verse it is written; Take, go, that she may be thy Masters sons wife, even as *Jehovah* hath said. This their

Gen. 24. 31.  
Gen. 24. 50.

often using of the name of *Jehovah*, which is the proper name of the true God, it is a sign that they had the knowledge of him.

Now although it be the opinion of *S. Chrysostome*, and some late Writers, as *Cajetan*, *Olester*, *Mucinus*, *Galvin*, *Mercer*, and others, that *Laban* was an Idolater, because he retained certain Idols, or household Gods, which *Rachel* stole from him; yet that he believed in the true God it cannot be denied. For he acknowledgeth the God of *Abraham* and of *Nachor*, and he called *Abrahams* servant, blessed of *JEHOVAH*, as aforesaid. So as for my self I dare not avow, that these men were out of the Church, who, sure I am, were not out of the faith.

## §. VI.

That the naming of *Abraham* first of the three brethren, Gen. II. v. 26. doth not prove that he was the eldest: together with divers reasons proving that *Abraham* was not the eldest son of *Terah*.

To the main objection; which I answer last, because it seemeth of most strength, by which, those that strive to shorten the times, endeavour to prove that *Abraham* was the eldest son of *Terah*, and born in the 70. year of *Terah*'s life; grounding themselves first and chiefly on this place of the Scripture; And *Terah* lived 70. years and begot *Abraham*, *Nachor*, and *Haran*: To this I say, that although *Abraham* in this verse be first named, yet the same is no proof at all that he was the eldest and firstborn son of *Terah*. For it is no necessary consequent, that the first named in Scriptures was therefore eldest in blood and birth; neither doth it appear, that it pleased God to make especial choice of the first sons in nature and time: for *Seth* was not the first-born of *Adam*; nor *Isaac* of *Abraham*; nor *Jacob* of *Isaac*; nor *Jude* and *Joseph* of *Jacob*; nor *David* the eldest of *Jesse*; nor *Solomon* of *David*: as is formerly remembered.

But it is written of *Noah*: *Noah* was 500. years old, and *Noah* begot *Shem*, *Ham*, and *Japheth*: shewing that at the 500. year of his age he began to beget the first of those three sons. For according to *S. Augustine*, speaking generally, *Nec attendendus est in his ordo natiuitatis, sed significatio future dignitatis: in qua excelluit Abraham: 1. be order of nativity is not here to be respected, but the signification of the future dignity: in which Abraham was preferred.* And therefore as in the order of the sons of *Noah*: so is it here; where it is said, That *Terah* lived 70. years, and begot *Abraham*, *Nachor*, and *Haran*: For it was late ere *Terah* began to beget Sons, himself being begotten by his Father *Nachor* at 29. as other his Ancestors were at 30. The like also happened to *Noah*: for whereas *Adam* begot *Seth* at 133. *Enosh* *Kenan* at 90. *Kenan* *Mahaleel* at 70. *Mahaleel* *Jared* at 60. *Noah* was yet 500. years old when he began to beget the first of his three Sons, as aforesaid. And *S. Augustine*, in the place before cited, rather inclineth to the opinion that *Abraham* was the youngest of *Terah*'s sons, than otherwise: though for his excellency he was worthily named first. His own words are these: *Fieri enim potuit ut posterior sit generatus Abraham: sed merito excellentie, qua in Scripturis valde commendatur, prior fuerit nominatus.* It might be, saith he, that *Abraham* was begotten later: but was first named in regard of his excellency, for which in Scripture he is much commended. So as the naming first or last proveth nothing who was first or last born: either in those issues of *Noah*, or in these of *Terah*: Neither hath God any respect of the eldest in nature, as touching his election or spiritual blessing; for *Moses* nameth first the children of the promise, and the eldest and first in Gods favour. *Pietas ergo, vel ipsa potius electio divina, que communem secum trahit pietatem, & Dei timorem, primas partes dat Semo in liberis Noe, & Abrahamo in liberis Thare: Piety, saith he, or rather divine election, which doth evermore draw with it or after it, piety and the fear of God, gave place and precedency to Sem among the children of *Noah*, and to *Abraham* among those of *Thare*.*

For the rest it is manifest, that *Abraham* entred *Canaan* in the 75. year of his age. And it was in *Canaan* that *Hagar* bare him *Ismael*, when *Abraham* had lived 86. years. It was at *Gerar* (the South border of *Canaan*) that *Sarah* bare *Isaac*, when *Abraham* had consumed 100. years. It was from the valley of *Mamre* in *Canaan* that *Abraham* rose out, when he rescued *Lot* and overthrew *Amraphel*: and he had then but the age of 83. years: and it is as manifest that he parted from *Haran* after his Father *Terah* was dead. But if

Ab. 7. 4.  
Ter. 16

**Gen. 14.**

*Terah* begat *Abraham* at 70. year old, then must *Abraham* have been 135. yeares when he first for his foot in *Canaan*, seeing *Terah* must be dead ere he parted, and so 70. added to 135. make 205; the true age of *Terah* : which is contrary to all those places of Scripture before remembered. For he entered at 75. he refused *Lot* at 83. he had *Ismael* at 86. he had *Isaac* at 100. proved by the former places.

he had *Iſaac* at 100. proved by the *torinal* plaſts.  
Moreover, if *Abraham* were the eldeſt ſon of *Terah*, and borne in the 70. yeare of his age : then had *Terah* lived till *Iſaac* had bene 35. yeares old, and *Iſmael* 49. both which muſt then have bene borne in *Meſopotamia*, and therein follored to that age : unleſſe we ſhould either deny credit to *S. Stephen*, who faith that *Abraham* departed from *Meſopotamia* after his Fathers death: or elſe beleve the interpretation of *Daniel Angeloclarior*, who in his *Chronologia antioptica*, faith it was about his Fathers death : becauſe the Greek word *μω* may be tranſported by the Latine *ſub*, as well as by *poſt*: which though elſewhere it may be yet cannot it be ſo in this place. For it were moſt improperly ſpoken, to ſay that thoſe things were done about *Terahs* death, which were 60. yeares before. Wherefore ſuppoſing *Abraham* to have bene borne in the ſeventy yeare of *Terah*: we muſt give thofe times and places of birth to *Abrahams* children, which no authority will warrant : For *Abraham* had no children in *Ur of Chaldeæ*, nor in *Haran*, nor in ten yeeres after his arrivall into *Canaan*. For the yeere of *Terahs* death, in which *Abraham* left *Haran*, was the yeare of the World: 2083. and the yeere of *Iſmaels* birth was the Worlds yeere 2094. which maketh 10. yeeres difference. And that *Iſaac* was borne in *Canaan*, and was to be offered upon the mountaine *Moriab* therein, 39. miles from *Beerſabe*, where *Abraham* then inhabited : and that three *Angels* firſt of all appeared to *Abraham* in the valley of *Mamre*, no man doubteth.

And therefore it cannot be that any of *Abrahams* sons were borne in *Mesopotamia*; nor while *Terah* lived; nor in lesse than ten yeeres after *Terahs* death: and then consequently was not *Abraham* the eldest son of *Terah*, nor borne in the 70. yeere of *Terahs* age.

Gen. 12.

Thirdly, whereas *Abraham* came into *Canaan* at 75, if *Terah* had begotten him at 70, then had *Terah* lived but 145. for 70. and 75. make 145. which muſt alſo have beene the full age of *Terah*: but *Terah* lived 205. yeeres; and therefore was not *Abraham* borne in the 70. year of *Terah*.

Fourthly, the ages of *Lot* and *Sarah* make it manifest, that *Haran* was the elder, if not the eldest brother of *Abraham*; for *Sarah* or *Ischah* wanted but ten yeeres of *Abraham*'s age: *Isaac* being borne when *Abraham* was 100. and *Sarah* 90. yeeres old.

It followeth then, that if *Abraham* had been the elder brother of *Haran*, *Haran* must have begotten *Sarah* at nine yeeres old: for granting that *Haran* was borne but one yeer after *Abraham*, and *Sarah* within ten yeeres as old as *Abraham*, then of necessity must *Haran* beget her, when he had lived but nine yeeres; which were too ridiculous to imagine.

And that *Ifcrah* was *Sarah*, *Rab. Solomon* affirmeth; both names, saith he, bearing the same signification; and names of principality. Again, to what end was the word *Ifcrah* of *Jylcrah* inferred in this place, if *Sarah* were not meant thereby? For, to speake of any thing superfluous, it is not used in Gods Booke: and if *Ifcrah* had not belonged to the story, it had been but an idle name to no purpose remembered.

Now if it had been true (as those of the contrary opinion affirm) that *Moses* had no respect of *Nabor* and *Haran*, who were notwithstanding the Parents of *Benjmin* and *Rebecca* the mother of *Isaac* and of *Christ*: what regard then had *Moses* of *Isaac* in this place, were the not *Sarah*, but otherwise an idle name, of whom there is nothing else first or last?

The age also of *Lot* disproveth the eldership of *Abraham* : for *Lot* was called an old so man when *Abraham* was but 83. years old : And if *Lot* were of a greater age than *Abraham*, and *Haran* were Father to *Lot*, *Sarah*, and *Milchah* 3. *Abraham* marrying one of *Haran*'s daughters, and *Nabor* the other, *Sarah* also being within ten years as old as *Abraham*: it may appear to every reasonable man (not obstinate and prejudicate) that *Haran* was the eldest son of *Terah*, and not *Abraham* : who also died first, and before his Father left *Ur* in *Chaldea*. Also *Lyra* reasoneth against the opinion of *Abraham*'s eldership, upon the same place of *Genesis* : drawing argument from the age of *Sarah*, who was but ten years younger than *Abraham* himself. *Lyra* his words are these : *Si igitur Haran fuit junior ip[s]o*

Abraham, sequitur quid non habebat decem annos quando genuit Saram : imò nec octo, &c. and afterward, & ided melius videtur dicendum, quòd Abraham fuit ultimus natus de tribus filiis Thare, tamen nominatur primò, propter ejus dignitatem : & ponendus erat capituli stirpis & generationis sequentis : & quia primò facta est ei repromissio expressa de Christo, sicut supra dictum est de Sem, &c. If therefore (saith Lyra) Haran was younger than Abraham himselfe, it followeth that he was not ten years old when he begat Sarah : And therefore it seemeth better to be said, that Abraham was the last born of the three sons of Thare, nevertheless he is named first for his dignity, both because hee was to be ordained head of the stock and generation following, and because the promise of Christ was first made unto him, as before it is said of Sem.

§. VII.

A conclusion of this dispute, noting the Authors on both sides: with an admonition, that they which shorten the times make all ancient stories the more improbable.

I therefore agreeeth with the Scriptures, with Nature, Time, and Reason, that *Ira*n was the eldest son of *Terah*, and not *Abraham* : and that *Abraham* was born in the 130. year of *Terah*'s life, and not in the 70. year. For *Abraham* departing *Charran* after 30 *Terah* died, according to *S. Stephen*, and that journey by *Abraham* performed when he was 75. years old ; these two numbers added make 205. years, the full age of *Terah* : seeing that when *Terah* died, then *Abraham* entred *Canaan*. For my selfe, I have no other end herein than to manifest the truth of the Worlds story. I reverence the judgements of the Fathers : but I know they were mistaken in particulars. *Saint Augustine* was doubtfull, and could not determine this controversie. For whatsoever is borrowed from him out of his sixteenth book de *Civitate Dei*, cap. 13. the same may be answered out of himselfe in his five and twentieth question upon *Gen*. But *S. Augustine* herein followed *Iosephus* and *Isidor* : and *Beda* followed *S. Augustine*. And it was out of a foolish pride and vanity, that the *Hebrews* and *Iosephus* sought to make *Abraham* the 30 first born : as if God had had respect to the eldest in nature. So did *Iosephus* together with *Nicholas Damascenus* (thinking thereby to glorifie the Jewish Nation) make *Abraham* a King, entitling *Sarah* by the name of *Queen Sarah* : and said that *Abraham* was followed with 318. Captains, of which every one had an infinite multitude under him ; trecentos & octodecim prefectos habuit : quorum singulis infinita multitudo parebat. And that *Pharao* invading him with a great Army, took from him his wife *Sarah*. Such fables argue that *Iosephus* is not to be beleaved, but with discreet reservations.

This account of times, allowing no more than 392. years from the Flood to *Abraham*, is upheld by many of the *Hebrew*. But how should we value the opinion of such *Chronologers*, as take *Amraphel* for *Nimrod*? Surely, if their judgement in such matters 40 were worthy to be regarded, it would have appeared in setting down the succession of the *Perſian Kings* under whom they lived, whose History was not so far remote in time, as these antiquities, nor wanting the light of many good Writers. Yet grossly have they erred therein, and so familiar are their mistakings in all things of like nature, that we seldom find their opinion rehearsed without the confutation treading on the heels of it. They of the *Romane* religion are also generally on the same side: it being a thing usual among them, to maintain whatsoever they have been formerly known to hold and believe. Contrariwise, of the more ancient, *Theodoret*, and some following him: of later times, *Beralduſ*, *Codoman Fencer*, *Calvin*, *Junius*, *Ezeas*, *Broughton*, *Doff Gibbons*, and *Moore*, with divers of the *Protestants*, hold *Abraham* to have been born in the 130. year 50 of his father *Terah*. From thence (as in a case not concerning any point in Religion) divers of the same Religion, and those nevertheless good Authors, as *Eucholtzerus*, *Chitren*, *Fumtius* and others, are very averse herein, especially *Josephus Scaliger* with his *Sextus Calviſius*, proclaiming *Beralduſ* an Arch-heretick in *Chronologie*, and condemning this opinion of his as poisonous. Contrariwise, *Augustinus Tornilius*, a Priest of the Congregation of Saint *Paul*, a judicious, diligent, and free Writer, whose *Annals* are newly set forth, very earnestly defends the opinion, which I have already delivered: not alledging *Beralduſ*, nor any *Protestant* Writer, as being perhaps unwilling to owe thanks to hereticks. For my selfe, I doe neither millike the contrary opinion, because

R

commonly

commonly those of the *Romish* Religion labour to uphold it; nor favour this larger account of times, because many notable men of the *Protestant* writers have approved it; but for the truth it selfe. To strengthen which, after all these former reasons, and testimonies of Scripture, I will add thus much more to the rest. First, it is apparent to all men of judgement, that the best approved Historians, divine and prophane, labour to investigate the truth of times, thereby to approve the stories, and forepast actions of the world: and not the truth of histories to approve the times by. Let us then make judgement to our selves, which of these two accounts give the best reputation to the story of the Scriptures; teaching the Worlds new plantation, and the continuance of Gods Church: either that of *Josephus*, and those which follow him; who makes but 292. 10 years, or thereabouts, between the flood and birth of *Abraham*: or this other account, which makes 352. years between the one and the other: the one taking *Abraham* to be the first born of *Thare*, in the 70. year of his life: the other a younger son of *Thare*, and born when he had lived 130. years. And if we look over all, and do not hastily satisfie our understanding with the first things offered, and thereby being satiated do slothfully and drowsily sit down; we shall find it more agreeable rather to allow the reckoning of the *Septuagint*, who, according to some editions, make it above 1072. years between the Flood and *Abraham*'s birth: than to take away any part of those 352. years given. For if we advisedly consider the state and continuance of the world, such as it was in *Abraham*'s time, yea before *Abraham* was born, we shall find that it were very 20 ill done of us by following opinion without the guide of reason, to pare the times over-deeply between *Abraham* and the Flood: because in cutting them too neer the quick, the reputation of the whole story might perchance bleed thereby, were not the testimony of the Scriptures supreme, so as no objection can approach it: and that we did not follow withall this precept of *S. Augustine*, That whereforever any one place in the Scriptures may be conceived disagreeing to the whole, the same is by ignorance of interpretation mis-understood. For in *Abraham*'s time all the then known parts of the World were peopled: all Regions and Countries had their Kings. *Egypt* had many magnificent Cities: and so had *Palestina*, and all the bordering Countries, yea, all that part of the World besides, as far as *India*: and those not built with sticks, but of hewne stones, and defended with walls and rampiers: which magnificence needed a parent of more antiquity, than those other men have supposed. And therefore, where the Scriptures are plainest and best agreeing with reason & nature, to what end should we labour to beget doubts and scruples, or draw all things into wonders and marvels giving also strength thereby to common cavillers, and to those mens apish brains, who onely bend their wits to find impossibilities, and monsters in the story of the World and Mankind.

## §. VIII.

40

A computation of the times of the *Assyrians*, and others, grounded upon the times noted in the story of *Abraham*.

An. mundi  
2008. dil. 352.  
natus Abra-  
ham, Eul. Aug.  
de civit. Dei.  
l. 16. c. 17.

IN this sort therefore for the reasons before alledged, I conclude, that from the general Flood, to the birth of *Abraham*, 352. years were consumed: and taking the *Assyrian* history with us, the same number of years were spent from the Flood to the 43. year of *Ninus*: in which 43. year of *Ninus*, *Abraham* was born: which happened in the year of the world, 2009.

Now of this time of 352. years, we must give one part as well to the increase of those people which came into *Shinaar*, as to those that stayed in the East, to wit, 30. years to those *Chur*, ere he begat *Seba*: of which, though the Scriptures are silent, yet because those of the same time had that age when they begat their first sons, we may the more safely give the like allowance to these. For *Eber* begat *Peleg* at 34. *Peleg* Regn at 30. *Regu* Serug at 32. Now after *Seba*, *Chur* begat *Havila*, *Sabta*, *Raama* and *Sabtecha*: and *Raama* begat *Sheba* and *Dedan*, before *Nimrod* was born, as it appeareth *Gen. 10.* which *S. Augustine* approveth. Giving then 30. years more to *Raama* ere he begat *Sheba*, and five years to the five elder brothers of *Nimrod*, it may be gathered that 65. years were consumed ere *Nimrod* himselfe was born: and that *Raama* had that age before any of his sons were

Aug. de civ. Dei.

were begotten, it may be gathered by example and comparison: for *Peleg* the fourth from *Noah*, as *Raamah* was, begat *Ren* in the same year of his life.

Let us then allow 60. years more after the birth of *Nimrod*, for two other generations to be brought forth, or else we shall hardly find people to build *Babel*: for sure we are, that it was done by hands, and not by miracle: because it displeased God. These two numbers of 65. and 60. make 125. The rest of the time of 131. (in which year they arrived in *Shinaar*, whereof there are 6. years remaining) we may give them for their travels from the East: because they were pestered with women, children and cattell: and, as some ancient writers have conceived, and *Becanus* of later times, they kept alwayes 10 the mountain sides, for fear of a second Flood. Now, if we take this number of 131. out of 352. there remains 221. of which number *Berosus* bestoweth 65. on *Belus*, and 42. on *Ninus* before *Abraham* born: both which *S. Augustine* approveth: which two numbers taken again out of 221. there remaineth 114. years of the 352. from the Flood to *Abraham*'s birth: which number of 114. necessity bestoweth on *Nimrod*.

And if it be objected that this time given to *Nimrod* is over-long: sure if we compare the age of *Nimrod* with the rest of the same descent from *Noah*, it will rather appear over-short. For *Nimrod*, by this account, lived in all but one hundred seventy nine years: whereof he reigned one hundred and twelve: whereas *Sale*, who was the son of *Arphaxad*, the son of *Sem*, lived four hundred three years: and of the same age of the 20 World was *Nimrod* the son of *Chur*, the son of *Cham*.

Now after *Abraham* was born,

*Ninus* reigned 9. years: which added to 43. make

52.

*Ninus* dieth, and leaveth *Semiramis* his Successor.

*Semiramis* governed the Empire of *Babylonia* and *Assyria* 42. years, and died in the 52. Of the World.

year complete of *Abraham*'s life. 2017.

*Ninias* or *Lameis* succeeded *Semiramis*, and ruled 38. years, in the second year of whole reign *Abraham* left *Mesopotamia*. Of the Flood

When *Abraham* was 85. years old, he rescued his Nephew *Lot*, and overthrew by surprise *Amraphel* king of *Shinaar*, or *Babylonia*. *Ninias* reigned 38. years, and *Abraham* 2019. mundi.

came into *Canaan* but 23. years after *Semiramis* died: which was the 75. year of his age: so that *Amraphel* may seem to have been this *Ninias* the son of *Ninus*, and *Semiramis*, whose 23. years, as aforesaid, being the 75. year of *Abraham*, he and his fellow-kings might have received this overthrow in the 85. year of *Abraham*, and the 33. year of his owne reigne: after which he reigned five years: which make in all 38. But the truth is, that the reasons to the contrary, urging that this *Amraphel* could not be *Ninias*, are not easily answered. Howbeit, for the times of the *Assyrian* kings, that they are to be ordered as we have set downe, according to the times noted by *Moses* in the story of *Abraham*, it is most certain; unless we will either derogate from the truth of *Moses*'s computation, which were impiety, or account the whole History of *Ninias* and *Semiramis* to be but a fiction; which were to condemne all ancient Historians for fablers.

403.4 dil.  
2083.  
427.  
2093.  
437.

## § IX.

That *Amraphel*, one of the foure Kings whom *Abraham* overthrew, *Gen. 14.* may probably be thought to have been *Ninias* the son of *Ninus*.

AND now touching this *Amraphel*, whom *Moses* makes king of *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, in the 85. year of *Abraham*'s life, that is, in the 33. year of the reigne of *Ninias* *Lameis* the king of the *Assyrians*, the son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*, it is hard to affirme what he was, and how he could be at this time king of *Babylonia*: *Ninias* *Lameis* then reigning there. To this doubt the answer which first offereth it selfe as most probable, is that which hath been already noted, that this *Ninias* or *Lameis*, was no other than our *Amraphel*: who invaded *Traconitis*, or *Bajan*, and overthrew those five kings of *Pentapolis*, or the valley of *Siddim*. For the Scriptures tell us, that *Amraphel* was king of *Shinaar*, which is *Babylonia*: and the times before accounted make him to be the successor of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*: and it falleth out with the 85. year of *Abraham*'s life: wherein he rescued *Lot*, slew *Chedorlaomer*, and overthrew the rest. True it is, that

R 2



Gen. 14. 4.

this *Amraphel* was not at this time the greatest *Monarch*: for *Chedorlaomer* commanded in chiefe, though *Amraphel* be first named by *Moses* in the first verse of the 14. Chapter of *Genesis*. For the kings of the valley of *Siddim*, or of *Pentapolis*, or the five Cities, were the vassals of *Chedorlaomer*, and not of *Amraphel*: as it is written, *Twelve years were they subject to Chedorlaomer, but in the 13. year they rebelled, and in the 14. year came they subject to Chedorlaomer, and the Kings that were with him*: and therefore was *Chedorlaomer* the principall in this enterprife, who was then king of *Elam*, which is *Persia*: Now *Persia* being feated over *Tygrus*, and to the East of *Amraphels* Countrey; and the other two kings, which were companions with *Amraphel*, being feated to the West of *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*: *Amraphel*, who held *Babylonia* it selfe, seemeth at this time to have had no great scope or large dominion. For had *Amraphel* been so great a Prince as prophane Historians make *Ninus* or *Semiramis* whom he succeeded, hee should not have needed the assistance of three other kings for this expedition. But though *Chedorlaomer* were the first and greatest of those four kings, (as it is manifest that he was: For these little kings of *Sodome*, *Gomorrah*, &c. were his vassals, and not *Amraphels*;) yet this makes not the conjecture lesse probable, but that this *Amraphel* might be *Ninus*. For it may be, that the great and potent Empire of *Assyria* had now (as we shall shew more plainly in that which followeth) received a down-right fall at the time of this war: though not long before it commanded all the kingdoms between *India* and the *Phœnician* Sea: to wit, in the times of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.

20

## §. X.

Of *Arioch* another of the foure Kings, and that *Ellas*, whereof he is said to have been King, lies between *Cœlosyria* and *Arabia* Petrea.

Xenophon.

Gen. 14.

Now the two other kings joyned with *Amraphel* and *Chedorlaomer*, were *Arioch* and *Tidal*: the one king of *Ellassar*, the other of the Nations. For *Ellassar*, *Aquila*, and *Hierome* write *Pontus*: so *Tostatus* thinketh that it should be *Hellepont*: which opinion *Pererius* favoureth. But this is onely to defend the Latine translation. For as *Pontus*, so is *Hellepont* far distant, and out of the way to fend any Armies into *Arabia* Petrea, or into *Idumæa*: which Countries these four kings chiefly invaded: Besides that, it is certaine, that the *Assyrians* (when they were greatest) had never any dominion in *Asia* the lesse. For at such time as the *Assyrians* feared the invasion of the *Medes* and *Persians*, they sent not into *Asia* the lesse as Commanders: but used all the art they had to invite *Cræsus* to their assistance: perswading him that nothing could be more dangerous for himselfe, and the other Kings of those parts, than the successe of the *Medes* against the *Assyrians*. But examine the enterprife what it was. These Kings (saith the Text) made war with *Bera* king of *Sodome*, *Birsha* king of *Gomorrah*, *Shinab* king of *Admah*, and *Shemebar* king of *Zeboim*, and the king of *Bela*, which is *Zoar*. All which five kings had not so much ground as *Middlesex*: being such a kinde of *Reguli*, as *Joseph* found in the land long after: namely, Lords of Cities and small Territories adjoining, of which *Canaan* had three and thirty, all slain or hanged by *Joseph*. Neither can the other Countries, which in the Text they are said also to have invaded, be imagined to have been at that time of any great power: and therefore to call in kings from *Pontus* or *Hellepont*, had manifested a great impotence and weaknesse in the kings of *Babylon* and *Persia*.

And though it be alledged for an example, that divers kings far off, came to assist *Pompey* against *Cæsar*; yet these same examples without like occasions and circumstances, do neither lead nor teach. For there was no cause to fear the greatnesse of these petty kings, or of the other Countries: But the eyes of the World were fixed on *Cæsar*; and his undertakings and intents were to all other Princes, no lesse doubtfull than fearfull: But the whole Country by these four kings mastered in their passage, was afterward given to the halfe tribe of *Manasse*, *Gad*, and *Reuben*: a narrow valley of ground lying between *Jordan* and the mountaines of *Seir*: inclosed by the river of *Arnon* on the South side, and by *Lybanus* on the North, consisting of the two small Provinces of *Tracônitis* or *Basan*, and the region of the *Moabites*: a conquest far unvaluable, and little answering to the power of the *Assyrian* Empire, if the same had remained in any comparable estate with the times of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*, who subjected

all

all the great Kings of that part of the World, without the assistance of any of the Kings of *Hellepont*, or any other part of *Asia* the lesse. But as the vulgar and *Aquila* convert *Ellassar* by *Pontus*: so *Symmachus* makes *Arioch* a King of the *Scythians*, a King indeed, as far fetched to joyn with the *Assyrians* in this War, as the World had any at that time.

The *Septuagint* do not change the word of *Ellassar* at all, but as they keep the word *Ararat*, on the mountaines whereof the Arke did rest; so doe they in this place retaine the Hebrew word *Ellassar*, being doubtfull to give it a wrong interpretation. And *Pererius* himselfe remembreth other opinions far more probable than this of *Pontus* or *Hellepont*: yet hee dares not avow his liking of them, because the Latine Translation hath it otherwise. For *Stephanus de Urbibus*, a Græcian *Cosmographer*, findeth the Citie of *Ellas* in the border of *Cœlosyria*: and *S. Hierome* calleth *Ellas* the Citie of *Arioch*, as in truth it was. Now although the same be feated by *Stephanus* in *Cœlosyria*, yet it standeth on the border of *Arabia*, of which *Arioch* was king: who formerly joyned with *Ninus* in all his conquests, being of the same family, and descended from *Cham* and *Chus*: after whom the name of *Arius* was by the Hebrew written *Arioch*: and afterward againe *Aretas*; as in the *Machabees*: the kings of *Arabia* holding that name even to the time of *S. Paul*, who was sought to be betrayed by the Lieutenant of *Aretas* commanding in *Damascus*. They were Princes for the most part confederate and depending upon the *Assyrian* Empire. It is true that we finde in *Daniel*, that in the time of *Nabuchodonosor*, one *Arioch* was General of his Army, and the principall Commander under him, who was a King of kings: which makes it plain, that *Arioch* here spoken of, the son of that *Arioch*, confederate of *Ninus*, was no king of *Pontus*, nor of *Scythia*: regions far removed from the *Assyrians* and *Babylonians*. The name also of *Arioch*, who commanded under *Nabuchodonosor* is mentioned in *Judith*, by the name of King of the *Elymeans*: who are a Nation of *Persians* bordering *Assyria*, according to *Stephanus*: though *Pliny* sets it between the Sea-coast, and *Media*: and if any brother of the Arabian Kings, or other of that house (known by the name of *Arius*, *Arioch*, *Areta*, or *Aretas*) had the government of that *Persian* Province called *Elymais* (as it seemeth they had by the places of *Daniel* and *Judith*) yet the same was in *Nabuchodonosors* time. But this *Arioch* here spoken of may with more reason be taken for the king of *Arabia*, the son of *Arius*, the confederate of *Ninus*: whose sons held league, as their fathers did, being the next bordering Prince of all on that side towards the West unto *Babylonia*, and *Chaldea*: and in amitie with them from the beginning, and of their owne house and blood: which *Diod. Siculus* also confirmeth.

Mat. 2. c. 3. v. 2. Cor. 2. 11.

Dio. Sic. l. 2. c. 1

## §. XI.

Of *Tidal* another of the foure Kings.

The fourth king by *Abraham* overthrown was *Tidal*, king of the Nations. The Hebrew writes it *Gojim*, which *Vatablus* takes to be a proper name: *Lyra* of mixt people: *Cælein* of runagates without habitation. *Pererius* out of *Strabo*, finds that *Galilee* was inhabited by divers Nations, which were a mixt people: namely, of *Egyptians*, *Arabians*, and *Phœnicians*. Nam tales sunt qui *Galileam* habitant; Such are the inhabitants of *Galilee*, saith *Strabo*: and therefore was *Tidal* called king of these Nations, as they suppose. And it may be so: but the authority of *Strabo* is nothing in this question. For *Galilee* was not peopled at this time, as it was in the time of *Strabo*. For when *Abraham* came into *Canaan*, the *Canaanite* was then in the Land, howsoever they might be afterwards mixt; which I know not. But there are many petty kingdoms adjoining to *Phœnicia*, and *Palesina*; as *Palmyrena*, *Batanea*, *Laodicea*, *Apamena*, *Chalcedice*, *Cassiotis*, *Chalibonitis*, and all these do also joyn themselves to *Mesopotamia* on the North, and to *Arabia* on the East. And that these Nations gathered themselves together under *Tidal*, I take to be the probablest conjecture.

Gen. 12. 6.

## §. XII.

That Chedorlaomer the chiefe of the foure Kings was not of Assyria, but of Persia: and that the Assyrian Empire at this time was much impaired.

Asfly, whereas it is conceived that Chedorlaomer was the Assyrian Emperour, and that Amraphel was but a Satrape, Viceroy, or Provinciall governour of Babylonia, and that the other Kings named were such also, I cannot agree with Pterius in this. For Moses was too well acquainted with the names of *Assur* and *Shinaar*, to call the Assyrian a king of *Elam*: those kings being in the Scriptures evermore called by the name of *Chaldea*, to *Shinaar*, *Babylonia*, or *Assyria*: but never by *Elam*; and Chedorlaomer or Kedarlaomer was so called of *Kidor*, from *Cidarim*, which in the Hebrew signifieth *Regale*: for so *Curtius* calleth the garment which the Persian Kings wore on their heads.

Neither do I beleve that the Assyrian or Babylonian Empire stood in any greatnesse at the time of this invasion; and my reasons are these: First, example and experience reach us, that those things which are set up hastily, or forced violently, do not long last. *Alexander* became Lord of all *Asia*, on this side of *Indus*, in a time of so short a life, as it lasted not to overlook what it selfe had brought forth. His fortunes were violent, but not perpetual. For his Empire died at once with himselfe: all whose chief Commanders became kings after him. *Tambrlain* conquered *Asia* and *India* with a storm-like and terrible successe: but to prevalent fury God hath adjoynd a short life: and whatsoever things Nature her selfe worketh in haste, she taketh the least care of their continuance. The fruit of his victories perished with him, if not before.

*Ninus* being the first whom the madnesse of boundlesse dominion transported, invaded his neighbour Princes, and became victorious over them: a man violent, insolent and cruell. *Semiramis* taking the opportunity, and being more proud, adventurous, and ambitious, than her *Parasour*: enlarged the Babylonian Empire, and beautified many places therein with buildings unexampled. But her son having changed Nature and Condition with his Mother, proved no lesse feminine than she was masculine. And as wounds and wrongs, by their continuall smart, put the Patient in minde how to cure; so the one, and revenge the other: so those Kings adjoyning (whose subjection and calamities incident, were but new, and therefore the more grievous) could not sleep, when the advantage was offered by such a succellour. For, in regno *Babylonico hic parum resplenduit*; *2* his King shined little (saith *Nauclerus* of *Ninias*) in the Babylonian Kingdom. And likely it is that the necks of mortall men having been never before galled with the yoke of forrain dominion, nor having ever had experience of that most miserable and detested condition of living in slavery: no long descent having as yet invested the Assyrian with a right: nor any other title being for him pretended than a strong hand; the foolish and effeminate son of a tyrannous and hated Father, could very ill hold so many great Princes and Nations his vassals, with a powerlesse mastering, and a mind lesse industrious than his Father and Mother had used before him. And he that was so much given over to licentious idleness, as to suffer his Mother to reigne 42. yeers, and therefore of the greatest part after he came to mans estate: witnessed thereby to the World, that he so much preferred ease before honour, and bodily pleasures before greatnesse, as he neither indeavoured to gain what he could not govern, nor to keep what hee could not without contentious perill enjoy.

These considerations being joynd to the story of *Amraphel*, delivered by *Moses*, by which we find that *Amraphel* king of *Shinaar* was rather an inferiour to the king of *Persia*, than either his superiour, or equal: make it seem probable, that the Empire of *Ninus* and *Semiramis* was at that time broken asunder, and restrained again to *Babylonia*.

For conclusion, I will add these two arguments confirming the former: First, that at such time as it pleased God to impose that great travell upon *Abraham*, from *Drinchildea* to *Charran*, and then to *Canaan*, a passage of 700. miles, or little lesse, with women, children, and carriages: the countries through which he wandred were then settled, and in peace. For it was in the 23. yeer of *Ninias*, when *Abraham*, obeying the voice of God, took this great journey in hand: in which time of 23. yeers after the death of *Semiramis*, the neighbour Princes had recovered their liberty and former estates. For *Semiramis* Army of four millions, with her selfe, utterly consumed in *India*, and all her Armies and

and engins of warre, at the same time lost, gave an occasion and opportunitie even to the poorest foules and weakest hearted creatures of the World, to repurchase their former libertie.

Secondly, it is affirmed by the best and ancientest Historians, that *Arius* the son of *Ninias*, or *Amraphel*, invaded the *Bactrians* and *Caspians*, and againe subjected them: which needed not if they had not beene revolted from *Ninias*, after *Ninus* death. And as *Arioch* recovered one part, so did *Baleus* or *Balanus*, otherwise *Xerxes*, reduce the rest revolted, to their former obedience. Of whom is said that he conquered from *Egypt* to *India*: and therefore was called *Xerxes*, id est, *Victor* & *triumphator*, a conquerour and triumpher; which undertakings had beene no other than the effects of madnesse, had not those Countries freed themselves from the Babylonian subjection. Now if we shall make any doubt hereof, that is, of the reconquest of *Arius* and *Xerxes*, both which lived after *Ninus* and *Ninias*, we may as well thinke the rest of *Ninus* and *Semiramis* to be but fained: but if we grant this reconquest, then is it true, that while *Ninias* or *Amraphel* ruled, the Assyrian Empire was torne alunder, according to that which hath beene gathered out of *Moses*, as before remembered.

## §. XIII.

That it is not unprobable that the foure Kings had no dominion in the Countries named, but that they had else-where with their colonies planted themselves: and so retained the names of the Countries whence they came: which if it be so, we neede not say that *Amraphel* was *Ninias*, nor trouble our selves with many other difficulties.

The consent of all Writers, whose workes have come to my perusal, agreeing as they doe, that these four Kings, *Amraphel* of *Shinaar*, *Chedorlaomer* of *Elam*, and those fellows, were Lords of those Regions, whereunto they are or seeme intitled: doth almost inforce us to thinke that the history must so be understood, as I have delivered. But if in this place, as often else-where in the Scriptures, the names of Countries may be set for people of those lands, or if (as *Hierome* hath it) *Chedorlaomer* was king of the *Elamites*, as *Tidal* was said to be of the Nations, that is, of people either wanting a fixed habitation, or gathered out of sundry regions: then may we otherwise conceive of this Historie: removing thereby some difficulties; which men perhaps have beene unwilling to find, because they could not find how to resolve them. For as it had beene a strange conjecture to think that *Arioch* was drawn to assist the Persian against the *Sodomites*, as far as from *Pontus*, where it is very unlikely that *Chedorlaomer* was knowne, and almost impossible that the vale of *Siddim* should have been once named: so in true estimation it is a thing of great improbabilitie, that *Chedorlaomer*, if he were King of *Persia* alone, should passe through so great a part of the World, as the Countries of *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and parte of *Arabia*, & *Canaan*, to subdue those five Townes, whose very names how they should come to his ear, being dis-joynd by so many great nations of different languages, a wise man could hardly conjecture. And if all the Countries bordering *Persia* together with the Babylonian himselfe, yea the kingdom of *Elasar* and that of *Tidal*, so far off removed, were become his dependances; what reason can we find that might have induced him to hearken after *Sodome* and *Gomorrab*? and when he should have sought the establishment of his new gotten Empire, by rooting out the posterity of *Ninus* (as *Ninus* had dealt by *Pharus* of *Media*, and *Zoroaster* of *Bactria*) then to employ the forces of *Amraphel*, and those other Kings, against five petty Towns, leaving *Tyrus* and *Sidon*, and the great Citie of *Damascus*, with many other places of much importance, and far neerer unto him, unsubdued: Now as these doubts which may be alleged against the first conquest of the vale of *Siddim*, are exceeding vehement: so are the objections to be made against his reconquest of these five Cities, when they had revolted, as forcible; yea and more, as being grounded partly upon the Text it selfe. For first, what madnesse had it beene in that small Province to rebell against so powerfull a Monarch? Or if it were so that they dwelling far from him, hoped rather to be forgotten, than that he should come or send to reclaim them: was it not more than madnesse in them, when his terrible armie approached, still to entertaine hope of evasion: yea to make resistance (being themselves a dissolute and therefore unwarlike people) against the power of all the Nations between *Emphrates*, yea between themselves & the river of

*Indus* ; Likewise on the part of *Cheodorlamoer* we should finde no great wisdom, if he, knowing the weaknesse of this people, had raised such a world of men against them : whom by any *Lieutenant*, with small forces he might have subdued. For the perpetuall inheritance of that little Country, was not sufficient to countervail one moneths charges of so huge an army. How small then must his valour have been, who with so mighty preparations effected no more than the waiting of that *Valley*, wherein he left the City standing, taking no one of them ; but returned well contented with a few prisoners, and the pillage of the Country, although he had broken their army in the field ? Now the Scriptures do not of this invasion (supposed so great) make any fearfull matter : but compose the two armies as equally matcht, saying they were four kings against five : yea if the place be literally expounded, we shall find that *Abraham* slew all these Kings ; of which great slaughter no Historie makes mention : Neither will the reignes of *Ninias* who lived foure or five yeeres longer, permit that he should have died so soone : neither would Histories have forgotten the manner of his death, if he had so strangely perished in *Syria*. Whereby it appears, that these foure Kings were not the same that they are commonly thought : nor their forces so great as opinion hath made them. It may therefore well be true, that these kings were such as many others, who in that age carried the same title : Lords and Commanders every one of his own company, which he carried forth as a *Colony*, seeking place where to settle himself and them, as was the usuall manner of those times.

Neither is it improbable, that *Cheodorlamoer* leading a troupe of *Persians*, *Amraphel* some people out of *Shinaar*, and *Tidal* others gathered out of sundry places, might con-sort together, and make the weakest of the Country which lay about them, to pay them tribute. Whosoever will consider the beginning of the first Book of *Thucydides*, with the manner of discoveries, conquests and plantations, in the infancy of *Greece* ; or the manner of the *Saracens* invading *Africa* and *Spain*, with almost as many kings as several Armies : or the proceedings of the *Spaniards* in their new discoveries, passages, and conquests in the *West-Indies* : may easily perceive, that it was neither unusual for the leaders of *Colonies* to receive title from the people whom they conducted : nor to make alliances together, and break them again, disturbing sometimes one the other, sometimes helping in pursuit of a conquest. That *Amraphel* and his associates were such manner of Commanders, it may seem the more likely, by the sloathfull quality of *Ninias* then reigning in *Assyria* : whose unmanlike temper was such, as might well give occasion to such undertaking spirits, as wanted the employments whereunto they were accustomed in the reign of *Semiramis*, rather to seek adventures abroad, than to remain at home unregarded, whilst others, more unworthy than themselves, were advanced. If the consent of the whole stream of writers upon this place make this conjecture disagreeable to the Text, to the authority whereof all humane reason must subscribe, then we may hold our selves to the former conjecture, that *Amraphel* was *Ninias* : and that the power of his Ancestors being by his sloath decayed, he might well be inferiour to the *Persian* *Cheodorlamoer* : or if this do not satisfie, we may say that *Amraphel* was an Under-king or *Satrapa* of *Shinaar*, under *Ninias* ; who may be supposed to have had his Imperiall Seat in his Fathers Citie *Ninive* : and to have preferred it before *Shinaar* and *Babylon* the City of his Mother, whom he hated as an usurper of his right. But if it were possible that in a case not concerning any mans Salvation, and wherein therefore none hath cared to take great pains, all might erre : then can I think that the opinion, That those four Kings were leaders of *Colonies*, sent out of the Countries named in the Text, and not Kings of the Countries themselves, is most consonant both to the condition of those times, and to the Scripture. And hereto adde that *Cheodorlamoer* seems rather called a *Persian* King, than King of *Persia* : and that *Arioch* (whose Kingdom undoubtedly was between *Syria* and *Arabia*) having been a man of action, or being a worthy mans son, was very well pleased, to give passage and assistance to these Captains or pettie Kings. These and such like things here to urge, were but with circumstances to adorn a supposition, which either may stand without them, or if it must fall, is unworthy to have cost bestowed upon it especially considering that it is not my intent to employ any more time in making it good, but to leave it wholly to the Readers pleasure, to follow any of these opinions, or any other, if he find any that shall seem better than these. But of what countries or people foever these 4. were kings, this expedition is the only publick action that

we know of performed by *Abraham*. And as for other things belonging to his Storie, and of his sons, and of his Nephews *Esan* and *Jacob*, as they are registred by *Moses*, because it is not our purpose, either to stand upon things generally known to all *Christians*, nor to repeat what hath been elsewhere already spoken, nor to prevent our selves in things that may hereafter in due place be remembered, we passe them here in silence. And because in this Storie of *Abraham* and his posteritie, there is much mention of *Egypt* : by which it appears that even in the time of *Abraham*, it was a fertile and flourishing kingdom ; it will not be amisse in the next place to speak somewhat of the antiquities and first kings thereof.

## CHAP. II.

of the Kings of Egypt from the first peopling of it after the Flood, to the time of the delivery of the Israelites from thence.

## §. I.

A brief of the names and times of the first Kings of Egypt : with a note of the causes of difficulty in resolving of the truth in these points.

Soone after the confusion at *Babel* (as it seems) *Cham* with many of his issue and followers (having doubtlesse known the fertility of *Egypt* before the Flood) came thither and tooke possession of the Country ; in which they built many Cities : and began the kingdome one hundred ninety one yeers after the deluge. The ancient Governours of this Kingdome till such time as *Israel* departed *Egypt*, are shewn in the Table following.

30

An. Mundi.	An. dil.	
1847.	191.	<i>Cham.</i>
2008.	352.	<i>Osiris.</i>
2269.	613.	<i>Typhon</i> <i>Hercules.</i>
2276.	620.	<i>Orus.</i>
2391.	735.	<i>Sesostris</i> the great.
2424.	768.	<i>Sesostris</i> the blinde.
2438.	782.	<i>Bufris</i> or <i>Osiris</i> the second.
2476.	820.	<i>Achenchere</i> or <i>Thermutis</i> , or <i>Meris.</i>
2488.	832.	<i>Rathoris</i> or <i>Athoris.</i>
2497.	841.	<i>Chencres</i> drowned in the red Sea.

40

The Table, and especially the *Chronologie*, is to be confirmed by probabilities and conjectures, because in such obscurity, manifest and restless truth cannot be found. For *Saint Augustine*, a man of exceeding great judgement, and incomparable diligence, who had sought into all antiquities, and had read the books of *Varro*, which now are lost, yet omitted the succession of the *Egyptian* Kings : which he would not have done, if they had not been more uncertain than the *Sicyonians*, whom he remembreth, than whom doubtlesse they were more glorious. One great occasion of this obscurity in the *Egyptian* Story, was the ambition of the Priests : who, to magnifie their Antiquities, filled the Records (which were in their hands) with many leafings, and recounted unto strangers the names of many Kings, that never reigned. What ground they had for these reports of supposed Kings, it shall appear anon. Sure it is, That the magnificent works and royall buildings in *Egypt*, such as are never found





of all other Egyptians. This might appear to some a tale not unlike to the Friarly book of *Afenath*, *Potiphar's* daughter : but unto such as consider that God works usually by meanes ; and that *Potiphar* was the Steward of that King, under whom *Jacob* died : it would seem a matter not probable, had it an Author of sufficient credit to avouch it. Concerning the wars of *Hercules*, in which by this reckoning hee should have spent 42. yeeres after he left *Egypt*, ere he began in *Italy*, it is a circumstance which (the length of the *Italian* wars considered, and his former enterprises and atchievements proportioned to them) doth not make against us, but for us : or if it were against us, yet could it not so weaken our supposition, as these probabilities collected out of the undisputable truth of Scripture do confirm it. Nevertheless, I freely grant that all these proofs are no other, than such as may be gathered out of Authors, not well agreeing, nor to be reconciled in such obscurity, otherwise than by likelihoods, answerable to the holy Text.

## §. V I.

of *Typhon*, *Hercules*, *Aegyptus*, *Orus*, and the two *Sesotres*, successively reigning after *Mizraim* : and of divers errors about the former *Sesotres*.

Concerning the reign of *Typhon*, and of *Hercules*, I find none that precisely doth define how long either of them continued. *Daniel Angelocrator* giveth three yeers to *Typhon*, omitting *Hercules*. But he is so peremptory without prooffe, as if his own word were sufficient authority, in many points very questionable ; alledging no witness, but as it were saying, *Teste me ipso* : yet herein we may think him to speak probably, so far as the learned *Krentzhemius* affirmeth, that *Hercules* did very soon undertake his fathers revenge ; and was not long in performing it : and that leaving *Egypt* to his brother, he followed other wars, in the same quarrell, as hath been shewed before. True it is, that I cannot collect (as *Krentzhemius* doth) out of *Berosus*, that *Hercules* reigned after *Typhon* : yet seeing *Avientinus* a follower of *Berosus* hath it so, I will also beleieve it. That in the reign of *Typhon* and *Hercules*, seven yeers were spent, howsoever divided between them, I gather out of *Krentzhemius* onely, who placeth the beginning of *Orus* seven yeers after the death of *Osiris* : forgetting to set down his reasons, which in a matter so probable I think hee wanted not. Now whereas hee alloweth 90. yeers of the 18. *Dynastie* to *Osiris*, *Typhon*, *Hercules*, and *Orus* : it seems that the reign of *Orus* lasted 115. yeers. From the death of *Orus*, to the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, there passed 122. yeers by our account : who (according to *Berosus* and others) think that *Abraham* was born in the 130. yeer of *Terah*, and thereupon reckon thus : From the end of the Flood to the birth of *Abraham* ————— 352

From that time to the vocation of *Abraham* ————— 75  
departure out of *Egypt* ————— 430  
Summa ————— 857

which summe divers other waies may be collected. Since therefore to the departure out of *Egypt* there do remain (as is aforesaid) onely 122. yeers from the death of *Orus* : we are now to consider how many of them are to be allowed unto *Sesoftris*, or *Sesochosis* : who is placed next unto *Orus*, by authority of the *Scoliaſtes Apollonii* : not without good probability. For this great King or Conquerour, is by many histories recorded to have over-run a great part of *Asia* : to have built a fleet of ships on the red Sea : & so to have entred into *India* : likewise with another fleet on the middle earth Seas, to have passed into *Europe*, and subdued many Nations. This is he (as *Reineccius* judgeth) whom *Iustine* erring in account of his time, calleth *Vexoris* : For *Iustine* placeth *Vexoris* in ages before *Ninus* : whereby it would follow that *Sesoftris*, if he were *Vexoris*, was more ancient than was *Osiris* (otherwise *Mizraim*) a thing altogether unlikely. Certain it is, that after the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, no one *Pharaoh* came into the land of *Canaan* (which lieth in the way from *Egypt* into *Asia*) till the father in law of *Solomon*, *Pharaoh Vapres*, took *Gerar*, and gave it to his daughter : (as we may reade more at large in the holy History of the Bible) after which time *Sesac* oppressed *Rehoboam*, and *Necho* fought passage through the land of *Israel*, when hee made his expedition against the *Chaldeans*. Of King *Vapres* and *Necho* it is out of question, that neither of them was the great King *Sesoftris*. Of *Sesac* it is doubted by some, so far as much as he came into *Judea* with

with a great Army. *Reineccius* propounding the doubt, leaveth it undecided ; unless it be sufficient prooffe of his own opinion, that he himself placeth *Sesoftris* next to *Orus* ; following the *Scoliaſtes Apollonii*. But further answer may be made to shew that they were not one. For as *Iustine* witnesseth, *Sesoftris*, otherwise *Vexoris*, made war on people far removed, abstaining from his neighbours. *Sesac* came up purposely against *Hierusalem*. *Sesoftris*, as *Diodorus* witnesseth, had but 24000. horse ; *Sesac* had 60000. *Sesoftris* had 8020. chariots ; *Sesac* 1200. *Sesoftris* made his expedition for no private purpose, but to get a great name : *Sesac*, as most agree, had no other purpose than to succour *Jerusalem*, and give him countenance in his new reign ; whom he had favoured even against *Solomon* : therefore *Sesoftris* must needs have reigned whilst *Israel* abode in *Egypt*.

Whereas *Krentzhemius* collecteth out of *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*, that one *Menus*, or *Menis*, was next to *Orus* : because those Historians affirm that he reigned next after the gods ; it moveth me nothing. For *Osiris* did succeed those fifteen gods ; namely, the twelve greater, and three lesser : himself also (as the learned *Reineccius* noteth) being called *Menis*. Which name, as also *Menais*, and *Menis*, were titles of dignity : though mistaken by some as proper names. *Krentzhemius* doth very probably gather, that *Menus* was *Mercurius Ter-maximus* ; the Hebrew word *Meni* signifying an *Arithmetician*, which name *Ter-maximus* might well be attributed to *Osiris*, who was a great Conquerour, Philosopher, and Benefactor to mankind, by giving good laws, and teaching profitable Arts. In prowess and great undertakings *Sesoftris* was no whit inferiour to *Osiris*. For he fought victory not for gain, but for honour onely : and being well contented that many Nations had acknowledged his power, and submitted themselves to his will and royall disposition, leaving them in a manner to their liberty, returned into *Egypt*. Soon upon his return he was endangered by a great Treason, the house in which hee was being by his own brother purposely fired : which nevertheless he is said to have escaped, and to have reigned in all thirty three yeers : after which time he chose rather to die than to live ; because he fell blinde. Both *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* affirm, that *Sesoftris* left a son, whose name was *Pheron*, or *Phrones* : who afterwards took the name of *Sesoftris* ; but was nothing like to his father in glory : for he shortly fell blind. The cause of his blindness, *Herodotus* attributes to his assaulting the river *Nilus* with a javelin : which tale *Diodorus* having likewise heard, yet reports as a fable, saying that perhaps he took the disease naturally from his father. How long this man reigned, it is no where exprest : yet so far as much as *Orus* the second, (otherwise *Eusfris*, who succeeded him, began 14. yeers after that this *Sesoftris* had been King, it must needs be that this reigned 14. yeers at least. That *Eusfris* began not untill these 14. yeers at least were expired, the very account of time from the first of *Eusfris*, to the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, plainly shews, being almost generally agreed upon, to have been 75. yeers. That none came between *Sesoftris* the second, and *Eusfris* or *Orus* the second, it stands onely upon probabilities : which are these. After *Sesoftris* had reigned some while, he fell blind ; after certain yeers he recovered his sight, as is said : which may have been true, but is more like to have been a fable : surely the manner of his recovery, as it is set down, is very fabulous : namely, that by looking upon a woman, or walking his eyes with her water, who had onely known her own husband, he got his sight again. As the time of his reign, before his blindness, and when he was well again (if ever he were) may have taken up a good part of 14. yeers : so his works which were great, do much more strongly argue, that his reign was not very short. His works are largely set down by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* : a part of which may seem to have been the finishing of that which his father had begun, about the channels and sluices of *Nilus* : whom I think he so rather frightened, (as his father had done) with spades and shovels, than with darts and javelins ; and by his diligent oversight of that work, was like enough to lose both his eye-sight and his peoples love ; whom his father had very busily employed in excessive labour about it.



## 6. VII.

Of Busris the first oppressor of the Israelites; and of his successor Queen Thermutis that took up Moses out of the water.

*Exod. i.*

And herein (if I may presume to conjecture) *Busiris*, who was afterwards *king*, is like to have dealt with him, as *Jeroboam* did with the son of *Solomon*. For that *Busiris* himself was much addicted to magnificent works, it well appeared by the drudgery wherewith he wearied the children of *Israel* in his buildings: If therefore he were employed by the great *Sejoftris*, as *Jeroboam* was by *Solomon*, in the oversight of those buidifles, he had good opportunity to work his greatnefle with the king by industry; and afterward with the people, by incensing them against their new king, as *Jeroboam* did. For what the multitude will endure at one Princes hands, they will not at another: unless he have either an equal spirit, or a surer foundation. If moreover he sought to derive all the pain and labour of publick works from the *Egyptians* to the *Israelites*: he surely did that which to his own people was very plausible: who (as appears in *Exodus*) were nothing slack in fulfilling the Kings cruelty. Now that *Orus* the second, or *Busiris*, was the king that first oppressed *Israel*, and made the *Edict* of drowning the *Hebrew* children, which (saith *Cedrenus*) lasted ten moneths: it is a common opinion of many great and most learned Writers; who also think that hereupon grew the fable of *Busiris* sacrificing strangers. It is also a common interpretation of that place, *Exod.* 1. that the king who knew not *Joseph*, was a king of a new family. That *Busiris* was of a new family, *Reineccius* doth tells; who also thinks him Author of the bloody *Edict*. Nevertheless, true it is, that *Busiris*, according to all mens computation, began his reign five years after the birth of *Moses*; before whose birth it is most manifest, that the law was made, and much more that the persecution began; which *Bunting* thinks to have lasted 87. years, ere the departure out of *Egypt*. Let us therefore consider, besides the blindness of *Sejoftris* the second, how great the power of the *Regents* or *Vice-Royes* in *Egypt* was; and how great confidence the kings did put in them, seeing *Joseph* ruled with such full power, that hee bought all *Egypt*, and all the *Egyptians* for bread; giving at the same time the best of the land to his own father and brethren for nothing: seeing also that when the *Egyptians* cried out upon *Pharaoh* for bread; *Pharaoh* said to all the *Egyptians*, Go to *Joseph*; what he saith to you, do ye. If to a stranger born, lately fetcht out of prison, a king well able to have governed himself, would give such trust, and sovereign authority; it is not unlikely that a blind Prince should do it to a man of especial reputation. For God often prospers, not onely the good (such as *Joseph* was) but wicked men also, as his instruments against the day of wrath. Therefore perhaps the king did (as many have done) resigne his kingdom to him, though his reign was not accounted to have begun, till the death of *Sejoftris*. But whether *Busiris* did usurp the kingdom, or protection of the land by violence: or whether the blind king resigned it, keeping the title; or whether *Busiris* were onely *Regent*, whilst the king lived, and afterwards (as is acknowledged by all) king himself; it might wel be said that *Pharaohs* daughter took up *Moses*, and that *Pharaoh* vexed *Israel*; seeing he both at that time was king in effect, and shortly after, king in deed and title both. It were not absurd for us to say, that the blind king *Sejoftris* the second oppressed *Israel*: but forasmuch as it may seem that the wicked *Tyrant* shewed his evil nature even when he first arose: I think it more likely, that *Busiris* did it, using at first the power of a king, and shortly after the title. Thus of the 122. years which passed between the beginning of *Sejoftris* his reign, and the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, 47. being spent; the 75. which remain, are to be accounted to *Busiris*, or *Orus* the second, and his children. *Busiris* himself reigned 30. years, according to *Eufratius*: whom very many judicious Authors herein approve. After him his daughter, who took *Moses* out of the water, is said by all that I have read, to have reigned 12. years. Her name was *Thermutis* *Pharis*, or *Muthis*, according to *Cedrenus*: *Eufratius* calls her *Aencenis*; and out of *Artabanus* his History, *Meris*: *Joseph* calls her both *Aencenere*, and *Thermutis*. *Epiphanius* in Panario faith, that she was honoured afterward of the *Egyptians*, by the name of *Thermutis* the daughter of *Amenoph*, the son of *Pharaoh*. Of this last title question might be made, and much spoken: for the Scriptures call her not *Pharaohs* sons daughter, but *Pharaohs* daughter.

## §. VIII.

*Of the two brethren of Queen Thermutis : and what king it was, under whom Moses was*

She had two brethren : the one was *Rathoris*, or *Athoris*, who succeeded her ; the other *Telegonus*, who is onely named by *Euſebius* ; but his lineage and off-ſpring deſcribed by *Reimeccius*. *Rathoris* after his ſiſters death reigned nine years : after whom *Chenecres*, thought to be his ſon, reigned ten years, and then periſhed in the Red Sea. During the reign of *Chenecres*, *Euſebius* ſaith, that *Telegonus* begat *Epaphus* upon *Io* : of which Hiſtory elſewhere he reporteth otherwiſe. After the death of *Chenecres* (whom ſome call *Acemcheres* : but all or moſt do ſtile *Quivus*, a fighter againſt God) *Acherres* reigned 8. years ; and then *Cherres* 15. This deſcent ſeems from father to ſon. In the 11. year of *Cherres* it is ſaid by *Euſebius*, that *Epaphus* reigning in the lower part of *Egypt*, built *Memphis*. This is an argument of that which otherwiſe was not unlikely : viz. that *Egypt* was greatly brought out of order by the plagues which God had laid upon it, and the deſtruction of her King and Army in the Red Sea : elſe could it not have had two reigning in it at once ; the latter of whom, or his poſterity, ſeems to have taken ſo all from *Cherres* the grand-child of *Chenecres*. For whereas *Armais* is ſaid to have reigned four years after *Cherres* : and *Armeſſis* one after *Armais* : theſe two kings are by *Euſebius* and others accounted as one, and his reign ſaid to have been five years. His name is called *Armeus*, otherwiſe *Danans* : and his pedigree thus deſcribed by *Reimeccius* in hiſtor. *Julia*.

Telegonus :  
Epaphus :  
Lybia, who had



*Agenor, Belus, and Busiris.*

7

*Egyptus* or *Rameſſes*, who gave name to the Countrey, having expelled his brother *Danaus*, reigned, and begat *Lyncus*, married to *Hypermnestra*.

*Danaus or Armenus* expelled by his brother *Ægyptus*, after hee had reigned five yeers, became king of *Argos* in *Greece*: was father to *Hypermnestra*.

How it might come to passe that the Nephews sons of *Epaphus* should have occupied the Kingdom after *Cherres*, it is hard to say : considering that *Epaphus* himself is reported by *Eusebius* to have been born in the time of *Chenres*. But forasmuch as the History of *Epaphus* his birth, is diversely related by *Eusebius*, it may suffice, that *Belus*, the father of *Damius* and *Aegyptus*, otherwise called *Armenus* and *Ramefess*, was equally distant from *Buthris* or *Orus* the second, with *Cherres* the grand-child of *Chenres*. And that the posterity of *Telegonus* did marry very young, it appears by the History

of these two brethren, *Danau* and *Egyptus* : of whom the former had 50. daughters, the latter 50. sons : perhaps, or rather questionlesse, by divers women : yet surely they began to beget children in their first youth : Howsoever it were, the generall consent of writers is, that *Armenus* or *Danau* did succeed *Cherres* : and (according to *Eusebius* and good Authors approving him) reigned five years. *Rameffes* followed, who reigned 68. years. This *Rameffes* or *Egyptus*, is that *Armesesimiamum*, or *Armesimianus*, under whom, in the opinion of *Mercator*, and of *Bunting* that follows *Mercator*, *Moses* was born : and the cruell *Edith* made of drowning the Hebrew children. The length of his reign seems to me the chiefe, if not the onely ground of *Mercator*'s opinion. For whereas the Lord said to *Moses*, *Go, return to Egypt, for they are all dead which went about to kill thee* : *Mercator* hereupon conceives, that it was one and the same king under whom *Moses* was born, and under whom he slew the *Egyptian* at the 40. yeer of his age : and fled into the wilderness, and there abode for fear : all which circumstances could agree with none, but this *Rameffes*, who reigned so long : wherefore desirous rather to hold a true Paradox, than a common error, he placeth one *Alisfragmuthosis* (whose name is found in the list of *Egyptian* kings, but the time uncertain wherein he reigned) in an age 112. or 113. years more ancient than others left him in : and so continuing the Catalogue of his successors from *Themosis* (whom *Eusebius* calls *Amasis*) downwards, with no other variation of the length of each mans reign, than is the difference between *Manetho* and *Eusebius*, he findes *Moses* born under *Armesesimiamum*, and *Israel* delivered in the dayes of his son *Amenophis*. The very name of *Alisfragmuthosis* seems to him with little alteration to sound like *Pharater*, of which name one was thought to have flourished either as a king, or a wife man, about the time of *Isaac*. For (saith he) from *Alisfragmuthosis* to *Phragmuthosis*, *Pharmuthosis*, or *Pharater*, the change is not great. *Mercator* was a man of excellent learning and industry : and one to whom the world is bound for his many notable works : yet my assent herein is withheld from him, by these reasons. First, I see all other Writers agree, that *Chenres* was king, who was drowned in the Red Sea. Secondly, the place. *Exod. 4. all are dead, &c.* may better be understood of *Eufiris* and all his children, than of one king alone. Thirdly, *S. Cyril* in his first book against *Julian the Apostata*, saith, that *Dardanus* built *Dardania*, when *Moses* was 120. yeeres old : *Rameffes*, which was this *Armesesimiamum*, being then king of *Egypt*. After *Rameffes*, *Amenophis* reigned 19. yeeres : who is thought by *Mercator*, and peremptorily by *Bunting* pronounced, to be the King that perished in the Red Sea : of which our opinion being already layed open, I think it most expedient to referre the kings ensuing to their own times (which a *Chronologicall Table* shall lay open) and here to speak of that great deliverance of *Israel* out of *Egypt* : which for many great considerations depending thereupon, we may not lightly over-passe.

40

CHAP. 5.

## CHAP. III.

of the delivery of *Israel* out of *Egypt*.

## §. 1.

10 of the time of *Moses* birth, and how long the *Israelites* were oppressed in *Egypt*.

**T**Rue it is that the History it selfe is generally and well knowne : yet concerning the time of *Moses* his birth, who was the excellent and famous instrument of this and other great workes of the Highest, the different opinions are very neere as many, as the men that have written of that Argument.

*L. Vives* in his annotations upon *S. Augustine* citeth very many of their conjectures : as that of *Porphyrie* out of *Sanchoniato*, that *Moses* lived in the time of *Semiramis* : 20 But if he did meane the first *Semiramis*, it was but a fond conceit : for besides that the same is contrary to all Stories divine and human ; while that *Semiramis* lived, the commanded *Syria*, and all the parts thereof absolutely : neither were the *Ammonites*, or *Mobabites*, or *Edomites*, while she ruled, in verum natura.

A second opinion he remembreth of *Appion*, taken from *Ptolemy* a Priest of *Mender*, who saith that *Moses* was borne while *Inachus* did rule the *Argives*, and *Amesies* in *Egypt*.

The third opinion is taken out of *Polemon*, in his *Greeke History*, the first Booke : that *Moses* was borne while *Apis* the third King ruled *Argos*.

A fourth is borrowed from *Tatianus Assyrius*, who though he cite some authorities, 30 that *Moses* lived after the *Trojan* war, is himselfe of opinion, that *Moses* was far more ancient, proving it by many arguments.

Fifthly, he setteth downe the testimony of *Numinius* the Philosopher, who took *Musæus* and *Moses* to be one : confirming the same out of *Artapanas*, who confelleth that *Moses* was called *Musæus*, by the *Grecians* : and who farther delivereth that he was adopted by *Chenephis*, or *Thermuthis*, the daughter of *Egypt* : the same which *Eupolemus* calleth *Meris* ; others (as *Rabanus Maurus*) *Thermothos*. *Eusebius* also affirmeth, that by *Eupolemus* in his first booke de bono, *Moses*, vir Deo conjungissimus, is called *Musæus* *Judeorum*. *Eusebius* in his Chronology, findes that *Moses* was borne while *Amenophis* ruled *Egypt*. The ancient *Manethon* calls that *Pharao*, which lived at *Moses* birth, *Thumosis* or 40 *Thmofis* : the same per chance which *Appion* the Grammarian will have to be *Amofis*, and elsewhere *Amenophis* the Father of *Sethosis* : to whom *Lyimachus* and *Cornelius Tacitus* gave the name of *Bocchoris*. To me it seemes most probable, that while *Saphrus*, called also *Spherus* or *Iphereus*, governed *Assyria* ; *Orthopolis*, *Siryonia* ; and *Criafus* the *Argives* ; that then (*Sesoftris* the second ruling in *Egypt*) *Moses* was borne. For if we belevee Saint *Augustine*, it was about the end of *Cecrops* time, that *Moses* led *Israel* out of *Egypt*. *Educi* *Moses ex Ægypto populum Dei novissimo tempore Cecropis Atheniensium Regis* ; *Moses* Aug. l. 18. c. 11. de civit. Dei.

(saith he) led the people of God out of *Egypt*, about the end of *Cecrops* time, King of the *Athenians*. In this sort therefore is the time of *Moses* birth, and of his departure out of *Egypt* best proved. *S. Augustine* affirmes (as before remembred) that *Moses* was borne, 50 *Saphrus* governing *Assyria* ; and that he left *Egypt* about the end of *Cecrops* time. Now *Saphrus* ruled 20. yeeres ; his successor *Mameus* 30. yeeres ; *Spartus* after him 40. yeeres : in whose fourth yeere *Cecrops* began to governe in *Attica* : *Ascatades* followed *Spartus*, and held the Empire 41. So as *Moses* being borne while *Saphrus* ruled *Assyria* ; *Orthopolis* *Siryonia* ; and *Criafus* *Argos* (for these three Kings lived at once at his birth, saith *S. Augustine*, as *Cecrops* did when he departed *Egypt*) it will follow that the birth of *Moses* was in the nineteenth yeere of the *Assyrian Saphrus* : for take one yeere remaining of 20. (for so long *Saphrus* reigned) to which adde the thirty yeeres of *Mameus*, and the 40. yeeres of *Spartus*, these make 71. with which there were waited three yeeres

Euseb. de prep. Evang. l. 3. c. 3.

Aug. l. 18. c. 11. de civit. Dei.

2514.

years of *Cecrops* his 50. years : then take nine years out of the reign of *Ascatades*, who was *Spartus* successor, those nine yeeres added to 71. make 80. at which age *Moses* left *Egypt* : and add these nine yeeres to the three yeeres of *Cecrops* formerly spent, there will remaine but foure yeeres of *Cecrops* his 50. and so it falleth right with *S. Augustine* words, affirming that towards the end of *Cecrops* his time, *Moses* led the people of *Israel* out of *Egypt*.

Now the time in which the *Hebrews* were oppress'd in *Egypt*, seemeth to have had beginning some eight or nine yeeres before the birth of *Moses*, and 54. yeeres, or rather more after *Joseph* : between whose death and the birth of *Moses*, there were consumed 64. yeeres, some of which time, and 80 yeeres after, they lived in great servitude and misery. For as it is written in *Exodus* : *They set task-masters over them, to keepe them under with burdens : and they built the Cities, Pithoms and Ramesses, &c. And by cruelty they caused the children of Israel to serve ; and made them weary of their lives, by sore labour in clay and bricke, and in all worke of the field, with all manner of bondage. All which laid up on them by a mastering power and strong hand, they endured to the time by the wisdom of God appointed : even from 54. yeeres, or not much more after the death of Joseph, who left the World when it had lasted 2370. yeeres to the eightieth yeere of Moses, and untill he wrought his miracles in the field of Zoan, which he performed in the Worlds age 2514. towards the end thereof, according to *Codoman*, or after our account, 2513. And because those things which we deliver of *Egypt*, may the better be understood, I thinke it necessary to speak a few words of the principall place therein named, in this discourse.*

## §. II.

Of divers Cities and places in *Egypt*, mentioned in this Story, or elsewhere in the Scripture.

This City which the *Hebrews* call *Zoan*, was built seven yeeres after *Hebron*. *Ezechiel* calleth it *Taphnes* ; and so doth *Hieremy* ; the *Septuagint*, *Tanais* ; *Josephus*, *Protopolis* ; after the name of an Egyptian Queen ; *Antoninus* gives it the name of *Thanis* ; *Hegeffus*, *Thamus* ; and *William Tyrinus*, *Tapis*. It adjoyneth to the land of *Gosen*, is the same, wherein *Hieremy* the Prophet was stoned to death, for preaching against the Egyptian and Jewish Idolatry.

*Zoan* or *Taphnes* was in *Moses* time the Metropolis of the lower *Egypt*, in which their *Pharaohs* then commonly resided ; and not unlikely to be the same City, where *Abraham* in his time found him. But *Eusebius* out of *Artapanus* affirmeth, that *Abraham* did reade Astronomy in *Heliopolis*, or *On*, to *Pharethes* King of *Egypt*. *Alex. Polybistor*, out of *Eusebius* hath it otherwise, saying, that *Abraham* instructed the Egyptian Priests, and not the King ; both which authorities *Eusebius* citeth. The *Septuagint*, and the *Vulgar* edition, for *Zoan* write *Heliopolis*, *Paginis*, *Vatablus*, *Junius*, and our *English* call it *On* ; and *Ptolomy*, *Onium*. There are two Cities of that name ; the one on the frontier of the lower *Egypt*, towards the South ; the other somewhat lower on the Easter-moſt branch of *Nile* falling into the Sea at *Pelusium*. And it may be that *Heliopolis* to the South of the river *Trojan*, was the same which *Vatablus* and our *English* call *Aven*. Of the latter it is, that the Scriptures take certain knowledge ; the same which *Pompilius*, *Mela*, and *Pliny* call *Solis oppidum* ; *Tyrinus* in the *Holy War*, *Malbec* ; the *Arabians*, *Babalbeth* ; and *Simon Sethi*, *Fons Solis*. Of this *Heliopolis*, or *On*, was *Potiphar* Priest, or Prince, whose daughter *Joseph* married. In the Territory adjoining *Jacob* inhabited, while he lived in *Egypt*. In the confines of this City, *Onias*, the high Priest of the *Jews*, built a Temple, dedicated to the eternal God ; not much inferior to that of *Hierusalem* (*Ptolomy Philopater* then governing in *Egypt*) which stood in the time of *Vespasian*, 333. yeeres after the foundation by *Onias*, whom *Josephus* falsely reporteth herein to have fulfilled a prophecy of *Esaie*, c. 19. *In die illa erit Altare Domini in medio terre Egypti ; In that day shall the Altar of the Lord be in the midst of the Land of Egypt. Antiochus Epiphanes* at the time of the building tyrannizing over the *Jews*, gave the occasion for the erecting of this Temple in *Egypt*. Lastly, there it was that our Saviour *Christ Jesus* remained, while *Joseph* and the Virgin *Mary* feared the violence of *Herod* : neer which (saith *Brochard*) the founda-

Num. 33.  
Ezechiel 30.  
Hierem. 2. 43.  
44. 45.  
Joseph 1. 1. c. 9.  
Tyr. de Bel. fac.  
1. 19. c. 23.  
Euseb. de prep.  
Evangel. 1. 9. c. 4.  
Gen. 12. 15.  
Esaie 19. 11.

tain is still found, called *Jesus moly*, whose streams do afterward water the Gardens of *Balsamum*, no-where else found in *Egypt*. And hereof see more in *Brochard*, in his description of *Egypt*.

There is also the City of *Noph*, remembered by *Esaie* and *Ezechiel*, the same which *Hebraei* 19. 13. call *Memphis*, and so the *Septuagint* write it. It is known to the *Arabians* by the name of *Mayar*. The *Chaldeans* name it *Alchabyn* ; and *Judaeis* *Mizraim*. *Pelusiuni*, which *Vatablus*, *Paginis*, *Junius*, and our *English* write *Sin* ; the *Septuagint* call it *Sais* ; and *Antoninus*, *Lebna* ; is not the same with *Damiatra*, as *Gul. Tyrinus* witnesseth. In the time of *Baldwin* the third, *Pelusiuni* was called *Belbeis*. *Belbeis* (saith *Tyrinus*) quæ olim dicta est *Belusiuni* ; *Belbeis*, that in times past was called *Pelusiuni*.

The City of *No*, the *Septuagint* call *Diospolis*. Of which name there are two or three in *Egypt*. *Hierome* converts it *Alexandria*, by anticipation, because it was so called in the future.

*Belusius*, (for so *Hierome* and *Zeigler* do write it) is the same which the *Hebrews* call *Pitheth*.

To make the story the more perceivable, I have added a description of the land of *Gosen*, in which the *Israelites* inhabited ; with whose Cities and places so often remembered in the Scripture : as of *Taphnes* or *Zoan*, *Heliopolis* or *Bethsemer*, *Balsophon*, *Succoth*, and the rest ; together with *Moser* passage through the Desarts of Arabia the Story. For all story without the knowledge of the places wherein the actions were performed, as it wanteth a great part of the pleasure ; so it no way enricheth the knowledge and understanding of the Reader ; neither doth any thing serve to retain, what we read, in our memories, so well as these pictures and descriptions do. In which respect I am driven to digresse in many places, and to interpose some such discourse, otherwise seeming impertinent : taking for my authority, after many others more ancient, that great learned man, *Arias Montanus* ; who in his Preface to the Story of the Holy Land, hath these words : *Si enim absque locorum observatione res gesta narrantur, aut sine Topographiæ cognitione historice legantur, adeo confusa atque perturbata erunt omnia, ut ex his nihil non obscurum, nihil non difficile elici possit ;* If narration (saith he) be made of those things which are performed, without the observation of the places, wherein they were done : or if Histories be read without Topographical knowledge ; all things will appear so intricate and confused, as we shall thereby understand nothing but obscurely, nor draw thence any knowledge, but with the greatest difficulty.

## §. III.

Of the cruelty against the *Israelites* young children in *Egypt* : and of *Moses* his preservation and education.

But to return to the story it self. It appeareth that notwithstanding the labour and slavery, which the *Israelites* endured, yet they decreased not in numbers : in so much as *Pharaoh* considering the danger of discontented poverty, and the able bodies of an oppressed multitude, how perillous they might be to his estate, by suggestion of the Devil, resolved to slaughter all the male children of the *Hebrews*, as soon as they should be born. To which end he sent for *Sephora* and *Thura*, women the most famous and expert amongst them, quæ præerant (saith *Cornelius*) multitudinis obstetricum, who had command given them over all mid-wives ; by whom (as it seemeth) he gave order to all the rest for the execution of his Edict. For to have called all the Mid-wives of *Egypt* together, had been a strange Parliament. Now whether these two (before named) were of the *Hebrews*, or of the *Egyptians*, it is diversly disputed. *S. Augustine* calls them *Hebrews*, because it is written *Exodus* the first, *The King of Egypt commanded the Mid-wives of the Hebrew women, &c.* But *Josephus*, *Ablenus*, and *Pererius* believe them to be *Egyptians*. Whosoever they were, when it pleased God to frustrate the execution of that secret murder, to the end the world might witness both the wickedness of the *Egyptians*, and the just cause, thereby made manifest, of his future indignation and revenge : *Pharaoh* finding these women filled with piety, and the fear of God, commanded

Ver. 15.  
Joseph. ant. l. 2.  
Aval. & Perer.  
in exod.

commanded others of his people to execute his former intent; and publicly, or howsoever, to destroy all the male Hebrew children born within his dominions.

Now besides the doubts, which Pharaoh had of the multitudes of the Hebrews, the greatest part of whom he might have assured, by affording them the justice which every King oweth to his vassals, and the rest he might have employed or sent away at his pleasure; Joseph giveth another cause of his rage against them, namely, That it was prophetically delivered him by an Egyptian Priest, that among the Hebrews there should be born a child, who growing to mans estate, should become a plague and terror to his whole Nation. To prevent which, (and presuming that he could resist the ordinance of God, by a mean, contrary to the laws of heaven and of nature) he stretched out his bloody and merciless hand to the execution of his former intent. The same prevention Herod long after practised, when fearing the spirituall Kingdom of Christ, as if it should have been temporal, he caused all the male children at that time born, to be slaughtered. And that Pharaoh had some kind of foreknowledge of the future successe, it may be gathered by these his own words, in the tenth verse of the fifth of Exodus: *Come, let us work wisely with them, lest they multiply; and it come to passe, that if there be war, they joyne themselves also unto our enemies, and fight against us, and get them out of the Land.* But we see, and time hath told it us from the beginning, how God derideth the wisdom of the worldly men, when forgetting the Lord of all power, they rely on the inventions of their own most feeble, and altogether darkened understanding. For even by the hands of the dearly beloved daughter of this tyrant, was that great Prophet and Minister of Gods marvellous works taken out of Nilus, being thereinto turned off, in an Ark of reeds, a sucking and powerlesse infant. And this Princeesse having beheld the child his form and beauty, though but yet in the blouth, so pierced her compassion, as she did not only preserve it, and cause it to be fostered; but commanded that it should be esteemed as her own, and with equal care to the son of a King nourished. And for memory that it was her deed, she called the child *Moses*, as it were, *extrañus* or *ereptus*, taken out, to wit, out of the water: or after *Josephus* and *Clycas*, *Moy*, a voice expressing water, and *titus*, as much to say, as that which is drawn out of water, or thence taken. *Clement Alexandrinus* was of opinion, that *Moses* was circumcised before he was put in to the Ark of reeds, and that *Amram* his father had named him *Joachim*. In his youth he was carefully bred, by the care, and at the charge of Pharaohs daughter, and by men of the most understanding, taught and instructed: *quem regio more educavit, presefectis sapientibus Egyptiorum Magistris, a quibus erudiretur*, saith *Basil*; unto whom she gave princely education, appointing over him wise masters of the Egyptians for his instructors. Thereby (say *Josephus* and *Philo*) he became excellently learned in all the doctrine of the Egyptians; which also the Martyr *Stephen* in the seventh of the Acts confirmeth; And *Moses* was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians. Which wisdom or sapience, such as it was, or at least so much thereof as *Six. Senensis* hath gathered, we have added, between the death of *Moses*, and the reign of *Josiah*.

## §. IV.

Of *Moses* his flying out of Egypt; and the opinions of certain ancient Historians of his war in *Aethiopia*; and of his marriage there: *Philo* his judgement of his Pastoral life: and that of *Pererius* of the Books of *Genesis* and *Job*.

When *Moses* was grown to mans estate, *Josephus* and *Eusebius* out of *Artapanus*, tell us of ten years war that he made against the *Aethiopians*: of the besieging of *Saba*, afterward by *Cambyser*, called *Meroe*; and how he recovered that City by the favour of *Tharbis*, a daughter of *Aethiopia*, whom he took to wife. So hath *Comefor* a so pretty tale of *Moses*. How after the end of that war, *Tharbis* resisting his return into Egypt, *Moses* most skillfull in *Astronomy*, caused two Images to be engraven in two precious stones, whereof the one increased memory; the other caused forgetfulness. These he set in two rings; whereof he gave the one, to wit, that of oblivion, to his wife *Tharbis*, reserving the other of memory for himself: which ring of forgetfulness, after she had a while worn, she began to neglect the love she bare her husband; and so *Moses* without danger returned into Egypt. But leaving these fancies to the Authors of them: It is true, that about the 40. year of *Moses* age, when he beheld an

*Egyptian*

*Egyptian* offering violence to one of the oppressed Hebrews, moved by compassion, in respect of his brother, and stirred up by disdain against the other, in the contention he slew the Egyptian. Soon after which fact, finding a disposition in some of his own Nation to accuse him, for whose defence he had thus greatly endangered his own life: by the ordinance and advice of God, whose chosen servant he was, he fled into *Arabia Petrea*, the next bordering Countrie to Egypt; where wandering all alone, as a man left and forsaken, in a place unknown unto him, as among a Nation of barbarous strangers; and who in future times were the irreconcilable enemies of the Hebrews: it pleased God (working the greatest things by the weakest worldly means) to make the watering of a few sheep, and the assisting of the Daughters of *Raguel* the *Madianite*, an occasion whereby to provide him a wife of one of those, and a father in law, that fed him, and sustained him in a Country neereft Egypt, fittest to returne from; necessary to be known, because interjacent between Egypt and *Judea*, through which he was to lead the *Israelites*; and wherein God held him, till the occasion which God presented, best served. And lastly, where the glory of the world shined least, amidst mountainous Desarts, there the glory of God, which shineth most, covered him over, and appeared unto him, not finding him as a Kings son, or an adopted child of great Pharaohs daughter, but as a meek and humble shepherd, sitting at a mountains foot, a keeper and commander of those poor beasts only.

In that part of *Arabia* neer *Madian*, he consumed 40. yeers. And though (as *Philo* in the story of *Moses* life observeth) he did not neglect the care of those flocks, committed to his charge, but that he excelled all others in that Pastoral knowledge; yet in that solitary Desert he enjoyed himself; and being separate from the preasse of the world, and the troublesome affairs thereof, he gave himself to contemplation, and to make perfect in himself all those knowledges, whereof his younger yeers had gathered the grounds and principles: the same Author also judging that his Pastoral life did excellently prepare him for the execution of the Principality, which he afterward obtained. *Est enim (saith Philo) ars Pastoralis, quasi praeludium ad regnum, hoc est, ad regimen hominum, gregis mansuetissimi. Quemadmodum bellicosa ingenia præexercent se in venationibus, experientia in feris, quod postea in militia & bello perfectura sunt; brutis præbentibus materiam exercitii, tam belli quam pacis tempore. At vero præfectura mansueti pecoris, habet quiddam simile cum regno in subditis; ideoque Reges cognominantur Pastores populorum, non contumeliosi, sed honoris gratia; The art of keeping sheep is, as it were, an introductory exercise unto a Kingdom, namely, the rules over men, the most gentle flock: Even as warlike natures do before-hand exercise themselves in hunting, practising on wild beasts those things, which after they will accomplish in warfare: those brute beasts affording matter, wherein to train themselves, both in time of war and of peace. But the government of gentle cattell, hath a kinde of resemblance unto a Kingly rule over subjects; therefore Kings are stiled shepherds of the people, not in way of reproach, but for their honour.*

That *Moses*, in this time of his abode at *Madian*, wrote the Book of *Job*, as *Pererius* supposeth, I cannot judge of it, because it is thought, that *Job* was at that time living. Neither dare I subscribe to *Pererius* opinion, That *Moses* while he lived in that part of *Arabia*, wrote the Book of *Genesis*; although I cannot deny the reason of *Pererius* conjecture, That by the example of *Jobs* patience he might strengthen the oppressed Hebrews: and by the promises of God to *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, put them in assurance of their delivery from the Egyptian Slavery, and of the Land of rest, and plentie promised.

Of this calling back into Egypt by the Angell of God, and the marvels and wonders which he performed, thereby to persuade Pharaoh, that he was the messenger of so the most High, the particulars are written in the first fourteen Chapters of *Exodus*; and therefore to treat of all the particulars therein contained, it were needlesse. But for the first, it is to be noted, that when *Moses* desired to be taught by God, by what name he should make him known, and by whom he was sent; he received from God so much, as a man could comprehend of his infinite and ever-being nature. Out of which he delivered him in the first part of his answer, a name to be considered of by the wisest: and in his second, to be understood by all. For there is nothing that is, or hath being of it self, but the Eternal: which truly is; which is above all; which is immutable. The bodies of men are changed every moment: their substance wasteth, and is repaired by nutriment,

Hier. ad Dam.

C. 40. v. 13.

C. 15. v. 5.

Epiphani. l. 1.  
cont. Hæres.

ment; never continuing at one stay, nor being the same so long as while one may say, Now. Likewise, whatsoever is consumed in the longest continuance of time, the same in every shortest piece of time suffereth decay; neither doth any thing abide in one state. *Una est Dei & sola natura que vere est: id enim quod subsistit, non habet aliunde, sed suum est. Cetera que creata sunt, etiamsi videntur esse, non sunt, quia aliquando non fuerunt, & potest rursum non esse, quod non fuit; It is the one and only nature of God, which truly is: for he hath his being of himself, and not from any thing without him. Other things that are created, although they seem to be, yet they are not; for sometimes they were not: and that which hath not been, may again want being. And with this, in respect of the divine nature, the saying of Zeno Eleates excellently agreeth: *Tota rerum natura umbra est, aut inanis, aut fallax; The whole nature of things is but a shadow, either empty or deceitfull: in comparison of whom (saith Esay) all Nations are as nothing, lesse than nothing, and meer vanity.**

Of the ten plagues wherewith the Egyptians were stricken, the first was by changing the Rivers into blood: God punishing them by those waters, into which their Forefathers had thrown, and in which they had drowned the innocent children of the Hebrews. To which this place of the Revelation may be fitly applied: *And I heard the Angel of the water say, Lord, thou art just, which art, and which wast; and holy, because thou hast judged these things; for they shed the blood of thy Saints and Prophets, and therefore hast thou given them blood to drink.*

The rest of the plagues by Frogs, Lice, Flies, or stinging Wasps; by the death of their Cattell; by leprous Scabs; by Haile and Fire; by Grasshoppers; by Darknesse; after which Pharaoh forbade Moses his presence: moved the hardened heart of the unbelieving King, no longer, than the pain and perill lasted; till such time as his own first-born, and the first-born of all his Nation perished. He then, while he feared his own life, (a time wherein we remember God performe) stood upon no condition: whereas before, he first yielded but to the departure of the men; then of the men, women, and children, reserving their bestiall; but he was now content for the present, that the Israelites should not onely depart with all their own, but with a part of the Silver, Gold, and Jewels, of his own people: of which (the fear being past) he suddenly repented, as him, as his pursuit after them proved. For when every one of the Hebrews had (according to direction from Moses received) slain a Lamb, without spot or blemish, for the Passover, (a Sacrament of the most clean and unsported Saviour,) and with the blood thereof coloured the post and lintern of the doors; the Angel of God in the night smote every first-born of Egypt, from the son of the King, to that of the Beggar and Slave: the children of the Israelites excepted. At which terrible judgement of God, Pharaoh being more than ever amazed, yeelded, as before is said, to their departure. The Egyptians (saith Epiphanius) did in after-times imitate this colouring with blood, which the Israelites used after the Passover; ascribing an exceeding virtue to the Red Colour: and therefore they did not onely mark their Sheep and Cattell, but their Trees bearing Fruit, to preserve them from lightning and other harms.

## §. V.

Of Pharaohs pursuit of the Israelites: and of their passage towards the Red Sea, so far as Succoth.

Now, when the people were removed, and on their way, (his heart being hardened by God) he bethought him as well of the honour lost, as of the shame remaining after so many Calamities and Plagues, in suffering them to depart with the spoils of his people, and in despite of himself. And having before this time great Companies of Souldiers in readinesse, he consulted with himself what way the Israelites were like to take. He knew that the shortest and fairest passage was through the Country of the Philistines. But because these people were very strong, and a warlike Nation, and in all probability of his Allies, he suspected that Moses meant to finde some other out-let, to wit, through the Defart of Etham; and there, because the Country was exceeding mountainous, and of hard access, and that Moses was pestered with multitudes of Women, Children, and Cattell, he thought it impossible for the Israelites to escape

escape him that way. In the mean while having gathered together all the Chariots of Egypt, and 600. of his own, and Captains over them; he determined to set upon them in the plains of Gosen, which way soever they turned themselves. For it was the ancient manner to fight in those Chariots, armed with broad and sharp hooks on both sides, in fashion like the Mowers sythe. Which kinde of fight in Chariots, but not hooked, the Britains used against the Romans, while they made the war for the conquest of this Land. Of this Army of Pharaoh, Josephus affirmeth, that it consisted of 50000. Horse, and 20000. Foot; which, were it true, then it cannot be doubted but that Pharaoh intended long before to assaile the Hebrews at their departure, or to destroy them in Gosen; and refused them passage, till such time as he had prepared an Army to set on them. For, as it is written in the first of Exodus, he doubted two things, either that the Hebrews might joyn themselves to his enemies within the Land; or being so multiplied, as they were, might leave his service, and get themselves thence at their pleasure. But the plagues which God grieved him withall, enforced him at this time to give an assent to their departure: perchance fore-running his intent. But were it otherwise, and Josephus partial in this affair, yet by the words of the Text it appeareth, that he gathered all the Chariots of Egypt, which could not be done in haste. For Moses made but three dayes march, ere Pharaoh was at his heels; and yet the last day he went on sixteen miles: which, in so hot a country, and to drive their cattell and sheep with them, pestered with a world of women and children, was a march witnessing the dread of a powerfull Enemy at hand. Now, as Moses well knew that he went out with a mighty hand, and that God guided his understanding in all his enterprizes; so he lay not still in the ditch crying for help, but using the understanding which God had given him, he left nothing unperformed becoming a wife man, and a valiant and skilfull Conductor; as by all his actions and counsells from this day to his death, well appeared.

When Moses perceived that Pharaoh was enraged against him, and commanded him not to dare to come thenceforth into his presence: after that he had warned Israel of the Passover, he appointed a generall Assembly or Rende-vous of all the Hebrews at Ramses, in the territory of Gosen; a City standing indifferent to receive from all parts of the Country the dispersed Hebrews: and gave commandment, that every Family should bring with them such store as they had of dough, and paste, not staying to make it into bread: knowing then that Pharaoh was on foot, and on his way towards them. Which done, and having considered the great strength of Pharaohs Horse-men and Chariots, of which kinde of defence Moses was utterly unprovided (though, as it is written, the Israelites went up armed) he marched from Ramses East-ward, towards the Defarts of Etham, and incamped at Succoth; which he performed on the fifteenth day of the moneth Abib: which moneth from that time forward they were commanded to account as the first moneth of the year. Whether in former times they had been accustomed to begin their year in some other moneth, following the manner of the Egyptians, and were now recalled by Moses to the rule of their fore-fathers, it is uncertain. Certain it is, that they had, and retained another beginning of their politick year, which was not now abrogated, but rather by some solemnities thereunto annexed, was confirmed, and still continued in use. Wherefore in referring things done, or happening among them, unto the beginning, midst, or ending of the year; that distinction of the Sacred and the Politick year is not to be neglected. Concerning the number of dayes in every moneth, and the whole form of their year, like enough it is that Moses himself in forty yeeres space, did sufficiently instruct the Priests, to whose care the ordering thereof (as common opinion holds) was given in trust: but that any rule of framing their Kalendar was made publick, before the captivity of Babylon, I do not find. Now because time and motion begin together, it will not, I think, be any great breach of order, to shew here at their first setting forth, what was the form of the Hebrew year: with the difference between them and other Nations in ordering the account of time.

T

§. VI.

## §. VI.

Of the Solary and Lunary yeers; and how they are reconciled: with the form of the Hebrew year, and their manner of intercalation,

The Hebrew Moneths are thus named.

The first Moneth, *Nisan*, or *Abib*.  
 The second, *Iar*, or *Tiar*, *Zio*, or *Zin*.  
 The third, *Sivan*, or *Sinan*, or *Siban*.  
 The fourth, *Tammuz*.  
 The fifth, *Ab*.  
 The sixth, *Ebul*.  
 The seventh, *Tisri*, or *Ethavin*, or *Ethanim*.  
 The eighth, *Marchesvan*, or *Mechasvan*, or *Eul*, or with *Josephus*, *Morsonane*.  
 The ninth, *Chislev*, or *Casseu*.  
 The tenth, *Tebeth*, or *Thobeth*.  
 The eleventh, *Sebeth*, or *Sabath*.  
 The twelfth, *Adar*, and *Ve Adar*.

1. March.  
 2. April.  
 3. May.  
 4. June.  
 5. Julie.  
 6. August.  
 7. September.  
 8. October.  
 9. November.  
 10. December.  
 11. January.  
 12. February.

**V**E *Adar* was an intercalary moneth, added some yeers unto the other twelve, to make the Solary and Lunary yeer agree; which (besides the generall inconvenience that would otherwise have risen, by casting the moneths of Summer into the Winter season, to the great confusion of all account) was more necessarily to be regarded of the Hebrews, because of the divine Precept. For God appointed especial Feasts to be celebrated precisely in such a moneth of the year, and withall on a set day, both of the Moon and of the moneth; as the feast of the First-fruits; the new Moons, and the like: which could not have so been kept, if either the day of the Moon had fallen in some other part of the moneth, or the moneth it self been found far distant from his place in the season of the year.

Other Nations, the better to observe their Solemnities in the due time, & to ascertain so all reckonings and remembrances, (which is the principall commodity of time, that is the measure of endurance) were driven in like manner to make their yeers unequal, by adding sometimes, and sometimes abating one or more dayes, as the error committed in foregoing yeers required. The error grew at first, by not knowing what number of dayes made up a complete year. For though by the continuall course of the Sun, causing Summer and Winter duly to succeed each other, it is plain enough, even to the most savage of all people, when a year hath passed over them; yet the necessity of ordinary occurrences, that are to be numbered by a shorter tally, makes this long measure of whole yeers insufficient for the smaller sort of more daily affaires. Therefore men observed the monethly conspicuous revolution of the Moon, by which they divided the year into twelve parts, subdividing the moneth into 29. dayes & nights, & those again into their quarters and hours. But as the marks of time are sensible and easily discerned; so the exact calculation of it is very intricate, and worketh much perplexity in the understanding. Twelve revolutions of the Moon, containing lesse time by 11. dayes, or thereabout, than the yearly course of the Sun through the Zodiack, in the space of sixteen yeers, every moneth was found in the quite contrary part of the year, to that wherein it was placed at the first. This caused them to adde some dayes to the year, making it to consist of 12. moneths, and as many dayes more as they thought would make the courses of the Sun and Moon to agree. But herein were committed many new errors. For neither did the Sun determine his yearly revolution by any set number of whole dayes; neither did the Moon change always at one hour; but the very minutes and lesser fractions were to be observed by him, that would seek to reduce their motions (which motions also were not still alike) into any certain rule.

Here lay much Wisdom and deep Art, which could not soon be brought to perfection. Yet as making an estimate at random, the Athenians held the year to contain three hundred and sixty dayes, wherein most of the Greeks concurred with them. That 360. dayes filled up the Grecian year (besides many collaterall proofes) it is manifest by that which *Pliny* directly affirmeth, telling of the *Statues*, erected in honour of

*Demetrius Phalerens*, which were (saith he) 360. whilest as yet the year exceeded not that number of dayes. By this account neither did any certain age of the Moon begin or end their moneths; neither could their moneths continue many yeers in their own places: but must needs be shifted by little and little from Winter to Summer, and from Summer to Winter, as the dayes forgotten to be inserted into the Almanack by men, but not forgotten by the superiour bodies in their courses, should occupy their own rooms in their due turns. Now, because the solemnity of the *Olympian* games was to be held at the full Moon, and withall, on the 15. day of the moneth *Hecatombæon* (which answereth in a manner to our *June*) they were careful to take order, that this moneth might ever begin with the new Moon; which they effected by adding some two dayes to the last moneth of every year; those games being held once in four yeers. This intercalation sufficed not to make the matter even; which caused them sometimes to intercalate one day in the fourth year, which was the second of the moneth *Ecdromion* (agreeing neerly with our *August*) sometimes not to omit it, or (which is all one) to insert another for it in their fourth Lunary year, accounting by the Moon, after a manner that was not vulgar. All this notwithstanding, their moneth of *June* would every year have grown colder and colder, had they not sought to keep all upright, by intercalating in each other *Olympiad*, that is, each eighth year, one whole moneth, which they called the second *Posidon*, or *December*; which was the device of *Harpalus*, who also taught them to make one moneth of 29. dayes, another of 30. dayes, & so successively through the whole year. Thus with much labour they kept their year as neer as they could, unto the high way of the Planets; but these marks which they observed, were found at length to be deceitfull guides. For it was not possible for to fashion this eighth yeers intercalation, that it should not deceive them in 11. hours and 18. minutes at the least, or some wayes in 34. hours and 10. minutes, or 36. and 41. minutes; which differences would in few Ages have bred much confusion. The first that introduced a good method, likely to continue, was *Meton* the Athenian, who not regarding the *Olympiads*, and the eighth yeers intercalation, devised a Cycle of 19. yeers, wherein the Moon having 235. times run out her circuit, met with the Sun in the same place, and on the same day 30. of the year, as in the 19. year before past had done. This invention of *Meton* was entertained with great applause, and passing from Greece to Rome, was there inserted into the Kalendar in Golden Letters, being called the Golden Number, which name it retaineth unto this day. Hereby were avoided the great and uncertain intercalations that formerly had been used; for by the intercalation of 7. moneths in the 19. yeers, all was so even, that no sensible difference could be found. Yet that error which in one year could not be perceived, was very apparent in a few of those Cycles; the new Moons anticipating in one Cycle 7. hours, and some minutes of the precise rule. Therefore *Calippus* devised a new Cycle, containing four of *Metons*, that is to say, 76. yeers; and afterwards *Hipparchus*, a noble *Astrologer*, framed another, containing four of *Calippus* his Periods, each of them finding some error in the former observations, which they diligently corrected. The last reformation of the Kalendar was that which *Julius Cæsar* made, who by advice of the best Mathematicians, then to be found, examining the courses of those heavenly bodies, reduced the year unto the form which is now in use with us, containing 365. dayes and six hours, which hours in four yeers make up one whole day, that is intercalated every fourth year, the 24. of February. The correction of the Julian year by *Pope Gregory* the 13. Anno Dom. 1582. is not as yet entertained by generall consent; it was indeed but as a note added unto the work of *Cæsar*: yet a note of great importance. For whereas it was observed, that the Sun, which at the time of the *Nicene Councell*, Anno Dom. 324. entered the *Equinoctiall* on the 21. day of 50 March, was in the year 1582. ten dayes sooner found, in that time *Pope Gregory* strook out of the Kalendar ten dayes, following the fourth of October, so that in stead of the fifth day was written the fifteenth; by which means the moveable Feasts depending on the Suns entrance into *Aries*, were again celebrated in such time, as at the *Nicene Councell* they had been. And the better to prevent the like alterations, it was by the Councell of Trent ordained, that from thence forward in every hundred year, the Leap-day should be omitted, excepting still the fourth hundred: because the Sun doth not in his yearly course take up full six hours above the 365. dayes; but ffaithle so many minutes, as in 400. yeers make about three whole dayes.



But the Cycle of 29. years, which the *Hebrews* used, was such as neither did need any nice curiosity of houres, minutes, and other lesser fractions to help it; neither did in summing up the dayes of the whole year, neglect the dayes of the Moon, confounding one moneth with another. For with them it fell out so, that alwaies the *Kalends* or first day of the moneth was at the new Moon; and because that day was festivall, they were very carefull as well to observe the short year of the Moon, passing through all the 12. Signes in one moneth, as that longer of the Sun, which is needfully regarded in greater accounts. First, therefore they gave it to *Nisan* their first moneth, which is about their *March* or *April*, 30. dayes; to *Iar* their second moneth 29. dayes; and so successively 30. to one, 29. to another. Hereby it came to passe, that every two moneths of theirs contained somewhat evenly two revolutions of the Moon, allowing 29. dayes 12. houres, and odde minutes, from change to change. The spare minutes were bestowed among the superfluous or Epact dayes; which made up 7. moneths in 19. years; to 6. of which, 7. were commonly given 30. dayes; to one of them 29. dayes, or otherwise as was found requisite. Their common year (as appeareth by the severall dayes of each moneth) contained 354. dayes, which fall of the year, wherein the Sun finisheth his course, 11. whole dayes, with some fractions of time. But these dayes, and other broken pieces, howsoever they were neglected in one year, yet in the Cycle of 19. years were so disposed of by convenient intercalations, that still at the end of that Cycle, both the Sun and Moon were found on the same day of the year, moneth and week, yea, commonly on the same houre of the day, where they had been at the beginning of it 19. years before.

Sig. de rep. Heb.  
lib. 3. c. 1.

Divers have diversly set down the form of the *Hebrew* year, with the manner of their Intercalations. *Signonius* tells us, that every second year they did adde a moneth of 22. dayes; every fourth year a moneth of 23. in the regard of 11. dayes and a halfe wanting in 12. Moons, to fulfill a year of the Sun. But herein *Signonius* was very much deceived. For the Moon doth never finish her course in 22. or 23. dayes: and therefore to have added so many dayes to the end of the year, had been the way to change the fashion of all the moneths in the years following, which could not have begun, as they ought, with the new Moon. *Genebrard* saith, that every third year, or second year, as so need required, they did intercalate one moneth, adding it at the years end unto the other 12. This I beleieve to have been true; but in which of the years the intercalation was (if it be worthy of consideration) me thinks they do not probably deliver, who keep all far from evenness, untill the very last of the 19. years. For (to omit such as erre grossly) some there are who say, that after three years, when besides the dayes spent in 36. courses of the Moon, 33. dayes are left remaining, that is, 11. dayes of each year; then did the *Hebrews* adde a moneth of 30. dayes; keeping three dayes, as it were, in plussage unto the next account. The like, say they, was done at the end of the sixth year; at which time, besides the Intercalary moneth, remained six dayes, namely, three surmounting that moneth, and the Epact of three years, besides the three formerly reserved. Thus they go on to the 18. year; at which time they have 18. dayes in hand: all which with the Epact of the 19. year, make up a moneth of 29. dayes, that being intercalated at the end of the Cycle, makes all even.

Genebr. Chron.  
lib. 2.

Whether this were the practice, I can neither affirm nor deny; yet surely it mult needs have bred a great confusion, if in the 18. year, every moneth were removed from his own place by the distance of 48. dayes, that is, half a quarter of the year and more; which inconvenience by such a reckoning was unavoidable. Wherefore, I preferre the common opinion, which preventeth such dislocation of the moneths, by setting down a more convenient way of Intercalation in the 8. year. For the 6. dayes remaining after the two former Intercalations made in the third and sixth years, added unto the 22. dayes, arising out of the Epacts of the 7. and 8. years, do fitly serve to make up a moneth, with the borrowing of one day or two from the year followings; and this borrowing of two dayes is so far from causing any disorder, that indeed it helps to make the years ensuing vary the lesse from the proper season of every moneth. This may suffice to be spoken of the *Hebrew* moneths and years, by which they guided their accounts.

## §. VII.

Of the passage of Israel from Succoth towards the Red Sea: and of the divers waies leading out of Egypt.

From Succoth in the morning following, *Moses* led the *Israelites* towards the Desert of *Etham*, to recover the Mountain foot, by the edge of that *Wilderness*, though he intended nothing lesse than to go out of that way, of all other the nearest. But being assured of the multitude of *Horsemen* and armed Chariots that followed him, he kept himself from being compassed, by keeping the rough and mountainous ground on his left hand. At *Etham* he rested but one night, and then he reflected back from the entrance thereof, and marched away directly towards the South; the distance between it and Succoth being about eight miles. That he forbore to enter *Arabia*, being then in sight thereof, it seemeth to proceed from three respects; the first two, naturall; the third, divine. For *Pharaoh* being then at hand, and having received intelligence of the way which *Moses* took, perfwaded himself, that the numbers which *Moses* led, consisting of above a Million, if not two Millions of souls, (for as it is written *Exod.* the 12. It is probable that all those Egyptians and others brought by the Hebrews to the knowledge of the true God, followed Moses at his departure. *Great multitudes of sundry sorts of people went out with them*) could not possibly passe over those desert and high Mountains with so great multitudes of Women, Children, and Cattell, but that at the very entrance of that falsestee he should have overtaken them, and destroyed the greatest numbers of them. For these his own words: *They are tangled in the Land, the Wilderness hath shut them in*, do shew his hopes and intents; which *Moses*, by turning another way, did frustrate. Secondly, *Moses* by offering to enter *Arabia* that way, drew *Pharaoh* toward the East-side of the Land of *Gosen*, or *Rameses*: from whence (missing *Moses* there) his pursuit after him with his Chariots was more difficult, by reason of the roughness of the way; and howsoever, yet while the *Hebrews* kept the Mountain foot on the left hand, they were better secured from the over-bearing violence both of the Horse and Chariots. Thirdly, *Moses* confidence in the All-powerfull God was such, by whose spirit, only wife, he was directed, as he rather made choice to leave the glory of his deliverance and victory to Almighty God, than either by an escape the next way, or by the strength of his multitude, consisting of 600000. men, to call the success upon his own understanding, wife conduction, or valour. The third day he marched with a double pace from *Etham* towards the Valley of *Pihacheroth*, 16. miles distant; and fate down between two ledges of Mountains adjoining to the Red Sea, to wit, the Mountains of *Etham* on the North, and *Baalzeboun* towards the South; the same which *Orosius* calleth *Climax*: on the top whereof there stood a Temple dedicated to *Baal*. And, as *Phagins* noteth, the word so compounded, is *Climax* is rather so called in respect of a passage up and down, than that it is any proper name. as much to say, as, *Dominus specula, sive custodia*; Lord of the watch tower. For the Egyptians believed, or at least made their slaves believe, that if any of them offered to escape that way into *Arabia*, this Idoll would both arrest them, and force them to return to their Lords and Masters. For the Egyptians had gods for all turns. *Aegyptii diis succubant*: The Egyptians were fruitfull in gods, saith Saint Hierome. But *Moses*, who camped at the foot of this Mountain with a million of souls, or as others conceive, with two millions, found this Lord of the watch-tower asleep, or out of countenance.

Now these two passages leading out of Egypt into *Arabia* upon the firm land, *Moses* *Exod.* 13. 17. refused as well that of *Pelufium* and *Cassotis*, the fairest and shortest of all other, in respect of *Judea*, as the other by *Etham*, from which he reflected, for the reasons before remembered, and took the way by the Valley of *Pihacheroth*, between the Mountains, which made a straight entrance towards the Sea. After whom *Pharaoh* made so great speed with his Horse-men and Chariots, as he gave the *Hebrews* no time at all to rest them after so long a march; but gave sight of them, and they of him, even at the very brink and wash of the Sea: inasmuch as the *Hebrews* being terrified with *Pharaohs* sudden approach, began to despair, and to mutine, at that time when it behooved them most to have taken courage for their own defence; laying it to *Moses* charge, that themselves foresaw those perils in which they were wrapped. And fear, *Which*, saith the Book of *Wisdom*, is the betraying of those succours which reason offereth, made them both despair in Gods former promises, and to be forgetfull of their own strength and multitudes. *Co.* 17. 11.

## §. VIII.

Of their passage over the Red Sea : and of the Red Sea itself.

**B**Ut *Moses* who feared nothing but God himself, perswaded them to be confident in his goodness, who hath never abandoned those, that assuredly trust in him ; using this comfortable and resolved speech : *Fear not, &c. for the Egyptians whom ye have seen this day, ye shall never see them again. The Lord shall fight for you.* After which *Moses* called on God for succour, received encouragement, and commandment to go on in these words : *Wherefore criest thou unto me ? Speak unto the children of Israel that they go forward ; and lift thou up thy rod, and stretch out thy hand upon the Sea, and divide it, and let the children of Israel go on dry ground through the midst of the Sea.* *Moses* obeying the voice of God, in the dark of the night finding the sands uncovered, past on towards the other side and coast of *Arabia* : two parts of the night being spent ere he entered the Foord, which it pleased God by a forcible Eastern wind, and by *Moses* rod to prepare. *Pharaoh* followed him even at the heels, finding the same dry ground which *Moses* trod on. Therefore, as it is written : *The Angel of God which went before the Host of Israel, removed, and went behind them ; also the pillar of the cloud went from before them, and stood behind them ;* which is, that it pleased God therein either by his immediate power, or by the ministry of his Angel, to interpose his defence between the *Hebrews* and their Enemies ; to the end that the *Egyptians* might hereby be blinded, in such sort, as they could not pursue *Israel* with any harmful speed. But in the morning watch, *Moses* seized the other bank of *Arabia* side : and *Pharaoh* (as the dawn of day began to illighten the obscure aire) finding a beginning of the Seas return, halted himself towards his own Coast : But *Moses* stretched forth his hand, and the Sea returned to his force, that is, the Sea moved by the power of God, ran back towards the land with unresistible fury and swiftness, and overwhelmed the whole Army of *Pharaoh*, so as not one escaped. For it is written, that *God took off their Chariot wheels*, that is, when the waters began to cover the sands, the *Egyptians* being stricken with fear of death, ran one athwart another, and missing the path by which they had past on after the *Hebrews*, their wheels so stuck fast in the mud and quick-sands, and could not be drawn out : the Sea coming against them with supernaturall violence.

*Lysanus* upon *Exod. 14.* and others, following the opinions or old Traditions of the *Hebrews*, conceived, that after *Moses* had by the power of God divided the Red Sea, and that the children of *Israel* were fearful to enter it, *Aminadab* Prince or Leader of the Tribe of *Juda* first made the adventure ; and that therefore was that Tribe ever after honoured above the rest, according to the prophecy of *Jacob, Gen. 49. 8. Thy fathers sons shall bow down unto thee.* But *Hierome* upon the 11. of *Hosea* condemns this opinion. And though it be true, that *Juda* had the first place in all their marches in the Desert, and as we now call it, led the Van-guard, (whereupon it may be inferred, that he also led the way through the Red Sea) yet that *Moses* himself was the Conductor of *Israel* at that time, it is generally received. For, as it is written in the 77. Psalm : *Thou didst lead thy people like sheep by the hand of Moses and Aaron.*

The *Hebrews* have also another fancy, that the Red Sea was divided into twelve parts, and that every Tribe past over in a path apart, because it is written in the 125. Psalm, according to the vulgar : *Divisit mare rubrum in divisiones ; He divided the Red Sea in divisions.* Also that the bottom of the Sea became as a green Field or Pasture. But *Origen*, *Epiphanius*, *Abulenstz*, and *Genebrard*, favouring this conceit, had forgotten to consider, that there were not twelve Pillars, nor twelve Armies of the *Egyptians*. It is written *Psalm. 77. v. 16. Thy way is in the Sea ; not thy waies :* and in the last Book of *Wisdom, 50. ver. 7. In the Red Sea there was a way.*

Now this Sea, through which *Moses* past, and in which *Pharaoh*, otherwise called *Cheneus*, perished in the 16. year of his reign, is commonly known by the name of the Red Sea, though the same differ nothing at all in naturall colour from other waters. But as *Philostrophus* in his third book noreth, and our selves know by experience, it is of a bluish colour, as other Seases are. It entreteth at a narrow strait between *Arabia* the Happy and *Ethiopia*, or the land of the *Abyssins* : the mouth of the indraught from the Cape, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Possidium*, to the other Land of *Ethiopia*, hath not above

six leagues in breadth, and the same, also filled every where with Islands, but afterwards it extendeth it self 58. Leagues from Coast to Coast, and it runneth up between *Arabia* the Happy, and *Arabia Petrea*, on one side, and *Ethiopia* and *Egypt* on the other, as far as *Suez*, the uttermost end and indraught of that Sea : where the *Turk* now keepeth his fleet of Gallies. The Cosmographers commonly give it the name of the *Arabian Gulf* : but the North part towards *Suez*, and where *Moses* past, is called *Heropolites*, of the City *Hero* ; sometime *Troy*, and of later times *Suez*. *Pliny* calls it *Cambisus*, by which name it was known, saith he, before it was called *Hero* many yeers. The *Arabians* call this Sea towards the North *Apocopa*, *Eccant*, and *Eant*. *Artemidorus* writes it *Elenticum* : 10 King *Juba* *Lenticum*, others more properly *Elenticum*, of the Port and City *Elana* : which 2 Kings 19. the Septuagint call *Elath* : *Ptolomy*, *Elana* : *Pliny*, *Elana* : and *Marius Niger*, *Elana* : there is also *Ilalab* in *Assyria*, to which *Salmanasser* carried the *Israelites* captive, 2 Kin. 8. 11. which *Ilalab* in *Assyria* the Septuagint call *Elaea* : and in the first of *Chr.* the 5. Aila. But as for this Red Sea on the parts thereof, thus diversly named, the *Moors* and *Arabians* (Vassals to the *Turk*) know it by no other appellation, than the Gulf of *Mecca*, after the name of *Mahomet's* Town *Mecca*. The *Greeks* write it the *Sea Erythraeum*, of a King called *Erythras*, or *Erythraeus* : and because *Erythras* in the *Greek* signifieth *Red* : hence it is, that being denominated of this *Erythraeus*, the son of *Perseus* and *Andromeda*, yet it took the name of the Red Sea, as *Quint. Curtius* conjectureth : which *Arianus* and 10 *Strabo* confirm. But it seemeth to me by the view of a Discovery of that Sea in the year 1544. performed by *Stephen Gama*, Viceroy of the East India for the King of *Portugal*, that this Sea was so called from a reflection of redness, both from the banks, cliffs, and sands of many Islands, and part of the Continent bordering it. For I finde by the report of *Castro*, a principall Commander under *Gama* (which discourse I gave Master *Richard Hakluyt* to publish) that there is an Island called *Dalagus*, sometime *Leques*, containing in length 25. Leagues, and 12. in breadth ; the earth, sands, and cliffs, of which Island, being of a reddish colour, serve for a foile to the waters about it : and make it seem altogether of the same colour. Secondly, the same *Castro* reporteth, that from 24. degrees of Septentrionall Latitude, to 27. (which make in length of Coast 180. miles, lying as it doth Northerly and Southerly) all the cliffs and banks are of red earth or stone, which by reflection of the Sun-beams, give a kind of reddish lustre to the waters. Thirdly, those *Portugals* report, and we know it by many testimonies, that there are found in the bottom of this Sea towards the shore, great abundance of red stones, on which the greatest store of Corral grows, which is carried into most parts of *Europe*, and elsewhere. There are also on the Islands of this Sea many red Trees, saith *Strabo*, and those growing under water may also be a cause of such a colour. Of these appearances of redness by the shadows of these stones, sands, earth, and cliffs, I suppose that it first took the name of the Red Sea, because in so many places it seemeth to be such : which *Johannes Barros* in his second Decade, eighth Book and first Chapter, confirmeth.

40 The breadth of this Sea from *Elana*, or *Exion-Gaber* adjoining, now *Toro*, called by the ancient Cosmographers, *Simus Elaniticus*, which walleth the banks of *Madian* or *Midian*, is for 16 or 17. Leagues together, along Northward towards *Suez*, some 3. Leagues, or nine English miles over, and from this Port of *Toro* to *Suez*, and the end of this Sea, it is in length about 28. Leagues, of which the first 26. have nine miles breadth, as aforesaid, and afterward the lands both from *Egypt* and *Arabia*, thrust themselves into the Sea, and strengthen it so fast, as for six miles together it is not above three miles over ; from thence upward the land on *Egypt* side, falleth away, and makes a kind of Bay or Cove for some ten miles together, after which the land grows upon the Sea again, and so binds it into the very end thereof, at four miles breadth, or thereabout, in which 50 so it was that *Moses* past it over, though others would have it to be over-against *Elana* or *Toro*, but without judgement : for from *Ramaser* to *Pibacheroth* and *Baalzephon*, there is not above 30. miles interjacent, or 35. miles at most, which *Moses* past over in three daies : and between the land of *Egypt*, opposite to *Elana* or *Toro*, the distance is above 80. miles. For *Ramaser*, to which City *Moses* came (being the Metropolis of *Gosen*) when he left *Pharaoh* at *Zaan*, and took his last leave, standeth in 30. degrees five minutes of Septentrionall Latitude ; and *Midgol*, or the Valley of *Pibacheroth*, at the foot of the Mountain *Climax*, or *Baalzephon*, in nine and twenty and a half, which make a difference of five and thirty English miles, the way lying in effect North and South.

## §. IX.

*That the passage through the Red Sea was miraculous, and not a low ebbe.*

**T**He Egyptians, and of them the Memphites, and other Heathen Writers, who in hatred of the Hebrewes have objected that *Moses* past over the Red Sea at a low ebbe, upon a great spring-tide, and that *Pharaoh*, conducted more by fury than discretion, pursued him so far, as before he could recover the coast of *Egypt*, he was over-taken by the flood, and therein perished; did not well consider the nature of this place with other circumstances. For, not to borrow strength from that part of the Scriptures, to which makes it plaine, that the Waters were divided, and that God wrought this miracle by an Easterly winde, and by the hand and rod of *Moses* (which authority to men that beleeve not therein, perswadeth nothing) I say, that by the same naturall reason unto which they fastned themselves, it is made manifest, that had there been no other working power from above, or assistance given from God himself to *Moses* and the children of *Israel*, than ordinary and casual, then could not *Pharaoh* and all his Army have perished in that pursuit.

For wheresoever there is any ebbing of the Sea in any gulf, or indraught, there doe the waters fall away from the Land, and runne downwards toward the Ocean, leaving all that part towards the Land as far as the Sea can ebbe, or fall off, to be dry Land. Now *Moses* entering the Sea at *Migdol* under *Baalzephon* (if he had taken the advantage and opportunity of the tide) must have left all that end of the Red Sea towards *Suez*, on his left hand dry and uncovered. For if a passage were made by falling away of the water ten or twelve miles farther into the Sea than *Suez*, and between it and where *Moses* past, who entered the same so far below it, and towards the body of the same Sea: it followeth then, that if all that part of the Sleeve or Strait, had bin by the ebbe of a spring-tide discovered, when *Pharaoh* found the flood increasing, he needed not to have returned by the same way toward *Egypt* side, but might have gone on in his return before the tide, on his right hand: and so taken ground again at the end of that Sea, at *Suez* itself, or elsewhere. But the Scriptures do truly witnesse the contrary, that is, That the Sea did not fall away from the Land, as naturally it doth, but that *Moses* past on between two Seas, and that the waters were divided. Otherwise *Pharaoh* by any returne of waters could not have perished, as he did: and therefore the effects of that great Armies destruction, prove the cause to have been a power above nature, and the miraculous worke of God himself. Again, those words of the Scriptures, that *God caused the Sea to runne back by a strong East-wind*, doe rather prove the miracle, then that thereby was caused an ebbe more than ordinary: for that Sea did not lye East and West, but, in effect, North and South. And it must have bene a West and North-west winde, that must have driven those waters away through their proper Channels, and to the South-east into the Sea. But the East winde blew athwart the Sea, and cut it asunder: so as one part fell back towards the South and main body thereof, the other part remained towards *Suez*, and the North. Which being unknowne to *Pharaoh*: while he was cheekt by that Sea which used in all times before to ebbe away, the flood prest him and over-whelmed him. Thirdly, seeing *Josephus* avoweth, that *Moses* was not onely of excellent judgement generally, but also, to great a Captain, as he over-threw the *Athiopians* in battels, being employed by *Pharaoh*, and wan divers Cities seeming impregnable: it were barbarous to condemn him of this grossenesse, and distraction: that rather than he would have endured the hardnesse of a Mountainous passage at hand (had not God commanded him to take that way, and foretold him of the honour which he would there win upon *Pharaoh*) he would have trusted to the advantage of an ebbing water. For he knew not the contrary, but that *Pharaoh* might have found him, and prest him, as well when it flowed as when it ebbed, as it seemeth he did. For the people, beholding *Pharaohs* approach, cried out against *Moses*, and despaired altogether of their safety: and when *Moses* prayed unto God for help, he was answered by God: *Wherefore criest thou unto me? Speak unto the children of Israel that they go forward, and lift thou up thy rod, and stretch out thy hand upon the Sea, and divide it:* which proves that there was not at the time of *Pharaohs* approach any ebbe at all; but that God did disperse and cut through the weight of waters, by a strong East-winde, whereby the Sands dis-

discovered themselves between the sea on the left hand toward *Suez*, from whence the waters moved not, and the sea which was towards the South on the right hand, so that the waters were a wall unto them on the right hand, and on the left hand, that is, the waters so defended them on both sides, as the Egyptians could onely follow them in the same path, not that the waters stood upright as walls do, as some of the School-men have fancied. For had *Pharaoh* and the Egyptians perceived any such buildings in the sea, they would soon have quitted the chase and pursuit of *Israel*. Furthermore, there is no man of judgement that can think, that *Pharaoh* and the Egyptians, who then excelled all Nations in the observations of heavenly Motions, could be ignorant of the fluxes and refluxes of the sea, in his own Countrey, on his own coast, and in his own most traded and frequented Ports and Havens; and wherein, his people having had so much experience of the tides, he could not be caught, as he was, through ignorance, nor by any foreknown or naturall accident, but by Gods powerfull hand onely; which then falleth most heavily on all men, when looking through no other spectacle but their own prosperity, they least discern it coming, and least fear it. Lastly, if the Army of the Egyptians had been overtaken by the ordinary return of the flood before they could recover their own coast; their bodies drowned would have been carried with the flood which runneth up to *Suez*, and to the end of that sea, and not have been cast ashore on that coast of *Arabia* where *Moses* landed, to wit, upon the sea-bank over against *Baalzephon*, on *Arabia* side: where it was that the *Israelites* saw their dead bodies, and not at the end of the Red Sea, to which place the ordinary flood would have carried them: Which flood doth not any where cross the Channel, and run athwart it, as it must have done from *Egypt* side to *Arabia*, to have cast the bodies there; but it keeps the naturall course towards the end of that sea: and to which their carcasses should have been carried, if the work had not been supernaturall and miraculous. *Apollonius* in the lives of the Fathers affirmeth, that those of the Egyptians which stayed in the Countrey, and did not follow *Pharaoh* in the pursuit of *Israel*, did ever after honour those Beasts, Birds, Plants, or other creatures, about which they were buied at the time of *Pharaohs* destruction: as he that was then labouring in his garden, made a god of that Plant or Root about which he was occupied: and so of the rest. But how those multitudes of gods were erected among them, a more probable reason shall be given elsewhere. *Orosius*, in his first Book and tenth Chapter against the *Pagans*, tells us, that in his time, who lived some 400. years after *Christ*, the prints of *Pharaohs* Chariot wheels were to be seen at a low water on the Egyptian sands: and though they were sometime defaced by wind and weather, yet soon after they appeared again. But hereof I leave every man to his own belief.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the journeying of the Israelites from the Red Sea, to the place where the Law was given them: with a discourse of Laws.*

## §. I.

*A transition, by way of recapitulation of some things touching Chronologie: with a continuance of the story, untill the Amalekites met with the Israelites.*

**B**Ut to go on with the story of *Israel*, in this sort I collect the times. *Moses* was born in the year of the World, 2434. *Sapbrus* then governing *Assyria*; *Orthopolis*, *Sycionia* or *Peloponnesus*; *Crius*, the *Argives*; *Orus*, *Egypt*; and *Dencalion*, *Athens*. He fled into *Midian*, when he had lived forty yeers, in the year of *Isaac* 14. the World, 2474. and two yeers after was *Caleb* born. He returned by the commandment and ordinance of God into *Egypt*, and wrought his miracles in the fields of *Zaan*, in the year 2514. the last moneth of that year. On the 14. day of the first

Pag. 254.

Exod. 12.

Num. 33.

Exod. 13.

Num. 33.

Exod. 14.

Num. 33.

Exod. 14.

Num. 33.

Exod. 15.

Num. 33.

Exod. 15.

Num. 33.

W. H. Tyr. 11.  
cap. 16.

Exod. 15.

Exod. 16.

first Hebrew moneth *Abib*, or the 15. of that moneth, beginning the day (as they) at Sun-setting, in the year of the World, 2514. was the celebration of the *Passover*: and in the dead of the night of the same day were all the first-born slain through *Egypt*, or in all those parts where the *Hebrews* inhabited not. The 15. day of the first moneth of the *Hebrews* called *Abib*, being about the beginning of the year of the World, 2514. *Moses* with the children of *Israel* removed from the generall Assembly at *Rameses*, and marched to *Succoth*.

And departing thence, they made their third Station at *Etham*: and journeying from *Etham*, they encamped in the Valley of *Pihacheroth*, or *Migdol*, under the mountain *Baal-zephon*; and in the same night after midnight, they past the *Red Sea*: *Pharaoh* and his Army perishing in their return, about the first dawn of the day. *Moses* having recovered the banks of *Arabia*, gave thanks unto God, for the delivery of *Israel*: and making no stay on that coast, entred the Desarts of *Arabia Petraea*, called *Swr*. But finding no water in that passage, he incamped at *Marah*, in the Desert of *Etham*, which in *Exod. 15. 22.* is also called *Swr*, 25. miles from the Sea: where the children of *Israel*, preft with extreme thirst, murmured against *Moses* the second time; first, at *Pharaoh's* approach in *Pihacheroth*, and now in *Arabia*. But *Moses* taking the branches of a tree, growing near a Lake of bitter water, and casting the same thereinto, made the same sweet: a plain type and figure of our Saviour, who upon the tree of the Cross changed the bitterness of everlasting death into the sweetness of eternall life. *Plinie* remembers these bitter Fountains in his sixth Book and 29. Chapter. From whence to *Delta* in *Egypt*, *Scopius* first, *Darius* after him, and lastly, *Ptolomy* the second, began to cut an artificiall river, thereby by boats and small shipping to trade and navigate the *Red Sea*, from the great Cities upon *Nilus*. From *Marah* he removed to *Elim*, the sixth Mansion, a march of eight miles: where finding twelve Fountains of sweet water, and threescore and ten Palm-trees, he rested divers days.

Whether this *Helim* were the name of a Town or City in *Moses* time, I cannot affirm. And yet the scarcity of waters in that Region was such, as *Helim*, which had twelve Fountains, could hardly be left unpeopled. *William*, Archbishop of *Tyre*, in his History of the *Holy War*, found at *Helim* the ruines of a great and ancient City. And at 30 such time as *Balaam* the first past that way into *Egypt*. *Ingressus* (saith he) *Helim civitatem antiquissimam, populo Israelitico aliquando familiarem: ad quam cum pervenisset, loci illius incolae, Regis adventu praecognito, naviculam ingredientes, in mare vicinum se contulerunt; Entering Helim a very ancient City, well known sometime to the people of Israel; whither when he came, the inhabitants, forewarned of the Kings approach, took boat, and shifted themselves into the sea lying near them.* From *Elim* he returned again towards the South, and late down by the banks of the *Red Sea*: the seventh Mansion. For it seemeth that he had knowledge of *Amalech*, who repaired to resist his passage through that part of *Arabia*. And *Moses*, who had not as yet trained those of the *Hebrews*, appointed to bear arms: nor assured the minds of the rest, who encountering with the least misery, were more apt to return to their quiet slavery, than either to endure the wants and perils which every where accompanied them in that passage, or at this time to undertake or sustain so dangerous an enemy: he therefore made stay at this Mansion until the fifteenth of this second moneth called *Zim*, or *Jiar*: and made the eighth Mansion in the Desert of *Zim*; where the children of *Israel* mutined against *Moses* the third time, having want of food. In the sixteenth Chapter of *Exodus*, *Moses* omitteeth this retreat from *Elim* to the *Red Sea*, but in the collection of every severall incamping, in the 33. of *Numbers*, it is set down.

Here it pleased God to fend fo many flights of Quails, as all the Countrie about their incamping was covered with them. The morning following it also rained Manna, being the sixteenth of their moneth, which served them in stead of bread. For now was the store consumed which the people carried with them out of *Egypt*. And though they had great numbers of cattell and sheep among them, yet it seemeth that they durst not feed themselves with many of those: but reserved them, both for the milk to relieve the children withall, and for breed to store themselves when they came to the Land promised.

From hence towards *Raphidim* they made two removes of twenty miles: the one

to

to *Daphca*, the other to *Alm*, distant from *Raphidim* six miles. Here being again preft with want of water, they murmured the fourth time, and repented them of their departure from *Egypt*, where they rather contented themselves to be fed and beaten after the manner of beasts, than to suffer a casual and sometime necessary want, and to undergo the hazards and travells which every manly mind seeketh after, for the love of God, and their own freedoms. But *Moses* with the same rod which he divided the Sea withall, in the sight of the *Elders* of *Israel* brought waters out of the rock, wherewith the whole multitude were satisfied.

10

## §. II.

Of the Amalekites, Madianites, and Kenites, upon occasion of the battell with the Amalekites, and Jethro's coming: who being a Kenite, was Priest of Madian.

And while *Moses* incamped in this place, the Amalekites, who had knowledge of his approach, and ghesied that he meant to lead the children of *Israel* through their Countrie (which being barren of it selfe, would be utterly wasted by so great a multitude of people and cattell) thought it most for their advantage to set upon them at *Raphidim*: where the want of water, and all other things needfull for the life of man, infeebled them. On the other side, *Moses* perceiving their resolutions, gave charge to 10 *Jehro* to draw out a sufficient number of the ablest *Hebrews*, to encounter *Amalech*. Between whom and *Israel* the victory remained doubtful, for the most part of the day: the *Hebrews* and *Amalekites* contending with equall hopes and repulses for many hours. And had not the strength of *Moses* prayers to God been of far greater force, and more prevalent than all resistance and attempt made by the bodies of men; that valiant and warlike Nation had greatly endangered the whole enterprife. For those bodies which are unacquainted with scarcity of food, and those mindes whom a servile education hath dulled, being beaten, and despaird in their first attempts, will hardly, or never be brought again to hazard themselves.

After this victory, *Jethro* repaired to *Moses*, bringing with him *Moses* his wife, and his two sons, which either *Jethro* forbore to conduct, or *Moses* to receive, till he had by this overthrow of *Amalech* the better assured himself of that part of *Arabia*. For it is written in *Exod. 18. 1.* When *Jethro* the Priest of *Madian*, *Moses* father in law, heard all that God had done for *Moses*, &c. of which, the last deed, to wit, the overthrow of *Amalech*, gave *Jethro* courage and assurance, he then repaired to his son in law *Moses*, at *Sinai*: where amongst other things, he advised *Moses* to appoint Judges and other Officers over *Israel*: being himself unable to give order in all causes and controversies, among so many thousands of people, full of discontentment and private contraversion.

This *Jethro*, although he dwelt amongst the *Madianites*, yet he was by nation a *Kenite*, 40 as in the fourth of *Judges*, ver. 11. & 17. it is manifest: where it is written, Now Heber the *Kenite*, which was of the children of *Hobab*, to wit, the son of *Jethro*, the father in law of *Moses*, was departed from the *Kenites*, and pitched his tents untill the Plain of *Zaanaim*, which is by *Kadesh*. Likewise in the first of *Samuel*, *Saul* commanded the *Kenites* to depart from among the *Amalekites*, lest he should destroy them with the *Amalekites*. For the *Kenites* inhabited the mountains of *Sin Kadesh*: and the *Amalekites* dwelt in the Plains, according to the saying of *Balaam*, speaking of the *Kenites*: Strong is thy dwelling place, and thou hast put thy nest in the rock. And that *Saul* spared this Nation, he giveth 50 for cause, that they shewed mercy to all the children of *Israel*, when they came up from *Egypt*. For these *Kenites* were a Nation of the *Madianites*, and the *Madianites* were of the issues of *Madian*, one of the six sons which *Abraham* begat on *Kethura*: and might also take that name of *Kenites* from *Kethura*, of whom they descended by the mother, who (as it seemeth) kept the knowledge of the true God among them, which they received from their parent *Abraham*. For *Moses*, when he fled out of *Egypt* into *Madian*, and married the daughter of *Jethro*, would not (had he found them idolaters) have made *Jethro's* daughter the mother of his children. And although the *Kenites* are named amongst those Nations, which God promised, that the seed of *Abraham* should root out, and inherit their lands; yet it cannot be meant by these, who are descended from *Abraham* himself: but by some other Nation, bearing

V 2

the

the same name; and in all likelihood of the race of *Chus*. For in the fifteenth of *Genesis*, ver. 19. these *Kenites* or *Chusites* are lifted with the *Hittites* and *Perizzites*, with the *Amorites*, *Canaanites*, *Gergesites*, and *Jebusites*, which were indeed afterwards rooted out. But these *Kenites* descended from *Abraham*, had separated themselves from among the rest, which were altogether idolatrous. For, as it is before remembered, *Heber* the *Kenite*, which was of the children of *Hobab*, was departed from the *Kenites*; that is to say, from those *Kenites* of *Canaan*, and inhabited in *Zaanaim*, which is by *Kedesh* or *Cadesh*. Again, *Moses* nameth that Nation of the *Kenites*, before *Midian*, or any of *Abraham's* other sons were born; which he did (referring my selfe to better judgement) rather, because they were more ancient, than by anticipation.

And as of the *Kenites*, so we may consider of the *Midianites*, parted by *Moses* into five Tribes. For some of them were corrupted, and heathens; as those of *Midian* by the river *Zared*, afterwards destroyed by *Moses*. But the *Midianites* near the banks of the *Red Sea*, where *Moses* married his wife *Zippora*, and with whom he left her and his children, till after the overthrow of *Amalech*, seem likewise not to have been corrupted. For these *Midianites* with the *Kenites* assisted *Israel*, and guided them in the Desarts, but the *Midianites* in *Moab*, and to the North of the Metropolis of *Arabia*, called *Petra*, were by *Israel* rooted out, when those adjoining to the *Red Sea* were not touched.

And though it may be doubted, whether those of *Midian*, of whom *Jethro* was Priest, and the other Cities in *Moab* were the same, yet the contrary is more probable. For *Moses* would not have sent 12000. *Israelites* as far back as the *Red Sea*, from the Plains of *Moab*, to have destroyed that *Midian*, where his wives kinred inhabited; seeing himself coming with 600000. able men, was encountered by *Amalech* in that passage. Neither could *Moses* forget the length of the way through those discomfortable Desarts, where in himself and *Israel* had wandered 40. years.

That *Jethro* or *Jothor*, *Raguel* or *Reuel*, and *Hobab*, were but one person, the Scriptures teach us. For the *Pulgar* and *Septuagint*, which call him *Raguel*, and our *English*, *Reuel*, *Exod.* 2. 18. calls him *Jethro*, or *Jothor*, *Exod.* 3. 1. & 4. 18. & 18. 1. & 6. 9, 10, 12. and in *Num.* 10. 29. *Hobab*. Others take *Jethro* and *Hobab* to be the same, but not *Raguel*.

### §. III.

Of the time when the Law was given; with divers commendations of the invention of Law.

The rest of the moneths of this year 2515. were spent in the Desart of *Sinai*, near the mountain of *Sinai* or *Horeb*, the twelfth Manzion. *Eusebius* thought that *Sinai* and *Horeb* were distinct mountains: *Hierome*, to be but one, of a double name. And so it appeareth by many Scriptures. For, in *Exodus* 3. 1. it is called *Horeb*: and in *Exodus* 24. 19. it is written *Sinai*. In the 106. Psalm, ver. 19. *Horeb*: in *Exod.* 19. 11. *Sinai*. And so it is called, *Galatians* 4. 24. And again, *Deut.* 4. 10. and 15. and *Deut.* 5. 2. *Horeb*. And so it is in the first of *Kim.* 8. 6. and the second of *Chron.* 5. 10. and in *Mala-*chie 4. 4. Finally, in *Ecclesiasticus* 48. 7. they are named as one. Which bearded (saith *Ecclesiasticus*) the rebuke of the Lord in *Sinai*, and in *Horeb* the judgement of the vengeance. Somewhat they are dis-joynd at the top by the report of *Peter Belonius*; who in the year 1588. past out of *Egypt* into *Arabia*, with *Monsieur de Fumet* of *France*, and travelled to the top both of *Sinai* and *Horeb*: *Sinai* being by far the higher hill. From the side of *Horeb* (saith he) there falleth a very fair Spring of water into the Valley adjoining: where he found two Monasteries of *Christian Maronites*, containing some hundred Religious persons of divers Nations, who had pleasant gardens, delicate fruits, and excellent wine. These (saith the same Author) give entertainment to all strangers, who which passe that way.

Now that there was some such Torrent of water near *Sinai* in *Moses* time, it is very probable: First, because he camped thereabout almost a yeer, and drew no water, as in other places, by miracle: Secondly, because it is written, *Exod.* 32. 20. that when *Moses* had broken the golden Calf to powder, which *Aaron* set up in his absence, he cast the powder thereof into the water, and made the children of *Israel* to drink thereof.

On this mountain, the Law by the Angel of God was given to *Moses*, where he stayed

stayed a whole yeer, wanting some ten or twelve daies: for he removed not till the 20. day of the second moneth of the second yeer; and he arrived about the 45. day after the egression: the Law being given the 50. day.

At this Manzion all was done, which is written from the beginning of the 29. Chapter of *Exodus*, to the end of that booke; all in *Leviticus*; and all in *Numbers*, to the 10. Chapter. Whereof (because there is no story nor other passage) I will omit the repetition, and in place thereof speake somewhat of the Law, and the Kindes and use thereof; whereby, if the Reader finde the story any way dis-joynd, he may turne over a few leaves, and omitting this, finde the continuation thereof. We must first consider, that as there can be neither foundation, building, nor continuance of any Common-wealth, without the rule, levell, and square of Laws: so it pleased God to give thereby unto *Moses* the powerfulllest man (his miraculous grace excepted) to govern that multitude which he conducted; to make them victorious in their passage, and to establish them assuredly in their conquest. For as the North star is the most fixed directour of the Seaman to his desired Port: so is the Law of God the guide and conductor of all in generall, to the haven of eternall life: the Law of nature, from God his eternall law deduced, the rule of all his creatures: the Law humane, depending on both these, the guard of Kings, Magistrates, and vertuous men; yea, the very spirit, and the very sinews of every Estate in the world, by which they live and move: the Law, to wit, a just law, being resembled to an Heart without affection, to an Eye without lust, and to a Minde without passion; a Treasurer, which keepeth for every man what he hath, and distributeth to every man what he ought to have. This benefit the *Ancient*, though barbarous, esteemed so highly, that among them, those which were taken for the first makers of Laws, were honoured as gods, or as the sons of gods: and the rest, that made either additions or corrections, were commended to all posterity for men of no lesse vertue, and no lesse liberally beneficiall to their Countries, than the greatest and most prosperous Conquerours that ever governed them. The *Israelites*, the *Lacedaemonians*, and the *Athenians*, received their Laws from one: as the *Israelites*, from *Moses*; the *Lacedaemonians*, from *Lycurgus*; the *Athenians*, from *Solan*; the *Romans*, sometime from their first Kings, from their *Decem viri*, from their *Senatours*, from their *Lawyers*, and from the people themselves: other from the Prince, Nobility, and People; as in *England*, *France*, and in other *Christian Monarchies* and *Estates*.

### §. IV.

Of the name and meaning of the words, Law, and Right.

The word *Lex*, or *Law*, is not alwaies taken alike, but is diversly, and in an indifferent sense used. For if we consider it at large, it may be understood for any rule prescribing a necessary mean, order, and method, for the attaining of an end. And so the rules of *Grammar*, or other Arts, are called *Laws*. Or it is taken for any private ordinance of Superiours or Inferiours: for the commandments of Tyrants, which they cause to be observed by force, for their Decrees do also usurp that Title, according to the generall acceptation of the word *Law*: of which *Esay*, *Woe unto them that Esay 10. decree wicked decrees, and write grievous things*. Likewise, the word is used for the tumultuary resolutions of the people. For such constitutions doth *Aristotle* also call *Laws*, though evill and insufficient: *Mala lex est, quae tumultuaria posita est; It is an evill law that is made tumultuously*. So as all ordinances, either good or evil, are called by the name of *Laws*.

The word *Law* is also taken for the morall habit of our mind, which doth (as it were) command our thoughts, words, and actions: framing and fashioning them according to it self, as to their pattern and plat-form. And thus the law of the flesh, which the *Di-*vines call *legem fomitis*, is to be understood. For every law is a kind of pattern of that which is done according unto it: in which sense, as \* elsewhere, this morall habit or disposition of the heart is called the frame or *figmentum* of the heart: so in *S. Paul* to the *Romans* it is called a *Law*: But I see another law in my members, rebelling against the Law of my minde, and leading me captive unto the law of sin. Again, the nature and inclinations of all creatures are sometime called (*a*) *laws*, so far as they agree with the reason of the law eternall; as the law of a *Lion*, to be fierce or valiant.

Also

*Etic. l. 4. c. 1.*  
Gen. 3. 5.  
Item 8. 2.  
(A) So *Virgil*,  
continuo hac  
leges aeternaeque  
iustitiae certis  
imposita natura  
est; where  
it is to be  
noted, that he  
joynes *leges* and  
*fasces* together,  
as in the  
Scripture the  
law is often-  
time called  
the covenant.

Gen. 15.

Jud. 4.

Gen. 25. 4.

30

Pet. Bel. l. 2.  
c. 62.

Also private contracts among Merchants and other Trades-men, do often put on the name of laws. But law commonly and properly, is taken for a right rule, prescribing a necessary mean, for the good of a Common-wealth, or Civill Communitie. The rest, to wit, the commandments of Tyrants, &c. which have not the common good for their end, but being *leges iniquæ*, are by Thomas called *violentiæ magis quàm leges*; rather *compulsions than laws*: And whatsoever is not just, S. Augustine doth not allow for laws, howsoever established: for he calls them *iniqua hominum constituta, quæ nec jura dicenda, nec putanda sunt; the unjust constitutions of men, which are neither to be termed nor thought*

*Arist. Ethic. 5. Laws.* For, saith Aristotle, *Legalia jura sunt factiva, & conservativa felicitatis*; Just laws are the workers and preservers of happiness: because by them we are directed *ad vitam* to quietam, to a quiet life, according to Cicero: Yea, to life everlasting, according to the Scriptures. For the end of the Law, saith Plato, is God and his worship: *Finis legis Deus & cultus ejus*. Lex, or the Law, is so called by the Latines, *à legendo*, or *à ligando*, of reading, or binding: *Leges quia lætæ & ad populum lætæ*, saith Varro; For after Laws were written and published, all men might read them, and behold in them whereto they were bound. The other Etymology, *à ligando*, is no lesse agreeable with the nature of a Law: whence in the Scripture it is called also a yoke, and a band: as *confringunt jugum, diruperunt vincula*: they have broken the yoke, they have broken the bands. And in the second Psalm, *Dirumpamus vincula eorum, & projiciamus à nobis funes ipsorum*; Let us break their bands in sunder, and cast away their cords from us.

*Plato in Dial. 1. de Leg.*

*Hierem. 5. 5.*

*Psal. 2.*

The Covenant it is called, because of the conditionall promises of God; and because of Gods peoples voluntary submission of themselves unto it: for which word the Septuagint, and the Epistle to the Hebrews, use the word *διαθήκη*, a Testament, or last Will: which name it hath, because it is not other wise effectual for our salvation, but in respect of the death of the Testator; for without the death of the Testator, the Testament is of no force, as Heb. 9. 17. it is said, *Testamentum in mortuis ratum est*. The Hebrews call the law *Thorah*, of teaching, because every man is thereby taught his duty, both to God and Men. The Greeks call it *Nómos*, of distributing, because it distributeth to every man his own due; the power of the law is the power of God: Justice being an attribute proper unto God himself. *Imperium legis, imperium Dei est*; 30 *The reign of the law, is the reign of God.*

The Law in general is thus defined by the Philosophers: *Lex est vitæ regula, præcipiens quæ sunt sequenda, & quæ fugienda*; Law is the rule of life, commanding what to follow, and what to shun: or *Lex est omnium divinarum & humanarum rerum Regina*; Law is the Queen or Princess of things both humane and divine. But this description is grounded upon the opinion of inevitable fate. Law is the very wisdom of Nature: the reason and understanding of the prudent: and the rule of right and wrong. For as a right line is called, *Index sui & curvi*, the demonstration of it self, and of the crooked: so is the law, the judge and measure of right and wrong.

M. Hooker calls the Law a directive rule to goodnesse of operation: and though law, 40 as touching the substance and essence, consist in understanding: *Concludit tamen alium voluntatis*; Yet it comprehends the act of our will. The word *jus* is also diversly taken, as sometime for the matter of the law, and for common right: sometime for the law it self as *jus civile*, or *jus gentium*. If I dare distinguisheth the two generall words, *jus* and *fas*: whereof *jus*, saith he, hath reference to men, *fas* to God. *Fas lex divina, jus lex humana*. To go over another mans field, is permitted by Gods law, not by mans; and therefore in a thing out of controversy, Virgil used both these words: as, *Fas & jura sinunt*, God and men permit.

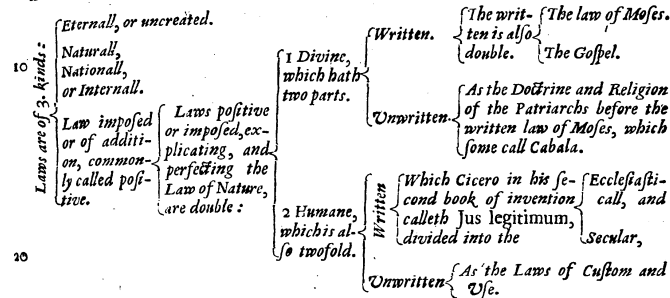
The word *jus*, or Right, is derived or taken from the old substantive Noun *jussus*, a bidding or commandment: or perhaps from the Greek *ζωω*, which is the name of *jupiter*, or of the Latine genitive case *Jovis*; because, as the Scripture speaks, the judgement is Gods. For as it is certain that *jus-jurandum* came of *Jovis-jurandum*, (for so we finde it written in *Nomis* out of the ancient, in which sense the Scripture calls it *juramentum Jehove*) so also we may say, that *jus* came of *Jovis*, quia *Jovis est*: because as God is the Author and Pattern, and Maintainer of right, so also in his Vicegerents, the Magistrates, he is the Pronouncer and Executor of right. Of this *jus* the just are denominated, *jus est à jure*, and *justitia à justo*; The right gives name to the righteous; and justice takes her name from the just.

§. V.

§. V.

Of the definition of Laws, and of the Law eternall.

But because laws are manifold, and that every kind hath a proper and peculiar definition, it agreeth with order, first to divide and distinguish them. I mean those sorts of laws, from whence all other particulars are drawn: leaving the individuals of humane laws to their infinite and horrible confusion.



The law eternall is thus defined by Thomas. *Lex eterna est æternus divina sapientie conceptus, secundum quod ordinatur ad gubernationem rerum ab ipso præcognitatus*; The eternall law is the eternall conceit of Gods wisdom as it is referred to the government of things foreknown by himself. Or, *Lex eterna est summa atque æterna ratio divine sapientie: quatenus* 30 *capit, secundum quod ordinatur ad gubernationem rerum ab ipso præcognitatus*; The eternall law is the eternall conceit of Gods wisdom as it is referred to the government of things foreknown by himself. Or, *Lex eterna est summa atque æterna ratio divine sapientie: quatenus*

*capit, secundum quod ordinatur ad gubernationem rerum ab ipso præcognitatus*; The eternall law is the eternall conceit of Gods wisdom as it is referred to the government of things foreknown by himself. Or, *Lex eterna est summa atque æterna ratio divine sapientie: quatenus* 30 *capit, secundum quod ordinatur ad gubernationem rerum ab ipso præcognitatus*; The eternall law is the eternall conceit of Gods wisdom as it is referred to the government of things foreknown by himself. Or, *Lex eterna est summa atque æterna ratio divine sapientie: quatenus*

Of this eternall law Cicero took knowledge, when in his book of Laws, he wrote in this manner: *Erat ratio perfectæ, rerum natura, & ad rectè faciendum impellens & à dilecto avocans: quæ non tum incipit lex esse cum scripta est, sed tum cum orta est. Orta autem sumit est cum mente divina: quamobrem lex vera atque princeps, apta ad jubendum & ad vetandum, ratio est rectæ summi Jovis*; That perfect reason and nature of things, encouraging or impelling to rightfull actions, and calling us back from evill, did not (saith he) then begin to be a law when it was written, but when it had being. Being and beginning it had together with divine understanding, and therefore a true law, and a fit Princess to command and forbid, is the right reason of the most high God. This eternall law (if we consider it in God, or as God) is always one and the same; the nature of God being most simple: but as it is referred to divers objects, so the reason of man finds it divers and manifold. It also seemeth one law in respect of things necessary, as the motions of the heavens, stability of the earth, &c. but it appeareth otherwise to things contingent: another law to men, another to other creatures, having life, and to all those that be inanimate.

By this eternall law all things are directed, as by the counsell and providence of God: from this Law all laws are derived, as from the rule universall: and thereto referred, as the operation of the second to the first.

The eternall, and the divine law, differ one in consideration; the eternall directing more largely: as well every creature, to their proper and naturall ends, as it doth man to his supernaturall: but the divine law to a supernaturall end only: the naturall law is thence derived, but an effect of the eternall: as it were a stream from the fountain.

The Law humane or temporall is also thence drawn: in that it hath the form of right reason: from wh ch if it differ, it is then *impositio iniqua*, a wicked imposition: and only borroweth the name of a law.

To this eternall law all things are subjected, as well Angels and Men, as all other creatures,



creatures, or things created; whether necessary or contingent, naturall or morall, and humane. For the Law eternall runneth through all the universall, and therefore it is the law also of things which are simple, naturall and inanimate.

Phil. 148.

Hence it is, that all things created are commanded to praise God their Creator and Directour: as Praise him all ye his Angels: praise him Sun and Moon, all bright Stars: heavens of heavens, for he hath established them for ever and ever. He hath made an ordinance which shall not passe: Praise ye the Lord from the earth ye Dragons and all Deepes: Fire and haile, snow and vapours, stormy winds, which execute his word: mountains and hills, fruitfull trees and all Cedars: Beasts, and all Cattel, &c. Now as the reasonable creatures are by this eternall law bound, by the glory and felicity proposed unto them (beatitude being both the attractive, and the end) so all other naturall things and creatures, have in themselves, and in their own natures, an obedience formall to it, without any proper intention, known cause, or end proposed. For beasts are led by sense, and naturall instinct: things without life by their created form, or formall appetites, as that which is heavie to fall downward: things light to mount upward, &c. and fire to heat whatsoever is apposed. This kinde of working, the Aristotelians ascribe to common nature; others to fate; a difference used in terms only; it being no other than Gods generall providence: for as it is truly said of God, that he is *omnia super omnia*: so are all things which appear in themselves thence derived: there-under subjected: thence-from by his eternall law and providence directed, even from the greatest to the least of his creatures, 20 in heaven and in earth.

The Schoolmen are very curious and ample in the consideration of these laws: and in discourse of the profit, and of the matter, and object of the eternall law. But as the profit is manifest in the good of all creatures, who have thence-from, either reason, sense, vegetation, or appetite, to conduct them: so is the object and matter of the law, the whole creature. For according to S. Augustine, *Lex eterna est, qua justum est, ut omnia sint ordinatissima*; The law eternall is that, whereby it is just, that all things should be disposed in the best and goodliest order.

L. 1. de lib. arb. cap. 6.

John 18. 30. Phil. 69. 22.

Lastly, it is disputed, whether the eternall law be immutable, yea or no? But the resolution is, that it chanceth not; for which S. Augustine useth a sufficient argument in his first Book of *Free-will*, the sixth Chapter. For the law of Moses which had a time prefixed, was eternally by God ordained to last untill the time of the Pædagogic of Gods people, or introduction to Christ should be expired; which time of expiration some think our Saviour noted to become, when on the Crosse he said, *Consummatum est*. But I rather think these words of our Saviour to have no other signification, than that now the prophetic of their giving him Vinegar to drink was fulfilled. For so Saint John expounds it, when he saith v. 28. *That Christ seeing all (other) things to be fulfilled, Ut consummaretur Scriptura, That the Scripture in this also might be fulfilled, said, I thirst*: though I deny not, but at the same time also the date of the law was expired, to wit, of the law ceremoniall, and of so much of the judiciall, as appertained peculiarly to the Jews, and 40 agreeth not with the law of the new Testament and Gospel of Christ. For the immutable law of God, though prescribing things mutable, is not therefore changed in it self; but the things prescribed, change according to this eternall ordinance, of which the *Wisdom of Solomon*, and being one she can do all things, and remaining in her self reneweth all.

## §. VI.

## Of the Law of nature.

Of the law of Nature as it is taken in generall, I find no definition among the School-men: only as it is considered in man, it is called the *impression of divine light*, and a participation of the eternall law in the reasonable creature. *Lex naturalis est impressio divini luminis in nobis, & participatio legis eterne in rationali creatura*. Olibian defines the naturall law to be the same which nature hath taught all living creatures: *Jus naturale est quod Natura omnia animalia docuit*: and he afterward addeth, *Jus istud non humani generis proprium, sed omnium animalium que terra marique nascuntur, omnium quoque commune est*; The law of nature is not proper to man alone, but the same is common to all living creatures, as well to birds, as to those which the Land and Sea produceth. But

Aug. in Ep. ad Hil. 89. Cy in Euzeng. Job. trasi. 49. Uly. de justitia q. jur. l. 1. tit. 1.

But this definition is not generall, but of the naturall Law in things of life.

The Law of nature in generall, I take to be that disposition, instinct, and formall quality, which God in his eternall providence hath given and imprinted in the nature of every creature, animate, and inanimate. And as it is *divinum lumen* in men, enlightning our formall reason; so is it more than sense in Beasts; and more than vegetation in plants. For it is not sense alone in Beasts, which teacheth them at first sight, and without experience or instruction, to flee from the enemies of their lives: seeing that Bulls and Horses appear unto the sense more fearful and terrible, than the least kind of dogs; and yet the Hare and Deer feedeth by the one, and flieth from the other, yea, though 10 by them never seen before, and that as soon as they fall from their Dams. Neither is it sense which hath taught other Beasts to provide for winter, Birds to build their nests, high or low, according to the tempestuous or quiet seasons: or the Birds of India, to make their nests on the smallest twigs which hang over Rivers, and not on any other part of the tree, or elsewhere: to save their eggs and young ones from the Monkeys, and other Beasts, whose weight such a twig will not bear: and which would fear to fall into the water. The instances in this kinde are exceeding many which may be given. Neither is it out of the vegetable or growing nature of plants, that some trees, as the female of the *Palmitto*, will not bear any fruit except the male grow in sight. But this they do by that Law, which the infinite and unsearchable wisdom of God had in all 10 eternity provided for them, and for every nature created. In man this Law is double, corrupt, and incorrupt: corrupt, where the reason of man hath made it self subject, and a Vassall to passions, and affections brutall: and incorrupt, where time and custome hath bred in men a new nature, which also, as is aforesaid, is a kinde of Law. For it was not by the Law of Nature incorrupt, which S. Augustine calleth the law of reason, but by a nature blinded and corrupted, that the Germans did anciently allow of theft: and that other Nations were by Law constrained to become Idolaters; and that by the Laws of Lycurgus it was permitted to men to use one anothers wife, and to the women, to chooſe 10 them others besides their husbands, to beget them with child: which law in those parts hath lasted long, and is not forgotten to this day.

Seyra. 9. 4. cap. 1. loco. ad Rom. 7. 23.

Theod. 1. 9. de curandis affc. Galen. 1. 1.

Acqila.

30 The *Scythians*, and the people of both *Indies*, hold it lawfull to bury with them the best beloved wives: as also they have many other customs remembered by *G. Valentia*, against nature and right reason.

And I know not from what authority it is, that these Laws some men avow to be naturall: except it be of this corrupt nature, as (among others) to pay guile with guile: to become faithlesse among the faithlesse: to provide for our selves by another mans destruction: that injury is not done to him that is willing: to destroy those whom we fear, and the like. For taking the definition of naturall laws, either out of S. Augustine, 40 or Aquinas, (the one calling it the *impression of divine light*; the other, the *discreet*, or *sensitiveness of practique reason*) the same can reach us, or incline us to no other thing, than to the exercise of Justice and uprightnesse: and not to offer or perform any thing toward others, save that which we would be content should be offered or performed toward our selves. For such is the Law of nature to the minde, as the eye is to the body; and that which, according to *David*, sheweth us good, that is, the observation of those 40 things which lead us thereby to our last end; which is eternall life; though of themselves not sufficient without faith and grace.

Nemo iure natura cum alienis devinctus incomplexiv fieri debet.

Phil. 4.

Now, that which is truly and properly the law of Nature, where the corruption is not taken for the law, is, as aforesaid, the impression of Gods divine light in men, & a participation of the law increased and eternal. For without any law written, the right reason and understanding, which God hath given us, are abilities within our selves, sufficient 50 to give us knowledge of the good and evill, which by our gratitude to God and distribution of right to men, or by the contrary, we prepare and purchase for our selves. For when the Gentiles (saith S. Paul) which have not the law, do by nature those things contained in the law: they having not the law, are a law unto themselves. Now, to love God, by whom we are, and to do the same right unto all men, which we desire should be done unto us, is an effect of the purest reason: in whose highest Turrets, the quiet of conscience hath made her resting place, and habitation; In arce altissima rationis quies habitat. Therefore the Gentiles (saith S. Paul) which shew the effects of the law written in their hearts, have their 50 consciences for a witness of those effects: And the reprobate their thoughts to accuse them.

Rom. 2. 14.

Rom. 2. 11.

A a

And

And it is most true, that whoſoever is not a law unto himſelf (while he hopeth to abuſe the world by the advantage of hypocriſie) worketh nothing elſe, but the betraying of his own ſoule, by crafty unrighteouſneſſe, purchaſing eternall perdition. For it helpeth us not to hide our corrupt hearts from the worlds eye, ſeeing from him, who is an infinite eye, we cannot hide them: ſome Garlands we may gather in this May-game of the world, *Sed ſlos ille, dum loquimur, areſcit; thoſe flowers wither, while we diſcuſſe of their colours, or are in gathering them.* That we ſhould therefore inhabit and dwell within our ſelves, and become fearful witnesses of our ſecret evils, did that reverend Philoſopher Pythagoras teach in this golden precept: *Nil turpe committas, neque coram aliis, neque tecum; maxime omnium vere teipſum; Commit nothing ſoul or diſhoneſt, ſaith he, neither to be known to others, nor to thine own heart: but above all, men reverence thine own conſcience.* And this may be a precept of nature and right reaſon: by which law, men, and all creatures, and bodies are inclined to thoſe operations, which are answerable to their own form; as fire to give heat. Now, as the reaſonable minde is the form of man, ſo is he aptly moved to thoſe things which his proper form preſenteth unto him: to wit, to that which right reaſon offereth; and the acts of right reaſon, are the acts of vertue: and in the breach of the rules of this reaſon, is man leaſt excuſable: as being a reaſonable creature. For all elſe, both ſenſitive, growing, and inanimate, obey the law which God impoſed on them at their firſt creation.

Gen. 1.

Job c. 28.

The Earth performeth her office, according to the law of God in nature: for it bringeth forth the bud of the herb which ſeedeth ſeed, &c. and the beaſt, which liveth thereon. He gave a law to the Seas, and commanded them to keep their bounds: which they obey. He made a decree for the rain, and a way for the lightning of the thunders. He cauſed the Sun to move, and to give light, and to ſerve for ſignes and for ſeaſons. Were theſe as rebellious as man, for whole fake they were created, or did they once break the law of their natures and forms; the whole world would then periſh, and all return to the firſt *Chaos*, darkneſſe, and conſuſion.

By this naturall law, or law of humane reaſon, did Cain perceive his own wickedneſſe and offence, in the murder of Abel: for he not onely feared the diſpleaſure of God, but the revenge of men: it being written in his reaſon, that whatſoever he performed towards others, the ſame by others might be done unto him again. And that this judgement of well and evil doing, was put into our natures by God, and his eternall Law, before the law written, Moſes in the perſon of God, witneſſeth, *Gen. 4. If thou doe well, ſhalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doe not well, ſin lieth at thy doore.*

The Schoolmen are large alſo in this queſtion of the naturall law: the ſame being opened amply by Reinerius, Antonius, and Valentia. But it is not my purpoſe to write a Volume of this ſubject.

But this law which Thomas Aquinas calleth an *act of reaſon taken properly*; and not a habit, as it is an evident naturall judgement of practick reaſon: they divide into indemonſtrable, or needing no demonſtration (as that good is to be followed, and evil eſchewed) and demonſtrable, which is evidently proved out of higher and more univerſall propoſitions. Again, as it answereth the naturall appetite, preſcribing things to be deſired as good, or to be avoided as evil (as of the firſt, to deſire to live, and to ſatiſſie hunger, &c. and of the ſecond, to eſchew pains, ſorrow, and death) in this conſideration they divide it, according to the divers kinds of appetites that are in us. For in every man there are three ſorts of appetites, which answer the three degrees of naturall law. The firſt is, to be that which we are; in which is comprehended the deſire, both to live, and to preſerve our being and life, alſo the deſire of iſſue, with care to provide for them: for the Father after his death, lives in his children; and therefore the deſire of life comprehends the deſire of children. And to theſe appetites are referred the firſt indemonſtrable lawes of nature, for the moſt part. For it needs no proof, that all creatures ſhould deſire to be, to live, and to be defended, and to live in their iſſue, when they cannot in themſelves. And as man is a being, *Ens* or *Reſo*: he doth deſire good, and ſhun evil. For it is common to all things, to deſire things agreeable to their owne natures, which is, to deſire their owne good. And ſo is good defined by Ariſtotele, to be that which all deſire. Which definition Baſil upon the 44 Pſalme approveth: *Reſpo quidem bonum deſiderant, quod omnia expetunt; Rightly have ſome men deſired good, or goodneſſe, to be that which all things deſire.*

The

The ſecond kinde of appetite is of thoſe things which appertain to us, as we have ſenſe. Whence, by the law of Nature, we deſire the delights of every ſenſe; but with ſuch moderation, as may neither glut us with ſatiety, nor hurt us with exceſſe. For as ſenſe it ſelf is for the preſervation of life and being: ſo it is meet, even by the law of Nature, that the ſenſitive appetite ſhould not carry us to the deſtruction, either of our life or being. And although (ſeeing both theſe kinds of appetites are in beaſts) we may well ſay, that Nature hath given divers laws unto them: In which ſenſe the *Croſſians* define *Naturall right*, or *jus naturale*, to be the ſame which Nature hath taught all living creatures: Yet the Schoolmen admit not, that the inſtincts of beaſts can be properly called a law, but only a *jus*, or *Right*, which is the matter, and aime of every law. For ſo they diſtinguiſh it; where Ulpian affirmeth, that *jus naturale* is that, which Nature hath taught all living creatures. In this place (ſaith Valentia) *jus* is not to be taken for a law, but for the matter of the law. And yet where Ulpian alſo diſtinguiſheth the right belonging to living creatures in general, from the right belonging to men; calling the one *jus nature*, the other *jus gentium*: the Divines underſtand the law of Nature more largely, that is, for all evident dictates, precepts, or biddings of divine reaſon, both in beaſts and men; and reſtrain the law of Nations to a kind of humane right.

The third appetite is of thoſe things which appertain properly to man, as he is a living creature reaſonable: as well with relation to God, and to our Neighbour, as for our ſelves: and the laws of this appetite are the commandments of our Religion.

Now although there are many other branches and diviſions of this law of Nature answering the diviſion of matter, which it preſcribeth, and as manifold, as the morall actions are which it commandeth or forbiddeth; yet is the law of Nature but one law, according to Aquinas: firſt, becauſe it hath one fountain or root in the naturall or motive facultie, which is but one, (tirring up to good, and declining the contrary: ſecondly, becauſe all is contained in that generall naturall precept, That good is to be followed, and ill avoided: and thirdly, becauſe all the parts are reduced to one and the ſame laſt end.

That this law of Nature bindeth all creatures, it is manifeſt: and chiefly man; becauſe he is indued with reaſon: in whom as reaſon groweth, ſo this band of obſerving the law of Nature increaſeth; *Postquam ratio ad perfectum venit, tunc fit quod scriptum est, Baſil. Adveniente mandato, peccatum revocit; When reaſon grew to perfection, then it came to paſſe, which was written by S. Paul, When the commandment came, ſin revived.* Neither is it a ſmall warrant for this law of Nature, when thoſe which break the ſame, are ſaid by S. Paul, *To be delivered over into a reprobate ſenſe (or minde) to do thoſe things which are not convenient: And again, that their conſciences bear witneſſe, and their thoughts accuſe them.* For, though this law of Nature ſtretch not to every particular; as to command faſting, and the like: yet it commandeth in general all good, and whatſoever is agreeable to right and reaſon. And therefore, ſaid Damascene; *Homines facti ſunt mali, declinando in contrarium a nature: And S. Auguſtine, Omne vitium nature nocet, ac per hoc contra naturam eſt; Every vice doth wrong to nature, and is therefore contrary unto it.*

Neither yet are the rules of this law of Nature ſo ſtraight, but that they ſuffer exceptions in ſome particulars. For whereas by this law all men are born Lords of the earth, yet it well alloweth inequality of portions, according to unequal merit: by taking from the evil, and giving to the good; and by permitting and commanding that all men ſhall enjoy the fruits of their labours to themſelves: according to the rules of juſtice and equity.

And though the law of Nature command, that all things be reſtored which are left ſo in truſt, yet in ſome cauſes, this her law the ſuffereth to be broken: as to deny a mad man his weapons, and the like, which he left in keeping while he was ſober. But the univerſall principles can no more be changed, then the decrees of God are alterable: who, according to S. Paul, *abideth faithfull, and cannot deny himſelf.*

2 Tim. 7.

## §. VII.

Of the written Law of GOD

Aug. de Civit.  
Dei, lib. 1.

After the eternall, and naturall, the law Positive or imposed is the next in order, which law, being nothing but an addition, or rather explication of the former, hath two kinds: Divine and Humane. Again, the divine positive law is double; the Old and New: The Old was given unto *Moses* in Mount *Sinai* or *Horeb*, at such time as the world had stood 2513. whole yeeres; and in the 67. day of this yeer, when *as* *Ascatades* or *Ascades* governed the *Assyrians*, *Marathus* the *Sycionians*, *Triopus* the *Argives*, *Cecrops* 10 *Athens*, and *Acheres* *Egypt*: to wit, after the promise to *Abraham*, 430. yeeres. And this it seems, was the first written law which the world received. For the very word *Nomus*, signifying a law, was not then, nor long after invented by the *Grecians*; no not in *Homer's* time, who lived after the fall of *Troy* 80. yeeres at least: and *Troy* it self was cast downe 335. yeeres, after *Moses* led *Israel* out of *Egypt*. This law, it pleased God to engrave in stone, that it might remaine a lasting booke of his expresse will in the Church: and that the Priests and people might have whereof to meditate, till the coming of *Christ*: and that so these Children of *Israel*, though bred among an Idolatrous people in *Egypt*, might be without excuse, the slight defences of ignorance being taken from them.

The reason known to us why this law was not written before, is, that when the people 10 were few, and their lives long, the Elders of Families might easily, without any written law, instruct their own Children: and yet as they increased, so doubtlesse they had, besides the law of Nature, many precepts from God, before the law written. But now at length, so far as the law of Nature did not define all kinds of good, and evil; nor condemn every sin in particular: nor sufficiently terrifie the consciences of offenders: nor so expound divine worship, as for those after ages was required, who gave every day less authority than other to the naturall law; in these respects it was necessary, that the law should be written, and set before the eyes of all men: which before, they might, but would not, read in their own consciences. The Schoolmen, and the Fathers before them, enlarge the causes and necessity, why the law was written; whereof these are the chiefest. 30

The first, for restraining of sin, directly grounded upon this place of *David*, The law of the Lord is undefiled, converting souls: The testimonies of the Lord are faithfulfull, giving wisdom to children. For the humane law, faith *Saint Augustine*, meeteth not with all offences, either by way of prohibition or punishment; seeing thereby it might take away something seeming necessary, and hinder common profit: but the divine law written, forbiddeth every evil, and therefore by *David* it is called undefiled.

Secondly, it serveth for the direction of our mindes. For the Lawes of men can only take knowledge of outward actions, but not of internall motions, or of our disposition and will: and yet it is required, that we be no lesse cleane in the one, than in the other. And therefore were the words converting our souls, added by *David*: wherein are all our outward acts first generated, according to the *Cabalists*. *Actioes hominum nulle essent, nisi prius in mente decernerentur*: The actions of men (say they) would be none at all, were they not first conceived in the minde.

Thirdly, it leadeth us to the knowledge of truth, which by reason of diversitie of opinion; and difference of peculiar Lawes among fundrie Nations, we cannot be assured of: but the law of GOD bindeth all men, and is without error: and therefore also said *David*, That the testimony of the Law of God is faithful: giving Wisdom to children.

## §. VIII.

Of the unwritten Law of God, given to the Patriarchs by Tradition.

Now, that in all this long tract of time, between the creation and the written law, the world and people of God were left altogether to the law of reason & nature, it doth not appear. For the Patriarchs of the first age received many precepts from God himself, and whatsoever was first imposed by *Adam*, the same was observed by *Seth*, who instructed *Enos*: from whom it descended to *Noah*, *Sem*, *Abraham*, *Isaac*, *Jacob*, *Joseph*, and *Moses*. Yea, many particular commandments afterward written, were formerly imposed and delivered over by tradition; which kinde of teaching the Jews after-ward

ward called *Cabala*, or *Receptio*: precepts received from the mouth of their Priests and Elders: to which the Jews after the law written, added the interpretation of secret mysteries, reserved in the bosoms of their Priests, and unlawfull to be uttered to the people. But the true *Cabala* was not to be concealed from any; as being indeed the divine law revealed to the Patriarchs, and from them delivered to the posterity, when as yet it was unwritten. The commandments which God gave unto *Adam* in the beginning, were, that he should impose names to all beasts, according to their natures; to whole perfection of understanding they were sufficiently known. For finding the reason of his own name *Adam*, or *Adamah*, Earth, or red clay, he gave other names significant, not 10 only to beasts, but to his children and nephews, which afterward his issues imitated; as the name of *Seth* signifieth, as some take it, one that was laid for the ground or foundation of the Church, or rather, one given in recompence for *Abel* that was slain: and *Enosh* signifieth man, or miserable, &c. Further, God commanded *Adam* to till the ground, and to live by the labour thereof: God also gave him the choice of all fruits, but the forbidden; and in *Adam* also was marriage first instituted: all men thence-after being comanded to co-habit with their wives, rather than with their father or mother.

That murder and cruelty was also forbidden, both before the law written, and before the flood it self, it is manifest. God himself making it appear, that it was one of the greatest causes of the destruction of mankind by the general flood. For God said 20 unto *Noah*, An end of all flesh is come before me: for the earth is filled with cruelty through them: and behold, I will destroy them \* from the earth. That offence therefore, for which all perished, could not be unknown to all that perished: Gods mercy and justice interposing between the untaught, and revenge. This commandment God repeated to *Noah*, after the waters were dried up from the earth: Who so sheddeth mans blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the Image of God hath he made man.

Also the law of honouring and reverencing our Parents, was observed among the faithful, and the contrary punished by the fathers curse: as, Cursed be *Canaan*, a servant of servants: shall he be unto his brethren. Again, we find that the unnaturall sin of the Sodomitites was punished in the highest degree, as with fire from heaven. The sin of Adultery and Ravishment, was before the law no lesse detested than the rest, as appeareth 30 by that revenge taken for *Dina's* forcing: and by the judgement which *Juda* gave against *Tamar*, That she should be burnt: and by the repentance of *Pharao* and *Abimelech*, against whom this sentence was pronounced, Thou art but dead, because of the woman which thou hast taken: for she is a mans wife. To these we may add the ordinance of Sacrifice, of distinction of clean and unclean beasts; of Circumcision, of the brother to raise up seed to his brother that left a widow childles, and divers other constitutions, partly Morall, and partly Ceremoniall, which being delivered before the written law, were after by it confirmed. So that this Divine Law imposed, of which the law of *Moses* containeth that which is called, The Old Testament, may be said, not only to have been 40 written in the hearts of men, before it was engraven in stone, but also in substance to have been given in precept to the Patriarchs. For as *S. Paul* witnesseth of himself, I knew not sin, but by the law: so ever the law naturally preceded, and went before offences, though written after offences committed. It is true, that all the creatures of God were directed by some kinde of unwritten law; the Angels intuitively; Men by reason; Beasts by sense and instinct, without discourse; Plants by their vegetative powers; and things inanimate by their necessary motions, without sense or preception.

## §. IX.

Of the Morall, Judiciall, and Ceremoniall Law, with a note prefixed, how the Scripture speaketh not alway in one sense, when it nameth the Law of Moses.

Now as the word (Law) in generall, as is aforesaid, hath divers significations, and is taken for all doctrine which doth prescribe and restrain; so the law, called the Law of *Moses* in particular, is taken by *S. Paul* diversly: as sometime for all the Old Testament; as, Now we know whatsoever the Law saith, it saith to them which are under the Law. Rom. 5. 12

When it is opposed, or differed from the Prophets, and Psalms, it is there taken for the five Books of *Moses*. For so *S. Luke* hath distinguished them; as, All must be fulfilled which are written of me in the Law, in the Prophets, and in the Psalms. Lw. 24. 44.

Rom. 3. 28.

When it is opposed to the Gospel, then it is taken for the law Morall, Ceremoniall, and Judiciall; as, *Therefore we conclude, that a man is justified by Faith, without the works of the law.*

Rom. 6. 4.  
Gal. 3. 18.

When it is opposed to Grace, it signifieth the declaration of Gods wrath, and our guilt of condemnation; or the extremity of the law, and *summum jus*: as, *For ye are not under the law, but under grace.*

John 1. 17.

When it is opposed to the Truth, namely, where the Ceremonies or signs are taken for the things signified; as the *Sacrifice for Christ*, and the like: then it signifieth but shadows and figures; as *The law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.*

Gal. 3. 22.  
Luc. 16. 6.

Lastly, when it is opposed to the time of *Christ's* coming, it signifieth the whole polity of the Jews Common-wealth; as, *Before faith came, we were kept under the law, &c.* Or the law of the order and institution of the *Aaronicall Priesthood*; as, *All the Prophets and the law, or the Priests prophesied unto John.* And if the *Priesthood* be changed, the law also, to wit, of the *Priesthood*, must needs be changed.

Heb. 7. 12. &  
10. 1.

The word (Law) is sometime also taken by the Figure *Acronymia*, for Interest, Authority, and Empire, or for constraining force; as, *The law of the Spirit of life, the law of the force of sin and death, the enforcements of conscience, &c.*

Rom. 8. 2.  
Rom. 7. 23.

But the *Written law of Moses*, or the law of the Old Testament, of which we now speak, is thus defined. The law is a doctrine, which was first put into the minds of men by God, and afterwards written by *Moses*, or by him repeated, commanding *Holiness* and Justice, promising eternal life conditionally, that is to the observers of the law, and threatening death to those which break the law in the least. For according to S. James, *Whoever shall keep the whole, and faileth in one point, is guilty of all.* The definition used by the Schoolmen in which both the old and new law are comprehended, is thus given: *Lex divina est divinum decretum, hominibus prescribens modum necessarium, ut apte pervenire possint ad supernam beatitudinem, quae est ultimus humanae vitae finis.* The divine Law (say they) is the decree of God, prescribing unto men a necessary mean, whereby they may aptly attain superna beatitude, which is the last end of mans life.

James 2. 10.

The law of *Moses* hath three parts: Morall, Ceremoniall, and Judiciall. The Morall part commandeth this or that good to be done, and this or that evil to be avoided, in 30 particular; as also it declareth, for whose sake it is to be done; as, *Do this, for I am the Lord*; whereas the law of nature commands it but in generall. Again, the Morall law entreateth of virtue and goodnesse; the Ceremoniall of divine service, and of holinesse; (for externall worship and the order of hallowing our selves unto God is called Ceremony) and the Judiciall teacheth the particular government, fit for the Common-wealth of the Jews, and prescribeth orders for justice and equity. And therefore was it said of S. Paul, *The Commandment is just, holy, and good*: just, or justice being referred to the Judiciall: holy, or holinesse to the Ceremoniall; good, or honest to the Morall. The Judiciall part is touching the government of the Common-wealth of the Jews, in which many things must needs be proper to that estate, as such as were instituted either in respect of place or persons.

Rom. 7. 12.

The Ceremoniall is divided into four parts, according to the four kindes of things of which it speaketh, to wit, Sacrifice, holy things, Sacraments, and Observances. To Sacrifices belong beasts, and the fruits of the earth; to holy things the Tabernacle, Temple, Vessels, Altars, and the like; to Sacraments, Circumcision, the Passover, and such like. For Observances, they consisted either in prohibition of certaine meats, as not to eat the blood and fat of beasts: or in some other outward things, as in washings, purifying, annointings, and attire, as not to wear mixt garments of Linnen and Woollen: as also it prohibiteth other unnaturall and unproper commixtions, as, *Thou shalt not yoke together in a Plough an Ox and an Ass*, or cast mingled seed in one field. It also exhorteth to naturall compassion, and forbiddeh cruelty even to beasts, birds, and plants, whereby the creatures of God might be destroyed without any profit to man. For so some refer these precepts, *Thou shalt not kill the bird sitting on her nest; nor beat down the first buds of the tree, nor muzzle the labouring ox*, and the like, to the Ceremoniall law.

Neither is there any of these three parts of the law of *Moses*, but it hath as yet in some respects the same power which it had before the coming of *Christ*. For the Morall liveth still, and is not abrogated or taken away: saving in the ability of justifying or condemning; for therein are we commanded to love and worship God: and to use charity

one

one towards another: which for ever shall be required at our hands. Therein also are we in particular directed, how this ought to be done: which power of directing by speciall rules and precepts of life, it retaineth still. For these things also are commanded in both Testaments to be observed: though principally for fear of God in the one, and for the love of God in the other.

The Ceremoniall also lived in the things which it fore-signified. For the shadow is not destroyed, but perfected, when the body it self is represented to us. Besides, it still liveth, in that it giveth both instruction and testimony of *Christ*, and in that it giveth direction to the Church, for some Ceremonies and Types of holy signification, which are still expedient; though in a far fewer number than before *Christ's* coming, and in a far lesse degree of necessitie.

Lastly, the Judiciall liveth in substance, and concerning the end, and the naturall and universall equitie thereof.

But the Morall faileth in the point of justification, the Ceremoniall as touching the use and externall observation (because *Christ* himself is come, of whom the ceremonies were signes and shadows) and the Judiciall is taken away, as far forth as it was peculiar to the Jews Common-wealth and policie.

## §. X.

*A proposall of nine other points to be considered, with a touch of the five first.*

As for that which remaineth in the generall consideration of the divine written law, it may in effect be reduced into these nine points.

1. The dignity and worth of the Law.
  2. The Majesty of the Law-giver.
  3. The property and peculiarity of the people receiving it.
  4. The conveniency of the time in which it was given.
  5. The efficacy and power thereof.
  6. The difference and agreement of the old and new Testament.
  7. The end and use of the Law.
  8. The sense and understanding of the Law.
  9. The durance and continuance thereof.
1. The dignity of the Law is sufficiently proved by S. Paul, in these words: *Wherefore the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, and just, and good*: which three attributes are referred, as aforesaid, to the Morall, Ceremoniall, and Judiciall.
  2. The Majesty of the Law-giver is approved in all his creatures: who as he hath given all things their lives and beings, so he onely gave the Law, who could onely give the end and reward promised, to wit, the salvation of mankind: but he gave it not to *Moses* immediately, but by the ministry of Angels, as it is said: *And the law was ordained by Angels, in the hand of a Mediator*: And in the Acts, *He gave the law by the ordinance of Angels*.
  3. The propriety and peculiarity of the people, receiving the Law, is in three respects. First, in that they were prepared. Secondly, in that they were a Nation apart and dislivered. Thirdly, in that they were the children of the promise made to *Abraham*. Prepared they were, because they had the knowledge of one God, when all other Nations were Idolaters. A Nation apart and severed they were, because of Gods choice and election. Children of the promise they were, for the promise was made by God unto *Abraham* and his seed: not unto his seeds, as to *Esa* and *Jacob*, but to his seed, as to *Jacob* or *Israel* singularly, of whom *Christ*. Now to *Abraham* and his seed were the promise made: *he saith not, to the seeds, as speaking of many, but, to thy seed, as of one, which is Christ*. Gal. 3. 6.
  4. The conveniency of the time, in which it was given, is noted by S. Augustine: that it was about the middle time, between the Law of Nature, and Grace: the Law of Nature continued from *Adam* to *Moses*: the Law written in the Commandments received by *Moses* in the worlds year 2514. continued to the Baptism of *John*: from which time, begun the law of Grace, which shall continue to the worlds end. Other reasons for the conveniency are formerly given.
  5. The fifth consideration is of the efficacy of this law, the same being a disposition

to,

to, or signe of our Justification: but not by it self sufficient, but as a figure of *Christ* in ceremonies, and a preparation to righteousness in morall precepts. For through the passion of *Christ* were sins forgiven, who taketh away the sins of the world: and therefore *S. Paul* calleth the rudiments of the law *beggerly and weak*; beggerly, as containing no grace, weak, as not able to forgive and justifie. The blood of Goats and Bulls, and the almes of an Heifer could only cleanse the body; but they were figures of *Christ*; blood, which doth cleanse the inward soul. For if the law could justifie, then *Christ* died in vain.

Galath. 4.

Heb. 9.

Gal. 2.

## §. XI.

Of the sixth point, to wit, of the difference and agreement of the old and new Testament.

The old and new Testament differ in name, and in the meane & way proposed for attaining to salvation; as the old by works, the new by grace: but in the thing it self, or object and remote end, they agree: which is, mans happinesse and salvation.

Heb. 8. 13.

The old Testament, or Law, or Letter, or the Witnesse of Gods will, was called the old, because it preceded the new Testament; which is an explication of the old: from which the new taketh witnesse. Yet the new is of more excellency, in that it doth more lively expresse, and openly and directly delineate the waies of our redemption. It is also called the old, to shew that in part it was to be abrogated: In that he saith the New Testament, he hath abrogated the old. For the old law, though greatly extolled by the Prophets, and delivered with wonderfull miracles, yet was it constituted in a policy perishable: but the new was given in a promise of an everlasting Kingdom, and therefore called in the *Apocalypse*, a Testament and Gospel for ever during.

The old Testament is called the Law, because the first and chief part is the Law of *Moses*, of which the *Prophets* and *Psalms* are Commentaries, explicating that Law.

The new Testament is called the Gospel, because the first and chief part thereof, is the glad tidings of our Redemption: the other Books, as the *Epistles*, or Letters of the *Apostles*, and the *Acts* or story of the *Apostles*, are plentifull interpreters thereof: The word *Evangelion*, signifying a joyfull, happy, and prosperous message, or (as *Homer* used it) the reward given to the Messenger, bringing joyfull news. It is also sometime taken for a sacrifice, offered after victory, or other pleasing successe, as by *Xenophon*. In the Scriptures it hath three significations. First, for glad tidings in generall, as in *Eph. 5. 20. 7.* concerning peace. Secondly, by an excellency it is restrained, to signifie that most joyfull message of Salvation, as in *Luk. 2. 10.* whence also by figure it is taken for the History of *Christ*: and so we understand the four Gospels.

Act. 1.

Lastly, for the preaching and divulging the doctrine of *Christ*, as *1 Cor. 9. 14.* and *2 Cor. 8. 18.*

The agreement of both Testaments (taken, I think, as they are divided in volumes) is by *Darius* comprised in these four.

In their Author.

In the substance of the Covenant, or things promised.

In the foundation, to wit, *Christ*.

In the effects, that is, in righteousness and justification.

In the Author they agree, because both are of God, and therefore both one Testament and will of God in substance of doctrine. For as there was ever one Church, so was there one Covenant, one Adoption, and one Doctrine. As the old law doth point at *Christ*, so doth the new Law teach *Christ*: the old proposing him as to come, the new as already come; one and the same thing being promised in both; both tending to one, and the same end, even the salvation of our souls: which according to *S. Peter*, is the end of our Faith. For although it be said, that *Moses* did promise by observing the law, an earthly kingdom, and flowing with milk and honey, the propagation of children, and other worldly blessings: yet all these were but figures to teach, and pledges to assure the Fathers of those spirituall blessings by *Christ*; for by the earthly, he raised their minds to the hope of heavenly. And the Fathers notwithstanding these worldly goods, did yet acknowledge themselves strangers and pilgrims, expecting the heavenly *Hierusalem*: according to this place of the *Hebrews*: All these died in faith, and received not the promises: but saw them a far off and believed them, confessing that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. To which purpose also *S. Augustine*, *Omnino pauci veterem legem intelligunt*,

Cap. 11. c. 13.

Lib. de Civit. Dei. 18. c. 15.

gunt, non attendentes per promissa terrena, eterna promitti: Few (saith he) do understand the old law: not attending that by things earthly, eternall are promised. And *S. Hierome*: *Nobis in Sphm. c. 3.* *Deus pascere Judeos more pecorum corporalibus donis opibique, ut Judei somniant; God would not feed the Jews as beasts with corporal gifts and riches, as themselves dream.* And this may be gathered out of Gods own words, *Ego sum Deus tuus; & ero vobis in Deus; I am thy God, and I will be your God.* For the words, *I will be your God*, prove that it was not for the present, or for perishable things, that God gave them this promise, but in respect of the future: to wit, the safety of their souls. For as God created both body and soul, so hath he of his goodness, not left the better part uncared for, which liveth ever.

The agreement between the old and new Testament in substance, infers also the agreement in foundation. For *Christ* is called the foundation of the law, laid both by the *Apostles* and *Prophets*; in whom all the promises of God in the old and new, are assured: the Fathers having eaten the same spirituall food, which we eat in our Sacraments.

The agreement in effects, is, in that the knowledge of our sin and misery, which is taught us by the law, maketh way, and as it were, serveth in subordination to the Gospel, the proper effects whereof are mercy and salvation: to which the law serving as an introduction (for to those which acknowledge their sin & misery, God sheweth his mercy and salvation) may be said to agree with the Gospel in the effect. For otherwise, if we sever the Law from subordination to the Gospel, the effects are very different: the one sheweth the way of righteousness by works, the other by faith: the Law woundeth, the Gospel healeth: the Law terrifieth, the Gospel allureth; *Moses* acculeth, *Christ* defendeth: *Moses* condemneth, *Christ* pardoneth. The old restrained the hand, the new, the minde. *Data est lex quæ non sanaret* (saith *S. Augustine*) *sed quæ egrotantes probaret; The law was given, not to help, but to discover sickness: and S. Chrysostome; Data est lex, ut se homo inveniret; non ut moribus sanaretur, sed ut medicus quereretur: The law was given that man might finde and know his own imperfection: not that his disease was thereby holpen, but that he might then seek out the Physician.* For *Christ* came to save the world, which the law had condemned. And as *Moses* was but a servant, and *Christ* a Son; so the greatest benefit was reserved to be brought, as by the worst person, saith *Cyril*: for this law made nothing perfect, but was an introduction of a better hope.

## §. XII.

Of the rest of the points proposed.

The seventh consideration is of the end, and use of the law: which is to bring us to *Christ*: for finding no righteousness in our own works, we must seek it in some other. But this is the last, and remote, and utmost end: the next and proper end of the law, is to prescribe righteousness, and to exact absolute and perfect obedience to God. *Cursed is he which continueth not in all the things of this law.*

The second end of the Law, is to render us inexcusable before God: who knowing so perfect a law, do not keep it: the law requiring a perfect and intire, not a broken or half obedience; but both inward and outward righteousness, and performance of duty to God and Men.

The third and chief end of the law, is, as hath bin said, to send us to *Christ*, and his grace, being in our selves condemned and lost. For the law was delivered with thunder, and with a most violent and fearful tempest, threatening eternall death.

The fourth end of the law was to designe, and preserve, the place of the Church and true people of God: and to hold men in one Discipline, and awe, till the coming of *Christ*: after whom the Church was to be dispersed over the whole world.

These be the ends of the Morall law. The end and use of the Ceremoniall law, is to confirm the truth of *Christ*, and the new Testament. The use of the Judiciall, to teach us naturall equity and right, whereto we must conform our selves.

The sense and understanding of the Law is double, littrell and spirituall: by the littrell we are taught the worship and service of God: by the spirituall, the figures and mysticall fore-speakings of *Christ*.

Lastly, for the durance or continuance of the Law, the same had being untill the passion of *Christ*: before which time, and while *Christ* taught in the world, both the old and the new were in force. But after that the true sacrifice was offered upon the Altar of

\* Gen. 49. 10. The Scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor a Law-giver from between his feet until Shila come.

of the Crosse, then the Jewish sacrifices and ceremonies, which were *Types* and figures of *Christ* (Christ being the body of those shadows) ceased to binde the conscience any longer: the mystery of our redemption being now by *Christ* and in him finished. In token whereof, the vail of the Temple rent asunder; noting that the ceremonial vails and shadows were now to be removed, not that the morall law of the Commandments was hereby abolished, or weakened at all: otherwise than that it had not power to condemn according to the Jewish doctrine, as aforesaid. For the observing of the law was by *Christ* himself severely commanded: our love towards God being thereby to be witnessed. And herein *David* too much rejoiced, as he preferred the observation of the law before all that the world could yeeld. *In via testimoniorum tuorum delectatus sum, sicut in oil* *omnibus divitiis; I have been delighted in thy law, as in all manner of riches:* And again, *The law of thy mouth is good for me above thousand of gold and silver. This is the love God* (saith *S. John*) *that we keep his Commandment.* And that there is no excuse for the neglect of the things commanded in the law, God himself in *Deuteronomy* witnesseth. *This Commandment* (saith he) *which I command thee this day, is not hid from thee, neither is it far off. It is not in heaven that thou shouldst say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it us, and cause us to hear it, that we may do it: neither is it beyond the Sea, that thou shouldst say, Who shall go over the Sea for us, and bring it us? &c.* but the word is very near unto thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart for to do it. Behold (saith *Moses*) *I have set before thee this day life and death, good and evil, in that I command thee this day, to love the Lord thy God, to walk in his water, and to keep his Commandments, and his Ordinances, and his Laws; that thou mayst live, &c.* Neither is it said in vain in *S. Matthew: Si vis vitam ingredi, serva mandata; If thou wilt enter into life, keep the Commandments:* and in *S. John; Scio quia mandatum ejus vita eterna est; I know that his Commandment is life everlasting.* And if this be the charity of God, or of Men towards God, as *S. John* hath taught, to wit, that we keep his Commandments: certainly, he is but a liar, that professeth to love God, and neglecteth to observe the word of his will, with all his power. And though I confesse it not in mans ability, without the special grace of God to fulfill the law (*Christ* onely as man excepted) yet if we rightly consider the mercifull care which God had of his people in those his Commandments, we shall finde in our selves, how we borrow liberty, and rather let go slip our affections, and voluntarily loosen them from the chains of obedience, to which the word of God and divine reason hath fastened them, than that we are excusable by those difficulties and impossibilities, which our minde (greedy of liberty) propoeth to it self. For this is the love of God, that we keep his Commandments, and his Commandments are not grievous, 1 John 5. 12. and if we examine every precept apart, and then weigh them each after other, in the balance of our consciences: it is not hard for any man to judge, by what easie persuasions, we steal away from our own power, as unwilling to use it against our pleasing desires.

## §. XIII.

Of the severall Commandments of the Decalogue: and that the difficulty is not in respect of the Commandments, but by our default.

For by the first we are commanded to acknowledge, serve, and love one God. Now, whereby are we inticed to the breach of this precept? seeing every reasonable man may conceive and know, that infinite power cannot be divided into many infinities: and that it is of necessity, that by this almighty Unity, all things have been caused, and are continued. And if brute beasts had this knowledge of their Creator, and how in his providence he hath also provided for every of them, Which giveth to beasts their food, &c. there is no doubt but that they would also serve and love him onely.

The second precept is the forbidding of Idolatry, and worship of Images: the making whereof, out of doubt, was not the invention of an ill intent in the beginning, seeing this is generally true; *Omnia mala exempla bonis initiis orta sunt; All ill examples did spring and arise from good beginnings.* For their first erection was to keep the memory of men famous for their virtue: untill (saith *Lactantius*) the devill crept into them, and (having blotted out the first intent) working in weak and ignorant souls, changed the nature of the one, and the reason of the other, to serve himself thereby. For what reasonable man, if he be not forsaken of God, will call on those blinde, deaf, dumbe, and dead stocks,

more worthlesse than the most worthlesse of those, that having life and reason, implore their help, which have neither: yea, of more vile prize and baser, than the basest of beasts, who have sense and estimation? For what do we thereby (saith the *Widome of Solomon*) *but call to the weak for help, pray to the dead for life, require aid of him that hath no experience, assistance in our journeyes of him that cannot go, and successe in our affairs of him that hath no power?* And whether the Idolater, or the block, to which he prayeth, be more senselesse, *David* maketh a doubt. For (saith he) *they that make them are like unto* *Psal. 35. 18.* *them, and so are all the rest that trust in them.*

The branch of the third Commandment, is neither perswaded by worldly pleasure, nor worldly profit: the two greatest enchanters of mortall men. No, we are no way allured to this horrible disdain of God, unless the hate of good men, and Gods curse, be accounted an advantage. For as our corruptest nature gives us nothing towards it, so can it satisfie no one appetite, except everlasting sorrow, and hell dwell in our desire. And therefore this strange custom hath the devil brought up among men, without all subtiltie of argument, or cunning perswasion, taking thereby the greatest and most scornfull advantage over us. For slaughter satisfieth hatred, Theft gives satisfaction to need, Adultery to lust, Oppression to covetousnesse: but this contemptuous offence of blasphemy, and the irreverent abuse of Gods name, as it giveth no help to any of our worldly affections, so the most salvage Nations of the world do not use it.

The fourth Commandment, to keep the Sabbath day holy, hath neither pain, burden, nor inconvenience. For it giveth rest to the labourer, and consolation to their Masters. And that this law was imposed on man for his benefit, *Moses* teacheth in the reason of the law: as in *Exod. 23. 12.* *And in the seventh day thou shalt rest, that thine Oxe and thine Asse may rest, and the son of thy maid, and the stranger may be refreshed.*

The first of the second Table, to honour our Parents, with whom we are one and the same, is a gratitude which nature it self hath taught us towards them, who, after God, gave us life and being, have begotten us, and born us, cherished us in our weak and helpless infancy, and bestowed on us the harvest and profit of their labours and cares. Therefore, in the Temporall and Judicall ordinances, cursing of Parents, or the offering them violence, was made death.

The next is, that thou shalt not Murder, that is, thou shalt not do the acts following the affections of hatred. For the law of God, and after it our own laws, and, in effect, the law of all Nations, have made difference between slaughter-casual, and furious. *Affectio enim tuæ* (saith *Bracton*) *imponit nomen operi tuo; It is the affection and will that makes the work such as it is.* And certainly, whosoever cannot forbear to commit murder, hath neither the grace of God, nor any use of his own will.

The third of the second Table, commands us from adultery. Now if the preservation of Virginity have been possible for thousands of men and women, who in all Ages have mastered their fleshly desires, and have returned chaste to their grave: It cannot be accounted a burthen, to forbear the dishonour and injury, which we offer to others by such a violation, seeing marriage is permitted by the laws of God and men, to all by that affect it. And there is no man living, whom the desire of beauty and form hath so constrained, but he might with ease forbear the prosecution of this ill, did not himself give suck to this infant, and nourish warmth till it grow to strong heat, heat till it turn to fire, and fire to flame.

The fourth of the second Table, is, That we shall not steal. And if that kinde of violent robbery had been used in *Moses* time, which many Russians practise now a daies in *England*, and to the dishonour of our Nation, more in *England*, than in any Region of the world among Christians; out of doubt, he would have censured them by death, and not by restitution, though quadruple. For I speak not of the poor and miserable souls, whom hunger and extreme necessity inforceth; but of those derailed Theeves, who, to maintain themselves Lord-like, assault, rob, and wound the Merchant, Artificer, and labouring man; or break by violence into other mens houses, and spend in Bravery, Drunkenness, and upon Harlots, in one day, what other men sometime have laboured for all their lives: impoverishing whole Families, and taking the bread and food from the mouths of their children. And that this Commandment might easily be observed, it would soon appear, if Princes would resolve, but for a few years, to pardon none. For it is the hope of life, and the argument of sparing the first offence, that encourageth



these Hell-hounds. And if every man presume to be pardoned once, there is no State or Common-wealth, but these men would in a short time impoverish or destroy it.

The fifth Commandment of this second Table, is, the prohibition of false witness: from which if men could not forbear, all surety of estate and life were taken away. And so much did God detest a false witness, and a false accuser, especially in matters criminal, that the law ordained him to suffer the same death or punishment, which he fought by falsehood to lay on his brother.

The last of the ten Commandments forbiddeth us to covet any thing, which belongeth to another man, either the bodies of their wives for concupiscence, or their goods for desire of gain. And this precept seemeth the hardest for men to observe; so esteemed by reason of our fraile affections; and yet if we judge hereof rightly, it may be doubted whether it extend to all our inconsiderate fancies and vain thoughts. For, although it be not easie to master all our sudden passions, yet we may restrain and hinder the growing, and farther increase, if we please to intend our strength, and seek for grace. How the word *coveting* reacheth to all those, it is to be considered. For *Concupiscentia*, according to some, *Est effrenatus habendi appetitus*; An unbridled, or unrestrained appetite of having: And as touching such an appetite, we cannot excuse our selves by any our naturall frailty, or unadvised error; But, as I suppose, the word *Concupiscentia* is more largely taken, either for a determinate and unbridled evil intent, or for some urging inclination thereunto. All the question is of the latter sort: which is, *Actus imperfectus, id est, non deliberatus ratione, quæ est principium proprium actus boni aut vitiosi*; Such passions, or inclinations are imperfect acts, that is, not deliberated upon by reason, which is the proper principle of a good or vicious action. And sure, it may seem, that so long as we resist such motions, they harm us not: as they say, *Quamdiu res frangamur, nihil nocent: nocent autem cum eas dominari permittimus*; As long as we give no assent unto them, it is thought by some that they hurt us not; and that then only they hurt, when we suffer them to bear sway. But these men, as it seems, make nothing forbidden in the tenth precept, but what hath been forbidden in the other: for in every Commandment, not onely the outward act, but also the inward assent unto evil, though it break not out into act, is forbidden: therefore, that we may know the difference between this Commandment and the rest, so the distinction of desires is to be held: that some are with assent, and unbridled, others bridled, and without assent. For so even the Morall Philosopher can tell us, that the continent man hath evil desires, but without assent (for they are bridled by the strength of right reason) as, on the other side, the Incontinent hath good desires, but restrained and suppressed by contrary passions. The evil desires, when they are accompanied with assent, are in every Commandment forbidden, together with the outward act: and therefore, if we will have any thing proper to this Commandment, we must needs say, that the evil desires of the continent man (that is, even those which we resist and bridle) are here forbidden. For though he that bridleth his evil desires, be much better than he that yeeldeth unto them: yet such a man, even according to the Heathen Philosopher, is not worthy the name of a vertuous man. For Aristotle himself makes *continentia*, not to be vertue, but onely a degree unto it: confessing, that though the Continent man do well in bridling his evil affections, yet he doth not all, seeing he ought not so much as to have them at all. Neither is it much more, that true divinity delivereth touching this matter. For, as he saith, that in the continent man the having of these evil desires, though he resist them, is the cause that he cannot be called a vertuous man: so we, that the having of them is a sin. Onely in this we excell him here: that we are able out of divinity to give the true reason of this doctrine: which is, that every one sinneth, that doth not love God with his whole heart and affection: whence it followeth, that the evil desires of the Continent man; that is, of him which bridleth so them, must needs be sin: seeing such desires, though bridled, are a pulling away of a part of our heart and affection from God.

Seeing therefore it hath pleased God, to make us know, that by our faithfull endeavours to keep his commandments, we witness our love toward himself: we may not safely give liberty to our vanities, by casting back upon God (who is justice it self) that he hath given us Precepts altogether beyond our power, and Commandments impossible for us to keep. For, as he is accused (saith Saint Hierome) that avows that the Law is in all things possible to be observed: so he hath made this addition: *Maledictus qui*

*qui dicit impossibilia Deum præcepisse; Accusæd is he that saith that God hath commanded things (in themselves, and not through our fault) impossible.* Now, as the places are many which command us to keep the Law; so is our weaknesse also in the Scriptures laid before us, and therefore it is thus safely to be understood, that we should without evasion, or without betraying of our selves, do our faithfull endeavours to observe them: which if we do unfeignedly, no doubt but God will accept our desires therein. For that there is no man just, David witnesseth: *Enter not into judgement with thy servant, for in thy sight no flesh that liveth shall be justified.* And in the first of Kings, *There is no man that sinneth not:* And again, *Who can say, I have made my heart clean?* But seeing there is no sin given willingly, or restrain himself in all that he can; yea, or no? For when a King gives to his subject a commandment upon pain of losse of his love, to perform some service: if the subject neglecting the same, seek to satisfie his Sovereign with shifting excuses, out of doubt such a Prince will take himself to be derided therein.

## §. XIV.

*If there were not any Religion, nor Judgement to come, yet the Decalogue were most necessary to be observed.*

And if we consider advisedly and soberly of the Morall Law, or ten Commandments, which God by the hand of Moses gave unto his people, it will appear, that such was his mercifull providence in the choice of them, as were there neither pain nor profit adjoynd to the observing, or not observing of them; were there no divine power at all, nor any Religion among men; yet if we did not for our own sakes strive to observe these laws, all society of men, and all endeavours, all happinesse and contentment in this life would be taken away: and every State and Common-wealth in the World fall to the ground and dissolve. Therefore these laws were not imposed as a burden, but as a blessing: to the end that the innocent might be defended, that every man might enjoy the fruits of his own travell, that right might be done to all men from all men: that by justice, order, and peace, we might live the lives of reasonable men, and not of beasts; of free-men, and not of slaves; of civill men, and not of savages. And hereof making our humane reason onely Judge, let us see the inconveniences in this life which would follow by the breach and neglect of these laws.

As first, what would the ill be, if we acknowledged many gods? would not a far greater hatred, war, and blood-shed follow, than that which the difference of ceremony, and diversity of interpretation hath already brought into the World, even among those Nations which acknowledge one God, and one Christ?

And what could it profit mankind to pray to Idols, and Images of gold, metall, dead stones, and rotten wood, whence nothing can be hoped, but the losse of time, and an impossibility to receive thence from, either help or comfort?

The breach of the third Commandment bringeth therewith this disadvantage, and ill to man, that whosoever taketh the Name of God in vain, shall not at any time benefit himself by calling God to witness for him, when he may justly use his holy Name.

The observing the Sabbath holy, giveth rest to men and beasts, and nature her self requirith intermission of labour.

If we despise our Parents, who have given us being, we thereby teach our own children to scorn and neglect us, when our aged yeers require comfort and help at their hands.

If murder were not forbidden, and severely punished, the race of mankind would be extinguished: and whosoever would take the liberty to destroy others, giveth liberty to others to destroy himself.

If adultery were lawfull and permitted, no man could say unto himself; This is my son: there could be no inheritance proper, no honour descend to posterity, no endeavour by vertue and undertaking to raise Families: murders and poisonings between man and wife would be daily committed: and every man subject to moist filth and unclean diseases.

If stealth and violent rapine were suffered, all mankind would shortly after perish,

or live as the salvages, by roots and acorns. For no man laboureth but to enjoy the fruits thereof. And such is the mischief of robbery, as where *Moses* for lesser crimes appointed restitution fourfold, policy of State and necessity hath made it death.

To permit false witnesses, is to take all mens lives and estates from them by corruption: the wicked would swear against the virtuous: the waster against the wealthy: the idle beggar and loyterer, against the careful and painful labourer: all triall of right were taken away, and justice thereby banished out of the world.

The coveting of that which belongs to other men, bringeth no other profit than a distraction of minde, with an inward vexation: for while we covet what appertains to others, we neglect our own: our appetites are therein fed with vain and fruitlesse hopes, so long as we do but covet; and if we do attain to the desire of the one, or the other, to wit, the wives or goods of our neighbours; we can look for no other, but that our selves shall also, either by theft or by strong hand, be deprived of our own.

Wherein then appeareth the burthen of Gods Commandments, if there be nothing in them, but rules and directions for the generall and particular good of all living? Surely, for our own good, and not in respect of himself, did the most mercifull and provident God ordain them; without the observation of which, the virtues of heavenly bodies, the fertility of the earth, with all the blessings given us in this life, would be unto us altogether unprofitable, and of no use. For we should remaine but in the state of brute beasts, if not in a far more unhappy condition.

## §. XV.

Of humane law, written and unwritten.

Humane law, of which now it followeth to speak, is first divided into two: (*Viz.*) Written, and Unwritten. The unwritten consists of usage, approved by time: which *Isidore* calls *Mores*: and he defines *Mores* to be *Consuetudines veritate probate*; to be *customs approved by antiquitie, or unwritten laws*. Now custome differeth from use, as the cause from the effect: in that custome is by use and continuance established into a law: but yet there where the law is defective, saith *Isidore*.

And of customes there are two generall natures, containing innumerable particulars; the first are written customes received and exercised by Nations, as the customes of *Burgundy* and *Normandy*, the ancient generall custome of *England*, and the customes of *Cassile*, and other *Provinces*.

The second are these petty customes, used in particular Places, Cities, Hundreds, and Mannors. The generall or Nationall customes are some written, others unwritten.

The particular or petty customes are seldome written, but witnessed by testimony of the inhabitance. The customes of the *Duchie of Cornwall*, comprehending also the *Countie of Devon*, as touching *Tin*, and *Tin* caules are written in *Devon*, but not in *Cornwall*. But howsoever use and time hath made these customes as laws, yet ought every custome to be rationabill, as well as *prescripta*. *Non firmatur tractu temporis, quod de jure ab initio non subsistit*; but which at first was not grounded upon good right, is not made good by continuance of time. And (saith *Ulpian*) *quod ab initio vitiosum est, non potest tractu temporis convalescere*; Course of time amends not that which was naught from the first beginning. For these two defences are necessary in all laws of custome; the one, that it be not repugnant to the law divine, and naturall: the other, that the cause and reason be strong, proving a right birth, and necessary continuance: it being manifest, that every custome which is against the law, had his beginning from evill deeds, and therefore not without the former considerations to be allowed. And it is true, that all customs of this nature, were but tolerated for a time, by the law-makers, though they have been since continued; because posterity is not bound to examine by what cause their Ancestors were thereto moved. For, *Non sufficit simplex tolerantia*. And it is in this sort over-ruled in the law; *Per populum consuetudo contra legem induci non potest, nisi de voluntate illius, qui novam legem & novam constitutionem statuere potest, qui solus princeps est*; The people cannot bring in a new custome against law, save by his will, who hath power to make a new law and ordinance, which is only the Prince.

Humane law generally taken, to wit, humane law written, is by some defined to be the decree or doom of practick reason: by which humane actions are ruled and directed.

rected. *Papinian* calls the law a common precept, the advisement of wise men, and the restraint of offences committed, either willingly or ignorantly. *Isidore* calls the law a Constitution written, agreeing with Religion, fittell for government and common profit: And more largely, *Omne id quod ratione consistit: All that stands with reason*.

Lastly, and more precisely, it is thus defined. Humane law is a righteous decree, agreeing with the law naturall & eternall: made by the rationall discourse of those, that exercise publicke authority: prescribing necessary observances to the subject. That every law ought to be a righteous decree, *S. Augustine* teacheth, saying: *Mibi lex esse non videtur, que iusta non fuerit*; It seems to be no law at all to me, which is not just: and just it cannot be, except it agree with the law naturall and eternall. For there is no law just and legitim (saith *S. Augustine*) which the Law-makers have not derived from the eternall. *Nihil iustum atque legitimum est, quod non ab eterna lege sibi homines derivaverunt*.

Secondly, it ought to be constituted by discourse of reason, whereby it is distinguished from the law naturall, to wit, the naturall, indemonstrable, or needing no demonstration, from whence the law humane is taken and deduced.

Thirdly, that it ought to be made by an authorized Magistracy, it cannot be doubted, be the government of what kind soever. For it falleth otherwise under the title of those decrees called *violencia*, or *iniqua constitutiones*; *Violences, or wicked constitutiones*.

Of humane law there are four properties, especially answering these four conditions in the former definition. First, as it is drawn out of the law of Nature; so every particular of the humane law may be resolved into some principle or rule of the naturall.

Secondly, it is to be considered as it is referred unto, and doth respect the common good.

Thirdly, it is to be made by publicke authority.

Fourthly, concerning the matter of the law, it prescribeth and directeth all humane actions. And so is the law as large and divers, as all humane actions are divers, which may fall under it. For according to *Thomas*, *Alia lex Julia de Adulteris, alia Cornelii de Siccariis*; The Law of Julian against Adultery, is one, the Cornelian against Ruffians, is another. Now the humane law generally taken, is in respect of the first of these considerations, divided into the law of Nations, and the Civill.

The Law of Nations is taken lesse or more properly; lesse properly for every law which is not of it self, but from other. higher principles deduced: and so it seemeth that *Ulpian* understands it: for he defineth *jus Gentium*, or the Law of Nations, to be that which is only common amongst men, as Religion, and the Worship of God: which is not in the very nature of this law of Nations; but from the principles of the Scriptures, and other divine Revelations. But the law of Nations properly taken, is that *dictate*, or *sentence*, which is drawn from a very probable, though not from an evident principle, yet so probable, that all Nations do assent unto the conclusion, as that the free passage of Ambassadors be granted between enemies, &c. which Nationall law, according to divers acceptations, and divers considerations had of the humane law, may be sometime taken for a Species of the Naturall, sometime of the Humane.

*Jus Civile*, or the Civill law, is not the same in all Common-wealths, but in divers Estates it is also divers and peculiar, and this law is not so immediately derived from the Law of Nature, as the law of Nations is: For it is partly deduced out of such principles as all Nations do not agree in, or easily assent unto; because they depend on particular circumstances, which are divers, and do not fit all estates. Hereof *Ulpian*, *jus Civile neque in totum a Naturali & Gentium recedit, neque per omnia ei servit: itaque cum ali- quid addimus, vel detrahimus juri communi, jus proprium, id est, Civile efficitur*; The civill law (saith he) doth neither wholly differ from the law of Nature and Nations; nor yet in all points obey it: therefore when we add ought to, or take from the law that is common, we make a law proper, that is, the Civill Law.

The law now commonly called the Civill law, had its birth in Rome: and was first written by the *Decem-viri*, 303. years after the foundation of the City. It was compounded as well out of the *Athenian* and other *Grecian* laws, as out of the ancient *Roman* customes and laws Regall. The Regall laws were devised by the first Kings; and called *Leges Regiae*; nor *Papirianae*, because they were patthered by *Papyrus*, Tarquin then reigning. For though so many of the former laws as maintained Kingly

Dion. Hal.

C. Sigon. l. 1.  
out of Pompe-  
n. m.

authority, were abolished with the name; yet those of *Servius Tullius*, for commerce and contracts, and all that appertained to Religion and common utility, were continued, and were a part of the laws of the twelve Tables. To these laws of the twelve Tables were added (as the times gave occasion) those made by the *Senate*, called *Senatus-consulta*: those of the common people, called *Plebei-jura*, those of the Lawyers, called *Responsa-prudentum*: and the Edicts of the *Annual Magistrate*: which Edicts be called first gathered and interpreted by *Julian*, and presented to *Adrian* the Emperour, they were by him confirmed and made perpetual laws, and the Volume stiled *Edictum perpetuum* as those and the like collections of *Justinian* afterward were.

The difference anciently between Laws and Edicts, which the French call *Règlements*, is consisted in this, that laws are the constitutions made or confirmed by sovereign authority (be the sovereignty in the people, in a few, or in one) and are withall generall and permanent: but an Edict (which is but *Justum magistratus*, unless by authority it be made a law) hath end with the Officer, who made the same, saith *Varro*. *Qui plurimum Edicto tribuit, legem annuam esse dicitur*; They who ascribe the most to an Edict, say that it is a law for one year: Though *Isidore* doth also expresse by the word *Constitutiones* or Edicts, those Ordinances called *Acts of Prerogatives*; as, *Constitutio vel Edictum est quod Rex vel Imperator constituit, vel edicit*; An Ordinance or Edict is that which a King or Emperour doth ordain, or proclaim.

Lastly, the *Humane law* is divided into the *Secular*, and into the *Ecclesiasticall*, or *Canon*. The *Secular* commanding temporall good, to wit, the peace and tranquility of the Common-weal: the *Ecclesiasticall* the spirituall good, and right government of the *Ecclesiasticall Common-wealth*, or Church: *Illud nature legem, hoc divinam spectat*; That respecteth the law of nature, this the law of God. And so may *Jus Civile* be taken two ways; first, as distinguished from the law of Nations, as in the first division: Secondly, as it is the same with the *Secular*, and differs from the *Ecclesiasticall*. But this division of the *Schoolmen* is obscure. For although the *Civill* be the same with the *Secular*, as the *Civill* is a law, yet the *Secular* is more generall, and comprehendeth both the *Civill*, and all other laws not *Ecclesiasticall*. For of *Secular* laws in use among *Christian* Princes, and in *Christian* Common-wealths, there are three kindes; the *Civill*, which hath every where a voice, and is in all *Christian* estates (England excepted) most powerful; the laws of England called *Common*, and the laws of custome or *Provinciall*. In Spain, besides the law *Civill*, they have the customs of *Casill*, and other Provinces. In France, besides the *Civill*, the customs of *Burgundy*, *Blois*, *Berry*, *Nivernois*, and *Lodunois*, &c. *Tous lieux, siens & assis en Lodunois, servent gouvernez selon les costumes du dit pays*; All places lying within the precincts of *Lodunois*, shall be governed according to the customs of that place. There are also in France the customs of *Normandy*, and these of two kindes; *Generall*, and *Locall*: and all purged and reformed by divers Acts of the three Estates. The *Charters* of confirmation of these ancient customs, before and since their reformation have these words: *Nos autem Registrum predictum, usque laudabile, & consuetudines antiquas, &c. laudamus, approbamus, & autoritate Regia confirmamus*; We praise, approve, and by our Kingly authority confirm. The common law of England is also compounded of the ancient customs of the same, and of certain *Maxims* by those customs of the Realm approved. Upon which customs also are grounded those Courts of Record, of the *Chancery*, *Kings Bench*, *Common Pleas*, and *Exchequer*, with other small Courts.

These ancient customs of England have been approved by the Kings thereof from age to age: as that custome by which no man shall be taken, imprisoned, disseised, nor otherwise destroyed, but he must first be put to answer by the Law of the Land, was confirmed by the *Statute of Magna Charta*. It is by the ancient custome of England, that the eldest sons should inherit without partition. In Germany, France, and elsewhere otherwise, and by partition. In Ireland it is the custome for all lands (that have not been resigned into the Kings hands) that the eldest of the House shall enjoy the inheritance during his owne life: and so the second and third eldest (if there be so many brothers) before the Heire in lineall descent: this is called the custome of *Tanishrie*. For example, if a Lord of Land have four sons, and the eldest of those four have also a son, the three brothers of the eldest son shall, after the death of their brother, enjoy their fathers Lands before the grand-child: the custome being grounded

grounded upon the reason of necessity. For the *Irish* in former times, having alwaies lived in a subdivided *Civill* War, not only the greatest against the greatest, but every *Baron* and *Gentleman* one against another, were enforced to leave successors of age and ability, to defend their own Territories. Now as in *Normandy*, *Burgundy*, and other Provinces of France, there are certain peculiar and petty Customs, besides the great and generall custom of the Land, so are there in England, and in every part thereof. But the greatest bulk of our Laws, as I take it, are the *Acts of Parliament*: laws propounded and approved by the three estates of the Realm, and confirmed by the King, to the obedience of which all men are therefore bound, because they are *Acts of choice*, and self-chose.

10 desire. *Leges nulla alia causa nortent, quàm quid iudicio populi recepte sunt*; The laws do therefore bind the subject, because they are received by the judgement of the subject. *Tum demum humane leges habent vim suam, cum fuerint non modo institutæ, sed etiam firmatæ approbatione communitatis*; It is then that humane laws have their strength, when they shall not only be devised, but by the approbation of the people confirmed.

*Isidore* fasteneth these properties to every *Christian* Law, that the same be honest, that it be possible, that it be according to Nature, and according to the custome of the Country; also for the time and place, convenient, profitable, and manifest, and without respect of private profit, that it be written for the generall good. He also gives foure effects of the Law, which *Modestinus* comprehends in two; to wit, obligation, and instigation: the former binds us by fear, to avoid vice; the latter encourageth with hope, to follow vertue. For according to *Cicero*, *Legem oportet esse vitiorum emendatricem, commendatricemque virtutum*: It behooveth the Law to be a mender of vices, and a commender of vertue. The part obligatory, or binding us to the observation of things commanded or forbidden, is an effect common to all laws: and it is two-fold; the one constraineth us by fear of our consciences, the other by fear of externall punishment. These two effects the Law performeth, by the exercise of those two powers, to wit, *Coactive* and *Directive*.

The second of these two effects remembered by *Modestinus*, is *Instigation*, or encouragement to vertue, as *Aristotle* makes it the end of the law, to make men vertuous. For laws being such as they ought to be, do both by prescribing and forbidding, urge us to well-doing; laying before us the good and the evil, by the one and the other purchased. And this power affirmative commanding good, and power negative forbidding evil, are those into which the law is divided, as touching the matter: and in which *David* comprehendeth the whole body and substance thereof: saying, *Declina a malo, & fac bonum*, Decline from evill, and do good.

## §. XVI.

That only the Prince is exempt from humane Laws, and in what sort.

40 Now whether the power of the humane Law be without exception of any person, it is doubtfully disputed among those that have written of this subject, as well *Divines* as *Lawyers*: and namely, whether Sovereigne Princes be compellable; yea, or no? But whereas there are two powers of the law, as aforesaid; the one *Directive*, the other *Coactive*: to the power *Directive* they ought to be subject, but not to that which other *Coactive*: For as touching violence or punishments, no man is bound to give a pre-judiciall judgement against himself; and if equals have not any power over each other, much lesse have inferiours over their superiours, from whom they receive their authority and strength.

And speaking of the supreme power of laws, simply then is the Prince so much above the laws, as the soul and body united, is above a dead and senselesse carcase. For the King is truly called, *Jus vivum, & lex animata*: An animate and living law. But this is true, that by giving authority to laws, Princes both add greatness to themselves, & conserve it; and therefore was it said of *Braddon* out of *Justinian*, *Merito debet Rex tribuere legi quod Braddon. l. 1. lex attribuit ei: nam lex facit ut ipse sit Rex*; Rightfully ought the King to attribute that to the law, which the Law first attributeth to the King; for it is the Law that doth make Kings.

But whereas *Braddon* ascribeth this power to the humane law, he is therein mistaken. For Kings are made by God, and laws divine; and by humane laws onely, declared to be Kings. As for the places remembered by the *Divines* and *Lawyers*, which infer

a kinde of obligation of Princes, they teach no other thing therein, than the bond of confidence, and profit arising from the examples of vertuous Princes, who are to give an account of their actions to God only.

Phel. 50.  
Añ. de Leg.

*Tibi soli peccavi, faith David; Against thee only have I sinned: therefore the Prince cannot be said to be subject to the law; Princes non subijciuntur legi.* For seeing, according to the Schoolmen, the law humane is but quoddam organum & instrumentum potestatis gubernative: non videtur posse ejus obligatio ad eum se extendere, ad quem ipsa vis potestatis humane non pertinet; sed vis potestatis humane non se extendit ad gubernatorem, in quo illa residet. Ergo neque lex condita per talem potestatem obligare potest ipsum conditorem. Omnis enim potentia activa, est principium transmittendi aliud; Seeing humane law (say they) is but a kind of organ or instrument of the power that governeth, it seems that it cannot extend it self to bind of organ or instrument of the power that governeth, it seems that it cannot extend it self to bind in any one whom no humane power can controll, or lay hold of: but the governour himself, in whom the governing power doth reside, is a person that cannot by himself, or by his own power be controlled. And therefore the law which is made by such a power, cannot binde the Law-maker himself: for every active ability, is a cause or principle of alteration in another body, not in the body in which it self resides. And seeing Princes have power to deliver others from the obligation of the Law: ergo etiam potest ipsemet Princeps sue legislator sue se voluntate pro libito ab obligatione legis liberare; Therefore also may a Prince or Law-maker at his own will and pleasure, deliver himself from the bond of the Law. Therefore in the rules of the Law it is thus concluded: Subditi tenentur leges observare necessitate coactionis. Princeps vero sola voluntate sua, & intuitu boni communis; The subjects are bound to fulfill the Law by necessity of compulsion, but the Prince only by his own will, and regard of the common good.

Greg. de Valentia de Leg.

Now concerning the politick Laws, given by Moses to the Nation of the Israelites, whether they ought to be a President, from which no civill institutions of other people should presume to digresse, I will not presume to determine, but leave it as a question for such men to decide, whose professions give them greater ability. Thus much I may be bold to affirm, That we ought not to seem wiser than God himself, who hath told us, that there are no Laws to righteous, as those which it pleased him to give to his Elect people to be governed by. True it is, that all Nations have their severall qualities, wherein they differ, even from their next borderers, no lesse than in their peculiar languages: which disagreeable conditions to governe aptly, one and the same Law very hardly were able. The Roman civill Laws did indeed contain in order a great part of the then known World, without any notable inconvenience, after such time as once it was received and become familiar: yet was not the administration of it alike in all parts, but yielded much unto the naturall customs of the sundry people which it governed. For whether it be through a long continued perswasion; or (as Astrologers more willingly grant) some influence of the Heavens; or peradventure some temper of the soile and climate, affording matter of provocation to vice (as plenty maketh the Sybarites luxurious: want and opportunity to steal, makes the Arabians to be Theeves) very hard it were to forbid by Law an offence so common with any people, as it wanted a name, whereby to be distinguished from just and honest. By such rigour was the Kingdom of Congo unhappily diverted from the Christian Religion, which it willingly at the first embraced, but after with great fury rejected, because plurality of Wives was denied unto them, I know not how necessarily, but more contentiously than seasonably. In such cases, me thinks it were not amiss to consider, that the high God himself permitted some things to the Israelites, rather in regard of their naturall disposition (for they were hard-hearted) than because they were consonant unto the ancient rules of the first perfection. So, where even the generall nature of man doth condemn (as many things it doth) for wicked and unjust; there may the Law, given by Moses, worthily be deemed the most exact reformer of the evil, which forsooth man, as neer as may be, to the will and pleasure of his Maker. But where nature or custom hath entertained a vicious, yet not intolerable habit, with so long and so publick approbation, that the vertue opposing it would seem as uncouth, as it were to walk naked in England, or to wear the English fashion of apparrell in Turkey: there may a wife and upright Law-giver, without presumption, omit somewhat that the rigour of Moses Law required; even as the good King Hezekiah did, in a matter meerly Ecclesiasticall, and therefore the lesse capable of dispensation, praying for the people; The good Lord be mercifull unto him, that prepareth his whole heart

to seek the Lord God, the God of his Fathers, though he be not cleansed according to the purification of the Sanctuary; which Prayer the Lord heard and granted. 2 Chron. 30. 18, 19.

To this effect it is well observed by Master Doctor Willet, that the morall Judicials of Moses do partly binde, and partly are let free. They do not hold affirmatively, that we are tied to the same severity of punishment now, which was inflicted then; but negatively they do hold, that now the punishment of death should not be adjudged, where sentence of death is not given by Moses: Christian Magistrates ruling under Christ the prince of peace, that is, of Clemency and Mercy, may abate of the severity of Moses law, and mitigate the punishment of death, but they cannot add unto it, to make the burden more heave: for to shew more rigour than Moses, becometh not the Gospel.

But I will not wander in this copious argument, which hath been the subject of many learned discourses, neither will I take upon me, to speak any thing definitively in a case which dependeth still in some controversie among worthy Divines. Thus much (as in honour of the Judicall Law, or rather of him that gave it) I may well and truly say, that the defence of it hath alwaies been very plausible. And surely howsoever they be not accepted (neither were it expedient) as a generall and onely Law: yet shall we hardly find any other ground, whereon the conscience of a Judge may rest, with equall satisfaction in making interpretation, or giving sentence upon doubts arising out of any Law besides it. Hereof, perhaps, that Judge could have been witness, of whom Fortescue, that notable Bulwark of our Laws, doth speak, complaining of a judgement given against a Gentlewoman at Salisbury; who being accused by her own man, without any other proof, for murdering her Husband, was thereupon condemned, and burnt to ashes: the man who accused her, within a yeer after being convict for the same offence, confess that his Mistris was altogether innocent of that cruel fact, whose terrible death he then (though over-late) grievously lamented: but this Judge, faith the same Author, sepius ipse mihi falsus est, quod nunquam in vita sua animum ejus de hoc facto ipse purgaret; He himself often confessed unto me, that he should never, during his life, be able to clear his conscience of that fact. Wherefore that acknowledgement which other Sciences yeeld unto the Metaphysiques, that from thence are drawn propositions, able to prove the principles of Sciences, which out of the Sciences themselves cannot be proved, may justly be granted by all other politike institutions, to that of Moses; and so much the more justly, by how much the subject of the Metaphysiques, which is, Ens quatenus Ens; Being as it is being; is infinitely inferiour to the Ens Entium; The being of beings, the onely good, the fountain of truth, whose fear is the beginning of wisdom. To which purpose well saith S. Augustine, Condatur legum temporalium si vir bonus est & sapiens, illam ipsam consulti eternam, de qua nulli anime judicare datum est; The Author of temporal Laws, if he be good and wise, doth therein consult the Law eternall, to determine of which there is no power given to any soul. And as well Prince Edward, in Fortescue his discourse, Nemo potest melius aut aliud fundamentum ponere, quam posuit Dominus; No man can lay a better, or another foundation than the Lord hath laid.

## CHAP. V.

The Story of the Israelites from the receiving of the Law, to the death of MOSES.

### §. 1.

Of the numbering and disposing of the Host of Israel, for their marches through the Wilderness; with a note of the reverence given to the worship of God, in this ordering of their troupes.

WHEN Moses had received the Law from God, and published it among the people, and finished the Tabernacle of the Arke and Sanctuary; he mustred all the Tribes and Families of Israel: and having scene what numbers of Men fit to beare Armes, were found in every Tribe, from twentie yeeres of age upwards; he appointed unto them, by direction from the LORD, such Princes and Leaders, as in Worth and Reputation were in everie Tribe most eminent. The number

number of the whole Army was 603550. able men for the wars, besides women and children; also, besides the strangers which followed them out of Egypt. This great Army was divided by Moses into foure grosse and mighty Battalions, each of which contained the strength of three whole Tribes.

The first of these containing 186400. able men, consisted of three Regiments, which may well, in respect of their numbers, be called Armies; as containing the three whole Tribes of Judah, Issachar and Zabulon. In the Tribe of Judah were 74600. fighting men, led by Nathaniel: in Issachar 54400. led by Eliab. All these marched under the Standard of the Tribe of Judah, who held the Vaunt-guard, and was the first that moved and marched, being lodged and quartered at their general incamping on the East side of the Army, which was held the first place, and of greatest dignity.

The second Battalion or Army, called in the Scriptures the host of Reuben, had joyned unto it Simeon and Gad, in number 151450. All which marched under the Standard of Reuben. In the Tribe of Reuben were 46500. under Elizur: in Simeon 59300. under Shelumiel: in Gad 45650. under Eliasaph: These had the second place, and incamped on the South-side of the Tabernacle.

The third Army marched under the Standard of Ephraim, to whom were joyned the Regiments of Manasse and Benjamin; who joyned together, made in number 108100 able men. These marched in the third place, incamping on the West quarter of the Tabernacle. Ephraim had 40500. under Elisham: Manasse 32200. under Gamliel: Benjamin 35400. under Abidun.

The fourth and last Army, or Squadron, of the generall Army, containing 157600. able men, marched under the Standard of Dan; to whom were joyned the two Tribes of Nephthali and Asher. And these had the Rere-ward, and moved last, incamping on the North-side. Dan had 62700. under Ahiezer: Asher 41500. under Pagiel: Nephthali 53400. under Abira.

Besides these Princes of the several Tribes, there were ordained Captains over Thousands, over Hundreds, over Fifties, and over Tens; as it may appear by that mutinie and insurrection against Moses; Num. 16. v. 1 & 2. For there arose up against Moses 250. Captains of the Assembly, famous in the Congregation, and men of renown: of which number were Korah, Dathan, and Abiram. Which three principall Mutiners, with those 250. Captains that followed them, were not any of the 12. Princes of the Tribes or generall Colonels before spoken of, as by their names, Num. 1. is made manifest.

The blessing which Israel gave to his children, took place not only in the division of the Land of promise, and other things of more consequence, long after following; but even in sorting them under their severall Standards in the wilderness it was observed. For Judah had the precedence & the greatest Army, which also was wholly compounded of the Sons of Leah, Jacobs wife. Reuben having lost his birth-right, followed in the second place, accompanied with his brother Simeon, who had under-gone his Fathers blessings; and with Gad, the son of his Mothers Hand-maid. Joseph, who in temporall blessings had the prerogative of the first born a double portion, was accounted as two Tribes, and divided into two Regiments: the younger (according to Jacobs prophecy) taking place before the elder, he was assisted by Benjamin, his best beloved brother, the other son of Rachel. To Dan, the eldest son of Jacobs Concubines, was given the leading of the fourth Army, according to Jacobs prophecy. He had with him under his Standard none of the Children of Leah, or Rachel, but only the sons of the Hand-maids.

In the middle of these foure Armies, was the Tabernacle, or portable Temple of the Congregation carried, fur-rounded by the Levites. Neer unto which, as the Heathens and Pagans could not approach, by reason of these foure powerful Armies which guarded the same: so was it death for any of the children of Israel to come neer it, who were not of the Levites, to whom the charge was committed. So sacred was the moveable Temple of God, and with such reverence guarded and transported, as 20000. persons were dedicated to the service & attendance thereof: of which 8580. had the peculiar charge, according to their severall offices and functions; the particulars whereof are written in the third and fourth of Numbers. And as the Armies of the people observed the former order in their incampings: so did the Levites quarter themselves, as in an inner square, on every side of the Tabernacle, as the Gershonites on the West, within the Army, and

and Standard of Ephraim, over whom Eliasaph commanded, in number 7500. The Family of Cohath on the South-side guided by Elizaphan, within the Army of Reuben, and between him and the Tabernacle, in number 8600. The third company were of the Family of Merari, over whom Zurriel commanded, in number 6200. and these were lodged on the North-side, within the Army of Dan; on the East-side, and next within those Tribes and Forces which Judah led, did Moses and Aaron lodge, and their children, who were the first and immediate Commanders, both of the Ceremonies and of the people; under whom, as the chief of all the other Levitical Families, was Eleazar the son of Aaron, his successour in the high Priest-hood.

10 This was the order of the Army of Israel, and of their incamping and marching; the Tabernacle of God being alway set in the middle & center thereof. The reverend care which Moses the Prophet, and chosen servant of God, had in all that belonged even to the outward and least parts of the Tabernacle, Ark and Sanctuary, witnessed well the inward and most humble zeale born towards God himself. The industry used in the framing thereof, and every, and the least part thereof; the curious workmanship thereon bestowed; the exceeding charge and expence in the provisions; the dutifull observance in the laying up, and preserving the holy Vessels; the solemn removing thereof; the vigilant attendance thereon, and the provident defence of the same, which all Ages have in some degree imitated, is now so forgotten and cast away in this super-fine Age, by those of the Family, by the Anabaptists, Brownists, and other Sectaries, as all cost and care bestowed and had of the Church, wherein God is to be served and worshipped, is accounted a kind of Popery, and as proceeding from an idolatrous disposition: inasmuch as time would soon bring to passe (if it were not resisted) that God would be turned out of Churches into Barns, and from thence again into the Fields and Mountains, & under the hedges; and the offices of the Ministry (robbed of all dignity and respect) be as contemptible as those places; all Order, Discipline, and Church-government, left to newnesse of opinion, and mens fancies: yea, and soon after, as many kinds of Religions would spring up, as there are Parish-Churches within England: every contentious and ignorant person clothing his fancy with the Spirit of God, and his imagination with the gift of Revelation; inasmuch, as when the Truth, which is but one, shall appear to the simple multitude, no lesse variable than contrary to it self, the Faith of men will soon after die away by degrees, and all Religion be held in scorn and contempt. Which distraction gave a great Prince of Germany cause of this answer to those that perwaded him to become a Lutheran; *Si me adjungo vobis, tunc condemnor ab aliis: si me alius adjungo, a vobis condemnor; quid fugiam video, sed quid sequar, non habeo: If I adjoin my self to you, I am condemned by others; If I joyn with others, I am condemned by you: what I should avoid I see, but I know not what I should follow.*

## §. II.

The offerings of the twelve Princes: the Passover of the second year: the departing of Jethro.

40 Now when Moses had taken order for all things necessary, provided for the service of God, written the lawes, numbered his Army, and divided them into the battells and troops before remembered, and appointed them Leaders of all sorts; The twelve Princes or Commanders of the Tribes brought their offerings before the Lord, to wit, six covered Chariots, and twelve Oxen to draw them, therein to transport, as they marched, the parts of the Tabernacle, with all that belonged therunto, the Sanctuary excepted, which for reverence was carried upon the shoulders of the sons of Korah, to whom the charge was committed; and the Chariots, in which was conveyed the other parts of the Tabernacles and Vessels thereto belonging, were delivered to the Levites for that service, namely, to the Sons of Gersham and Merari.

Besides these Chariots, each of these Commanders, Princes, or heads of Tribes, offered unto God, and for his service in the Temple, a Charger of fine silver, weighing 130. shekels; a silver Bowle of 70. shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary; and an Incense-Cup of Gold, of ten shekels, which they performed at the same time when the Altar was dedicated unto God by Aaron: and before they marched from Sinai towards

Side of the Sanctuary (as it is expounded, Exod. 30. 13.) containeth 20. Gerahs, so a Sanctuary Sicle of Silver is about 7. groats, the common Sicle is but half a much, to wit, ten Gerahs: as it is usually expounded; though Villalpandus labours to prove that the common and the Sanctuary Sicle were all one, Num. 5. 5. Num. 10. 11. Exod. 24. 4. Num. 9. 17.

their

their conquest; besides the beasts which they offered for sacrifice, according to the law Ceremonial, the weight of all the twelve silver Chargers, and twelve silver Bowls, amounted unto 2400. shekels of silver; and the weight of gold in the Incense-Cups, to 120. shekels of gold; which makes of shekels of silver 1200. every shekel of gold valuing ten silver, so that the whole of gold and silver which they offered at this time, was about four hundred and twenty pound sterling. This done, *Moses*, as in all the rest, by the Spirit of God conducted, gave order for the celebrating of the *Passeover*, which they performed on the fourteenth day of the second month of the second year: and on the twentieth day of the same, the cloud was lifted up from above the Tabernacle, as a sign of going forward; *Moses* beginning his march with this invocation to God: *30*  
*Rise up, Lord, and let thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate thee, flee before thee.* Then all the people of *Israel* removed from their incamping at the foot of the Mountain *Sinai*, towards *Paran*, the Army, or great Squadron of *Judah*, led by *Naathon*, taking the Vant-guard, followed by *Nathaniel* and *Eliab*, Leaders of the Tribes of *Issachar* and the *Zabulon*: after whom the rest marched, as in the figure express. And because the passage through so many deserts and mountains, was exceeding difficult: *Moses* leaving him nothing un-forethought, which might serve for the advancement of his enterprise, he instantly intreated his Father in Law, whom in the tenth of *Numbers* he calleth *Hobab*, to accompany them in their journey towards *Canaan*; promising him such part and profit of the enterprise, as God should bestow on them: for this man, as he was of *30*  
great understanding and judgement (as appeared by the counsel he gave to *Moses* for the appointing of Judges over the people) so was he a perfect guide in all those parts, himself inhabiting on the frontier thereof, at *Midian*, or *Madian*: and (as it seemeth) a man of great years and experience; for he was then the Priest or Prince of *Madian*, before *Moses* fled first out of *Egypt*, and married his Daughter, which was 42. years before this request made. And though *Moses* himself had lived 40. years in these parts of *Arabia*, through which he was now to travel: yet the better to assure his passage, and to great a multitude of souls, which could not be so few as a million, it was necessary to use many guides, and many conductors. To this request of *Moses*, it may seem by the places, *Exod. 18. 27.* and *Num. 10. 30.* that *Jethro*, otherwise called *Hobab*, yielded *30*  
not: for it is evident, that he went back from *Moses* into his own Country. But because it appeareth by other places of Scripture, that the posterity of this *Hobab* was mingled with the *Israelites*, it is most likely that this his return to his own Country, was rather to fetch away his Family, and to take his leave of his own Country, by setting things in order, than to abide there.

### §. III.

*The voyage from Horeb to Kades: the Mutinies by the way: and the cause of their turning back to the Red Sea.*

After this diffimion of *Hobab*, *Israel* began to march towards the Defarts of *Paran*: and after three daies wandering, they fate down at the *Sepulchres* of Iult, afterward called *Taberaçay Inçenso*: by reason that God consumed with fire those Mutiners and Murmurers which rose up in this remove, which happened about the 23. day of the same month. And from this 23. day of the second month, of the second year, they rested themselves with quails (which it pleased God by a Sea-wind to call upon them) to the 24. day of the third month: to wit, all the moneth of *Sinar*, or *June*: whereof testifying there did great numbers: from whence in the following month, called *Thimne*, answering to our *July*, they went on to *Hazerosh*, where *Miriam* the sister of *Moses* was stricken with the plague, which continued upon her seven daies, after whose recovery *Israel* removed toward the border of *Idumaea*, and incamped at *Rithma*, neer *Kadesh Barnea*, from whence *Moses* sent the twelve discoverers into the Territory of *Canaan*, both to inform themselves of the fertility and strength of the Country; as also to take knowledge of the Waies, Passages, Rivers, Fords, and Mountains. For *Arad* King of the *Canaanites* surprized divers companies of the *Israelites*, by lying in ambush neer those waies, through which the discoverers and searchers of the Land had formerly past. Now, after the return of the discoverers of *Kadesh*, the wrath of God was turned against *Israel*; whose ingratitude & rebellion after his so many benefits, so many remissions, so many miracles wrought, was such, as they esteemed their deliverance from the

the *Egyptian* slavery, his feeding them, and conducting them through that great and terrible *Wilderness* ( for so *Moses* calleth it ) with the victory which he gave them against the powerful *Amalekites*, to be no other than the effects of his hatred, thinking that he led them on and preserved them, but to bring them, their wives, and children to be slaughtered, and given for a prey, and spoyle to the *Amorites* or *Canaanites*. For it was reported unto them, by the searchers of the Land, that the Cities of their enemies were walled and defended with many strong Towers and Castles; that many of the people were *Cyclopslike*, for they confest that they saw the sons of *Anac* there who were men of fearful stature, and so far over-topped the *Israelites*, as they appeared to them, and to themselves, as to Grasshoppers in their respect. Now, as this mutiny exceeded all the rest, wherein they both accused God, and consulted to chooſe them a Captain ( or as they call it now adayes, an *Eleſto* ) to carry them back again into *Egypt*; so did God punish the same in a greater measure, than any of the former. For he extinguiſhed every ſoul of the whole multitude ( *Joſua* and *Caleb* excepted ) who being confident in Gods promiſes, perſwaded the people to enter *Canaan*, being then near it, and at the mountain foot of *Iſaiah*, which is but narrow ; laying before them the fertility thereof, and aſſuring them of victory. But as men, whom the paſſion of fear had bereaved both of reaſon and common ſenſe, they threatened to ſtone theſe encouragers to death; accounting them as men either deſperate in themſelves, or betrayers of the lives, goods, and children of all their brethren, to their enemies; but God reſiſted theſe wicked purpoſes, and interpoſed the fear of his bright glory between the unadviſed fury of the multitude, and the innocency and conſtancy of his ſervants, preſerved them thereby from their violence; threatening an intire deſtruction, of the whole Nation, by ſending among them a conſuming and mercileſſe peſtilence. For this was the tenth inſurrection and rebellion, which they had made, ſince God delivered them from the ſlavery of the *Egyptians*. But *Moses* ( the mildeſt or meekeſt of all men ) prayed unto God to remember his infinite mercies; alledging, that this to ſevere a judgment, how deſervedly ſoever inſiſted, would increaſe the pride of the Heathen Nations, and give them occaſion to vaunt, that the God of *Israel*, failing in power to perform his promiſes, ſuffered them to periſh in theſe barren and fruitleſſe Deſerts. Yet as God is no leſſe juſt than merciful, as God is ſlow to anger, ſo is his wrath a conſuming fire; the ſame being once kindled by the violent breach of mans ingratitude; and therefore, as with a hand leſſe heavy than hoped for, he ſcourged this iniquity; ſo by the meaſure of his glory ( evermore jealous of neglect and deriſion ) he ſuffered not the wicked to paſſe unpunished; reſerving his compaſſion for the innocent : whom, becauſe they participated not with the offences of their Fathers, he was pleaſed to preſerve, and in them to perform his promiſes, which have never been fruſtrate.

§. III.

*Of their unwillingness to return : with the punishment thereof, and of  
divers accidents in the return.*

NOW when *Moses* had revealed the purposes of God to the people, and made them know his heave displeasure towards them, they began to bewaile themselves, though overlate: the times of grace & mens repentance, having also their appointment. And then when God had left them to themselves, and was no more among them, after they had so often plaid and dallied with his mercifull sufferings, they would needs amend their former disobedience by a second contempt, and make offer to enter the Land contrary againe to the advice of *Moses*; who assured them that God was not among them; and that the Ark of his covenant should not move, but by his direction, who could not erre; and that the enemies would, which God had hitherto rebited and rebated, was now left no lesse sharp than death, and in the hands of the *Amalekites* and *Canaanites*, no lesse cruell. But as men from whom God hath with-drawn his grace, do alwaies follow those counsells which carry them to their own destructions: so the *Hebrews*, after they had forsaken the opportunity by God and their Conductors offered; and might then have entered *Judah* before their enemies were prepared and joyned; did afterward, contrary to Gods commandment, undertake the enterprise of themselves, and ran head-long and without advice into the mountains of *Idumea*. The

Judic. 1. 16. &  
4. 11. Also  
1 Sam. 15. 6.  
And 2 Reg. 10.  
15.  
1 Chro. 2. 55.  
Jer. 35.

Num. 11. & 12.  
Num. 12.

Num. 21.



the Canaanites and the Amalekites being joyned, and attending their advantage, set on them, brake them, and of their numbers slaughtered the greatest part: and following their victory and pursuit, consumed them all the way of their flight, even unto *Hormab*: the Amalekites in revenge of their former losse, and overthrow at *Raphidim*: the Canaanites to prevent their displantation and destruction threatened. Of which powerful assembly of those two Nations (assisted in all likelihood with the neighbour kings, saynt together for their common safety) it pleased God to forewarn *Moses*, and to direct him another way, than that formerly intended. For he commanded him to return by those painfull passages of the Desarts, through which they had formerly travelled, till they found the banks of the red Sea again: in which retreat before they came back to passe over *Jordan*, there were consumed 38. yeers; and the whole number of the 600. and odd thousand, which came out of *Egypt* (*Moses*, *Josua*, and *Caleb* excepted, were dead in the Wildernesse, the stubborn and carelesse generations were wholly worn out, and the promised Land bestowed on their children; which were increased to 600000. and more. For besides the double fault, both of refusing to enter the Land upon the return of their discoverers, and the presumption then to attempt it, when they were countermanded: it seemeth that they had committed that horrible Idolatry of worshipping *Moloch*, and the Host of Heaven. For although *Moses* doth not mention it, yet *Amos* doth, and so doth the Martyr *Stephen*; as also that the Israelites worshipped the Sun and Moon in after-times, it is proved out of sundry other places.

Amos 5. 25.  
A23. 1. A2.  
2 Kin. 17. 16.  
Eccl. 21. v. 3.  
Eccl. 23. v. 4. & 5.

11.  
2 Chron. 33. 3.  
Hieron 19.  
v. 13. & c.

Numb. 33.

Now after the broken Companies were returned to the Camp at *Cades*, *Moses* according to the commandment received from God, departed towards the South from whence he came, to recover the shoars of the Red Sea. And so from *Cades* or *Rithma*, he removed to *Remmonparez*, so called of abundance of Pomegranates there found, and divided among them. From whence he went on to *Libnah*, taking that name of the Frankincense there found. From *Libnah* he crost the Valley, and late down at *Rassa*, near the foot of the mountain. And after he had rested there, he bended towards the West, and incamped at *Ceclatus*; where one of the Hebrews, for gathering broken wood on the Sabbath, was stoned to death. After which, *Moses* alwaies keeping the Valley, between two great ledges of mountains, (those which bound the Desart of *Sin*, and those of *Pharan*) crost the same from *Ceclatus*, and marched Eastward to the mountain of *Saphe*, or *Sepher*: this making the twentieth mansion. From thence he passed on to *Harad*; then to *Muceloth*; and then to *Libab*, and so to *Thara* or *Thare*; the foure and twentieth mansion. Where *Moses* rested, the people began that insolent and dangerous mutiny of *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*; who for their contempt of God and his Ministers, were some of them swallowed up alive, and by the Earth, opening her mouth, devoured; others, even two hundred and fifty which offered incense with *Korah*, were consumed with fire from Heaven; and 14700. of their party, which murmured against *Moses*, stricken dead with a sudden pestilence: one of the greatest marvels and judgements of God, that hath been shewed in all the time of *Moses* his government, or before. For among so great a multitude, those lay-men, who would have usurped Ecclesiastical authority, were suddenly swallowed up alive into the Earth, with their Families and goods; even while they fought to overthrow the Order, Discipline, and Power of the Church, and to make all men alike therein, rebelliously contending against the High Priest & Magistrate, to whom God had committed the government both of his Church, and Common-weale of his people. And the better to assure the people, and out of his great mercy to confirm them, it pleased him in this place also to approve by miracle the former election of his servant *Aaron*, by the 12. Rods given in by the Heads of the 12. Tribes; of which *Moses* received one of every Head, and Prince of his Tribe: which being all withered and dried Wands, and on every rod the name of the Prince of the Tribe written, and *Aaron* on that of *Levi*, it pleased God, that the rod of *Aaron* received by his power a vegetable spirit, and having lain in the Tabernacle of the Congregation, before the Ark one night, had on it both Buds, Blossoms, and ripe Almonds.

From *Tharab* the whole Army removed to *Methraza*; and thence to *Ejmona*; and thence to *Moseroth*, (or *Masurit*, after *S. Hierome*) and from *Moseroth* to *Benejacan*; and so to *Gadgad*, which *Hierome* calleth *Gadgada*; thence to *Jetabata*, the thirtieth Mansions, where from certain fountains of water gathered in one, *Adricomius* maketh a River, which falleth into the Red Sea, between *Madian* and *Afongaber*.

Now

Now although it be very probable, that at *Afongaber*, where *Solomon* furnished his Fleets for the East India, there was store of fresh water; and though *Hierodotus* maketh mention of a great River in *Arabia* the *stonie*, which he calleth *Corys*, from whence (saith he) the inhabitants convey water in pipes of leather to other places, by which device the King of *Arabia* relieved the Army of *Cambyses*: yet is *Adricomius* greatly deceived, as many times he is, in finding these Springs at *Gadgad*, or *Jetabata*, being the nine and twentieth or thirtieth Mansion. For it was at *Pumon*, that those Springs are spoken of, which in *Deuteronomy* the tenth, and the seventh Verse, is also called *Jetabata*, or *Joibath*, a Land of running waters, and which by all probability fall into the River *Zared*, the next adjoining. And that these Springs should fall into the Red Sea at *Afongaber*, or *Eloth*, I cannot beleieve, for the way thither is very long. And this I finde in *Belonius*, that there are divers Torrents of fresh water in those sandy parts of *Arabia*: which though they continue their course for a few miles, yet they are drunk up by the hot and thirsty sand, before they can recover the banks of the Red Sea.

From *Jetabata*, *Moses* directed his journey towards the Red Sea, and incamped at *Hebrona*, and from thence to *Efongaber*: which City in *Josephus* time had the name of *Berenice*; and in *Hieromes*, *Efissa*. From thence, keeping the Sea, and *Eloth* on his right hand, he turned towards the North, as he was by God commanded: *Efongaber* being the farthest place towards the South-East, that *Moses* travelled in that passage.

It seemeth that *Efongaber*, or *Afongaber*, *Eloth* and *Madian*, were not at this time in the possession of the Kings of *Edom*. For it is said, 'That the Lord spake unto *Moses* and *Aaron* in the mount *Hor*, near the coast of the Land of *Edom*; so as the Mount *Hor* was at this time in the South border of *Idumaea*. And if *Efongaber*, and the other places near the Red Sea, had at this present been subject unto the *Idumeans*, *Moses* would also have demanded a free passage through them. It is true, that in the future the *Idumeans* obtained those places: for it is said: And they arose out of *Midian*, and came to *Paran*, and took men with them; which were those companies that followed young *Adad* of *Idumaea* into *Egypt*, when he fled from *Joab*. Likewise it is said of *Solomon*, that he made a Navie of ships in *Efongaber*, besides *Eloth*, in the Land of *Edom*.

Nam. 20. 13.

1 King. 11. 12.

### §. V.

Of *Moses* arrivall at *Zin Kades*: and of the accidents while that they abode there.

From *Efongaber* he turned again towards the North, and pitched in the Wildernesse of *Zin*, which is *Kadesb*: or in *Beroth*, of the children of *Jacobs*; where they late down in the first month of the fortieth year, after they left *Egypt*. For at the next Mansion *Aaron* died in the first day of the fifth month of the fortieth year: the nine and thirtieth year taking end at *Efongaber*. And at this City of *Cades* (for so it was thought to be) or near it, died *Miriam*, or *Mary*, *Moses* sister, whose Sepulchre was to be seen in Saint *Hieromes* time, as himself avoweth. From hence ere they departed to the mountain *Hor*, all the people murmured most violently against *Moses*, by reason of the scarcity of water. For neither the punishments by fire from Heaven; by being devoured and swallowed up by the earth; by the sudden pestilence, which often seized them; nor any miracle formerly shewing, either the love or wrath of God, could prevail with this Nation any longer, than while they were full fed and satisfied in every of their appetites: but in stead of seeking for help and relief at Gods hands, when they suffered hunger, thirst, or any other want, they murmured, repined, and rebelled, repenting them of their changed estates, and casting ungratefully on *Moses* all their misadventures; yea, though they well knew that their own fathers had left their bodies in the Desarts, and that they were now entred into the fortieth year, wherein all their miseries were to take end. And being, as it were, in the sight of the Land promised, they again as obstinately tempted God as in former times, and neither trusted his promises, nor feared his indignation. But as the will and purposes of

Nam. 20. 1.

Numb. 20. 3.

Cc

God

Num. 20. 9.

God are without beginning; so his mercies being without end, he commanded *Moses* to strike a Rock adjoining with his rod; and the waters issued out in a great abundance, with which both themselves and their cattell were satisfied. Nevertheless, because God perceived a kinde of diffidence both in *Moses* and *Aaron* at this place; therefore he permitted neither of them to enter the Land promised, whereto perchance their worldly desires might invite them. But it pleased him to end the travells of *Aaron* at the Mountain *Hore*, being the next, and the four and thirtieth Station. At which

255.

Mountain of *Hore*, *Aaron* was despoiled of the garments of his Priest-hood, and the same put on *Eleazar* his son, as God had commanded. Which done, *Moses* and *Eleazar* descended the Mountain; but God received *Aaron* on the top thereof, and he was no more seen.

Of this Mountain called *Hore*, otherwise *Mosera*, as in *Deuteronomy* 10. Verse 6. those *Horites* took name which the *Idumæans* had formerly vanquished. Some there are which make *Mosera*, which was the seven and twentieth Mansion; and *Mosera*, which they write *Moseroth* for difference, which was the four and thirtieth Mansion, and is also called *Hore*, to be two distinct places: because *Moses* in passing from *Cadesbarne* towards *Esfongaber*, incamped at *Mosera*, after he departed from *Hefnoma*, and before he came to *Benjaacin*. And this *Mosera*, which is also called *Hore*, he came unto after he left *Cades*, where *Miriam*, *Moses* sister died; the first being the seven and twentieth, and the second being the four and thirtieth Mansion. But for *Hore*, which is also called *Mosera*, it should have been written, *Hore* *juxta* *Mosera*; *Hore* *neer* *Mosera*: for it is but one root of a Mountain, divided into divers tops, as *Sinai* and *Horeb* are: Whereof the West part *Moses* calleth *Mosera*, and the East part *Horeb*. By the West part *Moses* encamped, as he past towards the *Red Sea* on his left hand; by the East part, as he went back again North-wards towards *Moab*: as in the description of *Moses* his passage through *Arabia*, the Reader may perceive.

Now it was from *Cades*, before they came to *Hore*, because *Hore* belonged to *Edom*, that *Moses* sent messengers to the Prince of *Idumæa*, praying him that he might pass with the people of *Israel* through his Territory into the Land of *Canaan*, which bordered it. For it was the nearest way of all other from the city of *Kadesh*, where *Moses* then encamped; whereas otherwise, taking his journey by the Rivers of *Zared*, *Arnon*, and *Jordan*, he might have run into many hazzards in the passage of those Rivers, the far way about, and the many powerfull Kings, which commanded in those Regions. Now the better to persuade the Prince of *Idumæa* hereunto, *Moses* remembered him, that he was of the same race and family with *Israel*: calling him by the name of brother, because both the *Edomites* and *Israelites* were the sons of one father, to wit, *Isaac*; inferring thereby that he had more reason to favour and respect them, than he had to assist the *Canaanites*; against whom *Efau* his Ancestor had made war, and driven out the *Horites* (who were of their ancient races descended of *Cham*) out of the Region of *Seir*, calling it by his own name *Edom*, or *Edumæa*. He also making a short repetition of Gods blessings bestowed on them, and of his purposes and promises; assured *Edom*, or the King thereof, that he would no way offend his people, or waste his Country, but that he would restrain his Army within the bounds of the Common, and Kings high ways, paying money for whatsoever he used, yea, even for the water, which themselves or their cattell should drink. For *Moses* was commanded by God, not to provoke the children of *Efau*. But the King of *Edumæa* knowing the strength of his own Country, the same being near *Canaan*, ramp'd with high and sharp mountains: and withall suspecting, as a naturall wife man, that 600000. strangers being once entred his Country, it would rest in their wills to give him law, resolutely refused them passage, and delivered this answer to the Messengers: That, if they attempted to enter that way, he would take them for enemies, and resist them by all possible means. And not knowing whether such a denial might satisfie or exasperate, he gathered the strength of his Country together, and shewed himself prepared to defend their passage. For, as it is written; *When Edom came out against him* (to wit, *Moses*) *with much people, and with a mighty power*. Whereupon *Moses* considering, that the end of his enterprise was not the conquest of *Seir* or *Edumæa*, and that the Land promised was that of *Canaan*: like unto himself who was of naturall understanding the greatest of any man, and the skillfullest man of war that the world

D. ut. 2. 4.

Num. 20. 20, 21.

Num. 20.

world had, he refused to adventure the Army of *Israel* against a Nation, which being overcome, gave but a passage to invade others; and which, by reason of the fear of their mountainous Country, could not but have endangered, or (at least) greatly enfeebled the strength of *Israel*; and rendred them lesse able, if not altogether powerlesse, to have conquered the rest.

## §. VI.

Of their compassing *Idumæa*, and travelling to *Arnon*, the border of *Moab*.

HE therefore leaving the way of *Idumæa*, turned himself towards the East, and marched towards the Desarts of *Moab*. Which when *Arad* King of the *Canaanites* understood, and that *Moses* had blanced the way of *Idumæa*; and knowing that it was *Canaan*, and not *Edom*, which *Israel* aimed at, he thought it safest, rather to find his enemies in his neighbours Country, than to be found by them in his own: which he might have done with a far greater hope of victory, had *Moses* been enforced first to have made his way by the Sword through *Idumæa*, and thereby, though victorious, greatly have lessened his numbers. But although it fell out otherwise than *Arad* hoped for, yet being resolved to make triall, what courage the *Israelites* brought with them out of *Egypt*, before they came nearer his own home; leading the strength of his Nation to the edge of the Desert, he set upon some part of the Army; which, for the multitude occupied a great space, and for the many herds of cattell that they drave with them, could not encamp so neer together, but that some quarter or other was evermore subject to surprise. By which advantage, and in that his attempts were then perchance unexpected, he slew some few of the *Israelites*, and carried with him many prisoners.

Now it is very probable, that it was this *Canaanite*, or his Predecessour, which joyned his forces with the *Amalekites*, and gave an overthrow to those murinous *Israelites*, which without direction from God by *Moses*, would have entred *Canaan* from *Cadesbarne*. For it seemeth that the greatest number of that Army were of the *Canaanites*, because in the first of *Deuteronomy* 44. the *Amorites* are named alone without the *Amalekites*, and are said to have beaten the *Israelites* at that time. And this *Arad*, if he were the same that had a victory over *Israel*, neer *Cadesbarne*; or if it were his Predecessour that then prevailed; this man finding that *Moses* was returned from the *Red Sea*, and in his way towards *Canaan*, and that the South part of *Canaan* was first to be invaded, and in danger of being conquered, not knowing of *Moses* purpose to compass *Moab*, determined while he was yet in the Desert, to trie the quarrell. And whereas it followeth in the third Verse of the twelfth Chapter of *Numbers*, that the *Israelites* utterly destroyed the *Canaanites* and their Cities, they are much mistaken that think, that this destruction was presently performed by the *Israelites*. But it is to be understood, to have been done in the future, to wit, in the time of *Joshua*. For had *Moses* at this time entred *Canaan* in the pursuit of *Arad*, he would not have fallen back again into the Desarts of *Zin* and *Moab*, and have fetcht a wearisome and needlesse compasse, by the rivers of *Zared* and *Arnon*.

Neither is their conjecture to be valued at any thing, which affirm, that *Arad* did not inhabit any part of *Canaan* it self, but that his Territory lay without it, and neer the Mountain *Hore*. For *Hore* and *Zin* *Cades* were the South borders of *Edom*, and not of *Canaan*. And it was in the South of the Land of *Canaan*, that *Arad* dwelt: which South part of *Canaan* was the North part of *Edom*.

Again, *Horma* (so far the *Israelites* after their victory pursued the *Canaanites*) is so seated in the South of *Judea*. There is also a City of that name in *Simeon*. But there is no such place to the South of *Edom*. And were there no other argument, but the mutiny which followed presently after the repetition of this victory, it were enough to prove, that the same was obtained in the future, and in *Joshua* his time, and not at the instant of *Arads* assault. For had the *Israelites* at this time sackt the Cities of *Arad*, they would not the next day have complained for want of water and bread. For where there are great Cities, there is also water and bread. But it was in the time of *Joshua*, that the *Israelites* took their revenge, and after they had past *Jordan*: *Joshua* then governing them; who in the twelfth Chapter and fourteenth Verse, nameth this

Cc 2

Arad

Arad by the name of his City so called; and with him the King of *Horma*: to which place the *Israelites* pursued the *Canaanites*. And he nameth them amongst those Kings, which he vanquished, and put to death.

Now after this assault and surprize by *Arad*, *Moses* finding that all entrance on that side was defended, he led the people Eastward to compasse *Idumea* and the *Dead Sea*, and to make his entrance by *Arnon* and the *Plaines of Moab*, at that time in the possession of the *Amorites*. But the *Israelites*, to whom the very name of a Desert was terrible, began again to rebel against their Leader; till God by a multitude of fiery Serpents, (that is, by the biting of Serpents, whose venom inflamed them, and burnt them as fire) made them know their error, and afterward, according to his plentiful grace, cured them againe by their beholding an artificiall Serpent, by his Commandment set up.

From the *Mount Hor*, *Moses* leaving the ordinary way which lyeth between the *Red Sea*, and *Celjojria*, encamped at *Zalmona*: and thence he removed to *Phnon*, where he erected the Brazen Serpent; making these journeys by the edge of *Idumea*, but without it. For *Phnon* was sometime a principall City of the *Edomites*. Now where it is written in *Numbers* 21. Verse 4. That from *Mount Hor* they departed by the way of the *Red Sea*, which grieved the people, it was not thereby meant that the *Israelites* turned back towards the *Red Sea*; neither did they march (according to *Fonseca*) per viam que habet à latere mare rubrum; By the way that sided the *Red Sea*, but indeed they crost, and went athwart the common way from *Galaad*, *Tracontis*, and the *Countries of Moab*, to the *Red Sea*, that is, to *Esfongaber*, *Eloth*, and *Midian*: which way, as it lay North and South, so *Israel* to shun the border of *Edom*, and to take the utmost East part of *Moab*, crost the common way towards the East, and then they turned againe towards the North, as before.

From *Phnon* he went to *Oboth*; where they entred the Territory of *Moab*, adjoining to the Land of *Suph* a Country bordering on the *Dead Sea*; and from thence to *Abarim*, the eight and thirtieth Mansion, that is, where the Mountains so called take beginning, and are as yet but small Mountrues of Hills, on the East border of *Moab*; from thence they recovered *Dibon Gad*, or the River of *Zared*, which riseth in the mountains of *Arabia*, and runneth towards the *Dead Sea*, not far from *Petra* the Metropolis thereof, being the nine and thirtieth Station. And having past that River, they lodged at *Dibon Gad*, and from thence they kept the way to *Diblatbaim*, one of the Cities of *Moab*; which *Hieremie* the Prophet Chap. 48. Verse 22. calleth the House of *Diblatbaim*, the same which afterward was destroyed among the rest by *Nabuchadnezzar*. From thence they came to the River of *Arnon*, and encamped in the mountains of *Abarim*: though in the 22. of *Numbers*, *Moses* doth not remember *Helmondiblatbaim*, but speaketh of his remove from the River of *Zared*, immediately to the other side of *Arnon*; calling *Arnon* the border of *Moab*, between them and the *Amorites*: speaking, as he found the state of the Country at that time. For *Arnon* was not anciently the border of *Moab*, but was lately conquered from the *Moabites*, by *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*: even from the Predecessour of *Balac* Peer then reigning. From *Diblatbaim*, *Moses* sent messengers to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, to desire a passage through his Countrie: which though he knew would be denied him, yet he desired to give a reason to the neighbour Nations of the war he undertook. And though *Edom* had refused him as *Sehon* did, yet he had no warrant from God to enforce him. *Moses* also in sending messengers to *Sehon*, observed the same precept which he left to his posterity and successors, for a law of the war; namely, in *Deut.* 20. 10. in these words; When thou comest neer unto a City to fight against it, thou shalt offer it peace, which if it do accept of and open unto thee, then let all the people found therein be tributaries unto thee, and serve thee; but if it refuse, &c. thou shalt smite all the males thereof with the edge of the sword. Which ordinance all Commanders of Armies have observed to this day, or ought to have done.

### §. VII.

Of the Book of the battels of the Lord mentioned in this Story, and of other Books mentioned in Scripture, which are lost.

Now concerning the War between *Israel* and *Sehon*, *Moses* seemeth to refer a great part of this Story to that Book intituled, *Liber bellorum Domini*; The book of Gods battels: and therefore passeth over many encounters, and other things memorable with

with greater brevity in this place. His words after the *Geneva* Translation are these: wherefore it shall be spoken in the book of the battels of the Lord, what things he did in the Red Sea, and in the Rivers of *Arnon*. The *Vulgar* copie differeth not in sense from this: But the *Greek* Septuagint vary. For the *Greek* writes it to this effect; For thus it is said in the book: The war of the Lord hath burnt (or inflamed) *Zoob*, and the brooks of *Arnon*. *Junius* for the *Red Sea*, which is in the *Genevan* and *Vulgar* Edition, names the Region of the Countrie of *Suph*, against *Vahab* in the Countrie of *Suph*: and against the Rivers, the Rivers of *Arnon*. In which words hee understandeth, that amongst the wars which the Lord disposed for the good of the *Israelites*, there was in those times a famous memorie in the mouth of most men, concerning the war of *Sehon* against *Vahab*, the King of the *Moabites*, and of his winning the Countrie neer *Arnon*, out of the possession of the *Moabites*. For this *Vahab* was the immediate predecessour of *Balac*, who lived with *Moses*: though it be written that this *Balac* was the son of *Zippor*, and not of *Vahab*. It seems (as it is plain in the succession of the *Edomites*) that these Kingdoms were elective, and not successive. And as *Junius* in this translation understandeth no speciall Book of the battels of the Lord: so others, as *Vatablus* in his Annotations, doubt whether in this place any speciall Book be meant; and if any, whether it be not a prediction of wars in future ages, to be waged in these places, and to be written in the book of Judges. *Syracides*, cap. 46. tells us plainly, that those battels of the Lord were fought by *Josua*; Who was there (saith he) before him like to him; for he fought the battels of the Lord. But seeing the Histories of the Scripture elsewhere often passe over matters of great weight in few words, referring the Reader to other books written of the same matter at large: therefore it seemeth probable, that such a book as this there was; wherein the severall victories by *Israel* obtained, and also victories of other Kings, making way for the good of the *Israelites*, were particularly and largely written. And that the same should now be wanting, it is not strange, seeing so many other Volumes, filled with divine discourse, have perished in the long race of time, or have been destroyed by the ignorant and malicious Heathen Magistrate. For the books of *Henoah*, howsoever they have been in later ages corrupted, and therefore now suspected, are remembered in an Epistle of *Thaddæus*, and cited by *Origen* and *Apollonius*, and by *Tertullian*.

That work also of the Patriarch *Abraham*, of *Formation*, which others bestow on *Rabbi Achiba*, is no where found. The Books remembered by *Josua*, cap. 10. v. 13. and in the second of *Samuel*, c. 1. v. 18. called the Book of *Jasher*, or *Jusorum*, is also lost; wherein the stay of the Sun and Moon in the midst of the Heavens is recorded, and how they stood still till *Israel* had avenged themselves of their enemies: out of which also *David* took the precept of teaching the children of *Juda*, to exercise their bowes against their enemies.

Some think this to be the book of eternal Predestination, in which the just are written, according unto the sixty and ninth *Psalm*, v. 28. where it is said: Let them be put out of the Book of Life, neither let them be written with the righteous. *Hierome* thinks, that *David* by this Book understood those of *Samuel*; *Rabbi Solomon*, that the books of the Law are thereby meant, in which the acts of the just *Abraham*, of *Isaac*, *Jacob*, and *Moses* are written. Others, that it was the book of *Exodus*. Others, as *Theodore*, that it was a Commentary upon *Josua*, by an unknown Author.

The book of *Chozai*, concerning *Manasse*, remembered in the second of *Chron.* cap. 33. v. 18. & 19. Of this book, also lost, *Hierome* conceives, that the Prophet *Esay* was the Author.

The same mischance came as well to the Story of *Solomon*, written by *Abia* *Silonites*, who met with *Jeroboam*, and foretold him of his obtaining the Kingdom of *Israel* from the son of *Solomon*: As to the books of *Nathan* the Prophet, and to those of *Isaiah* the Ser, remembered in the second of *Chron.* c. 9. v. 29. With these have the books of *She-maiah* and of *Isido*, remembered in the second of *Chron.* c. 12. v. 15. perished: and that of *Jehuth* the son of *Hanani*, of the acts of the just *Abraham*, cited in the second of *Chron.* cap. 20. v. 34. Also that book of *Solomon* which the *Hebrews* write *Hafcirim*, of 5000. verses,

of which that part called *Canticum Canticorum*, onely remaineth, 1 Kings 4. 32. and with this divers others of *Solomons* works have perished, as his Book of the natures of Trees, Plants, Beasts, Fishes, &c. 1 Kings 4. 33. with the rest remembered by *Origen*, *Josephus*, *Hierome*, *Cedrenus*, *Cicero*, *Asculanus*, *Picus*, *Mirandula*, and others.

Of these and other Books many were consumed with the same fire, wherewith *Nebuchadnezzar* burnt the Temple of *Hierusalem*. But let us return thither where we left.

## §. VIII.

Of *Moses* his sparing the issue of *Lot*; and of the *Giants* in those parts; and of *Schon* 18 and *Og*.

Deut. 2. 5. 10.  
11. 12.

When *Moses* had past *Arnon*, he incamped on the other side thereof at *Abarim*, opposite to the City of *Nibo*; leaving the City of *Midian* on the left hand, and attempting nothing upon the *Moabites* on that side. For *Moab* did at this time inhabit on the South-side of *Arnon*, having lost all his ancient and best Territory, which was now in the possession of *Schon* the *Amorite*. For *Moses* was commanded by God not to molest *Moab*, neither to provoke them to battaile, God having given that Land to the children of *Lot*; the same which was anciently possessed by the *Emims*, who were men of great stature, and comparable to those *Giants* called *Anakims*, or the sons of *Anac*. 20

God also commanded *Moses* to spare the *Ammonites*, because they likewise were descended of *Lot*; who had expelled from thence those *Giants*, which the *Ammonites* called *Zamzummims*. For it seemeth that all that part, especially to the East of *Jordan*, even to the Desert of *Arabia*, as well on the West, as on the East-side of the Mountains of *Gilead*, was inhabited by *Giants*. And in the plantation of the Land promised, the *Israelites* did not at any time passe those Mountains to the East of *Basan*, but left their Country to them, as in the description following is made manifest. We find also, that as there were many *Giants* both before and after the flood: so these Nations, which anciently inhabited both the border of *Canaan*, and the Land it self, had among them many Families of *Giant*-like men. For the *Anakims* dwelt in *Hebron*, which sometimes was called the City 30 of *Arbab*, which *Arbab* in *Joshua* is called the father of the *Anakims*; and the greatest man of the *Anakims*. There had also bin *Giants* in the Land of the *Moabites*, called *Emims*: and their chiefe City was *Aroer* or *Ar*, neere the River of *Arnon*. To the *Giants* of the *Rephaims*, the *Ammonites* gave the name of *Zamzummims*; which were of the same ancient *Canaanites*: and their chiefe City was *Rabba*, afterward *Philadelphia*. They were also called *Zuzims*, which is as much to say, as *Viri robusti, horrendique Gigantes*; *Strong men*, and *fearfull Giants*, who inhabited other Cities of *Ham*, or *Hom*, in the same Province, and not far to the North of *Aroer*.

Jos. 15. 5. 13.  
14. 15.

Now *Moses* having past *Arnon*, and being incamped at *Abarim*; and having (as before) sent to *Schon*, as he had done to *Edom*, to pray a passage through his Country, was denied it. For *Schon* being made proud by his former conquest upon the *Moabites*, which Nation the *Amorites* esteemed but as strangers and usurpers, (themselves being of the sons of *Canaan*, and the *Moabites* of *Lot*) refused to grant *Israel* any entrance that way; and withall, prepared to encounter *Moses* with as much speed as he could, because *Moses* encamped in the Countrey of his new conquests, to wit, the Plains of *Moab*, the two and fortieth and last Mansion: which *Moses* waisted with the multitude of his people and cattell. Towards him therefore hastning himself, they encountered each other at *Jabaz*: where *Schon* with his children and people were broken and discomfited: and the victory so pursued by *Moses*, as few or none of the *Amorites* escaped. Hee also slaughtered all the Women and Children of the *Amo-* 50 *rites*, which he found in *Essebon*, and all the other Cities, Villages, or Fields; they being of the race of *Canaan*, as those of *Basan* also were, and descended of *Emoreus*, or *Amoreus*: for *Moses* calleth the *Basanites* also *Amorites*. And although *Israel* might now have taken a ready way and passage into *Judea*, being at this time, and after this victory at the banks of *Jordan*: yet hee knew it to be perillous to leave so great a part of that Nation of the *Amorites* on his back, as inhabited all the Region of *Basan* or *Traconitis*: and therefore he led on his Army to invade *Og*: a person of exceeding strength and stature, and the onely man of mark remaining of the ancient *Giants* 6

Deut. 1. 8.

of those parts, and who at that time had 60. Cities walled and defended: lying between the Mountain of *Hermom* (which Mountain, saith *Moser*, the *Sidonians* call *Sbirion*, and the *Amorites*, *Sbenir*) and the River of *Jordan*. And it befell unto the King of *Basan* (who attended *Moses* coming at *Edrei*) as it did unto *Schon*: for he and his sons perished, and all his Cities were taken and posselt. After this, *Moses* with-drawing himself back again to the Mountains of *Abarim*, left the persecution of that war unto *Jair* the son of *Manasse*: who conquering the East parts of *Basan*, to wit, the Kingdom of *Argob*, even unto the Nations of the *Gessuri* and *Machati*, 60. walled Cities, called the same after his own name *Havoth Jair*: of all which conquests afterward the half Tribe of *Manasse* possessed the North part as far as *Edrei*, but the East part that belonged to *Schon* the *Amorite*, with the Mountains of *Gilead* adjoining, was given to *Reuben*, and unto *Gad*.

## §. IX.

Of the troubles about the *Madianites*, and of *Moses* his death.

After these victories, and while *Israel* sojourned in the valley of *Moab*, the *Madianites* and *Moabites* (over both which Nations it seemeth that *Balaam* King of the *Moabites* then commanded in chief) sought, according to the advice of *Balaam*, both 20 by alluring the Hebrews to the love of their daughters, and by perswading them to honour and serve their Idols, to divide them both in Love and Religion among themselves: thereby the better both to defend their own interest against them, as also to beat them out of *Moab*, and the Countries adjoining. The *Israelites* as they had ever been inclined, so were they now easily perswaded to these evill courses, and thereby drew on themselves the plague of pestilence, whereof there perished 24000. persons: besides which punishment of God, the most of the offenders among the Hebrews were 30 by his commandment put to the Sword, or other violent deaths: after this, when that *Phineas* the son of *Eleazar* had pierced the bodies of *Zimri*, a Prince of the *Simeonites*, together with *Cosbi*, a Daughter of one of the chief of the *Midianites*, the plague ceased, and Gods wrath was appeased. For such was the love and kindnesse of his all-powerfulnesse, respecting the ardent zeal of *Phineas* in prosecuting of *Zimri* (who being a chief among the Hebrews, became an Idolater) as he forgave the rest of *Israel*, and stayed his hand for his sake.

In this valley it was that *Moses* caused the people to be numbred the third time: and thereremained of able men fit to bear arms. 601730. of which as his last enterprise, 40 he appointed 2000. to be chosen out, to invade the Cities of *Midian*, who, together with the *Moabites*, practised with *Balaam* to curse *Israel*: and after that, sought to allure them (as before remembered) from the worship of the true God, to the service of *Beth-Peor*: and to the rest of their barbarous Idolatry. Over which Companies of *Nam*, 31. 8. 40 12000. *Moses* gave the charge to *Phineas* the son of *Eleazar* the high Priest: who slew 7413. 21. the five Princes of the *Midianites*, which were, or had lately been, the vassals of *Schon*, as appeareth by *Joshua*. These five Princes of the *Midianites* slain by *Eleazar*, were at this time but the vassals of *Schon* the *Amorite*, to wit, *Evi*, *Rekem*, *Zur*, *Hur*, and *Rera*, the Dukes of *Schon*, saith *Joshua*. He slew also the men, male-children, and women: saving such as had not yet used the company of men, but those they saved, and dispersit them among the children of *Israel* to serve them.

And *Moses* having now lived 120. yeers, making both his own weaknesse of body Deut. 31. 1. known to the people, and his inability to travail: and also that he was forewarned of his end by the Spirit of God, from whom he received a new commandment to ascend Deut. 31. 2. 50 the Mountains of *Abarim*, and thereon to render up his life: He hastned to settle the government in *Joshua*: whom he perswaded with most lively arguments to prosecute the conquest begun, assuring him of Gods favour and assistance therein. And so having spent these his latter daies after the Conquest of *Og*, and *Schon* King of the *Amorites*, in the repetition and exposition of the Law, (or an iteration of the Law, according to Saint *Augustine*) using both arguments, prayers, and threats unto the people, which he often repeated unto them; thereby to confirm them in knowledge, love, fear, and service, of the all-powerfull God: He blessed the twelve Tribes, that of *Simon* excepted, with severall and most comfortable blessings: praising the greatnesse and good-Deut. 33. 1. nesse

Nam. 25. 1.

Nam. 15. 51.

Nam. 31. 8.

Jos. 13. 21.

Cap. 13. 21.

Deut. 31. 1.

Deut. 31. 2.

Aug. 1. 4. de

M. 12. 1. 4. 1.

Supp.

Deut. 33. 1.

Deut. 32. 1.  
Deut. 34. 6.

ness of him, unto whom in his prayers he commended them: He also commanded the Priests to lay up the Book of the Law, by the side of the Ark of God: The last that he indited, was that Prophetickall Song, beginning: *Hearken ye Heavens, and I will speak, and let the Earth hear the words of my mouth:* and being called by God from the labours and sorrows of this life, unto that rest which never afterward hath disquiet, he was buried in the Land of *Moab*, over against *Beth-Peor*: but no man knoweth of his Sepulchre to this day; which happened in the yeer of the World 2554.

## §. X.

Observations out of the Story of Moses, how God disposeth both the smallest occasions, and the greatest resistances, to the effecting of his purpose.

NOW let us a little, for instruction, look back to the occasions of sundry of the great events, which have been mentioned in this Story of the life of *Moses*, for (excepting Gods miracles, his promise, and fore-choice of this people) he wrought in all things else by the medium of mens affections, and naturall appetites. And so we shall finde that the fear which *Pharaoh* had of the increase of the *Hebrews*, multiplied by God to exceeding great numbers, was the next naturall cause of the sorrows and losse, which befell himself, and the *Egyptian* Nation: which numbers when he fought by cruell and ungodly policies to cut off and lessen, as when he commanded all the male children of the *Hebrews* to be slain, God (whose providence cannot be resisted, nor his purposes prevented by all the foolish and salvage craft of mortal men) moved compassion in the heart of *Pharaoh's* own daughter, to preserve that child, which afterward became the most wise, and of all men the most gentle and mild, the most excellently learned in all Divine and Humane knowledge, to be the conductor and deliverer of his oppressed brethren, and the overthrow of *Pharaoh*, and all the flower of his Nation; even then, when he fought by the strength of his men of War, of his Horse, and Chariots, to tread them under, and bury them in the dust. The grief which *Moses* conceived of the injuries, and of the violence offered to one of the *Hebrews* in his own presence, moved him to take revenge of the *Egyptian* that offered it: the ingratitude of one of his own Nation, by threatening him to discover the slaughter of the *Egyptian*, moved him to flee into *Madian*: the contention between the Shepherds of that place, and *Jethro's* Daughters, made him known to their Father; who not onely entertained him, but married him to one of those Sisters: and in that solitary life of keeping of his Father-in-Laws sheep, far from the presse of the World, contenting himself (though bred as a Kings Son) with the lot of a poor Hearde-man, God found him out in that Desert, wherein he first suffered him to live many yeers, the better to know the waies and passages through which he purposed that he should conduct his people, toward the Land promised: and therein appearing unto him, he made him know his will and divine pleasure for his return into *Egypt*. The like may be said of all things else, which *Moses* afterward by Gods direction performed in the Story of *Israel* before remembred. There is not therefore the smallest accident, which may seem unto men as falling out by chance, and of no consequence, but that the same is caused by God to effect somewhat else by: yea, and oftentimes to effect things of the greatest worldly importance, either presently, or in many yeers after, when the occasions are either not considered, or forgotten.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

of the Nations with whom the *Israelites* had dealing after their coming out of *Egypt*; and of the men of renown in other Nations, about the times of *Moses* and *Josua*, with the sum of the History of *Josua*.

## §. 1.

How the Nations with whom the *Israelites* were to have War, were divers waies, as it were, prepared to be their enemies.

IN like manner if we look to the quality of the Nations, with whom the *Israelites*, after their coming out of *Egypt*, had to do, either in the Wildernesse, or afterward, we shall finde them long before-hand, by the disposing providence of God, as it were prepared for enmity: partly in respect that they were most of them of the issue of *Canaan*, or at least of *Ham*; and the rest (as the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, and *Israelites*) were mingled with them by mutual marriages: whereas the *Israelites* still continued strangers, and separate from them: and so partly in this respect, and partly by ancient injuries or enmities, and partly by reason of diversity in Religion, were these Nations, as it were prepared to be enemies to the *Israelites*: and so to serve for such purposes as God had reserved them for. To make these things more manifest, we must understand that this part of *Syria*, bounded by the mountains of *Libanus*, and *Zidon* on the North, by the same mountains continued as far as the Springs of *Arnon* on the East: by the way of *Egypt*, and the *Red Sea*, on the South: and by the *Mediterran* Sea on the West: was inhabited and peopled by two Nations, the one springing from the sons of *Cham*, the other from *Sem*: but those of *Sem*, were but as strangers therein for a long time, and came thither, in effect, but with one Family, to wit, that of *Abraham*, and a few of his kindred. The other for the greatest part, were the *Canaanites*, the ancient Lords and possessors of those Territories, by proceesse of time divided into severall Families and names: whereof some of them were of eminent stature and strength, as the *Anakims*, *Zamzumanims*, or *Zuzim*, *Egimims*, *Horites*, and others. These (as men most valiant and able commonly do) did inhabit the utter borders and Mountains of their Countries: the rest were the *Zidonians*, *Jebusites*, *Amorites*, *Hevites*, *Hettites*, and others, who took name after the sons of *Canaan*, and after whom the Country in generall was still called.

As for the *Hebrews* which descended of *Shem* by *Abraham*, they were of another Family, and strangers in that Country, especially the *Israelites*: and this was some cause that the *Canaanites* did not affect them, or indure them, no more than the *Philistims* did, who descended also of *Cham* by *Mizraim*. For though *Abraham* himself being a stranger, was highly esteemed and honoured among them; especially by the *Amorites*, in inhabiting the West part of *Jordan*: yet now even they which descended from *Abraham*, or from his kindred, abode and multiplied in those parts, were alienated in affections from the *Israelites*, as holding them strangers and intruders: making more account of their alliance with the *Canaanites*, and the rest of the issue of *Cham*, with whom they daily contracted affinity, than of their old pedigree from *Abraham*.

True it is, that these Nations descended of *Abraham*, or of his kindred, who had linked themselves, and marched with the *Canaanites* and others, had so far posselt themselves of the borders of those Regions, as they began to be equal in strength to the bordering *Canaanites*, if not superiour. For of *Lot* came those two great Families of the *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*: of *Eshan* the *Idumeans*: of *Madian* the *Madianites*: of *Ismael* the eldest son of *Abraham*, came the *Ismaelites*, with whom are joynd, as of the same Nation, the *Amalekites*; whom though the more common opinion thinketh to have been a Tribe of *Edom*, because *Esau* had a grand-child of that name, yet manifest reason convinceth it to have been otherwise. For the *Israelites* were forbidden to provoke the *Edomites*, or do them any wrong; whereas contrariwise *Amalek* was cursed, and endless war decreed against him: but hereof more elsewhere. Chap. 8. §. 3. Of *Ismaels* eldest

\* It seemeth also that *Hur*, the Son of *Nahor*, and *Ezer* his Brother, planted themselves in the East side of *Jordan*, about *Belan*: where they sate the Land of *Hur*, in which *Jeb* dwelt as one of the issue of *Ham*, the Son of *Nahor*, and *Ejba*, his friend which is called a *Bacurite*. See hereafter chap. 10. *Exod.* 17. 15. *Deut.* 11. 5.

Gen. 17.

eldest son *Naboth* sprung the *Arabians* of *Petrea*, called *Nabathæi*. Now even as *Abraham* besought God to bless *Ismael*, so it pleased him both to promise and perform it. For of him those twelve Princes came, which inhabited, in effect, all that Tract of Land between *Havilah* upon *Tygris*, and *Sur* which is the West part of the *Desart* of *Arabia Petrea*. Yet howsoever the strength of these later named Nations, which descended from *Abraham*, were great; it is not unlikely, but that some reason which moved them not to favour the entrance of the *Israelites* into *Canaan*, was in respect of fear: because all Princes and States do not willingly permit any stranger or powerful Nation to enter their Territories. Wherefore, though all these Families before named, were not so united in and among themselves, but that they had their jealousies of each other, and contended for dominion: yet fearing a third more strong than themselves, whether they stood apart or united, they were taught by the care of their own preservation, to join themselves together against *Israel*: though they did it nothing so maliciously and resolutely as the *Canaanites* did. For the *Edumeans* only denied the *Hebrews* a passage, which the *Moabites* durst not deny; because their Country lay more open; and because themselves had lately been beaten out of the richest part of their Dominions, by the *Amorites*: and as for the *Ammonites*, their Country lay altogether out of the way, and the strength of *Sehon* and *Og*, Kings of the *Amorites*, was interjacent: and besides that, the border of the *Ammonites* was strong, by reason of the mountains which divided it from *Basan*. Again, that which moved the *Moabites* in their own reason not much to interrupt *Israel*, in the conquest of *Sehon* the *Amorite*, and of *Og* his confederate, was, that the *Moabites* might hope, after such time as the *Amorites* were beaten by *Moses*, that themselves might recover again their own inheritance: to wit, the Vallies and Plains lying between the mountains of *Arabia* and *Jordan*: But as soon as *Sehon* was slain, and that the King of *Moab*, *Balaac*, perceived that *Moses* allotted that Valley to the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, he began to practise with *Balaam* against *Israel*, and by the daughters of *Midian*, as aforesaid, to allure them to Idolatry: and thus at the length the *Moabites*, by special occasion, were more and more stirred up to enmity against *Israel*. And as for divers of the rest that were descended from *Abraham's* kindred, we may note, how in the beginning, between the Authours of their Pedigrees, God permitted some enmities to be, as it were, presages of future quarrels, which in the posterity might be the easier incensed by the memory of old grudges: and withall, by some disdain from the elder in nature to the younger. For the *Ismaelites* being descended from the eldest son of *Abraham*, and the *Edomites* from the eldest son of *Isaac*, *Jacob*, being but a second son, of a second brother; those Princes which were descended of the elder Houses, being naturall men, might scorn to give place, much lesse to subject themselves to their inferiours, as they took it: and for a more aggravation, the issues of *Esau*, Princes of *Idumæa*, might keep in record, that their Parent was bought out of his birth-right by *Jacob's* taking his advantage, and that he was deceived of his fathers blessing also by him: and that *Jacob*, after reconciliation, came not unto him as he promised, into *Seir* or *Idumæa*.

Gen. 25.

Gen. 27.

Gen. 33-34.

Gen. 36.

So also in the posterity of *Ismael*, it might remain as a seed or pretence of enmity, that their fore-father was by the infatigation of *Sara*, cast out into the *Desart*, with his mother *Hagar*; and had therein perished, but that it pleased God by his Angel to relieve them. *Ismael* also had an Egyptian both to his mother and to his wife: and *Amalec* was also an *Horite* by his mother: which *Horites* were of the ancient *Canaanites*. The *Edumeans* also, or *Edomites*, were by their Maternall line descended of the *Canaanites*. For *Esau* took two wives of that Nation: one of them was *Adath*, the daughter of *Eloam*, the *Hittite*; and the other *Abolibamah*, the grand-child of *Zibeon*, the *Hevite*, Lord of *Seir*, before the same was conquered by *Esau*, and called after his name, *Edom*, or *Idumæa*.

Lastly, it appeareth that all those Families of the *Ismaelites*, *Amalekites*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Edomites*, &c. were in proceffe of time corrupted, & drawn from the knowledge and worship of God, and became Idolaters, infected and seduced by the conversation of those people among whom they dwelt, and by those wives of the *Canaanites* which they had married: onely a few of the *Kenites* and those *Madianites*, which inhabited on the edge of the *Red Sea*, whereof *Jethro* was Priest, or Prince, or both, worshipped the true and ever-living God.

§. 11.

## §. 11.

of the Kings of the *Canaanites* and *Madianites*, mentioned in the ancient Wars of the *Israelites*.

OF the Kings of the *Canaanites*, descended of *Cham*, (for *Melchizedek* may be thought to be of a better Pedigree) we find four named by *Moses*: and one and thirty remembered by *Joshua*, though few of these named, otherwise than by the Cities over which they commanded: to which each of them had a small Territory adjoining, and no other Dominion. These *Canaanites* in a generall consideration are to be understood for all those Nations, descended of *Cham* by *Canaan*, as the *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, *Amorites*, *Gergesites*, *Hevites*, &c. and so here we understand this name in speaking of the Kings of the *Canaanites*: and so also we call the Country of their habitation, the holy Land, or the Land of promise: for God hath appointed that the seven principle Families should be rooted out, and that his own people should inherit their Lands and Cities. But if we consider of the name and Nation in particular, then is their proper habitation bounded by *Jordan*, on the East, and by the *Mediterranean Sea* on the West: in which narrow Country, and in the choysiest places thereof, those *Canaanites* which held their Paternall name chiefly inhabited.

The first King of these Nations, named in the Scriptures, was *Hamor* or *Hemer*, of the *Gen. 34. Hevites*, whom *Simon* and *Levi* slew, together with his son *Sichem*, in revenge of their sisters ravishment.

*Arad* was the second King which the Scriptures have remembred, who had that part of *Canaan* towards the South, neighbouring *Edom* and the dead Sea; the same which surprised *Israel*, as they encamped in the wilderness in the edge of *Edumæa*. *Nam. 21. 1.*

The third named was *Sehon* King of *Eljebon*, who before *Moses* arrivall had beaten the *Moabites* out of the West part of *Arabia Petrea*, or *Nabathæa*, and thrust them over *Arnon* into the *Desarts*, the same whom *Moses* overthrew in the plains of *Moab*: at which time he took *Eljebon*, and all the Cities of the *Amorites*. *Jos. 3. Jos. 17. Jos. 18. Jos. 24. Jos. 25.*

Presently after which victory, *Og* was also slain by *Israel*, who commanded the North part of that Valley between the Mountains *Tracon*, or *Galaad*, and *Jordan*, who was also a King of the *Amorites*. *Nam. 21. 35.*

The fifth was *Adonizedek* King of the *Jebusites*, and of *Hierusalem*, with whom *Joshua* nameth four other Kings.

*Hephai*, King of *Hebron*.

*Pirani*, King of *Jarmuth*.

*Japhia*, King of *Lachis*: and

*Debir*, King of *Eglon*, who were all *Amorites* overthrowne in battell; and hanged by *Joshua* to. *Jos. 10. Jos. 11. Jos. 12.*

*Joshua*, After this overthrow *Joshua* nameth *Jabin*, King of *Hazor*, and *Johab*, King of *Madon*: whom he also slaughtered, and took his Cities: and this *Jabin* seemed to have some dominion over the rest; for it is said in the Text, For *Hazor* be-fore times was the head of all those Kingdoms. *Jos. 11. Jos. 12.*

After these *Adonizedek* that notorious Tyrant is named: who confest that he had cut off the thumbs of the hands and feet of seventy Kings, inforcing them to gather crumbs under his Table: who, after *Juda* and *Simon* had used the same execution upon himself, acknowledged it to be a just revenge of God: this King was carried to *Hierusalem* where he died. *Jos. 10. Jos. 12.*

The last King named is *Jabin* the second, who as it seemeth had rebuilt *Hazor*, burnt by *Joshua*. For at such time as he employed *Sisara* against *Israel*, whom he opprest twenty years, after the death of *Ehud*, he inhabited *Hazor*. This *Jabin*, *Barac* (encouraged by *Jad. 4. Debora*) overthrew; and his Captaine *Sisara* had by *Jael*, the wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, a nail driven into his head while he slept in her Tent: *Jabin* himself perishing afterward in that war. *Jos. 5. Jos. 6. Jos. 10. Jos. 11. Jos. 12.*

The *Madianites* had also their Kings at times, but commonly mixt with the *Moabites*, and they held a corner of Land in *Nabathæa*: to the South-east of the dead Sea. They descended from *Madian* *Abraham's* son, by *Cethura*. *Raguel* surnamed *Gethgheus* or *Jethro*, saith *Josephus*, called *Jethro* in *Exodus*, *Kenis* in the first of *Judges*, the son of *Dathan*, the grand-child of *Jexanis*, or *Jokhsam*, the great grand-child of *Abraham* by *Cethura*. *Ex. 3. Jos. 13. Jos. 14.*



*Cedron* 3. 34. *thura*, was Priest or Prince of the *Madianites* by the Red Sea: whose Daughter or Niece, *Moses* married, and of whom I have spoken elsewhere more at large. This *Jethro*, if he were not the same with *Hobab*, must be his father: and this *Hobab* had seven daughters. He guided *Moses* in the *Wilderness*, and became one of the *Israelites*: of him descended the *Kenites*, so called of his father *Raguel's* surname, of which *Kenites* was *Heber*, which had peace with *Jabin* the second, even now remembered.

At such time as *Saul* invaded the *Amalekites*, he knowing the good affection of the *Kenites* to *Israel*, gave them warning to separate themselves: and yet the *Kenites* had strong seats, and lived in the mountains of the *Desarts*.

The Kings of the *Canaanites*, and *Madianites*, and the *Amalekites*, as many as I find so named, were these:

1. *Homer* the *Hevite* of *Sichem*
2. *Arad* of the South parts
3. *Sebon* of *Essebon*
4. *Og* of *Basam*
5. *Adonizedek* the *Jebusite*, king of *Hiernsalem*
6. *Hobam* of *Hebron*
7. *Piram* of *Jarmuth*
8. *Japia* of *Lachis*
9. *Debir* of *Eglon*
10. *Jabin* of *Hazor*
11. *Jobab* of *Modon*
12. *Adonibezek* of *Bezek*, and
13. *Jabin* the second King of *Hazor*.

Of the *Madianites* these:

\* *Evi* of *Evus*.

*Rekam* or *Rekena* who built *Petra* the Metropolis of *Petraea*, so called by the *Greeks*: and by *Esay*. cap. 16. v. 1. and *Solah*, which is as much as *Petra*: and so also it is called 2 *Reg.* 14. 7. where it is also called *Joktheel*.

- Zur*  
*Hur* and  
*Reba*  
\* *Oreb*  
*Zeb*  
*Zebab*  
*Zalmunna*.

After the death of *Barac*, Judge of *Israel*, the four last named of these *Madianite* Kings, vexed *Israel* seven years: till they being put to flight by *Gideon*, two of them, to wit, *Oreb* and *Zeb*, were taken and slain by the *Ephraimites*, at the passage of *Jordan*, as in the 6, 7, and 8. of *Judges* it is written at large. Afterward in the pursuit of the rest, *Gideon* himself laid hands upon *Zebab* and *Salmuna*, or *Zalmunna*, and executed them, being prisoners; in which expedition of *Gideon* there perished 120000. of the *Madianites* and their confederates. Of the *Dumeans*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, I will speak hereafter in the description of their Territories.

### §. III.

Of the *Amalekites* and *Ismaelites*.

OF the kings of the *Amalekites* and *Ismaelites*, I find few that are named; and so though of the *Ismaelites* there were more in number than of the rest (for they were multiplied unto a greater Nation, according unto the promise of God made unto *Abraham*) yet the *Amalekites*, who together with the *Midianites* were numbered among them, were more renowned in *Moses* time than the rest of the *Ismaelites*. So also were they when *Saul* governed *Israel*. For *Saul* pursued them from *Swr* unto *Havilah*, to wit, over a great part of *Arabia Petraea*, and the *Desart*. The reason to me seemeth to be this: That the twelve Princes which came of *Ismael*, were content to leave those barren *Desarts* of *Arabia Petraea*, called *Swr*, *Paran*, and *Sin*, to the issue of *Abraham* by *Cethura*, that

that joyined with them (for so seem the *Amalekites* to have been, and so were the *Madianites*;) themselves taking possession of a better soil in *Arabia the Happy*, and about the Mountains of *Gazaad* in *Arabia Petraea*: For *Nabaioth* the eldest of those twelve Princes planted that part of *Arabia Petraea*; which was very fruitfull, though adjoining to the *Desart* in which *Moses* wandered, afterward called *Nabathea*: the same which neighboureth *Judea* on the East-side. They also peopled a Province in *Arabia the Happy*, whereof the people were in after-times called *Napathai* (B) changed into (P.)

*Kedar*, the second of *Ismaels* sons, gave his own name to the East-part of *Basan*, or *Batanea*, which was afterward posset by *Manasse*, so much thereof as lay within the 10 mountains *Traconis*, or *Gilead*. Which Nation *Lampridius* calleth *Kedarens*, and *Pliny*, *Cedraens*.

*Abbeel* sat down in the *Desart Arabia*, neer the Mountains which divide it from the *Happy*: and gave name to the *Adubens*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Agubens*.

*Misham* was the Parent of the *Masamancuses*, neer the Mountain *Zawath*, in the same *Arabia the Happy*.

The *Raabens* were of *Mishma*: who joyined to the *Orchens*, neer the *Arabian* gulf, where *Ptolomy* setteth *Zagmas*.

Of *Duma* were the *Dumeans*, between the *Adubens* and *Raabens*: where the City *Dumeth* sometimes stood.

Of *Massa* the *Massani*, and of *Hadar*, or *Chadar*, the *Athritae*, who bordered the *Napathians* in the same happy *Arabia*.

*Thema* begat the *Themaneans*, among the *Arabian* Mountains, where also the City of *Thema* is seated.

Of *Jetur* the *Jureans*, or *Camaithens*: of whom *Tobu* was King in *Dauids* time. Plin. l. 6. c. 28.

Of *Naphri* the *Nabean Arabians*, inhabiting *Syria Zoba*: over whom *Adadazer* commanded, while *David* ruled *Israel*.

*Cadma*, the last and twelfth of *Ismaels* sons, was the Ancestor of the *Cadmonaeans*: who were afterward called *Astie*, because they worshipped the Fire with the *Babylonians*. Janius.

The *Amalekites* gave their Kings the name of *Agag*, as the *Egyptians* the name of *Pharaoh* to theirs, and the ancient *Syrians*, *Adad* to theirs, and the *Arabian Nabatheans*, *Aratas*, as names of Honour.

The *Amalekites* were the first that fought with *Moses* after he past the *Red Sea*: when of all times they flourished most, and yet were vanquished. Exod. 17.

Afterward they joyined with the *Canaanites*, and beat the *Israelites* neer *Cadesbarne*. Num. 14.

After the government of *Othniel*, they joyined them with the *Moabites*: after *Eurac* with the *Midianites*: and invaded *Israel*. God commanded that as soon as *Israel* had rest, they should root out the name of the *Amalekites*: which *Saul* executed in part, when he wasted them from the border of *Egypt*, to the border of *Caldea*: from *Havilah* to *Shur*.

In *Dauids* time they took *Siklag* in *Simeon*: but *David* followed them, and surprised them, recovering his prisoners and spoils. And yet, after *David* became King, they again vexed him, but to their own losse. 1 Sam. 31.

In *Ezekias* time, as many of them as joyined to *Edumea*, were wasted and displanted 2 *Sam.* 9. 12. by the children of *Simeon*.

### §. IIII.

Of the instauration of Civility in Europe about these times, and of *Prometheus* and *Atlas*.

THEre lived at this time, and in the same age together with *Moses*, many men exceeding famous, as well in bodily strength, as in all sorts of learning. And as the World was but even now enriched with the written Law of the living God, so did Art and Civility (bred and fostered far off in the East, and in *Egypt*) begin at this time to discover a passage into Europe, and into those parts of *Greece*, neighbouring *Asia* and *Judea*. For if *Pelasgus*, besides his bodily strength, was chosen King of *Arcadia*, because he taught those people to erect them simple Cottages, to defend them from rain and storm: and learned them withall to make a kinde of Meale, and bread of Acorns, who before lived for the most part, by Herbs and Roots: we may thereby judge how poor and wretched those times were, and how fallly those

Dd

Nations

Aug. l. 18. c. 8.  
de civit. Dei.

Æschyl. in  
Prom. vinct. 9.  
in c. 8. lib. 19.  
de civit. Dei.

Luc. Vives ex  
Hid.

Æschyl. in  
Prom. vinct.

Aug. l. 18. c. 3.  
de civit. Dei.

Nations have vaunted of those their antiquities, accompanied not onely with civil learning, but with all other kinds of knowledge. And it was in this age of the World, as both *Eusebius* and *S. Augustine* have observed, that *Prometheus* flourished: *Quem propterea ferunt de suo formasse homines, quia optimus sapientie doctor fuisse perhibetur*; Of whom it is reported, that he formed men out of clay, because he was an excellent teacher of wisdom; and so *Theophrastus* expoundeth the invention of fire ascribed to *Prometheus*, *Ad inveniendam sapientiam pertinere*; To have reference to wise inventions: and *Æschylus* affirmeth, That by the stealing of *Jupiter's* fire was meant, that the knowledge of *Prometheus* reached to the Stars, and other celestiall bodies. Again, it is written of him, that he had the art so to use this fire, as thereby he gave life to the Images of Wood, Stone, and Clay: meaning, 10 that before his birth and being, those people among whom he lived, had nothing else worthy of men, but externall form and figure. By that fiction of *Prometheus*, being bound on the top of the *Hill Caucasus*, his catralls the while devoured by an Eagle, was meant the inward care and restless desire he had to investigate the Natures, Motions, and Influences of heavenly bodies; for so it is said: *Ideo altissimum ascendisse Caucasum, ut sereno cælo quàm longissimè astræ, signorum obitus & ortus spectaret*; That he ascended *Caucasus*, to the end that he might in a cleer skie discern a far off the settings and risings of the Stars: though *Diodorus Siculus* expounds it otherwise, and others diversly.

Of this *Man's* knowledge *Æschylus* gives this testimony.

*Ab ægeant omnia  
Ut fors ferbat: donec ipse repperi  
Signorum obitus, ortuque qui mortalibus  
Sunt utiles: & multitudinem artium  
Hic repperi: componere inde literas;  
Matremque Musarum auxi ego Memoriam  
Perutilem cunctis, &c.*

But Fortune govern'd all their works, till when  
I first found out how Stars did set and rise:  
A profitable art to mortall men:  
And others of like use I did devise:  
As letters to compose in learned wife  
I first did teach: and first did amplify  
The Mother of the *Muses*, *Memorie*.

*Africanus* makes *Prometheus* far more ancient, and but 94. yeers after *Ogyges*. *Porphyrus* sayes, that he lived at once with *Inachus*, who lived with *Isaac*.

There lived also at once with *Moses*, that famous *Atlas*, brother to *Prometheus*, both being the sons of *Jupiter*, of whom though it be said, that they were born before *Moses* dayes, and therefore are by others esteemed of a more ancient date: yet the advantage of their long lives gave them a part of other ages among men, which came into the World long after them. Besides these sons of *Jupiter*, *Æsculus* findes two other, to wit, *Oceanus* and *Hesperus*, who being famous in the West, gave name to the Evening, and so to the evening Star. Also besides this *Atlas* of *Lybia*, or *Mauritania*, there were others which bare the same name: but of the *Lybian*, and the brother of *Prometheus*, it was that those Mountains which crosse *Africa*, to the South of *Morocco*, *Sus*, and *Hæc*, with the Sea adjoyning, took name, which memory *Plato* in *Critias* bestowes on *Atlas*, the son of *Nepheus*.

*Cicero* in the fifth of his *Tusculan* questions affirmeth, that all things written of *Prometheus* and *Atlas*, were but by those names to expresse divine knowledge. *Nec verò Atlas sustinere cælum, nec Prometheus affixus Caucasæ, nec stellatus Cepheus cum uxore traditur, nisi divina cognitio nomen eorum ad erroneam fabulæ traduxisset*; Neither should *Atlas* be said to bear up heaven, nor *Prometheus* to be fastened to *Caucasus*, nor *Cepheus* with his wife to be starryed, unless their divine knowledge had raised upon their names these erroneous fables.

*Orpheus* sometimes exprest *Time* by *Prometheus*, sometime he took him for *Saturnus*, as, *Rheæ conjux alma Promethen*. But that the Story of *Prometheus* was not altogether a fiction:

a fiction: and that he lived about this time, the most approved Historians and Antiquaries, and among them *Eusebius* and *S. Augustine* have not doubted: For the great judgement which *Atlas* had in *Astronomy*, saith *S. Augustine*, were his daughters called by the names of constellations, *Pleides* and *Hyades*. Others attribute unto him the finding out of the Moons course, of which *Archæus* the son of *Orchomeus* challengeth the invention. Of this *Archæus*, *Arcadia* in *Peloponnesus* took name; and therefore did the *Archæadians* vaunt that they were more ancient than the Moon: *Et Luna gens prior illa fuit*: *Ovid*, de *fast.* which is to be understood, saith *Natalis Comæ*, before there had been any observation of the Moons course: or of her working in inferiour bodies. And though there be that bestow the finding out thereof upon *Endymion*: others (as *Xenagoras*) on *Typhon*: yet *Isacius Tzetzes*, a curious searcher of antiquities, gave it *Atlas* of *Libya*: who besides his gifts of minde, was a man of unequalled and incomparable strength: from whom *Thales* the *Milestan*, as it is said, had the ground of his *Philosophy*.

### §. V.

Of Deucalion and Phæton.

And in this age of the World, and while *Moses* yet lived, *Deucalion* reigned in *Thessaly*, *Crotopus* then ruling the *Argives*. This *Deucalion* was the son of *Prometheus*, 20 saith *Herodotus*, *Apollonius*, *Hesiodus*, and *Strabo*. *Hesiodus* gave him *Pandora* for mother; the rest *Clymene*: *Homer* in the fifteenth of his *Odyssey*, makes *Deucalion* the son of *Minos*: but he must needs have meant some other *Deucalion*, for else either *Ulysses* was mistaken, or *Homer*, who put the tale into his mouth. For *Ulysses*, after his return from *Troy*, feigned himself to be the brother of *Idomeneus*, who was son to this later *Deucalion*, the son of *Minos*: but this *Minos* lived but one age before *Troy* was taken: (for *Idomeneus* served in that war) and this *Deucalion* the son of *Prometheus*, who lived at once with *Moses*, was long before. In the first *Deucalions* time happened that great inundation in *Thessaly*: by which in effect every soul in those parts perished, but *Deucalion*, *Pyrrha* his wife, and some few others. It is affirmed, that at the time of this flood in *Thessaly*, 30 those people exceeded in all kinde of wickednesse and villany: and as the impiety of men is the forcible attractive of Gods vengeance, so did all that Nation for their foul sins perish by waters: as in the time of *Noah* the corruption and cruelty of all mankind drew on them that generall destruction by the flood universall. Onely *Deucalion*, and *Pyrrha* his wife, whom God spared, were both of them esteemed to be lovers of Vertue, of Justice, and of Religion. Of whom *Ovid*:

*Non illo melior quisquam, nec amantior equi  
Vir fuit: aut illa reverentior ulla deorum.*

No man was better, nor more just than hee:  
Nor any woman godlier than shee.

It is also affirmed, that *Prometheus* fore-told his son *Deucalion* of this over-flowing, and advised him to provide for his safety: who hereupon prepared himself a kinde of Vessell, which *Lucian* in his *Dialogue* of *Timon* calls *Cibotium*; and others *Larnax*. And because to these circumstances, they afterward adde the lending out of the Dove, to discover the waters fall and decrease, I should verily think that Story had been but an imitation of *Noahs* flood devised by the *Greeks*, did not the times so much differ, and *S. Augustine* with others of the Fathers and reverent Writers approve this Story of *Deucalion*. Among other his children, *Deucalion* had these two of note; *Hellen*, of whom 50 Greece had first the name of *Hellas*, and *Melanbo*, on whom *Neptune* is said to have begot *Delfus*, which gave name to *Delfos*, so renowned among the Heathen for the Oracle of *Apollo* therein founded.

And that which was no lesse strange and marvellous than this flood, was that great burning and conflagration which about this time also hapned under *Phæton*; not only in *Ethiopia*, but in *Ischia*, a Region in *Italy*, and about *Cuma*, and the Mountains of *Pyrsus*: of both which the *Greeks*, after their manner, have invented many strange fables.

## §. VI.

Of *Hermes Trismegistus*.

But of all other which this age brought forth among the Heathen, *Mercurius* was the most famous and renowned; the same which was also called *Trismegistus*, or *Ter Maximus*; and of the *Greeks*, *Hermes*.

Many there were of this name; and how to distinguish, and set them in their own times, both *S. Augustine* and *Lactantius* finde it difficult. For that *Mercury* which was esteemed the god of Theeves, the god of Wrestlers, of Merchants, and Sea-men, and the god of Eloquence (though all by one name confounded) was not the same with that *Mercury*, of whose many works some fragments are now extant.

*Cicero*, *Clementis Alexandrinus*, *Arnobius*, and certain of the *Greeks* reckon five *Mercuries*. Of which, two were famous in *Egypt*, and there worshipped; one, the son of *Nilus*, whose name the *Egyptians* feared to utter, as the *Jews* did their *Tetragrammaton*; the other that *Mercury*, which slew *Argus* in *Greece*, and flying into *Egypt*, is said to have delivered literature to the *Egyptians*, and to have given them laws. But *Diodorus* affirmeth, that *Orpheus*, and others after him, brought learning and letters out of *Egypt* into *Greece*: which *Plato* also confirmeth, saying; That letters were not found out by that *Mercury* which slew *Argus*, but by that ancient *Mercury*, otherwise *Thevet*; whom *Philobylus* writeth *Taautus*; the *Egyptians*, *Thoth*; the *Alexandrines*, *Thot*; and the *Greeks*, (as before) *Hermes*. And to this *Taautus*, *Sanconiathos*, who lived about the war of *Troy*, gives the invention of letters. But *S. Augustine* making two *Mercuries*, which were both *Egyptians*, calls neither of them the son of *Nilus*, nor acknowledgeth either of them to have slain *Argus*. For he findes this *Mercury* the slayer of *Argus*, to be the grand-child of that *Atlas*, which lived while *Moses* was yet young. And yet *L. Vives* upon *S. Augustine* seems to understand them to be the same with those, whom *Cicero*, *Alexandrinus*, and the rest have remembered. But that conjecture of theirs, that any *Grecian Mercury* brought letters into *Egypt*, hath no ground. For it is manifest, (if there be any truth in prophane antiquity) that all the knowledge which the *Greeks* had, was transported out of *Egypt* or *Phœnicia*, and not out of *Greece*, nor by any *Grecian* into *Egypt*. For they all confesse, that *Cadmus* brought letters first into *Bœotia*, either out of *Egypt*, or out of *Phœnicia*: it being true, that between *Mercurius*, that lived at once with *Moses* and *Cadmus*, there were these descents cast; *Crotopus* King of the *Argives*, with whom *Moses* lived, and in whose time about his tenth year *Moses* died; after *Crotopus*, *Sthenelus*, who reigned eleven years; after him *Danaus* fifty years; after him *Linceus*: in whose time, and after him in the time of *Minos* King of *Crete*, this *Cadmus* arrived in *Bœotia*. And therefore it cannot be true that any *Mercurius* about *Moses* his time, flying out of *Greece* for the laughter of *Argus*, brought literature out of *Greece* into *Egypt*. Neither did either of those two *Mercuries* of *Egypt*, whom *Saint Augustine* remembereth, the one the grand-father, the other the Nephew or grand-child, come out of *Greece*. *Eusebius* and *Artapanus* note, that *Moses* found out letters, and taught the use of them to the *Jews*: of whom the *Phœnicians* their neighbours received them; and the *Greeks* of the *Phœnicians* by *Cadmus*. But this invention was also ascribed to *Moses*, for the reason before remembered; that is, because the *Jews* and the *Phœnicians* had them first from him. For every Nation gave unto those men the honour of first Inventors, from whom they received the profit. *Ficinus* makes that *Mercury*, upon part of whose works he commenteth, to have been four descents after *Moses*; which he hath out of *Virgil*, who calls *Atlas*, that lived with *Moses*, the maternall grand-father of the first famous *Mercury*, whom others, as *Diodorus*, call the Counsellor and Instructor of that renowned *Isis*, wife of *Osiris*. But *Ficinus* giveth no reason for his opinion herein. But that the elder *Mercury* instructed *Isis*, *Diodorus Siculus* affirmeth, and that such an inscription was found on a pillar erected on the Tomb of *Isis*. *Lod. Vives* upon the six and twentieth Chapter of the eighth Book of *Saint Augustine*, de Civitate Dei, conceiveth, that this *Mercury*, whose works are extant, was not the first which was entituled *Ter Maximus*, but his Nephew or Grand-child, \* *Sanconiathos*, an ancient *Phœnician*, who lived shortly after *Moses*, hath other fancies of this *Mercury* a affirming that he was the Scribe of *Saturn*, and called by the *Phœnicians*, *Taautus*; and by the *Egyptians*, *Thoth*, or

Lod. Vives out of Cicero in Aug. de civ. Dei, l. 8. c. 26.

Euseb. l. 1. c. 6. de Prep. Evan.

Virg. l. 4. Æneid.

Ficin. in Pref. Pemand. Mercurii Trismegisti.

\* Or Sanconiathos: See Euseb. de Prep. Evang. l. 1. c. 6.

or *Thoth*. It may be, that the many years which he is said to have lived, to wit, three hundred years, gave occasion to some Writers to finde him in one time, and to others in other times. But by those who have collected the grounds of the *Egyptian* Philosophy and Divinity, he is found more ancient than *Moses*: because the Inventor of the *Egyptian* *Wisdom*, wherein it is said, that *Moses* was excellently learned.

It is true, that although this *Mercury* or *Hermes* doth in his Divinity differ in many particulars from the Scriptures, especially in the approving of Images, which *Moses* of all things most detested: yet whosoever shall read him with an even judgement, will rather resolve, that these works which are now extant, were by the *Greeks* and *Egyptians* corrupted, and those fooleries inserted, than that ever they were by the hand of *Hermes* written, or by his heart and spirit devised. For there is no man of understanding, and master of his own wits, that hath affirmed in one and the same Tract, those things which are directly contrary in doctrine, and in nature: For out of doubt (*Moses* excepted) there was never any man of those elder times that hath attributed more, and in a stile more reverend and divine unto Almighty God, than he hath done. And therefore if those his two Treatises now among us; the one converted by *Apuleius*, the other by that learned *Ficinus*, had been found in all things like themselves: I think it had not been perillous to have thought with *Eusebius*, that this *Hermes* was *Moses* himself; and that the *Egyptian* Theologie hereafter written, was devised by the first, & more ancient *Mercury*, which others have thought to have been *Isis*, the son of *Jacob*: whom, after the exposition of *Pharaohs* dreams, they called *Sapienterphane*, which is as much to say, as *Abconditorum repertor*; A finder out of hidden things. But these are overventurous opinions. For what this man was, it is known to God. Envie and aged time hath partly defaced, and partly worn out the certain knowledge of him: of whom, whosoever he were, *Lactantius* writeth in this sort: *Hic scripsit libros, & quidem multos, ad cognitionem divinarum rerum pertinentes, in quibus Majestatem summi ac singularis Dei asserit, isdemque nominibus appellat, quibus nos, Deum & Patrem; He hath written many books belonging to, or expressing the knowledge of divine things, in which he affirmeth the Majesty of the most High, and one God, calling him by the same names of God and Father, which we do.* The same Father also feareth not to number him among the *Syblis* and *Prophets*. And so contrary are these his acknowledgements to those Idolatrous fictions of the *Egyptians* and *Grecians*: as for my self I am perfwaded, that whatsoever is found in him contrary thereunto, was by corruption inserted. For thus much himself confesseth: *Deus omnium Dominus, & Pater, fons & vita, potentia & lux, & mens, & spiritus; & omnia in ipso, & sub ipso sunt. Verbum enim ex ejus esse prodicens, perfectissimum existens, & generator, & opifex, &c. God (saith he) the Lord and Father of all things, the fountain and life, and power, and light, and minde, and spirit: and all things are in him, and under him. For his Word out of himself proceeding, most perfect, and generative, and operative, falling upon fruitfull nature, made it also fruitfull and producing. And he was therefore (saith *Snydas*) called *Ter Maximus*, quia de Trinitate loquutus est, in Trinitate unum esse Deum asserens; Because he spake of the Trinity, affirming that there is one God in Trinity. *Hic ruinam (saith *Ficinus*) prædicit præce Religiosis, hic ortum novæ fidei, hic adventum Christi, hic futurum judicium, resurrectionem sancti, beatorum gloriam, supplicia peccatorum; This Mercury foretaw the ruine of the old or superstitious Religion, and the birth of the new faith, and of the coming of Christ, the future judgement, the resurrection, the glory of the blessed, and the torment or affliction of the wicked or damned.**

To this I will only adde his two last speeches reported by *Calcidius* the *Platonist*, and by *Volterran* out of *Snydas*. *Haecenus, fili, pulsus à patria, vixi peregrinus & exul, nunc incolam meo. Cumque post paulum à vobis corporis vinculis absolutus discessero, videbore me nisi quasi mortuum ingeatis: nam ad illam optimam beatamque Civitatem regredior, ad quam universi cives mortis conditione venturi sunt. Ibi namque solus Deus est summus Princeps, qui cives suos replet suavitatis mirifica: ad quam hæc, quam multi vitam existimant, mors est potius dicenda quam vita; Hitherto, O son, being driven from my country, I have lived a stranger and banished man: but now I am repaired homeward again in safety. And when I shall after a few dayes (or in a short time) by being loosed from these bonds of flesh and blood, depart from you, see that you do not bewail me as a man dead; for I do but return to that best and blessed City, to which all her citizens (by the condition of death) shall repair. Therein is the only God, the most high and chiefe Prince, who filleth or feedeth his citizens with sweetnesse more than*

D d 3 marvellous:

Vires in lib. 8. c. 25. Aug. de Civin. Dei.

In Pref. Mer.

marvellous : in regard whereof, this being, which others call a life, is rather to be accounted a death than a life. The other, and that which seemeth to be his last, is thus converted by others, agreeing in sense, but not in words: with *Snydas* : *O celum, magni Dei sapiens opus, teque O vox Patris quam ille primam emisit, quando universum constituit mundum, adjuro per unigenitum ejus I crbum, & Spiritum, cuius comprehendendum, Misereamini mei: I adjuro thee O heaven, thou wisest work of the great God, and thee O voice of the Father, which he first uttered, when he framed the whole world, by his onely begotten Word, and Spirit, comprehending all things. Have mercy upon me.*

But *Snydas* hath his invocation in these words: *Obtestor te celum, magni Dei sapiens opus, obtestor te vocem Patris, quam loquutus est primum cum omnem mundum firmavit, obtestor te per unigenitum sermonem omnia continentem, propitius, propitius esto: I beseech thee O heaven, wisest work of the great God, I beseech thee O voice of the Father, which he spake first when he established all the world, I beseech thee by the onely begotten Word containing all things, be favourable, be favourable.*

## §. VII.

Of *Jannes* and *Jambres*, and some other that lived about those times.

There were also in this age both *Asculapius*, which after his death became the god of the Physicians, being the brother of *Mercurius*, as *Vives* thinks in his Commentary upon *Augustine*, de *Civitate Dei*, lib. 8. and also those two notorious Sorcerers, *Jannes* and *Jambres*, who in that impious art excelled all that ever had been heard of to this day : and yet *Moses* himself doth not charge them with any familiarity with Devils, or ill Spirits : words indeed that seldom came out of his mouth : however by the Septuagint they are called *Sophiste*, or *Venefici*, and *Incantatores* ; *Sophists*, Poysoners, and Incanters : by *Hierome*, *Sapientes*, & *malefici* ; Wise men, and evil doers : and so by *Vatablus*, who also useth the word *Magi*. The Greek it self seems to attribute somewhat of what they did to natural Magic : calling them *magikoi*, workers by drugs. The *Genevian Sorcerers and Incanters* : *Junius*, *Sapientes*, *Prestigiatores*, & *Magi*. Magici : 30 Ans and Wise men here by him are taken in one fence and Prestigiators are such as dazzle mens eyes, and make them seem to see what they see not : as false colours, and false shapes. But as some vertues and some vices are so nicely distinguished, and so resembling each other, as they are often confounded ; and the one taken for the other : (Religion and Superstition having one face and countenance) so did the works and workings of *Moses*, and of *Pharao's* Sorcerers appear in outward shew, and to the beholders of common capacities, to be one and the same art and gift of knowledge. For the Devil changeth himself into an Angel of light : and imitateth in all he can the waies and workings of the most High. And yet on the contrary every work which surmounteth the wisdom of most men, is not to be condemned, as performed by the help or ministry of ill Spirits. For the properties and powers which God hath given to natural things, are such, as where he also bestoweth the knowledge to understand their hidden and best vertues, many things by them are brought to pass, which seem altogether impossible, and above nature or art : which two speculations of works of nature, and of miracle, the *Cabalists* distinguished by these names ; *Opus de Beresith*, & *opus de mekana* : the one they call, *Sapientiam naturæ* ; The Wisdom of nature : the other, *Sapientiam divinitatis* ; The Wisdom of divinity : the one *Jacob* practised in breeding the pious Lambs in *Mesopotamia* ; the other *Moses* exercised in his miracles wrought in Egypt, having received from God the knowledge of the one in the highest perfection, to wit, the knowledge of nature : of the other so far as it pleased God to proportion him, both which he used to his glory that gave them : assuming to himself nothing at all, either in the least or most. Also *S. Augustine* noteth, that from the time that *Moses* left Egypt, to the death of *Job*, divers other famous men lived in the World, who after their deaths, for their eminent vertues and inventions, were numbred among the gods : as *Dionysius*, otherwise *Libri Pater*, who taught the *Grecians* the use of the Vine in *Attica* : at which time also there were instituted Musick plays, to *Apollo Delphinus* : thereby to regain his favour, who brought barrenness and scarcity upon that part of Greece, because they resisted not the attempts of *Danaus*, who spoiled his Temple, and set it on fire : so did *Erichonius* institute

tute the like games to *Minerva* : wherein the Victor was rewarded with a present of *Oyl*, in memory of her that first prest it out of the Olive.

In this age also *Xanthus* ravished *Esop*, and begat on her *Radamantus*, *Sarpedon* and *Minos*, which three are also given to *Jupiter* by other Historians. To these *S. Augustine* Lib. de Civ. addeth *Hercules* ; the same to whom the twelve labours are ascribed, native of *Tyrinthia*, a City of *Peloponnesus* : (or as others say, onely nursed and brought up there) who came into Italy, and destroyed many Monsters there ; being neither that *Hercules*, which *Ense-* bins surnameth *Delphinus*, famous in *Phœnicia* ; nor that *Hercules*, according to *Philostatus*, Phil. l. 2. which came to *Gades*, where he calleth an Egyptian : Manifestum sit, non Thebanum *Herculeum*, sed Ægyptium ad *Gades* pervenisse, & ibi finem statuisse terre (saith *Philostatus*) : It is manifest, that it was the Egyptian Hercules, and not the Theban, which travelled as far as the straits of *Gades*, and there determined the bounds of the earth. In this time also while *Moses* wandered in the Deserts, *Dardanus* built *Dardania*.

But whosoever they were, or how worthy soever they were that lived in the dayes and age of *Moses*, there was never any man, that was no more than man, by whom it pleased God to work greater things ; whom he favoured more, to whom (according to the appearing of an infinite God) he so often appeared ; never any man more familiar and conversant with Angels ; never any more learned both in Divine and Humane knowledge ; never a greater Prophet in *Israel*. He was the first that received and delivered the Law of God entire ; the first that left to posterity by letters, the truth and power of one infinite God ; his creating out of nothing the World Universal, and all the creatures therein ; that taught the detestation of Idolatry, and the punishment, vengeance, and eradication, which followed.

*Syracides* calleth *Moses* the beloved of God and men, whose remembrance is blessed. He made him (saith the same Author) like to the glorious Saints, and magnified him to the fear of his enemies, made him glorious in the sight of Kings, shewed him his glory, caused him to hear his voice, sanctified him with faithfulness and meekness, and chose him out of all men.

He is remembered among prophane Authors ; as by *Clearchus* the *Peripatetic* ; by *Metaphysicus*, and *Numerius* the *Pythagorian*. The long lives which the Patriarchs enjoyed before the flood, remembered by *Moses*, *Eftius*, *Hieronymus*, *Ægyptius*, *Hecateus*, *Elamius*, *Acylaus*, *Ephorus*, and *Alexander* the Historian, confirm. The universall flood which God revealed unto *Moses*, *Berosus*, *Nicolaus Damascenus*, and others have testified. The building of the Tower of *Babel*, and confusion of tongues, *Alydenus*, *Eftius*, and *Sy-billa* have approved. *Berosus* also honoureth *Abraham*. *Hecateus* wrote a book of him. *Damascenus* before cited, speaketh of *Abrahams* passage from *Damascus* into *Canaan*, agreeing with the books of *Moses*. *Empelemon* writeth the very same of *Abraham*, which *Moses* did. For beginning with the building of *Babel*, and the overthrow thereof by divine power, he saith that *Abraham*, born in the tenth generation, in the City called *Camerina*, or *Orien*, excelled all men in wisdom : and by whom the Astrologic of the *Caldeans* was invented. Is justitia pietateque sua (saith *Ensebins* out of the same Author) sic Deo gratus fuit, ut divino precepto in *Phanicia* venerit, ibique habitaverit. For his justice and piety he was so pleasing unto God, as by his commandment he came into *Phœnicia*, and dwelt there. Likewise *Diodorus Siculus* in his second Book & fifth Chapter, speaketh reverently of *Moses* : There are many other among prophane Authors, which do confirm the books of *Moses*, as *Ensebins* hath gathered in the ninth of his Preparation to the Gospel, Chapter the third and fourth, to whom I refer the Reader. Lastly, I cannot but for some things in it commend this notable testimony of *Strabo*, who writeth of *Moses* in these words : *Moses enim affirmavit, docebatque Ægyptios non recte sentire, qui bestiarum & pecorum imagines Deo tribuerunt : Itemque Afcios & Græcos, qui diis hominum figuram affinxerunt : id vero solum esse Deum, quod nos, & terram & mare continet, quod celum, & mundum, & rerum omnium naturam appellamus : cuius profecto imaginem, nemo sane mentis, alienius eorum rerum, quæ penes nos sunt, similem audeat effingere. Proinde (omni simulachrorum effigione repudiata) dignum ei Templum ac Delubrum constituendum, ac sine aliqua figura colendum : Moses affirmed and taught, that the Egyptians thought amiss, which attributed unto God the images of beasts and cattell : Also that the Africans and Greeks greatly erred, in giving unto their gods the shapes of men : whereas that only is God indeed, which containeth both us, the earth and sea, which we call heaven, the world, and the nature of all things, whose image, doublelike,*

doubtlesse, no wise man will dare to fashion out unto the likeness of those things, which are amongst us. That therefore (all devising of Idols cast aside) a worthy Temple and place of prayer was to be erected unto him, and he to be worshipped without any figure at all therein.

A. 7. 23.

Now concerning the Egyptian wisdom, for which the Martyr Stephen commended Moses, saying, That Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and was mighty in his works and words; the same is corrected (how truly I know not) by Diodorus, Diogenes, Lærtius, Lamblicus, Philo Judæus, and Eusebius Cæsariensis, and divided into four parts, viz. Mathematicall, Naturall, Divine, and Morall.

In the Mathematicall part, which is distinguish'd into *Geometrie*, *Astronomie*, *Arithmetick*, and *Musick*, the ancient Egyptians exceed all others. For *Geometrie* which is by interpretation measuring of grounds, was usefull unto them: because it consisting of infallible principles, directed them certainly in bounding out their proper Lands and Territories, when their fields and limits, by the inundations of *Nilus*, were yearly overflowed and confounded, so as no man could know what in right belonged unto him.

For the second part, to wit, *Astronomie*, the site of the Country being a levell and spacious Plain, free and cleer from the clouds, yielded them delight with ease, in observing and contemplating the risings, fallings, and motions of the Stars.

*Arithmetick* also, which is the knowledge of numbers, they studied; because without it, in *Geometrie* and *Astronomie*, nothing can be demonstrated or concluded. But of *Musick* they made no other account, nor desired farther knowledge, than seemed to them sufficient to serve and magnifie their gods, their Kings, and good Men.

The Naturall part of this Wisdom, which handleth the principles, causes, elements, and operations of naturall things, differs little from *Peripateticall Philosophie*; teaching, that *Materia prima* is the beginning of all things; that of it all mixt bodies & living creatures have their being; that Heaven is round like a Globe; that all Stars have a certain sovent heat, and temperate influences, whereby all things grow and are produced; that rains proceed and be from mutations in the ayre; that the Planets have their proper souls, &c.

The Divine part of this wisdom, which is called *Theologie*, teacheth and believeth that the world had a beginning, and shall perish; that men had their first originall in 30 *Egypt*; partly by means of the temperatenesse of that Country, where neither Winter with cold, nor Summer with heat, are offensive; and partly through the fertility, that *Nilus* giveth in those places: That the soul is immortal, and hath transmigration from body to body; That God is one, the Father and Prince of all gods, and that from this God, other gods are, as the Sun and Moon, whom they worshipped by the names of *Osiris* and *Isis*, and erected to them Temples, Statues, and divers Images, because the true similitudes of the gods is not known; that many of the gods have been in the estate of mortall men, and after death, for their virtues and benefits bestowed on mankind, have been Deified; that those beasts, whose Images and Forms the Kings did carry in their Arms, when they obtained victory, were adored for gods: because under those Ensignes they prevailed over their enemies. Moreover the Egyptian Divines had a peculiar kinde of writing, mysticall and secret, wherein the highest points of their Religion and worship of God, which was to be concealed from the vulgar sort, were obscured.

Clem. Strom. l. 5.

Clemens distributeth the whole sum of this later Egyptian learning into three severall sorts, viz. *Epistolary*, which is used in writing common Epistles; *Sacerdotal*, which is peculiar to their Priests; and *Sacred*, which Sacred containeth Scripture of two kinds: the one proper, which it expressed by letters Alphabetically in obscure and figurative words; as for example, where it is written: The *Ibis* by the Horner participateth the beauty of the Hawke; which is read thus: The Moon doth by the Sun borrow part 50 of the light of God: because Light is an Image of Divine beauty; the other symbolically, or by figures, which is threefold, viz. Imitative, Tropically, and Enigmati- cally: Imitative, which designeth things by characters, like to the things signified, as by a Circle, the Sun; and by the Horns of the Moon, the Moon it self: Tropically or transferent, which applies the divers forms and figures of naturall bodies or creatures, to signifie the dignities, fortunes, conditions, virtues, vices, affections, & actions of their gods, and of men. So with the Egyptian Divines, the Image of an Hawke signifieth God, the figure of the Horner signifieth the Sun, the picture of the Bird *Ibis* signifieth the Moon: by

by the form of a Man, Prudence and Skilfullnesse: by a Lion, Fortitude: by a Horse, Liberty: by a Crocodile, Impudency: by a Fish, Hatred is to be understood: Enigmati- cally is a composition or mixture of Images or Similitudes: in which sense, the monstrous Image of a Lions body having a Mans head, was graven on their Temples & Altars, to signifie, that to men all divine things are Enigmati- cally and obscure. So the Image of the Sun set on the head of a Crocodile, which liveth as well in the Waters, as on Land exp- resseth that the Sun nourisheth Meteors in the Aire, as well from the Waters, as from the Earth. So a Scepter, at the top whereof is made an Eye, and an Eare, signifieth God, Hearing, Seeing, and governing all things. The Scythians are thought to have bin de- lighted with this kind of writing. For *Phericides Syrius* reporteth, That when *Darius* 10 sending letters, threatned *Idanthura*, King of the Scythians, with ruine and destruction of his Kingdom, unless he would acknowledge subjection: *Idanthura* returned to him a Mouse, a Frog, a Bird, a Dart, and a Plough-share: which *Orotopagus*, Tribune of the Souldiers, interpreted to signifie, that by the Mouse, their dwellings: by the Frog, their waters: by the Bird, their ayre: by the Dart, their weapons: by the Plough, their Lands were signified to be ready to be delivered to *Darius*, as their Sovereigne Lord. But *Xyphodres* made another construction, viz. that the King meant, That except *Darius* with his men did hasten away, as a Bird through the ayre, or creep into holes as a Mouse, or run into the waters which they had passed as a Frog, they should not escape his arms, but either be slain, or, being made Captives, till his grounds. The same Hi- 20 story is with little difference reported by *Herodotus*.

Herod. l. 4.

The fourth and last part, which is Morall and Politick, doth contain especially the Laws, which (according to *Laertius*) *Mercurius Trismegistus*, or *Tot Maximus* devised: who in his Books or Dialogues of *Pimander* and *Alepius*, hath written for many things of God, worthy of admiration; as well (saith *Sextus Senensis*) of the Trinity, and of the coming of *Christ*, as of the last and fearful day of Judgement: that (as saith the same Author, the opinion being also ancient) he is not onely to be accounted a Philosopher, but a Prophet of things to come.

*Lamblicus* in his Books of Mysteries of the Egyptians, taking two very ancient His- 30 tories for their Authors, to wit, *Seleucus* and *Menæmus*, affirmeth, that this *Mercury* was not onely the Inventor of the Egyptian Philosophy, but of all other learning, called the Wisdom of the Egyptians, before remembred: and that he wrote of that subject 36525 Books, or Pages. Of which there were numbered, of Fiery Spirits, one hundred Books; of Aëreall Spirits as many, and of Spirits Celestiall a thousand; which because they were out of the Egyptians language converted by certain learned Philosophers into nat- ural Greek, they seemed to have been first written in that Tongue. *Clemens Alexan.* Clem. Strom. l. 5. *drinus* writeth, that among the Books of *Hermes*, to wit, of the Wisdom of the Egyptians, there were extant in his time 36. Of Physick, six Books; of the orders of Priests, ten; and of Astrology, four.

40

## §. VIII.

A Brief of the History of Josua; and of the space between him and Othoniel: and of the remainders of the Canaanites; with a note of some Contemporaries to Josua: and of the breach of Faith.

AFTER the death of Moses, and in the one and fortieth yeer of the Egression, in the first month called *Nisan*, or *March*, Josua, the son of Nun, of the Tribe of Ephraim, being filled with the Spirit of wisdom, took on him the government of Israel: God giving him comfort, and encouraging him to passe the River of Jordan, and to possesse 50 and divide among the Israelites the Land promised.

The beginning of Josua's rule, Saint *Augustine* dates with the reign of *Amyntas*, the Lib. 18. de Ci- 18. King in Assyria; with *Corax* the sixteenth King in Sicily, when *Darius* go- vit. Dec. 11. verned the Argives; and *Eriethonius*, Athens.

Josua imitating in all things his Predecessor, sent over Jordan certain discoverers to Jof. 2. 1. view the seat and strength of Jerico, the next City unto him on the other side of the River, which he was to passe over. Which discoverers being saved, and sent back by Ra- bab a woman of ill fame, because she kept a Tavern or Victualling-house, made Josua know, that the inhabitants of Jerico, and those of the Country about it, hearing of the 74. 2. 11. approach

Jof. 2. 11. approach of *Israel*, had lost courage. Whereupon the day after the return of the Spies, which was the sixth day of the one and fortieth year after the Egression, *Josua* removed from *Sittim* in the plains of *Moab*, and drew down his Army to the banks of the River *Jordan*; and gave them commandment to put themselves in order to follow the *Ark of God*, when the Levites took it up, and moved towards the River, giving them withal this forcible encouragement, That they should thereby assure themselves of his favour and presence, who is Lord of all the world, when the River of *Jordan* should be cut off and divided, and the waters coming from above should stand still in a heap, whereby those below towards the *Dead Sea* wanting supply, they might passe over into the land of *Canaan* with dry feet.

Jof. 1. 12. He also commanded *Reuben, Gad*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*, to prepare themselves (according to their Covenant made with *Moses*) to march in the head of the rest, and, as we call it in this age, to lead in the Vant-guard, which through all the Desarts of *Arabia*, from the Mount *Sinai* to this place, those of the Tribe of *Juda* had performed. For these Tribes being already provided of their habitations, and Country and Cities of the *Amorites*, by the help of the rest, conquered for them: it agreed with justice and equality, that *Reuben, Gad*, and the half of *Manasse* should also assist their brethren in the obtaining of their parts, as yet in their enemies possession.

On the banks of *Jordan* they rested themselves from the sixth day to the ninth; and on the tenth day of the first month *Nisan*, or *March*, they past over to the other side, 20 taking with them twelve stones from the dry ground in the midst of the River: which, for a memory of that miracle by God wrought, they set up at *Gilgal*, on the East side of the city of *Jerico*, where they incamped the first night. At which place *Josua* gave commandment, that all born in the last fortieth year in the Desarts should be circumcised, which ceremony to that day had been omitted. Of the neglect whereof *S. Augustine* giveth for cause, The peoples contempt of their superiours. *Thomas* excuseth it in this sort: That the *Israelites* knew not the certain time of their removing from one place to another: *Damascen*, That it was not needfull by circumcision to distinguish them from other Nations, at such time as they lived by themselves, and a-part from all Nations.

On the fourteenth day of the same month, the children of *Israel* celebrated the 30 *Passover* now the third time; first, at their leaving *Egypt*; secondly, at Mount *Sinai*; and now at *Gilgal*. After which, being desirous to taste of the fruits of the Country, and having, as it were, surfeited on *Mam*, they parched of the Corn of the Land, being not yet fully ripe, and ate thereof.

And as *Moses* began to distribute those Regions beyond *Jordan*, to wit, the Lands of the *Amorites* which *Og of Basan*, and *Sehon* held, so did *Josua* perform the rest; and after a view and partition made of the Territories, he gave to each Tribe his portion by lot. But this partition and distribution was not done at once, but at three severall times; first, by *Moses* to *Gad, Reuben*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*, of the Lands over *Jordan*; secondly, by *Josua*, to the Tribe of *Juda*, *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasse*, 40 about the fifth year of his government; proved in the 14. of *Josua* v. 10. and a third division was made to the other seven Tribes at *Shilo*, where *Josua* seated the *Tabor* made of the Congregation.

The victories of *Josua* against the Kings of the *Canaanites*, are so particularly set down in his own books, as I shall not need to lengthen this part by their repetition. In whose Story I chiefly note these particulars. First, how in the beginning of the war, those little kings, or regents of the *Canaanites*, had not so much understanding, as to unite themselves together against the *Israelites*; but according to the custom of those estates, from whose Governours God hath taken away all wisdom and foresight, they left those of their own Nation, which were next the invaders, to themselves, and to their own defences; 50 hoping that the fire kindled somewhat far off, might again have been quenched, ere it could spread it self so far as their own Territories and Cities. But after such time as *Jerico* and *Ai* were entred, and the Kings, People, and Cities consumed; five of those 31. Kings (all which at length perished in that war) joyned themselves together, first attempting the *Gibeonites*, who had rendered themselves to *Josua*. Only five (the rest looking on to the successe) namely, the King of the *Jebusites*, in *Jebus*, or *Hiersusalem*, the Kings of *Hebron*, *Jarmoth*, *Lachis*, and *Eglon*, addrest themselves for resistance: whose Army being by *Josua* surprized and broken, themselves despairing to escape by flight,

flight, and hopelesse of mercy by submission, creeping into a Cave under ground, were thence by *Josua* drawne forth and hanged. In the prosecution of which victory he also 10 took *Makkedah*, and *Libnah*, and *Lachis*. To the relief whereof *Horam* King of *Gezar* hastened, and perished. After which *Josua* posselt himself of *Eglon*, *Hebron*, and *Debir*, 15 destroying the Cities with their Princes.

In the end, and when the South Countries were posselt, the Cities thereof conquered, and their Kings and People made dult: the rest of the *Canaanites*, guided by the over-late counsels of necessity, united themselves, to make one gross strength and body of an Army: which *Jabin*, King of *Hazor*, practised and gathered together, by *Josua* discovered, as the same rested neer the Lake of *Merom*, he used such diligence, as he came on them unawares; and obtaining absolute victory over them, he prosecuted the same to the utmost effect. And, besides the slaughter of the defendants, he entred their Cities, of which he burnt *Hazor* onely, reserving the rest for *Israel* to inhabit and enjoy.

Secondly, I note, that *Josua* shewed himself a skilfull man of War, for that in those ancient times he used the stratagem of an ambush in taking of *Ai*; and in that he broke the Armies of the first five Kings of the *Amorites*, which attempted *Gibeon* by surprize. For he marched all night from his camp at *Gilgal*, and set on them early the next day; 30 when he overthrew *Jabin* and his confederates. After which, making the best profit of his victory, he assaulted the great City of *Hazor*.

Thirdly, the miracles which God wrought during this war, were exceeding admirable; as the stay of the River *Jordan* at the Springs, so as the Army of *Israel* past it with a drie foot; the fall of *Jerico* by the sound of the Horns; the showers of Haile-stones, 40 which fell upon the *Amorites* in their flight from *Gibeon*, whereby more of them perished 50 than by the sword of *Israel*: again, the arrest of the Sun in the firmament, whereby the day was so much the more lightened, as the *Israelites* had time to execute all those which fled after the overthrow: a wonder of wonders, and a work onely proper to the all-powerfull God.

Fourthly, out of the passage between *Josua* and the *Gibeonites*, the Doctrine of keeping Faith is so plainly and excellently taught, as it taketh away all evasion, it admitteth 50 no intrusion, nor leaveth open any hole or out-let at all to that cunning perfidiousnes, and horrible deceit of this later age, called *Equivocation*. For, notwithstanding that these *Gibeonites* were a people of the *Hevites*, expressly and by name, by the commandment of 60 God to be rooted out, &c. notwithstanding that they were liars, and deceivers, and counterfeits, and that they did over-reach, and, as it were, deride *Josua*, and the Princes of *Israel*, by feigning to be sent as Embassadors from a far Country, in which travell their cloths were worn, their bread mouldie, which they avowed to have been warm for newnesse when they first set out; their barrels and bottles of wine broken; their shoes patch; and their sacks rent and ragged: Yet *Josua* having sworn unto them by 70 the Lord God of *Israel*, he durst not, though urged by the multitude of the people, 5 to the to lay violent hands on them; but he spared both their lives, and the Cities of their inheritance.

Now if ever man had warrant to break faith, and to retract his promise made, *Josua* had it. For first, the commandment which he received from God to root out this Nation among the rest, preceded by far the peace which he had granted them. Secondly, he might justly have put these men to the sword, and have sackt their Cities, if there be any evasion from a promise made, whereof the living God is called to witness. For it was not to the *Gibeonites* he gave peace, because he knew them to be a people hated of God. He told them, that if they were of the *Hevites*, it was not in his power to make 80 a league with them. But it was to a strange people that he gave faith, and to a Nation 50 which came from far, who hearing of the wonders which the God of *Israel* had done in *Egypt* and over *Jordan*, sought for peace and protection from his people. Thirdly, the 9. 14. accord, which *Israel* made with these crafty *Canaanites*, was without warrant. For it is written in the same place, That the *Israelites* accepted their tale, that is, believed what they had said, and counselled not with the mouth of the Lord. Fourthly, these men who were known Idolaters, and served those Puppets of the Heathen, men of an apish Religion, as all Worshipers of Images are, could not challenge the witness of the true God, in whom they believed not. I say therefore, that if ever man might have served himself by any evasion or distinction, *Josua* might justly have done it. For he needed



not in this case the help of *Equivocation* or *Mental Reservation*. For what he sware, he sware in good Faith; but he sware nothing, nor made any promise at all to the *Gibeonites*. And yet, to the end that the faithlesse subtilty of man should borrow nothing in the future from his example, who knowing well, that the promises he made in the Name of God, were made to the living God, and not to the dying man, he held them firm and inviolable, notwithstanding that they, to whom he had sworn it, were worshippers of the Devil.

For it is not, as faithlesse men take it, that he which sweareth to a Man, to a Society, to a State, or to a King, and sweareth by the Name of the living Lord, and in his presence, That this promise (if it be broken) is broken to a man, to a Society, to a State, or to a Prince; but the promise in the Name of God made, is broken to God. It is God that we therein neglect: we therein professe that we fear him not, and that we set him at naught, and despise him. If he that without reservation of honour, giveth a lie in the presence of the King, or of his Superiour, doth, in point of Honour, give the lie to the King himself, or to his Superiour; how much more doth he break Faith with God, that giveth Faith in the presence of God, promisseth in his Name, and makes him a witness of the Covenant made?

Out of doubt, it is a fearful thing for a Son to break the Promise, Will, or Deed of the Father; for a State, or Kingdom, to break those Contracts which have been made in former times, and confirmed by publick faith. For though it were 400. yeers after *Josua*, that *Saul*, even out of devotion, slaughtered some of those people descended of the *Gibeonites*: yet God, who forgat not what the Predecessors and Fore-fathers of *Saul* and the *Israelites* had sworn in his Name, afflicted the whole Nation with a consuming famine; and could not be appeased, till seven of *Sauls* sons were delivered to the *Gibeonites* grieved, and by them hanged up.

And certainly, if it be permitted by the help of a ridiculous distinction, or by a God-mocking equivocation, to swear one thing by the Name of the living God, and to reserve in silence a contrary intent: the life of man, the estates of men, the faith of Subjects to Kings, of Servants to their Masters, of Vassals to their Lords, of Wives to their Husbands, and of Children to their Parents, and of all trials of right, will not only be made uncertain, but all the chains whereby free-men are tied in the world, be torn asunder. It is by oath (when Kings and Armies cannot passe) that we enter into the Cities of our enemies, and into their Armies: it is by oath that wars take end, which weapons cannot end. And what is it, or ought it to be, that makes an oath thus powerful, but this; That he that sweareth by the Name of God, doth assure others that his words are true, as the Lord of all the World is true, whom he calleth for a Witness, and in whose presence he that taketh the oath hath promised? I am not ignorant of their poor evasions, which play with the severity of Gods Commandments in this kinde: But this indeed is the best answer, That he breaks no faith, that hath none to break. For whosoever hath faith and the fear of God, dares not do it.

The *Christians* in the *Holy Land*, when they were at the greatest, and had brought the *Caliph* of *Egypt* to pay them tribute, did not only lose it again, but were soon after beaten out of the *Holy Land* it self: by reason (saith *William* of *Tyre*, a reverend Bishop which wrote that Story) that *Almerick* the fiftieth King after *Godfrey* brake faith with the *Caliph* *Elhadach*, and his Vicegerent. The *Soldan* *Samar*, who being suddenly invaded by *Almerick*, drew in the *Turk* *Syracou* to their aid: whose Nephew *Seladine*, after he had made *Egypt* his own, beat the *Christians* out of the *Holy Land*; neither would the wooden Crosse (the very Crosse, say they, that Christ died on) give them victory over *Seladine*, when they brought it into the field as their last refuge, seeing they had forsown themselves in his Name that was crucified thereon. And if it be a direction from the holy Ghost, That he that speaketh lies, shall be destroyed, and that the mouth which uttereth them, slayeth the soul: how much more perillous is it (if any perill be greater than to destroy the soul) to swear a lie? It was *Eugenius* the Pope, that perswaded, or rather commanded the King of *Hungarie* after his great victory over *Anurath* the *Turk*, and when the said King had compelled him to peace, the most advantageous that ever was made for the *Christians*, to break his Faith, and to provoke the *Turk* to renew the war. And though the said King was far stronger in the field than ever; yet he lost the battell with 30000. *Christians*, and his own life. But I will stay my hand: For this first volume

volume will not hold the repetition of Gods judgements upon faith-breakers; be it against *Infidels*, *Turks*, or *Christians* of divers Religions. Lamentable it is, that the taking of oaths now-a-days, is rather made a matter of custome, than of conscience.

It is also very remarkable, That it pleased God to leave so many Cities of the *Canaanites* unconquered by *Israel*, to scourge and afflict them, by fore-seeing their Idolatry, and as it is said in the Scriptures, To be thorns in their eyes to prove them, and to teach them to make war. For these Cities hereafter named did not only remain in the *Canaanites* possession all the time of *Josua*; but soon after his death the children of *Dan* were beaten out of the plain Countries, and enforced to inhabit the Mountains, and places of hardest access. And those of *Juda* were not able to be masters of their own Vallies; because as it is written in the Judges, The *Canaanites* had Chariots of iron. And those principall Cities which stood on the Sea-side, adjoining unto *Juda*, were still held by the remainder of the *Anakims*, or *Philistims*: as *Asdod*, *Gath*, *Asdod*; out of one of which Cities came *Goliath*, remembered in *Samuel*.

Neither did the children of *Manasse* over *Jordan* expell the *Geshurites*, nor the *Maachathites*; which inhabited the North parts of *Baisan*, afterward *Traconitis*.

Nor the *Nephthalims* possessed themselves of *Bethshenish*, nor of *Bechanab*; but they enforced those *Canaanites* to pay them tribute. Neither did *Asher* expell the *Zidonians*, nor those of *Acho*, or *Acon*, *Athlab*, *Achzib*, *Heblab*, *Aphike*, and *Rebub*, nor enforced them to tribute.

No more could *Zabulon* enjoy *Kitron*, and *Nahal*, but received tribute from them. Also the *Canaanites* dwelt in *Gezer* among the *Ephraims*: and among the children of *Manasse*, on the West of *Jordan*, the *Canaanites* held *Bethshean*, *Taanach*, *Dor*, *Ibleam*, and *Mezadda*; yea, *Hierusalem* it self did the *Jebusites* defend above four hundred yeers, even till *David*s time.

Now *Josua* lived one hundred and ten yeers, eighteen of which he governed *Israel*, and then changed this life for a better. The time of his rule is not expressed in the Scriptures, which causeth divers to conjecture diversly of the continuance. *Josephus* gives him five and twenty yeers; *Seder Ollam Rabbi* the Authors of the *Hebrew Chronicle* eight and twenty; and *Mossius* six and twentie: *Maimonius* cited by *Mossius*, fourteen: *Joannes Lucidus*, seventeen: *Cajetan*, ten: *Eusebius* giveth him seven and twenty; and so doth *S. Augustine*: *Melancthon*, two and thirty: *Codoman*, five and twenty. But whereas there passed 480. yeers from the delivery of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, unto the building of the Temple, it is necessary that we allow to *Josua* only eighteen of them; as finding the rest supplied otherwise, which to me seems the most likely, and, as I think, a well approved opinion.

The same necessity of retaining precisely 480. yeers from the departure out of *Egypt* unto the building of the Temple, convinceth of error, such as have inserted yeers between *Josua* and *Orthoniel*, of whom *Eusebius* findes eight yeers, to which *Arius Montanus* addereth; and for which he giveth his reason in his four and twentieth and last Chapters upon *Josua*: *Eunting* reckons it nine yeers: *Bucholzer* and *Kenj* but one; *Codoman*, twenty; and *Nicephorus* no lesse than three and thirty: whereas following the sure direction of these 480. yeers, there can be no void yeers found between *Josua* and *Orthoniel*, unless they be taken out of those eighteen ascribed unto *Josua* by the account already specified. The praises and acts of *Josua* are briefly written in the six and fortieth Chapter of *Ecclesiasticus*, where among many other things it is said of him, Who was there before him like to him, for he fought the battell of the Lord?

That he wrote the book called by this name, it was the opinion of *Arius Montanus*, because it is said in the last Chapter, ver. 26. And *Josua* wrote these words in the book of the Law of God: which seemeth rather to have been meant by the covenant which *Josua* made with *Israel* in *Sichem*, where they all promised to serve and obey the Lord: which promise *Josua* caused to be written in the book of the Law: and of this opinion were *Cajetan* and *Abulenensis*: *Theodoret* doth likewise conceive, that the book of *Josua* was collected out of an ancient Volume, intituled *Liber Justorum*, remembered by *Josua* himself; and others, that it was the work of *Samuel*: for whereas *Montanus* groundeth his opinion upon these words of the 26. Verse, And *Josua* wrote these words, &c. this placeth nothing in it to prove it: for when the people had answered *Josua*s The Lord *Josua* 5. 23. &c.

our God will we serve, and his voice will we obey, it followeth that *Josua* made a covenant with the people, and wrote the same in the book of the Law of God.

There lived at once with *Josua*, *Erichonius* in *Attica*, who taught that Nation to yoke beasts together, thereby to till the ground with more ease and speed: And about the same time the fifty Daughters of *Danaus* (as it is said) slew the fifty Sons of *Egyptus*, all but *Lyncus*, who succeeded *Danaus*, if the tale be true. There lived also with *Josua*, *Phenix*, and *Cadmus*, and neer the end of *Josua*'s life, *Jupiter* is said to have ravished *Europa* the daughter of *Phenix*, (afterward married to *Asterius* King of *Creta*) and begat on her *Minos*, *Radamanthus*, and *Sarpedon*. But *S. Augustine* reports this ravishment to be committed by *Xanthus*, and yet they are more commonly taken for the Sons of *Jupiter*. But it may be doubted whether *Minos* was father to *Deucalion*, and *Deucalion* to *Idomeneus*, who was an old man at the war of *Troy*, and *Sarpedon* was in person a young or strong man at the same *Trojan* war. And so doth *Nestor* reckon up in the Council of the *Greeks*, *Ithicus* and *Perithous* for men of Antiquity and of Ages past: *Minos* being yet more ancient than any of these. But hereof elsewhere.

Lib. 1.8. c. 12.  
De civit. Dei.  
Homer. Odys.  
& Iliad.  
Hom. Iliad 1.

## CHAP. VII.

Of the Tribes of Israel that were planted in the borders of *Phœnicia*, with sundry Stories depending upon those places.

### §. I.

The Proæm to the description of the whole Land of Canaan; with an Exposition of the name of Syria.

**T**He Story of the Judges ought to follow that of *Josua*, after whom the Common-wealth of the Jews was governed by Kings, of which so many of them as ruled the ten Tribes, shall be remembered when we come to the description of *Samarita*: but because the Land of *Canaan*, and the borders thereof, were the Stages and Theaters, whereon the greatest part of the Story past, with that which followeth, hath been acted, I think it very pertinent (for the better understanding of both) to make a Geographical description of those Regions: that all things therein performed by the places known, may the better be understood, and conceived. To which purpose (besides the addition of the neighbour Countries) I have bestowed on every Tribe his proper portion: and do shew what Cities & Places of strength were by the Jews obtained: and what numbers it pleased God to leave unconquered; by whom he might correct and scourge them, when ungrateful for his many graces, they at sundry times forgot or neglected the Lord of all power, and adored those deaf and dead Idols of the Heathen. *Divina bonitas (saith Augustine) idcirco maxime irascitur in hoc seculo, ne irascatur in futuro: & misericorditer temporalem adhibet severitatem, ne eternam justè inferat ultionem: The divine goodness is especially therefore angry in this world, that it may not be angry in the world to come, and doth mercifully use temporall severity, that it may not justly bring upon us eternall vengeance.*

To the Cities herein described, I have added a short Story of the beginnings and ends of divers Kingdoms and Common-wealths: and to help my self herein, I have perused divers of the best Authors upon this subject: among whom, because I find so great disagreement in many particulars, I have rather in such cases adventured to follow my mine own reason, than to borrow any one of their old patterns.

And because *Canaan*, with *Palestina* of the *Philistines*, and the Lands of *Og* and *Sehon* Kings of *Basan*, and the *Arabian Amorites*, were but small Provinces of *Syria*: it shall be necessary, first to divide and bound the generall; and so to descend to this particular, now called the *Holy Land*.

*Syria*, now *Soria*, according to the largest description, and as it was anciently taken, embraced all those Regions from the *Euxine Sea*, to the *Red Sea*: and therefore were the *Cappadocians*, which look into *Pontus*, called *Leucosyrians*, or white *Syrians*. But taking it shorter,

Proel. Afa.  
Tab. 4. Ptol. 5.

shorter, and from the coast of *Cilicia*, which is the North border, unto *Idumæa* towards the South, *Tigris* towards the Sun-rising, and the *Mediterran Sea* Westward: it then containeth besides *Babylonia*, *Chaldea*, *Arabia* the *Desart*, and *Arabia Petraea*, that Region also which the *Greeks* call *Mesopotamia*, the *Hebrews*, *Syria*, of the two Rivers, to wit, *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, for so *Aran Nabairajim* is expounded: also *Padan Aram*: that is, *Juguth Syria*, because the two Rivers go along in it as it were in a yoke.

*Edessa*, sometime *Rages*, now *Rage*, was the Metropolis of this Region of *Syria*. In *Syria* taken largely, there were many small Provinces, as *Celosiya*, which the *Latines* call *Syria Cæsa*, because it lay in that fruitfull Valley between the Mountains of *Lybanus*, and *Antilibanus*, in which the famous Cities of *Antioch*, *Laodicea*, *Apamea*, with many others, were seated. Then *Damascena*, or *Syria Lybana*, taking name of the City *Damascus*, and the Mountaines of *Lybanus*, the Regall seat of the *Adades*, the first Kings of *Syria*. Adjoyning to it was the Province of *Sophen*, or *Syria Soba*, *Choba*, or *Zobal*: over which *Adadexer* commanded in *Solomon*'s time. Then *Phœnicia*, and the people *Syrphœnicians*: and lastly, *Syria Palestina* bordering *Egypt*: of which *Ptolomy* maketh *Judea* also a part: and to that Province which *Moses* calleth *Seir* and *Edom*, *Pomponius Mela* giveth the name of *Syrea Judea*.

### §. II.

Of the bounds of the Land of Canaan, and of the promises touching this Land.

**B**UT that Land which was anciently *Canaan*, taketh a part of *Phœnicia*, and stretcheth from behinde *Lybanus* to the great *Desarts* between *Idumæa* and *Egypt*: bounded by the *Mid-Land Sea* on the West, and the Mountains of *Hermon*, *Galiad*, and *Armon* towards the East: the same Hills which *Strabo* calleth *Tracont*, or *Traconitis*, and *Ptolomy*, *Hippus*. The name of *Canaan* it had from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*: *Et lingua appellata fuit Canaan*; The language was also called *Canaan*, saith *Montanus*: and after *Hebreæ* of the *Hebrews*: who took name from *Heber*, the son of *Sale*, according to *Saint Augustine*. But *Arias Montanus* not so well allowing of this derivation, makes it a common name to all those of *Noah*'s sons, which past over *Euphrates* towards the West Sea. For the word *Heber*, saith he, is as much as *transiens*, or *transmittens*, of going, or passing over. And because the children of *Abraham* had for a long time no certain abiding: therefore, as he thinks, they were by the *Egyptians* called *Hebræi*, as it were passengers, which is also the opinion of *C. Sigonius*, and of *Eusebius* long before them both. It had also the name of *Judea* from *Juda*; and then afterwards intituled the *Holy Land*, because therein our *Saviour Christ* was born, and buried. Now this part of *Syria* was again divided into four; namely, into *Edom*, (otherwise *Seir*, or *Edumæa*) *Galilee*, *Samarita*, and *Judea*. *Galilee* is double, the *superiour* called *Gentium*, and the *inferiour*: and that *Galilee* and *Judea* are distinguished, it is plain in the *Evangelists*, though both of them belong to *Phœnicia*.

Now besides these Provinces of *Phœnicia*, and *Palestina* (both which the River of *Jordan* boundeth; saving that *Phœnicia* stretcheth a little more Easterly towards *Damascus*) that part also to the East of *Jordan*, and within the Mountains of *Hermon*, *Gilead*, and *Armon*, otherwise *Tracont*, fell to the possession of half *Manasse*, *Gad*, and *Reuben*, and therefore are accounted a part of *Canaan* also: as well because anciently possessed by the *Amorites*, as for that they were conquered and enjoyed by the *Israelites*: which Eastermost parts are again divided into *Basan*, or *Batanea*, into *Gilead*, *Moab*, *Midian*, *Ammon*, and the Territories of the *Macbati*, *Gessuri*, *Argobe*, *Hur*. They are known to the latter *Geographers* by the name of *Arabia* in general: and by the names of *Traconitis*, *Pieria*, *Batanea*, &c. of which I will speak in their proper places.

But where *Moses* describeth the Land of *Canaan* in the tenth of *Genesis*, he maketh no mention of the later Provinces, which fell to *Manasse*, *Gad*, and *Reuben*, for these be his words: *Then the border of the Canaanites was from Zidon, as thou comest to Gerar untill Azazab (which is Gaza) and this was the length of the Countrey North and South: then it followeth in the Text; And as thou goest unto Sodome and Gomorab, and Admah, and Seboim, even unto Lasha: by which words Moses setteth down the breadth, to wit, from the Dead Sea to the Mediterran. But in Deuteronomy it seemeth to be far more large: For it is therein written; All the places whercon the so. of your feet shall tread, shall be yours: Deut. 1. 24*

your coast shall be from the wilderness, and from Libanon, and from the river Perab, unto the uttermost Sea. Now for the length of the Countrey North and South, this description agreeth with the former: onely Libanon is put for Zidon; and the Wilderness for Gerar and Azzab, which make no difference: but for the breadth and extent East and West, if Perab be taken for Euphrates: then the Land promised stretcheth it self both over Arabia Petrea, and the Desert, as far as the border of Babylon: which the Israelites never posselt; nor at any time did so much as invade or attempt. And therefore Vadianus doth conceive, that by the River Perab was meant Jordan, and not Euphrates: taking light from this place of Josua: Behold, I have divided unto you by lot these Nations, that remain to be an inheritance according to your Tribes: from Jordan with all the Nations that I have destroyed, even unto the great Sea Westward.

Jof. 23. 4.

Vadian. Epi-  
tom. titulum ter-  
ra partium, cap.  
palestin.

Deut. 11. 21.

Deut. 11.

Deut. 11.

S. p. 49. 1. 4.

And though it be true, that David greatly enlarged the Territory of the Holy Land: yet as Vadianus well noteth, if Perab in the former place be taken for Euphrates, then was it put per gentes in amicitiam receptas. For David did not at any time enter so far to the East as Assyria, or Babilonia. Neither doth the not possessing of all these Countries give advantage to those that would make any irreligious cavill, as touching the promise of God to the Israelites unperformed: For when both their Kings, Magistrates, and People, fell from his worship and service, it pleased him not onely to inclose them within that Territory, which was for so many people exceeding narrow; but therein and elsewhere to subject them unto those Idolatrous Nations, whose false and foolish gods themselves also served and obeyed. And sure the promise by which the Hebrews claimed the inheritance of Canaan, and the lasting enjoying thereof, to wit, as long as the hea-  
were above the earth, was tied to those conditions, both in the Verses preceding, and subsequent; which the Israelites never performed. And therefore they could not hope for other than all mankind could or can expect; who knew that all sorts of comforts from the mercifull goodnesse of God looked for, as well in this life as after it, are no longer to be attended, than while we persevere in his love, service, and obedience. So in the eighth Verse of the eleventh of Deuteronomy, the keeping of Gods Commandments was a condition joyned to the prosperity of Israel. For therein it is written; Therefore shall ye keep all the Commandments which I command you this day: that ye may be  
strong, and go in, and possesse the Land, whither ye go to possesse it. Also that you may prolong your dayes in the Land which the Lord sware unto your fathers, &c.

The like condition was also annexed to the enjoying of the Land conquered, and the possession thereof, so long as the heavens were above the earth. For if ye keep diligently, saith he, all these commandments, which I command you to do, that is, to love the Lord your God, &c. then will the Lord cast out all these Nations before you, and ye shall possesse great Nations, and mightier than you. And here, though it be manifest, that by reason of the breach of Gods Commandments, and their falling away from the worship of his all-powerfull Majestie, to the Idolatry of the Heathen, the conditionall promises of God were absolutely void, as depending upon obedience unperformed: yet I cannot mislike that exposition of Melancthon: For, saith he, Offendit promissionem precipiam non esse de hoc politico Regno: He sheweth that his chief promise is not of a civil Kingdom. To which agrees that answer which S. Hierome made to a certain Heretick in his Epistle ad Dardanium, who accused S. Hierome, that he overthrew the reputation of the Jews Story, and brought the truth thereof in question, by drawing it altogether into an Allegorie, and ad illam duntaxat vivendum terram que in celis est; (that is) Onely to that Land of the living which is in heaven. Quoniam tota Judaeorum Regio adeo angusta sit ambitu, ut vix longitudo habeat 160. milliarum, latitudine vero 40. & in his etiam regiones, loca, urbes, & oppida sunt plurima, nunquam a Judaeis occupata, sed tantum divina policitationis promissas: Because the whole Countrey of the Jews is so narrow in compasse, that it scarce hath 160. miles in length, and 40. miles in breadth, and in these are countries, places, cities, and many towns, which the Jews never posselt, but were onely granted by divine promise. In like manner the same Father speaketh upon Esay, touching the blessings promised unto Hierusalem, where he hath these words: De quo discimus Hierusalem nequaquam in Palestine regione petendam, qua totius Provinciae deterrima est: & Jacosus montibus asperitur, & penuriam patitur sitis: ita ut celestibus natus pluvius, & raritatem fontium cisternarum extructione soletur: sed in Dei manibus, ad quam dicitur, sedinaverunt structores tui: From whence, saith he, we learn, that Hierusalem is not to be sought in that region of Palestine, which

which is the worst of the whole Province, and ragged with craggie mountains, and suffereth the penury of thirst: so as it preserveth rain water, and supplieth the scarcity of Well: by building of cisterns; but this Hierusalem is in Gods hands, to which it is said, Thy builders have hastened: so far S. Hierome; where also to prevent mistaking, he thus expoundeth himself: Neque hoc dico in suggillationem terrae Judaeae, ut hereticus Sycophanta mentitur: aut quo auferam historiam veritatem, quae fundamentum est intelligentie spiritualis: sed ut decantiam supercilium Judaeorum, qui Synagoga angustias latitudini Ecclesiae praeferrunt: Si enim occidentem tantum sequuntur literam, & non spiritum vivificantem, ostendant terram promissionis lacte & melle manantem; Neither (saith he) say I this to disgrace the land of Judaea, as the hereticall Sycophant doth belie me: or to take away the truth of the history, which is the foundation of spiritual understanding: but to beat down the pride of the Jews, which enlarge the straits of the Synagogue farther than the breadth of the Church: For if they follow onely the killing letter, and not the quickening spirit, let them shew the Land of promise, flowing with milk and honey.

By this it may also be gathered, howsoever it be unlikely (seeing the West-bound in the place, Deut. 11. 24. had his truth in the literal sense, that Euphrates or Perath, which is made the East-bound, should be taken onely in a spiritual sense) yet nevertheless that Hieroms opinion inclineth to this, as if this Perath were not to be understood for Euphrates, and that the promise it self was never so large: much lesse the plantation and conquest of Israel.

And now for a more particular description of this Holy Land, because Asher, Nephtalim, and Zabulon held the Northernmost part, and were seated in Phœnicia, I will begin with these three, taking Asher for the first: of which Tribe yet before I speak, I must admonish the Reader touching the names of places in this, and the other Tribes to be mentioned, that he remember that many names, by reason of the divers fancies of Translators, are diversely expressed, so that to the unskilfull they may seem divers, when they are one and the same: the reason of this diversity (as by those learned in the Hebrew I am taught) is, partly because the ancient Editions of the Hebrew want vowels, the old Translators imagined other vowels than now the Hebrew Editions have; and partly, because the Ancient expressed or omitted divers consonants, otherwise than the later do think fit.

## §. III.

## THE TRIBE OF ASHER.

## ||. I.

The bounds of the Tribe of Asher.

The Asherites descended of Asher the son of Jacob by Zelpha, the hand-maid of Lea, were increased while they abode in Egypt, to the number of 41 500. and odde persons, all men above twenty yeers of age, and able to bear arms, at the time when they were mulctured by Moses at Mount Sinai: all which number perishing in the Deserts, there remained of their issues, besides women and children, 53400. bodies fit for the wars, which past the river of Arnon into the Plains of Moab, & after the conquest of Canaan, had for their portion that part of Phœnicia, from Zidon & the fields of Libanus, unto Ptolomais Acron alongst the Sea-coast, containing thirty English miles, or thereabout: and from the Mid-land Sea to the East border some twelve miles: though Antoninus Ant. lib. 11. makes it somewhat larger. This part of Canaan was very fruitful, abounding in wine, oyl, and wheat, besides the Balsamum, with other pleasant and profitable commodities: according to that Prophecy, Asier pinguis panis: Concerning Asier, his bread shall be fat: And he shall give pleasures for a King.

Gen. 40.

## ||. II.

of Zidon.

The first City seated on the North border of the Territory of Asher, was Zidon, which Josua calleth the great Zidon, both for strength and magnitude. The Greeks and Quertius make Agenor the founder thereof: and Jusine derives the name from Josua. 1. 18. the

Gen. 10. Japhet.

Ej. 23. Hier.  
47. Ezek. 28.  
Cy 22. Zaccg.P. off. Sig.  
f. 11. Vadian.  
Phoen. f. 278.  
Strabo. 116.\* Strabo. 116.  
Zach. 9. 2.  
Herod. 1. 5.  
Plin. 1. 5. c. 9.

\* It seems that even in Josiah's time they practiced glass-making, whence Junius for Misphe both majim, which ad verbum is as much as combustiones aquarum, reads vitrariorum. f. 11. 8. as it seems, because those furnaces were where there was fire of water, either for the moving of the bellows by the force of the water, or for other necessary uses.

But there are others that take them for salt-pits, and others again for hot baths. The term of Astarte (or Astarte) seems to have been a theophrastus. Deat. 9. 13. the word in the plural number signifies theophrastus and this may confirm Augustine opinion, that Astarte was Juno: for the form of her husband Jupiter Hammon was a Ram.

the abundance of fish found on those shores: whereof it hath been called *Zidana*. But that it was far more ancient, *Moses*, *Josiah*, and *Josephus* witness, the same being founded by *Zidon* the eldest of *Canaan's* sons: and so strong it was in *Josiah's* time, as neither did himself attempt it, neither could the *Assyrians*, or any of their successors master it: but it continued all the time of the *Judges* and *Kings*, even unto the coming of *Christ*: a City interchangeably governed, by their own Princes or other Magistrates: though according to the warnings and threats of the Prophets, *Ejaj*, *Hieremie*, *Ezechiel*, and *Zacharie*, it was often afflicted, both by the enemies sword, and by the pestilence.

*Zidon* is seated on the very wash of the *Phœnician Sea*, which is a part of the *Mediterranean* or *Mid-land Sea*. It hath to the North the City of *Berythus*, and the River *Leontis*: and to the South *Sarepta*, or *Sapphat*, which standeth between it and *Tyre*: the distance between which two great and famous Cities, to wit, *Zidon* and *Tyre*, is 14. thousand paces, saith *Seignior*: but *Vadianus* makes it two hundred furlongs, and so doth *Hesychius* in his description of the holy Land, and both from *Strabo*: which two hundred furlongs make five and twenty miles. This difference of distance as well between these two known Cities, as all the rest, make it over-difficult to devise any new scale to the Map and Description of the holy Land.

What Kings it had till *Ageneus* time there is no memory: the story which *Zeno* the Philosopher, who was a *Zidonian*, wrote thereof, being by time confounded and lost. It seemeth to be more ancient than *Tyre*; which was also built by the *Zidonians*. For as *Strabo* noteth, *Homer* speaking of *Zidon*, neglecteth the memory of *Tyre*, because it was but a member of *Zidon*; and a City subject to the Kings thereof: though it be true that in after-times it contended with *Zidon* for Primacie, and became far more renowned, opulent, and strong: From *Zidon* had *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* their principall workmen, both in Timber and Stone, for the building of the Temple. For as it flourished in all sorts of learning, so did it in all other Mechanical Arts or Trades: the Prophet *Zachary* calling them the wise *Zidonians*. The City was both by nature and art exceeding strong, having a Castle or Citadell on the North-side, standing upon an unaccessible Rock, and compassed by the Sea, which after the Citizens became Christians, was held so and defended by the Knights of the Dutch Order: and another Castle it hath on the South-side by the Port of Egypt, which the Templers guarded. It also sent many other Colonies beside that of *Tyre*, into places remote: as unto *Thebes*, and *Sephya*, Cities of *Egyptia* in Greece. *Strabo* and *Pliny* give the *Zidonians* the invention of \* Glasse, which they used to make of those sands which are taken out of the river *Belus*, falling into the *Mediterranean Sea*, neer *Ptolomais*, or *Acon*: and from whence the *Venetians* fetch the matter of those cleer Glasses which they make at *Murano*: of which *S. Hierome* and *Pliny*: *Zidon insignis artifex vitri*: *Zidon vitrariorum officinis nobiliss*: *Zidon a famous Glasse-maker, or a skilfull worker in Glasse-bowles*.

They were in Religion Idolaters (as the rest of the *Canaanites*) worshippers of *Baal* and *Astarte*: which Idols though common to the other of the issue of *Canaan* (as *Pindus* gathers out of 1 Sam. 31. 10. and Judg. 10. 6.) yet especially & peculiarly were accounted the gods of the *Zidonians*: as appears 1 Reg. 11. 5. in the story of *Solomon's* Idolatry: where *Astarte* is called the god of the *Zidonians*: and 1 Reg. 16. 33. in the story of *Achab*, the chief worshipper of *Baal*, where it is said, that he marrying *Jezabel* the daughter of the King of the *Zidonians*, worshipped their *Baal*. Divers *Baals* and divers *Astartes* in their Idolatries they acknowledged: as it appears by the plural names of *Baalim* & *Astartes*, 1 Sam. 12. 10. & elsewhere: for even the name *Astarte*, as I am informed by a skilfull Hebræan, is plural; the singular being *Astarte*: whence Judg. 2. 13. the Septuagint reads *ἐκείνην τὴν ἀστέραν*: They worshipped the *Astartes*. The occasion of this their multiplying of their *Baals* and *Astartes*, may be diversly understood: either in respect of the diversity of the forms of the Images, or of the worship in divers places, or of the stories depending upon them: which (as fables use to be) were doubtless in divers cities divers. *Augustine* quest. 19. in Judg. thinks *Baal* and *Astarte* to be *Jupiter* and *Juno*. For the *Carthaginians* (which were *Tyrans*) call *Juno* by such a name as *Astarte*. *Tully*, lib. 3. de Nat. Deorum, making divers Goddesses of the name of *Venus*, expounds the fourth to be *Astarte*: whom he makes to be born of *Tyris* and *Syria*, and to have been the wife of *Adonis*: as also *Macrobius* 2. Saturn. cap. 21. sayes, that *Adonis* was with great

veneration

veneration commonly worshipped of the *Assyrians*: and *Hierome* upon *Ezek. 8. 44.* notes that *Thammuz* (whom there the Idolatrous women are noted to bewail) is the name of *Adonis* among the *Syrians*. So that it may seem that in the worship of *Astarte* or *Venus*, they did bewail her husband *Adonis*: as also the *Grecians* did in their songs of *Adonis*: *Mourne* for *Adonis the fair*, *dear* & *Adonis the fair*. Howbeit others in that place of *Ezek. 8. 44.* note that without good probability, expound the mourning for *Thammuz*, to be the mourning for *Osiris* in the sacrifice of *Isis*: whose losse of her Husband *Osiris*, was as famous in the *Egyptian* Idolatry, as with the *Grecians*, *Venus* losse of *Adonis*. And to this agreeeth that which *Plutarch* hath, de *Iside* & *Osiride*: that *Osiris* with the *Egyptians* is called *Amunus*: which word may seem to be the same with *Ezekiel's* *Thammuz*. But howsoever these *Zidonians* were thus anciently fostered with the milk of Idolatry: yet they were more apt to receive the Doctrine of the Gospel of *Christ* after his Ascension, than the *Jews*: who had been taught by *Moses* and the Prophets so many yeers, whereof our Saviour in *Matthew* and *Luke*: *Woe be to thee Corazin*, &c. for if the great works which were done in thee, had been done in *Tyris* and *Zidon*, they had repented long ago, &c. but I say unto you, it shall be easier for *Tyris* and *Zidon*, at the day of judgement, than for you.

It received a Christian Bishop with the first: who was afterward of the Diocese of *Tyre*. But in the yeer of our Redemption 636. it fell into the hands of the *Saracens*, and continued in their possession till *Baldwinus* the first, then King of *Hierusalem*: in the 10 yeer 1111. by the help of the *Danes* and *Norwaises*, who came with a Fleet to visit the Holy Land, and took Port at *Joppa*, it was again recovered, the commandment thereof being given to *Engelac Gromer*, a Noble man of that Country. And again in the yeer 1250. it was reedified and strengthened by *Lodowick* the French King: while he spent four yeer in the War of the Holy Land. Lastly, in the yeer 1289. it was reconquered by the *Saracens*: and is now in possession of the *Turk*, and hath the name of *Zai*.

Niger Possellus.

## §. III.

Of Sarepta, with a brief History of Tyre in the same Coast.

*Sarepta*, or after the Hebrew, *Sarphath*, is the next City Southward from *Zidon*, between it and the River called *Naar*, or *Fons hortorum Libani* (of which more hereafter) standing in the way towards *Tyre*, a City very famous for the excellent Wine growing neer it: of which *Sidonius*:

Vina mihi non sunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,  
Neque Sareptano palmite missa bibos.

I have no wine of *Gaza*, nor *Falerna* wine,  
Nor any for the drinking of *Sarepta's* vine.

This City had also a Bishop, of the Diocese of *Tyre*: after it came to the *Saracens* and *Turks*, as the rest: and is now called *Saphet*, saith *Possellus*.

Not far from *Sarepta* was situated that sometime famous City of *Tyre*, whose fleets of ships commanded, and gave the law over all the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the borders thereof: during which time of greatness and power, the *Tyrans* erected *Urica*, *Leptis*, and *Carthage* in *Africa*, of which *Virgil*. *Urbs antiqua fuit, Tyrus temere Coloni, Carthago*. *Virgil*. 1. 1. And *Carthage* was therefore called *Punica quasi Phœnicum*, a Colony of the *Phœnicians*. In Spain they founded *Gades*, now *Caliz*. In *Italie*, *Nola*: in *Asia* the lesse, *Dromos* *Plin*. 5. c. 17. *Achille*, which City the Scholiast of *Apollonius* placeth neer the River *Phyllis*, in *Bythinia*.

It had anciently the name of *Zor*, or *Tzor*: and so it is written in *Josiah* the 19. taking name from the situation; because built on a high Rock, sharp at one end. The *Latines*, as it seems, knew it by the name of *Sarra*: for *Virgil* calleth the purple of *Tyre*, *O. Gellus*. 1. 4. c. 5. *sturni Sarraenum*, by which name *Juvenal* and *Silius* remember it. The *Zidonians* built it upon a high hill, whereof many ruins remain to this day; the place being still known by the name of the ancient *Tyre*: and because it was a Colony of the *Zidonians*, the Prophet *Ejaj* calleth it the Daughter of *Zidon*; which *Tyre*, as alio

confirmeth

Cap. 23.

Cap. 23.

Justin. l. 18.

Curt. l. 4.

Euseb. in Chron.

Joseph. ant. l. 8.

cap. 2.

Cedren. p. 27.

Ezek. 28. 2. 27.

v. 13.

Ez. 23. 3.

27. 8.

confirmeth, though *Berosus* by affinity of name makes *Thiras* the son of *Japhet* to be the Parent thereof: and though no doubt it was very ancient (for so much the Prophet *Ezay* also witnesseth, *Is not this your glorious City, whose antiquity is of ancient times?*) yet, that *Thiras* the son of *Japhet* set himself in the bosome of the *Canaanites* who built *Zidon*, and peopled all that Region, I see nothing to persuade me.

But that new *Tyre* in after-times so renowned, seemeth to be the work of *Agenor*: and of this opinion was *Curtius*: and *Josephus* and *Eusebius* make this City elder than *Solomon's* Temple 240. years: *Cedrenus* 361. who also addeth, that *Tyrus* the wife of *Agenor*, gave it her name: but of *Agenor* I will speak more at large in the story of their Kings.

For strength and for the commodity of the harbour, and the better to receive Trade from all places, it was in this new erection founded in an Island 700. paces from the Continent; and therefore *Ezekiel* placeth it in the midst of the Seas, as some read, or as others, in the inner-most part of the Sea, whence he called it *Scimita* at the entry of the Sea, as also the same Prophet calleth it, *The Mart of the people for many Isles*: and *Ezay*, *a Mart of the Nations*: and so proud, wealthy, and magnificent was this City, as the Prophet *Ezay* calleth the Merchants thereof Princes, and their Chapmen the Nobles of the World.

It excelled both in learning, and in manu-facture: especially in the making and dyeing of Purple, and Scarlet-cloth: which, saith *Julius Pollux*, was first found out by *Hercules* Dog, who passing along the Sea-coast, and eating of the Fish *Conchilis* or *Purpura*, the hair of his lips became of that colour. It worshipped the Idols that *Zidon* did: saving that *Hercules* became their Patron in after-times. For *Alexander Macedon*, when the *Tyrians* presented him with a Crown of gold, and other gifts, desiring to remain his friends and allies, answered them, that he had vowed a sacrifice to *Hercules*, the Defender of their City, and the Ancestor of the *Macedonian* Kings: and must therefore enter it. Whereupon they sent him word, that *Hercules* his Temple was in the Mountain of old *Tyre*: where he might perform that ceremony. But this availed not: for *Alexander* was not so superstitious, as ambitious; he desired to enter the Town, which being denied, he, as one whom no perill could fear, nor labour weary, gathered together as many ships as he could, and brought from *Libanus* so great a number of *Cedars*, and so many weighty stones from the old City of *Tyre* adjoining, as, notwithstanding that his materials were often waisted away with the strength of the Sea and the Tides, yet he never rested, till he had made a foot-passage from the Continent to the Island: and having once approached their walls, he over-topt them with Turrets of wood, and other frames: from whence (having filled the body of force with the violent moving spirit of resolution) he became Lord thereof, putting all to the Sword that resisted; after which, he caused 2000. more to be hung up in a rank all alongst the Sea-shore: which execution upon cold blood he performed (as some Authors affirm) upon the illuses of those slaves which had formerly slain all their Masters, taking their Wives, Children, Riches, and power of Government to themselves. This victory of *Alexander* over the *Tyrians*, *Josephus* remembreth: and how *Sanaballat* revolted from *Darius*, and came to *Alexander* with 8000. Souldiers: who was the last *Satrapa* or Provincial Governour, which *Darius* seated in *Samarita*: the same who having married his Daughter to *Manasse*, brother to *Jaddus* the high Priest of *Hierusalem*, obtained of *Alexander*, that a Temple might be built on the Mountain *Garizim* over *Samarita*: that the forces of the *Jews* being divided, *Alexander* might the better hold them in obedience. The honour of which Priesthood he bestowed on his son in law *Manasse*, whom the *Jews* oppugned, for that he had married out of their Tribes, and with a Gentile: but while *Alexander* besieged *Gaza*, *Sanaballat*, whom *Gul. Tyrinus* called *Sanabula*, died.

Long before this desolation of *Tyre* by the cruelty of *Alexander*, it was attempted by *Salmanasser* the *Assyrian* King: when the growing pride of the *Assyrians*, after that they had conquered the ten Tribes, with the rest of *Syria*, became envious of the beauty, riches, and power of that city. He besieged it both on the Land-side, and with three-score ships of war held the Port: to the end that neither any victuals nor any supply of men might enter it: but the *Tyrians* with twelve sail scattered that fleet, and took 500. prisoners of the *Assyrians*: notwithstanding, the *Assyrian* continued his resolution, and lay before

Joseph. ant. l. 8.

d. l. 11. c. 8.

De bell. sac.

l. 13. c. 4.

Joseph. ant. lib. 9.

cap. 14.

before it by his Lieutenants five years, but with ill successe. And this siege *Menander E. 15.* *phesus*, cited by *Josephus*, made report of in his *Chronicles*, as he found the Story among the *Annals* of the *Tyrians* (which the said *Menander* converted into *Greek*) adding, that *Ezeph. 13. 4.* *Ezeph. 15.* *Eldaneus*, whom *Tyrians* called *Helisaeus*, was then King of *Tyre*, having governed the same six and twenty years. Soon after this repulse of *Salmanasser*, and about 200. years before the victory of *Alexander*, *Nabuchodonosor*, at such time as he destroyed *Hierusalem* with the Temple, came before this City: who indeed gave to *Alexander* the example of that despairfull work, of joyning it to the Continent. For *Nabuchodonosor* had formerly done it: though by the diligence of the Citizens, and the strength of the Sea, the same cawley and passage was again broken down, and demolished.

Against *Nabuchodonosor*, for many years, the *Tyrians* defended themselves: for so *Ezek. 29. 18.* long did those *Babylonians* continue before it. As every head was made bald, and every flound. *Ezek. 29. 19.* *der made bare*, saith *Ezekiel*, who with the Prophet *Ezay* had manifestly foretold the destruction of this proud place. In the end, and after thirteen years siege or more, the *Tyrians* despoiled of all their hopes, and remembering over-late the predictions and threatenings of Gods Prophets, having prepared a convenient number of ships, abandoned their City, transporting with themselves the ablest of all that remained: and with their wives, children, and portable riches, sayled thence into *Cyprus*, *Carthage*, and other Maritime Cities of their Tributaries, or Confederates: so as the *Babylonians* finding nothing therein, either to satisfie so many labours and perils, or any person upon whom to avenge themselves for the losse of so many bodies in that War: It pleased God in recompence thereof (who strengthened this resolution, as in a work of his own) to make *Ezek. 29. 19.* *Nabuchodonosor* victorious over the *Egyptians*: and gave him that Kingdom and the spoile thereof, as it were, in wages for his Army. Whereupon Saut *Hierome* noteth, that God leaveth not the good deeds of the Heathen unrewarded: who though they cannot hope by any laudable worldly action, to attain unto that eternal happinesse reserved for his Servants and Saints: yet such is the boundlesse goodnesse of God, as he often repayeth them with many worldly gifts and temporal blessings.

Now of this enterprise of *Nabuchodonosor* against *Tyre*, prophane Historians have *Ezeph. ant. l. 10.* 30 not bin silent. For both *Diocles*, and *Philostratus*, (as *Josephus* citeth them) the one in his 13. second Book, the other in his *Phenician* Histories remember it.

After these two great *Vastations* by the Kings of *Babylon* and *Macedon*, this City of *Tyre*, repaired and recovered it self again: and continued in great glory about 300. years, even to the coming of our Saviour *Christ*: and after him flourished in the *Christian* Faith near 600. years: the Archbishop whereof gave place to none but to the Patriarch of *Hierusalem* only, who within his own Diocesse had fourteen great Cities, with their Bishops and Suffragans: namely *Caipha*, otherwise *Porphiria*, *Acon*, or *Plolomais*, *Sarepta*, *Zi. 15.* *Gul. Tyr. bell. don*, *Casarea Philippi*, *Berytus*, *Byblus*, *Botrys*, *Tripolis*, *Orthosia*, *Archis*, *Aradus*, *Antaradus*, (or *Tortosa*) and *Maraclea*. But in the year 636. it was with the rest of that beautiful 40 Region of *Phenicia* and *Palestina*, subjected to the cruell and faithlesse *Saracens*: under the burthen and yoke of whose tyranny it suffered, with the other *Palestine* Cities, 488. years.

In the year 1112. it was attempted by *Baldwine* King of *Hierusalem*; but in vain: yet *Gul. Tyr. 11.* in the year 1124. by *Guaremonde*, Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, Vicergerent to *Baldwine* the *Bel. sac. 17.* second, with the assistance of the *Venetians*, and their fleet of Gallies, it was again recovered, and subjected to the Kings of *Hierusalem*, and so it remained 165. years.

Finally, in the year 1189. *Saladine* having first taken *Hierusalem*, removed his whole Army, and fate down before *Tyre*: drawing his fleet of Ships and Gallies from *Alexandria* into the Port, this City as then only remaining in the *Christian* power.

50 The Citizens finding themselves reduced into great famine, and many other miseries, they at once with certain rafters of timber, fiered, burnt, and brake the *Saracens* fleet, and sallied out resolutely upon his Army, slew so great numbers of them, and followed their victory with such fury, as that the *Saracens* forsaking their Trenches and Tents, removed in great disorder and dishonour. Two years after which victory the body of that famous *Frederick Barbarossa* (who by the lamentable accident of following the *Christians*, enemies over a River unfordable, perished by the weight of his armour therein) was brought and interred in the Cathedral Church of *Tyre*, near unto that glorious Sepulchre of *Origen*, garnished and graven with guilt pillars of Marble, 940. years before

before therein buried: but in the year 1289. the *Saracens* again attempted it, and carried it, and it now remaineth subject to the *Turks*.

## ||. IV.

Of *Ptolomais* or *Acon*.

The third City alongst the coast of the Sea, which the *Asserites* could not obtain, on the South bound of *Affer* was *Acho*, which was the ancient name thereof after *Hierome*, though other good Authours affirm, that it took name from *Acon* the brother to *Ptolomie*. *Plinie* calleth it *Ace*: and otherwise the Colonie of *Claudius*. It had also the name of *Coth*, or *Cod*, and by *Zeiglerus* it is called *Haſtipos*.

But lastly, it was intituled *Ptolomais*, after the name of one of the *Egyptian Ptolomies*: which City also, as it is 1 *Mac*. 11. another of the *Ptolomies*, infideliously wrested from his son in law *Alexander*, which called himself the son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*: the same *Alexander* having married *Cleopatra*, daughter of the said *Ptolomie*, not long before. Therein also was *Jonathan Machabees* treacherously surpris'd and slain, as it is 1 *Mac*. 12. 48. by the perfidiousness of *Tryphon*, whom soon after *Antiochus* pursued, as it is in the Story ensuing: and, by like reason, about the same time was the afore said *Alexander* in the war against *Demetrius*, one of the sons of *Antiochus* the great, with whom *Ptolomie* joyn'd, overthrow'n and treacherously murdered by *Zabdiel the Arabian*: to whom he fled for succour: and his head presented unto his father in law *Ptolomie*: who enjoyed not the glory of his victory and treason above three daies, for God struck him by death.

For the beauty and strength of this City, this *Alexander* made it his regall seat; two parts of the same being invironed by the Sea, and the Port, for safety and capacity, not inferior to any other in all that Tract. This City is distant from *Hierusalem* some four and thirty miles: four miles to the North from the Mountain *Carmel*, and as much to the South from *Castrum Lamberti*: from *Tyre*, *Antonius* maketh it two and thirty *Italian* miles. In the middle of the City there was a Tower of great strength, sometime the Temple of *Bel-zebub*: and therefore called the Castle of *Flies*, on the top whereof there was maintained a perpetuall light, like unto that called *Pharus* in *Egypt*: to give comfort in the night to those Ships which came neer and sought that part. It had in it a Bishop's seat of the Diocese of *Tyre*, after it became *Christian*: but in the year 636. (a fatal year to the *Christians* in those parts) it was forced and taken by *Haomarus the Saracen*. In the year 1104. it was regained by *Baldwine* the first, by the help of the Gallies of *Genoa*: to whom a third of the Revenue was given in recompence. Again, in the year of our Lord God, one thousand one hundred fourscore and seven, *Saladine* King of *Egypt* and *Syria*, became Lord thereof. In the year of Christ, one thousand one hundred ninety and one, by *Richard King of England*, and *Philip King of France*, it was repossessed and redelivered to the *Christians*. Lastly, in the year 1291. it was by the fury of the *Saracens* besieged with an Army of 150000. entred, sackt, and utterly demolished: though in some sort afterward reedified, and it is now *Turkish*.

## ||. V.

Of the Castle of Saint George.

Five miles from *Ptolomais* towards the East, is the Castle of Saint George seated, in which he was born: the Valley adjoining bearing the same name. And though for the credit of Saint Georges killing the Dragon, I leave every man to his own belief: yet I cannot but think, that if the Kings of *England* had not some probable record of that his memorable act, among many others: it was strange that the Order full of Honour, which *Edward* the third founded, and which his Successors royally have continued, should have born his name, seeing the World had not that scarcity of Saints in those daies, as that the *English* were driven to make such an erection upon a fable, or person feigned. The place is described by *Adrichomius* in his description of *Affer*, to have been in the fields of *Libanus*, between the River *Adonis*, and *Zidon*: his own words are these:

these: Hoc loco qui ab incolis Cappadocia appellatur, non longe à Beryto, memorant inclytum Christi Atilitem D. Georgium, Regis filiam ab immanissimo Dracone asseruisse: eamque mata bestia parenti restituisse. In cuius rei memoriam Ecclesia postmodum iust edificata; In this place, which by the Inhabitants is called Cappadocia, not far from Berytus, men say that the famous Knight of Christ, Saint George, did rescue the Kings Daughter from a huge Dragon: and having killed the beast, delivered the Virgin to her Parent. In memory of which deed a Church was after built there: Thus far *Adrichomius*. His Authours he citeth *Lodovicus Roman*, *Patric Navigationum* l. 1. c. 3. and *Bridenbach* itin. 5. The Valley under this Castle sometime called *Affer*, was afterward called the Valley of Saint George. If this authority suffice not, we may rather make the Story allegoricall, figuring the victory of Christ, than except of George the *Arrian* Bishop, mentioned by *Am. Marcellinus*.

## ||. VI.

Of *Acziba*, *Sandalium*, and others.

Between *Ptolomais* and *Tyre* alongst the Seacoast, was the strong City of *Acziba*, or *Achazib*, which *S. Hierome* called *Achzib*, and *Iosephus* *Ecdippor*, *Plinie* *Ecdippa*, one of those which defended it self against the *Asserites*. *Belforrest* findes *Acziba* and *Sandalium*, or the Castle of *Alexander* to be one, but I know not whence he had it.

The twelve Searchers of the Land which *Moses* sent from *Cadesbarn*, travelled as far to the North as *Roub*, or *Rechob*, in the Tribe of *Affer*, which *Rechob*, as also *Berothe*, which by *Ezechiel*, cap. 47. ver. 16. is placed in these North borders, belonged in *Dauids* time to the King *Hadarbezer*, as it may be gathered out of the second of *Samuel* chap. 8. ver. 8. and cap. 10. ver. 6. and it defended it self against the *Asserites*, as *Lidon*, *Tyre*, *Achzib*, *Ptolomais*, *Alab*, *Helbah*, and *Aphek* did.

This *Aphek* it was, whose wall falling down, slew seven and twenty thousand of *Ben-hadads* Souldiers, after that a hundred thousand had been slaughtered by the *Israelites*, under the conduct of *Abab*. Here *Junius* finds that the *Philistines* encamped a little before the battell at *Gilboa*, though in his note upon the first of *Samuel* the 9. & 1. he takes 30 *Aphek* there mentioned (at which battell the Ark was taken) to have been in *Juda*. Of which *Jos*. 15. and 53. and in the second of *Kings* 13. 17. he reads, Fortiter, for, in *Aphek*, where others convert it, *Percutiens Syros* in *Aphek*.

The next place along the coast is *Sandalium*, first called *Schandalium* of *Schander*, which we call *Alexander*, for *Alexander Marcedon* built it when he besieged *Tyre*: and set it on a point of Land which extendeth it self into the Sea, between *Acziba* and *Tyre*: which Castle *Baldwine* the first rebuilt and fortified; in the year of Christ 1157. when he undertook the recovery of *Tyre*.

Not much above a mile from this Castle, there ariseth that most plentiful Spring of water, which *Solomon* remembreth, called the Well of living Water: from whence not only all the fields and plains about *Tyre* are made fruitful by large pipes hence drawn: but the same Spring, which hath not above a bow-shot of ground to travail till it recover the Sea, driveth six great Mills in that short passage, saith *Brochard*.

Within the Land, and to the East of *Acziba*, and *Sandalium*, standeth *Hofa*: and beyond it, under the Mountains of *Tyre*, the City of *Achsaph*, or *Axib*, or after *S. Hierome*, *Acisap*, a City of great strength, whole King, amongst the rest, was slain by *Sejuz*, at the waters of *Merom*.

## ||. VII.

Of *Thoron*, *Giscala*, and some other places.

Farther into the Land, towards *Jordan*, was seated the Castle of *Thoron*, which *Huze* of *Sancto Ademare* built on the Easter-most hills of *Tyre*, in the year 1107. thereby to restrain the excursions of the *Saracens*, while they held *Tyre* against the *Christians*: the place adjoining being very fruitfull, and exceeding pleasant. From this Castle the Lords of *Thoron*, famous in the story of the Wars for the recovery of the Holy Land, derive their names, and take their Nobility. It had in it a curious Chappell, dedicated to the blessed Virgin, in which *Humphrey* of *Thoron*, Constable to *Baldwine* the 3. King of *Hierusalem*, lieth buried: There were five Castles besides this within the Territory of *Affer*, where,





The Rivers which *Libanus* bestoweth on the neighbour Regions, are, *Chrysorrhoas*, *Jordan*, *Eleutherus*, *Leontes*, *Lycus*, *Adonis*, *Fons bortionum Libani*, and others.

The rest of the Mountains of *Affer* are those Hills above *Tyre*, and the Hills of *Saron*, both exceeding fruitful: but those are but of a low stature, compared with *Libanus*: for from *Nebo*, or the Mountain of *Abarim* in *Reuben*, *Moses* beheld *Libanus* threescore miles distant.

## §. IV.

## THE TRIBE OF NEPH TALIM.

10

## ||. I.

Of the bounds of *Nephtalim*, and of *Heliopolis*, and *Abila*.

THE next portion of the Land of *Canaan* bordering *Affer*, was the upper *Galilee*: the greatest part whereof fell to the lot of *Nephtalim*, the son of *Jacob* by *Billa*, the hand-maid of *Rachel*: who while they abode in *Egypt*, were increased to the number of 53400. persons, able men to bear arms, numbered at Mount *Sinai*: all which leaving their bodies in the Deserts, there entered the Holy Land of their sons, 45400. beside 10 Infants, Women, and Children, under twenty years of age. The Land of *Nephtalim* took beginning on the North part, from the Fountains of *Jordan*, and the Hill of *Libanus* adjoining, as far South as the Sea of *Galilee*, bounded on the West by *Affer*, and on the East and South-East by *Jordan*.

On the North-side of *Libanus*, and adjoining to this Territory of *Nephtalim*, did the *Amorites* (or *Emorites*) also inhabit, in which Tract, and under *Libanus*, was the city of *Heliopolis*: which the height of the Mountains adjoining shadowed from the Sun the better part of the day. *Possellus* calls it *Balbec*; *Niger*, *Marbech*; and *Leonclavius*, *Beallebeta*.

Of this name of *Heliopolis*, there are two great cities in *Egypt*: the first called *On*, by 30 the Hebrews, and the Chaldean Paraphrast; otherwise *Bethfemes*, or after the *Latine*, *Solis oppidum*, or *Domus Solis*: The City of the Sun: into which *Ulpian*, *Severus*, the Roman Emperor sent a Colony: the other *Gesfelin* nameth *Dealmarach*: and of this name *Stephanus* also findeth a city in *Thrace*, and *Glycas* in *Phrygia*.

There is also in the same Valley adjoining to *Nephtalim*, *Chalcis*, and *Abila*. *Chalcis*, of whom the region towards *Palmyrena* hath the name of *Chalcidica*, over which *Herod Agrippa*, and *Bernice* the Queen commanded.

*Abila* also gave name to the region adjoining, of which *Lysanius* the son of *Herod* the elder, became Tetrarch or Governour: whereof *Protonius* gave it the addition of *Lysani*, and called it *Abila Lysani*. *Volaterran* names it *Apila*, of which he notes, that one *Dionysius*, a famous Sophister was native, who by *Volaterran* is intituled *Apuleius*, not *Atheneus*. After that this city of *Abila* or *Apila*, had received the Christian Faith, *Priscillianus* became the Bishop thereof: slain afterward by our Brittish *Maximus* at *Treuer*. For distinction of this city (if it be not the same, as it may be thought to be the same) it is to be remembered, that in the Tribe of *Manasse*, joyning upon the bounds of the Tribe of *Nephtalim*, there is another city of the same name, saving that it is written with an (R) for an (T) and called *Abela*, remembered in the 20. chapter of the second of *Samuel*. The same *Josephus* calls *Abelmachea*, and *Hierome*, *Bethmachas*. In the place of *Samuel*, for distinction sake, it is written *Abel Beth-Mabaca*. (For belike it was the Town of *Mabaca* the wife of *Macir*, the son of *Manasse*, the father of *Gilead*) in the *Chronicles* it is called 30 *Abel-Majim*. This city *Joab* besieged, because *Seba* the son of *Bichri*, who rebelled against *David*, fled thierinto for succour: but a certain wise woman of the city persuading the people to cast *Seba* his head over the wall, *Joab* retired his Army. The same city was afterward taken by the King of *Damascus*, *Benadad*: and after a while by *Teglatphalasar*.

The word *Abel* may be expounded, either to signifie bewailing, or a plain ground; and therefore no marvell that many Towns (with some addition for distinction sake) were thus called: for even of bewailing, many places took name; as *Bochim*, *Judg.* 2. 4. and

and so doubtlesse \* *Abel-Misraim*, *Gen.* 50. 11. and yet *Junius* in his notes upon *Num.* 33. \* And *Abel* 49. thinks that *Abel-Sittim* was so called, rather by reason of the plain ground there, (to wit, in the Land of *Moab*) and so perhaps *Abel-Meholab* in the Tribe of *Ephraim*: the Town of *Elisba* the Prophet: also *Abel-Vinearum* of the *Ammonites*, whither *Jephtha* pursued them.

## ||. II.

Of *Hazor*.

IN the Tribe of *Nephtalim* was that famous City of *Jabin*, in *Josua's* time called *Afor*, \* Of two o- (or after the Chaldean Paraphrast, *Hafzor*) by *Josephus*, *Afora*; by *Junius*, \* *Chatzor*: ther Cities of which *Laieftan* names *Hefron*; the Regall City, and *Metropolis* of *Canaan*: seated in the West part of *Nephtalim*, towards *Affer*. In this city was that great Rendevous and Assembly of those four and twenty Kings against *Josua*: who being all overthrown, slain, and scattered, this their powerfull city was by *Josua* taken & burnt to dust. But in process of time the same being re-built by the *Canaanites*, a second King *Jabin*, 127 years after the death of this first *Jabin*, invaded the *Israhelites*: and being ordained of God to punish their Idolatry, he prevailed against them, and held them in a miserable servitude 20. years; till *Deborah* the Prophetesse overthrew *Sisera*, *Jabins* Lievtenant, and his Army, near the Mountain *Tabor*. This city *Solomon* restored at such time as he also re-edified *Gexar*, burnt by *Pharao* of *Egypt*, with \* *Ategiddo*, *Bethoron*, and other cities; but about 260. years after, it fell into the hands of *Teglatphalasar*, King of the *Assyrians*. It is now, saith *Adrichomius*, called *Antiochia*: it was one of the principall cities of *Decapolis*. There is another city of this name in the Territory of *Benjamin*, seated on the confines of *Ascalon*, called the new *Hazor*, \* faith *Hierome*.

*dan*, *Ex.* 47. *Numb.* 24. 3. Also in *Simeon*, *Chafar-Sefima*, of which 1 *Chron.* 4. 31. which also is called *Chafar-Sula*, and *Chafar-Gadale*, and lastly, *Chafar-Shubel*, another City of *Simeon*, *Jed.* 19. 3. c 1 *Kings* 9. d *Hieron.* *Eccl.* 1. 4. out of *Rehm.* 11. 33. as it seems.

## ||. III.

Of *Cesarea Philippi*.

THERE was also on the border, and within the Territory of *Nephtalim*, that renowned city of *Lais*, or *Lajisch*, as *Junius* writes it, or *Lefchen*; which city the children of *Dan* (being straitened in their Territory under *Juda*) invaded and mastered; and gave it the name of their own Parent *Dan*: and by that name it is written in *Genes.* 14. at which place *Abraham* surprized *Chedorlaomer* and his confederates, and followed his victory as far as *Sebah*, formerly remembered in the division of *Syria*, otherwise called *Sophena*. And after the possession of the *Danites*, it had the joynt name of *Lefchem-Dan*. *Weissenbach* writes it *Lakis*, the *Geneva*, *Lajsh*; *Josephus*, *Dana*; *Benjamin*, *Balina*; *Breidenbach*, *Belena*: but the now Inhabitants know it by the name of *Belina* to this day: 30 witnesse *Neubrigenfis*, *Tyrius*, *Volaterranus*, *Brochard* the Monk, and *Possellus*: who also taketh this city to be the same, which in *Matth.* 15. 39. in the *Vulgar* is called *Magedar*, for which the Greek Text hath *Magdala* in that place, and in *S. Mark*, speaking of the same story, *Dalmanntha*. At such time as the children of *Dan* obtained this place, it seemeth that it was either a free city, of the alliance and confederacy of the *Zidonians*, or else subject unto the Kings thereof; for it is written *Judges* 18. And there was none to Verse 28. help, because *Lais* was far from *Zidon*: and they had no business with other men: for it was above thirty English miles from the *Mediterranean* Sea, and from *Zidon*.

In after-times when these regions became subject to the state of *Rome*, it had the name 50 of *Panæas*, from a Fountain adjoining so called: and therefore *Protonius* calls it *Cesarea* *Hag.* 1. 1. c. 35. *Panie*. *Hegeffippus* calls it *Parnium*, saith *Weissenbach*: but he had read it in a corrupt copy; for in *Hegeffippus*, set out by *Badus*, it is written *Panæum* without an (R): and at such time as *Philip* the son of the elder *Herod*, brother to *Herod*, Tetrarch of *Galilee*, became Governour of *Tracoonitis*, sometime *Basam*: this city was by him amplified and fortified; and both to give memory to his own name, and to flatter *Tiberius Cesar*, he called it \* *Cesarea Philippi*: and so it became the *Metropolis*, and head city of *Tracoonitis*, and one of the first cities of *Decapolis*. And being by *Agrippa* in the succeeding age greatly adorned; by him in honour of *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*, or *Neroniada*. But as *Manasse*.

Ff 2

nothing

of Discor-  
see Scythia in  
Zabulon.  
Euseb. hist. Ec-  
cles. l. 7. c. 14.  
Niceph. l. 6. c. 25

a Joseph in  
the book of  
the Jewell  
war. chap. 18.  
faith that Phi-  
lip the Tetrarch  
cast chaffe into  
a Fountain  
called Pni-  
da, distant  
120. stadia  
North-east  
from Caesaria,  
which chaffe  
being carried  
under ground,  
was cast up a-  
gain at Pan-  
um or Dan,  
wherby it is  
conjectured,  
that the first  
Spring of Jor-  
dan is from  
this Fountain  
called Pni-  
da, from whence  
Jor and Dan  
receive their  
waters.

nothing remained with that Emperour, but the memory of his impiety: so in S. Hieroms time the Citizens remembered their former *Paneas*, and so re-called it, with the Territo-ry adjoining by the ancient name. Of this City was that woman whom Christ healed of a bloody issue, by touching the hem of his garment with a constant Faith: who afterward, as she was a woman of great wealth and ability, being mindfull of Gods goodness, and no lesse gratefull for the same, as Eusebius and Nicephorus report, caused two Statues to be cast in pure Copper: the one representing Christ, as we see it could be moulded: the other made like her self, kneeling at his feet, & holding up her hands towards him. These he mounted upon two great Bases or Pedestals of the same metall, which he placed by a Fountain near her own house: both which (saith Eusebius) remained in their first perfection, even to his own time: which himself had seen, who lived in the reign of Constantine the Great. But in the year after Christ 363, that Monster Julian A. postata, caused that worthy Monument to be cast down and defaced: setting up the like of his own in the same place: which Image of his was with fire from Heaven broken into fitters: the head, body, and other parts fundered and scattered, to the great admiration of the people at that time living. The truth of this accident is also confirmed by Sozomenus Salaminius, in his fifth Book and twentieth Chapter.

This City built by the Daniter, was neerer the joyning together of those two Rivers, which arising from the Springs of Jor and Dan, the two apparent Fountains of Jordan, in a foile exceeding fruitfull and pleasant: for, as it is written, Judges 18. it is a place in which doth want nothing that is in the world. In the fields belonging to this City it was which S. Peter acknowledged Christ to be the Son of God: whereupon it was answered, *Tu es Petrus, & super hanc Petram, &c.* After this City received the Christian faith, it was honoured with a Bishops seat: and it ran the same fortune with the rest, for it was after taken and re-taken by the Saracens, and Christians: under Fulch the fourth King of Hierusalem, and after the death of Godfrey of Bullion, the King of Damascus wrested it from the Christians: and shortly after by them again it was recovered. Lastly, now it remaineth with all that part of the World subjected to the Turk.

## ||. IV.

Of Capernaum, and the Cities of Decapolis.

Among the remarkable Cities within this Tribe, Capernaum is not the least: so often remembered by the Evangelists. This City had the honour of Christs presence three years: who for that time was a Citizen thereof, in which he first preached and taught the doctrine of our salvation: according to that notable Prophecy of Esay 9. *The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the Land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.*

Capernaum was seated on Jordan, even where it entrench into the Sea of Galilee, in an excellent and rich foile: of whose destruction Christ himself prophesied in these words, *And thou Capernaum which art lifted up unto heaven, shalt be brought down to Hell, &c.* which shewed the pride and grearfulness of that City: for it was one of the principall Cities of Decapolis, and the Metropolis of Galilee. And although there were some marks of this Cities magnificence in Saint Hieroms time, as himself confesseth: it being then a reasonable Burge or Town: yet those that have since, and long since seen it, as Brochard, Breidenbeck, and Saliniac affirm, that it then consisted but of six poor Filther-mens houses.

The Region of ten principall Cities, called Decapolitana, or Decapolis, is in this description often mentioned, and in S. Matthew, Mark and Luke also remembered: but I find no agreement between the Cosmographers, what proper limits it had: and so Pliny himself confesseth: for Marins Niger, speaking from others, bounds it on the North by the Mountain Casius in Cafotis: and endeth it to the South at Egypt and Arabia: by which description it embraceth Phenicia, a part of Celosyria, all Palestina, and Judea.

Pliny also makes it large, & for the ten Cities of which it taketh name, he numbrell four of them to be situated towards Arabia: to wit, first these three, Damascus, Opatos, Raphana, then Philadelpha (which was first called Amara, saith Stephanus, or as I guess, Amoma rather, because it was the chief City of the Ammonites, known by the name of Rabbah, before Ptole. Philadelphus gave it this later and new name.) Then Scythopolis, sometime

Matth. 4.  
Mark 7.  
Luke 8.  
Niger. comment.  
Asia 4. f. 503.  
Plin. l. 5. c. 18.  
Opatos a City  
standing in  
the Valley of  
Calistria, wa-  
tered by Chy-  
seros, as Da-  
mafcus is.  
Plin. l. 5.

sometime Nisa, built (as is said) by Bacchus, in memory of his Nurse, who died therein, anciently known by the name of Bethan, for the sixth he fetcheth Gadara (not that Gadara in Celosyria, which was also called Antioch and Seleucia: but it is Gadara in Basan, which Pliny in this place meaneth, seated on an high hill, neer the River of Hieromaix. This River Ortelius takes to be the River Jacob: which boundeth Gad and Manasse over Jordan: but he mistaketh it, for Hieromaix falleth into the Sea of Galilee, between Hippus and Gerafa, whereas Jacob entrench the same Sea between Ephron and Phamul. For the twentieth he nameth Hippus or Hippion, a City so called of a Colony of Horimen there garison'd by Herod, on the East-side of the Galilean Sea, described hereafter in the Tribe of Manasse over Jordan. For the eighth Pella, which is also called Emis, and Berenice, seated in the South border of the Region over Jordan, called Persea. For the ninth Gelafa, which Josephus takes to be Gerafa: and Gerafa is found in Celosyria by Josephus, Hegesippus, and Stephanus: but by Ptolomy (whom I rather follow) in Phenicia. The tenth and last Pliny nameth Canatha, and so doth Suetonius and Stephanus, which Volaterran calls Camala, but Hegesippus rightly Camala, a City in the Region of Basan over Jordan, so called, because those two Hills on which it is seated, have the shape of a Camell. But the collection of these ten Cities, whereof this Region took name, is better gathered out of Brochard, Breidenbeck, and Saliniac, which make them to be these, Celarea Philippi, and Asor, before remembered, Cedar, Nephtalim, Sephet, Corazin, Capbarnum, Bethsaida, Jotapata, Tiberias, and Scythopolis, or Bethan. For all other Authors disagree herein, and give no reason for their opinion. One place of the Evangelist S. Matthew makes it manifest, that this Region called Decapolitana, was all that Tract between Zidon, and the Sea of Galilee. For thus it is written: *And he departed again from the coasts of Tyrus and Zidon, and came unto the Sea of Galilee, through the midst of the coasts of Decapolis:* so that it was bounded by Damascus and Libanus on the North: by the Phenician Sea, between Zidon and Ptolomais on the West: by the Hills of Gelbo and Bethan on the South: and by the Mountains Tracones, otherwise Hermon, Sanir, and Galaad, on the East: which is from East to West the whole breadth of the Holy Land: and from the North to the South, neer the same distance, which may be each way forty English miles.

## ||. V.

Of Hamath.

But to look back again towards Libanus, there is seated, neer the foot thereof the City of Hammath or Chammath, of which (as they say) the Country adjoining taketh name: the same which Josephus calleth Amathitis, and Amathensis: <sup>a</sup> Jacobus Zeigler, <sup>b</sup> Hurean. *Iurea Regio tenet borealia tribus Nephtali, per montem Libanum usque Trachones. The Country of Iurea, saith he, containeth the North parts of the Tribe of Nephtali, along the Mount Libanus to Trachones.* But herein following Strabo, who calls Trachonitis: <sup>c</sup> Iurea, he mistakes the seat of this Region: and so doth Metastor. For indeed were Iurea (which Hegesippus calleth Persea, and G. Tyrinus Baccar) the same with Trachonitis, yet Trachonitis lieth between Celarea Philippi, and the Mountains Trachones: which the Hebrews call Gilead: and this Hammath or Chammath is seated under Celarea, towards the Sea Westward. And it seemeth that this mistaking grew by confounding Emath or Hamath the great in Celosyria, beyond the Mountains Trachones, which Hierom upon Amos calls Antiochia, with Hammath or Hamath the lesser in Phenicia, and Nephtalim, which he calleth Epiphania: <sup>d</sup> macth the for this Hammath, or in our Translation Hamath, (and not that which is commonly called Emath, which 2 Chron. 8. 3. is set far from the North border of Canaan in Syria Soba) is remembered in Numbers 34. ver. 8. and Numbers 13. 22. and in Ezek. 47. 16. In the first of which places it bordereth the Land of promise, these being the words: *From Mount Hor you shall point (that is, direct or draw a line) until it come to Hamath: In*

\* Pliny hath  
Hippion Dim,  
for which Vo-  
laterran reads  
Hippion. Or-  
telius takes  
them for two  
Cities.

\* The Squa-  
gire write it  
Amath, Hie-  
rem, Emath,  
Zeigler in Nepht.

b So Hierime  
in his Com-  
ment on A-  
mos 6. 2. where  
there is men-  
tion of Ha-  
math, as it is  
great, as it  
seems for dis-  
tinction from the other in Nephtalim, though Mat. Bera's dicit,  
rejecting Hierome, rather follows the opinion of Zeigler above  
mentioned, as indeed it cannot easily be justified that either one  
or other of these is either Antiochia or Epiphania, howbeit that  
the same City which in Jol. 19. 25. is called Chammath, and placed  
in Nephtalim, was also called Hamath (whence the word Hi-  
math and Emath, were framed) may be gathered, partly because  
the other Hamath, a City 8. 3. for distinction is called Cham-  
math, as this (as it may seem by Jol. 21. 32.) was Chammath-Dur,



Alfrub. Hieron  
Jud. 4. Lyr. in  
Jud. 4.  
Jof. 19. 37.  
1 Reg. 15. 20.  
2 Reg. 15. 29.

Mat. 5. 53.  
Luk. 5. 1.

\* This place of  
the Mar. chab.  
warrants no  
Gal. 4. 07. Gil.  
gal. 4. 07. Gil.  
gal. 4. 07. Gil.  
but may well  
be understood  
of Gilgal in  
Benjamin, or in  
Manasse.  
k This Recatth  
or Recatth, Ja-  
nus thinks  
that it is the  
same with  
Karban (one  
of these being  
made of the  
other by tran-  
sposition of  
letters) of which Karban we have noted already; that it is also called Kiria-thajim. I In the place, 1 Reg. 4. it is, which also they bring  
to prove that there was a City called Nephthim, as it is evident by the following Verses: the Tribe of Nephthim is meant, and not any Ci-  
tie of that name.

of which Karban we have noted already; that it is also called Kiria-thajim. I In the place, 1 Reg. 4. it is, which also they bring  
to prove that there was a City called Nephthim, as it is evident by the following Verses: the Tribe of Nephthim is meant, and not any Ci-  
tie of that name.

## §. V.

## THE TRIBE OF ZABULON.

OF Zabulon, or Zebulon, another of the sons of Jacob by Lea, there were mustered at Mount Simai, 57,400. able men, besides women, children, and aged unable persons: all which dying in the Defarts, there centred the Holy Land of their issues 65,000. fit to bear arms: who inhabited that part of Canaan, from Asher to the River Chifon Southward, and from the Sea of Galilee to the Mediterranean, East and West.

The Cities within this Tribe which border Asher, are *Sicaminum* on the Sea shore; of which *Joseph. Ant. 13. c. 19. Debbafet*, of which *Jos. 19. 11. Jekowam*, or *Jokewham* (whole King was slain by *Josua*); and the City was given to the *Levites*: and *Gaba*, after called the City of Horieimen, of a Regiment there garrison'd by *Herod*. Then the City which beareth the name of *Zabulon*, or the City of men, exceeding ancient and magnificent, (b) burnt to the ground by *Chusim*, Lieutenant of the Roman Army. *Adrichomius* makes it the birth-City of *(c) Elon* Judge of *Israel*, because he is called *Zabulonita*: not marking that in the same place, he is said to be buried at *Ajalon*.

To the East of this City of *Zabulon* is *Cateh*, of which *Jos. 19. 15* on the border of *Asphar* and beyond it the lesser *(d) Cana* of Galilee, where *Christ* converted water into wine: the native City of *Nathaniel*, and, as it is thought, of *Simon Zelotes*. Beyond it begin the Mountains of *Zabulon*: and then the City of *Cethron* (in *Zeigler*, *Ghilton*) which defended it self against *Zabulon*. Then *Benjabe*, which standeth in the partition of the upper and nether Galilee, fortified by *Josephus* against the Romans. Not far from hence standeth *Shimonon* of *Merom*, whose King was slain by *Josua*.

Then *Danna*, or *Dimma*, a City of the *Levites*: then *Noa*, or rather *Neba*, of which *Jos. 19. 13*. Then *Dothan*, or *Dothain*, where *Joseph* found his brethren feeding their flocks the same wherein *Elizaeus*, besieged by the *Syrians*, struck them all blinde.

Beyond it, towards the East, they imagine *(e) Anwar*, or *Anathar*: then *Remmon* of the *Levites*. The last of the Cities on the North border of *Zabulon* is *Bethsaida*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, situate on the *Galilean* Sea, and watered by the springs of *Capharnaum*, the native City of the Apostles, *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*. Herein *Christ* did many miracles, but these people being no less incredulous than the *Capharnaimites*, and others,

thers, received the same Curse of threatened miseries, as, *Woe be unto thee Bethsaida, &c.*

Alongst the West border of *Galilee*, towards the South from *Bethsaida*, was the strong Castle of *Magdala*, the habitation of *Mary Magdalen*, not long since standing.

And beyond it the strong and high seated City of *Jotapata*, fortified by *Josephus* in the Roman War: but in the end, after a long siege, surprised by *Vespasian*, who slaughtered many thousand of the Citizens, and held 1200. prisoners, whereof *Josephus* the Historian was one.

The last and greatest of the Cities on that \* Sea, and the Lake of *Genesareth* within \* The name of the chief Cities feated on this sea, or lake, thorough which Jordan runneth, were *Genesareth*, *Tiberias*, *Beitfida*, *Galata*, *Tarichea*, and they added *Cinnereth*, which in former times gave name to the Lake and Country. *Matth. 5. 20. Luk. 5. 1. Jof. Ant. 12. 3. Jof. Ant. 10. 15. Antich. Zab. Jof. Ant. 12. 3. Jof. Ant. 10. 15. Jof. Ant. 12. 3. Jof. Ant. 10. 15.*

Near unto this *Tiberias*, at *Emas*, there were hot baths, where *Vespasian* the Emperor encamped against *Tiberias*. More into the Land towards the South-west, is *Bethulha*, seated on a very high hill, and of great strength, famous by the story of *Holofernes* and *Judith*, such as it is. Near which standeth *Bethleem* of *Zabulon*: and adjoining unto it *Capharath*, fortified by *Josephus* against the Romans: and *Japha*, an exceeding strong place, afterward forced by *Titus*: who in the entrance, and afterward in fury slew 15000. of the Citizens; and carried away above two thousand prisoners.

On the South side are the Cities of *Cariba* of the *Levites*, and *Gabara*, of which *Josephus* in his own life, then *Jafse*, according to *Adrichomius* (of which *Jos. 19. 12*). *Jof. Ant. 12. 3. Jof. Ant. 10. 15. Jof. Ant. 12. 3. Jof. Ant. 10. 15. Jof. Ant. 12. 3. Jof. Ant. 10. 15.*

To the South-west of this *Sephoris*, or *Diocæsarea*, was that blessed place of *Nazareth*, the city of *Mary* the Mother of *Christ*; in which he himself was conceived: it standeth between Mount *Tabor*, and the *Mediterran* Sea. In this city he abode chiefly four and twenty years, and was therefore called a *Nazarene*, as the *Christians* afterward were for many years. It was erected into an *Archbishoprick* in the following age. Near unto it are the cities *Euria* (afterward well defended against the *Turks*) and *Nabalal*, of which *Jos. 19. 15*, and *Judg. 1. 30*, where it is called *Nabalal*: and *Jos. 21. 35*, where it is a city of the *Levites*: near the Sea, adjoining to the River of *Chifonis* *Sarid*, noted in *Josua* for the uttermost of *Zabulon*.

In this Territory of *Zabulon* there are divers small Mountains: but *Tabor* is the most renowned, by the apparition of *Moses* and *Elias*: and by the Transfiguration of *Christ* in the presence of *Peter*, *James*, and *John*: unto whom *Moses* and *Elias* appeared; in memory whereof, on the top of the Mountain, the Empress *Helen* built a sumptuous Chappell.

In the chief River of *Zabulon* is *Chifon*, which rising out of *Tabor*, runneth with one stream

stream Eastward to the Sea of Galilee, and with another stream Westward into the great Sea. This River of *Chifon* where it riseth, and so far as it runneth Southward, is called *Chedumim*, or *Cadumim*: and for mine own opinion, I take it to be the same which *Ptolomie* calleth *Chorfeus*: though others distinguish them, and set *Chorfeus* by *Cesaria Palestina*. There is a second Torrent or Brook that riseth in the Hills of *Bethulia*, and falleth into the Sea of Galilee by *Magdalum*: and the third is a branch of a river rising out of the Fountains of *Capharnaum*, which falleth also into the same Sea, and neer *Magdalum*; which Torrent they call *Dotham*, from the name of the city, from which it passeth Eastward to *Bethsaida*, and so joyning with *Jordanis parvus*, which runneth from the Valley of *Jephthael*, which *Jesua* reckoneth in the bounds of *Zabulon*: it endeth in to the Sea of Galilee.

## §. VI.

## THE TRIBE OF ISSACHAR.

The next adjoining Territory to *Zabulon*, to the South and Southwest, was *Issachar*, who inhabited a part of the nether *Galilee*, within *Jordan*: of whom there were increased in *Egypt*, as appeared by their musters at mount *Sinai*, 54400. able and warlike men, who leaving their bodies with the rest in the Desarts, there entered the *Holy Land*, 64300.

The first city of this Tribe neer the Sea of Galilee, was *Tarichea*, distant from *Tiberin* eight English miles, or somewhat more; a city wherein the *Jews* (by the practice of a certain mutinous upstart, *John* the son of *Levi*) took arms against *Josephus* the Historian, then Governour of both *Galilees*. This city was first taken by *Cassius*, and 3000 *Jews* carried thence captive; and afterward with great difficulty by *Vespasian*, who entered it by the Sea side, having first beaten the *Jews* in a Sea-fight upon the Lake or Sea of Galilee: he put to the sword all sorts of people, and of all ages; saving that his fury being quenched with the Rivers of blood running through every street, he referred the remainder for slaves and bond-men.

Next to *Tarichea* is placed *Celsson*, or *Cisbion*, of the *Levites*, and then *Issachar*, remembered in the first of *Kings*, c. 4. v. 17, then *Aber*, or *Ebet*, *Jos.* 19. 20. and *Remeth*, of which *Jos.* 19. 21. otherwise *Ramoth*, 1 *Chron.* 6. 37. or *Jarmuth*, *Jos.* 21. 29. this also was a city of the *Levites*, from whose Territory the Mountains of *Gilboe* take beginning; and range themselves to the *Mediterran* sea, and towards the West as far as the City of *Jezreel*, between which and *Ramoth*, are the cities of *Bethpbeset*, or *Bethpaffes*, according to *Zeigler*; and *Enadda*, or *Hen-chadda*, neer which *Saul* slew himself: under those, *Apbec*, or *Apheca*, which *Adrichomius* placeth in *Issachar*: between which and *Suna*, he saith, that the *Philistims* incamped against *Israel*, and afterward against *Saul*: a Land thirsty of blood, for herein also, saith he, the *Syrians* with two and thirty *Reguli* assisting *Benhadad*, 40 encountered *Achab*, and were overthrown and slaughtered: to whom the King of *Israel* made a most memorable answer, when *Benhadad* vaunted before the victory: which was, *Tell Benhadad, Let not him that girdeth his harness, boast himself as he that putteth it off*; meaning, that glory followed after victory, but ought not to precede it. In the year following, in the fields, as they say, adjoining to this city, was the same vain-glorious *Syrian* utterly broken and discomfited by *Achab*: and 100000. footmen of the *Aramites*, or *Syrians*, slain: before which overthrow the servants and counsellors of *Benhadad* (in derision of the God of *Israel*) told him, *That the Gods of Israel were Gods of the Mountain: and therefore if they fought with them in the Plains, they should overcome them*.

Under *Apbec*, towards the Sea, they set the city of *Esdrelon*, in the Plains of *Galilee*; 50 called also the great field of *Esdrelon*, and *Maggedo*: in the border whereof are the ruins of *Apbec* to be seen, saith *Brochard*, and *Breidenbach*. After these are the cities of *Casaloth*, of which, 1 *Mac.* 9. 2. *Anem*, or *Hen-Gannim*, of the *Levites*, and *Secsim*, or *Shabassima*, the West border of *Issachar*, of which *Jos.* 19. 22. From hence ranging the Sea coast, there is found the Castle of *Pilgrims*: a strong Castle, invironed with the Sea, sometime the storehouse and Magazine of the *Christians*, and built by the Earl of Saint *Giles*, or *Toluse*.

From the Castle of *Pilgrims*, the Sea maketh a great Bay towards the North, and the farthermost

farthermost those beginneth Mount *Carmel*, not far from the River *Chifon*, where *Elijah* assembled all the Prophets and Priests of *Baal*, and prayed King *Achab* and the people assembled, to make trial whether the God of *Israel*, or the Idoll of *Baal* were to be worshipped, by laying a sacrifice without fire on the Altar: which done, the Priests of *Baal* prayed, and cut their own flesh after their manner, but the fire kindled not, while *Elijah* in derision told them that their God was either in pursuit of his enemies, not at leisure, or perchance asleep, &c. but at the prayer of *Elijah* the fire kindled, notwithstanding that he had caused the people to cast many vessels of water thereon: by which miracle the people incensed, slew all those Idolaters on the banks of *Chifon* adjoining.

At the foot of this Mountain to the North, standeth *Caiphas*, built, as they say, by *Caiphas* the high Priest. It is also known by the name of *Porcina*, and *Porphyria*, sometime a *Suffragane* Bishops seat. Returning again from the Sea-coast towards *Tiberias*, by the banks of *Chifon*, there are found the city of *Hapharaim*, or *Abraham*, and the Castles of *Mezra* and *Saba*: of which *Brochard* and *Breidenbach*: and then *Naim* on the River *Chifon*: a beautiful city while it stood, in the Gates, whereof *Christ* raised from death the widows onely son.

Then *Seon* or *Shion*, named *Jos.* 19. between the two Hills of *Hermion*, in *Issachar*: beyond it standeth *Endor*, famous by reason of the Inchantresse that undertook to raise up the body of *Samuel* at the instigation of *Saul*.

Beyond it stands *Anabarith* and *Rabbith*, named *Jos.* 19. v. 19, 20. Then *Dabarath*, as it is named, *Jos.* 21. 28. or *Dobratha*, as it is named, 1 *Chron.* 6. 71. This city (which stretcheth it self over *Chifon*) was a city of refuge belonging to the *Levites*.

Next to *Dabarath* is *Arbela* situate, neer the Caves of those two Theeves which so greatly molested *Galilee* in *Herods* time. It joyneth on one side to the Mountain of *Issachar*, or *Hermion*, and on the other to the Valley of *Jezreel*: which Valley continueth it self from *Bethsan*, or *Scythopolis*, the East border of *Issachar*, even to the *Mediterran* Sea: for *Harabath*, two parts whereof are inclosed by the Mountains of *Gilboe* on the South, and by *Hermion* and the River *Chifon* on the North. In these Plains *Gideon* overthrew the *Madianites*, and herein, they think, *Saul* fought against the *Philistims*, *Achab* against the *Syrians*, and the *Tartars* against the *Saracens*.

## §. VII.

## THE HALF OF THE TRIBE OF MANASSE.

## ||. I.

Of the bounds of this half Tribe: and of *Scythopolis*, *Salem*, *Thersa*, and others.

The next Tribe which joyneth it self to *Issachar* towards the South, is the half of *Manasse*, on the West side of *Jordan*. *Manasse* was the first begotten of *Joseph*, the eleventh son of *Jacob*. His mother was an *Egyptian*, the daughter of *Pniphar*, Priest and Prince of *Helipolis*: which *Manasse*, with his brother *Ephraim*, the grand-children of *Jacob*, were by adoption numbred amongst the sons of *Jacob*, and made up the number of the twelve *Patriarchs*.

Of *Manasse* there were increased in *Egypt*, as they were numbred at Mount *Sinai*, 32200. able men: all which being confumed in the Desarts, there entered of their issues, 52700. bearing arms. The Territory which fell on this one half of *Manasse*, was bounded by *Jordan* on the East, and *Dora* upon the *Mediterran* Sea on the West, *Jezreel* on the North, and *Machmata* is the South border.

The first and principal City which stood in this Territory was *Bethsan*, sometime *Nysa*, saith *Pliny*, built by *Liber Pater*, in honour of his Nurse there buried, of the same name, which *Solinus* confirms. Afterward when the *Scythians* invaded *Asa* the leffe, and pierc'd into the South, to the uttermost of *Calasyria*, they built this City a-new, and very magnificent: and it had thereupon the name of *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*, given by the *Greeks*.

These barbarous Northren people constrained the *Jews* to fight against their own Nation

See Laylens  
Map in Ori-  
ent. Jos. 19. 14.

Tarichea in  
Sutton.

Jos. 21. 28. Ki-  
shion, which  
1 Chr. 6. 71. is  
called Kedsch.

Josua 19.  
1 Sam. 4. 1.  
1 Sam. 3. 19.  
1 Kings 20. 26.  
In the later  
two places  
Junius makes  
Aphec in Affe-  
according to  
Jof. 19. 20. in  
the first he  
placeth it in  
Jude, out of  
Jof. 15. 53.  
1 Kings 20.

1 Kings 20. 23.

Judith 1. 8. &  
7. 3.  
1 Chron. 6. 73.  
Jof. 21. 29.

Lake 7.

\* Called Cam-  
pus Magnus  
1 Mac. 12. 49.  
and Harabath  
for Harabath.  
1 Mac. 5. 23.  
Jof. 9. 2.  
Judg. 6.  
1 Sam. 31.  
1 Kings 20.

Plin. l. 5. c. 12.



Nation and kindred, by whose hands when they had obtained victory, they themselves set on the Jews which served them, and slew them all. *Stephanus* makes it the utmost towards the South of *Celestria*: and *Strabo* joynes it to *Galilee*. It is seated between *Jordan* and the Hills of *Gilboe*, in *adlone* ad *montes acrabatena*, saith *Zeigler*. But I finde it in the East part of the Valley of *Israell* near *Jordan*: after that *Jordan* strengtheneth it self again into a River, leaving the Sea, or Lake *Genezareth*. Notwithstanding *Montanus* describes it far to the West, and towards the *Mediterran* Sea, near *Endor*, contrary to *Stella*, *Laichan*, *Adrichome*, and all other the best Authors. This City was the greatest of all those of *Decapolis*: but the children of *Manasse* could not expell the Inhabitants thereof: and therefore called it *Sane*, an enemy, or *Beth-san*, the house of an enemy.

*Judg. 1. f. 17.*  
*de Bell. sac.*

Over the walls of this *Beth-san* the *Philistims* hung the body of *Saul*, and his sons slain at *Gilboe*. It had, while the Christian religion flourished in those parts, an Archbishop, who had nine other Bishops of his Diocese, numbred by *Tyrius*, in his 14. Book and 12. Chapter: but the fame was afterward translatid to *Nazareth*. The later travellers in those parts affirme, that there is daily taken out among the rubble and the ruines of that City, goodly pillars and other pieces of excellent Marble, which witness the stately buildings, and magnificence which it had in elder times, but it is now a poor and desolate Village.

*Hierom. in*  
*Epist. ad Evagr.*  
*Erin. Lat. Hebr.*

From *Beth-san* keeping the way by *Jordan*, they finde an ancient City called *Salem*, which City the ancient Rabbines, saith *Hierome*, do not finde to be the same with *Hierusalem*: there being in the time of *Hierome* and since, a town of that name, near *Scythopolis* before remembred, which if the place of Scripture, *Gen. 13. 18.* doe not confirme, where the Vulgar readeth *transivens in Salem ubi erem Sichemorum* (for which others read *venit incolunt ad Civitatem Sichemum*, making the word *Shalem* not to be a proper name, but an adjective) yet the place *John. 3. 13.* where it is said, that *John* was baptizing in *Enon* near *Salem*, may somewhat strengthen this opinion, and yet it is not unlikely that this *Salem* of which *S. John* speaketh, is but contracted of *Shabalm*, of which in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, *1 Sam. 9. 4.* This word *Junius* maketh to be the plural of *Shahal*: of which we read, *1 Sam. 13. 17.* for as for that which is added out of *Canticus* 6. 12. of *Shulammitis*, as if it had been as much as a Woman of this *Salem* near *Enon*, it is so hard no probability.

This City Be-  
zek, by the  
place, *Jud. 1. 3.*  
seemeth to  
have been in  
*Juda*.  
*Jos. ant. 6. c. 11.*  
*1 Sam. c. 15.*

Not far from thence where they place *Salem*, they finde *Bezech* the City of *Adonibezec*; *Josephus* calls it *Bala*: here it was that *Saul* assembled the strength of *Israel* and *Juda*, to the number of 330000. when he meant to relieve *Jabesh Gilead*, against *Naath the Ammonite*: who would give them no other conditions of peace, than to suffer their right eyes to be thrust out. Near *Bezech* is the City of *Bethbera*, or rather *Beith-bara*, of which *Judg. 7. 24.* in the story of *Gideon*: and then *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, wherein *Gideon* inhabited: in the border whereof stood an Altar consecrated to *Baal*, which he pulled down and defaced; and near it that stone, on which *Abimelech* the Bastard slew his 70. brothers; a Heathenish cruelty, practised by the *Turk* to this day: and not far hence, 40 between the Village of *Asophon* and *Jordan*, *Ptolomæus* *Lathurus* overthrew *Alexander* King of the Jews, and slaughtered, as *Josephus* numbereth them, 3000. but according to *Timagenes* 50000. after which victory, as *Ptolomæus* pass by the Villages of the Jews, he slew all their women, and caused the young children to be sod in great Caldrons, that the rest of the Jews might thereby thinke that the Egyptians were grown to be men-eaters and strike them with the greater terror.

\* This *Aner*  
*Junius* upon  
*1 Chron. 6. 70.*  
makes to be  
the same with  
*Tahanae*, of  
which *Jos. ant.*  
*25. Hierome*  
names it from  
*Aner* the Con-  
federate of *A-*  
*brahim. Gen.*  
*14. 13. Josua*  
*12. 17.*  
*1 Kings 14*

Towards the West and on the border of *Isachar*, they place the Cities of \* *Aner* of the *Levites*, and *Abel-Mehola*, which *Junius*, *Judg. 7. 22.* placeth in *Ephraim*: it was the habitation of *Helisem* the Prophet, numbred among those places, *1 Reg. 4. 12.* which were given in charge to *Baana* by *Solomon*, to whose charge also *Tahanae* belonged, a place of great strength, which at the first resisted *Josua*, though their King was afterward hanged, and their City given to the *Levites*.

In the body of this Territory of *Manasse*, but somewhat neerer *Jordan* than to the *Mediterran* Sea, were three great Cities, to wit, *Thersa*, whose King was one of those that *Josua* slew: which the Kings of *Israel* used for their Regall seat, till such time as *Samaria* was built. From hence the wife of *Jeroboam* went to *Achia* to enquire of her sons health: who knowing her, though she were disguised, told her of her sons death.

The second was *Thebes* near *Samaria*, of which name there are both in *Egypt*, and *Greece*,

*Greece*, of great fame in the assault of the Tower of this Town, whereinto the Citizens retired, the Bastard *Abimelec* was wounded by a weighty stone, thrown by a woman over the wall, who despairing of his recovery, commanded his Page to slay him outright, because it should not be said that he perished by the stroke of a woman. But *O. Judg. 9. 3. 54.* thers let this Citie in *Ephraim* near *Sichem*, or *Neapolis*.

The third is *Acrobata*, of which the Territory adjoining is called *Acrobatena*, (one of the ten *Toparchies*, or governments in *Judea*) for which *Hierome*, *1 Macc. 5.* reads *Arabathena*: but in the Greek it is *Acrobatine*: *Isidore* calls it *Agarab*. This City had one of the largest Territories of all *Palestine* belonging to the Governour thereof. *Josephus* remembreth it often, as in his second book of the Jews wars, *c. 11. 25. 28.* and elsewhere.

*Hier. Mac. 1.*  
*c. 5.*

The difference between a *Tetrarchy* and a *Toparchy*, was, that the first was taken for a Province, and the other for a City with some lesser Territory adjoining; and a *Tetrarch* is the same with *Præses* in Latine, and *President* in English, being commonly the fourth part of a Kingdom: and thereof so called. *Pliny* nameth seventeen *Tetrarchies* in *Syria*: the Holy Land had four, and so hath the Kingdome of *Ireland* to this day, *Leinster*, *Ulster*, *Connath*, and *Munster*. *Euseb. in Chro.*

To the South-west of *Acrobata* they place the Cities of *Balaam*, or *Bilham*, and *Gethremmon* of the *Levites*: but *Junius* out of *Jos. 21. 25.* and *1 Chron. 6. 70.* gathers that these two are but one; and that *Jibleham*, *Jos. 16. 11.* is another name of the same City.

Then is *Jezebel* a Regall City, set at the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboe*, towards the South-west: herein *Jezebel*, by a false accusation, caused *Naboth* to be stoned, to the end he might possesse his Vineyard adjoining to the City, which *Naboth* refused to sell, because it was his inheritance from his father.

*Joram* also was cast unburiid into the same field: for which his mother *Jezebel* murdered *Naboth*. *2 Kings 2.*

Toward the Sea from *Jezebel* is the City which they call *Gaber*: in whose ascent as *Abasab* King of *Juda* fled from *Jehu*, when he had slain *Joram*, he was wounded with the shot of an arrow, of which wound he died at *Mageddo* adjoining. The Scripture calls this City of *Gaber*, *Gur*. *2 Kings 9. 27.*

Then *Adadremmon*, near unto which the good King *Josias* was slain by *Necho* King of *Egypt*, in a war unadvisedly undertaken. For *Necho* marched towards *Assyria* against the King thereof, by the commandment of God; whom *Josias* thought to resist in his passage. It was afterward called *Maximianopolis*.

A neighbour City to *Adadremmon* was *Mageddo*, often remembred in the Scriptures, whose King was slain among the rest by *Josua*: yet they defended their City for a long time against *Manasse*. The River which passeth by the Town, may perhaps be the same which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chorfeus*: and not that of which we have spoken in *Zabulon*. For because this name is not found in the Scriptures, many of those that have described the Holy Land, delineate no such River. *Moore* onely sets it down in his *Geography* of the twelve Tribes: but the River which passeth by *Mageddo*, he understandeth to be but a branch, falling thereinto. *Laichan* and *Schrois* make a great confluence of waters in this place, agreeable to this Scripture in the fifth of *Judges*: *Then fought the Kings of Canaan in Tanaac by the waters of Mageddo*. But these Authors, and with them *Stella*, give it no other name than the *Torrent* so called.

*Judg. 1. 5.*  
*Jos. 12. 17.*

But seeing that ancient *Cosmographers* stretch out the bounds of *Phœnicia*, even to *Sebaste*, or *Samaria*; and *Strabo* far beyond it on the Sea-coast: And *Josephus* calls *Cæsaria Palestina*, a City of *Phœnicia*: yea, *Laurentius Corvinus* extendeth *Phœnicia* as far as *Geza*: seeing also *Ptolomy* sets down *Chorfeus* for the partition of *Phœnicia* and *Judea*, this river running East and West parallel with *Samaria*: it is very probable that this *Torrent* called *Mageddo*, after the name of the City which it watereth, is the same which *Ptolomy* in his fourth Table of *Asia*, calleth *Chorfeus*. The later travellers of the Holy Land call *Mageddo* *Subimbre* at this day.

*Strab. l. 1. 6.*  
*Jos. 1. 15.*  
*c. 13. Niger.*

## II.

Of *Cæsaria Palestina*, and some other Towns.

From *Mageddo* toward the West, and neer the *Mediterran Sea*, was that glorious City of *Cæsaria Palestina*: first, the Tower of *Straton*: the same which *Pliny* calls *G g* *Apollonia*:

*Apollonia* : though *Ptolomy* sets *Apollonia* elsewhere, and toward *Egypt*, between this City and *Joppe*, to which *Vespasian* gave the name of *Flavia Colonia*. It was by *Herod* re-built, who therein laboured to exceed all the works in that part of the world. For besides the edifices, which he reared within the Walls, of cut and polish'd marbles, the *Theater* and *Amphitheater*, from whence he might look over the Seas far away, with the high and stately Towers and Gates : he forced a Harborow of great capacity, being in former times but an open Bay : and the winde blowing from the Sea, the Merchants haunting that Port, had no other hope, but in the strength of their Cables and Anchors. This work he performed with such charge and labour, as the like of that hath not been found in any Kingdom, nor in any age : which, because the Materials were fetcht from 10 far, and the weight of the stones was such, as it exceedeth belief, I have added *Josephus* own words of this work, which are these : *Hanc locorum in commoditatem correcturus, circum portus circumduxit, quantum putaret magna classi recipiendæ sufficere : & in viginti ulnarum profundum, peregandiam saxa demisit : quorum pleraque pedum quinquaginta longitudinis, latitudinis vero octodecim, altitudine novem-pedali : fuerunt quedam etiam majora, minora alia* : To mend this inconvenience of place (saith *Josephus*) he compass't in a Bay where, in a great Fleet might well ride : and let down great stones twenty fadome deep : whereof some were fifty foot long, eighteen foot broad, and nine foot thick : and some bigger, some lesser. To this he added an arm or caswie of two hundred foot long, to break the waves : theret he strengthened with a stone wall, with divers stately Towers thereon builded : of which the most magnificent he called *Drusus*, after the name of *Drusus* the son-in-law of *Cæsar* : in whose honour he intituled the City it self, *Cæsaria of Palestine* : all which he performed in twelve years time. It was the first of the Eastern Cities that received a Bishop : afterward erected into an Archbishoprick, commanding twenty others under it, saith *Tyrrus*.

*Joseph. l. 15. c. 13.*

*Lib. 4. c. 12. 13. fact.*

*S. Hierome* nameth *Theophilus*, *Ensebius*, *Acacius*, *Euzorius*, and *Galasius* to have been Bishops thereof. In this City was *Cornelius* the *Centurion* baptised by Saint *Peter* : and herein dwelt *Philip* the Apostle. *S. Paul* was herein two years prisoner, under the President *Felix*, unto the time and government of *Porcius Festus* : by whom making his appeal, he was sent to *Cæsar*. Here, when *Herod Agrippa* was passing on to celebrate the 20 *Quinquennalia*, taking delight to be called a god by his flatterers, he was stricken with an Angel unto death, saith *Josephus*.

To the North of *Cæsaria* standeth *Dora*, or *Naphoth Dor*, as some reade, *Jos. 1. 2.* so called (saith *Adrichomius*) because it joyneth to the Sea, whose King was slain by *Joshua*. But *Junius*, for in *Naphoth Dor*, reades in *traditibus Dor* : and so the Vulgar, in *regionibus Dor*, although 1 *Reg. 4. 11.* for the like speech in the Hebrew it readeth *omnis Nephth Dor* : The Septuagint in the place of *Joshua* call it *Nephth-Dor*, and in the other of the Kings, *Nepha-Dor* : but the true name by other places (as *Jos. 12. 23.* *Judg. 1. 27.*) may seem to be *Dor*. It was a strong and powerful City, and the fourth in account of those twelve Principalities, or *Sitararchis*, which *Solomon* erected. *Junius* upon *Amacchab. 15. 11.* placeth this between the Hill *Carmel*, and the mouth of the river *Chersens* : for so some name the river *Chorsens*, of which we have spoken already.

*Mac. 1. 13. 15.*

Into this City, for the strength thereof, *Tryphon* fled from *Antiochus* the son of *Demetrius*, where he was by the same *Antiochus* besieged with 12000. foot-men, and 8000. horse : the same perfidious villain that received 200. talents for the ransom of *Jonathan Macchabæus* (whom he had taken by treachery) and then slew him : and after him slew his own Master, usurping for a while the Kingdom of *Syria*. It had also a Bishops seat of the Diocese of *Cæsaria*.

*Gul. Tyr. de bell. fact. l. 10. c. 6.*

From *Cæsaria* towards the South, they place the Cities of *Capharnam*, *Gabe*, and *Galgal* : for besides that *Capharnam* famous in the *Evangelists*, they finde in these parts neer to the West Sea, another of the same name. Of *Gabe*, *Hierome* in *locis Hebraicis*. The famous *Galgal*, or *Gilgal*, was in *Benjamin* : and this *Gilgal*, they say, it was whose King was slain by *Joshua*.

*Mac. 17. 31.*

Then *Antipatris*, so called of *Herod*, in honour of his Father : but in the time of the *Macchabæes*, it was called *Capharjalama* : in the fields whereof *Judas Macchabæus* overthrew a part of the Army of *Nicanor*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* : an Army drawn into *Judea* by a traiterous Jew, called *Aleimus* : who contended for the Priest-hood, first under *Bacchides*, and then under *Nicanor*. To this was Saint *Paul* carried prisoner from *Hierusalem*,

*Hierusalem*, conducted by 470. souldiers, to defend him from the fury of the Jews. In after-times the Army of *Godfrey of Bulion* attempted it in vain : yet was it taken by *Baldwine*. It was honoured in those dayes with a Bishops seat, but it is now a poor Village, called *Asfur*, saith *Brochard*. Neer unto this City the Prophet *Jonas* was three dayes preserved in the body of a Whale.

Into the Land, from *Antipatris* and *Cæsaria*, standeth *Narbata*, whereof the Territorie taketh name : which *Cæsius* the *Romane* waisted with fire and sword, because the Jews which dwelt at *Cæsaria* fled thence, and carried with them the Books of *Moses*. Neer unto it is the Mountain of *Abdia*, the Steward of King *Achab* : wherein he hid an hundred Prophets, and fed them ; after which he himself is said to have obtained from God the Spirit of Prophecie allo.

## CHAP. VIII.

of the Kingdome of Phœnicia.

### §. I.

The bounds and chief Cities, and Founders, and Name of this Kingdome : and of the invention of Letters ascribed to them.

Because these five Tribes, of *Asser*, *Nephtalim*, *Zabulon*, *Issachar*, and the half of *Manasse*, posselt the better part of that ancient Kingdom of *Phœnicia*, to wit, of so much as lay to the South part of *Anti-libanus* ; I have therefore gathered a brief of those Kings which have governed therein : at least so many of them as time (which devoureth all things) hath left to posterity : and that the rest have perished, it is not strange ; seeing so many Volumes of excellent learning in so long a race and revolution, and in so many changes of Estates and Conquest of 30 Hethen Princes have been torn, cast away, or otherwise consumed.

The limits of this Kingdom, as touching the South parts, are very uncertain : but all *Cosmographers* do in effect agree, that it takes beginning from the North, where that part of *Syria*, which is called *Casotis*, ends : most of them bounding it by *Orthosia*, to the North of *Tripolis*. *Ptolomy* makes it a little larger, as reaching from the River *Eleutherus*, that falls into the Sea at the Island of *Aradus*, somewhat to the North of *Orthosia*, and stretching from thence alongst the coast of the *Mediterranean Sea*, as far as the River of *Chorsens* ; which seems to be that which the Jews call the *Torrent*, or River of *Magaddo*. *Pliny* extends it farther, and comprehends *Joppe* within it : *Corvins* and *Budeus*, *Plin. l. 5. c. 19.* *Joppe* and *Gaza*. *Phœnicia* apud *priscos appellata* (saith *Budeus*) que nunc *Palestina* *Syrie* dicitur : It was called *Phœnicia* of old (saith he) which now is called *Palestina* of *Syria*.

*Strabo* comprehends in this Countrie of *Phœnicia* all the Sea-side of *Judea*, and *Palestina*, even unto *Pelusium*, the first Port of *Egypt*. On the contrary, *Diodorus Siculus* foldeth it up in *Cælosyria*, which he boundeth not. But for my self, I take a middle course, and like best of *Ptolomies* description, who was seldom deceived in his own art. It had in it these famous Maritimate Cities (besides all those of the Islands) to wit, *Aradus*, *Orthosia*, *Tripolis*, *Botrys*, *Byblus*, *Berytus*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Ptolomais* (or *Acon*) *Dora*, and *Cæsaria* *Palestine* : and by reason of the many Ports and goodly Sea-rows, it anciently commanded the Trades of the Eastern world : and they were absolute Kings of the *Mediterranean Sea*.

The ancient Regall Seat of those Princes was *Zidon*, built by *Zidon* the first son of *Canaan* : and the people then subject to that people were called *Zidonians* ; the same state continuing even unto *Joshua*'s time. For till then, it is probable that there was but one King of all that Region ; afterward called *Phœnicia* : which *Procopius* also confirmeth in his second Book of *Vandall wars*. But in proceesse of time the City of *Tyre* adjoining, became the more magnificent : yet, according to the Prophet, it was but a daughter of *Zidon*, and by them first built, and peopled.

But after the death of *Moses*, and while *Joshua* yet governed *Israel*, *Agenor* an Egyptian of *Thebes*, or a *Phœnician* bred in *Egypt*, came thence with his sons *Cadmus*, *Phœnix*, *Gg 2* *Cyrus*,

*Ezra. 23.*

F. 17.

Cyrus, and Cilix, (say Cedrenus and Curtius) and built and possess the Cities of Tyre and Zidon: to wit, the new Tyrus, and brought into Phenicia (so called after the name of his second son) the use of Letters: which also Cadmus in his pursuit after his sister Europa, taught the Grecians. For Taurus King of Crete, when he surprised Tyre, had stolen her thence: of which the Poets devised the fable of Jupiter's transformation into a Bull, by whom that stealth was also supposed to be made. Pomponius Sabinius makes Belus the first King of Phenicia; and findes Cadmus his successour, whom he calleth his grand-child: and it seemeth that Belus was the father of Agenor, and not Neptune: because the successours of Dido held that name always in reverence, making it a part of their own, as Asdrubal, Hannibal: whose memory Virgil also toucheth in these Verses.

*Hic Regina gravem gemmis auroque poposcit,  
Implevitque mero pateram: quam Belus & omnes  
A Belo soliti.*

The Queen anon commands the weighty bowl  
(Weighty with precious stones and massie gold)  
To flow with wine. This Belus us'd of old,  
And all of Belo Line.

Whether this Belus were father or grand-father to Agenor, the matter is not great. But it seems to me by comparing of times, that Belus was Ancestor to these Phenicians, and preceded Agenor. For were Belus, or Jupiter Belus, the son of Neptune by Lybia the daughter of Epaphus, or were he the son of Thelegonus, according to Eusebius; yet it is agreed that Cecrops then ruled in Attica: and in the end of Cecrops time, saith Saint Augustine, Moses left Egypt: Agenors successour living at once with Josua. Now that Agenor returned about the same time into the Territory of Zidon, I cannot doubt: neither do I deny, but that he gave that Region the name of Phenicia, in honour of his son. But in stead of the building of Tyre and Zidon, it is probable that he repaired and fortified both: and therefore was called a Founder, as Semiramis and Nabuchodonosor were of Babylon.

For be it true, that Agenor was of the same Nation, and brought up in Egypt: where he learnt the use of Letters (Egypt flourishing in all kinde of learning in Moses time) or were he by Nation an Egyptian, yet it is very likely that either he came to save his own Territory; or otherwise to defend the coast of Canaan from the Israelites: who were by Moses led out of Egypt, to the great losse and dishonour of that Nation: and by Josua conducted over Jordan, to conquer and possess the Canaanites Land. For though the Egyptians, by reason of the losse which they received by the hand of God in the Red Sea, and by the ten plagues cast on them before that, and by the slaughter of so many of the male children at the same time, could not hinder the Hebrews from invading Canaan by land: which also they knew had so many powerfull Nations to defend it: the Desert inter-jacent, and the strong Edomites, Moabites, Amorites, and Ammonites their borderers: yet Egypt having such Vessels, or Ships, or Gallies, as were then in use, did not in all probability neglect to garrison the Sea-coast, or assist Agenor with such forces as they had to spare; and which they might perform with the greater facility, in that the Philistines, which held the shores of Canaan next adjoining unto them, were their Friends and Confederates.

Etap. 19. 29.

Now, as it appeareth by the course of the Story, those Cities of Phenicia, which Agenor was said to have built (that is, to have fortified and defended against Josua, and against the Tribes after him, as Zidon, Sor, or Tyre, by Josua called the strong Citie Acco, so afterward Ptolemais, Achzib, and Dor) were all that Phenicia had in those dayes.

That the Kings of Phenicia were mighty, especially by Sea, it appears, first by their defence against Israel: secondly, by this, that David and Solomon could not master them, but were glad of their alliance: thirdly, that one of their Cities, though they were then but Reguli, defended it self 13. yeeres against a King of Kings, Nabuchodonosor: and that Alexander the Great (who being made victorious by the providence of God, seemed irresistible) spent more time in the recovery of Tyre, than in the conquest of all the Cities in Asia.

Other

Other opinions there are, as that of Berosus out of Josephus, who conceives that Tyre was founded by Tyrus the son of Japhet. And for the Region it self, though Calisthenes derive it, ab arboribus dactylorum; and the Greeks from the word Phenor, of slaughter, because the Phenicians slew all that came on their coasts; yet for my self, I take it that Phenix the son of Agenor gave it that name. But that either Agenor in Phenicia or Cadmus his son in Greece, were the Inventors of Letters, it is ridiculous: and therefore the dispute unnecessary.

The Ethiopians affirm, that Atlas, Orion, Orpheus, Linus, Hercules, Prometheus, Cadmus, and others, had from them the first light of all those Arts, Sciences, and civill Policies, which they afterward profest, and taught others: and that Pythagoras himself was instructed by the Lybians: to wit, from the South and superiour Egyptians: from whom those which inhabited neerer the out-let of Nilus, as they say, borrowed their Divinitie and Philosophy: and from them the Greeks, then barbarous, received Civillitie. Again, the Phenicians challenge this invention of Letters and of Learning: acknowledging nothing from the Egyptians at all; neither do they allow that Agenor and his sons were Africans; whence Lucan,

*Phoenices primi (sane si creditur) ausi  
Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.*

Lucan. l. 5. 3.

Phenicians first (if fame may credit have)  
In rude Characters dar'd our words to grave.

And that Cadmus was the son of Agenor, and was a Phenician, and not an Egyptian, it appeareth by that answer made by Zeno; when he in a kinde of reproach was called a Stranger, and not a Phenician:

*Si patria est Phoenix, quid tum? nam Cadmus & ipse  
Phoenix; cui debet Græcia docta libros.*

Athen. 1. Disput.

If a Phenician born I am, what then?  
Cadmus was so: to whom Greece owes  
The Books of learned men.

Out of doubt the Phenicians were very ancient: and from the Records and Chronicles of Tyre, Josephus the Historian confirms a great part of his Antiquities. The Thracians again subscribe to none of these reports: but affirm constantly, that the great Zalmoxis flourished among them: when Atlas lived in Mauritania: Nilus and Vulcan in Egypt: and Ochnus in Phenicia. Yea, some of the French do not blush to mainiain, that the ancient Gauls taught the Greeks the use of Letters, and other Sciences. And do not we know that our Bardes and Ervudes are as ancient as those Gauls, and that they sent their sons hither to be by them instructed in all kinde of learning?

Lastly, whereas others bestow this invention on Moses, the same hath no probability at all; for he lived at such time as Learning and Arts flourished most, both in Egypt and Assyria, and he himself was brought up in all the learning of the Egyptians, from his infancy.

But true it is, that Letters were invented by those excellent Spirits of the first age, and before the general Flood: either by Seth or Enos, or by whom else God knows; from whom all wisdom and understanding hath proceeded. And as the same infinite God is present with all his Creatures, so hath he given the same invention to divers Nations: whereof the one hath not had commerce with the other; as well in this as in many other knowledges: for even in Mexico, when it was first discovered, there was found written Books after the manner of those Hieroglyphicks, anciently used by the Egyptians, and other Nations: and so had those Americans a kinde of Heraldries; and their Princes differing in Arms and Scutchions, like unto those used by the Kings and Nobility of other Nations, jura naturalia communia, &c. Natural laws are common, and Justice, general.

## §. II.

of the Kings of Tyre.

**B**UT whatsoever remaineth of the Story and Kings of *Phœnicia* (the books of *Zeno*, *Sachoniatho*, *Atanasius*, and others of that Nation, being no where found) the same is to be gathered out of the Scriptures, *Josephus*, and *Theophilus Antiochenus*.

*Agenor* lived at once with *Joſua*, to whom ſucceeded *Phœnix*, of whom that part of *Canaan*, and ſo far towards the North as *Aradus*, took the name of *Phœnicia*: what King ſucceeded *Phœnix* it doth not appear; but at ſuch time as the *Grecians* beſieged *Troy*, 10 *Phœnix* governed *Phœnicia*.

In *Hieremie* time, and while *Jehojakim* ruled in *Juda*, the *Tyrians* had a King apart: for *Hieremie* ſpeaketh of the Kings of *Zidon*, of *Tyre*, of *Edom*, &c. as of ſeverall Kings.

In *Xerxes* time, and when he prepared that incredible Army wherewith he invaded *Greece*, *Tetramneſtus* ruled that part of *Phœnicia* about *Tyre* and *Zidon*: who commanded, as ſome Writers affirm, *Xerxes* Fleet, or rather, as I ſuppoſe, thoſe 300. Gallies, which himſelf brought to his aid: for at this time it ſeemeth, that the *Phœnicians* were Tributaries to the *Perſian*: for being broken into *Reguli*, and petty Kings in *Hieremies* time, they were ſubjected by *Nabuchodonosor*; of whoſe conqueſts in the Chapter before remembred, *Hieremie* prophesied.

*Tennes*, though not immediately, ſucceeded *Tetramneſtus*, remembred by *D. Siculus* in his 14. Book.

*Strato*, his ſucceſſor, and King of *Zidon*, *Alexander Macedon* threw out, becauſe of his dependancy upon *Darius*, and that his Predeceſſors had ſerved the Eaſt Empire againſt the *Grecians*. But divers Kings, of whom there is no memory, came between *Tennes* and *Strato*. For there were conſumed 130. years and ſomewhat more, between *Xerxes* and *Alexander Macedon*. And this man was by *Alexander* eſteemed the more unworthy of reſtitution, becauſe (ſaith *Curtius*) he rather ſubmitted himſelf by the inſtigati- on of his ſubjects (who foreſaw their utter ruine by reſiſtance) than that he had any diſpoſition thereunto, or bare any good affection towards the *Macedonians*.

Of this *Strato*, *Athenæus* out of *Theopompus* reporteth, that he was a man of ill living, and moſt voluptuous; alſo that he appointed certain games and prizes for women- dancers, and ſingers, whom he to this end chiefly invited, and aſſembled: that having beheld the moſt beautifull and lively among them, he might recover them for his own uſe and delights. Of the ſtrange accident about the death of one *Strato* King of theſe coaſts, *S. Hierome* and others make mention: who having heard that the *Perſians* were neer him with an Army too weighty for his ſtrength, and finding that he was to hope for little grace, becauſe of his falling away from that Empire, and his adhering to the *Egyptians*; he determining to kill himſelf, but fainting in the execution, his wife being preſent, wreſted the ſword out of his hand, and ſlew him: which done, ſhe alſo there- with pierced her own body, and died.

After *Alexander* was poſſeſſor of *Zidon*, and the other *Strato* driven thence, he gave the Kingdom to *Hepheſtion* to diſpoſe of: who having received great entertainment of one of the Citizens, in whoſe houſe he lodged, offered to recompence him therewith; and willingly offered to eſtabliſh him therein: but this Citizen, no leſſe vertuous than rich, deſired *Hepheſtion* that this honour might be conferred on ſome one of the blood and race of their ancient Kings: and preſented unto him *Balonymus*, whom *Curtius* calls *Abdolominus*, *Juſtine*, *Abdolominus*, and *Plutarch*, *Alynomus*: who at the very hour that he was called to this regal Eſtate, was with his own hands working in his garden, ſetting herbs and roots, for his relief and ſuſtenance: though otherwiſe a wiſe man, and ex- ceeding juſt.

Theſe were the ancient Kings of *Zidon*: whoſe eſtate being afterward changed into Popular or *Ariſtocraticall*: and by times and turns ſubjected to the Emperours of the Eaſt, there remaineth no farther memory of them, than that which is formerly delivered in the Tribe of *Aſſur*.

The Kings of *Tyre*, who they were before *Samuels* time, it doth not appear: *Joſephus* the Hiſtorian, as is ſaid, had many things wherewith he garniſhed his Antiquities from the *Tyrian Chronicles*: and out of *Joſephus*, and *Theophilus Antiochenus*, there may be

be gathered a deſcent of ſome twenty Kings of the *Tyrians*; but theſe Authors, though they both pretend to write out of *Menander Epheſius*, do in no fort agree in the times of their reigns, nor in other particulars.

*Abibalus* is the firſt King of the *Tyrians*, that *Joſephus* and *Theophilus* remember, whom *Theophilus* calls *Abemalus*: the ſame perchaunce that the ſon of *Sirach* mentioneth in his 46. fourtie and ſixth Chapter, ſpeaking of the Princes of the *Tyrians*.

To this *Abibalus*, *Swron* ſucceeded, if he be not one and the ſame with *Abibalus*. *David* (ſaith *Eusebius* out of *Eusebius*) conſtrained this *Swron* to pay him Tribute, of whom alſo *David* complaineth, *Pſal.* 83.

*Hiram* ſucceeded *Swron*, whom *Joſephus* calls *Irom*, and *Theophilus* ſometime *Hieroni- mus*, ſometimes *Hieromus*, but *Tatian* and *Zonaras*, *Chiram*. He entred into a league with *David*, and ſent him Cedars, with Maſons and Carpenters, to performe his buildings in *Hieruſalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebuſites*. The ſame was he that ſo greatly aſſiſted *Solomon*: whom he not onely furniſhed with Cedars, and other Materials towards the raiſing of the Temple, and with great ſums of money, but alſo he joyned with him in his enterprize of the Eaſt *India*, and of *Ophir*: and furniſhed *Solomon* with Mariners and Pilots: the *Tyrians* being of all Nations the moſt excellent Navigators: and lent him 120. talents of gold. Of this *Hiram*, there is not onely mention in divers places of Scripture, but in *Joſephus* in his Antiquities the 7. and 8. chap. 2. and 3. in *Theophilus* his 2. third book, in *Tatianus* his Oration againſt the *Greeks*: and in *Zonaras*, Tome the firſt. This Prince ſeemed to be very mighty and magnificient, he deſpised the 20. Towns which *Solomon* offered him: he defended himſelf againſt that victorious King *David*: and gave his daughter in marriage to *Solomon*, called the *Lidonian*: for whole ſake he was contented to worſhip *Aſtaroth*, the Idoll of the *Phœnicians*. *Hiram* lived 53. years.

*Baleaſtarius*, whom *Theoph. Antiochenus* calleth *Bazorus*, ſucceeded *Hiram* King of *Tyre* and *Zidon*, and reigned 7. years, according to *Joſephus*.

*Abdaſtarius* the eldeſt ſon of *Baleaſtarius*, governed 9. years, and lived but 20. years, according to *Joſephus*: but after *Theophilus* he reigned 12. years, and lived 54. years being ſlain by the four ſons of his own Nurſe, the eldeſt of them held the Kingdom 30. 12. years.

*Aſtarius* brother to *Abdaſtarius*, recovered the Kingdom from this Uſurper, and reigned 12. years.

*Aſtarimus*, or *Atharimus*, after *Theophilus*, a third brother, followed *Aſtarius*, and ruled 9. years, and lived in all 54.

*Phelles* the fourth ſon of *Baleaſtarius*, and brother to the three former Kings, ſlew *Aſtarimus*, and reigned 8. moneths, and lived 50. years.

*Ithobalus* (or *Juthobalus*, in *Theophilus*) ſon to the third brother *Aſtarimus*, who was the chief Prieff of the Goddeſſe *Aſarta*, which was a dignity next unto the King, revenged the death of his father, and ſlaughtered his Uncle *Phelles*: and reigned 32. years; the ſame which in the firſt of Kings, chap. 16. is called *Eihbaal*, whoſe daughter *Jezebel*, *Achab* married.

*Badezor*, or *Bazor*, the ſon of *Ithobalus*, or *Eihbaal*, brother to *Jezebel*, ſucceeded his Father, and reigned 6. years, and lived in all 45.

*Metimius* ſucceeded *Badezor*, and reigned but 9. years (ſaith *Joſephus*) he had two ſons, *Pygmalion* and *Barca*, and two daughters, *Elifa* and *Anna*.

*Pygmalion* reigned after *Metimius* his Father 40. years, and lived 56. In the ſeventh year of whoſe reign, *Elifa* failed into *Africa*, and built *Carthage*, 143. years and 8. moneths after the Temple of *Solomon*: which by our account was 289. years after *Troy* was taken, and 143. before *Rome*: and therefore that fiction by *Virgil* of *Æneas* and *Dido* muſt be far out of ſquare. For *Pygmalion*, covetous of *Sichens* riches, who had married his ſiſter *Elifa*, ſlew him traiterouſly as he accompanied him in hunting: or if we beleve *Juſtine* and *Virgil*, at the Altar: whereupon *Elifa* fearing to be diſpoſed of her husbands treaſure, fled by Sea into *Africa*, as aforeſaid: whom when *Pygmalion* pre- pared to purſue, he was by his mothers tears, and by threats from the Oracle arreſted. *Barca* accompanied his ſiſter, and aſſiſted her, in the erection of *Carthage*: and from him ſprang that noble Family of the *Barce* in *Africa*, of which race deſcended many famous Captains, and the great *Hannibal*. *Servius* interprets this name of *Dido* by *Virago*, becauſe of her man-like acts: others from *Jedidia*, a ſurname of *Solomon*.

Eluleus succeeded Pygmalion, and reigned 36. years: the same that overthrew the fleet of *Salmathassar*, in the Port of *Tyre*: notwithstanding which he continued his Siege before it on the Land side five years, but in vain.

After *Eluleus*, *Eihobales* governed the *Tyrians*, who vaunted himself to be as wise as *Daniel*: and that he knew all secrets (saith *Ezekiel*) of whom the Prophet writeth at large in his 28. Chapter: out of whom it was gathered, that this Prince died, or was slain in that long Siege of *Nabuchodonosor*: who surmounted and attempted *Tyre* 13. years together, ere he prevailed.

*Baal* followed *Eihobales*, and reigned 10. years a tributary, perchance, to *Nabuchodonosor*: for after his death, it was governed by divers Judges, succeeding each other: First, 10 by *Escibalus*, then by *Chebis*, *Abarus* the Priest, *Mitonus*, and *Gerasus*, who held it among them some 7. years, and odd moneths: after whom *Balatorus* commanded therein as a King for one year: after him *Aterbals* sent from *Babylon*, 4. years: after him *Irom* sent thence also, 20. years. In the 17. of whose reign *Cyrus* began to govern *Persia*.

### §. III.

of *Bozins* his conceit, that the *Edumæans* inhabiting along the Red Sea, were the Progenitors of the *Tyrians*, and that the *Tyrians* from them received and brought into Phœnicia the knowledge of the true God.

OF the great mutations of this Kingdom and State of the *Tyrians*, mixed with a discourse of divers other Nations, there is one *Bozins* that hath written a Treatise at large, intituled, *De ruinis Genium*. And although the great and many alterations found in this and other Cities, yea, in all things under heaven, have proceeded from his ordinance, who only is unchangeable, and the same for ever; yet whereas the said *Bozins*, inforcing here-hence, that the prosperity and ruine of the *Tyrians* were fruits of their embracing or forsaking the true Religion; to prove this his assertion, supposeth the *Tyrians* to have been *Edumæans*, descended from *Eſau*, *Jacob's* brother: first, it can hardly be believed, that *Tyre*, when it flourished most in her ancient glory, was in any sort truly devout and religious. But to this end (besides the proof which the Scriptures give of *Hiram's* good affection when *Solomon* built the Temple) he brings many conjecturall arguments; whereof the strongest is their pedigree and descent: it being likely in his opinion, that the posterity of *Eſau* received from him by Tradition the Religion of *Abraham* and *Isaac*. That the *Tyrians* were *Edumæans*, he endeavours to shew, partly by weak reasons, painfully strained from some affinity of names, which are arguments of more delight than weight: partly by authority. For *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Plinius*, and others, witness, that the *Tyrians* came from the Red Sea, in which there were three Islands, called *Tyros*, *Aradus*, and *Sidon*: which very names (as he thinketh) were afterwards given to the Cities of *Phœnicia*. Considering therefore that all the coast of the Red Sea, was in his opinion under the *Edumæans*: as *Elah* and *Eſiongabæ*; or under the *Amalekites*, who descended of *Amalec* the Nephew of *Eſau*, whose chief City was *Madian*, so called of *Maodan* the son of *Abraham* by *Cethura*, whose posterity did people it: the consequence appears good (as he takes it) that the *Tyrians* originally were *Edumites*: differing little or nothing in Religion from the children of *Israel*. Hereunto he adds, that *Cadmus* and his Companions brought not into *Greece* the worship of *Astartis*, the Idol of the *Sidonians*. That the Parents of *Thales* and *Pherecydes* being *Phœnicians*, themselves differed much in their Philosophy from the Idolatrous customs of the *Greeks*. That in *Temæ*, a Town of the *Edumæans*, was an University, wherein, as may appear by *Eliphaz the Temanite*, who disputed with *Job*, Religion was sincerely taught.

Such is the discourse of *Bozins*, who labouring to prove one Paradox by another, deserves in both very little credit. For neither doth it follow, that if the *Tyrians* were *Edumæans*, they were then of the true Religion, or well affected to God and his people: neither is it true that they were *Edumæans* at all. In what Religion *Eſau* brought up his children, it is no where found written; but that himself was a profane man, and disapproved by God, the Scriptures in plain terms expresse. That his Posterity were Idolaters, is directly proved in the 25. Chapter of the second Book of *Chronicles*. That the *Edumites* were perpetuall enemies to the house of *Israel*, save onely when *David* & some of his race, Kings of *Juda*, held them in subjection, who knows not? or who is ignorant

rant of *David's* unfriendly behaviour amongst them, when first they were subdued? surely, it was not any argument of Kinred or Alliance between *Tyros* and Mount *Seir*, that *Hiram* held such good correspondence with *David*; even then when *Joab* slew all the males of *Edom*: neither was it for their devotion to God, and good affection to *Israel*, that the *Edumites* were so ill intreated. It seemeth that the piety and ancient wildome of *Eliphaz the Temanite* was then forgotten, and the *Edumæans* punished, for being such as *David* in his own dayes found them. Although indeed the city of *Temæ* whence *Eliphaz* came to reason with *Job*, is not that in *Edumæa*, but another of the same name, lying East from the Sea of *Galilee*, and adjoining to *Hus*, the country of *Job*: and to 10 *Such* the City of *Bildad* the *Subite* as both such *Chorographers* who best knew those parts, do plainly shew, and *Solomon* in wisdom, all the people of the East; not the inhabitants of Mount *Seir*, which lay due South from *Palestina*. True it is, that *Eliphaz* the son of *Eſau* had a son called *Temæ*: but that fathers were wont in those dayes to take name of their sons, I no where finde. And *Ismael* also had a son called *Thema*: of whom it is not unlike, that *Thema* in the East had the name: for as much as in the 7. Chap. of the book of Judges, the *Midianites*, *Amalekites*, and all they of the East are called *Ismaelites*. And he that well considers how great and strong a Nation *Amalec* was, which durst give battell to the Host of *Israel*, wherein were 600000. able men, will hardly believe that 10 such a people were descended from one of *Eſau* his grand-children. For how powerfull and numberlesse must the forces of all *Edom* have been: if one Tribe of them, yea, one Family of a Tribe had been so great? surely Mount *Seir* and all the Regions adjoining could not have held them. But we no where finde that *Edom* had to do with *Amalec*, or assisted the *Amalekites*, when *Saul* went to root them out. For *Amalec* is no where in Scripture named as a Tribe of *Edom*: but a Nation of it self, if distinct from the *Ismaelites*. The like may be said of *Midian*, that the Founder thereof being son to *Abraham* by *Cethura*, doubtlesse was no *Edomite*. And thus much in generall for all the Seignory of the Red Sea coast, which *Bozins* imagines the *Edumæans* to have held: if the *Edumites* in after-times held some places, as *Elan* and *Eſiongabæ* on the Red Sea shore, yet in 10 10 *Moses* time, which was long after the building of *Tyre*, they held them not. For *Moses* himself saith, that *Israel* did compass all the borders of *Edom*: within which limits had *Midian* stood, *Moses* must needs have known it: because he had journeyed long in that Country: and there had left his wife and children, when he went into *Egypt*.

But conjecturall Arguments, how probable soever, are needlesse in so manifest a case. For in the 83. *Psalm*, *Edom*, *Amalec*, and *Tyre*, are named as distinct Nations: yea the *Tyrians* and *Sydonians* being one people, as all good Authours shew, and *Bozins* himself confesseth, were *Canaanites*, as appears, *Gen.* 10. 15. & 19. appointed by God to have been destroyed, and their Lands given to the children of *Asser*, *Jos.* 20. because they were Idolaters, and of the cursed seed of *Canaan*, nor Cousins to *Israel*, nor professors of the 40 same Religion. For though *Hiram* said, Blessed be God that hath sent King *David* a wise son: we cannot infer that he was of *David's* Religion. The *Turk* hath said as much of *Christian* Princes, his confederates. Certain it is, that the *Sydonians* then worshipped *Astartis*, and drew *Solomon* also to the same Idolatry.

Whereas *Hiram* aided *Solomon* in building the Temple, he did it for his own ends, receiving therefore of *Solomon* great provision of Corn and Oyle, and the offer of twenty Towns and Villages in *Galilee*. And if we rightly consider things, it will appear that *Hiram* in all points, dealt Merchant-like with *Solomon*. He allowed him Timber, with which *Libanus* was, and yet is over-pestered, being otherwise apt to yeeld silks: as the *Andarine* silks which come from thence, and other good commodities. For Corn and 50 Oyle, which he wanted, he gave that which he could well spare to *Solomon*. Also Gold for Land: wherein *Solomon* was the wiser; who having got the Gold first, gave to *Hiram* the worst Villages that he had: with which the *Tyrian* was ill pleased. But it was a necessary policy which inforced *Tyros* to hold league with *Israel*. For *David* had subdued *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Edom*, the *Aramites*, and a great part of *Arabia*, even to *Euphrates*: thorow which Countries the *Tyrians* were wont to carry and re-carry their Wares on Camels, to their fleets on the Red Sea, and back again to *Tyros*: so that *Solomon* being Lord of all the Countries through which they were to passe, could have cut off their Trade.

But the *Israelites* were no Sea-men, and therefore glad to share with the *Tyrians* in their adventures. Yet *Solomon*, as Lord of the Sea-towns which his Father had taken from the *Philistines*, might have greatly distressed the *Tyrians*, and perhaps have brought them even into subjection. Which *Hiram* knowing, was glad (and no marvel) that *Solomon* rather meant, as a man of peace, to imploy his Fathers Treasure in magnificent Works, than in pursuing the conquest of all *Syria*. Therefore he willingly aided him, and sent him cunning workmen, to increase his delight in goodly Buildings, Images, and instruments of pleasure.

As these passages between *Solomon* and *Hiram*, are no strong arguments of piety in the *Tyrians*: so those other proofs which *Bozins* frames negatively upon particular examples, are very weak. For what the Religion of *Cadmus* was, I think, no man knows. It seems to me, that having more cunning than the *Greeks*, and being very ambitious, he would fain have purchased divine honours; which his Daughters, Nephews, and others of his house obtained; but his own many misfortunes beguiled him of such hopes, if he had any. *Thales* and *Pherecydes* are but single examples: Every salvage Nation hath some wisdom excelleth the Vulgar, even of civil people. Neither did the morall wisdom of these men expresse any true knowledge of the true God. Only they made no good mention of the Gods of *Greece*: whom being newly come thither, they knew not. It is no good argument to say, that *Cadmus* and *Thales* being *Tyrians*, are not known to have taught Idolatry, therefore the *Tyrians* were not Idolaters. But this is offorce, That *Carthage*, *Utica*, *Lepis*, *Cadiz*, and all Colonies of the *Tyrians* (of which I think, the Islands before mentioned in the *Red Sea* to have been, for they traded in all Seas) were Idolaters, even from their first beginnings: therefore the *Tyrians* who planted them, and to whom they had reference, were so likewise.

This their Idolatry from *Solomons* time on-wards is acknowledged by *Bozins*, who would have us think them to have been formerly a strange kinde of devout *Edomites*. In which fancy he is so peremptory, that he styleth men of contrary opinion, *Impios politicos*, as if it were impie, to think, that God (who even among the Heathen, which have not known his Name, do, favour Vertue and hate Vice) hath often rewarded morall honesty, with temporall happinesse. Doubtlesse, this doctrine of *Bozins* would be better have agreed with *Julian* the *Apostata*, than with *Cyril*. For if the *Assyrians*, *Greeks*, *Romans*, and all those Nations of the *Gentiles*, did then prosper most, when they drew neereft unto the true Religion: what may be said of the foule Idolatry which grew in *Rome* as fast as *Rome* it self grew: and was enlarged with some new superstition, almost upon every new victory? How few great battells did the *Romans* win, in which they vowed not either a Temple to some new god, or some new honour to one of their old gods? yea, what one Nation, save only that of the *Jews*, was subdued by them, whose gods they did not afterward entertain in their City? Only the true God, which was the God of the *Jews*, they rejected, upbraiding the *Jews* with him, as if he were unworthy of the *Roman* Majesty: shall we hereupon enforce the lewd and foolish conclusion which Heathen Writers used against the *Christians* in the *Primitive Church*: That such Idolatry had caused the City of *Rome* to flourish, and that the decay of those abominations did also bring with it the decay of the Empire? It might well be thought so, if prosperity were a signe or effect of true Religion. Such is the blinde zeal of *Bozins*, who writing against those whom he fallly terms impious, gives strength to such as are impious indeed. But such indiscretion is usually found among men of his humour; who having once either foolishly embraced the dreams of others, or vainly fashioned in their own brains any strange *Chimera*'s of Divinity, condemn all such in the pride of their zeal, as Atheists and Infidels, that are not transported with the like intemperate ignorance. Great pitié it is, that such mad dogs are oftentimes encouraged by those, who having the command of many tongues, when they themselves cannot touch a man in open and generous opposition, will wound him secretly by the malicious vertue of an *Hypercrit*.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the Tribe of Ephraim, and of the Kings of the ten Tribes, whose head was Ephraim.

## §. 1.

Of the memorable places in the Tribe of Ephraim.

**H**AVING now past over *Phœnicia*, we come to the next Territory adjoining, which is that of *Ephraim*: sometimes taken per excellentiam, for the whole Kingdom of the ten Tribes. *Ephraim* was the second son of *Joseph*, whose issues when they left *Egypt* were in number 45000. all which dying in the *Desarts*, (*Joshua* excepted) there entered the Holy Land of their children grown to be able men, 32500. who fate down on the West side of *Jordan*, between *Manasse* and *Benjamin*: who bounded *Ephraim* by the North and South; as *Jordan*, 10 and the *Mediterran Sea*, did by the East and West.

The first and chief City which *Ephraim* had, was *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Israel*, built by *Omri* or *Homri* King thereof, and seated on the top of the Mountain *Somron*, which overlooketh all the bottome, and as far as the Sea-coast. It was afterward called *Sebaste*, or *Augusta*, in honour of *August. Cesar*. This City is often remembered in the Scriptures: and magnificent it was in the first buildings; for as *Brochard* observeth, the ruines which yet remain, and which *Brochard* found greater than those of *Hiersusalem*, tell those that behold them, what it was when it stood upright: for to this day there are found great store of goodly Marble pillars, with other hewen and carved stone in great abundance, among the rubble.

It was beaten to the ground by the sons of *Hircanus* the high Priest: restored and built by the first *Herod* the son of *Antipater*: who to flatter *Cesar* called it *Sebaste*. Herein were the prophets *Helias* and *Abdias* buried: and so was *John Baptist*. It now hath nothing but a few Cottages filled with *Grecian* Monks.

Neer *Samaria* towards the South, is the hill of *Bethel*, and a town of that name: on the top of which mountain, *Jeroboam* erected one of his golden calves, to be worshipped: with which he seduced the *Israelites*.

In sight of this Mountain of *Bethel*, was that ancient City of *Sichem*; after the restitution called *Neapolis*, now *Pelosa*, and *Napola*: It was destroyed by *Simcon* and *Levi*, in revenge of the ravishment of their sister *Dina*: and after that by *Abimelec* evened with the soyl. *Jeroboam* raised it up again: and the *Damascens* a third time cast it down.

Under *Sichem* toward the Sea standeth *Pharathon* or *Pirbathor*, on the Mountain *Amalec*, the City of *Abdon* Judge of *Israel*. And under it *Berthon* of the *Levites*, built as it is said by *Sara*, the daughter of *Ephraim*. Neer to this City *Judas Macchabæus* overthrew *Seron* and *Lyfias*, Lieutenants to *Antiochus*. This City had *Solomon* formerly repaired and fortified.

Between *Ethoron* and the Sea, standeth *Samir*, of which *Jos. 10.* and *Saron*, whose King was slain by *Joshua*: it is also mentioned *Abd. 9. 35.* and of this *Saron* the Valley taketh name, which beginning at *Cæsarea Palestine*, extendeth it self alongst the coast as far as *Joppe*, faith *Adrichome*: though indeed the name *Saron* is not particularly given to this Valley, but to every fruitfull plain Region; for not only this Valley is so called, to wit, between *Cæsarea* and *Joppe*, but that also between the Mountain *Tabor* and the Sea of *Galilee*: for so *S. Hierome* upon the five and thirtieth Chapter of *Ezay*, interprets the word *Saron*: and so doth the same Father in his Commentaries upon *Abdias*, read *Saron* for *Assaron*: understanding thereby a Plaine neer *Lidda*: which *Lidda* in his time was called *Diopolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*, one of the Toparchies of *Judea*, the fifth indiginitie (or the third after *Phny*) where *S. Peter* (*non sua, sed Christi civitate*) cured *Aeneas*. *Niger* calls all that Region from *Anti-libanus* to *Joppe*, *Saron*. This *Joppe* was burnt to the ground by the *Romans*, those Ravens and spoylers of all Estates, dis-





as much as belonged to the charge of the Tribes of Ephraim and Manasse: and so many of them as wrought in those works. During which time, as he went from Hierusalem, he encountered the Prophet Ahijah: who made him know that he was by God destinated to be King of Israel, and to command ten of the twelve Tribes. After this, fearing that those things might come to Solomons knowledge, he fled into Egypt to Shishak, whom Eusebius calleth Ochozias, whose Daughter he married: the Predecessor of which Shishak (if not the same) did likewise entertain Adad the Edumean, when he was carried young into Egypt from the fury of David, and his Captain Joab; which Adad the King of Egypt married to his Wives sister Taphnes; using both him and Jeroboam as instruments to shake the Kingdom of Judaea, that himself might the easilier spoil it, as he did: for in the fifth year of Rehoboam, Shishak sackt the City of Hierusalem, and carried thence all the treasure of David and Solomon, and all the spoils which David took from Adadazer of Soba, with the presents of Tobu, King of Hamath, which were of an inestimable value.

1 Kings 14.

Ambrose upon the first chapter of the Epistle to the Romans.

1 Kin. 11. 12. &amp;c.

1 Kin. 15. &amp; 16.

1 King. 16.

1 King. 16.

1 King. 15.

This Jeroboam after the death of Solomon became Lord of the ten Tribes: and though he were permitted by God to govern the Israelites, and from a mean man exalted to that state: yet preferring the policies of the world before the service and honour of God (as fearing that if the Tribes under his rule should repair to Hierusalem to do their usual Sacrifices, they might be drawn from him by degrees) he erected two golden Calves, one in Dan, and another in Bethel, for the people to worship (an imitation of the Egyptian Apis, saith S. Ambrose, or rather of Aarons Calf in Horeb:) further he made election of his Priests out of the basest and unlearned people. This King made his chief Seat and Palace at Sichem: He despised the warning of the Judean Prophet, whom Josephus calleth Adon, and Glycas Joel: his hand thereafter withered, and was again restored: but continuing in his Idolatry, and hardened, upon occasion that the Prophet returning, was slain by a Lion; Ahijah makes him know that God purposed to root out his posterity.

He was afterward overthrown by Abia King of Juda, and died after he had governed two and twenty years; whom Nadab his son succeeded: who in the second year of his reign, together with all the race of Jeroboam, was slain, and rooted out by Baasba, who reigned in his stead: so Nadab lived King but two years.

Baasba the son of Ahijah, the third King after the partition, made war with Asa King of Juda: he seated himself in Therfa: and fortified Rama against Juda, to restrain their excursions. Hereupon Asa entertained Benhadad of Damascus against him, who invaded Nephthali, and destroyed many places therein: the mean while Asa carried away the materials, with which Baasba intended to fortifie Rama: but being an Idolater, he was threatened by Jehu the Prophet, that it should befall his race, as it did to Jeroboam: which afterward came to passe: He ruled four and twenty years, and died.

To Baasba succeeded Ela his son, who at a feast at his Palace of Therfa, was in his cups slain by Zambris, after he had reigned two years: and in him the prophesie of Jehu was fulfilled.

Zambris succeeded Ela, and assumed the name of a King seven dayes; but Ambrie in revenge of the Kings murder, set upon Zambris, or Zimri, and inclosed him in Therfa, and inforced him to burn himself.

Ambrie or Homri succeeded Ela, and transferred the Regall seat from Therfa to Samaria: which he bought of Shemer, built, and fortified it. This Ambrie was also an Idolater no lesse impious than the rest: and therefore subjected to Tabremmon, King of Syria, the father of Benhadad, according to Eusebius, Nicephorus, and Zonaras: but how this should stand, I do not well conceive; seeing Benhadad the son of Tabremmon was invited by Asa King of Juda, to assaile Baasba King of Israel, the father of Ela, who fore-went Ambrie. This Ambrie reigned twelve years, six in Therfa, and six in Samaria, and left two children, Achab and Athalia.

## §. III.

Of Achab and his Successors, with the captivity of the ten Tribes.

Achab, or Ahab succeeded Omri, who not onely upheld the Idolatry of Jeroboam, borrowed of the Egyptians: but he married Jezabel the Zidonian: and as Je-

roboam

roboam followed the Religion of his Egyptian Wife: so did Achab of his Zidonian: and erected an Altar and a Grove to Baal in Samaria. He suffered Jezabel to kill the Prophets of the most high God. God sent famine on the land of Israel. Achab met Elias: Elias prevailed in the trial of the sacrifice, and killeth the false prophets; and afterward flieth for fear of Jezabel.

Benhadad not long after besieged Samaria: and taken by Achab, was by him set at liberty: for which, the Prophet (whom Glycas calleth Micheas) reproveth him: afterward he caused Naboth by a false accusation to be stoned. Then joyning with Josaphat in the war for the recovery of Ramoth, he was slain, as Micheas had foretold him.

He had three sons named in the Scripture, Ochozias, Joram, and Jous: besides seventy other sons by sundry wives and concubines.

Ochozias succeeded his father Achab. The Moabites fell from his obedience: he bruised himself by a fall: and sent for counsell to Beelzebub the god of Acharon. Eliab the Prophet meeteth the messenger on the way: and misliking that Ochozias sought help from that dead Idoll, asked the messenger, if there were not a God in Israel? Ochozias flieth two Captains, and with each 50. souldiers, to bring Eliab unto him, both which with their Attendants were consumed with fire. The third Captain besought mercy at Eliab's hands, and he spared him, and went with him to the King, avowing it to the King that he must then die; which came to passe in the second year of his reigne.

Joram, the brother of Ochozias by Jezabel, succeeded: He allured Josaphat King of Juda, and the King of Edom to assilt him against the Moabites, who refused to pay him the tribute of 20000. sheep. The three Kings wanted water for themselves and their horses in the Desarts. The Prophet Elisba causeth the ditches to flow. The Moabites are overthrown: their King flieth to Kirbair, and being besieged, according to some Expositors, burnt his son on the walls as a sacrifice, whereat the three Kings, moved with compassion, returned and left Moab, wasting and spoiling that Region. Others, as it seems with better reason, understand the Text to speak of the son of the King of Edom, whom they suppose in this irruption to have been taken prisoner by the Moabites, and that the King of Moab shewed him over the walls, threatening, unless the siege were dissolved, that he would offer him in sacrifice to his gods. Whereupon the King of Edom besought those of Juda and Israel to break off the siege for the safety of his son: which when the other Kings refused to yield unto, and that Moab, according to his former threatening, had burnt the King of Edoms son upon the rampire, that all the assailants might discern it, the king of Edom being by this sad spectacle enraged, forsook the party of the other Kings, for want of whose assistance the siege was broken up.

After this the King of Aram sent to Joram, to heal Naaman the Captain of his Army of the Leprosie. The answer of Joram was, Am I God to kill, and to give life, that he doth send to heal a man of his Leprosie? adding, that the Aramite sought but matter of quarrell against him. Elisba hearing thereof, willed the King to send Naaman to him; promising that he should know that there was a Prophet in Israel: and so Naaman was healed by washing himself seven times in Jordan. Elisba refused the gifts of Naaman: but his servant Gehazi accepted a part thereof: from whence the sellers of spirituall gifts are called Gehazites, as the buyers are Simonians, or Simon Magus.

Afterward Benhadad King of Aram, or Damascus, having heard that this Prophet did discover to the King of Israel whatsoever the Aramite consulted in his secretest counsell, sent a troop of horse to take Elisba: all whom Elisba struck blinde, and brought them captives into Samaria: Joram then asked leave of the Prophet to slay them, Elisba forbade him to harm them: but caused them to be fed, and sent back to their own Prince in safety.

The King of Aram, notwithstanding these benefites, did again attempt Samaria, and brought the Citizens to extreme famine. Joram imputeth the cause thereof to the Prophet Elisba. Elisba by prayer caused a noise of Chariots and Armour to sound in the aire, whereby the Aramites affrighted, fled away, and left the siege. An act of great admiration, as the same is written in the second of Kings. After this, when Azazel obtained the Kingdome of Syria by the death of his Master, Joram entring upon his frontier, took Ramoth-Gilead: in which war he received divers wounds, and returned to Jezreel to be cured. But whilest he lay there; Jehu (who commanding the Army of Joram in Gilead, was anointed King by one of the children of the Prophets

Hh 2

sent

Beelzebub was the same with Belus & Plute, saith Vigenere upon Levit. 2 Kings 1.

2 Kings 5.

2 Kings 15.

2 Kings 7.

sent by *Elisba*) surprized and slew both him and all that belonged unto him, rooting out the whole posterity of *Ahab*.

Pag. 86.

*Jehu*, who reigned after *Jehoram*, destroyed not onely the race of his fore-goers, but also their religion; for which he received a promise from God, That his seed should occupy the Throne unto the fourth generation. Yet he upheld the Idolatry of *Jehoram*, for which he was plagued with grievous war, wherein he was beaten by *Hazeael* the *Aramite*, who spoiled all the Countries to the East of *Jordan*: in which war he was slain, saith *Cedrenus*; whereof the Scriptures are silent. *Jehu* reigned 28. years.

2 Kings 13.

*Joachaz*, or *Jehoachaz* the son of *Jehu* succeeded his father, whom *Azael* and his son *Benhadad* often invaded, and in the end subjected, leaving him onely 50. horse, 20. chariots, and 10000. foot: and, as it is written in the Scriptures, he made them like dust beaten into powder. *Joachaz* reigned 17. years.

2 Kings 14.

After *Joachaz*, *Joas* his son governed *Israel*, who when he repared to *Elisba* the Prophet as he lay on his death-bed, the Prophet promised him three victories over the *Aramites*: and first commanded him to lay his hand on his bowe, and *Elisba* covered the Kings hands with his, and bad him open the window Westward (which was toward *Damascus*) and then shoot an arrow thence out. He again willed him to beat the ground with his arrows, who smote it thrice, and ceased: The Prophet then told him, that he should have smitten five or six times, and then he should have had so many victories over the *Aramites* as he gave strokes. And so it succeeded with *Joas*, who overthrew the *Aramites* in three battels, and recovered the Cities and Territory from *Benhadad* the son of *Azael*, which his father *Joachaz* had lost. He also overthrew *Amazia* King of *Juda*, who provoked him to make the war, whereupon he entred *Hierusalem*, and sacked it with the Temple. This *Joas* reigned sixteen yeers, and died; in whose time also the Prophet *Elisba* exchanged this life for a better.

*Jeroboam* the third from *Jehu*, followed *Joas* his father, an Idolater, as his predecessor; but he recovered all the rest of the lands belonging to *Israel*, from *Hamath* which is neer *Lihannus*, to the dead Sea, and reigned one and forty yeers.

*Zacharias* the fifth and last of the house of *Jehu*, slain by *Shallum* his vassall, who reigned in his stead, governed six moneths. *Shallum* held the Kingdome but one moneth, being slaughtered by *Menabem* of the *Gadites*.

2 King. 16. 19.

*Menabem* who took revenge of *Shallum*, used great cruelty to those that did not acknowledge him: ripping the bellies of those that were with childe. This *Menabem* being invaded by *Phul*, bought his peace with ten thousand talents of silver, which he exacted by a Tribute of fifty shekels from every man of wealth in *Israel*. *Menabem* governed twenty yeers.

1 King. 15. 29.

*Pekahiah*, or *Phaccia*, or after *Zonaras*, *Phacesia* succeeded, and after he had ruled two yeers, he was slain by *Phaca*, or *Pekab* the Commander of his Army, who reigned in his place. In this *Pekab*'s time, *Phulassar*, or *Tiglat-Phylassar* invaded the Kingdom of *Israel*, and won *Sion*, *Abel-Bethmaacab*, *Janoach*, *Kedesh*, *Hazor*, and *Gilead*, with all the Cities of *Galilee*, carrying them captives into *Affryia*: he was drawn in by *Achaz* King of *Judea*, against *Pekab* and *Rezin*, the last of the *Adads*. For *Achaz* being waisted by *Pekab* of *Israel*, and by *Rezin* of *Damascus*, did a third time borrow the Church-rieches, and therewith ingaged the *Affryian*, who first suppressed that Monarchy of *Syria* and *Damascus*, and then of *Israel*: and this inviting of the great *Affryian*, was the utter ruine of both States, of *Israel*, and of *Judea*. *Pekab* reigned 20. yeers.

Then *Hofsea*, or *Osea*, who slew *Pekab*, became the vassall of *Salmanassar*; but hoping to shake off the *Affryian* yoke, he sought aide from *So*, or *Sua*, or *Sebirus* King of *Egypt*: which being known to the *Affryian*, he cast him into prison, besieged *Samaria*, and mastered it: carried the ten Idolatrous Tribes into *Ninive* in *Affryia*, and into *Ragesin* in *Media*, and into other Eastern Regions, and there dispersed them: and re-planted *Samaria* with divers Nations, and chiefly with the *Cuthae* (inhabiting about *Cutha*, a River in *Persia*, or rather in *Arabia Deserta*) and with the people *Catanee* bounding upon *Syria*, and with those of *Seppharvajim* (a people of *Sepphar* in *Mesopotamia* upon *Euphrates*, of whose conquest *Senacherib* vaunteth) also with those of *Aua*, which were of the ancient *Avims*, who inhabited the Land of the *Philistims* in *Abrabams* time, dwelling neer unto *Gaza*, whom the *Caphthorims* rooted out: and at this time they were of *Arabia* the Desert, called *Hawe*, willing to return to their ancient seats.

To

To these he added those of *Chamath*, or *Iturea*, the ancient enemies of the *Israelites*, and sometime the Vassals of the *Adads* of *Damascus*, which so often afflicted them. And thus did this *Affryian* advise himself better than the *Romanes* did. For after *Titus* and *Vespasian* had wasted the Cities of *Judea* and *Hierusalem*, they carried the people away captive: but left no others in their places, but a very few simple labourers, besides their own thin Garrisons, which soon decayed: and thereby they gave that dangerous entrance to the *Arabians* & *Saracens*, who never could be driven thence again to this day. And this transmigration, plantation, and displantation, happened in the yeer of the world, 3292. the sixth yeer of *Ezekiah* King of *Juda*: and the ninth of *Hofsea* the last 10 King of *Israel*.

## A Catalogue of the Kings of the ten TRIBES.

1.	<i>Jeroboam</i>	Reigned	22	Yeers.
2.	<i>Nadab</i>		2	Yeers.
3.	<i>Baspha</i>		24	Yeers.
4.	<i>Ela</i>		20	Yeers.
5.	<i>Zambri</i>		7	Dayes.
6.	<i>Omri</i>		11	Yeers.
7.	<i>Achab</i>		22	Yeers.
8.	<i>Ochozias</i>		2	Yeers.
9.	<i>Joram</i>		12	Yeers.
10.	<i>Jehu</i>		28	Yeers.
11.	<i>Joachaz</i>		17	Yeers.
12.	<i>Joas</i>		16	Yeers.
13.	<i>Jeroboam</i>		41	Yeers.
14.	<i>Zacharias</i>		6	Moneths.
15.	<i>Shallum</i>		1	Moneth.
16.	<i>Menabem</i>		10	Yeers.
17.	<i>Pakabiah</i>		2	Yeers.
18.	<i>Phaca</i>		20	Yeers.
19.	<i>Hofsea</i>		9	Yeers, about whose time Writers differ.

## CHAP. X.

Of the memorable places of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Juda*, *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the other half of *Manasse*.

40

## §. I.

Of *Dan*, whereof *Joppe*, *Gath*, *Accaron*, *Azotus*, and other Towns.

Now following the coast of the *Mediterran Sea*, that portion of Land assigned to the Tribe of *Dan*, joyneth to *Ephraim*, whereof I spake last: of which Family there were numbred at Mount *Sinai* 62700. fighting men, all which leaving their bodies with the rest in the Desarts, there entered the Holy Land of their sons 66400. bearing arms. The first famous City in this Tribe on the Sea-coast was *Joppe*, or *Japho*, as in the 19. of *Joshua*: one of the most ancient of the World, and the most famous of others on that coast, because it was the Port of *Hierusalem*. From hence *Jonas* embarked himself when he fled from the service of God towards *Tharsis* in *Cilicia*. In the time of the *Macchabees* this City received many changes: and while *Judas Macchabees* governed the Jews, the *Syrians* that were garrison'd in *Joppe*, having their Fleet in the Port, invited 200. principall Citizens aboard them, and cast them all into the Sea: which *Judas* revenged by firing their Fleet, and putting the companies which sought to escape to the sword.

It was twice taken by the *Romanes*, and by *Cestius* the Lievtenant utterly burnt and ruined. But in the yeer of Christ, 1250. *Lodowick* the French King gave it new Walls

Hh 3

and

and Towers: It is now the *Turks*, and called *Jaffa*. There are certain Rocks in that Port, whereunto it is reported, that *Andromeda* was fastned with chains: and from thence delivered from the Sea-monster by *Perseus*. This fable (for so I take it) is confirmed by *Josephus*, *Solinus*, and *Pliny*. *Marcus Scavrus* during his office of *Ædileship*, shewed the bones of this Monster to the people of *Rome*. *S. Hierome* upon *John* speaks of it indifferently.

The next unto Joppe was Jamnia, where Judas Machabæus burnt the rest of the Syrian Fleet: the fire and flame whereof was seen at Hierusalem, 240. furlongs off. It had sometime a Bishops seat, saith Will. of Tyre; but there is no signe of it at this time, that such a place there was.

After *Jannia* is the City of *Geth*, or *Gath*, sometime *Antbedon*, faith *Volaterra*. And so *Montanus* seems to understand it. For he sets it next to *Egypt*, of all the *Philistim* Cities, and in the place of *Antbedon*. But *Volaterra* gives neither reason nor authority for his opinion; for *Prology* sets *Antbedon* far to the South of *Jeppe*: and *Geth* was the first and not the last (beginning from the North) of all the great Cities of the *Philistims*: and about sixteen miles from *Jeppe*: where *S. Hierome* in his time found a great Village of the same name. It was sometime the habitation and Seminary of the *Anakims*, strong and Giant-like men, whom *Joſua* could not expell, nor the *Danites* after him, nor any of the *Iſraelites*, till *Dauids* time: who ſlew *Goliath*, as his Captains did divers others not much inferior in strength and stature unto *Goliath*.

*Roboam* the son of *Solomon* rebuilt *Geth* : *Ozias* the son of *Amazias* destroyed it again. It was also laid waste by *Azael* King of *Syria*. *Fulke* the fourth King of *Jerusalem*, built a Castle in the same place out of the old ruines. Whether this *Geth* was the fame that *Will. of Tyre* in the Holy war calls *Ibilin*, I much doubt : the error growing by taking *Geth* for *Antbedon*.

Not far from *Geth* or *Gath* standeth *Bethsemer*, or the house of the Sun. In the fields adjoining to this City (as is thought) was the Ark of God brought by a yolk of two Kine, turned loose by the *Philistines*: and the *Bethsemites* presuming to loak therein, there were slain of the Elders seventy, and of the people fifty thousand, by the ordinance of God. After which laughter, and the great lamentation of the people, it was<sup>30</sup> called the great \* *Abel*, saith *S. Hierome*. *Benedictus Theologus* findes three other Cities of this name; one in (*a*) *Neptalim*: another in *Juda*: and another in *Issachar*. *Hierome* findes a fifth in *Benjamin*.

Keeping the Sea-coast, the strong City of *Accaron* offereth it self, sometime one of the five *Satrapies*, or Governments of the *Philistines*. *S.Hierome* makes it the same with *Cæsaria Palestine*. *Pliny* confounds it with *Apollonia* : It was one of those that defended it self against the *Danites* and *Idumeans*. It worshipped *Beel-zebub*, the god of Hornets or Flies. To which *Idoll* it was that *Abaziah* King of *Israel* sent to enquire of his health : whose messengers *Elijah* meeting by the way, caused them to return with a sorrowfull answer to their Master. This City is remembered in many places of Scripture.

*Christifimus Schrot* placeth *Azotus* next to *Geth*, and then *Accaron* or *Ekyron*. This *Azotus* or *Ajdod*, was also an habitation of the *Ananims*, whom *Joſua* (b) failed to deſtroy, though he once poſſeſt their Citie. Herein ſtood a ſumptuous Temple, dedicated to the (c) *Idoll Dragon* : the fame Idoll which fell twice to the ground of it ſelf, after the *Ark* of God was by the *Philiftins* carried into their Temple : and in the ſecond fall, it was utterly broken and defaced. Neer it was that famous (d) *Judas Maccabaeus* ſlain by *Bacchides* and *Alcimus* the Lieutenants of *Demetrius*. Afterward it was taken by *Jonathas* : and the reſt of the Citizens being put to the ſword, all that fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, were with their Idoll therein conſumed with fire : neer which alſo he overthrew *Apollonius*.

*Gabimus* the Romans rebuilt it. It had a Bishops seat while Christianity flourished in those parts. But in *S. Hieroms* time it was yet a fair Village. And this was the last of the Sea-Towns within the Tribe of *Dan*.

The Cities which are within the Land Eastward from *Azoth*, and beyond the Fountain of *Ethiopia*, wherein *Philip* the *Apostle* baptized the *Eunuch*, are *Tsarah*, or *Sarxa*, and *Eftbaol*, and between them *Castra Danis* neer *Hebron*: though this place where *Sampson* was born, may seem by the words, *Judge*, 18. 12. to be in the Tribe of

*Judah*, as the other also were bordering Towns between *Dan* and *Juda*.  
 within the bounds of *Juda* but belonging to the *Danites*.

After these within the bounds of *Juda*, but belonging to the *Daniter*, they finde *Gedron*, or as it is 1 *Mac*. 15. *Cedron*, which *Cendebeus* the Lievtenant of *Antiochus* fortified against the *Jews*, and neer which himself was by the *Maccabees* overthrown.

Then *Menin* the Native City of the *Maccabees*: and wherein they were buried, on whose Sepulchre the seven Marble Pillars, which were erected of that height, as they served for a mark to the Sea-men, remained many hundreds of years after their first setting up, as *Brochard* and *Ereidenbach* witness.

There are besides these the City of *Carithiathim*, that is, the City of the woods: feated in the border of *Juda*, *Benjamin*, and *Dan*, wherein the Ark of God remained twenty years in the house of *Aminadab* : till such time as *David* carried it thence to *Hierusalem*. Of this place (as they say) was *Zacharias* the son of *Barachias*, or *Jehoiada*, who was slain between the Temple & the Altar: also *Urias*, whom *Joachim* King of *Hierusalem* slaughtered, as we find in *Jeremy*. Many other places which they place in this Tribe, rather, as I take it, upon presumption than warrant, I omit : as that of *Caspin* taken with great slaughter by *Judas Maccabaeus* : and *Lechis*, whose King was slain by *Iosiah*, in which also *Aquith* was slain : The fame which *Senacherib* took, *Ezekias* reigning in *Juda*.

Of other Cities belonging to this Tribe, see in *Tofua* c. 19. from the *ver.* 41. where also it is added, that the *Danites* portion was too little for their number of Families : and therefore that they invaded *Lechem*, and inhabited it : which City, after amplified by *Philip*, the brother of *Herod Antipae*, was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, as before, and made the *Metropolis* of *Ituræa*, and *Trachonitis* : of which coasts this *Thilap* was *Tairach* : but of this City see more in *Nephthalim*. In this Tribe there are no Mountains of fame.

It hath two Rivers or Torrents: the Northern-most flieth out of the Mountains of *Inda*: and passing by *Modin*, falleth into the Sea by *Sachrona*. The other hath the name of *Sorek* or *Sored*, whose banks are plentifull of Vines which have no feeds or stones: the wine they yeeld is red, of excellent colour, taste, and flavour, &c. In this Valley of *Sorek*, so called from the River, inhabited *Dalila* whom *Sampson* loved.

## §. II.

THE TRIBE OF SIMEON.

**T**He Tribe of *Simeon* takes up the rest of the Sea-coast of *Canaan*, to the border of *Egypt*: who being the second son of *Jacob* by *Lea*, there were increased of that Family while they abode in *Egypt*, as they were numbered at Mount *Sinai*, 59300. able men, all which ending their lives in the *Desarts*, there entered the Land of Promise of their issues 22200. bearing arms, who were \* in part mixed with *Juda*, and in part severed, inhabiting a small Territory on the Sea-coast, belonging to *Edmæa*, of which the first City adjoining to *Dan*, was *Ascalon*.

40 the first City adjoining to *Dam*, was *Afcalon*.  
The *Reguli*, or petty Kings thereof, were called *Afcalonite*: of which *Volaterran* out of *79. 15.* in the large portion  
*Xanthus*, in the History of the *Lydians*, reports, that *Tantalus* and *Afcalus* were the sons of *Judas*, be- reckoned in  
of *Hymenæus*: and that *Afcalus* being employed by *Aciamus* King of the *Lydians*, with an Army in *Syria*, falling in love with a young Woman of that Country, built this City, *79. 15. ver. 1.*  
and called it after his own name: The same hath *Nicollans* in his History, faith *70. 5.* where thus much is  
*latteran*. expressly no-

*Diodorus Siculus* in his third Book remembreth a Lake neer *Ascalon*, wherein there hath been a Temple dedicated to *Dereto*, the Goddesse of the *Syrians*; having the face of a Woman, and the body of a Fish: who, as I have faid before in the story of *Ninus*, was the mother of *Semiramis*, feigned to be cast into this Lake, and fed and relieved by Doves. And therefore was the Dove worshipped both in *Babylonia* and *Syria*, of which *Tibullus* the Poet :

*Alba Palaestino sancta Columba Syro.*

The white Dove is for holy held in Syria Palæstine.

It was one of the chiefest and strongest cities of the *Philistims*. It bred many learned men

Vol. ut sup. 4. men (saith Volaterran) as *Antiochus*, *Sofus*, *Cygnus*, *Dorotheus* the Historian, and *Artemidorus*, who wrote the story of *Bithynia*.

In *Ascalon*, as some say, was that wicked *Herod* born, that seeking after our Saviour, caused all the Male-children of two years old and under to be slain. In the Christian times it had a Bishop, and after that, when it was by the *Saladine* defaced, *Richard King of England*, while he made War in the *Holy Land*, gave it a new Wall and many buildings. *Ejus muros cum Saladinus diruisset*, *Richardus Anglorum Rex instauravit*, saith *Adrichomius*.

Afrith in Trib.  
Simoon.  
2 Sam. 1.

In *David's* time it was one of the most renowned Cities of the *Philistims*: for *hennameth Gath* and *Ascalon* only, when he lamented the death of *Saul* and *Jonathan*: not to speaking of the other three. Tell it not in *Gath*, nor publish it not in the streets of *Ascalon*: It is now called *Scalone*. *Gabinus* restored it as he did *Azotus* and *Gaza*.

Next to *Ascalon* stood *Gaza*, or *Gazera*, which the Hebrews call *Hazza*, the Syrians, *Azan*, of *Azonus* (as they say) the son of *Hercules*. Other profane writers affirm, that it was built by *Jupiter*. *Pomp. Mela* gives the building thereof to *Cambyses* the *Persian*; because belike he re-built it, and *Gaza* in the *Persian* tongue is as much to say, as *Treasure*. This *Gaza* was the first of the five *Satrapies* of the *Philistims*, and the South bound of the land of *Canaan* towards *Egypt*. But this City was far more ancient than *Cambyses*, as it is proved by many Scriptures. It was once taken by *Caleb*: but the strength of the *Anakims* put him from it. At such time as *Alexander Macedon* invaded the Empire of *20 Persia*, it received a Garrison for *Darius*: in despite whereof it was by the *Macedonians* after a long siege demolished, and was called *Gaza* of the Desert.

Vol. 11.

Steph. de Urb.  
Jud. 1. 6. 16.  
1 King. 6. 29  
Jof. 13. ant. 19

*Alexander Jannæus* King of the Jews, surprised it, and slew five hundred Senators in the Temple of *Apollo*, which fled thither for Sanctuary: but this *Gaza* was not let up in the same place again, to wit, on the foundations which *Alexander Macedon* had returned, but somewhat neerer the Sea side: though the other was but two mile off. It was a Town of great account in the time of the *Maccabees*, and gave many wounds to the Jews till it was forsook by *Simon*: of which he made too great account, as that he purposed to reside therein himself, and in his absence left *John* his Son and Successor to be Governour. In *Brochard* his time it was still a goodly City, and known by the 30 name of *Gazara*.

Mar. 1. 15.  
Biosch. Itin. 7.

At the very out-let of the River of *Besor*, standeth *Majoma* the Port of *Gaza*: to which the privilege of a City was given by the great *Constantine*, and the place called *Constance*, after the name of the Emperours Son. But *Julian* the *Apostata* soon after favouring the *Gazeans*, made it subject unto them, and commanded it to be called *Gaza maritima*.

Hist. trip. 1. 6.  
c. 4. Neph. 10.  
biph. cap. 4.

On the other side of *Besor* standeth *Antbedon*, defaced by *Alexander Jannæus*, restored by *Herod*, and called *Agrippias*, after the name of *Agrippa*, the favourite of *Augustus*.

Jof. 13. ant. 19.

Then *Rabbias*, where *Philopater* overthrew the great *Antiochus*: and beyond it *Rhinocora*, whose Torrent is known in the Scriptures by the name of \* the Torrent of *Egypt*, 40 till the *Septuagint* converted it *Rinocora*: to difference it, *Es. 27. 12.* giving the name of the City to the Torrent that watereth it. *Plinie* calls it *Rhinocolura*: and *Josuephus* *Rhinocorura*: (a) *Epiphanius* reports it as a Tradition, that at this place the world was divided by lot, between the three Sons of *Noah*.

Jof. 13. ant. 19.

Within the Land and upon the River of *Besor* they place *Gerar*: which the Scripture placeth between *Kadesh* and *Shur*. *Gen. 20. 1.* That it was near to the Wilderness of *Beer-sheba*, it appears *Gen. 20. 31.* and therefore no marvel that as elsewhere *Beer-sheba*, so sometime *Gerar*, be made the South bound of *Canaan*. It was of old a distinct Kingdom from the *Philistims* *Satrapies*: the Kings by one common name were called *Abimelechs*; 50 *S. Hierome* saith that afterward it was called *Regio salutaris*, the healthy Country: so that it 50 was no marvel that *Abraham* and *Iaac* lived much in those parts. Of King *Aja's* conquest of the Cities about *Gerar*, see *2 Chron. 14. 14.*

Jof. 13. ant. 19.

More within the Land was *Siceleg*, or *Tiglak*, which was burnt by the *Amalekites*, when *David* in his flying from *Saul* to the *Philistims* had left his carriages there, but *David* followed them over the River of *Besor*, and put them to the slaughter, and recovered the prey.

Jof. 10. 11.

Next *Dabir* sometime *Cariath-Sepher*, the City of Letters, the Univerfity, as they say, or *Academie* of old *Palestine*. In *Saint Hierome's* time, it seems, it had the name of *Dauma*:

Jof. 10. 11.

Next *Dabir* sometime *Cariath-Sepher*, the City of Letters, the Univerfity, as they say, or *Academie* of old *Palestine*. In *Saint Hierome's* time, it seems, it had the name of *Dauma*:

Jof. 10. 11.

Next *Dabir* sometime *Cariath-Sepher*, the City of Letters, the Univerfity, as they say, or *Academie* of old *Palestine*. In *Saint Hierome's* time, it seems, it had the name of *Dauma*:

*Daema*; *Jof. 15. 49.* it is called *Urbs Sannæ*: from the name, as it seems, of some of the *Anakims*, as *Hebron* was called *Urbs Arbabi*. For even hence also were these Giants expelled. It was taken chiefly by *Othoniel*, incouraged by *Caleb's* promise of his Daughter *Jef. 11. 21.* in marriage: but that *Jofua* and the Hoast of *Israel* were at the surprize, it appears *Jof. 10. 39.* This City *Jof. 21. 15.* is named among those which out of *Simoon* and *Juda* were given to the *Levites*. And hence it seems they attribute it to this Tribe.

Besides these, there are many others in the Tribe of *Simoon*, but of less fame, as *Hajin*, of which *Jof. 19. 7.* which also *Jof. 21. 16.* is reckoned for one of the Cities of the *Levites*, given out of the portion of *Juda* and *Simoon*, (for which *Junius* thinks *Hasbam* is named 10 *1 Chron. 6. 59.* though \* in the place of *Jofua* these two are distinguished) also *Tholad*, so named 1 *Chron. 4. 29.* for which *Jof. 19. 4.* we have *Elsholad*, *Chatzar-Susa*, so named, *Jof. 19. 5.* for which *Jof. 15.* we have *Chatzar-Gadda*, both names agreeing in signification: for *Gadda* is *Turma*, and *Susa* *Equitatus*.

In the same places of *Jofua*, and of the *Chronicles*, *Chorma* is named, which they think to be the fame with that of which *Numb. 14. 45.* to which the *Amalekites* and *Canaanites* pursued the *Israelites*: But that *Chorma* cannot be in *Simoon*, nor within the Mountains of *Edumæa*. For *Israel* fled not that way: but back again to the Camp, which lay to the South of *Edumæa*, in the Desert. *Deut. 11.*

The same places also name *Beer-sheba* in this Tribe: so called of the Oath between 30 *Abraham* and *Abimelec*: neer unto which *Hagar* wandered with her son *Ismael*. It was also called the City of *Isaac*, because he dwelt long there. While the *Christians* held the *Holy Land*, they laboured much to strengthen this place, standing on the border of the *Arabian Desert*, and in the South bound of *Canaan*. It hath now the name of *Gibelin*. The other Cities of *Simoon* which are named in the places of *Jofua*, and of the *Chronicles* above noted, because they help us nothing in story, I omit them. In the time of *Ezekia* King of *Juda*, certain of this Tribe being strengthened in their own Territories, passed \* as it seems in the Land of *Judea*. See in the first *P* themselves: as also five hundred others of this Tribe, destroyed the Reliques of *Amalec* tagaph of this Chapter in the Cities of *Dan*, *Jud. 6. 3.*

The mountains within this Tribe are few, and that of *Sampson* the chiefest: unto which he carried the Gate-post of *Gaza*. The Rivers are, *Besor*, and the Torrent of *Egypt*, called *Sichar*, as is noted in *Asfer*.

### §. III.

#### THE TRIBE OF JUDA.

OF *Juda*, the fourth son of *Jacob* by *Lea*, there were multiplied in *Egypt* 74600. all 40 of which (Caleb excepted) perished in the Deserts. And of their sons there entered the Land of *Canaan* 76500. bearing arms. Agreeable to the greatness of this number was the greatest Territory given, called afterward *Judea*: within the bounds whereof were the portions allotted to *Dan* and *Simoon* included. And many Cities named in those Tribes, did first, as they say, belong unto the Children of *Juda*: who had a kinde of Sovereignty over them: as *Succoth*, *Cariathiarim*, *Lachis*, *Bethsemer*, *Tiglag*, *Beer-sheba*, and others. The multitude of people within this small Province (if it be meted by that ground given to this Tribe only) were incredible, if the witness of the Scriptures had not warranted the report. For when *David* numbered the people, they were found five hundred thousand fighting men.

50 The Cities of *Juda* were many. But I will remember the chiefest of them: beginning with *Arad*, or *Horma*, which standeth in the entrance of *Judea* from *Idumæa*: whose King first surprized the *Israelites* as they passed by the border of *Canaan* towards *Moab*, *Numb. 21. 2.* and took from them some spoiles, and many prisoners: who being afterward overthrown by the *Israelites*, the sons of *Keniz*, the Kinsmen of *Moses*, obtained a possession in that Territory: who before the coming of the *Israelites*, dwelt between *Madian* and *Amalek*.

Following this Frontier towards *Idumæa* and the South, *Ascensus Scorpionis*, or *Acrab*, *Numb. 34. 4.* *vim* is placed: the next to *Arad*: so called because of Scorpions, which are said to be in *Deut. 8. 15.* that

that place: from which name of *Acrabim*, *Hierome* thinks that the name of the *Toparchie*, called *Acrabathena*, was denominated: of which we have spoken in *Manasse*. On the South side called *Judea* they place the Cities of *Jagur*, *Dimona*, *Adada*, *Cedes*, *Aflna*, *Jetbam*, and *Afor*, or *Chatfor*, most of them Frontier Towns.

And then *Ziph*: of which there are two places so called: one besides this in the body of *Juda*, of which the *Desart* and *Forrest* adjoining took name: where *David* hid himself from *Saul*. After these are the Cities of *Ejron*, *Adar*, *Karkab*, and *Ajsemona*, or *Hafmon*, of no great fame.

Turning now from *Jehudaea* towards the North, we finde the Cities of *Danna*, *Shamab*, *Amam*, the other *Afor*, or *Chatfor*, *Ebaloth*, and the two *Sachos*: of all which see *Jof. 15. 8.* *1 Chro. 11. 6.* *Jen. out of the 1 Chro. 4. 31.* notes that this *Heibam*, though it were within the bounds of *Juda*, belonged to *Simon*. *Jof. 15. 48.* *Hieron. in loc. Hebr.*

Not far from *Jether* standeth *Jarmuth*, whose King was slain by *Jofua*, and the City so overturned. Next unto it is *Marsa* the native City of the Prophet *Allicha*: between it and *Odolla*, *Judas Macchabeus* overthrew *Gorgias*, and sent thence ten thousand *Dragmas* of silver to be offered for sacrifice.

*Odolla*, or *Hadullani* it self, was an ancient and magnificent City, taken by *Jofua*, and the King thereof slain. *Jonathan Macchabeus* beautified it greatly. Then *Ceila*, or *Keila*, afterward *Echela*, where *David* sometime hid himself: and which afterward he delivered from the assaults of the *Philistims*: neer which the Prophet *Abacuc* was buried: whose monument remained, and was seen by *S. Hierome*.

Neer it is *Hebron*, sometime called the City of *Arbab*, for which the *Vulgar* hath *Carithar*: the reason of this name they give, as if it signified the City of four: because the 30 Patriarchs, *Adam*, *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, were therein buried, but of *Adam* it is but supposed: and it is plain by the places *Jof. 14. 14.* and *15. 13.* and *20. 11.* that *Arbab* here doth not signifie four, but that it was the name of the Father of the Giants, called *Anakim*, whose son as it seems *Anak* was: and *Achimam*, *Shebhai*, and *Talmai*, (whom *Caleb* expelled, *Jof. 15.*) were the sons of *Anak*, *Num. 13. 23.* The name of *Anak* signifieth *Torquem*, a chain worn for ornament; and it seems that this *Anak*, enriched by the spoils which himself and his father got, wore a chain of gold, and so got this name: and leaving the custom to his posterity, left also the name: so that in *Latine* the name of *Anakim* may not amiss be expounded by *Torquati*.

The City *Hebron* was one of the ancientest Cities of *Canaan*, built seven yeers before *Tsoan*, or *Tanis*, in *Egypt*: and it was the head and chief City of the *Anakims*, whom *Caleb* expelled: to whom it was in part given, to wit, the Villages adjoining, and the rest to the Levites. It had a Bishop in the *Christian* times, and a magnificent Temple built by *Helen* the Mother of *Constantine*.

Not far hence they finde *Elentheropolis*, or the free City, remembered often by *Saint Hierome*. Then *Eglon*, whose King *Dabir* associated with the other four Kings of the *Amorites*, to wit, of *Hierusalem*, *Hebron*, *Jarmuth*, and *Lachis*, besieging the *Gibeonites*, were by *Jofua* utterly overthrow. From hence the next City of fame was *Emas*, afterward *Nicopolis*, one of the Cities of Government or *Præfidenties* of *Judea*. In sight of this City, *Judas Macchabeus* (after he had formerly beaten both *Apollonius* and *Seron*) gave a third so overthrow to *Gorgias*, Lieutenant to *Antiochus*.

In the year 1301. it was overturned by an earth-quake, saith *Ensebius*. In the *Christian* times it had a Bishops seat of the Diocesse of *Caesarea* of *Palestine*.

From *Emas* toward the West Sea, there are the Cities of *Nabamasa*, *Bethdagon*, and *Gader*, or *Gedera*, or *Gederothaima*, of which, and of *Gederoth*, \* *Jof. 15. 36.* and *41.* Then *Emas*, to which *Jofua* followed the slaughter of the five Kings before named, a City of great strength in the Valley of (a) *Terebinth*, or *Temperine*, as the *Vulgar* readeth, *1 Sam. 17. 2.* whence (as it seems) they fear it neer unto *Soco*, and unto *Lebona* of the Levites.

*Jof. 15. 8.*  
*1 Chro. 11. 6.*  
*Jen. out of the 1 Chro. 4. 31.*  
notes that this *Heibam*, though it were within the bounds of *Juda*, belonged to *Simon*.  
*Jof. 15. 48.*  
*Hieron. in loc. Hebr.*

*2 Marc. 12. 35.*  
*Gen. 38. 1.*  
*Jof. 12. 15.*  
*1 Sam. 23. 1.*

*Jof. 10. 11.*  
*Eufeb. in Chron. Bruch. l. 11. 6.*  
\* *Allo 1 Chro. 4. 39.* as is above remembered in the Tribe of *Simon*.  
*a* *Junius*, for in *Valle Terebinthi*, hath in *Valle quercu.*  
*Valerius* keeps *Azcech*, as the Hebrews reading in *Valle Elab.*

Levites. It revolted from the subjection of the Jews, while *Joram* the son of *Jofaphat* ruled in *Hierusalem*: And next unto this standeth *Maceda*, which *Jofua* utterly destroyed.

On the other side of *Emas* towards the East standeth *Bethsur*, otherwise *Bethora*, and *Bethor*: one of the strongest and most fought for places in all *Juda*. It is seated on a high Hill: and therefore called *Bethsur* (the house on the Rock, or of strength.) It was fortified by *Roboam*, and afterward by *Judas Macchabeus*. *Lysias* fortified it: and *Antiochus* Eutapor by famine, *Jonathas* regained it: and it was by *Simon* exceedingly fortified against the *Syrian* Kings.

*Bethleem* is the next unto it within six miles of *Hierusalem*, otherwise *Lebem*: sometime *Ephrat*; which name, they say, it had of *Caleb* wife, when as it is so called by *Moses* before *Caleb* was famous in those parts, *Gen. 38. 16.* Or this City was *Absen*, or *Ibzan*, Judge of *Israel* after *Jephthah*, famous for the thirty sons and thirty daughters begotten by him. *Elimelec* was also a *Bethleemite*, who with his wife *Naomi* sojourned in *Mob* during the famine of *Juda* in the time of the Judges, with whom *Ruth* the daughter-in-law of *Naomi* returned to *Bethleem*: and married *Booz*, of whom *Obed*, of whom *Israhel*, of whom *David*. It had also the honour to be the native City of our Saviour *Jesús Christ*: and therefore shall the memory thereof never end.

In *Zabulon* of *Galilee* there was also a City of the same name: and therefore was this 30 of our Saviour called *Bethleem Juda*.

From *Bethleem* some four or five mile standeth *Thecna*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet: and to this place adjoining is the City of *Bethzaccaria*, in the way between *Bethsur* and *Hierusalem*: on whose Hills adjoining, the glorious guilt shields of *Antiochus* shined like lamps of fire in the eyes of the Jews. The City of \* *Bezek* was also neer unto *Bethleem*, which *Adoni-Bezek* commanded; who had during his reign tortured 70 Kings, by cutting off the joynts of their Fingers and Toes; and made them gather bread under his Table: but at length the same end befell himself by the sons of *Juda*, after they had taken him prisoner.

The rest of the Cities in this part (most of them of no great estimation) we may passe by, untill we come to the magnificent Castle of *Herodium*, which *Herod* erected on a Hill, mounting thereunto with 200. Marble steps, exceeding beautifull and strong, and towards the Dead Sea, and adjoining to the Desart of *Jermel*, between it and *Tekoa*, is that *Civitas floridus*, where, in the time of *Jehosaphat*, the Jews stood and lookt on the *Moba-bites*, *Ammonites*, and *Edomites*, massacring one another, when they had purposed to joyn against *Juda*: neer which place is the Valley of blessing, where the Jews the fourth day after, solemnly came and blessed God for so strange a deliverance.

Now the Cities of *Juda* which border the Dead Sea, are these; *Aduran* beautified by *Roboam*: and *Tsohar*, which the *Vulgar* calleth \* *Segor*: so called, because *Lot* in his prayer for it, urged that it was but a little one: whence it was called *Tsohar*, which signifieth a little one: when as the old name was *Belah*, as it is *Gen. 14. 2.* In the *Romans* time it had a Garrison, and was called (as they say) *Pannier*: in *Hieron*'s time, *Balexona*. Then *Engaddi*, or *Hen-gaddi*, first *Asajombamar*: neer unto which are the Gardens of *Balsamm*, the best that the world had called *Opobalsamm*: the most part of all which Trees *Cleopatra* Queen of *Egypt* sent for out of *Judea*, and *Herod*, who either feared or loved *Antiochus* her Husband, caused them to be rooted up, and presented unto her: which the re-planted neer *Heliopolis* in *Egypt*. This City was first taken by *Chedorlaomer*, and the *Amorites* thence expelled. It was one of the most remarkable Cities of *Judea*; and one of the *Præfidenties* thereof.

The rest of the Cities are many in the In-land, and among them *Jesrahel*: not that it was the City of *Naboth*, of which already; but another of the same name, the City of *Achimam*, the wife of *David*, the mother of that *Ammon* whom *Abalom* slew: also, as some think, the City of *Amaja*, *Abalom*'s Lieutenant, and the Commander of his Army. But this seemeth to be an error grounded upon the nearness of the words, *Israel* and *Jesrahel*: and because the *2 Sam. 17. 25.* *Amaja*'s father is called an *Israelite*, who in the first of the *Chron. 2. 17.* is called an *Ismaelite*: indeed the Hebrew Orthography sheweth that *Amaja*'s father is not said to be of the City *Jesrahel*, but an *Israelite* in Religion, though otherwise an *Ismaelite*.

In this Tribe there were many high Hills and Mountains: as those of *Engaddi* upon the

*Jof. 13. ant. 5.*  
*1 Chro. 11. 6.*

*Gen. 38. 48.*

*Ruth. 1.*

*Hieron. in com. super. Mat. c. 2.*  
*Matth. 2. 1.*

*Amos 1. 1.*  
*1 Mac. 5. 32.*  
*Jof. ant. 12.*

*1 Mac. 5. 36.*  
\* See in *Mac. 5. 36.*  
*1 Mac. 5. 36.*

*Jud. 1. 6. 7.*

*Jof. 14. ant. 22.*

*2 Chro. 20. 15.*  
*Eccl. 2. 23.*

\* *Chron. 11.*  
\* Some call it *Bethsaids* and *Tindis* confound them. See in *Gad. 10. 15.*

*1 Chro. 11. 6.*  
*1 Chro. 11. 6.*

*Hieron. in Off. Hebr. Chabulathony* her Husband, caused them to be rooted up, and presented unto her: which the re-planted neer *Heliopolis* in *Egypt*. This City was first taken by *Chedorlaomer*, and the *Amorites* thence expelled. It was one of the most remarkable Cities of *Judea*; and one of the *Præfidenties* thereof.

\* *Chron. 11.*  
\* Some call it *Bethsaids* and *Tindis* confound them. See in *Gad. 10. 15.*

*1 Chro. 11. 6.*  
*1 Chro. 11. 6.*

*Hieron. in Off. Hebr. Chabulathony* her Husband, caused them to be rooted up, and presented unto her: which the re-planted neer *Heliopolis* in *Egypt*. This City was first taken by *Chedorlaomer*, and the *Amorites* thence expelled. It was one of the most remarkable Cities of *Judea*; and one of the *Præfidenties* thereof.

\* *Chron. 11.*  
\* Some call it *Bethsaids* and *Tindis* confound them. See in *Gad. 10. 15.*

*1 Chro. 11. 6.*  
*1 Chro. 11. 6.*



the Dead Sea: and the Mountains of *Juda*, which begin to rise by *Emaus*, and end neer *Taphna*, and these part *Juda* from *Dan* and *Simeon*. Of others which stand single, there is that of *Hebron*, at the foot whereof was that Oak of *Mamre*, where the three Angels appeared to *Abraham*; which Saint *Hierome* calleth a Fir-tree, and saith, That it stood till the time of *Constantine* the younger. There is also that Mountain called *Colles Achille*, on the South of *Zipp*: on the top whereof the great *Herod*, inclosing the old Castle, erected by *Jonathan Maccabaeus*, and called *Massada*, garnished it with twenty seven high and strong Towers: and therein left Armour and Furniture for an hundred thousand men; being, as it seemeth, a place unaccessible, and of incomparable strength.

In the Valley afterward called the Dead Sea, or the Lake *Asphaltitis*, this Country had four Cities, *Adama*, *Sodom*, *Seboim*, and *Gomorrah*, destroyed with fire from Heaven for their unnatural sins.

#### §. IV. THE TRIBE OF REUBEN, and his Borderers.

##### ||. I.

The seats and bounds of Midian, Moab, and Ammon, part whereof the Reubenites was from *Sehon King* of *Hethbon*.

ON the other side of the Dead Sea, *Reuben* the eldest of *Jacobs* sons inhabited: of whose children there were numbered at Mount *Sinai* 46000. who dying with the rest in the Deserts, there remained to possess the Land promised 43700. bearing arms. But before we speak of these, or the rest that inhabited the East side of *Jordan*, something of their borderers: to wit, *Midian*, *Moab*, and *Ammon*, whose Land in our writers are confusedly described, and not easily distinguished. And first we are to remember, that out of *Abraham's* kindred came mighty Families: as by *Isaac* and *Jacob* the Nation called *Israel*, and afterward *Jews*: by *Ejan*, or *Edom*, the *Idumeans*: by *Ismael*, the eldest son of *Abraham*, the *Ismaelites*: and by *Keturah*, his last wife, the *Midianites*. And again, by *Lot*, *Abraham's* brothers son, those two valiant Nations of the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*: all which being but strangers in the Land of *Canaan* (formerly possessed by the *Canaanites*; and by the Families of them descended) these issues and alliance of *Abraham*, all but *Jacob*, whose children were bred in *Egypt*, inhabited the frontier places adjoining.

*Ejan* and his sons held *Idumaea*, which bounded *Canaan* on the South, *Ismael* took from the South-east part of the Dead Sea; stretching his possession over all *Arabia Petraea*, and a part of *Arabia* the Desert, as far as the River of *Tygris*, from *Sur* to *Havilah*.

*Moab* took the rest of the coast of the Dead Sea, leaving a part to *Midian*, and passing over *Arnon*, inhabited the Plains between *Jordan* and the Hills of *Abarim*, or *Arnon*, as far North as *Essebon*, or *Chesbon*.

*Ammon* fate down on the North-east side of *Arnon*, and possessed the Tract from *Rabbah*, afterward *Philadelphia*, both within the Mountains of *Gilead*, and without them as far forth as *Aroer*, though in *Moses* time he had nothing left him in all that Valley: for the *Amorites* had thrust him over the River of *Jaboc*, as they had done *Moab* over *Arnon*. As these Nations compassed sundry parts of *Canaan*, so the border between the River of *Jaboc* and *Damascus*, was held by the *Amorites* themselves, with other mixt Nations: all which Territory on the East side of *Jordan*, and on the East side of the Dead Sea, was granted by *Moses* to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and half *Manasse*; whereof that part which *Moab* had, was first possessed by the *Emims*, a Nation of Giants weakened and broken by *Chedorlahomer*, after repulsed by the *Moabites*, as before remembered. That which the *Ammonites* held, was the Territory and ancient possession of the *Zamzummims*, or *Zuzi*, who were also beaten at the same time by *Chedorlahomer*, *Amraphel*, and the rest: and by them an easie way of conquest was prepared for the *Ammonites*.

Now where it is written, that *Arnon* was the border of *Moab*, the fame is to be understood according to the time when *Moses* wrote. For then had *Sehon* or his Ancestor beaten

beaten the *Moabites* out of the plain Countries, between *Abarim* and *Jordan*, and driven them from *Heibon* over *Arnon*; and this happened not long before *Moses* arrivall upon that border, when *Vabeb* governed the *Moabites*. For he that ruled *Moab* when *Moses* past *Arnon*, was not the son of *Vabeb*, but his name was *Balac*, the son of *Zippor*. And it may be that those Kings were elective, as the *Edumeans* anciently were.

Now, all that part of *Moab*, between *Arnon* and *Jordan*, as far North as *Essebon*, was inhabited by *Reuben*. And when *Israel* arrived there out of *Egypt*, it was in the possession of *Sehon*, of the race of *Canaan* by *Amoreus*: and therefore did *Jephthab* the Judge of *Israel* justly defend the regaining of those Countries against the claim of the *Ammonites*: because (as he alledged) *Moses* found them in the possession of the *Amorites*, and not in the hands of *Moab*, or *Ammon*: who (saith *Jephthab*) had 300. yeers time to recover *Jedg*. 11. them, and did not: whence he inferreth that they ought not to claim them now.

And lest any should marvel why the *Ammonites* in *Jephthab's* time should make claim to these Countries: whereas *Moses* in the place *Num. 21. v. 26.* rather accounts them to have been the ancient possession of the *Moabites*, than of the *Ammonites*: it is to be noted, that *Dent. 3. 11.* when it is said that the Iron bed of *Og* was to be seen at *Rabbath*, the chief City of the *Ammonites*, it is also signified, that much of the Land of *Og*, which the *Israelites* possessed, was by him or his Ancestors got from the *Ammonites*, as much of *Sebons* was from the *Moabites*.

And as the *Canaanite* Nations were seated so confusedly together, that it was hard to distinguish them; so also were the sons of *Moab* and *Ammon*, *Madian*, *Amalec*, and *Ismael*. Yet the reason seemeth plain enough why *Ammon* commanded in chief, in *Jephthab's* times; for sometime the one Nation, sometime the other of all those borderers acquired the Sovereignty: and again, that one part of the Land which *Gad* held, namely, within the Mountains of *Gilead*, or *Gilebad*, and as far South as *Aroer*, belonged to the *Ammonites*. And therefore taking advantage of the time, they then fought how to recover it again. Yet at such time as *Moses* overthrew *Sehon* at *Jabaz*, the *Ammonites* had lost to the *Amorites* all that part of their possession which lay about *Aroer*, and between it and *Jaboc*: *Sehon* and *Og*, two Kings of the *Amorites*, having dislodged both *Moab* and *Ammon* of all within the Mountains. For it is written in *Numb. 21. 24.* that *Israel* conquered the Land of *Sehon* from *Arnon* unto *Jaboc*, even unto the children of *Ammon*: so as at this time the River of *Jaboc* was the South bound of *Ammon* within the Mountains, when as anciently they had also possessions over *Jaboc*, which at length the *Cadites* possessed, as in the 13. Chapter of *Iosua*, Ver. 25. it appears.

##### ||. II.

Of the memorable places of the Reubenites.

THE chief Cities belonging to *Reuben* were these, *Kedemoth*, for which the Vulgar, without any shew of warrant, readeth *Jethon*. The Vulgar or *Hierome* followed the *Septuagint*, those two Verses, 36. and 37. in *Jos. 22.* being wanting in the old Hebrew Copies, and the *Septuagint* readeth *Kedson* for *Kedmoth*, which *Kedson* by writing slip into *Jethon*.

This City which they gave to the Levites, imparts her name to the Desert adjoining: from whence *Moses* sent his Embassy to *Sehon*. In the same place of *Iosua*, where this *Kedemoth* is mentioned, the Vulgar for *Betser* & *villa ejus*, reads *Esofor* in *Solitudine Misfor*, without any ground from the Hebrew: whence *Adrichomius* makes a Town called *Misfor*, in the border between *Reuben* and *Gad*. Farther from *Kedemoth*, neer the Dead Sea (for the Countree between being Mountainous, hath few Cities) they place two Towns of note, *Lafa* or *Lebassh*, of which *Genesis 10. ver. 19.* The Greeks call it *Callirhoe*: neer which there is a Hill, from whence there floweth Springs both of hot and cold, bitter and sweet water; all which soon after their rising, being joyned in one stream, doe make a very wholesome Bath, especially for all contraction of sinews: to which *Herod* the elder, when he was desperate of all other help, repaired, but in vain. Others say, that these Springs arise out of the Hills of *Machernus*, in this Tribe. The like fountains are found in the *Pyrenies*, and in *Peru*, called the Baths of the *Inga's*, or Kings. The other Town is *Machernus*, the next between *Lafa* and *Jordan*: of all that part of the world the strongest In-land City and Castle, standing upon a Mountain

every way unaccessible. It was first fortified by *Alexander Jannæus*, who made it a frontier against the *Arabians*; but it was demolished by *Gabinus* in the war with *Arifobulus*, faith *Josephus*. It was thither (faith *Josephus*) that *Herod* sent *John Baptist*, and wherein he was slain: his Army soon after being utterly overthrown by *Aretas* King of *Arabia*, and himself after this murder never prospering. Not far from *Macherus* was *Bozor*, or *Bosara*, a town of refuge, and belonging to the *Levites*, and neer it *Livias* upon *Jordan*, which *Herod* built in honour of *Livia*, the mother of *Tiberius Cæsar*.

To the North of *Livias* is *Setim*, or *Sittim*: where the children of *Israel* embraced the daughters of *Midian*, or *Moab*: and where *Phineas* pierced the body of *Zimri* and *Cossi* with his spear, bringing due vengeance upon them when they were in the midst of their sin; and from hence *Josua* sent the discoverers to view *Jericho*, staying here untill he went over *Jordan*. As for the Torrent *Setim*, which in this place *Adrichomius* dreams of, reading *Joel* 3. 18. *irrigabit torrentem Setim*: The Vulgar hath *torrentem spinarum*: and *Junius*, *vallem Cedrorum*: expounding it not for any particular place in *Canaan*: but for the Church, in which the just being placed, grow as the cedars, *Psal.* 92. 13.

The plain Country hereabout, by *Moses* called, *The plains of Moab*, where he expounded the book of *Deuteronomy* to the people a little before his death, is in the beginning of the same book precisely bounded by *Moses*. On the South it had the great Desert of *Paran*, where they had long wandered. On the East it had *Chafiroth*, and *Dizabab* (of which two, the former is that *Gazorus*, of which *Ptolomy* in *Palestina*: the later was 20 Tract belonging to the *Nabathees* in *Arabia Petrea*, where was \* *Mezabab*, of which, *Gen.* 36. 39.) by the Geographers called *Medava*, and *Medaba*. On the West it had *Jordan*, and on the North it had *Laban* (in *Junius* edition, by the fault of the Print, *Lamban*, *Deut.* 1. 1.) the same which the Geographers call *Libias*: and some confound it with *Livias*, of which even now we spake.

Also on the same North side towards the confines of *Cælosyria*, it had *Theophel*: whereabout sometime *Pella* of *Cælosyria* stood: which was in the Region of *Decapolis*; and, as *Stephanus* faith, was sometime called *Buris*. It is also noted in *Moses* to be over against or neer unto *Suph*, for which the Vulgar hath the *Red Sea*, as also *Nam.* 2. 14. it tranfareth the word *Suph* in like manner: whereas in this place of *Deuteronomy* there is no addition of any word in the Hebrew to signifie the Sea: and yet the Scripture, when this word is so to be taken, useth the addition of *Mara*, thereby to distinguish it from the Region of *Suph*, or *Suphah*: which doubtlesse was about these plains of *Moab* towards the *Dead Sea*: where the Country being full of reeds, was therefore thus called: as also the *Red Sea* was called *Mare Suph*, for like reason.

The place in these large plains of *Moab*, where *Moses* made those divine exhortations, some say was *Bethbara*, where *John Baptist*, which in the story of *Gideon* is called *Beth-barat*. *Josephus* sayes it was where after the City *Abila* stood, neer *Jordan*, in a place fet with Palm-trees: which fure was the same as *Abel-sittim* in the plains of *Moab*, *Nam.* 33. 49. (that some call *Abel-fathaim*, and *Bel-fathim*) which is reckoned by *Moses* in that place of *Numbers* for the 42. and last place of the *Israelites* incamping in the time of *Moses*: This place is also called *Sittim*: which word if we should interpret, we should rather bring it from Cedars than from Thorns, with *Adrichomius* and others. It was the wood of which the Ark of the Tabernacle was made.

Toward the East of these plains of *Moab*, they place the Cities, *Nebo*, *Baal-meon*, *Silma*, and *Hesbon* the chief City of *Sebon*, and *Elbalel*, and *Kiriathaima* the seat of the *Giant Emim*. Of the two first of these *Moses* seems to give a note that the names were to be changed, because they tasted of the *Moakites* \* *Idolatry*. For *Nebo* (in stead of which, *Junius*, *Esa.* 46. 1. reads *Deus vaticinatur*) was the name of their Idoll-Oracle, and *Baal-meon*, is the habitation of *Baal*. Of the same Idoll was the Hill *Nebo* in these parts so denominated: from whose top, which the common Translators call *Phasgab*, *Moses* before his death saw all the land of *Canaan* beyond *Jordan*. In which story *Junius* doth not take *Phasgab*, or *Pisgab* for any proper name: but for an appellative, signifying a Hill: and so also *Vatabus* in some places, as *Nam.* 21. 20. where he noteth, that some call *Pisgab* that top which looketh to *Jericho*, and *Hair* as it looketh to *Moab*, which opinion may be somewhat strengthened by the name of a City of *Reuben*, mentioned

mentioned *Joel* 13. 20. called *Aphdath-Pisga*, which is as much as *decursus Pisga*: to wit, where the waters did run down from *Pisga*. In the same place of *Josua* there is also named *Beth-Peor*, as belonging to *Reuben*: so called from the Hill *Peor*: from whence also *Baal* the Idoll was called *Baal-Peor*; which they say, was the same as *Priapus*: the chief place of whose worship seems to have been *Bamoth-Babal*, of which also *Joel* 13. in the Cities of *Reuben*: for which, *Nam.* 22. 41. they read, the high places of *Baal* (for so the word signifieth) to which place *Balaak* first brought *Balaam* to curse the *Israelites*.

### ll. III.

Of divers places bordering *Reuben*, belonging to *Midian*, *Moab*, or *Edom*.

Here were besides these, divers places of note over *Arnon*, which adjoynd to *Reuben*: amongst which they place *Callim*, the City of *Phalti*: to whom *Saul* gave his daughter *Michol* from *David*: but *Junius* thinks this Town to be in *Benjamin*: gathering so much out of *Esa.* 10. 29. where it is named among the Cities of *Benjamin*. With better reason perhaps out of *Nam.* 21. 19. we may say that *Mathana* and *Nabalul* were in those confines of *Reuben*: through which places the *Israelites* past after they had left the Well, called *Beer*: Then *Deblathaim*, which the Prophet *Jeremy* threatneth with the rest of the Cities of *Moab*.

*Madian* also is found in these parts, the chief City of the *Madianites* in *Moab*: but not that *Midian*, or *Madian* by the *Red Sea*, wherein *Jethro* inhabited. For of the *Madianites* there were two Nations, of which these of *Moab* became Idolaters, and received an exceeding overthrow by a Regiment of twelve thousand *Israelites*, sent by *Moses* out of the Plains of *Moab*: at such time as *Israel* began to accompany their Daughters: their five Kings with *Balaam* the Soothsayer, were then slain: and their Regall City with the rest destroyed. The other *Madianites*, over whom *Jethro* was Prince or Priest, forgot not the God of *Abraham* their Ancestor; but relieved and assisted the *Israelites* in their painful travels through the Desarts: and were in all that passage their guides. In the South border of *Moab* adjoynding to *Edom*, and sometime reckoned as the chief City of *Edom*, there is that *Petra*, which in the Scriptures is called *Seilah*, which is as much as *rupe*, or *petra*. It was also called *Joabbeel*, as appears by the place, *2 Kings* 14. It was built (faith *Josephus*) by *Receem*, one of those five Kings of the *Madianites*: slain as before is said: after whom it was called *Receem*. Now, they say, it is called *Crae*, and *Mozera*. The Soldans of *Egypt*, for the exceeding strength thereof, kept therein all their treasures of *Egypt* and *Arabia*: of which it is the first and strongest City: the same perhaps which *Pliny* and *Strabo* call *Nabatheia*, whence also the Province adjoynding took name: which name seems to have been taken at first from *Nabathoth*, the son of *Abraham* by *Kethura*. For *Nabatheia* is no where understood for all *Arabia Petrea* (at least where it is not misf-understood) but it is that Province which neighboureth *Judea*. For *Pharan* inhabited by *Ismael*, whose people *Ptolomy* calleth *Pharanites*, in stead of *Ismaelites*, and all those Territories of the *Custier*, *Madianites*, *Amalekites*, *Ismaelites*, *Edomites*, or *Idumeans*, the Lands of *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Hur*, *Sin*, and of *Og* King of *Basjan*, were parts of *Arabia Petrea*: though it be also true, that some part of *Arabia* the Desart belonged to the *Amalekites*, and *Ismaelites*: all which Nations the Scriptures in the first of *Chronicles* the fifth, calls *Hagarens*, of *Hagar*.

This City *Petra*, *Scaurus* besieged with the *Romane* Army, and finding the place in shew impregnable, he was content, by the perswasion of *Antipater*, to take a composition of monie, and to quit it. Yet *Amasias* King of *Juda* (after he had slaughtered ten thousand of the *Arabians* in the valley called *Salinarum*) was also this City. *S. Hierome* findes *Ruth* the *Moabite* to be natural of this City. In the mean time, when the *Christians* held the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*, it had a *Latine Bishop*, having before been under the *Greek Church*. It is seated not far from *Hor*, where *Aaron* died, and on the other side towards the North is the river of *Zared*, or *Zered*, by which *Moses* encamped in the 38. It is called *Adrichomius* describeth the waters of *Memrim*, or rather *Nemrim*, in his Map of *Reuben*, not far hence, and between *Zared* and *Arnon*: and so he doth the Valley of *Save*: but the waters of *Nimra*, or *Beth-Nimra* (for which it seems *Adrichomius* writ *Nemrim*) refresh the plains of *Moab*: and the confluence of those waters of *Nimra* are in the Tribe of *Gad*. *Save* also cannot be found in this place, that is, to the South of *Arnon*, and

under *Midian*. For after *Abraham* returned from the pursuit of the *Assyrian* and *Perſian* Princes, the King of *Sodom* met him in the Valley of *Save*, or *Saveh*, which is the *Kings Dale*, where *Abolom* ſet up his Monument, as it ſeems, not far from *Hieruſalem*. And at the ſame time *Melchizedec* King of *Salem* alſo encountered him. But *Abraham* coming from the North, and *Melchizedec* inhabiting either neer *Bethſan*, otherwiſe *Scythopolis*, in the half Tribe of *Manaſſe*, or in *Hieruſalem* (both places lying to the Weſt of *Jordan*) could not encounter each other in *Arabia*: and therefore *Save*, which was alſo called the *Kings Dale*, could not be in theſe parts.

§. IV.  
Of the Dead Sea.

NOW becauſe the Sea of *Sodom*, or the *Dead Sea*, called alſo the Lake of *Aſphaltitis*, and the *Salt ſea* (in diſtinction from the ſea of *Tyberias*, which was freſh water) alſo to the ſea of the *Wilderneſſe*, or rather the ſea \* of the *Plains*, is often remembered in the Scriptures, and in this ſtory alſo, therefore I think it not impertinent to ſpeak ſomewhat thereof. For it is like unto the *Capſian* Sea, which hath no out-let, or diſburthening. The length of this Lake *Joſephus* makes 180. furlongs (which make 22. miles and a half of ours) and about 50. in breadth, which make 18. of our miles, and ſomewhat more. *Pliny* makes it a great deal leſſe; but thoſe that have of late years ſeen this ſea, did account it (ſaith \* *Weiffenburg*) eight Dutch miles (which is two and thirty of ours) in length: and two and a half of theirs (which is ten of ours) in breadth. Of this Lake *Sea*, *Tacitus* maketh this report: *Lacus eſt in immenſo ambitu, ſpecie maris, ſapore corrupti- or, gravitate odoris accolis peſtifer: neque vento impellitur, neque piſces aut ſuitas aquis col- cres patitur, incertum unde ſuperſecta ut ſolido feruntur, periti, imperitique nandi perinde at- tolluntur.* &c. That it is very great, and (as it were) a ſea of a corrupt taſte: of ſmell infeſtious, and peſtilent to the borderers: it is neither moved nor raiſed by the wind, nor indureth ſhips to live in it, or ſow to ſwim in it. Thoſe things that are caſt into it, and the unſkilfull of ſwim- ing, as well as the ſkilfull, are born up by this water. At one time of the year it caſteth up *Bitumen*: the art of gathering which, Experience (the finder of other things) hath alſo taught. It is uſed in the trimming of ſhips, and the like buſineſſes.

And then of the Land, he ſpeaketh in this ſort: The fields not far from this Lake, which were ſometime fruitful, and adorned with great Cities, were burnt with lightning: of which the ruins remain, the ground looking with a ſad face, as having loſt her fruitfullneſſe; for whatſoever doth either grow, or is ſet thereon, be it fruits or flowers, when they come to ripe- neſſe, having nothing within them, but moulder into aſhes: Thus ſaith *Tacitus*. And it is found by experience, that thoſe *Pomegranates*, and other Apples or Oranges, which do ſtill grow on the banks of this curſed Lake, do look fair, and are of good colour on the out- ſide, but being cut, have nothing but duſt within. Of the *Bitumen* which this Lake caſteth up, it was by the *Greeks* called *Aſphaltitis*. *Veſpaſian* deſirous to be ſatiſfied of theſe reports, went of purpoſe to ſee this Lake, and cauſed certain Captives to be caſt up into it, who were not onely unſkilfull in ſwimming, but had their hands alſo bound be- hind them, yet notwithstanding they were carried on the face of the waters, and could not ſink.

§. V.

Of the Kings of Moab, much of whoſe Country within *Arnon* *Reuben* poſſeſt.

OF the Kings of Moab, whoſe Country (within *Arnon*) *Reuben* poſſeſt (though not taken from Moab, but from *Sehon* the *Amorite*) few are known. *Junius* in the 21. of *Num. v. 14.* nameth *Vaheb*, which ſeems to be the Anceſtor or Predeceſſor of *Balaac*, the ſon of *Zippor*: which *Balaac* ſent for *Balaam* to curſe *Iſrael*. For fearing to contend with *Moſes* by arms, by the examples of *Sehon* and *Og*, he hoped by the help of *Balaam*: curſings or incantments, to take from them all ſtrength and courage, and to caſt on them ſome peſtilent diſeaſes. And though *Balaam* at the firſt, moved by the ſpirit of God, bleſt *Iſrael*, contrary to the hope and deſire of Moab: yet being deſirous in ſome ſort to ſatiſſie him, and to do him ſervice, he adviſed Moab to ſend *Madianitiſh* women among the *Iſraelites*: hoping by them, as by fit inſtruments of miſchief, to draw them to the Idolatry of the *Heathen*: but in the end, he received the reward of his falling from God, and of his evil counſell, and was ſlain among the reſt of the Princes of *Midian*.

After

After theſe times the Kings of the *Moabites* are not named: ſaying that we finde in the firſt of *Chronicles* the fourth, that *Jokim*, and the men of *Chazeaba*, and *Joſab*, and *Sareph*, all being of the iſſue of *Juda*, ſometime had the Dominion in Moab: but as it is written in the ſame Verſe, theſe alſo are ancient things: to wit, as ſome expound it, the particulars of theſe mens governments are no where extant or remaining: or as others, *hæc prius ſunt*, theſe Families of *Juda* were once thus famous: but now their poſterity chooſe rather to abide in *Babylon*, and be Clay-workers to the King there.

Then we finde *Eglon* King of Moab, who with the help of *Ammon* and *Analec* maſter- ed *Iſrael*, and commanded them 18. years: which *Eglon*, *Ehud* ſlew in his own houſe, and 10 afterward 1000. of his Nation. What name the King of Moab had unto whom *David* fled fearing *Saul*, it doth not appear: or whether it were the ſame againſt whom *Saul* made war, it is not manifeſt, for neither are named. But in reſpect that this Moabite was an enemy to *Saul*, he received *David*, & relieved him; knowing that *Saul* fought his life.

After this, *David* himſelf entered the Region of Moab, but not likely in the ſame Kings time: for he ſlaughtered two parts of the people, and made the third part tributary: whereupon it was ſaid of *David*, Moab is my waſh-pot, over Edom will I caſt my ſhoe: meaning, that he would reduce them to ſuch an abjection, and appoint them for baſe ſervices: and that he would tread down the *Idumeans*.

The next King after *David*'s time of the Moabites, whoſe name liveth, was *Meſha*: who 20 falling from *Juda*, (perhaps in remembrance of the ſeverity of *David*) fattened himſelf to the Kings of *Iſrael*, and paid tribute to *Ahab*, 100000. Lambs, and 200000. Rams with the wooll: who revolting again from *Iſrael* after the death of *Ahab*, was invaded by *Jehoram*, with whom joyned the Kings of *Juda* & *Idumæa*: and being by theſe three Kings preſt and broken, he fled to *Kir-hareſeth*, as is elſe-where ſhewed. There is alſo mention made of the Moabites without the Kings name; when that Nation, aſſiſted by the *Ammonites* and *Idumeans*, invaded *Jehoſaphat*: and by reaſon of ſome private quarrels among themſelves, the Moabites and *Ammonites* ſet upon the *Idumeans*, and ſlaughtered them: and then one againſt another, ſo as *Jehoſaphat* had a notorious victo- ry over them all, without either blood or wound. Alſo in the time of *Hieremy* the Pro- phet, there was a King of Moab which is not named, which was after *Meſha* of Moab many deſcendants: for *Meſha* lived with *Jehoram*, and this Moabite in *Zedeckia*'s time, four- teen Kings of *Juda* coming between, who waſted three hundred and odde years.

§. V.

Of the memorable places of the *Gadites*, and the bordering places of *Ammon*.

THE Territory adjoining to *Reuben*, is that of *Gad*: whereof all that part which joyned to the Mountains, was ſometime in the poſſeſſion of the *Ammonites*, as far to the South as *Aroer*. Of the children of *Gad*, the ſeventh ſon of *Jacob* by *Zelpha*, a 40 hand-maid of *Lea*, theſe parted out of *Egypt*, and died in the *Deſerts*, 4550. and of their ſons entered the Land promiſed, 45000. bearing arms: from the half Tribe of *Manaſſe*, the River of *Jaboc* divided them: from *Reuben*, the Cities of *Heſbon*, *Elbe*, and *Aphce*.

The chief City of *Gad* was *Aroer*, which they make to be the ſame with *Ar*, or *Rab- bath Moab*, the great or commanding Moab. But the learned *Junius* attending diligently to thoſe words of *Moſes*, *Deut. 2. 36.* *Ab Harobero, quæ eſt in ripa ſiniſtris Arnon, ex civitate iſta quæ eſt in ſumme*; where the city in the river is diſtinguiſhed from the city upon the bank of the river, as alſo in like manner (*Joſ. c. 12. v. 2. and c. 13. 9.*) thinketh that *Harob- er*, which doubtleſſe belonged to the *Gadites* (as *Numb. 32. 34.* it is ſaid that they built ſoit) was indeed ſeated neer *Har* of the Moabites, but divers from it. For that *Har* was never poſſeſt by *Moſes*, it is plain *Deuteronomy* 2. 9. where God forbidting *Moſes* to touch it, ſaith he hath given *Har* for an inheritance to the ſons of *Lot*. Now that this City, which in divers places is ſaid to be within, and in the middle of the River of *Arnon* (and ſo diſtinguiſhed from *Harobher*, which is ſaid in the ſame places to be on the bank of *Arnon*) is *Har* of the Moabites, the ſame *Junius* proveth out of *Numbers*, *ch. 21. v. 15.* where *Arnon* is ſaid to be divided into divers ſtreams, where or among which *Har* is ſeated: And the ſame is confirmed by the place of *Joſ. 13. ver. 25.* where *Harobher* is ſaid to be ſeated before *Rabbab*: which *Rabbab*, as it ſeems, cannot be the

\* So *Junius* reads for the Hebrew, *Har- beth* every where, and ſo alſo the edition of *atabius*, *Deut. 3. 17.* though *Deut. 4. 44.* it hath more ſoliti- tudinis, as alſo 2 *Reg. 14. 25.* the reaſon of this name ſeems to be, becauſe it joyns to the plains of *Mo-* ab, which are called *Har- beth Moab*, *Deut. 34. 1.* as alſo we have *Ceſulob* in *Harbath*, that is in the plains, to wit, of *Za- bulon*, 1 *Mat. 9. 2.* whence *Adrichomius* imagines a ci- ty in *Zabulon*, called *Araba*, a *Deſer- iter*. *Sand.*

Rabbah of the Ammonites (for they feat not Harohar neer it, nor in sight of it) and therefore by Rabbah here, we must understand Rabbah of Moab, which they make to be Ar, or Har: and so we must needs distinguish it from Harober. And as for Har (which also gave the name to the coast adjoining) it seems it continued in the possession of the Moabites, after they had once expelled the Giant-like people called Emims, first weakened by Chedorloamer and his Associates: but Harober by the interchange of times suffered many ancient changes, as being won from the Moabites by Sehon, and from him by the Israelites, and from them, as it seems in the story of Jephtha, by the Ammonites: and from the Ammonites again by the Israelites, under the conduct of Jephtha. In S. Hieron's time the greatest part of this City perished by an earth-quake, as also Zoar, in which Lot lay: ved himself in the destruction of Sodom, seated not far hence; which, they say, was therefore called *Vitula consternans*, because as a wanton tumbling heifer, the was thrice overthrown with earth-quake; for which cause also Hierome seems to think that this Zoar was called *Saliffa*, or *Bal-Saliffa*, as if *Baal* had been a remainder of the old name *Balah*, of *Belah*, (of which *Gen. 14. 2.* and *Saliffa*, which hath a signification of the ternary number, had alluded to the three earth-quake.

Brochard takes Harober to be Petra, but erroneously, as before it is noted; seeing that Petra was in the South border of Moab adjoining to Edom, whereas Harober is in the North-East border. Between Harober and Jordan they feat Dibon, which is attributed to the Gadites, because they are said to have built it, *Numbers 32. 34.* though *Josua 13. 20* verse 17. it is said that Moses gave it to the *Reubenites*. Of this City among the rest of Moab, both Esay and Hieremy prophesied, that it should perish, and the Lakes about it run with the blood of the Inhabitants. It was a great Village neer Arnon in Saint Hieron's time.

Keeping the banks of Arnon, one of the next Cities of fame to Arer, was Bethnimrah, of which Esay prophesied, *That the waters thereof should be dried up: and all the vale of Moab withered.* Not far from Bethnimrah in this Tribe, *Adrichomius* placeth *Jogbeba*, and Nobach, or Nobe: of both which we read in the story of Gideon: and that *Jogbeba* was in Gad, built by the Gadites, it appears, *Numbers 32. 35.* and therefore Nobach also must needs be in these parts; but whether in Gad or Manasse it is not certain: only so that it was anciently called Kenath, Moses witnesseth. Nobach also (saith he) went and took Kenath with her Town, and called it Nobach of his own name, where because the Verses precedent speak of the *Manassites*, and because it is not likely that Moses would have severed this feat of the Gadites from the rest, of which he spake before, *ver. 34.* 35, 36. therefore it may seem that this Nobach was in that part of Manasse which was in the East of Jordan, though *Adrichomius* place it in Gad. For whereas he supposeth it to be the same with Nob, which Saul destroyed, of this we shall speak (a) in the Tribe of Benjamin. And as for that Karkor, where Zebab and Zalmonnah rested themselves in their flight from Gideon, to which place Gideon marched through this Nobach and *Jogbeba*, though some place it in Gad, and make it the same with Kir-chares, of which *Esay 15.* and *2 Reg. 3. 25.* yet there can be no certainty that it was in Gad: and if it be the same with Kir-chares, it is certain, that it was still a principall City held by the Moabites, and not in the Tribe of Gad.

In the body of this Tribe of Gad they place Hataroth: of which name the Scripture witnesseth that two Cities were built by the Gadites; the former simply called Hataroth, the later Hataroth-Sophan: for which later the vulgar makes two Cities, Roth and Shopan: the name Hataroth, is as much as *Corone*.

In the Valley of the Kingdom of Sehon, together with Bethnimra, of which we have spoken, *Jos. 13. 27.* nameth Beth-haram and Succoth: the former, *Numb. 32. 36.* (where it is called Beth-haram) together with Bethnimra, is said to have been built by the Gadites, which (perhaps the rather, because in Josua it is called Beth-haram) some take to be Betaramphtha, (of which (b) *Jos. 13. 27.* after by Herod called Julius. But whether this Betaramphtha were corrupted from Beth-haram, or from Beth-Aramatha (of which *Aramath* there is mention in (c) *Jos. 13. 27.* or from Beth-Rempnan (of which *Rempnan*, an Idoll of those Countries, we read, *Abis 7. 43.* and to which Junius refers the name of the City *Rephan*, 1 *Macchab. 37.*) of this question it were hard to resolve. But touching Julius (according to *Jos. 13. 27.* sometime Betaramphtha) the same *Jos. 13. 27.* placeth in the Region of Peræa, beyond Jordan, which *Regio Peræa*, as the Greek word signifieth, is

no more than *Regio ulterior*, the Countrey beyond the River; and therefore they which labour to fet down the bounds of this Peræa, take more pains than needs. Fourteen Villages this Julius had belonging unto it, according to *Jos. 13. 27.* He makes it to have been built by Herod Antipas, and named Julius, in honour of the adoption of *Livia Augustus* his wife, into the Julian Family: by which adoption she was called Julia. Another Julius, he saith was built by Philip the brother of Herod, in the lower *Galanitis*, which, he saith, is the same as *Bethsaida*.

Upon the Sea of Galilee, neer to Julius in Peræa, (that is, in the Region over Jordan) they finde *Petzabobra*, as it is called in *Jos. 13. 27.* for Beth-zeob, which is as much as *domus* *Jos. 13. 27.* *Romani*, came with many others into Hierusalem, and was there besieged. *Jos. 13. 27.* In the place noted, reports a lamentable History; how for hunger she eat her own child, with other tragical accidents hereupon ensuing.

Of Succoth (which we said *Jos. 13. 27.* is placed with Ben-haran, in the Valley of the Kingdom of Sehon) it is plain by the story of Gideon that it is neer unto Jordan: where it is said, that as he was past Jordan with his three hundred, wearie in the pursuit of Zebab and Zalmonnah, he requested relief of the men of Succoth: who denying him, and that with contempt, in Gideons return were by him tortured, as it seems under a threshing-Car or Tribulum, between which and their flesh he put Thorns to teare their flesh as they were prest and trod under the Tribulum, and after which fort also David used some of the Ammonites, though not with Thorns, but with Iron teeth of the Tribulum. As for the name of Succoth, which signifieth such Tabernacles as were made in haste, either for Men or Cattell, *Moses, Gen. 33. 17.* witnesseth that the originall of the name was from such harbours, which Jacob in his return from Mesopotamia built in that place: as also the place beyond the Red Sea, where the children of Israel, as they came from Ramesses in Egypt, had their first Station, was upon like reason called Succoth: because there they set up their first Tabernacles or Tents: which they used after for forty yeers in the Wildernesse. In remembrance whereof the Feast of Succoth, or Tabernacles, was instituted.

Other four Cities of Gad are named *Jos. 21. 38.* Ramoth in Gilead, Machanaïm, Cheshbon, and Jahzer, all of them by the Gadites given to the Levites, of which Jahzer, as Cheshbon, or Hermon was a chief City of Sehon, whence *Num. 32. 1.* his Country is called the Land of Jahzer. It was taken by Moses, having first sent spies to view it. In the first of the *Chronicles* it is made part of Gilead. In latter times (as it may be gathered by the Prophecy of Esay touching Moab) it was possessed by the Moabites: to which place of Esay, also Hieremy in a like prophecy alludes. It was at length regained (but as it seems from the Ammonites) by Judas Macchabæus: as it is 1 *Macc. 5. 8.* where Junius out of *Jos. 13. 27.* reads Jahzer, though the Greek hath Gazer. For Gazer, or Gezer (as he gathereth out of *Jos. 16. 2. 8.* and *Jud. 1. 29.* was far from these Countries of Sehon, seated in the West border of Ephraim, not possessed by the Israelites, until Solomon's time, for whom the King of Egypt wan it from the Canaanite, and gave it him as a Dowrie with his Daughter.

Of Cheshbon it may be marvelled that in the place of Josua, and 1 *Chron. 6. 81.* it should be said to have been given to the Levites by the Gadites, seeing *Jos. 13. 17.* it is reckoned for a principall City of the Reubenites: *Adrichomius*, and such as little trouble themselves with such scruples, finding Casbon, 1 *Macc. 5. 36.* among the Cities of Gilead, taken by Judas Macchabæus, makes two Cities of one: as if this Casbon had been the Cheshbon of Gad, and that of Reuben distinct from it: but the better reconciliation is, That it being a bordering City, between Gad and Reuben, was common to both, and that the Gadites gave their part to the Levites, for so also it seems that in like reason Dibon is said in one place built by the Gadites, and in another given to Reuben, as before is noted. Of Machanaïm, which word signifieth a double Army, we read *Gen. 32. 2.* that it was therefore so called, because the Angels of God in that place met Jacob in manner of another Host or company, to joyn with his for his defence: as also *Lu. 2. 13.* we read of a multitude of the Host of Heaven, which appeared to the Shepherds, at the time of our Saviours birth: and so unto the godly King Oswald of Northumberland, when he was soon after to joyn battell with the Pagan Penda of middle-England, Beda reports, that the like comfort appeared: whence the Field where the Battell

was fought, in the North-parts of England, is called Heaven-field. In this City of *Macchanaim*, David abode during the rebellion of *Abshalom*: and the same, for the strength thereof, *Abner* chose for the seat of *Ishbosheth*, during the war between *David* and the house of *Saul*.

Of the fourth Town, which was *Ramoth in Gilead*, we read often in the Scripture, for the recovering of which, King *Achab* lost his life. *Junius* thinks that *Ramatha Mitspha*, of which *Jos. 13. 26.* was this *Ramoth in Gilead*. Concerning the place where *Laban* and *Jacob* sware one to the other, as it was called *Gilead*, which is as much as a witnessing heap, because of the heap of stones which *Laban* and his sons left for a monument, so also that it was called *Mitspah*, which signifieth over-looking (because there they to called God to over-see and be witness to their Covenant) it is plain by the place, *Gen. 31. 49.* That in these parts there was not only a Town, but likewise a Region called *Mitspha*, it appears *Jos. 11. 3.* where we read of the *Chivites* under *Hermion*, in the Country of *Mitspha*, \* the Town of *Mitspha*, as it seems both by this place, and in the eighth ver. following, being not in the Hill Country, but in the Valley. But seeing that *Jephtha* the Judge of *Israel*, who after he came home from *Tob*, (whither his brethren had driven him) dwelt in the Town of *Mitspha*, who doubtlesse was of the Tribe of *Manasse*, and thence at first expelled by his brethren, it may seem that they do not well, which place this Town of *Mitspha* rather in *Gad* than in *Manasse*. By *Judas Machabeus* this Town of *Mitspha* (whether in *Gad* or in *Manasse*) was utterly spoiled and burnt, 20 and the Males of it slain: for it was then posselt of the *Ammonites*.

\* Of other towns of this name, see in the Tribe of Benjamin.

*Jud. 11. 36.*

1 *Mac. 5. 35.*

*Gen. 32. 36.*

*Jud. 8. 17.*

2 *Sam. 19. 33.*

*Deut. 3. 14.*

*Jos. 12. 5.*

6 The letters D & R in the

Hebrew are very

like, so that

it is not mis-

taken for ano-

ther, and some-

time without

mistaking one

is put for ano-

ther, as for

*Rothaim*.

1 *Ebr. 7.* we

have *Desolaim*.

*Gen. 10. 4.*

\* Other names

of this City,

according to

*Stephanus*,

were *Ammana*

and *Abarte*:

but in this la-

ter perhaps the

mistake,

which might

seem to be the

same *Abarte*.

one of the

chief Cities of

Between *Succoth* (of which we have spoken) and the River *Jaboc*, was that *Peniel*, or *Peniel*, which name signifieth *Locum faciei Dei*: A place where the face of God was seen: so called for memory of the Angels appearing to *Jacob*, and wrestling with him there: the churlishness of which City, in refusing to relieve *Gideon*, was the cause that in his return he overthrew their Tower, and slew the chief Aldermen thereof. To these places of the *Gadites*, they add *Rogelim*, the City of that great and faithful subject *Barzilai*, as it seems, not far from *Nabemaima*, where he sustained King *David*, during *Abshalom*'s rebellion. To these they add the Town of *Gaddi*, *Arnon*, and *Alimis*, of which *Gaddi*, being in *Hebrew* no more than *Gaddita*, is ignorantly made the name of a place. *Arnon* 30 also no where appears to be the name of a Town, but still of a River. *Alimis* *Adrichomius* frames of *A. Anisus*, 1 *Mac. 5. 26.* for that the name should rather be *Alema*, but *Ju-* like also that *Adrichomius* reads *Malle*, for this in *Alimis*: and understanding *Malle* to be put for *Millo*, and to be as much as *Munitio*, (as we have shewed touching the *Millo* of the *Sechemites*) he takes this *Malle* to be *Mitspha* *Moabitaram*, of which 1 *Sam. 22. 3.* As for that *Mageb* which *Adrichomius* finds in this Tribe of *Gad*, it is that *Mahacath*, which *Moses* notes to be as far as the furthest of *Manasses*, out of the bounds of this Tribe. So also *Dathema*, of which 1 *Mac. 5. 10.* (which *Junius* takes to be *(b)* *Rithma*, of which *Nam. 33. 18.* a place of strength in the Territory of the *Ammonites*) and in like manner *Minnith*, and *Abel vincarum*, though by some they be attributed to the *Gadites*, 40 or to their borders, yet they are found farther off. For of the two last we read in *Jephtha*'s pursuit of the *Ammonites*: seated, as it seems by that place of the Book of Judges, the former of them in the South border, and the other of them in the East border, both far removed from the *Gadites*. But the chief City of the *Ammonites* was nearer, and not far from the borders of *Gad*. It is called in the Scriptures sometimes *Rabbath*, as *Deut. 3. 11.* but more often *Rabba*. It is supposed to be that \* *Philadelphia* which *Pto-* *lomie* finds in *Cælosyria*. *Hierome* and *Calistus*, in *Arabia*. It was conquered by *Og* from the *Ammonites*: but, as it seems, never posselt by the *Israelites*, after the overthrow of *Og*, but left to the *Ammonites*: whereupon at length it became the Regall seat of the chief Cities of *Ammonites*, but of old it was the possession of the *Zamzumimims*: which is as much to 50 say, as men for all manner of craft and wickedness infamous. The same were also called *Raphaim*, of whom was *Og*, which recovered much of that which the *Ammonites* had got from his Ancestors: who having been first beaten by the *Affyrans*, and their assistants (as the *Emims* in *Moab*, and the *Horims* in *Seir* had been) were afterward the easier conquered by the *Ammonites*, as the *Emims* were by *Moab*, and the *Horims* by the *Idumeans*. Yet did the races of *Emoreus*, of whom these Giants were defended, con- cause of the river *Jaboc*'s winding about it but in the place 2 *Sam. 27.* whence he gathers this opinion, *Junius* reads *intercepti ab aris- quum*, if we must read with others. *epi ut in eam aquam*. yet it cannot be taken of *Rabba* itself, but of some other Fort adjoining. *Gen. 44*

end

tend with the Conquerors for their ancient inheritance: and as *Sehon* of *Heshbon* had dis- posselt *Moab*, so had *Og* of *Basam* the *Ammonites*, and between them recovered the best part of all the Valley, between the Mountains and *Jordan*. For this *Og* was also master of *Rabba*, or *Philadelphia*: And in the possession of the one or of the other of these two *Moses* and *Israel*, found all those Cities and Countries which were given to *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*. So that though it were 450. years since that these *Zamzumimims*, or *Raphaims*, were expelled, yet they did not forget their ancient inheritance: but having these two Kings of one kindred, and both valiant and undertaking men, to wit, *Og* and *Sehon*, both *Amorites*, they recovered again much of their lost pos- 10 sessions, and thrust the sons of *Lot* over the Mountains, and into the Desarts. And as the Kings or Captains of *Persia* and *Affyria* (remembered in the 14. of *Genesis*) made way for *Ammon*, *Moab*, and *Edom*; so by that great conquest which *Moses* had over those two *Amorites*, *Og* and *Sehon*, did the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* take opportunity to look back again into those Plains; and when the *Reubenites*, *Gadites* and *Manassites*, forsook the worship of the living God, and became froward and licentious; they taking the advantage, invaded them, and cast them out of their possessions: and were sometime their Masters, sometime their Tributaries, as they pleased or displeased God: and according to the wisdom and vertue of their Commanders.

In this City of *Rabba*, was the Iron bed of *Og* found, nine cubits of length, and four 20 of breadth. The City was taken in *David*'s time, and the Inhabitants slain with great severity, and by divers torments. At the first assault thereof *Urias* was shot to death, having been, by direction from *David*, appointed to be employed in the leading of an assault, where he could not escape: wherein also many of the best of the Army perished: and wherein *David* so displeased God, as his affairs had ill successe afterward, even to his dying day. From hence had *David* the weighty and rich Crown of Gold, which the Kings of *Ammon* wore: or which, as some expound it, was used to be put on the head of their Idoll, weighing a talent, which is 60. pound weight after the common ta- 30 lent. In the time of *Christians* it had a Metropolitane Bishop, & under him twelve others.

The mountains which are described within this Tribe, and that of *Manasse*, with a 30 part of *Reuben*, are those that *Ptolomy* calleth the hills of *Hippus*, a City of *Cælosyria*: and *Strabo*, \* *Trachones*: the same which continue from near *Damascus*, unto the Desarts of *Moab*: and receive divers names, as commonly Mountains do, which neighbour and bound divers Countries: for from the South part, as far Northwards as *Abroth*, the chief City of *Og*, they are called *Galaad*, or *Gilead*; from thence North-ward they are known by the name of *Hermion*, for so *Moses* calleth them: The *Sidonians* name them *Sbirim*, but the *Amorites*, *Shenir*, others, *Seir*: of which name all those hills also were cal- led, which part *Judea* and *Idumæa*: and lastly, they are called *Libanus*, for so the Prophet *Hieremy* makes them all one, calling the high mountains of *Galaad*, the head of *Libanus*. These Mountains are very fruitfull, and full of good pastures, and have many Trees 40 which yeeld *Balsammum*, and many other medicinable drugs. The Rivers of this Tribe are the waters of *Nimrah*, and *Dibon*, and the River *Jaboc*: others do also fancy another River, which rising out of the Rocks of *Arnon*, falleth into *Jordan*.

## §. VI.

Of the *Ammonites*, part of whose Territories the *Gadites* won from *Og*, the King of *Basam*.

THIS Tribe of *Gad* posselt half the Country of the *Ammonites*, who together with the *Moabites*, held that part of *Arabia* *Petræa* called *Nabatheæ*, as well within as 50 without the Mountains of *Gilead*: though at this time when the *Gadites* wan it, it was in the possession of *Sehon* and *Og*, *Amorites*: and therefore *Moses* did not expell the *Ammonites*, but the *Amorites*, who had thrust the issues of *Lot* over the mountains *Trachones*, or *Gilead*, as before. After the death of *Othoniel* the first Judge of *Israel*, the *Ammonites* joyned with the *Moabites* against the *Hebrews*, and so continued long. *Jephtha* 1 *Jud. 11.* Judge of *Israel* had a great conquest over one of the Kings of *Ammon*, but his name is omitted. In the time of *Sanniel* they were at peace with them again.

Afterward we find that cruell King of the *Ammonites*, called *Nahas*: who besieging *Jabes Gilead*, gave them no other conditions but the pulling out of their right eyes. 1 *Sam. 11.*

The

The reason why he tendred so hard a composition, was (besides this desire to bring shame upon *Israel*) because those *Gileadites* using to carry a Target on their left arms, which could not but shadow their left eyes, should by losing their right, be utterly disabled to defend themselves: but *Saul* came to their rescue, and delivered them from that danger. This *Nabab*, as it may seem, became the confederate of *David*, having friended him in *Saul's* time, though *Josephus* thinks that this *Nabab* was slain in the battell, when *Saul* raised the siege of *Jabes*, who affirmeth that there were three Kings of the *Mobabites* of that name.

*Hannu* succeeded *Nabab*: to whom when *David* sent to congratulate his establishment, and to confirm the former friendship which he had with his father, he most contemptuously and proudly cut of the Ambassadors garments to the knees, and shaved the half of their beards. But afterward, notwithstanding the aids received from the *Aramites*, subject to *Adadazer*, and from the *Reguli* of *Rehob*, and *Maacab*, and from *Istob*, yet all those *Arabians*, together with the *Ammonites*, were overturned: their chief City of *Rabba*, after *Philadelphia*, was taken; the Crown which weighed a talent of gold, was set on *David's* head; all such as were prisoners, *David* executed with strange severity; for with saws and harrows he tare them in pieces, and cast the rest into lime-kills. *Iosaphat* governing *Juda*, they afflicted the *Mobabites* their neighbours against him, and perished together. *Ostias* made them Tributaries, and they were again by *Jotham* enforced to continue that tribute, and to increase it, to wit, a hundred talents of silver, ten thousand measures of wheat, and ten thousand of barley: which the *Ammonites* continued two years.

The fifth King of the *Ammonites*, of whose name we read, was *Baalis* the confederate of *Zedekia*: after whose taking by *Nabuchodonosor*, *Baalis* sent *Ismael*, of the blood of the Kings of *Juda*, to flay *Gedaliah*, who served *Nabuchodonosor*.

## §. VII.

## Of the other half of Manasse.

The rest of the Land of *Gilead*, and of the Kingdom of *Og* in *Basán*, with the land of *Hus* and *Argob*, or *Trachonitis* (wherein also were part of the small Territories of *Batania*, *Gaulonitis*, *Gessuri*, *Machati*, and *Auranitis*) was given to the half Tribe of *Manasse* over *Jordan*; of which those three later Provinces defended themselves against them for many ages. But *Batania* *Pholomy* setteth farther off, and to the North-East, as a skirt of *Arabia* the Desert: and all those other Provinces before named with *Petra*, as *Thibithis* and *Iuræa*, he nameth but as part of *Calosyria*; as far South as *Rabba*, or *Philadelphia*: likewise all the rest which belonged to *Gad*, and *Reuben*, having the Land near the Dead Sea, he makes a part of *Arabia Petraea*: for many of these small Kingdoms take not much more ground than the Country of *Kent*.

*Basán*, or, after the Septuagint, *Basaniitis*, stretcheth it self from the River of *Jaboc* to the East to the Tribe of the (a) *Machati* and *Gessuri*: and from the mountains to *Jordan*, a Region exceeding fertile; by reason whereof it abounded in all sorts of Cattell. It had also the goodliest woods of all that part of the world: especially of oaks, which bare mast (of which the Prophet *Zacharias*; *Howle*, *O ye oaks of Basán*) and by reason hereof they bred so many swine, as (b) 2000. in one herd were carried headlong into the Sea, by the unclean spirits which *Christ* had cast out of one of the *Gadarens*. It had in it 60. Cities walled and defended: all which, after *Og* and his sons were slain, *Jair*, defended of *Manasse*, conquered, and called the Country after his own name, *Aurath Jair*, or the Cities of *Jair*.

The principall Cities of this half Tribe (for I will omit the rest) are these, *Pella*, sometimes (c) *Butis*, otherwise *Berenice*; by *Seleucus* King of *Syria*, it is said to have been called so it is gathered *Pella*, after the name of that *Pella* in *Macedon*: in which both *Philip* the Father, and his Son, *Alexander* the great, were born. It was taken, and in part demolished by *Alexander Jannæus*, King of the Jews, because it refused to obey the Jews laws: but it was repaired by *Pompey*, and annexed to the Government of *Syria*. It is now but a Village, laith *Niger Carmath*, by the River of *Jaboc*, taken by (d) *Judas Maccabæus*: where he fell. 4. 11. 5. & c.

a So they call them of *Mabath*, which *Mabath* somewhat hath been spoken toward the end of the fifth Paragraph of this Chapter, see the 1. Mac. 5. 26. and Deut. 2. 14. and Jof. 12. 5. b Mar. 5. 13. c Anciently, as it seems, it was called *Tybel*. See above in the bounds of *Moab*, in this Chapter, Sect. 4. 11. 2. d 1 Mac. 5.

set on fire the (e) Temple of their Idols: together with all those that fled thereunto for Sanctuary; and neer it they place the Castle of *Carnion*, of which 2 *Mac.* 12. 22. Then the strong City of (f) *Ephron* neer *Jordan*: which refusing to yeeld passage f. 1. Mac. 5. 10. (g) *Judas Maccabæus*, was forced by him by assault, and taken and burnt with great slaughter. 8. 2. Mac. 12. 27.

*Jabes Gilead*, or *Jabesut*, was another of the Cities of this half Tribe, which being beleiged by *Nabab* (b) King of the *Ammonite*, was delivered by *Saul*, as is (i) Jewell where mentioned. In memory whereof these Citizens (k) recovered, embalmed and buried the bodies of *Saul* and his sons: which hung despitfully over the walls of *Bothjan*, or *Scythopolis*. (l) *Gaddara*, or *Gadara*, is next to be named, seated by *Pliny* on a Hill neer the River *Hieromiacæ*, which River *Ortelius* seems to think to be *Jaboc*. At the foot of the Hill there spring forth also hot baths, as at *Maacherus*. *Alexander Jannæus* after ten moneths siege, wan it, and subverted it. *Pompey* restored it: and *Gabinus* (m) made it one of the five Courts of Justice in *Palestine*. *Hiersalem* being the first, *Gadara* the second, *Emath*, or *Amathus* the third, *Hierico* and *Sephora* in *Galile*, the fourth and fifth. The Citizens impatiently bearing the tyranny of *Herod*, furnished *Acalonitis*, accused him to *Julius Cæsar* of many crimes: but perceiving that they could not prevail, and that *Herod* was highly favoured of *Cæsar*, fearing the terrible (n) revenge of *Herod*, they slew themselves: some by strangling, others by leaping over high Towers, others by drowning themselves. 1. 13. Jof. 1. 5. ant. 13.

To the East of *Gadara* they place *Sebei* (o) in which, *Jof. ant.* 5. 13. faith, *Jephtha* was buried: whence others reading with the *Vulgar*, *Jud.* 1. 2. 7. *Sepulchrum est in Croitate Jha Gilead*, (for in *una Croitate Gilead*) imagine *Gilead* to be the name of a City, and to be the same with *Sebei*. In like manner following the *Vulgar*, 1. *Mac.* 5. 26. where it readeth *Casphor* for *Chesbon*; the same *Adrichomius* imagineth it to be *ampla & firma Gileaditarum Croitas*: so of one City *Herbon*, or *Chesbon*, which they call *Esfchbon*, the chief City of *Sehon*, in the Tribe of *Reuben*, he imagineth two more: This *Casphor* in *Manasse*, and a City in *Gad* which he calleth *Carbon*, of which we have admonished the Reader heretofore. Of *Gamala* (so called, because the Hill on which it stood, was in fashion like the back of a Cammell) which *Josephus* placeth not far from *Gadara*, in the lower *Gaulanitis* over against *Taricheæ*, which is on the West side of the Sea or Lake of *Tiberias*, see this *Josephus* in the fourth book of the Jewish war: where he describes the place by nature to be almost invincible: and in the storie of the siege, shewes how *Vespasian* with much danger of his own person, entering it, was at first repulst, with other very memorable accidents: and how at length, after the coming of *Titus* when it was taken, many leaping down the rocks with their wives and children, to the number of five thousand, thus perished: besides four thousand slain by the Romans: so that none escaped, save only two women that hid themselves. 4. 1. 1. 3. 5. 1. 3. 5.

About four miles West from *Gadara*, and as much East from *Tiberias* (which is on the other side of the Lake) *Josephus* placeth *Hippus*, or *Hippene*, whence *Ptolome* gives the names to the hills that compass the plains in which it standeth: so that it may seem to have been of no small note. It is seated far from the hill Country: on the East of the Lake, as also *Pliny* noteth lib. 5. cap. 15. It was restored by *Pompey*: after by *Augustus* added to *Herods* Tetrarchie: it was wasted by the Jews, in the beginning of their rebellion: when by many massacres of their Nation, they were enraged against their borders. 6. 2. 1. 3. 5. 1. 3. 5.

The next City of note, but of more ancient fame, is *Edrebi*, or *Edrai*, wherein *Og* of another King of *Basán* chiefly abode, when *Moses* and *Israel* invaded him: and neer unto this Edrebi in his Regall City, it was that he lost the battell and his life. It stood in *S. Hieron's* time: and had the name of *Adar*, or *Adara*. Not far from these townes neer *Jordan*, in this valley, stood *Geraffa*, or *Gergeffa*, inhabited by the *Gergestes*, descended of the fifth son of *Canaan*. Of these *Gergestes* we read *Mat.* 8. 28. that *Christ* coming from the other side of the Lake of *Tiberias*, landed in their coasts: where calling the Devils out of the possessed, he permitted them to enter into the herd of Hoggies: in which story, for *Gergeffes*, or *Gergeffus*, *S. Luke* and *S. Marke* have *Gadarens*: not as if these were all one (for *Gergeffa*, or *Geraffa* is a distinct Towne in these parts from *Gadara*) but the bounds being confounded, and the Cities neighbours, either might well be named in this story. This City received many changes and calamities: of which *Josephus* hath often mentioned. 1. 1. 3. 5. 1. 3. 5.



tion. For besides other adventures, it was taken by *L. Annius*, Lieutenant to *Vespasian*: and 1000. of the ablest young men put to the sword, and the City burnt. In the year 1120. it was rebuilt by *Baldwine King of Damascus*: and in the same year recovered by *Baldwine de Burgo King of Jerusalem*: and by him utterly razed. Neer unto *Gerasa* is the village of *Magedan*, or, after the *Syriack*, *Magedu*, or, after the *Greek*, *Magdala*, where the *Tharisees* and *Sadducees* desired of our Saviour a signe from Heaven: the same place, or some adjoining to it, which *S. Mark* calleth *Dalmanntha*. By the circumstances of which story it appears, that this coast lay between the Lake of *Tiberias* and the Country of *Decapolis*. *Brochard* makes both these places to be one; and finds it to be *Phiale*, the fountain of *Jordan*, according to *Josephus*: but this *Phiale* is too far from the Sea of *Galilee*, and from *Bethsaida*, to be either *Magdala* or *Dalmanntha*. For as it appears by the story, not far hence, towards the North, was the *Desart* of *Bethsaida*, where *Christ* filled 5000. people with the five barley loaves and two fishes.

On the North of this *Bethsaida*, they place *Julias*, not that which was built by *Herod*, but the other by *Philip*, which boundeth the Region *Trachonitis* towards the South. It was sometime a Village, and not long after the birth of *Christ*, it was compassed with a wall by *Philip the Tetrarch of Iturea* and *Trachonitis*: and after the name of *Julia*, the wife of *Tiberias*, called *Julias*, as hath been further spoken in the Tribe of *Gad*: where it was noted that *Josephus* makes this *Julias* to be the same as *Bethsaida*. Upon the East side of the fame Lake of *Tiberias* stands *Corozaim*, or *Corazin*, of which *Christ* in *Matth. 23*; *Woe be unto thee Corazin*.

But the principall City of all these in ancient time was *Asteroth*: sometime peopled with the Giants *Raphaim*: and therefore the Countrey adjoining called the Land of Giants, of whose race was *Og King of Basan*. In *Genesis* this City is called *Asteroth of Carnaim*, whence *1 Mac. 5. 26*. it is called simply *Carnaim*, as *Jos. 13. 21* it is called *Asteroth*, without the addition of *Carnaim*. The word *Carnaim* signifieth a pair of Horns, which agree well with the name of their Idoll *Asteroth*, which was the image of a sheep, as it is elsewhere noted, that *Asteroth* in *Deuteronomy* signifieth sheep. Others, from the ambiguity of the Hebrew take *Karnaim* to have been the name of the people which inhabited this City: and expound it *heroes* \* *radiantes*. For of old the *Raphai* which inhabited this City (*Gen. 14. 5*.) were Giant-like men, as appears by comparing the words *Deut. 3. 11*. *Og ex residuo gigantum*, with the words *Jos. 13. 12*. *Og ex reliquis Raphaim*: but if the *Karnaim* (or *Carnajim*) were these *Raphai*, the word would not have been in the duall number: neither would *Moses* in the place of *Genesis* have said the *Raphai* in *Asteroth* of the *Karnaim*, but either the *Raphai* in *Asteroth* of the *Raphai*, or some other way fittest for periphrasis: for this naming of both thus in the same clause, distinguisheth one from the other.

Not far from *Asteroth*, *Adricomius* out of *Brochard* and *Breidenbachius* placeth *Cedar* in the way out of *Syria* into *Galilee*, foure miles from *Corazin*. This City (saith he) is remembered in the *Canticles*, and in the book of *Judith*, and there are that of this Cite understand *David* in his 120. *Psalme*: and here the Sepulchre of *Job* is yet to be seen, saith *Breidenbach*.

Now concerning the Texts which he citeth, it is so that the *Greek* hath *Galaad* in stead of the word *Cedar*, which the *Vulgar* doth use in that place of *Judith*, and joyneth *Carmel* and *Galilee*. The *Canticles* and the 120. *Psalme* do rather prove that *Cedar* was not hereabout, than any way help *Adricomius*. For that they speake of *Scenite Cedarum*, it is apparent, and as evident by the place in the *Canticles*, that they were decolors, much more than any under the Climates of the Land of *Canaan*: whence *Junius* out of *Lampridius* and *Pliny* placeth them in *Arabia Petraea*, far from these parts. Touching the Sepulchre of *Job*, it is certain that the *Arabians* and *Saracens* (holding those places) so faine many things to abuse the *Christians*, and to get money. Further, it may well be affirmed, that many (if not all) the historical circumstances of *Job* are so obscure, that we should rather by finding his Country seeke to get some knowledge of him, than by any presumptions founded upon him, inferre what his Country was, and build unto him a City by conjecture.

Of *Job* himself, whether he was the same *Jobab* remembered in the 36. of *Genesis*, descended from *Efsau King* also of *Idumaea*, though *Rupertus*, *Lyrannus*, *Oleaster*, and *Belarmine* are of another opinion, yet *Saint Ambrose*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, and *Gregory* with

with *Athanasius*, *Hippolitus*, *Irenaeus*, *Eusebius Emisenus*, *Apollinaris*, *Eustachius*, and other cited by *S. Hierome* in his 126. *Epist.* to *Evagrius*, take him for the same.

The Land of *Hut*, or *Hus*, wherein *Job* dwelt, is from the *Greek* *Osi*, which the *Septuagint* use for the word *Hut*, translated by the *Vulgar* sometime *Hus*, as *Job 1. 1*. sometime *Ausitis*, as *Hierem. 25. 20*. This Land is placed by *Junius* between *Palestine* and *Calestria*, besides *Chamatha* (or *Hamath*) under *Palmyrene*, in the Countrey called by *Ptolomy* *Trachonitis*, or *Bathanea*, the bounds of which Countreies are confounded with *Basan* in this half Tribe of *Manasses*. And that this Land of *Hus* was thus seated, it may in part be gathered out of the place of *Jer. 25. 20*. where he reckons the *Hushites* among the promiscuous borderers of the *Israelites*, whom he therefore calleth promiscuous, or *miscellaneous* *turbam*, because their bounds were not only joyned but confounded, and their *Seigniories* mingled one with the other: but of this place the words of *Hieremy*, *Lam. 4. 21*. speaking of the same Prophecy, of which he speaketh in the 25. Chapter, must needs be expounded, as *Junius* reads them, distinguishing the Land of *Hus* from *Edom*: *O filia Edom*, *O que habitas in terra Hutz*; *O daughter of Edom*, *O thou which dwellest in the land of Hus*. Now because the *Vulgar* doth not so distinguish, but readeth, *Filia Edom que habitas in terra Hus*; *Daughter of Edom which dwellest in the land of Hus*: Hence, as it seems, some of the learned have thought that *Job* was an *Edomite*, as we have said, and *King of Edom*, which if they understand by it *Idumaea*, or *Edom*, so called in *Moses* time, they are greatly mistaken, making this Land of *Hus* to be in *Idumaea*. For it is very probable that *Efsau*, when he first parted from *Jacob*, did not seat himself in *Edom*, or *Seir*, which lieth on the South border of *Judea*, but inhabited *Seir* far to the East of *Jordan*, and held a part of those Mountains, otherwise called *Galaad*, and *Hermion*, which by corruption the *Sidonians* call *Shirion*, and the *Amorites*, *Shenir*, for *Seir*; and from this his habitation did *Efsau* encounter *Jacob*, when he returned out of *Mesopotamia*, who passed by the very border of *Efsau* his abiding. It is true, that at such time as *Moses* wandered in the *Deserts*, that the posterity of *Efsau* inhabited *Seir* to the South of *Judea*: for it is like that the *Amorites*, who had beaten both *Ammon* and *Moab*, did also drive the *Edomites* out of those parts, who thence-forward seated themselves to the South of *Judea*, bordering the *Desart Paran*, and stretched their habitations over the *Deserts* as far as *Hor* where *Aaron* died.

Now for this *Hus*, which gave the name to a part of the Land of *Trachonitis*, whether it were *Hus* the son of *Aram*, as *Junius* thinks in his note upon *Gen. 10. 23*. or rather *Hus* the son of *Nachor*, *Abrahams* brother, the question is doubtful. For my part I rather incline to think, that it was *Hus* the son of *Nachor*: partly because these Families of *Aram* seem long before to have been lost: and partly because in *Job 2. 2*. *Elihu* the fourth of *Job*'s friends, which seems to be of *Job*'s own Country, is called a *Buzite*, of *Buz* the brother of *Hus*, the son of *Nachor*: as also *Job. 25*. in the same continuation (though some other Nations named between) where *Hus* is spoken of, there *Buz* is also named. Neither doth it hinder our conjecture, that in the place of *Job 2. Elihu* the *Buzite* is said to be of the Family of *Ram*: (which *Junius* expounds to be as much as of the Family of *Aram*) for that by this *Aram* we are not to understand *Aram* the son of *Sem*, *Junius* himself maketh it plain, both in his annotation upon the beginning of his book, where he saith, that one of *Job*'s friends (which must needs be this *Elihu*) was of the posterity of *Nachor* (as also in this place he confesseth so much expressly,) and in as much as he readeth not *è familia Aram*, or *Ram*, but *è familia Syriae*; like as elsewhere *Laban*, who sprung of *Nachor*, is called a *Syrian*.

As for the other three of *Job*'s friends (of whom by this note of *Elihu* his being of the *Syrian* Family, or of the Family of *Nachor*) it is implied that they were of other kindred; as also by the *Septuagints* addition, that this *Elihu* was of the Land of *Hus*, or *Ausitis*; it is implied that they thought only *Elihu* to have been of *Job*'s own Countrey.

*Franciscus Brochard* the *Monke*, in his description of the Holy Land in the journey from *Acon* Eastward, findeth *Suetha*, and *Theman* on the East of the Sea of *Galilee*: both very near to the Land of *Hus*: whereof the one may seem to have denominated *Eildad* the *Shuchite*; the other *Eliphaz*, the *Themaquite*: two of the three friends of *Job*, of the which *Job 2. 11*. But *Junius* thinks that the *Shuchites* were inhabitants of *Arabia* the *Desart*, descended of *Shuach* the son of *Abraham* and *Ketura*: of whom *Gen. 25. 2*. perhaps, saith he, the same whom *Pliny* calls *Sacae*. So also he thinketh the *Themanites*, of whom

Elipbaz was, to have been of Arabia the Desert : and Elipbaz himself to have been of the posterity of *Itheman* the son of *Elipbaz*, which was the son of *Esaau*. And so also *Nahamah*, whence *Tjosphar* the third of *Jobs* friends (which in this place of *Job* 2. 11. are mentioned) is by the same learned Expositor, thought either to be named of *Thimnah* by transposition of letters (which *Thimnah*, *Gen.* 36. 40. is named among the sons of *Esaau*, that gave denomination to the places where they were seated) or else to be the same *Nahamah*, which *Jof.* 15. 41. is reckoned for a City of *Juda* in the border, as he thinks, of *Edom*. And yet I deny not but that near the Land of *Hus*, in *Esaau*, as it seems, in the Tribe of *Manasse*, there is a Region which (at least) in later times was called *Switis*, or of some like name. For this is evident by the History of *Will. Tyrinus*, which reports of a Fort in this Region of *Swita*, or *Switer* (as he calls it diversly) of exceeding great strength and use for the retaining of the whole Country : which, in the time of *Baldwine* the second King of *Hierusalem*, was with great digging through rocks recovered by the *Christians*; having not long before been lost, to the great disadvantage of the Country, while it was in the hands of the *Saracens*. The situation of this Fort is by *Tyrinus* described to be sixteen miles from the City *Tiberias*, on the East of *Jordan* : by *Adrichomius* four miles North-ward from the place where *Jordan* enters the Lake *Tiberias* at *Corazin*.

Other Cities of this part of *Manasse* named in the Scripture are these: *Golan*, *Gebethera*, *Mitspa* of *Gilead*, and *Kenath*, which after the coming of the *Israelites* was called *Nobach*. Of *Nobach* or *Kenath*, and *Mitspa* of *Gilead*, we have spoken by occasion among the Cities of *Gad*. The other two were given to the *Levites*, and *Golan* made one of the Cities of refuge : from which *Golan* we have both *Gaulanitis superior* and *inferior*, oft in *Josephus*. *Bebethera* is accounted the chief City of *Esaau* by some, but the Writers corrupting the name into *Bozra*, it is confounded with *Besfer*, or *Bozra* of *Reuben*, and with *Bozra* of *Edom*. *Argob* is oft named for a Region in this Tract, and hence *Hierome* hath *Arga*, a name of a City placed by some about the waters of *Merom* (as they are called by *Josua*) which make the Lake *Samachonitis*, as *Josephus* calls it. This Lake, being as it were in the midst between *Cæsarea Philippi* and *Tiberias*, through which, as through the Lake of *Tiberias*, *Jordan* runneth, boundeth part of this half Tribe on the West. When the snow of *Libanus* melteth, it is very large, saith *Brocard* : otherwise more contrait, leaving the marsh ground on both sides, for Lions and other wilde beasts, which harbour in the shrubs that plentifully grow there.

Adjoining to this Lake in this Countrey of *Manasse*, *Josephus* names two places of strength, fortified by himself in the beginning of the *Jews* rebellion : *Selucia* the one, and *Sogane* the other. In the North side of this half Tribe of *Manasse*, and in the North-east, the Scripture nameth divers bordering places towards *Damascus*, as *Iscadad*, *Chauram*, and *Chatsar-Henan*, lying in a line drawn from the West; of which three Cities we reade *Ezek.* 47. 15. with which also agrees the place, *Numb.* 34. 8. where for *Chauram* between *Iscadad*, and *Chatsar-Henan*, *Zipbron* is named. From this *Chauram* is the name of *Auranitis Regio*, in *Josephus* and *Tyrinus*, whose bounds (as also the bounds of *Gessur* and *Mabacath*, or *Macati*, which were likewise borderers to *Manasse* towards the North-east) are unknown : onely that *Gessur* was of might, it appears in that *David* married *Mabaca* the daughter of *Thalmay* King of *Gessur* : by whom he had the most beautiful, but wicked and unfortunate *Abshalom*.

## CHAP. XI.

The History of the Syrians, the chief borderers of the Israelites that dwell on the East of Jordan.

### §. I.

Of the City of Damascus, and the divers fortunes thereof.

**D**AMASCUS of all other in this border, and of that part of the world, was the most famous, excelling in beauty, antiquity, and riches, and was therefore called the City of joy or gladness, and the House of pleasure; and is not only remembered in many places of Scripture, but by the best Historians and Cosmographers. The Hebrews, saith *Josephus*, think it to have been built by *Hus* the son of *Aram* : of which opinion *S. Hierome* upon *Esay* seemeth to be : though

though in his Hebrew questions he affirmeth, that it was founded by *Damascus* the son of *Eliezer*, *Abrahams* Steward : a thing very unlikely, seeing the City was formerly known by that name, as appears by *Abrahams* calling this his Steward *Eliezer* of *Damasco*. *David* was the first that subjected it to the Kingdome of *Juda*, after the overthrow of *Adad* their King; but in *Solomons* time, *Rezon* recovered it again, though he had no title at all or right to that Principality : but *David* having overthrown *Hadad* King of *Sophena* (otherwise *Syria Soba*, or *Zoba*) *Rezon* or *Rezon*, with the remainder of that broken Army, invaded *Damascena*, and possessed *Damascus* it self, and became an enemy to *Solomon* all his life.

The next King of *Damascus* was *Adad* the *Edomite*, who flying into *Egypt* from *David* and *Joab*, when they slew all the males in *Edom*, was there entertained, and married *Taphnes* the King of *Egypt* Wives sister : of whom *Taphnes* in *Egypt* was so called. This *Adad* returning again, became an enemy to *Solomon* all his life, and (as some Writers affirm) invaded *Damascus*, and thrust *Rezon* thence-out. In the Line of *Adad* that Kingdome continued nine descents, (as hereafter may be shewed in the Catalogue of those Kings of *Syria*) to whom the *Assyrians*, and then the *Grecians* succeeded. This City was exceeding strong, compassed with waters from the Rivers of *Abanah*, and *Pharpar* : whereof one of them, prophane Writers call *Chrysorrhoeas*, the golden River. *Junius* takes it for *Adonis*. The Countrey adjoining is very fruitfull of excellent Wines and Wheat, and all manner of excellent fruits. It had in it a very strong Castle, built as it seems by the *Florentines*, after it became Christian : the Lillies being found cut in many Marbles in that Cittadell. Against this City the Prophets *Amos*, *Esay*, *Jeremy*, and *Zacharias*, prophesied that it should be taken, burnt, demolished, and made a heap of stones. In the time of the last *Rezon*, and tenth King of the *Damascens*, *Teglatphalaser*, invited by *Achaz* King of *Juda*, carried away the naturals of *Damascus* into the East : leaving of his own Nation to inhabit it. After that it was utterly ruined by the *Babylonians*, saith *Hierome* upon *Esay* : which thing was performed by *Salmanser*, according to *Junius* in his note upon that place, five years after the Prophecy. In time it was restored by the *Macedonians*, and the *Ptolomies*; but long after, when *Syria* fell into the hands of the *Romans*, it was taken by *Metellus*, and *Lolius*. In the time of the Christians it had an Archbishop : Saint *Hierome* living, as he affirmeth upon the *Acts*, it was the Metropolis of the *Saracens* : being taken by *Haomer* their King from the *Romans*, in the year of our redemption 636. and in the year 1147. *Conrad* the third, Emperour of *Rome*, Lewis King of *France*, *Baldwine* the third King of *Hierusalem*, *Henry Duke of Austria*, brother to *Conrad*, *Frederick Barbarossa* afterward Emperour, *Theoderick Earle of Flanders*, and other Princes assembled at *Ptolomais Acon*, on the sea-coast, determined to recover *Damascus* : but being betrayed by the *Syrians*, they failed of the enterprise.

In the year 1262. *Halon* the Tartar incompart it, and having formerly taken the City, brought him under the Walls, and threatened extreme torture unto him, except the Citizens rendered the place : but they refusing it, the King was torn asunder before them, and in fine the City taken, *Agab* the son of *Halon* was by his father made King thereof.

In the year 1400. *Tamberlain* Emperour of the *Parthians*, invaded that Region, and besieged the City with an Army of 1200000. (if the number be not mistaken.) He entered it, and put all to the sword, filling the ditch with his prisoners; those that retired into the Castle, which seemed a place impregnable, he overtopped with another Castle adjoining : he forbore the demolishing of the City, in respect of the beauty of the Church, garnished with forty Gates, or sumptuous Porches. It had within it 9000. Lanterns of Gold and Silver : but while he invaded *Egypt*, they again surprized *Damascus*. Lastly, in his return after three months siege, he foit it : the *Mahometans* prostrating themselves with their Priests, desired mercy. But *Tamberlain* commanding them to enter the Church, he burnt them and it to the number of 30000. and did so demolish it, as those that came afterwards to see their houses, knew them not by the foundations. And as a Trophee of his victory, he raised three Towers with great art, builded with the heads of those whom hee had slaughtered. After this, it was restored and re-possessed by the *Soldane* of *Egypt* with a Garrison of *Mammalukes* : And in the year 1517. *Selimus* Emperour of the

Turks wrested it out of the hands of the Egyptians: in whose possession it now remaineth inhabited with Mahometans and Christians of all neighbouring Nations.

## §. II.

Of the first Kings of Damascus, and of the growing up of their power.

Now be it that Damascus were founded by Hui the son of Aram, or by Damascus the son of Eliezer Abraham's steward, we finde no relation of their Kings, or Commonwealth till David's time. For it stood without the bounds of Canaan: and therefore neglected by Moses, Joshua, and the Judges, as impertinent to that Story. But were it so that it had some Reguli, or petty Kings over it, as all the Cities of those parts had, yet none of them became famous for ought that is left to writing, till such time as David overthrew Adadezer Prince of Sophena, or Syria Zoba: the same Nation which Pline calleth Nubai, inhabiting between Batania and Emphrates. Now the better to understand the story of those Syrian Princes, whom soon after the Kings of Damascus made their vassals, the Reader may inform himself, That on the North-east parts of the Holy Land, there were three chief principalities, whereof the Kings or Commanders greatly vexed or disturbed the State or Commonwealth of Israel, namely, Damascus, or Aram, Sophena, or Syria Zoba, and Chamath, or Chamath Zoba; of which these werethe Princes in Davids and Solomon's times: Razon, or Rezon of Damascus, Adadezer of Syria, Zoba, and Tobu of Chamath. But it seemeth, that Damascus was one of the Cities subject to Adadezer when David invaded him, though when Saul made war against Zoba, Damascus was not named. And as Josephus affirmeth, the leader of those succours, which were levied and sent to Hadad-Iszer from Damascus, had the name of Adad: who was in that battell slain with 20000. Aramites of Damascus: whereof, as of the overthrow of Adadezer, Rezon the Commander of his Army, taking advantage, made himself King of Damascus, Adadezer and Adad of Damascus being both slain. About the same time Tobu King of Chamath, or Iturea, hearing that his neighbour and enemy Adadezer was utterly overthrown, sendeth for peace to David, and presenteth him with rich gifts: but in dolo, saith S. Hierome; it was craftily done of him. Now to the North of the Holy Land, and to the West of Damascus, the Tyrians and Zidonians inhabited: but they for the most part were in league and peace with the Judeans and Israelites. But to return to the Kings of Syria, I mean of Syria as it is taken in the Scriptures, containing Damascena, Soba or Zoba, and Chamath, or Iturea; to which I may adde Gessur, because it is so accounted in the second of Sam. 15. as joyning in the Territory to Damascus (for Syria at large is far greater, of which Palestina it self is but a Province, as I have noted in the beginning of this Tract.) It is not agreed among the Historians of former times, nor of our later Writers, who was the first of those Adads of Syria Zoba, and Damascus.

Some account Rezon, others Adad of Idumea: of whom it is written in the first of Kings, that David having invaded that Region, & left Joab thereto destroy all the male children thereof: Adad of the Kings seed fled into Egypt; and was there married to Taphnes the Queens sister, as before; who hearing of Davids death, and of the death of his Captain Joab (whom indeed all the bordering Nations feared) he turned again: and as Bunting thinketh, this Adad did expell Rezon out of Damascus, and was the first of the Syrian Kings. To me it seemeth otherwise. For, as I take it, Adadezer, the son of Rehob, whom Saul invaded, was the Founder of that Principality: and the first of Adads, who forsaking his fathers name, as he grew powerful, took upon him the stile of Adad, the great god of the Assyrians, saith Macrobinus, which signified Oneness or Unity. Also finde a City called Adada, in the same part of Syria: of which whether these Princes took the name, or gave it, I am ignorant. For Adad-ezer, Ben-adad, El-adad were the same in name, with the differences of Ezer, Ben, and Eli adjoyned. And that Adadezer was of greatest power, it appeareth first, because it is against him, that David undertook the war: secondly, because he levied 20000. Aramites out of the Territory of Damascus: as out of his proper Dominions: for had the Damascus had a King apart, it is probable that the Scriptures would have given us his name: thirdly, because Syria Zoba, of the most of which Adadezer was King, was an exceeding large Territory, and contained of Arabia the Desert as far as to Emphrates, according

cording to Pline: and the greatest part of Arabis Petraea, according to Niger. Whosoever was the first, whether Adadezer, or Adad of Idumea, Rezon was the second: Who was an enemy to Israel all the days of Solomon. Besides the evil that Adad did, the evil that Hadad did, seemeth to be referred to Hadad of Idumea, lately returned out of Egypt: to wit, 23. years after he was carried thither.

The third King of Damascus, and of Zoba both, was Hezion; to Hezion succeeded Tabrimmon, or Tabremmon; to him Benhadad, as is proved in the first of Kings: For Asa King of Juda the son of Abiam, the son of Roboam, the son of Solomon, being vexed & invaded by Baasba, the succellour of Nadab, the son of Jeroboam, sent to Benhadad the son of Tabrimmon, the son of Hezion, King of Aram, that dwelt at Damascus, to invade Israel (while Baasba fought to fortifie Rama against Asa: thereby to block him up, that he should not enter into any of the territories of Israel) who according to the desire of Asa, having received his presents, willingly invaded the Country of Neptalim, and took divers Cities, and spoys thence: Asa in the mean while carrying away all the Materials, which Baasba had brought to fortifie Rama withall, and converted them to his own use.

This Benhadad Father Tabremmon was in league with Asa: and so was his Father Hezion: for Asa requireth the continuance of that friendship from Benhadad, his son: though it seemeth that the gold and silver sent him out of the Temple, was the most forcible argument. And that this Tabremmon invaded Israel, before the enterprise of his son Benhadad, it is conjectured. For Benhadad when he was prisoner with Achab, spake as followeth: The Cities which my Father took from thy father, I will restore: and thou shalt make streets or keepers of the borders for thee in Damascus: as my father did in Samaria. And herein there ariseth a great doubt (if the argument it self were of much importance) because Tabremmon was father indeed to Benhadad which invaded Baasba, at the request of Asa: But this Benhadad that twice entred upon Achab, and was the second time taken prisoner, was rather the son of Benhadad, the first of that name, the confederate of Asa and Abiam, as before, than the son of Tabremmon. For between the invasion of Benhadad the first, in Baasba's time, and the siege of Samaria, and the overthrow of Benhadad by Achab, there past 49. years, as may be gathered out of the reigns of the Kings of Israel. So that if we allow 30. years of age to Benhadad, when he invaded Baasba, and after that 49. years ere he was taken by Achab, which make eighty lacking one, it is unlikely that Benhadad at such an age should make war. Besides all this, the first Benhadad came with no such pomp; but the second Benhadad vaunteth, that he was followed with 32. Kings: and therefore I resolve, that Benhadad the son of Tabremmon invaded Baasba and Omri; and Benhadad the second invaded Achab, at whose hands this Benhadad received two notorious overthrows: the first at Samaria, by a fall of 700. Israelites: the second at Aphec, where, with the like number in effect, the Israelites laughed 200000. of the Aramites; besides 27000. which were crush't by the fall of the wall of Aphec. And this Benhadad, Achab again setteth at liberty: to whom he rendreth those Towns that his father had taken from the Predecessour of Achab, but being returned, he refused to render Ramoth Gilead, a frontier Town, and of great importance. Now three years after (for so long the league lasted) Ramoth not being delivered, Achab invaded Gilead, and besieged the City, being assisted by Josaphat. The Aramites came to succour and fight: in which Achab is wounded, and dieth that night. After this, Benhadad sendeth the Commander of his forces, called Naaman, to Joram the son of Achab to be healed of the leprosie, and though Elizeus had healed him, yet he picketh a quarrell against Joram: and when Joram, by Elizeus his intelligence, had escaped his plot, he sent men and Chariots to take the Prophet, as is aforesaid. After Benhadad besieged Samaria again, and being terrified thence from heaven, he departed home, and sickneth, and sendeth Azael with great gifts to Elizeus, to know his estate if he might live. Azael returning, smothereth him. Zonaras and Cedrenus call this Benhadad Adar, and the son of Adar: Amos and Hieremy mention the Towers of Benhadad. Josephus writeth that Benhadad and his succellour Azael were worshipped for gods by the Syrians to his time, for the sumptuous Temples which they built in Damascus. The Syrians also boasted much of their antiquity, ignorant, saith he, that scarce yet 1100. years are complete since their wars with the Israelites.

Hazael, or Azael, the first King of the race of the Adads of Damascus, was appointed by Elifba, or Elizeus, when he was sent by Benhadad to the Prophet, to know whether Ben-

badad should recover his present sickness: He waged war with *Joram*, who received divers wounds at the encounter at *Ramoth in Gilead*: from whence returning to be cured at *Jesreel*, he and the King of *Juda*, *Ahaziah* or *Ochozias*, are slain by *Jehu*, as before is said. After the death of *Joram*, *Azael* continued war against *Jehu*, and wasted *Gilead*, and all those portions of *Gad*, *Reuben*, and *Manasse*, over *Jordan*. He then invaded *Juda*, and took *Gath*; but by gifts from *Joas* he was averted from attempting *Hierusalem*: for he presented him all the *hallowed things which* *Jehosaphat*, *Jehoram*, and *Ahaziah* his fathers, Kings of *Juda*, had dedicated; and which he himself had dedicated: and all the gold which was found in the treasuries of the Lord, and in the Kings house. This was the second time that the Temple was spoiled to please the *Adads* of *Damascus*. For *Asa* did present *Benhadad* with those treasures, when he invited him to war upon *Baasha* King of *Israel*. And notwithstanding this composition between *Joas* and *Azael*, yet a part of his Army spoiled the other Provinces of *Judea*, and slaughtered many principall persons. Lastly, *Azael* vexed *Joabaz* the son of *Jehu*, and brought him to that extremity, as he left him but fifty Horse-men, ten Chariots, and ten thousand Footmen of all his people.

## §. III.

Of the later Kings, and decay and overthrow of their power.

2 Reg. 13. J. Sam. 9. **A**fter *Hazael*, *Benhadad* the second, or rather the third of that name, the son of *Hazael*, reigned in *Damascus*: who fought against *Israel* with ill success: for *Joas* King of *Israel*, the son of the unhappy *Joachaz*, as he was foretold by *Elisba* the Prophet, beat *Benhadad* in three severall battels: and he lost all those Cities to *Israel*, which his father *Hazael* had taken violently from *Joachaz*.

Jos. am. 1. 7. c. 6. After this *Benhadad* the son of *Hazael*, there succeeded three others by the same name, of whom the Stories are lost, only *Nicholans Damascus* cited by *Josephus*, makes mention of them: and in one of these Kings times it was that *Jeroboam* the second, the son of *Joas*, recovered *Damascus* it self to *Juda*, faith the *Geneva*, but better in *Junius*, 30 *Vtique recuperabat Damascus, & Chamatham Jebuda pro Israele*; that is, And how he recovered for *Israel*, *Damascus* and *Chamath* of *Judea*; for these Cities sometimes conquered by *David*, did of right belong to the Tribe of *Juda*.

And it is likely, that this conquest upon the *Adads* was performed: the first of these three *Adads* then living, of whom there is no Story. For when as *Jehoas* the King of the ten Tribes had thrice overcome the *Syrians* in the time of *Benhadad* the son of *Hazael*, and had recovered the Cities which *Hazael* had won from *Israel*; and so left his Kingdom to his son *Jeroboam* the second; it seemeth that this *Jeroboam* without delay, and having nothing else left for him to enterprize, instantly followed his fathers good fortune, and invaded *Damascus*.

2 Kin. 16. 5. 5. E. Jay 7. J. Sam. 15. c. 11. *Razins*, or *Rezin*, after *Josephus*, *Rases*; after *Zonaras*, *Rasfon* the tenth *Adad*, making league with *Pekab*, or *Phacis* King of *Israel*, against *Achaz* King of *Juda*; both carry away a great number of prisoners. After this they both besiege *Achaz* in *Hierusalem*; but in vain. Then *Adad* alone invadeth *Elath*, and beating out the Jews, maketh it a Colony of *Syrians*. Wherefore *Achaz* brought *Teglatphalassar* against *Razins*, who took him, and beheaded him, and won *Damascus*: with whom ended the line of the *Adads*, and the Kingdom of *Damascus*: the *Assyrians* becoming masters both of that and *Israel*. These *Adads*, as they reigned in order, are thus reckoned:

- 1 *Adadazer* the son of *Rebob*.
- 2 *Rezin* the son of *Eliadad*, or *Razins*.
- 3 *Hezion*.
- 4 *Tabremmon*.
- 5 *Benhadad*, who invaded *Baasha*.
- 6 *Benhadad* the second, taken prisoner by *Achaz*.
- 7 *Hazael*, whom *Elisba* foretold with tears of his advancement; the same who overthrew *Joram* King of *Israel* at *Ramoth Gilead*. And that there was a second *Hazael* which preceded *Benhadad* the third, it is not improbable, because that *Hazael* which took *Geth*, and compounded the war with *Joas*, made the Expedition thirty yeers, and perchance more,

more, after the first *Hazael* which stifled his master *Benhadad*, and had slain *Joram* the son of *Achab* King of *Israel*. For *Joas* began to reigne in the 7. yeer of *Jehu* King of *Israel*; and after he had reigned 23. yeers, the Temple was not yet repaired, after which (and how long we know not) it is said that *Hazael* took *Geth*, and turned his face towards *Hierusalem*. It is also some proof that *Hazael* that took *Geth*, was not the same with *Hazael* that murdered *Benhadad*, because he could not at that time be of good yeers, being, as it seemeth, the second person in the Kingdom, and Commander of *Benhadads* men of war. To this *Hazael* (be he the first or second) succeeded.

8. *Benhadad* the third, whom *Joas* King of *Israel* thrice overthrew.

109. *Rezin*, or *Rezin*, the last, who joyned with *Pekab* King of *Israel*, against *Juda*, at which time *Achaz* King of *Juda* waged for his defence *Teglatphalassar*.

Now between *Benhadad* the third, and *Rezin* the last, *Nicholans Damascus* finds three other Kings of the *Adads*, which make twelve in all.

For the rest of the Princes of *Syria*, which were but *Reguli*, as those of *Emath*, and *Geffur*, we finde that *Tobu* was King of *Emath*, or *Camath*, in *David*'s time, to whom he sent his son *Joram* with presents, after *David*'s victory against *Adadazer*. Also *Senacherib* speaketh of a King of *Emath*, but names him not.

## §. IV.

20 Of Other lesser Kingdoms of the *Syrians*, which being brought under the *Assyrians*, never recovered themselves again.

**O**F *Geffur* we finde two Kings named; to wit, *Talmat*, and his Father *Ammihur*: to *Talmat*, whose Daughter *David* married, it was that *Abshalom* fled, who was his maternall grandfather. Of the Kings of *Seppena*, or *Syria*, *Soba*, or *Celofyria*, there are two named, *Rebob*, or *Rehob*, the Father of *Adadazer*, and *Adadazer* himself; and it is plain, that after his death the seat of the Kings of *Soba* was transferred to *Damascus*, a City better fitting their greatnesse. After *Rezin* became Lord of both Principalities. And the race of these Kings of *Syria*, (which became so potent, and joyned *Soba*, *Damascus*, *Emath*, and the Desert of *Arabia*, with other Provinces into one, under *Rezin* the second of the *Adads*) as it began with *David*, so it ended at once with the Kingdom of *Israel*. For *Achaz* King of *Juda* waged the *Assyrian* *Teglatphalassar* against *Pekab* King of *Israel*, and against *Rezin* the last King of *Damascus*: which *Teglat* first invaded *Damascus*, and the Region of *Soba*, and took *Damascus* it self, and did put to death *Rezin* the last, carrying the Inhabitants captive. This was the second time that the *Assyrians* attempted *Israel*. For first *Phul Belochus* entred the borders thereof (*Menahem* governing *Israel*) who stopt the enterprize of *Phul* with a thousand talents of silver: for this *Phul Belochus*, whose pedigree we will examine hereafter, being scarce warm, as yet, in his feat at *Babylon*, which he, with the help of his companion *Arbaces*, had wrested from

40 *Sardanapalus*: having besides this King of *Syria* in his way, who seemed to be a great and strong Prince, was content to take the composition of a thousand talents of the King of *Israel* for that present time. But his son *Teglat* following the purpose of his father *Belochus*, and finding so excellent an occasion, as the war begun between *Israel* and *Judah*, *Pekab* commanding in the one, and *Achaz* in the other, his neighbour *Rezin* being also wrapt in that war, and wasted in strength thereby, did willingly accept the offer of *Achaz* King of *Juda*, his imprest and entertainment. So, first attempting *Damascus*, which lay in his path towards *Israel*, he carried it (as is before remembered) and then with great ease possessed himself of the Cities of *Neptalim*; leading with him a great part of the people captive. And his son *Salmanasser*, whom *Ptolomee* calleth *Nabonasser*, 50 after the revolt of *Hofca*, forced *Samarita*, and rent that Kingdom afunder. So as the line and race of *Ninus* in *Sardanapalus*, whom *Belochus* supplanted; the race and Monarchy of the *Syrian* *Adads* in *Rezin*, whom *Teglat* slaughtered; the Kingdom of *Israel* in *Hofca*, whom *Salmanasser* overturned; happened neer about a time: that of *Ninus* in the daies of *Belochus*, and the other two in the daies of *Teglatphalassar*, and *Salmanasser* his son. For *Sardanapalus* perished, *Ofia* ruling *Juda*; and the other two Kingdoms were dissolved, *Achaz* yet living.

Lastly, the Kingdom of *Juda* it self, being attempted by *Senacherib*, the son of *Salmanasser*, in vain, and preserved for the time by God miraculously, was at length utterly

utterly overturned. *Hierusalem* and the Temple burnt 132. yeers after the captivity of *Israel* and *Samarita*: the destruction of *Israel* being in the ninth yeer of *Hofea*: that of *Juda* in the eleventh of *Zedechia*. Now the Emperours of *Assyria* and *Babylon* held also the Kingdom of *Syria*, from the eighth yeer of *Salmanassar*, to the last of *Baltassar*, whom *Herodotus* calleth *Labyntus*: in all about 200. yeers. After these the *Persians* from *Cy-*

3603. *rus* to *Darius* their last King, held *Syria* about 200. yeers.  
3811. Then *Alexander Macedon* took this among other Provinces of the *Persian* Empire, and his successors the *Seleucide* reigned therein, till it became subject unto the power of the *Romans*, from whom it was wrested long after by the *Saracens*, and remaineth now in possession of the *Turks*, as shall be shewed in due place. Thus much of the Nations bordering upon the *Israelites*, with whom they had most to do, both in war and peace, being the onely people, whose History in those ancient times carried an assured face of Truth.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Tribe of Benjamin, and of *Hierusalem*.

### §. I.

Of divers memorable places in the Tribe of Benjamin, whercof *Hiericho*, *Gilgal*, *Mitspa*, *Bethel*, *Rama*, *Gobah* and *Gibba*.

OF the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the twelfth and youngest son of *Jacob*, whom he had by *Rachel*, there were mustered at Mount *Sinai* 35000. able bodies: all which perishing in the *Deserts*, there entered the Holy Land of their issues 45600. fit to bear Arms: and these had their Territory on this side *Jordan*, between *Juda* and *Ephraim*: The Cities within this Tribe neere *Jor-*  
1 Chro. 2. 12. *dan*, are *Lod*, *Hadid*, and *Ono*: of which, *Lod* and *Ono* were built by *Shemida Beniamin*: they were all three re-inhabited with *Beniamites*, after the return out of Captivity, as is mentioned, *Nehem.* 11. 35. and *Ezr.* 2. 35. where *Adrichomius* reading *Lod*, *Hidid*, *Ono*, makes besides *Hadid* in *Nehemia*, a City called *Lodhadid*: This *Hadid* or *Chadid* was re-built by *Simon Macchabeus*.

*Samarim*, or *Tsemaraim*, named of *Tsemari*, one of the sons of *Canaan*, was another of their Cities: and further into the Land standeth *Jericho*, one of the Toparchies and the last of *Juda*, seated in a most fruitfull Valley, adorned with many Palm-trees: and therefore elsewhere called the City of Palms. From the time of *Joia*, who utterly destroyed it, it lay waste untill the time of *Achad*: in whose daies *Chiel* of *Bethel* laid the new foundation of it, in the losse of *Abram* his eldest son, and built the gates of it in the losse of his youngest son *Segub*: according to the curse of *Joia*: in which and other respects, *Hof.* 12. 14. calleth *Joia* a Prophet. In after-times it was destroyed by *Iephth-*  
1 Kings 16. 34. *ah*, and re-built by *Adrian*.

To the Southeast of *Jericho* stood \* *Halmon* of the Levites, of which *Jof.* 21. 18. To the South *Beiharaba*, of which *Jof.* c. 15. and c. 18. Then that *Gilgal* of which there is so much mention in the Scripture, where *Joia* first ate of the fruits of the land, circumcised all those borne in the *Deserts*, and celebrated the Passover.

The reason of the name, or rather a memorable application of the Etymology of this name (for it seems by the place, *Deut.* 11. 30. that the name was known before the coming of the *Israelites* into *Canaan*) is noted *Jof.* 5. 9. *Ob devolutionem probri Egyptiaci*, because their fore-skins (the people being there circumcised) were tumbled down the Hill: which from thence was called *Collis preputiorum*. This *Gilgal* was also called *Geli-*  
Deut. 11. 30. *lorb*, as appears by comparing the places, *Jof.* 1. 5. 7. and 18. 17. for it was in the borders of *Jordan*, of which *Jof.* 22. 13. and *Geliolab* signifieth borders. It stood (though in some distance) directly Eastward, over against the two Hills *Garazim* and *Hebal*: upon the one of which the blessings, and on the other the cursings were to be read to the people, both being the mountains of *Ephraim*. Further, for the situation of this *Gilgal*, it is to be

be noted, that both it, and *Mitspa* of *Benjamin* (of which also we read oft in the Scripture) were seated about the midst of the length of the land of *Canaan*: for which reason (a) *Samuel* chose these two places, to either of which he came yearly to give judgment to the *Israelites*: of which two, *Gilgal*, (as is said) was neer *Jordan* on the East side of this Tribe; and *Mitspa* neer the West Sea, towards the land of the *Philistines*.

The third place, which is named with these two, whither also *Samuel* used yearly to come, is (b) *Bethel*: which also was seated in this Tribe of *Benjamin*. But to return to *Gilgal*, which was the first place where the *Arke* resided, after they past over *Jordan* (from whence it was carried to *Silo*, and thence to *Kiriath-jearim*, and at length to *Hierusalem*) here in *Gilgal* it was that *Joia* pitched up the 12. stones, which were taken out of the channell of *Jordan*, when it was drie, that the *Israelites* might passe over it: by which Story, as it is set down *Jof.* 4. it appears, that the same day that they passed over *Jordan*, they lodged at *Gilgal*. At the same *Gilgal*, to omit many other memorable things, it was that *Samuel* hewed *Agag* the King of the *Amalekites* in pieces. And as for *Mitspa*, whither *Samuel* came yearly to give judgment, there also were often the greatest meetings held: as that for the revenge of the Levites wife against *Gibba*, and the *Beniamites*, *Jof.* 20. 1. and another against the *Philistines*, 1 *Sam.* 7. 12. Thither also *Judas Macchabeus* gathered the *Jews*, (when *Hierusalem* was possessed by the *Heathen*) as it is 1 *Macc.* 3. 47. in which place this reason of their meeting is added: *Quia locus orationis fuerat Mitspa* and touching this *Mitspa*, to avoid confusion, it is to be remembered, that the *Scriptures* mention four places of this name: *Mitspa* of *Juda*, of which *Jof.* 15. 38. (c) *Mitspa* of *Gilead*, of which we have spoken already in the Tribe of *Gad*. *Mitspa* of the *Moabites*, where *David* for a while held himself, commending his Parents to the King of *Moab*, 1 *Sam.* 22. 3. and lastly, this chief *Mitspa* of the *Beniamites*. And as in this place the chief meetings were held both before *Hierusalem* was recovered from the *Jebusites*, and also in the time of the *Macchabees* (as we have laid) when *Hierusalem* was held by the wicked under *Antiochus*, so also in the time of *Hieremy*, after the destruction of the Temple by the *Chaldees*, *Gedaliah* whom *Nabuchodonosor* left in *Jewrie*, as Governour over those that were left in the land, held his abiding in this place: untill (to the great hurt of the *Jews*) he was slain by the treason of *Ishmael*, one of the royall bloud of *Juda*, as it is *Jerem.* 41.

Neer unto this *Mitspa*, the Scripture mentioneth *Beth-car*, after called *Aben-Hezer*, that is, the Stone of help: where *Samuel* pitched up the Piller or Stone, for a Trophy against the *Philistines*.

Touching *Bethel*, which (as it seems) was the third place where *Samuel* held his chief meetings for the ministring of Justice, that it was anciently called *Luz*, and how it was taken by the issue of *Joseph* (though it belonged to the portion of *Benjamin*, as it is *Nehem.* 11. 31. and *Jof.* 18. 22.) and how another City called *Luz* (d) neer adjoyning to it, was built by the man of the city which shewed the entrance to the Spies, as it is *Jud.* 1. and of the occasion of the name from *Jacobs* vision: and how *Jeroboam*, by erecting one of his calves here, of *Bethel* (which signifieth the house of God) made it (e) *Beth-aven*, that is, the house of Vanitie, *Hof.* 4. 15. and 10. 5. as also other memorable things of this place, they are so well known out of the Histories of the Scripture, that we may well passe them over.

The Territorie of *Bethel*, which at the first belonged to the Kingdome of the ten Tribes, from the time of the great victory of *Abia* against *Jeroboam*, of which 2 *Chron.* 13. was taken from them, and adjoyning to the Kingdome of *Juda*: and so it continued, as appears by the Story of *Joia*: which performed the Prophecies against the altar of *Bethel*, 2 *Reg.* 23. whence those coasts 1 *Macc.* 11. 34. are called *Apherama*, which Greek word signifieth as much as, *A thing taken away*, to wit, from the ten Tribes. It was one of the three Seignories, or Prefectures which *Demetrius* in his Epistle mentioneth, as added by him to the Dition of the *Jews*, out of the *Samaritan* Country. A part of it, as appears 2 *Chron.* 13. 19. was *Hephraim*, which *Jof.* 18. 23. is called *Hophram*, belonging to this Tribe of *Benjamin*.

Not far from this *Bethel*, in this tribe, we finde three other Cities, often mentioned in the Scriptures, *Rama*, *Gidba*, and *Geba*. Of the name *Rama*, (b) it is noted already in the description of *Ephraim*, that there were many Towns so called, because of their town in the confines of the Kingdoms of *Juda* and *Israel* between *Hai* and *Bethel*, *Jof.* 7. 2. and 18. 12. b See cap. 6. jed. 1.

high situation. But whereas they find out *Rama* in the Tribe of *Juda* (as it seems, because *Mat. 2.* it appears that it bordered *Bethlehem*) and also out of *Brochad* and *Breidenbach* make *Silo* to have been called *Rama*, and find yet another *Rama* in *Zabulon*; these three have no warrant in the Scripture. Of *Rama* in the Tribe of *Asher*, as it seems, we have testimony, *Jos. 19. 29.* and of another in *Nephthaliim*, *Jos. 19. 36.* of a third *Rama*, where *Samuel* dwelt in Mount *Ephraim*, *1 Sam. 25. 1.* which more often is called (c) *Ramatba*, and *1 Sam. 1. 1.* *Ramatbaim* *Jophim*: for which the *Septuagint* have *Aramatbaim-jophim*, taking the Article affixed in the beginning, for a part of the word, whence they think *Joseph* of *Arimathea* *Mat. 27. 57.* was denominated.

c Of this *Ama-  
thai* under-  
stand the  
place *1 Mac.  
11. 34.* where  
it is named  
for one of the  
three *Pres-  
byters* which  
*Demetrius*  
yielded to the  
Yew out of  
the country of  
*Samarita*: this  
lying toward  
the East to  
*Jericho*, and  
*Lydda* toward  
the West, and  
*Athens* (of  
which even  
now we  
speak) lying in  
the middle  
between the  
ye other. A  
sixth *Rama* it  
seems there  
was in the  
Tribe of *Sime-  
on* toward the  
South, which  
*Jos. 19. 28.* is  
called *Rama* of the South,  
and otherwise  
*Babalah*: *Jer. 41. 12.*  
d *Gibba* in  
confusion,  
that is, Govern-  
ing a gen-  
tive cult, is  
*Gibbat*:  
whence the  
Vulgar out of  
the *Septuagint*  
reads *Jos. 24. 33.* *Gibbat*  
Phineas: for  
which *Junius*  
hath *Colin*  
Phineas (for  
this word is  
often times  
an Appellative  
signifying a  
Hill) but  
*Adrichomius*  
taking notice  
of this, builds  
his City *Gaba-*  
ath upon this  
Text, and  
places it in  
*Benjamin*,  
when as the  
words advo-  
cated, note that  
this Hill was  
in the moun-  
tains of *E-  
phraim*.

\* The word *Nethinim*, or *Nethinim*, is as much as *dari* (as it were a *Deo dari*) or as *Junius* expounds it, *deditioni*: it is used *1 Chron. 9. 1.* and in *Ezra* and *Nehemiah* often.

Of a fourth *Rama* we read *2 Reg. 8. 29.* which is *Ramoth* in *Gilead*. The first, which is most often mentioned, is *Rama* of *Benjamin*, seated, as we said, near *Bethel* the uttermost South-border of the kingdom of the ten Tribes: for which cause *Baasha* in the time of *Asa* king of *Juda*, fortified it, to hinder those that did flee from him to *Asa*. Of this *Rama*, or *Ramatba*, I should rather think *Joseph* was, that buried *Christ*: because it was nearer to *Hierusalem*, and after the captivity belonged to *Judea*, as it appears, *Ezra. 2. 26.* wherein that it is joined with *Geba*, it is plain that he speaketh of that *Rama* with whose stones (after *Baasha* had ceased to build it) *Asa* (as it is *1 Reg. 25. 22.*) built *Gebab* adjoining to it: both being in *Benjamin*. And as *Rama* was the South-border of *Gebab* adjoining to it: both being in *Benjamin*. And as *Rama* was the South-border of the ten Tribes, so was *Gebab* the North-border of the Kingdom of *Juda*: whence *2 Reg. 23. 8.* we read that *Josiah* through all his Kingdom, even from *Gebab*, which was the North-border, to *Beer-sheba*, which was the South-border, destroyed the places of Idolatry.

The third City *Gibba*, which was the City of *Saul* (the wickedness of which City in the time of the *Judges* had almost utterly rooted out this Tribe) *Adrichomius* confounds with *Gebab*, making one of two (as they are evidently distinguished, *Ezra. 10. 27.*) of which word (d) *Gibba*, in another from *Gibbath*, he imagineth *Gibbath*, another City in this Tribe, making two of one. The vicinitie of this City also to *Rama* of *Benjamin* appears *Jud. 19. 13.* where the *Levite* with his wife, not able to reach to *Rama*, took up his lodging at *Gibba*. By that place of *1 Sam. 22. 6.* it seems that there was in this *Gibba* some Tower or Citadel called *Rama*: where *Junius* reads in *exceſſo*, for in *Rama*: but it may be that the name of the Kings Palace in this City, was *Rama*: as it seems that it may be that the name of the chief place where *Samuel* with the College of Prophets abode, was *Najoth*. The great City of *Hai* overthrown by *Josiah*, which *Jos. 7. 2.* is placed near *Beer-sheva*, upon the East of *Bethel*, was in this Tribe, as is proved *Neh. 7. 10. 30.* though it be not named by *Jos. c. 18.* for it was burned by him and laid desolate, as it is *Jos. 8. 28.* *In solitudinem, in tumulum perpetuum*. Another City of chief note is reckoned *Jos. 18. 25.* In this Tribe was *Gibbon*, the chief City of the *Hevites*: whose cunning to binde the *Israelites* by oath to fave their lives, is set down *Jos. 9.* whence they were reckoned among the \* *Nethinim*, or *Profilites*, and were bound to certain publique services in the house of God: which oath of laving these *Gebonites*, broken in part after *40* by *Saul*, was by God punished by a famine, *2 Sam. 21. 1.* This *Gibbon*, or *Gibbon* with *Almon* and *Jebai* (of both which we have spoken) and with *Hanothoth* the natall place of *Hieremie* the Prophet, were said *Jos. 21. 28.* to be given to the *Levites* by the *Benjaminites*. Neer to this *Hanothoth* was *Nob*, as appears *1 Reg. 2. 26.* where *Abiathar* the Priest, which was of *Nob* before it was destroyed by *Saul*, is sent to his grounds at *Hanothoth*. It is reckoned in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, *Neh. 9. 31.* and though in the time of *Saul* the residing place of the *Arke* was at *Kircaath-jebairim*: yet by the lamentable tragedie of bloudshed, which *Saul* raised in this place (as it is set down *1 Sam. 21. and 22.*) in the judgement of *Junius*, it is proved that the Tabernacle was there for a time.

*Micmas* also in this Tribe, *Nehem. 9. 31.* was a place of fame, of which *Ezra. 10. 28. 50* where also he nameth *Gallim*, and *Migrom* in this Tribe. In *Micmas* *Saul* had his Camp, *1 Sam. 13. 2.* (when he left *Gibba* to *Jonathan*) and there also was *Jonathan* *Macchabaeus* his abode, *1 Macc. 9. 73.* Of *Gibbala* in *Galilee* *Jos. c. 19.* makes often mention, but of any here in *Benjamin*, which they make the natall place of *S. Paul*, whence (they say) when it was taken by the *Romans*, he failed with his parents to *Tharſis*, of this I find no good warrant. Other places of lesse importance I omit, and come to the City of *Hierusalem*.

and the Princes and Governours of this City: A great part whereof was in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, whence *Jos. 18. 28.* it is named among the Cities of *Benjamin*.

## §. 11.

Of divers memorable things concerning Hierusalem.

At what time *Hierusalem* was built (which afterward became the Princeſſe of all Cities) it doth not appear. Some there are who imagine that *Melchisedec* was the founder thereof in *Abraham's* time. But \* according to others, that City out of which *Melchisedec* encountered *Abraham* (in his return from the overthrow of the *Assyrian* and *Chanaan* Kings or Captains, when *Lot* was made prisoner) standeth by the River of *Jordan*, in the half Tribe of *Manasse* bordering *Zabulon*, which was also called *Salem*, and by the Greeks *Solima*.

*Hierusalem* (whensoever, or by whomsoever built) was a principall City in *Josua's* time: yet not so renowned as *Hazor* the Metropolis (in those dayes and before) of all the *Canaanites*. *Adonizedek* (whom *Josua* slew) was then King of *Hierusalem*. That it was belonging to the *Jebusites* it is manifest: for how long soever they held it before *Moses* time, they were Masters and Lords thereof almost 400. years after him: even till *David* won it: and therefore in all likelihood, it was by the *Jebusites* (the children of *Jebus*, the son of *Canaan*) built; after whom it was called *Jebus*. And so much did that Nation relye on the strength of the place, as when *David* attempted it, they bragged that their lame, and blinde, and impotent people should defend it.

*David*, after he had by Gods assistance posselt it, and turned out the *Jebusites*, gave it an exceeding great increase of circuit: it strengthened it with a Citadell or Castle: and beautified it with many Palaces, and other buildings: changing the name from *Jebusalem*, the City of the *Jebusites*, to *Hierusalem*, which the Greeks call *Hierosolyma*. After *David's* time, *Solomon* amplified, beautified, and strengthened it exceedingly. For besides the work of the Temple, which was no lesse admirable than renowned among all Nations, the Palaces, Gates, and Walls, could not any where in the world be exempld: and besides, that it had 15000. Inhabitants, the women and children not accounted. The ditch had 60. foot depth, cut out of the very rock: and 250. foot of breadth: whereof the like hath seldom been heard of, either since or before.

After the death of *Solomon*, and that the Kingdom of the Jews was cut asunder, *Shishac* King of *Egypt*, and his Predecessor, having bred up for that purpose *Adad* the *Idumean*, and *Ierobam* *Solomon's* servant; and both married to *Egyptians*: the State by the one disturbed, by the other broken: *Shishac* first invaded the Territory of *Juda*, entered *Hierusalem*, and sack't it, and became Master not onely of the riches of *Solomon*, but of all those spoils which *David* had gotten from *Adadazer*, *Tobu*, the *Ammonites*, and other Nations. It was again sack't, and a part of the wall thrown down by *Joas* King of *Israel*: while *Manasse* the twelfth King thereof governed *Juda*.

Not long after, *Achaz* the fifteenth King of *Juda* impoverished the Temple, and presented 12000. talents of the treasures thereof. And *Manasse* the son of *Ezekiah*, the son of *Achaz*, by the vaunts made by *Ezekiah*, to the Embassadors of *Merodach*, lost the remain, and the very bottom of their treasures. It was again spoiled by the *Babylonians*, *Joakim* then reigning. But this ungratefull, Idolatrous and rebellious Nation, taking no warning by these Gods gentle corrections and afflictions, but persisting in all kinde of impiety, filling the City even to the mouth with innocent blood, God raised up that great *Babylonian* King *Nabuchodonosor*, as his scourge and revenger, who making this glorious City and Temple, with all the Palaces therein, and the 50 Walls and Towers which embraced them, even and level with the dust, carried away the spoils with the Princes and people, and cruſht them with the heavey yoke of bondage and servitude full seventy years, in so much as *Sion* was not onely become as a torne and plowed-up field, *Hierusalem* an heape of stones, and rubble, the Mountain of the Temple as a grove, or wood of thorns and briars, but (as *Hierome* speaketh) even the birds of the Ayre scorned to flie over it, or the beasts to tread on that defiled soile.

Then 70. years being expired, according to the prophecies of *Daniel*, and the Jews *Hierusalem* by the grace of *Cyrus* returned: the Temple was again built, though with interruption and



Neb. 12. 34. &amp;c.

\* The first of the Egyptian Kings after Alexander Macedon, who dissembling his Religion, came up to Jerusalem to offer sacrifice. Jof. 12. an. 1.

M.T.C. 170 Styl.

and difficulty enough: and the City meanly inhabited, and without Walls or other defences, for some 60. and odd years, till *Nebemia* by the favour of *Artaxerxes* re-built them. Then again was the Temple and City spoiled by *Bagojes*, or *Vagofes*, the Lievtenant of *Artaxerxes*: after by \* *Ptolomæus* the first; then by *Antiochus Epiphanes*: and again by *Apollonius* his Lievtenant. By *Pompey* it was taken long after, but not destroyed, nor robbed, though *Craſſus* in his *Parthian* expedition took as much as he could of that which *Pompey* spared.

But the damages which it sustained by the violence of sacrilegious Tyrants, were commonly recompensed by the industry or bounty of good Princes, the voluntary contribution of the people, and the liberality of strangers. Before the captivity, the people of the Land, through the exhortation of godly Kings, made many and large offerings to repair the Temple of *Solomon*. The wrong done by *Ptolomæus Lagi* to the second Temple, was requited by the bounty of his son *Ptolomæus Philadelphus*. The mischief wrought by *Antiochus Epiphanes* and his followers, was amended partly by the great offerings which were sent to *Hierusalem* out of other Nations. Finally, all the losses, which either the City or Temple had endured, might well seem forgotten in the reign of *Herod*, that usurping and wicked, but magnificent King, who amplified the City, new built the Temple, and with many sumptuous works did so adorn them, that he left them far more stately and glorious than they had been in the days of *Solomon*.

20

## §. III.

Of the destruction of Hierusalem by the Romanes.

IN this flourishing estate it was at the coming of our Saviour Christ Jesus: and after his death and ascension, it so continued about fourty years. But then did *Titus the Romane*, being stirred up by God to be the revenger of Christ his death, and to punish the Jews sinfull ingratitude, incompaſſie it with a *Romane* Army, and became Lord thereof. He began the siege at such time as the Jews from all parts were come up to the celebration of the *Paschever*: so as the City was then filled with many hundreds of thousands of all sorts; and no manner of provision or store for any such multitudes. An extreme famine, with the civill diſſenſion, opprest them within the Walls; a forcible enemy assailed them without. The *Judæans* also, who lay in wait for the destruction of the Jews Kingdome, thrust themselves into the City, of purpose to betray it: who also burnt the Temple, when *Nabuchodonosor* took it. And to be short, there perished of all sorts, from the first besieging, to the consummation of the victory, eleven hundred thousand souls: and the City was so beaten down and demolished, as those which came afterward to see the desolation thereof, could hardly believe that there had been any such place or habitation. Onely the three *Herodian* Towers, (works most magnificent, and over-topping the rest) were spared, as well for lodgings for the *Romane* Garrisons, as that thereby their victory might be the more notorious and famous: for by those buildings of strength and state remaining, after ages might judge what the rest were; and their honour be the greater and more shining, that there-over became victorious.

After this, such Jews as were scattered here and there in *Judæa*, and other Provinces, began again to inhabit some part of the City; and by degrees to re-build it, and strengthen it as they could, being then at peace, and Tributaries to the *Romane* State: but after 65. years, when they again offered to revolt and rebell, *Elmus Adrianus* the Emperor slaughtered many thousands of them, and overturned those three *Herodian* Towers, with all the rest, making it good which Christ himself had foretold; That there should not stand one stone upon another of that ungratefull City. Afterward, when his fury was appeased, and the prophecy accomplished, he took one part without the Wall, wherein stood *Mount Calvary*, and the Sepulchre of Christ, and excluding of the rest the greatest portion, he again made it a City of great capacity, and called it after his own name, *Elia Capitolia*. In the gate toward *Bethel*, he caused a Sow to be cut in Marble, and set it in the front thereof, which he did in despite of the Jews Nation: making an *Edific*, that they should not from thence-forth ever enter into the City, neither should they dare so much as to behold it from any other high place over-topping it.

But

But the Christian Religion flourishing in *Palestina*, it was inhabited at length by all Nations, and especially by Christians; and so it continued 500. years. It was afterward in the 636. year after Christ, taken by the Egyptian Saracens, who held it 400. and odd years.

In the year 1099. it was regained by *Godfrey of Buillon*, by assault, with an exceeding slaughter of the Saracens; which *Godfrey*, when he was elected King thereof, refused to be crowned with a Crown of Gold, because Christ, for whom he fought, was therein crowned with thorns. After this recovery, it remained under the Successors of *Godfrey* four score & eight years: till in the year 1197. it was regained by *Saladine of Egypt*: and lastly, in the year 1517. in the time of *Selim*, the Turke cast out the Egyptians, who now hold it, and call it *Cusumbarec*, or the Holy City. Neither was *Hierusalem* alone that hath so often times been beaten down and made desolate, but all the great Cities of the World have with their Inhabitants, in severall times and ages, suffered the same shipwrack. And it hath been Gods just will, to the end others might take warning, if they would, not onely to punish the impiety of men, by famine, by the sword, by fire, and by slavery; but he hath revenged himself of the very places they possess; of the walls and buildings, yea, of the soil and the beasts that fed thereon.

For, even that land, sometime called holy, hath in effect lost all her fertility and fruitfulness; witness the many hundreds of thousands which it fed in the days of the Kings of *Juda* and *Israel*; it being at this time all over, in effect, exceeding stony and barren. It also pleased God, not onely to consume with fire from heaven the Cities of the *Sodomites*; but the very soil it self hath felt, and doth feel the hand of God to this day. God would not spare the beasts that belonged to *Amalek*, no not any small number of them to be sacrificed to himself: neither was it enough that *Achan* himself was stoned, but that his moveables were so consumed and brought to ashes.

## §. IV.

Of the vain and malicious reports of Heathen Writers, touching the ancient Jews.

OF the original of the Jews, prophane Writers have conceived diversly and injuriously. *Quintilian* speaks infamously of them, and of their Leader; who (saith he) gathered together a pernicious Nation. *Diodore* and *Strabo* make them Egyptians. Others affirm, that while *Isis* governed Egypt, the people were so increased, as *Jerosolymus* and *Judas* led thence a great multitude of that Nation, with whom they planted the neighbour Regions: which might be meant by *Moses* and *Aaron*: for the name of *Moses* was accidental, because he was taken up and saved out of the waters. But *Justin*, of all other most malicious, doth derive the Jews from the Syrian Kings; of whom, *Damascus*, saith he, was the first: and to him succeeded *Abraham*, *Moses*, and *Israel*. He again supposeth (somewhat contrary to himself) that *Israel* had ten sons, among whom he divided the land of *Juda*; so called of *Judas* his eldest, who had the greatest portion. The youngest of the sons of *Israel* he calleth *Joseph*: who being brought up in Egypt, became learned in Magick Arts, and in the interpretation of Dreams, and signes prodigious; and this *Joseph* (saith he) was father to *Moses*: who with the rest, by reason of their foul diseases, and lest they should infect others, were banished Egypt. Further, he telleth how these men thus banished, when in the Desarts they suffered extreme thirst and famine, and therein found relief the seventh day, for this cause ever after observed the seventh day, and kept it Holy; making it a law among themselves, which afterward became a branch of their Religion. He addeth also, that they might not marry out of their own Tribes, lest discovering their uncleanness, they might also be expelled by other Nations, as they were by the Egyptians. These and the like fables hath *Justin*.

*Cornelius Tacitus* doth as grossly belie them, in affirming, that in the inmost Oratorie of their Temple, they had the golden head of an Asse, which they adored. But herein *Tacitus* forgetteth himself, having in the fifth book of his own History truly confessed of the Jews, that they worshipped one only God: and thought it most prophane

L1

to

to represent the *Deity* by any material figure, by the shape of a man, or any other creature: and they had therefore in their Temples no Image or Representation, no not so much as in any City by them inhabited. Somewhat like this hath *Alexander Polyhistor*, in *Stephanus*; who also makes *Judas* with *Idumea*, the first parents of the *Jews*.

*Claudius Iulian* draws them from *Judans*, whose parents were *Spartan* and *Thebis*; whence it came, that the *Spartans* or *Lacedaemonians* challenged kinned of the *Hebrews*; but they did it as defended of *Abraham*, saith *Josephus*. Some of these reports seem to have been gathered out of divine letters, though wrested and perverted, according to the custome of the *Heathen*. For to have they obscured and altered the Story of the Creation, of *Paradise*, of the Flood; and given new names to the children of *Adam* in the first age, to *Noah* and his sons in the second: and so to *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, *Moses*, and the rest of the *Fathers*, and *Leaders* of the *Hebrews*: all which feignings, as touching the *Jews* and their originalls, *Josephus* against *Appion*, and *Tertullian* have sufficiently answered. For that the *Hebrews* were the children of *Arphaxad* and *Heber*, no man doubteth: and so *Chaldeans*, originally, taking name either of *Heber*, the son of *Sale*, or else (saith *Montanus*) of wandering, as is before remembered. And therefore doth *Stephanus*, the Greek *Coan* *Marian*, derive the *Hebrews* or *Jews*, from *Araxen*; having mistaken the name of *Abraham*, who was the son of *Heber*, in the sixth descent. Their ancient names were first changed by the two grand-children of *Abraham*: for after *Jacob*, otherwise *Israel*, the chief part were called *Israel*, another part after *Esau* or *Edom*, *Edomites*; at length the remnant of *Jacob*, being most of the Tribe of *Juda*, honoured the name of *Judas*, the son of *Jacob*, and became *Judeans*, or *Jews*: as also for a time in the name of *Ephraim* the son of *Joseph*, the chief of the *Patriarchs* of the ten Tribes, the rest of the ten Tribes were comprehended: but were first rooted out when the Kingdome of *Israel* fell. The *Judeans* continued their names, though they suffered the same servitude not long after, under *Nabuchodonosor*.

The government which this Nation under-went, was first paternall: which continued till they served the *Egyptians*. They were secondly ruled by their Captains and *Leaders*, *Moses* and *Josua*, by a policie Divine. Thirdly, they subjected themselves to Judges. Fourthly, they desired a King, and had *Saul* for the first: Of whom, and his 30 Successours, before we intreat, we are first to speak of their government under Judges, after the death of *Josua*: with somewhat of the things of Fame in other Nations about these times.

### CHAP. XIII.

Of the memorable things that happened in the World, from the death of *Josua*, to the War of *Troy*: which was about the time of *Jephtha*.

#### §. I.

Of the Inter-regnum after *Josua's* death: and of *Othoniel*.

**W**hen *Josua* was now dead, who with the advice of the 70 Elders, and the high Priest, held authority over the people, and ordered that Common-weal: it pleased God to direct the Tribe of *Juda* (in whom the Kingdome was afterward established) to undertake the War against the *Canaanites*, over whom (with Gods favour, and the assistance of *Siméon*) they became victorious.

In the first attempt which they made, they not only slew ten thousand, but made *Adonibezek* prisoner: the greatest and cruellest Commander, both of the *Canaanites* and *Perizites*. This tyrants cruelty, as elsewhere hath been signified, they returned in the same kinde upon his own head: and so by the torments which he now felt in his own person (before no otherwise known unto him but by his malicious imagination) made him confesse and acknowledge Gods judgements against himself.

The Tribes of *Juda* and *Siméon* did also matter and possesse during this Inter-regnum (or

(or as some think, before the death of *Josua*) the Cities of *Azotus*, *Ascalon*, *Eckron*, and *Hierusalem*, which they burnt; and the *jesusites* after re-edified. They took also the Cities of *Hebron*, *Debir*, or *Kiriathsepher*, and *Zephath*, afterwards *Horma*. And although it be not set down in expresse words that any one person commanded in chief over the people, as *Moses* and *Josua* did: yet it seemeth that *Caleb* was of greatest authority among them: and that he, with the advice of *Phinees*, directed and ordered their wars. For if any think that they proceeded without a Chief, the good successe which followed their undertakings, witnesseth the contrary. And it was *Caleb*, even while *Josua* governed, as appears, *Jos. 10. 39.* that propounded the attempt of *Debir*, to the rest of the Captains: for the performance of which enterprise, he promised his daughter *Achsab*: which he performed to *Othoniel* his younger brother after the conquest: whose behaviour in that service was such, as (next unto the ordinance of God) it gave him the greatest reputation among them, and may be esteemed the second cause of his preferment and election for their first Judge soon after. But while those of *Juda* made war with their borderers, from whom they only recovered the mountainous Countries (for they could not drive out the Inhabitants of the Vallies, because they had Chariots of *Jude. 1. 15.* iron.) The rest of the Tribes fought also to enlarge and establish their own Territories: In which war they laboured with variable successe: for as the house of *Joseph* recovered *Bethel*, or *Luz*, from the *Hittites*, so did the *Amorites* recover from *Dan* all the plain Countries, and forced them to save themselves in the Mountains. And now the *Israelites*, unmindfull of Gods benefits, and how often he had miraculously a fore-time defended them, and made them victorious over their enemies (the Elders being also consumed, who better advised them in the Inter-regnum) did not onely joyn themselves in marriage with the Heathen Nations: but (that which was more detestable) they served the Idols of *Baal*, and *Asteroth*, with other the dead gods of the *Canaanites* and *Amorites*. And therefore did the Lord God, whom they had provoked with their Idolatry, deliver them into the hands of the *Aramites* of *Mesopotamia*, whom *Chusshan Rishathaim* at that time commanded. But after they had felt the smart of Gods displeasure against them eight years, it pleased him to have compassion on his people, and to raise up *Othoniel* to be their Judge and Leader: who by God assisted, delivered his brethren from oppression, and enforced the *Aramites* to return into their own Deserts, and into *Mesopotamia* adjoining: after which the *Israelites* had peace forty years, during all the time of *Othoniels* government. This *Othoniel* is thought by *Jostatin* to have been the younger brother of *Caleb*, for as much as in the book of Judges, he is twice called *Othoniel*, the son of *Cinaz*, *Calebs* younger brother. Others do rather interpret those words [*Calebs* younger brother] as if they signified the meanest of his kinned. Indeed it is not likely that *Calebs* Daughter should marry with her own Uncle; yet it follows not therefore that *Othoniel* should have been the meanest of the kinned. Wherefore we may better think that he was the Nephew of *Caleb*, (as some learned men expound it) and as the very words of Scripture seem to enforce. For *Caleb* was the son of *Jephunneh*, and *Othoniel* the son of *Cinaz*, *Calebs* younger brother; that is, he was not brother to *Caleb*, but his younger brothers son: to whom it was not onely lawfull, but commendable to marry with his Cousin German *Calebs* daughter.

How long it was from the death of *Josua*, to the government of *Othoniel*, it cannot be found: but it seems to have been no short time. For many wars were made in that space against the people of the Land. *Laihs* was then taken (as is thought) by the *Danites*; and the best Writers are of opinion, that between the times of *Josua* and *Othoniel*, that civil war brake out between the *Benjamites* and the rest of *Israel*, for the forcing to death of the *Levites* Wife. For it is written, that in those dayes there was no King in *Israel*, but every man did that which was good in his own eyes. And as *Judah* led the people against the *Canaanites* during the Inter-regnum, so was he commanded to do against *Benjamin*, even by the Lord God, whose direction they craved, as wanting a Judge to appoint what should be done; which sheweth it to have been when *Josua* was dead, and before the government of *Othoniel*, especially considering, that all other times wherein they wanted Governours, were spent under such oppression of strangers, as would have given them no leave to have attempted such a civil

war, if their power had been as great, as it was in the managing of this action; wherein they so weakened the body of their estate, by effusion of blood, that in many ages they could not bring into the field such numbers as formerly they had mustered against their bordering enemies.

## §. II.

of the memorable things of this age in other Nations: and of the difficulty in the computation of times.

There lived in this age of *Othoniel*, *Pandor* or *Pandareus*, according to *Homér*, the fifth King of *Athens*; who began to rule in the twentieth year of *Othoniel*, and governed forty years. He was father to *Eriothens*: his daughters were *Progne* and *Philemela*, so greatly mentioned in fables.

*Cadmus* also about this time obtained *Thebes*: of whose daughter *Semele* was born *Dionysus*, or *Libey Pater*: under whom *Linus* the *Musician* lived. In his time also the Cities of *Melus*, *Paphus*, and *Tharbus* were built.

*Ida* and *Daedylus* flourished in this age, who are said to have found out the use of Iron: but *Genesius* hath taught us the contrary, and that *Tubalcain* long before wrought cunningly both in Iron and Brass. Not long after this time, *Amphion* and *Zethus* governed *Thebes*: whom divers *Chronologers* find in *Ehuds* time. But *S. Augustine* making a repetition of those fables, which were devised among the *Grecians* and other Nations, during the government of the Judges, begins with *Triptolemus*, of whose parentage there is as little agreement. *Vives* upon the thirteenth Chapter of *S. Augustine de Civit. Dei*, and the eighteenth book, hath gathered all the opinions of this mans progenie, where he that desires his pedigree may find it. *Laetantius* and *Eusebius* make him native of *Attica*: and the son of *Elenus* King of *Elenusina*: which *Elenus* by careful industry had fed the people of that Territory in the time of a great famine. This, when upon the like occasion *Triptolemus* could not perform, fearing the fury of the people, he fled thence by Sea in a kinde of Galley or long Boat, which carried in her Prow a graven or carved Serpent; who because he made exceeding great speed to return and to relieve his people with Corn, from some neighbour Nation: it was feigned by the Poets, that his Coach was carried by Serpents through the aire.

Whether the times of these Kings, which lived together with *Othoniel*, and after him, with therest of the Judges and Kings of *Israel* and *Juda*, be precisely set down, I cannot avow; for the *Chronologers*, both of the former and latter times, differ in many particulars; to examine all which would require the whole time of a long life: and therefore I desire to be excused, if in these comparisons I erre with others of better judgement. For whether *Eusebius* and all that follow him, or his opposites (who make themselves so conversant with these ancient Kings, and with the very year when they began to rule) have hit the mark of time, of all other the farthest off and most defaced, I cannot but greatly doubt. First, because the Authours themselves, from whom the ancientest *Chronologers* have borrowed light, had nothing for the warrant of their own works, but conjecture. Secondly, because their own disagreement and contention in those elder days, with that of our own age among the labourers in times, is such, as no man among them hath yet so edified any mans understanding, save his own; but that he is greatly distracted, after what pattern to erect his buildings.

This disagreement is found not only in the reigns of Heathen Kings and Princes; but even in the computation of those times which the indisputable authority of holy Scripture hath summed up, as in that of *Abrahams* birth; and after in the times of the Judges, and the oppressions of *Israel*, in the times from the egression to the building of *Solomons* Temple, in the *Persian* Empire, the seventy Weeks, and in what not? Wherever the account of times may suffer examination, the arguments are opposite, and contentions are such, as for ought that I see, men have sought by so many ways to uncover the Sun, that the dayes thereby are made more dark, and the clouds more condensed than before: I can therefore give no other warrant, than other men have done in these computations: and therefore that such and such Kings and Kingdoms took beginning in this

Gen. 4. 2.  
Whence came  
the name of  
Yulian by A.  
pharets of the  
two first lec-  
ters.  
Aug. de civit.  
Dei, l. 18. c. 13.

or that year, I avow it no otherwise than as a borrowed knowledge, or at least as a private opinion: which I submit to better judgements. *Nam in prijs rebus veritas non ad unguem querenda; in ancient things we are not to require an exact narration of the truth, sayes Diadore.*

## §. III.

of Ehuds time, and of Proserpina, Orithya, Tereus, Tantalus, Tytius, Admetus, and others that lived about these times.

After the death of *Othoniel*, when *Israel* fell back to their former Idolatry, God incouraged *Moab* to invade and suppress them: to perform which, he joynd the forces of *Ammon*, and *Amalec* unto his own, and so (as all kinde of misery readily findeth out those whom God hath abandoned, or for a time with-drawn his help from, thereby to make them feel the difference between his grace and his displeasure) these Heathen neighbouring Nations had an easie conquest over *Israel*, whom God himself exposed to those perills, within which they were so speedily folded up. In this miserable estate they continued full eighteen years under *Eglon* King of the *Moabites* and his confederates. Yet, as the mercies of God are infinite, he turned not his cares from their crying repentance: but raised up *Ehud* the son of *Gera* to deliver them: by which weak man, though maimed in his right hand, yet confident in the justnesse of his quarrell, and fearing that the *Israelites* were too few in numbers to contend with the Head of those valiant Nations, he resolved to attempt upon the person of *Eglon*, whom if he could but extinguish, he assured himself of the following victory: especially giving his Nation no time to re-establish their government, or to choose a King to command and direct them in the Wars. According to which resolution, *Ehud* went on as an Embassadour to *Eglon*, loaden with presents from the *Israelites*, as to appease him, and obtaining private access, upon the pretence of some secret to be revealed, he pierc'd his body with a Poniard, made of purpose with a double edge: and shutting so the doors of his closet upon him, escaped.

It may seem, that being confident of his good success, he had prepared the strength of *Israel* in readinesse. For suddenly after his return, he did re-passe *Jordan*, and invading the Territory of *Moab*, overthrew their Army, consisting of 10000. able and strong men: whereof not any one escaped. After which victory, and that *Samgar* his Succellour had miraculously slain 600. *Philistims* with an Oxe goad: the Land and People of *Israel* lived in peace unto the end of fourscore years from the death of *Othoniel*, which term expired in the Worlds year 2691.

In the dayes of *Ehud*, *Naomi*, with *Elimelech* her husband, and with her two sons, travelled into *Moab*, and so the story of *Ruth* is to be referred to this time. About the beginning of the fourscore years which are given to *Ehud*, it was that *Orcus* King of the *Molossians*, otherwise *Pluto*, stole *Proserpina*, as she walked to gather flowers in the fields of *hipponium* in *Scitilia*: or (according to *Pausanias*) by the River *Cephissus*, which else-where he calleth *Chemer*, if he mean not two distinct Rivers. This stealth being made known to *Pyrithous*, with whom *Hercules* and *Theseus* joynd themselves, they agreed together to recover her: but *Pluto*, or *Orcus* (whom others call *Aidonius*) had (as they say) a very huge Dogge, which fastened on *Pyrithous*, and tare him in pieces, and had also worried *Theseus*, but that *Hercules* speedily rescued him, and by strength took and mastered the Dogge *Cerberus*: whereof grew the fable of *Hercules* his delivering *Theseus* out of Hell. But *Zezer*, as I take it, hath written this story somewhat more according to the truth. For *Theseus* and *Pyrithous*, saith he, attempted to steal *Proserpina* Daughter to *Aidonius*, King of the *Molossians*, who had *Ceres* to Wife, the mother of *Proserpina*: *Proserpina* being a general name also for all fair women. This purpose of theirs being known to *Aidonius*, *Theseus* and *Pyrithous* were both taken; and because *Pyrithous* was the principall in this conspiracy, and *Theseus* drawn on by a kinde of affection or inforcement, the one was given for food to *Aidonius* his great Dogge *Cerberus*, the other held prisoner, till *Hercules*, by the instigation of *Euristheus*, delivered him by strong hand. The *Molossi*, which *Stephans* writes with a single (S) were a people of *Epirus*, inhabiting neer the Mountains of *Pindus*: of which Mountains

Oeta is one of the most famous, where *Hercules* burnt himself. The River of *Acheron* (which the Poets describe to be in Hell) riseth out of the same Hills. There is another Nation of the *Molossi* in *Thessaly*: but these are neighbours to the *Calisopaei*, faith *Phararch* in his Greek questions.

The rape of *Orithya*, the daughter of *Erytheus*, King of *Athens*, taken away by *Boreas* of *Thrace*, is referred to the time of *Eubud*. The Poets ascribe this rape to the North-wind, because *Thrace* is situate North from *Athens*. In this time also *Tereus* ravished *Philomela*, of which the fable was devised of her conversion into a Nightingale. For *Tereus* having married her sister *Progne*, conducting *Philomela* from *Athens* to see her sister, forced her in her passage, and withall cut out her tongue, that the might not complain; perswading *Progne* his Wife, that *Philomela* died in the mid-way: all which her brother-in-laws mercilesse behaviour towards her, *Philomela* expressed by her needle upon cloth, and sent unto *Progne*. In revenge whereof, *Progne* caused her onely son *Itys* to be cut in pieces, and set before *Tereus* her husband, so drest as it appeared to be some other ordinary food: of which when he had eaten his fill, the caused his head, hands and feet, to be presented unto him: and then fled away with such speed towards *Athens*, where her Father *Tandion* yet lived, as the Poets feigned, that she was turned into a Swallow. The place where it was performed, *Strabo* findes to be *Daulis* in *Phocis*: and the Tomb of *Tereus*, *Pausanias* hath built near the Rocks *Mergis*, in the Territory of *Athens*. By which, as also by the name *Daulis*, where these things to are supposed to have been done (whence also *Philomela* is called *Daulias ales*) it appears that it is true, which *Thucydides* notes by way of digression in his *Peloponnesian War*, That this *Tereus* was not King in that which is now called *Thracia*, or in *Odryse*, (as the Poets call him *Odrysius*) but that *Phocis* a Countie in Greece not far from *Attica*, a City whereof is called *Daulis*, was in *Pandion's* time inhabited by *Thracians*, of which this *Tereus* was King: whence *Pandion*, to have amity with his neighbours, made him his son-in-law: as it is good to beleve, faith *Thucydides*, that *Pandion* King of *Athens* made that alliance with a neighbour King, from whom he might have succour, rather than with any *Tereus*, that should have held the Kingdome of *Odryse*, which was greatly distant from thence. The occasion that the Poets chose a Swallow for *Progne* to be turned into, may seem to have been, partly because, as *Pausanias* sayes, *Daulide nec tumidant, nec habitant in tota circum regione Hirundines*; as if a Swallow, remembering the wrong that was there done to her, and her sister, did forever after hate that place.

Neer this time *Melampus* (who is said to have understood the voices of Birds and Beasts) flourished, being also esteemed for an excellent Physician. He restored to their former health the Daughters of *Prætus* King of the *Argives*, who (as the Poets please) were made mad by *Juno*: and thinking themselves to be Kine, fled into the Woods, fearing to be constrained to the Plough: for in those Countries where the ground was light, they did use often to plough with Kine.

In the seven and fortieth yeer of *Eubud*, *Tros* began to reign in *Dardania*, and gave it his own name; about which time *Phenone* the chief Priest of *Apollo* in *Delfos*, devised the Heroicall Verse.

Of the same date was *Tantalus*, King of *Lydia*: whom *Eusebius* makes King of *Phrygia*: and also of that part of which the people were anciently *Maones*. Of *Tantalus* was devised the fable that some Poets have applied to the passion of love: and some to the covetous that dare not enjoy his riches. *Eusebius* calls this *Tantalus* the son of *Jupiter*, by the Nymph *Pleta*: *Dionysius* and *Didymus* in *Zezer*, give him another mother. He was said to be the son of *Jupiter*, as some will have it; because he had that Planet in his ascendent, betokening Wisdom and Riches. It is said, that when he made a feast to the gods, having nothing more precious, he caused his own son to be slain and drest to the banquet: of whom *Ceres* ate part of one of the shoulders; whereby was signified, that those men which seek after Divine knowledge, preferre nothing on earth before it: no not the care of their own children, of all else the most dearest. And where it was devised, that he had always Water and Fruit offered to his lips, and yet suffered the torment of hunger and thirst, it was meant thereby, that though he abounded (by reason of his riches) in all delicacy of the world, yet his minde being otherwise, and to higher desires transported, he enjoyed no pleasure at all by the rest. Of whom *Ovid*:

*Quærit*

*Quærit aquas in aquis, & poma fugacia captat*  
*Tantalus, hoc illi garrula lingua dedit.*

Here *Tantalus* in water seeks for water, and doth misse  
The fleeting fruit he catcheth at: His long tongue brought him this.

This punishment, they say, was inflicted upon him, for that he discovered the secrets of the gods: that is, because he taught wisdom and vertue to mortall men: which *Flory Cornelius Gallus* hath elegantly exprest in Verse. Others expound this fable otherwise, and say, That *Tantalus*, though he excelled in riches, yet being thrifty of more abundance, was never satisfied. Of whom *Horace* against covetousnesse.

*Tantalus à labris sitiens fugientia captat*  
*Flumina; quid vides? mutato nomine de te*  
*Fabula narratur.*

The thirsting *Tantalus* doth catch at streams that from him flee.  
Why laughst thou? the name but chang'd, the tale is told of thee.

Others conceive, where it is signified of *Tantalus*, that he gave the *Nectar* and *Ambrosia* of the gods to vain and unworthy men, that he was therefore by them in that sort punished. Of which *Natalis* out of *Pindarus*:

*Immortalitatem quid furatus,*  
*Coetantis convivis*  
*Nectar Ambrosiamque dedit.*

Because that stealing immortality,  
He did both *Nectar* and *Ambrosia* give  
To guests of his own age, to make them live.

Whereby it was meant, that the secrets of Divinity ought not to be imparted to the unpure Vulgar. For as the cleaneft meats in a soule stomack, are therein corrupted, so the most high and reserved mysteries are often perverted by an unclean and defiled minde.

To you it is given (saith *Christ* in *Mark*) to know the mysterie of the Kingdom of God, but unto them that are without, all things be done in parables. So it is said of him, that he expounded all things to his Disciples apart. And therefore doth *Gregory Nazianzene* infer upon a place of *S. Paul*: *Quod si Paulo licuisset effari ea, quorum ipsi cognitionem celum vertunt, & usque ad illud progressio suppeditavit, fortasse de Deo, nobis aliquid amplius constaret*; If *Paul* might have uttered the things, the knowledge whereof the third Heavens, and his going thither, did bring unto him, peradventure we might know somewhat more of God.

*Pythagoras*, faith *Revelin*, thought it not the part of a wife man, *Asino lyram exponere, aut mysteria, quæ ita reciperet, ut Sus tubam, & fidem graculus, & unguenta Scarabeus*: quare silentium induxit discipulis, ne vulgo divinarum arcanum patefacerent, quæ meditando facilius quam loquendo apprehenduntur; To set an Asse to a harp, or to learn mysteries: which be would handle as a Swine doth a Trumpet, or a Jay a Violl, or *Scarabæus*, and unclean flies sovereign oymment. Wherefore he commanded silence to his Disciples, that they should not disclose divine mysteries to the common sort, which are easier learned by meditation than by babbling. And therefore did the *Egyptians* communicate their mysteries among their Priests in certain Hieroglyphick letters, to the end that their secrets might be hidden from the Vulgar: and that they might bestow the more time in the contemplation of their covered meanings.

But to proceed with the contemporaries of *Aod*, or *Eubud*, with him it is also said, that *Tityus* lived, whom *Apollo* slew, because he sought to force his mother *Latona*. *Euphorion* hath it thus, that *Tityus* was the son of *Elara*, the Daughter of *Orchomenus*; which *Elara* being beloved of *Jupiter*, to avoid *Juno's* revenge, he hid *Elara* in the earth, where she was delivered of *Tityus*: whose Mother dying, and himself therein nourished, he was therefore called the son of the earth. *Pausanias* speaking of the grave of this Giant, affirms, that his body occupied the third part of a furlong. But *Tibullus* hath a louder lie of his stature out of *Homer*:

*Por-*

*Lib. 9.*  
*Paus. in Att.*

*Thucyd. l. 2.*

*Paus. l. 1.*  
*Homer. Odyss. 11.*

*Paus.*

*Euseb. præp. E.*  
*caus. l. 2. Zezer.*  
*Phil. ac. Cbil. 5.*

*Mark. 4. 11.*

*Mark. 4. 34.*  
*Greg. in Orat.*  
*de rella ratione*  
*disps. de Deo*  
*2 Cor. 12.*

Hom. Od. 11.

*Porreſiſque novem Tityus per jugera terra,  
Affidus atro viſcere paſcit aves.*

Nine ſurlongs ſtretcht lies *Tityus*, who for his wicked deeds,  
The hungry Birds with his renewing liver daily feeds.

This *Strabo* doth thus expound; That *Apollo* killing this cruell and wicked Tyrant of *Panopea*, a City in *Phocks*, it was teigned by the Poets, to the terrour of others, That he was ſtill eaten in Hell by birds, and yet ſtill lived, and had his fleſh renewed.

*Admetus*, King of *Ibeſſaly*, lived alſo in this age, whom it is ſaid that *Apollo* firſt ſerved as a Herd-man, and afterward, for his excellent wit, was by him advanced; but having ſlain *Hycinthus*, he croſt the *Hellespont*, and fled into *Phrygia*: where, together with *Neptune*, he was entertained by *Laomedon*, and got his bread by working in brick, for building of the walls of *Troy*, not by making the bricks leap into their places by playing on his Harp: according to him in *Ovid*, which ſaith:

*Ilion aſpicias, firmataque turribus altis  
Mœnia, Apollinæ ſtricta canore lyre.*

Strong *Ilion* thou ſhalt ſee with walls and towers high,  
Built with the harp of wiſe *Apollo's* Harmony.

Thus the Poets: but others, that he laboured with his hands, as hired in this work, And that he alſo laboured at the building of the *Labyrinth* in *Greece*, all the *Ategarians* witneſſe, ſaith *Panſanias*.

Pauſan. Att.

In theſe daies alſo of *Ehud*, (or as ſome finde it) in the daies of *Deborah*, lived *Perſeus*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, by whole ſouldiers (as they failed out of *Peloponneſus*, to ſeek their adventure on *Africa* ſide) *Meduſa*, the Daughter and Succellor of *Phoræus*, being weakly accompanied as ſhe hunted, near the Lake *Triton*, was ſurpriſed and ſlain: whole beauty, when *Perſeus* beheld, he cauſed her head to be imbalanced, and carried into *Greece*: the beauty whereof was ſuch, and ſo much admired, and the beholders ſo aſtoniſhed which beheld it, as thereof grew the fiction, That all that looked on *Meduſa's* head, were turned into ſtones.

Triton a Lake  
of Africa,  
which *Plinie*  
callith *Pallan-  
tium*. *Diſſym.* in  
*Pyrg. Higl.*

Enſeb. in Cboro.

*Cecrops*, the ſecond of that name, and 7. King of *Athens*, and *Ariſtus* the 13. or, after *Enſebius*, the 14. King of the *Argives*, began alſo their reigns, as it is ſaid, in the time of this Judge: of which the firſt ruled 40. yeers, and the ſecond 31. yeers. Alſo *Bellerophon* lived in this age, being the ſon of *Glancus*, the ſon of *Sifyphus*: who inticed by *Atæa*, or *Sthenolia*, the wife of *Prætus* of the *Argives*, to accompany her, but reſuſing it, ſhe accuſed him to her huſband, that he offered to force her: whereupon *Prætus* ſent *Bellerophon* into *Lycia*, about ſome affairs of weight, between him and his ſon-in-law *Jobates*: giving ſecret order to *Jobates* to diſpatch him: but *Jobates* thinking it diſhonourable to lay violent hands on him, employed him againſt *Chimera*, a Monster vomiting, or breathing fire. Now the gods (as the report is) pitying his innocency, ſent him the winged Horſe, *Pegasus*, ſprung up of the blood of *Meduſa*, formerly ſlain by the ſouldiers of *Perſeus* in *Africa*, to tranſport him; a horſe that none other could maſter or bridle but *Minerva*: upon which beaſt *Bellerophon* over-came *Chimera*: and performed the other ſervices given him in charge: which done, as he returned toward *Lycia*, the *Lycians* lay in ambuſh to have ſlain him: but being victorious alſo over all thoſe, he arrived to *Jobates* in ſafety: whom *Jobates* for his eminent virtues honoured, firſt with one of his Daughters: and afterward with his Kingdom: after which he grew ſo inſolent, as he attempted to ſlie up to heaven upon his *Pegasus*: whole pride *Jupiter* diſdaining, cauſed one of his ſtinging flies ſo to vex *Pegasus*, as he caſt off *Bellerophon* from his back, into the Valley of *Cilicia*, where he died blinde; of which burthen *Pegasus* being diſcharged (as the fable goeth) flew back to heaven: and being fed in *Jupiter's* own ſtable, *Aurora* begg'd him of *Jupiter* to ride on before the Sun. This tale is diverſly expounded; as firſt by ſome, \* That it pleaſeth God to relieve men in their innocent and undeſerved adverſity, and to caſt down thoſe which are too high minded: according to that which is ſaid of *Bellerophon*: that when he was expoſed to extreme hazard, or rather certain death, he found both deliverance and honour: but waxing over-  
proud

proud and preſumptuous in his glorious fortunes, he was again thrown down into the extremities of ſorrow, and ever-during miſerie. Secondly by others, That under the name of *Chimera*, was meant a cruell Pyrat of the *Lycians*, whole ſhip had in her prow a Lyon, a Goate in the mid-ſhip, and a Dragon in the ſteern, of which three beaſts this Monster *Chimera* was ſaid to be compounded, whom *Bellerophon* purſued with a kinde of Galley, of ſuch ſwiftneſſe, that it was called the flying Horſe: to whom the invention of ſayls (the wings of a ſhip) are alſo attributed. Many other expoliſions are made of this tale by other Authors: but it is not unlikely, that *Chimera* was the name of a ſhip, for ſo *Virgil* calleth one of the greateſt ſhips of *Æneæ*.

L. 5. *Æneid.*  
*Hom.* in *Ilyth-*  
*ad Apoll.*

*Jon* alſo, from whom the *Athenians* (being ignorant of the antiquities of their parents) derive their name of *Iones*, is ſaid to have been about *Ehud's* time: *Hom.* calls them *Jæones*, which hath a nicer reſemblance to the word *Javan*. Perhaps it might be that *Jon* himſelf took name from *Javan*: it being a cuſtome observable in the Hiſtories of all times, to revive the ancient name of a fore-father, in ſome the principall of his iſſue.

The invaſion of *India* by *Liber-Pater*, is by ſome reported as done in this age: but *S. Auguſtine* makes him far more ancient: placing him between the coming out of *Egypt*, and the death of *Joſua*.

L. 18. c. 12. de  
ci. dei. 18. c. 15

About the end of the 80. yeers, aſcribed to *Ehud*, and *Saugar*, *Pelop* flouriſhed: who gave name to *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, now called *Morea*.

## §. IV.

Of *Deborah* and her Contemporaries.

AFTER *Iſrael* had lived in peace and plenty to the end of theſe 80. yeers, they again began to forget the giver of all goodneſſe, and many of thoſe being worn out, which were witneſſes of the former miſerie, and of Gods deliverance by *Ehud*; and after him by *Saugar*; the reſt began to return to their former neglect of Gods commandments. For as Plenty and Peace are the parents of idle ſecuritie; ſo is ſecuritie as fruitfull in begetting and bringing forth both danger and ſubverſion: of which, all ſtates in the world have taſted by interchange of times. Therefore when their ſins were again ripe for puniſhment, *Jabin* King of *Haſor*, after the death of *Ehud*, invaded the territory of *Iſrael*; and having in his ſervice 900. iron Chariots, beſides the reſt of his forces, he held them in ſubjection twenty yeers, till it pleaſed God to raiſe up *Deborah*, the Prophetreſſe, who encouraged *Barac* to levie a force out of *Nepthalim*, and *Zabulon*, to encounter the *Canaanites*. That the men of *Nepthalim* were more forward than the reſt in this action, it may ſeem to have proceeded partly from the authority that *Barac* had among them, being of the ſame Tribe; and partly from their feeling of the common grievance, which in them was more ſenſible than in others, becauſe *Haſor* and *Harath* the chief holds of *Jabin*, were in *Nepthalim*. So in the dayes of *Jeſhua* the *Gileadites* took the greateſt care, becauſe the *Ammonites*, with whom the War was, preſſed moſt upon them, as being their borderers. Now as it pleaſed God by the left hand of *Ehud* to deliver *Iſrael* from the *Moabites*: and by the counſell and courage of a woman, to free them from the yoke of *Canaan*, and to kill the valiant *Siſera* by *Jael* the *Kenites* wife: ſo waſt his will at other times, to work the like great things by the weakeſt meanes. For the mighty *Aſſyrian Nabuchodonosor*, who was a King of Kings, and reſiſtleſſe, he overthrew by his own imaginations, the cauſers of his brutiſh melancholy: and changed his matchleſſe pride into the baſe humility of a Beaſt. And to approve that he is the Lord of all power, he ſometime puniſheth by inviſible ſtrength, as when he ſlaughtered the Army of *Senacherib* by his Angell, or as he did the *Egyptians* in *Moſes* time: ſometime by dead bodies, as when he drowned *Pharaoh* by the waves of the Sea; and the *Canaanites* by haile-ſtones in the time of *Joſua*: ſometimes by the miniſteries of men, as when he overthrew the four Kings of the Eaſt, *Chedorlaomer*, and his companions, by the houſhold ſervants of *Abraham*. He cauſed the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* to ſet upon their own confederate the Army of the *Edomites*; and having ſlain them, to kill one another in the ſight of *Jeſhoaphat*: and of the like to theſe a volume of examples may be gathered. And to this effect did *Deborah* the Prophetreſſe ſpeak unto *Barac* in theſe words: But this journey that thou takeſt, ſhall not be for thine honour, for *Jdg.* 49.  
the

the Lord shall sell Sisera into the hands of a Woman. In which victory all the strength of the Canaanite Jabin fell to the ground, even to the last man: in the end of which War it seemeth that Jabin himself also perished, as appeareth by the last Verse of the fourth of Judges.

Jud. 5. v. 18.

verse 17.

After all which, Deborah giveth thanks to God, and after the acknowledgement of all his powerfullnesse, and great mercies, she sheweth the weak estate wherinto Israel was brought for their Idolatrie by the Canaanites, and other bordering Nations, in these words: *Was there a shield or speare seen among forty thousand of Israel?* She also sheweth how the Israelites were severed and amazed, some of them confined over Jordan, and durst not joyne themselves to the rest; as those of Reuben in Gilead: that the Aserites kept the Sea-coast, and forsook their habitations towards the Land; and the children of Dan, who neighboured the Sea, crept into their ships for safety, shewing thereby that all were dispersed, and all in effect lost. She then cursed the Inhabitants of Meron, who dwelling neer the place of the battell (belike fearing the successe) came not out to assist Israel, and then blesteth Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite, who nailed Sisera in her Tent: shewing the ancient affection of that race to the Israelites. For though the Family of Heber were inforced in that miserable time of subjection, to hold correspondence with Jabin the Canaanite, yet when occasion offered them means, they witnessed their love and faith to their ancient friends. Lastly, she derideth the Mother of Sisera who promised her Son the victory in her own hopes: and fancied to her self, and described the spoiles both of Garments and Maidens by him gotten. For conclusion, she directeth her praise and thanks to God onely victorious.

Pan-in Corinthiac.

From the beginning of Jabin's oppression to the end of that peace, which Deborah and Barac purchased unto Israel, there passed 40. years. In which time the Kingdom of Argos, which had continued 544. years, was translated to Mycene: The translation of this Kingdom, *Vives* out of *Pausanias* writeth to this effect: After *Danaus*, *Lyneus* succeeded in Argos, after whom the Children of *Abas* the son of *Lyneus* divided the Kingdom: of which *Acrisius* being eldest, held Argos it self: *Prætus* his brother posselt *Ephyra*, or *Corinth*, and *Tyrinthor*, and other Cities, with all the Territories towards the Sea, there being many monuments in *Tyrinthor*, which witness *Prætus* possession, saith *Pausanias*.

Now *Acrisius* was fore-told by an Oracle, that he should be slain by the son of his Daughter *Danae*: whereupon he caused her to be inclosed in a Tower, to the end that no man might accompanie her. But the Lady being exceeding faire, it is fained that *Jupiter* turned himself into a golden shower: which falling into her lap, begat her with child: the meaning whereof was, that some Kings son, or other worthy man, corrupted her Keepers with gold, and enjoyed her, of whom *Perseus* was borne; who when he grew to mans estate, either by chance (saith *Cicero*) or in shewing his grand-father the invention of the discus, or leaden ball, slew him unwillingly. After this, *Perseus*, to avoid the infamie of Patricide in Argos, changed Kingdoms, with his Uncle *Prætus*: and built *Mycene*. This imprisonment of *Danae*, *Sophocles* reporteth otherwise: and that she was inclosed in a brazen vault under the Kings Hall with her Nurse and Keepers. Upon this close custodie *Horace* hath this witty observation:

*Inclusam Danaen turris abenca,  
Robustæq; fores, & vigilum canum  
Tristes excubie munierant satis  
Nolturnis ab adulteris:*

*Si non Acrisium Virginis abditæ  
Custodem pavidum, Jupiter & Venus  
Risissent, fore enim tutum iter & patens  
Converso in pretium Deo.*

*Arem per medios ire satellites,  
Et perumpere amat saxa, potentius  
Iū fulmineo.*

50

The

The brazen Tower with doors close barr'd,  
And watchfull bandogs frightfull guard,  
Kept safe the maidenhead,  
of *Danae* from secret love:  
Till smiling *Venus*, and wise *Jove*  
Beguil'd her Fathers dread.  
For chang'd into a golden shower,  
The god into her lap did poure  
Himself, and took his pleasure.  
Through guards and stony walls to break,  
The thunder-bolt is far more weak,  
Than is a golden treasure.

The first Kings of the Argives were these:

*Inachus* the first King, who began to reign in the first yeer of *Jacob*, and the 61. of *Isaac*: from which time, to the end of *Sthenelus*, *Castor* mis-reckoneth 400. yeers. This Kingdome before the translation, *Ensebius* accounteth to have stood 544. yeers, others but at 417. It was the daughter of this *Inachus*: whom the *Egyptians* called *Iff*.

Phoroneus,  
Apie,  
Argus,  
Piræus,  
Phorbas,  
Triopas,  
Crotopus,  
Sthenelus,  
Danaus,  
Lyneus,  
Abas,  
Acrisius,  
Pelops.

After the translation to *Mycene*, *Mar. Scotus* findes these Kings:

Perseus,  
Sthenelus,  
Eurystheus,  
Atreus and The sons of Pelops by Hippodamia: Atreus  
by  
Thyestes { Europe had Agamemnon and Menelaus.  
Agamemnon,  
Ægysthus,  
Orestes,  
Tisamenus,  
Penthius and  
Cometes.

Of these Kings *Mercator* and *Bunting* leave out the two first, and the last: beginning with *Eurystheus*: and ending with *Penthius*. In *Tisamenus* time the *Heraclide* returned into *Peloponnesus*: of which hereafter.

The Contemporaries of *Barac* and *Deborah*, were *Midax*, who reigned in *Phrygia*: and *Ilius*, who built *Ilium*: with others mentioned in our *Chronological Table*, as Contemporaries with *Deborah*.

§. V.

of Gideon, and of Dædalus, Sphinx, Minos, and others that lived in this age.

*Deborah* and *Barac* being dead, the *Midianites*, assisted by the *Amalekites*, infested *Israel*. For when, under a Judge, who had held them in the fear of the Lord, they had enjoyed any quiet or prosperity: the Judge was no sooner dead, than they turned to their former impious Idolatry. Therefore now the neighbouring Nations did

so.



so master them in a short time (the hand of God being with-held from their defence) as to save themselves, they crept into caves of the mountains, and other the like places of hardest access: their enemies possessing all the plains and fruitful vallies: and in harvest time, by themselves, and the multitude of their cattell, destroying all that grew up: covering the fields as thick as grasshoppers: which servitude lasted seven years.

Jud. 6.

Jud. 6. v. 5.

Jud. 6. v. 7.

Then the Lord by his Angel stirred up Gideon the son of Joash, afterward called Jerubbaal: whose feare and unwillingnesse, and how it pleased God to hearten him in his enterprize, it is both largely and precisely set down in the holy Scriptures: as also how it pleased God by a few select persons, namely 300. out of 32000. men, to make 10 them know that he onely was the Lord of Hosts. Each of these 300. by Gideons appointment carried a trumpet, and light in a pitcher, instruments of more terror than force, with which he gave the great Army of their enemies an alarm: who hearing so loud a noyse, and seeing (at the crack of so many pitchers broken) so many lights about them, esteeming the Army of Israel to be infinite, and stricken with a sudden fear, they all fled without a stroke stricken, and were slaughtered in great numbers: two of their Princes being made prisoners and slain. In his return the Ephraimites began to quarrell with Gideon, because he made war without their assistance, being then greedy of glory, the victory being gotten: who (if Gideon had failed and fallen in the enterprize) would no doubt have held themselves happy by being neglected. But Gideon appealing them with a mild answer, followed after the enemy, in which pursuit being tyred with travell, and weary even with the slaughtering of his enemies, he desired relief from the inhabitants of Succoth, to the end, that (his men being refreshed) he might over-take the other two Kings of the Midianites: which had saved themselves by flight. For they were four Princes of the Nations, which had invaded and wasted Israel: to wit, Oreb and Seeb, which were taken already, and Zebah and Zalmunna; which fled.

Gideon being denied by them of Succoth, sought the like relief from the Inhabitants of Peniel, who in like sort refused to succour him. To both of these places he threatened therefore the revenge, which in his return from the prosecution of the other two Princes, he performed: to wit, that he would tear the flesh of those of Succoth with thorns and briars, and destroy the Inhabitants and City of Peniel. Now why the people of these two Cities should refuse relief to their brethren the Israelites, especially after so great a victory: if I may presume to make conjecture, it seems likely, first, that those Cities set over Jordan, and in the way of all invasions, to be made by the Moabites, Ammonites and Midianites, into Israel, had either made their own peace with those nations, and were not spoiled by them; or else they knowing that Zebah and Zalmunna were escaped with a great part of their army, might fear their revenge in the future. Secondly, it may be laid to the condition and dispositions of these men: as it is not rare to finde of the like humour in all ages. For there are multitudes of men, especially of those which follow the war, that both envie and maligne others, if they perform any praiseworthy actions, for the honour and safety of their own Country, though themselves may be assured to beare a part of the smart of contrary successe. And such malicious hearts can rather be contented that their Prince and Country should suffer hazard and want, than that such men as they mislike, should be the authors or actors of any glory or good to either.

A place in Basan, as it is thought. Jud. 8. 10.

Now Gideon, how or wheresoever it were that he refreshed himself and his weary and hungry Souldiers, yet he followed the opportunity, and pursued his former victory to the uttermost: and finding Zebah and Zalmunna in Karkor (suspecting no further attempt upon them) he again surprised them, and slaughtered those 15000. remaining: 10 having put to the sword in the former attempt 120000. and withall he took Zebah and Zalmunna prisoners: whom because themselves had executed Gideons brethren before at Tabor, he caused them both to be slain: or (as it is written) at their own request slew them with his own hands, his Son whom he first commanded to doe it, refusing it; and in his return from the consummation of this marvellous victory, he took revenge of the Elders of Succoth, and of the Citizens of Peniel: forgiving no offence committed against him, either by strangers or by his brethren the Israelites. But such mercy as he shewed to others, his own children found soon after his death, according 10

to that which hath been said before. The debts of cruelty and mercy are never left unsatisfied: for as he slew the 70. Elders of Succoth, with great and unseasonable torments, so were his own 70. sons, all but one, murdered by his own bastard Abimelec: The like Analogie is observed by the Rabbines, in the greatest of the plagues which God brought upon the Egyptians, who having caused the male children of the Hebrews to be slain, others of them to be cast into the river and drowned: God rewarded them even with the like measure, destroying their own first-born by his Angel, and drowning Pharaoh and his Army in the Red Sea. And hereof a world of examples might be given both out of the Scriptures and other Histories.

10 In the end so much did the people reverence Gideon in the present for his victory, and their own deliverance, as they offered him the Sovereignty over them, and to establish him in the Government: which he refused, answering; *I will not reign over you, neither shall my childre reign over you, but the Lord shall, &c.* But he desired the people that they would bestow on him the golden ear-rings which every man had gotten. For the Israelites, neighbours, and mixt with the Midianites, used to wear them: the weight of all which was a thousand & seven hundred shekles of gold, which makes of ours 2380. li. if we follow the account of the shekle vulgar. And because he converted that gold into an Ephod, a garment of gold, blew silk, purple, scarlet, and fine linen, belonging to the High Priest onely, and set up the same in his own City of Ephra or Ephra, which drew Israel to Idolatry, the same was the destruction of Gideon and his house.

Exod. 28. Jud. 8. 28.

10 There was another kinde of Ephod besides this of the High Priests, which the Levites used, and so did David when he danced before the Ark: and Samuel while he was yet young, which was made of linnen onely.

Now if any man demand how it was possible for Gideon with 300. men to destroy 120000. of their enemies, and afterward 15000. which remained, we may remember, that although Gideon with 300. gave the first alarm, and put the Midianites in rout and disorder; yet all the rest of the Army came in to the slaughter, and pursuit: for it is written; *That the men of Israel being gathered together out of Nephtali, and out of Asher, and out of Manasse, pursued after the Midianites:* for this Army Gideon left in tents behinde him, when he went down to view the Army of his enemies, who with the noise of his 300. trumpets came after him to the execution.

There lived with Gideon, Egeus, the son of Pandion, who reigned in Athens: Eurysithus King of Mycene: Atreus and Thyestes the sons of Pelops, who bare dominion over a great part of Peloponnesus, and after the death of Eurysithus, the Kingdom of Mycene fell into the hand of Atreus. This is that Atreus, who holding his brother in jealousy, as an attempter, both of his Wife and Crown, slew the children of Thyestes, and causing their flesh to be dressed, did therewith feast their father. But this cruelty was not unrevengeed. For both Atreus and his son Agamemnon was slain by a base son of Thyestes, yea the grand-children, and all the lineage of Atreus died by the same sword.

40 In Gideons time also those things were supposed to have been done, which are written of Dedalus and Icarus. Dedalus, they say, having slain his Nephew Atalrus, fled to Minos, King of Crete, for succour; where for his excellent workmanship he was greatly esteemed, having made for Minos a Labyrinth, like unto that of Egypt. Afterward he was said to have framed an artificiall Cowe for Pasiphae the Queen, that she, being in love with a fair Bull, might by putting her self into the Cowe, satisfie her lust; a thing no lesse unnaturall than incredible, had not that shamelesse Emperour Domitian exhibited the like beastly spectacle openly before the people of Rome, in his Amphitheater; of purpose, as may seem, to verifie the old Fable. For so it appears by those Verses of Martial, wherein the flattering Poet magnifieth the abominable shew, as a goodly Pageant, in those vicious times.

*Iunctam Pasiphaen Diteo credite Tauro  
vidimus, accepit fabula prisca fidem.  
Nec se miratur Caesar, longeva venustas  
Quicquid fama canit, donat arena tibi.*

But concerning that which is reported of Pasiphae, Servius makes a lesse unheeded con-

Mm

construction of it, thinking that *Dædalus* was of her counsell, and her *Pandar* for the enticing of a Secretary of *Minos* called *Taurus*, which signifieth a Bull, who begat her with childe; and that the being delivered of two sons, the one resembling *Taurus*, the other her husband *Minos*, it was feigned that she was delivered of the Monster *Minotaur*, half a Man, and half a Bull. But this practice being discovered, and *Dædalus* appointed to be slain, he fled out of *Crete* to *Cocalus* King of *Sicily*: in which passage he made such expedition, as it was feigned that he fashioned wings for himself and his son to transport them. For whereas *Minos* pursued him with boats which had oars onely, *Dædalus* framed sails both for his own boat, and for his sons, by which he outwent those that had him in chase. Upon which new invention, *Icarus* bearing himself too over-bold, was over-born and drowned.

It is also written of *Dædalus*, that he made Images that could move themselves, and go, because he carved them with legs, arms, and hands; whereas those that preceded him, could onely present the body and head of those men, whom they carried to counterfeite, and yet the workmanship was esteemed very rare. But *Plutarch*, who had seen some of those that were called the Images of *Dædalus*, found them exceeding rude.

With *Gideon* also flourished *Linnus* the *Theban*, the son of *Apollo*, and *Terpsichore*, who instructed *Thamiris*, *Orpheus*, and *Hercules*. He wrote of the Creation, of the Sun and Moons course, and of the generation of living Creatures, but in the end he was slain by *Hercules* his scholar with his own Harp.

Again, in this age those things spoken of *Sphinx* and *Oedipus*, are thought to have been performed. This *Sphinx* being a great robber by sea and land, was by the *Corinthians* Army, led by *Oedipus*, overcome. But that which was written of her propounding of riddles, to those whom she mastered, was meant by the rockie and unaccessibile Mountain neer *Thebes*, which she defended; and by *Oedipus* dissolving her probleme, his victorie over her. She was painted with wings, because exceeding swift, and with the body of a Lion, for her cruelty. But that which *Palephatus* reports of *Sphinx*, were more probable, did not the time disprove it, for he calls her an *Amazonite*, &c. the wife of *Cadmus*: who when by her help he had cast *Draco* out of *Thebes* (neglecting her) he married the sister of *Draco*, which *Sphinx* taking in despitefull part, with her own troop he held the Mountain by *Thebes*, from whence she continued a sharp war upon the *Thebans*, till by *Oedipus* overthrowen. About this time did *Minos* thrust his brother out of *Crete*, and held sharp war with the *Megarians* and *Athenians*, because his son *Androgeus* was slain by them. He posselt himself of *Megara*, by the treason of *Scylla*, daughter of *Nisus* the King. He was long Master of the Sea, and brought the *Athenians* to the tribute of delivering him every year seven of their sons: which tribute *Theseus* released, as shall be shewed, when I come to the time of the next Judge *Thola*. In the end he was slain at *Camerinus* or *Camicus* in *Sicilia*, by *Cocalus* the King, while he pursued *Dædalus*: and was esteemed by some to be the first Law-giver to those Islands.

To this time are referred many deeds of *Hercules*, as the killing of *Anteus* the Giant, who was said to have 60. and odde cubits of length, which though *Plutarch* doth confirm, reporting that there was such a body found by *Sertorius* the Roman, in *Lybia*, where *Heracles* slew *Anteus*: yet for my self I think it but a loud lie. That *Anteus* was of great strength, and a cunning wrestler, *Ensiebus* affirmeth: and because he cast so many men to the ground, he was feigned to be the son of the earth. *Pliny* saith, that he inhabited neer the Gardens *Hesperides* in *Mauritania*. *S. Augustine* affirms, that this *Hercules* was not of *Greece*, but of *Lybia*: and the *Hydra* also which he overcame, *Plato* expoundeth to be a subtle Sophister.

## §. VI.

## Of the Expedition of the Argonauts.

About the eleventh yeer of *Gideon*, was the famous Expedition of the *Argonauts*: of which many fabulous discourses have been written, the sum of which is this: *Pelias* the son of *Neptune*, brother by the mothers side to *Aeson*, who was *Aeson*'s father, reigning in *Iolcos* a Town of *Thessaly*, was warned by the Oracle of *Apollo* to take heed of him that wore but one shoe. This *Pelias* afterward sacrificing to *Neptune*, invited

*Aeson* to him, who coming hastily, lost one shoe in passing over a brook: whereupon *Pelias* demanded of him what course he would take (supposing he were able) against one of whom an Oracle should advise him to take heed? to which question when *Aeson* had briefly answered, that he would send him to *Colchis* to fetch the golden Fleece, *Pelias* immediately commanded him to undertake that service. Therefore *Aeson* prepared for the voyage, having a ship built by *Argus* the son of *Phryxus*, by the counsel of *Pallas*: wherein he procured all the bravest men of *Greece* to sail with him: as *Thyphes* the Master of the ship, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Castor* and *Pollux* the sons of *Tyndarus*, *Idemon* and *Peleus* sons of *Aacus*, and fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Zetes* and *Calais* the two winged sons of *Boreas*, *Amphiaras* the great Sooth-sayer, *Meleager* of *Calidon* that slew the great wilde Boare, *Ascalaphus* and *Jalmenus*, or *Almenus*, the sons of *Mars*, who were afterwards at the last war of *Troy*, *Laertes* the father of *Ulysses*, *Atalanta* a warlike Virgin, *Idas* and *Lyncus* the sons of *Aphareus*, who afterwards in fight with *Castor* and *Pollux*, slew *Castor*, and wounded *Pollux*, but were slain themselves: *Lyncus* by *Pollux*, *Idas* by *Jupiter* with lightning.

These and many other went with *Aeson* in the ship *Argo*: in whose Prow was a table of the Beech of *Dodona*, which could speak. They arrived first at *Lemnos*; the women of which Island, having slain all the males, purposing to lead an *Amazonian* life, were nevertheless contented to take their pleasure of the *Argonauts*. Hence they came to the Country about *Cyzicus*: where dwelt a people called *Doliones*: over whom then reigned one *Cyzicus*, who entertained them friendly; but it so fell out, that loosing thence by night, they were driven by contrary windes back into his Port, neither knowing that it was the same Haven, nor being known by the *Doliones* to be the same men: but rather taken for some of their bordering enemies: by which means they fell to blows, inso much that the *Argonauts* slew the most part of the *Doliones*, together with their King *Cyzicus*: which when by day-light they perceived, with many tears they solemnized his funeral. Then departed they again, and arrived shortly in *Mysia*, where they left *Hercules* and *Polyphemus* the son of *Elateus*, who went to seek *Hylan* the darling of *Hercules*, that was ravished by the *Nymphs*.

*Polyphemus* built a Town in *Mysia* called *Cior*, wherein he reigned. *Hercules* returned to *Argos*. From *Mysia* the *Argonauts* sailed into *Bythia*, which then was peopled by the *Bebryces*, the ancient Inhabitants of the Country, over whom *Amycus* the son of *Neptune* was then King. He being a strong man, compelled all strangers to fight with him at whorlbat, in which kinde of fight he had slain many, and was now himself slain by *Pollux*. The *Bebryces*, in revenge of his death slew all upon *Pollux*, but his companions rescued him, with great slaughter of the people. They sailed from hence to *Salmydessus* a Town in *Thrace* (somewhat out of their way) wherein *Phineus* a Sooth-sayer dwelt, who was blinde, and vexed with the *Harpies*. The *Harpies* were said to be a kinde of Birds which had the faces of women, and foule long claws, very filthy creatures, which when the table was furnished for *Phineus*, came flying in, and devouring or carrying away the greater part of the victuals, did so defile the rest, that they could not be endured. When therefore the *Argonauts* craved his advice and direction for their voyage: You shall do well (quoth he) first of all to deliver me from the *Harpies*, and then afterwards to ask my counsell. Whereupon they caused the table to be covered, and meat set on; which was no sooner set down, than that presently in came the *Harpies*, and played their accustomed pranks: when *Zetes* and *Calais* the winged young men saw this, they drew their swords, and pursued them through the aire: Some say, that both the *Harpies* and the young men died of wearinesse in the fight, and pursuit. But *Apollonius* saith, that the *Harpies* did covenant with the young men, to do no more harm to *Phineus*, and were thereupon dismissed. For this good turn, *Phineus* gave them informations of the way, and advertised them withall of the dangerous Rocks, called *Symplegades*, which by force of windes running together, did shut up the passage; wherefore he willed them to put a Pigeon before them in the passage: and if that passed safe, then to adventure after her; if not, then by no means to hazzard themselves in vain. They did so, and perceiving that the Pigeon had onely lost a piece of her taile, they observed the next opening of the Rocks, and then rowing with all their might, passed through safe, onely the end of their Poop was bruised.

From thence forward, (as the tale goeth) the *Symplegades* have stood still: for the gods, say they, had decreed that after the passage of a ship, they should be fixed. Thence the *Argonauts* came to the *Mariandyni*, a people inhabiting about the mouth of the river *Parrhenius*, where *Lycus* the King entertained them courteously. Here *Idmon* a Sooth-sayer of their company was slain by a wilde Boare; also here *Typhis* dyed: and *Ancaus* undertook to steer the ship. So they passed by the River *Thermodon*, and Mount *Caucasus*, and came to the River *Phasis*, which runs through the land of *Colchis*. When they were entered the haven, *Jason* went to *Aetes* the King of *Colchis*, and told him the Commandment of *Pelias*, and cause of his coming, desiring him to deliver the golden Fleece; which *Aetes*, as the Fable goeth, promised to doe, if he alone would yoke together two brazen hoofed Bulls, and plowing the ground with them, sowe Dragons teeth, which *Minerva* had given to him, being part of those which *Cadmus* did sowe at *Thebes*. These Bulls were great and fierce, and breathed out fire: *Vulcan* had given them to *Aetes*.

Whilest *Jason* was in a great perplexity about this task, *Medea* the daughter of *Aetes* fell into a most vehement love of him, so far forth, that being excellent in Magique, she came privily to him, promising her help if he would assure her of his marriage. To this *Jason* agreed, and confirmed his promise by oath. Then gave she to him a medicine wherewith she bade him to anoint both his body and his armour, which would preserve him from their violence: further she told him, that armed men would rise out of the ground, from the teeth which he should sowe, and set upon him. To remedy which inconvenience, she bade him throw stones amongst them as soon as they came up thick, whereupon they would fall together to blowes, in such wise that he might easily slay them. *Jason* followed her counsell; whereto when the event had answered, he again demanded the Fleece. But *Aetes* was so far from approving such his desire, that he devised how to destroy the *Argonauts*, and burn their ship; which *Medea* perceiving, went to *Jason*, and brought him by night to the Fleece, which hung on an Oak in the Grove of *Mari*, where, they say, it was kept by a Dragon that never slept. This Dragon was by the Magick of *Medea* cast into a sleep: so taking away the Golden Fleece, she went with *Jason* into the ship *Argo*; having with her, her brother *Asphelus*.

*Aetes* understanding the practices of *Medea*, provided to pursue the ship, whom when *Medea* perceived to be at hand, she slew her brother, and cutting him in pieces, she scattered his limbs in divers places; of which *Aetes* finding some, was faine to seek out the rest, and suffer his Daughter to passe: the parts of his son he buried in a place, which thereupon he called *Tomi*; the Greek word signifieth Division. Afterwards he sent many of his subjects to seek the ship *Argo*, threatening that if they brought not back *Medea*, they should suffer in her stead. In the mean while the *Argonauts* were driven about the Seas, and were come to the River *Eridanus*: which is Po in Italy.

*Jupiter*, offended with the slaughter of *Asphelus*, vexed them with a great tempest, and carried them they knew not whither; when they came to the Islands *Aspyrides*, there the ship *Argo*, (that there might want no incredible thing in this Fable) spake to them and said, that the anger of *Jupiter* should not cease, till they came to *Ausonia*, and were cleansed by *Circe*, from the murder of *Asphelus*. Now they thereupon sailing between the coasts of *Lybia* and *Gallia*, and passing through the Sea of *Sardinia*, and alongst the coast of *Hetruria*, came to the Isle of *Aea*, wherein *Circe* dwelt, who cleansed them. Thence they sailed by the coast of the *Syrens*, who sang to allure them into danger: but *Orpheus* on the other side sang so well, that he stayed them. Onely *Aetes* sent out unto them, whom *Venus* ravished, and carried to *Lycibæum* in *Sicily* to dwell.

Having past the *Syrens*, they came between *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, and the stragling Rocks, which seemed to cast out great store of flames and smoak. But *Theseis* and the *Nereides*, conveyed them safe through at the appointment of *Juno*. So they coasted *Sicily*, where the Beeves of the Sun were, and touched at *Corcyra*, the Island of the *Phaeacians*, where King *Alcinous* reigned. Mean while the men of *Colchis*, that had been sent by *Aetes* in quest of the ship *Argo*, hearing no news of it, and fearing his anger, if they fulfilled not his will, betook themselves to new habitations: Some of them dwelt in the Mountains of *Corcyra*, others in the Islands of *Aspyrides*, and some coming to

to the *Phaeacians*, there found the ship *Argo*, and demanded *Medea* of *Alcinous*: whereto *Alcinous* made answer, that if she were not *Jason's* wife, they should have her; but if she were already married, he would not take her from her husband. *Arete*, the wife of *Alcinous*, hearing this, married them: wherfore they of *Colchis*, not daring to return home, stayed with the *Phaeacians*; so the *Argonauts* departed thence, and after a while came to *Crete*. In this Island *Atmos* reigned, who had a man of braile given to him (as some of the Fables say) by *Vulcan*. This man had one vein in his body reaching from the neck to the heel, the end whereof was closed up with a brazen nail; his name was *Talus*: his custome was to run thrice a day about the Island for the defence of it. When he saw the ship *Argo* passe by, he threw stones at it, but *Medea* with her Magick destroyed him. Some say that she slew him by potions, which made him mad; others, that promising to make him immortal, she drew out the nail that stoppt his vein, by which means all his blood ran out, and he died: others there are that say he was slain by *Pæan*, who wounded him with an arrow in the heel. From hence the *Argonauts* sailed to *Ægina*, where they were faine to fight for fresh water. And lastly, from *Ægina* they sailed by *Eubœa* and *Locris* home to *Jlecos*, where they arrived, having spent four whole months in the expedition.

Some there are that by this journey of *Jason*, understand the mystic of the Philosophers stone, called the golden Fleece, to which also, other super-fine *Chymists* draw the twelve labours of *Hercules*. *Suidas* thinks, that by the golden Fleece was meant a golden book of Parchment, which is of sheep-skin, and therefore called golden, because it was taught therein how other metals might be transmuted. Others would signifie by *Jason*, Wisdom, and Moderation, which overcometh all perils: but that which is most probable, is the opinion of *Dercilus*, that the story of such a passage was true, and that *Jason* with the rest went indeed to rob *Colchis*, to which they might arrive by boat. For not far from *Caucasus* there are certain steep falling torrents which wash down many grains of gold, as in many other parts of the World; and the people there inhabiting use to let many fleeces of wooll in those descents of waters, in which the grains of gold remain, and the water passeth thorow, which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true. The many rocks, straits, sands, and currents, in the passage between *Greece* and the bottom of *Pontus*, are Poetically converted into those fiery Bulls, the armed men rising out of the ground, the Dragon cast asleep, and the like. The man of braile, the *Syrens*, *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, were other hazzards and adventures which they fell into in the *Mediterran Sea*, disguised, as the rest, by *Orpheus*, under Poeticall morals: all which *Homer* afterward used (the man of braile excepted) in the description of *Ulysses* his travels on the same In-land seas.

## §. VII.

Of Abimelech, Tholan, and Jair, and of the Lapythæ, and of Theseus, Hippolytus, &c.

After the death of *Gideon*, *Abimelech* his bafe son, begotten on a Concubine of the *Sechemites*, remembering what offers had been made to his father by the people, who desired to make him and his their perpetuall Princes; and, as it seemeth, supposing (notwithstanding his fathers religious modesty) that some of his brethren might take on them the Sovereignty, practised with the Inhabitants of *Sechem* (of which his mother was native) to make election of himself; who being easily moved with the glory, to have a King of their own, readily condescended: and the better to enable *Abimelech*, they borrowed seventy pieces of silver of their Idol *Baalberith*, with which treasure he hired a company of loose and desperate vagabonds, to assist his first detestable enterprise, to wit, the slaughter of his seventy brethren, the sons of *Gideon*, begotten on his Wives, of which he had many; of all which none escaped but *Jotham* the youngest, who hid himself from his present fury: all which he executed on one stone; a cruelty exceeding all that hath been written of in any age. Such is humane ambition, a monster that neither feareth God (though all-powerfull, and whose revenges are without date, and for everlasting) neither hath it respect to nature, which laboureth the preservation of every being: but it rageth also against her, though garnished with beauty which never dieth, and with love that hath no end. All other

passions and affections, by which the souls of men are tormented, are by their contraries often-times resisted or qualified. But ambition, which begetteth every vice, and is it self the childe and darling of *Satan*, looketh onely towards the ends by it self set down, forgetting nothing (how fearfull and inhumane soever) which may serve it: remembering nothing, whatsoever justice, piety, right or religion can offer and alledge on the contrary. It ascribeth the lamentable effects of like attempts, to the error or weaknesse of the undertakers, and rather praiseth the adventure, than feareth the like successe. It was the first sin that the World had, and began in *Angels*: for which they were cast into Hell, without hope of redemption. It was more ancient than they were cast into Hell, without hope of redemption. The punishment also preceded his creation, yet hath the Divell, which felt the smart thereof, taught him to forget the one as out of date, and to practise the other, as besitting every age, and mans condition.

*Jotham*, the youngest of *Gideons* sons, having escaped the present perill, fought by his best persuasions to alienate the *Sechemites* from the assisting of this mercilesse Tyrant, letting them know, that those which were vertuous, and whom reason and religion had taught the safe and happy estate of moderate subjection, had refused to receive as unlawfull, what others had no power to give, without direction from the King of kings: who from the beginning (as to his own peculiar people) had appointed them by whom and how to be governed. This he taught them by the Olive, which contented it self with its Fatnesse, the Figge-tree with its sweetnesse, and the Vine with the good juice it had: the Bramble onely, who was most base, cut down all the rest, and accepted the Sovereignty. He also fore-told them by a Prophetically spirit, what should befall them in the end, and how a fire should come out of the Bramble, and consume the Cedars of *Libanon*.

Now (as it is an easie matter to call those men back whom rage without right led on) *Gaal* the son of *Ebed* withdrew the Citizens of *Sechem* from the service of *Abimelech*: who therefore after some assaults entred the place, and mastered it; and in conclusion fired the Town, wherein their Idoll *Baalberith* was worshipped, and put all the people of all sorts to the slaughter. Lastly, in the assault of the Castle or Tower of *Tegber*, himself was wounded in the head with a stone thrown over the wall by a woman; and finding himself mortally bruised, he commanded his own Page to pierce his body, thereby to avoid the dishonour of being slain by so feeble a hand.

While *Abimelech* usurped the Government, the *Lapithæ* and *Centaurs* made war against the *Thebans*. These Nations were descended of *Apollo*, and were the first in those parts that devised to manage horses, to bridle and to fit them: inso much, as when they first came down from the Mountains of *Pindus*, into the Plains, those which had never seen horsemens before, thought them creatures compounded of men and horses; so did the *Mexicans*; when *Ferdinando Cortes* the Spaniard first invaded that Empire.

After the death of *Abimelech*, *Tholo* of *Isachar* governed *Israel* 23. yeeres, and after him *Jair* the *Gileadite* 22. yeeres, who seems to be descended of *Jair* the son of *Manasse*, who in *Moses* time conquered a great part of *Gilead*, and called the same after his own name, *Havoth Jair*. For to this *Jair* there remained thirty of those Cities which his ancestor had recovered from the *Amorites*. Of these Judges, because there is nothing else written, it is an argument, that during all their times *Israel*, lived without disturbance, and in peace.

When *Jair* judged *Israel*, *Priamus* began to reign in *Troy*, who at such time as *Hercules* sacked *Ilium*, was carried away captive with his sister *Hesione* into *Greece*, and being afterward redeemed for ranfome, he re-built and greatly strengthened and adorned *Troy*; and so far enlarged his Dominions, as he became the supreme Lord in effect of all *Asia* the lesse. He married *Hecuba* the Daughter of *Cisseus* King of *Thrace*, and had in all (saith *Cicero*) fifty sons, whereof seventeen by *Hecuba*, of whom *Paris* was one; who attempting to recover his Aunt *Hesione*, took *Helena* the Wife of *Menelaus*, the cause of the war which followed.

*Theſeus* the tenth King of *Athens*, began likewise to reign in the beginning of *Jair*: some Writers call him the son of *Nepiune* and *Athra*: but *Plutarch* in the Story of his life, findes him begotten by *Ægeus*, of whom the *Grecian* Sea between it and *Asia* the

lesse took name. For when *Atinor* had mastered the *Athenians*, so far as he forc'd them to pay him seven of their sons every yeer for tribute, whom he inclosed within a *Labyrinth*, to be devoured by the Monster *Atinotaur*: because belike the sons of *Taurus*, which he begat on *Pasiphae* the Queen, had the charge of them: among these seven *Theſeus* thrust himself, not doubting by his valour to deliver the rest, and to free the Country of that slavery occasioned for the death of *Androgeus*, *Atinor*'s son.

And having posselt himself of *Ariadnes* affection, who was *Atinor*'s daughter, he received from her a bottom of thred, by which he conducted himself through all the crooked and inextricable turnings of the *Labyrinth*, made in all like that of the City of *Crocodiles* in *Egypt*; by mean whereof having slain *Atinotaur*, he found a ready way to return. But whereas his father *Ægeus* had given order, that if he came back with victory and in safety, he should use a white sail in signe thereof, and not that mournfull black saile under which they left the port of *Athens*: This instruction being either forgotten or neglected, *Ægeus* descreyng the ship of *Theſeus* with a black sail, did cast himself over the Rocks down into the Sea, afterward called of his name *Ægeum*.

One of the first famous acts of *Theſeus*, was the killing of *Scyron*, who kept a passage between *Megara* and the *Peloponnesian Isthmus*, and threw all whom he mastered into the Sea, from the high Rocks. Afterward he did the like to *Cercyon*, by wrestling, who used by that art to kill others. He also rid the Countrey of *Procrustes*, who used to beat down the strong limbs of two trees, and fastned by cords such as he took, part of them to one, and part to the other bough, and by the springing up tare them asunder. So did he root out *Periphetes* and other mischievous theeves and murderers. He overthrew the Army of the *Amazons*, who after many victories and vastations, entred the Territory of *Athens*. *Theſeus* having taken their Queen *Hippolita* prisoner, begat on her *Hippolitus*; with whom afterward his mother-in-law *Phædra*, falling in love, and he refusing to abuse his fathers bed, *Phædra* perswaded *Theſeus*, that his son offered to force her: after which it is feigned, that *Theſeus* besought *Neptune* to revenge this wrong of his sons by some violent death. *Neptune* taking a time of advantage, sent out his Sea-Calves, as *Hippolitus* passed by the sea-shore, and so affrighted his horses, as casting the Coach over, he was (by being intangled therein) torn in pieces. Which miserable and undeserved destiny, when *Phædra* had heard of, the strangled her self. After which it is feigned, that *Diana* intreated *Æsculapius* to set *Hippolitus* his pieces together, and to restore him to life: which done, because he was chaste, she led him with her into *Italy*, to accompany her in her hunting, and field sports.

It is probable that *Hippolitus*, when his father sought his life, thinking to escape by Sea, was affronted thereat, and did receive many wounds in forcing his passage and escape; which wounds *Æsculapius*, to wit, some skilfull Physician, or Chirurgion, healed again: after which he passed into *Italy*, where he lived with *Diana*, that is, the life of a Hunter, in which he most delighted. But of those ancient prophane Stories *Plutarch* saith well, that as *Cosmographers* in their descriptions of the World, where they finde many vault places whereof they know nothing, fill the same with strange Beasts, Birds, and Fishes, and with *Mathematicall* lines; so do the *Grecian* Historians and Poets imbroder and intermix the Tales of ancient times, with a world of fictions and fabulous discourses. True it is, that *Theſeus* did many great things in imitation of *Hercules*, whom he made his pattern, and was the first that gathered the *Athenians*, from being dispersed in thin and ragged Villages: in recompence whereof, and for devising them Laws to live under, and in order, he was by the beggarly, mutable, and ungratefull multitude, in the end banished. Some say, per *ostracismum*, by the Law of Lots, or names written on shells, which was a device of his own.

His stole *Helen* (as they say) when she was fifty yeeres old, from *Aphidna*, which City *Castor* and *Pollux* overturned, when they followed after *Theſeus* to recover their sister. *Erasistratus* and *Pausanias* write, that *Theſeus* begot her with childe at *Argos*, where she erected a Temple to *Lucina*: but her age makes that Tale unlikely to be true, and so doth *Ovid*, *Non tamen ex factis fructum tulit ille petunt*, &c. The rape *Ensebius* findes in the first of *Jair*, who governed *Israel* twenty two yeeres, to whom succeeded *Jephtha* or *Jepte*, six yeeres, to whom *Ibzan*, who ruled seven yeeres, and then *Habdon* eight yeeres: in whose time was the fall of *Troy*. So, as if *Theſeus* had a childe by her

*Palephatus*, l. 1.  
de incredib.

*Deut.* 3. 14.  
*Num.* 12. 41.

*Judg.* 10.

2091.

In *Tuf.*

*Strab.* lib. 9.  
*Paus.* in *Cun.*

In *ci. j.* *Helen.*

*Judg.* 10. 3.

in the first of *Jair*, (at which time we must count her no lesse than fifteen yeers old; for the women did not commonly begin so young as they do now) she was then at least two and fifty yeers old at the destruction of *Troy*: and when she was stolen by *Paris*, eight and thirty: but herein the *Chronologers* do not agree. Yet *Ensebius* and *Bunting*, with *Halicarnassens*, do in effect consent, that the City was entred, and burnt in the first year of *Demophon* King of *Athens*, the Successour of *Mnestheus*, the Successour of *Theseus*, seventeen dayes before the *Summer Tropick*; and that about the eleventh of *September* following, the *Trojans* crost the *Hellspont* into *Thrace*, and wintered there, and in the next spring that they navigated into *Sicilia*, where wintering the second year, the next Summer they arrived at *Laurentum*, and builded *Avinium*. But *S. Augustine* 10 hath otherwise, That when *Polyphides* governed *Sicyon*; *Mnestheus*, *Athens*; *Tantanes*, *Affyria*; *Habdon*, *Israel*; then *Aeneas* arrived in *Italy*, transporting with him in twenty ships the remainder of the *Trojans*: but the difference is not great; and hereof more at large in the story of *Troy* at hand.

Bunt. Chron.  
Euseb. Chron.  
Hall. l. i.

Aug. de Civit.  
Dei. l. 18. c. 19.

In *Sicyonia*, *Phaeus* the two and twentieth King, reigned eight yeers, beginning by the common account in the time of *Thola*. His successours, *Adrastus*, who reigned four yeers, and *Polyphides*, who reigned thirteen, are accounted to the time of *Jair*; so is also *Mnestheus* King of *Athens*, and *Atreus*, who held a great part of *Peloponnesus*. In *Affyria*, during the government of these two peaceable Judges, *Mitrews*, and after him *Tantanes* reigned. In *Egypt*, *Amenophis*, the son of *Ramefer*, and afterwards *Anemanes*. 20

#### §. VII.

Of the war of Thebes, which was in this age.

IN this age was the war of *Thebes*, the most ancient that ever Greek Poet or Historian wrote of: Wherefore the Roman Poet *Lucretius*, affirming (as the *Epicures* in this point held truly against the *Peripateticks*) that the World had a beginning, urgeth them with this objection:

— Si nulla fuit genitrix illis origo  
Rerumque & mundi, semperque eterna fuere,  
Cur supra bellum Thebanum, & fuera Troje,  
Non alias alii quoque res cecinere Poetae?

If all this world had no original,  
But things have ever been as now they are:  
Before the siege of *Thebes*, or *Troyes* last fall,  
Why did no Poet sing some elder warre?

It is true, that in these times *Greece* was very salvage, the Inhabitants being often chased from place to place, by the Captains of greater Tribes: and no man thinking the ground whereon he dwelt his own, longer than he could hold it by strong hand. Wherefore merchandise and other intercourse they used little; neither did they plant many trees, or sowe more corn than was necessary for their sustenance. Money they had little or none; for it is thought that the name of money was not heard of in *Greece*, when *Homer* did write, who measures the value of gold and brasse by the worth in cattell: saying, that the golden armour of *Glancus* was worth an hundred Beeves; and the copper armour of *Diomedes* worth nine.

Robberies by land and sea were common and without shame, and to steal horses or kine was the usuall exercise of their great men. Their Towns were not many, whereof those that were walled were very few, and not great. For *Myrcna* the principall City in *Peloponnesus* was a very little thing, & it may well be thought that the rest were proportionable: briefly, *Greece* was then in her infancy, and though in some small Towns of that half Isle of *Peloponnesus*, the Inhabitants might have enjoyed quietnesse within their narrow bounds; as likewise did the *Athenians*, because their Country was so barren, that none did care to take it from them: yet that the land in generall was very rude, it will easily appear to such as consider what *Thucydides* the greatest of their Historians hath written to this effect, in the Preface to his History. Wherefore, as in these 10 later

later times, idle *Chroniclers* use when they want good matter, to fill whole books with reports of great Frosts, or dry Summers, and other such things which no man cares to read; so did they who spake of *Greece* in her beginnings, remember only the great Clouds which were in the times of *Ogyges* and *Ducalion*: or else rehearse fables of men changed into birds, of strange Monsters, of adultery committed by their gods, and the mighty men which they begat, without writing ought that favoured humanity before the time of the war of *Thebes*: the brief whereof is this.

*Oedipus* the son of *Laius* King of *Thebes*, having been cast forth when he was an infant, because an Oracle foretold what evil should come to passe by him, did afterwards in a narrow passage, contending for the way, slay his own father, not knowing either then or long after, who he was. Afterward he became King of *Thebes*, by marriage of the Queen *Jocasta*, called by *Homer*, *Epicate*: on whom, not knowing her to be his mother, he begat two sons, *Eteocles* and *Polynices*. But when in procelle of time, finding out by good circumstances, who were his Parents, he understood the grievous murthre and incest he had committed, he tore out his own eyes for grief, and left the City. His Wife (and Mother) did hang her self. Some say, that *Oedipus* having his eyes pulled out, was expelled *Thebes*, bitterly cursing his sons, because they suffered their father to be cast out of the Town, and aided him not. Howsoever it were, his two Sons made this agreement, that the one of them should reign one year, and the other another year, and so by course rule interchangeably. But this appointment was ill observed. For when *Polynices* had after a yeers government, reigned the Kingdom to his brother: or (according to others) when *Eteocles* had reigned the first year, he refused to give over the rule to *Polynices*. *Hercules* on *Polynices* fled unto *Argos*, where *Adrastus* the son of *Talaus* then reigned, unto whole Palace coming by night, he was driven to seek lodging in an out-house, on the back-side.

There he met with *Tydeus* the son of *Oeneus*, who was fled from *Calydon*: with whom striving about their lodging, he fell to blowes. *Adrastus* hearing the noise, came forth and took up the quarrell. At which time perceiving in the shield of *Tydeus* a Bore, in that of *Polynices* a Lion, he remembered an old Oracle by which he was advised to give his two Daughters in marriage to a Lion and a Bore: and accordingly he did bestow his Daughter *Argia* upon *Tydeus*, and *Deipyle* upon *Polynices*, promising to restore them both to their Countries. To this purpose levying an Army, and assembling as many valiant Captains as he could draw to follow him, he was desirous among others to carry *Amphiarus* the son of *Oicleus* a great Soothsayer, and a valiant man, along with him. But *Amphiarus*, who is said to have fore-seen all things, knowing well that none of the Captains should escape, save onely *Adrastus*, did both utterly refuse to be one in that expedition, and perswaded others to stay at home. *Polynices* therefore dealt with *Eriphyle* the Wife of *Amphiarus*, offering unto her a very fair Bracelet, upon condition that she should cause her Husband to assist him. The Sooth-sayer knowing what should work his destiny, forbade his Wife to take any gift of *Polynices*. But the Bracelet was in hereye so precious a Jewell, that she could not refuse it. Therefore whereas a great controversy between *Amphiarus* and *Adrastus*, was by way of compromise put unto the decision of *Eriphyle*, either of them being bound by solemn oath to stand to her appointment: the ordered the matter so, as a Woman should that did love a Bracelet better than her Husband. He now finding that it was far more easie to fore-see than avoid destiny, sought for such comfort as revenge might afford him, giving in charge unto his sons, that when they came to full age, they should kill their mother, and make strong war upon the 10 *Thebans*.

Now had *Adrastus* assembled all his forces, of which, the seven chief Leaders were himself, *Amphiarus*, *Capaneus*, and *Hippomedon* (in stead of whom some name *Meeteus*) all *Argives*, with *Polynices* the *Theban*, *Tydeus* the *Etolian*, and *Parthenopeus* the *Arcadian*, son of *Meleager* and *Atalanta*. When the Army came to the *Nemean* Wood, they met a woman, whom they desired to help them to some water; the having a childe in her arms, laid it down, and led the *Argives* to a Spring: but ere she returned, a Serpent had slain the childe. This woman was *Hyppyle* the Daughter of *Thous* the *Lemnian*, whom she would have saved when the women of the Isle slew all the 10

the males by conspiracie, intending to lead an *Amazonian* life. For such her Piety the *Lemnian* wives did sell her to *Pyrrus*, and the *Pyrrus* to *Lycurgus* Lord of the Countrey about *Nemea*, whose young son *Opheles*, or *Archemorus* she did nurse, and loſt, as ſhe ſhewed before. When upon the childes death ſhe hid her ſelf for fear of her maſter, *Amphiarus* told her ſons where they ſhould find her: and the *Argives* did both kill the Serpent which had ſlain the child, and in memory of the chance, did inſtitute ſolemne funerrall games, called *Nemean*, wherein *Adraſtus* wan the prize with his ſwift horſe *Arion*, *Tydeus* with the whorlbats, *Amphiarus* at running and quitoing, *Polynices* at wreſtling, *Parthenopaus* at ſhooting, and one *Laodocus* in darting. This was the firſt inſtitution of the *Nemean* games, which continued after famous in *Greece* for very many 10 ages. There are, who think that they were ordained in honour of one *Opheles* a *Lacedemonian*. Some ſay by *Hercules*, when he had ſlain the *Nemean* Lion: but the common opinion agrees with that which is here ſet down.

From *Nemea* the *Argives* marched onwards, arrived at *Citheron*, whence *Tydeus* was by them ſent Embaſſadour to *Thebes*, to require of *Eteocles* the performance of Covenants between him and *Polynices*. This meſſage was nothing agreeable to *Eteocles*, who was thoroughly reſolved to hold what he had, as long as he could: which *Tydeus* perceiving, and intending partly to get honour, partly to trie what mettle was in the *Thebans*, he made many challenges, and obtained victory in all of them, not without much envy and malice of the people, who layd fifty men in ambuſh to intercept him at his 20 return to the Army, of which fifty he ſlew all but one, whom he ſent back to the City as a reporter and witneſſe of his valour. When the *Argives* underſtood how reſolved *Eteocles* was, they preſented themſelves before the City, and encamped round about it. *Thebes* is ſaid to have had at that time ſeven gates, which belike ſtood not far aſunder, ſeeing that the *Argives* (who afterward when they were very far ſtronger, could ſcarce muſter up more thanſands than *Thebes* had gates) did compaſſe the Towne, *Adraſtus* quartered before the gate *Hemoloides*, *Capaneus* before the *Ogygean*, *Tydeus* before *Crenis*, *Amphiarus* at *Proctis*, *Hippomedon* at *Anchais*, *Parthenopaus* at *Eleſtus*, and *Polynices* at *Hypſiſta*. In the mean ſeaſon, *Eteocles* having armed his men, and appointed Commanders unto them, took advice of *Tirſias* the Soothſayer, who promiſed victory to 30 the *Thebans*, if *Menæcius* the ſon of *Creon*, a principall man of the City, would vow himſelf to bee ſlain in honour of *Mars* the god of war. So full of malice and pride is the Devil, and lo envious at his Creators glory, that he not onely challengeth honour due to God alone, as oblations and ſacrifice withall Divine worſhip, but commandeth us to offer our ſelves and our children unto him, when he hath ſufficiently clouded mens underſtanding, and bewitched their wits with ignorance and blind devotion. And ſuch abominable ſacrifice of men, maides, and children hath he exacted of the *Syrians*, *Carthaginians*, *Gauls*, *Germans*, *Cyprians*, *Egyptians*, and of many other, if not of all Nations, when through ignorance or fear they were moſt filled with ſuperſtition. But as they grew more wiſe, ſo did he waxe leſſe impudent in cunning, though not leſſe malicious 40 in deſiring the continuance of ſuch barbarous inhumanitie. For King *Dipſilus* in *Cyprus* without advice of any Oracle, made the Idoll of that Countrey reſt contented with an Oxe in ſtead of a man. *Tiberius* forbade humane ſacrifices in *Africa*, and crucified the Priests in the groves where they had practiſed them. *Hercules* taught the *Italians* to drown men of hay in ſtead of the living: yet among the ſalvages in the *West Indies* theſe cruell offerings have been practiſed of late ages: which, as it is a ſufficient argument that *Satans* malice is onely covered and hidden by this ſubtilty among civil people: ſo it may ſerve as a probable conjecture of the barbariſmes then reigning in *Greece*. For *Menæcius*, as ſoon as he underſtood that his death might purchaſe victory to his people, beſtowed himſelf (as he thought) upon *Mars*, killing himſelf before the gates 50 of the City. Then was a battell fought, wherein the *Argives* prevailed ſo far at the firſt, that *Capaneus* advancing ladders to the walls, got up upon the rampart: whence, when he fell, or was caſt down, or (as Writers have it) was ſtricken down by *Jupiter* with a thunder-bolt, the *Argives* fled. Many on each part were ſlain in this battel, which cauſed both ſides to deſire that *Eteocles* and *Polynices* might try out the quarrell in ſingle fight: whereto the two brethren according, flew each other.

Another battell was fought after their death, wherein the ſons of *Aſtacus* behaved themſelves very valiantly: *Iſmarus* one of the ſons ſlew *Hippomedon*, which was one of

of the ſeven Princes: *Parthenopaus* being another of the ſeven (who was ſaid to have been ſo faire, that none would hurt him when his face was bare) was ſlain by *Amphidicus*, or, as ſome ſay, by *Periclymenus* the ſon of *Neptune*: and the valiant *Tydeus*, by *Menalippus*: yet ere *Tydeus* died, the head of *Menalippus* was brought unto him by *Amphiarus*: which he cruelly tore open, and ſwallowed up the brains. Upon which fact, it is ſaid, that *Pallas*, who had brought from *Jupiter* ſuch remedy for his wounds, as ſhould have made him immortal, reſuſed to beſtow it upon him: whereby perhaps was meant that his honour which might have continued immortal, did periſh through the beaſtly rage that he ſhewed at his death.

10 The hoſt of the *Argives* being wholly diſcomfited, *Adraſtus* and *Amphiarus* fled: of whom *Amphiarus* is ſaid to have been ſwallowed quick into the earth, neer to the River *Iſmenus*, together with his Chariot, and ſo loſt out of mens ſight, being peradventure overwhelmed with dead carcaſſes, or drowned in the River: and his body never found, nor greatly ſought for. *Adraſtus* eſcaped on his good horſe *Arion*, and came to *Athens*; where ſitting at an altar, called the Altar of Mercy, he made ſupplication for their aid to recover their bodies. For *Creon* having obtained the government of *Thebes* after the death of *Eteocles*, would not ſuffer the bodies of the *Argives* to be buried: but cauſed *Antigone*, the onely daughter then living of *Oedipus*, to be buried quick, becauſe ſhe had ſought out and buried the body of her brother *Polynices*, contrary to *Creons* Ediſt. The *Athenians* condeſcending to the requeſt of *Adraſtus*, did ſend forth an Army 20 under the conduct of *Theſeus*, which took *Thebes*, and reſtored the bodies of the *Argives* to ſepulture: at which time *Evanthe* the wife of *Capaneus* threw her ſelf into the funerrall fire, and was burnt willingly with her huſband. But it little contented the ſons of thoſe Captains which were ſlain at *Thebes*, that any leſſe revenge ſhould be taken of their fathers death, than the ruine of the City: wherefore ten year after, having levied forces, *Ægialeus* the ſon of *Adraſtus*, *Diomedes* of *Tydeus*, *Promachus* of *Parthenopaus*, *Sthenelus* of *Capaneus*, *Therſander* of *Polynices*, and *Eurypylos* of *Menæcius*, marched thither under the conduct of *Alcmaeon*, the ſon of *Amphiarus*: with whom alſo went his brother *Amphilochus*. *Apollo* promiſed victory, if *Alcmaeon* were their Captain, whom 30 afterward by another Oracle he commanded to kill his own mother.

When they came to the City, they were encountered by *Laodamas* the ſon of *Eteocles* then King of the *Thebans* (for *Creon* was onely Tutor to *Laodamas*) who though he did valiantly in the battell, and ſlew *Ægialeus*, yet was he put to the worſt, and driven to flee, or (according to *Apollodorus*) ſlain by *Alcmaeon*. After this diſaſter, the Citizens began to deſire compoſition; but in the mean time they conveyed themſelves with their wives and children away from thence by night, and ſo began to wander up and down, till at length they built the Town called *Eſthæa*. The *Argives*, when they perceived that their enemies had quitted the Town, entering into it, ſacked it, threw down the walls, and laid it waſte; howbeit it is reported by ſome, that the Town was ſaved by *Thirſander* the ſon of *Polynices*, who cauſing the Citizens to return, did there reign over 40 them. That he ſaved the City from utter deſtruction, it is very likely; for he reigned there, and led the *Thebans* to the War of *Troy*, which very ſhortly after enſued.

## §. VIII.

Of *Jeſeph*, and how the three hundred years which he ſpeaketh of, *Judg.* 11. 28. are to be reconciled with the places, *Acts* 13. 20. 1 *Reg.* 6. 1. together with ſome other things touching Chronologic about theſe times.

10 Aſter the death of *Jair* (neer about whoſe time theſe things hapned in *Greece*, and during whoſe government, and that of *Thobas*, *Iſrael* lived in peace and in order) they revolted again from the Law and Service of God, and became more wicked and idolatrous than ever. For whereas in the former times they worſhipped *Baal* and *Aſteroth*, they now became followers of all the Heathen Nations adjoining, and embraced the Idols of the *Aramites*, of the *Zidonians*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*: with thoſe of the *Philiftines*. And as before it pleaſed God to correct them by the *Aramites*, by the *Amalekites*, and *Midianites*: ſo now he ſcourged them by the *Ammonites*, and afterward by the *Philiftines*.

Now among the *Iſraelites*, thoſe of *Gilead* being moſt oppreſſed, becauſe they bordered upon

*Judg.* 10. 2 The perſecution of the *Ammonites* laſted 18 years, & ended in the year of the world 2820. in which year *Jeſeph* began, *Jud.* 11.



upon the *Ammonites*, they were inforced to seek *Jephtha*, whom they had formerly despised and cast from them, because he was base born; but he (notwithstanding those former injuries) participating more of godly compassion, than of devilish hatred and revenge, was content to lead the *Gileadites* to the War, upon condition that they should establish him their Governour after victory. And when he had disputed with *Ammon* for the Land, disproved *Ammon* right, and fortified the Title of *Israel* by many arguments, the same prevailing nothing, he began the war; and being strengthened by God, overthrew them: and did not only beat them out of the Plains, but forc't them over the mountains of *Arabia*, even to *Minimith*, and *Abel* of the vineyards, Cities express't heretofore in the description of the *Holy Land*. After which victory it is said, that he performed the vain vow which he made, to sacrifice the first living creature he encountered, coming out of his house to meet him; which happened to be his own daughter, and only child, who with all patience submitted her self, and only desired two months time to bewail her Virginity on the mountains of *Gilead*; because in her the issues of her Father ended: but the other opinion, that she was not offered, is more probable, which *Borhaeus* and others prove sufficiently.

After these things the children of *Israel*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, either envious of *Jephtha*'s victory, or otherwise making way to their future calamity, and to the most grievous slavery that ever *Israel* suffered, quarrelled with *Jephtha*, that they were not called to the War, as before time they had contested with *Gideon*. *Jephtha* hereupon inforced to defend himself against their fury, in the encounter slew of them 42000, which so weakened the body of the Land, as the *Philistines* had an easie conquest of them all not long after. *Jephtha*, after he had judged *Israel* six years, died: to whom succeeded *Ibzan*, who ruled seven years: after him *Elon* was their Judge ten years: in all which time *Israel* had peace. *Eusebius* finds not *Elon*, whom he calleth *Adon*, for in the *Septuagint*, approved in his time, this Judge was omitted.

Now before I go on with the rest, it shall be necessary upon the occasion of *Jephtha*'s account of the times, *Jud.* 11. 28. (where he says that *Israel* had then posselt the East side of *Jordan* 300. years) to speak somewhat of the times of the Judges, and of the differing opinions among the Divines and Chronologers: there being found three places of Scriptures touching this point, seeming repugnant or disagreeing: the first is in this dispute between *Jephtha* and *Ammon*, for the right and possession of *Gilead*: the second is that of *S. Paul*, *Acts* 13. the third is that which is in the first of *Kings*. *Jephtha* here lengtheneth the possession of *Gilead* for 300. years: *S. Paul* giveth to the Judges, as it seems, from the end of *Josua* to the last of *Heli*, 450. years. In the first of *Kings* it is taught, that from the departing of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, to the foundation of *Solomon*'s Temple, there were consumed 480. years. To the first, *Beroaldus* findeth *Jephtha*'s 300. years to be but 266. years, to wit, 18. of *Josua*, 40. of *Othniel*, 80. of *Aod* and *Samgar*, 40. of *Debra*, 40. of *Gideon*, 3. of *Abimelech*, 23. of *Ibola*, and 22. of *Jair*: But *Jephtha* (saith *Beroaldus*) putteth or proposeth a certain number for an uncertain: *Sic ut dicat annum agi pro trecentis annis, ex quo nullus item ea de re moverit Israeli; So he speaketh* (saith he) as meaning, that then it was about, or well-nigh, the three hundred year, since *Israel* possessed these Countries, no man making question of their right. *Codoman* on the contrary finds more years than *Jephtha* named by 65. to wit, 365, whereof 71. were spent in *Israel*'s captivity at several times, of which (as *Codoman* thinketh) *Jephtha* forbore to repeat the whole sum, or any great part, lest the *Ammonites* should have justly objected, that 71. of those years the *Israelites* were in captivity, and vassals to their neighbour Princes, and therefore knowing that to name three hundred years, it was enough for prescription, he omitted the rest.

To justify this account of 365. years, besides the 71. years of captivity or affliction, so to be added to *Beroaldus* his 266. he addeth also 28. years more, and so maketh up the summe of 365. These 28. years he findeth out thus: twenty years he gives to the *Seniors* between *Josua* and *Othniel*: and where *Beroaldus* alloweth eighteen years to *Josua* his government, *Codoman* accounts that his rule lasted 26. according to *Josuephus*; whereas Saint *Augustine* and *Eusebius* give him 27. *Melanchthon* 32. The truth is, that this addition of 28. years, is far more doubtfull than the other of 71. But though we admit not of this addition, yet by accounting of some part of the years of affliction (to wit, 34. years of the 71.) if we addc them to the 266. years

of *Beroaldus*, which reckoneth none of these, we have the just number of 300. years. Neither is it strange that *Jephtha* should leave out more than halfe of the years of affliction: seeing, as it is already said, the *Ammonites* might except against the 71. years, and say, that during these years, or at least a good part of them, the *Israelites* had no quiet possession of the Countries in question. *Martin Luther* is the author of a third opinion, making those 300. years remembered by *Jephtha*, to be 306. which odde years, saith he, *Jephtha* omitteth. But because the years of every Judge, as they reigned, cannot make up the number of 306. but doe onely compound 266. therefore doth *Luther* addc to this number the whole time which *Moses* spent in the *Deserts* of *Arabia* 10 *Petrea*; which forty years of *Moses* added to the number which *Beroaldus* findeth of 266. make indeed 306.

But I see nothing in the Text to warrant *Luthers* judgment herein: for in the dispute between *Jephtha* and *Ammon* for the Land of *Gilead*, it is written in the person of *Ammon*, in these words: Because *Israel* took my Land, when they came up from *Egypt*, from *Arnon* unto *Jaboc*, &c. now therefore restore those Lands quietly; or in peace. So by this place it is plain, that the time is not to be accounted from *Moses*' departure out of *Egypt*: but from the time that the Land was posselt. For it is said, *Quia cepit Israel terram meam*, Behold *Israel* took my Land: and therefore the beginning of this account is to be referred to the time of the taking: which *Jephtha*'s answer also confirmeth in these words: 10 When *Israel* dwelt in *Heshbon*, and in her Towns, and in *Arzer*, and in her Towns, and in all the Cities that are by the coast of *Arnon* 300. years: why did ye not then recover them in that space? so as this place speaks it directly, that *Israel* had inhabited and dwelt in the Cities of *Gilead* 300. years: and therefore to account the times from the hopes or intents that *Israel* had to possesse it, it seemeth somewhat strained to mee: for we doe not use to reckon the time of our conquests in France, from our Princes intents or purposes, but from their victories and possessions.

*Junius* nevertheless likes the opinion of *Luther*, and says, that this time of 300. years hath reference, and is to take beginning from the first of *Jephtha*'s narration: when he makes a brief repetition of *Moses* whole journey: to wit, at the sixteenth Verse of the eleventh Chapter of *Judges*, in our translation in these words: But when *Israel* came up from *Egypt*, &c. and therefore *Moses* his 40. years (as he thinks) are to be accounted, which make the number of 305. years: and not only the time in which *Israel* posselt *Gilead*, according to the Text, and *Jephtha*'s own words: of which I leave the judgment to others; to whom also I leave to judge, whether we may not begin the 480. years, from the deliverance out of *Egypt* to the Temple, even from the first departure out of *Egypt*, and yet finde a more probable reconciliation of Saint *Paul*'s and *Jephtha*'s account with this reckoning, than any of those that as yet have been signified. For first, touching *Jephtha*'s three hundred years of possession of the East side of *Jordan*, it is to be remembered, that for a good while before the *Israelites* posselt it, *Sehon* and *Og* had disposselt *Moab* and *Ammon* thereof: so that when the *Israelites* had conquered *Sehon* and *Og*, the right of possession which they had, passed to *Israel*; and so *Jephtha* might say, that they had posselt those Countries 300. years, reckoning 266. years of their own possession, and the rest of the possession of the two Kings, *Sehon* and *Og*, whose right the *Israelites* had by the law of conquest.

The second place disputed is this of *S. Paul*, *Acts* 13. that from the end of *Josua*, to the beginning of *Samuel*, there past 450. years. And this place *Luther* understandeth also besides the letter (as I find his opinion cited by *Fundus Krentzheimius*, and *Beza*) for I have not read his Commentaries. For he accounteth from the death of *Moses*, to the last year of *Heli*, but 357. years: and this he doth the better to approve the time, so from the egression out of *Egypt* to the building of the Temple, which in the first of *Kings* 6. is said to be 480. years.

Now so far as much as *S. Paul* (as it seems) findes 450. years from the death of *Josua*, to the last of *Heli*, and leaves but thirty years for *Saul* and *Samuel*, who governed 40. for *David* who ruled 40. and for *Solomon* who wore the Crown three whole years ere that the foundation of the Temple was laid; therefore *Luther* takes it, that there was error in the Scribe, who wrote out this piece of Scripture of *S. Paul*: to wit, Then afterward he gave unto them Judges about 450. years, unto the time of *Samuel* the Prophet: the words [then afterward] being clearly referred to the death, or after the death

of *Josua*, as shall be hereafter proved. But where Saint *Luke*, rehearsing the words of Saint *Paul*, wrote 350. years (saith *Luther*) the Scribe in the transcription being deceived by the affinity of those two Greek words, whereof the one signifieth 300. and the other 400. wrote *Tetracosois*, for *Triacosois*; 400. years for 300 years; and 450. for 350. This he seeketh to strengthen by many arguments: to which opinion *Beza* in his great annotations adhereth. A contrary judgment to this hath *Codoman*: where *Luther* and *Beza* begin at *Moses* death, he takes his account from the death of *Josua*, and from thence to the beginning of *Samuel* he makes 430. years: to wit, of the Judges (not reckoning *Sampsons* years) 319. and of years of servitude and affliction under strangers, 111. The reason why he doth not reckon *Sampsons* twenty years, is, because he thinks that they were part of the 40. years, in which the *Philistims* are said to have oppressed *Israel*. For it is plaine, that during all *Sampsons* time, they were Lords over *Israel*. So then of the Judges, besides the 111. years of servitude, *Codoman* reckoneth (as I have said) 319. years, which two sums put together, make 430. years. And whereas Saint *Paul* nameth 450. years, he finds 20. years to make up Saint *Pauls* number, to have been spent after the death of *Josua* by the *Seniors*, before the Captivity of *Cuslan*, or the election of *Othniel*: which 20. years added to 430. make 450. according to Saint *Paul*. To approve this time of the Elders, he citeth two places of Scripture, namely the 24. of *Josua*, and the second of *Judges*, in each of which places it is written, that *Israel* served the Lord all the dayes of *Josua*, and all the dayes of the Elders: that over-lived *Josua*: so as to these times of the Elders, *Codoman* giveth 20. years, which make as before 450. according to Saint *Paul*. Neither would it breed any great difficultie in this opinion, if here also the 20. years of the *Seniors* between *Josua* and *Othniel* should be denied. For they which deny these years, and make *Othniels* 40. to begin presently upon the death of *Josua*, as in the beginning of this reckoning they have 20. years lesse than *Codoman*, so toward the end of it (when they reckon the years of affliction apart from the years of the Judges) in the number of *Sampsons* years, and of the forty years of the *Philistims* oppressing the *Israelites*, they have 20. years more than *Codoman*. For they reckon these 40. years of oppression all of them a-part from *Sampsons* 20. but *Codoman*, as is said, makes *Sampsons* 20. to be the one half of the forty of the *Philistims* oppressions; so that if the 20. years of the *Seniors* be not allowed to *Codoman*, then he may reckon (as the letter of the Text seemeth to enforce) that the *Philistims* in any *Inter-regnum*, before *Sampson* judged *Israel*, vexed the *Israelites* 40. years, besides the 20 while *Sampson* was their Judge; and so the reckoning will come to 450. years between the end of *Josua*, and the beginning of *Samuel*, though we admit not of an *Inter-regnum* of the *Seniors* between *Josua* and *Othniel*: For, if the times of their affliction be summed, they make 111. years, to which if we add the years of the Judges, which are 339. we have the just sum of 450. And this computation either one way or other, may seem to be much more probable, than theirs that correct the Text, although we should admit of their correction thereof, and read with them 350. for 450. For whereas they conceive that this time of 350. years, is to begin immediately, or soon after the death of *Moses*: certainly the place of Saint *Paul* doth evidently teach the contrary, though it be received for true that there was vitium scriptoris in the rest. For these be Saint *Pauls* words: And about the time of forty years, God suffered their manners in the wilderness: and he destroyed seven Nations in the Land of Canaan, and devoted their Land to them by lot. Then afterward he gave unto them Judges about 450 years, unto the time of Samuel the Prophet. So as first in the eighteenth verse he speaketh of *Moses*, and of his years spent in the Wilderness, then in the nineteenth verse he cometh unto the acts of *Josua*; which were, that he destroyed seven Nations in the Land of Canaan, and divided their Land to them by lot. In the twentieth Verse it followeth, Then afterward he gave them Judges about 450. years, &c. and therefore to reckon from the death of *Moses*, is wide of Saint *Pauls* meaning, so far as my weak understanding can pierce it. The only inconvenience of any weight in opinion of *Codoman* touching this place in the Acts, is, that it seems irreconcilable with the account, 1 Reg. 6. 11. For if indeed there were spent 450. years between the end of *Josua* and the beginning of *Samuel*, certainly there must needs be much more than 480. years between the beginning of the *Israelites* journeying from *Egypt*, and the foundation of the Temple by *Solomon*. To this difficulty

*Codoman*

*Codoman* answereth, that these 480. years, 1 Reg. 6. 1. must begin to be reckoned, not in the beginning, but in the ending of their journeying from *Egypt*, which he makes to be 25. years after the beginning of *Othniels* government; from whence if we cast the years of the Judges, with the years of servitude (which sums, according to his account, of which we have already spoken, make 397. years) and so to these years add the 40. of *Samuel*, and *Saul*, and the 40. of *David*, and the 3. of *Solomon*, we shall have the just sum of 480. years. Neither is it hard, saith he, that the annus egressionis, 1 Kings 6. 1. should be understood egressionis non incipientis, sed finitæ, the year of their coming out of *Egypt* (for so it is in the originall) or the year after they came out of *Egypt*, may well be understood for the year after they were come out thence, that is, after they had ended their wandering from thence. For so we find that things which were done forty years after they had set foot out of *Egypt*, are said to have been done in their going out of *Egypt*; as *Psalm* 114. When *Israel* came out of *Egypt*, *Jordan* was driven back. And *Deut.* 4. 45. These are the testimonies which *Moses* spake when they came out of *Egypt*. And thus far it seems we may very well agree with *Codoman*, for the interpretation of the *ab exiit*, to be as much as *quum exivissent*, or *ab exiit finitæ*: for if *junius*, *Deut.* 4. 45. do well read *quum exivissent*, for *in exiit*, as it seems that herein he doth well, why may not we also, to avoid contradiction in the Scripture, expound *ab exiit* to be, *postquam exivissent*?

The next point to be cleared, is how their journeying should be said not to have had end until the 25. year after the victory of *Othniel*. To this *Codoman* answereth, that then it had no end, till when all the Tribes had obtained their portions, which happened not until this time: at which time the *Danites* at length seated themselves, as it is declared, *Judg.* 18. For doubtlesse to this time the Expedition may most conveniently be referred. And thus without any great inconvenience to him appearing, doth *Codoman* reconcile the account of *Jephtha*, and of Saint *Paul*, with that in the first Kings, cap. 6. Now whereas it is said, that the Expedition of the *Danites* was when there was no King in *Israel*: to this *Codoman* answereth, that it is not necessary that we should suppose that *Othniel* lived all those 40. years of rest, of which *Judg.* 3. 11. so that by the 25. year after his victory, either he might have been dead, or at least, as *Grægon* did, he might have refused all Sovereignty, and so either way it might truly be said that at this time (to wit, the 25. year after *Othniels* victory) there was no King in *Israel*. This opinion of *Codoman*, if it were as consonant to other Chronologers, grounding their opinions on the plain Text, where it is indisputable, as it is in itself round enough and coherent, might perhaps be received as good: especially considering, that the speeches of Saint *Paul* have not otherwise found any interpretation, maintaining them as absolutely true, in such manner as they found, and are set down. But seeing that he wanteth all help of authority, we may justly suspect the supposition whereupon his opinion is grounded; it being such as the consent of many Authors would hardly suffice to make very probable. For who hath told *Codoman*, that the conquest of *Laish*, by the Tribe of *Dan*, was performed in the five and twentieth year of *Othniel*? Or what other probability hath he than his own conjecture, to shew that *Othniel* did so renounce the office of a Judge after five and twenty years, that it might then be truly said there was no King in *Israel*, but every man did that which was good in his own eyes?

Now concerning the rehearsal of the Law by *Moses*, and the stopping of *Jordan*, they might indeed be properly said to have been, when *Israel* came out of *Egypt*: like as we say that King *Edward* the first was crowned when he came out of the Holy Land, for so all journeys with their accidents commonly take name from the place either whence or whither they tend. But I think that he can finde no such phrase of speech in Scripture as limiteth a journey by an accident, or faith by converting the proposition, when *Jordan* was turning back, *Israel* came out of *Egypt*. Indeed most improper it were to give date unto actions commenced long after, from an expedition finished long before, namely, to say, that King *Edward* at his arrivall out of *Palestina* did win *Scotland*, or died at *Carlisle*. How may we then believe that enterprize performed so many years after the division of the Land (which followed the conquest at the journeyes end) should be said to have been at the time of the departure out of *Egypt*? Or who will not think it most strange, that the most notable account of time, serving as the only guide for certain ages in sacred Chronologic, should not take name and beginning

ginning from that illustrious deliverance out of Egypt, rehearsed often by God himself among the principall of his benefits to *Israel*, whereof the very day and moneth are recorded in Scripture (as likewise are the year and moneth wherein it expired) and the form of the year upon that occasion changed; but should have reference to the furnishing of a Town by six hundred men, that robbed a Chappell by the way, and stole from thence Idols to be their guides, as not going to work in Gods Name? For this accident whereupon *Codoman* buildeth, hath either no time given to it, or a time far distant from that which he supposeth, and is indeed rather by him placed in such a year, because it best stood with his interpretation so to have it, than for any certainty or likelihood of the thing it self.

Wherefore we may best agree with such as affirm, that the Apostle *S. Paul* did not herein labour to set down the course of time exactly (a thing no way concerning his purpose) but only to shew that God, who had chosen *Israel* to be his people, delivered them out of bondage, and ruled them by *Judges* and *Prophets* unto the time of *Saul*, did raise up our Lord *Jesus Christ* out of the seed of *David* the King, in whose succession the Crown was established, and promise made of a Kingdome that should have no end. Now in rehearsing briefly thus much which tended as a Preface to the declaration following (wherein he sheweth *Christ* to have been the true *Messias*) the Apostle was so far from labouring to make an exact calculation of times (the History being so well known and beleev'd of the *Jews* to whom he preached) that he spake as it were at large of the 40. years consumed in the Wilderness, whereof no man doubted, saying, that God suffered their manners in the Wilderness about 40. years. In like manner he proceeded, saying, that from the division of the Land unto the dayes of *Sammel* the Prophet, in whose time they required to have a King, there passed about 450. years. Neither did he stand to tell them, that an hundred and eleven years of bondage mentioned in this middle while, were by exact computation to be included within the 339. years of the *Judges*: for this had been an impertinent digression from the argument which he had in hand. Wherefore it is not a work so needfull as laborious, to search out of this place that which the Apostle did not here intend to teach, when the sum of 480. years is so exprefly and purposely set down.

Now that the words of *S. Paul* (if there be no fault in the copy through error of some Scribe) are not so curiously to be examined in matter of *Chronologie*, but must be taken, as having reference to the memory and apprehension of the vulgar, it is evident by his ascribing in the same place 40. years to the reign of *Saul*: whereas it is manifest that those years were divided between *Saul* and *Sammel*, yea, that far the greater part of them were spent under the government of the Prophet, howsoever they are here included in the reign of the King. As for those that with so much cunning forsake the generall opinion, when it favoureth not such exposition as they bring out of a good minde, to help where the need is not over-great; I had rather commend their diligence, than follow their example. The words of *S. Paul* were sufficiently justified by *Beroaldus*, as having reference to a common opinion among the Scribes in those dayes, that the 111. years of servit ude were to be reckoned apart from the 339. years ascribed to the *Judges*; which account the Apostle would not in this place stand to contradict, but rather chose to speak as the vulgar, qualifying it with a *quasi*, where he saith, *quasi quadringentis & quinquaginta annis*; As it were four hundred and fifty years. But *Codoman* being not thus contented, would needs have it be so indeed, and therefore dis-joynes the members to make the account even. In fo doing he dasheth himself against a notable Text, whereupon all Authours have builded, (as well they might and ought) that purposely and precisely doth cast up the years from the departure out of Egypt, unto the building of *Solomons* Temple, not omitting the very moneth it self.

Now (as commonly the first apprehensions are strongest) having already given faith to his own interpretation of *S. Paul*, he thinketh it more needfull to finde some new exposition for that which is of it self most plain, & to examine his own conjecture upon a place that is full of controversy. Thus by expounding after a strange Method, that which is manifest by that which is obscure, he loseth himself in those wayes wherein before him never man walked. Surely if one should urge him to give reason of these new opinions, he must needs answer, that *Othaniel* did not govern above 25. years, because then was the taking of *Laish*; at which time there was no King in *Israel*; That the

Dimitis

*Danites* must needs have taken *Laish* at that time, because else we could not reckon backwards from the foundation of the Temple to any action that might be termed the coming of *Israel* out of Egypt, without excluding the years of servitude; And that the years of servitude must needs be included, for that otherwise he himself should have spent his time vainly, in seeking to pleasure *S. Paul* with an exposition. Whether this ground be strong enough to uphold a Paradox, I leave it to the decision of the judicious Reader.

And now to proceed in our story. To the time of *Jephtha* are referred the death of *Hercules*, the rape of *Helen* by *Paris*, and the provisions which her husband *Menelaus*, reigning then in *Sparta*, and his brother *Agamemnon* King of *Mycena*, made for her recovery. Others referre this rape of *Helen* to the Fourth year of *Ithacan*: from which time, if the warre of *Troy* (as they suppose) did not begin till the third of *Ailon* or *Elon*, yet the *Greeks* had six years to prepare themselves: the rule holding not true in this War, *Longa preparatio belli celerem affert victoriam*; That a long preparation begets a speedy victorie: for the *Greeks* consumed ten years in the attempt; and *Troy*, as it seems, was entred, sackt, and burnt in the third year of *Habdon*.

Three years after *Troy* taken, which was in the first year of *Habdon*, *Aeneas* arrived in *Italy*. *Habdon* in the eighth year of his rule, died, after hee had been the Father of 40. sons, and 30. grand-children. And whereas it is supposed, that the 40. years of *Israel*'s oppression by the *Philistims* (of which *Judg.* 13. v. 1.) took beginning from the ninth year of *Fair*, and ended with the last of *Habdon*: I see no reason for that opinion. For *Ephraim* had had little cause of quarrell against *Jephtha*, for not calling them to war over *Jordan*, if the *Philistims* had held them in servitude in their own territories; and if *Ephraim* could have brought 42000. armed men into the field, it is not likely that they were then oppressed: and had it been true that they were, who will doubt but that they would rather have fought against the *Philistims* with so powerfull an Army for their own deliverance, than against their own bretheren the *Israelites*? but *Ammon* being overthrowen, it seemed at that time, that they feared no other enemy. And therefore these 40. years must either be supplied elsewhere, as in the time of *Sampson*, and afterwards: or else they must be referred to the inter-regnum between the death of *Habdon*, and the deliverance of *Israel* by *Sampson*, such as it was.



## CHAP. XIII.

## Of the Warre of Troy.

## §. I.

Of the Genealogie of the Kings of Troy, with a note touching the ancient Poets, how they have observed historical truth.



He Warre at *Troy*, with other stories hereupon depending (because the ruine of this Citie, by most *Chronologers* is found in the time of *Habdon* Judge of *Israel*, whom in the last place I have mentioned) I rather choose here to treat of in one entire narration, beginning with the lineal descent of their Princes, than to break the story into pieces by rehearsing a-part in divers years, the diversity of occurrents.

The Historie of the ancient Kings of *Troy* is uncertain, in regard both of their originall, and of their continuance. It is commonly held that *Tencer* and *Dardanus* were the two founders of that Kingdome. This is the opinion of *Virgil*: which if he (as *Reineccius* thinks) took from *Berosus*, it is the more probable: if *Annins* borrowed it of him, then it rests upon the authoritie of *Virgil*, who saith thus:

*Creta Jovis magni medio jacet insula Ponto:  
Mons Idaus ubi, & gentis cunabula nostra.*

N n

Centum

*Centum Urbes habitant magnas, uberrima regna :  
 Maximus inde Pater ( spiritū audita recorde )  
 Teucrus Rhætas primū est advectus ad aras :  
 Optavitq; locum regno. Nondum Ilium & arces  
 Pergamæ steterant : habitabant vallibus imis.  
 Hinc Mater cultrix Cybele, Corybantiq; ara,  
 Idaumq; nemus.*

In the main Sea the Ile of Creete doth lye :  
 Where Jove was born, thence is our progeny.  
 There is a mount Ida : there in fruitfull Land  
 An hundred great and goodly Cities stand.  
 Thence ( if I follow not mistaken fame )  
 Teucer the eldest of our grand-fires came  
 To the Rhætan shores : and reigned there,  
 Ere yet fair Ilium was built, and ere  
 The Towers of Troy : their dwelling place they sought  
 In lowest Vales. Hence Cybels rites were brought :  
 Hence Corybantian Cymbals did remove ;  
 And hence the name of our Idaean grove.

Thus it seemeth by Virgil, who followed surely good authority, that Teucer first gave name to that Countrey, wherein he reigned ere Troy was built by Dardanus : of which Dardanus in the same book he speaks thus :

*Est locus, Hesperiam Graii cognomine dicunt :  
 Terra antiqua, potens armis atq; ubere glebe,  
 Oenotrii coluere viri ; nunc fama minores  
 Italiam dixisse, ducis de nomine gentem.  
 Hæ nobis propria sedes : hinc Dardanus ortus :  
 Jassusq; Pater, genus à quo principe nostrum.*

Hesperia the Græcians call the place :  
 An ancient fruitfull Land, a warlike race,  
 Oenotrians held it : now the later progenie  
 Gives it their Captains name, and calls it Italy ;  
 This seat belongs to us ; hence Dardanus,  
 Hence came the author of your stock, Jassus.

*Atq; equidem memini ( fama est obscurior annis )  
 Auruncos ita fere senes, hic ortus ut agris  
 Dardanus Idæus Phrygia penetravit ad urbes,  
 Threiciamq; Samum, quæ nunc Samothracia fertur.  
 Hinc illum Coryti Tyrrhæna ab sede profectum,  
 Aurea nunc solio stellantis regia cæli  
 Accipit, &c.*

Some old Auruncans, I remember well,  
 ( Though time have made the fame obscure ) would tell  
 Of Dardanus, how born in Italy,  
 From hence he into Phrygia did flee.  
 And leaving Tuscanie ( where he erst had place )  
 With Corytus did fall to Samothrace ;  
 But now intronized he sits on high,  
 In golden Palace of the starry skie.

But contrary to this, and so many Authors, approving and confirming it, Reineccius thinks that these names, *Troes*, *Teucris*, and *Thracæ*, are derived from *Tiras* or *Thiras* the son of *Japhet* : and that the *Dardanians*, *Myrians*, & *Ascanians*, mixt with the *Trojans*,  
 were

were *Germane* Nations, descended from *Ashkenaz*, the son of *Gomer* : of whom the Countrey, Lake, and river of *Ascanius* in *Asia* took name. That *Ashkenaz* gave name to those places and people, it is not unlikely : neither is it unlikely, that the *Ascanii*, *Dardanii*, and many others, did in after-times pass into *Europe* : that the name of *Teucer* came of *Tyras*, the conjecture is somewhat hard. Concerning *Teucer*, whereas *Halicarnassæus* makes him an *Athenian*, I find none that follow him in the same opinion. *Virgil* ( as is before shewed ) reporteth him to be of *Crete*, whose authority is the more to be regarded, because he had good means to find the truth, which it is probable that he carefully sought, and in this did follow, seeing it no way concerned *Augustus* ( whom other-whiles he did flatter ) whether *Teucer* were of *Crete* or no. *Reineccius* doth rather embrace the opinion of *Diodorus*, and others that think him a *Phrygian*, by which report he was the Son of *Scamander* and *Ida*, Lord of the Countrey, not founder of the Citie, and his Daughter or Niece *Batia* was the second wife of *Dardanus* founder of *Troy*. *Reineccius* further thinks that *Atlas* reigned in *Samothracia*, and gave his daughter *Electra* to *Corytus*, or *Coritus* : and that these were parents to *Cryse*, first wife to *Dardanus*. *Virgil* holds otherwise ; and the common Tradition of Poets makes *Dardanus* the son of *Electra* by *Jupiter*, which *Electra* was the daughter of *Atlas*, and wife to *Corinus* King of *Hetruria*, to whom he gives the addition of *Corytus*, as a Title of dignity, making him Father of *Dardanus* and *Jassus* ; and further telling us very particularly of the faction between these Brethren, which grew to such heat, that finally *Dardanus* killed his Brother, and thereupon fled into *Samothrace*. The obscurity of the history gives leave to *Annius* of saying what he list. I, that love not to use such libertie, will forbear to determine any thing herein. But if *Dardanus* were the Son of *Jupiter*, it must have been of some elder *Jupiter* than the Father of those that lived about the War of *Troy*. So it is likewise probable that *Atlas*, the Father of *Electra* was rather an *Italian* than an *African*, which also is the opinion of *Boccace*. For ( as hath often been said ) there were many *Jupiters*, and many of almost every name of gods : but it was the custome to ascribe to some one the aas of the rest, with all belonging to them. Therefore I will not greatly trouble my self with making any narrow search into these fabulous antiquities, but set down the Pedigree according to the generall fame ; allowing to *Teucer* such Parents as *Diodorus* gives, because others giving him none, and carrying the line of *Dardanus* in manner following.



Many by valour have deserv'd renown  
 Ere *Agamemnon*; yet lye all opprest  
 Under long night, unwep't for, and unknown:  
 For with no sacred Poet were they blest.

Yet so it is, that whilst these writers have with strange fables, or (to speak the best of them) with Allegories far strained, gone about to enlarge the commendations of those noble undertakers: they have both drawn into suspicion that great vertue which they sought to adorn, and filled after-ages with almost as much ignorance of the History, as admiration of the persons. Wherefore it is expedient that we seek for the knowledge of such actions, in Histories; learning their qualities who did manage them, of Poets, in whose works are both profit and delight; yet small profit to those which are delighted otherwise: but such as can interpret their fables, or separate them from the naked truth, shall find matter in Poems, not unworthy to be regarded of Historians. For those things excepted which are gathered out of *Homer*, there is very little, and not without much disagreement of Authors, written of this great war. All writers consent with *Homer*, that the rape of *Helen* by *Paris* the son of *Priamus*, was the cause of taking arms: but how he was hereunto emboldened, it is doubtful.

## §. II.

Of the rape of *Helen*: and strength of both sides for the War.

**H** *Herodotus* fetcheth the cause of this rape from very far; saying, That whereas the *Phenicians* had ravished *Io*, and carried her into *Egypt*, the *Greeks*, to be revenged on the *Barbarians*, did first ravish *Europa*, whom they brought out of *Phenicia* into *Creta*, and afterward *Medea*, whom they fetcht from *Colchos*, denying to restore her to her father, till such time as they might be satisfied for the rape of *Io*. By these deeds of the *Greeks*, *Paris* (as the same *Herodotus* affirms) was emboldened to doe the like; not fearing such revenge as ensued. But all this narration seems frivolous. For what had the King of *Colchos* to doe with the injury of the *Phenicians*? Or how could the *Greeks*, as in revenge of *Io*, plead any quarrell against him, that never had heard the name of *Phenicians*? *Thucydides*, a writer of unquestionable sincerity, maketh it plain, that the name of *Barbarians* was not used at all in *Homers* time, which was long after the war of *Troy*: and that the *Greeks* themselves were not then called all by one name, *Hellenes*, as afterwards. So that it were unreasonable to think, that they should have sought revenge upon all Nations, as barbarous, for the injury received by one: or that all people else should have esteemed of the *Greeks*, as of a people opposed to all the world; and that even then when as the *Greeks* had not yet one common name among themselves. Others with more probability say, that the rape of *Helen* was to procure the redelivery of *Hesione*, King *Priamus* his sister, taken formerly by *Hercules*, and given to *Telamon*. This may have been true: for *Telamon* (as it seems) was a cruel man, seeing his own son *Tenecer* durst not come in his sight, after the war of *Troy*, but fled into *Cyprus*, onely because his brother *Ajax* (which *Tenecer* could not remedy) had slain himself. Yet, were it so, that *Hesione* was ill entreated by *Telamon*, it was not therefore likely that *Priamus* her brother would seek to take her from her husband, with whom he had lived about thirty years, and to whom shee had borne children which were to succeed in his Dominion. Whereupon I think that *Paris* had no regard either to the rape of *Europa*, *Medea*, or *Hesione*, but was merely incited by *Venus*, that is, by his lust, to doe that which in those dayes was very common. For not onely *Greeks* from *Barbarians*, and *Barbarians* from *Greeks*, as *Herodotus* discourseth; but all people were accustomed to steal women and cattell, if they could by strong hand or power get them: and having stolen them, either to sell them away in some farre Countrey, or keep them to their own use. So did *Theseus* and *Pirithous* attempt *Proserpina*; and so did *Theseus* (long before *Paris*) ravish *Helen*. And these practices, as it appears in *Thucydides* were so common, that none durst inhabite neer unto the Sea, for fear of piracy, which was accounted a trade of life no lesse lawfull than merchandise: wherefore *Tyndareus*, the father of *Helen*, considering the beauty of his daughter, and the rape which *Theseus* had made, caused all her wooers, who were most of the principall men

in *Greece*, to binde themselves by solemn oath, that if she were taken from her husband, they should with all their might help to recover her. This done, he gave free choice of a husband to his daughter, who chose *Menelaus*, brother to *Agamemnon*. So the cause which drew the *Greeks* unto *Troy* in revenge of *Helen* rape, was partly the oath which so many Princes had made unto her Father *Tyndareus*. Hereunto the great power of *Agamemnon* was not a little helping: for *Agamemnon*, besides his great Dominions in *Peloponnesus*, was Lord of many Ilands: he was also rich in money, and therefore the *Argadians* were well contented to follow his pay, whom he embarked for *Troy* in his own ships, which were more than any other of the *Greek* Princes brought to that expedition.

Thus did all *Greece*, either as bound by oath, or led by reputation and power of the two brethren, *Agamemnon*, and *Menelaus*; or desirous to partake of the profit and honour in that great enterprise; take arms against the *Trojans*. The *Greek* Fleet was (by *Homers* account) 1200. sayl, or thereabouts: but the vessels were not great: for it was not then the manner to build ships with decks; onely they used (as *Thucydides* saith) small ships, meet for robbing on the Sea; the least of which carried fifty men, the greatest 120. every man (except the Captains) being both a Mariner and a Souldier. By this proportion it appears that the *Grecian* army consisted of 100000. men or thereabout. This was the greatest army that ever was raised out of *Greece*: and the greatness of this armie doth well declare the strength and power of *Troy*, which ten whole years did stand out against such forces: yet were the *Trojans* which inhabited the Citie, not the tenth part of this number, as *Agamemnon* said in the second of *Homers* *Iliads*; but their followers and aides were very many and strong. For all *Phrygia*, *Lycia*, *Misissia*, and the greatest part of *Asia* the lesse, took part with the *Trojans*. The *Amazons* also brought them succour. And *Rhesus* out of *Thrace*, and *Memnon* out of *Assyria* (though some think out of *Aethiopia*) came to their defence.

## § III.

Of the *Grecians* journey, and Embassage to *Troy*, and of *Helenas* being detained in *Egypt*, and of the sacrificing of *Iphigenia*.

**W** Herefore the *Greeks*, unwilling to come to trall of arms, if things might be compounded by treaty, sent *Menelaus* and *Ulysses* Embassadors to *Troy*; who demanded *Helen*, and the goods were taken with her out of *Menelaus* his house. What answer the *Trojans* made hereunto it is uncertain. *Herodotus* from the report of the *Egyptian* Priefts, makes it very probable, that *Helen* was taken from *Paris* before his return to *Troy*. The sum of his discourse is this. *Paris* in his return with *Helen*, being driven by foul weather unto the coast of *Egypt*, was accused for the rape of *Helen* by some bondmen of his, that had taken Sanctuary. *Proteus* then King of *Egypt*, finding the accusation true by examination, detained *Helen*, and the goods taken with her, till her husband should require them: dismissing *Paris* without further punishment, because he was a stranger. When therefore the *Greeks* demanding *Helen*, had answer, that she was in *Egypt*, they thought themselves deluded, and thereupon made the warre, which ended with the ruine of *Troy*. But when after the Citie taken, they perceived indeed shee had not been there, they returned home, sending *Menelaus* to ask his wife of *Proteus*. *Homer*, and the whole Nation of Poets (except *Euripides*) vary from this History, thinking it a matter more magnificent, and more gracefull to their Poems, for the retaining of a fair Lady, than that they endured all by force, because it lay not in their power to deliver her. Yet in the fourth of his *Odysseys*, *Homer* speaks of *Menelaus* his being in *Egypt*, before he returned home to *Sparta*; which voyage it were not easily believed that hee made for pleasure: and if hee were driven thither by contrary Winds, much more may we think that *Paris* was likely to have been driven thither by foul Weather. For *Paris* immediately upon the rape committed, was enforced to flye, taking such Windes as he could get, and rather enduring any storm, than to commit himself to any Haven in the *Greek* Seas: whereas *Menelaus* might have put into any port in *Greece*, and there have remained with good entertainment, untill such time as the Wind had come about, and served for his Navigation.



One great argument *Herodotus* brings to confirm the saying of the *Egyptian* Priests; which is, that if *Helen* had been at *Troy*, it had been utter madnesse for *Priamus* to see so many miseries befall him, during the warre, and so many of his sonnes slain for the pleasure of one, who neither was heir to the Kingdome (for *Heſtor* was elder) nor equall in vertue to many of the rest. Besides, it may seem that *Lucian* spake not more pleasantly than truly, when he said that *Helen*, at the warre of *Troy*, was almost as old as Queen *Hecuba*, considering that she had been ravished by *Theseus* the companion of *Hercules*, who took *Troy* when *Priamus* was very young; and considering further, that she was sister to *Castor* and *Pollux* (he and *Pollux* being said by some to have been twinnes) who sailed with the *Argonauts*, having *Telamon* the father of *Ajax* in their company, before the time that *Hesione* was taken; on whom *Telamon* begat *Ajax*, that was a principall Commander in the *Trojan* warre. But whether it were so that the *Trojans* could not, or would not restore *Helen*, so it was that the Ambassadors returned ill contented, and not very well entreated, for there wanted not some that advised to have them slain. The *Greeks* hereupon incensed, made all haste towards *Troy*: at which time *Calchus* (whom some say to have been a Runnagate *Trojan*, though no such thing be found in *Homer*) filled the Captains, and all the Host with many troublesome answers and divinations. For he would have *Agamemnon*s daughter sacrificed to appease *Diana*, whose anger, he said, withstood their passage. Whether the young Lady were sacrificed, or whether (as some write) the goddesse was contented with a Hinde, it is not needfull here to be disputed of. Sure it is, that the malice of the Devill, which awaits so for all opportunities, is never more importunate, than where mens ignorance is most. *Calchus* also told the *Greeks*, that the taking of *Troy* was impossible, till some fatall impediments were removed: and that till ten years were past, the Town should hold out against them. All which notwithstanding, the *Greeks* proceeded in their enterprise, under the command of *Agamemnon*, who was accompanied with his Brother *Menelaus*; *Achilles* the most valiant of all the *Greeks*, his friend *Patroclus*, and his Tutor *Phoenix*; *Ajax* and *Teucer*, the sonnes of *Telamon*; *Idomeneus* and his companion *Marion*; *Nestor* and his sons *Antilochus* and *Thrasymides*; *Ulysses*, *Meneſtheus* the son of *Petrus*, Captain of the *Athenians*; *Diomedes* the son of *Tydeus*, a man of singular courage; the wife and learned *Palamedes*, *Alcalaphus*, and *Falmenus*, the sons of *Mars*; who had sailed with the *Argonauts*; *Philoctetes* also the son of *Peas*, who had the arrows of *Hercules*, without which *Calchus* said, that the Citie could not be taken; *Ajax* the son of *Oileus*, *Peneleus*, *Theas*, *Eumelus*, *Tyſandrus*, *Euripilus*, *Athamas*, *Sthenelus*, *Tlepolemus* the son of *Hercules*; *Podalyrius*, and *Machon*, the sons of *Aſculapius*; *Epeus*, who is said to have made the wooden Horſe, by which the town was taken; and *Proteſſlaus*, who first leapt on shore, neglecting the Oracle that threatned death to him that landed first.

## §. IV.

Of the Acts of the Græcians at the ſiege.

**T**Hese, and many other of lesse note, arriving at *Troy*, found such sharp entertainment, as might easily persuade them to think that the warre would be more than one years work. For in the first encounter, they lost *Proteſſlaus*, whom *Heſtor* slew, and many other, without any great harm done to the *Trojans*: save only that by their numbers of men, they wan ground enough to incamp themselves in, as appeareth in *Thucydides*. The principall impediment which the *Greeks* found, was want of victuals, which grew upon them by reason of their multitude, and the finalnesse of their vessels wherein they could not carry necessaries for such an Army. Hereupon they were compelled to send some part of their men, to labour the ground in *Cherroneſſe*: others to rob upon the Sea for the relief of the Camp. Thus was the warre protracted nine whole years, and either nothing done, or if any skirmishes were, yet could the town receive little losse by them, having equall numbers to maintain the field against such *Greeks* as continued the siege, and a more safe retreat if the enemy got the better.

Wherefore *Ovid* saith, That from the first year, till the tenth, there was no fighting at all, and *Heraclide* commends as very credible, the report of *Herodotus*, that the *Greeks* did not lye before *Troy* the first nine years: but onely did bear up and down the Seas, exerci-

exercising their men, and enriching themselves, and so by waſting the enemies countrey, did block up the Town, unto which they returned not, untill the fatall time drew near when it should be subverted.

This is confirmed by the enquire which *Priamus* made, when the *Greek* Princes came into the field, the tenth year, for he knew none of them; and therefore sitting upon an high tower (as *Homer* tells) he learned their names of *Helen*: which though it is like to be a fiction, yet could it not at all have been supposed that he should be ignorant of them, if they had shewed themselves before the town so many years together. Between these relations of *Thucydides* and *Herodotus*, the difference is not much; the one saying, that a few of the *Greeks* remained in the Camp before *Troy*, whilst the rest made purveyance by land and by sea: the others that the whole armie did spend the time in waſting the Sea-coasts. Neither doe the Poets greatly disagree from these authors: for they make report of many towns and Ilands waſted, and the people carried into Captivity; in which actions *Achilles* was employed, whom the armie could not well, nor would have spared, if any service of importance had been to be performed before the Citie. Howsoever it was, this is agreed by generall consent, that in the beginning of that Summer, in which *Troy* was taken, great booties were brought into the Camp, and a great pestilence arose among the *Greeks*: which *Homer* saith, that *Apollo* sent in revenge of his Priests daughter, whom *Agamemnon* had refused to let goe, for any ransom: but *Heraclides* interpreting the place, saith, that by *Apollo* was meant the Sunne, who raised pestilent Fogs, by which the armie was infected, being lodged in a moorish piece of ground. And it might well be that the camp was over-pestered with those, who had been abroad, and now were lodged all close together: having also grounded their ships within the fortifications.

About the same time arose much contention between *Agamemnon* and *Achilles* about the bootie, whereof *Agamemnon*, as General, having first chosen for his part a captive woman, and *Achilles* in the second place chosen for himself another, then *Ajax*, *Ulysses*, and to the rest of the chiefe Captains in order: when the Soothsayer *Calchus* had willed that *Agamemnon*s woman should be restored to her father *Apollo*s Priest, that so the Pestilence might cease, then did *Agamemnon* greatly rage, and say, that hee alone would not lose his part of the spoile, but would either take that which had been given to *Achilles*, or that which had fallen to *Ajax*, or to *Ulysses*. Hereupon *Achilles* defied him, but was faine to suffer all patiently, as not able to hold his Concubine by strong hand, nor to revenge her losse otherwise than by refusing to fight, or to send forth his Captains. But the *Greeks*, encouraged by their Captains, presented themselves before the Citie without him and his troops.

The *Trojans* were now relieved with great succours, all the neighbour Countries having sent them aide: partly drawn to that warre by their Commanders who assisted *Priamus* for money, wherewith he abounded when the warre began (as appears by his words in *Homer*), or for love of himselfe and his sons, or hope of marriage with some of his many and fair daughters; partly also (as we may well ghesse) incited by the wrongs received of the *Greeks* when they waſted the Countries adjoining unto *Troy*. So that when *Heſtor* issued out of the town, he was little inferior to his enemies in numbers of men, or qualitie of their Leaders. The principall Captains in the *Trojan* armie, were *Heſtor*, *Paris*, *Deiphobus*, *Helenus*, and the other sons of *Priamus*: *Æneas*, *Antenor*, and his sons, *Polydamas*, *Sarpedon*, *Glaucus*, *Aſius*, and the sons of *Panthus*, besides *Rhesus*, who was slain the first night of his arrivall; *Memnon*, Queen *Penthesilea*, and others who came towards the end of the war. Between these and the *Greeks* were many battels fought: the greatest of which were, that at the tombe of King *Ilus* upon the Plain; and another at the very trenches of the Camp, wherein *Heſtor* brake through the fortifications of the *Greeks*, and began to fire their ships; at which time *Ajax*, the son of *Telamon*, with his brother *Teucer*, were in a manner the onely men of note that remaining unwounded, made head against *Heſtor*, when the state of the *Greeks* was almost desperate.

Another battell (for so antiquitie calls it) or rather the same renewed, was fought by *Patroclus*, who having obtained leave, drew forth *Achilles* troops, relieving the wearie *Greeks* with a fresh supply. *Agamemnon*, *Diomedes*, *Ulysses*, and the rest of the Princes though sore wounded, yet were driven to put on armour, and with help of *Patroclus*, repelled

repelled the *Trojans* very hardly. For in that fight *Patroclus* was lost, and his body, with much contention recovered by his friends, was brought back into the Camp: the armour of *Achilles* which he had put on, being torn from him by *Hector*. It was the manner of those wars, having slain a man, to strip him, and hale away his body, not restoring it without ranfome, if he were one of marke. Of the vulgar little reckoning was made: for they fought all on foot, slightly armed, and commonly followed the success of their Captains; who rode not upon horses, but in Chariots, drawn by two or three horses, which were guided by some trusty followers of theirs, which drave up and down the field, as they were directed by the Captains, who by the swiftnesse of their horses presenting themselves where need required, threw first their Javelins, and then alighting, fought on foot, with swords and battle-axes, retiring into the ranks of footmen, or els returning to their Chariots when they found cause, and so began again with a new dart as they could get it, if their old were lost or broken. Their arms defensive were helmets, breast-plates, boots of brasse, or other mettall, and shields commonly of leather plated over. The offensive were swords and battel-axes at hand; and stones, arrows or darts when they fought at any distance. The use of their Chariots (besides the swiftnesse) was to keep them from weariness, whereto the leaders were much subject, because of their armour, which the strongest and stoutest were heaviest, also that from them they might throw their Javelins downwards, with the more violence. Of which weapon I find not that any carried more than one or two into the field: wherefore they were often driven to return to their tents for a new one when the old was gone. Likewise of armours they had little change or none; every man (speaking of the chiefe) carried his own compleat, of which if any piece were lost or broken, he was driven to repair it with the like, if he had any fitting, taken from some Captain whom he had slain, and stripped: or else to borrow of them that had by such means gotten some to spare. Whereas therefore *Achilles* had lost his armour which *Hector* (as is said before) had taken from the body of *Patroclus*, he was faine to await the making of new, ere he could enter the fight: whereof he became very desirous, that he might revenge the death of *Patroclus* his dear friend.

At this time *Agamemnon* reconciled himselfe unto *Achilles*, not onely restoring his concubine *Briseis*, but giving him very great gifts, and excusing former matters as well as he might. In the next battell *Achilles* did so behave himself, that he did not onely put the *Trojans* to the worst, but also slew the valiant *Hector*, whom (if *Homer* may herein be beleived) he chased three times about the walls of *Troy*. But great question may be made of *Homer's* truth in this narration. For it is not likely that *Hector* would stay alone without the Citie (as *Homer* doth report of him) when all the *Trojans* were fled into it: nor that he could leap over the rivers of *Xanthus* and *Simois*, as he must have done in that fight: nor that the *Trojans*, perceiving *Hector* in such an extremitie, would have forbidden to open some of their gates and let him in. But this is reported onely to grace *Achilles*, who having (by what means soever) slain the noble *Hector*, did not onely carry away his dead body, as the custome then was, but boring holes in his feet, and thrusting leathern thongs into them, tyed him to his Chariot, and dragging him shamefully about the field, selling the dead body to his father *Priamus* for a very great ranfome. But his cruelty and covetousness were not long unrevenge; for he was shortly after slain with an arrow by *Paris*, as *Homer* says, in the Scæan Gate, or as others, in the Temple of *Apollo*, whither he came to have married *Polyxena* the daughter of *Priamus*, with whom he was too far in love, having slain so many of her brethren; and his body was ranfomed (as *Lycophron* saith) at the self-same rate that *Hectors* was by him sold for. Not long after this, *Penthesilea* Queen of the *Amazons* arrived at *Troy*, who after some proofe given of her valour, was slain by *Pyrhus* the son of *Achilles*.

## S. V.

Of the taking of *Troy*, the wooden Horse, the Book of *Dares* and *Dyctis*, the Colonies of the reliques of *Troy*.

Finally, after the death of many worthy persons on each side, the Citie was taken by night, as all Writers agree: but whether by the treason of *Æneas* and *Antenor*, or by a wooden Horse, as the Poets, and common Fame (which

(which followed the Poets) have delivered, it is uncertain. Some write that upon one of the gates of *Troy*, called *Scæa*, was the image of a horse, and that the *Greekes* entring by that gate, gave occasion to the report, that the Citie was taken by an artificial horse. It may well be that with some wooden engine, which they called a horse, they either did batter the walls, as the *Romans* in after-times used to do with the *Ramme*: or scaled the walls upon the sudden, and so took the Citie. As for the hiding of men in the hollow body of a wooden horse, it had been a desperate adventure, and serving to no purpose. For either the *Trojans* might have perceived the deceit, and slain all those Princes of *Greece*, that were inclosed in it (which also by such as maintain this report they are said to have thought upon: for they might have left it a few dayes without the Citie (for it was unlikely, that they should the very first day both conclude upon the bringing it into the town, and break down their walls upon the sudden to doe it: ) by which means they who were shut into it, must have perished for hunger, if they had not by issuing forth unseasonably discovered the invention. Whereas further it is said, that this horse was so high and great, that it could not be brought into the town through any of the gates, and that therefore the *Trojans* were faine to pull down a part of their wall to make way for it, through which breach the *Greekes* did afterwards enter; it is hereby manifest, that the inclosing of so many principall men was altogether needlesse, considering that without their help there was way sufficient for the armie, so that the surprizing of any gate by them was now to no purpose.

*John Baptista Gramay* in his *Historie of Asia*, discoursing of this warre, saith that the *Greekes* did both batter the walls with a wooden engine, and were also let into the Citie by *Antenor*, at the *Scæan* gate: the townsmen sleeping and drinking without fear or care, because the fleet of the *Grecians* had hoisted saile, and was gone the day before to the Ile of *Tenedos*, thereby to bring the *Trojans* into security. That the Citie was betrayed, the books of *Dares* and *Dyctis* must prove, which whether we now have the same that were by them written, it may be suspected; for surely they who have made mention of these writers in ancient times, would not, as they did, have followed the reports of *Homer* and others quite contrarie in most points to these two authors, without once taking notice of the opposition, which they having served in that warre against the common report, had it not been that either those books were even in those times thought frivolous, or else contained no such repugnance to the other Authours as now is found in them.

Also concerning the number of men slain in this warre, which *Dares* and *Dyctis* say to have been above 600000. on the *Trojan* side, and more than 800000. of the *Greekes*, it is a report merely fabulous; for as much as the whole Fleet of the *Greekes* was reckoned by *Homer*, who extolled their armie and deeds as much as he could, to be somewhat lesse than 1200. saile, and the armie therein transported over the *Greek* seas, not much above 100000. men, according to the rate formerly mentioned. But it is the common fashion of men to extoll the deeds of their Ancients: for which cause both *Homer* magnified the Captains of the *Greekes* that served in the warre, and *Virgil* with others were as diligent in commending and extolling the *Trojans* and their Citie, from which the *Romans* descended. Yea, the Athenians long after in the warre which *Xerxes* the Persian King made against all *Greece*, did not forbear to vaunt of the great cunning which *Mæneus* the son of *Peteus* had shewed in marshalling the *Grecian* army before *Troy*: whereupon, as if it had been a matter of much consequence, they were so proud, that they refused to yeeld unto *Gelon* King of almost all *Sicily*, the Admiralty of their Seas, notwithstanding that he promised to bring 200. good fighting ships, and 30000. men for their defence.

The like vanitie possessed many other Cities of *Greece*, and many Nations in these parts of the world, which have striven to bring their descent from some of the Princes that warred at *Troy*: all difficulties or unlikelihoods in such their Pedegree notwithstanding. But those Nations which indeed, or in most probability, came of the *Trojans*, were the *Albanes* in *Italie*; and from them the *Romans*, brought into that Country by *Æneas*: the *Venetians* first seated in *Padua*, and the Countrey adjoining, by *Antenor*: the *Chaonians* planted in *Epirus* by *Helenus*, the son of King *Priamus*. To which *Hellenus* addeth, that the posteritie of *Hector* did assemble such of the *Trojans* as were left, and reigned over them about *Troy*.

## §. VI.

Of the distresses and dispersions of the Greeks returning from Troy.

Concerning the Greeks, they tasted as much miserie as they had brought upon the Trojans. For *Thucydides* notes, that by reason of their long abode at the siege, they found many alterations when they returned: so that many were driven by their borderers from their ancient seats: many were expelled their Countries by faction: some were slain anon after their arrivall: others were debarred from the Sovereignty among the people, by such as had stayed at home. The cause of all which may seem to have been the dispersion of the Armie, which, weakened much by the calamities of that long warre, was of little force to repell injuries, being divided into so many pieces under severall Commanders, not very well agreeing. For (besides other quarrels arising upon the division of the bootie, and the like occasions) at the time when they should have set sail, *Agamemnon* and his brother fell out, the one being desirous to depart immediatly, the other to stay and perform some sacrifices to *Minerva*. Hereupon they fell to hot words, half the fleet remaining with *Agamemnon*, the rest of them failed to the Ile of *Tenedos*, where when they arrived, they could not agree among themselves, but some returned back to *Agamemnon*; others were dispersed, each holding his own course. But the whole fleet was sore vexed with tempests: for *Pallas* (as *Homer* saith) would not be perswaded in haste.

They who returned safe were *Nestor*, and *Pyrrhus*, whom *Orestes* afterwards slew: also *Idomeneus* and *Philoctetes*, who nevertheless, as *Virgil* tells, were driven soon after to seek new seats: *Idomeneus* among the *Salentines*, and *Philoctetes* at *Petilia* in *Italie*. *Agamemnon* likewise returned home, but was forthwith slain by his wife, and by the Adulterer *Aegisthus*, who for a while after usurped his Kingdom. *Menelaus* wandering long upon the Seas, came into *Egypt*, either with *Helen*, or (as may rather seem) to fetch her. *Ulysses*, after ten years, having lost all his company, got home in poor estate, with much ado recovering the mastership of his own house. All the rest either perished by the way, or were driven into exile, and faine to seek out new habitations.

*Ajax* the son of *Oileus* was drowned; *Teucer* fled into *Cyprus*; *Diomedes* to King *Darus*, who was Lord of the *Fapiges* in *Apulia*; some of the *Locrians* were driven into *Africa*, others into *Italy*, all the East part whereof was called *Magna Græcia*, by reason of so many towns which the Greeks were driven to erect upon that coast. Finally, it appears in *Homer*, that the *Græcian* Ladies, whose husbands had been at the war of *Troy*, were wont to call it, The place where the Greeks suffered miserie, and the unlucky Cite not to be mentioned. And thus much for *Troy*, and those that warred there: the overthrow of which City, as hath been said, happened in the time of *Habdon* Judge of *Israel*, whom *Sampon*, after a vacancie or *Inter-regnum* for certain years, succeeded.

## CHAP. XV.

Of *Sampon*, *Eli*, and *Samuel*.

## §. I.

Of *Sampon*.

2970.



HE birth and acts of *Sampon* are written at large in the 13. 14. 15. and 16. of *Judges*; and therefore I shall not need to make a repetition thereof. But these things I gather out of that Storie, First, that the Angel of God forbid the wife of *Manoah* the mother of *Sampon*, to drink Wine or strong drink, or to eat any unclean meat after shee was conceived with child; because those strong liquors hinder the strength, and as it were wither and shrink the child in the mothers wombe. Though this were even the counsell of God himself, and delivered by his Angell, yet it seemeth that many women of this age have not read,

or at least will not believe this precept: the most part forbearing nor drinks, nor meats, how strong or unclean soever, filling themselves with all sorts of wines, and with artificiall drinks far more forcible: by reason whereof, so many wretched feeble bodies are born into the world, and the races of the able and strong men in effect decayed.

Secondly, it is to be noted, that the Angel of God refused the sacrifice which *Manoah* would have offered him, commanding him to present it unto the Lord: and therefore those that professe divination by the help of Angels, to whom also they sacrifice, may assuredly know that they are devils who accept thereof, and not good Angels, who receive no worship that is proper to God.

Thirdly, this *Sampon* was twice betrayed by his wives, to wit, by their importunitie and deceitfull tears: by the first he lost but a part of his goods; by the second his life. *Quem nulla vis superare potuit, voluptas everit: Whom no force could over-master, Voluptuousnesse overturned.*

Fourthly, we may note, that he did not in all deliver *Israel* from the oppression of the *Philistims*; though in some sort he revenged, and defended them: for notwithstanding that he had slain 30. of them in his first attempt, burnt their Corn in harvest time, and given them a great overthrow instantly upon it: yet so much did *Israel* fear the *Philistims*, as they assembled 3000. men out of *Juda*, to besiege *Sampon*, in the rock or mountain of *Etam*, using these words: *Knowest thou that the Philistims are rulers over us?*

After which they bound him, and delivered him unto the *Philistims*, for fear of their revenge; though he was no sooner loosened, but he gave them another overthrow, and slew 1000. with the jaw-bone of an Ass.

Lastly, being made blind, and a prisoner by the treason of his wife, hee was content to end his own life, to be avenged of his enemies, when he pulled down the pillars of the house at the feast whereto they sent for *Sampon*, to deride him; till which time he bare his affliction with patience: but it was truly said of *Seneca*; *Patientia sepe lesa vertitur in furorem*; *Patience often wounded is converted into furie*: neither is it at any time so much wounded by pain and losse, as by derision and contumelie.

## §. II.

Of *Eli*, and of the Ark taken; and of *Dagons* fall, and the sending back of the Ark.

THE Storie of *Eli* the Priest, who succeeded *Sampon*, is written in the beginning of *Samuel*; who foretold him of the destruction of his house, for the wickedness of his sons, which he suppressed not, neither did he punish them according to their deserts: whose sins were horrible, both in abusing the Sacrifice, and prophaneing and polluting the holy places: though *Levi Ben Gerson*, to extenuate this filthy offence of forcing the women by the sons of *Eli*, hath a contrary opinion. In this time therefore it pleased God to cast the *Israelites* under the swords of the *Philistims*; of whom there perished in the first encounter 4000. and in the second battell 30000. footmen; among whom the sons of *Eli* being slain, their father (hearing the lamentable success) by falling from his chair, brake his neck. He was the first that obtained the High-Priesthood of the stock of *Ithamar* the son of *Aaron*, before whose time it continued successively in the race of *Eleazar* the eldest brother of *Ithamar*: for *Aaron* was the first, *Eleazar* the second, *Phinees* the son of *Eleazar* the third, *Abisue* the son of *Phinees* the fourth, his son *Bocci* the fifth, *Ozi* the son of *Bocci* the sixth, and then *Eli*, as *Josephus* and *Lyranns* out of the Hebrew Authors have conceived. In the race of *Ithamar* the Priesthood continued after *Eli*, to the time of *Salomon*, who cast out *Abiathar*, and established *Sadoek* and *Achimaas* and their successours. The Ark of God which *Israel* brought into the field, was in this battell taken by the *Philistims*. For as *David* witnesseth, *God greatly abhorred Israel*, so that he forsook the habitation of *Shilo*: even the Tabernacle where he dwelt among men, and delivered his power into captivity, &c.

Now as it pleased God at this time, that the Ark whereby himself was represented should fall in the hands of the Heathen, for the offences of the Priests and people: so did he permit the Chaldeans to destroy the Temple built by *Salomon*; the Romans to overthrow the second Temple; and the Turks to overthrow the Christian Churches in *Asia* and *Europe*. And had not the *Israelites* put more confidence in the sacrament,

sacrament, or representation, which was the Ark, than in God himself, they would have observed his Lawes, and served him onely: which whensoever they did, they were then victorious. For after the captivitie they had no Ark at all, nor in the times of the Machabees: and yet for their pietie it pleased God to make that familie as victorious as any that guarded themselves by the signe in stead of the substance. And that the Ark was not made to the end to be carried into the field as an ensigne, *David* witnessed when he fled from *Abisalon*. For when the Priests would have carried the Ark with him; he forbade it, and caused it to be turned into the Citie, using these words: *If I shall find favour in the eyes of the Lord, he will bring me again: if not, let him doe to me as seemeth good in his eyes.*

The *Trojans* believed that while their *Palladium* or the image of *Minerva* was kept in *Troy*, the Citie should never be overturned: so did the Christians in the last fallall battell against *Saladine* carry into the field, as they were made believe, the very Crosse whereon Christ died; and yet they lost the battell, their bodies, and the wood. But *Chrysostome* upon *Saint Matthew* (if that be his work) giveth a good judgement, speaking of those that wore a part of *Saint Iohns* Gospell about their necks, for an amulet or preservative: *Si tibi ea non profunt in auribus, quomodo proderunt in collo? If those words doe not profit men in their eares, (to wit, the hearing of the Gospell preached) how should it profit them by hanging it about their necks?* For it was neither the wood of the Ark, nor the wood of the Crosse, but the reverence of the Father that gave the one for a memorie of his Covenant; and the Faith in his Sonne, which shed his blood on the other for redemption, that could or can profit them and us, either in this life or after it.

The *Philistims* returning with the greatest victorie and glorie which ever they obtained, carried the Ark of God with them to *Azotus*, and set it up in the house of *Dagon* their Idoll: but that night the Idoll fell out of his place, from above to the ground, and lay under the Ark. The morning following they took it up, and let it again in his place. And it fell the second time, and the head brake from the body, and the hands from the armes, shewing, that it had no power nor understanding in the presence of God; for the head fell off, which is the seat of reason and knowledge, and the hands (by which we execute strength) were lundered from the armes. For God and the devill inhabit not in one house, nor in one heart. And this Idoll could not endure the representation of the true God, it is not to be marvelled, that at such time as it pleased him to cover his only begotten with flesh, and sent him into the world, that all the Oracles, wherein the Devill derided and betrayed mortall men, lost power, speech and operation at the instant. For when that true light which never had beginning of brightness, brake through the clouds of a Virgins body, shining upon the earth which had been long obscured by Idolatrie, all those foul and stinking vapours vntilthen, *Plutarch* rehearseth a memorabie accident in that age concerning the death of the great god *Pan*, as he stileth him; where (as ignorant of the true cause) he searcheth his brains for many reasons of so great an alteration: yet finds he none out but frivolous. For not only this old Devill did then die as he supposed, but all the rest, as *Apollo*, *Jupiter*, *Diana*, and the whole rabble became speechlesse.

Now while the *Philistims* triumphed after this victorie, God strook them with the grievous disease of the *Hamorrhoides*, of which they perished in great numbers. For it is written, that the Lord destroyed them. I will therefore by general consent ordered, that the Ark should be removed from *Azotus* to *Gath* or *Gib*, another of the five great Cities of the *Philistims*; to prove, as it seemeth, whether this disease were fallen on them by accident, or by the hand of God immediately: but when it was brought to *Gath* and received by them, the plague was yet more grievous and mortall. For the hand of the Lord was against this Citie with a very great destruction, and he smote the men of the Citie both small and great, &c. And being not yet satisfied, they of *Gath* sent the Ark to *Eckron* or *Accaron*, a third Citie of the *Philistims*: but they also felt the same smart, and cried out, that themselves and their people should be slain thereby; For there was a destruction and death throughout all the Citie. In the end, by the advice of their Priests the Princes of the *Philistims* did not onely resolve to return the Ark, but to offer gifts unto the God of *Israel*, remembering the plague which had fallen on the *Egyptians*, when their hearts were hardened to hold the people of God from their inheritance, and from his service by strong hand. Wherefore confessing the power of the God of *Israel* to be almighty, and that their own Idols were subject therunto, they agreed to offer a sin-offering, using

using these words; *So ye shall give glorie to the God of Israel, that he may take his hand from you, and from your gods, and from your land.* And what can be a more excellent witnessing, than where an enemy doth approve our cause? according to *Aristotle*; *Pulchrum est testimonium, quo nostra probantur ab hostibus.* So did *Pharao* confesse the living God, when he was plagued in *Egypt*: and *Nabuchodonosor* and *Darius*, when they had seen his miracles by *Daniel*.

This counsell therefore of the Priests being embraced, and the golden *Hamorrhoides*, and the golden Mice prepared, they caused two milch kine to be chosen, such as had not been yoked, and a new Cart or Carriage to be framed: but they durst not drive or direct it to any place certain, thereby to make tryall whether it were indeed the hand of God that had stricken them. For if the Ark of God were carried towards *Bethhemesh*, and into the territorie of *Israel*, then they should resolve that from God only came their late destruction. For the *Philistims* knew that the milch Kine which drew the Ark, could not be forced from their calves, but that they would have followed them wheresoever; much lesse when they were left to themselves, would they travel a contrary way. For in the darkest night in the world, if calves be removed from their dammes, the kine will follow them through woods and deserts by the foot, till they find them. But the kine travelled directly towards *Bethhemesh*: and when they came into the fields thereof, to wit, of one *Josua* of the same Citie, they stood still there; which when the Princes of the *Philistims* perceived, they returned to *Eckron*. After which, God spared not his own people the *Bethhemeshites*, in that they presumed to look in the Ark. And because they knew God and his commandments, and had been taught accordingly, he strook them more grievously than he did the heathen: for there perished of them fifty thousand and seventy. From hence the Ark was carried to *Kiriath-jearim*, and placed in the house of *Abinadab*; where it is written that it remained twenty years in the charge of *Eleazar* his son, until *David* brought it to *Hierusalem*.

Now whereas it is said, that in the mean while the Ark was in *Nob*, *Mispa*, and *Gallata*, it was the Tabernacle, which was at this time fevered from the Ark, or at least, it was for the present occasion brought to these places, and anon returned to *Kiriath-jearim*.

### s. III.

of Samuel, and of his Government.

These Tragedies overpast and ended, *Samuel*, to whom God appeared while he was yet a child, became now Judge and Governour of *Israel*. He was descended of the familie of *Chore* or *Korach*. For *Levi* had three sons; *Gerson*, *Cheath*, and *Merari*: *Cheath* had *Amram* and *Izaar*; of *Amram* came *Moses* and *Aaron*; of *Izaar*, *Chore*; and of the familie of *Chore*, *Samuel*. His father *Eleazar* a Levite, was also called an *Ephrataean*; not that the Levites had any proper inheritance, but because hee was of *Mount Ephraim*, like as *Jesse*, *David's* father, was called an *Ephrataean*, because born at *Ephrata*, or *Bethleem*. *Hannah* his mother being long fruitlesse, obtained him of God by prayers and tears: it being an exceeding shame to the Jewish women to be called barren, in respect of the blessing of God, both to *Abraham*, that his seed should multiply as the Stars of Heaven, and the sands of the Sea; as in the beginning to *Adam*, *Ephraim* increase and multiply, &c. and in *Deuteronomie* the seventh; *There shall be neither male nor female barren among you.*

*Samuel* was no sooner born, but that his mother, according to her former vow, dedicated him to God, and his service; to which she delivered him even from the dugges. For as the first-born of all that were called *Nazarites*, might be redeemed till they were five years old for five shekles, and between five years and twenty, for twenty shekles: so was it not required by the Law, that any of the race of the Levites should be called to serve about the Tabernacle, till they were five and twenty years old.

*Saint Peter* reckons in the *Acts* the Prophets from *Samuel*, who was the first of the writers of holy Scriptures, to whom usually this name of a Prophet was given, & yet did *Moses* account himselfe such a one; as in the 18. of *Deuteronomie*, *The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet like unto mee, &c.* But hee is distinguished from thole that Tribe of *Ephraim*, who were called *Seers*; as before time in *Israel*, when a man went to seek an

2 Sam. 6. 6.  
1 Chron. 12.  
2 See in this  
book, c. 12. 6. 7.  
in the mar-  
gent.

b 1 Chron. 5. 2.  
c Which Tribe  
was called  
Ephraim, as  
appeareth,  
Jud. 12. 5.  
whence for dis-  
tinction we  
read Ruth 12.  
Ephraim is  
Bethlehem  
Judea, the  
town Ephraim  
which is Beth-  
lehem in Judea,  
Gen. 35. 19.  
from the regi-  
on of Ephraim,  
which is in  
Mount Ephra-  
im, whence  
Psalm. 133. 6.  
for Silo, which  
was in the  
Tribe of  
Ephraim,  
Ver. 15.  
answer, 2 Sam. 9.

answer of God, thus he spake; Come and let us goe to the Seer: for hee that is now called a Prophet, was in old time called a Seer. And although it pleased God to appear by his Angels to Moses, as before to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; yet in the time of Eli, there was no manifest vision; not that God had altogether with-drawn his grace from Israel: but as the Chaldean Paraphrast hath it, those revelations before Samuel's time, were more clouded and obscure. The places wherein Samuel judged were *Matpa* or *Mispa*, seated on a hill in Benjamin neer *Juda*: also *Gilgal* and *Bethel*, of which we have spoken else-where.

The *Philistims* taking knowledge of the assembly and preparation of War at *Mispa* in the beginning of Samuel's government, gathered their Armie, and marched towards the Citie: at whose approach the *Israelites* stricken with fear, and with the memorie of their former slaughters and servitude, besought Samuel to pray to God for them; who was then performing his sacrifice when the *Philistims* were in view. But God being moved with Samuel's prayers (as he was by those of Moses, when Israel fought against the *Amalekites* at the first entrance into *Arabia*: ) it pleased him with thunder and tempest to disperse and beat down the Army of the *Philistims*, according to the prophetic of *Hanna*, Samuels Mother, *The Lords adversaries shall be destroyed, and out of Heaven shall he thunder upon them.* &c. *Iosephus* affirms, that a part of the *Philistims* were swallowed with an earthquake: and that Samuel himself led the *Israelites* in the prosecution of their victory. After which Samuel erected a Monument in memorie of this happy successe, obtained by the miraculous hand of God, which *Iosephus* called *Lapidem fortis*: Samuel, *Ebenezer*, or the stone of assistance: and then following the opportunitie and advantage of the victorie, the *Israelites* recovered divers Cities of their own formerly lost, and held long in the possession of the *Philistims*, who for a long time after did not offer any invasion or revenge. And the better to attend their purposes, and to withstand any of their attempts, the *Israelites* made peace with the *Amorites*, or *Canaanites*, which lay on their backs, and to the North of them, that they might not be assaulted from divers parts at once; having the *Philistims* towards the West and Sea-coast, the *Canaanite* toward the North and East, and the *Idumite* on the South. The estate being thus settled, Samuel for the ease of the people gave audience and judgement in divers places by turns, as hath been else-where said.

## CHAP. XVI. Of SAUL.

### 5. 1.

Of the deliberation to change the government into a Kingdome.



UT when age now began to over-take Samuel, and that hee was not able to undergoe the burthen of so carefull a government, he put off from himself the weight of the affairs on his sons, *Joel* and *Abijah*, who judged the people at *Beersheba*, a Citie, the very utmost towards the South of *Judaa*. And as the place was inconvenient and far away, so were themselves no lesse removed from the justice and vertue of their Father: For the thirst of covetousnesse, the more it swalloweth, the more it drieth, and desireth, finding taste in nothing but gain; to recover which, they set the Law at a price, and sold Justice and Judgement to the best Chapmen. Which when the Elders of Israel observed, and saw that Samuel as a naturall man (though a Prophet) could not so well discern the errors of his own, they prayed him to consent to their change of government, and to make them a King, by whom they might be judged as other Nations were; who might also lead them to the War, and defend them against their enemies. For after the ill and lamentable successe which followed the rule of Eli his sons, when those of Samuel by their first blossomes promised to yield fruit no lesse bitter, they saw no way to put the government from out his race, whom they so much revered, but by the choyce of a King.

In a cause of so great consequence and alteration, Samuel sought counsell from God: which surely hee did not for the establishing of his own Sonnes; who being as they were. God would not have approved his election. Now as it appears by the Text, this speech or motion displeasing him, he used his best arguments to dehort them: which when he perceived to be over-feeble, he delivered unto them from Gods revelation, the inconveniences and miseries which should befall them. And yet, all which he fore-shewed was not intolerable, but such as hath been born, and is to still, by free consent of the Subjects towards their Princes. For first he makes them know that the King will use their sons in his own service to make them his Horse-men, Chariotiers, and Foot-men; which is not only not grievous, but by the Vassals of all Kings, according to their birth and condition, desired: it being very agreeable to subjects of the best qualitie to command for the King in his Warres; and to till the ground no lesse proper and appertaining to those that are thereto bred and brought up: so are likewise the offices of women-servants to dresse meat, to bake bread, and the like. But where is immediately it is threatened, *He will take your Fields and your Vineyards, and your best Olive trees, and give them to his servants*, with other oppressions: this hath given, and gives daily occasion to such as would be ruled by their own discretion, to affirme that Samuel describeth here unto them the power of a King governed by his own affections, and not a King that feareth God. But others upon further examination construe this Text farre otherwise, as teaching us what Subjects ought with patience to bear at their Sovereigns hand. The former opinion is grounded first upon that place of *Deuteronomie*, where God fore-sheweth this change of government from Judges to Kings; and after he had forbidden many things unto the Kings, as many wives, covetousnesse, and the like, he commandeth that the Kings which were to reign over Israel, should write the Law of *Deuteronomie*, or cause it to be written: and to shew how greatly the King should honour the Law, he addeth, *It shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the dayes of his life; that he may learn to fear the Lord his God, and to keep all the words of this Law, and these ordinances for to doe them: that he may prolong his dayes in his Kingdom, he and his Sons.* But to take away any other mans field, say they, is contrary to the Lawes of God, in the same book written. For it is said, *That which is just and right shalt thou follow, that thou mayst live.* Now if it be not permitted to carry away grapes more than thou canst eat out of another mans vineyard, but forbidden by God: it is much lesse lawful to take the vineyard it self from the owner, and give it to another. Neither are the words of the Text (say they) such as do warrant the Kings of Israel, or make it proper unto them, to take at will any thing from their vassals. For it is not said that it shall be lawful for the King, or the King may do this or that: but it is written, that the King will take your sonnes: and again, This shall be the manner of the King that shall reign over you. God thereby fore-shewing what power, severed from pietie (because it is accountable to God onely) will do in the future. And hereof we find the first example in *Achab*, who took from *Naboth* both his Vineyard and his life, contrary to the trust which God had put in him, of governing well his people. For God commanded, *That his people should be judged with righteous judgement.* Wherefore, though the King had offered unto *Naboth* composition, as a Vineyard of better value, or the worth in money, which he refused: yet because he was falsely accused, and unjustly condemned (though by colour of law); how grievously *Achab* was punished by God, the Scriptures tell us. Neither was it a plea sufficient for *Achab* against the all-righteous God, to say that it was done without his consent, and by the Elders of Israel. For God had not then left his people to the Elders, but to the King, who is called a living Law, even as *David* testified of himself: *Posuisti me in caput gentium*: For this of *S. Augustine* is very true: *Simulata innocentia, non est innocentia: simulata aequitas, non est aequitas: sed duplicatur peccatum in quo est iniquitas & simulatio, Feigned innocence, and feined equity, are neither the one nor the other: but the fault or offence is there doubled, in which there is both iniquity & dissimulation.* Such in effect is their disputation, who think this place to contain the description of a Tyrant. But the arguments on the contrary side, as they are many and forcible, so are they well known to all; being excellently handled in that Princely discourse of *The true Law of free Monarchies*: which Treatise I may not presume to abridge, much lesse here to insert. Only thus much I will say, That if practice doe shew the greatnesse of authoritie, even the best Kings of *Juda* and *Israel* were not so tyed by any lawes, but that they did whatsoever they pleased in the







him is to be thought that by their crafts they proceeded in the policy, not suffering their Artificers to teach the *Israelites*, and so even to the times of *Saul* kept them from having any store of armour. The same policy did *Nabuchodonosor* use after his Conquest in *Juda*: *Dionysius* in *Sicily*, and many other Princes else where in all ages. But these lost weapons in part the *Israelites* might repair in *Gilead*, for over *Jordan* the *Philistims* had not invaded. The rest of their defences were such as antiquity used, and their present necessity ministered unto them; to wit, clubs, bowes, and slings. For the *Benjamites* exceeded in casting stones in slings; and that these were the naturall weapons, and the first of all nations, it is manifest; and so in the first of *Chronicles* the 12. Chapter it is written of those that came to succour *David* against *Saul*, while he lurked at *Siklag*, That they were 16 *weaponed with bowes, and could use the right and the left hand with stones, and with a sling it was that David himself slew the Gyant Goliath.*

While the State of *Israel* stood in these hard termes the *Philistims* having parted their army into three troops, that they might spoil and destroy many parts at once, *Jonathan*, strengthened by God, and followed with his Equire onely, scaled a mountain, whereon a company of *Philistims* were lodged: the rest of their army (as may be gathered by the successe) being incamped in the plain adjoining. And though he were discovered before he came to the hill top, and in a kind of derision, called up by his enemies: yet he so behaved himself, as with the assistance of God he slew 20. of the first *Philistims* that he encountered. Whereupon the next companies taking the alarm, and being ignorant 20 of the cause, fled away amazed altogether. In which confusion, fear, and jealousy, they slaughtered one another in stead of enemies: whereupon those *Hebrews* which became of their party, because they feared to be spoiled by them, took the advantage of their destruction, and slew of them in great numbers. And lastly, *Saul* himself taking knowledge of the rout and disorder, together with those *Israelites* that shrouded themselves in mount *Ephraim*, set upon them, and obtained (contrary to all hope and expectation) a most happy and glorious victory over them. Here was that prophesie in *Deuteronomie* fulfilled by *Jonathan*, That one of those which feared God, should kill a thousand, and two of them ten thousand.

This done, the small army of *Israel* made retreat from the pursuit. And although *Saul* 30 had bound the people by an oath not to take food till the evening, yet his son *Jonathan*, being infebbled with extreme labour and emptinesse, tasted a drop of honey in his passage: for which *Saul* his father would have put him to death, had not the people delivered him from his crueltie.

The late miraculous victorie of *Saul* and *Jonathan*, seems to have reduced unto the *Philistims* remembrance their former overthrow, likewise miraculous in the dayes of *Samuel*, so that for some space of time they held themselves quier. In the mean while *Saul* being now greatly encouraged, undertook by turns all his bordering enemies, namely, the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Edomites*, and the *Arabians* of *Zobah*, against all which he prevailed. He then assembled all the forces he could make, to wit, 2 10000. men, and 40 receiving the commendement of God by *Samuel*, he invaded *Amalec*, wasting and destroying all that part of *Arabia Petraea*, and the *Desart* belonging to the *Amalekites*, from *Havilah* towards *Tigris* unto *Shur*, which bordereth *Egypt*; in which warre hee took *Agag* their King prisoner. But whereas he was instructed by *Samuel* to follow this Nation without compassion, because they first of all attempted *Israel*, when they left *Egypt* in *Moses* time: he notwithstanding did not only spare the life of *Agag*, but reserved the best of the beasts and spoil of the Countrey, with pretence to offer them in sacrifice to the living God. Therefore did *Samuel* now a second time make him know that God would cast him from his royall estate, to which he was raised when he was of base condition, and, as the Text hath it, *little in his own eyes*. And though the offence was great in *Saul* for not obeying the voyce of God by *Samuel*, had there been no former precept to that effect: yet seeing *Saul* could not be ignorant how severely it pleased God to enioyn the *Israelites* to revenge themselves upon that Nation, he was in all unexcusable. For God had commanded that the *Israelites* should put out the remembrance of *Amalec* from under heaven. For the cruelty which the predecessors of this *Agag* used against the *Israelites*, especially on those which were over-wearied, faint, sick, and aged people, was now to be revenged on him, and his Nation, above 400. years afterward; and now hee was to pay the debt of bloud, which his forefathers borrowed from

the innocent: for *Saul* having also sinned in the same kind, as these words of *Samuel* witness: *As thy sword hath made other women childlesse, so shall thy mother be childlesse* 1. *Sam.* 15. 33. among other women; at which time *Samuel* himself (after he had been by many bootlesse intreaties perswaded to stay a while with *Saul*) did cut *Agag* in pieces before the Lord in *Gilead*, and soon after he departed to *Ramath*, and came no more to see *Saul* until the day of his death.

S. V.

of the occurrents between the rejection of *Saul* and his death.

10 NOW while *Samuel* mourned for *Saul*, God commanded him to choose a King for *Israel*, among the sons of *Isai*: which *Samuel* (doubting the violent hand of *Saul*) feared in a sort to perform, till it pleased God to direct him, how hee might avoid both the suspicion, and the danger. And if *Samuel* knew that it was no way derogating from the providence of God, that by his cautious care and wisdom hee sought to avoid the inconveniences or dangers of this life: then do these men mistake the nature of his divine ordinance, who neglecting the reason that God hath given them, do no otherwise avoid the perills and dangers thereof, than as men stupefied in the opinion of fate or destinie, neglecting either to beg counsell at Gods hands by prayer, or 10 to exercise that wisdom or foresight, wherewith God hath enriched the mind of man for his preservation: Neither did the all-powerfull God (who made and could destroy the world in an instant) disdain here to instruct *Samuel*, to avoid the fury of *Saul*, by the accustomed cautious waies of the world.

Of the sons of *Isai*, *Samuel*, by God directed, made choise of *David*, the youngest, having refused *Eliab*, the first born: who though he were a comely person and great strength; yet unto such outward appearance, the Lord had no respect. For as it is written, *God seeth not as man seeth, &c. but the Lord beholdeth the heart*. He also refusing 1. *Sam.* 16. the other six brethren, made choise of one whom his father had altogether neglected, and left in the field to attend his flock; for of him the Lord said to *Samuel*, *Arise and anoint him; for this is he*: which done, *Samuel* departed and went to *Ramath*. Neither was it long after this that *Saul* began to seek the life of *David*: in which bloody mind hee continued till he died, overcome in battell by the *Philistims*.

The *Philistims* having well considered (as it seems) the increase of *Saul* his power through many victories by him obtained, whilst they had sitted still and forborne to give impediment to his prosperous courses, thought it good to make new tryall of their fortune, as justly fearing that the wrongs, which they had done to *Israel*, might be repaid with advantage; if ever opportunity should serve their often injured neighbours against them, as lately it had done against *Moab*, *Ammon*, and the rest of these antient enemies. Now for the qualitie of their Souldiers, and all warlike provisions, the *Philistims* had 40 reason to think themselves equall, if not superiour to *Israel*. The successe of their former wars had for the most part been agreeable to their own wishes: as for late disasters, they might, according to humane wisdom, impute them to second causes; as to a tempest happening by chance, and to a mistaken alarm, whereby their Armie, possessed with a needlesse fear, had fallen to rout. Having therefore multered their forces, and taken the field, encamping so neer to the Armie which King *Saul* drew forth against them, that they could not easily depart without the trial of a battell, each part kept their ground of advantage for a while, not joyning in grosse, but maintaining some skirmishes, as refusing both of them to passe the Valley that lay between their Camps. Just causes of fear they had on both sides; especially the *Philistims*, whose late attempts had bin 50 founded by the angry hand of God. Upon this occasion perhaps it was, that they sought to decide the matter by single combat, as willing to try in one mans person, whether any stroak from heaven were to be feared, *Goliath* of *Gath*, a strong Giant, fearing neither God nor Man, undertook to defie the whole Hoste of *Israel*, provoking them with despicable words, to appoint a Champion that might fight with him hand to hand; offering condition, that the partie vanquished in Champion, should hold it self as overcome in grosse, and become vassall unto the other. This gave occasion to *David*, whom *Samuel* by Gods appointment had anointed, to make a famous entrance into publique notice of the people. For no man durst expose himselfe

to encounter the great strength of *Goliath*, untill *David* sent by his friend on an errand to the Camp) accepted the combat, and obtained the victorie, without other arms, offensive or defensive, than a sling, wherewith he overthrew that haughty Gyaunt, and after with his own sword strook off his head. Hereupon the *Philistims*, who should have yielded themselves as subjects to the Conquerour, according to the covenant on their own side propounded, fled without stay, and were pursued and slaughtered even to their own gates. By this victory the *Philistims* were not so broken, that either any of their Towns were lost, or their people discouraged from infesting the Territories of *Israel*. But *David*, by whom God had wrought this victorie, fell into the grievous indignation of his Master *Saul*, through the honour purchased by his well-deserving. For after such time as the spirit of God departed from *Saul*, and came upon *David*, hee then became a cruell Tyrant, faithlesse, and irreligions. Because the high Priest *Ahimilech* fed *David* in his necessitie with hallowed bread, and armed him with a sword of his own conquest, taken from *Goliath*; *Saul* not only by his wicked *Edomite Doeg* murdered this *Ahimilech* and 85. Priests of *Nob*, but also he destroyed the Citie, and smote with the edge of the sword both man and woman, both child and suckling, both Oxe and Ass, and sheep. And he that had compassion on *Agag* the Amalekite, who was an enemy to God and his people, and also spared and preserved the best of his Cattell, contrary to the Commandement and Ordinance of God, both by *Moses* and *Samuel*, had not now any mercy in store for the innocent, for the Lords servants, the Priests of *Israel*. Yea, hee would have slain his own son *Jonathan*, for pitying and pleading *David*'s innocencie; as also once before for tasting the hony, when his fainting for cruelty made him forget his fathers unreasonable commination. The companions of cruelty are breach of faith towards men, and impiety towards God. The former hee shewed in denying *David* his daughter, whom he had promised him; and again in taking her away from him to whom he had given her: also in that when as *David* had twice spared his life in the Territory of *Ziph*, and *Saul* twice sworn to do him no hurt, and confessed his errors, yet he sought still to destroy him, by all the means he could. His impiety towards God he shewed, in that he sought counsell of the Witch of *Endor*, which was the last preparative for his destruction. For whereas when he sought counsell from God, he had bin alwaies victorious: from the Oracle of the Devil this successe followed, that both himself, and his three sons, with his nearest and faithful servants, were all slaughtered by the *Philistims*: his body with the bodies of his sons (as a spectacle of shame and dishonour) were hung over the walls of *Bethsan*; and there had remained till they had found buriall in the bowels of ravenous birds; had not the gratefull *Gileadites* of *Jabes* stolne their carcasses thence, and interred them. This was the end of *Saul*, after he had governed *Israel*, together with *Samuel*, 40. years, and by himself after *Samuel* 20. years, according to *Cedrenus*, *Theophilus* and *Iosephus*. But yet it seemeth to me, that after the death of *Samuel*, *Saul* did not rule very long: For in the beginning of the 25. chapter, it is written, that *Samuel* died; and in the rest of the same chapter the passages are written of *David*, 40. *Nabal*, and *Abigail*, after which the death of *Saul* quickly ensued.

An exceeding valiant man he was, and gave a fair entrance to all those victories which *David* afterward obtained: for he had beaten the *Ammonites* with their neighbouring Nations; crushed the *Syrians*, and their adherents; broken the strength of the *Amalekites*; and greatly wasted the power and pride of the *Philistims*.

## s. VI.

of such as lived with *Samuel* and *Saul*; of *Hellen*, and *Hercules*, and of their issues: upon occasion of the *Dores*, with the *Heracleidæ*, entering *Peloponnesus* about this time.

IN the second year of *Samuel*, according to *Eusebius*, was *David* born: after *Codoman*, later, and in the ninth year: after *Bunting* in the tenth. For *David*, faith hee, was thirtie years old when hee began to reigne: whence it followeth, that hee was born in the tenth of the fortie years, which are given to *Samuel* and *Saul*. About the eleventh year of *Samuel*, *Aeneas Silvius* the son of *Posthumus* began his reign over the Latines in *Alba*, who governed that State one and thirtie years. There are who place before him *Latinius Silvius*, as brother to *Posthumus*, calling him the fifth from

from *Aeneas*, and fourth King of *Alba*, wherof I will not stand to dispute. In the eleventh of *Samuel*, *Dercilas* sat in the Throne of *Assyria*, being the one and thirtieth King; he ruled that Empire forty years. In this age of *Samuel* the *Dores* obtained *Peloponnesus*, and at once with the *Heracleidæ*, who then led and commanded the Nation, possesse a great part thereof, 328. years before the first *Olympiad*, according to *Diodorus* and *Erastosthenes*. For all Greece was anciently possessed by three Tribes or Kindreds, viz: the *Ionians*, *Dorians*, and *Aolians*: at length it was called *Hellas*, and the people *Hellenes*, of *Hellen* the son of *Deucalion*, Lord of the Countrie of *Phthiotis* in *Thessaly*. But before the time of this *Hellen*, yea, and long after, Greece had no name common to all the Inhabitants, neither were the people called *Hellenes*, till such time as partly by trading in all parts of the Land, partly by the Plantation of many Colonies, and sundry great victories obtained, the issues of *Hellen* had reduced much of the Countrie under their obedience, calling themselves generally by one name, and yet every severall Nation after some one of the posteritie of *Hellen*, who had reigned over it. And because this is the farthest antiquitie of Greece, it will not be amisse to recount the Pedegree of her first planters.

*Lapetus* (as the poets fable) was the son of Heaven and Earth, so accounted, either because the names of his Parents had in the Greek tongue such signification: or perhaps for his knowledge in *Astronomie* and *Philosophie*.

*Lapetus* begat *Prometheus*, and *Ephimetheus*: of whom all men have read that have read Poets. *Prometheus* begat *Deucalion*; and *Epimetheus*, *Pyrrha*; *Deucalion* and his wife *Pyrrha* reigned in *Thessalie*, which was then called *Pyrrha* (as *Cretensis Rhianus* affirmeth) of *Pyrrha* the Queen. In *Deucalion*'s time was that great flood, of which wee have spoken else-where. *Deucalion* begat *Hellen*: whose sons were *Xuthus*, *Dorus*, and *Eolus*: of *Dorus* and *Eolus*, the *Dores* and *Aolians* had name. The *Aeoles* inhabited *Bæotia*. The *Dores* having first inhabited sundry parts of *Thessaly*, did afterward seat themselves about *Parnassus*, and finally became Lords of the Countries about *Lacedæmon*: *Xuthus* the eldest son of *Hellen*, being banished by his brethren, for having diverted from them to his own use some part of their Fathers goods, came to *Athens*: where marrying the Daughter of King *Erichtheus*, he begat on her two sons, *Acheus* and *Ion*. Of these two, *Acheus*, for a slaughter by him committed, fled into *Peloponnesus*: and seating himself in *Laconia*, gave name to that region: from whence (as some write) he afterwards departed; and levying an Armie, recovered the Kingdome of his Grandfather in *Thessalie*.

*Ion* being General for the *Athenians* when *Eumolpus* the *Thracian* invaded *Attica*, did obtain a great victorie, and thereby such love and honour of the people, that they committed the ordering of their State into his hands. Hee divided the Citizens into Tribes, appointing every one to some occupation, or good course of life. When the people multiplied, he planted Colonies in *Sycionia*, then called *Aegialos* or *Aegialia*: In which Countrie *Solinus* then reigning, thought it safer to give his Daughter *Helice* in marriage to *Ion*, and make him his Heir, than to contend with him. So *Ion* married *Helice*, and built a Town called by his Wives name in *Aegialia*, where he and his posteritie reigned long, and (though not obliterating the old name) gave to that Land denomination. But in after-times the *Dores* assisting the Nephewes of *Hercules*, invaded *Peloponnesus*, and overcoming the *Acheans*, possessed *Laconia*, and all those parts which the *Achei* had formerly occupied. Hereupon the *Achei* driven to seek a new seat, came unto the *Ionnes*, desiring to inhabit *Aegialia* with them, and alleged in vain, that *Ion* and *Acheus* had been brethren. When this request could not be obtained, they fought by force to expell the *Ionians*, which they performed; but they lost their King *Tismenes*, the son of *Orestes*, in that War.

Thus were the *Ionnes* driven out of *Peloponnesus*, and compelled to remove into *Attica*, from whence after a while they sailed into *Asia*, and peopled the Western coast thereof; on which they built twelve Cities, inhabited by them, even to this day, at the least without any universall or memorable transmigration. This expedition of the *Ionnes* into *Asia* hath been mentioned of all which have written of that Age, and is commonly placed 140. years after the warre of *Troy*, and 60. years after the descent of the *Heracleidæ* into *Peloponnesus*. These *Heracleidæ* were they of whom the Kings of *Sparta* issued; which race held that Kingdome about 700. years. Of their Father



of *Thesaly*. For my selfe, I am not much troubled when this Poet lived; neither would I offend the Reader with these opinions, but only to shew the uncertainty, and disagreement of Historians, as well in this particular, as in all other questions and dispute of time. For, the curiositie of this mans age is no lesse ridiculous, than the inquisition why he began his *Iliads* with the word *Menin*, as perhaps containing some great myserie. In derision whereof *Lucian* feigning himself to have been in Hell, and to have spoken with *Homer*, there asked him the cause why he began his book with that word: who answered, That he began in that sort, because it came in his head so to doe.

It seemeth that *Senyes*, or, after *Macrobins*, *Senemires* ruled *Egypt* at this time: for *Tanpherisobris* was his successeur, who preceded *Vaphres*, father in law to *Solomon*.

Enrich. & Coll.  
in Chron.

About the end of *Sauls* government, or in the beginning of *Dauids* time, according to *Castiodorus*, the *Amazones* with the *Cymmerians* invaded *Asia*, *Latinus Sylvius* then ruling in *Italy*. And besides the overthrow of that famous state of *Troy* (which fell 103 years before *Dauids* time) there were many other changes in the middle part of the world, not only by reason of those Northern Nations: but there sprung up somewhat neerly together, six Kingdomes into greatneesse, not before erected. In *Italy* that of the *Latines*: in the South part of *Greece*, those of *Lacedaemon*, *Corinth*, and the *Achai*. In *Arabia*, *Syria*, *Soba*, and *Damascus*, the *Adads* made themselves Princes, of which there were ten Kings, which began and ended with the Kings of *Israel* in effect: and somewhat before these, the State of the *Israelites* having now altered the forme of government, began to flourish under Kings, of which *David*, in a few years, became master of all those neighbouring Nations, who by enterchange of times had subjected the *Judeans*, corrupted their religion, and held them under in a most abject and and grievous slavery; to wit, the *Edu-mauns*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, *Itureans*, and the rest of the *Arabians*, with the *Philistims*, *Jebeusites*, *Geshurites*, *Machathites*; all which acknowledged *David* for their Sovereigne Lord, and paid him tribute.

## CHAP. XVII. OF DAVID.

S. I.

of *Dauids* estate in the time of *Saul*.



He hazards which *David* ran into while he was yet onely designed King, and lived as a private man, expecting the Empire, were very many. The first personall act of fame, was his killing of *Goliath* in the view of both armies, whereby he became known to *Saul*, and so highly affected of *Jonathan* the sonne of *Saul*, that he loved him as his own soul: Inasmuch as when *Saul* sought to perswade his sonne that *David* would assuredly be the ruine of his house, and estate, and offered him violence when he pleaded his cause; *Jonathan* could never be perswaded, never forc'd, nor ever wearied from the care of *Dauids* life, and well doing. It was not long after this signall act of *David*, but that *Saul* became exceeding jealous of him, though he were become as his household servant, and his Elquire, or Armor-bearer. *Saul* being vexed with an evill spirit, was adviced to procure some cunning Musician to play before him upon the Harp, whereby it was thought that he might find ease; which came to passe accordingly. He entertained *David* for this purpose, and began to favour him, giving him a place of Command among the men of warre. But the jealous Tyrant soon waxed wearie of his good affection, and sought to kill *David*, being thereunto moved onely through envie of his vertue. This passion first brake forth in the midst of his raving fit, at which time he threw a spear at *David* that was then playing on his Harp to do him ease.

Enrich. & Coll.  
in Chron.

*Consortinus* remembreth one *Asclepius* a Physician, who practised the curing of the Frenzie, by the like Musick: and tempered thereby those diseases which grew from passion. That *Pythagoras* did also the like by such a kind of harmony, *Seneca* in his third book of Anger witnesseth. But the madnesse of *Saul* came from the cause of causes:

and was thereby incurable, howsoever it sometimes left him, and yeelded unto that Musick, which God had ordained to be a mean of more good to the Musician than up to the King.

*Saul* having failed in such open attempts, gave unto *David* the command over 1000 souldiers to confront the *Philistims* withall. For he durst not trust him as before, about his person, fearing his revenge. Now the better to cover his hatred towards him, hee promised him his daughter *Merab* to wife: but having married her to *Adriel*, hee gave to *David* his younger daughter *Micbol*, but with a condition, to present him with an hundred foreskins of the *Philistims*: hoping rather (in respect of the valour of that Nation) that the *Philistims* would take *Dauids* head, than hee their foreskins. This hope failing, when as now *Dauids* victories begat new fears and jealousies in *Saul*, hee hope failing, when as now *Dauids* victories begat new fears and jealousies in *Saul*, hee purposed were still frustrated. After all this he sought to murder him in his own house, but *Micbol* his wife delivered him. So *David* sought *Samuel* at *Ramah*, and being pursued by *Saul*, hee thence unto *Nob* in *Benjamin*, to *Abimelech*, then to *Achis* the *Philistim*, Prince of *Geth*: where to obscure himselfe, he was forc'd to counterfeite both plinie and distraction. But being ill assured among the *Philistims*, he covered himselfe in the Cave of *Adullam*: and after conveyinge such of his kinsfolks as were not fit to follow him, into *Maab*, he hid himself in the deserts of *Ziph*, *Maon*, and the hills of *Engad*: where he cut off the lap of *Sauls* garment, and spared his life: as he did a second time to *Achis* of *Geth* the second time, and was kindly entertained, in regard of the hatred with which his master *Saul* was known to persecute him.

Of *Achis* *David* obtained \* *Siglag* in *Simcon*, pretending to invade *Judea*: but he bent his forces another way, and strook the *Amalekites*, with other enemies of *Israel*, letting them live to complain upon him. *Achis* supposing that *David* had drawn bloud of his own Nation, thought himself assured of him: and therefore preparing to invade *Issachar*, summoneth *David* to assist him, who dissembling his intent, seemeth very willing thereto. But the rest of the *Philistim* Princes knowing his valour, and doubting his disposition, liked not his company, and therefore he withdrew himself to *Siglag*. At his return he found the town burnt, his two wives, with the wives and children of his people, taken by the *Amalekites*: Hereupon his followers mutined, but God gave him comfort, and assurance to recover all again: which he did.

This armie of the *Philistims* commanded by *Achis*, encountered *Saul* at *Gilboa*, in which he and his three sons were slain. The newes, with *Sauls* Crown and bracelets, were brought to *David* at *Siglag*, in his return from being victorious over *Amaleck*, by a man of the same Nation, who avowed (though falsely; that himself at *Sauls* request had slain him. *David*, because he had accused himself, made no scruple to cause him to be slain at the instant: and the sooner, because the probabilities gave strong evidence withall. Otherwise it followeth not that every man ought to be believed of himself to his own prejudice. For it is held in the law; *Confessione eorum non habenda est pro explorato crimine, nisi approbatio alia instruit religionem cognoscens*. The prisoners confession must not be taken for an evidence of the crime, unlesse some other proof inform the conscience of the Judge. For a man may confesse those things of himself, that the Judge by examination may know to be impossible. But because it is otherwise determined in the title de custodia eorum l. si confessus, & in cap. de parnis l. qui sententiam, therefore doth the Glossie reconcile these two places in this sort: *Si quis in iudicio sponte de seipso confiteatur, & postea maneat in confessione, id est satis. If any man in judgement do confesse of himself, of his own accord, and after doth persevere in his confession, it is enough.* That *David* greatly bewailed *Saul*, it is not improbable; for death cutteth asunder all competition: and the lamentable end that befell him being a King, with whom in effect the strength of *Israel* also fell, could not but stirre up sorrow, and move compassion in the heart of *David*.

The victorie which the *Philistims* had gotten, was so great, that some Towns of the *Israhelites*, even beyond the river of *Jordan*, were abandoned by the Inhabitants, and left unto the enemy, who took possession of them without any resistance made. Wherefore it may seem strange that a nation so warlike and ambitious as were the *Philistims*, did not follow their fortune with all diligence, and seek to make the Conquest entire.

Most

Most like it seems, that the civil war immediately breaking out between David and the House of Saul, wherein Judah was divided from the rest of Israel, gave them hope of an easie victory over both; and thereby caused them to attempt nothing at the present, lest by so doing they should enforce their disagreeing enemies to a necessary reconciliation; but rather to permit that the one part should continue the other; by which means both the victors, and the vanquished, would become a prey to the violence of such as had beaten them, when their forces were united.

Of the beginning of Davids reign, and the war made by Abner for Ishboeth.

After the death of Saul, Abner, who commanded for Saul in the warre, sought to advance Ishboeth (or Iseboeth, according to Josephus) though he had no right to the Kingdom of Israel, for Ishboeth the first son of Jonathan lived. Against this Abner and Ishboeth, David made a defensive war; till Abner past Jordan, and entered the border of Judah; at which time he sent Joab with such forces as he had, to resist Abner. Ishboeth remaining in Gilead, and David in Hebron. The armies encountered each other near Gibeon, where it seemeth that Abner made the offer to trie the quarrell by the hands of a few; like to that combat between the Lacedemonians and the Argives, remembered by Herodorus, 360. being chosen of each Nation, of which number three persons were only left unslain. The like tryall by a farre lesse number was performed by the Horatii and Curiatii, for the Romans and Latines. The same challenge Goliath the Philistin made, whom David slew: a custome very antient. Edward the third offered the like tryall in his own person to the French King; and Francis the French King to Charles the Emperour. There were twelve chosen of each part, in this war of David with the house of Saul, to wit, so many of Benjamin, and as many of Judah: whose force and valour was so equal, as there survived not any one to challenge the victory. But the quarrell staid not here; for the Army of Judah prest Abner in gresse, and brake him. Three hundred and sixty men of Abners companions were slain, and but twenty of Judah, whereof Ishboeth the brother of Joab was one: who when he would needs pursue Abner, and by Abners perswasions could not be moved to quit him, he was forced to turn upon him, wounded him to death with the stroke of his spear. For though Ishboeth was an excellent foot-man, and, as it is written in the Text, as light as a wild Roe, and, as Josephus reporteth, contended not only with men, but with horses; and hoped to have gotten great fame if he could have mastered Abner: (who, as Ishboeth perswaded himself, had by being overthrown, and flying away, lost his courage) yet here it fell out true, That the race is not to the swift.

That this civil warre lasted two years, we find it written in the second of Samuel, the second Chapter; though in the beginning of the third it is again made probable, that this contention lasted longer; and therefore the matter resteth still in dispute, and some of the Rabbines conceive that Ishboeth had then reigned two years, when this was written, the Warre as yet continuing a longer time. For Abner held for the party of Ishboeth after this, and till such time as there grew jealousy between him and Ishboeth for Saus Concubine: neither did the death of Ishboeth instantly follow; but how long after the murder of Abner it happened, the same doth not certainly appear.

### §. III.

Of the death of Abner slain by Joab, and of Ishboeth by Rechab and Baanah.

Abner, reconciled to David, was anon by Joab murdered; for Joab could not endure a companion in Davids Favour, and in the commandment of his forces; by which he was grown so powerful, as David forbore to call him to account: for thus much he confesseth of himself, I am this day weak, and these men, the Jones of Zerviah, be too hard for me. In this sort David complained after Abners death; and to make it clear that he hated this fact of Joab, he followed him with this publique imprecation; Let the blood fall on the head of Joab, and on all his fathers house: and let them

be subject to ulcers, to the leprosy, to lameness, to the sword, and to poverty, &c. For could any thing have withstood the ordinance of God, this murder committed by Joab might greatly have endangered Davids estate, Abner being the mouth and trust of all the rest of the Tribes, not yet reconciled. This mischance therefore David openly bewailed, so that all Israel perceived him to be innocent of that fact. The place which Abner held, being generall of the men of warre, was of such importance, that the Kings themselves were faine to give them great respect, as hath been already shewed more at large. This office Joab held in the army of Judah, and thought himself worthy to hold the place entire, if once his Lord might obtain the whole Kingdom. For he was neer to David in kindred, and had been partaker of all his adversitie; wherefore hee did not think it meet, that an old enemy should in reward of new benefits, be made his partner. Indeed he was by nature so jealous of his dignitie and place, that he afterward slew Amasa his own kinsman, and the Kings, upon the same quarrell, taking it in high disdain to see him joyned with himself as captain of the hoste of Judah; much lesse could hee brooke a superiour; and such a one as had slain his brother, and been beaten himself in battell. But howsoever Joab did hate or despise Abner, David esteemed highly of him as of a Prince, and a great man in Israel, excusing the oversight by which he might seem to have perished, by affirming that he died not like a fool, nor a man vanquished, But as a man slain before wicked men, so (saith he) diddest thou fall. And certainly it is no error of wit, nor want of valour & vertue in him, whom a stronger hand destroyeth unawares, or whom subtilty in free trust bringeth to confusion. For all under the sun are subject to worldly miseries and misadventures. Howsoever Ishboeth meant to have dealt with Abner, yet when he heard of his death, he despaired greatly of his estate, and with him all Israel were possessed with great fear: in so much as two of Ishboeths own Captains, Rechab and Baanah, murdered Ishboeth, and presenting his head to David, received the same reward that the Amalekite lately did, for pretending to have slain Saul. Ishboeth being dead, all the Elders of Israel repaired to David at Hebron, where he was the third and last time annointed by generall consent.

### §. IV.

Of the flourishing time of Davids Kingdom, the taking of Jerusalem, with two overthrowes given to the Philistines, and the conduction of the Ark to the City of David.

When David was now established in the Kingdom, his first enterprize was upon the Jebusites, who in derision of his force, and confident in the strength of the place (as is thought) manned their walls with the blind and lame of their Citie; which David soon after entered, all their other forces notwithstanding. For having mastered the fort of Zion (which was afterward the Citie of David) he became Lord of Hierusalem, without any great danger, expelling thence the Jebusites, who had held it from the foundation, to the times of Moses and Joshua, and after them almost 400 years. There are who expound this place otherwise: Except thou take away the blind and the lame, thou shalt not come in hither. For some think that it was meant by the Idols of the Jebusites: others, that it had reference to the Covenant made long before with Isaac, and Jacob: the one blind by nature and age, the other made lame by wrestling with the Angel, and that therefore till those (that is, till that Covenant) be broken, David ought not to molest them. But for my self, I take it with Josephus, that they armed their walls with certain impotent people at first, in scorn of Davids attempt. For they that had held their Citie about 400. years against all the children of Israel, Joshua, the Judges, and Saul, did not doubt but to defend it also against David.

When he had now possessed himself of the very heart and Center of the Kingdom, and received congratulatory Embassadours and presents from Hiram King of Tyre: he entertained divers other concubines, and married more wives, by whom he had ten sons in Jerusalem, and by his former wives, he had six in Hebron where he reigned 7 years.

The Philistines hearing that David was now annointed King, as wel of Judah as of Israel, they thought to try him in the beginning, before he was fully warm in his seat. And being encountered by David at two severall times in the Valley of Rephaim, or of the Giants; they were at both times overthrown. After which he called the place Baalperazin.

Then David assembled 30000. choice Israelites to conduct the Ark of God from the



house of *Abinadab* in *Gibea* to the Citie of *David*; which businesse was interrupted by the death of *Mazab* the son of *Abinadab*, whom the Lord slew for presuming to touch the *Ark*, though it were with intent to stay it from taking harm, when it was taken. But after three years it was with great solemnity brought into the Citie with sacrifices, musick, dances, and all signs of joyfulness, in which *David* himself gladly bare a part. Hereupon *Michol* derided him for dancing before the *Ark*, and afterward told him in scorn, *That he was uncovered as a fool in the eyes of the maidens his servants*; namely, that he forgot his regall dignity both in apparell and behaviour; and mixed himself among the base multitude, dancing as fools doe in the wayes and streets: not that she disliked *David's* behaviour (as I take it) though she made it the colour of her derision; but rather the abundant griefe, which this spectacle stirred up, beholding the glory of her husband to whom she was delivered lastly by force, and remembering the miserable end of her father and brethren, out of whose ruines she conceived that the son of *Isbah* had built this his greatnesse: together with the many new wives and concubines embraced since his possession of *Jerusalem*, made her break out in those despitfull teares, for which she remained barren to her death.

1 Chro. c. 3.

This done, *David* consulted with the Prophet *Nathan* for the building of the Temple or house of God: but was forbidden it, because he was a man of warre, and had shed blood. So greatly doth the Lord and King of all detest homicide; having threatned, not in vain, that he would require the blood of a man, at the hand of man and beast. The wars which *David* had made were just, and the blood therein shed was of the enemies of God, and his Church: yet for this cause it was not permitted that his hands should lay the foundation of that holy Temple. Hereby it appears how greatly those Princes deceive themselves, who think by blood-shed and terrour of their wars, to make themselves in greatnesse like to the Almighty, which is a damnable pride; not caring to imitate his mercy and goodnesse, or seek the blessednesse promised by our Saviour unto the peace-makers.

Now although it was not pleasing to the Lord to accept a Temple of *David's* founding, yet was his religious intent so well accepted, that hereupon he received both a confirmation of the Kingdom to him and his heirs, and that happy promise of the everlasting Throne, that should be established in his seed.

S. V.

The overthrow of the Philistims and Moabites.

2 Sam. 8. v. 1.

Soon after this *David* overthrew the *Philistims*, which made them altogether powerlessse, and unable to make any invasion upon *Israel* in haste. For it is written, *Acceptit framm Amgaris à manu Philistheorum*; which place our English *Geneva* converts in these words, And *David* took the bridle of bondage out of the hand of the *Philistims*. The Latin of *Junius* giveth another and a better sense; for by that bridle of *Amgar* was meant the strong Citie of *Gath*, or *Geth*, and so the *Geneva* hath it in the marginall note. This Citie of *Gath* was the same which was afterward *Dio-Cesarea*, set on the frontier of *Palestina*, at the entrance into *Judaea* and *Ephraim*. From thence they made their incursions, and therinto their retreat in all their invasions; which being taken by *David* and demolished, there was left no such frontier town of equall strength to the *Philistims* on that part. The hill whereon *Geth* or *Gath* stood, the Hebrews call *Amma*, whereof and of the word *Gar* is made *Amgar*, of which *Pliny* in his first book, and chap. 13. This exposition is made plain, and confirmed in the first of *Chro.* the 18.

Junius in c. 8. of the 2. of Sam.

There was no nation bordering the *Jewes* that so greatly afflicted them as the *Philistims* did, who before the time of *Saul*, (to the end they might not sharpen any weapon against them) did not leave one Smith in all their Cities and Villages of that kind, but inforced them to come down into their territories, for all yron work whatsoever they needed; so as the *Israelites* till this time of *David*, were seldom free from paying tribute to the *Philistims*.

1 Sam. 13.

After this he gave them four other overthrows: but the war of the *Moabites* and *Arabians* came between. In the first of which he was indangered by *Isbah-benob*, the head of whose spear weighed 300. shekles of brasse, which make nine pound three quarters of our poizes: at which time *Abishai* succoured *David*, and slew the *Philistim*, whereupon the

the Countessours and Captains of *David* (left the light of *Israel* might by his losse be quenched) vowed that he should not thenceforth hazard himself in any battell. The 2 Sam. 21. v. 17. second and third encounter and overthrow of the *Philistims* was at *Gob*, a place neer *Gesar*, and the last at *Gath* or *Geth*. And being now better assured of the *Philistims*: by the taking of *Geth*, he invaded *Moab*, from whom notwithstanding in his adversity hee sought succour, and left his parents with him in trust. But whether it were the same King or no, it is not known.

The *Rabbins* feign that *Moab* slew those kinsfolkes of *David*, which lived under his protection in *Saul's* time; but questionlesse *David* well knew how that Nation had been 10 alwayes enemies to *Israel*, and took all the occasions to vex them that were offered. And he also remembered that in the 23. of *Deut.* God commanded *Israel* not to seek the peace or prosperity of the *Moabites*; which *David* well observed, for he destroyed two parts of the people, leaving a third to till the ground. This victory obtained, he led his army by the border of *Ammon* toward *Syria Zobah*, the region of *Adadazer* the son of *Rehob* King thereof. The place is set down in the description of the holy Land: to which I referre the Reader.

S. VI.

The warre which David made upon the Syrians.

It is written in the Text: *David smote also Hadadazer, &c. as hee went to recover his border as the river Euphrates*. Now whether the words (as he went to recover his border) be referred to *David* or *Hadadazer*, it is not agreed upon. *Junius* thinks that the article (hee) hath relation to *David*, who finding *Tobu* opprest by *Hadadazer*, overthrew the one, and succoured the other. But the ancient and most received opinion, that this recovery hath reference to the Syrian, is more probable. For if *David* had intended any such enterprize towards *Euphrates*, hee was in farre 30 better case to have proceeded after his victory than before: seeing that (*Adadazer* being taken) hee had now left no enemy on his back, either to pursue him, to take victuals and supplies from him, or to stop the passages of the mountains upon him at his return.

Again, seeing *David* was either to passe through a part of *Arabia* the desert, or by the plains of *Palmyrena*, his army consisting of footmen, for the most, if not all: Hee had now both horse and chariots good store to carry his provisions through those uncultivated places, by which hee was to have marched before hee could have reached *Euphrates*, or any part thereof. But we find that *David* returned to *Jerusalem*, after hee had twice overthrown the Syrian army, not bending his course towards the river 40 *Euphrates*, but seeking to establish his purchases already made. Whereby it may appear, that it was the Syrian, and not king *David*, that was going to enlarge his border, as afore is said.

The King of *Syria*, *Damascena*, and of *Damascus*, whereof that region is so called, hearing that *Adadazer* was overthrown by the *Israelites*, fearing his own estate, and the loss of his own country which adjoined to *Syria Zoba* of *Hadadazer*, sent for an Army of *Aramites* or *Syrians* to his succour: but these, as it appeareth, came too late for *Adadazer*, and too soon for themselves: for there perished of those supplies 22000. This King of *Damascus*, *Josephus*, (out of *Nicholans* an ancient Historian) calleth *Adad*, who was also of the same name and family as also those other *Adads* were: which now began to grow up in greatnesse, and so continued for ten descents, till they were extinguished by the *Af- 50* *Syrians*, as is shewed heretofore. *David* having now reduced *Damascus* under his obedience, left a garrison therein, as he did in *Edom*: having also sackt the adjoining Cities of *Beth* & *Berathi*, belonging to *Adadazer*, of which Cities *Ptolomie* calleth *Beth*, *Tauba*: and *Berathi* he nameth *Barathena*, *Tobu* or *Thoi*, whose country of *Hama*th joyned to *Adadazer* (as in the description of the holy Land the Reader may perceive) sent his son *Foram* to congratulate this successe of *David*: partly because he had war with *Adadazer*, & partly because he feared *David* now victorious. He also presented *David* with vessels of gold, silver, and brasse, all which, together with the golden shields of the *Aramites*, and the

2 Sam. 8.

the best of all the spoiles of other Nations, *David* dedicated unto God at his return. *Funius* translated the words (*Clypeos aureos*) by *umbones*, as if all the parts of the targets were not of gold, but the bosses only. The *Septuagint* call them bracelets: *Aquila*, golden chains. But because *Roboam* made shields of brass in place of these of *Adadazer*, at such time as *Shicab* the Egyptian sack'd the Temple of *Ferusalem*, it may be gathered thereby that those of *Adadazer* were golden shields.

1 SAM. 1.

*Maschab* the North part of *Tracomis* remembered in *Deut. 3. 14.* *Ishob* or *Thob* a country near *Gad* under the rocks of *Armon*. 2 SAM. 10.

This done, *David* sent Embassadors unto *Hanum* King of the *Ammonites*, to congratulate his establishment in his fathers Kingdom: for *David*, in the time of his affliction under *Saul*, had been relieved by *Nahash*, the father of *Hanum*. But this *Ammonite* being ill advised, and over-jealous of his estate, used *David's* messengers so barbarously, and contemptuously (by curtailing their beards, and their garments) as hee thereby drew a warre upon himself, which neither his own strength, nor all the aydes purchased, could put off or sustain. For notwithstanding that hee had waged three and thirtie thousand Souldiers of the *Amalekites*, and their confederates; to wit, of the fallalls of *Adadazer* twenty thousand, and of *Maschab* and *Ishob* thirteen thousand (for which hee disbursed a thousand talents of silver) yet all these great Armies, together with the strength of the *Ammonites*, were by *Joab* and his brother *Abishai* easily broken and put to ruine: and that without any great losse or slaughter at that time. And it is written, that when the *Aramites* fled, the *Ammonites* also retreated into their Cities, the one holding themselves within the walls, the other in their desarts adjoining, till *Joab* was returned to *Ferusalem*.

*Helam* or *Chelem* which *Ptolemy* calleth *Atlamatha* near the fountains of *Euphrates*. 2 SAM. 10.

\* See 2. 18. 5.

*Hadadazer* hearing that *Joab* had dismissed his Armie, assembled his forces again, and sent all the Companies that hee could levie out of *Mesopotamia*; who under the command of *Shobach* passed *Euphrates*, and incamped at *Helam*, on the South side thereof. *David* hearing of this new preparation, assembled all the ablest men of *Israel*, and marched toward the Syrian Armie in *Palmyrena*, not yet entered into *Arach*, and to wit, at *Helam*, a place no lesse distant from *Damascus*, towards the North-east, than *Ferusalem* was towards the Southwest. Now *David* (speaking humanely) might with the more confidence goe on towards *Euphrates* (which was the far-30 thest-off journey that ever he had) because hee was now Lord of *Damascus*, which lay in the midway. Hee also posselt himself of \* *Thadmor* or *Palmyrena*, which *Salomon* afterward strongly fortified; and this Citie was but one dayes journey from *Helam*, and the river *Euphrates*. So had hee two safe retreats, the one to *Thadmor*, and the next from thence to *Damascus*. In this encounter between *David* and the *Syrians*, they lost 40000. horsemen, and 700. chariots, together with *Shobach* General of their Armie. The *Chronicles* call these 40000. Souldiers, footmen, and so *Funius* converts it, and so is it very probable. For the Armie of *Israel* consisting of footmen, could hardly have slaughtered 40000. horsemen, except they quitted their horse and fought on foot. So are the chariots taken in this battell, numbered 40 at 7000. in the first of *Chronicles* the ninth; in which number, as I conceive, all the Souldiers that served in them, with the conductors, are included: so are these dyed of the *Syrians* in this warre against *David*, before hee forc'd them to tribute, 100000. footmen, besides all their horsemen and waggoners, and besides all those that *Joab* slew, when they fled at the first encounter, together with the *Ammonites*, before *Rabbah*. Notwithstanding all which, the *Adads* in following ages gathered strength again, and afflicted the Kings of *Juda* often: but the Kings of *Israel* they impoverished even to the last end of that State.

*David* having now beaten the *Arabs* and *Mesopotamians*, from the partie and confederacy of *Ammon*: He sent out *Joab* the Lieutenant of his Armies to forrage and destroy their territorie, and to besiege *Rabbah*, afterward *Philadelphia*, which after a while the *Israelites* mastered and posselt. The Kings Crown which weighed a talent of gold, garnished with precious stones, *David* set on his own head, and carried away with him the rest of the riches and spoile of the Citie. And though *David* stayed at *Ferusalem*, following the war of *Uriah* his wife, till such time as the Citie was brought to extremity, and ready to be entered: yet *Joab* in honour of *David* forbore the last assault, & entrance thereof, till his masters arrivall. To the people hee used extreme rigour (if wee may so call it being exercised against heathen Idolaters,) for some of them hee tare with har-

FOUR

rowes, some hee sawed asunder, others hee cast into burning kills, in which hee baked tyle and brick.

## S. VII.

Of *David's* troubles in his reigne, and of his forces.

10 **B**UT as victory begetteth securitie, and our present worldly felicity a forgetfulness of our former miseries, and many times of God himself the giver of all goodnesse; so did these changes, in the fortune and state of this good King, change also the zealous care which formerly hee had to please God in the precise observation of his Lawes and Commandements: For having now no dangerous apparent enemy (against whom hee was wont to ask counsell from the Lord) hee began to be advised by his own humane affections and vain desires: For hee was not only satisfied to take *Uriah's* wife from him, and to use her by stealth; but hee imbrodered his adultery with *Uriah's* slaughter, giving order to his trustie servant *Joab* to 2 SAM. 22. 15. marshall him in the front or point of those *Israelites*, which gave an assault upon the suburbs of *Rabbah*, when there was not as yet any possibilitie of prevailing. And that 10 which could no lesse displease God than the rest, hee was content that many others of his best servants and souldiers should perish together with *Uriah*, hoping thereby to cover his particular ill intent against him. After which hee began by degrees to fall from the height of happinesse, and his dayes then to come were filled with joyes and woes interchangeable, his troden-down sorrows began again to spring, and those perils which he had pulled up by the roots (as hee hoped) gave him an after-harvest of many cares and discontentments. And if he had pleased GOD to take the witness of *David's* own mouth against him, as *David* himself did against the *Amalekites*, which pretended to have slain *Saul*, he had then appeared as worthy of reprehension as the other was of the death hee suffered. For when *Nathan* the Prophet propounded unto him his 30 own error in the person of another, to wit, of him that took the poor mans sheep that had none else, the bereaver being Lord of many, Hee then vowed it to the living Lord, that such a one should die the death. And hereof, although it pleased God to pardon *David* for his life, which remission the Prophet *Nathan* pronounced; yet hee delivered him Gods justice together with his mercy in the tenour following; Now therefore the sword shall never depart from thy house, &c. because thou hast taken his wife to be thy wife, & hast slain *Uriah* with the sword of the children of *Ammon*. Soon after this, *David* lost the child of adulterie which he begot on *Bersheba*. Secondly, his own son *Amnon*, being in love with his half sister *Thamar*, by the advice of his cousin-german the sonne of *Shimeah* *David's* brother, posselt her by force: which when hee had performed, 40 he thrust her from him in a carelesse and despitefull manner. Two years after which foul and incestuous act, *Abalom* caused him to be murdered, at the feast of his sheepshearing: not perchance in revenge of *Thamars* ravishment alone; but having it in his heart to usurp the Kingdom, in which, because he could not in any sort be assured of *Ammon*, he thought his affairs greatly advanced by his destruction. So the one brother having ravished his own sister, and then despised her; the other after a long dissembled malice first made his own brother drunken, and then slaughtered him, which done, he fled away, and lived under the safeguard of *Talmai* King of *Gessur*, near *Damascus*, who was his grandfather by the mother, but a heathen King. Thirdly, when *Abalom* by the invention of *Joab* (but chiefly because of the great affection of *David* towards his sonne) was brought again, first to the Kings favour, and then to his pre- 50 sence; he began instantly to practise against *David* his father, seeking by the pretence of common justice, and by lowly and familiar manner to all men, and by detracting from his fathers equitie, to win unto himself a popular reputation. Here began the great affliction, threatened by the Lord as a punishment of *David's* sinne.

The company which *Abalom* gathered at the first were but 200. men: which he carried with him from *Ferusalem* to *Hebron*, pretending, though impiously, the performance of a vow to God. There when *Achitophel* repaired unto him, and many troops of people

people from all places, he proclaimed himself King, & was by the people (whose hearts God had turned from their lawfull Prince) accepted to readily, that *David* doubting to be set upon on the sudden, durst not trust himself in his own Citie of *Jerusalem*, nor in any other walled town for fear of surprize: but incamped in the fields and deserts with some 600. of his guard, and few else. The Priests hee left in *Jerusalem* with the Ark of God, from whom he desired to be advertised of those things that chanced; to whom he directed *Hushai* his trustie friend, and servant, praying him to make himself in all his outward actions and counsellis of *Abisalom*'s party and confederacy, thereby the better to discover unto him the purposes of *Achitophel*, a revolting Counsellour, whose practices be greatly doubted. And now when treason was in fashion, *Ziba* also fought to betray his master *Mephiboseth* the son of *Jonathan*: And *Shimei* of the house of *Saul* (the fire of whose hatred *David*'s prosperity had smothered, but his adversity illightned) holding himself upon the advantage of a mountain side, cast stones at *David*, and most despitefully cursed him to his face: but *David* attending no private revenges, forbade *Abishai* to pursue him for the present, yet left him among others in the roll of his revenge, to his sonne *Salomon*. *Abisalom* being now possesse of *Jerusalem*, was advised by *Achitophel* to use his fathers concubines in some such publique place, as all *Israel* might assure themselves, that he was irreconcilable to his father: whereof being perswaded, they would then resolutely adhere to *Abisalom* and his cause. Without fear of being given up upon a reconciliation between them. This salvage and impious (though crafty counsell) *Achitophel* indeed urged for his own respect, as fearing that this rebellion might take end to his destruction, who most of all other inflamed *Abisalom* against his father. And now was it fulfilled that *Nathan* had directly foretold *David*: *I will raise up evil against thee out of thine own house, and will take thy wives before thine eyes, and give them unto thy neighbour, and he shall lye with thy wives in the sight of the Sunne: for thou diddest it secretly, but I will doe this thing before all Israel, and before the Sunne*. He also gave advice to *Abisalom*, that himself with an armie of 12000. men might be employed at the instant for the surprizing of *David*, which had willingly been embraced by *Abisalom*, had not *Hushai David*'s faithfull servant given counter-advice, and swayed it: perswading *Abisalom* that it was fitter and more safe for him with all the strength of *Israel* to pursue his father, than by such a troop, which *David*'s valour and those of his attendants might either indanger or resist. This delay in *Abisalom*, and advantage of time gained by *David*, was indeed, after God, the losse of the one, and delivery of the other. Whereupon *Achitophel* rightly fearing (by the occasion fore-shewed) the successe which followed, disposed of his own estate, and then forsook both the party and the care of *Abisalom*, and of his own life.

*David* being advertised of this enterprize against him, marched away all night, and past *Jordan*, possessing himself of *Mahanaim* in the Tribe of *Gad*: the same wherein *Isoboth* himself in the war against *David* after *Saul*'s death seated himself. To which place there repaired unto him *Shobi* the son of *Nahash* the *Ammonite*, whom *David* loved, the same which *Iosephus* calleth *Shiphar*. And though it be greatly disputed, what this *Shobi* was, yet the most generall and probable opinion makes him a second brother to *Hanum*, whom *David* for his fathers sake established in the Kingdome, after *Hannus* overthrow: in thankfulness whereof hee relieved *David* in this his extremity. There came also to *David*'s assistance *Machir* of *Lodabar*, Guardian in former times to *Mephiboseth*, and among others *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, who willingly fed *David* and all his company.

In the mean time both the King and *Abisalom* prepared to fight; *Abisalom* made *Amasa* Commander of the armie of *Israel*, the same place which *Joab* held with *David*; an office next the King himself, like unto that of the Maiors of the Palace anciently in *France*. *David*, perswaded by his company, stayed in *Mahanaim*, & disposed the forces he had to *Joab*, *Abishai*, and *Ittai*, giving them charge in the hearing of all that issued out of the port of *Mahanaim*, that they should spare the life of *Abisalom*. But *Joab*, besides that he was very cruell by nature, remembered that *Abisalom* had lately disposed of his government to *Amasa*, and therefore the victory being obtained, and news brought him that *Abisalom* hung by the hair of his head on a tree, when he could not perswade the messenger to return and kill him, hee himself with his own servants dispatcht him:

It

It appeared also by the sequell that *Joab* affected *Adonijah* whom he afterward acknowledged, *David* yet living; and fearing the disposition of *Abisalom*, he embraced the present advantage offered.

Hereof, together with news of the victorie, when knowledge was brought to *David*, hee mourned and sorrowed, not only as a man that had lost a sonne, but as one that had out-lived all his worldly joyes, and seen every delight of life interred. For hee so hid himself from his people, as those which hoped for honour and reward after so great a victorie, covered themselves also in the citie, as if they had committed the greatest offences, and had rather deserved death than recompence. Whereupon *Joab* presenting himself before *David*, perswaded him to dissemble his sorrow for the present, and to shew himself to the armie. For first, he told him that he had discountenanced his faithfull servants, who had that day preserved his life; inferring that nothing could be more dangerous to a King, than not onely not to acknowledge so great a love and constancie in his people, who being but few in number, did yet resolutely expose themselves to great perils for his sake: but on the contrary, grieve and lament at their good successe. For, no doubt, they might all have bought their peace of *Abisalom* at an easie rate. Secondly, he urged that it was generally believed, that he loved his enemies, and hated his friends; and that he witnessed by this his mourning, that he had not any respect of his Princes, and others his faithfull servants, but would more have joyed if they had all perished, and *Abisalom* lived, than in the victory by their faithfulness and approved valour gotten.

Lastly, he used this prevalent argument, That if the King came not out and shewed himselfe publickly to his men of warre, that they would all that very night abandon him, and return: concluding with this fearful threatening, *And that will be worse unto thee than all the evil that fell on thee from thy youth hitherto*. By these overbold and arrogant speeches (though perchance uttered with a good intent) *Joab* raised *David* from his bed of sorrow, and brought him to the gates of the Citie among the people, whom he assured of his love and affection, especially *Amasa*, who commanded the armie of *Abisalom*, to whom he promised the office of Lieutenantship, the same which *Abisalom* had given him, and which *Joab* now enjoyed. For *David* doubted, that if *Amasa* were not satisfied, he might draw from him a great part of the strength of *Israel*, now under his commandement.

This done, the King marched towards *Jordan* homeward, where in his passage hee pardoned *Shimei*, who had lately reviled him to his face: but this remission was but external, as appeared afterward. Hee also accepted of *Mephiboseth* his excuse, whom *Ziba* had falsely accused and betrayed.

He also intreated *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, his late liberall host, to follow him to *Jerusalem*, that hee might reward his service done him; who excusing himself by his age, appointed his sonne *Chimham* to attend the King.

At *Gizal* on this side *Jordan*, all the Tribes assembled, and after some contention which of them ought to have most interest in *David*, the Armie brake, and *David* returned to *Jerusalem*. But *Sheba* the son of *Bichri*, a *Benjamite*, of the faction of the house of *Saul*, finding some discontent among the *Israelites*, withdrew them from *David*, as from a stranger in whom they had no interest, and it seemeth that many of the people of the out Tribes, and in effect of all but *Juda*, bare still a good affection to the issues of their first King. *David* employed his reconciled Captain *Amasa*, to give him contentment, and to witness his trust, as also because hee conceived that *Amasa* had interest in those revolts of *Israel* more than *Joab* had. He received commandement from *David* to assemble the Armie within three dayes, which hee forefollowed: but being onward on his way, *Abishai*, *Joab*'s brother, was sent after him, with *David*'s guard and best Souldiers, whom also *Joab* accompanied: and overtaking *Amasa* neer *Gibeon*, pretending to embrace him, gave him a wound, whereof hee fell dead; being no lesse jealous of *Amasa* than he was of *Abner*, whom he murdered in the same manner, and out of the same impatient ambition. This done, hee pursued *Sheba*, and finding him inclosed in *Abel*, assaulted the Citie with that fury, that the citizens by the perswasions of a wife woman there inhabiting, cut off *Sheba*'s head, and stung it to *Joab* over the walls: which done, hee retraited his Armie to *Jerusalem*, and commanded, as before, all the Host of *Israel*.

The next act of *David*, was the delivery of *Sauls* sons or kinsmen to the *Gibeonites*, whom those citizens hung up in revenge of their fathers cruelty. *David* had knowledge from the Oracle of God, that a famine which had continued on the land three years, came by reason of *Saul* and his house, to wit, for the slaughter of the *Gibeonites*: and therefore hee willingly yielded to give them this satisfaction, both because he had warrant from God himself, as also, if we may judge humanely, to rid himself of *Sauls* line, by whom he and his might, as well in the present as in the future, be greatly molested and endangered; only he spared *Mephibosheth* the son of *Jonathan*, both for the love he bare to his father, and for his oath and vow to God.

2 Sam. 21.

Now whereas it is written in the Text, *The King took the two sons of Rishpai, whom she bore unto Saul, and the five sons of Michol the daughter of Saul, whom she bare to Adriel, and delivered them to the Gibeonites*: *Junius* calls this *Michol* the sister of her that was *David's* wife, the whom *Saul* married to *Phaltiel*: but *Michol* here named, had *Adriel* for her husband; the same which is named *Merab* in the first of *Samuel* the eighteenth, who was first promised to *David* when hee slew *Goliath* in the valley *Raphaim*: and because it is written that *Michol* loved *David*, which perchance *Merab* did not, whether *David* had any humane respect in the delivery of her children, it is onely known to God.

Now where the *Geneva* nameth *Michol* for *Merab* the wife of *Adriel*: the better translation were out of the Hebrew word here used, having an eclipsis or defect, and signifieth, as I am informed, one of the same kindred, as in the 19. verse of the same one and twentieth chapter it is said of *Goliath*, whose spear was weighie as a Weavers beam, when as by the same eclipsis it must be understood by the brother of *Goliath*; *Goliath* himself being formerly slain.

As by the death of *Sauls* children God secured the house of *David*, leaving no head unto rebellion: so did he strengthen both the King and Nation against foreign enemies by the valour of many brave Commanders, the like of whom, for number and quality, that people of *Israel* is not known to have had at any time before or after: Thirty Captains of thousands there were, all men of mark, and great reputation in warre. Over these were six Collonels, whose valour was so extraordinary, that it might be well held as miraculous. These Collonels had some difference of place and honour, which seemeth to have been given upon meer consideration of their vertue. For *Abishai* the brother of *Joab*, who in the war against the *Ammonites* and *Aramites* was Lieutenant, and commanded halfe the armie, could not attain to the honour of the first rank, but was faine to rest contented with being principall of the three Collonels of the second order, notwithstanding his nearness of blood unto the King, the flourishing estate of his own house, and his well approved services. All these Collonels and Captains, with the Companies belonging to them, may seem to have been such as were continually retained, or at the least kept in readines for any occasion, considering that the numbers which were mustered and drawn out, if need required, into the field, very farre exceeded thirtie thousand, yea, or thirty times as many. They were most of them such as had followed the King in *Sauls* time, and been hardened with his adversities. Others there were very many, and principall men in their severall Tribes, that repaired unto him after the death of *Saul*; but these Captains and Collonels, (who with *Joab*, that was

2 Sam. 23. 39.

Generall of all the Kings forces, make up the number of 37.) were the speciall men of warre, and reckoned as *David's* Worthies. The long reign of *David*, as it is known to have consumed many of these excellent men of warre, so may it probably be guessed to have wasted the most of those whose deaths we find no where mentioned. For the sons of *Zerui*, who had been too hard for *David*, were worn away, and only *Joab* left in the beginning of *Salomon*, who wanted his brother *Abishai* to stand by his side in his last extremity.

By the actions forepassed in the time of *David*, it is gathered, that he had reigned now 33. years or thereabouts, when the posterity of *Saul* was rooted out, so that he enjoyed about seven years of entire quiet and securitie, wherein it pleased God to remove all impediments that might have troubled the succession of *Salomon* in his fathers throne. In this time also *David* having established all things in *Juda* and *Israel*, and the borders thereof, he again displeased God by numbring the people, as in ostentation of his power: in which hee employed *Joab*, with other Captains of his Armie, who after

nine

nine moneths and twenty dayes travell, returned with the account and register of all the people, able and fit to bear Arms, and they amounted to the number of thirtie hundred thousand, besides *Levi* and *Benjamin*, whereof in *Juda*, and the cities thereof, five hundred thousand, and in *Israel* eight hundred thousand. 2 Sam. 24. 1 Chr. 21.

For this, when by the Prophet *Gad* he was offered from God the choice of three punishments, whereof he might submit himself to which he pleased; to wit, seven years famine; three moneths warre, wherein he should be unprosperous in all attempts, and be chased by his enemies; or a generall pestilence to last three dayes: *David* made choice to bow himself under the hand of God only, and left himself subject to that cruell disease, which hath no compassion or respect of persons, of which there perished 70. thousand. And hereby hee hath taught all that live, that it is better to fall into the hands of God than of men; whereof he giveth this divine reason, For his mercies are great. 2 Sam. 24.

## s. VII.

Of the last acts of *David*; *Adonijahs* faction; the revenge upon *Joab* and *Shimei*.

LAstly, when he grew weak and feeble, and past the acts and knowledge of women, hee was yet advised to lie in the arms of a young and well-complexioned maiden, to keep him warm. In this his weak estate of body, when hee was in a manner bed-ridden, *Adonijah* his eldest son (*Amnon* and *Absalom* being now dead) having drawn unto his partie that invincible, renowned and feared *Joab*, with *Abiathar* the Priest, began manifestly to prepare for his establishment in the Kingdome after his father. For being the eldest now living of *David's* sonnes, and a man of goodly performance, *Salomon* yet young, and born of a mother formerly attained with adulterie, for which her name was omitted by *S. Matthew* (as *Beda*, *Hugo*, *Thomas*, and others suppose) hee presumed to carry the matter without resistance. Hereof when *David* had knowledge by *Bersabe* the mother of *Salomon*, who did put him in mind of his faithfull promise, that *Salomon* her son should reigne after him (*Nathan* the Prophet affirming the same thing unto the King, and seconding her report of *Adonijah* his presumption) the King calling unto him *Zadok* the Priest, *Nathan* the Prophet, and *Benajah* the Captain of his guard, gave charge and commission to anoint *Salomon*, and to set him on the Mule whereon himself used to ride in his greatest state: which done, *Salomon* attended, and strongly guarded by the ordinary and choice men of warre, the *Cherethites*, and *Pelethites*, shewed himself to the people. These tidings being reported to *Adonijah*, he presently abandoned his assistants, and for the safety of his life, he held by the horns of the Altar, whom for the pretent *Salomon* pardoned. After this, *David* had remaining two especiall cares, whereof he was desirous to discharge his thoughts; the one concerning the peace of the land, which might be disturbed by some rebellion against *Salomon*; the other concerning the building of the Temple, which he sought by all means to advance, and make the business publick. To bring these intentions to good effect, he summoned a Parliament, consisting of all the Princes of *Israel*, the Princes of the severall Tribes, all the Captains and Officers, with all the mightie, and men of power; who did repair unto Jerusalem. 1 Kg. 1. 1 Chr. 28. 1.

In this assembly the King stood up, and signified his purpose of building the Temple, shewing how the Lord had approved the motion. Herein he took occasion to lay open his own title to the Crown, shewing that the Kingdome was by Gods ordinance due to the Tribe of *Juda* (as *Jacob* in his blessing prophetically bequeathed it) and that God himself was pleased to make choise of him among all his fathers sonnes. In like manner he said that God himself had appointed *Salomon* by name to bee his successor; whereupon hee earnestly charged both the people and his sonne to conforme themselves unto all that God had commanded, and particularly to goe forward in this work of the Lords house, which *Salomon* was chosen to build. Then produced hee the pattern of the work, according to the forme which God himself had appointed; and so laying open his own preparations, hee exhorted all others to a voluntarie contribution. 1 Chr. 29. 9.

The Kings proposition was so well approved by the Princes and people, that whereas he himself had given three thousand talents of gold, and seven thousand of silver, they added unto it seven thousand of gold, & ten thousand of silver, besides brasse, iron, and

and Jewels, heartily rejoycing in the advancement of so religious a work. This busi-  
ness being so well dispatched, a solemn feast with great sacrifice was made; at which  
time *Salomon* was again anointed King, and received fealty of all the Princes and peo-  
ple of the Land, and of all the Princes his brethren, the sons of King *David*. *Salomon*  
being thus established King, his Father *David* finding himself even in the hands of  
death, first exhorted his son to exercise the same courage and strength of mind, which  
himself had done in all his attempts: and to the end that a happy end might follow the  
beginning of all his enterprises, he uttered these mighty words, *Take heed to the charge*  
*1 King. 1. 3.* *of the Lord thy God, to walk in his wayes, and keep his statutes, and his commandments,*  
*and his judgements, and his testimonies, as it is written in the Law of Moses, &c. to the 10*  
*2 King. 1. 20.* *performance of which, God fastened the succession, and prosperity of his issues. For*  
*this done (saith God himself) Thou shalt not want one of thy posterity to sit upon the*  
*Throne of Israel.*

Secondly, he advised him concerning *Joab*, who out of doubt had served *David* from  
the first assault of *Jerusalem* to the last of his wars, with incomparable valour and fide-  
lity, saving that he fastened himself to *Adonijah* (his master yet living) and thereby vexed  
him in his feeble age. But as God hath never left cruelty unrevengeed, so was it his will  
that *Joab* should drink of the same cup, whereof he hath enforced other men to taste, &  
suffer the same violence which himself had unjustly strooken others withall, *Qui gladio*  
*percutit, gladio peribit:* for he had bereaved *Abner* & *Amasa* of their lives, having against  
the one the pretence onely of his brothers slaughter, whom *Abner* had slain in the time  
of war, and could not avoid him: against the other but a meere jealousy of his growing  
great in the favour of *David*. And though *Joab* assured himself that *Abner* and *Amasa*  
being dead, there was none left either to equal him, or supplant him, yet God (deriding  
the policies of wicked men) raised up *Benajah* the son of *Jehojadah*, to pull him from  
the Sanctuary, and to cut him in peeces. For *David* giveth this cause to *Salomon* against  
*Joab*, that he slew the Captains of the Host of *Israel*, and shed blood of battell in peace;  
and to this apparent and just cause, it is not improbable but that *David* remembered the ill  
affection of *Joab* towards *Salomon*, which *Joab* made manifest by the untimely setting up  
of *Adonijah*, *David* yet living. Some other offence *Joab* had committed against *David*,  
of which in these words he put his son *Salomon* in mind, *Thou knowest also what Joab the*  
*1 King. 1.* *son of Seruiab did to me, &c.* Now whether this were meant by the killing of *Abshalom*,  
contrary to the Kings desire, or by the proud words used to him when he mourned in  
*Mahanaim* for *Abshalom*; or whether it were the publishing of *David's* letter unto him for  
the killing of *Uriah*, thereby to disgrace *Salomon* as descended of such a mother, the  
Scriptures are silent. True it is, that those great men of warre doe oftentimes behave  
themselves exceeding insolently towards their Princes, both in respect of their service  
done, as also because they flatter themselves with an opinion, that either their masters  
cannot misse them, or that they dare not offend them. But this kind of pride hath over-  
thrown many a worthy man otherwise deserving great honour and respect.

He also gave order to *Salomon* to rid himself of *Shimei*, who not long before had cast  
stones at *David*, and cursed him to his face. And albeit by reason of his oath and pro-  
mise *David* spared *Shimei* all the time himself lived, yet being dust and in the grave, he  
slew him by the hand of *Salomon* his sonne. Hence it seemeth that King *Henry* the se-  
venth of *England* had his pattern, when he gave order to *Henry* the Eighth to execute  
*Pool* as soon as himself was buried, having made promise to the King of *Spain*, when  
he delivered *Pool* unto him, that while he lived hee would never put him to death, nor  
suffer violent hands to be laid upon him.

And yet did not the execution of *Joab* yeeld unto *Salomon* any such great profit or  
assurance as he hoped for. For he found a young *Adad* of *Idumea*, and *Resin* of *Damascus*  
to vex him: who, as the Scriptures witness, were emboldened to enterprize upon  
*Salomon*, hearing that *David* slept with his fathers, and that *Joab* the Captain of the  
Host was dead. Now when *David* had reigned in all fortie years, to wit, in *Hebron*  
7. years, and in *Jerusalem* three and thirty, he died.

For his person, he was of small stature, but exceeding strong. For his internall gifts  
and graces, hee so farre exceeded all other men, as putting his humane frailtie apart,  
hee was said by God himself to bee a man according to his own heart. The Psalmes  
which hee wrote, witness his pietie, and his excellent learning: of whom *Hierome* to  
Paulinus;

*Paulinus*: *David Simonides noster, Pindarus, & Alcæus, Flaccus, quoque Catullus, & Serenus, Christum lyra personat, & in dechachordo Psalterio ab inferis suscitatur resurrex- sem*; *David* (saith he) our *Simonides*, *Pindarus*, *Alcæus*, *Horace*, *Catullus* and *Serenus*, hee playeth *Christ* on his *Harp*, and on a ten-stringed *Psalter* hee raiseth him up rising from the dead. And being both a King and a Prophet, he foretelleth *Christ* more light-  
somerly and lively than all the rest.

The book of the Psalmes, saith *Glycas*, was divided, ordered and distinguished by  
*Ezekias*: but whether all the Psalmes were written by *David*, it is diversly disputed. For  
*Athanasius*, *Cyprian*, *Lyranus*, and others conceive divers Authors answering the titles  
of the severall Psalmes, as *Moses*, *Salomon*, and the rest hereafter named; and that only  
73. Psalmes were composed by *David* himself, namely, those which are intitled *ipsius* 1. *psal.*  
*David*. For the 50. and the 72. with the ten that follow, are bestowed on *Asaph* the son  
of *Barachia*, eleven other on the sons of *Korath*; and eleven are ascribed to *Moses*, to  
wit, the 89. and the ten following, and so they are intitled in the old Hebrew Copies,  
though the vulgar and Septuagint (three excepted) stile them otherwise. The supposed  
nine Authors of these Psalmes which *David* wrote not, *Sixti*, *Senensis* nameth as follow-  
ing, *Salomon*, *Moses*, (whom *Aben Ezra*, contrary to *Hierome*, maketh one of *David's* fin-  
gers) *Asaph*, *Ethan*, *Ezra*, *Eman*, *Ezaiara*, *Idithum*, and the three sons of *Chore*. But  
*S. Chrysostome* makes *David* the sole Author of all the Psalmes, and so doth *S. Augustine*.  
only to *David*, which are over-written *ipsius David*, and the rest intitled *ipsi David*,  
to others, this opinion (saith he) *Voce Evangelica Salvatoris ipsius refutatur, ubi ait quod*  
*ipse David in spiritu Christum dixerit esse suum Dominum, quoniam Psalmus 109. sic in-*  
*cepit, Dixit Dominus Domino meo, Sede a dextris meis, &c.* The voyce of the Gospell  
refutes this opinion, where it saith, that *David* himself in the spirit called *Christ* his  
Lord; because the 109. Psalm begins thus: *The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my*  
*right hand, &c.* Lastly, his testimonies are used both by *Christ* and the Apostles, and hee  
was as a pattern to all the Kings and Princes that succeeded him.

His Story, and all his particular actions, were written by the Prophets, *Samuel*, *Na-*  
*30* *athan*, and *Gad*, as it is in the first of *Chron. 29. vers. 19.* For the severall parts of the books  
of *Samuel* which intreat chiefly of *David*, were, as it seems, written by these three  
holy men.

*Constantine Manasses* hath an opinion, that the Trojans during the time of the siege  
sought for succour from *David*, and that he stayed neuter in that warre. But it seemeth  
that *Manasses* did miscast the time 'twixt *David* and the Trojan warre. For it is generally  
received that *Troy* fell between the times of *Abdon* and *Sampson* Judges of *Israel*, about  
the worlds year 2848. and *David* died in the year 2991.

## S. IX.

Of the treasures of *David* and *Salomon*.

Is treasures were exceeding great. For it is written in the 22. of the first of *Chro-*  
*nicles*, that he left *Salomon* for the building of the Temple a hundred thousand  
talents of gold, and a thousand thousand talents of silver, and of brasse and yron  
passing all weight, which is more than any King in the world posselt besides himselfe,  
and his sonne, to whom he left it. For it amounteth to three thousand three hundred  
thirty & three cartload, and a third of a cartload of silver, allowing two thousand weight  
of silver or six thousand pound sterling to every cartload, besides three score and seven-  
teen millions of French Crowns, or of our money twenty three millions and a thou-  
sand pound: a matter, but for the testimony of the Scriptures, exceeding all belief. For  
that any riches were left him, it doth not appear, seeing that the Judges had not any  
treasure, nor any sovereign power to make levies: but when they went to the wars they  
were followed by such voluntaries as the severall tribes by turns gave them: seeing also  
that *Saul* who was of a mean parentage, and perpetually vexed and invaded by the Phi-  
listines, could not in all likelihood gather great riches (if any at all) his Territories being  
exceeding narrow, and thereof the better part posselt by his enemies.

Therefore it were not amisse to consider how *David* within the space of not very ma-  
ny years, might amasse up such mighty treasures. For though parsimony be it selfe a  
great

great revenue, yet needs there must have been some other great means. It seems that he made the uttermost profit of all that he had, that was profitable. *Eusebius* in his 9. book and last chapter de *Preparatione Evangelica*, citeth the words of *Eupolemus*, who reporteth that *David*, among other preparations for the Temple, built a Navie in *Melania* (or, as *Vallapandus* corrects it, *Achania*) a city of *Arabia*, and from thence sent men to digge for gold in the Iland *Urpe*, which *Ortelius* thinks was *Ophir*, though *Eupolemus* is in this place of *Eusebius* (erring perhaps in this circumstance) saith that this Iland is in the red Sea: from whence, saith this *Eupolemus*, they brought gold into *Jerry*, *Pineda* I. A. de *Rebus Salomonis*, c. 1. thinks that *David* did this way also enrich himself, and citeth this testimonie of *Eupolemus*: and yet certainly *David* had many other wayes to gather riches. Much land doubtlesse he gained by conquest from the *Canaanites* and *Philistines*, besides those fruitfull vallies neer *Jordan* in *Trachonitis* and *Basan*, and the best of *Syria*, and other countries bordering the *Israelites*. These demaines belike he kept in his own hands, and with his infinite number of captives, which he took in his warres, which were notable to redeem themselves, husbanded those grounds for his greatest advantage. For it is written, 1 *Chro*. 17. that *Feohanathan* was over his treasures in the field, in the villages, in the cities, in the towns; that *Ezer* was over the labourers that tilled his ground; *Simei* over the vineyards, and *Sabdi* over the store of the wine; *Baal Hanan* over the olive trees, and *Joash* over the store of the oyle: also that he had herdsmen that had charge over his cattell, both in the high lands and in the plains, over his Sheep, 20 Camels and Asses. And this custome of enriching themselves by husbandrie and cattell, the ancient Kings every where held, both before and after *David*'s time. For we read of *Pharaoh*, that hee spake to *Joseph* to appoint some of his brethren, or of their servants, to be rulers over his cattell. Wee read of *Uzias*, that he loved husbandrie, had much cattell, and plough-men, and dressers of Vines: likewise wee read it in all Greek Poets, that the wealth of the ancient Kings did specially consist in their Herds and Flocks; whereof it were needlesse to cite *Augeas* and *Admetus*, or any other for examples, the rule holding true in all. Now concerning *David* it is not unlikely, but that those captives which were not employed in husbandrie, were many of them used by him in all sorts of gainfull professions, as the ancient Romans in like manner used 30 their slaves.

To these profits (besides the tributes and impositions, which doubtlesse were great, and besides the innumerable presents which yearly were brought him, or extraordinarily sent him, by *Tobu* and others) wee may adde the great spoiles which hee found in the Cities and Countries which hee conquered: also the head money which was gathered *per legem capitacionis*, By the law of capitation, or head money, every man rich or poor paying half a sicle of the Sanctuary, which is about as much as fourteen pence, and so in all it amounted to a wondrous summe in that Kingdome: wherein one thousand thousand five hundred and sevenie thousand fighting men were numbered by *Joab*. Now although this law of capitation bee thought by some very learned, not to 40 have been perpetuall (which opinion of theirs nevertheless they confesse is against the Hebrew expositions) yet *David* upon this occasion is not unlikely to have put it in practise. And by these means might hee be able to leave those huge treasures to *Salomon*. Yet it may seem that of this great masse of gold and silver left by *David*, the least part was his own in private; and so will it appear the lesse wonderfull that hee left so much. Of his own liberallitie wee find, that hee gave to the building of the Temple three thousand talents of gold, and seven thousand talents of silver: a great summe, but holding a very small proportion to the other. Wherefore we are to consider, that the treasures of the Sanctuary it self were exceeding great, as needs they must have been, having received continuall encrease, without any losse or diminution ever since the time 50 of *Moses* and *Joshuah*. The revenues of the Sanctuary (besides all manner of tithes and oblations, which defrayed the daily expences, and maintained the Priests and Levites) were partly raised out of the head money before mentioned; partly out of the spoiles gotten in warre. For all the bootie was divided into two parts, whereof the Souldiers had one, and the people which remained at home, had the other half; whereby all the country received benefit of the victory, yet so, that the Souldiers had a farre greater proportion than the rest, as being fewer, and therefore receiving more for every single share,

Qu

Out of this purchase was deducted the Lords tribute, which was one in fiftie, of that which the people received, and one in five hundred, of that which was given to the Souldiers; namely, one hundred and one thousand part of the whole bootie. So in the spoil of *Midian*, thirty two thousand women being taken, the Armie had sixteen thousand of them for slaves, and the Congregation had other sixteen thousand; but out of the sixteen thousand given to the Armie, were exempted two and thirty for the Lords tribute; Out of the peoples number were taken three hundred and twenty. By this means, the lesse that the Armie was which had exposed it self to danger, the greater profit had every Souldier; but when it consisted of many hands, they who remaining at home were faine to undergoe more than ordinary travell in domestick affaires, did receive by so much the greater portion. But the Lords tribute was always certain, yea many times it was increased, either by some speciall commandement, as when all the gold, and silver, and other metalls found in *Ferico*, were consecrated unto God; or by 10 the thankfulness of the Rulers and People, as when after the victorie obtained against the *Midianites* without the losse of one man, all Jewells, Bracelets, Earrings, and the like, Num. 31. 56 were offered up, as voluntarie presents.

Now howsoever the *Israelites* were many times oppressed, and troden down by other Nations, yet were not these treasures robbed or spoiled; for the enemies never got possession of the Tabernacle that was in *Shilo*. Wherefore it cannot otherwise be, than that the wealth of the Sanctuary must have been exceeding great; as containing above one hundredth part of all the money and other goods found by the *Israelites* in the whole Land of *Canaan*; and of all that was purchased by so many victories, as they obtained against the bordering Nations. For that this treasure was not defrauded of the due portion, it is evident; seeing that before the time of *David* and his Lieutenant *Joab*, it is recorded that *Saul* and *Abner*, and before them *Samuel*, had used to dedicate of the spoiles obtained in war, to maintain the house of the Lord: the like whereof may be well presumed of the former Judges and Captains of other Ages. Certain it is, that the Conquest of *David* brought into the Land far greater abundance of riches, than any former victories had purchased, those of *Joshua* perhaps excepted: but these vast summes of an 30 hundred thousand Talents of silver, may seem rather to have been made up, by the addition of his winnings and liberallitie, to the treasures laid up in many former Ages, than to have been the meer fruits of his own industrie.

Now concerning the riches of *Salomon*, it is more manifest how he gathered them; for he received yearly revenues with his tributes 666. Talents of gold, besides the Customs of Spices. He had also six rich Returns from the East India, which greatly increased his store. For his ships performed that voyage every three years, and he began that trade in the two and twentieth year of his reign, and ruled fortie years. Besides this, all *Judea* and *Israel* were now mastered to his hands; all the *Arabians* his borderers, the *Syrians* of *Zobah*, of *Damascena*, of *Palmyrena*, of *Ituraa*; all of *Idumea*, Mo- 40 ab, and *Ammon*, paid him tribute; as likewise did the *Hittites*, who with the *Perizzites*, *Hivites*, *Febusites*, and other races of the *Canaanites*, were not as yet extinguished, though subjected.

Into this flourishing estate was the Kingdome of *Israel* reduced by *David*, who after 40 years reign, and 70 years of life, dyed in a good age, full of daies, riches, & honour, and was buried in the Citie of *David*. It is written by *Josephus* that there was hid in *David*'s Tombe a marvellous quantitie of treasures, in so much as *Hyrannus* (who first of the *Chasmanei*, or race of *Macchabees*, called himself King) one thousand and three hundred years after, drew thence three thousand Talents, to rid himself of *Antiochus* then besieging *Jerusalem*; & afterward *Herod* opening another Cell, had also an exceeding masse 50 of gold and silver therein. And it was an ancient custome to burie treasure with the dead. So the *Peruvians* and other *Americans* did the like, which being discovered by the *Spaniards* they enriched themselves by nothing so much in their first Conquest. That *Salomon* did burie so much treasure in his fathers grave, it would hardly be believed, in regard of the great exactions with which hee was faine to burthen the people, notwithstanding all the riches which hee got otherwise, or which were left unto him: were it notwithall considered that his want of money grew from such magnificent employments. Particularly of the Sepulchre of *David* the Scriptures have no mention, but only the Sepulchres of the Kings of *Juda*, as of an honourable place of buriall. Yet the 10 Monuments

Gen. 47.  
2 Chron. 26.

1 Chron. 21.

Numb. 31. 27.

Num. 31. 46.

Jof. 6. 19.

Num. 31. 56.

1 Chron. c. 16.  
v. 7. & 18.A Talent of  
gold is 770.  
French crowns.  
1 King. 10. 14.1 King. c. 9.  
v. 20. & 10.  
v. 29.

1 Chro. 29. 18.

Jofeph. Anti.  
1. 7.



Peregrinat.  
Hierofol. D. M.  
Ch. Rad.  
Epiſt. 1.

Monuments of these Kings, as (by relation of the Duke of *Ulrica*) they remained within these thirty years, and are like to remain still, are able to make report credible of the cost bestowed upon them.



S. X.

Of the *Philistims*, whom David absolutely mastered: and of sundry other contemporaries with David.

OF the *Philistims*, whose pride David was the first that absolutely mastered, in this conclusion of David's time somewhat here may be spoken.

1fd. l. 9. 19.  
Jof. l. 1. Ant. 17

1 Sam. 6.

Gen. 20.

Gen. 26.

Jud. 16.

1 Sam. 18. 49.

1 Sam. 21. 11.

1 King. 2.

They descended of *Casloim*, who, according to *Isidor* and *Josephus*, was one of the sonnes of *Misraim*, and was furnished *Philistim*, as *Eſau* was furnished *Edom*, and *Jacob* *Israel*. There were of them five Cities or petty principalities, namely, *Azotus* or *Asdod*, *Gaza* or *Ackaph*, *Ascalon*, *Geth* or *Gath*, and *Accaron*. It seemeth that *Casloim* was the first founder of this Nation, because of his kindred on either hand, the *Canaanites* and the *Egyptians*.

The first King of these *Philistims*, which the Scriptures have named, was that *Abimelech* which loved *Sara*, *Abrahams* wife.

The second *Abimelech* lived at once with *Isaac*, to whom *Isaac* repaired in the time of famine, *Abimelech* then residing at *Gerar*, in the border of *Idumaea*; which *Abimelech* 20 fancied *Isaac* his wife, as his father had done *Sara*.

After *Abimelech* the second, the *Philistims* Kings are not remembered in the Scriptures, till David's time: perhaps the government was turned into *Aristocratical*. For they are afterwards named Princes of the *Philistims*, howsoever *Achis* be named King of *Gath*, the same to whom David fled, and who again gave him *Siklag* to inhabit in *Sauls* time.

After him we read of another *Achis* who lived with *Salomon*, to whom *Shimei* travelled to fetch back his fugitive servant, what time the seeking of his servant was the loss of his life. *Jeremie* the Prophet speaketh of the Kings of *Paleſtin* or *Philistim*. *Amos* nameth the King of *Ascalon*: *Zacharias* a King of *Gaza*. The rest of the wars of the *Philistims* are remembered in the Catalogue of the Judges, of *Saul* and *David*, and 30 therefore I shall not need to collect the particulars in this place.

There lived at once with David, the third of the *Silvii* King of *Alba*, called *Latinus Silvius*, who is said to have ruled that part of *Italy* fifty years. And about his fourteenth year *Cadmus* the last King of the *Athenians* died, to whom succeeded the first Prince of those, who being called after *Medon*, *Medontide*, without regall name governed *Athens* during their life.

The reasons which moved the *Athenians* to change their government, were not drawn from any inconvenience found in the rule of sovereignty, but in honour of *Cadmus* only. For when the *Gracians* of *Doris*, a region between *Phocis*, & the mountain of *Oeta*, sought counsell from the Oracle, for their successe in the warres against the *Athenians*, it 40 was answered, that then undoubtedly they should prevail and become Lords of that State, when they could obtain any victory against the Nation, and yet preserve the *Athenian* King living. *Cadmus* by some intelligence being informed of this answer, withdrew himself from his own forces, and putting on the habit of a common fouldier, entered the Camp of the *Dorians*, and killing the first hee encountered, was himselfe forthwith cut in pieces.

*Eupales* the 31. King of *Aſſyria*, which others account but the 30. began to rule that Empire, about the 13. year of David, and held it 38. years.

Neer the same time began *Ixiom* the second King of the *Heracleide*, the sonne of *Enriſthenes* in *Corinth*; and *Agis* the second of the *Heracleide* in *Lacedaemon*: in honour of 50 which *Agis*, his successours were called *Agide*, for many years after. Hee restored the *Laconians* to their former libertie: he overcame the Citizens of *Helos* in *Laconia*, who had refused to pay him tribute: he condemned them and theirs to perpetual slavery; whereof it came, that all the *Messenians*, whom at length they brought into the like bondage, were after call *Helots*.

In like sort from the *Scelavi* came the world Slave. For when that Nation issuing out of *Sarmatia*, now called *Russia*, had seized upon the country of *Illyria*, & made it their own by conquest, their victory pleased them so highly, that thereupon they called themselves by

by a new name, *Slavos*, which is in their language *Glorions*. But in after times (that warmer Climate having thawed their northern hardiness, and not ripened their wits) when they were trodden down, and made servants with their neighbours, the *Italians* which kept many of them in bondage, began to call all their bondmen *Slaves*, using the word as a name of reproach: in which sense it is now current through many countries.

Other Chronologers make this *Agis*, the third King of *Sparta*, and somewhat later, about the 23. year of David, and say, that *Acheſtratus* was the fourth King of this race, the same whom *Eusebius* calls *Labotes*, and sets him in the thirteenth year of *Salomon*. Euseb. in Chron.

In the tenth year of *Acheſtratus*, *Androclus* the third sonne of *Cadmus*, assisted by the *Jones*, built *Ephesus* in *Caria*, who after the adjoining of the Ile of *Samos* to his territorie, was slain by the *Carians*, whose countie he usurped. He was buried (saith *Pausanias*) The East gate of Ephesus toward Magnesia upon the river Meander. in one of the gates of *Ephesus* called *Magnetes*, his armed Statua being set over him. *Strabo* reports that after *Androclus* had subdued the *Ionians* (the next province to *Ephesus* on the sea coast of *Asia* the lesse) he enlarged his Dominions upon the *Aeoles*, which joyneth to *Ionis*: and that his posteritie governed the Cities of *Ephesus* and *Erythra* by the name of *Basilide* in *Strabo* his own time. Of the expedition of the *Jones* how they came thither out of *Peloponnesus*, I have \* spoken already upon occasion of the return of the *Heraclide* into *Peloponnesus*, wherein, with the *Dores*, they expelled the *Achai*; and inhabited their places in that land: though this of the *Jones* succeeded that of the *Heraclide*. Arist. l. 5. p. 17. c. 9. 1. p. 1. c. 6. See in this

*Basilide* 100. years.

\* The Citie of *Ephesus* became exceeding famous: first, for the Temple of *Diana* therein built, which had in length 425. foot, and 220. in breadth, sustained with 127. pillars of marble, of 70. foot high: whereof 27. were most curiously graven, and all the rest of choice marble polish't, the work being first set out by *Cleophon* of *Gnosſos*. Secondly, it became renowned by being one of the first that received the Christian faith, of which *Timothy* was Bishop: to whom, and to the *Ephesians*, *Saint Paul* wrote his Epistles for intitled. The other City posselt by *Androclus* in *Aeolis*, was also universally spoken of by reason of *Sibylla*, surnamed *Erythraea*, who lived 740. years before Christ was born. *S. Augustine* avoweth that a Roman Proconſul shewed him in an ancient Greek copie certain verses of this Prophetesse, which began (as *S. Augustine* changed them into Latine) in these words: *Jesus Christus Dei Filius, Salvator*; *Jesus Christ Son of God, the Saviour*.

About the time that *Joab* besieged *Rabba* in *Moab*, *Vaphres* began to govern in *Egypt*, the same that was father in law to *Salomon*, whose Epistles to *Salomon*, and his to *Vaphres*, are remembered by *Eusebius* out of *Polemon*. In the 21. of David, was the City of *Magnesia* in *Asia* the lesse founded, the same which is seated upon the river *Meander*, wherof *Scipio* gave the great overthrow to *Antiochus*. In this territorie are the best horses of the lesse *Asia* bred, whereof *Lucan*:

*Et Magnetis equis, Minye genus cognita remis.*

40 About the same time *Cuma* in *Campania* was built by the Inhabitants of *Chalcis* in *Enbrea*, according to *Servius*, with whom *Strabo* joyneth the *Cumaeans* of *Aeolis*, saying, that to the one of these people the government was given, with condition that the other should give name to the Citie. Of this *Cuma* was *Ephorus* the famous scholar of *Isocrates*. *Eusebius* and *Cassiodorus* find the building of *Carthage* at this time, to wit, in the 31. year of David, but much mistaken. For the father of *Dido* was *Mecinus* the son of *Badezor*, brother to *Jezebel*, who married *Achab* King of *Israel*; and between the death of David, and the first of *Achab*, there were waisted about 95. years.

In this time also *Acaſtus* lived, the second of the *Athenian* Princes after *Cadmus*, of which there were thirteen in descent before the State changed into a Magistracie of ten 50 years. Some writers make it probable, that the *Aeolians*, led by *Graus*, the grand nephew of *Orestes*, posselt the Citie and Iland of *Thebes* about this time. In the 32. year of David, *Hiram* began to reign in *Tyre*, according to *Josephus*, who saith that in his twelfth year *Salomon* began the work of the Temple. But it is a familiar error in *Josephus*, to misreckon times, which in this point he doth so strangely, as if hee knew not how at all to cast any accompt. For it is manifest, that *Hiram* sent Messengers, and *Cedars* unto David, soon after his taking of *Jerusalem*, which was in the very beginning of David's reigne over *Israel*, when as yet hee had reigned onely seven years in *Hebron* over the house of *Juda*. Wherefore it must needs be that *Hiram* had reigned above 30. years Ant. 8. c. 10. Ap. l. 1. 1. 14. Euseb. in Chron. Hec. in vit. Hec. & Strab. 1. 14.

years before Salomon, unless more credit should be given to those Tyrian records which are cited by Josephus, than to the plain words of Scripture contradicting them. For, that it was the same Hiram which lived both with David and with Salomon, the Scriptures make it plainly manifest.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CHAP. XVIII. OF SALOMON.

### §. I.

Of the establishing of Salomon: of birth-right, and the cause of Adonijah's death, and of Salomons wisdom.



**S**ALOMON, who was brought up under the Prophet Nathan, began to reign over Juda and Israel, in the year of the World 2991. He was called Salomon by the appointment of God: hee was also called Jedidias, or Theophilus, by Nathan, because the Lord loved him.

Hiram King of Tyre, after Salomons anointing, dispatched Embassadors towards him, congratulating his establishment: a custome between Princes very ancient. Whence we read that David did in

2 Sam. 10.

like sort salute Hiram King of the Ammonites, after his obtaining the Kingdom.

The beginning of Salomon was in blood, though his reign were peaceable. For soon after Davids death, he caused his brother Adonijah to be slain by Benaiah the sonne of Jehoada, taking occasion from Adonijahs his desiring by Bersheba, that the young maid Abisag (which lay in Davids bosome in his latter dayes, to keep him warm) might be given to him. Whatsoever he pretended, it was enough that Adonijah was his elder brother, and fought the Kingdom contrary to the will of David, whom God inclined towards Salomon. And yet it is said that a word is enough to the wife, and he that fees but the claw may know whether it be a Lion or no: so it may seem that to the quick-sighted wisdom of Salomon, this motion of Adonijahs, was a demonstration of a new treason. For they which had been Concubines to a King, might not after be touched but by a King: whence Achitophel wished Absalom to take his fathers Concubines as a part of the Royaltie. And David after that wrong, determining to touch them no more, did not give them to any other, but shut them up, and they remained widowed untill their death. And this it seems was the depth of Isobeths quarrell against Abner, for having his fathers Concubine. And some signification of this custome may seem too in the words of God by Nathan to David, *I have given thee thy Masters house, and thy Masters wives*. And in the words of Saul upbraiding Jonathan, that he had chosen David to the shame of the nakednesse of his Mother. Hereupon perhaps was some reference to this purpose of Adonijah, to marry with her that was alwaies present with David in his latter daies, and who belike knew all that was past, for the conveying of the Kingdom to Salomon. There may be divers further occasions, as either that hee would learn such things by her as might be for the advantage of his ambition, or that he would perswade her to forge some strange tale about Davids last Testament, or any thing else that might prejudice the title of Salomon.

1 King. 2. 15.

As for the right of an elder brother which Adonijah pretended, though generally it agreed both with the law of Nations, & with the customes of the Jewes: yet the kings of the Jewes were so absolute, as they did therein, & in all else, what they pleased. Some examples also they had (though not of Kings) which taught them to use this paternall authority in transferring the birth-right to a younger son: namely of Jacobs inheriting Ruben, and giving the birth-right (which was twice as much as any portion of the other brethren) to Joseph: of whom he made two tribes. And that it was generally acknowledged that this power was in David, it appeareth by the words of Bersheba and Nathan to David, and of Jonathan to Adonijah. For, as for popular election, that it was necessary to confirme, or that the refusal of the people had authority to frustrate the elder

Deuter. 21. 15.  
Filium uxoris  
agnosito dante  
ei portionem  
omnis sum  
15. 18. 19.  
1 Reg. 1. 17.  
1 Reg. 1. 17.  
1 Reg. 1. 17.  
1 Reg. 1. 17.  
1 Reg. 1. 17.  
1 Reg. 1. 17.

elder brothers right to the Kingdom: it now here appears in the stories of the *Fewes*. It is said indeed that the people made Saul King at Galgal: that is, they acknowledged and established him. For that he was King long before, no man can doubt. In like manner else-where the phrase of choosing or making their King, is to be expounded: as where in the prohibition, that they should not make themselves a King, it is said, *Thou shalt make him King whom the Lord shall chuse*.

But to proceed with the acts of Salomon: at the same time that hee put Adonijah to death, he rid himself also of Joab and three years after of Shimei, as David had advised him: he displaced also the Priest Abiathar, who took part with Adonijah against him: but in respect of his office, and that he followed David in all his afflictions, and because he had born the Ark of God before his Father, he spared his life. And thus being established in his Kingdom, hee tooke the daughter of Vaphres King of Egypt to Wife: for so Eusebius out of Eusepius calls him. He offered a thousand sacrifices at Gibeon, where God appearing unto him in a dream, bade him ask what he would at his hands: Salomon chooseth Wisdom, which pleased God. And God laid unto him, *Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked for thy self long life, neither hast thou asked riches for thy self, nor hast asked the life of thine enemies: behold, I have done according to thy words: by which wee may informe our selves, what desires are most pleasing to God, and what not. For the coveting after long life in respect of our selves, cannot but proceed of self-love, which is the root of all impiety: the desire of private riches is an affection of covetousnesse, which God abhorreth, to affect revenge, is as much as to take the sword out of Gods hand, and to distrust his justice. And in that it pleased God to make Salomon know that it liked him, that he had not asked the life of his enemies, it could not but put him in mind of his brothers slaughter, for which he had not any warrant either from David, or from the Law of God: but because Salomon desired wisdom onely, which taught him both to obey God, and to rule men, it pleased God to give him withall that which he desired not. And I have also given thee (saith God) that which thou hast not asked, both riches and honour.* This gift of Wiiedome our Commentators stretch to almost all kindes of learning: but that it comprehended the knowledge of the nature of plants and living creatures, the Scripture testifieth, though no doubt the chief excellencie of Salomons wisdom, was in the knowledge of governing his Kingdom: whence, as it were for an example of his wisdom, the Scripture telleth how soon he judged the controversy between the two harlots.

### §. II.

Of Salomons building and glorie.

**H**EE then entred into league with Hiram King of Tyre, from whom he had much of his materials for the Kings Palace and the Temple of God: for the building whereof he had received a double charge, one from his father David, and another from God. For like as it is written of David, that he called Salomon his sonne, and charged him to build a house for the Lord of Israel: so doth Tostatus give the force of a divine precept to these words, *Behold, a son is born unto thee, &c. He shall build an house for my Name*.

He began the work of the Temple in the beginning of the fourth year of his reign, at which time also he prepared his fleet at Eshongabar to trade for gold in the East Indies, that nothing might be wanting to supply the charge of so great a work. For, that the Temple was in building, while his fleets were passing to and fro, it is manifest. For the pillars of the Temple were made of the Almaggim trees brought from Ophir. Of this most glorious building, of all the particulars (whereof the form and example was given by God himself) many learned men have written; as Salmeron, Montanus, Ribera, Barradas, Azorius, Villalpandus, pineda, and others, to whom I refer the Reader.

For the cutting and squaring of the Cedars which served that building, Salomon employed 30 thousand Carpenters, 10 thousand every month by course: he also used 80 thousand Malons in the mountain, and 70 thousand labourers that bare burdens, which it is conceived, he selected out of the Proselytes, besides three thousand three hundred masters of his work: so as he paid and employed in all, one hundred eighty three thousand and three hundred men; in which number the Sidonians, which were farre more

R 2

skillfull

1 Chr. 22. 6.  
1 Chr. 22. 6.  
1 Chr. 22. 6.  
1 Chr. 22. 6.  
1 Chr. 22. 6.  
1 Chr. 22. 6.

skillfull in hewing timber than the Israelites, may (as I think) be included. For Hiram caused his servants to bring down the Cedars and Firres from Libanon to the sea, and thence sent them in raffles to Joppo, or the next port to Jerusalem. For in the second of *Chronicles* the second Chapter, it is plain, that all but the thirty thousand Carpenters, and the over-seers, were strangers, and as it seemeth the vassals of Hiram, and of *Vaphres* King of Egypt. In recompence of all this timber and stone, Salomon gave Hiram twenty thousand measures of wheat, and twenty measures of pure oyle yearly. *Eusebius* out of *Eupolemus* in the ninth book of his preparation, the last Chapter, hath left us a Copie of Salomons Letter to Suron (which was the same as Hiram and Hiram) King of Tyre, in these words:

**R**ex Salomon Suroni, Tyri, Sydonis, atque Phœnicia regi, Amico paterno salutem. Scias me a Deo magno David patris mei regnum accepisse, cumque mihi pater precepit templum Deo, qui terram creavit, condere, ut etiam ad te scriberem preceptis: Scribo igitur, & peto à te ut artifices atque fabros ad adificandum Templum Dei mittere velis.

**K**ing Salomon to King Suron, of Tyre, Sydon, & Phœnicia King, & my fathers friend, scnderh greeting. You may understand that I have received of the great God of my father David, the Kingdome: and when my father commanded also that I should write to you: I write therefore to you, and beseech you, that you would be pleased to send me Artificers and Carpenters to build the Temple of God.

To which the King Suron made this answer.

**S**urion, Tyri, Sydonis, & Phœnicia Rex, Salomoni Regi salutem. Le<sup>7</sup>is literis, gratias agi Deo, qui tibi regnum patris tradidit: & quoniam scribis fabros, ministrosq; ad condendum Templum esse tibi mittendos, misi ad te millia hominum octaginta, & Architectum Tyrium hominem ex matre Judæa, virum in rebus architecturæ mirabilem. Curabis igitur ut necessariis non egeant, & Templo Dei condito, ad nos redeant.

**S**urion of Tyre, Sydon and Phœnicia King, to King Salomon greeting: When I read your Letters, I gave God thanks who hath installed you in your fathers kingdome. And because you write that Carpenters and Workmen may be sent to build Gods Temple, I have sent you fourscore thousand men, and a Master-builder, a Tyrian, born of a Jewish woman, a man admirable in building. You will be carefull that all necessities be provided for them, and when the Temple of God is built, that they come home to us.

The Copies of these Letters were extant in *Josephus* time, as himself affirmeth, and to be seen (saith he) *Tam in nostris quam in Tyriorum annalibus*, as well in our ovr, as in the Tyrian annals. But he delivereth them somewhat in different termes, as the Reader may find in his Antiquities. But were this intercourse between Salomon and Hiram either by message or by writing, it is somewhat otherwise delivered in the Scriptures, than either *Eupolemus* or *Josephus* set it down; but so, that in substance there is little difference between the one and the other.

The like Letter in effect Salomon is said to have written to *Vaphres* King of Egypt, and was answered: as from Hiram.

But whereas some Commenters upon Salomon, find that Hiram King of Tyre, and *Vaphres* King of Egypt, gave Salomon the title of *Rex magnus*, and cite *Eupolemus* in *Eusebius*, I do not find any such addition of *magnus* in *Eusebius*, in the last chapter of that ninth book; neither is it in *Josephus* in the eighth book and second chapter of the Jewes Antiquities: it being a vain title used by some of the Assyrian and Persian Kings, and used likewise by the Parthians, and many other after them, in so much as in later times it grew common, and was usurped by mean persons in respect of the great *Hermes* the first, which was honoured by that name for his noble qualities, as much or more than for his mightinesse.

After the finishing and dedication of the Temple and house of the Lord, Salomon fortified Jerusalem with a treble wall, and repaired *Hazor* which had been the ancient Metropolis of the Canaanites, before *Joshua*'s time: so did he Gaza of the Philistines, the built *Berobon*, *Gerar*, and the *Millo* or munition of Jerusalem. For *Pharaoh* (as it is located in

in favour of Salomon) came up into the edge of *Ephraim*, and took *Gerar*, which place the Canaanites yet held, and put them to the sword, and burnt their Citie. The place and Territory he gave Salomons wife for a dowrie. And it is probable, that because Salomon was then buisied in his magnificent buildings, and could not attend the war, that he entertained his father in law to rid him of these neighbours, which *Pharaoh* performed. But hee thereby taught the Egyptians to visit those parts again before they were sent for; and in his son *Rehoboams* time *Shebäck* this mans successor did sack Jerusalem it selfe.

Salomon also built *Magiddo* in *Manasse*, on this side *Jordan*, and *Balah* in *Dan*: also *Thadmor*, which may be either *Ptolomies Thamor* in the desert of *Juda*, or (as *Josephus* *Jos. 1. 8. ant. 2. 2.* thinks) *Palmira* in the desert of *Syria*; which *Palmira*, because it stood on the utmost border of Salomons dominion to the northeast of *Libanus*, and was of *Dauids* conquest when he wan *Damascus*, it may seem that Salomon therefore bestowed thereon the most cost, and fortified it with the best Art that that age had. *Josephus* calls this place *Thadma*, *Jos. 1. 8. ant. 2. 2.* *mora*, by which name (saith he) given by Salomon, the Syrians as yet call it. Hierom in his book of Hebrew places, calls it *Thermeth*. In after-times, when it was rebuilt by *Adrian* the Emperour, it was honoured with his name, and called *Adrianopolis*. In respect of this great charge of building, Salomon raised tribute through all his Dominions, besides an hundred and twenty talents of gold received from Hiram's servants; Salomon offered Hiram twenty towns in or neer the upper *Galilee*, but because they stood in an unfruitfull and marish ground, Hiram refused them, and therefore was the territory called *Chabul*.

These towns, as it is supposed, lay in *Galilee* of the Gentiles, *Non quod Gentes ibi habitarent: sed quia sub ditone regis Gentilis erat*. Not that it was posselt by the Gentiles (saith *Naclerus*) but because it was under the rule of a King that was a Gentile. Howsoever it were, it is true that Salomon in the 21. year fortified those places which Hiram refused. Further, he made a journey into *Syria* *Zobah*, and established his tributies, the first & last warre (if in that expedition he were driven to fight) that he made in person in all his life. Hee then visited the border of all his Dominions, passing from *Thadmor* to the North of *Palmirena*, and so to the Desarts of *Idumæa*, from whence he visited *Eziongaber* and *Elath* the uttermost place of the South of all his Territories, bordering to the red sea: which Cities I have described in the Story of *Moses*.

### S. III.

of Salomons sending to Ophir, and of some seeming contradictions about Salomons riches, and of Pincda's conceit of two strange passages about Affrick.

**H**ere Salomon prepare d his Fleet of ships for India, with whom Hiram joyned in that voyage, and furnished him with Mariners and Pilots, the Tyrians being of all other the most expert seamen. From this part of Arabia which at this time belonged to *Edom*, and was conquered by David, did the Fleet passe to the East India, which was not farre off, namely, to *Ophir*, one of the Islands of the *Moluccas*, a place exceeding rich in gold: witnesse the Spaniards, who notwithstanding all the abundance which they gather in *Peru*, doe yet plant in those Islands of the East at *Manila*, and recover a great quantity from thence, and with lesse labour than they do in any one part of *Peru*, or new Spain.

The return which was made by these Ships amounted to four hundred and twenty talents, but in the second of *Chronicles* the eighth, it is written 450. talents: whereof 30. talents went in expence for the charge of the Fleet; and wages of men; and 420. talents, which makes five and twenty hundred and twenty thousand Crowns, came cleer. And so must those two places be reconciled. As for the place 1 *Reg. 10. 14.* which speaketh of six hundred sixty and six talents of gold; that summe, as I take it, is of other receipts of Salomons which were yearly, and which came to him, besides those profits from *Ophir*.

My opinion of the land of *Ophir*, that it is not *Peru* in *America* (as divers have thought) but a Countrey in the East-Indies, with some reason why at those times they could not make more speedy return to Jerusalem from the East-Indies, than in three years; and that *Tharfis* in Scripture is divers times taken for the Ocean, hath been already declared in the first book.

Only it remaineth that I should speak somewhat of *Pineda* his strange conceits, who being a Spaniard of *Betica*, would fain have *Gades* or *Calis-malis*, in old times called *Tartessus*, which is the Southwest corner of that Province, to bee the *Tharxis* from whence *Salomon* fetcht his gold; for no other reason, as it seems, but for love of his own Countrey, and because of some affinity of sound between *Tharxis* and *Tartessus*. For whereas it may seem strange that it should be three years ere they that took ship in the Red sea, should return from the *East-Indies* to *Jerusalem*, this hath been in part answered already. And further the intelligent may conceive of sundry lets, in the digging and refining of the metall, and in their other traffick, and in their land-carriages between *Jerusalem* and the Red sea, and perhaps also else-where : so that wee have no need to make to *Salomons* men to goe many thousand miles out of their way to *Gades*, round about all *Africk*, that so they might be long a coming home.

For the direct way to *Gades* (which if *Salomon* and the *Israelites* knew not, the *Tyrians* which went with them could not have been ignorant of) was along the Mediterranean sea, and so (besides many wonderfull inconveniences, and terrible navigation in rounding *Africa*) they should have escaped the troublesome land-carriage between *Jerusalem* and the Red sea, through dry, desert, and the three with Countreys : and within 30. mile of *Jerusalem* at *Joppa*, or some other haven in *Salomons* own Countrey, have laden and unladed their ships.

But this direct course they could not hold (saith *Pineda*) because the huge Island of *Atlantis*, in largeness greater than all *Africk* and *Asia*, being swallowed up in the *Atlantic* Ocean, hindered *Salomons* ships from passing through the straits of *Gibraltar*: for this hee allegeth *Plato* in *Timæo*. But that this calamity happened about *Salomons* time, or that thereby the straits of *Gades* were filled with mud, and made unpassable, that there could be no coming to *Gades* by the Mediterranean sea; or that this indraught where the sea runneth most violently, and most easily scoureth his channell, should be filled with mud, and not also the great Ocean in like manner, where this huge Island is supposed to have stood; or that *Salomons* ships being in the Red sea, should neglect the golden Mines in the *East-Indies* (which were infinitely better and nearer to the Red sea, than any in *Spain*) to seek gold at *Cadyz* by the way of compassing *Africa*; it is most 30 ridiculous to imagine. For the Spaniard himself that hath all the rich *Peru* in the West, fortifieth in the *East-Indies*, and inhabites some part thereof, as in *Manilla*, finding in those parts no lesse quantity of gold (the small territory which hee there possessteth considered) than in *Peru*.

The same *Pineda* hath another strange passage round about all *Africa*, which else-where he dreams of: supposing whereas *Jonas* sailing to *Tharxis* the City of *Cilicia*, was cast out in the Mediterranean sea, and taken up there by a Whale, that this Whale in three dayes swimming above twelve thousand English miles along the Mediterranean seas, and so through the straights of *Gades*, and along all the huge seas round about *Africa*, cast up *Jonas* upon the shore of the Red sea, that so he might have perhaps some six 40 miles the shorter (though much the worse) way to *Ninive*. This conceit hee grounds onely upon the ambiguity of the word *Suph*, which oftentimes is an Epitheton of the Red sea (as if we should call it *mare alsophm*, the sea full of weeds) for the Red sea. But in *Jonas* c. 2. 5. it is generally taken in the proper signification for weeds, and not as *Pineda* would have it, who in this place against his own rule (which elsewhere he giveth us) supposeth strange miracles without any need. For this long voyage of the Whale, finished in three dayes, is a greater miracle, than the very preservation of *Jonas* in the belly of the Whale: and therefore seeing there is no necessity of this miracle, we tend it back unto him, keeping his own rule, which in this place he forgets; *Miracula non sunt multiplicanda*. And again, *Non sunt miracula gratis danda, nec pro arbitrio nova fingenda*. *Miracles are not to be multiplied without necessity, nor delivered without cause, nor feigned at pleasure*. Therefore we leave this man in his dreams, which (were he not otherwise very learned and judicious) might be thought unworthy the mentioning. But to proceed with our storie of *Salomon*.

The Queen of *Saba*'s coming from farre to *Salomon*, (as seems, from *Arabia Felix*, & not, as some think, from *Ethiopia*) and her rich presents, and *Salomons* reciprocal magnificence, and his resolving of her difficult questions; those are set down at large in the Text. But herein *Josephus* is greatly mistaken, who calls this Queen of *Saba* *Nicaules*;

*Nicaules*; the successor (saith he out of *Herodotus*) of those thirty and eight *Egyptian* *Joseph*, ant. 8. 1. 2. Kings which succeeded *Meneus* the founder of *Memphis*; adding, that after this *Egyptian*, and the father in law of *Salomon*, the name of *Pharaoh* was left off in *Egypt*. For that it is else-where proved that the Queen was of *Arabia*, not of *Egypt* and *Ethiopia*; so 2 Kings c. 25. were there other *Pharaohs* after the father in law of *Salomon*. Yea, above three hundred years after *Salomon*, *Pharaoh Necho* slew *Josias* King of *Juda*. *Joseph* 4. 25.

It is also written of *Salomon*, that he kept in garrisons fourteen thousand Chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; that he kept in Court every day thirty measures of fine flower, threescore measures of wheat, one hundred sheep, besides stags and fallow Deer, bugles and fowle; four thousand stalls of horses he had for his Chariots and other uses, and for the twelve thousand horsemen of his guard. For, the ten thousand stalls in the first of *Kings* the fourth, are to be taken but for so many horses, whence in the second of *Chronicles* the ninth, it is written but four thousand stalls or teams, and in every teeme ten horses, as *Junius* and the *Geneva* understand it. He was said to be wiser than any men, yea than were *Ethan* the *Ezrabite*, than *Heman*, *Chalcal*, or than *Darda*; to which *Junius* addeth a fifth, to wit, *Ezracl*. For the *Geneva* maketh *Ethan* an *Ezrabite* by Nation. *Josephus* writes them, *Athan*, *Aman*, *Chalceus* and *Donan* the sons of *Hemon*. Hee spake three thousand Proverbs, and his songs were one thousand and five, whereof either the most part perished in the Captivity of *Babylon*, or else because many acts of 20 *Salomons* were written and kept among the publick Records of Civill causes, and not Ecclesiastical, therefore they were not thought necessary to bee inserted into Gods Book.

## §. IIII.

of the fall of Salomon, and how long he lived.

Now as he had plenty of all other things, so had hee no scarcity of women. For besides his seven hundred Wives, hee kept three hundred Concubines, and (forgetting that God had commanded that none of his people should accompany the daughters of Idolaters) he took Wives out of *Egypt*, *Edom*, *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Zidon* and *Heth*: and when he fell a doting, his Wives turned his heart after other gods, as *Asteroth* of the *Zidonians*, *Milcom* or *Molech* of the *Ammonites*, and *Chemosh* of *Moab*.

These things God punished by *Adad* of *Idumea*, *Rezin* of *Damascus*, and by *Jeroboam* his own servant, and one of the masters of his works, who by the ordinance of God tare from his son *Roboam*, ten of the twelve parts of all the territorie he had. *Dens dum in peccatores animaduvertit, aliorum peccatis utitur, quæ ipse non fecit*: God punishing sinners, useth the sins of others, which he himself wrought not.

In the reign of *Salomon* (as in times of long peace) were few memorable actions by 40 him performed, excepting his buildings with other workes of magnificence, and that great *Indian* voyage already mentioned. Fortie years he reigned; how many he lived, it is not written, and must therefore be found only by conjecture. The most likely way to ghesse at the truth in this case is, by considering the actions of *David* before and after *Salomons* birth, whereby we may best make estimation of the years which they consumed, and consequently learn the true, or most likely year of his nativity. Seven years *David* reigned in *Hebron*: in his eighth year hee took *Jerusalem*, and warred with the *Philistims*, who also troubled him in the year following. The bringing home 2 Kings 7. 1. of the Ark seems to have been in the tenth year of *David*, and his intention to build the Temple in the year ensuing, at which time hee had sufficient leisure, living in rest. 50 After this he had warres with the *Philistims*, *Moabites*, *Aramites*, and *Edomites*, which must needs have held him five years, considering the *Aramites* of *Damasco* raised warre against him, after such time as hee had beaten *Hadadezar*; and that in every of these warres, he had the entire victory. Neither is it likely, that these services occupied any longer time, because in those dayes and places there were no wintering camps in use, but at convenient seasons of the year Kings went forth to warre, dispatching all with violence, rather than with temporizing; as maintaining their Armies, partly upon the spoyle of the enemies country, partly upon the private provision which every soldier made for himself. The 17. year of *David*, in which he took *Mephisogeth* the son of 1 Sam. 3. 17. of 17. 18.

of *Jonathan* into his Court, appeareth to have passed away in quiet; and the year following to have begun the warre with *Ammon*; but somewhat late in the end of Summer perhaps, it came to tryall of a battell (for *Joab* after the victorie, returned immediately to *Jerusalem*) the causes and preparations for that warre, taking up all the Summer. *Dauids* personall expedition against the *Aramites*, wherein he brought all the tributaries of *Adadzer* under his own allegiance, appears manifestly to have been the next years work, wherein he did cut off all means of succour from the *Ammonites*; all *Syria*, *Moab*, and *Idumaea* being now at his own devotion. By this reckoning it must have been the 20. year of *Dauids* reign, and about the fiftieth of his life, in which hee sent forth *Joab* to besiege *Rabba*, and finished the warre of *Ammon*: wherein also fell out the matter of *Uriahs* wife. So one half of *Dauids* reign was very prosperous: in the other half hee felt great sorrow, by the expectation, execution, and sad remembrance of that heavey judgement laid upon him by God for his foul and bloody offence.

Now very manifest it is, that in the year after the death of that child which was begotten in adultery, *Salomon* was born, who must needs therefore have been nineteen years old or thereabout when he began to reign at the decease of his father, as being begotten in the 21. year of his fathers reign, who reigned in all forty.

This account hath also good coherence with the following times of *David*, as may be collected out of ensuing Actions: for two years passed ere *Absholon* slew his brother *Ammon*; three years ere his father pardoned him, and two years more ere he came into the Kings presence. After this he prepared horses and men, and laid the foundation of his rebellion, which seems to have been one years work. So the rebellion it self, with all that happened thereupon, as the Commotion made by *Sheba* the death of *Amasa*, and the rest, may well seem to have been in the 30. year of *Dauids* reign.

Whether the three years of famine should be reckoned apart from the last years of war with the *Philistims*, or confounded with them, it were more hard than needfull to conjecture. Plain enough it is, that in the ten remaining years of *David* there was time sufficient, and to spare, both for the three years of famine, for four years of warre, and for numbring the people, with the pestilence ensuing; as also for his own last 30. firmitie, and disposing of the Kingdome. Yet indeed it seems that the warre with the *Philistims* was but one years work, and ended in three or four fights, of which the two or three former were at *Gob* or *Nob* near unto *Gezer*, and the last at *Gath*. This warre the *Philistims* undertook, as it seemeth, upon confidence gathered out of the tumults in *Israel*, and perhaps emboldened by *Dauids* old age: for hee fainted now in the battell, and was afterwards hindered by his men from exposing himself unto danger any more. So *David* had six or seven years of rest, in which time it is likely that many of his great men of Warre dyed (being of his own age) whereby the stirring spirit of *Adonijah* found little succour in the broken party of *Joab* the sonne of *Zervia*.

At this time it might both truly be said by *David* to *Salomon*, *Thou art a wise man*, and by *Salomon* to God, *I am but a young child*: for nineteen years of age might well agree with either of these two speeches.

Nevertheless there are some that gather out of *Salomons* professing himself a child, that he was but eleven years old when hee began to reign. Of these *Rabbi Salomon* seems the first Author, whom other of great learning and judgement have herein followed: grounding themselves perhaps upon that which is said of *Absholons* rebellion, that it was after forty years, which they understood as years of *Dauids* reign. But whereas *Rehoboam* the sonne of *Salomon* was 41. years old when he began to reign, it would follow hereby that his father had begotten him, being himself but a child of 50. nine or ten years old; the difference between their ages being no greater, if *Salomon* (who reigned 40. years) were but eleven years old when his reign began. To avoyd this inconvenience, *Fosephus* allows 80. years of reign to *Solomon*; a report so disagreeing with the Scriptures, that it needs no confutation. Some indeed have in favour of this opinion, construed the words of *Fosephus*, as if they included all the years of *Salomons* life. But by such reckoning hee should have been 40. years old at his Fathers death; and consequently should have been born long before his Father had wonne *Jerusalem*; which is a manifest untruth. Wherefore the 40. years

remembered in *Absholons* rebellion, may either seem to have reference to the space between *Dauids* first anointment, and the trouble which God brought upon him for his wickednesse, or perhaps be read (according to *Fosephus*, *Theodoret*, and the Latine translation) four years; which passed between the return of *Absholon* to *Jerusalem*, and his breaking out.

#### S. V. of Salomons writings.

Here remain of *Salomons* workes, the *Proverbs*, the *Preacher*, and the song of *Salomon*. In the first hee teacheth good life, and correcteth manners; in the second, the vanity of humane nature; in the third, he singeth as it were the Epithalamion of Christ and his Church. For the Book intitled, The wisdome of *Salomon*, (which some give unto *Salomon*, and some make the elder *Philo* the Author thereof) *Hierome* and many others of the best learned make us think it was not *Salomon* that wrote it. *Stylus libri sapientia* (saith *Hierome*) qui *Salomonis inscribitur*, *Graciam redeo* etiam ad Ciceronem *eloquentiam*; *The Stile of the Book of wisdome, which is ascribed to Salomon, favoureth* sum. *of the Gracian eloquence*; and of the same opinion was *S. Augustine*, and yet he confesseth in the nineteenth Book, and twentieth Chapter of the Cite of God, that the Author of that Book hath a direct foretelling of the passion of Christ in these words: *Circumveniamus justum, quoniam insuavis est nobis, &c.* Let us circumvent the righteous, Sap. 2. for he is displeasing to us, he is contrary to our doings, he abecketh us for offending against the Law, he makes his boast to have the knowledge of God, and he calleth himself the son of the Lord, &c. and so doth the course of all the following words point directly at Christ. The Books of *Ecclesiastes*, *Proverbs* and *Cantica Canticorum*, *Rabbi Moses Kimchi* S. Sem. fol. 62. ascribeth to *Ishay* the Prophet. *Suidas* and *Cedrenus* report, that *Salomon* wrote of the remedies of all diseases, and graved the same on the sides of the Porch of the Temple, which (they say) *Ezechias* pulled down, because the people, neglecting help from God by prayer, repaired thither for their recoveries.

Of *Salomons* Books of Invocations, and Incantments to cure diseases, and expell evil spirits, *Fosephus* hath written at large, though (as I conceive) rather out of his own invention, or from some uncertain report, than truly.

He also speaketh of one *Eliazarus*, who by the root in *Salomons* ring disposeth divers persons of evil spirits in the presence of *Vespasian*, and many others, which I will not stand to examine.

Certainly, so strange an example of humane frailtie hath never been read of as this King: who having received wisdome from God himself, in honour of whom, and for his onely service, hee built the first and most glorious Temple of the world: he that was made King of *Israel* and *Judea*, not by the law of Nature, but by the love of God, and became the wisest, richest, and happiest of all Kings, did in the end, by the perswasion of a few weak and wretched Idolatrous Women, forget and forsake the Lord of all the world, and the giver of all goodnesse, of which he was more liberal to this King, than to any that ever the world had. Of whom *Syracides* writeth in this manner: *Salomon reigned in a peaceable time, and was glorious, for God made all quiet round about, that hee might build a house to his Name; and prepare the Sanctuary for ever; How wise wast thou in thy youth, and wast filled with understanding, as with a floud? Thy mind covered the whole earth, and hath filled it with grave and dark sentences. Thy name went abroad in the Isles, and for thy peace thou wast beloved, &c.* but thus hee concludeth: *Thou didst bow thy loynes to Women, and wast overcome by thy body; thou didst stain thine honour, and hast defiled thy posteritie, and hast brought wrath upon thy children, and felt sorrow for thy folly*, cap. 27.

#### S. VI. Of the Contemporaries of Salomon.

Neer the beginning of *Salomons* reign, *Agesslaus* the third of the *Heraclidae* in *Corinth*; *Labotes* in *Lacedaemon*; and soon after *Silvius Alba*, the fourth of the *Silvii*, swayed those Kingdomes: *Laophanes* then governing *Affyria*; *Agastus* and *Archippus* the second and third Princes after *Codrus*, ruling the *Athenians*.

In the six and twentieth of *Salomons* reign, *Hiram* of *Tyre* dyed, to whom *Balastus* succeeded, and reigned seventeen years, after *Mercators* account; who reckons the time of his rule by the age of his sons. *Josephus* gives him fewer years. *Theophilus Antiochenus* against *Antolius* finds *Bozorius* the next after *Hiram*, if there be not some Kings omitted between the death of *Hiram* and the reign of *Bozorius*.

*Paphres* being dead, about the twentieth of *Salomon*, *Sefac* or *Shishak* (as our English *Geneva* termes him) began to govern in *Egypt*, being the same with him whom *Diodorus* calleth *Sofachis*; *Josephus*, *Sulac*; *Cedrenus*, *Sufestinus*; *Eusebius* in the colume of the *Egyptian* Kings, *Smendes*; and in that of the *Hebrewes*, *Sulac*. *Josephus* in the eighth of his *Antiquities*, reproveth it as an error in *Herodotus*, that he ascribeth the Acts of *Sefac* to *Sefostris*, which per chance *Herodotus* might have done by comparison, accounting *Sefac* another *Sefostris*, for the great things he did.

Of the great acts and virtues of King *Sefostris* I have spoken already in the story of the *Egyptian* Princes: only in this he was reprov'd, that he caus'd four of his captive Kings to draw his Caroch, when he was dispos'd to be seen, and to ride in triumph: one of which four, saith *Eutropius*, at such time as *Sefostris* was carried out to take the aire, cast his head continually back upon the two foremost wheeles next him; which *Sefostris* perceiving, asked him what he found worthy the admiration in that motion: to whom the captive King answered, That in those he beheld the instableness of all worldly things; for that both the lowest part of the wheele was suddenly carry'd about, and became the highest, and the upmost part was as suddenly turned downward, and under all: which when *Sefostris* had judiciously weigh'd, he dismiss'd those Princes, and all other from the like servitude in the future. Of this *Sefostris*, and that hee could not be taken for *Sefac*, I have spoken at large in that part of the *Egyptian* Kings preceding.

Hier. Mis. 4. 17.

## CHAP. XIX.

### Of Salomons Successors untill the end of Jehosphat.

#### S. I.

Of Rehoboam his beginnings, the defection of the ten Tribes, and Rehoboams Idolatry.



**R**ehoboam the Sonne of *Salomon* by *Nahama* an *Ammonitess*, now forty years old, succeeded his Father *Salomon*, and was anointed at *Shechem*, where the ten Tribes of *Israel* were assembled: who attended a while the return of *Rehoboam* as yet in *Egypt*, since he fled thither, after *Salomon*. After his arrivall the people presented a Petition to *Rehoboam*, to be eased of those great Tributes laid on them by his Father. *Sic enim firmis ei fore Imperium, si amari mallet quam metui*. So

An. 1. 8. 4. 3.

should his Empire (saith *Josephus*) be more assured, if hee desired rather to be beloved than feared: whereof hee took three dayes to deliberate before his answer, of whom therefore it could not be said as of *David*, that hee was wiser than all his Teachers. For as of himself hee knew not how to resolve, so had hee not the judgement to discern of Counsell; which is the very test of wisdom in Princes, and in all men else. But notwithstanding that hee had consulted with those grave and advised men, that served his Father, who perswaded him by all means to satisfie the multitude: hee was transported by his familiars and favourites, not only to continue on the backs of his subjects those burdens which greatly crush't them; but (vaunting fallily of greatness exceeding his fathers) he threatened in sharp, or rather in terrible termes, to lay yet heavier, and more unsupportable loads on them. But as it appeared in the successe, those younger advisers greatly mistook the nature of severity, which without the temper of clemency is no other than cruelty it self: they also were ignorant that it ought to be used for the help, and not for the harm of subjects. For what is the strength of a King left by his people: and what cords or fetters have ever lasted long, but those which have been

39

twisted and forged by love only: His witlesse parasites could well judge of the Kings disposition: and being well learned therein, though ignorant in all things else, it sufficed and enabled them sufficiently for the places they held. But this answer of *Rehoboam* did not a little advance *Rehoboams* designs. For being foretold by the Prophet *Achish* of his future advancement, these the Kings threats (changing the peoples love into furie) confirmed and gave courage to his hopes. For he was no sooner arriv'd, than elected King of *Israel*: the people cry'd out, What portion have we in *David*? wee have no inheritance in the Sonne of *Isai*. Now though themselves, even all the Tribes of *Israel*, had consented to *Dauids* anointing at *Hebron* the second time, acknowledging that they were his bones and his flesh: yet now after the manner of rebels, they forgot both the bands of nature, and their duty to God; and, as all alienate resolved hearts doe they served themselves for the present, with impudent excuses. And now over-late, and after-time. *Rehoboam* sent *Adoram*, one of the Taxers of the people, a man most hateful to all his Subjects, to pacifie them: whom they instantly beat to death with stones. Whereupon the King affrighted, got him from *Shechem* with all speed, and recovered *Jerusalem*, where preparing to invade *Israel*, with an hundred and fourscore thousand cholen men, *Shimei* in the person of God commanding to the contrary, all was stayed for the present. In the mean time *Rehoboam* the new King fortified *Shechem* on this side, and *Penuel* on the other side of *Jordan*, and fearing that the Union and exercise of one Religion would also joyn the peoples hearts again to the House of *David*, and having in all likelihood also promised the *Egyptians* to follow their Idolatry, hee set up two Calves of gold for the children of *Israel* to worship, impiously perswading them that those were the Gods, or at least by these hee represented those Gods which delivered them out of *Egypt*: and refusing the service of the Levites, hee made Priests fit for such gods. It must needs be that by banishing the Levites which served *David* and *Salomon* through all *Israel*, *Rehoboam* greatly enriched himself: as taking into his hands all those Cities which were given them by *Moses* and *Joshua*, for as it is written, *The Levites left their suburbs, and their possession, and came to Juda. &c.* This irreligious policie of *Rehoboam* (which was the foundation of an Idolatry that never could be rooted out, untill *Israel* for it was rooted out of the Land) was by Prophecy and Miracles impugned sufficiently when it first began; but the affections maintaining it, were so strong, that neither Prophecy nor Miracle could make them yeeld. *Rehoboam* could not be moved now by the Authority of *Abia*, who from the Lord had first promised unto him the Kingdom; nor by the withering of his own hand as hee stretched it over the Altar, which also clave asunder according to the signe, which the man of God had given him by the commandment of God, who again recovered and cured him of that defect; yet he continued as obstinate an Idolater as before, for he held it the safest course in policie to proceed as he had begun. This impious invention of *Rehoboam*, who forsook God, and the Religion of his forefathers, by God and his Ministers might them, was by a modern Historian compared with the policies of late Ages; observing well the practice of his Nation, being an Italian born. *Sic qui hodie (saith he) politici vocantur, & propria commoda presentelq; utilitates sibi tanquam ultimum finem constituunt, causam quam vocant status in capite omnium ponunt: pro ipsa tuenda, promovenda, conservanda, amplianda, nihil non faciendum putant. Si injuria proximo irroganda, si iustitie honestatq; leges subvertenda, si religio ipsa pessundanda, si deniq; omnia jura divini & humana violanda, nihil intentatum, nil per fas nefasq; relinquendum censent; cunctant, omnia percant, nihil ad ipsos, modo id, quod e re sua esse sibi persvadent, obtineant, ac si nullus sit qui talia curet, castigareve possit Deus: So they who are now called Politicians, propounding to themselves as their utmost end and scope, their own commoditie and present profit, are wont to allege the case of state for sooth, as the principall point to be regarded: for the good of the state, for advancing, preserving, or encreasing of the state, they think that they may doe any thing. If they mean to oppress their neighbour, to overturn all lawes of justice and honesty, if Religion it self must goe to wrack, yea, if all rights of God and man must be violated, they will try all courses, be it right, be it wrong, they will doe any thing: let all goe to ruine, what care they, so long as they may have what they would, as who should say, there were no God that would offer to meddle in such matters, or had power to correct them.*

Indeed this allegation of *raggione del stato*, did serve as well to uphold, as at the first

Sam. 7. 14

King. 1. 2. 27

King. 13. 4

Verse 6.



first it had done to bring in this vile Idolatry of the ten Tribes. Upon this ground *Amazias* the Priest of *Bethel* counselled the Prophet *Amos* not to prophesie at *Bethel*; For (saith he) it is the Kings Court. Upon this ground even *Jeſhu* that had massacred the Priests of *Baal*, in zeal for the Lord, yet would not in any wise depart from that politique sinne of *Feroboam* the sonne of *Nebat*, which made *Israel* to sinne. It was reason of state that perswaded the last famous French King *Henry* the fourth to change his Religion, yet the Protestants whom he forsook, obeyed him, but some of the Papists whom hee followed, murdered him. So strongly doth the painted vizor of wise proceeding delude even those that know the foul face of impietie lurking under it: and behold the wretched ends that have ever followed it; whereof *Jeſhu*, and all the Kings of *Israel* had, and were themselves very great examples.

## S. II.

of Rehoboam his impietie; for which he was punished by Sefac: of his end; and Contemporaries.

**V** Hile *Feroboam* was occupied in setting up his new Religion, *Rehoboam* on the other side, having now little hope to recover the Provinces lost, strengthened the principall places remaining with all endeavour; for he fortified and victualled fifteen Cities of *Juda* and *Benjamin*: not that he feared *Feroboam* alone, but the *Egyptians*, to whom *Feroboam* had not only fastned himself, but withall invited them to invade *Juda*: laying perchance before them the uncountable riches of *David* and *Salomon*, which might now be easily had, seeing ten of the twelve Tribes were revolted, and become enemies to the *Judeans*. So as by those two waies (of late years of ten trodden) to wit, change of Religion, and invitation of forraign force, *Feroboam* hoped to settle himself in the seat of *Israel*, whom yet the powerfull God for his Idolatry in few years after rooted out, with all his. *Rehoboam* having also, as hee thought, by fortifying divers places, assured his estate, forsook the law of the living God, and made high Places, and Images, and Groves, on every high Hill, and under every green Tree.

And therefore in the fifth year of his reign, *Sefac* or *Shishac* before spoken of, being now King of *Egypt*, and with whom, as well *Adad* of *Idumea*, as *Feroboam*, were familiar, and his instruments, entred *Juda* with twelve thousand Chariots, and threecore thousand Horse, besides foot-men, which *Josephus* numbers at four hundred thousand. This Armie was compounded of four Nations: *Egyptians*, *Lubeans*, *Succaans*, and *Cusites*. The *Lubeans* were *Lybaans*, the next bordering Region to *Egypt*, on the West-side. The *Cusites* were of *Petrea*, and of the desert *Arabia*, which afterward followed *Zera* against *Asa* King of *Juda*. The *Succaans* according to *Jenius* his opinion, were of *Succoth*, which signifieth Tents: he doth suppose that they were the *Troglodites*, mentioned often in *Plinie*, *Ptolomie*, and other Authors. The *Troglodites* inhabited not farre from the banks of the red Sea, in 22. degrees from the line Northward, about fix hundred English miles from the best and Maritimate part of *Egypt*: and therefore I do not think that the *Succims* or *Succai* were those *Troglodites*, but rather those *Arabians* which *Ptolomie* calls *Arabes Egyptii*, or *Ichthyophagi*, which possesse that part of *Egypt* behind the mountains called *Alabastrini* and the red Sea, farre neerer *Egypt*, and readier to be levied than those removed Savages of the *Troglodites*.

With this great and powerfull Army, *Sefac* invaded *Juda*, and (besides many other strong Cities) wan *Jerusalem* it self; of which, and of the Temple, and Kings house, he took the spoyle, carrying away (besides other treasures) the golden shires which *Salomon* had made, in imitation of those which *David* recovered from *Adadezer* in the *Syrian* war: these *Rehoboam* supplied with Targets of brasse, which were fit enough to guard a King of his quality: whom *Syracides* calleth, *The foolishnesse of Judea*, and held the Jewes as their Tributaries: *Sefac*, as it seems, rendring up to *Rehoboam* his places on that condition. So much may be gathered out of the word of God, where premising the deliverance of *Juda* after their humiliation, he doth notwithstanding leave them under the yoke of *Egypt*, in these words: *Nevertheless they (to wit, the Judeans) shall be his servants, that is, the servants of Sefac.*

After

After this overthrow and dishonour, *Rehoboam* reigned twelve years, and his losses received by *Sefac*, notwithstanding, he continued the war against *Feroboam* all his lifetime. After his death *Feroboam* governed *Israel* four years.

*Rehoboam* lived 58. years, and reigned 17. his story was written at large by *Sheameiah* and *Hiddon* the Prophets, but the same perished with that of *Nathan*, and the rest.

With *Rehoboam*, *Archippus*, and *Terſippus*, the third and fourth *Archontes* or Governors for life after *Codrus*, governed in *Athens*. *Abdaſtratus*, or *Abſtrartus*, in *Tyre*. *Dorifthus* the fifth of the *Heraclide* in *Sparta*, according to *Eusebius* (others make him *Eusebius*, the fixt) and *Priminus* the fourth in *Corinth*. Over the *Latines* reigned *Sylvius Alba*, the fourth and fifth of the *Sylvii*.

About the 12. of *Rehoboam*, *Abdaſtratus* King of *Tyre* was murdered by his Nurfes sons, or foster-brethren, the elder of which usurped the Kingdom twelve years.

Toward his latter times *Periciades*, or *Pyrithiades*, began to govern *Aſſyria*, the 34. King thereof: and not long after *Aſtartus*, the son of *Baleaſtartus*, recovered the Kingdom of *Tyre* from the Usurpers.

## S. III.

of the great battell between Jeroboam and Abia, with a Corollarie of the examples of Gods judgements.

**A** *Abijah* the son of *Rehoboam*, inherited his Fathers Kingdom, and his vices. He raised an Armie of four hundred thousand, with which hee invaded *Feroboam*, who encountered him with a double number of eight hundred thousand: Both Armies joyned neer to the Mount *Ephraim*, where *Feroboam* was utterly overthrow, and the strength of *Israel* broken: for there fell of that side five hundred thousand; the greatest overthrow that ever was given or received of those Nations. *Abijah* being now master of the field, recovered *Bethel*, *Jeſhanah*, and *Ephron*. Soon after which discomfiture, *Feroboam* died: who reigned in all 22. years. *Abijah*, the better to strengthen himself, entred into league with *Hefson*, the third of the *Adads* of *Syria*; as may be gathered out of the 2. of *Chron*. he reigned but three years, and then died: the particulars of his acts were written by *Idad* the Prophet, as some part of his Fathers were.

Here we see how it pleased God to punish the sins of *Salomon* in his son *Rehoboam*: first, by an Idolator and Traitor: and then by the successor of that *Egyptian*, whose daughter *Salomon* had married, thereby the better to assure his estate, which while he served God, was by God assured against all and the greatest neighbouring Kings; and when he forsook him, it was torn asunder by his meanest Vassals. Not that the Father wanted strength to defend him from the *Egyptian Sefac*; For the son *Abijah* was able to levie four hundred thousand men, and with the same number hee overthrew eight hundred thousand *Israelites*, and slew of them five hundred thousand; God giving spirit, courage, and invention, when, and where it pleased him: And as in those times the causes were expreſt, why it pleased God to punish both Kings and their People; the same being both before, and at the instant delivered by Prophets: so the same just God, who liveth and governeth all things for ever, doth in these our times give victory, courage, and discourage, raise, and throw down Kings, Estates, Cities, and Nations, for the same offences which were committed of old, and are committed in the present: for which reason, in these and other the afflictions of *Israel*, always the causes are set down, that they might be as presidents to succeeding ages. They were punished with famine in *David*s time for three years, For *Saul* and his bloody house, &c. And *David* towards his latter end suffered all sorts of afflictions, and sorrows in effect, for *Uriah*, *Salomon* had ten Tribes of twelve torn from his son for his Idolatry. *Rehoboam* was spoiled of his riches and honour by *Sefac* of *Egypt*, because the people of *Juda* made images, high places, and groves, &c. and because they suffered *Sodomites* in the Land. *Feroboam* was punished in himself and his posteritie, for the golden Calves that hee erected. *Foram* had all his sonnes slain by the *Philistims*, and his very bowels torn out of his body by an excoriating flux, for murdering his brethren. *Ahah* and *Jezebel* were slain, the blood of the one, the body of the other eaten with dogges, for the false accusing and killing of *Naboth*. So also hath God punished the same, and

S f

the

the like finnes in all after-times, and in these our dayes by the same famine, plagues, warre, losse, vexation, death, sickness, and calamities; howsoever the wise men of the world raise these effects no higher than to second causes, and such other accidents, which, as being next their eyes and ears, seem to them to work every alteration that happeneth.

## S. IV.

of Asa and his Contemporaries.

2 Chron. 14.

**T**O Abijah succeeded Asa, who enjoyed peace for his first ten years, in which time hee established the Church of God, breaking down the altars dedicated to strange gods, with their images, cutting down their groves, and taking away their high places. He also spared not his own mother, who was an Idolatresse, but deposing her from her regency, brake her Idoll, stampit, and burnt it. Hee also fortified many Cities, and other places, providing (as provident Kings do) for the troubles of war in the leisure of peace. For not long after hee was invaded by Zerah, who then commanded all the Arabians bordering Judea, and with such a multitude entred the territorie of Asa, as (for any thing that I have read) were never assembled of that Nation, either before or since: For it is written, that there came against the Judeans, Zerah of Ethiopia, with an hoste of ten hundred thousand, and three hundred Chariots, which Asa encountered with an Armie of five hundred and fourscore thousand, and slewed out of those two Tribes of Juda and Benjamin, which obeyed him, and which hee overthrew this fearfull multitude, and had the spoile both of their Cities and Campes.

\* In the former book p. 4. s. 14. item, c. 8. s. 10. p. 6.

That this Zerah was not an Ethiopian, I have \* proved already, and were it but the length between Ethiopia and Judea, and the strong flourishing Regions of Egypt interjacent (who would not suffer a million of strangers to pass through them) it were sufficient to make it appear how foolish the opinion is, that these invaders were Ethiopians. But in that the Scriptures acknowledge that Gerar was belonging to Zerah, and the Cities thereabouts were spoiled by the Judeans, in following their victory, as places being long to Zerah, and that all men know that Gerar standeth upon the torrent of Besor, which David pass over when he surprized the Amalekites or Arabians; this proveth sufficiently, that Zerah was leader of the Arabians; and that Gerar was a frontier town standing on the uttermost South-border of all Judea, from all parts of Ethiopia six hundred miles. Also the spoiles which Asa took, as the cattell, camels, and sheep, whereof hee sacrificed five thousand, shew them to be Arabians adjoining, and not far off, and not unknown Ethiopians. And if it be objected that these desert countries can hardly yeeld a million of men fit for the wars, I answer, that it is as like that Arabia Petraea, and the Desert, which compass two parts of the holy Land, should yeeld ten hundred thousand, as that two Tribes of the twelve, should arm five hundred and fourscore thousand. Besides, it answereth to the promise of God to Abraham, that these Nations should exceed in number; for God spake it of Ismael, that hee would make him fruitfull, and multiply him exceedingly, that he should beget twelve Princes, &c.

2 Chron. 14. p. 1.

Baasha a King of Israel began to reign in the third of Asa, and fearing the greatness of Asa after his great victory, entertained Benhadad King of Syria, of the race of Adadazar, to joyn with him against Asa; and to the end to block him up, he fortified Rama, which lieth in the way from Jerusalem toward Samaria.

This war began according to the letter of the Scriptures in the 36. year of Asa his reign: but because in the first of Kings the 16. it is said that Baasha died in the 26. year of Asa, therefore could not Baasha begin this war in the 35. of Asa his reign, but in the 35. year of the division of Juda & Israel; for so many years it was from the first of Rehoboam, who reigned 17. years to the 16. of Asa. It may seem strange, that Asa being able to bring into the field an Army of five hundred & fourscore thousand good Soldiers, did not easily drive away Baasha, and defeat him of his purposes, the victories of Abia against Jeroboam, and of Asa himself against Zerah, being yet fresh in mind, which might well have emboldened the men of Juda, and asmuch disheartened the enemies. Questionlesse there were some important Circumstances, omitted in the Text, which

caused Asa to fight at this time with money. It may be that the employment of so many hundred thousands of hands, in the late service against Zerah, had caused many mens private businesse to lye undispatched, whereby the people being now intensive to the culture of their lands and other trades, might be unwilling to stir against the Israelites, choosing rather to wink at apparent inconvenience, which the building of Rama would bring upon them in after-times. Such backwardness of the people might have deterred Asa from adventuring himself with the least part of his forces, & committing the success to the hands of God. Howsoever it were, he took the treasures remaining in the temple, with which he waged Benhadad the Syrian against Baasha, whose employments Benhadad readily accepted, and brake off confederacy with Baasha. For the Israelites were his borderers and next neighbours, whom neither himself (after his invasion) nor his successors after him ever gave over, till they had made themselves masters of that Kingdom. So Benhadad being now entred into Nephtalim, without resistance, hee spoiled divers principall Cities thereof, and enforced Baasha to quit Rama, and to leave the same to Asa, with all the materials which he had brought thither, to fortifie the same: which done, Benhadad, who loved neither party, being laden with the spoiles of Israel, and the treasures of Juda, returned to Damascus. After this, when Hanani the Prophet reprehended Asa, in that he now relied on the strength of Syria, and did not rest himself on the favour and assistance of God, he not only caused Hanani to be imprisoned, but he began to burden and oppress his people, and was therefore stricken with the grievous paines of the gout in his feet, wherewith after he had been two years continually tormented, he gave up the ghost when he had reigned 41. years.

There lived with Asa, Agesilaus the sixth of the Heraclidae, and Bacis the fifth King of the same race in Corinth, of whom his successors were afterward called Bacidae, Asarimus, and Asarimus were Kings in Tyre. Asarimus took revenge on his brother Phelites, for the murder of Ithobalus Priest of the goddesse Asarta, whom Salomon in dotage worshipped. Atys and Capys ruled the Latines: Pirithiades and Ophratem the Assyrians: Teispus and Phorbas the Athenians: Chemmis reigned in Egypt; who dying in the 36. year of Asa, left Cheops his successor, that reigned fifty six years, even to the 16. of Joas.

## S. V.

Of the great alteration falling out in the ten Tribes during the reign of Asa.

**I**N the reign of Asa the Kingdom of Israel felt great and violent commotions, which might have reduced the ten Tribes unto their former allegiance to the house of David, if the wisdom of God had not otherwise determined. The wickedness of Jeroboam had, in his latter dayes, the sentence of heavie vengeance laid upon it, by the mouth of Abia, the same Prophet which had foretold the division of Israel, for the sinne of Salomon, and his reign over the ten Tribes. One son Jeroboam had among others, in whom onely God found so much piety, as (though it sufficed not to withhold his wrath from that Family) it procured unto him a peaceable end; an honourable testimony of the peoples love, by their generall mourning and lamentation at his death, and (wherein he was most happy) the favourable approbation of God himself.

After the losse of this good son, the ungodly father was soon taken away: a miserable creature, so conscious of his vile unthankfulness to God, that hee durst not suffer his own name to be used in consulting with an holy Prophet, assured of the ruine hanging over him and his, yea of Gods extreme hatred; yet forbearing to destroy those accursed Idols that wrought his confusion. So loath he was to forsake his worldly wisdom, when the world was ready to forsake him, and all belonging to him, his hatefull memory excepted.

Nadab the son of Jeroboam, reigned in the second and third years of Asa, which are reckoned as two years, though indeed his fathers last year of two and twenty did run along (how farre is uncertain) with the second of Asa, whose third year was the first of Baasha, so that perhaps this Nadab enjoyed not his Kingdom one whole year. Hee did not alter his fathers courses, neither did God alter his sentence. It seems that Hee little feared the judgements denounced against his fathers house: for as a Prince that

was secure of his own estate, he armed all *Israel* against the *Philistims*, and besieged one of their Towns. There (whether it were so, that the people were offended with his ill success, and recalled to mind their grievous losse of five hundred thousand under *Feroboam*, counting it an unluckie family to the Nation; or whether by some particular indiscretion, he exasperated them) slain he was by *Baalha*, whom the Army did willingly take order with the house of *Feroboam*, that none of them might molest him, putting all of them, without mercy, to the sword. That he did this for private respects, and not in regard of Gods will to have it so, it is evident by his continuing in the same form of Idolatry which *Feroboam* had begun. Wherefore he received the same sentence from the God that had been laid upon *Feroboam*; which was executed upon him also in the same sort. He began to infect *Asa*, by fortifying *Ramah*; but was diverted from thence by the Syrian *Benhadad*, who did wait his Countrey, destroying all the Land of *Nephthali*. Four and twenty years he reigned, and then dying, left the Crown to *Ela* his son; who enjoyed it, as *Nadab* the son of *Feroboam* had done; two years current, perhaps not one compleat.

one compleat.

*Ela* was as much an Idolater as his father was: and withall a riotous person, *Hee* sent an Army against *Gibbethon*, the same town of the *Philistims*, before which *Nadab* the son of *Jeroboam* perished; but he sat at home the whilest, feasting and drinking with his Minions, whereby he gave such advantage against himself, as was not neglected. *Zimri*, an ambitious man, remaining with the King at *Tirza*, finding his Master too dissolute, and his behaviour too contemptible, conceived hope of the like fortune as *Baalsha* had, and his behaviour too contemptible, conceived hope of the like fortune as *Baalsha* had found, by doing as *Baalsha* had done. Wherefore he did set upon *Ela* in his drunkenness, and slew him. Presently upon which fact, he styled himself King of *Israel*: and began his reign with massacring all the house of *Baalsha*; extending his cruelty not onely to his children, and kinsfolk, but unto all his friends in *Tirza*. These newes were quickly blown to the Camp at *Gibbethon*, where they were not welcommed according to *Zimri*'s expectation. For the Souldiers in stead of proclaiming him King, proclaimed him Traitor: and being led by *Omri*, whom they saluted King, they (quitting the siege of *Gibbethon*) presented themselves before *Tirza*; which in short space they may so seem to have forced. *Zimri* wanting strength to defend the City, not courage to keep himself from falling alive into his enemies hands, did set fire on the Palace, consuming it and himself together to ashes. Seven dayes he is said to have reigned: accounting (as is most likely) to the time that *Omri* was proclaimed in the Camp. For *Zimri* was also an Idolater, Walking in the way of *Jeroboam*; and therefore is likely to have had more time wherein to declare himself, than the reign of seven dayes, and those consumed partly in murdering the friends of *Baalsha*, partly in seeking to have defended his own life. After the death of *Ela*, there arose another King to oppose the faction of *Omri*; whereby it may seem, that *Zimri* had made his party strong, as being able to set up a new head, who doubtless would never have appeared, if there had not been ready to his 40 hand, some strength, not unlikely to resist and vanquish the Army which maintained *Omri*. How long this *Tibni*, the new competitor of *Omri*, held out, I doe not find; onely it appears that his side was decayed, and so he died, leaving no other Successor than his concurrent.

§. VI.

s. VI.

*A conjecture of the causes hindering the re-union of Israel with Juda, which might have been effected by these troubles.*

**A**ny man that shall consider the state of *Israel* in those times, may justly wonder<sup>50</sup> how it came to passe, that either the whole Nation, wearied with the calamities already suffered under these unfortunate Princes, and with the present civil warres, did not return to their ancient Kings, and re-unite themselves with the mighty Tribes of *Juda* and *Benjamin*; or that *Zimri* and *Tibi*, with their oppressed factions, did not call in *Asha*, but rather chose the one to endure, a desperate necessity of yeelding, or burning himself, the other to languish away, as a man forsaken; than to have recourse unto a remedy, so sure, so ready, and so honourable. To say that **GOD** was pleased to have it so, were a true, but an idle answer (for his secret will is the

the cause of all things ) unless it could be proved , that he had forbidden *Aſa* to deal in that buſineſſe, as he forbad *Rehoboam* to force the rebellious people to obedience. That the reſtraint laid by God upon *Rehoboam*, did only bind his hands from attempting the ſuppreſſion of that preſent inſurrection, it appears by the Warre continued between *Iſrael* and *Juda*, ſo many years following : wherein *Abia* ſo farre prevailed, than he wari a great battail, and recovered ſome Townes belonging to the other Tribes, which hee annexed to his own Dominion. Wherefore we may boldly look into the ſecond cauſes, moving the People and Leaders of the ten Tribes, to ſuffer any thing under new up-ſtarts, rather than to caſt their eyes upon that Royall houſe of *David*, from which the ſucceſſion of five Kings in lineall deſcent, had taken away all imputation, that might formerly have beene laid upon the mean beginnings thereof. To think that *Omri* had prevented his Competitors in making peace with *Aſa*, was a conjecture more bold than probable. For *Omri* was not only an Idolater, but did worſe than all that were before him ; which as it might ſerve alone to prove, that *Aſa*, being a godly King, would not adhere to him, ſo the courſe which he profeſſed to take at the very firſt, of revenging the maſſacre committed upon the family and friends of *Baſha*, *Aſa* his mortal enemy) gives manifeſt reaſon, why *Zimri*, who had wrought that great execution, ſhould more juſtly than he have expected the friendſhip of *Juda* in that quarrel. Wherefore in ſearching out the reaſon of this backwardneſſe in the ten Tribes ( which was ſuch, that they may ſeeme to have never thought upon the matter ) to ſubmit themſelves to their true Princes ; it were not amils to examine the cauſes moving the people to revenge the death of *Eli*, an idle drunkard, rather than of *Nadab* the ſon of *Jeroboam*, who followed the wars in perſon, as a man of ſpirit & courage. Surely it is apparent, that the very firſt defection of the ten Tribes, was ( if we look upon human reaſon ) occaſioned by deſire of breaking that heavie yoke of bondage wherewith *Salomon* had galled their neckes. Their deſire was to have a King that ſhould not oppreſſe them ; not to have no King at all. And therefore when the arrogant follie of *Rehoboam* had cauſed them to renounce him, they did immediately chooſe *Jeroboam* in his ſtead, as a man likely to afford that liberty unto them, for which he had contended in their behalfe. Neither were they ( as it ſeemes ) herein altogether deceived. For his affeſtation of popularity appears in his building of decayed Towers, and in the inſtitution of his new deviled Idolatry; where he told the people, that it was too much for them to travaile ſo far as to *Jeruſalem*. But whether it were ſo, that his moderation, being voluntary, began to ceaſe, towards the latter end of his reign, and in the reign of his ſon, when long time of poſſeſſion had confirmed his title, which at the firſt was only good by courteſie of the people : or whether the people ( as often happens in ſuch caſes ) were more offended by ſome prerogatives of a King, that hee ſtill retained in his own hands, than pleaſed with his remiſſion of other burdens, it is cleerly apparent, that the whole army of all *Iſrael* joyined with *Baſha*, taking in good part the death of *Nadab*, and eradication of *Jeroboam* houſe.

40 Now the reign of *Baal* a himself, was (so thought that remaineth in writing of it) every way unfortunate; his labour and cost at *Rama* was cast away; the other side of his Kingdom harried by the *Syrians*; neither did he win that one town of *Gibbethon*, from the *Philistines*, but left that business to his son, who likewise appears an unprofitable fluggard. Wherefore it must needs bee, that the favour of the people toward the house of *Baalba* grew from his good forme of Civill government, which happily he reduced to a more temperate method than *Jeroboam* ever meant to doe. And surely he that shall take pains to look into those examples which are extant of the different courses, held by the Kings of *Israel* and *Juda*, in administration of justice, will finde it most probable, that upon this ground it was that the ten Tribes continued to averse from the line of *David*, as to thinke all adversity more tolerable, than the weighty Scepter of that house. For the death of *Jude* and *Simeon* was indeed by them deserved; yet in that they suffered it without forme of judgement, they suffered like unto men innocent. The death of *Achishab* was both without judgement, and without any crime objected, other than the Kings jealousy: out of which by the fame rule of arbitrary justice (under which it may bee supposed that many were cast away) hee would have slaine *Jeroboam* (if hee could have caught him) before he had yet committed any offence; as appears by his confident returne out of Egypt, like one that was knowne to have endured wrong, having not offered any.

The like and much more barbarous execution, to wit, without law, *Fehoram* did upon his brethren, & upon sundry of his greatest men: as also *Joash* did to put to death *Zachariah* the son of *Fehojada*, who had made him King, even in the court of the house of the Lord: and *Manasses* did shed innocent blood exceeding much, till hee replenished *Jerusalem* from corner to corner: and this was imputed to him as another fault; besides his sinne, wherein it he made *Juda* to sinne. Contrariwise, among the Kings of *Israel* we find no monument of such arbitrary proceeding, unless perhaps the words of *Fehoram* the sonne of *Abah* (which were but words) may be taken for an instance, when he said, God doe so to mee, and more also, if the sonne of *Shaphat* shall stand on him this day: whereby it is not plain whether hee meant to kill him without more ado, or to have him condemned as a false Prophet, that had made them hold out against the *Aramites*, till they were faine to eat their own children; which he thought a sufficient argument to prove, that it was not Gods purpose to deliver them. The death of *Naboth* sheweth rather the liberty which the *Israelites* enjoyed, than any peremptory execution of the Kings will. For *Naboth* did not feare to stand upon his own right, though *Abah* were even sicke for anger; neither was he for that cause put to death, as upon commandement, but made away by conspiracie, the matter being handled after a judiciall forme, which might give satisfaction to the people, ignorant of the device, though to God it could not.

The murder of the Prophets is continually ascribed to *Fekabel*, an impudent woman, and not unto the King her husband. Neither is it certaine, that there was no Law made whereby their lives were taken from them; but certaine it is, that the people being Idolaters, were both pleased with their death, & laboured in the execution. So that the doings of the Kings of *Juda* (such as are registred) prove them to use a more absolute manner of command, than the Kings of the ten Tribes. Neither doe their sufferings witness the contrary. For of those which reigned over *Juda*, from the division of the Kingdome, to the captivity of the ten Tribes, three were flaine by the people, and two were denied a buriall amongst their ancestors. Yea, the death of *Ahab* and his brethren, flaine by *Fehobu*, with the destruction of all that Royall seed of *Ahalia*, did not (for ought that we can read) stirre up in the people any such thirst of revenge, as might by the suddenesse and uniformity testifie the affection to be general, and proceeding from a loving remembrance of their Princes: unless we should think that the death of *Ahalia*, after seven yeeres reign, were occasioned rather by the memory of her ill purchasing, than by the present sense of her tyrannicall abusing the government, whereon she had seized. On the other side, such of the Kings of *Israel* as perished by treason (which were seven of the twenty) were all slain by conspiracie of the great men, who aspired by treason to the Crown: the people being so far from embroiling their hands in the blood of their Sovereignes, that (after *Nadab*) they did never forbear to revenge the death of their Kings, when it lay in their power; nor approve the good successe of treason, unless feare compelled them. So that the death of two Kings, being thoroughly revenged upon other two, namely the death of *Ela* and *Zacharia*, upon *Zimri* and *Shallum*, who traitorously got and usurped, for a little while, their places; onely three of the seven remain, whose ends how the people took, it may be doubtfull. Though indeed it is precisely said of the slaughter committed on *Ahabs* children by *Fehobu*, that the people durst not fight with him that did it, because they were exceedingly afraid: and the same feare might be in them at the death of *Peka*, whose history (as others of that time) is cursorily passed over. The like may be pronounced, and more absolutely, of the Kings of *England*, that never any of them perished by fury of the people, but by treason of such as did succeed them: neither was there any motive urging to forcibly the death of King *Edward* and King *Richard* when they were in prison, as feare lest the people should stirre in their quarrell. And certainly (howsoever all that the Law calls treason, bee interpreted, as tending finally to the Kings destruction) in those treasonable insurrections of the vulgar, which have here most prevailed, the fury of the multitude hath quenched it selfe with the blood of some great Officers; no such rebellions, howsoever wicked and barbarous otherwise, thirsting after the ruine of their natural Sovereigne; but rather forbearing the advantages gotten upon his Royall person: which if any man impute unto grosse ignorance, another may more charitably, and I think, more truly, ascribe to a reverent affection. Wherefore that fable of *Briareus*, who

who, being loolened by *Pallas*, did with his 100. hands give assistance to *Jupiter*, when all the rest of the gods conspired against him, is very fitly expounded by Sir *Francis Bacon*, as signifying that Monarches need not to feare any curbing of their absoluteness by mighty subjects, as long as by wisdom they keep the hearts of the people, who will be sure to come in on their side. Though indeed the storie might very well have borne the same interpretation, as it is rehearsed by *Homere*, who tells us that *Pallas* was one of the conspiracie, and that *Theris* alone did marre all their practice, by loosening *Briareus*. For a good forme of government sufficeth by it selfe to retaine the people, not onely without assistance of a laborious Wit, but even against all devices of the greatest and shrewdest Politicians: every Sheriffe and Constable, being sooner able to arme the multitude, in the Kings behalfe, than any over-weening Rebelle, how mighty soever, can against him.

This declaration of the peoples love, being seldom found in *Juda*, makes it very likely, that the rule it selfe of government there was such, as neither gave occasion of contentment unto the subjects, nor of confidence in their good affection to the Kings. Upon which reasons it may seem that the multitude was kept usually disarmed. For otherwise it would have beene almost impossible, that *Athalia* the sister of *Ahab*, a stranger to the Royall blood of *Juda*, should by the onely authority of a Queene-mother have destroyed all the seed of *David*, and usurped the Kingdome very neere 7. yeeres, without finding any resistance. Yea when *Fehojada* the high Priest had agreed with the Captains and principall men of the Land to set up *Joash* their lawfull King, whereunto the whole nation were generally well affected, hee was faine to give to these Captaines and their men, the spears and the shields that were King *David*s, & were in the house of the Lord. But we need not enter into such particulars. Questionlesse, the Tribes which thought obedience to their Princes to be a part of their duty toward God, would endure much more with patience, than they which had Kings of their own choice or admission, holding the Crowne by a more uncertaine tenure.

And this, in my opinion, was the reason, why the ten Tribes did never seeke to returne to their ancient Lords: but after the destruction of their sixe first Kings, which died in the reigne of *Afa*, admitted a seventh of a new family, rather than they would subject themselves with those of *Juda* and *Benjamin*, under a more honourable, but more heave yoke.

So *Afa* having seen the death of 7. Kings of *Israel*, died himselfe after one and fortie yeeres reigne, leaving *Fehosaphat* his sonne to deale with *Ahab* the sonne of *Omri*, who was the eighth King over the ten Tribes.

## §. VII.

## Of Jehosaphat and his contemporaries.

*Jehosaphat*, who succeeded *Afa*, was a Prince religious and happy; hee destroyed all the Groves, Altars, and high places dedicated to Idolatry, and sent teachers to all places and people wanting instruction; he recovered the tribute due unto him by the *Arabians* and *Philistims*: from the one he had silver, from the other sheepe & goats to the number of fifteene thousand & foure hundred. The numbers of men of war were more than admirable; for it is written that *Adnah* had the command of three hundred thousand, *Fehobanani* of two hundred and fourescore thousand, and *Amasia* of two hundred thousand; also that he had, besides these in *Benjamin*, of those that bare shields, which we call Targetiers, and of Archers under *Eliada*, two hundred thousand, & under the commandement of *Fehozabad* a hundred and fourescore thousand: which numbered together make eleven hundred and sixty thousand, all which are said to have waited upon the King, besides his garrisons.

That *Juda* & *Benjamin*, a territory not much exceeding the Countie of Kent, should muster eleven hundred and sixtie thousand fighting men, it is very strange, & the number farre greater than it was found upon any other view. *Joab* in *David*s time found five hundred thousand: *Rehoboam* found but an hundred and fourescore thousand: *Ahalia* foure hundred and eight thousand: *Afa* five hundred and fourescore thousand: *Amasia* inrolled that could beare arms, & they amounted to three hundred thousand. Surely, whereas



1 said to have begun his reign, in the seventeenth year of *Jehoshaphat*. *Jehoram* the brother  
 2 King. 1. 17. of *Ahaziah* succeeded him in the 2. year of *Jehoram* the son of *Jehoshaphat* King of *Judah*;  
 3 King. 3. V. 1. that is, in the next year after that *Jehoram* of *Juda* was designed King by his father; it  
 and 9. being (as we find elsewhere) the eighteenth year of *Jehoshaphat* himself, who went with  
 the *Israelites* against *Moab*. Hereby it appears that the full power and execution of the  
 4 King. 3. 16. royall office was retained still by *Jehoshaphat*, who governed absolutely by himself, not  
 communicating the rule with his son. But in the fifth year of *Jehoram* King of *Israel*,  
 which was the two and twentieth of *Jehoshaphat*, the old King took unto him, as partner  
 in the government, this his eldest son, who was at that time 32. years old, his Father  
 being 57. Now forasmuch as *Jehoshaphat* reigned 25. years; it is evident that his sonne 10  
 did not reign alone till the eighth of *Joram* King of *Israel*. The like regard is to be had  
 5 King. 22. 42. in accounting the times of other Kings of *Juda* & *Israel*, who did not always reign pre-  
 cisely so long as the bare letter of the Text may seem at first to affirm: but their years  
 were sometimes compleat, sometimes onely current, sometimes confounded with the  
 years of their successors or foregoers, and must therefore be found by comparing their  
 times with the years of those others, with whom they did begin and end.

It were perhaps a thing lesse needfull than curious, to enquire into the reasons moving  
*Jehoshaphat* either to assume unto him his son as partner in the Kingdom, whilst he  
 was able himself to command both in peace and in warre, the like having never been  
 done by any of his progenitors, or having once (in the 17. of his reign) vouchsafed unto 10  
 him that honour, to resume it unto himself, or at least wise to deferre the confirmation  
 of it, untill four or five years were passed. Yet forasmuch as to enter into the examina-  
 tion of these passages, may be a mean to find some light, whereby we may more clearly  
 discover the causes of much extraordinary business ensuing, I hold it not amiss to  
 make such conjecture, as the circumstances of the Story briefly handled in the Scriptures  
 may seem to approve.

We are therefore to consider, that this King *Jehoshaphat* was the first of *Rehoboams* issue  
 that ever entered into any streight league with the Kings of the ten Tribes. All that re-  
 igned in *Juda* before him, had with much labour and long war, tired themselves in vain,  
 making small profit of the greatest advantages that could be wished. Wherefore *Jeho-* 30  
*saphat* thought it the wisest way to make a league offensive and defensive between *Israel*  
 and *Juda*, whereby each might enjoy their own in quiet.

This confederacy made by a religious King, with one that did hate the Lord, could not  
 long prosper, as not issuing from the true root and fountain of all wisdom: yet as a piece  
 of sound policy, doubtlesse it wanted not fair pretences of much common good there-  
 by likely to arise, with mutual fortification of both those Kingdoms, against the un-  
 circumcised Nations their ancient enemies. This apparent benefit, being so inestimable a  
 jewel, that it might not easily be lost, but continue as hereditary from father to son, it  
 was thought a very good course to have it confirmed by some sure bond of affinity, and  
 thereupon was *Athalia* the daughter of *Omri*, and sister of *Ahab* King of *Israel*, given in 40  
 marriage to *Jehoram*, who was son and heir apparent to the King of *Juda*. This Lady  
 was of a masculine spirit, and had learned so much of Queen *Jezebel* her brothers wife,  
 that she durst undertake, and could thoroughly perform a great deal more in *Jerusalem*,  
 than the other knew how to compass in *Samarina*. Shee was indeed a fire-brand ordain-  
 ed by God to consume a great part of the noblest houses in *Juda*, and perhaps of those  
 men or their children, whose worldly wisdom, regardless of Gods pleasure, had  
 brought her in.

The first fruits of this great league, was the Syrian war at *Ramoth Gilead*, wherein  
*Juda* and *Israel* did adventure equally, but the profit of the victory should have redoun-  
 ded wholly to *Ahab*: as godly Princes very seldom thrive by matching with Idolaters, so  
 but rather serve the turns of those false friends, who being ill affected to God himself,  
 cannot be well affected to his servants. Before their setting forth, *Ahab* designed, as  
 King, his son *Ahaziah*; not so much perhaps in regard of the uncertain events of war  
 (for none of his predecessors had ever done the like, upon the like occasions) nor as  
 fearing the threatnings of the Prophet *Micah* (for he despised them) as inviting *Jehoshaphat*  
 by his own example, to take the same course, wherein he prevailed.

## §. II.

Probable conjectures of the motives inducing the old King *Jehoshaphat* to change his pur-  
 pose often, in making his son *Jehoram* King.

Many arguments do very strongly prove *Jehoram* to have been wholly over-ru-  
 led by his wife, especially for his forsaking the religion of his godly Ancestors,  
 and following the abominable superstitions of the house of *Achab*.

That she was a woman of intollerable pride, and abhorring to live a private life, the  
 whole course of her actions witnesseth at large. Much vain matter she was able to pro-  
 duce, whereby to make her husband think that his brethren and kindred were but  
 mean and unworthy persons in comparison of him, and of his children, which were be-  
 gotten upon the daughter and sister of two great Kings, not upon base women, and meer  
 10 subjects. The Court of *Ahab*, and his famous victories obtained against the Syrian Ben-  
 badad, were matter sufficient to make an insolent man think highly of himself, as being  
 allied so honourably; who could otherwise have found in his heart well enough, to de-  
 spite all his brethren, as being the eldest, and heir apparent to the Crown, whereof al-  
 ready he had, in a manner, the possession.

How soon his vices brake out, or how long hee dissembled them and his idolatrous  
 religion, it cannot certainly be known. Like enough it is, that some smoke, out of the  
 20 hidden fire, did very soon make his fathers eyes to water; who thereupon caused the  
 young man to know himself better, by making him fall back into rank among his  
 younger brethren. And surely the doings of *Jehoshaphat* about the same time, argue no  
 small distemper of the whole country, through the misgovernment of his ungodly son.  
 For the good King was faine to make his progresse round about the Land, reclaiming the  
 people unto the service of God, and appointing Judges throughout all the strong Cities of  
 30 *Juda* City by City. This had been a needlesse labour, if the religion taught and strongly  
 maintained by *Aha*, and by himself, had not suffered alteration, and the course of Justice  
 been perverted, by the power of such as had born authority. But the necessity that then  
 was of reformation, appears by the charge which the King did give to the Judges; and  
 40 by his commission given to one of the Priests in spiritual causes, and to the Steward of  
 his house in temporal matters, to be generally over-seers.

This was not till after the death of *Ahaziah* the son of *Ahab*; but how long after it is  
 uncertain. For *Jehoram* the brother of *Ahaziah* began his reign (as hath been already no-  
 ted) in the eighteenth of *Jehoshaphat*, which was then accounted the second of *Jehoram*,  
*Jehoshaphats* son, though afterward this *Jehoram* of *Juda* had another first and second  
 year, even in his fathers time, before he reigned alone, as the best Chronologers and  
 Expositors of the holy Text agree. So he continued in private estate, untill the two and  
 twentieth of his fathers reign, at which time, though the occasions inducing his restitu-  
 tion to former dignity are not set down, yet wee may not think, that motives thereto,  
 40 appearing substantiall, were wanting. *Jehoram* of *Israel* held the same correspondency  
 with *Jehoshaphat* that his father had done; and made use of it. He drew the *Judeans* into  
 the war of *Moab*, at which time it might well be, that the young Prince of *Juda* was again  
 ordained King by his father, as in the Syrian expedition he had been. Or if wee ought  
 rather to think, that the preparations for the enterprize against *Moab* did not occupy so  
 much time, as from the eighteenth of *Jehoshaphat*; in which year that Nation rebelled  
 against *Israel*, unto his two and twentieth; yet the daily negotiations between the two  
 Kings of *Juda* and *Israel*, and the affinity between them contracted in the person of *Jehoram*,  
 might offer some good occasions thereunto. Neither is it certain how the beha-  
 viour of the younger sons, in their elder brothers disgrace, might cause their Father to  
 50 put him in possession for fear of tumult after his death; or the deep dissimulation of *Jehoram*  
 himself might win the good opinion both of his Father and Brethren; it being  
 a thing usuall in mischievous fell natures, to be as abject and servile in time of adversity,  
 as insolent and bloody upon advantage. This is manifest, that being repossessed of his  
 former estate, he demeaned himself in such wise toward his brethren, as caused their fa-  
 ther to enable them, not onely with store of silver and gold, and of pretious things, (which  
 kind of liberality other Kings doubtlesse had used unto their younger sons) but with the  
 custody of strong Cities in *Juda*, to assure them, if it might have been, by unwonted  
 means, against unwonted perils.



## §. III.

*The doings of Jehoram when hee reigned alone; and the rebellion of Edom and Libna.*

**B**Ut all this providence availed nothing; for an higher providence had otherwise determined of the sequell. When once the good old man, their Father, was dead, the younger sons of *Jehoshaphat* found strong Cities, a weak defence, against the power of him unto whom the Citizens were obedient. If they came in upon the summons of a King their brother, then had he them without any more ado; if they stood upon their guard, then were they Traitors, and so unable to hold out against him, who besides his own power, was able to bring the forces of the *Israelitish* Kingdom against them; so that the apparent likelihood of their small overthrow, sufficed to make all forsake them in the very beginning. Howsoever it was, they were all taken and slain, and with them for company many great men of the Land, such belike, as either had taken their part, when the Tyrant fought their lives, or had been appointed Rulers of the Country, when *Jehoram* was depoted from his Government; in which Office they, without forbearing to do justice, could hardly avoid the doing of many things derogatory to their young Master; which if he would now call treason, saying that he was then King, who durst say the contrary?

After this *Jehoram* took upon him, as being now Lord alone, to make invasions in Religion, wherein he was not contented, as other Idolatrous Princes, to give way and safe conduct unto Superstition and Idolatry, nor to provoke and encourage the people to that sinne, whereto it is wonderful that they were so much addicted, having such knowledge of God, and of his detesting that above all other sins; but hee used compulsion, and was (if not the very first) the first that is registred, to have set up Irreligion by force.

Whilst he was thus busied at home, in doing what he listed, the *Edomites* his Tributaries rebelled against him abroad; and having hitherto, since *David's* time, been governed by a Vice-Roy, did now make unto themselves a King. Against these *Jehoram* in person made an expedition, taking along with him his Princes, and all his Chariots; with which he obtained victory in the field, compelling the rebels to flee into their places of advantage, whereof he forced no one, but went away contented with the honour that he had gotten in beating and killing some of those whom he should have subdued, and kept his servants. Now began the prophecy of *Isaac* to take effect, wherein he foretold, that *Esau* in proesse of time should break the yoke of *Jacob*. For after this the *Edomites* could never be reclaimed by any of the Kings of *Juda*, but held their own so well, that when, after many civil and foreign wars, the *Jews* by sundry Nations had been brought low, *Antipater* the *Edomite*, with *Herod* his son, and others of that race following them, became Lords of the *Jews*, in the decrepit age of *Israel*, and reigned as Kings, even in *Jerusalem* it self.

The freedome of the *Edomites*, though purchased somewhat dearly, encouraged *Libna*, a great City within *Juda*, which in the time of *Joshua* had a peculiar King, to rebel against *Jehoram*, and set it self in liberty. *Libna* stood in the confines of *Benjamin* and of *Dan*, far from the assistance of any bordering enemies to *Juda*, and therefore so unlikely it was to have maintained it self in liberty, that it may seem strange how it could escape from utter destruction, or at the least from some terrible vengeance, most likely to have been taken, by their powerful, cruell, and thoroughly incensed Lord. The *Israelite* held such good intelligence at that time with *Juda*, that he would not have accepted the Town, had it offered it self unto him: neither doe we read that it fought how to cast it self into a new subjection, but continued a free state. The rebellion of it against *Jehoram*, was, Because he had forsaken the Lord God of his Fathers; which I take to have not only been the first & remote cause, but even the next and immediate reason, moving the inhabitants to do as they did: for it was a Town of the *Levites*; who must needs be driven into great extremities, when a religion, contrary to Gods Law, had not onely some allowance to countenance it by the King, but compulsive authority to force unto it all that were unwilling. As for the use of the Temple at *Jerusalem* (which, being devout men, they might fear to lose by this rebellion) it was never denied to those of the

2 Chron. 21.  
10.

ten revolted Tribes by any of the Religious Kings, who rather invited the *Israelites* thither, and gave them kind entertainment: under Idolaters they must have been without it, whether they lived free, or in subjection. Yet it seems that private reasons were not wanting, which might move them rather to doe than suffer that which was unwarrantable. For in the generall visitation before remembred, wherein *Jehoshaphat* reformed his kingdom, the good old King appointing new Governours, and giving them especial charge to doe justice without respect of persons, used these words; *The Levites shall be officers before you; Be of good courage, and doe it, and the Lord shall be with the good.* By these phrases, it seems, than he encouraged them against the more powerful, than just proceedings of his son, whom if the *Levites* did (according to the trust reposed in them) neglect in discharging their duties, likely it is that he meant to be even with them, and make them now to feel, as many Princes of the Land had done, his heave indignation. How it happened that *Libna* was not hereupon destroyed, yea, that it was not (for ought that we can read) so much as besieged or molested, may justly seem very strange. And the more strange it is in regard of the mighty Armies which *Jehoshaphat* was able to raise, being sufficient to have overwhelmed any one Town, and buried it under the earth, which they might well in one month have cast into it with shovels, by ordinarie approaches.

But it seems that of those great numbers which his Father could have levied, there were not many whom *Jehoram* could well trust; and therefore perhaps he thought it an easier losse, to let one Town goe, than to put weapons into their hands, who were more likely to follow the example of *Libna*, than to punish it. So desperate is the condition of Tyrants, who thinking it a greater happiness to be feared, than to be loved, are fain themselves to stand in fear of those, by whom they might have been dreadfull unto others.

## §. IV.

*Of the miseries falling upon Jehoram, and of his death.*

**T**Hese afflictions not sufficing to make any impression of Gods displeasure in the mind of the wicked Prince; a Prophecie in writing was delivered to him, which threatened both his people, his children, his wives, and his own body. Hereby likewise it appears that he was a cruell persecutor of Gods servants; in as much as the Prophets durst not reprove him to his face, as they had done many of his predecessors, both good and evil Kings; but were faine to denounce Gods Judgements against him by letters, keeping themselves close and far from him. This Epistle is said to have been sent unto him from *Elias* the Prophet. But *Elias* was translated, and *Elizeus* prophesied in his stead before this time, even in the dayes of *Jehoshaphat*. Wherefore it may be that *Elias* left this prophecie in writing behind him, or that (as some conjecture) the error of one letter in writing, was the occasion that we read *Elias* for *Elizeus*. Indeed any thing may rather be believed than the Tradition held by some of the Jewish Rabbins, that *Elias* from heaven did send this Epistle; a tale somewhat like to the fable of our Ladies letters, devised by *Erasmus*, or of the Verse that was sent from heaven to *S. Giles*.

But whosoever was the Author of this threatening Epistle, the accomplishment of the prophecie was as terrible as the sentence. For the *Philistims* and *Arabians* brake into *Judea*, and took the Kings house, wherein they found all, or many of his children, and wives, all which they slew, or carried away, with great part of his goods. These *Philistims* had not presumed since the time of *David*, to make any offensive warre till now; for they were by him almost consumed, and had lost the best of their Towns, maintaining themselves in the rest of their small territories, by defensive arms, to which they were constrained at *Gibbethon* by the *Israelites*. The *Arabians* were likely to have been then, as they are now, a naked people, all horsemen, and ill appointed; their Countrie affording no other furniture, than such as might make them fitter to rob and spoile in the open fields, than to offend strong Cities, such as were thick set in *Juda*. True it is, that in ages long after following, they conquered all the South parts of the world then known, in a very short space of time, destroying some, and building other some very sitzely Cities. But it must be considered, that this was when they had learned of the

T t

ROMANS



## S. VI.

*How Ahazia perished with the house of Ahab: and how that Familie was destroyed by Jehu.*

**T**He whole Armie of *Israel*, with all the principall Captains, lying in *Ramoth Gilead*, a Disciple of *Elizeus* the Prophet came in among the Captains that were sitting together; who calling out among them *Jehu*, a principall man, took him apart, and anointed him King over *Israel*, rehearsing unto him the Prophecie of *Eliz* as against the house of *Ahab*, and letting him understand that it was the pleasure of God to make him executioner of that sentence. The fashion of the Messenger was such as bred in the Captains a desire to know the errand, which *Jehu* thought meet to let them know, as doubting whether they had over-heard all the talk or no. When hee had acquainted them with the whole matter, they made no delay, but forth-with proclaimed him king. For the Prophecie of *Eliz* was well known among them, neither durst any one oppose himself against him, that was by God ordained to perform it.

*Jehu*, who had upon the sudden this great honour thrown upon him, was not slow to put himself in possession of it, but used the first heat of their affections, who joyed with him, in setting on foot the businesse which neerly concerned him, and was not to be fore-slowed, being no more his own than Gods.

The first care taken was that no news of the revolt might be carried to *Jezebel*, whereby the King might have had warning either to fight or flee: this being foreseen, he marched swiftly away, to take the Court while it was yet secure. King *Jezebel* was now so well recovered of his wounds, that he could endure to ride abroad, for which cause it seems that there was much feasting, and joy made, especially by Queen *Jezebel*, who kept her state so well, that the brethren of *Ahazia* comming thither at this time, did make it as well their errand to salute the Queen, as to visit the King.

Certain it is, that since the rebellion of *Moab* against *Israel*, the house of *Ahab* did never so much flourish as at this time. Seventy Princes of the bloud Royall there were that lived in *Samaria*; *Jezebel* the son of Queen *Jezebel* had won *Ramoth Gilead*, which his Father had attempted in vain, with losse of his life; and hee won it by valiant fight, wherein he received wounds, of which the danger was now past, but the honour likely to continue. The amitie was so great between *Israel* and *Juda*, that it might suffice to daunt all their common enemies, leaving no hope of successe to any rebellious enterprizer: so that now the prophecie of *Eliz* might be forgotten, or no otherwise remembered, than as an unlikely tale by them that beheld the majesticall face of the Court, wherein so great a friend as the King of *Juda* was entertained, and fortie Princes of his bloud expected.

In the middest of this securitie, whilst these great Estates were (perhaps) either consulting about prosecution of their intents, first against the *Aramites*, and then against *Moab*, *Edom*, and other rebels and enemies: or else were triumphing in joy of that which was already achieved, and the Queen-mother dressing her self in the bravest manner to come down amongst them; tidings were brought in, that the watchman had from a Tower discovered a company comming. These newes were not very troublesome: for the Armie that lay in *Ramoth Gilead*, to be readie against all attempts of the *Aramites*, was likely enough to be discharged upon some notice taken that the enemy would not, or could not stirre. Onely the King sent out an Horse-man to know what the matter was, and to bring him word. The messenger comming to *Jehu*, and asking whether all were well, was retained by him, who intended to give the King as little warning as might be. The seeming negligence of this fellow in not returning with an answer, might argue the matter to be of small importance: yet the King to be satisfied, sent out another that should bring him word how all went; and hee was likewise detained by *Jehu*. These dumb shewes bred some suspition in *Jezebel*, whom the watchman certified of all that happened. And now the companie drew so neer, that they might, though not perfectly, be discerned, and notice taken of *Jehu* himself by the furious manner of his marching. Wherefore the King that was loth to discover any weakness, caused his Chariot to be made ready, and issued forth with *Ahazia* King of *Juda* in his companie,

company, whose presence added majesty to his train, when strength to resist, or expedition to flee, had bin more needfull. This could not be done so hastily, but that *Jehu* was come even to the towns end, & there they met each other in the field of *Naboth Jezebel* began to salute *Jehu* with termes of peace, but receiving a bitter answer, his heart failed him, so that crying out upon the treason to his fellow king, he turned away to have fled. But *Jehu* soon overtook him with an arrow, wherewith he strook him dead, and threw his carkasse into that field, which, purchased with the bloud of the rightfull owner, was to be watered with the bloud of the unjust possessor. Neither did *Ahazia* escape so well, but that he was arrested by a wound, which held him till death did seize upon him.

The Kings Palace was joyning to the wall, by the gate of the Citie, where *Jezebel* might soon be advertised of this calamitie, if she did not with her own eyes behold it. Now it was high time for her to call to God for mercie, whose judgement, pronounced against her long before, had overtaken her, when she least expected it. But she, full of indignation and proud thoughts, made her self ready in all haste, and painted her face, hoping with her stately and imperious looks to daunt the Traitor, or at least to utter some Apophthegme that should expresse her brave spirit, and brand him with such a reproach as might make him odious for ever. Little did she think upon the hungry dogs that were ordained to devour her, whose paunches they filled with which she besmeared her eyes, would more offend, than the scolding language wherewith the armed her tongue could trouble the ears of him that had her in his power. As *Jehu* drew neer, she opened her window, & looking out upon him, began to put him in mind of *Zimri*, that had not long enjoyed the fruits of his treason, and murder of the King his Master. This was in meer humane valuation stoutly spoken, but was indeed a part of miserable folly; as are all things; howsoever laudable, if they have an ill relation to God the Lord of all. Her own Eunuchs that stood by and beard her, were not affected so much as with any compassion of her fortune; much lesse was her enemy daunted with her proud spirit. When *Jehu* saw that she did use the little remainder of her life in seeking to vex him, hee made her presently to understand her own estate, by deeds and not by words. He only called to her servants to know which of them would be on his side, and soon found them ready to offer their service before the very face of their proud Lady. Hereupon he commanded them to cast her down head-long: which immediately they performed, without all regard of her greatnesse and estate, wherein she had a few hours before shined so gloriously in the eyes of men; of men that considered not the judgements of God that had been denounced against her.

So perished this accursed woman by the rude hands of her own servants, at the commandment of her greatest enemy, that was yesterday her subject, but now her Lord; and she perished miserably, struggling in vain with base groomes, who countemselously did hale and thrust her, whilst her insulting enemy fate on Horse-back, adding indignitie to her griefe by scornfull beholding the shamefull manner of her fall, and trampling her body under foot. Her dead carkasse that was left without the walls, was devoured by dogs, and her very memorie was odious. Thus the vengeance of God rewarded her Idolatry, murder, and oppression, with slow, but sure payment, and full interest.

*Ahazia* King of *Juda* fleeing a pace from *Jehu*, was over-taken by the way where he lurked; and receiving his deadly wound in the kingdom of *Samaria*, was suffered to get him gone (which he did in all haste) and seek his buriall in his own kingdom: and this favour he obtained for his grand-fathers sake, not for his fathers, nor his own. He died at *Megiddo*, and was thence carried to *Jerusalem*, where he was entered with his Ancestors, having reigned about one year.

## CHAP. XXI.

Of Athalia; and whose son he was that succeeded her.

S. I.

Of Athalia's usurping the Kingdom, and what pretences she might forge.

2 Chron. 22. 9



FTER the death of *Ahazia*, it is sayd that his house was not able to retain the Kingdom: which Note, and the proceedings of *Athalia* upon the death of her son, have given occasion to divers opinions concerning the Pedigree of *Joas*, who reigned shortly after. For *Athalia* being thus dispoiled of her son, under whose name she had ruled at her pleasure, did forth-with lay hold upon all the Princes of the blood, and slew them; that so the might occupie the Royall Throne her self, and reign as Queen, rather than live a Subject. She

had before-hand put into great place, and made Counsellors unto her son, such as were fittest for her purpose, and ready at all times to execute her will: that she kept a strong guard about her, it is very likely; and as likely it is that the great execution done by *Jehoram*, upon the Princes, and many of the Nobilitie, had made the people tame, and fearfull to stir, whatsoever they saw or heard.

Yet ambition, how violent soever it be, is seldome or never so shamelesse as to refuse the commoditie of goodly pretences offering themselves; but rather scrapes together all that will any way serve to colour her proceedings. Wherefore it were not absurd for us to think, that *Athalia*, when she saw the Princes of the Royall blood, all of them in a manner, slain by her husband, and afterwards his own children destroyed by the *Philistims*, began even then to play her own game, reducing by artificiall practice, into fair likelihoods, those possibilities wherewith her husbands bad fortune had presented her. Nor without great shew of reason, either by her own mouth, or by some trustie creature of hers, might she give him to understand, how needfull it were to take the best order whilst as yet he might, for fear of the worst that might happen. If the issue of *David*, which now remained only in his Familie, should by any accident fail (as wofull experience had already shewed what might after come to passe) the people of *Juda* were not unlikely to chooseth a King of some new stock; a popular seditious man peradventure, one that to countenance his own unworthinesse, would not care what aspersions he layd upon that Royall house, which was fallen down. And who could assure him, that some ambitious spirit, fore-seeing what might be gotten thereby, did not already contrive the destruction of him, and all his seed? Wherefore it were the wisest way to design by his authoritie not only his successour, but also the reverfioner, and so to provide, that the Crown might never be subject to any rising, but remain in the disposition of them that loved him best, if the worst that might be feared comming to passe, his own posteritie could not retain it.

Such perswasions being urged, and earnestly followed, by the importunate sollicitation of her that governed his affections, were able to make the jealous Tyrant think, that the onely way to frustrate all devices of such as gaped after a change, was to make her Heir the last and youngest of his house; whom it most concerned, as being the Queen-Mother, to uphold the first and eldest.

If *Athalia* took no such course as this in her husbands time, yet might she do it in her sons. For *Ahazia* (besides that he was wholly ruled by his mother) was not likely to take much care for the securitie of his half-brethren, or their children; as accounting his Fathers other wives, in respect of his own-born-Mother, little better than Concubines, and their children basely begotten. But if this mischievous woman forgot her self so far in her wicked policie, that she lost all opportunitie which the weaknesse of her husband and son did afford, of proceeding unto her self some seeming Title; yet could she afterwards feign some such matter, as boldly shee might: being sure that none would ask to see her evidence, for fear of being sent to learn the certaintie of her son or husband in another World. But I rather think that shee took order for

for her affairs before-hand. For though she had no reason to suspect or fear the sudden death of her son, yet it was the wisest way to provide betimes against all that might happen, whilst her husbands issue by other women was young and unable to resist. We plainly find that the Brethren or Nephewes of *Ahazia*, to the number of two and forty, were sent to the Court of *Israel*, only to salute the children of the King, and the children of the Queen. The slender occasion of which long journey, considered together with the qualitie of these persons (being in effect all the stock of *Jehoram* that could be grown to any strength) makes it very suspicious, that their entertainment in *Jezabels* house would onely have been more formall, but little differing in substance, from that which they found at the hand of *Jehu*. He that looks into the courses held both before and after by these two Queens, will find cause enough to think no lesse. Of such as have aspired unto Lordships not belonging to them, and thrust out the right Heirs by pretence of Testaments, that had no other validitie than the sword of such as claimed by them could give. Histories of late, yea of many Ages, afford plentifull examples: and the rule of *Salomon* is true: *Is there any thing wherof one may say, Behold, this is new? It hath been alway ready in the old time that was before us.* That a King might shed his brothers blood, was proved by *Salomon* upon *Adonia*; that hee might alien the Crown from his naturall Heirs, *David* had given proof; but these had good ground of their doings. They which follow examples that please them, will neglect the reasons of those examples, if they please them not, and rest contented with the practice, as more willing by shewing what they may do, than acknowledging why *Salomon* slew his brother that had begun one rebellion, & was entering into another. *Jehoram* slew all his brethren, which were better than he: *David* purchased the kingdom, and might the more freely dispose of it, yet he disposed of it as the Lord appointed: if *Jehoram*, who had lost much and gotten nothing, thought that he might alien the remainder at his pleasure; or if *Ahazia* sought to cut off the succession of his brethren, or of their issue; either of these was to be answered with the words which *Jehojada* the Priest used afterwards, in declaring the title of *Joash*: *Behold, the Kings son must reign; as the Lord hath said of the sons of David.* Wherefore though I hold it very probable, that *Athalia* did pretend some title, whatsoever it might be, to the Crown of *Juda*; yet it is most certain that she had thereunto no right at all, but only got it by treacherie, murder, and open violence; and so she held it fix whole years, and a part of the seventh, in good seeming securitie.

S. II.

How *Jehu* spent his time in *Israel*, so that hee could not molest *Athalia*.

IN all this time *Jehu* did never go about to disturb her; which in reason he was likely to desire, being an enemy to her whole House. But hee was occupied at the first in establishing himself, rooting out the posteritie of *Ahab*, and reforming somewhat in Religion: afterwards in wars against the *Ammites*, wherein hee was so far overcharged, that hardly he could retain his own, much lesse attempt upon others. Of the line of *Ahab* there were sevenie living in *Samaria*, out of which number *Jehu* by letter advised the Citizens to set up some one as King, and to prepare themselves to fight in his defence. Hereby might they gather how confident he was; which they well understood to proceed from greater power about him, than they could gather to resist him: Wherefore they took example by the two Kings whom he had slain, and being exceedingly affraid of him, they offered him their service; wherein they so readily shewed themselves obedient, that in lesse than one dayes warning, they sent him the heads of all those Princes, as they were enjoined by a second letter from him. After this hee surprized all the Priests of *Baal* by a subtiltie, feigning a great sacrifice to their god, by which means he drew them altogether into one Temple, where hee slew them: and in the same zeal to God utterly demolished all the monuments of that impietie.

Concerning the Idolatrie devised by *Jeroboam*, no King of *Israel* had ever greater reason than *Jehu* to destroy it. For he needed not to fear lest the people should be allured unto the house of *David*, it was (in appearance) quite rooted up, and the Crown of *Juda* in the possession of a cruell Tyrannesse: he had received his kingdom by the unexpected grace

grace of God; and further in regard of his zeal expressed in destroying *Baal* out of *Israel*, he was promised, notwithstanding his following the sin of *Jeroboam*, that the kingdom should remain in his Familie to the fourth Generation. But all this would not serve; he would needs help to piece out Gods providence with his own circumspection; doing therein like a foolish greedie gamester, who by stealing a needlesse Card to assure himself of winning a stake, forfeits his whole test. He had questionlesse displeased many, by that which he did against *Baal*, and many more he should offend by taking from them the use of a superstition, so long practised, as was that Idolatrie of *Jeroboam*. Yet all these, how many loever they were, had never once thought upon making him King, if God, whom (to retain them) he now forlook, had not given him the Crown, to when more difficulties appeared in the way of getting it, than could at any time after be found in the means of holding it.

This ingratitude of *Jehu* drew terrible vengeance of God upon *Israel*, wherof *Hazael* King of *Damascus* was the executioner. The cruelty of this barbarous Prince we may see in the Prophecie of *Elizeus*, who fore told it, saying: *Their strong Cities shall thou set on fire; and their young men shalt thou slay with the sword, and shalt dash their Infants against the Stones, and rend in pieces their women with child.* So did not onely the wickednesse of *Abah* cause the ruine of his whole house, but the obstinate Idolatrie of the people bring a lamentable miserie upon all the Land. For the furie of *Hazaels* victorie was not quenched with the destruction of a few towns, nor wearied with one invasion; but he *smote them in all the coast of Israel*, and wasted all the Countrey beyond the River of *Jordan*. Notwithstanding all these calamities, it seems that the people repented not of their Idolatrie; (*For in those dayes the Lord began to loath Israel*;) but rather it is likely, that they beanoed the noble house of *Abah*, under which they had beaten those enemies to whom they were now a prey, and had bravely fought for the conquest of *Syria*, where they had enlarged their border, by winning *Ramoth Gilead*, and compelled *Benhadad* to restore the Cities which his Father had won: whereas now they were faine to make wofull shifts, living under a Lord that had better fortune and courage in murdering his master, than had put him in trust, than in defending his people from their cruell enemies. Thus it commonly falls out, that they who can find all manner of difficulties in serving him, to whom nothing is difficult, are, in stead of the ease and pleasure to themselves propounded by contrary courses, overwhelmed with the troubles which they sought to avoid; and therein by God, whom they first forlook, forsaken, and left unto the wretched labours of their own blind wisdom, wherein they had reposed all their confidence.

## S. III.

## Of Athaliah's Government.

These calamities falling upon *Israel*, kept *Athalia* safe on that side, giving her leisure to look to things at home; as having little to doe abroad, unless it were so that she held some correspondence with *Hazael*, pretending therein to imitate her husbands grandfather King *Aha*, who had done the like. And some probability that she did so, may be gathered out of that which is recorded of her doings. For we find, that this wicked *Athalia* and her children brake up the house of God, and all things that were dedicate for the house of the Lord did they bestow upon Baalim. Such a sacrilege, though it proceeded from a desire to set out her own Idolatrie, with such pomp as might make it the more glorious in the peoples eyes, was not likely to want some fair pretext of necessity of the State so requiring: in which case others before her had made bold with that holy place, and her next succellour was faine to doe the like, being therunto forced by *Hazael*, who perhaps was delighted with the taste of that which was formerly thence extracted for his sake.

Under this impious government of *Athalia*, the devotion of the Priests and Levites was very notable, and served (no doubt) very much to retain the people in the religion taught by God himself, howsoever the Queens proceedings advanced the contrary. For the poverty of that sacred Tribe of *Levi* must needs have been exceeding great at this time, all their lands and possessions in the ten Tribes being utterly lost, the oblations and other perquisites, by which they lived, being now very few and small; and the

store,

store laid up in better times under godly Kings, being all taken away by shamefull robbery. Yet they up-held in all this miserie the service of God, and the daily sacrifice, keeping daily their courses, and performing obedience to the high Priest, no lesse than in those dayes wherein their entertainment was farre better.

## S. IV.

## of the preservation of Joas.

*Ehojada* then occupied the high Priesthood, an honourable, wise, and religious man. To his carefulnesse it may be ascribed, that the state of the Church was in some slender fort up-held in those unhappy times. His wife was *Iehoshabeth*, who was daughter of King *Iehoram*, and sister to *Ahazias*, a godly Lady and vertuous, whose piety makes it seem that *Athalia* was not her mother, though her access to the Court argue the contrary: but her discreet carriage might more easily procure her welcome to her own Fathers house, than the education under such a Mother could have permitted her to be such as he was. By her care *Joash* the young Prince that reigned soon after, was conveyed out of the nurserie, when *Athalia* destroyed all the Kings children, and was carried secretly into the Temple, where as secretly he was brought up. How it came to passe that this young child was not hunted out, when his body was missing; nor any great reckoning (for ought that we find) made of his escape, I will not stand to examine: for it was not good in policie, that the people should hear say, that one of the children had avoyded that cruell blow; it might have made them hearken after innovations, and so be the lesse conformable to the present government. So *Joash* was delivered out of that slaughter, and his nurse being gone no man could tell whither, and might be thought peradventure to be cast away, as having no other guard than a poor woman that gave him suck, who foolishly doubting that she her self should have been slain, was fled away with him into some desolate place, where it was like enough that she and he should perish. In such cases flatterers, or men desirous of reward, easily coin such tales, and rather sweare them to be true in their own knowledge, than they will lose the thanks due to their joyfull tidings.

## S. V.

## Whose sonne Joas was.

## I. I.

## Whether Joas may be thought likely to have been the son of Ahazia.

Now concerning this *Joash*, whose son hee was, it is a thing of much difficultie to affirm; and hath caused much controversie among writers. The places of Scripture, which call him the son of *Ahazia*, seem plain enough. How any figure of the Hebrew language might give title of Sonne unto him, in regard that hee was his succellour, I neither by my self can find, nor can by any help of Authors learn how to answer the difficulties appearing in the contrary opinions of them, that think him to have been, or not, the naturall son of *Ahazia*. For whereas it is said, that the house of *Ahazia* was not able to retain the Kingdom; some doe inferre that this *Joash* was not properly called his son, but was the next of his kindred, and therefore succeeded him, as sonne in the inheritance of his father. And hereunto the murder committed by *Athalia*, doth very well agree. For the perceiving that the Kingdom was to fall into their hands, in whom shee had no interest, might easily find cause to fear, that the tyrannie exercised by her husband at her instigation upon so many noble Houses, would now be revenged upon her self. The ruine of her Idolatrous Religion might in this case terrifie both her and her Minions; the sentence of the Law rewarding that offence with death; and the Tragedie of *Jezebel* teaching her what might happen to another Queen. All this had little concerned her, if her own grand-child had been heir to the Crown; for she that had power enough to make her self Queen, could with more ease, and lesse envie, have taken upon her the office of a Protector, by which authoritie she might have done her pleasure, and been the more both obeyed by others,

and secure of her own estate, as not wanting an heir. Wherefore it was not needfull, that she should be so unnatural, as to destroy the Child of her own Son, of whose life she might have made greater use than the could of his death: whereas indeed, the love of Grand-mothers to their Nephewes, is little lesse than the Mothers to their Children.

This argument is very strong. For it may seem incredible, that all naturall affection should be cast a-side, when as neither necessitie urgeth, nor any commoditie thereby gotten requireth it, yea, when all humane policie doth teach one the same, which nature without reason would have perswaded.

## † II.

That Joas did not descend from Nathan.

**B**UT (as it is more easie to find a difficultie in that which is related, than to shew how it might have otherwise been) the pedigree of this *Joash* is, by them which think him not the son of *Ahaziah*, set down in such sort, that it may very justly be suspected. They say, that he descended from *Nathan* the son of *David*, and not from *Salomon*: to which purpose they bring a Historie (I know not whence) of two families of the race of *David*, saying, that the line of *Salomon* held the kingdom with this condition, that if at any time it failed, the familie of *Nathan* should succeed it. Concerning this *Nathan* the son of *David*, there are that would have him to be *Nathan* the Prophet, who, as they think, was by *David* adopted. And of this opinion was *Origen*, as also *S. Augustine* sometime was, but afterward he revoked it, as was meet; for this *Nathan* is reckoned among the sons of *David*, by *Bathsua* the daughter of *Amnes*, and therefore could not be the Prophet *Gregory Nazianzen* (as I find him cited by *Peter Martyr*) and after him *Erasmus*, and *Faber Stapulensis*, have likewise held the same of *Joash*, deriving him from *Nathan*. But *Nathan* and those other brethren of *Salomon* by the same Mother, are thought, upon good likelihoods, to have bin the children of *Uriah the Hittite*: and so are they accounted by sundrie of the Fathers, and by *Lyra*, and *Abulenfis*, who follow the Hebrew Expositors of that place in the first of *Chronicles*. The words of *Salomon* calling himself the only begotten of his mother, doe approve this exposition: for we read of no more than two sons which *Bathsua* or *Bathsbeba* did bear unto *David*, whereof the one begotten in adultery, died an Infant, and *Salomon* onely of her children by the King did live. So that the rest must needs have bin the children of *Uriah*, and are thought to have bin *David* only by adoption. Wherefore if *Joas* had not bin the son of *Ahaziah*, then must that pedigree have bin false, wherein *S. Matthew* deriveth him lineally from *Salomon*; yea, then had not our blessed Saviour issued from the loins of *David*, according to the flesh, but had only bin of his line by courtisie of the Nation, and form of law, as any other might have bin. As for the authority of *Philo*, which hath drawn many late writers into the opinion that *Joash* was not of the posteritie of *Salomon*, it is enough to say, that this was *Frier Annins* his *Philo*: for no other edition of *Philo* hath any such matter; but *Annins* can make Authors to speak what he list.

## † III.

That Joas may probably be thought to have been the son of *Jehoram*.

**I**N so doubtfull a case, if it seem lawfull to hold an opinion that no man hath yet thought upon, me thinks it were not amiss to lay open at once, and peruse together two places of Scripture, whereof the one telling the wickedness of *Jehoram* the son of *Jeholaphat* King of *Juda*, for which he and his children perished, rehearseth it as one of Gods mercies towards the house of *David*, that according to his promise hee would give him a light, and to his children for ever: the other doth say, that for the offences of the same *Jehoram*, there was not a son left him, save *Jehoahaz* the youngest of his sons. Now, if it were in regard of Gods promise to *David*, that after those massacres of *Jehoram* upon all his brethren, and of the *Philistims* and *Arabians* upon the children of *Israhel*, one of the seed of *David* escaped; why may it not be thought that hee was said to have escaped, in whom the line of *David* was preserved: for had all the race of *Salomon*

mon been rooted up in these wofull Tragedies, and the progenie of *Nathan* succeeded in place thereof, like enough it is that some remembrance more particular would have been extant, of an event so memorable. That the race of *Nathan* was not extinguished, it is indeed apparent by the *Genealogie* of our Lord, as it is recounted by *S. Luke*: but the preservation of the house of *David*, mentioned in the books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, was performed in the person of *Jehoahaz*, in whom the Royall branch of *Salomon*, the naturall, and not only legall issue remaining of *David*, was kept alive. Wherefore it may be thought that this *Joash*, who followed *Athalia* in the Kingdome, was the youngest son of *Jehoram*, whose life *Athalia*, as a stepdame, was not likely to pursue. For it were not easily understood, why the preservation of *David*'s line, by Gods especiall mercie; in regard of his promise made, should pertain rather to that time, when besides *Ahaziah* himself, there were two and fortie of his brethren, or (as in another place they are called) sons of his brethren remaining alive, which afterwards were all slain by *Jehu*; than have reference to the lamentable destruction and little lesse than extirpation of that progenie, wherein one only did escape. Certainly that inhumane murder which *Jehoram* committed upon his brethren, if it were (as appeareth in the Historie) revenged upon his own children; then was not this vengeance of God accomplished by the *Philistims* and *Arabians*, but being only begun by them, was afterwards prosecuted by *Jehu*; and finally took effect by the hands of that same wicked woman, at whose instigation he had committed such barbarous outrage. And from this execution of Gods heave judgement laid upon *Jehoram* and all his children, onely *Jehoahaz* his youngest sonne was exempted; whom therefore if I should affirm to be the same with *Joas*, which is called the son of *Ahaziah*, I should not vvant good probability. Some further appearance of necessitie there is, which doth argue that it could no otherwise have been. For it was the youngest sonne of *Jehoram* in whom the race was preserved; which could not in any likelihood be *Ahaziah*, seeing that he was twenty years old at the least (as is already noted) when he began to reign, and consequently, was born in the eighteenth or twentieth year of his Fathers age. Now I know not whether of the two is more unlikely, either that *Jehoram* should have begotten many children before hee was eighteen years old, or that having (as he had) many wives and children, he should upon the sudden, at his eighteenth year, become unfruitfull, and beget no more in twenty years following: each of which must have bin true, if this were true that *Ahaziah* was the same *Jehoahaz* which was his youngest sonne. But this inconvenience is taken away, and those other doubts arising from the causelesse cruelty of *Athalia*, in seeking the life of *Joas* are easily cleared; if *Joas* and *Jehoahaz* were one. Neither doth his age withstand this opinion; For he was (even years old when he began to reign; which if we understand of years compleat, he might have been a year old at the death of *Jehoram*, being begotten somewhat after the beginning of his sicknesse. Neither is it more absurd to say that he was the naturall son of *Jehoram*, though called the son of *Ahaziah*, than it were to say, as great Authors have done, this difficultie notwithstanding, that he was of the posteritie of *Nathan*. One thing indeed I know not how to answer, which, had it concurred with the rest, might have served as the foundation of this opinion. The name of *Jehoahaz*, that soundeth much more neer to *Joas*, than to *Ahaziah*, in an English ear, doth in the Hebrew (as I am informed by some, skilfull in that language) through the diversitie of certain letters, differ much from that which it most resembleth in our Western manner of writing, and little from the other. Now, although it be so that *Ahaziah* himself be also called *Azaria*, and must have had three names, if he were the same with *Jehoahaz*; in which manner *Joas* might also have had several names; yet, because I find no other warrant hereof than a bare possibilitie, I will not presume to build an opinion upon the weak foundation of mine own conjecture, but leave all to the consideration of such as have more abilitie to judge, and leisure to consider of this point.

## † IV.

Upon what reasons *Athalia* might seek to destroy *Joas*, if he were her own grandchild.

**I**F therefore we shall follow that which is commonly received, and interpret the text according to the letter, it may be said, that *Athalia* was not only blinded by the passions



a King. 9. 22.

ons of ambition and zeal to her idolatrous worship of *Baalim*, but pursued the accomplishment of some unnaturall desires, in seeking the destruction of her grand-child, and the rest of the bloud Royall. For, whether it were so that *Athalia* (as proud and cruell women are not always chaste) had imited the libertie of *Fezabel* her sister in law, whose whose Iomes were upbraided by *Jehu* to her son; or whether she had children by some former husband, before she was married unto *Fezoram* (which is not unlikely, in regard of her age, who was daughter of *Omri*, and sister to *Ahab*) certain it is that she had sons of her own, and those old enough to be employed, as they were, in robbing of the Temple. So it is not greatly to be wondered at, that to settle the crown upon her own children, she did seek to cut off, by wicked policie, all other claims. As for *Joas*, as he were his 19 grand-mother, yet she might mistrust the interest which his mother would have in him, lest when he came to years, it might draw him from her devotion. And hereof (besides that women doe commonly better love their daughters husbands, than their sons wives) there is some appearance in the reign of her son; for she made him spend all his time in idle journeys, to no other apparent end, than that she might rule at home; and he living abroad be estranged from his wife, and entertain some new fancies, wherein *Fezabel* had cunning enough to be his Tutore. But when the sword of *Jehu* had rudely cut in sunder all these fine devices, then was *Athalia* faine to goe roundly to work, and doe as she did, whereby she thought to make all sure. Otherwise, if (as I could rather think) she were onely stepdame to *Joas*, we need not seek into the reasons moving her to take away his 20 life; her own hatred was cause enough to dispatch him among the first.

## S. VI.

*A digression, wherein is maintained the libertie of using conjecture in Histories.*

**T**Hus much concerning the person of *Joas*, from whom, as from a new root, the tree of *David* was propagated into many branches. In handling of which matter, the more I consider the nature of this Historie, and the diversity between it and others, the lesse me thinks I need to suspect mine own presumption, as deserving 30 blame, for curiositie in matter of doubt, or boldnesse in libertie of conjecture. For all Histories doe give us information of humane counsels and events, as farre forth as the knowledge and faith of the writers can afford; but of Gods will, by which all things are ordered, they speak onely at random, and many times falsely. This we often find in profane writers, who ascribe the ill successe of great undertakings, to the neglect of some impious Rites, whereof indeed God abhorred the performance as vehemently, as they thought him to be highly offended with the omission. Hereat we may the lesse wonder, if we consider the answer made by the *Jewes* in *Egypt* unto *Jeremie* the Prophet reprehending their Idolatrie. For howsoever the written Law of God was known unto the people, and his punishments laid upon them for contempt thereof were very terrible, and 40 even then but newly executed; yet were they so obstinately bent unto their wills, that they would not by any means be drawn to acknowledge the true cause of their affliction. But they told the Prophet roundly, that they would worship the *Queen of heaven*, as they and their fathers, their Kings and their Princes had used to doe: For then (sayd they) had we plenty of vituals, and were well, and felt no evil: adding, that all manner of miseries were befallen them, since they left off that service of the *Queen of Heaven*. So blind is the wisdom of man, in looking into the counsell of God, which to find out, there is no better nor other guide than his own written will not perverted by vain additions.

Jer. 44. 17. 18.

But this Historie of the Kings of *Israel* and *Juda* hath herein a singular prerogative: 50 bove all that have been written by the most sufficient of merely humane Authors: it setteth down expressly the true, and first causes of all that happened; not in imputing the death of *Ahab* to his over-forwardnesse in battell; the ruine of his Familie, to the securitie of *Fezoram* in *Fezreel*; nor the victories of *Hazael*, to the great commotions raised in *Israel*, by the comming of *Jehu*; but referring all unto the will of God, I mean, to his revealed will, from which that his hidden purposes doe not varie, this Story, by many great examples, gives most notable proofe. True it is, that the concurrence of second causes with their effects, is in these books nothing largely described; nor per- 55 haps

happ exactly in any of those Histories that are in these points most copious. For it was well noted by that worthy Gentleman, Sir *Philip Sidney*, that Historians doe borrow 5 of Poets, not onely much of their ornament, but somewhat of their substance. Informa- tions are often false, records not alwaies true, and notorious actions commonly insuffi- cient to discover the passions which doe set them first on foot. Wherefore they are faine (I speak of the best, and in that which is allowed; for to take out of *Livie* every one cir- cumstance of *Claudius* his journey against *Asdrubal* in *Italy*, fitting all to another busi- nesse, or any practice of that kind, is neither Historically, nor Poetically) to search into the particular humour of Princes, and of those which have governed their affections, or 10 the instruments by which they wrought; from whence they do collect the most likely motives or impediments of every businesse; and so figuring as neer to the life as they can imagine, the matter in hand, they judiciously consider the defects in counsell, or obliquity in proceeding.

Yet all this, for the most part, is not enough to give assurance, howsoever it may give satisfaction. For the heart of man is unsearchable: and Princes, howsoever their intents bee seldome hidden from some of those many eyes which pierce both into them, and into such as live about them; yet sometimes either by their own close tem- per, or by some subtil mist, they conceal the truth from all reports. Yea, many times the affections themselves lye dead, and buried in oblivion, when the preparati- 20 ons which they begar, are converted to another use. The industrie of an Historian, having so many things to wearie it, may well bee excused, when finding apparent cause enough of things done, it forbeareth to make further search; though it often fall out, where sundry occasions work to the same end, that one small matter in a weak mind is more effectually, than many that seeme farre greater. So comes it ma- ny times to passe, that great fires, which consume whole houses or towns, begin with a few straws, that are wasted or not seen; when the flame is discovered, having fastened upon some wood-pile, that catcheth all about it. Questionlesse it is, that the warre commenced by *Darius*, and pursued by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, proceed- 30 ed from desire of the *Persians* to enlarge their Empire: howsoever the enterprize of the *Athenians* upon *Sardes*, was noised abroad as the ground of that quarrell; yet *Herodotus* telleth us, that the wanton desire of *Queen Atossa*, to have the *Grecian* dames her bond-women, did first move *Darius* to prepare for this war before he had received 40 any injury, and when he did not yet so much desire to get more, as to enjoy what was already gotten.

Herod. lib. 1.

I will not here stand to argue whether *Herodotus* be more justly reprehended by some, or defended by others, for alleging the vain appetite, and secret speech of the *Queen* in bed with her husband, as the cause of those great evils following; this I may boldly affirm, (having, I think, in every estate some sufficient witness) that matters of much consequence, founded in all seeming upon substantiall reasons, have issued indeed 40 from such pettie trifles, as no Historian would either think upon, or could well search out.

Therefore it was a good answer that *Sixtus Quintus* the Pope, made to a certain Frier, coming to visit him in his Popedome, as having long before in his meane estate, been his familiar friend. This poor Frier, being emboldened by the Pope to use his old li- berty of speech, adventured to tell him, that he very much wondered how it was possi- ble for his Holinesse, whom hee rather took for a direct honest man, than any cunning Politician, to attain unto the Papacy; in compassing of which, all the subtilty (said he) of the most crafty brains, find work enough: and therefore the more I think upon the Art of the Conclave, and your unaptnesse thereto, the more I needs must wonder. Pope 50 *Sixtus* to satisfie the plain dealing Frier, dealt with him again as plainly, saying, Hadst thou lived abroad as I have done, and seen by what folly this world is governed, thou wouldest wonder at nothing.

Surely, if this be referred unto those exorbitant engines, by which the course of affairs is moved, the Pope said true. For the wisest of men are not without their vanities, which requiring and finding mutuall toleration, work more closely, and earnestly, than right reason either needs or can. But if wee lift up our thoughts to that supreme Governour, of whose Empire all that is true, which by the Poet was said of *Jupiter*.

*Qui terram inertem, qui mare temperat  
Ventosum, & urbes, regnaque tristia,  
Divosque mortalesque turmas,  
Imperio regit unus aquo.*

Who rules the duller earth, the wind-swoln streams,  
The civill Cities and th' infernall Realms,  
Who th' host of heaven, and the mortall band,  
Alone doth govern by his just command.

Then shall wee find the quite contrary. In him there is no uncertainty nor change; hee foreseeth all things, and all things disposeth to his own honour; Hee neither deceiveth nor can be deceived, but continuing one and the same for ever, doth constantly govern all creatures by that Law, which he hath prescribed, and will never alter. The vanities of men beguile their vain contrivers, and the prosperity of the wicked, is the way leading to their destruction: yea, this broad and headlong passage to hell, is not so delightfull as it seems at the first entrance, but hath growing in it, besides the poysons which infect the soul, many cruell thorns deeply wounding the body; all which, if any few escape, they have onely this miserable advantage of others, that their descent was the more swift and expedite. But the service of God is the path guiding us to perfect happiness, and hath in it a true, though not compleat felicity, yielding such abundance of joy to the conscience, as doth easily countervail all afflictions whatsoever; though indeed those brambles that sometimes tear the skin of such as walk in this blessed way, doe commonly lay hold upon them at such time as they sit down to take their ease, and make them with themselves at their journeyes end, in the presence of their Lord whom they faithfully serve, in whose presence is the fulnesse of joy, and at whose right hand are pleasures for ever.

Psalm. 66. 11.

Wherefore it being the end and scope of all History, to teach by example of times past, such wisdom as may guide our desires and actions, we should not marvell though the *Chronicles of the Kings of Juda and Israel*, being written by men inspired with the Spirit of God, instruct us chiefly, in that which is most requisite for us to know; as the means to attain unto true felicity, both here, and hereafter, propounding examples which illustrate this infallible rule. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. Had the expedition of *Xerxes* (as it was foretold by *Daniel*) been written by some Prophet after the captivity: we may well beleeve that the counsell of God therein, and the executioners of his righteous will, should have occupied either the whole or the principall room in that narration. Yet had not the purpose of *Darius*, the desire of his Wife, and the businesse at *Sardes*, with other occurrents, been the lesse true, though they might have been omitted, as the lesse material: but these things it had been lawfull for any man to gather out of prophane Histories, or out of circumstances otherwise appearing, wherein he should not have done injury to the Sacred Writings, as long as he had forborne to derogate from the first causes, by ascribing to the second more than was due.

Such, or little different, is the businesse that I have now in hand: wherein I cannot beleeve that any man of judgement will tax me, as either fabulous or presumptuous. For hee doth not feign, that rehearseth probabilities as bare conjectures; neither doth he deprave the Text, that seeketh to illustrate and make good in humane reason, those things which authoritie alone, without further circumstance, ought to have confirmed in every mans beliefe. And this may suffice in defence of the liberty which I have used in conjectures, and may hereafter use when occasion shall require, as neither unlawfull, nor misbecoming an Historian.

#### s. VII.

*The conspiracie against Athalia.*

**VV** Hen *Athalia* had now fix years and longer worn the Crown of *Juda*, and hand found neither any foreigne enemy, nor domestick adversarie to disturb her possession, suddenly the period of her glory, and reward of her

wic-

wickednesse meeting together, took her away without any warning, by a violent and shamefull death. For the growth of the young Prince began to be such, as permitted him no longer to be concealed, and it had been very unfitting that his education should be simple, to make him seem the child of some poor man (as for his safety it was requisite,) when his capacity required to have been indue with the stomach and qualities meet for a King. All this *Jehojada* the Priest considered, and withall, the great increase of impiety, which taking deep root in the Court, was likely to spread it selfe over all the Country, if care were not used to weed it up very speedily. Wherefore he associated unto himselfe five of the Captains, in whose fidelity hee had best assurance; and having taken an oath of them, and shewed them the Kings son, hee made a Covenant with them, to advance him to the Kingdome. These drew in others of the principall men, to countenance the action, procuring at the first onely that they should repair to *Jerusalem*, where they were further acquainted with the whole matter. There needed not many persuasions to win them to the businesse: the promise of the Lord unto the house of *David*, was enough to assure them that the action was both lawfull, and likely to succeed as they desired.

But in compassing their intent, some difficulties appeared: For it was not to be hoped, that with open force they should bring their purpose to good issue; neither were the Captains, and other associates of *Jehojada* able by close working, to draw together to many truly and serviceable hands as would suffice to manage the businesse. To help in this case, the Priest gave order to such of the Levites as had finished their courses in waiting on the Divine service at the Temple, and were now relieved by others that succeeded in their turns, that they should not depart until they knew his further pleasure. So by admitting the new commers, and not discharging the old, hee had, without any noise, made up such a number, as would be able to deal with the Queens ordinary Guard, and that was enough: for if the Tyrannesse did not prevail against them at the first brunt, the favour of the People was like to shew it self on their side, who made head against her. These Levites were placed in the inner Court of the Temple, about the person of the King, who as yet was kept close; the followers of the Captains, and other adherents, were bestowed in the utter Courts: As for weapons, the Temple it self had store enough; King *David* had left an Armory to the place, which was now employed in defence of his iude.

All things being in a readinesse, and the day come, wherein this high design was to be put in execution; *Jehojada* delivered unto the Captains, Armour for them and their adherents, appointed a guard unto the Kings person, produced him openly, and gave unto him the Crown; using all ceremonies accustomed in such solemnities, with great applause of the people. Of these doings, the Queen was the last that heard any word, Which is not so strange as it may seem: for insolent natures, by dealing outrageously with such as bring them ill tidings, doe commonly lose the benefit of hearing what is to be feared, whilst yet it may be prevented, and have no information of danger, till their own eyes, amazed with the suddenesse, behold it in the shape of inevitable mischief.

All *Jerusalem* was full of the rumour, and entertained it with very good liking. Some carried home the newes, others ran forth to see, and the common joy was so great, that without apprehension of perill, under the windowes of the Court, were the people running and praising the King. *Athalia* hearing and beholding the extraordinary concourse, and noise of folks in the streets, making towards the Temple, with much unusual passion in their looks, did presently conceive, that somewhat worthy of her care was happened; though, what it might be, she did not apprehend. Howsoever it were, she meant to use her own wisdom in looking into the matter, and ordering all as the occasion might happen to require. It may bee, that she thought it some especiall solemnity used in the Divine service, which caused this much ado; and hereof the unaccounted number of Levites, and of other devout men, about the town, might give some presumption.

Many things argue that she little thought upon her own Tragedy; although *Josephus* would make it seem otherwise. For we find in the Text, She came to the people into the house of the Lord (which was neer to her Palace) and that when she looked and saw the King stand by his pillar, as the manner was with the Princes, or great men of the

2 Chro. 23. 12

8. 13. 2

1 Kin. 6. 11. 7.

13. 14.

V v 2

Land

Land by him, and the Trumpeters proclaiming him, shee rent her clothes, and cryed Treason, Treason. Hereby it appears that shee was quietly going, without any mistrust or fear, to take her place; which when she found occupied by another; then she began to afflict her self, as one cast away, and cried out in vain upon the Treason, whereby she saw that she must perish. But that she came with a guard of armed men to the Temple, (as *Josephus* reporteth) and that her company being beaten back, she entred alone, and commanded the people to kill the young Tyrant, I find no where in Scripture, neither doe I hold it credible. For had she truly known how things went, she would surely have gathered her friends about her, and used those forces in defence of her Crown, by which she gat it, and hitherto had held it. Certainly, if it were granted, that shee, like to a new *Semiramus*, did march in the head of her troop, yet it had been meer madnesse in her, to enter the place alone, when her assistants were kept out; but if shee, perceiving that neither her authority, nor their own weapons, could prevail to let in her guard, would nevertheless take upon her to command the death of the new King, calling a child of seven years old a Conspirator, and bidding them to kill him, whom shee saw to be armed in his defence, may we not think that she was mad in the most extreme degree? Certain it is that the councill of God would have taken effect, in her destruction, had she used the most likely means to disappoint it: yet we need not so cut her throat with any morall impossibilities. It is enough to say, that the godly zeal of *Jehojada* found more easie successe, through her indiscretion, than otherwise could have been expected; so that at his appointment, there was without more ado, carried out of the Temple and slain, yea so, that no blood, save her own, was shed in that quarrell; her small train that she brought along with her, not daring to stand in her defence.

## S. VIII.

*The death of Athalia, with a comparison of her and Jezabel.*

**M**OST like it is, that *Athalia* had many times, with great indignation, bewailed the rashnesse of her Nephew *Jehoram* the *Israelite*, who did foolishly cast himselfe so into the very throat of danger, gaping upon him, onely through his eager desire of quickly knowing what the matter meant: yet shee her selfe, by the like bait, was taken in the like trap, and having lived such a life as *Jezabel* had done, was rewarded with a suitable death. These two Queens were in many points much alike, each of them was Daughter, Wife, and Mother to a King; each of them ruled her husband; was an Idolatresse and a Murtheresse. The onely difference appearing in their condition, is, that *Jezabel* is more noted as incontinent of body, *Athalia* as ambitious: So that each of them surviving her husband about eight years, did spend their time in satisfying her own affections; the one using tyrannie, as the exercise of her haughty mind; the other painting her face, for the ornament of her unchaste body. In the manner of their death little difference there was, or in those things which may seem in this world to pertain unto the dead when they are gone. Each of them was taken on the sudden by Conspirators, and each of them exclaiming upon the Treason, received sentence from the mouth of one that had lived under her subjection; in execution whereof, *Jezabel* was trampled under the feet of her enemies horses; *Athalia* slain at her own horse-gate; the death of *Athalia* having (though not much) the more leisure to vex her proud heart; that of *Jezabel* the more indignitie, and shame of body. Touching their buriall, *Jezabel* was devoured by Dogges, as the Lord had threatened by the Prophet *Elias*; what became of *Athalia* wee doe not find. Like enough it is, that she was buried, as having not persecuted and slain the Lords Prophets, but suffice the Priests to exercise their function; yet of her buriall there is no monument, for she was a Church-robber. The service of *Baal* erected by these two Queens, was destroyed as soon as they were gone, and their Chaplaines, the Priests of that Religion, slain. Herein also it came to passe, alike, as touching them both when they were dead, the Kings who slew them, were afterwards afflicted, both of them by the same hand of *Hazael* the *Syrian*; in which point *Athalia* had the greater honour, if the *Syrian* (who seems to have been her good friend) pretended her revenge, as any part of his quarrell to *Juda*. Concerning children, all belonging to *Jezabel* perished in few

few dayes after her: whether *Athalia* left any behind her, it is uncertain; she had sons living after she was Queen, of whom, or of any other, that they were slaine with her, we doe not find.

This is a matter not unworthy of consideration, in regard of much that may depend upon it. For if the children of *Athalia* had been in *Jerusalem* when their Mother fell, their death would surely have followed hers as neerely, and beene registred, as well as the death of *Mattan* the Priest of *Baal*. That Law by which God forbid that the children should die for the fathers, could not have saved these ungracious Imps, whom the clause following would have cut off, which commands, that every man should die for his own sinne. Seeing therefore that they had been professors and advancers of that vile and Idolatrous worship of *Baal*, yea had robbed the Temple of the Lord, and enriched the house of *Baal* with the spoile of it; likely it is, that they should not have escaped with life, if *Jehojada* the Priest could have gotten them into his hands. As there was lawfull cause enough requiring their death, for the security of the King and his friends, that is, of all the Land, craved as much, and that very earnestly. For these had been esteemed as heires of their mothers Crowne, & being reckoned as her assistants in that particular businesse of robbing the Temple, may be thought to have carried a great sway in other matters, as Princes, and fellows with their Mother in the Kingdome. Therefore it is evident, that either they were now dead, or (perhaps following *Hazael* in his warres against *Jehu*) absent from *Jerusalem*; whereby *Jehojada* might, with the more confidence, adventure to take Armes against their Mother, that was desolate.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of Joas and Amasia, with their Contemporaries; where somewhat of the building of Carthage.*

## S. I.

*Of Joas his doings, whilst Jehojada the Priest lived.*



**B**Y the death of *Athalia*, the whole countrie of *Juda* was filled with great joy and quietnesse; wherein *Joas*, a child of seven yeeres old or there-about, began his reign, which continued almost fortie yeeres. During his minority, he lived under the protection of that honourable man *Jehojada* the Priest, who did as faithfully govern the Kingdome, as he had before carefully preserved the Kings life, & restored him unto the Throne of his ancestors. When he came to mans estate, he took by appointment of *Jehojada* two wives, & begat Sonnes and Daughters, repairing the family of *David* which was almost worn out. The first A& that hee took in hand, when hee began to rule without a Protector, was the reparation of the Temple. It was a needfull piece of work, in regard of the decay wherein that holy place was fallen, through the wickednesse of ungodly Tyrants; and requisite it was that hee should up-hold the Temple, whom the Temple had up-held. This businesse he followed with so earnest a zeal, that not only the Levites were more slack than he, but even *Jehojada* was faine to be quickened by his admonition. Money was gathered for the charges of the work; partly out of the taxe imposed by *Moses*, partly out of the liberality of the people; who gave so freely, that the Temple, besides all reparations, was enriched with vessels of gold and silver; and with all other Utensiles. The sacrifices likewise were offered, as under godly Kings they had beene, and the service of God was magnificently celebrated.



of the respect that was due to such a person: On the other side, the singular affection which he and his father had born unto the King, and the unrecountable benefits which they had done unto him, from his first infancie, were such, as should have placed *Zacharia* in the most hearty and assured love of *Joas*, yea though hee had bin otherwise a man of very small mark, and not very good condition. The truth is, that the message of a Prophet sent from God, should be heard with reverence, how simple soever he appears that brings it. But this King *Joas*, having already scorned the admonitions and protestations of such Prophets as first were sent, did now deale with *Zacharia*, like as the wicked husbandmen, in that parable of our Saviour, dealt with the heir of the Vineyard, who said, *This is the heir, come let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours*. By killing *Zacharia* he thought to become an absolute Commander, supposing belike that he was no free Prince, as long as one durst tell him the plain truth, how great soever that mans deservings were, that did so, yea though Gods commandment required it. So they conspired against this holy Prophet, and stoned him to death at the Kings appointment; but whether by any forme of open Law, as was practised upon *Naboth*; or whether surprising him by any close treachery, I doe neither read, nor can conjecture. The dignity of his person, considered together with their treacherous conspiracy, makes it probable, that they durst not call him into publike judgement, though that the manner of his death, being such as was commonly, and by order of Law, inflicted upon malefactors, may argue the contrary. Most likely it is, that the Kings commandment, by which he suffered, took place in stead of Law: which exercise of mere power (as hath been already noted) was nothing strange amongst the Kings of *Juda*.

## S. V.

*How Joas was shamefully beaten by the Amorites, and of his death.*

**T**His odious murder, committed by an unthankfull snake upon the man in whose bosome he had been fostered, as of it self alone it sufficed to make the wretched Tyrant hatefull to men of his own time, and his memory detested in all ages; so had it the well-describ'd curse of the blessed Martyr, to accompany it unto the Throne of God, and to be call for vengeance from thence; which fell down swiftly, and heavily upon the head of that ungrateful monster. It was the last yeere of his reign; the end of his time coming then upon him, when he thought himself beginning to live how he list'd without controulment. When that yeer was expired, the *Aramites* came into the Country, rather as may seem to get pillage, than to performe any great action; for they came with a small company of men: but God had intended to do more by them, than they themselves did hope for.

That *Joas* naturally was a coward, his bloody malice against his best friend, is in my judgement proof sufficient: though otherwise his base composition with *Hazael*, when hee might have leav'd (as his son after him did muster) three hundred thousand chosen men for the warre, doth well enough shew his temper. Yet now he would needs be valiant, and make his people know, how stout of disposition their King was, when hee might have his own will. But his timorous heart was not well cloaked. For to encounter with a few bands of Rovers, hee took a very great Army, so that wife men might well perceive, that he knew what he did, making shew as if he would fight for his Country, and expose himself to danger of warre, when as indeed all was meere ostentation, and no perill to be feared; hee going forth so strongly appointed, against so weak enemies. Thus might wife men think, and laugh at him in secret; considering what adoe he made about that, which in all apparent reason was (as they say) a thing of nothing. But God, before whom the wisdom of this world is foolishnesse, did laugh not only at this vaine-glorious King, but at them that thought their King secure, by reason of the multitude that he drew along with him.

When the *Aramites* & King *Joas* met, whether it were by some folly of the Leaders, or by some amazement happening among the souldiers, or by whatsoever means it pleased God to work, so it was, that that great Army of *Juda* received a notable over-throw, and all the Princes were destroyed: the Princes of *Juda*, at whose perswasion the King had become a Rebell to the King of Kings. As for *Joas* himself (as *Abulenfis* and others expound

expound the story) he was sorely beaten and hurt by them, being (as they think) taken and shamefully tormented, to wring out of him an excessive ransom.

And surely, all circumstances do greatly strengthen this conjecture. For the Text (in the old translation) saith, they exercised upon *Joas* ignominious judgements; and that departing from him, they dismissed him in great languor. All which argues, that they had him in their hands, and handled him ill favourably. Now at that time *Joas* the son of *Jehoahaz* reigned over *Israel*, and *Benhadad* the son of *Hazael* over the *Syrians* in *Damascus*; the one a valiant undertaking Prince, raised up by God to restore the State of his miserable Country; the other inferior every way to his father, of whose purchases hee lost a great part, for want of skill to keep it. The difference in condition followed between these two Princes, promising no other event than such as afterward followed, might have given to the King of *Juda* good cause to be bold, and pluck up his spirits, which *Hazael* had beaten down, if God had not been against him. But his fearful heart being likely to quake upon any apprehension of danger, was able to put the *Syrian* King in hope, that by terrifying him with some threat of war at his doores, it were easie to make him crave any tolerable conditions of peace. The unexpected good success hereof, already related, and the (perhaps as unsuspected) ill success, which the *Aramites* found in their following wars against the King of *Israel*, sheweth plainly the weakness of all earthly might, resisting the power of the Almighty. For by his Ordinance, both the Kingdome of *Juda*, after more than forty years time of gathering strength, was unable to drive out a small company of Enemies; and the Kingdome of *Israel*, having so been trodden down by *Hazael*, that onely fifty Horsemen, ten Chariots, and ten thousand Footmen were left; prevailed against his Son, and recovered all from the victorious *Aramites*. But examples hereof are every-where found, and therefore I will not insist upon this; though indeed we should not, if we be Gods children, think it more tedious to hear long and frequent reports of our heavenly Fathers honour, than of the noble acts performed by our fore-fathers upon earth.

When the *Aramites* had what they list'd, and saw that they were not able, being so few, to take any possession of the Country, they departed out of *Juda* laden with spoile; which they sent to *Damascus*, themselves belike falling upon the ten Tribes, where it is to be thought that they sped not half so well. The King of *Juda*, being in ill case, was killed on his bed when he came home, by the sons of an *Amoronitess*, and of a *Moabitess*, whom some (because onely their Mothers names, being strangers, are expressed) think to have been bondmen. Whether it were contempt of his fortune, or fear, left (as Tyrants use) hee should revenge disaster upon them, imputing it to their fault, or whatsoever else it were that animated them to murder their King, the Scripture tells us plainly, that, *For the blood of the children of Jehoada, this befall him*. And the time appears to have been used as the pretence of their conspiracy, in excuse of the fact when it was done. For *Amazias*, the son and successor of *Joas*, durst not punish them, till his Kingdome was established: but contrariwise, his body was judged unworthy of buriall in the Sepulchres of the Kings: whereby it appears, that the death of *Zacharia* caused the treason, wrought against the King, to find more approbation, than was requisite, among the people, though afterwards it was recompensed by his sonne, upon the Traitors, with well deserved death.

## S. VI.

*Of the Princes living in the time of Joas: of the time when Carthage was built: and of Dido.*

**T**Here lived with *Joas*, *Mezades* and *Diognetus* in *Athens*: *Eudemus* and *Ariflomedes* in *Corinth*: about which time *Agrippa Sylvius*, and after him *Sylvius Alladius*, were Kings of the *Albans* in *Italy*. *Oczazapes*, commonly called *Anacyn-daraxes*, the thirty seventh King succeeded unto *Ophratanes*, began his reign over the *Assyrians*, about the eighteenth year of *Joas*, which lasted forty two years. In the sixteenth of *Joas*, *Cephrenes*, the fourth from *Sejac*, succeeded unto *Cheops* in the Kingdome of *Egypt*, and held it fifty years.

In this time of *Joas*, was likewise the reign of *Pigmalion* in *Tyre*, and the foundation





Whether it were so, that the great Prophet *Elisha*, who lived in those times, did foretell the prosperity of the *Israelites* under the reign of *Joas*; or whether *Jehoahaz*, wearied and broken with long adversity, thought it the wisest way, to discharge himself in part of the heave cares attending those unhappy Syrian Warres, by laying the burden then upon his hopeful son; we find that in the *thirrie seventh year* of *Joas*, King of *Juda*, *Joas the son of Jehoahaz began to reign* over *Israel* in *Samar*; which was in the 17. year of his fathers reign, and some two or three years before his death.

It appears that this young Prince, even from the beginning of his Rule, did so well husband that poor stock that he received from his Father, of ten Chariots, fifty Horsemen, and ten thousand Foot, that hee might seem likely to prove a thriver. Amongst other circumstances, the words which he spake to *Elisha* the Prophet, argue no lesse, *For Joas* visiting the Prophet, who lay sick, spake unto him thus, *O my father, my father, the Chariot of Israel, and the horsemen of the same*: by which manner of speech hee did acknowledge, that the prayers of this holy man had stood his Kingdome in more stead, than all the Horses and Chariots could doe.

This Prophet who succeeded unto *Elias*, about the first year of *Foram* the son of *Abah* King of *Israel* died (as some have probably collected) about the third or fourth year of this *Joas*, the Nephew of *Jehoi*. To shew how the spirit of *Elias* was doubled, or did rest upon him, it exceedeth my faculty. This is recorded of him, that hee did not onely raise a dead child unto life, as *Elias* had done, but when hee himself was dead, it pleaded God that his dead bones should restore life unto a carcass, which touched them in the grave. In fine, hee bestowed as a legacie, three victories upon King *Joas*, who thereby did set *Israel* in a fair way of recovering all that the *Aramites* had usurped, and weakening the Kings of *Damasco* in such sort, that they were never after terrible to *Samar*.

### S. VIII.

Of *Amazia* his war against *Edom*; His Apostasie; and overthrow by *Joas*.

The happy successe which *Joas* had found in his war against the *Aramites*, was such as might kindle in *Amazia* a desire of undertaking some expedition, wherein himselfe might purchase the like honour. His Kingdome could furnish three hundred thousand serviceable men for the Wars; and his treasures were sufficient for the payment of these, and the hire of many more. Cause of war hee had very just against the *Edomites*, who having rebelled in the time of his grand-father *Jehoram*, had about fifty years been unreclaimed, partly by reason of the troubles happening in *Juda*, partly through the sloth and timorousnesse of his father *Joas*. Yet, forasmuch as the men of *Juda* had in many years been without all exercise of Warre (excepting that unhappy fight wherein they were beaten by a few bands of the *Aramites*) hee held it a point of wisdome to increase his forces, with souldiers waged out of *Israel*, whence he hired for an hundred talents of silver, an hundred thousand valiant men, as the Scripture telleth us, though *Josephus* diminish the number, saying that they were but twenty thousand.

This great Army, which with so much cost *Amazia* had hired out of *Israel*, hee was faine to dismiss before hee had employed it, being threatened by a Prophet with ill successe, if he strengthened himself with the help of those men, whom God (though in mercy he gave them victory against the cruell *Aramites*) did not love, because they were Idolaters. The *Israelites* therefore departed in great anger, taking in ill part this dismissal, as an high disgrace; which to revenge, they fell upon a piece of *Juda* in their return, and shewed their malice in the slaughter of three thousand men, and some spoil, so which they carried away. But *Amazia* with his own forces, knowing that God would bee assistant to their journey, entred courageously into the *Edomites* Countrie; over whom obtaining victory, he slew ten thousand, and took other ten thousand prisoners, all which he threw from an high rock; holding them, it seems, rather as Traytors, than as just enemies. This victory did not seem to reduce *Edom* under the subjection of the Crown of *Juda*; which might be the cause of that severity, which was used to the prisoners; the *Edomites* that had escaped, refusing to buy the lives of their friends and kinsmen at so dear a rate, as the losse of their own libertie. Some towns in Mount

*Seir*,

*Seir*, *Amazia* took, as appears by his carrying away the Idols thence; but it is like they were the places most indefensible, in that he left no garrisons there, whereby he might another year the better have pursued the conquest of the whole countrey. Howsoever it were, he got both honour by the journey, and gains enough, had he not lost himself.

Among other spoyle of the *Edomites*, were carried away their gods; which being vanquished and taken prisoners, did deserve well to be led in triumph. But they contrariwise, I know not by what strange witchcraft, so besotted this unworthy King *Amazia*, that he set them up to be his gods, and worshipped them, and burned incense unto them.

For this when he was rebuked by a Prophet sent from God, hee gave a churlish and threatening answer; asking the Prophet, Who made him a Counsellor, and bidding him hold his peace for fear of the worrit. If either the costly stuffe, whereof these Idols were made, or the curious workmanship and beauty, with which they were adorned by Artificers, had ravished the Kings fancy; me thinks, he should have rather turned them to matter of profit, or kept them as house-hold ornaments and things of pleasure, than thereby have suffered himself to be blinded, with such unreasonable devotion towards them. If the superstitious account wherein the *Edomites* had held them, were able to work much upon his imagination; much more should the bad service which they had done to their old Clients, have moved him thereupon to laugh, both at the *Edomites*, and them. Wherefore it seems to me, that the same affections carried him from God, unto the service of Idols, which afterwards moved him to talk so roughly to the Prophet reprehending him. He had already obeyed the warning of God by a Prophet, and sent away such auxiliarie forces as he had gathered out of *Israel*; which done, it is sayd, that he was encouraged, and led forth his people, thinking belike, that God would now rather assist him by miracle, than let him faile of obtaining all his hearts desire. But with better reason hee should have limited his desires by the will of God, whose pleasure it was, that *Esa*u having broken the yoke of *Jacob* from his neck, according as *Isaac* had fore-told, should no more become his servant. If therefore *Amazia* did hope to reconquer all the Countrey of *Edom*, hee failed of his expectation; yet so, that he brought home both profit and honour, which might have well contented him.

But there is a foolish and a wretched pride, wherewith men being transported, can ill endure to ascribe unto God the honour of those actions, in which it hath pleased him to use their own industrie, courage, or force-fight. Therefore it is commonly seen, that they, who entering into battell, are careful to pray for aide from heaven, with due acknowledgement of his power, who is the giver of victory; when the field is won, doe vaunt of their own exploits; one telling how he got such a ground of advantage; another, how he gave check to such a battalion; a third, how he seized on the enemies Cannon; every one striving to magnifie himself, whilst all forget God, as one that had not been present in the action. To ascribe to fortune the effects of another mans vertue, is I confesse, an argument of malice. Yet this is true, that as he which findeth better successe, than hee did, or in reason might expect, is deeply bound to acknowledge God the Author of his happinesse; so he whose mere wisdome and labour hath brought things, to a prosperous issue, is doubly bound to shew himself thankfull, both for the victory, and for those vertues by which the victory was gotten. And indeed so far from weaknesse is the nature of such thanksgiving, that it may well be called the height of magnanimitie; no vertue being so truly heroically, as that by which the spirit of man advanceth it self with confidence of acceptance, unto the love of God. In which sense it is a brave speech that *Evander* in *Virgil* useth to *Aneas*, none but a Christian being capable of the admonition:

*Aude spes contemneres opes, & te quoque dignum  
Finge Deo.*

With this Philosophy *Amazia* (as appears by his carriage) troubled not his head: he had shewed himself a better man of war than any King of *Juda*, since the time of *Jehosaphat*, and could be well contented, that his people should think him little inferior to *David*; of which honour he saw no reason why the Prophets should rob him, who had made him lose an hundred talents, and done him no pleasure; he having prevailed by plain force and good conduct, without any miracle at all. That hee was distempered with such vain thoughts as these (besides the witness of his impietie following) *Josephus* doth

A a a

testifie

testifie; saying, That he despised God, and that being puffed up with his good successe, of which nevertheless he would not acknowledge God to be the Author; he commanded *Joas* King of *Israel* to become his subject, and to let the ten Tribes acknowledge him their Sovereign, as they had done his Ancestours King *David* and *Salomon*. Some think that his quarrell to *Joas* was rather grounded upon the injurie done to him by the *Israelites*, whom hee dismissed in the journey against Mount *Seir*. And likely it is, that the sense of a late wrong had more power to stirre him up, than the remembrance of an old tide, forgotten long since, and by himselfe neglected thirteen; or fourteen years. Nevertheless it might be, that when he was thus provoked, hee thought it not enough to requite new wrongs, but would also call old matters into question; that to the Kings of *Israel* might, at the least, learn to keep their subjects from offending *Juda*, for fear of endangering their own Crowns. Had *Amaziah* desired onely recompence for the injurie done to him, it is not improbable that hee should have had some reasonable answer from *Joas*, who was not desirous to fight with him. But the answer which *Joas* returned, likening himself to a Cedar, and *Amaziah* in respect of him to no better than a thistle, shewes that the challenge was made in insolent termes, flust perhaps with such proud comparison of Nobilitie, as might be made (according to that which *Josephus* hath written) between a King of antient race, and one of lesse nobilitie than vertue.

*Sophocles* in  
*Ajax* Act. 1.

It is by *Sophocles* reported of *Ajax*, that when going to the warre of *Troy*, his father did bid him to be valiant, and get victory by Gods assistance, he made answer, That by Gods assistance a coward could get victory, but hee would get it alone without such help: after which proud speech, though he did many valiant acts, he had small thanks, and finally, killing himselfe in a madnesse, whereinto he fell upon disgrace received, was hardly allowed the honour of buriall. That *Amaziah* did utter such words, I doe not find: but having once entertained the thoughts, which are parents of such words, he was rewarded with successe according. The very first counsell wherein this warre was concluded, serves to prove that he was a wise Prince indeed at *Jerusalem*, among his Parafites, but a fool when he had to deal with his equalls abroad. For it was not all one, to fight with the *Edomites*, a weak people, trusting more in the fear of their Countrey, than the valour of their Souldiers: and to encounter with *Joas*, who from soop beginnings had raised himselfe to such strength, that hee was able to lend his friend a hundred thousand men, and had all his Nation exercised, and trained up in a long victorious warre. But as *Amaziah* discovered much want of judgement, in undertaking such a match; so in prosecuting the business, when it was set on foot, he behaved himselfe as a man of little experience, who having once onely tryed his fortune, and found it to be good, thought that in Warre there was nothing else to doe, than send a defiance, fight, and winne. *Joas* on the contrary side, having been accustomed to deal with a stronger enimie than the King of *Juda*, used that celeritie, which peradventure had often stood him in good stead against the *Aramite*. He did not sit waiting till the enemies brake in and wasted his Countrey, but presented himselfe with an Armie in *Juda*, ready to bid battell to *Amaziah*, and save him the labour of a long journey. This could not but greatly discourage those of *Juda*, who (besides the impression of fear which an invasion beats into people, not inured in the like) having devoured in their greedy hopes, the spoyle of *Israel*, fully perswading themselves to get as much, and at as easie a rate, as in the journey of *Edom*; were so far disappointed of their expectation, that well they might suspect all new assurance of good luck, when the old had thus beguiled them. All this notwithstanding, their King that had stomach enough to challenge the patrimonie of *Salomon*, thought like another *David* to winne it by the sword. The issue of which fool-hardinesse might easily have been fore-seen in humane reason; comparing together, either the two Kings, or the quality of their Armies, or the first and ominous beginning of the Warre. But meer humane wisdom, howsoever it might foresee much, could not have prognosticated all the mischief that fell upon *Amaziah*. For as soon as the two Armies came in fight, God, whose help this wretched man had so despised, did (as *Josephus* reports it) strike such terror and amazement into the men of *Juda*, that without one blow given, they fled all away, leaving their King to shift for himself; which he did so ill, that his enemy had soon caught him, and made him change his glorious humour into most abject basenesse. That the Armie which fled

*J. Jos. l. 9.*  
*4. 10.*

fled, sustained any other losse than of honour, I neither find in the Scriptures nor in *Josephus*; it being likely that the soon beginning of their flight, which made it the more shameful, made it also the more safe. But of the mischief that followed this overthrow, it was Gods will that *Amaziah* himselfe should sustain the whole disgrace. For *Joas* carried him directly to *Jerusalem*, where he bade him procure that the gates might be opened to let him in and his Army; threatening him otherwise with present death. So much amazed was the miserable captive, with these dreadfull words, that he durst do no other than perswade the Citizens, to yeld themselves to the mercie of the Conquerour. The Town, which afterwards being in weaker state held out two years against *Nebuchadnezzar*, was utterly dismayed, when the King that should have given his life to save it, used all his force of command and intreaty to betray it. So the gates of *Jerusalem* were opened to *Joas*, with which honour (greater than any King of *Israel* had ever obtained) he could not rest contented, but the more to despise *Amaziah* and his people, he caused 400 cubits of the wall to be thrown down, and entered the City in his Chariot through that breach, carrying the King before him as in triumph. This done, he sack'd the Temple, and the Kings Palace, and so taking hostages of *Amaziah*, he dismissed the poor creature that was glad of his life, and returned to *Samaria*.

## §. IX.

A discourse of the reasons hindring *Joas* from uniting *Juda* to the Crown of *Israel*, when he had won *Jerusalem*, and held *Amaziah* prisoner. The end of *Joas* his reign.

WE may justly marvell how it came to passe, that *Joas*, being thus in possession of *Jerusalem*, having the King in his hands, his enemies forces broken, and his own entire, could be so content to depart quietly with a little spoil, when he might have seized upon the whole Kingdome. The reign of *Athalia* had given him cause to hope that the issue of *David* might be dispossessed of that crown; his own nobility, being the son and grand-child of Kings, together with the famous acts that he had done, were enough to make the people of *Juda* think highly of him; who might also have preferred his form of government before that of their own Kings, especially at such a time, when a long succession of wicked Princes had smothered the thanks which were due to the memory of a few good ones. The commodity that would have ensued upon the union of all the twelve Tribes under one Prince, is so apparent, that I need not to insist on it. That any message from God forbade the *Israelite* (as afterwards in the victorie which *Peka* the son of *Romelia* got upon *Abaz*) to turn his present advantage to the best use, we doe not read. All this makes it the more difficult to resolve the question, why a Prince so well exercised as *Joas* had been in recovering his own, and winning from the enemy, should forsake the possession of *Jerusalem*, and wilfully neglect the possibilities, or rather cast away the full assurance of so fair a conquest, as this Kingdome of *Juda*.

But concerning that point, which of all others had been most material, I mean the desire of the vanquished people to accept the *Israelite* for their King, it is plainly seen, that entering *Jerusalem* in triumphant manner, *Joas* was unable to concoct his own prosperitie. For, the opening of the gates had been enough to have let him not onely into the Citie, but into the Royall Throne, and the peoples hearts, whom by fair intreatie (especially having sure means of compulsion) hee might have made his own, when they saw themselves betrayed, and basely given away by him whose they had been before. The fair mark which this opportunitie presented, hee did not aim at, because his ambition was otherwise, and more meanly busied, in levelling at the glory of a triumphant entrie through a breach. Yet this error might afterwards have been corrected well enough, if entering as an enimie, and shewing what hee could doe, by spending his anger upon the Walls, he had within the Citie done offices of a friend, and laboured to shew good will to the inhabitants. But when his pride had done, his covetousnesse began, and sought to please it self with that which is commonly most ready to the spoiler, yet should be most forborn. The Treasure where with *Sefac*, *Hazeael*, and the *Philistims*, men ignorant of the true God and his Religion, had quenched their greedy thirst, ought not to have tempted the appetite of *Joas*, who though an Idolater, yet

yet acknowledged also and worshipped the eternall God, whose Temple was at *Jerusalem*. Therefore when the people saw him take his way directly to seise that holy place, and lay his ravenous hands upon the consecrated vessels, calling the familie of *Obed Edom* (whose children had hereditarie charge of the treasure) to a strict account, as if they had been officers of his own Exchequer; they considered him rather as an execrable Church-tobber, than as a noble Prince, an *Israelite*, and their brother, though of another Tribe. Thus following that course, which the most vertuous King of our age (taxing it with the same phrase) hath wisely avoyded; by stealing a few Apples, he lost the inheritance of the whole Orchard. The people detested him, and after the respite of a few dayes, might, by comparing themselves one to one, perceive his Souldiers to be no better than men of their own mould, and inferiour in number to the inhabitants of so great a Citie. It is not so easie to hold by force a mightie town entered by capitulation, as to enter the gates opened by unadvised fear. For when the Citizens, not being disarmed, recover their spirits, and begin to understand their first error, they will think upon every advantage, of place, of provisions, of multitude, yea of women armed with tile-stones; and rather choise by desperate resolution, to correct the evils grown out of their former cowardise, than suffer those mischiefs to poison the bodie, which in such half-conquests; are easily tasted in the mouth. A more lively example hereof cannot be desired, than the Citie of *Florence*, which through the weaknesse of *Peter de Medices*, governing therein as a Prince, was reduced into such hard teares, that it opened the gates unto the French King *Charles* the eighth, who not plainly professing himself either friend or foe to the State, entered the Town, with his Armie, in triumphant manner, himself and his horie armed, with his lance upon his thigh. Many insolencies were therein committed by the French, and much argument of quarrell ministred between them and the Townes-men: so farre forth that the *Florentines*, to preserve their libertie, were driven to prepare for fight. To conclude the matter, *Charles* propounds intollerable conditions, demanding huge summes of ready money, and the absolute Seigniorie of the State, as conquered by him, who entered the Citie in Armes. But *Peter Caponi*, a principall Citizen, catching these Articles from the Kings Secretarie, and tearing them before his face, bad him sound his Trumpets, and they would ring their Bels: which peremptory words made the French bethink and themselves, and come readily to this agreement, that for forty thousand pounds, and not half of that money to be paid in hand, *Charles* should not onely depart in peace, but restore whatsoever he had of their Dominion, and continue their assured friend. So dangerous a matter did it seem for that brave Armie, which in few moneths after wanne the Kingdome of *Naples*, to fight in the streets, against the armed multitude of that populous Citie. It is true, that *Charles* had other businesse (and so perhaps had *Joas*, as shall anon be shewed) that called him away: but it was the apprehension of imminent danger that made him come to reason. In such cases the firing of houles, usually drawes every Citizen to save his own, leaving victory to the Souldier: yet where the people are prepared and resolved, women can quench, as fast as the enemy, having other things to look unto, can set on fire. And indeed that Commander is more given to anger than regardfull of profit, who upon the uncertain hope of destroying a Town, forsakes the assurance of a good composition. Diversitie of circumstance may alter the case: it is enough to say, that it might be in *Jerusalem*, as we know it was in *Florence*.

How strongly soever *Joas* might hold himself within *Jerusalem*, he could not easily depart from thence, with his bootie safe, if the armie of *Juda*, which had bin more terrified than weakened in the late encounter, should re-enforce it self, and give him a check upon the way. Wherefore it was wisely done of him, to take hostages for his better security, his Armie being upon return, and better loaden than when it came forth; for which causes it was the more unfit to fight.

Besides these impediments, within the Citie and without, serving to cool the ambition of *Joas*, and keep it down from aspiring to the Crown of *Juda*; it appears that somewhat was newly fallen out, which had reference to the anger of *Elisha* the Prophet; who, when this *Joas* had smitten the ground with his arrowes thrice, told him that he should no oner smite the *Aramites*. The three victories which *Israel* had against *Aram*, are by some, and with great probability, referred unto the fifth, sixth, and seventh years

years of *Joas*: after which time, if any losses ensuing had blemished the former good success, ill might the King of *Israel* have likened himself to a stately Cedar, and worse could he have either lent the *Judean* one hundred thousand men, or meet him in battell, who was able to bring into the field three hundred thousand of his own. Seeing therefore it is made plain by the words of *Elisha*, that after three victories *Joas* should find some change of fortune, and suffer losse; we must needs conclude, that the *Aramite* prevailed upon him this year, it being the last of his Reign. That this was so, and that the *Syrians*, taking advantage of *Joas* his absence, gave such a blow to *Israel*, as the King at his return was not able to remedie, but rather fell himself into new misfortunes, which increased the calamitie; we may evidently perceive in that which is spoken of *Jeroboam* his son. For it is said, That the Lord saw the exceeding bitter afflictions of *Israel*, and that having not decreed to put out the name of *Israel* from under the Heaven, he preserved them by the hand of *Jeroboam* the sonne of *Joas*. This is enough to prove, that the victorious Reign of *Joas* was concluded with a sad catastrophe; the riches of the Temple hastening his miserie and death, as they had done with *Sefar*, *Abalia*, and *Hazael*; and as afterwards they wrought with *Antiochus*, *Cassius*, and other sacrilegious Potentates.

Thus either through indignation conceived against him, by the people of *Jerusalem*, and courage which they took to set upon him within the Walls, or through preparation of the Armie that lay abroad in the Countrey to bid him battell in open field, and recover by a new charge the honour which was lost at the former encounter; or through the miseries daily brought upon his own Countrey, by the *Syrian* in his absence (if not by all of these) *Joas* was driven to lay aside all thought of winning the kingdome of *Juda*; and taking hostages for his quiet passage, made all haste homewards, where he found a sad wel-come, and being utterly forsaken of his wonted prosperitie, forsook also his life in few moneths after, leaving his kingdome to *Jeroboam* the second, his fortunate and valiant son.

## §. X.

## The end of Amasia his Reign and life.

Any man is able to ghesse how *Amasia* looked, when the enemy had left him. Hee that had vaunted so much of his own great prowess and skill in Armes, threatening to work wonders, and set up a new the glorious Empire of *David*, was now uncased of his Lyons hide, and appeared nothing so terrible a beast as he had been painted. Much argument of scoffing at him he had ministred unto such as held him in dislike; which at this time, doubtlesse were very many: for the shame that falls upon an insolent man, seldome failes of meeting with abundance of reproach. As for *Amasia* (besides that the multitude are always prone to lay the blame upon their Governours, even of those calamities which happen by their own default) there was no child in all *Jerusalem*, but knew him to be the root of all this mischief. He had not onely challenged a good man of War, being himself a Dastard; but when he was beaten and taken by him, had basely pleaded for the common enemy, to have him let into the Citie, that with his own eyes he might see what spoyle there was, and not make a bad bargain by heare-say. The father of this *Amasia* was a beastly man; yet when the *Aramites* took him and tormented him, he did not offer to buy his own life at so dear a rate, as the Citie & Temple of *Jerusalem*. Had he offered, should they have made his promise good? surely the haste which they had made in condescending to this hard match, was very unfortunate: for by keeping out the *Israelites* (which was easie enough) any little while, they should soone have bin rid of him, seeing that the *Aramites* would have made him run home, with greater speed than he came forth. Then also, when having trusted up his baggage, he was ready to be gone, a little courage would have served to perswade him to leave his load behind; had not their good King delivered up hostages, to secure his return, as loath to defraud him of the recompence due to his paines taken.

Such exprobrations could not but vex the heart of this unhappie King: it had been well for him, if they had made him acknowledge his fault unto God, that had punished him by all this dishonour. But we find no mention of his amendment. Rather it appears, that he continued an Idolater to the very last. For it is said of him, that after his turning away from the Lord, they wrought treason against him in *Jerusalem*: a manifest

proof that he was not reclaimed unto his lives end. And certainly, they which tell a man in his adversity of his faults passed, shall sooner be thought to upbraid him with his fortune, than to seeke his reformation. Wherefore it is no marvell, that Priests and Prophets were lesse welcome to him, than ever they had been. On the other side, flatterers, and such as were desirous to put a heart into him, whereof themselves might alwaies be masters, wanted not plausible matter to revive him. For he was not the first, nor second of the Kings of *Juda*, that had been overcome in battell. *David* himselfe had abandoned the Citie, leaving it before the enemy was in sight, unto *Absalom* his rebellious Sonne. Many besides him had received losses, wherein the Temple bare a part. If *Joas* might so easily have beene kept out; why did their Ancestors let *Sesac* in? *Asa* was reputed a vertuous Prince, yet with his own hands hee emptied the Temple, and was not blamed, but held excusable by necessity of the State. Belike these traducers would commend no Actions but of dead Princes: if so, hee should rather live to punish them, than die to please them. Though wherein had hee given them any cause of displeasure? It was he indeed that commanded to set open the gates to *Joas*; but it was the people that did it. Good servants ought not to have obeyed their Masters Commandements to his disadvantage, when they saw him not master of his own Person. As his captivity did acquit him from blame of all things that he did or suffered in that condition; so was that misfortune it selfe, in true estimation, as highly to his honour, as deeply to his losse. For had hee beene as halty to flye as others were, hee might have escaped as well as others did. But seeking to reach the base multitude courage by his Royall example, he was shamefully betrayed by those in whom he trusted. Unworthy creatures, that could readily obey him, when speaking another mans words, being prisoner, he commanded them to yeeld; having neglected his charge, when leading them into the field, he bad them stand to it and fight like men. The best was, that they must needs acknowledge his mischance, as the occasion whereby many thousand lives were saved; the enemy having wisely preferred the surpris of a Lion that was Captaine, before the chase and slaughter of an Army of Stags that followed him.

These or the like words comforting *Amazias*, were able to perswade him, that it was even so indeed. And such excuses might have served well enough to please the people, if the King had first studied how to please God. But hee that was unwilling to ascribe unto God the good successe fore-told by a Prophet; could easily find how to impute this late disaster unto fortune, and the fault of others. Now concerning fortune, it seemes that he meant to keep himselfe safe from her by sitting still; for in fiftene years following (so long hee out-lived his honour) we find not that he stirred. As for his subjects, though nothing henceforth bee recorded of his government, yet we may see by his end, that the middle time was ill spent among them, increasing their hatred to his own ruine. He that suspecteth his own worth or other mens opinions, thinking the lesse regard is had of his person than hee beleeveth to be due to his place, will commonly spend all the force of his authoritie in purchasing the name of a severe man. For the affected sownesse of a vaine fellow, doth many times resemble the gravity of one that is wise: and the feare wherein they live, which are subject unto oppression, carries a shew of reverence to him that does the wrong; at least it serves to dazle the eyes of underlings, keeping them from prying into the weakednesse of such as have jurisdiction over them. Thus the time, wherein, by well using it, men might attain to be such as they ought, they do usually mispend, in seeking to appeare such as they are not. This is a vaine & deceptible course; procuring, in stead of the respect that was hoped for, more indignation than was feared. Which is a thing of dangerous consequence; especially when an unable spirit, being over-perted with so high authority, is too passionate in the execution of such an office, as cannot be checked but by violence. If therefore *Amazias* thought by extreme rigour to hold up his reputation, what did hee else than strive to make the people think he hated them, when of themselves they were apt enough to beleve that he did not love them? the best was, that he had, by revenging his fathers death provided well enough for his own security; but who should take vengeance (or upon whom?) of such a murder, wherein every one had a part? Surely God himselfe, who had not given commandement or leave unto the people, to take his office out of his hand, in shedding the blood of his Anointed. Yet as *Amazias* carelesse of God, was carried headlong

headlong by his own affections; so his subjects, following the same ill example, with out requiring what belonged unto their duties, rose up against him, with such headlong furie, that being unable to defend himselfe in *Jerusalem*, he was driven to forsake the Citie, and flee to *Lachis*, for safeguard of his life. But so extreme was the hatred conceived against him, & so generall, that neither his absence could allay the rage of it in the Capitall Citie, nor his presence in the Countrey abroad procure friends to defend his life. *Que*-*tionlesse* hee chose the Town of *Lachis* for his refuge, as a place of all other best affected to him; yet found hee there none other favour, than that the people did not kil him with their own hands; for when the Conspirators (who troubled not themselves about raising an Armie for the matter) sent pursuers after, he was abandoned to death. *Lachis* was the utmost Citie of his Dominion Westward, standing somewhat without the border of *Juda*; so that he might have made an easie escape (if he durst adventure) into the Territories of the *Philistines*, or the Kingdome of *Israel*. Therefore it may seem that he was detained there, where certain it is that he found no kind of favour: for had not the people of this Town added their own treason to the generall insurrection; the murderers could not at so good leisure as they did, have carried away his bodie to *Jerusalem*, where they gave him buriall with his fathers.

## §. XI.

<sup>20</sup> Of the Interregnum, or vacancie, that was in the Kingdome of *Juda*, after the death of *Amazias*.

**I**T hath already bin shewed, that the Reignes of the Kings of *Juda* and *Israel* were sometimes to be measured by compleat years, otherwhiles, by years current: and that the time of one King is now and then confounded with the last years of his fathers Reign, or the foremost of his sons. But we are now arrived at a mere vacation, wherein the Crown of *Juda* lay voyd eleven whole yeares: a thing not plainly set down in Scriptures, nor yet remembered by *Iosephus*; and therefore hard to be beleevd, were it not proved by necessary consequence.

<sup>30</sup> Twice we find it written, that *Amazias*, King of *Juda*, lived after the death of *Joas* King of *Israel* fifteen yeares; whereupon it followes, that the death of *Amazias*, was about the end of fifteen yeares compleat, which *Jeroboam* the second (who in the fiftieth year of *Amazias* was made King over *Israel*) had reigned in *Samaria*. But the succession of *Uzzias*, who is also called *Azarias*, unto his father in the Kingdome of *Juda*, was eleven yeares later than the sixteenth of *Jeroboam*: for it is exprest, that *Azarias* began to reign in the seven and twentieth yeare of *Jeroboam*; the sixteenth yeare of his life, being joyned with the first of two and fiftie that he reigned. So the Interregnum of eleven yeares cannot be divided, without some hard means used, of interpreting the Text otherwise than the letter founds.

<sup>40</sup> Yet some conjectures there are made, which tend to keep all even, without acknowledging any voyd time. For it is thought that in the place last of all cited, by the seven and twentieth yeare of *Jeroboam*, we should perhaps understand the seven and twentieth yeare of his life; or else (because the like words are no where else interpreted in the like sense) that *Azarias* was eleven yeares under age, that is, five yeares old, when his father died, and so his sixteenth yeare might concur with the seven and twentieth of *Jeroboam*; or that the Text it selfe might have suffered some wrong, by miswriting twentie seven for seventeen yeares; and so, by making the seventeenth yeare of *Jeroboam* to be newly begun, all may be saved. These are the conjectures of that worthy man *Gerard Mercator*: concerning the first of which, it may suffice, that the Author himselfe doth easily let it passe, as improbable; the last is followed by none that I know, neither is it fit, that upon every doubt, we should call the text in question, which could not be falsified in all copies, if perhaps it were in one: as for the second, it may be held with some qualification, that *Azarias* began his Reign being five yeares old; but then must we adde those eleven yeares which passed in his minority, to the two and fiftie that followed his sixteenth yeare, which is all one, in a maner, with allowing an Interregnum.

But why should we be so carefull to avoyd an Interregnum in *Juda*, seeing that the like necessitie

necessity hath inforced all good Writers to acknowledge the like vacancy, twice happening within few yeares, in the kingdom of *Israel*: The space of time between *Jeroboams* death, and the beginning of *Zachariabs* reign, and such another gap found between the death of *Peka*, and the beginning of *Hoseas*, have made it easily to be admitted into *Samarita*; which the consideration of things as they stood in *Juda*, when *Amazias* was slaine, doth make more probable to have happened there, yea, although the necessity of computation were not so apparent.

For the publique furie having so farre extended it selfe, as unto the destruction of the kings own person, was not likely to be appeased without order taken for obtaining some redresse of those matters, which had caused it at the first to break forth into such extremity. We need not therefore wonder how it came to passe, that they which already had thrown themselves into such an horrible treason, should afterwards dare to withhold the Crown from a Prince of that age, which being invested in all ornaments of Regality, is nevertheless exposed to many injuries, proceeding from head-strong, and forgetfull subjects.

As for their conjecture, who make *Azarias* to have beene King but one and forty years after he came out of his non-age; I dare not allow it, because it agrees too hardly with the Text. The best opinion were that which gives unto *Jeroboam* eleven yeares of reign with his Father, before he began to reigne single in the fifteenth of *Amazias*; did it not swallow up almost the whole reign of *Joas*, and extending the yeares of those which reigned in *Israel* (by making such of them compleat as were onely current) and take at the shortest the reignes of Princes ruling in other Nations. But I will not stand to dispute further of this: every man may follow his own opinion, and see mine more plainly in the Chronological Table, drawne for these purposes.

## §. XII.

Of Princes Contemporarie with *Amazias*, and more particularly of *Sardanapalus*.

**T**He Princes living with *Amazias*, and in the eleven yeares that followed his death, were *Joas* and *Jeroboam* in *Israel*; *Cephenes* and *Mycerinus* in *Egypt*; *Sylvius Aladus*, and *Sylvius Aventinus* in *Alba*; *Agamemnon* in *Corinth*; *Diogenes Phredus*, and *Aripbron* in *Athen*; in *Lacedaemon* *Thestus*, in whose time the *Spartans* wan from the *Achaians*, *Gerauba*, *Amyela*, and some other Townes.

But more notable than all these, was *Assyrian Sardanapalus*, who in the one and twentieth year of *Amazias*, succeeding his father *Ocraxapes* or *Anacyndaraxes*, reigned twenty yeares, and was slaine the last of the eleven voyd yeares which fore-went the reign of *Azarias*. In him ended (as most agree) the line of *Ninus*, which had held that Empire one thousand two hundred and forty yeares. A most luxurious and effeminate Palliard he was, passing away his time among strumpets, whom he imitated both in apparel and behaviour.

In these voluptuous courses he lived an unhappy life, knowing himselfe to be so vile, that he durst not let any man have a sight of him; yet scarce he was at length, and the sight of him was so odious, that it procured his ruine. For *Arbaces*, who governed *Media* under him, finding meanes to behold the person of his King, was so incensed with that beastly spectacle of a man disguised in womans attire, and striving to counterfeite an harlot, that he thought it a great shame to live under the command of so unworthy a creature. Purposing therefore to free himselfe and others from so base subjection, he was much encouraged by the prediction of *Beleus* or *Belosus* a *Chaldean*, who told him plainly, that the Kingdom of *Sardanapalus* should fall into his hands. *Arbaces* well pleased with the prophetic, did promise unto *Belosus* himselfe the government of *Babylon*; and so concluding how to handle the business, one of them stirred up the *Medes*, and allured the *Persians* into the quarrel, the other perswaded the *Babylonians* and *Arabians* to venture themselves in the same cause. These foure Nations armed forty thousand men against *Sardanapalus*, who in this danger was not wanting to himselfe, but gathering such forces as he could out of other Nations, encountered the rebels, as one that would by deeds refute the tales that they had told of him. Neither did his carriage in the beginning of that warre, answer to the manner of his retirednesse. For in three battels

battels he carried away the better, driving *Arbaces* and his followers into such fearful termes, that had not *Beleus* promised them constantly some unexpected succours, they would forthwith have broken up their Camp. About the same time, an Armie out of *Babylonia* was coming to assist the King; but *Arbaces* encountering it upon the way, perswaded so strongly by promise of liberty, that those forces joyned themselves with his. The sudden departure of the enemy seeming to be a flight, caused *Sardanapalus* to feast his Armie, triumphing before victory. But the Rebels being strengthened with this new supply, came upon him by night, and forced his Camp, which through over-great security was unprepared for resistance.

This overthrow did so weaken the Kings heart, that leaving his wives brother *Salammennus* to keep the field, he withdrew himself into the Citie of *Nineve*; which, till new aydes that he sent for should come, he thought easily to defend; it having been prophesied, that *Nineve* should never be taken, till the River were enemy to the Town. Of the greatnesse and strength of *Nineve*, enough hath been spoken in our discourse of *Ninus*. It was so well victualled, that *Arbaces* (having in two battels overthrowen the Kings Armie, and slain *Salammennus*) was faine to lye two whole yeares before it, in hope to winne it by famine; whereof yet hee saw no appearance. It seems that hee wanted Engines and skill to force those walls, which were an hundred foot high, and thick enough for three Chariots in front to passe upon the rampire. But that which hee could not doe in two yeares, the River of *Tigris* did in the third: for being high swolne with raines, it not onely drowned a part of the Citie through which it ranne, but threw down twenty furlongs of the wall, and made a fair breach for *Arbaces* to enter.

*Sardanapalus*, either terrified with the accomplishment of the old Oracle, or seeing no means of resistance left, shutting up himself into his Palace, with his Wives, Eunuches, and all his Treasures, did set the house on fire, wherewith he and they were together consumed. *Strabo* speaks of a monument of his, that was in *Anchiale* a Citie of *Cilicia*, whereon was found an inscription shewing that he built that Citie and *Tharsus* upon one day: but the addition hereto, bidding men eat and drink, and make merrory, encouraged others with verses well known, to a voluptuous life, by his own example testified that his nature was more prone to sensuality, than to any vertue becoming a Prince.

There are some that faintly report otherwise of his end, saying that *Arbaces*, when he first found him among his Concubines, was so enraged, that suddenly he slew him with a dagger. But the more generall consent of writers agrees with this relation of *Diodorus Siculus*, who citeth *Ctesias* a Greek Writer, that lived in the Court of *Persia*, where the truth might best be known.

Concerning the Princes which reigned in *Assyria*, from the time of *Semiramis*, unto *Sardanapalus*, though I believe that they were sometimes (yet not, as *Orosius* hath it, incessantly) buised in offensive, or else defensive arms; yet for the most part of them I do better trust *Diodorus Siculus*, who saith that their names were overpassed by *Ctesias*, because they did nothing worthy of memorie. Whatsoever they did, that which *Theophilus Antiochenus* hath said of them is very true; Silence and Oblivion hath oppressed them.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## Of Uzziā.

S. I.

The prosperitie of Uzziā, and of Jeroboam the second, who reigned with him in Israel. Of the Anarchie that was in the ten Tribes after the death of Jeroboam. Of Zacharia, Sallum, Menahem, and Pekahia.

**U**zziā, who is also called *Ahaziah*, the son of *Jotham*, was made King of *Juda*, when he was sixteen years old, in the seven and twentieth year of *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas* King of *Israel*. Hee served the God of his father *David*, and had therefore good successe in all his enterprises. Hee built *Eloth*, a Town that stood neer to the Red Sea, and restored it to *Juda*. He overcame the *Philistims*, of whose Towns he dismantled some, and built others in sundrie parts of their Territories, <sup>20</sup> Also he got the masterie over some parts of *Arabia*, and brought the *Ammonites* to pay him tribute. Such were the fruits of his prosperous wars, wherein (as *Josephus* rehearseth his acts) he began with the *Philistims*, and then proceeded unto the *Arabians* and *Ammonites*. His Armie consisted of three hundred and seven thousand men of war, <sup>21</sup> over which were appointed two thousand and six hundred Captains. For all this multitude the King prepared *Shields*, and *spears*, and *helmets*, and other Arms requisite; following therein happily a course quite opposite unto that which some of his late predecessors had held, who thought it better policie to use the service of the Nobilitie, than <sup>22</sup> of the multitude, carrying forth to warre the *Princes*, and all the *Chariots*.

As the victories of *Uzziā* were far more important, than the achievements of all that <sup>23</sup> had reigned in *Juda*, since the time of *David*, so were his riches and magnificent works, equall, if not superiour to any of theirs that had been Kings between him and *Salomon*. For, besides that great conquests are won to repay the charges of War with triple interest, he had the skill to use, as well as the happinesse to get. Hee turned his lands to the best use, keeping Ploughmen and Dressers of Vines, in grounds convenient for such husbandrie. In other places he had Cattell feeding; whereof he might well keep great store, having won so much from the *Ammonites* and *Arabians*, that had abundance of waste ground serving for pasturage. For defence of his Cattell and Herdsmen, hee built Towers in the wilderness. He also digged many Cisterns or Ponds. *Josephus* calls them <sup>24</sup> water-courses; but in such drie grounds, it was enough that he found water, by digging in the most likely places. If by these Towers he so commanded the water, that none could without his consent, relieve themselves therewith, questionlesse he took the onely course, by which he might securely hold the Lordship over all the wilderness; it being hardly passible, by reason of the extreme drought, when the few Springs therein found, are left free to the use of Travellers.

Besides all this cost, and the building both of *Eloth* by the Red Sea, and of sundrie Towns among the *Philistims*; he repaired the wall of *Jerusalem*, which *Joas* had broken down, and fortified it with Towers, whereof some were an hundred and fiftie Cubits high.

The state of *Israel* did never so flourish, as at this time, since the division of the twelve <sup>25</sup> Tribes into two kingdomes. For as *Uzziā* prevailed in the South, so (if not more) *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas*, King of the ten Tribes, enlarged his border on the North; where obtaining many victories against the *Syrians*, hee wan the Royall Citie of *Damascus*, and hee wan *Hamath*, with all the countrie thereabout from the entring of *Hamath*, unto the Sea of the Wilderness, that is, (as the most expound it) unto the vast desarts of *Arabia*, the end whereof was undiscovered. So the bounds of *Israel* in those parts, were in time of this *Jeroboam*, the same (or not much narrower) which they had bin in the reign of *David*.

But

But it was not for the piety of *Jeroboam*, that he thrived so well, for he was an Idolater: it was only the compassion which the Lord had on *Israel*, seeing the exceeding bitter affliction whereinto the *Aramites* had brought his people, which caused him to alter the succession of war, and to throw the victorious *Aramites* under the feet of those whom they had so cruelly oppressed. The line of *Jehu* to which God had promised the Kingdome of *Israel* unto the fourth generation, was now not far from the end; and now again it was invited unto repentance by new benefits, as it hath been at the beginning. But the sin of *Jeroboam* the son of *Nebat* was held so pretious, that neither the kingdome it self given to him by God, was able to draw *Jehu* from that politick Idolatry; nor the misery falling upon him and his posterity, to bring them to a better course of Religion; nor yet, at the last, this great prosperity of *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas*, to make him render the honour that was due to the onely giver of victory. Wherefore the promise of God made unto *Jehu*, that his sons, unto the fourth generation, should sit on the throne of *Israel*, was not enlarged; but being almost expired, gave warning of the approaching end, by an accident (so strange, that we who find no particulars recorded, can hardly ghesse at the occasions) foregoing the last accomplishment. <sup>1 Reg. 10. 15.</sup>

When *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas*, after a victorious reign of one and forty years, had ended his life; it seems in all reason that *Zacharia* his son should forthwith have been admitted to reign in his stead; the Nobility of that race having gotten such a lustre by the immediate succession of four Kings, that any Competitor, had the Crown passed by election, must needs have appeared base; and the virtue of the last King having been so great, as might well serve to lay the foundation of a new house, much more to establish the already confirmed right of a family so rooted in possession. All this notwithstanding, two or three and twenty years did passe before *Zacharia* the sonne of *Jeroboam* was, by uniforme consent, received as King. The true original causes hereof were to be found at *Dan* and *Bethel*, where the golden Calves did stand: yet second instruments of this disturbance are likely not to have been wanting, upon which the wisdom of man was ready to cast an eye. Probable it is, that the Captains of the army (who afterwards slew one another so fast, that in fourteen years there reigned five Kings) did now by head-strong violence, rend the kingdome asunder, holding each what hee <sup>20</sup> could, and either despising or hating some qualities in *Zacharia*; untill, after many years, wearied with dissention, and the principall of them perhaps, being taken out of the way by death, for want of any other eminent man, they consented to yeild all quietly to the son of *Jeroboam*. That this Anarchy lasted almost three and twenty years, we find by the difference of time between the fifteenth year of *Uzziā*, which was the last of *Jeroboam* his one and fortieth (his seven and twentieth concurring with the first of *Uzziā*) and the eight and thirtieth of the same *Uzziā*, in the last six moneths whereof *Zacharia* reigned in *Samaria*. There are some indeed that by supposing *Jeroboam* to have reigned with his father eleven years, do cut off the interregnum in *Juda* (before mentioned) and by the same reason abridge this Anarchie that was before the reign of *Zacharia* in *Israel*. Yet <sup>21</sup> they leave it twelve years long: which is time sufficient to prove that the kingdome of the ten Tribes was no lesse distempered than as is already noted. But I choose rather to follow the more common opinion, as concurring more exactly with the times of other Princes reigning abroad in the World, than this doubtfull conjecture, that gives to *Jeroboam* two and fifty years, by adding three quarters of his fathers reign unto his own; which was it self indeed so long, that he may well seem to have begun it very young: for I do not think that God blessed this Idolater both with a longer reign, and with a longer life than hee did his servant *David*.

Thus much being spoken of the time wherein the Throne of *Israel* was voyd, before the reign of *Zacharia*; little may suffice to be said of his reign it selfe, which lasted but a little while. Six moneths only was he King; in which time hee declared himself a worshipper of the golden Calves; which was enough to justifie the judgement of God; whereby he was slain. Hee was the last of *Jehu*'s house, being (inclusively) the first of that line; which may have been some cause of the troubles impeaching his orderly succession: the prophesie having determined that race in the fourth generation. But (besides that Gods promise was extended unto the utmost) there was no warrant given to *Salum*, or to any other, for the death of *Zacharia*, as had been given to *Jehu* for the slaughter of *Jeroboam*, and for the eradication of *Ahabs* house.

Zacharia



*Zacharia* having been six months a King, was then slain by *Sallum*, who reigned after him, the space of a month in *Samaria*. What this *Sallum* was, I doe not find; save onely that he was a Traytour, and the sonne of one *Jabeſh*, whereby his father got no honour. It seems that he was one of those, who in time of faction had laboured for himself; and now when all other Competitors were sitten down, thought easily to prevail against that King, in whose person the race of *Jehu* was to fail. Manifest it is, that *Sallum* had a strong partie: for *Tiphſah* or *Thapſa*, and the coast thereof even from *Tirzah*, where *Menahem* his enemy and supplanter then lay, refused to admit, as King in his stead, the man that murdered him. Yet at the end of one month, *Sallum* received the reward of his treason, and was slain by *Menahem* who reigned in his place. 10

*Menahem* the son of *Gadi*, reigned after *Sallum* ten years. In opposition to *Sallum*, his hatred was deadly, and inhumane: for he not onely destroyed *Tiphſah*, and all that were therein, or thereabouts, but he ript up all their women with child, because they did not open their gates and let him in. Had this cruelty been used in revenge of *Zacharia*'s death, it is like that hee would have been as earnest, in procuring unto him his Fathers Crown when it was first due. But in performing that office, there was used such long deliberation, that we may plainly discover Ambition, Disdain, and other private passions, to have been the causes of this beastly outrage.

In the time of *Menahem*, and (as it seems) in the beginning of his Reign, *Pul*, King of *Assyria*, came against the Land of *Israel*; whom this new King appealed, with a thousand talents of silver, levied upon all the substantial men in his Country. With this money the *Israelites* purchased, not onely the peace of his Kingdom, but his own establishment therein: some factious man (belike) having either invited *Pul* thither, or (if he came uncalled) sought to use his help, in deposing this ill-beloved King. *Josephus* reports of this *Menahem*, that his reign was no milder than his entrance. But after ten years, his tyrannie ended with his life: and *Pekahia* his Sonne occupied his room.

Of this *Pekahia* the story is short: for he reigned onely two years; at the end whereof, hee was slain by *Peka* the sonne of *Remalia*, whose treason was rewarded with the Crown of *Israel*, as, in time coming, another mans Treason against himself shall be. 30 There needs no more to be said of *Menahem* and his sonne, save that they were both of them Idolaters; and the son (as we find in *Josephus*) like to his father in cruelty. Concerning *Pul* the *Assyrian* King, who first opened unto those Northern Nations the way into *Palastina*; it will shortly follow in order of the Story, to deliver our opinion: whether he were that *Belosus* (called also *Beleſes*, and by some *Phul Belochus*) who joined with *Arbaces* the *Median*, against *Sardanapalus*, or whether he were some other man. At the present it is more fit that we relate the end of *Uzzia*'s life, who out-lived the happineſſe wherein we left him.

## §. II.

The end of *Uzzia* his Reign and Life.

AS the zeal of *Jehojada* that godly Priest was the mean to preserve the lineage of *David* in the person of *Joas*, so it appears, that the care of holy men was not wanting to *Uzzia*, to bring him up and advance him to the Crown of *Juda*, when the hatred borne to his Father *Amaziah* had endangered his succession. For it is said of *Uzzia*, That he sought God in the dayes of *Zecharia* (which understood the visions of God, and when as he sought the Lord, God made him prosper.

But, when he was strong, his heart was lifted up to his destruction: for hee transgressed against the Lord his God, and went into the Temple of the Lord to burn incense upon the Altar of incense. Thus he thought to enlarge his own authority, by meddling in the Priests office, whose power had in every extremity been so helpfull to the Kings of *Juda*; that meere gratitude and civill policy, should have held back *Uzzia* from inchoaching thereupon; yea, though the Law of God had been silent in this case, and not forbidding it. Howsoever, the King forgot his duty, the Priests remembered theirs, and God forgot not to assist them. *Azaria* the high Priest interrupted the Kings purpose, and gave him to understand how little to his honour it would prove, that hee took upon him the office of the sons of *Aaron*. There were with *Azaria* fourscore other Priests, valiant men, but their

their valour was shewed onely in assisting the high Priest, when (according to his dutie) he reprehended the Kings presumption. This was enough, the rest God himself performed. We find in *Josephus*, that the King had apparelled himself in Priestly habit, and that he threatened *Azarias* and his Companions, to punish them with death, unless they would be quiet. *Josephus* indeed enlargeth the Story, by inserting a great Earth-quake, which did tear down half an Hill, that rowled four furlongs, till it rested against another Hill, stopping up the high-ways, and spoiling the Kings Garden in the passage. With this Earth-quake, he saith, that the roof of the Temple did cleave, and that a Sun-beam did light upon the Kings face, which was presently infected with leprosie. All this may have been true; and some there are who think that this Earth-quake is the same, which is mentioned by the Prophet *Amos*; wherein they do much mis-reckon the times. For the Earth-quake spoken of by *Amos*, was in the dayes of *Ieroboam* King of *Israel*, who dyed seven and thirtie years before *Uzzia*; so that *Jotham* the son of *Uzzia*, which supplied his Fathers place in government of the Land, should, by this account, have bin then unborn: for he was but five and twenty years old, when he began to reign as King. Therefore, thus far only we have assurance; that while *Uzzia* was wroth with the Priests, the leprosie rose up in his forehead, before the Priests. Hereupon he was caused, in all haste, to depart the place, and to live in a house by himself until he dyed; the rule over the Kings house, and over all the Land, being committed to *Jotham*, his Son and Successeur. 10 *Jotham* took not upon himself the stile of a King, till his Father was dead; whom they buried in the same field wherein his Ancestors lay interred; yet in a Monument apart from the rest, because he was a Leper.

## §. III.

Of the Prophets which lived in the time of *Uzzia*; and of Princes then ruling in Egypt, and in some other Countries.

IN the time of *Uzzia* were the first of the lesser Prophets, *Hosea*, *Joel*, *Amos*, *Obadiah*, and *Jonas*. It is not indeed set down, when *Joel* or *Obadiah* did prophesie: but if the Prophets, whose times are not expressed, ought to be ranged (according to Saint *Hieromes* rule) with the next before them; then must these two be judged contemporarie with *Hosea* and *Amos*, who lived under King *Uzzia*. To enquire which of these five was the most ancient, it may perhaps be thought, at least, a superfluous labour; yet if the age wherein *Homer* lived, hath so painfully been sought, without reprehension, how can he be taxed, which offers to search out the antiquitie of these holy Prophets? It seems to me, that the first of these, in order of time, was the Prophet *Jonas*; who foretold the great victories of *Ieroboam* King of *Israel*; and therefore is like to have prophesied in the dayes of *Joas*, whilst the affliction of *Israel* was exceeding bitter; the Text it self intimating no lesse: by which consequence he was elder than the other Prophets, whose works are now extant. But his prophecies that concerned the Kingdom of *Israel* are now lost. That which remaineth of him, seems, not without reason unto some very learned, to have belonged unto the time of *Sardanapalus*, in whose dayes *Nineve* was first of all destroyed. This Prophet rather taught Christ by his sufferings, than by his writings now extant: in all the rest are found expresse promises of the Messias.

In the reign of *Uzzia* likewise it was, that *Eſay*, the first of the four great Prophets, began to see his visions. This difference of great and lesser Prophets, is taken from the Volumes which they have left written (as *S. Augustine* gives reason of the distinction) because the greater have written larger Books. The Prophet *Eſay* was great indeed, not onely in regard of his much writing, or of his Nobilitie (for their opinion is rejected, who think him to have been the son of *Amos* the Prophet) and the high account wherein he lived; but for the excellencie both of his stile and argument, wherein he so plainly foretelleth the Birth, Miracles, Passion, and whole Historie of our Saviour, with the calling of the Gentiles, that he might as well be called an Evangelist, as a Prophet; having written in such wise, That (as *Hierome* saith) one would think he did not foretell of things to come, but compile an Historie of matters already past.

*Seccheris* was King of Egypt, and the ninth year of his reign, by our computation

Bbb

(where-

(whereof in due place we will give reason) was current, when *Uzzia* took possession of the Kingdome of *Juda*.

After the death of *Bocchoris*, *Ashchis* followed in the Kingdome of *Egypt*: unto him succeeded *Amyssis*; and these two occupied that Crown six years. Then *Sabacus*, an *Ethiopian*, became King of *Egypt*, and held it fifty years, whereof the ten first ranne along with the last of *Uzzia* his Reign and Life. Of these and other *Egyptian* Kings, more shall be spoken, when their affairs shall come to be intermeddled with the businesse of *Juda*.

In *Athens*, the two last years of *Ariphron* his twentie, the seven and twentieth of *The-speius*, the twentieth of *Agamnestor*, and the three first of *Echylus* his three and twentie, 10 made even with the two and fiftie of *Uzzia*: as likewise did in *Alba* the last seven of *Silvius Aventinus* his seven and thirtie, together with the three and twentie of *Silvius Proculus*, and two and twentie the first of *Silvius Amulius*. In *Media Arbaces* began his new kingdome in the first of *Uzzia*, wherein, after eight and twentie years, his son *Sosarmus* succeeded him, and reigned thirty years. Of this *Arbaces*, and the devision of the *Assyrian* Empire, between him and others, when they had oppressed *Sardanapalus*, I hold it convenient to use more particular discourse, that we may not wander in too great uncertainty in the storie of the *Assyrian* kings, who have already found the way into *Palestina*, and are not likely to forget it.

#### §. I V.

Of the *Assyrian* Kings, descending from *Phul*: and whether *Phul* and *Belofus* were one person, or heads of sundrie Families, that reigned a part in *Nineve* and *Babylon*.

**B**Y that which hath formerly been shewed of *Sardanapalus* his death, it is apparent, that the chiefe therein was *Arbaces* the *Medyan*; to whom the rest of the Confederates did not onely submit themselves in that Warre, but were contented afterwards to be judged by him, receiving by his authority sentence of death, or pardon of their forfeited lives. The first example of this his power, was shewn upon *Belofus* the *Babylonian*, by whose especiall advice and help, *Arbaces* himself was become so 30 great: Yet was not this power of *Arbaces* exercised in so tyrannicall a manner, as might give offence in that great alteration of things, either to the Princes that had assisted him, or to the generalitie of the people. For in the condemnation of *Belofus*, he used the counsell of his other Captains, and then pardoned him of his own grace: allowing him to hold not only the City and Province of *Babylon*, but also those treasures, for embezeling whereof his life had been endangered.

In like manner, he gave rewards to the rest of his partakers, and made them Rulers of Provinces; retaining (as it appears) onely the Sovereignty to himselfe, which to use immoderately hee did naturally abhorre. He is said, indeed, to have excited the *Medes* against *Sardanapalus*, by propounding unto them hope of transferring the Empire to their Nation. And to make good this his promise, he destroyed the Citie of *Nineve*, permitting the Citizens nevertheless to take and carry away every one his own goods. The other Nations that joyned with him, as the *Persians* and *Bactrians*, he drew to his side, by the allurements of liberty; which he himselfe so greatly loved, that by slackning too much the reins of his own Sovereignty, hee did more harm to the general estate of *Media*, than the pleasure of the freedome, which it enjoyed, could recompence. For both the Territory of that Country was pared narrower by *Salmanassar*, (or perhaps by some of his Progenitors) whom we find in the Scriptures to have held some Towns of the *Medes*; and the civill administration was so disorderly, that the people themselves were glad to see that reformation, which *Deioces* the sith of *Arbaces* 50 his Line, did make in that government, by reducing them into stricter termes of obedience.

How the force of the *Assyrians* grew to bee such as might in fourscore years, if not sooner, both extend it self unto the conquest of *Israel*, and tear away some part of *Media*, it is a question hardly to be answered; not only in regard of the destruction of *Nineve*, and subversion of the *Assyrian* Kingdome, whereof the *Medes*, under *Arbaces*, had the honour, who may seem at that time to have kept the *Assyrians* under their subjection, when the rest of the Provinces were set at liberty; but in consideration of the Kings themselves, who

who reigning afterwards in *Babylon* and *Nineve*, are confounded by some, and distinguished by others; whereby their History is made uncertain.

I will first therefore deliver the opinion generally received, and the grounds whereupon it stands: then, producing the objections made against it, I will compare together the determination of that worthy man *Joseph Scaliger*, with those learned that subscribe thereunto, and the judgement of others that were more ancient Writers, or have followed the Antients in this doubtfull case. Neither shall it be needfull to set down a-part the several authorities and arguments of sundry men, adding somewhat of weight, or of clearness one to another: it will be enough to relate the whole substance of each discourse: which I will do as briefly as I can, and without fear to be taxed of partialitie, as being no more addicted to the one opinion than to the other, by any fancy of mine own, but merely led by those reasons, which upon examination of each part, seemed to me most forcible, though to others they may perhaps appear weak.

That which, untill of late, hath passed as current, is this; That *Belofus* was the same King, who, first of the *Assyrians*, entred *Palestina* with an Armie; being called *Pul*, or *Phul*, in the Scriptures, and by *Annius* his authors with such as follow them. *Phul Belofus*, Of this man it is said, that he was a skillfull Astrologer, subtle, and ambitious; that he got *Babylon* by composition made with *Arbaces*; and that not therewith content, hee got into his hand part of *Assyria*: finally that he reigned eight and fortie years, and then dying, left the Kingdome to *Teglat-phalassar* his sonne, in whose Posteritie it continued 20 some few descents, till the house of *Merodach* prevailed. The truth of this, if *Annius* his *Metaphyses* were sufficient proof, could not be gaind: for that Auhour (such as he is) is peremptorie herein. But, howsoever *Annius* his Authors deserve to be suspected, it stands with no reason, that we should conclude all to be false which they affirme. They, who maintain this Tradition, justify it by divers good Allegations, as a matter confirmed by circumstances found in all Authors, and repugnant unto no historie at all. For it is manifest by the relation of *Diodorus* (which is indeed the foundation whereupon all have built) that *Arbaces* and *Belofus* were partners in the action against *Sardanapalus*; and that the *Bactrians*, who joyned with them, were thought well rewarded with libertie, as likewise other Captains were with governments: but that 30 any third person was so eminent, as to have *Assyria* it self, the chiefe Countrey of the Empire bestowed upon him, it is a thing whereof not the least appearance is found in any Historie. And certainly it stood with little reason, that the *Assyrians* should be committed unto a peculiar King, at such time as it was not thought meete to trust them in their own walls and houses. Rather it is apparent, that the destruction of *Nineve* by *Arbaces*, and the transplantation of the Citizens, was held a needfull policy, because thereby the people of that Nation might be kept down from aspiring to recover the Sovereignty, which else they would have thought to belong, as of right, unto the Seat of the Empire.

Upon such considerations did the *Romanes*, in ages long after following, destroy *Carthage*, and dissolve the Corporation, or Body politick, of the Citizens of *Capua*; because 40 those two Towns were capable of the Empire: a matter esteemed over-dangerous, even to *Rome* it selfe, that was Mistressse of them both. This being so, how can it be thought that the *Assyrians* in three or four years had erected their Kingdome a-new, under one *Pul*? or what must this *Pul* have been (of whose desertings or entermeddling, or indeed of whose very name, we find no mention in the Warre against *Sardanapalus*) to whom the principall parts of the Empire fell, either by generall consent in division of the Provinces, or by his own power and purchase very soon after? Surely he was none other than *Belofus*; whose neer neighbour-hood gave him opportunity (as he was wise enough to play his own game) both to get *Assyria* to himselfe, and to empeach any other man that should have attempted to feize upon it. The Province of *Babylon*, which *Belofus* held, 50 being (as *Herodotus* reports) in riches and power, as good as the third part of the *Persian* Empire, was able to furnish him with all that was requisite for such a businesse: if that were not enough, he had gotten into his own hands all the gold and silver that had been in the Palace of *Nineve*. And questionlesse, to restore such a Citie as *Nineve*, was an enterprise fit for none to take in hand, except he had such means as *Belofus* had, which *Pul*, if he were not *Belofus*, is likely to have wanted.

Besides all this, had *Phul* been a distinct person from *Belofus*, and Lord of *Assyria*, which



Elsay 39. 1.

It is likewise proved by the Astronomically observations, which proceeding from the *Babylonians*, not from the *Affrians*, do shew that *Nabonassar*, from whom *Ptolomy* draws that *Epoche*, or account of times, was a *Babylonian*, and no *Affrian*. Thirdly, and more strongly, it is confirmed by the successor of *Nabonassar*, which was *Mardocempadus*, called in his own language *Mero-dac-ken-pad*, but more briefly in *Elsay* his prophetic, *Merodach*, by the former part of his name; or *Merodach Baladan*, the son of *Baladan*. Now if *Merodach* the son of *Baladan* King of *Babel* were the sonne of *Nabonassar*, then was *Nabonassar* none other than *Baladan* King of *Babel*, and not *Salmanassar* King of *Affryia*.

What can be plainer? As for the cadence of these two names, *Nabonassar* and *Salmanassar*, which in *Greek* or *Latine* writing hath no difference, we are taught by *Scaliger*, that in the *Hebrew* letters there is found no affinity therein. So concerning the places of *Babylonia*, whereinto *Salmanassar* carryed captive some part of the ten Tribes; it may well be granted, that in the Province of *Babylon*, *Salmanassar* had gotten somewhat, yet will it not follow that he was King of *Babylon* in selfe. To conclude, *Merodach* began his reign over *Babylon* in the first year of *Hezekia*, at which time *Salmanassar* took *Samaris*; therefore if *Salmanassar* were King of *Babylon*, then must we say that he and *Merodach*, yea, and *Nabonassar*, were all one man. These are the arguments of that noble and learned Writer *Joseph Scaliger*; who not contented to follow the common opinion founded upon likelihood of conjectures, hath drawn his proofes from matter of more necessary inference.

Touching all that was said before of *Phul Belofus*, for the proving that *Phul* and *Belofus* were not sundry Kings; *Joseph Scaliger* pities their ignorance, that have spent their labour to so little purpose. Honest and painfull men he confesseth that they were, who by their diligence might have won the good liking of their Readers, had they not, by mentioning *Annius* his Authors, given such offence, that men refused thereupon to read their Books and Chronologies. A short answer.

For mine own part, howsoever I beleve nothing that *Annius* his *Berosus*, *Metasthenes*, and others of that stamp affirm, in respect of their bare authority; yet am I not so squeamish, but that I can well enough digest a good Book, though I find the names of 30 one or two of these good fellows alleged in it: I have (somewhat peradventure too often) already spoken my mind of *Annius* his Authors: Nevertheless, I may say here again, that where other Histories are silent, or speak not enough, there may we without shame borrow of these, as much as agrees with that little which elsewhere we find, and serveth to explain or enlarge it without improbabilities.

Neither indeed are those honest and painfull men (as *Scaliger* termes them, meaning, if I mistake him not, good silly fellows) who set down the *Affrian* Kings from *Pul* forwards, as Lords also of *Babylon*, taking *Pul* for *Belofus*, and *Salmanassar* for *Nabonassar*, such Writers as a man should be ashamed or unwilling to read. For (to omit a multitude of others, that herein follow *Annius*, though disliking him in general) *Gerard* 40 *Mercator* is not so slight a Chronologer, that he should be laughed out of doores with the name of an honest meaning fellow.

But I will not make comparisons between *Scaliger* and *Mercator*; they were both of them men notably learned: let us examine the arguments of *Scaliger*, and see whether they be of such force as cannot either be refuted or avoyded. It will easily be granted, that *Nabonassar* was King of *Babylon*; that he was not King of *Affryia*, some men doubt whether *Scaliger*'s reasons be enough to prove. For though *Nabonassar* be a *Chaldaean* name, and *Salmanassar* an *Affrian*; yet what hinders us from believing that one man in two languages might be called by two severall names? That Astronomy flourished among the *Chaldees*, is not enough to prove *Nabonassar* either an Astrologer or a *Chaldaean*. 50 So it is, that *Scaliger* himselfe calls them, *Prophetas nescio quos, qui Nabonassarum Astronomum fuisse in somnis viderunt*; *Prophets I know not who, that in their sleep have dreamt of Nabonassar, that he was an Astrologer*.

Scal. Camer. l. 3.

Whether *Nabonassar* were an Astrologer or no, I cannot tell; it is hard to maintain the negative. But as his being Lord over the *Chaldeans*, doth not prove him to have been learned in their Sciences; so doth it not prove him not to have been also King of *Affryia*. The Emperour *Charles* the first, who was born in *Ganz*, and *Philip* his Sonne, King of *Spain*, and Lords of the *Netherlands*, had men farre more learned in all Sciences,

Sciences, and particularly in the Mathematicks, among their Subjects of the Low Countries, than were any that I read of then living in *Spain*, if *Spain* at that time had any; yet I think, Posteritie will not use this as an argument, to prove that *Spain* was none of theirs. It may well be, that *Salmanassar* or *Nabonassar* did use the *Affrian* Souldiers, and *Babylonian* Scholars; but it seems, that he and his posteritie, by giving themselves wholly to the more warlike Nation, lost the richer, out of which they first issued, as likewise *Philip* lost partly, and partly did put to a dangerous hazzard all the *Netherlands*, by such a course. As for the two unanswerable arguments, (as *Scaliger* termes them, being me-thinks none other than answers to somewhat that is or might be alleged on the contrary side) one of them which is drawn from the unlike found and writing of those names, *Salmanassar* and *Nabonassar* in the *Hebrew*, I hold a point about which no man will dispute; for it is not likensse of sound, but agreement of time, and many circumstances else, that must take away the distinction of persons: the other likewise may be granted; which is, that *Salmanassar* might be Lord of some places in the Province of *Babylon*, yet not King of *Babylon* in selfe: this indeed might be so, and it might be otherwise. Hitherto there is nothing save conjecture. But in that which is alleged out of the Prophet *Elsay* concerning *Merodach* the son of *Baladan*; and in that which is said of this *Merodach*, or *Mardocempadus*, his being the Successor of *Nabonassar*, and his beginning to reign in the first year of *Hezekia*, I find matter of more difficulty, 20 so than can be answered in haste. I will therefore deferre the handling of these objections untill I meet with their Subject in his proper place; which will be when we come to the time of *Hezekia*, wherein *Merodach* lived, and was King. Yet that I may not leave too great a scruple in the mind of the Reader, thus farre will I here satisfie him; that how strong soever this argument may seem, *Scaliger* himselfe did live to retract it, ingeniously confessing, that in thinking *Merodach* to be the son of *Nabonassar*, he had been deceived.

Now therefore let us consider, in what sort they have fashioned their Storie, who taking *Pul* to be a distinct person from *Belofus* or *Belesius*, have in like sort, as was necessary, distinguished their off-spring, making that of *Pul* to fall in *Asarhaddon*, which left 30 all to *Merodach* the *Babylonian*. And here I must first confesse my want of Books, if perhaps there be many, that have gone about to reduce this narration into some such order, as might present unto us the body of this Historie, in one view. Divers, indeed, there are, whom I have seen, that since *Joseph Scaliger* delivered his opinion, have written in favour of some one or other point thereof: but *Sethus Calvisius* himselfe, who hath abridged *Scaliger*'s learned Work, *De emendatione Temporum*, hath not been careful to give us notice, how long *Belofus*, *Baladan*, *Pul*, or *Tiglat Pulasar* did reign, (perhaps because he found it not expressed in *Scaliger*) but is content to let down *Baladan*, for the same person with *Nabonassar*, which *Scaliger* himselfe revoked. In this case therefore I must lay down the plot of these divided Kingdomes, in such sort as I find it contrived 40 by *Augustinus Tornielus*, who onely of all that I have seen, sets down the succession, continuance, and acts, of those that reigned in *Affryia* after *Sardanapalus*, distinguishing them from *Belofus*, and his Posteritie, of whom he hath the like remembrance. This *Tornielus* is a Regular Clarke of the congregation of *S. Paul*, whose *Annales* were printed the last year; he appears to me a man of a curious industrie, sound judgement, and free Spirit; yet many times (and I take it, wilfully) forgetfull of thanking, or mentioning those Protestant Writers, by whose Books hee hath received good information, and enriched his workes by inserting somewhat of theirs. But in this business hee hath openly professed to follow *Scaliger*, whose help, without wrong or dishonour to himselfe, he hath both used and acknowledged. For mine own part, I will not spare to doe 50 right unto *Tornielus*; but confesse my selfe to have received benefit by his writing; and with that his *Annales* had sooner come to light; for that as he hath much confirmed me in some things, so would he have instructed and imboldened me to write more fully and lesse timorously in other things, which now I have not leisure to revise. Particularly in that conjecture (which I had faintly delivered, and yet feared lest it had over-hastily passed out of my hand, and been exposed to other mens constructions) of the four Kings that invaded the Valley of *Siddim*, and were slain by *Abraham*, I find him adventuring as I have done, to say, that they may probably be thought to have been some petty Lords; the contrary opinion of all Writers notwithstanding. But now let us consider how

C. I. §. 13.

how he hath ordered these last *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Kings. After the destruction of *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces*, being the most mighty, sought to get all to himself, but was opposed by *Belofus*; in which contention, one *Phul*, a powerfull man in *Assyria*, sided with *Belofus*, and they two prevailed so far, that finally *Arbaces* was content to share the Empire with them, making such a division thereof, as was long after made of the *Roman* Empire between *Octavian*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*.

Another conjecture is (for *Torniellus* offers not this, or the rest, as matter of certainty) that *Arbaces* made himself Sovereign Lord of all, and placed the seat of his Empire in *Media*, appointing *Belofus* his Lieutenant in *Babylonia*, and *Phul* in *Assyria*. But in short space, that is, in four years, it came to passe by the just judgement of God, that *Phul* and *Belofus* rebelled against *Arbaces*, like as *Arbaces* had done against *Sardanapalus*; and in stead of being Vice-Royes, made themselves absolute Kings. And to this latter opinion *Torniellus* himself leans, holding it much the more probable, as being more agreeable to that which is found in prophane Histories. Why hee did make and publish the former supposition, resolving to hold the latter, I shall anon, without any wrong to him, make bold to ghesse. Having thus devised how *Phul* and *Belofus* might, at the first, attain to be Kings, he orders their time and their successors in this manner.

Four years after *Arbaces*, *Phul* begins to reign, and continues eight and forty years. *Theglathphalsar* (whose name, and the names of other Princes, I write diversly, according as the Authors whom I have in hand are pleased to diversifie them) succeeding unto *Phul*, reigned three and twenty. *Salmanassar* followed him, and reigned ten. After him *Senacherib* reigned seven: and when he was slain, *Sarhadon* his son ten years; in whom that line failed.

The same time that *Phul* took upon him as King of *Assyria*, or not long after (why not rather afore: for so it had been more likely) *Belofus* usurped the Kingdom of *Babylon*, and held it threecore and eight years; at the least threecore and eight years did passe, before *Nabonassar* followed him in the possession.

To *Nabonassar*, whom (with *Scaliger*) he thinks to be *Baladan*, are assigned six and twenty years: then two and fifty to *Merodach*, or *Mardocepadas*: four and twenty to *Ben Merodach*: and lastly, one and twenty to *Nabolsar* the father of *Nabuchodonosor*; who is like to offer matter of further disputation.

Concerning the originall of these *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Kingdome, I may truly say, That the conjectures of other men, who give all to *Belofus*, and confound him with *Phul*, appear to me more neerly resembling the truth. Neither doe I think, that *Torniellus* would have conceived two different waies, by which *Phul* might have gotten *Assyria* (for how *Belofus* came to get *Babylon*, it is plain enough) if either of them alone could have contented him. He adheres to the latter of the two, as better agreeing with *Diadore*, and other Historians. But he perceived, that to make *Phul* on the sudden King of *Assyria*; or to give him so noble a Province, as would, of it self, invite him to accept of the name and power of a King, was a thing most unlikely to have happened, unlesse his deserts (whereof we find no mention) had been proportionable to so high a reward. And for this cause (as I take it) hath he devised the means, whereby *Phul* might be made capable of so great a share in the Empire. If this were a true or probable supposition, then would a new doubt arise, Why this *Phul* being one of the three that divided all between them, was utterly forgotten by all Historians? yea, why this Division it self, and the civill Warres that caused it, were never heard of? Questionlesse, the interverting of some Treasures by *Belofus*, with his Judgement, Condemnation, and Pardon following, were matters of farre lesse note. Therefore I doe not see, how one of the two inconveniences can this way be avoided; but that either we must confesse the Dominion given to *Phul* to have been exceeding his merits; or else his merits, and name withall, to have been strangely forgotten: either of which is enough to make us think, that rather the conjecture, inferring such a sequell, is wide of the truth. As for the rebellion of *Phul*, and *Belofus*, against *Arbaces*, it was almost impossible for the *Assyrians* to recover such strength in four years, as might serve to hold out in rebellion: for *Belofus* it was needlesse to rebell, considering, that *Arbaces* did not seek to molest him, but rather permitted (as being an over-great favourer of liberty) even the *Medes* that were under his own Government, to doe what they listed.

But

But it is now fit that wee peruse the Catalogue of these Kings; not passing through them all (for some will require a large discourse in their own times) but speaking of their order and time in generall. If it be so unlawful to think, that some of *Annins* his tales (let them all be counted his tales, which are not found in other Authors aswell as in his) may be true, especially such as contradict or acknowledged truth, or apparent likelihood; why then is it said, that *Phul* did reign in *Assyria* eight and forty years? For this hath no other ground than *Annins*. It is true that painfull and judicious Writers have found this number of years to agree fitly with the course of things in History: yet all of them took it from *Annins*. Let it therefore be the punishment of *Annins* his forgery (as questionlesse he is often guilty of this crime) that when he tels truth, or probability, he be not beleevd for his own sake; though for our own sakes wee make use of his boldnesse, taking his words for good, whereas (nothing else being offered) we are unwilling our selves to be Authors of new, though not unprofitable conjectures. Herein we shall have this commodity, that we may without blushing alter a little, to help our own opinions, and lay the blame upon *Annins*, against whom we shall be sure to find friends that will take our part.

The reignes of *Theglathphalsar* and *Salmanassar* did reach, by *Annins* his measure, to the length of five and twenty years the one, and seventeen the other; *Torniellus* hath cut off two from the former, and seven from the later of them, to fit (as I think) his own computation; using the liberty whereof I spake last: for that any Author, save our good *Measthenes*, or those that borrowed of him, hath gone about to tell how long each of these did reign, it is more than I have yet found. To *Senacherib* and *Sarhadon*, *Torniellus* gives the same length of reign, which is found in *Measthenes*. I think there are not many, that will arrogate so much unto themselves, as may very well be allowed unto a man so judicious as is *Torniellus*: and yet I could wish that hee had forbore to condemn the followers of *Annins* in this businesse, wherein he himselfe hath chosen, in part, rather to become one of them, than to say, as else he must have done, almost nothing.

The like liberty we find that he hath used in measuring the reignes of the *Chaldeans*; so filling up all the space between the end of *Sardanapalus* and the beginning of *Nabonassar*, with the threecore and eight years of *Belofus*. In this respect it was, perhaps, that he thought *Belofus* might have begun his reign somewhat later than *Phul*: for threecore and eight years would seem a long time for him to hold a Kingdome, that was no young man when he took possession of it. But how is any whit of his age abated by shortning his reign, seeing his life reacheth to the end of such a time, as were alone, without adding the time wherein he was a private man, enough for a long liver? Indeed eight and forty years had been somewhat of the most, considering that he seems by the story to have been a little lesse at such time as he joyned with *Arbaces*; and therefore the addition of twenty years, did well deserve that note (which *Torniellus* advicedly gives) that if his 40 reign extended not so far, then the reign of such as came after him, occupied the middle time, unto *Nabonassar*.

I neither doe reprehend the boldnesse of *Torniellus*, in conjecturing, nor the modesty of *Scaliger* and *Seihus Calvisius*, in forbearing to set down as warrantable, such things as depend only upon likelihood. For things, whereof the perfect knowledge is taken away from us by Antiquity, must be described in History, as Geographers in their Maps describe those Countreys, whereof as yet there is made no true discovery, that is, either by leaving some part blank, or by inserting the Land of Pigmies, Rocks of Load-stone, with Head-lands, Bayes, great Rivers, and other particularities, agreeable to common report, though many times controlled by following experience, and found contrary to so truth. Yet indeed the ignorance growing from distance of place, allows not such liberty to a Describer, as that which ariseth from the remediless oblivion of consuming time. For it is true that the Poet saith;

— Neque servidis  
Pars inclusa caloribus  
Mundi, nec Borea finitimum latus;  
Durataque sole Nives,  
Mereasorem abigunt; horrida callidi  
Vincunt aquora Navita.

Nor.

Nor Southern heat, nor Northern snow  
That freezing to the ground doth grow,  
The subject Regions can fence,  
And keep the greedy Merchant thence:  
The subtle Shipmen way to find,  
Storme never to the Seas with Wind.

Therefore the fictions (or let them be called conjectures) painted in Maps, doe serve only to mis-lead such discoverers as rashly believe them; drawing upon the publishers, either some angry curses or well deserved scorn; but to keep their own credit, they cannot serve always. To which purpose I remember a pretty jest of *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a worthy Spanish Gentleman, who had been employed by his King in planting a Colony upon the Straights of *Megellan*: for when I asked, him being then my Prisoner, some questions about an Island in those Straights, which, me thought, might have done either benefit or displeasure to his enterprise, he told me merrily, that it was to be called the *Painters wives Island*; saying, That whilest the fellow drew that Map, his wife sitting by, desired to put in one Country for her; that she in imagination, might have an Island of her own. But in filling up the blankes of old Histories, we need not be so scrupulous. For it is not to be feared, that time shall runne backward, and by restoring the things themselves to knowledge, make our conjectures appear ridiculous: What is so some good Copy of an ancient Author, could be found, shewing (if we have it not already) the perfect truth of these uncertainties? would it bee more shame to have beleev'd in the mean while, *Annius* or *Tornicellus*, than to have beleev'd nothing? Here I will not say, that the credit which we gave to *Annius*, may chance otherwhiles to bee given to one of those Authors whose names he pretendeth. Let it suffice, that in regard of authority, I had rather trust *Scaliger* or *Tornicellus*, than *Annius*; yet him than them, of his assertion be more probable and more agreeable to approved Histories than their conjecture, as in this point it seems to me; it having moreover gotten some credit, by the approbation of many, and those not meanly learned.

To end this tedious disputation; I hold it a sure course in examination of such opinions as have once gotten the credit of being generall, so to deal as *Pacuvius* in *Capua* did with the multitude, finding them desirous to put all the Senators of the Citie to death. He lockt the Senators up within the State-house, and offered the lives of the Peoples mercy; obtaining thus much, that none of them should perish, untill the Commonalty had both pronounced him worthy of death, and elected a better in his place. The condemnation was hasty; for as fast as every name was read, all the town cryed, Let him die: but the execution required more leisure; for in substituting of another, some notorious vice of the person, or baseness of his condition, or insufficiency of his quality, made each new one that was offered to bee rejected: so that finding the worse and lesse choice, the further and the more that they fought, it was finally agreed, that the old should be kept for lack of better.

## S. V.

of the Olympiads, and the time when they began.

**A**fter this division of the Assyrian Empire, follows the instauration of the Olympian games, by *Iphitus*, in the reign of the same King *Uzzia*, and in his one and fiftieth year. It is, I know, the generall opinion, that these games were established by *Iphitus*, in the first of *Jotham*: yet is not that opinion so generall, but that Authors, weighty enough, have given to them a more early beginning. The truth is, that in fitting those things unto the sacred History, which are found in prophane Authors, we should not be too carefull of drawing the *Hebrews*, to those works of time, which had no reference to their affairs; it is enough, that setting in due order these beginnings of accounts, we joyn them to matters of *Israel* and *Juda*, where occasion requires.

These Olympian games and exercises of activity, were first instituted by *Hercules*, who measured the length of the race by his own foot; by which *Pythagoras* is found out the stature and likely strength of *Hercules* his body. They took name, not from the Mountain *Olympus*, but from the Citie *Olympia*, otherwise *Pisa*, near unto *Elis*; where also

*Jupiters*

*Jupiters* Temple in *Elis*, famous among the *Grecians*, and reputed among the wonders of the World, was known by the name of the Temple of *Jupiter Olympius*. These games were exercised from every fourth year compleat, in the plains of *Elis*, a Citie of *Peloponnesus*, near the river *Alpheus*.

After the death of *Hercules*, these meetings were discontinued for many years, till *Iphitus*, by advice from the Oracle of *Apollo*, re-established them, *Licurgus* the Law-giver then living: from which time they were continued by the *Grecians*, till the reign of *Theodosius* the Emperour, according to *Cedrenus*: others think that they were dissolved under *Constantine* the Great.

From this institution, *Varro* accompted the *Grecian* times and their stories to be certain: but reckoned all before, either doubtfull or fabulous: and yet *Pliny* gives little credit to all that is written of *Greece*, till the reign of *Cyrus*, who began in the five and fiftieth Olympiad, as *Eusebius* out of *Diodore*, *Castor*, *Polybius*, and others, hath gathered, in whose time the seven wise *Grecians* flourished. For *Solon* had speech with *Cresus*, and *Cresus* was overthrown and taken by *Cyrus*.

Many patient and piercing brains have laboured to find out the certain beginning of these Olympiads, namely, to set them in the true year of the World, and the reign of such and such Kings: but seeing they all differ in the first account, that is, of the Worlds year, they can hardly jump in particulars thereon depending.

*Cyril* against *Julian* and *Dydimus* begin the Olympiads the nine and fortieth of *Osias*, or *Azariah*.

*Asarhaddon*, who is contrary to himself in this reckoning, accounts with those that find the very first Olympiad in the beginning of the four hundredth and sixth year after *Troy*; yet he telleth us that it was in the fiftieth year of *Uzziah*, which is (as I find it) two years later.

*Eratostratus* placeth the first Olympiad four hundred and seven years after *Troy*, reckoning the years that passed between; to whom *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Solinus* and many others adhere.

The distance between the destruction of *Troy* and the first Olympiad, is thus collected by *Eratostratus*. From the taking of *Troy* to the descent of *Hercules* his posterity into *Peloponnesus*, were fourscore years; thence to the *Ionian* expedition, threescore years; from that expedition to the time of *Lycurgus* his government in *Sparta*, one hundred fifty nine; and thence to the first Olympiad, one hundred and eight years. In this account the first year of the first Olympiad is not included.

But vain labour it were to seek the beginning of the Olympiads by numbring the years from the taking of *Troy*, which is of date farre more uncertain. Let it suffice that by knowing the instauration of these games to have been in the four hundredth and eight year current after *Troy*, wee may reckon back to the taking of that Citie, setting that, and other accidents which have reference thereto, in their proper times. The certainty of things following the Olympiads must needs teach us how to find when they began.

To this good use wee have the ensuing years unto the death of *Alexander* the Great, thus divided by the same *Eratostratus*. From the beginning of the Olympiads to the passage of *Xerxes* into *Greece*, two hundredth fourscore and seventeen years; from thence to the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* Warre, eight and forty years; forwards to the victory of *Lysander*, seven and twenty; to the battell of *Leuctra*, thirty four; to the death of *Philip* King of *Macedon*, five and thirty; and finally to the death of *Alexander*, twelve. The whole summe ariseth to 433. years; which number he otherwise also collecteth, and it is allowed by the most.

Now for placing the institution of the Olympiads in the one and fiftieth year of *Uzzia*, we have arguments grounded upon that which is certain, concerning the beginning of *Cyrus* his reign, and the death of *Alexander*; as also upon the Astronomically calculation of sundry Eclipses of the Sunne; as of that which happened when *Xerxes* set out of *Sardis* with his Army to invade *Greece*; and of divers other.

Touching *Cyrus*, it is generally agreed that his reign as King before hee was Lord of the great Monarchy, began the first year of the five and fiftieth Olympiad, and that hee reigned thirty years: they who give him but twenty nine years of reign (following *Herodotus* rather than *Tuluy*, *Justine*, *Eusebius*, and others) begin a year later, which comes





*Ahaz* was an Idolater, exceeding all his predeceffors. He made molten Images for *Baalim*, and burnt his son for sacrifice before the Idoll *Moloch*, or *Saturne*, which was represented by a man-like brazen body, bearing the head of a Calf; set up not far from *Jerusalem*, in a Valley shadowed with Woods, called *Gebinnom*, or *Tophet*, from whence the word *Gehenna* is used for Hell. The children offered, were inclosed within the carcasse of this Idoll, and as the fire encreased, so the sacrificers, with a noyse of Cymbals and other Instruments, filled the ayre, to the end the pitifull cries of the children might not be heard: which unnatural, cruell, and devilish Oblation, *Jeremie* the Prophet vehemently reprehendeth, and of which *S. Hierome* upon the tenth of *Matthew* hath written at large. By the prohibition in *Leuiticus* the eighteenth, it appeareth that this horrible sinne was ancient: in the twelfth of *Deuteronomie*, it is called an abomination which God hateth. That it was also practised elsewhere, and by many Nations remote from *Judea*, divers Authors witness; as *Virgil* in the second of *Aeneid*.  
*Sanguine placatus, &c. & Silius*—*Poscere cede Deos Saturne* is said to have brought this custome into *Italy*, besides the casting of many soules into the River of *Tyber*, in stead of which, *Hercules* commanded, that the waxen Images of men should be thrown in and drowned. The Devil also taught the *Carthaginians* this kind of butcherie, in so much, that when their Citie was besieged, and in distresse, the Priest made them beleve, that because they had spared their own children, and had bought and brought up others to be offered, that therefore *Saturne* had stirred up and strengthened their Enemies against them: whereupon they presently caused two hundred of the noblest youths of their Citie to be slaine, and offered to *Saturn* or *Satan*, to appease him: who besides these fornamed Nations, had instructed the *Rhodians*, the people of *Crete*, and *Chios*, of *Messena*, of *Galatia*, with the *Massagets*, and others, in these his services. Further, as if he were not content to destroy the soules of many Nations in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, (as *Acosta* writeth) the *Mexicans* and other people of *America*, were brought by the Devil under this fearefull servitude, in which he also holdeth the *Floridians* and *Virginians* at this day.

For the wickednesse of this King *Ahaz*, God stirred up *Rezin* of *Damascus*, and *Pekah* the Son of *Remaliab*, King of *Israel* against him, who invaded *Judea*, and besieged *Jerusalem*, but entred it not.

The King of *Syria*, *Rezin*, posselt himself of *Elah* by the Red Sea, and cast the *Jews* out of it, and *Pekah* slaughtered in one day an hundred and twenty thousand *Judeans*, of the abject of the Kingdom, at which time *Maadab*, the Sonne of *Ahab*, was also slaine by *Zichri*, with *Azrikam* the Governour of his house, and *Eliab* the second person unto the King. Besides all this, two hundred thousand prisoners of women and children, the *Israelites* lead away to *Samaria*: but by the counsell of the Prophet *Oded*, they were returned and delivered back againe.

As *Israel* and *Aram* vexed *Juda* on the North; so the *Edomites* & the *Philistims*, who evermore attended the ruine of *Judea*, entred upon them from the South, and took *Beisjemen*, *Alalon*, *Gaderoth*, *Socho*, *Tinnah*, & *Gemoz*, slew many people, & carried away many prisoners. Whereupon when *Ahaz* saw himself environed on all sides, & that his Idols and dead gods gave him no comfort, hee sent to the *Assyrian* *Tiglatpileser*, to desire some aide from him against the *Israelites* and *Aramites*, presenting him with the silver and gold both of the Temple, and Kings house.

*Tiglatpileser* wanted not a good example to follow, in making profit of the troubles that rose in *Palestina*. His Father having lately made himself from a Provinciaall Lieutenant, King of *Babylon* and *Assyria*, had a little before led him the way into *Judea*, invited by *Mesabem*, King of *Israel*. Wherefore now the Son willingly harkened to *Ahaz*, and embraced the advantage. As for *Belochus* himself, hee was content to assigne some other time for going through with this enterprize: because (as I have said before) he was not firmly settled at home, and the *Syrian* Kings lay directly in his way, who were yet strong both in men and fame. But *Tiglat*, having now, with the treasures of *Jerusalem*, prepared his Army, first invaded the Territorie of *Damascus*, wanne the Citie, & killed *Rezin*: in the last of the race of the *Adads*, who began with *David*, & ended with this *Ahaz*. At *Damascus*, *Ahaz* met *Tiglat*, and taking thence a pattern of the Altar, sent it to *Triab* the Priest, commanding the like to be made at *Jerusalem*, whereon at his returne hee burnt Sacrifice to the gods of the *Syrians*. In the meane while *Tiglat* posselt all *Basam*, and

and the rest beyond *Jordan*, which belonged to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and *Manasse*. And then passing the River, he mastered the Cities of *Galilee*, invaded *Ephraim*, and the Kingdom of *Israel*, and made them his Vassals. And notwithstanding that hee was invited and waged by *Ahaz*, yet after the spoile of *Israel*, he posselt himself of the greater part of *Juda*, and as it seemeth, enforced *Ahaz* to pay him tribute. For in the second of *Kings*, the eighteenth, it is written of *Ezechia*, that hee revolted from *Ashur*, or rebelled against him, & therefore was invaded by *Sennacherib*. After *Ahaz* had beheld and borne these miseries, in the end of the sixteenth yeere of his reigne he died; but was not buried in the Sepulchres of the Kings of *Juda*.

With *Ahaz* lived *Medius*, the third Prince in *Media*, who governed 40. yeares, saith *Eusebius*: *Diodorus* and *Ctesias* find *Anticarmus* in stead of this *Medius*, to have been *Solermus* his successor, to whom they give 50. yeeres.

*Tiglat* *Phileser* held the Kingdom of *Assyria*, all the reigne of *Ahaz*: yet so, that *Salmanassar* his Son may seeme to have reigned with him some part of the time. For wee find that *Ahaz* did send unto the Kings of *Ashur* to help him. The *Geneva* note saies, that these Kings of *Ashur*, were *Tiglat* *Phileser*, and those Kings that were under his Dominion. But that he or his Father had hitherto made such conquests, as might give him the Lordship over other Kings, I doe neither find any History, nor circumstance that proveth. Wherefore I think that these Kings of *Ashur*, were *Tiglat*, and *Salmanassar* his Son, who reigned with his Father, as hath been said before: though how long hee reigned with his Father, it had been hard to define.

At this time began the *Ephori* in *Lacedaemon*, a hundred and thirty yeares after *Lycorgus*, according to *Plutarch*. *Eusebius* makes their beginning far later, namely, in the fifteenth Olympiad. Of these *Ephori*, *Elalus* was the first; *Theopompus* and *Polydorus* being then joyned Kings. These *Ephori*, chosen every yeare, were controllers, as well of their Senators, as of their Kings, nothing being done without their advice and consent. For (saith *Cicero*) they were opposed against their Kings, as the *Roman* Tribunes against the Consuls. In the time of *Ahaz* died *Aeschylus*, who had ruled in *Athens* ever since the fiftieth yeare of *Uexia*. *Alcemonon* the thirteenth of the *Medontide*, or Governours of the *Athenians* (so called of *Medon* who followed *Cadmus*) succeeded his Father *Aeschylus*, and was the last of their Governours: he ruled only two yeeres. For the *Athenians* changed first from Kings (after *Cadmus*) to Governours for life; which ending in this *Alcemonon*, they erected a Magistrate, whom they termed an *Archon*, who was a kind of *Burghomaster*, or Governor of their City for ten yeeres.

This alteration *Pausanias* in his fourth Book begins in the first yeere of the eighth Olympiad. *Eusebius* & *Halicarnassus* in the first of the seventh Olympiad: at which time indeed, *Carops* the first of these, began his ten yeeres rule.

The Kingdom of the *Latines*, governed about three hundred yeare by the *Sylvii*, of the race of *Aeneas*, took end in the same *Ahaz* time: the foundation of *Rome* being laid by *Romulus* & *Remus* in the eighth yeere of the same King. *Codoman* builds it in the eleventh of *Ahaz*. *Bucholzer* in the eighth, as I thinke he should; others somewhat later, and in the reigne of *Ezechias*. *Cicero*, *Entropius*, *Orosius*, and others, square the time of the foundation to the third yeere of the sixth Olympiad. But *Halicarnassus*, *Solinus*, *Antisthenus*, *Clemens Alexandrinus*, and *Eusebius*, to the first yeere of the seventh: who seeme not onely to me, but to many very learned Chronologers, to have kept herein the best account.

## CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Antiquitie of Italy, and foundation of Rome in  
the time of Ahaz.

## S. I.

Of the old Inhabitants; and of the name of Italy.



**A**Nd here to speak of the more ancient times of Italy, and what Nations posselt it before the arrivall of *Aeneas*, the place may seem to invite us: the rather because much fabulous matter hath been mixed with the truth of those elder plantations, Italy before the fall of *Troy*, was known to the *Greeks* by divers names; as first *Hesperia*, then *Ausonia*, the one name arising of the seat, the other of the *Ausones*, a people inhabiting part of it: one ancient name of it was also *Oenotria*, which it had of the *Oenotri*, whom *Halicarnassus* thinks to have been the first that brought a Colony of *Arcadians* into that Land. Afterward it was called *Italy* of *Italus*: concerning which changes of names, *Virgil* speaks thus:

*Est locus, Hesperiam Graii cognomine dicunt,  
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atque ubere gleba:  
Oenotrii coluere viri, nunc fama, minores  
Italiam dixisse, ducis de nomine, gentem.*

There is a Land which *Greeks* *Hesperia* name,  
Ancient, and strong, of the most fertility:  
*Oenotrians* held it, but we hear by fame;  
That by late ages of Posterity,  
Tis from a Captaine's name call'd *Italy*.

Who this Captaine or King may have bin, it is very uncertain. For *Virgil* speaks no more of him, and the opinions of others are many and repugnant. But like enough it is, that the name which hath continued so long upon the whole Countrey, and worn out all other denominations, was not at the first accepted without good cause. Therefore to find out the originall of this name, and the first planters of this noble Countrey, *Reineccius* hath made a very painfull search, and not improbable conjecture. And first of all he grounds upon that of *Halicarnassus*, who speaks of a Colonie which the *Eleans* did lead into *Italy*, before the name of *Italy* was given to it; Secondly, upon that of *Justine*, who saith, that *Brundisium* was a Colonie of the *Aetolians*; Thirdly, upon that of *Strabo*, who affirms the same of *Temisa* or *Templa*, a Citie of the *Bruttii* in *Italy*; Lastly, upon the authority of *Plinie*, who shewes that the *Italians* did inhabit only one Region of the Land, whence afterward the name was derived over all. Concerning that which is said of the *Eleans* and *Aetolians*, who (as he shewes) had one originall; from them he brings the name of *Italy*. For the world *Italia*, differs in nothing from *Aetolia*, save that the first Letter is cast away, which in the *Greek* words is common; & the letter (o) is changed into (a) which change is found in the name of *Aethalia* an Island neer *Italy*, peopled by the *Aetholians*; and the like changes are very familiar in the *Aeolis* Dialect; of which Dialect (being almost proper to the *Aetolians*) the accent & pronunciation, together with many words little altered, were retained by the *Latines*, as *Dionysius Halicarnassus*, *Quintilian*, and *Priscian* the Grammarian teach.

Hereunto appertaines that of *Julian* the Apollitane, who called the *Greekes* cousins of the *Latines*. Also the common Originall of the *Greekes* and *Latines* from *Javan*; and the Fable of *Jannus*, whose Image had two faces, looking East and West, as *Greece* and *Italy* lay, and was stamped on Coynes, with a Ship on the other side; all which is, by interpretation, referred to *Javan*, father of the *Greekes* and *Latines*: who sailing over the *Ionian* Sea, that lies between *Aetolia* and the Western parts of *Greece* and *Italy*, planted Colonies in both. Now whereas *Reineccius* thinks, that the names

of *Atius* and *Italus* belonged both to one man, and thereto applies that of *Berosus*, who called *Cethim*, *Italus*; though it may seeme strengthened by the marriage of *Dardanus*, whilst he abode in *Italy* with *Elestra*, the daughter of *Atius*, yet is it by arguments (in my valuation) greater and stronger, easily disproved. For they who make mention of *Atius*, place him before the time of *Moses*: and if *Atius* were *Cethim*, or *Kittim*, then was he the son of *Javan*, and nephew of *Japheth*, the eldest son of *Noah*: which antiquity far exceeds the name of *Italy*, that began after the departure of *Hercules* out of the Countrey, not long before the Warre of *Troy*.

Likewise *Virgil*, who speaks of *Atius*, and of *Dardanus* his marriage with *Elestra*, hath nothing of his meeting with her in *Italy*, but calleth *Elestra* & her sister *Maia* (poetically) daughters of the Mountaine *Atius* in *Africa*, naming *Italus* among the Kings of the *Aborigenes*; which he would not have done, had *Atius* and *Italus* beene one person.

As for the authority of *Berosus* in this case, we need the lesse to regard it, for that *Reineccius* himself, whose conjectures are more to be valued than the dreames wherewith *Annius* hath filled *Berosus*, holds it but a figment.

That the name of *Italy* began long after *Atius*, it appears by the verses of *Virgil* last rehearsed, wherein hee would not have said, — *Nun fama minores Italiam dixisse ducis de nomine gentem*, had that name beene heard of ere *Dardanus* left the Countrey. But seeing that, when *Hercules*, who died a few yeeres before the Warre of *Troy*, had left in *Italy* a Colonie of the *Eleans* (who in a manner were one and the same Nation with the *Aetolians*, as *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, and *Pausanias* teach) then the name of *Italy* began: & seeing *Virgil* makes mention of *Italus* among the *Italia* Kings, it were no great boldnesse to say, that *Italus* was Commander of these *Eleans*. For though I remember not that I have read of any such *Greek* as was named *Italus*; yet the name of *Aetolus* written in *Greek* *Aitolus*, was very famous among the *Aetolians*, and among the *Eleans*, he being son of a King of *Elis*, & founder of the *Aetolian* Kingdome. Neither is it more hard to derive the name of *Italus* from *Aetolus*, than *Italia* from *Aetolia*. So may *Virgil's* authority stand well with the collections of *Reineccius*; the name of *Italy* being taken both from a Captaine, and from the Nation, of which he and his people were.

## S. II.

Of the *Aborigenes*, and other Inhabitants of *Latium*, and of the reason of the names of *Latini* and *Latium*.

**I**N *Italy* the *Latines* and *Hetrurians* were most famous; the *Hetrurians* having held the greatest part of it under their subjection; & the *Latines* by the vertue and felicity of the *Romans*, who were a branch of them, subduing all *Italy*, and in few ages whatsoever Nation was known in *Europe*: together with all the Western parts of *Asia*, and North of *Africk*.

The Region called *Latium*, was first inhabited by the *Aborigines*, whom *Halicarnassus*, *Varro*, & *Reineccius* (following them) think to have bin *Arcadians*: & this name of *Aborigines* (to omit other significations that are strained) imports as much as Originall, or Native of the place, which they possessed: which title the *Arcadians* are known in vaunting manner to have alwayes usurped, fetching their antiquity from beyond the Moone; because indeed, neither were the inhabitants of *Peloponnesus* enforced to forsake their seats so oft as other *Greeks* were, who did dwell without that halfe Island, neither had the *Arcadians* so unsure a dwelling as the rest of the *Peloponnesians*, because their Countrey was lesse fruitfull in land, mountainous, & hard of access, & they themselves (as in such places commonly are found) very warlike men. Some of these therefore having occupied a great part of *Latium*, & held it long, did according to the *Arcadian* manner, stile themselves *Aborigines*, in that language, which either their new Seat, or their Neighbours thereby had taught them. How it might be that the *Arcadians*, who dwelt somewhat far from Sea, & are alwaies noted as unapt men to prove good Mariners, should have bin Authors of new discoveries, were a question not easie to be answered, were it not so, that both fruitfulness of children, in which those ages abounded, enforced the superfluous company to seeke another seat, & that some expeditions of the *Arcadians*, as especially that of *Evander*, into the same parts of *Italy*, are generally acknowledged.

After the *Aborigines*, were the *Pelagii*, an ancient Nation, who sometimes gave name to all *Greece*: but their antiquities are long since dead, for lacke of good records. Neither was their glory such in *Italy*, as could long sustaine the name of their own Tribe: for they were in short space accounted one people with the former inhabitants. The *Sicani*, *Ausones*, *Arunci*, *Rutuli*, and other people, did in ages following disturbe the peace of *Latium*, which by *Saturne* was brought to some civility; and he therefore canonized as a god.

This *Saturne* S. *Augustine* calleth *Stercor* or *Sterculius*, others terme him *Stercutius*, & say, that he taught the people to dung their grounds. That *Latium* took his name of *Saturne*, because he did *latere*, that is, lie hidden there, when he fled from *Jupiter*, it is questionlesse a fable. For as in Heathenish superstition, it was great vanity to think that any thing could bee hidden from God, or that there were many gods of whom one fledde from another, so in the truth of History, it is well known, that no King reigning in those parts was so mighty, that it should bee hard to find one Country or another, wherein a man might be safe from his pursuit. And yet, as most fables and poetical fictions were occasioned by some ancient truth, which either by ambiguity of speech, or some allusion, they did maimedly and darkly expresse (for so they feigned a passage over a River in Hell, because death is a passage to another life: & because this passage is hatefull, lamentable, and painfull, therefore they named the River *Styx*, of Hate; *Cocytus* of Lamentation, and *Acheron*, of Pain: so also because men are stonie-hearted; and because the *Greek* *lithi*, people, and *lithi*, stones, are neere in sound, therefore they feigned in the time of *Deucalion* stones converted into men, as at other times men into stones:) in that old opinion of the wisest of the Heathen, that the true God was *ignotus Deus*, as it is noted in the *Asis*; whence also *Esay* of the true God saies, *tu Deus absconditus*. For it cannot be in vaine, that the word *Saturnus* should also have this very signification, if it be derived (as some thinke) from the *Hebrew* *Satur*, which is to hide: Howbeit I denie not but that the originall of this word, *Latium*, ought rather to be sought else where.

*Reyneccius* doth conjecture that the *Ceteans*, who descended of *Cethim*, the Son of *Javan*, were the men who gave the name to *Latium*. For these *Ceteans* are remembered by *Homer* as aiders of the *Trojans* in their warre. *Strabo* interpreting the place of *Homer*, calls them subjects to the Crown of *Troy*. Hereupon *Reyneccius* gathers, that their abode was in *Asia*: viz. in *agro Elaitico*, in the *Elaitian Territory*, which agreeth with *Strabo*. Of a City which the *Acollans* held in *Asia*, called *Elai*, or *Elaiia*; *Pausanias* makes mention: *Stephanus* calls it *Cidamis*, or (according to the *Greek* writing) *Cidamis*, which name last rehearsed hath a very neere sound to *Cethim*, *Citim*, or *Cithim*; the *Greek* Letter (*D*) having (as many teach) a pronunciation very like to (*TH*) differing only in the strength or weaknesse of utterance, which is found betweene many English words written with the same letters. Wherefore that these *Ceteans*, being descended of *Cethim*, *Citim*, or *Kitim*, the Sonne of *Javan*, who was Progenitor of the *Greekes*, might very well take a denomination from the City, and Region, which they inhabited, and from thence be called *Elaites*, or *Elaites*; it is very likely, considering that among the *Arcadians*, *Phocians*, *Aetolians*, and *Eleans*, who all were of the *Aeoliique* Tribe, are found the names of the Mountaine *Elrus*, the Haven *Elrus*, the people *Elaites*, the City *Elrus*, *Elai*, & *Elaitia*; of which last it were somewhat harsh in the *Latine* tongue to call the Inhabitants by any other name then *Elaites*, from whence *Latini* may come. Now whereas both the *Cetei* and *Arcadians*, had their originall from *Cethim*, it is nothing unlikely, that agreeing in language and similitude of names, they might nevertheless differ in sound and pronunciation of one and the same word. So that as he is by many called *Sabinus*, to whom some (deriving the *Sabinus* from him) give the name of *Sabus*: in the like manner might he whom the *Arcadians* would call *Elatus* (of which name they had a Prince that founded the City *Elaites*) bee named of the *Ceteans* *Latinius*. *Reyneccius*, pursuing this likelihood, thinks that when *Eurypilus*, Lord of the *Ceteans*, (being the Sonne of *Telesphus*, whom *Hercule* begat upon *Auge*, the daughter of *Alem* King of *Arcadia*) was slaine by *Achilles* in the *Trojan* Warre: then did *Telesphus*, brother to *Eurypilus*, conduct the *Ceteans*, who (fearing what evill might befall themselves by the *Greeks*, if the affairs of *Troy* should goe ill) passed into that part of *Italy*, whereas the *Arcadians* were planted by *Oenotrius*. And *Reyneccius* farther thinks, that *Telesphus* being the more gracious

among the *Oenotrian Arcadians*, by the memory of his Grand-mother *Auge*, an *Arcadian* Lady, was well contented to take an *Arcadian* name, and to be called *Elatus*, which in the dialect and pronunciation either of the *Ceteans*, or of the *Oenotrians*, was first *Elaitinus*, and then *Latinius*. That this name of *Elatus* may have bin taken or imposed by the *Arcadians*, it is the more easie to be thought, for that there were then two Families, the one of *Aphidus*, the other of *Elatus*, who were Sons of *Aucas* King of *Acatia*, which gave name to the Country: & betwene these two Families the succession in that Kingdom did passe, almost interchangeably, for many ages, till at the end of the *Trojan* warre it fell into the hand of *Hippotheus* of the race of *Elatus*, in whose Posterity it continued untill the last. Againe, the name of *Latinius*, having a derivative found, agrees the better with the supposition of such an accident. This is the conjecture of *Reyneccius*, which if he made over-boldly, yet others may follow it with the lesse reproofe, considering that it is not easie to find either an apparent truth, or faire probability among these disagreeing Authors, which have written the originalls of *Latium*.

## S. VI.

## Of the ancient Kings of the Latines untill Aeneas his coming.

The Kings which reigned in *Latium* before the arrivall of *Aeneas*, were *Saturnus*, *Picus*, *Faunus*, and *Latinius*. Of *Saturnus* there is nothing remembered save what is mentioned already, and many Fables of the *Greekes*, which whether they be applyable to this man, it is for him to judge, who shall be able to determine, whether this were the *Saturne* of the *Greekes*, called by them *Σάτυρος*, or some other stiled *Saturne* by the *Aborigines*. For the age wherein he lived, may very well admit him to have bin the same: but the names of *Saturnus*, and *Saturnus* (for it may bee, this name was not borrowed from the skill which hee taught the people, but rather the foile which they laid on their grounds had that appellauon from him) doe rather make him seeme some other man.

Of *Picus* it is said, that he was a good Horse-man. The fable of his being changed into a Bird, which we call a Pie, may well seeme (as it is interpreted) to have grown from the skill which he had in foot-faying, or divination, by the flight and chattering of Fowles. *Faunus*, the Son of *Picus*, reigned after his Father: He gave to *Evander* the *Arcadian* (who having slain by mischance his Father *Echonus* King of *Acatia*, fled into *Italy*) the waste grounds on which *Rome* was afterward built.

*Fauna*, called *Fatua*, the sister of *Faunus*, who was also his wife as all Historians agree, she was held a Prophetesse, and highly commended for her chastity, vvith praise in her must needs have bin much blemished by her marriage, it self being meerly incestuous.

It is not mentioned that *Faunus* had by his sister any childre, neither doe we read of any other Wife which he had, save onely that *Virgil* gives unto him *Latinius* as his Son; by a Nymph called *Marica*.

But who this *Marica* was, it is not found, save onely that her aboad was about the River *Liris* neere *Minturne*.

Of the name *Latinius*, there are by *Pomponius Sabinus* recounted four: one, the Son of *Faunus*, another of *Hercules*, a third of *Physes* by *Circe*, the fourth of *Telemachus*. *Suidas* takes notice onely of the second, of whom he saith, that his name was *Telephus*, and the people anciently named the *Cetei*, were from his surname called *Latini*. This agrees in effect with the opinion of *Reyneccius*, the difference consisting almost in this only, that *Suidas* calls *Telephus* the son of *Hercules*, whereas *Reyneccius* makes him his Nephew, by a son of the same name. This *Latinius* having obtained the succession in that Kingdom after *Faunus*, did promise his only Daughter and Heire *Latinius*, to *Turnus* the son of *Penela*, who was sister to *Amata* *Latinius* his Wife.

But when *Aeneas* arrived in those parts with fifteene ships, or perhaps fewer, wherein might be imbarcked, according to the rate which *Thucydides* allowes to the Vessels then used, about one thousand & two hundred men: then *Latinius* finding that it would stand best with his assurance, to make alliance with the *Trojan*, and moved with the great reputation of *Aeneas*, which himself had heard of in the Warre of *Troy*, gave his Daughter to him, breaking off the former appointment with *Turnus*; who incensed

herewith, sought to avenge himself by warre: which was soone ended with his own death.

Of *Amata* the Wife of *Latinus*, it is very certaine, that were she an *Italian*, she could not have born a Daughter marriageable at the arrivall of *Aeneas*; unless wee should wholly follow *Suidas*, and rather give the conduct of the *Cetei* into *Italy*, to *Telephus* the Father, than to his Son, who served in the last yeere of the *Trojan* Warre. But *Keplercius* holds her an *Asiaticque*, and thinkes withall, that *Lavinia* was borne before *Telephus* came into *Italy*. That this name *Amata*, by which *Virgil* and *Halicarnassus* call her, was not proper, but rather a surname, it may seeme by *Varro*; who calleth her *Palatia*: which name very well might be derived from the *Greek* name *Pallas*. *Amata*, which significth beloved, or deare, was the name by which the High Priest called every Virgin to whom he took to serve as a Nunne of *Vesta*; wherefore it is the more easie to be thought a surname, howsoever *Virgil* discourse of her and *Venilia* her sister.

*Lavinia*, the daughter of *Latinus*, being given in marriage to *Aeneas*, the Kingdome of *Latium*, or the greatest part of that Countrey, was established in that race: wherein it continued untill it was over-grown by the might and greatnesse of the *Romans*.

## S. IV.

Of *Aeneas*, and of the Kings and Governors of *Alba*.

**A**ENEAS himself being of the Royall bloud of *Troy*, had the command of the 20 *Dardaniens*: he was a valiant man, very rich, and highly honoured among the *Troians*. By his wife *Creusa*, the daughter of *Priamus*, he had a sonne called *Ascanius*, whose surname was *Iulus*, having before the ruine of *Troy* (as *Virgil* notes) bin surnamed *Ilu*. But when *Aeneas* was dead, his wife *Lavinia*, the daughter of *Latinus*, being great with childe by him, and fearing the power of this *Ascanius*, fled into the Woods, where she was delivered of a son, called thereupon *Sylvius*, and surnamed *Posthumus*, because he was borne after his fathers Funerall. This flight of *Lavinia* was so evill taken by the people, that *Ascanius* procured her returne, entreated her honourable, and using her as a Queene, did foster her young son, his halfe-brother *Sylvius*. Yet afterwards, whether to avoid all occasions of disagreement, or delighted with the situation of the place, *Ascanius* leaving to his motherinlaw the Citie *Lavinium*, which *Aeneas* had built and called after his new wives name, founded the Citie *Alba Longa*, and therein reigned. The time of his reigne was, according to some, eight and twenty years: *Virgil* gives him thirty; others five and thirty, and eight and thirty. After his decease, there arose contention betwene *Sylvius*, the son of *Aeneas*, and *Iulus* the sonne of *Ascanius*, about the Kingdome: but the people inclining to the sonne of *Lavinia*, *Iulus* was contented to hold the Priesthood, which he and his race enjoyed, leaving the Kingdome to *Sylvius Posthumus*, whose posterity were afterwards called *Sylvii*.

The reigne of the *Alba* Kings, with the continuance of each mans reigne, I find thus 40 set downe:

1 Sylvius Posthumus.	29
2 Sylvius Aeneas.	31
3 Sylvius Latinus.	50
4 Sylvius Alba.	39
5 Sylvius Atis.	26
6 Sylvius Capys.	28
7 Sylvius Capetus.	13
8 Sylvius Tiberinus.	8
9 Sylvius Agrippa.	41
10 Sylvius Alladus.	19
11 Sylvius Aventinus.	37
12 Sylvius Procas.	23
13 Sylvius Amulius.	44
Sylvius Numitor.	

*Ilia*, called also *Rea* and *Sylvia*,  
*Romulus Remus*.

The

The most of these Kings lived in peace, and did little or nothing worthy of remembrance.

*Latinus* founded many Townes in the borders of *Latium*: who standing much upon the honour of their originall, grew thereby to be called *Prisci Latini*. Of *Tiberinus* some thinke that the River *Tiber* had name, being formerly called *Albulus*: but *Virgil* gives it that denomination of another called *Tibris*, before the coming of *Aeneas* into *Italy*. The Mountain *Aventinus* had name (as many write) from *Aventinus* King of the *Albanes*, who was buried therein: but *Virgil* hath it otherwise. *Iulius*, the brother of *Aventinus*, is named by *Eusebius* as father of another *Iulius*, & grandfather of *Iulius Proculus*, who leaving *Alba*, dwelt with *Romulus* in *Rome*: *Numitor*, the elder son of *Procas*, was deprived of his Kingdome by his brother *Amulius*; by whom also his son *Agellus* was slain, and *Ilia* his daughter made a Nunne of *Vesta*, that thereby the issue of *Numitor* might be cut off. But she conceived two sons, either by her Uncle *Amulius*, as some thinke; or by *Mars*, as the Poets feign; or perhaps by some man of warre. Both the children, their Uncle commanded to be drowned, and the mother buried quick, according to the law; which so ordained, when the Vestall Virgins brake their chastitie. Whether it was so, that the mother was pardoned at the entreatie of *Amtho*, the daughter of *Amulius*, or punished as the Law required (for Authors herein doe varie) it is agreed by all, that the two children were preserved, who afterward revenged the cruelty of their 30 Uncle, with the slaughter of him and all his, and restored *Numitor* their grandfather to the Kingdome: wherein how long hee reigned, I find not, neither is it greatly materiall to know; for as much as the Estatess of *Alba* and of *Latium* were preiently eclipsed by the swift increace of *Rome*; upon which the computation of Time following (as farre as concerns the things of *Italy*) is dependant. After the death of *Numitor*, the Kingdome of *Alba* ceased; for *Numitor* left no male issue. *Romulus* chose rather to live in *Rome*; and of the Line of *Sylvius* none else remained. So the *Albanes* were governed by Magistrates; of whom onely two Dictators are mentioned, namely *Caius Clautius*, who in the dayes of *Tullus Hostilius*, King of the *Romanes*, making Warre upon *Rome*, dyed in the Camp; and *Metius Sufferius*, the successor of *Clautius*, who surrendered the Estate of *Alba* unto the *Romans*, having committed the hazzard of both Signories to the successe of three men of each side, who decided the quarrell by Combat: in which, the three brethren *Horatii*, the Champions of the *Romans*, prevailed against the *Curatii*, Champions of the *Albanes*. After this Combat, when *Metius* (following *Tullus Hostilius* with the *Albane* forces against the *Vientes* and *Fidenates*) withdrew his Companies out of the battail, hoping thereby to leave the *Romanes* to such an overthrow, as might make them weak enough for the *Albanes* to deal with; *Tullus*, who notwithstanding this falsehood, obtained the victory, did reward *Metius* with a cruell death, causing him to be tyed to two Chariots, and so torne in pieces. Then was *Alba* destroyed, and the Citizens carried to *Rome*, where they were made free Denizens, 40 the noble Families being made *Patricians*; among which were the *Fulii*: of whom *C. Iulius Caesar* being descended, not only gloried in his ancient, royall, and forgotten pedigree, in full assembly of the *Romans*, then governed by a free Estate of the People: but by his rare industrie, valour, and judgement, obtained the Sovereignty of the *Romane* Empire (much by him enlarged) to himselfe and his posterity: whereby the name of *Aeneas*, and honour of the *Trojan* and *Alban* Race, was so revived that feldome, if ever, any one Family hath attained to a proportionable height of glory.

## S. V.

of the beginning of *Rome*, and of *Romulus* birth and death.

**O**F *Rome*, which devoured the *Alban* Kingdome, I may here best shew the beginnings, which (though somewhat uncertain) depend much upon the birth and education of *Romulus*, the grand-child of *Numitor*, the last that reigned in *Alba*. For how not onely the bordering people, but all Nations between *Euphrates* and the Ocean, were broken in pieces by the yron teeth of this fourth Beast, it is not to be described in one place, having been the worke of many Ages; whereof I now doe handle onely the first, as incident unto the discourse preceding. *Q. Fabius Piclor*, Por-  
tius

Strabo. l. 5. f. 159.

timus Cato, Calpurnius Piso, Sempronius, & others, seek to derive the Romans from Janus: but Herodotus, Marfyllus, and many others of equal credit, give the Gracians for their ancestors: & as Strabo reporteth in his fifth Book, Cæcilius verum Romanarum Scriptor, eo argumento colligit, Romanos à Græcis esse conditos, quod Romani Græco ritu, antiquo instituto, Herculi rem sacram faciunt: matrem quoque Evandri venerantur Romani; Cæcilius (saith he) a Roman Historiographer, doth by this argument gather, that Rome was built by the Greeks, because the Romans, after Greeklissh fashion, by ancient ordinance, doe sacrifice to Hercules: the Romans also worship the mother of Evander.

Plutarch in the life of Romulus remembreth many founders of that Citie: as Romanus the son of Illysses and Circe; Romus the son of Emathion, whom Diomedes sent thither 10 from Troy; or that one Romus, a Tyrant of the Latines, who drave the Tuscians out of that Countrey, built it. Solinus bestowes the honour of building Rome upon Evander, saying, That it was beforetimes called Valentia. Heracles gives the denomination to a captive Lady, brought thither by the Gracians: others say, That it was anciently called Februa, after the name of Februa, the mother of Mars; witnesse S. Augustine in his third Booke of Civitate Dei. But Livie will have it to be the work of Romulus, even from the foundation: of whom and his consorts, Juvenal to a Roman Citizen, vaunting of their originall, answered in these Verses:.

Attamen at longè repetas, longèque revolvās,  
Majorum quisquis primus fuit ille tuorum,  
Aut pastor fuit, aut illud quod dicere nolo.

Yet though thou fetch thy pedigree so farre;  
Thy first Progenitor, who ere he were,  
Some Shepherd was, or else, that Ile forbear.  
meaning, either a Shepherd or a Theefe.

Now of Romulus begetting, of his education and preservation, it is said, That he had Rhea for his mother, and Mars supposed to be his father; that he was nursed by a Wolfe, found and taken away by Faustula a Shepherds wife. The same unnatural nursing had 30 Cyrus, the same incredible fostering had Semiramis; the one by a Birch, the other by Birds. But, as Plutarch saith, it is like enough that Amulius came covered with armour to Rhea, the mother of Romulus, when he begat her with child: & therein it seemeth to me that he might have two purposes; the one, to destroy her, because she was the daughter and heire of his elder brother, from whom he injuriously held the Kingdome; the other, to satisfy his appetite, because she was faire and goodly. For she being made a Nunne of the goddessesse Vesta, it was death in hêr, by the Law, to break her chastitie. I also find 40 in Fauchet f. 116. in *Antiquitez de Guille*, that Merbice, King of the Frances, was begotten by a Monster of the Sea: but Fauchet sayes, Let them believe it that list, il le croira qui voudra. Also of Alexander, and of Scipio African, there are poeticall inventions: But to answer these imaginations in general, It is true, that in those times, when the World was full of this barbarous Idolatry, and when there were as many gods as there were Kings, or passions of the mind, or as there were of vices and vertues, then did many women greatly borne, cover flux slips as they made, by protesting to bee forced by more than humane power: so did Oenone confesse to Paris, that she had been ravished by Apollo. And Anchysses boasted that hee had known Venus. But Rhea was made with child by some man of Warre, or other, and therefore called Mars, the god of battell, according to the sense of the time. Oenone was overcome by a strong wit, and by such a one as had those properties ascribed to Apollo. The Mother of Merovee might fancie a Sea Captaine, to be gotten with young by such a one: as the 50 Daughter of Inachus fancied, according to Herodotus. Aeneas was a bastard, and begotten upon some faire Harlot, called for her beauteie Pennus, and was therefore the chuld of lust, which is Venus. Romulus was nursed by a Wolfe, which was Lupas, or Lupina; for the Curtelians in those dayes were called Wolfes, *Que nunc* (saith Halicarnassensis) *honestiori vocabulo amice appellatur*; Which are now by an honest name called friends. It is also written, that Romulus was in the end of his life taken up into heaven, or rather out of the world, by his father Mars, in a great storme of thunder and lightning: so was it said that Aeneas vanished away by the River Numicus: but

but thereof Livie also speaketh modestly; for hee relieth the other opinion that the storme was the furie of the Senators, but seemeth to adhere partially to this taking up; and many Authors agree, that there was an unnatural darkenesse, both at his birth, and at his death; and that he might be slain by thunder or lightning, it is not unlikely. For the Emperour Anasialus was slaine with lightning; so was Strabo the Father of Pompey slaine with a thunder-bolt: so Carus the Emperour (who succeeded Probus) whilst hee lodged with his Army upon the River Tigris, was there slaine with lightning. But a Mars of the same Kind might end him that began him; for he was begotten by a man of war, & by violence destroyed. And that he died by violence (which destiny followed most of the Roman Emperours) it appeareth by Tarquinius Superbus, who was the seventh King 10 after him: who when he had murdered his Father-in-law, commanded that he should not be buried, for (saith hee) Romulus himselfe died and was not buried. But let Halicarnassus end this dispute; whose words are these: They (saith hee) who drew neere to the truth, say that he was slaine by his own Citizens; and that his cruelties in punishment of offenders, together with his arrogancie, were the cause of his slaughter. For it is reported, that both when his mother was ravished, whether by some man, or by a god, the whole body of the Sunne was eclipsed, and all the earth covered with darkenesse like unto night, & that the same did happen at his death.

Such were the birth and death of Romulus: whose life historieth by Plutarch, doth contain (besides what is here already spoken of him) the conquest of a few miles, which 20 had soone bin forgotten, if the Roman greatnesse built upon that foundation, had not given it memory in all ages following, even unto this day. A valiant man he was, very strong of body, patient of travell, and temperate in diet, as forbearing the use of wine & delicacies: but his raging ambition he knew not how to temper, which caused him to slay his brother, & neglect to revenge the death of Tatius, his companion in the Kingdome; that he himself might be Lord alone in those narrow Territories. He reigned 37. yeeres, first alone, then with Tatius, and after his death, single, till he was slaine, as is already shewed: after which time, the Sovereignty fell into the hands of Numa, a man to him unknown, and more Priest-like than King-like; wherein Rome it selfe in her latter times hath somewhat resembled this King. For having long bin sole Governesse, till Constantine 30 shared with her: afterwards, when as the Greek Emperour was cruell by forceine enemies, and the Latines dispoyle of Imperiall power, she fell into the subjection of a Prelate, swelling by degrees from the Sheep-hook to the Sword, and therewith victorious to excessive magnificence, from whence by the same degrees it fell, being driven from Luxurie to defensive armes; and therein having bin unfortunate, at length betakes her selfe againe to the Crozier staffe.

And thus much of Rome in this place, by occasion of the Storie of the times of King Abaz, during whose reign in Furie, the foundations of this famous Citie were laid.

## CHAP. XXV.

Of Ezechia, and his Contemporaries.

S. I.

Of the beginning of Ezechias, and of the agreeing of Ptolomic, Nabonassar, Nabopolassar and Mardocempadus, with the historie of the Bible.



50 S the first yeere of Abaz his reign was confounded with the last of his father Isaham, so was the latter end of his sixteen yeeres taken up in the three first of Ezechias his son. This appears by the Reigne of Hosea, over Israel, which began in the twelfth of Abaz, and therefore the third thereof was concurrent with Abaz his fourteenth. But the third of Hosea was the first of Ezechias, so it followes, that Ezechia began to reign in this Fathers fourteenth yeere. Like enough it is, that the third yeere of Hosea, the same being the fourteenth of Abaz, was almost spent when Ezechia began, and 10



so the fifteenth yeere of *Abaz* may have been concurrent, for the most part, with the first of *Ezechia*.

By supposing that *Hofea* began his Kingdom, when the twelfth yeer of *Abaz* was almost compleat, some would find the means how to dis-joyne the first of *Hezechiah* from the fifteenth of *Abaz*, placing him yet one year later, of which yeere, *Abaz* may perhaps have lived not many dayes. But seeing that the fourteenth and fifteenth yeeres of *Ezechia* may not be removed out of their places, it is vaine labour to alter the first yeere. In the fourteenth yeere of *Ezechia*, *Senacherib*, invading *Juda* and the Countreys adjoining, lost his Armie by a miraculous stroak from Heaven, fled home, and was slaine. The yeere following it was that God added fifteene yeeres to the life of *Ezechia*, when hee had already reigned fourteen of his nine and twenty: and the same yeere was that miracle seene of the Sunnes going back; of which wonder (as I heare) one *Bartholomew Scultet*, who is much commended for skill in Astronomie, hath by calculation found the very day, which answered unto the twenty fift of *April*, in the *Julian* year, being then Thursday. I have not seene any workes of *Scultet*; but surely to find a motion fo irregular and miraculous, it is necessary that he produce some record of observation made at such a time. Howsoever it be, the fifteenth yeere of *Ezechia* agreed upon, and therefore we may not alter the first. As for that saying, which is usuall in like cases, that *Abaz* slept with his Fathers, & *Ezechia* his Sonne reigned in his stead, it doth no more prove that *Ezechia* reigned not with his Father, than the like saying doth inferre the like at the death of *Jehoshaphat*, and succession of *Jehoram*; whereof, as concerning the beginning of the Sonne to reign whilst his Father lived, wee have already said enough.

Of this godly King *Ezechias*, we find, that his very beginning testified his devotion and zeale. For whether it were so, that his unfortunate and ungracious Father (who had out-worne his reputation) gave way to his Sons proceedings, which perhaps it lay not in him to hinder; or whether (as I rather thinke) the first yeere and first moneth of his reign, wherein *Ezechias* opened the doores of the Temple, were to be understood as the beginning of his sole government; wee plainly find it to have been his first work, that hee opened the doores of the house of the Lord, which *Abaz* had shut up, cleaned the Citie and Kingdome of the Idols, restored the Priests to their offices & estates, commanded the Sacrifices to bee offered which had bin for many yeeres neglected, & brake down the brazen Serpent of *Moses*, because the people burnt incense before it, & hee called it *Nebuchstian*, which signifieth a lump of brasse. He did also celebrate the Passe-over with great magnificence, inviting thereunto the *Israelites* of the ten Tribes. Many there were, even out of those Tribes, that came up to *Jerusalem*, to this feast: But the generall multitude of *Israel* did laugh the Messengers of *Ezechia* to scorne.

It was not long ere they that scorned to solemnize the memoriall of their deliverance out of the *Egyptian* servitude, fell into a new servitude, out of which they never were delivered. For in the fourth of *Ezechia* his reign, *Salmanassar* the Son of *Tiglat* the Son of *Belochus*, hearing that *Hofea* King of *Israel* had practised with So King of *Egypt*, against him, invaded *Israel*, besieged *Samaria*, and in the third year (after the inhabitants had endured all sorts of miseries) forced it, and carried thence the ten Idolatrous Tribes into *Assyria* and *Media*: among whom *Tobias*, and his Son of the same name, with *Anna* his Wife, were sent to *Nineve*; in whose Seates and Places the *Assyrians* sent strangers of other Nations, and among them many of the ancient Enemies of the *Israelites*, as those of *Cutha*, *Ana*, *Hamah*, and *Sphernaim*, besides *Babylonians*: whose Places and Nations I have formerly described in the Treatise of the Holy Land.

These later *Assyrian* Kings, and the *Perians*, which followed them, are the first of whom wee find mention made both in Prophane and Sacred bookes. These therefore so serve most aptly to joyne the times of the old World, (whereof none but the Prophets have written otherwise than fabulously) with the Ages following that were better known, and described in course of History. True it is, that of *Cyrus* and some other *Perians*, we find in the Bible the same names by which other Authors have recorded them: but of *Phal* & *Salmanassar*, with other *Assyrian*, *Chaldean* Kings, diversity of name hath bred question of the persons. Therefore, whereas the Scriptures doe speak of *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, who reigned in the time of *Abaz* and *Ezechia*, Kings of *Juda*, & of *Hofea* King of *Israel*, whom hee carried into captivity: and whereas *Ptolomy* makes mention

mention of *Nabonassar*, speaking precisely of the time wherein he lived; it is very pertinent to shew, that *Salmanassar* and *Nabonassar* were one and the same man. The like reason also requireth, that it be shewed of *Nabuchadnezzar*, that he was the same whom *Ptolomy* calleth *Nabopolassar*.

Of both these points *Bucholerus* hath well collected sufficient prooffe from the exact calculations of sundry good Mathematicians. For by them it appears, that between *Nabonassar* and the birth of *Christ*, there passed seven hundred forty and six years: at which distance of time the reign of *Salmanassar* was. One great prooffe hereof is this, which the same *Bucholerus* allegeth out of *Erasmus Reinholdus*, in the *Pruenick* Tables. *Mardocempadus* King of *Babylon* (whom *Ptolomy*, speaking of three Eclipses of the Moon, which were in his time, doth mention) was the same whom the Scriptures call *Meredach*, who sent Embassadors to *Hezechiah* King of *Juda*. So that if we reckon backward to the difference of time between *Meredach* and *Salmanassar*, wee shall find it the same which is between *Mardocempadus* and *Nabonassar*. Likewise *Fannius* doth shew, that whereas from the destruction of *Samaria*, to the destruction of *Jerusalem*, in the nineteenth of *Nabuchadnezzar*, we collect out of the Scriptures, the distance of one hundred thirty and three years: the self-same distance of time is found in *Ptolomy*, between *Nabonassar* and *Nabopolassar*. For whereas *Ptolomy* seems to differ from this account, making *Nabonassar* more antient by an hundred and forty years, than the destruction of *Jerusalem*, wee are to understand that he took *Samaria* in the eighth year of his reign; so that the seven foregoing years added to these one hundred thirty and three, make the accounts of the Scriptures fall even with that of *Ptolomy*. *Ptolomies* computation is, that from the first of *Nabonassar*, to the fifth of *Nabopolassar*, there passed one hundred twenty and seven years. Now if wee add to these one hundred twenty seven, the thirteen ensuing of *Nabuchadnezzars* years, before the City and Temple were destroyed, wee have the summe of one hundred and forty years. In to plain a case more prooffes are needlesse, though many are brought, of which this may serve for all, that *Ptolomy* placeth the first of *Nabopolassar* one hundred twenty and two years after the first of *Nabonassar*, which agreeth exactly with the Scriptures. To these notes are added the consent of all Mathematicians: which in account of times I hold more sure than the authority of any History; and therefore I think it folly to make doubt, whereas Historians and Mathematicall observations doe so thoroughly concur.

Yet forasmuch as that argument of the learned *Scaliger* doth rest unanswered, whereby he proved *Baladan* the Father of *Meredach*, to have been this *Nabonassar*, I will not spare to lose a word or two in giving the Reader satisfaction herein. It is true, that the next observations of the heavenly Bodies, which *Ptolomy* recorded, after the time of *Nabonassar*, were in the reign of *Mardocempadus*; the second year of whose reign, is according to *Ptolomy*, concurrent in part with the twenty seven of *Nabonassar*. For the second of three ancient Eclipses which hee calculates, being in the second year of *Mardocempadus*, was from the beginning of *Nabonassar* twenty seven years, seventeen dayes, and eleven hours: the account from *Nabonassar*, beginning at high-noon the first day of the *Egyptian* Moneth *Thot*, then answering to the twenty six of *February*, and this Eclipse being fifty minutes before mid-night, on the eighteenth day of that Moneth, when the first day thereof agreed with the nineteenth of *February*; so that the difference of time between the two Kings *Nabonassar* and *Mardocempadus*, is noted by *Ptolomy*, according to the *Egyptian* years. But how doth this prove, that *Mardocempadus* or *Meredach*, was the Sonne of *Nabonassar*? yea, how doth it prove, that he was his next Successor, or any way of his Linage? It was enough to fause me, in this argument, that *Scaliger* himself did afterwards believe *Mardocempadus* to have been rather the Nephew than the Sonne of *Baladan*, or *Nabonassar*. For if hee might bee either the Nephew, or the Sonne; hee might perhaps be neither the one, nor the other. But because our Countreymen *Lidat* hath reprehended *Scaliger* for changing his opinion; and that both *Tornellus*, who followes *Scaliger* herein, and *Sethus Calvisius*, who hath drawn into form of Chronology, that learned work, *De Emendatione Temporum*, doe hold up the same assertion, confounding *Baladan* with *Nabonassar*, I have taken the pains to search, as farre as my leisure and diligence could reach, after any sentence that might prove the Kindred or Succession of these two: Yet

cannot I find in the *Almagest* (for the Scriptures are either silent in this point, or adverse to *Scaliger* ; and other good authorities, I know none, in this business) any sentence more nearly proving the succession of *Merodach* to *Nabonassar*, than the place now last rehearsed : which makes no more, to shew that the one of these was father to the other, than (that I may use a like example) the as near succession of *William the Conqueror*, declares him, to have bin Son, or Grand-child to *Edward the Confessor*. This considered, we may safely go on with our account from *Nabonassar*, taking him for *Salmanassar*, and not fearing, that the Readers will be driven from our Book, when they find something in it, agreeing with *Annius*, so far as these Kings mentioned in Scriptures, reigned in *Babylon* and *Assyria*, in those very times which by *Diodorus* and *Ptolome* are assigned to *Be-lo-lolus*, *Nabonassar*, and *Mardocempadus*, and the rest : no good Historie naming any others that reigned there in those ages ; and all Astronomically observations, fitly concurring with the years that are attributed to these, or numbred from them.

## §. II.

Of the danger and deliverance of Judæa from Senacherib.

When *Salmanassar* was dead, and his son *Senacherib* in possession of the Empire, in the fourteenth year of *Ezechias*, he demanded of him such Tribute as was agreed on, at such time as *Tiglatb*, the Grand-father of *Senacherib*, and Father of *Salmanassar*, invited by *Ahaz*, the late Rezin King of *Damascus*, and delivered him from the dangerous Warre which *Israel* had undertaken against him. This Tribute and acknowledgement when *Ezechias* denied, *Senacherib*, having (as it seems) a purpose to invade *Egypt*, sent one part of his Armie to lye before *Jerusalem*. Now though *Ezechias* (fearing this powerful Prince) had acknowledged his fault, and purchased his peace, as he hoped, with thirty hundred talents of silver, and thirty talents of gold, wherewith he presented *Senacherib*, now set down before *Lachis* in *Judea* ; yet under the colour of better assurance, and to force the King of *Judea* to deliver hostages, the *Assyrian* invironed *Jerusalem* with a grosse Armie, and having his sword in his hand thought it the fittest time to write his own conditions.

*Ezechias* directed his three great Counsellors, to parly with *Rabfices* over the Wall, and to receive his demands : who used three principall arguments to perswade the people to yeeld themselves to his Master *Senacherib*. For though the Chancelour, Steward, and Secretarie, sent by *Ezechias*, desired *Rabfices* to speak unto them in the *Syrian* tongue, and not in the *Jewish*, yet he with a louder voice directed his speech to the multitude in their own language. And for the first, he made them know, That if they continued obstinate, and adhered to their King, that they would in a short time be enforced to eat their own dung, and drink their own urine : Secondly, hee altogether disabed the King of *Egypt*, from whom the *Judeans* hoped for succour ; and compared him to a broken staffe, on which whosoever leaneeth, pierceth his own hand : Thirdly, that the gods who should help them, *Ezechias* had formerly broken and defaced, meaning chiefly (as it is thought by some) the brazen Serpent, which had been preserved ever since *Moses* time : and withall hee bade them remember the gods of other Nations, whom, notwithstanding any power of theirs, his Master had conquered and thrown down ; and for God himselfe, in whom they trusted, hee perswaded them by no means to rely upon him, for hee would deceive them. But finding the people silent (for so the King had commanded them) after a while, when he had understood that the King of *Arabia* was marching on with a powerfull Armie, hee himselfe left the *Assyrian* forces in charge to others, and fought *Senacherib* at *Libna* in *Judea*, either to inform him of their resolution in *Jerusalem*, or to conferre with him concerning the Armie of *Tarbaca* the *Arabian*. Soon upon this there came letters from *Senacherib* to *Ezechias*, whom he partly advised, and partly threatened to submit himselfe, using the same blasphemous outrage against the all-powerfull God, as before. But *Ezechias* sending those Counsellors to the Prophet *Esay*, which had lately been sent to *Rabfices*, received from him comfort, and assurance, that this heathen Idolater should not prevail ; against whom the King also besought aide from Almighty God, repeating the most insolent and blasphemous parts of *Senacherib*s letter, before the

Altar

Altar of God in the Temple, confessing this part thereof to be true, That the King of *Asshur* had destroyed the Nations and their Lands, and had set fire on their gods, for they were no gods, but the work of mans hands, even wood and stone, &c.

The reason that moved *Senacherib* to desire to possesse himself in haste of *Jerusalem*, was, that he might therinto have retrained his Armie, which was departed as it seemeth from the siege of *Pelusium* in *Egypt*, for fear of *Tarbaca* : and though the Scriptures are silent of that enterprize (which in these books of the Kings, and of the *Chronicles* or *Paralipomenon*, speak but of the affairs of the Jews in effect) yet the ancient *Berosus*, and out of him *Josephus* and Saint *Hierome*, together with *Herodotus*, remember it as followeth. *Herodotus* calleth *Senacherib* King of *Arabia* and *Assyria* : which he might justly doe, because *Tiglatb* his Grand-father held a great part thereof, which he wrested from *Pekah* King of *Israel* : as *Gilead* over *Jordan*, and the rest of *Arabia*. *Petrea* adjoining : the same *Herodotus* also maketh *Sethon* King of *Egypt*, to be *Vulcan* Priest ; and reporteth that the reason of *Senacherib*s return from *Pelusium* in *Egypt*, which he also besieged, was, that an innumerable multitude of Rats had in one night eaten in sunder the Bow-strings of his Archers, and spoyled the rest of their weapons in that kind, which no doubt might greatly amaze him : but the approach of *Tarbaca*, remembered by *Josephus* and *Berosus*, was the more urgent. Saint *Hierome* upon the seven and thirtieth of *Esay*, out of the same *Berosus*, as also in part out of *Herodotus*, whom *Josephus* citeth somewhat otherwile than his words lye, reports *Senacherib*s retreat in these words, *Pugnasse autem Senacherib Regem Assyriorum contra Aegyptios, & obsidisse Pelusium, jamque extractis aggeribus urbi capiende, venisse Taracham Regem Aethiopum in auxilium, & una nocte juxta Jerusalem, centum octoginta quinque milia exercitus Assyrii pestilentia corruisse*, narrat *Herodotus* : & plensime *Berosus* *haladica scriptor Historie, quorum fides de propriis libris petenda est* : That *Senacherib* King of the *Assyrians* fought against the *Egyptians*, and besieged *Pelusium*, and that when his Mounts were built for taking of the Citie, *Tarbaca* King of the *Aethiopians* came to help them, and that in one night, near *Jerusalem*, one hundred eighty five thousand of the *Assyrian* Armie perished by pestilence, of these things (*saith Hierome*) \* *Herodotus* reports : and more at large *Berosus* a writer of the *Chaldean* storie, whose credit is to be taken from their own Books. Out of *Esay* it is gathered, that this destruction of the *Assyrian* Armie was in this manner : Thou shalt be visited of the Lord of Hosts with thunder and shaking, and a great noise, a whirlwind and a tempest, and a flame of devouring fire. But *Josephus* hath it more largely out of the same *Berosus*, an authoritie (because so well agreeing with the Scriptures) not to be omitted ; *Senacheribus autem ab Aegyptiaco bello revertens, offendit ibi exercitum quem sub Rabfakis imperio reliquerat peste divinitus immissa deletum, prima nocte postea quem urbem oppugnare exerat, absumptis cum Ducibus & Tribunis centum octoginta quinque milibus Atilium ; qua clade territus, & de reliquis copiis sollicitus, maximis itineribus in regnum suum contendit, ad regiam quæ Ninus dicitur. Ubi paulo post perindidem Seniorum & filius juu, Adramelech, & Sennanir, vitam amisit : occisus in ipso Templo quod dicitur Arafci, quem precipuo cultu dignabatur ; quibus ob patricidium a pulchris pulsus, & in Armeniam fugientibus, Alaracoldas minor filius in Regnum successit. Senacherib (saith Josephus) returning from the Egyptian War, found there his Armie, which he had left under the command of *Rabfices*, destroyed by a pestilence sent from God, the first night that he had begun to assault the Town : one hundred four thousand and five thousand of the Souldiers being consumed with their Chieftains and Colonels. With which destruction being terrified, and withall afraid what might become of the rest of his Armie, he made great marches into his Kingdome, to his Royall Citie, which is called *Ninus*, where shortly after by the treason of two of the eldest of his Sons, *Adramelech* and *Sennanir* or *Sharczer*, he lost his life in the Temple dedicated to *Arafces*, or *Nefroth* ; Whom he especially worshipped. These his Sons being for their parricide chased away by the people, and flying into *Armenia*, *Alaracoldas* his younger Son succeeded in the Kingdome. Who in the beginning of his reign sent new troops out of *Assyria* to *Samaria*, to fortifie the Colonie therein planted by his Grand-father *Salmanassar*. What this *Nefroth* was, it is uncertain : *Hierome* in his Hebrew traditions hath somewhat of him, but nothing positively. It is certain, that *Venus Urania* was worshipped by the *Assyrians* ; and so was *Jupiter Belus*, as *Dion*, *Eusebius*, and *Cyrillus* witness. Many fancies there are, what cause his Sons had to murder him ; but the*

D d d 2

most

most likely it is, that he had formerly dis-inherited those two, and conferred the Empire on *Assarhaddon*. *Tobit* tells us, that it was fiftie five days after *Senacherib* return, ere he was murdered by his Sons, during which time he slew great numbers of the *Israelites* in *Nineve*, till the most just God turned the sword against his own breast.

## S. III.

of *Ezechias* his sicknesse and recoverie; and of the Babylonian King that congratulated him.

**A**fter this marvellous deliverie, *Ezechias* sickned, and was told by *Isaiah* that he must dye: but after he had besought God with tears for his deliverie, *Isaiah*, as he was going from him, returned again, and had warrant from the Spirit of God to promise him recovery after three days, and a prolongation of life for fifteen years. But *Ezechias* somewhat doubtfull of this exceeding grace, prayeth for a sign to confirme him: whereupon, at the prayer of *Isaiah*, the shadow of the Sunne cast it self the contrary way, and went back ten degrees, upon the Dyall of *Achaz*. The cause that moved *Ezechias* to lament (saith Saint *Hierome*) was, because he had as yet no son, and then in despair that the *Messias* should come out of the house of *David*, or at least of his Seed. His disease seemeth to be the pestilence, by the medicine given him by the Prophet, to wit, a masse of Figs, layd to the Boche or 20 Sore.

This wonder when the Wife-men of *Chaldea* had told to *Merodach*, King of *Babylon*, the first of that house, he sent to *Ezechias*, to be informed of the cause: at which time *Ezechias* shewed him all the Treasure he had, both in the Court and in the Kingdom: for which he was prebended by the Prophet *Isaiah*, who told him; *The daies are at hand, that all that is in thine house, and whatsoever thy Fathers have layd up in store to this day, shall be carried into Babel; nothing shall be left, saith the Lord*. It may seeme strange, how *Ezechias* should have got any treasure worth the shewing: for *Senacherib* had robbed him of all, the year before. But the spoyl of the same *Senacherib* his Camp repayed all with advantage, and made *Ezechias* richer upon the sudden than ever he had been: which unexpected wealth was a strong temptation to boasting. After this time *Ezechias* had rest, and spending without noyse that addition which God had made unto his life, he dyed having reigned nine and twenty years. One only offensive War he made, which was against the *Philistims*, with good success. Among his other acts (shortly remembred in *Ecclesiasticus*) he devised to bring water to *Jerusalem*.

In two respects they say that he offended God: the one, that he rejoiced too much at the destruction and lamentable end of his enemy; the other, that he so much gloried in his riches, as he could not forbear to shew them to strangers. But the reason which moved *Ezechias* (speaking humanely) to entertaine the Embassadors of *Merodach* in this friendly and familiar manner, was, because he came to visit him, and brought him a present, congratulating the recovery of his health; as also in that *Merodach* had weakened the house of *Senacherib*, his fearfull enemy. For *Merodach*, who was Commander and Lieutenant under *Senacherib* in *Babylon*, usurped that State himself, in the last year of that King; and held it by strong hand against his son *Assarhaddon*; who was not only simple, but impaired in strength, by the molestation of his brothers. This advantage *Merodach* espied, and remembering that their ancestor *Phul Belochus* had set his own Master *Sardanapalus* besides the culbion, thought it as lawfull for himself to take the opportunitie which this Kings weaknesse did offer, as it had been for *Belochus* 50 to make use of the others wickednesse: and so, finding himself beloved of the *Babylonians*, and sufficiently powerfull, he did put the matter to hazard, and prevailed. The assertion of this historie is made by the same arguments that were used in maintaining the common opinion of Writers, touching *Phul Belochus*; which I will not here again rehearse. So of this new race, which cut a-sunder the Line of *Ninus*, there were only five Kings.

Phul

<i>Phul Belochus</i>	} reigned	48
<i>Tiglath-Philassar</i>		27
<i>Salmanassar</i>		10
<i>Senacherib</i>		7
<i>Assarhaddon</i>		10

But forasmuch as the last year of *Salmanassar* was also the first of *Senacherib* his son, we reckon the time, wherein the house of *Phul* held the Assyrian Kingdome, to have been an hundred and one years, of which, the last five and twenty were spent with *Ezechias*, under *Salmanassar*, *Senacherib*, and *Assarhaddon*.

## S. IIII.

The Kings that were in Media during the reign of *Ezechias*: Of the difference found between sundrie Authors in rehearsing the Median Kings. Other contemporaries of *Ezechias*: of *Candaules*, *Gyges*, and the Kings descended from *Hercules*.

**I**N the time of *Ezechias*, *Medius* and after him *Cardiceus*, reigned in Media. Whether it were so, that varietie of names, by which these Kings were called in severall Histories, hath caused them to seem more than indeed they were; or whether the sons reigning with the fathers, have caused not only the names of Kings, but the length of Time wherein they governed *Media*, to exceed the due proportion; or whether the Copies themselves of *Ctesias* and *Annius* his *Metasthenes*, have been faulty, as neither of these two Authors is ever highly commended of trustiness; so it is, that the names, number, and length of reign, are all very diversly reported of these Median kings, that follow *Arbaces*: therefore it need not seem strange, that I reckon *Medius* and *Cardiceus* as contemporaries with *Ezechias*. For to reconcile so great a difference, as is found in those writers that varie from *Eusebius*, is more than I dare undertake. I will only here set down the roll of Kings that reigned in Media, accordingly as sundry Authors have delivered it.

*Annius* his *Metasthenes* orders them and their reigns thus;

<i>Arbaces</i>	} reigned	28	} years
<i>Mandanes</i>		50	
<i>Sofarmon</i>		30	
<i>Articarmin</i>		50	
<i>Arbians</i>		22	
<i>Artans</i>		40	
<i>Artines</i>		22	
<i>Astybarus</i> , with his			
son <i>Apanda</i>		20	
<i>Apanda</i> alone		30	
<i>Darius</i> with <i>Cyrus</i> .		36	

*Diodorus Siculus* following *Ctesias* (as perhaps *Annius* made his *Metasthenes* follow *Diodore*, with some little variation, that he might not seem a borrower) placeth them thus;

<i>Arbaces</i>	} reigned	28	} years.
<i>Mandanes</i>		50	
<i>Sofarmon</i>		30	
<i>Articas</i>		50	
<i>Arbians</i>		22	
<i>Artens</i>		40	
<i>Artines</i>		22	
<i>Artabanus</i>		40	

*Astybara*, & the continuance of these two he doth mention.

*Mercator* hath laboured, with much diligence, to reconcile these Catalogues, and to make them also agree with *Eusebius*. But forasmuch as it seems to me an impossible matter, to attain unto the truth of these forgotten times, by conjectures founded upon

Ctesias and Metasthenes, I will lay the burden upon *Eusebius*, who lived in an age better furnished than ours, with books of this argument. Let it therefore suffice, that these two Kings (whom I have reckoned as contemporaries with *Ezekia*) *Medidus* and *Cardiceas*, are found in *Eusebius*: for whether *Cardiceas* were *Diodorus* his *Arbians*, I will not stay to search. The Kings of *Media*, according to *Eusebius*, reigned in this order.

<i>Arbaces</i>	28	} years.
<i>Sosarmus</i>	30	
<i>Medidus</i>	40	
<i>Cardiceas</i>	19	
<i>Deioces</i>	54	
<i>Phraortes</i>	24	
<i>Cyaxares</i>	32	
<i>Astyages</i>	38	

10

These names, and this course of succession I retain; but adde unto these, *Cyaxares*, the son of *Astyages*, according to *Xenophon*; and sometimes follow *Herodotus*, in setting down the length of a Kings reign, otherwise than *Eusebius* hath it: of which variations I will render my reasons in due place.

The twenty nine years of *Ezekia* were concurrent, in part, with the rule of the four first that were chosen Governours of *Athens* for ten years, that is, of *Charops*, *Asmetes*, *Elidicus*, and *Hippones*. Touching the first of these I hear nothing, save that *Rome* was built in his first year; of which perhaps himself did not hear. Of the second and third I find only the names. The fourth made himself known by a strange example of justice, or rather of cruelty, that he shewed upon his own Daughter. For he finding that she had offended in unchastity, caused her to be locked up with an Horse, giving to neither of them any food: so the Horse, constrained by hunger, devoured the unhappy Woman.

In *Rome*, the first King, and founder of that City *Romulus*, did reign both before, and somewhat after *Ezekia*.

In *Lydia*, *Candaules* the last King ruled in the same age.

This Region was first called *Moenia*: *Lydius* the son of *Alys* reigning in it, gave the name of *Lydia*, if we believe such authority as we find. This Kingdom was afterward, by the appointment of an Oracle, conferred upon *Argon*, who came of *Alceus* the son of *Hercules*, by *Jardana* a bond-woman. The race of these *Heracidae* continued reigning fifty five years (in which two and twenty Generations passed) the son continually succeeding the father. *Candaules* the son of *Myrsus* was the last of his race, who doated so much upon the beauty of his own wife, that he could not be content to enjoy her, but would needs enforce one *Gyges* the son of *Dasyllus* to behold her naked body; and placed the unwilling man secretly in her chamber, where he might see her preparing to bedward. This was not so closely carried, but that the Queen perceived *Gyges* at his going forth, and understanding the matter, took it in such high disdain, that she forced him the next day to requite the Kings folly with treason. So *Gyges* being brought again into the same chamber by the Queen, slew *Candaules*, and was rewarded not only with his Wife, but with the Kingdom of *Lydia*. He reigned thirty eight years, beginning in the last of *Ezekia*, one year before the death of *Romulus*.

After *Gyges*, his son *Ardis* reigned nine and forty years; then *Sadyattes* twelve; *Halyattes*, fifty seven; and finally *Crasus* the son of *Halyattes*, fourteen years: who lost the Kingdom, and was taken by *Cyrus* of *Persia*.

And here by the way we may note, that as the *Lydian* Kings, whom *Crasus* his Progenitor disposed, are deduced from *Hercules*, so of the same *Hercules* there sprang many other Kings, which governed severall Countreys very long; as in *Asia*, the *Myrians*; in *Greece*, the *Lacedamonians*, *Messenians*, *Rhodians*, *Corinthians* and *Argives*; and from the *Argives*, the *Macedonians*, as likewise from the *Corinthians*, the *Syraculans*: besides many great and famous, though private Families.

But of the *Heracidae* that reigned in *Lydia*, I have not troubled my self to take notice of the time of their severall reigns: for little is found of them besides the bare names, and the folly of this last King *Candaules*.

C H A

## CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Kings that reigned in Egypt, between the deliverance of Israel from thence, and the reign of *Ezekiah* in *Juda*, when Egypt and *Juda* made a league against the Assyrians.

10

S. I.

That many names of Egyptian Kings, found in Historie, are like to have belonged onely to Viceroyes. An example proving this out of William of Tyre his Historie of the Holy Warre.



10

He emulation and quarrels arising in these times, between the mightie Kingdomes of *Egypt* and *Affria*, doe require our pains, in collecting the most memorable things in *Egypt*, and setting down briefly the state of that Countrey, which had continued long a flourishing Region, and was of great power, when it contended with *Affria* for the matter. Of *Cham* the son of *Noah*, who first planted that Countrey, and of *Osiris*, *Orus*, and other ancient Kings that reigned there, untill the *Israelites* were thence delivered, more hath been said already than I can stand to; though I hold it no shame to fall in such conjectures. That which I have delivered, in speaking mine opinion of the Egyptian Dynasties, must here again help me. For it may truly be affirmed, That the great number of Kings, which are said to have reigned in *Egypt*, were none other than Viceroyes or Stewards, such as *Joseph* was, and such as were the Soldans in later ages. Therefore I will not onely forbear to seek after those, whom *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* have reckoned up, from the mouths of Egyptian Priests, delivering them by number, without rehearsing their names; but will save the labour of marshalling them in order, whose names onely are found; the years of their reigns, and other circumstances proving them to have been Kings indeed, being not recorded.

10

But that I may not seem before hand to lay an imaginarie ground, whereupon after I may build what I list, it were not amisse, to give unto the Reader such satisfaction in this point, as apparent reason, and truth of Historie doth afford. First therefore, we ought not to believe those numbers of Generations, which the lying Priests have reckoned up, to magnifie their Antiquities. For we know, that from *Abraham* our Saviour Christ was removed onely forty two descents; which makes it evident, that in farre shorter time, namely before the *Persian* Empire, there could not have passed away twice as many successions in *Egypt*: especially considering, that many of these, whose continuance is expressed, having reigned longer than forty years. It follows that we should square the number of the Egyptian Kings in some even proportion, to those which did bear rule in other Countries. As for the rest, whose names we find scattered here and there; any man that will take the pains to read the nineteenth book of the Holy War, written by *William* Archbishop of *Tyre*, may easily persuade himself, that it is not hard to find names enow, of such as might be thought to have reigned in *Egypt*, being none other than Regents or Viceroyes. Yet will I here insert, as briefly as I can, some things making to that purpose, for the pleasure and information of such as will not trouble themselves with turning over many Authors.

10

When *Elabdech* the Caliph ruled in *Egypt*, one *Dargan*, a powerfull and a subtle man, made himself Soldan, by force and cunning, chafing away *Sanar* an Arabian, who was Soldan before and after him. This *Dargan* ministred matter of quarrel to *Amalrick* king of *Jerusalem*, and sustained, with little losse, an invasion, which *Amalrick* made upon *Egypt*. Hereupon he grew so insolent and proud, that *Sanar* the former Soldan hoped to make his partie good against him, if he could get any forces wherewith to enter *Egypt*.

Briefly,

Briefly, *Sanar* sueth to *Noradine*, King of *Damasco*, for aid, who sends an Armie of his Turks, under the command of *Syracon*, against the *Soldan Dargan*. So *Dargan* and *Sanar* met, and fought: The victorie was *Dargan*'s; but he enjoyed it not: for in few days after, he was slain by treason, whereby *Sanar* did recover his Dignitie: which to establish, he slew all the kindred and friends of *Dargan*, that he could find in the great Citie of *Cairo*.

To all these doings, the *Caliph Elhadach* gave little regard: for he thought it little concerned him, which of them lived, and had the administration of the kingdom, whilst he might have the profit of it, and enjoy his pleasure. But new troubles presently arise, which (one would think) do neerly touch the *Caliph* himself. *Syracon* with his Turks, to whom *Sanar* had gotten to come into *Egypt*, will not now be intreated there to leave him, and quietly go their way home. They seize upon the Town of *Belbeis*, which they fortifie, and there attend the arrivall of more companie from *Damasco*, for the conquest of all *Egypt*. The *Soldan* perceives their intent, and finds himself not strong enough to expell them, much less to repell the Turkish Armie that was likely to second them: He therefore sends Messengers to King *Almarick* of *Jerusalem*, whom with large promises he gets to bring him aid, and so drives out the Turks. Of all this trouble the great *Caliph* hears nothing, or not so much as should make him look to the playing of his own game.

A greater mischief ariseth, concerning the *Caliph Elhadach* particularly in his own Title. *Syracon*, Captain of the Turks that had been in *Egypt*, goes to the *Caliph* of *Baldach* (who was opposite to him of *Egypt*, each of them claiming as heir to *Mahomet* that false Prophet, the Sovereignie over all that were of the *Saracen* Law) and tel him the weakness of the *Egyptians*, with his own abilitie of doing service in those parts, offering his best means for the extirpation of the Schismaticall *Caliph*, and the reduction of all *Egypt*, with the Western parts, under the subjection of the *Babylonian*. This motion is readily and joyfully contained; all the Eastern Provinces are up in Arms, and *Syracon*, with a mighty power, descendeth into *Egypt*. The noyse of this great expedition so affrighteth King *Almarick*, that with all his forces he hasteth into *Egypt*, well knowing how neerly it concerned him and his Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, to keep the *Saracens* from joyning all under one head: *Sanar* the *Soldan* perceiving the faithfull care of the Christians his friends, welcomes them, and bestirs himself in giving them all manner of content, as it behoved him: for by their admirable valour, he finally drave the enemies out of the Countie. But this victorie was not so soon gotten, as it is quickly told.

Strange it is (which most concerns our present purpose) that of so desperate a danger, the *Caliph*, as yet, seems to know nothing. May we not think him to have been King in title onely, who meddled so little in the Government? The *Soldan*, finding that the Christians (without whose help all was lost) could not well stay so long as his necessities required, makes large offers to King *Almarick*, upon condition that he should abide by it. He promiseth a great Tribute (*William* of *Tyre* calls it a Tribute, the *Saracens*, perhaps, called it a Pension) which the Kings of *Jerusalem* should receive out of *Egypt*, for this behovefull assistance. But the Christians understanding that the *Soldan* (how much soever he took upon him) was subject to a higher Lord, would make no bargain of such importance with any other than the *Caliph* himself. Hereupon *Hugh* Earl of *Cesarea*, and a Knight of the *Templers*, are sent unto *Elhadach* to ratifie the covenants. Now shall we see the greatnesse of the *Caliph* and his estate.

These Embassadours were conveyed by the *Soldan* to *Cairo*, where arriving at the Palace, they found it guarded by great troupes of Souldiers. The first entrance was through dark Porches, that were kept by many armed bands of *Ethiopian*s, which with all diligence did reverence to the *Soldan* as he passed along. Through these streights the Warders led them into goodly open Courts, of such beautie and riches, that they could not retain the gravitie of Embassadours, but were enforced to admire the things which detained their eyes. For there they saw goodly Marble Pillars, gilded Beams, all wrought over with embossed workes, curious pavements, fish-ponds of Marble with clear waters, and many sorts of strange birds, unknown in those parts of the World, as comming perhaps from the East Indies, which then was undiscovered. The further they went, the greater was the magnificence; for the *Caliph* his Eunuches conveyed them into other

other Courts within these, as far excelling the former, as the former did surpass ordinary houses. It were tedious perhaps to rehearse how the further they entered, the more high state they found, and cause of marvaile; suffice it, that the good Archbishopp, who wrote these things, was never held a vain Author. Finally they were brought into the *Caliph*'s own lodgings, which were yet more stately and better guarded; where entering the Presence, the *Soldan* having twice prostrated himself, did the third time cast off his Sword that he wore about his neck, and throw himself on the ground before the curtain, behind which the *Caliph* sat. Presently the travell wrought with Gold and Pearls was opened, and the *Caliph* himself discovered, sitting with great majesty on a throne of gold, having few of his most inward servants and Eunuches about him. When the *Soldan* had humbly kissed his Masters feet, he briefly told the cause of his coming, the danger wherein the land stood, and the offers that he made unto King *Almarick*, desiring the *Caliph* himself to ratifie them in presence of the Embassadors. The *Caliph* answered, That he would thoroughly perform all which was promised. But this contented not the Embassadors: They would have him to give his hand upon the bargain, which the *Egyptians* that stood by much deliberation, at the earnest request of the *Soldan*, to reach out his hand. When the Earl of *Cesaria* saw that the *Caliph* gave his hand neither willingly nor bare, he told him roundly thus much in effect: Sir, Truth seeks no holes to hide it self; Princes that will hold covenant, must deal openly, nakedly and sincerely: Give us therefore your bare hand, if you mean that we shall trust you, for we will make no bargain with your Glove. Much adoe there was about this: for it seemed against the Majesty of such a Prince to yeeld so far. But when it would none otherwise be, with a smiling chear (though to the great grief of his Servants) he vouchsafed to let the Earl take him by the bare hand; and so rehearsing the covenants word by word, as the Earl spake them, he ratified all; dismissing finally the Embassadors with such rewards as testified his greatnesse.

In this *Caliph* and his *Sultan*, we may discern the Image of the ancient *Pharaoh*, and his Viceroy: we see a Prince of great estate, sitting in his Palace, and not vexing himself with the great preparations made against him, which terrifie his neighbour Countries: we see his Viceroy, in the mean season, using all Royall power-making War and Peace; entertaining and repelling Armies of strangers, yea, making the land of *Egypt* tributary to a forrain Prince. What greater authority was given to *Joseph*, when *Pharaoh* said unto him, *Thou shalt be over mine house, and at thy word shall all my people be armed, only in the Kings throne will I be above thee. Behold I have set thee over all the Land of Egypt?*

I doe not commend this forme of Government; neither can I approve the conjecture of mine Author, where he thinks, that the *Egyptians*, ever since *Joseph*'s time, have felt the burden of that servitude which he brought upon them, when he bought them and their Lands for *Pharaoh*. Herein I find his judgement good; that he affirms this manner of the *Egyptian* Kings in taking their ease, and ruling by a Viceroy, to be part of the ancient customs practised by the *Pharaohs*. For we find, that even the *Ptolomies* (excepting *Ptolomaeus Lagi*, and his son *Philadelphus*, founder and establisher of that race) were given, all of them wholly, to please their own appetites, leaving the charge of the Kingdom to Women, Eunuches, and other Ministers of their desires. The pleasures which that Country afforded, were indeed sufficient to invite the Kings thereof unto a voluptuous life; and the awfull regard wherein the *Egyptians* held their Princes, gave them security, whereby they might the better trust their Officers with so ample commission. But of this matter, I will not stand longer to dispute. It is enough to have shewed, that the great and almost absolute power of the same is found in *William* of *Tyre*, who lived in the same age, was in few years after Chancellour of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, and had full discourse with *Hugh* Earl of *Cesaria* touching all these matters. Wherefore it remains, that we be not carried away with a vain opinion, to beleve that all they were Kings, whom reports of the fabulous *Egyptians* have honoured with that stile; but rest contented with a Catalogue of such, as we find by circumstance, likely to have reigned in that Country; after whom it follows that we should make inquiry.

## §. II.

of Acherres; whether he were Uchoreus that was the eighth from Osymandyas. Of Osymandyas and his Tombe.

**I**N this business I hold it vain to be too curious. For who can hope to attain to the perfect knowledge of the truth, when as *Diodorus* varies from *Herodotus*, *Eusebius* from both of them; and late Writers that have sought to gather the truth out of these and others, find no one with whom they can agree: In this case *Annius* would do good service, if a man could trust him. But it is enough to be beholding to him, when others do either say nothing, or that which may justly be suspected. I will therefore hold my self contented with the pleasure that he hath done me, in saying somewhat of *Osiris*, *Isis*, *Orus*, and those antiquities removed so far out of sight: as for the Kings following the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, it shall suffice that *Herodotus*, *Diodorus*, and *Eusebius* have not been silent, and that *Reineccius* hath taken pains to range into some good order the names that are extant in these, or else found scattering in others.

From the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, unto the reign of *Thuris* (who is generally taken to be the same that the Greeks call *Proteus*) there is little or no disagreement about the *Egyptian* Kings. Wherefore I set down the same which are found in *Eusebius*, and give to every one the same length of reign.

*Acherres* was the first of these, who succeeded unto *Chenres*, that perished in the Red Sea. This King seems to *Reineccius* to be the same whom *Diodorus* calls *Uchoreus*, the founder of *Memphis*. But whereas mention is found in *Diodorus* of a great King, named *Osymandyas*, from whom *Uchoreus* is said to be the eighth; it will either hardly follow, that *Timaeus* (as *Reineccius* conjectures) was the great *Osymandyas*; or else that this *Acherres* was *Uchoreus*: for the distance between them was more than eight generations. *Mercator* judgeth *Osymandyas* to have bin the husband of *Ancheres*, *Orus* the seconds daughter; thinking that *Manethon* (cited by *Josephus*) doth omit his name, and infer his wives into the Catalogue of Kings, because he was King in his wives right. As for *Uchoreus*, it troubles not *Mercator* to find him the eighth from this man: for he takes *Ogdoen*, to be significant in this place of *Diodore* (as that Greek word else doth) the eighth, but not an *Egyptian* name, belonging also to *Uchoreus*, who might have had two names, as many of the rest had. I will not vex my brains in the unprofitable search of this, and the like inextricable doubts. All that *Diodore* hath found of this *Osymandyas*, was wrought upon his monument; the most thereof in figures, which I think the *Egyptians* did fabulously expound. For whereas there was portrayed a great Army, with the siege of a Town, the captivity of the people, and the triumph of the Conqueror; all this, the *Egyptians* said to denote the conquest of *Bactria* made by that King: which how likely it was, let others judge. I hold this goodly piece of work, which *Diodore* so particularly describes, to have been erected for a common place of buriall to the ancient Kings and Queens of *Egypt*, and to their Viceroy; whilst yet they were not so ambitious, as every one to have his own particular monument, striving therein to exceed all others. This appears by the many statues therein placed, by the Wars, the judgement seat, the receiving of Tribute, the offering sacrifice to God, the account of revenues, & plenty of all cattell and food; all which were there curiously wrought, shewing the several Offices of a Governour. On the Tomb of *Osymandyas* was this inscription. *I am Osymandyas King of Kings; if any desire to know what I am, or where I lye, let him exceed some of my works.* Let them that hope to exceed his works, labour to know what he was. But since by those words, *Or where I lye*, it should seem that he lay not there interred, we may lawfully suspect that it was *Joseph*, whose body was preserved among the Hebrews, to be buried in the land of *Canaan*, and this empty Monument might King *Orus*, who outlived him, erect in honor of his high deserts, among the royall sepulchres. To which purpose the plenty of Cattell, & all manner of viands, had good reference. The name of *Osymandyas* doth not hinder this conjecture; seeing *Joseph* had one new name given to him by *Pharaoh*; for expounding the dream, and might, upon further occasions, have another, to his increase of honour. As for that stile, *King of Kings*, it was perhaps no more than *Beglerberg*, as the *Turkish Bassaes* are called, that is, Great above the Great.

Now

Now although it be so, that the reckoning falls out right, between the times of *Joseph* and *Acherres* (for *Acherres* was the eighth in order, that reigned after the great *Orus*, whose Viceroy *Joseph* was) yet will I hereby seek, neither to fortifie mine own conjecture, as touching *Joseph*, nor to infer any likelihood of *Acherres* his being *Uchoreus*. For it might well be, that *Memphis* was built by some such King as was *Gehour*, Lieutenant unto the Caliph *Elcain*, who having to his Masters use conquered *Egypt*, and many other Countries, did build, not far from old *Memphis*, the great Citie of *Cairo* (corruptly so pronounced) naming it *El Cahira*, that is, an enforcing, or an imperious Mistress, though he himself were a *Dalmatian* slave.

## §. III.

of Cherres, Armeus, Rameffes, and Amenophis. Of Myris, and the Lake that bears his name.

**V**Hen *Acherres* had reigned eight years, *Cherres* succeeded and held the kingdom fifteen years: then reigned *Armeus* five years, and after him *Rameffes* threescore and eight. Of *Armeus* and *Rameffes* is that Historie understood by *Eusebius*, which is common among the Greeks, under the names of *Danaus* and *Aegyptus*. For it is said that *Danaus*, being expelled out of *Egypt* by his brother, fled into Greece, where he obtained the Kingdom of *Argos*: that he had three daughters, whom upon seeming reconciliation, he gave in marriage to his brothers three sons, but commanded every one of them to kill her husband the first night; that onely *Hypermetra*, one of his Daughters, did save her husband *Lyncus*, and suffered him to escape; finally, That for this fact, all the bloody sisters, when they dyed, were enjoined this foolish punishment in Hell, to fill a leaking vessel with water.

The reign of *Danaus* in *Argos* was indeed in this age; but that *Armeus* was *Danaus*, and *Rameffes*, *Aegyptus*, is more than *Reineccius* believes: he rather takes *Armeus* to have been *Myris*, or *Meris*, who caused the great lake to be made which bears his name. For my own part, as I can easily believe, that he which fled out of *Egypt* into Greece, was a man of such quality as the Soldan *Sanar*, of whom we spake before; so do I not find how in so short a reign, as five years, a work of that labour could be finished, which was required unto the Lake of *Myris*, and the Monuments therein; whereof his own Sepulchre and his wives being some part, it is manifest that he was not buried in *Argos*. Wherefore of *Myris*, and of all other Kings, whose age is uncertain, and of whose reigns we have no assurance, I may truly say, that their great works are not enough to prove them of the house of *Pharaoh*, seeing that greater deeds or more absolute, than were those of *Joseph*, who bought all the people of *Egypt* as bondmen, and all their land for bread; of *Gehour*, who founded *Cairo*; and of *Sanar*, who made the Countrey Tributary, were performed by none of them.

It shall therefore be enough to set down the length of their reigns whom we find to have followed one another in order of succession: but in rehearsing the great acts which were performed, I will not stand to examine, whether they that did them were Kings or no.

The Lake of *Myris*, is, by the report of *Diodore* and *Herodotus*, three thousand six hundred furlongs in compass, and fifty fadomes deep. It served to receive the waters of *Nilus*, when the overflow, being too great, was harmful to the Countrey: and to supply the defect, by letting out the waters of the lake, when the river did not rise high enough. In opening the sluices of this lake, for the letting in or out of waters, were spent fiftie talents; but the lake it self defraied that cost, seeing the tribute imposed upon fish taken therein was every day one talent, which *Myris* gave to his Wife to buy sweet oynments and other ornaments for her body. In the midst of it was left an Island, wherein were the Sepulchres of *Myris* and his Wife, and over each of them a Pyramid, that was a furlong, or (according to *Herodotus*) fiftie paces high; having on the tops their statues, sitting in Thrones. I find not the description of this Lake in Maps, answerable to the report of Historians: yet it is very great. The years of *Armeus* are by *Manethon* divided, by inserting one *Armesis* (whom *Eusebius* omits) that should have reigned one year and odd months of the time: but I hold not this difference worthy of examination.

After



After *Ramefes*, his son *Amenophis* held the Kingdome forty years. Some give him only nineteen years; and *Mercator* thinks him to have been the King that was drowned in the Red Sea: whereof I have already spoken in the first Book.

## S. IV.

Of the Kings that reigned in the Dynastie of the Lartnes.

**S** *Ethosis*, or *Zethus*, reigned after his Father *Amenophis*, fiftie five years. To him are ascribed the famous acts of that ancient *Sesoftris*. But the state of the world was so not such at these times, that so great an expedition as the old *Sesoftris* made, could have been either easily performed, or forgotten in the Countries through which he passed, had it now been performed; as any man will perceive, if he look upon my Chronological Table, and consider who lived with this *Zethus*. With this King began the Dynastie of the *Lartnes*, which *Reineccius* conjectures to have had the same signification, wherein the old Kings of *Hetruria* were called *Lartes*, (the *Hetrurians* being issued out of *Lydia*, the *Lydians* out of *Egypt*) and to have signified as much as *Imperator*, or *Generall*. The wars in which these Kings were Generals, I take to have been against the *Ethiopi*ans: for sure I am, that they troubled not the Countrey of *Palastina*, that lay next unto them on the one hand; nor is it likely that they travelled over the desert sands, to the other hand. (The *Lartnes* were such) were not many. Five only had that title; and the last of these took it, perhaps, as hereditary from the first; in such sort as the *Roman* Emperours were proud, for a while, to be called *Antonini*, till the most unfutable conditions of *Heliogabalus*, made his successors forbeare the name.

Here it may be objected, that the Dynasties (as appears by this particular) took name from the Kings; that the Kings also did administer the government themselves, and that therefore I am deceived in ascribing so much unto the Viceroyes. But it is to be considered, that what is said of these *Lartnes*, depends only upon conjecture, and that the authority of the Regents, or Viceroyes, might be great enough, though some few Kings took the conduct of Armies into their own hands. For so we find in *John Leo*, that the Soldan of *Egypt* (after such time as the Soldan *Saladine*, murdering the Caliph, got the Sovereignty to himself) had under him a Viceroy, styled *Eddagnadare*, who had authority to place, or displace, any Magistrates, or Officers; and that this mans Familie was almost as great as the Soldans own. Yet was there also the *Amir Cabir*, or Lord Generall of the Soldans forces, who had the charge of defending the Land, and might, as he thought good, spend of the Soldans treasure. So might the office of the Viceroyes continue, though the Kings themselves, taking the charge, or title of Generals upon them, did somewhat abridge the greatness of that second place. As for the names of the Dynasties, it skills not when they were drawn; whether from their Countrey, as those of the *Thebans* and *Diapolitans*; or from some eminent men, or man, who ruled in that time; as many think, that the seventeenth Dynastie was called of the Shepherds, because *Joseph* governed in part thereof; or from the Kings themselves that reigned, as this was said to be of the *Lartnes* or Generals. The next, as *Manetho* (but *Annius* his *Manetho*) hath it, was without any *Lartnes* or Generals, yet was it not without Kings, forasmuch as *Paphres*, and *Sefac*, reigned therein, if many others did not. But let us now return to the business which we left.

*Ramefes* was King after *Zethus*, or *Sethosis*, threescore and six years. He is mistaken for that second *Sesoftris*, of whom I have spoken in the first book. I find nothing worth rehearsal of this *Ramefes*, or of *Amenophis* and *Annemenes*, that followed him in order, the former of which reigned fortie, the latter six and twenty years. Wherefore it may very well be, that the name which *Zethus* had from valour, was taken by these as hereditary.

*Thooris*, the last of the *Lartnes*, reigned only seven years; yet is he thought to have bin that *Proteus*, of whom *Herodotus* hath mention, saying, That he took *Helen* from *Paris*, and after the sack of *Troy*, restored her to *Menelaus*. I need say no more in refutation of this, than that the time of *Thooris* his reign lasted not so long as from the Rape of *Helen* to her restitution.

This

This *Proteus* or *Cetes* (as he is named by some) together with *Thon*, and others, mentioned by *Greek* Writers in this business, or in other such matters, may seem to be under-Officers: for such only are like to have had their residence about *Pharos*, and the sea-coast where *Menelaus* arrived.

Of *Proteus*, who detained *Helen*, it is said that he could foretell things to come, and that he could change himself into all shapes: whereby is signified his crafty head, for which he is grown into a Proverb. The Poets feigned him a Sea-God, and keeper of *Nepunes* Seal-fishes, for belike he was some under-Officer to the Admirall, having charge of the Fishing about the Isle of *Pharos*, as was said before.

*Remphes* the son of *Proteus* is reckoned the next King, by *Diodore*, as also by *Herodotus*, who calls him *Ramsinitus*, and tells a long tale fit to please children, of his covetousness, and how his treasure-house was robbed by a cunning thief, that at last married his Daughter. But of this a man may believe what he list. How long this King reigned I know not, nor think that either he or his father did reign at all.

## S. V.

Of the Egyptian Kings, whose names are found scattering in sundry Authors, their times being not recorded. The Kings of Egypt, according to *Cedrenus*, of *Vaphres*, and *Sefac*.

**M** Any other names of Egyptian Kings are found scattered here and there; as *Tamperphobis*, of whom *Suidas* delivers only the bare name and title; *Senemures*, or *Senepes*, mentioned in *Macrobius*, who perhaps was the same that by *Suidas* is called *Senyes*, or *Euvnes*, noted by occasion of a great Physician that lived under him; *Bacchyrus*, recorded by the same *Suidas* for his great justice; and *Thulis*, of whom *Suidas* tells great matters; as, that his Empire extended to the Ocean Sea; that he gave name to the Isle of *Thule*, which some take to be *Iceland*; and that he consulted with the Devil, or (which is all one) with *Seraphus*, desiring to know, who before him had been; or after him should be so mighty as himself. The answer or confession of the Devil was remarkable; which I find Englished in the translation of *Pleſius* his work of the true nature of Christian Religion. The *Greek* Verſes are somewhat otherwise, and much more imperfect in those Copies that I have of *Cedrenus* and *Suidas*, but the sense is all one; which is this:

First God, and next The Word, and then The Spirit,  
Which Three be One, and joyn in One all Three:  
Whose force is endless. Get thee hence frail wight;  
The man of Life unknown excelleth thee.

I should have thought that *Suidas* had borrowed all this of *Cedrenus*, had I not found somewhat more in *Suidas* than *Cedrenus* hath hereof; as the form of invocation which *Thulis* used, and that clause of his giving name to the Island: though in this last point I hold *Suidas* to be deceived; as also *Cedrenus* is, or (at least) seems to me, in giving to this King such profound antiquity of reign. Indeed the very name of that book, cited often by *Cedrenus*, which he calls *Little Genesis*, is alone enough to breed suspicion of some imposture: but the Frierly stuffe that he allegeth out of it, is such as would serve to discredit himself, were it not otherwise apparent that he was a man both devout, and of good judgement in matters that fell within his compasse. I will here set down the list of old Egyptian Kings delivered by him, and leave the censure to others.

The first King of Egypt that he sets down, is *Mizraim* the son of *Cham*. After him he finds many of a new race, deriving their pedigree thus: *Nimrod* the son of *Chus* was also called *Orion*, and further took upon him the name of the Planet *Saturn*, had to wife *Semiramis*, who was of his own Linage, and by her three sons; *Picus*, surnamed *Jupiter*, *Belus*, and *Ninus*. *Picus* chasing his father out of *Affryria* into *Italie*, reigned in his stead thirte years, and then gave up that Kingdome to *Funo* his sister and wife, and to *Belus* his son: after which *Belus*, who reigned only two years, *Ninus* had the Kingdome, and married his own Mother *Semiramis*. But *Picus* went into *Italie* to visit his old Father *Saturn*, *Saturn* forth-with resigned the Kingdome unto him. *Picus* *Jupiter* reigned in *Italie* threescore and two years, had threescore and ten Wives or Concubines, and about as many children: finally dyed, and lyes buried in the Isle of *Crete*.

E c c The

The Principall of *Jupiters* sons were *Faunus*, *Perseus*, and *Apollo*. *Faunus* was called by the name of the Planet *Mercurie*: hee reigned in *Italie*, after his Father, five and thirty years, and then (finding that all his brethren conspired against him) he went into *Egypt*, with abundance of Treasure, where, after the death of *Misraim*, hee got the Kingdome, and held it nine and thirty years. After *Mercurie*, *Vulcan* reigned in *Egypt*, four years and a half. Then *Sol*, the son of *Vulcan*, reigned twenty years and a half. There followed in order *Sosis*, *Osiris*, *Orus* and *Thules*, of whom we spake before: the length of their severall reigns is not let down. After *Thules*, was the great *Sesostris* King twenty years. His successor was *Pharaoh*, called *Narecho*, that held the Crown fifty years, with which there passed from him the surname of *Pharaoh*, to a very long posteritie.

These reports of *Cedrenus* I hold it enough to set down as I find them: let their credit rest upon the Author.

Others yet we find, that are said to have reigned in *Egypt*, without any certain note, when, or how long: about whom I will not labour, as fearing more to be reprehended of vain curiositie, in the search made after these already rehearsed, than of negligence, in omitting such as might have been added.

*Vaphres*, the father in law to *Salomon*, and *Sesac*, the afflictor of *Rehoboam*, lead us again into farther way, but not far. The name of *Vaphres* is not found in the Scriptures; but we are beholding to *Clemens Alexandrinus* and *Eusebius* for it. These give us not the length of his reign; but we know that he lived in the times of *David* and of *Salomon*. He came into *Palestina* with an Armie, took *Gexar* from the *Canaanites*, and gave it to his daughter, *Salomons* wife: though for her sake perhaps it was, that in time following either he, or (as I rather take it) *Sesac* his son did favour the enemies of *Salomon*, who kept so many Wives and Concubines, besides this *Egyptian* Princess. In the life of *Rehoboam* all hath been written that I find of *Sesac*, excepting the length of his reign, which must have been fix and twenty years, if he were that *Smendis* with whom *Eusebius* begins the one and twentieth *Dynastie*.

Now so far as it would serve to no great purpose, that we knew the length of *Sesac* his reign, and of theirs that followed him, unless therewithall we knew the beginning of *Sesac*, upon which the rest have dependance; this course I take. From the fourth year of *Jehojakim* king of *Juda*, in which *Pharao Neco* was slain, I reckon upwards the years of the same *Neco*, and of his Predecessors, unto the beginning of *Sesac*: by which account, the first year of *Sesac* is found concurrent with the twentieth of *Salomons* reign, and the twenty fix of *Sesac* with the fifth of *Rehoboam*, wherein *Sesac* spoiled the Temple, and dyed, enjoying the fruits of his Sacrilege no longer than *Foras* the *Israelite*, and *Cassius* the *Roman* did; who after him spoiled the Temple of *Jerusalem*.

To fill up the time between *Sesac* and *Neco*, I have rather taken those kings that I find in the *Greek* Historians, than them which are in *Eusebius* his Catalogue. For of those that are delivered by *Eusebius*, we find no Name nor Age recorded elsewhere, save only of *Bochoris*, who is remembered by *Diodore*, *Plutarch*, and others, much being spoken of him, that makes him appear to have been a King. Hereunto I may add, that the succession is often interrupted in *Eusebius* by *Ethiopians*, which got the kingdome often, and held it long: whereas contrariwise it appears by the Prophet *Esay*, that the Counsellors of *Pharaoh* did vaunt of the long and flourishing continuance of that house, inasmuch that they said of *Pharaoh*, *I am the son of the wife, I am the son of the antient King*. But that which overthrows the reckoning of *Eusebius*, is the good agreement of it with his mistaken times of the Kings of *Juda*. For though it please him well to see how the reigns of *Sosis* and *Neco* meet by his computation, yet this indeed mars all, the reign of *Sosis* being misplaced. This error grows from his omitting to compare the reigns of the Kings of *Juda* with theirs of *Israel*: by which occasion *Foram* King of *Israel*, is made to reign three years after *Abazia* of *Juda*; *Samarita* is taken by *Salmanassar* before *Hzechia* was King: and in a word, all, or most of the Kings have their beginnings placed in some other year of their collaterals than the Scriptures have determined.

of *Chemmis*, *Cheops*, *Cephrenes*, and other Kings recited by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus Siculus*, which reigned between the times of *Rehoboam* and *Ezechia*.

Following therefore the *Greek* Historians, I place *Chemmis*, or (according to *Diodore*) *Chembis*, first in the rank of those that were Kings after *Sesac*. Hee reigned fiftie yeares, and built the greatest of the three Pyramids, which was accounted one of this worlds Wonders. The Pyramid hath his name from the shape, in that it resembleth a flame of fire, growing from the bottom upwards narrower and narrower to the top. This of *Chemmis* being foure-square, had a Base of seven acres every way, and was about six acres high. It was of a very hard and durable stone, which had lasted, when *Diodore* saw it, about a thousand yeares, without complaining of any injurie that it had suffered by weather in so long space. From the reign of *Chemmis* unto the age of *Augustus Caesar*, wherein *Diodore* lived, are indeed a thousand yeares; which doth give the better likelihood unto this time wherein *Chemmis* is placed. As for this and other Pyramids, late Writers doe testifie, that they have seen them yet standing.

After *Chemmis*, *Diodore* placeth *Cephrenes* his brother; but doubtfully, and enclining rather to the opinion, that his son *Chabrens* succeeded, *Herodotus* hath *Cheops* (who might be *Chabren*) and *Cephrenes* after him. These are said to have been brethren; but the length of their reigns may argue the latter to have been sonne to the former: for *Cheops* reigned fifty yeares, *Cephrenes* fifty fixe. These were, as *Chemmis* had been, builders of Pyramids, whereby they purchased great hatred of their people, who already had over-laboured themselves in erecting the first. These Pyramids were ordained to be Tombs for those that raised them; but the malice of the *Egyptians* is said to have cast out their bodies, & to have called their Monuments by the name of an Heardsman that kept his Beasts thereabouts. It may be, that the robbing them of their honour, and entitling a poore fellow to their works, was held to be the casting out of their bodies; otherwise it is hard to conceive how it might be, that they, who had not power to avoyd the like slavery laid upon them by the younger brother or sonne, should have power or leisure to take such revenge upon his Predecessor. To the like malice may be ascribed the tale devised against *Cheops* his Daughter; that her Father wanting money, did prostitute her, & that the getting of every man that accompanied her, one stone, did build with them a fourth Pyramid, that stood in the midst of the other three. Belike she was an insolent Lady, and made them follow their drudgery for her sake, longer a while than they thought to have done, in raising a Monument with the superfluity of her Fathers provisions.

*Mycerinus* the son of *Cephrenes* reigned after his Father six yeares. He would have built as his fore-goes did, but prevented by death, finished not what he had begun. The people thought him a good King, for that he did set open the Temples, which *Cheops* and *Cephrenes* had kept shut. But an Oracle threatned him with a short life of six yeares only, because of this his devotion; For (said the Oracle) *Egypt should have been afflicted an hundred and fiftie yeares, which thy Predecessors knew, and performed for their parts; but thou hast released it, therefore shalt thou live but six yeares*. It is very strange, that the gods should be offended with a King for his piety; or that they should decree to make a Country impious, when the people were desirous to serve them; or that they having so decreed, it should lye in the power of a King to alter destinie, and make the ordinance of the gods to fail in taking full effect. But these were *Egyptian* gods. The true God was doubtlesse more offended with the institution of such Idolatry, than with the interruption. And who knows whether *Chemmis* did not learn somewhat at *Jerusalem* in the last year of his Father *Sesac*, that made him perceive, and deliver to those that followed him, the vanity of his *Egyptian* superstition? Most sure it is, that his reign, and the reigns of *Cheops* and *Cephrenes* were more long and more happy than that of *Mycerinus*, who, to delude the Oracle, revelled away both dayes and nights, as if by keeping candles lighted, he had changed his nights into dayes, and so doubled the time appointed: a service more pleasing to the Devil, than the restitution of Idolatry durst then seem, when it could speed no better. I find in *Reineccius* fiftie years

years assigned to this King; which I verily beleve to have bin some error of the print, though I find it not corrected among other such oversights: For I know no Author that gives him for many years, and *Reineccius* himself takes notice of the Oracle, that threatened *Mycerinus* with a short life, as is before shewed.

*Bocchorus* is placed next unto *Mycerinus*, by *Diodore*, who speaks no more of him than this, that he was a strong man of body, & excelling his predecessors in wit. He is spoken of by divers Authors, as one that loved justice; and may be taken for that *Banchrys* whom *Suidas* commends in that kind: *Eusebius* reckons 44. years of his reign.

After *Bocchorus*, one *Sabacus* an *Ethiopian* follows in the Catalogue of *Diodore*; but certain ages after him. *Herodotus* quit omitting *Bocchorus*, hath *Afychis*; who made a sharp law (as it was then held) against bad debtors, that their dead bodies should be in the creditors disposition, till the debt were paid. This *Afychis* made a Pyramid of brick, more costly and faire, in his own judgement, than any of those that the former Kings had raised. Besides this *Afychis*, *Herodotus* placeth one *Anysis*, a blind man, before the *Ethiopian*. The reigns of these two are perhaps those many ages which the *Egyptians*, to magnifie their antiquities, accounted between *Bocchorus* and him that followed them. But all this could make but six yeares; and so long doth *Funius*, so long doth *Reineccius* hold, that these two Kings between them both did govern. If any man would lengthen this time, holding it improbable that the reigns of two Kings should have bin so soon spent; he may doe it by taking some yeares from *Seihon* or *Psammiticus*; and adding them to either of these. To adde unto these without subtracting from some other, would breed a manifest inconvenience: forasmuch as part of *Sesac* his reign, must have been in the fifth of *Rehoboam*, as also the last of *Pharao Neco* was the fourth of *Jebojakim*, and the first of *Nebuchadnezzar*. For mine own part, I like it better to allow six yeares only to these two Kings, than to lose the witness of *Herodotus*, who, concurring herein with the Scriptures, doth speak of *Sennacherib*'s war, at which time *Seihon* was King of *Egypt*. I will not therefore adde yeares unto these obscure names; for by adding unto them men three yeares, we shall thrust the beginning of *Seihon* out of place, and make it later than the death of *Sennacherib*. In regard of this agreement of *Herodotus* with the Scriptures, I am the more willing to hold with him in his *Egyptian* Kings.<sup>30</sup> Otherwise it were a matter of no great envie to leave both *Afychis* and *Anysis* out of the roll; which were easily done, by placing *Sesac* lower, and extending his life yet six yeares further, or more (if the like abridgement shall be required of *Psammiticus* his reign) into the yeares of *Rehoboam*.

Of *Sabacus* the *Ethiopian*, who took the Kingdome from *Anysis*, it is agreed by the most, that he reigned fiftie yeares. He was a mercifull Prince, not punishing all capitall offences with death, but imposing bondage and bodily labour upon malefactors; by whose toile he both got much wealth into his own hands, letting out their service to hire, and performed many works of more use than pomp, to the singular benefit of the Countrey. *Zonaras* calls this King *Sua*; the Scriptures call him *So*, *Hofea*, the last King<sup>40</sup> of *Israel*, made a league with him against *Salmanassar*, little to his good: for the *Egyptian* was more rich than warlike, and therefore his friendship could not preserve the *Israelite* from destruction.

It seemes, that the encroaching power of the *Affryan* grew terrible to *Egypt* about these times; the victories of *Tiglath Phulassar* and *Salmanassar* having eaten so farre into *Syria*, in the reign of this one King *So* or *Sabacus*. Yea, perhaps it was in his daies (for his reign began in the fourth of *Menahem*) that *Phul* himself did make the first entrance into *Palestina*. This caused *So* to animate the half-subdued people against their Conquerors; but the help which he and his Successor gave them was so faint, that *Sennacherib*'s Embassador compared the *Egyptian* succour to a broken staff of Reed. Such<sup>50</sup> indeed had *Hofea* found it, and such *Ezechia* might have found it, had he not been supported by the strong staff of him that ruleth all Nations with a rod of yron. It appeareth by the words of *Rabshake*, that the opinion was great in *Juda*, of the *Egyptian* forces, for Chariots and Horse-men; but this power, whatsoever it was, grew needfull, within a little while, for the defence of *Egypt* it selfe, which *So* left unto *Seihon* his Successor, having now fulfilled the fiftie yeares of his reign. *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* have both one tale, from the relation of *Egyptian* Priests, concerning the departure of this King; saying, that he left the Countrey, and willingly retired into *Aethiopia*, because

because it was often signified unto him in his dreams, by the god which was worshipped at *Thebes*, that his reign should be neither long nor prosperous, unless he flew all the Priests in *Egypt*; which rather than to do, he resigned his Kingdome. Surely, these *Egyptian* gods were of a strange quality, that so ill rewarded their servants, and invited Kings to doe them wrong. Well might the *Egyptians* (as they likewise did) worship Dogs as gods, when their chief gods had the property of Dogs, which love their Masters the better for beating them. Yet to what end the Priests should have feigned this tale, I cannot tell; and therefore I think that it might be some device of the fearfull old man, who seeing his Realm in danger of an invasion, sought an honest excuse for his departure out of it, and with-drawing himself into *Aethiopia*, where he had bin bred in his youth. What if I should say, that the *Aethiopia* into which he went, was none other than *Arabia*, whereof *Tirbaca* the King (perhaps at the instigation of this man) raised an Armie against *Senacherib*, when he meant to invade *Egypt* within two or three yeares after; but I will not trouble my self with such enquire. This I hold, that *So* or *Sabacus* was not indeed an *Aethiopian*, for in his time lived the Prophet *Esay*, who mentioneth the antiquity of *Pharaohs* house; but only so furnished for his education, and because issuing from thence, he got the kingdome from *Anysis*, who was his opposite. The quiet and mild form of his government, his holding the kingdome so long without an Army, and many other circumstances argue no lesse. But whether finally he betook<sup>20</sup> private life, or whether he fore-went his life and kingdome at once, being now very old, it is time that we leave him, and speak of *Seihon* his next Successor, who is omitted by *Diodore*, but remembered by *Herodotus*, by a sure token of his having been King.

## §. VII.

Of *Seihon* who reigned with *Ezechia*, and sided with him against *Senacherib*.

THE first year of *Seihon*'s reign falls into the twelfth of *Ezechia*, which was the fift of *Sennacherib*. It was a troublefome age, and full of danger; the two great Kingdoms of *Affrya* and *Egypt*, being then engaged in a War, the issue whereof was to determine whether of them should rule or serve. The *Affryan* had the better men of War; the *Egyptian* better provision of necessaries: the *Affryan* more Subjects; the *Egyptian* more Friends: and among the new conquered half Subjects of *Affrya*, many that were *Egyptian* in heart, though *Affryan* in outward shew.

Of this last sort were *Ezechia* and his people; who knowing how much it concerned *Pharao*, to protect them against his own great Enemy, preferred the friendship of so near and mighty a Neighbour, before the service of a terrible, yet far removed King. But herein was great difference between *Ezechia* and his Subjects: For the good King fixing his especiall confidence in God, held that course of policy, which he thought most likely to turn to the benefit of his Countrey: the multitude of *Judea* looking into the fair hopes which this *Egyptian* league promised, were puffed up with vain conceits, thinking that all was safe, and that now they should not need to fear any more of those injuries which they had suffered by the *Affryans*, and so became forgetfull of God, taking counsell, but not of him. The Prophet *Esay* complained much of this presumption; *Esay* 30. 1. giving the people of *Juda* to understand, That the *Egyptians* were men, and not God, and *Esay* 31. 1. 3. their Horses flesh, and not spirit; that God himself should defend *Israel* upon repentance, and that *Affrya* should fall by the sword, but not of man. As for the *Egyptians* (said the Prophet) they are vanity, and they shall help in vain, their strength is to sit still.

According to the Prophets words it came to passe. For on the treaty of Confederacy<sup>50</sup> that was held at *Zaan*, all manner of contentment and assurance was given to the *Jews* by *Seihon*, or his Agents, who filled them with such reports, of Horses and Chariots, that they did not look (as *Esay* saith) unto the holy One of *Israel*, nor seek unto the Lord. But he *Esay* 3. 1. 2. yet is wise.

After a while came *Senacherib* with his Army, & awakened them out of these dreams; for *Seihon* their good Neighbour, as near as he was, did seem far off, being unready, when his help was most needfull. It may seem that he purposed rather to make *Palestina*, than *Egypt*, the stage whereon this great War should be acted, and was not without hope, that the *Affryans* and *Jews*, weakening one another, should yeeld unto him a

Esay 30. 6.

fair advantage over both. Yet he fought with money; for he sent Horses and Camels laden with treasure, to hire the *Arabians*, whom *Esay* calleth a people that cannot profit. These *Arabians* did not profit indeed; for (besides that it seems by the same place of *Esay*, that the rich treasures miscarried, and fell into the enemies hands before any help appeared from *Tirhaca*,) all the strong Cities of *Juda* were taken by *Senacherib*, except *Libna*, *Lachis*, and *Jerusalem* it self, which were in sore distresse, till the sword of God and not of Man, defeated the *Affiryan*, who did go, for fear, to his Tower; that is, he fled to *Nineve*, where he was slain.

Esay 31. 9.

Concerning this expedition of *Senacherib*, *Herodotus* takes this notice of it: That it was purposed against *Egypt*, where the men of *Seton*, being offended with *Seton* their King, who had taken away their allowance, refused to bear arms in defence of him and to their Countrey; that *Seton* being *Vulcan's* Priest bemoaned himself to his god, who by dream promised to send him helpers; that hereupon *Seton*, with such as would follow him, (which were craft-men, shop-keepers and the like) marched towards *Phisum*; and that a great multitude of field-mice entering the Camp of *Senacherib* by night, did to gnaw the bows, quivers, and straps of his mens armour, that they were faine the next day to flie away in all haste, finding themselves disarmed. In memory hereof (saith *Herodotus*) the statue of this King is set up in the Temple of *Vulcan*, holding a Mouse in his hand, with this inscription, *Let him that holds me serve God*. Such was the relation of the *Egyptian* Priests, wherein how far they swarmed from the truth, being desirous to magnifie their own King, it may easily be perceived. It seems that this Image of *Seton* was fallen down, and the tale forgotten in *Diodorus* his time, or else perhaps, the Priests did forbear to tell it him (which caused him to omit it) for that the nation of the *Jews* was then well known to the world, whereof every child could have told how much falsehood had been mingled with the truth.

We find this history agreeable to the Scriptures, thus far forth; That *Senacherib* King of the *Affirians* and *Arabians*, (so *Herodotus* calleth him: the *Syrians*, or peradventure some borderers upon *Syria*, being meant by the name of *Arabians* lived in this age, made War upon *Egypt*, and was miraculously driven home. As for that exploit of the Mice, and the great pleasure that *Vulcan* did unto his Priest, happy it was (if *Seton* were a Priest) that he took his god now in so good a mood: For within three or four years before this, all the Priests in *Egypt* should have been slain, if a mercifull King had not spared their lives, as it were half against the gods will. Therefore this last good turn was not enough to serve as an example, that might stir up the *Egyptians* to pietie, seeing that their devotion, which had lasted so long before, did bring all the Priests into danger of such a bad reward. Rather I think, that this Image did represent *Senacherib* himself, and that the Mouse in his hand, signified Hieroglyphically (as was the *Egyptian* manner of expressing things) the shameful issue of his terrible expedition, or the destruction of his Armie, by means which came, no man knew from whence. For the vengeance of God, shewed upon this ungodly King, was indeed a very good motive to pietie. But the Embleme, together with the Temple of *Vulcan* (being perhaps the chief Temple in that Town where this Image was erected) might give occasion to such a fable; the Devill helping to change the truth into a lie, that God might be robbed of his honour. Yet that we may not belie the Devill, I hold it very likely, that *Seton* finding himself in danger, did call upon his gods, that is, upon *Vulcan*, *Serapis*, or any to whom he had most devotion. But so had other of his predecessors done in the like need: yet which of them had obtained succour by the like miracle? Surely the *Jews* (even such of them as most were given to Idolatry) would have bin ashamed of the confidence which they upposd in the Chariots of *Egypt*, because they were many, & in the Horses, because they were very strong; had it bin told them, that *Seton*, in stead of sending those Hor-men and Chariots, was beseeching *Vulcan* to send him and them good luck; or else (for these also were *Egyptian* gods) addressing his prayers to some Onyon or Cat. Howsoever it was, doubtlesse the Prophecie of *Esay* took effect, which said, *They shall be all ashamed of the people that cannot profit them, nor help, nor do them good, but shall be a shame and also a reproach*. Such is commonly the issue of humane wisdom, when resting secure upon provision that it self hath made, it will no longer seem to stand in need of God.

Some there are who take *Seton* to have bin set down by *Eusebius* under the name of *Tarachus*

*Tarachus* the *Ethiopian*; and therefore the twenty years which are given to *Tarachus*, they allow to the reign of *Seton*. These have well observed that *Tarachus* the *Ethiopian* is mentioned in the Scriptures not as a King of *Egypt*, but as a friend to that Countrey, or at least an enemy to *Sennacherib*, in the War last spoken of; the *Ethiopians* (as they are englished) over which he reigned, being indeed *Chusites* or *Arabians*. Hereupon they suppose aright, that *Eusebius* hath mistaken one King for another. But whereas they think that this *Tarachus* or *Tirhaca* is placed in the room of *Seton*, and therefore give to *Seton* the twenty years of *Tarachus*, I hold them to have erred on the other hand. For this *Ethiopian* (as he is called) began his reign over *Egypt*, by *Eusebius* his account, after the death of *Sennacherib* and of *Ezechia*, in the first year of *Manasses* King of *Juda*. Therefore he or his years have no reference to *Seton*.

*Herodotus* forgets to tell how long *Seton* reigned; *Functius* peremptorily citing no author, nor alleging reason for it, sets him down thirty three years; many omit him quite; and they that name him are not carefull to examine his continuance. In this case, I follow that rule which I propounded unto my self at the first, for measuring the reigns of these *Egyptian* Kings. The years which passed from the fifth of *Rehoboam*, unto the fourth of *Jebojakim*, I do divide among the *Egyptians*, that giving to every one the proportion allowed unto him by the Author in whom he is found, the rest is to be conferred upon him whose length of reign is uncertain; that is, upon this *Seton*. By this account I find the thirty three years that are set down by *Functius*, to agree very nearly, if not precisely, with the time of *Seton's* reign; therefore I conform my own reckoning to his, though I could be content to have it one year lesse. The reason of this computation I shall render more at large, when I arrive at the time of *Psammetichus*, whereupon it hath much dependance, and whereinto the course of this History will shortly bring me, the *Egyptian* affairs growing now to be interlaced with the matters of *Juda*, to which it is meet that I return.



30

## CHAP. XXVII.

Of Manasses and his Contemporaries.

§. I.

The wickednesse of Manasses. His imprisonment, repentance, and death.



40

*Anasse* the Son of *Ezechias*, forgetting the piety of his Father, and the prosperity which followed him, set up, repaired, adorned and furnished all the Altars, Temples and high Places, in which the Devill was by the Heathen worshipped. Besides, he himself esteemed the Sun, the Moon, and the Stars, with all the Hosts of heaven, as gods, and worshipped them: and of all his acts the most abominable was, that he burnt his sons for a Sacrifice to the Devill *Moloch* or *Melchor*, in the Valley of *Hinnon*, or *Benhinnon*: wherein was kindled the fire of Sacrifice to the Devils.

He also gave himself to all kind of Witchcraft and Sorcery, accompanied and maintained those that had familiar Spirits, and all sorts of Enchanters: besides, he shed so much innocent blood, as *Jerusalem* was replenished therewith, from corner to corner. For all his vices and abominations, when he was reproved by that aged and reverent Prophet *Esay* (who was also of the Kings race, and as the *Jews* affirm, the Father-in-law of the King) he caused the Prophet near unto the Fountain of *Silo*, to be sawn in sunders with a wooden Saw, in the eightieth year of his life: a cruelty more barbarous and monstrous than hath been heard of. The Scriptures indeed are silent hereof, yet the same is confirmed by *Epiphanius*, *Isidore*, *Eusebius*, and others, too many to rehearse, and too good to be suspected. Therefore the Lord brought upon them the Captains of the Hosts of the Kings of *Asshur*, which took *Manasse*, and put him in fetters, and bound him in chains, and carried him to *Babel*: Where, after he had lived twenty years as a captive, and dispoiled of all honour and hope; yet to his hearty repentance and continuall prayer, the

God

Esay 31. 1.

2 Tell. Martini.  
Colonus c. 91.  
Glosses p. 275.  
Tortall, de Pto.

Chr. 52. 12.

God of infinite mercy had respect, and moved the *Affyrians* heart to deliver him.

It is also likely that *Merodach*, because he loved his father *Ezechias*, was the easilier perswaded to restore *Manasse* to his liberty and estate. After which, and when he was again established, remembering the miseries which followed his wickednesse, and Gods great mercies toward him, he changed form, detested his former foolish and devilish idolatry, and cast down the Idols of his own erecting, prepared the Altar of God, and sacrificed thereon. He repaired a great part of *Jerusalem*: and dyed after the long reign of fiftie five years. *Glycus* and *Suidas* report, that *Manasse* was held in a cage of yron by the *Affyrians*: and therein fed with bread of bran and water, which men may beleeve as it shall please their fancies.

10

## s. II.

*Of troubles in Egypt following the death of Sethon. The reign of Psammiticus.*

**T**Hat the wickednesse of King *Manasses* was the cause of the evill which fell upon his Kingdom and Person, any Christian must needs beleeve: for it is affirmed in the Scriptures. Yet was the state of things in those parts of the World such, at that time, as would have invited any Prince (and did perhaps invite *Merodach*, who fulfilled Gods pleasure, upon respect born to his own ends, desirous to enlarge his Empire) to make attempt upon *Juda*. For the kingdom of *Egypt*, which was become the pillar whereon the state of *Juda* leaned, about these times was miserably distracted with civill dissention, and after two years ill amended by a division of the government between twelve Princes. After some good agreement between these, eleven of them fell out with the twelfth of their colleagues, and were all finally subdued by him, who made himself absolute King of all. This *Inter-regnum*, or meer *Anarchie* that was in *Egypt*, with the division of the Kingdom following it, is placed by *Diodore*, who omitteth *Sethon*, between the reign of *Sabacus* and *Psammiticus*: but *Herodotus* doth set the *Aristocratie*, or twelve Governours immediately before *Psammiticus*, who was one of them, and after *Sethon*.

The occasion of this dissention seems to have bin the uncertainty of title to that Kingdom (for that the crown of *Egypt* passed by succession of blood, I have often shewed) which ended for a while, by the partition of all among twelve, though things were not seled until one had obtained the Sovereignty.

These twelve Rulers governed fifteen years in good seeming agreement, which to preserve, they made strait covenant & alliances one with another, being jealous of their estate, because an Oracle had foretold, that one of them should depose all the rest, noting him by this token, that he should make a drink-offering in *Vulcans* Temple, out of a Copper goblet. Whilest this unity lasted, they joyned together in raising a Monument of their Dominion, which was a Labyrinth, built near unto the Lake of *Meris*; a work so admirable, that (as *Herodotus*, who beholding it, affirms) no words could give it commendation answerable to the stateliness of the work it self. I will not here set down that unperfect description which *Herodotus* makes of it, but think enough to say that he prefers it far before the *Pyramides*, one of which (as he saith) excelled the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*, or any of the fairest works in *Greece*. *Diodorus* reports this Labyrinth to have bin the work of *Marus* or *Menides*, a King which lived five generations before *Protes*; that is, before the War of *Troy*; and from this Labyrinth (saith he) *Deдалос* took the pattern of that which he made for *Minos* in *Crete*. Who this *Marus*, or *Menides* was, I cannot tell. But *Thucydides* takes him to have bin *Annenemes*, which reigned immediately before *Thucydides*. But this agrees not with *Diodore*: for *Deдалос* & *Minos* were both dead long before *Annenemes* was King. Belike *Reineccius*, desiring to accommodate the fabulous relations of *Manethon*, *Cheremon*, & others, that are found in *Josephus*, touching *Amenophis* & his children, to the story of *Amasis* & *Achisanes* the *Ethiopian* mentioned by *Diodore*; held it consequent, after he had conjectured *Manethons* *Amenophis*, to be *Diodorus* his *Amasis*; that *Sethon* should be *Achisanes*, and that *Annenemes* should be *Marus*. If in this case I might intrude a conjecture, the times which we now handle are those about which *Reineccius* hath erred in making search; *Amasis* was *Anysis*, *Achisanes* was *Sabacus*; & *Marus* was one of these twelve Princes to whom *Herodotus* gives the

Joseph. Ant.

the honour of building this famous Labyrinth. For *Achisanes* the *Ethiopian* deposed *Amasis*; *Sabacus* the *Ethiopian* deposed *Anysis*; *Achisanes* governed well, and was mild in punishing offenders; so likewise was *Sabacus*; *Marus* the next King after *Achisanes* built this Labyrinth; and the next (saying *Sethon*, whom *Diodore* omits, as having not heard of him) that ruled after *Sabacus*, performed the same work, according to *Herodotus*, who was more likely to hear the truth, as living nearer to the Age wherein it was performed. The variety of names, and difference of times wherein *Diodore* beleeved the Priests, might be a part of the *Egyptian* vanity, which was familiar with them in multiplying their Kings, and boasting of their antiquities. Here I might adde, that the twelve great Halls, Parlours, and other circumstances remembered by *Herodotus*, in speaking of this building, doe help to prove that it was the work of these twelve Princes. But I hasten to their end.

At a solemn feast in *Vulcans* Temple, when they were to make their drink-offerings, the Priest, forgetting himself, brought forth no more than eleven Cuppes. Hereupon, *Psammiticus*, who standing last, had not a Cup, took off his brazen Helmet, and therewith supplied the want. This caused all the rest to remember the Oracle, and to suspect him as a Traytor; yet, when they found that it was not done by him upon set purpose or ill intent, they forbore to kill him, but being jealous of their estate, they banished him into the marsh Countries by the Sea side. This Oracle, and the event is held by *Diodore* as to a fable, which I beleeve to have bin none other: In the rest *Herodotus* and *Diodore* agree, saying, that *Psammiticus* hired Souldiers out of *Caria* and *Ionia*, by whose aid he vanquished his Companions, and made himself sole King.

The years of his reign, according to *Herodotus*, were fiftie four; according to *Eusebius*, forty four; *Mercator*, to reconcile these two, gives fortie four years to his single reign, and ten to his ruling jointly with the Princes before spoken of. Indeed, he that was admitted, being a man grown (for he cannot in reason be supposed to have been then a young fellow) into the number of the twelve Governours, must be thought to have lived unto extreme age, if he ruled partly with others, partly alone, threecore and nine years. I therefore yeeld rather to *Eusebius*: but will not adventure to cut five years from the *Aristocratie*: though peradventure *Psammiticus* was not at first one of the twelve, but succeeded (either by election, or as next of blood) into the place of some Prince that dyed, and was ten years companion in that government.

Another scruple there is, though not great, which troubles this reckoning. The years of the *Egyptians*, as we find them set down, are more by one, than serve to fill up the time between the first of *Rehoboam* & the fourth of *Jehojakim*. This may not be. Wherefore either we must abate one year from *Sethons* reign, that was of uncertain length; or else (which I had rather doe, because *Phutius* may have followed better authority than I know, or than himself allegeth, in giving to *Sethon* a time so nearly agreeing with the truth) we must confound the last year of one reign with the first of another. Such a supposition were not insolent. For no man can suppose, that all the Kings, or any great part of them, which are set down in Chronological tables, reigned precisely many years as are ascribed unto them, without any fractions: it is enough to think that the surplusage of one mans time supplied the defect of anothers. Wherefore I confound the last year of those fifteen, wherein the twelve Princes ruled, with the first of *Psammiticus*; who surely did not fall out with his Companions, fight with them, and make himself Lord alone all in one day.

Concerning this King, it is recorded, that he was the first in *Egypt* who entertained any strait amity with the *Greekes*; that he retained in pay his Mercenaries of *Caria*, *Ionia*, and *Arabia*, to whom he gave large rewards and possessions; and that he greatly offended his *Egyptian* Souldiers, by bestowing them in the left wing of his Armie, whilest his Mercenaries held the right wing (which was the more honourable place) in an expedition that he made into *Syria*. Upon this digress it is said, that his Souldiers, to the number of two hundred thousand, forsook their naturall Countrey of *Egypt*, and went into *Asiopia*, to dwell there: neither could they be revoked by kind Messages, nor by the King himself, who over-took them on the way; but when he told them of their Countrey, their Wives and Children, they answered, that their weapons should get them a Countrey, and that nature had enabled them to get other Wives and Children.

It





reason and policie, if it had not been his dutie by covenant. Of this I will speak more in convenient place.

## S. IV.

Of the first and second Messenian Wars, which were in the reigns of Ezechia and Manasses, Kings of Juda.

Now concerning such actions as were performed abroad in the world, about these times of Manasses, the most remarkable were the Messenian Wars; which happened in this age, and being the greatest action performed in Greece, between the Trojan and Persian Wars, deserve not to be passed over with silence.

The first Messenian War began and ended in the daies of Ezechia; the second in the reign of Manasses: but to avoyd the trouble of interrupting our Historie, I have thought it best to rehearse them both in this place. Other introduction is needlesse, than to say, that the posteritie of Hercules, driving the issue of Pelops and the Acheans out of their seats, divided their lands between themselves, and erected the kingdomes of Lacedaemon, Argos, Messene, and Corinth; all which agreeing well together a while, did afterwards forget the bond of kindred, and fought one anothers ruine with bloody wars; wherof these Messenian were the greatest.

The pretended grounds of the Messenian war are scarce worth remembrance, they were so slight. Ambition was the true cause of it: wherewith the Lacedaemonians were so transported, that any thing served them as a colour to accomplish their greedy desires. Yet other matter was alleged; namely, that one Polychares a Messenian had slain many Lacedaemonians, for which the Magistrates of Sparta desiring to have him yielded into their hands, could not obtain it. The Messenians on the other side, executed Polychares, for that he was grown frantick, through injuries received from Enaphnes a Lacedaemonian. This Enaphnes had bargained to give pasture to the Cattell of Polychares, and was therefore to receive part of the increase: but not contented with the gain appointed, he sold the Cattell, and slaves that kept them, to Merchants; which done, he came with 30 fair tale to his friend, saying, that they were stolen. Whilst the lye was yet scarce out of his mouth, one of the slaves that had elcaped from the Merchants came in with a true report of all. The Lacedaemonian being thus deprehended, confessed all, and promised large amends; which to receive he carried the son of Polychares home with him; but having him at home, he villanously slew him. Wherefore the Lacedaemonians having refused, after long suite made by the wretched Father, to do him right against this Theefe and Murderer, ought not to pick matter of quarrell out of those things which he did in that madnesse, whereinto they themselves had cast him. So said the Messenians, and further offered to put the matter to compromise, or to stand unto the judgement of the Amphibryones, who were as the generall Councell of Greece, or to any other fair course. But the Lacedaemonians, who had a great desire to occupie the fair Countrie of Messene, that lay close by them, were not content with such allegations. They thought it enough to have some shew for their doings; which the better to colour, they reckoned up many old injuries, and so without sending any defiance, secretly took an oath to hold war with Messene till they had mastered it: which done, they seized upon Amphipia, a frontier Town of that Province, wherein they put all to the Sword without mercy, very few escaped.

Hereupon the Messenians took Arms, and were met by the Enemy. A furious battell was fought between them, which ended not untill dark night, with uncertain victory. The Messenians did strongly encamp themselves; The Lacedaemonians, unable to force their Camp, returned home. This War began in the second year of the ninth Olympiad, and ended in the first of the fourteenth Olympiad, having lasted twenty years. The two enemy Nations tried the matter, for a while, with their proper forces; the Lacedaemonians waisting the inland parts of Messene, and the Messenians, the Sea-coast of Laconia. But it was not long ere friends, on both sides, were called in to help. The Arcadians, Argives, and Sicyonians, took part with Messene; the Spartans had, besides many Subjects of their own, aid from Corinth, and hired Souldiers out of Greece. So a second, third, and fourth battell were fought, with as great obstinacie as the first; laying that in the fourth battell the

Laceda-

Lacedaemonians were enforced to turn their backs; in the other fights, the victory was still uncertain, though in one of them the Messenians lost Enaphnes their King, in whose stead they chose Aristodemus.

Many years were spent ere all this blood was shed; for pestilent diseases, and want of money to entertain Souldiers, caused the war to linger. And for the same reasons, did the Messenians forsake all their inland towns, excepting Ithome, which was a Mountain with a Town upon it, able to endure more than the enemies were likely to do. But, as some Authors tell us, the Lacedaemonians were so obstinate in this War, because of their vow, that having absented themselves ten years from Sparta, their wives sent them word, that their City would grow unpeopled, by reason that no children had been born them in all that time: Whereupon they sent back all their ablest young men, promiscuously to accompany the young women, who got so many of them with child, as they became a great part of their Nation, and were called Parthenians. Diodorus refers the begetting of these Parthenians to a former time. But in proceesse of this Messenian War, when the Devil in an Oracle had advised the Messenians to sacrifice a Virgin of the stock of \* Egyptus, that so they might be victorious against the Lacedaemonians; the lot falling upon the Daughter of one Lyeiscus, Epibolus the Priest, willing to save her, said, shee was the only a fostered child, and not born of the wife of Lyeiscus: which answer giving delay daughter to the execution of the Maid, Lyeiscus secretly fled away with her into Sparta. Then Aristodemus, which afterwards was King, voluntarily offered his own Daughter: but a young Nobleman, being in love with the Maid, when otherwise he could not prevail, said openly that she was no Virgin, but that he had deflowered her, and got her with child: whereupon the Father in a rage ripped up his innocent Daughters belly, to disprove the Lovers slander: at the grave of which Daughter of his, afterwards falling, by other superstitions, into despair of prevailing against the Lacedaemonians, he slew himself, to the great hurt of his Countrey, which he loved most dearly. For after his death the Messenians lost their courage, and finding themselves distressed by many wants, especially of victuals, they craved peace, which they obtained with most rigorous conditions. Half the yearly fruits of their Land they were bound to send unto Sparta; and they, with their Wives, to make solemn lamentations at the death of every Spartan King; they were also sworn to live in true subjection to the Lacedaemonians; and part of their Territorie was taken from them, which was given to the Aismai, and such as had followed the Spartans in this Warre.

This peace being made upon so uneven termes, was not like to hold long. Yet nine and thirty years it continued (the Messenians not finding how to help themselves) and then brake out into a new and more furious Warre than the former. The able young men, that were grown up in the room of those Messenians whom the former Warre had consumed, began to consider their own strength and multitude, thinking themselves equall to the Lacedaemonians, and therefore scorned to serve such Masters as had against all right, oppressed their Fathers. The chief of these was Aristomenes, a Noble Gentleman of the house of Egyptus; who perceiving the uniform desires of his Countrie-men, adventured to become their Leader. He therefore founding the affections of the Argives and Arcadians, which he found thoroughly answerable to his purpose began open warre upon the State of Lacedaemon. This was in the fourth year of the three and twentieth Olympiad; when the Lacedaemonians hasted to quench the fire before it should grow too hot, with such forces as they could raise of their own, without troubling their friends, meaning to deal with their enemies, ere any succour were lent them. So a strong battell was fought between them, and a doubtfull; save that the Messenians were pleased with the issue, forasmuch as they had thereby taught their late proud Lords, to think them their equals. Particularly, the valour of Aristomenes appeared such in this fight, that his people would have made him their King: but he, refusing the honour of that name, accepted of the burthen, and became their Generall. Within one year another battell was fought, whereunto each part came better provided. The Lacedaemonians brought with them the Corinthians, and some other friends to help: the Messenians had the Argives, Arcadians, and Sicyonians. This also was a long and bloodie fight; but Aristomenes did so behave himselfe, that finally he made the Enemies run for their lives. Of such importance was this victorie, that the Lacedaemonians began to bethink themselves of making some good agreement.

F f f

But

But one *Tyrtaeus* an *Athenian* Poet, whom by appointment of an Oracle they had gotten to direct them, re-inforced their spirits with his Verses. After this, *Arifstomenes* took by surprize a Town in *Laconia*, and vanquished in fight *Anaxander* King of *Sparta*, who did set upon him in hope to have recovered the bootie.

But all those victories of *Arifstomenes* perished, in the losse of one battell, whereof the honour (if it were honour) or surely the profit fell upon the *Lacedæmonians*, through the treason of *Arifocrates*, King of *Arcadia*, who being corrupted by the enemies with money, fled away, and left the *Messenians* exposed to a cruell butcherie. The losse was so great, that together with *Andania* their principall Citie, all the Towns of *Messene*, standing to farre from the Sea, were abandoned for lack of men to defend them, and the Mount *Era* fortified, whither the multitude, that could not be safe abroad, was conveyed into a place of safetie. Here the *Lacedæmonians* found a tedious work, that held them eleven years. For besides that *Era* it selfe was a strong piece, *Arifstomenes* with three hundred stout Souldiers, did many incredible exploits, that wearied them, and hindered their attendance on the siege. He waisted all the fields of *Messene*, that were in the enemies power, and brake into *Laconia*, taking away Corn, Wine, Cattell, and all provisions, necessary for his own people: the Slaves and household stuffe he changed into money, suffering the owners to redeem them. To remedy this mischief, the *Lacedæmonians* made an Edict, that neither *Messene*, nor the adjoining parts of their own Countrey, should be tilled or husbanded; which bred a great tumult among private men, that were almost undone by it. Yet the Poet *Tyrtaeus* appeased this upore with men, that were almost undone by it. Yet the Poet *Tyrtaeus* appeased this upore with men, that were almost undone by it. Yet the Poet *Tyrtaeus* appeased this upore with men, that were almost undone by it.

In performing these and other services, thrice *Arifstomenes* was taken prisoner; yet still he escaped. One escape of his deserves to be remembred, as a thing very strange and marvellous. He had with too much courage adventured to set upon both the Kings of *Sparta*; and being in that fight wounded, and felled to the ground, was taken up senselesse, and carried away prisoner, with fiftie of his Companions. There was a deep natural Cave into which the *Spartans* used to cast head-long such as were condemned to death for the greatest offences. To this punishment were *Arifstomenes* and his companions adjudged. All the rest of these poor men dyed with their falls; *Arifstomenes* (howsoever it came to passe) took no harm. Yet was it harm enough to be imprisoned in a deep Dungeon, among dead carcasses, where he was like to perish through hunger and stench. But after a while he perceived by some small glimmering of light (which perhaps came in at the top) a Fox that was gnawing upon a dead body. Hereupon he be-thought himself, that this beast must needs know some way to enter the place and get out. For which cause he made swift to lay hold upon it, and catching it by the tail with one hand, saved himself from biting with the other hand, by thrusting his coat into the mouth of it. So letting it creep whither it would, he followed, holding it as his guide, untill the way was too strait for him; and then dismissed it. The Fox being loose, ran through an hole at which came in a little light; and there did *Arifstomenes* delve so long with his nailes, that at last he clawed out his passage. When some fugitives of *Messene* brought word to *Sparta*, that *Arifstomenes* was returned home, their tale sounded alike, as if they had said, that a dead man was revived. But when the *Corinthian* forces that came to help the *Lacedæmonians* in the siege of *Era*, were cut in pieces, their Captains slain, and their Camp taken; then was it easily believed, that *Arifstomenes* was alive indeed.

Thus eleven years passed, whilst the enemies hovering about *Era*, saw no likelihood of getting it; and *Arifstomenes* with small forces did them greater hurt than they knew how to requite. But at the last, a slave that had fled from *Sparta*, betrayed the place. This fellow had enticed to lewdnesse the wife of a *Messenian*, and was entertained by her, when her husband went forth to watch. It happened in a rainie-winter-night, that the husband came home unlooked for, whilst the Adulterer was within. The Woman hid her Paramour, and made good countenance to her husband, asking him by what good fortune hee was returned so soon. Hee told her, that the storm of foul weather was such, as had make all his fellows leave their Stations, and that himselfe had done as the

rest

rest did; as for *Arifstomenes*, he was wounded of late in fight, and could not look abroad; neither was it to be feared, that the enemies would stirre in such a dark rainie night as this was. The slave that heard these tidings, rose up secretly out of his lurking hole, and got him to the *Lacedæmonian* Camp with the newes. There he found *Emperamus* his Master commanding in the Kings absence. To him he uttered all; and obtaining pardon for his running away, guided the Army into the Town. Little or nothing was done that night. For the Allarm was presently taken; and the extreme darknesse, together with the noise of wind and rain, hindered all directions. All the next day was spent in most cruell fight; one part being incited by meer hope of ending a long work; the other enraged by meer desperation. The great advantage that the *Spartans* had in numbers, was recompensed partly by the assistance which women and children (to whom the hatred of servitude had taught contempt of death) gave to their husbands and fathers; partly by the narrownesse of the streetes and other passages, which admitted not many hands to fight at once. But the *Messenians* were in continuall toyl; their Enemies fought in course, refreshing themselves with meat and sleep, and then returning supplied the place of their wearie fellows with fresh Companions. *Arifstomenes* therefore, perceiving that his men for want of relief were no longer able to hold out, (as having been three dayes and three nights vexed with all miseries, of labour, watchings, fighting, hunger and thirst, besides continuall rain and cold) gathered together all the weaker sort, whom he compassed round with armed men, and so attempted to break out through the midst of the Enemies. *Emperamus* General of the *Lacedæmonians* was glad of this: and to further their departure, caused his Souldiers to give an open way, leaving a fair passage to these desperate mad-men. So they issued forth, and arrived safe in *Arcadia*, where they were most lovingly entertained.

Upon the first bruit of the taking of *Era*, the *Arcadians* had prepared themselves to the rescue: but *Arifocrates* their false-hearted King, said it was too late, for that all was already lost. When *Arifstomenes* had placed his followers in safetie, he choic out five hundred the lustiest of his men, with whom he resolved to march in all secret hast unto *Sparta*, hoping to find the Town secure, and ill manned, the people being runne forth to the spoyl of *Messene*. In this enterprise, if he sped well, it was not doubted, that the *Lacedæmonians* would be glad to recover their own, by restitution of that which they had taken from others; if all failed, an honourable death was the worst that could happen. There were three hundred *Arcadians* that offered to joyn with him; but *Arifocrates* marred all, by sending speedie advertisement thereof to *Anaxander* King of *Sparta*. The Epistle which *Anaxander* sent back to *Arifocrates* was intercepted by some that mistrusted him to whom it was directed. Therein was found all his fallshood, which being published in open assemblie, the *Arcadians* stoned him to death, and casting forth his bodie unburied, erected a monument of his treacherie, with a note, That the Perjurer cannot deceive God.

Of *Arifstomenes* no more is remaining to be said, than that committing his people to the charge of his son *Gorgus* and other sufficient Governors, who should plant them in some new seat abroad, he resolved himself to make abroad in those parts, hoping to find the *Lacedæmonians* work at home. His daughters he bestowed honourably in marriage. One of them *Demagetus*, who reigned in the Ile of *Rhodes*, took to wife, being willed by an Oracle, to marry the daughter of the best man in *Greece*. Finally, *Arifstomenes* went with his daughter to *Rhodes*, whence he purposed to have travelled unto *Arads* the Sonne of *Gyges* King of *Lydia*, and to *Phraortes* King of *Media*; but death prevented him at *Rhodes*, where he was honourably buried.

The *Messenians* were invited by *Anaxilas* (whose great Grandfather was a *Messenian*), and went into *Italie* after the former war being Lord of the *Rhegiens* in *Italie*, to take his part against the *Zancleans* in *Sicilie*, on the other side of the Streights. They did so; and winning the Town of *Zancle*, called it *Messene*, which name it keeps to this day.

This second *Messenian* warre ended in the first yeare of the twentie eighth Olympiad. Long after, which time, the rest of that Nation, who staying at home seized the *Lacedæmonians*, found means to rebel; but were soone vanquished, and being driven to forsake *Peloponnesus*, they went into *Acaruania*; whence likewise, after few ages, they

were expelled by the *Lacedemonians*, and then followed their ancient Countie-men into *Italic* and *Sicilie*; some of them went into *Africa*, where they chose unto themselves a feat.

It is very strange, that during two hundred and fourscore years, this banished Nation retained their name, their ancient customes, language, hatred of *Sparta*, and love of their forsaken Countie; with a desire to return unto it. In the third year of the hundred and second *Olympiad*, that great *Epaminondas*, having tamed the pride of the *Lacedemonians*, revoked the *Messenians* home, who came flocking out of all quarters, where they dwelt abroad, into *Peloponnesus*. There did *Epaminondas* restore unto them their old possission, and help them in building a fair Citie; which by the name of the Province, was called to *Messene*, and was held by them ever after, in despite of the *Lacedemonians*, of whom they never from thenceforth stood in fear.

## s. V.

Of the Kings that were in *Lydia* and *Media*, while *Manasses* reigned. Whether *Deiocrates* the Mede were that *Arphaxad* which is mentioned in the Book of *Judith*.

**A**rdys King of *Lydia*, and *Phraortes* of the *Medes*, are spoken of by *Pausanias*, as<sup>20</sup> reigning shortly after the *Messenian* war. *Ardys* succeeding unto his father *Gyges*, began his reign of nine and fortie yeares, in the second of the five and twentieth *Olympiad*. He followed the steps of his father, who encroaching upon the *Ionians* in *Asia*, had taken *Colophon* by force, and attempted *Miletus* and *Smyrna*. In like manner *Ardys* wan *Priene*, and assailed *Miletus*; but went away without it. In his reign, the *Cimmerians*, being expelled out of their own countie by the *Scythians*, over-ran a great part of *Asia*, which was not freed from them before the time of *Alyattes*: this mans Grand-child, by whom they were driven out. They had not only broken into *Lydia*, but wan the Citie of *Sardes*; though the Castle or Citadell thereof was defended against them, and held still for King *Ardys*; whose long reign was unable, by reason of this great<sup>30</sup> storm, to effect much.

*Phraortes* was not King until the third year of the nine and twentieth *Olympiad*, which was six yeares after the *Messenian* war ended; the same being the last year of *Manasses* his reign over *Juda*.

*Deiocrates* the father of this *Phraortes*, was King of *Media*, three and fiftie of these five and fiftie yeares in which *Manasses* reigned. This *Deiocrates* was the first that ruled the *Medes* in a strict form, commanding more absolutely than his Predecessours had done. For they, following the example of *Arbaces*, had given to the people so much licence, as caused every one to desire the wholesome severitie of a more Lordly King. Herein *Deiocrates* answered their desires to the full. For he caused them to build for him a stately Palace; he took unto him a Guard, for defence of his person; he seldom gave audience<sup>40</sup>; which also when he did, it was with such austeritie, that no man durst presume to spit or cough in his sight. By these and the like ceremonies he bred in the people an awfull regard, and highly upheld the Majestie which his predecessors had almost letten fall, through neglect of due comportments. In execution of his Royall Office, he did uprightly and severly administer justice, keeping secret spies to inform him of all that was done in the Kingdome. He cared not to enlarge the bounds of his Dominion, by encroaching upon others; but studied how to govern well his own. The difference found between this King, and such as were before him, seems to have bred that opinion which *Herodotus* delivers, that *Deiocrates* was the first who reigned in *Media*.<sup>50</sup>

This was he that built the great Citie of *Ecbatane*, which now is called *Tauris*; and therefore he should be that King *Arphaxad*, mentioned in the storie of *Judith*, as also *Ben Merodach*, by the same account, should be *Nabuchodonosor* the *Assyrian*, by whom *Arphaxad* was slain, and *Holofernes* sent to work wonders upon *Phul* and *Lad*, and I know not what other Countries. For I reckon the last yeare of *Deiocrates* to have been the nineteenth of *Ben Merodach*; though others place it otherwise, some earlier, in the time of *Merodach Baladan*, some later, in the reign of *Nabulassar*, who is also called *Nabuchodonosor*.

In

In fitting this book of *Judith* to a certain time, there hath much labour been spent with ill successe. The reigns of *Cambyses*, *Darius Hystaspis*, *Xerxes*, and *Ochus*, have been sought into, but afford no great matter of likelihood: and now of late, the times foregoing the destruction of *Jerusalem*, have been thought upon, and this age that we have in hand, chosen by *Bellarmino*, as agreeing best with the storie; though others herein cannot (I speak of such as fain would) agree with him. Whilst *Cambyses* reigned, the Temple was not re-built, which in the story of *Judith* is found standing and dedicated. The other two *Persian* Kings, *Darius* and *Xerxes*, are acknowledged to have been very favourable to the *Jews*; therefore neither of them could be *Nabuchodonosor*, whose part<sup>10</sup> they refused to take, and who sent to destroy them. Yet the time of *Xerxes* hath some conveniences, aptly fitting this History; and above all, the opinion of a few ancient Writers (without whose judgement the authority of this Book were of no value) having placed this argument in the *Persian* Monarchie, inclines the matter to the reign of this vain-glorious King. As for *Ochus*, very few, and they faintly, entitle him to the business. Manifest it is, and granted, that in the time of this History, there must be a return from captivity lately foregoing, the Temple rebuilt; *Joachim* High Priest; and a long peace of threecore and ten yeares, or thereabout, ensuing. All these were to be among the *Jews*. Likewise on the other side, we must find a King that reigned in *Nineve*, eighteen yeares at the least; that vanquished and slew a King of the *Medes*; one whom the *Jews*<sup>20</sup> refused to assist; one that fought generally to be adored as God, and that therefore commanded all temples, of such such as were accounted gods, to be destroyed; one whole Vice-roy or Captain Generall knew not the Jewish Nation, but was faine to learn what they were of the bordering people.

Of all these circumstances, the Priesthood of *Joachim*, with a return from captivity, are found concurring, with either the time of *Manasses* before the destruction of *Jerusalem*, or of *Xerxes* afterward: the re-building of the Temple a while before, and the long peace following, agree with the reign of *Xerxes*; the rest of circumstances requisite, are to be found all together, neither before nor after the captivity of the *Jews*, and desolation of the Citie. Wherefore the brief decision of this controverisie is, That the book<sup>30</sup> of *Judith* is not Canonically. Yet hath *Tornilius* done as much, in fitting all to the time of *Xerxes*, as was possible in so desperate a case. For he supposeth, that under *Xerxes* there were other Kings, among which *Arphaxad* might be one (who perhaps restored and re-edified the Citie of *Ecbatane*, that had formerly been built by *Deiocrates*) and *Nabuchodonosor* might be another. This granted; he adds, that from the twelfth year to the eighteenth of *Nabuchodonosor*, that is, five or six yeares, the absence and ill fortune of *Xerxes* in his *Grecian* expedition (which he supposeth to have been so long) might give occasion unto *Arphaxad*, of rebelling; and that *Nabuchodonosor*, having vanquished and slain *Arphaxad*, might then seek to make himself Lord of all, by the Armie which<sup>40</sup> he sent forth unto *Holofernes*. So should the *Jews* have done their dutie, in adhering to *Xerxes* their Soverain Lord, and resisting one that rebelled against him; as also the other circumstances rehearsed before, be well applied to the argument. For in these times, the affairs of *Jurie* were agreeable to the History of *Judith*, and such a King as this supposed *Nabuchodonosor*, might well enough be ignorant of the *Jews*, and as proud as we shall need to think him. But the silence of all Histories, takes away belief from this conjecture: and the supposition it self is very hard, that a Rebelle, whose King was abroad, with an Armie consisting of seventeen hundred thousand men, should presume so far, upon the strength of twelve hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand Archers on horse-back, as to think that he might do what he list, yea that there was none other God than himself. It is indeed easie to find enough that might be<sup>50</sup> said against this device of *Tornilius*: yet if there were any necessitie of holding the book of *Judith* to be Canonically, I would rather choose to lay aside all regard of prophane Histories, and build some defence upon this ground; than, by following the opinion of any other, to violate, as they all doe, the text it self. That *Judith* lived under none of the *Persian* Kings, *Bellarmino* (whose works I have not read, but find him cited by *Tornilius*) hath proved by many arguments. That she lived not in the Reign of *Manasses*, *Tornilius* hath proved very substantially, shewing how the Cardinal is driven, as it were to break through a wall, in saying that the text was corrupted, where it spake of the destruction of the Temple foregoing her time, that the Kings *Arphaxad* and *Nabuchodonosor*.

Fff 3

*chodonefor*, found out by *Torniellus*, are the children of meer fantasie, it is so plain that it needs no proof at all. Wherefore we may truly say, that they, which have contended about the time of this Historie, being well furnished of matter, wherewith to confute each other, but wanting wherewith to defend themselves (like naked men in a stonie field) have chased *Holofernes* out of all parts of time, and left him and his great expedition, *Extra anni solisque vias*, in an age that never was, and in places that were never known.

Judit. 2. 2. &  
25.

Surely, to find out the borders of *Japheth*, which were towards the South, and over against *Arabia*, or the Countries of *Phul* and *Lud*, that lay in *Holofernes* his way, I think it would as much trouble Cosmographers, as the former question hath done Chronologers. But I will not busie my self herewith; having already so far digressed, in shewing who lived not with *Manasses*, that I think it high time to return unto mine own work, and rehearse what others I find, to have had their part, in the long time of his Reigne.

# S. VI.

Of other Princes and actions that were in these times.

THE first year of *Manasses* was the last *Romulus*; after whose doth, one year the *Romans* wanted a King. Then was *Numa Pompilius* a *Sabyn*e chosen, a peaceable man, and seeming very religious in his kind. He brought the rude people, which *Romulus* had employed only in Wars, to some good civilitie, and a more orderly fashion of life. This he effected by filling their heads with superstition; as perswading them, that he had familiaritie with a Nymph called *Egeria*, who taught him a many of Ceremonies which he delivered unto the *Romans* as things of great importance. But all these devices of *Numa* were, in his own judgement, no better than meer delusions, that served only as rudiments to bring the savage multitude of thieves and our-laws, gathered into one body by *Romulus*, to some form of milder discipline, than their boisterous and wild natures were otherwise apt to entertain. This appeared by the Books that were found in his grave, almost six hundred years after his death, wherein the Superstition taught by himself was condemned as vain. His grave was opened by chance, in digging a piece of ground that belonged to one *L. Petilius* a Scribe. Two Coffins or Chests of stone were in it, with an inscription in Greek and Latine letters, which said, that *Numa Pompilius*, the son of *Pompo*, King of the *Romans*, lay there. In the one Coffin was nothing found; his body being utterly consumed. In the other were his Books, wrapped up in two bundles of wax; of his own constitutions seven, and other seven of Philosophie. They were not only uncorrupted, but in a manner fresh and new. The Pretour of the Citie desiring to have a fight of these Books, when he perceived whereunto they tended, refused to deliver them back to the owner, and offered to take a solemn oath that they were against the Religion then in use. Hereupon the Senate, without more ado, commanded them to be openly burnt. It seems that *Numa* did mean to acquit himself unto wiser ages, which he thought would follow, as one that had not been so foolish as to beleieve the Doctrine wherein he instructed his own barbarous times. But the poison wherewith he had infected *Rome*, when he sat in his Throne, had not left working, when he ministred the Antidote out of his grave. Had these Books not come to light, until the days of *Tully* and *Cesar*, when the mist of ignorance was somewhat better discussed; likely it is that they had not only escaped the fire, but wrought some good (and peradventure generally) effect. Being as it was, they served as a confutation, without remedie, of Idolatry that was inveterate.

*Numa* reigned three and fortie years in continuall peace. After him *Tullus Hostilius* the third King was chosen, in the six and fourtieth of *Manasses*, and reigned two and thirtie years, busied, for the most part, in War. He quarrelled with the *Albanes*, who met him in the field; but in regard of the danger, which both parts had cause to fear, that might grow unto them from the *Thuscans*, caused them to bethink themselves of a course, whereby without effusion of so much blood, as might make them too weak for a common enemy, it might be decided, who should command, and who obey.

There

There were in each Camp three Brethren, Twins, born at one birth (*Dionysius* says that they were Cousin Germans) of equal years and strength, who were appointed to fight for their severall Countries. The end was, that the *Horatii*, Champions for the *Romans*, got the victory, though two of them first lost their lives. The three *Curatii* that fought for *Alba* (as *Livie* tells it) were all alive, and able to fight, yet wounded, when two of their opposites were slain; but the third *Horatius*, pretending fear, did run away, and thereby drew the others, who by reason of their hurts, could not follow him with equal speed, to follow him at such distance one from another, that returning upon them, he flew them, as it had been in single fight, man after man, ere they could joyn together and set upon him all at once. *Dionysius* reports it somewhat otherwise, telling very particularly, what wounds were given and taken, and saying, that first one of the *Horatii* was slain, then one of the *Curatii*, then a second *Horatius*, and lastly the two *Curatii*, whom the third *Horatius* did cunningly sever the one from the other, as is shewed before.

This is one of the most memorable things in the old *Roman* Historie, both in regard of the action it self, wherein *Rome* was laid, as it were, in a wager, against *Alba*, and in respect of the great increase which thereby the *Roman* State obtained. For the Citie of *Alba* did immediately become subje& unto her own Colonie, and was shortly after, upon some treacherous dealing of their Governour, utterly razed, the people being removed unto *Rome* where they were made Citizens. The strong Nation of the *Latines*, whereof *Alba*, as the mother Citie, had been chief, became ere long dependent upon *Rome*, though not subje& unto it, and divers petty States adjacent, were by little and little taken in: which additions, that were small, yet many, I will forbear to rehearse (as being the works of sundry ages, and few of them remarkable considered apart by themselves) untill such time as this fourth Empire, that is now in the infancie, shall grow to be the main subje& of this History.

The seventh year of *Hippomenes* in *Athens*, was current with the first of *Manasses*. Also the three last Governours for ten years, who followed *Hippomenes*, were in the same Kings time. Of these I find only names, *Leocrates*, *Absander*, and *Eriizus*. After *Eri* his yearly Rulers were elected.

These Governours for ten years were also of the race of *Medon* and *Codrus*, but their time of rule was shortened, and from term of life reduced unto ten years; it being thought likely that they would govern the better, when they knew that they were afterwards to live private men under the command of others. I follow *Dionysius* of *Halicarnassus*, in applying their times unto those years of the *Olympiads*, wherein the Chronologicall Table, following this work, doth set them. For he not only professeth himself to have taken great care in ordering the reckoning of times; but hath noted always the years of the *Greeks*, how they did answer unto the things of *Rome*, throughout all the continuance of this Historie. Whereas therefore he placeth the building of *Rome*, in the first year of the seventh *Olympiad*, and affirms, that the same was the first year of *Charops* government of *Athens*; I hope I shall not need excuse, for varying from *Pausanias*, who lets the beginning of these *Athenians* somewhat sooner.

In the reign of *Manasses* it was, that *Midas* whom the Poets feigned to have had Asses ears, held the kingdom of *Phrygia*. Many fables were devised of him; especially that he obtained of *Bacchus*, as a great gift, that all things which he should touch might immediately be changed into Gold: by which means he had like to have been starved (his meat and drink being subje& to the same transformation) had not *Bacchus* delivered him from this miserable facultie, by causing him to wash himself in the River *Pactolus*, the stream whereof hath ever since, forsooth, abounded in that precious metall. Finally, it is said he dyed by drinking Bulls blood; being invaded by the *Scythians*.

In this age flourished that *Antimachus*, who (saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Romulus*) observed the Moons Eclipse at the foundation of *Rome*.

The *Milesians*, or, (as *Eusebius* hath it: the *Athenians* having obtained some power by Sea, founded *Macieratis* a Citie on the East of *Egypt*. *Plammiticus* herein seems to have assisted them, who used all means of drawing the *Greeks* into *Egypt*, augmenting them his surest strength. For neither *Miletus* nor *Athens* were now of power sufficient to plant a Colonie in *Egypt* by force.

About

Plut. &amp; Eucl.

\*Whence in Strabo there is found Alacmus a son of Proponius where this Cite is founded.

Paus. l. 5. Hal. l. 3. Strab. l. 6. Justin. l. 3. Paus. l. 10.

About this time *Archias* with his companion *Miscellus*, and other *Corinthians*, founded *Syracusa* in *Sicilie*, a Cite in after times exceeding famous. The Cite of *Nicodemia*, sometime \* *Alacmus*, was enlarged and beautified in this age by *Zipartes* native of *Thrace*. *Sybilla* of *Samus*, according to *Pausanias*, lived much about this time.

About these times also was *Croton* founded upon the Bay of *Tarentum* by *Miscellus*, the companion of *Archias* that built *Syracusa*. *Strabo* makes it somewhat more ancient, and so doth *Pausanias*.

About the same time the *Parthenians* being of age, and banished *Lacedamon*, were conducted by *Phalantus* into *Italie*, where it is said they founded *Tarentum*: but *Justin* and 10 *Pausanias* find it built before, and by them conquered and amplified: and about the same time, *Manasse* yet living, the Cite *Phaselis* was founded in *Pamphylia*, *Gela* in *Sicilia*, *Interamne* in the Region of the *Umbria*, now *Urbino* in *Italie*. About which time also the *Chaldean* in *Asia*, over against *Byzantium* (now *Constantinople*) was founded by the *Megarenses*, who therefore were upbraided as blind, because they chose not the other side of *Bosphorus*. It were a long work to rehearse all that is said to have bin done in the five and fiftie years of *Manasses*: that which already hath been told is enough; the rest being not greatly worth remembrance, may well be omitted, reserving only *Ben Merodach*, and *Nabulassar*, to the business that will shortly require more mention of them.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the times from the death of *Manasses* to the destruction of *Jerusalem*.

S. I.

of *Ammon* and *Josias*.

2 Kin. 21. 1 Chron. 33.



*Ammon* the son of *Manasse*, a man no lesse wicked than was his Father before his conversion, restored the exercise of all sorts of Idolatry: for which God hardened the hearts of his own servants against him, who slew him after he had reigned two years. *Philo*, *Eusebius*, and *Nicephorus* give him ten years, following the Septuagint.

2 Kin. 22. 1 Chron. 34.

*Josias* succeeded unto *Ammon*, being but a child of 8. years old, he began to seek after the God of *David* his Father; and in his twelfth year he purged *Juda* and *Jerusalem* from the high places, and the groves, and the carved and molten Images: and they brake down in his sight the Altars of *Baalim*: He caused all the Images, as well those which were graven, as molten, to be stamped to powder, and strewed on their graves that had erected them; and this he commanded to be done throughout all his dominions. He also slew those that sacrificed to the Sun and Moon, and caused the Chariots and horses of the Sun to be burnt. Of *Josias* it was prophesied in the time of *Feroboam* the first, when he erected the Golden Calf at *Bethel*, that a child should be born unto the house of *David*, *Josias* by name, and upon thee (said the Prophet, speaking to the Altar) shall he sacrifice the Priests of the high places, that burn incense upon thee: a prophetic very remarkable.

1 Kin. 13.

In the eighteenth year of his reign, he re-built and repaired the Temple, at which 50 time *Helkiah* the Priest found the Book of *Moses*, called *Deuteronomie*, or, of the Law, which he sent to the King: which when he had caused to be read before him, and considered of the severe commandments therein written, the prosperitie promised to those that observe them, and the sorrow and extirpation to the rest, he rent his garments, and commanded *Helkiah*, and others, to aske counsell of the Prophetesse *Huldah*, or, *Olda*, concerning the Book; who answered the messengers in these words: Thus saith the Lord, Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, even all the curses that are written in the Book which they have read before the King of *Juda*, because they have forsaken

forsaken mee, and burnt incense to other gods. Only for the King himself, because he was a lover of God and his Lawes, it was promised that this evil should not fall on *Juda* and *Jerusalem* in his dayes, but that he himself should inherit his grave in peace.

2 Kin. 22. 15. 1 Chron. 34.

*Josias* assembled the Elders, caused the Book to be read unto them, made a covenant with the Lord, and caused all that were found in *Jerusalem* and *Benjamin* to doe the like, promising thereby to observe the Lawes and Commandements in the Book contained.

The execution done by *Josias* upon the Altar, idols, monuments, and bones of the false Prophets at *Bethel*, argueth his Dominion to have extended unto those Countries, that had been part of the Kingdome of the ten Tribes. Yet I doe not think, that any victory of *Josias* in war got possession of these places; but rather that *Ezechias*, after the flight & death of *Sennacherib*, when *Merodach* opposed himself against *Asarhaddon*, did use the advantage which the faction in the North presented unto him, and laid hold upon so much of the Kingdome of *Israël*, as he was able to people. Otherwise also it is not improbable, that the *Babylonian* finding himself unable to deal with *Psammiticus* in *Syria* (as wanting power to raise the siege of *Azotus*, though the Town held out nine & twenty years) did give unto *Manasse*, together with his liberty, as much in *Israël* as himself could not easily defend. This was a good way to break the amity that the Kings of *Juda* had so long held with those of *Egypt*, by casting a bone between them, and withall by this benefit of enlarging their Territories with addition of more than they could challenge, to redem the friendship of the Jewes, which had been lost by injuries done, in seeking to bereave them of their own. When it is said, that *Manasse* did after his deliverance from imprisonment, put Captaines of War in all the strong Cities of *Juda*; it may be that some such business is intimated, as the taking possession, and fortifying of places delivered into his hands. For though it be manifest that he took much paines, in making *Jerusalem* itself more defensible; yet I should rather believe, that he, having already compounded with the *Babylonian*, did fortifie himself against the *Egyptians*, whose side he had forsaken, than that he travelled in making such provisions only for his mindes sake. The earnestnesse of *Josias* in the King of *Babel* his quarrell, doth argue, 30 that the composition which *Manasse* had made with that King or his Ancestor, was upon such friendly termes, as required not only a faithfull observation, but a thankfull requittall. For no persuasions could suffice to make *Josias* sit still, and hold himself quiet in good neutrality, when *Pharao Necho* King of *Egypt* passed along by him, to war upon the Countries about the River of *Euphrates*.

1 Chron. 35. 14

The last yeer of *Josias* his reign it was, when *Necho* the son of *Psammiticus*, came with a powerfull Army towards the border of *Judea*, determining to passe that way, being the nearest toward *Euphrates*, either to strengthen the passages of that River about *Carchemish*, or *Cercusium*, for the defence of *Syria* (as long after this, *Dioeclesian* is said by *Amianus* Marcellinus to have done,) or perhaps to invade *Syria* itself. For it seemed that the travail of *Psammiticus* had not been idly consumed about that one Town of *Azotus*, but had put the *Egyptians* in possession of no small part of *Syria*, especially in those quarters that had formerly belonged unto the *Adades* Kings of *Damascus*.

1 Chron. 35. 20

Neither was the industry of *Necho* lesse than his Fathers had bin, in pursuing the war against *Babel*. In which warre, two things may greatly have availed the *Egyptians*, and advanced their affaires and hopes: the extraordinary valour of the mercenary *Greekes*, that were far better Souldiers than *Egypt* of itself could afford; & the danger wherein *Assyria* stood, by the force of the *Medes*, which under the command of more absolute Princes, began to feel it self better, and to shew what it could doe. These were great helps, but of shorter endurance than was the warre; as in place more convenient shall be noted. At the present it seems, that either some preparation of the *Chaldeans* to reconquer, did enforce, or some disability of theirs to make resistance, did invite the King of *Egypt* into the Countries bordering upon *Euphrates*; whither *Pharao Necho* ascended with a mighty Army.

These two great Monarchs, having their swords drawn, and contending for the Empire of that part of the World, *Josias* advised with himself to which of these he might adhere, having his Territory set in the mid-way between both, so as the one could not invade the other, but that they must of necessity tread upon the very face and body of his Country. Now though it were so that *Necho* himselfe desired, by his Embassadors, leave

leave

leave to passe along by *Judea*, protesting that he directed himself against the *Assyrians* only, without all harmefull purpose against *Josias*; yet all sufficed not, but the King of *Israel* would needs fight with him.

Many examples there were, which taught, what little good the friendship of *Egypt* could bring to thole that had affiance therein: as that of *Hosea* the 1<sup>st</sup> King of *Israel*, who when he fell from the dependance of the *Assyrian*, and wholly trusted to *Sabacus* or *Sous* King of *Egypt*, was utterly disappointed of his hopes, and in conclusion lost both his life and citate, which the *Assyrian* was rooted up and tare in pieces, as it could never after be gathered together or replanted. The calamities also that set upon *Juda* in the thirteenth and fourteenth years of *Ezechia*, whilest that good king and his people relied upon *Setbon*; and more lately, the imprisonment of *Manasses*, were documents of sufficient proof, to shew the ill assurance that was in the help of the *Egyptian*, who (near neighbors though they were) were always unreadie, when the necessities of their friends required their assistance. The remembrance hereof might be the reason why *Neco* did not seek to have the *Jewes* renew their ancient league with him, but only craved that they would be contented to sit still, and behold the pastime between him and the *Assyrians*. This was an easie thing to grant; seeing that the countenance of such an Armie, as did, soon after this, out-face *Nabulassar* upon his own borders, left unto the *Jewes*, a lawfull excuse of fear, had they forborn to give it any check upon the way. Wherefore I believe that this religious and vertuous Prince *Josias*, was not stirred up only by politic respects, to stop the way of *Neco*, but thought himself bound in faith and honor, to doe his best in defence of the *Babylonian* Crown; whereunto his Kingdome was obliged, either by covenant made at the enlargement of *Manasses*, or by the gift of such part as he held in the Kingdome of the ten Tribes. As for the Princes and people of *Juda*, they had now a good occasion to shew, both unto the *Babylonians*, of what importance their friendship was, and to the *Egyptians* what a valiant Nation they had abandoned, and thereby made their enemy.

Some think that this action of *Josias* was contrary to the advice of *Jeremy* the Prophet; which I doe not find in the Prophecie of *Jeremy*, nor can find reason to believe. Others hold opinion that he forgot to ask the counsel of God: and this is very likely; seeing he might believe that an enterprize grounded upon fidelitie and thankfulness due to the King of *Babel*, could not but be displeasing unto the Lord. But the wickedness of the people (in whom the corruptions of former times had taken such root, as all the care of *Josias* in reforming the Land, could not pluck up) was questionlesse far from hearkening how the matter would stand with Gods pleasure, and much farther from enquiring into his secret will, wherein it was determined that their good king, whose life stood between them and their punishment, should now be taken from among them, and that in such sort, as his death should give an entrance to the miseries ensuing. So *Josias* levying all the strength he could make, near unto *Megiddo*, in the half Tribe of *Manasses*, encountered *Neco*: and there he received the stroke of death, which lingring about him till he came to *Jerusalem*, brought him to the Sepulchres of his Ancestors. His losse was greatly bewailed of all the people and Princes of *Juda*, especially of *Jeremy* the Prophet, who inserted a sorrowfull remembrance thereof in his Book of Lamentations.

## s. II.

Of Pharaon *Neco* that fought with *Josias*: Of *Jehoahaz* and *Jehojakim* Kings of *Israel*.

OF these warres, and particularly of this victorie, *Herodotus* hath mention among the acts of *Neco*. He tels us of this King, that he went about to make a channell, whereby Ships might passe out of *Nilus* into the Red Sea. It should have reached above an hundred miles in length, and been wide enough for two Gallies to row in front. But in the midst of the work, an Oracle foretold that the *Barbarians* should have the benefit of it, which caused *Neco* to desist when half was done. There were consumed in this toyle some businesse twelve hundred thousand *Egyptians*; a losse great enough to make the King forsake his enterprize, without troubling the Oracle for monition. Howsoever it were, he was not a man to be idle; therefore he built a Fleet,

and levied a great Armie, wherewith he marched against the King of *Babel*. In this expedition, he used the service, as well of his Navie, as of his land-forces; but no particular exploits of his therein are found recorded, save only this victory against *Josias*, where *Herodotus* calls the place *Magdolis*, and the *Jewes* *Syrians*; which is a small error, seeing that *Judea* was a Province of *Syria*, and *Magdolis* or *Magdala* is taken to have been the same place (though diversly named) in which this battell was fought. After this, *Neco* took the Citie of *Cadytis*, which was perhaps *Charchemish*, by *Euphrates*, and made himself Lord, in a manner, of all *Syria*, as *Josephus* witnesseth.

Particularly we find, that the *Phenicians*, one of the most powerful Nations in *Syria*, were his Subjects, and that by his command they surrounded all *Africa*, setting sail from the gulfes of *Arabia*, and so passing along all the coast, whereon they both landed, as need required, and sowed corn for their sustenance in that long voyage, which lasted three years. This was the first Navigation about *Africa*, wherein that great Cape, now called of good hope, was discovered; which after was forgotten, until *Vasco de Gama* the *Portingall* found it out, following a contrary course to that which the *Phenicians* held; for they, beginning in the East, ran the way of the Sun, South and then Westward, after which they returned home by the pillars and streights of *Hercules* (as the name was then) called now the streights of *Gibraltar*, having *Africk* still on the right hand; but the *Portingals*, beginning their voyage not far from the same streights, leave *Africk* on the Larboard, and bend their course unto the East. That report of the *Phenicians*, which *Herodotus* durst not believe, how the Sun in this journey was on their right hand, that is, on the North side of them, is a matter of necessary truth; and the observation then made hereof, makes me the better to believe, that such a voyage was indeed performed. But leaving these discourses of *Neco* his magnificence, let us tell what he did, in matters more importing his estate. The people of *Juda*, while the *Egyptians* were busie at *Charchemish*, had made *Jehoahaz* their King, in the room of his father *Josias*. The Prophet *Jeremy* calls this new King *Shallum*, by the name of his younger brother; alluding perhaps to the short reign of *Shallum* King of the ten Tribes: for *Shallum* of *Israel* reigned but one moneth; *Jehoahaz* no more than three. He was not the eldest son of *Josias*: Wherefore it may seem that he was set up as the best affected unto the King of *Babel*; the rest of his house being more inclined to the *Egyptian*, as appears by the sequel. An Idolater he was, and thrived accordingly. For when as *Neco* had dispatched his businesse in the North parts of *Syria*, then did he take order for the affairs of *Judea*. This Countrey was now so far from making any resistance, that the King himself came from *Riblah* in the land of *Hamath*, where the matter went so ill on his side, that *Neco* did cast him into bonds, and carry him prisoner into *Egypt*, giving away his Kingdome to *Liakim* his elder brother, to whom of right it did belong. The Citie of *Riblah*, in after times called *Antiochia*, was a place unhappy to the Kings and Princes of *Juda*, as may be observed in divers examples. Yet here *Jehojakim*, together with his new name, got his Kingdome; an ill gain, since he could no better use it. But how ever *Jehojakim* thrived by the bargain, *Pharao* sped well, making that Kingdome Tributary, without any stroke stricken; which three moneths before was too stout to give him peace, when he desired it. Certain it is, that in his march outward, *Neco* had a greater task lying upon his hands, than would permit him to waite his forces upon *Judea*: but now the reputation of his good successe at *Megiddo*, and *Charchemish*, together with the diffention of the Princes *Josias* his sons (of whom the eldest is probably thought to have stormed at the preferment of his younger brother) gave him power to doe even what should please himself. Yet he did forbear to make a conquest of the Land, perhaps upon the same reason, which had made him so earnest in seeking to hold peace with it. For the *Jewes* had suffered much in the *Egyptians* quarrell, and being left by these their friends, in time of need, unto all extremities, were driven of necessity to forsake that partie, and to joyn with the enemies; to whom if they shewed themselves faithfull, who could blame them? It was therefore enough to reclaim them; seeing they were such a people as would not upon every occasion shift side, but endure more than *Pharao*, in the pride of his victories, though that any henceforth should lay upon them: so good a Patron did he mean to be unto them. Nevertheless, he laid upon them a Tribute, of an hundred Talents of silver, and one Talent of gold; that so he might both reap at the present some fruit of his pains taken, and leave unto them some document in the future, of greater



greater punishment than verball anger, due to them, if they should rebell. So he departed, carrying along with him into *Egypt* the unfortunate King *Jehobahaz*, who died in his Captivitie.

The reign of *Jehobahaz* was included in the end of his Fathers last year; otherwise it would hardly be found, that *Jehojakim* his successor did reign ten whole years; whereas the Scriptures give him eleven, that are current and incomplete. If any man will rather cast the three moneths of this short reign, into the first year of the brother, than into the fathers last, the same arguments that shall maintain his opinion, will also prove the matter to be unworthy of dispute, and so I leave it.

*Jehojakim* in impietie was like his brother, in faction he was altogether *Egyptian*, as <sup>10</sup> having received his Crown at the hand of *Pharao*. The wickedness of these last Kings, being expresse in Scriptures none otherwise, than by generall words, with reference to all the evil that their Fathers had done, makes it apparent, that the poyson wherewith *Ahaz* and *Manasses* had infected the Land, was not so expelled by the zealous goodnesse of *Josias*, but that it still cleaved unto the chief of the people, *Yea, unto the Priests also*; and therefore it was not strange, that the Kings had their parts therein. The Royall authority was much abased by the dangers whereto the Country stood, in this troublesome age: the Princes did in a manner what they listed; neither would the Kings forbear to professe, that they could deny them nothing. Yet the beginning of *Jehojakim* had the countenance of the *Egyptian* to grace it, which made him insolent and cruell; <sup>20</sup> as we find by that example of his dealing with *Uria* the Prophet: though herein also the Princes do appear to have been instigators. This holy man denounced Gods judgments against the Citie and Temple, in like sort as other Prophets had formerly done, and did in the same age. The King with all the men of power, and all the Princes, hearing of this, determined to put him to death. Herupon the poor man fled into *Egypt*: but such regard was had unto *Jehojakim*, that *Uria* was delivered unto his Embassador, and sent back to the death; contrary to the custome used, both in those dayes, and since among all civill Nations, of giving refuge unto strangers, that are not held guilty of such inhumane crimes, as for the generall good of mankind should be exempted from all privilege.

It concerned *Pharao* to give all contentment possible to *Jehojakim*: for the *Assyrian* <sup>30</sup> Lyon, that had not stirred in many years, began about these times to roar so loud upon the banks of *Euphrates*, that his voice was heard unto *Nilus*, threatening to make himself Lord of all the Forrest. The causes that hitherto had withdrawn the house of *Merodach* from opposing the *Egyptian* in his conquest of *Syria*, require our consideration in this place, before we proceed to commit them together at *Carchemish*, where shortly after this the glory of *Egypt* is to fall.

### s. III.

Of the Kings of Babylon and Media. How it came to passe that the Kings of Babel could not give attendance on their businesse in *Syria*; which caused them to lose that Province.

**M**erodach the son of *Baladan*, who taking the advantage that *Senacherib* misadventure and death, together with the dissention between his children, presented, made himself King of *Babylon*, was eleven years troubled with a powerful Enemy, *Asarhaddon* the son of *Senacherib*, reigning over the *Assyrians* in *Nineve*; from whom whilst he could not any other way divert his cares, hee was faine to omit all businesse in *Syria*, and (as hath been formerly shewed) to make over unto *Ezechia* some part of the Kingdome of the ten Tribes. From this molestation, <sup>50</sup> the death of *Asarhaddon* did not only set him free, but gave unto him some part of *Assyria*, if not (as is commonly, but lesse probably thought) the whole Kingdome. How greatly this was to the liking of the *Assyrians*, I will not here stand to enquire: his long reign following, and his little intermeddling in matters of *Syria*, make it plain, that he had work enough at home, either in defending or establishing that which he had gotten. *Josaphat* gives him the honour of having won *Nineve* it self, which we may believe; but surely he did not hold it long. For in the times soon following, that great Citie was free, and vanquished *Phraortes* the *Median*. Perhaps it yielded upon some capitulation: and

and refused afterwards to continue subject, when the Kings, being of the *Chaldee* race, preferred *Babylon* before it.

Some think that this was the *Assyrian* King, whose Captains took *Manasses* prisoner, but I rather believe those that hold the contrary, for which I have given my reasons in due place. To say truth, I find little cause why *Merodach* should have looked into those parts, as long as the *Jewes* were his friends, and the *Egyptians*, that maligned the Northern Empire, held themselves quiet at home, which was untill the time of *Plammiticus*, about the end of this Kings Reign, or the beginning of his son.

*Ben Merodach* the son and successeur of this King, is not mentioned in the Scriptures; yet is he named by good consent of Authors, and that speak little of his doings. <sup>10</sup> The length of his Reign is gathered by inference to have been one and twenty years; for so much remaineth of the time that passed between the beginning of his Fathers and his *Nephews* Reigns (which is a known summe) deducting the years of his Father, and of his son *Nabulassar*. This (as I take it) was he that had *Manasses* Prisoner, and released him. Hee sped ill in *Syria*; where *Plammiticus*, by the vertue of his Mercenary *Greeks*, did much prevail. This may have been some cause that he released *Manasses*, and did put into his hands some part more of the Kingdome of *Samaria*: which is made probable by circumstances alleged before.

*Nabulassar* that reigned in *Babylon* after his father *Ben Merodach*, had greater businesse in his own Kingdome, than would permit him to look abroad: in so much as it may be <sup>20</sup> thought to have been a great negligence or over-sight of *Plammiticus* and *Necho*, that they did not occupy some good part of his Dominions beyond *Euphrates*. For it was in his time, that *Phraortes* King of the *Medes* invaded *Assyria*, and besieged *Nineve*; from whence he was not repelled by any force of *Nabulassar*, but constrained to remove by the coming of the *Scythians*, who in these ages did overthrow those parts of the world, laying hold upon all that they could master by strong hand. Of these *Scythians*, and the Lordship that they held in *Asia*, it is convenient that I speak in this place, shewing briefly afore-hand, how the *Medes*, upon whom they first fell, were buisted in the same times with hopes of conquering *Assyria*.

*Phraortes*, the sonne of *Deioeces*, King of the *Medes*, having by many victories enlarged his Dominions, conceived at length a fair possibility of making himself Lord of <sup>30</sup> *Nineve*.

That City (as *Herodotus* reports it) having been a Sovereign Lady, was not forsaken of all her dependants; yet remained in such safe, that of her self she was well enough.

This makes it plain, that howsoever *Merodach* had gotten possession of this imperiall seat, and made it subject as was the rest of the Country; yet it found the means to set it self at liberty: as after this again it did, when it had been regained by *Nabulassar* his Grand-child.

Sharp warre, and the very novelty of sudden violence, use to dismay any State or Country, not inured to the like: but custome of danger hardeneth even those that are <sup>40</sup> unwarlike. *Nineve* had been the Palace of many valiant Kings lately reigning therein; it had suffered, and resisted, all the fury, wherewith either Domesticall tumults between the sons of *Senacherib*, or foreign war of the *Babylonians*, could afflict it: and therefore it is the lesse wonderfull, that *Phraortes* did speed so ill in his journey against it. Hee and the most of his Armie perished in that expedition: whereof I find no particular circumstances (perhaps they undervalued their forces, and brought a lesse power than was needfull.) It is enough, that herein we may believe *Herodotus*.

*Cyaxares* the son of *Phraortes*, a braver man of war than his Father, wan as much of *Asia* the lesse, as lay Eastward, from the River of *Halsys*; he sought revenge upon the *Assyrians* for the death of his father, and besieged *Nineve* it self, having a purpose to destroy it. I rather believe *Eusebius*, That he took the City, and fulfilled his displeasure upon it, than *Herodotus*, That the *Scythian* Army came upon him whilst he lay before it. For <sup>50</sup> where equall authorities are contradictory (as *Eusebius*, though far later than *Herodotus*, yet having seen other Authors that are now lost, it is to be valued according to his great reading) there do I hold it best, to yield unto the best likelihoods.

To think that the *Scythians* came upon *Cyaxares*, whilst he lay before *Nineve*, were to accuse him of greater improvidence than ought to be suspected in one commended as a good Souldier. But to suppose that he was faine to leave the Town, when a Warre

so dangerous fell upon his own Country, doth well agree both with the condition of such business as that *Scythian* expedition brought into those parts, and with the State of the *Chaldean* and *Assyrian* affairs ensuing.

The destruction of this great City is both foretold in the Book of *Tobit*, and there set down as happening about these times, of which book whosoever was the Author, he was ancient enough to know the story of those ages, and hath committed no such error in reckoning of times, as should cause us to distrust him in this. As for the Prophecy of *Nahum*, though it be not limited unto any certain term, yet it appears to have taken effect, in the final destruction of *Nineve* by *Nabuchodonosor*, according to the common opinion. For the Prophet hath mention of a conquest of *Egypt*, foregoing this calamity, whereof we will speak in due place. Some that ascribe more authority than the reformed Churches yield, to the book of *Tobit*, are carefull, as in a matter of necessity, to affirm, that about these times, *Nineve* was taken; but they attribute (conjecturally) the victory over it to *Ben Merodach*: a needless conjecture, if the place of *Eusebius* be well considered. Yet I hold it probable, that *Nabulassar* the son of *Ben Merodach* did seize upon it, and place a King or Viceroy therein, about such time as the Country of *Assyria* was abandoned by *Cyaxares*, when the *Scythian* Warre overwhelmed *Media*. For then was the Conquest wrought out ready to his hand; the swelling spirits of the *Ninevites* were allayed, and their malice to *Babylon* so much asswaged, that it might be thought a great favour, if *Nabulassar*, appointing unto them a peculiar King, took him and them in protection: though afterwards to their confusion, this unthankfull People, and their King rebelled again, as shall be shewed in the Reign of *Nabuchodonosor*.

## §. IV.

The great expedition of the *Scythians*, who ruled in *Asia* eight and twenty years;

## †. I.

The time of his expedition.

Now that I have shewed what impediment was given by the *Assyrians* and the *Medes*, to the *Babylonians*, who thereby were much disabled to performe any action of worth upon the *Egyptians* in *Syria*; it is time that I speak of that great *Scythian* expedition, which grievously afflicted not only the *Babylonians*, but the *Medes* and *Lydians*, with the Countries adjacent, in such wise, that part of the trouble redounded even to the *Egyptians* themselves. Of the *Scythian* people in general, *Herodotus* makes very large discourse, but interlaced, as of matter ill known, with many Fables; of this expedition he tells many particulars, but ill agreeing with consent of time. Concerning his fabulous reports, it will be needlesse to recite them; for they are far enough distant from the business in hand. The computation of times which by inference out of his relations, may seem very strange, needeth some answer in this place: lest otherwise I should either seem to make my self too bold with an Author, in citing him after a manner different from his own tale; or else to be too forgetfull of my self, in bringing to act upon the Stage, those persons, which I had already buried. Eight and twenty years, hee saith, that the *Scythians* reigned in *Asia*, before *Cyaxares* delivered the Country from them. Yet hee reports a warre between *Cyaxares* and *Haliattes* the *Lydian*, as foregoing the siege of *Nineve*; the siege of *Nineve* being ere the *Scythians* came. And further he tells, how the *Scythians*, having vanquished the *Medes*, did passe into *Syria*, and were encountered in *Palestina* by *Psammiticus* King of *Egypt*, who by gifts and entreaty procured them to depart from him. These narrations of *Herodotus* may, every one of them, be true; though not in such order of time, as he hath marshalled them. For *Psammiticus* was dead before *Cyaxares* began to reign: and *Cyaxares* had spent half of his forty years, ere *Haliattes* was King of *Lydia*, so that hee could not, after those *Lydian* Warres, reign eight and twenty years together with the *Scythians*. It is true, that *Eusebius* doth also call *Psammis* the sonne of *Phrao Neco*, by the name of *Psammiticus*; and this King *Psammis* may, by some strained conjecture, be thought to have been he that met with the *Scythians*: for hee lived

with both *Cyaxares* and *Haliattes*. But *Eusebius* himselfe refers all that business of the *Scythian* irruption into *Palestina*, to *Psammiticus* the Father of *Necho*, whom he leaves dead before the Reign of *Haliattes*. Therefore I dare not rely upon *Herodotus*, in this matter, otherwise than to believe him, that such things were in these ages, though not in such order as he sets them down.

It remains, that I collect as well as I can, those memorials which I find of this expedition scattered in divers places: a work necessary, for that the greatness of this action was such, as ought not to be omitted in generall History; yet not easie, the consent of those that have written thereof, being nothing neer to uniformity.

I have noted before, that in the reign of *Ardys* King of *Lydia*, the *Cimmerians* overran that Kingdome, and were not expelled, untill *Haliattes* the Nephew of *Ardys* got the upper hand of them. In these times therefore of *Ardys*, *Sadiattes*, and *Haliattes*, are we to find the eight and twenty years, wherein the *Scythians* reigned over *Asia*. Now forasmuch as *Psammiticus* the *Egyptian* had some dealings with the *Scythians*, even in the height of their prosperity, wee must needs allow more than one or two of his last years unto this their Dominion. But the beginning of *Haliattes* his Reign in *Lydia*, being three and twenty years compleat after the death of *Psammiticus*, leaves the space very scant, either for the great victories of the *Scythians*, necessarily supposed before they could meet the *Egyptian* in *Syria*, or for those many losses, which they must have received ere they could be driven quite away. To increase this difficulty, the victorious Reign of *Nabuchodonosor* in *Babylon*, is of no small moment. For how may wee think it possible, that hee should have adventured the strength of the Kingdome against the *Egyptians* and *Fewes*, had he stood in daily fear of losing his own, to a more mighty Nation, that lay upon his neck? To speak simply as it appears to me, the victories ascribed to *Cyaxares* and *Haliattes* over these warlike people, were not obtained against the whole body of their Army, but were the defeatures of some troops that infected their severall Kingdomes; other Princes, and among these *Nabulassar*, having the like successe, when the pleasures of *Asia* had mollified the courages of these hardy Northern Laddes. Wherefore we may probably annex the eight and twenty years of the *Scythians* rule, to as many almost the last of *Nabulassars* Reign, in compasse whereof their power was at the greatest. This is all that I can lay of the time, wherein *Asia* suffered the violence of their oppressors.

## †. II.

What Nations they were that brake into *Asia*; with the cause of their Journey.

Touching the expedition it self, *Herodotus* tells us, that the *Cimmerians* being driven out of their Country by the *Scythians*, invaded and wasted some part of *Asia*; and that the *Scythians*, not contented with having won the land of the *Cimmerians*, did follow them, I know not why, into far removed quarters of the world, for (as it were by chance) falling upon *Media* and *Egypt*, in this pursuit of men that were gone another way into *Lydia*. Hereby we may gather that the *Cimmerians* were an odious and base people; the *Scythians*, as mischievous and foolish; or else *Herodotus*, and some other of his Country-men, great slanderers of those, by whom their Nation had been beaten, and *Ionis*, more than once, grievously ranckled. The great valour of the *Cimmerians* or *Cimbrians* is so well known, and their many Conquests so well testified in Histories of divers Nations, that the malice of the *Greekes* is insufficient to stain them with the note of Cowards. These were the posterity of *Gomer*, who peopled the greatest part of our Western World; and whose re-flow did overwhelm no small portion of *Greece* and *Asia*, as well before and after, as in the age whereof we do now entreat. He that would more largely inform himself of their originall and actions, may peruse *Coropius* because his *Amazonica*; of many things in which Book, that may be verified, which the learned *Orelinus* is said to have spoken of all *Coropius* his works, that it is easie to laugh at them, but hard to confute them: There we find it proved, by such arguments and authorities as are not lightly to be regarded, that the *Cimmerians*, *Scythians* and *Sarmatians*, were all of one Linage and Nation; howsoever distinguished in name, by reason of their divers tribes, professions, or perhaps dialect of speech, *Homer* indeed hath mention of the *Cimmerians*; whose Country whether he placeth in the West, as neer unto the

Ocean and bounds of the Earth, or in the North, as being farre from the Sun, and covered with eternall darknesse; certain it is that he would have them neer neighbours to Hell: for hee had the same quarrell to them which *Herodotus* had, and therefore belike would have made them seem a kind of Goblins. It was the manner of this great Poet (as *Herodotus* writing his life affirms) to insert into his works the names of such as lived in his own time, making such mention of them, as the good or ill done by them to himself deserved. And for this reason it is proved by *Eustathius*, that the *Cimmerians* were so disgraced by him, because they had wasted his Country. Perhaps that invasion of *Phrygia* by the *Amazons*, whereof *Homer* puts a remembrance into *Priamus* his discourse with *Helen*, was the very fame, which *Eusebius* noteth to have happened somewhat before the age of *Homer*, at what time the *Cimmerians* with the *Amazons*, together invaded *Asia*.

This is certain, that both the *Amazons* and the *Cimmerii* (who in after-times were called *Cimbri*) did often break into *Greece* and *Asia*; which though it be not in expresse termes written, that they did with joynt-forces, yet seeing they invaded the self-same places, it may well be gathered, that they were companions. One journey of the *Amazons* into *Greece*, mentioned also by *Eusebius*, was by the streights of the *Cimmerians*, as we find in *Diodore*, who further telleth us, that the *Scythians* therein gave them assistance. The same Authour, before his entry into those discourses of the *Amazons*, which himself acknowledged to be fabulous, doth report them to have been wives of the *Scythians*, and no lesse Warre-like than their Husbands; alleging the example of that Queen who is said to have slain the great *Persian Cyrus*. That it was the manner of the *Cimbri* to carry their wives along with them to the warres; and how desperate the courage was of those Women; the terrible descent of them into *Italy*, when *Marius* the *Roman* overthrew them, gives prooffe sufficient. I will not here enter into a discourse of the *Amazons*; another place will give me better leisure to speak of them: but seeing that they are noted by divers Historians to have belonged unto the *Cimmerians*, to the *Scythians*, and to the *Sarmatians*, we may therefore the better approve *Goropius* his conclusion, That these three Nations were one, at least that they were neer allies.

Now as concerning the expulsion of the *Cimmerians* by the *Scythians*, it appears to have been none other than the sending a Colony of them forth into *Asia*, with an Army of *Scythians* to help them, in purchasing a new seat, and establishing the Plantation.

The *Sarmatians* also were companions in this journey. For the City of *Novograd* in *Russia* (which Country is the same that was called *Sarmatia*) stood in their way homewards, as shall anon be further shewed. So that all the North was up in Armes: and therefore it is no marvell though many Countries felt the weight of this great inundation. Such another voyage was that, which the same people made five hundred years and more after this, when they were encountered by the *Romans*. For they issued from the parts about the Lake *Maotis*; they were then likewise assisted (saith *Plutarch* in the most likely report of them) by the *Scythians* their neighbours; they had in their Army above three hundred thousand fighting men, besides a huge multitude of women and children; they wandered over many Countries, beating all down before them; and finally, thinking to have settled themselves in *Italy*, they divided their Company, for the more easie passage thither, and were consumed in three terrible battells by the *Roman* Consuls, Meere necessity enforced these poor Nations to trouble the World, in following such hard adventures. For their Country being more fruitfull of men than of sustenance, and shut up on the North side with intolerable cold, which denied so issue that way to their over-swelling multitudes; they were compelled to discharge upon the South, and by right or wrong to drive others out of possession, as having title to all that they had power to get, because they wanted all, that weaker, but more civill, people had. Their sturdy bodies, patient of hunger, cold, and all hardnesse, gave them great advantage over such as were accustomed unto a more delicate life, and could not be without a thousand superfluities. Wherefore most commonly they prevailed very farre; their next neighbours giving them free passage, that they might the sooner be rid of them; others giving them, besides passage, victuals and guides to conduct them to more wealthy places; others hiring them to depart with great presents; so as

the farther they went on, the more pleasant Lands they found, and the more effeminate people.

### †. III.

#### Of the Cimmerians warre in Lydia.

The first Company of these, consisting for the most part of *Cimmerians*, held the way of the *Euxine* Seas, which they had still on the right hand; leaving on the other side, & behind them, the great Mountains of *Caucasus*. These having passed through the Land of *Colchis*, that is now called *Mengrelli*, entered the Country of *Pontus*, & being arrived in *Phrylagonia*, fortified the Promontory, whereon *Synope*, a famous Haven Town of the *Greeks*, was after built. Here it seemes that they bestowed the weakest and most unserviceable of their traine, together with the heaviest part of their carriages, under some good guard: as drawing near to those Regions, in conquest whereof they were to trie the utmost hazzard. For in like sort afterwards did the *Cimbri* (of whom I spak even now) dispose of their impediments, leaving them in a place of strength, where *Antwerp* now stands, when they drew neare unto *Gaule*, upon which they determined to adventure themselves in the purchase. From *Sinop*, the way unto *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, and *Ionia*, was faire and open to the *Cimmerians*, without any ladg of Mountaines, or any deep Rivers at all to stay their march: for *Iris* and *Halys* (the) had already passed.

What battels were fought between these invaders and the *Lydians*, & with what variable successe the one or other part wanne and lost, I find not written, nor am able to conjecture. This I find, that in the time of *Arads*, the *Cimmerians* got possession of *Sardis* the capital City of *Lydia*; only the Cattle holding out against them. Further I observe, that whereas *Herodotus* tells of the acts performed by *Cyges* and *Arads* Kings of *Lydia*, before this invasion, and by *Halyattes* and *Cresus* in the times following, all that *Arads* did against the *Cimmerians*, and all, save burning the *Milesiens* Corn fields, that was done in twelve years by *Sadyattes* his Son (who perhaps had his hands so full of this businesse, that he could turn them to nothing else) is quite omitted: whereby it may seeme, that neither of the two did any thing worthy of remembrance in those wars, but were glad enough that they did lose all.

Certainly the miseries of war are never so bitter and many, as when a whole Nation, or great part of it, forsaking their own seats, labour to root out the established possesours of another Land, making room for themselves, their wives and children. They that fight for the mastery, are pacified with tribute, or with some other services and acknowledgements; which had they been yielded at the first, all had been quiet, and no sword bloudied. But in these migrations, the assailants bring so little with them, that they need all which the defendants have; their Lands and Cattell, their houses and their goods, even to the cradles of the sucking infants. The mercilesse termes of this controversy, arme both sides with desperate resolution: seeing the one part must either winne, or perish by famine; the other defend their goods, or lose their lives without redemption. Most of the Countries in *Europ* have felt examples thereof; and the mighty Empire of *Rome* was overthrown by such invasions. But our Isle of *Britaine* can best witness the diversity of Conquests; having by the happy victory of the *Romans*, gotten the knowledge of all Civill Arts, in exchange of liberty, that was but slenderly intrusted therein before; whereas the issue of the *Saxon* and *Danish* Wars, was, as were the causes, quite contrary. For these did not seek after the Dominion only, but the entire possession of the Country, which the *Saxons* obtained, but with horrible cruelty, eradicating all of the British Race, & defacing all memoriall of the ancient inhabitants through the greater part of the Land. But the *Danes* (who are also of the *Cimmerian* blood) found such end of their enterprize, as it may seeme that the *Cimmerians* in *Lydia*, & *Scythians* in the higher *Asia*, did arrive unto. So that by considering the process of the one, we shall the better conceive the fortune of the other. Many battails the *Danes* wonne, yet none of such importance, as sufficed to make them absolute Conquerours: Many the *Saxons* won upon the *Danes*, yet not so great, as could drive them quite away, and back from hence, after they had gotten firme footing. But in course of time, the long continuance even of utter enmity, had bred such acquaintance

between them, as bowing the natures of both these people, made the one more pliant unto the other. So their disagreeable qualities, both ill and good, being reduced in one mild temper; no small number of the *Danes* became peaceable cohabitants with the *Saxons* in *England*, where great slaughter had made large room; & others returning home, found their own Country wide enough to receive them, as having bisburthened it (self of many thousands, that were sent to seek their graves abroad. And such (as I think) was the end of the *Cimmerian* warre in *Lydia*; whereunto though some victory of *Halyattes* may have hastened the conclusion, yet the wearisome length of time seems to have done most, in compelling them to desire of rest. I know not why I should care to adde hereunto my further Conjecture, which is, that the matter was so compounded between the *Cimmerians* & *Halyattes*, that the River of *Halys* should divide their Territories. For *Halys* was henceforth the border of the *Lydians*, and on the Easterne side of the River was the Country of the *Amazons*, that is indeed, of the *Cimmerians*; and other *Scythian* people; whose wives and daughters these warlike women are supposed to have been.

Head lib. 1.

And hereunto the quarrell ensuing between *Halyattes* and *Cyxares* the *Mede*, hath very good reference. For *Halyattes* (as is said) fought in defence of certain *Scythians*, upon whom the *Median* sought revenge. And it stands with reason, that the *Lydians* and *Cimmerians*, being much weakened by mutuall slaughters, should have joyed in a league of mutuall defence for their common safety: though otherwise it had been dangerous to *Halyattes*, if hee had permitted the *Median* to extend his Kingdome so farre Westward, whatsoever the pretences might be, of taking revenge upon such as had spoiled each of their Countries. As for that occasion of the Warre between these two Kings, which *Herodotus* relates, I find it of little weight, and lesse probability. He tells of *Scythians*, that being chased out of their Country by faction, came unto *Cyxares*, who committed unto them certain Boyes to be instructed in the *Scythian* tongue, and feat of Archery. Now it is to be noted (saith he) that these *Scythians* using much to hunt, & commonly bringing home somewhat with them, did nevertheless other-whiles misse of their game, and came home as they went. Hereupon the King being froward & cholerick, bitterly reviled them; & they, as impatient as he, killed one of the Boyes that was under their charge, whom, dressing like Venison, they presented unto him; which done, they fledde unto *Halyattes*. This *Herodotus* delivers, as the ground of a war that lasted sixe yeeres between the *Medes* and *Lydians*; the one King demanding these *Fugitives* to be delivered into his hand, the other refusing to betray such men as were become his suppliants. To this I will say no more, than that I see no cause that might induce the *Scythians* to betake themselves to either of their Kings, unto whom their Nation had wrought so much displeasure. Particularly, they had reason to distrust *Cyxares*, for the treachery that he shewed in the massacring of their Country-men that were in his Kingdome, of whom it is now meet that we should speak.

†. IV.

The Warre of the *Scythians* in the higher Asia.

As the *Cimmerians* held their course westerly, along the shores of the *Euxine* sea, so the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* took the other way, and having the *Caspian* Sea on their left hand, passed between it and *Caucasus*, through *Albania*, *Colchene*, and other obscure Nations, where now are the Countries of *Servan* and *Georgia*, and so they entered into *Media*. The *Medes* encountered them in Armes, but were beaten, and thereupon glad to come to any agreement with them. This was in the time of *Phraortes*, whilst *Psammiticus* reigned in *Egypt*. It were in the sixt yeere of *Nabulassars* Reign over *Babylon* (supposing him to have reigned five and thirty; otherwise we must allow to *Ben Merodach* what we take from him) then doe the eight and twenty yeeres of their Dominion end, one year before the great *Nabuchodonosor* was King; so giving him good leave to provide securely for the invasion of *Syria*; which expedition hee began while his Father yet lived, as *Foscephus* out of *Berosus* relates the History.

Now the *Medes*, desirous to save themselves as well as they might, from this terrible nation, which when they had no lust to a second triall of the sword, refused not to under-

40

goe the burthen of a Tribute, but thought nothing dishonourable, that would serve to remove these troublesome guests into some other lodging. On the other part, the *Scythians* finding still the Countries pleasanter & better, the further that they marched into the South, did suffer themselves to be persuaded, that a little more travaile would adde a great deale more to their content. For they relied so much upon their own valour, that they feared no resistance; & being the bravest men, they thought it reason that they should dwell in the best Region. That *Phraortes* perswaded them into *Egypt*, I doe not think: *Babylon* was neare enough; whether if he could send these Locusts to graze, then should not his unfriendly Neighbours have cause to laugh at his misfortune. What (thist  
10 *Nabulassar* made with them, or that at all he had any dealings with them, I doe not read. But it is well known that his Dominions lay in the midst between *Media* & *Egypt*; as also, that they made all those parts of *Asia* Tributary; wherefore we may very well believe, that they watered their horse in his Rivers, and that he also was content to give them provender.

*Psammiticus* hearing of their progresse (like the jealous Husband of a fair Wife) took care that they might not look upon *Egypt*, lest the sight thereof should more easily detain them there, than any force or perswasion that hee could use would send them going. Therefore hee met them in *Syria*, presuming more on the great gifts which he meant to bestow upon them, than on his Army that should keep them back. *Egypt* was rich; and half the riches had not been ill spent in saving all. Yet *Psammiticus* took the most likely course, whereby to make his part good against them by strong hand, in case they had been so obstinate as to refuse all indifferent composition. For he lay close upon the edge of the Wildernesse in *Gaza* (as I take it) the Southermost border of *Palestina*: whence he never advanced to meet with the *Scythians*, but gave them leave to feel as much of the scalding Sunne-beames, ill agreeing with their temper, as all the length of *Syria* could bear upon them. When they were come as farre as *Ascalon*, the next City to *Gaza*, then did he assay them with goodly words, accompanied with gifts, which were likely to work so much the better, by how much the worse they were pleased with the heat of a Climate so farre different from their own. *Psammiticus* had at his back a vast wildernesse, over the scorching sands whereof, the *Scythians* more patient of cold and wet, than of the contrary distempers, could ill have endured to pursue him through unknown wayes, had they fought with him and prevailed, especially the Kingdome of *Egypt* being ready to entertaine him with relief, and them with new trouble at the end of their weary journey. Wherefore they were content to be intreated, & taking in good part his courteous offers, returned back to visit their acquaintance in the high Countries. The *Egyptian* King (besides that hee preserved his own Estate from a dangerous adventure, by hying this great Army to depart from him) found all his Coast well repayed in the proesse of his wars in *Syria*, vvhere the Nations beyond *Euphrates* had no povver to molest him; being more than ever troubled themselves with the return of their oppressors. For the *Scythians*, resolving now to seek no further, began to demand more than the Tribute formerly imposed. And not contented to fleece the Naturals vvith grievous exactions, they presumed to live at discretion upon the Country, taking vvhat they listed from the Owners; and many times (as it vvere to save the labour of taking often) taking all at once. This Tyrannous Dominion they long used over the higher *Asia*, that is, over the Country lying between the *Caspian* and *Red Seas*; and between *India* and *Asia* the lesse. Happy it was for the poor people, that in so large a space of ground, there was room enough for these new comers, otherwise the calamity that fell, as it were by chance, upon those private men, to whose wealth any *Scythian* did bear a fancy, would have lighted in generall upon all at one  
50 clap, leaving few alive, and none able to relieve their fellows. Yet it seems that the heaviest burthen lay upon *Media*; for it was a fruitful Country, not farre from their own home, and lay under a Climate well agreeing with the constitution of their bodies, there also it was that they had the fatall blow, by which their insolent Rule was taken from them.

*Cyxares* King of the *Medes*, who in this extremity was no better than a Rent-gatherer for the *Scythians*, perceiving that his Land lay unmanured and waste, through the negligence of his people, that were out of heart by daily oppressions, and that the matter could not be remedied by open force, resolved to prove what might be done by stratagem:

Head lib. 1.

stratagem. The manging of the businesse is thus delivered in brief; That he, and his Medes, feasted the better part of the Scythians, made them drunk, and slew them; recovering hereby the possession of all that they had lost.

Such another slaughter was committed upon the Danes in England; but it was revenged by their Countreimen, with greater cruelty than ever they had practised before. That the Scythians which escaped this bloody feast, made any stirre in Media, I do not find; neither do I read that either in reveng hereof, or upon other pretence, the Medes were troubled by invasion from Scythia in time following.

Hec. lib. 4.

This is the more strang, for that the Army returning home out of Medis, was very strong, & encountered with opposition (as Herodotus reports it) no lesse than it had found 10 abroad. Wherefore it may be, that the device of Cyaxares to free his Country, took good effect, with lesse blood-shed than hath been supposed. For if he surpris'd all the chief of them, it was no hard matter to make a good composition. Many of them doubtlesse in eight and twenty years had so well settled themselves, that they were desirous of rest, and might be permitted, without any danger, to remaine in the Country; many (of whom I shall speak anon) having done what they could in the businesse, for which they came forth, were willing to return home with what they had gotten; such as were not pleased with either of these two courses, might goe joyn with the Cimmerians in Lydia, or seeke their fortunes in other Provinces among their own Companions. Whereas all the Families of the North are said to have bin with Nabuchadnezzar, it may 20 be understood, that a great part of the Scythians, upon hope of gain, or desire to keepe what they had already gained, were content to become subject unto Nabuchadnezzar: men love of their wealth being most effectually, in taming the more unquiet love of inordinate liberty. This is certaine, that Nabuchadnezzar, as ever after, so in his first beginning of warre, did beat the Egyptians, who in ages foregoing had been accustomed to deal with the Babylonians after another fashion: & this new successe of that King may be imputed, in regard of human meanes, to such addition as this of new forces.

Jerem. 35. 9.

Of the Scythian Army returning out of Media, divers Authors report a Story, which confirms me in the opinion, that this Company went forth to assist their kinned 35 friends, in acquiring a new seat, and establishing their plantation. For these had left their wives behind them; a good argument to prove that they meant to come again. The Scythian women, to comfort themselves in their husbands absence, became bed-fellows to their slaves. These got a lusty brood of youths, that were loth to be troubled with Fathers-in-Law, & therefore prepared to fight with them at their return. If they were onely the children of slaves, which compounded an Army (as Herodotus would have it, who tels us, that the Scythians were wont to pull out all their bond-mens eyes) it must needes be that they were very boyes, or else that the Women did very little while continue chaste. Wherefore I rather believe that tale as it is told by the Russes themselves, who agreeing in the rest with the consent of Histories, make that report of their Ance- 40 stors returning homewards, which I will let down, as I find it in Master Doctor Fletcher his exact discourse of the Russe Common-wealth. They under stood by the way, that their Chero- lopey, or Bond-slaves, whom they left at home, had in their absence possessed their towns, lands, houses, Wives, and all. At which news being somewhat amazed, and yet disdain- ing the Villany of their servants, they made the more speed home: and so not farre from Novograd met them in warlike manner marching against them. Whereupon advising what was best to be done, they agreed also to set upon them with no other shew of weapon but with their horse-whips (which as their manner is, every man rideth withall) so put them in remembrance of their (ter- 45 rible condition, thereby to terrefie them, and abate their courage. And so marching on, & lashing all together with their whips in their hands, they gave the onset: which seemed so terrible in the eares of their Villaines, & brook such a sense into them of the smart of the whip, which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like Sheep before the Drivers. In memory of this victory, the Novogradians ever since have stamped their Coin (which they call a Dingoe Novogradskoy, current through all Russia) with the figure of a Horseman shaking a whip a- lost in his hand. It may seeme, that all the women of that Country have feared the worse ever since, in regard of the universall fault: For such a Pudkey or whip, as terrefied those slaves, curiously wrought by her self, is the first present that the Moscovian wife, even in time of vvooving, sends to him that shall be her husband, in token of subjection; being

Rus. Common-  
wealt.  
cap. 4.

well assured to feel it often on her own loines. But this was a Document unto the Scythians, or rather Sarmatians (for Novograd stands in the Country that was called Sarmatia) to beware of absenting themselves any more so long from their wives; which after this, I find not that they did.

Thus much I thought good to set down of the Scythian expedition; not only because it is the most memorable act performed abroad by that Nation, famous in Histories, and terrible to many Countries; but for that it appears to have been a great cause of the Egyptians prevailing hitherto in Syria, and about Judaea, which continues yet a while the center of our discourse.

10

s. V.

Of Princes living in divers Countreies, in these ages.

HAVING thus far digressed from the matters of Juda, to avoide all further occasi- on of doing the like, I will here insert a note of such Kings, and men of mark, as were between the death of Manasses, and the ruine of Jerusalem. Of the Egyptians, Babylonians, Medes, and Lydians, I have spoken as much as I thought need- full. In Rome, Tullus Hostilius held the Kingdom, untill the one and twentieth year of Josias; at which time Ancus Martius succeeding, reigned four and twenty years. 20 After him L. Tarquinius Priscus, a new-come stranger, but very rich, prevailed so far, by his graciousnesse among the people that he got the Kingdom to himself, disappoin- ting the sonnes of Ancus, over whom he was Tutor. He began in the fourth year of Zedekia, and reigned eight and thirty years. In this time it was, namely, in the se- cond year of the thirtieth Olympiad, that the Lacedaemonians bethinking them how to be avenged of the Arcadians, who gave succour to the Messenians against them in the former war, entred their Territory, took the City of Phigalia or Phialia, from whence their Garrisons were soon after beaten out. Cyffelus expelling the race of the Bacide, made himself Lord of Corinth about these times, and governed it in peace thirty years; leaving for successeur his sonne Periander, one of the seven Sages, but a cruell Tyrant: 30 who among other vile acts, slew his own wife, and afterwards, as in her honour, strpp'd all the Corinthian women stark naked, burning their apparell, as an acceptable offering to her Ghost. Hereby we may perceive, that the wisdome of the Greeks was not ex- cellen in those dayes, when such a one as this could bee admired as excellen all the Country.

In these times also were Zaleucus and Draco, famous Lawgivers, the one among the Locrians in Italy, the other in the City of Athens. The Lawes of Draco were so rigorous, that he was said to have written them with blood: for he rewarded every small offence with death. Wherefore his Constitutions were soon abrogated, and power given to Solon by the Athenians, to make new in their stead. But the Lawes of Zaleucus were very 40 mild. He forbid any Gentlewoman to walk abroad with more than one Bond-woman attending on her, unless it were when she was drunk; or to goe forth of the Town by night, unless it were to some sweet-hearts bed; or to dresse her self up in immodest bravery, unless it were to inveigle a lover. By which pleasant Ordinances he effected his desire; for none would seem, in breaking the Statutes, to be in such case as chal- lenged the dispensation. It is noted in this man as a singular example of justice, that when his own son had committed adultery, and was therefore to lose both his eyes, hee did not cause him to be pardoned, but gave one eye of his own to save the young man (who also lost one) from utter blindness.

I shall not henceforth need so farre to wander, as hitherto I often have done, in 50 pursuing of actions collateral to the History, for inserting them in their order of time. The Chaldaeans will soon fall under the Persians; ere long, encounter with the Greekes; the Greeks, with the Romans; the Romans, with many Nations. Concerning all these, as they shall successively present themselves, in their flourishing Estate, it will be enough to recapitulate the most memorable accidents, that befell them in their Minority. But in the long space of more than thirteen hundred years, which passed between the calling of Abraham, and the destruction of Jerusalem, wee find little matter, wherein the History of Israel had any dealing with other Nations, than the very nearest borders. Yet read wee of many Kingdomes, that in these many ages were erected, and

and

and thrown down; as likewise, many memorable acts were performed in Greece and elsewhere, though not following one another at any near distance; all which must have been quite omitted, or else referred unto a very unreasonable rehearsal, had they not been disposed in this method, whereof he that will not allow the convenience, may pardon the necessity.

## S. VI.

*The oppression of Judæa, and destruction of Jerusalem by the Chaldeans.*

**N**OW to return to the Jewish Story, from whence we have so far digressed. In the third year of *Jehojakim*, *Nabuchodonosor* the second, his Father yet living, entered *Judæa* with a great Army, who besieging and forcing *Jerusalem*, made *Jehojakim* his Vassall in despite of *Necho*, that had established him King, and took with him for pledges *Daniel*, being as yet a child, with *Ananias*, *Misael*, and *Azarias*. Also he took a part of the Church treasures; but stayed not to search them thoroughly; for *Necho* halted to the succour of *Jehojakim*, hoping to find *Nabuchodonosor* in *Judæa*; wherein this great *Babylonian* had no disposition to hazard himself and his Army, it being a Country of an evil affection towards him, as also far off from any succour or sure place of retreat. If he had, as may be supposed, any great strength of *Scythian* horsemen in his Army, it was the more wisely done of him, to fall back, out of the rough, mountainous, and over-hot Country, into places that were more even and temperate. But besides all these reasons, the death of his father happening at the same time, gave him just occasion to return home, and take possession of his own Kingdom, before he proceeded further in the second care, of adding more unto it. This he did at reasonable good leisure: for the *Egyptian* was not ready to follow him so far, and to bid him battle, untill the new year came in; which was the fourth of *Jehojakim*, the first of *Nabuchodonosor*, and the last of *Necho*. In this year the *Babylonian* lying upon the Bank *Emphrates* (his own Territory bounding it on the North-side) attended the arrivall of *Necho*. There, after a resolved contention for victory, *Necho* was slain, and his Army remaining forced to save it selfe; which full ill it did, by a violent retreat. This victory *Nabuchodonosor* so well pursued, as he recovered all *Syria*, and whatsoever the *Egyptians* held out of their proper Territory towards the North. The *Egyptians* being in this conflict beaten, & altogether for the present discouraged, *Jehojakim* held himself quiet, as being friend in heart unto the *Egyptian*, yet having made his peace with the *Chaldean* the year before; who contented with such profit as hee could then readily make, had forbore to lay any Tribute upon *Juda*. But this cool reservednesse of *Jehojakim*, was, on both sides, taken in ill part. The *Egyptian* King *Psammitis*, who succeeded unto *Necho*, began to think upon restoring *Jehoaabaz*, taken prisoner by his Father, and letting him up as a Domesticall Enemy, against his ungratefull brother. Against all such accidents, the *Judean* had prepared the usuall remedy practised by his forefathers: for he had made his own son *Jechonias* King with him long before, in the second year of his own Reign, when the Boy was but eight years old. As for this rumour of *Jehoaabaz*'s return, the Prophet *Jeremy* foretold, that it should prove idle, saying: *Hee shall not returne thither, but he shall die in the place whither they have led him captive, and shall see this Land no more.* The *Egyptians* indeed, having spent all their Mercenary forces, and received that heavy blow at *Carchemish*, had not remaining such proportion of sharp steel, as of fair gold, which without other help, is of little effect. The valour of *Necho* was not in *Psammitis* *Apries*, who reigning after *Psammitis*, did once adventure to shew his face in *Syria*; but after a big look, hee was glad to retire, without adventuring the hazard of a battell. Wherefore this decaying Nation fought onely with brave words, telling such frivolous tales, as men that mean to doe nothing, use, of their glorious acts fore-past, against *Iosias* & *Jehoaabaz*. In this case it was easie for *Jehojakim* to give them satisfaction, by letting them understand the sincerity of his affection towards them, which appeared in time following. But *Nabuchodonosor* went to work more roundly. He sent a peremptory message to *Jehojakim*, willing him not to stand upon any nice points, but acknowledge himself a Subject, and pay him Tribute: adding hereunto such fearfull threats, as made the poor *Judean* lay aside all thought of *Pharaoh*, and yeeld to doe, as the more mighty would have him. So he continued in the

*Joseph. Antiq. lib. 10. c. 7.*

the obedience of *Nabuchodonosor* three years. At this time *Jeremy* the Prophet cried out against the *Jewes*, putting them in mind that he had now three and twenty years exhorted them to repentance, but because they had stop't their ears against him, and the rest of the Prophets, hee now pronounced their captivity at hand, and that they should endure the yoke of bondage full seventy years. The same calamity he threatened to all the neighbouring Nations, to the *Egyptians*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Idumeans*, and the rest; foretelling that they should all drink out of the *Babylonian* Pitcher, the wine of his fury, whom they had forsaken; and after the seventy years expired, that the *Babylonians* themselves should taste of the same Cup, and be utterly subverted by the *Medes*, and *Jerem. 25.* 10 the *Judeans* permitted to return again into their own Fields and Cities. The first imprisonment of the Prophet *Jeremy* seems to have been in the fourth year of this *Jehojakim*, at which time *Baruch* the Scribe wrote all his Prophecies out of his mouth, whom he sent to read them unto the People, and afterward to the Princes, who offered them to the King; but fearing the Kings fury, they had first set *Jeremy* at liberty, and advised him and *Baruch* to hide themselves.

*Jehojakim*, after he heard a part of it, and perceived the ill news therein delivered, made no more ado, but did cut the Book in pieces and cast it into the fire. All which *Jeremy* caused to be new written with this addition; that the dead body of *Jehojakim* should be cast out, exposed in the day to the heat, and in the night to the frost, and there should be none of his seed to sit on the Throne of *David*.

Time thus running on, while *Jehojakim* rested secure of all danger, as Tributary to the *Babylonian*, yet well thought of by the *Egyptian*; the mighty City of *Tyre* opposed it self against the *Chaldean* forces, and upon just confidence of her own strength, despised all preparation that could be made against her. Now so far as the terms of seventy years was prescribed unto the desolation, as well of *Tyre*, as of *Jerusalem*, and other towns and countries; it is apparent, that they which refferre the expugnation of this City unto the nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor*, have sure authority for their warrant. Whereupon likewise it followes of necessity, that the siege thereof began in the seventh of his Reign; as having lasted thirteen years.

Here I will take leave to intrude a brief note, concerning the severall beginnings that are reckoned of this great Prince his Rule, whereupon hath risen much disputation. The third year of *Jehojakim*, was the last of *Nabulassar*, who being delivered from other cares, took notice of such as had revolted from him unto *Pharao Necho*, and sent this Noble Prince his son, with an Army into *Syria*, to reclaim them. In this expedition was *Daniel* carried away, who therefore makes mention of the same year. The year next following, being the fourth of *Jehojakim*, was the first of *Nebuchadnezzar*; which *Jeremy* affirmeth in expresse words; and from this we reckon all his time and actions that follow. In his three and twentieth year he conquered *Egypt*; and then began to reign as a great Monarch, finding none that durst offend him. The second from this year it was, wherein hee saw that vision, of the Image consisting of sundry Metals; which did prefigure the succession of great Kingdomes, that should rule the Earth, before the coming of Christ. I will not stand to dispute about this, which is the best conclusion that I find, of long disputations: but return unto the siege of *Tyre*, which began in the seventh of his Reign.

The City of *Tyre* covered all the ground of an Island, that was divided from the main, by a deep and broad channell of the Sea. The *Chaldeans* had no Fleet, and were no Sea-men; the *Tyrians*, in multitude of goodly Sips, and skill to use them, excelled all other Nations; and every wind, from one part or other, brought needfull provisions into the City. Wherefore neither force, nor famine could greatly hurt the place; whereof nevertheless the judgements of God (denounced against it by *Esay*, *Jeremy*, *Ezechiel*) had threatened the destruction; and the obstinate resolution of *Nabuchodonosor* had fully determined to performe it. This high-minded King, impatient of resistance, undertook a vast piece of work, even to fill up the Sea that parted the Island from the Continent. The City of old *Tyre*, that stood opposite to the new, upon the firm Land, and the mountain of *Libanus* neer adjoining that was loaden with Cedars, and abundance of other trees, might furnish him with materials. Thirteen years were spent in this laborious, and almost hopelesse business. Which needeth not seem strange: for *Alexander* working upon that foundation which was remaining of *Nabuchodonosors* Peere, and being

*Jerem. 25. 1.*  
*Jerem. 25. 1.*

*Esay 22.*  
*Jerem. 25.*  
*Ezek. 25.*



being withall assisted by a strong Fleet, was yet seven moneths ere he could make way into the City. Wherefore, if the raging of the Sea was able to carry away that where-with *Alexander* laboured to cover a shelve; with much more violence could it overturn, and as it were consume, the work of *Nabuchodonosor*, who laid his foundations in the bottom of the deep; striving as it were, to fill the empty belly of this Cormorant, whereas the *Macedonian* did only stop the throat of it. Every man knows, God could have furthered the accomplishment of his own threats, against this place (though it had not pleased him to use, either Miracle, or such of his more immediate weapons, as are Earthquakes, and the like) by making at least the Seas calm, and adding the favourable concurrence of all second helps. But so it pleased him oftentimes, in chastising the pride of man, to use the hand of man; even the hand of man striving, as may seem, against all resistance of nature and fortune. So in this excessive labour of the *Chaldeans*, Every head was made bald, and every shoulder was made bare. Yet *Nabuchodonosor* would not give over till he was master of the Town.

Ezek. 29.

Joseph. Antiq.  
Jud. 10. 67.

When he was entred upon this desperate service; whether it were so, that some losses received, some mutiny in his Army, or (which is most likely, and so *Josephus* reports) some glorious rumour of the *Egyptians*, gave courage to his evil willers; *Febojakim* renounced his subjection, and began to hope for the contrary of that which quickly fell out. For *Nabuchodonosor* gave him no leisure to do much hurt: but with part of his Army marched directly into *Judea*, where the amazed King made so little resistance (the *Egyptians* having left him, as it were, in a dream) that he entred *Jerusalem* and layed hands on *Febojakim*, whom he first bound and determined to send to *Babylon*, but changing counsell, he caused him to be slain in the place, and gave him the Sepulchre of an Ass, to be devoured by beasts and ravenous birds, according to the former Prophecies; leaving in his place *Febojakim* or *Febochias* his son; whom, after three moneths and ten dayes, *Nabuchodonosor* removed, and sent prisoner to *Babylon*, with *Ezekiel*, *Mardocheus* and *Sedech*, the high Priest. The mother of *Febochias*, together with his servants Eunuchs, and all the ablest men, and best Artificers of the Land, were also then carried away Captives. This *Febochias*, following the counsell of *Jeremy* the Prophet, made no resistance; but submitted himself to the Kings will: wherein he both pleased God, and did that which was best for himself; though at the present it might seem otherwise, to such as considered the evil that befell him, rather than the greater evil that he thereby avoided. This onely particular act of his is recorded, which was good. But it seems that he was partaker, at least of his Fathers faults, if not an instigator, which was the cause, that his submitting himself to Gods pleasure did not preserve his Estate: for so we read in generall words, that he did evil in the sight of the Lord, according to all that his Father had done. In his stead *Nabuchodonosor* established *Mathania* his Uncle in the Kingdom of *Juda*, and called him *Zedechias*, which is as much to say, as the justice of God. For like as *Neco* King of *Egypt* had formerly displaced *Ichoabaz*, after his Father *Josias* was slain, and set up *Febojakim*, the son of another mother; so *Nabuchodonosor* slew *Febojakim*, who depended on the *Egyptians*, and carrying his son *Febochias* Prisoner to *Babel*, gave the Kingdom to this *Zedechias*, that was whole Brother to that *Feboabaz*, whom *Neco* took with him into *Egypt*. From *Zedechias* he required an oath for his faithfull obedience, which *Zedechias* gave him, and called the living God to witnesse in the same, that he would remain assured to the Kings of *Chaldea*.

In the first year of *Zedechias*, *Jeremy* law and expounded the Vision of the ripe and rotten Grapes, the one signifying those *Judeans* that were carried away captive, the other those that stayed and were destroyed.

In the fourth of *Zedechias*, *Jeremy* wrote in a book all the evil that should fall upon *Babylon*, which book or scrole he gave to *Sheraia* when he went with the King *Zedekias* to *Babylon*, to visit *Nabuchodonosor*, willing him first to read it to the Captive *Jewes*, and then to bind it to a stone, and cast it into *Euphrates*, pronouncing these words: Thus shall *Babel* be drowned, and shall not rise from the evil that I will bring upon her. This journey of *Zedechias* to *Babel* is probably thought to have been in way of visitation, carrying some presents. But I further think, that he had some sure there to make, which his Lordly Master refused to grant, and sent him away discontented. For at his return all the bordering Princes sent Messengers to him, inciting him (as it seems) to those unquiet courses, from which *Jeremy* dehorted both him and them. The Prophet, by Gods appoint-

appointment, made bonds and yokes, one of which he wore about his own neck, others he sent unto the five Kings, of *Edom*, *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Tyre* and *Zidon* by those Messengers which came to visit *Zedechias*: making them know, that if they and the Kings of *Juda* abode in the obedience of *Babylon*, they should then possess and enjoy their own countries; if not, they should assuredly perish by the sword, by fire, and by pestilence.

He also foretold them, that those Vessels which as yet remained in *Jerusalem*, should also travell after the rest, and at length they should be restored again.

The same year *Ananias*, the false Prophet, took off the wooden Chain which *Jeremy* wore in sign of the Captivity of the *Jewes*, and brake it: Vaunting, that in like manner, after two years God would break the strength of *Babel*, and the yoke which he layd on all Nations; restore *Febochias* and all the *Jewes*, with the Vessels and riches of the Temple, and give an end to all these troubles. But *Jeremy*, in stead of his wooden yoke, wore a Coller of yron: and in sign that *Ananias* had given a deceitfull and false hope to the people, he foretold the death of this cold Prophet, which seized upon him in the second Moneth. After this, when *Zedechias* had wavered long enough between Faith and Passion, in the eighth year of his reign, hee practised more seriously against *Nabuchodonosor*, with his Neighbours the *Edomites*, *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, *Tyrians*, and others that were promised great aydes of the *Egyptians*: in confidence of whose resistance, he determined to shake off the *Babylonian* yoke. Hereof when *Nabuchodonosor* had knowledge, he marched with his Army in the dead of Winter, toward *Jerusalem*, and besieged it. *Jeremy* perswaded *Zedechias* to render the City and himself: but being confident of the help from *Egypt*, and being perswaded by his Counsellors and false Prophets, that it was impossible that the Kingdom of *Juda* should be extirpate, untill the coming of *Silo* (according to the Prophecy of *Jacob*) he despised the words of *Jeremy*, and imprisoned him. For *Jeremy* had told the King that the City should be taken and burnt; that the King should not escape, but be taken prisoner, and brought to the presence of *Nabuchodonosor*; that he should not perish by the sword, but being carried to *Babel*, die his naturall death.

*Jerusalem* being the following year surrounded by *Nabuchodonosors* Armie; the King of *Egypt*, *Pharao Hophra*, according to *Jeremy*, (*Herodotus* calleth him *Apries*) had entred the border of *Juda* with his Army to succour *Zedechias*, of whose revolt he had been the principall Author. But *Jeremy* gave the *Jewes* faithfull counsell, willing them not to have any trust in the succours of *Egypt*: for he assured them that they should return again, and in no sort relieve them. And it fell out accordingly. For when the *Chaldeans* removed from *Jerusalem* to encounter the *Egyptians*, these vaunting Patrons abandoned their enterprise, and taking *Gaza* in their way homeward, returned into *Egypt*, as if they had already done enough; leaving the poor people of *Jerusalem* to their destined miseries.

In the mean while the *Jewes*, who in their first extremity had manumitted their Hebrew Bond-men (as Gods Law required at the year of Jubile) and made them free, thereby the better to encourage them to fight; did now upon the breaking up of the *Chaldean* Army, repent them of their Charity: and thinking all had been at an end, held them perforce to their former slavery. But the *Chaldees* being returned to the siege, the Prophet *Jeremy*, when the State of *Jerusalem* began now to grow to extremity, counselled *Zedechias* to render himself unto them; assuring him of his own life, and the safety of the Citie, if he would so do. But his obstinate heart conducted him to that wretched end, which his neglect of God, and his infidelitie and perjury, had provided for him.

Three and twenty Moneths (as some do reckon it) or, according to *Josephus*, eighteen, so the *Babylonian* Army lay before *Jerusalem*, and held it exceeding straightly besieged. For they built Forts against it round about, or (as *P. Martyr* hath it) extruxerunt contra eam turrim ligneam per circumum: They surrounded the City with wooden Towers, so as the besieged could neither fall out, nor receive into the City any supply of men or victuals. *Josephus* reports, that they over-topped the Walls with high Towers raised upon Mounts; from which they did so beat upon the Wall with their engines, that the defendants were compelled to forsake their Stations. Now although it were so that the besieged also raised Counter-buildings, like unto these, yet the great King of *Babel*, who commanded all the Regions thereabouts, and had the Woods and Rivers

H h h

to obey him, found means to overthrow all the Citizens endeavours; and to beat down as fast from without, as they raised from within; the body and foundation of his own workes being guarded by the Walls of *Jerusalem* interposed; and theirs within, layd open to their enemies disturbance. Besides, both Famine and Pestilence (which commonly accompany men straightly besieged) grew on fast upon them, whereby, when the number, strength, and courage of the *Jewes* failed, the *Chaldeans* made a breach, and forcing an entry, their Princes did seat themselves, as Lords of the Town, in the middle gate. *Zedechias* beholding this uncomfortable sight, and finding no remedy of the danger present, lost both his courage and his hope at once; and shifted himself, together with his Wives, Children, Princes, and principall servants, out of the Citie, by to a way under ground; leaving his amazed and guidelesse people, to the merciless swords of their enemies. Thus he, who, when *Jeremy* the Prophet perswaded him to render himself, despised both the counsell of God, and the force of *Nabuchodonosor*, used now that remedy, which *Wolphius* truly termeth, *Triste, turpe, & infelix: Wofull, shamefull, and unfortunate.*

By this secret subterrane vault, *Zedechias* making his stealth, recovered (by the help of the dark night) the Plains or *Desarts of Jericho*: but by reason of the train that followed him and his (every one leading with him those whom they held most dear unto them) he was easily traced and pursued. How great soever the company was that attended on him, yet, as *Iosephus* reports it, they, on whose fidelity he most reposed himself, no sooner beheld the *Chaldeans* approach, but they all abandoned his defence, and thrust themselves into the *Desarts*, as they could. For whom God had forsaken, no man followed, but the ministers of his vengeance; by whom *Zedechias* being made Prisoner, with his Children and Princes, he was conveyed to *Rebla* or *Reblath*, a City (as some think) of *Nephtalim*, where *Nabuchodonosor* then lay, as a place indifferent between *Jerusalem* and *Tyre*, with both which at once he had to doe.

Now after *Nabuchodonosor* had layd before *Zedechias* the many graces and benefits conferred upon him, together with the notable falshood and perjury, wherewith he had requited them; he commanded his Children, Princes and Friends to be slain before his face. This being done, to the end that so lamentable a spectacle should be the last that ever he should behold in the World, he caused his eyes to be torn out of his head, and so carried him in a slavish manner to *Babel*, where he consumed the rest of his wretched life in perpetuall imprisonment. Herein this most marvellous Prophecy of *Ezechiel* was performed; *Adducam eum in Babyloniam, & ipsam non videbit: I will bring him into Babylon, and he shall not see it.*

Thus in the eleventh and last year of *Zedechias*, which was the eighteenth of *Nabuchodonosor*, the *Chaldeans* entred the City by force, where sparing no sex nor age, they committed all to the sword that they therein found.

In the year next following, *Nabuzaradan* Generall of the Army, burnt the Kings Palace, and the rest of *Jerusalem*: and after this fire had lasted from the seventh to the tenth day, he also burnt the Temple of God to the ground, when it had stood four hundred thirty and one years.

After this, upon a second search, *Nabuzaradan* (not yet satiated with blood) commanded seventy and two others to be slaughtered, which had hidden themselves from the first fury, to wit, the chief, and the second Priest, two Commanders of *Zedechias* his men of Warre, five of his House-hold servants, and others to that number; carrying away to *Babylon* the ablest of the people throughout all *Judaea*; and leaving the poorest labouring soules, with some that followed the party of *Nabuchodonosor*, to till the ground: over whom he left Governour, *Godolia* the Nephew of that *Saphan*, whom *Josias* had formerly employed in the reformation of Religion, who is, for his justice and equity, by *Iosephus* highly commended. This man, a Jew by Nation, left *Zedechias*, as it seemeth, in the beginning of the Warre: and by *Jeremies* desire to live with him, it appeareth that he had embraced the same advice which the Prophet gave unto *Zedechias*; which was, to submit himself altogether to the *Babylonian*; who being ordained by God to exercise his justice, was therefore resistlesse. The Prophet *Jeremy* being left to his own choice, either to live in *Chaldea*, or elsewhere, he made election of *Godolia*, to whom he was recommended; who not only embraced *Jeremy*, but gave comfort to all the other *Jewes* that were left under his charge, promising them favour & liberty.

so long as they remained obedient subjects to *Nabuchodonosor*, by whom he was established Provinciall Governour of his own Nation.

But ere that year was expired, a Prince of the late Kings house (who during the siege of *Jerusalem*, had kept himself out of the storm, with *Baalis* King of the *Amorites*) being followed by ten other chosen men, while *Godolia* feasted them in *Mispha* or *Mispha*, the City of his residence, traiterously slew him, together with divers *Chaldeans* and *Jewes* that accompanied him. This done, he made an escape, and in his way encountering with eighty persons, repairing towards *Godolia* with presents, he slew the most of them, and spared the rest, because they promised to discover unto him some Treasures hidden in the fields during the war. He also took with him a Daughter of *Zedechias*, committed to the care of *Godolia* by *Nabuchodonosor*. This practice and intent of *Ismael* had been formerly discovered unto *Godolia* by *Johanan*, one of the Leaders of the few remaining *Jewes*; but *Godolia* was incredulous.

*Judaea* being now left without a Governour (for *Ismael* durst not take it upon him, but retired himself, or rather fled as fast as he could to the *Ammonites*) the residue of the *Jewes*, fearing the revenge of the *Chaldeans*, resolved to fly away into *Egypt*, and besought *Jeremy* to ask counsell of God for them: who readily made them answer, that if they remained in *Judaea*, God would provide for them, and shew them mercy; but if they sought to save themselves in *Egypt*, that they should then undoubtedly perish. Notwithstanding this advice, the *Jewes* held their determination; and despising the Oracle of God, and constraining *Jeremy* and *Baruch* to accompany them, they travelled into *Egypt*, and inhabited by the permission of *Pharao*, near unto *Taphnes*: where when *Jeremy* often reprehended them for their Idolatry, foretelling both the destruction of themselves, and the *Egyptians*, also, he was by these his own hard-hearted and ungratefull Country-men, stoned to death; and by the *Egyptians*, who greatly revered him, buried near the Sepulchre of their own Kings.

*Finis Libri secundi.*

Hhh 2

THE



# THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORIE OF THE

WORLD:

Intreating of the Times from the destruction of *Jerusalem* to the time of *PHILIP* of  
MACEDON.

## THE THIRD BOOK,

### CHAP. I.

*Of the time passing between the destruction of Jerusalem, and the fall  
of the Assyrian Empire.*

S. I.

*Of the connexion of sacred and prophane Historie.*



HE course of Time, which in profane Histories might rather be discerned through the greatest part of his way hitherto passed, in some out-worn footsteps, than in any beaten path, having once in Greece by the *Olympiads*, and in the Eastern countries by the account from *Nabonassar*, left surer marks, and more applicable to actions concurrent, than were the War of *Troy*, or any other token of former date; begins at length in the ruin of *Jerusalem* to discover the connexion of antiquity fore-spent, with the story of succeeding ages. Manifest it is, that the original and progess of things could ill be sought in those that were ignorant of the first creation: as likewise that the affairs of Kingdoms and Empire

afterwards grown up, are not to be found among those that have now no state nor policy remaining of their own. Having therefore pursued the story of the World unto that age, from whence the memory of succeeding accidents is with little interruption of fabulous discourse derived unto us, I hold it now convenient briefly to shew by what means and circumstances the History of the *Hebrews* which of all other is the most ancient, may be conjoyned with the following times, wherein that Image of sundry metals, discovered by God unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, did reign over the earth, when *Israel* was either none, or an unregarded Nation.

Herein I doe not hold it needfull to insist upon those authorities which give, as it were by heare-say, a certain year of some old *Assyrian* King unto some action or event, whereof the time is found expressed in Scripture: for together with the end of *Ninus* his

line

line in *Sardanapalus*, if not before, all such computations were blotted out; the succession of *Belochus* and his issue that occupied the kingdom afterwards, depending upon the uncertain relations of such as were neither constant in assigning the years of his beginning, nor of credit enough for others to rely upon. Let it therefore suffice that the consent and harmony which some have found in the years of those over-worn Monarchs, doth preserve their names, which otherwise might have been forgotten. Now concerning the later Kings of that Nation, howsoever it be true that we find the names of all or most of them in Scriptures, which are recorded by prophane Historians, yet hereby could we only learn in what age each of them lived, but not in what year his reign began or ended, were it not that the reign of *Nebuchadnezzar* is more precisely applied to the times of *Jehojakim* and *Zedechia*. Hence have we the first light whereby to discover the means of connecting the sacred and prophane Histories. For under *Nebuchadnezzar* was the beginning of the captivity of *Juda*, which ended when 70. years were expired; and these 70. years took end at the first of *Cyrus*, whose time being well known, affords us means of looking back into the ages past, and forwards into the race of men succeeding. The first year of *Cyrus* his reign in *Persia*, by general consent, is joyned with the first year of the 55. *Olympiad*, where, that he reigned three and twenty years before his Monarchy, and seven years afterwards, it is apparent, and almost out of controverfie. Giving therefore four hundred and eight years unto the distance between the fall of *Troy*, and the instauration of the *Olympiads* by *Iphitus*; we may easily arrive unto those antiquities of Greece, which were not merely fabulous. As for Princes ruling the whilst in sundry parts of the world, *S. Augustine* and others may be trusted in setting down their times, which they had by Tradition from Authors of well-approved faith and industry.

From *Cyrus* forwards, how the times are reckoned unto *Alexander*, and from him to the battell of *Actium*, it were (peradventure) in this place impertinent to set down. But seeing that the beginning and end of the *Babylonian* captivity are marks whereby we are chiefly directed, in passing from the first unto the latest years of the world through any story, with least interruption; it is very expedient that we take some pains to inform our selves truly of the 70. years during which it continued, even from *Nebuchadnezzar* unto *Cyrus*.

S. II.

*A brief rehearsal of two opinions touching the beginning of the captivity: with an answer to the cavils of Porphyrie, inveighing against S. Matthew and Daniel, upon whom the later of these opinions is founded.*

Many Commentators, and other Historians and Chronologers find that the captivity then began when *Jechonias* was carried prisoner into *Babylon*, eleven years before the final destruction of *Jerusalem* under *Zedechias*. This they prove out of divers places in *Ezechiel*, especially out of the fourteenth chapter, where he makes a plain distinction between the beginning of the Captivity, and utter destruction of *Jerusalem* by *Nabuzardan*, in these words, *In the five and twentieth year of our being in Captivitie, in the beginning of the year, in the tenth day of the month, in the fourteenth year after that the City was smitten.* In which words he beginneth the captivity in plain terms, eleven years before the City was destroyed. *Beroaldus* is of opinion that it began in the first of *Nabuchodonosor*, and the fourth of *Jojakim*; which he endeavours to prove out of the second of *Chronicles*, but more especially out of *Saint Matthew*, and *Daniel*, whose words afford matter of disputation, but serve not to make good so much as *Beroaldus* would enforce. That place of *S. Matthew*, and the whole book of *Daniel* have ministred occasion of scoffing and railing at the Christian Religion to that wretched man *Porphyrie*, who, not understanding how the sons of King *Josias* were called by divers names, as *Epiphanius* hath shewed at large, thought that the Apostle had spoken he knew not what in reckoning the sons, or, according to some Translations, the Sonne and Nephews of that good King, begotten about the time of the Captivity. Upon *Daniel* also the same *Porphyrie* doth spend the twelfth of his malicious books written against the Christians, affirming, that these prophecies and visions, remembered by *Daniel*, were written long after his death, and at, or near the time

H h h 3

Mac. 1. 11.

Jof. an. 11.

of *Antiochus Epiphanes*. This fond supposition of his, *Eusebius*, *Apollonius*, and others, have sufficiently answered. For the seventy Interpreters, who converted the old Testament about an hundred years before *Epiphanes*, did also turn this book of *Daniel* out of *Hebrew* into *Greek*, as a part of Scripture received. And were there no other argument to confound *Porphyrie*, than that of *Alexander Macedon*, it were sufficient, who lived divers years before *Antiochus Epiphanes*. For *Jaddus* the high Priest shewed that great Conquerour, when he came towards *Jerusalem* to have destroyed it, this book of *Daniel*, wherein he beheld his own glory foretold, as the same was plainly expounded unto him; which not only stayed his hand from the harme of that City and people, but his assurance and resolution was so confirmed and strengthened thereby, as despising all future perill and resistance, he conquered *Darius*, and the Eastern Empire, in a shorter time than *Nabuchodonosor* had done one City, to wit, *Tyre* in *Phoenicia*.

It is true indeed that the *Jews* themselves give lesse authority to *Daniel*, than to *Moses* and the *Prophets*, accompting his book among those which they call *Cetaphim*, or *Hagiographa*, or holy Writings, which they say *Esdra*s and the Seniors of the Synagogue compiled after their return from *Babylon*. But first, that the book of *Daniel* (I mean so much as is found in the *Hebrew*) is Canonically: secondly, that it was written by *Daniel* himself, and not by *Esdra*s and the Seniors, we may assure our selves by testimony of Counsellors and Fathers. For in the Council of *Laodicea* held about the year of our Lord 368. after the death of *Jovinian* the Emperour, and after the *Nicene* Council three and forty years, this book of *Daniel* was received, verified and confirmed among the other Canonically Scriptures, as in the *Epitomy* of the same Council it may be seen; and so doth *Meliton* the most ancient Bishop of *Sardis* number it, witness *Eusebius* in his Ecclesiasticall History, the fourth book, and five and twentieth chapter: *Eusebius* in the same Author in the Catalogue of Canonically books upon *Origen*: so doth *Hilarius* in his Preface upon the Psalms, and *Epiphanius* in his book of Weights and Measures, &c. To these I may adde *Saint Hierome*, *Gregorie Nazianzene*, and others. For the *Hagiographa* books or holy Writings, the *Jews* and *Rabbines* reckon to be these, *Daniel*, *Psalms*, *Proverbs*, *Job*, *Canticles*, *Ruth*, *Lamentations*, *Ecclesiastes*, *Hester*, *Esdra*, *3*, *Nehemia*, and the *Chronicles*. And that it was *Daniel*, and not *Esdra*s, that wrote this book, Gods commandment unto him by his Angell, to seal up the same to the time appointed, is an unanswerable testimony. Yea, that which exceedeth all strength of other proof, our Saviour Christ, who citeth no Apocryphall Scripture, in *Matthew* and *Mark* allegeth *Daniel* the Prophet, to wit, the last verse of his ninth chapter. Further, in the fifth of *John*, Christ distributeth the risen from the dead, as in *Daniel* the twelfth verse the second, *Saint Paul* describeth *Antichrist* out of *Daniel*, and the Revelation is wholly an interpretation of *Daniel*s visions.

Mat. 24. 15.  
Mark 13. 14.

Dan. 12.

## §. III.

That the 70. years of captivity are to be numbered from the destruction of *Jerusalem*; not from the migration of *Jechonia*.

Having thus far digressed in maintaining that authority which must often be cited in the present argument, it is now convenient, that we return unto the differences of opinion concerning the beginning of these 70. years. Neither will I stand to trouble my self and others with laying open the grounds or weakness of that which *Eusebius* and some few namelesse Authors have sometimes held in this point, which is lately revived by *Beroaldus*; but will forth-with enter into consideration of that opinion, which many both ancient and late Writers have so earnestly maintained, that it wants not much of being common.

Four Kings of *Juda* were carried away captives to *Babylon*: First, *Manasse*; then *Jehoiakim*, and with him among others, *Daniel* the Prophet: thirdly, *Jechonia*, and with him *Ezechiel*: lastly, *Zedechias*; at which time the city & temple were destroyed. To the first of these captivities the beginning of the 70. years is referred by none that I have read; to the second, by few, and with weak proof; to the third, by very many, and with much confidence. For besides those places of *Ezechiel* already cited, there is a strong argument gathered

gathered out of *Jeremy*, which may seem to make the matter plain. For the Prophet, in comforting the people that were carried away with *Jechonia*, useth these words: *Thus saith the Lord, After 70. years be accomplished at Babel, I will visit you, and perform my good promise towards you, and cause you to return to this place.*

But it stands indeed with little reason that we should seek the interpretation of a prophecy out of circumstances, when the prophecy is such as doth sufficiently expound it self. *Jeremy* hath already, in the fourth year of *Jehoiakim*, denounced the judgement of God against the Land, for the sins and impiety of that obdurate people, in these words: *Behold, I will send and take to me all the families of the North, saith the Lord, and Nebuchadnezzar the King of Babel, my servant; and will bring them against this Land, and against the Inhabitants thereof, and against all these Nations round about, and I will destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and an hissing, and a continuall desolation. Moreover, I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the Bridegroom, and the voice of the Bride, the noise of the mill-stones, and the light of the candle, and this whole Land shall be desolate, and an astonishment, and these Nations shall serve the King of Babel 70. years. And when 70 years are expired, I will visit the King of Babel. Here we see prescribed unto the captivity the terme of 70. years, which were to commence, neither when the prophecy was uttered; nor when *Jehoiakim*, who then reigned, was taken by *Nebuchadnezzar*; nor yet in the time of *Jechonia*; but with the utter desolation of the City, whereof *Jeremy* did again give notice to those that were already in *Babylon*, at such time as he sent them the comfort of deliverance before rehearsed. And so did the people understand this prophecy, in those times when they saw it accomplished, beginning the 70. years at the time of the desolation, as manifestly appears in the end of the History of *Juda*, where it is said thus: *They burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the Palaces thereof with fire, and all the precious vessels thereof to destroy all. And they that were left by the sword, carried he away to Babel, and they were servants to him and to his sons, until the kingdom of the Persians had rule, to fulfill the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremia, until the Land had her fill of her Sabbaths; for all the days that she lay desolate, she kept Sabbath, to fulfill 70. years. But in the first year of Cyrus King of Persia when the word of the Lord, spoken by the mouth of Jeremia, was finished, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus. We seldom find one piece of Scripture so precisely and plainly expounded by another, as in this prophecy, to have afterwards been the subject of alteration. For one can hardly devise how either the desolation could have been expressed more sensibly, than it was by the Prophet, or the event of the prophecy have been more exactly set down, than it was in the place now last of all cited. If it be requisite that we bring more proof in so evident a case, the ninth Chapter of *Daniel* yeelds testimony sufficient, unto this exposition of *Jeremia* his prophecy, that *Jerusalem* was to lye waste 70. years. For in the first year of *Darius* the Mede, which was the last of the 70. *Daniel* obtained of God, the deliverance that had been promised, by prayer, which he made upon consideration of the time that was expired: as he telleth in these words: *In the first year of his reign, I Daniel understood by the books the number of the years whereof the Lord had spoken unto Jeremia the Prophet, that he would accomplish 70. years in the desolation of Jerusalem.* So that howsoever the time of *Daniel* his own captivity be reckoned from the taking of *Jehoiakim*, and that the people carried away with *Jechonia*, did accompt, as well they might, the years of their own captivity; yet with the generall desolation of the Country, wherein were few or none of the *Israelites* left remaining to inhabit, began in the nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor* the great captivity, which by Gods appointment continued unto the end of seventy years.**

This I will not further seek to prove, by the authority of *Josephus* and others affirming the same; forasmuch as that which already hath been produced, is enough to satisfy any man that hath not fully determined to hold the contrary.

## §. IV.

## S. IV.

*Sundry opinions of the Kings which reigned in Babylon during the 70. years.*

**V** V Hat Kings reigned in *Babylon*, during these seventy years of the Captivity, and how long each of them did wear the Diademe, it is a matter of no great importance to know, forasmuch as neither their acts were notable in the age wherein they lived, nor the length of their reigns, any way helpful to the concordance of times, foregoing or succeeding. The conquests recounted by *Xenophon* of *Syria*, *Arabia* (or rather some part of it) *Hycania*, *Bactria*, and perhaps of some other Countries, may seem fruits of the victories obtained by *Nebuchadnezzar* the Great (or by some of his Ancestors) in the former part of his life, before he betook himself to ease, and to the sumptuous building of his great *Babel*, for the house of his Kingdom, and for the honour of his Majesty, where it may seem that he and his Heirs kept a great state, and did very little. The idle behaviour of the *Assyrian* Souldiers, in such skirmishes as afterwards they had with the *Medes*, doth argue no lesse. For whereas under *Nebuchadnezzar*, they were so stout and industrious, that (to omit other proofs) they attempted, and finished that hardy piece of work, of winning the strong City of *Tyre*, by joyning unto it the continent, filling up the deep and broad channell of the Sea, dividing it from the main with a mole or piece of earth, and other matter; the reparation whereof when the Sea had washed it away, was the very greatest of *Alexanders* works: in the times following, they became timorous, that they durst not approach nearer to the enemy than their bows would carry, but were ready to turn their backs, as soon as any, though inferiour in numbers, adventuring within the distance, offered to charge them.

Now as their actions from the end of *Nebuchadnezzars* wars, till the ruin of their Empire, were not worthy to be recorded; so was the distinction of their times, and reign of their severall Kings, unworthy of the great labour that hath in vain been taken in that business. For when it is granted, that the captivity of *Juda*, ending with that Empire, lasted 70. years, we may as reasonably forbear to search into the particular continuance of two or three slothfull Kings, as we are contented to be ignorant of the ages of the *Patriarchs*, and their children living in the *Egyptians* servitude; resting satisfied in both with the generall assured sum.

Yet forasmuch as many have travelled in this business, upon desire (as I take it) to approve the beginning and end of the 70. years, not only by the reigns of other Princes, ruling elsewhere, but by the times of the *Assyrians* themselves; I will not refuse to take a little pains in collecting their opinions, and shewing what I think may best be held for likely, if the certain truth cannot be found.

The opinions are many, and greatly repugnant, both in recounting the Kings themselves, and in setting down the years of their severall reigns. The first (as I take it) the surest, is theirs, who merely follow the authority of the Scriptures, without borrowing any help from others. These name only three Kings, *Nabuchadnezzar*, *Evilmerodach*, and *Balthasar*. Neither have they only the silence of *Daniel*, who names none other, to be their warrant, but the prophecy of *Jeremy* precisely, and in a manner purposely teaching the very same. For God, by the mouth of that Prophet, shewing that he being absolute Lord of all, would dispose of all according to his own will, and making it known that he had put some Countries here named, into the hands of the King of *Babel*, saith thus: *And all Nations shall serve him, and his Son, and his Sons Son, untill the very time of his land come also; then many Nations and great Kings shall serve themselves of him.* These words, expressing the continuance of the *Chaldaean* Empire, and number of the Kings, will hardly be qualified with any distinction. But indeed I find no other necessity of qualification to be used herein, than such as may grow out of mens desire to reconcile the Scriptures unto profane Authors. And this desire were not unjust, if the content of all histories were on the one side, and the letter of the holy Text were single on the other side.

But contrariwise, the Authors which are cited in this case, are so repugnant one to the other, & the proofs of their different reports are so slender & insufficient, that the succession of these Princes, had it not bin thus delivered in Scriptures, but only set down by some

some Author of equall credit with the rest, might very well have found and deserved as good belief, as any of those things which they have delivered in this point. For some there are, who following *Josephus*, derive that Empire, as by descent, from father to son, through five generations; beginning with *Nabuchodonosor* the great, and giving to him 43. years; to *Evilmerodach* 18. to *Niglisar* the son of *Evilmerodach*. 40. to *Labofardach* the son of *Niglisar* 9. months, and lastly, to *Balthasar* (whom *Josephus* intimates to be of the race of *Nabuchodonosor*, without naming his father) 17. years. And this opinion (save that he forbears to reckon the years, and plainly calls *Balthasar* the son of *Labofardach*) *Saint Hierome* doth follow, alleging *Berosus* and *Josephus* as a testator of his Authors, for his Authors, though *Berosus*, as he is cited by *Josephus*, report the matter far otherwise. For he tells us that *Evilmerodach* the son of *Nabuchodonosor* did reign but two years, for his wickednesse and lust, slain by his sisters husband *Niglisar*, who occupied the kingdome after him four years, and left it to his own son *Labofardach*; who being an ill-conditioned boy, was at the end of nine months slain by such as were about him, and the kingdome given to one *Nabonidus*, who held it by the election of the Conspirators, and left it unto *Cyrus* after 17. years. This relation ill agrees with that of *Josephus*, and both of them as bad with the Scriptures, in number either of years, or of generations; yet the particularities which they handle, have procured unto them some authority, so that the names which they have inferred, are taken as it were upon trust. There is a third opinion which makes the three last Kings brethren, and sons of *Evilmerodach*; and this may well enough agree with the Scripture: though I had rather believe *Xenophon*, who saith that the last King of *Babylon* was immediate successor to his father. But whereas the Author of the Scholasticall History, who is founder of this opinion, placeth between him that took *Jerusalem*, and *Evilmerodach*, another *Nabuchodonosor*: plain enough it is that he hath, out of any History sacred or profane, as little warrant to guide him, as we have reason to follow him. *Eusebius*, *Sulpitius*, *Severus* and *Theodoret*, upon better ground have supposed, that *Evilmerodach* and *Balthasar* were brethren and sons of the great *Nabuchodonosor*. This is built on the fifth Chapter of *Daniel*, wherein *Balthasar* (for of *Evilmerodach* there is none that ever doubted) is often called *Nabuchodonosor* his son. And so common grew this explication, that *S. Hierome* called it the vulgar opinion. But the place of *Jeremy* before cited, proves that *Balthasar* was not the son indeed, but the grand-child of that great Conqueror, though by the phrase very common in Scriptures, and familiar in those *Eastern* languages, he was called the son.

*Annius* his *Metasthenes* hits very rightly the seventy years of captivity, giving to *Nabuchodonosor* 45. years, to *Evilmerodach* 30. years, and to the three sons of *Evilmerodach*, Nephews of *Nabuchodonosor*, fourteen years; that is, to *Reg-Assar* the eldest son, three years, to *Lab-Assar* the second son, six years, and to *Balthasar* the third son, five.

To this account agreeing with the Scriptures, both in the whole sum of years, and in the number of generations, I have sometime subscribed, as not daring to reject an appearance of truth, upon no greater reason than because the Author was of *Annius* his edition. Yet could I not satisfie my self herein; both for that none of the Ancient, and few such of the modern Writers as deserve to be regarded, have consented with this *Metasthenes*; and for that in making *Balthasar* succeed unto his brother in the kingdom, and not unto his father, he is wholly against *Xenophon*, whose History of the elder *Cyrus* in his *Assyrian* war I cannot slightly value in many respects, and especially because it is very agreeable to the Scriptures, in the taking of *Babylon*, while the King was at his drunken feast.

Seeking therefore diligently into all circumstances that might give any light in this obscurity, I found manifest proof, that the time allotted unto *Balthasar* by *Annius* his *Metasthenes*, was far short of the truth, which is enough to render all suspected that he hath laid in distributing what part of the 70. years he pleased among the rest. For in the third year of *Balthasar*, *Daniel* saw a vision, after which he was sick certain days, but when he rose up, he did the Kings business: from which business, that he did afterwards withdraw himself, and live retired, so long, that he was forgotten in the Court, it appears plainly, both by the many words which the old Queen used to set out his sufficiency, and by the Kings asking of him, when he came into his presence, whether he

where *Daniel*. Now to think that a man of such account and place as *Daniel* had held, could in two years have been worn out of remembrance, were in my judgement a very strange conceit, which rather than I would entertain, I can well be contented to think the whole story (thus related) a part of *Annus* his impostures.

Out of these reports of *Josephus*, *Berosus*, and others, many new opinions are framed, by conjectures of late Writers. For the endurance of the captivity being 70. years, and these years extending unto the first of *Cyrus*, in which course of time *Nabuchadnezzar*, his son and grand-child, must have reigned; it hath seemed needfull to supply the years of these three descents, by inserting some, whose reigns might fill up the whole continuance of the captivity; with which the time allotted by *Berosus* and others, to *Evilmerodach* and *Balthasar*, joyned unto the years following the nineteen of *Nabuchadnezzar*, to (wherein *Jerusalem* was laid desolate) are nothing even.

Therefore *Mercator* and others following him, fashion the years of *Evilmerodach* in this sort. They say, that the 18. years given to him by *Josephus* in the tenth of his Antiquities, should be read and numbered 28. years, and the two years that *Berosus* hath allowed to *Evilmerodach* should be written 23. in the first number the figure of 1. is mistaken for the figure of (2.) and in the latter there should have bin added the figure of (3.) to that of (2.) this granted (to wit) that *Evilmerodach* reigned 28. years, whereof five together with his father, and 23. after his death, and the same number of 23. added to the 25. which *Nabuchodonosor* lived after the destruction of *Jerusalem*, make 48. then 4. years of *Niglifar* according to *Berosus*, 9. months of *Labassardach* his son, and 17. years of *Nabonidus* or *Balthasar*, make up the number of 70. years to the first of *Cyrus*. But whether by error in figures, or in words, the numbers be utterly mistaken in all copies extant; upon how weak a foundation do they build, who having nothing to help them, save only the bare names of two unknown Kings, found in authors manifestly corrupted, and such as if they had been entirely extant, were not worthy to have the place of *Jeremy* called into dispute, in regard of their authority.

## S. V.

A more particular examination of one opinion touching the number, persons, and reigns of the Babylonian Kings.

Other suppositions, little different in substance from this of *Mercator*, I purposefully forbear to rehearse, as falling under the same answer. That of *Joseph Scaliger* I may not forget, as deserving to be considered apart from the rest. Hee giveth to *Nabuchadnezzar* 44. years, to *Evilmerodach* two, to *Belsazer* five: and to *Nabonidus* 17. So that from the 19. of *Nabuchadnezzar*, in which *Jerusalem* was destroyed, unto the time of *Cyrus*, he accounteth only 59. years; beginning (as many do) the captivity 11. years sooner from the transportation of *Techonia*. But hereof enough hath bin said already. That which we are now to consider, is his distribution of the time running between the 19. of *Nabuchadnezzar*, and the fall of the Chaldean Empire: wherein if he have erred, then is all further inquisition frivolous.

Concerning the length of *Nabuchadnezzars* reign, I shall hereafter upon better occasion deliver my opinion. The time which he gives to *Evilmerodach* is very short, and more precisely agreeing with *Berosus* than with the Scriptures. For we find in *Jeremy*, that this *Evilmerodach* in the first of his reign, shewing all favour to *Techonia*, did, among other things, take order for him at his table; and that he did continually eat bread before him all the dayes of his life. His portion was a continuall portion given him of the King of *Babel*, every day a certain, all the dayes of his life until he died. The very found of these words (which is more to be esteemed than the authority of *Berosus*, were he perfectly extant) imports a farre longer time than two years, wherein *Techonia*, under this gentle Prince, enjoyed the comfort sent by God, whose commandement he had obeyed in yielding himself to *Nabuchadnezzar*. Indeed how long *Techonia* did live, it cannot be proved; but plain it is hereby, that all his remaining dayes he did eat bread before this King. Now that he lived not so short a while after this as 2. years, it is more than likely; for he was but 55. years old when he was set at liberty, having bin 37. years in the prison, whereinto he was cast at the age of 18. years; after which time it seems plain that he begat *Salathiel*, as well by the age of *Zerobabel*, who is said to have been

but

but a young man, and one of *Darius* his Pages three score years after this, as by other circumstances of his imprisonment it self.

Of *Belsazer*, to whom *Scaliger* gives the next five years, naming him also *Laborsardach*, I should wonder why he calls him *Nebuchadnezzars* daughters son, were it not that herein I find him very carefull to help out *Berosus*, by shifting in his *Niriglossoor*, as husband to *Nebuchadnezzars* daughter, and Protector of his son four of these years; by which means there remains about one year to *Belsazer* alone, agreeing nicely with the nine months assigned by *Berosus* to the son of *Niglifar*. But *Jeremy* hath told us that it was to *Nebuchadnezzar*, and to his son, and to his sons son (not to his daughters son) that the Empire was promised: which difficulty, if *Scaliger* could not help, it was well done of him to passe it over with silence.

*Nabonidus* the last of these, whom others (desirous to reconcile *Berosus* to the Scriptures) have judged to be all one with *Balthasar*, is by *Scaliger* thought to be *Darius* of the *Medes*. But herein *Scaliger* is no firm *Berosian*: for *Berosus* makes him of the same stock or race, a *Babylonian*. I speak not this to disgrace the travell of that most learned man (for it highly commends his diligence and judgement, that he was not so wedded to any author, as affected with the love of truth) but to shew that he himself, having in some points disliked those Writers, whom in general he approveth, might with greater reason have wholly reformed them by the Scriptures, wherein can be no error. Two things there are which chiefly did breed or confirm this opinion in *Scaliger*, that hee whom *Berosus* calls *Nabonidus*, was the same whom *Daniel* had called *Darius* of the *Medes*: First, the phrase of Scripture, which signifies unto us, that *Darius* took the Kingdom, not saying that he wanne it by force of arms: Secondly, a fragment of *Megasthenes* found in *Eusebius*, wherein this *Nabonidus* is called the *Median*. Touching the word of the Original, or of the Greek translation, which expressing no force of arms, doth only signifie that *Darius* took or received the Kingdom; I see no reason why we should thereupon infer, that the next king entred by Election: seeing *Daniel* relateth not the means and circumstances of *Balthasars* death, but only the swift accomplishment of his own prophecy. Neither could it indeed have properly been said (if *Daniel* had cared to use the most expressive termes) that *Darius* of the *Medes*, breaking into the City, did win the Kingdom; seeing this was performed by *Cyrus* in the absence of *Darius*, though by his forces, and to his use. Now concerning the fragment of *Megasthenes*, true it is, that in *Eusebius* his works printed at *Basile*, in the year 1559. I find only thus much of *Megasthenes*, cited out of *Alpheus*; That *Nabuchodonosor* was more valiant than *Hercules*; that he subdued all *Lybia*, and the rest of *Asia*, as far as to the *Armenians*; and that, as the *Chaldeans* report, being returned into his Kingdom, and rapt with a divine fury, he cryed with a loud voyce: O *Babylonians*, I foretell ye of a great calamity that shall come upon you, which neither *Bel*, nor any of the gods shall avert: There will come a Persian, halfe an *Asse*, that shall bring slavery upon ye: and that, this and the like when he had spoken, he vanished. Of all this I believe little or nothing, saving that *Nabuchodonosor* knew before-hand, that his Empire should be translated, as *Daniel* had foretold, from the golden head, to the silver breast. But that he wan all *Africa* or *Lybia*, I doe hold it neither true nor probable.

If *Scaligers* copy of *Eusebius* were the more perfect, out of which *Megasthenes* tells us that *Nabuchodonosor* wanne both *Africa* and *Spain*, I believe the fragment so much the lesse: and am as little moved with the authority of it, where it calls a *Median* the pride and confidence of the *Assyrians*; as where it tels of *Nebuchadnezzar* his own vanishing away. Indeed that same title of half an *Asse*, by which he calleth *Cyrus*, makes me to suspect the fable, as cunningly forged out of *Apollo* his Oracle, wherein he termeth so him a *Mule*, because his parentage was more noble on the mothers side than on the fathers; as *Mules* are begotten by *Asses* upon *Mares*. And thus much in answer of the two principall foundations whereon this opinion is built. As for the concinnity and coherence which it had within it self, I easily allow it. But this proves nothing; for meere fictions have not wanted these commendations: neither can any man believe that one so judicious, industrious, and deeply learned as *Joseph Scaliger*, would overlook himself, in setting down repugnancies.

It now remaineth to examine the agreement of this with the Scriptures, from which there is no appeal. And herein it seems that *Scaliger*, well knowing his own sufficiency,

hath



hath been little careful to satisfie men that would frame Arguments against him. For if the prophecy of *Daniel* were true, that the Kingdom of *Balthazar* was divided, and given to the *Medes* and *Persians*, either we must think that *Darius* of the *Medes* was not *Nabonidus*, or else we must bethink our selves what *Persian* it might be that shared the Kingdom with him. For it is not more certain that *Balthazar* lost his life and Kingdom, than that his Kingdom was divided and given to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Neither did the *Medes* and *Persians* fall out and fight for it, as by supposing *Nabonidus* to have been *Darius*, they should be thought to have done; but these two Nations did compound the body of that Empire, and were accounted as Lords over all the subject Provinces, insumuch that the *Greek* Historians did commonly call those warres which to *Darius*, and after him *Xerxes*, made upon *Greece*, The Warres of the *Medes*. Yea, to clear this point, even *Daniel* himself resembles that King, with whom *Alexander* fought, unto a Ramme with two horns, calling him the King of the *Medes* and *Persians*. Wherefore the whole Nation of *Chronologers* were not to have been condemned by *Joseph Scaliger*, for maintaining upon such good grounds, that *Darius* of the *Medes* was partner with *Cyrus*, in his victories, and not a *Chaldean* King by him subdued. Neither was *Iosephus* to be the lesse regarded, for affirming that *Balthazar* was destroyed by *Darius* of the *Medes*, and his Nephew *Cyrus*, though herein he varied from *Berosus* and others, whose authority elsewhere he gladly citeth. For *Josephus* had no reason to believe any mans faith or knowledge of those times half so well as *Daniels*, whom I believe that he understood as farre as was needfull in this case. Lawfull it was for him to allege all Authors that had any mention, though imperfect, of the same things that were contained in the writings of the *Jewes*, to whose Histories thereby he procured reputation in the *Roman* world, where they were strangers, and might seem fabulous. Even so doe *Eusebius* and other Writers willingly embrace the testimonies of Heathen books making for the truth in some particulars; yet will they not therefore be tryed in generall by the self-same *Ethnick* Philosophers, but leave them where they are against the truth, as *Josephus* in this case hath left *Berosus*. And thus much I thought it meet to say of *Scaligers* opinion in this point; holding neverthelesse in due regard his learning and judgement, which if in some things it had not failed, the miracle had then been very great.

§. VI.

*What may be held as probable of the Persons and Times of Nabuchodonosor his successors.*

**I**T now remains that I freely acknowledge mine own weaknesse, who cannot find how the 70. years of captivity are to be divided among them which reigned in *Babylon*, though I find that the distribution made of them, in such wise as already is rehearsed, be ill agreeable to the holy Scriptures. Wherefore I may truly say with *Pereus*, that we ought liberally to pardon those whose feet have failed them in the slippery waies of *Chronology*, wherein both learning and diligence are subject to take a fall at one time or other, by ignorance, forgetfulness, or heedlesse reckoning. Yet will I adventure to deliver my opinion, wherein the judgement of *Lyra* and others (holding those only to have reigned over the *Chaldeans*, whose names are found in the Scriptures) appears more conformable to reason and account of time, than any of the other Sentences or Conjectures before rehearsed. Not that I will take upon me to defend *Lyra* his Conjectures, when he supposeth by *Niglsar* and *Labebaradach* to be meant the same persons which are called in Scriptures *Eusimerodach* and *Balthasar* (for this can by no good colour be maintained) but only to shew that the Kings by him cited, are likely to have occupied the whole time of seventy years. First therefore let us consider the reign of *Nabuchadnezzar*, in whose eighteenth year *Jerusalem* was taken and sackt, but in his nineteenth laid utterly desolate.

Most of Writers have given to him 43. years of reign, following therein *Berolus*. There are who have added one year more, and some have made it up 45. To dispute about the certainty were needlesse: for in shewing by what length of time the Scriptures measure him, we shall shew the certain truth.

## Manifest

Manifest it is, that the 19. year of *Nebuchadnezzar* is joyned with the 11. of *Zedechia*, as also that his eighth year, was the first year of *Jechonia* his captivity, the reign of *Zedechia* occupied all the mean space, being of 11. years. This is generally agreed upon, for that it needs no further proofes: As for the beginning of his successor *Evilmerodach*, it was in the seven and thirtieth year of *Jechonia* his captivity; so that *Nebuchadnezzar* after his 8. year (which was the first of *Jechonia* his bondage) reigned 35. whole years, and peradventure a good part of the six and thirtieth, forasmuch as *Jechonia* was enlarged with so great favour, not untill the end of the year. Subtracting therefore out of these four and forty, which *Nebuchadnezzar*'s reign did well-near occupie, those eighteen years of his which passed away before the captivity of *Juda*, and ruin of the City, we have remaining six and twenty years of the seventy, that were almost wholly spent when his son began to reign.

It is now to be considered how the remainder of the seventie years were divided between the Kings ruling in *Babylon* until the first of *Cyrus*. A question more difficult (as I said before) than greatly needfull: the whole sum being certain, and the distinction of times affording no benefit in knowledge of their actions, who were slothfull Princes. Neither can any man the more justly suspect the beginning or end of the whole 70. years, for that the distribution of some part of them is only conjecturall; seeing that none who gives any other termes to their beginning or end, hath refused to follow both unlikely and desperate conjectures in dividing them. I will therefore be bold to doe as others have done; knowing well before-hand, that whosoever shall discover my error, must doe me the pleasure (which I could rather wish in a case more materiall) of making me to understand the truth.

Of the four and forty years remaining in account of *Nebuchadnezzars* death, we are to take away the last, which was the first of *Darius* the *Mede*, & then having authority great enough to warrant us from blame of presumption, in giving us seventeen years to *Balthasar*, we find left in our hands to bestow upon *Evilmerodach* six & twenty years. Of the year belonging unto *Darius* the *Mede*, I have already spoken what I thought sufficient, in delivering my opinion of the beginning and continuance of his captivity. That *Balthasar* had reigned seventeen years, we have the authority of *Jofephus*, before cited in expresse words; Wee have also the generall consent of all, or the most late Writers, interpreting *Berosus* his *Nabonidus*, who reigned so long; & *Balthasar* to have been one. But nothing moveth me so much to beleve this Tradition, as first those evident places in *Daniel*, shewing that in the third year of *Balthasar* hee followed the Kings businesse, and yet was forgotten ere the end of his reign, (a proof sufficient of no few years, passing under this man, especially seeing it is no where found that *Daniels* employments took end either that year or the next.) Secondly, the consideration of *Cyrus* his warres against the *Assyrians*, which beginning with the death of this mans father, & being alwaies prosperous, could hardly have occupied any longer time; though we make large allowance to his deeds in the lower *Asia*, which fell out in the midde-way: I have already shewed, that there appears in the Scriptures likelihood enough to make it credible, that the reign of *Evilmerodach* was not short, and that men of great judgment have found it most probable, that he was a King three and twenty years. More, I think, they would have allowed him, had not the desire of satisfying *Berosus* caused them to rest content with this. And surely it were greatly to bee wished, that books of such antiquitie, as those of *Berosus*, were extant without corruption; a great light (no doubt) they would yeeld in many dark passages of Antiquitie. I will yet confesse, that were his works never so excellent, and in all things else unquestionably true, I would not therefore condescend unto him in some one point, wherein the Scriptures were his open enemy: How much lesse ought I obey a broken fragment of his, containing onely seven or eight lines, and part even of the title corrupted, as they beleeve that follow him in the rest? The Scriptures have told us that God gave the Empire to *Nebuchadnezzar*, to his sonne, and to his sonnes sonne: How long each of them held it, wee find not expresse; yet would we gladly know it of *Berosus*, or of any other that would teach us; provided alwayes, that helping us in a particularity, hee destroyed not thereby the generall truth. More words are needlesse. It is enough to say with others, that *Berosus*, or *Jofephus* who cited him, hath been wronged by the carelesnesse of Scribes; and that it was as easie for those Scribes to erre in writing two

Dan. 8. 1.  
& 27. & cap. 5.  
v. 11, 12. & 13.

Jerem. 27. 7.

for six and twenty, as for three & twenty, or perhaps more ease. For, the omission of the second figure, was as likely the one way as the other; and the Character 5. signifying 6, hath a neerer resemblance of a that stands for 2. than hath, which is used for 3. So that the numerall notes 55. expressing 26. were not safe enough from being mistaken in the true copie, and might bee altered, as ill written, if some crooked hand, or other mischance not unuſuall, had omitted the first strok of the former letter, or added a dash to the latter, which might cause them to seem not two different figures, but the one a correction of the other, which how it could bee supposed in 55. standing for 23. I doe not well perceive. As for the Arithmetical figures now in use, they were long after the time of *Josephus* brought in by the *Arabians*, and therefore doe not appertain unto this business; unless we should ghesse that his works were corrupted in that unlearned<sup>10</sup> age, which following the Saracen conquest, was little occupied in the studies of humanity, but in a sort vvholly given over to the doctrine of *Aristotle*. If this vwill serve to make *Berosus* our friend, so let it be; if not, I vwill not purchase the favour of his authority, by forsaking *Jeremy* and *Daniel* vvhen they seem to be his opposites.

## S. VII.

Of the victories which Nabuchodonosor obtained between the destruction of Jerusalem and conquest of Egypt.

W Ith vvhat actions this time of 70. years vvvas entertained by the *Babylonian* Kings, fevv have vvritten, or little is remaining in record. Which may peradventure have been some cause that the time it self vvvas, and is yet fought to bee abridged, as not having left sufficient matter to vvittnesse the length of it. But by such an argument vve might as vvell deny to many people even their being. For every Nation (I know not whom I should except) between the beginning and last end of it, hath in some slothfull age rather dreamt away the time, than spent it. It is therefore no marvell, if the posterity of *Nabuchodonosor*, finding all things ready to their hand, which their hearts could have desired, betook themselves to their ease and pleasures, thinking<sup>30</sup> perhaps, like the prodigall sons of greedy fathers, their own wisdom greater, which knew how to enjoy, than that of their Ancestors, which wearied away their days in the restless travell of purchasing: Though indeed the reign of *Nabuchodonosor* was so divided, that his youthfull and stronger years having been exercised in victorious armes, no small part of his life was remaining to be spent in establishing what was gotten, and gathering the fruit of his worthie labours past. The nineteenth year of his reign it was, when destroying utterly the great and mighty Citie of *Jerusalem*, hee enriched himself with abundance of spoil, and terrified all that would offer to resist him, by that fearfull example. From that time forward, he, untill his three and twentieth year, laboured in the conquest of those adjoining Regions, which God had exposed unto his sword, and commanded to wear his yoke; namely, the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Tyrians*, *Sydonians*, and *Egyptians*, though some of these were already become his followers, and served under him, when *Jerusalem* was beaten down and burnt. But the *Tyrians*, whose Citie was founded on an Island, safe enough from any danger of a Land-army, & whose fleet was so strong, that they needed not to fear any enemy at sea, were neither daunted with the fall of their neighbour cities, nor with the obstinate resolution of this mighty Prince, employing all his power to their subversion.

That the Citie of *Tyre* was rather well pleased, than any way discouraged with the fall of *Jerusalem* (which had held the same course that *Tyrus* did, and endured all that might be in the same quarrell against the common enemy) it appears by the words which *Ezekiel* condemneth as the common voice of *Tyrus*; *Aha, the gate of the people is broken, it is turned unto me; for seeing she is desolate, I shall be replenished*. Yet at length, even in the nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor*, that great work of his, whereof we have already spoken, began to appear above the vvaters, and threaten them vvith inevitable mischief.

But those prophecies of *Jeremy* & of *Esay*, vvvhich appoint unto this desolation of *Tyre* the same terme of 70. years, that vvvas prescribed unto the reign of the *Chaldeans*, doe plainly

plainly shew, that the followed *Jerusalem*, the same nineteenth year of *Nabuchodonosor*, in the same, or a very like fortune. The particularities, which doubtlesse were memorable in the issue of so great and laborious a siege, are in a manner utterly lost. Thus much we find, That the Citizens perceiving the Town unable to hold out, embarked themselves, and fled into the Isle of *Cyprus*. Neverthelesse it seems that this evasion served only the principall men, who elcasing with their goods, abandoned the poorer sort unto the enemies fury. For, not only such people of *Tyre* as dwelt on the Continent, (who are Called her Daughters in the field) were put to the sword; but the like execution was done in the streets, into which, with excessive labour, the *Assyrian* made way for his Horfes and Chariots. Thus *Nabuchodonosor* caused his Armie to serve a great *Ezech. 29. 17* service against *Tyrus*, wherein every head was made bald, and every shoulder was made bare, yet had hee no wages, nor his Armie; but was faine to rest contented with the Honour of having destroyed that Citie, which in all mens judgements had been held invincible.

The destruction of these two great and powerfull Cities, having made the name of the *Chaldeans* dreadfull in the ears of all the Nations thereabout, *Nabuchodonosor* used the advantage of that reputation which he had obtained by victories already gotten, to the getting of more, and more profitable, with lesse pain. The Kingdom of *Egypt* was the mark at which he aimed; a Country so abounding in all riches and pleasures, that it might well have tempted any Prince, finding himself strong enough, to seek occasion of quarrell against it; and so farre an enemy to the Crown of *Babylon*, that had it been poorer, yet either it must have been subdued, or the conquest of *Syria* could ill have been established. Neverthelesse it was needfull, that before he entred into this business, the Countries adjacent should bee reduced into such termes, that either they should wholly stand at his devotion, or at least be unable to work him any displeasure. And herein the decree of God concurred, as in all prosperous enterprises, with reason of state. For, the people of *Moab*, *Ammon*, *Edom*, *Damascus*, *Kedar*, *Hazar*, and other adjoining Regions, whom God for their sins had condemned to fall under the *Babylonian* swords, were such, as regarding only their own gain, had some of them, like Ravens, followed the *Chaldean* Armie, to feed upon the carcasses that fell by the cruelty thereof; others taking advantage of their neighbours miseries, occupied the Countries which were by his victories belonging to *Nabuchodonosor*: all of them thinking, that when the *Assyrian* had satisfied his fury, he should be faine to forsake those desolate parts, and leave the possession to those that could lay hand upon it. Particularly *Ezech. 25. 12* the *Edomites* and *Philistims* had shewed much malice to the *Jewes* when their City was taken. What good service they had done to the *Chaldeans*, I find not; if they did any, it is likely to have been with reference to their own purposes, wherein they were disappointed. The *Ammonites* were not contented to rejoyce at the fall of *Jerusalem*, but presently they entered upon the Country of *Gad*, and took possession, as if not the *Assyrian*, but they, had subdued *Israel*. Neither can I perceive what other ground that practice had of *Baalis* King of the *Ammonites*, when he sent *Ismael*, a Prince of the blood of *Judah*, to murder *Gedalia*, whom the King of *Babel* had left Governour over those that remained in *Israel*, and to carry captive into the *Ammonites* Country the people that abode in *Mizpah*, than a desire of embroyling *Nabuchodonosor* with so many labours at once, as should make him retire into his own Country, and abandon those wasted Lands to himself and others, for whom they lay conveniently. Such or the like policy the *Moabites* did exercise; whose pride and wrath were made frustrate by God, and their diffimulation condemned, as not doing right.

All these nations had the art of ravening, which is familiar to such as live or border upon deserts; and now the time afforded them occasion to shew the uttermost cunning of their theevish wits. But *Nebuchadnezzar* did cut asunder all their devices by sharp and sudden warre, over-whelming them with unexpected ruine, as it were in one night; according to the prophecies of *Esay*, *Jeremy*, and *Ezekiel*, who foretold, with little difference of words, the greatnesse and swiftnesse of the miserie that should come upon them. With which of them he first began, I find not; it seems that *Moab* was the last which felt his hand: for so doe many good Authors interpret the prophecies of *Esay*, threatening *Moab* with destruction after three years, as having reference to the third year following the ruine of *Jerusalem*; the next year after it being spent in the *Egyptian* expedition.

expedition. This is manifest, that all the principall towns in these Regions were burnt, and the people slain, or made slaves, few excepted, who being preserved by flight, had not the courage to return to their habitations over hastily, much lesse to attempt any thing against *Nabuchodonosor*, but lived as miserable out-laws, or at least oppressed wretches, untill the end of the seventy years, which God had prescribed unto the desolation of their Countries, as well as of the Land of *Juda*.

## s. VIII.

That Egypt was conquered, and the King therein reigning slain by *Nabuchodonosor*, contrarie to the opinion of most Authors: who, following *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, relate it otherwise.

When by a long course of victory *Nabuchodonosor* had brought into subjection all the Nations of *Syria*, and the bordering *Arabians*, in such wise, that no enemy to himself, nor friend to the *Egyptian*, was left at his back, that might give impediment unto his proceeding, or take advantage of any misfortune; then did he forth-with take in hand the conquest of *Egypt* himself, upon which those other Nations had formerly bin depending. Of this expedition, and the victorious issue thereof, of the three great Prophets, *Esay*, *Jeremy*, and *Ezekiel*, have written so plainly, that I hold it altogether needlesse to look after more authoritie, or to cite for proof halfe of that which may be alleged out of these. Nevertheless, wee find many and good Authors, who following *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus Siculus*, are well contented to strain these Prophecies with unreasonable diligence unto such a sense, as gives to *Nabuchodonosor* little more than the honour of having done some spoile in *Egypt*, omitting the conquest of that Land by the *Babylonian*, and referring the death of *Apries* or *Hophra* to a chance long after following, which had no coherence with these times or affairs. So preposterous is the delight which many men take in the means and second helps conducing to their purpose that offensives they doe preferre the Commentator before the Author; and to uphold a sentence, giving testimony to one clause, doe carelessly overthrow the history it self, which thereby they sought to have maintained. The reports of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, concerning the Kings of *Egypt*, which reigned about these times, are already rehearsed in the former book: but that which they have spoken of *Apries*, was purposely reserved unto this place. *Herodotus* doth affirm that he was a very fortunate King, but wherein he telleth not; (unless we should understand that he was victorious in the Warre, which he is said to have made upon *Tyrus* and *Sydon*) that he reigned five and twenty years, and was finally taken and put to death by his own Subjects; who did set up *Amasis*, as King, which prevailed against him. The rebellion of the *Egyptians* hee imputeth to a great losse which they received in an expedition against the *Cyrenians*, by whom almost their whole army was destroyed. This calamity the people of *Egypt* thought to be well pleasing to their King, who had sent them on this dangerous expedition, with a purpose to have them consumed, that so he might with greater securitie reign over such as staid at home. So they who escaped, and the friends of such as were slain, rebelled against *Apries*, who sent *Amasis* to appease the tumult; but *Amasis* became Captain of the rebels, and was by them chosen King. Finally, the whole Land consented unto this new Election; whereby *Apries* was driven to trust unto his forraign Mercenaries, the *Ionians* and *Carians*, of whom he kept continually in readinesse thirty thousand good Souldiers that fought valiantly for him, but were at length vanquished by the great number of the *Egyptian* forces, amounting unto two hundred and fifty thousand, which were all by birth and education, men of Warre. *Apries* himself being taken prisoner, was gently intreated by *Amasis* for a while, untill the *Egyptians*, exclaiming upon him, as an extreme enemy to the Land, got him delivered into their hands, and strangled him, yet they gave him honourable buriall. Such is the report of *Herodotus*, with whom *Diodorus Siculus* doth neerly agree, telling us that *Apries* did vanquish the *Cyprians* and *Phenicians* in battell at Sea, took by force and demolished *Sidon*, warne the other Towns of *Phenicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*, and finally perished, as is before rehearsed, when hee

Herod. l. 2.  
& l. 4.

Diod. Sic. l. 1.  
c. 2.

had reigned two and twenty years. This authority were enough (yet not more than enough) to inform us of *Apries* his history, if greater authority did not contradi& it. But the destruction of *Egypt* by the *Babylonian*, foretold by the Prophets, which hath no coherence with these relations, hath greater force to compell our belief, than have the traditions of *Egyptian* Priests (which the Greek Historians followed) and greater probabilities to perswade those that look only into humane reasons. For *Esay* prophesied long before of the shamefull captivity of the *Egyptians*, whom the King of *Assur* should carry away naked, young and old, in such wise, that the *Fews*, who fled unto them for deliverance from the *Assyrian*, should be ashamed of their own vain confidence in men so unable to defend themselves.

But *Ezekiel* and *Jeremy*, as their prophecies were neerer to the time of execution, so they handled this argument more precisely. For *Ezekiel* telleth plainly, that *Egypt* should be given to *Nabuchadnezzar*, as wages for the service which he had done at *Tyre*: Also he recounteth particularly all the chief Cities in *Egypt*, saying, That these by name should be destroyed, and go into captivity, yea that *Pharao* and all his Army should be slain by the sword. Wherefore it must needs be a violent exposition of these Prophecies, which by applying the issue of such threatnings to an insurrection and rebellion concludes all, without any other alteration in *Egypt*, than change of the Kings person, wherein *Amasis* did succed unto *Apries*, by force indeed, but by the uniforme consent of all the people. Certainly, if that notable place of *Jeremy*, wherein he foretelleth how the *Fews* in *Egypt* should see *Pharao Hophra* delivered into the hand of his enemies, as *Zedekia* had been, were to be referred unto the time of that rebellion, whereof *Herodotus* hath spoken, as the general opinion hath over-ruled it; then was it vainly done of the same Prophet (which God forbid that any Christian should think, seeing he did it by the appointment of God himself) to hide in the clay of a Brick-hill, those very stones, upon which the Throne of *Nabuchodonosor* should be set, and his Pavilion spread. Yea then was that prophecy no other than false, which expressed the end of *Pharao* thus: Behold, I will visit the common people of No. & *Pharao*, and *Egypt* with their gods and their Kings, even *Pharao*, and all that trust in him: and I will deliver them into the hands of those that seek their lives, and into the hand of *Nabuchadnezzar*, King of *Babel*, and into the hands of his servants. The clearness of this prophecy being such as could not but refute that interpretation of many other places, which referred all to the rebellion of *Amasis*, it caused me to wonder what those Commentators would say to it, who are elsewhere so diligent in fitting all to the Greek Historians. Wherefore looking upon *Junius*, who had in another place taken the enemies of *Pharao Hophra* to be *Amasis* and his followers, I found him here acknowledging that the *Egyptian* Priests had notably deluded *Herodotus* with lies, coyned upon a vain-glorious purpose of hiding their own disgrace and bondage. And surely it may well be thought, that the history of *Nabuchadnezzar* was better known to the *Fews*, whom it concerned, than to the Greeks, that scarcely at any time heard of his name. Therefore I see no cause why we should not rather beleve *Josephus*, reporting that *Nabuchodonosor* in the three and twentieth year of his reign, and the fifth year of the destruction of *Jerusalem*, did conquer *Egypt*, kill the King thereof, and appoint another in his stead, than *Herodotus* or *Diodore*; who being meer strangers to this business, had no great reason to labour in searching out the truth, but might rest contented with any thing that the Priests would tell them. Now if setting aside all advantage of authority, we should only consider the relations of *Josephus*, and of the Greek Historians, as either of them might be verified of it self by apparent circumstances, without reflecting upon the Hebrew Prophets, or *Egyptian* Priests, me thinks the death of *Apries* can no way be approved, as having been wrought by consent of the people, but affords great matter of suspicion; yea, though no man had opposed the reports of *Herodotus* and *Diodore*. For the great love & honor which the *Egyptians* did bear unto their Kings, is notorious by the uniforme testimony of all others that have handled the matters of that Country, as well as by the report of *Diodore* himself. How then can we think it probable, that *Apries* having won great victories, did for one only losse fall into the hatred of all his people; or which may serve to perswade us, that a King of *Egypt* would seek, or so demean himself, that he might be thought to seek the destruction of his naturall subjects? As for that Army of thirty thousand souldiers, *Carians* and *Ionians*, which the King

Esa. 20. v. 4. 5.  
& 6.

Ezech. 29. v. 2.  
20. & c. 30.  
Ezech. 32. v. 33.

Jerem. 44. v. 27.  
Jerem. 45. v. 10.

Jer. 46. v. 25.  
& c. 20.

Jer. 44. v. 36.

Jer. Ant. Jud.  
as lib. 10. c. 11.

of Egypt, whom *Amasis* took prisoner, is said to have kept for his defence: doth it not argue that he was a forrainger, and one that armed himself against the Egyptians, withing them few and weak; rather than any of the *Pharaohs*, who accounted the force of the Country, as assuredly their own, as the strength of their own bodies? It were more tedious than any way needfull to use all Arguments that might be alleged in this case. The very death of this supposed *Apries*, which the clamours of the people obtained of *Amasis*, who sought to have kept him alive, doth intimate that he was some forraign Governour, not a naturall Prince; otherwise the people would have desired to save his life, and *Amasis* to take it quickly from him. I will not labour any further to disprove that opinion, whereunto I should not have yielded, though it had stood upon great appearance of truth, considering that the voice of truth it self cries out against it, but leave the circumstances, proving the Conquest of Egypt by *Nabuchodonosor*, to be observed where due occasion in course of the story following shall present them:

## §. IX.

*How Egypt was subdued and held by Nabuchadnezzar.*

IT is a great losse, that the generall History of the World hath suffered, by the spoil and waste which Time hath made of those Monuments that should have preserved the memory of such famous actions as were accomplished by this mighty Prince *Nabuchodonosor*; wherein, whether his Vertue, or Fortune were greater, it is now uncertain. That his Victories following the Conquest of Syria, and the Neighbour-Provinces, were such as did more enlarge his Dominion, than all the former Wars had done, it may easily be gathered out of *Ezekiel*, who reckoneth up in his thirtieth Chapter (besides the whole Country of Egypt) *Phut* and *Lud*, with other Nations, that may seem to have reached out into *Mauritania*, as people subdued by this great *Babylonian*. The circumstances of these Wars are in a manner utterly lost; but that the victory was easie and swift, any man shall find, who will take the pains to conferre the places, wherein the three great Prophets touch this Argument. Thus much I think worthy of more particular observation; that *Pharaoh*, who (as is already noted in the former Book) thought himself most safe in Egypt by the well defended situation of his Country, did very unwisely in suffering his enemies to sweep the way clean unto his own doors, by consuming all his friends and adherents in Syria. For as the labour of this businesse did more harden than weary the Chaldean Army, so the confidence and vain security of the Egyptians, relying upon the difficult passages which the enemy was to make thorow the Arabian deserts, and the much advantage which the great river of *Nilus* would afford unto themselves, did little avail them in provision for the war, and much astonish them (as may justly be thought) in the time of execution: it being usually seen, that the hearts of men fail, when those helps fail, in which they had reposed more confidence than in their own vertue. Hitherto the Kingdome of Egypt had flourished under the rule of the *Pharaohs*, about a thousand five hundred and fourscore years; but from this time forward it remained forty years without a King, under the subjection of the *Babylonians*; and then at length it began to recover by little and little the former greatness, yet so, that it was never dreadfull unto others, God having said of that people, *I will diminish them, that they shall no more rule the Nations*. For whereas it hath been said of *Pharaoh*: *I am the son of the wife, I am the son of the ancient Kings; and whereas he had vaunted, The River is mine, and I have made it*; the Princes of Egypt now became fools, the river failed them, the King himself was taken and slain, and that ancient lineage quite extinguished. This came to passe in the first year after the destruction of *Jerusalem*, and the three and twentieth of *Nabuchadnezzar*; at which time (saith *Iosephus*) *He slew the King then reigning, placed another in his room, and carried captives thence to Babylon the Jews whom he found in that Country*. Now concerning the time which *Iosephus* gives unto this businesse, and the businesse it self, I have already shewed, that it is warranted by all the prophecies which infirmate the same. As likewise the last destruction of *Jerusalem*, and carrying away those unto *Babel*, who inhabited the miserable ruins of that great city, which was in the same three & twentieth year of *Nabuchadnezzar*, is not unprobably thought by

*Ezek. 29. 13.  
14. & 15.  
Ezek. 29. 11.  
Ezek. 30. 2.*

*Jos. Ant. 7. u. 1.  
lib. 20. c. 11.*

*Jer. 39. 30.*

good authors to have been at the return from this Egyptian expedition. But whereas *Iosephus* tells us, that there was another King put in the room of *Apries* by *Nabuchadnezzar*, we must understand, that he was only a Vice-roy, and not (as some have mistaken it) think that this was *Amasis*. For to place the beginning of *Amasis* his reign in the three and twentieth of *Nabuchadnezzar*, were as well repugnant unto the prophecies before alleged, as to all Chronology and History. Some there are, which to help this inconvenience, imagine that there were two successively bearing the name of *Amasis*; others, that there were two *Apries*, the one slain by *Nabuchadnezzar*, the other by *Amasis*: a question of small importance, because the difference is only about a name, it being once granted that the person mentioned in Scriptures, was deprived of life & Kingdome by the Assyrians. Yet for any thing that I can perceive, that *Apries*, of whom the Greek Historians wrote, could not be the Deputy of *Nabuchadnezzar*, seeing that he was the Grand-child of *Pharaoh Necho*, and made war (as they report) upon the *Phenicians*, who were, before the Egyptians, become subject unto the Crown of *Babylon*. I might adde, perhaps, that he whom *Nabuchadnezzar* left as Governour of Egypt, was more likely to have had some Chaldean or Assyrian, than Egyptian name; unless we should think that he had been a traitor to his naturall Prince, and so rewarded by the Conquerour with Lieutenanthip of the Country: about which it were but frivolous to dispute. Thus much in brief we ought to beleve, that *Nabuchodonosor* made an absolute Conquest of Egypt; that he was not so foolish as to give it away, any man may ghesse; that he appointed one to rule the Country, it is consequent unto the former, and hath authority of *Iosephus*; that his Governour (or some Successour of his) was afterwards taken and slain by *Amasis*, I see probability enough to perswade my self, and yet can well be content, that others use their liberty, and beleve what they list. As for the army which this Egyptian King *Apries* is supposed to have kept of *Ionians* and *Carians*, I hold them to be none other than the garrisons of mercenary souldiers which were left by the Assyrian for the guard of his Viceroy, and custody of the new subdued Province: as likewise the company returning from *Cyrene* & *Barce*, who together with the friends of such as were slain in that expedition, remembered before out of the Greek Historians, deplored and slew *Apries*, I take them to have been the Egyptian fugitives, which then recovered their own Country. Sure it is that this Prophecy of *Ezekiel* was verified, *At the end of forty years will I gather the Egyptians from the people, where they were scattered, and I will bring again the captivity of Egypt, and will cause them to return into the land of Pathros, into the land of their habitation, and they shall be there a small Kingdome*. If the Egyptian Priests alluded hereunto in the tale which they made of *Amasis* his obtaining the Kingdome, then are they to be helped with this or the like interpretation; if they devised matter that had no shadow of truth, only to keep the Greeks from knowledge of their Countries disgrace, then are they little to be regarded, since we know the truth with them.

*Ezek. 30. v. 13.  
& 14.*

## §. X.

*Of the sundry accounts drawn from sundry acts of Nabuchadnezzar, and of the destruction of Nineve, by him; the time of which action is uncertain.*

THESE victories brought the greatness of the Assyrian Empire to the full, & from them was reckoned the time of *Nabuchadnezzar*'s reign in sundry places of Scripture. To speake any more of the questions arising about the supposition of *Nabuchadnezzar* his times, might seem to be the over-handling of one Argument: Yet thus much I will note; that whereas *Daniel* was carried captive in the third year of *Jesobakims* reign (which ran along with some part of *Nabuchadnezzar*'s first year) and was kept in diet three years more, before he was brought into the Kings presence; it could not be the second of *Nabuchadnezzar*'s Kingdom, wherein he interpreted the forgotten dream of the great Image, foretelling the successe of Monarchies, but the second of his Empire. The same or the like may be said of divers places which refer sundry matters unto their set years, as that of *Ezekiel* before cited, where he fore-tells, that Egypt should be given in reward for the service done before *Tyrus*, dating his prophecy in the seven and twentieth year; and that of *Daniel*, placing the erection of the golden Image in the eighteenth year: for these years held no dependance upon either the beginning of

*Dan. 1. & 2.*

*Nabuchad-*

Nabuchadnezzars Kingdome, or of his Empire, nor yet upon any of the captivities, but had reference to some memorable actions, omitted in Scripture, and therefore not easie to be found, nor worth the labour of uncertain search.

Of any War made by Nabuchadnezzar, after such time as he returned from the Conquest of Egypt, I doe not read: excepting that against Nineve, the destruction whereof was fore-told by the Prophet Nahum. Nineve had long before been taken by Merodach (as in due place hath been shewed), and together with the rest of Assyria made subject to Babylon. Yet was it left under a peculiar King, who rebelling against the Chaldaean, as Jehojakim and Zedechias, tributary Kings of Juda, had done, tasted likewise of the same fortune. That the destruction of Nineve followed the Conquest of Egypt, it appeareth by the comparison which Nahum the Prophet made between this City, that was to fall, and the City of No in Egypt, that was fallen already. But how long after this came to passe, it is (me thinks) impossible to find out. For whereas it is found in an Hebrew Chronology, that it was in the first of Nabuchadnezzars reign, the place of Nahum last cited is enough to disprove it. Whereas it is referred by some unto the first of his Monarchy, which began at the end of the Egyptian Wars; the whole Prophecy of Nahum which went between the one and the other, argueth strongly, that there was a longer space of time intercurrent. So that to enquire into the very year of this destruction, or other circumstances of the War, whether managed by Nabuchodonosor in person, or by his Lieutenants, were somewhat like unto the vain curiosity of Tyberius Caesar, enquiring who was the Mother of Hecuba, or to the like idle pains which he should take, who would seek to learn what woman that Huzzab Queen of Nineve was, whose wofull captivity the same Prophet Nahum likewise did fore-tell.

## S. XI.

Of the latter time of Nabuchadnezzar; his buildings, madnesse, and death.

Of the time which this great Monarch spent in quiet, I think there are no monuments extant, save those which we find among the prophecies of Daniel. Among these we may reckon his great works of Babylon, wherewith he pleased himself so well, that he brake out into these glorious words: *Is not this great Babel that I have built for the house of the Kingdom, by the might of my power, & for the honour of my Majesty?* Surely if those things be true that are by Josephus rehearsed of him out of Berossus and Megasthenes, he might well delight himself with the contemplation of such goodly and magnificent buildings. For it is said, That he fortified Babylon with a triple wall; that besides other stately works, he raised those huge arches wherewith were born up the high Orchards, hanging as it were in the air, and equalling the tops of Mountains; which most sumptuous frame, that out-lasted all the remainder of the Assyrian, and all the Persian Empire, is said to have been reared, and finished in fifteen days.

But of all this, and other his magnificence, we find little else recorded, than that (which indeed is most profitable for us to consider) his over-valuing of his own greatness abused him unto a condition inferior to the poorest of men. And not undeservedly fell these judgements of God upon him. For whereas God had honoured him, not only with many victories, and much happiness in his own life, but with a discovery of things to come after him, yea and had approved the certainty of his dream, by the miraculous reducing of it into his memory, and interpretation thereof by Daniel the Prophet; he nevertheless became so forgetfull of God, whose wonderfull power he had seen and acknowledged, that he caused a golden Image to be set up and worshipped; or ordaining a cruell death as reward unto them that should dare to disobey his Kingly will and pleasure, which was utterly repugnant to the law of him that is the Kings of Kings. Hereof S. Hierome hath well noted, *Velox obliuio occurrat, ut qui dudum servum Dei quasi Deum adoraverat, nunc statuam sibi fieri jubcat, ut ipse quasi Deus in statua adoraretur: A haste forgetfulness of the truth, that he who so lately had worshipped, (Daniel) the servant of God, as if he had been God himself, should now command a statua to be erected unto himself, wherein himself might be worshipped as God. From this impiety it pleased God to reclaim him, by the strange and wonderfull delivery of those blessed Saints out of the fiery fornace; who being thrown into it bound, for refusing to commit Idolatry, were assisted*

assisted by an Angell; preserved from all harm of the fire; loosened from their bands; and finally called out with gracious words, and restored to their former honour, by the King: who amazed at the miracle, made a decree tending to the honour of God, which by erection of his Image he had violated. Yet this devotion of Nabuchadnezzar was not so rooted in him, that it could bring forth fruit answerable to his hastic zeal. Therefore was he forewarned by God in a dream of the terrible judgement hanging over his head; which Daniel expounded, advised him to break off his sin by righteousness, and his iniquity by mercy towards the poor, that there might be an healing of his error. Hereby it seems that injustice and crueltie were the faults, for which he was threatened: but this threatening sufficed not unto his information. For that so great a Monarch should be driven from among men; (according to the tenor of the dream and interpretation) yea, compelled to dwell with the beasts of the field, and made to eat grasse as the Oxen, was a thing so incredible in mans judgement, that easily it might be thought an idle dream; and much more easily be forgotten at the years end. One whole years leisure to repent was given to this haughty Prince: which respite of the execution may seem to have bred in him a forgetfulness of Gods sentence. For at the end of twelve months, walking in the royall Palace of Babel, he was so over-joyed and transported with a vain contemplation of his own seeming happiness, that without all fear of Gods heavey judgement pronounced against him, he uttered those loftie words before rehearsed, in vaunting of the Majestickall works which he had reared, as well becomming his majesticall person. But his high speeches were not fully ended, when a voyce from heaven, telling him that his Kingdome was departed from him, rehearsed over unto him the sentence again, which was fulfilled upon him the very same hour.

That Salomon, and many other Princes, and great ones, have taken delight in their own buildings, it cannot any way be doubted; yet I doe not remember that ever I have read of any, that were punished for rejoicing in works of this kind (though it is hard in joy, or any passion of the mind, to keep a just measure) excepting onely this Nabuchadnezzar.

The like may be said of David: for other (and some very godly) Kings have mustred all their forces to the very last man; but few or none have been known to have been punished as David was. Surely I not only hold it lawful to rejoyce in those good things wherewith God hath blessed us; but a note of much unthankfulness to entertain them with a fullen and unfeeling disposition. Yet as all humane affections, wherein due reference to God is wanting, are no better than obscure clouds hindring the influence of that blessed light, which clarifies the soule of man, and predisposeth it unto the brightness of eternall felicity; so that insolent joy, which man in the pride of his vain imagination conceiveth of his own worth, doth above all other passions blast our minds, as it were with lightning, and make us to reflect our thoughts upon our seeming inherent greatness, forgetting the whilest him, to whom we are indebted, for our very being. Wherefore these *Mala mentis gaudia; The evill joyes of the minds* were not unaptly, by the Prince of Latine Poets, bestowed in the entrance of hell, and placed further inward than sorrows, cares, and fear; not far from the yron Cabbins of the Furies. And certainly it is no unlikely token of vengeance neer at hand, when these unreasonable flushes of proud and vain joy, doe rage in a mind, that should have been humbled with a just repentance, and acknowledgement of ill deserving.

This was verified upon Nabuchadnezzar, whose punishment was singular and unexampled. For he ran among beasts in the fields and woods, where for seven years he lived, not onely as a salvage man, but as a salvage beast; for a beast he thought himself, *secundum suam imaginationem*, as Thomas noteth, and therefore fed himself in the same manner, and with the same food that beasts do; Not that he was changed in figure externall, according to Mediana, inasmuch as he appeared a beast to other mens eyes, as S. Hierome in the life of Hilarius (how true God knows) speaks of a woman that appeared to all other men sight a Cow, but to Hilarius onely a woman; neither was hee changed as Iphigenia the daughter of Agamemnon was said to be, into a Hinde; nor made a Monster, as Dorotheus and Epiphanius dreamed: but according to S. Feromes exposition of these words: *At the same time was my understanding restored unto me, &c. Quando dicit (saith S. Ferome) sensum sibi redditum; ostendit non formam se amisisse, sed mentem; When hee saith that his sense was restored unto him, he sheweth that he had not lost his humane shape,*

Dan. 4. 3. 34.

but his understanding. Seven years expired, it pleased God to restore *Nabuchodonosor*, both to his understanding, and his estate, for which he acknowledged and praised God all the rest of his life, confessing his power, and everlasting being; that he was the Lord of heaven and earth, and wrought without resistance what he pleased in both; that his works were all truth, and his ways righteous. Which gave argument to many of the Fathers, and others, not to doubt of his salvation; namely, *S. Augustine*, *Theodoret*, *Lysia*, *Carthusianus*, and others. And for that place of *Ezay* the fourteenth, out of which his perdition may be gathered, the aforementioned Authors apply the same to *Balthasar*, because *Ezay*, both in the thirteenth and fourteenth Chapters, speaketh of the King, and the destruction of *Babylon* jointly.

10

## §. XII. of Evilmerodach.

**H**AVING already spoken what I could of the succession and years of *Nebuchadnezzar's* posterity; the most that may be said of him, is said of *Evilmerodach*, which I will not here again rehearse.

He lost some part of that which his Father had gotten; and left his Kingdom burning in a warre that consumed it to ashes. Hee lost *Egypt* by rebellion of the people, in the nineteenth year of his reign, which was forty years after his Father had conquered it. But this agrees neither with the account of *Herodotus*, who allowes to *Amasis* four and forty years of reign; nor with that of *Diodorus*, who gives him five and fifty, saying, that he died in the third year of the threecore and third Olympiad, when *Cambyses* did conquer *Egypt*. There were indeed but seven and thirty years, which passed between the second year of the four and fiftieth Olympiad, (which was the nineteenth of *Evilmerodach*, and the first *Amasis*) and the sixt of *Cambyses* his reign, wherein hee was *Egypt*; of which seven and thirty years it is credibly held, that *Psammiticus*, the son of *Amasis*, reigned three: so that *Amasis* could bee no longer King than four and thirty years. But seeing that these *Greek* Historians have been abused by *Egyptian* Priests, in the substance of that which was spoken of *Amasis*, it is no marvell though they were also deceived in the length of his reign. This is the plain answer to this objection. To say either that the numbers were miswritten, and four and forty set down in stead of four and thirty, or that *Amasis* did temporise a while with the *Assyrians*, and not bear himself as absolute King of *Egypt*, untill the nineteenth of *Evilmerodach* (at which time, and not before, it hath been proved out of *Ezechiel*, that *Egypt* became again a Kingdom) I hold it a superfluous excuse.

30

Whether these *Egyptian* troubles did animate the King of the *Medes* to deal with *Evilmerodach*, as with a Prince greater in fame and reputation, gotten by the decayed valour of his people, than in present forces; or whether (as I rather think) some foyle received by the *Assyrian* invading *Media*, emboldened the *Egyptians* to rebell against him; I will neither undertake, nor seek to define. *Xenophon* tells that the first service of young *Cyrus*, in warre, was under *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, his Grand-father, in a prosperous fight against the *Assyrian* Prince, who did set upon him; at which time *Cyrus* was fifteen or sixteen years old. If therefore *Cyrus* lived threecore and three years (as he is said to have died well stricken in years) which is held to be the ordinary term of no short life, then was this encounter in the third year of *Evilmerodach* his reign. Yet by the same reckoning it should follow, that the warre began more early between these Nations, for as much as the manner of their fight in former times, with other circumstances insinuating as much, are found in the same place of *Xenophon*. And it may well be, that the death or destruction of *Nabuchodonosor* gave courage unto those that had felt him a troublesome neighbour, to stand upon prouder termes with the *Assyrians*, than in his flourishing estate they durst have used. Howsoever the quarrell began, we find that it ended not before the last ruine of the *Assyrian* Monarchie. For the *Babylonian*, being too proud to digest the losses which he received by the *Medes* and their Allies the *Persians*, drew unto his partie the *Lydians*, and all the people of the lesser *Asia*, with gifts and strong persuasions, hoping so to over-whelm his enemies with a strong Invasion, whom in vain hee had sought to wearie out with a lingering Warre.

This

This happened after the death of *Astyages*, who left the world in the nineteenth year of *Evilmerodach*, at which time *Amasis* took possession of *Egypt*. So that the *Assyrian* having his hands already full of business, which more earnestly did affect him, seemes thereby to have given the better means unto the *Egyptians*, of new erecting their Kingdom, which by long distance of place did sundry times find occasion to rebell in after-ages, and set up a King within in self, against the far more mighty *Persian*.

The issue of these great preparations made by *Evilmerodach* against the *Medes*, was such as opened the way unto the fulfilling of those prophecies, which were many years before uttered against *Babel*, by *Ezay* and *Jeremy*.

10 For the *Assyrians* and their Confederates, who, trusting in their numbers, thought to have buried the *Medes* and *Persians* under their thick shoures of arrowes and darts, were encountered with an army of stout and well-trained men, weightily armed for close fight, by whom they were beaten in open battell, wherein *Evilmerodach* was slain. So that great frame of Empire which *Nabuchodonosor* had raised and up-held, being shaken and grievously crackt under his unfortunate son, was left to be sustained by his unworthy Nephew; a man more likely to have overthrown it, when it was greatest and strongest, than to repair it, when it was in way of falling.

## §. XIII.

10 A private conjecture of the Author; serving to make good those things, which are cited out of *Berosus*, concerning the Successors of *Evilmerodach*, without wrong to the truth. The quality, and death of *Balthasar*.

**T**HOUGH I have already (as it seemes to me) sufficiently proved that *Balthasar* was the Son, and immediate Successeur to *Evilmerodach*, yet considering earnestly the conjectures of those Writers, which following *Berosus*, insert *Niglissar*, or *Nirgissaroor*, and his son *Labassardach* between them; as also that which I find in *Herodotus* of *Nitocris*, a famous Queen of *Babylon*, who greatly adorned and fortified that City; I have thought it not superfluous here in this place to shew, by what means it was possible that some error might have crept into the Historie of those times, and thereby have brought us to a needlesse trouble of searching out the truth, as it were by candle-light, in the uncertain fragments of lost Authors, which we might have found by day-light, had we adhered only to the Scriptures. First therefore I observe; that the time which *Berosus* divides betwixt *Evilmerodach*, and the two next Kings, agrees with the years in which *Nebuchadnezzar* lived vviid among brute beasts in the open field: Secondly, that the suddenness of this accident, vvhich came in one hour, could not but vvorke much perturbation in that State, vvherein doubleste the honour of so noble a Prince was highly regarded, his calamity pitied, and his restitution hoped; the prediction of *Daniel* finding reputation in that clause vvhich promised his recoverie, as being verified in that which had bin more incredible. Now if we doe in common reason judge, what course was like to be taken by the great ones of the Kingdom, for setting the government, whilst the King was thus distracted, wee shall find it most likely, that his Son and Heir did occupie the Royall Throne, with condition to restore it unto his Father, when God should enable him to repossesse it. In this his rule *Evilmerodach* being to supply the utter want of understanding in his Father, as Protectors doe the unripe-ness of it in young, but reasonable Kings, might easily either: commit the insolences, or fall into the troubles, incident to such an office. That he had in him very small abilitie of government, it appears by his ill maintaining the Empire, when hee held it in his own right. That his sister *Nitocris* (if *Nitocris* were his sister) was a woman of an high spirit, 30 it appears by that which *Herodotus* reports of her, saying that shee was more cunning than *Semiramis*, as appeared in her magnificent and usefull works about the River of *Euphrates*; and her fortification of *Babylon* against the *Medes*, who had gotten many Towns from the *Assyrians*, and amongst them *Nineve*. Wherefore it were not unreasonable to think, that such a woman, seeing how the Empire went to decay through her brothers misgovernment, used practices to get the rule into her own hands, and afterwards, as a mother, to leave it unto her ungracious son. Other time than this, wherein *Nitocris* could have reigned, wee doe not find; but wee find in *Berosus* (as *Fosippus* hath cited him) that *Niglissar*, who got the Kingdom from *Evilmerodach*, was his sisters husband;

Herodot. lib. 1.

X. neph. Cyro-  
pal. lib. 1.X. neph. Cy-  
ro-  
pal. lib. 8.



usband; which argues this to have been the same woman. As for *Labassardach* the son of *Niglissar*, if at the end of nine months reign he were for his lewd conditions slain by the Nobility, as the same *Berosus* reporteth, it seemes that God prepared hereby the way for *Nebuchadnezzars* restitution (whose term of punishment was then expired) by raising such trouble, as should make him the more desired, both of the Princes and the people. I will not here use many words to confute that which *Berosus* hath further set down of *Evilmerodach*, telling us that he was slain by his sisters husband: for the plain words of the Scripture, naming the year wherein he gave liberty to *Fechonia*, do plainly testifie that he our-lived the three or four and fortieth year of his Fathers reign, which was the last of his life.

This may suffice to shew, that they who are said to have succeeded *Evilmerodach* in the Kingdom, might indeed have so done, though not when he held it in his own right. Of *Balthasar*, who was his Son and Heir, we find, that he had such conditions, as God permitted to be in a King for the ruin of the people. Hee was from his young years of a mischievous nature, having in his Fathers time slain a Noble young-man that should have married his sister, only for spight, and envie to see him kill two wild beasts in hunting, at which himself having thrown his Javeline had missed them. Another great Lord he had gelded, because a Gentlewoman commending his beauty, said it were a happy woman that should be his wife. Such barbarous villanies caused many which had loved his Father (as a good and gracious, though unfortunate Prince) to revolt from him unto the enemy as soon as hee was King. Neither doe I find that hee performed any thing worthy of record, but as a coward and a fool he lost all, sitting still, and not once daring to give battell to them that daily took somewhat from him. Yet carelessly feasting when danger had hemmed him in on every side, and when death arrested him by the hands of those whom he had wronged in his Fathers life. So the end of him was base and miserable; for he died as a fool taken in unexcusable security, yet had not that happiness, such as it is, of a death free from apprehension of fear, but was terrified with a dreadful vision; which had shewed his ruin not in many houres before, even whilest he was drinking in that wine, which the swords of his insulting enemies drew out of him, together with his latest blood. It is therefore in this place enough to say of him, That after a dishonourable reign of seventeen years, he perished like a beast, and was slain as he deserved. The rest that concerneth him in question of his time, hath been spoken heretofore, in matter of his affaires, shall be handled among the acts of *Cyrus*, to whose story, that of *Balthasar* is but an appendix.

## CHAP. II.

Of the originall and first greatnesse of the Persians.

6. T.

That the Medes were chief actors in the subversion of the Babylonian Empire.



THE Line of *Belochus* being now extinguished in *Balthasar*, the Empire of *Babylon*, and of *Assyria*, was joynted first to that of *Media*, which then was governed by *Cyaxares* or *Darius Medus*, after whom *Cyrus* became Lord and Monarch, both of *Assyria* and of *Media* it self.

Of the race of *Phul Belochus* there were ten Kings, besides himself, and of *Arbaces* as many are found by *Metasthenes*. These two Provinciall Governours having cut down the last branch of *Ninus* in *Sardanapalus*, divided between them the Eastern Empire. *Cyaxares* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) the last of the race of *Arbaces*, dying about two years after that the line of *Belochus* was ended in *Balthasar*; the Dominions aswell of the Conquerour, as of the conquered, fell to a third Family, namely, to *Cyrus* of the house of *Achamenes* the Princes of which blood reigning in *Persia*, had formerly

formerly been dependants on the *Medes*, and were of as little power at home, as of fame abroad in the world.

Of the Familie of the *Achamenes*, and Line of the *Persian* Kings, we shall hereafter find occasion in due place to intreat.

The Nation of the *Medes* descended from *Madai* the third son of *Japhet*; that they had Kings soon after the Flood, *Lactantius* and *Diodorus* have found record; For *Lactantius* remembereth an ancient King of the *Medes* called *Hydaspes*, and *Diodore* speaketh of *Pharnus* with his seven sons, slain by the *Assyrians* in the beginning of their Empire.

But of these who succeeded *Arbaces* the first, that freed his Nation from the *Assyrians*, I take the list and number from *Eusebius*, adding *Darius Medus*: of whom I have spoken in their proper places heretofore; and they are these;

<i>Arbaces</i>	} reigned	28. years.
<i>Sosarmus</i>		30. years.
<i>Medidus</i>		40. years.
<i>Cardaces</i>		13. years.
<i>Diocles</i>		13. years.
<i>Phraortes</i>		24. years.
<i>Cyaxares</i>		32. years.
<i>Astyages</i>		38. years.
<i>Darius Medus.</i>		

And though the *Greeks* ascribe the conquest of *Babylon* to *Cyrus* alone, yet the Scriptures teach us, that *Darius* was not only King of *Media*, and had the *Persians* his followers, but that the Armie victorious over *Balthasar* was his; as the *Assyrian* and *Babylonian* Empire also was during his own life. For we find in *Daniel*, that *Darius* of the *Medes* took the Kingdom being threescore and two years old: And further, what Officers it pleased him to set over the Kingdom. And so was it prophesied by *Isay* long before: Behold, I will stir up the *Medes* against them, &c. And by *Jeremie*, The Lord hath raised up the Spirit of the King of the *Medes*: for his purpose is against *Babel* to destroy it; and in the eight and twentieth Verse, Prepare against her the Nations, with the King of the *Medes*, the Dukes thereof, the Princes thereof, and all the Land of his Dominion. These Scriptures *Julius Africanus* doth well open, who taking authority from *Diodore*, *Cassor*, *Thallus*, and others, delivereth that *Babylon* was taken before *Cyrus* began to reign, which also agreeth with *Strabo*, where he saith, That as the *Medes* were subjugated by the *Persians*, so before that, both the *Babylonians* and *Assyrians* were mastered by the *Medes*. And therefore the reports of *Fufine* and *Herodotus* are not to be received, who attribute the taking of *Babylon* to *Cyrus* alone.

9. II.

By what means the Empire was translated from the Medes to the Persians.

How the Kingdome of the *Medes* fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, it is a doubt not sufficiently cleared by Historians, but rather their different relations of his beginnings have bred the former opinion of those who give the conquest of *Babel* to the *Persians* only. For some there are who deny that *Astyages* had any other Successor than *Cyrus* his grand-child by *Mandane*. Whereas *Ctesias* on the contrary side affirmeth, that *Cyrus* was no way descended from *Astyages* (whom he calleth *Afigis* or *Apania*) but only that having vanquished him in battell, and confined him to *Bactria*, he married his Daughter *Amysis*. But I find the relations of *Ctesias* often cited, and seldom followed, and himself sometimes very justly reproved of wilfull untruth.

*Vigintius*, a diligent and learned historian of this age, produceth many probable reasons that *Astyages* had no such son as *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*; and to confirm this opinion the more, he citeth *Diodore*, *Fufine*, *Strabo*, *Plato*, *Aristotle*, *Isocrates*, and before them *Cassor*, *Thallus*, and *Phlegon* who do not find any such successsor. Neither do *Tatianus*, *Theophilus*, *Antiochenus*, *Julius Africanus*, *Clemens Alexandrinus*, *Fufine Martyr*, *Lactantius*, *Eusebius*, *S. Hierome*, or *S. Augustine*, make report out of any faithful Author by them read, that hath given other Son or Successor to *Astyages* than *Cyrus*.

K k k

Yet

Zon. l. x. c. 19.  
Jof. an. l. 10.  
c. 11.  
Zon. l. 8. c. 4.

Yet seeing that this manner of argument *ab authoritate negativa*, doth never inference consent; we may be the bolder (all this great list of noble Writers by him alleged notwithstanding) to affirm, that either *Ahyages* himself must have been *Darius* of the *Medes*, which cannot agree with his place in the course of time; Or else to give him some other Successor, according to *Jofephus* and *Xenophon*, the same whom *Daniel* calleth *Darius*. For it is manifest and without dispute, that the King of the *Medes* commanded in chief, and was absolute Lord of that Conquest, *Cyrus* during his life, being no other than the Lieutenant of his Armie, and subject to his authoritie; The strength of both Nations, to wit, the *Medes* and *Persians*, with other the Vassals of *Darius*, being joynted together to compound it.

But it is very certain that the honour of that great victorie over *Babylon* was wholly given to *Cyrus*, who was the instrument preordained and forenamed by God himself for this action, but for the deliverie of his Church; a greater work not only in the eyes of God, than the subversion of any State or Monarchie how powerful soever.

And it may well be thought, that the Souldiers employed in that service did rather ascribe the glory to him that was the best man of war, than to the *Median*, who was greatest in riches and power. All which also falling upon *Cyrus* by succession, and continuing in his posteritie, did much augment the fame of his vertue; which among prophane Historians overgrew altogether the honour due to *Cyaxares*, both because he was old, and did nothing in person; as also because he soon after quitted the world, and left all to *Cyrus*, who was possessor of whatsoever belonged to *Darius*, before the fame of any such King or Conqueror was carried far off.

And for the *Greek* Historians, they took all things from the relation of the *Persians*, who gave to *Cyrus* all the praise of a most excellent Prince, making none his equal. Only *Daniel* in the first, fifth, and sixth Chapters of his Prophecie, makes it plain, that himselfe not only lived a great Officer under King *Darius*, but that he continued in that estate to the first of *Cyrus*; which being the year of *Daniels* Death, could not have been distinguished from the reign of *Darius*, if they had begun together and reigned jointly: Neither can it be imagined that *Darius* held the Kingdome by *Cyrus* permission, considering that *Cyrus* began after him.

### s. III.

*Xenophons relation of the Warre with the Medes and Persians, made with joynt forces upon the Assyrians and others.*

These Testimonies of the Scriptures, which need no other confirmation, yet made more open to our understanding, by that which *Xenophon* hath written of these wars: The cause whereof, according to his report, was this.

When the *Assyrian* had enlarged his Empire with victories, and was become Lord of all *Syria*, and many other Countries, he began to hope that if the *Medes* could be brought under his subjection, there should not then be left any Nation adjoining able to make head against him. For the King of the *Medes* was able to bring into the field threecore thousand foot, and ten thousand horse, to which the forces of *Persia* being joynted, made an exceeding strong Armie.

The *Assyrian* considering the strength of such a Neighbour, invited *Cresus* King of *Lydia*, a Prince very mighty both in men and treasure, and with him other Lords of *Asia* the lesse, to his assistance, alleging, that those Eastern Nations were very powerful, and so firmly conjoynted by league and many alliances, that it would not be easie, nor possible, for any one Nation to resist them. With these incitements, and strengthened with great presents, he drew to himselfe so many adherents, as he compounded an Armie of two hundred thousand foot, and threecore thousand horse; of which, ten thousand horse, and forty thousand foot were led by *Cresus*, who had great cause of enmitie with the *Medes*, in regard of the Warre made by them against his Father *Ahyages*. But this great Armie was by *Cyaxares* King of the *Medes*, and by *Cyrus* General of the *Persian* forces, utterly broken; Upon which defeat the *Assyrian* King being also slain, so many of the *Assyrians* revolted, as *Babylon* it self could not longer be assured without the succours of Mercenaries, waged with great summes of money out of *Asia* the lesse, *Egypt*, and elsewhere. Which new gathered forces

were

were also scattered by *Cyrus*, who following his advantage, possessed himself of a great part of the lesser *Asia*; at which time it was, as I take it, that *Cresus* himself was also made prisoner.

The attempt of *Babylon* following soon after, the Armie lying before it being paid by *Darius*, whom *Xenophon* calleth *Cyaxares*, and led by *Cyrus* his sisters son, prevailed against *Balthasar*, as in due time shall be set down.

Those *Persians* which followed *Cyrus*, and by him levied, are numbred thirty thousand foot-men, of which a thousand were armed Gentlemen, the rest of the common sort were Archers, or such as used the Dart or Sling. So far *Xenophon*. Of whom in this argument, as it is true, that he described in *Cyrus* the pattern of a most Heroicall Prince, with much Poeticall addition: so it cannot be denied, but that the bulk and grosse of his Narration was founded upon meer Historicall truth.

Neither can it indeed be affirmed of any the like writers, that in every speech and circumstance he hath precisely tyed himself to the phrase of the speaker, or nature of the occasion, but borrowed in each out of his own invention, appropriating the same to the times and persons of whom he treated. Putting therefore apart the Morall and Politicall discourse, and examining but the Historie of things done, it will easily appear, that *Xenophon* hath handled his under-taken subject in such sort, that by beautifying the face thereof, he hath not in any sort corrupted the body.

### s. IV.

*The estate of the Medes and Persians in times fore-going this great War.*

For it is commonly agreed upon, that *Achamenes* the sonne of *Perfes* being Governour of *Persia*, did associate himself with *Arbaces*, who commanded in *Media*, in that rebellion against *Sardanapalus*, and that each of them after the victorie obtained, held for himselfe the Dominion of those Countries, which he had formerly ruled for the *Assyrians*; as also that they conveyed over the same honour and power to their posteritie; which in *Media* was not absolutely Regall, but with some restraint limited, untill such time as *Deioces* took upon him the full authoritie and majestie of a King. From the death of *Sardanapalus* to the reign of *Deioces*, are usually accounted about an hundred and forty years, in the last sixty whereof there reigned in *Assyria* mighty Princes, namely, *Salmanassar* and his Successors; whose great achievements in *Syria* and elsewhere, witness, that the *Medes* and *Persians* found it not for their advantage to undertake any offensive war against those victorious Kings, it being also probable that the league continued as yet between these the successors of *Belochus* and *Arbaces*, who had formerly shared the Empire.

Now from the beginning of *Deioces* to the first of *Ahyages*, there past above ninetie years, in which, if *Herodotus* have written truly, that *Phraortes* conquered *Persia*, and how he and other Kings of *Media* by many victories greatly enlarged their Dominions, and commanded many parts of *Asia*, it had been but an unadvised enterprise of the *Assyrians* and *Babylonians*, to have wasted themselves against the *Syrians* and *Egyptians*, leaving so able and victorious a Nation on their backs. But that the *Medes* had done nothing upon the South parts of *Persia*; and that the *Persians* themselves were not masters of *Susiana* in *Nabuchodonosors* time, it is manifest in *Daniel*, who was then Governour for the *Babylonians* in *Susa*, or *Susan*, the chief City thereof. It is true indeed, that the *Medians*, either under *Cyaxares* or *Ahyages*, or both, had quarrell with *Halyattes* the father of *Cresus*, which after some six years dispute was compounded.

How the affairs of *Persia* stood in so many ages, I do not find any memorie. It seemeth that the roughness of the mountainous Countrey which they then possessed, with the confederacie which they continued with the *Medes*, gave them more securitie than fame: For if their Kings, being the posteritie of *Achamenes*, had done any memorable acts, the greatness which they afterward obtained would not have suffered any forgetfulness thereof. But as we find all *Xenophons* reports, both of these Warres and the state of those countries to be very consonant and agreeable to the relation of many other good Authors, so it appears, that the race of *Achamenes* held the Principallie of *Persia* from Father to Son for many descents. And therefore we may better give credit

K k 2

to

to *Xenophon*, who affirmeth, That *Cambyses* the father of *Cyrus* was King of *Persia*, than to those that make him a mean man, and say, that *Astages* gave him his daughter *Mandane* in marriage, to the end that her son (whose nativitie he feared) might be disabled from any great undertaking by his fathers ignobilitie.

For what cause of grief could it be to *Astages*, that the son of his daughter should become Lord of the best part of *Asia*? No, it was more likely, that upon such a Prophecie his love to his grand-child should have increased, and his care been the greater to have married her to some Prince of strength and eminent vertue.

Yea, the same *Herodotus*, who is the first Author, and as I think the deviser of the mischief intended against *Cyrus* by his Grandfather, doth confesse, That the line of the *Achamenide* was so renowned, that the great King *Xerxes* in the height of his prosperitie did the same derive himself, and vaunt of it: which he would never have done, had they been ignoble, or had they been the vassals of any other King or Monarch.

For in this sort *Xerxes* in the seventh of *Herodotus* deriveth himself.

{ <i>Achamenes.</i>	{ <i>Teispens.</i>	{ <i>Hystaspes.</i>
{ <i>Cambyses.</i>	{ <i>Ariaramnes.</i>	{ <i>Darius.</i>
{ <i>Cyrus.</i>	{ <i>Arhamnes.</i>	{ <i>Xerxes.</i>

Of the *Achamenide* there were two races: of the first was *Cyrus* the great, whose issue male failed in his two sons, *Cambyses* and *Smerdis*. This royall familie is thus set down by the learned *Reineccius*.

*Achamenes*, the son of *Perfes*, first King of *Persia*.

*Darius*.

*Cyrus*, the first of that name, had *Cambyses*, and *Atossa*, who married to *Pharnaces*, King of *Cappadocia*, had *Arystona* and other daughters.

*Cambyses* had

*Cyrus* the Great: *Cyrus* had

*Cambyses*, who succeeded him, and *Smerdis*, slain by his brother *Cambyses*.

Of the second were those seven great Princes of *Persia*, who having overthrown the usurped royaltie of the *Magi*, chose from among themselves *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspes*, King.

This Kingdome of *Persia* was first known by the name of *Elam*, so called after *Elam* the son of *Sem*, and the people therein inhabiting, *Elamites*; by *Elianus*, *Elyma*; by *Josephus*, *Elymi*.

*Suidas* derives this Nation sometimes from *Assur*, sometimes from *Magog*, of whom *Euf. l. 6. c. 8.* they were called *Magusai*, which *Magusai*, according to *Eusebius*, are not to be taken for the Nation in general, but for those that were afterward called the *Magi* or Wise men.

So doe the *Greeks*, among many other their sayings of them, affirm, That the *Persians* were anciently written *Artes*, and that they called themselves *Cephene*s. But that they were *Elamites*, *Moses* and the Prophets; *Esay*, *Jeremie*, *Ezekiel*, *Daniel* and *Esdra*s, in many places confirm: Which also *S. Hierome* upon *Jeremie* the five and twentieth, upon *Daniel* the eighth, and also in his *Hebrew* questions, approveth, saying: *Elam*, a quo *Elamites* *Principes Persidis*; *Elam*, of whom were the *Elamites* *Principes* of *Persia*.

And that Cite which the Author of the second booke of the *Maccabees* calleth *Persepolis*, is by the Author of the first called *Elemais*, but is now called *Sirus*, being the same which *Antiochus*, for the great riches thereof, twice attempted in vain, and to his great dishonour. And yet this Cite, now called *Sirus*, was not the old *Persepolis*; for *Alexander* at the request of *Thais* the Harlot, burnt it.

The first King of *Persia* to us known, if we follow the current of Authors interpreting the fourteenth chapter of *Genesis*, was *Chedorlaomer*, who lived with *Amraphel* or *Nimrod*, and joyned with him in the war against those *Arabians*; who was afterward extinguished by the forces of *Abraham*.

## CHAP. III.

## Of Cyrus.

## §. I.

## Of Cyrus his name, and first actions.



Touching the name of *Cyrus*, *Strabo* saith, That the same was taken from a river which watereth *Persia*; this great Prince having *Agradatus* for his proper name. But the great *Cyrus* was not the first of that name. *Herodotus* otherwise, and that *Cyrus* signifieth a father in the *Persian* Tongue, and therefore so intitled by the people.

It is true, that for his Justice and other excellent vertues he was indeed called a Father; but that the name of *Cyrus* had any such signification, I think it be mistaken.

*Plutarch* hath a third opinion, affirming, That *Cyrus* is as much to say as the Sun, in the same Language. Howsoever it be, yet the Prophet *Esay*, almost two hundred years before *Cyrus* was born, gives him that name, Thus saith the Lord unto *Cyrus* his Anointed, &c.

Before the Conquest of *Babylon*, the victories which *Cyrus* obtained were many and great: among which, the Conquest of *Lydia*, and other Provinces thereto subject, together with the taking of *Croesus* himself, are not recounted by *Eusebius*, *Orosius*, and others, but placed among his latter achievements: whose opinion for this difference of time is founded upon two reasons; namely, That of the *Median* there is no mention in that last war against *Croesus*; and that the obtaining of *Sardis* is referred to the eight and fiftieth Olympiad, and the glorious victorie which *Cyrus* had over *Babylon*, to the five and fiftieth Olympiad.

The former of which might have bin used (and was by the *Greeks*) to exclude the *Medes* from the honour of having won *Babylon* it self, which in due place I have answered. The latter seems to have reference to the second War which *Cyrus* made upon *Lydia*, when it rebelled; at which time he so established his former Conquest, as after that time these Nations never offered to revolt. Wherefore I like better in this particular to beleve with *Herodotus*, whom the most of Chronologers follow, and find the enterprise of *Sardis* to precede that of *Babylon*.

## §. II.

## Of Croesus the King of Lydia, who made War upon Cyrus.

I Have in the last Book spoken somewhat of *Croesus*, of his race and predecessors, as also of those Kings which governed *Lydia* in more ancient times: of which the first (to prophane Authors known) was *Lydus* the son of *Atys*: which Familie extinguished, the kingdom was by an Oracle conferred upon *Argon*, descended from *Hercules*, wherof there were two and twentie generations, *Candaules* being the last, who by shewing his fair wife naked to *Gyges* his favorite, he was by the same *Gyges* (thereto urged upon perill of his own life by the Queen) the next day slain. Which done, *Gyges* enjoyed both the Queen and the Kingdom of *Lydia*, and left the same to *Atys* his son, who was father to *Sadyattes*, the father of *Halyattes* (who thrust the *Cimmerians* out of *Asia*) and *Halyattes* begat *Croesus*. Which five Kings, of a third race, enjoyed that kingdom an hundred and sevenie years. *Halyattes* the father of *Croesus* was an undertaking Prince, and after he had continued a war against *Cyaxares* the *Median*, a Prince very powerful, and maintained it six years, a peace was concluded upon equal conditions between them.

*Astages*, the son of *Cyaxares*, and grandfather to *Cyrus*, thought himself greatly honoured by obtaining *Aryenes*, *Croesus* sister, whom he married.

But *Cræsus* so far enlarged his dominions after his fathers death, as he was nothing inferior in territory to any King or Monarch of that age: Of which, about that time there were four in effect of equall strength, to wit, the *Median*, the *Babylonian*, the *Egyptian*, and the *Lydian*: only *Nabuchodonosor*, after he had joyned *Phœnicia*, *Palestina*, and *Egypt* to his Empire, had thence-forward no Competitor during his own life.

But *Cræsus*, notwithstanding the men and treasure spent in the quarrell of the *Babylonians*, he yet mastered *Æolus*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, Provinces posselt by the *Greeks* in *Asia* the lesse, adjoining to *Lydia*; gave law to the *Phrigians*, *Bithynians*, *Carians*, *Mysians*, *Paphlagonians*, and other Nations. And that he also intorc'd the *Ephesians* to acknowledge him, notwithstanding they compassed their Citie with *Diana's* girdle, *Herodotus* 10 to witnesse. Moreover, *Athenens* out of *Berosus* (which also confirmeth) makes report of a Signall victorie which *Cræsus* obtained against the *Sacæans*, a Nation of the *Scythians*, in memory whereof the *Babylonians* his allies did yearly celebrate a Feast, which they called *Sacæa*: All which he performed in fourteen years.

Herodotus  
lib. 1. 14. 6. 17

And being now confident in the continuance of his good fortune, and envious of *Cyrus* fame, doubting also, that his prosperous undertakings might in the end grow perillous to himself, he consulted with the Oracle of *Apollo*, whom he presented with marvellous rich gifts, what successe he might hope for against *Cyrus*, if he undertook him: from whom he received this riddle, *Cræsus*, passing over the River *Halys*, shall dissolve a great Dominion. For the devill being doubtful of the successe, payed him with merchandize 10 of both side alike, and might be inverted either way, to the ruin of *Persia*, or of his own *Lydia*.

### s. III.

#### *Cræsus his Expedition against Cyrus.*

Hereupon *Cræsus* being resolved to stop the course of *Cyrus* fortunes, if he could, despised all the arguments used by *Sardanes* to the contrary, who desired him to fore-think, That he urged a Nation inhabiting a barren and mountainous region; a people not covered with the soft silk of worms, but with the hard skins of beasts; not fed with such meat as they fancied, but content with what they found; drinkers of water, not of wine: and in a word, a Nation warlike, enduring, valiant and prosperous; over whom if he became victorious, he could thereby enrich himself in nothing but fame, in which he already excelled: and if by them beaten, and subjected, so great would his losse appear of all things which the world hath in account, as the same could neither hastily be told, nor readily conceived.

Notwithstanding this solid counsel, *Cræsus* having prepared a powerful army, he led the same toward *Media*, but in his passage he was arrested at *Pterium*, a City of great strength in *Cappadocia*; which while he fought by all means to surpris or to force, *Cyrus*, came 40 on, & found the *Lydians* encamped before it. That each was inferior to other in strength or opinion, I doe not find: for out of doubt, *Cræsus*, as he excelled any Prince of that age in riches and abilitie; so was he not under any in territorie and fame that then lived.

But as *Cratippus* of *Mirylen* answered *Pompey* when he complained against the gods, because they favoured a disturber and usurper of the Common-weale against him who fought for the *Romane* libertie, That Kingdoms and Common-weales had their encrease and period from divine Ordinance: so at this time was the winter of *Cræsus* prosperitie at hand, the leaves of his flourishing fortune ready to fall, and that of *Cyrus* but in the flower and first spring. The God of all power, and not *Admetus* Herdman, *Apollo*, had given a date to the one, and a beginning of glory to the other.

When these two Armies were in view of each other, after the entertainment of divers skirmishes, the *Persians* and *Lydians* began to joyn in grosse troops: supplies from both Kings thrust on upon the falling off, and advancement of either Nations: and as the *Persians* had somewhat the better of the day, so when the dark vail of night had hidden each Armie from the others view, *Cræsus* doubting what successe the rising Sun would bring with it, quitted the field to *Cyrus*, and with all speed possible retired, and taking the next way into *Lydia*, recovered *Sardis* his first Citie and Regall Seat, without any pursuit made by *Cyrus* to retard him. Where being arrived, and nothing suspecting

suspecting *Cyrus* approach, or any other War for that Winter, he dismissed the Souldiers, and sent the troops of his sundrie Nations to their own Provinces, appointing them to re-assemble at the end of five months, acquainting his Commanders with his intents for the renewing of the War at the time appointed.

### s. IV.

#### *The Conquest of Lydia by Cyrus.*

*Cyrus* in the following morning finding the *Lydians* departed, put his Armie in order to pursue them, yet not so hastily, and at their heels, as to be discovered. But having good intelligence of *Cræsus* his proceeding, he so measured his marches, as he presented not himself before *Sardis*, till such time as *Cræsus* had disposed his Armie to their wintring garrisons: which being altogether unlooked for, and unfear'd, he surrounded *Sardis* with his Armie; Wherein *Cræsus* having no other Companies than his Citizens and ordinary Guards, after fourteen days siege the same was entered by assault, and all executed that resisted. *Cræsus* having now neither arms to fight, nor wings to flee, *Sardis* being on all parts strongly encompassed, thrust himself into the heap 10 of miserable multitude of his vassals, and had undergone the common fortune of common persons vanquished, had not a son of his, who had been dumb all his life by extreme of passion and fear enabled) cried out to the Souldiers to spare *Cræsus*. Who thereupon being taken and impriisoned, despoyled of all things but the expectation of death, he was forthwith tied in fetters, and set on the top of a great and high heap of wood, to be consumed to ashes thereon. To which when the fire was fet and kindled, remembering the discourse which he had with the *Athenian* Law-giver, he thrice cried out on his name, *Solon*, *Solon*, *Solon*: and being demanded what he meant by that invocation, he first used silence; but urged again, he told them, That he had now found it true which *Solon* had long since told them, That many men in the rice and courses of their lives might well be accounted fortunate, but no man could discern himself for happy indeed, till his end.

In communi c.  
Lamia c. incm  
quisque habet  
suntiam, Curt.  
Memori in me-  
tus periculi: ti-  
meret quæ est  
incertum, et  
S. lib. c. 7.

Of which answer *Cyrus* being speedily informed, remembering the changes of fortune, 30 and his own mortalitye, he commanded his ministers of Justice to withdraw the fire with all diligence, to save *Cræsus*, and to conduct him to his presence: Which done, *Cyrus* demanded of him, Who it was that had perswaded him? or what self reason had conducted him to invade his territory, and to make him of a friend an enemy? To whom he thus answered; It was thy prosperous, and my unprosperous destiny (the *Grecian* god flattering therewithall my ambition) that were the inventors and conductors of *Cræsus* War against *Cyrus*.

*Cyrus* being pierc'd with *Cræsus* answer, & bemoaning his estate, though victorious over it, did not only spare his life, but entertained him ever after as a King and his companion, shewing therein a true effect of mercy indeed, *Que non causam, sed fortunam spectat*. 40 And herein is the real difference discerned between that behaviour which we call *beneficium latronis*, and *gratiam Principis*: A thief sometime sparing the life of him which is in his power, but unjustly: A King that giveth breath, and a continuance of being, to him that was the cause and author of his own evil.

The report made by *Xenophon*, is, That *Cyrus* did friendly entertain *Cræsus* at the first fight, not mentioning that which *Herodotus* delivers, and is here already set down, that he should have bin burnt alive. It may very well be, that *Xenophon* pourtraying (in *Cyrus*) an heroicall Prince, thought an intent so cruell, fitter to be forgotten than rehearsed, as too much misbecoming a generous nature. And it is very likely, that needesse of alliance might with-hold *Cyrus* (had he bin otherwise vicious) from so cruell a purpose against his grandmothers brother. Howsoever it was, the morall part of the Storie hath given much credit and reputation to the report of *Herodotus* (as to many the like it often doth) and made it passe for currant, though the trust reposed in *Cræsus* afterwards may seem to argue, that *Cyrus* did not use him inhumanly at the first.

For as *Herodotus* himself telleth us, when *Cyrus* past with his Armie over *Araxes* into *Scythia*, he left *Cræsus* to accompany and adaise his son *Cambyses*, Governour of the Empire in his absence, with whom he lived all the time of *Cyrus*, & did afterward follow *Cambyses*

Herodotus in ho-  
mine calumnia  
injustis est,  
meum fuit,  
C. 7.

Cambyfes into Egypt, where he hardly escaped his tyrannous hand. What his end was, I do not find.

But in this time the races of three of the greatest Kings in that part of the world took end; to wit, of the *Babylonians*, *Medians*, and *Lydians*; in *Balthasar*, *Cyaxares*, and *Cræsus*.

S. V.

How Cyrus won Babylon.

**A**FTER this *Lydian* War ensued the great Conquest of *Babylon*, which gave unto *Cyrus* an Empire so large and mightie, that he was justly reputed the greatest Monarch then living upon earth. How long time the preparations for this great action took up, it is uncertain; only it seems, that ten whole years did passe between his taking those two Cities of *Sardis* and *Babylon*; which nevertheless I doe not think to have bin wholly occupied in provision for the *Assyrian* war, but rather to have bin spent in settling the Estate which he had already purchased. And herunto perhaps may be referred that which *Ctesias* hath in his fragments, of a war made by *Cyrus* upon the *Scythians*, though related as foregoing the victory obtained against *Cræsus*. He telleth us, That *Cyrus* invaded *Scythia*, and being victorious over that Nation, took *Amorges* their King prisoner: but being in a second battell overthrowen by the wife of *Amorges*, *Spartetha*,<sup>20</sup> and therein taken, the one King was delivered for the other.

Likewise it may be thought, that no small part of those troubles which arose in the lower *Asia*, grew soon after the departure of the victorious armie, before the Conquest was fully established.

For after *Cyrus* was returned out of *Asia* the lesse, many Nations, conquered formerly by *Cræsus*, and now by *Cyrus*, revolted from him; against whom he employed *Pactius*, and then *Harpagus*, who first reduced the *Phocians* under their former obedience, and then the rest of the *Greeks* inhabiting *Asia* the lesse, as the *Ionians*, *Carians*, *Aeolians*, and *Lycians*, who resolvedly (according to the strength they had) defended themselves. But in the attempt upon *Babylon* it self, it is not to be doubted, that *Cyrus* employed all<sup>30</sup> his forces, having taken order before-hand; that nothing should be able to divert him, or to raise that siege, and make frustrate the work upon which he did set all his rest. And great reason there was, that he should bend all his care and strength unto the taking of that citie, which beside the fame and reputation that it held, as being head of an Empire thereon depending, was so strongly fenced with a treble wall of great height, and surrounded with waters unfordable, so plentifully victualled for many years, that the inhabitants were not only free from all doubt and fear of their estate, but despised and derided all purposes and power of their besiegers.

The only hope of the *Medes* and *Persians*, who despaired of carrying by assault a Citie so well fortified and manned, was in cutting off all supplies of victuals and other necessities: whereof though the Town was said to be stored sufficiently for more than 30 years, yet might it well be deemed, that in such a world of people as dwelt within those gates, one great want or other would soon appear, & vanquish the resolution of that unwarlike multitude. In expecting the success of this course, the besiegers were likely to endure much travel, & all in vain, if they did not keep strict watch & strong guards upon all quarters.

This was hard to doe, in regard of the vast circuit of those walls which they were to gird in, with numbers neither great enough, nor of men sufficiently assured unto their commander: The consideration whereof ministred unto the *Babylonians* matter of good pastime, when they saw the *Lydians*, *Phrygians*, *Cappadocians*, and others, quartered about their Town to keep them in, who having bin their ancient friends and allies, were more likely to joyn with them, if occasion were offered, than to use much diligence on the behalf of *Cyrus*, who had, as it were, yesterday layd upon their necks the galling yoke of servitude. Whilst the besieged were pleasing themselves in this deceitfull and vain gladnesse, that is the ordinary fore-runner of sudden calamitie, *Cyrus*, whom the Ordinance of God made strong, constant, and inventive, deviled by so many channels and trenches as were sufficient and capable of *Euphrates*, to draw the same from the walls of *Babylon*, thereby to make his approach the more facile and assured: which when by the labour of many hands he had performed, he

he stayed the time of his advantage for the execution: for he had left certain banks or heads un-cut, between the main river which surrounded the Citie, and his own Trenches.

Now *Balthasar*, finding neither any want or weaknes within, nor any possibilitie of approach for his enemies without, prepared an exceeding sumptuous feast, publicke Playes, and other Pastimes, and thereto invited a thousand of his Princes or Nobilitie, besides his wives, curtizans, and others of that trade. This he did either to let the besiegers know, that his provisions were either sufficient, not only for all needfull uses, but even for jollitie and excesse; or because he hoped that his enemies, under the burthen of many distresses were well neere broken; or in honour of *Bel* his most revered Idoll; or that it was his birth or coronation day; or for many or all these respects. And he was not contented with such magnificence as no Prince else could equall, but (using *Daniels* words) He lifted himself up against the Lord of Heaven: for he and his Princes, wives and concubines, made carowling cups of the Vessels of God, in contempt of whom he praised his own puppets, made of Silver and Gold, of Brasse, Iron, Wood, and Stone; *Quanta fuit stultitia in vasibus aureis bibentes, lignos & lapideos deos laudare?* How great a foolishnesse was it (saith *S. Hierome*) drinking in golden Cups, to praise gods of Wood and Stone? While *Balthasar* was in this fort triumphing, and his brains well filled with vapors, he beheld a hand, which by divine power wrote on the wall opposite unto him, certain words which he understood not: wherewith so great a fear and amazement seized him, as the ioynts of his loyns were loosed, and his knees smote one against the other. Which passion when he had in some part recovered, he cried out for his *Chaldeans*,<sup>Dan. 5. 6.</sup> *Astrologians*, and *Soothsayers*, promising them great rewards, and the third place of honour in the kingdom to him that could read and expound the writing: but it exceeded their Art. In this disturbance and astonishment, the Queen hearing what had past, and of the Kings amazement, after reverence done, used this speech: *There is a man in thy Kingdom, in whom is the Spirit of the holy Gods, and in the dayes of thy father, light, and understanding, and wisdom, like the wisdom of the Gods, was found in him, whom the King Nabuchodonosor, thy father, the King (I say) thy father made chief of the Inchanters, Astrologians, Chaldeans, and Soothsayers, because a more excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, &c. were found in him, even in Daniel, &c. Now let Daniel be called, and he will declare the interpretation.*

This Queen, *Jezebel* takes for the grandmother; *Origen* and *Theodoret* for the mother of *Balthasar*; either of which may be true: for it appeareth, that he was not any of the Kings wives, because absent from the feast; and being past the age of dancing and banquetting, she came in upon the bruit of the miracle, and to comfort the King in his distraction. And whereas *Daniel* was forgotten and neglected by others both of younger years and times, this old Queen remembered well what he had done in the dayes of *Nabuchodonosor*, grandfather to this *Balthasar*, and kept in mind both his religion and divine gifts.

When *Daniel* was brought to the Kings presence, who acknowledged those excellent graces wherewith God had enriched him, he prayed him, together with promises of reward and honour, to read and interpret those words miraculously written; to whom *Daniel* made answer in a farre different stile from that hee used towards his Grandfather: for the evill which he foretold *Nabuchodonosor*, he wished that the same might befall his enemies; but to this King (whose neglect of God, and vice, he hated) he answered in these words, *Keep thy rewards, to thy self, and give thy gifts to another, yet will I read the writing unto the King, and shew him the interpretation.* Which before he had performed, he gave him first the cause of Gods just judgement against him, and the reason of this terrible sentence, whereof the King and all his Wife men were utterly ignorant. Which being written at large in *Daniel*, hath this effect, That forgetting Gods goodness to his Father, whom all Nations feared and obeyed, and that for his pride and neglect of those benefits, as hee deprived him of his estate and understanding, so upon the acknowledgement of Gods infinite power he restored him to both. This King notwithstanding lifted himself up against the same God, and presuming both to abuse those vessels dedicated to holy uses, and neglecting the Lord of all power, praised and worshipped the dead Idols of Gold, Silver, Brasse, Iron, Stone, and Wood: and therefore those words, from the Oracle of a true God delivered, (to wit) *Mene, Tekel, Upharsin*, gave

gave the King knowledge, that God had numbred the time of his kingdome, and finished it; That he was weighed in the ballance of Gods justice, and found too light; and that his Empire was divided and given to the *Medes and Persians*.

The very evening or night of this day, wherein *Balthazar* feasted and perished, *Cyrus*, either by his espial, according to *Xenophon*, or inspired by God himself, whose ensigne he followed in this warre, found the time and opportunitie to invite him: and therefore while the Kings head, and the heads of his Nobilitie were no lesse filled with the vapors of wine, than their hearts with the fear of Gods judgement, he caused all the banks and heads of his trenches to be opened and cut down with that diligence, as by them he drew the great River of *Euphrates* dry for the present, by whole channell running, his Armie made their entrance, finding none to disturb them. All the Town lay buried (as to the Poet faith) in sleep and wine: such as came in the *Persians* way, were put to the sword, unlesse they saved themselves by flight, as some did, who ran away crying, and filling the streets with an uncertain tumult.

Such *Affirian* Lords as had revolted from *Balthazar*, and betaken themselves to the party of *Cyrus*, did now conduct a selected companie to the Kings Palace; which having easily forced, they rushed into the chamber where the King with his Princes were banquetting, slew both him and them without any mercie, who struggled in vain to keepe those lives which God had newly threatened to take away. And now was the propheticke of *Jeremie* fulfilled, and that of *Esay*, two hundred years before this subversion, who in his seven and fortieth Chapter, and elsewhere, writeth this destruction so feelingly and lively, as if he had been present both at the terrible slaughter there committed, and had seen the great and unfear'd change and calamitie of this great Empire; yea, and had also heard the sorrows and bewailings of every surviving soul thereunto subject. His Prophecie of this place he beginneth in these words; *Come down, and sit in the dust, O virgin daughter of Babel: sit on the ground, there is no Throne, &c.* And again, *Sit still and get thee into darkness, O daughter of the Chaldeans, for thou shalt no more be called the Lady of Kingdomes.* For though it cannot be doubted, that God used *Nabuchodonosor* and the *Chaldeans*, to punish the Idolatrie of the *Judaans*, yet *Esay* teacheth us in this place, That he did not yet forget, that the execution of his judgements was mixt with a rigorous extremitee. For (saith *Esay*) in the person of God, *I was wroth with my people, I have polluted mine inheritance, and given them into thine hand: thou didst shew them no mercy, but thou didst lay thy very heavy yoke upon the anient. I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and will cut off from Babel the name and the remnant, and the son and the nephew. And in the thirteenth, Every one that is found, shall be stricken thorow: and whosoever joyneth himself, shall fall by the sword, their children also shall be broken in pieces before their eyes, their houses spoyled, and their wives ravished.* So as there is no Historian who was either present at this victory of *Cyrus*, or that received the report from others truly as it was, that could better leave the fame to posteritie after it happened, than *Esay* hath done in many places of his Prophecies, which were written two hundred years before any thing attempted.

The greatnesse and magnificence of *Babylon*, were it not by divers grave Authors set down, might seem altogether fabulous: for, besides the reports of *Saint Hierome*, *Solinus*, and *Orosius*, *Aristotle* in the third of his *Politicke*, the second Chapter, received the report for true, That one part of the Citie knew not that the rest was taken three dayes after. Which is not impossible, if the testimonie of *Diodorus Siculus* may be taken, who finds the compass thereof at three hundred and threecore Stadia or Furlongs, which makes five and forty miles: the walls whereof had so great a breadth, that six Chariots might passe in from thence. And of height, according to *Ctesias* and *Clitarchus*, three hundred threecore and five foot, garnished with an hundred and fiftie Towers. *Strabo* in the beginning of his sixteenth Book of Geographie gives it a greater circuit, adding five and twenty furlongs more to the former compass, reckoning the fame at three hundred fourcore and five furlongs, which makes eight and fortie mile and one furlong, but finds the wall farre under that which *Diodore* reports: and so doth *Curtius* measure their thickness but at two and thirtie foot, and their height at an hundred cubits, which is also very much; every cubit containing a foot and half of the large measure, though to the whole circuit of the Citie he gives the same with *Siculus*, and eight furlongs more. *Herodotus* finds a greater content than *Strabo* doth, namely, four hundred

dred and fourscore furlongs circle; the thickness of the wall he measures at fiftie cubits, and the height at two hundred of the same regall cubit. For entrance it had an hundred gates of Brasse, with posts and hooks to hang them on of the same metall: and therefore did the Prophet *Esay* rightly intitle *Babylon*, The Princesse and Glory of *Esay* 47. & 13. Kingdomes.

But when *Cyrus* had wonne her, he stript her out of her Princely Robes, and made her a slave, dividing not onely all her goodly houses, and her whole Territorie, with all the riches therein contained, among his Souldiers; but bestowing the inhabitants themselves as bond-slaves upon those that had taken possession of their goods.

Touching the reign of *Cyrus*, and the time which he enjoyed in rest and pleasure, I can say no more of it, than that it is generally agreed by all Chronologers to have lasted only seven years: in which time he made such Constitutions as differ little from the Ordinances of all wise Kings that are desirous to establish a Royall power to themselves and their posteritie.

## §. VI.

## The end of Cyrus.

The last warre, and the end of this great King *Cyrus*, is diversly written. *Herodotus* and *Justin* deliver, That after the Conquest of *Asia* the lesse, *Cyrus* invaded the *Massagetes*, a very warlike Nation of the *Scythians*, governed by *Tomyris* their Queen: and that in an encounter between the *Persians* and these Northern *Nomades*, *Tomyris* lost her Armie, and her Son *Sparapises* that commanded it: In revenge whereof, this Queen making new levies of men of War, and following the War against *Cyrus*, in a second battell beat the *Persian* Armie, and taking *Cyrus* prisoner, cut off his head from his body, and cast the same into a boule of bloud, using these words; *Thou that hast all thy life time thirsted for bloud, now drink thy fill, and satiate thy self.*

It should hereby seem, that *Cyrus* knowing the strength and multitude of those frozen Nations, was perswaded to abate their furie by some forcible invasion and depopulation, because in the time of *Cyaxares*, father to *Astyages*, those *Scythians* invaded *Media* and *Asia* the lesse, and held the same in a servile subjection eight and twenty years.

This war which *Metasthenes* calleth *Tomyrique*, lasted (saith he) six years, and took end at the end of *Cyrus*.

But in this particular I believe with *Viginier*, that this *Scythian* War was rather the same which *Cyrus* made against the *Sacians*, before the conquest of *Lydia*, according to *Ctesias* before cited, who calleth *Tomyris*, *Sparetha*, though he deliver the successe of that war otherwise than *Herodotus* doth: The rather (saith *Viginier*) because *Strabo* in his eleventh book reciteth, that *Cyrus* surprized the *Sacians* by the same stratagem by which *Justin* saith he defeated the son of *Tomyris*. And the same *Ctesias* also reporteth, That the last war which *Cyrus* made, was against *Amorreus* king of the *Derbicians*, a Nation (as the rest) of *Scythia*; whom though he overcame, yet he then received the wound of his death, which he suffered three dayes after.

*Strabo* also affirmeth, That he was buried in his own Citie of *Pasagardes*, which himself had built, and where his Epitaph was to be read in his time; which is said to have bin this: *O vir, quicumque es, & undecunque advenis, neque enim te adventurum ignoravi: Ego sum Cyrus qui Persis imperium constitui, pusillum hoc terra quo meum tegitur corpus mihi ne videas: O thou man, whosoever thou art, or whencesoever thou comest, for I was not ignorant that thou shouldst come: I am Cyrus that founded the Persian Empire, do not envie unto me this little earth, with which my body is covered.*

This Tombe was opened by *Alexander*, as *Qu. Curtius* reporteth, either upon hope of treasure, supposed to have been buried with him, or upon desire to honour his dead body with certain ceremonies; in which there was found an old rotten Target, two *Scythian* Bowes, and a sword. The Coffin wherein his body lay, *Alexander* caused to be covered with his own garment, and a Crown of gold to be set upon it. These things well considered, as they give credit to the reports of *Xenophon* and *Zonaras*, so they derogate much from *Herodotus*, who leaves his body in the hands of *Tomyris*.

And



And surely, had *Cyrus* lost the Armie of *Persia* in *Scythia*, it is not likely, that his son would so soon have transported all his remaining forces into *Egypt*, so faire off from that quarter; the *Scythian* Nation then victorious, and bordering *Media*: neither had *Cambyfes* been able in such haste to have undertaken and performed so great a Conquest. Wherefore I rather believe *Xenophon*, saying, That *Cyrus* died aged and in peace: and that finding in himself that he could not long enjoy the world, he called unto him his Nobilitie, with his two sons, *Cambyfes* and *Smerdis*; or after *Xenophon*, *Tanaxares*: and after a long Oration, wherein he assured himself, and taught others of the immortality of the Soul, and of the punishments and rewards following the good and ill deserving of every man in this life; he exhorted his sons by the strongest arguments he had, to a perpetual concord and agreement. Many other things he uttered, which make it to probable, that he received the knowledge of the true God from *Daniel*, when he governed *Susa* in *Persia*; and that *Cyrus* himself had read the Prophecie of *Esay*, wherein he was expressly named, and by God (for the delivery of his people) preordained. Which act of delivering the *Jewes* from their Captivitie, and of restoring the holy Temple and Citie of *Jerusalem*, was in true consideration the noblest work that ever *Cyrus* performed. For in other actions he was an instrument of Gods power, used for the chaffising of many Nations, and the establishing of a government in those parts of the world, which was not long to continue. But herein he had the grace to be an instrument of Gods goodnesse, and a willing advancer of his Kingdome upon earth; which must last for ever, though heaven and earth shall perish.

20

## s. VII.

of *Cyrus* his Decree for building the Temple of God in *Jerusalem*.

**H**AVING therefore spoken of his great victories, mentioned by sundrie Historians, the glory of all which was a reward of this his service done unto him that was Author of them and of all goodnesse: I hold it meet at length to speak of the Decree made in the first of his Reign, being perhaps the first that ever hee made after his possession of the *Babylonian* Empire: That the captive *Jewes* should return again<sup>30</sup> into their own Territorie, and re-build the House of God in *Jerusalem*, having now endured and finished the threescore and ten years captivitie, by the Prophets foretold. For the accomplishing whereof, hee gave order to his Treasurers to furnish them with all things necessary and wanting. He also restored unto them five thousand four hundred threescore and nine Vessels of Gold and Silver, whereof *Nabuchodonosor*, the grandfather of *Balthasar*, had formerly robbed the Temple.

The number of the *Jewes* which returned out of *Chaldea* under their Leader *Zorobabel*, the son of *Salathiel*, and Nephew to King *Jecoonias*, and *Jesus* or *Josua* the son of *Josadak*, were about fifty thousand; where, as soon as they arrived, they built an Altar to the living God, and sacrificed thereon, according to their own law, and afterward be-<sup>40</sup> thought themselves how to prepare materials for the rebuilding of the Temple.

But no sooner did the *Jewes* begin to lay any one stone, than the *Samaritans* and other idolatrous Nations adjoining, gave all the impediment they could. So did the Governours of those Provinces under *Cyrus* altogether countenance the disturbers, and in no sort favoured the *Jewes*, nor the labours nor purposes they had in hand. And not onely those which were but Provinciaill Lieutenants, and other officers of lesse place, but *Cambyfes* himself; who having the charge of the whole Empire, while *Cyrus* was busied otherwise, countermanded the building begun. And whereas some Authors make doubt, that whatsoever *Cambyfes* did when himself had obtained the Empire, yet during the life of *Cyrus* there was no such impediment or prohibition: they may herein relolve<sup>50</sup> themselves out of *Esdra*s, That by the conspiracies of the neighbouring Nations, the building was hindered all the time of King *Cyrus* life, &c. And therefore it is true, that the *Jewes* themselves affirm, as it is written in the second of *John*, That the Temple was 46. years in setting up, having received so many hinderances from the first foundation to the second of *Darius*s.

And if we seek the naturall and politique courses which moved *Cambyfes* to withstand his fathers decree, as well while he governed under him, as when himself became sole and

and sovereign Monarch, we shall find them in that Epistle remembred by *Esdra*s, written by *Belemus*, *Mithridates*, and the rest, Presidents and Counsellors in *Phenicia*, wherein they complain that the *Jewes* were evermore rebellious and troublers of Kings; that their City being once built, they would then refuse to pay tribute, and fall from the obedience of the Empire, as they had formerly done in the times of other Kings.

But that which for that present seemed the most forcible impediment, was, that *Cambyfes* having it in his resolution to invade *Egypt*, and that it was a common opinion, That the *Jewes* were descended of those Nations, because they issued thence under *Moses*, when they conquered *Judea*; their Citie being once repaired and fortified, they might return to their old vomit, and give the same disturbance to *Cambyfes* Conquest, which they did to *Sennacherib*, *Nabuchodonosor*, and other Kings of *Babylon*. For as it is written *Ezech. 1. 2. 5*, in *Ezechiel*, *Egypt* was the confidence of the house of *Israel*.

But it is to be understood, as *Codoman* and others have observed, that *Artaxerxes*, to whom the Counsellors and Governors of *Phenicia* complained against the *Jewes*, did not precede, but succeed *Darius Histaspes*, as in the sixth and seventh chapters of *Esdra*s it is made plain: and also that those Governors (whose Epistle sheweth as much) did not withstand the building of the Temple, but the fortifying and enclosing of the City, as by the reasons given in the said Epistle, and by the Kings answer, it is evident.

Also in the first of *Ezra*, the fourteenth verse, the kings are named in order as they governed, and *Artaxerxes* written after *Darius*; as: And they built and finished it (to wit the Temple) by the appointment of the God of *Israel*, and by the commandment of *Cyrus* and *Darius*, and *Artahastae* Kings of *Persia*. Lastly, in the seventh of *Ezra* it is written; Now after these things, in the reign of *Artahastae* King of *Persia*: which was as much as to say, after the finishing of the Temple in *Darius* time. And therefore *Artaxerxes* in the second of *Esdra*s is there named by anticipation, not in his own time and place.

And thus much concerning the rebuilding of the Citie and Temple of *Jerusalem*. Which action though prospered by the hand of God, was very slowly pursued by the men whom it most concerned, but first set on foot by *Cyrus*. The other ordinances of *Cyrus*, with his forme and manner of government, are to be found in *Xenophon*. At his death he bequeathed the Empire unto his eldest son *Cambyfes*, appointing *Smerdis* his younger son to be *Satrapa*, or Lieutenant of *Media*, *Armenia*, and *Cadusiaz*; and then died, after he had reigned (saith *Herodotus*) one and thirty years, or (according to *Justin*) but thirty.

## s. VIII.

Of *Cyrus* his issue: and whether *Atossa* were his daughter, or (as some think) were the same with *Queen Hester*.

**C***YRUS* had issue two sons, *Cambyfes* and *Smerdis*, with three daughters, *Atossa*, *Meroe*, and *Arystona*: *Cressias* addeth to these, *Amytis*. *Atossa* and *Meroe* their brother *Cambyfes* married; *Arystona*, *Darius Histaspes* obtained; so did hee *Atossa*, *Cambyfes* being dead: who (as some Writers have supposed) inflamed both her husbands, *Darius*, and *Xerxes* after him, to invade *Greece*, to be avenged of the whole Nation for the cruel intent that *Aman* (whom the old Translation calleth a *Macadonian*) had against the *Jewes*, though the opinion of *Josephus* be more probable, who finds *Aman* to be an *Amalekite*. But it is hard to be understood, how *Atossa*, the daughter of *Cyrus*, should have been *Ester*, whose History seems rather to appertain to the time of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, than of *Darius* the son of *Histaspes*, or of *Xerxes*. The desire of *Atossa* to have *Greece* brought under the yoke of *Persia*, was partly grounded upon the honour which thereby the thought her husband might obtaine, partly upon a feminine humour of getting many brave Dames, *Corinthians*, *Athenians*, and others of that Nation to be her bond-women. Wherefore I cannot give assent to the opinion of *Codoman*, who upon the near sound of the two names, *Atossa* and *Hadassa*, (by the latter of which *Ester* was also called) makes them to have been one person. For though it be true that *Ester* concerning her parentage, a while might bee taken for a great Lady; yet *Codoman*s inference is nothing probable, that she should therefore, and

L II

for

for the great affection which the King bare unto her, be thought the daughter of *Cyrus*. Certain it is, that *Esther* did at length discover her Kindred and Nation; whereby, if Histories could be kept free from this error, yet the people, and especially the Nobility, must needs have understood the truth: who nevertheless did so well know the parentage of *Astossa*, that for her sake, as being daughter of *Cyrus*, her son *Xerxes* was preferred to the kingdom before his elder brother, against whom also he could have pretended a very weak claim. But of these things more hereafter in fitter place.



## CHAP. IV.

The estate of things from the death of *CYRUS* to  
the reign of *DARIUS*.

S. I.

Of the number and names of the Persian Kings.



For the successors of *Cyrus*, and the continuance of the Persian Empire, there are many opinions; As that of *Metasthenes*, who hath numbered the Persian Kings, and their times as followeth.

<i>Darius Medus</i> , and <i>Cyrus</i> jointly.	2
<i>Cyrus</i> alone.	22
<i>Priscus Artaxerxes</i> .	20
<i>Darius Longimanus</i> .	37
<i>Darius Nothus</i> .	19
<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i> .	55
<i>Artaxerxes Ochus</i> .	26
<i>Artes</i> , or <i>Arjames</i> .	4
<i>Darius</i> the last, conquered by <i>Alexander</i> .	6

years.

To which *Philo* agreeth; which number of years added, make in all an hundred nintie and one. But in this Catalogue *Metasthenes* hath left out *Cambyfes* and *Xerxes*, and names *Artaxerxes Assuerus* for the immediate successor of *Cyrus*; in place (saith *Melancton*) of *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*: for *Metasthenes*, as *Melancton* conjectureth, doth not account *Cambyfes* in the Catalogue, because his reign was confounded with that of *Cyrus*.

There is a second opinion, though ridiculous, of *Sedar Olam*, who finds but foure Persian Kings from the beginning to the end of that Empire.

*Genebrard*, *Schubert*, and *Beroaldus* have also a differing account from the *Greekes*; whom never the less *Eusebius* and most of the Latines follow, and so doth *Krentzheim*, who hath fully answered, and, as I take it, refuted all the former Authors varying from that account. For in this sort doe the *Greekes* marshall the Persian Kings with the times of their reigns.

<i>Cyrus</i> in all.	30
<i>Cambyfes</i> with the <i>Magi</i> .	8
<i>Darius Hystaspes</i> .	36
<i>Xerxes</i> .	21
<i>Artaxerxes Longimanus</i> .	40
<i>Darius Nothus</i> .	19
<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i> .	43
<i>Artaxerxes Ochus</i> .	23
<i>Arjames</i> .	3
<i>Darius</i> the last.	6

years.

Which numbers put together, make in all two hundred and thirty.

This

This account (as I have said) the most Chronologers, and the best learned approve. These Persian Princes, being all warranted by the authority of the Scriptures, as *Pencer* in his historical Animadversions hath gathered the places, finding first *Cyrus* in the second of *Chronicles*, ch. 36. ver. 22, 23. *Ezra* 1. ch. 1. ver. 1. and often elsewhere.

Secondly, *Cambyfes* in the eleventh of *Daniel*, who may indeed be well esteemed for one of those three Kings in the second verse named, and so the marginal Commentator upon the *Genevea* understands that place; but, under correction, mistakes the matter greatly, when he saith in the same note, that *Darius Hystaspes* was an enemy to the people of God, and stood against them: his great favour and liberality to the *Jews* being elsewhere proved.

Thirdly, is *Darius Hystaspes* found in *Ezra* the first, c. 4. v. 5. who in the sixth verse is also named *Ahasuerus*.

Fourthly, in the eleventh of *Daniel* verse the second, *Xerxes* is plainly foretold and described, and the great War which he should make against the *Greeks* by *Daniel* remembered.

Fifthly, *Artaxerxes Longimanus* in *Ezra* the fourth, verse seven, who is also called *Aribashta*, c. 4. l. 1. *Ezra* v. 7. and cap. 7. v. 7.

Sixthly, *Darius Nothus*, *Ezra* cap. 4. verse 24. and cap. 5. verse 6. *Nehem*. cap. 12. verse 22.

Seventhly, *Artaxerxes Mnemon* in *Nehem*. c. 2. v. 1. who was father to *Artaxerxes Ochus*, and *Arjames*: for *Darius* the last, he was of another Family, the Line of *Cyrus* the Great ending in *Ochus*, who descended from *Xerxes* the son of *Astossa*, *Cyrus* his daughter; and the issue male of *Cyrus* failing with his own sons.

But to proceed, *Eusebius* with the Latines, following the *Greekes*, apply the beginnings and ends of every Persian King with their Acts, to some certain Olympiad; As the War of *Alyages* (*Cyrus* his maternall Grand-father) and *Alyattes* (*Cyrus* his father) to the nine and fortieth Olympiad; The beginning of *Cyrus* reign to the beginning of the five and fiftieth Olympiad; The taking of *Sardinia* by *Cyrus* to the eight and fiftieth Olympiad; The invasion of *Egypt* by *Cambyfes* to the third year of the threescore and third Olympiad; and so of the rest. Which reference with good agreement between several forms of computation, adds the more credit unto both.

Again, this historical demonstration is confirmed by the Astronomical computation of *Ptolomie*, who refers the death of *Alexander* the Great, who died the 12. of November, in the beginning of the hundred and fortieth Olympiad, to the four hundred and four and twentieth year after *Nabonassar*. And the *Era* of *Nabonassar* began on the six and twentieth of February: which conferred with the Olympiad, was in the ninth Month of the first year of the eighth Olympiad: So that whether we follow the accounts of the Olympiads, as doe the Greek Historians, or that of *Nabonassar* with *Ptolomie*, we shall find every memorable accident to fall out right with each computation.

For *Ptolomy* reckons the time answerable to two hundred and four and twenty Julian years, and an hundred and forty days from *Nabonassar* to the sixteenth of July in the seventh year of *Cambyfes*.

The *Greekes*, and namely, *Diodorus Siculus*, place the taking of *Egypt* by *Cambyfes* in the second or third year of the threescore and third Olympiad, and the beginning of *Cambyfes* seventh year, in the first of the threescore and fourth Olympiad: which first of the threescore and fourth Olympiad runs along with part of the two and twentieth of *Nabonassar*. The like agreement is consequently found about the beginning and end of *Cyrus*.

Likewise the twentieth of *Darius*, who succeeded *Cambyfes*, is according to *Ptolomie* the two hundred and six and fortieth of *Nabonassar*, which (observing the differences of *Nabonassars Era* and the Olympiad, viz. eight and twenty years) agrees with the third of the threescore and ninth Olympiad, wherein it is placed by the *Greekes*. In this *Josephus* agrees with the *Greekes* throughout, saying that he joyneth *Darius Medus*, whom *Xenophon* calleth *Cyaxares*, with *Cyrus* in the destruction of *Babylon*; which is true, and not contrary to the Greek computation, but may very well stand with it.

Lastly, the disagreements and confused accompts of those that follow the other Catalogue of the Persian kings formerly rehearsed, doth give the greater credit to this of the *Greekes*.

Greeks, which being constant in it self, accordeth also with the computation of other Historians, and Astronomers, and likewise with the holy Scriptures.

## §. II.

Of Cambyfes, and the conquering of Egypt by him.

**W**EE will therefore according to the truth give the Empire of Persia to Cambyfes, the son of Cyrus, though degenerate in all things, saving the desire to increase the greatness of his Empire: whereof he was possessor in his Fathers time while Cyrus was in the North. (Ctesias with others give him a longer reign than agreeth with the Grecian account before received.

In the fifth year of his sole reign, and in the third year of the threescore and third Olympiad, according to Diodore and Eusebius, he invaded Egypt, and having overthrown the King thereof, Plammeniticus, he not only caused him to be slain, but also did put to death all his kindred and dependants, with the most of his children.

Herodotus and Ctesias give for cause of this war, being no other indeed than the Ambition of Cambyfes) that when he sent to Amasis King of Egypt, to have his daughter in marriage, Amasis presented him with Nitetis the daughter of Apries his predecessor, which Cambyfes disdained.

Howsoever it were; true it is, that Cambyfes gathered an Armie fit for such an enterprise, and caused the same to march. But before they entered Egypt, Amasis died, and left Plammeniticus, whom Ctesias called Amyrtus, his successor, who enjoyed Egypt after his father (according to the best copies of Herodotus) but six Months, though other Chronologers give him six years.

But how long soever he held the Crown, in one battell he lost it, and was himself taken prisoner.

It is said that Cambyfes, following therein the example of Cyrus, did not only spare life to the conquered King, but that he also trusted him with the government of Egypt, and that upon some revolt, or suspicion thereof, he caused him to be slaughtered. But the race of this King was not so extirpated, if we may beleve Herodotus and Thucydides, but that he left a son called Inarus, who caused the Egyptians to revolt both from Xerxes and Artaxerxes.

That Plammeniticus was at the first entreated gently by Cambyfes, I hold it very improbable, if it be true which is also written of him, That he so much hated Amasis the King of Egypt, who died before his arrivall, that he caused his body to be drawn out of the grave, and after divers indignities used, commanded the same to be burnt, contrary to the custome both of the Egyptians and Persians. For the Egyptians used to powder their dead bodies with salt, and other drugs, to the end the worms might not devour them. The Persians durst not consume them with fire, which they esteemed as a God, and therefore feared to feed it with Carrion.

## §. III.

The rest of Cambyfes his Acts.

**A**FTER this victory obtained in Egypt, Cambyfes sent an Army into Cyprus, and constrained Evethon King thereof to acknowledge him, who before held that Island of the Egyptians.

While Cambyfes yet busied himself in Egypt, he so much detested the Idolatry of that Nation, as he caused the images themselves, with the Temples wherein they were worshipped, to be torn down and defaced. This done, he directed a part of his Armie into Lybia, to overthrow the Temple of Jupiter Ammon; but the Devil in defence of his oratorie raised such a Tempest of Sand, wherewith the greatest part of that Country is covered, as the Persians were therewith choked and overwhelmed.

Notwithstanding which misadventure, Herodotus and Seneca report, that disdaining to be resisted, he prepared the rest of his Army, which himself meant to conduct into those parts, but that finding a beginning of thole incommodities, which his first sent troupe had tryed, he changed his purpose. For though conquering Kings have power over men, yet the elements doe not obey them, according to that old English proverb, Go, saith the King; Stay, saith the Tide.

After

After his return from the attempt of Ethiopia, he caused Apis the Egyptian Bull, worshipped by that Nation as God, to be slain: a deed very commendable, had it proceeded from true zeal, and been executed as in service of him that only is, and liveth. But soon afterwards, when in a dream it seemed unto him that Smerdis did sit in the royal throne of Persia (which apparition was verified in Smerdis the Magus) he gave in charge to his favorite Praxaspes, to murder Smerdis his brother. And having married his own sisters, contrary to the Persian Lawes, he committed a most causelesse and most detestable murder upon the one of them called Meroe, then by himself with child, because she bewailed the death of her brother Smerdis. I find it written of this Cambyfes, That because his Predecessors observed religiously the ordinances of their Empire, he assembled his Judges, and enquired of them whether there were any Law among the Persians that did permit the brother to marry his own sister; it being his own intent so to doe: The Judges (who had always either lawes or in distinctions store to satisfy Kings and times) made answer, That there was not any thing written allowing any such conjunction, but they notwithstanding found it in their customes, that it was always left to the will of the Persian Kings to doe what best pleased themselves; and so as Naucleus termes it, *invenerunt occasionem*: That is as much to say, as the Judges found a shift to please the King, and to secure themselves. And yet, where it concerned not the Kings private satisfaction, he caused Sisamnes one of his Judges, and perchance one of those which favoured his incestuous march, to be slayed alive, for an unjust judgement given; and the same his hide to be hung up over the judgement seat. After which, bestowing the fathers office on his son, he willed him to remember that the same partiality deserved the same punishment.

Among other his cruelties, that which he exercised against the son of his beloved Praxaspes was very strange and ungrateful. For when he desired to be truly informed by him what the Persians thought of his conditions, Praxaspes answered, That his virtues were followed with abundant praise from all men; only it was by many observed, that he took more than usual delight in the taste of Wine: With which taxation inflamed, he used this replication; And are the Persians double-tongued, who also tell me that I have in all things excelled my father Cyrus? Thou Praxaspes shalt then witness, whether in this report they have done me right: for if at the first shot I pierce thy sons heart with an arrow, then is it false that hath been spoken; but if I misse the mark, I am then pleased that the same be accounted true, and my subjects believed. This being spoken, he immediatly directed an arrow towards the innocent child, who falling down dead with the stroke, Cambyfes commanded his body to be opened, and his heart being broched on the arrow, this monstrous Tyrant greatly rejoicing, shewed it to the Father, with this saying in stead of an Epitaph: Now Praxaspes, thou maist resolve thy selfe, that I have not lost my wits with Wine, but the Persians theirs, who make such report.

Many other barbarous cruelties he exercised, till at the last, according to the phrase of our Law, he became *selon de soy*. For when he was informed that Patizites, and Smerdis the Magi (Cedrenus writeth them Sphendanes and Cimerdus) Ministers of his domesticall affairs, taking advantage of the great resemblance between Smerdis the Kings brother, and Smerdis the Magus, possessed themselves of the Empire, he made all haste towards Persia, and in mounting hastily on horseback, his sword disheathing, pierced his own thigh, where-with deadly wounded, falling into an over-late and remediable repentance of the laughter which he had executed upon his own brother, he soon after gave up his wicked ghost, when he had reigned eight years, accounting therein those seven Months in which the Magi governed, while he was absent.

In Cambyfes the Male Line of Cyrus failed. For he had no issue either by Atossa or Meroe: yet Zonasas out of Hierome gives him a daughter called Pantapes, and a son called Zonemans. Orontes, who being drowned in the river Ophites by Antioch, the same was afterward in memory of the Princes death called Orontes.

He built the Citie of Babylon in Egypt, in the place where Latopolis was formerly seated, and that of Meroe in the Island of Nilus, calling it by the name of his sister Meroe.

## s. III.

of the inter-regnum between Cambyfes and Darius.

**C**yrus and his two sons being now dead, and the Kingdome in the possession of one of the *Magi*, the counterfeit of *Smerdis*, the Princes, or *Satrapes*, or Provincial Governors of the Empire (to wit, *Otanes*, *Intaphernes*, *Gobrias*, *Megabyfus*, *Aspathines*, *Hidarnes*, and *Darius*, who were all descended from *Achamenes* the first *Persian King*) having discovered the fraud of this imposture, joyned their forces together, surpris'd and rooted out the Conspirator with his Companions and Assistants. In which action (saith *Justin*) *Intaphernes* and *Aspathines* were slain: but *Herodotus* otherwise, that they were onely wounded; for he avoweth that all the seven Princes were present at the election following.

For the Empire being now without a Governour, these Princes grew into a consultation how the same might be ordered from thence-forth. *Otanes* one of the seven did not fancy any election of Kings, but that the Nobilitie and Cities should confederate, and by just lawes defend their liberty in equality, giving divers reasons for his opinion, being as it seem'd greatly terrified by the cruelties of *Cambyfes*; As first, that it was not safe to give all power to any one, seeing greatnesse it self, even in good men, doth often infect the mind with many vices, and the liberty and freedome in all things is most apt to insult, and to commit all manner of wicked outrage. Again, that tyrants do commonly use the service of wicked men, and favour them most; they usurp upon the lawes of their Country; take other mens wives by force, and destroy whom they please without judgement.

*Megabyfus* was of another opinion, affirming that the tyrannie of a multitude was thrice more intolerable than that of one. For the multitude doe all things without judgement, runne into businesse and affairs with precipitation, like raging and overbearing floods.

He therefore thought it safest to make election of a few, and those of the best, wisest, and most vertuous; because it is ever found, that excellent Counsels are ever had from excellent men.

*Darius* gave the third judgement, who perswaded the creation of a King, because even among few diuturnity of concord is seldom found, and in great Empires it doth ever happen that the discord of many Rulers hath enforc'd the election of one Supreme. It were therefore, saith *Darius*, far safer to observe the lawes of our Country, by which Kingly government hath been ordain'd.

The other four Princes adhered to *Darius*, and agreed to continue the same Imperial government by God established, and made prosperous. And to avoyd partiality, it was accorded, that the morning following these seven Princes should mount on Horseback, and on him the kingdome should be conferred, whose Horse after the Sun-rising should first ney or bray. In the evening after this appointment was made, it is said that *Darius* consulted with the Master of his Horse *Oebarnus*, who in the Suburbs of the City where the election was resolv'd of, caus'd the same Horse, whereton in the morning *Darius* was mounted, to cover a Mare, who as soon as he came into the same place, was the first Horse that brayed. Whereupon the other six Princes descended from their Horses, and acknowledged *Darius* for their Lord and King.

*Plato* in the third of his Lawes affirmeth, that in memory of the seven Princes, whereof *Darius* himself was one, that deliver'd the Empire from the usurpation of the *Magi*, he divid'd the whole into seven governments; *Herodotus* saith, into twenty *Satrapies*.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

Of Darius the sonne of Hyfaspes.

## s. I.

Of Darius his Linage.



*Darius* was descended of the ancient *Persian Kings*, to wit, of the *Achæmenids*, of which, *Cyrus* the Great was the lineall successor. For in this sort *Herodotus* derives him as before;

*Cyrus* the first, who had  
*Teispus*, who begat  
*Ariaramnes*, who was father of  
*Arsamnes*, the father of  
*Hyfaspes*, the father of  
*Darius*, surnam'd *Celes*, the father of *Xerxes*.

CHAP. 1. 4.

*Hyfaspes* accompanied *Cyrus* the Great, in the wars against the *Scythians*, at which time *Cyrus* being made jealous of *Darius* by a dream of his own, caus'd him to be sent into *Persia*, others say to be imprison'd, from whence by the death of *Cyrus* he was deliver'd, and made Governour of the *Persian Magi*. He afterward followed *Cambyfes* into *Egypt*; he then joyned with the rest of the Princes against the *Magi*, and either by the neying of his horse, or, as others affirm, by strong hand he obtained the Empire, which he the more assur'd to himself by taking two of *Cyrus* Daughters, and as many of his Nieces for his wives.

*Hyfaspes*, according to \* *Herodotus*, had besides *Darius*, these three sons, who were great Commanders in the war which *Darius* made in *Asia* the lesse, *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Greece*; *Artarnes*, *Artabarnes*, and *Artabanus*, who diswaded *Xerxes* from the second *Grecian* warre. *Hyfaspes* had also a Daughter married to *Gobryas* the Father of *Mardonius*, who commanded the Army of *Darius* in *Macedon*, and married the Daughter of *Darius*, *Artolofre* his Cousen germane.

*Reineccius* gives to *Hyfaspes* five sons, *Darius* who succeeded *Cambyfes*, *Artabanus*, *Artaphernes*, *Otanes*, and *Artarnes*, with two daughters.

## s. II.

Of Darius his Government, and suppressing the rebellion of Babylon.

*Darius* devis'd equall lawes whereby his subjects might be governed, the same being formerly promised by *Cyrus*. He gave access to all his subjects, and behaved himself so mildly to all men, that many Nations desired and offer'd themselves to become his Vassals: Only he layd divers payments and taxes on the people, which had not been accustomed in *Cyrus* time, to the value of fourteen thousand five hundred and threcore talents, saith *Herodotus*.

The war which *Cambyfes* made a far off in *Egypt*, and the contention between the *Magi* and the Princes of *Persia*, for the Empire, gave heart to the *Babylonians* to recover their liberty, and to shake off the *Persian* yoke; whereof *Darius* being advertis'd, he prepar'd an Army to recover that City and State revolted. But finding the same a difficult work, he us'd the service of *Zopirus*, who for the love he bare *Darius*, did cut off his own Ears and Nose, and with other wounds yet fresh bleeding, he seem'd to fly to the *Babylonians* for succour, to whom he accus'd the cruelty of *Darius*: who for having given him advice to give over the siege of their City, had in this sort dismembred and deformed him; whereupon the *Babylonians* gave him that credit, as they trusted him with the disposition and commandment of their greatest forces: which when *Zopirus* had obtained, after some small colourable over-throwes given to the *Persians* upon fallies, he deliver'd the Citie into *Darius* his hands, who had lye before it twenty moneths.

## s. III. of

## S. II. III.

of Darius his favour to the Jewes in building the Temple.

Ezra. 6.

**I**N the second year of *Darius*, he gave order that the building of the Temple at *Jerusalem* should goe on, and commanded that the same should be finished at his own charge, and out of the revenues of the Crown. And whereas the Governours of those Provinces which are situate between *Euphrates* and the *Phanician*, and mid-land Sea (whom *Ezra* calleth the Captains beyond the River) had hindered the work in *Cambyfes* his time, *Darius* gave commandement that they should not thenceforth come nearer unto *Jerusalem*, to give any impediment to the building, but that they should withdraw themselves, and get them far off till all were finished, and at an end. In the old *Latine* it is written, *Procul recedite ab illis, With-draw your selves far from them*; In our *Englishe*, *Be ye far from thence*, to wit, from the City and Temple now in building.

Ezra. 6. 11.

He also made a decree which concerned his own Subjects, That whosoever should thenceforth hinder the setting up of the Temple of God, that his house should be torn down, and the disturber hanged on the Gallows made of the timber thereof. He also in the same decree maketh invocation to God, *That hath caused his Name to dwell there (to) destroy all Kings and People that put their hands to alter, and to destroy this house of God which is in Jerusalem, &c.* In four years after which decree (the Jewes being really furnished with money and all things necessary from *Darius*) the Temple was in all finished, to wit, in the beginning of the Spring, in the sixth year of *Darius Hyftaspes*, and in the two and fortieth after their first return.

Ezra. 6.

## S. IV.

of Darius his Scythian Warre.

Her. 1. 4. Jul. 1. 1.

Diod. 1. 11.

**A**FTER the recovery of *Babylon* he invaded the *Scythians*, whose King *Justine* tal-  
leth *Laminius*, and saith, that *Darius* undertook this warre against him, because  
he refused him his daughter in marriage. The better to convoy his Army into  
*Scythia*, he built a bridge of small Vessels over the River *Ister* or *Danubius*, and gave the  
custody of the same in charge (among others of *Asia* the lesse) to the *Ionians* and *Achi-*  
*ans*, among whom was *Miltiades*, who perswaded the *Asian Grecians* to break down the  
bridge, to the end *Darius* might not return thereby, and if by any other way, then not  
without great difficulty; but the same was resisted by *Hystians* Prince of *Milet*, a Cite  
of *Ionia*, which Nation being a *Colonie* of the *Greeks*, *Diodorus* calleth Traytors to their  
Country, because they joyned themselves to *Darius*. But the *Scythians* more elegantly  
termed them good slaves, for as much as they would not runne away from their Ma-  
ster, but were more mindfull of doing their duties, than of shaking off their bondage,  
when they were presented with as fair an occasion of liberty as could have been de-  
sired. For the great Armie of *Darius* entering the desert Country called *Bellarabia*, found  
in it neither people to resist them, nor any sustenance to relieve them. For the *Scythians*  
were then, as are the *Chrim Tartars*, their posteritie, at this day, all horse-men, using the  
Bow and Sword. They were not Plough-men, but Grasers, driving their Herds from  
one place to another, as opportunity of Pasture led them. Standing Towns they had  
none, but used for Houses the Waggon wherein they carried their wives and children.  
These Waggon they place at every Station in very good order, making Streets and  
Lanes in the manner of a great Town, removeable at their pleasure. Neither hath the  
Emperour himself, called now the great *Chrim*, any other Cite than such as *Agora*, (as  
they name it) or Town of Carts. When as therefore *Darius* had wearied himself, and  
waited his provision in those desolate Regions, wherein he found neither wayes to di-  
rect him, victuals to refresh him, nor any houses, fruitfull trees, or living creatures, nor  
any thing at all, which either he himself might make use of, or by destroying it might  
grieve his enemies, he began to perceive his own folly, and the danger into which  
he had brought him. Yet letting a good face upon a bad game, he sent brave messages  
to the *Scythian*, bidding him to cease his flight, and either to make triall of his valour  
and fortune in plain battell; Or, if he acknowledged himself the weaker, then to yield  
by

by fair means, and become his Subject, giving him Earth and Water, which the *Per-*  
*sians* used to demand as a sign that all was yielded unto them. To this challenge the  
*Scythian* returned an Hieroglyphicall answer, sending a Bird, a Frog, a Mouse, and five Ar-  
rows: which dumb shew *Darius* interpreting by his own wish, thought that he did  
yield all the Elements wherein those creatures live, and his weapons withall into his  
hands. But *Gobryas*, one of the seven Princes, who had slain the *Magi*, construed  
their meaning aright, which was thus; *O ye Persians, get ye wings like Birds, or drive under*  
*the water, or creep into holes in the earth, for else ye shall not escape our arrows.* And this  
interpretation was soon verified by the *Scythians* themselves, who assailed the *Persian*  
to camp, drove the horsemen into the trenches, and vexed the Armie with continuall Al-  
larmes day and night; were so fearelesse of this great Monarch, and so little regarded  
him, that within his hearing, and even in his sight, they did not forbear the pastime of  
coursing a Hare, which they had started by chance. By this boldnesse of theirs, *Darius*  
was so discouraged, that he forsook his Camp by night, making many fires, and leaving  
all that were sick and weak behind him, and to with all speed marched away towards  
the River *Ister*. He was pursued hardly by the *Scythians*, who mist him; yet arriving at  
the Bridge before him, perswaded the *Ionians* to depart, assuring them that the *Persian*  
king should never more be able to do them either good or harm. Which words had  
certainly been proved true, had not *Hystianus* the *Milesian* prevailed with his people, to  
attend the coming of *Darius*, whom the *Scythians* did likewise fail to meet, when  
they returned from *Ister* to seek him out.

## S. V.

Some actions of the Persians in Europe, after the Scythian War.

**D**arius having thus escaped out of *Scythia*, determined the invasion of *Thrace* and  
*Macedon*, in which War he employed *Megabazus*, who mastered the *Peoni-*  
*ans*, and transplanted them, and posselt *Perinthus*, *Chalcedon*, *Byzantium*, and o-  
ther places, being also soon after subjeeted, and added to the *Persian* Empire by *Oia-*  
*nes*, the son of *Sylamnes*, whom *Cambyfes* had exoriated for false judgement. So were  
the Cities of \* *Selybria*, and \* *Cardia* likewise taken in from the *Persian*, who having  
now reduced under his obeyfance the best part of *Thrace*, did send his Embassadors to  
*Amintas* King of *Macedon* adjoining, demanding of him by the Earth and Water, the  
Soveraignty over that kingdom. *Amintus* doubting his own strength, entertained the  
Embassadors with gentle words, and afterwards invited them to a solemne and magnifi-  
cent feast; the *Persians* greatly desired that the *Macedonian* Ladies might be present:  
upon which being granted, the Embassadors, who were well filled with wine, and presumed  
upon their greatnesse and many victories, began to use such embracings, and other lasciv-  
ious behaviour towards those Noble Ladies, as *Alexander* the Kings son, great Grand-  
father to *Alexander* the Great, disclaining the *Persians* barbarous presumption, besought  
his father to with-draw himself from the assembly, continuing notwithstanding all ho-  
nourable respect towards the Embassadors, whom withall he entreated that the Ladies  
might refresh themselves for a while; promising their speedy return. This being obai-  
ned, *Alexander* caused the like number of well-favoured yong men to clothe them-  
selves in the same garments, and to use the same attires which the Ladies had worn at the  
feast, giving them in charge, That when the *Persians* offered to abuse them, they should  
forthwith transpierce them with their long knives, of which they were provided for that  
purpose, which was accordingly performed. Charge was soon after given by *Darius* for  
a severe revenge of this murder. But *Alexander* somewhat before the death of *Amintas*,  
gave his sister *Gygea* in marriage to *Bubarus*, a principall Commander of *Darius* forces  
on that side, who perswading her husband how helpfull the Alliance of *Macedon* would  
prove for the invasion of *Assica* intended, so prevailed, as *Alexander* escaped that tem-  
pest, which threatened to fall upon him very suddenly; the war of *Asia* the lesse, called  
*Ionicke*, falling out at the same time.

Her. 1. 5.  
\* A matri-  
moniall City of  
Thrace to the  
South of Con-  
stantinople.  
\* *Cardia*, a Cite  
upon the  
Cheyousius of  
Thrace; after-  
ward *Issyma-*  
*chia*, *Pto*, *Paus*.

## s. VI.

The first occasion of the War which Darius made upon Greece, with a rehearsal of the government in Athens, whence the quarrell grew.

**N**OW the better to understand the reason and motives of that great War, which followed soon after, between the *Persians* and *Greeks*, it is necessary to make a short repetition of the state of *Athens*, which City endured the hardest and worst brunt of *Darius* invasion on that side the Sea, with admirable successe. Neither doe I hold it any impertinency to be large in unfolding every circumstance of so great a business as gave fire to those wars, which never could be thoroughly quenched, untill in the ruin of this great *Perſian* Monarchy, *Perſepolis* the capitall City of the Empire, was at the request of an *Athenian* Harlot consumed with a flame, as dreadfull, as in the pride of their greatness, the *Persians* hath raised in *Athens*.

Now therefore as out of the former books it may be gathered, how *Athens* and other parts of *Greece*, were anciently governed, the same being already set down, though scatteringly, and in severall times, among other the Contemporary occurrences of the Eastern Emperors, and the Kings of *Jndaa*; so I thought it very pertinent in this place to remember againe the two last changes in the State of *Athens*. As for the *Lacedæmonians*, they maintained still their ancient policy under Kings, though these also after some fifteen descents were bridled by the *Ephori*.

*Codrus* King of the *Athenians*, in the former books remembred, who willingly died for the safety of his people, was therefore so honoured by them, as (thinking none worthy to succeed him) they changed their former government from Monarchicall to Princes for terme of life, of which *Medon* the Son of *Codrus* was the first, after whom they were called *Medontida*; and of these there were twelve Generations besides *Medon*, to wit,

*Agellus*.

*Archippus*, in whose times the *Greeks* transported themselves into *Ionia*, after *Troy* an hundred and fourscore years, according to *Eusebius*: which migration all other Cronologers (such as follow *Eusebius* herein excepted) find in the year after *Troy* fallen one hundred and forty.

*Thersippus*.

*Phorbas*.

*Mezades*.

*Diogenetus*, in whose time *Lycurgus* gave Laws to the *Spartans*.

*Pheredus*.

*Arſipbron*.

*Thersippus*, in whose time the *Aſſyrian* Empire was overthrowen by *Belochus* and *Arbaces*.

*Agameſtor*.

*Eſchylus*, in whose time the *Ephori* (according to *Eusebius*) were erected in *Lacedæmon*.

*Alcemon*, the last Prince for life, after whose death the *Athenians* eleaced Decenniall Governours: the former Princes

for life having continued in all three hundred and sixteen years. \*The first of those that governed for ten years, or the first *Archon*, was

*Charops*, then

*Alſymedes*.

*Elydicus*.

*Hippomenes*.

*Leocrates*.

*Alſander*.

*Erixias* was the last *Archon* of the decennial Governours, which form continuing threecore and ten years, was then changed into annuall Magistrates, Maiors, or Burg-masters, of which *Theseus* was the first, according to *Pausanias*: 0-40 thers find *Leocratus*; and then

*Anthoſthenes*.

*Archimedes*.

*Miltiades*.

*Damafias*.

*Draco*.

*Megacles*.

*Solen*, & others, who are the lesse to be regarded, by reason of the yearly change.

This *Solen* being a man of excellent wisdom, gave Laws to the *Athenians*, which were published, according to *Gellius*, in the three and thirtieth year of *Tarquinius Priſcus*, and were in after ages derived unto the *Romanes*, and by the *Decem-viri* Magistrates in *Rome* created for that purpose reduced into Twelve Tables, which were the ground of the *Roman* laws. But these goodly ordinances of *Solen*, were in his own days violated, and for a while almost quite extinguished. For whereas they were framed unto the

practice and maintenance of a popular government; the state of *Athens* was very soon changed into a Monarchie by *Pisistratus* the son of *Hippocrates*: vvhofinding the Citizens distracted into two factions, wherof *Megacles* and *Lycurgus*, two Citizens of noble Families, were become the heads, took occasion by their contention and inſolency to raise a third faction more powerful than the other two, and more plausible, for that he seemed a Protector of the Citizens in generall. Having by this meanes obtained love and credit, he wounded himself, and feigned that by malice of his enemies he had like to have been slain for his love to the good Citizens; he procured a guard for his defence, and with that band of men surprising the State-house, or Cittadell of *Athens*, he made himself Lord of the town; *Hegeſistratus* being then Governor. But the Citizens, who in every change of government had fought to remove themselves further and further from the form of a Monarchie, could so ill brook this usurpation of *Pisistratus*, that he was driven for lack of help, to fly the town, as soon as *Megacles* and *Lycurgus* (joyning their forces) attempted his expulsion. Yet as the building of his tyranny, founded upon the dissention of the Citizens, was ruined by their good agreement; so was it soon after well rectified by the new breaking out of the old factions. For when *Megacles* found the power of *Lycurgus* to grow greater than his own, he did (as is the usual practice of the weaker side) call in the common enemy *Pisistratus*, to whom he gave his Daughter in marriage; by which alliance the Family of the *Alcæmonida*, wherof *Megacles* was chief, became very powerful, yet so, that *Pisistratus* by their power was made Master both of them and all the rest. But this agreement held not long; the *Alcæmonida*, and especially *Megacles* being incensed against *Pisistratus* for his misdemeanour towards his Wife. Wherefore they practised with the Souldiers of the Town, proceeding in their treason so secretly, and so farre, that *Pisistratus* upon the first discovery of their intent, perceived no other remedy for his affaires, than to with-draw himself to *Eretria*, where he remained eleven years. Which time being expired, having hired Souldiers out of many parts of *Greece*, he againe recovered the Principality of *Athens*: after which third obtaining his estate, he governed *Athens* seventeen years, according to *Aristotle*, and reigned in all thirty and three years, saith *Elianus*, but as *Justine* hath it, four and thirty, accounting the time belike as well before as after his severall expulsions. *Herodotus* gives the Father and the Son six and thirty years; *Aristotle* five and thirty. But *Thucydides* affirmeth, that he died very old, leaving for his Successors, his two Sons, *Hippias* and *Hipparchus*, who governed the *Athenians* with such moderation, as they rather seemed the lineall successors of a naturall Prince than of a Tyrant. But in the end, & some three years before *Hippias* was expelled out of *Athens*, his brother *Hipparchus* was murdered by *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*. The cause why, and the manner how performed, *Thucydides* hath written at large. And though *Hipparchus* were charged with unnatural lust, after *Harmodius*, yet *Plato* in his Dialogue, intituled *Hipparchus*, doth greatly magnifie him, affirming that he was a Prince of as many eminent virtues as that Age had any, altogether condemning the murderers, & authors of that scandall. *Hippias* fearing that this enterprise upon his brother had more and deeper roots than were apparent, first sought to discover the further intents of *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*, by a Harlot of theirs called *Lemnia*: who because she would not reveale her Companions, did cut out her own tongue. Then did *Hippias*, the better to strengthen himself, enter into a ſtrait amity with *Æantides*, Tyrant of the City *Lampſacus*, whom he knew to be greatly favoured by *Darius*, to whose son *Hystolus* he gave one of his Daughters in marriage. But some three years after the death of his brother, doubting I know not what wrong practice against himself, he began to use the Citizens with great severity, which neither *Pisistratus* the Father, nor *Hippias* himself had ever exercised, during their usurpation till this time.

And therefore the *Athenians* fearing lest that this disease might rather increase, than diminish in *Hippias*, they stirred up *Cliftines* one of the noblest and best able of their City, to practise their delivery: who calling to his assistance the banished *Alcæmonida*, together with an Army of the *Lacedæmonians* led by *Cleomenes* their King, so afflicted *Hippias*, as by composition he gave over his estate, and the possession of *Athens*, and from thence imbarcking himself, took land at \* *Sigenum*, whence he went to *Lampſacus* in *Mysia* governed by *Æantides*, who presented him to *Darius*. He was deprived of his estate, as *Herodotus* and *Thucydides* agree, twenty years before the battell of *Marathon*: all which time he continued, partly with *Æantides*, at other times with *Artaphernes* Lieutenant for *Darius*.



*Darius* in *Sardis*, the Metropolis of *Lydia*; perswading and practising the enterprise upon *Athens*, which *Darius* in the end his great dishonour undertook, twenty years after *Hippias* had resigned his estate.

Thus farre I have digressed from *Darius*, to the end the Reader may conceive the better the causes and motives of this warre: whereof the hope that *Hippias* had to be restored to *Athens* by the help of *Darius*, which made him solicit and perswade the *Persians* to conquer *Greece*, was one, but not the most urgent.

## s. VII.

Of the Ionian Rebellion, which was the principall cause of the wars ensuing between *Greece* and *Persia*.

**A** Nother, and a strong motive to this expedition, was the Ionick war, breaking out in *Asia* about the same time. The Colonies transported out of *Greece* into *Asia*, which occupied the greatest part of the Sea-coast, having enjoyed their liberty about 500. years, even from the Ionick migration, to the time of *Cyrus*, were by this *Lydian* King made Tributaries, and afterwards as parcell of his Dominions, were taken in by *Cyrus*, and left as hereditary Servants to the Crown of *Persia*.

But as it is the custome of Nations half conquered (witnesseth *Ireland*) to rebel again<sup>20</sup> upon every advantage and opportunity: so did the *Ionians*, and other *Grecians*, both in *Cyrus* his life, and after him, seek by all means possible to free themselves.

At this time they found such men ready to spurre them into Rebellion, as had by the *Persian* been given unto them for bridles to hold them in subjection. Every one of those Towns had a Lord to rule it, whom they (abhorring the government of one man) called their Tyrants. These Lords were very true to the *Persian*, by whose onely might they held the people in subjection. And this their dutifull affection they had well declared, when *Darius* being in great extremity, they used all means to deliver him and his Armie (that otherwise had been lost) out of the *Scythians* hand. Of this great piece of service *Histiæus* the tyrant of *Miletus* expected the chief thanks, as having been chief<sup>30</sup> Author of their expecting *Darius*, when the rest, either perswaded by the *Scythians*, or carried away with their own desires, were ready to have abandoned him. But it came so to passe, that *Darius* being more fearefull of the harm that *Histiæus* (being powerful and crafty) might doe to him in the future, than mindfull of the good which he had already received at his hand, found means to carry him along to *Susa*, where he detained him with all kind usage of a friend, yet kept such good espiall upon him, as an enemy, he could not start away. *Histiæus* had subtilty enough to discover the kings purpose, which ill agreed with his own desires. For he thought it more pleasant, and more honourable to rule as Prince in one faire Citie, having a small Territory, than to sit and feast at the great Kings table, and hear the counsels by which a large Empire was managed; being himself an idle beholder, and enjoying with much restraint of liberty, none other pleasures than a private man might bestow upon himself.

Wherefore he bethought himself of raising of some tumults in the lower *Asia*, to pacifie which, if he might be sent, as one that had great experience and authority in those quarters, it would afterwards be in his power to stay at home, and either satisfie the King with excuses, or deal as occasion shall require. Resolving upon this course, he sent very secret instructions to *Aristagoras* his kinsman, whom he had left his Deputy at *Miletus*, advising him to stirre up some Rebellion. These directions came seasonably to *Aristagoras*, who having failed in an enterprise upon the Isle of *Naxos*, through the false dealing of a *Persian* his Associate, stood in fear of disgrace, if not of some further ill that might<sup>40</sup> befall him, as one that had wasted the Kings treasures to no good purpose.

Therefore he readily embraced the counsell: and the better to draw the whole Country of *Ionian* into the same course which he determined to run, he abandoned his tyranny, and did let *Miletus* at liberty. This plausible beginning wan unto him the hearts of the *Milesiens*: and his proceeding with other *Ionian* Tyrants (of whom some he took and sold as slaves to their Citizens, others he chased away) caused the whole Nation to be at his command. The *Persian* Fleet, whereof he lately had been Admirall in the enterprise of *Naxos*, he had surpris'd in his first breaking out, together with the principall Officers,

Officers and Captains, so that now he thought himself able to deal with the great Kings forces, lying thereabout, either by Land or Sea. But likely it was that the power of all *Asia* would shortly be upon his neck, and crush both him and his assistants to pieces, unless he were able to raise an Armie that might hold the field, which the *Ionians* alone were insufficient to perform. Therefore he took a journey to *Sparta*, where having assayed in vain with many arguments, and the offer of five Talents, to win to his partie *Cleomenes* King of the *Lacedemonians*: he went from thence to *Athens*, and with better success befought the people to lend him their assistance. The *Athenian* Embassadors which had been sent to the *Persian* Kings Lieutenant in the lower *Asia*, desiring<sup>10</sup> them not to give countenance to *Hippias*, now a banished man, and lately their Tyrant, were a while before this returned with ill answers, having found very churlish entertainment. So that the evill which they were to expect in all likelihood from the *Persian*, made them willing to begin with him. To which purpose, their consanguinitie with the *Ionians*, and the perswasions of *Aristagoras*, drew them on a pace, if perhaps his treasure were not helping. Twenty ships the *Athenians* furnished for this voyage; to which the *Eratians* furnished five more, in regard of the ancient kindnesse that had passed between the *Ionians* and them. With these and their own forces joyned, the *Ionians* entred the River *Caisirus*, which falleth into the Sea by *Ephesus*: by which advantage they surpris'd *Sardis* when no enemy was heard of or suspected; inso much, as *Ariaphernes*, who<sup>20</sup> ruled as Vice-roy in those parts, had no other hope of safetie, than by retraiting himself into the Castle, which the *Grecians* could not force: from whence he beheld the slaughter of the Citizens, and the Citie flaming.

The *Persians*, at length, mixt with the Burgers, began to encourage them to defence, and recovered the Market place, strengthened by the river *Palus*, which ran through it; and borrowing courage from desperation, they both defended themselves, and charged their enemies; who well advising themselves, made all the haste they could toward the sea side. But *Ariaphernes* having gathered all the strength he could, pursued the *Grecians*, and found them near *Ephesus*; where setting resolutely upon them, he slaughtered a great part of their Armie, the rest saving themselves in *Ephesus*. In this fight *Evalcides*, Captain of the *Eratians* perished: but his fame and memorie was by that excellent Poet *Simonides* preserved. After this overthrow, the *Athenians*, which were before sent unto *Aristagoras* and to the *Ionians*, could by no arguments of theirs, no not by their tears, be perswaded to make any second trial of their fortunes on that side the Sea.

Yet the burning of *Sardis* made a greater noise in the world, than the late good success which the *Persians* had in one or two skirmishes, could raise. Wherefore the *Ionians* bravely proceeded, won a great part of *Caria*; and sending their Fleet into the *Hellepont*, got *Bizantium* and other Towns into their hands. Yea, the *Cyprians*, lately subdued by *Cambyses*, began hereupon to take heart; and entring into confederacie with the *Ionians*, who were able to give them aide by Sea, rebelled against the *Persians*.

These newes comming to the ear of *Darius*, filled him with great indignation, and with an extreme hatred of the *Athenians*, upon whom he vowed to take sharp revenge. As for the *Ionians*, his contempt of them, and their knowledge of his power, made him to think, that they would not have dared to attempt such things, but by the instigation of those, to whom the ignorance of his great might had afforded the courage to provoke him. This was the main ground of the Warre commenced by *Darius*, and pursued by *Xerxes* against *Athens*: To which the solicitation of *Hippias*, before remembered, gave onely some form and assistance: the business, when once it was thus far on foot, being like enough to have proceeded, though he had perished ere it were advanced any further.

Some other occurrents in this *Ionian* commotion extended the quarrell of *Darius* against many of the Ilanders, if not against the whole Nation of the *Greeks*; for all of them gave to his Rebels free harbour: the Ilanders moreover did help to furnish out a Navie of three hundred and sixty sail against him. These provocations did rather breed in him a desire to abate their pride, than any fear of harm that they were like to doe him. For what they had done at *Sardis*, was but by surprize. In every fight they were beaten by the *Persians*, who had not yet lost the fruits of their discipline,

M m m

wherela

wherein Cyrus had trained them, nor all their ancient Captains. In one Sea-fight by the Isle of Cyprus, the Ionians indeed had the upper hand; but they were Phœnicians, Egyptians, and Cilicians, whom they vanquished: neither was that victory of any use to them; the Egyptians, in whose aide they came, being utterly beaten by the Persian Armie at Land, and reduced into their old subjection. So had the Persians likewise by open waite and fair force overthrown the Carians in two battels, and reclaimed that Nation; as also they had recovered the Towns upon Hellespont, with some Eolian and Ionian Cities, when Aristagoras with his friends quitting Miletus, fled into Thrace, desirous to seat himself in Amphipolis, a Colonie of the Athenians. But the Etonians, on whose Territorie belike he landed, overthrew him, and cut his throats in pieces.

About the same time, Histias, the first mover of this insurrection, came down into those quarters; who having undertaken the performance of great matters to Darius, was glad to flye from his Lieutenants, by whom his double dealing was detected.

But this evasion preserved him not long. And after many vain attempts that he made, he was taken in fight by the Persians, and hastily beheaded, lest the King should pardon him upon remembrance of old good turns; as it seems that he would have done, by the buriall which he commanded to be given to his dead body that was crucified, and by his heave taking of his death.

Histias had fought to put himself into Miletus; but the Citizens doubting his conditions, chose rather to keep him out, and make shift for themselves, without his help. The strength of their Citie by land, which had in old time withstood the Lydian Kings, and their good Fleet, which promised unto them the liberty of an open Sea, emboldened them to trie the uttermost, when very few friends were left upon that Continent to take their part. But their Navie was broken as much by threatnings as by force; many of their companions and fellow-rebels forsaking them upon hope of pardon; and many being daunted with the causelesse flight of those that should have assisted them. Neither was it long before the Town it self, being assaulted both by Land and Sea, was taken by force, the Citizens slain, their wives and children made slaves, and 30 their goods a bootie to the Persians, whom for six years space they had put to so much trouble.

## S. VIII.

The warre which Darius made upon Greece, with the battell of Marathon, and Darius his death.

THIS Warre with good successe finished by the Persians, and some attempts made on Europe side with variable successe; Darius oblitinate in the enter-40 prise and Conquest of Greece (though at first he pretended to make the Warre but against the Athenians and Eretrians, who joyntly assisted the Ionians against him, and burnt Sardis in Lydia) did now by his Embassadours demand an acknowledgement from them all: among whom, some of them not so well resolved as the rest, submitted themselves; as the Aeginets and others. Against these, the Athenians being inflamed, (by the assistance of the Lacedemonians) after divers encounters forc'd them to give pledges, and to relinquish the partie of the Persians. Cleomenes led the Lacedemonians in this warre, and caused his companion King De-50 mantus to be deposed; who thereupon fled to Darius, farre the more confident of victorie, by reason of these discords, alienations, and civill warres among the Greeks. He therefore gave order to Hippagoras to prepare a Fleet of ships fit to transport his Armie over the Hellespont: the same consisting of an hundred thousand foot, and ten thousand horse. The charge in chief of his Armie he committed to Datis, accompanied and assisted by Hippas, the son of Pisistratus, expelled out of Athens twentie years before, and by Ariabernes his brother, Governour of Sardis, and the Sea-coast of Asia the lesse. These Commanders having their Companies brought down to the Sea-side, embarked

embarked themselves in six hundred Gallies and other Vessels; and first of all attempted the Islands called Cyclades, which lay in the mid-way between Asia the lesse, and Greece. For (obtainning those places) the Persians had then nothing to hinder the transportation of their forces over the Aegean Sea; but on the contrary they might alwaies both relieve themselves in their passage, and shroud themselves from all sudden tempests and out-rage.

To this end they first posselt themselves of Samos; secondly, they attempted Naxos: Which Island, the inhabitants despairing of their own forces, abandoned. So did the people of Delos, of which Apollo was native: Which Island Darius did not only forbear to sack, but recalling the inhabitants, he gave order to beautifie the places and Altars of 10 Sacrifice to Apollo erected. And having recovered these and other Islands, the Persians directed their course for Eretria in Eubœa: for that Citie (as already hath been shewed) in Herod. had assisted the Ionians at the taking and firing of Sardis. In this Island the Persians took ground, and besieged Eretria very straitly, and after six daies assault, partly by force, and in part by the treason of Euphobus and Philaginus, they took it, sacked it, and burnt it to the ground. Thus far the winds of prosperous fortune filled their sayls. From Eubœa the Persians past their Armie into Attica, conducted and guided by Hippas, late Prince of Athens, and marching towards it, they encamped at Marathon, in the way from the Sea, where they landed, towards Athens.

The Athenians finding the time arrived, wherein they were to dispute with their own 20 vertues against Fortune, and to cast lots for their libertie, for their wives, their children, and their lives, put themselves in the best order they could to make resistance, and withall sent away with speed to the Lacedemonians for succour, employing in that Negotiation one Phidippides; who passing through Arcadia, encountered in the way a familiar Devil, which he supposed to be Pan, who willed him to assure the Athenians of victorie, promising that some one of the gods should be present at the battell, to assist them and defend them against the multitude of their enemies. Phidippides at his return seeing he could not bring with him any present succours from Sparta, yet he thought it greatly availing to bring news from the gods, and promise of assistance from Heaven, which no doubt (though the device was somewhat likely to be his own, yet) it greatly 30 encouraged the multitude and common people, who in all ages have bin more stirred up with fond Prophecies and other like superstitious fooleries, than by any just cause or solide reason.

The Athenians being now left to themselves, with one thousand only of the Plateans (who having been formerly defended by the Athenians against the Thebans, did in this extremitie witness their thankfulness and gratefull disposition) began to dispute, Whether it were most for their advantage to defend the walls of Athens, or to put themselves into the field with such forces as they had, the same consisting of ten thousand Athenians, and one thousand of the Plateans. In the end, and after great diversitie of opinions, Miltiades, who perswaded the triall by battell, 40 prevailed.

The Armies being now in view, and within a mile of each other, the Athenians disposed themselves into three troupes: two wings or horns, as they terme them, and the bodie of a battell. The Persians when they perceived so small a troupe advancing towards them, thought the Athenians rather disposelt of their understandings, than posselt with the resolution whereof they made shew. So invincible and resistlesse the Persians esteemed their own numbers to be, and that small troupe of their enemies then in view, rather to be despised than to be fought withall. But in conclusion, the victorie being doubtfully balanced for a while, sometime the vertue of the Grecians, and sometimes the number of the Persians prevailed, the Grecians fighting for all that they had, the Persians for that they needed not, these great forces of Darius were disordered and put in rout; the Athenians following their victorie even to the Sea-shore; where the Persians, so many of them as lost not their wits with their courage, saved themselves in their ships.

The Persian Armie consisted of an hundred thousand foot and ten thousand horse; of which there were slain in the place fix thousand three hundred, and of the Grecians an hundred fourscore and twelve. For howsoever it came to passe, either by strange visions, which were afterward called Panics terrores, or by some other affright, it

it seemeth that the invading Armie, after the first encounter, fought with their backs towards their enemy, and lost that number, by *Herodotus* set down, in their disorderly retreat, or rather in their flat running away. As for *Justinus* report, That two hundred thousand of the *Persian* armie were slain, the same hath no appearance nor possibilitie of truth. In this fight *Hippias* the perswader of the enterprise was slain, saith *Justinus* and *Cicero*; but *Suidas* tells us, That he escaped, and died most miserably in *Lemnos*.

Ad. At.

The greatest honour of this victory was cast upon *Miltiades*, who both perswaded the triall by battell, and behaved himself therein answerably to the counsell which he gave. *Themistocles* had his first reputation in this fight, being but young and of the first beard. Those of the *Grecians*, of mark and commandement, that fell in the first encounter, were *Callimachus* and *Stasileus*. It is also said, That *Cynegyrus* following the 16 *Persians* to their embarking, laid hands on one of their Gallies, to have held it from putting off the shore, and having his right hand cut off, he yet offered to arrest it with his left; of which also being deprived, he took hold of it with his teeth. This encounter happened in the first year of the threescore and twelfth *Olympiad*, about the time of the war made by *Coriolanus* against his fellow-Romans: *Alexander* the son of *Amyntas* being then King of *Macedon*, and *Phanippus* then Governour of *Athens*, according to *Plutarch*, or *Hybilides*, after *Halcarnassaus*.

In vita Attil.

This great fray thus parted, and the *Persians* returned back into the lesser *Asia*, *Miltiades* sought and obtained an employment against the Islanders of *Paros*, one of the *Cyclades*, and passing over his Companies in threescore and ten Gallies, after six and twentie days assault he brake his thigh, in seeking to enter it by the Temple of *Ceres*, 20 wherewith himself being made unable, and his companies discouraged, he returned to *Athens*; where those ungratefull Citizens forgetting all his services past, and that of all other the most renowned at the battell of *Marathon*, did by the perswasion of *Xantippus*, the father of *Pericles* (who envied his fame) cast him into prison, and set on him a fine of fiftie Talents; where his weak and wounded body being not able to endure the one, nor his estate to pay the other, he after a few days ended his life.

Which envie of the better sort to each other, with their private Factions, assisted by the unthankfull and witlesse people, brought them, not many years after, from a victorious and famous Nation, to base subjection and slavery. *Miltiades* left behind him 30 one son called *Cymon* begotten on *Hegepsila*, daughter of *Olorus* King of *Thrace*, who (saith *Plutarch*) was neither inferior to his father in valour, nor to *Themistocles* in understanding, but exceeded them both in justice and good government.

Now *Darius* taking greater care how to recover his honour, than sorrow for the losse received in *Greece*, gave order for new levies of men, and all other warlike provisions. But the *Egyptians* revolting from his obedience (a Kingdome of great strength and revenue) greatly distracted his resolution for the re-invasion of *Greece*. The dissention also among his sons, of whom the younger being born after he was king, and by so great a mother as *Atossa*, disdainning to give place to his elder brother, born before *Darius* obtained the Empire, greatly vexed him. And lastly, death, who hath no respect of any mans affairs, gave end to all his consultations and enterprises, and joynd him to the earth of his ancestors, about a year after the battell of *Marathon*, and after that he had reigned six and thirty years. He left behind him five sons, namely, *Ariabasanes*, born before he obtained the kingdom, *Xerxes* who succeeded him, *Achemenes* Governour of *Egypt*, *Masistes* and *Anabignes*.

50

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of Xerxes.

## §. I.

## The preparation of Xerxes against Greece.



*Xerxes* received from his father, as hereditary, a double Warre, one to be made against the *Egyptians*, which he finished so speedily, that there is nothing remaining in writing how the same was performed: the other against the *Grecians*, of which it is hard to judge, whether the preparations were more terrible, or the successe ridiculous. In the consultation for the prosecution of this Warre, which was chiefly

10 bent against the *Athenians*, the Princes of *Persia* were divided in opinion. *Mardonius*, who had formerly commanded in *Thrace* and *Macedon*, under *Darius*, and had also *Histaspes* for his grandfather, as *Xerxes* had, and married *Xerxes* his sister *Artaxostres*, 20 perswaded by many arguments the *European* warre. But *Artabanus*, brother to the late *Darius*, and uncle to *Xerxes*, maintained the contrary counsell, laying before *Xerxes* the lamentable and ridiculous successe of the two late invasions, which *Darius* had made contrary to his counsell: The one in person upon the *Scythians*, the other by his Lieutenants upon the *Greeks*; in each of which *Darius* left to his enemies both his Armie and his Honour.

He therefore besought *Xerxes* to be right well advised before he did too far imbarke himself in this businesse. For whatsoever undertaking hath deliberate and found counsell for conductor, though the successe doe not alwaies answer the probability, yet hath Fortune nothing else thereof to vaunt; than the variableness of his own nature, which only the divine Providence, and not any humane power, can constrain.

30 But so obstinate was the resolution of *Xerxes* in prosecution of his former intent, that *Artabanus*, whether terrified by Visions (as it is written of him) or fearing the Kings hatred, which he made known to all those that opposed his desire to this Warre (changing opinion and counsell) assisted the *Grecian* Expedition with all the power hee had.

After the war of *Egypt* was ended, four years were consumed in describing and gathering an Army for this invasion: which being compounded of all Nations subject to the *Persian* Empire, consisted of seventeen hundred thousand foot, and eighty thousand horsemen, besides Chariots, Camels, and other Beasts of Carriage, if wee may 40 believe *Herodotus*: for of this multitude, *Trogus* finds the number lesse by seven hundred thousand footmen.

The Commanders of the severall Nations were the Princes of the blood of *Persia*, either by marriage in the Kings house, or otherwise: for to these were all commandements of this nature given, some few people excepted, who had of their own Leaders.

The charge of the whole Armie was bestowed on *Mardonius*, the son of *Gobrias* by a sister of *Darius*, to whom were joynd some others of *Xerxes* his nearest kintred, as *Generalls* over all; saving that the charge of ten thousand select *Persians*, called the immortal Regiment (because if any one of the whole number died, or were slain, there was another presently chosen in his stead) was given to *Hydarnes*, the eightie thousand 50 horsemen were led by the sons of *Darius*, who commanded the late Armie of *Darius* in *Greece*.

The Fleet of Gallies were 2200. and eight, furnished by the *Phonicians*, who had Commanders of their own Nation, and by the *Cypriotes*; *Cilicians*, *Pamphilians*, *Lycians*, *Dorians*, *Carians*, *Ionians*, *Aolians*, and *Hellepontines*; who were trusted with the furnishing of their own Vessels, though commanded by the Princes of *Persia*, as by *Ariabignes*, the son of *Darius*, and others. The rest of the Vessels for transportation were three thousand. There were also certain Gallies furnished by *Artemesia*, the daughter of *Lygdamis*, Princess of *Halcarnassaus*, and the Islands adjoining, which her self commanded. Those Gallies by her prepared and furnished, exceeded

all the rest of the Fleet, excepting those of *Zidon*, in which *Xerxes* himself was embarked.

## s. II.

*Xerxes* *Armie* entertained by *Pythius*: his cutting off Mount *Athos* from the Continent: his bridge of Boats over the Hellespont: and the discourse between him and *Artabanus* upon the view of the *Armie*.

When this world of an *Armie* was thoroughly furnished, he caused all the nations of which it was compounded, to make their *Rendez-vous*, and repair at *Sardis* in *Lydia*. And when he had assembled to the number of seventeen hundred thousand foot, as he entered the body of *Celanus*, he was by one *Pythius* the *Lydian* entertained, who out of his Flocks and Herds of Cattel gave food to *Xerxes* and his whole *Armie*. The feast ended, he also presented him with two thousand Talents of silver, and in Gold four Millions, wanting seven thousand of the *Persian Darici*; which make so many of our Markes.

The King overcome with the exceeding liberalitie of *Pythius*, did not only refuse his treasure offered, but commanded that seven thousand *Darici* should be given him to make up his four Millions; of which, so many thousands were wanting when hee made the present. But soon after, when *Pythius* besought him to spare one of his five sons from his attendance into *Greece* (because himself was old, and had none whom he could so well trust as his own son) *Xerxes* most barbarously caused the young man, for whom his father sought exemption, to be sundered into two parts, commanding that the one half of his carcasse should be layed on the right, and the other half on the left hand of the common way by which the *Armie* marched.

Two things he commanded to be done before he came to the Sea-side. The one was a passage for Gallies to be cut behind Mount *Athos*, making the same (with the half Island or Headland, whereon it stood) to be an entire Island, sundring thereby from the Continent of *Thrace* five Cities, besides the Mountain and the *Chersonesus*, or Neck of Land it self: a work of more ostentation than of use, and yet an enterprise of no great wonder, the Valley which held it to the Continent having but twelve furlongs (which make about a mile and a half) to cut through, and the ditch being broad enough only for two Gallies to passe in front. The Cities so severed from the main, were *Dion*, *Olophyxus*, *Acrothoon*, *Thysus* and *Cleone*.

He also gave order, that a Bridge upon Boats should be made over the Hellespont between *Abidus* and *Sestos*, the Sea there having a mile of breadth, wanting an eighth part, which after the finishing, was by a Tempest torn alunder and diservered: wherewith *Xerxes* being more enraged than discouraged, commanded those to be slain that were masters of the work, and caused six hundred threecore and fourteen Gallies to be coupled together, thereon to frame a new Bridge, which by the art and industrie of the *Phenicians* was so well anchored to resist both winds blowing into and from the *Euxine* Sea, as the same being well boarded and rayled, the whole *Army* of seventeen hundred thousand Foot, and fourcore thousand Horfe, with all the Moyleys and Carriages, past over it into *Europe* in seven dayes and seven nights, without intermission. This transportation of *Armies* did *Caesar* afterward use. And *Caligula* that mad Emperour, in imitation of *Xerxes* his Bridge, did build the like.

The Bridge finished, and the *Armie* brought neer to the Sea-side, *Xerxes* took a view of all his Troupes, assembled in the Plains of *Abidus*, being carried up, and seated on a place over-topping the Land round about it, and the Sea adjoining: and after he had gloried in his own happinesse, to behold and command so many Nations, and so powerfull an *Armie* and Fleet, hee suddenly (notwithstanding) burst out into tears, moved with this contemplation, That in one hundred years there should not any one survive of that marvellous multitude: the cause of which sudden change of passion when he uttered to *Artabanus* his Uncle, *Artabanus* spake to the King to this effect: That which is more lamentable than the dissolution of this great Troup within that number of years by the King remembered, is, That the life it self which we enjoy is yet more miserable than the end thereof: for in those few dayes given us in the world,

there

there is no man among all these, or elsewhere, that ever found himself so accompanied with happinesse, but that he oftentimes pleased himself better with the desire and hope of death, than of living; the incident calamities, diseases, and sorrows whereto mankind is subject, being so many and inevitable, that the shortest life doth oftentimes appear unto us over-long; to avoid all which, there is neither refuge nor rest, but in desired death alone.

With this melancholy discourse, *Xerxes* being not much pleased, prayed *Artabanus* not to overcast those joyes which they had now in pursuit with sad remembrances. And holding still a doubtfull conceit, that *Artabanus* utterly condemned the invasion of *Greece*, against which he had formerly given many strong reasons, desired him to deal freely with him, Whether he were returned to his first resolution, that the enterprise of *Greece* could not be prosperous; Or whether, according to the change of mind put into him by his late Vision, he was confident of good successe: *Artabanus*, notwithstanding that he assured himself of the Kings resolution to goe on, and dared not by any new arguments to batter the great purpose it self, yet he told the King, That there were two things which marvellously affrighted him, and which the King should find, as he feared, to be most adverse; to wit, the Sea and the Land: The Sea, because it had no where in that part of the world any Port capable of so great a Fleet; inasmuch, as if any tempest should arise, all the Continent of *Greece* could hardly receive them, nor all the Havens thereof afford them any safety: and therefore when any such shelter shall be wanting unto them, he prayed him to understand, that in such a case of extremitie, men are left to the will and disposition of Fortune, and not Fortune to the will and disposition of men. The Land, besides other incommodities, will be found by so much the more an enemy, by how much the unsatiate desire of man to obtain more and more thereof, doth lead him forward: for were there no man found to give resistance, yet the want of means to feed such an *Armie*, and the Famine, which cannot be prevented, will, without any other violence offered, dis-inable and consume it. By these arguments *Artabanus* hoped to have diverted *Xerxes*, not daring perchance to utter what indeed he most feared, to wit, the overthrow of the *Armie* it self both by Sea and Land, which soon after followed. These cautions were exceeding weighty, if *Xerxes* his obstinacie had not mis-prised them. For, to invade by Sea upon a perilous Coast, being neither in possession of any Port, nor succoured by any party, may better fit a Prince presuming on his fortune, than enriched with understanding. Such was the enterprise of *Philip* the second upon *England* in the year 1588. who had belike never heard of this Counsell of *Artabanus* to *Xerxes*, or forgotten it.

Now concerning the second point, it is very likely, that *Xerxes* his *Armie*, which could not have in it lesse than two millions of Soules, besides his beasts for Service and Carriage, should after a few dayes suffer famine, and using *Machiavels* words, *Mourir sans couste*, i. without a knife. For it was impossible for *Greece*, being a ragged, strait, and mountainous Countrey, to yeeld food (besides what served themselves) for twenty hundred thousand strangers, whom they never meant to entertain, but with the sharpest points of their weapons, destroying withall whatsoever they could not well inclose and defend. Nay, if we may believe *Herodotus*, the *Army* of *Xerxes*, being reviewed at *Thermopyle*, consisted of five millions, two hundred eighty three thousand, two hundred twenty men, besides Laundresses, Harlots, and Horfes, and was therefore likely to endure a speedy famine.

The effect of *Xerxes* his answer was, That it was impossible to provide for all things; and that whosoever should enterprise any great matter, if he gave the hearing to all that could be objected of accidentall inconveniences, he should never pursue the same farther than the dispute and consultation: which if his Predecessors, the *Persian* Kings, had done, they had never grown to that greatnesse, or posselt so many Kingdomes and Nations as they now did; and therefore concluded, That great enterprises were never undertaken without great perils: Which resolution of *Xerxes* was not to be condemned, if any necessity had enforced him to that warre. But seeing the many Nations newly conquered, which he already commanded, were more than could be constrained to obedience any longer than the powerfull prosperitie of the *Persians* endured, and that *Greece* was separated by the Sea from the rest of *Xerxes* his Dominions (of whose resolution his Father *Darius* had made a dear experience) the fruit of this Warre was

anlwe-

answerable to the plantation, and the successe and end agreeable to the weak counsell whereon it was grounded. Furthermore, those millions of men which he transported, and yet in his own judgement not sufficient; (for he gathered in marching on, all the strength of *Thrace* and *Macedon*) were an argument, that he rather hoped to fear the *Greeks* by the fame of his numbers, than that he had any confidence in their valour and resolution, whom he conducted. For it is wisely said of those uncountable multitudes: *Non vires habent, sed pondus, & impedimenta potius sunt quam auxilium; They are great in bulk, but weak in forces, and rather a luggage than an aide.*

Besides, as it was impossible to marshall such a world of men in one Army, so the divers Nations, speaking divers languages, bred the same confusion among the *Persian* commanders when they came to fight, as it did to the builders of *Babel*, when they came to work. Whereas if *Xerxes* had of his five millions compounded ten Armies of fiftie thousand chosen Souldiers in each, and sent them yearly into *Greece* well victualled and furnished, he had either prevailed by the sword, or forced them to forsake their territory, or brought them into obedience by necessity and famine, which cannot be resisted. But while *Xerxes* resolved to cut down the banks of *Greece*, and to let in a sea of men upon them, he was deceived both of his own hopes, and in their hearts whom he employed, and beaten by the *Greeks*, both by Land and Sea; yea, he himself, conducted by his fear, fled shamefully into *Asia*. A great part of his Army was buried in *Greece*: the remainder whereof, which wintered in *Thessaly*, and led by *Mardonius*, who perswaded the enterprise, was in the summer following utterly defeated, and himself slain.

### s. III.

#### Of the fights at Thermopylæ and Artemisium.

After such time as *Xerxes* had transported the Armie over the *Hellepont*, and landed in *Thrace*, (leaving the description of his passage alongst that Coast, and how the River of *Lissus* was drunk dry by his multitudes, and the lake near to *Pisyrus* by his cattell, with other accidents in his marches towards *Greece*) I will speak of the encounters he had, and the shamefull and incredible overthrowes which he received. As first at *Thermopylæ*, a narrow passage of half an acre of ground, lying between the Mountains which divide *Thessalie* from *Greece*, where sometime the *Phocians* had raised a wall with gates, which was then for the most part ruined. At this entrance *Leonidas*, one of the Kings of *Sparta*, with three hundred *Lacedæmonians*, assisted with one thousand *Tegeate* and *Manineans*, one thousand *Arcadians*, and other *Peloponnesians*, to the number of three thousand one hundred in the whole; besides one thousand *Phocians*, four hundred *Thebans*, seven hundred *Thespians*, and all the forces (such as they were) of the bordering *Locrians*, defended the passage two whole dayes together against that huge Armie of the *Persians*. The valour of the *Greeks* appeared so excellent in this defence, that in the first dayes fight, *Xerxes* is said to have three times leaped out of his Throne, fearing the destruction of his Armie by one handfull of those men, whom not long before he had utterly despised: and when the second dayes attempt upon the *Greeks* had proved vain, he was altogether ignorant how to proceed further, and so might have continued, had not a runagate *Grecian* taught him a secret way, by which part of his Armie might ascend the ledge of mountains, and set upon the backs of those who kept the Straits. But when the most valliant of the *Persian* Armie had almost inclosed the small forces of the *Greeks*, then did *Leonidas*, King of the *Lacedæmonians*, with his three hundred, and seven hundred *Thespians*, which were all that abode by him, refuse to quit the place which they had undertaken to make good, and with admirable courage not onely resist that world of men which charged them on all sides; but issuing out of their strength, made so great a slaughter of their enemies, that they might well be called vanquishers, though all of them were slain upon the place. *Xerxes* having lost in this last fight, together with twenty thousand other Souldiers and Captains, two of his own brethern, began to doubt what inconvenience might befall him by the vertue of such as had not been present at these battels, with whom he knew that he shortly was to deal. Especially of the *Spartans* he stood in great fear, whose manhood had appeared singular in this triall, which caused him very carefully to enquire what numbers they could bring

bring into the field. It is reported of *Dieneces* the *Spartan*, that when one thought to have terrified him by saying, That the flight of the *Persian* arrows was so thick as would hide the sun: he answered thus; It is very good news: for then shall we fight in the cool shade.

Such notable resolution having as freely been expressed in deeds, as it was uttered in words, caused the *Persian* to stand in great doubt, when he heard that the Citie of *Sparta* could arm well-nigh eight thousand men of the like temper, and that the other *Lacedæmonians*, though inferior to those, were very valliant men. Wherefore he asked counsell of *Demaratus*, a banished King of the *Spartans*, who had alwaies well advised and instructed him in the things of *Greece*, what course were fittest to be taken in his further proceedings. The opinion of *Demaratus* was, That all the Land-forces should assemble together to defend the *Isthmus*, that streight neck of ground which joyneth *Peloponnesus* to the Continent. For which cause he advised, That three hundred ships well manned should be sent unto the Coast of *Laconia*, to spoile her country, and to hold the *Lacedæmonians* and their neighbours buied at home, whilst *Xerxes* at his leisure having subdued the rest, might afterward bring his whole power upon them, who remaining destitute of succour, would be too weak alone to make resistance. To this purpose also the same *Demaratus* further advised, That the said Fleet of three hundred ships should seize upon the Island then called *Cythera*, now *Cerigo*, which lying near to the Coast of *Laconia*, might serve as a fit place of Rendezvous upon all occasions, either of their own defence, or endangering the enemy: whereby that ancient speech of *Chilon* the *Lacedæmonian* should be verified, that it were better for his Countrymen to have that Ile drowned in the sea, than stand so inconveniently as for them it did. What effect this counsell might have taken, had it bin followed, it is not easie to ghesse. But a contrarie opinion of *Achæmenes* brother to King *Xerxes* was preferred as the safer. For the *Persian* fleet had bin sorely vexed with a grievous tempest, which continued three whole dayes together, wherein were lost upon the Coast of *Magnesia*, four hundred ships of war, besides other vessels innumerable, accordingly as *Artabanus* had foreseen, that if any such calamitie should overtake them, there would not be found any Harbor wide enough to give them succour. Therefore *Achæmenes* perswaded his brother not to disperse his fleets; for if (said he) after the losse of four hundred ships we shall fend away other three hundred to seek adventures, then will the *Greeks* be strong enough by sea to encounter the rest of the Navie, which holding all together is invincible. To this counsell *Xerxes* yielded, hoping that his Land-armie and fleet should each of them stand the other in good stead, whilst both held one course, and lay not far asunder. But herein he was far deceived; for about the same time that his armie had felt the valour of the *Greeks* by land, his Navie likewise made a sorrowfull proof of their skill and courage at sea. The *Grecians* fleet lay at that time at *Artemisium* in the straits of *Eubœa*, where the *Persians* thinking to compass them, sent two hundred sayl about the Island to fall upon them behind, using a like stratagem to that which their King did practise against *Leonidas* in a case not unlike, but with far different successe. For that narrow channell of the sea which divideth *Eubœa* from the main, was in the same sort held by a Navie of two hundred threescore and eleven sail against the huge *Persian* Armado, as the straits of *Thermopylæ* had formerly bin maintained by *Leonidas*, till he was circumvented, as this Navie might have bin, but was not. The departure of those two hundred ships that were sent about the Island, and the cause of their voyage, was too well known in the *Persian* fleet, and soon enough disclosed to the *Greeks*, who setting sail by night, met them with a counter-surprise, taking and sinking thirty vessels, enforcing the rest to take the Sea, where being over-taken with foul weather, they were driven upon the rocks and cast all away. Contrariwise, the Navie of the *Greeks* was increased by the arrivall of fiftie three *Athenian* ships, and one *Lemnian*, which came to their partie in the last fight. As these new forces encouraged the one side, so the fear of *Xerxes* his displeasure stirred up the other to redeem their losse with some notable exploit. Wherefore setting aside their unfortunate policie, they resolved in plain fight to repair their honour, and casting themselves into the form of a Crescent, thought so to inclose the *Greeks*, who readily did present them battell at *Artemisium*.

The fight endured from noon till night, and ended with equall losse to both parts. For though more of the *Persian* ships were sunk and taken, yet the lesser losse fell altogether

gether as heaue upon the *Greekish* fleet, which being small could worse bear it. Herein only the *Barbarians* may seem to have had the worse, that they forsook the place of fight, leaving the wrack and spoils to the enemy, who nevertheless were faine to abandon presently even the passage which they had undertaken to defend; both for that many of their ships were sorely crushed in the battell, and especially because they had received advertisement of the death of *Leonidas* at *Thermopylae*. Before they wayed anchors, *Themistocles*, Generall of the *Athenians*, engraved upon stone at the watering place an exhortation to the *Ionians*, that either they should revolt unto the *Greeks*, or stand neuterall; which perswasion, he hoped would either take some place with them, or at the least make them suspected by the *Persians*.

10

## S. IV.

*The attempt of Xerxes upon Apollo's Temple : and his taking of Athens.*

**V**Hen *Xerxes* had past the straits of *Thermopylae*, he wasted the country of the *Phocians*, and the regions adjoining : as for the inhabitants, they chose rather to flee, and reserve themselves to a day of battell, than to adventure their lives into his hands, upon hope of saving their wealth, by making proffer unto him of their service. Part of his armie he sent to spoil the Temple of *Delphi*, which was exceeding rich by means of many offerings that hath bin made by divers Kings and great personages ; of all which riches it was thought that *Xerxes* had a better Inventory than of the goods left in his own Palace. To make reliction of a great astonishment that fell upon the companies which arrived at the Temple to have sacked it, and of two Rocks that breaking from the Mount *Parnassus*, overwhelmed many of the *Barbarians*, it were peradventure somewhat superfluous. Yet *Herodotus*, who lived not long after, saith, That the broken Rocks remained even to his memory in the Temple of *Minerva*, whither they rowled in their fall. And surely this attempt of *Xerxes* was impious ; for seeing he beleaved that *Apollo* was a god, he should not have dared to entertain a covetous desire of enriching himself by committing sacrilege upon his Temple. Wherefore it may possibly be true, that licence to chastise his impietie, in such manner as is reported, was granted unto the devill, by that Holy One, who saith, *Will a man spoil his gods ?* and elsewhere ; *Hath any Nation changed their gods, which yet are no gods ? Goe to the Iles of Kittim, and behold, and send to Kedar, and take diligent heed, and see whether there be any such things.* Now this impiety of *Xerxes* was the more inexcusable, for that the *Persians* alleged the burning of *Cybeles* Temple by the *Athenians*, when they set fire on the Citie of *Sardis* in *Asia*, to be the ground and cause of the waste which they made in burning of Cities and Temples in *Greece*. Whereas indeed, in the enterprise against *Delphos*, this vizzor of holy and zealous revenge falling off, discovered the face of covetousnesse so much the more ugly, by how much the more themselves had professed a detestation of the offence which the *Athenians* had committed in that kind by meer mischance.

30

The remainder of that which *Xerxes* did, may be expressed briefly thus : *He came to Athens, which finding forsaken, he took and burnt the Cittadel and Temple which was therein.* The Cittadel indeed was defended a while by some of more courage than wisdom, who literally interpreting *Apollo's* Oracle, that *Athens should be safe in wooden walls*, had fortified that place with Boords and Palisadoes : too weak to hold out long, though by their desperate valour so well maintained at the first assault, that they might have yeelded it upon tolerable conditions, had they not vainly relied upon the prophetic : whereof (being somewhat obscure) it was wisely done of *Themistocles*, to make discretion the interpreter, applying rather the words to the present need, than so fashioning the business to words.

## S. V.

*How Themistocles the Athenian drew the Greeks to fight at Salamis.*

**T**He *Athenians* had before the coming of *Xerxes* removed their wives and children into *Trazene*, *Agina*, and *Salamis*, not so highly prizing their houses and lands, as their freedome, and the common libertie of *Greece*. Nevertheless, this

great

great zeal, which the *Athenians* did shew for the generall good of their Countrey, was ill requited by the other *Greeks*, who with much labour were hardly intreated to stay for them at *Salamis*, whilst they removed their wives and children out of the Citie. But when the City of *Athens* was taken, it was presently resolved upon, that they should forsake the Isle of *Salamis*, and withdraw the fleet to *Isthmus* : which neck of land they did purpose to fortifie against the *Persians*, and so to defend *Peloponnesus* by land and sea, leaving the rest of *Greece* as indefensible, to the furie of the enemy. So should the Ilands of *Salamis* and *Agina* have been abandoned, and the Families of the *Athenians* (which were there bestowed as in places of securitie) have been given over into mercilesse bondage. Against his resolution *Themistocles*, Admirall of the *Athenian* Fleet, very strongly made opposition ; but in vain. For the *Peloponnesians* were so possessed with fear of losing their own, which they would not hazzard, that no perswasions could obtaine of them to regard the estate of their distressed Friends and Allies. Many remonstrances *Themistocles* made unto them, to allure them to abide the enemy at *Salamis* ; As first in private unto *Eurybiades*, the *Lacedaemonian*, Admirall of the whole fleet ; That the self same fear which made them forsake those coasts of *Greece*, upon which they then anchored, would afterward (if it found no check at the first) cause them also to disserve the Fleet, and every one of the Confederates to withdraw himself to the defence of his own City and Estate : Then to the Councell of War, which *Eurybiades* upon this motion did call together (forbearing to object what want of courage might work in them hereafter ; ) he shewed that the fight at *Isthmus* would be in an open Sea, whereas it was more expedient for them, having the fewer ships, to determine the matter in the freights ; and that, besides the safeguard of *Agina*, *Megara* and *Salamis*, they should by abiding where they then were, sufficiently defend *Isthmus* ; which the *Barbarians* should not so much as once look upon, if the *Greeks* obtained victory by sea ; which they could not so well hope for elsewhere, as in that present place which gave him so good advantage. All this would not serve to retain the *Peloponnesians*, of whom one, unworthy of memorie, upbraided *Themistocles* with the losse of *Athens*, blaming *Eurybiades* for suffering one to speak in the Councell, that had no Countrey of his own to inhabit. A base and shamefull objection it was, to lay as a reproach that losse, which being voluntarily sustained for the common good, was in true estimation by so much the more honourable, by how much it was the greater. But this indignite did exasperate *Themistocles*, and put into his mouth a replee so sharp, as availed more than all his former perswasions. He told them all plainly, That the *Athenians* wanted not a fairer Citie than any Nation of *Greece* could boast of ; having well-neer two hundred good ships of Warre, the better part of the *Grecian* Fleet, with which it was easie for them to transport their Families and substance into any part of the World, and settle themselves in a more secure habitation, leaving those to shift as well as they might, who in their excretion had refused to stand by them. Herewithall he mentioned a Town in *Italie* belonging of old to the State of *Athens*, of which Town he said an Oracle had foretold, That the *Athenians* in procelle of time should build it a new, and there (quoth he) will we plant our selves ; leaving unto you a sorrowfull remembrance of my words, and of your own unthankfulnesse. The *Peloponnesians* hearing thus much, began to enter into better consideration of the *Athenians*, whose affairs depended not, as they well perceived, upon so weak termes, that they should be driven to crouch to others ; but rather were such, as might enforce the rest to yeeld to them, and condescend even to the innermost of their own demands.

For the *Athenians*, when they first embraced that Heroicall resolution of leaving their grounds and houses to fire and ruine, if necessitie should enforce them so farre, for the preservation of their liberty, did employ the most of their private wealth, and all the common treasure, in building a great Navie. By these means they hoped ( which accordingly fell out ) that no such calamity should befall them by Land, as might not well be counterpoised by great advantages at Sea : Knowing well that a strong fleet would either procure victory at home, or a secure passage to any other Countrey. The other States of *Greece* held it sufficient, if building a few new ships, they did somewhat amend their Navie. Whereby it came to pass, that had they bin vanquished, they could not have expected any other fortune than either present death, or perpetual slavery ; neither could they hope to be victorious without the assistance of the *Athenians*, whose forces by

Sea



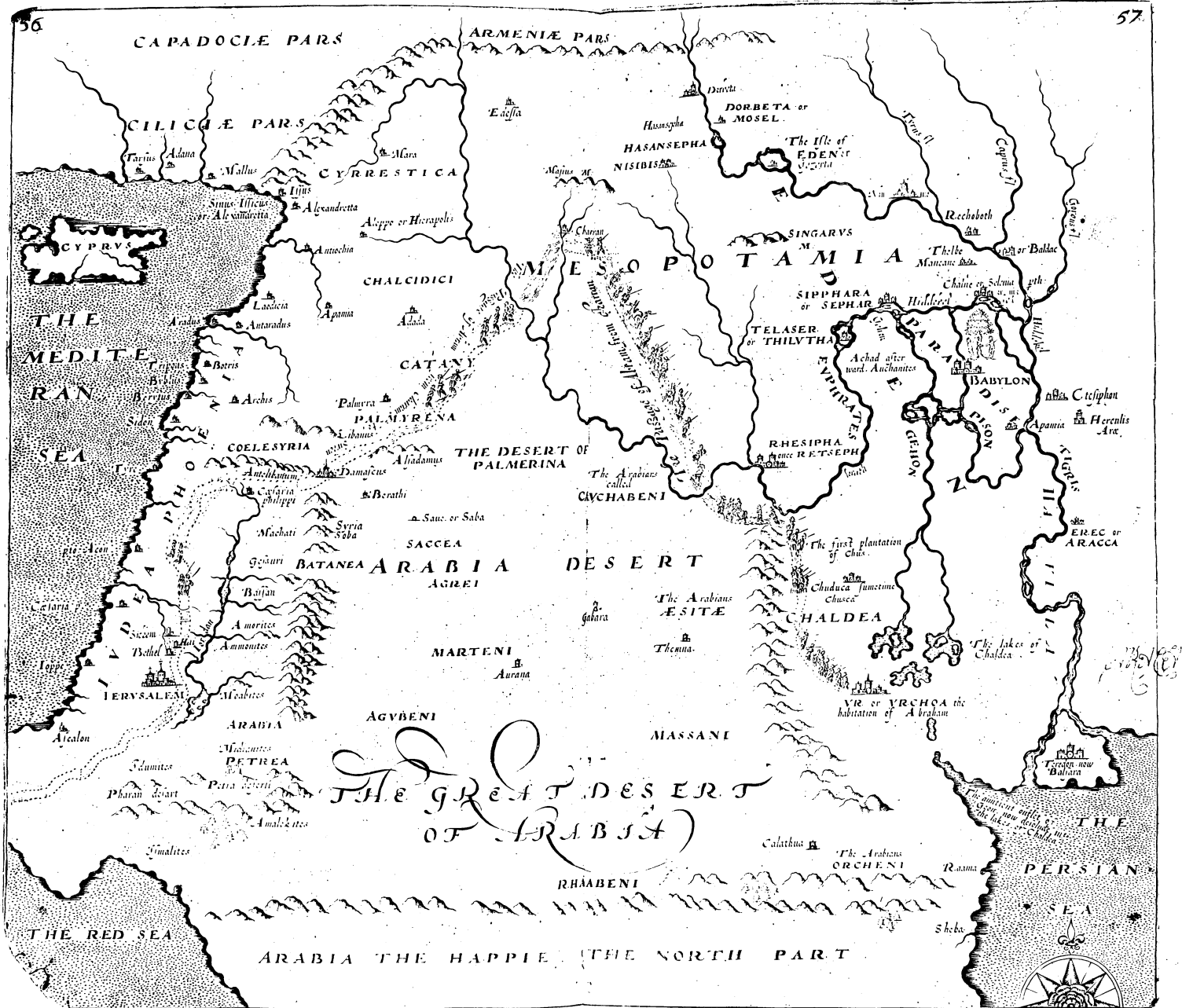
sea did equall all theirs together; the whole consisting of more than three hundred and four score bottomes. Wherefore these *Peloponnesians* beginning to suspect their own condition, which would have stood upon desperate points, if the Fleet of *Athens* had forsaken them, were soon perswaded, by the greater fear of such a bad event, to forget the lesser, which they had conceived of the *Persians*: and laying aside their insolent braverie, they yeelded to that most profitable counsell of abiding at *Salamis*.

## §. V.I.

*How the Persians consulted about giving battell: and how Themistocles by policie held the Greeks to their resolution; with the victorie at Salamis thereupon ensuing.* 10

**I**N the mean season the *Persians* had entred into consultation, whether it were convenient to offer battell to the *Greekes*, or no. The rest of the Captains giving such advice as they thought would best please the King their Master, had soon agreed upon the fight; but *Artemisia* Queen of *Halicarnassus*, who followed *Xerxes* to this warre in person, was of contrary opinion: Her counsell was, that the King himself directly should march toward *Peloponnesus*, whereby it would come to passe, that the *Greek Navie* (unable otherwise to continue long at *Salamis* for want of provision) should presently be dislevered, and every one seeking to preserve his own Citie and goods, they should, being divided, prove unable to resist him, who had won so far upon them when they held together. And as the profit will be great in forbearing to give battell, so on the other side, the danger will be more (said she) which we shall undergoe, than any need requireth us to adventure upon; and the losse in case it fall upon us, greater than the profit of the victorie which we desire. For if we compell the enemies to flee, it is more than they would have done, we sitting still: but if they, as better Sea-men than ours, put us to the worst, the journey to *Peloponnesus* is utterly dashed, and many that now declare for us, will soon revolt unto the *Greeks*. *Mardonius*, whom *Xerxes* had sent for that purpose to the Fleet, related unto his Master the common consent of the other Captains, and withall this disagreeing opinion of *Artemisia*. The King well pleased with her advice, yet resolved upon following the more generall, but far-worse counsell of the rest; which would questionlesse have been the same which *Artemisia* gave, had not fear and flatterie made all the Captains utter that, as out of their own judgement, which they thought to be most conformable to their Princes determination. So it was indeed that *Xerxes* had entertained a vain perswasion of much good, that his own presence upon the shore to behold the conflict, would work among the Souldiers. Therefore he encamped upon the Sea-side, pitching his own Tent on the Mount *Agulans*; which is opposite unto the Isle of *Salamis*, whence at ease he might safely view all which might happen in that action, having Scribes about him to write down the acts and behaviour of every Captain. The neer approach of the *Barbarians*, together with the newes of that timorous diligence which their Countrymen shewed in fortifying the *Isthmus*, and of a *Persian* Armie, marching a-pace thither, did now againe so terrifie and amaze the *Peloponnesians*, that no intreatie nor contestation would suffice to hold them together. For they thought it meer madnesse to fight for a Country already lost, when they rather should endeavour to save that which remained unconquered; propounding chiefly to themselves what miserie would befall them, if losing the victorie, they should be driven into *Salamis*, there to be shut up, and besieged round in a poor desolate Iland.

Hereupon they resolved forth-with to set sail for *Isthmus*: which had presently been done, if the wisdom of *Themistocles* had not prevented it. For he perceiving what a violent fear had stoppt up their ears against all good counsell, did practise another course, and forth-with labour to prevent the execution of this unwholsome decree; not suffering the very hour of performance to find him busie in wrangling alteration. As soon as the Councell brake up, he dispatched secretly a trustie Gentleman to the *Persian* Captains, informing them truly of the intended flight, and exhorting them to send part of their Navie about the Iland, which incompassing the *Greekes*, might prevent their escape; giving them withall false hope of his assistance. The *Persians* no sooner heard than beleevved these good newes, well knowing that the victorie was their own assured,



assured, if the *Athenian* fleet joyned with them; which they might easily hope, considering what ability their Master had to recompence for so doing, both the Captains with rich rewards, and the People with restitution of their City, and Territories. By these means in fell out, that when the *Greeks* very early in the morning were about to waigh Anchor, they found themselves inclosed round with *Persians*, who had laboured hard all that night, sending many of their ships about the Ile of *Salamis*, to charge the enemy in rear, and landing many of their men in the Ile of *Psittalea*, which lyeth over against *Salamis*, to save such of their own, and kill such of the *Grecian* party, as by any misfortune should be cast upon the shore. Thus did meer necessitie enforce the *Grecians* to undertake the battell in the straights of *Salamis*, where they obtained a memorable victory, stemming the foremost of their enemies, and chasing the rest, who falling foul one upon another, could neither conveniently fight nor flee. I doe not find any particular occurrences in this great battell to be much remarkable. Sure it is, that the Scribes of *Xerxes* had a wearisome task of writing down many disasters that befell the *Persian* Fleet, which ill acquitted it self that day, doing no one piece of service worthy the presence of their King, or the registring of his Notaries. As for the *Greeks*, they might well seem to have wrought out that victory with equall courage, were it not that the principal honour of that day was ascribed to those of *Agina*, and to the *Athenians*, of whom it is recorded, That when the *Barbarians* did flee towards *Phalerum*, where the Land-army of *Xerxes* lay, the ships of *Agina* having possessed the Straights, did sinke or take them, whilst the *Athenians* did valiantly give charge upon those that kept the Sea, and made any countenance of resisting.

## §. VII.

Of things following after the battell of *Salamis*: and of the flight of *Xerxes*.

**A**fter this victory, the *Greeks* intending by way of Scrutinie, to determine which of the Captains had best merited of them, in all this great service; every Captain, being ambitious of that honour, did in the first place write down his own name, but in the second place, as best deserving next unto himself, almost every Suffrage did concur upon *Themistocles*. Thus private affection yielded unto vertue, as soon as her own turn was served. The *Persian* King, as not amazed with this calamity, began to make new preparation for continuance of warre; but in such fashion, that they which were best acquainted with his temper, might easily discern his faint heart through his painted looks. Especially *Mardonius*, Author of the warre, began to cast a wary eye upon his Master, fearing lest his counsell should be rewarded according to the event. Wherefore purposing rather to adventure his life in pursuit of the victory, than to cast it away by undergoing his Princes indignation, hee advised the King to leave unto him three hundred thousand men, with which forces hee promised to reduce all *Greece* under the subjection of the *Persian* Scepter. Herewithall hee forgot not to sooth *Xerxes* with many fair words, telling him, That the cowardise of those *Egyptians*, *Phenicians*, and *Cilicians*, with others of the like metall, nothing better than slaves, who had so ill behaved themselves in the late Sea-service, did not concern his honour, who had alwayes been victorious, and had already subdued the better part of *Greece*, yea taken *Athens* it self, against which the War was principally intended. These words found very good acceptance in the Kings ear, who presently betook himself to his journey homewards, making the more haste, for that he understood, how the *Greeks* had a purpose to saile to *Hellespont*, and there to break down his bridge, and intercept his passage. True it was that the *Greeks* had no such intent, but rather wished his hasty departure, knowing that hee would leave his Armie not so strong, as it should have been, had he in person remained with it. And for this cause did *Eurybiades* give counsell, that by no means they should attempt the breaking of that bridge, lest necessity should enforce the *Persians* to take more courage, and rather to fight like men, than die like beasts. Wherefore *Themistocles* did, under pretence of friendship, send a false advertisement unto this timorous Prince, advising him to convey himself into *Asia* with all speed, before his bridge were dissolved: which counsell *Xerxes* took very kindly, and hastily followed, as before is shewed. Whether it were so that he found the bridge whole, and thereby repassed into *Asia*; or whether it were torn in sunder by tempests,

and he thereby driven to imbarke himself in some obscure vessell, it is not greatly materiall; though the *Greeks* did most willingly imbrace the latter of these reports. Howsoever it were, this flight of his did well ease the Country, that was thereby disburdened of that huge throng of people, which, as *Locusts*, had before overwhelmed it.

## s. VIII.

*The negotiations between Mardonius and the Athenians, as also between the Athenians and the Lacedæmonians, after the flight of Xerxes.*

**M**ardonius with his three hundred thousand had withdrawn himself into *Thessalie*, whence he sent *Alexander*, the son of *Amyntas* King of *Macedon*, as Embassador to the *Athenians*, with promise of large amends for all their losses received; and of extending their Territories as farre as their own desires; allowing them to retain their libertie and lawes, if they would make peace with *Xerxes*, and assist him in that warre.

The *Athenians* had now re-entred their City, but not as yet brought back their wives and children; for as much as they well perceived that the place could not be secure, till the Army of *Mardonius* was broken and defeated. Wherefore the *Lacedæmonians*, understanding what fair conditions this Embassadour would propound, were perplexed with very great fear, lest he should find good and ready acceptance. Hereupon, they likewise very speedily dispatched their Embassadors for *Athens*, who arriving before the *Macedonian* had audience, used the best of their perswasion to retain the *Athenians* firm. They alleged, that neither *Xerxes* nor *Darius* had any pretence of Warre against the rest of *Greece*, but had only threatened the subversion of *Athens*, till they and all their Confederates arming themselves in defence of that City, were drawn into the quarrell, wherein the *Athenians* without much crueltie of injustice could not leave them. Wee know, said they, that yee have endured great calamities, losing the fruit of the grounds, and being driven to forsake the Town, the houses thereof be ruined, and unfit for your habitation; in regard whereof, wee undertake to maintain as our own, your wives and children amongst us, as long as the warre shall continue, hoping that yee, who have alwaies procured libertie to others, will not now goe about to bring all *Greece* into slavery and bondage. As for the *Barbarians*, their promises are large, but their words and oathes are of no assurance. It was needlesse to use many arguments to the *Athenians*, who gave answer to *Alexander* in presence of the *Spartan* Embassadors; That whilst the Sunne continued his course, they would be enemies to *Xerxes*, regarding neither Gold nor any riches, with which hee might seek to make purchase of their libertie. Concerning the maintenance of their wives and children, it was a burden which they promised to sustain themselves, only desiring the *Lacedæmonians*, that with all speed they would cause their Armie to march, forasmuch as it was not likely, that *Mardonius* would long sit still in *Thessalie*, having once received such a peremptorie answer. In this their opinion of *Mardonius* his readinesse to invade *Attica*, they found themselves nothing deceived. For hee, as soon as *Alexander* had returned their obstinate purpose of resistance, did forthwith lead his Army towards them, and their City: they having now the second time quitted it, and conveyed themselves into places of more security abroad in the Countrey, where they expected the arrivall of their confederates. From *Athens* he sent his Agent unto them, with instructions, not only to perswade them to acceptance of the conditions before to them propounded, but with great promises to allure the principall of them to his party. His hope was, that either the people, wearied with forsaking their houses so often, would be desirous to preserve them from fire, and to have those which were already laid waste, re-edified at the Kings charges: Or if this affection took no place with them, but that needs they would rely upon so their old confederates, whose succors did very slowly advance forwards, yet perhaps the leaders might be wonne with great rewards, to draw them to this purpose; all which projects, if they should fail, the destruction of *Athens* would be a good mean to please his Master, King *Xerxes*, who must thereby needs understand, that *Mardonius* kept his ground, and feared not to confront the whole power of *Greece*, in the strongest part of their own Countrey. But his expectation was beguiled in all these. For the *Athenians* so little regarded his offers, that when one *Lycidas*, or (as *Demesthenes* calls him)

*Cyrillus*

*Cyrillus*, advised the *Senate* to accept the conditions, and propounded them to the people; all the *Senators*, &c. as many as abiding without the Counsaile-house, heard what he had said, immediatly set upon him, and stoned him to death; not examining whether it were fear or money, that had moved him to utter such a vile sentence. Yea, the women of *Athens*, and in the Ile of *Salamis*, hearing of his bad counsaile, and bad end, assembling together did enter his house there, and put his wife and children to the like execution. All this bravery notwithstanding, when they perceived the slacknesse of the *Peloponnesians* in giving them aid, they were faine to betake themselves to *Salamis* again, the old place of their security. Remaining there, and seeing little forwardnes in those whom it most concerned to assist them, they sent very severe messages to *Sparta*, complaining of their slacknes, and threatening withall, to take such course as might stand best with their own good, seeing that the common estate of all was so little regarded. These messengers were at the first entertained with dilatory answers, which every day grew colder, when as the *Peloponnesian* Wall, builded athwart the *Isthmus*, was almost finished. But as the *Lacedæmonians* waxed careless and dull, so the *Athenians* hotly pressed them to a quick resolution, giving them plainly to understand, that if they should hold on in those dilatory courses, it would not be long ere the City of *Athens* took a new course, that should little please them. All this while the *Persian* fleet lay upon the coast of *Asia*, not daring to draw nearer unto *Greece*, as being now too weak at Sea. Likewise the *Greekish* Navie contained it self within the Harbours upon *Euræpe* side; both to doe service where need should require at home; and withall to shun the danger which might have befallen any part of it, that (being distracted from the rest) had adventured over-far. So mutuall fear preserved in quiet the Ilands lying in the midst of the *Aegean* Seas. But it was well and seasonably observed by a Counsellor of *Sparta*, that the Wall upon *Isthmus* would serve to little purpose for the defence of *Peloponnesus*, if once the *Athenians* gave ear to *Mardonius*: considering that many doors would be opened into that *Demic*-Iland, as soon as the Enemy should by winning the friendship of *Athens*, become the Master of the Seas about it. The *Lacedæmonians* upon this admonition, making better perusal of their own dangers, were very carefull to give satisfaction to the *Athenian* Embassadors, who not brooking their delays, were upon point of taking leave, yea, as it seemed, of renouncing their alliance. Wherefore dispatching away five thousand *Spartans* in the evening, under conduct of *Pausanius*, they gave audience the next day to the Embassadors, whose complaints they answered with vehement protestations of their readinesse; deeply swearing that the Army of *Sparta* was already far upon the journey, and giving them leave to take up other five thousand *Lacedæmonians*, out of the Region adjoining, to follow after them.

The *Athenians*, though distastful such want of gravity, in a matter so important, were nevertheless contented with the final conclusion; and levying the number appointed of *Lacedæmonian* Souldiers, made what haste they could to incamp in *Attica*. The other *Greeces* were nothing slack in sending forth Companies, whose near approach caused *Mardonius* to forsake *Attica* as a rough Countrey, and therefore of much disadvantage to Horse, wherein consisted the best of his power. Before his departure he burnt the City of *Athens*, beating down the Walls of it, and ruining all that had formerly escaped the fury of War.

## s. IX.

*The great battail of Plataea.*

**I**T were too long a rehearsal to shew all that happened in many skirmishes between the *Greeks* and him, in the Countrey of *Beotia*, which *Mardonius* had chosen to be the seat of that War. Much time was spent before the quarrell was decided by the trial of one main battail: for both parties did stand upon their guard, each expecting when the other should assail them.

The Army of *Mardonius* contained about three hundred thousand, which were by him chosen out of *Xerxes* his Army; to whom were adjoynd the forces of *Thebes*, *Macedony*, *Thessaly*, and other parts of *Greece*, that now siding with the *Persian*, furnished his Camp with fifty thousand men. Against these the *Lacedæmonians*, *Athenians*, and their Confederates, had leaved an Army of one hundred and ten thousand, of which forty thou-

land were weightily armed, the rest were only assistants to these forty thousand, being armed more lightly, as rather to make excursions and give chase, than to sustain any strong charges.

These two armies having eleven daies confronted one the other, without performing any memorable piece of service; *Mardonius*, whose victuals began to faile, resolved to begin the fray. The *Greeks* were promised victory by an Oracle, if they fought in the Land of the *Athenians*, and in the plain of *Ceres* and *Proserpina*, making prayers unto certain gods, Demi-gods, and Nymphs. But it was hard to find the certain place which the Oracle designed. For the plain of *Ceres* was indeed in the Territory of *Athens*; but there was also an old Temple of *Ceres* and *Proserpina*, near unto the place where they lay at that time encamped, as likewise the memorials of those Nymphs and Demi-gods, were in the same place, upon Mount *Citharon*, and the ground served well for foot-men against horse; only the Land belonged unto the *Plataeans*, and not unto the *Athenians*.

Whilst the *Greeks* were perplexed about the interpretation of this doubtfull Oracle, the *Plataeans* to make all clear, did freely bestow their land on that side the Town upon the *Athenians*.

This magnificence of the *Plataeans* caused *Alexander* the Great, many ages after, to re-edifie their City, which was ruined in the *Peloponnesian* wars.

All things being ready for battaile, the *Lacedaemonian* Generall thought it most meet, that the *Athenians* should stand opposite that day to the *Medes* and *Persians*, whom they had formerly vanquished at *Marathon*; and that he, with his *Spartans*, should entertain the *Thebans* and other *Greeks* which followed *Mardonius*, as better acquainted with their fight, and having beaten them often-times before. This being agreed upon, the *Athenians* changed place with the *Lacedaemonians*; which *Mardonius* understanding (whether fearing the *Athenians*, of whose valour the *Medes* & *Persians* had felt heave proof, or desiring to encounter the *Spartans*, as thinking them the bravest Souldiers in *Greece*) he did also change the order of his battaile, and oppose himself to *Pausanias*. All the *Greeks* might well perceive how the Enemy did shift his wings, and *Pausanias* thereupon returned to his former Station; which *Mardonius* noting, did also the like. So one whole day was spent in changing to and fro. Some attempt the *Persians* made that day with their Archers on horse-back, who did so molest the *Greeks* at their watering place, that they were faine to enter into consultation of retiring; because they could not without much losse to themselves, and none to the enemy, lye near to that fountain which did serve all the Camp. Having therefore concluded among themselves to dislodge; and part of the Army being sent away before day-light: *Mardonius* perceived their departure in the morning, and thereupon being encouraged by their flight, (which to him seemed to proceed out of meer cowardise) he charged them in the reare with great violence. It may well be recorded as a notable example of patient valour, that the *Lacedaemonians* being over-taken by the enemies horse, and overwhelmed with great flights of Arrows, did quietly sit still, not making any resistance or defence till the Sacrifices for victory were happily ended, though many of them were hurt and slain, and some of especiall mark lost, before any sign of good successe appeared in the entrailes.

But as soon as *Pausanias* had found in the Sacrifice those tokens, which the superstition of that Age and Country accounted fortunate; he gave the Signall of battaile: and thereupon the Souldiers, who till then did sit upon the ground, as was their manner, arose altogether, and with excellent courage received the charge of the *Barbarians*, that came thronging upon them without any fear of such notable resistance. The rest of the *Greek* Army that was in march, being revoked by *Pausanias*, came in a pace to succour the *Lacedaemonians*: only that part of the Army which was led by the *Athenians*, could not arrive unto the place of the great battaile, because the *Thebans*, and others *Greeks* confederated with the *Persians*, gave them check by the way. Nevertheless, the *Spartans* with other their assistants, did so well acquaint themselves, that the *Persians* were vanquished, and *Mardonius* with many thousands more slain in the field; the rest fled into the Camp, which they had fortified with wooden Walls, and there defended themselves with such courage as desperate necessity enforced them unto, holding out the longer, because the *Lacedaemonians* were not acquainted with the manner of assaulting Fortresses, and Walls. In the mean time the *Athenians* having found strong opposition of

of the *Thebans* and *Thessalians*, did with much labour and courage obtain victory, which having not long pursued, they came to help the *Lacedaemonians*, whom they found wearily busied in assaulting the Camp, with more valour than skill. Wherefore they themselves under-took it, and in short space forced a passage through the Wall; at which breach first, and then on all sides, the *Greeks* entred with such fury, and just desire of vengeance, that of three hundred thousand they are said not to have left three thousand alive, excepting those who fled away with *Artabazus*, when as the *Persian* Army first fell to rout.

If the execution were so great, as is reported, an especiall cause of it was the foolish retreat, or rather flight into the Camp. For though it were so, that the place was well fortified, and the number of those who cast themselves into it greater than any of the Assaultants; yet they being of severall Nations and Languages, and having lost their Generall with other principall Commanders, it was impossible that they in such a terror and astonishment should make good that piece of ground, lying in the heart of an Enemy Country, against an Army of men, farre more valiant than themselves, and enflamed with present victory. Therefore the same wall which for a few hours had preserved their lives, by holding out the enemy, did now impale them, and leave them to the slaughtering fury of unpitifull Victors. *Artabazus* fled into *Thrace*, telling the people of the *Thessaly*, and other Countries in his way, that he was sent by *Mardonius* upon some piece of service: For he well knew, that had they understood any thing of that great discomfiture, all places would have been hostile unto him, and fought with his ruine to purchase favour of the vanquishers. Therefore making so large marches, that many of his Souldiers being feeble were left behind and lost, he came to *Byzantium*, whence he shipped his men over into *Asia*. Such was the end of the vain-glorious expedition, undertaken by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, upon hope of Honour, and Conquest, though sorting otherwise, accordingly as *Artabazus* had fore-seen, and rather worse, for as much as it began the quarrell, which never ended before the ruine of the *Persian* Empire was effected by that Nation of the *Greeks*, despised and fought to have been brought into slavery. Hereby it may seem, that the vision appearing to *Xerxes*, was from God himself, who had formerly disposed of those things, ordaining the subversion of the *Persian* Monarchie by the *Greeks*, who thus provoked, entred into greater consideration of their own strength, and the weaknesse of their Enemies.

## S. X.

The battell of Mycale, with a strange accident that fell out in the beginning: and examples of the like.

THE same day on which the battell was fought at *Plataea*, there was another battell fought at *Mycale*, a Promontory, or Head-land in *Asia*, where the *Persian* fleet rode.

*Leutychides* the *Spartan*, with *Xantippus* the *Athenian*, Admirals of the *Greek* Navie, at the request of some Ilanders and *Ionians*, did sail into those parts, to deliver the *Samiens*, and procure the *Ionians* to revolt from the *Persian*. *Xerxes* himself at this time lay at *Sardis*, a City in *Lidia*, not far from the Sea-side, having left threecore thousand under the command of *Tigranes*, for defence of *Ionis* and the Sea-coast. Therefore when *Artayntes* and *Ithamitres*, Admirals of the *Persian* fleet, understood that the *Greeks* bent their course towards them, they did forth-with draw their ships aground, fortifying with *Palisades* and otherwise, as much ground as was needfull for the encamping of all their land and sea-forces. *Leutychides* at his arrivall, perceiving that they meant to keep within their strength, & resolving to force them out of it, rowed with his gally close aboard the shore, and called upon the *Ionians* (who more for fear than good will were encamped among the *Persians*) exhorting them in the *Greek* tongue to remember liberty, and use the fair occasion which they now had to recover it. Herein he did imitate *Themistocles*, who had done the like at *Euboea*, trusting that either these persuasions would prevail, or if the *Persians* did happen to understand them, that it would breed some jealousy in them, causing them to fight in fear of their own companions. It need not seem strange, that this

very same stratagem, which little or nothing availed *Themistocles*, did now very happily succeed. For *Xerxes* being in his full strength, it was a matter of much difficulty, to persuade those inhabitants of *Asia* to revolt; who now in his declining estate, gave a willing ear to the sweet sound of liberty. The *Persians* likewise, who in their former bravery, little regarded, and less feared, any treason to be contrived by their subjects, were now so wary, that from the *Samians* which were amongst them, they took away their arms; the *Milefians* whom they did suspect, but would not seem to mistrust, they placed far from them, as it were for defence of the streight passages of *Mycalé*; pretending that these *Milefians* did best of all others know those places. But these devices little availed them. For the *Samians* perceiving that they were held as Traitors, took courage in the heat of the fight, and laying hold upon such weapons as came to hand, assailed the *Persians* manfully within the Camp; which examples the *Ionians* presently followed, being very glad to have found some that durst begin. It is said that while the *Greekes* were yet in a march toward the Enemies Camp, a rumour suddenly ranne in the Army, that *Mardonius* was overthrowen in *Greece*, which (though perhaps it was given out by the Captains to encourage the Souldiers) was very true. For the battell of *Plataea* was fought in the morning, and this of *Mycalé* in the evening of the same day.

The like report of that great battell, wherein *Paulus Æmilius* overthrowen *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon*, was brought to *Rome* in four dayes, as *Livie* with others do record. And *Plutarch* hath many other examples of this kind. As that of the battell by the River *Sagra* in *Italy*, which was heard of the same day in *Peloponnesus*: That of the battell against the *Tarquinius* and the *Latines*, presently naoid at *Rome*: And (which is most remarkable) the victory obtained against *Lucius Antonius*, who was Rebelle to *Domitian* the Emperour. This *Lucius Antonius* being Lieutenant of the higher *Germanie*, had corrupted his Armie with gifts and promises, drawing the barbarous people to follow him, with great hope to make himself Emperour; which newes much troubling the City of *Rome*, with fear of a dangerous Warre, it was suddenly reported that *Antonius* was slain, and his Army defeated.

Hereupon many did offer sacrifice to the gods, and shew all manner of publike joy, as in such cases was accustomed. But when better inquiry was made, and the Authour of these tydings could not be found, the Emperour *Domitian* betook himself to his journey against the Rebelle; and being now with his Army in march, he received advertisement by Post, of the Victory obtained, and the death of *Antonius*: whereupon remembering the rumour noised before in *Rome*, of the self-same victory, he found that the report and victory were born upon one day, though twenty thousand furlongs (which make above five and twenty hundred miles) a-funder. It is truly said of *Plutarch*, that this last example gives credit unto many the like. And indeed it were very strange, if among so many rumours, begotten by forgery or mistakings, and fostered by credulous imagination, there should not be found (as happens in dreams among many thousand vain and frivolous) a few precisely true. Howbeit wee may find, that God himself doth sometimes use to terrifie those who presume upon their own strength, by these light means of tumultuous noises, as he raised the siege of *Samaria*, by causing a sound of Horses and Chariots to affright the *Aramites*; and as he threatned *Senacherib*, saying, *Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a noise, and return to his own land*. Wherefore it may well have been true, that God was pleased by such means as this, to animate the *Greekes*; who (as *Herodotus* notes) went towards the Enemies with heave hearts, being in great fear, lest their own adventure should by no means fall out well; considering in what danger they had left their own Countrey of *Greece*, which was ready to be subdued by *Mardonius* whilest they went wandering to seek out enemies a-farre-off, upon the coast of *Asia*. But the fame of the battell fought at *Plataea* being noised among them, every man desired that his own valour in the present fight, might be some help to work out the full deliverance of *Greece*. In this alacrity of spirit, they divided themselves into two Battalions, whereof the *Athenians* led the one, by the way of the plain, directly towards the enemies Camp; the *Lacedæmonians* conducted the other, by the Mountains and streight passages, to winne the higher ground. The *Athenians* did first set upon the Campe (ere the *Lacedæmonians* could arrive on the other part) and being desirous to get all the honour of the day to themselves, did so forcibly

Eley 37.7.

forcibly assault it, that they brake way through the Palisadoes and Gabions, and made themselves Masters of the place, slaying all that could not save themselves by flight. In this fight the *Samians* did good service, as is formerly mentioned.

But the *Milefians*, who upon the like jealousie, were placed by the *Persians* on the tops of *Mycalé*, to defend the passages, did now as if they had bin let of purpose to keep them from running away) put as many to the sword as fell into their hands, letting none escape, except very few, that fled through by-paths. The *Lacedæmonians* that day did little service, for the businesse was dispatched ere they came in: Only they broke such companies as retired in whole troops; making them flee disperised in very much disorder, whereby the *Milefians* were enabled to doe the greater execution upon them. This was the last fight of that huge Army leaved against *Greece*, which was now utterly broken, and had no means left to make offensive Warre.

## §. XI.

Of the barbarous qualities of *Xerxes*: with a transition from the Persian affairs to matters of *Greece*, which from this time grew more worthy of regard.

**X** *Erxes* lay at *Sardis*, not farre from the place of this battell; but little mind had he to revenge either this or other his great losses, being wholly given over to the love of his Brothers Wife: with whom hee could not prevail by intreaty, nor would obtain his desire by force, because he respected much his Brother her husband: hee thought it best to make a match between his own Son *Darius*, and the Daughter of this Woman; hoping by that means to find occasion of such familiarity as might work out his desire. But whether it were so, that the chastity of the Mother did still reject him, or the beauty of the Daughter allure him, hee soon after fell in love with his own tonnes wife, being a vicious Prince, and as ill able to govern himself in peace, as to guide his Army in warre. This young Lady having once desired the King to give her the Garment which hee then wore, being wrought by his own Wife, caused the Queen thereby to perceive her husbands conversation with her, which shee imputed not so much to the beauty of her Daughter-in-law, as to the cunning of the Mother, against whom thereupon she conceived extreme hatred. Therefore at a Royall feast, wherein the custome was that the King should grant their request, she craved that the Wife of *Massifes*, her husbands brother, the young Ladies Mother, might be given into her disposition. The barbarous King, who might either have reformed the abuse of such a custome, or have deluded the importunate cruelty of his Wife, by threatening her self with the like, to whatsoever she should inflict upon the innocent Lady, granted the request; and sending for his brother, persuaded him to put away the Wife which he had, and take one of his Daughters in her stead. Hereby it seems, that he understood how villainously that poor Lady should be intreated, whom hee knew to be vertuous, and whom himself had loved. *Massifes* refused to put her away; alleging his own love, her deserving, and their common Children, one of which was married to the Kings Sonne, as reasons important to move him to keep her. But in most wicked manner *Xerxes* reviled him, saying, That hee now should neither keep the Wife which he had, nor have his Daughter whom he had promised unto him. *Massifes* was much grieved with these words, but much more, when he returned home, hee found his Wife most butcherly mangled by the Queen *Amestris*, who had caused her Nose, Lips, Ears, and Tongue to be cut off, and her Breasts in like manner, which were cast unto Dogs. *Massifes* enraged with this villany, took his way with his children, and some Friends, towards *Babiria*, of which Province he was Governour, intending to rebell and avenge himself: But *Xerxes* understanding his purpose, caused an army to be levied, which cut him off by the way, putting him and all his Company to the sword. Such was the Tyrannical condition of the Persian Government; and such are generally the effects of Luxury, when it is joyned with absolute power.

Yet of *Xerxes* it is noted, that hee was a Prince of much vertue. And therefore *Alexander* the Great, finding an image of his over-thrown, and lying upon the ground, said, That hee doubted, whether in regard of his vertue, hee should again erect it, or, for the mischief done by him to *Greece*, should let it lye. But surely whatsoever his

oth



other good qualities were, he was foolish, and was a coward, and consequently mercifless.

Therefore we may firmly believe, that the vertue of *Cyrus* was very great, upon which the foundation of the *Persian* Empire was so surely laid, that all the wickedness and vanities of *Xerxes*, and other worse Princes, could not overthrow it, until it was broken by a vertue almost equall to that which did establish it. In wars against the *Egyptians*, the fortune of *Xerxes* did continue, as at the first it had been, very good; but against the generall estate of *Greece*, neither he, or any of his posterity, did ever make offensive warre, but received many losses in *Asia*, to which the last at *Mycale* served but as an introduction; teaching the *Greeks*, and especially the *Athenians*, that the *Persian* was no better Souldier at his own doors, than in a forraign Country: whereof good triall was made forth-with, and much better proof as soon as the affairs of *Athens* were quietly settled and assured.

From this time forward I will therefore pursue the Historie of *Greece*, taking in the matters of *Persia*, as also the estate of other Countries, collaterally, when the order of time shall present them. True it is, that the *Persian* estate continued in her greatness, many ages following, in such wise that the known parts of the world had no other Kingdom, representing the Majesty of a great Empire.

But this greatness depended onely upon the riches and power that had formerly bin acquired, yielding few actions or none that were worthy of remembrance, excepting some Tragedies of the Court, and examples of that excessive Luxury, where-with both it, and all, or the most of Empires that ever were, have been enervated, made unwieldy, and (as it were) fattened for the hungry swords of poor and hardy Enemies. Hereby it came to passe, that *Xerxes* and his successors were faine to defend their Crowns with money and base policies; very seldom or never (unless it were with great advantage) daring to adventure the triall of plain battell with that little Nation of *Greece*; which would soon have ruined the foundations laid by *Cyrus*, had not private malice and jealousy urged every City to envie the height of her neighbours wals, and thereby diverted the swords of the *Greeks* into their own bowels, which after the departure of *Xerxes* began very well, and might better have continued, to hew out the way of conquest, so on the side of *Asia*.



## CHAP. VII.

*Of things that passed in Greece from the end of the Persian Warre,  
to the beginning of the Peloponnesian.*

### S. I.

*How Athens was rebuilt and fortified.*



FROM that the *Medes* and *Persians* had received their last blow, and were utterly beaten at *Mycale*: *Leutichides*, who then commanded the *Grecian* Army, leaving the pursuit of the warre to the *Athenians*, assisted by the revolted *Ionians*, returned with the *Lacedamonians* and other *Peloponnesians* to *Sparta* and other places, out of which they had been leaved. The *Athenians* in the mean while besieged *Sestos*, a

City on the strait of the *Hellepont*, between which and *Abydos*, *Xerxes* had lately fastned his Bridge of Boats: where the Inhabitants, desperate of succour, did not long dispute the defence thereof, but quitted it to the *Greeks*, who entertained themselves the Winter following on that side the *Hellepont*. In the Spring they drew homeward, and having left their wives and children, since the invasion of *Attica*, and the abandoning of *Athens*, in divers Islands, and at *Troezen*, they now found them out, and returned with them to their own places.

And though the most part of all their houses in *Athens* were burnt and broken down,

and the walls of the City over-turned, yet they resolved first on their common defence, and to fortifie their City, before they cared to cover themselves, yet their wives and children, with any private buildings. Whereof the *Lacedamonians* being advertised, and mistaking the fortifying of *Athens*, both in respect that their own City of *Sparta* was unwall'd, as also because the *Athenians* were grown more powerfull by Sea, than either themselves, or any other State of *Greece*, they dispatched messengers to the *Athenians* to dissuade them; not acknowledging any private dislike or jealousy, but pretending, that if the *Persians* should return to invade *Greece* a third time, the *Athenians* being in no better state to defend themselves than heretofore, the same would serve to receive their enemies, and to be made a Seat for the War, as *Thebes* had lately bin. To this the *Athenians* promised to give them satisfaction by their own Embassadors very speedily. But being resolved to goe on with their works by the advice of *Themistocles*, they held the *Lacedamonians* in hope of the contrary, till they had raised their walls to that height, as they cared not for their dislikes, nor doubted their disturbance; and therefore (to gain time) they dispatched *Themistocles* towards *Lacedamon*, giving him for excuse, that he could not deliver the *Athenians* resolutions, till the arrival of his fellow-Commissioners, who were of purpose retarded. But after a while, the *Lacedamonians* expectation being converted into jealousy (for by the arrivall of divers persons out of *Attica*, they were told for certain, That the walls of *Athens* were speedily grown up beyond expectation) *Themistocles* prayed them not to beleve reports and vain rumors, but that they would be pleased to lend some of their own trusty Citizens to *Athens*, from whose relation they might resolve themselves, and determine accordingly. Which request being granted, and Commissioners sent, *Themistocles* dispatched one of his own, by whom he advised the *Athenians*, first to entertain the *Lacedamonians* with some such discourse as might retain them a few daies, and in conclusion to hold them among them, till himself, & the other *Athenian* Embassadors, then at *Sparta*, had their liberty also to return. Which done, and being also assured by his associates and *Aspidides*, that *Athens* was already defensible on all parts, *Themistocles* demanding audience, made the *Lacedamonians* know, That it was true that the walls of *Athens* were now raised to that height, as the *Athenians* doubted not the defence of their City; praying the *Lacedamonians* to beleve, That whensoever it pleased them to treat with the *Athenians* they would know them for such as right well understood what appertained to a Common-weale and their own safety, without direction & advice from any other: That they had in the war of *Xerxes* abandoned their City, and committed themselves to the wooden Walls of their ships, from the resolution of their own counsels and courage, and not thereto taught or persuaded by others: and finally, in all that perillous war against the *Persians* they found their own judgements and the execution thereof in nothing inferior, or lesse fortunate, than that of any other Nation, State, or Common-weale among the *Greeks*. And therefore concluded, that they determined to be Masters and Judges of their own affairs, and thought it good reason, that either all the Cities confedered within *Greece* should be left open, or else that the Walls of *Athens* should be finished and maintained.

The *Lacedamonians* finding the time unfit for quarrell, dissembled their dislike, both of the fortifying of *Athens*, and of the division; and so suffered the *Athenians* to depart, and received back from them their own Embassadors.

The Walls of *Athens* finished, they also fortified the Port *Pyræus*, by which they might under covert imbarke themselves upon all occasions.

### S. II.

*The beginning of the Athenian greatness, and prosperous war made by that State upon the Persian.*

THE *Athenians* having settled things in good order at home, prepared thirty Gallies for the pursuit of the war against the *Persians*, to which the *Lacedamonians* added other twenty, and with this Fleet, strengthened by the rest of the Cities of *Greece* confederated, they set sail for *Cyprus*, under the conduct of *Paulanias* the *Lacedamonian*; where, after their landing having posselt themselves of many principal places, they imbarked the Army again, and took land in *Thrace*, recovering from

the *Perſians* by force the City *Bizantium*, now *Conſtantinople*: from whence *Paulanias*, behaving himſelf more like a Tyrant than a Captain, eſpecially towards the *Ionians* lately revolted from *Xerxes*, was called back by the Councell of *Lacedæmon*, and not only accuſed of many inſolent behaviours, but of Intelligence with the *Medes*, and Treason againſt his Country. In his ſtead they employed *Doroſ*, who either gave the ſame cauſe of offence, or elſe the *Athenians*, who affected the firſt commandement in that war, praſtided the Souldiers to complain; though indeed the wiſe and virtuous behaviour of *Ariſtides*, General of the *Athenian* forces, a man of rare & incomparable ſincerity, had been able to make a good Commander ſeem ill in compariſon of himſelf; & therefore was much more available, in rendering thoſe deteſted, whoſe vices afforded little matter of excuſe. Howſoever it were, the *Lacedæmonians* being no leſſe wearied of the war, than the *Athenians* were eager to purſue it, the one obtained their eaſe, and the other the execution and honour which they deſired: for all the *Greeks* (thoſe of *Peloponneſus* excepted) willingly ſubjected themſelves to the commandement of the *Athenians*, which was both the beginning of their greatneſſe in that preſent age, and of their ruin in the next ſucceeding. For the charge of the war being now committed unto them, they began to rate the confederated Cities; they appointed Receivers and Treasuſers, and began to levie money according to their diſcretion, for the maintenance of the general defence of *Greece*, & for the recovering of thoſe places on *Europe* ſide, in *Aſia* the leſſe, and the Iſlands, from the *Perſians*. This tribute (the firſt that was ever payed by the *Greeks*) amounted to four hundred and threeſcore Talents; which was raiſed eaſily by the honeſt care of that juſt man *Ariſtides*, to whoſe diſcretion all the confederates referred themſelves, and no one man found occaſion to complain of him. But as the virtue of *Ariſtides*, & other worthy Citizens, brought unto the *Athenians* great commodity, ſo the deſire which they conceived of encreaſing their commodity, corrupted their virtue, and robbing them of the generall love, which had made them powerfull, abandoned their City to the defence of her treaſure, which with her in the next age periſhed. For it was not long ere theſe four hundred and threeſcore Talents were raiſed to fix hundred, nor long after that, ere their covetous tyranny had covered their followers into ſlaves, and extorted from them yearly thirteen hundred Talents. The Iſle of *Delos* was at 30 the firſt appointed for the Treasuſer-houſe wherein theſe ſums were laid up, and where, at the generall Aſſembly, the Captains of thoſe forces, ſent by the confederates, were for form ſake called to conſultation. But the *Athenians*, who were ſtronger by ſea than all *Greece* beſides, had lockt up the common treaſure in an Iſland, under their own proteſtion, from whence they might tranſport it at their pleaſure, as afterward they did.

The generall Commander in this War was *Cimon*, the ſon of *Miltiades*, who firſt took *Eion*, upon the River *Strimon*; then the Iſle of *Sciros*, inhabited by the *Dolopes*: they maſtered the *Carſtii*, and brought into ſervitude the *Naxii*, contrary to the form of the confederacy: So did the other the inhabitants of *Greece*, if at any time they failed of their contribution, or diſobeyed their commandements; taking upon them & uſurping a kind of ſovereign authority over the reſt: which they exerciſed the more aſſuredly, 40 becauſe they were now become Lords of the Sea, and could not be reſiſted. For many of the confederated Cities and Nations, weary of the war in their own perſons, and given up altogether to their eaſe, made choice rather to pay their parts in money, than either in men of war, or in ſhips; leaving the proviſion of both to the *Athenians*. Hereby the one grew weak in all their Sea-defences, and in the exerciſe of the Wars; the other greatly ſtrengthened their Navie and their experiences, being always armed and employed in honorable Services, at the coſt of thoſe, who having liſted them into their Saddles, were now enforced to become their footmen. Yet was the Tribute-money, levied upon theſe their confederates, employed ſo well by the *Athenians* at the firſt (as ill proceedings are often founded upon good beginnings) that no great cauſe of repining was given. For they rigged out a great Fleet of Gallies, very well manned, wherewith *Cimon* the Admirall ſcouring the *Aſiatick* Seas, took in the City of *Phæſelis*; which having formerly pretended neutrality, and reſuſed to relieve, or any way aſſiſt the *Greeks*, were enforced to pay ten Talents for a fine, and ſo to become followers of the *Athenians*, paying yearly contribution.

From thence he ſet ſail for the River *Eurymedon* in *Pamphylia*, where the *Perſian* Fleet

Fleet rode, being of fix hundred ſayl, or (according to the moſt ſparing report) three hundred and fifty, and having a great Land-Army, encamped upon the ſhoar; all which forces having been provided for advancing the Kings affairs in *Greece*, where utterly defeated in one day, and two hundred ſhips taken by the *Athenians*, the reſt being broken to pieces, or ſunk, ere ever they had ſwom in the *Greekiſh* Seas. *Cimon* having in one day obtained two great victories, the one by Sea, and the other by Land, was very ſoon preſented with a third. For fourſcore ſayl of *Phenicians* (who were the beſt of all Sea-men, under the *Perſian* command) thinking to have joyned themſelves with the Fleet before deſtroyed, arrived upon the ſame Coaſt, ignorant of what had paſſed, and 10 fearing nothing leſſe than what enſued. Upon the firſt notice of their approach, *Cimon* weighed anchor, and meeting them at an head-land, called *Hydra*, did ſo amaze them, that they onely ſought to run themſelves on ground; by which mean preſerving few of their men, they loſt all their ſhips. Theſe loſſes did ſo break the courage of the *Perſian*, that omitting all hope of prevailing upon *Greece*, he condeſcended to whatſoever Articles it pleaſed the *Athenians* to propound, granting liberty unto all the *Greeks* inhabiting *Aſia*; and further covenanting, That none of his ſhips of War ſhould ſayl to the Weſtward of the Iſles, called *Cyanea* and *Chelidonia*.

This was the moſt honourable peace that ever the *Greeks* made; neither did they in effect, after this time, make any war that redounded to the profit or glory of the whole 10 Nation, till ſuch time as under *Alexander*, they overthrew the Empire of *Perſia*; in which war, few, or perhaps none of them, had any place of great command, but ſerved altogether under the *Macedonians*.

## §. III.

The death of *Xerxes* by the treaſon of *Artabanus*.

**B**Eſides theſe loſſes, which could not eaſily have been repaired, the troubles of the Empire were at this time ſuch, as gave juſt cauſe to the *Perſian* of ſeeking peace upon any termes not altogether intollerable. For *Artabanus*, the Uncle of *Xerxes*, 30 perceiving, that the King his Maſter did eaſily take ſmall occaſions to ſhed the blood of ſuch, as in kindred or place were neer unto him, began to repoſe leiſe hope of a ſatetie in remaining faithfull, than of obtaining the Sovereignie, by deſtroying a Prince that was ſo hated for his cruelty, and deſpised for his cowardice and miſfortunes. Having conceived this Treason, he found means to execute it by *Mithriates* an Eunuch, in ſuch cloie manner, that (as if he himſelf had been innocent) he accuſed *Darius* the ſon of *Xerxes*, and cauſed him to ſuffer death as a Parricide. Whether it be true, that by this great wickedneſſe hee got the Kingdome, and held it ſeven moneths; or whether intending the like evil to *Artaxerxes* the ſon of *Xerxes*, he was by him prevented and ſurprized, were hard to affirm any certainty. But all Writers agree upon this, That taken 40 hee was, and with his whole family put to death by extreme torments, according to the ſentence whereof the truth is more ancient than the Verſe;

*Raro antecedentem ſceleſtum*

*Deſeruit pede panna claudo.*

Seldome the villain, though much haſte he make,  
Lame-footed Vengeance fails to over take.

## §. IV.

The baniſhment of *Themistoſcles*: his flight to *Artaxerxes* newly reigning in *Perſia*; and his death.

**A***Rtaxerxes* being eſtabliſhed in his Kingdome, and having ſo compounded with the *Athenians*, as the preſent neceſſity of his affairs required, began to conceive new hopes of better fortune againſt the *Greeks*, than hee or his predeceſſors had ever hitherto found. For the people of *Athens*, when the *Perſians* were chaſed out of *Greece*, did ſo highly value their own merits in that ſervice, that they not onely thought it fit for themſelves to become the Commanders over many Towns and Iſlands of the *Greeks*, but even within their own walls, they would admit none other forme of Government than merely *Democraticall*. Herein they were ſo inſolent, that no integrity 50

nor good desert was able to preserve the estate of any such as had born great office, longer than by flattering the rascall multitude, he was contented to frame all his words and deeds to their good liking.

This their intolerable demeanour much offended *Themistocles*; who, though in former times he had layed the foundations of his greatness upon popularity, yet now preferring upon his good services done to the State, he thought that with great reason they might grant him the liberty to check their inordinate proceedings. But contrariwise, they were so highly offended with his often rehearsing the benefits which they had received from him, that they laid upon him the punishment of *Ostracisme*, whereby hee was banished for ten years, as a man over-burthensome to the Common-wealth.

Before the time of his return was half expired, a new accusation was brought against him by the *Lacedemonians*, who charged him of consulting with *Paulanias*, about betraying the whole Countrey of *Greece* unto *Xerxes*. Hereupon *Themistocles*, finding no place of security against the malice of two such mighty cities, was driven, after many troublesome flights, and dangerous removings, to adventure himself into *Persia*, where he found *Artaxerxes* newly seised, & was by him very honourably entertained. But the great hope which *Artaxerxes* had conceived of advancing his affairs by the counsell and assistance of *Themistocles*, proved altogether fruitlesse. For when the *Athenians*, in favour of *Inarus* the *Libyan*, (who infested *Egypt*, causing it to rebell against the *Persian*) had sent a Fleet to Sea, landing an Army in *Egypt*, and scouring those Eastern Seas, to the great hindrance of *Artaxerxes*, and (for ought that I can understand) to the manifest breach of that peace, which to their great honour they had concluded with *Xerxes*; then did the King send his Letters to *Themistocles*, requiring him to make good the hopes which he had given, of assuring the *Persian* estate against the *Greeks*.

But whether *Themistocles* perceived much unlikeliness of good success, in leading a great army of dastardly *Persians* against the warlike people of *Greece*; or else (as in favour of his vertue it is more commonly reported) the love of his Country would not permit him to seek honour by the ruine of it, sure it is, that being appointed by *Artaxerxes* to undertake the conduct of great forces against the *Athenians*, he decided the great conflict between thankfulness to his well-deserving Prince, and naturall affection to his own ill-deserving people, by finishing his life with a cup of poyson.

## s. V.

*How the Athenians, breaking the peace, which to their great honour they had made with the Persian, were shamefully beaten in Egypt.*

Then was *Artaxerxes* driven to use the service of his own Captains in the *Egyptian* warre, wherein it appeared well, That a just cause is a good defence against a strong enemy. An *Athenian* Fleet of two hundred faile strong was sent forth under *Cimon*, to take in the Isle of *Cyprus*: which conquest seemed easie both to make and to maintain, the *Persian* being utterly broken at Sea, and thereby unable to relieve the Island. Now although it were so, that a peace had been concluded, which was likely to have been kept sincerely by the *Persian*, who had made so good proof of the *Gracian* valour, that he was nothing desirous to build any ships of Warre (without which the *Greeks* could receive no harm from him) whereof if any one should be found sayling towards *Greece*, the peace was immediately broken, and if not, his whole estate; yet all the Sea-coast (no small part of his Dominions) exposed to the waste of an enemy too far over-marching him. Yet whether the *Athenians* were in doubt, lest the league which in his own worse fortunes he had made with them, he would break in theirs; and therefore fought to get such assurance into their hands, as might utterly disable him from attempting ought against them; or whether the increase of their revenues and power, by adding that rich and great Island to their Empire, caused them to measure honour by profit; they thought it the wisest way, to take whilst they might, whatsoever they were able to get and hold, and he unable to defend.

The Isle of *Cyprus* lying in the bottome of the streights between *Cilicia*, *Syria* and *Egypt*, is very fitly seated for any Prince of State, that being mighty at Sea, doth either seek to enrich himself by trade with those Countreys, or to infest one or more of them

them when they are his enemies. And this being the purpose of the *Athenians*, their Ambition which had already devoured, in conceit, this Island, was on the sudden well-nigh choaked with a greater morfell, to snatch at which, they let *Cyprus* alone, which they might easily have swallowed and digested. For *Inarus* King of the *Libyans*, confining *Egypt*, having found how greatly the Countrey was exhausted by the late Warres, and how weakly defended by very slender *Persian* Garrisons, conceived rightly, that if such small forces as the *Satrapa* or *Viceroy* could make on the sudden of his own Guards, or levie out of the ordinary Garrisons, were by him defeated, the naturalls of the Countrey not long since oppressed by *Cambyses*, and after a revolt very lately subdued by *Xerxes*, would soon break faith with him, who had no other title to that Kingdom than a good sword. Further, he perswaded himself that the people, unable to defend themselves against the *Persian* without his assistance, would easily be drawn to accept him, the author of their deliverance, for King. Neither did this hope deceive him. For having taken and cruelly slain *Achemenes* the *Viceroy*, divers Cities forthwith declared themselves for him, and proclaiming him King, shewed the most of their endeavour for prosecution of the Warre. But hee considering his own weaknesse, and that the means of the *Egyptians* his adherents were not answerable to their desires, perceived well, that to resist the power of *Artaxerxes*, farre greater forces than his and theirs were to be procured, at what price soever hee obtained them. Therefore hearing of the great *Athenian* fleet, and knowing well the vertue of the Souldiers therein embarked, he invited the Commanders to share with him the Kingdom of *Egypt*, as a farre greater reward of their adventure, than such an addition as that of *Cyprus* could be to their estate. Whether he or they (if things had wholly sorted according to their expectation) would have been contented with an equall share, and not have fallen out in the partition, were perhaps a divination unnecessary. He was possessed of the peoples love, they were of most power. But the issue of those affairs was such as left them nothing to communicate but misfortunes, which they shared somewhat equally.

Yet had the beginnings of their enterprize very good and hopefull success: For they entered the Land as farre as to *Memphis*, the principall Citie; and of the Citie it self they took two parts: to the third part, which was called the White wall, they laid such hard siege, that neither those forces of the *Persians*, which then were in *Egypt*, were strong enough to remove them; neither could *Artaxerxes* well advise what means to use for the recovery of that which was lost, or for the preservation of the remainder. The best of his hope was by setting the *Lacedemonians* upon *Athens*, to enforce the *Athenians* to look homewards to their own defence. This was the first time that the *Persian* sought to procure the assistance of the *Greeks* one against the other, by stirring them up with gold, to the entertainment of private quarrels, for the good of their common enemy. To this purpose he sent *Megabazus* to *Sparta* with much Treasure; who after great expence, finding that the *Lacedemonians* were nothing forward in employing their whole force against the *Athenians*, whom in many conflicts of great importance they had found to be their matches, notwithstanding the absence of their Army in *Egypt*; he thought it his wisest way to employ the rest of his money and means to their relief, who had now the space of six years defended his masters right in *Egypt*. Therefore he hastily dispatched another of his name, the son of *Zopyrus*, who arriving in *Egypt*, was first encountered by the revolted people; over whom hee obtained victory, which made him master of the Countrey, whilst the *Athenians* lay busied about *Memphis* the great Citie.

It cannot be doubted, that long abode in a strange ayre, and want of supply, had much so enfeebled the *Athenians*: sure it is, that when *Megabazus*, having reduced the Countrey to obedience, attempted the Citie it self, whether his former success had amended the courage of the *Persians*, or want of necessities made the *Athenians* inferior to themselves, he chased them out of *Memphis*, and pursued them so neer, as they were forced to fortifie themselves in the Isle of *Prosopites*, where *Megabazus*, after eighteen moneths siege, turning away one part of the River by divers Trenches, assaulted the *Athenians* without impediment of waters, took their Gallies, and put all to the sword, save a few that saved themselves by flight into *Lybia*; the same entertainment had fiftie other Gallies which they sent to the succour of the first two hundred

*Prosopites* an Island between the rivers of *Taly* and *Phrymonides*, two of the out-lets of *Nile* towards *Alexandria*.

*Medenasis an Island in the mouth of Nilus, between the outlet called Babilicus, and Diocles: But the branch of Nilus, called Mendefius runneth into the sea by the City Panopolis.*

hundred. For those *Athenians* having heard nothing that their Fleet and Armie was consumed, entred by the branch of *Nilus*, called *Mendefius*, and fell unawares among the *Phenician Gallies*, and the *Persian Armie*; so as the *Persians* recovered all *Egypt*, but that part held by *Amyrteus*, and *Inarus* the King of *Lybia*, bearing by them taken and hanged. This was the end of the *Athenians* six years Warre in *Egypt*, and the reward of their vanity and indiscretion to undertake many enterprises at once.

§. V.

*of other Warres made by the Athenians for the most part with good successe, about the same time.*

**N**otwithstanding these overthrowes in *Egypt*, yet the *Athenians* in their home-warres waded through many difficulties, and held the reputation of their forces against the *Lacedemonians*, *Corinthians*, and others, rather to their advantage than otherwise. For as they were beaten neer unto *Halia* by the *Corinthians* and *Epidaurians*, so they obtained two great Victories soon after; the one over the *Peloponnesians*, neer unto *Cecryphalia*; the other over the *Aginets*, neer unto *Agina*; where they sunk and carried away threecore and ten Gallies of their enemies. Furthermore, they landed their forces on the sudden, and besieged *Agina*, from whence they could not be moved, notwithstanding that the *Corinthians*, to divert them, invaded *Megara*; where, after a great fight, with equall losse, the *Corinthians*, when they returned again to set up their *Trophie*, as Victors in the former battell, were utterly broken and slaughtered by the *Athenian* Garrisons and *Megarians*, to their great losse and dishonour.

Again, as the *Athenians* were discomfited neer to *Tangra*, by the *Lacedemonians*, who returned from the succour of the *Dorians* against the *Phocians* (at which time the *Thessalian* horse-men turned from their Allies the *Athenians*, and fought against them) so about threecore daies after, the *Athenians* entred *Baotia* under the conduct of *Myro* 30 *wides*, where beating that Nation, they won *Phocis* on the gulf of *Oetum*, and evened the walls of *Tanagra* to the ground. Finally, they enforced *Agina* to render upon most base conditions; as to beat down the walls of their City, and to give them hostages for Tribute; the siege whereof they had continued, notwithstanding all their other brabbles and attempts elsewhere. Besides these victories, they sackt and spoiled many places upon the Sea-coast of *Peloponnesus*, belonging to the *Lacedemonians*, wan upon the *Corinthians*, and overthrow the *Sicyonians* that came to their succour. These were the undertakings of the *Athenians*, and their Allies, during the time of those six years that a part of their forces made war in *Egypt*. In the end whereof they attempted *Thessalie*, perswaded thereunto by *Orestes*, but were resisted by the king *Pharsalus*, who had chased *Orestes* out 40 of his Dominions. They also landed in *Sicyonia*, and had victory over those that resisted, after which they made truce with the *Peloponnesians* for five years, and sent *Cimon* into *Cyprus* with two hundred ships; but they were again allured by *Amyrteus* one of the race of their former Kings, who held the Marsh and Wooddy parts of *Egypt* from the *Persians*, to whom they lent sixty of their ships. The rest of their Armie failing in their enterprise at *Cyprus*, and their fortunate and victorious Leader *Cimon* dying there, as they coasted the Iland, encountered a fleet of the *Phenicians* and *Cilicians*, over both which Nations they returned victorious into *Greece*: as also those returned safe which were sent into *Egypt*.

§. VI.

*of Artaxerxes Longimanus, that he was Ahasuerus the husband of Queen Hester.*

**T**hese *Egyptian* troubles being ended, the reign of *Artaxerxes* continued peaceable; whereof the length is by some restrained unto twenty years, but the more and better Authors give him forty, some allow unto him four and forty. He

He was a Prince of much humanity, and noted for many examples of gentleness: His favour was exceeding great to the *Jews*; as appeareth by the Histories of *Esdraus* and *Nehemias*, which fell in his time.

To prove that this was the King who gave countenance and ayd to that great work of building the Temple, it were a needlesse travel; considering that all the late Divines have taken very much pains to shew that those two Prophets were licensed by him, and succoured in that building, in such sort as appears in their writings.

This was likewise that King *Ahasuerus* who married *Hester*. Whereof if it be needfull to give proof, it may suffice, That *Ahasuerus* lived in *Susa*, reigning from *India* to *Aethiopia*, and therefore must have been a *Persian*. That he lived in peace, as appears by 10 the circumstances of the Historie, and used the counsell of the seven Princes, the authority of which Princes began under *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*; wherefore he could be neither *Cyrus* nor *Cambyses*.

The continuall Wars which exercised King *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspes*, together with the certainty of his marriages with sundry wives, from none of whom he was divorced, but left his first wife *Atossa*, the daughter of *Cyrus*, alive in great honour, the being moruto to *Xerxes* the succeeding King, do manifestly prove that *Hester* was not his. Whereunto is added by *Philo* the *Jew*, That at the perishment of *Marduchus*, *Fojachim* the high Priest the son of *Jesua*, caused the feast of *Purim* to be instituted in memory of that deliverance. Now the time of *Fojachim* was in the reign of 20 *Artaxerxes*, at the coming of *Esdraus* and *Nehemias*: *Jesua* his father dying about the end of *Darius*.

The same continuance of wars, with other his furious and tragically loves wherewith *Xerxes* did consume such little time as he had free from war, are enough to prove, that the story of *Hester* pertained not unto the time of *Xerxes*, who lived but one and twenty years, whereas the two and thirtieth of *Ahasuerus* or *Artaxastha* is expressed by *Nehemias*. Again, it is well known that *Xerxes* in the seventh year of his reign (wherein this marriage must have bin celebrated) came not neer to *Susa*. Of the Princes that succeeded *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, to prove that none of them could be *Ahasuerus*, it is enough to say, that *Marduchus* having been carried from *Hierusalem* captive, with *Felchonia*, by *Nabuchadnezzar*, was unlikely to have lived untill their times.

30 But of this *Artaxerxes* it is true, that he lived in *Susa*, reigned from *India* to *Aethiopia*, lived in peace, was contemporary with *Fojachim* the high Priest, and further he had happily by his Lieutenants reelaymed the rebellious *Egyptians* in that seventh year of his reign; which good fortune might well give occasion to such a Royall Feast, as is described in the beginning of *Hester*. This is the sum of the arguments, brought to prove the age of *Hesters* storie by the learned and diligent *Krentzhemius*, who adds the authorities of *Josephus*, affirming the same, and of *Philo* giving to *Marduchus* eighteen years more than *Isaac* the Patriarch lived, namely, one hundred four-score and eighteen years in all, which expire in the five and thirtieth year of this 40 *Artaxerxes*, if we suppose him to have been carried away captive, being a Boy of ten years old.

§. VIII.

*Of the troubles in Greece, foregoing the Peloponnesian War.*

**B**ut it is fit that we now return to the affairs of the *Greeks*, who from this time forward, more vehemently prosecuting their civil wars, suffered the *Persians* for many ages to rest in peace: this *Egyptian* expedition being come to nought. Soon after this, the *Lacedemonians* undertook the war called *Sacred*, recovered the Temple and Ile of *Delphos*, and delivered both to the inhabitants; but the *Athenians* regained the same, and gave it in charge to the *Phocians*. In the mean while the banished *Baotians* re-entred their own Land, and mastered two of their own Towns posselt by the *Athenians*, which they soon recovered again from them; but in their return towards *Athens*, the *Baotians*, *Eubwans*, and *Locrians*, (Nations opprest by the *Athenians*) set upon them with such resolution, as the *Athenians* were in that fight all slain or 000 2 taken.

taken, whereby the *Bœotians* recovered their former liberty, restoring to the *Athenians* their prisoners. The Ilanders of *Eubœa* took such courage upon this, that they revolted wholly from the *Athenians*, whom when *Pericles* intended to reconquer, he was advertised that the *Megarians* (who first left the *Lacedæmonians*, and submitted themselves to *Athens*) being now weary of their yoke, had slain the *Athenians* Garrisons, and joyned themselves with the *Corinthians*, *Sicyonians*, and *Epidaurians*. These news hastened *Pericles* homeward with all possible speed; but ere he could recover *Attica*, the *Peloponnesians*, led by *Plisfoanax* the son of *Panjanias*, had invaded it, pillaged and burnt many parts thereof, after whose return *Pericles* went on with his first intent, and recovered *Eubœa*. Finally, the *Athenians* began to treat of peace with the *Peloponnesians*, and yielded to deliver up all the places which they held in the Country of *Peloponnesus*:<sup>10</sup> and this truce was made for thirty years.

After six of these years were expired, the *Athenians* (favouring the *Mylestians* against the *Samians*) invaded *Samos* by *Pericles*, and after many repulses, and some great losses, both by Sea and Land, the Citizens were forc'd to yeeld themselves upon most lamentable conditions; Namely, to deliver up all their ships, to break down their own walls, to pay the charge of the war, and to restore whatsoever had been taken by themselves, or by their practice from the *Athenians*. In the neck of which followed that long and cruell *Peloponnesian War*, whereof I have gathered this brief following: the same contention taking beginning fiftie years after the flight of *Xerxes* out of *Greece*. But because there<sup>20</sup> was no Citie thereof, which either in the beginning of this war, or in the continuance of it, was not drawn into the quarrell; I hold it convenient now at the first to shew briefly the estate of the Country at that time, and especially the condition of those two great Cities, *Athens* and *Sparta*, upon which all the rest had most dependance.



## CHAP. VIII.

## Of the Peloponnesian War.

30

## S. I.

Upon what terms the two principall Cities of Greece, Athens and Sparta, stood at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War.



*Greece* was never united under the government of any one Prince or Estate, untill *Philip* of *Macedon*, and after him *Alexander*, brought them rather to a Union and League against the *Persians*, whereof they were Captains, than into any absolute subjection. For every Estate held their own, and were governed by Laws, far different, and by their own Magistrates, notwithstanding the power of the *Macedonian*, to whom they did yeeld obedience no otherwise than as to such, who were (perforce) their leaders in the *Persian war* (deemed the Generall quarrel of *Greece*) and took the profit and honour of the victory, to their own use and increase of greatness. But the Kings which afterward reigned in *Macedonia*,

did so far enlarge their authority, that all *Greece* was by them brought under such obedience, as differed little from servitude; very few excepted, who could hardly, sometimes with arms, and sometimes with gifts, preserve their liberty, of whom the *Lacedæmonians* and *Athenians* were chief: which two people deserved best the plague of tyranny, having first given occasion thereunto by their great ambition, which wearied and weakened all the Country by perpetuall War. For untill these two Cities of *Athens* and *Sparta* distracted all *Greece*, drawing every State into the quarrell, on the one or other side, and so gave beginning to the *Peloponnesian War* (the effects whereof in true estimation ceased not, before the time that *Philip* had over-mastered all, forasmuch as every conclusion

conclusion of one war afforde I henceforth matter of some new distraction of the whole Country; the wars, commenced between one Citie of *Greece* and another, were neither great, nor of long continuance. All controversies were soon decided, either by the authority of the *Amphictiones*, who were the generall Councell of *Greece*, or by the power of the *Lacedæmonians*, whose aid was commonly held as good as the assurance of victory.

These *Lacedæmonians* had lived about four hundred years under one forme of Government, when the *Peloponnesian War* began. Their education was only to practise feats of Arms; wherein they so excelled, that a very few of them were thought equal to very great numbers of any other people. They were poor, and cared not much for wealth; every one had an equall portion of the common field, which sufficed to maintain him in such manner as they used. For bravery they had none, and curious building or apparell they regarded not. Their diet was simple, their feasts and ordinary meals being in common Halls, where all fared alike. They used money of yron, whereof they could not be covetous nor great hoarders. Briefly, they lived *Utopian*-like, save that they used no other occupation than War, placing all their felicity in the glory of their valour. Hereby it came to passe that in all enterprises, whereof they were partakers, the leading and high command was granted to them, and all *Greece* followed their conduct. But the *Athenians* were in all points contrary to this. For they sought wealth, and measured the honours of their victories by the profit, they used mercenary Souldiers in their wars, and exacted<sup>10</sup> great tribute of their Subjects, which were for the most part Ilanders, compelled to obey them, because the *Athenian* fleet was great.

As in form of policy, and in course of life, so in conditions naturall, the difference between these two people was very much. The *Athenians* were eager and violent; sudden in their conclusions, and as hasty in the execution. The *Lacedæmonians* very slow in their deliberations, full of gravity, but very resolute, and such as would in cold blood perform what the *Athenians* did usually in flagrant. Whereby it came to passe, that the *Lacedæmonians* had all the Estates of *Greece* depending upon them, as on men firm and assured, that sought honour and not riches; whereas the *Athenians* were followed by such as obeyed them perforce, being held in freight subjection. But the Signory of the *Athenians*<sup>30</sup> was nothing large, untill such time as the *Persian Xerxes* had invaded *Greece*, pretending only a quarrell to *Athens*: For then the Citizens perceiving well, that the Town of *Athens* could not be defended against his great Army of seventeen hundred thousand men, bestowed all their wealth upon a Navie, and (assisted by the other *Grecians*) overthrew the fleet of *Xerxes*, whose Land-forces were soon after discomfited by them, and the *Greeks*, who all served under conduct of the *Spartans*. After these victories, the *Athenians* being now very mighty in fleet, reduced all the Ilands of the *Greekish Seas* under their obedience; imposing upon them a hard tribute, for maintenance (as they pretended) of War against the *Persian*; though indeed they employed their forces chiefly, to the conquest of such Ilands and haven-Towns of their Country-men, as stood out against<sup>40</sup> them. All which was easily suffered by the *Lacedæmonians*, who were In-landers, and men that delighted not in expeditions to be made far from home. But afterwards perceiving the power of the *Athenians* to grow great, they held them in much jealousy, and were very apt to quarrell with them; but much more willing to breed contention between them and other Estates. Wherefore at such time as the *Thebans* would have oppressed the *Plataans*, when they of *Plataa* repaired to *Sparta* for succour, they found there no other aid, than this advice, That they should seek help at *Athens*. Hereby it was thought, that the *Athenians* should be intangled in a long and tedious War with their neighbours of *Thebes*. But it proved otherwise; for their force was now so great, that all such occasions did only serve to increase their honour and puissance.

50

## S. II.

## How Sparta and Athens entred into Warre.

NEvertheless many Estates of *Greece* were very ill-affected to *Athens*, because that Citie grew very insolent upon sudden prosperitie, and maintaining the weaker Towns against the stronger, incroached apace upon their Neighbours, taking<sup>10</sup>

their dependants from them. Especially the *Corinthians* were much enraged, because the people of the Iland *Corcyra*, their Colonie which had rebelled against them, and given them a great overthrow by Sea, was by the *Athenians* (who desired to increase their fleet by adjoining that of *Corcyra* unto it) taken into protection, and the *Corinthians* thereby impeached of that revenge which else they would have taken. Now howsoever it were so that these dealings of the *Athenians* were not directly against the conditions of peace agreed upon among the *Greeks*, yet were the complaints made at *Sparta* so vehement, that (though with much ado) they concluded to redresse by war the injuries done to their Allies.

First therefore, seeking religious pretences, they required the *Athenians* to expiate to certain offences committed against the gods; whereto having for answer, That they themselves should expiate other the like offences, committed in *Sparta*, they began to deal plainly, and required that the people of some Towns, oppressed by the State of *Athens*, should be set at liberty; and that a decree made against those of *Megara*, whereby they were forbidden to enter any Port of the *Athenians*, should be reversed. This last point they so earnestly pressed, that if they might obtain it, they promised to abstain from their purpose of making War.

This they desired, not as a matter of any great importance (for it was a trifle) but only that by seeming to have obtained somewhat, they might preserve their reputation without entering into a war, which threatened them with greater difficulties apparent, than they so were very willing to undergoe.

But the *Athenians* would yield to nothing; for it was their whole desire that all *Greece* should take notice how farre they were from fear of any other Citie. Hereupon they prepared on both sides very strongly, all that was needfull to the War, wherein the *Lacedaemonians* were Superiour, both in number and quality, being assisted by most of the Cities in *Greece*, and having the generall favour, as men that pretended to set at liberty such as were oppressed: but the *Athenians* did as far exceed them in all provisions of money, shipping, engines, and absolute power of command among their Subjects; which they held, and afterward found of greater use in such need, than the willing readinesse of friends, who soon grow weary, and are not easily assembled.

## S. III.

## The beginning of the Peloponnesian Warre.

THE first and second years expedition was very grievous to the Citie of *Athens*. For the Fields were wasted, the Trees cut down, the Countrey people driven to flye, with Wives, Children, and Cattell, into the Town; whereby a most furious pestilence grew in the City, such as before they had never felt, nor heard of. Hereunto was added the revolt of the *Mytilenians*, in the Isle of *Lesbos*, and the siege of *Plataea* their confederated City, which they durst not adventure to raise; besides some 40 small overthrows received. The *Lacedaemonians* assembling as great forces as they could raise out of *Peloponnesus*, did in the beginning of Summer enter the Countrey of *Attica*, and therein abide, untill victuals began to fail, wasting and destroying all things round about. The Governours of the *Athenians* would not suffer the people to issue into the field against them; for they knew the valour of their enemies: but used to send a fleet into *Peloponnesus*, which wasted as fast all the Sea-coast of their enemies, whilist they were making war in *Attica*. So the *Peloponnesians* being the stronger by Land, wane the Town of *Plataea*, which wanted rescue; the *Athenians* likewise being more mighty by Sea, did subdue *Mytilene* which had rebelled, but could not be succoured from *Sparta*. By these proceedings in that Warre, the *Lacedaemonians* began to perceive how unfit they were to deal with such enemies. For after that *Attica* was thoroughly wasted, it lay not greatly in their power to doe any offence equal to such harm as they themselves might, and did receive. The Confederates began to set forward very slowly in their expeditions into *Attica*, perceiving well that *Athens* was plentifully relieved with all necessities, which came by the Sea from the Ilands that were subject unto that Estate; and therefore these invaders took but small pleasure in beholding the Walls of that mighty City, or in wasting a forsaken field, which was to them a pattern of the calamities with which their own Territorie was the whilest afflicted. Wherefore they began

began to set their care to build a strong Navie, wherein they had little good success, being easily vanquished by the *Athenians*, who both had more and better ships, and were fockfull in Sea-fights, that a few Vessels of theirs durst undertake a great number of the *Peloponnesians*.

## S. IIII.

## Of the great losse which the Spartans received at Pylus.

AMONG other losses which the *Spartans* had felt by Sea, they received at *Pylus* a very sore blow, that compelled them to sue for peace. A fleet of *Athenian* ships bound for *Corcyra*, waiting in that passage, as their manner was, the coast of *Laconia*, and all the half-Ile of *Peloponnesus*, was by contrary windes detained at *Pylus*, which is a ragged Promontory, joyning to the Main, by a strange neck of Land. Before it there lies a small barren Iland of lesse than two miles compasse, and within that a creek, which is a good harbour for ships, the force of weather being born off by the head-Land and Isle. This Promontorie the *Athenians* fortified as well as in haste they might; and what was wanting in their artificial fortification, was supplied by the naturall strength and site of the place. By holding this piece of ground, and haven, they in reason expected many advantages against their enemies. For the Countrey adjoining was inhabited by the *Messenians*, who in ancient times had held very strong and cruell warre with *Sparta*; and (though quite subdued) they were held in streight subjection; yet was not the old hatred so extinguished, that by the near neighbourhood and assistance of the *Athenians*, it might not be revived. Furthermore it was thought, that many ill-willers to the *Lacedaemonians*, and as many of their bond-slaves as could escape from them, would repair to *Pylus*, and from thence make daily incursions into *Laconia*, which was not far off. Or if other hopes failed, yet would the benefit of this haven, lying almost in the mid-way between them and *Corcyra*, make them able to surround all *Peloponnesus*, and waste it at their pleasure. The newes of these doings at *Pylus* drew the *Peloponnesians* thither in all haste out of *Attica*, which they had entered a few daies before with their whole Army: but now they brought not only their Land-forces, but all their Navie to recover this piece, which how bad a neighbour it might prove in time, they well fore-saw; little fearing the grievous losse at hand, which they there in few daies received. For when they in vain made a generall assault on all sides, both by Sea and Land, finding that small Garrison which the *Athenians* had left, very resolute in the defence, they occupied the haven, placing four hundred and twenty choyce men, all of them Citizens of *Sparta*, in the Iland before mentioned, at each end whereof is a channell that leads into the Port; but so narrow, that onely two ships in front could enter between the Isle and *Pylus*; likewise but seven or eight ships could enter at once by the further channell, between the Iland and the Main. Having thus taken order to shut up this new Town by Sea, they sent part of their fleet to fetch wood, and other stufte, wherewith to fortifie round about, and block up the piece on all sides. But in the mean season the *Athenian* fleet hearing of their danger that were left at *Pylus*, returned thither, and with great courage entering the haven, did break and sink many of their enemies vessels; took five, and so enforced the residue to run themselves a-ground.

Now was the Town secure, and the *Spartans* abiding in the Iland as good as lost. Wherefore the Magistrates were sent from *Sparta* to the camp (as was their custome in great dangers) to advise what were best for the publique safety, who when they did perceive that there was no other way to rescue their Citizens out of the Isle, than by composition with their enemies, they agreed to entreat with the *Athenians* about peace, taking truce in the mean while with the Captains at *Pylus*. The conditions of the truce were, That the *Lacedaemonians* should deliver up all the ships which were in the coast, and that they should attempt nothing against the town, nor the *Athenians* against the camp: That a certain quantie of Bread, Wine, and Flesh, should be daily carried into the Isle, but that no ships should passe into the Iland secretly: That the *Athenians* should carry the *Lacedaemonian* Embassadors to *Athens*, there to treat of peace, and should bring them back, at whose return the truce should end, which if in the mean time it were broken in any one point, should be held utterly voyd in all; That when the truce was expired, the

*Athenians*



*Athenians* should restore the *Peloponnesian* ships, in as good case as they received them. The *Embassadors* coming to *Athens*, were of opinion, that as they themselves had begun the warre, so might they end it when they pleased. Wherefore they told the *Athenians* how great an honour it was that the *Lacedæmonians* did sue to them for peace, advising them to make an end of War, whilst with such reputation they might. But they found all contrary to their expectation: For in stead of concluding upon even termes, or desiring of meet recompence for losse sustained, the *Athenians* demanded certain Cities to be restored to them, which had bin taken from them by the *Lacedæmonians* long before this warre began, refusing likewise to continue the treaty of peace, unless the *Spartans* which were in the Isle, were first rendred unto them as prisoners. Thus were the *Embassadors* returned without effect; at which time the truce being ended, it was desired from the *Athenian* Captains, that they should, according to their Covenant, restore the ships which had been put into their hands. Whereto answer was made, that the condition of the truce was, that if any one article were broken, all should be held void; now (said the *Athenians*) ye have assaulted our Garrisons, and thereby are we acquitted of our promise to restore the ships. This and the like frivolous allegations which they made, were but meer shifts; yet profit so far overweighed honour, that better answer none could be got. Then were the *Lacedæmonians* driven to use many hard means, for conveyance of victuals into the Isle, which finally was taken by force, and the men that were in it carried prisoners to *Athens*, where it was decreed that when the *Peloponnesians* next invaded *Attica*, these prisoners should all be slain. Whether fearing the death of these men, or with-held by the troubles, which (according to the *Athenians* hope) fell upon them, the *Lacedæmonians* were so far from waisting *Attica*, that they suffered their own Country to be continually over-run, both by the *Athenians*, who landed on all parts of their coast, and by those which issued out of *Pylus*; which became the Rendevous of all that were ill-affected unto them.

## S. V.

*How the Lacedæmonians hardly, and to their great disadvantage, obtained a peace that was not well kept.*

Herefore they endeavoured greatly to obtain peace, which the *Athenians* would not hearken unto. For they were so puffed up with continuance of good success, that having sent a few bands of men into *Sicilie*, to hold up a faction there, and make what profit they might of the *Sicilians* quarrels; when afterward they heard that the differences in that Isle were taken away, and their bands returned without either gain or losse, they banished the Captains, as if it had been merely through their default, that the Ile of *Sicilie* was not conquered; which (besides the longer distance) was in power to offend others, or defend it self, no whit inferior unto *Peloponnesus*. Yet was this their over-weening much abated shortly after, by some disasters received, especially in *Thrace*, where in a battell which they lost at *Amphipolis*, *Cleon* and *Brasidas*, Generals of the *Athenian* and *Lacedæmonian* forces, were both slain; which two had most bin adversaries to the peace. As the *Athenians* by their losses were taught moderation; so the *Lacedæmonians*, who not only felt the like wounds, but through the great Navie which they had received at *Pylus*, were faine to proceed lamely in the war, against such as, through commodity of their good fleet, had all advantage that could be found in expedition, were fervently desirous to conclude the business, ere Fortune by any new favour should revive the insolence, which was at this time well mortified in their Enemies. Neither was it only a consideration of their present estate, that urged them to bring the treaty of peace to a good and speedy effect; but other dangers hanging over their heads, and ready to fall on them, which unless they compounded with the *Athenians*, they knew not how to avoid. The estate of *Argos*, which had ancient enmity with them, was now after a truce of thirty years well-nigh expired, ready to take the benefit of their present troubles, by joining with those who alone found them work enough. *Argos* was a rich and strong Citie, which though inferior to *Sparta* in valour, yet was not so unwarlike, nor held such ill correspondence with the neighbouring Estates, that the *Lacedæmonians* could ever farre prevail upon it, when they had little else to doe.

This

This was a thing that in the beginning of this War had not been regarded. For it was then thought that by waisting the Territory of *Athens* with sword and fire, the quarrell should easily and in short time have been ended, whereby not only the *Athenians* should have bin brought to good order, but the *Corinthians*, and others, for whose sake the war was undertaken, have bin so firmly knit to the *Lacedæmonians*, that they should for love of them have abandoned the *Argives* to their own fortunes. But now the vanity of those hopes appeared, in that the *Athenians* abounding in ready money, & means to raise more, were able to secure themselves by a strong fleet, from any great harme that the *Peloponnesians*, wanting wherewith to maintain a Navie, could doe unto them; yea, as Masters of the Sea, to weary them out, as in effect they had done. As for the Confederates of *Sparta*, they could now endure neither war nor peace; their daily travels, and many losses had so wearied and incensed them. Wherefore the *Lacedæmonians* were glad to use the occasion, which the inclination of their enemies did then afford, of making a small peace, which with much adoe they procured, as seemed equall and easie; but was indeed impossible to be performed, and therefore all their travell was little effectuall.

The restitution of prisoners and places taken being agreed upon, it fell out by lot, that the *Lacedæmonians* should restore first. These had won more Towns upon the continent from the *Athenians*, than the *Athenians* had from them; but what they had won, they had not won absolutely. For they had restored some Towns to such of their Allies, from whom the State of *Athens* had taken them; some, and those the most, they had set at liberty (as reason required) which had opened their gates unto them as to their friends and deliverers, and not compelled them to break in as enemies. Now concerning the Towns which were not in their own hands, but had bin rendred unto their Confederates, the *Spartans* found means to give some satisfaction, by permitting the *Athenians* to retain others, which they had gotten in the War; as for the rest, they promised more than afterwards they could performe. The Cities which they had taken into protection, could not endure to hear of being abandoned, neither would they by any means yeeld themselves into the hands of their old Lords the *Athenians*, whom they had offended by revolting, notwithstanding whatsoever articles were drawn, and concluded, for their security, and betterance in time to come. This dull performance of conditions on the side of the *Spartans*, made the *Athenians* become as backward in doing those things which on their part were required; so that restoring only the prisoners which they had, they deferred the rest, untill such time as they might receive the full satisfaction, according to the agreement. But before such time as these difficulties brake out into matter of open quarrell, the *Lacedæmonians* entred into a more streight alliance with the *Athenians*, making a league offensive and defensive with them. Hereunto they were moved by the backwardness of the *Argives*, who being (as they thought) likely to have sued for peace at their hands, as soon as things were once compounded between *Athens* and *Sparta*, did shew themselves plainly unwilling to give care to any such motion. Thinking therefore, that by cutting from *Argos* all hope of *Athenian* succour, they should make sure work, the *Spartans* regarded not the affections of other States, whom they had either bound unto them by well-deserving in the late war, or found so troublesome, that their enmity (if perhaps they durst let it appear) was little worse than friendship. It bred great jealousy in all the Cities of *Greece*, to perceive such a conjunction between two so powerfull Signiorities: especially one claue threatening every one, that was any thing apt to fear, with a secret intent that might be harboured in their proud conceits, of subduing the whole Country, and taking each what they could lay hold on. For besides the other articles, it was agreed, That they might by mutual consent adde new conditions, or alter the old at their own pleasures. This impression wrought so strongly in the *Corinthians*, *Thebans*, and other ancient Confederates of *Sparta*, that the hate which they had born to the *Athenians* their professed enemies, was violently thrown upon the *Lacedæmonians* their unjust friends: whereby it came to passe, that they who lately had borne chief way in *Greece*, might have been abandoned to the discretion of their enemies, as already in effect they were, had the enemies wisely used the advantage.

S. VI.

## §. VI.

*Of the negotiations and practices held between many States of Greece, by occasion of the Peace that was concluded.*

**T**He admiration wherein all Greece held the valour of *Sparta* as unresistable, and able to make way through all impediments, had bin so excessive, that when by some sinister accidents, that Citie was compelled to take and seek peace, upon terms not founding very honourable, this common opinion was not only abated, but (as happens usually in things extreme) was changed into much contempt. For it was never thought that any *Lacedæmonian* would have endured to lay down his weapons, and yeeld himself prisoner, nor that any misfortune should have bin so great, as should have drawn that Citie to relieve it self otherwise than by force of Armes. But when once it had appeared that many of their Citizens, among whom were some of especial mark, being overlayed by enemies, in the Island before *Pylus*, had rather chosen to live in captivity, than to die in fight; and that *Pylus* it self, sticking as a thorne in the foot of *Laconia*, had bred such anguish in that Estate, as utterly wearying the accustomed *Spartan* resolution, had made it sit down, and seek to refresh it self by dishonourable ease: then did not only the *Corinthians* and *Thebans* begin to conceive basely of those men which were virtuous, though unfortunate; but other lesse Cities joyning with these in the same opinion, did cast their eyes upon the rich and great Citie of *Argos*, of whose ability to doe much, they conceived a strong belief, because of long time it had done nothing. Such is the base condition, which through foolish envie is become almost naturall in the greater part of mankind. We curiously search into their vices, in whom, had they kept some distance, we should have discerned only the vertues; and comparing injuriously our best parts with their worst, are justly plagued with a false opinion of that good in strangers, which we know to be wanting in our selves.

The first that published their dislike of *Sparta* were the *Corinthians*, at whose vehement entreaty (though moved rather by envie at the greatness of *Athens* daily encreasing) the *Lacedæmonians* had entred into the present War. But these *Corinthians* did only murmur at the peace, alleging as grievances, that some towns of theirs were left in the *Athenians* hands. The *Mantineans*, who during the time of War, had procured some part of the *Arcadians* to become their followers, and forsake their dependancy upon the State of *Sparta*, did more freely and readily discover themselves; fear of revenge to come, working more effectually than indignation at things already past. The *Argives* feeling the gale of prosperous fortune that began to fill their sails, prepared themselves to take as much of it as they could stand under; giving for that purpose unto twelve of their Citizens a full and absolute commission to make alliance between them and any free Cities of Greece (*Athens* & *Sparta* excepted) without any further trouble of propounding every particular business to the multitude. When the gates of *Argos* were set thus open to all comers, the *Mantineans* began to lead the way, and many Cities of *Peloponnese* following them, entred into this new confederacy; some incited by private respects, others thinking it the wisest way to doe as the most did. What inconvenience might arise unto them by these courses, the *Lacedæmonians* easily discerned; & therefore sent Embassadors to stop the matter at *Corinth*, where they well perceived that the mischief had bin hatched. These Embassadors found in the *Corinthians* a very rough disposition, with a gravity expressing the opinion which they had conceived of their present advantage over *Sparta*. They had caused all Cities which had not entred yet into alliance with *Argos*, to send their Agents to them, in whose presence they gave audience to the *Lacedæmonians*; the purport of whose Embassie was this: That the *Corinthians*, without breach of their oath, could not forsake the alliance which they had long since made with *Sparta*; and that reason did as well bind them to hold themselves contented with the peace lately made, as religion enforced them to continue in their ancient confederacy, forasmuch as it had bin agreed between the *Spartans* and their associates, that the consent of the greater part (which had yeilded unto peace with *Athens*) should bind the lesser number to performe what was concluded, if no divine impediment withstood them. Hereunto the *Corinthians* made answer, that the *Spartans* had first begun to doe them open wrong, in concluding the War wherein they had lost many places, without

provision

provision of restitution; and that the very clause alleged by the Embassadors, did acquaint them from any necessity of subscribing to the late peace, forasmuch as they had sworn unto those people whom they perswaded to rebell against *Athens*, that they would never abandon them; nor willingly suffer them to fall again into the tyrannous hands of the *Athenians*. Wherefore they held themselves bound both in reason and religion to use all means of upholding those, whom by common consent they had taken into protection; for that an oath was no lesse to be accounted a divine impediment, than were pestilence, tempest, or any the like accident, hindring the performance of things undertaken. As for the alliance with *Argos*, they said that they would do as they should find cause. *Athens* dismissed the Embassadors with this answer, they made haste to joyn themselves with *Argos*, and caused other States to do the like; so that *Sparta* and *Athens* were in a manner left to themselves, the *Thebans* and *Megarians* being also upon the point to have entred into this new confederacy. But as the affections were divers which caused this hasty confluence of sudden friends to *Argos*, it so likewise came to passe that the friendship it self, such as it was, had much diversity both of sincerity and of continuance. For some there were that hated or feared the *Lacedæmonians*, as the *Mantineans* and *Eleans*; these did firmly betake themselves to the *Argives*, in whom they knew the same affection to be inveterate: others did only hate the peace concluded; and these would rather have followed the *Spartans* than the *Argives* in war, yet rather the *Argives* in war than the *Lacedæmonians* in peace. Of this number were the *Corinthians*, who knowing that the *Thebans* were affected like unto themselves, dealt with them to enter into the society of the *Argives*, as they had done: but the different formes of government, used in *Thebes* and *Argos*, caused the *Thebans* to hold rather with *Sparta*, that was ruled by the principall men, than to incur the danger of innovation, by joyning with such as committed the whole rule to the multitude.

This business having ill succeeded, the *Corinthians* began to bethink themselves of their own danger, who had not so much as any truce with *Athens*, and yet were unprepared for War. They sought therefore to come to some temporary agreement with the *Athenians*, and hardly obtained it. For the *Athenians*, who had dealt with all Greece at one time, did not greatly care to come to any appointment with one Citie that had shewed against them more stomach than force; but gave them to understand, that they might be safe enough from them, if they would claim the benefit of that alliance, which *Athens* had lately made with *Sparta* and her dependants; yet finally they granted unto these *Corinthians* (which were loth to acknowledge themselves dependants of *Sparta*) the truce that they desired; but into private confederacie they would not admit them, being an article of the league between them and the *Spartans*, That the one should not make peace nor war without the other.

Herein, as in many other passages, may clearly be seen the great advantage which absolute Lords have, as well in Peace as in War, over such as are served by voluntaries. We shall hardly find any Signiorie, that hath been so constantly followed as *Sparta* was by so many States, and some of them little inferior to it self, being all as free: whereas contrariwise, the *Athenians* had lately, and by compulsive means gotten their Dominion, wherein they demeaned themselves as Tyrants. But in performance of conditions agreed upon, the *Athenians* were able to make their words good, by excluding any State out of their Confederacie, and giving up such places as were agreed upon: of which the *Lacedæmonians* could do neither the one nor the other. For such Towns as their old Allies had gotten by their means in the late War, could not be restored without their consent, which had them in present possession; and particularly the Town of *Panaſſe*, which the *Thebans* held, could by no means be obtained from them by the *Lacedæmonians* (who earnestly desired it, that by restitution thereof unto the *Athenians*, as earnestly demanding it, themselves might recover *Pylus*) unless that they would agree to make a private alliance with *Thebes*; which thereupon they were constrained to doe, though knowing it to be contrary to the last agreement between them and *Athens*.

The *Lacedæmonians* having broken one article of the league made between them and the *Athenians*, that by so doing they might enable themselves to the performance of another, were shamefully disappointed of their hopes by the *Thebans*, who did not give up the town of *Panaſſe*, till first they had utterly demolished it, and made it of no worth to the

the

the *Athenians*. This was fought to have been excused by the *Lacedæmonian* Embassadors, who comming to *Athens* (whither they had sent home all prisoners that had been detained at *Thebes*) hoping with gentle words to salve the matter; saying, That from henceforth no enemy of *Athens* should nestle in *Panactæ*, for it was destroyed. But these Embassadors had not to deal with tame fools. For the *Athenians* told them in plain termes, That of three principall conditions agreed upon in their late League, they had not performed any one, but used such base conclusions as stood not with their honour: having made private alliance with the *Thebans*; having destroyed a Town that they should have restored; and not having forced their dependants by Warre, to make good the Covenants of the late concluded peace. Hereupon they dismissed the Embassadors with rough words, meaning with as rough deeds to anger those that sent them.

There were at that time both in *Athens* and *Sparta*, many that were ill-contented with the peace: among whom were the *Ephori*, chosen for that year, in *Sparta*, and *Alcibiades*, a powerfull young Gentleman in *Athens*. But the *Ephori*, though desiring to renew the War, yet wished that first they might get from the *Athenians* as much as was to be rendered to them by Covenant, especially *Pylus* that had so forely troubled them. *Alcibiades*, whose Nobility, riches and favour with the people, made him desire War, as the mean whereby himself might procure some honourable employment; used all means to set the quarrel on foot, whilst the *Athenians* had yet both advantage enough, as not having rendered ought save their prisoners, and pretence enough to use that advantage of breaking the peace, by reason that the *Lacedæmonians* (though indeed against their wills) had broken all Covenants with them. Now the State of *Athens* had fully determined to retain *Pylus*, and to perform nothing that the *Lacedæmonians* should, and might require, untill they had first, without any longer halting, fulfilled all articles whereto they were bound, even to the utmost point. This was enough to make them sweat, who having already done the most that they could, had as yet got nothing in recompence, except the delivery of their Citizens, which were prisoners. But *Alcibiades* wishing a speedy beginning of open war, sent privily to the *Argives*, and gave them to understand how fitly the time served for them to associate themselves with *Athens*, which was enough to 30 give them security against all enemies.

The *Argives*, upon the first confluence of many Estates unto their society, had embraced great hopes of working wonders, as if they should have had the conduct of all *Greece* against the *Athenians*, robbing *Sparta* of that honour, as having ill used it, and thereby leaving their old enemies in case of much contempt and disability. But these sudden apprehensions of vain joy, were suddenly changed into as vain fear; which ill agreed with the great opinion that had lately bin conceived of *Argos*. For when the *Thebans* had refused their alliance; when the *Corinthians* had sought security from *Athens*; and when a false rumour was noyed abroad, *Athens*, *Thebes* and *Sparta*, were come to a full agreement upon all points of difference; then began the *Argives* to let fall their crests, and sue for peace unto the *Lacedæmonians*, who needing it as much as they, or more, yet held their gravity, and were not over-hasty to accept it. At this time, and in this perturbation, the message of *Alcibiades* came very welcome to the *Argives*, which were not now consulting how to become the chief of all others, but how to save themselves. Wherefore they sent away presently to *Athens*, their own Embassadors, accompanied with the *Mantineans* and *Eleans*, to make a league offensive and defensive between their Estates and the *Athenians*.

Of this business the *Lacedæmonians* knew not what to think: for well they saw, that such a combination tended to their great hurt, and therefore were desirous to prevent it; but to keep the love of the *Athenians*, the new *Ephori* thought that more was already done, than stood with their honour or profit; others held it the wisest way, having done so much, not to stick upon a little more, but rather by giving full satisfaction, to retain the friendship of that State, which was more to be valued than all the rest of *Greece*. This resolution prevailing, they sent away such of their Citizens as were best affected to the peace, who comming to *Athens*, with full commission to make an end of all controversies, did earnestly labour in the Councill-house, to make the truth of things appear, saying, That their Confederacy with the *Thebans* had tended to none other end than the recovery of *Panactæ*: concerning which Town, or any other business, that it much grie-  
ved

ved the *Lacedæmonians*, to see things fall out in such wise as might give to the *Athenians* cause of displeasure; but that all should be done which in reason might be required for making matters even between them; to which purpose they shewed that themselves had absolute commission. Wherefore they desired that *Pylus* might be restored to them, and especially for the present, that the negotiation with the *Argives* might be called aside. Favourable audience was given to this proposition, the rather, because they which promised amends, had power to make their words good. But all this fair likelihood of good agreement was dashed on the sudden, by the practice of *Alcibiades*, who, secretly dealing with the *Lacedæmonian* Embassadors, persuaded them well of his friendship towards their Cite, and advised them to take all care that their absolute power to conclude what they pleased in the name of *Sparta*, might not be known to the Commone of *Athens*, lest the insolent multitude should thereupon grow peremptorie and yeeld to nothing, unless they could draw them to unreasonable conditions. The Embassadors beleevied him, and fashioned their tale in the assemble of the people, as he had advised them. Hereupon the same *Alcibiades* taking presently the advantage, which their double dealing afforded, inveighed openly against them, as men of no sinceritie, that were come to *Athens* for no other purpose, than to hinder the people from strengthening themselves with friends, meaning to draw the *Argives* and their Adherents to their own alliance, as (contrary to their own Oath) already they had the *Thebans*. The people of *Athens*, whom a pleasing errand would very hardly have satisfied, or brought into a good opinion of the *Lacedæmonians*, (whose honest meanings had so ill been seconded, with good performance) were now so much incensed with the double dealing of the Embassadors, and the strong persuasions of *Alcibiades*, that little waited of concluding the league with *Argos*. Yet for the present so farre did *Nicias*, an honourable Citizen, and great friend to the peace, prevail with them, that the business was put off, untill he himself, with other Embassadors, might fetch a better answer from *Sparta*.

It may also seem a great wonder, how so poor a trick of *Alcibiades* was able to carry a matter of so great importance, when the *Spartan* Embassadors might have cast the load upon his own shoulders, by discovering the truth: But the gravitie which was usually found in the *Lacedæmonians*, hindered them (perhaps) from playing their game handsomely against so nimble a wit; and they might well have been thought untruthful men, had they professed themselves such as would say and un-say for their most advantage.

*Nicias* and his Companions had a soverre message to deliver at *Sparta*, being peremptorily to require performance of all conditions, and among the rest, that the *Lacedæmonians* should take the pains to re-build *Panactæ*, and should immediately renounce their Alliance made with the *Thebans*; letting them understand, that otherwise the *Athenians*, without further delay, would enter into confederacie with the *Argives*, and 40 to their adherents. The *Ephori* at *Sparta* had no mind to forsake the *Thebans*, assured friends to their State; but wrought so hard, that the anger of the *Athenians* was suffered to break out what way it could, which to mitigate, they would doe no more, than only (at the request of *Nicias* their honourable friend, who would not seem to have effected nothing) swear a-new to keep the Articles of the league between him and *Athens*. Immediately therefore upon return of the Embassadors, a new league was made between the *Athenians*, *Argives*, *Mantineans*, and *Eleans*, with very ample provision for holding the same common friends and enemies; wherein, though the *Lacedæmonians* were passed over with silence, yet was it manifest that the whole intent of this confederacie did bend it self chiefly against them, as in short while after was proved by effect.

At this time the *Lacedæmonians* were in ill case, who having restored all that they could unto the *Athenians*, and procured others to doe the like, had themselves recovered nothing of their own (prisoners excepted) for default of restoring all that they should. But that which did most of all dislike them, was the losse of reputation, which they had not more impaired in the late Warre by misfortunes, than in sundry passages between them and the *Athenians*: to procure and keep whole Amities, they had left sundry of their own friends to shift for themselves. Contrariwise, the *Athenians* by the treatie of peace, had recovered the most part of that which they lost in warre;  
P p p all

all their gettings they had retained; and were strengthened by the access of new Confederates.

## §. VII.

*How the peace between Athens and Sparta was ill kept; though not openly broken.*

**I**T was not long ere the *Argives* and their fellows had found business wherewith to set the *Athenians* on work, and make use of this conjunction. For, presuming upon the strength of their side, they began to meddle with the *Epidaurians*, whom it concerned the State of *Sparta* to defend. So, many acts of hostility were committed, wherein *Athens* and *Sparta* did (as principals) infest each the other, but came in collaterally, as to the aid of their severall friends.

By these occasions the *Corinthians*, *Bœotians*, *Phocians*, *Lœcians*, and other people of *Greece*, began a-new to range themselves under the *Lacedæmonians*, and follow their encrease. One victory which the *Lacedæmonians* obtained by their meer valour in a set battell, neer to *Mantineæ*, against the *Argive* side, helped well to repair their decayed reputation, though otherwise it yielded them no great profit. The civill dissention arising shortly after within *Argos* it self, between the principall Citizens and the Commons, had almost thrown down the whole frame of the new combination. For the 20 chief Citizens getting the upper hand, made a league with *Sparta*, wherein they proceeded so farre as to renounce the amitie of the *Athenians* in expresse words; and forced the *Mantineans* to the like. But in short space of time the multitude prevailing, reversed all this, and having chased away their ambitious Nobilitie applied themselves to the *Athenians* as closely as before.

Besides these uprores in *Peloponnesus*, many affaires were made to raise up troubles in all parts of *Greece*, and likewise in *Macedon*, to the *Athenians*, whose forces and readines for execution, prevented some things, revenged other, and required all with some prosperous attempts. Finally, the *Athenians* wanting matter of quarrell, and the *Lacedæmonians* growing wearie, they began to be quiet; retaining still that enmitie in their hearts, 30 which they had sufficiently discovered in effects, though not yet breaking out into terms of open Warre.

## §. VIII.

*The Athenians sending two Fleets to sack Siracuse, are put to flight, and utterly discomfited.*

**D**URING this intermission of open War, the *Athenians* re-entertained their hopes of subduing *Sicily*, whither they sent a Fleet to mightie, as never was set forth by *Greece* in any Age before or after.

This Fleet was very well manned, and furnished with all necessaries to so great an expedition. All which came to nought, partly by the factions in *Athens*, whence *Alciades*, Author of that voyage, and one of the Generalls of their Fleet, was driven to banish himself, for fear of such judgement, as else he was like to have undergone among the incensed people; partly by the invasion which the *Lacedæmonians* made upon *Attica*, whilst the forces of that State were so far from home. Hereunto was added the aid of the King of *Persia*, who supplied the *Peloponnesians* with money.

Neither was the successe of things in *Sicilia* such, as without help from *Athens*, could give any likelihood of a good end in that war. For although in the beginning, the enterprise had so well succeeded, that they besieged *Siracuse*, the chief Citie of all the Iland, and one of the fairest Towns which the *Greeks* inhabited, obtaining the better in sundrie battels by Land and Sea; yet when the Town was relieved with strong aid from *Peloponnesus*, it came to pass that the *Athenians* were put to the worse on all sides, in such wise that their Fleet was shut up into the haven of *Siracuse*, and could not issue out.

As the *Athenian* affairs went very ill in *Sicily*, so did they at home stand upon her terms, for that the *Lacedæmonians*, who had been formerly accustomed to make wearisome yearly journeys into *Attica*, which having pillaged and foraged, they returned home; did

now

now by counsell of *Alciades* (who seeking revenge upon his own Citizens, was fled unto them) fortifie the Town of *Decelia*, which was near to *Athens*, whence they ceased not with daily excursions to harry all the Country round about, and sometimes give alarme unto the City it self. In these extremities, the perverse obstinacy of the *Athenians* was very strange; who leaving at their backs, and at their own doores, an enemy little lesse mighty than themselves, did yet send forth another fleet into *Sicily*, to invade a people no lesse puissant, which had never offended them.

It often happens, that a prosperous event makes foolish counsell seem wiser than it was; which came to passe many times among the *Athenians*, whose vain conceits *Pallas* 10 was said to turn unto the best. But where unfound advice, finding bad proof, is obstinately pursued, neither *Pallas* nor *Fortune* can be justly blamed for a miserable issue. This second Fleet of the *Athenians*, which better might have served to convey home the former that was defeated, after some attempts made to small purpose against the *Siracussians*, was finally (together with the other part of the Navie, which was there before) quite vanquished, and boid up into the haven of *Siracuse*, whereby the camp of the *Athenians*, utterly deprived of all benefit by Sea, either for succour or departure, was driven to break up, and flye away by land; in which flight they were over-taken, routed, and quite overthrow, in such wise that scarce any man escaped.

This mischief well deserved fell upon the *Athenians*, who had wickedly condemned 20 into exile *Sophocles* and *Pthindorus* Generals, formerly sent into that Ile, pretending that they had taken money for making peace in *Sicily*, whereas indeed there was not any means or possibility to have made War. Hereby it came to passe, that *Nicias*, who had the chief command in this unhappy enterprise, did rather choose to hazzard the ruin of his Country by the losse of that Army, wherein consisted little lesse than all the power of *Athens*; than to adventure his own estate, his life, and his honour, upon the tongues of shamelesse accusers, and the sentence of Judges before his tryall resolved to condemn him, by retiring from *Siracuse*, when wisdom and necessity required it. For (said he) 30 they shall give sentence upon us, who know not the reason of our doings, nor would give ear to any that would speak in our behalf, but altogether hearken to suspicious and vain rumors; that shall be brought against us, yea these our Souldiers, who now are so desirous to return in safety, will in our danger be well contented to frame their tales to the pleasure of the lewd and insolent multitude.

This resolution of *Nicias*, though it cannot be commended (for it is the part of an honest and valiant man to doe what reason willeth, not what opinion expecteth; and to measure honour or dishonour by the assurance of his well-informed conscience, rather than by the malicious report and censure of others) yet it may be excused; since he had before his eyes the injustice of his people, and had well understood that a wicked sentence is infinitely worse than a wicked fact, as being held a president and pattern whereby oppression beginning upon one, is extended as warrantable upon all. Therefore his 40 fear of wrongfull condemnation was such, as a constant man could not easily have over-mastered; but when afterwards the Army, having no other expectation of safety than the faint hope of a secret flight, he was so terrified with an Eclipse of the Moon, happening when they were about to dislodge, that he would not consent to have the camp break up till seven and twenty daies were past. His timorousnesse was even as foolish and ridiculous, as the issue of it was lamentable. For he should not have thought that the power of the Heavens, and the course of Nature would be as unjust as his *Athenians*; or might pretend lesse evill to the slothfull, than to such as did their best. Neither doe I think that any Astrologer can allege this Eclipse, as either a cause or prognostication of that Armes destruction, otherwise than as the folly of men did, by application, 50 soon, turn it to their own confusion. Had *C. Cassius* the Roman, he who slew *Julius Cæsar*, imitated this superstition of *Nicias*, he had surely found the same fortune in a case very like. But when, he retiring, the broken remainder of *Cæsar*'s Army defeated by the *Parthian* Archers, was advised, upon such an accident as this, to continue where he then was, till the Sun were past the sign of *Scorpio*; he made answer, that he stood not in such fear of *Scorpio*, as of *Sagittarius*. So adventuring rather to abide the frowning of the Heavens, than the nearer danger of Enemies upon earth, he made such a safe and honourable retreat, as did both shew his noble resolution, and give a fair example to that 60 d rule,

— *Sapiens dominabitur astris.*

Thus we see that God, who ordinarily works by a concatenation of means, deprives the Governours of understanding, when he intends evil to the multitude; and that the wickedness of unjust men is the ready mean to weaken the vertue of those who might have done them good.

§. IX.

*Of the troubles whereinto the State of Athens fell, after the great losse of the Fleet, and Army in Sicilia.*

THE losse of this Armie was the ruin of the *Athenian* Dominion, and may be well accounted a very little lesse calamitie to that Estate, than was the subversion of the walls, when the Citie about fourteen years after was taken by *Lysander*. For now began the subjects of the *Athenian* Estate to rebel, of whom, some they reduced under their obedience, others held out; some for fear of greater inconvenience were set at libertie, promising only to be their good friends, as formerly they had been their Subjects; others having a kind of libertie offered by the *Athenians*, were not therewith contented, but obtained a true and perfect libertie by force. Among these troubles it fell out very unseasonably, that the principall men of *Athens*, being wearied with the peoples insolencie, took upon them to change the forme of that Estate, and bring the government into the hands of a few. To which purpose conspiring with the 20 Captains which were abroad, they caused them to set up the forme of an Aristocratie in the Towns of their Confederates; and in the mean time, some that were most likely to withstand this innovation, being slain at *Athens*, the Commonaltie went to dismay, that none durst speak against the Conspirators, whose number they knew not, but every man was afraid of his neighbour, lest he should be a member of the league. In this generall fear the Majestie of *Athens* was usurped by four hundred men, who observing in shew the ancient form of proceeding, did cause all matters to be propounded unto the people, and concluded upon by the greater part of voices: but the things propounded were only such as were first allowed in private among themselves; neither had the 30 Commonaltie any other libertie, than only to approve and give consent: for whosoever presumed any further, was quickly dispatched out of the way, and no inquirie made of the murder. By these means were many Decrees made, all tending to the establishment of this new authoritie, which nevertheless endured not long. For the Fleet and Armie which then was in the Isle of *Samos* did altogether detest these dealings of the four hundred usurpers, and held them as Enemies; whereupon they revoked *Alcibiades* out of banishment, and by his assistance procured that the supplies which the *Persian* King had promised to the *Lacedemonians*, were by *Tissaphernes* his Lieutenant, made unprofitable, through the slow and bad performance. *Alcibiades* had at the first been very well entertained in *Sparta*, whilst his service done unto that 40 State was not grown to be the object of envie. But when it appeared that in Counsell and good performance he so far excelled all the *Lacedemonians*, that all their good success was ascribed to his wit and valour, then were all the principall Citizens wearie of his vertue; especially *Agis* one of their Kings, whose wife had so far yeelded her self to the love of this *Athenian*, that among her inward friends she could not forbear to call her young child by his name. Hereupon order was taken, that *Alcibiades* should be killed out of the way. But he discovering the *Spartan* treacherie, conveyed himself unto *Tissaphernes*, whom he so bewitched with his great beautie, sweet conversation, and found way, that he soon became the Master of that barbarous Vice-roys affections, who had free power to dispose the great Kings Treasures and Forces in those parts. Then began 50 he to advise *Tissaphernes*, not so far forth to assist the *Lacedemonians*, that they should quite overthrow the State of *Athens*, but rather to help the weaker side, and let them one consume another, whereby all should fall at length into the hands of the *Persian*. By this counsell he made way to other practices, wherein by strength of his reputation (as the only Favourite of so great a Potentate) he played his own game, procuring his restitution. At length his banishment being repealed by the Armie, but not by the Citizens (who then were oppressed by the four hundred) he laboured greatly to recon-

reconcile the Souldiers to the Governours; or at least to divert their heat another way, and turn it upon the common Enemy. Some of the four hundred approved his motion, as being wearie of the tyrannie whereof they were partakers, partly because they saw it could not long endure, and partly for that themselves, being lesse regarded by the rest of their companions, than stood with their good liking, sought to acquit themselves of it as honestly as they might. But the most of that Faction laboured to obtain peace of the *Lacedemonians*, desiring chiefly to maintain both their own authoritie, and the greatness of their City, if they might: but if this could not be, they did rather wish to preserve their own power, or safety at least, than the good Estate of the Common-wealth. Therefore 10 they made sundry overtures of peace to the *Lacedemonians*, desiring to compound in as good termes as they might, and affirming that they were fitter to be trusted than the wearing multitude, especially considering that the City of *Sparta* was governed by an Aristocracie, to which form they had now reduced *Athens*. All these passages between the four hundred (or the most and chiefe of them) and the *Lacedemonians*, were kept as secret as might be. For the City of *Athens*, hoping, without any great cause, to repair their losses, was not inclined to make composition, from which upon juster ground the Enemy was much more averse, trusting well that the discord of the *Athenians* (not unknown abroad) might yeeld some fair opportunitie to the destruction of it self; which in effect (though not then presently) came to passe. And upon this hope King *Agis* did sometimes 20 bring his forces from *Decelea* to *Athens*, where doing no good, he received some small losses. Likewise the Navie of *Peloponnesus* made shew of attempting the City, but seeing no likelihood of success, they bent their course from thence to other places, where they obtained victories, which in the better fortune of the *Athenians* might more lightly have bin regarded, than in this their decayed estate. Yet it seems, without any disparagement to their wisdom, they should rather have forborn to present unto the Citie, or to the countries near adjoining, any terror of the war. For the dissention within the walls might soon have done more good than could be received from the fleet or army without, which indeed gave occasion to set the Citizens at unity, though it lasted not very long. The 30 four hundred, by means of these troubles, were faine to resign their authority, which they could not now hold; when the people, having taken arms to repell foreign Enemies, would not lay them down, till they had freed themselves from such as oppressed the State at home. Yet was not this alteration of government a full restitution of the sovereign command unto the people, or whole body of the City, but only to five thousand; which company the four hundred (when their authoritie began) had pretended to take unto them as assistants: herein seeming to do little wrong or none to the commonalty, who seldom assembled in greater number. But now when the highest power was come indeed into the hands of so many, it was soon agreed, that *Alcibiades* and his companions should be recalled from exile, and that the army at *Samos*, should be requested to undertake the government: which was forthwith reformed according to the Souldiers desire.

§. X.

*How Alcibiades won many important victories for the Athenians; was recalled from exile; made their General, and again deposed.*

THIS establishment of things in the Citie, was accompanied with some good success in the wars. For the *Lacedemonians* were about the same time overthrowne at Sea, in a great battell, by the *Athenian* Fleet, which had remained at *Samos*, to which *Alcibiades* afterwards joyning such forces as he could raise, obtained many victories. Before the Town of *Abydos*, his arrivall with eighteen ships, gave the honour of a great battell to the *Athenians*; he overthrew and utterly destroyed the fleet of the *Lacedemonians*, commanded by *Mindarus*; took the Towns of *Cyzicus* and *Perinthus*, made the *Selymbrians* ransom their Citie, and fortified *Chrysolis*. Hereupon letters were sent to *Sparta*, which the *Athenians* intercepting, found to contain the distress of the Armie, in these few words: *All is lost; Mindarus is slain; the Souldiers want victuals; we know not what to doe.*

Shortly after this, *Alcibiades* overthrew the *Lacedemonians* in fight by land at *Chalcedon*, took *Selymbria*, besieged and won *Byzantium*, now called *Constantinople*, which even

in those dayes was a goodly, rich, and very strong City. Hereupon he returned home with very great welcome, and was made high Admirall of all the Navie.

But this his honour continued not long, for it was taken from him, and he driven to banish himself again, only because his Lieutenant, contrary to the expresse command of *Alcibiades*, fighting with the enemies in his absence, had lost a great part of the Fleet.

The second banishment of *Alcibiades* was to the *Athenians* more harmful than the first, and the losse which thereupon they received, was (though more heavy to them, yet) lesse to be pittied of others, than that which ensued upon his former exile. For whereas at the first, he had sought revenge upon his own Citie; now, as inured to adversitie, he rather pittied their furie, who in time of such danger had cast out him that should have repaired to their weak estate, than sought by procuring or beholding the calamitie of his people, to comfort himself after injurie received. Before they, who were intreated in the place of *Alcibiades*, arrived at the Fleet, he presented battel to *Lysander* the *Lacedemonian* Admirall, who was not so confident upon his former victorie, as to undertake *Alcibiades* himself, bringing ships more in number (notwithstanding the former losse of fifteen) than his enemies had, and better ordered than they had been under his Lieutenant. But when the decree of the people was published in the Navie, then did *Alcibiades* withdraw himself to a Town upon *Helleſpont*, called *Bizante*, where he had built a Castle.

## §. XI.

The battell at Arginuse, and condemnation of the victorious Athenian Captains by the people.

**A**FTER this time, the *Athenians* receiving many losses and discomfures, were driven to flye into the Haven of *Mytela*, where they were straitly besieged both by Land and Sea. For the raising of this siege necessitie enforced them to man all their vessels, and to put the uttermost of their forces into the hazzard of one battel. This battell was fought at *Arginuse*, where *Callicratides*, Admirall of the *Lacedemonian*, losing the honour of the day, preserved his own reputation by dying valiantly in the fight. It might well have bin expected, that the ten Captains, who joyntly had command in chief over the *Athenian* fleet, should for that good daies service, and so happy a victory, have received great honour of their Citizens. But contrariwise, they were forthwith called home, and accused, as if wilfully they had suffered many of the Citizens, whose ships were broken and sunk, to be cast away, when by appointing some Vessels to take them up, they might have saved them from being drowned. Hereto the Captains readily made a very just answer, That they pursuing the victorie, had left part of the fleet, under sufficient men, to save those that were wrackt; which if it were not well accomplished, it was, because a tempest arising about the end of the fight, had hindred the performance of that, and other their intendments. This excuse availed not: For a lewd fellow was brought forth, who said, That he himself escaping in a meal-tub, had bin intreated by those who were in perill of drowning, to desire of the people revenge of their deaths upon the Captains. It was very strange, that upon such an accusation maintained with so slender evidence, men that had well deserved of their Countrey should be overthrown. But their enemies had so incensed the rascall multitude, that no man durst absolve them, save only *Socrates* the wise and vertuous Philosopher, whose voice in this judgement was not regarded. Six of them were put to death, of whom one had hardly escaped drowning, and was with much ado relieved by other vessels in the storm: but the 50 Captains which were absent escaped; for when the furie of the people was overpast, this judgement was reversed, and the accusers called into question for having deceived and perverted the Citizens. Thus the *Athenians* went about to free themselves from the infamie of injustice, but the divine Justice was not a sleeper, nor would be so deluded.

## §. XII.

## §. XII.

The battell at Egos-Potamos, wherein the whole State of Athens was ruined; with the end of the Peloponnesian war,

**T**HE Peloponnesian fleet under *Lysander*, the year next following, having scoured the *Aegean* Seas, entered *Helleſpont*, where (landing souldiers) it besieged and took the town of *Lampsacus*. Hereupon all the navie of *Athens*, being an hundred and fourscore sail, made thither in haste, but finding *Lampsacus* taken before their coming, they put in at *Sestos*, where having refreshed themselves, they sailed to the river called *Egos-Potamos*, which is (as we might name it) *Goats-Brook*, or the river of the *Goat*, being on the continent opposite to *Lampsacus*: and there they cast Anchors, not one whole league off from *Lysander*, who rode at *Lampsacus* in the harbor. The next day after their arrival they presented fight unto the *Peloponnesians*, who refused it, whereupon the *Athenians* returned again to *Egos-Potamos*; and thus they continued five daies, braving every day the Enemy, and returning to their own harbor when it drew towards evening.

The Castle of *Alcibiades* was not far from the Navie, and his power in those places was such as might have greatly availed his countermen, if they could have made use of it. For he had waged mercenaries, and making war in his own name upon some people of the *Thracians*, had gathered much wealth, and obtained much reputation among them. Hee perceiving the disorderly course of the *Athenian* Commanders, repaired unto them, and shewed what great inconvenience might grow, if they did not soon fore-see and prevent it. For they lay in a rode subject to every weather, neither neer enough to any town where they might furnish themselves with necessaries, nor so far off as had bin more expedient. *Sestos* was the next Market-town; thither both Souldiers and Mariners resorted, flocking away from the Navie every day, as soon as they were returned from braving the Enemy. Therefore *Alcibiades* willed them either to lie at *Sestos*, which was not far off, or at least to consider how neer their Enemy was, whose fear proceeded rather from obedience to their Generall, than from any cowardise. This admonition was so far despised, that some of the Commanders willed him to meddle with his own matters, and to remember that his authoritie was out of date. Had it not bin for these opprobrious words, he could (as he told his familiars) have compelled the *Lacedemonians*, either to fight upon unequal terms, or utterly to quit their fleet. And like enough it was that he might so have done by transporting the light-armed *Thracians*, his confederates, and others his Followers, over the Streights, who assaulting the *Peloponnesians* by Land, would either have compelled them to put to Sea, or else to leave their ships to the mercy of the *Athenians*. But finding their acceptance of his good counsell no better than hath bin rehearsed, he left them to their fortune, which how evill it would be he did prognosticate.

*Lysander* all this while defending himself by the advantage of his Haven, was not carelesse in looking into the demeanour of the *Athenians*. When they departed, his manner was to send forth some of his swiftest Vessels after them, who observing their doings, related unto him what they had seen. Therefore understanding in what carelesse fashion they romed up and down the country; he kept all his men a-board after their departure, and the fifth day gave especial charge to his Scouts, that when they perceived the *Athenians* disimbarcking, as their custome was, and walking towards *Sestos*, they should forthwith return, and hang up a brazen shield in the Prow, as a token for him to weigh Anchor.

The Scouts performed their charge, and *Lysander* being in a readinesse, made all speed that strength of Oars could give, to *Egos-Potamos*, where he found very few of his enemies aboard their ships, nor many neer them, and all in great confusion upon the newes of his approach.

Inomuch that the greatest industrie which the *Athenians* then shewed, was in the escape of eight or nine ships, which knowing how much that losse imported, gave over *Athens* as desperate, and made a long flight into the Isle of *Cyprus*; all the rest were taken, and such of the Souldiers as came in to the rescue cut in pieces. Thus was the war which had lasted seven and twenty years, with variable successe, concluded in one hour, and the glory of *Athens* in such wise eclipsed, that she never afterward shone in her perfect light.

Immediately upon this victory, *Lysander*, having taken such Towns as readily did yield



yeeld upon the first fame of his exploit, set sail for *Athens*, and joyning his forces with those of *Agis* and *Paulanias*, Kings of *Sparta*, summoned the City; which finding too stubborn to yeeld, and too strong to be won on the sudden, he put forth again to Sea, and rather by terrour than violence, compelling all the Ilands, and such Towns of the *Ionians* as had formerly held of the *Athenians*, to submit themselves to *Sparta*; he did thereby cut off all provision of victuals, and other necessities, from the City, & enforced the people by meer famine to yeeld to these conditions: That the long walls, leading from the Town to the Port, should be thrown down; That all Cities subject to their Estate, should be set at libertie; That the *Athenians* should be Masters only of their own Territories, and the fields adjoining to their Town; And that they should keep no more than twelve Ships; That they should hold as Friends or Enemies, the same, whom the *Lacedaemonians* did, and follow the *Lacedaemonians* as Leaders in the wars.

These Articles being agreed upon, the walls were thrown down with great rejoicing of those who had born displeasure to *Athens*; and not without some consultation of destroying the City, and laying waste the Land about it. Which advice, although it was not entertained, yet were thirty Governours, or rather cruell Tyrants, appointed over the people, who recompenced their former insolence and injustice over their Captains by oppressing them with all base and intolerable slavery.

The only small hope then remaining to the *Athenians*, was, that *Alcibiades* might perhaps repair what their own folly had ruined. But the thirtie Tyrants perceiving this, advertised the *Lacedaemonians* thereof, who contrived, and as now domineering in every quarter) soon effected his sudden death.

Such end had the *Peloponnesian* war. After which the *Lacedaemonians* abusing the reputation, and great power, which therein they had obtained, grew very odious to *Greece*, and by combination of many Cities against them, were dispossessed of their high authority, even in that very age in which they had subdued *Athens*. The greatest foil that they took was of the *Thebans* led by *Epaminondas*, under whom *Philip* of *Macedon*, father to *Alexander* the Great, had the best of his education. By these *Thebans*, the City of *Sparta* (besides other great losses received) was sundrie times in danger of being taken. But these haughtie attempts of the *Thebans* came finally to nothing; for the severall Estates and Signories of *Greece*, were grown so jealous one of anothers greatness, that the *Lacedaemonians*, *Athenians*, *Argives* and *Thebans*, which were the mightiest, associating themselves with the weaker partie, did so counterpoize the stronger, that no one City could extend the limits of her jurisdiction so far as might make her terrible to her neighbours. And thus all parts of the Country remained rather evenly ballanced, than well agreeing, till such time as *Philip*, and after him *Alexander*, Kings of *Macedon*, (whose forefathers had been dependants, and followers, yea almost meer Vassals to the Estates of *Athens* and *Sparta*) found means, by making use of their factions, to bring them all into servitude, from which they never could be free, till the *Romans* presenting them with a shew of libertie, did themselves indeed become their Masters.

## CHAP. IX.

Of matters concurring with the *Peloponnesian* Warre, or shortly following it.

### S. I.

How the affaires of Persia stood in those times.



During the times of this *Peloponnesian* War, and those other lesse expeditions foregoing it, *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, having peaceably enjoyed a long reign over the *Persians*, left it by his death either to *Darius*, who was called *Darius Nothus*, or the Bastard, whom the Greek Historians (lightly passing over *Xerxes* the second, and *Sogdianus*, as usurpers, and for their short reign little to be regarded) place next unto them, or to *Xerxes* the second; who, and his brother *Sogdianus* after him (seeming to have

have bin the sons of *Hesper*) held the Kingdome but one year between them, the younger succeeding his elder brother. It is not my purpose (as I have said before) to pursue the historie of the *Persians* from henceforth, by rehearsal of all the particulars, otherwise than as they shall be incident to the affairs of *Greece*. It may therefore suffice to say, That *Xerxes* the second, being a vicious Prince, did perish after a month or two, if not by surfeit, then by the trecherie of his riotous brother *Sogdianus*. Likewise of *Sogdianus* it is found, that being as ill as his brother, and more cruell, he slew unjustly *Bagorazus* a principall Eunuch, and would have done as much to his brother *Darius* the Bastard, had not he fore-seen it, and by raising a stronger army than this hated King *Sogdianus* could levie, seized at once upon the King and Kingdome. *Darius* having slain his brother, held the Empire nineteen years. *Amyrtaeus* of *Sais* an *Egyptian* rebelled against him, and having partly slain, partly chased out of the Land the *Persian* Garrisons, allied himself so firmly with the *Greeks*, that by their aid he maintained the Kingdome, and delivered it over to his posteritie, who (notwithstanding the fury of their civil Wars) maintained it against the *Persian*, all the days of this *Darius*, and of his son *Artaxerxes Mneumon*. Likewise *Amorges*, a Subject of his own, and of the Royall blood, being Lieutenant of *Caria*, rebelled against him; confederating himself with the *Athenians*. But the great calamitie, before spoken of, which fell upon the *Athenians* in *Sicily*, having put new life into the *Spartans*, and given courage to the Ilanders and others, subject to the State of *Athens*, to shake off the yoke of their long continued bondage; It fell out well for *Darius*, that the *Lacedaemonians* being destitute of mony, wherewith to defray the charge of a great navie, without which it was impossible to advance the war against the State of *Athens*, that remained powerfull by sea, were driven to crave his assistance, which he granted unto them, first upon what conditions best pleased himself, though afterwards the Articles of the league between him and them were set down in more precise termes; wherein it was concluded, That he and they should make war jointly upon the *Athenians*, and upon all that should rebell from either of them, and (which was highly to the Kings honour and profit) that all the Cities of *Asia*, which had formerly bin his, or his Predecessours, should return to his obedience. By this Treatie, and the war ensuing (of which I have already spoken) he recovered all that his grandfather and father had lost in *Asia*. Likewise by assistance of the *Lacedaemonians*, he got *Amorges* alive into his hands, who was taken in the citie of *Jafus*; the *Athenians* wanting either force or courage to succour him. Nevertheless *Egypt* still held out against him; the cause wherof cannot be the imploiment of the *Persian* forces on the parts of *Greece*: for he abounded in men, of whom he had enough for all occasions, but they wanted manhood, which caused him to fight with gold; which effected for him by Souldiers of other nations, and his naturall enemies, what the valour of his own Subjects was insufficient to perform. *Darius* had in marriage *Parysatis* his own sister, who bare unto him (besides other children) *Artaxerxes* called *Mneumon*, that is to say, the Mindfull, or the Rememberer, who succeeded him in the kingdom; and *Cyrus* the younger, a Prince of singular vertue, and accounted by all that knew him, the most excellent man that ever *Persia* bred after *Cyrus* the Great. But the old King *Darius*, intending to leave unto his elder son *Artaxerxes* the inheritance of that great Empire, did cast a jealous eye upon the doings of young *Cyrus*, who being Lieutenant of the lower *Asia*, took more upon him than befitted a Subject: for which cause his father sent for him, with intent to have taken some very sharp course with him, had not his own death prevented the comming of his younger son, and placed the elder in his Throne. Of the war between these brethren, and summarily of *Artaxerxes*, we shall have occasion to speak somewhat in more convenient place.

### S. II.

How the thirtie Tyrants got their Dominion in Athens.

I Hold it in this place very convenient to shew the proceedings of the *Greeks*, after the subversion of the walls of *Athens*, which gave end to that war called the *Peloponnesian* war, but could not free the unhappy Country of *Greece* from civil broils. The thirtie Governours, commonly called the thirtie Tyrants of *Athens*, were chosen at the first by the people to compile a body of their law, and make a collection of

such ancient Statutes, as were meet to be put in practice: the condition of the *Citie* standing as it did in that so sudden alteration. To this charge was annexed the supreme authority, either as a recompence of their labours, or because the necessity of the times did so require it, wherein the Law being uncertain, it was fit that such men should give judgment in particular causes, to whose judgment the Laws themselves, by which the *Citie* was to be ordered, were become subject. But these thirtie, having so great power in their hands, were more careful to hold it, than to deserve it by faithfull execution of that which was committed to them in trust.

Therefore apprehending such troublesome fellows as were odious to the *Citie*, though not punishable therefore by law, they condemned them to death; which proceeding was by all men highly approved, who considered their lewd conditions, but did not withall bethink themselves, how easie a thing it would be unto these thirtie men, to take away the lives of Innocents, by calling them perturbors of the peace, or what else they listed, when condemnation without true triall and proof had been once well allowed. Having thus plausibly entred into a wicked course of government, they thought it best to fortifie themselves with a sure guard, ere they brake out into those disorders, which they must needs commit for the establishing of their authority. Wherefore dispatching two of their own companie to *Sparta*, they informed the *Lacedæmonians*, that it was the full intent of the thirtie, to keep the *Citie* free from all rebellious motions: to which purpose it behoved them to cut off such as were seditious; and therefore desired the *Lacedæmonians* to send them a Garrison, which they promised at their own cost to maintain. This motion was well approved, and a Guard sent, the Captain of which was so well entertained by the thirtie, that none of their misdeeds could want his high commendations at *Sparta*. Hereupon the Tyrants began to take heart, and looking no more after base and detected persons, invaded the principall men of the *Citie*, sending armed men from house to house, who drew out such as were of great reputation, and likely, or able to make any head against this wicked forme of government: whereby there was such effusion of blood, as to *Theramenes* (one of the thirtie) seemed very horrible, and unable to escape vengeance. His dislike of their proceedings being openly discovered, caused his fellows to bethink themselves, and provide for their own securitie, and his destruction, lest he should make himself a Captain of the discontented (which were almost the whole *Citie*) and redeem his own peace with their ruin. Wherefore they selected three thousand of the Citizens, whom they thought meetest, and gave unto them some part of publike authority, the rest they disarmed; and having thus increased their own strength, and weakened their opposites, they began afresh to shed the blood, not only of their private enemies, but of such whose money, or goods, might enrich them, and enable them for the payment of their guard. And to this purpose they concluded, that every one of them should name one man, upon whose goods he should seize, putting the owner to death. But when *Theramenes* uttered his detestation of so wicked intent, then did *Critias*, who of all the thirtie was most tyrannicall, accuse him to the Councell, as a treacherous man, & (whereas one main privilege of the three thousand was, that none of them should suffer death at the appointment of the thirtie, but have the accustomed trial) he took upon him to strike out of that number the name of *Theramenes*, & so reduced him under the trial & sentence of that order. It was well alleged by *Theramenes*, that his name was not more easie to be blotted out of the catalogue, than any other mans; upon which consideration, he advised them all to conceive no otherwise of his case, than as of their own, who were liable to the same forme of proceeding: but every man choosing rather to preserve his own life by silence, than presently to draw upon himself the danger, which as yet concerned him little, & perhaps would never come near him; the Tyrants interpreting silence as consent, condemned him forthwith, and compelled him to drink poyson.

## s. III.

*The Conspiracie against the thirty Tyrants, and their deposing.*

**A**fter the death of *Theramenes*, the thirtie began to use such out-rage, as excelled their former villanies. For, having three thousand (as they thought) firm unto them, they robbed all others without fear or shame, despoiling them of lands and

and goods, & caused them to flee into banishment, for safeguard of their lives. This flight of the citizens procured their liberty, and the general good of the *Citie*. For the banished citizens, who were fled to *Thebes*, entred into consultation, and resolved to hazzard their lives in setting free the *City of Athens*. The very thought of such a practice had bin treason at home, which had no other danger abroad, than might be found in the execution. Seventie men, or thereabout, were the first undertakers, who with their Captain *Thrasybulus* took *Phyla*, a place of strength in the Territorie of *Athens*. No sooner did the thirtie hear of their exploit, than seek means to prevent further danger; assembling the three thousand, and their *Lacedæmonian* guard, with which force they attempted *Phyla*, but were with some losse of their men repelled. Finding the place too strong to be taken by assault, they intended to besiege it; which purpose came to nought by means of snow that fell, and other stormie weather, against which they had not made provision. Retiring therefore to the *City*, which above all they were to make good, they left the most of their guard, and two companies of Horse, to wearie out them which lay in *Phyla*, with a flying siege. But it was not long ere the followers of *Thrasybulus* were increased from seventie to seven hundred, which adventured to give charge upon those guards, of whom they cut off above an hundred and twentie. These small, but prosperous beginnings, added more to the number of those in *Phyla*, who now with a thousand men got entrance into *Piræus*, the suburb of *Athens*, lying on the Port. Before their coming the thirtie had resolved to fortifie the Town of *Eleusine*, to their own use, whereinto they might make an easie retreat, and save themselves from any sudden perill. It may well seem strange, that whereas their barbarous maner of government had brought them into such danger, they were so far from seeking to obtain mens good will, that contrariwise, to assure themselves of *Eleusine*, they got all of the place who could bear arms into their hands by a train, and wickedly (though under form of Justice) murdered them all. But, *Sceleribus tutum per scelera est iter*, the mischiefes which they had already done were such, as left them no hope of going backward, nor any other apparent likelihood of safetie, than by extending their crueltie unto all, seeing few or none were left, whom they could trust. When *Thrasybulus* and his fellows, who as yet were termed conspirators, had taken the *Piræus*, then were the three thousand armed again by the Tyrants, and brought to assault it; but in this enterprize *Thrasybulus* had the better, and repelled his enemies, of whom though there were flain to the number of seventie only, yet the victorie seemed the greater, because *Critias*, and one other of the thirtie, perished in that fight. The death of *Critias*, and the stout defence of *Piræus*, together with some exhortations used by *Thrasybulus* to the Citizens, wrought such effect, that the thirtie were deposed. Nevertheless there were so many of the three thousand, who having communicated with the thirtie in their misdeeds, feared to be called to a sharp account, that no peace, nor quiet form of government could be established. For Embassadors were sent to *Sparta*, who craving aid against *Thrasybulus* and his followers, had favourable audience, and a power sent to their assistance, both by land and sea, under the conduct of *Lyfander*, and his Brother, whom *Pausanias* the *Spartan* King did follow, raising an Armie of the Cities confederate with the *Lacedæmonians*. And here appeared first the jealousie, wherein some people held the State of *Sparta*. The *Bœotians* and *Corinthians*, who in the late wars had bin the most bitter enemies to *Athens*, refused to follow *Pausanias* in this expedition; alleging that it stood not with their oathes, to make war against that people, who had not hitherto broken any one article of the league: but fearing indeed, lest the *Lacedæmonians* should annex the Territorie of *Athens* to their own Demains. It is not to be doubted, that *Pausanias* took this answer in good part. For it was not his purpose to destroy those against whom he went, but only to crosse the proceedings of *Lyfander*, whom he so envied. Therefore having in some small skirmishes against them of *Thrasybulus* his party, made a shew of war, finally wrought such means, that all things were compounded quietly: the thirtie men, and such others, as were like to give cause of tumults, being sent to *Sparta*. The remainder of that tyrannicall faction, having withdrawn themselves to *Eleusine*, were shortly after found to attempt some innovation; whereupon the whole *City* rising against them, took their Captains, as they were coming to Parly, and slew them: which done, to avoid further inconvenience, a law was made, that all injuries past should be forgotten, and no man called into question for wrongs committed. By which order, wisely made, and carefully observed, the *City* returned to her former quietnesse.

## CHAP. X.

Of the expedition of Cyrus the younger.

## S. I.

The grounds of Cyrus his attempt against his brother.



He matters of Greece standing upon such terms, that no one estate durst to oppose it self against that of *Lacedamon*, young *Cyrus*, Brother to *Artaxerxes* King of *Persia*, having in his fathers life-time very carefully prosecuted the war against *Athens*, did send his messengers to *Sparta*, requesting that their love might appear no less to him, than that which he had shewed towards them in their dangerous war against the *Athenians*. To this request, being generally, the *Lacedamonians* gave a suitable answer, commanding their Admirall to perform unto *Cyrus* all service that he should require of him. If *Cyrus* had plainly discovered himself, and the *Lacedamonians* bent their whole power to his assistance, very like it is, that either the kingdom of *Persia* should have bin the recompence of his deserts; or that he perishing in battell, as after he did, the subversion of that Empire had forthwith ensued. But it pleased God, rather to shew unto the *Greeks* the waies, which under the *Macedonian* Ensigns, the victorious foot-steps of their posteritie should measure; and opening unto them the riches, and withall the weaknesse of the *Persian*, to kindle in them both desire and hope of that conquest, which he resorted to another generation; than to give into their hands that mighty kingdom, whose hour was not yet come. The love which *Parysatis* the Queen mother of *Persia* bare unto *Cyrus* her younger son, being seconded by the earnest favour of the people, & ready desires of many principall men, had moved this young Prince, in his fathers old age, to aspire after the succession. But being sent for by his Father (as hath before bin shewed) whose meaning was to curb this ambitious youth, he found his elder brother *Artaxerxes* established so surely by the old Kings favour, that it were not safe to attempt any means of displacing him, by whose disfavour himself might easily lose the place of a Vice-roy, which he held in *Asia* the lesse, and hardly be able to maintain his own life. The nearest neighbour to *Cyrus* of all the Kings Deputies in the lower *Asia*, was *Tissaphernes*, a man compounded of cowardise, treachery, craft, & all vices which accustomably branch out of these. This man accompanied *Cyrus* to his Father, using by the way all fair shewes of friendship, as to a Prince, for whom it might well be thought, that *Queen Parysatis* had obtained the inheritance of that mighty Empire. And it was very true, that *Parysatis* had used the best of her endeavour to that purpose, alleging that (which in former ages had bin much available to *Xerxes*, in the like disceputation with his elder brother) *Artaxerxes* was born whilest his father was a private man, but *Cyrus*, when he was crowned king. All which not sufficing, when the molt that could be obtained for *Cyrus*, was the pardon of some presumptuous demeanour, and confirmation of his place in *Lydia*, and the parts adjoining; then did this *Tissaphernes* discover his nature, and accuse his friend *Cyrus* to the new King *Artaxerxes*, of a dangerous treason intended against his person. Upon this accusation, whether true or false, very easily beleeved, *Cyrus* was arrested, and by the most vehement intreatie of his Mother very hardly delivered, and sent back into his own Province.

## S. II.

The preparations of Cyrus, and his first entrie into the War.

The form of government which the *Persian* Lieutenants used in their severall Provinces, was in many points almost Regall. For they made war and peace, as they thought it meet, not only for the Kings behoofe, but for their own reputation; usually indeed with the Kings enemies, yet sometimes one with another: which was the more easily tolerated, because their own heads were held only

at the Kings pleasure, which caused them to frame all their doings to his wil, whatsoever it were, or they could conjecture it to be. *Cyrus* therefore being settled in *Lydia*, began to consider with himself, the interest that he had in the Kingdom; the small assistance of his brothers love, held only by his Mothers intercession; the disgrace endured by his late imprisonment; and the means which he had by love of his own people, and that good neighbourhood of the *Lacedamonians*, whom he had bound unto him, to obtain the Crown for himself. Neither was it expedient that he should long sit idle, as waiting till occasion should present it self: but rather enterprise somewhat whilest yet his Mother lived, who could procure a good interpretation to all his actions, if they were no other lived, who could not only questionable. Hereupon he first began to quarrell with *Tissaphernes*, and seized upon many Towns of his jurisdiction, annexing them to his own Province, which displeased not *Artaxerxes* at all, who (besides that he was of condition somewhat simple) being truly paid by *Cyrus* the accustomed Tributes out of those places, was well contented to see his brothers hot spirit exercised in private quarrels. But *Tissaphernes*, whose base conditions were hated, & cowardize despised, although he durst not adventure to take arms against *Cyrus*, yet perceiving that the *Milesians* were about to give up themselves into the hands of that young Prince, as many other towns of the *Ionians* had done, thought by terrour to preserve his reputation, and keep the town in his own hands. Wherefore he slew many, and many he banished, who flying to *Cyrus*, were gently entertained, as bringing fair occasion to take arms, which was no small part of his desire. In levying Souldiers he used great policie; for he took not only the men of his own Province, or of the Countries adjoining, whose lives were ready at his will; but secretly he furnished some *Grecian* Captains with money, who being very good men of war, entertained Souldiers therewith, some of them warring in *Thrace*, others in *Thessalie*, others elsewhere in *Greece*; but all of them ready to crosse the Seas, at the first call of *Cyrus*, till which time they had secret instructions to prolong their severall wars, that the Souldiers might be held in continuall exercise, and ready in arms upon the sudden. *Cyrus* having sent a power of men to besiege *Miletus*, forthwith summoned these bands of the *Greeks*, who very readily came over to his assistance, being thirteen thousand very firm Souldiers, and able to make head (which is almost incredible) against the whole power of *Artaxerxes*. With this Army, and that which he had levied before, he could very easily have forced *Miletus*, and chased away *Tissaphernes* out of *Asia* the lesse: but his purpose was not so to lose time in small matters, that was to be employed in the accomplishment of higher designs. Pretending therefore that the *Psidians*, a people of *Asia* the lesse, not subject to the *Persian*, had invaded his Territory, he raised the siege of *Miletus*, and with all speed marched Eastward, leaving *Tissaphernes* much amazed, who had no leisure to rejoyce that *Cyrus* had left him to himself, when he considered, that so great an Army, and so strong, was never levied against the Rovers of *Psidia*, but rather against the great King his Master. For which cause taking a band of five hundred horse, he posted away to carry tidings to the Court, of this great preparation.

## S. III.

How Cyrus took his journey into the higher Asia, and came up close to his Brother.

The tumult which his coming brought was very great, and great the exclamations of the Queen *Statira*, against *Parysatis*, the Queen-Mother, whom she called the Author and occasioner of the war. But whilest the King in great fear was arming the high Countries in his defence, the danger hastened upon him very fast. For *Cyrus* made great marches, having his number much increased by the repair of his Countrymen, though most strengthened by the access of seven hundred *Greeks*, and of other four hundred of the same Nation, who revolted unto him from the King. How terrible the *Greeks* were to the *Barbarians*, he found by triall in a Muster, which (to please the Queen of *Cilicia*, who had brought him aid) he made in *Phrygia*; where the *Greeks* by his direction making offer of a charge upon the rest of his Army, which contained a hundred thousand men, the whole Camp (not perceiving that this was but a bravery) stood again, the victuallers and baggagers forsaking their cabins, & running all away for very fear. This was to *Cyrus* a joyfull spectacle, who knew very well, that his brother was followed

by men of the same temper, and the more unlikely to make resistance, because they were prest to the war against their will and dispositions, whereas his Army was drawn along by meer affection and good will. Nevertheless he found it a very hard matter to persuade the *Greeks* to passe the River of *Euphrates*. For the very length of the way which they had troden, wearied them with the conceit of the tedious return. Therefore he was driven, being yet in *Cilicia*, to seek excuses, telling them, that *Abrocomas*, one of the Kings principall Captains, and his own great enemy, lay by the River, against whom he requested them to assist him. By such devices, and excessive promise of reward, he brought them to *Euphrates*; where some of the *Greeks* considering, That who so passed the River first, should have the most thanks, and might safely return if the rest should refuse to follow them; they entred the Forde, whereby were all finally perswaded to do as some had begun: and being allured by great hopes, they resolved to seek out *Artaxerxes*, wherefoever he was to be found. The King in the mean time having raised an army of nine hundred thousand men, was not so confident upon this huge multitude, as to adventure them in triall of a plain battail. *Abrocomas*, who with three hundred thousand men, had under-taken to make good the Streights of *Syria*, which were very narrow, and fortified with a strong wall, and other defences of nature and art, which made the place to seem impregnable, had quitted the passage, and retired himself toward the Kings forces, not daring to look *Cyrus* in the face, who despairing to find any way by Land, had procured the *Lacedemonian* fleet, by the benefit whereof to have transported his Army. I doe not find that this cowardise of *Abrocomas*, or his Souldiers, who arrived not at the Camp, till five dayes were past after the battail, received either punishment, or disgrace; for they, toward whom he withdrew himself, were all made of the same metall.

Therefore *Artaxerxes* was upon the point of returing to the uttermost bounds of his Kingdom, untill by *Teribassus*, one of his Captains, he was perswaded not to abandon so many goodly Provinces to the enemy, who would thereby have gathered addition of strength, and (which in the sharp disputation of Title to a Kingdom is most available) would have grown superior in reputation. By such advice, the King resolved upon meeting with his brother, who now began to be secure, being fully perswaded that *Artaxerxes* would never dare to abide him in the field. For the King having cast up a Trench of almost fortie miles in length, about thirty foot broad, and eighteen foot deep, intended there to have encamped: but his courage failing him, he abandoned that place, thinking nothing so safe, as to be far distant from his enemies.

## S. IIII.

The battail between *Cyrus* and *Artaxerxes*.

THE Armie of *Cyrus* having overcome many difficulties of evil wayes, and scarcity of victuals, was much encouraged by perceiving this great fear of *Artaxerxes*; and being past this trench, marched carelesly in great disorder, having bestowed their Arms in Carts, and upon Beasts of carriage; when on the sudden one of their Vauit-currors, brought news of the Kings approach. Hereupon with great tumult they armed themselves, and had ranged their battails in good order upon the side of the river *Euphrates*, where they waited for the comming of their enemies, whom they saw not till it was after-noon. But when they saw the cloud of dust raised by the feet of that huge multitude, which the King drew after him, and perceived by their neer approach how well they were marshalled, comming on very orderly in silence, whereas it had bin expected, that rushing violently with loud clamours, they should have spent all their force upon the first brunt; and when it appeared that the fronts of the two Armies were so unequall in distent, being all embattailed in one body and square, that *Cyrus* taking his place (as was the *Persian* manner) in the midst of his own, did not with the corner, and utmost point thereof, reach to the half breadth of *Artaxerxes* his battail, who carried a front proportionable to his number, exceeding nine times that of *Cyrus*: then did the *Greeks* begin to distrust their own manhood, which was not accustomed to make proof of it self, upon such excessive odds. It was almost incredible, that so great an Armie should be so easily chased. Nevertheless, it quickly appeared, that these *Persians*, having learned (contrary to their custome) to give charge upon their

their enemies with silence, had not learned (for it was contrary to their nature) to receive a strong charge with courage. Upon the very first offer of on-set, made by the *Greeks*, all that beastly rabble of cowards fled amain, without abiding the stroke, or staying till they were within reach of a Dart. The Chariots armed with hooks and fitches (whereof *Artaxerxes* had two hundred, and *Cyrus* not twenty) did small hurt that day, because the drivers of them leaping down, fled away on foot. This base demeanour of his enemies gave so much confidence to *Cyrus* and his Followers, that such as were about him forth-with adored him as King. And certainly, the Title had bin assured unto him that day, had not he sought how to declare himself worthy of it, ere yet he had obtained it. For, perceiving that *Artaxerxes*, who found that part of the field which lay before him void, was about to encompass the *Greeks*, and to set upon them in the reare, he advanced with six hundred Horse, and gave so valiant a charge upon a Squadron of six thousand, which lay before the King, that he brake it, slaying the Captain thereof *Artagerles*, with his own hands, and putting all the rest to flight. Hereupon his whole company of six hundred, very few excepted, began to follow the chase, leaving *Cyrus* too ill attended, who perceiving where the King stood in troop, uncertain whether to fight, or leave the field, could not contain himself, but said, I see the man: and presently with a small handfull of men about him ran upon his brother, whom he strake through the Curace, and wounded in the breast. Having given this stroke, which was his last, he received immediatly the fatal blow, which gave period at once to his ambition and life, being wounded under the eye with a dart, thrown by a base fellow, where-with astonished, he fell dead from his horse, or so hurt, that it was impossible to have recovered him, though all which were with him, did their best for his sake; not caring afterwards for their own lives, when once they perceived that *Cyrus* their Master was slain. *Artaxerxes* caused the head and right hand of his brother to be forthwith stricken off, and shewed to his people, who now pursuing them, fled apace, calling upon the name of *Cyrus*, and desiring him to pardon them. But when this great accident had breathed new courage into the Kings troops, and utterly dismayed such *Persian* Captains, as were now, even in their own eyes, no better than rebels; it was not long ere the Camp of *Cyrus* was taken, being quite abandoned; from whence *Artaxerxes* making all speed, arrived quickly at the quarter of the *Greeks*, which was about three miles from the place where *Cyrus* fell. There he met with *Tissaphernes*, who having made way through the battail of the *Greeks*, was ready now to joyn with his Master in spoiling their Tents. Had not the news, which *Artaxerxes* brought with him of his brothers death, bin sufficient to countervail all disasters received, the exploit of *Tissaphernes* in breaking through the *Greeks* would have yielded little comfort. For *Tissaphernes* had not slain any one man of the *Greeks*, but contrariwise, when he gave upon them, they opening their battail, drave him with great slaughter through them, in such wise, that he rather escaped as out of an hard passage, than forced his way through the Squadron of the *Greeks*. Hereof the King being informed by him, and that the *Greeks*, as Masters of the field, gave chase to all that came in their light; they ranged their Companies into good order, and followed after these *Greeks*, intending to set upon them in the rear. But these good Souldiers perceiving the Kings approach, turned their faces, and made head against him; who not intending to seek honour with danger of his life, wheeled about and fled, being pursued unto a certain Village, that lay under a Hill, on the top whereof he made a stand, rather in a bravery, than with purpose to attempt upon these bold fellows any further. For he knew well that his brothers death had secured his estate, whom he would seem to have slain with his own hand, thinking that fact alone sufficient to give reputation to his valour; and this reputation so he thought that he might now preserve well enough, shewing a manly look half a mile off. On the top of this Hill therefore he advanced his Standard, a golden Eagle displayed on the top of a Spear. This ensign might have encouraged his people, had not some of the *Greeks* espied it, who not meaning that he should abide so neer them, with all their power marched toward him. The King discovering their approach, fled upon the spur, so that none remained in the place of battail, save onely the *Greeks*, who had lost that day not one man, nor taken any other harme, than that one of them was hurt with an arrow. Much they wondered that they heard no news of *Cyrus*, but thinking that he was pursuing the Army, they thought it was fittest for them,

having that day done enough, to return to their quarter, and take their Supper, to which they had good appetite, because the expectation of the Kings comming had given them no leisure to dine.

S. V.

*The hard estate of the Greeks after the fight, and how Artaxerxes in vain sought to have made them yield unto him.*

**I**T was now about the setting of the Sun, and they bringing home darke night with them, found their Camp spoiled, little or nothing being left that might be serve for food: so that wanting victuals to satisfie their hunger, they refreshed their weary bodies with sleep. In the mean season *Artaxerxes* returning to his Camp, which he entred by Torch-light, could not enjoy the pleasure of his good fortune entire, because he perceived that the baseness of his people, and weakness of his Empire, was now plainly discovered to the *Greeks*: which gave him assurance, that if any of these who had beheld the shamefull demeanor of his Army, should live to carry tidings home, it would not be long ere with greater forces they disputed with him for his whole Signory. Wherefore he resolved, to try all means, whereby he might bring them to destruction, and not let one escape to carry tidings of that which he had seen: to which purpose he sent them a brave message the next morning, charging them to deliver up their Arms, and come to his Gates, to await there upon his Mercie. It seems that he was in good hope to have found their high courages broken, upon report of his brothers death: but he was greatly deceived in that thought. For the *Greeks* being advertised that morning from *Arius*, a principall Commander under *Cyrus*, that his Master being slain, he had retired himself to the place of their last encamping, about eight miles from thence, whence intending to return into *Ionia*, his meaning was to dislodge the next day, awaiting for them so long if they would joyn with him, but resolving to stay no longer: they sent answer back to *Arius*, that having beaten the King out of the field, and finding none that durst resist them, they would place *Arius* himself in the Kings Throne, if he would joyn with them, and pursue the victory. Before they received any reply to this answer, the Messengers of *Artaxerxes* arrived at the Camp, whose errand seemed to the Captains very insolent: One told them, that it was not for the Vanquishers to yield of their Weapons; another, that he would dye ere he yielded to such a motion; a third asked, whether the King, as having the victory, required their Weapons; if so, why did he not fetch them? or, whether he desired them in way of friendship; for then would they first know, with what courtesie he meant to requite their kindnesse. To this question *Phalimus a Grecian*, waiting upon *Tissaphernes*, answered; That the King having slain *Cyrus*, knew no man that could pretend any Title to his Kingdom, in the midst whereof he held them fast enclosed with great Rivers, being able to bring against them such numbers of men, as they wanted strength to kill if they would hold up their throats; for which cause he accounted them his prisoners. These words, to them, who knew themselves to be free, were nothing pleasant. Therefore, one told *Phalimus*, that having nothing left, but their Arms and Valour, whilst they kept their Armes, their Valour would be serviceable; but should they yield them, it was to be doubted, that their bodies would not long remain their own. Hereat *Phalimus* laughed, saying; This young man did seem a Philosopher, and made a pretty speech; but that his deep speculation shewed his wits to be very shallow, if he thought with his Arms and Valour to prevaile against the great King. It seems that *Phalimus* being a Courtier, and employed in a businesse of importance, thought himself too profound a States-man, to be checked in his Embassage by a bookish discourser. But his wisdom herein failed him. For whatsoever he himself was (of whom no more is known than that he brought an unhonest message to his own Countrymen, perswading them basely to surrender their Weapons, and Lives, to the mercilesse Barbarians) this young Scholar by him despised, was that great *Xenophon*, who, when all the principall Commanders were surprized by treachery of the *Persians*, being a private Gentleman, and having never seen the wars before, undertook the conduct of the Army, which he brought safe into *Greece*, freeing it from all those, and from greater dangers than *Phalimus* could propound. Some there were who promised to be faithfull to the King, as they had bin to *Cyrus*, offering their

their service in *Egypt*, where they thought *Artaxerxes* might have use of them. But the final answer was, That without Weapons they could neither doe the King good as Friends, nor defend themselves from him as Enemies. Hereupon *Phalimus* delivered the Kings further pleasure, which was to grant them Truce, whilst they abode where they then were, denouncing Warre if they stirred thence; Whereunto he required their answer. *Clearchus* the Generall told him, they liked it. How (saith *Phalimus*) must I understand you? As choosing peace if we stay, or otherwise war, said *Clearchus*. But whether warre or peace, quoth this politique Embassadour: To whom *Clearchus* (not willing to acquaint him with their purpose,) Let our doings tell you; and so dismissed him, no wiser than he came. All that day the *Greeks* were faine to feed upon their Horses, Asses, and other Beasts, which they roasted with Arrowes, darts, and wooden targets, thrown away by the Enemies.

S. VI.

*How the Greeks began to return home-wards.*

**A**T night they took their way towards *Arius*, to whom they came at mid-night; being forsaken by four hundred foot, and forty horse, all *Thracians*, who fled over to the King, by whom how they were entertained, I doe not find. Like enough it is that they were cut in pieces; for had they been kindly used, it may well be thought that some of them should have accompanied *Tissaphernes*, & served as Stales to draw in the rest. *Arius* being of too base a temper, and birth, to think upon seeking the Kingdome for himself, with such assistance as might have given it unto *Cyrus*, was very well pleased to make covenant with them for mutuall assistance unto the last: Whereunto both parts having sworn, he advised them to take another way homeward, which should be somewhat longer, yet safer and siter to relieve them with victuals, than that by which they came. The next day, having made a wearisome march, and tyred the Souldiers, they found the Kings Army which had coasted them, lodged in certain Villages, where they purposed themselves to have encamped: towards which *Clearchus* made directly, because he would not seem by declining them to shew fear, or weakness. That the Kings men were contented to remove, and give place to their betters, it cannot be strange to any that hath considered their former behaviour; Nor strange, that the *Grecians*, being weary and hungry, and lying among enemies in an unknown Country, should be very fearfull: but it is almost past belief, that the noise which was heard of these poor men, calling one to another tumultuously, as the present condition inforced them to do, should make the *Persians* flee out of their Camp, and so affright the great King, that in stead of demanding their Arms, he should crave peace of them. The next day very early, came messengers from *Artaxerxes*, desiring free access for Embassadours, to entreat of peace. Were it not that such particulars doe best open the quality of the persons, by whom things were managed, I should hold it siter, to run over the generall passages of those times, than to dwell among circumstances. But surely it is a point very remarkable, That when *Clearchus* had willed the Messengers to bid the King prepare for battell, because the *Greeks* (as he said) wanting whereupon to dine, could not endure to hear of truce till their bellies were full; *Artaxerxes* dissembling the indignity, was contented sweetly to swallow down this pill, sending them guides, who conducted them to a place where was plenty of victuals to relieve them.

S. VII.

*How Tissaphernes, under colour of peace, betrayed all the Captains of the Greeks.*

**H**itherto the *Greekes*, relying upon their own vertue, had rather advanced their affairs, than brought themselves into any straits or termes of disadvantage. But now came unto them the subtle Fox *Tissaphernes*, who circumventing the Chiefe Commanders by fine sleights, did mischiefuously entrap them, to the extreme danger of the Army. He told them, that his Province, lying neer unto *Greece*, had caused him greatly to desire, that their deliverance might be wrought by his procurement; knowing well that in time to come, both they, and their Countrymen at home, would not be unthankfull for such a benefit. Herewithall hee forgot not to rehearse

the great service that he had done to his Master, being the first that advertised him of *Cyrus* his intent, and having not only brought him a good strength of men, but in the day of battell shewed his face to the *Greekes*, when all others turned their backs: that he, together with the King, did enter their Camp, and gave chase to the *Barbarians* that stood on the part of *Cyrus*. All this (quoth he) did I allege to the King, entreating that he would give me leave to conduct you safe into *Greece*; in which sure I have good hope to speed, if you will send a milde answer to him, who hath willed me to ask you, for what cause ye have borne Arms against him. The Captains hearing this, were contented to give gentle words, which *Tissaphernes* relating to the King, procured (though very hardly, as he said) that peace should be granted: the conditions whereof were; That they should passe freely through all the Kings Dominions, paying for that they took, and committing no spoil: yet that it should be lawfull for them to take victuals by force, in any place that refused to afford them an open Market. Hereupon both parties having sworn, the League was concluded, and *Tissaphernes* returning to the King to take leave, and end all businesse, came unto them again after twenty dayes, and then they set forward. This interim of twenty dayes, which *Tissaphernes* did spend at the Court, ministered great occasion of mistrust to his new Confederates. For besides his long abience, which alone sufficed to breed doubt, the Brethren, and Kindred of *Arius*, repairing daily to him, and other *Persians* to his Souldiers, did work him and them to wish assurance of pardon, and other allurements, that he daily grew more strange to the *Greeks* than formerly he had bin. This caused many to advise *Clearchus*, rather to passe forward as well as he might, than to rely upon covenants, and sit still whilst the King layed snares to entrap them. But he on the contrary perswaded them, to rest contented whilst they were well, and not to cast themselves again into those difficulties, out of which they were newly freed by the late Treatie; reciting withall their own wants, and the Kings means, but especially the Oathes mutually given and taken, wherewith hee saw no reason why the enemy should have clogged himself if hee meant mischief, having power enough to do them harm by a fair and open Warre.

*Tissaphernes* was a very honourable man (if honour may be valued by greatness and place in Court) which caused his Oath to be the more esteemed; for as much as no inforcement, or base respect, was like to have drawn it from him. But his fallhood was such, both in substance and in successe, as may fitly expound that saying, which proceeded from the fountain of Truth, *I hate a rich man a lyer*. A lyer may find excuse when it grows out of fear: for that passion hath his original from weakness. But when Power, which is a Character of the Almighty, shall be made the supporter of untruth, the fallhood is most abominable; for the offender, like proud *Lucifer*, advancing his own strength against the divine Justice, doth commit that sinne with an high hand, which commonly produceth lamentable effects, and is followed with sure vengeance. It was not long ere *Tissaphernes* found means to destroy all the Captains, whom hee subtly got into his power by a train; making the General *Clearchus* himself the mean to draw in all the rest. The businesse was contrived thus: Having travelled some dayes together in such wise, that the *Persians* did not encamp with the *Greeks*, who were very jealous of the great familiarity appearing between *Tissaphernes* and *Arius*; *Clearchus* thought it convenient to root out of *Tissaphernes* his brains all causes of distrust, whereof many had grown in that short time. To which purpose obtaining private conference with him, hee rehearsed the oath of Confederacie, which had past between them, shewing how religiously he would keep it; and repeating the benefits, which the *Greeks* did receive by the help of *Tissaphernes*, he promised that their love should appear to him not unfruitfull, if he would make use of their service against the *Myssians* or *Pisidians*, who were accustomed to infect his Provinces; or against the *Egyptians*, who were then Rebels to the great King. For which cause hee desired him, that whereas all divine and humane respects had linked them together, hee would not give place to any close accusation or suspicion, whereby might grow sudden inconvenience to either of them, upon no just ground. The faithlesse *Persian* was very much delighted with this speech, which ministered fair occasion to the execution of his purpose. Therefore hee told *Clearchus*, that all this was by him wisely considered, wishing him further to call to mind how many wayes hee could have used to bring them to confusion, without perill to himself, especially by burning the Country, through which they were to passe, whereby they must needs

needs have perished by meer famine. For which cause he said that it had bin great folly, to seek by perjurie, odious to God and Man, the destruction of such as were already in his hands. But the truth was, that his own love to them had moved him to work their safety, not onely for those ends which *Clearchus* had recounted, of pleasures that might redound to himself, and the King, by their assistance; but for that hee might by their friendship, hope to obtain what *Cyrus* had mist. Finally, he invited the credulous Gentleman to Supper, and sent him away so well assured of his good will, that he promised to bring all the Captains with him to the same place, where, in presence of them all, *Tissaphernes* likewise promised to tell openly, which of them had by secret information sought to raise dissention between them. *Clearchus* himself being thus deceived; with great importunity drew all the chief Commanders, and many of the inferiour Leaders, to repair with him to the Camp of *Tissaphernes*, whither followed them about two hundred of the common Souldiers, as it had been to some common Fair. But being there arrived, *Clearchus* with other the five principall Colonels, were called into the Tent, the rest staying without, where they had not waited long ere a signe was given, upon which they within were apprehended, and the residue slain. Forth-with certain bands of *Persian* Horsemen scoured the field, killing as many *Greeks* as they met, and riding up to the very Camp of the *Grecians*, who wondered much at the tumult, whereof they knew not the cause, till one, escaping sorely wounded, informed them of all that had been done. Hereupon the *Greeks* took Arms in haste, thinking that the enemy would forth-with have assailed their Camp. Anon they might perceive the Embassadors of *Tissaphernes*, among whom were his own brother, and *Arius*, followed with three hundred Horse, who called for the principall men in the Army, saying, that they brought a message from the King, which *Arius* delivered to this effect: That *Clearchus* having broken his faith, and the league made, was justly rewarded with death; that *Menon* and *Proxenus*, two other of the five Colonels, for detecting his treacherie, were highly honoured; and finally, that the King required them to surrender their Arms, which were due to him, as having belonged unto his servant *Cyrus*. When some altercation had followed upon this message, *Xenophon* told the Embassadors, that if *Clearchus* had in such sort offended, it was well that hee was in such sort punished: but hee willed them to send back *Menon* and *Proxenus*, whom they had so greatly honoured, that by them, as by common friends to both Nations, the *Greeks* might be advised how to answer the *Persian*. Hereunto the Embassadors knew not how to frame any reply, and therefore departed without speaking one word more. *Clearchus*, and the other four were sent to *Artaxerxes*, by whose commandement their heads were stricken off. I hold it not amisse to prevent the order of time, annexing to this perfidiousnesse of *Tissaphernes*, the reward which he afterward received. Hee saw his Province waisted by the *Greeks*, against whom receiving from his Master convenient aid of men and money, hee did soill manage his affairs, that neither subtiltie, nor perjury (to which hee failed not to have recourse) availed him; finally, the King was jealous of his cunning head, and sent a new Lieutenant unto those parts, who took it from his shoulders. Such was the recompence of his treacherie, which made him so mistrusted at home, that the service which hee could not doe, hee was thought upon private ends to neglect; and so hated abroad, that hee knew not which way to flee from the stroke, all the world being shut against him. But now let us return to the prosperity, wherein hee triumphed without great cause, having betrayed braver men than himself, and intending to bring the like mischief upon the whole Armie.

## §. VIII.

How *Xenophon* heartened the *Greeks*, and in despite of *Tissaphernes* went off safely.

Great was the heaviness of the Souldiers, being now left destitute of Leaders; and no lesse their fear of the evil hanging over their heads, which they knew not well how to avoid. Among the rest, *Xenophon*, whose learning supplied his want of experience, finding the deep sadnesse of the whole Army to be such as hindered them from taking any course of preventing the danger at hand, began to advise the

under-



under-officers of *Proxenus* his companies, whose familiar friend he had been, to bethink themselves of some mean, whereby their safety might be wrought, and the Souldiers encouraged: setting before their eyes whatsoever might serve for to give them hope, and above all, perswading them in no wise to yeeld to the mercy of their barbarous enemies.

Hereupon they desired him to take upon him the charge of that Regiment; and so together with him, the same night calling up such as were remaining of any account, they made choice of the fittest men to succeed in the places of those who were slain, or taken. This being done, and order set down for disburdening the Armie of all superfluous impediments, they easily comforted themselves for the losse of *Tissaphernes* his assistance, hoping to take victuals by force better cheap than he had been wont to sell them; To which purpose they intended to take up their lodging two or three miles further, among some plentiful Villages, and so to proceed, marching towards the heads of those great Rivers, which lay in their way, and to passe them where they were foordable. Many attempts were made upon them by *Tissaphernes*, whom they, serving all on foot, were not able to requite for the harm which they received by the *Persian* Archers, who shot at a farther distance than the *Greeks* could reach. For this cause did *Xenophon* provide slings, wherewith he over-reached the enemy; and finding some Horses fit for service, that were employed among the carriages, he set men upon them; training likewise his Archers to shoot compass, who had been accustomed to the point blank. By these means did he bear off the *Persians* who assailed him; and sometimes gave them chase with that band of fifty Horses, which being well backt with a firm body of footmen, and seconded with troupes of the light-armed shot and slingers, compelled the enemy to lie aloof. *Tissaphernes* not daring to come to handy-gripes with these resolute men, did possesse the tops of mountains, and places of advantage, by which they were to passe. But finally, when their valour made way through all such difficulties, he betook himself to that course, which was indeed the surest, of burning the Countrey. With great sorrow did the *Greeks* behold the Villages on fire, and thereby all hope of victuals cut off. Some advised to defend the Countrey, as granted by the enemy himself to be theirs; others to make more fires, if so perhaps the *Persians* might be ashamed to doe that which was the desire of such as made passage in hostile manner. But these were faint comforts. The best counsell was, that being near unto the *Carduchi*, a people enemy to the *Persians*, they should enter into their Countrey, passing over some high mountains which lay between them. This course they followed, which could not have availed them, if *Tissaphernes* had begun sooner to cut off their victuals, rather than to seek to force, or to circumvent them by his fine wit.

## §. IX.

The difficulties which the Greek Armie found in passing through the Land of the *Carduchi*.

Entering upon the Land of the *Carduchi*, they were encountered with many difficulties of wayes, but much more afflicted by the fierce Inhabitants, who, accustomed by force to defend themselves against the huge Armies of the *Persians*, were no way inferiour to the *Greeks* in daring, but only in the Art of Warre. They were very light of foot, skilfull Archers, and used the Sling well; which weapons in that mountainous Countrey were of much use against these poor travellers, afflicting them in seven dayes which they spent in that passage, farre more than all the power of the great King had done. Between the Territorie of these *Carduchi*, and the parts of *Armenia* confining them, ran *Centrites* a great River, upon which the *Greeks* refreshed themselves one day, rejoycing that they had so well escaped these dangers, and hoping that the remainder would prove easie. But the next morning they saw certain troops of Horses, that lay to forbid their passage. These were levied by the Kings deputies in those parts; *Tissaphernes* and his Companies having taken their way towards *Ionia*. The River was broad and deep, so that it was not possible for such as would enter it, to make resistance against those which kept the opposite bankes. To increase these dangers, the *Carduchi*, following upon them, lay on the side of a Mountain, within lesse than a mile of the water. But it was their good hap to discover a Foord, by which the greater

greater number of them passing over, did easily chase away the Subjects of the *Persian*, and then sending back the most expedite men, gave succour to the Rear-ward, against which the *Carduchi* being slightly armed, could not on plain ground make resistance hand to hand. These *Carduchi* seem to have inhabited the Mountains of *Niphates*, which are not far from the Spring of *Tygris*, though *Polomy* place them far more to the East upon the River of *Cyrus* in *Media*; wherein he differs much from *Xenophon*, whose relation being grounded upon his own knowledge, doth best in this case deserve credit. Of the River *Centrites* (as of many other Rivers, Towns, and Places, mentioned by *Xenophon*) I will not labour to make a conjecture, which may endure the severity of a Critique. For *Polomy*, and the whole Nation of *Geographers*, adde small light to this expedition: only of this last, I think it the same which falleth into *Tygris*, not much above *Artasgaris*, springing out of *Niphates*, and running by the Town of *Sardeva* in *Gordene*, a Province of *Armenia* the Great, wherein the *Greeks* having passed *Centrites* did arrive.

## §. X.

How *Teribazus* Governour of *Armenia*, seeking to entrap the *Greeks* with termes of feined peace, was disappointed, and shamefully beaten.

The Army finding in *Armenia* good provision, marched without any disturbance about fifty or threescore miles to the heads of the River *Tygris*, and passing over them, travailed as far further without resistance, till they were encountered by *Teribazus* at the River *Teleboas*, which *Xenophon* commends as a goodly water, though small, but *Polomy* and others omit it. *Teribazus* governed that Countrey for the *Persian*, and was in great favour with *Artaxerxes*, whose Court may seem to have bin a School, where the Art of fallhood was taught as wisdom. He desired peace of the *Greeks*, which was made upon this condition, That they should take what they pleased, but not burn down the Towns and Villages in their way. As soon as he had made this league, he leaved an Army, and besetting the Streights of certain Mountains which they were to passe, hoped well to make such benefit of their security, as might give him the commendation of being no lesse craftily dishonest than *Tissaphernes*. Yet his cunning failed of successe. For a great snow fell, which caused the *Greeks* to make many fires, and scatter themselves abroad in the Villages. *Teribazus* also made many fires, and some of his men wandred about seeking relief. By the fires he was discovered, and by a Souldier of his that was taken prisoner, the whole plot was revealed. Hereupon the *Greeks*, taking this captive with them for a guide, sought him out; and coming upon his Camp, did so affright him, that before the whole Army could arrive there, the shout which was raised by the Vaunt-currors, chased him away. They took his Pavilion, wherein (besides many slaves, that were Artificers of voluptuousnesse) very rich furniture was left by the treacherous coward, who returned no more to challenge it. From hence the Army went Northward, and passing *Euphrates*, nor far below the springs thereof, travailed with much difficulty through deep snow, being followed aloof by the enemy, who durst not approach them, but did cut off such as they found straggling behind. The Inhabitants of the Countrey, through which they marched, had their wintering houses under ground, wherein was found great plenty of victuals, and of Cattail, which likewise did winter in the same Cellars with the owners. Having refreshed themselves in those parts, & taken sufficient ease after the miserable journey, which had consumed many of them with extreme cold, they departed, leading with them many bond-slaves, & taking away (besides other Horses and Cattail) some Colts that were bred up for the great King.

## §. XI.

The passage of the Army to *Trabyzonde*, through the Countreies bordering upon the River of *Phasis*, and other obscure Nations.

So without impediment they came to the River *Phasis*, neer whereunto the people called *Phasiani*, *Tacchi*, and *Chalybes* were seated. These Nations joyned together, and occupying the tops of a ledge of Mountains, which the *Greeks*

were

were to passe, made countenance of war: but some companies being sent by night to seize upon a place of equall height to that whereon the enemies lay, making good the piece of ground which they had taken, secured the ascent of the rest, which caused these people to flye, every one retiring to the defence of his own. The first upon whose Countreie the *Greeks* did enter were the *Tachii*, who conveying all their provision of victuals into strong holds, brought the Army into much want, untill with hard labour one place was forced, wherein great store of Cartail were taken; the people, to avoid captivity, threw themselves head-long down the rocks, the very women throwing down first their own children, and then casting themselves upon them. Here was taken a great bootie of Cartail, which served to feed them, travelling through the land of the *Chalybes*, of whom they got nothing but strokes. The *Chalybes* were a very stout Nation, well armed at all points, and exceeding fierce. They encountered the *Greeks* hand to hand, killing as many as they took prisoners, and cutting off their heads, which they carried away, singing and dancing, to the great grief of their companions living; who were glad, when after seven dayes journey they escaped from those continual skirmishes, wherewith they had bin vexed by these *Barbarians*. Hence travelling through a good corn-Country, inhabited by an obscure Nation called the *Scythini*, they came to a rich Town, the Lord whereof, and of the Region adjoining, used them friendly, and promised to guide them to a Mountain, whence they might discover the *Euxine* Sea. From *Gymnias* (which was the name of his Town) he led them through the Territories of his enemies, desiring them to waste it with sword and fire. After five dayes march, they came to a Mountain called *Teches*, being (as I think) a part of the Mountains called *Moschici*, whence their guide shewed them the Sea; towards which they bent their course: and passing friendly through the Region of the *Macrones*, (with whom by means of an interpreter, found among themselves, who born in that place had bin sold into *Greece*, they made a good peace) they arrived in the Land of *Colchos*, wherein stands the Citie of *Trabizond*, called then *Trapezus*, a Colonie of the *Greeks*. The *Colchi* entertaining them with hostility, were requited with the like; for the Army having now good leisure to repose themselves among their friends the *Trapezuntians*, did spoyle the Country thirty dayes together, forbearing only the Borderers upon *Trabizonde*, at the Citizens request.

## s. XII.

How the Army began at Trabizond to provide a Fleet, wherewith to return home by Sea: how it came into the Territorie of Synope, and there persecuted the same purpose.

Having now found an Haven Town, the Souldiers were desirous to take shipping, & change their tedious Land-journeys into an easie Navigation. To which purpose *Cherisophus* a *Lacedemonian*, one of the principall Commanders, promised by means of *Anaxibis* the *Lacedemonian* Admirall, who was his friend, that he would provide Vessels to embark them. Having thus concluded, they likewise took order for the staying of such ships as should passe that way, meaning to use them for their navigation. Left all this provision should be found insufficient for the transportation of the whole Army, *Xenophon* perswaded the Cities adjoining to clear the wayes, and make an easie passage for them by Land, whereunto the Souldiers were utterly unwilling to give eare, being desirous to return by Sea: but the Countreie, fearing what inconvenience might grow by their long stay, did readily condescend to *Xenophons* request. Two ships they borrowed of the *Trapezuntians*, which they manned and sent to Sea: the one of them sailed directly into *Greece*, forsaking their Companions, who had put them in trust to bring ships into the Port of *Trabizonde*: the other took Merchants and passengers, whose goods were safely kept for the owners, but the Vessels were stayed to increase the fleet. After long aboad, when victuals began to fail, by reason that all the Land of the *Colchi*, neer unto the Camp, was already quite wasted, they were faine to embark their sick men, with the women, children, and such of the baggage as might best be spared, in those few ships which they had already provided. The rest of the Armie took their way by Land to *Cerasus*, a *Greek* Town, where the fleet likewise arrived. Here the Army being mustered, was found to consist of eight thousand & six hundred men. From hence they passed through the Country of the *Mosynaci*, who were divided

\* *Mosynaci* a Nation of Pontus called *Colchians*.

divided into factions. The stronger partie despising their friendship, caused them to joyn them with the weaker whom they left Masters of all.

The next place of their abode was a *Coryora*, a *Greek* Town likewise, and a Colonie of the *Synopians*, as *Trapezus* and *Cerasus* were; but the entertainment which here they found was very churlish, having neither an open Market afforded to them, nor the sick men that were among them admitted into any house. Hereupon the Souldiers entered the Town by force, and (committing no outrage) bestowed those which were sick in convenient lodgings, taking into their own hands the custody of the Gates. Provision for the Army they made by strong hand, partly out of the Territory of the *Paphlagonians*, partly out of the Lands belonging to the Town. These news were unwelcome to *Sinope*, whence Embassadours were sent to the Camp, who complaining of these dealings, and threatening to joyn with the *Paphlagonians*, if redresse could not otherwise be had, were roundly answered by *Xenophon*. That meer necessity had enforced the Army to teach those of *Coryora* good manners in so bad a method: letting them know, that he feared not to deal with them and the *Paphlagonians* at once; though perhaps the *Paphlagonians* would be glad to take *Sinope* it self, to which, if cause were given, they would lend assistance. Upon this answer the Embassadours grew better advised, promising all friendship that the State of *Sinope* could shew, and commanding the Town of *Coryora* to relieve the Souldiers as well as they might. Further they promised to assist them with shipping, letting them understand how difficult the passage by Land would prove, in regard of the many and great Rivers, as *Thermodon*, *Iris*, *Halys*, and *Parthenius*, which crossed their way. This good counsaile, and the fair promises accompanying it, were kindly accepted by the Army, which well perceived, that the City of *Sinope* would spare for no cost, to be freed from such a neighbourhood. It was therefore decreed that they would passe the rest of the way by Sea; provided that if there should want such number of Vessels as might serve to imbarke every one of them, then would they not put from the shore.

## s. XIII.

Of dissention which arose in the Armie; and how it was embarked.

Hitherto the danger of enemies, and miseries of weather and wants, had kept the companie in firm unity; which now began to dissolve and to thaw, by the neighbouring air of *Greece*, warming their heads with private respects to their severall ends and purposes. Whilest they, who were sent as Agents from the Camp, remained at *Sinope*, *Xenophon* considering the strength and valour of his men, & the opportunity of the coast whereton they lay, thought it would be an honourable work to build a City in those parts, which were soon like to prove great and wealthy, in regard both of their own puissance, and of the great repair of the *Greeks* into that quarter. For this cause he made sacrifice, according to the superstition of his time and Countreie, divining of his successe by the entrails of beasts. The Sooth-sayer whom he employed had received a great reward of *Cyrus*, for conjecturing aright, that *Artaxerxes* would not give battail in ten dayes: he therefore, having preserved his money carefully, was desirous to be soon at home, that he might freely enjoy his gettings. By him the purpose of *Xenophon* was divulged, which was interpreted according to the diversitie of mens opinions; some approving the motion, but the greater part rejecting it. They of *Sinope* and *Heraclea*, being informed of this consultation, were fore afraid, lest the povetrie of the Souldiers, who had not wherewith to maintain themselves at home, should give successe to the project. Which to prevent, they promised to supply the Army with a sufficient fleet, and likewise offered mony to some of the Captains, who thereupon undertook to give the Souldiers pay, if they would presently set sail for *Greece*. One of these Captains being a banished man, desired them to follow him into *Troas*; another offered to lead them into *Cherronesus*. *Xenophon*, who desired only the common good, was pleased greatly with these propositions, and professed openly that he would have them to set forward, & hold together in any case, punishing him as a traitor that should forsake the Armie, before such time as they were arrived at their journeyes end. *Silanus* the Sooth-sayer, who had uttered *Xenophons* purpose, was hereby staid from outrunning his fellows, and driven to abide with his wealth among poor men, longer than stood

\* *Coryora* a Port-Town in the same Part of the same.

\* *Sinope* a Port-Town in *Leucosyria*, a Colonie of the *Mysians*.

stood with his good liking. Also the other Captains were much troubled and afraid, when they perceived, that ships were prepared sufficient for their Navigation, but that the money promised to them, and by them to the Souldiers, came not. For the people of *Sinope*, and *Heraclea*, knowing that the Armie was now resolved for the voyage, and that *Xenophon*, whom they feared, had perswaded them to this resolution, thought it the wisest way to furnish them with a Navie, whilst they were in good readinesse, to depart, but to keep the money to themselves. The Captains therefore, who being disappointed by these towns, found themselves in great danger of their men, whom they had deceived with fair hopes, repented much of their fair offers, and signifying as much to *Xenophon*, prayed him to make proposition to the Armie, of taking the ships, & saying to *Phasis*, where they might seize upon Lands, and plant themselves in such wise as should stand best with their good liking. But finding him cold in the business, they began to work the principall of their own followers, hoping by them to draw in all the rest. These news becomming publike, bred a suspicion of *Xenophon*, as if he had won the rest of the Captains to his purpose, and meant now to carry the Army quite another way from their own home. Wherefore assembling the Companies, he gave them satisfaction, and withall complained of some disorders, which he caused them to redresse. A general inquisition was likewise made of offences committed since the death of *Cyrus*, which being punished, all things were in quiet. Shortly after came Embassadors from *Corylus*, Lord of the *Paphlagonians*, who sending presents, desired peace of the *Greeks*: the Embassadors were friendly entertained, and peace concluded, which needed not to have bin sought for, that the *Greeks*, having now their fleet in a readines, did soon weigh Anchors, and set sail for *Harmene* the Port of *Sinope*, whither *Cherisophon* came, bringing with him a few Gallies from the Admiral *Anaxibius*, who promised to give the Army pay as soon as they came into the parts of *Greece*.

## §. XIV.

Another great dissension and distraction of the Army. How the mutiners were beaten by the Barbarians, and rescued by *Xenophon*.

THE nearer that they approached to *Greece*, the greater was their desire to make provision for themselves, that they might not return home empty-handed. Wherefore trusting well that if the charge of the Armie were absolutely committed to one sufficient man, he might the more conveniently procure the good of them all, they determined to make *Xenophon* sole Commander of all, in whose favour as well the Captains as the common Souldiers were very earnest and violent. But he, either fearing to displease the *Lacedemonians*, who were jealous of him already (being incensed by that fugitive who forsook the army at *Trabizond*, flying with one of their two ships) or moved by some tokens appearing to him in the entrails that threatened ill successe to his government, procured with vehement contention, that this honour was laid upon *Cherisophon*, a *Lacedemonian*. It seems that *Xenophon*, considering the vexation incident to the conduct of a voluntary Army, wanting pay, did wisely in yielding to such tokens as forbade him to accept it: especially, knowing how well their desire, which was, by right or by wrong, to get wealth whosoever it might be found, without all regard of friend or foe. *Cherisophon* had bin General but six or seven dayes, when he was deposed, for having bin unwilling to rob the Town of *Heraclea*, which had sent presents to the Camp, and bin very beneficiall unto them in lending ships for their transportation. Two daies they had sailed by the coast of *Asia*, when being past those great rivers, which would have given impediment to their journey by Land, they touched at *Heraclea*, where consulting how to take their way onwards, whether by Land or Sea, one seditious man began to put them in mind of seeking to get somewhat for themselves, telling them that all their provision would be spent in three dayes, and that being now come out of the enemies Country, victuals and other necessaries could not be had without money; for which cause he gave advice to send messengers into the Town of *Heraclea*, giving the Citizens to understand what their wants were, and demanding of them three thousand pieces of money, called *Cyzicens*, which sum amounteth to two thousand and five hundred pound sterling, or thereabout. This motion was greatly applauded, and the sum raised to ten thousand *Cyzicens* at least: which to require, they thought *Cherisophon*,

as being General, the fittest man; others had more desire to send *Xenophon*: but in vain, for they both refused it, and renounced the action as dishonest. Left therefore either of these should fail in managing the business which agreed not with his disposition, others of more impudency and less discretion were sent, who in such wise delivered their insolent message, that the Citizens taking time to deliberate upon their request, brought what they could out of the fields into the Town, and shutting the Gates, did forthwith man the Walls. When the Souldiers perceived themselves to be disappointed of their ravenous purpose, they fell to mutiny, saying, That their Leaders had betrayed them: and being for the more part of them *Arcadians* and *Achaans*, they forsook immediately *Cherisophon* and *Xenophon*, chusing new Leaders out of their own number. Above four thousand and five hundred they were, all heavily armed, who electing ten Captains, sailed into the Port of *Calphai*, which is in the mid-way between *Heraclea* and *Byzantium*, with purpose to assaile the *Bythinians* on the sudden. With *Cherisophon* there abode two thousand and one hundred; of whom one thousand and four hundred were armed weightily: *Xenophon* had two thousand foot, three hundred whereof were lightly armed, and forty horse; which small band had done good service already, and could not have bin spared now. *Cherisophon* had agreed with *Cleander* Governour of *Byzantium*, to meet him at the mouth of the River *Calphai*, whither *Cleander* promised to bring some Gallies to convey him over into *Greece*; for which cause he took his way thither by Land, leaving to *Xenophon* such shipping as he had, who passing some part of the way by Sea, landed upon the confines of *Heraclea*, and *Thracia Asatica*, intending to make a cut through the mid-land Country to the *Propont*. The Mutiners who had landed at *Calphai* by night, with purpose to take spoiles in *Bythina*, divided themselves into ten Companies, every Captaine leading his own Regiment into some Village, five or six miles from the Sea; in the greater Towns were two Regiments quartered: and so was that part of the Country surprised on the sudden, and sacked all at one time. The place of Rendezvous was an high piece of Ground, where some of them arrived, finding no disturbance, others, not without much trouble and danger: two Companies were broken and defeated, only eight men escaped, the rest were all put to the sword. For the *Thracians* which had slipped at first out of the Souldiers hands, did raise the Country, and finding the *Greeks* laden with booty, took the advantage of their disorder, cutting in pieces those two Regiments: which done, they attempted the rest, encompassing the hill whereon they encamped. One great advantage the *Thracians* had, that being all light armed, they could at pleasure make retreat from these *Arcadians* and *Achaans*, who wanting the assistance of horse, and having neither Archers nor Slingers among them, were driven to stand merely upon their defence, bearing off with greater danger, & many wounds received, the Darts and Arrows of the *Barbarians*, till finally they were driven from their watering place, and enforced to crave parley. Whatsoever the Articles of composition were, the *Thracians* yielded to all; but pledges for assurance they would give none, without which the *Greeks* well knew, that all promises of such people, especially so incensed, were nothing worth. In the mean time *Xenophon* holding his way quietly through the In-land Region, did enquire of some Travellers, whether they knew ought of any *Grecian* Army, passing along those parts: & receiving by them true information of the desperate case into which these Gallants had foolishly thrown themselves, he marched directly towards the place where they lay, taking with him for guides, them who gave him the intelligence. His horse-men he sent before to discover, & to scowr the waies; the light armed foot-men took the hill tops on either hand, all of them setting fire on whatsoever they found combustible: whereby the whole Country seemed to be on a light flame, to the great terror of the enemies, who thought that some huge Army had approached. That night he encamped on a hill, within five mile of the *Arcadians*, encamping still the number of his fires, which he caused hastily to be quenched soon after Supper. The enemies perceiving this, thought certainly that he would have fallen upon them in the dark, which caused them in all haste to dislodge. Early in the next morning *Xenophon* coming thither in very good order, to have given battell, found that his device, to affright the *Thracians*, had taken full effect; but he marvelled that the *Greeks* were also departed, concerning whom he learned by enquiry, that they removed at break of day, & perceived by signes that they had taken the way to the Port of *Calphai*, in which journey he overtook them. They embraced him and his, with great joy: confessing that they themselves had

Rrr

thought

thought the same which the enemies did, looking that he should have come by night, wherein finding themselves deceived, they were afraid lest he had forsaken them, and therefore hastened away to overtake him, and joyn with him. So they arrived at the Haven of *Calphas*, where it was decreed, That whosoever from thenceforth made any motion to dis-joyn the Army, should suffer death.

## §. XV.

*Of divers pieces of service done by Xenophon; and how the Army returned into Greece. The occasions of the War between the Lacedæmonians and the Persians.*

**T**He Haven of *Calphas* lay under a goodly head-land, that was very strong, and abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits, except Olives. There was also Timber for building and shipping, and a very convenient Sea for a great City. All which commodities that might have allured the Souldiers to stay there, and to plant, caused them to haste away, fearing lest *Xenophon* should find some device to have misled himself and them in that place. For the greater part of them had good means to live at home; neither did they so much for hope of gain follow *Cyrus* in that War, as in regard of his Honour, and the love which they bare unto him: the poorer sort were such as left their Parents, Wives, and Children, to whom (though failing of the riches which they had hoped to purchase) they were now desirous to return. But whether it were so that *Xenophon* found advantage by their own superstition, to make them stay, which they greatly suspected; or whether the signs appearing in the entrails, did indeed forbid their departure; so long they were enforced to abide in the place till victuals failed; neither would the Captains lead them forth to forrage the Country, untill the Sacrifices should promise good successe. *Cherisophus* was dead of an Ague, and his ships were gone, being returned to the *Heracleans*, of whom they were borrowed. His followers were joynt to the rest of the Army, which the greater it was, the more provision it needed, and the sooner felt want. For which cause, he that was chosen Coronel into the place of *Cherisophus*, would needs adventure to gratifie the Souldiers with the spoil of some Villages that stood near at hand; in which enterprize he found ill successe, the whole Country lying in wait to intrap him, and an Army of Horse being sent by *Pharnabazus* the *Satrapa*, or *Vice-roy* of *Phrygia*, to the assistance of these *Bythinian* *Thracians*, which troupes falling upon the *Greeks* that were scattered abroad in seeking booty, slew five hundred of them, and chased the rest to a certain Mountain there by. The news of this overthrow coming to *Xenophon*, he led forth a part of the Army to the rescue of those that survived, and brought them safe to the Camp; upon which the *Bythinians* made an offer that night, and breaking a *Corps du garde*, slew some, pursuing the rest to the very Tents. This new courage of the enemy, together with the present condition of the Army, so disheartened and unfurnished of necessities, caused the *Greeks* to remove their Camp to a place of more strength; which having intrenched, and committed to the defence of such as were least able to endure travell, *Xenophon* with the firmest and best able men went forth, both to bury those which were lately slain, and to abate the pride of the *Thracians*, and their assistance. In this journey his demeanour was very honourable. For having given buriall to the dead, the Enemy was discovered, lying on the tops of the hills adjoining, to whom (notwithstanding that the way was very rough and troublesome, so that some thought it a matter of too great danger, to leave at their backs a wood scarce passable) he marched directly, telling his men plainly, that he had rather follow the enemy with half the number, than turn his back to them with twice as many, & letting them further know, that if they did not charge the *Barbarians*, he would not fail with the greater resolution to pursue them; from whom if they could safely retire to the camp, yet what should they do there, wanting victuals to sustain them in the place, and ships to carry them away? Wherefore he willed them rather to fight well that day, having eaten their dinners, than another day fasting; and not to regard the uneasy return, which might serve to stay Cowards from running away, but to wish unto the Enemy a fair and easie way, by which he might fly from them. These persuasions were followed with so valiant execution, that both *Persians* and *Bythinians* being chased out of the field, abandoned the Country forthwith, removing their Families, and leaving all that could not suddenly be conveyed away,

to the discretion of the *Greeks*, who at good leisure gathered the Harvest of these bad Neighbours fields. This was the last fight which they had on the side of *Asia*. For they were not only suffered quietly to enjoy the spoyl of the Country, but when the opinion grew common in those parts, that it was the intent of *Xenophon* to plant a Colony on the Port of *Calphas*, Embassadors were sent from the Neighbour people, to desire friendship, and make offer of their best assistance. But the Souldiers had no mind to stay. Wherefore entring further into *Bythinia*, they took a great booty, which they carried away unto *Chrysopolis*, a city near unto *Chalcedon*, where they sold it. *Pharnabazus*, Lieutenant in *Phrygia* to *Artaxerxes*, did greatly fear, lest their long stay in that Country might breed in them a desire to visite his Province, where they might have found great wealth, and little power to guard it. Therefore he sent to the *Lacedæmonian* Admirall, entreating him with much instance and large promises to waite them over into *Europe*; to whom *Anaxibius* the Admirall condescending, promised to give the Souldiers pay, as soon as they arrived at *Byzantium*. So were they carried out of *Asia* at the intreaty of the *Persian*, who in the height of his pride had thought them so surely imprisoned with mighty Rivers, that he not only denied to permit their quiet departure, but willed them to surrender their Armes into his hands, and so to yeild their lives to his discretion. How discourteously they were intreated by *Anaxibius*, and how to requite his injurious dealings, they seized upon *Byzantium*, which by *Xenophons* persuasion they forbore to sack; I hold it superfluous to relate. For the residue of their doings appertain little to the generall course of things. But this expedition, as in all ages it was glorious, so did it both discover the secrets of *Asia*, and stir up the *Greeks* to think upon greater enterprises, than ever their forefathers had undertaken. Likewise it was the only remarkable action which the time afforded. For the *Roman* Wars did hitherto extend no further than to the next neighbouring Towns of *Italy*; and in *Greece* all things were quiet, the *Lacedæmonians* ruling insolently, but without disturbance. True it is, that the seeds of the War shortly following, which the *Lacedæmonians* made upon *Artaxerxes*, were already sown, before these companies returned out of the high Countries of *Asia*. For the Towns of *Ionis* which had sided with young *Cyrus* against *Tissaphernes*, if not against the great King, prepared to rebel; which they thought safer, than to fall into the hands of *Tissaphernes*, who was now appointed Lieutenant, both of his old Province, and of all that had belonged to *Cyrus*. Wherefore the *Ionians* besought the *Lacedæmonians* to send them ayd, whereby to recover their liberty; and obtained their request. For a power was sent over, under conduct of *Thimbro* a *Spartan*, who bestowed his men in such Towns as had already revolted, to secure the Cities and their Fields, but not to make any offensive War.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the affairs of Greece, whilest they were managed by the Lacedæmonians.*

## §. I.

*How the Lacedæmonians took courage by example of Xenophons Army, to make War upon Artaxerxes.*

**I**T seems that the *Lacedæmonians* did well perceive in how ill part *Artaxerxes* took their favour shewed unto his brother, and yet were timorous in beginning an open war against him, thinking it sufficient to take all care that no advantage might slip, which could serve to strengthen their Estate, by finding the *Persian* work beyond the Sea. But when *Xenophons* Army had revealed the baseness of those effeminate *Asiatiques*, and rehearsed the many victories which they themselves had gotten, upon termes of extreme disadvantage; then was all *Greece* filled with desire of undertaking upon this huge unwieldy Empire, thinking it no hard matter for the joyned forces

forces of that whole Nation, to hew out the way to *Susa*, whereof one handfull had opened the passage to *Babylon*; and further, finding no power that was able to give them resistance, in all that long journey of four and thirty thousand two hundred and fifty five furlongs, spent in going and returning, which make of English miles about four thousand two hundred fourscore and one, a very painfull march of one year and three months. Neverthelesse, the civill distraction wherewith *Greece* was miserably torn, and especially that hot fire of the *Theban* war, which, kindled with *Persian* gold, brake forth suddenly into a great flame, drew back out of *Asia* the power of the *Lacedemonians*, to the defence of their own Estate; leaving it questionable, whether *Agesslaus* having both the same and far greater forces, could have wrought proportionable effects. Sure it is, that in the whole space of two years, which he spent in *Asia*, his deeds procured more commendation of magnanimity and fair behaviour, than of stout courage, and great, or profitable achievements. For how highly soever it pleased *Xenophon*, who was his friend, and follower in this, and in other wars, to extoll his vertue; his exploits being only a few incursions into the Countries lying near the Sea, carrying no proportion to *Xenophons* own journey, which I know not whether any Age hath paralleled: the famous retreat of *Canon* the *Briston* with six thousand men from *Aquileia*, to his own Country, through all the breadth of *Italy*, and length of *France*, in despite of the Emperour *Theodosius*, being rather like it than equall. But of *Agesslaus* and his wars in *Asia* and *Greece*, we shall speak more in due place.

## §. II.

*The prosperous beginnings of the War in Asia.*

20

**T** *Himbro* receiving *Xenophons* men, began to take in Towns, and to entertain all such as were willing to revolt from the *Persian*, who were many, and some of them such, as had been highly beholding to the King; who seem to have had no other cause of discontent, than that they were to live under the government of *Tissaphernes*, whom all others did as vehemently hate, as the King his Master did love him. The managing of the war begun by *Himbro*, was for his oppressions taken out of his hands, and committed to *Dercyllidas* a *Spartan*, who behaved himself as a good man of War, and a wise Commander. For whereas the rule of the low-Countries of *Asia* was divided between *Pharnabazus* and *Tissaphernes*, who did ill agree, *Pharnabazus* being the worthier man, but the other by his Princes favour the greater, and having the chief command in those Wars against the *Greeks*; *Dercyllidas*, who did bear a private hatred to *Pharnabazus* (knowing well that *Tissaphernes* was of a mischievous nature, and would not be sorry to see his Corrivall thoroughly beaten, though to the Kings losse) made an appointment with *Tissaphernes*, and forthwith entred *Aolis*, which was under the jurisdiction of *Pharnabazus*, which Province in few dayes, he brought into his own power.

That Country of *Aolis* had about the same time suffered a violent alteration, which gave easie successe to the attempts of *Dercyllidas*. *Zenis* a *Dardanian* had bin Deputy to *Pharnabazus* in those parts; after whose death his wife *Mania* procured his Office, wherein she behaved her self so well, that she not only was beloved of the people under her government; but enlarged her Territory, by the conquest of certain Towns adjoining; and sundry times gave assistance to *Pharnabazus* in his Wars against the *Myrians* and *Persians*. For she had in pay some Companies of *Greeks*, whose valour by her good usage, did her great service. But somewhat before the arrival of *Dercyllidas* in those parts, a Son-in-law of hers, called *Midias*, whom she trusted and loved much, being blinded with ambition, found means to stifle her, and kill her son of seventeen years old; which done, he seized upon two of her principall Towns, wherein her treasure lay, hoping to have been admitted into possession of her whole estate. Being denyed entrance by her Souldiers that lay in Garrison, he sent Messengers with presents to *Pharnabazus*, desiring him to make him Governour in the place of *Mania*. His presents were not onely rejected by *Pharnabazus*, but revenge of his foul treason threatned, whereby the wicked villain was driven into termes of almost utter desperation. In the mean time came *Dercyllidas*, to whom the Towns of *Mania*, that held against *Midias*, did quickly open their Gates. One onely Town stood out four dayes (against the will





will of the Citizens, who were covetous of liberty) the Governour striving in vain to have kept it to the use of *Pharnabazus*. Now remained only two Cities, *Gergeſhe* and *Scepsis*, which the Traytor held, who fearing all men, as being loved of none, ſent Embaſſadours to *Dercyllidas*, deſiring leave to ſpeak with him, and pledges for his ſecurity: upon the delivery of which, he iſſued out of *Scepsis*, and comming into the Camp, made offer to joyn with the *Greeks* upon ſuch conditions as might ſeem reaſonable. But he was plainly told by *Dercyllidas*, that other condition there was none, than to ſet the Citizens freely at liberty. And preſently upon theſe words they marched toward *Scepsis*. When *Midias* perceived that it was in vain to ſtrive againſt the Army, and the Town-men, who were all of one mind; he quietly went along with *Dercyllidas*, who remaining but a few hours in the City, did a ſacrifice to *Minerva*, and then leading away the Garriſon of *Midias*, he left the City free, and departed toward *Gergeſhe*. *Midias* did not forſake his Company, but followed him, earneſtly intreating that he might be ſuffered to retain *Gergeſhe*: but comming to the Gates, he was bidden to command his Souldiers that they ſhould be opened; for (quoth *Dercyllidas*) I muſt here likewiſe doe a ſacrifice to *Minerva*. The Traytor, not daring to make deniall, cauſed his Mercenaries to open the Gates, whereby *Dercyllidas*, taking poſſeſſion of the place, rendered pay to the Garriſon, who did not reſuſe to ſerve under his Enſignes. This done, all the goods of *Mania* were ſeized upon, as belonging to one that had been ſubject to *Pharnabazus*, who was enemy to the *Greeks*: and ſo the murderous wretch was ſent away naked, not knowing in what part of the World he might find any place to hide his deteſted head. *Dercyllidas* having in eight dayes taken nine Cities, purpoſed for the eaſe of his Confederates to winter in *Bythinia*, to which end he took Truce with *Pharnabazus*, who had not any deſire of Warre. That Winter, and the Summer enſuing, the truce being continued, held; in which time, beſides the waſting of *Bythinia*, the neck of Land joyning *Cherronea* to the Main, was fortified, being four or five miles in breadth; by which means eleven Towns, with much good Land belonging to them, were freed from the incuſions of the wilde *Thracians*, and made fit and able to victuall the Camp. Likewiſe the Citie of *Atarne* was taken, which was of great ſtrength, and very well ſtored with proviſion. After this, *Dercyllidas* had command from *Sparta*, to divert the Warre into *Caria*, where was the ſeat of *Tiſſaphernes*; for that hereby it was thought not uneaſie to recover all the Towns of *Ionia*; *Pharax* the Admirall of the fleet (which was a yearly office, being appointed to joyn with him. Though it was manifeſt that *Tiſſaphernes* had neglected *Pharnabazus* in time of neceſſity, yet was he not in his own danger requited with the like. For *Pharnabazus* having reſpect to the Kings ſervice, came to aſſiſt his private enemy *Tiſſaphernes*, and ſo paſſing into *Caria*, they thruſt Garriſons into all places of ſtrength; which done, they marched towards *Ionia*, hoping to find the Towns ill manned for reſiſtance. As theſe *Persians* were deſirous to keep the Warre from their own doores, ſo was *Dercyllidas* willing to free his Confederates the *Ionians* from the ſpoil and danger of the War, by tranſferring it into *Caria*. For which cauſe he paſſed the River of *Maander*, and not looking to have been ſo ſoon encountered, marched careleſly through the Country: when on the very ſudden the whole Army of *Tiſſaphernes* and *Pharnabazus* was diſcovered, conſiſting of *Persians*, *Carians*, and ſome Mercenary *Greeks*, who were all marſhalled in very good order to preſent battell. The oddes was too apparent, both in numbers of men, and in readineſſe, as alſo in advantage of ground: for the *Persian* had a great multitude of Horſe, the *Greek* very few and feeble, being to fight in an open plain. Therefore all the *Ionians*, together with the Ilanders and others, of ſuch places as bordered upon the Kings Dominions, did either betake themſelves to preſent flight; or abiding a while for ſhame, did plainly discover by their looks, that they meant not to be more bold than wiſe. Onely *Dercyllidas* with his *Peloponneſians*, regarding their honour, prepared to endure the fight, which muſt needs have brought them to deſtruction, if the counſell of *Pharnabazus* had been followed, who perceiving the opportunity of ſo great a victory, was not willing to let it ſlip. But *Tiſſaphernes*, who naturally was a coward, ſeeing that countenance of reſiſtance was made, began to conſider what ſtrange defence the Souldiers of *Xenophon* had ſhewed, and thinking that all the *Greeks* were of the like reſolution, held it the wiſeſt way to crave parley; the conclusion of which was, That a Truce ſhould be made, to laſt untill *Tiſſaphernes* might receive answer from the King, and *Dercyllidas* from



*Sparta*, concerning the demands propounded in the Treaty; which were on the one part, That all the *Greeks* in *Asia* might enjoy their own liberty and lawes; but contrariwise on the other side, That the *Lacedæmonians* should depart *Asia*, and leave the Towns to the Kings pleasure. This Treaty was of none effect; only it served to free the *Greeks* from the present danger, and to gain time unto *Tissaphernes*, who desired to avoid the War by procrastination, which he durst not adventure to finish by tryall of a battell.

## §. III.

*How the Lacedæmonians took revenge upon the Eleans for old displeasure. The discontents of the Corinthians and Thebans, conceived against the State of Sparta.*

IN the mean season the *Lacedæmonians*, who found none able to withstand them in *Greece*, began to call the *Eleans* to account for some disgraces received by them during the late Warres, when leasure was wanting to the requitall of such petty injuries. These *Eleans* being Presidents of the *Olympique* games, had set a fine upon the City of *Sparta*, for Non-payment of which, they forbade them to come to the solemnity; and publicly whipt one of them that was of note, for presuming to contend against their decree. Likewise they hindred *Agis* King of *Sparta* from doing sacrifice to *Jupiter*; and in all points used great contempt toward the *Spartans*, who now had no business that could hinder them from taking revenge: and therefore sent a peremptory message to the *Eleans*, commanding them to set at liberty the Cities which they held in subjection. This was the usual pretence which they made the ground of all their Wars: though little they cared for the liberty of such Towns, which they caused afterwards to become followers, and little better than meer Vassals of the *Lacedæmonians*. In their late Wars with *Athens*, the strong opposition which they found, caused this goodly Title of liberty to work very slowly: but having now to doe with a State of great spirit and small force, it gave present successe to their desires. Two years together they sent an Army into the Country of the *Eleans*: the first year an Earth-quake (held in those times a prodigious sign, and which did always forbid the prosecution of any enterprize in hand) caused them to retire: the second year, all the Towns of the *Eleans* did hastily revolt, and the City it self was driven to submission; consenting both to suffer their old subjects freely to enjoy their liberty, and to have her own Walls thrown down. Only the Presidentship of the *Olympian* games was left unto them, which it was not to be doubted that they would in time comming use modestly, finding themselves to stand at the mercy of *Sparta*. In this expedition all the *Greeks* were assisitant to the *Lacedæmonians*, excepting the *Corinthians* and *Bæotians*, whose ayd having been of as much importance in the late *Peloponnesian* War, as the force of *Sparta* it self, they could not smother their dislike of their unequal division following the victory; which gave to *Sparta* the command of all *Greece*; to *Thebes* and *Corinth*, only security against *Athens*, but such a security as was worse than the danger. For when the equall greatnesse of two mighty Estates did counterpoise each the other, it was in the power of these Neutrall Common-weals to adhere to either, as the condition of their affairs required; but when to revenge injuries, they had by mortall hatred prosecuted the Warre to extremity, leaving the one City naked of power and friends, the other mightily increased in both; it was then (if not necessary to obey the greatnesse which themselves had made, yet) foolish and dangerous to provoke it. Nevertheless, it was not the purpose of the *Spartans* to take occasion of any quarrell, which they could not finish at pleasure, till such time as they had by victory or composition made some good end with the *Persian*, toward whom they bent all their care and forces.

## §. IV. The

## §. IV.

*The passage of Agefilas into Asia. His Warre with Tissaphernes. How Tissaphernes was put to death; and the Warre diverted into another Province, through perswasion and gifts of Tithraustes his successour. How carelesse the Persian Lieutenants were of the Kings good.*

AGEFILAS newly made King of *Sparta*, was desirous to have the honour of the victory, which not without cause, he expected upon those of *Asia*; and therefore procuring a great Army to joyn with that of *Dercyllidus*, he took his way in great pomp to *Aulis* in *Bæotia*, a Haven lying opposite to the Island of *Eubæa*; in which place *Agamemnon* (leading the power of all *Greece* to the War against *Troy*, many Ages before) had embarked his men. In imitation of *Agamemnon*, he meant also to do sacrifice in *Aulis*, which the *Thebans*, Lords of that Country, would not permit, but saying, that the performance of such ceremonies in that place, belonged unto their Officers; they were so unable to conceal their malice, that sending some Companies of horse, they threw down his sacrifice from the Altar. It was not then convenient time for *Agefilas* to entangle himself and his Country in a new Warre; therefore waiting better opportunity of revenge, he quietly swallowed the contumely, and followed his main intent. Having landed his men at *Ephesus*, he was entertained by *Tissaphernes* with a Treaty of peace, wherein *Agefilas* peremptorily requiring that the *Persian* should restore to liberty all the *Greek* Towns in *Asia*, was promised that the King, being first informed of his demand, should send answer to his good liking, if he would in the mean while make Truce. Truce was therefore made, which *Tissaphernes* had sought, only to win time of making provision for the War, and getting supply of men and money from *Artaxerxes*, whilst *Agefilas* was busie in settling the estates of his confederate Cities on that side of the Sea. The end of this long vacation from war was at the comming down of these forces which *Artaxerxes* had sent: at what time *Agefilas* received a plain message from *Tissaphernes*, that either he must forthwith depart out of *Asia*, or make good his abode by strong hand. *Agefilas* returning word; that hee was glad to hear that his enemies had by perjury deserved vengeance from heaven, prepared to invade them; and sending word to all the Towns which lay between him and *Caria*, that they should provide victuals & other necessaries for his Army, did easily make *Tissaphernes* beleve, that his intent was to invade that Province wherein *Tissaphernes* dwelt, and which was unfit for Horse, in which part of his forces the *Persian* had most confidence. Therefore *Tissaphernes* bestowing all his Companies of foot in *Caria*, entred with his Horse into the plains of *Maander*, hoping thereby to stop the passage of a heave foot-army, not suffering them to passe into that Country which was fittest for their service. But the *Greeks* left him waiting there in vain, and marched directly into *Phrygia*, where they took great spoyle without resistance, till such time as the Horse-men of *Pharnabazus* met him, who in a small skirmish having the better of the *Greeks*, were the occasion that *Agefilas* returned to *Ephesus*. Although in this last fight only twelve men were lost, yet *Agefilas* perceiving by that tryall how hard it would be to prevail, and hold the mastery of the field, without a greater strength of Horse, took all possible care to increase that part of his forces. By which means having enabled himself, whilst Winter lasted, he entred upon the Country of *Tissaphernes*, as soon as the season of the year would permit, and not only took a great booty, but finding the Horse-men of *Tissaphernes* in the plain of *Maander*, without assistance of their infantry, he gave them battell, and had a great victory, taking their Camp, in which he found great riches. The blame of this losse fell heave upon *Tissaphernes*, who either upon cowardise had absented himself from the battell, or following some other business, was then at *Sardis*. For which cause his Master having him in distrust, and thinking that peace might be the sooner had, which he much desired, if the man, so odious to the whole Nation of the *Greeks*, were taken out of the way, he sent into those parts *Tithraustes* a *Persian*, to cut off the head of *Tissaphernes*, and succeed him in the government. Such was the end of this base and cowardly Politician, who little caring to offend Heaven, when by perjury he could advance his purposes on Earth, failed at the last, through too much over-weening of his own wisdom, even in that part of cunning wherein he thought himself most perfect; for sup-

posing

posing, that by his great skill in subtle negotiation he should one way or other circumvent the *Greeks*, and make them wearie of *Asia*; he did not seek to finish the war, and according to his Masters will, bring all things speedily to quiet, but rather to temporize, till he might find some opportunitie of making such end as best might stand with the Kings honour and his own. Wherein it seems that he much mistook his Princes disposition, who though he had highly rewarded him for the aid which he did bring in this time of danger, yet would he much more gladly have taken it, if he could have found such means whereby the danger it self might have been avoided: as not loving to have war, whilst by any conditions (honourable or not) he might obtain peace. And this appeared well by the course which *Tithraustes* took at his first possession of the low Countries. For he sent Embassadors to *Agessilaus* in very friendly sort, letting him know, that the man who had been Author of the warre, was now taken out of the way; and that it was the Kings pleasure to let the *Greeks* enjoy their own lawes and libertie, upon condition, that they should pay him the tribute accustomed, and the Armie be forthwith dismissed. The answer to this proposition, was by *Agessilaus* referred to the Council of *Sparta*; in the mean season he was content to transference the war into the Province of *Pharnabazus*, at the request of *Tithraustes*, who bought his departure with thirty Talents.

This was a strange manner of War, both on the offensive, and on the defensive part. For *Agessilaus* having entertained great hopes of vanquishing the great King, was contented to forbear his several Provinces, at the entreaty of the Lieutenants: and those Lieutenants being employed by the King to maintain his Estates against all enemies (wherein if they failed, they knew that their heads might easily be taken from their shoulders) were little offended at any losse that fell on their next Neighbour-Princes, which were subject likewise to the same Crown of *Persia*, so long as their own government could be preserved from waste and danger. The cause of this disorder on the *Persian* side, I can ascribe to nothing so deservedly, as to the corrupted estate of the Court, wherein Euniches, Concubines, and ministers of pleasure, were able, by partiall construction, to countenance, or disgrace, the actions of such as had the managing of things abroad; and to that foolish manner of the Kings (which was so usual that it might be called a rule) to reward or punish the Provinciall Governour, according to the benefit or losse, which the Country, given in charge unto each of them, received during the time of his rule. Whereby it came to passe, that as every one was desirous to make his own Territorie yield a large increase to the Kings treasure, so no man was carefull to assist his borders, if losse or danger might thereby grow to himself and his; but sat still as an idle beholder, when perhaps by joyning their forces, it had not been uncase to recompence the spoyle of one Countrey, by conquering another, or defending a third from far greater miseries.

## §. V.

## The War and Treatie between Agessilaus and Pharnabazus.

**A**gessilaus having thus compounded with *Tithraustes*, entred *Phrygia*, burning and wasting the Country without resistance. He took the Palace of *Pharnabazus*, and by his Lieutenant drave him out of the Camp. These Actions, together with his honourable behaviour, which added much to their lustre, were more glorious than profitable. For he did not win Cities and Places of strength, which might have increased his power, and given assurance to the rest of his proceedings: but purchased fame and high reputation, by which he drew unto him some that were discontented and stood upon bad termes with the great King; whom he lost again as easily, by means of some sleight injury done to them by his under-Captains. *Pharnabazus* did not enclose himself in any Town, for fear of being besieged, but kept the field, lying as neer as he could safely to the enemies, with whom it was not his purpose to fight, but to make some good end by composition, which he found not uncase to doe. For the pleasures, by him formerly done to the State of *Sparta*, in the times of their most necessity, had been so great, that when he (obtaining parley) did set before their eyes his bounty towards them, and his love, which had been such, that besides many other hazzards of his person, he had for the rescue of their fleet when it was driven to run a-shore at *Abydos*, adven-

adventured to ride into the Seas as far as he could find any ground, and fight on horse-back against the *Athenians* together with his faith which had never been violated in word or deed: they knew not how to excuse their ingratitude, otherwise than by telling him, That having War with his Master, they were enforced against their will, to offend him. *Agessilaus* did make a fair offer to him, that if he would revolt from the King to them, they would maintain him against the *Persian*, and establish him free Prince of the Country wherein he was at that time onely Deputy to *Artaxerxes*. But *Pharnabazus* told him plainly, That if the King his Master did put him in trust to make war against them, he would not fail to do the best that he could as their enemy; if the charge were taken out of his hand, and he commanded to obey another, he would then shift side, and betake himself to their alliance. The issue of this parley was, That the Armie should no longer abide in *Phrygia*, nor again return into it, whilst employment could be found elsewhere. The excuse made by *Agessilaus*, and the withdrawing of his forces out of those parts, were not sufficient to appease *Pharnabazus*, whom he had not invaded for want of more necessary businesse elsewhere; but because his Country would yeeld great booty, and for the hire of thirty Talents. By this means the *Lacedemonians* changed an honourable Friend into a hot Enemy, who afterwards requited their unthankfulness with full revenge.

## §. VI.

The great commotions raised in Greece by the Thebans and others, that were hired with gold from the Persian.

**I**n the mean while *Tithraustes*, perceiving that *Agessilaus* meant nothing lesse than to return into Greece, and let *Artaxerxes* rest quietly in *Asia*, took a wife course, whereby the Citie of *Sparta* was not onely driven to look to her own, and give over her great hopes of subverting the Empire, but was beaten out of all that had been gotten by many late victories, and saw her Dominion restrained unto the narrow bounds of her own Territory. He sent into Greece fifty talents of silver, to be employed in raising war against the *Lacedemonians*; which treasure was by the subtle practice of him that was put in trust with it, in such wise dispersed among the principall men of the *Thebans*, *Argives* and *Corinthians*, that all those Estates having formerly borne secrete hate to that of *Sparta*, were now desirous of nothing so much, as of open war. And lest this great heat of the incensed multitude should, for want of present exercise, begin to faint and vanish away in idle words, occasion was found out to thrust the *Lacedemonians* into Armes, that they themselves might seem Authors of the quarrell. Some land there was in the tenure of the *Locrians*, to which the *Thebans* had in former time layd claim; but the *Phocians* either having the better title, or finding the greater favour, had it adjudged unto them, and received yearly mony for it. This mony the *Locrians* were either hired or perswaded to pay now to the *Thebans*, who readily accepted it. The *Phocians* not meaning so to lose their Rent, made a distresse by strong hand, recovering a great deal more than their own; which the *Thebans* (as in protection of their new Tenants) requited with an invasion made upon *Phocia*, wasting that Country in the manner of open war. Such were the beginnings of professed hostility between *Thebes* & *Sparta*, & the first breaking out of their close enmity, that had long time, though hardly, bin concealed. For when the *Phocian* Embassadors came to *Sparta* complaining of the violence done by the *Thebans*, & requesting succour, they had very favourable audience, & ready consent to their sute; it being the manner of the *Lacedemonians* to defer the acknowledgment of injuries received, until occasion of revenge were offered, & then to discover their indignation in cold blood. At this time they had very good opportunity to work their own wils, having no other war to disturb them in Greece, and hearing out of *Asia* no news that could offend or trouble them. Wherefore they sent *Lyfander* to raise all the Countries about *Phocia*, and with such forces as he could levie, to attend the coming of *Pausanias* King of *Sparta* (for *Sparta*, as hath bin shewed before, had two Kings) who should follow him with the strength of *Peloponnesus*. *Lyfander* did as he was appointed, & being of great reputation in those parts, he drew the *Orchomenians* to revolt from *Thebes*. *Pausanias* likewise raised all *Peloponnesus*, except the *Corinthians* (who refused to assist him in that enterprise) meaning to joyn with *Lyfander*, & make a speedy end

of the war. The consideration of so great a danger, approaching so swiftly, caused the *Thebans* to seek what help they could abroad, for as much as their own strength was far too little to make resistance against such mighty preparations. It was not unknown to them, that many followers of the *Lacedæmonians* were otherwise affected in heart than they durst utter in countenance; but the good wishes of such people were little available, considering that the most which could be expected from them, was, that they should do as little hurt as they could: by which manner of tergiversation, the *Corinthians* did at that present cast themselves into the displeasure of the *Spartans*, to the no great benefit of *Thebes*. Wherefore it was thought the safest course to procure the assistance of some Estate that might presently declare it self on their side, which would cause many others to follow the example, and make their party strong. To this end they sent 10 Embassadors to *Athens*, excusing old offences, as either not committed by public allowance, or done in time of the generall war, and recompensed with friendship lately shown in their refusal of assisting *Pausanias*, when he came in behalf of the thirte Tyrants against the good Citizens of *Athens*. In regard of which, and for their own Honour sake, they requested them of aid in the present war, offering to doe the best that they could for the restoring of *Athens* to her former estate and dignity. *Thrasybulus* and his Friends, who persecuted by the thirte, had been well entertained at *Thebes*, procured now the Citie to make a large requital of the courtesie which they had received. For it was decreed, that the State of *Athens* should not only refuse to aid the *Lacedæmonians* in this War; but that it should assist the *Thebans*, and engage it self in their cause. Whilest *Pausanias* lay still, waiting the arrivall of his Confederates, *Lyfander* being desirous to doe somewhat that might advance the businesse in hand, came to *Haliartus*, where though *Pausanias* did not meet him, as had been appointed, yet he attempted the Town, and was slain in fight by the *Thebans*, who came hastily to the rescue. As this victory did discourage the *Thebans*, so the coming of *Pausanias* with his great Armie did again amaze them, with presentation of extreme danger; but their spirits were soon revived by the strong succour which was brought from *Athens*, in consideration of which, and of the late battell, *Pausanias* durst not hazzard a new fight with them, but receiving the bodies of those that were slain, by composition, departed out of their Territorie; for which, either cowardise or indiscretion, he was at his return to *Sparta* 30 condemned as a Traitor, and driven to flie into *Tegea*, where he ended his daies in banishment.

## s. VII.

*How Agefilas was called out of Asia to help his Country. A victory of the Spartans. Conon the Athenian assisted by Pharnabazus, overcomes the Lacedæmonian Fleet; recovers the mastery of the Seas, and rebuilds the walls of Athens.*

His good successe, and the confederacy made with *Athens*, gave such reputation to the *Thebans*, that the *Argives*, *Corinthians*, *Eubæans*, *Locrians*, and *Acarnanes*, did forthwith side with them, and raising a strong Army, determined to give battell to the *Lacedæmonians* as near as they might, to their own dores; considering that the force of *Sparta* it self was not great, but grew more and more by the adjunction of their Confederates. The Magistrates of *Sparta* perceiving the danger, sent for *Agefilas*, who readily obeyed them, and promising his friends in *Asia* to return speedily to their assistance, passed the Streights of *Hellefpont* into *Europe*. In the mean time the Cities of the new league had given battell to the *Lacedæmonians*, and the remainder of their Associats; but with ill successe. For when the right wing of each part had gotten the better hand, the *Argives* and *Thebans* returning from the chase in some disorder, were broken and defeated by the *Lacedæmonians*, who meeting them in good order, won 50 from them the Honour which they had gotten by forcing the left wing of the *Lacedæmonians*, and made the victory of that day entirely their own. The reporters of this battell meeting *Agefilas* at *Amphipolis*, were by him sent over into *Asia*, wherein it is not likely that they brought much comfort unto his friend, who had since his departure seen the *Spartan* Fleet beaten, and *Lyfander* the Admirall slain. The same man, whose endeavour had brought the *Athenians* into order by advancing the Sea-forces of the *Lacedæmonians* with money, and all manner of supplies, was now the occasion that the power

power of *Athens* grew strong at Sea, when the Citie was dispoyled of her old reputation, & scarcely able to maintain an Army by Land for her defence. *Pharnabazus* considering how much it imported the king his Master, to have the *Greeks* divided into such factions as might utterly disable them from undertaking abroad, thought it the safest way for himself, during these broiles, to take such order, that he should not need any more to seek peace by intreaty and commemoration of old benefits, at their hands, who unprompted, had sold his love for thirty Talents. To which purpose he furnished *Conon* the *Athenian* with eight ships, who had escaped when the Fleet of *Athens* was surprized by *Lyfander* at *Agos-Potamos*; giving him the command of a great Navie, wherewith he 10 requited the losse received at *Agos-Potamos*, by repaying the *Lacedæmonians* with the like destruction of their fleet at *Cnidus*. After this victory *Conon* sailed to *Athens*, bringing with him, partly as the liberality of *Pharnabazus*, partly as the fruit of his victory, so strong a Navie, and so much Gold, as encouraged the *Athenians* to rebuild their Walls, and think more hopefully upon recovering the Signiory which they had lost.

## s. VIII.

*Of sundry small victories gotten on each part. The Lacedæmonians lose all in Asia; the Athenians recover some part of their old Dominion.*

Nevertheless, the *Lacedæmonians*, by many victories at Land, maintained for some years the honour of their Estate, endangered very greatly by this losse at Sea. For *Agefilas* obtained the better with his horse-men from the *Thebans*, who were accounted the best riders in *Greece*. He wasted *Bœotia*, and fought a great battell at *Coronea* against the *Thebans* and their Allies; whom he overthrew; and by his Marshall *Gylis* foraged the Country of *Locris*: which done, he returned home. The gain of these victories was not great, & the reputation of them was, by many losses, much defaced. For the *Thebans* did in the battell of *Coronea* vanquish the *Orchomenians*, who stood opposite unto them, and retired unbroken to Mount *Helicon*, opening way perforce when *Agefilas* charged them in the return from the pursuit. Likewise *Gylis* was slain with a great part of his Army by the *Locrians*; and some other exploits by the *Lacedæmonians* performed against the *Corinthians*, were repayed with equal damage received in the parts adjoining; many Towns being easily taken, and as easily recovered. The variety of which interfeats was such, that the *Thebans* themselves were drawn by the losse of the haven of *Corimb*, to sue for peace, but could not get audience, till such time as the newes came of a great victory obtained by *Sphicerates*, General of the *Athenian* forces at *Lechaum*; whereupon the *Theban* Embassadors being sent for, and willing to doe their message, required only in scorn, to have a safe conduct given them, that they might enter into *Corimb*. From this time forward the War was 40 made for a while only by incursions, wherein the *Achaens*, Confederates of *Sparta*, felt most losse, their whole State being endangered by the *Acarnanians*, who held with the contrary side, untill *Agefilas* repayed these invaders with equal, or greater calamities, brought upon their own Lands, which did so afflict the *Acarnanes*, that they were driven to sue for peace. But the affaires at Sea were of most consequence, upon which the successe of all depended. For when the Towns of *Asia* perceived that the *Lacedæmonians* were not only intangled in a hard War at home, but almost disabled to passe the Seas, having lost their Fleet at *Cnidus*; they soon gave ear to *Pharnabazus*, who promised to allow that they should use their own lawes, if they would expell the *Spartan* Governours. Only the City of *Abydus* did stand firm, wherein *Dercyllidas* lay, who did his 50 best to contain all the Towns about *Hellefpont*, in the Alliance of the *Lacedæmonians*; which he could not do, because the *Athenian* Fleet under *Thrasybulus*, took in *Byzantium*, *Chalcodon*, and other places thereabout, reducing the Ile of *Lesbos* to their ancient acknowledgement of *Athens*.

## s IX. The

## §. IX.

The base conditions offered unto the Persian by the Lacedæmonian. Of sundry fights and other passages in the Warre: The peace of Antalcidas.

**A**BOUT this time the Spartans began to perceive how uneasy a thing it would be, to maintain the War against men as good as themselves, assisted with the treasures of Persia: wherefore they craved peace of Artaxerxes, most basely offering not only to renounce the Greeks inhabiting Asia, and to leave them to the Kings disposition, but withall to set the Islanders, and every Town in Greece, as well the little as the great, at full and absolute liberty, whereby they said that all the principall Estates of their Country would be so weakened, that no one, nor all of them should be able to stir against the great King. And sure it was, that the power of the Country being so broken and rent into many small pieces, could neither have disquieted the Persian, by an offensive War, nor have made any good defence against him, but would have left it easie for him in continuance of time to have taken the Cities one after another, till he had made himself Master of all. The Spartans were not ignorant of this, but were so carried with avarice, that perceiving how the dominion of the Seas was like to return to Athens, they chose rather to give all from themselves and others, and make all a-like weak, than to permit that any of their own Nation should grow stronger than themselves, who so lately had commanded all. Yet this great offer was not at the first accepted, both in regard that the other Estates of Greece, who had in the Kings behalf joyned together against the Lacedæmonians, did by their severall Embassadors oppose themselves unto it; and for that it was thought safest for Artaxerxes rather to weaken the Lacedæmonians yet more, than by interposing himself to bring friends and foes on the sudden to an equality. Especially Siruthus, whom Artaxerxes had sent as his Lieutenant into the lower Countries, did seek to repay the harm done by Agesilaus in those parts: which his intent appearing plain, and all hope of the peace being thereby cut off, Timbro was sent into Asia to make Warre upon Siruthus; and others were appointed to other places, whereby the War being scattered about, all the Isles and Towns on the firm Land, grew almost to the manner of Pytacy and Kobbery, affording many skirmishes, but few great actions worthy of remembrance. Timbro was slain by Siruthus, & in his place Diphridas was sent, who demeaned himself more warily. Dercyllides was removed from his charge at Abydos, because he had not impeached Thrasylulus in his enterprises about Hellespont; Anaxibius, who succeeded him, was surpris'd and slain in a skirmish by Iphicrates the Athenian. Thrasylulus departing from Lesbos toward Rhodes, was slain by the way at Aspendus. The City of Rhodes had long before joyned with the Lacedæmonians, who erected there (as was their manner) an Aristocratie, or the Government of a few the principall Citizens; whereas contrariwise the Athenians were accustomed to put the Sovereignty into the hands of the people, each of them seeking to assure themselves, by erecting in the town of their Confederates a government like unto their own: which doing (where more especiall cause did not hinder) caused the Nobility to favour Sparta, and the Commons to incline to Athens. The people of Egina roved upon the coast of Attica, which caused the Athenians to land an Army in Egina, and beslege their Town: but this sieg being raised by the assistance of the Lacedæmonian fleet, the Islanders began a new to molest Attica, which caused the Athenians to man their ships again, that returned beaten, having lost four of thirteen. The loss of these ships was soon recompensed by a victory which Chabrias the Athenian Generall had in Egina, whereupon the Islanders were faine to keep home, and leave to the Athenians the Seas free. It may well seem strange that the City of Athens, having but newly raised her wals, having not by any fortunate and important battell secured her estate from dangers by land, but only depending upon the assistance of such Confederates, as carried unto different ends, had often discovered themselves irresolute in the common cause, should send a fleet and an army to Cyprus, in defence of Evagoras, when the mastery of the Seas was so ill assured, that an Island in the eie of Pyæus, had ability to vex the coast of Attica. But as the over-weening of that City did cause it usually to embrace more than it could compass; so the infolency and shamelesse injustice of the people, had now bred in the chief Commanders, a desire to keep themselves far out of fight, and to seek employments at such distance

distance as might secure them from the eies of the envious and from publique judgments, out of which few or none escaped. For which cause Timotheus did passe away much part of his time in the Ile of Lesbos; Iphicrates in Thrace; and Chabrias now did carry away into Cyprus a greater force than his Countrey could well have spared: with which he returned not when the businesse in Cyprus came to an end, but sought new adventures in Egypt; whereby arose neither thanks to himself, nor profit to his Citie, though honour both to him and it. The Athenians being thus carelesse of things at hand, had a notable blow given unto them, shortly after that Chabrias was gone to Cyprus, even within their own Haven. For Teleutias, a Lacedæmonian, being made Governour of Egina, conceived a strong hope of surprizing the Navie of Athens, as it lay in Piræus; thinking a-right that it was a harder matter to encounter with ten ships prepared for the fight, than with twentie lying in harbour, whose Marriners were asleep in their Cabbins, or drinking in Taverns. Wherefore he sailed by night into the mouth of the Port, which entering at the break of day, he found (according to his expectation) most of the men on shore, and few or none left aboard to make resistance: by which means he took many ships laden with merchandizes, many fisher-men, passengers, and other Vessels, also three or four Gallies, having sunk or broken, and made unserviceable, as many of the rest as the time would suffer. About this time Pharnabazus, the Lieutenant of Phrygia, had one of the Kings daughters given to him in marriage, with whom he lived about the Court; and many officers that favoured the Lacedæmonians were placed in the lower Asia; by whose assistance the Fleet of Sparta grew victorious about Hellespont; in such wise, that perhaps they should not have needed the peace, which they themselves procured by Antalcidas, from the great King, the conditions whereof were such as are mentioned before, giving freedom to all the Cities of Greece, and dividing the Countrey into as many severall States as were petty Boroughs in it. Thus Artaxerxes having bought his own peace with money, did likewise by his money become Arbitrator and decider of Controversies between the Greeks, disposing of their businesse in such wise as stood best with his own good: The Tenor of Artaxerxes his decree was, That all Asia and Cyprus should be his own; the Isles of Lemnos, Imbrus, and Scirus be subject to Athens; all other Greek Towns, as well the little as the great, be set at libertie; and that whosoever should refuse this peace, upon them the approvers of it should make war, the King assisting them by Land and Sea, with men, and ships, and treasure. The Athenians were so discouraged by their losses at Sea; the Lacedæmonians by revolt of their confederates, and the necessitie of maintaining many Garrisons, for which they wanted money; and other States by the miseries of the war, whereof they saw no end; that all (excepting the Thebans) did consent unto these Articles. This was called the peace of Antalcidas: whereof the Lacedæmonians taking upon themselves the execution, did not only compell the Argives to depart out of Corinth (which under pretence of defending they held by force, lately thrust into it, not as Patrons, but as Lords) and the Thebans to leave Beotia free, of which Province Thebes had alwaies held the government, the Thebans themselves being also comprehended under the name of the Beotians; but caused the Mantinians to throw down their own Citie, and to dwell in villages: alleging that they had formerly bin accustomed so to do, though purposing indeed to chastise them, as having bin ill affected to Sparta in the late War. By these courses the Lacedæmonians did hope that all the small towns in Greece would, when occasion should require it, willingly follow them in their wars, as Authors of their libertie; and that the great Cities having lost all their dependants, would be unable to make opposition.

## §. X.

The war which the Lacedæmonians made upon Olynthus. They take Thebes by treason, and Olynthus by sawine.

**W**HILE these wars, which ended without either victory or profit, consumed the riches and power of Greece, the Citie of Olynthus in Thrace was grown so mighty, that she did not only command her neighbour Towns, but was also become terrible to places far removed, and to Sparta it self. Great part of Macedonia, together with Pella, the principall Citie of that Kingdom, was taken by the Olynthians,

*Olynthians*, who following the usual pretence of the *Lacedæmonians*, to set at liberty the places over which King *Amyntas* did tyrannize, had almost now driven him out of his Dominions, and taken all to themselves. The Citizens of *Acanthus* and of *Apollonia* being nearest unto the danger of those incroaching neighbours, acquainted the *Lacedæmonians* with their fear, affirming that this Dominion of the *Olynthians* would be too strong for all *Greece*, if continuance of time should give it reputation, which only it wanted: wherefore they requested assistance, but in such termes as did sound of compulsion, protesting that either they must war upon *Olynthus*, or become subject unto her, and fight in her defence. Hereupon was made a hasty levie of men, two thousand being presently sent away, with promise to be seconded by a greater Army. Whilest these two thousand gave such beginning to the war, as agreed with their small number, the body of the Army following them, surprized the Cittadell of *Thebes*, which was betrayed into the hand of *Phæbidus*, the *Lacedæmonian*, by some of the Magistrates, who sought to strengthen their faction by the slavery of their Country. The *Thebans* were ill affected to *Sparta*, but had not in any point violated the peace lately made between them; which caused the *Lacedæmonians* to doubt wether this act of *Phæbidus* were more worthy of reward or of punishment. In conclusion, profit so far over-weighed honestie, that the deed was approved, many principall Citizens of *Thebes* condemned to death, many driven into banishment, and the Traitors rewarded with the government of the citie: by whose authoritie, and the force of the Garrison, the *Thebans* were compelled to serve the *Lacedæmonians*, in all, and more than all that they could require. This access of power having strengthened the *Lacedæmonians*, caused them to entertain the greater forces about *Olynthus*, which (notwithstanding the losse of one great battell, and some other disasters) they compelled at length by famine to render it self unto their obedience.

## §. XI.

*How the Thebans recovered their libertie, driving out the Lacedæmonian Garrison.*

**A**fter this *Olynthian* War, which endured almost three years, it seemed that no Estate in *Greece* was able to make head against that of *Sparta*: but it was not long ere the *Thebans* found a means to shake off their yoke, and gave both example and means to others to doe the like. One of the banished men found by conference with a Scribe of the *Theban* Magistrates, coming to *Athens*, that the tyrannie wherewith his Countrey was oppressed, pleased him no better than it did those who for fear of it were fled from home. Whereupon a plot was laid between these two, that soon found very good successe, being managed thus. Seven of the banished men forsook *Athens* privily, and entred by night into the fields of *Thebes*; where spending the next day secretly, they came late in the evening to the Gates like husband-men returned from work, and so passed undiscovered unto the house of *Charon*, whom *Phyllidas* the Scribe had drawn into the conspiracie. The day following, a solemn feast being then held in the Citie, *Phyllidas* promised the Governours, who were insolent and lustful men, that he would convey unto them that night the most beautifull Dames of the Town, with whom they should take their pleasure. Having cleared them with such hope, and plenty of good wine, he told them when the time of performance (which they urged) came, that he could not make good his promise, unless they would dismisse their followers, because the Gentlewomen, who attended without the Chamber, would not endure that any of the servants should see their faces. Upon this occasion the attendants were dismissed, and the Conspirators, attired like Ladies and their Maids, brought into the place; who taking advantage of the Governours loose behaviour, slew them all upon the sudden with Daggers, which they brought hidden under their garments. Then presently casting off their disguise, they went to other places, where feigning themselves to come to the Governours upon business, they got admittance, and likewise slew those which were of the *Lacedæmonian* faction. By the like device they brake into the prison, slew the Gaoler, & set at liberty such as they thought meet; and being followed by these desperate men, proclaimed libertie, making the death of the Tyrants known. The Captain of the Castle hearing the sudden Proclamation, thought the Rebels to be stronger than indeed they were: the Citizens contrariwise mistrusted, that it was a pra-

a practice to discover such as would be forward upon occasion of revolting. But as soon as day-light revealed the plain truth, all the people took armes and besieged the Castle, sending hastily to *Athens* for succour. The Garrison also sent for aid unto the Towns adjoining, whence a few broken troupes coming to the rescue, were defeated on the way by the horse-men of *Thebes*. On the other side the banished *Thebans* did not only make speed to assist their Countymen, but procured some *Athenians* to joyn with them, and thereby came so strong into the Citie, that the Castle was yielded, more through fear than any necessitie, upon condition that the Souldiers might quietly depart with their Armes; for which composition the Captain at his return to *Sparta* was put to death. When the news of the doings at *Thebes*, and the successe arrived at *Sparta*, an Army was raised forthwith, and all things prepared as earnestly for the recovering of that Citie, as if some part of their ancient inheritance had bin taken from the *Lacedæmonians*, and not a town perfidiously usurped by them, restored to her own libertie. *Cleombrotus*, one of the Kings, was sent on this expedition, who having wearied his followers with a toilsome Winters jounie, returned home without any good or harm done, leaving *Sphodrias*, with part of his Armie, at *Thespies* to infect the *Thebans*; who doing them some displeasures, made large amends by a foolish attempt upon the Haven of *Athens*, which failing to take, he wasted the countrey adjoining, and drove away Cattel, causing by this outrage the *Athenians* to enter with all their power into the war, out of which they were before very carefully seeking how they might possibly with-draw themselves.



## CHAP. XII.

*Of the flourishing estate of Thebes, from the battell of Leuctra, to the battell of Mantinæa.*

## §. I.

*How Thebes and Athens joyned together against Sparta. How the Athenians made peace for themselves, and others, out of which the Thebans were excluded. The battell of Leuctra, and beginning of the Theban greatnesse.*



**T**he *Lacedæmonians* were men of great resolution, and of much gravitie in all their proceedings; but one dishonourable rule they held, That all respects withstanding the commodity of *Sparta* were to be neglected; the practice of which doctrine, even by the best and wisest of them, did greatly blemish that Estate: but when it was put in execution by insufficient over-weening men, it seldom failed to bring upon them instead of profit unjustly expected, both shame and losse. And so it befell them in these enterprises of *Phæbidus*, upon the Castle of *Thebes*, and *Sphodrias* upon the *Piræus*. For, howsoever *Agessilas* did spoyl the Countrey about *Thebes*, in which he spent two Summers; yet the diligence of the *Thebans* repaired all, who by the good successe of some attempts, grew stronger than they were at the first.

The *Athenians* likewise began to look abroad, sayling to the Isle of *Corcyra*, where they ordered things at their pleasure, and having in some fights at Sea prevailed, began, as in the *Peloponnesian* War, to surround *Peloponnesus* with a Navie; afflicting so the *Lacedæmonians*, that had not the *Thebans* by their insolencie wearied their friends, and caused them to seek for peace, it had bin very likely that the end of this war, should have soon come to a good end, which nevertheless, being prosecuted by the *Thebans* (who opposed at once both these two great Estates) left the Citie of *Sparta* as much dejected, as the beginning found it proud and tyrannous. But the *Athenians* perceiving how *Thebes* encroached every day upon her weak Neighbours, not sparing such as had bin dependants upon *Athens*, and finding themselves, whilest engaged in such a war, unable to relieve their complaining friends, resolved to settle the affairs of



Greece, by renewing that form of peace which *Antalcidas* had brought from the *Persian*. Wherefore they sent Messengers to *Thebes*, peremptorily signifying, That it was their intent to finish the War, to which purpose they willed the *Thebans* to send Embassadors along with them to *Sparta*; who readily condescended, fearing otherwise that they should be left out of the Treatie of peace: which came to passe, being lo wrought by the courageous wisdom of *Epaminondas*, who understood far better than his Countreimen, what was to be feared or hoped. In this Treatie the *Lacedæmonians* and *Athenians* did soon agree; but when the *Thebans* offered to swear to the Articles in the name of the *Bæotians*, *Agessilas* required them to swear in their own name, and to leave the *Bæotians* free, whom they had lately reduced under their obedience. Whereunto *Epaminondas* made answer, That the Citie of *Sparta* should give example to *Thebes* by setting the *Lacedæmonians* free; for that the Signorie of *Bæotia* did by as good right appertain to the *Thebans*, as that of *Laconia* to the *Spartans*. This was well and truly spoken; but was heard with no patience: For *Agessilas* bearing a vehement hatred unto those of *Thebes*, by whom he was drawn back out of *Greece*, and disappointed of all the glory which he had hoped to achieve by the *Persian* war, did now passionately urge that point of setting the *Bæotians* at libertie, and finding it as obstinately refused, he cast the name of the *Thebans* out of the league. At the same time *Cleombrotus* the other King of *Sparta*, lay in *Phocis*, who received command from the Governours of *Sparta* forthwith to enter upon the Land of the *Thebans* with all his power; which he did, and was there slain at *Leuctra*, and with him the flower of his Armie. This battell of *Leuctra*, being one of the most famous that ever were fought between the *Greeks*, was not so notable for any circumstance foregoing it, or for the managing of the fight it self, as for the death of the King, and many Citizens of *Sparta*, but especially, for that after this battell (between which and the conclusion of the generall peace there passed but twenty daies) the *Lacedæmonians* were never able to recover the strength and reputation which had formerly made them redoubted far and near; whereas contrariwise the *Thebans*, whose greatest ambition had in former times confined it self unto the little Region of *Bæotia*, did now begin to undertake the leading and command of many people and estates, in such wise, that soon after they brought an Armie of threescore and ten thousand strong unto the Gates of *Sparta*. So much doe the afflictions of an hard war, valiantly endured, advance the affairs of the distressed, and guide them into the way of conquest, by stiffening that resolution with a manly temper, which wealth and ease had through luxurie, retchlesse, and many other vices or vanities, made rustie and effeminate.

## §. II.

How the Athenians took upon them to maintain the peace of Greece. New troubles hence arising. *Epaminondas* invadeth and wasteth the Territorie of *Lacedæmon*.

The *Athenians* refusing to take advantage of this overthrow fallen upon their old Enemies, and new Confederates the *Lacedæmonians*, did nevertheless finely give them to understand, that their Dominion was expired, and therefore their pride might well be laid away. For taking upon themselves the maintenance of the peace lately concluded, which *Agessilas* (perhaps of purpose to make benefit of quarrels that might arise) had left imperfect, they assembled the Deputies of all the Estates confederated at *Athens*; where the generall libertie of all Towns, as well small as great, was ratified under the stile of the *Athenians*, and their associats. Hereupon began fresh garboiles. The *Mantineans*, claiming power by this decree to order their affairs at their own pleasure, did (as it were) in despite of the *Spartans*, who had enforced them to raze their Town, re-edifie it, and allie themselves with such of the *Arcadians* as stood worst affected to *Sparta*. The *Arcadians*, a strong Nation, consisting of many Cities, were distracted with factions; some desiring to hold good correspondence with the *Lacedæmonians*, some to weaken & keep them low; yet all pretending other ends. The *Lacedæmonians* durst not give impeachment to the *Mantineans*, nor take upon them to correct their ill-willers among the *Arcadians*, till such time as the factions brake out into violence, & each partie called in forraign help. Then was an Armie sent from *Sparta*, as it were in defence of the people of *Tegea*, against the *Mantineans*, but indeed against them both. *Agessilas* had the leading of it, but effected nothing. The *Thebans* had by this time subdued the

the *Phocians*, and were become head of the *Locrians*, *Acarnanians*, *Eubæans*, and many others; with the power of which Countries they entred *Peloponnesus* in favour of the *Arcadians*, who had, upon expectation of their coming, abstained from giving battell to *Agessilas*. The Armie of the *Spartans* being dismissed, and *Epaminondas* joynd with the *Arcadians*, the Region of *Laconia* was invaded and spoiled: a thing lo strange, that no Oracle could have found belief if any had foretold it. Almost 600. years were spent, since the *Dorians*, under the posteritie of *Hercules*, had seized upon *Laconia*, in all which time the sound of an enemies trumpet was not heard in that Countrie. Ten years were not fully past, since all *Greece* was at the devotion of the *Spartans*: but now the Region which neither *Xerxes* with his huge Armie could once look upon, nor the mightie forces of *Athens*, and other enemy-States had dared to set foot on, saving by stealth, was all on a light fire, the very smoak whereof the women of *Sparta* were alhamed to behold. All which indignitie notwithstanding, the *Lacedæmonians* did not issue out of *Sparta* to fight, but sought how to preserve the Town, setting at libertie as many of their *Heilotes* or Slaves as were willing to bear Arms in defence of the State, and somewhat pitifully entreated the *Athenians* to give them succour. From *Corinth* and some towns of *Peloponnesus* they received speedie assistance; the *Athenians* came forward more slowly, so that *Epaminondas* returned without battell, having re-built the Citie of *Messene*, and peopled it a-new by calling home the ancient Inhabitants, whom the *Lacedæmonians* many ages before had chafed away to other Countries, possessing their Territories themselves.

## §. III.

The Composition between Athens and Sparta for command in War against the Thebans; who again invade and spoil Peloponnesus. The unfortunate presumption of the Arcadians.

His journey therefore utterly defaced the reputation of the *Spartans*, in such wise, that they did no longer demand the conduct of the Armie, which was to be raised, nor any manner of precedence: but sending Embassadors from *Sparta*, and from all the Cities which held league with it, unto *Athens*, they offered to yeeld the Admiraltie to the *Athenians*, requesting that they themselves might be Generals by Land. This had been a composition well agreeing with the situation and qualitie of those two Cities; but it was rejected, because the Mariners and others that were to be employed at Sea, were men of no mark or estimation, in regard of those companies of horse and foot, whereof the Land-Armie was compounded, who being all Gentlemen or Citizens of *Athens*, were to have served under the *Lacedæmonians*. Wherefore it was agreed that the Authoritie should be divided by time, the *Athenians* ruling five daies, the *Lacedæmonians* other five, and so successively that each of them should have command of all, both by Land and by Sea. It is manifest, that in this conclusion vain ambition was more regarded than the common profit; which must of necessity be very slowly advanced, where consultation, resolution, and performance are so often to change hands. This appeared by a second invasion of *Peloponnesus*, wherein the *Thebans* found their enemies so unable to impeach them, that having fortified *Isthmus* from Sea to Sea, as in former times they had done against *Xerxes*, they were driven out of their strength by *Epaminondas*, who foraged the Countrie without resistance. But as the Articles of this league between *Athens* and *Sparta* did, by dividing the conduct in such manner, disable the societie, and make it insufficient to those ends for which it was concluded; so the example of it wrought their good, by filling the enemies heads with the like vanitie. For the *Arcadians* considering their own numbers which they brought into the field, and having found by many trials that their people were not inferiour to others in strength of body, in courage, or in good Souldiership, thought it good reason that they should in like manner share the government, with their friends the *Thebans*; and not alwaies continue followers of others, by increasing whose greatnesse they should strengthen their own yoke. Hereupon they began to demean themselves very insolently, wherby they grew hatefull to their Neighbours, and suspected of the *Thebans* in an ill time. For a motion of generall peace having been made (which took not effect, because the Citie of *Messene* was not abandoned to the *Lacedæmonians*) the next enterprise of the *Spartans* and their friends was upon these *Arcadians*, who relying too much upon their own worth,

were overthrowen in a great battell, their calamitie being as pleasing to their Confederates, as to their Enemies.

## §. IV.

*The great growth of the Theban Estate. Embassages of the Greeks to the Persian; with the reasons why he most favoured the Thebans. Troubles in the Persian Empire. The fruitlesse issue of the Embassages.*

**T**He Thebans especially rejoiced at the Arcadians misfortune, considering, that without their aid, the successe of all enterprises proved so ill; whereas they themselves had by their own power accomplished very well whatsoever they took in hand, and were become not onely victorious over the *Lacedæmonians*, but patrons over the *Thessalonians*, and moderators of great quarrels that had risen in *Macedonia*; where compounding the differences about that Kingdome, as pleased them best, they carried *Philip* the son of *Amyntas*, and father of *Alexander* the Great, as an Hostage unto *Thebes*. Having therefore obtained such reputation, that little seemed wanting to make them absolute Commanders of all *Greece*, they sought means of alliance with the *Persian* King, to whom they sent Embassadour the great and famous Captain *Pelopidas*, whose reputation drew *Artaxerxes* to grant unto the *Thebans* all that they desired; whereof two especiall points were, That *Messene* should remain free from the *Lacedæmonians*, and that the *Athenians* should forbear to send their ships of warre to Sea; only the latter of these two was somewhat qualified with reference to further advice. The other States of *Greece* did also send their Embassadours at the same time, of whom few or none received much contentment. For the king having found by long experience, how farre it concerned him to maintain a sure partie in *Greece*, did upon many weighty considerations resolve to bind the *Thebans* firmly unto him; justly expecting, that their greatnesse should be on that side his own securitie. The *Athenians* had been ancient enemies to his Crown; and having turned the profit of their victories upon the *Persians* to the purchase of a great Estate in *Greece*, maintained their Signorie in such puissant manner, that (sundrie grievous misfortunes notwithstanding) they had endured a terrible warre, wherein the *Lacedæmonians* being followed by most of the *Greeks*, and supplied with treasure, and all sorts of aid by *Darius* *Nothus*, were not able to vanquish them till their own indiscretion brought them on their knees. The *Lacedæmonians* being victorious over *Athens*, had no sooner established their Dominion at home, than they undertook the conquest of *Asia*, from which though by the commotion raised in *Greece* with *Persian* gold, they were called back, yet having renewed their power, and settled things in *Greece*, it was not unlikely, that they should upon the next advantage have pursued the same enterprize, had not they been emperched by this *Theban* Warre. But the *Thebans* contrariwise had alwayes discovered a good affection to the Crown of *Persia*. They had sided with *Xerxes* in his invasion of *Greece*; with *Darius* and the *Lacedæmonians* against *Athens*: And finally, having offered much contumelie to *Agessilas* when he put to Sea, they drew him home by making warre on the Confederates of *Sparta*. Besides all these their good deservings, they were no Sea-men, and therefore unlikely to look abroad; whereupon if perchance they should have any desire, yet were they disabled by the want of good haven towns; which they could not seize upon without open breach of that peace, whereof they intended to become the Executors, giving libertie to all Cities that had at any time been free. Wherefore *Artaxerxes* did wholly condescend unto the requests of *Pelopidas*, as farre forth as he might, without giving open defiance to the rest of *Greece*; and by that mean he purchased his own quiet, being never afterward molested by that Nation in the lower *Asia*. The ill means which the *Greeks* had to disturb *Artaxerxes*, was very beneficiall to the Estate of *Persia* shortly after these times, in that great rebellion of all the Maritime Provinces. For had then the affairs of *Greece* been so composed, that any one Citie might without empeachment of the rest have transported an Army to assist the revolting *Savape*, or *Vice-royes* of *Caria*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, *Mysia*, *Lycia*, *Pisidia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cilicia*, *Syria*, and *Phoenicia*; humane reason can hardly find the means, by which the Empire could have been preserved from that ruine, which the divine Counsell had deferred unto the dayes of *Alexander*. But this great conspiracie of so many large and wealthy Provinces, wanting

ing a firm body of good and hardy Souldiers, was in short space discussed, and vanished like a mist, without effect: these effeminate *Asiatiques* wearied quickly with the travels and dangers incident to War, forsaking the common cause, and each man striving to be the first, that by treason to his company should both redeem the former treason to his Prince, and purchase with all his own promotion with encrease of riches. Of this commotion, which in course of time followed some actions not as yet related, I have rather chosen to make short mention in this place, than hereafter to interrupt the Narration of things more important; but for that it was like a sudden storm, rashly commenced, idly followed, and foolishly layd down, having made a great noyle without effect, and having small reference to any other action agreeable; as also because in the whole reign of *Artaxerxes*, from the War of *Cyrus* to the invasion of *Egypt*, I find nothing (this insurrection, and a fruitlesse journey against the *Cadusians* excepted) worthy of any mention, much lesse of digression from the course of the businesse in *Greece*. All, or the most of his time passed away so quietly, that he enjoyed the pleasures which an Empire so great and wealthy could afford unto so absolute a Lord, with little disturbance. The troubles which he found were only, or chiefly Domestick; growing out of the hatred which *Parysatis* the Queen-Mother bare unto his wife *Statira*, and to such as had been the greatest enemies to her sonne *Cyrus*, or gloried in his death: upon whom, when by poyson and mischievous practices he had satisfied her feminine appetite of revenge, thenceforth she wholly applyed her self to the Kings disposition, cherishing in him the lewd desire of marrying his own Daughter, and filling him with the persuasion, which Princes not endowed with an especiall grace, do readily entertain; That his own will was the supreme law of his subjects, and the rule by which all things were to be measured and adjudged to be good or evil. In this imaginary happinesse *Pelopidas*, and the other Embassadours of *Greece*, both found and left him; but left him by so much more assured than they found him, by how much the conclusion of this Treaty with them, being altogether to his own advantage, did seem to promise, if not the perpetuity, a long endurance of the same felicity to him and his, or at the least a full security of danger from *Greece*, whence only could any danger be feared. But such foundations of eternitie layd by mortall men in this transitory world, like the Tower of *Babel*, are either shaken from heaven, or made vain and unprofitable, ere the frame can be raised to full height, by confusion of tongues among the builders. Hereof was found a good example in the *Thebans*, & other Estates of *Greece* that had sent Embassadours to the *Persians*. For whereas it had been concluded, that all Towns, as well the little as the great, should be set at liberty, and the *Thebans* made Protectors of this common peace, who thereby should become the judges of all controversies that might arise, and Leaders in War of all that would enter into this Confederacy; the Kings letters being solemnly published at *Thebes*, in the presence of Embassadours drawn thither from all parts of *Greece*; when an oath was required for observation of the form of peace therein set down, a dilatory answer was made by the Embassadours, who said, that they were sent to hear the articles, not to swear unto them. Hereby the *Thebans* were driven to send unto each of the Cities to require the Oath; But in vain. For when the *Corinthians* had boldly refused it, saying, that they did not need it; others took courage by their example to do the like, disappointing the *Thebans* of their glorious hopes, to whom this negotiation with *Artaxerxes* gave neither addition nor confirmation of greatnesse, but left them as it found them to relye upon their own swords.

## §. V.

*How all Greece was divided between the Athenians and Lacedæmonians on the one side, and Thebans on the other. Of the great tumults rising in Arcadia.*

**T**He condition of things in *Greece* at that time did stand thus. *Athens* and *Sparta*, which in former times had commanded all that Nation, and each upon envie of the others greatnesse drawn all their followers into a cruell intestine Warre, by which the whole Countrie, and especially the Estates of these two Cities, was brought very low, did now conjoyn their forces against the *Thebans*, who sought to make themselves Lords of all. The *Eleans*, *Corinthians*, and *Achaians*, followed the party of these ancient governing Cities; either for the old reputation of them; & benefits received, or in dislike

dislike of those, who by strong hand were ready to become Rulers, to which authority they could not suddenly aspire without some injurie and much envie. The Citie of *Thebes* abounding with men, whom necessity had made warlike, and many victories in few years had filled with great spirits; and being so mighty independants, that the had reduced all the continent of *Greece* without *Peloponnesus* (the Region of *Attica*, and very little part beside excepted) under such acknowledgement, as wanted not much of meer Vassallage, did hope to bring all *Peloponnesus* to the like obedience, wherein already she had set good footing by her conjunction with the States of *Argos*, and of *Arcadia*. The *Argives* had been alwayes bad Neighbours to the *Spartans*, to whom they thought themselves in ancient Nobilitie Superiours, but were farre under them in valour, having been often beaten out of the field by them, and put in danger of losing all: which to caused them to suspect and envie nothing more than the greatnesse and honour of *Sparta*, taking truce with her when she was at rest, and had leisure to bend her whole force against them; but firmly joyning with her enemies whensoever they found her entangled in a difficult warre. As the *Argives* were, in hatred of *Sparta*, sure friends of *Thebes*, so the *Arcadians*, transported with a great opinion of their own worthinesse, had formerly renounced and provoked against them their old Confederates and Leaders, the *Lacedemonians*, and were now become very doubtfull adherents to the *Thebans*. In which regard it was thought convenient by *Epaminondas*, and the State of *Thebes*, to send an Armie into *Peloponnesus*, before such time as these wavering friends should fall further off, and become either Neutrall, or, which was to be feared, open enemies. And surely great cause there was to suspect the worst of them, considering that without consent of the *Thebans*, they had made peace with *Athens*, which was very strange, and seemed no lesse to the *Athenians* themselves, who holding a firm league with *Sparta* at the same time when the *Arcadians* treated with them, did nevertheless accept this new Confederacie, nor relinquishing the old, because they found that howsoever these *Arcadians* were enemies to the *Lacedemonians*, they should hereby be drawn somewhat further from their alliance with *Thebes*, which without them was unlikely to invade *Peloponnesus* with a strong Armie. But this did rather hasten, than by any means stay the coming of *Epaminondas*; who finding the way somewhat more clear for him: because the Citie of *Corinth*, which lay upon the *Isthmus*, and had been adverse to *Thebes*, was now, by miseries of this grievous warre, driven to become Neutrall took occasion hereby, and by some disorders among the *Arcadians*, to visit *Peloponnesus* with an Armie, consisting of all the power of *Thebes*. A great tumult had risen in *Arcadia* about consecrated mony, which many principall men among them had laid hands on, under pretence of employing it to publike uses. In compounding the differences grown upon this occasion, such as had least will to render account of the money which had come into their hands, procured the Captain of some *Theban* Souldiers, lying in *Tegea*, to take prisoners many of their Country-men, as people desirous of innovation. This was done: but the uproare thereby caused was so great, that the prisoners were forth-with enlarged, and the *Arcadians*, who had in great numbers taken Arms, with much a-doe scarce pacified. When complaint of the Captains proceedings came to *Thebes*, *Epaminondas* turned all the blame upon them, who had made the peace with *Athens*, letting them know, that hee would be shortly among them, to judge of their fidelity, by the assistance which they should give him, in that war which he intended to make in *Peloponnesus*. These Lordly words did greatly amaze the *Arcadians*, who needing not the aid of so mighty a power as he drew along with him, did vehemently suspect that great preparation to be made against themselves. Hereupon such of them as had before sought means to settle the affairs of their Country; by drawing things to some good conclusion of peace, did now forth-with send to *Athens* for help, and withall dispatched some of the principall among them as Embassadors to *Sparta*, by whom they offered themselves to the common defence of *Peloponnesus*, now ready to be invaded. This Embassage brought much comfort to the *Lacedemonians*, who feared nothing more than the coming of *Epaminondas*, against whom they well knew, that all their forces, and best provisions, would be no more than very hardly sufficient. Forbearing therefore to dispute about prerogatives, they (who had been accustomed unto such a supremacie, as they would in no wise communicate with the powerfull Citie of *Athens*; till other hope of securing their own estate could not be thought upon) did now very gently yeeld to the *Arcadians*, that the

the command of the Armie in chief, should be given for the time, to that Citie in whose Territorie it lay.

## §. VI.

A terrible invasion of *Peloponnesus* by *Epaminondas*.

Certain it is, that the condition of things did at that time require a very firm consent, and uniform care of the common safetie. For, beside the great forces raised out of the other parts of *Greece*, the *Argives* & *Messenians* prepared with all their strength to joyn with *Epaminondas*; who having lien a while at *Nemica*, to intercept the *Athenians*, received there intelligence, that the Army coming from *Athens* would passe by Sea, whereupon he dislodged, and came to *Tegea*, which Citie, and the most of all *Arcadia* besides, forthwith declared themselves his. The common opinion was, that the first attempt of the *Thebans*, would be upon such of the *Arcadians* as had revolted, which caused the *Lacedemonian* Captains to fortifie *Mantineaa* with all diligence, and to send for *Agessilaus* to *Sparta*, that he bringing with him all that small force of able men which remained in the Town, they might be strong enough to abide *Epaminondas* there. But *Epaminondas* held so good espial upon his Enemies, that had not an unknow fellow brought hasty advertisement of his purpose to *Agessilaus*, who was then well onward in the way to *Mantineaa*, the Citie of *Sparta* had suddenly bin taken. For thither with all speed and secrecie did the *Thebans* march, who had surely carried the Citie, notwithstanding any defence that could have bin made by that handfull of men remaining within it, but that *Agessilaus* in all flying haste got into it with his companies, whom the Armie of his Confederates followed thither to the rescue as fast as it was able. The arrival of the *Lacedemonians* and their friends, as it cut off all hope from *Epaminondas* of taking *Sparta*, so it presented him with a fair advantage upon *Mantineaa*. It was the time of Harvest, which made it very likely, that the *Mantineans*, finding the war to be carried from their wals into another quarter, would use the commoditie of that vacation, by fetching in their corn, and turning out their cattell into the fields, whilest no enemy was neer that might impeach them. Wherefore he turned away from *Sparta* to *Mantineaa*, sending his horse-men before him, to seize upon all that might be found without the Citie. The *Mantineans* (according to the expectation of *Epaminondas*) were scattered abroad in the country, far more intent upon their harvest businesse, than upon the war, whereof they were secure, as thinking themselves out of distance. By which presumption it fell out, that great numbers of them, and all their Cattell, being unable to recover the Town, were in a desperate case; and the town it self in no great likelihood of holding out, when the enemy should have taken all their provision of victuals, with so many of the people as had not over-deerly bin redeemed, by that Cities returning to societie with *Thebes*. But at the same time, the *Athenians* coming to the succour of their Confederates, whom they thought to have found at *Mantineaa*, were very earnestly entreated by the Citizens to rescue their goods, and people, from the danger wherinto they were fallen, if it were possible by any courageous adventure to deliver those who otherwise were given as lost. The *Thebans* were known at that time to be the best Souldiers of all the *Greeks*; and the commendation of good horsemanship had alwaies bin given to the *Thebans*, as excelling in that qualitie all other Nations; yet the regard of honour so wrought upon the *Athenians*, that for the reputation of their Citie, which had entred into this war upon no necessity of her own, but only in desire of relieving her distressed friends, they issued forth of *Mantineaa*, not abiding so long as to refresh themselves, or their horses with meat; and giving a lustie charge upon the enemy, who as bravely received them, after a long and hot fight, they remained masters of the field, giving by this victory a safe and easie retreat to all that were without the wals. The whole power of the *Spartans* arrived in the place soon after this battell, whom the *Lacedemonians* and their assistants were not far behind.

## §. VII.

## §. VII.

The great battell of Mantinea. The honourable death of Epaminondas, with his commendation.

**E**paminondas, considering that his Commission was almost now expired, and that his attempts of surprizing *Sparta* and *Mantinea* having failed, the impression of terror which his name had wrought in the *Peloponnesians*, would soon vanish, unless by some notable act he should abate their courage in their first growth, & leave some memorable character of his expedition, resolved to give them battell, whereby he reasonably hoped both to settle the doubtfull affections of his own Associates, and to leave the *Spartans* as weak in spirit and abilitie, as he found them, if not wholly to bring them into subjection. Having therefore warned his men to prepare for that battell, wherein victory should be rewarded with Lordship of all *Greece*; and finding the alacrity of his Souldiers to be such as promised the accomplishment of his own desire; he made shew of declining the enemy, and intrenching himself in a place of more advantage; that so by taking from them all expectation of fighting that day, he might allay the heat of their valour, and afterward strike their senses with amazement, when he should come upon them unexpected. This opinion deceived him not. For with very much tumult, as in fo great & sudden a danger, the enemy ran to Arms, necessitie enforcing their resolution, & the consequence of that daies service urging them to do as well as they might. The *Theban* Army consisted of thirty thousand foot, & three thousand horse; the *Lacedemonians* and their friends were short of this number, both in horse and in foot, by a third part. The *Mantineans* (because the war was in their Countrey) stood in the right wing, and with them the *Lacedemonians*; the *Athenians* had the left wing; the *Achaens*, *Eleans*, and others of lesse account, filled the bodie of the Armie. The *Thebans* stood in the left wing of their own battell, opposite to the *Lacedemonians*, having by them the *Arcadians*, the *Eubaeans*, *Locrians*, *Sicyonians*, *Messenians*, and *Thesalians* with others, compounding the main battell; the *Argives* held the right wing; the horse-men on each part were placed in the flanks, only a troupe of the *Eleans* were in rear. Before the footmen could joyn, the encounter of the horse on both sides was very rough, wherein finally the *Thebans* prevailed, notwithstanding the valiant resistance of the *Athenians*: who not yeelding to the enemy either in courage or skill, were overlaid with numbers, and so beaten upon by *Thesalian* slings, that they were driven to forsake the place, and leave their infanterie naked. But this retreat was the lesse disgracefull, because they kept themselves together, and did not fall back upon their own foot-men; but finding the *Theban* horse to have given them over, and withall discovering some Companies of foot, which had bin sent about by *Epaminondas*, to charge their battell in the rear, they brake upon them, routed them, and hewed them all in pieces. In the mean season the battell of the *Athenians* had not only to doe with the *Argives*, but was hardly pressed by the *Theban* Horsemen, in such wise that it began to open, & was ready to turn back, when the *Elean* squadron of Horse came up to the relief of it, and restored all on that part. With far greater violence did the *Lacedemonians* and *Thebans* meet, these contending for Dominion, the other for the maintenance of their ancient honour; so that equal courage and equal losse on both sides made the hope and appearance of victorie to either equally doubtfull: unless perhaps the *Lacedemonians* being very firm abiders, might seem the more likely to prevail, as having borne the first brunt and furie of the on-set, which was not hitherto remitted; and being framed by discipline, as it were by Nature, to excell in patience, whereof the *Thebans*, by practice of a few years, cannot be thought to have gotten a habite so sure and generall. But *Epaminondas* perceiving the obstinate stiffnesse of the Enemies to be such, as neither the bad successe of their own horse, nor all the force of the *Boeotian* Armie, could abate so far, as to make them give one foot of ground; taking a choice companie of the most able men, whom he cast into the forme of a Wedge, or Diamond, by the advantage of that figure against a squadron, and by his own exceeding vertue, accompanied with the great strength and resolution of them which followed him, did open their ranks, and cleave the whole battell in despite of all resistance. Thus was the honour of that day won by the *Thebans*, who may justly be said to have carried the victorie, seeing that they remained Masters of the

the ground whereon the battell was fought, having driven the Enemy to lodge farther off. For that which was alleged by the *Athenians*, as a token that the victory was partly theirs, the slaughter of those Mercenaries upon whom they lighted by chance in their own fight, finding them behind their Army, & the retaining of their dead bodies; it was a ceremony regardable only among the *Greeks*, and served meerly for ostentation, shewing that by the fight they had obtained somewhat, which the enemy could not get from them otherwise than by request. But the *Thebans* arrived at the generall immediate end of battell, none daring to abide them in the field: whereof a manifest confession is expressed from them, who forsake the place which they had chosen or accepted, as indifferent for triall of their abilitie and prowess. This was the last work of the incomparable vertue of *Epaminondas*, who being in the head of that Warlike troupe of men, which broke the *Lacedemonian* esquadron, and forced it to give back in disaray, was furiously charged on the sudden, by a desperate Company of the *Spartans*, who all at once threw their Darts at him alone; whereby receiving many wounds, he nevertheless with a singular courage maintained the fight, using against the enemies many of their Darts, which he drew out of his own body; till at length by a *Spartan*, called *Anticrates*, he received so violent a stroke with a Dart, that the wood of it brake, leaving the yron and a peece of the truncheon in his breast. Hereupon he sunk down, and was soon conveyed out of the fight by his friends; having by his fall somewhat animated the *Spartans* (who fain would have got his bodie,) but much more inflamed with revengefull indignation, the *Thebans*, who raging at this heavy mischance, did with great slaughter compell their disordered enemies to leave the field; though long they followed not the chase, being wearied more with the sadnesse of this disaster, than with all the travell of the day. *Epaminondas* being brought into his Tent, was told by the Physicians, that when the head of the Dart should be drawn out of his body, he must needs dye. Hearing this he called for his shield, which to have lost, was held a great dishonour: it was brought unto him. He bad them tell him which part had the victory, answer was made, that the *Boeotians* had won the field. Then said he, It is a fair time for me to dye; and withall sent for *Iolides* and *Diaphantes*, two principall men of War, that were both slain, which being told him, He advised the *Thebans* to make peace, whilst with advantage they might, for that they had none left that was able to discharge the office of a General. Herewithall he willed, that the head of the weapon should be drawn out of his body, comforting his friends that lamented his death, and want of issue, by telling them, that the victories of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea* were two fair daughters, in whom his memory should live.

So died *Epaminondas*, the worthiest man that ever was bred in that Nation of *Greece*, and hardly to be matched in any Age or Countrey: for he equalled all others in the severall vertues, which in each of them were singular. His Justice and Sinceritie, his Temperance, Wisdome, and high Magnanimitie, were no way inferior to his Military vertue; in every part whereof he so excelled, that he could not properly be called a Warlike a Valiant, a Politique, a Bountifull, or an Industrious, and a Provident Captain. Neither was his private Conversation unanswerable to those high parts, which gave him praise abroad. For he was Grave, and yet very Affable and Courteous; resolute in publicke businesse, but in his own particular case, and of much mildnesse: a lover of his People, bearing with mens infirmities, wittie and pleasant in speech, far from insolence, Master of his own affections, and furnished with all qualities that might win and keep love. To these graces were added great ability of body, much Eloquence, and very deep knowledge in all parts of Philosophie and Learning, wherewith his mind being enlightened, rested not in the sweetnesse of Contemplation, but brake forth into such effects as gave unto *Thebes*, which had ever more bin an underling, a dreadfull reputation among all people adjoining, and the highest command in *Greece*.

## §. VIII.

of the peace concluded in Greece after the battell of Mantinea. The voyage of Agesilaus into Egypt. His death, and qualities with an examination of the comparison made between him and Pompey the Roman.

THIS battell of Mantinea was the greatest that had ever been fought in that Country between the Naturals; and the last. For at Marathon, and Plataea, the populous Armies of the barbarous Nations gave rather a great fame, than a hard trial to the Grecian valour; neither were the practice of Armes and Art Militarie, so perfect in the beginnings of the Peloponnesian War, as long continuance and daily exercise had now made them. The times following produced no actions of worth or moment, those excepted which were undertaken against forrain enemies, proving for the most part unfortunate. But in this last fight all Greece was interested, which never had more able Souldiers, and brave Commanders, nor ever contended for victory with greater care of the successe, or more obstinate resolution. All which notwithstanding the issue being such as hath bin related, it was found best for every particular Estate, that a general peace should be established, every one retaining what he presently had and none being forced to depend upon another. The Messenians were by name comprised in this new league; which caused the Lacedamonians not to enter into it. Their standing out hindered not the rest from proceeding to conclusion, considering that Sparta was now too weak to offend her Neighbours, and therefore might well be allowed to shew that anger in ceremonies, which had no power to declare it self in execution. This peace, as it gave some breath and refreshing to all the Country, so to the Cities of Athens and Sparta it afforded leisure to seek after wealth by forrain employment in Egypt, whither Agesilaus was sent with some small forces to assist, or indeed, as a Mercenarie, to serve under Tachos King of Egypt in his War upon Syria. Chabrias the Athenian, who had before commanded under Acoris King of Egypt, went now as a voluntarie, with such forces as he could raise, by entreatie, and offer of good pay, to the same service. These Egyptian Kings descended from Amyrtæus of Sais, who rebelled against Darius; Nothus, having retained the Country, notwithstanding all intestine dissensions, and forrain invasions, during three Generations of their own race, were so well acquainted with the valour of the Greeks, that by their help (easily procured with gold) they conceived great hope, not onely to assure themselves, but to become Lords of the Provinces adjoining, which were held by the Persian. What the issue of this great enterprise might have been, had it not fallen by Domesticall rebellion, it is uncertain. But very likely it is, that the rebellion it self had soon come to nothing, if Agesilaus had not proved a false Traitor, joyning with Nechanebus, who rose against his Prince, and helping the Rebelle with that Army which the mony of Tachos had waged. This falshood Agesilaus excused, as tending to the good of his own Country, though it seem rather, that he grudged because the King took upon himself the conduct of the Armie, using his service only as Lieutenant, who had made full account of being appointed the General. Howsoever it came to passe, Tachos being shamefully betrayed by them, in whom he had reposed his chief confidence, fled unto the Persian, who upon his submission gave him gentle entertainment; and Nechanebus (who seems to have been the Nephew of Tachos) reigned in his stead. At the same time the Citizens of Mendes had set up another King; to whom all, or most of the Egyptians yielded their obedience. But Agesilaus fighting with him in places of advantage, prevailed so far, that he left Nechanebus in quiet possession of the Kingdom, who in recompence of his treason to the former King Tachos, and good service done to himself, rewarded him with two hundred and thirtie Talents of silver, with which bootie sailing homewards, he died by the way. He was a Prince very temperate, and valiant, and a good Leader in War, free from covetousnesse, and not reproached with any blemish of lust; which praises are the lesse admirable in him, for that the discipline of Sparta was such as did endure every one of the Citizens (not carried away by the violent stream of an ill nature) with all, or the chiefe of these good qualities. He was nevertheless very arrogant, perverse, unjust and vain-glorious, measuring all things by his own will, and obstinately prosecuting those courses, whose ends were beyond hope. The expedition of Xenophon had filled him

him with an opinion, that by his hand the Empire of Persia should be overthrown; with which conceit being transported, and finding his proceedings interrupted by the Thebans and their Allies, he did ever after bear such hatred unto Thebes, as compelled that Estate by meer necessitie to grow war-like, and able, to the utter dishonour of Sparta, and the irreparable loss of all her former greatnes. The commendations given to him by Xenophon his good friend, have caused Plutarch to lay his name in the ballance against Pompey the Great; whose actions (the solemn gravitie of carriage excepted) are very disproportionate. Yet we may truly say, That as Pompey made great warres under sundry Climates and in all the Provinces of the Roman Empire, exceeding in the multitude of imployments all that were before him; so Agesilaus had at one time or other some quarrell with every Town in Greece, had made a Warre in Asia, and meddled in the business of the Egyptians, in which varietie he went beyond all his Predecessours: yet not winning any Countries, as Pompey did many, but obtaining large wages, which Pompey never took. Herein also they were very like; Each of them was the last great Captain which his Nation brough forth in time of libertie, and each of them ruined the libertie of his Country by his own Lordly wilfulness. We may therefore well say, *Similia magis omnia quam paria*; The resemblance was neerer than the equalitie. Indeed the freedome of Rome was lost with Pompey, falling into the hands of Caesar, whom he had informed to take Armes; yet the Roman Empire stood, the form of Government onely being changed: But the libertie of Greece, or of Sparta it self, was not forfeited unto the Thebans, whom Agesilaus had compelled to enter into a victorious Warre; yet the Signiorie, and ancient renown of Sparta was presently lost; and the freedome of all Greece being wounded in this Theban warre, and after much blood lost, ill healed by the peace ensuing, did very soon, upon the death of Agesilaus, give up the ghost, and the Lordship of the whole Countrie was seized by Philip King of Macedon, whose actions are now on foot, and more to be regarded than the Contemporarie passages of things, in any other Nation.

Finis Libri Tertii.

T t t

THE



# THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORIE OF THE WORLD;

Intreating of the times from the reign  
of Philip of Macedon, to the establishing of that  
Kingdome, in the race of  
ANTIGONUS.

## THE FOURTH BOOK.

### CHAP. I.

Of Philip the father of Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.

§ I.

What Kings reigned in Macedon before Philip.



**L**He Greeks, of whom we have already made large discourse, not as yet wearied with intestine War, nor made wise by their vain contention for superiority, doe still, as in former times, continue the invasion and vastation of each other.

Against Xerxes, the greatest Monarch of that part of the world, they defended their libertie, with as happy success as ever Nation had, and with no lesse honour, than hath ever been acquired by deeds of Arms. And having had a triall and experience, more than fortunate, against those nations, they so little regarded what might come from them, who had so often forfeited the reputation of their forces, as whatsoever could be spared from their own distraction at home, they transported over the Hellespont, as sufficient, to entertain and buse them withall.

But, as it commonly falleth out with every man of mark in the world, that they underfall, and perish by the hands and harmes which they least fear; so fared it at this time with the Greeks. For of Philip of Macedon (of whom we are now to speak) they had so little regard, as they grew even then more violent in devouring each other, when the fast-growing greatness of such a Neighbour-King, should, in regard of their own safeties, have served them for a strong argument of union and accord. But the glorie of their Persian victories, wherewith they were pampered and made proud, taught them to neglect all Nations but themselves, and the rather to value at little the power and purposes of the Macedonians, because those Kings and States, which fate nearer them than they did, had in the time of Amyntas, the father of Philip, so much weakened them, and won upon them, that they were not (as the Grecians periwaded themselves) in any one age, likely to recover

recover their own, much lesse to work any wonders against their borderers. And, indeed, it was not in their Philosophie to consider, That all great alterations are storm-like, sudden, and violent; and that it is then over-late to repair the decayed and broken banks, when great rivers are once swollen, fast-running, and enraged. No, the Greeks did rather employ themselves, in breaking down those defences which stood between them and this inundation, than seek to rampire and re-enforce their own floods, which by the Levell of reason they might have found to have lien under it. It was therefore well concluded by Orosius: *Græcia Civitates imperare singula cupiunt, imperium omnes perdidērunt; The Cities of Greece lost their command, by striving each of them to command all.*

The Kingdom of Macedon, so called of Macedon, the son of Osiris, or, as other Authors affirm, of Jupiter and Athra, is the next Region towards the North which bordereth Greece; It hath to the East, the Aegean Sea; it is bounded on the North and North-west, by the Thracians and Illyrians; and on the South and South-west by Thessalie and Epirus.

Their Kings were of the familie of Temenus, of the race of Hercules, and by nation Argives; who are listed as followeth. About some fix years after the translation of the Assyrian Empire, Arbaces then governing Media, Caranus of Argos, commanded by an Oracle, to lead a Colonie into Macedon, departed thence with many people, and as he was marching through that Countrie, the weather being raynie and tempestuous, he espied a great herd of Goats, which fled the storm as fast as they could, halting them to their known place of covert. Whereupon Caranus, calling to mind, that he had also by another Oracle bin directed, to follow the first troupe of beasts, that should either lead him, or flie before him; He pursued these Goats to the Gates of Edessa, and being undiscovered by the Inhabitants, by reason of the darkness of the air, he entered their Citie without resistance, and posselt it. Soon after this, by the overthrow of Cisseus, Caranus became Lord of the rest of Macedon, and held it eight and twenty years. Caranus succeeded Caranus, and reigned twelve years. Tyrmas followed Caranus, and ruled eight and twenty years.

Perdiccas the first, the son of Tyrmas, governed one and fifty years: a Prince, for his great valour, and many other vertues, much renowned. Solinus, Plinie, Justine, Euseb. *Sol. c. 14. Plin. l. 4. c. 10. Euseb. in Cloro.* him, Theophilus Antiochenus, and others, affirm, that he appointed a place of buriall for himself, and for all the Kings of Macedon his Successors, at Age: assuring them, that the Kingdome should so long continue in his Line and Race, as they continued to lay up their bodies in that Sepulchre; wherein it is said, that because Alexander the Great failed, therefore the posteritie of the Temenide failed in him: a thing rather devised after the effect, as I conceive, than foretold by Perdiccas.

Argæus succeeded unto Perdiccas, and ruled eight and twenty years.

Philip the first, his successor, reigned eight and twentie years.

Europus followed Philip, and governed fix and twenty years: in whose infancie the Illyrians invaded Macedon, and having obtained a great victory, they pursued the same, to the great danger of that State. Whereupon the Macedonians, gathering new forces, and resolving either to recover their former losse; or to lose at once both their Kingdome and their King, they carried him with them in his cradle into the field, and returned victorious; for they were either confident that their Nation could not be beaten (their King being present) or rather they periwaded themselves that there was no man so void of honour and compassion, as to abandon their naturall Lord, being an infant, and no way (but by the hands of his servants) able to defend himself from destruction. The like is reported by Aimonius of Clotarius the son of Fredegunda.

Alcetas succeeded Europus, and ruled nine and twentie years.

Amyntas the first succeeded Alcetas, and reigned fifty years; He lived at such time as Darius Hyaspes, after his unprosperous return out of Scythia, sent Megabazus with an Armie into Europe, who in Xerxes name required Amyntas to acknowledge him for his Supreme Lord, by yielding unto him Earth and Water. But his Embassadors, as you have heard before, were, for their insolent behaviour towards the Macedonian Lords, slain by the direction of Alexander, who was the son of Amyntas, and his Successor.

Alexander surnamed the Rich, the son of Amyntas, governed Macedon three and fortie



fortie years. He did not only appease the wrath of *Megabazus*, for the slaughter of the *Perſian* Embaſſadours, by giving *Gygæa* his Siſter, to *Bubares* of the bloud of *Perſia*, but by that match he grew to great in *Xerxes* grace, as he obtained all that Region between the Mountains of *Olympus* and *Hemus*, to be united to the Kingdome of *Macedon*. Yet could not theſe benefits buy his affection from the *Greeks*. For *Xerxes* being returned into *Aſia*, and *Mardonius* made Generall of the *Perſian* Armie; *Alexander* acquainted the *Greeks* with all his intents and purpoſes againſt them. He had three ſons, *Perdiccas*, *Alcetas*, and *Philip*.

*Perdiccas* the ſecond, the ſon of *Alexander*, lived in the time of the *Peloponneſſian* war, and reigned in all eight and twenty years. The wars which he made were not much remarkable: the ſtorie of them is found here and there by pieces in *Thucydides* his firſt fix Books. He left behind him two ſons; *Perdiccas*, who was very young; and *Archelaus*, who was baſe borne.

*Perdiccas* the third, being delivered to the cuſtodie and care of *Archelaus*, was at ſeven years of age caſt into a Well and drowned by his falſe Guardian: who excuſing this fact to *Cleopatra* the mother of the young King, ſaid, That the child in following a Goole haſtily, fell thereinto by miſadventure. But *Archelaus* ſtayed not here: for having thus diſpatched his brother, he ſlew both his Uncle *Alcetas* the ſon of *Alexander* the Rich, and *Alexander* the ſon of this *Alcetas*, his Couſin Germain, and enjoyed the Kingdome of *Macedon* himſelf four and twentie years.

This *Archelaus*, of whom both *Plato* and *Ariſtotele* make mention, though he made himſelf King by wicked murder, yet he performed many things greatly to the profit of his Nation. It is ſaid, I haſt he fought by all means to draw *Socrates* unto him, and that he greatly loved and honoured *Eurypides* the Tragedian. He had two ſons, *Archelaus* and *Oreſtes*.

*Archelaus* the ſecond ſucceeded his father, and having reigned ſeven years, he was ſlain in hunting, either by chance, or of purpoſe, by *Craſæus*.

*Oreſtes* his younger ſon was committed to the education of *Æropus*, of the royall bloud of *Macedon*, and had the ſame meaſure which *Archelaus* had meaſured to his Pupill; for *Æropus* murdered him and uſurped the Kingdome, which he held ſome fix years: the ſame who denied paſſage to *Ageſilaus* King of *Sparta*, who deſired after his return from the *Aſian* expedition, to paſſe by the way of *Macedon* into *Greece*.

This Uſurper left three ſons, *Pauiſianus*, *Argæus*, and *Alexander*. *Pauiſianus* ſucceeded his father *Æropus*, and having reigned one year, he was driven out by *Amyntas* the ſon of *Philip*, the ſon of the firſt *Perdiccas*, the ſon of *Alexander* the Rich; which *Philip* was then preſerved, when *Archelaus* the Baſtard ſlew his brother *Perdiccas*, his uncle *Alcetas*, and his ſon *Alexander*. This *Amyntas* reigned (though very unquietly) four and twentie years, for he was not only infeſted by *Pauiſianus*, aſſiſted by the *Thracians*, and by his brother *Argæus*, incouraged by the *Illyrians*; and by the ſaid *Argæus*, for two years diſpoſſeſt of *Macedon*: but on the other ſide, the *Olynthians*, his Neighbours near the *Ægean* Sea, made themſelves for a while Maſters of *Pella*, the chief Citie of *Macedon*.

*Amyntas* the ſecond had by his wife *Eurydice* the *Illyrian*, three ſons; *Alexander* the ſecond, *Perdiccas* the third, and *Philip* the ſecond, Father of *Alexander* the Great: and one Daughter called *Euryone* or *Exione*. He had alſo by his ſecond Wiſe *Gygæa*, three Sons; *Archelaus*, *Argæus*, and *Menelaus*, afterward ſlain by their brother *Philip*. He had more by a Concubine, *Protonie* ſurnamed *Alorites*, of the Citie of *Alorus*, wherein he was born.

*Alexander* the ſecond reigned not much above one year, in which time he was invaded by *Pauiſianus*, the ſon of *Æropus*, but defended by *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, while he was at that time about *Amphipolis*. He was alſo conſtrained (for the payment of a great ſum of money) to leave his youngſt brother *Philip* in Hoſtage with the *Illyrians*, who had ſubjected his father *Amyntas* to the payment of tribute. After this, *Alexander* being invited by the *Alevada* againſt *Alexander* the tyrant of *Pheres* in *Theſſalie*, having redeemed his brother *Philip*; to draw the *Thebans* to his aſſiſtance, entred into Conſederacie with *Pelopidas*, being at that time in the ſame Countie, with whom he alſo left *Philip* with divers other principall perſons, for the gage of his promiſes to *Pelopidas*. But *Eurydice* his mother falling in love with her Son-in-law, who had married her Daughter

Daughter *Euryone* or *Exione*, practiſed the death of *Alexander* her ſon, with a purpoſe to conferre the Kingdome on her Paramour, which *Protonie Alorites* did put in execution: by means whereof he held *Macedon* for three years, but was ſoon after ſlain by *Perdiccas* the brother of *Alexander*. *Diadore* hath it otherwiſe of *Philip* being made pledge, and ſaith, That *Amyntas* his father delivered him for hoſtage to the *Illyrians*, by whom he was conveyed to *Thebes*, there to be kept: others report that *Philip* (while his father was yet living) was firſt ingaged to the *Thebans*, and delivered for hoſtage a ſecond time by *Alexander* his brother.

*Perdiccas* the third, after he had ſlain *Alorites* his baſe brother, governed *Macedon* five years, and was then ſlain in a battell againſt the *Illyrians*, according to *Diadore*; but *Juſtine* affirmeth that he periſhed by the practice of *Eurydice* his mother, as *Alexander* did.

## §. II.

The beginning of Philip's reign: and how he delivered Macedon from the troubles wherein hee found it intangled.

**P**hilip the ſecond, the youngſt ſon of *Amyntas* by *Eurydice*, having bin inſtructed in all knowledge requiſite unto the government of a Kingdome, in that excellent education which he had under *Epaminondas*, making an eſcape from *Thebes*, returned into *Macedon*, in the firſt year of the hundred and fifth *Olympiad*, which was after the building of *Rome* three hundred fourſcore and thirteen years: and finding the many enemies and dangers wherewith the Kingdome was environed, he took on him, not as a King (for *Perdiccas* left a ſon, though but an infant) but as the Protector of his Nephew, and Commander of the men of war. Yet his fruitfull ambition ſoon over-grew his modeſtie, and he was eaſily perſwaded by the people to accept both the title of King, and withall, the abſolute rule of the Kingdome. And to ſay the truth, the neceſſitie of the State of *Macedon* at that time required a King both prudent and active. For, beſides the incuſions of the *Illyrians* and *Pannonians*, the King of *Thrace* did ſet up in oppoſition *Pauiſianus*; the *Athenians*, *Argæus*, ſons of the late Uſurper *Æropus*: each of theſe labouring to place in *Macedon* a King of their own election. Theſe heave burdens when *Philip* could not well bear, he bought off the weightieſt by money, and by fair promiſes unloaded himſelf of ſo many of the reſt, as he ran under the remainder happily enough. For, notwithstanding that his brother *Perdiccas* had his death accompanied with four thouſand *Macedonians*, beſide thoſe that were wounded and taken priſoners; and that the *Pannonians* were deſtroying all before them in *Macedon*; and that the *Athenians* with a Fleet by Sea, and three thouſand Souldiers by Land under *Mantias*, did beat upon him on all ſides & quarters of his Countie: yet after he had praſticed the men of war of *Pannonia*, and corrupted them with gifts; and had alſo bought the King of *Thrace* from *Pauiſianus*, he forthwith made head againſt the *Athenians* his ſtiffeſt enemies; and, for the firſt, he prevented their recovery of *Amphipolis*, a Citie on the frontier of *Macedon*: and did then purſue *Argæus* the ſon of *Æropus*, ſet againſt him by the *Athenians*, and followed him ſo hard at the heels, in his retreat from *Agæes*, that he forced him to abide the battell: which *Argæus* loſt, having the greateſt part of his Armie ſlain in the place. Thoſe of the *Athenians*, and others which remained unbroken, took the advantage of a ſtrong peece of ground at hand, which though they could not long defend, yet avoyding thereby the preſent furie of the Souldiers, they obtained of the vanquiſhers life and libertie to return into *Attica*. Whereupon a peace was concluded between him and the *Athenians* for that preſent, and for this clemencie he was greatly renowned and honoured by all the *Greeks*.

## §. III.

The good ſucceſſe which Philip had in many enterpriſes.

**N**ow had *Philip* leaſure to look Northward, and to attend the *Illyrians* and *Pannonians*; his irreconcilable enemies and borderers: both which hee invaded with

so prosperous successe, as he flew *Baridius*, King of the *Illyrians*, with seven thousand of his Nation, and thereby recovered all those places which the *Illyrians* held in *Macedon*: and withall upon the death of the King of *Pannonia*, he pierc'd that Country, and after a main victory obtained, he enforc'd them to pay him tribute. This was no sooner done, than (without staying to take longer breath) he hastned speedily towards *Larissa*, upon the river *Peneus* in *Thessaly*, of which Town he soon made himself master; and thereby he got good footing in that Country, whereof he made use in time following. Now although he resolv'd either to subdue the *Thessalians*, or to make them his own against all others, because the horse-men of that Country were the best, and most feared in that part of *Europe*; yet he thought it most for his safety to close up the entrances out of *Thrace*, lest while he invaded *Thessaly* and *Greece* towards the South, those ample Nations, lying towards the North, should either withdraw him, or over-run *Macedon*, as in former times. He therefore attempted *Amphipolis*, seated on the famous river of *Strimon*, which parteth *Thrace* from *Macedon*, and won it. He also recovered *Pydna*; and (to the North of *Amphipolis*) the City of *Crenides* (sometime *Datus*) and called it after his name *Philippi*: to the people whereof Saint *Paul* afterward directed one of his Epistles. This place, wherein *Philippi* stood, is very rich in mines of gold, out of which, greatly to the advancement of *Philips* affairs, he drew yearly a thousand talents, which make six hundred thousand French Crowns.

And that he might with the more ease disburden the *Thracian* shores of the *Athenian* Garrisons, to which he had given a great blow by the taking in of *Amphipolis*, he entred into league with his fathers malicious enemies, the *Olynthians*; whom the better to fasten unto him, he gave them the City of *Pydna* with the territory, meaning nothing lesse than that they should enjoy it, or their own Estate, many years.

Now that he might by degrees win ground upon the *Greekes*, hee took the fair occasion to deliver the City of *Pheres* in *Thessaly*, from the tyrants *Lycophron* and *Tisiphonus*: who, after they had conspired with *Thebe* the wife of *Alexander*, who usurped upon the liberty of that State, they themselves ( *Alexander* being murdered ) held it also by the same strong hand and oppression that *Alexander* did, till by the assistance of *Philip* they were beaten out, and *Pheres* restored to her former liberty. Which act of *Philip* did for ever after sullen the *Thessalians* unto him, and, to his exceeding great advantage, binde them to his service.

## §. IV.

of the Phocian War which first drew Philip into Greece.

About this time, to wit, in the second year of the hundred and sixth *Olympiad*, eight years after the battell of *Mantineæ*, and about the eighth year of *Ariarxes Ochus*, began that War, called *Sacred*. Now, as all occasions concur towards the execution of eternall providence, and of every great alteration, in the World, there is some preceding preparation, though not at the first easily discerned; so did this revengefull hatred by the *Thebans*, *Thessalians*, and *Locrians*, conceived against the *Phocians*, not only teach *Philip* how he might with half a hand wrest the sword out of their fingers; but the *Greekes* themselves, beating down their own defences, to give him an easie passage; and beating themselves, to give him victory without perill, left nothing unperformed towards their own slavery, saving the title and imposition. Of this War the *Thebans* (made over-proud by their victory at *Leuctres*) were the inflamers. For at the Councell of the *Amphyctious*, or of the generall Estates of *Greece*, in which at that time they swayed most, they caus'd both the *Lacedemonians* and *Phocians* to be condemn'd in greater summes of money than they could well bear; the one for surprizing the Castle of *Cadmea* in the time of peace, the other for ploughing up a piece of ground belonging to the Temple of *Delphos*. The *Phocians* being resolv'd not to obey this Edict, were secretly set on, and encouraged by the *Lacedemonians*: and for refusal were expos'd as Sacrilegiers, and accus'd to all their neighbour Nations, for whom it was then lawfull to invade, and destroy them at their pleasures.

The *Phocians* perswaded thereunto by *Philomelus*, a Captain of their own, cast the same dice of hazzard that *Cæsar* after many Ages following did; but had not the same chance

chance. Yet they dealt well enough with all the enemies of their own Nation. And the better to bear out an ungracious quarrell, of which there was left no hope of composition, they resolv'd to sack the Temple it self. For seeing that for the ploughing of a piece of *Apollō's* ground, they had so much offended their Neighbour-God, and their Neighbour-Nations, as worse could not befall them than already was intended; they resolv'd to take the gold with the ground, and either to perish for all, or to prevail against all that had commission to call them to account. The treasure which they took out of the Temple in the beginning of the Warre, was ten thousand talents, which in those dayes serv'd them to wage a great many men; and such was their successe in the beginning of the war, as they won three great battels against the *Thebans*, *Thessalians*, and *Locrians*; but being beaten in the fourth, their Leader *Philomelus* cast himself headlong over the Rocks.

In the mean while the Cities of *Chersonesus*, both to defend themselves against their bad neighbour *Philip*, who encroached upon them, and to draw others into their quarrell, renderd themselves to the *Athenians*. *Philip* prepar'd to get them into his hands, and at the siege of *Methone* lost one of his eyes. It is said, That he that shot him, did purposely direct his arrow toward him, and that it was written on the shaft thereof: After *Philippo*, After to *Philip*: for so he was called that gave him the wound. This Citie he even'd with the soil.

Plut. in *Vltyan*  
Strab. l. 8.

The Tyrant *Lycophron* before mentioned, while *Philip* was busied on the border of *Thrace*, and the *Thessalians* engag'd in the holy war, entred *Thessaly* with new forces, being assisted by *Onomarchus*, Commander of the *Phocian* Armie, in place of *Philomelus*. For hereby the *Phocians* hop'd so to entertain the *Thessalians* at home, as they should not find leasure to invade them. Hereupon was *Philip* the second time call'd into *Thessaly*; but both the *Thessalians* and *Macedonians* (*Philip* being present) were utterly overthrowen by *Onomarchus*, and great numbers of both Nations lost. From *Thessaly*, *Onomarchus* drew speedily towards *Boeotia*, and with the same victorious Armie brake the forces of the *Boeotians*, and took from them their Citie of *Coronea*. But *Philip*, impatient of his late misadventure, after he had re-enforc'd his Armie, returned with all speed into *Thessaly*, there to find again the honour which he lately lost: and was the second time encountered by *Onomarchus*, who brought into the field twentie thousand foot, and five hundred horse. All this great preparation suffic'd not; for *Onomarchus* was by *Philip* surmounted; both in numbers and in good fortune, his Armie overturn'd, six thousand slain, and three thousand taken: of which number himself being one, was among others hanged by *Philip*. Those that fled, were in part received by the *Athenian* Gallies, which sail'd alongst the coast, commanded by *Chares*; but the greatest number of those that took the Sea, were therein devour'd ere they recovered them. *Lycophron* was now again driven out of *Thessaly*, and *Pheres* made free as before.

## §. V.

of the Olynthian war. The ambitious practices of Philip.

From hence *Philip* resolv'd to invade *Phocis* it self, but the *Athenians* did not favour his entrance into those parts; and therefore with the help of the *Lacedemonians*, they retrench'd his passage at the Straits of *Thermopylæ*. Whereupon he return'd into *Macedon*, and after the taking of *Micyberne*, *Torone*, and other Towns, he quarrell'd with the *Olynthians*, whom not long before he had woo'd to his alliance, and bought his peace of them. For the *Olynthians* were very strong, and had evermore both brav'd and beaten the *Macedonians*. It is said; that *Philip* having put to death *Archelaus* his half brother ( for *Amyntas* had three sons by *Eurydice* the Mother of *Philip*, and three other sons by *Gygæa*: but *Philip's* elder brother by the same Mother being dead, he determin'd to rid himself also of the rest) the two younger held themselves within *Olynthus*; and that the receiving of them by the *Olynthians* was the cause of the war, *Fustine* affirmeth. But just quarrels are ballanc'd by just Princes, for to this King all things were lawfull that might serve his turn; all his affections, and passions, how divers soever in other men, were in his ambition swallowed up, and thercinto converted.

For

For he neither forbore the murder of his own brothers, the breach of faith, the buying of other mens fidelitie: he esteemed no place strong where his Affe loaden with gold might enter; nor any Citie or State unconquerable, where a few of the greatest, to be made greater, could lose the sense of other mens sorrow and subjection. And because he thought it vain to practise the winning of *Olynthus*, till he had inclosed all the power they had within their own Walls, he entred their Territorie, and by the advantage of a well-compounded and trained Armie, he gave them two overthrowes ere he fate down before the Citie it self: which done, he bought *Embricates* and *Lasthenes* from their people, and from the service of their Countrie and common-weale, by whose treason he entred the Town, slew his brothers therein, sackt it, and sold the Inhabitants for slaves by the drumme. By the spoil of this place he greatly enriched himself, and had treasure sufficient to buy-in other Cities withall, which he daily did. For so was he advised by the Oracle in the beginning of his undertaking, *That he should make his assaults with silver speares*: Whereupon *Horace* well and truly said,

*Hor. Com.  
Od. 1. 6.*

Diffidit Urbium  
Portas vir Macedo, & subruit emulos  
Reges muneribus.

By gifts the Macedon clave Gates asunder,  
And Kings envying his estate brought under.

And it is true that he won more by corruption and fraud, than he did by force. For as he had in all the principall Cities of *Greece* his secret workers (which way of Conquest was well followed by *Philip* the second of *Spain*;) So when in the contention between the Competitors for the Kingdome of *Thrace*, he was chosen the Arbitrator; he came not to the Councell accompanied with Pietie and Justice, but with a powerfull Armie, and having beaten and slain both Kings, gave sentence for himself, and made the King-  
dome his own.

#### s. VI.

*How Philip ended the Phocian warre.*

THE war still continued between the *Phocians* and the Associates of the holy war: the *Bæotians*, finding themselves unable to subsist without some present aid, sent unto *Philip* for succour, who willingly yielded to their necessities, and sent them such a proportion of men, as were neither sufficient to master their enemies, nor to assure themselves, but yet to enable them to continue the war, and to waste the strength of *Greece*. They also sent to *Artaxerxes* *Ochus* for supply of treasure, who lent them thirty talents, which makes a hundred and fourscore thousand crowns: but when with these supplies they had still the worst against the *Phocians*, who held from them three of the strongest Cities within *Bæotia* it self, they then besought *Philip* of *Macedon* that hee would assit them in person, to whom they would give an entrance into their Territorie, and in all things obey his commandements in war.

Now had *Philip* what he longed for; for he knew himself in state to give the law to both, and so quitting all his other purposes towards the North, he marched with a speedy pace towards *Bæotia*, where being arrived, *Phalcechus* who commanded the *Phocian* Armie, fearing to shock with this victorious King, made his own peace, and withdrew himself with a Regiment of eight thousand Souldiers into *Peloponnesus*, leaving the *Phocians* to the mercie of the Conqueror; and for conclusion he had the glory of that war called *Sacred*, which the *Grecians* with so many mutuall slaughters had continued for ten years; and besides the glory, he posselt himself of *Orchomene*, *Coronea*, and *Corsia*, in the Countrie of the *Bæotians*, who invited him to be victorious over themselves. He brought the *Phocians* into servitude, and wasted their Cities, and gave them but their Villages to inhabite, reserving unto himself the yearly tribute of three score talents, which make six and thirty thousand French Crowns. He also hereby (besides the fame of pietie for service of the gods) obtained the same double voice in the Councell of the *Amphyctones*,

*Amphyctones* which the *Phocians* had, with the Superintendencie of the *Pythian* games, forfeited by the *Corinthians*, by being partakers in the *Phocian* sacrifice.

#### s. VII.

*How Philip with ill successe attempted upon Perinthus, Byzantium, and the Scythians.*

*Philip*, after his triumphant return into *Macedon*, by the Lieutenant of his Armie *Parmenio*, slaughtered many thousands of the *Illyrians* and *Dardarians*, and brought the *Thracians* to pay him the tenth part of all their revenues. But his next enterprize against the *Perinthians* stayed his furie. *Perinthus* was a Citie of *Thrace*, seated upon *Propontus*, in the mid-way between *Sestos* and *Byzantium*, a place of great strength, and a people resolved to defend their liberie against *Philip*, where the *Athenians* encouraged and assisted them. *Philip* fate down before it with a puissant Armie, made many fair breaches, gave many furious assaults, built many over-topping and commanding Towers about it. But he was repelled with equall violence. For whereas *Philip* thought by his continuall assaults to weary them, and waste both their men and munition, they were supplied, not only from the *Persian* with men and mony, and succoured from *Byzantium*, which stood upon the same sea-coast, but they were relieved from *Athens*, *Chio*, and *Rhodes*, by the conduction of *Phocion* with whatsoever was wanting to their necessitie. But because those of *Byzantium*, by reason of their neighbourhood, and easie passage by water, gave them often and ready help; *Philip* removed the one half of his Armie, and besieged it, leaving fifteen thousand foot before *Perinthus*, to force it if they could: But to be short, he failed in both attempts, (as all Princes commonly doe that undertake divers enterprizes at one time) and returned into *Macedon* with no lesse dishonour than losse: whereupon he made an overture of peace with the *Athenians*, and greatly desired it to which though *Phocion* perswaded them in all he could, and that by the occasion offered they might greatly advantage their conditions; yet *Demosthenes* with his eloquence prevailed in the refusal. In the mean while, *Philip* having digested his late affront, and supplied his expence, by the taking of an hundred three score and ten Merchants ships, he gathered new forces, and being accompanied with his son *Alexander*, led them into *Scythia*; but he was also unprosperous in that enterprize: For the *Triballi*, a people of *Mæsia*, set on him in his return, wounded him, and took from him the greatest part of the spoils which he had gathered.

#### s. VIII.

*How Philip overthrowing the Greeks in the battell of Chæronæa, was chosen Captain-Generall of Greece. The death of Philip.*

AMONG these Northern Nations (part of which he suppress, and part quieted) he spent some eight years; and in the ninth year, after the end of the holy War, he was by his great advantage invited again by the *Grecians* to their assistance. For the Citizens of *Amphissa* having disobeyed the decree of the *Amphyctones*, in which *Philip* had a double voice, and who by reason that the *Thebans* and *Locrians* gave countenance and aid to the *Amphissionians*, the rest were not of themselves able to constrain them, they besought *Philip* to come in person to their assistance. Now you must think that *Philip* was not long in resolving upon this enterprize; he needed no drawing on, whom nothing could keep back; nor other dissuasion than a mastering power could hold thence. He therefore commanded his Armie forthwith to march; the same being compounded of thirty thousand foot, and two thousand horse; and with as much expedition as could be made, he entred *Phocia*, won *Platea*, and brought into subjection all that Region.

The rest, and especially the *Athenians*, although they had good cause to fear that a great part of this storm would fall on themselves, yet were they dissuaded by *Demosthenes* from accepting such reasonable conditions of peace as *Philip* offered, and rather made choice (having drawn the *Thebans* to joyn with them) to leave the enjoying of their estates

estates and their freedom to the chance of one battell, than to hold it either by composition, or by the grace of *Philip*. But this their Oratours eloquence cost them dear. It is true, that he could far more easily mind them of the virtue of their Ancestors, than make them such as they were. He might repeat unto them (with words moving passion) the wonders they wrought at *Marathon*, but he could not transforme the *Macedonians* into *Persians*, nor draw from the dead, a *Miltiades*, an *Arifides*, a *Themistocles*, or a *Cimon*, or any of those famous Commanders, whose great vertues they had payed with the greatest ingratitude that ever Nation did. A *Phocion* they had, but by the strength of a contrary faction he was at this time in disgrace, and not employed: in so much as when the Armies of *Philip* and the Confederates incourted, although some thousand of the *Athenians* did abide the killing, and the like number well-near of the *Thebans* died with them, yet the want of the worthy men on that side to hold up the rest, and to draw them on, and the many choice Captains of the *Macedonians*, incouraged by a King of a growing fortune, as it gave to *Philip* so shining a victory, that *Alexander* by the light thereof found his way (in despite of all the Nations interjacent) into *Persia*, *India*, and *Egypt*; so it cut to the ground, and gave end and date to all the *Grecian* glory: Yea their liberty (saith *Curtius*) with their large Dominion won with so many difficulties, continued for so many Ages, and so often defended against the greatest Kings, was now lost in a moment, and for ever lost.

Now this advised King (never passionate to his disadvantage) to the end he might obtain the Sovereignty over all *Greece*, and be acknowledged for their Captain-Generall against the *Persians*, without any further hazzard or trouble, was content to let go those *Albenians* that were taken at this battell of *Cheronea*, as he also forbore to attempt any thing against their Citie: but in *Thebes* (which lately by the vertue of *Epaminondas* triumphed over the rest) he lodged a Garrison of *Macedonians*. And being soon after (according unto the long desire which he had nourished of this Sovereignty) by the general States at *Corinth*, stiled the first Commander of all the *Grecians*, and contribution of men and money granted him, he compounded an Army of great strength, and under the Commandement of *Attalus* and *Parmenio*, transported the same over the *Hellspont* into *Asia*, to begin the War. Of his enterprise against *Persia*, he sought the successe from *Cræsus* did when he attempted *Cyrus*, and was in like sort mistaken in the exposition.

But as it is hard to discern and withstand the flatteries of our own appetites, so did *Philips* ambitious desire to invade *Persia*, abuse his judgement, so far, that the death, wherewith himself was threatned, he understood to be delivered of his enemy, whom he intended presently to invade. Before his purposed departure into *Asia*, he prepared for the marriage of his Daughter *Cleopatra*, with *Alexander* King of *Epirus*; to which feast and pastimes thereat appointed, he invited all his Friends and Allies, with the principall persons of the *Grecian* Cities, from whom he received much honour and many rich presents: but this was indeed the feast of his Funerall. For having refused to doe justice to one *Pausanias*, a Gentleman of his Guard, whom *Attalus* (greatly favoured by *Philip*) had first made drunk, and then left to be carnally abused by divers base persons: so this *Pausanias* grew into so great a detestation of the Kings partiality in so foul a fact, as when *Philip* was passing towards the Theater, he drew a sword from under his long garment and wounded him to death, when he had lived six and forty years, and reigned five and twenty. *Jusline* reports it, that *Olympias* incouraged *Pausanias* to murder the King her husband, which after his death she boldly avowed, by the honour she did unto *Pausanias*, in crowning his dead body, in consecrating his sword unto *Apollo*, by building for him a monument, and other like Graces.

## §. IX.

What good foundations of Alexanders greatnesse were laid by Philip. Of his laudible qualities and issues.

Now although he were then taken from the World, when he had mastered all opposition on that side of the Sea, and had seen the fruits of his hopes, and labours, changing colour towards ripenesse and perfection; yet hee was here-

herein happy, that he lived to see his son *Alexander* at mans estate, and had himself bin an eye-witnesse of his resolution and singular valour in this last battell.

The foundation of whose future greatnesse he had laid so foundly for him, with so plain a pattern of the buildings which himself meant to erect, as the performance and finishing was farre more easie to *Alexander*, though more glorious, than the beginnings unto *Philip*, though lesse famous. For, besides the recovery of *Macedon* it self in competition between him and the sonnes of *Aeropus*, the one assisted by the *Thracians*, the other by the *Athenians*, and besides the regaining of many places possessed by the *Illyrians*, the crushing of all those Northern Kings his Neighbours, the over-throw of *Olinthus*, a State that despised the power of his Father, the many Maritime Cities taken, of great strength and ancient freedom, and the subjection of that famous Nation of *Greece*, which for so many ages had defended it self against the greatest Kings of the World, and won upon them; He left unto his son, and had bred up for him so many choice Commanders, as the most of them, both for their valour and judgement in the Warre, were no lesse worthy of Crowns, than himself was that wore a Crown: For it was said of *Parmenio* (whom *Alexander*, ungratefull to so great vertue, impiously murdered) That *Parmenio* had performed many things challenging eternall fame, without the King; but the King without *Parmenio* never did any thing worthy of renowne: as for the rest of his Capitaines, though content to obey the Son of such a Father, yet so did they not after *Alexanders* death endure to acknowledge any man Superiour to themselves.

Of this Prince it is hard to judge, whether his ambition had taught him the exercise of more vices, than Nature and his excellent education had enriched him with vertues. For besides that he was Valiant, Wise, Learned, and Master of his Affections, he had this favour of Piety, that he rather laboured to satisfie those that were grieved, than to suppress them. Whereof (among many other) we find a good example in his dealing with *Arca-dion* and *Nicanor*, whom, when for their evill speech of *Philip*, his familiars perswaded him to put to death, he answered them, That first it ought to be considered, whether the fault were in them that gave him ill language, or in himself; Secondly, that it was in every mans own power to be well spoken of; and this was shortly proved, for after *Philip* relieved their necessities, there were none within his Kingdome that did him more honour than they did. Wherupon he told those that had perswaded him to use violence, that he was a better Physician for evill speech than they were.

His Epistles to *Alexander* his son are remembered by *Cicero* and *Gellius*; and by *Dion* and *Chrysostome* exceedingly commended. His Stratagems are gathered by *Polyanus* and *Eroutinus*; his wife sayings by *Plutarch*. And albeit he held *Macedon* as in his own right, all the time of his reign, yet was he not the true and next Heire thereof, for *Amyntas* the son of his brother *Perdiccas* (of whom he had the Protection during his infancy) had the right. This *Amyntas* he married to his daughter *Cyna*, who had by him a daughter called *Eurydice*, who was married to *Philips* base son *Aridæus*, her Uncle by the Mothers side: both which *Olympias*, *Philips* first Wife, and Mother to *Alexander* the Great, put to death; *Aridæus* by extreme torments, *Eurydice* the strangled.

*Philip* had by this *Olympias*, the daughter of *Neoptolemus*, King of the *Molossians* (of the race of *Achilles*) *Alexander* the Great, and *Cleopatra*. *Cleopatra* was married to her Uncle *Alexander*, King of *Epirus*, and was after her brother *Alexanders* death slain at *Sardis*, by the commandement of *Antigonus*.

By *Andata*, an *Illyrian*, his second Wife, he had *Cyna*, married as is shewed before. By *Nicasipolis*, the Sister of *Jasor*, Tyrant of *Pheres*, he had *TheSalonica*, whom *Cassander*, after he had taken *Pidna*, married; but she was afterward by her father-in-law *Antipater* put to death,

By *Cleopatra* the Neece of *Attalus*, he had *Caranus*, whom others call *Philip*: him *Olympias*, the Mother of *Alexander* the Great, caused to be roasted to death in a copper Pan. Others lay this murder to *Alexander* himself. By the same *Cleopatra* he had likewise a daughter called *Europa*, whom *Olympias* also murdered at the Mothers breast.

By *Phila* and *Meda* he had no issue. He had also two Concubines, *Arfinoe*, whom after he had gotten with child, he married to an obscure man, called *Lagus*, who bare *Ptolomie* King of *Egypt*, called Son of *Lagus*, but esteemed the Son of *Philip*: by *Philinna*, his second Conc-

Ar-  
the  
bine,  
a pub-

a publike Dancer, he had *Aridems*, of whom we shall have much occasion to speak hereafter.



## CHAP. II.

## Of ALEXANDER the Great.

10

## §. I.

*A brief rehearsal of Alexanders doings, before he invaded Asia.*

Alexander, afterwards called the Great, succeeded unto Philip his Father, being a Prince no lesse valiant by Nature, than by Education, well instructed, and enriched in all sorts of Learning and good Arts. He began his reign over the Macedonians four hundred and seven-  
 teen years after Rome was built, and after his own birth twenty years. 20  
 The strange dreams of Philip his father, and that one of the gods, in the shape of a Snake, begat him on *Olympias* his Mother, I omit as foolish tales; but that the Temple of *Diana* (a work the most magnificent of the world) was burnt upon the day of his birth, and that so strange an accident was accompanied with the newes of three severall victories, obtained by the Macedonians, it was very remarkable, and might with the reason of those times be interpreted for ominous, & foreshewing the great things by Alexander afterward performed. Upon the change of the King, the Neighbour-Nations, whom Philip had oppressed, began to consult about the recovery of their former libertie, and to adventure it by force of arms. Alexanders young  
 years gave them hope of prevailing, and his suspected severitie increased courage in those, who could better resolve to die, than to live slavishly. But Alexander gave no time to those swelling humours, which might speedily have endangered the health of his Estate. For after revenge taken upon the Conspirators against his Father, whom he slew upon his Tombe, and the celebration of his Funeralls, he first fastened unto him his own nation, by freeing them from all exactions and bodily slavery, other than their service in his Wars, and used such Kingly austeritie towards those that contemned his young years, and such clemencie to the rest that perswaded themselves of the crueltie of his disposition, as all affections being passed at home, he made a present journee into *Peloponnesus*, and so well exercised his spirits among them, as by the Counsell of the States of Greece, he was according to the great desire of his heart, elected Captain-Generall against the  
 Persians, upon which war Philip had not only resolved, (who had obtained the same title of  
 Generall Commander) but had transported under the leading of *Parmentio* and *Attalus*, a part of his Armie, to recover some places on Asia-side, for the safe descent of the rest.

This enterprise against the Persian occupied all Alexanders affections; those fair marks of Riches, Honour, and large Dominion, he now shot at both sleeping and waking: all other thoughts & imaginations were either grievous or hateful. But a contrary wind ariseth; for he receiveth advertisement, that the *Athenians*, *Thebans*, and *Lacedaemonians*, had united themselves against him, and, by assistance from the Persian, hoped for the recovery of their former freedome. Hereto they were perswaded by *Demosthenes*, himself being thereto perswaded by the gold of Persia: the devise he used was more subtle than profitable; for he caused it to be bruited that Alexander was slain in a battail against the *Thalles*, and brought into the assembly a companion whom he had corrupted, to affirm, that himself was present, and wounded in the battail. There is indeed a certain Doctrine of Policie (as Policie is now a daies defined by falsehood and knaverie) that dovid rumors & lies, if they serve the turn but for a day or two, are greatly available. It is true that common people are sometimes mockt by them, as Souldiers are by false alarums in the Wars; but in all that I have observed, I have found the success as ridiculous as the invention. For as those that find themselves at one time abused by such like bruits, doe at other times neglect their duties, when they are upon true reports, and  
 in

in occasions perillous, summoned to assemble; so doe all men in generall condemn the Veners of such trumpery, and for them, fear upon necessary occasions to entertain the truth it self. This labour unlooked for, and losse of time, was not only very grievous to Alexander, but by turning his sword from the ignoble and effeminate Persians, against which he had directed it, towards the manly and famous Grecians, of whose assistance he thought himself assured, his present undertaking was greatly disordered. But he that cannot endure to strive against the wind, shall hardly attain the Port which he purpoeth to recover: and it no lesse becommeth the worst of men to oppose misfortunes, than it doth the weakest children to bewail them.

10 He therefore made such expedition towards these Revolters, as that himself, with the Army that followed him, brought them the first newes of his preparation. Hereupon all stagger, and the Athenians, as they were the first that moved, so were they the first that fainted, seeking by their Embassadors to pacifie the King, and to be received again into his grace. Alexander was not long in resolving; for the Persians perswaded him to pardon the Grecians. Wise men are not easily drawn from great purposes by such occasions as may easily be taken off, neither hath any King ever brought to effect any great affair, who hath intangled himself in many enterprises at once, not tending to one and the same certain end.

And having now quieted his borderers towards the South, he resolved to assure those Nations which lay on the North-side of Macedon, to wit, the Thracians, Triballes, Peones, 20  
*Getes*, *Agrians*, and other salvage people, which had greatly vexed with incursions, not onely other of his Predecessors, but even Philip his Father: with all which, after divers overthrowes given them, he made peace or else brought them into subjection. Notwithstanding this good successe, hee could not yet find the way out of Europe. There is nothing more naturall to man than liberty; the Greeks had enjoyed it over-long, and lost it too late to forget it; they therefore shake off the yoke once again. The Thebans, who had in their Citadell a Garrison of 2 thousand Macedons, attempt to force it, Alexander hastneth to their succour, and presents himself with thirty thousand foot, all old  
 souldiers, and three thousand horse, before the City, and gave the Inhabitants some daies  
 30 to resolve, being even heart-sick with the desire of passing into Asia. So unwilling, indeed, he was to draw blood of the Grecians, by whom he hoped to serve himself elsewhere, that he offered the Thebans remission, if they would only deliver into his hands *Phanix* and *Prothytes*, the stirrers up of the Rebellion. But they, opposing the mounting fortune of Alexander, (which bare all resistance before it, like the breaking in of the Ocean Sea) instead of such an answer, as men besieged and abandoned should have made, demanded *Philotas* and *Antipater* to be delivered unto them; as if Thebes alone, then layed in the ballance of Fortune with the Kingdom of Macedon, and many other Provinces, could either have evened the scale or swayed it. Therefore in the end they perished in their obstinacy. For while the Thebans oppose the Army assailing, they  
 40 are charged at the back by the Macedonian Garrison, their Citie taken and razed to the ground, six thousand slain, and thirty thousand sold for slaves, at the price of four hundred and forty talents. This the King did to the terrour of the other Grecian Cities.

Many arguments were used by *Cleander* one of the prisoners, to perswade Alexander to forbear the destruction of Thebes. He prayed the King to believe that they were rather misled by giving hasty credit to false reports, than any way malicious; for being perswaded of Alexanders death, they rebelled but against his successour. He also besought the King to remember, that his father Philip had his education in that City, yea, that his Ancestour Hercules was born therein: but all perswasions were fruitlesse; the times wherein offences are committed do greatly aggravate them. Yet for the honour he bare to learning, he pardoned all the race of *Pindarus* the Poet, and spared, and set at liberty *Timoclea*, the sister of *Theagenes*, who died in defence of the liberty of Greece against his father Philip. This noble woman being taken by a Thracian, and by him ravished, he threatened to take her life unless she would confesse her treasure: she led that Thracian to a Well, and told him that she had therein cast it: and when the Thracian stooped to look into the Well, she suddenly thrust him into the mouth thereof, and stoned him to death.

Now because the Athenians had received into their City so many of the Thebans, as  
 V v v had

had escaped and fled unto them for succour, *Alexander* would not grant them peace, but upon condition to deliver into his hands both their Orators which perswaded this second revolt, and their Captains; yet in the end, it being a torment unto him to retard the enterprise of *Persia*, he was content that the Orators should remain, and accepted of the banishment of the Captains; wherein he was exceeding ill advised, had not his fortune, or rather the providence of God, made all the resistance against him unprofitable: for these good Leaders of the *Grecians* betook themselves to the service of the *Persians*, whom after a few dayes he invaded.

## §. II.

*How Alexander passing into Asia, fought with the Persians upon the River of Granicus.*

**V**hen all was now quieted at home, *Alexander*, committing to the trust of *Antipater* both *Greece* and *Macedon*, in the first of the Spring did passe the *Hellspont*, and being ready to disembark, he threw a Dart towards the *Asian* shore, as a token of defiance, commanding his Souldiers not to make any waste in their own Territorie, or to burn, or deface those buildings which themselves were presently, and in the future to possesse. He landed his Armie, consisting of two and thirty thousand foot, and five thousand horse, all old Souldiers, neer unto *Troy*, where he offered a solemn sacrifice upon *Achilles* Tombe, his maternall Ancestor.

But before he left his own coast, hee put to death without any offence given him, all his Mother-in-lawes Kinsmen, whom *Philep* his Father had greatly advanced, not sparing such of his own as he suspected. He also took with him many of his tributary Princes, of whose fidelity he doubted; thinking by unjust cruelty to assure all things, both in the present and future. Yet the end of all fell out contrary to the policy which his Ambition had commended unto him, though agreeing very well with the justice of God; for all that he had planted, was soon after withered, and rooted up; those, whom he most trusted, were the most traitorous; his mother, friends, and children, fell by such another merciless sword as his own, and all manner of confusion followed his dead body to the grave, and left him there.

When the knowledge of *Alexander*'s landing on *Asia* side was brought to *Darius*, he so much scorned the Army of *Macedon*, and had so contemptible an opinion of *Alexander* himself, as having stiled him his servant on a letter which he wrote unto him, reprehending his disloyaltie and audacitie (for *Darius* intituled himself King of Kings, and the Kinsman of the gods) he gave order withall to his Lieutenants of the lesser *Asia*, that they should take *Alexander* alive, whip him with rods, and then convey him to his presence: that they should sink his ships, and send the *Macedons* taken prisoners beyond the Red-Sea; belike into *Aethiopia*, or some other unhealthfull part of *Africa*.

In this sort did this glorious King, confident in the glittering, but heartlesse, multitude which he commanded, dispose of the already vanquished *Macedonians*: But the ill destinies of men bear them to the ground, by what strong confidence soever armed. The great numbers which he gathered together and brought in one heap into the field, gave rather an exceeding advantage to his enemies, than any discouragement at all. For besides that they were men utterly unacquainted with dangers, men who by the name and countenance of their King were wont to prevail against those of lesse courage than themselves, men that took more care how to embroider with gold and silver their upper garments, as if they attended the invasion but of the Sun-beams, than they did to arm themselves with yron and steel against the sharp pikes, swords and darts of the hardie *Macedonians*; I say, besides all these, even the opinion they had of their own numbers, of which every one in particular hoped that it would not fall to his turn to fight, filled every of them with the care of their own safetie, without any intent at all to hazard any thing but their own breath, and that of their horses, in running away. The *Macedonians*, as they came to fight, and thereby to enrich themselves with the gold and jewels of *Persia*, both which they needed; so the *Persians*, who expected nothing in that Warre but blowes and wounds, which they needed not, obeyed the King, who had power to constrain them in assembling themselves for his service; but their own fears and cowardise, which in time of danger had most power over them, they

they only then obeyed, when their rebellion against so servile a passion did justly and violently require it. For, saith *Vegetius*: *Quemadmodum bene exercitatus miles prelium cupit, ita formidat indoctus; nam sciendum est in pugna usum amplius predesse quam vires.* As the well-practised Souldier desires to come to battail, so the raw one fears it: for we must understand, that in fight it more avails to have been accustomed unto the like, than only to have rude strength. What manner of men the *Persians* were, *Alexander* discovered in the first encounter, before which time it is said, by those that write his story, that it was hard to judge, whether his daring to undertake the conquest of an Empire so well peopled, with a handful of men, or the successe he had, were more to be wondered at. For at the River of *Granicus*, which severeth the Territorie of *Troy* from *Propontis*, the *Persians* fought to stop his passage, taking the higher ground and bank of the River to defend, which *Alexander* was forced (as it were) to climb up unto, and scale from the Level of the water. Great resistance (saith *Curtius*) was made by the *Persians*, yet in the end *Alexander* prevailed. But it seems to me, that the victory then gotten was exceeding easie, and that the twenty thousand *Persian* foot-men, said to be slain, were rather kill'd in the back, in running away, than hurt in the bosoms by resisting. For had those twenty thousand foot, and two hundred and fiftie horsemen, or after *Plutarch*, two thousand and five hundred horse-men, dyed with their faces towards the *Macedonians*, *Alexander* could not have bought their lives at so small a rate, as with the losse of four and thirty of all sorts of his own. And if it were also true, that *Plutarch* doth report, how *Alexander* encountered two of the *Persian* Commanders, *Spirbridates* and *Rhescaces*, and that the *Persian* horse-men fought with great fury, though in the end scattered; and lastly, how those *Grecians* in *Darius* his pay, holding themselves in one body upon a piece of ground of advantage, did (after mercy was refused them) fight it out to the last; how doth it then resemble truth, that such resistance having been made, yet of *Alexanders* Army there fell but twelve Footmen, and two and twenty Horsemen?

## §. III.

*A digression concerning the defence of hard passages. Of things following the battail of Granick.*

**T**He winning of this passage did greatly encourage the *Macedonians*, and brought such terror upon all those of the lesser *Asia*, as he obtained all the Kingdoms thereof without a blow, some one or two Towns excepted. For in all invasions, where the Nations invaded have once been beaten upon a great advantage of the place, as in defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they will soon have perswaded themselves, that such an enemy upon equal termes and even ground, can hardly be resisted. It was therefore *Machiavels* counsell, That he which resolveth to defend a passage, should with his ablest force oppose the Assailant. And to say truth, few Regions of any great circuit are so well fenced, that Armies of such force as may be thought sufficient to conquer them, can be debarr'd all entrance, by the naturall difficultie of the wayes. One passage or other is commonly left unguarded: if all be defended, then must the forces of the Country be distracted; and yet lightly some one place will be found that is defended very weakly. How often have the *Alpes* given way to Armies, breaking into *Italy*? Yea, where shall we find that ever they kept out an invader? Yet are they such as (to speak briefly) afflict with all difficulties those that travell over them; but they give no security to those that lye behind them: for they are of too large extent. The towns of *Lombardy* perswaded themselves that they might enjoy their quiet, when the Warlike Nation of the *Switzers* had undertaken to hinder *Francis* the French King from descending into the Dutchy of *Milan*: but whilest these Patrons of *Milan*, whom their own dwelling in those Mountains had made fittest of all other for such a service, were busied in custody of the *Alpes*, *Francis* appeared in *Lombardy*, to so much the greater terror of the Inhabitants, by how much the lesse they had expected his arrivall. What shall we say of those Mountains, which lock up whole Regions in such sort, as they leave but one gate open? The Streights, or (as they were called) the gates of *Taurus* in *Cilicia*, and those of *Thermopylae*, have seldome been attempted, perhaps because they were thought impregnable: but how seldome (if ever) have they been attempted in vain? *Xerxes*, and long after him, the *Romans*, forced the entrance of



*Thermopylae*, *Cyrus* the yonger, and after him *Alexander*, found the Gates of *Cilicia* wide open; how strongly soever they had bin locked and barred, yet were those Countreies open enough to a fleet that should enter on the back-side. The defence of Rivers how hard a thing it is, we find examples in all histories that bear good witness. The deepest have many Foords; the swiftest and broadest may be passed by Boats, in case it be found a matter of difficulty to make a bridge. He that hath men enow to defend all the length of his own bank, hath also enow to beat his enemy; and may therefore doe better to let him come over, to his loss, than by striving in vain to hinder the passage, as a matter tending to his own disadvantage, fill the heads of his Souldiers with an opinion, that they are in ill case, having their means of safeguard taken from them, by the skill or valour of such as are too good for them. Certainly, if a River were sufficient defence against an Army, the Isle of *Mona*, now called *Anglesey*, which is divided from North-Wales by an armie of the Sea, had been safe enough against the *Romans* invading it under conduct of *Julius Agricola*. But he wanting, and not meaning to spend the time in making vessels to transport his forces, did assay the foords. Whereby he so amazed the enemies attending for ships and such like provision by Sea, that surely believing nothing could be hard or invincible to men, which came so minded to War, they humbly intreated for peace, and yielded the Island. Yet the *Britaines* were men stout enough, the *Persians* were very dastards.

It was therefore wisely done of *Alexander*, to passe the River of *Granick* in face of the enemy; not marching higher to seek an easier way, nor labouring to convey his men over it by some safer means. For, having beaten them upon their own ground, he did thereby cut off no lesse of their reputation, than of their strength, leaving no hope of succour to the partakers and followers of such unable Protectors.

Soon after this victory he recovered *Sardis*, *Ephesus*, the Cities of the *Trallians*, and *Magnesia*, which were rendred unto him. The inhabitants of which, with the people of the Countreie, he received with great grace, suffering them to be governed by their own laws. For he observed it well; *Novum Imperium inchoantibus utilis clementia fama*; It is commodious unto such as lay the foundations of a new Sovereignty, to have the fame of being mercifull. He then by *Pyrronius* wan *Miletas*, and by force mastered *Halicarnassians*, which because it resisted obstinately, he razed to the ground. From whence he entred into *Caria*, where *Ada* the Queen, who had been cast out of all that she held (except the City of *Alinda*) by *Darius* his Lieutenants, presented her self unto him, and adopted him her son and successeur; which *Alexander* accepted in so gracious part, as he left the whole Kingdom to her disposing. He then entred into *Lycia*, and *Pamphylia*, and obtained all the Sea coasts, and subjecting unto him *Pisidia*, he directed himself towards *Darius* (who was said to be advanced towards him with a marvellous Army) by the way of *Phrygia*: For all the Province of *Asia* the lesse, bordering upon the Sea, his first victory layed under his feet.

While he gave order for the government and setting of *Lycia*, and *Pamphylia*, they sent *Cleander* to raise some new Captains in *Peloponnesus*, and marching towards the North, he entred *Celenas*, seated on the River *Meander*, which was abandoned unto him, the Castle onely holding out, which also after forty dayes was given up: for so long time he gave them to attend succour from *Darius*. From *Celenas* he past on through *Phrygia* towards the *Euxine* Sea, till he came to a city called *Gordium*, the Regall seat, in former times, of King *Midas*. In this City it was, that he found the Gordian knot, which when he knew not how to undoe, he cut it asunder with his sword. For there was an ancient prophetic did promise to him that could untie it, the Lordship of all *Asia*; whereupon *Alexander*, not respecting the manner how, so it were done, assumed to himself the fulfilling of the prophetic, by hewing it in pieces.

But before he turned from this part of *Asia* the lesse towards the east, he took care to clear the Sea coast on his back, and to thrust the *Persians* out of the Ilands of *Lesbos*, *Chios*, and *Cos*: the charge whereof he committed unto two of his Captains, giving them such order as he thought to be most convenient for that service; and delivering unto them fifty Talents to defray the charge; and withall out of his first spoyl gotten, he sent threescore Talents more to *Antipater* his Lieutenant in Greece and Macedonia. From *Celenas* he removed to *Ancira*, now called *Anguri*, standing on the same River of *Sangarius*, which runneth through *Gordium*: there he mustered his Army, and then

then entred *Paphlagonia*, whose people submitted themselves unto him, and obtained freedome of tribute: where he left *Catus* Governor with one Regiment of *Macedonians* lately arrived.

Here he understood of the death of *Memnon*, *Darius* Lieutenant, which heartned him greatly to passe on towards him; for of this only Captain he had more respect than of all the multitude by *Darius* assembled, and of all the Commanders he had besides. For so much hath the spirit of some one man excelled, as it hath undertaken and effected the alteration of the greatest States and Common-weals, the erection of Monarchies, the conquest of Kingdomes and Empires, guided handfulls of men against multitudes of equally bodilly strength, contrived victories beyond all hope and discourse of reason, converted the fearfull passions of his own followers into magnanimity, and the valour of his enemies into cowardize; such spirits have been stirred up in sunnry Ages of the world, and in divers parts thereof, to erect and cast down again, to establish and to destroy, and to bring all things, Persons and States, to the same certain ends, which the infinite Spirit of the *Univerfall*, piercing, moving, and governing all things, hath ordained. Certainly the things that this King did, were marvellous, and would hardly have been undertaken by any man else: and though his Father had determined to have invaded the lesser *Asia*, it is like enough that he would have contented himself with some part thereof, and not have discovered the River of *Indus*; as this man did. The swift course of victory, wherewith he ran over so large a portion of the World, in so short a space, may justly be imputed unto this, that he was never encountered by an equal spirit, concurring with equal power against him. Hereby it came to passe that his actions being limited by no greater opposition, than desert places, and the meer length of tedious journeys could make, were like the *Colossus* of *Rhodes*, not so much to be admired for the workmanship, though therein also praise-worthy, as for the huge bulk. For certainly the things performed by *Xenophon*, discover as brave a spirit as *Alexanders*, and working nolesse exquisitely, though the effects were lesse materiall, as were also the forces and power of command, by which it wrought. But he that would find the exact pattern of a noble Commander, must look upon such as *Epaninondas*, that encountering worthy Captains, and those better followed than themselves, have by their singular vertue over-topped their valiant enemies, and still prevailed over those, that would not have yielded one foot to any other. Such as these are, do seldom live to obtain great Empires. For it is a work of more labour and longer time, to master the equal forces of one hardy and well-ordered State, than to tread down and utterly subdue a multitude of servile Nations, compounding the body of a grosse unwieldy Empire. Wherefore these *Parvo Potentes*, men that with little have done much upon enemies of like ability, are to be regarded as choise examples of worth; but great Conquerors, to be rather admired for the substance of their actions, than the exquisite managing: exactnesse and greatnesse concurring so seldom, that I can find no instance of both in one, save onely that brave Roman, *Cesar*.

Having thus farre digressed, it is now time that wee return unto our Eastern Conqueror; who is travelling hastily towards *Cilicia*, with a desire to recover the Streights thereof before *Darius* should arrive there. But first making a dispatch into Greece, he sent to those Cities, in which he reposed most trust, some of the *Persian* Targets which hee had recovered in his first battell; upon which, by certain inscriptions, he made them partakers of his victory. Herein he well advised himself; for he that doth not as well impart of the honour which he gains in the Wars, as he doth of the spoils, shall never be long followed of those of the better sort. For men which are either well born, or well bred, and have more of wealth than of reputation, do as often satisfie themselves with the purchase of glory, as the weak in fortune, and strong in courage, do with the gain of gold and silver.

The Governour of *Cilicia* hearing of *Alexanders* coming on, left some Companies to keep the Streights, which were indeed very defensible; and withall, as *Curtius* noteth, hee began overlate to prise and put in execution the Counsell of *Memnon*: who in the beginning of the Wars advised him to waste all the provisions for Men and Horse, that could not be lodged in strong places, and always to give ground to the Invader, till he found some such notable advantage as might assuredly promise him the obtaining of victory. For the fury of an invading Army is best broken, by delays, change

of diet, and want, eating sometimes too little, and sometimes too much, sometimes reposing themselves in beds, and more often on the cold ground. These and the like sudden alterations bring many diseases upon all Nations out of their own Countries. Therefore if *Darius* had kept the *Macedonians* but a while from meat and sleep, and refusing to give or take battell, had wearied them with his light horse, as the *Parthians* afterward did the *Romans*, he might perchance have saved his own life, and his estate. For it was one of the greatest encouragements given by *Alexander*, to the *Macedonians*, in the third and last fatal battell, that they were to fight with all the strength of *Persia* at once.

*Xerxes*, when he invaded *Greece* and fought abroad, in being beaten, lost only his men; but *Darius* being invaded by the *Greeks*, and fighting at home, by being beaten, lost his Kingdome. *Pericles* though the *Lacedamonians* burnt all in *Attica* to the Gates of *Athens*, yet could not be drawn to hazzard a battell: for the invaded ought evermore to fight upon the advantage of time and place. Because we read Histories to inform our understanding by the examples therein found, we will give some instances of those that have perished by adventuring in their own Countries, to charge an invading Armie. The *Romans*, by fighting with *Hannibal*, were brought to the brink of their destruction.

*Pompey* was well advised for a while, when he gave *Caesar* ground, but when by the importunity of his Captains he adventured to fight at *Pharsalia*, he lost the battell, lost the freedome of *Rome*, and his own life.

*Ferdinand*, in the Conquest of *Naples*, would needs fight a battell with the *French* to his confusion, though it was told him by a man of sound judgement, that those Counsels which promise surety in all things, are honourable enough.

The Constable of *France* made frustrate the mighty preparation of *Charles* the Fifth, when he invaded *Provence*, by waisting the Countrie, and forbearing to fight; so did the Duke of *Alva* wearie the *French* in *Naples*, and dissolve the boistrous Army of the Prince of *Orange* in the Low-Countries.

The *Leigers*, contrary to the advice of their Generall, would needs fight a battell with the *Bourgonians*, invading their Country, and could not be perswaded to linger the time, and stay their advantage, but they lost eight and twenty thousand upon the place. *Philip* of *Valois* set upon King *Edward* at *Chesie*, and King *John* (when the *English* were well-near tired out, and would in short time by an orderly pursuit have been wasted to nothing) constrained the black Prince with great fury, neer *Poitiers*, to joyn battell with him: But all men know what lamentable successe these two *French* Kings found. *Charles* the fifth of *France* made another kind of *Fabian*-Warfare; and though the *English* burnt and wasted many places, yet this King held his resolution to forbear blowes, and followed his advice, which told him, That the *English* could never get his inheritance by smother; and it is reported by *Belloy* and *Herrault*, that King *Edward* was wont to say of this *Charles*, that he was from him the Dutchy of *Guyen* without ever putting on his Armour.

But where God hath a purpose to destroy, wife men grow short-lived, and the charge of things is committed unto such as either cannot see what is for their good, or know not how to put in execution any sound advice. The course which *Memnon* had propounded, must in all appearance of reason have brought the *Macedonian* to a great perplexity, and made him stand still a while at the Streights of *Cilicia*, doubting whether it were more shameful to return, or dangerous to proceed. For, had *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia* been wasted whilst *Alexander* was far off; and the Streights of *Cilicia* been defended by *Armenes*, Governour of that Province, with the best of his forces; hunger would not have suffered the enemy, to stay the trial of all means that might be thought upon, of forcing that passage: or if the place could not have been maintained, yet might *Cilicia*, at better leisure have been so thoroughly spoiled, that the heart of his Army should have been broken, by seeking out miseries by painful travelling.

But *Armenes* leaving a small number to defend the Streights, took the best of his Armie with him, to waste and spoil the Country; or rather, as may seem, to find himself some work, by pretence of which he might honestly run further away from *Alexander*. Hee should rather have adventured his person in custody of the Streights, whereby he might perhaps have saved the Province; and in the mean time, all that was in the fields, would have been conveyed into strong Towns. So should his Army, if it were

driven from the place of advantage, have found good entertainment within walled Cities, and himself with his horse-men have had the lesse work in destroying that little which was left abroad. Handling the matter as he did, he gave the *Cilicians* cause to wish for *Alexanders* coming, and as great cause to the Keepers of the passage not to hinder it. For cowards are wise in apprehending all formes of danger. These Guardians of the Streights, hearing that *Armenes* made all haste to joyn himself with *Darius*, burning down all as he went, like one despairing of the defence, began to grow circumspect, and to think that surely their Generall, who gave as lost the Countrie behind their backs, had exposed themselves unto certain death, as men that were good for nothing else but to dull the *Macedonian* swords. Wherefore, not affecting to die for their Prince and Countrie (which honour they saw that *Armenes* himself could well forbear) they speedily followed the foot-steps of their Generall, gleaning after his Harvest. Thus *Alexander* without labour got both the entrance of *Cilicia*, abandoned by the cowardise of his Enemies, and the whole Province that had been alienated from the *Persian* side by their indiscretion.

## §. III.

Of the unwarlike Army levied by *Darius* against *Alexander*. The unadvised courses which *Darius* took in this expedition. He is vanquished at *Ilius*, where his Mother, Wife, and Children are made prisoners: of some things following the battell of *Ilius*.

IN the mean season *Darius* approached; who (as *Curcius* reports) had compounded an Army of more than two hundred and ninety thousand Souldiers, out of divers Nations; *Fustine* musters them at three hundred thousand Foot, and a hundred thousand Horse; *Plutarch* at six hundred thousand.

The manner of his coming on, as *Curcius* describes it, was rather like a masker than a man of War, and like one that took more care to set out his glory and riches, than to provide for his own safety, perswading himself, as it seemed, to beat *Alexander* with pomp and sumptuous Pageants. For, before the Armie there was carried the holy fire, which the *Persians* worshipped, attended by their Priests, and after them three hundred and threescore and five young-men, answering the number of the dayes of the year, covered with Scarlet; then the Chariot of *Jupiter* drawn with white Horses, with their Riders clothed in the same colour, with rods of gold in their hands; And after it, the Horse of the Sun: Next after these follow ten sumptuous Chariots, in-layed and garnished with silver and gold; and then the Vanguard of their horse, compounded of twelve severall Nations, which the better to avoid confusion, did hardly understand each others language; and these marshalled in the head of the rest, being beaten, might serve very fitly to disorder all that followed them: in the tail of these Horses the Regiment of foot marched, with the *Persians* called immortal, because if any died, the number was presently supplied: and these were armed with chains of gold, and their coats with the same metall imbroidered, whereof the sleeves were garnished with pearl's baits, either to catch the hungry *Macedonians* withall, or to perswade them that it were great incivility to cut, and to deface such glorious garments. But it was well said; *Sumptuose indutus miles, se virtute superiorem alius non existimet, cum in praeliis oporteat fortitudine animi, & non vestimentis muniti, quoniam hostes vestibus non debellantur*; Let no man think that he exceedeth those in valour, whom he exceedeth in gay garments; for it is by men armed with fortitude of mind, and not by the apparell they put on, that enemies are beaten. And it was perchance from the *Roman* *Papyrius* that this advice was borrowed, who when he fought against the *Samnites* in that fatal battell, wherein they all swore either to prevail or dye, thirty thousand of them having apparelled themselves in white garments, with high crests, and great plumes of feathers, bade the *Roman* Souldiers to lay aside all fear: *Non enim cristas vulnera facere, & per picia atque aurata scuta transire Romanorum pilum*; For these plumed crests would wound no body, and the *Roman* pike would bore holes in painted and gilded shields.

To second this Court-like company, fifteen thousand were appointed more rich and glittering than the former, but apparelled like Women (belike to breed the more terror) and these were honoured with the Title of the Kings Kinsmen. Then came *Darius* himself,

himself, the Gentle-men of his Guard-robe, riding before his Chariot, which was supported with the gods of his Nation, cast and cut in pure gold; these the *Macedonians* did not serve, but they served their turns of these, by changing their massie-bodies into thin, portable and currant coyn. The head of this Chariot was set with precious stones, with two little golden Idols, covered with an open-winged-Eagle of the same metall: The hinder part being raised high whereon *Darius* sat, had a covering of ineffimable value. This Chariot of the King was followed with ten thousand Horse-men, their Lances plated with silver, and their heads gilt; which they meant not to imbrue in the *Macedonian* blood, for fear of marring their beauty. Hee had for the proper Guard of his own person, two hundred of the blood Royall; bloud too Royall and precious to be spilt by any valorous adventure, (I am of opinion that two hundred sturdy fellows, like the *Switzers*, would have done him more service) and these were backt with thirty thousand foot-men, after whom again were led four hundred spare horses for the King, which if he had meant to have used, he would have marshalled somewhat neerer him.

Now followed the Rearward, the same being led by *Sisygambis* the Kings Mother, and by his wife, drawn in glorious Chariots, followed by a great train of Ladies their attendants on horse-back, with fifteen Wagons of the Kings children, and the wives of the Nobility, waited on by two hundred and fiftie Concubines, and a world of Nurses and Eunuchs, most sumptuously apparelled. By which it should seem that *Darius* thought that the *Macedonians* had been *Comedians* or *Tumblers*; for this troop was far fitter to behold those sports than to be present at battells. Between these and a company of slight-armed slaves, with a world of Varlets, was the Kings treasure, charged on six hundred Mules, and three hundred Camels, brought, as it proved, to pay the *Macedonians*. In this fort came the *May-game-King* into the field, incumbered with a most unnecessary train of Strumpets, attended with troops of divers Nations, speaking divers languages, and for their numbers impossible to be marshalled; and for the most part so effeminate, and so rich in gold and in garments, as the same could not but have encouraged the naked st Nation of the world against them. Wee find it in daily experience, that all discourse of magnanimity, of National Vertue, of Religion, of Liberty, and whatsoever else hath been wont to move and encourage vertuous men, hath no force at all with the common-Souldier, in comparison of spoil and riches. The rich ships are boarded upon all disadvantage, the rich Towns are furiously assaulted, and the plentiful Countries willingly invaded. Our *English* nation have attempted many places in the *Indies*, and run upon the *Spaniards* head-long, in hope of their Royals of plate, and Pistoles; which, had they bin put to it upon the like disadvantages in *Ireland*, or in any poor Country, they would have turned their Peeces and Pikes against their Commanders, contesting that they had bin brought without reason to the Butchery and slaughter. It is true that the warre is made willingly, and for the most part with good successe, that is ordained against the richest Nations; for as the needy are alwayes adventurous, so plenty is wont to shun perill, and men that have well to live, do rather studie how to live well, I mean wealthily, than care to die (as they call it) honourably. *Car ois il n'y a rien a gagner que des coups, volontiers il n'y va pas. No man makes haste to the market, where there is nothing to be bought but blows.*

Now if *Alexander* had beheld this preparation before his consultation with his Sooth-saiers, he would have satisfied himself by the out-sides of the *Persians*, and never have looked into the intrailles of Beasts for successe. For leaving the description of this second battel (which is indeed no where well described, neither for the confusion and hasty running away of the *Asians* could it be) we have enough by the slaughter that was made of them, and by the few that fell of the *Macedonians*, to inform us what manner of resistance was made. For if it be true that threecore thousand *Persian* footmen were slain in this battell, with ten thousand of their horsemen; Or (as *Curius* saith) an hundred thousand footmen, with the same number of horsemen, and besides this slaughter, forty thousand taken prisoners, while of *Alexanders* Armie there miscarried but two hundred and four-score of all sorts, of which numbers *Arrianus* and other Historians cut off almost the one half; I do verily beleeve, that this small number rather died with the over travell and pains taking in killing their enemies, than by any strokes received from them. And surely if the *Persian* Nation (at this time degenerate and the basest of the World) had had any

any favour remaining of the ancient valour of their fore-fathers, they would never have sold so good cheap, and at so vile a price, the Mother, the Wife, the Daughters, and other the Kings children; had their own honour been valued by them at nothing, and the Kings lastetie and his estate at lesse. *Darius* by this time found it true, that *Charidemus* a banished *Gracian* of *Athens* had told him, when he made a view of his Army about *Babylon*, to wit, That the multitude which he had assembled of divers Nations, richly attired, but poorly armed, would be found more terrible to the Inhabitants of the country, whom in passing by they would devour than to the *Macedonians*, whom they meant to assail; who being all old and obedient Souldiers, imbattailed in grosse squadrons, which they call their *Phalanx*, well covered with Armour for defence, and furnished with weapons for offence of great advantage, would make so little accompt of his delicate *Persian*, loving their ease and their palat, being withall ill armed and worse disciplined, as except it would please him to entertain (having so great abundance of treasure to do it withall) a sufficient number of the same *Gracians*, and to encounter the *Macedonians* with men of equall courage, he would repent him overlate, as taught by the miserable successe like to follow.

But this discourse was so unpleasing to *Darius* (who had bin accustomed to nothing so much as to his own praises, and to nothing so little as to hear truth,) as he commanded that this poor *Gracian* should be presently slain: who while he was a funding in the Tormentors hand, used this speech to the King, That *Alexander*, against whom he had given this good counsell, should assuredly revenge his death, and lay deserved punishment upon *Darius* for despising his advice.

It was the saying of a Wise man: *Desperata ejus Principis salus est, cuius aures ita formata sunt, ut aspera quae utilia, nec quicquam nisi incundum accipiat; That Princes safety is in a desperate case, whose ears judge all that is profitable to be too sharp, and will entertain nothing that is unpleasant.*

For liberty in counsell is the life and essence of counsell; *Libertas consilii est ejus vita, & essentia, quae erepta consilium evanescit.*

*Darius* did likewise value at nothing the advice given him by the *Gracian* Souldiers that served him, who intreated him not to fight in the Streights: But had they been Counsellors and directors in that War, as they were underlings and commanded by others, they had with the help of a good troupe of horse-men bin able to have opposed the fury of *Alexander*, without any assistance of the *Persian* foot-men. For when *Darius* was overthrown with all his cowardly and confused rabble, those *Gracians*, under their Captain *Amyntus*, held firm, and marched away in order in despite of the vanquishers: Old Souldiers are not easily dismayed; we read in Histories ancient and modern, what brave retraits have bin made by them, though the rest of the Army in which they have served, hath bin broken.

At the battail of *Ravenna*, where the Imperials were beaten by the *French*, a squadron of *Spaniards*, old Souldiers, came off unbroke and undismayed; whom when *Gaston de Foix*, Duke of *Nemours*, and Nephew to *Lewis* the twelfth, charged, as holding the victory not entire by their escape, he was overturned and slain in the place. For it is truly said of those men, who, by being acquainted with dangers, fear them not; That, *Neglecto periculo imminenti mali, opus ipsum quantumvis difficile aggrediuntur; They goe about the business it self, how hard soever it be, not standing to consider of the danger, which the mischief hanging over their heads may bring:* and as truly of those that know the wars but by hear-say: *Quod valentes sunt & praevalentes ante pericula, in ipsiastamen periculis discedunt; They have ability enough, and so spare, till dangers appear; but when perill indeed comes, they get them gone.*

These *Gracians* also that made the retreat, advised *Darius* to retire his Army into the plain of *Mesopotamia*, to the end that *Alexander* being entred into those large fields and great Champains, he might have invironed the *Macedonians* on all sides with his multitude; and withall they counselled him to divide that his huge Army into parts, not committing the whole to one stroke of Fortune, whereby he might have fought many battails, and have brought no greater numbers at once than might have been well marshalled & conducted. But this counsell was so contrary to the cowardly affections of the *Persians*, as they perswaded *Darius* to inviron the *Gracians* which gave the advice, and to cut them in pieces as Traitors. The infinite wisdom of God doth not work alwayes

by one and the same way, but very often in the alteration of Kingdoms and Estates, by taking understanding from the Governours, so as they can neither give nor discern of Counsels. For *Darius* that would needs fight with *Alexander* upon a streightened piece of ground, neer unto the City of *Iffus*, where he could bring no more hands to fight than *Alexander* could, (who by the advice of *Parmenio* staid there, as in a place of best advantage) was utterly overthrown, his Treasure lost, his Wife, Mother, and Children (whom the *Graecians* his followers had perswaded him to leave in *Babylon*, or elsewhere) taken prisoners, and all their train of Ladies spoiled of their rich Garments, Jewels, and Honour. It is true, that both the Queen, with her Daughters, who had the good hap to be brought to *Alexanders* presence, were entertained with all respect due unto their birth, their Honours preserved, and their Jewels and rich Garments restored unto them; and though *Darius* Wife was a most beautifull Lady, and his Daughters of excellent form, yet *Alexander* mastered his affections towards them all: only it is reported out of *Aristobolus* the Historian, that he embraced the wife of the valiant *Memnon*, her Husband lately dead, who was taken flying from *Damascus* by *Parmenio*, at which time the Daughters of *Ochus*, who reigned before *Darius*, and the Wives and Children of all the Nobility of *Persia* in effect, fell into captivity; at which time also *Darius* Treasure (not lost at *Iffus*) was seized, amounting to six thousand and two hundred talents of coin, and of Bullion five hundred talents, with a world of riches besides.

*Darius* himself leaving his brother dead, with divers other of his chief Captains, (casting the Crown from his head) hardly escaped.

After this overthrow given unto *Darius*, all *Phenicia* (the City of *Tyre* excepted, was yielded to *Alexander*, of which *Parmenio* was made Governour.

*Aradus*, *Zidon*, and *Sibbes*, maritime Cities of great importance, of which one *Strato* was King: (but hated of the people) acknowledged *Alexander*. Good fortune followed him so fast that it trod on his heels; for *Antigonus*, *Alexanders* Lieutenant in *Asia* the kisse, overthrew the *Cappadacians*, *Paphlagonians*, and others lately revolted; *Aristodemus*, *Darius* Admiral, had his Fleet partly taken, and in part drowned by the *Macedonians* newly levied; the *Lacedaemonians* made the retreat at the last battail, forsaking both the party of *Darius* and of *Alexander*, and led by *Amyntas* into *Egypt*, to hold it for themselves, were buried there; for the time was not yet come to divide Kingdoms.

*Alexander* to honour *Ephesion*, whom he loved most, gave him power to dispose of the Kingdom of *Zidon*. A man of a most poor estate, that laboured to sustain his life being of the Royall blood, was commended by the people unto him, who changed his Spade into a Scepter, so as he was beheld both a Beggar and a King in one and the same hour.

It was a good desire of this new King, when speaking to *Alexander*, he wisht that he could bear his prosperity with the same moderation, and quietnesse of heart, that he had done his adversity; but ill done of *Alexander*, in that he would not perform in himself that which he commended in another mans desire: for it was a sign that he did but accompany, and could not govern his felicity.

While he made some stay in those parts, he received a letter from *Darius*, importing the ransom of his Wife, his Mother, and his Children, with some other conditions of peace, but such as rather became a Conqueror, than one that had now been twice shamefully beaten, not vouchsafing in his direction, to stile *Alexander* King. It is true, that the *Romans*, after that they had received an overthrow by *Pyrrhus*, returned him a more scornfull answer upon the offer of peace, than they did before the triall of his force. But as their fortunes were then in the Spring, so that of *Darius* had already cast least; the one a resolved, well armed and disciplined Nation, the other cowardly and effeminate. *Alexander* disdaind the offers of *Darius*, and sent him word, that he not onely directed his letter to a King, but to the King of *Darius* himself.

## §. V.

How *Alexander* besieged and won the Citie of *Tyre*.

**A** *Alexander* comming neer to the City of *Tyre*, received from them the present of a golden Crown, with great store of victuals, and other presents, which he took very thankfully, returning them answer, That he desired to offer a sacrifice

sacrifice to *Hercules*, the Protector of their Citie, from whom he was descended. But the *Tyrians* like not his companie within their Walls, but tell him that the Temple of *Hercules* was seated in the old City adjoining, now abandoned and desolate. To be short, *Alexander* resolved to enter it by force: and though it were a place in all mens opinion impregnable, because the Iland whereon it was built, was eight hundred furlongs from the Main, yet with the labour of many hands, having great store of stone from the old *Tyre*, and timber sufficient from *Lybanus*, hee filled the passage of the Sea between the Iland and the Main, which being more than once carried away by the strength of the Sea upon a storm of wind, sometime by the *Tyrians* fired, and sometime torn asunder; yet with the help of his Navie which arrived (during the siege) from *Cyprus*, he overcame all difficulties and prevailed, after he had spent seven moneths in that attempt. The *Tyrians* in the beginning of the siege had barbarously drowned the messengers sent by *Alexander*, perswading them to render the City, in respect whereof, and of the great loss of time and men, hee put eight thousand to the sword, and caused two thousand of those that escaped the first fury, to bee hanged on Crosses on the Sea-shore, and reserved for slaves (saith *Diodore*) thirteen thousand; *Arrianus* reckons them at thirty thousand. Many more had died, had not the *Zidonians*, that served *Alexander*, conveyed great numbers away by shipping unto their own Citie.

Happy it was for *Apello* that the Town was taken: for one of the *Tyrians* having *Justin. lib. 11. c. 1.* dreamed, that this god meant to forsake the City, they bound him fast with a golden chain to the Idoll of *Hercules*, but *Alexander*, like a gracious Prince, loosened him again. It is true, that it was a notable enterprise and a difficult, but great things are made greater. For *Nabuchodonosor* had taken it before, and filled up the channell that lay between the Iland and the Main.

The government of this Territory he gave to *Philotas*, the Son of *Parmenio*; *Cilicia*, he committed to *Socrates*, and *Andromachus* Lieutenant under *Parmenio*; *Ephesion* had charge of the Fleet, and was directed to find *Alexander* at *Gaza* towards *Egypt*.

## §. VI.

How *Darius* offered conditions of peace to *Alexander*. *Alexander* wins *Gaza*; and deals graciously with the Jewes.

**I**n the mean while *Darius* sends again to *Alexander*, sets before him all the difficulties of passing on towards the East, and layeth the losse of the last battell to the streightnesse of the place: he hoped to terrifie him by threatening to encompass him in the plain Countries, he bids him to consider, how impossible it was to passe the Rivers of *Euphrates*, *Tigris*, *Araxes*, and the rest, with all such other fearfull things: for he that was now filled vvith nothing but fear, had arguments enovv of that nature to present unto another. All the Kingdoms between the River of *Alys*, and the *Hellefpon*, he offered him in Dover vvith his beloved daughter. But *Alexander* answered, That he offered him nothing but his own, and that which victory and his own vertue had posselt him of; That he was to give conditions, and not to receive any, and that he having passed the Sea it self, disdaind to think of resistance in transporting himself over Rivers. It is said, that *Parmenio*, who was now old and full of honour and riches, told the King, That were he *Alexander*, he would accept of *Darius* his offers; to which *Alexander* answered, That so would he, if he were *Parmenio*.

But he goes on towards *Egypt*, and comming before *Gaza*, *Getis* a faithfull servant to *Darius*, shuts the Gate against him, and defends the Town with an obstinate resolution, so at the siege whereof *Alexander* received a wound in the shoulder, which was dangerous, and a blow on his legge with a stone. Hee found better men in this place than he did at the former battells, for he left so many of his *Macedonians* buried in the sands of *Gaza*, that he was forc'd to send for a new supply into *Greece*. Here it was that *Alexander* first began to change condition, and to exercise cruelty. For after that he had entred *Gaza* by assault, and taken *Betis*, (whom *Iosephus* calleth *Babemesis*) that was weakened with many wounds, and who never gave ground to the Assailants; he bored holes through his feet, and caused him to be drawn about the street, whilest he was as yet alive; who being as valiant a man as himself, disdaind to ask him either life or remission of his torments.

And

And what had he to countenance this his tyrannie, but the imitation of his Ancestor *Achilles*, who did the like to *Heitor*? It is true, that cruelty hath alwayes somewhat to cover her deformity.

2ib. 12. cap. 2b.

From *Gaza* (saith *Josephus*) he led his Army towards *Jerusalem*, a City for the antiquity and great fame thereof, well known unto him while he lay before *Tyre*; He had sent for some supply thither, which *Jaddus* the high Priest, being subject and sworn to *Darius*, had refused him. The *Jewes* therefore fearing his revenge, and unable to resist, committed the care of their estates and safety to *Jaddus*, who, being taught by God, issued out of the City covered with his Pontifical Robes to wit, an upper garment of purple, embroidered with gold, with his Miter, and the plate of gold wherein the name of God was written, the Priests and Levites in their rich ornaments, and the people in white garments, in a manner so unusuall, stately and grave, as *Alexander* greatly admired it. *Josephus* reports it, that he fell to the ground before the high Priest, as reverencing the name of God, and that *Parmenio* reprehended him for it. Howsoever it was, I am of opinion, that he became so confident in his enterprize, and so assured of the successe after the prophetic of *Daniel* had been read unto him, wherein he saw himself, and the conquest of *Persia* so directly pointed at, as nothing thenceforth could discourage him or fear him. He confessed to *Parmenio* (saith *Josephus*) that in *Dio* a City of *Macedon*, when his mind laboured the conquest of *Asia*, he saw in his sleep such a person as *Jaddus*, and so apparelled, professing one and the same God; by whom he was encouraged to pursue the purpose he had in hand, with assurance of victory. This apparition, formerly apprehended only by the light of his fantasie, he now beheld with his bodily eyes, wherewith he was so exceedingly pleased and imboldened, as contrary to the practice of the *Phenicians*, (who hoped to have sack'd and destroyed *Jerusalem*) he gave the *Jewes* all, and more than they desired, both of liberty and immunity, with permission to live under their own lawes, and to exercise and enjoy their own religion.

#### s. VII.

*Alexander wins Egypt: and makes a journey to the Temple of Hammon.*

FROM *Jerusalem*, *Alexander* turned again towards *Egypt*, and entred it, where *Darius* his Lieutenant, *Asaces*, received him, and delivered into his hand the City of *Memphis*, with eight hundred talents of treasure, and all other the Kings riches. By this we see that the King of *Persia*, who had more of affection than of judgement, gave to the valiantest man he had, but the command of one City, and to the veriest coward the government of all *Egypt*. When he had set things in order in *Egypt*, he began to travell after *Gad-head*, towards *Jupiter Hammon*; so foolish had prosperity made him. He was to passe over the dangerous and drie sands, where, when the water which he brought on his Camels back was spent, he could not but have perished, had not a marvellous showre of rain fallen upon him, when his Army was in extreme despair. All men that know *Egypt*, and have written thereof, affirme, That it never rains there: but the purposes of the Almighty God are secret, and he bringeth to passe what is pleaseth him; for it is also said, That when he had lost his way in those vast deserts, that a flight of Crowes flew before the Army; who making falter wing when they were followed, and fluttering slowly when the Army was cast back, guided them over those pathlesse sands to *Jupiter's* Temple.

Arrian lib. 3.

*Arrianus* from the report of *Ptolomy*, the son of *Lagus*, sayes, That he was led by two Dragons; both which reports may be a-like true. But many of those wonders and things prodigious, are fained by those that have written the Story of *Alexander*; as, That an Eagle lay hovering directly over his head at the battell of *Issus*; That a Swallow flew about his head when he slept, and could not be feared from him, till it had wakened him at *Halicarnassus*, fore-shewing the treason of *Aeropus*, practised by *Darius* to have slain him; That from the yron barres of which the *Tyrians* made their defensive engines, when *Alexander* besieged them, there fell drops of bloud; and that the like drops were found in a loafe of bread, broken by a *Macedonian* Souldier, at the same time; That a Turfe of earth fell on his shoulder, when he lay before *Gaza*, out of which there flew a Bird into the air. The *Spaniards* in the conquest of the West Indies have many such pretty





pretty tales; telling how they have been assisted in battell by the presence of our Lady, and by Angels riding on white horkes, with the like Romish miracles, which I think themselves do hardly beleve. The strangest thing that I have read of in this kind being certainly true, was, That the night before the battell at *Novara*, all the Dogs which followed the *French Army*, ran from them to the *Swissers*, leaping and fawning upon them, as if they had been bred and fed by them all their lives, and in the morning following, *Trivulzi*, and *Tremouille*, Generals for *Lewis* the twelfth, were by these imperiall *Swissers* utterly broken and put to ruine.

The place of this Idoll of *Jupiter Hammon* is ill described by *Curtius*, for he bounds it by the *Arabian Traglodites* on the South, between whom and the Territory of *Hammon*, the Region *Thebais*, or the superiour *Egypt*, with the Mountains of *Lybia*, and the River of *Nilus*, are interjacent; and on the North he joyns it to a Nation called *Nassamones*, who bordering the Sea-shore, live (saith he) upon the spoyles of shipwrack: whereas the temple or grove of this Idoll hath no Sea neer it by two hundred miles and more, being found on the South part of *Lybia*, these *Nassamones* being due West from *Ptol. d. Tab. 3.* it, in the South part of *Marmarica*.

When *Alexander* came neer the place, he sent some of his Parasites before him to practise the Priests attending the Oracle, That their answer might be given in all things, agreeable to his mad ambition; who affected the title of *Jupiters* son. And so he was saluted, *Son of Jupiter*, by the Devils Prophet, whether prepared before to flatter him, or rather (as some think) defective in the *Greek* tongue; For whereas he meant to say *O padon*, he said *O pai dios*; that is, *O Son of Jupiter*, in stead of *O dear Son*: for which Grammaticall errour he was richly rewarded, and a rumour preclently spread, that the great *Jupiter* had acknowledged *Alexander* for his own.

He had heard that *Perseus* and *Hercules* had formerly consulted with this Oracle. The one when he was employed against *Gorgon*, The other against *Anteus* and *Busiris*; and seeing these men had derived themselves from the gods, why might not he? By this it seems, that he hoped to make his followers and the world fools, though indeed he made himself one, by thinking to cover from the worlds knowledge his vanities and vices; and the better to confirm his followers in the belief of his Deity, he had practised the Priests to give answer to such as consulted with the Oracle, that it should be pleasing to *Jupiter* to honour *Alexander* as his Son.

Who this *Ammon* was, and how represented, either by a Bosse carried in a Boat, or *ent. Lib. 4.* by a Ram, or a Rams head, I see that many wise men have troubled themselves to find out; but as *Arriani* speaks of *Dionysius*, or *Liber Pater* (who lived saith *S. Augustine*, in *Moses* time) *Ea qua de diis veteres fabulis suis conscripsere, non sunt nimium curiosè peruestiganda; We must not over-curiously search into the fables which the Antients have writtē of their gods.*

But this is certain and notable, that after the Gospel began to be preached in the World, the Devill in this and all other Idols became speechlesse. For, that this *Hammon* was neglected in the time of *Iberius Cesar*, and in the time of *Trajan* altogether forgotten, *Strabo* and *Plutarch* witnesse.

There is found neer his Temple a Fountain called *Fons solis* (though *Ptolomy* in his third *African* Table sets it further off) that at Mid-night is as hot as boyling water, and at Noon as cold as any yce: to which I cannot but give credit, because I have heard of some other Wels of like nature, and because it is reported by *S. Augustine*, by *Diodore*, *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Arrianus*, *Curtius*, and others; and indeed our Bathes in *England* are much warmer in the night than in the day.

## §. VIII.

How *Alexander* marching against *Darius*, was opposed very unskillfully by the Enemy.

FROM the Temple of *Hammon* he returned to *Memphis*, where among many other learned men, he heard the Philosopher *Plammones*, who, belike understanding that he affected the title of *Jupiters* Son, told him that God was the Father-King of all men in generall; and refining the pride of this haughty King, brought him to say, That God was the Father of all mortall men, but that he acknowledged none for his children save good men.

Arist. Pol. 1. 5.

Curt. 1. 4.

He gave the charge of the severall Provinces of *Egypt* to severall Governours, following the rule of his Master *Aristotle*, That a great Dominion should not be continued in the hands of any one: whom therein the *Roman* Emperours also followed, not daring to commit the government of *Egypt* to any of their Senators, but to men of meaner rank and degree. He then gave order for the founding of *Alexandria* upon the Wester-most branch of *Nilus*. And having now settled (as he could) the estate of *Egypt*, with the king-domes of the lesser *Asia*, *Phœnicia* and *Syria*, (which being but the pawns of *Carius* his ill fortune, one happy victory would readily have redeemed) he led his Army towards *Enphrates*, which passage though the same was committed to *Mazæus* to defend, yet was it abandoned, and *Alexander* without resistance past it. From thence he marched towards *Tigris*, a river for the swiftnesse thereof called by the *Persians*, *The Arrow*. Here, as *Curtius*, and Reason it self tells us, might *Darius* easily have repelled the invading *Macedonian*: for the violent course of the stream was such, as it drave before it many weighty stones, and those that moved not, but lay in the bottom, were so round and well polished by a continuall rolling, that no man was able to fight on so slippery a footing: nor the *Macedonian* foot-men to wade the river, otherwise than by joyning their hands, and enterlacing their arms together, making one weighty and entire body to resist the swift passage and furious race of the stream. Besides this notable help, the Channell was so deep towards the Eastern shore, where *Darius* should have made head, as the foot-men were enforced to lift their Bowes, and Arrows, and Darts, over their heads to keep them from being moistned, and made unserviceable by the Waters. But it was truly and understandingly sayd of *Homer*,

*Talis est hominum terrestrium mens,  
Qualem quotidie ducit pater virorumq; Deorumq;.*

The mindes of men are ever so affected,  
As by Gods will they daily are directed.

And it cannot be denied, that as all Estates of the world, by the surfeit of mis-government have been subject to many grievous, and sometimes mortall diseases: So had the Empire of *Persia* at this time brought it self into a burning and consuming Fever, and thereby become frantick and without understanding, forebiewing manifestly the dissolution and death thereof.

But *Alexander* hath now recovered the Eastern shores of *Tigris*, without any other difficulty, than that of the nature of the place; where *Mazæus* (who had charge to defend the Passage both of *Enphrates* and it) presented himself to the *Macedonians*, followed with certain companies of Horse-men, as if with uneven forces he durst have charged them on even ground, when as with a multitude farre exceeding them, he forsook the advantage which no valour of his enemies could easily have overcome. But it is commonly seen, that fearfull and cowardly men do ever follow those wayes and counsels, whereof the opportunity is already lost.

It is true that he set all provisions asire wherewith the *Macedonians* might serve themselves over *Tigris*, thinking thereby greatly to have distressed them; but the execution of good counsell is fruitlesse, when unseasonable. For now was *Alexander* so well furnished with carriages, as nothing was wanting to the competency of the Army which he conducted. Those things also which he sought to waste, *Alexander* being now in fight, were by his Horse-men saved and recovered. This *Mazæus* might have done some dayes before at good leisure, or at this time with great a strength of Horse-men, as the *Macedonians* durst not have pursued them, leaving the strength of their foot out of sight and far behind.

## s. IX.

The new provisions of *Darius*. Accidents foregoing the battell of Arbela.

**D**arius, upon *Alexanders* first return out of *Egypt*, had assembled all the forces, which those Regions next him could furnish, and now also were the *Arians*, *Scythians*, *Indians*, and other Nations arrived; Nations (saith *Curtius*) that rather served to make up the names of men, than to make resistance. *Arrianus* hath numbered

numbered them with their Leaders, and finds of foot-men of all sorts ten hundred thousand, and of horse four hundred thousand, besides armed Chariots, and some few Elephants. *Curtius*, who musters the Army of *Darius* at two hundred thousand foot, and neer fifty thousand horse, comes (I think) neerer to the true number; and yet seeing he had more confidence in the multitude than in the valour of his Vassals, it is like enough that he had gathered together of all sorts some three or four hundred thousand, with which he hoped in those fair plains of *Assyria*, to have over-borne the few numbers of the invading Army. But it is a rule in the Philosophy of the War;

*In omni pralio non tam multitudo, & virtus indoles, quam ars & exercitium solent regere.*  
10 *præstare victoriam: In every battell skill and practice do more towards the victory, than multitude and rude audacity.*

While *Alexander* gave rest to his army after the passage over *Tigris*, there happened an Eclipse of the Moon, of which the *Macedonians*, not knowing the cause and reason, were greatly affrighted. All that were ignorant (as the multitude always are) took it for a certain presage of their overthrow and destruction, inasmuch as they began not only to murmur, but to speak it boldly, That for the ambition of one man, a man that disdained *Philip* for his father, and would needs be called the son of *Jupiter*, they should all perish: For he not only enforced them to make war against Worlds of enemies, but against Rivers, Mountains, and the Heavens themselves.

10 Hereupon *Alexander* being ready to march forward, made a halt, & to quiet the minds of the multitude, he called before him the *Egyptian* Astrologers, which followed him thence, that by them the Souldiers might be assured that this defection of the Moon was a certain presage of good successe, for, that it was naturall they never imparted to the common people, but reserved the knowledge to themselves, so as a sorry Almanack-maker had been no small fool in those daies.

Of this kind of superstitious observation *Cæsar* made good use, when he fought against *Arminius* and the *Germans*: for they being perswaded by the casting of lots, that if they fought before the change of the Moon, they should certainly lose the battell, *Cæsar* forced them to abide it, though they durst not give it; wherein having their minds all ready beaten by their own superstition, and being resolutely charged by the *Romans*, the whole Army in effect perished.

These *Egyptians* gave no other reason than this, That the *Grecians* were under the aspect of the Sun, the *Persians* of the Moon; and therefore the Moon failing and being darkened, the state of *Persia* was now in danger of failing, and their glory of being obscured. This judgement of the *Egyptian* Priests being noyled through all the Army, all were satisfied, and their courage redoubled. It is a principle in the Warre, which, though devised since, was well observed then: *Exercitium terrore plenum Dux ad pugnam non ducat; Let not a Captain lead his Army to the fight, when it is possessed with matter of terror.*

40 It is truly observed by *Curtius*, that the people are led by nothing so much as by superstition; yea, wee find it in all stories, and often in our own, that by such inventions, devised tales, dreams, and prophecies, the people of this Land have been carried head-long into many dangerous tumults and insurrections, and still to their own losse and ruine.

As *Alexander* drew neer the *Persian* Army, certain letters were surprized, written by *Darius* to the *Grecians*, perswading them for great summes of money, either to kill or betray *Alexander*. But these by the advice of *Parmenia* he suppressed.

At this time also *Darius* his fair Wife, oppressed with sorrow, and wearied with travell, died. Which accident *Alexander* seemed no lesse to bewaile than *Darius*, who upon the first bruit, suspected that some dishonourable violence had been offered her; but being satisfied by an Eunuch of his own that attended her, of *Alexander's* kingly respect towards her, from the day of her being taken, he desired the immortall Gods, That if they had decreed to make a new Master of the *Persian* Empire, then it would please them to confer it on so just and continent an enemy as *Alexander*, to whom he once again before the last tryall by battell offered these conditions of peace.

That with his Daughter in marriage he would deliver up and resign all *Asia* the less, and with *Egypt*, all those kingdoms between the *Phœnician* sea, and the River of *Enphrates*; That he would pay him for the ransom of his Mother, and his other Daughters, 30

A a a 2

thousand

thousand talents, and that for the performance thereof, he would leave his son *Ochus* in hostage : To this they sought to persuade *Alexander* by such arguments as they had. *Alexander* causing the Embassadors to be removed, advised with his Councell, but heard no man speak but *Parmenio*, the very right hand of his good fortune; who persuaded him to accept of these fair conditions. He told him, that the Empire between *Euphrates* and *Hellepont* was a fair addition to *Macedon*; that the retaining of the *Persian* prisoners was a great cumber, and the treasure offered for them of far better use than their persons, with divers other arguments; all which *Alexander* rejected. And yet it is probable that if he had followed his advice, and bounded his ambition within those limits, he might have lived as famous for virtue as for fortune, and left himself a Successor of able age to have enjoyed his estate, which afterward indeed he much enlarged, rather to the greatening of others than himself: who to assure themselves of what they had usurped upon his issues, left not one of them to draw breath in the world within a few years after. The truth is, That *Alexander* in going so far into the East, left behind him the reputation which he brought out of *Macedon*; the reputation of a just and prudent Prince, a Prince temperate, advised and gratefull: and being taught new lessons by abundance of prosperity, became a lover of wine, of his own flattery, and of extreme cruelty. Yea, as *Seneca* hath observed, the taint of one unjust slaughter, amongst many, defaced and withered the flourishing beauty of all his great acts and glorious victories obtained. But the *Persian* Embassadors stay his answer, which was to this effect. That whatsoever he had bestowed on the wife and children of *Darius*, proceeded from his own natural clemency and magnanimity, without all respect to their Master; but thanks to an enemy was improper: that he made no Wars against adversity, but against those that resisted him; not against Women and Children, but against armed enemies: and although by the reiterated practice of *Darius*, to corrupt his Souldiers, and by great summes of money to persuade his friends to attempt upon his person, he had reason to doubt that the peace offered was rather pretended than meant, yet he could not (were it otherwise and faithfull) resolve in haste to accept the same, seeing *Darius* had made Warre against him, not as a King with Royall and overt force, but as a Traytor by secret and base practice; That for the Territory offered him, it was already his own, and if *Darius* could beat him back againe over *Euphrates*, which he had already past, he would then beleve that he offered him somewhat in his own power: Otherwise he propounded to himself for the reward of the War which he had made, all those kingdomes as yet in *Darius* possession; wherein, whether he were abused by his own hopes or no, the battell which he meant to fight in the day following should determine. For in conclusion, he told them, that he came into *Asia* to give, & not to receive; That the heavens could not hold two Suns: and therefore if *Darius* would be content to acknowledge *Alexander* for his Superiour, he might perchance be persuaded to give him conditions fit for a second Person, and his Inferiour.

S. X.

The battell of Arbela: and that it could not be so strongly fought as report hath made it.

**W**ITH this answer the Embassadors return; *Darius* prepares to fight, and sends *Mazeus* to defend a passage, which he never dared yet so much as to hazard. *Alexander* consults with his Captains, *Parmenio* persuades him to force *Darius* his Camp by night; so that the multitude of enemies might not move terror in the *Macedonians* being but few. *Alexander* disdains to steal the victory, and resolves to bring with him the day-light, to witnesse his valour. But it was the successe that made good *Alexanders* resolution, though the counsell given by *Parmenio* was more found: For it is a ground in War, *Si pauci necessario cum multitudine pugnare cogantur, consilium est noctis tempore belli fortunam tentare*, Notwithstanding upon the view of the multitude at hand, he staggers and trenches himself upon a ground of advantage, which the *Persian* had abandoned: And whereas *Darius* for fear of surprise had stood with his Army in armour all the day, and forborn sleep all the night, *Alexander* gave his men rest and store of food; for reason had taught him this Rule in the Warre, *In pugna Milites validius resistunt, si cibo potuque refecti fuerint, nam fames intrinsecus*

40

*magis pugnat, quam ferrum exterius; Souldier do the better stand to it in fight, if they have their bellies full of meat and drink; for hunger within, fights more eagerly than steel without.*

The numbers which *Alexander* had, saith *Arrianus*, were forty thousand foot, and seven thousand horse; these belike were of the *European* Army: for he had besides both *Syrians*, *Indians*, *Egyptians*, and *Arabians*, that followed him out of those Regions. He used but a short speech to his Souldiers to encourage them; and I think that he needed little Rhetoric; for by the two former battels upon the River of *Granick*, and in *Cilicia*, the *Macedonians* were best taught with what men they were to encounter. And it is a true saying, *Victoria victoriam parat, animusque victoribus auget, & adversariis aufert; One victory begets another, and puts courage into those that have already had the better, taking spirit away from those that have been beaten.*

*Arrianus* and *Curtius* make large descriptions of this battell, fought at *Gaugamela*; They tell us of many charges and re-charges; That the victory inclined sometime to the *Persians*, sometime to the *Macedonians*; That *Parmenio* was in danger of being overthrown, who led the left wing; That *Alexander's* Rear-guard was broken, and his carriages lost; That for the fierce and valorous encounters on both sides, Fortune her self was long unresolved on whom to bestow the Garland: And lastly, that *Alexander* in person wrought wonders, being charged in his retreat. But in conclusion, *Curtius* delivers us in account but three hundred dead *Macedonians*, in all this terrible daies work, saying, *That Ephesion, Perdices*, and others of name were wounded. *Arrianus* finds not a third part of this number slain; of the *Persians* there fell forty thousand (*Diocurtius*) thirty thousand according to *Arrianus*: Ninety thousand, if we beleve *Sithones*. But what can we judge of this great encounter, other than that, as in the two former battels, the *Persians* upon the first charge ran away, and that the *Macedonians* pursued? For if of those four or five hundred thousand *Assians* brought into the field by *Darius*, every man had cast but a dart or a stone, the *Macedonians* could not have bought the Empire of the East at so easie a rate, as six or seven hundred men in three notorious battels. Certainly, if *Darius* had fought with *Alexander* upon the banks of *Euphrates*, and had armed but fifty or threescore thousand of this great multitude, only with Spades, (for the most of all he had were fit for no other weapon) it had been impossible for *Alexander* to have past that River so easie, much lesse the River of *Tigris*. But as a man whole Empire God in his providence had determined, he abandoned all places of advantage, and suffered *Alexander* to enter so far into the bowels of his Kingdome, as all hope and possibility of escape by retreat being taken from the *Macedonians*, they had presented unto them the choice, either of death or victory; to which election *Darius* could no way constrain his own, seeing they had many large Regions to run into from those that invaded them.

S. XI.

Of things following the battell of Arbela. The yielding of Babylon and Sufa.

**D***arius* after the rout of his Army recovered *Arbela* the same night, better followed in his flight, than in the fight. He propounded unto them that ran after him his purpose of making a retreat into *Media*, persuading them that the *Macedonians*, greedy of spoyl and riches, would rather attempt *Babylon*, *Sufa*, and other Cities filled with treasure, than pursue the vanquished. This miserable resolution his Nobility rather obeyed than approved.

*Alexander* soon after *Darius* his departure arrives at *Arbela*, which with a great masse of treasure, and Princely ornaments, was rendered to him: for the fear which conducted *Darius*, took nothing with it but shame and dishonour. He that had been twice beaten, should rather have sent his treasure into *Media*, than brought it to *Arbela*, so near the place where he abid the comming of his enemies; if he had been victorious, he might have brought it after him at leisure; but being overcome, he knew it impossible to drive Mules and Camels laden with gold from the pursuing Enemy, seeing himself, at the overthrow he had in *Cilicia*, cast the Crown from his head, to run away with the more speed. But errors are then best discerned when most incurable. *Et praeferri magis reprehendi possunt quam corrigi; It is easier to reprehend than amend what is past.*

Aaaa 3

From

From Arbela Alexander took his way towards Babylon, where Mazæus, in whom Darius had most confidence, rendered himself, his Children and the Citie. Also the Captain of the Castle, who was keeper of the treasure, strewed the streets with flowers, burnt Frankincense upon Altars of silver as Alexander passed by, and delivered unto him whatsoever was committed to his trust. The Magi (the Chaldean Astrologers) followed this Captain in great solemnitie to entertain their new King: after these came the Babylonian horsemen, infinite rich in attire, but exceeding poor in warlike furniture. Between these (though not greatly to be feared) and himself, Alexander caused his Macedonian foot-men to march. When he entered the Castle, he admired the glorie thereof, and the abundance of treasure therein found, amounting to fifty thousand talents of silver uncoyned. The Citie it self I have elsewhere described, with the Walls, the Towers, the Gates and Circuit, with the wonderfull place of pleasure about two miles in Circuit, surrounded with a wall of fourscore foot high, and on the top thereof (being under-born with Pillars) a Grove of beautifull and fruitfull trees, which it is said that one of the Kings of Babylon caused to be built, that the Queen and other Princesses might walk privately therein. In this Citie, rich in all things, but most of all in voluptuous pleasures, the King rested himself and the whole Army four and thirty dayes, consuming that time in banquetting, and in all sorts of effeminate exercise; which so much softened the minds of the Macedonians, not acquainted till now with the like delicacies, as the severe discipline of war, which taught them the sufferances of hunger and thirst, of painfull travell, and hard lodging, began rather to be forgotten, than neglected.

Here it was that those bands of a thousand Souldiers were erected, and Commanders appointed over them, who thereupon were stiled *Chiliarchi*. This new order Alexander brought in, was to honour those Captains which were found by certain selected Judges to have deserved best in the late warre. For before this time the Macedonian companies consisted but of five hundred. Certainly the drawing down of the foot-bands in this latter age hath been the cause (saith the Marshall *Montluc*) that the title and charge of a Captain hath been bestowed on every *Pique*, *Ban*, or *Spurn-Cow*; for when the Captains of foot had a thousand Souldiers under one Ensigne, and after that five hundred, as in the time of Francis the first, the title was honourable, and the kings were lesse charged, and far better served. King Henry the eighth of England never gave the commandement of any of his good ships, but to men of known valour, and of great estate, nay sometime he made two Gentlemen of qualitie Commanders in one ship: but all orders and degrees are fallen from the reputation they had.

While Alexander was yet in Babylon, there came to him a great supply out of Europe; for Antipater sent him six thousand foot, and five hundred horse out of Macedonia; of Thracians three thousand foot, and the like number of horse; and out of Greece four thousand and four hundred horse, by which his Armie was greatly strengthened: for those that were infected with the pleasures of Babylon, could hardly be brought again; *De quitter la plume pour dormir sur la dure; To change from soft beds to hard boards.*

He left the Castle and Citie of Babylon, with the Territories about it, in charge with three of his own Captains, to wit, *Agathon*, *Minetus*, and *Appolidorus*; to supply all wants, a thousand talents: but to grace Mazæus, who rendered the Citie unto him, hee gave him the title of his Lieutenant over all, and took with him *Bagifines* that gave up the Castle, and having distributed to every Souldier a part of the Treasure, he left Babylon, and entered into the Province *Satrapene*: from thence he went on toward *Susa* in Persia, the same which *Ptolemy*, *Herodotus*, and *Elianus* call *Memnonia*, situate on the river *Euleus*, a Citie sometime governed by *Daniel* the Prophet. *Abulites* also, Governor of this famous Citie, gave it up to the Conqueror, with fifty thousand talents of silver in bullion, and twelve Elephants for the warre, with all other the treasures of Darius. In this sort did those Vassals of fortune, lovers of the Kings prosperitie, not of his person, (for so all ambitious men are) purchase their own peace and safetie with the Kings treasures. And herein was Alexander well advised, that whatsoever titles he gave to the Persians, yet he left all places of importance in trust with his own Captains, to wit, Babylon, Susa, and Persepolis, with other Cities and Provinces by him conquered; for if Darius (as yet living) had beaten the Macedonians but in one battell, all the Nobilitie of Persia would have returned unto their naturall Lord. Those that are Traitors

*Diodor. speaketh of more than forty thousand talents in bullion, and of nine millions of gold, but Darius if Darius (as yet living) had beaten the Macedonians but in one battell, all the Nobilitie of Persia would have returned unto their naturall Lord. Those that are Traitors*

to their own Kings, are never to be used alone in great enterprises by those Princes that entertain them, nor ever to be trusted with the defences of any frontier-Town, or Fortresse of weight, by the rendering whereof they may redeem their liberty and estates lost. Hereof the French had experience, when *Don Pedro de Navarra*, being banished out of Spain, was trusted with *Fonterabie*, in the year 1523.

While Alexander spoiled Arbela, Mazæus might have furnish'd the King from Babylon; and while he stayed four and thirty dayes at Babylon, *Abulites* might have holpen him from Susa; and while he feasted there, *Tiridates* from *Persepolis* might have relieved him; for the great masse of Treasure was layd up in that City. But who hath sought out and friended fearfull adversity? It is certain, that benefites bind not the ambitious, but the honest: for those that are but greedy of themselves, do in all changes of fortune only consult the conservation of their own greatnesse.

The government of Susa, with the Castle and Treasure, he committed to his own Macedonians, making *Abulites*, who rendered it unto him, his Lieutenant, as he had done Mazæus and others, in giving them titles, but neither trust nor power; for he left three thousand old Souldiers in Garrison to assure the place; and Darius mother and her children to repose themselves.

It is said that Charles the fifth, having promised Charles of Bourbon the government of *Marilles*, if he could have forc'd it, and whereof he made sure account, told some of his nearest Counsellors, that he meant nothing lesse than the performance of that promise, because he should thereby have left the Duke (revolted from his Master) very well wherewithall to have recovered his favour.

## S. XII.

How Alexander came to Persepolis and burnt it.

FROM Susa Alexander leadeth his Army toward Persepolis, and when he sought to passe those Mountains which sinder *Susiana* and *Persia*, he was soundly beaten by *Ariobarzanes*, who defended against him those Streights, called *Pyle Persidis*, or *Suseide*, and after the losse of many Companies of his Macedonians, he was forc'd to save himself by retreat, causing his Foot to march close together, and to cover themselves with their Targets from the stones tumbled on them from the Mountain top. Yet in the end he found out another path, which a *Lycian*, living in that Country, discovered unto him; and came thereby suddenly in view of *Ariobarzanes*, who being inforc'd to fight upon even ground, was by Alexander broken, whereupon he fled to Persepolis; but (after that they of Persepolis had refused to receive him) he returned and gave a second charge upon the Macedonians, wherein he was slain. In like manner did King Francis the first, in the year 1515, find a way over the *Alpes*, the *Switzers* undertaking to defend all the passages, who, if their footmanship had not saved them upon the Kings descent on the other side, they had been ill payd for their hard lodging on those Hills.

Four thousand Greeks, saith *Curtius* (Justin numbers them but at eight hundred) having bin taken prisoners by the Persians, presented themselves to Alexander now in sight of Persepolis. These had the barbarous Persians so maimed and defaced, by cutting off their hands, noses, ears, and other members, as they could no way have been known to their Country-men, but by their voyces; to each of these Alexander gave three hundred Crowns, with new garments, and such Lands as they liked to live upon.

*Tiridates*, one of Darius his false-hearted Grands, hearing of Alexanders approach, made him know that Persepolis was ready to receive him, and prayed him to double his pace, because there was a determination in the people to spoyle the Kings treasure. This City was abandoned by many of her Inhabitants upon Alexanders arrivall, and they that stayed followed the worst counsell, for all was left to the liberty of the souldiers, to spoyle and kill at their pleasure. There was no place in the world at that time, which, if it had been laid in the ballance with Persepolis, would have weighed it down. Babylon indeed, and Susa, were very rich; but in Persepolis lay the bulk and main store of the Persians. For after the spoyle that had been made of money, curious plate, bullion, Images of gold and silver, and other Jewels, there remained to Alexander himself one hundred and twenty thousand talents. He left the same number of three thousand

Macedonians

Macedonians in *Persepolis*, which he had done in *Susa*, and gave the same formall honour to the traitor *Tiridates*, that he had done to *Abulites*; but he that had the trust of the place was *Nicarides*, a creature of his own. The body of his Army he left here for thirty daies, of which the Commanders were *Parmenio* and *Craterus*, and with a thousand horse, and certain troupes of chosen foot, he would needs view in the Winter-time those parts of *Perse*, which the Snow had covered; a fruitlesse and foolish enterprise, but as *Seneca* saies; *Non ille ire vult, sed non potest stare: He hath not a will to goe, but he is unable to stand still*. It is said and spoken in his praise, That when his Souldiers cryed out against him, because they could not endure the extreme frost, and make way; but with extreme difficulty, through the snow, that *Alexander* forsook his horse, and led them the way. But what can be more ridiculous than to bring other men into extremity, thereby to show how well himself can endure it? His walking on foot did no otherwise take off their wearinesse that followed him, than his sometime forbearing to drink, did quench their thirst that could lesse endure it. For mine own little judgement, I shall rather commend that Captain that makes careful provision for those that follow him, and that seeks wisely to prevent extreme necessitie, than those witlesse arrogant fools, that make the vaunt of having endured equally with the common Souldier, as if that were a matter of great glory and importance.

We find in all the Wars that *Caesar* made, or the best of the *Roman* Commanders, that the provision of victuals was their first care. For it was true saying of *Coligni*, Admirall of *France*, *That who so will shape that Beast (meaning War) must begin with his belly*.

But *Alexander* is now returned to *Persepolis*, where those Historians that were most amorous of his vertues, complain, that the opinion of his valour, of his liberality, of his clemency towards the vanquished, and all other his Kingly conditions, were drowned in drink. That he smothered in carowling cups all the reputation of his actions past, and that by descending, as it were, from the reverend Throne of the greatest King, into the company and familiarity of base Harlots, he began to be despised both of his own and all other Nations. For being perswaded, when he was inflamed with wine, by the infamous Strumpet *Thais*, he caused the most sumptuous and goodly Castle, and Citie of *Persepolis* to be consumed with fire, notwithstanding all the arguments of *Parmenio* to the contrary, who told him that it was a dishonour to destroy those things by the perswasions of others, which by his proper vertue and force he had obtained; and that it would be a most strong perswasion to the *Asians*, to think hardly of him, and thereby alien their hearts; for they might well believe that he which demolished the goodliest Ornaments they had, meant nothing lesse than (after such vastation) to hold their possession. *Per violentiam crudelitas sequitur, Cruelty doth commonly follow drunkennesse*. For it so fell out soon after, as I often, in *Alexander*.

### CHAP. XIII.

#### The Treason of *Bessus* against *Darius*, *Darius* his death.

About this time he received a new supply of Souldiers out of *Cilicia*, and goes on to find *Darius* in *Media*. *Darius* had there compounded his fourth and last Army, which he meant to have increased in *Bactria*, had he not heard of *Alexander*'s coming on, with whom (trusting to such companies as he had, which was numbered at thirty or forty thousand) he determined once again to try his fortune. He therefore calls together his Captains and Commanders, and propounds unto them his resolution, who being desperate of good successe, used silence for a while. *Artabazus*, one of his eldest men of War, who had sometime lived with *Philip* of *Macedon*, brake the yce, and protesting that he could never be beaten by any adversity of the Kings, from the faith which he had ever ought him, with firm confidence, that all the rest were of the same condition (whereof they likewise assured *Darius* by the like protestation) hee approved the Kings resolution. Two only, and those the greatest, to wit, *Naburzanes*, and *Bessus*, whereof the later was governour of *Bactria*, had conspired against their Master; and therefore advised the King to lay a new foundation for the Warre, and to pursue it by some such person for the present, against whom neither the gods nor fortune had in all things declared themselves to be an enemy: this preamble *Naburzanes* used, and

and in conclusion advised the election of his fellow Traitor *Bessus*, with promise that the warres ended, the Empire should again be restored to *Darius*. The King swollen with disdain, prest towards *Naburzanes* to have slain him, but *Bessus* and the *Bactrians* whom he commanded, being more in number than the rest, with-held him. In the mean while *Naburzanes* with-drew himself, and *Bessus* followed him, making their quarter a-part from the rest of the Army. *Artabazus*, the Kings faithfull servant, perswaded him to be advised and serve the time, seeing *Alexander* was at hand, and that he would at least make shew of forgetting the offence made; which the King being of a gentle disposition, willingly yeelded unto. *Bessus* makes his submission, and attends the King, who removes his Army. *Patron*, who commanded a Regiment of four thousand *Greeks*, which had in all the former battels served *Darius* with great fidelity, and alwayes made the retreat in spite of the *Macedonians*, offered himself to guard his person, protesting against the Treason of *Bessus*; but it was not his destiny to follow their advice who from the beginning of the Warre gave him faithfull counsell, but hee inclined still to *Bessus*, who told him, that the *Greeks*, with *Patron* their Captain, were corrupted by *Alexander*; and practised the division of his faithfull servants. *Bessus* had drawn unto him thirty thousand of the Army, promising them all those things, by which the lovers of the World and themselves are wont to be allured, to wit, riches, safety, and honour.

Now the day following *Darius* plainly discovered the purposes of *Bessus*, and being overcome with passion, as thinking himself unable to make head against these ungrateful and unnatural Traytors, he prayed *Artabazus* his faithfull servant to depart from him, and to provide for himself. In like sort he discharged the rest of his attendants, all save a few of his Eunuches; for his Guards had voluntarily abandoned him. His *Persians* being most base cowards, durst not undertake his defence against the *Bactrians*, notwithstanding that they had four thousand *Greeks* to joyn with him, who had been able to have beaten both Nations. But it is true, that him, which forsakes himself, no man follows. It had been far more Man-like, and King-like, to have dyed in the head of those four thousand *Greeks*, which offered him the disposition of their lives, (to which *Artabazus* perswaded him) than to have lye bewailing himself on the ground, and suffering himself to be bound like a slave by those ambitious Monsters that laid hand on him, whom neither the consideration of his former great estate, nor the honour he had given them, nor the trust reposed in them, nor the world of benefits bestowed on them, could move to pity; no, nor his present adversity, which above all things should have moved them, could pierce their viperous and ungrateful hearts. Vain it was indeed to hope it, for infidelity hath no compassion.

Now *Darius*, thus forsaken, was bound and laid in a Cart, covered with hides of Beasts, to the end that by any other ornament he might not be discovered; and to adde despite and derision to his adversity, they fastned him with Chains of Gold, and so drew him on among their ordinarie Carriages and Carts. For *Bessus* and *Naburzanes* perswaded themselves to redeem their lives and the Provinces they held, either by delivering him a prisoner to *Alexander*, or, if that hope failed, to make themselves kings by his slaughter; and then to defend themselves by force of Arms. But they failed in both. For it was against the nature of God, who is most just, to pardon so strange villanie, yea, though against a Prince purely Heathenish and an Idolater.

*Alexander* having knowledge that *Darius* was retired towards *Bactria*, and durst not abide his coming, hastened after him with a violent speed, and because he would not force his footmen beyond their powers, he mounted on horse-back certain selected companies of them, and best armed, and with six thousand other horse, rather ran than marched after *Darius*. Such as hated the Treason of *Bessus*, and secretly forsook him, gave knowledge to *Alexander* of all that had happened, informing him of the way that *Bessus* took; and how neer he was at hand: for many men of worth daily ran from him. Hereupon *Alexander* again doubled his pace, and his Vant-guard being discovered by *Bessus* his Rear, *Bessus* brought a Horse to the Cart, where *Darius* lay bound, perswading him to mount thereon, and to save himself. But the unfortunate King refusing to follow those that had betrayed him, they cast Darts at him, wounded him to death, and wounded the Beasts that drew him, and slew two poor Servants that attended his person. This done, they all fled that could, leaving the rest to the mercie of the *Macedonian* swords.

*Polystratus*

*Polystratus* a Macedonian, being by pursuit of the vanquished prest with thirst, as hee was refreshing himself with some water that he had discovered, espying a Cart with a Team of wounded beasts breathing for life, and not able to move, searched the same, and therein found *Darius* bathing in his own blood: And by a *Persian* Captive which followed this *Polystratus*, he understood that it was *Darius*, and was informed of his barbarous Tragedy. *Darius* also seemed greatly comforted (if dying men ignorant of the living God can be comforted) that he cast not out his last sorrows unheard, but that by this Macedonian, *Alexander* might know and take vengeance on those Traytors, which had dealt no lesse unworthily than cruelly with him, recommending their revenge to *Alexander* by this messenger, which he besought him to pursue, not because *Darius* had desired it, but for his own honour, and for the safety of all that did, or should after wear Crowns. He also having nothing else to present, rendred thanks to *Alexander* for the Kingly grace used towards his Wife, Mother, and Children, desiring the immortal gods to submit unto him the Empire of the whole World. As he was thus speaking impatient death pressing out his few remaining spirits, he desired water; which *Polystratus* presented him; after which he lived but to tell him, that of all the best things that the world had, which were lately in his power, he had nothing remaining but his last breath, where-with to desire the gods to reward his compassion.

## §. XIV.

How *Alexander* pursued *Bessus*, and took into his grace *Darius* his Captains.

20

**I**T was now hoped by the Macedonians, that their travels were neer an end, every man preparing for his return. Hereof when *Alexander* had knowledge, he was greatly grieved, for the bounded earth sufficed not his boundlesse Ambition. Many arguments he therefore used to draw on his Army farther into the East, but that which had most strength, was, that *Bessus*, a most cruell traitor to his Master *Darius*, having at his devotion the *Hyrcanians* and *Bactrians*, would in short time (if the Macedonians should return) make himself Lord of the *Persian* Empire, and enjoy the fruits of all their former travels. In conclusion he won their consents to go on: which done, leaving *Craterus* with certain Regiments of foot, and *Amys* with six thousand horse in *Parthia*, he enters not without some opposition into *Hyrcania*; for the *Mardons*, and other barbarous Nations, defended certain passages for a while. He passeth the river of *Zioborus*, which taking beginning in *Parthia*, dissolves it self in the *Caspian* Sea: it runneth under the ledge of Mountains, which bound *Parthia* & *Hyrcania*, where hiding it self under ground for three hundred furlongs, it then riseth again, and followeth its former course. In *Zadacarta*, or *Zendacarta*, the same City which *Ptolemy* writes *Hyrauba*, the Metropolis of that Region, he rested fifteen dayes, banqueting and feasting therein.

*Phaëphornes*, one of *Darius* his greatest Commanders, with others of his best followers, submit themselves to *Alexander*, and were restored to their places and governments. But of all other he graced *Artabazus* most highly for his approved and constant faith to his master *Darius*. *Artabazus* brought with him ten thousand and five hundred *Greeks*, the remainder of all those that had served *Darius*. He treats with *Alexander* for their pardon, before they were yet arrived, but in the end, they render themselves simply without promise or composition: he pardons all but the *Lacedemonians*, whom he imprisoned, their Leader having slain himself. He was also wrought (though to his great dishonour) to receive *Nabarzanes* that had joyned with *Bessus* to murder *Darius*.

## §. XV.

Of *Thalestris* Queen of the *Amazons*; where, by way of digression, it is shewed, that such *Amazons* have been and are.

**H**ERE it is said that *Thalestris* or *Minthea*, a Queen of the *Amazons*, came to visit him, and her sute was, (which she easily obtained) that she might accompany him till she were made with child by him: which done (refusing to follow him into *India*) she returned into her own Country.

Plutarch

*Plutarch* citeth many Historians, reporting this meeting of *Thalestris* with *Alexander*, and some contradicting it. But indeed, the letters of *Alexander* himself to *Antipater*, recounting all that befell him in those parts, and yet omitting to make mention of this *Amazonian* business, may justly breed suspicion of the whole matter as forged. Much more justly may we suspect it as a vain tale, because an Historian of the same time reading one of his books to *Lysimachus* (then King of *Thrace*) who had followed *Alexander* in all his voyage, was laughed at by the King for inserting such newes of the *Amazons*; and *Lysimachus* himself had never heard of. One that accompanied *Alexander*, took upon him to write his acts; which to amplify, he told how the King had fought single with an Elephant, and slain it. The King hearing such stuff, caught the book, and threw it into the river of *Indus*, saying, That it were well done to throw the writer after it, who by inserting such fables, disparaged the truth of his great exploits. Yet as we believe & know that there are Elephants, though it were false that *Alexander* fought with one; so may we give credit unto writers making mention of such *Amazons*, whether it were true or false that they met with *Alexander*; as *Plutarch* leaves the matter undetermined. Therefore I will here take leave to make digression, as well to shew the opinions of the ancient Historians, Cosmographers, and others, as also of some modern discoverers touching these warlike Women, because not only *Strabo*, but many others of these our times make doubt, whether or no there were any such kind of people. *Falsus Solinus* scats them in the North parts of *Asia* the lesse. *Pom. Mela* finds two Regions filled with them; the one on the River *Thermodoon*, the other neer the *Caspian* Sea; *Quas* (saith he) *Sauromatidas* appellant, Which the people call *Sauromatidas*. The former of these two had the *Cimerians* for their Neighbours; *Certum est* (saith *Vadianus*, who hath commented upon *Maçilios proximos Amazonibus fuisse*). It is certain that the *Cimerians* were the next Nations to the *Amazons*. *Ptolemy* sets them farther into the Land North-wards, neer the Mountains *Hippaci*, not far from the Pillars of *Alexander*. And that they had Dominion in *Asia* it self toward *India*, *Solinus* and *Pliny* tell us, Where they governed a people called the *Pandæans*, or *Padeans*, so called after *Pandæa* the Daughter of *Hercules*, from whom all the rest derive themselves. *Claudian* affirms, That they commanded many Nations: For he speaks (largely perhaps as a Poet) thus:

—*Medis levibusque Sabais*  
*Imperat hic Sexus: Reginarumque sub armis,*  
*Barbaria pars magna jacet.*

*Claud. de exp.*  
*Ergo optine.*

Over the *Medes*, and light *Sabeans* reigns  
This female sex: and under arms of Queen,  
Great part of the Barbarian Land remains.

*Diodorus Siculus* hath heard of them in *Lybia*, who were more ancient (saith he) than those which kept the banks of *Thermodoon*, a River falling into the *Euxine* Sea, neer *Heraclium*.

*Herodotus* doth also make report of these *Amazons*, whom he tels us that the *Scythians* call *Aorpatas*, which is as much as *Viricides*, or men-killers. And that they made incursion into *Asia* the lesse, sackt *Ephesus*, and burnt the Temple of *Diana*, *Manethon*, and *Aveninus* report, which they performed forty years after *Troy* was taken. At the siege of *Troy* it self we read of *Penthesilea*, That she came to the succour of *Paris*.

*Strab. l. 13.*

*Am. Marcellinus* gives the cause of their inhabiting upon the River of *Thermodoon*, speaking confidently of the wars they made with divers Nations, & of their overthrow.

*Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus*, out of *Philochorus*, *Hellenicus*, and other ancient Historians, reports the taking of *Antiope* Queen of the *Amazons* by *Hercules*, and by him given to *Theseus*, though some affirm, That *Theseus* himself got her by stealth, when he came to visit him aboard his ship. But in substance there is little difference; all confessing, That such *Amazons* there were. The same Author in the life of *Pompey* speaks of certain companies of the *Amazons*, that came to ayd the *Albanians* against the *Romans*, by whom after the battell, many Targets and Buskins of theirs were taken up: and he saith farther, That these women entertain the *Gele* and *Lelages* once a year, Nations inhabiting between them and the *Albanians*:

But



Hist. Ind.  
part. 1. c. 1.

But to omit the many Authors, making mention of *Amazons* that were in the old times, *Fran. Lopez*, who hath written the navigation of *Orellana*, which he made down the River of *Amazons* from *Pern*, in the year 1542. (upon which river, for the divers turnings, he is said to have sailed six thousand miles) reports from the relation of the said *Orellana*, to the Councell of the *Indies*, That he both saw those women, and fought with them, where they fought to impeach his passage towards the East-Sea.

It is also reported by *Ulrichus Schmidel*, that in the year 1542. when he sailed up the Rivers of *Paragna* and *Parabol*, that he came to a King of that Country, called *Scherues*, inhabiting under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, who gave his Captain *Ernando Rieffere*, a Crown of silver, which he had gotten in fight from a Queen of the *Amazons* in those parts.

*Ed. Lopez*, in his description of the Kingdom of *Congo*, makes relation of such *Amazons*, telling us, That (agreeable to the reports of elder times) they burn off their right breasts, and live apart from men, save at one time of the year, when they feast and accompany them for one month. These (saith he) possesse a part of the Kingdom of *Monomotapa* in *Africa*, nineteen degrees to the Southward of the line: and that these women are the strongest Guards of this Emperour, all the *East-Indian Portugals* know.

I have produced these authorities in part, to justify mine own relation of these *Amazons*, because that which was delivered me for truth by an ancient *Cacique* of *Guiana*, how upon the River of *Papamena* (since the *Spanish* discoveries called *Amazons*) that these women still live and govern, was held for a vain and improbable report.

## §. XVI.

*How Alexander fell into the Persian Luxurie: and how he further pursued Bessus.*

**N**OW as *Alexander* had begun to change his conditions after the taking of *Persopolis*: so at this time his prosperitie had so much over-wrought his vertue, as he accounted clemencie to be but basenesse, and the temperance which he had used all his life-time, but a poor and dejected humour, rather becoming the instructors of his youth, than the condition and state of so mighty a King as the World could not equal. For he perswaded himself that he now represented the greatnesse of the gods; he was pleased that those that came before him, should fall to the ground and adore him, he wore the robes and garments of the *Persians*, and commanded that his Nobilitie should do the like: he entertained in his Court and Camp, the same shameles rabble of *Curtians*, and *Sodomiticall Eunuchs*, that *Darius* had done, and imitated in all things the proud, voluptuous, and detested manners of the *Persians*, whom he had vanquished. So licentious is felicity, as notwithstanding that he was fully perswaded, that the gods whom he served (detesting the vices of the invaded) assisted him in all attempts against them, he himself, contrary to the Religion he professed (which how Idolatrous soever it were, could not be but fearful unto him by neglecting it) became by imitation, & not by ignorance or education, a more foul and fearfull Monster than *Darius*, from whose tyrannie he vaunted to have delivered so many Nations. Yea, those that were dearest and nearest unto him, began to be affamed of him, entertaining each other with this, and the like scornfull discourse; That *Alexander* of *Macedon* was become one of *Darius* his licentious Courtiers; That by his example, the *Macedonians* were in the end of so many travels, more impoverished in their virtues, than enriched by their victories; and that it was hard to judge whether the Conquerors, or the Conquered were the baser slaves. Neither were these opinions so reserved, but that the noise of them came to his ears. He therefore with great gifts sought to pacifie the better sort, and those of whose judgements he was most jealous; and making it known to the Army, that *Bessus* had assumed the title of a King, and called himself *Artaxerxes*, and that he had compounded a great Army of the *Bactrians*, and other Nations, he had arguments enow to perswade them to goe on, to the end that all already gotten, might not with themselves (so farre engaged) be cast away. And because they were pestered with the spoiles of so many Cities, as the whole armie seemed but the guard of their carriages, (not much unlike the warfare of the *French*) having commanded every mans fardels to be brought into the Market-place, he, together with his own, caused all to be consumed with fire. Certainly, this could not but have proved

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

20

most dangerous unto him, seeing the common Souldiers had more interest in these things which they had bought with their painfull travells, and with their blood, than in the Kings ambition; had not (as *Seneca* often observed) his happy temerity overcome all things. As he was in his way, newes came to him, that *Satibarzanes*, whom he had established in his former government over the *Arrians*, was revolted; whereupon leaving the way of *Bactria*, he fought him out; but the Rebelle, hearing of his coming, fled to *Bessus*, with two thousand Horse. He then went on towards *Bessus*, and by setting a great pile of wood on fire, with the advantage of a strong wind, won the passage over an high and unaccessible Rock, which was defended against him with thirteen thousand foot. For the extremity of the Flame and smoak forced them from the place, otherwise invincible. I saw in the third civil waire of *France*, certain Caves in *Languedoc*, which had but one entrance, and that very narrow, cut out in the mid-way of high Rocks, which we knew not how to enter by any ladder or engine, till at last, by certain bundles of straw, laid down by an yron chain, and a weighty stone in the midst, those that defended it, were so smothered, as they rendered themselves, with their plate, money, and other goods therein hidden. There were also some three years before my arrivall in *Guiana*, three hundred *Spaniards* well mounted, smothered to death, together with their Horses, by the Countie-people, who did set the long dry grasse on fire to the Eastward of them, (the wind in those parts being alwayes East) so as notwithstanding their flying from the smoak, there was not any one that escaped, Sir *John Burrowes* also, with a hundred *English*, was in great danger of being lost at *Margarita*, in the *West-Indies*, by having the grasse fired behind him; but the smoak being timely discovered, he recovered the Sea-shore with the losse of sixteen of his men. I remember these things, but to give caution to those that shall in times to come invade any part of those Countries, that they alwayes, before they passe into the Land, burn down the grasse and siege to the East of them; they may otherwise, without any other enemy than a bandfull of straw set on fire, dye the death of hony-Bees, burnt out of the Hive.

## §. XVII.

*A Conspiracie against Alexander. The death of Philotas and Parmenio.*

**A**LEXANDER was, after he parted hence, no where resisted, till he came into *Aria*, to the East of *Bactria*, where the chief City of that Province, called *Artacoana*, was a while defended against him, by the revolt of *Satibarzanes*, but in the end hee received the Inhabitants to mercie. At this place his Army was re-enforced with a new supply of five thousand and five hundred foot, and near five hundred Horse, out of *Greece*, *Thessalie*, and other places. His journey out of *Persia* into these parts, is very confidently described. For having (as all his Historians tell us) a determination to find *Bessus* in *Bactria*, he leaves it at the very entrance, and takes the way of *Hyrcania*, from thence he wanders Northwards towards the obscure *Marsis*, upon the *Caspian-Sea*, and thence over the Mountain *Corumus* into *Aria* and *Drangiana*.

At this time it was that the treason of *Dimnus* brake out, of which *Philotas* the sonne of *Parmenio* was accused, as accessary, if not principall. This *Dimnus*, having (I know not upon what ground) conspired with some others against the life of *Alexander*, went about to draw *Nichomachus*, a young man whom he loved, into the same treason. The Youth, although he was first bound by oath to secrecy, when he heard so foul a matter uttered, began to protest against it so vehemently, that his friend was like to have slain him for security of his own life. So, constrained by fear, he made shew as if hee had been won by perswasion; and by seeming at length to like well of the business, he was told more at large what they were that had undertaken it. There were nine or ten of them, all men of rank, whose names *Dimnus* (to countenance the enterprize) reckoned up to *Nichomachus*. *Nichomachus* had no sooner fired himself from the company of this Traitor *Dimnus*, than he acquainted his own brother *Ceballinus* with the whole History: whereupon it was agreed between them, that *Ceballinus* (who might with least suspicion) should go to the Court, and utter all *Ceballinus*, meeting with *Philotas*, told him the whole business, desiring him to acquaint the King therewith: which he promised

B b b b

10



with great fidelity as well Philip of Macedon the Kings Father, as himself, *Parmenio*, that first opened the way into *Asia*, that had deprest *Attalus* the Kings enemy; that had alwayes, and in all hazzards, the leading of the Kings Vant-guard, that was no lesse prudent in counsell, than fortunate in all attempts; A man beloved of the men of War, and, to say the truth, he that had made the purchase for the King of the Empire of the East, and of all the glory and fame he had: That he might not therefore revenge the death of his Son, though not upon the King, (for it was unlikely that he would have dishonoured his fidelity in his eldest age, having now lived threescore and ten years) yet upon those that by the witchcraft of flattery had possessed themselves of his affection, it was resolved that he should be dispatched. *Polydamas* was employed in this business, a man whom of all other *Parmenio* trusted most, and loved best, who (to be short) finding him in *Media*, and having *Cleander* and other murderers with him, slew him walking in his Garden, while he was reading the Kings letters. *Hic exitus Parmenionis fuit, militia domique clari viri; Multa sine Rege prospera, Rex sine illo nihil magna rei gesserat; This was the end of Parmenio (saith Curtius) who had performed many notable things without the King, but the King, without him, did never effect any thing worthy of praise.*

## s. XVIII.

How Alexander subdued the *Bactrians*, *Sogdians*, and other people. How *Bessus* was delivered into his hands. How he fought with the *Scythians*.

**W**hen these things had end, *Alexander* went on with his Army, and brought under his obedience the *Araspians* or *Evergitans*; he made *Amenides* (sometime *Darius* his Secretary) their Governour, then he subdued the *Arachosians*, and left *Memon* to command over them. Here the Army, sometimes led by *Parmenio*, finds him, consisting of twelve thousand *Macedons* and *Greeks*, with whom he past through some cold Regions with difficulty enough. At length he came to the foot of the Mountain *Taurus* towards the East, where he built a City, which he honoured with his own name, and peopled it with seven thousand of his old *Macedons*, worn with age and with travells of the war. The *Arians*, who since he left them were revolted, he subdued again by the industrie and valour of *Caranus* and *Erginus*. And now he resolves to find out the new King *Bessus* in *Bactria*. *Bessus*, hearing of his coming, prepares to pass over the great River of *Oxus* which divides *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*; *Artabazus* is made Governour of *Bactria* abandoned by *Bessus*; The *Macedonian* Army suffereth for want of Water, inasmuch as when they came to the River of *Oxus*, there died more of them by drinking inordinately, than *Alexander* had lost in any one battell against the *Persians*. And it may well be; For (as *Clytus* did after object unto him) hee fought against women, not against men, and not against their persons, but their shadowes. He found on the banks of this great River no manner of Timber or other materials, to make either boats, bridges, or raffe, but was forc'd to sew together the Hides that covered his carriages, and stuffe them with straw, and on them in fix dayes to passe over his Army; which *Bessus* might easily have distrust, if he had dared but to behold the *Macedonian* Army afar off. He had formerly complained against *Darius* for neglecting to defend the banks of *Tigris*, and other passages, and yet now, when this traitorous slave had styled himself a King, he durst not perform any thing worthy of a slave. And therefore those that were neerest unto him, and whom he most trusted, to wit, *Spitamenes*, *Dataphernes*, *Catanes*, and others the Commanders of his Army, moved both by the care of their own safety, and by the memory of *Bessus* his Treason and cruelty against *Darius*, bound him in the like manner that he had done his Master, but with this difference, that he had the chain closed about his neck like a mastiffe Dog, and so was dragged along to be presented to his enemy.

In the mean while *Alexander* was arrived at a certain Town inhabited with *Greeks* of *Miletum*, brought thither by *Xerxes*, when long before hee returned out of *Greece*; whose issues had well-near forgotten their Country-language. These most cruelly (after they had received him with great joy) he put to the sword, and destroyed their City. At this place he reciev'd *Bessus*, and having rewarded *Spitamenes* with the rest that delivered him, he gave the Traitor into the hands of *Oxartes*, *Darius* his brother, to be tortured.

But

But while hee now thought himself secure, some twenty thousand Mountainers assailed his Camp; in repelling whom he received a shot in the leg, the arrow head sticking in the flesh, so as he was carried in a Horse-litter, sometime by the horsemen, sometime by the foot.

Soon after he came unto *Maracanda*, which *Petrus Perondinus* takes to be *Samarchand*, the regall City of the great *Tamerlaine*. It had in compasse threescore and ten furlongs (*Curtius* saith.) Here he received the Embassadours of the *Scythians* (called *Arians*) who offered to serve him.

The *Bactrians* are shortly again with the *Sogdians* stirred to rebellion, by the same *Spitamenes* and *Catanes*, who had lately delivered into his hands the traitor *Bessus*. Many Cities were resolutely defended against him, all which, after victory, hee defaced and razed, killing all therein. At one of these he received a blow on the neck, which struck him to the ground, and much disabled him for many dayes after. In the mean while *Spitamenes* had recovered *Maracanda*, against whom he employed *Menedemus* with three thousand foot, and eight hundred horse.

In the heat of these tumults *Alexander* marched on (if we may belevee *Curtius* and others) till he came to the river of *Tanais*, upon whose bank he built another *Alexandria*, threescore furlongs in compasse, which he beautified with houses within seventeen dayes after the walls built. The building of this City is said to have bin occasion of a war between him and the *Scythians*; the *Scythian* King perswading himself, that this new Town was fortified of purpose to keep him under. I doe not well understand, why the *Scythians*, offering war in such terrible manner, that *Alexander* was judged by his own Souldiers to counterfeit sicknesse for very fear, should nevertheless make sute for peace: neither find I the reason why *Alexander* (not intending the conquest of those Northern desarts, but only the defence of his own bank) should refuse to let them alone, with whom he could not meddle further than they should agree to suffer him. Yet hereof is made a greater matter; and a victory described, in pursuit of which the *Macedons* ran beyond the bounds and monuments of *Bacchus* his expedition.

The truth is, That *Curtius* and *Tragus* have greatly mistaken this River, which they call *Tanais*. For it was the River of *Jaxartes*, that runs between *Sogdiana* and *Scythia*, which *Alexander* past over, while *Menedemus* was employed in the recovery of *Samarchand*: But *Tanais*, which divides *Asia* from *Europe*, is near two thousand miles distant from any part of *Bactria* and *Sogdiana*, and the way desert and unknown. So that *Alexander* had (besides *Jaxartes*) the great River of *Volga* and many others to swim over, ere he could recover *Tanais*: which (from the place where he was) he could hardly have discovered with the Army that followed him, if he had employed all the time that hee lived in *Asia* in that travell.

Wherefore it is enough to belevee, that the *Asiaticke Scythians*, making some offer to disturb the erection of his new City, which was like to give some hindrance to their excursions, were driven away by the *Macedonians*; and being naked of defensive Arms, easily chased some ten or twelve miles; which is the substance of *Curtius* his report. As for the limits of *Bacchus* his journey, like enough it is that *Bacchus* (if in his life-time he were as sober a man, as after his death he was held a drunken god) went not very far into that waste Country, where he could find nothing but trees and stones, nor other buisnesse than to set up a Monument.

Threescore of the *Macedonians* are said to have bin slain, and one thousand one hundred hurt in this fight; which might easily be in passing a great River, defended against them by good Archers. Of *Scythian* horses one thousand eight hundred were brought into the Camp, and many prisoners. It is forbidden by some Historians, and indeed it is hardly possible to set down the numbers of such as perish in battell: yet *Cesar* commonly did it. And where the diligence of the victors hath been so inquisitive into the greatness of their own successe, that writers have been able to deliver such particulars by credible report, I hold it not unlawfull to set down what we find; especially when it serves to give light to the buisnesse in hand. The small number which the *Macedonians* lost; the omission of the number which they slew (a thing not usuall in *Curtius*, who forbears nothing that may set out the greatness of *Alexander*) and the little bootie that was gotten, doe make it probable, that this war was no better than the repulsion of a few roving *Tartars* (the like being yearly performed by the *Moscovite*, without

any boast) and therefore better omitted by some Historians, than so highly extolled as a great exploit, by others.

While Alexander was assuring himself of those *Scythians* bordering upon *Jaxartes*, he received the ill news that *Menedemus* was slain by *Spitamenes*, the Army (by him led) broken, and the greatest numbers slain, to wit, two thousand foot, and three hundred horse. He therefore, to appease the rebellion, and to take revenge of *Spitamenes*, makes all the haste he can; but *Spitamenes* flies into *Bactria*. Alexander kills, burns, and lays waste all before him, not sparing the innocent children, and so departs, leaving a new Governour in that Province.

To repair this loss he received a great supply of nineteen thousand Souldiers out of *Greece*, *Lycia*, and *Syria*; with all which, and the old Army, he returns towards the South, and passeth the River of *Oxus*; on the South-side whereof hee built six Towns near each other for mutual succour. But he findes a new start-up-Rebell, called *Arimazes*, (a *Sogdian*) followed with thirty thousand Souldiers, that defended against him a strong piece of ground on the top of a high Hill; whom when Alexander had fought in vain to win by fair words, he made choice of three hundred young men, and promised ten talents to the first, nine to the second, and so in proportion to the rest, that could find a way to creep up to the top thereof. This they performed with the losse of some two and thirty of their men, and then made a sign to Alexander, that they had performed his commandement. Hereupon he sent one *Cophes* to perswade *Arimazes* to yeeld the place, who, being shewed by *Cophes* that the Army of *Macedon* was already mounted up, yeelded simply to Alexander's mercy, and was (with all his kinred) scourged and crucified to death; which punishment they well deserved for neglecting to keep good watch in so dangerous a time. For the place, as seems by the description, might easily have been defended against all the Armies of the World. But, what strength cannot doe, Mans wit, being the most forcible engine, hath often effected: Of which I will give you an example in a place of our own.

The Island of *Sarke*, joyning to *Garnsey*, and of that government, was in Queen *Maries* time surprised by the *French*, and could never have been recovered again by strong hand, having cattell and corn enough upon the place to feed so many men as will serve to defend it, and being every way to inaccessible, that it might be held against the Great *Turk*. Yet by the industry of a Gentleman of the *Netherlands*, it was in this sort regained. He anchored in the road with one Ship of small burden, and pretending the death of his Merchant, besought the *French*, being some thirty in number, that they might burie their Merchant in hallowed Ground, and in the Chappell of that Isle; offering a present to the *French* of such Commodities as they had aboard; whereto (with condition that they should not come ashore with any weapon, no not so much as with a Knife) the *French-men* yeelded. Then did the *Fleming*, put a Coffin into their Boat, not filled with a dead carcasie, but with Swords, Targets, and Harquebusses; The *French* received them at their landing, and searching every of them so narrowly as they could not hide a Pen-knife gave them leave to draw their Coffin up the Rocks with great difficulty; some part of the *French* took the *Flemish* Boat, & rowed aboard their Ship, to fetch the commodities promised, and what els they pleased; but being entred, they were taken and bound. The *Flemings* on the Land, when they had carried their Coffin into the Chappell, shut the door to them, and taking their weapons out of the Coffin, set upon the *French*; they run to the Cliff, and cry to their Company aboard the *Fleming* to come to their succour, but finding the Boat charged with *Flemings*, yeelded themselves and the place. This a Fox-tail doth sometimes help well to piece out the Lions-skin that else would be too short.

#### S. XIX.

How Alexander slew his own friends.

AFTER these *Sogdian* and *Scythian* Wars, we read of Alexander's killing of a *Lion*, and other Frivolous matters, and that he committed the Government of *Macracanda*, and the Country about it, to *Clytus*, and how he slew him soon after, for valuing the virtue of *Philip* the father before that of Alexander the son, or rather because he objected to the King the death of *Parmenio*, & derided the Oracle of *Hammon*:

for

for therein he toucht him to the quick, the same being delivered in publike, and at a drunken Banquet. *Clytus*, indeed, had deserved as much at the Kings hands, as any man living had done, and had in particular saved his life, which the King well remembered when he came to himself, and when it was too late. Yet to say the truth, *Clytus* his insolency was intolerable. As he in his Cups forgot whom he offended, so the King in his (for neither of them were themselves) forgot whom he went about to slay, for the grief whereof he tare his own face, and sorrowed so inordinately, as, but for the perswasions of *Calisthenes*, it is thought he would have slain himself.

Wine begat Furie, Furie matter of Repentance; but preceding mischiefs are not amended by succeeding bewailing: *Omne vitium ebrietas & incendit, & detegit; obstantem malis conatibus verecundiam removet; ubi possedit animum nimia vis vini, quicquid mali latebat, emergit: non facit ebrietas vitia, sed protrahit;* Drunkennes both kindles & lays open every vice; it removes out of the way that shame which gives impediment unto bad attempts; where wine gets the mastery, all the ill that before lay hidden breaks out: drunkennesse indeed rather discovers vices, than makes them.

Soon after this, *Spitamenes*, who flew *Bessus*, and had lately revolted from Alexander, was murdered by his Wife, and his head presented to Alexander. *Spitamenes* being taken away, the *Dahans* also seized upon his fellow-conspirator *Dataphernes*, and delivered him up. So Alexander being now freed from all these pettie-Rebels, disposed of the Provinces which he past over, and went on with his Army into *Gabaza*, where it suffered so much Hunger, Cold, Lightning, Thunder, and Storm, as he lost in one Tempest a thousand of his Train. From hence he invaded the *Sacans*, and destroyed their Country. Then came he into the Territory of *Cobortanes*, who submitted himself unto him, feasted him greatly, and presented him with thirty beautiful Virgins, among whom *Roxana*, afterwards his Wife, was one: which although all the *Macedonians* disdained, yet none of them durst use any freedom of speech after *Clytus* his death. From hence he directed his course towards *India*, having so increased his numbers, as they amounted to an hundred and twenty thousand armed men.

In the mean while he would needs be honoured as a god: whereto that he might allure the *Macedonians*, he employed two pernicious Parasites, *Hagis* and *Cleo*; whom *Calisthenes* opposed: For, among many other honest arguments used to the assembly, he told *Cleo*, That he thought, that Alexander would disdain the gift of God-head from his Vassals; That the opinion of Sanctity, though it did sometime follow the death of those, who in their life-time had done the greatest things, yet it never accompanied any one as yet living in the world. He further told him, That neither *Hercules* nor *Bacchus* were Deified at a Banquet, and upon drink (for this matter was propounded by *Cleo* at a carowing feast;) but that, for the more than manly acts by them performed while they lived, they were in future and succeeding Ages numbred among the gods. Alexander stood behind a partition, and heard all that was spoken, waiting but an opportunity to be revenged on *Calisthenes*, who being a man of free speech, honest, learned, and a lover of the Kings honour, was yet soon after tormented to death; not for that he had betrayed the King to others, but because he never would condescend to betray the King to himself, as all his detestable flatterers did. For in a conspiracy against the King made by one *Hermolaeus* and others (which they confessed) he caused *Calisthenes* without confession, accusation, or trial, to be torn asunder upon the rack: This deed unworthy of a King, *Seneca* thus censureth. *Hoc est Alexandri crimen eternum, quod nulla virtus, nulla bellorum felicitas redimet: Nam quoties quis dixerit, Occidit Persarum multa millia; opponitur, & Calisthenem. Quoties dictum erit, Occidit Darium; opponitur, & Calisthenem. Quoties dictum erit, Omnia Oceano tenus vici, ipsum quoque tenuit novis classibus, & Imperium ex angulo Thracia usque ad orientis terminos praeluit; dicitur, sed Calisthenem occidit. Alexander licet antiqua Ducum Regumque exempla transierit, ex his que fecit nihil tam magnum erit quam scelus Calisthenis; This is the eternall crime of Alexander, which no vertue nor felicity of his in War shall ever be able to redeem: For as often as any man shall say, he slew many thousand Persians; it shall be replied, he did so, & he slew Calisthenes. When it shall be said, he slew Darius; it shall be replied, and Calisthenes. When it shall be said, he wanne all as far as the very Ocean, thereon also he adventured with unusall Navies, & extended his Empire from a corner of Thrace, to the utmost bounds of the Orient; it shall be said nishall, But he killed Calisthenes. Let him have out-gone all the ancient examples*

examples of Captains and Kings; none of all his acts make so much to his glory, as Callisthenes to his reproach.

§. XX.

Of Alexanders journey into India. The battell between him and Porus.

**V**With the Army before remembred, of one hundred and twenty thousand foot and horse, Alexander did enter the borders of India, where such of the Princes, as submitted themselves unto him, he entertained lovingly, the rest he constrained, killing Man, Woman, and Child, where they resisted. He then came before Nisa built by Bacchus, which after a few daies was rendred unto him. From thence he removed to a Hill at hand, which on the top had goodly Gardens, filled with delicate fruits and Vines, dedicated to Bacchus, to whom he made feasts for ten dayes together. Now when he had drunk his fill, hee went on towards Dedula, and from thence to Acadera, Countries spoiled and abandoned by the Inhabitants; by reason whereof, victuals failing, he divides his Army: Ptolemy led one part, Genon another, and himself the rest. They take many Towns, whereof that of greatest fame was Masage, which had in it three hundred thousand men; but after some resistance, it was yielded unto him by Cleophe the Queen, to whom again he restored it; at the siege of this City he received a wound in the legge. After this, Nora was taken by Polysperchon, and a Rock of great strength by himself: he wanne also a passage upon one Eryx, who was slain by his company, and his head presented to Alexander. This is the summe of Alexanders doings in those parts, before such time as he arrived at the River of Indus. Comming to Indus, he found there Ephestion, who (being sent before) had prepared boats for the transportation of his Army, and ere Alexanders arrivall, had perswaded Omphis King of that part of the Country, to submit himself to this great Conquerour. Therefore, soon upon Alexanders comming, Omphis presented himself with all the strength of his Country, and six and fifty Elephants, unto him, offering him his service and assistance. He made Alexander know, that he was an Enemy to the next two great Kings of that part of India, named Abisares and Porus; wherewith Alexander was not a little pleased, hoping by this disunion to make his own victory by far the more easie. He presented Alexander with a Crown of gold, so did he the rest of his Commanders, and withall fourscore talents of silver coyn; which Alexander not only refused, but to hevy that he was covetous of glory, not of gold, he gave Omphis a thousand talents of his own treasure, besides other Persian rarities. Abisares, having heard that Alexander had received his enemy Omphis into his protection, resolved to make his own peace also: For, knowing that his own strength did but equal that of Omphis, and that there was no other difference between them, than that which the chance of Warre gave, hee thought it an ill match, when Alexander, who had already beaten under foot all the greatest Princes of Asia, should make himself a Party and Head of the quarrell. So had Alexander none now to stand in his way but Porus, to whom he sent a commandement, that hee should attend him at the border of his Kingdome, there to doe him homage. But from Porus he received this manly answer; That he would satisfie him in his first demand, which was to attend him on his borders, and that well accompanied; but for any other acknowledgement he was resolved to take counsell of his Sword. To be short, Alexander resolves to passe over the River Hydaspes, and to find Porus at his own home. Porus attends him on the farther bank with thirty thousand foot, fourscore and ten Elephants, and three hundred armed Chariots, and a great troop of Horse. If Darius had done the like on Tigris, Alexander had surely staied somewhat longer ere he had seen India. The River was four furlongs broad, which makes half a mile, and withall deep and swift. It had in it many Ilands, among which there was one well shadowed with wood, and of good capacity. Alexander sent Ptolemy up the River with a great part of the Army, shrowding the rest from the view of Porus: who by this device being drawn from his first incamping, lets himself down opposite to Ptolemy, supposing that the whole Army of Macedon meant to force their passage there. In the mean while Alexander recovers the farther shore without resistance. He orders his troops, and advanceth towards Porus, who at first rather beleeveth, that Abisares his Confederat (but now the Confederat of fortune) had bin come over Hydaspes to his aid, than that Alexander had past it.

But

But he finds it otherwise, and sends his Brother Hagis with four thousand horse, and a hundred armed Waggon to entertain him. Each Waggon had in it four to fight, and two to guide it; but they were at this time of little use: for there had fallen so much rain, and thereby the fields were so moistned, as the horses could hardly trot. The Scythians and Dahans had the Vant-guard, who fo galled these Indians, as they brake their rains, and other furniture, overturning the Waggon, and those in them. Perdicas also gave up the Indian horse-men, and the one and the other were forced to recoil. Porus moves forward with grosse of his Army, that those of his Vant-guard scattered might recover his Rear; Alexander being followed with Ephestion, Ptolemy, and Perdicas, took on him to charge the Indian horse-men on the left wing, commanding Genus or Genon to invade the right; Antigonus and Leonatus, he directed to break upon Porus his battell of foot, strengthened with Elephants, Porus himself being carried upon one of them, of the greatest stature. By these beasts the Macedonian foot were most offended; but the Archers and Darters, being well guarded with the long and strong pikes of the Macedonians, fo galled them, as being iraged, they turned head, and ran over the foot that followed them: In the end, and after a long and doubtfull fight, by the advantage of weapon, and by the courage and skilfulnesse of the Macedonian Captains, the victory fell to Alexander, who also far exceeded Porus in number: for besides the Macedonians and other Eastern and Northern Nations, Porus was assailed by his own Confederate and Countrey people. Yet for his own person he never gave ground otherwise than with his sword towards his enemies, till being weakened with many wounds, and abandoned by his Army, he became a prisoner to the Conqueror, from whom again he received his estate with a great enlargement.

§. XXI.

How Alexander finished his expedition, and returned out of India.

**I**Forbear to trouble my self and others with a frivolous discourse of Serpents, Apes, and Peacocks, which the Macedonians found in these their travels: or of those pette Warres which Alexander made between the overthrow of Porus, and his falling down the River of Indus. The descriptions of places about the head and branches thereof are better known unto us in this Age, by means of our late Navigations into those parts, than they were in any former times. The magnificence and riches of those Kings we could in no sort be perswaded to believe, till our own experience had taught us, that there were many stranger things in the World, than are to be seen between London and Stanes.

Our great traveller Mandevile, who died in the year 1372, and had seen so much of the World, and of the East India, we accompted the greatest fabler of the World; yet had he another reputation among other Nations, as well able to judge as we. Witnesse the Monument made of him in the Covent of the Friars Guillelmus in Liege, where the religious of that place keep some things of his, Comme pour honnorable memoire de son Excellence; For an honourable memorie of his Excellencie, saith Guichardine.

The Countries towards the Springs of Indus, and where those many Rivers of Hydaspes, Zaradris, Acesines, and the rest fall into the main stream, are now posselt by the great Mogor, the ninth from Tamberlain, who commands all the tract between Persia and Indas towards the West, as also a great extent of Countrey towards Ganges. In the mouth of Indus, the Ascension, a Ship of London, suffered shipvrack, in the year 1609, and some of the company travelled over Land till they came to Agra, the same great Citie (as I take it) which our later Cosmographers call Nagra, being named of old Dionysopolis.

Philostratus in the life of Apollonius Tyanus, speaking of the expedition of Bacchus and Hercules into the East India, tells us, that those two great Captains (whom Alexander sought by all means to out-fame) when they endeavourd to subject to them the Oxidrace, a people inhabiting between the Rivers of Hyphasis and Ganges, they were beaten from the assault of their Cities with thunder and lightnings. This may well be understood by the great Ordinance that those people had then in use. For it is now certainly known, that the great Kings of the uttermost East, have had the use of the canon many hundreds of years since, and even since their first civillie and greatnesse, which was long before

Alexanders

Alexander's time. But Alexander pierc'd not so far into the East. It sufficed that having already over-wearied his Army, he discovered the rest of India by fame. The Indian Kings whom he had subdued, informed him, that a Prince called *Aggramenus*, who commanded many Nations beyond the River *Ganges*, was the powerfullst King of all those Regions: and that he was able to bring into the field two hundred thousand Foot, three thousand Elephants, twenty thousand Horle, and two thousand armed Chariots. With this report, though Alexander were more inflamed than ever to proceed in this discovery and conquest, yet all the art he had, could not perswade the Souldiers to wander over those great Deserts beyond *Indus & Ganges*, more terrible unto them than the greatest Army that the East could gather. Yet at the last contented they were, after many perswasive Orations, to follow him towards the South, to discover such part of the Ocean Sea, as was neerer at hand, whereunto the River of *Indus* was their infallible guide, Alexander seeing that it would be no otherwise, devised a pretty trick, wherewith he hoped to beguile posteritie, and make himself seem greater than he was. He enlarged his Camp, made greater trenches, greater cabbines for Souldiers, greater Horle-stalls, and higher mangers than Horles could feed in. He caused all furniture of men and horles to be made larger than would serve for use; and scattered these Armourers and Bridles about his Camp, to be kept as reliques, and wondered at by the Savages. Proportionable to these he raised up twelve great Altars to be the monument of his journey's end. This was a ready way to encrease the fame of his bignesse; to his greatnesse it could add nothing save a suspicion, that it was lesse than is thought, seeing he strove so earnestly to make it thought more than it was.

This done, he returned again to the bank of *Acefines*, and there determined to set up his fleet, where *Acefines* and *Hydaspes* incounter; where to testifie by a firer monument, how far he had past towards the East, he built by those rivers two Cities: the one hee called *Nicaea*, and the other *Bucephalon*, after the name of his beloved Horle *Bucephalus*. Here again he received a fourth supply of six thousand *Thracian* Horle-men, seven thousand Foot; and from his Lieutenant at *Babylon* five and twenty thousand Armourers, garnished with silver and gold, which he distributed among his Souldiers. About these Rivers he wain many Towns, and committed great slaughter on those that resisted; It is then written of him, that assaulting a Citie of the *Oxidracans*, he leapt from the top of the wall into it, and fought, I know not how long, against all the Inhabitants; tales like those of *Bevis of Southampton*, frivolous and incredible. Finally, he past down the River with his fleet, at which time also the newes came unto him of a rebellion in *Bactria*, and then of the arrivall of an hundred Embassadors from a King of *India*, vvho submitted himself unto him. He feasted these Embassadors upon a hundred beds of gold, with all the sumptuousity that could be devised, who soon after their dispatch, returned again with a present of three hundred Horles, one hundred and thirty Waggon, and to each of them four Horles, a Thousand Targets, with many other things rare and rich.

Their entertainments ended, he sailed towards the South, passed through many obscure Nations, which did all yeeld unto him either quietly, or compelled by force: among these he builded another *Alexandria*. Of many places which he took in this passage, *Samus* was one, the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned swords, with one of which *Proton* (afterward King of *Egypt*) was wounded, and cured by an herb which Alexander dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent.

When he came neer the out-let of *Indus* (being ignorant of the tides of the Sea) his Gallies, as they were on a sudden shuffled one upon another by the Floud, so on the Ebbe they were left on the drie ground, and on the sandie banks of the River, wherewith the *Macedonians* were much amazed; but after he had a few daies observed well the course of the Sea, he past out of the rivers mouth some few miles, and after Sacrifices offered to *Neptune*, returned: and the better to inform himself, he sent *Nearchus* and *Onesicritus*, to discover the coast towards the mouth of *Euphrates*. *Arrianus* in the beginning of his first Book hath written this passage down the River of *Indus* at length, vvith the manner of the Vessels in vvwhich he transported his Army, the Commanders that vvere used therein, and other the marvellous provisions made.

Neer the out-lets of this River, he spent some part of the Winter, and in eighteen daies march from thence recovered *Gedrosia*, in vvwhich passage his Army suffered such

miserie

miserie for want of food, that of a hundred and twenty thousand foot, and twelve thousand horle, which he carried into *India*, not the fourth part returned alive.

# 6. XXII.

## Of Alexander's Rize, Cruelty, and death.

FROM *Gedrosia*, Alexander led his Army into *Carmania*, and so drawing neer to *Persia*, he gave himself wholly to feasting and drinking, imitating the triumphs of *Bacchus*. And though this Swinish vice be hatefull enough in it self, yet it alwayes inflamed this King to Cruelty. For (saith *Curtius*) the Hang-man followed the feast, for 10 *Aspates*, one of his Provinciaall Governors, he commanded to be slain, so as neither did the excessse of voluptuousnesse qualifie his cruelty, nor his cruelty binder in ought his voluptuousnesse.

While he refreshed his Army in these parts, a new supply of five thousand foot and a thousand horle, was brought him by *Cleander*, and his fellows, that had bin employed in the killing of *Parmenio*. Against these Murderers great complaint was made by the Deputies of the Provinces, in which they had commanded; and their offences were so outrageous, as Alexander was perswaded, that had they not altogether despaired of his re- turn out of *India*, they durst not have committed them. All men were glad of the occa- 10 sion, remembering the vertue of him, whom they had slaughtered. The end was, That *Cleander*, and the other chief, with six hundred Souldiers by them employed, were delivered over to the Hang-man: every one rejoicing that the Ire of the King was at last executed on the ministers of his Ire.

*Nearchus* and *Onesicritus* were now returned from the coast, and made report of an Island rich in gold, and of other strange things; whereupon they were commanded to make some farther discoverie: which done, that they should enter the mouth of *Euphrates*, and find the King at *Babylon*.

As he drew neer to *Babylon*, he visited the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* in *Pasargada*, now cal- led *Chalquera*: where he was presented with many rich gifts by *Orsines*, one of the Prin- ces of *Persia*, of the race of *Cyrus*. But because *Bagoas*, an *Eunuch* in speciall favour with 20 the King, was neglected, he not only practised certain loose fellows to witnesse against *Orsines*, that he had robbed *Cyrus* tombe, for which hee was condemned to die; but he assisted the Hang-man with his own hands in tormenting him. At which time also Alexander caused *Phradites* to be slain, suspecting his greatnesse. *Ceperas* (saith *Curtius*) esse preceptis ad representanda supplicia, item ad deteriora credenda; He began head-longly to shed blood, and to believe false reports. It is true, that he took a way to make all men weary of his government, seeing cruelty is more fearfull, than all adventures that can be made against it.

At this time it is said, that *Calanus* the Philosopher burnt himself, when he had lived three score and thirteen years. Whether herein he followed the custome of his Coun- 40 trie, being an *Indian*, or sought to prevent the grief and incommodie of elder age, is uncertain: but in this the Historians agree, that fore-seeing and fore-shewing Alexander's death, he promised to meet him shortly after at *Babylon*.

From *Pasargada* he came to *Susa*, where he married *Statira*, *Darius* his eldest Daughter, giving her younger sister to his beloved *Epheslion*, and fourscore other *Persian* Ladies to his Captains. There were six thousand guests invited to the feast, to each of which he gave a cup of gold. Here there came unto him three thousand young souldiers, out of his conquered Provinces, wherewith the *Macedonians* greatly murmured. *Harpalus*, his Treasurer in *Babylon*, having lavishly consumed the monies in his keeping, got him going with five thousand Talents, and six thousand hired Souldiers; but he was re- 50 joiced in *Greece*, and there slain. Alexander greatly rejoiced at the fidelity of the *Greeks*, whom *Harpalus* with these forces and treasures could not stir: yet he sent commandment, that they should again receive their banished men, whereunto (fearefull of his indignation) all submitted themselves (except the *Athenians*) though they resolved, that it was a manifest preparation towards their bondage. After this there followed a marvellous discontentment in his Army, because he had resolved to send into *Macedon* all those old Souldiers which could no longer endure the travell of Warre, and to keep the rest in *Asia*. He used many Orations to satisfie them, but it was in vain during the tempest

Arrianus hath a  
far different  
description of  
Cyrus tombe.



tempest of their fury. But afterward, as Whales are drawn to the Land with a twine-  
 thread, when they have tumbled a while, so are the unconfederate multitude easily con-  
 quered when their first passions are evaporate. With such as were licenced to depart,  
 he sent *Craterus*, to whom he gave the Lieutenanthip of *Macedon*, *Thessaly*, and *Thrace*,  
 which *Antipater* had held from his first departure out of *Europe*, who had beaten the re-  
 bellious *Greeks* in his absence, discharged the trust committed unto him with great fide-  
 lity, and sent him so many strong supplies into *Asia* from time to time. Certainly if  
*Alexander* had not taken counsell of his cups, he would have cast some better colour on  
 this alteration, and given *Antipater* a stronger reason for his remove, than to have im-  
 ployed him in the conduction of a new supply to be brought him to *Babylon*, the Warre  
 being now at an end. For *Antipater* saw nothing in this remove, but the Kings disposition  
 to send him after *Parmenio*, and the rest. With this *Antipater*, the King, notwithstanding  
 his great courage, had no great appetite to grapple: Princes, though jealous, doe not  
 stand in doubt of every man ill affected, though valiant: but there is a kind of kingly  
 courage, compounded of hardinesse and understanding, which is many times so fearfull  
 unto them, as they take leave both of Law and Religion, to free themselves thereof.

After he had sent for *Antipater*, he made a journey into *Media* to settle things there;  
 where *Ephesius*, whom he favoured most of all men, dies. The King according to the  
 greatnesse of his love, laments his losse, hangs his Physician, and bestowes upon his Mo-  
 nument twelve thousand talents: After which he returns to *Babylon*. Thither *Antipater*  
 came not, but sent; and not to excuse himself, but to free himself. For if we beleve  
*Curtius* (whom *Plutarch* and others gain-say) *Antipater* by his sons, *Cassander*, *Philip*,  
 and *Tolla*, who waited on *Alexanders* cup, gave him poyson; *Thessalus* (who was of the  
 complicity) having invited him to a drinking feast of purpose. For after he had taken a  
 carouse in *Hercules* his cup, a draught of drink stronger than *Hercules* himself, he quit-  
 ted the World within a few daies.

Certainly the Princes of the World have seldom found good, by making their Mini-  
 sters over-great, and thereby suspicious to themselves. For he that doth not acknowledge  
 fidelity to be a debt, but is perswaded, that Kings ought to purchase it from their Vassals,  
 will never please himself with the price given. The only restorative, indeed, that streng-  
 thens it, is the goodness and vertue of the Prince, & his liberality makes it more diligent,  
 so as proportion and distance be observed. It may be that *Antipater*, having commanded  
 two or three Kingdomes ten or twelve years, knew not how to play any other part;  
 no more than *Cesar* did, after he had so long a time governed the *Gauls*, where hee  
 utterly forgot the art of obedience. A most cruell and ungratefull traitor *Antipater* was,  
 as *Curtius* do not belie him; For though he feared some ill measure upon his remove (the  
 Tragedies of *Parmenio*, *Clytus*, and *Callisthenes*, having bin so lately acted) yet he knew  
 nothing to the contrary, but that the King had resolved to have given him some other  
 great government in *Asia*: The old Souldiers thence returned, having perchance desired  
 to be governed by *Craterus*, whom they had followed in all the former Warre.

## S. XXIII.

## Of Alexanders person and qualities.

Howsoever it were, *Alexanders* former cruelties cannot be excused, no more  
 than his vanitie to be esteemed the Son of *Jupiter*, with his excessive delight in  
 drink and drunkennesse, which others make the cause of his fever and death. In  
 that he lamented his want of enterprising, and grieved to consider what he should doe  
 when he had conquered the World, *Augustus Cesar* found just cause to deride him, as  
 if the well-governing of so many Nations and Kingdoms, as he had already conquered,  
 could not have offered him matter more than abundant, to busie his brains withall.  
 That he was both learned and a lover of learning, it cannot be doubted. Sir *Francis*  
*Bacon*, in his first book of the Advancement of Learning, hath proved it sufficiently.  
 His liberality I know not how to praise, because it exceeded proportion. It is said, That  
 when he gave a whole Citie to one of his servants, He, to whom it was given, did out of  
 modesty refuse it, as disproportionate to his fortune: to whom *Alexander* replied, That  
 he did not enquire what became him to accept, but the King to give: of which *Seneca*;  
*Animos*

*Animos* vox videtur & regia, cum sit tantissima. Nihil enim per se quinquam decet. Re-  
 fert quid, cui, quando, quare, ubi &c. Ipse quibus facti ratio non constabit; habebatur per-  
 sonarum & dignitatum proportio, & cum sit ubique virtus modus, aequè peccat quod exce-  
 dit, quam quod deficit; It seems a brave and Royal speech, whereas indeed it is very foolish.  
 For nothing simply considered by it self befits a man. We must regard what, to whom, when,  
 why, where, and the like; without which considerations no act can be approved. Let ha-  
 nuirs be proportioned unto the persons: for whereas vertue is ever limited by measure, the  
 excess is as faulty as the defect.

For his Person, it is very apparent, That he was as valiant as any man, a disposition ta-  
 ken by it self, not much to be admired; For I am resolved that he had ten thousand in  
 his Army as daring as himself. Surely, if adventurous natures were to be commended  
 simply, we should confound that vertue with the hardinesse of Theeves, Russians, and  
 mastiff Dogs. For certainly it is no way praise-worthy but in daring good things; and  
 in the performance of those lawfull enterprises, in which we are employed for the ser-  
 vice of our Kings and Common-weales.

If we compare this great Conquerour with other troublers of the world, who have  
 bought their glory with to great destruction and effusion of blood, I think him far inferi-  
 our to *Cesar*, & many other that lived after him, seeing he never undertook any warlike  
 Nation, the naked *Scythians* excepted; nor was ever encountered with any Army of  
 which he had not a most mastering advantage, both of Weapons & Commanders every  
 one of his Fathers old Captains by far exceeding the best of his Enemies. But it seems  
 Fortune and Destiny (if we may use those termes) had found out and prepared for him,  
 without any deffe of his own, both heaps of Men, that willingly offered their necks to  
 the yoke, and Kingdoms that invited and called in their own Conquerours. For con-  
 clusion, we will agree with *Seneca*; who speaking of *Philip* the Father, and *Alexander* the  
 Son, gives this judgement of them: *Quod non minores fuerint pestes mortalium, quam inun-*  
*datio, qua planum omne perfusum est, quam consagratio, qua magna pars animantium ex-*  
*ruit; They were no lesse plagues to mankind, than an overflow of waters, drowning all the*  
*well; or some burning drought, whereby a great part of living creatures are scorched up.*

Nat. quest. 1. 3.

## CHAP. III.

## The reign of Aridæus.

## S. I.

## Of the question about succession to Alexander.

HE death of *Alexander* left his Army (as *Demades* the Athenian then  
 compared it) in such case, as was that monstrous Giant *Polyphemus*,  
 having lost his only eye. For that which is reported in fables of that  
 great *Cyclops*, might well be verified of the *Macedonians*: their force  
 was intolerable, but for want of good guidance uneffectually, and harm-  
 full chiefly to themselves. The causes whereof (under the divine ordi-  
 nance) where partly the uncertainty of Title to succession in the Kingdom of *Mace-*  
*don*, partly the stubborn pride of *Alexander* himself, who thinking none worthy to be  
 his heir, did refuse to establish the right in any one, leaving every one to his own for-  
 tune: but especially the great ambition of his followers, who all had learned of their  
 Master to suffer no equals, a lesson soon taught unto spirits reflecting upon their own  
 worth, when the reverence of a greater object faileth.

It hath formerly been shewed, That *Philip* (the Father of *Alexander*) governing  
 in *Macedon* as Protector, assumed unto himself the Kingdom, not rendering it unto  
*Amynas*, (the Son of his elder brother *Perdiccas*) when he grew to mans estate; but  
 onely bestowing upon him in marriage a Daughter of his own: by which bond,  
 and much more by his own proper strength, hee assured the Crown unto himself:  
*Amynas* never attempting ought against *Philip*; though (with price of his life) he did  
 against

Cccc

against *Alexander* in the beginning of his reign. Wherefore *Eurydice*, the sole issue of this marriage, ought in reason to have been acknowledged Queen after *Alexander*; as having better Title thereto, than either *He* or *Philip* had, when they lived, unless (peradventure) some Law of that Nation forbade the reign of Women. But the excellent vertue of these two Princes had utterly defaced the right of all Pretenders, not claiming from their own bodies: and so great were their conquests, that *Macedon* it self was (in regard of them) a very small Appendix, and no way deserving to be laid in balance against the demand of their posterity, had they left any able to make challenge of the Royall seat.

*Alexander* having taken many wives, had issue by none of the principall of them. *Barrisane* the Daughter of *Artabazus* a Persian, had born unto him a young Son: and *Roxane* the Daughter of *Oxyartes* (whom he had more solemnly married) was left by him great with child. But the baseness of the Mothers, and contempt of the conquered Nations, was generally alleged in Barre of Plea made for them, by some that would (perhaps) have wrought out their own ends, under the name of *Alexanders* children.

*Cleopatra* a sister of *Alexander*, widow to the King of *Epirus*; and *Aridæus* his base brother (son to *Philip* by a Concubine of no account) who had married the Lady *Eurydice* before mentioned, were next in course. Of *Cleopatra* there was no speech, which may give suspicion, that either Law or Custome had made that sex incapable of the Sovereignty: *Aridæus* (besides his bastardy) was neither for person nor quality fit to rule as King; yet upon him the election fell, but slowly, and (as happeneth often) for lack of a better: when the Counsellors having over-laboured their disagreeing wits in devising what was best, were content for very weariness to take what comes next to hand.

*Ptolomy* (soon after King of *Egypt*) concurring with them who rejected all mention of the half-*Persian* brood, King *Alexanders* children, was of opinion, that the rule of all should be given to the Captains; that going for law which by the greater part of them should be decreed: so farre was he from acknowledging any one as true Heir to the Crown.

This *Ptolomy* was called the sonne of *Lagus*, but reputed of *Philip*: who having used the company of *Arfinoe* *Ptolomeys* mother, delivered her in marriage to *Lagus*, being great with child. Therefore, whether it were so that he hoped well to work his own fortune out of those dissensions, which are incident unto the consultations of many ambitious men, equall in place, forcing them at length to redeem their quiet with subjection to one, deserving regard by his blood, and trust for his even carriage; or whether he desired only to get a share to himself, which could not have come to passe, had all been given to one: plain enough it is, that he thought not on preferring *Aridæus* before himself; and therefore gave such counsell as fitted his own and other mens purposes. Yea, this device of his took place indeed, though not in form as he had propounded it; For, it was in effect all one, to have assembled at *Alexanders* empty chair, as *Ptolomy* had conceived the form of their consultations, or to set in the chair such a King as *Aridæus*, no wiser than the chair it self. Also the controversies arising were determined by the greater part of the Captains; by the greater part, if not in number, yet in puissance.

But as these counterfeit shewes of dissembling aspirers doe often take check by the plain-dealing of them who dare to go more directly to work: so was it like to have fared with *Ptolomy* and the rest, when *Arifonius* another of the Captains, interpreted the very words of *Alexander*, saying, That he left his Kingdom to the worthiest, as designing *Perdiccas*, to whom (lying at the point of death) he delivered his ring. It seemed good in reason, that *Alexander* should be disposer of his own purchases: and those tokens of *Alexanders* purpose appeared plain enough, so long as no man would interpose anothers construction: every one being uncertain how the secret affections of the rest might be inclined. Many therefore, either out of their love, or because they would not be of the latest, urged *Perdiccas* to take upon him the estate Royall. He was no stranger to the Royall blood; yet his birth gave him not such reputation, as the great favour of his dead King, with whom he had bin very inward, & that especially since the death of *Ephelion* (a powerful Minion) into whose place he was chosen. For his own worth he might well be commended, as a good man of War, and one that had given much proof of his private valour. But very surly he was: which quality (joynd with good fortune) carried a shew of Majesty:

Majesty: being checkt with misadventure, it was called by a true name, Pride; and rewarded with death.

In the present businesse a foolish over-weening did him as great harm, as it had been great happinesse to have succeeded *Alexander*. For, not content to have the acclamation of the Souldiers, approving the sentence of *Arifonius*, he would needs counterfeit modesty; thinking that every one of the Princes would have intreated him to take the weighty burden of an Empire, which would be the lesse envious, the more solemnity he used in the acceptance. It is truly said, He that feigneth himself a Sheep, may chance to be eaten by a Wolf. *Meleager*, (a man by nature envious, and bearing a particular hatred to *Perdiccas*) took advantage of his irresolute behaviour, and very bitterly envied against him. In conclusion, hee pronounced, That whosoever was Heir to the Crown, the Souldiers ought to be Heirs to the Treasure; and therefore he invited them, who were nothing slow, to share it. This disturbed all the Consultation. The Captains were left alone, farre enough from agreeing, and not able to have brought any conclusion to good effect without consent of the Souldiers, who greedy of spoyl, thronged about *Meleager*.

## S. II.

20 The Election of *Aridæus*, with the troubles there-about arising; the first division of the Empire.

During this up-roar, mention was made of *Aridæus* by some one, and entertained with good liking of many, untill at last it grew to the voyce of the Army. *Meleager* having with-drawn himself tumultuously from the company of the Lords, was glad of so fair an occasion to make himself great: therefore hee produced *Aridæus*, commended him to the Souldiers, who called him by his Fathers name *Philip*, and brought him into the Palace, investing him in *Alexanders* robes, and proclaiming him King. Many of the Nobles withstood this election, but in vain: for they could not resolve what course to follow, rejecting this. Only *Pythion*, a hot-headed man, took upon him to proclaim the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, according to the counsell which *Perdiccas* at first had given, appointing *Perdiccas* and *Leonatus* his Protectors. But the child was not yet born, which made that attempt of *Pythion* vain. Finally, *Perdiccas* with six hundred men, and *Ptolomy* with the Kings Pages, took upon them to defend the place where *Alexanders* body lay: but the Army conducted by *Meleager*, who carried the new King about whither he listed, easily brake in upon them; and enforced them to accept *Aridæus* for their Sovereign Lord. Then by the intercession of the ancient Captains, a reconciliation was propounded and admitted, but on neither side faithfully meant.

40 *Leonatus*, who was of Royall blood, a goodly Gentleman and valiant, issued out of *Babylon*, being followed by all the horse, which consisted (for the most part) of the Nobility. *Perdiccas* abode in the City (but standing upon his guard) that he might be ready to take the opportunity of any commotion that should happen among the infantry. The King (who was governed by *Meleager*) commanded, or gave leave to have *Perdiccas* made away; which attempt succeeded ill, being neither secretly carried, nor committed to sure executioners. Their coming was not unexpected: and they were by *Perdiccas* rebuked with such gravity, that they departed honeste than they came; being sorry for their bad enterprise. Upon the newes of this attempt, the Camp was in an up-roar, which the King seeking to pacifie, wanted authority, as having newly got the Crown by them, and holding it by their courtesie. The matter it self afforded no good excuses, and his indiscretion made them worse. Hee said that no harm was done, for *Perdiccas* was alive: but their exclamations were against the tyrannous enterprise, which he imputed to *Meleager*; abandoning the surest of his friends to the rage of the multitude, who were not appeased, untill the King by offering to resign his estate unto them, renewed out of their pity that favourable affection, which had moved them to set him up at the first.

*Perdiccas* having now joynd himself with *Leonatus*, kept the fields, intending to cut off all provision of victuals from the Citie. But after sundry Embassies passing between the

the King and the Nobles, (they requiring to have the Authors of sedition given up into their hands; the King, that *Meleager* might be joynted with *Leonatus* and *Perdiccas*, as a Third in government of the Army) things were compounded according to the Kings desire. *Meleager* should have done well to consider, That such men as had one day demanded his head, were not like the day following to give him a principall place among them without any new occasion offered, had not some purpose of treachery lurked under their great facility. General peace was renewed, and much love protested where little was intended. The face of the Court was the same which it had been in *Alexanders* time: so no longer now did the heart hate it life; and windy spirits they were which moved in the arteries. False reports were given out by appointment of *Perdiccas*, tending to his own disgrace, but in such termes as might seem to have proceeded from *Meleager*: who finding part of the drift, but not all, took it as an injury done to himself; and (as desirous of a true friendship) desired of *Perdiccas*, that such authors of discord might be punished. *Perdiccas* (as a lover of peace) did well approve the motion, and therefore agreed that a generall Muster should be made, at which time the disturbers of the common quiet should receive their punishment (as was the manner for Souldiers offending) in presence of the Army. The plot was mischievously layd. Had *Meleager* given way to seditious rumours, he must needs have incurred the general hatred of all, as a fower of dissention, & thereby with a publike approbation might have bin cut off, as having often offended in that kind: his Prince being too weak a Patron. Now seeking redresse of these disorders, he hastened his own ruine, by a lesse formall, but more speedy way. This kind of Muster was very solemne, and practised with many ceremonies, as for cleansing of the Army. The Horse-men, the Elephants, the Macedonian foot, the Mercenaries were each according to their quality set in array, apart from others, as if they had bin of sundry forts, met at adventure: which done, the manner was to skirmish (as by way of exercise) according to the direction of their severall Captains. But at that time the great battell of Macedonian Pikes, which they called the *Phalanx*, led by *Meleager*, was of purpose bestowed in a ground of disadvantage; and the countenance of the Horse and Elephants beginning to give charge upon them, was such, as discovered no jesting pastime nor good intent. Kings were alwayes wont to fight among the horse-men: of which custome *Perdiccas* made great use that day, to the utter confusion of his enemies. For *Aridaus* was alwayes governed by him, which for the present had him in possession. Two or three dayes before, he fought the death of *Perdiccas* at the instigation of *Meleager*: now he rides with *Perdiccas* up and down about the foot-men, commanding them to deliver unto the death all such as *Perdiccas* required. Three hundred they were who were cast unto the Elephants, and by them slain, in the presence of the King (who should have defended them) and of their affrighted companions. But these three hundred were not the men whose punishment *Meleager* had expected: they were such as had followed him, when he disturbed the first consultation that was held about the election of a new King, and some of them his especial friends. Having therefore kept himself quiet a while, as unwilling to give offence to them which had the advantage; when he saw their proceedings tend very manifestly to his destruction, he fled away into a temple, which he found no Sanctuary: for thither they sent and slew him.

The Army being thus corrected, was led into the City, where a new Councell of the Princes was held, who finding what manner of man their King was, divided all the Provinces of the Empire among themselves; leaving to *Aridaus* the office of a Visitor, and yet making *Perdiccas* his Protector, and Commander of the forces remaining with him. Then were the funerals of *Alexander* thought upon; whose body having bin seven daies neglected, was opened, and embalmed by the Egyptians: no sign of poyson appearing, how great soever the suspicion might be. The charge of his buriall was committed to *Aridaus*: one of the Captains, who was two years preparing of a great and costly shew, making a stately Chariot in which the corps was laid; many coarces of his friends being layd in the ground before that of *Alexander* was bestowed in *Alexandria*, a City of his own building, in *Egypt*.

§. III.

## §. III.

## The beginning of the Lamian Warre.

Whilest these things were in doing, or presently after, *Antipater* and *Craterus*, two principall Noble-men, and inferiour to none of *Alexanders* followers, if not greater than any of the rest, were busied in Greece with a war which the Athenians more bravely than wisely had begun in *Alexanders* life, but now did prosecute more boldly than before, upon the courage which they had taken by his death. *Alexander* not long before he died, had commanded that all the banished Greeks (few excepted) should be restored unto their former places. He knew the factious quality of the Grecian Estates, & therefore thought so to provide, that in every City he would have a fire party. But it fell out otherwise: For he lost the hearts of many more than he won by this proud injunction. His pleasure indeed was fulfilled; yet not without great murmuring of the whole Nation, as being against all order of Law, and a beginning of open tyranny. The Athenians greatly decayed in estate, but retaining more than was needfull of their ancient spirits, forbade the execution of this decree in their Dominions; so did also the *Ætolians*, who were valiant men, and inhabited a Region well fortified by nature: yet neither of them took Armes, but seemed to bear themselves, as men that had done no more than they might well justify by reason: neverthelesse to prevent the worst, the Athenians gave secret instructions to *Leophanes*, a Captain of theirs, willing him to levie an Army, but in his own name, and to keep it in a readinesse for their use. This was no hard thing for *Leophanes* to doe: great numbers of Greek Souldiers being lately returned from the Asian War in poor estate, as defrauded of their pay by the Captaines. Of these he had gathered up eight thousand, when the certain newes were brought of *Alexanders* death: at which the City of Athens declared it self, and more honourably than wisely, proclaimed open War against the Macedonians for the liberty of Greece. Hereupon *Leophanes* drew in the *Ætolians* and some other Estates, gave battell to the *Bæotians*, who sided with *Antipater*, and overthrew them; growing so fast in reputation, and so strong in adherents, that *Antipater* (arming in all haste, yet suspecting his own strength) was faine to send into Asia to *Craterus* for succour.

Nothing is more vain than the feares and hopes of men, shunning or pursuing their destinies a farre off, which deceive all mortall wisdom, even when they seem near at hand. One moneth was scarcely past, since nothing so heavily burthened the thoughts of *Antipater* as the return of *Craterus* into Macedon; which he then feared as death; but now desired as the most likely assurance of his life. *Craterus*, whom *Alexander* held as of all men the most assured unto him, was sent into Macedon to convey home the old Souldiers (that was the pretence) & to succed *Antipater* in the government of Macedon and Greece. The suspicions were strong that he had a privie charge to put *Antipater* to death: neither did that which was commonly published sound much better; which was, That *Antipater* should be sent unto the King, as Captain of the young Souldiers, newly to be levied in Europe. For *Alexander* was much incensed against him by his Mother *Olympias*: and would sometimes give out speeches, testifying his own jealousie and hatred of him; but yet he strove to smother it, which in a cruell Prince betokeneth little good. Few of *Alexanders* Lieutenants had escaped with life: most of them indeed were mean persons in regard of those who followed him in his Indian expedition, and were therefore (perhaps) removed to make place for their betters. But if the Kings rigour was such, as could find rebellious purposes (for so hee interpreted even lewd government) in base persons; little might *Antipater* hope for, who having sitten Vice-roy ten years in the strongest part of the Empire, was called away to the presence of so fell a Master, and the envie of a Court, wherein they had been his inferiours, which would now repine to see him their equall. Therefore whether his fear drew him to prevention, working first the Kings death by poyson, given by his son *Iolais*, *Alexanders* Cup-bearer; or whether it brake not forth untill opportunity had changed it into the passion of revenge, which was cruelly performed by his son *Cassander*: great cause of much fear he had; which I note in this place, as the ground of effects to be produced in very few years.

At the present *Craterus* was sent for, and all the Captaines of companies lying near,  
Cccc 3 solicited

solicited to make haste, Not without cause: For in *Macedon* there could not at that time be raised more than thirteen thousand foot, and six hundred horse, which *Muster* was of raw Souldiers, all the force of the Country being emptied into *Asia*. The *Theſſalians* indeed who had long stood firm for *Philip* & *Alexander*, who also were the best horsemen of *Greece*, furnished him with very brave troops, that might have done great service, had their faith held out, which they changed for the liberty of *Greece*. With these forces did *Antipater* in 1 besily try the fortune of a battell with *Leofthenes*, rather (as may seem) fearing the increase of his enemies power, and rebellion of the *Greeks*, than they not check at the first) than presuming on his strength. For *Leofthenes* had of *Athenians*, *Ætolians*, and Mercenaries, two and twenty thousand foot, besides the assistance of many petty Signories, and of some *Illyrians* and *Thracians*: of horse he brought into the field about two thousand and five hundred; but over-strong he was that way also, when once the *Theſſalians* had revolted unto him. So *Antipater* lost the day; and his losse was such, that he neither was able to keep the field, nor to make a safe retreat into his own Country: therefore he fled into the Town of *Lamia*, which was well fortified, and well provided of all things necessary to bear out a siege. Thither did *Leofthenes* follow him, present him battell again, and upon refusal close up the Town with earth-works, and a wall. There will we leave him for a while, travelling in the last honourable enterprise that ever was undertaken by that great City of *Athens*.

## s. IV.

How *Perdiccas* employed his Army.

**K**ing *Aridans* living under the rule of *Perdiccas*, when all the Princes were gone each to his own Province, kept a naked Court: all his greatness consisting in a bare title, supported by the strength of his Protector, who cared not for him otherwise than to make use of him. *Perdiccas* had no Province of his own peculiar, neither was he like to be welcome to any whom he should visit in his government. A stronger Army that any of the rest he had, which he might easily hope in that unsettled condition of things to make better worth to him than many Provinces could have bin. The better to accomplish his desires, he closely sought the marriage of *Cleopatra*, the sister of *Alexander*; yet about the same time he either married *Nicæa* the daughter of *Antipater*, or made such love to her as blinded their eyes, who did not somewhat narrowly search into his doings.

*Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian*, the second of that name, and tenth king of that Country, had continued faithfull to the *Persian* Empire as long as it stood: following the example of his forefathers, even from *Pharnaces* the first that reigned in *Cappadocia*, who married *Atossa* sister to the great *Cyrus*. Some of his Ancestors had (indeed) been oppressed by the *Persian*: but what Fortune took from them at one time, Virtue restored at another, and their faithfull Princes had much encreased all. But now in the fatal Period of so great an Empire, with much wisdom, and (*Darius* being slain) with sufficient honour, he might have acknowledged the *Macedonian* in the *Persians* room. This he did not; neither did *Alexander* call him to account, being occupied with great cares. But *Perdiccas*, who had no greater business wherein to entertain his Army, found it expedient both for the honour of the Empire, to take that in-land Kingdome, surrounded with Provinces of the *Macedonian* conquest, and for his own particular, to have one opportune place of sure retreat, under the government of a stedfast friend. Therefore he entred *Cappadocia*, fought with *Ariarathes*, who drew into the field thirty thousand foot, and fifteen thousand horse (a strong Army, had it not encountered a stronger, and better trained) won the victory, and thereby the whole Kingdome. But with much cruelty did he use the victory: for having taken *Ariarathes* prisoner, with many others, he crucified him, and as many of his Kindred as he could light upon; and so delivered that Province to *Eumenes*, whom of all men living he trusted most.

Another part of his forces he had committed to *Pythion*, rather as to the most honourable of such as remained about him, than as to the most assured. *Pythion* was to subdue the *Greeks* rebelling in the high Countries of *Asia*. About twenty thousand foot, and three thousand horse they were, (all old Souldiers) who, planted in Colonies by *Alexander*, to bridle the barbarous nations, were soon weary of their unpleasant habitations, & the rude people

people, among whom they lived: and therefore took advantage of the present troubles to seek unto themselves a better fortune. Against these *Pythion* went, more desirous to make them his own, than to destroy them: which intent of his, *Perdiccas* discovering, did both give him in charge to put all those Rebels to the sword, giving the spoyles of them to his Souldiers, and further enjoined it unto *Pythion's* Captaines (his own creatures) that they should see this commandment executed. These directions for use of the victory, might have proved needlesse; so uncertain was the victory it self. A Captain of the Rebels commanding over three thousand, corrupted by *Pythion*, did in the heat of the fight (which was very doubtfull) retire without necessity to a hill not farre off, 10 This dismayed the rest, and gave the day to *Pythion*: who being far enough from *Perdiccas*, offered composition to the vanquished, granting unto them their lives and liberty, under condition of laying down their armes; and hereupon he gave them his faith. Being master of these Companies, he might well have a good opinion of his own power: all power being then valued by strength in followers, when as none could vaunt himself as free Lord of any Territory. He had thirteen thousand foot, and eight thousand eight hundred horse, besides these new Companions, whom needlesse fear without great losse had caused to leave the field: but in true estimation all the greatness whereof *Pythion* might think himself assured, was (and soon appeared to be) inherent in *Perdiccas*. For by his command were ten thousand foot, and eight thousand horse, of those which followed *Pythion*, levied; the Rulers of the Provinces carefully obeying the letters of *Perdiccas*, by which they were enjoined to give assistance to that business: and by vertue of the precept given unto them by *Perdiccas*, did the *Macedonians* cut in pieces all those poor men who had yielded themselves; leaving *Pythion* as naked as he came forth to return unto his great Master.

Now was *Perdiccas* mighty above the mighty, and had fair leisure to pursue his hopes of marriage with *Cleopatra*, and thereby to make himself Lord of all: but this must be secretly carryed for fear of opposition. How it succeeded, will appear when the *Lamian* War taketh ending.

## s. V.

The proceſſe of the *Lamian* War.

**W**e left *Antipater* hardly besieged, wanting means to free himself without succours from his friends in *Asia*. Those helps not appearing so soon as he expected, he came to parley with *Leofthenes*, and would have yielded unto any termes of reason, wherewith men possessed with hope of victory, do seldom limit their desires. *Leofthenes* willed him without further circumstance to submit himself to discretion. This was too much for him that had once commanded over them, who now required of him such a dishonourable composition. Wherefore knowing that the extreme, from which as yet he was farre enough, could bring no worse with it, *Antipater* prepared for the defence; and the other for winning the Town, which felt great want of victuals.

In this lingering War the *Ætolians* (whether weary of sitting still at a siege, or having business which they pretended at home) took their leave, and returned into their own Country. Their departure left the trenches so thinly manned, that *Antipater* found means to fallly out upon his enemies to their great losse: for many were slain, and *Leofthenes* himself among them, ere he could be repulld into the Town. Yet hereby the *Macedonians* were nothing relieved, their victuals wasted, and they were not strong enough to deal with the *Greeks* in open fight. *Craterus* was long in coming. *Lysimachus*, who was nearest at hand in *Thrace*, had work too much of his own, leading no more than four thousand foot, and two thousand horse, against *Senthas* the *Thracian* King, who brought into the field above four times that number; and though *Lysimachus*, not without losse had gotten one victory, yet the enemy abounding in multitude, felt not the blow so much as might abate his courage. Therefore *Leonatus* was earnestly solicited by *Antipater's* friends, to make all haste to the rescue. He had the government of *Phrygia* the lesse, and was able to raise an Army of more than twenty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse, whether levied out of his province, or appointed unto him out of the main Army, it is uncertain. Certain it is, that he was more willing

ling to take in hand the journey into Greece, than Antipater was to have him come. For Cleopatra had written unto him, desiring his presence at Pella, the chief Citie of Macedonia, and very kindly offering her self to be his wife; which letters he kept not so close as had bin requisite, and therefore brought himself into great suspicion, that soon ended with his life. Antipater, chosen General by the Athenians in place of Leophanes, hearing of his approach, forsook the siege of Lamia, and took the ready way to these great Conquerors of Asia, with purpose to give them an evill welcome home, before Antipater and they should joyn in one. He had ( notwithstanding the departure of the Etolians ) the advantage of Leonatus in horse, by the odds of 2000. Thessalians; in other things he was equal with him; in cause he thought himself Superiour; in the fortune of that day he proved so: for he won a great victory ( chiefly by vertue of the Thessalians ) which day he proved the greater by the end of Leonatus himself; who fighting valiantly, was disappeared among the Indians, but it waited for him at home, not far from the place of his nativity. He was the first of Alexanders Captaines which dyed in battell, but all, or most of the rest shall follow him the same way. After this day, the Athenians did never any thing suitable to their ancient glory.

The vanquished Macedonians were too weak to renew the fight, and too proud to flee. They betook themselves to high grounds, unfit for service on horse-back, and so abode in the sight of the enemy that day; the day following Antipater with his men came into their Camp, and took the charge of all. The Athenians perceiving their strength to be at the greatest, and fearing lest that of the enemy should increase, did earnestly seek to determine the matter quickly by another battell. But still Antipater kept himself on ground of advantage, which gave more than reasonable confidence to the Greeks, many of whom departed to their homes, accounting the enemy to be vanquished. This wretchedness ( incorrigible in an Army of voluntaries ) was very inexcusable; seeing that the victories by Land were very much defaced by losses at Sea, where the Athenians, labouring to have made themselves once again Masters, were put to the worst.

But now the fatal captivity of Greece came on, of which she never could be delivered unto this day. Craterus with a strong Army having made great marches from Cilicia, passed over into Europe, and coming into Thessaly, joyned himself with Antipater. The forces of Leonatus, Antipater, and Craterus being joyned in one, contained forty thousand weightily armed, three thousand light-armed men, and five thousand horse; of which numbers the Greeks wanted a thousand and five hundred in horse; in foot, eighteen thousand. Carefully therefore did Antipater labour to avoyd the necessity of a battell, untill such time as the Towns confederate should return unto the Camp those bands which had straggled from it. But those companies were so slow in coming, and Antipater so urgent upon the Greeks, that compelled they were to put the matter in hazard without further attendance. Like enough it is, that with a little more help they had carried away the victory: for the Thessalians had the upper hand, and held it, untill such time as they perceived their battells ( over-laid with multitude ) retire unto the higher ground, which caused them also to fall back. So the Macedonians became Lords of the field, having little else to boast of, considering that with the loss of an hundred & thirty men, they had only purchased the death of some five hundred enemies. Yet hereof was great use made: For the Greeks, as not subject unto the full command of one General, and being every one desirous to preserve his own estate and City, concluded to make a treaty of peace with Antipater; who being a subtle Artificer, and well understanding their aptness to division, refused to hearken to any generall composition, but willed every city to deal apart for it self. The intent of his device was so apparent, that it was rejected; the Greeks choosing rather to abide the coming of their assistants, whose unreasonable carelessness betrayed the cause. Antipater and Craterus besieging and winning some Towns in Thessaly, which the Army of the Confederates wanted means and courage to relieve, wearied that Nation from attending any longer upon other mens unlikely hopes, with their own assured and present calamity.

of the peace granted to Athens by Antipater. of Demosthenes his death.

The Thessalians falling off, all the rest soon followed severally, and sued for peace; the gentle conditions given to the most forward, inviting such as were slack. Only the Athenians and Etolians held out. Little favour could they hope for, having been Authors of this tumult: and their fear was not great; the fear of the war being far from them. But the celerity of Antipater confounded all their imaginations; who sat still at Athens, devising upon courses of prosecuting the War to come, which came to their doors before their consultation could find issue. He was ready to enter upon their Frontiers; they had no ability to resist, and were as heartlesse as friendlesse. All that remained was to send Embassadors, desiring peace upon some good termes: necessity enforcing them to have accepted even the very worst. Phocion, with Demades the Orator, and Xenocrates the Philosopher, were chief of this Embassy; Phocion, as the most honourable; Demades, a strong perswader ( both of them well respected by Antipater ); and Xenocrates, as one admired for wisdom, gravity of manners, and vertue; but all these ornaments consisting in speculation, and therefore of lesse regard, when their duration was to cost them much in real effects.

Antipater calling to mind the pride of Leophanes, required of the Athenians, that they should wholly submit themselves to his pleasure; which being ( perforce ) granted, he commanded them to defray the charges of the War past, to pay a fine, and entertain a Garrison. Further, he abrogated the popular estate, committing the government of the City to those of most wealth, depriving of the right of suffrage all such as wanted a convenient proportion of riches.

About nine thousand they were; all men of good substance, to whom the administration of the Common-wealth was given; a number great enough to retain the name and form of a Democratic. But the rascall multitude of beggarly persons, accustomed to get their livings out of the common troubles, being now debarred from bearing offices and giving their voyces, cried out, that this was a meer Oligarchie, the violent usurpation of a few encroaching upon the publick right. These turbulent fellows ( of whom King Philip had been wont to say, That war to them was peace, and peace war ) Antipater planted in Thrace, and gave them lands to manure; leaving as few of them as he could to molest the quiet of Athens.

To the same end ( yet withall for satisfying his own suspicions and hatred ) he caused Demosthenes and Hyperides, famous Orators, with some others, to be slain. Had the death of these two, especially of Demosthenes, been forborn, the rest of his proceedings in this action might well have passed for very milde: whereas now, all such as either are delighted with the Orations of Demosthenes, or have surrendered their judgements to Authors justly admiring him, as the most eloquent of all that ever did speak and write, condemn him utterly, calling him a bloody tyrant. Such grace and reputation doe the learned arts find in all civill Nations, that the evill done to a man, famous in one of them, is able to blemish any action, how good soever otherwise it be, or honourably carried.

Demosthenes had taken Sanctuary in the Temple of Neptune, in the Isle of Calauria; there did Archias ( sent with Souldiers by Antipater for the purpose ) find him, and gently perswaded him to leave the place; but not so prevailing, he threatened violence. Then Demosthenes entreating a little respite, as it had been to write somewhat, secretly took poison, which he had kept for such a necessity, and so died; rather choosing to doe the last execution upon himself, than to fall into the hands of such as hated him. Only this act of his ( commendable perhaps in a Heathen man ) argued some valour in him; who was otherwise too much a coward in battell, howsoever valiant in perswading to enterprises, wherein the way to very honourable ends was to be made through passages exceeding dangerous. He loved money well, and had great summes given him by the Persians, to encourage him, in finding work for the Macedonians at home. Neither did he ill ( me thinks ) in taking from the Persians which loved not his Countrey, great reward, for speaking such things as tended to his Countreys good; which he did not cease

cease to procure, when the *Perſians* were no longer able to give him recompence. Such as in tender contemplation of his death can endure no honourable, though true, mention of *Antipater*, may (if they can) belevee *Lucian*, who tells us, That it was *Antipaters* purpose to have done him great honour. Sure it is, that he was a steadfast enemy to the *Macedonians*; therefore discretion required that he should be cut off.

The matters of *Athens* being thus ordered, the chief command was left in the hands of *Phocion*, a virtuous man, and lover of his Country, yet applying himself to the necessity of the times; by which commendations he had both at other times done the City much good, and now procured this peace, which (though grievous to free-men, yet favourable to the vanquished) he endeavoured carefully to preserve.

## §. VII.

*How Craterus and Antipater were drawn from their Etolian wars into Asia. The grounds of the first civill war between the Macedonian Lords.*

**S**O *Antipater* with *Craterus* returned into *Macedonia*, where they strengthened their friendship with a new alliance; *Craterus* taking *Philæ*, the Daughter of *Antipater*, to Wife.

Shortly after they went against the *Etolians*, whose povertie was not so easily daunted, as the luxurious wealth of the more powerfull State of *Athens* had bin. Their Country was rough and mountainous, having many places of great fastness, into which they conveyed such of their goods as they most esteemed, and of their people, as were least fit for war: with the rest they fortified the strongest of their Cities, and so abode the coming of the *Macedonians*, whom they manfully resisted. With great obstinacie did the *Macedonians* contend against the difficulties of the places, which the *Etolians* made good as long as their vituals held out. But when *Craterus* had shut up all passages, and utterly debarred them of relief, then were they put to a miserable choice; either to descend from their strong holds, and fight upon equal ground, with unequal numbers, or to endure the miseries of hunger and cold, against which they could make no long resistance; or to yeeld themselves to the *Macedonians*, who, incensed by the losse of many good Souldiers, were not like to leave so stubborn enemies in places which might give confidence to rebellion. In cases of extremitee, much fineness of wit apprehending all circumstances of danger, commonly doth more hurt than a blunt consideration of that only, which at the present is in hand. These *Etolians* did not as yet want meat: but their enemies daily molested them: wherefore as yet they thought upon nothing but fighting. Fortune was gracious to their courage. For such newes came out of *Asia* into the *Macedonian* Camp, as made *Antipater* and *Craterus* think every hour a moneth, till they had rid their hands of these *Etolians*, giving them whatsoever conditions they would ask: yet with purpose to call them to severe account; yea, to root them out of *Greece* by death, or by captivity, when once they should have settled the affairs of *Asia*, as they hoped and desired. But of mens purposes God is disposer: in whose high counsell it was ordained, that this poor Nation should continue a troublesome bar to the proceedings of *Macedon* and *Greece*, and (when time had ripened the next Monarchie) an open gate to let the *Roman* Conquerors into those and other Provinces. Likewise concerning the matters of *Asia*, the reformation intended by *Antipater* and *Craterus*, was so far from taking effect, that it served merely as an introduction to all the civill wars ensuing.

The grounds of the *Asiaticque* expedition, which did set the world in an uproar, were these. *Antipater* and *Craterus* were of *Alexanders* Captains the mightiest in reputation: The one, in regard of his ancient precedencie, and the present rule which he bare in the parts of *Europe*. The other, as of all men the best beloved, and most respected, both of *Alexander* and of the whole Army. Next unto these had *Perdiccas* been; whom the advantage of his presence at the Kings death did make equal, or superiour, to either of these, if not to both together. The first intents of *Perdiccas* were, to have comforted with these two, and to have been with them a third partner in the government of all; to which purpose hee entertained the discourse of marriage with one of *Antipaters* Daughters. But feeling in short space the strength of that gale of wind which bore him up, he began to take wing and soar quite another way. *Aridaus* was a very simple man,

yet served well enough to wear the title of that Majestic, whereof *Perdiccas* being Administrator, and hoping to become proprietary, the practice was more severe than had been in the dayes of *Alexander*: the desire to seem terrible, being very familiar with weak Princes, and their ambitious officers, who know no other means of preserving themselves from contempt, and of giving such a fiery lustre to their actions, as may dazzle the eyes of the beholders. How cruelly the poor *Greeks* in the higher *Asia* were all put to the sword; and how tyrannously the King and Princes of *Cappadocia* were crucified, hath already been shewed. The *Pisidians* were the next who felt the wrath of these counterfeite *Alexanders*. One City of theirs was utterly razed; the children sold for slaves, and all the rest massacred. The *Isaurians* by this example grown desperate, when after two or three dayes triall they found themselves unable to continue the defence, lockt themselves into their houses, and set the Town on fire, into the flame whereof the young men did throw themselves, after that they had a while repelled the *Macedonians* from the walls.

These exploits being performed, the Army had no other work than to sift the ashes of the burnt City for gold and silver; but *Perdiccas* had business of greater importance troubling his brains. Nothing was more contrary to his ends, than to sit still without employment, letting his Souldiers grow idle about him, whilst others grew great, and took deep root in their severall Provinces. He purposed therefore to transport his forces into *Europe*, under pretence of bringing the King into *Macedonia*, the seat of his Ancestors, and head of the Empire. The Kings presence would make the Offices of his Vice-Royes (during the time) actually voyd; *Antipater* with *Craterus* being once in case of private men, and only *Perdiccas* holding authority, the match with *Cleopatra* might easily be made. So should greatness meet with a good title; and what more could be wished? Some impediment the power of *Ptolomy* might give, who held *Egypt* well fortified with men, but much better with love of the people; yet if the business prospered in *Macedonia*, like enough it was that either *Ptolomy* would follow of himself, or be driven to come to reason. *Antigonus* likewise then governing in *Phrygia*, a buſie-headed man, and ill affected to the side, was to be looked into and made away, for fear of further trouble. So thought *Perdiccas*, and was deceived in so thinking. *Antigonus* was as good a man of War, as of deep judgement, as high a spirit, and as great undertaking, as any of *Alexanders* Captains. His employments had been lesse than some of theirs, which made him also the lesse respected. But his thoughts were as proud as theirs: for he valued himself by his own worth; not by the opinions of other men; with carefull attention had hee watched *Perdiccas*, and sounded the depth of his purposes, which it was now high time to discover. For *Perdiccas* having with a jealous eye pryed into the demeanour of *Antigonus*, and finding him no way fit for his turn, caused him to be charged with such accusations, as might suffice to take away his life, especially by a Judge that sought his death. This device *Antigonus* would not seem to perceive, but prepared himself in shew to make answer, indeed, to make escape; which easily he did, putting himself and his Son *Demetrius* aboard of some *Athenian* Gallies, that carried him to *Antipater*, laden with such tidings as finished the *Etolian* War before mentioned.

As the coming of *Antigonus* made *Craterus* and *Antipater* manifestly perceive their own danger: so his sight gave *Perdiccas* to understand that his intentions were layd open, and must now be justified by the sword. Therefore he prepared as fast as he could, not only for defence, but (as having on his side the Kings name) to meet with them at home, who were nothing slack in providing to encounter him. *Ptolomy* being advertised of these proceedings, and considering how neerly they concerned him, sided with *Antipater*. To his government of *Egypt* he had annexed the Dominion of *Cyrene*, not without consent of the chiefe Citizens; and now in the midst of these garboyles he celebrated the funeral of *Alexander* with great solemnity, purchasing thereby to himself much good will and many partakers, notwithstanding the terrible report of the Kings Army coming against him.

## §. VIII.



## 6. VIII.

## Perdiccas his voyage into Egypt, and his death.

**P**erdiccas, uncertain which way to bend his main power, at length resolved to set upon Ptolemy; leaving Eumenes to keep to his use, against Craterus and Antipater, the parts of Asia bordering upon Europe.

It may seem strange, that he did not rather make head against those who were to come out of Greece with a great number, and of more able men than Ptolemy could bring. Perhaps he thought to make a quick end with Ptolemy; or believed that Craterus would not be ready for him soon enough. Sure it is that he took a bad course, and made it worse with ill handling.

Ptolemy by his sweet behaviour allured many to his party, without help of any bad arts. Perdiccas contrariwise was full of insolence, which never failed to be rewarded with hatred; that is truly defined, An affection founded upon opinion of an unjust contempt. The whole storie of his proceedings in Egypt is not worth relation: for he did nothing of importance, but (as a wilful man) tired his followers, and wasted them in hard enterprises without successe. His most forceable attempt was upon a little Town, called the *Camels Walk*: thither he marched by night, with more haste than good speed; for Ptolemy preventing him, did put himself into the place, where behaving himself not only as a good Commander, but as a stout Souldier, he gave the foil to Perdiccas, causing him to retire with losse, after a vehement, but vain, assault continued one whole day. The night following, Perdiccas made another journey, (which was his last) and came to the divisions of *Nilus*, over against *Memphis*. There with much difficultie he began to passe over his Armie into an Island, where he meant to incamp. The current was strong, the water deep, and hardly foordable. Wherefore he placed his Elephants above the passage, to break the violence of the stream, and his horse-men beneath it, to take up such as were carried away by swiftnesse of water. A great part of his Armie being arrived on the further bank, the channell began to wax deep, so that whereas the former companies had waded up to the chin, they who should have followed could find no footing. Whether this came by the rising of the water, or flitting away of the ground; (the earth being broken with the feet of so many Men, Horse, & Elephants) no remedy there was, but such as had passed must repasse again, as well as they might: for they were too weak for the enemy, and could not be relieved by their fellows. With great confusion therefore they committed themselves to the river, wherein above two thousand of them perished, a thousand were devoured by Crocodiles, a miserable spectacle even to such as were out of danger; such as were strong and could swim, recovered the Camp, many were carried down the stream, and driven to the contrary bank, whereby they fell into the hands of their enemies.

This misfortune exasperated the Souldiers against their Generall, giving libertie to their tongues, which long time had concealed the evil thoughts of their hearts. While they were thus murmuring, newes came from Ptolemy, which did set them in an uproar. Ptolemy had not only shewed much compassion on those who fell into his hands alive, but performed all rights of funerall to the dead carcases, which the river had cast upon his side: and finally, sent their bones and ashes to be interred by their Kinsmen or Friends. This did not only move the common Souldiers, but made the Captains fall to mutinie, thinking it unreasonable to make warre upon so vertuous and honourable a person; to fulfill the pleasure of a Lordly ambitious man, using them like slaves. The sedition growing strong, wanted only a head, which it quickly found. *Pytho* was there, who inwardly hated Perdiccas, for the disgrace which he had suffered by his procurement, after the victorie upon the rebellious *Greeks*. *Pytho* had lived in honourable place about *Alexander*; he was in the division of the Provinces made Governour of *Media*, he had followed Perdiccas, and being in all things (the Protectorship excepted) equall to him, had neverthelesse been scornfully used by him, which now he requited. Drawing together a hundred of the Captains, and a good part of the Horse, which consisted of the Gentrie, (the footmen having declared themselves before) he entered the Tent of Perdiccas, where without further circumstance they all ranne upon him, and slew him. Such end had the proud misgoverning authoritie of Perdiccas. Hee might have lived

as great as any, could he have suffered any as great as himself; yea, peradventure master of all, had he not been too masterly over those which were already his.

The next day Ptolemy came into the Camp, where he was joyfully received; he excused himself of things past, as not having been Author, or given cause of the warre, and was easily believed: the favour of the Armie being such toward him, that needs they would have made him Protector in the room of Perdiccas. But this hee refused. It was an Office fit for one that would seek to increase his greatnesse with his trouble. Ptolemy was well enough already; wherefore, for his own quiet he forbore to accept it, and for their well-deserving of him, he procured that honourable charge to *Pytho*, and to *Arideus* the Captain, who having had some companies of Souldiers, to furnish with their attendance the solemnities of *Alexanders* Funerals, did with them adhere to him against Perdiccas.

In the midst of these busineses came news of two great victories obtained by Eumenes; which newes, had they arrived two or three dayes sooner, had been entertained with joyfull acclamations; and would have given such reputation to Perdiccas, as had caused both his private maligners to continue his open flatterers, and his open enemies to have accepted any tolerable composition. But these good tidings coming in ill time, when death had stopped the ears which would have given them welcome, found bad acceptance, as shall be shewed hereafter.

## 9. IX.

## Victories of Eumenes in the lower Asia.

**B**efore we proceed in the relation of things happening about the person of the King, it is meet that we speak of those busineses in the lower Asia, which were handled by Eumenes with notable dexterity, whilst Perdiccas was occupied in the Egyptian Wars. *Alcetas* the brother of Perdiccas, and Neoptolemus, had received command from Perdiccas to be assistant to Eumenes, and to follow his directions. But *Alcetas* made flat answer that he would not; alleging the backwardnesse of his men to bear Arms against so great a person as Antipater, and a man so much honoured as Craterus. Neoptolemus was content to make fair shew, but inwardly he repined at the precedence given to Eumenes, as thinking himself the better man. Eumenes discovering through the counterfeited looks of Neoptolemus, the mischief lurking in his heart, wisely dissembled with him, in hope to win him by gentle behaviour, and sweet language, that commonly are lost, when bestowed upon arrogant creatures. Yet the better to fortifie himself, that he might stand upon his own strength, he raised out of the Countries under his jurisdiction, about six thousand horse, giving many privileges to such as were serviceable, and training them well up. Not without great need. For when upon advertisement of the great preparations made by Craterus and Antipater (who had newly passed the *Helle-spont*) for the invasion of his Provinces, he willed Neoptolemus to come to him with all his power; Neoptolemus did (indeed) advance, but in hostile manner, though unprovoked, presented him battell. Neoptolemus had secretly covenanted with Antipater to lay open the way for him to the conquest of Asia, which now intending to perform, hee was shamefully disappointed. For though his footmen, being all Macedonians, had much the better, and prevailed far upon Eumenes his battels; yet were his horse driven out of the field, and himself compelled, with a few of them, to run away, leaving naked the backs of his Macedonian foot-men to be charged by Eumenes, who forced them in such wise, that casting down their Pikes, they cried for mercy, and gladly took their oath to doe him faithfull service. Antipater and Craterus endeavoured with many goodly promises to draw Eumenes into their society, who contrariwise offered himself as a mean of reconciliation, between Perdiccas and Craterus, whom he dearly loved; professing withall his hatred to Antipater, and constant faith to the cause which he had undertaken to maintain.

Whilst these negotiations were on foot, Neoptolemus came with his broken crue to Antipater, and his Associates, vilifying Eumenes, & calling him a Scribe (at which foolishly railing they laugh) but extolling the vertue of Craterus (as well he might) with high commendations; assuring them, that if Craterus did but once appear, or that his voyce were but heard by any Macedonian in Eumenes his Camp, the victory was wonne; for

they would all forth-with revolt unto him. Earnestly therefore he desired them to give him aid against *Eumenes*, and especially requested that *Craterus* might have the leading of the Army to be sent. Their own affections did easily lead them to condescend to his motion: and good hope there was, that the reputation of *Craterus* might prevail as much as the force which he drew along. For he had in the midst of *Alexanders* vanities, when others (imitating their King) betook themselves to the *Persian* fashions of garments and customs, retained the ancient *Macedonian* form of behaviour, and apparel, whereby he became very gracious with the common Souldiers, who beheld these new tricks of *Asia* with discontented eyes, as reproachfull and derogatory to the manners of their native Country. So *Antipater* took the way toward *Cilicia*, to hold *Perdiccas* at bay, and to joyn with *Ptolemy*: *Craterus* used great celerity, to have taken *Eumenes* revelling (as hee hoped) according to the common fashion of Captains, after a great victory. But he had a wary and well-advised enemy to encounter, who kept good espial upon him, and with much wisdom fore-saw all that was to be feared, and the means of prevention, which his courage did not fail to execute. *Eumenes* was not ignorant that *Craterus* was able to defeat him without battell, yea without stroke; him therefore he feared more than the Army following him: (yet the Army following him was such, as much exceeded his own in foot-men, but was inferior in horse-men) and thought it more uneasy to keep the *Macedonians* from revolting to him, than from knowing him. Hereupon he took in hand a strange piece of work, which desperation of all courtesie taught him, and wife managing prosperously accomplished. He gave out reports, that *Neoptolemus* was returned with such company as he could gather together, & had gotten *Pigres* (a Captain of no great estimation, who lay not far off) to joyn with him. Having animated his men against *Neoptolemus*, whom he knew to be despised & hated among them, (as having bin vanquished by some of them, and forsaken others in plain field, whilst they valiantly fought in his quarrel) he took great care to keep them from receiving any intelligence of the enemies matters. Peremptorily he commanded that no messenger nor trumpet should be admitted; & not herewith satisfied, he placed against *Craterus* no one *Macedonian*, nor any other that much would have regarded him had he bin known: but *Thracians*, *Cappadocians* and *Persians*, under the leading of such, as thought more highly of none, than of *Perdiccas* and himself. To these also he gave in charge, that without speaking or hearkning to any word, they should run upon the enemy; and give him no leisure to lay, or do any thing but fight. The directions which he gave to others, he did not fail to execute in his own person: but placing himself in the right wing of his battell, opposite to *Neoptolemus*, who (as he understood) conducted the left wing on the contrary side, he held the *Macedonians* arranged in good order, and ready to charge the enemy as soon as the distance would give leave. A rising piece of ground lay between them, which having ascended, the Armies discovered each other: but that of *Eumenes* every way prepared for the fight, the other wearied with long journeys, which over-hastily they had made, seeking the deceitfull issue of frivolous hopes. Then was it high time for *Craterus* (having failed in surprising them as enemies) to discover himself to his old friends, and fellow souldiers, of whom he could see none. *Phenix* a *Tenidian*, & *Artabazus* a *Persian*, had the leading of that side, who mindfull of their instructions, began to give upon him, with such countenance as told him his error; which to redeem, he bad his men fight, and redeem the day, and take the spoyle to themselves; but the Bear whose skin he felt, is not yet caught. The ground whereon the battell was fought gave most advantage to the horse, who encountered very roughly on all parts: especially about *Eumenes* and *Neoptolemus*, who as soon as they had discovered one another, could not contain themselves, but with great rage met body to body, & letting loose their bridles, grappled so violently together, that their horses ran from under them, leaving both of them tumbling on the ground. *Neoptolemus* rose first up, but *Eumenes* had his sword first drawn, wherewith he houghed the other, causing him to fall down & fight upon one knee. In this conflict they received many wounds, but *Neoptolemus* giving slight ones, took such as were deadly, by which he dyed in the place, and was there (being half-dead, half-alive) stripped by his mortal enemy, whose revilings he requited, lying even at the last gasp, with one wound in the groin, dangerous had it not wanted force. The death of *Neoptolemus* caused his followers to run away upon the spur, and seek shelter behind the battells of their foot. They were nothing hotly pursued. For *Eumenes* pained himself to carry succour

succour to his left wing, which he suspected much to be distressed; but found accompanied with the same fortune, that had assisted him when he fought in person. *Craterus* had gallantly borne himself a while, and sustained the impression of *Artabazus* and *Phenix* with more courage than force; holding it nothing agreeable with his honour to retire and portend the fight, when he was charged by men of little estimation or note. Otherwise it is not unlikely, that he might have either carried the day, or preserved himself to a better adventure by giving ground, as the rest (when he and *Neoptolemus* were slain) did. But whilst he fought to preserve his reputation, he lost his life by the fall of his horse, or his falling from his horse, through force of a wound received, upon which accident he was trampled under foot by many that knew him not, and so perished unknown, till it was too late to know it. *Eumenes* coming to the place where he lay, made great lamentation, as having alwaies loved and honoured *Craterus*, of whose death he was now become the instrument. The vanquished Army entertained a treaty of peace with *Eumenes*, making shew of willingness to become his followers; but their intent was only to refresh themselves, which (by his permission) having done, they stole away by night, and fled toward *Antipater*.

This battell fought within ten dayes of the former, wan to *Eumenes* more reputation than good will: for his own Souldiers took the death of *Craterus* heavily; and the Armies lying further off were enraged with the news. But other matters there were which incensed men against him, besides the death of *Craterus*, whereof it manifestly appeared, that he was as sorry as any that pretended greater heavinesse. His Army wanted pay. This was a great fault, which he wisely amended by giving to them the spoyle of such Towns as were ill-affected to him. So he redeemed the love of his own men, who of their meer motion appointed unto him a Guard for defence of his person. Others were not so easie to be reconciled. They who had been Traytors to *Perdiccas*, hated him for his faithfulness, as greatly, as they thought he would hate them for their faithhood; neither found they any fairer way of excusing their late revolt, than by accusing and condemning the side which they had forsaken. Wherefore they proclaimed *Eumenes* a Traitor, and condemned him to die: but it was an easier matter to give that sentence, than to put it in execution.

## S. X.

Quarrels between Eurydice the Queen, and Python the Protector. Python resigns his office, into which Antipater is chosen.

**P** *Tithon* and *Arideus* being chosen Protectors of King *Arideus*, and the children of *Alexander*, took the way to *Asia* the least, conducting the Armie through *Syria*. Of these two, *Python* was the greater in reputation, yet far too weak to sustain so important a charge. For *Eurydice* wife to King *Arideus*, was come to her husband, a Lady of a masculine spirit, well understanding what she was or should be, and thinking her self able to support the weight which fortune layd upon her foolish husband, being due to her own title. Her Mother *Cyna*, sister to *Alexander*, by her Father King *Philip*, was married (as hath been shewed) to *Amyntas*, who was the right Heir to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, being the only son of King *Perdiccas*, *Philips* elder brother. This *Cyna* was a warlike woman; she had led Armies, and (as a true sister of *Alexander*) fighting hand to hand with *Caria* Queen of the *Phrygians*, a *Virago* like unto her self, had slain her. She brought up this *Eurydice* in the same unwomanly Art of Warre, who now among the Souldiers began to put in practice the rudiments of her education, to the small contentment of *Python*, that could not brook her too curious intermeddling in his charge. Whether it were so, that *Python* had some purpose to advance the son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, to the Kingdome, (as once he had sought to do;) or whether the Queen did suspect him of some such intent; or whether only desire of rule caused her to quarrell with him; quarrell she did, which disturbed the proceeding against *Eumenes*. The Army having shaken off such a rank-rider as *Perdiccas*, would not afterward be reigned with a twined thread. *Python* bearing himself upon his office, took upon him to give directions in the Kings name, which the Queen did oftentimes controul, using the same name, with more authority, and better liking of the Souldiers.

D d d d 2

Python,

*Pythou* seeing this, would needs resign his office, whether upon weariness of the contentions daily growing, or on purpose to bring the Queen into envie, it is uncertain. Perhaps he thought, that now being the far worthiest man in the Camp, he should be intreated to retain the place, and have his authority confirmed, or (as might be) increased, were it but for want of a fit Successor. *Eurydice* was nothing sorry at this course; for now he thought to manage the affairs of the Empire at her own will, being freed from the troublesome assistance of a Protector. But the souldiers disappointed both her & *Pythou* of their contrary expectations; choosing *Antipater*, the only powerfull man of *Alexanders* Captains, then living, into the room of *Pythou*. Hereat the Queen fretted exceedingly, and began to deal earnestly with the *Macedonians* that they should acknowledge no Lord save only the King their Sovereign. Yet she failed of her purpose, being hindred (as may seem) by three things: the apparent weaknesse of her husband; & the growth of *Alexanders* children, who (though born of out-landish women) were bred in the *Macedonian* Camp; and the mightinesse of *Antipater*, who commanding a great Army near at hand, arrived in few daies at the Camp, and enforced *Eurydice* to hold her self content. *Antipater* was of such power, that he needed not to work by any close devices, as *Perdiccas* had done: he had no concurrents, all the Governors of Provinces that remained alive, acknowledged him their better; yea many of them he displaced out of hand, putting others in their rooms. This done, he took the King, Queen, and Princes along with him into *Macedonia*, leaving *Antigonus* General of the Royall Army: to whom for his good services done, and to be done against *Eumenes*, he gave the rule of *Susiana*, besides his former Provinces, and committed into his hands the government of *Asia* during that War,

## §. XI.

*Antigonus* Lieutenant of *Asia*, wins a battell of *Eumenes*, and besiegeth him in *Nora*: He vanquisheth other followers of *Perdiccas*.

Here begins the greatnesse of *Antigonus*, whose power in few years overgrowing the rest, wanted little of spreading it self over the whole Monarchie. He was to make War upon *Eumenes*, *Alcetus* the brother, and *Attalus* the brother-in-law to *Perdiccas*: work enough to keep his Army employed in the publique service, till such time as he might find occasion to make use of it in his own businesse. The first of these which he undertook was *Eumenes*, with whom *Alcetus* and *Attalus* refused to joyn, having unreasonably contended with him in time of common danger about the chief place. *Eumenes* had an Army strong in number, courage, and all needfull provisions; but obedient only at discretion. Therefore *Antigonus* tried all ways of corrupting his Souldiers; tempting first the whole Army with letters: which practice failing by the cunning of *Eumenes* (who made shew as if he himself had scattered abroad those letters to try the faith of his men) he dealt apart with such Captains as he thought most easie to be won. Of these Captains one rebelled, breaking out too hastily before any help was near him, yet looking so carelessly to himself that he and his were surprised, when he thought his enemies far off. Another follower of *Eumenes* (or rather of good fortune, which he thought now to be in company with *Antigonus*) kept his treachery secret, reserving it for the time of execution. Upon confidence of the treason which this false man *Apollonides* had undertaken, *Antigonus* presented battell to *Eumenes*, in the heat wherof *Apollonides*, General of the horse to *Eumenes*, fled over to the contrary side, with such as he could get to follow him: but was closely followed by some, whose company he desired not. *Eumenes* perceiving the irrecoverable mischief which this traitorous practice had brought upon him, pursued the villain, & cut him off before he could thrust himself into the troups of *Antigonus*, and boast of his treachery. This was some comfort to *Eumenes* in the losse of that battell, which disabled him utterly to keep the field, & left it very hard for him to make a safe retreat. Yet one thing he did which much amazed his enemies, and (though a matter of small importance) caused *Antigonus* himself to admire his high resolution. It was held no small part of the victory to get possession of the dead bodies. *Eumenes*, whilst *Antigonus* held him in chase, turned out of the way, and fetching a compasse, returned to the place where the battell had been fought; there he burned (according the manner of the time) the bodies of his own men,

men, and interred the bones and ashes of the Captains and common Souldiers apart, raising up heaps of earth as mountains over them, and so went his way. As this bold adventure bred in the *Macedonians* (returned to their Camp) great admiration of his brave spirit: so the newes which *Menander* (who was set to look unto their carriages) brought and published among them, enticed them to love him as their honourable friend. Hee had found *Menander* in an open Plain, carelesse, as after an assured victory, and laden with the spoyles of many Nations, the rewards of their long service; all which he might have taken: but fearing lest such a purchase should prove a heave burden to him, whose chief hope consisted in swift expedition, he gave secret warning to *Menander* to flee to the mountains, whilst he detained his men (whom authority could not have restrained) by this sleight, setting them to bait their horses. The *Macedonians* extolled him for this courtlesse, as a noble Gentleman, that had forborn when it lay in his power to strip them out of all their wealth, and make their children slaves, and to ravish their wives: but *Antigonus* told them, that he had not forborn to do this out of any good will to them; but out of meer subtilty had avoyded those precious fetters, which would have hindred his speedy flight. He told them true. For *Eumenes* did not only think all carriages to be over-burdenesome, but the number of his men to be more troublesome than available in his intended course. Wherefore he sent them from him as fast as he could, wishing them to shift for themselves; and retaining only five hundred horse, and two hundred foot. When he had wearied *Antigonus* a while in following him up and down, he came to *Nora*: where again keeping no more about him than necessity required to make good the place, he lovingly dismissed all the rest. *Nora* was a little fortresse in the borders of *Lycania* and *Cappadocia*, so strongly situated, that it seemed impregnable, and so well victualled and stored with all necessaries, that it might hold out for many years. Thither did *Antigonus* follow him, with more desire to make him his friend, than to vanquish him in War. To this purpose he entertained parley with him, but in vain. For, whereas *Antigonus* offered him pardon and his love; *Eumenes* required restitution of his Provinces, which could not be granted without *Antipaters* consent. Then was *Nora* closed up; where *Antigonus* leaving sufficient strength for continuance of the siege, took his journey into *Pisidia*, against *Alcetus* and *Attalus*, with whom he made short work. He came upon them unexpected, and seized on passages, which wanted not men, but such a Captain as *Eumenes*, to have defended them. *Alcetus* and *Attalus*, as they had been too secure before his coming, so were they too adventurous, in fighting at the first sight, upon all disadvantages: and their folly was attended with suitable event. *Attalus* with many principall Captains was taken; *Alcetus* fled to the City of *Termessus*, where the love of the younger sort toward him was so vehement, that stopping their ears against all persuasions of the ancient men, they needs would hazard their lives and their Country in his defence. Yet this availed him nothing: for the Governors of the Town having secretly compounded with *Antigonus*, caused the young men to fall out; and using the time of advantage, they with their servants did set upon *Alcetus*, who unable to resist, slew himself. His dead body was conveyed to *Antigonus*, and by him barbarously torn, was cast forth without buriall. When *Antigonus* was gone, the young men interred the carcasse with solemn funerals, having once been minded to set on fire their own town in revenge of his death. Such favour had he purchased with courteous liberality: but to make an able Generall, one vertue, how great soever, is insufficient.

## §. XII.

*Ptolomie* wins Syria and Phoenicia. The death of *Antipater*.

Whilst these things were in doing, the rest of the Princes lay idle, rather seeking to enjoy their Governments for the present, than to confirm or enlarge them. Only *Ptolomie* looking abroad, wan all Syria and Phoenicia: an action of great importance, but not remarkable for any circumstance in the managing. He sent a Lieutenant with an Army, who quickly took *Laomedon* prisoner, that ruled there by appointment of *Antipater*, and formerly of *Perdiccas*; but (as may seem) without any great strength of Souldiers, far from assistants, and vainly relying upon the authority which had given him that Province, and was now occupied with greater cares, than with seeking to maintain him in his Office.

*Antipater* was old and sickly, desirous of rest, and therefore contented to let *Antigonus* pursue the dispatch of those businesses in *Asia*. He had with him *Polysperchon*, one of the most ancient of *Alexanders* Captains, that had lately suppressed a dangerous insurrection of the *Ætolians*, which Nation had stirred in the quarrell of *Perdiccas*, prevailing far at the first, but soon losing all that they had gained, whilst *Antipater* was abroad in his *Cilician* expedition. In this *Polysperchon* *Antipater* did repose great confidence; so far forth, that (suspecting the youth of his own Son *Cassander* of insufficiency in so great a charge) he bequeathed unto him on his death-bed the government of *Macedon* and *Greece*, together with his office of Protectorship. So *Antipater* died, being fourscore years old, having always travelled in the great affairs of mighty Princes, with such reputation, that *Alexander* in all his greatness was jealous of him, and the successors of *Alexander* did either quietly give place unto him, or were unfortunate in making oppositions. In his private qualities he was a subtle man, temperate, frugal, and of a Philosophicall behaviour, not unlearned, as having been Scholar to *Aristotle*, and written some Histories. He had been much molested by *Olympias*, *Alexanders* mother, whom after the death of her Son, he compelled to abstain from coming into *Macedonia*, or intermeddling in matters of Estate; yea, at his own death he gave especial direction, that no woman should be permitted to deal in the administration of the Empire. But this precept was soon forgotten; and yet ere long, by sorrowfull experience approved to have been sound and good.

## §. XIII.

Of *Polysperchon*, who succeeded unto *Antipater* in the Protectorship. The insurrection of *Cassander* against him.

*Polysperchon* was very skillfull in the Art of Warre, having long time been Apprentice in that occupation; other qualities, requisite in so high an Office as hee under-went, either Nature had not given to him, or Time had robbed him of them. He managed his business more formally than wisely, as a man of a second wit, fitter to assist than command in chief. At the first entrance upon the stage, he called to counsell all his friends, wherein for weighty considerations (as they who weighed not the contrary reasons held them) the Queen *Olympias* was revoked out of *Epyrus* into *Macedon*, that the presence of *Alexanders* mother might countenance and strengthen their proceedings. For, the condition of the times requiring, that the Governours of Provinces abroad should keep greater Armies, than were needfull or easie to be retained about the person of the King in *Macedonia*; it seemed expedient; that the face of the Court should be filled with all Majesty, that might give authority to the Injunctions from thence proceeding, and by an awfull regard contain within the limited bounds of dutie such as could not by force have been kept in order, being strong, and lying too farre off.

Such care was taken for prevention of imaginary dangers and out of sight, whilst present mischiefs lay unregarded in their bosomes. *Cassander*, the Sonne of *Antipater*, was not able to discover that great sufficiency in *Polysperchon*, for which his father had reposed in him so much confidence: neither could he discern such odds in the quality of himself and *Polysperchon*, as was in their fortune. Hee was left Captain of one thousand; which Office by practice of those times was of more importance, than the title now seems to imply. Hee should thereby have been as Camp-master, or Lieutenant generall to the other: a place no way satisfying his ambition, that thought himself the better man. Therefore hee began to examine his own power, and compare with the forces likely to oppose him. All that had relied on his father, were his own assured, especially such as commanded the Garrisons bestowed in the principall Cities of *Greece*. The like hope was of the Magistrates, and others of principall authority, in those Common-weals, whose forms had been corrected by *Antipater*, that they would follow the side, and draw in many partakers: it concerned these men in their own particular to adhere unto the Captains, by whom their faction was up-held; and by whom the rascall multitude, covetous of re-gaining the tyrannous power which they had formerly exercised over the principall Citizens, were kept in order, obeying their betters perforce. Besides all these helps, *Cassander* had the secret love of Queen

*Emjdice*,

*Erydice*, who had in private rendred him such curtesie, as was due onely to her husband. But neither the Queens favour, nor all his other possibilities, gave him confidence to break out into open rebellion; because he saw *Polysperchon* much revered among the *Macedonians*, and strong enough to suppress him, before he could have made head. Therefore he made shew of following his pleasures in the Countrey, and calling many of his friends about him, under pretence of hunting, advised with them upon the safest course, and most free from all suspicion. The necessity was apparent of raising an Armie, before the business was set on foot; and to doe this, opportunitie presented him with faire means. *Ptolomie* had by fine force, without any commission, annexed *Syria* to his government of *Egypt* and *Cyrene*: this was too much either for the King to trust him with, or for him to part with. *Antigonus* upon the first newes of *Antipaters* death, began to lay hold upon all that he could get, in such sort, that he manifestly discovered his intent of making himself Lord of all *Asia*. These two therefore stood in need of a civil war; which *Cassander* wel noted, & presumed withall. That the friendship which had passed between his father and them, would avail him somewhat. Whereupon he secretly dispatched messengers to them both, and within a little while conveyed himself on a sudden over the *Hellespont*, that he might in person advance the business with greater speed. Much perswasion is needlesse in winning a man to what he desireth. *Antigonus* coveting nothing more, than to find *Polysperchon* work, by raising some commotion in *Greece*. Yet (as for malices must not be neglected) *Cassander* did very earnestly presse him, by the memorie of his Father, and all requisite conjurations, to assist him in this enterprize; telling him, that *Ptolomie* was ready to declare for them, and urging him to a speedy dispatch. *Antigonus* on the other side repaid him with the same coin, saying, That for his own sake, and his dead Fathers, whom he had very dearly loved, he would not fail to give him all manner of succour. Having thus feasted one another with words, they were nothing slack in preparing the common means, leading to their severall ends.

## §. XIV.

The unworthy courses held by *Polysperchon*, for the keeping down of *Cassander*.

Great necessity there was of timely provision. For, *Polysperchon* needed no other instructions to inform him of *Cassanders* drift, than the newes of his departure. He was not ignorant of the ready disposition, which might be found in *Antigonus* and *Ptolomie*, to the strengthening of rebellion; and well he knew that one principall hope of *Cassander* was reposed in the confidence of such as ruled in the *Grecian* Estate. Therefore (loving to work circumspectly) he called another Councell, wherein it was concluded, That the Popular form of Government should be erected in all the Cities of *Greece*; the Garrisons withdrawn; and that all Magistrates and principall Men, into whose hands *Antipater* had committed the supreme authoritie, should forthwith be either slain or banished. This was a sure way to diminish the number of *Cassanders* friends, and to raise up many enemies to him in all quarters. Yet hereby was disclosed both an unthankfull nature in *Polysperchon*, and a factious malice in his adherents. For, how could he be excused of extreme ingratitude, that for hatred of the son went about to dishonour the Fathers actions, whose onely bountie had enabled him to doe it? Or what could be said in their defence, who sought to destroy many worthie men, friends to the State, by whom the *Greeks* were held restrained from stirring against the *Macedonians*? and in opposition to their private enemy, gave the rule of things to base Companions, and such as naturally maligned the Empire? But as in mans body, through sinews newly issuing from one branch, a finger is more vexed by inflammation of his next neighbourhood, than by any distemper in the contrary hand: so in bodies politique, the humours of men, subdivided in faction, are more enraged by the disagreeable qualities of such as curb them in their neereft purposes, than they are exasperated by the generall opposition of such as are divided from them in the main trunk. Hereby it comes to passe, that contrary religions are invited to help against neighbour Princes; bordering enemies drawn in, to the part in civil warres; and ancient hatred called to counsell against injurious friends. Of this fault nature is not guiltie, these hath taught the art to offer it self unto manifest losse in defence of the head: They are depraved affections

affections, which render men sensible of their own particular, and forgetfull of the more generall good, for which they were created.

The decree, whereby the *Greeks* were presented with a vain shew of libertie, ran under the Kings name; but so, as one might easily discern, that *Polysperchon* had guided his pen. For the main point was, That they should follow such directions, as *Polysperchon* gave, and treat with him about all difficulties. In the rest it contained such a deal of kindnesse, as proceeding on a sudden from those who had kept them in hard subjection, might well appear to have some other root than the pretended good will; and was of it self too base and unfit for a King to use toward his conquered Subjects, and often-subdued Rebels.

## S. XV.

Of the great commotions raised in Athens by *Polysperchons* decree. The death of *Phocion*.

NEvertheles the *Athenians* with immoderate joy entertained this happy-seeming Proclamation, and sought how to put it in execution without further delay. But *Nicanor*, Captain of the Garrison, which kept one of their Havens, called *Munychia*, in the lower part of the Town, would needs take longer time of deliberation, than was pleasing to their hasty desires.

*Nicanor*, as a trustie follower of *Cassander*, was by him shifted into the place, and *Mamilus* (that was Captain there before) discharged, when *Antipater* was newly dead. His coming to *Athens* was no way gratefull to the Citizens, who soon after hearing the newes of *Antipater's* death, cried out upon *Phocion*, saying, That he had sufficient intelligence of that accident, and might, by advertising them in due time, have put into their hands a fair opportunitee of thrusting out the *Macedonians*. But these exclamations argued no more than a desire to shake off the *Macedonian* yoke. Farre more grievously would they have been offended, had they known the instructions which *Cassander* had given to *Nicanor*, and his resolution to follow them. It was concluded, That he should not only retain *Munychia*, any injunction to the contrary notwithstanding; but that hee should find means to thrust some companies into *Piræus*, and fortifie that also, which was the principall haven, against the high-town. How to accomplish this, he rather wanted some reasonable pretence, than good abilitie. But the *Athenians* were not long in giving him sufficient cause to do that, which he would have done without any cause given. They desired him to come unto their Councell, assembled in the *Piræus*, there to consider of the Kings Proclamation: whither upon *Phocians* word and safe conduct he came, and earnestly pressed them to hold with *Cassander* in the war which was ready to break forth. Contrariwise, they urged him first of all, to make them masters of their own, which how to use, they might consult afterwards. Each of them refusing to condescend unto the others demand; the *Athenians* (who did alwayes measure justice by profit, yet seldom thrived by that course) practised with *Dercillus*, a Captain following *Polysperchon*, and then lying near at hand, that he should enter into the Town, and take *Nicanor* prisoner. But *Phocion*, who then governed in *Athens*, a man very unlike to the rest of the Citizens, being nothing pleased with such a trick of politick dishonestie, did quietly suffer him to depart and save himself.

*Nicanor* hereupon began to devise upon taking *Piræus*; not as following now the project of *Cassander*, but prosecuting his own just revenge. He levied as many Souldiers as he could, and drew them closely into *Munychia*; which done, he issued into *Piræus*, took it, and inrenched himself therein, to the exceeding discomfort of the *Athenians*, who lately impatient of his keeping the one Haven, saw him now Master of both. *Alexander*, the son of *Polysperchon*, came thither shortly after with an Armie. Then were the Citizens in great hope of recovering all, and addressed themselves unto him; who made fair shewes, intending meer mischief, which they perceived not, being blinded with the vain Epistles of his Father, and of *Olympias* the old Queen. *Olympias*, taking upon her to command, before she durst well adventure to return into *Macedon*, had peremptorily charged *Nicanor* to restore to the *Athenians* the places which hee held: but hee would first consider more of the matter. *Polysperchon* had further ordained, that the Isle of *Samos*, should be rendred unto them: a goodly offer, had it accorded with his power and

and meaning. He was (indeed) so far from purposing to let them have *Samos*, that as yet he did not thoroughly intend to let them have themselves. The commoditie of their Havens was such, as he would rather get into his own hands, than leave in theirs; yet rather wished in theirs, than in *Cassanders*. His Son *Alexander*, not ignorant of this, made fair shew to the *Athenians*, and spent much labour in communing with *Nicanor*, but suffered not them, for whom he seemed to labour, to intermeddle with the businesse. Hereupon the Citizens grew jealous, and the displeasure they conceived against him, they poured out upon *Phocion*, depriving him of his office. This was done with much tumult: banished men and strangers thrusting themselves into the assembly of the Citizens, who 10 distracted with sundrie passions, growing out of their present misfortunes, thought every one that best could inveigh against things past, a most likely man to find some remedie for the evill threatening them. In this hurly-burly was *Alexander* devising how he might come to some good point of composition with *Nicanor*, & held much privie conference with him; which he could not so secretly carry, but that his negotiation was discovered, whereby the uproare in the Town was so far increased, that *Phocion* with many of his friends were accused, and driven to seek safeguard of their lives by flight. So they came to *Alexander*, who entertained them gently, and gave them his letters of commendation to his Father, desiring him to take them into his protection.

*Polysperchon* was in the Countrie of *Phociæ*, ready to enter with an Army into *Attica*. 20 Thither came *Phocion* with his companions, hoping well that the letters which they brought, and their own deserts, (having alwayes been friends to the *Macedonians*, as far as the good of their Countrie gave leave) should be enough to get patronage to their innocence. Besides all this, *Dinarchus* a *Corinthian*, *Polysperchons* familiar friend, went along with them (in an evill hour) who promised to himself and them great favour, by means of his acquaintance. But *Polysperchon* was an unstable man, very earnest in what he took in hand, yet, either for want of judgement in following them, or of honesty in holding the best of them, easily changing his intended courses, and doing things by the halves, which made him commonly fail of good successe. For fear of *Cassander* he had offered wonderful kindnesse to the *Athenians*, this had caused them to love him: out of 30 their love he gathered hope of deceiving them, which made him to change his mind, and seek how to get into his own hands those keys, with which *Cassander* held them fast lockt up: finding himself disappointed of this purpose, and suspected as a false dishonest man, he stood wavering between the contrary allurements of profit and reputation. To keep the *Athenians* perforce at his devotion, would indeed have done well: but the effecting of this began to grow desperate, and many Towns of importance in *Greece* began to cast their eyes upon his proceeding in that action. Wherefore hee thought it the wisest way to redeem their good opinion, by giving all contentment unto the popular faction, which was then grown to be Master of that Citie. And in good time for this purpose were the *Athenian* Embassadors come, treading 40 (as one may say) upon *Phocians* heels, whom they were sent to accuse. Thiele had solemn audience given to them in the Kings presence, who was attended by many great Lords, and for ostentations sake was glorified with all exteriour shewes of Majestie; yet all too little to change *Arideus* into *Alexander*: for he did nothing there, but either laugh or chafe, as he saw others doe. For beginning of the businesse *Polysperchon* commanded that *Dinarchus* should be tortured and slain. This was enough to testifie his heartie affection to the Commonaltie of *Athens*, in that he spared not his old acquaintance for their sake; whose Embassadors he then bad to speak. When their errand was done, and answer to it made by the accused, who had no indifferent hearing, *Phocion* and the rest were pronounced guilty of treason; but to give sentence, 50 and doe the execution upon them, was (for honours sake) referred unto the Citie of *Athens*, because they were Burgesses. Then were they sent away to *Athens*, where the rascall multitude, not suffering them to speak for themselves, condemned them to dye. So they perished being innocent. But the death of *Phocion* being very conspicuous, made the fortune of the rest to be of the lesse regard. Five and forty times had he been chosen Governour of the Citie, never suing for the place, but sent for when he was absent, so well was his integritie known, and so highly valued, even of such as were no pretenders to the same vertue. He was a good Commander in War, wherein though his actions were not very great, yet were they of good importance, and

and never unfortunate. Never did the Cike repent of having followed his counsell: nor any private man of having trusted his word. *Philip of Macedon* highly esteemed him; so, and much more did *Alexander*, who (besides other signs of his love) sent him two hundred talents of silver, and offered to bestow upon him of four Cities in *Asia* any one which he would choose. But *Phocion* refused these and other gifts, howsoever importunately thrust upon him; resting well contented with his honest povertie: wherein he lived above fourscore years, and then was compelled by the unjust judgment of wicked men, to drink that poyson, which by just judgment of the righteous God, so infected the Cike of *Athens*, as from that day forwards it never brought forth any worthy man resembling the vertue of their Ancestors.

## §. XVI.

of *Polysperchon* his vain expedition against *Cassander*.

**N**ot long after these things were done, *Cassander*, with such forces as *Antigonus* lent him, entred into *Piræus*; which newes drew *Polysperchon* headlong into *Attica*, with a great Armie, but so it vicualled, that he was faine to depart without any thing done. Only he had given some impediment to the enemy, who, not contented with defending what he held, began to look out, and make new purchases abroad. Finding therefore himself unable to drive *Cassander* out of *Athens*, he left his son *Alexander*, with such number of men as exceeded not the proportion of vicuals, to withstand his further incroaching. The greatest part of his Armie he carried into *Peloponnesus*, to make the Countrie sure to himself, wherein *Cassander* had many Friends.

His doings in *Peloponnesus* were such, as they had been in other parts of *Greece*. First, he began to fight with Edicts, restoring the Democratic, or Popular form of government. He commanded that the principall Citizens, that had by *Antipater* been made Rulers, should be either slain, or driven into exile. This decree took immediate effect in most places: The vulgar sort being very ready to seal the Charter of their freedom and authority, with the blood of those who had kept them in subjection. Yet many Cities there were, which delighted in the rule of the chief Citizens; and many which wished well to *Cassander*, especially they of *Megalopolis*, on whom *Polysperchon* meant to inflict an exemplarie punishment of disobedience to him, which he termed Rebellion. *Megalopolis* had in it fifteen thousand serviceable men, well furnished of necessaries, and resolved to endure the worst. And need there was of such resolution. For *Polysperchon* comming thither with all his power, did so much, that he overthrew, by a Mine, three of their Bulwarks, and all the space of wall between them. But the Defendants manfully repelled the *Macedonians* which came up to the breach; and at the same time with great labour they raised up an inner wall, to bear out the next assault. The Assaultants having failed to carry the Town at the first attempt, took much pain to clear the ground, and make fair way for their Elephants, whose violence was likely to overthrow all that came in their way. But the Townsmen perceiving their drift, prepared boords driven through with long nails, which they used as gal-throps, bestowing them slightly covered, with the points upwards, in the way by which the beasts were to passe. Neither did they set any to encounter them in front, but appointed certain light-armed men to beat upon their sides with arrows and Darts, as they were instructed by some that had learned the manner of that fight in the *Asian Wars*. Of these provisions they made happy use in the next assault. For, by them were the Elephants (wherein the enemy chiefly trusted) either sorely hurt, or driven back upon the *Macedonians*, whom they trampled under feet. *Polysperchon* came as ill furnished for long abode to *Megalopolis* as before to *Athens*. Therefore being neither able to dispatch the businesse quickly, nor to take such leisure as was requisite, he forsook the siege, with some losse, and much dishonour, leaving some part of his Army to lye before the Town for his credit.

After this he sent *Clitus*, his Admirall, to Sea, to joyn with *Arideus* that was come out of *Phrygia*, and to cut off all succour which might come to the enemy out of *Asia*. *Cassander* also sent his whole fleet under *Nicanor*, who taking along with him some ships of *Antigonus*, came to the *Propontis*, where he fought with *Clitus*, and was beaten. But *Antigonus* hearing of the over-throw, gathered together the ships that were escaped, and

and manning them very well, sent out *Nicanor* again, assuring him of the victorie, as well he might. For he sent out sufficient numbers of light-armed men, whom he caused to be waited over the streights in small Vessels by night; these before day-light setting upon *Clitus*, drave his men, that lay securely on the land, head-long into their ships; in which tumult *Nicanor* arriving did assail them so lustily, that few or none escaped him.

This losse at Sea, together with his bad successe by Land, brought *Polysperchon* into great contempt. He had a good facultie in penning bloudie decrees, but when the execution was referred to his own sword, he could find the matter more difficult. Wherefore the *Athenians*, perceiving that he had left them to shift for themselves, and was not able to give them protection against the enemy which lay in their bolosomes, came to agreement with *Cassander*; accepting a governour of his appointment; and restoring all things to the same state wherein *Antipater* had left them. The like inclination to the partie of *Cassander*, was found in very many Cities of *Greece*, which daily and willingly revolted unto him, as to an industrious man, and likely to prevail in the end. Thus was the whole Countrie set in a combustion, uneasy to be quenched; which presented unto *Antigonus* an opportunitie, that he neglected not, of making himself Lord of *Asia*.

## §. XVII.

*Antigonus* seeks to make himself an absolute Lord: and thereupon treats with *Eumenes*, who disappointeth him, *Phrygia* and *Lydia* won by *Antigonus*.

**A**ntigonus had in *Antipaters* life-time a firm resolution, to make unto himself the utmost benefit that he might of the Armie committed to his charge. And in fair season for advancement of his purposes came the newes of *Antipaters* death; even then, when all the businesse in *Pisidia* was dispatched, and no more employment for the Armie remaining, save only the continuance of the siege of *Nora*, a small thing of it self, but as hard as a greater matter; and requiring few men, but much time; when time of all things was most precious. *Eumenes* lay in that Fort of *Nora*, able to make the place good, and hoping that the mutabilitie, to which the present Estate was manifestly subject, would in continuance of some years (which he might abide) work more for him, than his enemies in that space could work against him. His most fear was, that for want of exercise in that narrow Castle, his men & horses might grow sickly and unserviceable: which made him to practise many devices of keeping them in health and lustie. But when he had continued shut up in this manner about a year, his hopes came to good passe, and he was eased of his cares by *Antigonus* himself, whose forces held him besieged.

*Antigonus* knowing the great sufficiencie of *Eumenes*, and considering his fidelity shewed unto *Perdiccas*, thought that he could not find in all the world a fitter man than him to employ in managing those high designs, wherein he doubted not that he should be withstood by the mightiest Princes of the Empire. He sent therefore to *Eumenes* by one that was friend to them both, acquainting him with some part of his intent, and promising to make him a better Lord than ever he had bin, and the next man to himself, if things fell out as he desired: in regard whereof he required only his friendship, & thereupon sent him an oath to take, which done, he might at his good pleasure issue safely out of *Nora*, and enjoy his perfect libertie. *Eumenes* perusing the form of the oath, did perceive the meaning of *Antigonus*, which was, rather to make him his follower than his fellow. For whereas in a few words, it mentioned the King and Princes of the blood, rather to keep the *Decorum*, than upon any loyall intent; the binding words and sum of all were such, as tied him fast only to *Antigonus*, omitting all reservation of duty to the King or any other. This he liked not, holding it unseemly to become a sworn man to him, with whom he had fought for the masteerie; and being assured that his voluntarie assistance, which way soever he gave, would be more acceptable, and farre more honourable, than the course propounded. Yet would he not therefore break off the negotiation, and wait for some better occasion of enlargement, which might perhaps be long in coming; but seeming to be well agreed with *Antigonus*, he prepared to give up his Hold and depart. As for the oath it self, when he came to take it, he made shew of dislike, in that it was not solemn enough



enough for such personages as they were, who could not be too ceremonious in testifying their allegiance. The *Macedonians* which lay incamped before *Nora*, liked his words, and gave him leave to put in *Olympias*, and the children of *Alexander*, binding himself to them and their adherents, as well as to *Antigonus*; and so he departed.

*Antigonus* had taken upon him, as soon as he came down to the Sea-side, to remove some of the Governours of the Provinces, behaving himself according to the authority which he had received of *Antipater*, to exercise in the time of war. Neither did he want sufficient pretence whereby to justify his proceedings. For if *Polyperchon* might lawfully hold the Protectorship, which the old man dotting on his death-bed bequeathed unto him, as a legacie, without consent of the Princes and Souldiers; why might not he himself as well retain the Lieutenantship of *Asia*, that was granted unto him for the generall good of the State, in presence of the whole Armie, by the King, and by *Antipater*, who had power to ordain what should seem convenient whilst he lived, not to dispose of things that should happen after his death? To give a fair colour to his ambition, this was enough: if any were not herewith satisfied, hee had threecore thousand footmen, ten thousand horse, and thirtie Elephants in a readinesse to answer them.

The first that perceived his drift, and provided to resist him, was *Arideus* Governor of *Phrygia*; who fortified the Towns of his own Province, and fought to have won *Cizicus*, a fair Haven Town, and seated very conveniently for him, but was faine to goe away without it. Hereupon *Antigonus* took occasion to command him out of the country. *Arideus* was so far from obeying him, that he sent forces to relieve *Eumenes*. Nevertheless finding that he was unable of himself to make long resistance, he took such companies as he could draw along with him, and so passed over into *Europe*, to complain at the Court. The like fortune had *Clitus*, who ruled in *Lydia*, and sought the like remedy of his fortune, with some hope at the first (for both of them were entertained with very good words) which quickly vanished, and grew desperate, when they were beaten at Sea, as hath already been declared.

## s. XVIII.

*Antigonus pursues Eumenes. Eumenes having authority from the Court, raiseth great war against Antigonus in defence of the Royall house.*

*Antigonus* having thus gotten into his hands all, or most of all *Asia* the lesse, was able to have entred *Macedon*, and seized upon the Court; which that he forbore to doe, it proceeded (as may seem) from some of these reasons. It would have bred as much jealousie in *Cassander*, as fear in *Polyperchon*, which might have brought them to termes of reconciliation; It would ask more time than he could spare; and the envie which followed the Protectorship was such, as he that had power enough without the office, ought rather to shun, than to pursue. Besides all this, it was manifest that *Eumenes* would not only refuse to take his part, but would make war upon him in defence of the Royall house, to which it was found that *Antigonus* did not stand well-affected. Against him therefore he bent his course, and with an Armie of twenty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, made great haste toward *Cilicia*, hoping to suppress him before he should be able to make head.

*Eumenes* was one of those few that continued faithfull to their dead master, which being well known in the Court, he had commission sent unto him from thence to raise an Armie, and make war upon *Antigonus*, taking of the Kings treasure as much as he should need. Other letters also there were directed to all the Governours of Provinces, requiring them to give assistance to *Eumenes*, and be ordered by his direction: especially to the Captains of the old Souldiers, called the *Argyraspides*, or silver-shielded bands, commandement was given to be at his appointment. He had of his old followers gathered together two thousand foot, and five hundred horse, before this authority was given him: but now he purposed with all the strength which he could make, to fight with *Antigonus* in defence of the Royall blood. *Olympias* had written to him, desiring him to bring help to her, and her Nephew the son of *Alexander*; and in the mean time to give her his advice in that which *Polyperchon* required of her: for she was desirous

desirous to return into *Macedon*, but suspected his ambition, as not contained within lawfull bounds. *Eumenes* therefore counselled her to remain in *Epirus*, till such time as he could bring the warre to a good issue; which done, he promised that his faith and care should not be wanting to the seed of *Alexander*.

Strange it is to consider, that in all the Empire, scarce any one could be found among the Noble-men, in whom *Alexander's* mother, wives, and children, might repose firm confidence, having only this *Eumenes*, a stranger to the *Macedonian* blood, born at *Cardia*, a Citie of *Thrace*. His reputation was no more than his own vertue had made it; his followers obeyed at their own discretion; and compelled he was to travail as farre as *Persia*, to gather together an Armie sufficient to resist the enemies that pursued his heels.

## s. XIX.

*How the Princes of Macedon stood affected mutually. Olympias takes Arideus and Eurydice, whom she cruelly puts to death.*

Now, so far as much as in this present Warre all the Rulers of the Provinces did intermeddle; and great alterations happened, not only in the parts of *Asia*, but *Macedon* it self, which brought a new face unto the State, by the extirpation of the Royall house of *Philip* and *Alexander*: I hold it convenient in this place, before we enter into the particulars of the Warre it self, to shew briefly how the great ones did mutually stand affected; and by what passions they were drawn into those courses, which over-threw most of them, and out of their ruines built the greauesse of a few: as likewise to what extremity the faction brake out in *Macedon* it self, about the main controversie of the title to the Crown, whereupon all other quarrels were or should have been depending.

*Arideus* the King, being simple and fearfull, did onely what he was bidden.

*Polyperchon*, desirous to continue long in Office, had a purpose to advance the son of *Alexander* by *Roxane* to the Kingdome, and become Governour to a King of his own making,

*Eurydice* the Queen discovering plainly this intent, and meaning nothing lesse than to let her husband serve as a Stale, keeping the throne warm till another were grown old enough to sit in it, grew acquainted with *Cassander*, who hated the memory of *Alexander*, and was therefore the fitter for her turn.

*Cassander* held fresh in mind the danger wherein his family had been through *Alexander's* malice, together with the indignity offered to himself by *Alexander*, who knocked his head against a wall for deriding one that adored him after the *Persian* manner. The displeasure hereof, and the pleasure which he took in the amorous Queen, made him to resolve, both to suppress the lineage which he hated, and to maintain his beloved mistress, either by supporting her weak husband, or by taking her to be his own wife.

The rest of the Lords held it a thing indifferent who reigned over all, so as they might reign in their severall Countries, and establish their authority in such wise, that it might not be taken from them.

Among these, *Ptolemy* and *Antigonus* were well enough already, if their ambition would have suffered them to see it.

*Pitho* and *Seleucus* lying farre off, and being strong, had some good hope to encroach upon their neighbours. Against these, *Peucestes*, and some others, which much adoe hardly made resistance, untill such time as *Eumenes* came to them; who propounded to himself great matters, which he lived not to accomplish.

*Olympias* the old Queen (as it is common with step-dames) hated the children of her husband by his other wives. It was thought that he had given poison to *Arideus*, which failing to take away his life, had much impaired both his body and wits. Now the considering, that *Eumenes* was too full of business to come home so soon as he wished that he should; and that *Cassander* daily prevailed in *Greece*: thought it the best way to joyn with *Polyperchon*, & set up, as King, her Nephew *Alexander*, the son of *Roxane*, removing *Arideus* before *Cassander* were able to defend him. To this intent the procured men among her kindred in *Epirus*, and so took her way towards *Polyperchon*,

who joyning with her, entred into Macedon.

*Eurydice* hearing these news, wrote very earnestly to *Cassander*, praying him to set aside all other business, and come to succour her. She her self by entreaty, gifts, and promises, drew to her partie as many of the *Macedonians* as she could, untill she thought her own side strong enough; and then taking her husband with her, went boldly forth against *Olympias*, and the Traitor *Polysperchon*.

These two Queens met armed, as if the matter should have been determined by their own hands, which ended without any stroke stricken, by the revolt of those who followed *Eurydice*. For as soon as the *Macedonians* beheld *Olympias*, calling to mind her former Estate, and the victorious reigns of her husband and son, they refused to lift any weapon against her. *Eurydice* finding her self thus forsaken, fled towards *Amphipolis*, but was intercepted, and made prisoner with her husband.

*Olympias* having obtained this victory without blood, thought that all things would succeed as easily, and upon the same considerations for which they had refused to bear Arms against her, the *Macedonians* would not stick to maintain her, whatsoever her proceedings were. Having therefore shut up *Arideus* and his wife in a close room, where they could scarce turn round, she fed them through a little hole, till after a while it came in her head (for fear lest the people should have commiseration of him, that had reigned almost six years and a half) to put them to death. So she delivered *Arideus* to some barbarous *Thracians*, who took away his life by cruel torments: to *Eurydice* she sent a sword, a halter, and a cup of poison, willing her to choose the instrument of her own death; who praying that the like presents might one day be sent to *Olympias*, yielded her neck to the halter, having spent her last curses not in vain. *Nicanor* the brother of *Cassander*, and a hundred the chief of his friends, did *Olympias* then choose out, all whom he commanded to be slain. His brother *Iolas* that was already dead and buried, the accused of poison given to *Alexander*, and thereupon caused his Tomb to be thrown down, and his bones to be scattered abroad. The *Macedonians* wondering at this fury, began to condemn themselves, and the folly of *Polysperchon*, who had, quite contrary to *Antipaters* charge given on his death bed, called this outrageous woman to the government of the Empire.

## s. XX.

How *Cassander* was revenged upon *Olympias*.

## t. II.

The great expedition of *Cassander*. *Olympias* shuts her self into *Pydna*, where *Cassander* besieged her. *Bacides* King of *Epirus*, coming to succour *Olympias*, is forsaken, and banished by his own Subjects.

*Cassander* at that time lay before *Tegea*, in *Peloponnesus*; whither when all these ill tidings were brought to him, he never staid to take the City, nor to give order for the State of things in that Countrey, (though *Alexander* the son of *Polysperchon* were there with an Armie) but compounding with them of *Tegea*, he willed his associates to look to themselves as well as they could, till his return; and so in all haste he took his journey towards *Macedon*, carried headlong with the greedy desire of just revenge. The *Aetolians* had taken the *Streights of Thermopylae*, in favour of the Queen & *Polysperchon*, to hinder his passage, but he not willing to mispend any time in dealing with them, got together as many ships as he could, great and small, with which he transported his Army into *Thessaly*. There he divided his companies, appointing some under *Callas*, a subtle Captain, to hold *Polysperchon* busied, who then lay incamped neerer to *Perthabia*, with the rest he marched directly against *Olympias*. She, having once prevailed by the respect given to her dignity, took more care how to appear Majestically, than to make her self strong. To this end she made a solemn progress to *Pydna*, a Sea-town, and well fenced, having in her company all the flower of the Court, especially the great Ladies, among whom was *Roxane*, and her young son *Alexander*, heir to the great *Alexander*, by his grand-mothers designation: who during his minority kept

kept his Sovereign power in her own hands. But all this pomp served to little use, against the violence of the enemy, that soon presented himself before the walls; only it fed the besieged with a vain hope of succour, that would from all parts arrive, to rescue persons of their quality. And hereof there soon appeared fair likelihood, which as soon vanished, and went away in smoke.

For *Bacides* King of *Epirus*, made great haste to bring succour to *Olympias* his cousin, with whom *Deodamia* his daughter was also shut up. Nevertheless, his Subjects were nothing forward in this expedition; but finding certain passages taken in the way by *Cassanders* men, they called upon him to retire, & quit the enterprise. The Kings importunity urging them to proceed, and the obstinate refusal of the Army, brake out at length into such termes, that when he had raged in vain against the multitude, his authority, with which he thought to have prevailed upon them, was by them taken from him, and he compelled to forsake his Kingdom, and to wander up and down in forrain Countries a banished man, his people joyning with the enemy, against whom he had led them forth to war.

*Pydna* in the mean time was closed up strictly, both by Sea and Land, so that neither any could issue out of the City, nor any relief be conveyed into it, but it held out as long as any food was left, no memorable service being done there, whilst great actions were managed abroad.

## t. II.

A continuation of *Olympias* her story. *Polysperchon* defeated. Extreme famine in *Pydna*. *Olympias* yields to *Cassander*.

Now, though order of time require it, that we should rehearse the doings of *Egmenes* & *Antigonus* in this place, leaving *Olympias* yet a while to the hour of her destiny, which grows the faster upon her, because she may discern it coming: yet that we may not be compelled to interrupt the course of our narration, by inserting her Tragedie in the midst of things not manifestly coherent with it, we will here (as elsewhere we have done, and elsewhere must) continue to an end one History, that we may not be therewith distracted, when we shall come to the relation of another. All the hope of the besieged, remaining in *Polysperchon*, was in like manner disappointed, as their former trust had bin, which was reposed in the succours of the *Epirot*. For *Callas*, who was sent against him, found the means to corrupt the greatest part of his Army with money, leaving him within a little while so slenderly accompanied, that he was fit for no other business of war, than a swift retreat. When famine had so far prevailed in the City, that the horses were killed as a precious food, many men, feeding on the dead carcasses of their fellows, and saw-dust being given to the Elephants for provender; some of the Souldiers obtaining the Queens leave, (who could not deny it) others, without asking leave, yielded themselves to the enemy, and were by him gently relieved, and sent abroad into the Country. The news of the Queens affairs, dispersed by these men, did to affright her well-willers, that such as had referred themselves to the event, came in space, and submitted them to *Cassander*. At length, when the mortalitie was so great in the Town, that the living were even poisoned with the noysoine of the dead; *Olympias* bethought her self of stealing away by Sea in a Galley that she had: where with her successe was as bad as in the rest. For God had appointed this Town, by her chosen as a place of refuge, to be unto her as a house of torment, and a Jail, out of which she should not be delivered, but unto an evil death. Being therefore utterly broken with miseries, which daily afflicted her and the other Ladies, unaccustomed to so wretched a kind of life, she offered composition, & with much labor hardly obtained of *Cassander* (who having fetched her Gally out of the Haven, accounted himself as good as master of her body) a grant of her own life. Immediately upon her apprehension, *Pella*, the chief City of the Kingdom, was yielded to *Cassander*. *Amphipolis* did stand out: for *Aristonous* to whom *Olympias* had given charge of such forces as were left abroad in the Country, taking courage from the success of some petty services wherein he had prevailed, began to promise himself great unlikelihoods. But *Olympias*, to win *Cassanders* favour, very earnestly required him up-

on his faith to her, that he should give it up. He did so, and presently after was killed by his private enemies, that were set on by *Cassander*, who partly hated him upon old respects, partly doubted him, as a man likely to seek innovation.

## † III.

*The death of Olympias, and her conditions.*

**V**hen *Olympias* had now heard sorrowfull tidings of all her friends, she herself was called into question, & accused in an assembly of the *Macedonians*, for the murders (they were so styled in her affliction, which in time of prosperity she called justice) by her committed. There was she (being not heard, nor called to speak) condemned to die. The fute was commenced and prosecuted against her, by the kindred of those whom she had slain. But it was at *Cassander's* instigation, who (to hasten the execution) sent her word, that he would furnish her with a ship, and other necessities, to save her self by flight: which when she refused, saying, that she would plead for her self, and tell her own tale, he dissembled no longer, but sent unto her such men, as hated her most, who took away her miserable life. She was daughter, and sister, unto two Kings of *Epirus*; wife, and mother, unto two the mightiest Kings, of that, or many other ages; a stout Lady, and of unreplicable chastity; but her ambition was boundlesse, her hatred unappeasable, and her fury in revenge most unwomanly. Her perverse conditions made her husband seek other wives and Concubines, which caused her to hate both him, and them. She was thought privie to her husbands death; after which, very cruelly she slew his late wife *Cleopatra*, having first murdered one of her two children in her armes, and with a beastly fury broiled the other alive in fire, in a copper bason. For these things, her son *Alexander* (otherwise loving her well) forbade her to meddle in the government of *Macedon*. But God, more severe unto cruell Tyrants, than only to hinder them of their wils, permitted her to live and fulfill the rest of her wickedness, (which was his justice upon the adulteries of *Philip*, and the oppression done by him and others,) after all which, He rewarded her malice, by returning it upon her own head.

## † IV.

*Cassander celebrates the funerall of Aridæus and Eurydice; and seeks to make himself King of Macedon.*

**A**fter her death, *Cassander* gave honourable buriall to *Aridæus* and *Eurydice*, among their Progenitors, Kings of *Macedon*. And looking further into his own possibilities of greatness, he married the Lady *Thessalonica*, whom he had taken at *Pydna*, being the daughter of King *Philip*, by another of his wives; that by her he might have some title to the Crown. For the same end he committed *Roxane*, and her young son to close prison, removing thereby some part of his impediment. And, the better to encrease his fame, and purchase love, built a City, called by his own name *Cassandria*, that soon grew to be very great and powerfull. He re-edified likewise *Thebes* in *Greece*, and restored it unto the old inhabitants; after it had lain twenty years waste, being utterly razed by *Alexander*. By these means, especially by the restoration of *Thebes*, whereunto all *Greece* voluntarily contributed, he grew so strong, that few remained enemies unto him; and they, with much labour, hardly could resist him. Leaving him therefore daily prevailing in *Greece*, we will return to them, who contended in *Asia*, for lesse titles, but larger Provinces, with greater forces.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IIII.

*Of the great Lordship which ANTIGONUS got in Asia.*

## §. I.

*The journey of Eumenes into Persia. His wife dealing with those that joyned with him.*



**E**UMENES, having joyned unto his company the *Argyraspidæ*, made haste into the Eastern parts, to take possession of those Countries, according to his commission, and strengthen himself against *Antigonus*. Hee took his journey through *Calasyria* and *Phœnicia*, hoping to reclaim those Provinces, usurped with the rest of *Syria* (as hath been shewed) by *Ptolomy*, to the Kings obedience. But to effect this, his haste of his passing forward was too great, his Army too little, and the readinesse of the people, to return their due obedience, none at all. Besides all which impediments, one inconvenience troubled him in all his proceedings, making them the lesse effectuall. The Captains of the *Argyraspidæ* were so froward, that they scorned to repair to him, and take his directions; and their fidelity was so unsteady, that he might more easily have dealt with open traitors. It was not expedient, that he, being General, should weaken his authority by courting them; neither lay it in his power to keep them in order by cōpulsion. Therefore he feigned that *Alexander* had appointed unto him, in a dream, a place for their meeting, namely, in a rich pavilion, wherein an emperie throne was placed, as if *Alexander* himself had been present at their consultations. Thus he freed himself from their vain pride; but of their faith he could have no assurance. Yet when *Ptolomy* requested them, and *Antigonus* bribed them to forsake him, they continued (though not without considering of the matter) to take his part. So he marched on, sending before him the Kings warrant; which *Pytho* and *Seleucus* refused to obey; not as rejecting the Kings authority, but excepting the person of *Eumenes*, as a man condemned to die by the *Macedonian* Army, for the death of *Craterus*. *Eumenes*, knowing well that he was not to rely upon their assistance, who stood otherwise affected than his affairs required, and were not to be dealt with by persuasion, sought passage by strong hand through the Countrey of *Babylon*, in such wise that *Seleucus*, having in vain assaied to hinder him, by opening the sluices of *Euphrates*, was glad at length to grant him friendly way, as desirous to be rid of him. Thus he came to *Pencefes* and the rest of the Eastern Lords, who were glad of his company, because of the differences between *Pytho*, *Seleucus*, and themselves. Yet the contention about superiority grew very hot among them, every one finding matter enough to feed his own humour of self-worthinesse. But the former device of assembling in one pavilion, made all quiet; the conclusion ever being sure to follow that which *Eumenes* propounded, who was both wisest in giving advice, and best able to reward, by means of the authority given him, to take what he pleased of the Kings treasures. By these means he won to himself many of those, who had most power to doe good or hurt.

## §. II.

*How Antigonus, coming to set upon Eumenes, was driven off with losse.*

**A***ntigonus*, hearing that *Eumenes* lay in the Province of *Susa*, had an earnest desire to follow him, and drive him further from the Kings treasures, which were kept there. To which end, as soon as he had made himself strong enough, he removed out of *Mesopotamia*, where he had wintered; and taking to him *Pytho* and *Seleucus*, with their men, he marched directly against the enemies, with intent to give them battell. *Eumenes* had fortified the Castle of *Susa*, and was retired back toward *Persia*, keeping the River of *Tigris* between him and his pursuers. The passages of the River were well guarded, and good espiall kept upon *Antigonus*, to observe which way he took.

Eccc 3

Before

Before he came to *Tigris* it self, he was to passe over *Coprates*, a great River, and not foordable, which he fought to doe by small vessels, whereof he had no great store. A great part of his Army had gotten over, when *Eumenes*, who kept a bridge upon *Tigris*, came with a thousand horse, and four thousand foot, to see their demeanour: and finding them out of order, charged them, brake them, and drave them headlong back into *Coprates*, wherein most of them were drowned; very few escaping with life, except four thousand that yielded themselves prisoners in sight of *Antigonus*, that was not able to relieve them. This losse made *Antigonus* glad to fall off; and the heat of that Countrie in the dog-dayes, breeding diseases in his Army, by which many perished, caused him to remove as farre as into *Media*. So he took *Pythion* with him; (leaving *Seleucus* to besiege the Castle of *Susa*) and seeking to go the neerest way, passed through savage Nations, that continually vexing him with skirmishes, slew great numbers of his men, before he could arrive in *Media*, with his troupes that were quite heart-broken.

## s. III.

Of *Eumenes* his cunning. A battell between him and *Antigonus*.

After his departure, *Eumenes* with his associates fell into consultation, about the remainder of their businesse. Fain he would have had them to enter upon those Provinces, vvvhich *Antigonus* had left behind him; to vvvhich also the Captains of the *Argyraspides* or Silver-shield: were very inclinable, as desiring to draw neerer to *Greece*. But *Peucestes*, and the rest, whose dominions lay in the high Countries, had more care of their own particular Estates, and would needs march Eastward. These carried it; for the Army was not strong enough to divide it self into parts.

When they came into *Persia*, *Peucestes*, ruling there, feasted them royally, and fought by all means to win the Souldiers love to himself. *Eumenes* perceiving whereunto those doings tended, suffered him a while to keep good cheer, till the time of war drew neer. Then did he feign an Epistle, directed, as from *Orontes* Governor of *Armenia*, to *Peucestes* himself: The purport whereof was; that *Olympus* had vanquished *Cassander*, and sent over a great Army under *Polyperchon*, to joyn with *Eumenes*. These newes, as they filled the Camp with vain joy, so they wrought in all mens minds a great willingness to obey *Eumenes*, by whom was the likeliest appearance of their preferment, wherein they dealt wisely, hee being farre the most sufficient Commander, as they found soon after. For when *Antigonus*, coming out of *Media*, drew neer unto them, *Eumenes* by some mischance was fallen sick, and fain to be carried in a Litter; the Army marched in very bad array, and was likely to have been forced to take battell in that disorder. But *Eumenes*, when the rest of the Captains were amazed, was carried about the Army in his Litter, and upon the sudden did cast his men into so good form, that *Antigonus*, perceiving him a far off, could not refrain from giving him deserved commendations. Yet he did not cease to promise great rewards to the Captains, and all sorts of men, if they would forsake *Eumenes*: which hopes deceiving him, he came to the triall of a battell. *Eumenes* had more Elephants than *Antigonus*; otherwise, he was inferior in number both of horse and foot by a third part. The battell was fought with variable success, and great losse on both sides, continuing a great part of the day, and of the night following. Yet the victory was uncertain. For *Eumenes* could not force his men to lye farre from their carriages: by which means *Antigonus* (who had a more absolute command over his) incamping on the ground whereon they fought, had in his power the dead bodies, which was accounted the sign of victory; for he buried his own, and gave leave to his enemies craving it, to do the like. But a greater sign of victory had *Eumenes*. For he abode still in the same place, and not only buried his men very honourably, at great leisure, but held the Countrie round about; whereas *Antigonus* was glad (having tarried but one day) to steal away by night, and return into *Media*, from whence he came.



## s. IV. of

## s. IV.

Of divers stratagems practised by *Antigonus*, and *Eumenes*, one against the other.

Thus did the Warre continue doubtfull, and was protracted to a greater length, each part having stout Souldiers, and skillfull Generalls: but the side which had hitherto prevailed, being hindered by the equall authority of many, from pursuing all advantages to the best, *Antigonus* grew daily weaker, in men and reputation, so that to repair himself he could find no way safer, than to put all to adventure. He knew that his enemies lay in their wintering places, quartered far asunder, so that if hee could suddenly come among them, he was likely to put them in great distress. Between him and them, the way was not long, being only nine daies journey, but very bad, through a rough drie wilderness, hardly passable. Another way, fairer and leading through a Country well peopled, but requiring 25. daies journey, he forsook, partly for the length, partly, and chiefly, because he would come undiscovered. So therefore taking his journey in the dead of winter, he forbade unto his men the use of fire by night, because he would not have them desiered a farre off. This commandement had been well observed four or five daies, when continuance of time (as commonly) breeding negligence, and the cold weather pinching them, they were bold to cherish themselves, being neer to their waies end. The light of these fires gave notice of their coming; which being reported to *Peucestes*, and other Captains, they were so astonished with the sudden danger, that in all haste they betook themselves to flight. But *Eumenes*, meeting with the newes, began to hearten his affrighted companions, promising to make *Antigonus* march leisurely, and willing them to abide, and draw up their men together. They could scarce believe him; yet they were content to be ruled, and did as he appointed, who failed not in making his word good. He took with him some companies of the readiest men, wherewith hee occupied certain tops of mountains, looking toward the Camp of *Antigonus*: there he chose a convenient ground to incamp upon, and made great store of fires in sundry places, as if the whole Armie had been present. This was a sorrowfull spectacle to *Antigonus*, who thought himself prevented of his purpose, and began to fear lest he should be compelled to fight, whilst his men were tired with a long and painful journey. Therefore he resolved to turn aside, and take the way to such places, as might better serve to refresh his Army. This he did with great care and circumspection, at the first, as knowing how ready *Eumenes* would be upon all advantages. But after a while, considering that no enemy stirred about him, he began to pause, and think in himself, that somewhat or other was not fallen out according to his opinion. To be the better informed in the matter, he caused some Inhabitants of that desert to be taken, and brought before him; of whom hee learned, that they had seen no other Army than his thereabout, but only a few men that kept fires on the hill tops. It vexed him exceedingly to find that hee had been so deluded. Therefore he went against these troupes with great fury, meaning to take sharp vengeance on them, for having so deceived him. But by this time, sufficient strength was arrived there, which could not be forced without much businesse, and long stay. All the Army was come, save only *Endamus*, Captain of the Elephants, who, besides those beasts, had no more than four hundred horsemen in his company. *Antigonus* hearing of this supply coming to his enemies, sent above two thousand horse, and all his light-armed foot-men, to cut it off by the way. *Endamus* being fallen into this danger, was faine to place his Elephants round about his carriages, and so to defend himself as well as he could; for his horsemen, overlaid with multitudes, were quickly broken, and driven to run away upon the spur. Neither knew they, who fate upon the Elephants, which way to turn them, for on all sides they received wounds, and were not able to requite them with the like. In this extremity there appeared brave troupes of horse and foot, that came unexpected to the rescue; and charging the assailants upon the back, drave them to seek their own safety by speedy flight. These were sent by *Eumenes*; who though he knew not what his adversary meant to do, yet he knew very well what was fittest for him to doe; and therefore, playing both games himself, provided the remedy.

## s. V. The

S. V.

*The conspiracie of Peucestes and others, against Eumenes his life.*

**B**Y these means *Eumenes* wonne great honour, and was by the whole Army acknowledged a most expert General, and well worthy of the chief command. But *Peucestes*, and the other Captains, guilty of their own much insufficiency, were so transported with envie, that they could no longer contain their vile thoughts, but held communication, as upon a necessary point, how they might find means to murder him.

Surely, it is great injustice to impute the mischief contrived against worthy men, to their own proud carriage, or some other ill deserving: For, though it often happen, that small vices do serve to counterpoise great virtues; (the sense of evill being more quick and lasting than of good) yet he shall bewray a very foolish malice, that, wanting other testimonie, will think it a part of wisdom, to find good reason of the evils done to virtuous men, which oftentimes have no other cause than vertue it self. *Eumenes*, among many excellent qualities, was noted to be of singular courtesie, of a very sweet conversation among his friends, and careful by all gentle means to win their love, that seemed to bear him any secret ill affection. It was his meere vertue that overthrew him, which even they that fought his life acknowledged. For they concluded that he should not be slain, before the battell were fought with *Antigonus*, wherein they confessed that it stood best with their safety, to be governed by his direction. Of this treason he was quickly advertised by *Eudamus*, to whom he had done many pleasures, and by some others of whom he used to borrow money when he needed not, to the end that they should be careful of his good, for fear of losing their own. Considering therefore, and discouraging with himself of the villany intended against him, he made his last Will, and burnt all his Writings that contained any matter of secret: which done, he revolved many things in his mind; being doubtfull what course he were best to follow. All the Nobles of the Empire stood ill affected to the Royall blood, excepting those which were with him, that were more in number than in worth. How things at that time stood in *Macedon* and *Greece*, either he knew not, or, knowing the truth, knew nothing that might encourage him to seek their help, that needed his. To make his own peace with *Antigonus*, had been against his faith to *Olympias*, and the Princes, that had committed this great power into his hands. For which cause also it may be thought, that he forbore either to lose the battell willingly, or to flee into *Cappadocia*, and make shift for himself among his old friends. At length he resolved to do his best against the common enemy, and afterwards to look to himself as well as he might.

S. VI.

*The last battell between Antigonus and Eumenes.*

**T**HE Souldiers, especially those old bands of the *Silver-shields*, finding *Eumenes* perplexed, and not knowing the cause, entreated him not to doubt of the victory, but only to bring them into the field, and set them in array; for the rest, they alone would take sufficient order. The like alacritie was generally found in the common Souldiers faces; but the chief Commanders were so mischievously bent against him, that they could not endure to think of being beholding to him for the victory. Yet he ordered the battell so well, that, without their own great fault, they could hardly fail of getting the upper hand.

Before the Armies came to joyning, a horse-man from the side of *Eumenes*, proclaimed with a loud voice unto the followers of *Antigonus*, That their wickedness in fighting against their own Fathers, would now be punished, as it well deserved. This was not spoken in vain. For the *Silver-shields* were men of threescore or seventy years old, and strengthened more by continuall exercise, than decayed by age, and excelling in courage, as having passed through greater dangers, than any like to be presented in that fight.

Therefore *Antigonus* his men (who had often been beaten by them, and were now to trye their last hope with these resolute warriors, the most Ancient and best regarded of

all

all *Alexanders* Souldiers) grew very pensive, and advanced heavily, suspecting their own cause, and fearing that the threatnings uttered would prove true.

*Antigonus* was now againe far the stronger in horse, which gave him cause of great hope; the ground, on which they were to fight, being a plain levelled field. Placing therefore himself and his son *Demetrius* in the right wing, and committing the left wing to *Pythos*, he did set forward courageously against the Enemies, that were ready to give him a sharp entertainment.

*Eumenes* took unto him *Peucestes*, with the rest of the Lords, and stood in the left wing of his battail, in the face of *Antigonus*; meaning both to prevent the Traitors, his Companions, of all means to make head against him on the sudden; and (withall) to give proof of his own valour, which perhaps he should no more doe, in the face of all his Enemies. In the right wing, opposite unto *Pythos*, he bestowed the weakest of his horse and Elephants, under one *Philip*, an honest man, and (which was enough at such a time) obedient: commanding him to protract the fight, and make a reasonable retreat, expecting the event of the other side.

So they joyned very fiercely; *Antigonus*, labouring to make himself master of all; *Eumenes*, to die an honourable death, or to win such a victory upon his open enemies, as might give him leisure and opportunity to deal with his false friends.

The footmen of *Antigonus*, being even in their own opinions, far inferior to those whom they must encounter, were at the first brunt presently defeated by the *Silver-shields*, who slew above five thousand of them, losing of their own not one man. But in Horse, *Eumenes* was so over-matched, that he could not repell *Antigonus*, who pressed him very hard, but was faine to stand wholly upon defence. Yet his courage wrought so well by example, among his followers, that the Enemy could not win one foot of ground upon him, untill such time as *Peucestes*, with one thousand five hundred Horse, withdrew himself out of the battell, leaving his companions fighting to defend his back.

Then did *Eumenes* desperately rush amongst his Enemies, labouring to break open the way unto *Antigonus* himself. And though he failed of his purpose; yet with great slaughter he did so beat upon them which came in his way, that the victory hung a long time in suspense, uncertain which way to incline.

The ground whereon they fought, being of a slight sandie mould, through the trampling of horses, men, and Elephants, did cast up such a cloud of dust, as hindered the prospect, so that no man could see what was done a little from him. *Antigonus* finding this advantage, dispatched away some companies of horse, that passed undiscovered beyond *Eumenes* his battails, and came to his carriages; which lay about half a mile from the place of fight, slenderly guarded, (for that the whole body of the Army lay between them and danger) and therefore easily taken: Had *Peucestes* retired himself no further than unto the carriages, he might not only have defended them, but peradventure have surprised those which came to surprize them, and so have done as good a piece of service as a better man. But he was gotten somewhat further, to a place, where out of danger he might expect the event: and *Eumenes* was so over-laboured both in body and mind, that he could not possibly give an eye to every place, being not well able to continue where he was.

It happened so, that the Elephants meeting together, those of *Antigonus* had the better hand; whereupon *Eumenes*, finding himself every way over-charged, began to give back, and withdrew himself and his companies in good order, to the other side of the battail, where *Philip* (as he was directed) had by fighting and retiring together, kept that wing from losse. The *Antigonians* had felt so much of *Eumenes* that day, that they were well content to let him depart quietly, and wished not to see him come again, as faine he would have done.

The losse of the carriages was reported unto him, as soon as he had any leisure to hear how things went: whereupon he presently ordered his men for a fresh charge, and sent for *Peucestes* that was not far off, requesting him to bring in his men, and renew the fight, whereby he trusted, not only to recover their own goods, but to enrich themselves with the spoils of the enemies. *Peucestes* not only refused to joyn with him, but immediately withdrew himself into a safer place, where he might be further from such dangerous temptations.

By

By this the night grew on; and both Armies, wearied with fighting, were desirous to return into their Camps. Yet *Antigonus* conceived hope of doing somewhat more, and therefore taking half his horsemen, he waited upon *Eumenes* a part of his way homewards, but found no opportunity to offend him: the other half he committed to *Python*, willing him to set upon the *Silver-shields* in their retreat; which yet he forbore to do, because it appeared too full of danger. So the battail ended; wherein *Antigonus* had not so much the better in horse, as the worse in foot: but the spoil which he got, by surprising his enemies carriages, made amends for all his other losses.

## s. VII.

*How Eumenes was betrayed to Antigonus, and slain.*

**E**umenes, coming into his Camp, and finding the *Silver-shields* extremely discontented with their misfortune, began to cheer them up, and put them in hope of recovering all with advantage. For their brave demeanour that day had so crushed the enemy, that he had no power left, wherewith to abide them in open field, and was much lesse able to draw their Carts after him, through that great wilderness, over the high mountains.

But these persuasions availed nothing. *Peucestes* was gone; the other Captains would needs return into the high Countries; and the Souldiers had no desire either to flee or to fight, but only to recover their goods. Wherefore *Tentamus*, one of the two Captains of the *Silver-shields*, (who had in former times readily consented unto traitorous motions, in hope of gain, but was letted by his partner *Antigenes*) finding, as he thought, a fit occasion of making himself great, and winning the love of those bands, dealt secretly with *Antigonus*, requesting him to restore unto those old Souldiers their goods, which he had taken, being the onely reward of their services, in the wars of *Philip* and *Alexander*.

*Antigonus*, as a subtle man, knew very well, that they which requested more than they had reason to expect, would also with little entreatie, perform a great deal more than they promised; and therefore he lovingly entertained the messengers, filling them with hopes of far greater matter than they desired, if they would put *Eumenes* into his hands, by whom they were seduced to make war against him. This answer pleased them so well, that they forthwith devised how to deliver him alive. Wherefore coming about him, as at other times, to do their dutie, and pretending more joy of their victory, than sorrow of their losse, which they said they would redeem by another fight, in the midst of this goodly talk, they leapt upon him, caught hold of his sword, and bound him fast. So they haled him away, and stopping their ears against all persuasions, would not yeeld so far, as to loosen one of his hands, and let him kill himself, but brought him alive (that was their own Generall, under whom they had obtained many victories) as it had been in triumph, into the Camp of their enemies.

The presse of men, running out of the Camp to see him, was so great, that *Antigonus* was faine to send a guard of horse-men and Elephants, to keep him from being smothered; whom he could not suddenly resolve, either to kill or save. Very few they were that sued for his life, but of these, *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus* was one; the rest were desirous to be rid of him quickly, thinking belike, that if he were saved, he would soon be the chief in reputation, for his great ability. So after long deliberation, *Antigonus* concluded that it was the safest way to put him to death; which intending to have done by famine (perhaps because he would keep it a while in his own power, to reverse the sentence, as desiring, if it might be, to have him live his friend) haste of other business made him do it by the sword.

To this end came all the travails of that worthy Generall *Eumenes*, who had with great wisdom, fidelity, and patience, laboured in vain to uphold the family which God had purposed to cast down. He is reckoned among the notable examples of Fortunes mutability, but more notable was his government of himself, in all her changes. Adversity never lessened his courage, nor prosperity his circumspection. But all his vertue, industry, and wit, were cast away, in leading an Army, without full power, to keep it in due obedience. Therefore it was not ill answered by *Gaspard de Coligny*, Admirall of France in our daies, to one that foretold his death, which ensued soon after in the massacre

facre of Paris; That rather than to lead again an Army of Voluntaries, he would die a thousand times.

*Antigonus* himself gave to the body of *Eumenes* honourable Funerall; and rewarded the Treason, wrought against him, with deserved vengeance. One chief Captain of the *Silver-shields* he burnt alive; many of the other Captains he slew; and to the whole multitude of the *Silver-shields*, that had betrayed so worthy a Commander, he appointed a Leader that should carry them into far Countries, under pretence of wars; but with a privie charge, to consume them all, as perjured wretches, letting none of them return alive unto his friends and kindred, or so much as once behold the Seas that beat upon the shores of Greece and Macedon.

## s. VIII.

*How Antigonus slew Python, and occupied Media. How he removed Governours of Provinces, and made himself Lord of Persia, carrying away Peucestes.*

**T**he two Armies being joyned thus in one, were carried into *Media*, where they spent the rest of the Winter: the common Souldier idly; the principall men intently bent unto the business ensuing. *Python* began to consider his own desertings; for the whole war had been chiefly maintained by the strength and riches of his Province. Besides, he thought himself as good a man as *Antigonus*, unless it were in the Souldiers opinion, which he judged easie to be purchased with gifts, and therefore spared not to assay them with great liberality. But in following this course he was driven by necessity to trust many, of whom he stumbled upon some, that were unsecret, and others, bearing him no sincere affection. Thus was his purpose discovered to *Antigonus*, who (nothing like to *Python*) dissembled his indignation, and rebuked the informers, as breeders of dissention between him, and his honourable friend, unto whom he meant to commit the Government of all those Countries: his own business calling him into the lower Asia. These reports, coming daily to his ears, did finely delude *Python*: By his greatness with *Alexander*, his authority in that Province where they lay, whereof he was Governour, and the love of the Souldiers which he had bought with money; he was strong enough to maintain, even an offensive war. But what need had he to use the sword, when he was likely without contention, to obtain more than his own asking? Therefore he came as soon as he was sent for, to take his farewell of *Antigonus*, and to divide the Provinces with him; that meant nothing lesse than to yeeld to any such division. As soon as he came, he was taken, and accused, condemned to die; and slain out of hand. For *Antigonus*, having begun with *Eumenes* his ancient friend, was not afterward restrained by any consideration of old acquaintance, from cutting down indifferently all that stood in his way: but swam carelessly through the blood, wherein at the first he doubtfully waded.

When this business was ended, he appointed a new Governour in *Media*, to order the Province, and a Captain, to suppress all commotions: thinking belike, that the power and authority, so divided, would hardly agree in one against him, from whom both were derived.

After this he marched into *Persia*, where he was entertained as absolute Lord of Asia. There began he to shew how well he understood his own mightinesse. For he placed and displaced at his own pleasure, Governours in all Provinces, leaving none in Office, that were not his own creatures, except such as lay too far off to bee dislodged easily.

*Peucestes*, who ruled in *Persia*, thought with good cheer to redeem old offences, but was deceived, having to doe with one that could not be taken with such baits: hee was carried away, and feasted with goodly words of promise, that never after took effect. Thus he, that envied the vertue of his friend, was driven to flatter (in vain) the fortune of his enemy, after which he led a most contemptible life, till he died obscurely a man forgotten.

## s. IX. How



## §. IX.

*How Seleucus was chased out of Babylon by Antigonus. The great riches of Antigonus.*

**S**eleucus was the next in this visitation; one that had from time to time continued in the same tenor of good will to *Antigonus*, and now gave proof of his hearty affection toward him, by making the Captain of the Castle of *Susa* to meet him on the way, rendering unto him that strong Peece, and all the treasures therein bestowed. This offer was so great, that *Antigonus* (though having in his hands the Keeper of the place) could hardly beleve it; but used him with excessive kindnesse, for fear so good a mood should change. In that Castle he found all the treasures of *Alexander*, with the Jewels of the *Persian* Kings, which, added to his former store of money, made up 15 thousand talents. Having all this, he might well account himself a happy man, if riches were sufficient to happinesse. But large dominion was the marke at which he aimed; therefore he proceeded, with intent to leave no Country behind his back, that should not acknowledge him for Sovereign Lord. Comming to *Babylon*, he was entertained by *Seleucus* with all possible demonstration of love, and honoured with presents befitting the Majesty of a King. All this he accepted with great gravity, as being due to him, and began to require an account of the revenues of that Province. This demand *Seleucus* held unreasonable, saying, That it was not deedfull for him to render unto any man an account of that Province, which was given unto him, in respect of his many good services to the State. But whether he spake reason or no, it sufficed, that *Antigonus* was powerfull; who urged him daily to come to a reckoning. Manifest it was, that neither want of money, nor any other necessity, moved *Antigonus* to presse him thus, but onely the desire to pick matter of quarrell against him, whereof it was likely that he should find such issue, as *Pytho* and *Pencestes* had done. Therefore taking with him only fifty horse, he conveyed himself away, and fled into *Ptolomy*'s Dominions; desiring him to protect him from such a man as went about to oppresse all, that in former times had been his betters, or at least his equals. *Antigonus* was glad of his flight; for now all those Countries were yielded unto him without battail, whereas to fight with *Seleucus* for them, he wanted all pretence, and to kill him it was not his desire, having received many benefits of him, and those not intermixed, as commonly it happens, with any injuries. Yet it is reported, that the *Chaldeans* brought a strange Prophecie to *Antigonus*, bidding him look well to himself, and know, that if *Seleucus* did escape his hands, he should recover *Babylon*, yea, win all *Asia*, and kill *Antigonus* in battail. Easie beleivers may give credit to this tale. Had it been true, methinks, *Antigonus* rather should have hanged those *Chaldeans*, for giving him no warning till it was too late, than sent pursuers (as they say that he did) after him, whom the destinies preserved for so great purposes. When he had settled things at *Babylon*, he took his journey into *Cilicia*, where he wintered. There he took up ten thousand talents more of the Kings treasures, and casting his accounts, found his yearly in-come to amount unto eleven thousand Talents.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the great War between ALEXANDERS Captains: and how they assumed the name and state of Kings.*

## §. I.

*The combination of Ptolomy, Cassander, and others against Antigonus. Their demands, and his answer.*

**T**His great riches, and the rest of his power, made *Antigonus* dreaded, envied, and suspected, whereby he quickly was embarked in a new War. *Ptolomy*, *Cassander*, and *Lyfimachus*, had privily combined themselves together, intending to hinder his further growth, and bring him to more reason than of his own accord he seemed like to yield unto. Of their practices he had some notice; the good

good entertainment given unto *Seleucus*, giving him sufficient cause of mistrust. Therefore he sent Embassadors to them severally, entreating them to continue firm in their love toward him, that would be ready to requite them with the like. The cold answers which they made, occasioned his hasty preparation against the most forward of them, which was *Ptolomy*, it being likely that a good Army should prevail more than a fair message. Therefore, as soon as the season of the year would permit, he took the way toward *Syria*, &c. was encountred by Embassage from them all. These told him, that their Lords did much rejoyce at his victory, obtained against *Emenes* their common enemy, and the honour that he had thereby gotten. In which war, forasmuch as they being his Confederates, must have endured great losse, with hazard of their whole Estates, if the contrary faction had prevailed; they held it very just, that all should be partakers in the fruits of that voyage, wherein they had been all adventurers. Wherefore they desired him, that making between them all an equall division of the treasures that were in his hands, (a thing easie to be done) he would also take some convenient order for enlarging their Dominions, according to the rate of his new purchases. This might best be to every ones liking, if he would make over *Cappadocia*, with *Lycia*, to *Cassander*; and *Phrygia*, bordering upon the *Hellefpont*, to *Lyfimachus*: for whereas his own Dominions were so much extended Eastward by his late victory, he might well spare some of those Western Provinces, to those that were seated in the West. As for *Ptolomy*, he would not crave any new addition, but rest contented within his own Territories. Provided alwaies, that *Seleucus* their common friend, and partner in the late warre, might be restored to his own; out of which he had been driven so injuriously, that all of them were forced to take it deeply to heart; requiring amends, with his friendly consent unto their demands, which otherwise they must labour to obtain with armed hands.

*Antigonus* knew, that after many losses received, he should yet be able to redeem peace whensoever he listed, with these, or perhaps with easier conditions. Neither was hee so weak, to give away quietly any part of his strength into the hands of such bad friends, for fear only, lest it should be taken from him perforce. Rather he hoped that he should be able to find them work, more than enough to defend their own. Therefore he roundly answered the Embassadors, that it was no part of his meaning to communicate with other men the profit of that victory, which he alone without other means could have obtained. Though indeed they had already sufficiently gained by him, if they help hee it, having by his means kept their governments, whereof they were like to be dispossessed by *Polisperchon*, and the councill of estate in *Macedon*. But what marvell was it, if they considered not how he had saved them, seeing one of them had forgotten the time, when comming to him as a fugitive, and begging succour, he was by his meer bounty relieved, and enabled to get all that he now held? *Cassander* did not (said he) in those dayes command me to surrender Provinces, and give him his equall share of my treasures; but (for his Fathers sake) desired me to pity him, and help him against his enemies: which I did; by lending him an army, and Fleet, on confidence whereof hee now presumes to threaten me. As for *Seleucus*, how can he complain of wrong, that durst not stay to plead his right? I did use him well; but his conscience told him that he had deserved ill: else he would not have fled. Let them that so curiously search into my doings, consider well their own, which some of them can hardly justifie. I am now in the way to *Syria*, meaning to examine *Ptolomies* proceedings, and after him to deal with others, if they continue to provoke me.

## §. II.

*The preparation and beginnings of the Wars.*

**V**hen the Embassadors were dismissed with this answer, nothing was thought upon but Warre. *Antigonus* perceiving that he should be invaded from *Europe*, as soon as he was entred into *Syria*; left his Nephew *Ptolomy* to guard the Sea-coast, and hinder *Cassander* from landing in *Asia*: giving him also charge, to drive out of *Cappadocia* some that were already sent over to molest him. Likewise he dispatched Messengers into *Greece* and *Cyprus*, not unfurnished of money; to draw friends to his side, and raise up troubles to his enemies. Especially, he laboured to

FFFf

make

make himself the strongest by Sea; to which purpose he rather hastened, than foreflowed his journey into *Syria*, that he might get possession of Mount *Libanus*, which afforded many excellent commodities for building of a Navie. Therefore, having erected Beacons, & laid post-horses throughout all *Asia*, to give swift advertisement of all occurrences, he invaded *Syria*, that was not held against him by any power sufficient to maintain the field.

*Ptolomy* lay in *Egypt*, the strength and heart of his Dominion, where he was beloved and honoured of the people as their naturall Lord: his other Provinces he kept with a few Garrisons, better serving to contain the people within obedience, than to confront a foreign enemy. So *Antigonus* took many Cities and Places of that Country, and began to set great numbers of Artificers on work in making ships, which was one of his most earnest cares. In these businesses he consumed a year and three moneths; not idly. For hee took *Foppe*, and *Gaza*, which were yeelded unto his discretion, and well used. The strong City of *Tyrrus* held out long, but was compelled in the end by famine, to render it self upon composition, that *Ptolomies* Souldiers might depart with their Arms, which was permitted.

*Ptolomy* was not asleep, whilest these things were in doing, though he kept himself within the bounds of *Egypt*, as indeed it behooved him to doe. His forces were not able to stand against *Antigonus* in plain field, but likely they were to increase, which made him willing to protract the time. Nevertheless by Sea (where his enemy was as yet unread) he sent his Fleet into all quarters, whereof *Seleucus* had the chief command.

*Seleucus* passed with an hundred sail along the coast of *Syria*, in the full view of *Antigonus*, and his Army, to their no little discomfort. He landed in *Cyprus*, which was then governed by many petty Lords, of whom the greatest adhered to *Ptolomy*, the rest were by the Factors of *Antigonus*, bought for him with gold, but now redeemed by the *Egyptians* with sharp steel.

The same commodity of aid by Sea encouraged the President of *Caria* (called also *Cassander*, but not the son of *Antipater*, howsoever by the painfull and learned writer *Reimerus Reineccius*, he is, by some oversight, counted for the same) to declare for *Ptolomy* and his Confederates, and busily employ in their quarrell all his forces, which he had hitherto kept in good neutrality, and thereby enjoyed rest; but now he threw himself into dangerous war, choosing rather to undergoe trouble at hand, than to fall under certain ruine, though somewhat further distant, which would have overwhelmed him, if *Antigonus* had beaten all the rest.

### S. III.

How each party sought to win the assistance of Greece. Antigonus his declaration against Cassander. Alexander the son of Polyperchon revolteth from Antigonus who had set him up.

IN the mean season all care possible was taken on both sides, to assure unto them the people of Greece, whose aid, which way soever inclined, was of great importance. Herein at the first, *Antigonus* sped so well by large effusion of his treasure, that he drew to him the *Lacedemonians*, and other *Peloponnesians*, of whom he waged eight thousand, and caused *Polyperchon* (who had a good while made hard shifts) to rowle himself again, and taking upon him the title of Captain of *Peloponnesus*, to make head against *Cassander*.

These hopefull beginnings encouraged him to proceed further in the same kind. Wherefore to make *Cassander* the more odious, he called together both his own Souldiers, and all the *Greeks* and *Macedonians* that were to be found thereabouts. To these he declared, that *Cassander* had very cruelly slain *Olympias*, mother to the great *Alexander*, and not herewith contented, had shut up in close prison the poor Lady *Roxane*, *Alexanders* wife, and his sonne begotten on her body. That all this proceeded from a desire to make himself King over the *Macedonians*; which well appeared by his enforcing the Lady *Thestalonica*, Daughter to King *Philip*, a match unfit for a man of no greater parentage than he, to joyne with him in marriage. That in meer despight of those dead Princes, *Philip* and *Alexander*, he had planted the *Olynthians*, rooted out by *Philip*, in a new City by him built, and called by his own name *Cassandria*; and had re-edified the City of *Thebes*, which for the great treason of the Inhabitants, was levelled with the ground by

by the victorious hand of *Alexander*. For these reasons he required them to make a decree, that *Cassander* should restore to absolute liberty the Lady *Roxane*, and her son; and should yeeld obedience to the Lord Lieutenant Generall of the Empire, (by which name *Antigonus* himself was understood) or else should be reputed a Traitor, and open Enemy to the State. Furthermore he propounded, that all the Cities of Greece should be restored into freedom: this hee did, not because he was carefull of their good, but for the need which he had of their assistance.

These things being decreed, *Antigonus* was perswaded, that not onely the *Greeks* would adhere unto him, as to their loving Patron, and fall off from *Cassander*; but that the rulers of Provinces, who had hitherto suspected him as a man regardfull of nothing but his own benefit, would correct their opinion, and think him the most faithfull of all others to the Royall blood. But concerning his loyalty to the young Prince, the world was too wise to be deceived with vain shews. His undertaking for the liberty of the *Greeks* was more effectually, and got easie belief, in regard of his present hatred to *Cassander*. Yet herein also *Ptolomy* strove to be as earnest as he, making the like decree, in hope to win to himself that valiant Nation, which afforded him far more serviceable in war, than were to be found in any Province of the Empire.

And this indeed was the point at which both sides aimed. Wherein *Antigonus* thinking to make all sure, deceived himself, not without great cost. For he gave to *Alexander* the son of *Polyperchon* five hundred talents, willing him to set the war on foot in *Peloponnesus*, whereby it might appear, that on his side was meant nothing else, than what was openly pretended.

In *Peloponnesus*, *Cassanders* men had with much blood-shed, grievously afflicted the contrary faction, and he himself perceiving, that they were more easily spoiled as enemies, than retained as friends, thought it the best way to make what use he could of them, that were not long like to continue his. Finally, perceiving that *Alexander* came furnished with plentie of gold, wherewith he was able, not onely to win the doubtful, but to corrupt such as might seem best assured; he thought it a part of wisdom, to surrender upon fair conditions, that which he could not assure himself to hold any long time by force. Therefore he sent one to deal with *Alexander* about the matters in controversy; telling him, that *Antigonus* was very skilfull in setting men together by the ears, not caring who prevailed, but only desiring to have them weary themselves, whilest he was busied elsewhere; that so at length he might find opportunity to set upon the stronger. If therefore *Alexander* were so wise, as to keep in his purse the five hundred talents which he had, and without stroke stricken, to receive the whole Lordship of *Peloponnesus*, it should be freely put into his hands by *Cassander*. Provided, that he should from thenceforth renounce all confederacy made with *Antigonus*, and enter into a sure and faithfull league with *Ptolomy*, *Cassander*, and the rest of the Confederates. Otherwise he might well perswade himself, that the Country which his Father could not keep, when he was the Lieutenant of the Empire, should not in haste be won by him, that was onely the Factor of a proud injurious man, so stiling himself, but not acknowledged by others.

*Alexander* had lived a while with *Antigonus* since the beginning of these wars; among whos followers it was not hard to discover the intent, (which he did not carry very secretly) of making himself absolute Lord of all. Therefore he was soon entreated to accept so good an offer, and did not stick to enter into that league, whereby he was to become a free Lord, and subject unto no mans controll.

Howbeit, this his honour continued not long, ere he lost both it and his life together, by treason of the *Sicyonians*; who thinking thereby to have made themselves free, were soon after vanquished in battall by *Cratepolis*, *Alexanders* wife, a discreet and valiant Lady. She in revenge of her husbands death, crucified thirty of the Citizens taken in fight, and having by severity taught them obedience, did afterwards continue her Army in good order, and governed those places that she held, with the commendation of her Subjects and Neighbours.

## s. III.

*The Ætolians rise against Cassander in favour of Antigonus, and are beaten. A fleet and land-army of Antigonus utterly defeated by Ptolomies Lieutenant. In what termes the war stood at this time. Antigonus draws neerer to Greece.*

**A**ntigonus, when he found, that with so much money he had only bought an enemy, began to raise troubles to Cassander and his other adversaries in Greece, by stirring up the Ætolians against them: Likewise he laboured to win to his party the Islands in the Greek Seas, by whose assistance he might be the better able to deal with Ptolomy, that greatly prevailed by reason of his strong Fleet. But neither of these attempts had the success he expected. The Ætolians, a factious Nation, and always envying the greatness of their Neighbours, were often in commotion, but so, that commonly their gains equalled not their losses. Cassander won some of their own Country, fortified the Acarnanians against them, and compelled Glaucias, King of the Thyrans, whom he vanquished in battail, to forsake their side, and bind himself to bear no Armes against Cassanders friends.

On the other side, as many petty Islands were drawn to joyn with Antigonus: so the Fleet of the Rhodians under Theodatus, who was Admirall to Antigonus, passing along the coast of Asia towards Cyprus, with an Army under conduct of Perilaus marching on the shore for mutuall assistance, was quite overthrowen by Ptolomies Navie. Polyclytus, who in Ptolomies behalf had been sent into Peloponnesus against Alexander, finding no need of his service in that Country, because Alexander was come over to their side, returned homewards, and by the way heard of the course which these Antigonians held, whom he very cunningly surpris'd. He rode with his Fleet behind a Cape, which the enemies were to double; his Land-forces he placed in ambush, whereinto Perilaus falling was taken prisoner, with many of his men, and many were slain, making little resistance. Theodatus the Admirall perceiving this, made all haste to help his fellows that were on Land; but whilst he with all his Fleet were intentive onely to that business, Polyclytus appeared at their backs; who as soon as he perceived their disorder, hastened about the Cape, and charging them behind, suffered not one of them to escape him. These ill tidings caused Antigonus to deal with Ptolomy about some composition. First, he sent Embassadors; afterwards they met in person. But Antigonus would not yeeld unto the demands of Ptolomy: so the parley was vain.

Hitherto each part seemed to have indifferently sped in the war, and thereby to have equall cause of hope and fear. This late victory, with the good success of his affairs in Cyprus, did seem to make amends to Ptolomy for his losses in Syria. Likewise the revolt of Alexander from Antigonus did equal the confederacy made between the Ætolians and him; as also those petty skirmishes, that had been in Asia the lesse, to Antigonus his advantage, were sufficiently recompensed by others of like regard, but adverse to him, and by the troubles brought upon his estates in those parts by the two Cassanders.

Contrariwise, Antigonus valued the losse of his men, money, and ships, no otherwise than as the paring of his nails, that were left long enough, and would easily grow again; but the enlargement of his Territory by addition of Syria, he prized at a higher rate; as if thereby he had fed upon a limb of Ptolomy his enemy, and strengthened the body of his own Empire. Concerning other accidents, whereof the good were hitherto sufficient to counterpoize the bad, he meant to proceed as occasion should direct, which commonly is not long wanting to them, that want no money.

That which most molested him, was the attempts of his enemies upon Asia the lesse; wherein though as yet they had gotten little, yet had he cause to fear, lest the people, being tied unto him by no bond of allegiance, might upon small occasion revolt from him, to men of as honourable reputation as he himself. To prevent this, and to be neerer to Greece, he held it expedient for him to be there in person, where his affairs did seem to prosper the worse, by reason of his absence. Therefore he left part of his Army in Syria under his son Demetrius, to whom, being then but two and twenty yeers old, he appointed many ancient Captains as assistants, or rather as Directors: the rest he carried with him into Phrygia, where he meant to winter.

s. V. How

## s. V.

*How Lyfimachus and Cassander vanquished some enemies, raised against them by Antigonus. The good success of Antigonus in Asia and Greece: with the rebellion of many Cities against Cassander.*

**T**he coming of Antigonus into those parts, wrought a great alteration in the proceffe of his business thereabouts. For his enemies had short leisure to think upon molesting him in Asia: they themselves were held over-hardly to their own work on Europe side. Sentes a King of the Thracians, joyning with some Towns that rebelled against Lyfimachus, brought also the bordering Scythians into the quarrell. All these relied upon Antigonus, who was to help them with money and other aid. The Ætolians likewise took courage, and rose against Cassander, having Æacides, lately restored to the Kingdome of Epirus, their assistant. But Lyfimachus gave unto his Rebels no time to confirm themselves. He suddenly presented himself before two of the Cities that had rebelled, and compelled them by fear to return unto their former duty. Hee fought a battell with the Scythians, and wilde Thracians, and drave them out of the Country. Finally, hee overcame Sentes; and following the heat of his victory, slew Pausanias in battell, whom Antigonus had sent over with an Armie; and all his men he did either put to ransom, or fill up with them his own Bands. The like success he had Philip, Cassanders Lieutenant, against the Ætolians. For hee wasted their Country; fought with the Epirotes, that came to help them: and after the victory, fought again with their forces joyned in one, overthrowing them, and killing Æacides that unfortunate King. Finally, he drave the Ætolians out of most of their Country, and forced them to seek their safety among the wilde Mountains. Of the Epirotes hee sent as prisoners to Cassander, the principall authors of the Kings restitution, and of the present War.

Yet these actions required some time, and wearied Antigonus his adversaries with painfull travell; after which they remained onely savers. Antigonus himself at first leisure wan all Caria the whilst, and sent Armies into Peloponnesus, and other parts of Greece, bestowing liberty upon all the Cities hee took out of Cassanders hands. The whole Country of Peloponnesus (excepting Sicyon and Corinth) with the Isle of Eubœa, and many places of the firm Land, were by those means won to be his in true and vehement affection, ready to doe or suffer any thing for him that had made so evident a demonstration of his readinesse, to give them the liberty indeed, which others had promised in idle words. Many States desirous of the same benefit, would faine have shewed their good will; but they were kept in by Cassanders Garrisons, who was too wise to trust them loose. Therefore Antigonus made shew as if hee would passe over into Macedonia: by which terrour he forced Cassander to repair thither in all haste, with the best of his strength, leaving many good Towns of Greece so weakly guarded, that well they might take courage to help themselves, if any foreign succour appeared. The aid which they desired was not long wanting. The Lieutenant of Antigonus, taking the advantage of Cassanders departure, entred the Country, drave his Garrisons out of divers Cities; forced the Governour of Athens to enter into league with their Lord; wanne the Citadell of Thebes; and set the people at liberty. This last action was somewhat remarkable. For Thebes had not long before been raised out of her old ruines by the meer power of Cassander, of which act hee was accused by Antigonus, as if it had been some heinous crime. Yet now the same Antigonus winneth the City, and the love of the Inhabitants, onely by expelling him that was their Founder. So much are men readier to thank the Increaser, than the Author of their good; and rather to look forward upon those hopes, which vainly they extend beyond all measure, than backward upon their miserable aulity, that held them incapable of being any thing.

Ffff 3

s. VI. Vi-

## s. VI.

*Victories of Ptolomy by Sea. A great battell at Gaza, which Ptolomy and Seleucus won, against Demetrius the sonne of Antigonus.*

AS the presence or nearness of *Antigonus* gave life to his affairs in the lower *Asia* and *Greece*; so the designs of his enemies, taking advantage of his absence, ruined the very foundations of those great works in the Eastern parts, wherewith in the year preceding he had over-topped them. The Isle of *Cyprus*, whose Princes wavered between contrary affections, inclining one while to *Antigonus*, another while faintly regarding their covenant with *Ptolomy*, was visited by an *Egyptian Fleet*, wherewith *Ptolomy*, in his own person easily reduced them to a more settled order, putting some to death, carrying others away prisoners, and leaving a Lieutenant of his own appointment, Governour of the whole Country. With the same Fleet he ran alongst the Sea-coasts, wasting a great part of *Caria* and *Cilicia*, with the spoiles of which he enriched his followers, and returned laden to *Cyprus*. *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus*, hearing frequent reports of the miseries, wherewith his Fathers subjects were oppressed, made all haste out of *Syria* to the rescue, taking only his Horses and light-armed Foot with him, because the business required expedition. But in vain did hee tire himself and his followers, in hasty seeking of one, that by lanching out into the deep, could in a few minutes delude the labour of so many dayes, if need had so required. Answerable to the vanity of this expedition was the success, For *Ptolomy* was gone, before *Demetrius* came into *Cilicia*. Neither was it certain, whether having lightened his ships of their burthen in *Cyprus*, hee would return upon those maritime Countries, or make towards *Syria*, where his coming was expected. He was indeed gone into *Egypt*, and there with *Seleucus* was describing a Royall Army, which he levied with all convenient speed, for the recovery of *Syria*. This was more than *Demetrius* knew. Therefore he was faine to chooseth out of uncertainties the most likelihood, and return the way that he came, with all his companies, which were fitter for service in the open field, than to be bestowed in Garrisons among the *Cilicians*. Hee had scarce refreshed his men and Horses in *Syria*, when the newes arrived of *Ptolomy's* coming with a puissant Army, to give him battell. Hereupon he called to counsell his principall friends, who advised him to give way to the time, and expect some better opportunity in the future, being a young man, and weakly furnished with means to resist such ancient and famous Generalls, as *Ptolomy* and *Seleucus*. This counsell seemed rather to proceed from the cold temper of those aged men that gave it, than from any necessity growing out of the present business. For *Demetrius* considering himself to be the son of *Antigonus*, and now General of his Fathers Army, thought his own title weightie enough to be laid in ballance against the bare names of those two great Commanders. Neither found hee much reason that should move him to distrust his forces, as insufficient. His men were better exercised than the enemies, and promised as much as could be required. Therefore perswading himself, that such odds of number, and of great fame, would rather serve to adorn his victory, than hinder him in obtaining it, he resolved to put the matter to triall, without expecting the advantage of more help. So animating his Souldiers with hope of spoil and rewards, hee abode the coming of the Enemies at *Gaza*, with purpose to encounter them, as soon as they had finished their wearisome journey over the Desarts of *Arabia*.

*Ptolomy* and *Seleucus* issuing out of so rich a Province as *Egypt*, came so well provided of all necessities, that their Army felt not any great grievance of the evil way, when battell was presented them, which confidently they undertook. In all things else they had the odds of *Demetrius*; of Elephants they were utterly unprovided. But how to deal with those beasts they were not ignorant. They had prepared a kind of Palisado, fastened strongly together with chains, and sharpened in such a manner, that the Elephants could not seek to break upon it, without receiving much hurt. The rest of their forces (which besides that they had advantage in multitude) were heartened with many fortunate services, by them performed that year, whilest the enemies had wearied themselves, either with vain journeys, or long and dulling expectation, they disposed in such order, as best answered to the form, wherein *Demetrius* was embattelled. The fight began, and was maintained with equall courage, for a long time, each part striving

striving more to win honour, than to satisfie any other passion, as having little cause of hatred, or revenge. But after some continuance, the greater number holding better out, the error of *Demetrius*, who upon no necessity would needs fight a battell with disadvantage, began to appear by his losses. He had committed himself to Fortune, having more to lose by her than he could get: but in this fight hee was idle, and left all to be decided by strong hands; unlesse it may be said, that the terror brought upon his men, by the losse of his Elephants, was bad luck. Those beasts were in that kind of warre hardly to bee resisted on plain ground; and therefore at the first they made great spoil amongst *Ptolomies* men. Afterward seeking to break through the Palisado, they were sorely hurt, and every one of them taken. This disaster caused the Horse-men of *Demetrius* to faint. They had laboured hard, and prevailed little, till now perceiving that all must lye upon their hands, who were ill able to make their own places good, they began to shrink, and many of them to provide for their safety by timely flight, which example the rest quickly followed. When *Demetrius* had stroven so long in vain to make his men abide, that he himself was likely to be lost; he was faine to give place to the stronger, making a violent retreat as far as to *Azotus*, which was about thirty miles from the place of battell. A great part of his carriages was in *Gaza*, whither some of his company turned aside, hoping to save such goods, as in haste they could pack up. This foolish covetousness was their destruction, and the losse of the Town. For whilest they, forgetfull of the danger, had filled the streets with sumpter-Horses, and cloyed up the gates, thronging, some to get in and fetch; others, to carry out what they had already laden, *Ptolomies* Army brake in without resistance, taking them with their goods and the City altogether.

This victory restored unto *Ptolomy* the best part of *Syria*, a Province more easie in those times to get, than to keep; and opened the way unto all the greatest of *Seleucus*. For between *Gaza* and *Phœnicia* no place offered resistance. In *Callosyria* and *Phœnicia*, some Towns held out a while, but were soon taken in by *Ptolomy*. Among these were the great Cities of *Tyrus* and *Sidon*; of which *Sidon* was given up by the inhabitants; *Tyrus* by the Garrison, falling to mutiny against their Captain, who trusting to the strength of it, had made great vaunts, but was pardoned by *Ptolomy*, and honourably entertained in respect of his fidelity.

## s. VII.

*How Seleucus recovered Babylon, and made himself Lord of many Countries in the highest Asia. The Rise of the Kingdom of the Greeks, which began with the Dominion of Seleucus.*

WHILE *Ptolomy* followed his business with such prosperity, *Seleucus* took leave of him, and went up to *Babylon*, to try his own fortune; which he found so favourable, that recovering first his own Province, he became at length master of the better part of *Alexanders* purchases.

This expedition of *Seleucus* was very strange, and full of unlikelihoods. His train consisted of no more than eighteen hundred foot, and two hundred horse, a number too small to have been placed as Garrison, in some one of those main great Cities, against which he carried it into the higher *Asia*. But little force is needfull, to make way into strong places, for him that already stands possessed of their hearts which dwell within the walls. The name of *Seleucus* was enough; whom the *Babylonians* had found so good a Governour, that none of them would find courage to resist him; but left that work to *Antigonus* his own men, wishing them ill to speed. Some of the *Macedonians* that were in those Countries, had the like affection; others made a countenance of warre, which by easie compulsion they left off, and followed new Ensignes. This added courage to the people, who came in apace, and submitted themselves joyfully to *Seleucus*. In a defection to general, it was not a safe course for the *Antigonians*, to thrust themselves into the Towns of most importance: for every man of them should have been troubled with daily enemies in his own lodging. It remained that they should issue forth into the field, and try the matter by fight. But the treason of one principall man, who revolted to the enemy, with more than a thousand Souldiers following him, so dimayed the rest, that

that they did no more than seek to make good one strong place, wherein were kept the Hostages and Prisoners, that *Antigonus* held for his security in those quarters. This Castle, belike, they had not fortified in times of leisure, against dangers, that were not then apparent. *Seleucus* quickly took it; and so got the entire possession of *Mesopotamia* and *Babylon*.

*Antigonus* had bestowed in *Media* and *Persia*, forces convenient for defence of those Provinces, that were the utmost of his Dominion. In the Countries about *Euphrates* he had not done the like: for his own great Army lay between them and all enemies. Therefore when the victory at *Gaza* had opened unto *Seleucus* the way into those parts; he found little impediment in the rest of his business. Having now gotten what he sought, it behoved him to seek how he might keep his gettings: for his own forces were too small, and his friends were ill able to lend him any more. That which his friends could not do for him, his enemies did. *Nicanor*, to whom *Antigonus* had committed his Army in *Media*, joyning unto himself, out of *Persia* and other Countries, all needfull help, came, with ten thousand Foot, and seven thousand Horse, either to save all from being lost, or to drive *Seleucus* out of that which he had won.

Against this power, *Seleucus* had onely four hundred Horse, and somewhat above three thousand Foot, wherewith to oppose himself: his large Conquest of unwarlike Nations having yielded him many loving Subjects, but few Souldiers. Therefore when his enemies were neer to the River of *Tigris*, he withdrew himself from the place where his resistance was expected, into certain marshes not farre off; where hee lay secretly waiting for some advantage. *Nicanor* thought that he had been fled, and was the lesse careful in fortifying his Camp. In recompence of this vain security, his Camp was taken by surprise, the first night of his arrivall; the *Satrapa*, or Lieutenant of *Persia*, together with sundry of the Captains, were slain; hee himself was driven to flee for his life into the desarts, and the whole Army yielded unto *Seleucus*: whose gentle demeanour, after the victory, drew all *Media*, *Susiana*, and the Neighbour Provinces, to acknowledge him their Lord without any further stroke stricken.

This victory of *Seleucus* gave beginning unto the new stile, of *The Kingdome of the Greeks*, an accompt much used by the *Jews*, *Chaldeans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations in those parts. I will not make any long disputation about the first year of this *Era*. The authority of that great Astrologer *Ptolomy*, from which there is no appeal, makes it plain, that the five hundred and nineteenth year of *Nabonassar*, was the fourscore and second year of this accompt. Other inference hereupon is needlesse, than that note of the learned *Gauricus*. That the first of these years was reckoned compleat, at *Babylon*, together with the end of four hundred thirty and eight years after *Nabonassar*. With the observation of the *Saturn*, recorded by *Ptolomy*, agrees (as it ought) the calculation of *Bunting*; finding the same Planet to have been so placed in the sign of *Virgo*, as the *Chaldeans* had observed it, in the same year; which was from *Nabonassar* the five hundred and nineteenth; from *Seleucus* the fourscore & second year; and the last of the hundred thirty and seventh *Olympiad*. These observations of the celestiall bodies, are the surest marks of time: from which he that wilfully varies, is inexcusable. As for such occurrences in History, and the years of succeeding Princes (that are not seldom ambiguous, by reason of unremembered fractions) if they seem to be here-against, it is not greatly materiall. Yet thus much is worthy of note; that these years of the *Greeks* were not reckoned in all Countries from one beginning; as plainly appears in the difference of one year, that is found between actions, related by the severall Authors of the two Books of the *Macchabees*, who follow divers accompts. He that shall adhere to the time defined by *Ptolomy*, may apply the other supputations thereunto, as being no farther from it, than a years distance.

S. VIII. How

S. VIII.

*How Ptolomy lost all he won in Syria. What the causes were of the quiet obedience, performed unto the Macedonians, by those that had been subject unto the Persian Empire. Of divers petty enterprizes, taken in hand by Antigonus and Demetrius, with ill successe.*

IN a happy hour did *Seleucus* adventure to goe up to *Babylon*, with so few men as his friend could then well spare: for had he staid longer upon hope of getting more Souldiers, *Ptolomy* could have spared him none at all. *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus*, having lost the battail at *Gaza*, received from *Ptolomy* all his own goods, his Pages, and Servants, in free gift, and therewithall a courteous message, to this effect: That no personall hatred was the ground of this War, which he and his Confederates held with *Antigonus*; but only termes of honour, wherein they would seek to right themselves after such manner, that other friendly Offices, without reference to the quarrell, should not be forgotten.

This Noble dealing of *Ptolomy*, did kindle in *Demetrius* an earnest desire of requiting him, with some as brave liberality. Which to effect, he gathered together the remainder of his broken troups; drew as many as could be spared, out of the Garrisons in *Cilicia*, or other Provinces thereabouts, and advertising his Father of his misfortune, besought him to send a new supply, wherewith he might redeem his honour lost. *Antigonus* upon the first news of this overthrow, had said, That the victory which *Ptolomy* won upon a beardless Boy should be taken from him by bearded men: yet upon desire that his son, whom he tenderly loved, should amend his own reputation, he was content to make a stand in *Phrygia*. *Ptolomy* hearing of *Demetrius* his preparations, did nevertheless follow his own business in *Calosyria*; thinking it enough to spend part of his Army under *Cilles* his Lieutenant, against the remnant of those, that had been already vanquished, when *Cilles* too much undervalued the power of such an Enemy. Hee thought that this young Gallant, having lately saved his life by flight, would now be more careful of having a fair way at his back, than adventurous in setting further forward, than urgent reason should provoke him. In this confidence he passed on without all fear; as one that were already Master of the field, and should meet with none, that would issue out of their places of strength, to make resistance. When *Demetrius* was informed of this careless march; he took the lightest of his Army, and made his journey with such diligence, one whole night, that early in the morning, he came upon *Cilles* unexpected, and was on the suddain, without any battail, Master of his Camp: taking him alive, with his Souldiers, and their carriages all at once.

This exploit served not only to repair the credit of *Demetrius*, which his losse at *Gaza* had almost ruined: but further it enabled him, to recompence the bounty of *Ptolomy*, with equal favour, in restoring to him *Cilles*, with many other of his friends, accompanied with rich presents. But neither was *Ptolomy* so weakened by this losse, nor *Demetrius* so emboldened by his victory, that any matter of consequence thereupon ensued. For *Demetrius* feared the coming of *Ptolomy*, and therefore he fortified himself in places of advantage: *Ptolomy* on the other side was loth to engage himself in an enterprize, wherein he might perceive, that if the coming of *Antigonus* found him entangled, he should either be driven to make a shamefull retreat, or a dangerous adventure of his whole estate, in hope of not much more than already he possessed.

*Antigonus*, indeed, was nothing slow in his way towards *Syria*; whither hee made all haste, not so much to relieve his son, as to embrace him. For he rejoiced exceedingly, that the young man had so well acquitted himself, and being left to his own advice, performed the office of a good Commander. Wherefore to increase the reputation of this late victory, he brought such forces, as might serve to re-conquer all *Syria*: meaning, that the honour of all should be referred unto the good foundation laid by his son; whom from this time forwards, he imployed in matters of greatest importance.

*Ptolomy* had now lesse reason to encounter with *Antigonus*, than before his coming to have assailed the Camp of *Demetrius*. Yet he made it a matter of consultation; as if he

he

Pol. Almag. lib. 11. cap. 7. &amp; 8.

L. Gauric. in annal. ad locum citatum.

he had dared more than he meant. But all his Captains advised him to retire into *Egypt*, alleging many good arguments to that purpose: which they might well perceive to be agreeable to his own intent, by his propounding that course; not without remembrance of the good successe against *Perdicus*, in the like defensive war. So he departed out of *Syria*, preserving his honour, as being rather led by mature deliberation, than any sudden passion of fear: and he departed at fair leisure, not onely carrying his treasures along with him, but staying to dismantle some principal Cities, that he thought most likely to trouble him in the future. All the Country that he left at his back, fell presently to *Antigonus*, without putting him to the trouble of winning it by pieces: so easie was it in those times, for the Captain of a strong Army, to make himself Lord of a great Province.

We may justly wonder, that these Kingdoms of *Syria*, *Media*, *Babylon*, and many other Nations, (which the victory of *Alexander* had over-run with so hasty a course, as gave him not leisure to take any good view of them) were so easily held not onely by himself, but by the Captains of his Army after him. The hot contentions for superiority between the King of *Israel*, and those of *Damascus*; between *Egypt*, and *Babylon*; *Babylon* and *Nineve*; the *Persians* and many Countries; argue a more manly temper, to have once been in those people; which are now so patient of a forraign yoke, that like Sheep or Oxen, they suffer themselves to be distributed, fought for, won, lost, and again recovered by contentious Masters; as if they had no title to their own heads, but were born to follow the fortune of the *Macedonians*. This will appear the more strange, if we shall consider, how the severall States of *Greece* (many of which had never possessed so large Dominion, as might cause their spirits to swell beyond their ability) did greedily embrace all occasions of liberty: and how these proud Conquerours were glad to offer it, desiring to have them rather friends than servants, for fear of further inconvenience.

It must therefore be noted, that most of these Countries had alwaies been subject unto the rule of Kings, or petty Lords, whom the *Babylonians* and *Persians* long since had rooted out, and held them in such bondage, that few of them knew any other Law, than the command of forraign Masters. This had utterly taken from them all remembrance of home-born Princes, and incorporated them into the great body of the *Persian* Empire: so that wanting within themselves all soveraign power, or high authority, the life and spirit of every Estate; they lay as dead, and were bereaved of motion, when that Kingdom fell, whereof they lately had been members.

Why the *Persian Satraps*, or Princes of that Empire, did not when *Darius* was taken from them, as the *Macedonian* Captains, after the death of *Alexander*, strive to lay hold upon those Provinces, which had many ages bin subject unto them, and scarce four years in quiet possession of their enemies; or why at least they contended not (when the terrible name of that great Conquerour did cease to affright them) to get their shares among his followers, if not wholly to dispossesse them of their new purchases: it is a question wherein, who is not satisfied, may find no lesse reason to suspect the History, than authority to confirm it. For we seldome read, that any small Kingdom, prevailing against a far greater, hath made so entire a conquest, in the compass of ten years, as left unto the vanquished no hope of recovery nor means to rebell, especially when such disorders, or rather utter confusion hath ensued, by the fury of civill war among the Victors.

The cause why the *Macedonians* held so quietly the *Persian* Empire, is well set down by *Machiavel*; and concerns all other Kingdoms, that are subject unto the like form of Government: the sum whereof is this; Wheresoever the Prince doth hold all his Subjects under the condition of slaves, there is the conquest easie, and soon assured: Where ancient Nobility is had in due regard, there is it hard to win all, and harder to keep that which is won. Examples of this are the Turkish Empire, and the Kingdom of *France*. If any invader should prevail so far upon *Turkie*, that the great *Sultan* and his Children (for Brethren he useth not to suffer alive) were taken or slain: the whole Empire would quickly bee wonne, and easly kept, without any danger of rebellion. For the Bassaes, how great soever they may seem, are meer slaves neither is there in all that large Dominion, any one man, whose personall regard could get the people to follow him in such an attempt, wherein hope of private gain should not

countervail all apparent matter of fear. Contrariwise, in *France*, it were not enough for him that would make a conquest, to get into his hands the King and his Children; though he further got the better part of the Country, and were by farre the strongest in the field. For, besides the Princes of the Royall bloud, there are in that Kingdom store of great men, who are mighty in their severall Countries, and having certain Royalties and Principalities of their own, are able to raise Warre in all quarters of the Realm; whereunto the remembrance of their own ancient Families, and long continued Nobility, will always stirre up and inflame them: so that untill every one piece were won, and every one (an endlesse work) of the chief Nobility brought under or destroyed, the victory were not compleat, nor well assured. It is true, that such power of the Nobility, doth often-times make way for an Invader; to whom the discontentments of a few can easly make a fair entrance. But such assistants are not so easly kept, as they are gotten; for they look to be satisfied at full, in all their demands; and having what they would, they soon return to their old allegiance, upon condition to keep what they have, unlesse they be daily hired with new rewards: wherein it is hard to please one man, without offending another as good as himself. The *Turk*, on the other side, needs not to fear any peril, that might arise from the discontented spirits of his principall men. The greatest mischief that any of them could work against him, were the betraying of some frontier Town, or the wilfull losse of a battail: which done, the Traitor hath spent his sting, and must either fly to the enemy, whereby he loseth all that hee formerly did hold; or else, in hope of doing some further harm, he must adventure to excuse himself unto his Master, who seldome forgives the Captain, that hath not strived by desperate valour against misfortune. As for making head, or arming their followers against the great *Sultan*, and so joyning themselves unto any Invader; it is a matter not to be doubted: for none of them have any followers or dependants at all, other than such as are subject unto them, by virtue of their Offices and Commissions. Now as this base condition of the principall men, doth leave unto them no means, whereby to oppose themselves against the flourishing estate of their Prince; so would it weaken both their power and their courage in giving him assistance, if adversity should make him stand in need of them. For there is scarce any one among the *Turks* Bassaes, or Provinciall Governours, that knows either from whence he was brought, or from whom descended, nor any one among them, that by the losse and utter ruin of the *Turkish* Empire, can lose any foot of his proper inheritance; and it is the proper inheritance of the subject, which is also a Kingdom unto him, which makes him fight with an armed heart against the Conquerer, who hath no other device painted on his Ensigne, than the picture of slavery.

As in the *Turkish* Empire, so was the *Persian*, void of liberty in the Subjects, and utterly destitute of other Nobility, than such as depended upon meer favour of the Prince. Some indeed there were of the Royall bloud, and others, descended from the Princes that joyned with *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, in oppressing the *Magi*: these were men of reputation in *Persia*, but their reputation consisted onely in their Pedigree, and their safety in not meddling with affaires of State, which made them little esteemed. In what small account these *Persian* Princes were held, it may appear by this, that the Kings Uncles, Cousin Germans, and Brethren, were called by the Kings, *Their Slaves*, and so did stile themselves, in speaking unto these great Monarchs. That upon every light occasion of displeasure they were handled as Slaves, it is easie to be discerned, in that example of cruelty, practised by *Xerxes* upon his own brother *Masistes*, which hath been formerly noted, in place more convenient. As for the *Satraps*, or Governours of the Provinces, it is needlesse to cite examples, proving them to have been no Slaves: it may suffice, that their heads were taken from them at the Kings will; that is, at the will of those Women and Eunuchs, by whom the King was governed.

To this want of Nobility in *Persia*, may be added the generall want of liberty convenient among the people: a matter no lesse available, in making easie and sure the conquest of a Nation, than is the cause assigned by *Machiavel*. For as *Aesop* his Ase did not care to run from the enemies, because it was not possible, that they should load him with heavier burthens, than his Master caused him daily to bear: so the Nations, that endure the worst under their own Princes, are not greatly fearfull of a forraign yoke;

Nor



Nor will be hasty to shake it off, if by experience they find it more light, than was that whereunto they had been long accustomed. This was it that made the *Gaſcoignes* bear such faithful affection to the Kings of *England*; for that they governed more mildly than the *French*: this enlarged the *Penſion* jurisdiction in *Lombardy*; for the Towns that they wan, they wan out of the hands of Tyrannous oppreſſors: & this did cauſe the *Macedonians*, with other Nations, that had been ſubject unto the poſterity of *Alexanders* followers, to ſerve the *Romans* patiently, if not willingly; for that by them they were caſed of many burthens, which had been impoſed upon them by their own Kings.

So that of this tameneſſe, which we find in thoſe that had been ſubjects of the *Perſian* Kings, the reaſons are apparent. Yet ſome of theſe there were, that could not ſo eaſily be contained in good order by the *Macedonians*: for they had not indeed been abſolutely conquered by the *Perſian*. Such were the *Sogdians*, *Babrians*, and other Nations about the *Caspian* Sea. Such alſo were the *Arabians* bordering upon *Syria*: againſt whom *Antigonus* ſent part of his Army; thinking therewith to bring them under, or rather to get a rich booty. The Captains that he ſent, fell upon the *Nabatheans*, at ſuch time as they were buſied in a great Mart, wherein they traded with the more remote *Arabians*, for Mirrh, Frankincenſe, & other ſuch commodities. All or moſt of theſe rich wares, together with five hundred talents of ſilver, and many priſoners, the *Macedonians* laid hold upon: for their coming was ſudden & unexpected. But ere they could recover *Syria*, the *Nabatheans* overtook them, & finding them weary with long marches, made ſuch a ſlaughter, that of four thouſand foot, and fix hundred horſe, onely fifty horſe eſcaped. To revenge this loſſe, *Demetrius* was ſet out with a great power: yet all in vain; for he was not reſiſted by any Army, but by the natural defence of a waſte Vilderneſſe, lack of water, and of all things neceſſary. Therefore he was glad to make peace with them; wherein hee loſt not much honour: for they craved it, and gave him preſents. Returning from the *Nabatheans*, he viewed the Lake *Apollonitis*, whence hee conceived hope of great profit that might bee raiſed, by gathering the Sulphure. With this good huſbandry of his ſon, *Antigonus* was well pleaſed, and appointed men to the work: but they were ſlain by the *Arabians*, and ſo that hope vaniſhed.

Theſe petty enterpriſes, with the ill ſucceſſe accompanying them, had much impaired the good advantage againſt *Ptolomy*: when the news of *Seleucus* his victories in the high Countries, marred all together. For neither was the loſſe of thoſe great and weakly Provinces, a matter to be neglected, neither was it ſafe to tranſport the warre into the parts beyond *Euphrates*, whereby *Syria* and the lower *Aſia* ſhould have been expoſed to the danger of ill-affected Neighbours. A middle courſe was thought the beſt; and *Demetrius* with fifteen thouſand foot, and three thouſand horſe, was ſent againſt *Seleucus*. Theſe forces being ſent away, *Antigonus* did nothing, and his ſon did leſſe. For *Seleucus* was then in *Media*; his Lieutenants about *Babylon* withdrew themſelves from neceſſity of fight; ſome places they fortified and kept; *Demetrius* could hold nothing that he got, without ſetting in Garrifon more men than hee could ſpare, neither did he get much; and therefore was faine to ſet out the bravery of his expedition, by burning and ſpoiling the Country; which he did thereby the more alienate, and as it were acknowledge to belong unto his enemy, who thenceforth held it as his own aſſured.

*Antigonus* had laid upon his ſon a peremptory commandement, to return unto him at a time prefixed: reaſonably thinking (as may ſeem) that in ſuch an unſettled ſtate of things, either the Warre might be ended, by the fury of the firſt brunt; or elſe it would be vain to ſtrive againſt all difficulties likely to ariſe, where want of neceſſaries ſhould fruſtrate the valour, that by ſtrength of time was like to become leſſe terrible to the Enemy. *Demetrius* therefore leaving behind him five thouſand foot, and a thouſand horſe, rather to make ſhew of continuing the warre, than to effect much, where himſelf with greater forces could do little more than nothing, forſook the enterpriſe, and went back to his Father.

*A generall peace made and broken. How all the houſe of Alexander was deſtroyed.*

THEſe ambitious heads, having thus wearied themſelves with uneffectuall travell, in ſeeking to get more than any one of them could hold; were contented at length to come to an agreement: wherein it was concluded, that each of them ſhould hold quietly, that which at the preſent he had in poſſeſſion. As no private hatred, but meer deſire of Empire, had moved them to enter into the war; ſo was it no friendly reconciliation, but only a dulneſſe growing upon the ſlow advancement of their ſeverall hopes, that made them willing to breathe awhile, till occaſion might better ſerve to fight again.

Befides that main point, Of retaining the Provinces which every man held, there were two Articles of the peace, that gave a fair, but a falſe colour, to the buſineſſe; That the ſon of Alexander by *Roxane*, ſhould be made King when he came to full age; and, That all the Eſtates of Greece ſhould be ſet at libertie. The advancement of young Alexander to his Fathers kingdom, ſeems to have been a matter forceably extorted from *Antigonus*; in whom was diſcovered a purpoſe, to make himſelf Lord of all. But this, indeed, more neerly touched *Caffander*. For in his cuſtody was the young Prince and his Mother: neither did he keep them in a ſort anſwerable to their degree; but as cloſe priſoners, taken in that warre, wherein they had ſeen the old Queen *Olympias* taken and murdered, that ſought to put them in poſſeſſion of the Empire. The mutuall hatred and fear between them, rooted in theſe grounds, of injuries done, and revenge expected; upon this conſequence of peace, grew up faſter than any time before, in the heart of *Caffander*: who ſaw the *Macedonians* turn their favourable expectation, towards the ſon of their late renowned King.

All this either little concerned *Antigonus*; or tended greatly to his good. The young Prince muſt firſt have poſſeſſion of *Macedon*: whereby *Caffander* ſhould be reduced to his poor office, of Captain over a thouſand men; if not left in worſe caſe. As for them that held Provinces abroad, they might either do as they had done under *Aridaus*; or better, as being better acquainted with their own ſtrength. He in the mean time, by his readineſſe to acknowledge the true Heir, had freed himſelf from that ill-favoured imputation, of ſeeking to make himſelf Lord of all that Alexander had gotten.

The like advantage had he in that Article of reſtoring the Greeks to their libertie. This libertie had hitherto been the ſubject of much idle diſcourſe: but it never took effect. *Antigonus* held ſcarce any Town of theirs, *Caffander* occupied moſt of the Countie: which if he ſhould ſet free, he muſt be a poor Prince; if not, there was matter enough of quarrell againſt him, as againſt a Diſturbur of the common peace.

In the mean ſeaſon, the Countries lying between *Euphrates* and the *Greek* ſeas, together with a great Armie, and mony enough to entertain a greater, might ſerve to hold up the credit of *Antigonus*, and to raiſe his hopes as high as ever they had been.

With much diſadvantage doe many men contend againſt one that is equall to them all in puiſſance. *Caffanders* friends had left him in an ill caſe; but he could not doe withall: for where every one mans help is neceſſarie to the warre, there may any one make his own peace; but no one can ſtand out alone, when all the reſt are wearie. The beſt was, that he knew all their affections: which tended to no ſuch end as the becomming Subjects unto any man, much leſſe to the ſon of an *Aſiaticque* woman, of whom they had long ſince reſuſed to hear mention. Therefore he took a ſhort courſe, and cauſed both the child and his Mother to be ſlain: freeing thereby himſelf in a trice, from the dangerous neceſſitie of yeelding up his government, which he muſt have done when the child had come to age. *Roxane* was a Lady of ſingular beautie, which was perhaps the cauſe, why *Perdiccas* deſired to have her ſon, being as yet unborn, proclaimed Heir to the great Alexander. Immediately upon the death of Alexander, ſhe had uſed the favour (if it were not love) of *Perdiccas*, to the ſatisfying of her own bloudy malice, upon *Statera*, the Daughter of King *Darius*, whom Alexander had likewiſe married, according to the cuſtome of thoſe Countries, wherein pluralitie of wives is held no crime. For, having by a counterfeit Letter, in Alexanders name, gotten his poor Lady into her hands, ſhee did, by aſſiſtance of *Perdiccas*, murder her and her Siſter, and threw their

bodies into a Well, causing it to be filled up with earth. But now, by Gods just vengeance, were she and her son made away, in the like secret fashion; even at such time as the neerer approaching hope of a great Empire had made her life, after a wearisome imprisonment, grow dearer unto her than it was before.

The fact of *Callander* was not so much detested in outward shew; as inwardly it was pleasing unto all the rest of the Princes. For now they held themselves free Lords of all that they had under them; fearing none other change of their estates, than such as might arise by chance of warre; wherein every one perswaded himself of successe, rather better than worse. Hereupon all of them (except *Lysimachus* and *Selenus*, that had work enough at home) began to rowze themselves: as if now the time were come, for each man to improve his own stock. *Antigonus* his Lieutenants were busie in *Peloponnesus*, and about *Hellepont*: while their Master was carefull in following other, and some greater matters that were more secretly to be handled. He pretended the libertie of *Greece*: yet did the same argument minister unto *Ptolomy* matter of quarrell, against both him and *Callander*; *Ptolomie* complaining (as if he had taken the matter deeply to heart) that *Antigonus* had put Garrisons into some Towns, which ought, in fair dealing, to be set at liberty. Under colour of redressing this enormitie, he sent an Army into *Cilicia*, where he won four Towns, and soon after lost them, without much labour of his own or his enemies.

After this, putting to sea with a strong Fleet, he ran along the coast of *Asia*, winning many places: and in that voyage allured unto him a nephew of *Antigonus* (a good Commander, but discontented with the ill requital of his services) whom finding shortly, as false to himself as he had been to his own Uncle, he was faine to put to death. But in doing these things, his desire to set the *Greeks* at libertie, appeared not so plain, as hee wished that it should: for their case was no way bettered by his molesting *Antigonus* in *Asia*. Therefore to get the love of that valiant Nation, he made at the last an expedition into *Greece* it self: where having set free some little Ilands, and landed in *Peloponnesus*, he raised so great an expectation of finishing the long-desired work, that *Cratesipolis*, the Widow of *Alexander*, *Polyperchon* son, gave up into his hands the Towns of *Sicyon* and *Corinth*.

*Ptolomie* had conceived a vain belief, that the *Greeks*, emboldened by his countenance and assistance, would all of them take heart and rise up in arms; whereby with little labour their libertie might be gotten; and he be acknowledged as Author of this immortal benefit. But long servitude had well-near extinguished the ancient valour of that Nation: and their ill fortune, in many like attempts to recover freedom, had so tired their spirits, that they would no more stir in pursuit thereof; but sate idly still, as wishing it to fall into their mouths.

The *Lacedamonians*, about these times, began to fortifie their Town with walls, trusting no longer in their vertue (for both it, and the discipline that upheld it, were too much impaired) that had been a wall to their Town and Territorie.

The *Athenians* were become as humble servants, as they had been in times past insolent Masters: erecting as many statues in honour of *Demetrius Phalereus*, as there were daies in the year. This *Demetrius* was now their Governour; and he governed them with much moderation: but in spite of their hearts, as being set over them by *Callander*. By this base temper of the principall Cities, it is easie to gather, how the rest of the Country stood affected. *Ptolomie* could not get them to set their helping hands to their own good, and to furnish him with the promised supplies of money and victuals. Credible it is, that he had a true meaning to deliver them from thraldome; as judging the commoditie that would arise by annexing them to his parcie, a matter of more weight than the losse that *Callander* should receive thereby, who could hardly retain them, if once *Antigonus* took the work in hand. But when he found such difficultie in the business, he changed his purpose: and renewing his former friendship with *Callander*, he retained *Sicyon* and *Corinth* in his own possession.

Before the coming of *Ptolomie* into *Greece*, *Callander* had been held occupied with very much work. For (besides his pains taken in warres among barbarous Princes) hee found means to allure unto himself the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, that were in *Peloponnesus*, and about *Hellepont*: making his own advantage of their discontentments. By the like skillfull practice hee freed himself from a greater danger, and made those

those murthers which he had committed seem the lesse odious, by teaching his enemies to doe the like. Old *Polyperchon*, that had made so great a stir in the reign of *Arideus*, did after the death of *Roxane* and her child, enter again upon the Stage: leading in his hand another son of the great *Alexander*, and meaning to place him in his Fathers Throne.

The name of this young Prince was *Hercules*: he was begotten on *Barsine* the daughter of *Artabazus* a *Persian*; but had been lesse esteemed than the son of *Roxane*, either for that his Mother was held no better than a Concubine, or else perhaps, in regard of the favour which *Perdiccas*, and after him *Olympias*, did bear unto *Roxane*. At this time the death of his brother had moved such compassion, and regard of his being *Alexanders* onely living child, had procured unto him such good will, that the demand which *Polyperchon* made in his behalf, was deemed very just and honourable. There were indeed more hearts than hands, that joyed with this young Prince: yet wanted he not sufficient strength of hands, if the heart of him that least ought, had not been most false. *Callander* had raised an Armie to withstand his entrie into *Macedon*: but little trust could he repose in that Armie, whose wilhes he perceived to be with *Hercules*. Therefore he assailed *Polyperchon* himself with gifts and promises; wherewith at length he prevailed so far, that the old Villain was contented to murder his Pupill, choosing rather with many curses and foul dishonour, to take the offered Lordship of *Peloponnesus*, and Commander of an Armie, than to purchase a noble fame with dangerous travell, in maintaining his faith, unto both his dead and living Sovereigns.

*Antigonus* had not all this while bin asleep; though his losses were hitherto the chief witness of his having been a stirrer in these commotions. He thought it enough for him at the present to retain his own: and therefore took order for the recoverie of those places which *Ptolomie* had taken painsto win. As for the rest, it no way grieved him to see *Callander* incur the generall hatred of men by committing those murthers of which the profit was like to redound unto him that was the most powerful, or so see *Polyperchon* and *Ptolomie* sweat in a busie war against *Callander*. If they would have continued their quarrels, he could well have afforded them leisure, and have thought the time well spent in beholding their contentions. For he was thoroughly perswaded, that when the rest had wearied themselves in vain with long strife, his armies and treasures, wherein he exceeded them all, would bring all under. According to these haughty conceits, he demeaned himself among his followers; looking big upon them, and like a King before his time. This was it that caused so many of them to revolt from him: but it was no great losse to be forsaken by those that looked with envious eyes upon that fortune whereon their own should have depended. Against this envie of his men, and the malice of others, *Antigonus* busily sought a remedie, such as was like to give him a goodly title to the whole Empire.

*Cleopatra*, Sister unto the great *Alexander*, lay for the most part in *Sardes*: whom hee had a great desire to take to wife. This his desire was not without good hope: for howsoever the discovered much unwillingnesse thereunto, yet was she in his power, and might therefore be entreated, were it only for fear of being enforced. But it was not his purpose to get her by compulsive means: either because his fancie, being an old man, was not over-violent; or rather because his ambition, whereunto all his affections had reference, could have made small use of her, by doing such apparent wrong. She had been married unto *Alexander* King of *Epirus*, after whose death the came to her brother in *Asia*; hoping belike to find a new husband in his Camp. But neither any of those brave Captains, that were, in times following so hot in love with her, durst then aspire unto her marriage: nor did her brother, full of other cares, trouble himself with providing her of an husband. She therefore, being a lustie widow, suffered her blood so far to prevail against her honour, that she supplied the want of an husband by entertainment of Paramours. *Alexander* hearing of this, turned it to a jest: saying, That she was his sister, and must be allowed this libertie, as her portion of the Empire. When by his death the Empire lay in a manner void, and the portion due to her therein grew, in mens opinion, greater than it had been: then did many seek to obtaine her, while shee her selfe desired only a proper man, with whom shee might lead a merry life. To this purpose did he invite *Leonatus* unto her; who made great haste, but was cut off by death ere he came to her presence. Now at the last, after long

tarrying, she had her choice of all the great Commanders: *Antigonus*, *Ptolomie*, *Lysimachus*, and *Cassander*, being all her earnest wooers. All these (*Antigonus* excepted) had wives already; *Ptolomie* had many wives, and many Concubines, whom he respected as much as his wives, being noted of too much dotage in that kind. This hindred not his suite: peradventure it advanced it, by giving to *Cleopatra* some hope of mutuall toleration. To him therefore she bequeathed her self, and was taking her journey from *Sardes* towards him; when *Antigonus* his Deputie in that Citie, made her to stay, until his Masters further pleasure should be known. *Antigonus* had now a Wolf by the ears: he neither could well hold her, nor durst let her goe. She would not be his wife; he had no honest pretence to force her; and to keep her prisoner, had bin the way, by which he might have incurred a generall hatred, lasting perhaps beyond her life; as the course taken by *Cassander* against *Roxane* (a Ladie lesse respected than *Alexanders* own sister) did well testifie. Therefore he thought it the wisest way to procure her death: for to let any other enjoy the commodity of so fair a title to the kingdom, it was no part of his meaning. To this purpose he sent instructions to the Governour of *Sardes*, willing him in any case to doe it secretly. So the fact was committed, and certain women about her put in trust with the murder: which women afterwards were put to death, as mischievous conspirers against the life of that good Ladie. So was *Antigonus* freed from blame, at the least in his own opinion: but the world was lesse foolish, than to be so deluded. How the murder was detected, we need not aske: for seldom is that bloudie crime unrevealed, and never so ill smothered, as when great persons are the Authors.

Thus was the whole race of *Philip* and *Alexander* the great extinguished, and it was extinguished by the hands of such as thought upon nothing lesse than the execution of Gods justice, due unto the crueltye of these powerfull, but mercilesse Princes. Wherefore the ambitious frames, erected by these Tyrants, upon so wicked foundations of innocent blood, were soon after cast down, over-whelming themselves or their children, with the ruins, as the sequell will declare.

## §. X.

*How Demetrius, the son of Antigonus, gave libertie to Athens, expelling the Garrisons of Cassander out of those parts. The immoderate honour decreed by the Athenians to Antigonus and Demetrius.*

None being left alive that had any title to the Kingdome; it stood with good reason, that they which were Lords of the Provinces, acknowledging no Superiour, should freely profess themselves Kings in name, as they were already in substance. Yet had this name ill-beseemed the weaker, while the strongest of all did forbear it: neither seemed it convenient in the judgment of *Antigonus*, to crown his last action with such a title, as if he had attained unto greatnesse by that foul murder, the infamie whereof he was carefull how to discharge from his own head. He purposed therefore to undertake a plausible enterprise, even the libertie of *Greece*: whereby it was apparent, that he might get such honour as would not all bad reports, but make him be thought equal to any name of royaltie, whereof in seeming modestie, he was not covetous. To this purpose he delivered a strong army, with a Navie of two hundred and fiftie sail, and five thousand talents of silver, unto *Demetrius* his son: willing him to begin at *Athens*, and thence to proceed, in setting all the Countrie free.

*Demetrius* came to *Athens* before he was expected: so that without resistance he entered the Haven; it being thought that a fleet of *Ptolomie*, *Cassanders* good friend, had bin arrived. But when it was known, both who he was, and what was the cause of his coming; the joy of the Citizens brake out into loud exclamations: *Demetrius Phalerens* forsook the town, and withdrew himself to *Thebes* under safe conduct; only the Garrison in *Munychia* strove to make good that piece, which after a while was won upon them by force. During the siege of *Munychia*, *Demetrius* went to *Megara*; whence he expelled the Garrison of *Cassander*, and so restored the Citie to libertie.

I think it not impertinent, sometimes to relate such accidents, as may seem no better than meer trifles: for even by trifles are the qualities of great Persons as well disclosed

disclosed, as by their great actions; because in matters of importance, they commonly strain themselves, to the observance of generall commended rules, in lesser things they follow the current of their own Natures: The Lady *Cratesipolis* lay in *Paras*, and had a great desire to see *Demetrius*; hoping, belike, that she might by his means better her estate, and recover her Towns of *Sycion* and *Corinth*, detained by *Ptolomie*; to whose Lieutenant, in those places, *Demetrius* before his departure out of *Greece*, offered money for the surrender of them. Yet the onely businesse pretended was love: He being advertised thereof, left his forces in the Countrey of *Megara*, and taking a company of his lightest armed, for guard of his person, made a long journey to meet with her. His troupe also, he caused to lodge a great way from his Tent, that none might see her when she came. As closely as the bassnesse was carried, some of his enemies had gotten knowledge of it; whereby they conceived good hope, that the diligence of a very few men might overthrow all the great preparations of *Antigonus*; and bring him to any termes of reason, by taking his dear Sonne prisoner. Their project fell but a little short of the effect. For they came so suddenly upon him, that he had no better shift, than to hide himself in an old cloak, and creep away disguised, leaving them to ransack his Tent. There was in this Prince a strange medley of conditions; especially an extreme dissolute, mercuriall wanton pleasures, and a painful industry in matter of Warre. He was of a most amiable countenance, a gentle nature, and a good wit; excellent in devising Engines of Warre, and curious in working them with his own hands. He knew better how to reform his bad fortune, than how to rule his good. For adversity made his valour more active: prosperity puffed him with over-wcening, wherein he thought that he might do what he listed. His fortune was changeable, as were his qualities: turning often round, like the picture of her wheel, till she had wound up the thread of his life, in such manner as followeth to be shewed.

Returning to his Camp, and finishing his businesse at *Megara*; he resolved no longer to attend the issue of a siege, to assail *Munychia* by force, that so he might accomplish the liberty of *Athens*: which, untill it was fully wrought out, he refused to enter into the Citie. *Munychia* was strongly fortified: yet by continuance of the assault, the multitude without, through help of their Engines that scoured the walls, prevailed upon the resolution of those that lay within it, and wan the place in two dayes. The walls, and all the defences of that piece against the Citie, were levelled with the ground, and so was it freely put into the Citizens hands, to whom withall was given their liberty, with promise to aid them in maintaining it.

The fame of this action was lower, than of any other victory gotten by *Demetrius* with greater skill and industry. For the *Athenians*, having forgotten how to employ their hands, laboured to make up that defect with their tongues: converting to base flattery, that eloquence of theirs which the vertues of their Ancestors had suited unto more manly arguments.

They decreed unto *Antigonus* and *Demetrius* the name of Kings; they consecrated the place in which *Demetrius* leaped from his Chariot, when he entered their City, and built there an Altar, calling it of *Demetrius the alighter*; they called them by the names of the gods their Saviours, ordaining that every year, there should be chosen a Priest of these gods; and further, that such as were employed by their State, in dealing with either of these two Princes, should not be called Embassadors, but *Theori*, or *Consulters* with the gods; like as were they, whom they sent unto the Oracle of *Jupiter* or *Apollo*.

It were a frivolous diligence to rehearse all their flatteries, these being so grosse. Hereby they not onely corrupted the young Prince; but made that acclamation, which best would have pleased the old man, to be of no use. For he could not handsomely take up on him the name of King, as imposed by the *Athenians*, unless he would seem to approve their vanity, in loading him with more than humane honours. Yet was he so tickled with this their fine handling him, that when their *Theori* or *Consulters* came shortly after, desiring him to relieve them with Corn and Timber to build ships; he gave them almost a hundred thousand quarters of wheat, and matter sufficient to make a hundred Gallies. So gracious was his first Oracle: or rather so weak is great power in resisting the assaults of flattery.

## S. XI.

*The great victorie of Demetrius against Ptolomie in Cyprus. How Antigonus and Demetrius took upon them the title of Kings; wherein others followed their example.*

From this glorious work, *Antigonus* called away *Demetrius*, unto a business of greater difficultie; meaning to employ his service against *Ptolomie*, in *Cyprus*. Before his departure out of *Greece*, he was willing to establish a generall Counsell, that should treat of matters concerning the common good of the Countrey. About the same time *Antigonus* withdrew his own Garrison out of *Imbros*, committing their libertie entire, into the peoples hands; whereby it might appear, that as he would not permit any other to oppress the *Greeks*, so would he be farre from doing it himself. This was enough to hold his reputation high, among these new purchased Friends: it followed, that hee should convert his forces, to the winning of ground upon his Enemies.

A pittifull Tragedie had lately hapned in *Cyprus*, through the indiscretion of *Menelaus*, *Ptolomies* brother, and his Lieutenant in that Ile. *Nicocles*, King of *Paphos*, was entered into some practice with *Antigonus*: yet not so far that he thought himself past excuse, by which confidence, he was perhaps the more easily detected. To cut off this negotiation, and the falf-hearted King of *Paphos* at one blow, *Menelaus* was sent thither: who surrounding *Nicocles* his house with Souldiers, required in *Ptolomies* name, to have him yielded to the death. *Nicocles* offered to clear himself; but *Menelaus* told him, that dye he must, and bad him come forth quietly. This desperate necessitie caused the unhappy King to rid himself of life: and his death brook such an impression into his wife, that she not onely slew her self, but perswaded the wives of her husbands brethren to do the like. Also those brethren of *Nicocles*, unto whom *Ptolomie* had intended no ill, being amazed with the suddenness of this calamitie, did shut up the Palace, and setting it on fire, consumed it, with all that was in it, and themselves together.

Whatsoever the crime objected was, *Nicocles* perished as a man innocent, because he was not suffered to make his answer. Of this sad accident, though *Menelaus* deserved the blame, for his rigorous proceeding; yet it is to be thought, that much dislike fell also upon *Ptolomie*: as men that are grieved, cast an ill affection even upon those that gave the furthest removed occasion.

Not long after this, *Demetrius* came into *Cyprus*, with a power sufficient, against any opposition that *Ptolomie* was like to make. The *Cypriots* did little or nothing against him, either because they had small strength, or for that they held it a matter indifferent, whom they acknowledged as their Lord, being sure that they should not themselves have the rule of their own Countrey. *Menelaus* therefore, out of his Garrisons, drew forth an Armie, and fought with *Demetrius*. But he was beaten, and driven to save himself within the walls of *Salamis*, where he was so hardly besieged, that without strong succour, he had no likelihood to make good the place, much lesse to retain possession of the whole Island. His greatest help at the present was the fidelitie of his Souldiers; whom no rewards could win from him, nor good usage (when any of them were taken prisoners, and inrolled in the enemies bands) keep from returning to him, with the first opportunity. Most of them were Mercenaries: but all their goods were in *Egypt*, which was enough to keep them faithfull. Yet could not this their resolution have stood long against the odds of number, which *Demetrius* had of men as resolute, and against his terrible Engines of batterie, if *Ptolomie* had not hastened to the rescue.

*Ptolomie* brought with him a hundred and forty Gallies, besides two hundred ships of burden, for transporting his Armie and Carriages. This Fleet made a terrible show, when it was descried a-farre; though more than half of it was unfit for service in fight at Sea. Wherefore to make the opinion of his forces the more dreadful, *Ptolomie* sent unto *Demetrius* a threatening message: willing him to be gone, unless he would be overwhelmed with multitudes, and trampled to death in a throng. But this young gallant repaid him with words of as much bravery, promising to let him escape, upon condition, that he should withdraw his Garrisons out of *Scion* and *Corinth*.

*Demetrius* had no more than one hundred and eighteen Gallies; but they were, for the most part, greater than those of *Ptolomie*; better stored with weapons fit for that service;

vice; and very well furnished with Engines in the prows, to beat upon the enemy. Nevertheless he stood in great doubt of threescore Gallies that lay in the Haven of *Salamis*; lest *Menelaus* with them should set upon his back: in which case, it was very likely that all would goe very ill with him. Against this mischief, he bestowed ten of his own Gallies in the mouth of that Haven, to keep *Menelaus* from issuing forth, and setting his horsemen on the shore, to give what assistance they could, he with the rest of the Fleet, puts to Sea against *Ptolomie*.

The fight began early in the morning, and continued long, with doubtfull success. The generals were not ranged opposite one to the other; but held each of them the left wing of his own fleet. Each of them prevailed against the Squadron wherewith he encountered; but the success of *Demetrius* was to better purpose. For his victorie in one part was such, as caused others to fall out of order, and finally drave all to betake themselves unto speedy flight. As for *Ptolomie*, he was faine to leave his advantage upon the enemy in one part of the fight, that he might relieve and animate those of his own which needed him in another: wherein he found his losse over-great to be repaired, by continuing any longer against the fortune of that day; and therefore he laboured onely to save himself, in hope of better event, that might follow some other time.

There fell out in this battell no unusuall accident; yet was the victory greater than could have been expected. The occasions whereof were, partly the great skill in Sea-service, which the *Greeks* and *Phenicians*, that were with *Demetrius*, had, above those which followed *Ptolomie*: partly the good furniture of the Ships, wherein consisted no lesse, than in the qualitie of those with whom they were manned. Further, we may reasonably judge, that the two hundred ships of burthen, carrying the strength of *Ptolomies* Army, did not more encourage his own men, and terrifie his enemies the day before the fight, than breed in each part the contrarie affections, when in the beginning of the fight they fell off, and stood aloof. For though it were fitting that they should so doe; yet a multitude, prepossessed with vain conceits, will commonly apprehend very slight occasions to think themselves abandoned. Besides all this, the expectation that *Menelaus*, issuing with his fleet out of *Salamis*, should charge the enemies in stern, was utterly frustrated. He was kept in perforce, by the ten ships appointed to bar up the mouth of the Haven: which they manfully performed, as great necessity required.

Such disappointment of expectation doth much abate the courage of men in fight; especially of the assailants: whereas on the contrarie, they that find some part of their fears vain, doe easily gather hopefull spirits, and conceive an opinion of their own ability, to doe more than they thought upon, out of their not suffering the harm that they had imagined.

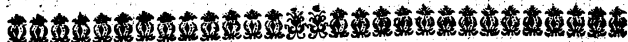
Whatsoever the causes of this victorie were, the fruit was very great. For *Ptolomie* had no more than eight Gallies that accompanied him in his flight: all the rest of his fleet was either taken or sunk. Neither did *Menelaus* any longer strive against the violence of fortune; but yielded up all that he held in *Cyprus*, together with his Armie, consisting of twelve thousand foot, and a thousand and two hundred horse, and those Gallies in the Haven of *Salamis*. The same dejection of spirit was found in the common Souldier, as well that was taken at Sea, as that had served the *Egyptian* by Land: none of them resposing any more confidence in *Ptolomie*, but willingly becomming followers of a new Lord, whose Armie they now increased.

It was generally believed, that much more depended on the event of this fight, than the Isle of *Cyprus*, for which they contended. Wherefore the common expectation was great; especially *Antigonus*, whom it most concerned, was deeply perplexed with cares, thinking every day a year, till he were advertised of the issue. In this mood *Aristodemus* found him, a noble flatterer, whom *Demetrius* had honoured with the Message of these good newes. *Aristodemus* had bethought himself of a trick, whereby to double the welcome of his joyfull errand: Hee caused his ships to ride at Anchor, a good distance from the shore; he himself landed in a Cock-boat, which he sent immediately back to the ship; and so all alone he went forward, looking very sadly, that no part of his tidings might appear in his countenance. Report of his arrivall (for it was not known where he had been) came presently to *Antigonus*, who sent Messenger after Messenger to meet him on the way, and bring speedy word how all went. But neither any answer, nor so much of a look, as might intimate the purport of his errand, could be won from this

de mure

demure Gentleman. Thus marched he fair and softly forward with a great throng at his heels (that served well to set out his Pageant) untill he came in sight of *Antigonus*, who could not contain himself, but went down to meet him at the Gate, and hear the newes. Then did *Antigonus* upon the sudden, with a high voyce salute *Antigonus* by the name of King; uttering the greatness of the victory (with as much pomp, as before he had uttered it with silence) in the hearing of all the people, who with loud acclamations, gave that name of King, both to *Antigonus* and his son *Demetrius*. *Antigonus* in requitall of the long suspense, wherein *Antigonus* had held him, sayd, That it should also be long ere he received his reward. But the Title of King, together with the Diadem, which his friends did set on his head, he could not with a fitter occasion to admit; wherefore he readily accepted them, and sent the like to his son.

When it was once noised abroad, that *Antigonus* and *Demetrius* called themselves Kings; it was not long ere their fellows were ready to follow the good example. *Ptolome* his friends would by no means endure; that their Lord should be thought a man dejected for the losse of a fleet, therefore they saluted him also King. *Eysimachus* in *Thrace* had boldnesse enough to put the Diadem about his own head. *Seleucus* had, before that time, among the barbarous people, taken upon him as King; but now he used the stile indifferently, as well among the *Greeks* and *Macedonians*, as in dealing with others. Only *Cassander* held himself contented with his own name: whereby, howsoever he might shadow his pride; he no way lessened the fame of his crueltie against his Masters house. But the name which he forbore, his sons after him were bold to usurp, though with ill successe, as will appear, when they shall enter upon the Stage, whereon these old Tragedians; under new habits, as no longer now the same persons, begin to play their parts, with bigger looks, and more boisterous actions, not with greater grace and judgement, than in the Scenes already past.



## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Wars between the Kings of Egypt, Asia, Macedon, 30  
Thrace, and others: untill all Alexanders Princes  
were consumed.*

## S. I.

*The Expedition of Antigonus against Egypt, with ill successe.*



Al the rest of these Kings had taken that name upon them, in imitation of *Antigonus* himself, as besecming his greatness: which was such as gave him hope to swallow them up, together with their new titles. Being not ignorant of his own strength, he resolved to single out *Ptolome*, and make him an example to others: who should hardly be able to stand, when the greatest of them was fallen. To this purpose he prepared an army of eighteen thousand foot, and eight thousand horse, with fourscore and three Elephants: as likewise a fleet of hundred and fiftie Gallies, and a hundred ships of burthen. The Land forces he commanded in person: of the Navie *Demetrius* was Admirall.

When all was ready for the journey, the Sea-men advised him to stay yet eight daies longer, and expect the setting of the *Pleiades*. But his hasty desire to prevent all preparations for resistance that *Ptolome* should make, rejected this counsell; imputing it rather to their fear than skill: wherefore he departed from *Antigonis* (a Town which he had built in *Syria*, and called after his own name, that was soon changed into *Seleucia*, by his mortal enemy) and came to *Gaza*, where he met with his Fleet. The nearer that he drew to *Egypt*, the more haste he made: thinking by celeritie to prevail more than by his great power. Hee caused his Souldiers to carry ten dayes provision of Victuals; and had many Camels laden with all necessaries for passing the Deserts,

over

over which he marched with no small toil, though he met with no resistance. At Mount *Cassius*, which is near adjoining to *Nilus*, he saw his Fleet riding at Anchor, not far from the shore, in ill case, and many Ships wanting. It had been sorely beaten with foul weather, wherein some were lost, others driven back to *Gaza*, or scattered elsewhere into such creeks as they could recover: *Demetrius* himself, with the best and strongest vessels, did so long beat it up against the wind, that all his fresh water was spent; in which extremity, he and all his must have perished, had not the tempest ceased when it did, and *Antigonus* appeared in sight, from whom these over-wearied, thirsty and Sea-beaten Souldiers received relief. After these painful travels, there followed a War 10 no less painful than to little purpose; for *Ptolome* had so fortified all the passages upon the Civer of *Nilus*, as he assured himself either to end the war there, or if his guards should happen to be forced, yet could it not be done but so much to the weakening of the Assailants, as he should afterward, with a second Army (which he held entire) entertain the Invader upon advantage enough. All that *Antigonus* fought, was to come to blows speedily: *Ptolome* on the contrary, to beat *Antigonus* by the belly. It is true that *Nilus* gave him water enough, but wood he had none to warm it, and while *Antigonus* assaulted the Rampiers, raised upon the River, in vain, *Ptolome* assailed the faith of his souldiers, with good successe; for with great gifts, and greater promises, he ferried them over so fast, as had not *Antigonus* thrust some assured Regiments upon the passages next the 20 enemy, and in the mean while taken a resolution to return, *Ptolome* had turned him out of *Egypt* ill attended.

Some of them indeed he laid hands on, in the way of their escape, and those he put to death with extreme torments; but in all likelihood with the same ill successe that *Perdiccas* had formerly done, when he invaded *Egypt*, had he not readily removed his Army further off, from the noyse of their entertainment, that had already been won from him. To prevent therefore as well the present danger of his stay, as the shame following a forced retreat, he secretly practised the advice of his Councell, upon whom the burthen must be laid of his entrance, and leaving *Egypt*.

It is indeed lesse prejudiciall in such like cases, that errors, dishonours, and losses, be 30 laid on Counsellors and Captains, than on Kings, on the Directed, than on the Director: for the honour and reputation of a Prince is far more precious than that of a Vassall. *Charls* the fifth, as many other Princes have done, layd the losse and dishonour he received in the invasion of *France*, by the way of *Provence*, to *Anonie de Leva*, whether justly or no, I know not; but howsoever, all the Historians of that time agree, that the sorrow thereof cost that brave Captain his life. Certainly to give any violent advice in doubtful enterprises is rather a testimony of love, than of wilddom, in the giver; for the ill successe is alwaies cast upon the Counsell, the good never wants a Father, though a false one, to acknowledge it. Yet I have sometime known it, that great Commanders, who are for the present in place of Kings, have not only been dissuaded, but held, in a 40 kind by strong hand, from hazzarding their own persons, and yet have those kind of Mutinies never been called to a Marshalls Court.

## S. II.

*How the Citie of Rhodes was besieged by Demetrius.*

His departure of *Antigonus*, left behind him many dead carcasses, and a great deal of joy in *Egypt*. *Ptolome* held a solemn Feast, and sent Messengers abroad, 50 laden with glad news, to *Seleucus*, *Eysimachus*, and *Cassander*, his Confederates: strongly encouraging all that side, with the report of this his late felicity, though it appeared but in a defensive War. *Antigonus* on the contrary, flattered himself with another interpretation, calling the joys of his enemies for witnesses of his own greatness, seeing they arose but from so little things: his enemies being but bare favers by the last bargain, and himself, as he supposed, having lost but a little time, and no part of his honour in the late retreat. Howsoever it were, yet he meant to follow his affairs henceforth in another fashion; for that which he could not cleave a-funder by great blows, he purposed by little and little to pare off, by cutting off the branches first, to fell the

the

the Tree it self with the more facility. To effect which, he resolv'd (leaving the great ones to grow awhile) to root up the Dependants of his Enemies: Dependants, whom the fore-named Confederates should be forc't either to relieve, or to lose; and hereby he doubted not to draw them into the field, where the advantage of power, and of all other warlike provision promised him victory.

At this time the Citie of *Rhodes* was very mighty, being well governed, and having long held it self in good Neutrality; it drew the better part of all the trade of those parts, and therein a great deal of riches to it self; to maintain which, and to increase it, it furnished and kept on the Seas a Fleet of well armed Ships, by which it not onely beat off all Pyrates and petty Thieves, but the reputation of their strength was thereby so much increased, as all the neighbour Princes sought their alliance and confederacy.

In this so dangerous a time (in which they must either refuse all that sought them, and to stand friendlesse and apart; or joyn themselves to some one, and thereby forgoe the peace, by which their greatness had grown) their affections carry'd them to the *Egyptian*: both because the greatest part of their trade lay that way, as also for that *Antigonius*: his disposition, greatness, and neighbourhood was fearfull unto them. This affection of theits, with some other passages more apparent, gave argument of quarrel to *Antigonius*, who began to declare himself against them by petty injuries, of taking some of their ships, with such other grievances, while he made a more weighty preparation, to pursue the War against them openly and strongly. All things soon after ordered according to the greatness of the enterprise, he employed his Son *Demetrius* against them in their own Island, who brought such terror upon the Citizens, that laying aside all respect of friendship and honour, they offered him their assistance and service against whomsoever, *Demetrius*, who knew from whence this change came, and that the alteration was perswaded by fear, and not by love; raised his demands to an intolerable height, requiring a hundred Hostages to be delivered him, and liberty to lodge in their Port as many ships of War as himself pleased. These conditions more properly to be imposed upon a State already conquered, than on those who as yet had heard of nothing but a constrained assistance, restored unto the *Rhodians* their lost courage, & made them resolve to defend their liberty to the last man: this taught them to infranchise all their able bond-men, and wisely rather to make them their fellow-Citizens, than to make themselves fellow-slaves with them.

*Demetrius* having refused the fair conditions offered (as the *Rhodians* the fearfull ones propounded unto them) makes preparation for a long siege, and finding no appearance to carry the place in furie, he set in hand with his Engines of battery; in the invention and use of which, he did never shew himself a greater Artisan, than in this War. But in conclusion, after the Citizens had sustained all the assaults given them for a whole year, after many brave sallies out of the Town, and the famine which they endured within the Town, which had proved far more extreme, if *Ptolomy* had not with many hazards relieved them, *Demetrius* by mediation of the *Grecian* Embassadors, gave over the siege; a hundred hostages they gave him for performance of the peace made, but with exception of all the Magistrates and Officers of the Citie.

Hereunto *Demetrius* was brought by the usual policie of War, and state: for while with the flower of all his fathers forces he lay before *Rhodes*, *Cassander* recovered many of those places in *Greece*, which *Demetrius* had formerly taken from him; neither did *Cassander* make the War as in former times, by practice and surprize, but by a strong and well compounded army, which he himself led as far as into *Attica*, and therewith greatly distressed and endangered *Athens* it self. On the other side (though with lesse success) did *Polyperchon* invade *Peloponnesus*. These dangerous undertakings upon *Greece*, advised the *Athenians* and *Atolians* to dispatch their Embassadors towards *Demetrius*, and advised *Demetrius* rather to abandon the enterprise of *Rhodes*, than to abandon the great honour which he had formerly gotten by setting all *Greece* at liberty.

*Demetrius* was no sooner out of the land, than that the *Rhodians* erected statues in honour of *Lyfimachus* and *Cassander*; but for *Ptolomy*, whom they most affected, and from whom they received their most relief, they consulted with the Oracle of *Jupiter*, whether it were not lawfull to call him a god. The Priests which attended in the Temple of *Hamon*, gave the same fair answer for *Ptolomy*, which they had formerly done for *Alexander* his

his Master; for as *Alexander* consulted the Oracle with an Army at his heels, so was *Ptolomy* at this time Lord of the soil: and yet was this a far more cleanly creation than that done by the *Athenians*, who deified *Antigonius* and *Demetrius* by decree of the people. A mad age it was, when so many of *Alexander's* Captains could not content themselves with the stile of Kings, but that they would needs be called gods.

## §. III.

How *Demetrius* prevailed in *Greece*, *Cassander* desires peace of *Antigonius*, and cannot obtain it. Great preparations of War against *Antigonius*.

*Demetrius* coming with a strong Fleet and Armie into *Greece*, quickly drove *Cassander* out of *Attica*; and pursuing his fortune, chased him beyond the straits of *Thermopyla*. Herein his reputation did much avail him; which was so great, that six thousand of his enemies Souldiers revolted unto him. So, partly by the greatness of his name, partly by force, he recovered in short space all that *Cassander* held in those straits, and giving libertie unto the people, he bestowed upon the *Athenians* those peaces, which had been fortified against them, to block them up. Then went hee into *Peloponnesus*, where hee found the like, or more easie success: for he suddenly took *Argos*, *Corinth*, *Sicyon*, and the most of the County bestowing liberty upon such as needed it. The Town of *Sicyon* he translated by consent of the Citizens, from the old seat into another place, and called it after his own name, *Demetrius*. This done, he betook himself to his pleasure. At the *Isthman* games, hee caused himself to be proclaimed Captain Generall of *Greece*, as *Philip* and *Alexander* had been in former times: whereupon (as if he were now become as great as *Alexander*) he despised all others, making it a matter of jest, that any, save himself or his father, should usurp the Name of King. But in his behaviour hee was so farre unlike to a King, that in all the time of his leaseure, he deserved none other name than of a drunken Palliard. Yet were the *Athenians* as ready as ever to devise new honours for him: among which they made one Decree, That whatsoever King *Demetrius* should command, ought to be held sacred with the gods, and just with men.

All *Greece* being now at the disposition of *Antigonius*, *Cassander* stood in great fear, lest the war should fall heavily upon him in *Macedon*: which to avoyd, he knew no better way than to make peace with his enemies betimes. And to that purpose he sent Embassadors; but had no better answer from *Antigonius*, than that he should submit his whole estate to his discretion. This proud demand made him look about him, and labour hard in soliciting his friends, both to assist him, and take heed to themselves; neither found he them slow in apprehending the common danger: for *Lyfimachus* knew that if once *Cassander* had lost *Macedon*, *Demetrius* would soon be Master of *Thrace*. Neither were *Petolomie* and *Selenus* ignorant of that which was like to befall them, if *Antigonius* were suffered to put himself in quiet possession of those Provinces in *Europe*. Wherefore it was agreed, that with joynt forces they should all together set upon the common enemy.

Hereof *Antigonius* had notice: but scorned all their preparations, saying, That he would as easily scatter them, as a flock of birds are driven away with a stone. With these conceits he pleased himself, and no way hindered the proceedings of his Enemy. He lay at that time in his Town of *Antigonid* (a name that it must shortly lose) where he was carefully providing to set out some stately game and Pageants, in ostentation of his glory. But thither was brought unto him the tumultuous newes of *Lyfimachus* his victories about *Hellepont*. For *Cassander* had committed unto *Lyfimachus* part of his forces, wherewith to passe over into *Asia*, while he himself with the rest should oppose *Demetrius* on *Europe* side. So *Lyfimachus* passing the *Hellepont*, began to make hot War upon the subjects of *Antigonius*; getting some of the Cities in those parts, to joyn with him by fair means: winning others by force, and wasting the Country round about.

To repress this unexpected boldnesse, *Antigonius* made hasty journies, and came soon enough to recover his losses, but not strong enough to drive *Lyfimachus* home, or compell him to come to battell. *Lyfimachus* waited for the coming of *Selenus*; keeping



ping himself the whilest from necessity of fighting. But *Babylon* was far off; and *Seleucus* his preparations were too great to be soon in a readinesse. The Winter also did hinder his journey: which enforced them on both sides to rest in some quiet, without performing any matter of importance. This delay of debating the quarrell in open field, held all those Nations in a great suspense, and bred much expectation. Yet might all have come to nothing, had not *Antigonus* been so forward, that he refused to yeeld upon any peaceable conditions. At length *Seleucus* drew neer with a mighty Army of his own (for he had gathered strength in that long time of leasure, which *Antigonus* had given him) and with great aid from *Ptolomy*, that was joynd with his forces.

To help in this needfull case, *Demetrius* was called over into *Asia* by his Fathers letters: which he readily obeyed. Before his departure out of *Greece*, he made peace with *Cassander*, upon reasonable termes: to the end he might not be driven to leave any part of his Army for defence of the Country; and that his journey might be without any such blemish of reputation, as if hee had abandoned his Dependants: for one Article of the peace was, That all the Cities of *Greece* should be at liberty. *Cassander* was glad to be so rid of an Enemy that was too strong for him. Yet would this league have done him little good; if things had fallen out contrariwise than they did in *Asia*; seeing the ratification thereof was referred unto *Antigonus*. It sufficed, that for the present, every one found means to clear himself of all incumbrances else-where, to the end that each of them might freely apply himself to the tryall of the main controversie in *Asia*.

## §. IV.

*How Antigonus was slain in a great battell at Ipsus, neer unto Ephesus; wherein his whole estate was lost.*

**S**eleucus, with his Sonne *Antiochus*, joyning with *Lysimachus*, compounded a great Armie, which was (all considered) not inferiour to that of the Enemy. In greatnesse of name (that helpe much in all Warres, but especially in the Civill) they were rather unanswerable than unequal to their adversaries: for *Antigonus* had of long time kept them under with a mastering spirit, and had been reputed a King indeed, when the rest were held but Usurpers of the Title. Likewise *Demetrius* was generally acknowledged a brave Commander, having given proof of his worth in many great services of all kinds, and enriched the art of war with many inventions, which even his enemies, and particularly *Lysimachus*, did much admire. *Seleucus*, who had some times flattered *Antigonus*, and fearfully stoln away from him to save his life, with young *Antiochus*, a Prince not heard of before this journey; and *Lysimachus*, that had lived long in a corner, hardly keeping his own from the wilde *Thracians*; wanted much in reputation, of that which was yeelded to their opposites: yet so, that as ancient Captains under *Philip* and *Alexander*, two of them were held worthy enough to receive any benefit that fortune might give, and the third a Prince of great hope, whereof he now came to make experience.

The Souldiers on both sides, were for the most part hardy and well exercised: many of them having served under *Alexander*; though of those old Companies, the long space of two and twenty years had consumed the greatest number. But concerning their affections, the followers of *Seleucus* were easily perswaded, that in this battell they must either get the upper hand, or put in extreme danger all that belonged unto the Confederate Princes; whereas *Antigonus* his men could discern no other necessity of fighting, than the obstinate quality of their Lord, that needs would be Master of all. *Antigonus* had about threescore and ten thousand foot, ten thousand horse, and threescore and fifteen Elephants. His enemies were six thousand short of him in number of their foot; in horse they had the oddes of five hundred; of Elephants they had four hundred, and an hundred and twenty armed Chariots of War: which helps, though they little had availed the *Persians*, yet were they not to be despised, in the hands of a good Captain.

*Antigonus* himself, either troubled with the unexpected greatnesse of his enemies forces, or prefiging little good like to ensue, grew very pensive, communing much in private

private with his son whom he commended to the Army as his Successor: whereas in former times he had never been so jocund, as towards the houre of battell, nor had been accustomed to make his son, or any other, private to his counsell, before it required execution. Other tokens of bad luck, either foregoing the fight, or afterwards devised, I hold it needlesse to recount. *Diana* of *Ephesus* dwelt neer to the place of battell, a buisie goddess in many great fights; and therefore likely to have been thrust into the fable, if any matter, neerly resembling a miracle, had chanced.

It is easie to beleieve, that these two so gallant Armies, containing well neer all the strength of *Alexanders* whole Empire, performed a notable fight, being led by such worthy Commanders, and whom the issue thereof did highly concerne. Yet are few of the particulars recorded: an easie losse in regard of the much variety, wherewith every story aboundeth in this kinde. The most memorable things in the battell, were these: *Demetrius* with his best force of horse, charged valiantly upon young *Antiochus*; whom when he had broken, and put to flight, he was so transported with the heat of his good success, that he never gave over his pursuit, but left his Father naked, and lost thereby both him, and the victory. For when *Seleucus* perceived this advantage, he interposed his Elephants, between *Demetrius* and the Phalanx of *Antigonus*; and with many troupes of horse offering to break upon the enemies battell, wheresoever it lay most open, he did so terrifie the *Antigonians*, that a great part of them rather chose to revolt from their Lord, whilest they were fairly invited, than to sustaine the fury of so dangerous an impression. This cowardize, or rather treason of some discouraged others; and finally, cast them all into flight; exposing their Generall to the last end of his destinies. *Antigonus* was then fourescore years old, very fat and unwildy, so that he was unapt for flight, if his high spirit could have entertained any thought thereof. He had about him some of his most trusty followers, and as many others as he could hold together. When one that perceived a great troupe making towards his person, told him, *Sir King, your company meanes to charge you*; He answered, *Well may they; for who defends me? but anon Demetrius will relieve us*. Thus expecting to the very last, that his son should come to the rescue, he received so many Darts into his body, as took away his lately ambitious, but then fearefull hopes, together with his troublesome life.

His great ability in matter of Armes, together with his unsatiable desire of Empire, have sufficiently appeared in the whole Volume of his actions. He was more feared by his enemies, than loved by his friends; as one that could not moderate his fortune, but used insolence toward all alike, as if it had been some vertue neereest representing a Kingly Majesty. This was the cause that so many of his followers revolted to his enemies; and finally, that a great part of his Army forsook him in his last necessity. For those Kings and Princes that call all the carefull indeavours of their Vassalls, onely duty and debt; and are more apt to punish the least offences, than to reward the greatest services: shall finde themselves upon the first change of fortune, (seeing it is love onely that staies by adversity) not onely the most friendlesse, but even the most contemptible, and despised of all other. This *Antigonus* found true in part, while he lived; in part he left it to be verified upon his son.

## §. V.

*How Demetrius, forsaken by the Athenians after his overthrow, was reconciled to Seleucus and Ptolomy, beginning a new fortune, and shortly entering into quarrels.*

**F**or *Demetrius*, at his returne from the idle pursuit of young *Antiochus*, finding all quite lost, was glad to save himself, with foure thousand horse and five thousand foot, by a speedy retrait unto *Ephesus*, whence he made great haste unto *Athenes*, as to the place, that for his sake would suffer any extremity. But whilest he was in the midst of his course thither, the *Athenian* Embassadors met him with a decree of the people, which was, that none of the Kings should bee admitted into their City. These were Embassadors, not *Theoroi*, or Consultors with the Oracle. It was a shamelesse ingratitude in the *Athenians*, to reward their Benefactor, in his miserie, with such a decree: neither did any part of his calamity more afflict the unfortunate

H h h h

Prince

Prince than to see his adversity despised by those whom he had thought his surest friends. Yet was he fain to give good words. For he had left many of his ships in their Haven, of which he now stood in great need; and therefore was fain to speak them fair, that sometimes had grossly flattered him. But he shall live to reach them their old language, and speak unto them in another tune. When he had gotten his ships, he sailed to the *Aspinus*, where he found nothing but matter of discomfort. His Garrisons were every where broken up; the Souldiers having betaken themselves to his enemies pay. So that he was King onely of a small Army and Fleet, without money or means wherewith to sustain him and his followers any long time. All the rest, or the greatest part of his Fathers large Dominion, was now in dividing among the Conquerors, and those few places which as yet held for him (having not perchance heard the word of what had happened) he no way knew how to relieve: for to put himself into the field on that side of the Sea, he had no power; and to inclose himself in any of them, how strong soever, were but to imprison his fortune, and his hopes, or therein indeed to bury himself and his estate: He therefore creeping thorow those bushes that had fewest briars, fell upon a corner of *Lyfsmachus* his Kingdom, whereof he gave all the spoile that was gotten, to his Souldiers, his own losses having been too great to be repayed again by small prizes.

In the meane while the Confederate Princes had wherewithall to buse themselves, in the partition of those Provinces, of which their late victory had made them Lords; wherein *Seleucus* had a notable advantage by being present, and Master of the field; for neither *Pholomy* nor *Cassander* were at the overthrow given, having onely sent certain rroupes to re-inforce the army which *Seleucus* led, who took hold of a part of *Asia* the lesse, and all *Syria*, being no otherwise divided from his own Territory, than by the River of *Euphrates*. For there had not any order been taken by the Confederates, for the division of all those Lauds: because they did not expect so prosperous an issue of that war, which they made onely in their own common defence. It was therefore lawfull for *Seleucus*, to make the best benefit that he could of the victory, at which nevertheless others did repine; and though they neither could nor durst accuse him of ill dealing for the present, yet seeing the over greatnesse of *Seleucus* brought no lesse danger to the rest of the new Kings, than that of *Antigonus* had done, they consulted upon the same reason of State as before, how to oppose it in time. Neither was *Seleucus* ignorant of what they had determined; for he read it in the Law universall of Kingdomes and States, needing no other intelligence. Hereupon they forget friendships on all sides, and cure themselves of all unprofitable passion, the hatred of each to other, and their loves being laid on the one side, against their profits on the other, were found so far too light, as *Seleucus*, who had to day slain *Antigonus* the father, and driven *Demetrius* the son out of *Asia*, sought to morrow how to match himself with *Stratonica*, *Demetrius* his Daughter, and so by *Demetrius* to serve his turne against *Lyfsmachus*.

The story of this *Stratonica*, with whom young *Antigonus*, the son of *Seleucus* fell so passionately in love, and so distempered, as *Seleucus* his father, to save his sons life, gave her (though these were his wife) unto him; and how his passion was discovered by his pulse, is generally noted by all Writers. But neither did this alliance between *Seleucus* and *Demetrius*; between *Pholomy* and *Lyfsmachus*; between *Demetrius* and *Cassander*; between *Demetrius* and *Pholomy*; though for the present it brought him again into the rank of Kings; otherwise tye any of them to each other, than the marriages between Christian Kings have done in latter times, namely between the *Austrians*, the *Aragonians*, the *French*, and other Princes; neither have the Leagues of those elder times been found more faithfull, than those of the same latter times have been, as in the stories of *Charles* the eighth of *France*, and of *Charles* the Emperour, of *France* the first, and of the Kings of *Naples*, *Dukes of Milan*, and others, the Reader may observe: between whom from the year of our Lord, One thousand four hundred ninety and five, when *Charles* the eighth undertook the Conquest of *Naples*, to the year One thousand five hundred fifty and eight, when *Henry* the second died; the Histories of those times tell us, that all the bonds, either by the Bed or by the Booke, either by Weddings, or Sacramentall Oaths, had neither faithfull purpose nor performance. Yet did *Demetrius* reap this profit by giving his daughter to his enemy *Seleucus*, that he recovered *Silicia* from *Plistarchus*, the brother of *Cassander*, who had gotten it as his

his share in the division of *Antigonus* his possessions: for the Intruder was not strong enough to hold it by his proper forces from him, that entred upon it as a lawfull heire, neither would *Seleucus* lend him any help, as by the rule of Confederacy he should have done against the common enemy. So *Plistarchus* with very angry complaint, as well against *Seleucus* as *Demetrius*, went unto *Cassander*; whither *Phila*, their sister, followed him shortly, to pacifie them both, and keep all quiet; being feare for that purpose by *Demetrius* her husband, that was not strong enough to deale with *Cassander*; & therefore glad to make use of that bond of alliance betwixt them, whereof in his own prosperity, he never took notice to the others good. About the same time he took to wife a daughter of *Pholomy* (plurality of wives being familiar with these *Macedonians*, that had learned it in their Eastern conquests) and so was he by two marriages rather freed from two enemies, than strengthened with two friends; for neither of them wished him any good, other wise than might seem to advance their own ambitious desires.

*Seleucus* and *Pholomy* could both of them have been contented better, that *Demetrius*, with help of their countenance, should seek his fortune somewhat farther off, than settle his estate under their noses. Particularly *Seleucus* thought that *Cilicia* lay very fitly for himself; and *Pholomy* had a great appetite (which yet he concealed a while) to the Isle of *Cyprus*. Now whether it were so, that *Seleucus* would fain have set his new father-in-law upon the neck of *Lyfsmachus*; or whether he were indeed greedy of the bargain; he offered to buy of *Demetrius* for ready money, his late purchase of *Cilicia*. Hereunto *Demetrius* would not hearken, but meant to keep as much land as he could, having already found in *Cilicia* twelve thousand talents of his fathers treasure, that would serve him to make sport a while. This refusal to displeased *Seleucus*, that in angry terms he demanded the Cities of *Tyre* and *Sidon*, to be surrendered unto him; which were the only places in *Syria*, that had not followed the fortune of the late great battell. In stead of giving them up, *Demetrius* took present order to have them better maned and spake it stoutly. That were he overcome a thousand times, yet would he not hire *Seleucus* to become his Son-in-law. In this quarrell *Seleucus* was generally reprehended, as one of a malignant disposition, that would break friendship with his Father-in-law for two Towns, from whom he had already taken more than well he knew how to govern. But the fire consumed it self in words, which had it fastened upon armes, like it is that the weaker should have found friends out of envie to the stronger.

## §. VI.

How *Demetrius* won the City of *Athens*, and prevailed in *Greece*, but lost in *Asia*. Of troubles in *Macedon* following the death of *Cassander*.

IN the meane while, the *Athenians* not knowing how to use the liberty which *Demetrius* had bestowed on them, were fallen by fedition, under the Tyranny of *Lachares*. Through which alteration their distempered City was so weakened, that it seemed ill able to keep off the punishment due to their late ingratitude. This advantage hastened him, whom they had once called their God and Saviour, to present himself unto them, in the habit of a revenging fury. He brought against them all the force that he could well spare from other employments, which were at that time perhaps the more, because his doubtfull Eastern friends, were unwilling to give impediment to any business, that might entangle him in *Greece*. His first enterprise in *Athens* had ill success; a great part of his fleet perishing in a tempest. But he soon repaired the losse; and (after some victories in *Peloponnesus*, where he wan divers Towns that had fallen from him) returning to the enterprise, waited the Country of *Attica*, and cut off all relief from the City, both by Land and Sea.

*Athens* was not able to feed the great multitude within it any long time: for it stood in a barren soil, and wanted now the command of those Islands and places abroad, from whence it was wont to be stored with victuals; being also destitute of means to keep such a Navie, as might bring in supply, or dare to do any thing at Sea, against that of *Demetrius*. Yet was there some hope of succour from *Pholomy*, who (trusting thereby to win the love of *Greece*) had laden an 150. ships with corne, and sent them to relieve the hungry City. But these hundred and fifty were unable to deale with three hundred

good fighting ships, which *Demetrius* had; rather they feared to become a prey to him, and therefore halted them away betimes, as having done enough, in adventuring to come so near that they might be despoiled. This brake the heart of the people, among whom the famine was so extreme, that a Father and his Son did fight for a dead moulte, which dropped down between them from the house top. Wherefore they sent Embassadors to yeeld up the Town, and crave pardon, having so far offended, that out of desperation, they made it a capitall offence to propose any motion of peace. Yet were they faine to abolish this decree: rather because they knew not what else to doe, than because they hoped to be forgiven.

*Demetrius*, contented with the honour of the victory, did not onely forbare to take away the lives of these unthankfull men, which they had submitted unto his mercy; but out of his liberality gave them food, and placed in Office amongst them such as were most acceptable to the people. Nevertheless he was grown wiser than to trust them so far as he had done in times past. And therefore, when (among other flattering acclamations) they bade him take their Havens, and dispose of them at his pleasure; he was ready to lay hold upon the word, and leave a sure Garrison within their walls, to keep them honestly perforce. After this he went into *Peloponnesus*, vanquished the *Lacedaemonians* in two battels, and was in very faire possibility to take their City: when the dangerous newes of *Lyfimachus* and *Ptolomy*, that prevailed faster upon him elsewhere, than himself did upon his enemies in *Greece*, called him in all haste. *Lyfimachus* had won many Towns in *Asia*; *Ptolomy* had gotten all the Ile of *Cyprus*, except the City of *Salamis*, wherein *Demetrius* had left his Children and Mother, that were straightly besieged. Whilst he was berinking himself which way to turn his face, a notable piece of businesse offered it self, which thrust all other cares out of his head.

*Cassander* was lately dead in *Macedon*, and soon after him, *Philip* his eldest son, whose two younger brethren, *Antipater* and *Alexander*, sought for the Kingdom. In this quarrell *Theffalonia* the Daughter of King *Philip*, whom *Cassander* had married, seemed better affected to *Alexander*, than to her elder son: who thereupon grew so enraged, that most barbarously he slew his own Mother. The odiousnesse of this fact gave a fair lustre to *Alexanders* cause: drawing the generality of the *Macedons* to take his part, as in revenge of the Queens death, upon that wicked parricide *Antipater*. But *Antipater* was so strongly backed by *Lyfimachus*, whose daughter he had married; that *Alexander* could not hope to make his party good without some forraign aide. For which cause he called in both *Pyrhus* and *Demetrius*; who how they dealt with him, it will soon appear in the following Tragedy, of him and his brother. Their Father *Cassander* had been one that shifted well for himself, at such time as every man sought how to get somewhat in the ill ordered division of the Empire. He was cunning in practice, and a good Souldier: one of more open dealing than were his Companions, but withall more impudent, rudely killing those, whom others would more wisely have made away. He deeply hated the memory of *Alexander*, that had knocked his head against a wall, upon some opinion of contempt. With *Olympias* he had an hereditary quarrell, derived from his father, whom he could not abide. Her feminine malice did so exasperate him, by cruelty that he used against his friends, both alive and dead; as it made him adventure upon shedding the Royall blood: wherewith, when once he had stained his hands, he did not care how far he proceeded in that course of murder. His carelesnesse to destroy those women and children, whose lives hindred his purpose, argues him to have been rather skillfull in matters of arms, than a valiant man: such cruelty being a true mark of cowardize, which fears a far off the dangers, that may quietly passe away: and seeks to avoid them by base and wicked meanes, as never thinking it self safe enough, untill there be nothing left, that carries likelihood of danger. Of *Olympias* and *Roxane* it may be said, that they had well deserved the bloody end which over-took them; yet it befamed it *Cassander* to doe the office of a Hang-man. But *Alexanders* children had by no law of men, deserved to die for the tyranny of their Father. Wherefore, though *Cassander* died in his bed, yet the divine Justice brought swords upon his wife and children, that well revenged the cruelty of this bloody man, by destroying his whole house as he had done his Masters.

## §. VII.

## §. VII.

of *Pyrhus* and his doings in *Macedon*. The death of *Cassanders* children. *Demetrius* gets the Kingdom of *Macedon*; prevails in war against the *Greeks*; Loseth reputation in his war against *Pyrhus*, and in his civill Government, and prepares to win *Asia*. How all conspire against *Demetrius*. *Pyrhus* and *Lyfimachus* invade him, his Army yeelds to *Pyrhus*, who shares the Kingdom of *Macedon* with *Lyfimachus*.

*Pyrhus*, the Son of that unfortunate Prince *Æacides*, which perished in war against *Cassander*, was hardly preserved, being a suckling Infant, from the fury of his Fathers enemies. When his Fosterers had conveyed him to *Glancias* King of *Illyria*; the deadly hatred of *Cassander* would have bought his life with the price of two hundred Talents. But no man can kill him that shall be his heire. *Glancias* was so farre from betraying *Pyrhus*, that he restored him by force to his Fathers Kingdom, when he was but twelve yeers of age. Within the compasse of six yeers, either the indiscretions of his youth, or the rebellious temper of his Subjects, drove him out of his Kingdom, and left him to trie the world anew. Then went he to *Demetrius* (who married his sister) became his Page, followed him a while in his wars, was with him in the great battell of *Ipsus*, whence he fled with him to *Ephefus*; and was content to be hostage for him, in his reconciliation with *Ptolomy*. In *Egypt* he so behaved himself, that he got the favour of *Berenice*, *Ptolomies* principall wife; so that he married her daughter, and was thereupon sent home, with many and men, into *Epirus*; more beholding now to *Ptolomy*, than to *Demetrius*. When he had fully recovered the Kingdom of *Epirus*, and was settled in it, then fell out that busines between the children of *Cassander*, which drew both him and *Demetrius* into *Macedon*.

*Antipater*, the elder of *Cassanders* sons, was so far too weak for *Pyrhus*, that he had no desire to attend the coming of *Demetrius*, but made an hasty agreement, & divided the Kingdom with his younger brother *Alexander*; who likewise felt the aide of *Pyrhus* so troublesome, that he was more willing to send him away, than to call in such another helper. For *Pyrhus* had the audacity to request, or take as granted, by strong hand, *Ambracia*, *Acarnania*, and much more of the Country, as the reward of his pains: leaving the two brethren to agree as well as they could about the rest. Necessity enforced the brethren to composition: but their composition would not satisfie *Demetrius*, who took the matter hainously, that he was sent for, and made a foole, to come so far with an Army, and finde no work for it. This was a frivolous complaint; whereby it appeared, that *Demetrius* had a purpose to doe as *Pyrhus* had done, and so much more, by how much he was stronger. Hereupon it seemed to *Alexander* a wife course, to remove this over-diligent friend, by murdering him upon some advantage. Thus *Demetrius* reported the story, and it might be true; though the greatest part, and perhaps the wisest, beleaved it not. But the issue was, that *Alexander* himself was feasted and slain by *Demetrius*; who took his part of the Kingdom, as a reward of the murder; excusing the fact so well, by telling his own danger, and what a naughty man *Cassander* had been, that all the *Macedonians* grew glad enough to acknowledge him their King. It fell out happily, that about the same time *Lyfimachus* was buied in war with a King of the wilde *Thracians*: for thereby he was compelled to seek peace of *Demetrius*, which to obtain, he caused the remainder of *Macedon* to be given up; that is, the part belonging to *Antipater*, his Son-in-law. At this ill bargain *Antipater* grievously stormed, though he knew not how to amend it: yet still he stormed, untill his Father-in-law, to save the labour of making many excuses, took away his troublesome life. Thus in haste, with a kind of neglect, and as it were to avoid molestation, were slaine the children of *Cassander*: of *Cassander* that had slain his own Masters children, in a wise course of policy, with carefull meditation (so much the more wicked as the more long) studying how to erect his own house, that fell down upon his grave, ere the earth on it was thoroughly settled.

It might be thought, that such an acceffe of Dominion, added much to the greatness of *Demetrius*. But in deed it shewed his infirmity; and thereby made him neglected by many, and at length hated by all. For he had no art of civill Government: but thought (or shewed by his actions that he thought) the use and fruit of a Kingdom, to be none other

other, than to doe what a King listeth. He gave himself over to Women and Wine, laughing openly at those which offered to trouble him with supplications, and the tedious discourse of doing justice. He had more skill in getting a Kingdom, than in ruling it: war being his recreation, and luxury his nature. By long rest (as six years reign is long to him, that knows not how to reign one year) he discovered so much of his worst conditions, as made the people both weary of his idleness; and the Souldiers of his vanity. He was freed from care of matters in *Asia*, by hearing that all was lost: though more especially, by hearing that *Ptolonie* had with great honour, entertained and dismissed his mother and children. This afforded him the better leisure, of making war in *Greece*: where he vanquished the *Thebans*, and won their City twice in short space, but used his victory with mercy. Against *Lyfsmachus* he would faine have done somewhat (the peace between them notwithstanding) at such time as he was taken by the *Thracians*; but *Lyfsmachus* was freely dismissed, and in good case to make resistance ere *Demetrius* came; so as this journey purchased nothing but enmity. Another expedition he took in hand against *Pyrrhus*, with no better, or rather with worse event. *Pyrrhus* held somewhat belonging to *Macedon*, which he had indeed as honestly gotten, as *Demetrius* the whole Kingdom; he had also made excursions into *Thessaly*. But there needed not any hand some pretence of quarrell, seeing *Demetrius* thought himself strong enough, to over-run his enemies Country, with two great Armies. It is a common fault in men, to despise the virtue of those, whom they have known raw Novices in that faculty, wherein themselves are noted as extraordinary. *Pyrrhus* was a Captain, whom latter ages, and particularly the great *Hannibal*, placed higher in the rank of Generals, than either *Demetrius*, or any of *Alexanders* followers. At this time, he mist that part of the Army, which *Demetrius* led, and fell upon the other half: which he overthrew, not with more commendations of his good conduct, than of his private valour, shewed in single combat against *Pantanchus*, *Demetrius* his Lieutenant; who being a strong man of body, challenged this young Prince to fight hand to hand, and was utterly beaten. The losse of this battell did not so much offend the *Macedonian*, as the gallant behaviour of *Pyrrhus* delighted them. For in him they seemed to behold the lively figure of *Alexander* in his best quality. Other Kings did imitate, in a Counterfeit manner, some of *Alexanders* graces, and had good skill in wearing Princely vestures: but (said they) none, save *Pyrrhus*, is like him in deed, in performing the office of a Captain.

These rumours were not more nourished by the virtue of the *Epirot*, than by dislike of their own King; whom they began to dis-esteem, not so much in regard of his unprofitable journey into *Epirus* (for he had wasted much of the Country, and brought home his Army in good case) as of his insolence, that grew daily more and more intolerable. His apparrell seemed, in the eyes of the *Macedons*, not onely too sumptuous and new-fangled, but very unmanly; and serving chiefly to bee a daily witness, how much he contemned them and their good opinions. Of his souldiers lives he was stretcht and suffered unwisely this un-princely sentence to escape out of his mouths: That the more of them died, the fewer he was to pay. He made a mockery of justice; and (as it were, to publish unto all his Subjects, how little he esteemed it or them) having by a shew of popularity invited Petitioners, and with a gracious countenance entertained their Supplications, he led the poor suiters after him in great hope, till coming to a bridge, he threw all their writings into a River; pleasing himself, in that he could so easily and so boldly delude the cares of other men. By these courses he grew so odious, that *Pyrrhus* gathered audacity, and invading *Macedon*, had almost won it all with little resistance. *Demetrius* lay then sick in his bed: who recovering health, and taking the field, had such great odds of strength, as made *Pyrrhus* glad to forsake his winnings and be gone.

At length he began to have some feeling of the generall hate; which to redresse, he did not (for he could not) alter his own conditions; but purposed to alter their idle discourses of him, by setting them on work in such an action, wherein his best qualities might appeare; that is, in a great War. His intent was to invade *Asia*, with a Royal Army: wherein the fortune of one battell might give him as much, as the fortune of another had taken from him. To this end, he first made peace with *Pyrrhus*; that so he might leave all safe and quiet at home. Then did he compose a mighty Army,

of almost a hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand horses with a Navie of five hundred faile, wherein were many ships, far exceeding the greatnesse of any that had been seen before; yet so swift and usefull withall, that the greatnesse was least part of their commendation.

The terrible fame of these preparations, made *Seleuchus* and *Ptolomy* suspect their own forces, and labour hard with *Lyfsmachus* and *Pyrrhus*, to joyn against this ambitious son of *Antigonus*, that was like to prove more dangerous to them all, than ever was his father. It was easily discerned, that if *Demetrius* once prevailed in *Asia*, there could be no security for his friends in *Europe*, what league soever were of old concluded. Therefore they resolved to begin with him betimes, and each to invade that quarter of *Macedon*, that lay next his own Kingdom. *Lyfsmachus* came first, and against him went *Demetrius* with a great part of his Army: but whilest he was yet on the way, newes were brought into his Camp, that *Pyrrhus* had won *Berrhaea*. The matter was not over great: were it not, that minds prepared with long discontent, are ready to lay hold upon small occasions of dislike. All the camp was in uproare: some wept, others raged, few or none did forbear to utter seditious words, and many desired leave of *Demetrius*, to goe to their own houses, meaning indeed to have gone to *Lyfsmachus*.

When *Demetrius* perceived the bad affection of his Army, he thought it the wisest way to lead the *Macedonians* further off from *Lyfsmachus* their own countreiman, against *Pyrrhus* that was a stranger: hoping by victory against the *Epirot*, to recover the love of his followers, in such sort that he might afterwards at leisure deale with the other. But herein his wisdom beguiled him. For the Souldiers were as hasty as he, to meet with *Pyrrhus*; not intending to hurt him, but longing to see that noble Prince, of whom they daily heard the honourable fame. Some spake of his valour; some enquired, others answered, of his person, his armour, and other tokens whereby he might be known; as particularly, by a paire of Goats horns, that he wore on his crest. It was not likely, that these men should hurt him. Divers of them stole away, and ran over into *Pyrrhus* his camp: where the newes that they brought, were better welcome than their persons. For they said, and it was true, that if the *Macedonians* might once get sight of *Pyrrhus*, they would all salute him King. To trie this, *Pyrrhus* rode forth, and presented himself bareheaded in view of the camp, whither some were sent before to prepare his welcome. The newes of his arrivall found a generall applause, and every one began to look out, with desire to set eye on him. His face was not so well known as his Helmet; therefore he was admonished to put it on: which done, all came about him, and proffered their service; neither were there any, that spake for *Demetrius*; onely some (and they the most moderate of tongue) bade him be gone betimes, and shift for himself. So *Demetrius* threw aside his makers habit, and attyring himself poorly, did fearfully steale away out of his own camp, deserving well this calamity: whether it were so, that he would not hearken to the good counsel of his friends, or whether his behaviour deprived him of such friends, as would dare to let him heare the unpleasant sound of necessary truth.

Whilest *Pyrrhus* was making this triumphant entry into the Kingdom of *Macedon*; *Lyfsmachus* came upon him very unseasonably, and would needs have half saying, that he had done as much as *Pyrrhus* in the war; and therefore had reason to challenge his part of the gain. The bargain was quickly made, and the division agreed upon: each of them being rather desirous to take his part quietly, than to fight for the whole; as hoping each of them, to work his fellow quite out of all, upon better opportunity.

#### §. VIII.

How *Demetrius* gathering forces, enterprised many things with ill success, in *Greece* and *Asia*. How he was driven upon *Seleucus*, and compelled to yield himself. His imprisonment and death

THE *Athenians* were as unthankfull to *Demetrius* in this his adversity, as they had been in former times. For they presently forsook his friendship, and called *Pyrrhus* out of *Macedon* to bee their Patron. *Demetrius*, when he went against *Lyfsmachus*, had left a great part of his forces in *Greece*, under his son *Antigonus*. Therefore it is like, that he had soon gotten an Army, though *Phila* his wife

(who is highly commended for a wife and vertuous Lady) did poyson her self, upon desperate grief for his misfortune. The first, upon whom he attempted to shew his anger, were the *Athenians* that had well deserved it. He began to lay siege to their Town: but was pacified by *Crates* the Philosopher, whom they had made their spokeman; and taking fair words in stead of satisfaction, passed over into *Asia*, with eleven thousand Souldiers, meaning to trie his fortune against *Lyfimachus*, for the Provinces of *Lydia* and *Caria*.

At his first coming into those parts, fortune seemed to smile upon him. For many good Towns, willingly, or by compulsion, yielded to his obedience. There were also some Captains that fell from *Lyfimachus* to him, with their companies and treasures. <sup>10</sup> But it was not longer ere *Agathocles* the son of *Lyfimachus*, came upon him with an army so strong, that it was not for *Demetrius* his good, to hazzard his last stock against it. Wherefore, he resolved to passe through *Phrygia* and *Armenia*, into *Media*, and the Provinces of the higher *Asia*; trusting to finde a Kingdom somewhere in those remote quarters. The execution of this counsell was grievously impeached by *Agathocles*: who pursued him close, and cut off all his provisions, driving him to take which wayes he could, without following his intended course. In many skirmishes *Demetrius* vanquished this troublesome enemy: nevertheless, he could not be shaken off, but continued afflicting the poor titular King, with extreme famine. At length, in passing the river *Lychnus*, so many of *Demetrius* his men were lost, that the rest could no longer make resistance; but were driven to travell with such speed as might well be called a plaine flight. So that with famine, pestilent diseases following famine, and other accidents of war, eight thousand of them were consumed: the rest, with their Captain, escaped into *Cilicia*. *Seleucus* had gotten possession of *Cilicia*, whilst *Demetrius* was occupied in Greece: yet was it no part of *Demetrius* his errand, to lay claime to the Country; but with vehemence and humble letters he besought his Son-in-law, to call to mind their alliance, and to pity him in his great misery. These letters, at the first wrought well with *Seleucus*, and he condescended to the request: yet considering further how *Demetrius* had carried himself, when he recovered strength after the battell at *Issus*, he changed his purpose, and went against him with an Army.

Many treaties were held between them; of which none took effect, through the jealousy of *Seleucus*. Therefore, meer desperation enforced *Demetrius* to fight like a mad man, and his furies got him some victories, though of small importance. At length sickness took and held him forty dayes, in which time, a great number of his few men, ran to the enemy. This notwithstanding he still held out, and once had like to have taken *Seleucus* in his bed, had not his coming been discovered by fugitives, that gave alarme. Finally, when all his Army had forsaken him, and left him with a few of his friends to shift for himself, he was compelled by the last of those adherents (for even some of those few forsook him) to yield unto *Seleucus*.

*Seleucus* hearing this, was exceeding glad, and sent him very comfortable messages. <sup>40</sup> But the approbation of his own humanity, by his followers, was such, as renewed his jealous thoughts; and hindred him from admitting *Demetrius* to his presence, though otherwise he used him with as much favour, as any prisoner could wish. He was kept under sure guard in a demy-Island, wherein were goodly Walkes, Orchards, and Parkes for hunting. He had all that he asked royally, and friends allowed to visit him, at his, and their pleasure. Only his liberty was reserved unto the coming of young *Antiochus* and *Stratonica*, out of the high countries. In this sort he spent three years, living merrily all the while (as one that now enjoyed the happiness, which with so much travell and blood-shed, he had fought in vain) and then dyed, leaving to his son *Antigonus*, the same which his father had left unto himself; that is, friends and hope. His ashes were honourably buried in *Corinth*; his qualities have appeared in his actions, and the fortune of his House will shew it self hereafter, in times and places convenient.

## §. IX.

The death of Ptolomy, of Lyfimachus, and of Seleucus, that was last of Alexanders Captains: with other occurrences.

ABOUT the same time that *Demetrius* died, died also *Ptolomy* King of Egypt, a vertuous Prince, war-like, gentle, bountifull, and (which in those times was a rare commendation) regardfull of his word. He had, by many Wives and Concubines <sup>10</sup> many children, out of whom he selected *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, and caused him to reign together with himself, two or three years before he died, that so he might confirm him in the inheritance of the Kingdom. At this, *Ptolomy Ceraunus* (for all of that house assumed the name of *Ptolomy*) was grievously incensed. But no man cared for his anger. Therefore he went to *Seleucus*, who gave him loving entertainment. There were now onely two of *Alexanders* Captains left, *Seleucus* and *Lyfimachus*. These two needs would fight for it, who should be the longest liver of that brave Company. The true ground of their quarrell, was their neer equality or strength, and want of one to part them. The pretence was the murders which *Lyfimachus* had committed upon many of his Nobles, together with his poysoning *Agathocles* his eldest son: whose wife and children fled unto *Seleucus* for aid.

<sup>20</sup> The *Macedons*, after seven moneths pause, having spent their first heat of admiration, began to hearken so well to *Lyfimachus*, their naturall Country-man, that they forsook *Pyrrhus*, upon none other ground than because he was an Alien. This they had known well enough before: but they did him no great wrong in taking lightly from him, that they lightly gave him. *Lyfimachus* had reigned about five years alone, when the City of *Lyfimachia* (built by him, and called after his name) falling by an earthquake, appeared, by events, to have fore-shewed the fall of his house. His own jealousy, and the instigation of a mother-in-law, caused him to poyson his son *Agathocles*; which drew upon him that War, wherein (after the losse of all his fifteen children that were taken away by divers accidents) he perished himself.

<sup>30</sup> *Seleucus* was encountred by *Lyfimachus* upon *Asia* side, where one battell concluded the war, with *Lyfimachus* his death. It pleased *Seleucus* more than the victory, that he was the last of all the great Heroes that followed *Alexander*. For now he seemed to himself as Lord and Heir of all the conquered World. So he passed over into *Macedon*, to take possession of *Europe*, where there was none to withstand him. But there he ended his dayes, and within seven moneths followed *Lyfimachus*, and others of his fellows, by a bloody death, being treacherously slain by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, whose friend and Patron he had been. Seventy and seven year old he was, when he fought with *Lyfimachus*, and *Lyfimachus* was seventy and four. With them ended the generation of old Captains, that had seen the dayes as it were of another World under the *Persian*: yet was there <sup>40</sup> left one equal to any of them in the Art of War: even *Pyrrhus* the Epirot, of whom we spake before; that is now ready to enter into war with the *Romans*, a more war-like people than *Alexander* himself did ever encounter. Of which war, and of which people, it is needfull that we here make mention, as of a story more important, than any likely to ensue in Greece, or in the great Kingdoms that were held by *Alexanders* Successors, with lesse (and still decreasing) vertue, than was that, by which they were first purchased.

## CHAP. VII.

## The growth of Rome : and settling of the Eastern Kingdoms.

## §. I.

How the Romans enlarged their Dominions in Italy, from the death of Tullus Hostilius, unto such time as they were assailed by Pyrrhus.

**H**OW Rome was founded by Romulus; settled in good order by Numa Pompilius; and by many (though small) victories, it gathered strength, unto such time as it became the head of Latium, by the conquest of Alba, in the reign of Tullus Hostilius: it hath been already noted, in due order of time. But whereas now the Roman greatness beginneth to encounter the power of Greece; and extending it self out of Italy, to overwhelm the Dominions of other States and Princes: I hold it convenient (as in like cases I have done) briefly to see down the growth of this mighty City, in a compendious relation of those many actions, which could not have been delivered in the ages, wherein they were severally performed, without much interruption of the History, that was then occupied in matter more important.

After the death of Tullus Hostilius (who when he had reigned two and thirty years, was burnt together with his house by lightning) Ancus Martius, Grand-child to Numa Pompilius by his daughter, and not much unlike him in disposition, succeeded in the Kingdom of Rome. He walled the City about; enlarged it with the Hill Aventine, which he enclosed; built a bridge over Tybris, and the City of Ostia upon the Sea, sixteen miles distant from Rome. Finally, having reigned 24. years, he died, and by his last Will he left his children in charge with one Lucumon, the son of Damaratus, a Corinthian, who avoiding Cypselus King of Corinth his tyranny, had fled into Hetruria, and dwelt in Tarquinii, by the name of which Town he was afterwards called Tarquinus. From that City in Hetruria coming to Rome, and encouraged by some ominous occurrences, together with his wife Tanaquil's prophecy, he grew a favorite of Ancus Martius; by his Grecian wit humouring the factions of the Roman Court, inasmuch, that after his decease he became not only Protector to the children, but Governour to the City. He doubled the number of Senators, and enlarged the Centurions of Horsemen: neither was he less eminent in war, than in peace: for he prevailed often against the Tuscans, and from his victories, the chiefest ornaments of triumph took their original. When this Lucius Tarquinus had reigned 38. years, he was slain by the sons of Ancus Martius, to whom he had been left Guardian. But Tanaquil his wife, perceiving what was done, informed the people, from out of an high Turret, that her Husband was wounded, and sick, but not dangerously. And withall signified unto them, that in the interim of his sickness, one Servius Tullius, whom from his birth she always prophesied to be born to great hopes (the son of P. Corniculanus and Ocrissa, a well defended, but captive woman) brought up in her house, and husband unto her daughter, should supply her husbands place, in governing the State, untill his recovery: which government; being thus at first obtained by cunning, he afterwards usurped as his right. He first ordained Ratements, Subsidies, and Valuations of the peoples wealth; among whom, at that time, fourscore thousand were mulctured, of which number consisted their whole corporation; and by distinction of Dignities, Ages, Trades, and Offices, he managed the Kingdom in as good sort, as if it had been a private household. At length, having two daughters of different natures, the one milde and gentle, the other fierce and outrageous: and finding also that the two sons of Tarquinus Priscus, Sextus and Aruns, which had been committed unto his tuition, were of different dispositions, proportionably answering to his daughters; he (willing to adde water, not oile, to fire) gave the milde daughter to Sextus the hot-headed son, and the violent, to Aruns the gentle in marriage. But whether by intended courses, or by accident, it hapned; the two milde ones being made away, the furious natures were readily joyned in marriage: who

who soon concurring, and calling the Senate together, began to lay claim to the Kingdom. Upon this tumult, Servius Tullius hastening to the Senate, (where he thought by authority to have bridled infolency) was thrown down the stairs, and going home sore bruised, was slain by the way, when he had reigned 44. years. Then Tullia his daughter, first proclaiming her Husband Tarquinus Superbus King; returning home, enforced her Coachman to drive his Chariot over her fathers corps; whereupon the street had the denomination of wicked street. This Tarquaine, exercising cruelty without justice, and tyranny without mercy, upon the people and Senators; having tired himself and them at home, used the same rage of treachery upon his borders. He took

Oriculum, Snelja, Pometia, and the Gabii. The issue of besieging Ardea, a town eighteen miles distant from Rome, was of bad successe. In the heat of which war, his son Sextus Tarquinus violently ravished that chaste Lady Lucretia, his kinsman Collatines wife: who in way of expiation for so unchaste a deed, thought good to wash out those spots of infamy with her own blood; so having first bequeathed the revenge unto her father Sp. Lucretius Tricipitinus, her husband Collatine, and Junius Brutus (she kill'd her self: whereupon (chiefly by Junius Brutus his resolution) Tarquinus Superbus, with his wife & children, was depoled and banished; and fled to Porfenna King of Hetruria for succour, in the five and twentieth year of his reign, and the two hundred forty and fourth from the building of their City: in which space Rome had scarce gotten possession of fifteen miles round about her.

Junius Brutus by the help of Collatine, having expelled Tarquaine, and freed his Country from that heavey yoke of bondage, enforced the people by solemne oath, never to admit any government by Kings amongst them: whereupon they ranfacked their Kings goods, consecrated their fields to Mars, and conferred the government of the State upon Brutus and Collatine. But because the name of King was odious in their eares, they changed the manner of their government, from perpetuall to annuall, and from a single government to a double; left perpetuall or sole dominion might be some motive to usurpation; and in stead of Kings they called them Consuls, signifying, as it may be interpreted, Providers: that their titles might remember them of their place, which was to be alwayes mindfull of their Citizens welfare. And yet was it so hard settling of troubled waters, that the people, after this innovation of State, scarce daring to assure themselves of their own security, enforced Tarquinus Collatine to resign up his authority, fearing that tyranny would be hereditary, and supposing that the very name and affinity with the house of Tarquaine, favoured already of their condition. In his room he substituted Valerius Publicola, who that he might (as his name importeth) be gracious in the peoples eyes, gave liberty, in matters of controversie, to appeale from the Consuls to the people: and that he might as well in goods as in person, avoid occasion of suspition, caused his own house to be pulled down, because it was built in a place defensible, as if it had been a Cittadell. Neither was Brutus any wayes deficient in matter of greater moment; which concerned as well the peoples safety, as their favour: for having got intelligence, that some greener wits, and in the first rank his own sons, were itching after innovations, hoping to restore the banished Kings; he caused them, publicly in the Market-place, to be whipt, and then to be brought all unpartially to the block.

Hitherto the Romans, having by the unblemished integrity of Brutus, well appeased all inbred quarrels at home, now hereafter employed their military designements against Forrainers: first, for their liberty; secondly, for enlarging of their possessions; and lastly, for defending their confederate Provinces, and extending their Empire. For Rome, situated as it were in the mid-way between Latium and the Tuscans, having as yet but narrow bounds, being in her minority, could not but give occasion of offence to her neighbours; untill by main opposition, having prevailed against her borderers, she used them as instruments, whereby to obtain the rest.

Their first war, in the first yeer of Consuls, was against Porfenna King of Hetruria: who being over-perswaded by Tarquines lamentation, came to Rome, together with the banished King, and with great forces, to seat him again in his Kingdom.

In the first conflict, Horatius Cocles, having long time born the main brunt of his enemies, on the bridge over Tibris, at length, feeling himself too faint to stand against so many, caused the bridge behind him to be broken down, and with his armour, leaping

into



into the River, like a hunted Stagge, refreshed his hot spirits, and returned safe to his fellows, with the like resolution to sustain a new charge. *Porfenna*, although by this he had well-nigh won the hill *Janiculus*, which is the very entrance into the City, and found the victory, in a manner, assuredly his own: yet admiring their valour, and relieved by the constant resolution of *Mutius Scaevola* (who having by error slain *Porfenna* his Secretary in stead of the King himself, did in scorn of torments threatened, burn off his own hand) he thought it not any whit prejudicial either to his safety, or credit, to enter league with them at the worst hand. And yet the edge of *Tarquinius* his spleen was not quite abated, though *Arms* his son, and *Brutus*, his enemy, in single combat, had slain each other. And here the *Romans*, although they lost *Brutus* got the field; and their Ladies, whose Champion he was, for their chastity, not for beauty, mourned the losse of him one whole year. Into his place, for the residue of his year, was subrogated *Sp. Lucretius Tricipitinus*, after to *Lucretia*: and in his roome (deceasing naturally before the year expired) *Horatius Pulvillus*.

*Tarquinius*, upon his overthrow, feeling the fates disastrous, thought it no boot to strive against the stream, but spent the residue of his time, which was about fourteen years, privately at *Tusculum*. Yet his Son-in-law *Mamilius Tusculanus*, stomaching a-fresh at those old repulses, because *Porfenna* had made peace with the *Romans*, and denied further succour unto the *Tarquines*, mulstered up his *Latines*, and gave battell to the *Romans*, at the Lake *Regillum*; where the conflict was fierce, and the issue uncertain, untill *Anlus Posthumus*, the *Roman* Dictator, (for they had created this Magistracy greater than Consuls, purposely for this war, when first it was expected to exasperate his Souldiers courage, threw their own Ensignes amidst the Enemies; and *Cossus*, or *Spurius Cossus*, (Master of the Horse-men, an assistant Officer to the Dictator) commanded to take off their bridles, that they might run with free violence, to recover again their Ensignes. This fight was so well performed, that a report went of *Castor* and *Pollux*, two gods, who came on milk-white Steeds, to be eye-witness of their valour, and fellow-helpers of their victory; for the Generall consecrated a Temple to them, as a stipend for their paines. After this the *Romans* fierce spirits, having no object of valour abroad, reflected upon themselves at home; and the sixteenth year after the Kings expulsion, upon instigation of some desperate bankrupts, thinking themselves wrongfully oppressed by the Senate and Consuls, they made an uproare in the holy Mount; untill by *Mevenius Agrippa*, his discreet allusion, of the inconvenience in the head and bellies discord, to that present occasion, they were reconciled to the Senate: with condition, that they might have some new Magistrates created, to whom they might appeale in cases of variance, and make them Solicitors in all their controversies, the Consuls authority notwithstanding. This was enacted, and they were called the Tribunes of the people. After this attreement among themselves, they had continuall War with the *Latines*, concerning their bounds and limits, and with other neighbouring States. Among these, the *Volsci* and *Aequi* held them longest; who made War of themselves upon the *Romans*: whereby they lost the best City in their whole jurisdiction, *Corioli*.

In this conquest, *T. Martins* got the surname of *Coriolanus*: a name honorable then, as driven from a great victory; although, by reason of the poverty of the Town, a *Roman* General, in after times, would have been ashamed of that title. But yet these graces had bin no occasion of disparagement, had he not afterwards in a great time of dearth, advised to sell corne, which they procured from *Sicily*, at too high a rate, to the people, whereupon *Dectius Atius*, their Tribune, in their behalf, accused him, & after judgement banished him. *Coriolanus* flying to the *Volsci*, whom lately before he had vanquished, incensed them to requeir their forces again; which being committed unto him, & to *Atius Tullus*, he prevailed in field, so far forth, that he was come within four or five miles of the City. Incamping there, he made so sharp war, and was at such defiance with his Country, that he would not relent by any supplication of Embassadors, untill his mother *Veturia*, and *Valerius* his wife, with a pittifull tune of deprecation, shewing themselves better Subjects to their Country than friends to their Son and Husband, were more available to *Rome* than was any force of Armes. Hereupon *Coriolanus* dismissing his Army, was after put to death among the *Volsci*, as a Traitor, for neglecting such opportunity: or (as others surmise) living with them untill old age, he died naturally.

Not

Not long after this the *Veii* in *Hetruria*, provoked the *Romans*, against whom the *Fabii*, three hundred and six in number, all of one Family, intreated and obtained, that they only might be employed, as it had been in a private quarrell. These *Fabii*, after some good services, lying incamped at *Cremora*, were circumvented, and all slain: one onely of that whole house had been left, by reason of infancy, at home; from whom afterward sprang *Fabius Maximus*, who vanquished *Hannibal*.

In proesse of time, the *Romans* were also troubled with the *Volsci*, at the hill of *Algidum*, two miles from *Rome*; where *Lucius Miminus* their Consul, with his whole army, had been discomfited, had not *L. Quintius Cincinnatus* chosen Dictator, and taken from the plough to the highest honour in *Rome*, with succell answerable to his expedition, dispersed his enemies, and freed his country in the space of sixteen dayes. In the continuance of this *Volscian* war, it was that *Appius Claudius*, one of the ten men, whom they had two years before chosen Governours of the State, and Inactors of *Solons* laws amongst them, procured from *Athenes* (abrogating in the mean while the Consuls, and all other Magistrates) would have ravished *Virginia*, the daughter of *T. Virginus*, Captain of a company, and lying then in a camp at *Algidum*. Hereupon the people in an uproare took the Hill *Aventine*, and after much variance, enforced the ten men to resign up their authority again to new Consuls.

After this, either new quarrels, or desire to revenge old losses drew the *Romans* into a new war against the *Veientes* and their adherents, upon whom, having tried their forces with diversity of Captaines, and variety of event, they vanquished the *Falisci*, and the *Fidenates*, and utterly subdued the *Veientes*. In conquering the *Falisci*, *Furius Camillus* shewed no lesse integrity than fortitude. For when a Schoolmaster, by training forth into the *Roman* camp, many children of the principall Citizens, thought to betray the Town, yielding them all up as hostages: *Camillus* delivered this Traitor bound unto his Souldiers, willing them to whip him back into the City; which forthwith yielded unto him in reverence of his justice. The siege of *Veii* was ten yeeres, and so troublesome, that the *Romans* were there first enforced to winter abroad under beasts skins (to which they were the more easily induced, because then first they received pay) and to make vowes never to return without victory.

At length winning the City by a Mine, they got so large spoils, that they consecrated their tenths to *Apollo Pythius*: and the whole people in generall were called to the ransacking of the City. But yet they were no lesse unthankfull to *Camillus* for his service, than before they had been to *Coriolanus*; for they banished him the City, upon some occasion of inequality in dividing the spoiles: yet he requited their unkindness with a new peece of service against the fury of the *Gauls*; who being a populous Country, and very healthfull, the fathers (as sometimes now) lived so long, that the sons, destitute of meanes, were enforced to roave abroad, seeking some place where to set up their rest: and withall being a Nation vaste in body, rude by nature, and barbarous in conditions, wandred as Rovers over many Countries. Some of them lighting on *Italy*, let upon *Clusium* a Town in *Hetruria*: whereof *Rome* having information, (and being careful of her Confederate Towns) sent Embassadors, warning them to desist from such injurious enterprises. But the barbarous people, not regarding the message, upon some injurie offered by the *Roman* Embassadors, converted their forces from *Clusium* towards *Rome*; and giving a great overthrow unto the *Romans*, by the River *Allia*, upon the sixteenth day before the Calends of *August* (which day was after branded for unlucky, and called *Alensis* in the *Roman* Kalender) they hastned towards the City. Then was *Rome* the true map of misery and desolation. For some leaving the City; some creeping into holes; Priests hiding their reliques; and every one shifting for himself ere the enemy came; *Rome* was abandoned as indefensible. The Vestall Virgins, in this tumult, were safely conveyed away; the Ancients of the City, gathering boldness out of desperate fear, did put on their Robes, and taking their leave of the world, did set themselves in Thrones, in their severall houses, hourly expecting the messengers of death, and meaning to dye, as they had lived, in State. The younger sort, with *M. Manlius* their Captain, took upon them to make good the Capitall.

By this the *Gauls* were entred the City, who seeing all quiet, at first suspected some ambush; afterward finding all secure, they fell to the spoile, committing all to the fire and sword. As for the old Senatours, they late in their Majesty with a grave resolution,

I i i i

having

having first revered them as gods, anon they tried whether they would die like men. When the City was thoroughly rified, they attempted the Capitall: which held them work for the space of seven moneths. Once they were like to have surpris'd it by night, but being descried by the gaging of Geele, *M. Manlius* did awaken, and kept them from entrance. At length a composition was agreed upon: the *Gauls* being weary, and the *Romans* hungry. The bargain was, that the *Gauls* should take a thousand pound-weight in gold, to desist from their siege. Whilest the gold was in weighing, the *Gauls*, with open infolency, made their weights too heave: *Brennus* their Captain, casting his sword into the ballance, and with a proud exprobration, saying, that the vanquished must be patient perforce. But in the midst of this cavilling came *Furius Camillus* with an Army from *Ardea*, (where he had lived in his banishment) and fell upon the *Gauls* with such violence, that he disperst their troops, quenched the fire of the City with their blood, forcing them to restore the spoiles, with advantage, and forbear the gold, in accepting which they had lately been so nice. Further, having rid the City of them, he so hotly pursued them thorow a great part of *Italy*, that the remainder of their Army which escaped from him, was very small. Other Armies of the *Gauls*, which followed this first, had the like ill successe. They were often beaten by the *Romans*, especially the victories of *M. Torquatus*, and of *M. Valerius Corvinus* (each of which in single fight slew a severall Champion of the *Gauls*) abated their presumption, and restored courage to the *Romans*. *Camillus*, for his notable service, was afterwards accounted a second *Romulus*.

The people, after this destruction of their City, were earnestly bent to go to the *Vei* to inhabit; but *Camillus* dissuaded them.

About the same time, somewhat before the siege of *Vei* they changed their government from Consuls to military Tribunes. The government of these also, after some years, was by civil dissention interrupted: so that one while Consuls ruled, another while there was an Anarchy. Then the Tribunes were restored and ruled again, till after many years expired, the Consular authority was established, it being enacted, that one of the Consuls should always be a Plebeian. This was after the building of the City 265. years. And now *Rome*, by suppression of her neighbour Countries, creeping well forward out of her Minority, dares set forth against the warlike *Samnites*, who dwell almost one hundred and thirty miles off: situated between *Campania* and *Apulia*. These did so strongly invade the *Campanians* their neighbours, that they forced them to yeeld themselves subjects to *Rome*, and undergoe any conditions of Tribute, or whatsoever else to obtain protection: which the *Romans*, although both Countries had been their Confederates, yet not willing that the greater, like fish, should devour the lesse, easily allowed of; aiming themselves at the good situation of *Campania*, the abundance of Corne and Wine, pleasant Cities and Towns, but especially *Capua* it self, the fairest City then in all *Italy*.

The families of the *Papyrii* and *Fabii* were most employed in the managing of this War, which endured the space of fifty years. And in this season were the *Romans* oftentimes dangerously encountred by the *Samnites*, as when *T. Veturius* and *Sp. Posthumus* were Consuls, and discomfited by *Pontius* at *Caudium*, with no small ignominy: and when *Q. Fabius Gurges* lost the field with three thousand men. But for those losses, many great victories made large amends: The greatest whereof were gotten by *L. Papyrius*, and by *Quintus Fabius Maximus*.

The *Samnites* drew the *Hetrurians* into their quarrell. But the force of the *Samnites* was well broken, ere the *Hetrurians* (the greater and richer, but lesse warlike Nation) began to stir. So the one and the other of these two Countries, became at length, tributary to *Rome*. In the continuance of this long war it was, (though in time of truce between the *Romans* and *Samnites*) that the *Latines* began to challenge equall freedom in the Corporation of *Rome*, and right in bearing office, so that they required to have one of the Consuls yearly chosen out of them.

This demand of the *Latines* was not unreasonable. For the *Romans* themselves were a Latine Colony; besides all which, they made offer to change their name, and to be all called *Romans*. But the *Romans* were too proud to admit any such capitulation. So a great battell was fought between them: wherein the fortune of *Rome* prevailed, by the vertue of the Consuls.

*Manlius*

*Manlius Torquatus* and the elder *Decius* were then Consuls, whom the Soothsayers advertised, that the side should be victorious which lost the Generall in fight. Hereupon *Decius* the Consull exposed his life to the enemy, and purchased victory (as was believed) by his death. In which kind of devoting himself for his Army, the son of this *Decius* being after Consull, did imitate his father in the *Hetrurian* war. But (as *Tully* well notes) it was rather the desperate resolution of these *Decii*, that purchased victory, by rushing into the midst of the enemies, wherein their Soldiers followed them, than any great commendation of such a religion, as required the lives of so worthy Citizens, to be sacrificed for their Country. The discipline of *Manlius* was no lesse resolute, than the valour of *Decius*. He forbade any one to forsake his place, and fight single with an enemy. For breach of which order he caused his own son to be put to death, who had slain a Captain of the *Latines*, being challenged in single fight.

When the *Latines*, the *Aequi*, *Volsci*, *Hernici*, *Campani*, *Samnites*, and *Hetrurians*, with some other people, were brought under obedience; it was a vain labour for any people of *Italy* to contend against the *Romans*.

Yet the *Sabinus* adventured to try their fortune, and found it bad. For *Curius Dentatus*, the *Roman* Consull, waisting all their Country with fire and sword, from the River *Nar* and *Vellus*, to the *Adriatique* Sea, brought them into quiet subjection.

The last of the *Italians* that made trial of the *Roman* arms, were the *Tarentines* and their adherents. These had interposed themselves as mediators between the *Romans* and *Samnites*; with a peremptory denunciation of War, unto that party which should dare to refuse peace by them tendered. These threats which discovered their bad affection unto *Rome*, ended in words; but when the *Samnites* were utterly subdued, matter enough of quarrell was found to examine their ability of performance.

The *Romans* complained that certain ships of theirs were robbed, and sent Embassadors unto *Tarentum*, to require amends. Upon some wrong done to these Embassadors, was laid the foundation of that War, wherein the *Lucans*, *Messapians*, *Brutians*, and *Apulians*, joyning with the *Tarentines*, procured the *Samnites*, and other Subjects of *Rome* to rebell and take their part. But some experience of the *Roman* strength, taught all these people to know their own weakness. Wherefore they agreed to send for *Pyrrhus*, by whose aid (being a *Grecian*, as the *Tarentines* also were) great hope was conceived, that the Dominion of *Rome* should be confined unto more narrow bounds than all *Italy*, which already in a manner it did over-spread.

## §. II.

*How Pyrrhus warred upon the Romans, and vanquished them in two battells.*

*Pyrrhus*, forsaken by the *Macedonians*, and unable to deal with *Lysimachus*, was compelled a while to live in rest: which he abhorred no lesse than a wiser Prince would have desired. He had a strong Army, and a good Fleet, which in that unsettled estate of things, was enough to purchase a Kingdom: but the fall of *Demetrius* had so increased the power of *Lysimachus*, that it was no point of wisdom to make an offensive war upon him, without far greater forces: *Antigonus*, the son of *Demetrius*, held *Corinth* at the same time, and some other Towns, with the remainder of his Fathers Army and treasures, left in his hand. Upon him it is like that *Pyrrhus* might have won; but it was better to let him alone, that he might serve to give some hindrance to *Lysimachus*.

In this want of employment, and covetous desire of finding it, the *Tarentine* Embassadors came very fitly to *Pyrrhus*: and they came with brave offers, as needing no other aid than his good conduct, which to obtain, they would cast themselves under his protection. They had in their companie some of the *Samnites*, *Lucanians*, *Messapians*, and others; which promised in behalf of their severall Nations, as much as could be desired. This encouraged *Pyrrhus*, and filled him with hopes of goodly conquests; that he might enlarge his Empire to the West, as far as *Alexander* had gotten Eastward; and still by one victory open the gate unto another. To which effect it is said, that once he answered *Cynaeus* his chief Counsellour, asking what he meant to doe after every of the victories which he hoped to get: that having won *Rome*, he would soon be Master of all *Italy*; that, after *Italy* he would quickly get the Isle of *Sicily*; that,

out of *Sicill*, he would passe over into *Africk*, and win *Carthage*, with all the rest of the Country; and being strengthened with the force of all these Provinces, he would be too hard for any of those that were now so proud and troublesome. But *Cyneas* enquired yet further, what they should doe, when they were Lords of all. Whereunto *Pyrhus* (finding his drift) answered pleasantly, that they would live merrily; a thing (as *Cyneas* then told him) that they presently might doe, without any trouble, if he could be contented with his own.

Nevertheless, this *Italian* expedition seemed unto *Pyrhus* a matter of such consequence, as was not to be omitted, in regard of any scholasticall dispute. Wherefore he prepared his Army, of almost thirty thousand men, well fortified, and well trained soldiers: part of which he sent over before him under *Cyneas*, with the rest he followed in person. At his coming, he found the *Tarentines*, very prompt of tongue, but in matter of execution, utterly careless to provide for the war. Wherefore he was faine to shut up their Theater, and other places of pleasure and resort, enforcing them to take armes, and making such a strict muster, as was to them very displeasing, though greatly be-  
hooving to their estate.

Whilest he was occupied with these cares, *Levinus* the *Roman* Consul drew neer, and began to waste *Lucania*, a Province confederate with the *Tarentines* in this War.

The *Lucanians* were not ready to defend their own Country; the *Sannites* were careless of the harm, that fell not (as yet) upon themselves; the *Tarentines* were better prepared than they would have been, but their valour was little: all of these had been accustomed to shrink for feare of the *Roman* fortitude: and therefore it fell out happily, that *Pyrhus* relied more upon his own forces, than the issue of their vaunting promises. He was now driven either to set forward with those that himself had brought into *Italy*, and the assistance of the *Tarentines*, wherein little was to be reposed; or else to weaken the reputation of his own sufficiency, which by all means he was careful to uphold. In good time a great part of his forces, that had been scattered by soule weaker at Sea, were safely come to him: with which he resolved to assay the valour of the *Romans*, against whom he proudly marched.

*Levinus* the Consul was not affrighted with the terrible name of a great King; but came on confidently to meet him, and give him battell ere all his adherents should be ready to joyne with him. This boldnesse of the *Roman*, and the slacknesse of the *Messapians*, *Lucanians*, *Sannites*, and others, whom the danger most concerned, caused *Pyrhus* to offer a treaty of peace: requiring to have the quarrell between the *Romans* and his *Italian* friends, referred to his arbitrement. Whether he did this to win time, that the *Sannites* and their fellows might arrive at his Camp; or whether, considering better at neer distance, the weight of the business which he had taken in hand, he were desirous to quit it with his honour; the short answer that was returned to his proposition, gave him no means of either the one or the other: for the *Romans* sent him this word, that they had neither chosen him their Judge, nor feared him their enemy.

Hereupon both Armies halted their march unto the River of *Siris*: *Levinus* intending to fight before the arrival of the *Sannites*; *Pyrhus*, to hinder him from passing that River, untill his own Army were full. Upon the first view of the *Roman* Camp, it was readily conceived by *Pyrhus*, that he had not now to doe with barbarous people, but with men well trained in a brave discipline of War: which caused him to set a strong Corps de garde upon the passage of the river, that he might not be compelled to fight, untill he saw his best advantage. But he quickly found, that this new enemy was not only skilfull in the Art of War, but courageous in execution. For the *Roman* Army entred the Foord, in face of his Corps de garde; and their horse, at the same time began to passe the River in sundry places: which caused the *Greeks* to forsake the defence of their bank, and speedily retire unto their Camp.

This audacity forced *Pyrhus* to battell; wherewith he thought it best to present them, ere the whole Army had recovered firme footing, and were in order. So directing his Capitaines how to marshall his battels; himself with the horse, charged upon the *Romans*: who stoutly received him as men well exercised in sustaining furious impressions. In this fight, neither did his courage transpire him beyond the duty of a carefull Generall; nor his providence in directing others, hinder the manifestation of his personal valour. It behoved him indeed to do his best; for he never met with better  
opposers.

opposers. Once, and shortly after the fight began, his horse was slain under him: afterwards, he changed armour with a friend; but that friend paid his life for the use of his Kings armour, which was torne from his back. This accident had almost lost him the battell: but he perceiving it, discovered his face, and thereby restored courage to his men, and took from the *Romans* their vain joy. The fight was obstinate, and with the greater losse (at least of more eminent men) on *Pyrhus* his side, as long as onely speer and sword were used. But when the Elephants were brought into the wings, whose unusual form and terrible aspect, the horses of the *Romans* (unaccustomed to the like) were not able to sustain; then was the victory quickly gotten. For the *Roman* battels, perceiving their horse put to the rout, and driven out of the field; finding also themselves both charged in flanke, and over-borne, by the force and huge bulke of those strange beasts; gave way to necessity, and saved themselves, as well as they could, by hasty flight: in which consternation, they were so forgetfull of their discipline, that they tarried not to defend their Camp, but ran quite beyond it, leaving both it, and the honour of the day, entirely to *Pyrhus*.

The fame of this victory was soon spread over *Italy*; and the reputation was no lesse than the fame. For it was a matter very rare to be heard, that a *Roman* Consul, with a select Army, should lose in plain battell, not onely the Field, but the Camp it self, being so notably fortified as they alwaies were. And this honour was the more bravely won by *Pyrhus*, for that he had with him none of his *Italian* friends, save the unwarlike *Tarentines*. Neither could he well dissemble his content that he took, in having the glory of this action peculiarly his own, at such time as he blamed the *Lucans* and *Sannites*, for coming (as we say) a day after the Faire. Nevertheless he wisely considered the strength of the *Romans*, which was such, as would better endure many such losses, than he could many such victories. Therefore he thought it good to compound with them, whilest with his honour he might; and to that purpose he sent unto them *Cyneas* his Embassadour, demanding only to have the *Tarentines* permitted to live at rest, and himself accepted as their especial friend. This did *Cyneas*, with all his cunning, and with liberal gifts labour to effect; but neither man nor woman could be found in *Rome*, that would take any bribe of him; neither did their desire of recovering their captives, or their danger, by the rising of many States in *Italy* against them, so incline them to peace, as the vehement exhortation of *Appius Claudius*, an old and blinde Senatour, did stirre them up to make good their honour by war. So they returned answer, that whilest *Pyrhus* abode in *Italy*, they would come to no agreement with him.

Such was the report that *Cyneas* made at his return, of the *Roman* puiffance and vertue, as kindled in *Pyrhus* a great desire of confederacie with that gallant City. Hereupon many kind Offices passed between them; but still when he urged his motion of peace, the answer was; *He must first depart out of Italy, and then treat of peace.*

In the meane season, each part made provision for war; the *Romans* levying a more mighty army than the former; and *Pyrhus* being strengthened with access to his forces of all the East parts of *Italy*. So they came to triall of a second battell, wherein (though after long and cruell fight) the boisterous violence of the Elephants gave to *Pyrhus* a second victory. But this was not altogether so joyfull as the former had been: rather it gave him cause to say, that such another victory would be his utter undoing. For he had lost the flower of his Army in this battell; and though he drave the *Romans* into their Camp, yet he could not force them out of it, nor saw any likelihood of prevailing against them, that were like to be relieved with daily supplies, whilest he should be driven to spend upon his old stock. Neither could he expect that his Elephants should alwaies stand him in stead. A little knowledge of their manner in fight would soon teach the *Romans*, that were apt Schollers in such learning, how to make them unserviceable. Wherefore he desired nothing more, than how to carry his honour safe out of *Italy*: which to doe (seeing the *Romans* would not help him, by offering or accepting any fair conditions of peace, or of truce,) he took a sleight occasion, presented by fortune, that followeth to be related.

## §. III.

*The great troubles in Macedon and Sicill. How Pyrrhus, being invited into Sicill, forsook Italie, wan the most of the Isle; and lost it in short space. Pyrrhus returns into Italie, where he is beaten by the Romans, and so goes back to his own Kingdom.*

When *Ptolomie Ceraunus* had traiterously murdered his Benefactor and Patron *Seleucus*, he presently seized upon all the Dominions of *Lyfimachus* in *Europe*, as if they had been the due reward unto him, that had slain the Conqueror. The houses to of *Cassand* and *Lyfimachus* were then fallen to the ground: there was there in *Macedon* any man of strength and reputation enough to advance himself against *Ceraunus*. The friends of *Lyfimachus* were rather pleased to have him their King, that had (as he professed) revenged their Lords death; than any way offended with the odiousness of his fact, by which they were freed from subjection, to one, against whom they had stood in opposition. Many there were, that upon remembrance of his fathers great vertue, gathered hope of finding the like in *Ceraunus*; perswading themselves that his reign might prove good, though his entrance had been wicked. These affections of the *Macedonians* did serve to defeat *Antigonus* the son of *Demetrius*, that made an attempt upon the Kingdom. As for *Antigonus* the son of *Seleucus*, he was far off, and might 20 be questioned about some part of *Asia*, ere he should be able to bring an Army neer unto *Europe*. Yet he made great shew of meaning to revenge his Fathers death: but being stronger in money than in armes, he was content, after a while, to take fair words, and make peace with the murderer. While these three strove about the Kingdom, *Pyrrhus*, who thought his claim as good as any of theirs, made use of their dissention: threatening war, or promising his assistance to every one of them. By these means he strengthened himself, and greatly advantaged his *Italian* voyage, which he had then in hand: requesting money of *Antiochus*, ships of *Antigonus*, and souldiers of *Ptolomie*, who gave him his daughter in marriage, and lent him a strong power of *Macedonian* Souldiers, and of Elephants (covenanting to have them restored at two yeeres end) more for fear than 30 for love: that so he might free himself from trouble, and quietly enjoy his Kingdom.

Thus *Ptolomie* grew mighty on the sudden; and the power that by wicked means he had gotten, by means as wicked he encreased.

All *Macedon* and *Thrace* being his, the strong City of *Cassandria* was held by *Asine* his sister, the widow of *Lyfimachus*, who lay therein with her young children. Her he circumvented by making love to her, and (according to the fashion of those times, wherein Princes regarded no degree of consanguinity) taking her to wife, with promise to adopt her children: a promise that he meant not to performe; for it was not long, ere he slew them, and drave her into exile.

In the pride of this good successe, which his villanie found, vengeance came upon 40 him from a far, by the furie of a Nation that he never heard of. *Belgus* a Captain of the *Gauls*, having forced his passage through many Countries, unto the confines of *Macedon*, sent a proud message to *Ceraunus*, commanding him to buy peace with money, or otherwise, to look for all the miseries of war. These *Gauls* were the race of those, that issued out of their Country, to seek new seats in that great expedition, wherein *Brennus* took and burnt the City of *Rome*. They had divided themselves, at their setting forth, into two companies; of which the one fell upon *Italie*; the other, passing through the Countries that lye on the Northerne side of the *Adriatick* Sea, made long abode in *Pannonia*, and the Regions adjoining, where they forced all the neighbour Princes to redeem peace with tribute, as now they would have compelled *Ceraunus* to doe: unto 50 whose borders they came about an hundred and eight yeeres after such time as their fellows had taken *Rome*.

When their Embassadors came to *Ptolomie*, asking what he would give: his answer was, that he would be contented to give them peace, but it must be with condition, that they should put into his hands their Princes as hostages, and yeeld up their armes; for otherwise, he would neither pardon their boldness, nor give any credit to their words. At this answer, when it was returned, the *Gauls* did laugh; saying, That they would soon confute with deeds, the vanitie of such proud words. It may seem strange, that

that he, who had given away part of his Army unto *Pyrrhus*, for very feare; should be so confident in undertaking more mighty enemies. The King of the *Dardaniens* offered to lend him twenty thousand men against the *Gauls*: but he scorned the offer; saying, That he had the children of those, which under the conduct of *Alexander* had subdued all the East. Thus he issued forth against all the barbarous people with his famous *Macedonians*, as if the victory must needs have followed the reputation of a great name. But he soon found his great error when it was too late. For the Enemies were not only equall in strength of body, and fierceness of courage, but so far superiour to the *Macedonians* in number, that few or none escaped their furie. *Ptolomie* himself grie- 10 vously wounded, fell into their hands, whilst the battell continued; and they presently strook off his head, which they shewed to his men, on the top of a Lance, to their utter astonishment.

The report of this great overthrow filled all *Macedon* with such desperation, that the people fled into walled Towns, and abandoned the whole Country as lost. Onely *Sophenes*, a valiant Caprain, animating as many as he could, gathered a small Army, with which he many times got the upper hand, and hindred *Belgus* from using the victory at his whole pleasure. In regard of this his vertue, the Souldiers would have made him King; which title he refused, and was contented with the name of a General. But (as mischiefs doe seldom come alone) the good successe of *Belgus* drew into 20 *Macedon*, *Brennus*, another Caprain of the *Gauls*, with an hundred and fifty thousand foot, and fifteen thousand horse; against which mighty Army, when *Sophenes* with his weak troupes made opposition, he was easily beaten, and the *Macedonians* again compelled to hide themselves within their walls, leaving all their Country to the spoil of the Barbarians.

Thus were the *Macedonians* destitute of a King, and trodden down by a Nation that they had not heard of, in lesse than fifty yeeres after the death of *Alexander*, who fought to discover and subdue unknown Countries, as if all *Greece*, and the Empire of *Persia* had been too little for a King of *Macedon*.

Very seasonably had these newes been carried to *Pyrrhus* in *Italy*, who sought a faire 30 pretext of relinquishing his War with the *Romans*; had not other tidings out of *Sicill* distracted him, and carried him away in pursuit of nearer hopes. For after the death of *Agathocles*, who reigned over the whole Island, the *Carthaginians* sent an Army to conquer *Sicill*, out of which, by him, they had been expelled. This Army did so fast prevail, that the *Sicilians* had no other hope to avoid slavery, then in submitting themselves to the rule of *Pyrrhus*; whom, being a *Grecian*, and a noble Prince, they thought it more for their good to obey, than to live under the well known heavey yoke of *Carthage*. To him therefore the *Syracusans*, *Leontines*, and *Agragintines*, principall Estates of the Isle, sent Embassadors, earnestly desiring him to take them into his protection.

It grieved *Pyrrhus* exceedingly, that two such notable occasions of enlarging his Do- 40 minions, should fall out so unluckily, both at one time. Yet whether he thought the business of *Sicill* more important, or more full of likelihood; or whether perhaps he believed (as came after to passe) that his advantage upon *Macedon* would not so hastily passe away, but that he might find some occasion to lay hold on it at better leisure; over into *Sicill* he transported his army, leaving the *Tarentines* to shift for themselves; yet not leaving them free as he found them, but with a Garrison in their town to hold them in subjection.

As his departure out of *Italy* was rather grounded on head-long passion, than mature advice; so were his actions following, until his returne unto *Epirus*, rather many and tumultuous, than well ordered or note-worthy. The Army which he carried into that 50 Isle, consisted of thirty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse: with which, soon after his descent into *Sicill*, he forc'd the *Carthaginians* out of all, in effect, that they had therein. He also won the strong City of *Eryx*, and having beaten the *Mazurines* in battell; he began to change condition, and turne Tyrant. For he drave *Sofratius* (to whom his cruelty was suspected) out of the Island, & put *Theron* of *Syracuse* to death, being jealous of his greatness; which two persons had faithfully served him, and delivered the great and rich City of *Syracuse* into his hands. After this, his fortunes declined so fast, as he served himself, and saved the dis-reputation of his leaving *Sicill*, by an Embassage sent him from the *Tarentines*, and *Samnites*, imploring his present help against

against the *Romans*, who since his leaving *Italy*, had well-neer dispossest them of all that they had.

Taking this fair occasion, he embarked for *Italy*; but was first beaten by the *Carthaginian* Gallies in his passage, and secondly assailed in *Italy* it self, by eighteen hundred *Mamertines*, that attended him in the straits of the Country. Lastly, after he had recovered *Tarentum*, he fought a third battell with the *Romans*, led by *M. Curius*, who was victorious over him, and forc'd him out of *Italy* into his own *Epirus*.

A Prince he was far more valiant than constant, and had he been but a Generall of an Army for some other great King or State, and had been directed to have conquered any one Country or Kingdom, it is to be thought, that he would have purchased no lesse honour than any man of war, either preceeding or succeeding him; for a greater Captain, or a valiant man, hath been no where found. But he never stay'd upon any enterprize; which was, indeed, the disease he had, whereof not long after he died in *Argos*.

## §. IV.

*How Antigonus, the son of Demetrius, delivered Macedon from the Gauls. How Pyrrhus won the Kingdom of macedon from Antigonus.*

29

**T**he vertue of *Sophenes* being too weak to defend the kingdom of *Macedon*; and the fortune which had accompanied him against *Belgins*, failing him in his attempts against *Brennus*: the *Macedonians* were no lesse glad to submit themselves unto the government of *Antigonus*, than they had been formerly desirous to free themselves from the impotent rule of his father *Demetrius*. His coming into the Country with an Army, Navie, and Treasure befecming a King, did rather breed good hope in the people, than fill them with much confidence: for he was driven to use against the *Barbarians*, only those forces which he brought with him, having none other than good wilhes of the *Macedons* to take his part. *Brennus* with the main strength of his Army, was gone to spoile the Temple of *Apollo* at *Delphos*, having left no more behind him, than he thought necessarie to guard the borders of *Macedon* and *Pannonia*; which were about fifteen thousand foot, and three thousand horse. These could not be idle, but thought to get somewhat for themselves, in the absence of their fellows: and therefore sent unto *Antigonus*, offering to sell him peace, if he would pay well for it; which by the example of *Ceraunus*, he had learnt (as they thought) not to refuse. *Antigonus* was unwilling to weaken his reputation by condescending to their proud demands; yet he judged it unfit to exasperate their furious choler, by uncourteous words or usage, as *Ceraunus* had over-fondly done. Wherefore he entertained their Embassadors in very loving and sumptuous manner, with a royall feast: wherein he exposed to their view such abundance of masse gold and silver, that they were not so much delighted with the meat, as with sight of the vessels, wherein it was served. He thought hereby to make them understand how great a Prince he was, & how able if need required, to wage a mighty army.

To which end, he likewise did shew unto them his Camp and Navy, but especially his Elephants. But all this bravery served only to kindle their greedy appetites; who seeing his ships heavy loaden, his Camp full of wealth, and ill fortified, (himself as it seemed) secure, and his men, both in strength and courage, inferior unto the *Gauls*, thought all time lost, wherein they suffered the present possessors to spend the riches which they accounted assuredly their own. They returned therefore to their companions with none other news in their mouths, than of spoile and purchase: which tale carried the *Gauls* head-long to *Antigonus* his Camp, where they expected a greater booty, than the victory over *Ceraunus* had given to *Belgins*. Their coming was terrible and sudden; yet not so sudden, but that *Antigonus* had notice of it, who distrustful the courage of his own men, dislodged somewhat before their arrivall, and conveyed himself, with his whole army and carriage, into certain woods adjoining, where he lay close.

The *Gauls*, finding his Camp forsaken, were not halty to pursue him but fell to ransacking the emptic Cabbins of the Souldiers; in hope of finding all that was either lost or hidden. At length, when they had searched every place in vaine, angry at their

lost

lost labour, they marched with all speed towards the Sea-side; that they might fall upon him, whilst he was busie in getting his men and carriages a ship-board. But the success was no way answerable to their expectation. For being proud of the terrour which they had brought upon *Antigonus*, they were so careless of the Sea-men, that without all order, they fell to the spoile of what they found on the shore, and in such ships as lay on ground.

Part of the Army had left *Antigonus*, where he lay in covert; and had saved it self by getting aboard the fleet: in which number were some well experienced men of war: who discovering the much advantage offered unto them, by the desperate presumption of their enemies, took courage, and encouraged others to lay manly hold upon the opportunity. So the whole number, both of Souldiers and Mariners, landing together, with great resolution, gave so brave a charge upon the disordered *Gauls*, that their contemptuous boldness was thereby changed into sudden fear, and they, after a great slaughter, driven to cast themselves into the service of *Antigonus*.

The fame of this victory caused all the barbarous Nations in those quarters to re-entertain their ancient beleef of the *Macedonian* valour: by which the terrible and restless oppressors of so many Countries were overthrown.

To speak more of the *Gauls* in this place, and to shew how, about these times, three Tribes of men passed over into *Affa* the lesse, with their wars and conquests there; I hold it needlesse: the victorious Armies of the *Romans* taming them hereafter in the 20 Countries which now they wan, shall give better occasion to rehearse these matters briefly.

Howsoever the good success of *Antigonus* got him reputation among the barbarous people, yet his own Souldiers, that without his leading had won this victory, could not thereupon be perswaded to think him a good man of war: knowing that he had no interest in the honour of the service, wherein his conduct was no better than creeping into a wood.

This (as presently will appear) was greatly helpful unto *Pyrrhus*: though as yet he knew not so much. For *Pyrrhus*, when his affaires in *Italy* stood upon hard termes, had sent unto *Antigonus* for help: not without threats, in case it were denied. So was he sure to get either a supply, wherewith to continue his war against the *Romans*, or some seeming honourable pretence, to forsake *Italy*, under colour of making his word good, in seeking revenge. The threats which he had used in bravery, meer necessity forced him at his return into *Epirus*, to put in practise.

He brought home with him eight thousand foot, and five hundred horse: an Army too little to be employed, by his restless nature, in any action of importance; yet greater than he had meanes to keep in pay. Therefore he fell upon *Macedon*; intending to take what spoile he could get, and make *Antigonus* compound with him, to be freed from trouble. At his first entrance into this business, two thousand of *Antigonus* his souldiers revolted unto *Pyrrhus*; and many Cities, either willingly or perforce, received him. Such fair beginnings easily perswaded the courage of this daring Prince to set upon *Antigonus* himself, and to hazard his fortune, in triall of a battell, for the whole Kingdom of *Macedon*.

It appears, that *Antigonus* had no desire to fight with this hot warrior; but thought it the wisest way, by protracting of time, to weary him out of the country. For *Pyrrhus* overtook him in a streight passage, and charged him in the reare; wherein were the *Gauls* and the Elephants, which were thought the best of his strength: a manifest proof that he was in retreat. The *Gauls* very bravely sustained *Pyrrhus* his impression; yet were broken at length (when most of them were slain) after a sharp fight: wherein it seems that *Antigonus* keeping his *Macedonian* Phalanx within the streight, and not advancing to their succour, took away their courage by deceiving their expectation. The Captaines of the Elephants were taken soon after; who finding themselves exposed to the same violence that had consumed so many of the *Gauls*, yielded themselves and the beasts. All this was done in full view of *Antigonus* & his *Macedonians*, to their great discomfort; which emboldned *Pyrrhus* to charge them where they lay in their strength. Where the Phalanx could be charged only in a front, it was a matter of extreme difficulty (if not impossible) to force it. But the *Macedonians* had seen so much, that they had no desire to fight against *Pyrrhus*; who discovered so well their affections, that he adventured

adventured to draw neer in person, and exhort them to yeeld. Neither the common Souldier nor any Leader refused to become his follower. All forsooke *Antigonus*, a few horsemen excepted, that fled along with him to *Theſſalonica*; where he had some small forces left, and money enough to entertain a greater power, had he known where to levie it. But whilest he was thinking how to allure a sufficient number of the *Gauls* into his service; whereby he might repaire his losse: *Ptolomie*, the son of *Pyrrhus*, came upon him, and easily defeating his weakle forces, drave him to flie from the parts about *Macedon*, to those Towns afar off in *Peloponnesus*, in which he had formerly lurked, before such time as he looked abroad into the world, and made himself a King.

This good successe revived the spirits of the *Epirot*, and caused him to forget all sorrow of his late misfortunes in the *Roman War*: so that he sent for his son *Helennus* (whom he had left with a Garrison, in the Castle of *Tarentum*) willing him to come over into *Greece*, where was more matter of conquest, and let the *Italians* thirst for themselves.

## §. V.

How *Pyrrhus* assailed *Sparta* without successe. His enterprize upon *Argos*, and his death.

*Pyrrhus* had now conceived a great hope that nothing should be able to withstand him; seeing that in open fight he had vanquished the *Gauls*, and beaten *Antigonus*, and won the Kingdome of *Macedon*. There was not in all *Greece*, nor, indeed, in all the Lands that *Alexander* had won, any Leader of such name and worth, as deserved to be set up against him: which filled him with the opinion that he might do what he pleased. He raised therefore an Army, consisting of five and twenty thousand foot, two thousand horse, and four and twenty Elephants; pretending war against *Antigonus*, and the giving liberty to those Towns in *Peloponnesus*, which the same *Antigonus* held in subjection; though it was easily discovered, that such great preparations were made, for accomplishment of some designe more important than war against a Prince already vanquished, and almost utterly dejected. Especially the *Lacedæmonians* feared this expedition, as made against their State. For *Cleonymus*, one of their Kings, being expelled out of his Country, had betaken himself to *Pyrrhus*: who readily entertained him, and promised to restore him to his Kingdom. This promise was made in secret; neither would *Pyrrhus* make shew of any displeasure that he bare unto *Sparta*; but contrariwise professed, that it was his intent, to have two of his own younger sons trained up in that City, as in a place of noble discipline. With such colours he deluded men, even till he entred upon *Laconia*; where presently he demeaned himself as an open enemy; excusing himself and his former dissembling words with a jest; That he followed herein the *Lacedæmonian* custome, of concealing what was truly proposed. It had been, indeed, the manner of the *Lacedæmonians*, to deale in like sort with others, whom, in the time of their greatness, they sought to oppress: but now they complained of that, as fallshood, in *Pyrrhus*, which they always practised in wisdom, till it made them distrustful, forsaken, and almost contemptible. Nevertheless, they were not wanting to themselves in this dangerous extremity. For the old men and women laboured in fortifying the Town; causing such as could beare armes to reserve themselves fresh against the assault: which *Pyrrhus* had unwisely deferred, upon assurance of prevailing.

*Sparta* was never fortified, before this time, otherwise than with armed Citizens: soon after this (it being built upon uneven ground, and, for the most part, hard to approach) the lower & more accessible places, were fenced with wals, at the present only trenches were cast, & barricadoes made with carts, where the entrance seemed most easie. Three dayes together it was assailed by *Pyrrhus* exceeding fiercely; and no lesse stoutly defended. The desperate courage of the Citizens preserved the town the first day; whereinto the violence of *Pyrrhus* had forced entrance the second day, but that his wounded horse threw him to the ground, which made his Souldiers more mindfull of saving the person of their King, than of breaking into the City, though already they had

torn in sunder the Barricadoes. Presently after this, one of *Antigonus* his Captains got into *Sparta* with a good strength of men; and *Arcus* the King returned out of *Crete* (where he had been helping his friends in war) with two thousand men, little knowing the danger, in which his own Country stood, until he was almost at home. These succours did not more animate the *Spartans*, than kindle in *Pyrrhus* a desire to prevail against all impediments. But the third dayes work shewed how great his error had been, in forbearing to assault the Town at his first coming. For he was so manfully repelled, that he saw no likelihood of getting the place, otherwise than by a long siege: in which tedious course he had no desire to spend his time.

*Antigonus* had now raised an Army, though not strong enough to meet the Enemy in plain field, yet able to hinder all his purposes. This made *Pyrrhus* doubtfull what way to take; being diversly affected, by the difficulty of his enterprize in hand, and the shame of taking a repulse in his first attempt. Whilest he was thus perplexed, letters came from *Argos*, inviting him thither; with promise to deliver that City into his hands.

Civill dissention raging then hotly in *Argos*, caused the heads of severall factions to call in *Pyrrhus* and *Antigonus*; but the coming of these two Princes taught the Citizens wit, and made them desirous to rid their hands of such powerfull assistants, as each of the two Kings pretended himself to be. *Antigonus* told the *Argives*, that he came to save them from the tyrannie of *Pyrrhus*: and that he would be gone, if they needed not his help. On the other side, *Pyrrhus* would needs persuade them, that he had none other errand, than to make them safe from *Antigonus*; offering in like manner, to depart, if they so desired.

The *Argives* took small pleasure in hearing the Fox and Kite at strife, which of them should keep the Chickens from his enemy: and therefore prayed them both to divert their powers some other way. Hereunto *Antigonus* readily descended, and gave hostages to assure his word: for he was the weaker, and stood in need of good will. But *Pyrrhus* thought it enough to promise: Hostages he would give none to his inferiours; especially meaning deceit. This made them suspect his purpose to be such, as indeed it was. Yet he lesse regarded their opinions, than to hold them worthy of assurance, by giving such a bond, as he intended to break ere the next morning.

It was concluded, that a Gate of the City should be opened by night unto *Pyrrhus*, by his Complices within *Argos*: which was accordingly performed. So his Army without any tumult entred the City: till the Elephants, with Towers on their backs, cloyed the way, being too high to passe the Gate. The taking off, and setting on again of those Towers, with the trouble thereto belonging, did both give alarme to the Citie, and some leisure to take order for defence, before so many were entred, as could fully master it. *Argos* was full of ditches, which greatly hindred the *Gauls* (that had the Vanguard) being ignorant of the ways in the dark night. The Citizens, on the other side, had much advantage, by their knowledge of every by-passage: and setting upon the enemies on all sides, did put them to great losse and more trouble.

*Pyrrhus* therefore understanding by the confused noise, and unequall shoutings of his own men, that they were in distresse, entred the City in person, to take order for their relief, and assurance of the place. But the darknesse, the throng, and many other impediments kept him from doing any thing of moment, until break of day. Then began he to make his passage by force, and so far prevailed, that he got into the Market-place. It is said, that seeing in that place the Image of a Wolfe and a Bull, in such posture as if they had been combatant, he called to minde an Oracle, which threatened him with death, when he should behold a Bull fighting with a Wolfe: and that hereupon he made retrait.

Indeed, the coming of *Antigonus* to the rescue, the disorder and confusion of his own men, with divers ill accidents, gave him reasonable cause to have retired out of the City, though the Wolfe and Bull had been away. The tumult was such, that no directions could be heard; but as some gave back, so did others thrust forward, and the *Argives* pressing hard upon him, forced *Pyrrhus* to make good his retrait with his



own sword. The tops of the houses were covered with women, that stood looking on the fight. Among these was one, that saw her own son in dangerous case, fighting with *Pyrrhus*. Wherefore she took a tile-stone, or plate, and threw it so violently down on the head of *Pyrrhus*, that he fell to ground astonished with the blow; and lying in that case, had his head cut off.

Thus ended the restless ambition of *Pyrrhus*, together with his life: and thus returned the Kingdome of *Macedon* to *Antigonus*; who forthwith possessed the Army, the body and the children of his Enemy. The body of *Pyrrhus* had honourable buriall, and was given by *Antigonus* unto *Helenus* his son; which young Prince he graciously sent home into his fathers Kingdome of *Epirus*. From this time forwards, the race of *Antigonus* held the Kingdome of *Macedon*; the posterity of *Selencus* reigned over *Asia* and *Syria*; and the house of *Ptolomy* had quiet possession of *Egypt*: untill such time as the Citie of *Rome*, swallowing all up, digested these, among other Countries, into the body of her owne Empire.

Finis Libri quarti.



THE



## THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD;

Intreating of the times from the settled rule of *ALEXANDERS*  
Successors in the East, untill the *ROMANS*, prevailing  
over all, made Conquest of *ASIA*  
and *MACEDON*.

### THE FIFTH BOOK.

#### CHAP. I.

##### Of the first Punick War.

###### §. I.

*A discussion of that probleme of Livie; Whether the Romans could have resisted the great Alexander. That neither the Macedonian nor the Roman Souldier, was of equal valour to the English.*

**T**Hat question handled by *Livie*, Whether the great *Alexander* could have prevailed against the *Romans*, if after his Eastern conquest, he had bent all his forces against them, hath been, and is the subject of much dispute; which (as it seems to me) the arguments on both sides do not so well explain, as doth the experience that *Pyrrhus* hath given of the *Roman* power in his dayes. For if he, a Commander (in *Hannibals* judgement) inferiour to *Alexander*, though to none else, could with small strength of men, and little store of mony, or of other needfull helps in war, vanquish them in two battels, and endanger their Estate, when it was well settled, and held the best part of *Italy*, under a confirmed obedience: what would *Alexander* have done, that was abundantly provided of all which is needfull to a Conquerour, wanting onely matter of employment, coming upon them before their Dominion was half so well settled? It is easie to say, that *Alexander* had no more than thirty thousand foot, and four thousand horse (as indeed, at his first passage into *Asia*, he carried over not many more) and that the rest of his followers were no better than base effeminate *Asiatics*. But he that considers the Armies of *Perdiccas*, *Antipater*, *Craterus*, *Eumenes*, *Ptolomie*, *Antigonus* and *Lysimachus*, with the actions by them performed, every one of which (to omit others) commanded onely some fragment of this dead Emperours power, shall easily finde, that such a reckoning is far short of the truth.

It were needlesse to speak of Treasure, Horses, Elephants, Engines of battery, and

K k k

the

the like: of all which the *Macedonian* had abundance; the *Roman* having nought; save men and armes. As for Sea-forces; he that shall consider after what sort the *Romans*, in their first *Punic* War, were trained in the rudiments of Navigation; sitting upon the shoares, and beating the sand with poles, to practice the stroke of the Oare, as not daring to launch their ill-built vessels into the Sea; will easily conceive how far too weak they would have proved in such services.

Now for helpers in War; I do not see why all *Greece* and *Macedon*, being absolutely commanded by *Alexander*, might not well deserve to be laid in ballance against those parts of *Italy*, which the *Romans* held in ill-assured subjection. To omit therefore all benefit that the Eastern world, more wealthy, indeed, than valiant, could have afforded up to the *Macedonian*; let us onely conjecture, how the States of *Sicily* and *Carthage*, near their neighbours (such a quarrell had it happened) would have stood affected. The *Sicilians* were for the most part *Grecians*; neither is it to be doubted, that they would readily have submitted themselves unto him, that ruled all *Greece* besides them. In what terms they commonly stood, and how ill they were able to defend themselves, it shall appear anon. Sure it is, that *Alexanders* coming into those parts, would have brought excessive joy to them: that were faine to get the help of *Pyrhus*, by offering to become his subjects. As for the *Carthaginians*, if *Agathocles* the Tyrant of *Syracuse*, bated of his people; and ill able to defend his own besieged City, could by adventuring to faile into *Africk*, put their Dominion, yea, and *Carthage* it self, in extreme hazard; shall we think that they would have been able to withstand *Alexander*? But why doe I question their ability, seeing that they sent Embassadours, with their submission, as far as *Babylon*, ere the War drew neer them? Wherefore it is manifest, that the *Romans* must, without other succour, than perhaps of some other few *Italian* friends of which yet there were none that forsook them not, at some time, both before and after this) have opposed their valour and good military discipline, against the power of all Countries to them known, if they would have made resistance. How they could have sped well, in undertaking such a match; it is uneasie to finde in discourse of humane reason. It is true, that vertue and fortune worke wonders: but it is against cowardly fooles, and the unfortunate: for whosoever contends with one too mighty for him; either must excell in these, as much as his enemy goes beyond him in power; or else must looke both to be overcome, and to be cast down so much the lower, by how much the opinion of his fortune and vertue renders him suspected, as likely to make head another time against the vanquisher. Whether the *Roman* or the *Macedonian* were in those dayes the better Souldier, I will not take upon me to determine: though I might without partiality, deliver mine own opinion, and preferre that Army, which followed not only *Philip* and *Alexander*, but also *Alexanders* Princes after him, in the greatest dangers of all sorts of War, before any, that *Rome* either had, or in long time after did send forth. Concerning fortune, who can give a rule that shall alwayes hold? *Alexander* was victorious in every battell that he fought: and the *Romans* in the issue of every war. But forasmuch as *Livie* hath judged this a matter worthy of consideration; I think it a great part of *Romes* good fortune, that *Alexander* came not into *Italy*: where in three years after his death, the two *Roman* consuls, together with all the powers of that State, were surprized by the *Sannites*, and enforced to yeeld up their arms. We may therefore permit *Livie* to admire his own *Romans*, and to compare with *Alexander* those Captains of theirs, which were honoured sufficiently, in being thought equal to his followers: that the same conceipt should blind our judgement, we cannot permit without much vanity.

Now in deciding such a controversie, me thinks it were not amisse, for an *Englishman*, to give such a sentence between the *Macedonians* and *Romans*, as the *Romans* once did (being chosen Arbitrators) between the *Ardeates* and *Aricinis*, that strove about a piece of lands; saying, that it belonged unto neither of them, but unto the *Romans* themselves.

If therefore it be demanded, whether the *Macedonian*, or the *Roman* were the best Warriour? I will answer: The *Englishman*. For it will soon appear to any that shall examine the noble acts of our Nation in war, that they were performed by no advantage of weapon; against no savage or unmanly people; the enemy being far superiour unto us in number, and all needfull provisions, yea as well trained as we, or commonly better, in the exercise of War.

In

In what sort *Philip* won his Dominion in *Greece*; what manner of men the *Persians* and *Indians* were, whom *Alexander* vanquished; as likewise of what force the *Macedonian Phalanx* was, and how well appointed, against such armes as it commonly encountered; any man, that hath taken paines to reade the foregoing story of them, doth sufficiently understand. Yet was this *Phalanx* never, or very seldom, able to stand against the *Roman* armies; which were embattelled in so excellent a forme, as I know not whether any Nation besides them have used, either before or since. The *Roman* weapons likewise, both offensive and defensive, were of greater use than those with which any other Nation hath served, before the fiery instruments of Gun-powder were known. As for the enemies with which *Rome* had to doe, we finde, that they which did over-match her in numbers, were as far over-matched by her in weapons; and that they, of whom she had little advantage in arms, had as little advantage of her in multitude. This also (as *Plutarch* well observeth) was a part of her happinesse; that she was never over-laid with two great wars at once.

Hereby it came to passe, that having at first increased her strength by accession of the *Sabines*; having won the State of *Alba*, against which she adventured her own self, as it were in wager, upon the heads of three Champions; and having thereby made her self Princess of *Latium*, shee did afterwards by long war, in many ages, extend her Dominion over all *Italy*. The *Carthaginians* had well-neer oppressed her: but her Souldiers were Mercenary; so that for want of proper strength, they were easily beaten at their own doores. The *Etolians*, and with them all, or the most of *Greece*, assisted her against *Philip* the *Macedonian*: he being beaten, did lend her his help to beat the same *Etolians*. The wars against *Antiochus*, and other *Asiaticques*, were such as gave to *Rome* small cause of boast, though much of joy; for those opposites were as bafe of courage; as the lands which they held were abundant of riches. *Sicily*, *Spain*, and all *Greece*, fell into her hands, by using her aide to protect them against the *Carthaginians* and *Macedonians*.

I shall not need to speak of her other conquests: it was easie to get more when shee had gotten all this. It is not my purpose to disgrace the *Roman* valour (which was very noble) or to blemish the reputation of so many famous victories: I am not so idle. This I say; That among all their wars, I finde not any, wherein their valour hath appeared comparable to the *English*. If my judgement seem over-partiall, our wars in *France* may help to make it good.

First therefore it is well known, that *Rome* (or perhaps all the world besides) had never any so brave a Commander in war as *Julius Caesar*: and that no *Roman* army was comparable unto that, which served under the same *Caesar*. Likewise, it is apparent, that this gallant Army, which had given faire proof of the *Roman* courage, in good performance of the *Helvetian* war, when it first entred into *Gaul*; was nevertheless utterly disheartned, when *Caesar* led it against the *Germans*. So that we may justly impute all that was extraordinary in the valour of *Caesars* men, to their long exercise, under so good a Leader, in so great a war. Now let us in general compare with the deeds done by these best of *Roman* Souldiers, in their principall service; the things performed in the same Country, by our common *English* Souldiers, levied in haste, from following the Cart, or sitting on the shop-stall: so shall we see the difference. Herein will we deale fairly, and beleve *Caesar* in relating the acts of the *Romans*: but will call the *French* Historians to witnesse, what actions were performed by the *English*. In *Caesars* time *France* was inhabited by the *Gauls*, a stout people, but inferior to the *French*, by whom they were subdued; even when the *Romans* gave them assistance. The Country of *Gaul* was rent in sunder (as *Caesar* witnesseth) into many Lordships: some of which were governed by petty kings, others by the multitude, none ordered in such sort as might make it applicable to the nearest Neighbour. The factions were many, and violent: not onely in general through the whole Country, but between the petty States, yea in every City, and almost in every house. What greater advantage could a Conquerour desire? Yet there was a greater. *Arminius*, with his *Germans*, had over-run the Country, and held much part of it in subjection, little different from meer slavery: yea, so often had the *Germans* prevailed in war upon the *Gauls*, that the *Gauls*, (who had sometimes been the better Souldiers) did hold themselves no way equall to those daily Invaders. Had *France* been so prepared unto our *English* Kings, *Rome* it self by this time, and long ere

K k k k 2 this

this time, would have been ours. But when King *Edward* the third began his war upon *France*, he found the whole Country settled in obedience to one mighty King; a King whose reputation abroad, was no less than his puillance at home; under whose ensigne, the King of *Bohemia* did serve in person; at whose call the *Genowayes*, and other Neighbour States, were ready to take arms; finally, a King unto whom one (a) Prince gave away his Dominion, for love; (b) another sold away a goodly City and Territory for money. The Country lying so open to the *Romans* and being so well fenced against the *English*; it is note-worthy, not who prevailed most therein (for it were meer vanity to match the *English* purchases with the *Roman* conquest) but whether of the two gave the greater proof of military vertue. *Cæsar* himself doth witness, that the *Gauls* complained of their own ignorance in the Art of war, and that their own hardinesse was overmastered by the skill of their enemies. Poor men, they admired the *Roman* Towers, and Engines of battery, raised and planted against their walles, as more than humane works. What greater wonder is it, that such a people was beaten by the *Romans*; than that the *Caribes*, a naked people, but valiant, as any under the *Ikies*, are commonly put to the worse by small numbers of *Spaniards*? Besides all this, we are to have regard of the great difficulty that was found, in drawing all the *Gauls*, or any great part of them, to one head, that with joynt forces they might oppole their assailants: as also the much more difficulty of holding them long together. For hereby it came to passe, that they were never able to make use of opportunity: but sometimes compelled to stay for their fellows; and sometimes driven to give or take battell upon extreame disadvantages, for fear lest their companies should fall asunder: as indeed, upon any little disalter, they were ready to break, and return every one to the defence of his own. All this, and (which was little lesse than all this) great oddes in weapon gave to the *Romans* the honour of many gallant victories. What such help? or what other worldly help, than the golden mettle of their Souldiers, had our *English* Kings against the *French*? Were not the *French* as well experienced in feats of war? Yea, did they not think themselves therein our superiours? Were they not in arms, in horle, and in all provision, exceedingly beyond us? Let us heare what a *French* writer saith of the inequality that was between the *French* and *English*, when their King *John* was ready to give the on-let upon the *Black Prince*, at the battell of *Poitiers*. *John* had all advantages over *Edward*, both of number, force, Jew, Country and conceits, (the which is commonly a consideration of no small importance in worldly affaires) and withall, the choice of all his horsemen (esteemed then the best in Europe) with the greatest and wisest Captaines of his whole Realme. And what could he more?

a The Dolphin of Viennois.  
b The King of Maiorca.

John de Serres.

JEAN avoit tout l'avantage par dessus E. D. OYARD, le nombre, la force, le laistre, le pay, le préage (qui n'est pas communément une considération de peu d'importance aux affaires du monde) et avec soy l'élite de la Cavallerie, lors qu'il meila meilleur de son Royame.

I think it would trouble a *Roman* antiquary to finde the like example in their Histories; the example I say, of a King, brought prisoner to *Rome*, by an army of feight thousand, which he had furrounded with forty thousand, better appointed, and no lesse expert Warriours. This I am sure of, that neither *Syphax* the *Namidian*, followed by a rabble of half Scullions, as *Livie* rightly termes them, nor those cowardly Kings, *Perseus* and *Gentius*, are worthy paternees. All that have read of *Cressi* and *Agincourt*, will beare me witnesse, that I do not alledge the battell of *Poitiers*, for lack of other, as good examples of the *English* vertue: the proof whereof hath left many a hundred better marks in all quarters of *France*, then ever did the valour of the *Romans*. If any man impute these victories of ours to the long bow, as carrying farther, piercing more strongly, and quicker of discharge than the *French* Crosse-bow: my answer is ready; That in all these respects, it is also (being drawn with a strong arme) superiour to the Musket; yet is the Musket a weapon of more use. The Gun and the Crosse-bow are of like force, when discharged by a Boy or Woman, as when by a strong Man: weaknesse or sicknesse, or a fore finger makes the long Bow unserviceable. More particularly, I say, that it was the custome of our Ancestors, to shoot, for the most part, point blank; and so shall he perceive, that will note the circumstances of almost any one battell. This takes away all objection: for when two Armies are within the distance of a Butts length, one flight of arrowes, or two at the most can be delivered before they close. Neither is it in generall true, that the long Bow reacheth farther, or that it pierceth more strongly than the Crosse-bow: but this is the rare effect of an extraordinarie arme; whereupon can be grounded no common rule. If any man shall aske, How then came it to passe, that the *English* won so many great battells, having no advantage

10

20

30

40

50

to

to help him? I may, with best commendation of modesty, referre him to the *French* Historian; who relating the victory of our men at *Crevant*, where they passed a bridge, in face of the enemy, useth these words: *The English comes with a conquering bravery, as he that was accustomed to gain every-where, without any stay; he forceth our guard placed upon the bridge to keep the passage.* Or I may cite another place of the same Author, where he tells, how the *Britons*, being invaded by *Charles* the eighth, King of *France*, thought it good policy to apparell a thousand and five hundred of their own men in *English* Caskes; hoping that the very sight of the *English* red crosse, would be enough to terrifie the *French*. But I will not stand to borrow of the *French* Historians (all which, excepting *De Serres*, and *Paulus Æmylius*, report wonders of our Nation;) the proposition which first I undertook to maintain; That the military vertue of the *English*, prevailing against all manner of difficulties, ought to be preferred before that of the *Romans*, which was assisted with all advantages that could be desired. If it be demanded, why then did not our Kings finish the conquest, as *Cæsar* had done? my answer may be (I hope without offence) that our Kings were like to the race of the *Æacide*, of whom the old Poet *Ennius* gave this note; *Bellipotentes sunt magis quam sapienti potentes*; They were more warlike than politick. Who so notes their proceedings, may finde, that none of them went to work like a Conquerour, save only King *Henry* the fifth; the course of whose victories it pleased God to interrupt by his death. But this question is the more easily answered, if another be first made. Why did not the *Romans* attempt the conquest of *Gaul* before the time of *Cæsar*? why not after the *Macedonian* war? why not after the third *Punic*, or after the *Numantian*? At all these times they had good leisure: and then especially had they both leisure & fit opportunity, when under the conduct of *Marins*, they had newly vanquished the *Cimbri*, and *Tenones*, by whom the country of *Gaul* had been piously wasted. Surely the words of *Tully* were true; That with other Nations the *Romans* fought for Dominion, with the *Gauls* for preservation of their own safety.

Therefore they attempted not the conquest of *Gaul*, untill they were Lords of all other Countries, to them known. We on the other side, held only the one half of our own Island; the other half being inhabited by a Nation (unless perhaps in wealth and numbers of men somewhat inferiour) every way equal to our selves; a Nation anciently and strongly allied to our enemies the *French*, and in that regard enemy to us. So that our danger lay both before and behinde us; and the greater danger at our backs; where commonly we felt, alwayes we feared, a stronger invasion by land, than we could make upon *France*, transporting our forces over Sea.

It is usuall with men, that have pleased themselves in admiring the matters which they find in ancient Histories; to hold it a great injury done to their judgement, if any take upon him, by way of comparision, to extoll the things of later ages. But I am well perswaded, that as the divided vertue of this our Island, hath given more noble proofe of it self, than under so worthy a Leader, that *Roman* Army could do, which afterwards could win *Rome*, and all her Empire, making *Cæsar* a Monarch; so hereafter, by Gods blessing, who hath converted our greatest hinderance, into our greatest help, the enemy that shall dare to try our forces, will finde cause to wish, that avoiding us, he had rather encountered as great a puillance as was that of the *Roman* Empire. But it is now high time, that, laying aside comparisons, we return to the rehearsal of deeds done: wherein we shall finde, how *Rome* began, after *Pyrhus* had left *Italy*, to strive with *Carthage* for Dominion, in the first *Punic* War.

## §. II.

The estate of Carthage before it entred into war with Rome.

THE City of *Carthage* had stood above fix hundred yeers, when first it began to contend with *Rome* for the mastery of *Sicily*. It fore-went *Rome* one hundred and fifty yeers in antiquity of foundation: but in the honour of great atchievements, it excelled far beyond this advantage of time. For *Carthage* had extended her Dominion *Africa* it self, from the West part of *Cyrene*, to the freights of *Hercules*, about one thousand and five hundred miles in length, wherein stood three hundred Cities. It had subjected all *Spain*, even to the *Pyrenean* Mountains, together with all the Islands.

Kkk 3

Islands in the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the West of *Sicily*; and of *Sicily* the better part. It flourished about seven hundred and thirty years, before the destruction thereof by *Scipio*: who, besides other spoiles, and all that the Souldiers reserved, carried thence four hundred and seventy thousand weight of silver, which make of our money (four pounds differ not) fourteen hundred and ten thousand pound sterling. So as this glorious City ran the same fortune, which many other great ones have done, both before and since. The ruine of the goodliest pieces of the world fore-thews the dissolution of the whole.

About one hundred years after such time as it was cast down, the Senate of *Rome* caused it to be re-built: and by *Gracchus* it was called *Junonia*: it was again and again abandoned and re-peopled, taken and re-taken; by *Genfericus* the *Vandal*, by *Bellsarius* under *Justinian*, by the *Persians*, by the *Egyptians*, and by the *Mahometans*. It is now nothing. The seat thereof was exceeding strong: and while the *Carthaginians* commanded the Sea, invincible. For the Sea compassed it about, saving that it was tied to the main by a neck of land; which passage had two miles and more of breadth (*Appian* faith, three miles and one furlong) by which we may be induced to beleve the common report, that the City it self was above twenty miles in compass; if not that of *Strabo*, affirming the circuit to have been twice as great.

It had three walls without the wall of the City; and between each of those, three or four streets, with vaults under ground, of thirty foot deep, in which they had place for three hundred Elephants, and all their food: over these they had stables for four thousand horse, and Granaries for their provender. They had also lodgings in these streets, between these out-walls, for four thousand horse-men, and twenty thousand foot-men, which (according to the discipline used now by those of *China*) never pelted the City. It had towards the South part, the Castle of *Byrsa*; to which *Scipio* gives two and twenty furlongs in compass, that make two miles and a half. This was the same piece of ground which *Dido* obtained of the *Lybians*, when she got leave to buy only so much Land of them, as she could compass with an Oxe hide. On the West side it had also the salt Sea, but in the nature of a standing pool; for a certain arm of Land, fastened to the ground, on which the City stood, stretched it self towards the West continent, and left but seventy foot open for the Sea to enter. Over this standing Sea was built a most sumptuous *Arsewall*, having their Ships and Gallies riding under it.

The form of their Common-weal resembled that of *Sparta*; for they had titulary Kings, and the Aristocratical power of Senators. But (as *Regius* well observeth) the people in later times usurped too great authority in their Councils. This confusion in government, together with the trust that they reposed in hired Souldiers, were helping causes of their destruction in the end. Two other more forcible causes of their ruine, were their avarice and their cruelty. <sup>a</sup> Their avarice was shewed both in exacting from their Vassals (besides ordinary tributes) the one <sup>b</sup> half of the fruits of the earth; and in conferring of great offices, not upon gentle & mercifull persons, but upon those who could best tyrannize over the people, to augment their treasures. Their cruelty appeared, in putting them to death without mercy, that had offended through ignorance: the one of these rendered them odious to their Vassals, whom it made ready upon all occasions, to revolt from them: the other did break the spirits of their Generals, by presenting in the heat of their actions abroad, the fear of a cruell death at home. Hereby it came to passe, that many good Commanders of the *Carthaginian* forces, after some great loile received, have desperately cast themselves, with all that remained under their charge, into the throat of destruction; holding it necessary, either to repair their losses quickly, or to ruine all together: and few of them have dared to manage their own best projects, after that good form, wherein they first conceived them, for fear lest the manner of their proceeding should be mis-interpreted: It being the *Carthaginian* rule, to crucifie, not only the unhappy Captain, but even him, whose bad counsell had prosperous event. The faults, wherewith, in general, they of *Carthage* are taxed, by *Roman* Historians, I finde to be these; lust, cruelty, avarice, craft, unfaithfulness, and perjury. Whether the *Romans* themselves were free from the same crimes, let the trial be referred unto their actions. The first league between *Carthage* and *Rome*, was very ancient: having been made the year following the expulsion of *Tarquinius*. In that league the *Carthaginians* had the superiority, as imposing upon the *Romans* the more strict conditions. For it was agreed, that the *Romans* should not so much as have trade in some part of *Africk*, nor suffer any ship of theirs to passe beyond the headland, or cape, then called the *fair Promontory*, unless it were by force of tempest: whereas on the other side, no Haven in *Italy* was forbidden to the *Carthaginians*. A second league was made long after, which (howsoever it hath pleased *Livie* to say, that the *Romans* granted it, at the *Carthaginians* intreaty) was more strict than the former: prohibiting the *Romans* to have trade in any part of *Africa*, or in the Island of *Sardinia*.

By these two treaties it may appear, that the *Carthaginians* had an intent not only to keep the *Romans* (as perhaps they did other people) from getting any knowledge of the state of *Africk*; but to countenance & uphold them, in their troubling any *Italy*, whereby they themselves might have the better means to occupy all *Sicily*, whilst that Island should be destitute of *Italian* succours. Hereupon we finde good cause of the joy that was in *Carthage*, and of the Crown of gold, weighing twenty and five pound, sent from thence to *Rome*, when the *Sannites* were overthrowen. But the little state of *Rome* prevailed faster in *Italy*, than the great power of *Carthage* did in *Sicily*. For that mighty Army of three hundred thousand men, which *Hannibal* conducted out of *Africk* into *Sicily*, won only two Cities therein: many great fleets were devoured by tempests; and howsoever the *Carthaginians* prevailed at one time, the *Sicilians*, either by their own valour, or by the assistance of their good friends out of *Greece*, did at some other time repaire their own losses, and take revenge upon those Invaders. But never were the people of *Carthage* in better hope of getting all *Sicily*, than when the death of *Agathocles* the Tyrant, had left the whole Island in combustion; the estate of *Greece* being such, at the same time, that it seemed impossible for any succour to be sent from thence. But whilst the *Carthaginians* were busie in making their advantage of this good opportunity, *Pyrrhus*, invited by the *Tarentines* and their fellows, came into *Italy*, where he made war upon the *Romans*. These news were displeasing to the *Carthaginians*, who, being a subtle Nation, easily fore-saw, that the same busie disposition which had brought this Prince out of *Greece* into *Italy*, would as easily transport him over into *Sicily*, as soon as he could finish his *Roman* war. To prevent this danger, they sent *Mago* Embassadour to *Rome*; who declared in their name, that they were sorry to hear what misadventure had befallen the *Romans*, their good friends, in this war with *Pyrrhus*; and that the people of *Carthage* were very willing to assist the state of *Rome*, by sending an Army into *Italy*; if their help were thought needfull, against the *Epirots*.

It was indeed the main desire of the *Carthaginians*, to hold *Pyrrhus* so hardly to his work in *Italy*, that they might, at good leisure, pursue their business in *Sicily*: which caused them to make such a goodly offer. But the *Romans* were too high-minded: and refused to accept any such aid of their friends, lest it should blemish their reputation, and make them seem unable to stand by their own strength. Yet the message was taken lovingly, as it ought; and the former league between *Rome* and *Carthage* renewed; with covenants added, concerning the present business; That if either of the two Cities made peace with *Pyrrhus*, it should be with reservation of liberty, to assist the other, in case that *Pyrrhus* should invade either of their Dominions. All this notwithstanding, and notwithstanding that the same *Mago* went and treated with *Pyrrhus*, using all means to sound his intentions (a matter very difficult, where one upon every new occasion, changeth his own purposes) yet *Pyrrhus* found leisure to make a step into *Sicily*: where, though in himself he was neither getter nor faver, yet he clean defeated the purposes of *Carthage*, leaving them, at his departure from thence, as far from any end, as when they first began.

So many disasters in an enterprise, that from the first undertaking had been so strongly pursued, through the length of many generations, might well have induced the *Carthaginians* to beleve, that an higher providence resisted their intentment. But their desire of winning that fruitfull Island, was so inveterate, that with unwearied patience, they still continued in hope of so much the greater an harvest, by how much their cost and pains therein buried had been the more. Wherefore they re-continued their

a In Pol. Arif.  
1.2.c.9.

b The Turk,  
at this day do

all take out of the  
poor mans

corn, that la-  
bours the

earth: yea,  
they take tri-  
bute both of

the bodies, &  
of the souls of

the *Christians*  
their Vassals,

by bereaving  
them of their

ablest chil-  
dren, & bring-  
ing them up in

the *Mohometan*  
Religion. The

*Jish* take the  
fourth share &  
were wont to

eat up with  
their horri-  
ble footmen,

& dogs, what  
they pleased,  
of the other

three parts re-  
maining. The

husbandman  
and the yeo-  
man of Eng-  
land, are the

freest of all  
the World:

And reason  
good: for of

them have the  
bodies of our

victorious Ar-  
mies been

compounded.  
And it is the

freo-man and  
the free slave,  
that hath cou-  
rage and the

senie of shame  
deserved by  
cowardie.

How free the  
English yeo-  
men have

been in times,  
not long since  
past, *Forseue*

hath shewed  
in his praise of  
our countries

laws. But I  
may say, that  
they are more

free now than  
ever: and our

Nobility and  
Gentry more  
servile. For

since the ex-  
cellive bravery

and vain ex-  
cesses of our

*Grandes* hath taught them to raise their Rents, since by Inclosures, and dismembering of Manors, the Court Baron, and the Court Leet, the Principallities of the Gentry of *England*, have been dissolved, the Tenants having payed unto their Lords their rack Rent, owe them now no service at all, and (perchance) as little love.

ness,

their former courses; and by force or practice, recovered in few years all their old possessions: making peace with *Syracuse*, the chief City of the Island, that so they might the better enable themselves to deal with the rest.

Somewhat before this time, a troop of *Campanian* Souldiers, that had served under *Agathocles*, being entertained within *Messana* as friends, and finding themselves too strong for the Citizens, took advantage of the power that they had to do wrong; and with perfidious cruelty, slue those that had trusted them; which done, they occupied the City, Lands, Goods, and Wives of those whom they had murdered. These Mercenaries called themselves *Mamertines*. Good Souldiers they were: and like enough it is, that meer desperation of finding any that would approve their barbarous treachery, added rage unto their stoutness. Having therefore not any other colour of their proceedings, than the law of the stronger, they over-ran all the Country round about them.

In this course, at first, they sped so well, that they did not onely defend *Messana* against the Cities of *Sicily* Confederate; to wit, against the *Syracusians*, and others, but they rather ran upon them; yea, and upon the *Carthaginians*, exacting tribute from many Neighbour places. But it was not long, ere fortune turning her back to these *Mamertines*, the *Syracusians* ran fast upon them, and finally confining them within the walls of *Messana*, they also with a powerfull Army besieged the City. It hapned ill, that about the same time a contention began between the *Syracusan* Souldiers, then lying 20 at *Megara*, and the Citizens of *Syracuse*, and Governours of the Common-wealth; which proceeded so far, that the Army elected two Governours among themselves, to wit, *Artemidorus* and *Hieron*, that was afterward King. *Hieron*, being for his years excellently adorned with many virtues, although it was contrary to the policy of that State, to approve any election made by the Souldiers; yet for the great clemency he used at his first entrance, was by generall consent established and made Governour. This office he rather used as a Scale, thereby to climb to some higher degree, than rested content with his present preferment.

In brief, there was somewhat wanting, whereby to strengthen himself within the City, and somewhat without it, that gave impediment to his obtaining, and safe 30 keeping of the place he sought; to wit, a powerfull party within the Town, and certain mutinous troops of Souldiers without, often and easily moved to sedition and tumult. For the first, whereby to strengthen himself, he took to Wife the daughter of *Leptines*, a man of the greatest estimation and authority among the *Syracusians*. For the second, leading out the Army to besiege *Messana*, he quartered all those companies, which he held suspected, on the one side of the City, and leading the rest of his Horse and Foot unto the other side, as if he would have assaulted it in two severall parts, he marched away under the covert of the Town walls, and left the Mutiners to be cut in pieces by the afflicted: So returning home, and levying an Army of his own Citizens, well trained and obedient, he halted again towards *Messana*, and was by the *Mamertines* 40 (grown proud by their former victory over the Mutiners) encountered in the plains of *Mylaeum*, where he obtained a most signall victory, and leading with him their Commander captive into *Syracuse*, himself by common consent was elected and saluted King. Hereupon the *Mamertines*, finding themselves utterly enfeebled, some of them resolved to give themselves to the *Carthaginians*, others to crave assistance of the *Romans*: to each of whom the severall factions dispatched Embassadors for the very same purpose.

The *Carthaginians* were soon ready to lay hold upon the good offer: so that a Captain of theirs got into the Castle of *Messana*, whereof they that had sent for him gave him possession. But within a little while, they that were more inclinable to the *Romans*, 50 had brought their Companions to so good agreement, that this Captain, either by force, or by cunning, was turned out of doores, and the Town reserved for other Masters.

These news did much offend the people of *Carthage*; who crucified their Captaine, as both a Traitor and Coward; and sent a Fleet and Army to besiege *Messana*, as a Town that rebelled, having once been theirs. *Hieron* the new-made King of *Syracuse* (to gratifie his people, incensed with the smart of injuries lately received) added his forces to the *Carthaginians*, with whom he entred into a league, for exterminating the

*Mamertines*

*Mamertines* out of *Sicily*. So the *Mamertines* on all sides were closed up within *Messana*: the *Carthaginians* lying with a Navie at Sea, and with an Army on the one side of the Town, whilst *Hieron* with his *Syracusians*, lay before it on the other side.

In this their great danger came *Appius Claudius* the Roman Consul, with an Army to the streights of *Sicily*: which passing by night with notable audacity, he put himselfe into the Town, and sending Messengers to the *Carthaginians*, and to *Hieron*, required them to depart; signifying unto them that the *Mamertines* were now become confederate with the people of *Rome*, and that therefore it was come to give them protection, even by force of War, if reason would not prevail.

This message was utterly neglected; And so began the War between *Rome* and *Carthage*; wherein it will then be time to shew on which part was the justice of the quarrell, when some actions of the *Romans* lately foregoing this, have been first considered.

### §. III.

*The beginning of the first Punick war. That it was unjustly undertaken by the Romans.*

When *Pyrrhus* began his wars in *Italy*, the City of *Rhegium*, being well affected to *Rome*, and not onely fearing to be taken by the *Epirots*, but much more dis- 20 trusting the *Carthaginians*, as likely to seize upon it in that busie time, sought aide from the *Romans*, and obtained from them a Legion, consisting of foure thousand souldiers, under the conduct of *Decius Campanus*, a Roman Prefect; by whom they were defended and assured for the present. But after a while, this Roman Garrison, considering at good leisure, the fact of the *Mamertines*, committed in *Messana* (a City in *Sicily*, situate almost opposite to *Rhegium*, and no otherwise divided than by a narrow Sea, which severeth it from *Italy*) and rather weighing the greatness of the booty, than the odiousness of the villany, by which it was gotten; resolved finally, to make the like purchase, by taking the like wicked course. Confederating therefore themselves with the *Mamertines*, they entertained their Hosts of *Rhegium*, after the same manner; dividing 30 the spoil, and all which that State had among themselves.

When complaint was made to the Senate and people of *Rome*, of this outrage; they finding their honour thereby greatly stained (for no Nation in the world made a more severe profession of justice, than they did during all the time of their growing greatness) resolved, after a while, to take revenge upon the offenders. And this they performed shortly after, when they had quenched the fires; kindled in *Italy* by *Pyrrhus*. For, notwithstanding that those *Romans* in *Rhegium* (as men for the foulness of their fact, hopelesse of pardon) defended themselves with an obstinate resolution; yet in the end, the assailants forced them; and those which escaped the present fury, were brought bound to *Rome*, where, after the usuall torments by whipping inflicted, according 40 to the custome of the country, they had their heads stricken from their shoulders, and the people of *Rhegium* were again restored to their former liberty and estates.

This execution of Justice being newly performed, and the same thereof founding honourably through all quarters of *Italy*; messengers came to *Rome* from *Messana*, desiring help against the *Carthaginians*, and *Syracusians*, that were in a readinesse to inflict the like punishment upon the *Mamertines*, for the like offence. A very impudent request it was, which they made: who having both given example of that villanny to the Roman Souldiers, and helped them with joynr forces to make it good, doe intreat the Judges to give them that assistance, which they were wont to receive from their fellow-thieves.

The *Romans* could not suddenly resolve, whether the way of honesty or of profit were to be followed; they evermore pretended the one, but they many times walked in the other. They considered, how contrary the course of succouring the *Mamertines* was to their former counsels and actions: seeing for the same offences they had lately put to torment, and to the sword, their own Souldiers, and restored the oppressed to their liberty. Yet when they beheld the description of the *Carthaginian* Dominion, and that they were already Lords of the best part of *Africa*, of the *Mediterran* Islands, of a great part of *Spain*, and some part of *Sicily* itself; whilst also they feared, that *Syracuse* therein

therein seated (a City in beauty and riches, little at that time inferior to *Carthage*, and far superiour to *Rome* it self) might become theirs; the safety of their own estate spake for these *Mamertines*: who, if they (driven to despair by the *Romans*) should deliver up *Messana*, with those other holds that they had, into the hands of the *Carthaginians*, then would nothing stand between *Carthage* and the Lordship of *Sicily*: for *Syracuse* it self could not, for want of succour, any long time subsist, if once the *Carthaginians* that were Masters of the Sea, did fasten upon that passage from the maine Land. It was further considered; that the opportunity of *Messana* was such, as would not onely debarre all succours out of the continent, from arrivall in *Sicily*; but would serve as a bridge, whereby the *Carthaginians* might have entrance into *Italy*, at their own pleasure. 10

These considerations of profit at hand, and of preventing dangers, that threatned from a far, did so prevail above all regard of honesty, that the *Mamertines* were admitted into Confederacy with the *Romans*, and *Ap. Claudius* the Consull, presently dispatched away for *Messana*: into which he entred, and undertook the protection of it, as is shewed before. The besiegers were little troubled with his arrivall; and lesse moved, with his requiring them to desist from their attempt. For they did far exceed him in number of men; the whole Island was ready to relieve them in their wants; and they were strong enough at Sea, to hinder any supply from getting into the Town. All this *Appius* himself well understood: and against all this he thought the stiffe metall of his *Roman* Souldiers a sufficient remedy. Therefore he resolved to issue out into the field, and to let the enemies know, that his coming was to send them away from the Town; not to be besieged by them within it. 20

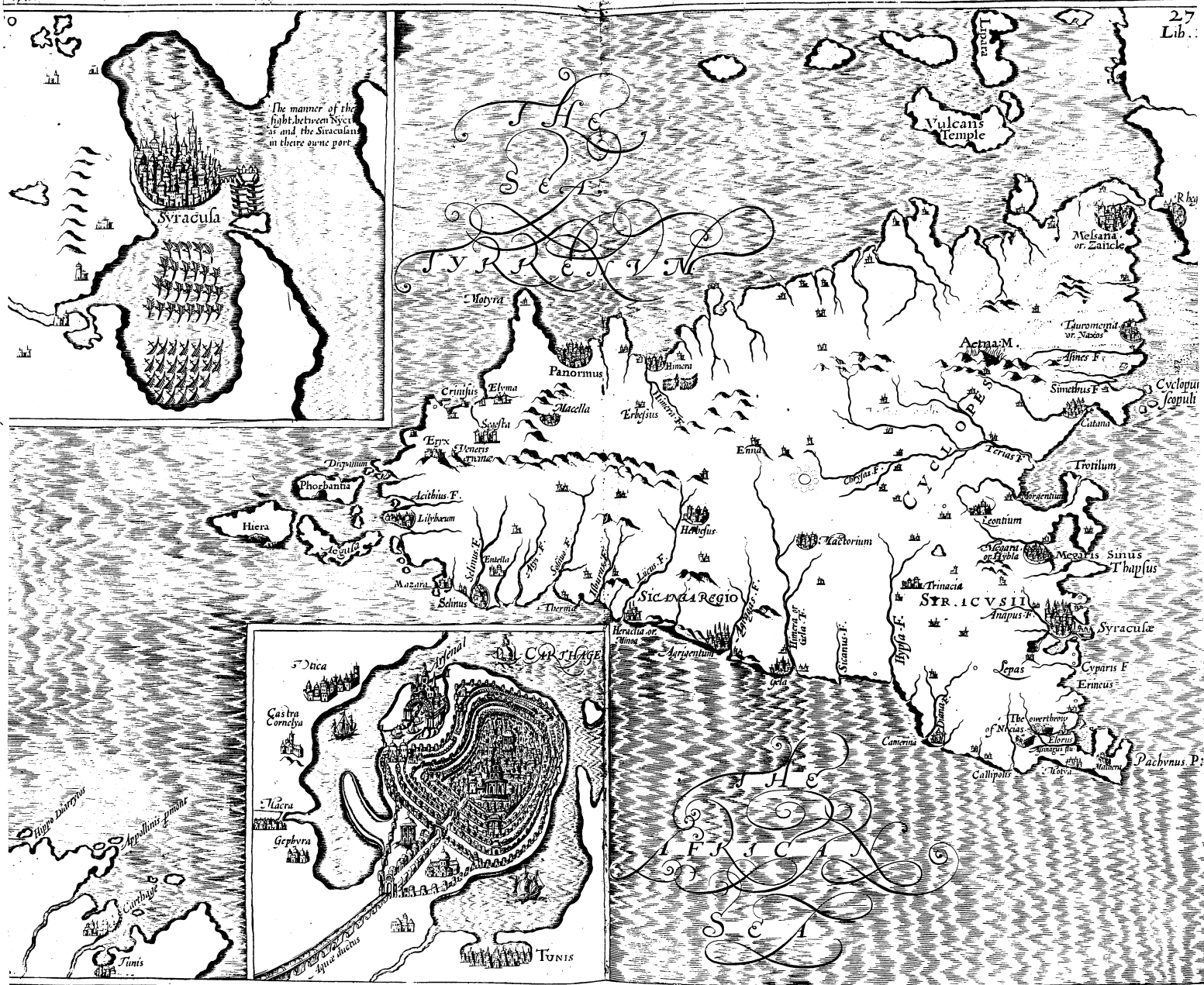
In executing this determination, it was very beneficiall to him, that the enemy lay encamped in such sort, as one quarter was not well able to relieve another in distresse. *Hieron* was now exposed to the same danger, wherinto he had wilfully cast his own mutinous followers not long before: onely he was strong enough (or thought so) to make good his own quarter, without help of others. Against him *Ap. Claudius* issued forth, and (not attempting, by unexpected sally, to surprize his trenches) arranged his men in order of battell, wherewith he presented him. The *Syracusians* wanted not courage to fight; but surely he wanted good advice: else would he not have hazarded all his power against an enemy of whom he had made no trial; when it had been easie, and as much as was requisite, to defend his own Camp. It may be, that he thought to get honour, wherewith to adorne the beginning of his reign. But he was well beaten, and driven to save himself within his trenches: by which losse, he learned a point of wisdom, that stood him and his Kingdom in good stead all the dayes of his life. It was a foolish desire of revenge, that had made the *Syracusians* so busie, in helping those of *Carthage*, against the *Mamertines*. 30

Had *Messana* been taken by the *Carthaginians*, *Syracuse* it self must have sought help from *Rome*, against those friends which it now so diligently assisted. *Hieron* had (in respect of those two mighty Cities) but a small stock, which it behooved him to govern well: such another losse would have made him almost bankrupt. Therefore he quietly brake up his Camp, and retired home: intending to let them stand to their adventures, that had hope to be gainers by the bargain. The next day, *Claudius* perceiving the *Sicilian* Army gone, did with great courage, and with much alacrity of his Souldiers, give charge upon the *Carthaginians*: wherein he sped so well, that the enemy forsook both field and camp, leaving all the Country open to the *Romans*; who having spoiled all round, without resistance, intended to lay siege unto the great City of *Syracuse*. 40

These prosperous beginnings, howsoever they animated the *Romans*, and filled them with hopes of attaining to greater matters, than at the first they had expected: Yet did they not imprint any forme of terrour in the City of *Carthage*, that had well enough repaired greater losses than this; in which no more was lost than what had been prepared against the *Mamertines* alone, without any suspicion of War from *Rome*. 50

Now in this place I hold it seasonable, to consider of those grounds, whereupon the *Romans* entred into this war; not how profitable they were, nor how agreeable to rules of honesty (for questionless the enterprize was much to their benefit, though as much to their shame) but how allowable in strict termes of lawfulness; whereupon they built all





all their allegations in maintenance thereof: That the *Mamertines* did yeeld themselves, and all that they had, into the *Romans* hands (as the *Campanes*, distressed by the *Samnites*, had done) I cannot finde: neither can I finde how the messengers of those folk, whoso of one part had already admitted the *Carthaginians*, could be enabled to make any such surrendry in the publick name of all.

If therefore the *Mamertines*, by no lawfull surrendry of themselves and their possessions, were become subject unto *Rome*, by what better title could the *Romans* assist the *Mamertines*, against their most ancient friends the *Carthaginians*, than they might have sided the *Campanes*, against the *Samnites*, without the same condition? which was (as they themselves confessed) by none at all. But let it be supposed, that some point serving to cleare this doubt, is lost in all Histories. Doubtlesse it is, that no company of Pyrates, Theeves, Out-laws, Murderers, or such other Malefactors, can by any good successe of their villany, obtain the priviledge of civill societies, to make league or truce; yea, or to require fair war: but are by all means, as most pernicious vermine, to be rooted out of the world. I will not take upon me to maintain that opinion of some *Civilians*, that a Prince is not bound to hold his faith with one of these; it were a Position of ill consequence: This I hold; that no one Prince or State can give protection to such as these, as long as any other is using the sword of vengeance against them, without becoming accessary to their crimes. Wherefore we may esteem this action of the *Romans* so far from being justifiable, by any pretence of Confederacy made with them; as that contrariwise, by admitting this nest of Murderers and Theeves into their protection, they justly deserved to be wasted upon themselves, by the people of *Sicily*, yea, although *Messana* had been taken, and the *Mamertines* all slain, ere any newes of the Confederacy had been brought unto the besiegers. The great *Alexander* was so far perswaded herein; that he did put to sword all the *Branchiades* (a people in *Sogdiana*) and razed their City, notwithstanding that they joyfully entertained him as their Lord and King; because they were descended from a company of *Milesians*, who to gratifie King *Xerxes*, had robbed a Temple, and were by him rewarded with the Town and Country, which these of their posterity enjoyed. Nevertheless, in course of humane justice, long and peaceable possession gives *jus acquisitum*, a kinde of right by prescription unto that which was first obtained by wicked means: and doth free the descendants from the crime of their Ancestors, whose villanies they do not exercise. But that the same generation of Theeves, which by a detestable fact hath purchased a rich Town, should be acknowledged a lawfull company of Citizens, there is no shew of right. For even the Conqueror that by open War obtaineth a Kingdom, doth not confirm his title, by those victories which gave him first possession: but length of time is requisite to establish him, unless by some alliance with the ancient inheritors, he can better the violence of his claime, as did our King *Henry* the first, by his marriage with *Maud*, that was daughter of *Malcolme*, King of the *Scots*, by *Margaret*, the Niece of *Edmund Ironside*. Wherefore I conclude, that the *Romans* had no better ground (if they had so good) of justice, in this quarrell, than had the *Goths*, *Huns*, *Vandalls*, and other Nations, of the wars that they made upon the *Roman* Empire, wherein *Rome* her self, in the time of her visitation, was burnt to the ground.

## §. IV.

## Of the Island of Sicil.

## t. I.

## The quality of the Island: and the first inhabitants thereof.

The defence of the *Mamertines*, or the possession of *Messana*, being now no longer since the first victories of *Appian Claudius*, the objects of the *Roman* hopes; but the Dominion of all *Sicily* being the prize, for which *Rome* and *Carthage* are about to contend: it will be agreeable unto the order, which in the like cases we have observed, to make a brief collection of things concerning that noble Island; which hath been the stage of many great acts, performed as well before and after, as in this present War.

That

Plin. l. 2. c. 91.  
Sili. l. 5.Origen. l. 4. c. 14.  
Diod. l. 6.  
Ovid. Fast. 4.

Strabo l. 6.

That *Sicil* was sometimes a *Peninsula*; or *Demie-Isle*, adjoining to *Italy*, as a part of *Erustrum* in *Calabria*, near unto *Rhegium*; and afterward by violence of tempest severed from the same: it is a generall opinion of all antiquity. But at what certain time this division happened, there is no memoriall remaining in any ancient writer: *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Dionysius* affirme, that it was caused by an earth-quake; *Silius* and *Cassiodorus* doe think it to have been done by the rage and violence of the tide, and furies of the Sea. Either of these opinions may be true; for it was *Eubœa*, severed from *Æolia*; *Atalante* and *Maecris* from *Eubœa*; *Silvie* here in *England*, from the Cape of *Cornwall*; and *Brittain* it self (as may seem by *Vergilius* arguments) from the opposite continent of *Gaul*. But for *Sicil*, they which lend their eares to fables, doe attribute the cause of it to *Nephtune* (as *Euphorbus* witnesseth) who with his three-forked Mace, in favour of *Jocastus*, the son of *Eolus*, divided it from the maine land, and so made it an Island, which before was but a *Demie-Isle*; that by this means he might the more safely inhabit, and possesse the same. *Diodorus Siculus*, moved by the authority of *Hesiodus*, ascribeth the labour of furling it from *Italy*, to *Orion*: who that he might be compared to *Hercules* (cutting through the rocks and mountains) first opened the *Sicilian* streights, as *Hercules* did those of *Gibraltar*.

They which value the Islands of the mid-Land Sea, according to their quantity and content, doe make this the greatest; as *Enstathius* and *Strabo*, who affirme this, not only to excell the rest for bignesse, but also for goodnesse of soile. As concerning the forme of this Island, *Pomponius Mela* saith, it is like that Capitall letter of the *Greek*, which they call *Delta*, namely, that it hath the figure of a triangle; which is generally known to be true. That the whole Island was consecrated to *Ceres* and *Proserpina*, all old writers with one consent affirme. To *Ceres* it was dedicated, because it first taught the rules of setting and sowing of Corn: to *Proserpina*, not so much for that she was from hence violently taken by *Pluto*, as because (which *Plutarch* and *Diodorus* doe report for truth) that *Pluto*, as soon as she, uncovering her self, first shewed her self to be seen of him; gave her the Dominion thereof.

Of the fertility and riches of this Country, there is a famous testimonie written by *Cicero*, in his second Oration against *Verrus*, where he saith, that *Marcus Cato* did call it the Granary and Store-house of the Common-wealth, and the Nurse of the *Italian* sort. The same *Cicero* doth adde in that place; that it was not only the Store-house of the people of *Rome*; but also that it was a well-furnished treasure. For without any cost or charge of ours (saith he) it hath usually clothed, maintained and furnished our greatest armies with leather, apparrell and come. *Strabo* reporteth almost the same thing of it. Whatsoever *Sicilie* doth yeeld (saith *Solinus*) whether by the sun, and temperature of the aire, or by the industry and labour of man, it is accounted next unto those things that are of best estimation: were it not that such things as the earth first putteth forth, are extremely over-grown with saffron. *Diodorus Siculus* saith, that in the fields near unto *Leontium*, and in divers other places of this Island, wheat doth grow of it self without any labour or looking to of the husbandman. *Martianus* sheweth, that there were in it six Colonies, and sixty Cities: there are that reckon more; whereof the names are found scateringly in many good Authors.

Now besides many famous acts, done by the people of this Island, as well in peace as War, there be many other things which have made it very renowned, as the birth of *Ceres*; the ravishing of *Proserpina*; the Giant *Encelladus*; the mount *Ætna*, *Scylla*, and *Charybdis*, with other antiquities and rarities; besides those learned men, the noble Mathematician, *Archimedes*, the famous Geometrician, *Euclides*, the painfull Historian *Diodorus*, and *Empedocles*, the deep Philosopher.

That *Sicil* was at first possessed and inhabited by Giants, *Laestrigones* and *Cyclopes*, so barbarous people, and uncivil; all histories and fables do jointly with one consent averre. Yet *Thucydides* saith, that these savage people dwelt onely in one part of the Island. Afterward the *Sicani*, a people of *Spain*, possessed it. That these *Sicani* were not bred in the Isle (although some do think) *Thucydides* and *Diodorus* doe very constantly avouch.

Of these it was named *Sicania*. These *Sicani* were invaded by the *Sculi*; who, inhabiting that part of *Latium*, whereon *Rome* was afterward built, were driven by the Pelasgi from their own seats, &c. finding no place upon the Continent, which they were able to master

master and inhabit, passed over into this Island, three hundred years before the *Greeks* sent any Colonies thither: and (saith *Philistus*) eighty years before the fall of *Troy*. These *Siculi* gave the name of *Sicilia*, to the Island; and making war upon the *Sicani*, drave them from the East and Northern part thereof, into the West and South. At their landings, they first built the City *Zancle*, afterward called *Messana*; and after that, *Catana*, *Leontine*, and *Syracuse* it self, beating from thence the *Ætolians*, who long before had set up a Town in that place. As for the name of *Syracuse*, it was not known, till such time as *Archias* of *Cornith* (long after) won that part of the Island from the *Siculi*; Neither did the *Siculi* at their first arrivall dispossesse the *Ætolians* thereof, but some 10 hundred years after their descent, and after such time as they had founded the Cities before named with *Næa*, *Hybla*, *Trinacria*, and divers others.

After these *Siculi* came another nation out of *Italy*, called *Morgetes*; who were thence driven by the *Oenotrians*. These sat down in that part of *Sicil*, where they afterward raised the Cities of *Morgantium*, and *Leontium*. For at this time the *Siculi* were divided, and by a civil war greatly infeebled. Among these ancient stories, we find the last voyage, and the death of *Minos*, King of *Crete*. *Thucydides*, an Historian of unquestionable sincerity, reports of *Minos*, that he made conquest of many Islands; and some such business, perhaps, drew him into *Sicil*. But the common report is, that he came thither in pursuit of *Dadalus*. The tale goes thus: *Dadalus* fleeing the revenge of *Minos*, came 10 into *Sicil*, to *Cocalus*, King of the *Sicani*; and during his abode there, he built a place of great strength, near unto *Megara*, for *Cocalus* to lay up his treasure in; together with many notable works, for which he was greatly admired and honoured.

Among the rest, he cast a Ram in gold, that was set up in the Temple of *Venus Erycina*; which he did with so great Art, as those that beheld it, thought it rather to be lying than counterfeit.

Now *Minos*, hearing that *Cocalus* had entertained *Dadalus*, prepares to invade the Territory of *Cocalus*; but when he was arrived, *Cocalus* doubting his own strength, promiseth to deliver *Dadalus*. This he performs not, but in the mean while, kills *Minos* by treason, and perswades the *Cretans*, *Minos* his followers, to inhabit a part of *Sicil*; the 20 better (as it seems) to strengthen himself against the *Siculi*. Hereunto the *Cretans* (their King being dead) gave their consent, and builded for themselves the City of *Minoa* after the name of the King *Minos*. After, they likewise built the Town of *Engium*, now called *Gange*; and these were the first Cities, built by the *Greeks* in *Sicil*, about two ages before the war of *Troy*; for the grand-children of *Minos* served with the *Greeks* at the siege thereof.

But after such time as the *Cretans* understood, that their King had by treason been made away; they gathered together a great Army, to invade *Cocalus*; and landing near unto *Camicus*, they besieged the same five years, but in vain. In the end (being forced to returne, without any revenge taken) they were rackt on the coast of *Italy*, and having 40 no means to repair their ships, nor the honour they had lost, they made good the place whereon they fell, and built *Hyria*, or *Pyrium*, between the two famous Ports of *Brundisium* and *Tarentum*. Of these *Cretans* came those Nations, afterward called *Iapyges* and *Messapii*.

After the taking of *Troy*, *Egeffas* and *Elymus*, brought with them certain troupes into *Sicil*, and seated themselves among the *Sicani*; where they built the Cities of *Egeffa* and *Elyma*.

It is said, that *Aeneas* visited these places in his passage into *Italy*: and that some of the *Trojans*, his followers, were left behind him, in these Towns of *Sicil*: whereof there want not good Authors, that make *Aeneas* himself the founder.

50 About the same time, the *Phœnicians* seized upon the Promontories of *Pachinus*, and *Lilybœum*, and upon certain small Isles adjoining to the main Island: which they fortified, to secure the trades that they had with the *Sicilians*; like as the *Portugals* have done in the East-India, at *Goa*, *Ormuz*, *Mosambique*, &c. other places. But the *Phœnicians* stayed not there; for after they had once assured their descents, they built the goodly City of *Panormus*, now called *Palerma*.

These we finde, were the Nations that inhabited the Isle of *Sicil*, before the warre of *Troy*, and ere the *Greeks* in any numbers began to straggle in those parts.

It may perchance seem strange to the Reader, that in all aeneit stories, he findes one

Saxo G. in pre-  
fat. lib.

Tertul de Re-  
fur. Ang. lib.  
Cron. Dis lib.  
15. Et qual. in  
Gen. Nic. lib.  
2. c. 37. Pro-  
p. lib. 3. de Belle  
Goth. Plin. lib.  
7. cap. 2.

and the same beginning of Nations, after the flood; & that the first planters of all parts of the World were said to be mighty and Giant-like men; and that, as *Phœnicia*, *Egypt*, *Lybia* and *Greece*, had *Hercules*, *Orestes*, *Antæus*, *Typhon*, and the like; as *Denmark* had *Starbaterus*, remembered by *Saxo Grammaticus*; as *Scythia*, *Britanie*, and other Regions had Giants for their first inhabitants, so this Isle of *Sicily* had her *Lelegryones* & *Cyclopes*. This discourse I could also reject for fained and fabulous, did not *Moses* make us know, that the *Zamzummims*, *Emims*, *Anakims*, and *Og of Basan*, with others, which sometime inhabited the Mountains and Defarts of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and Mount *Seir*, were men of exceeding strength and stature, and of the races of Giants: and were it not, that *Tertulian*, *S. Angustine*, *Nicephorus*, *Procopius*, *Isidore*, *Plinie*, *Diodore*, *Herodotus*, *Solinus*, *Platarch* and many other Authors, have confirmed the opinion. Yea, *Vesputius*, in his 10  
of *America*, hath reported that himself hath seen the like men in those parts. Again, whereas the self-same is written of all Nations, that is written of any one; as touching their simplicity of life, their mean fare, their feeding on acorns and roots, their poor cottages, the covering of their bodies with the skins of beasts, their hunting, their armes, and weapons, and their warfare, their first passages over great Rivers and Arms of the Sea, upon rafts of trees tied together; and afterward, their making boats first of twigs and leather, then of wood, first with Oares, and then with Sail, that they esteemed as gods, the first finders out of Arts, as of Husbandry, of Lawes, and of Policy: it is a matter, that makes me neither to wonder at, nor to doubt of it. For they 20  
all lived in the same newness of time, which we call *Ola time*, and had all the same want of his instruction, which (after the Creator of all things) hath by degrees taught all Mankind. For other teaching had they none, that were removed far off from the *Hybrenes*, (who inherited the knowledge of the first Patriarchs) than that from variable effects they began, by time and degrees, to find out the causes: from whence came Philosophy Natural, as the Morall did from disorder and confusion; and the Law from cruelty and oppression.

But it is certain, that the Age of *Time* hath brought forth stranger and more incredible things, than the Infancy. For we have now greater Giants for vice and injustice, than the World had in those days, for bodily strength; for cottages, and houses of clay 30  
and timber, we have raised Palaces of stones; we carve them, we paint them, and adorn them with gold, inasmuch as men are rather known by their houses, than their houses by them; we are fallen from two dishes, to two hundred; from water, to wine and drunkenness: from the covering of our bodies with the skins of beasts, not only to silk and gold, but to the very skins of men. But to conclude this digression, *Time* will also take revenge of the excess, which it hath brought forth; *Quam longa dies peperit, longiorque auxit, longissima subruet: Long time brought forth, longer time increased it, and a time, longer than the rest, shall overthrow it.*

### t. II.

#### The plantation of the Greeks in Sicill.

When the first inhabitants had contended long enough about the Dominion of all *Sicill*: it happened, that one *Theocles*, a *Greek*, being driven upon that coast by an Easterly wind, and finding true the commendations thereof, which had been thought fabulous, being delivered only by Poets, gave information to the *Athenians* of this his discovery, & propoed unto them the benefit of this easie conquest offering to become their guide. But *Theocles* was as little regarded by the *Athenians*, as *Columbus*, in our Grand-fathers times, was by the *English*. Wherefore he took the same 50  
course that *Columbus* afterwards did. He over-laboured not himself in perswading the Noble *Athenians* (who thought themselves to be well enough already) to their own profit; but went to the *Chalcidians*, that were needy and indutrious, by whom his project was gladly entertained. By these was built the City of *Naxos*, and a Colony planted of *Enbœans*.

But the rest of the *Greeks* were wiser than our Western Princes of *Europe*: for they had no Pope, that should forbid them to occupy the void places of the World. *Archias* of *Corinth* followed the *Enbœans*, and landed in *Sicill*, neer unto that City, called

called afterward \* *Syracuse*: of which, that part only was then compassed with a wall, \* *Syracusas* *ci-*  
which the *Atolians* called *Homotherman*; the *Greeks*, *Naxos*; the *Latines* *I.sula*. He with the *greceit*, and  
his *Corinthians* having overcome the *Siculi*, drave them up into the Country; and after most goodly *City* of all that  
a few years, their multitude increasing, they added unto the City of the Island, that of the *greceit* pol-  
*Acradina*, *Tycha*, and *Neapolis*, So as well by the commodity of the double Port, capable for the *greceit* pol-  
of as many ships, as any Haven of that part of *Europe*, as by the fertill ty of the soyle, *Syracuse* is both  
*Syracuse* grew up in great haste, to be one of the goodliest Towns of the world. In short  
time the *Greeks* did possesse the better part of all the Sea-coast; forcig the *Sicilians* to spect from every  
withdraw themselves into the fast and mountainous parts of the Island, making their *Land, or Sea,*  
10 Royall residence in *Trinacia*.

Some seven years after the arrivall of *Archias*, the *Chalcidians*, encouraged by the suc-  
cess of the *Corinthians*, did assail, & obtain the city of *Leontium*, built and posselt by the  
*Siculi*. In brief, the *Greeks* win from the *Siculi*, and their Associates, the cities of *Catana*  
and *Hybla*, which in honour of the *Megarians* that forc't it, they called *Megara*.

About 45. years after *Archias* had taken *Syracuse*, *Antipheus*, and *Entimius*, the one  
from *Rhodes*, the other from *Crete*, brought an Army into *Sicill*, and built *Gela*, whose  
Citizens, one hundred and eight year after, did erect that magnificent and renowned city  
of *Agirigentum*, governed according to the Lawes of the *Dorians*.

The *Syracusians* also, in the seventieth year after their plantation, did set up the city  
of *Akra*, in the Mountains; and in the ninetieth year *Casmen*, in the Plains adjoining;  
and agin in the hundred and thirtieth year of their dwelling in *Syracuse*, they built *Came-*  
*rina*; and soon after that, *Enna*, in the very Center of the Island. So did the *Cumani* about  
the same time, recover from the *Siculi* the city of *Zancle*, which they had founded in the  
straight between *Sicill* and *Italy*. They of *Zancle* had been the founders of *Himera*.

Not long after this, *Dorians* the *Lacedæmonian* built *Heraclia*; which the *Phœnicians*,  
and *Carthaginians*, fearing the neighbourhood of the *Spartans*, soon after invaded and  
ruined, though the same were again ere long re-edified.

*Selinus* also was built by a Colony of *Megara*; and *Zancle* was taken by the *Messen-*  
*ians*, who having lost their own Country, gave the name thereof unto this their new  
40 purchase. Such were the beginnings of the greatest cities in this Island.

### t. III.

#### of the Government and affairs of Sicil, before Dionysius his tyranny.

The most part of the cities in *Sicill*, were governed by the rule of the people, till such  
time as *Phalaris* began to usurp the state of *Agirigentum*, and to exercise all man-  
ner of tyranny therein.

This was that *Phalaris*, to whom *Perillus*, the cunning Artificer of a detestable En-  
40 gine, gave an hollow Bull of brass, wherein to inclose men, and scorch them to death:  
praising the device with this commendation; That the noise of one tormented therein,  
should be like unto the bellowing of a Bull. The Tyrant gave a due reward to the In-  
venter, by causing the first tryall to be made upon himself. He reigned one and thirty  
years, faith *Eusebius*; others give him but sixteen: Howsoever it were, one *Telemachus* second, *Hiero*  
in the end, fell upon him with the whole multitude of *Agirigentum*, and stoned him to  
death; being thereto animated by *Zeno*, even whilest the Tyrant was tormenting the  
same *Zeno*, to make him confesse some matter of conspiracy.

After the death of *Phalaris*, the Citizens recovered their liberty, and enjoyed it long,  
till *Thero* usurped the government of the Common-weale: at which time also *Panatus* *Hiero*, the seventh  
50 made himself Lord of *Leontium*; & *Cleander* of *Gela*: but *Cleander* having ruled seven  
years, was slain by one of the Citizens. *Cleander* being dead, his brother *Hippocrates*,  
succeeded in his room, and greatly afflicted the people of *Naxos*, of *Zancle*, or *Messena*, *Hiero* the young-  
and of *Leontium*; whom with divers others of the ancient inhabitants, he forced to ac-  
knowledge him their Lord. He also made war with the *Syracusians*, and, in the end, *Hiero*,  
got from them by composition, the City of *Camerina*. But when he had reigned seven  
years, he was slain in a battell against the *Siculi*, before *Hybla*.

At this time did the *Syracusians* change their forme of government, from Popular to  
*Aristocratical*; a preparation towards a principality, whereinto it was soon after changed.

After the death of *Hippocrates*, *Gelon* (descended from the *Rhodians*, which together with the *Cretans* had long before, among other of the *Greeks*, seated themselves in *Sicily*) that had commanded the forces of *Hippocrates*, in the former war, with notable success, became Lord of *Gela*. He, after his Masters death, breaking the trust committed unto him by *Hippocrates* over his children, and being in possession of *Gela*, took the occasion and advantage of a contention in *Syracuse*, between the Magistrates and the People. For coming with a strong Army to the succour of the governours, driven out by the multitude, they elected him their Prince, being the first, and (indeed) the most famous, that ever governed the *Syracusians*. This change happened in the second year of the three-score and twelfth Olympiad; wherein the better to establish himself, he took to wife the Daughter of *Thero*, who had also usurped the state of *Agigentum*.

Paul. lib. 6.

Now this *Gelon*, the son of *Dinomenes*, had three brethren; *Hiero*, *Polyxenus*, and *Thrasylulus*: to the first of which he gave up the City of *Gela*, when he had obtained the Principality of *Syracuse*. For, after that time, all his thoughts travelled in the strengthening, beautifying, and amplifying of *Syracuse*. He defaced *Camerina*, that a little before was fallen from the obedience of the *Syracusians* who built it, and brought the Citizens to *Syracuse*. The *Megarians* that had moved a war against him, he overcame; the richer sort he brought unto *Syracuse*, and the people he sold for slaves. In like manner dealt he with other places upon the like occasion. Not long after this, *Thero*, a Prince of the *Agigentines*, having disposed *Terillus* of his City *Himera*, the *Carthaginians* were drawn into the quarrell by *Anaxilus*, Lord of *Messena*, Father-in-law to *Terillus*; and *Gelon* was also solicited by his Father-in-law *Thero*. *Gelon* was content, and in fine, after divers conflicts, the *Carthaginians*, and other *Africans*, led by *Amilcar*, were overthrown by *Gelon*: and an hundred and fifty thousand of them left their bodies in *Sicily*.

Herod. &amp; Dio.

This *Gelon* it was, to whom the *Athenians* and *Lacedaemonians* sent for succour, when *Xerxes* with his huge army past the *Hellespont*. He, for their relief having armed thirty thousand Souldiers, and two hundred ships, refused nevertheless to send them into *Greece*, because they refused him the commandement of one of their Armies, either by Sea, or Land. So he used to their Embassadors only this saying, *That their Spring was withered*, accounting the Army, by him prepared, to be the very flower of the *Greek* Nation.

The *Carthaginians*, after this great loss received, fearing the invasion of their owne Country, sent to *Gelon* by their Embassadors, to desire peace, who grants it them on these conditions: That from thenceforth they should not sacrifice their children to *Saturne*; That they should pay him 2000. talents of silver, and present him with two armed ships, in sign of amity. These conditions the *Carthaginians*, not only willingly accepted, but with the two thousand talents, and the ships for war, they sent unto *Demarata*, *Gelons* wife, a crown, valued at an hundred talents of gold, with other presents. Whereby we see, that some Nations, and some Natures, are much the better for being well beaten. The war ended, & *Sicily* in peace, *Gelon* beautified the Temples of the gods, and erected others in honour of them. So being exceedingly beloved and honoured of his Subjects, he left the World, and left for his succour his brother *Hiero*. *Philistus* and *Pliny* report, That, when his body was burnt, according to the custome of that Age, a Dog of his, which always waited on him, ran into the fire, and suffered himself to be burnt with him.

To *Gelon*, *Hiero* his brother succeeded, a man rude, cruel, covetous, and so suspicious of his brethren *Polyxenus*, and *Thrasylulus*, as he sought by all means to destroy them. Notwithstanding all this, by the conversation which he had with *Simonides*, he became of better condition, and greatly delighted with the study of good Arts. Divers quarrels he had, as well with *Theron* of *Agigentum*, as with other Cities: all which he shortly after compounded, and gave a notable overthrow to the *Carthaginians*, whom *Xerxes* had incited to invade *Sicily*, fearing the succours which *Gelon* had prepared, to aid the *Grecians*, against him. He also overthrew in battail *Thrasylulus*, the son of *Theron*, and thereby restored the *Agigentines* to their former liberty. But in the end, he lost the love of the *Syracusians*; and after he had reigned eleven years, he left the Kingdom to his brother *Thrasylulus*, who became a most unjust and bloody Tyrant. *Thrasylulus* enjoyed his Principality no longer than ten months. For, notwithstanding the

force

force of mercenary Souldiers; which he entertained for his guards, he was beaten out of *Syracuse* by the Citizens; to whom, being besieged in *Acradina*, he restored the government, and was banished the Iland. From whence he failed into *Greece*, where he died a private man, among the *Locrians*.

And now had the *Syracusians* recovered again their former liberty, as all the rest of the Cities did, after which they had never fought, had the Successors of *Gelon* inherited his virtue, as they did the Principality of *Syracuse*. For in all changes of Estates, the preservation ought to answer the acquisition. Where a liberal, valiant, and advise Prince, hath obtained any new Signory, and added it to that of his owne, or exalted himselfe from being a private man, to the dignity of a Prince, it behoveth the Successour to maintain it by the same way and art, by which it was gotten.

To conclude, *Syracuse* (though not without blowes, ere that she could cleanse her selfe of the creatures and lovers of *Gelon*) was now againe become Mistressse of her selfe, and held her selfe free, well-neer threescore years, to the time of *Dionysius*, though she were in the mean while greatly endangered by a Citizen of her owne, called *Tindario*.

Now, to prevent the greatnesse of any one among them, for the future, they devised a kind of banishment of such among them, as were suspected; taking patterne from the *Athenian Ostracisme*. They called this their new devised judgement of exile, *Petalismus*, wherein every one wrote upon an Olive leafe (as at *Athen* they wrote upon shels) the name of him, whom he would have expelled the City. He that had most suffrages against him, was banished for five years. Hereby in a short time, it came to passe that those of judgement, and best able to governe the Common-weale, were by the worst able, either suppress, or thrust out of the City. Yea, such as feared this Law, though they had not yet felt it, withdrew themselves as secretly as they could, seeking some place of more security, wherein to maintain themselves. And good reason they had so to do; seeing that there is nothing so terrible in any State, as a powerfull and authorized ignorance. But this Law lasted not very long. For their necessity taught them to abolish it, and restore againe the wiser sort unto the Government; from which, the Nobility having practised to banish one another, the State became altogether Popular. But after a while, being invaded by *Ducetius*, King of the *Sicilians*, that inhabited the inner part of the Iland (who had already taken *Enna*, and some other of the *Grecian* Cities, and overthrowne the Army of the *Agigentines*) the *Syracusians* sent forces against him, commanded by an unworthy Citizen of theirs, called *Bolcon*. This their captain made nothing so much hast to finde out *Ducetius*, against whom he was employed, as he did to flee from the Army, he led, as soone as *Ducetius* presented him battell. So for want of conduct, the greatest number of the *Syracusians* perished.

But making better choice among those whom they had banished, they levie other troops: by whom, in conclusion, *Ducetius* being beaten, submitte himselfe, and is constrained to leave the Iland for a time. Yet it was not long ere he returned again, and built the City *Collatina* on the Sea-side.

*Ducetius* being dead, all the *Greek* Cities did in a sort acknowledge *Syracuse*: *Trinavia* excepted; which also by force of armes, in the fourscore and fift Olympiad, they brought to reason.

But they do not long enjoy this their Superintendency. For the Citizens of *Leontium*, being oppressed by them, seek aid from the *Athenians*, about the sixt year of the *Peloponnesian* Warre. In this suit they prevailed by the eloquence of *Gorgias* their Orator; and got an hundred *Athenian* Gallies to succour them, under the leading of *Laches* and *Charaxades*. To this fleet, the *Leontines*, and their partners, added one hundred more, with which forces, and with some supplies brought by *Sophocles*, *Pythodorus*, *Enymedon* and other *Athenian* Captains, they invaded the Territories of the *Syracusians*, and their partisans; wanne and lost divers places; took *Messana*; and, in the seventh year of the *Peloponnesian* Warre, lost it again. They also at the same time, attempted *Himera*, but in vain. The fire of this quarrell took hold upon many Cities, which did invade each others Territory with great violence. But when they had wearied themselves on all hands, and yet could see none issue of the war, the *Leontines*, without the advice of the *Athenians*, came to an accord with the *Syracusians*, and were admitted.

admitted into their society, with equall freedom. So the *Athenians*, who hoped to have greatened themselves in *Sicil*, by the division and civil war, were disappointed of their expectation, by the good agreement of the *Sicilians*, and said to be gone with the broken remainder of their fleet. This they knew not how to amend; but (according to the custome of popular Estates) by taking revenge upon their own Commanders. So they banished *Pythodorus*, and *Sophocles*, & laid an heavy fine upon *Eurymedon*. Shortly after this, followed the most memorable war, that ever was made by the *Greeks* in *Sicil*: which was that of the *Athenians*, against the *Selinuntines* and *Syracusians*, in favour of the Cities of *Egesta*, *Leontium*, and *Catana*. They of *Selinus* had oppressed the *Egestians*, and they of *Syracuse* the *Leontines*, and the *Catanians*: which was the ground of the war. 10 For the *Athenians* undertook the protection of their old friends: and, in hatred of the *Athenians*, aid from *Lacedemon* was sent to the *Syracusians*. The *Lacedemonians* dealt plainly, having none other end, than that which they pretended, namely, to help a people of their owne Tribe, that craved their succour, being in distress. The *Athenians* scarce knew what to pretend: for their preparations were so great, as discovered their intent to be none other, than the conquest of the whole Island. Yet they which had called them in, were so blinded with their own passions, that they would not believe their owne eyes; which presented unto them a Fleet and Army, far greater, than the terrible report of fame had made it.

In this expedition, the city of *Athens* had engaged all her power; as regarding, not 20 only the greatness of the enterprize, but the necessity of finishing it in a short space of time. For the *Lacedemonians* (as hath already been shewed in due place) stood at that time in such broken terms of peace with *Athens*, as differed not much from open war, wherefore it was thought necessary, either to spare cost in this great expedition, or altogether to forbeare it: which was likely to be hindered by wars at home, if their proceedings were slack abroad. And surely, had not the desire of the *Athenians* been overpassionate, the arguments of *Nicias* had caused them to abstain from so chargeable a business, and to reserve their forces for a more needfull use. But young counsels prevailed against the authority of ancient men, that were more regardfull of safety than of honour. 30

Of this business, mention hath been already made, in that which we have written of the *Peloponnesian* war. But what was there delivered in generall termes, as not concerning the affairs of *Greece*, otherwise than by consequence, doth in this place require a more perfect relation, as a matter, wherein the whole State of *Sicil* was like to have felt a great conversion.

Though *Alcibiades* had prevailed against *Nicias*, in exhorting the people to this great voyage; yet *Nicias*, together with *Alcibiades* and *Lamachus*, was appointed to be one of the chief Commanders therein.

These had commission and direction, as wel to succour the *Egestians*, & to re-establish the *Leontines*, cast out of their places by the *Syracusians*; as also by force of armes, to 40 subiect the *Syracusians*, and all their adherents in *Sicil*, and compell them by tribute, to acknowledge the *Athenians* for their suprem Lord. To effect which, the fore-named Captains were sent off, with an hundred and thirty Gallies, and five thousand one hundred Souldiers, besides the thirty ships of burden, which transported their victuals, engines, and other munitions for the war: and these were *Athenians*, *Mantineans*, *Rhodiens*, and *Candians*: there were, besides these, six thousand *Megarians* light-armed, with thirty horsemen.

*Thucyd. l. 6. c. 9.*

With these troupes & fleets they arrive at *Rhegium*, where the *Rhegians* refuse to give them entry; but sell them victuals for their money. From thence they sent to the *Egestians*, to know what treasure they would contribute towards the war, seeing for their 50 sakes they had entred thereinto. But they found by their answers, that these *Egestians* were poor, and that they had abused the *Athenian* Embassadors with false shewes of gold, having in all but 30. talents. The *Athenians* further were discouraged, when they found that the *Rhegians*, their ancient friends, and allied unto the *Leontines*, refused to trust them within their Walls. Hereupon *Nicias* adviseth to depart towards the *Selinuntines*, and to force them, or persuade them to an agreement with the *Egestians*; as likewise to see what disbursements the *Egestians* could make; and so returne again into *Greece*, and not to waste *Athens* in a needlesse war. *Alcibiades*, on the other side, would

solicite

solicite the cities of *Sicil* to confederacy against the *Syracusians* & *Selinuntines*, where-by to force them unto restitution of all that they had taken from the *Leontines*. *Lamachus*, he persuades them to assail *Syracuse* it self, before it were prepared against them. But in the end (being excluded out of divers Cities) they surprize *Catana*; and there they take new counsell how to proceed. Thence they employed *Nicias* to those of *Egesta*, who received from them thirty talents towards his charges; and one hundred and twenty talents more there were of the spoiles they had gotten in the Island. Thus the Summer being spent in idle consultations, and vaine attempts; the *Athenians* prepare to assail *Syracuse*. But *Alcibiades* having been accused at home, in his absence, was sent for 40 back by the *Athenians* to make his answer: and the Army was left to the conduct of *Nicias* and *Lamachus*. These Commanders obtain a landing place very neer unto *Syracuse*, by this device.

They imploy to *Syracuse* an inhabitant of *Catana*, whom they trust, and instruct him; to promise unto the *Syracusians*, that he would deliver into their hands all the *Athenians* within *Catana*. Hereupon the *Syracusians* draw thitherward with their best forces. But in the mean while, the *Athenians*, setting sail from *Catana*, arrive at *Syracuse*, where they land at fair ease, and fortifie themselves against the Town. Shortly after this, they fight, and the *Syracusians* had the loss; but the *Athenians*, wanting horse, could not pursue their victory to any great effect. They then retire themselves, with a resolution to refresh 50 their Army at *Catana*, for the winter-season. From thence they made an attempt upon *Messana*, hoping to have taken it by an intelligence, but in vain. For *Alcibiades* had discovered such as were Traitors within the City to the *Messanians*. This he now did, in despite of his own Citizens, the *Athenians*; because they had recalled him from his command, with a purpose either to have put him to death, or to have banished him: whereof being assured by his friends, he took his way towards the *Lacedemonians*, and to them he gave mischievous counsell against his country. While this winter yet lasted, the *Syracusians* send Embassadors to *Lacedemon*, and *Corinth*, for aid; as likewise the *Athenian* Captains in *Sicil*, send to *Athens* for supplies. Which both the one and the other obtained.

In the spring following (which was the beginning of the eighteenth year of the *Peloponnesian* war) the *Athenians* in *Sicil* sail from the Port of *Catana* to *Megara*, forsaken 30 of the Inhabitants, from whence, for raging the Country, they obtaine some small victories over the straggling *Syracusians*: and at their return to *Catana*, they receive a supply of two hundred men at arms, but without horse, which they hoped to furnish in the Island from the *Egestians*, and other their adherents: they were also strengthened, with a company of Archers, and with three hundred talents in money.

Hereupon they take courage, and incampe neer *Syracuse*, upon the banks of the great Port, repelling the *Syracusians*, that sallied to impeach their intrenchments. They also received from their Confederates four hundred horse-men, with two hundred other 40 horse, to mount their men at arms. *Syracuse* was now in effect blockt up, so as hardly any succours could enter, but such as were able to force their passage: yet the *Athenians* receive divers losses; among which it was not the least, that *Lamachus*, one of their best Commanders, was slain.

In the mean while, *Gylippus* and *Pytho*, with the *Lacedemonian* & *Corinthian* forces; arrive, and take land at *Hymera*. The Citizens of *Hymera*, and of *Gela*, together with the *Selinuntines*, joyne with them; so that with these and his own troupes, *Gylippus* adventured to march over-land toward *Syracuse*. The *Syracusians* send a part of their forces to meet him and conduct him. The *Athenians* prepare to encounter them, expecting his arrival neer unto the City upon a place of advantage. At the first encounter they had 50 the better of their enemies, by reason that the *Syracusan* horse-men could not come to fight in those straights: but soon after, *Gylippus* charging them again, brake them, and constrained *Nicias* to fortifie himselfe within his Campe. Whereupon *Nicias* made the state of his affairs known, by his letters to the *Athenians*, shewing, that without great supplies by Sea and Land, the enterprize would be lost, together with the small Army remaining. These letters received, the *Athenians* appoint two other Generals, *Eurymedon* and *Demosthenes*, to joyne with *Nicias*: the one they dispatch presently with some supplies; the other they send after him in the Spring following.

In the mean while, *Gylippus* at *Syracuse*, fights with the *Athenians* both by Sea and Land,



Land, sometimes with ill, and at other times with good successe: but in conclusion, he took from their Port, neer unto *Syracuse*, the Promontory called *Phymyrium*; where- in the *Athenians* lost their treasure, and a great part of all their provisions. Notwithstand- ing which losse, and that the *Athenians* themselves, in *Greece*, were (in effect) besieged within *Athens*, by the *Lacedemonians*; yet were they most obstinate in prosecuting the War in *Sicily*, and dispatched away *Demosthenes* with new succours. *Demosthenes*, in his way towards *Sicily*, encountered with *Polyanthes* the *Corinthian*, with his fleet: both the Captaines being bound for *Sicily*, the one to succour *Nicias*, the other *Gylippus*. The losse between them was in effect equall; and neither so broken, but that each of them prosecuted the enterprize they had in hand. But before the succours arrived to either, *Gylippus* and *Ariston* had assailed the *Athenians* in the great Port of *Syracuse*, and in a Sea fight put them to the worst, to the great discouragement of the *Athenians*. On the neck of this, *Demosthenes* arrived with three-score and thirteen Gallies, charged with footmen; and (blaming the sloath of *Nicias*) he invaded the *Syracusians* the same day that he arrived. But he made more haste than he had good speed, being shamefully beaten, and repulsed with great losse. Hereupon *Demosthenes* and *Eurymedon* determine to rise up from before *Syracuse*, and returne to the succour of *Athens*: but *Nicias* disputed to the contrary, pretending that he had good intelligence within *Syracuse*, whereby he learned, that the towne could not long hold out.

Whatsoever *Nicias* his intelligence was; upon the arrivall of a new supply into the Towne, the *Athenians* had all consented to depart, and to lodge at *Catana*: had not an Eclipse of the Moone, boding (as was thought) ill successe caused them to defer their departure. But this superstition cost them dear. For the *Syracusians*, *Lacedemonians*, and *Corinthians*, with three-score and seventeen saile of Gallies, entred the great Port of *Syracuse*, wherein the *Athenians* kept their fleet, & whereon they had fortified themselves. The *Athenians*, in the same Port encountered them with four-score and six Gallies, commanded by *Eurymedon*: in which the *Athenian* fleet was beaten, by the lesser number, and *Eurymedon* slain. Now, though it were so, that the *Syracusians* received the more losse by land (for the fight was generally yet when the *Athenians* were beaten by sea, in which kinde they thought themselves invincible, they were wonderfully cast downe. For it was well said of *Gylippus*, to the *Syracusians*: *When any people doe finde themselves vanquished in that manner of fight, and with those weapons, in which they perswade themselves that they exceed all others; they not only lose their reputation, but their courage.* The *Athenians*, besides the Gallies sunk and wrackt, had seventeen taken, and posselt by the enemy: and with great labour and losse they defended the rest from being fired, having drawn them within a *Palisado*, in one corner of the port, unadvisedly: for it is as contrary to a Sea-war, to thrust ships into a straight room and corner, as it is to scatter foot in a plain field against horse; the one subsisting by being at large, the other by close im- battailing.

The *Syracusians*, having now weakened the *Athenian* fleet, resolve to imprison them within the Port. And to that purpose they range all their Gallies in the mouth of the Haven, being about a mile over, and there they came to Anchor, filling the out-let with all manner of Vessels, which they man most strongly, because the *Athenians*, being now made desperate, should not with double ranks of Gallies break through the *Syracusan* fleet; which lay but single, because they were forced to range themselves over all the Out-let of the Port. They therefore, not only mored themselves strongly by their Anchors, but chained the sides of their Gallies together, and laid behind them again certain ships, which served in the former warre for victuallers: to the end, that if any of their Gallies were sunk; or the chain, which joynted them to their fellows, broken, the *Athenians* might yet finde themselves, a second time, intangled and arrested. To disorder also those *Athenian* Gallies, which came on in forme of a wedge, to break through, and force a passage, the *Syracusians* had left within these Gallies and Ships, incained together, a certain number of loose ones, to stop their course and fury. For where the way of any vessell, using oare or sailes, is broken, and their speed foreclosed, they cannot force with any weight and violence, the resistance opposing.

On the other side, the *Athenians* knew that they were utterly lost, except with an invincible resolution they could make their way, and break downe this great bridge of boats; or (at least) force a passage through them in some part or other: which they resolve

solve to hazard, with all their shipping to the number of one hundred & ten, of all sorts and with all the strength of their Land-army, in them imbarqued. But the Gallies, which were within the bridge of boats, did so disorder the *Athenian* fleet, ere they came to force the bridge, as albeit some few of them had broken through the chains, yet being stoppt with the ships without, and assailed by other loose Gallies of the *Syracusians*, which were purposely left at large in the sea, they were either taken or sunk. Three great disadvantages the *Athenians* had: the first, that fighting within a Haven, and (as it were) in a straight, they had no room to turn themselves, nor to free themselves one from another, being intangled; the second, that having overpowered their Gallies with Souldiers, who used offensive arms of darts and slings, they had not place upon the decks to stretch their arms; the third was, the discomfortable end for which they fought, namely, to force a passage, by which they might save themselves by running away. To be short, the fight was no less terrible than the confusion: the slaughter great on all sides; and the noise, and the cries, so lowd and lamentable, as that no direction could be heard. But in the end, the *Athenians*, as many as survived, were beaten back to the Land, with losse of three-score of their Gallies, broken, sunk, or abandoned. The *Syracusians* did also lose twenty of theirs, with *Pythion*, Commander of the *Corinthians*. The rest of the *Athenian* Gallies, running themselves into the bottome of the Port, saved themselves by the help and countenance of the Land-army there fortified. In this desperate estate, the *Athenian* Commanders go to counsell. *Demosthenes* perswades them to furnish with fresh Souldiers those few Gallies which remained; and while the *Syracusians* were triumphing, and made secure by their present victory, to set upon them, and forcing their way out of the Port, to return to *Athens*. This was no ill counsell. For, as we have heard of many great Captains (yea, the greatest number of all that have been victorious) that have neglected the speedy prosecution of a beaten enemy; so might we produce many examples of those, who, having slept securely in the bosome of good success, have been suddenly awaked, by the re-allied Companies of a broken Army, and have thereby lost again all the honour and advantage formerly gotten. But *Nicias* opposeth the advice of *Demosthenes*: Others say, that the Sea-men were against it. Whereupon abandoning their Gallies, they all resolve to march over land to the Cities of their Confederates, till some more favourable fortune should call them thence. On the other side, *Gylippus*, and other the *Lacedemonian* and *Corinthian* captains, with *Hermocrates*, exhort the *Syracusians* to put themselves presently into the field, and to stop all the passages, leading to those Cities of their enemies; to which the *Athenians* might make retreat. But many were weary, and many were wounded, and many of them thought that they had done enough for the present. Which humour in some of our Commanders at *Cadez*, lost us both the *Indian* fleet, and the spoiles of many other neighbour places. *Hermocrates*, the *Syracusan*, finding it a lost labour, to perswade his Countreimen to any hasty prosecution, devised this good stratagem, whereby to gain time; not doubting, but that after a day or two, he should draw them willingly out. He sent two or three horse-men out of *Syracuse* by night, willing them to find *Nicias*, and (after they had assured him, that they were of the *Athenians* faction) to give him advice not to march away over-hastily from the place, wherein he was fortified; alledging that the *Syracusians* had lodged their Army, which could not long stay there, upon the passages and places of advantage, leading towards the cities of their Allies. These tidings *Nicias* easily beleaved, and put off his journey to the third day. For men newly beaten, are (for the most part) more fearful than wise; and to them, every thistle in the field, appears, by night, a man at armes.

The third day (leaving all their Gallies, and all their baggage) they remove; being pierced and puriued with the lamentable out-cries of those that were sick and hurt: whom they abandon to the cure of their enemies swords. The rest march away, to the number of forty thousand, and make their first passage by force, over the River of *Anapus*, notwithstanding the opposition of their enemies. But being every day charged in their marches, and by the *Syracusan* horse-men, beaten in from foraging and provision of food, they grow weak and heartles. The *Syracusians* also possess the Mountain *Lepus*, by which they were to pass towards *Camerina*, and thereby force them to fall back again towards the Sea-coast, and to take what way they could: being unable to proceed in their journey intended. Many hard shifts they made, in difficult passages, and

and blinde marches by night; which they were fain to endure, as having none other means to escape from the enemy that pursued them, and held them waking with continual skirmishing. To keep all in order, *Nicias* undertook the leading of the Vanguard, and *Demofthenes* conducted the Rear. At the River *Erimeus*, *Nicias* takes the start of a whole nights march, leaving *Demofthenes* to make the retreat: who being incompassed, and overprest with numbers, in the end renders himself. The conditions he obtained, were far better than he could have hoped for, and the faith of his enemies far worse than he suspected. For he was afterward, with *Nicias*, murdered in prison. The Army of *Demofthenes* being dissolved, they pursue *Nicias* with the greater courage: who being utterly broken, upon the passage of the River *Assinarus*, rendered himself to *Gylippus*, upon honest conditions. *Gylippus* sought to preserve him, and to have had the honour to have brought these two to *Sparta*; *Nicias*, as a Noble Enemy to the *Lacedæmonians*, and who, at the overthrow which they received at *Pylus* by the *Athenians*, had saved the lives of the vanquished; *Demofthenes*, as one that had done to *Lacedæmon* the greatest hurt. *Hermocrates* also, the Commander of the *Syracusan* Army, disswaded the rest, by all the art he had, for using any barbarous violence, after so noble a victory. But the cruel and cowardly sort, (cowardise and cruelty being inferable passions) prevailed, and caused these brave Captains to be miserably murdered; one part of their Souldiers to be starved in loathsome prisons; and the rest, sold for slaves. This was the successe of the *Sicilian* warre: which took end at the River *Assinarus*, the four and twentieth day of *May*, in the fourcore and eleventh Olympiad.

The *Athenians* being beaten out of *Sicily*, the *Egeffans* (for whose defence, against the *Selinuntines*, this late war had been taken in hand) fearing the victorious *Syracusians*, sought help from the *Carthaginians*; to whom they offered themselves, and their City, as their vassals. The *Carthagians*, though ambitious enough of enlarging their Dominion in *Sicily*, yet considering the prosperity of the *Syracusians*, and their late victories over the *Athenians*, they stayed a while to dispute of the matter, whether they should refuse or accept the offer made unto them: for the *Selinuntines* were straightly allied to the *Syracusians*, as may appear by what is past. In the end the *Senators of Carthage* resolve upon the enterprise; and (by a trick of their *Punic* wit) to separate the *Syracusians* from the *Selinuntines*, they send Embassadors to *Syracuse*: praying that City, as in the behalf of the *Egeffans*, to compell the *Selinuntines* to take reason, and to rest content with so much of the lands in question, as they of *Syracuse* should think meet to allow them. The *Syracusians* approved the motion; for it tended to their own honour. But the *Selinuntines* would make no such appointment: rather they took it ill, that the *Syracusians*, with whom they had run one course of fortune, in the *Athenian* war, should offer to trouble them, by interposing as Arbitrators, in a business that themselves could end by force. This was right as the *Carthaginians* would have it. For now could they of *Selinus* with an ill grace crave aid of *Syracuse*; and the *Syracusians* as ill grant it unto those, that had refused to stand to the Arbitrement, which the *Carthaginians* would have put into their hands. Hereupon, an Army of three hundred thousand men is set out from *Carthage*, under the conduct of *Hannibal*, Nephew to that *Amilcar*, who (as you have heard before) was overthrown with the great *Carthaginian* Army at *Himera* by *Gelon*. *Hannibal* was exceeding greedy of this employment, that he might take revenge as well of his Uncles, as of his Fathers death; the one of them having been slain by the *Himerans*, the other by those of *Selinus*. Both the Cities, *Hannibal*, in this war, won by force of arms, sacked them, and burnt them; and having taken three thousand of the *Himerans* prisoners, he caused them to be led unto the place, where *Amilcar* was slain, and buried them there.

After this followed some trouble at *Syracuse*, occasioned by the banishment of *Hermocrates*, who had lately been General of the *Syracusan* forces, against the *Athenians*. The malice of his enemies had so far prevailed with the ingratefull multitude, that he was condemned to exile for his meer virtue, at such time as he was aiding the *Lacedæmonians*, in their war against *Athens*; wherein he did great service. All the honestest sort within *Syracuse* were sorry for their injury done unto him, and fought to have him repealed. *Hermocrates* himself, returning into *Sicily*, gathered an Army of six thousand; with which he began to repair *Selinus*; & by many noble actions laboured to win the

the love of his Citizens. But the faction that opposed him was the stronger. Wherefore he was advised to seize upon a Gate of *Syracuse*, with some strength of men; whereby his friends, within the Towne, might have the better means to rise against the adverse party. This he did: but presently the multitude fell to arms, and set upon him; in which conflict he was slain. But his Son-in-law, *Dionysius*, shall make them with *Hermocrates* alive again.

#### †. IV.

Of *Dionysius* the Tyrant: and others, following him, in *Syracuse*.

THE *Syracusians* had enjoyed their liberty about threecore years, from the death of *Thrasybulus*, to the death of *Hermocrates*: at which time *Dionysius* was raised up by God, to take revenge, as well of their cruelty toward strangers, as of their ingratitude towards their own best Citizens. For before the time of *Dionysius*, they had made it their pastime, to reward the virtue of their worthiest Commanders with death, or disgrace: which custom they must now be taught to amend.

*Dionysius* obtained the principality of *Syracuse*, by the same degrees, that many others, before him, had made themselves masters of other Cities, and of *Syracuse* it self. For, being made *Pretor*, and commanding their Armies against the *Carthaginians*, and other their enemies, he behaved himself so well, that he got a general love among the people, and men of war. Then began he to follow the example of *Pisistratus*, that made himselfe Lord of *Athens*; obtaining a band of six hundred men, to defend his person: under pretence, that his private enemies, being traitorously affected to the State of *Syracuse*, had layed plots how to murder him, because of his good services. He doubled the pay of his Souldiers; alledging, that it would encourage them to fight manfully: but intending thereby to assure them to himself. He perswaded the Citizens, to call home, out of exile, those that had been banished, which were the best men of *Syracuse*; and these were afterwards, at his devotion, as obliged unto him by so great a benefit. His first favour, among the *Syracusians*, grew from his accusation of the principal men. It is the delight of base people to reign over their betters: wherefore, gladly did he help them to break down, as feters imprisoning their liberty, the bars that held it under safe custody. Long it was not, ere the chief Citizens had found whereat he aimed. But what they saw, the people would not see: and some that were needy, and knew not how to get Offices without his help, were willing to help him, though they knew his purposes to be such, as would make all the City to smart. He began early to hunt after the tyranny; being but five and twenty years of age when he obtained it: belike it was his desire to reign long. His first work, of making himself absolute Lord in *Syracuse*, was, the possession of the Citadel, wherein was much good provision, and under it the Gallies were moored. This he obtained by allowance of the people; and having obtained this, he cared for no more, but declared himself without all shame or fear. The Army, the chief Citizens, restored by him from banishment; all the needy sort within *Syracuse*, that could not thrive by honest courses; and some neighbour-towns, bound unto him, either for his help in war, or for establishing the faction, reigning at that present, were wholly affected to his assistance. Having therefore gotten the Cittadell into his hands, he needed no more, save to assure what he had already. He strengthened himself by divers marriages; taking first to wife the daughter of *Hermocrates*; and after her, two at once; the one a *Locrian*, *Doris*, by whom he had *Dionysius*, his Successor; the other, *Aristomache*, the daughter of *Hipparinus*, and sister to *Dion*, honourable men in *Syracuse*; which bare unto him many children, that served to fortifie him with new alliances.

Yet it was not long, ere some of the *Syracusians* (envying his prosperity) incited the multitude, and took arms against him, even in the novelty of his Rule. But their enterprise was more passionately, than wisely governed. He had shamefully been beaten by the *Carthaginians* at *Gela*: which, as it vexed the *Sicilian* men at armes, making them suspect that it was his purpose to let the *Carthaginians* wast all, that he might afterwards take possession of the desolate places; so it inflamed them with a desire to free themselves from his tyranny. They departed therefore from him, and marched hastily to *Syracuse*, where they found friends to help them: there they forced his Palace, ransacked

lacked his treasures, and so shamefully abused his wife, that for the grief thereof he poisoned her self. But he followed their heels apace; and firing a Gate of the City by night, entred soon enough to take revenge, by making a speedy riddance of them. For he spared none of his known, nor not his suspected enemies. After that, he grew so doubtfull of his life, as he never durst trust Barber to trim him, nor any person, no not so much as his brother, to enter into his chamber, unstript and searched. He was the greatest Robber of the people that ever reigned in any State, and withall the most unrespectively cruel.

After this, he separated with fortification that part of the City, called the Iland, from the rest; like as the Spaniard did the Citadell of *Antwerpe*: therein he lodged his Treasures, and his Guards.

He then began to make war upon the free Cities of *Sicil*: but while he lay before *Herbessa*, an in-land Town, the *Syracusians* rebelled against him; so as, with great difficulty he recovered his Citadell: from whence, having allured the old Souldiers of the Campanians, who forced their passage through the City, with one thousand and two hundred horse, he again recovered the mastery over the *Syracusians*. And when a multitude of them were busied in gathering in their harvest, he disarmed all the Towns-men remaining, and new strengthened the Fort of the Iland, with a double wall. He inclosed that part also, called *Epipoles*, which, with threecore thousand labourers, he finished within three weeks, being two leagues in compass. He then built two hundred new Gallies, and repaired one hundred and ten of the old; forged one hundred, and forty thousand Targets, with as many swords, and head-peeces, with fourteen thousand corslets, and all other suitable arms. Which done, he sent word to the *Carthaginians*, (greatly incensed by the plague) That except they would abandon the *Greek* Towns, which they held in *Sicil*, he would make war upon them: and, not staying for answer, he took the spoil of all the *Phœnician* ships, and merchandize, within his Ports; as King *Philip* the second did of our *English*, before the war in our late Queens time. He then goes to the field with fourcore thousand foot, and three thousand horse, and sends his brother *Leptines* to sea, with two hundred Gallies, and five hundred ships of burden. Most of the Towns which held for *Carthage* yielded unto him; saving *Panormus*, *Segesta* or *Egesta*, *Acyra*, *Motya*, and *Entella*. Of these, he first won *Motya* by assault, and put all therein to the sword; but before *Egesta* he lost a great part of his Army, by a fall of the Citizens. In the mean while *Himilco* arrives; but, ere he took land, he lost in a fight at Sea, with *Leptines*, fifty ships of war, and five thousand Souldiers, besides many ships of burden. This notwithstanding, he recovered again *Motya* upon his first descent. From thence marching towards *Messana*, he took *Lypara*, and (soon after) *Messana*, and razed it to the ground. Now began *Dionysius* greatly to doubt his estate. He therefore fortified all the places he could, in the Territory of the *Leontines*, by which he supposed that *Himilco* would passe toward *Syracuse*; and he himself took the field again, with four and thirty thousand foot, and one thousand horse. Now, hearing that *Himilco* had divided his Army into two parts, marching with the one half over-land, and sending *Mago* with the other by Sea: he sent *Leptines*, his brother to encounter *Mago*. But *Leptines* was utterly beaten by the *Carthaginians*; twenty thousand of his men were slain, and an hundred of his Gallies lost. It is very strange, and hardly credible, which yet good Authors tell us; That one City should be able to furnish five hundred sail of ships, and two hundred Gallies: (for, so many did *Syracuse* arme in this war) and more strange it is, that in a battail at Sea, without any great Artillery, or Musket-shot, twenty thousand should be slain in one fight. In all our fights against the *Turkes*, of which that at *Lepanto* was the most notable, we hear of no such number lost; nor in any other fight by Sea, that ever happened in our age, nor before us. When *Charles* the sixth went to besiege *Algier*, he had in all his fleet, transporters and others, but two hundred and fifty sail of ships, and threecore and five Gallies: for the furnishing of which fleet, he sought help from all the Cities and ports of *Spain*, *Naples*, and the rest of *Italy*. But in old times it was the manner to carry into the field, upon extremity, as many as were needfull, of all that could bear arms, giving them little wages, or other allowance: in our dayes it is not so; neither indeed, is it often requisite. Upon this overthrow, *Dionysius* postes away to *Syracuse*, to strengthen it: *Himilco* follows him, and besiegeth the Town by Land and Sea. But the Tyrant,

having received aid from the *Lacedemonians*, under the conduct of *Pharacides*, puts himself to Sea, to make provision for his Citizens, who, in his absence, take twenty of the *Carthaginian* Gallies, and sink four. Hereupon, finding their own successe prosperous, and that of the Tyrant exceeding ill, having also at the present weapons in their hands, they consult how to recover their liberty. And this they had done, had not *Pharacides* the *Lacedemonian* resisted them. It also fell out, to his excelling advantage, that the plague was so increased, and so violent among the *Carthaginians*, as it is said, that above an hundred thousand of them died thereof. He therefore, with the power that he could gather together, sets upon them both by Sea and Land; and having slain great numbers of them, forceth *Himilco* to desist peace. This peace *Dionysius* told him for a great sum of money; on condition, that he should steal away with his *Carthaginians* only: which he basely accepted, betraying the rest of the *Africans* and *Spaniards*. Yet no faith was kept with him: for he was pursued, and left many of his *Carthaginians* behind him. The rest of the *Africans* fell under the swords of their enemies; only the *Spaniards*, after they had a while bravely defended themselves, were (after their submission) entertained, and served the Conquerour.

Many such examples of perfidious dealing have I noted in other places, and can hardly forbear to deliver unto memory the like practices, when they meet with their matches: That which hapned unto *Monsieur de Piles*, was very suitable to this treachery, wherewith *Dionysius* pursued *Himilco*. I was present when *De Piles* related the injury done unto him. He had rendered *S. John d' Angeli* to the French King *Charles* the ninth, who besieged him therein. He rendered it, upon promise made by the faith of a King, that he should be suffered to depart in safety, with all his followers. Yet in presence of the King himself, of the Duke of *Anjou* his brother, General of his Army, of the Queen Mother, and of divers Dukes and Marshals of *France*, he was let upon and broken in his March; spoiled of all that he had, and forced to save his life by flight, leaving the most of his Souldiers dead upon the place, the Kings hand and faith warranting him to march away with ensigns displaid, and withall his goods and provisions, no whit availing him. It needs not therefore seem strange, that an Heathen Tyrant should thus break his faith, since Kings professing Christianity, are bold to do the like, or command their Captains to do it for them.

*Dionysius*, after this great victory, took care to re-edifie *Messena*. *Mago*, who stayed in *Sicil*, to hold up the *Carthaginians* therein, is again beaten by *Dionysius*; who is also beaten by the *Tauromenians*. A new supply of fourcore thousand Souldiers is sent from *Carthage* to *Mago*, but these take egges for their money, and make peace with *Dionysius*, leaving the *Sicilians* in *Tauromenium*, to shift for themselves: whom *Dionysius*, after a long siege, overcame, and gave their City to his mercenary Souldiers.

He then past into *Italy*, obtained divers victories there, brought the *Rhegians* on their knees, forced them to pay him one hundred and fourcore thousand crowns, to furnish him with threecore Gallies, and to put in an hundred pledges, for assurance of their future observance of covenants. This he did, not with any purpose to perform unto them the peace that they had so dearly bought; but that having taken from them their Gallies, he might besiege them, and ruine them utterly, with the more ease. Now to the end he might not, without some colour, falsifie the faith that he had given to them; he pretended to want victual for his Army, at such time as he seemed ready to depart out of *Italy*, and sent to them to furnish him the rewith, promising to return them the like quantity at his coming home to *Syracuse*.

His resolution was, that if they refused to furnish him, he would then make their refusal the cause of his quarrell: if they yielded to aid him with the proportion which he desired, that then they should not be able, for want of food, to endure a siege any long time against him. For, to ruine them he had fully determined, at what price soever. And great reason he had to take revenge of them, if he had done it fairly, and without breach of faith. For when in the beginning of his reign, he desired them to bestow a daughter of some of their Nobility upon him for a wife; they answered; that they had not any one fit for him, save the Hang-mans daughter. Princes do rather pardon ill deeds, than villanous words. *Alexander* the great forgave many sharp swords, but never any sharp tongues; no, though they told him but truly of his errors.

and certainly, it belongs to those that have warrant from God, to apprehend Princes, and to none else, especially in publick.

It is said, that *Henry* the fourth of *France*, had his heart more inflamed against the Duke of *Biron*, for his over-bold and biting taunts, that he used against him before *Amiens*, than for his conspiracy with the *Spaniard* or *Savoyan*: for he had pardoned ten thousand of such as had gone farther, & drawn their swords against him. The contemptuous words that Sir *John Parrey* used of our late Queen *Elizabeth*, were his ruine; and not the counterfeit letter of the *Romish* Priest produced against him. So fared it with some other, greater than he, that thereby ran the same, and a worse fortune, soon after.

To be short, he made them know new bread from old. He assaulted their Town on all sides, which he continued to doe eleven moneths, till he won it by force. He used his victory without mercy, specially against *Phyton*, who had commanded within it.

Some other wars he made with the *Carthaginians*, after the taking and razing of this City, and those with variable successe. For, as in one encounter he slue *Mago*, with ten thousand *Africans*: so the son of *Mago* beat him, and slue his brother *Leptines*, with fourteen thousand of his Souldiers. After which he bought his peace of the *Carthaginians*, as they had formerly done of him; following therein the advice of Prosperity and Adversity, as all Kings and States doe.

When he had reigned eight and thirty years, he died: some say in his bed, peaceably, which is the most likely, though others report it otherwise. A cruell man he was, and a faithlesse; a great Poet, but a foolish one. He entertained *Plato* a while, but afterward, for speaking against his tyranny, he gave order to have him slain, or sold for a slave. For he could endure no man that flattered him not beyond measure. His Parasites therefore stiled his cruelty, *The hate of evil men*; and his lawles slaughters, *The ornaments and effects of his justice*. True it is, that flatterers are a kind of vermine, which poyson all the Princes of the World; and yet they prosper better than the worthiest and valiantest men doe: and I wonder not at it, for it is a world; and as our Saviour *Christ* hath told us, *The World will love her own*.

To this *Dionysius* his son of the same name succeeded, and inherited both his Kingdom and his Vices. To win the love of the People, he pardoned, and released out of prison, a great number of persons, by his Father lockt up and condemned. Withall he remitted unto his Citizens divers payments, by his Father imposed upon them. Which done, and thereby hoping that he had fastned unto himself the peoples affections; he cast off the sheeps skin, and put on that of the wolf. For being jealous of his own Brethren, as men of more vertue than himself, he caused them all to be slain; and all the kindred that they had by their Mothers side. For *Dionysius* his Father (as hath been said) had two Wives; *Doris* of *Locris*, and *Aristomache* a *Syracusan*, the sister of *Dion*, which Brother-in-law of his he greatly enriched.

By *Doris* he had this *Dionysius*, who succeeded unto him: and by *Aristomache* he had two Sons and two Daughters, of which the elder, called *Sophrosine*, he gave in marriage to his eldest son, and her half-brother *Dionysius*; the younger, called *Arete*, he bestowed on his Brother *Theorides*: after whose death *Dion* took her to wife, being his Neece.

This *Dion*, a just and valiant man, finding that *Dionysius* had abandoned all exercise of vertue, and that he was wholly given over to sensuality, prevailed so much with *Plato*, whose Disciple he had been, as he drew him into *Sicily*, to instruct the young King. And having perswaded the King to entertain him, he wrought so well with him, as *Dionysius* began to change condition; to change Tyranny into Monarchy; and to hold the Principality that he had, rather by the love of his People, and his Nationall Lawes, than by the violence of his Guards and Garrisons. But this goodnesse of his lasted not long. For *Philistus* the Historian, and other his Parasites, that hated *Dions* severity, wrought him out of the Tyrants favour, and caused him soon after to be banished out of *Sicily*, to the great grief of the whole Nation. For whereas *Dion* had made offer to the King, either to compound the quarrels between him and the *Carthaginians*, of whom *Dionysius* stood in great fear; or (at least) if they refused it to furnish him with fifty Gallies at his own charge, during the war against them: his enemies found

found means, by sinister interpretation, to convert his good will into matter of treason. They told *Dionysius*, that all the great commendations, given of *Plato*, had tended to none other end, than to soften his mind, and to make him neglect his owne affairs, by the study of Philosophy: whilst *Dion* in the mean time having furnished fifty Gallies, under colour of the Kings service, had it in his own power either to deliver to the *Syracusians* their former liberty, or to make himself Lord and Sovereign of their State.

It is likely, that the honest and liberall offer which he made, to serve the King with so great a preparation, at his own charge, begot him many enemies. For they that had served the King for none other end than to raise and enrich themselves, and had already been raised and enriched, thought themselves bound to make the same offer that *Dion* had made, if the King had had the grace to conceive it aright. But the covetous and ignorant cowards, that had neither the knowledge, nor the daring that *Dion* had, were bold to stile his Love and Liberality, Pride and Presumption: and heartned the young King in his oppressing, and eating up his own people, of whose spoiles they themselves shared no small portion. I have heard it, That when *Charles* the fifth had the repulse at *Algier*, in *Africa*, *Ferdinando Cortes*, one of the bravest men that ever *Spain* brought forth, offered unto the Emperour, to continue the siege at his owne charge. But he had never good day after it. For they that envied his victories, and his conquest of *Mexico* in the *West-Indies*, perswaded the Emperour, that *Cortes* sought to value himself above him; and to have it said, that what the Emperour could not, *Cortes* had effected, and was therefore more worthy of the Empire, than he that had it.

When *Dion* was newly banished, the Tyrant was contented, at first to send him the revenues of his Lands, and permit him to dispose of his movables, at his own pleasure: nor without giving hope to recall him in short time. Had he continued in this good mood, like enough it is, that *Dion* would have been well pleased to live well, as he did, at *Athens*. But after some time, *Dionysius* made Port-sale of this Noble-mans goods, and thereby urged him to take another course, even to seek the restitution of his Countrey to liberty. The vertues of *Dion*, especially his great liberality, had purchased much love in *Greece*. This love made him suspected and hated of the Tyrant: but it stood him in good stead, when he sought to raise men, with whose help he might returne unto *Sicily*. Yet he got not above eight hundred (for he carryed the matter closely) to follow him in his adventure. But many of them were men of quality, and fit to be Leaders. Neither did he doubt of finding in *Syracuse*, as many as should be needfull, that would readily assist him. Therefore he landed boldly in *Sicily*, marched to *Syracuse*, entered the City without resistance; armed the multitude, and won all, save the Citadell.

*Dionysius* was then absent in *Italy*, but he quickly had advertisement of this daring generous accident. Wherefore he returned hastily to *Syracuse*: whence, after many vain treaties of peace, and some forcible attempts to recover the Town, he was faine to depart; leaving yet the Castle to the Custody of *Apollocrates* his eldest Sonne. Yet ere he went, his Minion *Philistus*, comming with a strength of men to assist him, was beaten, taken, and put to death by torment. But *Dion*, for the recovery of his Countreys liberty, had the same reward that all worthy men have had from popular Estates. He was disgraced, assaulted, and forced to abandon the City. He retired himselfe to the *Leontines*, who received him with great joy. Soon after his departure from *Syracuse*, new troupes enter the Castle: they fall out, assail, spoyle, and burn a great part of the City. *Dion* is sent for, with humble request: yet, ere he could arrive, *Dionysius* his Souldiers were retired; and the Towns-men thinking themselves secure, shut the gates against *Dion*. But the next night they of the Castle sally again, with greater fury than ever; they kill Man, Woman, and Child, and set fire in all parts of the Town. In this their extremity *Dion* comes the second time to their succour; the love of his Countrey surmounting all the injuries that he had received. He sets upon the Garrison of the Castle, with the one part of his Army; and quencheth the fire every where kindled, with the other part. In conclusion, after he had conquered both the fire and the sword, that had wel-near burnt to ashes, and depopulated *Syracuse*, he recovered the Castle, with the munition and furniture thereof, and sent *Apollocrates*

after *Dionysius* his Father, into *Italy*. But their malice, of whom he had best deserved, and whom he had loved most, gave an untimely end to his days. For he was soon after his victory, murdered by *Gylippus*; who after he had, with ill success, a while governed *Syracuse*, was slain with the same Dagger, with which he had murdered *Dion*.

Ten years after the death of *Dion*, *Dionysius*, with the assistance of his friends in *Italy*, recovers his estate, and returns to *Syracuse*, driving *Nysus* thence, whom he found Governour therein. The better sort of the Citizens, fearing more than ever, his cruelty, flee to *Ictes*, a *Syracusan* borne, and then ruling the *Leontines*. *Ictes* enters into confederacy with the *Carthaginians*, hoping by their assistance, not only to prevail against *Dionysius*, but by the hatred of the *Syracusians* towards *Dionysius*, to make him also Lord of their City. The *Syracusians*, being desperately afflicted on all sides, send to the *Carinthians* for succour. *Ictes* also sends thither, and dissuades the *Carinthians*, as well as he can, from intermeddling in the business. He tells them, by his Messengers, That he had entered into league with the *Carthaginians*, who were so strong by Sea, that it was not in the power of *Corinth*, to land an Army in *Sicil*. But the *Carinthians*, being by this treason of *Ictes*, more enraged than dissuaded, sent *Timoleon* with nineteen Gallies, to deliver *Syracuse* from tyranny. In the mean while, *Ictes* had entred *Syracuse*, and with the help of the *Carthaginians*, driven *Dionysius* into the Castle, where he besieged him.

*Ictes*, being himself a Tyrant in *Leontium*, rather fought how to enlarge his power, than how to deliver his Countrey. Therefore, hearing that *Timoleon* was arrived at *Rhegium*, he sent to persuade him, to return his fleet; for that all things were (in effect) established in *Sicil*. The *Carthaginian* Gallies were also in the same Port of *Rhegium*, whose Captains advised *Timoleon* to get him gone in peace. They had far more Gallies there than he had, and were like to compell him, if he would not be persuaded. *Timoleon*, finding himself over-mattered, makes request to the *Carthaginian* Captaines, that they would be pleased to enter into *Rhegium*, and there, in an open assembly of the people, to deliver unto him those arguments, for his return, which they had used to him in private; that he might, by publick testimony, discharge himself to the Senate of *Corinth*.

The *Carthaginians*, persuading themselves, that a victory obtained by a few fair words, was without loss, and far more easie, than that of many blowes, and wounds, yeelded to *Timoleons* desire. But while the Orations were delivering, *Timoleon*, favoured by the *Rhegiens*, stole out of the prease, and having set sail, before the Gates were opened to the *Carthaginians*, he recovered the Port of *Taurumentum*, where he was joyfully received by *Andromachus* the Governor. From thence he marched toward *Adranum*, where surprising *Ictes* his Army, he slew a part thereof, and put the rest to run. It is the nature of victory to beget friends. The *Adranians* joyned with him, and so did *Mamercus*, the Tyrant of *Catana*. *Dionysius* also sent to *Timoleon*, offering to surrender the Castle of *Syracuse* into his hands, as thinking it better to yeeld up himself, and the places which he could not defend, unto the *Carinthians*, than either to *Ictes*, whom he disdained, or to the *Carthaginians*, whom he hated. Now *Timoleon*, who, within fifty daies after his arrivall, had recovered the Castle of *Syracuse*, and sent *Dionysius* to *Corinth*, to live there a private man, was still invaded by the armies, and molested by the practices of *Ictes*. For he besieged the *Carinthians* within the castle of *Syracuse*, and attempted (but in vain) the murder of *Timoleon*.

The *Carinthians* send unto *Timoleon* a supply of two thousand foot, and two hundred horse, which are stayed in *Italy* by foule weather. *Ictes* is strengthened with threecore thousand *Africans*, brought unto him by *Mago* (all which he lodgeth within *Syracuse*) and with an hundred and fifty Gallies, to keep the Port. This was the first time that ever the *Carthaginians* had dominion within the wals of that City. With this great Army *Ictes* assaileth the Castle. *Timoleon* sends them victuals, and succour, in small boats, by night, from *Catana*. *Mago* and *Ictes* do therefore resolve to besiege *Catana*; but they were no sooner on their way towards it, with part of their forces, than *Leon*, Captain of the *Corinthians*, called out of the Castle, and took that part of *Syracuse*, called *Acradina*, which he fortified.

In the mean while, the two thousand *Corinthians* arrive: with whom, and two thousand other Souldiers, *Timoleon* marched toward *Syracuse*. *Mago* abandoneth *Ictes* being

being frightened out of *Sicil* (which he might easily have conquered, with an idle rumour of treason. This made him returne to *Carthage*; where the generall exclamation against his cowardize, did so much affright him, that for fear of further punishment he hanged himself. *Timoleon* enters the City, and beats down the Castle (which he called the nest of Tyrants) to the ground. But he found the City, when the strangers were fled, in effect desolate; so as their horses did feed on the grafs growing in the market-place. Therefore he writes to *Corinth* for people to re-inhabit it. Ten thousand are sent out of *Greece*; many come from *Italy*; others from other parts of the Island.

But a new storm ariseth. *Asdrubal* and *Amilcar*, *Carthaginians*, arrive about *Lilybaum*, with threecore and ten thousand Souldiers, transported (with all their provisions) in a thousand ships of burden, and two hundred Gallies. *Timoleon* marcheth thither, and chargeth this great Army upon the passage of a River.

A tempest of rain, hail, and lightning, with boisterous windes, beating upon the faces of the *Carthaginians*, they are utterly broken, ten thousand slain, five thousand taken, with all their carriages and provisions: among which there were found a thousand corslets guilt and graven. After this, *Timoleon* gave an overthrow to *Ictes*, & following his victory, took him, with his son *Eupolemus*, and the Generall of his horse, prisoners; whom he caused all to be slain: and afterwards (which was imputed to him for great cruelty) he suffered *Ictes* his wives & daughters to be put to death. But this was the revenge of God upon *Ictes*, who (after the murder of *Dion*) had caused *Arete*, *Dions* wife, and a young child of his, with *Arifemache* his sister, to be cast into the Sea.

He again prevailed against *Mamercus* Tyrant of *Catana*, and won *Catana* it self. *Mamercus* fled to *Hippon* Tyrant of *Messena*: but *Timoleon*, pursuing him, won the town; delivering *Hippon* to his Citizens, who tormented him to death. The same end had *Mamercus*, and all other the Tyrants in *Sicil*.

Finally, he made peace with the *Carthaginians*, on condition that they should not passe the River of *Lycus*. After this, he lived in great honour among the *Syracusians*, till his death; and was solemnly buried by them in the Market-place of their City: the day of his Funerals being for ever ordained to be kept holy among them.

After such time as *Timoleon* had delivered *Syracuse* from the tyranny of *Dionysius*, and brought peace to the whole Island; the Inhabitants enjoyed their liberty in peace, about twenty years. The Cities and Temples were repaired; the Trade renewed; the Merchant sailed in safety; and the Labouring men enjoyed the fruits of the earth in quiet. But it was impossible that a Nation which neither knew how to govern, nor how to obey, which could neither endure Kings, nor men worthy to be Kings, to govern them; should any long time subsist.

Twenty years after the death of *Timoleon*, there started up one *Agathocles* among them, a man of base birth, and of baser condition, who from a Begger, to a common Souldier; from a Souldier to a Captain; and so from degree to degree, rising to be a Prætor; finally, became Lord and Sovereigne of the *Syracusians*. Many fortunes he ran, and under-went as many dangers, ere he obtained the principality. For he had more than once attempted it, and was therein both beaten and banished. A passing valiant man he was, and did notable service, as well for those by whom he was employed, as also for the *Syracusians*, and against them. For in their wars against those of *Enna*, and the *Campanes*, he did them memorable service: and on the contrary, as memorable service for the *Murgantines* against the *Syracusians*. For being entertained by the people of *Murgantia*, and made Generall of their forces, he sackt *Leontium*; and besieged *Syracuse* so straightly, that the Citizens were driven to crave aid, even from their ancient and naturall enemies, the *Carthaginians*. *Amilcar* was sent by the *Carthaginians* to relieve *Syracuse*. With him *Agathocles* wrought so well, that he got him to make peace between himself and the *Syracusians*; binding himself by promise and oath to remain a friend and servant to the State of *Carthage*, for ever after. *Amilcar* entertained the business, and compounded the quarrels between *Agathocles* and the *Syracusians*. *Agathocles* is chosen Prætor; he entertains five thousand *Africans*, and divers old Souldiers of the *Murgantines*, under colour of a purpose to besiege *Herbita*. With these, and with the assistance of the poor and discontented *Syracusians* (the City also being divided into many factions) he assails the Senators, kills all his enemies and opposites;

divides the spoils of the rich among the poor; and gives liberty to his Souldiers, to rob, to ravish, and to murder, for two whole dayes and nights, without controulement: the third day, when they had blunted their barbarous appetites, and strewd the streets with ten thousand dead carcases, besides those that had broken their necks over the walls, their fury had no further subject to work on:

*Agathocles*, in an assembly of the people (being an eloquent knave) perswaded them, that, for the violent gifts, by which the commonwealth was utterly consumed, he found no better, than the violent remedies which he had administred; and that he affected no other thing than the reducing of the state from an Oligarchy, or the rule of a few tyrannous Magistrates, to the ancient and indifferent Democracy, by which it had been governed, from the first institution, with so great glory and prosperity. This he did, to have the Crown clapt on his head (as it were) perforce. For, as he knew that he had left none living, within the City, fit, nor able, to exercise the office of a Magistrate: so he knew he right well, that all they which had assisted in the murder and spoil of their fellow Citizens, had no other hope of defence, than the support of a lawless Lord, who had been partaker with them in their villanies and cruelties committed. So as this rabble, his Oration ended, proclaimed him King: again and again saluting and adoring him, by that name, as if it had been given to him by some lawfull election. Hence had our King *Richard* the third a piece of his pattern; but the one was of base, the other of Kingly parents; the one took liberty from a common-weal, the other fought only to succeed in a Monarchy; the one continued his cruelty to the end, the other, after he had obtained the Crown, fought, by making good laws, to recover the love of his people.

The life of this Tyrant is briefly written by *Jussine*; more largely and particularly by *Diodorus Siculus*: the summe whereof is this. The same *Amilcar* that had brought him into *Syracuse*, and that had lent him five thousand men to help in the massacre of the Citizens, was also content to wink at many wrongs, that he did unto the Confederates of the *Carthaginians*. It was the purpose of *Amilcar*, to settle *Agathocles* in his tyranny, and to let him vex and waste the whole Island: because it was thereby like to come to pass, that he should reduce all *Sicily* into such terms as would make it become an easie prey to *Carthage*. But when the Cities, confederate with the *Carthaginians*, sent 30 their Embassadors, with complaint of this ill dealing, to *Carthage*; the *Punic* faith (so much taunted by the *Romans*, as no better than meer falshood) shewed it self very honourable in taking order for the redress. Embassadors were sent to comfort the *Sicilians*, and to put *Agathocles* in mind of his covenants; *Amilcar* was recalled home into *Africk*, and a new Captain appointed to succeed in his charge, with such forces, as might compell *Agathocles* to reason, if otherwise he would not hearken to it. All this tended to save their Confederates, from suffering such injuries in the future. For that which was past (since it could not be recalled) they took order to have it severely punished. *Amilcar* was accused secretly, and by way of scrutiny: the suffrages being given, but not calculated; and so reserved until he should return. This was not so closely handled, 40 but that *Amilcar* had soon notice of it. In managing his business with *Agathocles*, it is likely that he had an eye to his own profit, as well as to the publick benefit of his Country. For he had made such a composition with the *Syracusans*, as gave him not only means to weaken others, but to strengthen himself, both in power and authority, even against the *Carthaginians*. Such is commonly the custome of those, that hope to work their own ends by cunning practices, thinking to deal subtly and finely, they spin their threads so small, that they are broken with the very wind. *Amilcar* saw, that his *Carthaginians* had a purpose to deal substantially; and that therefore it would be hard for him, to make them follow his crooked devices: which if he could not doe, it was to be expected, that their anger would break out into so much the greater extremity, by how much the more they had concealed it. Therefore he followed the example, which some of his foregoers had taught him; and, for fear of such a death as the Judges might award him, he ended his own life in what sort he thought best. This desperation of *Amilcar* served to inform *Agathocles* of the *Carthaginians* intent. He saw they would not be eluded with words, and therefore resolved to get the start of them in action. He dissimuled no longer; but, in stead of spoils and robbery, made open war upon all their Adherents. He had made the better part of *Sicily* his own, ere the

*Carthaginian*

*Carthaginian* forces arrived: which thinking to have incouraged an ill-established Tyrant, found him ready, as a King, to defend his own, and give them sharp entertainment. They were beaten by him; and their Navie was so Tumpelt-beaten, that they could neither doe good by Land, nor Sea, but were glad to leave their business undone, and returne into *Africk*.

The *Carthaginians* prepare a new fleet: which being very gallantly manned and furnished, was broken by foule weather, and the best part of it cast away, even whilst it was yet within kenning of their City. But *Amilcar*, the son of *Gisco*, gathering together the remainders of his ship-wrack, was bold to passe over into *Sicily*, and landed not far 10 from *Gela*; where *Agathocles* was soon ready to examine the cause of their coming. Many skirmishes passed between them, in which (commonly) the *Syracusans* had the better. But his good success begat presumption; whereby he lost a battell more important than all the other fights. One adverse chance is enough to overthrow the state of a Tyrant; if it be not upheld by great circumspection. The war was soon transferred to the walls of *Syracuse*, within which *Agathocles* was closed up, and driven to make his last defence by their help, who may be judged to have loved him not very greatly. But the Inhabitants of *Syracuse*, after that great Massacre of the principal men, made in the beginning of this new Tyranny, were (for the most part) such, as had been either mercenary Souldiers, enfranchised slaves, or base and needy people; helpers in establishing 20 the present Government, and Executioners of the murders, and spoyle committed in that change. If there were any other (as some there were) they were so well observed, and (withall) so fearfull, that they durst not stir. But it was enough that they all agreed in the common defence of themselves and their City. Famine was likely to grow upon them, and inforce them to change their resolution. In this necessity *Agathocles* adventured upon a strange course, which the event commended as wise. He imbarqued as many as he thought meet, in those vessels that rode in the Haven; and committing the government of the City to his brother *Antander*, willed the people to be of good courage, for that (as he told them) he had bestowed himself of a mean, both to raise the siege, and to repair all other losses. A *Carthaginian* fleet lay in the mouth of the Ha- 30 ven, both to hinder the entrance of victuallers, and to keep the besieged from issuing forth.

Now, at such time as *Agathocles* was ready to depart, advertisement came, that many ships of burden, laden with corn, and other provisions, were drawing near unto *Syracuse*. To intercept these the *Carthaginians* hoise sail, and lanch forth into the deep. They were not far gone, when they might behold *Agathocles* issuing forth of the Port, with purpose (as they thought) to give convoy unto his victuallers. Hereupon they wheele about, and make amain toward him, as thinking him the better booty. He neither abode their coming, nor fled back into the City, but made all speed towards *Africk*; and was pursued by the *Carthaginians*, as long as the day would give them light. 40 In the mean season the victuallers were gotten to *Syracuse*; which was the more plentifully relieved by their coming, for that *Agathocles* had unburdened the place of no small number. When the *Carthaginian* admiral perceived, first, that by pursuing two fleets at once, he had misfed of them both; and secondly, that *Agathocles* returned not again, but was gone to seek his fortune elsewhere, he thought it good to pursue those that were fled, and to attend so well upon them, that they should not have leisure to do mischief in some other part.

The *Carthaginian* Navie followed *Agathocles* (whether by chance, or by relation of such as had met with him at Sea) directly towards *Africk*, and overtook him after sixe dayes. He had (at the first) a great start of them, so that (belike) they rowed hard, and 50 wearied themselves in seeking their own misfortune: for he sought with them, and beat them; and, having sunk or taken many, drove the rest to flye which way they could, laden with such strange tidings of his voyage.

When *Agathocles* had landed his men in *Africk*, then did he discover unto them his project, letting them understand, that there was no better way to divert the *Carthaginians*, not only from *Syracuse*, but from all the Ile of *Sicily*, than by bringing the war to their own doors. For here (said he) they have many that hate them, and that will readily take arms against them, as soon as they perceive that there is an Army on foot, which dares to look upon their walls. Their Townes are ill fortified, their people untrained, and



and experienced in dangers, the mercenary forces, that they levy in these parts, will rather follow us than them, if we offer greater wages than they can give: which we may better promise and make good, by letting him have some share with us in all the wealth of the *Carthaginians*, than our enemies can do, by making some addition to their stipends. Thus he talked, as one already Master of all the riches in *Africk*; and with many brave words encouraged his men so well, that they were contented to set fire on all their ships (reserving one or two to use as Messengers) to the end that no hope should remain, save only in victory. In this heat of resolution, they win by force two Cities; which after they had thoroughly sacked, they burnt to the ground: as a mark of terror to all that should make resistance. The *Carthaginians* hearing this, are amazed; thinking that *Amilcar* is broken, and his whole Army destroyed in *Sicil*. This impression so dismaies them, that when they know the truth of all, by such as had escaped in the late Sea fight, yet still they fear, and know not what. They suspect *Amilcar's* faith, who had suffered *Agathocles* to land in *Africk*; they suspected their principal Citizens at home, of a meaning to betray *Carthage* unto the enemy; they raise a great Army, and know not to whose charge they may safely commit it.

There were at that time two famous Captains in the City, *Hanno* and *Bomilcar*, great enemies, and therefore the more unlikely to conspire against the common wealth. These are made Generals of the Army levied, which far exceeded the forces of *Agathocles*. But it seldom happens, that dissension between Commanders produceth any fortunate event. Necessity drove *Agathocles* to fight: and the courage of his men, resolved to deal with the whole multitude of the *Carthaginians*, made easie the victory against the one halfe of them. For *Bomilcar* would not stir, but suffered *Hanno* to be cut in pieces.

The reputation of this great victory, brought over a King of the *Africans*, from the *Carthaginian* society, to take part with *Agathocles*: who pursuing his victory, winneth many Towns, and sends word to *Syracuse* of his good success. The *Carthaginians* also send into *Sicil*, willing *Amilcar*, their General, to succour the State of *Africk*, which was in danger to be lost, whilst he was travelling in the conquest of *Sicil*. *Amilcar* sends them five thousand men: all his forces he thought it not needfull to transport; as hoping rather to draw *Agathocles* back into *Sicil*, than to be drawn home by one, that could scarce retain his own Kingdom. But these good hopes had a bad issue. He spent some time in winning a few Towns that adhered unto the *Syracusians*: and having brought his matters to some good order, he conceived a sudden hope of taking *Syracuse* by surprise. It was a pretty (though tragically) accident, if it were true, as *Tullie* relates it. *Amilcar* had a dream which told him that he should sup the next day within *Syracuse*. His fancy begot this dream, and he verily beleaved it. He made more haste than good speed toward the City: and coming upon it on the sudden, had good hope to carry it. But his enemies were prepared for him, and had laid an ambush to intrap him, whereinto he fell. So he was carried prisoner into the City; in which it was likely that he had no great cheer to his supper: for they struck off his head, and sent it into *Africk* (a welcome present) to *Agathocles*.

This good success of things at home, did put such courage into the *Sicilian* Army, that *Agathocles* was bold to wear a Crown, and stile himself King of *Africk*. He had allured *Ophellas*, King of the *Cyrenians*, to take his part, by promises to deliver the Country into his hands: for that (as he said) it was sufficient unto himself to have diverted the *Carthaginians* from *Sicil*, wherein (after this war ended) he might reign quietly. *Ophellas* came with a great Army, and was friendly entertained. But the traitorous *Sicilian*, taking an advantage, did murder this his assistant; and afterwards by good words, and great promises, drew all the *Cyrenian* Army to follow him in his Wars. Thus his villany found good success; and he so prevailed in *Africk*, that he got leisure to make a step into *Sicil*. Many Towns in *Sicil* had embraced a desire of recovering their liberty; thinking it high time to fight at length for their own freedom, after that they had so long been exposed, (as a reward of victory) either unto Aliens, or to Tyrants of their owne country. These had prevailed far, and gotten many to take their parts, as in a common cause: when the coming of *Agathocles* abated their high spirits, and his good success in many fights, compelled them to Obedience. Out of

*Sicil*

*Sicil* he returned into *Africk*, where his affairs stood in very bad terms. *Archagathus*, his sonne had lost a battell; and (which was worse) had ill means to help himself: his Army being in mutiny for lack of pay. But *Agathocles* pacified the tumult, by the accustomed promises of great booty and spoyle. It had now been time for him to offer peace to the *Carthaginians*: which to obtain, they would (questionlesse) have given to him, both money enough to pay his army, and all that they then held in *Sicil*. For their City had been distressed, not only by this war; but by the treason of *Bomilcar*, who failed not much of making himself Tyrant over them. But ambition is blind. *Agathocles* had all his thoughts fixed upon the conquest of *Carthage* it self: out of which dream he was awaked, by the losse of a battell, not so memorable in regard of any accident therein, as of the strange events following it. The *Carthaginians*, after their great misfortunes in this war, had renewed their old sacrifices of children to *Saturne*: from which they had abstained ever since they made peace with *Gelon*. And now they made choice of some; the goodliest of their prisoners, taken in the battell, to offer unto the said Idoll, in way of thankfulness for their victory. The fire, with which these unhappy men were consumed, caught hold upon the lodgings nearest unto the Altar; and spreading it self farther through the Campe, with the destruction of many men, caused such a tumult as is usuall in the like cases. At the same time, the like accident of fire burnt up the Pavillion of *Agathocles*. Hereupon both the Armies fled away, each of them beleiving, that the noise in the adverse Campe, was a signe of the enemies coming to invade it. But the *Carthaginians* had a safe retreat: *Agathocles*, by a second error, fell into a new calamity. In the beginning of this his flight in the dark, he met with his own *African* Souldiers; and thinking them to be enemies, (as indeed the one half of them had revolted from him, to the *Carthaginians*; in the last battell) he began to assail them, and was so stoutly resisted, that he lost in this blinde fight above four thousand of his men. This did so discourage his proud heart, that, being fallen from the neer hope of taking the City of *Carthage*, unto some distrust of his own safety, he knew no more how to moderate his present weak fears, than lately he had known how to govern his ambition. Therefore he took the way that came next into his head; which was, to steal closely a-board his ships, with his younger son (the elder he suspected of Incest, and of Ambition) and so to flye into *Sicil*; thinking it the best course to shift for himself, as wanting vessels wherein to transport his Army. His elder son *Archagathus*, perceiving his drift, arrested him and put him under custody: but by means of a sudden tumult, he was let loose, escaped, and fled alone, leaving both his sonnes behind him. His flight being noyed through the Army, all was in uproar; and extremity of rage caused not only the common Souldier, but even such as had been friends to the Tyrant, to lay hold upon his two sons, and kill them. That this flight of *Agathocles* was extremely base, I need not use words to prove: That his fear was truly, as all fear is said to be, a passion, depriving him of the succours which reason offered, the sequell doth manifest. His forsaken Souldiers, being now a headless company, and no longer an Army to be feared, obtained nevertheless a reasonable composition from the *Carthaginians*: to whom they sold those places, whereof they had possession, for nineteen talents. Likewise, *Agathocles* himself, having lost his Army, did nevertheless, by the reputation of this late war, make peace with *Carthage* upon equal termes.

After this, the Tyrant being delivered from forain enemies, discovered his bloudy nature, in most abominable cruelties, among the *Sicilians*. His wants and his fears, urged him so violently, that he was not satisfied with the spoiles of the rich, or the death of those whom he held suspected: but in a beastly rage depopulated whole Cities. He devised new engines of torment; wherein striving to exceed the Bull of *Phalaris*, he made a frame of brass, that should serve to scorch mens bodies, and whichall gave him leave to behold them in their misery. So devilish is the nature of man, when reason, that should be his guide, is become a slave to his brutish affections. In these mischiefs he was so outrageous, that he neither spared Sexe, nor Age; especially, when he was informed of the slaughter of his children in *Africk*. But this was not the way to preserve his estate: he threw him into new dangers. They whom he had chased out of their Country took armes against him, and drove him into such fear, that he was faine to seek the love at *Carthage*, which by ruling well he might have had in *Sicil*. He freely delivered

livered into the *Carthaginians* hands, all those Towns of the *Phœnicians* in *Sicily*, belonging unto them, which were in his possession. They requited him honourably, with great store of corne, and with four hundred talents of gold and silver. So (though not without much trouble & hazard) he prevailed against the Rebels, and seized his estate. Having no further business left in *Sicily*, he made a voyage into *Italy*. There he subdued the *Bruttians*, rather by terror of his name than by any force, for they yielded at his first coming. This done, he went to the Isle of *Lipara*, and made the Inhabitants buy peace with one hundred talents of gold. But when he had gotten this great summe, he would needs exact a greater, and finding plainly that they had no more left, he was bo'd to spoyle the Temples of their gods. Herein (me thinks) he did well enough. For how could he beleieve those to be gods, that had continually given deaf ears to his horrible perjuries? Then he returned richly home, with eleven ships loaden with gold: all which, and all the rest of his fleet, were cast away by foul weather at Sea; one Gally excepted, in which he himself escaped, to suffer a more miserable end. A grievous sicknesse fell upon him, that rotted his whole body, spreading it self through all his veins and sinews. Whilest he lay in this case, all desiring his end, save only *Theogenia* (a wife that he had taken out of *Egypt*) and her small children: his Nephew, the sonne of *Archagathus*, before mentioned, and a younger sonne of his own, began to contend about the Kingdome. Neither did they seek so end the controversie by the old Tyrants decision; they regarded him not so much. But each of them laid wait for the others life: wherein the Nephew sped so well, that he slew his Uncle, and got his grandfather's Kingdome, without asking any leave. These tydings wounded the heart of *Agathocles* with fear and sorrow. He saw himself without help, like to become a prey to his ungracious Nephew, from whom he knew that no favour was to be expected, either by himself, or by those, whom only he now held dear, which were *Theogenia* and her children. Therefore he advised her and them to fly before they were surpris'd: for that otherwise they could by no means avoid, either death, or somewhat that would be worse. He gave them all his treasures and goods, wherewith he even compelled them (weeping to leave him desolate in so wretched a case) to imbarke themselves hastily, and make speed into *Egypt*. After their departure, whether he threw himself into the fire, or whether his disease consumed him, there was none left that cared to attend him; but he ended his life as basely, as obscurely, and in as much want as he first began it.

After the death of *Agathocles* it was, that the *Mamertines*, his Souldiers, traitorously occupied *Messana*, and infested a great part of the Iland. Then also did the *Carthaginians* begin to renew their attempts of conquering all *Sicily*. What the Nephew of *Agathocles* did, I cannot find. Likely it is that he quickly perished. For the *Sicilians* were driven to send for *Pyrrhus* to help them, who had married with a daughter of *Agathocles*. But *Pyrrhus* was soon weary of the Country (as hath been shewed before) & therefore left it; prophesying that it would become a goodly champion field, wherein *Rome* and *Carthage* should fight for superiority. In which businessse, how these two great Cities did speed, the order of our story will declare.

## S. V.

A recontinuation of the Roman war in Sicily. How Hieron, King of Syracuse, sought the *Carthaginians*, and made his peace with Rome.

When *Appian Claudius*, following the advantage of his victory gotten at *Messana*, brought the war unto the Gates of *Syracuse*, and besieged that great City, *Hieron* found it high time for him to seek peace: knowing that the *Carthaginians* had neither any reason to be offended with him, for helping himself by what means he could, when they were not in case to give him assistance; and foreseeing withall, that when once he had purchased his quiet from the *Romans*, it would be free for him to sit still, without fear of molestation, whilest *Rome* and *Carthage* were fighting for the mastery. In this good mood the new Roman Consuls *M. Valerius*, and *C. Octavius* found him, and readily embraced the offer of his friendship. Yet they made

use of their present advantage, and sold him peace for an hundred (some say two hundred) Talents.

These Consuls had brought a great Army into *Sicily*: yet did they nothing else in effect, than bring over *Hiero* to their side. If the *Syracusan* held them busied (which I find not, otherwise than by circumstances, as, by the summe of money imposed upon him, and by their performing none other piece of service) all the while time of their abode in the Iland; then was his departure from the friendship of *Carthage*, no lesse to his honour than it was to his commodity. For by no reason could they require, that he should suffer his own Kingdome to run into manifest perill of subversion, for their sakes that should have received all the profit of the victory: seeing they did expose him to the whole danger, without straining themselves to give him relief. But the *Carthaginians* had lately made good proof of the strength of *Syracuse*, in the dayes of *Agathocles*: and therefore knew, that it was able to bear a very strong siege. And hereupon it is like that they were the more slack, in sending help: if (perhaps) it were not some part of their desire, that both *Rome* and *Syracuse* should weaken one the other, whereby their owne work might be the easier against them both. Yet indeed, the case of the besieged City was not the same, when the *Romans* lay before it, as it had been when the *Carthaginians* attempted it. For there was great reason to try the uttermost hazard of war against the *Carthaginians*, who fought no other thing than to bring it into slavery: not so against the *Romans*, who thought it sufficient if they could withdraw it from the party of their enemies. Besides, it was not all one to be governed by *Agathocles*, or by *Hiero*. The former of these cared not what the Citizens endured, so long as he might preserve his own tyranny: the latter, as a just and good Prince, had no greater desire than to win the love of his people by seeking their commodity; but including his own felicity within the publick, laboured to uphold both, by honest and faithful dealing. Hereby it came to pass that he enjoyed a long and happy reign, living dear to his own Subjects, beloved of the *Romans*, and not greatly molested by the *Carthaginians*; whom, either the consideration, that they had left him to himself, ere he left their society, made unwilling to seek his ruine; or their more earnest businessse with the *Romans*, made unable to compass it.

## S. V. I.

How the Romans besiege and win Agrigentum. Their beginning to maintain a fleet. Their first losse, and first victory by sea. Of sea-fight in general.

*Hieron*, having sided himself with the *Romans*, aideth them with victuals and other necessaries: so that they, presuming upon his assistance, recall some part of their forces. The *Carthaginians* finde it high time to besittre them; they send to the *Ligurians*, and to the troups they had in *Spain*, to come to their aid; who being arrived, they made the City of *Agrigentum* the seat of the war, against the *Romans*, filling it with all manner of munition.

The Roman Consuls, having made peace with *Hieron*, return into *Italy*; and in their places, *Lucius Posthumus* and *Quintus Mamilius* arrive. They go on towards *Agrigentum*: and finding no enemy in the field, they besiege it, though it were stuffed with fifty thousand Souldiers. After a while, the time of harvest being come, a part of the Roman Army range the Countrey to gather corne, and thole at the siege grow negligent; the *Carthaginians* fallly furiously, and indanger the Roman Army, but are in the end repelled into the town with great losse; but by the smart felt on both sides, the Assailants redoubled their guards, and the besieged kept within their covert. Yet the about the walls; and it had sometimes in it eight hundred thousand inhabitants. This City, by reason of the fertility of the soyle, and the neighbourhood of *Carthage*, grew in a short space from small beginnings, to great glory and riches. The plenty and luxury thereof was so great, as it caused *Empedocles* to cry, that the *Agrigentines* built Palaces of such immensity, as if they meant to live for ever; and made such feasts, as if they meant to dye the next day. But their greatness, pomp and magnificence, was in their goodly temples, and theatres, water-conduits, & fill-ponds: the ruines whereof at this day are sufficient arguments, that *Rome* is self could never boast of the like. In the Porch of the temple of *Jupiter Olympius*, (by which we may judge of the Temple it self) there was set out on one side the full proportion of the Giants, fighting with the gods, all cut out in polished marble of divers colours; work the most magnificent and rare that ever hath been seen: on the other side the warre of *Troy*, and thereunto which happened at that siege; with the personages of the Heroes that were doers in that war; all of the like beautifull done, and of equall stature to the bodies of those men in ancient times. In comparison of which, the latter works of that kind, are but petty things, and meer trifles. It would require a volume to expresse the magnificence of the Temples of *Hercules*, *Asculapius*, *Concordia*, *Juno*, *Lucina*, *Chastitie*, *Proserpina*, *Cassio*, & *Vulcan*, wherein the Master-pieces of those exquisite Painters and Carvers *Phidias*, *Zeuxis*, *Myron*, & *Polyctetes*, were to be seen. But in procees of time ran the same fortune that all other great Cities have done, and was ruined by divers calamities of war: whereof this war present, brought unto it not the least.

*Romans*, the better to assure themselves, cut a deep trench between the walls of the City and their Camp: and another on the out-side thereof; that neither the *Carthaginians* might force any suddenly, by a sally, nor those of the Country without break upon them unawares: which double defence kept the besieged also from the receiving any relief of victuals, and munitions, whilst the *Syracusan* supplies the assailants with what they want. The besieged send for succour to *Carthage*, after they had been in this fort up five moneths. The *Carthaginians* imbarke an Army, with certain Elephants, under the command of *Hanno*, who arrives with it at *Heraclea*, to the West of *Agrigentum*. *Hanno* put himself into the field, and surpriseth *Erbessus*, a City wherein the *Romans* had bestowed all their provision. By means hereof, the famine without grew to be as great, as it was within *Agrigentum*; and the *Roman* Camp no less straightly assieged by *Hanno*, than the City was by the *Romans*: insomuch, as if *Hieron* had not supplied them, they had been forced to abandon the siege. But seeing that this distresse was not enough to make them rise, *Hanno* determined to give them battell. To which end departing from *Heraclea*, he makes approach unto the *Roman* Camp. The *Romans* resolve to sustain him, and put themselves in order. *Hanno* directs the *Numidian* horsemen to change the Vanguard, to the end to draw them further on; which done, he commands them to returne as broken, till they came to the body of the Army, that lay shadowed behinde some rising ground. The *Numidians* performe it accordingly; and while the *Romans* pursued the *Numidians*, *Hanno* gives upon them, and having slaughtered many, beats the rest into their Trenches.

After this encounter, the *Carthaginians* made no other attempt for two moneths, but lay strongly encamped, waiting until some opportunity should invite them. But *Annibal* that was besieged in *Agrigentum*, as well by signs as messengers, made *Hanno* know how ill the extremity which he endured, was able to brook such dilatory courses. *Hanno* thereupon, a second time, provoked the Consuls to fight: But his Elephants being disordered by his own Vanguard, which was broken by the *Romans*, he lost the day: and with such as escaped, he recovered *Heraclea*. *Annibal* perceiving this, and remaining hopelesse of succour, resolved to make his own way. Finding therefore that the *Romans*, after this dayes victory, wearied with labour, and secured by their good fortune, kept negligent watch in the night; he rusht out of the Town, with all the remainder of his Army, and past by the *Roman* camp without resistance. The Consuls pursue him in the morning, but in vain: sure they were, that he could not carry the City with him, which with little a-doe the *Romans* entred, and pitifully spoiled. The *Romans*, proud of this victory, pursued rather to follow the direction of their present good fortunes, than their first determinations. They had resolved in the beginning of this War, only to succour the *Mamertines*, and to keep the *Carthaginians* from their own coasts: but now they determine to make themselves Lords of all *Sicily* and from thence, being favoured with the winde of good successe, to sail over into *Africk*. It is the discale of Kings, of States, and also of private men, to covet the greatest things, but not to enjoy the least; the desire of that which we neither have nor need, taking from us the true use and fruition of what we have already. This curse upon mortall men, was never taken from them since the beginning of the World unto this day.

To prosecute this War, *Lucius Valerius* and *Titus Octavilius*, two new Consuls, are sent into *Sicily*. Whereupon, the *Romans* being Masters of the field, many in land towns gave themselves unto them. On the contrary, the *Carthaginians* keeping still the Lordship of the Sea, many maritime places became theirs. The *Romans* therefore, as well to secure their own coasts, often invaded by the *African* fleets, as well to equall themselves in every kind of warfare with their enemies, determine to make a fleet. And herein fortune favoured them with this accident, that being altogether ignorant in ship-wrights craft, a storme of wind thrust one of the *Carthaginian* Gallies, of five banks, to the shore.

Now had the *Romans* a pattern, and by it they began to set up an hundred *Quinqueremes* which were Gallies, rowed by five on every bank; and twenty, of three on a bank: and while these were in preparing, they exercised their men in the feat of rowing. This they did after a strange fashion. They placed upon the Sea-fands many

many seats, in order of the banks in Gallies, whereon they placed their water men, and taught them to beat the sand with long boes, orderly, and as they were directed by the Master, that so they might learn the stroke of the Gally, and how to mount and draw their Oares.

When their fleet was finished, some rigging and other implements excepted, *C. Cornelius*, one of the new Consuls (for they changed every year) was made Admirall: who being more in love with this new kind of warfare, than well advised, past over to *Messana* with seventeen Gallies, leaving the rest to follow him. There he stayed not, but would needs row along the coast to *Lipara*, hoping to doe some piece of service. *Hannibal* a *Carthaginian* was at the same time Governour in *Panormus*; who being advertized of this new Sea mans arrivall, sent forth one *Boodes*, a Senatour of *Carthage*; with twenty Gallies to encounter him. *Boodes*, falling upon the Consul unawares, took both him and the fleet he commanded. When *Hannibal* received this good newes, together with the *Roman* Gallies, and their Consul; he grew no less foolishly hardy than *Cornelius* had been. For he, fancying to himself to surprize the rest of the *Roman* fleet, on their own coast, ere they were yet in all points provided; fought them out with a fleet of fifty sail: wherewith falling among them, he was well beaten, and leaving the greater number of his own behinde him, made an hard escape with the rest: for of one hundred and twenty Gallies, the *Romans* under *Cornelius* had lost but seventeen, so as one hundred and three remained, which were not easily beaten by fifty.

The *Romans*, being advertized of *Cornelius* his overthrow, make haste to redeem him, but give the charge of their fleet to his Colleague, *Dulius*. *Dulius*, considering that the *Roman* vessels were heavy and slow, the *African* Gallies having the speed of them, devised a certain Engine in the prow of his Gallies, whereby they might fasten or grapple themselves with their enemies, when they were (as we call it) aboard and board, that is, when they brought the Gallies sides together. This done the weightier ships had gotten the advantage, and the *Africans* lost it. For neither did their swiftnesse serve them, nor their mariners craft; the vessels wherein both Nations fought, being open: so that all was to be carryed by the advantage of weapon, and valour of the men. Besides this, as the heavier Gallies were accidentally likely to crush, and crack the sides of the lighter and weaker, so were they by the reason of their breadth, more steady; and those that best kept their feet, could also best use their hands. The example may be given between one of the long boats of his Majesties great ships, and a *London Barge*.

Certainly, he that will happily perform a fight at Sea, must be skillfull in making choice of Vessels to fight in: he must believe, that there is more belonging to a good man of War, upon the waters, than great daring; and must know, that there is a great deal of difference, between fighting loose or at large, and grappling. The Guns of a slow ship pierce as well, and make as great holes, as those in a swift. To clap ships together, without consideration, belongs rather to a mad man, than to a man of war: for by such an ignorant bravery was *Peter Strossie* lost at the *Acores*, when he fought against the *Marquess of Santa Cruz*. In like sort had the Lord *Charles Howard*, Admirall of *England*, been lost in the year 1588. if he had not been better advised, than a great many malignant fools were, that found fault with his demeanour. The *Spaniards* had an Army aboard them; and he had none: they had more ships than he had, and of higher building and charging; so that had he intangled himself with those great and powerfull Vessels, he had greatly endangered this Kingdom of *England*. For twenty men upon the defences, are equal to an hundred that board and enter; whereas then, contrariwise, but our *Spaniards* had an hundred, for twenty of ours to defend themselves withall. But our Admirall knew his advantage, & held it which had he not done, he had not been worthy to have held his head. Here to speak in generall of Sea-fights (for particulars are fitter for private hands than for the Presse,) I say, that a fleet of twenty ships, all good sailers, and good ships, have the advantage, on the open Sea, of an hundred as good ships, and of slower sailing. For if the fleet of an hundred sail keep themselves near together, in a grosse squadron; the twenty ships, charging them upon any angle, shall force them to give ground, and to fall back upon their own next fellows: of which so many as intangle, are made unserviceable or lost. Force them they may easily, because the twenty ships, which give themselves scope, after they have given one broad side of Artillery, by

\* If we say  
give credit to  
Ancient writers,  
which, *Facellus*  
a diligent writer,  
testifies in his  
in his history  
of Sicily: *Panormus*, now called  
*Palerma*, is one  
of the first ci-  
ties that hath  
been built in  
all Europe. For  
whereas *Thucy-  
dides* seems to  
make it a Co-  
lonie of the  
Phœnicians;  
*Strabo*, in his  
*libro de Pa-  
norino*, affir-  
ms that it  
was built  
long before the  
time which  
*Thucydides* set  
down founded  
by the *Caldaei*,  
or, *Damasci*,  
to prove which  
he tells  
us of two in-  
scriptions upon  
marble in the  
Hebrew Cha-  
racter found at  
*Panormus* in  
the time of  
William the se-  
cond, King of  
Sicily, that  
were then be-  
lieved of all  
the Citizens  
& other stran-  
gers, which be-  
ing translated  
into Latin, say  
as followeth:  
*Procente Isaac  
filius Abrabæ,*  
*regnante in Ida-  
mea, atque in  
valle Damasci-  
nae, Isau filio  
Isaac, regens He-  
breorum, cum  
quibus adiuncti  
sunt multi Da-  
maseni, præ-  
felli in hanc tri-  
angulam in insu-  
lam, sedes perpe-  
tuas locaverunt  
in hoc emensi-  
mo loco, quem  
*Panormum* no-  
minaverunt. In  
the other mar-  
ble are found  
these words:  
*Non est alius  
Deus præter unum Deum, immo est alius potens præter eundem Deum, &c. Huius Turris Præfilius est Saphu filius Eliphez, filii  
Elsau, fratris Isau filii Isaac, filii Abraham: & Turri quidem ipsi nomen est Baychid, Turri huic proxime nomen est Pharab. And this in-  
scription (saith *Facellus*) was found incise in the Castle Baych, in the year 1324. Now whether these inscriptions were truly as ancient,  
as these men believe they were, I leave every man to his own faith. But that the City was of aged times, it appears by *Thucydides*, who  
affirms, when the Greeks past first into Sicily, that then the Phœnicians inhabited *Panormus*: which certainly it is they did in the first Phœ-  
nic wars, to wit, the *Carthaginians*, from whom the *Romans* (as *Cicero* testifies) commencing this Army  
nick warty to wit, the *Carthaginians*, from whom the *Romans* (as *Cicero* testifies) commencing this Army  
took it. And when *Marcellus* besieged *Syracusa*, he sent him in aid 3000. Souldiers. But it was rather considerate, than subject to the Ro-  
mans. For *Cicero* against *Verrus*, names it among the free cities of Sicily. After *Syracusa* destroyed, it became the first city and Regall seat,  
as well of the *Gauls* and *Saracens* in that Island, as of the Emperours of *Constantinople*: of the *Normans*, *French*, and *Aragonians*, which bo-  
nour it holds this day, and is much frequented, for the excellent wine which grows about it.**

## §. VII.

*Divers enterseats of warre, between the Romans and Carthaginians, with variable  
success. The Romans prepare to invade Africk: and  
obtain a great victory at Sea.*

THE victory of *Duilius*, as it was honoured at *Rome*, with the first Navall Tri-  
umph, that was ever seen in that City; so gave it unto the *Romans* a great in-  
couragement, to proceed in their wars by Sea; whereby they hoped, not  
only to get *Sicily*, but all the other Isles between *Italy* and *Africk*, beginning with *Sar-*  
dina, whither soon after they sent a fleet for that purpose. On the contrary side, *Amilcar*  
the *Carthaginian*, lying in *Panormus*, carefully waited for all occasions, that might help  
to recompence the late misfortune: and being advertised, that some quarrell was grown  
between the *Roman* Souldiers, and their Auxiliaries, being such as caused them to in-  
camp, he sent forth *Hanno* to set upon them; who taking them unawares, buried  
four thousand of them in the place. Now during the continuance of the Land-war in  
*Sicily*, *Hannibal*, who had lately been beaten by Sea, but escaped unto *Carthage*, meaning  
to make amends for his former error, obtained the trust of a new fleet, wherewith he  
to make amends for the conquest of which Island, the *Romans* had entertained for their  
next enterprise. Now it so fell out, that the *Romans*, crossing the Sea from *Sicily*, arrived  
in the port where *Hannibal* with his new fleet anchored. They set upon him unawares,  
and took the better part of the fleet which he conducted; himself hardly escaping the  
danger. But it little availed him to have escaped from the *Romans*. His good friends the  
*Carthaginians*, were so ill pleased with this his second unfortunate voyage, that they  
hanged him up for his diligence: for (as it hath been said of old) *Non est vis in bello pe-*  
cave. In war it is too much to offend twice.

After this, it was long ere any thing of importance was done by the Consuls, till \* *Pa-*  
*normus* was besieged: where, when the *Romans* had fought in vain to draw the *Cartha-*  
ginians into the field; being unable to force that great City, because of the strong Gar-  
rison therein bestowed: they then departed from thence, and took certain In-land  
Towns, as *Mystrastrum*, *Enna*, *Camerina*, *Hippana*, and others, between *Panormus* and  
*Messana*.

The year following, *C. Attilius* the Consul who commanded the *Roman* fleet, dis-  
covered a company of the *Carthaginian* Gallies, ranging the coast: & not staying for his  
whole number, pursued them with ten of his. But he was well beaten for the haft he  
made, and lost all, save the Gally which transported him: wherewith himself escaped with  
great labour. But ere all was done, the rest of *Attilius* his fleet was gotten up: who renew-  
ed the fight, recovered from the *Carthaginians* a double number of theirs; by which the  
victory remaining doubtful, both challenge it. Now to try at once, which of these two  
Nations should command the Seas, they both prepare all they can. The *Romans* make a  
fleet of three hundred and thirty Gallies; the *Carthaginians*, of three hundred and fifty,  
\* *Triremes*, *Quadriremes*, and *Quinqueremes*.

The *Romans* resolve to transport the war into *Africk*, the *Carthaginians*, to arrest  
them on the coast of *Sicily*. The numbers, with which each of them filled their fleet,  
was (perhaps) the greatest that ever fought on the waters. By *Polybius* his estimation,  
there were in the *Roman* Gallies an hundred and forty thousand men; and in those of  
*Carthage*, an hundred and fifty thousand: reckoning one hundred and twenty Soul-  
diers, and three hundred rowers to every Gally, one with the other. The *Roman* fleet  
was divided into four parts, of which the three first made the form of a Wedge or Tri-  
angle; the two first squadrons making the Flanks, and the third Squadron, the Base:  
the point thereof (wherein were the two Consuls as Admirals) looking toward the  
enemy, and the middle space lying empty. Their Vessels of carriage were towed by  
the third Squadron. After all came up the fourth, in forme of a *Crescent*; very well man-  
ned, but exceeding thin: so that the horns of it inclosed all the third Squadron, to-  
gether with the corner of the first and second. The order of the *Carthaginian* fleet  
I cannot conceive by relation; but, by the manner of the fight afterwards, I conjecture,  
that the front of their fleet was thin, and stretched in a great length, much like to that  
which the *French* call *Combat en haye*, a long front of horse, and thin: which forme,  
since the Pistoll prevailed over the Lance, they have changed. Behind this first out-  
stretched front, their Battalions were more solid: for *Amilcar*, Admiral of the *Cartha-*  
*ginians*, had thus ordered them, of purpose, (his Gallies having the speed of the *Romans*)  
that, when the first fleet of the *Romans* halted to break through the first Gallies, they  
should all turn tail, and the *Romans* pursuing them (as after a victory) disorder them-  
selves, and, for carelesse of taking the Run-aways, leave their own three squadrons  
far behind them. For so it must needs fall out; seeing that the third Squadron towed  
their horse boats, and victuallers; and the fourth had the Rearward of all. According  
to *Amilcar*'s direction it succeeded. For when the *Romans* had charged, and broken the  
thin front of the *Carthaginian* first fleet, which ran away, they forthwith gave after  
their with all speed possible, not so much as looking behind them for the second Squa-  
dron. Hereby the *Romans* were drawn near unto the body of the *Carthaginian* fleet,  
led by *Amilcar*, and by him (at the first) received a great losse, untill their second Squa-  
dron came up, which forced *Amilcar* to betake him to his Oars. *Hanno* also who  
commanded the right wing of the *Carthaginian* fleet, invaded the *Roman* Rearward,  
and prevailed against them. But *Amilcar* being beaten off, *Marcius Attilius* fell back to  
their succour, and put the *Carthaginians* to their heels; as not able to sustain both Squa-  
drons. The Rear being relieved, the Consuls came to the aid of their third Battalion,  
which towed the victuallers, which was also in great danger of being beaten by the  
30 *Africans*: but the Consuls, joyning their squadrons to it, put the *Carthaginians* on that  
part also to running.

This victory fell unto the *Romans*, partly by the hardiness of their Souldiers; but  
principally, for that *Amilcar*, being first beaten, could never after joyne himself unto  
any of his other squadrons, that remained, as yet in a fair likelihood of prevailing;  
so long as they fought upon equal termes, and but Squadron to Squadron. But *Amilcar*  
forfeaking the fight, thereby left a full fourth part of the *Romane* fleet unengaged, and  
ready to give succour to any of the other parts that were oppressed. So as in conclusion,  
the *Romans* got the honour of the day: for they lost but four and twenty of theirs;  
whereas

\* The *Quin-*  
*queremes* are  
Gallies, where  
every Oare  
hath five men  
to draw it: the  
*Quadriremes*  
had four to an  
Oare: and the  
*Triremes*, three.  
Some have  
thought, that  
the *Quinquer-*  
*emes* had five  
ranks of Oars,  
one over ano-  
ther; and the  
other Gallies (I  
reasonably) few-  
er. But had this  
been so, they  
must then have  
had five decks  
each over o-  
ther: which  
hath seldom  
been seen in  
ships of a thou-  
sand tons, nei-  
ther could the  
third, fourth, &  
fifth ranks, have  
reached unto  
the water with  
the Oars.

whereas the *Africans* lost thirty that were sunk, and three score and three that were taken.

Now, if *Amilcar*, who had more Gallies than the *Romans*, had also divided his fleet into four Squadrons, (besides those that he ranged in the front to draw on the enemies, and to engage them) and that, whilst he himself fought with one Squadron that charged him, all the rest of the enemies fleet had been at the same time entertained, he had prevailed: but the second Squadron, being free, came to the rescue of the first, by which *Amilcar* was oppressed: and *Amilcar*, being oppressed and scattered, the Consuls had good leisure to relieve both the third and the fourth Squadron, and got the victory.

*Charles* the first, among other his Precepts to *Philip* the second his sonne, where he adviseth him concerning War against the *Turkes*, tells him, that in all battels between them and the *Christians*, he should never fail to charge the *Fanizars* in the beginning of the fight, & to engage them at once with the rest. For (saith he, the *Fanizars*, who are alwaies reserved intire in the Rear of the battell, and in whom the *Turke* reposest his greatest confidence; come up in a gross body, when all the troops on both sides are disbanded and in confusion; whereby they carry the victory before them without resistance. By the same order of fight, and reservation, did the *Romans* also prevail against other Nations. For they kept their *Triarii* in store (who were the choice of their Army) for the up-shot and last blow. A great and victorious advantage it hath ever been found, to keep some one or two good troupes to look on, when all else are disbanded and engaged.

## s. VIII.

The *Romans* prevail in Africk. *Atilius* the Consul propoundeth intolerable conditions of peace to the *Carthaginians*. He is utterly beaten, and made prisoner.

Now the *Romans*, according to their former resolution, after they had repaired and re-victualled their fleet, set sail for *Africa*, and arrived at the Promontory of *Hercules*, a great Head-land, somewhat to the East of the Port of *Carthage*, and some forty leagues from *Hercules* in *Sicily*, where *Amilcar* himself as yet staid. From this Head-land (leaving the entrance into *Carthage*) they coasted the East-side of the Promontory, till they came to *Chyrea*, a Town about fifty English mile from it. There they disembarked, and prepared to besiege *Chyrea*; which, to ease them of labour, was yielded unto them. Now had they a Port of their own on *Africa* side; without which all invasions are foolish. By this time were the *Africans* also arrived at their own *Carthage*, fearing that the *Roman* fleet and army had directed themselves thither: but being advertised that they had taken *Chyrea*, they made provisions of all sorts, both by Sea and Land, for their defence. The *Romans* send to *Rome* for directions, and in the mean while waste all round about them. The order given from the Senate, was, That one of the Consuls should remain with the Army, and that the other should returne, with the fleet into *Italy*. According to this direction, *Manlius* the Consul is sent home to *Rome*; whither he carried with him twenty thousand *African* Captains, with all the *Roman* fleet and Army; except forty ships, fifteen thousand foot, and five hundred horse, that were left with *Atilius*.

With these forces, *Regulus* easily won some Towns and places that were unwall'd, and laid sieges to others. But he performed no great matter, before he came to *Adis*. Yet I hold it worthy of relation, that near unto the River of *Bagrada*, he encountered with a Serpent of one hundred and twenty foot long, which he slue, not without losse of many Souldiers, being driven to use against it such engines of war, as served properly for the assaulting of Towns. At *Adis* he met with the *Carthaginian* Army, whereof the Captains were *Hanno* and *Bostar*, together with *Amilcar*, who had brought over out of *Sicily* five thousand foot, and five hundred horse to succour his Country. These (belike) had an intent, rather to weary him out of *Africa*, by wary protraction of time, than to undergoe the hazard of a main fight. They were careful to hold themselves free, from necessity of committing to blows: yet had they a great desire, to save the Town of *Adis* out of his hands. Intending therefore to follow their general purpose, and yet to disturbe him in the siege of *Adis*, they incampe neer unto him, and

strongly

strongly (as they think) on the top of an hill: but thereby they lose the services both of their Elephants, and of their horse-men. This disadvantage of theirs, *Regulus* discovers, and makes use of it. He assails them in their strength, which they defend a while, but in fine the *Romans* prevail, and force them from the place, taking the spoile of their camp. Following this their good fortune at the heels, they proceed to *Tunis* a City within sixteen miles of *Carthage*, which they assault and take.

By the losse of this battail at *Adis*, and more especially by the losse of *Tunis*, the *Carthaginians* were greatly dismayed. The *Numidians*, their next Neighbours towards the West, insult upon their misfortunes; invade, and spoil their Territory, and force those that inhabit abroad, to forsake their villages and fields, and to hide themselves within the wals of *Carthage*. By reason hereof, a great famine at hand threatens the Citizens. *Atilius* findes his own advantage, and assures himself that the City could not long hold out: yet he feared lest it might defend it self, until his time of Office, that was near expired, should be quite run out, whereby the new Consuls were like to reap the honour of obtaining it. Ambition therefore, that hath no respect but to it self, persuades him to treat of peace with the *Carthaginians*. But he propounded unto them so unworthy and base conditions, as thereby their hearts, formerly possessed with fear, became now so courageous and disdainfull, that they resolved, either to defend their liberty, or die to the last man. To strengthen this their resolution, there arrived at the same time a great troop of *Greeks*, whom they had formerly sent to entertain. Among these was a very expert Souldier, named *Xantippus*, a *Spartan*: who being informed of what had passed, and of the overthrow which the *Carthaginians* received neer unto *Adis*, gave it out publicly, that the same was occasioned by default of the Commanders, and not of the Nation. This bruit, ran till it came to the Senate; *Xantippus* is sent for; gives the reason of his opinion; and in conclusion, being made General of the *African* forces, he sent himself into the field. The Army which he led, consisted of no more than twelve thousand foot, and four thousand horse, with an hundred Elephants. No greater were the forces wherewith the *Carthaginians* fought for all that they had, Liberties, Lives, Goods, Wives, and Children: which might well make it suspected, that the Armies by Sea, before spoken of, were mis-numbered; the one consisting of an hundred and forty thousand, and the other of an hundred and fifty thousand: were it not commonly found, that they which use the service of mercenary Souldiers, are stronger abroad, than at their own doors.

*Xantippus*, taking the field with this Army, marched directly towards the *Romans*; and ranging his troupes upon fair and level ground, fittest both for his Elephants and Horse, presented them battell. The *Romans* wondered much, whence this new courage of their enemies might grow: but confident they were, that it should soon be abated. Their chief care was, how to resist the violence of the Elephants. Against them they placed the *Velites*, or light-armed Souldiers, as a forlorne hope; that these might, either with darts and other casting weapons, drive back the beasts upon the enemies, or at least break their violence, and hinder them from rushing freely upon the Legions. To the same end, they made their battails deeper in file, than they had been accustomed to do. By which means, as they were the lesse subject unto the impression of the Elephants; so were they so much the more exposed unto the violence of horse, wherein the enemy did far exceed them. The Elephants were placed by *Xantippus*, all in one rank, before his Army; which followed them at a reasonable distance: his horsemen, and some light-armed foot, of the *Carthaginians* Auxiliaries, wore in the wings. The first onset was given by the Elephants, against which the *Velites* were so unable to make resistance, that they brake into the battalions following, and put them into some disorder. In this case, the depth of the *Roman* battail was helpfull. For when the beasts had spent their force, in piercing through a few of the first ranks, the Squadrons nevertheless persisted in their order, without opening. But the *Carthaginian* horse, having at the first encounter, by reason of their advantage in number, driven those of *Atilius* out of the field, began to charge the *Roman* battalions in flank, and put them in great distress; who being forced to turn face every way, could neither pass forward nor yet retire; but had very much ado to make good the ground whereon they stood. In the mean while, such of the *Romans*, as had escaped the fury of the Elephants, and left them at their backs,

Nnnn 3

fell

fell upon the *Carthaginian* Army, that met them in very good array. It was no even match. The one were a disordered Company, weary'd with labour and hurt; the other, fresh, and well prepared, to have dealt with the enemy upon equal termes. Here was therefore a greater slaughter with little fight; the *Romans* hastily recoyled to the body of their Army, which being surrounded with the enemy, and spent with travail, fell all to rout, upon the defeat of these troupes, that open the way to a generall overthrow. So the *Carthaginians* obtained a full victory; destroying the whole *Roman* Army, save two thousand, and taking five hundred prisoners, together with *Attilus* the Consull. Of their own they lost no more than eight hundred Mercenaries, which were slain, when the fight began, by two thousand of the *Romans*: that wheeling about to avoid the Elephants, bare down all before them; and made way even to the *Carthaginian* trenches. These were the two thousand that escaped, when the whole Army behinde them was routed. All the rest were either taken or slain. Herby fortune made the *Romans* know, that they were no less her vassals, than were the *Carthaginians*: how insolent soever they had been in their proposition of peace, as if they had purchased from her the inheritance of their prosperity, which the never gave nor sold to any mortall man. With what joy these newes were welcommed, when they came to *Carthage*, we may easily conjecture, and what great things the vertue of one man hath often brought to pass in the world, there are many examples to prove, no less than this of *Xantippus*: all of them confirming that sentence of *Enrypides*, *Mens una sapiens, plurimum vincit manus*; *Many mens hands equal not one wise minde*.

After this great service done to the *Carthaginians*, *Xantippus*, returned into *Greece*; whether for that he was more envied than honoured, or for what other cause, it is unknown.

The death of *Attilus Regulus* the Consull, was very memorable. He was sent from *Carthage* to *Rome*, about the exchange & ransom of prisoners on both sides: giving his faith to return if the business were not effected. When he came to *Rome*, and plainly saw that his Country should lose by the bargain: so far was he from urging the Senate unto compassion of his own misery, that he earnestly perswaded to have the prisoners in *Africk* left to their ill destinies. This done, he returned to *Carthage*: where for his pains taken, he was rewarded with an horrible death. For this his constancy and faith, all Writers highly extoll him. But the *Carthaginians* seem to have judged him an obstinate and malicious enemy, that neither in his prosperity would hearken to reason, nor yet in his calamity would have the naturall care, to preserve himself and others, by yielding to such an office of humanity, as is common in all wars (not grounded upon deadly hatred) only in regard of some small advantage. Whatsoever the *Carthaginians* thought of him; sure it is, that his faithfull observance of his word given, cannot be too much commended. But that grave speech, which he made in the Senate, against the exchange of prisoners, appears, in all reason, to have proceeded from a vain-glorious forwardnesse, rather than from any necessity of State. For the Exchange was made soon after his death; wherein the *Romans* had the worse bargain, by so much as *Regulus* himself was worth. As for the authority of all Historians, that magnifie him in this point, we are to consider, that they lived under the *Roman* Empire: *Philinus*, the *Carthaginian*, perhaps did censure it otherwise. Yet the death which he suffered with extreme torments, could not be more grievous to him than it was dishonourable to *Carthage*. Neither do I think that the *Carthaginians* could excuse themselves herein; otherwise than by recrimination: saying, That the *Romans* deserved to be no better intreated, for as much as it was their ordinary practice to use others in the like sort. Cruelty doth not become more warrantable, but rather more odious, by being customary. It was the *Roman* fashion, to whip almost to death, and then to behead the Captains of their enemies whom they took, yea although they were such as had always made fair wars with them. Wherefore it seems not meet, in reason, that they should cry out against the like tyrannicall insolency in others, as if it were lawfull only in themselves.

The consideration both of this misfortune, that rewarded the pride of *Attilus* his intolerable demands; and of the sudden valour, wherinto the *Carthaginians* fear was changed by meer desperation; calls to remembrance, the like insolency of others in prosperity, that hath bred the like resolution in those, to whom all reasonable grace hath been

been denied. In such cases I never hold it impertinent, to adde unto one, more testimonies; approving the true rules, from which our passions carry us away.

In the year 1378. the *Genowais* won lo fast upon the *Venetians*, as they not only drove their Gallies out of the Sea, but they brought their own fleet within two miles of *Venice* itself. This bred such an amazement in the Cities of *Venice*; that they offered unto the *Genowais* (their state reserved) whatsoever they would demand. But *Peter Doria*, blown up with many former victories, would hearken to no composition; save the yielding of their City and State to his discretion. Hereupon the *Venetians*, being filled with disdain, thrust out to Sea with all their remaining power, and assail *Doria* with such desperate fury, that they break his fleet, kill *Doria* himself, take nineteen of his Gallies, fourscore boats of *Padoa*, and four thousand prisoners, recover *Chioggia*, and all the places taken from them; and following their victory, enter the Port of *Genoa*, enforcing the *Genowais* basely to beg peace; to their extreme dishonour and disadvantage, being beaten; which, being victorious, they might have commanded, to their greatest honour and advantage. The like hapned to the Earl of *Flanders*, in the year 1380. when having taken a notable, and withall an over-cruell revenge upon the *Gantois*, he refused mercy to the rest, who in all humility, submitting themselves to his obedience, offered their City, goods, and estates, to be disposed at his pleasure. This when he had unadvisedly refused, and was resolved to extinguish them utterly, they issue out of their City with five thousand chosen men, and armed with a desperate resolution, they charge the Earl, break his Army, enter *Bruges* (pell-mell) with his vanquished followers; and enforce him to hide himself under an heap of straw, in a poor cottage; out of which with great difficulty he escaped, and saved himself. Such are the fruits of Insolency.

## §. IX.

*How the affairs of Carthage prospered after the victory against Attilus: How the Romans, having lost their fleet by tempest, resolve to forsake the Seas: The great advantages of a good fleet in warre, between Nations divided by the Sea.*

BY the reputation of this late victory, all places that had been lost in *Africk*, returned to the obedience of *Carthage*. Only *Clypea* stands out; before which the *Carthaginians* sit down, and assail it, but in vain: For the *Romans*, hearing of the losse of *Attilus*, with their forces in *Africk*, and withall, that *Clypea* was besieged, make ready a gross Army, and transport it in a fleet of three hundred and fifty Gallies, commanded by *M. Amilius*, and *Ser. Fulvius*, their Consuls. At the *Promontory of Mercurie*, two hundred *Carthaginian* Gallies, set out for purpose, upon the bruit of their coming, encounter them: but greatly to their cost. For the *Romans* took by force an hundred and fourteen of their fleet, and drew them after them to *Clypea*; where they staid no longer, than to take in their own men that had been besieged: and this done, they made amain toward *Sicil*, in hope to recover all that the *Carthaginians* had held therein. In this hasty voyage they despite the advice of the Pilots, who pray them to find harbour in time, for that the season threatened more violent stormes, which ever hapned between the rising of *Orion*, and of the \* *Dog-starre*. Now although the Pilots of the *Roman* fleet had thus fore-warned them of the weather at hand, and certified them withall, that the South coast of *Sicil* had no good Ports, wherein to save themselves upon such an accident: yet this victorious Nation was perswaded, that the wind and seas feared them no lesse, than did the *Africans*; and that they were able to conquer the Elements themselves. So refusing to stay within some Port, as they were advised, they would needs put out to Sea; thinking a matter much helping their reputation, after this victory against the *Carthaginian* fleet, to take a few worthless Towns upon the coast. The mercilefs winds in the mean while overtake them, and neer unto *Camerina*, overturn and thrust headlong on the rocks, all but fourscore

cible winds, which the *Spaniards* call the *Nortes*, or North winds, are very fearfull: and therefore they that navigate in those parts, take harbor all those months like end. *Charley* the first being as ill advised, in passing the Seas towards *Algier*, in the Winter quarter contrary to the counsell of *A. Doria*, as he was in like unreasonable times to continue his siege before *Metz* in *Lorraine*, lost an hundred and forty ships by tempest, and fifteen Gallies, with all in them, of men, victuals, boats, and munition: a losse no less great, than his retreat, both from before the one and the other, was extreme dishonourable.



of three hundred and forty ships: so as their former great victory was devoured by the Seas, before the fame thereof recovered Rome.

The *Carthaginians*, hearing what had hapned, repair all their warlike vessels hoping once again to command the Seas: they are also as confident of their land-forces since the overthrow of *Attilus*. They send *Ardubal* into *Sicil* with all their old Souldiers, and an hundred and forty Elephants imbarqued in two hundred Gallies. With this Army and fleet he arrives at *Lilybaeum*; where he begins to vex the *Parisiens* of Rome. But adversity doth not discourage the *Romans*: They build in three months (a matter of great note) one hundred and twenty ships, with which, & the remainder of their late shipwreck, they row to *Panormus*, or *Palerma*, the chief City of the *Africans* in *Sicil*, and surround it by Land and Water: after a while they take it, and leaving a Garrison there, in, return to Rome.

Very desirous the *Romans* were to be doing in *Africa*: to which purpose they imploied *C. Servilius*, and *C. Sempronius*, their Consuls. But these wrought no wonders. Some spoil they made upon the coasts of *Africa*: but Fortune robbed them of all their gettings. For in their return, they were first set upon the sands, and like to have perished, neer unto the lesser *Syrtis*, where they were fain to heave all over-board, that so they might get off: then, having with much ado doubled the Cape of *Lilybaeum*, in their passage from *Panormus* towards *Italy*, they lost an hundred and fifty of their ships by foul weather. A greater discouragement never Nation had; the god of the wars favoured them no more, than the god of the waters afflicted them. Of all that *Mars* enrich them with upon the Land, *Neptune* robbed them upon the Seas. For they had now lost, besides what they lost in fight, four hundred and six Ships and Gallies, with all the munition and Souldiers transported in them.

The exceeding damage hereby received, perswaded them to give over their Navigation, and their fight by Sea, and to send only a Land-army into *Sicil*, under *L. Caecilius*, and *F. Furius*, their Consuls. These they transport in some threecore ordinary passage boats, by the Straights of *Messana*, that are not above a mile and a half broad from land to land. In like sort, the overthrow which *Attilus* received in *Africa*, occasioned chiefly by the Elephants, made them lesse choleric against the *Carthaginians*, than before; so that for two years after, they kept the high and woody grounds, not daring to fight in the fair and champion Countries. But this late resolution of forsaking the Seas lasted not long. For it was impossible for them to succour those places which they held in *Sicil*, without a Navie, much lesse to maintain the war in *Africa*. For whereas the *Romans* were to send forces from *Messana* to *Egesta*, to *Lilybaeum*, and to other places in the extreme West parts of *Sicil*, making sometimes a march of above an hundred and forty English mile by land, which could not be performed without an Army, & the provisions that follow it, in lesse than fourteen dayes; the *Carthaginians* would passe it with their Gallies, in eight and forty hours.

An old example we have, of that great advantage of transporting Armies by water, 40 between *Cannus*, and *Edmond Ironside*. For *Cannus*, when he had entred the *Thames* with his Navie and Army, and could not prevail against *London*, suddenly imbarqued; and failed to the West, landed in *Dorset-shire*, so drawing *Edmond* and his Army thither. There finding ill entertainment, he again shipped his men, and entred the *Severne*, making *Edmond* to march after him, to the succour of *Worcester-shire*, by him greatly spoiled. But when he had *Edmond* there, he failed back again to *London*: by means whereof, he both wearied the King, and spoiled where he pleased, ere succour could arrive. And this was not the least help, which the *Netherlands* have had against the *Spaniards*, in the defence of their liberty, that being Masters of the Sea, they could passe their Army from place to place, unwearied, and entire, with all the Munition and Arillery belonging un- 50 to it, in the tenth part of the time, wherein their enemies have been able to doe it. Of this, an instance or two. The Count *Maurice of Nassau*, now living, one of the greatest Captains, and of the worthiest Princes, that either the present or preceding Ages have brought forth, in the year 1590. carried his Army by Sea, with forty Canons, to *Breda*: making countenance either to besiege *Boisleduc*, or *Gertrevinden Berg*; which the enemy (in prevention) filled with Souldiers, and victuals. But as soon as the wind served, he suddenly set sail, arriving in the mouth of the *Menſe*, turned up the *Rhine*, and thence to *Ipsell*, and sat down before *Zurphen*. So before the *Spaniards* could

could march over-land round about *Holland*, above fourscore mile, and over many great Rivers, with their Cannon and carriage, *Zurphen* was taken. Again, when the *Spanish* Army had overcome this wearisome march, and were now far from home, the Prince *Maurice*, making countenance to fail up the *Rhine*, changed his course in the night, and sailing down the stream, he was set down before *Hulst* in *Brabant*, ere the *Spaniards* had knowledge what was become of him. So this Town he also took, before the *Spanish* Army could return. Lastly, the *Spanish* Army was no sooner arrived in *Brabant*, than the Prince *Maurice*, well attended by his good fleet, having fortified *Hulst*, set sail again, and presented himself before *Nymegen* in *Gelders*, a City of notable importance, and 10 mastered it.

And to say the truth, it is impossible for any maritime Country, not having the coasts admirably fortified, to defend it self against a powerfull enemy, that is master of the Sea. Hereof I had rather, that *Spain* than *England* should be an example. Let it therefore be supposed, that King *Philip* the second had fully resolved to hinder Sir *John Norris* in the year 1589. from presenting *Don Antonio*, King of *Portugale*, before the gates of *Lysborne*; and that he would have kept off the *English*, by power of his land-forces; as being too weak at Sea, through the great overthrow of his mighty *Armado*, by the fleet of *Queen Elizabeth*, in the year foregoing. Surely, it had not been hard for him, to prepare an Army, that should be able to resist our eleven thousand. But where should 20 this his Army have been bestowed? If about *Lisborne*; then would it have been easie unto the *English*, to take, ransack, and burn the Town of *Croin*, and to waste the Country round about it. For the great and threatening preparations of the Earle of *Albemarle*, the Marquess of *Serlby*, and others, did not hinder them from performing all this. Neither did the hasty levy of eight thousand under the Earle of *Arundel*, serve to more effect, than the increase of honour to Sir *John Norris*; and his Associates: considering that the *English* charged these, at *Puente de Burgo*, and passing the great Bridge, behinde which they lay, that was flanked with shot, and barricaded at the further end, routed them, took their campe; took their Generals stand with the Kings Armes, and pursued them over all the Country, which they fired. If a Roy- 30 all Army, and not (as this was) a Company of private adventurers, had thus begun the war in *Galicia*; I think it would have made the *Spaniards* to quit the guard of *Portugale*, and make hast to the defence of their *S. Jago*, whose Temple was not far from the danger. But had they held their first resolution; as knowing, that Sir *John Norris* his main intent was, to bring *Don Antonio*, with an Army, into his Kingdome, whether coming strong, he expected to be readily and joyfully welcomed: could they have hindered his landing in *Portugale*? Did not he land and *Peniche*, and march over the Country to *Lysborne*, six dayes journey? Did not he (when all *Don Antonio* his promises failed) passe along by the River of *Lysborne* to *Casaliſ*; and there, having won the Fort, quietly imbarque his men, and depart? But these, though no more than an handfull, yet were 40 they *Englishmen*. Let us consider of the matter it self; what another Nation might doe, even against *England*, in landing an Army, by advantage of a fleet, if we had none. This question, Whether an invading Army may be resisted at their landing upon the coast of *England*, were there no fleet of ours at the Sea to impeach it; is already handled by a learned Gentleman of our Nation, in his observations upon *Cassars* Commentaries, that maintains the affirmative. This he holds only upon supposition; in absence of our shipping: and comparatively, as that it is a more safe and easie course, to defend all the coast of *England*, than to suffer any enemy to land, and afterwards to fight with him. Surely I hold with him, that it is the best way, to keep our enemy from treading upon our grounds; wherein, if we fail, then must we seek to make him wish, that he had stayed at his owne 50 home. In such a case, if it should happen, our judgements are to weigh many particular circumstances, that belong not unto this discourse. But making the question general, and positive, Whether *England*, without help of her fleet, be able to debarre an enemy from landing; I hold that it is unable so to doe: and therefore I think it most dangerous to make the adventure. For the encouragement of a first victory to an enemy, and the discouragement of being beaten to the invaded, may draw after it a most perilous consequence.

It is true, that the Marshall *Montreuil*, in his Commentaries, doth greatly complain; that by his wanting forces, wherewith to have kept the frontier of *Guyenne*, they of the *Protestants*

Protestant Religion, after the battail of *Moncontour*, entred that Country, and gathered great strength and relief thence; for if the King (saith he) would have given me but reasonable means, j'enusse bien gardé à Monsieur l'Admiral de faire boire les Chevaux en la Gironne; I would have kept the Admiral from watering his horses in the River of *Garonne*. Monsieur de *Langey*, on the contrary side, prefers the not fighting upon a frontier with an invading enemy, & commends the delay; which course the Constable of *France* held against the Emperour *Charles*, when he invaded *Provence*. Great difference I know there is, and a divers consideration to be had, between such a country as *France* is, strengthened with many fortified places; and this of ours, where our Rampars are but of the bodies of men. And it was of invasions upon firm land, that these great Capitaines spake: whose entrances cannot be uncertain. But our question is of an Army to be transported over Sea, and to be landed again in an enemies Country, and the place left to the choice of the invader. Hereunto I say, That such an Army cannot be resisted on the coast of *England*, without a fleet to impeach it; no, nor on the coast of *France*, or any other Country: except every Creek, Port, or sandy Bay, had a powerful Army, in each of them, to make opposition. For let his whole supposition be granted; That *Kent* is able to furnish twelve thousand foot; and that those twelve thousand be layed in the three best landing places within that Country, to wit, three thousand at *Margat*, three thousand at the *Nesse*, and six thousand at *Foulkston*, that is somewhat equally distant from them both; as also that two of these troupes (unless some other order be thought more fit) be directed to strengthen the third, when they shall see the enemies fleet to bend towards it; I say, that notwithstanding this provision, if the enemy, setting sail from the Isle of *Wight*, in the first watch of the night, and towing their long boats at their sterns, shall arrive by dawne of day at the *Nesse*, and thrust their Army on shore there; it will be hard for those three thousand that are at *Margat*, (twenty and four long miles from thence) to come time enough to re-enforce their fellows at the *Nesse*. Nay, how shall they at *Foulkston* be able to doe it, who are nearer by more than half the way? seeing that the enemy, at his first arrivall, will either make his entrance by force, with three or four hundred shot of great Artillery, and quickly put the first three thousand, that were intrenched at the *Nesse*, to run; or else give them so much to doe, that they shall be glad to send for help to *Foulkston*, and perhaps to *Margat*: whereby those places will be left bare. Now let us suppose, that all the twelve thousand *Kenish* Souldiers arrive at the *Nesse*, ere the enemy can be ready to dis-embark his Army, so that he shall finde it unsafe, to land in the face of so many, prepared to withstand him; yet must we believe, that he will play the best of his own game; and (having liberty to go which way he list) under covert of the night, set sail towards the East, where what shall hinder him to take ground, either at *Margat*, the *Downes*, or elsewhere, before they at the *Nesse* can be well aware of his departure? Certainly, there is nothing more easie than to do it. Yea the like may be said of *Weymouth*, *Purbecke*, *Poole*, and of all landing places on the South Coast. For there is no man ignorant, that ships, without putting themselves out of breath, will easily out-run the Souldiers that coast them. *Les Armees ne volent point en poste; Armees ne s'enflent, nor run post*, saith a Marshall of *France*. And I know it to be true, that a fleet of ships may be seen at Sun-set, and after it, at the *Lizard*; yet by the next morning they may recover *Portland*, whereas an Army of foot shall not be able to march it in six dayes. Again, when those troupes lodged on the Sea-shores, shall be forced to run from place to place in vain, after a fleet of ships; they will at length fit down in the mid-way, & leave all at adventure. But say it were otherwise; that the invading enemy will offer to land in some such place, where there shall be an Army of ours ready to receive him; yet it cannot be doubted, but that when the choice of all our trained bands, and the choice of our Commanders and Captains, shall be drawn together (as they were at *Tilbury* in the year 1588.) to attend the person of the Prince, and for the defence of the City of *London*: they that remain to guard the coast, can be of no such force, as to encounter an Army like unto that, wherewith it was intended that the Prince of *Parma* should have landed in *England*.

The Isle of *Tercera* hath taught us by experience, what to think in such a case. There are not many Ilands in the world, better fenced by nature, and strengthened by art: it being every where hard of access; having no good harbour wherein to shelter a Navie

of

of friends; and upon every cove or watering place a Fort erected, to forbid the approach of an enemies boat. Yet when *Emanuel de Sylva*, and *Monsieur de Chattes*, that held it to the use of *Don Antonio*, with five or six thousand men, thought to have kept the *Marquesse of Santa Cruz*, from setting foot on ground therein; the *Marquesse* having shewed himself in the Road of *Angra*, did set sail; ere any was aware of it; and arrived at the Port des *Moles*, far distant from thence; where he was a Fort, and landed; ere *Monsieur de Chattes*, running thither in vain, could come to hinder him. The example of *Philip Sirofsie*, slain the year before, without all regard of his worth, and of three hundred French prisoners murdered in cold blood, had instructed *de Chattes*, and his followers, what they might expect at that *Marquesse* his hands: Therefore it is not like, that they were slow in carrying relief to *Port des Moles*. Whether our *English* would be perswaded to make such diligent haste, from *Margat* to the *Nesse*, and back again, it may be doubted. Sure I am, that it were a greater march than all the length of *Tercera*; whereof the French-men had not measured the one half when they found themselves prevented by the more nimble ships of *Spain*.

This may suffice to prove, that a strong Army, in a good fleet, which neither foot, nor horse is able to follow, cannot be denied to land where it list, in *England*, *France*, or elsewhere, unless it be hindered, encountered, and shuffled together, by a fleet of equal, or answerable strength.

The difficult landing of our *English*, at *Fayal*, in the year 1597, is alledged against this: which example moves me no way to think, that a large coast may be defended against a strong fleet. I landed those *English* in *Fayal* my self, and therefore ought to take notice of this instance. For whereas I find an action of mine cited, with omission of my name; I may by a civill interpretation, think, that there was no purpose to defraud me of any honour, but rather an opinion, that the enterprize was such, or so ill managed, as that no honour could be due unto it. There were indeed some which were in that voyage, who advised me not to undertake it: and I hearkened unto them somewhat longer than was requisite, especially, whilest they desired me to reserve the title of such an exploit (though it were not great) for a greater person. But when they began to tell me of difficulty: I gave them to understand, the same which I now maintain, that it was more difficult to defend a coast, than to invade it. The truth is, that I could have landed my men with more ease than I did; yea without finding any resistance, if I would have rowed to another place, yea even there where I landed, if I would have taken more company to help me. But, without fearing any imputation of rashnesse, I may say, that I had more regard of reputation, in that business, than of safety. For I thought it to belong unto the honour of our Prince and Nation, that a few Ilanders should not think any advantage great enough, against a fleet set forth by *Q. Elizabeth*: and further, I was unwilling, that some Low-Country Captains, and others, not of mine own Squadron, whose assistance I had refused, should please themselves with a sweet conceit (though it would have been short, when I had landed in some other place) That for want of their help I was driven to turn sail. Therefore I took with me none, but men assured, Commanders of mine owne Squadron, with some of their followers, and a few other Gentlemen, volunteers, whom I could not refuse, as, *Sir William Brook*, *Sir William Harvey*, *Sir Arthur Gorges*, *Sir John Skot*, *Sir Thomas Ridgeway*, *Sir Henry Tinnies*, *Sir Charles Morgan*, *Sir Walter Chute*, *Marcellus Throckmorton*, Captain *Laurence Kemis*, Captain *William Morgan*, and others such as well understood themselves and the enemy: by whose help, with Gods favour, I made good the enterprize I undertook. As for the working of the Sea, the steepnesse of the Cliffs, and other troubles, that were not new to us, we overcame them well enough. And these (notwithstanding) made five or sixe companies of the enemies, that sought to impeach our landing, abandon the wall, whereon their Musketers lay on the Rest for us, and won the place of them without any great losse. This I could have done with lesse danger, so that it should not have served for example of a rule, that failed even in this example: but the reasons before alledged, (together with other reasons well known to some of the Gentlemen above named, though more private, than to be here laid down) made me rather follow the way of bravery, and take the shorter course; having it still in mine own power to fall off when I should think it meet. It is easily said, that the Enemy was more than a Coward; (which yet was more than we knew) neither will I magnifie such a small piece of service, by seeking to prove him better: whom had I thought

thought equal to mine own followers, I would otherwise have dealt with. But for so much as concerns the proposition in hand; he that beheld this, may well remember that the same enemy troubled us more in our march towards *Fayal*, than in our taking the shore; that he fought how to stop us in place of his advantage, that many of our men were slain or hurt by him, among whom Sir *Arthur Gorges* was shot in that march; and that such, as (thinking all danger to be past, when he had won good footing) would needs follow us to the Town, were driven by him, to forsake the pace of a man of war, and betake themselves to an hasty trot.

For end of this digression, I hope that this question shall never come to tryall, his Majesties many movable Forts will forbid the experience. And although the *English* will no less disdain, than any Nation under heaven can do, to be beaten upon their own ground, or elsewhere by a forraign enemy; yet to certain those that shall assail us, with their own beef in their bellies, and before they eat of our *Kentish* Capons, I take it to be the wisest way. To do which, his Majesty, after God, will employ his good ships on the Sea, and not trust to any intrenchment upon the shore.

## S. X.

*How the Romans attempt again to get the mastery of the Seas. The victory of Cæcilius the Roman Consul at Panormus: The siege of Lilybæum. How a Rhodian Gally entered Lilybæum at pleasure, in despite of the Roman fleet. That it is a matter of great difficulty to stop the passage of good ships. The Romans by reason of grievous losses received, under Claudius and Junius their Consuls, abandon the Seas again.*

When, without a strong Navy, the *Romans* found it altogether impossible, either to keep what they had already gotten in *Sicily*, or to enlarge their Dominions in *Africa* or elsewhere, they resolved once again, notwithstanding their late misadventures, to strengthen their fleet and ships of war. So causing fifty new Gallies to be built, & the old to be repaired, they gave them in charge (together with certain Legions of Souldiers) to the new Consuls, *C. Attilius*, & *L. Manlius*. On the other side, *Asdrubal* perceiving that the *Romans*, partly by reason of the shipwreck which they had lately suffered, partly by reason of the overthrow which they received by *Xanthippus* in *Africa*, were less daring then they had been in the beginning of the war; & that one of the Consuls was returned into *Italy*, with the one half of the Army, & that *Cæcilius*, with only the other half, remained at *Panormus*: he removed with the *Carthaginian* forces from *Lilybæum* towards it, hoping to provoke *Cæcilius* to fight. But the Consul was better advised. For when *Asdrubal* had made his approaches somewhat near the Town, *Cæcilius* caused a deep trench to be cut, a good distance without the ditch of the City: between which and his trench he left ground sufficient, to embattle a Legion of his Souldiers. To these he gave order that they should advance themselves, and passe over the new trench, till such time as the *African* Elephants were thrust upon them. From those beasts he commanded them to retire, by slow degrees till they had drawn on the Elephants to the brink of the new trench, which they could by no means passe. This they performed accordingly. For when the Elephants were at a stand, they were so gawled & beaten, both by those Souldiers that were on the inside of the trench, and by those that lay in the trench it self, that being enraged by their many wounds, they brake back furiously upon their own foot men, and utterly disordered them. *Cæcilius* espying his advantage, sallied with all the force he had; and charging the other troops, that stood embattailed, he utterly brake them, and put them to their heels; making a great slaughter of them, and taking all their Elephants.

The report of this victory being brought to *Rome*, the whole state, filled with courage, prepared a new Fleet of two hundred sail, which they sent into *Sicily*, to give end to that war, that had now lasted fourteen years. With this fleet and Army the *Romans* resolve to attempt *Lilybæum*, the only place of importance which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*; and all (indeed) save *Drepanum*, that was near adjoining. They set down before it, and possesse themselves of all the places of advantage near unto it, especially of such as command the haven, which had a very difficult entrance. They also beat to the ground

six Towers of defence; and by forcible engines weaken to many other parts of the City, as the defendants begin to despair. Yet *Himilco*, Commander of the place, faileth not in all that belongs to a man of War. All that is broken he repaireth with admirable diligence; he maketh many furious sallies, and giveth to the *Romans* all the affronts that possibly could be made. He hath in Garrison (besides the Citizens) ten thousand Souldiers; among which there are certain Lieutenants, and other petty officers, that conspire to render and betray the Town. But the matter is revealed by an *Achean*, called *Alexon*, who had formerly in danger of the like treason, saved *Agrirentum*. *Himilco* with the help of *Alexon*, to assure the hired Souldiers, & employeth *Hannibal* to appeale the troops of the *Gauls*, which did waver, and had sent their agents to the enemy. All promise constancy and truth; so that the Traitors, being unable to perform what they had undertaken, are faine to live in the *Roman* campe as fugitives, that had wrought no good whereby to deserve their bread. In the mean while, a supply of ten thousand Souldiers is sent from *Carthage* to their relief, having *Hannibal* the son of *Amilcar* for their Conductor: who, in despite of all resistance, entered the Port and City, to the incredible joy of the besieged. The old Souldiers, together with the new Companies, (thereto perswaded by *Himilco* with hope of great reward) resolve to set upon the *Romans* in their trenches, and either force them to abandon the siege, or (at least) to take from them, or set on fire, their engines of battery. The attempt is presently made, and pursued to the uttermost, with great slaughter on both sides. But the *Romans*, being more in number, and having the advantage of the ground, hold still their places, and with extreme difficulty defend their engines.

They of *Carthage* desire greatly to understand the state of things at *Lilybæum*; but know not how to send into the Town. A certain *Rhodian* undertakes the service; and having received his dispatch, sails with one Gally to *Agusa*, a little Island near *Lilybæum*. Thence, taking his time he steered directly with the Port; and having a passing swift Gally, he past through the best of the Channel, and recovered the water-gate, ere any of those, which the *Romans* had to guard the Port, could thrust from the shores on either side.

The next day, neither attending the covert of the dark night, nor dreading to be boarded by the *Roman* Gallies, who waited his return, he set sail, and shipped his Oars (his Gally being exceeding quick of steage, and himself expert in all parts of the channel) recovered the Havens mouth, and the Sea, in despite of all the pursuit made after him. Then, finding himself out of danger of being encompassed by many, he turned again towards the mouth of the Haven, challenging any one, if any one durst come forth, to undertake him. This enterprise, and the well performing of it, was very remarkable, and much wondred at in those dayes: and yet, where there was no great Artillery, nor any other weapons of fire, to kill a farre off, the adventure which this *Rhodian* made was not greatly hazardous. For in this Age, a valiant and judicious man of war will not fear to passe by the best appointed Fort of *Europe*, with the help of a good Tide, and a leading gale of wind: no, though forty pieces of great Artillery open their mowthes against him, and threaten to tear him in pieces.

In the beginning of our late Queens time, when *Denmark* and *Sweden* were at Warre, our East-land fleet, bound for *Leif-land*, was forbidden by the King of *Denmark* to trade with the subjects of his enemies, and he threatned to sink their ships if they came through the straits of *Elfenour*. Notwithstanding this, our Merchants (having a ship of her Majesties, called the *Minion*, to defend them) made the adventure, and sustaining some Volleys of shot, kept on their course. The King made all the provision he could, to stop them, or sink them, at their return. But the *Minion*, commanded (as I take it) by *William Burroughs*, leading the way, did not only passe out with little losse, but did beat down, with Artillery, a great part of the Fort of *Elfenour*, which at that time was not so well rampard, as now perhaps it is: and the fleet of Merchants that followed him, went through without any wound received. Neither was it long since, that the Duke of *Parma*, besieging *Antwerp*, and finding no possibility to matter it, otherwise than by famine, laid his Cannon on the banke of the River, so well to purpose, and so even with the face of the water, that he thought it impossible for the least boat to passe by. Yet the *Hollanders* and *Zelanders*, not blown up by any wind of glory, but coming to find a good market for their Butter and Cheese, even the poor

men, attending their profit when all things were extrem dear in *Antwerp*: passed in boats of ten or twelve Tonne, by the mouth of the Dukes Cannon, in despite of it; when a strong Westerly winde, and a Tide of flood favoured them; as also with a contrary wind, and an ebbing water, they turned back again: so as he was forced, in the end, to build his Stockado overthwart the River, to his marvellous trouble and charge.

The Fort Saint Philip terrified not us in the year 1596. when we entred the Port of *Calix*, neither did the Fort at *Puntal*, when we were entred beat us from our anchoring by it; though it plaid upon us with four demi-cannons within point blanche, from six in the morning till twelve at noon. The siege of *Offend*, and of many other places, may be given for prooffe, how hard a matter it is to stop the passage of a good ship, without another as good to encounter it. Yet this is true, that where a Fort is so set, as that of *Angra in Tercera*, that there is no passage along beside it, or that the ships are driven to turne upon a bow-line towards it, wanting all help of wind and tide; there, and in such places, is it of great use, and fearfull: otherwise not.

But to returne to our adventurous *Rhodian*: He arrives in safety at *Carthage*, and makes them know the estate of *Lilybaum*. Others also, alter this, take upon them to do the like, and performe it with the same success. The *Romans* therefore labour to choak the channell; and, for that purpose, fill many Merchants ships with great stones, and sink them therein. The force of the *Tides* clears it again in part: but they ground 20 ded so many of those great bellied boats in the best of the entrance, as at last it made a manifest rising and heap, like a ragged Island, in the passage. Hereby it came to passe, that a *Carthaginian* Gally, taking her course by night, and not suspecting any such impediment, ran her self aground thereon, and was taken. Now comes that brave *Rhodian*, thinking to enter, as he had done before: but this *Carthaginian* Gally, a little before taken, gave him chase, and gathered upon him; he finds what she is, both by her form and by her swiftnes: and being not able to run from her, resolved to fight with her. But she is too well manned for him, so that he is beaten and taken.

*Lilybaum*, after this, is greatly distressed; the Souldiers being worn with labour and 30 watching. But in this despair there rose so violent a tempest, as some of the *Romans* wooden Towers, by which they over-topt the wals of *Lilybaum*, were over-turned. A *Greek* Souldier undertakes to fire those that were fallen, and performs it: for the fire was no sooner kindled, but being blown unto by the bellows of a tempest, it increased so fast, as it became resistless, and in the end burned all to ashes, and melted the brazen heads of the battering Rams. Hereupon, despair and weariness hinder the *Romans* from repairing their Engines: so that they resolve, by a long siege, to starve the defendants.

Upon relation of what had past, a supply of ten thousand souldiers is sent from *Rome*, under *M. Claudius*, the Consull. He arrives at *Messana*, and marcheth over land to *Lilybaum*: where having re-inforced the Army, and supplied the Gallies with new Rowes, he propounds the surprize of *Drepanum*, a City on the other side of the Bay of *Lilybaum*. This service the Captains and Souldiers willingly embrace. So the Consull embarks his troupes, and arrives on the sudden in the mouth of the Port. *Adherbal* is Governour of the Town, a valiant and prudent man of war, who being ignorant of the new supply arrived at *Lilybaum*, was at first amazed at their sudden approach; but having recovered his spirits, he perswades the Souldiers, rather to fight abroad, then to be enclosed. Herewithall he promisseth great rewards to such, as by their valour shall deserve them; offering to lead them himself, and to fight in the head of his fleet. Having sufficiently encouraged his men, he thrust into the Sea towards the 50 *Romans*. The Consull, deceived of his expectation, calls back the foremost Gallies, that he might now marshall them for defence. Hereupon some row backward, some forward, in great confusion. *Adherbal* finds and follows his advantage, and forceth the Consull into a Bay at hand, wherein he rangeth himself, having the land on his back: hoping thereby to keep himself from being compassed. But he was thereby, and for want of Sea-room, so straightned, as he could not turn himself any way from his enemies, nor range himself in any order. Therefore when he found no hope of resistance, keeping the shore on his left hand, he thrust out of the Bay with thirty

thirty Gallies, besides his own, and so fled away: all the rest of his fleet to the number of ninety and four ships, were taken or sunk by the *Carthaginians*. *Adherbal* for this service is greatly honoured at *Carthage*; and *Claudius*, for his indiscretion and flight, as much disgraced at *Rome*.

The *Romans*, notwithstanding this great losse, arme threecore Gallies, with which they send away *L. Junius*, their Consull, to take charge of their business in *Sicily*. *Junius* arrives at *Messana*, where he meets with the whole remainder of the *Roman* fleet, those excepting which rode in the Port of *Lilybaum*. One hundred and twenty Gallies he had: and besides these, he had gotten together almost eight hundred ships of burthen, which were laden with all necessary provisions for the Army. With this great fleet he arrives at *Syracuse*, where he staves a while; partly to take in corn, partly to wait for some, that were too slow of sail, to keep company with him along from *Messana*. In the mean time he dispatcheth away towards *Lilybaum* his Questors or Treasurers; to whom he commits the one half of his victuallers, with some Gallies for their convoy.

*Adherbal* was not carelesse after his late victory: but studied how to use it to the best advantage. The ships and prisoners that he had taken, he sent to *Carthage*. Of his own Gallies he delivered thirty to *Carthalo*, who had threecore and ten more under his own charge; and sent him to try what good might be done against the *Roman* fleet in the Haven of *Lilybaum*. According to his direction, *Carthalo* suddenly enters the mouth of that Haven, where he finds the *Romans* more attentive to the keeping in of the besieged *Carthaginians*, than to the defence of their own against another fleet. So he chargeth them, boards, and takes some, and fires the rest. The *Roman* Camp takes alarm, and hastens to the rescue. But *Himilco*, Governour of the Town, is not behind hand; who sallies out at the same time, and putting the *Romans* to great distresse, gives *Carthalo* good leisure to go through with his enterprise.

After this exploit, *Carthalo* ran all along the South coast of *Sicily*, devising how to work mischief to the enemy; wherein Fortune presented him with a fair occasion, which he wisely managed. He was advertised by his Scouts, that they had discovered, near 30 at hand, a great fleet, consisting of all manner of Vessels. These were the victuallers, which the Consull *Junius*, more hastily then providently, had sent before him towards *Lilybaum*. *Carthalo* was glad to hear of their coming: for he and his men were full of courage, by reason of their late victories. Accompanying therefore the great multitude of *Roman* Hulks approaching, to be rather a prey than a fleet likely to make strong opposition, he hastens to encounter them. It fell out according to his expectation. The *Romans* had no mind to fight: but were glad to seek shelter in an open Road, full of rocks under a covert of a poor Town, belonging to their party; that could help to save them only from the present danger, by lending them engines and other aid, wherewith to beat off the *Carthaginians* that assailed them. *Carthalo* therefore, having taken a 40 few of them, lay waiting for the rest, that could not long ride under those rocks, but would be forced by any great change of wind, either to put out into the deep, or to save their men, how they could, by taking land, with the loss of all their shipping. Whilst he was busied in this care, the Consull *Junius* drew near, and was discovered. Against him *Carthalo* makes out, and finds him altogether unprepared to fight, as being wholly ignorant of that which had hapned. The Consull had neither means to flee, nor ability to fight. Therefore he likewise ran into a very dangerous Creek; thinking no danger so great as that of the enemy. The *Carthaginian* seeing this, betakes himself to a Station between the two *Roman* fleets; where he watcheth, to see which of them would first stir, with a resolution to assault that, which should first dare to put it self in 50 to the Sea. So as now all the three fleets were on the South coast of *Sicily*, between the Promontory of *Pachinus* and *Lilybaum*; a Tract exceeding dangerous, when the wind stormed at South. The *Carthaginians*, who knew the times of tempest, and their signes, finding (belike) some swelling billow (for so we do in the West of *England*, before a Southerly storm) hastened to double the Cape of *Pachinus*, thereby to cover themselves from the rage at hand. But the *Romans*, who knew better how to fight than how to Navigate, and never found any foul weather in the entrailes of their beasts, their Soothsayers being all land-prophets, were suddenly overtaken with a boisterous South wind, and all the Gallies forced against the rocks, and utterly wrackt.

This calamity so discouraged the *Romans*, that they resolved again to forsake the Seas, and trust only to the service of their Legions upon firm ground. But such a resolution cannot long hold. Either they must be strong at sea, or else they must not make war in an Island, against those that have a mightier fleet. Yet are they to be excused, in regard of the many great calamities which they had suffered through their want of skill. Here I cannot forbear to commend the patient virtue of the *Spaniards*. We seldom or never find, that any Nation hath endured so many misadventures and miseries, as the *Spaniards* have done, in their *Indian Discoveries*. Yet persisting in their enterprises with an invincible constancy, they have annexed to their Kingdom so many goodly Provinces, as bury the remembrance of all dangers past. Tempests and shipwracks, famine, overthrows, mutinies, heat & cold, pestilence, and all manner of diuities both old and new, together with extreme poverty, and want of all things needfull, have been the enemies wherewith every one of their most noble discoverers, at one time or other, hath encountered. Many years have passed over some of their heads in the search of not so many leagues; yea more than one or two have spent their labour, their wealth, and their lives, in search of a golden kingdom, without getting further notice of it, than what they had at their first setting forth. All which notwithstanding, the third, fourth, and fifth undertakers, have not been disheartened. Surely, they are worthily rewarded with those Treasures and Paradises which they enjoy; and well they deserve to hold them quietly, if they hinder not the like virtue in others, which (perhaps) will not be found.



## S. XI.

*The City of Eryx is surpris'd by the Romans, & recovered by Amilcar, who stoutly holds war with them five years. The Romans, having emptied their common treasury, build a new fleet at the charges of private men. The great victory at Sea of Lucatius the Consul; whereby the Carthaginians are forced to crave peace. The conditions of the peace between Rome and Carthage.*

**T**HE *Romans* were carefull to supply with all industry, by land, the want of strength at sea. Therefore they continue the siege of *Lilybæum*, and seek to make sure to themselves all places, whither the enemies ships could not bring relief. The Consul *Junius*, to cure the wound of dishonour, which he had received, bethought him what enterprises to undertake. In the end he resolved to attempt the Mountain and City of *Eryx*, with the Temple of *Venus Erycina*: which was the fairest and richest of all the Island; and of these, by cunning or treason, he got possession. *Eryx* was commodiously seated between *Drepanum* and *Panormus*, so that it seemed a fit place for a Garrison, that should restrain the *Carthaginians* from making roads into the country. Wherefore *Junius* fortified both the top of the Mountain, and the first entrance of the passage from the bottom, (both of which places were very defensible) with a good strength of men. But shortly after, in the eighteenth year of this war, the *Carthaginians* set forth *Amilcar*, surnamed *Barcas*, Father of the great *Hannibal*, with a fleet and Army, who sailing to the coasts of *Italy*, did thoroughly repay the spoiles which the *Romans* made in *Africa*. For he first of all waited and destroyed the Territories of the *Locrians*, and of the *Brutians*, that were dependants of *Rome*. Then entred he into *Sicily*, and finding there no walled City in the *Carthaginians* power, that served fitly to infect the *Romans*, he occupied a piece of ground of great advantage, and lodged his Army thereon; to confront as well the *Romans*, that were in *Panormus*, as those that kept about *Eryx*, putting himself between both Armies with admirable resolution.

The place that *Amilcar* had seized upon, was not only very strong by situation, but had the command of a Port: whereby it gave him opportunity to scour all the coast of *Italy* with his fleet, walking all along as far as to *Cuma*. In the Isle of *Sicily* he held the *Romans* to hard work: lying near unto *Panormus*, where in three years abode he did many notable acts, though not of much consequence, for that the enemy could never be drawn to hazard the main chance. Having wearied himself and the *Romans* long enough about *Panormus*, he undertook a strange piece of work at *Eryx*. The *Roman* Garrisons, placed there by *Junius*, on the top, and at the bottome of the Mountain,

were very strongly lodged. Nevertheless *Amilcar* found a way, lying towards the Sea-side, by which he conveyed his men into the City of *Eryx*, that was about the midst of the ascent, ere the enemy knew of it. By this it came to passe, that the *Romans* which kept the top of the mountain, were straightly held (as it were) besieged. And no less was *Amilcar* himself retrained, by both of these Garrisons, and such as came to relieve them. There he found them pastime about two years more; hoping still to weary out those that lay over his head, as they on the contrary did their best, to thrust him out of those quarters.

At this time, all the care, both of the *Romans* and of the *Carthaginians*, was bent unto the prosecuting of this business at *Eryx*. Whereto it seems true (as *Hannibal*, in *Livie*, *liv. D. c. 34. 10.* spake unto *Scipio*) that the affairs of *Carthage* never stood in better terms, since the beginning of the war, than now they did. For whereas the *Romans* had utterly forsaken the Seas, partly by reason of their great losses; partly upon confidence of their land-forces, which they held resolute; *Amilcar*, with a small Army, had so well acquitted himself, to the honour of his country, that by the tryall of five years war, the *Carthaginian* Souldier was judged equal, if not superior to the *Roman*. Finally, when all, that might be, had been devised and done, for the dislodging of this obstinate Warriour: no way seemed better to the Senate of *Rome*, than once again to build a fleet; whereby, if the mastery of the Sea could once be gotten, it was likely that *Amilcar*, for lack of supply, should not long be able to hold out. But in performing this, extreme difficulty was found. The common treasury was exhausted: and the cost was not little, that was requisite unto such an enterprise. Wherefore there was none other way left, than to lay the burden upon private purses. Divers of the principall Citizens undertook to build (each at his own charges) one *Quinquereme*, which example wrought so well, that they, whose ability would not serve to do the like, joynd with some others, and laying their money together, concurred two or three of them, in building of another; with condition to be repayed, when the war was finished. By this voluntary contribution, they made and finished two hundred new *Quinqueremes*: taking for their pattern, that excellent (swift rowing) Gally which they had gotten from the *Rhodian*, in the Port of *Lilybæum*, as was shewed before. The charge of this fleet was committed to *C. Lucatius Carulus*; who past with the same into *Sicily* the Spring following, and entred the Port of *Drepanum*, endeavouring by all means to have forced the City. But being advertised that the *Carthaginian* fleet was at hand, and being mindfull of the late losses which his Predecessors had received; he was carefull to put himself in order, against their arrival.

*Hanno* was Admiral of the *Carthaginian* fleet; a man (as his actions declare him) wise in picture, exceedingly formall, and skilfull in the art of seeming reverend. How his reputation was first bred, I do not find; but it was upheld by a factious contradiction, of things undertaken by men more worthy than himself. This quality procured unto him (as it hath done to many others) both good liking among the ancient sort, whose cold temper is adverse from new enterprises, and therewithall an opinion of great foresight, confirmed by every loss received. More particularly, he was gracious among the people, for that he was one of the most grievous oppressours of their subject Provinces; whereby he procured unto the *Carthaginians* much wealth, but therewithall such hatred, as turned it all to their great loss. He had ere this being employed against the *Nu-midians* and wild *Africans*, that were more like to Rovers than to Souldiers, in making War. Of those fugitive Nations he learned to neglect more manly enemies, to his own great dishonour, and to the great hurt of *Carthage*, which lost not more by his bad conduct, than by his malicious counsel, when, having shewed himself an unworthy Captain, he betook himself to the long Robe. Yet is he much commended in *Roman* Histories, as a temperate man, and one that studied how to preserve the League between *Carthage* and *Rome*. In which regard, how well he deserved of his own Country, it will appear hereafter: how beneficiall he was to the *Romans*, it will appear, both hereafter, and in his present voyage; wherein he reduced the *Carthaginians* to a miserable necessity of accepting, upon hard conditions, that peace which he thenceforth commended.

*Hanno* had very well furnished his Navie, with all needfull provisions for the Souldiers at *Eryx*: (for dexterity in making preparation was the best of his qualities) but he

had neither been carefull in training his Mariners, to the practice of Sea-fight, nor in manning his Gallies with stout fellows. He thought, that the fame of a *Carthaginian* fleet was enough, to make the unexpert *Romans* give way: forgetting, that rather the restlesse force of tempests, than any other strength of opposition, had made them to forsake the seas. Yet in one thing he had either conceived aright, or else was sent forth well instructed. It was his purpose, first of all to fail to *Eryx*, and there to discharge his ships of their lading: and having thus lightened himself, he meant to take aboard some part of the Land-army, together with *Amilcar* himself, by whose help he doubted not, but that he should be able to make his enemy repent of his new adventure to Sea. This was a good course, it could have been performed. But *Catulus* used all possible diligence, to prevent the execution of this design: not because he was informed of the enemies purpose, but that he knew it to be the best for them, & for that he feared no danger so greatly, as to encounter with *Amilcar*. Wherefore although the weather was very rough, and the seas went high, when the *Carthaginian* fleet was discried, yet he rather chose to fight with the enemy, that had the winde of him, than to suffer his convoy to passe along to *Eryx*, upon unlikely hope of better opportunity in the future. All that *Hanno* should have done, *Catulus* had performed. He had carefully exercised his men in Rowing; he had lightned his Gallies of all unnecessary burthens; and he had taken aboard the choyce men of the *Roman* Land-souldiers. The *Carthaginians* therefore, at the first encounter were utterly broken and defeated, having fifty of their Gallies stemmed and sunk, and seventy taken, wherein were few lesse than ten thousand men, that were all made prisoners: the rest, by a sudden change of wind, escaping to the Ile of *Hieroneus*.

The state of *Carthage*, utterly discouraged by this change of fortune, knew not whereon to resolve. Means to repair their fleet in any time there were none left; their best men of war by Sea were consumed; and *Amilcar*, upon whose valour and judgement the honour and safety of the Common-weal rested, was now surrounded by his enemies in *Sicily*, where he could not be relieved. In this extremity, they make dispatch unto *Amilcar* himself, and authorized him to take what course should seem best unto his excellent wisdom, leaving all conclusions to his election and sole counsaill.

*Amilcar*, whom no adversity, accompanied with the least hope or possibility of recovery, had ever vanquished, looking over every promise, true or false, that the present time could make him, (so to attend any thing, from the future he was not able) resolved to make triall, whether his necessity might be compounded upon any reasonable termes. He therefore sent to *Luftatius* the Consull an overture of peace: who considering it well, gathered so many arguments from the present poverty of the *Roman* State, wasted beyond expectation in the former war, that he formerly hearkned unto it. So, in conclusion, an accord was made, but with provision, That it should hold none otherwise, than if the Senate and People of *Rome* would ratifie it with their allowance.

The conditions were: First, that the *Carthaginians* should clearly abandon the Ile of *Sicily*. Secondly, that they should never undertake upon *Hieron* King of *Syracuse*, nor invade any part of his Territories, nor the Territories of any of his Friends and Allies. Thirdly, that they should set at liberty, and send back into *Italy*, all the *Romans*, whom they held prisoners, without ranfome. Lastly, that they should pay unto the *Romans* two thousand and two hundred talents; which make, as the *French* reckon the talent, thirteen hundred and twenty thousand crowns: the same to be delivered within twenty years next following.

These Articles were sent to *Rome*, where they were not thoroughly approved: but ten Commissioners were sent into *Sicily*, to make perfect the agreement. These Commissioners added a thousand talents to the former sum, and required a shorter time of payment. Further also they took order, that the *Carthaginians* should not only depart out of *Sicily* itself, but should also withdraw their Companies out of all other Ilands between it and *Italy*, renouncing their whole interest therein.

Such was the end of the first *Punick Warre*, that had lasted about twenty four years without intermission; in which time the *Romans* had lost, by fight or shipwrack, about seven hundred, *Quinqueremes*, & the *Carthaginians* about five hundred: the greatness of which losses, doth serve to prove the greatnesse both of these two Cities, and

of the War it self; wherein I hold good the judgement of *Polybius*, That the *Romans*, in generally, did shew themselves the braver Nation; and *Amilcar*, the most worthy Captain.



## CHAP. II.

## Of divers actions passing between the first and second Punick Warres.

## §. I.

Of the cruell Warre begun between the *Carthaginians* and their owne Mercenaries.



He *Romans* having partly by force, and partly by composition, thrust the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*, & all the little Ilands thereun: adjacent, gave them rather means and leisure to help themselves in a following war, than cause to hold themselves contented with the present peace. It is an ancient and true rule, *Quod leges à victoribus dicuntur, accipiuntur a victis*; That lawes are given by the Conquerors, and received of the conquered. But the *Romans* had either forgotten the answer that was made unto them, by one of the *Privermates*; or else had forgotten to follow it in this weighty business. For when one of *Privernum*, after a rebellion, defending in the Senate the cause of his City, was demanded by a Senator, What peace the *Romans* might hope for, or assure themselves of, if they quitted their present advantage over them; he answered in these words, *Si bonam dederitis, & fidam & perpetuam; si malam, haud diuturnam*; If the peace be good and faithfull that you give us, it will be perpetual; if it be ill, then of little continuance. To this answer the Senate, at that time gave such approbation, that it was said, *Viri & liberi vocem audiam; an credi posset, illum populum, aut hominem deniq; in ea conditione, cuius cum paniteat, diutius quam necesse sit mansurum?* that it was the speech of a manly, and free man; for who could believe, that any people, or indeed any one man, would continue longer in an over-burdened estate, than meer necessity did enforce? Now, if the *Romans* themselves could make this judgement of those Nations, who had little else besides their manly resolution, to defend their liberty; surely, they grossly flattered themselves, in presuming that the *Carthaginians*, who neither in power nor in pride, were any way inferior unto themselves, would fit down any longer by the losse and dishonour received, than until they could recover their legs, and the strength which had a while failed them, to take revenge. But occasion, by whom (while well entertained) not only private men, but Kings and publick States, have more prevailed, than by any proper prowess or vertue, with-held the tempest from the *Romans* for a time, and turned it most fearfully upon *Africa*, and the *Carthaginians* themselves.

For after the first *Punick* war was ended, *Amilcar*, leaving *Eryx*, went to *Lilybaum*, from whence most conveniently the Army might be transported into *Africa*: the care of which business he committed unto *Gese*, to whom as to a man of approved sufficiency, he delivered over his charge. *Gese* had an especial consideration of the great sums, wherein *Carthage* was indebted unto these Mercenaries; and withall, of the great disability to make payment. Therefore he thought it the wisest way, to send them over (as it were) by handfuls a few at a time; that so the first might have their dispatch, and be gone, ere the second or third Companies arrived. Herein he dealt providently. For it had not been hard to persuade any small number, lodged within so great a City as *Carthage*, unto some such reasonable composition, as the present emptiness of the common Treasury did require: so that the first might have been friendly discharged, and a good president left unto the second and third, whilst their disjunction had made them



them unable to recover their whole due by force. But the *Carthaginians* were of a contrary opinion. They thought to find, in the whole Army, some that would be contented to gratifie the Publique State, by remitting a great part of their owne due: and hoped, by such an example, to draw all the multitude to the like agreement and capitulation. So they detained the first and second commers, telling them, that they would make an even reckoning with all together. Thus every day the number increased, and many disorders (a thing incident among Souldiers, were committed; which much disquieted the City, not accustomed unto the like. In this regard it was thought fit, to remove them all to some other place, where they might be less troublesome. This must be done by some colourable words of perswasion: for their number was already so great, 10 that it was not safe to offend them too far. Wherefore it is devised, that they should all attend the coming of their fellowes, at *Sicca*: receiving every one a piece of gold, to bear his charges in the mean while.

This motion is accepted, and the Souldiers began to dislodge; leaving behinde them their wives, their children, and all their baggage, as meaning shortly to fetch away all, when they came back for their pay. But the *Carthaginians* have no fancy to their returning into the Town; and therefore compell them to trust up their families, that they might have none occasion left to make any errands thither. So to *Sicca* they removed, with all their goods; and there lay waiting for newes of their fellowes arrivall, and their own pay. But themselves they had none to do, and therefore might easily be drawn to mutiny: the whole argument of their discourse inclining them to nothing else. Their daily talk was, how rich they should be, when all their money came in; how much would fall to every single share: and for how long time the City was behind hand with them in reckoning. They were all grown Arithmeticians; and he was thought a man of worth, that could find most reason to increase their demands, to the very highest, even beyond their due. No part of their long service was forgotten; but the comfortable wordes and promises of their Captains, leading them forth to any dangerous fight, were called to mind, and so many obligations, not to be cancelled, without satisfiying their expectation by some unordinary largesse.

Thus the time passeth away, untill the whole army being arrived, and lodged in *Sicca*, 20 *Hanno* comes thither to clear the attempt. Now is the day come, wherein they shall all be made rich; especially if they can hold together, in maintaining stoutly the common cause. So think they all, and assemble themselves to hear what good newes this messenger had brought: with a full resolution to help his memory, in case he should happen to forget any part of the many promises made to them; all which were to be considered in their Donative. *Hanno* begins a very formal Oration; wherein he bewails the poverty of *Carthage*; tells them how great a sum of money is to be paid unto the *Romans*; reckons up the excessive charges whereat the Common-wealth had been in the late war; and finally desires them to hold themselves contented with part of their pay, and out of the love which they bare unto the City, to remit the rest. Few of them 40 understood his discourse: for the *Carthaginian* Army was composed of sundry Nations, as *Greeks*, *Africans*, *Gauls*, *Ligurians*, *Spaniards*, and others; all of different languages. Yet they stared upon him, & were (as I think) little pleased with his very gesture. But when such as conceived the whole tenor of his speech, had informed the rest what cold comfort he brought; they were all enraged, and stared like mad-men, so that nothing would serve to appease them.

*Hanno* would fain have asswaged their fury, but he knew not how: for he less understood their dissonant loud noises, than they did his Oration. An Army collected out of so many Countries; that have no one language common to all, or to the greater part of them, is neither easily stirred up to mutiny, nor easily pacified, when once it is broken into outrage. The best that *Hanno* can do, is to use the help of Interpreters and Messengers. But these Interpreters mistake his meaning; some for want of skil; others of set purpose: and such as deliver his errands in the worst sense, are best believed. Finally, they think themselves much abused by the *Carthaginians*, and resolve to demand their own in peremptory terms, at a nearer distance. In this mood they leave *Sicca*, and march as far as *Tunis*, that is within a very little of *Carthage*, and there they incampe.

Now begin the *Carthaginians* to find their own errour. It is a good rule,

*Curandum*

*Curandum imprimis, ne magna injuria fiat  
Fortibus & miseris.*

Have special care, that valiant poverty  
Be not oppressed with too great injury.

But this proud City, having neglected the rule, hath also been careles in providing to secure her self against the inconvenience that might follow. She had suffered the 10 whole multitude, whereunto she was like to give cause of discontent, to joyn it self into one body, when the severall troupes might easily have been dispersed: she hath turned out of her gates the wives, children, and goods of these poor men, which had the retained in shew of kindness, she might have used them as Hostages for her own safety, and by employing a miserable penni-father, in her negotiation with men of War, she hath weakened the reputation of her bravest Captains, that might best have served to free her from the threatening danger. Yet likely it is, that *Amilcar* had no desire to be used as an instrument in defrauding his own Souldiers of their wages: especially considering, that as he best could bear witness of their merits, so was he not ignorant, that means to content them were not wanting, if the Citizens had been willing thereunto. 20 Hereunto may be added a probable conjecture, that *Hanno*, with his complices, who at this very time was a bitter enemy to *Amilcar*, had the boldness to impute the blame of his own wretched counsell, upon the liberrall promises made by the Captains. *Amilcar* therefore did wisely, in suffering those that maligned him, to have the managing of their own plot, and to deal the cards which themselves had shuffled. This they continue to do as foolishly as they had at first begun. They furnish a market at *Tunis*, for the Souldiers; whom they suffer to buy what they list, and at what price they list. They send ever and anon some of their Senatours into the Campe, who promise to satisfie all demands, as far forth as it should be possible. And thus by shifting from one extreme to another, they make the Souldiers understand, into what fear the City was 30 driven; which cannot choose but add much infolency to the passions already stirred up.

This sudden change of weather, & the true cause of it, is quickly found by the Army, which thereupon growes wise, and finding the season fit, labours to make a great harvest. Money must be had, and without any abatement. This is granted. Many have lost their horses in publike service of the State. The State shall pay for them. They had lived some years, by making hard shift, without receiving their allowance of victuals from *Carthage*. If they had lived, they wanted not meat; therefore what was this to the *Carthaginians*? Was it not all one, whether the ships did bring in provision, or their Captain direct them where to fetch it? But this would not serve. They said that they had been sometimes driven to buy; and that (since they could not remember how much, 40 or at what rate they bought) they would be paid for their provision during the whole time, and according to the dearest price that wheat had borne, whilst the War lasted. Such are now the demands of these Mutiners; who might easily have been satisfied with far less charges, and far more honour, by receiving their due at the first. But now they make no end of craving. For whilst the *Carthaginians* are perplexed, about this Corn-money, the Souldiers have devised many more tricks, whereby to extort a greater sum of money, without all regard of shame. Since therefore no good end could be found of these controversies which daily did multiply, it was thought convenient, that one of the *Carthaginians*, which had commanded in *Sail*, should be chosen by the Souldiers, to reconcile all differences. Hereunto the Army consented, and made choise of *Geso*: 50 *Geso* partly out of good liking to him, who had shewed himself at all times a friendly man to them, and careful of their good, especially when they were to be transported into *Africa*: partly out of a dislike which they had conceived of *Amilcar*; for that he had not visited them in all this busie time. So *Geso* comes among them; and to please them the better, comes not without money: which might give better countenance to his proceedings, than barren eloquence had done to the negotiation of *Hanno*. He calls unto him first of all the Captains, and then the severall Nations apart; rebuking them gently for that which had passed; advising them temperately concerning the present; and exhorting them to continue their love unto the State, which had long entertained

ned them, and would needs alwaies be mindfull of their good services. After this he began to put had to his purse, offering to give them their whole pay in hand; and then after to confider of other reckonings at a more convenient time. This had been well accepted, and might have served to bring all to a quiet pass, if two seditious ring-leaders of the multitude had not stood against it.

There was in the Camp one *Spendius*, a sturdy fellow, and audacious, but a slave; that in the late war had fled from a *Roman*, whom he served, and therefore stood in fear, lest he should be delivered back to his Master: at whose hands he could expect no less, than to be whipt and crucified. This wretch could find no better way to prolong his own life, than by raising such troubles as might serve to withdraw men from care of private matters, and make his own restitution impossible, were his Master never so importunate. With *Spendius* there associated himself one *Matho*, an hot-headed man, that had been so forward in stirring up the tumult, as he could not choose but fear, lest his own death should be made an example, to deterre others from the like seditious behaviour. This *Matho* deals with his Countrymen the *Africans*; telling them, that they were in far worse condition, than either the *Gauls*, the *Greeks*, the *Spaniards*, or any forreign mercenaries. For (saith he) *These our companions have no more to do, than to receive their wages, and so get them gone; but we that are to stay behinde in Africa, shall be called to another manner of account, when we are left alone; so that we shall have cause to wish that we had returned home beggars, rather then laden with the money, which (little though it be) shall break our backs. We are not ignorant, how tyrannically those our hangby masters of Carthage doe reign over us. They think it reasonable, that our lives and goods should be at their disposition; which they have at other times been accustomed to take from us even without apparent cause, as it were to declare their sovereignty: what will they now doe, seeing that we have demeaned our selves as freemen, and been bold to set a good face on the matter, demanding our own, as others have done? To all do know, that it were a very shame for us, if having been as forward in every danger of war, as any other men, we should now stand quaking like slaves, and not dare to open our mouths, when others take liberty to require their due. This notwithstanding, ye may assure your selves, that we are like to be taught better manners, as soon as our fellows are gone: in regard of whom they are content to shadow their indignation with a good, but a forced countenance. Let us therefore be wise, and consider that they hate and fear us: their hatred will shew itself when their fear is once past: unlesse we now take our time, and whilest we are the stronger, effeeble them so greatly, that their hatred shall not be able to do us wrong. All their strength consisteth in money, wherewithall they have hired others against us, and us against others. At the present they have neither money nor friends. The best army that ever served them, wherof we are no small part, lies at their gates, ready to help us if we be men. A better opportunity cannot be expected: for were our swords once drawn, all Africa would rise on our side. As for the Carthaginians, whither can they send for help? The case it self is plain. But we must quickly resolve. Either we must prevent the diligence of *Gelco*, by incensing these *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, and procuring them to draw blood; or else it behoveth us to please our good Masters, by joining with them against our fellows, yea by offering to forgive unto them all our wages, if so (peradventure) they may be won to forgive us, or not over cruelly to punish our faults committed. He is most worthily a wretched slave, that neither hath care to win his Masters love, nor the courage to attempt his own liberty.*

By such persuasions *Matho* wins the *African* Souldiers to his own purpose. They are not now so greedy of money, as of quarrell; which he that seeketh will not misse to find. When *Gelco* therefore offered to pay them their whole stipend presently, but reserved their other demands, for horses and victuals, to some other more convenient time; they break into great outrage, and say, that they will have all, even all at once and that out of hand. In this tumult, the whole Army flock together about *Matho* and *Spendius*; whose diligence is not wanting to add more fuell to the fire already blazing. *Matho* and *Spendius* are the only men to whom the Souldiers will hearken: if any other stand up to make a speech, a shower of stones, flying about his ears, puts him to silence, that he shall never afterwards speak word more. Neither stay they to consider what it is that any man would say: enough hath been said already by those good-spoken men; so that no other word (though perhaps to the same purpose) can be heard, save only *Throm, throm*.

Now

Now the rebellion begins to take forme. *Matho* and *Spendius* are chosen Captains; who, followed by a desperate crew of *Ruffians*, will suffer no man to make his own peace, but pursue their own ends, under fair pretence of the common cause. All which notwithstanding, *Gelco* is not wanting to the good of his Country, but adventures himself upon their fury. One while he deals with the Captains, and other principall men; taking them by the hand, and giving gentle words: another while he works with the severall Nations, putting them all in hope of their own hearts desire, if any reason would content them. None of them are so follen as the *Africans*: indeed none of them had so good cause. They require him peremptorily to give them their own, and not to feed them with words. The truth is, that they are not so covetous as they seem: but will be more glad of an ill answer, than of a good payment. This is more than *Gelco* knows: he sees not that *Matho* hath any more than bare words to bestow upon them. Wherefore, as rebuking their inconsiderate heat, he tells them, That they may do well, if they stand in want of money, to seek it of their Captain *Matho*. This is enough. Shall he both defraud them and deride them? They stay no longer, but lay violent hands upon the treasure, that he had brought; yea upon him also, and all that are with him: as intending to take this in part of payment, and for the rest, to take another course. *Matho* and *Spendius* are glad of this. It had little pleased them to see their fellows begin to grow calme, by his fair language: wherefore they cast into bonds both him, and all the *Carthaginians* that they can find; that so the Army may be freed from danger of good admonition, which they call Treason. After this follows open war. *Matho* solicits all *Africa*, and his Embassadors are every where well entertained. Neither is it needfull to use persuasion: the very fame of this rebellion sufficeth to draw the whole country into it. Now must the *Carthaginians* be plagued for those oppressions, with which they have plagued others. It is true that adversity hath never been untold of her errors: and as she is ever assured to hear her own, so commonly with her own she undergoes those of other men. The *Africans* finding the *Carthaginians* hang under the wheele, tell them boldly, that their Impositions were mercilesse; that they took from them the one half of their corn; that they doubled their tributes in all things else; and that they inflicted upon their vassals the greatest punishment for the least offences. These cruelties the *Carthaginians* themselves have forgotten: but the people, that have suffered so much, retain all in perfect memory. Wherefore not only such as can bear Armes are ready to doe service in this great commotion; but the very women bring forth their Jewels, and other ornaments, offering all to sale for the maintenance of so just a quarrell. By this great forwardnesse, and liberall contribution, *Matho* and *Spendius* are supplied with a strong aid of three score and ten thousand *Africans*: and are moreover furnished with money, not only to satise the present appetite of their men; but sufficient to continue the war begun, though it should be of long endurance.

40

§. II.

*Divers observations upon this war with the Mercenaries.*

†. I.

*Of Tyranny, and how Tyrants are faine to use the help of Mercenaries.*

Here let us rest a while, as in a convenient place, whence we may take a prospect of the subject, over which we travell. Behold a tyrannical City, persecuted by her own Mercenaries with a deadly war. It is a common thing, as being almost necessary, that a tyranny should be upheld by Mercenarie forces: it is common that Mercenaries should be false: and it is common that all war made against Tyrants, should be exceeding full of hate and cruelty. Yet we feldome hear, that ever the ruine of a tyranny is procured or fought by those that were hired to maintain the power of it: and feldome or never do we read of any war that hath been prosecuted with such inextinguishable hatred, as this that is now in hand.

That which we properly call tyranny, is, *A violent form of government, not respecting the good of the subject, but only the pleasure of the Commander*. I purposely forbear to say, that it is the unjust rule of one over many: for very truly doth *Cleon* in *Thucydides* tell

the

the Athenians, that their dominion over their subjects, was none other, than a meer tyranny; though it were so, that they themselves were a great City, and a popular estate. Neither is it peradventure greatly needfull, that I should call this form of commanding, *violent*: since it may well and easily be conceived, that no man willingly performs obedience to one regardless of his life and welfare; unlesse himself be either a mad man, or (which is little better) wholly possessed with some extreme passion of love. The practice of tyranny, is not alwayes of a like extremity: for some Lords are more gentle than others, to their very slaves; and he that is most cruell to some, is milde enough towards others, though it be but for his own advantage. Nevertheless, in large Dominions, wherein the Rulers discretion cannot extend it self unto notice of the difference which might be found between the worth of severall men, it is commonly seen, that the taste of five eternels, drawn out of oppression, hath so good a relish, as continually inflames the Tyrants appetite, and will not suffer it to be restrained with any limits of respect. Why should he seek out bounds to prescribe unto his desires, who cannot endure the face of one so honest, as may put him in remembrance of any moderation? It is much that he hath gotten by extorting from some few: by sparing none, he should have riches in goodly abundance. He hath taken a great deal from every one: but every one could have spared more. He hath wrung all their purses, & now he hath enough; but (as Covetousness is never satisfied) he thinks that all this is too little for a stock, though it were indeed a good yearly Income. Therefore he deviseth new tricks of robbery, and is not better pleased with the gains, than with the Art of getting. He is hated for this, & he knows it well: but he thinks by cruelty to change hatred into fear. So he makes it his exercise, to torment and murder all whom he suspecteth in which course, if he suspect none unjustly, he may be said to deal craftily; but if Innocency be not safe, how can all this make any conspirator to stand in fear, since the Traitor is no worse rewarded, than the quiet man? Wherefore he can think upon none other security, than to disarm all his Subjects; to fortifie himself within some strong place; and for defence of his Person and State, to hire as many lusty Souldiers as shall be thought sufficient. These must not be of his own Country: for if not every one, yet some, one or other may chance to have a feeling of the publick misery. This considered, he allures unto him a desperate rabble of strangers, the most unhonest that can be found; such as have neither wealth nor credit at home, and will therefore be careful to support him, by whose only favour they are maintained. Now left any of these, either by detestation of his wickedness, or (which in wicked men is most likely) by promise of greater reward than he doth give, should be drawn to turn his sword against the Tyrant himself: they shall all be permitted to do as he doth; to rob, to ravish, to murder, and to satisfie their own appetites, in most outrageous manner; being thought so much the more assured to their Master, by how much the more he sees them grow hateful to all men else. Considering in what age, and in what language I write; I must be fain to say, that these are not dreams: though some *Englishman* perhaps that were unacquainted with History, lighting upon this leaf, might suppose this discourse to be but little better. This is to shew, both how tyranny grows to stand in need of mercenary Souldiers, and how those mercenaries are, by mutuall obligation, firmly assured unto the Tyrant.

## †. II.

*That the Tyranny of a City over her Subjects is worse, than the tyranny of one man: and that a tyrannicall City must likewise use mercenary Souldiers.*

Now concerning the tyranny wherewith a City or State oppresseth her subjects; so it may appear some waies to be more moderate, than that of one man: but in many things it is more intolerable. A City is jealous of her Dominion; but not (as is one man) fearful of her life: she less need hath the therefore to secure her self by cruelty. A City is not luxurious in consuming her treasures, and therefore needs the lesse to pluck from her Subjects. If war, or any other great occasion, drive her to necessity of taking from her Subjects more than ordinary summes of money, the same necessity makes either the contribution easie, or the taking excusable. Indeed no wrongs are so grievous & hateful, as those that are insolent. Remember (saith *Caligula* the Emperor,

to his Grand-mother *Antonia* that I may doe what I list, and to whom I list: these words were accounted horrible, though he did her no harm. And *Julius* reckons it, as the compellment of all torments, inflicted by a cruel *Roman* Dame upon her slaves, that whilst she was whipping them, she painted her face, talked with her Gossips, and used all signs of neglecting what those wretches felt. Now seeing that the greatest grievances wherewith a domineering State offendeth her Subjects, are free from all sense of indignity: likely it is, that they will not extremely hate her, although desirous of liberty make them weary of her Empire. In these respects it is not needfull, that she should keep a Guard of licentious cut-throats, and maintain them in all villany, as a *Dionysius* or *Agathocles* must do: her own Citizens are able to terrifie, and to hold performe in obedience, all male-contents. These things, considered alone by themselves, may serve to prove, That a City is scarce able to deserve the name of a Tyrannesse, in the proper signification.

All this notwithstanding, it shall appear, that the miseries, wherewith a Tyrant loadeth his people, are not so heavy, as the burdens imposed by a cruell City. Not without some appearance of truth, it may be said, that Lust, and many other private passions, are no way incident to a City or Corporation. But to make this good, we shall have need to use the help of such distinctions, as the Argument in hand doth not require. Was not *Rome* lascivious, when *Cato* was fain to rise and leave the Theater, to the end, that the reverend regard of his gravity might not hinder the people, from calling for a shew of naked Courtians, that were to be brought upon the open stage? By common practice, and generally approved custome, we are to censure the quality of a whole State; not by the private virtue or vice of any one man, nor by metaphysical abstraction of the universall from the singular; or of the Corporation, from those of whom it is compounded. I say therefore, (as I have said elsewhere) That it were better to live under one pernicious Tyrant, than under many thousands. The reasons proving this, are too many to set down, but few may suffice. The desires of one man, how inordinate soever, if they cannot be satisfied, yet they may be wearied; he is not able to search all corners; his humour may be found, and soothed; age or good advice, yea, or some unexpected accident may reform him; all which failing; yet is there hope, that his successeur may prove better.

Many Tyrants have been changed into worthy Kings: and many have ill used their ill-gotten Dominion, which, becoming hereditary to their posterity, hath grown into the most excellent form of Government, even a lawfull Monarchy. But they that live under a tyrannicall City, have no such hope: their Mistress is immortall, and will not slacken the reins, until they be pulled out of her hands, and her own mouth receive the bridle of a more mightier Chariotter. This is wofull: yet their present sufferings make them lesse mindfull of the future. New flies, and hungry ortes, fall upon the same fore, out of which others had already sucked their fill. A new Governour comes yearly amongst them, attended by all his poor kindred and friends, who mean not to return home empty to their hives, without a good lading of wax and honey. These flye into all quarters, and are quickly acquainted with every mans wealth, or whatsoever else, in all the Province, is worthy to be desired. They know all a mans enemies, and all his fears: becoming themselves, within a little space, the enemies that he feareth most. To grow into acquaintance with these masterfull guests, in hope to win their friendship, were an endlesse labour, (yet it must be undergone) and such as every one hath not means to go about: but were this effected, what availeth it? The love of one Governour is purchased with gifts: the Successeur of this man, he is more loving than could be wished in respect of a fair Wife or Daughter: then comes the third, perhaps of the contrary faction at home, a bitter enemy to both his fore-goers, who seeks the ruine of all that have been inward with them. So the miseries of this tyranny are not simple, but interlaced (as it were) with the calamities of civill war. The *Romans* had a Law *De Repetundis*, or, *Of Recovery*, against extorting Magistrates: yet we finde, that it served not wholly to restrain their provinciall Governours; who presuming on the favour of their own Citizens, and of their kindred and friends at home, were bold in their Provinces, to work all these enormities rehearsed; though somewhat the more sparingly, for fear of judgement. If the subjects of *Rome* groaned under such oppressions, what must we think of those that were Vassals unto *Carthage*? The *Romans* imposed no burthen some

tributes; they loved not to hear, that their Empire was grievous; they condemned many noble Citizens for having been ill Governours. At *Carthage* all went quite contrary: the rapines newly divided by one Magistrate, served as presidents to instruct another; every man resolved to doe the like, when it should fall to his turne; and he was held a notable Statesman, whose robberies had been such, as might afford a good share to the common treasure. Particular examples of this *Carthaginian* practice are not extant: the government of *Verres* the Roman in *Sicily*, that is lively set out by *Tullie*, may serve to inform us, what was the demeanour of these *Punick* Rulers, who stood in fear of no such condemnation, as *Verres* underwent. By prosecuting this discourse, I might infer a more generall proposition; That a City cannot govern her subject Provinces so mildly as a King: but it is enough to have shewed, That the tyranny of a City is far more intolerable, than that of any one most wicked man.

Sutable to the cruelty of such Lords, is the hatred of their subjects: and again, sutable to the hatred of the subjects, is the jealousy of their Lords. Hence it followed, that, in wars abroad, the *Carthaginians* durst use the service of *African* souldiers; in *Africk* it self they had rather be beholding to others, that were farther fetcht. For the same purpose did *Hannibal*, in the second *Punick* war, shift his Mercenaries out of their own countries; *Et Africi Hispania, Hispani in Africa, melior precul ab domo futurus uterq; miles, velut mutui pignoris obligati stipendia facerent; ut the Africans might serve in Spain, the Spaniards in Africk, being each of them like to prove the better Souldiers, the farther they were from home, as if they were obliged by mutuall pledges. It is disputable, I confesse, whether these *African* and *Spanish* hirelings, could properly be termed Mercenaries: for they were subject unto *Carthage*, & carried into the field, not only by reward, but by duty. Yet seeing their duty was no better than enforced, and that it was not any love to the State, but meer desire of gain, that made them fight; I will not nicely stand upon propriety of a word, but hold them, as *Polybius* also doth, no better than Mercenaries.*

## t. III.

The dangers growing from the use of mercenary Souldiers, and forraign Auxiliaries.

THE extreme danger, growing from the imployment of such Souldiers, is well observed by *Machiavel*: who sheweth that they are more terrible to those whom they serve, than to those against whom they serve. They are seditious, unfaithfull, disobedient, devourers, and destroyers of all places and Countries, whereinto they are drawn; as being held by no other bond, than their own commodity. Yea, that which is most fearful among such hirelings, is, that they have often, and in time of greatest extremity, not only refused to fight, in their defence, who have entertained them, but revolted unto the contrary part; to the utter ruine of those Princes and States that have trusted them. Those mercenaries (saith *Machiavel*) which filled all *Italy* when *Charles* the eighth of *France* did passe the *Alpes*, were the cause that the said *French* King won the Realm of *Naples* with his Buckler without a Sword. Notable was the example of *Sforza*, the Father of *Francis Sforza*, Duke of *Millan*, who being entertained by *Queen Joane* of *Naples*, abandoned her service on the sudden, and forced her to put her self into the hands of the King of *Aragen* Like unto his father was *Francis Sforza*, the first of that race, Duke of *Millan*; who being entertained by the *Millanois*, forced them to become his slaves, even with the very same army which themselves had levied for their own defence. But *Lodowick Sforza*, the son of this *Francis*, by the just judgement of God, was made a memorable example unto posterity, in losing his whole estate by the treachery of such faithless Mercenaries, as his own father had been. For, having waged an army of *Switzers*, and committed his Dutchy, together with his person, into their hands, he was by them delivered up unto his enemy the *French* King, by whom he was inclosed in the Castle of *Liveries* unto his dying day.

The like inconvenience is found, in using the help of forraign Auxiliaries. We see, that when the Emperor of *Constantinople* had hired ten thousand *Turks* against his neighbour Princes; he could never, either by perswasion or force, set them again over the sea upon *Asia* side; which gave beginning to the Christian servitude, that soon after followed.

followed. *Alexander* the son of *Cassander*, sought aid of the great *Demetrius*: but *Demetrius*, being entred into his Kingdom, shue the same *Alexander*, who had invited him, and made himself King of *Macedon*. *Syracoe* the *Turke* was called into *Egypt* by *Samar* the *Solan*, against his opposit: but this *Turke* did settle himself so surely in *Egypt*, that *Saladine* his successor became Lord thereof, and of all the holy Land, soon after. What need we look about for examples of this kind? Every Kingdom, in effect, can furnish us; The *Britains* drew the *Saxons* into this our Country; & *Mac Murrough* drew the *English* into *Ireland*; but the one and the other soon became Lords of those two kingdoms.

Against all this may be alledged, the good successe of the united Provinces of the *Netherlands*, using none other than such kinde of Souldiers, in their late war. Indeed these *Low-countries* have many goodly & strong Cities, filled with Inhabitants that are wealthy, industrious, and valiant in their kind. They are stout Sea-men, and therein is their excellency; neither are they bad at the defence of a place well fortified: but in open field they have seldom been able to stand against the *Spaniard*. Necessity therefore compelled them to seek help abroad: and the like necessity made them forbear to arm any great numbers of their own. For, with money raised by their Trade, they maintained the War: and therefore, could ill spare unto the Pike and Musket, those hands, that were of more use in helping to fill the common purse. Yet what of this? they sped wel. Surely they sped as ill as might be, whilst they had none other than mercenary Souldiers. Many fruitless attempts, made by the Prince of *Orange*, can witnesse it: and that brave Commander Count *Lodowick of Nassau*, felt, to his grief, in his retreat from *Gravingham*, when, in the very instant that required their service in fight, his Mercenaries cried out aloud for money, and so ran away. This was not the only time, when the hired Souldiers of the States, have either sought to hide their cowardize under a shew of greediness, or at least, by meer covetousness, have ruined in one hour the labour of many moneths. I will not stand to prove this by many examples: for they themselves will not deny it. Neither would I touch the honour of *Monseigneur* the Duke of *Anjou*, brother to the *French* King; save that it is folly to conceal what all the world knows. He that would lay open the danger of forraign Auxiliaries, needeth no better pattern. It is commonly found, that such Aiders make themselves Lords over those, to whom they lend their succour: but where shall we meet, with such another as this *Monsieur*, who, for his protection promised, being rewarded with the Lordship of the Country, made it his first work, to thrust by violence a galling yoke upon the peoples neck. Well, he lived to repent it, with grief enough. Even whilst he was consulting unto those about him, that were ignorant of his plot, an imaginary forrow for the poor Burghers of *Antwerpe*, as verily beleeving the Town to be surprised, and won; the death of the Count *S. Aignan*, who fell over the wall, and the Cannon of the City, discharged against his own troups, informed him better what had hapned: shewing, that they were his own *French* who stood in need of pity. Then was his feigned passion changed into a very bitter anguish of mind; wherein, finishing his breath, and wringing his hands, he exclaimed, *Helas, mon dieu, que veux-je faire de moy? Alas, my God, what wilt thou doe with me?* So the affairs of the *Netherlands* will not serve to prove, that there is little danger in using Mercenary Souldiers, or the help of forraign Auxiliaries: This notwithstanding, they were obedient unto necessity, and sought help of the *English*, *Scots*, and *French*: wherein they did wisely, and prospered. For when there was in *France* a King, partaker with them in the same danger, when the Queen of *England* refused to accept the Sovereignty of their Country, which they offered, yet being provoked by the *Spaniards* their enemy, pursued him with continuing war, when the heir of *England* reigned in *Scotland*, a King too just & wife (though not engaged in any quarrell) either to make profit of his neighbours miseries, or to help those that had attempted the conquest of his own inheritance: then might the *Netherlands* very safely repose confidence in the forces of these their Neighbour Countries. The Souldiers that came unto them from hence, were (to omit any other commendations) not only regardfull of the pay that they should receive, but well affected unto the cause that they took in hand: or, if any were cold in his devotion, unto the side whereon he fought, yet was he kept in order, by remembrance of his own home, where the *English* would have rewarded him with death, if that his faith had been corrupted

by the *Spaniard*. They were therefore trusted with the custody of Cities; they were held as friends, and patrons; the necessity of the poorer sort was relieved, before the pay-day came, with *lendings*, and other helps, as well as the ability of the States could permit. When three such Princes, reigning at one time, shall agree so well, to maintain against the power of a fourth, injurious (or at least so seeming) to them all, a Neighbour-Country of the same religion, and to which they all are lovingly affected: then may such a country be secure of her Auxiliaries, and quietly intend her Trade, or other business, in hope of like success. But these circumstances meet so seldom, as it may well hold true in general: *That mercenary and forraign auxiliary forces are no less dangerous, than the enemy against whom they are entertained.*

-10

## †. III.

*That the moderate government of the Romans gave them assurance to use the service of their own subjects in their wars. That in mans nature there is an affection breeding tyranny, which hindresth the use and benefit of the like moderation.*

**H**ere it may be demanded, whether also the *Romans* were not compelled to use service of other souldiers in their many great wars, but performed all by their own Citizens: for if it were their manner to arm their own subjects, how hapned it, that they feared no rebellion? if strangers, how then could they avoid the inconveniences above rehearsed? The answer is, that their Armies were compounded usually of their own Citizens, and of the *Latines* in equal number: to which they added, as occasion required, some companies of *Campanes*, *Hetrurians*, *Samnites*, or other of their subjects, as were either interested in the quarrell, or might best be trusted. They had, about these times, (though seldom they did employ so many) ten *Roman* Legions; a good strength, if all other help had been wanting; which served to keep in good order their subjects, that were always fewer in the army than themselves. As for the *Latines*, if consanguinity were not a sufficient obligation, yet many privileges and immunities, which they enjoyed, made them assured unto the State of *Rome*: under which they lived almost at liberty, as being bound to little else, than to serve in war. It is true, that a yoke, how easie soever, seems troublesome to the neck that hath bin accustomed to freedom. Therefore many peop<sup>e</sup> of *Italy* have taken occasion of several advantages, to deliver themselves from the *Roman* subjection. But still they have bin reclaimed by war, the Authors of rebellion hath sharply bin punished, and the people by degrees have obtained such liberty, as made them esteem none otherwise of *Rome*, than as the common city of all *Italy*. Yea, in proceesse of time it was granted unto many Cities, and those far off removed, even to *Parsus* in *Cilicia*, where *S. Paul* was born, that all the Burgesses should be free of *Rome* it self. This favour was conferred absolutely upon some; upon some, with restraint of giving voyce in election of Magistrates, or with other such limitation as was thought fit. Hereunto may be added, that it was their manner, after a great conquest, to release unto their new subjects half of their tribute, which they had bin wont to pay to their former Lords, which was a ready way to bring the multitude into good liking of their present condition; when the review of harder times past, should rather teach them to fear a relapse, than to hope for better in the future, by seeking innovation. Neither would it be forgotten, as a speciall note of the *Romans* good government, that when some, for their well-deserving, have had the offer to be made Citizens of *Rome*, they have refused it, and held themselves better contented with their own present estate. Wherefore it is no marvell, that *Petelia*, a City of the *Bruttians* in *Italy*, chose rather to endure all extremity of war, than, upon any condition, to forsake the *Romans*; even when the *Romans* themselves had confessed, that they were unable to help these their subjects, and therefore willed them to look to their own good, as having been faithfull to the utmost. Such love purchased these mild Governours, without impairing their Majesty thereby. The sum of all is; they had, of their own, a strong army; they doubled it by adjoining thereto the *Latines*; and they further increased it, as need required, with other help of their own subjects: all, or the most of their followers, accounting the prosperity of *Rome* to be the common good.

The moderate use of sovereign power being so effectually, in assuring the people unto

unto their Lords, and consequently in the establishment or enlargement of Dominion: it may seem strange, that the practice of tyranny, whose effects are contrary, hath been so common in all ages. The like, I know, may be said of all Vice and Irregularity, whatsoever. For it is lesse difficult, (whosoever think otherwise) and more safe, to keep the way of Justice and Honesty, than to turn aside from it; yet commonly our passions do lead us into by-paths. But where Lust, Anger, Fear, or any the like Affection, seduceth our reason; the same unruly appetite, either bringeth with it an excuse, or, at least, wethaketh away all cause of wonder. In tyranny it is not so: for as much as we can hardly desery the passion, that is of force to insinuate it self into the whole tenour of a Government. It must be confessed, that lawlesse desires have bred many Tyrants: yet so that these desires have seldom been hereditary, or long-lasting; but have ended commonly with the tyrants life, sometimes before his death; by which means the government hath been reduced to a better forme. In such cases, the saying of *Aristotle* *Arif. pol. l. 5. c. 12.* holds, *That tyrannies are of a short continuance*. But this doth not satisfie the question in hand. Why did the *Carthaginians* exercise tyranny? Why did the *Athenians*? Why have many other Cities done the like? If in respect of their generall good; how could they be ignorant, that this was an ill course for the safety of the Weal publick? If they were led herunto by any affection; what was that affection wherein so many thousand Citizens, divided and subdivided within themselves by factions, did all con-  
 20 curre, notwithstanding the much diversity of temper, and the vehemency of private hatred among them? Doubtlesse, we must be fain to say, That Tyranny is, by it self, a vice distinct from others. A Man, we know, is *Animal politicum*, apt even by Nature, to command or to obey; every one in his proper degree. Other desires of Mankind, are common likewise unto brute beasts; and some of them, to bodies wanting sense: but the desire of rule belongeth unto the nobler part of reason; whereunto is also answerable an aptnesse to yeeld obedience. Now as hunger and thirst are given by nature not only to Man and Beast, but unto all sorts of Vegetables, for the sustentation of their life: as Fear, Anger, Lust, and other affections are likewise natural, in convenient measure, both unto Mankind, and to all creatures that have sense,  
 30 for the shunning or repelling of harm, and seeking after that which is requisite: even so is this desire of ruling or obeying, ingrafted by Nature in the race of Man, and in Man only as a reasonable creature, for the ordering of his life, in a civil form of Justice. All these in-bred qualities are good and useful. Nevertheless, Hunger and Thirst are the Parents of Gluttony and Drunkenness, which, in reproach, are called beastly, by an improper terme: since they grow from appetites, found in lesse worthy creatures than beasts, and are yet not so common in beasts, as in men. The effects of Anger, and of such other Passions as descend no lower than unto brute beasts, are held lesse vile, and perhaps not without good reason: yet are the more pernicious. But as no corruption is worse  
 40 by sharper Lawes, as being in generall more horrible, and punished more grievously, than that of which is best; there is not any Passion, that nourisheth a vice more hurtfull unto Mankind, than that which issueth from the most noble root, even the depraved Affection of ruling. Hence arise those two great mischiefs, of which hath been an old question in dispute, whether be the worse; That all things, or that nothing should be lawfull. Of these, a dull spirit, and overloaded by fortune, with power, whereof it is not capable, occasioneth the one; the other proceedeth from a contrary cistern: per, whose vehemency the bounds of Reason cannot limit. Under the extremity of either, no Country is able to subsist: yet the defective duness, that permitteeth any thing, will also permit the execution of Law, to which meer necessity doth enforce the ordinary Magistrate; whereas tyranny is more active, and pleaseth it self in the  
 50 excess, with a false colour of justice. Examples of stupidity, and unaptnesse to rule, are not very frequent, though such natures are every where to be found: for this quality troubles not it self in seeking Empire; or if by some error of fortune, it encounter therewithall, (as when *Claudius*, hiding himself in a corner, found the Empire of *Rome*) some friend, or else a wife, is not wanting to supply the defect, which also cruelty doth help to shadow. Therefore this Vice, as a thing unknown, is without a name. Tyranny is more bold, and feareth not to be known, but would be reputed honourable: for it is *prosperum & felix scelus*, a fortunate mischief, as long as it can subsist, *There is no reward or honour* (saith *Peter Charron*) *assigned unto those, that know how*

how to increase, or preserve humane nature: all honours, greatness, riches, dignities, Empires, triumphs, trophies, are appointed for those, that know how to afflict, trouble, or destroy it. Caesar and Alexander, have un-made and slain each of them; more than a million of men: but they made none, nor left none behind them. Such is the error of Mans judgement in valuing things according to the common opinion: But the true name of Tyranny, when it grows to ripeness, is none other than *Feritie*: the same that *Aristotle* saith to be worse than any vice. It exceedeth indeed all other vices, issuing from the passions incident both to Man and Beast; no less than Perjury, Murder, Treason, and the like horrible crimes, exceed in villany, the faults of Gluttony and Drunkenness, that grow from more ignoble appetites. Hereof *Sciron*, *Procrustes*, and *Phryxus* 10 camps, that used their bodily force to the destruction of Mankind, are not better examples, than *Phalaris*, *Dionysius*, and *Agathocles*, whose mischievous heads were assisted by the hands of detestable Ruffians. The same barbarous desire of Lordship, transported those old examples of *Feritie*, and these latter Tyrants, beyond the bounds of reason: neither of them knew the use of Rule, nor the difference between Freeman and slaves.

The rule of the husband over the wife, and of parents over their children, is natural, and appointed by God himself; so that it is alwayes, and simply, allowable and good. The former of these, is as the dominion of Reason over Appetite; the latter is the whole authority, which one Freeman can have over another. The rule of a King is no more, 20 nor none other, than of a common Father over his whole country: which he that knows what the power of a Father is, or ought to be, knows to be enough. But there is a greater and more Masterly rule, which God gave unto Adam, when he said, *Have dominion over the fish of the Sea, and over the fowle of the aire, and every living thing that moveth upon the earth*: which also he continueth unto Noah and his children, saying, *The fear of you (and the dread of you, shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowle of the aire, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the Sea: into your hands are they delivered*. He who gave this dominion unto Man, did give also an aptitude to use it. The execution of this power hath since extended it self, over a very great part of Mankind. There are indeed no small numbers of men, whose disability to 30 governe themselves, proves them, according to *Aristotles* doctrine, to be naturally slaves.

Yet find I not in Scripture any warrant to oppress men with bondage: unless the lawfulness thereof be sufficiently intimated, where it is said, That a man shall not be punished for the death of a servant, whom he hath slain by correction, if the servant live a day or two, because *he is his money*: or else by the captivity of the *Midianitish* girls, which were made bond-slaves, and the Sanctuary had a part of them for the *Lords tribute*. Doubtlesse the custome hath been very ancient: for Noah laid this curse upon Canaan, that he should be a *servant of servants*; and Abraham had of Pharaoh, among other gifts, *men-servants and maid-servants*, which were none other than slaves. Christian Religion is said to have abrogated this old kinde of servility: but surely they are 40 deceived that think so. Saint Paul desired the liberty of Onesimus, whom he had won unto Christ: yet wrote for this unto Philemon by way of request, craving it as a benefit, not urging it as a duty. Agreeable hereto is the direction, which the same Saint Paul giveth unto servants: *Let every man abide in the same calling wherein he was called: art thou called, being a servant? care not for it, but if thou mayst be made free, use it rather*. It is true, that Christian religion hath procured liberty unto many; not only in regard of piety, but for that the Christian Masters stood in fear of being discovered by their slaves, unto the persecutors of religion. Mahomet likewise, by giving liberty to his followers, drew many unto his impiety: but whether he forbade it, as unlawfull, unto his sectators, 50 to hold one another of them in bondage, I cannot tell; save that by the practice of the Turks and Moors, it seems he did not. In England we had many bond-servants, untill the time of our last civill wars; and I think that the Laws concerning Villenage are still in force, of which the latest are the sharpest. And now, since slaves were made free, which were of great use and service, there are grown up a rabble of Rogues, Curriers, and other the like trades, slaves in Nature, though not in Law.

But whether this kinde of dominion be lawfull, or not; *Aristotle* hath well proved, that it is naturall. And certainly, we finde not such a latitude of difference in any creature,

creature, as in the nature of man; wherein (to omit the infinite distance in estate of the elect & reprobate) the wisest excel the most foolish, by far greater degree, than the most foolish of men doth surpass the wisest of beasts. Therefore when Commiseration hath given way to Reason, we shall find, that nature is the ground even of Masterly power, and of servile obedience, which is thereto correspondent. But it may be truly said, that some countries have subsisted long without the use of any servility; as also it is true, that some countries have not the use of any tame cattell. Indeed the affections which uphold civill rule, are (though more noble) not so simply needfull, unto the sustentation either of our kind, as are Lust, and the like; or of every one, as are hunger and thirst; which notwithstanding are the lowest in degree. But where most vile and servile dispositions have liberty to shew themselves begging in the streets, there may we more justly wonder, how the dangerous toyle of Sea-faring men can find enough to undertake them, than how the swarme of idle vagabonds should increase, by access of those, that are weary of their own more painfull condition. This may suffice to prove, that in Mankind there is found, ingrafted even by Nature, a desire of absolute dominion: whereunto the general custome of Nations doth subscribe; together with the pleasure which most men take in flatterers, that are the basest of slaves.

This being so, we find no cause to marvel, how Tyranny hath been so rise in all ages, & practised, not only in the single rule of some vicious Prince, but ever by consent 20 of whole Cities and Estates: since other vices have likewise gotten head, and born a generall sway, notwithstanding that the way of vertue be more honourable, and commodious. Few there are that have used well the inferiour Passions: how then can we expect, that the most noble affections should not be disordered? in the government of wife and children, some are utterly careless, and corrupt all by their dull connivency: others, by masterly rigour, hold their own blood under condition of slavery. To be a good Governour is a rare commendation: and to prefer the Weal publick above all respects whatsoever, is the Vertue justly termed *Heroicall*. Of this Vertue many ages afford not many examples. *Hector* is named by *Aristotle* as one of them; & deservedly, if this praise be due to extraordinary height of fortitude, used in defence of a mans own Country. 30 But if we consider, that a love of the generall good cannot be perfect, without reference unto the fountain of all goodness: we shall find, that no morall vertue, how great soever, can by it self, deserve the commendation of more than Vertue, as the *Heroicall* doth. Wherefore we must search the Scriptures, for patterns hereof; such as *David*, *Josaphat*, and *Josias* were. Of Christian Kings, if there were many such, the world would soon be happy. It is not my purpose to wrong the worth of any, by denying the praise where it is due, or by preferring a lesse excellent. But he that can find a King religious, and zealous in Gods cause, without enforcement, either of adversity, or of some regard of state; a procurer of a generall peace and quiet, who not only useth his authority, but adds the travell of his eloquence, in admonishing his Judges to do justice; by the vigorous influence of whose Government, civility is infused, even into those places, that have been the dens of savage Robbers and Cut-throats; one that hath quite abolished a slavish *Brehon* Law, by which a whole Nation of his subjects were held in bondage; and one, whose higher vertue and wisdom doth make the praise not only of Nobility and other ornaments, but of abstinence from the blood, the wives, and the goods of those that are under his power, together with a world of chief commendations belonging unto some good princes, to appear lesse regardable: he, I say, that can find such a King, findeth an example, worthy to add unto vertue an honourable title, if it were formerly wanting. Under such a King, it is likely, by Gods blessing, that a Land shall flourish, with increase of Trade, in Countries before unknown; that Civility and Religion shall be 50 propagated, into barbarous and heathen Countries; and that the happiness of his subjects, shall cause the Nations far off removed, to wish him their Souerain. I need not add hereunto, that all the actions of such a King, even his bodily exercises, do partake of vertue; since all things tending to the preservation of his life and health, or to the mollifying of his cares, (who fixing his contemplation upon God, seeketh how to imitate the unspeakable goodness, rather than the inaccessible majesty, with both of which himself is induced, as far as humane nature is capable) do also belong to the furtherance of that common good, which he procureth. Left any man should think me transported with admiration, or other affection, beyond the bounds of reason; I add hereunto,



hereunto, that such a King is nevertheles a man, must dye, and may rise: yet widome and fame shall set him free, from error, and from death, both with and without the help of time. One thing I may not omit, as a singular benefit (though there be many other besides redounding unto this King, as the fruit of his goodnets. The people that live under a pleasant yoke, are not only loving to their Severaign Lord, but free of courage, and no greater in muster of men, than of stout fighters, if need require: whereas on the contrary, he that ruleth as over slaves, shall be attended in time of necessity, by slavish minds, neither loving his person, nor regarding his or their own honour. Cowards may be furious, & slaves outrageous, for a time: but among spirits that have once yielded unto slavery, universally it is found true, that *Homer* saith, *God bereaveeth a man of half his virtue, that day when he casteth him into bondage.*

*Hom. Odyss. l. 17.*

Of these things, I might perhaps more seasonably have spoken, in the generall discourse of Government: but where so lively an example of the calamity following a tyrannical rule, and the use of Mercenaries, thereupon depending, did offer it self, as is this present business of the *Carthaginians*; I thought that the note would be more effectually, than being barely delivered, as out of a common place.

### S. III.

*How the war against the Mercenaries was diversly managed by Hanno and Amilcar, with variable success. The bloody counsels of the Mercenaries; and their final destruction.*

*\* Utica* is situated in the great bay that enters towards *Carthage*, not far within the Promontory of *Apollonia*. At this time it is called *Porto di Fortina*, or *Biserta*, and by the Africans themselves, *Genaval* or *Utelia*. *Niger* saith, that the town it self is ruined, and the place whereon it stood, now called *Margachares*. It was very ancient, & built before *Carthage*, saith *Silius*. As it flourished before *Carthage* was it up, so did it suffer *Carthage* was thrown down by the *Romans* in the third *Punic* war. *Yemouit* it was by the death of *Cato* the younger, who held it against *Cæsar*. *Vitor* that worthy Divine, was Bishop thereof in the time of *Genfrick* the *African*, who lived all the time of that Tyrant, and hath written the story of his cruelties.

Being now to return unto those Mercenaries, from whom I have thus far digressed, I cannot readily finde, by what name henceforth I should call them. They are no longer in pay with the *Carthaginians*; neither care they to pretend, that they seek their wages already due: so that they are neither Mercenaries, nor Mutiniers. Had they all been subjects unto *Carthage*, then might they justly have been termed Rebels: but *Spendius*, and others, that were the principall part of them, ought none allegiance to that State, which they endeavoured to subvert. Wherefore I will borrow the name of their late occupation, and still call them Mercenaries, as *Polybius* also doth.

These, using the advantage of their present strength, besieged *\* Utica* and *Hippagretta*, Cities of great importance, as being seated upon the western Haven of *Carthage*, where it is divided by a neck of land, *Hippagretta* standing inwards upon the great Lake, *Utica* further out upon the Sea. Neither was the Campe at *Tunis* abandoned, which lay fitly to hinder the *Carthaginians* from passing up into the country: for *Matbo* and *Spendius* wanted not men to follow the war in all parts at once.

How the *Carthaginians* were amazed with this unexpected perill, any man may conceive. But the business it self awakes them hastily. They are hardly prest on all sides; and therefore travelled their brains to the uttermost, how to shake off these furious dogs from their shoulders, who, sometimes by night, sometimes by day, came unto the very walls of their City. In this exigent, *Hanno* was made their Generall: who failed not in his accustomed diligence of making all good preparation: but had gotten together whatsoever was needfull, as well to relieve a Town besieged, as to batter and assail any place defended against him. With these provisions, and with an hundred Elephants, he came unto *Utica*, so suddenly, that the enemies as men surpris'd, forsook their Trenches, and by retired themselves unto a rising piece of woody ground, where they might be safe against the violence of his beasts. *Hanno*, thinking that he had to doe with *Numidians*, whose custom was, after any loss, to flee two or three whole dayes journey off presently entered the Town; so shew himself after this his victory. But these good fellows, against whom he was to war, had learned of *Amilcar*, to retire and to fight again, many times in one day, as need required. Therefore as soon as they perceived, that he knew not how to use a victory, they assailed their own camp, and with great slaughter, drove the *Carthaginians* out of it, forcing them to hide themselves within *Utica*; and got possession of all the store that *Hanno* had brought for the relief of the Town. This bad beginning *Hanno* followed with futable indiscretion: losing the benefit of many fair opportunities, and suffering the enemies to take possession of all the entrance from *Carthage* to the firm land.

The

The *Carthaginians* perceiving this, were exceedingly troubled, and did therefore let fall their three anchor, sending to the field their great Captain *Amilcar*, whom they furnished with ten thousand foot of supply, and seventy elephants. *Amilcar* had work enough to do, before he should be able to meet with the enemy upon equal ground. For, besides other places of advantage that the Mercenaries had occupied, *Hanno* had suffered them to win the only bridge, by which the River *Mactra*, or *Bagradas*, was passable unto these, that were to travel into the Continent. This River had not many fords, nor those easie for a single man to get over: but upon them all was kept such guard, as gave to *Amilcar* little hope of prevailing in seeking way by force. As for the Bridge it self, *Matbo* and his followers were there lodged: and had there built a town, wherein to lye commodiously, intentive only to the custody thereof. But *Amilcar* had observed, that the very mouth of *Bagradas* used to be sometimes cloyed with sand and gravel, that was driven in by certain customary winds, and could not be driven out again, by force of that slow river, till the wind failing, or changing, suffered the weight of the waters, to disburden their channell. Hereof he made use, and taking his opportunity passed the River, contrary to all expectation, either of the enemy, or of his own Citizens.

There was no need to bid *Spendius* look about him, when once it was heard, that *Amilcar* was come over *Bagradas*: all the Mercenaries were troubled with the newes, but knowing that they were no longer to deal with the improvident gravity of *Hanno*, but with an able spirit, even with their own Master in the Art of War, whom they admired, though they hated him. But this fear was soon changed into presumption; when more than fifteen thousand of their own society, were come from *Utica*, and other ten thousand from the guard of the Bridge. Their Army was far greater, than that of *Amilcar*; and they were, in their own judgement, the better men; upon which confidence, they resolv'd to charge him on all sides, and bear him down, in despite of his worth and reputation. With this resolution they attend upon him, watching for some advantage, and still exhorting one another to play the men, and give the onset. Especially the y that followed him in the Rear, had a great mind to begin the fight; whereunto their promptness was such, as took from them their former circumspection. *Amilcar* held his way toward the Bridge, keeping himself on plain grounds, that were fittest for the service of his Elephants, which he placed in front of his Army. Neither made he shew of any desire to fight, but suffered the rashness of his enemies to encrease, till it should break into some disorder. At length perceiving, that with more boldness than good heed, they followed him too near, as would be little for their good, if he should run unto them, he halted his march, even to such a pace, as made a shew little differing from plain flight. The Mercenaries presently fell upon his skirts, believing, that for fear of them he was ready to run away. But whilst they confusedly, as in sudden opinion of victory, were driven at the heels of those that had the Rear, *Amilcar* wheeled about, and met them in the face, charging them hotly, but in very good order, so amazed with the apprehension of unexpected danger, they fled without making any resistance. In this overthrow there were fix thousand of the Mercenaries slain, and about two thousand taken, the rest fled, some to the Campe at *Utica*, others to the town at the Bridge; whither *Amilcar* followed them so fast, that he won the place easily; the enemies being thence also fled unto *Tunes*, as not having recollected their spirits to make it good.

The same of this victory, together with the diligence of *Amilcar* in pursuing it, caused many townes revolted, partly by fear, partly by force, to return to their former obedience. Yet was not *Matbo* wanting to himself in this dangerous time. He sent about to *Numidia* and *Africk*, for new supplies; admonishing the people, now or never, to do their best for the recovery of their freedom; he perswaded *Spendius*, and *Antaritus*, that was a Captain of the *Gauls*, to wait upon *Amilcar*, and always to keep the higher grounds, or at least, the foot of some hill, where they might be safe from the Elephants; and he himself continued to press the Town of *Hippagretta* with an hard siege. It was necessary for *Amilcar*, in passing from place to place, as his business required, to take such wayes as there were: for all the Country lay not level. Therefore *Spendius*, who still coasted him, and once gotten a notable advantage of ground; the *Carthaginians* lying in a plain, surrounded with hills, that were occupied by the Mercenaries, with their

*Numidian*

*Numidian* and *African* succours. In this difficulty, the fame of *Amilcar* his personal worth did greatly benefit his Country. For *Naravasmus*, a young gentleman commanding over the *Numidians*, was glad of this occasion, serving to get the acquaintance and love of so brave a man, which he much desired: and therefore came unto *Amilcar* signifying his good affection to him, with offer to do him all service. *Amilcar* joyfully entertained this friend, promised unto him his own daughter in marriage, and so wan from the enemies two thousand horse, that following *Naravasmus* turned unto the *Carthaginians* side. With this help he gave battell unto *Spendius*: wherein the *Numidian* laboured to approve his own valour to his new friend. So the victory was great: for there were slain ten thousand of *Spendius* his fellows, and four thousand taken prisoners; but *Spendius* 19 himself, with *Autarius* the *Gauls*, escaped to do more mischief. *Amilcar* dealt very gently with his prisoners: pardoning all offences past, and dismissing as many as were unwilling to become his followers; yet with condition, that they should never more bear arms against the *Carthaginians*; threatening to take sharp revenge upon all that should break this Covenant.

This humanity was vehemently suspected by *Matho*, *Spendius*, and *Autarius*, as tending to win from them the hearts of the Souldiers. Wherefore they resolved to take such order, that no man among them should dare to trust in the good nature of *Amilcar*, nor to hope for any safety whilst *Carthage* was able to do him hurt. They counterfeited letters of advertisement, wherein was contained, that some of their company, 20 respectively only of their private benefit, and careless of the general good, had a purpose to betray them all unto the *Carthaginians*, with whom they held intelligence; and that it was needfull to look well unto *Gesco*, and his companions, whom these traitors had a purpose to enlarge. Upon this Theme *Spendius* makes an oration to the Souldiers, exhorting them to fidelity; and shewing with many words, that the seeming humanity of *Amilcar*, toward some, was none other than a bait, wherewith, to intrap them all at once together, as also telling them what a dangerous enemy *Gesco* would prove, if he might escape their hands. Whilst he is yet in the midst of his tale, were letters come to the same purpose. Then steps forth *Autarius*, and speaks his mind plainly: saying, that it were the best, yea, the only way, for the common safety, to cut off all hope of reconciliation with *Carthage*; that if some were desiring to make their own peace, it would 30 go hard with those that had a care of the war; that it were better to make an end of *Gesco* his life; than to trouble themselves with looking to his custody; that by such a course every one should be engaged in the present Action, as having none other hope left, than in victory alone; finally that such as would speak here against, were worthy to be reputed Traitors. This *Autarius* was in great credit with the Souldiers, & could speak sundry languages, in such sort, that he was understood by all. According to his motion therefore it was agreed, that *Gesco* and all the other prisoners, should forthwith be put to horrible death, by torments. Nevertheless there were some, that for love of *Gesco* sought to alter his intended cruelty; but they were forthwith stoned to death, as a Document 40 unto others; and so the Decree was put in execution. Neither were they therewithall contented, but further ordained; that all *Carthaginian* prisoners, which they took, should be served in like sort: and that the subjects or friends of *Carthage*, should lose their hands, and so be sent home: which rule they observed, even afterwards.

Of this cruelty I need say no more, than that it was most execrable ferity. As for the counsel of using it, it was like unto the counsel of *Achitophel*; All Israel shall hear, that thou art abhorred of thy father; then shall the hands of all that are with thee be strong. Such are the fruits of desperation. He that is past all hope of pardon, is afraid of his own fellows, if they be more innocent; and to avoid the punishment of less offences, committeeth greater. The cowardize of offenders, and the revengefull spirits of those that have been wronged, are breeders of this desperation: to which may be added some deficiency of Lawes, in distinguishing the punishments of malefactors, according to the decree of their several crimes. A coward thinks all provision too little for his own security. If *Phocas* be a coward (said the Emperour *Mauritius*) then is he murderous. To be steadfast and sure, in taking revenge, is thought a point of honour, and a defensive against new injuries. But wrongfully: for it is opposite to the rule of Christianity; and such a quality discovered, makes them deadly enemies, who other- wise

wife would have repented, and sought to make amends, for the wrong done in passion. This was it which wrought so much woe to the *Carthaginians*; teaching *Matho*, and his *Africans*, to suspect even their gentleness, as the introduction to extreme rigour. Like unto the errors of Princes and Governours, are the errors of Lawes. Where one and the same punishment is awarded unto the lesse offence, and unto the greater, he that hath adventured to rob a man, is easily tempted to kill him, for his own security.

Against these inconveniences, Mercy and Severity, used with due respect, are the best remedies. In neither of which *Amilcar* failed. For as long as these his old souldiers were 10 any way likely to be reclaimed by gentle courses, his humanity was ready to invite them. But when they were transported with beastly outrage, beyond all regard of honesty and shame, he rewarded their villany with answerable vengeance, casting them unto wilde beasts to be devoured.

Untill this time *Hanno*, with the Army under his command, had kept himself apart from *Amilcar*, and done little as may seem, for that nothing is remembered of him since his late losses. Neither was *Amilcar* sorry to want his help; as being able to do better without him. But when the war grew to such extremity, as threatened utter ruine to the one or the other side; then was *Hanno* sent for, and came to *Amilcar*, with whom he joy- 20 neded his forces. By this access of strength *Amilcar* was not enabled to do more than in former times; rather he could now perform nothing: such was the hatred between him and his unworthy Colleague. The Towns of *Utica* and *Hippagretta*, that had stood all wayes firm to the *Carthaginian* party, did now revolt unto the enemy, murdering all the Souldiers that they had in Garrison, and casting their bodies forth, without suffering them to be buried. The provisions brought by sea, for maintenance of the Army, were lost in foul weather; and *Carthage* it self stood in danger of being besieged, about which *Matho* and *Spendius* consulted, whilst one of the *Carthaginian* Generals did (as it were) bind the others hands.

It hath in all Ages been used as the safest course, to send forth, in great Expeditions, two generals of one Army. This was the common practice of those two mighty Cities *Athens* and *Rome*, which other States and Princes have often imitated; perswading themselves, that great Armies are not so well conducted by one, as by two: who out of emulation to excell each other, will use the greater diligence. They have also joyned two chief Commanders in equal commission, upon this further consideration, the better to restrain the ambition of any one, that should be trusted with so great a strength. For hereof all common-weals have been jealous, having been taught by their examples that have made themselves Tyrants over those Cities and States that have employed them. In this point the *Venitians* have been so circumspect, as they have, for the most part, trusted strangers, & not their own in all the wars which they have made. It is true, that the equal authority of two commanding in chief, serveth well to bridle the ambition of one or both, from turning upon the Prince or State that hath given them trust: 40 but in managing the war it self, it is commonly the cause of ill successe. In wars made near unto *Rome* it self, when two good friends were Consuls, or such two at least, as concurred in one desire of Triumph, which honour (the greatest of any that *Rome* could give) was to be obtained by that one years service; it is no marvell, though each of the Consuls did his best, and referred all his thoughts unto none other end than victory. Yet in all dangerous cases, when the Consuls proceeded otherwise than was desired, one Dictator was appointed, whose power was neither hindred by any partner, nor by any great limitation. Neither was it indeed the manner, to send forth both the Consuls to one war; but each went whither his lot called him, to his own Province: unless one 50 business seemed to require them both, and they also seemed fit to be joyned in the administration. Now although it was so, that the *Romans* did many times prevail with their joyned Generals: yet was this never so seldom, without as much concord, as any other vertue of the Commanders. For their modesty hath often been such, that the lesse able Captain, though of equal authority, hath willingly submitted himself to the other, and obeyed his directions. This notwithstanding, they have many times, by ordaining two Commanders of one Army, received great and most dangerous overthrowes, whereof in the second Punick war we shall finde examples. On the contrary side, in their wars most remote, that were alwayes managed by one, they seldom failed

failed to win exceeding honour, as hereafter shall appear. Now of those ten Generals, which served the *Athenians* at the battell of *Marathon*, it may truly be said, that had not their temper been better, than the judgement of the people that sent them forth, and had not they submitted themselves to the conduction of *Miltiades*; their affairs had found the same successe which they found at other times, when they coupled *Nicias* and *Alcibiades* together in *Sicily*: the one being so over-wary, and the other so hasty, as all came to nought that they undertook: whereas *Cimon* alone, as also *Arifides*, and others, having sole charge of all, did their Country and Common-weal most remarkable service. For it is hard to find two great Captains of equall discretion and valour; but that the one hath more of fury than of judgement, and so the contrary, by which the best occasions are as often overslipped, as at other times many actions are unseasonably undertaken. I remember it well, that when the prince of *Conde* was slain after the Battell of *Farnac*, (which Prince, together with the admiral *Chasfillan*, had the conduct of the *Protestant Army*) the *Protestants* did greatly bewail the losse of the said Prince, in respect of his Religion, person, and birth; yet comforting themselves, they thought it rather an advancement, than a hinderance to their affairs. For so much did the valour of the one out-reach the advisednesse of the other, as whatsoever the Admirall intended to win by attending the advantage, the Prince adventured to lose, by being over-confident in his own courage.

But we need no better example, than of the *Carthaginians* in this present businesse: to who, though they were still sick of their ill grounded love to *Hanno*, and were unwilling to disgrace him, yet seeing that all ran towards ruine, through the discord of the Generals, committed the decision of their controversies, unto the Army that served under them. The judgement of the Army was, that *Hanno* should depart the Camp: which he did, and *Hannibal* was sent in his stead, one that would be directed by *Amilcar*, and that was enough.

After this, the affairs of *Carthage* began to prosper somewhat better. *Matho* and *Spendius* had brought their Army neer unto the City; and lay before it, as in a siege. They might well be bold to hope and adventure much, having in their Campe above fifty thousand, besides those that lay abroad in Garrisons. Nevertheless, the City was too strong for them to win by assault: and the entrance of victuals they could not hinder, if any should be sent in by friends from abroad.

*Hieron*, King of *Syracuse*, though during the wars in *Sicily* he assisted the *Romans*, and still continued in their alliance, yet now sent succours to the *Carthaginians*: fearing their fall, and consequently his own; because if no other State gave the *Romans* somewhat to trouble their digestion, the Principality of *Syracuse* would soon be devoured by them. The *Romans* also gave them some slender assistance, and, for the present, refused good offers made unto them by the Mercenaries. This they did to shew a kinde of noble disposition; which was indeed but counterfeit, as the sequel manifestly proved.

While *Matho* and his followers were busily pressing the City, *Amilcar* was as diligent in waiting at their backs, and cutting off all that come to their supply: so that finding themselves more straightly besieged by him, than *Carthage* was by them, they purposed to desert from their vain attempt, and try some other course. Hereupon they issued into the field: when *Spendius*, and one *Zarcas* an *African* Captain assisting the rebellion, take upon them to find *Amilcar* work; leaving *Matho* in *Tunis*, to negotiate with their friends and take a generall care of the businesse. The Elephants of *Carthage*, and horse of *Naravajus*, made *Spendius* fearful to descend into the Plains. Wherefore he betook himself to his former method of war, keeping the mountains, and rough grounds, or occupying the straightest passages, wherein the desperate courage of his men might shew itself, with little disadvantage. But *Amilcar* had more skill in this Art, than could be matched by the labour of *Spendius*. He drew the enemy to many skirmishes; in all which the successe was such, as added courage to his own men, and abated the strength and spirit of the Rebels. Thus he continued, provoking them night and day: still intrapping some of them, and sometimes giving them the overthrow in plain battell: untill at length he got them into a straight, whence ere they should get out, he meant to take of them a good account. Their judgement was enough to perceive their own disadvantage; and therefore they had the lesse stomach to fight:

fight; but a waiting for help from *Tunis*. *Amilcar* prudently foreseeing, that necessity might teach them to dare impossibilities, used the benefit of their present fear, and shut them close up with Trench and Rampart. There they waited miserably, for succour that came not: and having spent all their victuals, were lo pinched with hunger, that they fed upon the bodies of their prisoners. This they suffered patiently, as knowing that they had not deserved any favour from *Carthage*: and hoping, that their friends at *Tunis* would not be unmindfull of them. But when they were driven to such extremity, that they were faine to devour their own companions, and yet saw none appearance or likelihood of relief: their obstinacy was broken, and they threatened their Captains with what they deserved, unless they would go forth to *Amilcar*, and seek such peace as might be gotten. So *Spendius*, *Zarcas*, and *Autarius*, fell to consultation, wherein it was resolved to obey the multitude, and yeeld themselves, if it were so required, unto the death, rather then perish by the hands of their own Companions. Hereupon they sent to crave parlie, which is granted; and these three come forth to talk with *Amilcar* in person. What they could say unto him, it is hard to conjecture: yet by the conditions which *Amilcar* granted, it seems that they took the blame upon themselves, and craved pardon for the multitude. The conditions were, that the *Carthaginians* should chooseth out of the whole number of these enemies, any ten whom they pleased, to remain at their discretion; and that the rest should all be dismissed, each in his shirt, or in one single coat. When the peace was thus concluded, *Amilcar* told these Ringleaders, that he chose them presently, as part of the ten, & so commanded to lay hands on them: the rest he forthwith went to fetch with his whole Army in order. The Rebels, who knew not that peace was concluded upon so gentle Articles, thought themselves betrayed: and therefore amazedly ran to arms. But they wanted Captains to order them: and the same astonishment, that made them break the Covenants of peace, whereof they were ignorant, gave unto *Amilcar* both colour of justice, in accomplishing revenge, and ease in doing the execution. They were all slain: being forty thousand, or more, in number.

This was a famous exploit: and the news thereof exceeding welcome to *Carthage*; and terrible to the revolted Cities of *Africk*. Henceforward *Amilcar*, with his *Naravajus*, and *Hannibal*, carryed the war from Town to Town, and found all places ready to yeeld: *Utica* and *Hippagreta* only standing out, upon fear of deserved vengeance; and *Tunis*, being held by *Matho*, with the remainder of his Army. It was thought fit to begia with *Tunis*, wherein lay the chief strength of the enemy. Comming before this Town, they brought forth *Spendius*, with his fellowes, in view of the defendants, and crucified them under the wals; to terrifie those of his old companions, that were still in armes. With this rigour the siege began; as if speedy victory had been assured. *Hannibal* quartered on that part of *Tunis*, which lay toward *Carthage*; *Amilcar* on the opposite side: too far asunder to help one another in sudden accidents; and therefore it behoved each to be the more circumspect.

*Matho* from the wals beheld his own destiny, in the misery of his companion, and knew not how to avoid it otherwise than by a cast at dice with fortune. So he brake out upon that part of the *Carthaginian* Army, that lay secure, as if all danger were past, under the command of *Hannibal*: and with so great and unexpected fury he sallied, that after an exceeding slaughter, he took *Hannibal* prisoner; on whom, and thirty the most noble of the *Carthaginian* prisoners, he presently revenged the death of *Spendius* by the same torture. Of this *Amilcar* knew nothing, till it was too late; neither had he strength enough remaining, after this great losse, to continue the siege; but was faine to break it up, and remove unto the mouth of the River *Bagradas*, where he incamped.

The terror was no less within *Carthage*, upon the fame of this losse, than had been the joy of the late great victory. All that could bear arms, were sent into the field, under *Hanno*; whom, it seems, they thought the most able of their Captains, surviving the late accidents of War. If there were any Law among them forbidding the employment of one sole Generall neer unto their City (for they are known to have trusted one man abroad) the time did not permit, in this hasty exigent, to devise about recalling it. But thirty principall men are chosen by the Senat, to bring *Hanno* to *Amilcar*'s camp, and by all good perswasions to reconcile them. This could not be effected in one day. It nearly touched *Amilcar* in his honour, that the carelesnesse of *Hannibal* seemed

to be imputed unto him, by sending his enemy to moderate his proceedings. Nevertheless after many conferences, the authority of the Senators prevailed; *Amilcar* & *Hanno* were made friends; and thenceforth, whilst this war lasted, *Hanno* took warning by *Hannibals* calamities, to follow good directions, though afterwards he returned to his old and deadly hatred.

In the mean season *Matho* was come abroad, as meaning to use the reputation of his late success, whilst it gave some life unto his business. He had reason to do as he did: but he wanted skill to deal with *Amilcar*. The skirmishes, and light exercises of war, wherein *Amilcar* trained his *Carthaginians*, did so far abate the strength, and withall diminish the credit of *Matho*; that he resolved to try the fortune of one battail: wherein either his own desire should be accomplished, or his cares ended. To this conclusion the *Carthaginians* were no less prone, than *Matho*: as being weary of these long troubles, and insupportable expences; confident in the valour of their own men, which had approved it self in many trials; and well assured of *Amilcar* his great worth, whereunto the enemy hath not what to oppose. According to this determination, each part was diligent in making provision: inviting their friends to help; and drawing forth into the field, all that lay in Garrison.

The issue of this battail might have been foretold, without help of witchcraft. *Matho*, and his followers, had nothing whereon to presume, save their daring spirits, which had been well cooled by the many late skirmishes, wherein they had learned how to run away. The *Carthaginians* had reason to dare, as having been often victorious; and in all points else they had the better of their enemies; especially (which is worth all the rest) they had such a Commander, as was not easily to be matched in that Age. Neither was it likely that the desire of liberty should work so much, in men accustomed to servitude, as the honour of their State would, in citizens, whose future & present good lay all at once engaged in that adventure. So the *Carthaginians* won a great victory, wherein most of the *Africans* their enemies were slain; the rest fled into a Town, which was not to be defended, & therefore they all yielded; and *Matho* himself was taken alive. Immediately upon this victory, all the *Africans*; that had rebelled, made submission to their old masters: *Vtica* only, and *Hippagreta* stood out, as knowing how little they deserved of favour. But they were soon forced, to take what conditions best pleased the victors. *Matho* and his followers were led to *Carthage* in triumph; where they suffered all torments that could be devised, in recompence of the mischiefs which they had wrought in this war. The war had lasted three years, and about four moneths, when it came to this good end: which the *Carthaginians*, whose subjects did not love them, should wish less expence, by contenting their Mercenaries, have prevented in the beginning.

### §. IIII.

*How the Mercenaries of the Carthaginians, that were in Sardinia, rebelled: and were afterwards driven out by the Islanders. The faithlesse dealing of the Romans with the Carthaginians, in taking from them Sardinia, contrary to the peace.*

WHILEST *Matho* and *Spendius* were making terrible combustion in *Africa*; other Mercenaries of the *Carthaginians* had kindled the like fire in *Sardinia*: where murdering *Bolsar* the Governour, and other *Carthaginians*, they were in hope to get, and hold that Island to their own use. Against these, one *Hanno* was sent with a small Army (such as could be spared in that busie time) consisting likewise of Mercenaries, levied on the sudden. But these companies that followed *Hanno*, finding it more for their safety, & present profit, to joyn themselves with those that were already revolted; than to endanger themselves by battail, for the good of that common-weal, of which they had no care; began to enter into practice with the *Sardinian* Rebels, offering to run one course of fortune with them in their enterprise. This their offer was kindly taken; but their faith was suspected. Wherefore to take away all jealousie and distrust, they resolved to hang up their Commander *Hanno*, and performed it. A common practice it hath been in all Ages, with those that have undertaken the quarrell of an unjust war, to enjoyne the performance of some notorious and villainous act,

to those that come in to them as seconds, with offer to partake, and to assist the impious purposes which they have in hand. It is indeed the best pawn, that desperate men can deliver to each other; to performe some such actions, as are equally unpardonable to all.

By such a kinde of cruelty did the ungratefull *Mantineans* murder a Garrison of *Achaians*, sent unto them for their defence against the *Lacedemonians*, by *Aratus*; who, when he had formerly possessed himself of their City, by right of war, did not only spare the sack and spoil thereof, but gave them equal freedome, with the rest of the Cities united. These *Revolts* are also common in our Court wars; where, in the conquests of new fortunes, and making of new parties, and factions, without the depression or destruction of old friends, we cannot be received and trusted by old enemies. *Cesont les coups de vieille escrime. These* (say the French) *be the blowes of the old art of fencing.*

These Mercenaries in *Sardinia* were no whit less violent in their purpose, than were *Spendius*, and his associates: only they wanted a *Matho* among them, to negotiate with the inhabitants of the Province. The Islanders were no less glad, than the souldiers, that the *Carthaginians* were expelled the Country: but they could not agree about the profit of the victory. The *Sardinians* thought that it was enough, if they rewarded the souldiers for their pains taken. Contrariwise, the souldiers were of opinion, that the title of the *Carthaginians* to that Ile, was devolved unto themselves, by right of conquest. The same quarrell would (in likelihood) have risen between *Spendius* with his Mercenaries, & their *African* friends; if the common desire of both had once taken effect: unless the riches of *Carthage* had served to content them all. But in *Sardinia*, where there was none other valuable reward, than possession and rule of the Country, the matter was not easily taken up. So they fell to blowes, which how they were dealt, I know not; but finally the Mercenaries were driven out, and compelled to save themselves in *Italy*. Before their departure out of *Sardinia*, they had invited the *Romans* into it; with as good right, as the *Mantineans* had called them into *Stail*. Yet this offer was refused, upon reasons that follow.

Some *Italian* Merchants had relieved *Matho* and *Spendius* with corn: of whom the *Carthaginians* took almost five hundred, and held them in prison. Hereof was made a great complaint: so that the *Romans* sent Embassadors to *Carthage*, requiring satisfaction. It was no time for the *Carthaginians* to dispute: they quietly yielded to release them all. This was so kindly taken, that they forbade all their Merchants, to trade thenceforth with the Rebels; admonishing them to carry all provisions to *Carthage*. And upon the same reason, did they forbear to meddle with *Sardinia*, or to accept the City of *Vtica*, offering it self unto their subjection. This might have served, as a notable example of the *Roman* faith, to all posterity: had not the issue proved, that it was meer regard of greater profit, which kept them so temperate, no longer than the hope lasted of thriving better thereby, than they should have done by open breach of faith. The whole estate of *Carthage* depended at that time, upon the vertue of *Amilcar*: who, had he been overthrown by *Spendius* or *Matho*, in one main battail, that mighty City must either have fallen into the barbarous hands of mercelless villains, or have humbled her self under protection of the *Romans*, with whom she had lately striven for superiority. That extreme necessity, whereinto *Matho* reduced the City, by the fortune of one fall made out of *Tunis*, is enough to prove, that *Carthage* was not far from such a miserable choise. Wherefore it was not unwilfully done of the *Romans*, to make such demonstration of kindnesse, and honourable dealing, as might invite a rich, but sinking ship, to run her self aground upon their shore. But when all was well ended in *Africa*, and the *Carthaginians* began to prepare for the recovery of *Sardinia*; then did Ambition put off her goodly vizour. The *Romans* perceiving that *Carthage*, beyond their hope, had recovered her feet again; began to strike at her head. They entertained the proffer of those Mercenaries, that were fled out of *Sardinia*; and they denounced war against this enfeebled and impoverished City, under a shamelesse pretence; that the preparations made for *Sardinia*, were made indeed against Rome it self. The *Carthaginians* knew themselves unable to resist; and therefore yielded to the *Romans* demand; renouncing unto them all their right in *Sardinia*. But this was not enough. They would have twelve hundred talents, in recompence belike (for I see

not what reason they could alledge) of the great fear which they had endured, of an invasion from *Carthage*. It is indeed plain, that they impudently sought occasion of war. But necessity taught the *Carthaginians* patience; and the money was payed, how hardly soever it was raised. From this time forward, let not *Rome* complain of the *Punick* faith, in breach of Covenants: she herself hath broken the peace already, which *Amilcar* purposeth to make her dearly repent; but what *Amilcar* lives not to perform, shall be accomplished by *Hannibal* his renowned sonne.

§. V.

*How the affairs of Carthage went between the African Rebellion, and the second Punick Warre.*

**T**He injurious dealing of the *Romans*, expressing their desire to pick a quarrell; served to instruct the *Carthaginians* in a necessary lesson; That either they must make themselves the stronger, or else resolve to be obedient unto those that were more mighty. In a City long accustomed to rule, the braver determination easily took place; and the best means were thought upon, for the increase of puissance and Empire. The strength, and the jealousy of the *Romans*, forbade all attempts upon the Mediterranean Seas; but the riches of *Spain*, that lay upon the Ocean, were unknown to *Rome*: wherefore that Province might serve, both to exercise the *Carthaginians* in war, and to repair their decayed forces, with all needfull supplies. Of the *Spanish* Expedition, the charge and sovereign trust was committed unto *Amilcar*: upon whom his Country did wholly repose itself; in hope to recover strength by his means, that had saved it from ruine.

*Hanno*, with some other envious men that were of his faction, took little pleasure in the generall love and honour, which daily increased towards *Amilcar* and his friends. Yet could they not deny him to be the most worthy of command in all the City: only they commended peace and quietnesse; advising men to beware of provoking the *Romans*, in whose amity they said, that the felicity of *Carthage* did consist. By such discourses, harsh to the ears of good Citizens, who had feeling of the wrong done to their Common-weal, they got none other reputation, than of singularity: which the ignorant sort suspected to be wisdom.

But the glory of *Amilcar* was continually upheld and enlarged, by many notable services that he did, to the singular benefit of his Country. He passed the straights of *Hercules*, (now called the straights of *Gibraltar*) and landed on the western coasts of *Spain*; in which Country, during nine years that he lived there, he subjected unto the State of *Carthage* the better part of all those Provinces. But finally in a battell that he fought with a Nation in *Portugale*, called the *Vestones*, (defending himself along time with an admirable resolution) he was invironed and slain: carrying with him to the grave the same great honour and fame, by which in many signall victories, he had acquired the name of a second *Mars*.

After the death of *Amilcar*, *Asdrubal* his son in law was made Generall of the *Carthaginian* forces in *Spain*. This was a good man of war; but far better in practice and cunning than in deeds of armes. By his notable dexterity in matter of negotiation, he greatly enlarged the Dominion of *Carthage*: adding to many subjects and confederates thereunto, that the *Romans* began to grow jealous again of this hasty increase. He built a goodly City, upon a commodious Haven, in the Kingdome of *Granado*, opposite to that of *Oran* in *Africa*, and gave it the name of *New Carthage*, which to this day is nearly retaineth, being called now \* *Carthagena*. With this successe of the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*, the *Romans* were not a little troubled; but began to accuse their own negligence. For whereas they had formerly taken so much pains to beat them out of the Ile of *Sicily*, as suspecting their neighbourhood there; they had now, by cumbering themselves in a war of far lesse importance, (whereof I shall speak anon) given them leisure without interruption, to recover upon their own Continent, a Dominion by far exceeding, both in the bodies of men and in revenue, that which the *Romans* had taken from them. But how to help this, at the present they know not; for they daily expected to be invaded by the *Gauls*, their ancient enemies, and nearest neighbours to the West. But he needeth little help of force, that knoweth himself to be feared: it is enough if he

10

20

30

40

50

\* The *Spaniards* have since built a City of the same name in the West Indies: which being peopled by them in the year 1532, was sacked by the *English* in the year 1585.

request, since his request shall have the vertue of a command.

Yet were the *Romans* utterly destitute of all good colour, that might help them to intermeddle in *Spain*. The *Spaniards* were then unacquainted with *Rome*, whereof (in probability) they scarce had heard the name: so that there were no *Mamertines*, nor other such Rebels, to call in *Roman* succours, but in the enterprise of *Sardinia*, the *Romans* had learned an impudent pretence, that might also serve their turn in *Spain*. For though it were apparent, that the *Spanish* affairs had no relation to the peace between these two Cities, and though it were nothing likely, that *Asdrubal* had any purpose, to extend his victories unto the gates of *Rome*, or to any of the *Roman* frontiers: yet (as if some such matter had been suspected) they sent unto him, requiring that he should forbear to proceed any further, than to the River of *Iberus*. In addressing their messengers, rather to *Asdrubal*, than to the City of *Carthage*; they seem to have hoped, that howsoever the generality of the *Carthaginians* had sweetly swallowed many bitter pills, to avoid all occasion of war with *Rome*, yet the bravery of one man might prove more seditious, and resenting the injury, return such answer, as would inangle his whole Country in the quarrell, that they to much desired; and might embrace at leisure, when once they had found apparent cause. But *Asdrubal* finely devided their expectation. He pretended no manner of dislike at all: and whereas they would have this insolent covenant inserted into the Articles of peace; he took upon him to do it, of his own power, with such appearance of conformity to their will, that they went their wayes contented, and fought no further.

If it had been so, that the State of *Carthage*, thereunto pressed by the *Romans*, for fear of present war, had ratified this new composition made by *Asdrubal*; yet should it not have stood bound in honour, to observe the same carefully, unless an oath had also been extorted, to make all sure. But since all passed quietly, under the bare authority of *Asdrubal*, this Capitulation was none other in effect than a second breach of peace; whereof the *Romans* might be accused more justly, than they could accuse the *Carthaginians* of perjury, (as they after did) for refusing to stand to it.

By this Treaty with *Asdrubal*, the *Romans* won some reputation in *Spain*. For when it was once conceived by the *Spaniards*, that the City which would needs be mistress over them, stood in fear of herself, of receiving blows from a stouter Dame; there were soon found some, that by offering themselves to the protection of *Rome*, became (as they thought) fellow-servants with *Carthage*. But the *Carthaginians* will shortly teach them another lesson. The *Saguntines*, a people on the South-side of *Iberus*, entred into confederacy with the *Romans*, and were gladly accepted. Surely it was lawful unto the *Romans*, to admit the *Saguntines*, or any other people (neither subject, nor open enemy in war to the *Carthaginians*) into their society: and unlawful it was unto the *Carthaginians*, to use violence towards any that should thus once become confederate with *Rome*. Nevertheless, if we consider the late agreement made with *Asdrubal*, we shall find that the *Romans* could have none other honest color of requiring it, than an implicit covenant of making the River *Iberus* a bound, over which they themselves would not pass, in any Discovery or Conquest by them intended to be made upon *Spain* in which regard, they might have some honest pretence to require the like of the *Carthaginians*; though *Rome* as yet had no foot, on the one side of *Iberus*, whereas *Carthage*, on the other side of that River, held almost all the Country. Howsoever it were, this indignity was not so easily digested, as former injuries had been. For it was a matter of ill consequence, that the Nations which had heard of no greater power than the *Carthaginian*, should behold *Saguntum* resting securely among them, upon confidence of help from a more mighty City. Wherefore either in this respect, or for that the sense is most feeling of the latest injuries, or rather for that now the *Carthaginians* were of power to do themselves right: war against *Saguntum* was generally thought upon, let the *Romans* take it how they list. In such termes were the *Carthaginians*, when *Asdrubal* died, after he had commanded in *Spain* eight years: (being slain by a slave, whose master he had put to death) and the Great *Hannibal*, son of the Great *Amilcar*, was chosen Generall in his stead.

## S. VI.

*The estate of Greece from the death of Pyrrhus, to the reign of Philip the sonne of Demetrius in Macedon.*

IN the long term of the first Punick war; and the vacation following, between it and the second, the estate of Greece, after the death of Pyrrhus, was grown somewhat like unto that, wherein Philip of Macedon had found it; though far weaker, as the an after-spring. The whole Country had recovered by degrees, a form of liberty: in petty tyrannies (bred of those inferior Captains, which in the times of generall combustion, had seized each upon such towns as he could get) were, by force or accident, extirpated, and reformed; & some States were risen to such greatness, as not only served to defend themselves, but to give protection to others. This conversion to the better, proceeded from the like dissensions and tumults in Macedon, as had been in Greece, when Philip first began to encroach upon it. For after many quarrels and great wars, about the Kingdome of Macedon, between Antigonus the elder, Cassander, Demetrius, Lyfimachus, Seleucus, Pyrrhus, and the Gauls: Antigonus the son of Demetrius, finally got and held it, reigning six and thirty years; yet so, that he was divers times thence expelled, not only by the Gauls, and by Pyrrhus, as hath been already shewed, but by Alexander the son of Pyrrhus the Epirus, from whose father he had hardly won it. This hapned unto him, by the revolt of his souldiers, even at such time, as having overthrown with great slaughter an Army of the Gauls, he was converting his forces against the Athenians, whom he compelled to receive his Garrisons. But his young son Demetrius raised an Army, wherewith he chased Alexander, not only out of Macedon, but out of his own Epirus, and restored his father to the Kingdome.

By the help of this young Prince Demetrius (though in another kind) Antigonus got into his possession the Citadell of Corinth; which was justly termed the fetter of Greece. The Citadell called *Acrorcorinthus*, stood upon a steep rocky hill on the North side of the town, and was by nature and art so strong, that it seemed impregnable. It commanded the town; which was of much importance, as occupying the whole breadth of the Isthmus, that running between the Aegean and Ionique Seas, joyneth Peloponnesus to the main of Greece. Wherefore he that held possession of this Castle was able to cut off all passage by land, from one half of Greece unto the other; besides the commodity of the two Seas, upon both of which, this rich and goodly City had commodious havens. Alexander, the son of Polysperchon; and after his death, Gratesipolis his wife, had gotten Corinth in the great shuffling of Provinces and Towns, that was made between Alexanders Princes. Afterwards it passed from hand to hand, untill it came, I know not how, to one Alexander; of whom I finde nothing else, than that he was thought to be poisoned by this Antigonus, who deceived his wife Nicæa thereof, and got it from her by a trick. The device was this. Antigonus sent his young Demetrius to Corinth, willing him to court Nicæa, and seek her marriage. The foolish old widow perceived not how unfit a match she was for the young Prince, but entertained the fancy of marriage; where to the old King was even as ready to consent, as was his son to desire, and came thither in person to solemnize it. Hereupon all Corinth was filled with sacrifices, feasts, plaies, and all sorts of games: in the midst of which, Antigonus watched his time; and got into the Castle, beguiling the poor Lady, whose jealousy had been exceeding diligent in keeping it. Of this purchase he was so glad, that he could not contain himself within the gravity becoming his old age. But as he had stolen it; so was it again stolen from him: neither lived he to revenge the losse of it, being already spent with age.

Demetrius, the son of this Antigonus, succeeding unto his father, reigned ten years. He made greater proof of his vertue before he was King, than after. The Dardanians, Epiotians, and Achaans; held him continually busied in war; wherein his fortune was variable, and for the more part ill. About these times the power of the Macedonians began to decay: and the Gracians to cast off their yoke.

Philip, the only son of Demetrius, was a young child when his father died; and therefore Antigonus, his uncle, had the charge of the Kingdome, during the minority of this Prince;

Prince, but he assumed the name and power of a King, though he respected Philip as his own son, to whom he left the Crown at his death; This Antigonus, was called the Tutor, in regard of his protectorship; and was also called *Doson*, that is as much as, *Will-giver*, because he was slow in his liberality. He repressed the Dardanians and Thessalians, which molested his Kingdome, in the beginning of his reign. Upon confidence of this good service, he took state upon him, as one that rather were King in his own right, than only a Protector. Hereupon the people fell to mutiny; but were soon appeased by fair words, and a seeming unwillingness of his to meddle any more with the Government. The Achaians took from him the city of Athens, soon after Demetrius his death; and likely they were to have wrought him out of all, or most that he held in Greece, if their own estate had not been endangered by a nearer enemy. But civil dissension, which had overthrown the power of Greece, when it flourished most; overthrew it easily now again, when it had scarcely recovered strength after a long sickness; and gave to this Antigonus no lesse authority therein, than Philip the father of Alexander, got by the like advantage.

These Achaians from small beginnings, had increased in short time to great strength and fame: so that they grew the most redoubted Nation of all the Greeks. By the equality of their Lawes, and by their clemency (notwithstanding that they were a long time held under by the Macedonians and Spartans) they did not only draw all others by their love and alliance, but induced, through their example, the rest of the Cities of Peloponnesus, to be governed by one Law, and to use one and the same sort of weights, measure, and money.

Aratus, the Sicyonian, was the first that united them again; and gave them courage, after that they had been by the Macedonian Captains divided into many Principalities. In elder times they were governed by Kings, as most of the great Cities of Greece were; to which kind of rule they first subjected themselves, after the descent of the Heracidae, when Tisamenus the son of Orestes possessed the Territory of Achaia. In this estate they continued to the time of Gyges; after whom, when his sons sought to change the Legall government of their Predecessors into Tyranny, they expelled them, and made their State popular; as seeming most equal. This form of Common-weal had continuance, with some small changes according to the diversity of times, till the reign of Philip and Alexander Kings of Macedon: who tempest-like overturned all things in that part of the world. For those twelve Cities, called the Cities of alliance, whereof Helice, and Bura or Olenus, the Sea had eaten up a little before the Battail of Leutres; were, by disturbance of the Macedonians, divided from each other, and trained into a war, no lesse foolish than cruell, among themselves. But in the one hundred and four and twentieth Olympiad, in which, or near it, Ptolemy the son of Lagus, Lyfimachus, Seleucus, and Ptolemy Ceraunus, left the world; two of ten remaining Cities and people, namely, the Patrenses and the Dimai, united themselves, and laid the foundation of that generall accord, and re-union, which after followed. For having been, some of them Partisans with sundry Macedonian Captains, and others having been governed by petty Kings; they began to fasten themselves in a strong league of amity, partly, in the Olympiad before spoken of, and partly, at such time as Pyrrhus made his first voyage into Italy. Now after the uniting of the Patrenses and Dimai, to whom also the Cities of Tireæa, and Phara, joyned themselves; Agira chased out her Garrisons: and the Buriens, killing their Kings, entred with the Ceraunians into the same Confederacy. These Cities, for twenty and five years, used the same form of Government with the Achaians; who by a Senatory and two Prætors, ordered all things in their Common-weal; and soon after by one Prætor, or Commander: of which, Marcus Carynenus was the first, and Aratus the second.

This Aratus was a noble young Gentleman of Sicyon, who living at Argos in exile, whilst his Country was oppressed by Tyrants, found means, through the help of other banished men, to enter their own city by night, with ladders; whence they chased the Tyrant, and restored the people to liberty. This was in the time of Antigonus Gonatas King of Macedon, a Prince more busie in watching what to get among the Greeks, than wise in looking to his own. For fear of Antigonus, the Sicyonians enter into the Achaian league: which though at that time it received more increase by their accession than it added strength to them; yet the benefit of this conjunction served well enough against



against *Antigonus*, whose subtlety was somewhat greater than his valour. As the industry and counsell of *Aratus* delivered his Country from bondage, and fortified it by the *Achaean* league; so further, by his great liberality, with the exceeding great cost of 150. talents, he pacified the inexplicable controversies, between the banished *Styrians*, which returned with him, & the other Citizens that had possession of these mens Lands; as also with the same money he drew many others to assist him in those enterprises following, that redounded to the singular good of all *Achaia*. The money he obtained of *Ptolemy Euergetes* King of *Egypt*, who partly had a desire to hold some strong & sure friendship in *Greece*, partly was delighted with the conversation of *Aratus* himself, that made a dangerous voyage to him into *Egypt*, and fed his pleasure in goodly pictures, with the gift of many curious pieces, wherein the workmen of *Syion* excelled.

The first of *Aratus* his great attempts, was the surprize of the *Acrocorinthus* or Citadel of *Corinth*; which he wan by night, being thereinto guided by some thieves that he had hired for the purpose, who living in the place, had practised to rob *Antigonus* his treasury, passing in and out by a secret path among the rocks. Yet was he fain to fight for it, ere he could get it: though indeed *Antigonus* his soldiours were rather overcome by their own fear, than by any force of the assailants; as mistrusting lest the *Achaians* were more in number, than in truth they were, and having lost the advantages of the place already, upon which they had presumed, before they were aware of any enemy.

In these kind of night-services, ambushments, surprises, and practices, *Aratus* was very cunning, adventurous, and valiant: in open field, and plain battail, he was timorous. By this strange mixture of cowardize and courage, he ministred argument of disputation, to Philosphers and others; Whether a valiant man (as he was esteemed, and in some cases approved) might look pale and tremble, when he began battail; and whether the vertue of Fortitude were diversified, by the sundry natures of men, & in a manner confined unto severall sorts of action. In resolving which doubts it may be said, that all vertue is perfected in men by exercise, wherein they are trained by occasion: though a naturall inclination standeth in need of little practice; whereas the defect hereof must be supplied with much instruction, use, good successe, and other help, yet hardly shall grow absolute in generall. Such was *Aratus* in matter of Warre. In sincere affection to his Country he was unreprouable, and so acknowledged: as his following actions will truly testifie.

When *Acrocorinthus* was taken, and joynd unto the Common-wealth of *Achaia*, the *Megearians* revolted soon after from *Antigonus*, and entred into the same Corporation. So did the *Trazenians*, and the *Epidaurians*: whereby this new erected State grew so powerfull, that it adventured to take *Athens*, from the *Macedonians*, & *Argos* & *Megalopolis*, from tyrants that held them. The enterprise upon the *Athenians* was of none effect. For though *Aratus* wasted the Ile of *Salamis*, to shew his strength, and sent home the *Athenian* prisoners, without ranfome, to allure the City by shew of love; yet the *Athenians* stirred neither against him, nor for him, as being now grown honest slaves to the *Macedonians*. Upon *Argos* the adventure was carryed more strongly. The *Achaians* came sometimes to the gates of the City, but the people stirred not: once they entred it, and might have won it, if the Citizens would have lent any help to the recovery of their own freedome; sundry times, and with diverse events, they fought with the Tyrants, (who rose up one after another in *Argos*) in open field, and slue one of them in battail; but all succied not: untill at length *Aristomachus* the Tyrant was so terrified, perswaded, and hired by *Aratus*, that he consented to resigne his Estate. The like did *Xenon* the Tyrant of *Hermione*, and *Cleonymus*, that had oppressed the *Phliatians*.

Whilest this busines with the *Argives* was on foot, *Lyfiadas* the Tyrant of *Megalopolis*, was so well handled by *Aratus*, that, without compulsion, he gave liberty to his City, and annexed it to the Councell of *Achaia*: whereby he got such credit, that he was chosen Generall of their forces (which was a yearly Office, and might not be held two years together by one man): every second year, for a certain while, he and *Aratus* succeded one another by turnes. But those late Tyrants, and new Citizens, *Lyfiadas* and *Aristomachus*, were carried with private passion from care of the generall good; in which courtes they opposed *Aratus*, to the great hurt of *Achaia*, as shall appear in due time.

The

The *Achaans* having obtained so much puissance and reputation, that *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt* was become Patron of their Alliance, and (in title of honour) Generall of their forces by Sea and Land, made open War upon *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus Gonatas*, for the liberty of *Athens*. It is strange and worthy of noting, That when *Aratus* in this quarrell had lost a battail, the *Athenians* wore Garlands, in sign of joy, to flatter their good Lords the *Macedonians*, that had won the victory. Such were now the *Athenians* become; in whom the rule was verified, that holds true in generall of the multitude, *Aut humiliter servit, aut superbe dominatur; It is either base in service, or insolent in command*. Nevertheless when *Demetrius* was dead, *Aratus* performed that by money, which he could not by force; and corrupting the Captain of the *Macedonian* Garrison, purchased liberty to the *Athenians*, who thenceforth held good correspondence with the *Achaans*, loving them, and speaking well of them, which was all that they could do: but into their Corporation they entred not, scorning it belike, in regard of their own out-worn glory.

Now as the Common-wealth of *Achaia* daily increased within *Peloponnesus*, by justice and honesty; so did the *Aetolians*, in the utter part of *Greece*, yea and within *Peloponnesus* it self, wax very powerfull, by sturdiasse of body, and rude courage in fight, without help of any other vertue. They had stoutly defended themselves against *Antipater* and *Craterus*, partly by daring to do and suffer much, partly by the natural strength and fastnesse of their Country; but especially by the benefit of the time, which called away these famous Captains to other businesse, as hath been related. They had molested *Cassander*, in favour of *Antigonus*, & were themselves as much plagued by him, & by the *Acarnanians*, a little, but a stout Nation, that took his part. Afterwards they had to do with *Demetrius*, the son of the first *Antigonus*, and more or lesse with all the Kings of *Macedon* succeeding him. They likewise held often war with the *Acarnanians*, *Athamanians*, *Epirots*, and many Cities in *Peloponnesus*: so that they were hardned with perpetual travail; seldome putting off their Armour. But their hardnesse ill deserved the name of valour, seeing they had no regard of honesty or friendship, measuring all things by their own insolent wils, and thinking all people base-minded, that were not as fierce and outrageous as themselves.

These *Aetolians* had lately made great spoils in *Peloponnesus*, and occupied a good part of the Country. They had invaded the friends of the *Achaans*; taken and sacked *Fallene*; where although they were soundly beaten by *Aratus*, yet their desire of gain made them make a new voyage thither, as to a Country wherein somewhat was to be gotten. But they were forced to look another way, by *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus Gonatas*: who pressed them so hardly, that they were driven to seek help of the *Achaans*; which they obtained. The war which the *Achaans* made upon *Demetrius*, without *Peloponnesus*, in *Attica*, though it tended to expelling the *Macedons* out of *Greece*, yet the benefit thereof redounded chiefly unto the *Aetolians*, at whose instance it was set on foot: for thereby were the *Macedonian* forces diverted from home. Neither was this good turn unacknowledged; though very basely the *Aetolians*, giving thanks in words, devised how to requite the benefit with some great mischief. They saw that the *Achaans* were desirous to bring all *Peloponnesus* into their Alliance & Corporation: of which intent, the *Lacedamonians* were very jealous. Wherefore these *Aetolians* laboured earnestly, to set the *Lacedamonians* and *Achaans* together by the ears: hoping that if this might come to passe, they themselves should be called in to help (it skilled not on what side) and so get no small share, both in booty and Territory. Neither did they forbear to communicate this their device unto *Antigonus*, offering to make him partaker of their gain, whom they knew to be offended with the many losses, that this Kingdom had sustained by the *Achaans*. Of this plot *Aratus* was aware: who therefore determined to suffer many indignities, rather than to give the *Lacedamonians* cause to take Arms. But this resolution was taken somewhat too late: & not altogether in his own power to hold. He had been meddling with the *Lacedamonians*, that were dependants of *Lacedamon*: and thereby had provoked the *Lacedamonians* to look about them; seeing that all *Peloponnesus*, excepting themselves, the *Eleans*, and a few *Arcadians* their friends (who also were attempted) was already become *Achaean*.

The City of *Sparta* was in ill case about these times; and subject to the injuries of any stronger neighbour, *Pyrrhus* had greatly weakened it; The *Aetolians* entring *Laconia* with an

an Army, had carryed away fifty thousand slaves; and, which was worse, their discipline was corrupted, Avarice and Luxury reigned among them, the poor was oppressed by the rich, and the generosity of spirit, that had sometime been their general virtue, was hardly now to be found among the best of them. There were left in *Sparta* no more than seven hundred natural Citizens; of whom not above one hundred had Lands all the rest were needy people, and desirous of innovation. Hereupon followed intestine sedition, which endangered the City most of all. *Agis* a good King, who sought to reform the disorders of the State, exhorted the people to a strict observation of *Lycurgus* his laws. To which purpose he caused them to passe an Act, for the abolishing of all debts, and equal division of Lands. All the younger, and poorer sort were glad of this: but the rich men opposed it. These had recourse unto *Leonidas* the other King, (for in *Sparta* were two Kings) who took their part: being himself a dissolute man, as one trained up in the Court of *Syria*, whence also he had his wife. In this contention *Leonidas* was expelled the City, and a new King chosen in his stead. But *Agis* his friends & Counsellors in this enterprise, abused his good meaning to their own private commodity. They were hasty to take away all debts, and cancell all bonds, for they themselves were deeply indebted: but the division of Lands they afterwards hindred, because their own possessions were great. Hence arose a tumult in *Sparta*, which these men increased by their foul oppression of the poorer Citizens. So that in fine, *Leonidas* was brought home, and restored to his Kingdom, and the two adverse Kings driven to take Sanctuary, out of which, *Cleombrotus*, the late-made King, was dismissed into exile: but *Agis* was trained forth, drawn into prison, and there by his enemies condemned and strangled, together with his Mother, and his old Grand-mother. The like to this was never known in *Sparta*: and (which is the more odious) this cruelty proceeded from the *Ephori*, Magistrates that should have given Patronage to the lawes, using their power, and more power than to them belonged, against a King, that had proceeded orderly in reforming the City as the law required.

The death of *Agis* was much lamented by all good Citizens; and served to establish the impotent rule of a few tyrannical oppressors. In which case *Aratus* might well hope to adjoin *Lacedaemon* to the *Achaens* Common-wealth: though it were great injustice to take such advantages, and attempt by force, that which would have redounded to the generall good of *Peloponnesus*, and to the benefit of *Sparta* it self, if it could have been wrought by perswasion.

But the same man who redressed the disorders of *Sparta*, and revenged the death of *Agis*, did also requite the unjust attempts of the *Achaens*, even in their own kinde: obtruding upon them by force an union of all *Peloponnesus*, though little to their good liking, for that the *Lacedaemonians* and their King, should have been the principall; not they and their Prætor. *Leonidas* having thus caused *Agis* to be slain: took his wife that was very rich and beautifull, and gave her in marriage (perforce) to his own son *Cleomenes*. This young prince fell greatly enamoured on his wife, and sought to win her affection, as well as he had her person. He discoursed much with her about the purpose of her former husband *Agis*, and by pitying his misfortune, began to entertain a desire of accomplishing that, wherein *Agis* had failed. So comming himself to be King, whilst he was very young, he gladly embraced all occasions of War: for that he hoped by strong hand to effect that, which *Agis* by proceeding formally, in so corrupt an estate of the City, had attempted to his own ruine. Therefore when the *Ephori* gave him in charge, to take and fortifie *Atheneum*, a Temple on the marches of *Laconia*, to which both they and the *Megalopolitans* pretended title, he readily performed it. Hereof *Aratus* made no complaint, but sought to take by surprize *Tegea* & *Orchomenus*, Cities then confederate with the *Lacedaemonians*; wherein, his intelligence failing, he lost the labor of a painful nights travel, & discovered his enmity to *Sparta*, of which *Cleomenes* was nothing sorry. By these degrees the war began. In the entrance whereto *Aratus* had discovered the *Ætolian* practice, and therefore would have stayed the quarrel from proceeding too far. But *Lyfias* and *Aristomachus* would needs fight, and he could do none other than be ruled by them: especially seeing *Cleomenes* was so urgent. *Aristomachus* was at that time General of the *Achaens*, (He and *Lyfias* being of great account, since they had abandoned their tyranny) who sent unto *Aratus*, lying then in *Athens*, and required his assistance in a journey to be made into *Laconia*. No dissuasions of *Aratus* would serve, therefore

therefore he came in person, and took part of a businesse, little pleasing him in the present, and less in the future. When he met with *Cleomenes*, he durst not fight; but opposed himself against *Aristomachus*, who desired to give battail. Yet had the *Achaens* twenty thousand foot, and one thousand horse, in their Army: whereas *Cleomenes* had no more than five thousand in all. This gave reputation to the *Lacedaemonians*, & raised an ill report upon *Aratus*; which *Lyfias* helped to make worse, by accusing his cowardize. Nevertheless the *Achaens* would not fall out with *Aratus* their Benefactor, but chose him their General the year following; against *Lyfias* his accuser that fled for the place. Being General himself, it behoved him to confute, with deeds, the slanderous words of *Lyfias*. Therefore he purposed to set upon the *Eleans*: but was met withall on the way, near unto the Mount *Lycaeus*, by *Cleomenes*; who vanquished him in a great battail, and drave him to hide himself all night for fear, so that he was thought to have been slain. This misadventure *Aratus* recompered by a trick of his own more naturall occupation: performing with his broken Army, that which could hardly have been expected, had he been victorious. For whilst there wasno suspicion of any great matter that he could undertake, he suddenly wrought with some of the *Man-tinæans*, who did let him into their city. These *Man-tinæans*, (whom he had thus brought to his purpose) had once before joyned themselves with the *Achaens*; but shortly upon fear, or some other passion, they gave themselves to the *Ætolians*; and from the *Ætolians*, presently after this victory, to *Cleomenes*, from whom immediately they were thus won. For this their levity they were not punished, but freely admitted now again into the *Achaen* society. As this good success repaired the credit of *Aratus*; so another battail almost ruined it. *Cleomenes* and he encountered near unto *Megalopolis*; where the *Achaens* had somewhat the better at the first, but their General durst not follow his advantage. Thereupon *Lyfias*, of whom we spake before, grew somewhat impatient with anger; & taking with him all the horse, brake upon the *Lacedaemonians*, whom he routed at the beginning, but pursuing them too far into places of hard passage, he was slain by them and his followers driven back upon their own Companions; in such sort, that finally all the Army was disordered and put to flight. This was a great losse and incensed the *Achaens* against *Aratus*: yet their indignation proceeded no further, than that they refused to make any longer contribution, towards the pay of those Mercenaries which he had waged. This *Aratus* took patiently, and followed the war nevertheless; wherein though *Cleomenes* wan some Towns, and *Aratus* got the better in one small fight, yet little of importance was done; the *Achaens* being weary, and the *Spartan* King intente upon another busines.

*Cleomenes* having led into the field all that were like to hinder his purpose, and tired them with painfull journeys, forsook the *Achaen* war on a sudden, and came unexpected home to *Sparta*, where he slew the *Ephori*, and restored by force the ancient discipline of *Lycurgus*. Then gave he an account of his doings: and shewing by what degrees the *Ephori* had incroched upon the power of Kings, & many disorders had grown in the City; he justified his proceedings, and forthwith began to make equal division of the Lands, reducing all to the first institution. He also supplied the defect of Citizens, by choosing new, out of such as were friends to the State, and valiant men: so that henceforth his Country might not altogether stand in need of Mercenary help, as it lately had done, to save it self from the *Ætolians*, *Illyrians*, and such other enemies. All this was dispatched in great haste; the *Spartans* well satisfied, and *Cleomenes* himself ready in the field, ere his enemies could take any advantage of these his domestical troubles.

The *Achaens* hearing of this great alteration in *Sparta*, thought that it would be long ere *Cleomenes* durst issue forth of the City, for fear of some rebellion. But it was not long ere they heard, that he had wasted all the Country of *Megalopolis*, had ranged over all *Arcadia* at his pleasure; and was admitted into *Maninae*, and ready to take other places, even of *Achaia*. These newes displeased them not a little: but they must patiently endure to hear worse. For when *Cleomenes* had shaken off the power of the *Ephori*, that curbed his authority, he proceeded more roundly in his work, being better obeyed, and by better men. His *Lacedaemonians* refused their ancient courage; and he himself had the heart to demand the Principality of *Greece*. He did not therefore henceforth contend about the possession of a few Towns: but adventured to win or lose all.

all. The *Ætolians*, in favour of his attempt, declared themselves on his side: and whereas he had gotten *Mantineæ*, *Tegæa*, and other places, to which they had some title, they willingly renounced all their interest unto him.

*Aratus* did apprehend the danger of his Country, and saw that *Antigonus*, with the *Ætolians*, or perhaps without them, would shortly make an end of that, which *Cleomenes* had thus begun. Therefore he advised how to provide against the worst, and either to repair all, or (if it could not be) to save all from utter ruine. The office of General, when it was next put upon him, he refused; fearing to be so far preſt, as to hazard in one battail all the force of his Country, to which as he had never any affection, nor perchance courage, so was his manner of warfare otherwise. For he commonly attempted to surprise, and defended upon the advantage of place, after the manner of the *Irish*, and of all other Nations, overcharged with numbers of men. Yet did he not forsake the care of the Weal-publique, though in aiming at the generall good, it seems that private passion drew him into an ill course. He saw, that *Megalopolis* could not be defended without making a dangerous hazard of battail; that *Mantineæ* had not only opened her gates unto *Cleomenes*, but slain the *Achaean* Garrison that lay therein; that other Towns had yielded unto him, without compulsion; and that *Arifomachus*, once Tyrant of *Argos*, and since General of the *Achaens*, was now revolted unto the enemy, following the fortune of *Cleomenes*. *Ptolemy* was too far off to help; and the nearness of *Antigonus* was very dangerous; yet might be usefull, if this King would (as *Polybius* saith) like others, be friend or enemy, as should best agree with his own profit. To make triall hereof, *Aratus* practised with some of *Megalopolis*, whom he found apt unto his purpose; and instructed them how to deal both with *Antigonus*, and the *Achaens*.

The City of *Megalopolis* had been well affected to the *Macedonians*, ever since the time of *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, who had obliged it unto him by some especiall benefites. At this time it lay nearest unto the danger; was very faithfull; and therefore deserved succour; yet could not well be relieved by the *Achaens*, with their own proper strength. Wherefore it was thought meet, that Embassadours should be sent unto the Generall Council of *Achaia*, requesting leave and good allowance, to try the favour of *Antigonus* in their necessity. This was granted, for lack of what else to answer: and the same Embassadours dispatched away to *Antigonus*. They did their own errand briefly, telling him of the good will and respect which their City had of long time borne unto him and his Predecessors, of their present need; and how it would agree with his honour to give them aid. But when they delivered the more generall matters, wherein *Aratus* had given them instruction; shewing how the ambition of *Cleomenes*, and violence of the *Ætolians*, might redound to his own great loss or danger, if the one and the other were not in time prevented; how *Aratus* himself did stand affected; and what good likelihood there was of reducing the *Achaens* under the Patronage of *Macedon*: then began *Antigonus* to lend a more attentive ear to their discourse. He embraced the motion: and to give it the more life, he wrote unto the *Megalopolitans*, that his help should not be wanting, so far forth, as it might stand with the *Achaens* good liking. Particularly he commended himself by these Messengers to *Aratus*; assuring them, that he thought himself highly bound to this honourable man, whose former actions he now perceived, not to have been grounded upon any hatred to the *Macedonians*, but only upon a just and worthy love to his own Nation. With this answer they returned to *Megalopolis*: & are presently sent away to the Council of *Achaia*; there to make some speedy conclusion, as the necessity of the time required. The *Achaens* were glad to hear, that *Antigonus* was so inclinable to their desire; & therefore were ready to entertain his favour, with all good correspondence. Hereunto *Aratus* gave his consent; and praised the wisdom of his Countrimen, that so well discerned the best and likeliest means of their common safety: adding nevertheless, that it were not amiss, first of all to try their own ability; which if it failed, then should they do well to call in this gracious Prince, and make him their Patron and Protector. Thus he shewed himself moderate, in that which himself of all others did most wish: to the end, that he might not afterward sustain the common reprehension, if any thing fell out amiss; since it might appear, that he had not been Author of this Decree, but only followed, and that leisurely, the generall consent.

Nevertheless

Nevertheless, in true estimation, this fineness of *Aratus* might have been used, with his greater commendation, in a contrary course. For it had bin more honourable to make an end of the war, by yielding unto *Cleomenes* that power which they gave unto *Antigonus*: since thereby he should both have freed his country from all further trouble; and withall, should have restored unto the universal state of *Greece*, that honourable condition, whereof the *Macedonians* had bereft it. But it is commonly found, (which is greatness) that Vertue, having risen to honour by degrees, and confirmed it self, (as it were) in the seat of principality, by length of time, and success of many actions, can ill endure the hasty growth of any others reputation, wherewith it sees it self likely to be overtopped. Other cause to despise the *Lacedæmonians* there was none, than that they lately had been in dangerous case: neither could any reason be found, why *Aratus* should prefer *Antigonus* before *Cleomenes*, than that he had stood in doubt of the one, when he thought himself more mighty than the other. Wherefore he was justly plagued, when he saw his own honours reversed by the insolent *Macedonians*: and in stead of living as a companion with *Cleomenes*, that was descended of a long race of Kings, the posterity of *Heracles*, was faine to do sacrifice unto *Antigonus*, as unto a god, and was finally poisoned by *Philip*, whose Nobility was but of five descents, and whom perhaps he might have seen his fellows, if he had not made them his Lords. By this inclination to the *Macedonians*, the love of *Ptolemy* was lost: who forthwith took part with *Cleomenes*, though he did not supply him with such liberality, as he had used to the *Achaens*; being warned, as may seem, by their example, to be more wary both in trusting and disburſing. *Cleomenes* himself, whilest this business with *Antigonus* was a-foot, passed through *Arcadia* with an Army, and laboured by all means to draw the *Achaens* to battell. At the City of *Dymes* in *Achaia* were assembled all the remaining forces of the Nation; with which it was concluded to make triall, whether perhaps they might amend their estate, without seeking help of the *Macedonian*. Thither went *Cleomenes*, & there fought with them; where he had so great a victory, that the enemy was no longer able to keep the open field. The calamity was such, that *Aratus* himself durst not take upon him to be their General, when his turn came in the next election. Wherefore the *Achaens* were compelled to sue for peace, which was granted upon this easie condition: That they should not arrogate unto themselves the command of *Peloponnesus*, but suffer the *Lacedæmonians* (as in former ages) to be their Leaders in war. Hereunto if they would descend, he promised unto them, that he would presently restore all places taken from them, and all his prisoners ransom-free: also that they should enjoy their own Laws and Liberties without molestation. This gentle offer of *Cleomenes* was very pleasing to the *Achaens*: who desired him to come to the City of *Lerna*, where a Parliament should be held, for the conclusion of the War.

Now seemed the affairs of *Greece* likely to be settled in better order, than they had ever been since the beginning of the *Peloponnesian* Wars, yea, or since the *Persian* invasion: when God, who had otherwise disposed of these matters, hindred all with a draught of cold water, which *Cleomenes* drank in great heat, and thereupon fell extreme sick, and so could not be present at *Lerna*, but caused the Parliament to be deferred to another time. Nevertheless he sent home the chief of his prisoners, to shew that he meant none other than good faith. By this fair dealing he confirmed the *Achaens* in their desire of his friendship: who assembled again at *Argos*, there to establish the League. But *Aratus* was violently bent against it, and fought by great words, and terrible threats, to make his Countrimen afraid of resolving. When all would not serve turn, he betook himself to his cunning, and sent word to *Cleomenes*, that he should do well to leave his Army behind him, and come alone into *Argos*, receiving hostages for safety of his person. *Cleomenes* was already far on his way, when he met with this advertisement; and took it in ill part, that he should be thus deluded. For it had been an easie matter, to have told him so much at the first, and not have made him come so far with an Army, which afterwards he must dismiss. Yet that which chiefly seems to have troubled him, was the drift of his oppugners, who fought thereby, either to make him wait without the gates, and deal only with themselves and their Messengers, or if he would adventure himself into the City, then to deprive him of all Royall shew, that might breed respect of him in the multitude. This was that indeed which *Aratus* feared, & for which he sought to hinder his coming thither in person; lest the people, hearing the promises

R r r

of

of *Cleomenes* ratified by his own mouth, should presently be won with his gentle words, and finish the bargain without more ado. Therefore *Cleomenes* wrote unto the whole Councell, bitterly complaining against these juggling tricks: and *Aratus* was not far behinde with him, in as bitter an Oration. So between fear of the one, and reverence of the other, the Assembly knew not how to proceed, but abruptly brake up, leaving all, as it were to fortune. *Cleomenes* took his advantage of their present weakness, and renewed the War. Many Cities yeelded unto him willingly; many he forced; and partly by force, partly by terrour, he wan *Argos*, which never King of *Sparta* before him could do. In this case *Aratus* sent his own sonne to *Antigonus*, intreating him to defer no time, but come presently to relieve the distressed *Achaens*. *Antigonus* 10 gave good words as could be wished: saying that he utterly refused to doe anything, unless he might first have *Acrocorinthus* put into his hands. This demand was somewhat like unto that of the Hunter, who promised to help the horse against his enemy the Stagge: but with condition, that the horse should suffer himself to be saddled and bridled. *Aratus* was herewithall contented, but wanted all honest colour to do it: seeing the *Corinthians* had no way deserved to be thus given away to the *Macedonians*. Yet at length an occasion was found; for that the *Corinthians*, perceiving what he intended, were minded to arrest him. So he withdrew himself out of their City, and sent word to *Antigonus*, that their Castle should be ready to let him in. The *Corinthians* on the other side ran to *Cleomenes*, who lost no time, but made haste with them to *Corinth*, where he sought how to get possession of their Castle, or at least to save it from *Antigonus*, by surrounding it within Trenches, that none might issue nor enter without his leave. Whilest this was doing, he took speciall order, that *Aratus* his house and goods, within the Town, should be kept for the Owner, to whom he sent Messenger after Messenger, desiring him to come to agreement, and not to bring in the barbarous *Macedonians*, and *Illyrians*, to *Peloponnesus*, promising, that if he would hearken to these persuasions, then would he give him double the same pension, which he had been wont to receive of King *Ptolemy*. As for the Castle of *Corinth*, which was the gate of *Peloponnesus*, and without which none could hold assured sovereignty of the Country; he desired that it might not be committed unto his own disposition, but be jointly kept by 30 the *Lacedemonians* and *Achaens*. All this entreaty served to no purpose. For *Aratus*, rejecting utterly the motion, sent his own son as an Hostage to *Antigonus*; and laboured with the *Achaens*, to put *Acrocorinthus* into his hands. Which when *Cleomenes* understood, he seized upon the goods of *Aratus* in *Corinth*, and wasted all the Countrey of *Sicyon*, whereof this his Adversary was native.

*Antigonus* in the mean time drew near to the *Isthmus*; having passed with his Army through *Eubœa*, because the *Ætoliens* held the straights of *Thermopyla* against him. This they did, either in favour of *Cleomenes*, which they pretended; or in doubt of the greatness, whereunto the *Macedonians* might attain by the good success of this journey. At his coming thither he found the *Lacedemonians* ready to forbid his entrance: 40 and that with sufficient strength; yet with no purpose to hazzard battell, but rather to weary him thence with hunger, against which he came not well provided. *Antigonus* therefore laboured hard to make his way by force: but he was not able so to doe: he secretly got into the *Corinthian* Haven; but was violently driven out again, with great loss of men; finally he resolved to turn aside, and seek a passage over the gulfes of *Corinth*, to *Sicyon*, or some other part of *Achaia*; but this required much time, and great preparation, which was not easily made.

In this perplexity, newes from *Argos* came by Sea, that greatly comforted *Antigonus*, and no less troubled his enemies. The *Achaens* were gotten into that City; and the Garrison which *Cleomenes* had left therein, though it was not driven out of the Citadell, 50 yet was hardly distressed, and stood in need of present help. *Argos* had always been enemy to *Sparta*, and well affected to the Kings of *Macedon*. When *Cleomenes* took it, he forbore to chase out those whom he most suspected; partly at the entreaty of friends, and partly, for that they all made shew to be glad of his prosperity. They were glad indeed of *Cleomenes* his victories, both in *Argos* and elsewhere, as many as hoped that the would cause all debtors to be discharged from their creditors, as he had lately done in *Sparta*. But that which *Cleomenes* had done in *Sparta*, was agreeable to the *Spartan* institution: in other places, where it would have been tyrannicall, he did it not. Thereupon, 1 such

such as were disappointed of their unjust hopes, began to turn good Common-wealths men; and called him Tyrant for his doings at home, because he would not do the like abroad. So they took their time, invited the *Achaens*, assailed his Garrison, cut in pieces the rescue that he sent, and compelled him at length to forsake the defence of *Corinth*, and look unto the enemies that were behind his back. For when he understood by continual messengers, that his men which held the Citadell at *Argos* were almost lost: he began to fear lest his labour in guarding the entry should grow frivolous; the *Achaens* in the mean while spoiling all that lay within. Therefore he forsook his custody of the *Isthmus*, and made all haste towards *Argos*: which if he could save, he meant 10 to trust fortune with the rest. And so far he prevailed at his coming to *Argos*, that both *Argives* and *Achaens* were glad to house themselves, leaving him Master of the streets: when the horsemen of *Antigonus* were discovered afar off, hastening to relieve the Citizens; and *Antigonus* himself (to whom *Corinth* was yeelded, as soon as the *Spartan* had turned his back) following apace with the body of his Army. *Cleomenes* therefore had no more to do, then to make a safe retreat. This he did, and got him home into *Laconia*: losing in short space all, or most of that which he had been long in getting.

*Antigonus* having shewed himself at *Argos*, and commended the Citizens, went into *Arcadia*; where he wan such Castles as were held for *Cleomenes*, and restored them to 20 the old Possessors. This done, he took his way to *Ægium*, where was held a Parliament by the *Achaens*, to whom he declared the cause of his coming, and spake brave words, that filled them with hope. The *Achaens* were not behind with him; but made him Captain-Generall over them and their Confederates: and further entred into covenant with him, That they would not deal with any Prince or State, either by writing or Embassadour, without his consent. All this while and somewhat longer, *Aratus* was the only man, that seemed to rule the Kings heart: carrying him to *Sicyon* his own Town, (for Winter was come on) where he not only feasted him as a great Prince, but suffered more than humane honours, as sacrifices and the like, to be done unto him. This example of *Aratus* and his *Sicyonians*, was followed by the rest of *Achaia*: which had 30 made (soforth) a very wise bargain, if in stead of *Cleomenes*, that would have been a King, it had obtained the protection of a God. But this God was poor, and wanting wherewith to pay his *Macedonians*, imposed the burthen upon the *Achaens*. This was hardly taken: yet worse must be endured in hope of better. Neither was *Aratus* himself over-carefully respected; when the statues of those Tyrants, which he had thrown down in *Argos*, were again erected by *Antigonus*; or when the statues which he had erected, of those that had taken *Acrocorinthus* with him, were all thrown down by the same King, and one only left unto himself at his earnest intreaty. It might therefore appear, that this God was also spitefull. Nevertheless in taking revenge upon those that offended him, *Aratus* did satisfie his own passion by the aid of these *Macedo-* 40 *nians*. For with extreme torments he did put *Arifomachus* to death, who had been once Tyrant of *Argos*: afterwards General of the *Achaens*, and from them revolting unto *Cleomenes*, did fall at length into their hands. In like sort handled he (though not as yet) the *Mantineans*, for their ingratitude and cruelty shewed to the *Achaens*. For he slew all the principall Citizens, and sold the rest, men, women, and children, all for bond-slaves: dividing the spoyle, two parts to the *Macedonians*, and the third to the *Achaens*. The Town it self was given by *Antigonus* to the *Argives*; who peopled it with a Colony of their own; and *Aratus* having charge of this business, caused it to be new-named *Antigonia*. Surely of this cruelty there can be no better excuse, than even the flattery which *Aratus* was driven to use to *Antigonus*: forasmuch as it was a token of servility, 50 wherinto they had urged and brought him; whom he, as in revenge thereof, did thus requite. But leaving to speak of this change, which the coming in of the *Macedonian* wrought in the Civil State of the *Achaens*; let us return unto this war against the *Lacedemonians*.

The next Summer *Antigonus* wan *Tegea*, *Mantineæ*, *Orchomenus*, *Heraæ*, & *Telphus*: *Mantineæ* he dispeopled, as was said before; in *Orchomenus* he placed a Garrison of his *Macedonians*; the rest he restored to the *Achaens*, with whom he wintered at *Ægium*, where they held a Parliament. Once only *Cleomenes* had met him this year; & that was on the borders of *Laconia*, where he lay ready to defend his own Territory. The

reason why he stirred no further, nor followed *Antigonus* to *Mantineæ*, & to those other Towns that he wan, was this: He had few Souldiers, and had not money enough to wage more. *Ptolemy* the Egyptian promised much, but would perform nothing, unless he might have *Cleomenes* his own Mother, and his children in pledge. These were sent into *Egypt*, yet the aid came not. For *Ptolemy* was slow; as dealing in the business of *Greece*, rather for his mindes sake, than upon any apprehension of necessity. *Cleomenes* therefore provided for himself, as well as his own ability would serve. He manumitted all the *Helotes*, which were the *Lacedæmonian* slaves: taking money for their liberty, and arming two thousand of them after the *Macedonian* fashion. Having thus increased his forces, he came on the sudden to *Megalopolis*; that lay secure, as having defended it self in more dangerous times, and having now *Antigonus* near at hand in *Ægium*. The town he wan: but after he was entred, all that were fit to bear Arms rose hastily against him; and though they could not drive him out, yet saved the multitude, to whom they gave a Port free for their escape. He sent after the Citizens, offering their Town and goods to them again, if they would be of his party. But they bravely refused his offer: wherefore he sacked and ruined it, carrying with him to *Sparta* a great booty that he found therein. These newes astonished the *Achaans* at *Ægium*: who thereupon brake up their Parliament. *Antigonus* sent hastily for his *Macedonians*, out of their wintering places: but they were so long in coming, that *Cleomenes* was safely gone home. Therefore he returned them back to their lodgings, and went himself to *Argos*, there to pass the rest of his unlucky winter, somewhat further from the eyes of the grieved *Achaans*. When he had lain a while at *Argos*, *Cleomenes* was at the gates, with no great number of men, yet with more than *Antigonus* had then about him. The *Argives* perceiving that their Country would be spoiled, if *Antigonus* did not issue into the field, were very earnest with him to go forth and fight. But he was wiser than to be moved with their clamors and suffered them to see their villages burnt; to bid him resign his Office of Protector unto some that were more valiant; and to satisfy their passions with foolish words: rather than he would be overcome in fight, and thereby lose more honour than could easily be repaired. By this *Cleomenes* had his desire, in weakening the reputation of his enemy: though he thereby added neither followers, nor 30 other strength unto *Lacedæmon*.

Afterwards, when the season was most fit for war, *Antigonus* gathered together all his troupes, meaning to requite these bravadoes of his enemy, with the conquest of *Sparta*. *Cleomenes*, on the other side, laboured to keep the war from his own gates; and therefore entred upon the Country of *Argos*, where he made such havock, as drew *Antigonus* thither, from his intended invasion of *Laconia*. Many great affronts the *Macedonian* was fain to endure, in coasting of the *Spartan* King, that ranging over the Country of the *Argives*, *Phlians*, and *Orchomenians*, drove a Garrison of his out of *Oligythi*; and did sacrifice, as it were before his face, in the suburbs of *Argos*, without the Temple of *Juno*, that was shut up; sending unto him in scorn, to borrow the keys. These were 40 light things; yet served to dishearten the *Achaan* side, and to fill the enemy with courage, which was no matter of light importance. Therefore he concluded to lay apart all other regard of things abroad, and to put all to hazzard; by setting up his rest, without any more delay, upon *Sparta* it self. He had in his Army eight and twenty thousand foot, and twelve hundred horse, collected out of sundry Nations, as *Macedonians*, *Illyrians*, *Gauls*, *Epirots*, *Bæotians*, *Acarnanians*, and others; together with the *Achaans*, and their friends of *Peloponnesus*. *Cleomenes* had of all sorts twenty thousand, with which he lay at *Selafia*: fortifying slightly the other passages into *Laconia*, through which the *Macedonians* were not likely to seek entrance. *Antigonus*, coming unto *Selafia*, found his enemy so strongly encamped, upon and between the hills of *Eva* and 50 *Olympus*, that he was constrained to spend much time there, before he could advance any one foot: neither lay it in his power to come hastily to blows, which he greatly desired, without the hazard of his whole Army, in assailing their well defended Camp. But at length (as it happens, when men are weary both of their hopes and fears) both Kings being resolved to make an end one way or other; *Antigonus* attempted with his *Illyrians*, to force that part which lay on the hill *Eva*. But his *Illyrians* were so ill seconded by the *Achaan* foot, that the *Spartan* horse, and light-armed foot, incamped in the straight valley between those hills, issuing forth, fell upon their skirts, and not only

disordered them, but were like to have endangered all the rest. If *Cleomenes* himself had stood in that part of the battail, he would have made great use of such a fair beginning. But *Euclydas*, his brother, a more valiant than skilful Souldier, commanded in that wing: who neither followed this advantage, nor took such benefit as the ground afforded, whereon he lay. *Philopamen* the *Acadian* of *Megalopolis*, who afterwards proved a famous Captain, served then on horse, as a private young man, among the *Achaans*. Hee seeing that all was like to goe to rout, if their *Illyrians* were driven to fall back upon the Army following them; perswaded the Captains of the *Achaan* horse, to break upon the *Spartan* Mercenaries. But they would not: partly despising his youth and want of 10 charge; partly, for that *Antigonus* had given order, that they should keep their places; untill they received a sign from him, which was not as yet. *Philopamen* perceiving them to be more orderly than well advised, intreated some of his own Countrymen to follow him, gave a charge on the *Spartans*, and forced them, not only to leave the *Illyrians*, but seek how to save themselves. Being so far advanced, he found the place which the *Illyrians* had attempted, like enough to be won, through the unskilfulness of him, that held it. Wherefore he alighted, and perswaded the men at Arms his Companions to do the like: the folly of *Euclydas* being manifest, who kept the top of the hill, and stirred not to hinder those that ascended, but waited for them in a Plain, where they might fight upon even termes. So he recovered the Hill top; where though he was sore hurt, 20 yet he made good the place that he had gotten, untill the whole Army came up to him; by which the *Lacedæmonians* were beaten from it, with great slaughter of them in their descent. This overthrow, and death of *Euclydas*, made *Cleomenes* lose the day: who fighting bravely on the other side, upon *Olympus*, against *Antigonus* himself, was like to have been surrounded and lost, if he had not withdrawn himself with an extraordinary speed. In this battel ended the glory of *Lacedæmon*, which, as a light ready to go out, had with a great, but not long blaze, shined more brightly of late, than in many ages past.

*Cleomenes* fled unto *Sparta*; where he had no desire to stay, finding only two hundred left, of six thousand *Spartans* that he had led unto this battail, and most of his hired Souldiers dead, or gone away. So he perswaded his people to yield themselves unto 30 *Antigonus*; and promising to do all that should at any time lye in his own power, for their good, he hasted away to the Sea-side (where he had shipping long before provided against all that might happen) and imbarqued himself for *Egypt*. He was lovingly entertained by *Ptolemy Energetes*, who undertook to restore him to his Kingdom, and (perhaps) meant no less, as being much delighted with his gallant behaviour, and qualities. In the mean season, he had a pension allowed him, of four and twenty Talents, yearly. But this *Ptolemy* died; and his son *Ptolemy Philopater* succeeded him: a vicious young Prince, wholly governed by lewd Women, and base Men, unmindful of all vertue, and hating any in whom it was found. When therefore *Cleomenes* 40 was desirous to return into *Greece*, whither the troubles in *Peloponnesus* did seem to invite him; *Ptolemy* and his Minions, would neither give him aid; nor yet dared to dismis him (as he desired) to try his own friends in *Greece*, because he was too well acquainted with the weakness of *Egypt*: nor well knew how to detain him against his will. At length they devised matter against him, and made him prisoner. The last act of him was, that with thirty of his Countrymen, he undertook a desperate enterprise: breaking out of the prison, and provoking the *Alexandrians* to rebel and seek their liberty. In which attempt he slew some enemies of his that he met; and having walked up and down the streets without resistance (no man offering to take his part, or which is very strange, to fight against him on the Kings behalf) he, and his Compani- 50 ons, agreed together to be ministers of their own death. Upon his dead body *Ptolemy* was bold to shew his indignation: and slue his Mother and Children, that had been sent thither as Hostages, together with the wives of his Adherents, as many as were there, attending upon the old Queen. Such was the end of *Cleomenes*, a generous Prince, but Son of *Leonidas*, who had caused *Agis*, with his Mother and Grand-mother, to come to such a bloody end, as now befell his owne Wife, Son, and Grand-children.

After the victory at *Selafia*, *Antigonus* without resistance entred *Sparta*: where he never the force of any Enemy, before him, could make way. He kindly intreated

the Citizens, and left them to their own lawes and Government: tarrying there no longer than two or three dayes; after which he hastned out of *Peloponnesus*, and never returned. The cause of his speedy departure was, an advertisement that he received out of *Macedon*; how the *Illyrians* over-ran, and destroyed the Country. Had these newes come a little sooner, or had *Cleomenes* either deferred the fight, a few dayes longer, or at least-wise tarried a few dayes after the fight, in *Sparta*; the Kingdome of *Lacedemon* would have stood, and perhaps have extended it self over all *Greece*. But God had otherwise determined.

*Antigonus* fought a great battell with the *Illyrians*, and overcame them. Yet therein he caught his bane: not by any wound, but by over-straining his voyce; wherewith he brake a vein that bled inwardly, and in short space finished his life, who was troubled before with a consumption of the lungs. His Kingdom descended unto *Philip* the son of *Demetrius*, being then a boy: as also about the same time it was, that *Antiochus*, surnamed (I know not why) *the Great*; and *Ptolemy Philopater*, began to reign in *Asia* and *Egypt*; Boyes all. Of these, *Ptolemy*, though old enough to love Harlots, when he first was King, yet continued a Boy all the seventeen years of his reign. The unripe age of *Philip* & *Antiochus*, bred such intestine inconvenience to their Kingdomes, as is usuall in the minority of Princes: but their elder years brought them acquainted with the *Romans*; upon which occasion, when it comes, we shal more seasonably speak of them, and of their Kingdomes, more at large.

#### §. VII.

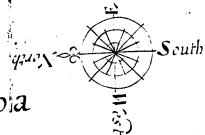
*How the Illyrians infested the coast of Greece; and how they were subdued by the Romans.*

Whilest things thus passed in *Greece*, and whilest the *Carthaginians* were busie in their conquest of *Spain*, the *Romans* had found themselves work among the *Sardinians* and *Corficans*, that were easily subdued at first, and easily vanquished again, when they rebelled. They made also war with the *Illyrians*, wherein they got much honour with little pain. With the *Gauls* they had much ado, that lasted not long; being rather, as *Livy* saith, a tumult than a war. So that by all these light exercises their valour was hardly kept from rust. How the got the Ilands in the *Mediterran Sea*, it hath been shewed before: of their dealings with the *Illyrians* and *Gauls*, it is not meet to be utterly silent.

The *Illyrians* inhabited the Country now called *Slavonia*; a troublesome Nation, impatient of rest, and continually making war for gain, without either regard of friend or foe. They were invited by *Demetrius*, king of *Macedon*, to help the *Mydionians* his friends, that were besieged by the *Aetolians*; for that they refused to be of their society. Before the *Illyrians* succours came, the *Mydionians* were so far spent, that the *Aetolians* contented about the booty: the old Prætor, or chief Magistrate of their Nation, who was going out of his office, claiming to have the honour of the victory, and the division of the spoyl to be referred unto him; for that he had in a manner brought the siege to an end, and won the town: others, that were in hope to be chosen into the Office, contradicting this, and desiring that old orders might be kept. It was a pretty strife, and somewhat like to that of the *French* in latter ages, who thought upon dividing the prey, before they had won the victories, which anon they lost, at *Poitiers* and *Agincourt*. The *Aetolians* wisely compounded the difference, ordering it thus, That the old, and the new Prætor should be jointly intitled in the victory, and have equall authority in distribution of the gettings. But the *Illyrians* finished the strife much more elegantly, and after another fashion. They arrived and landed ere any was aware of them, they fell upon the *Aetolians*; and though good resistance was made, yet got the victory, partly by force of their multitude, partly by the help of the *Mydionians*, that were not idle in their own business, but stoutly sallied out of the town. Many of the *Aetolians* were slain, more were taken, their camp and all their baggage was lost: the *Illyrians* took the spoyl, and went their way; the *Mydionians* erected a Trophee, inscribing the names both of their old and new Magistrate (for they also chose new officers at the same time) as the *Aetolians* had directed them by example.

The successe of this voyage highly pleased *Agroon* King of the *Illyrians*: not only in regard





## The desert Arabia

Arabia the Stonie

Agubeni

*Saccæa*

*Agræi*

*Sauc* <sup>211</sup> or *Saba* from whence the Sabans speaketh

The contry of y<sup>e</sup> Amonites some tyme Zamzummitis now <sup>Alquidit</sup> Philadelphia the mountains of Arnon Mountaines of Ara<sup>y</sup> stonie

*Mountaines of Ara:y<sup>e</sup>stonie*

Moabites sometime Emims

Mathema Diben

Median

Bethphage  
Bethanias  
Cethim  
The dead sea or

Samaria  
Haid Plains of  
Sion  
Gala

B. Calcutta. Almatt. U. C. Guratan. **Perico**. The name of the country. Desert of Jeruch. No. 1. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844

IV

**IA**

Jerusalem  
 The Oak of Mamre  
 Hebron  
 The Vally of Raphaim  
 The great battle of

**N** Bethoron mfr. Betsura Elam  
Bethon mfr. Betsura Elam

A detailed map of the Gulf of Guinea and West Africa. The map shows the coastline from Senegambia down to the Gulf of Biafra. Key locations marked include Accra, Cape Verde, Sierra Leone, Liberia, Ivory Coast, Ghana, Benin, Nigeria, and Cameroon. Trade routes are indicated by lines with arrows, showing the flow of goods and people between the interior and the coast. The map is titled 'GULF OF GUINEA' and includes a scale bar at the bottom.

Helon *The burials of E. Mankabies* D A N East

Getb Bethsames Galuthen The fountain Ethiopian Bethleh

1. A. 35 2. E. 4 3. 2

IAN SEA

Figure 1. The effect of the concentration of the *Agaricus bisporus* spores on the growth of *Agaricus bisporus* on the substrate. The concentration of the spores was 10<sup>4</sup>, 10<sup>5</sup>, 10<sup>6</sup>, 10<sup>7</sup>, 10<sup>8</sup>, 10<sup>9</sup>, 10<sup>10</sup>, 10<sup>11</sup>, 10<sup>12</sup>, 10<sup>13</sup>, 10<sup>14</sup>, 10<sup>15</sup>, 10<sup>16</sup>, 10<sup>17</sup>, 10<sup>18</sup>, 10<sup>19</sup>, 10<sup>20</sup>, 10<sup>21</sup>, 10<sup>22</sup>, 10<sup>23</sup>, 10<sup>24</sup>, 10<sup>25</sup>, 10<sup>26</sup>, 10<sup>27</sup>, 10<sup>28</sup>, 10<sup>29</sup>, 10<sup>30</sup>, 10<sup>31</sup>, 10<sup>32</sup>, 10<sup>33</sup>, 10<sup>34</sup>, 10<sup>35</sup>, 10<sup>36</sup>, 10<sup>37</sup>, 10<sup>38</sup>, 10<sup>39</sup>, 10<sup>40</sup>, 10<sup>41</sup>, 10<sup>42</sup>, 10<sup>43</sup>, 10<sup>44</sup>, 10<sup>45</sup>, 10<sup>46</sup>, 10<sup>47</sup>, 10<sup>48</sup>, 10<sup>49</sup>, 10<sup>50</sup>, 10<sup>51</sup>, 10<sup>52</sup>, 10<sup>53</sup>, 10<sup>54</sup>, 10<sup>55</sup>, 10<sup>56</sup>, 10<sup>57</sup>, 10<sup>58</sup>, 10<sup>59</sup>, 10<sup>60</sup>, 10<sup>61</sup>, 10<sup>62</sup>, 10<sup>63</sup>, 10<sup>64</sup>, 10<sup>65</sup>, 10<sup>66</sup>, 10<sup>67</sup>, 10<sup>68</sup>, 10<sup>69</sup>, 10<sup>70</sup>, 10<sup>71</sup>, 10<sup>72</sup>, 10<sup>73</sup>, 10<sup>74</sup>, 10<sup>75</sup>, 10<sup>76</sup>, 10<sup>77</sup>, 10<sup>78</sup>, 10<sup>79</sup>, 10<sup>80</sup>, 10<sup>81</sup>, 10<sup>82</sup>, 10<sup>83</sup>, 10<sup>84</sup>, 10<sup>85</sup>, 10<sup>86</sup>, 10<sup>87</sup>, 10<sup>88</sup>, 10<sup>89</sup>, 10<sup>90</sup>, 10<sup>91</sup>, 10<sup>92</sup>, 10<sup>93</sup>, 10<sup>94</sup>, 10<sup>95</sup>, 10<sup>96</sup>, 10<sup>97</sup>, 10<sup>98</sup>, 10<sup>99</sup>, 10<sup>100</sup>, 10<sup>101</sup>, 10<sup>102</sup>, 10<sup>103</sup>, 10<sup>104</sup>, 10<sup>105</sup>, 10<sup>106</sup>, 10<sup>107</sup>, 10<sup>108</sup>, 10<sup>109</sup>, 10<sup>110</sup>, 10<sup>111</sup>, 10<sup>112</sup>, 10<sup>113</sup>, 10<sup>114</sup>, 10<sup>115</sup>, 10<sup>116</sup>, 10<sup>117</sup>, 10<sup>118</sup>, 10<sup>119</sup>, 10<sup>120</sup>, 10<sup>121</sup>, 10<sup>122</sup>, 10<sup>123</sup>, 10<sup>124</sup>, 10<sup>125</sup>, 10<sup>126</sup>, 10<sup>127</sup>, 10<sup>128</sup>, 10<sup>129</sup>, 10<sup>130</sup>, 10<sup>131</sup>, 10<sup>132</sup>, 10<sup>133</sup>, 10<sup>134</sup>, 10<sup>135</sup>, 10<sup>136</sup>, 10<sup>137</sup>, 10<sup>138</sup>, 10<sup>139</sup>, 10<sup>140</sup>, 10<sup>141</sup>, 10<sup>142</sup>, 10<sup>143</sup>, 10<sup>144</sup>, 10<sup>145</sup>, 10<sup>146</sup>, 10<sup>147</sup>, 10<sup>148</sup>, 10<sup>149</sup>, 10<sup>150</sup>, 10<sup>151</sup>, 10<sup>152</sup>, 10<sup>153</sup>, 10<sup>154</sup>, 10<sup>155</sup>, 10<sup>156</sup>, 10<sup>157</sup>, 10<sup>158</sup>, 10<sup>159</sup>, 10<sup>160</sup>, 10<sup>161</sup>, 10<sup>162</sup>, 10<sup>163</sup>, 10<sup>164</sup>, 10<sup>165</sup>, 10<sup>166</sup>, 10<sup>167</sup>, 10<sup>168</sup>, 10<sup>169</sup>, 10<sup>170</sup>, 10<sup>171</sup>, 10<sup>172</sup>, 10<sup>173</sup>, 10<sup>174</sup>, 10<sup>175</sup>, 10<sup>176</sup>, 10<sup>177</sup>, 10<sup>178</sup>, 10<sup>179</sup>, 10<sup>180</sup>, 10<sup>181</sup>, 10<sup>182</sup>, 10<sup>183</sup>, 10<sup>184</sup>, 10<sup>185</sup>, 10<sup>186</sup>, 10<sup>187</sup>, 10<sup>188</sup>, 10<sup>189</sup>, 10<sup>190</sup>, 10<sup>191</sup>, 10<sup>192</sup>, 10<sup>193</sup>, 10<sup>194</sup>, 10<sup>195</sup>, 10<sup>196</sup>, 10<sup>197</sup>, 10<sup>198</sup>, 10<sup>199</sup>, 10<sup>200</sup>, 10<sup>201</sup>, 10<sup>202</sup>, 10<sup>203</sup>, 10<sup>204</sup>, 10<sup>205</sup>, 10<sup>206</sup>, 10<sup>207</sup>, 10<sup>208</sup>, 10<sup>209</sup>, 10<sup>210</sup>, 10<sup>211</sup>, 10<sup>212</sup>, 10<sup>213</sup>, 10<sup>214</sup>, 10<sup>215</sup>, 10<sup>216</sup>, 10<sup>217</sup>, 10<sup>218</sup>, 10<sup>219</sup>, 10<sup>220</sup>, 10<sup>221</sup>, 10<sup>222</sup>, 10<sup>223</sup>, 10<sup>224</sup>, 10<sup>225</sup>, 10<sup>226</sup>, 10<sup>227</sup>, 10<sup>228</sup>, 10<sup>229</sup>, 10<sup>230</sup>, 10<sup>231</sup>, 10<sup>232</sup>, 10<sup>233</sup>, 10<sup>234</sup>, 10<sup>235</sup>, 10<sup>236</sup>, 10<sup>237</sup>, 10<sup>238</sup>, 10<sup>239</sup>, 10<sup>240</sup>, 10<sup>241</sup>, 10<sup>242</sup>, 10<sup>243</sup>, 10<sup>244</sup>, 10<sup>245</sup>, 10<sup>246</sup>, 10<sup>247</sup>, 10<sup>248</sup>, 10<sup>249</sup>, 10<sup>250</sup>, 10<sup>251</sup>, 10<sup>252</sup>, 10<sup>253</sup>, 10<sup>254</sup>, 10<sup>255</sup>, 10<sup>256</sup>, 10<sup>257</sup>, 10<sup>258</sup>, 10<sup>259</sup>, 10<sup>260</sup>, 10<sup>261</sup>, 10<sup>262</sup>, 10<sup>263</sup>, 10<sup>264</sup>, 10<sup>265</sup>, 10<sup>266</sup>, 10<sup>267</sup>, 10<sup>268</sup>, 10<sup>269</sup>, 10<sup>270</sup>, 10<sup>271</sup>, 10<sup>272</sup>, 10<sup>273</sup>, 10<sup>274</sup>, 10<sup>275</sup>, 10<sup>276</sup>, 10<sup>277</sup>, 10<sup>278</sup>, 10<sup>279</sup>, 10<sup>280</sup>, 10<sup>281</sup>, 10<sup>282</sup>, 10<sup>283</sup>, 10<sup>284</sup>, 10<sup>285</sup>, 10<sup>286</sup>, 10<sup>287</sup>, 10<sup>288</sup>, 10<sup>289</sup>, 10<sup>290</sup>, 10<sup>291</sup>, 10<sup>292</sup>, 10<sup>293</sup>, 10<sup>294</sup>, 10<sup>295</sup>, 10<sup>296</sup>, 10<sup>297</sup>, 10<sup>298</sup>, 10<sup>299</sup>, 10<sup>300</sup>, 10<sup>301</sup>, 10<sup>302</sup>, 10<sup>303</sup>, 10<sup>304</sup>, 10<sup>305</sup>, 10<sup>306</sup>, 10<sup>307</sup>, 10<sup>308</sup>, 10<sup>309</sup>, 10<sup>310</sup>, 10<sup>311</sup>, 10<sup>312</sup>, 10<sup>313</sup>, 10<sup>314</sup>, 10<sup>315</sup>, 10<sup>316</sup>, 10<sup>317</sup>, 10<sup>318</sup>, 10<sup>319</sup>, 10<sup>320</sup>, 10<sup>321</sup>, 10<sup>322</sup>, 10<sup>323</sup>, 10<sup>324</sup>, 10<sup>325</sup>, 10<sup>326</sup>, 10<sup>327</sup>, 10<sup>328</sup>, 10<sup>329</sup>, 10<sup>330</sup>, 10<sup>331</sup>, 10<sup>332</sup>, 10<sup>333</sup>, 10<sup>334</sup>, 10<sup>335</sup>, 10<sup>336</sup>, 10<sup>337</sup>, 10<sup>338</sup>, 10<sup>339</sup>, 10<sup>340</sup>, 10<sup>341</sup>, 10<sup>342</sup>, 10<sup>343</sup>, 10<sup>344</sup>, 10<sup>345</sup>, 10<sup>346</sup>, 10<sup>347</sup>, 10<sup>348</sup>, 10<

PHOENICIAN

SYRIAN OR MEDITERAN

SEA

THE ÆGYPTIAN SEA

regard of the money, wherewith *Demetrius* had hired his assistance; or of the booty that was gotten; but for that having vanquished the stoutest of the *Greeks*, he found it not uneasy to enrich himself by setting upon the lesse warlike. For joy of this he feasted, and drank so immoderately, that he fell into a *Plurisie*, which in few dayes ended his life. His Kingdome, together with his great hopes, he left unto *Tenta* his wife.

*Tenta* gave her people free liberty to rob all sorts at Sea, making no difference between friend and foe; as if she had been sole Mistress of the salt Waters. She armed a fleet and sent it into *Greece*; willing her Captains to make war where they found advantage, without any further respect. These fell on the western coast of *Peloponnesus*, where they invaded the *Eleans*, and *Messanians*. Afterwards they returned along by *Epirus*, and stayed at the City of *Phanice*, to take in victuals and other necessaries. There lay in *Phanice* eight hundred *Gaules*, that having been Mercenaries of the *Carthaginians*, went about to betray, first *Agrigentum*, then *Eryx*, to the *Romans*; but failing to do either, they nevertheless revolted, and were for their misdeeds disarmed and sent to sea by the *Romans*, yet entertained by these *Epirots*, and trusted to lye in Garrison within their Town. The *Gaules* were soon grown acquainted with the *Illyrians*, to whom they betrayed *Phanice*; which deserved none other, in trusting them. All *Epirus* was presently in arms, and hastned to drive out these unwelcome guests. But whilest the *Epirots* lay before the Town, there came news into their Camp, of another *Illyrian* Army, that was marching thitherward by land, under one *Scerdilaidas*, whom Queen *Tenta* had sent to help his fellowes. Upon this advertisement, a part of them is sent away towards *Antigonia*, to make good that Town, and the straights adjoining, by which these new commers must enter into their Countrey; another part of them remains at *Phanice*, to continue the siege. Neither the one nor the other sped well in their businesse. For *Scerdilaidas* found means to joyn with his fellowes; and they that were besieged within *Phanice*, sallied out of the Town, and gave such an overthrow to the *Epirots*, as made them despair of saving their Countrey, without great and speedy help from abroad. Wherefore Embassadors were sent to the *Achaans* and *Etolians*: craving their help, with very pitifull terms of intreaty. They obtained their suit; neither was it long, before an Army, sent by these two Nations, was ready in *Epirus*, to present battail unto *Scerdilaidas*. But *Scerdilaidas* was called home by letters from *Tenta* the Queen, that signified a rebellion of some *Illyrians* against her: so that he had no mind to put his forces to hazard, but offered composition, which was accepted. The agreement was, That the *Epirots* might ransom their Town, and all their people that were prisoners; and that the *Illyrians* should quietly depart with all their booty and slaves. Having made this profitable and honourable bargain, the *Illyrians* returned into their own country by land, sending their booty away by Sea.

At their coming home, they found no such great trouble, as that which they brought, or had occasioned in this voyage. For, in fulfilling the commandment of their Queen, they had taken many *Italian* Merchants, whiles they lay at *Phanice*; and made them good prize. Hereof the complaints, made unto the *Roman* Senate, were so frequent, that Embassadors were sent to require of *Tenta*, that she should abstain from doing such injuries. These Embassadors found her very jolly; both for the riches which her fleet had brought in; and for that she had, in short space, tamed her rebels, and brought all to good order, save only the town *Issa*, which her forces held straightly besieged. Swelling with this prosperity, she could hardly afford a good look to the *Romans*, that found fault with her doings; and calling them by a true name, *Piracy*, required amends. Yet when their speech was ended, she vouchsafed to tell them, That injury in publick she would do them none: as for private matters, no account was to be made of them; neither was it the manner of Kings to forbid their subjects to get commodity, how they best could by Sea. But (said the younger of the two Embassadors) we *Romans* have a manner, and a very laudable one, to take revenge in publick, of those private wrongs that are born out by publick authority: therefore we shall teach you, God willing, to reform your Kingly manners, and learn better of us. These words the Queen took so impatiently, that no revenge could satisfie her, but the death of him that had spoken them. Wherefore, without all regard of the common Law of Nations, she caused him to be slain: as if that had been the way to set her heart at rest; which was indeed the mean to disquiet and afflict it ever after.

The Romans, provoked by this outrage, prepare two great Armies; the one by Sea, consisting of two hundred sail, commanded by *C. Fulvius*; the other by Land, led by *A. Posthumus*. They trouble not themselves any more with requiring satisfaction: for this injury is of such nature, as must be requited with mortal war. It is indeed contrary to all humane Law, to use violence towards Embassadors: the reason and ground whereof, seems to be this; that since without mediation, there would never be an end of war and destruction, therefore it was equally received by all Nations, as a lesson taught by Nature, that Embassadors should passe freely, and in safety, between enemies. Nevertheless, as I take it, this generall Law is not without limitation. For if any King or State lay hold upon Embassadors sent by their enemies, not unto themselves, but unto some third, whom they should draw into the quarrell; then it is as lawfull to use violence to those Embassadors (thus employed to make the war more terrible) as it is to kill the men of war, & subjects of an enemy. And so might the Athenians have answered it when they slew the Lacedemonian Embassadors, that were sent to *Xerxes*, to draw him into a war upon the Athenians. Neither are those Embassadors, which practice against the person of that Prince, in whose Countries they reside, warranted by any law whatsoever. For whereas the true office of an Embassador residing, is the maintenance of amity; if it be not lawfull for one Prince to practice against the life of another; much less may an Embassador do it without incurring justly the same danger of punishment, with other Traitors; in which case, his place gives him no privilege at all. But we will leave this dispute to the Civilians; and go on with the revenge, taken by the Romans, for the slaughter of their Embassador *Cornucanius*.

The Illyrian Queen was secure of the Romans, as if they would not dare to stir against her. She was indeed in an error, that hath undone many of all sorts, greater and less than the both before and since: Having more regard unto fame, than unto the substance of things. The Greeks were at that time more famous than the Romans; the *Ætoliens* and *Epriots* had the name of the most warlike people in Greece; these had the easily vanquished, and therefore thought, that with the Romans she should be little troubled. Had she considered that her whole Army, which wrought such wonders in Greece, was not much greater than ten thousand men; and that nevertheless it prevailed as much by odds of number, as by valour, or skill in armes; she would have continued to use her advantage against those that were of more fame than strength, with such good caution, that she should not have needed to oppose her late-gotten reputation, against those that were more mighty than her self. But she was a woman, and did what she listed. She sent forth a greater fleet than before, under *Demetrius* of *Pharos*; with the like ample commission to take all that could be gotten. This fleet divided it self, and one part of it fell with

<sup>a</sup> *Dyrrachium*, sometime called *Epidamius*, and now *Dyrrachium*, situated upon the Adriatick sea, between the Islands of *Pharos* and *Coryra*. <sup>b</sup> *Coryra*, an I. forces to besiege *Dyrrachium*. In the mean season, *Tenta* was angry with her Captain land of the *A-Dyrrachium*: I know not why; but so, as he resolved to try any other course, rather than to trust her.

The Romans were even ready to put to Sea, though uncertain which way to take, when advertisement was brought to *C. Fulvius* the Consull, of *Demetrius* his fear and discontent. Likely it was that such an occasion might greatly help to advance the business in hand. Wherefore the Consull sailed thither; where he found the Town of *Coryra* so well prepared to his hand by *Demetrius*; that it not only received him willingly, but delivered into his power the Illyrian Garrison, and submitted it self unto the Roman protection.

<sup>c</sup> *Apollonia*, a City near *Dyrrachium*, or *Dyrrachium*, upon the Sea-coast. *Pinctus* calls it *Sisipolis*. After this good beginning, the Consull sailed along the coast to *Apollonia*; accompanied with *Demetrius*, whom he used thenceforth as his counsellor and guide. To *Apollonia* came also *Posthumus* the other Consull, with the Land-Army, numbered at twenty thousand foot, and two thousand horse. Thence they hasten towards *Dyrrachium*, which the Illyrians had besieged, but upon news of the Roman army they disperse themselves.

From

From thence the Romans enter *Illyria*, and take *Parthenia*; beat the Illyrians by sea, take twenty of their ships, and enforce the Queen *Tenta* to forsake the coast, and to cover her self in *Rison*, far within the Land. In the end, part of the Romans hasten homeward, and leave the best places of *Illyria* in the hands of *Demetrius*; another part stais behind, and prosecutes the war, in such sort, that *Tenta* was forced to beg peace; which she obtained upon miserable conditions; to wit, That she should quit the better part of *Illyria*, and pay tribute for the rest; and from thenceforth never send any of her ships of war towards the coasts of Greece, beyond the Island of *Lissa*: except it were some one or two vessels unarmed, and by way of Trade.

<sup>10</sup> After this Illyrian war, the Romans sent Embassadors unto divers parts of Greece, signifying their love to their country, and how, for good will thereinto, they had made war with good success upon *Tenta*, and her people. They hoped, belike, that some distressed Cities would take this occasion, to desire their patronage: which it it hapned, they were wise enough to play their own games. But no such matter fell out. The Embassadors were only rewarded with thanks; and a decree made at *Corinth*, that the Romans thenceforth might be partakers of the *Isthmian* pastimes. This was an idle courtship, but well meant by the vain Greeks; & therefore well taken by the Romans: who by this Illyrian expedition got nothing in Greece, save a little acquaintance, that shall be more hereafter.

## 5. VIII.

Of the war between the Romans and Gauls, somewhat before the coming of Hannibal into Italy.

The Gauls that dwelt in *Lombardy*, were the next, against whom the Romans took Armes. These were a populous Nation, and often molested Rome; sometimes with their own forces, and sometimes with the assistance of those that inhabited France. Once their fortune was good, when they took Rome and burnt it: though the issue of that war proved not answerable to the beginning, if we may give credit unto Roman Historians. In following times their success was variable, and commonly bad. Many overthrowes they received; and if they got any victory, it yielded them no profit, but was soon extorted out of their hands. They were indeed more fierce than well advised: lightly stirred up to war, and lightly giving over. At the first brunt, they were said to be more than men; but when that was past, less than women. The Romans were acquainted with their temper, by long experience, and knew how to handle them: yet gave alwayes careful heed to their approach, were it only bruited. For the danger of them was sudden, and uncertain; by reason of their neighbourhood and want of intelligence among them. Few of their attempts upon Rome were called wars, but tumults *Gallici*, tumults of the Gauls: and rightly. For they gave many alarms to Italy, and used to rise with great Armies: but after a few dayes march, and sometimes before their setting forth, any small occasion served to disperse them. Having received an overthrow, they would rest ten or twelve years, sometimes twenty or thirty: till they were stirred up again, by younger heads, unacquainted with the danger. Whilest they rested, the state of Rome, that against these made only defensive war, had leisure to grow, by sitting upon others. Herein God provided well for that Monarchy, which he intended to raise: that the Gauls never fell upon Italy with a mighty power, in the time of any other great and dangerous war. Had they attempted to conquer it, whilest *Pyrrius* was travelling in the same enterprize, or in either of the two former *Punic* wars: it may be doubted what would have become of this imperious City. But it seems that the Gauls had no better intelligence in the affairs of Italy, than strangers had in Gaul. At least, they knew not how to use their times: & were therefore like to smart, whensoever the enemies, whom they had much provoked, and little hurt, should finde leisure to visit them at their own home: which was now after the first *Punic* War. Once before this, the Romans had been bold, to set upon the Gauls in their own Country: and that was three years before the coming of *Pyrrius* into Italy. At that time the *Senones*, a Tribe of the Gauls, invading *Hetruria*, and besieging *Arretinum*, had won a great battail, and slain *L. Cæcilius*, with the most of his Army. *Mannius Curius* the new Consull, sent Embassadors to them, to treat about ransom of prisoners. But these

Embassa-

a There were  
divers nations  
of the Boji  
in Pennonia,  
Illyria, Go-  
nary, in Bou-  
lonen, in  
France, and  
in Aquitany;  
these Boji were  
of French  
race, and  
dwelt at this  
time about  
mouth of the  
river Po.

Embassadours they flew. Therefore when fortune turned to the better, the *Romans* followed it to well, that they expelled these *Senones* out of their Country, and sent a colony of their own to inhabit it. This caused the *Boji*, another people of *Gauls*, to fear the like measure: who thereupon took arms, and drew the *Hetrurians* to their side. But the *Romans* overthrew them in two great battles; and thereby made them sue for peace, which lasted until the end of this *Illyrian* war.

It vexed the *Gauls* to see a *Roman* colony planted in their Country, who had been accustomed to enlarge their bounds, by driving out their neighbours perforce. Wherefore they laboured with the *Transalpins* (so the *Romans* called those in *France*, as lying from them beyond the *Alpes*, though those they were nearer, like as they called *Cisalpins*, or 10 by-hither the *Alpes*, those who dwell between them and the Mountains) to draw them to their party: reasonably presuming, that as their disjunction had caused their loss, so their union might recompence it, with large amends. But the business was so foolishly carried, that the *Cisalpins* and *Transalpins* fell together by the ears, putting the *Romans* only to a tumult, without further trouble of war. Soon after, they were urged by a greater indignity, to go more substantially to work. For *C. Flaminius*, a popular man in *Rome*, proposed a Decree, which was ratified by the people: That, besides one Colony already planted in the territory of the *Senones*, as many more should be carried thither, as would serve to people the whole Country between *Ancona* and *Ariminum*: exterminating utterly those *Gauls*. Such an offer, were it made in *England*, concerning either *Virginia*, or 20 *Griana* it self, would not over-joy the Multitude. But the commonalty of *Rome* took this in so good part, notwithstanding all danger joyned with the benefit, that *Flaminius* had ever after their good will.

This dreadful President extremely displeased the *Boji*, who being neighbours to *Ariminum*, feared the like displacement. And because the rest of the *Gauls* had reason to resolve, that themselves also should be rooted out by degrees; the great Nation of the *Insubrians*, which inhabited the Duchy of *Milan*, joined with the *Boji*, & upon a common purpose entertained the *Gessates*, nations about *Rhodanus*, wageable as the *Smithers* in these times. The *Gessates* having received a great impress, come to the field under the conduct of their Kings *Concolitanus* and *Aneroestus*: who with the *Boji* and *Insubrians*, com- 30 posed an Army of fifty thousand foot, and twenty thousand horse, and those of the best men, and best appointed, that ever invaded the *Roman* Territory: to whom the *Senogalli*, that had been beaten out of their possessions, gave a great increase of strength. On the contrary side, the *Venetians*, and the  *Cenomanni*, adhered to the *Romans*: as better believing in their prosperity and rising fortune. For fear of whose incursions therefore, the *Gauls* were forced to leave a good part of their Army, on the frontier of *Milan*: with the rest of their forces they entered into *Tuscane*. The *Romans* hearing of this danger, send *Emilius* to *Rimini*, to stop their passage; and in the place of *C. Atilius* their other Consul, who then was in *Sardinia*, they employ one of their Prætors, for the defence of *Tuscane*. 40

b *Cenomanni*  
are the people  
about *Bergo-  
mo*, on the  
North side of  
the river *Po*  
in Italy.  
There were  
also of these  
*Cenomanni* in  
*France*, and  
inhabited the  
Country of  
*Main*.

Being at this time greatly troubled with the consideration of this powerfull Army, which the *Gauls* had assembled, they caused a view to be taken, as well of all their own forces, as of those of their Allies: who were no less willing than themselves, to oppose the incursions of the barbarous people; fearing, as they had cause, that their own destruction could not be prevented otherwise, than by the good fortune of *Rome*. The numbers, found in this Muster, deserve to be recorded: because they set out the power of the *Romans* in those days. With the Consuls they sent forth to the war four Legions of their own: every Legion consisting of five thousand two hundred foot, and three hundred horse; and of their Allies, thirteen thousand foot, and two hundred horse. There were also appointed for supplies (if any misadventure came to these) of the *Sabines* and 50 *Hetrurians* fifty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, which Army was to be lodged in the border of *Hetruria*. Of the *Umbri* and *Sarfinates*, which inhabited the *Apennines*, there were twenty thousand; and of the *Venetians* and *Cenomanni*, other twenty thousand: which latter Armies were directed to invade the *Boji*, that forcing them to defend their own Territories, the Generall Army of the *Gauls* should be thereby greatly diminished. There were besides these, to be ready against all uncertain chances of war, thirty thousand foot, and fifteen hundred horse, garrisoned in *Rome* it self, of their own people; and of their Allies, thirty thousand foot, and two thousand horse. Over and above

above these great troupes; in the Roll of the *Laines*, that was sent unto the Senate, there were numbered four thousand foot, and five thousand horse; in that of the *Samnites*, seventy thousand foot, and of horse seven thousand, in that of the *Fapyges* & *Mef- 5 fapyges*, fifty thousand foot, and sixteen thousand horse; the *Lucans* sent a list of thirty thousand foot, and three thousand horse; the *Marfi*, *Marrusini*, *Ferentians*, and the *Vesini*, of twenty thousand foot and four thousand horse. The *Romans* had also two Legions in *Stail*, and about *Tarentum*, containing eight thousand four hundred foot, and four hundred horse. So as of the *Romans* and *Campanes* jointly, reckoning men armed, and fit to bear arms, there were registred two hundred and fifty thousand foot; and of 10 horse three and twenty thousand: of which, reckoning the *Romans* apart, there were an hundred and fifty thousand foot, and about six thousand horse. Calling up the whole forces of all the Provinces in *Italy*, both of the *Romans* and their confederates, it amounted to seven hundred thousand foot, & seventy thousand horse. But the number is somewhat mis-cast by *Polybius*; not with a purpose to enrich himself by the dead payes: for where he reckons nine hundred horse too many, he falls short nine thousand two hundred of the foot.

How great soever this muster was, it seems to have been like unto that, which *Lodowick Sforza* made, when *Lewis* the twelfth invaded *Milan*: at what time, the better to encourage himself and his subjects, he took a Roll of all persons able to bear arms 20 within the Duchy, though indeed he were never able to bring a tenth part of them into the field. Certain it is, that the battels of *Trebia*, *Thrasymene*, and *Canna*, did not consume any such proportion, as was answerable to this large account. Yet were the *Romans* fain to arme their slaves, even for want of other Souldiers, after their overthrow at *Canna*. Wherefore the marvell is not great, that the *Carthaginians* and others were little terrified with report of such a multitude. For all heads are not fit for Helms: though the *Roman* Citizens were, in general, as good fighting men, as elsewhere might be found.

Notwithstanding all these counter preparations, the *Gauls* keep on their way: and entering into *Tuscane*, destroy, and put to fire and sword, all that lay before them. From thence they march directly towards *Rome*; hoping to finde the *Romans* rather in deliberation, than in the field. But their intelligence fails them. For the *Roman* Army, sent into *Tuscane*, having taken some other way than they did, and finding that it had misfired of them, came again fast after them, to arrest them in their journey. Hereof when they heard the rumour, fearing to be charged on their backs, they turned head: and in the same evening discovered the *Roman* Army, by whom they incamped. It was now a matter of apparent necessity, that fight they must. Wherefore they helped themselves with a stratagem, that shewed no great fineness of wit, but such as well befitted those that had none other occupation than war, and stood them in good stead at the present. In the dead of the night, they caused their foot to march away, but not far, leaving their horse in guard; to 40 whom they gave order to come off at the first light of day, with such a speed, as might rather argue a running away, than a retreat: as if they had not dared to abide battell. The *Romans*, interpreting this their hasty departure as the *Gauls* desired they should, follow them in disorder. The *Gauls* return, charge them, and kill six thousand upon the place; the rest take a piece of ground of advantage, & defend themselves, till *L. Emilius*, being at *Ariminum*, comes to their succour. Upon the coming of the Consul, the *Gauls* consult, whether they should give the *Romans* battell, or forbear. In which dispute, *Aneroestus*, one of their Kings, persuades them, rather to return into their own Countries; where, after they had disposed of the great spoils and riches which they had gotten, they should then renew the war, being without carriage, pester, or other impediment. This 50 advice they all embrace; for, seeing they that were Mercenaries, had obtained what they came for, to wit, the spoils of their enemies, they thought it wisdom, to hazzard neither it, nor themselves any further.

This indeed had been a good resolution, if they had taken it, before the enemy had been in sight. But as well in the wars of these later ages, as in former times, it hath ever been found extreme dangerous, to make a retreat in the Head of an Enemies Army. For although they that retire, do often turn head; yet in alwayes going on from the pursuing enemy, they find, within a few miles, either straight, hedge, ditch, or place of disadvantage, which they are inforced to passe in disorder. In such cases, the Souldier knows

a *Fapyges* and *Mef-  
fapyges* seem  
to be one Na-  
tion, who are  
also called Sa-  
lentines, Peuc-  
cians, Apuli-  
ans, and Cal-  
abrians. The  
Country is  
now *Apulia*,  
concerning the  
Northernmost  
part of the  
*Calabria*.  
b A people of  
the kingdom  
of Naples,  
i *Pictus* calls  
them a people  
of Italy.  
k A people of  
*Campania*, cal-  
led to this day  
*Ferentines*,  
5 *Birth Land*.

knowes it as well as the Captain, that he which forsakes the field, perceives and fears some advantage of the Enemies. Fear, which is the betrayer of those succours that reason offereth, when it hath once possessed the heart of man, it casteth thence both courage and understanding. They that make the retreat, are always in fear to be abandoned; they that lead the way, fear to be engaged: and so the hindmost treads on his heels that is foremost; and consequently, all disband, run, and perish, if those that favour the retreat be not held to it by men of great courage. The miserable overthrow that the French received in Naples, in the year 1503, upon a retreat made by the Marques of Sal, doth testify no lesse. For although a great troupe of French horse sustained the pursuing Enemy a long time, and gave the foot leisure to trot away; yet being retarded by often turnings, the Spanish foot overtook, and defeated them utterly. During the wars between the Imperials and the French, Boiss and Mont were lost at Brignolles, who in a bravery would needs see the enemy, before they left the field. So was Stroß overthrown by the Marques of Marignan, because he could not be perswaded to dislodge the night before the Marques his arrivall. Therefore did the French King Francis the first wisely: when without respect of point of honour, he dislodge from before Landersley, by night; as many other the most advised Captains, (not finding themselves in case to give battell) have done. *Je ne trouve point* (saith the Marshall Montluc) *au fait des armes chose si difficile, qu'une retraite; j'en ai vu de si difficile, que de faire une retraite.* A sure rule it is, that there is less dishonour to dislodge in the dark, than to be beaten in the light. And hereof M. de la Noue gives this judgement of a dayes retreat, made in France, presently before the battell at Moncontour. For (saith he) staying upon our reputation, in shew, not to dislodge by night; we lost our reputation indeed, by dislodging by day: whereby we were forced to fight upon our disadvantage, and to our ruin. And yet did that woorthy Gentleman Count Lodovick of Nassau, brother to the late famous Prince of Orange, make the retreat at Moncontour with so great resolution, as he saved the one half of the Protestant Army, then broken and disbanded; of which my self was an eye-witnesse, and was one of them that had cause to thank him for it.

Now the Gauls, embracing the safe advice (as they take it) of one of their Kings, turn their backs to the enemy, and their faces homeward. *Emilius* follows them as near as he can, without engaging himself, attending his advantage. In the mean while, C. *Attilius* the other Consull, with the Legions of *Sardinia*, lands at *Pisa*; so as the Gauls inclosed between two Armies, are forced to fight. They therefore equally strengthen their Rear and Front. To sustain *Emilius*, they appoint the *Gessates*, and the *Milanois*; in the Front they range the *Piemontois*, and the rest of the Gauls inhabiting upon the River of *Po*. The manner of the fight *Polybius* describeth at large: which was well fought of all hands. But in the end the Gauls fell; and so did *Attilius* the Consull: who died in the place, accompanied with the two Kings of the Gauls, *Concolitanus* and *Aneroesus*, with forty thousand of their Vassals.

After this fall overthrow, the Gauls lost courage; and ere long all that they held in Italy. For they were invaded the year following this overthrow, by the new Consuls, *Fulvius* and *Mantius*. The Romans knew well how to use their victory: they gave not ten, twenty, or thirty years time to the Gauls, to repair their forces, as the Gauls had done to them. These new Consuls beat the *Boii*; but by reason of the great rains that fell, and the great pestilence that reigned, they were compelled for that present to surcease. In the second year, *Furius* and *Flaminius* invade the *Milanois*; and prevail very far, being strongly assisted by the *Cenomanni* and the *Venetians*. Nevertheless these Consuls were revoked out of their Province, by the Senate of Rome, and compelled to resign their Office: because the *Augures*, or *Soothsayers*, had found, that some token or other of the Birds (in which, and all sorts of their divination, the Romans were extremely superstitious) had not only foretolded little good, when they were chosen, but had also nullified the election. C. *Flaminius*, receiving letters of this revocation from the Senate, and being otherwise advertised of the contents, was not hasty to open them: but first gave battell unto the enemies, vanquished them, and spoiled their Country; then perused the letters, and returning home obtained a triumph, for against the will of the Senate, and not altogether with good liking of the people, who yet bare him out, for that he sided in faction with the Commonalty, though a man of great Nobility.

This

This was that *Flaminius*, who had propounded the Decree, for dividing the Country of the *Senones* among the people of *Rome*. He was the first, & one of the first, that understanding the Majesty of Rome to be indeed wholly in the people, and no otherwise in the Senate, than by a way of Delegacy, or grand Commission; did not stand highly upon his birth and degree, but courted the multitude, and taught them to know and use their power, over himself and his fellow Senators, in reforming their disorders. For this, the Commons highly esteemed him, and the Senators as deeply hated him. But he had the surer side, and found imitators, that rose by the same art, which in proceesse of time, grew the only or chief way to preferment.

*Flaminius* and his Colleague, being disposed; M. *Claudianus Marcellus*, & Cn. *Cornelius Scipio*, were chosen Consuls, for the rest of that year. The Gauls about this time desired peace; & were like to have obtained it: though the new Consuls were against it, as fearing to want work. But when thirty thousand of the *Gessates*, following their King *Britomarus*, were come over the Alps, and joyned with the *Insubrians*: all other discourse, than of present war, was at an end. So the Consuls hastened into their Province, where they besieged *Acerra*, a town not far from *Nochurno* (so far had the Romans pierced already) in the Duchy of *Milan*. To divert them from this siege, *Britomarus* (as down before *Clasidium*, a town in the same Tract, with a great part of his forces: leaving the rest, with the *Insubrians*, to attend upon the Consuls at *Acerra*, and to look to the defence of *Milan*. But this would not suffice, to make the Romans break up their siege, *Marcellus*, taking with him the greatest part of the horse, and six hundred foot lightly armed, thought to deal well enough with those at *Clasidium*. *Britomarus* heard of the Consuls coming, and met him upon the way: so suddenly, that the Romans had no leisure to rest themselves after their journey, but were compelled instantly to fight: Herein *Britomarus* had done well, if he had not forthwith, in a rash bravery, lost his game at a cast. He had advantage enough in numbers, both of horse and foot: but he thought so well of his own personal valour, that he rode our single before his Army, provoking any one to fight with him. *Marcellus* was no less daring, than the barbarous King: whether more wife in this action, I will not dispute; he was more fortunate, and that sufficed to commend him. He slew and disarmed *Britomarus*, in the presence of both Armies: whereby his own men took such courage, and his enemies were so dismayed, that without much trouble of fight the Romans obtained a great victory.

This was the third and last time, that ever any Roman Generall slew the Generall of the enemies, with his own hand. To this kinde of victory, belonged a peculiar triumph; whereof only *Romulus*, *Cassius*, and this *Marcellus*, had the honour: yet I dare say; that the two *Scipios*, and divers of the Roman Captains, especially *Cesar*, were better men of war than any of these three; though they never offered up to *Jupiter*, *Opima spolia*, The Armour of a Generall slain by themselves, when they were Generalls, nor perhaps afflicted so to do.

After this victory, *Acerra* was yielded to the Romans; and *Milan* soon after: with all that belonged to the *Cisalpinus*, or Gauls, that dwelt in *Lumbardie*. Thus was that valiant and mighty Nation, that had so many years vexed the State of Rome, and in former times taken the City it self, brought to nothing in a short time; their pleasant and fertile Territory possessed by the Romans; and the remainder of their Nation, inhabiting Italy, so many as would not subject their necks to the Roman yoke, either forced to abandon their Countreys, or to hide themselves in the cold and barren Mountains, like Outlaws and Thieves. And thus did the Romans spend the three and twenty years, following the peace made with Carthage. In part of which time, they were at such leisure; that they closed up the Temple of *Janus*: which they never did before, (it standing always open, when they had any war) save once, in the reign of *Numa*; nor in long time after, untill the reign of *Augustus*. But this their present happiness was not to last long: a dangerous war, and perhaps the greatest that had ever been, was to come unto their gates; which being well ended, they might boldly undertake, to extend their Monarchy as far as their ambition could reach.

S s s s

CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the second Punick Warre.

## §. I.

The Wars of Hannibal in Spain. Quarrels between the Romans and Carthaginians. Hannibal besiegeth and taketh Saguntum, whilst the Romans are busied with the Illyrians. War proclaimed between Rome and Carthage.



HANNIBAL, the son of Amilcar, was about six and twenty years old, when he was chosen Generall of the Carthaginian forces in Spain. He was elected, by the Army, as soon as Asdrubal was dead: & the election was ratified by the State of Carthage, where-with Hanno & his Complices were nothing pleased. This was now the third of the Barchine family (so called of Amilcar, whose surname was Barchas) that had command in chief, over the men of war. Which honour would perhaps have been lesse envied, by these domestically enemies, if the Allies and Friends of the Barchine house, had not also borne the whole sway in government, and been the only men regarded, both by the Senate and the people. This generally good will, as it was first purchased by the worthy deserts of Amilcar in saving his Country from imminent ruine, enlarging the Dominion thereof, and enriching it with treasures and great revenues, so was it retained, by the same good arts, among his friends and followers. Hanno therefore, and his Partisans, being neither able to take the virtue of their enemies, that was unreprouable; nor to performe the like services unto the Common weal; had nothing left, whereby to value themselves, excepting the generall reprehension of War, and cautious advice of not provoking the Romans. This they seasoned other-whiles with detraction, saying, that the Barchine faction went about to oppress the liberty of the City. But their malicious words were unregarded; and if it were factious, to bear ill will to Rome, then were all the Citizens (very few excepted) no lesse Barchine, than Hannibal himself. For it was long since apparent, that the oath of the Romans, to the articles of peace, afforded no security to Carthage, were the never so quiet, and officious; unlesse the would yield to become their subject. Since therefore the peace was like to hold no longer, than untill the Romans could finde some good advantage, to renew the war: it was rather desired by the Carthaginians, that whilst their own state was in good case, the war should begin; than that in some unhappy time of famine or pestilence, or after some great losse of Army or Fleet, they should be driven to yeeld unto the impudent demands of their enemies; and to give away basely their lands and treasures, as they had lately done; or miserably fight, upon termes of disadvantage.

This disposition of his countremen, Hannibal well understood. Neither was he ignorant (for his father, and other friends, had long time devised of this business) that in making war with the Romans, it was no small advantage to get the start of them. If once he could bring an Army into Italy, without molestation; there was good hope, that he should finde friends and assistance, even of those people, that helped to increase the Roman armies in forraign wars. But this could never be effected, if the matter were openly disputed at Carthage. For it was to be doubted, that the Carthaginians, how glad soever they would be, to hear that he had set the war on foot, would nevertheless be slow and timorous, as commonly men are in the beginning of great enterprises, if the matter were referred to their deliberation. Which if it should happen, then were the Romans like to be made acquainted, not only with the generalities of his purpose, but with such particulars as must be discoursed of, in procuring allowance to his design. This might suffice to disorder the whole Project. Wherefore, he resolved to lay siege unto Saguntum, which might seem not greatly to concern the Romans, and would highly please the Carthaginians, that had fresh in mind the indignity of that Spanish Towns alliance with her half friends. So should he assay both the patience of his enemies, and the disposition of his own Citizens.

Having

Having thus concluded, he nevertheless went fair and orderly to work: and beginning with those that lay next in his way, approaching unto Saguntum by degrees. This he did (saith Livie) to give some colour to his proceedings: as if he had not principally intended the war against Saguntum, but had been drawn thither by course of business. Yet reason teacheth plainly, that without regard of such formalities, it was needfull to finish the conquest of the rest, before he did any thing that should provoke the Romans. First therefore he entred upon the Territory of the *Olusades*; and having besieged *Althaa* (Livie calleth it *Carteia*) their chief City, he became, in a few dayes, Master not only thereof, but of all the other Towns of their Country. This Nation which he first undertook, being subdued, and the winter at hand, he rested his Army in new Carthage, or Carthagena, and imparted liberally to the Souldiers, the spoils he had gotten in his late Conquest.

In the Spring following, he pursued the war against the *Vaccai*: and without any great difficulty, wan first *Salmanica*, now called *Salamanca*; and after it, *Arbucala*, by assault: though not without a long siege, and great difficulty. But in his return, he was put to the height, both of his courage, and of his Martiall judgement. For all such of the *Vaccai*, as were able to bear armes, being made desperate, by the spoil of their country, with those of *Salamanca*, and of the *Olusades*, that had escaped in the late overthrow, joining themselves with the *Toletans*; compounded an Army of an hundred thousand able men: and stayed Hannibal on the banks of the River *Tagus*, which runneth to the Sea by *Lisborne* in *Portugale*. These four Nations, having had experience of Hannibals invincible courage, and that he never saw enemy, upon whom he durst not give charge; were thoroughly resolved, that his natural valour would at this time no lesse neglect the cold advice of discretion, than at other times it had seemed to doe, when the like great occasion perswaded him to use it. But he that makes himself a body of Cryllall, that all men may look through him, and discern all the parts of his disposition, makes himself (withall) an Asse: and thereby teacheth others, either how to ride, or drive him. Wife men, though they have single hearts in all that is just & virtuous; yet they are like Coffers with double bottomes: which when others look into being opened, they see not all that they hold, on the sudden, and at once. It is true, that this subtle Carthaginian, when he served under *Asdrubal*, was, of all the men of mark in the Army, the most adventurous, but that which may bescem a Captain, or inferiour Commander, doth not alwayes become a Chief; though it hath sometime succeeded well with such great ones, as have been found more fortunate, than wise. At this time, our great Man of war knew as well how to dissemble his courage, as at other times to make it good. For he with-drew himself from the River-side, as if fearful to foord it; thereby to draw over that great multitude, from their banks of advantage. The *Spaniards*, apprehending this in such sort, as Hannibal desired that they should; thrust themselves in fury and disorder, into the swift stream, with a purpose to charge the Carthaginians, abandoning (as they thought for fear) the defenses on the contrary side. But when Hannibal saw them in their way, and well near over, he turned back his Elephants to entertain them at their landing: and thrust his Horse-men, both above and beneath them, into the River. These carrying a kinde of *Lance de Gay*, sharp at both ends, which they held in the midst of the staffe; had such an advantage over the foot, that were in the River, under their strokes, clattered together, and unable to move or shift their bodies, as on firme ground: that they flue all those, (in a manner) without resistance, which were already entred into the water; and pursued the rest, that fled like men amazed, with so great a slaughter, as from that day forward, there was not any *Spaniard*, on that side the River of *Iberus*, (the *Saguntines* excepted) that had the daring to lift up their hands against the Carthaginians.

The *Saguntines*, perceiving the danger towards them; cryed before they were hurt. They sent Embassadours to Rome, and bemoaned themselves, as likely to suffer that, which afterwards they suffered indeed; onely because of their alliance and friendship with this honourable City, which the Carthaginians hated. This tale moved the Senate, but much more a report, that Saguntum was already besieged. Hereupon some cry out, that War should be proclaimed by Land and Sea; as also that the two Consuls should be sent with Armies, the one into Spain, the other into *Africk*. But others went

Still a

more



more *Roman*-like to work, and carryed it. So it was only concluded; that Embassadours should be sent into *Spain*, to view the state of their confederates: which were indeed none other, than the *Saguntines*. For if *Hannibal* intended war against *Rome*, it was likely, that he would give them, ere it were long; a more plausible occasion to take armes against him: if he had no such purpose, yet would it be in their power, to determine what they listed themselves, upon the report of these Embassadours; and this their gravity, in being not too rash at first, would serve to countenance their following Decree. Of these Embassadours *Livie* reports, that they found *Hannibal* before *Saguntum*, but could not get audience of him, and therefore went to *Carthage*, where also they were not regarded, nor heard. But *Polybius* an Historian of sincerity less questionable, tells, that they found him at *Carthage*, &c. had conference with him, though such as left them doubtfull. This is more agreeable to the rest of *Hannibal* his whole course. And surely we might wonder, why the *Carthaginians* should afterwards admit a more peremptory Embassage (as *Livie* confesseth) and fall to disputation about the covenants of peace; if they had rejected that which was sent upon none other pretence, than prevention of war.

Whilest the Embassadours passed to and fro, *Hannibal* prepared not only his forces, but some *Roman* pretences, against *Saguntum*. He found out *Mamertines*, or people that should do as the *Mamertines* in *Sicil* had done for the *Romans*; and improve his help against the *Saguntines*. These were the *Turdetani*, a Nation adjoining to *Saguntum*, & having many quarrels with them: (as happens commonly among neighbours) of which, *Hannibal* himself had hatched some. Finding therefore such an occasion, whatsoever it was, as made him able to say, that the *Saguntines* had first provoked him; ere he meddled with them; he made no more ado, but sat down with his whole power before their Town. He was now more secure, than he had formerly been of his own Citizens: for that they had not entertained the *Roman* Embassadours, with any trembling reverence, as of late years they had been wont. Nevertheless, he was glad of any handsome colour, to shadow his actions, not only because the War, which he so much desired, was not proclaimed; but that he might not be checked in his course, as an open enemy, before he could set foot in *Italy*. The *Romans* had the like, though contrary desire. They were glad of the quarrell: as hoping, that *Carthage*, with all thereto belonging, should thereby in short space become their own. Yet were they not hasty to threaten, before they were ready to strike; but meant to temporize, until they had an Army in readines to be sent into *Spain*, where they thought to make *Saguntum*, the seat of the War.

In the mean while, *Demetrius Pharius*, whom the *Romans* had made King over a great part of *Illyria*, rebelled against them: either for that he found himself over-strictly tied up by them, with hard conditions, or rather because he was of an unthankfull disposition. The commotion of the *Gauls*, and afterward the same of the *Carthaginian* war, emboldened him to despise his Benefactors and Patrons: whom he ought to have defended and aided, in all perils, even with the hazard of his whole estate, which he had received of their gift. But he was a Traitor to his own Queen; and therefore dealt according to his kinde, with those that had rewarded him for being such. First, he built ships, and spoiled the Isles of *Greece*; against the covenants to which he was bound. Then he adventured further, and seized upon some places, that the *Romans* kept in their own hands. If he had begun sooner, or rather if he had stayed somewhat longer, he might have sped better. For the business with the *Gauls*, was ended; with *Hannibal*, not thoroughly begun, when he declared himself, by his doings, an enemy, and was vanquished. The *Roman* Consul, *Emilius*, was sent against him: who in seven dayes was the strong town of *Dimalum*; and thereby brought such terror upon the Country round about, that Embassadours were sent from all places, to yield themselves, without putting him to further pains. Only the City of *Pharus*, in which *Demetrius* lay, prepared to resist: which he might have done long, if the hot-headed Rebel had not been too foolish. *Emilius* landed a great part of his Army, in the Isle of *Pharus*, by night; and bestowed them in covert, presenting himself the next morning, with twenty ships before the town, and offering to force the Haven. *Demetrius* with all his power issued out against the Consul, and was soon intercluded from the town, by those that lay in ambush. Wherefore he fled away through by-paths to a creek, where he had shipping ready

ready for him, and imbarqued himself: leaving all his estate unto them, of whose liberality he first had it.

This business, though it were soon dispatched, yet prevented it not the siege of *Saguntum*; before which *Hannibal* sat down, ere *Emilius* was landed in *Illyria*. In the beginning of the siege, the *Carthaginians* were much discouraged, by reason of the brave sallies made by the *Saguntines*; in one of which, their Generall received a dangerous wound in the thigh, that caused him to lye many dayes unable to move. Nevertheless he was not unmindfull of his work in the mean while; but gave order to raise certain movable Towers, that might equal those which were built upon the wals of the City; and to prepare to batter the curtains, and make a breach. These being finished and applied, had soon wrought their effect. A great and large breach was made, by the fall of divers Towers, and a great length of wall; whereat an hot assault was given: but it was so well sustained by the *Saguntines*, as the *Carthaginians* were not only beaten from the breach, and out of some ground within the Town, which upon the first fury they had won; but they were pursued even to their own trenches and camp. Nevertheless the *Carthaginian* Army, who were about an hundred and fifty thousand men, did so weary the Townsmen with continual travail, that at length it got within the wals; and was only hindered from taking full possession of the City, by some counter-works of the *Saguntines*, that were also ready to be won. In this extremity, there was one *Alcon* a *Saguntine*, that conveyed himself out of the Town, to treat with *Hannibal* for some accord. But the conditions which the *Carthaginian* offered were so severe, and without all compas of honour, as *Alcon* durst not return to propound them to his Countrymen. For *Hannibal* demanded all that they had; gold, silver, plate, and other riches within the City: yea, the City it self to be abandoned by the Citizens; promising, that he would assign some other place for their habitation: not allowing them, to carry out with them any other thing, wherewith to sustain themselves, than the clothes on their backs or other armes, to defend them, than their nailes and teeth. Yet might they far better have submitted themselves unto this miserable appointment, (feeling thereby they might have enjoyed their lives, and saved the honour of their wives and daughters) then to have rested at the discretion of the Conquerour, as soon after they did: by whom their wives and daughters were defouled before their own faces; and all put to sword, that were above fourteen years of age. For it was a poor comfort, which a great number of them took; when not daring to fight, and sell their blood at the dearest rate, they shut themselves up like most wretched creatures in their own houses, and therein burnt themselves with all that they had: so dying unrevenged. The treasures found in *Saguntum*, which were very great, *Hannibal* kept, therewith to pay his Army: the slaves, and other booty, he divided among his Souldiers, reserving some things of choice, wherewith to present his friends at *Carthage*, and to animate them unto the War.

These tidings exceedingly vexed the *Romans*, who had good cause to be angry at their own slowness, in forbearing to send help unto the *Saguntines*, that held out eight months, looking still for succour, but in vain. Wherefore they determined to repair their honour, by taking sharp revenge. To this end they sent Embassadours again to *Carthage*: demanding only, Whether it were by generall consent and allowance of the *Carthaginians*, that *Hannibal* had made warre upon *Saguntum*: which if they granted (as it seemed they would) thento give them defiance. Hereunto answer was made, in the Senate of *Carthage*, to this effect; That this their second Embassage, howsoever qualified with milde words, was indeed more insolent than the former. For in that, they only required justice against *Hannibal*; but in this, the very State and Commonwealth of *Carthage*, was urged to plead guilty, or not guilty. But (said the *Carthaginian* speaker) whether the generall of our Army in *Spain*, in besieging *Saguntum*, have only followed his own counsaill; or whether he did it, by direction from us: it is not the question which the *Romans* ought to aske us. That which is indeed worthy examination or dispute, is, Whether it were lawfull or unlawfull for *Hannibal* to do as he hath done. For it belongs to us, to call our own Commanders in question, and to punish them according to their faults & errors; to you, to challenge us, if we have done any thing contrary to our late League and contract. It is true, that in our negotiation with *Luchatus* the Consul, the Allies of both Nations were comprehended: but the *Saguntines* were not

not then of your Allies, and therefore no parties to the peace then made; for of your Allies in the future, or of ours, there was no dispute. As touching the last agreement, between you and *Asdrubal*, wherein you will say, that the *Saguntines* were comprehended by name, it is you that have taught us how to answer that particular. For whatsoever you found in the Treaty between us and *Lustatius*, to your own disadvantage, you cast it upon your Consuls presumption as promising those things, for which he had no warrant from the Senate and people of *Rome*. If then it be lawfull for the *Romans*, to disavow the actions of their Consuls and Commanders, concluding any thing without punishment and precise warrant; the same liberty may we also assume, and hold our selves no way bound in honour, to performe those bargains, which *Asdrubal* hath made for us, 10 without our commandment and consent.

This was an impertinent answer, and little better than a meer cavill. For *Lustatius* the Consul, in his Treaty of peace with the *Carthaginians*, had expressly referred the allowance thereof to the people of *Rome*. It had been therefore much better, to have dealt plainly; and to have alledged, That after this League was made, and confirmed on both parts, it was broken by the *Romans*, in robbing the *Carthaginians* of the Isle of *Sardinia*, and withall of twelve hundred talents: which perjury the State of *Carthage*, being now grown able, would revenge with open War. As for the *Saguntines*, it little skilled that the *Romans* had admitted them into confederacy, and forthwith inserted their names into the Treaty of peace with *Asdrubal*: seeing that the Treaty with *Asdrubal*, and all other business between *Rome* and *Carthage*, following the violence and breach of peace, in taking away *Sardinia*, were no better than *Roman* injuries, as implying this commination, *Do whatsoeuer we require, else will we make War, without regard of our oath, which we have already broken.*

But this the *Carthaginians* did not alledge, forgetting, in heat of contention (as *Polybius* takes it) the best of their Plea. Yet since *Livie* himself doth remember and acknowledge, that the taking of *Sardinia* from the *Carthaginians*, did inflame the spirit of *Amilcar* with desire of revenge: we may reasonably think, that the mention of this injury was omitted, not so much upon forgetfulness, as for that it was not thought convenient, by ripping up such ancient matter of quarrell, to shew that the war, now towards, had long been thought upon, and like to be made with extraordinary force, in other manner than heretofore. In conclusion, the *Carthaginian* Senate moved the *Roman* Embassadors, to deliver unto them in plain termes the purposes of those that sent them, and the worst of that, which they had long determined against them: as for the *Saguntines*, and the confining of their Armies within *Iberus*; those were but their pretences. Whereupon *Q. Fabius* gathering up the skirt of his gown, as if somewhat had been laid in the hollow thereof, made this short reply: I have here (quoth he) in my Gown skirt both Peace and War: make you (my Masters of the Senate) election of these two, which of them you like best, and purpose to embrace. Hereat all cried out at once, Even which of them you your self have a fancy to offer us. Marry then (quoth *Fabius*) take the War, and 40 share it among you. Which the assembly willingly accepted.

This was plain dealing. To wrangle about pretences, when each part had resolved to make War, it was merely frivolous. For all these disputes of breach of peace, have ever been maintained by the party unwilling, or unable to sustain the War. The rusty sword, and the empty purse, do always plead performance of covenants. There have been few Kings or States in the World, that have otherwise understood the obligation of a Treaty, than with the condition of their own advantage: and commonly (seeing peace between ambitious Princes and States, is but a kinde of breathing) the best advised have rather begun with the sword, than with the trumpet. So dealt the *Arragonis* with the *French* in *Naples*; *Henry* the second of *France*, with the *Imperials*, when he wrote to *Brissac*, to surpris as many places as he could, ere the war brake out; *Don John* with the *Netherlands*, and *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the *English*, when in the great *Imbargo* he took all our ships and goods in his Ports.

But *Hannibal*, besides the present strength of *Carthage*, and the common feeling of injuries received from these enemies, had another private and hereditary desire, that violently carried him against the *Romans*. His father *Amilcar*, at what time he did sacrifice, being ready to take his journey into *Spain*, had solemnly bound him by oath, to pursue them with immortal hatred, and to work them all possible mischief, as soon as he

he should be a man, and able. *Hannibal* was then about nine years old, when his father caused him to lay his hand upon the Altar, and make this vow: so that it was no marvel, if the impression were strong in him.

That it is inhumane, to bequeath hatred in this sort, as it were by Legacy, it cannot be denied. Yet for mine own part, I do not much doubt, but that some of those Kings, with whom we are now in peace, have received the like charge from their Predecessors, that as soon as their coffers shall be full, they shall declare themselves enemies to the people of *England*.

10

§. II.

*Hannibal takes order for the defence of Spain, and Africk. His journey into Italy.*

**W**Arre being thus proclaimed, *Hannibal* resolved not to put up his sword which he had drawn against the *Saguntines*, untill he had therewith opened his passage unto the gates of *Rome*. So began the second Punick War; second to none, that ever the Senate and people of *Rome* sustained. *Hannibal* wintered at *Carthage*, where he licensed his *Spanish* Souldiers to visit their friends, and refresh themselves against the Spring. In the mean while he gave instructions to his brother *Asdrubal*, for the government of *Spain* in his absence. He also took order, 20 to send a great many troupes of *Spaniards* into *Africk*, to equall the number of *Africans* formerly drawn thence into *Spain*; to the end, that so the one Nation might remain as pledges and gages for the other. Of the *Spaniards*, he transported into *Africk* thirteen thousand; eight hundred and fifty foot, and twelve hundred horse; also eight hundred slingers of the *Baleares*. Besides these he selected four thousand foot, all 30 young men, and of quality, out of the best Cities of *Spain*; which he appointed to be garrisoned in *Carthage* it self, not so much in regard of their forces, as that they might serve for hostages: for among those four thousand, the best of the *Spanish* Citizens, and those that swayed most in their severall States, had their Sons or Kinsmen. He also 30 left with his brother, to guard the coasts and Ports, fifty and seven Gallies; whereof thirty seven were presently armed, and appointed for the war. Of *Africans* and other Nations, strangers, he left with him above twelve thousand foot, and two thousand horse, besides one and twenty Elephants.

Having in this sort taken order for the defence of *Spain* and *Africk*; he sent discoverers before him, to view the Passages of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and of the *Alpes*. He also sent Embassadors to the Mountainers of the *Pyrenes*, and to the *Gauls*, to obtain a quiet passage: that he might bring his Army entire into *Italy*, and not be compelled to diminish his forces, by any War in the way, till he came to encounter the *Romans*. His Embassadors and Discoverers being returned with good satisfaction: in the beginning of the Spring, he past over the River of *Iberus*, with an Army consisting of four 40 score and tenthousand foot, and twelve thousand horse. All those parts of *Spain*, into which he had not entred before, he now subdued: and appointed *Hanno* (not that old enemy of his house, who sat still at *Carthage*) to govern *Spain* on the East side of the *rus*; to whom he left an Army of ten thousand foot, and one thousand horse. Being arrived at the borders of *Spain*, some of his *Spanish* Souldiers returned home, without asking leave: which that others might not also do, or attempt, he courtously dismissed 50 many more that seemed willing to be gone. Hereby it came to passe, that the journey seemed the lesse tedious unto those that accompanied him; as being not enforced by compulsion. With the rest of his Army, consisting now but of fifty thousand foot, and 50 nine thousand horse, he past the *Pyrenes*, and entred into *Gaul*. He found the *Gauls* that bordered upon *Spain*, ready in Armes, to forbid his entrance into their Country: but won them, with gentle speech, and rich presents that he bestowed upon their Leaders, to favour his Expedition. So without any molestation, he came to the bank of *Rhodanus*; where dwelt, on each side of the River, a people called *Volca*. These were unacquainted with the cause of his coming; and therefore sought to keep him from passing over the water. But he was greatly assisted by some of those *Gauls*, that inhabited on the West side of *Rhodanus*, to wit, by those of *Vivariet*, and *Lymnois*. For although many of them had transported themselves & their goods, into the Country of *Dauphine* thinking

thinking to defend the further bank against him : yet such as remained, being very desirous to free their country of so many ill guests, were better pleased to have their Countrymen well beaten, which had abandoned them, than to have their own store of corn and cattell wasted, by the long stay of so great an Army, as lay upon them. For which reason, they helped him to make boats; informed him of another more easie passage, higher up the River : & lent him guides. When the Vessels for transportation of his Army were in readinesse; he sent *Hanno*, the son of *Bomilcar*, up the River : himself in the mean while making countenance to enter the Foord below. The end of this labour, was : that *Hanno* charging the *Gaules* unawares upon their own side, and *Hannibal*, at the same time, passing the River in their faces, the further bank was won, though with some difficulty; and the enemies dispersed. Yet was he greatly troubled in conveying over his Elephants; who marvellously feared the water. He was therefore driven to make rasses of trees, and cover them with earth and Turfe; whereof he fastned one to each bank, that might serve as a bridge, to and from another of the same sort, but loose upon which the beasts were towed over.

Having past this first burnt, and overcome both the rage of the River, and of those that defend it, he was visited by the Princes of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, that inhabited *Piemont* and *Milan*, who lately had revolted from the *Romans*. These informed him of the passages of the *Alpes*; that they were not so difficult, as common report made them; and from these he received guides, with many other encouragements. All which notwithstanding, he found himself extremely incumbered by the *Savoyans*; and lost, both of his carriages, and of his *Carthaginians*, more than willingly he would, or had formerly thought that he should. For he was twice mainly assailed by them, before he could recover the plain Countreys on the other side. And whereas his journey over the Mountains cost him fifteen dayes travail, he was every day, more or less, not only charged by those Mountainers, but withall extremely beaten with grievous weather and snow : it being the beginning of Winter, when he began, and overcame this passage. But the fair and fertile Plains, which were now ready to receive them, with the assistance and conduct of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, who by their proper forces had so often invaded the *Roman* Territory : gave them great comfort and encouragement to go on : having nothing else of difficulty remaining, but that which from the beginning they made accompt to overcome, by their proper valour and resolution; namely, the *Roman* Armies, and resistance.

### s. III.

*How the Romans in vain solicited the Spaniards and Gauls to take their part. The rebellion of the Cisalpine Gauls against the Romans.*

**T**He Countries of *Spain* and *Gaul*, through which the *Carthaginians* marched thus far, had been solicited before, by the same *Roman* Embassadors, who had denounced the war at *Carthage*. These, as they were instructed by the Senate, took *Spain* in their way homeward from *Carthage*, with a purpose to draw into the *Roman* Alliance, as many of the Cities and Princes as they could; at least to dissuade them from contracting any friendship with the *Carthaginians*. The first which they attempted, were the *Volsians*, a people in *Spain*; from whom, in open assembly, they received by one that spake for the rest, this uncomfortable answer : With what face (saith he) can ye *Romans* persuade us to value your Alliance, or to prefer it before the friendship of the *Carthaginians*; seeing we are taught by the example of the *Saguntines*, to be more wife than so; For they, relying on your faith and promised assistance, have been utterly rooted out, & destroyed by the *Carthaginians*; whom they might else have held their assured friends, and good neighbours, as we, and other the people of *Spain* have found them. Ye may therefore be gone, with this resolution from us, That for our parts (and so I think, I may answer for the rest of our Country-men) the *Romans* henceforth are not to expect any kindness at our hands; who are resolved, never to make account of their protection, nor amity. From the *Volsians*, the Embassadors took their way towards the *Gauls*; using their best arguments to persuade them not to suffer the *Carthaginians* to pass into *Italy*, through their Territory : and withall greatly glorifying themselves,

themselves, their strength, and large Dominion. But the *Gauls* laugh't them to scorn, and had hardly the patience, to hear them speak. For shall we (said one of their Princes) by resisting *Hannibal's* passage into *Italy*, entertain a war which is not meant to be made against us? Shall we hold the war among our selves, and in our own Territory; by force which marcheth with a speedy pace from us, toward our ancient enemies? Have the *Romans* deserved so well of us, and the *Carthaginians* so ill, that we should set fire on our own houses, to save theirs from burning? No, we know it well, that the *Romans* have already forced some Nations of ours, out of their proper Territory and inheritance : and constrained others, as free as themselves, to pay them tribute. We will not therefore make the *Carthaginians*, our enemies; who have no way as yet offended us, nor we them.

With this unpleasing answer the Embassadors returned home : carrying no good news, of friends likely to help them; but rather some assurance from the people of *Messilia*, which were confederates with *Rome*, that the *Gauls* were determined to take part with their enemy. Of this inclination, the *Cisalpine Gauls* gave hasty proof. For when the news was brought into *Italy*, that the *Carthaginians* had passed *Iberus*, and were on the way towards *Rome*; this alone sufficed to stirre up the *Boji*, and *Isuriens*, against the *Romans*. These people were lately offended at the plantation of new *Roman* Colonies, at *Cremona*, and *Placentia*, within their Territories. Relying therefore upon the *Carthaginian* succour, which they supposed to be now at hand; they laid aside all regard of those hostages, which they had given to the *Romans*, and fell upon the new Colonies. The Towns it seems they could not win; for *Hannibal* shortly after failed to get them. But they forced the *Roman* Commissioners, (who belike were abroad in the Country) to flee to *Modena*: where they besieged them. The siege of *Modena* had continued some small time; when the *Gauls*, having little skill in assaulting Cities, waxed weary, and seemed desirous to have peace, and to come to some good accord with the *Romans*. This they did of purpose, to draw on some meeting; that they might therein lay hand upon the *Roman* Deputies, thereby to redeem their Hostages, in way of exchange. And it fell out, in part, according to their will. For the *Romans* sent out Embassadors to treat with them, and to conclude a peace; whom they detained. *Manlius* the Prator, who lay in these quarters with an Army, hearing this outrage; marched in all haste to the relief of the besieged. But the *Gauls*, having laid a strong ambush in a wood joyning to the way, fell upon the Prator so opportunely, as he was utterly overthrown, and all his followers left dead in the place, a few excepted, that recovered, by fast running, a little village, but defensible; upon the River of *Po*. When this was heard at *Rome*, *C. Atilius*, another of the Prators, was hastily sent, to relieve the besieged, with a Legion, and five thousand of the *Roman* associates : which forces were taken out of the Consuls Army, and supplied by a new levy.

As the *Gauls* were too rash and hasty; so were the *Romans* too slow, and indeed too ill-advised, in the beginning of this war. They were not perswaded, that *Carthage*, which had almost servilely endured so many indignities, in time of the late peace; would be so brave and courageous on the sudden; as to attempt the conquest of *Italy* it self. Wherefore they appointed one of their Consuls to make warre in *Spain*, the other in *Africk*: resting secure of all danger at home. *Titus Sempronius* took his way toward *Africk*, with an hundred and sixty *Quinquagemes*, or Gallies of five to ten oare, which preparation may seem to threaten even the City of *Carthage*, to which it shall not come near. *P. Cornelius Scipio*, the other Consul, made all possible haste, by the way of *Genoa*, into *Provence*; and used such diligence, having the winde also favourable, as in five dayes he recovered *Messilia*. There he was advertised, of *Hannibal's* his having passed the River of *Rhodanus*, whom he thought to have found busie yet a while in *Spain*. *Hannibal* had also news of the Consuls arrivall : whereof he was neither glad, nor sorry, as not meaning to have to do with him. Each of them sent forth Scouts to discover the others number and doings : *Hannibal*, about five hundred *Numidians*; *Scipio* three hundred of his better appointed *Roman* horse. These met and fought, and the *Numidians* were beaten : yet could not the *Romans* greatly brag, having slain only two hundred, and lost of their own, one hundred and forty. But when *Scipio* drew near, to have met with the *Carthaginians*; he found, that they were gone three dayes before, and that (as he then found assuredly true) with an intent to look upon the wals of *Rome*.

This

This interrupted his intended voyage into *Spain*. Nevertheless he sent away thither his brother *Cn. Cornelius Scipio*, with the greatest part of his fleet and Army, to try what might be done against *Asdrubal* & the other *Carthaginian* Lieutenants in the Country. He himself, taking with him a few choice bands, returned by Sea to *Pisa*, and so passing through *Tuscan*, drew together the broken troops of *Manlius* & *Attilius* that lately had been beaten by the *Gauls*: with which forces he made head against the enemy, thinking to find him over-laboured, with travail of his painful journey.

## S. IV.

Scipio the Roman Consul overcome by Hannibal at Ticinum. Both of the Roman Consuls beaten by Hannibal, in a great battell at Trebia.

**F**IVE Moneths Hannibal had spent in his tedious journey from *Carthage*; what great muster he could make, when he had passed the *Alpes*, it is not easily found. Some reckon his foot at an hundred thousand, and his horse at twenty thousand; others report them to have been only twenty thousand foot, and six hundred horse. Hannibal himself in his Monument which he raised, in the Temple of *Juno Lacinia*, agreeth with the latter summe. Yet the *Gauls*, *Ligurians*, and others that joyned with him, are likely to have mightily increased his Army, in short space. But when he marched Eastward from the banks of *Rhodanus*, he had with him eight and thirty thousand foot, & eight thousand horse; of which, all save those remembered by himself in the Inscription of his Altar in *Juno's* Temple, are like to have perished by diseases, enemies, Rivers, and Mountains, which mischiefs had devoured, each their several shares.

Having newly passed the *Alpes*, and scarce refreshed his weary Army in the County of *Piemont*; he sought to win the friendship of the *Taurini*, who lay next in his way. But the *Taurini* held war at that time with the *Insubrians*, which were his good friends; and refused (perhaps for the same cause) his amity. Wherefore he assaulted their Town; and wan it by force in three daies. Their spoil served well to hearten his Army; and their calamity, to terrifie the Neighbour places. So the *Gauls*, without more ado, fell unto his side: many for fear, many also for good-will, according to their former inclination. This disposition ran through the whole Country: which joyned, or was all in readines to joyn with the *Carthaginians*; when the news of *Scipio* the Consul his arrivall, made some to be more advised, than the rest. The name of the *Romans* was terrible in those quarters; what was in the *Carthaginians*, experience had not yet laid open. Since therefore the Roman Consul was already gotten through the most defensible passages, ere any speech had been heard of his approach: many late still for very fear, who else would fain have concluded a League with these new-come friends, and some, for greater fear, offered their service against the *Carthaginians*, whom nevertheless they had wished well to speed.

This wavering affection of the Province, whereinto they were entred, made the two Generals hasten to the tryall of a battail. Their meeting was at *Ticinum*, now called *Pavia*; where each of them wondred at the others expedition: Hannibal thinking it strange that the Consul, whom he had left behinde him on the other side of the *Alpes*, could meet him in the face, before he had well warmed himself in the Plains; *Scipio* admiring the strange adventure of passing those Mountains, and the great spirit of his Enemy. Neither were the Senate at *Rome* little amazed at *Hannibal's* success, and sudden arrivall. Wherefore they dispatched a Messenger in all haste unto *Sempronius*, the other Consul, that was then in *Sicilia*, giving him to understand hereof: & letting him further know, that whereas he had been directed to make the war in *Africa*, it was now their pleasure that he should forbear to prosecute any such attempt, but that he should return the Army under his charge, with all possible speed, to save *Italy* it self. According to this order, *Sempronius* sent off his Fleet from *Lilybaum*; with direction to land the Army at *Arminum*, a Port Town not far from *Ravenna*: quite another way from *Carthage*, whither he was making haste. In the mean while, *Scipio* and *Hannibal* were come so near, that fight they must, ere they could part asunder. Hereupon both of them prepared the mindes of their Soldiers, by the best arguments they had: unto which *Hannibal* added the Rhetorick of a present example, that he shewed upon certain prisoners

prisoners of the *Savians*, which he brought along with him, fitted for the purpose, into *Italy*. For these, having been no less miserably fettered and chained, than sparingly fed; and withall so often scourged on their naked bodies, as nothing was more in their desire, than to be delivered from their miseries by any kinde of present death, were brought into the middle of the Army: where it was openly demanded, which of them would fight hand to hand with some other of his Companions, till the one of them were slain, with condition, being the Victor, to receive his liberty, and some small reward. This was no sooner propounded, than all of them together accepted the offer: Then did *Hannibal* cause lots to be cast, which of them should enter the List, with such weapons, as the Chieftains of the *Gauls* were wont to use in single combats. Every one of these unhappy men wished, that his own lot might speed; whereby it should at least be his good fortune, to end his miseries by death, if not to get a reward by victory. That couple, whose good hap it was to be chosen, fought resolutely: as rather desiring, than fearing death; and having none other hope, than in vanquishing. Thus were some few couples matched, it skilled not how equally: for all these poor creatures were willing, upon whatsoever uneven termes, to ridde themselves out of slavery. The same affection that was in these Combatants, and in their fellows which beheld them, wrought also upon the *Carthaginians*, for whom the spectacle was ordained. For they deemed happy, not only him, that by winning the victory had gotten his liberty, together with an horse and armour: but even him also, who being slain in fight, had elaped that miserable condition, unto which his Companions were returned. Their Generall perceiving what impression this dumbe shew had wrought in them, began to admonish them of their own condition, speaking to this effect: That he had laid before them an example of their own estates: seeing the time was at hand, wherein they were all to runne the same fortune, that these slaves had done; all to live victorious and rich; or all to die, or (which these prisoners esteemed far more grievous) to live in a perpetuall slavery: That none of them all, in whom was common sense, could promise to himself any hope of life by flight; since the Mountains, the Rivers, the great distance from their own Countries, and the pursuit of merciless Enemies, must needs retrench all such impotent imaginations. He therefore prayed them to remember, that they, who had even now praised the fortune both of the Victor, and of the vanquished, would make it their own cause: seeing that there was never any in the world, appointed with such a resolution, that had ever been broken, or beaten by their enemies. On the contrary, he told them that the *Romans*, who were to fight upon their own soil, and in view of their own Towns, who knew as many ways to save themselves by flight, as they had bodies of men to fight withall, could no way entertain such a resolution as theirs: seeing the same necessity, (to which nothing seems impossible) did no way prels them, or constrain them. In this sort did *Hannibal*, with one substantiall argument, That there was no mean between victory and death, encourage his Companions. For, (saith a great Captain of France) *La commodité de la retraite avance la fuite, La commodité d'un retrait, doibt greatly advance a flat running away.*

*Scipio* on the other side, after that he had given order for the laying of a bridge over the River of *Ticinus*, did not neglect to use the best arguments and reasons he could, to encourage the Army he led: putting them in mind of the great conquests and victories of their Ancestors; against how many Nations they had prevailed; and over how many Princes, their Enemies, they had triumphed. As for this Army commanded by *Hannibal*, although it were enough to tell them, that it was no better than of *Carthaginians*, whom in their late war they had so often beaten, by Land and Sea; yet he prayed them withall to consider, that at this time it was not only so diminished in numbers, as it rather seemed a troupe of Brigants and Theeves, than an Army likely to encounter the *Romans*, but so weather-beaten, and starved, as neither the men, nor horses, had strength or courage to sustain the first charge that should be given upon them. Nay (saith he) yee your selves may make judgement what daring they have now remaining, after so many travails and mileries; seeing when they were in their best strength, after they had past the *Roon*, their horse-men were not only beaten by ours, and driven back to the very Trenches of their Camp, but *Hannibal* himself, fearing our approach, ran head-long towards the *Alpes*: thinking it a lesse dishonour, to die there by frost, famine, and precipitation, then by the sharp swords of the *Romans*, which had so often cut down his people,

people, both in *Africa*, and in *Scil*. It was not long after this, ere the two Generals met: each being far advanced before the grofs of his Army, with his Horse, and the *Roman*, having also with him some light-armed foot, to view the ground, and the enemies countenance. When they discovered the approach one of the other, *Scipio* sent before him his horsemen of the *Gauls*, to begin the fight, and bestowing his Darters in the void ground between their troupes, to assist them: himself with his *Roman* men at armes, followed softly in good order. The *Gauls* (whether desirous to try the metall of the *Carthaginians*, or hoping thereby to get favour of the *Romans*) behaved themselves courageously, & were as courageously opposed. Yet their foot that should have aided them, shrank at the first brunt, or rather fled cowardly away, without casting a Dart, for fear 10 of being troden down by the enemies horse. This notwithstanding the *Gauls* maintained the fight and did more hurt than they received; as presuming that they were well backt. Neither was the Consul unmindfull to relieve them: their hardiness deserving his aid; and the hasty flight of those that should have stood by them, admonishing him that it was needfull. Wherefore he adventured himself so far, that he received a dangerous wound; and had been left in the place, if his son (afterward surnamed *Africanus*) had not brought him off: though others give the honour of this rescue to a *Ligurian* slave. Whilst the *Romans* were buſied in helping their Consul, an unexpected storme came driving at their backs, and made them look about how to help themselves. *Hannibal* had appointed his *Numidian* light-horse, to give upon the *Romans* in 20 flank, and to compaſs them about, whilst he with his men at Armes sustained their charge, and met them in the face. The *Numidians* performed this very well: cutting in pieces the scattered foot, that ran away at the first encounter; and then falling on the backs of those, whose looks were fastned upon *Hannibal* and *Scipio*. By this impression, the *Romans* were shuffled together, and routed: so that they all betook them to their speed, and left unto their enemies the honour of the day.

When *Scipio* saw his horsemen thus beaten, and the rest of his Army thereby greatly discouraged; he thought it a point of wisdom, having lost so many of his Fleet upon the first puffe of the winde, to take Port with the rest, before the extremest of the tempest overtook him. For he saw by the lowering morning what manner of day it was like 30 to prove. Therefore his battail of foot being yet unbroken, he in a manner stole the reitrait; and recovered the bridge over *Ticinus*, which he had formerly built. But notwithstanding all the haste that he made, he left six hundred of his Rear behinde him: who were the last that should have passed, and staid to break the bridge. Herein he followed this rule of a good man of war, *Si certamen quandoque dubium videatur, tacitum miles arripit fugam: fuga enim aliquando laudanda*: which must be understood in this sort: If a Generall of an Army, by some unprosperous beginnings doubts the success; or finde his Army fearfull or wavering, it is more profitable to ſeal a safe reitrait, than to abide the uncertain event of battail.

It was two dayes after, ere *Hannibal* could pass the River, *Scipio* the whilst refreshing 40 his men, and easing himself of his wound in *Placentia*. But as soon as *Hannibal* presented his Army before the Town, offering battail to the *Romans*, who durst not accept it, nor issue forth of their Camp; the *Gauls*, that hitherto had followed *Scipio* for fear, gathered out of his fear, courage to forsake him. They thought that now the long-desired time was come, in which better Chieftains and Souldiers, than *Anserius*, *Briomarus*, and *Gessates*, were come to help them: if they had the hearts to help themselves. Wherefore the same night they fell upon the *Roman* Camp, wounded and slue many; especially of those guards that kept watch at the gate; with whose heads in their hands, they fled over to the *Carthaginians*, and presented their service. *Hannibal* received them exceeding courteously, and dismissed them to their own places: as men likely to be of 50 more use to him, in perswading the rest of their Nation to become his Confederates, than in any other service at the present.

About the fourth watch of the night following, the Consul stole a reitrait, as he had done before; but not with the like ease and security. *Hannibal* had a good eye upon him, and ere he could get far, sent the *Numidians* after him: following himself with all his Army. That night the *Romans* had received a great blow, if the *Numidians*, greedy of spoil, had not staid to ransack their camp: and thereby given time to all, save some few in Rear, that were slain or taken; to pass the River of *Trebia*, and save themselves.

*Scipio*,

being both unable to travell by reason of his wound, and withall, finding it expedient to attend the coming of his fellow-Consul, incamps himself strongly upon the banks of *Trebia*. Necessity required that he should so doe; yet this diminished his reputation. For every day more and more of the *Gauls* fell to the *Carthaginian* side; among whom came in the *Boji*, that brought with them the *Roman* Commissioners, which they had taken in the late Insurrection. They had hitherto kept them as pledges, to redeem their own hostages: but now they deliver them up to *Hannibal*, as tokens & pledges of their affections towards him; by whose help they conceived better hope of recovering their own men and lands. In the mean while, *Hannibal*, being in great scarcity of victuals, attended the taking of *Clasidium*, a Town wherein the *Romans* had laid up all their store and munition. But there needed no force; a *Brundusian*, whom the *Romans* had 10 trusted with keeping it, sold it for a little money.

The newes of these disasters, brought to *Rome*, filled the Senate and People, rather with a desire of hasty revenge, than any great sorrow for their loss received; seeing that in a manner, all their foot, wherein their strength and hope consisted, were as yet entire: They therefore hasted away *Sempronius*, that was newly arrived, towards *Ariminum*, whither the Army, by him sent out of *Scil*, awaited his coming. He therefore hasted thither, and from thence he marched speedily towards his Colleague: who attended him upon the banks of *Trebia*. Both the Armies being joyned in one, the Consuls devised 20 about that which remained to be done: *Sempronius* receiving from *Scipio* the relation of what had passed since *Hannibal's* arrivall; the fortune of the late fight; and by what error or misadventure the *Romans* were therein foiled: which *Scipio* chiefly laid on the revolt and treason of the *Gauls*.

*Sempronius*, having received from *Scipio* the state of the affairs in those parts, sought by all means to try his fortune with *Hannibal*, before *Scipio* were recovered of his wounds, that thereby he might purchase to himself the sole glory of the victory, which he had already, in his imagination, certainly obtained. He also feared the election of the new Consuls: his own time being well-near expired. But *Scipio* perswaded the contrary; objecting the unskilfulness of the new-come souldiers: and withall, gave him 30 good reason, to assure him that the *Gauls*, naturally unconstant, were upon termes of abandoning the party of the *Carthaginians*: those of them inhabiting between the rivers of *Trebia* and *Po*, being already revolted. *Sempronius* knew all this as well as *Scipio*: but being both guided and blinded by his ambition, he made haste to finde out the dishonour which he might otherwise easily have avoided. This resolution of *Sempronius* was exceeding pleasing to *Hannibal*: who feared nothing so much as delay and loss of time. For the strength of his Army, consisting in strangers, to wit, in *Spaniards* and *Gauls*; he no lesse feared the change of affection in the one, than the impatience of the other: who being far from their own home, had many passions moving them to turn their faces towards it. To further the desire of *Sempronius*, it fell so, that about the same time, 40 the *Gauls*, inhabiting near unto *Trebia*, complained of injuries done by the *Carthaginians*. They did not supply *Hannibal* with necessities, as he supposed that they might have done; although he daily reprehended their negligence, telling them, that for their sakes, and to set them at liberty, he had undertaken this Expedition. Seeing therefore how little they regarded his words, he was bold to be his own Carver; and took from them by force, as much as he needed of that which they had. Hereupon they fled to the *Romans* for help; and, to make their tale the better, say that this wrong is done them; because they refused to joyn with *Hannibal*. *Scipio* cared not much for this: he suspected their falsehood, and was assured of their mutability. But *Sempronius* affirmed, that it stood with the honour of *Rome*, to preserve their Confederates from suffering injury: 50 and that hereby might be won the friendship of all the *Gauls*. Therefore he sent out a thousand horse: which coming unlooked for upon *Hannibal* his forragers, and finding them heavy laden, cut many of them in pieces, and chased the rest even into their own camp. This indignity made the *Carthaginians* sally out against them: who caused them to retire faster than they came. *Sempronius* was ready to back his own men; and repelled the enemies, *Hannibal* did the like. So that at length all the *Roman* Army was drawn forth; and a battell ready to be fought, if the *Carthaginian* had not refused it.

This victory (for so the Consul would have it called) made the *Romans* in generall desirous

desirous to try the main chance in open field: All the persuasions of *Scipio* to the contrary notwithstanding. Of this disposition *Hannibal* was advertised by the *Gauls*, his spies, that were in the *Roman* Camp. Therefore he bethought himself how to help forward the victory by adding some stratagem to his forces: he found in the hollow of a water-course, over-grown with high reed, a fit trench to cover an ambush. Therein he cast his brother *Mago* with a thousand choyce horse, and as many foot. The rest of his Army, after they had well warmed, and well fed themselves in their camp, he led into the field, and marched towards the Consul. Early in the morning, he had sent over *Trebia* some companies of *Numidian* light-horse, to brave the enemy, and draw him forth to a bad dinner, ere he had broken his fast. *Scipio* was ready to take any opportunity to fight: and therefore not only issued out of his Camp, but forded the River of *Trebia*, in a most cold and miserable day; his foot being wet almost to the arms-holes: which, together with the want of food, did so enfeeble and cool their courages, as they wanted force to handle the armes they bare. Strong they were in foot, as well of their own Nation, as of the *Latin*s: having of the one sixteen, of the other twenty thousand. The mass of these they ranged in a grosse Battalion guarded on the flanks with three thousand horse, thrusting their light-armed, & Darters, in loose troops in the head of the rest, in the nature of a Vanguard. The *Carthaginian* numbers of foot were in a manner equal to their enemies; in horse they had by far the better, both in number and goodnesse. When therefore the *Roman* horse ranged on the flanks of their foot, were broken by the *Numidians*, when their foot were charged both in front and flank, by the *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, and Elephants; when finally the whole Army was unawares prest in the Rear, by *Mago* and his two thousand, that rose out of their place of ambush; then fell the *Romans*, by heaps, under the enemies swords: & being beaten down, as well fighting in disorder, as flying towards the River, by the horsemen that pursued them, there escaped no more of six and thirty thousand, than ten thousand of all sorts, Horse and Foot.

Three great errors *Scipio* committed, of which every one deserved to be recompensed with the loss that followed. The first was, that he fought with *Hannibal* in a Champain, being by far inferior in horse, and withall, thereby subject to the *African* Elephants, which in inclosed or un-even grounds and wood-lands, would have bin of no use. His second error was, that he made no discovery of the place upon which he fought, whereby he was grossly over-reacht, and insnared, by the ambush which *Hannibal* had laid for him. The third was, that he drencht his footmen with empty stomachs, in the River of *Trebia*, even in a most cold and frosty day, whereby, in effect, they lost the use of their limbs. For, as one saith well, *There is nothing more inconvenient and perilous, than to present an army tyred with travel, to an enemy fresh and fed, since where the strength of body faileth, the generosity of minde is but as an unprofitable vapour.*

The broken remainder of the *Roman* Army, was collected by *Scipio*, who got there-with into *Placentia*, stealing away the same night, which was exceeding rainy, from the *Carthaginians*, who either perceived him not, because of the showres, or would not perceive him, because they were over wearied. *Scipio* escaped with extreme danger, flying through the Country that was over-run by the enemies horse. He was attended by more, than were requisite in a secret flight; yet by fewer, than could have made resistance, if the enemy had met with him. Nevertheless he got away, and came to *Rome*, where he did his office in choosing new Consuls for the year following: and then returned into his Province, with a fresh supply against *Hannibal*.

## S. V.

The departure of *Hannibal* from the *Cisalpine Gauls* into *Hetruria*. *Flaminius* the *Roman* Consul slain, and his Army destroyed by the *Carthaginians*, at the Lake of *Thrasymene*.

THE Winter growing on apace, was very sharp, and unfit for service: to the great contentment of the *Romans*, who, being not able to keep the field, lay warme in *Placentia*, and *Cremona*. Yet *Hannibal* did not suffer them to rest very quiet; but vexed them with continual Alarms: assailed divers places, and taking some, beating the *Gauls* their adherents, and winning the *Ligurians* to his party, who presented him, in token of their faithfull love, with two *Roman* Questors, or

Treasurers,

Treasurers, two Colonels, and five Gentlemen, the Sons of Senators, which they had intercepted. These, and in generall all such prisoners as he had of the *Romans*, he held in straight places, loaden with irons, and miserably fed: those of their followers he not only well intreated, but sent them to their Countries without ranfome; with this protestation, That he therefore undertook the War in *Italy*, to free them from the oppression of the *Romans*. By these means he hoped, and not in vain, to draw many of them to his party and assistance. But the *Gauls* were not capable of such persuasions. They stood in fear, lest he should make their Country the seat of War, and perhaps take it from them. They were also more grieved than reason willed them, at his feeding upon them, and wasting their territory. Wherefore some of them conspired against his life; others admonished him of the danger: and these that gave him the advice, were ready soon after to practice against him; but were in like sort detected. He was therefore glad to be Perwigs of hair, and false beards of divers colours; to the end that he might not be descryed, nor known, to those that should undertake to make him away. Fain he would have passed the *Appenines*, upon the first appearance of Spring; but was compelled by the violence of weather, to tarry among the *Gauls*, till he had seen more swallows than one. At length, when the yeare was somewhat better opened, he resolved to take his leave of these giddie companions, & bring the war neerer to the gates of *Rome*. So away he went, having his Armie greatly increased with *Ligurians* and *Gauls*; more serviceable friends abroad, than in their own Countrey. That the passage of the *Appenine* Mountaines was troublesome, I hold it needlesse to make any doubt. Yet since the *Roman* Armies found no memorable impediment, in their marches that way: the great vexation which fell upon *Hannibal*, when he was travelling through and over them, ought in reason to be imputed rather to the extremity of Winter, that makes all ways fowle, than to any intolerable difficultie in that journey. Nevertheless, to avoid the length of way, together with the resistance and fortifications, which may not improbably be thought to have been erected upon the ordinary passages towards *Rome*: he chose at this time, though it were with much trouble, to travell through the fens and rotten grounds of *Tuscane*. In those Marishes and bogs, he lost all his Elephants, save one, together with the use of one of his eyes; by the moistness of the air, and by lodging on the cold ground, and wading through deep mire and water. In brief, after he had with much ado recovered the firme and fertile Plainnes, he lodged about *Arretium*: where he somewhat refreshed his wearied followers, and heard newes of the *Roman* Consuls.

*C. Flaminius*, and *Cn. Servilius* had of late been chosen Consuls for this year: *Servilius* a tractable man, and wholly governed by advice of the Senate; *Flaminius* an hot-headed popular Orator; who having once been robbed (as he thought) of his Consulship, by a device of the Senators, was afraid to be served so again, unless he quickly finished the war. This jealous Consul thought it not best for him to be at *Rome*, when he entred into his Office, lest his adversaries, by faining some religious impediment, should detain him within the City, or find other busines for him at home, to disappoint him of the honour that he hoped to get in the war. Wherefore he departed secretly out of the Town; and meant to take possession of his Office, when the day came, at *Ariminum*. The fathers (so the Senators were called) highly displeased with this, revoked him by Embassadors: but he neglected their injunction, and hasting to meet with the *Carthaginians*, took his way to *Arretium*, where he shortly found them.

The fiery disposition of this Consul, promised unto *Hannibal* great assurance of victory. Therefore he provoked, with many indignities, the vehement nature of the *Roman*: hoping thereby to draw him unto fight, ere *Servilius* came with the rest of the Army. All the Countrey between *Fesula* and *Arretium* he put to fire and sword, even under the Consuls nose; which was enough to make him stir, that would not have stiren still, though *Hannibal* had been quiet. It is true that a great Captain of *France* hath said; *Pays gaste n'est pas perdu; A wasted Country is not thereby lost.* But by this waste of the Country, *Flaminius* thought his own honour to be much impaired; and therefore advanced towards the Enemy. Many advised him (which had indeed been best) to have patience a while, and stay for his Colleague. But of this he could not abide to hear: saying, that he came not to defend *Arretium*, whilst the *Carthaginians* went burning down all *Italy* before them, to the gates of *Rome*. Therefore he took horse,

T t t 2

and



and commanded the Army to march. It is reported as ominous, that one of their Ensignes stuck so fast in the ground, as it could not be plucked up by the Ensign-bearer. Of this tale, whether true or false, *Tully* makes a jest; saying, that the cowardly knave did faintly pull at it (as going now to fight) having hardly pitched it into the earth. Neither was the answer of *Flaminius* (if it were true) disagreeable hereto: for he commanded that it should be digged up, if fear had made the hands too weak to life it: asking withal, whether letters were not come from the Senate, to hinder his proceedings. Of this their jealousy, both he and the Senate that did give him cause, are likely to repent.

All the Territory of *Cortona*, as far as to the Lake of *Thrasymene*, was on a light fire; 10 which whilest the Consul thought to quench with his enemies blood, he pursued *Hannibal* so unadvisedly, that he fell with his whole Army into an ambush cunningly laid for him, between the Mountains of *Cortona* and the Lake. There was he charged unawares, on all sides, (save only where that great Lake of *Perusia* permitted neither his enemies to come at him, nor him to flye from them) knowing not which way to turn, or make resistance. So was he slain in the place, accompanied with fifteen thousand dead carcases of his Countrymen. About six thousand of his men, that had the Vanguard, took courage, as for the most part it happens, out of desperation; and breaking through the enemies, that stood in their way, recovered the tops of the Mountains. If these had returned, and given charge upon the *Carthaginians* backs, it was thought that they might 20 have greatly amended, if not wholly altered, the fortune of the day. But that violence of their fear, which, kindled by necessity, had wrought the effects of hardiness, was well asswaged, when they ceased to despair of saving their lives by flight. They stood still, in a cold sweat, upon the Hill-top, hearing under them a terrible noise, but not any way discovering how things went, because of the great fogge that held all that morning. When it grew toward noon the ayre was cleared, and they might plainly discern the lamentable slaughter of their fellows. But they staid not to lament it: for it was high time, they thought, to be gone ere they were decryed and attached by the enemies horse. This they should have thought upon sooner, since they had no minde to return unto the fight. For decryed they were, and *Maharbal* sent after them; who 30 over-took them by night in a Village, which he surrounded with his horse: and so they yielded the next day, rendring up their armes, upon his promise of their lives and liberties.

This accord *Hannibal* refused to confirm; saying, That it was made by *Maharbal* without sufficient warrant, as wanting his authority to make it good. Herein he taught them (yet little to his own honour) what it was to keep no faith: and fitted them with a trick of their own. For if it were lawfull unto the *Romans*, to alter covenants, or adde unto them what they listed; if the *Carthaginians* must be faine to pay certain hundreds, and yet more hundreds of talents, besides their first bargain; as also to renounce their interest in *Sardinia*, and be limited in their *Spanish* Conquests, according to the 40 good pleasure of the *Romans*, whose present advantage is more ample, than the conditions of the late concluded peace: then can *Hannibal* be as a *Roman*, as themselves; and make them know, that perfidiousness gaineth no more in prosperity, than it loseth in the change of fortune. Fifteen thousand *Italian* prisoners, or therabouts, he had in his hands: of which, all that were not *Romans*, he set free without ranfome; protesting, as he had done before, that it was for their sakes, and to free them and others from the *Roman* tyranny; that he had undertaken this war. But the *Romans* he kept in straight prison, and in fetters, making them learn to eat hard meat. This was a good way to breed in the people of *Italy*, if not a love of *Carthage*, yet a contempt of *Rome*: as if this war had not concerned the generall safety, but only the preserving of her own neck from 50 the yoke of slavery, which her over-strong enemies would thrust upon her in revenge of her oppressions. But an ancient reputation, confirmed by successe of many ages, is not lost in one or two battels. Wherefore more is to be done, ere the *Carthaginians* can get any *Italian* Partisans.

Presently after the battell of *Thrasymene*, *C. Centronius*, with four thousand *Roman* horse, drew near unto the Camp of *Hannibal*. He was sent from *Ariminum* by *Servilius* the other Consul, to increase the strength of *Flaminius*: but, coming too late, he increased only the misadventure. *Maharbal* was employed by *Hannibal*, to intercept this company;

company; who finding them amazed with report which they had newly heard of the great overthrow, charged them, and brake them: and killing almost half of them, drave the rest unto an high piece of ground, whence they came down, and simply yielded to mercy the next day. *Servilius* himself was in the mean while skirmishing with the *Gauls*; against whom he had wrought no matter of importance, when the newes was brought him of his Colleagues overthrow and death in *Hebratia*; that made him hasten back to the defence of *Rome*.

In these passages, it is easie to discern the fruits of popular jealousy, which persuaded the *Romans* to the yearly change of their Commanders in the wars; which greatly 10 endangered, and retarded the growth of that Empire. Certain it is, that all men are far better taught by their own errors; than by the examples of their foregoers. *Flaminius* had heard, in what a trap *Sempronius* had been taken up but the year before, by this subtle *Carthaginian*; yet suffered he himself to be caught soon after in the same manner. He had also belike forgotten, how *Sempronius*, fearing to be prevented by a new Consul, and ambitious of the sole honour of beating *Hannibal* in battell, without help of his companion *Scipio*, had been rewarded with shame and losse; else would he not, contrary to all good advice, have been so hasty to fight, before the arrival of *Servilius*. If *Sempronius* had been continued in his charge, it is probable that he would have 20 taken his companion with him the second time, and have searched all suspected places, proper to have shadowed an ambush: both which this new Consul *Flaminius* neglected. We may boldly avow it, that by being continued in his government of *France* ten years, *Cæsar* brought that mighty Nation, together with the *Helvetians* and many of the *German* 30 *ians*, under the *Roman* yoke; into which parts had there been every year a new Lieutenant sent, they would hardly, if ever, have been subdued. For it is more than the best wit in the World can doe, to inform it self, within one years compasse, of the nature of a great Nation, of the Factions of the Places, Rivers, and of all good helps, whereby to prosecute a War to the best effect. Our Princes have commonly left their Deputies in *Ireland* three years; whence by reason of the thornes of that their time, many of them have returned as wise as they went out; others have profited more, and yet when they 40 began but to know the first rudiments of War, and government, fitting the Country, they have bin called home, & new Apprentices sent in their places, to the great prejudice both of this and that Estate. But it hath ever been the course of the World rather to follow old errors than to examine them: and of Princes and Governours to uphold their slothfull ignorance, by the old examples and policy of other ages and people; though neither likeness of time, of occasion, or of any other circumstance, have persuaded the imitation.

## §. VI.

How *Q. Fabius* the *Roman Dictator*, sought to consume the force of *Hannibal*, by lingering 50 War. *Minutius* the Master of the Horse honoured and advanced by the People, for bold and successfull attempting; adventures rashly upon *Hannibal*, and is like to perish with his Army, but rescued by *Fabius*.

Greatly were the *Romans* amazed at this their ill success, and at the danger apparent; which threatened them in more terrible manner, than ever did war since 10 *Rome* it self was taken. They were good Souldiers; and so little accustomed to receive an overthrow, that when *Pyrrhus* had beaten them, once and again, in open field, all *Italy* was strangely affected with his successe, and held him in admiration, as one that could work wonders. But *Pyrrhus* his quarrell was not grounded upon hate: he 20 only sought honour, and fought (as it were) upon a bravery: demeaning himself like a courteous enemy. This *Carthaginian* detested the whole *Roman* name, against which he burned with desire of revenge. *Ticinum*, *Trebia*, and *Thrasymene*, witnessed his purpose, & his ability, which to withstand, they fled unto a remedy that had long been out of use, and created a Dictator. The Dictators power was greater than the Consuls, and scarcely subject unto controll of the whole City. Wherefore this Officer was seldom chosen, but upon some extremity, and for no longer time than six moneths: He was to be named by one of the Consuls, at the appointment of the Senate: though it were so, that the Consul (if he stood upon his prerogative) might name whom he pleased. At this time the 30 one

one Consul being dead, and the other too far off, the People took upon them, as having supreme authority, to give the Dignity by their election, to *Q. Fabius Maximus*, the best reputed man of war in the City. *Novum sacrum novum consilium expetit. Contrary winds, contrary counsels.* *Q. Fabius* chose *M. Minutius Rufus* Master of the horse; which officer was customarily as the Dictators Lieutenant; though this *Minutius* grew afterwards famous, by taking more upon him.

Liv. lib. 2.

The first act of *Fabius*, was the reformation of somewhat amiss in matter of Religion; a good beginning, and commendable; had the Religion been also good. But if it were true (as *Livie* reports it) that the Books of *Sibyl* were consulted, and gave direction in this business of devotion; then must we believe, that those books of *Sibyl*, preserved in *Rome*, were dictated by an evil spirit. For it was ordained, that some Vow, made in the beginning of this war to *Mars*, should be made anew, and amplified; as having not been rightly made before: also that great plays should be vowed unto *Jupiter*, and a Temple to *Venus*; with such other trumpery. This vehemency of superstition, proceeds always from vehemency of fear. And surely this was a time, when *Rome* was exceedingly distempered with passion: whereof that memorable accident, of two women that suddenly died, when they saw their sons return alive from *Thrasymene*, may serve to bear witness though it be more properly an example of motherly love. The walls and towers of the City were now repaired and fortified; the bridges upon Rivers were broken down; and all care taken for defence of *Rome* itself. In this tumult, when the Dictator was newly set forth against *Hannibal*, word was brought that the *Carthaginian* fleet had intercepted all the supply, that was going to *Cusseto* in *Spain*. Against these *Carthaginians*, *Fabius* commanded *Servilius* the Consul to put to Sea; and taking up all the ships about *Rome* and *Ostia* to pursue them: whilst he, with the Legions, attended upon *Hannibal*. Four Legions he had levied in haste: and from *Ariminum* he received the Army which *Servilius* the Consul had conducted thither.

With these forthwith he followed apace after *Hannibal*; not to fight, but to affront him. And knowing well, what advantage the *Numidian* horse had over the *Romans*, he always lodged himself on high grounds, and of hard access. *Hannibal* in the mean while, pursuing his victory, had ranged over all the Country, and used all manner of cruelty towards the inhabitants; especially to those of the *Roman* Nation, of whom he did put to the sword, all that were able to bear arms. Passing by *Spoletum* and *Ancona*, he incamped upon the *Adriatick* shores; refreshed his diseased, and over-travelled Companies; armed his *Africans* after the manner of the *Romans*, and made his dispatches for *Carthage*, presenting his friends, which were in effect all the Citizens, with part of the spoils that he had gotten. Having refreshed his army, fed his horses, cured his wounded Soldiers, and (as *Polybius* hath it) healed his horse heels of the scratches, by washing their pasterns in old wine: he followed the coast of the *Adriatick* Sea towards *Apulia*, a Northerne Province of the Kingdom of *Naples*; spoiling the *Marrucini*, and all other Nations lying in his way. In all this ground that he over-ran, he had not taken any one City: only he had assailed *Spoletum*, a Colony of the *Romans*; and finding it well defended, presently gave it over. The malice of a great Army is broken, and the force of it spent in a great siege. This the *Protestant* Army found true at *Poitiers*, a little before the battle of *Moncontour*; and their victorious enemies, anon after, at *S. Jean d'Angely*. But *Hannibal* was more wise. He would not engage himself in any such enterprise, as should detain him, and give the *Romans* leave to take breath. All his care was to weaken them in force and reputation: knowing, that when once he was absolute Master of the field, it would not be long ere the walled Cities would open their gates, without expecting any engine of battery. To this end he presented *Fabius* with battell, as soon as he saw him; and provoked him with all manner of bravadoes. But *Fabius* would not bite. He well knew the differences between soldiers bred up, ever since they were Boyes, in war and in blood, trained & hardened in *Spain*, made proud and adventurous by many victories there, and of late by some notable acts against the *Romans*; and such, as had no other seen the enemy, than bin vanquished by him. Therefore he attended the *Carthaginian* so near, as he kept him from stragling too far; and preserved the country from utter spoil. He injured his men by little and little, and made them acquainted with dangers by degrees, and he brought them first to look on the Lyon afar off; that in the end he might sit on his tail.

Now

Now *Minutius* had a contrary disposition, and was as fiery as *Flaminius*, taxing *Fabius* with cowardize and fear. But all fitted not this well advised Commander. For wise men are no more moved with such noise, than with wind bruised out of a bladder. There is nothing of more indiscretion and danger, than to pursue misfortune: it wasteth itself sooner by surrerance, than by opposition. It is the invading Army that desires battell: and this of *Hannibal*, was both the invading and victorious. *Fabius* therefore suffered *Hannibal* to cross the *Appennines*, and to fall upon the most rich and pleasant Territory of *Campania*; neither could he by any arguments be persuaded, to adventure the *Roman* Army in battell: but being far too weak in horse, he always kept the Hills and fast grounds. When *Hannibal* saw he could by no means draw this wary Dictator to fight, that the Winter came on, and that the Towns stood firm for the *Romans*, whose Legions were in sight, though afar off, he resolved to rest his Army, that was laden with spoil, in some plentiful and assured place, till the following spring. But ere this can be done he must passe along by the Dictators camp, that hung over his head upon the hills of *Collucia*, and *Caslinum*: for other way there was none, by which he might issue out of that goonly garden-country, which he had already wasted, into places more abundant of provision for his wintering. It was by meer error of his guide, that he first entered within these straights. For he would have been directed unto *Caslinum*, whence he might both assaile the fair City of *Capua*, which had made him friendly promises under hand, and hinder the *Romans* from coming near it to prevent him. But his guide misunderstood the *Carthaginian* pronuntiation and conducted him awry another way, from *Caslinum* to *Caslinum*, whence *Fabius* hoped that he should not easily escape. Now began the wisdom of *Fabius* to grow into credit; as if he had taken the *Carthaginians* in a trap, and won the victory without blows. But *Hannibal* reformed this opinion, and freed himself, by a sleight invention, yet serving the turn as well as a better. In driving the country, he had gotten about two thousand Kine, whose hornes he dressed with dry faggots, and setting fire to them in the dark night, caused them to be driven up the hills. The spectacle was strange, and therefore terrible; especially to those that knew it to be a work of a terrible enemy. What it should mean, *Fabius* could not tell, but thought it a device to circumvent him, and therefore kept within his Trenches. They that kept the hill tops were horribly affraid, when some of these fiery Monsters were gotten beyond them; and ran therefore hastily away, thinking that the enemies were behind their backs; and fell among the light armed *Carthaginians*, that were no less afraid of them. So *Hannibal*, with his whole Army, recovered sure ground without molestation: where he staid till the next morning, and then brought off his light footmen, with some slaughter of the *Romans*, that began to hold them in skirmish. After this, *Hannibal* made semblance of taking his journey towards *Rome*: and the Dictator coasted him in the wonted manner, keeping still on high grounds, between him & the City, whilst the *Carthaginian* wasted all the Plains. The *Carthaginian* took *Geryon*, an old ruinous Town in *Apulia*, forsaken by the inhabitants, which he turned into Barnes and Store houses for winter, and incamped under the broken wall. Other matter of importance he did none: but the time passed idly, till the Dictator was called away to *Rome*, about some business of Religion; and left the Army in charge with *Minutius* the Master of the horse.

*Minutius* was glad of this good occasion to shew his own sufficiency. He was fully persuaded, that his *Romans*, in plain field would be too hard for the *Africans* and *Spaniards*: by whom if they had been foiled already twice or thrice, it was not by open force, but by subtilty and ambush, which he thought himself wise enough to prevent. All the Army was of his opinion; and that so earnestly, as he was preferred, by judgement of the Soldiers, in worthynesse to command, before the cold and wary *Fabius*. In this jollity of conceit, he determined to fight. Yet had he been peremptorily forbidden so to do, by the Dictator; the breach of whose command was extreme perill of death. But the honour of the victory, which he held undoubtedly his own; and the love of the Army, and the friends that he had at home bearing office in *Rome*, were enough to save him from the Dictators rods and axes, took he the matter never so haudnously. *Hannibal* on the other side was no less glad, that he should play with a more adventurous gamester. Therefore he drew near, & to provoke the *Romans*, sent forth a third

part

part of his Army to waste the Country. This was boldly done, seeing that *Minutius* incamped hard by him: but it seems, that he now despised those whom he had so often vanquished. There was a piece of high ground between the two Camps; which because it would be commodious to him that could occupy it, the *Carthaginians* seized upon by night with two thousand of their light armed. But *Minutius*, by plain force, won it from them the next day, and intrenching himself thereupon, became their neerer neighbour.

The main business of *Hannibal* at this time was, to provide abundantly, not only for his men, but for his horses, which he knew to be the chief of his strength; that he might keep them in good heart against the next summer: if besides this he could give 10 the *Romans* another blow, it would increase his reputation, encourage his own men, terrifie his enemies, and give him leave to forrage the Country at will. Since therefore *Minutius* did not in many dayes issue forth of his Camp, the *Carthaginians* sent out (as before) a great number of his men, to fetch in harvest. This advantage *Minutius* wisely espied, and took. For he led forth his Army, and setting it in order, presented battail to *Hannibal*, that was not in case to accept it, even at his own Trenches. His horses, and all his light Armature, divided into many companies, he sent abroad against the forragers; who being dispersed over all the fields, and laden with booty, could make no resistance. This angered *Hannibal*, that was not able to help them; but worse did it anger him, when the *Romans* took heart to assail his Trenches. They perceived that 20 it was meer weakness, which held him within his Campe, and therefore were bold to despise his great name, that could not resist their present strength. But in the heat of the business, *Asdrubal* came from *Geryon* with four thousand men, being informed of the danger, by those that had escaped the *Roman* horse. This imboldened *Hannibal* to issue forth against the *Romans*; to whom nevertheless he did not such hurt, as he had received.

For this piece of service *Minutius* was highly esteemed by the Army, and more highly by the people at *Rome*, to whom he sent the newes, with somewhat greater boast than truth. It seemed no small matter, that the *Roman* Army had recovered spirit, so far forth that it dared to set upon *Hannibal* in his own camp; and that in so doing, it came off 30 with the better. Every man therefore praised the Master of the Horse, that had wrought this great alteration, and consequently, they grew as far out of liking with *Fabius*, and his timorous proceedings, thinking that he had not done any thing wisely, in all his Dictatorship: loving that he chose such a worthy Lieutenant; whereas indeed in no other thing he had so greatly erred. But the Dictator was not so joyfull of a little good luck, as angry with the breach of discipline, and fearfull of greater danger, thereon likely to ensue. He said that he knew his own place, and what was to be done; that he would teach the Master of the horse to do so likewise; and make him give account of what he had done, if he were Dictator: speaking it openly, That good success issuing from bad counsell was more to be feared, than calamity; for as much as the one bred a foolish 40 confidence, the other taught men to be wary. Against these sermons every one cried out, especially *Metellus*, a Tribune of the people: which office warranted him to speak, and do what he list, without fear of the Dictator. Is it not enough (said he) that this our only Man, chosen to be General, and Lord of the Town, in our greatest necessity, hath done no manner of good, but suffered all *Italy* to be wasted before his eyes, to the utter shame of our State; unless he also hinder others, from doing better than himself can, or dares? It were good to consider what he means by this. Into the place of *C. Flaminius* he hath not chosen any new Consul all this while, *Servilius* is sent away to Sea, I know not why; *Hannibal* and he, have as it were taken Truce, *Hannibal* sparing the Dictators grounds: (for *Hannibal* had indeed forborn to spoil some grounds of 50 *Fabius*, that so he might bring him into envy and suspicion) and the Dictator giving him leave to spoil all others, without impeachment. Surely his drift is even this: he would have the war to last long, that he himself might be long in office, and have the sole Government both of our City and Armies. But this must not be so. It were better, that the Commonalty of *Rome*, which gave him this authority, should again take it from him and conferre it upon one more worthy. But left, in moving the people hereto, I should seem to doe him injury; thus far forth I will regard his honour: I will only

only propound, That the Master of the Horse may be joyned in equall authority with the Dictator; a thing not more new, nor lesse necessary, than was the election of this Dictator, by the People.

Though all men, even the Senators, were ill perswaded of the course which *Fabius* had taken against *Hannibal*, as being neither plausible, nor seeming beneficiall at the present; yet was there none so injurious, as to think that his generall intent, and care of the Weal publike, was less than very honourable. Whereas therefore it was the manner, in passing of any act, that some man of credit and authority, besides the propounder, should stand up, and formally deliver his approbation; not one of the principall Citizens was found so impudent, as to offer that open disgrace, both unto a worthy Personage, and 10 (therewithall) unto that dignity; whose great power had freed the State at severall times, from the greatest dangers. Only *C. Terentius Varro*, who the year before had been Praetor, was glad of such an opportunity, to win the favour of the Multitude. This fellow was the son of a Butcher, afterwards became a Shop-keeper; and being of a contentious spirit, grew by often brabbling; to take upon him as a Pleader, dealing in poor mens causes. Thus by little and little he got into Office, and rose by degrees, being advanced by those, who in hatred of the Nobility favoured his very baseness. And now he thought the time was come, for him to give a hard push at the Consulship; by doing that, which none of the great men, fearing or favouring one another, either durst or would. So he made an hot invective, not only against *Fabius*, but against all the 20 Nobility, saying, That it grieved them to see the people doe well, and take upon them what belonged unto them, in matter of Government; That they sought to humble the Commons by poverty, and to impoverish them by Warre; especially by war at their own doors, which would soon consume every poor mans living; and finde him other work to think upon, than matter of State. Therefore he bade them to be wise; and since they had found one (this worthy Master of the Horse) that was better affected unto them and his Country, to reward him according to his good deserts; and give him authority, according as was propounded by the Tribune, that so he might be encouraged and enabled to proceed as he had begun. So the Act 30 passed.

Before this busie day of contention, *Fabius* had dispatched the election of a new Consul, which was *M. Atilius Regulus*, in the room of *C. Flaminius*: and, having finished all requisite business, went out of Town, perceiving well, that he should not be able to withstand the multitude in hindring the decree. The newes of *Minutius* his advancement, was at the campe as soon as *Fabius*: so that his old Lieutenant, and new Colleague, began to treat with him as a Companion; asking him at the first, in what sort he thought it best to divide their authority: whether that one, one day; and the other, the next; or each of them successively, for some longer time, should command in chief. *Fabius* briefly told him, That it was the pleasure of the Citizens, to make the Master of the horse equal to the Dictator, but that he should never be his superior: He would 40 therefore divide the Legions with him, by lot according to the custome. *Minutius* was not hereby greatly pleased; for that with half of the Army he could not work such wonders as other wise he hoped to accomplish. Nevertheless he meant to do his best, and forsaking his part of the Army, incamped about a mile, and a half from the Dictator. Needfull it was (though *Livie* seems to taxe him for it) that he should so doe. For where two severall Commanders are not subordinate one unto another, nor joyned in Commission, but have each intire and absolute charge of his own followers, there are the forces (though belonging to one Prince or State) not one, but two distinct Armies: in which regard, one Camp shall not hold them both, without great inconvenience. 50 *Polybius* neither findes fault with this distinction, nor yet reports, that *Fabius* was unwilling to command in chief successively (as the two Consuls used) with *Minutius*, by turns. He saith that *Minutius* was very refractory; and so proud of his advancement, that continually he opposed the Dictator: who thereupon referred it to his choyce, either to divide the forces between them, as is said before, or else to have command over all by course. This is likely to be true. For Natures impatient of subjection, when once they have broken loose from the rigour of authority, love nothing more, than to contest with it: as if herein consisted the proof and assurance of their liberty.

It behoved the Master of the horse to make good the opinion which had thus advanced him. Therefore he was no less careful of getting occasion to fight than was *Fabius* of avoiding the necessity. That which *Minutius* and *Hannibal* equally desired, could not long be wanting. The country lying between them was open and bare, yet as fit for ambush, as could be wished: for that the sides of a naked valley adjoining, had many & spacious caves; able, some one of them, to hide two or three hundred men. In these lurking places *Hannibal* bestowed five hundred horse, and five thousand foot, thrusting them to close together, that they could not be discovered. But left by any misadventure they should be found out, and buried in their holes, he made offer betimes in the morning, to seize upon a piece of ground that lay on the other hand: whereby he drew the eyes and the thoughts of the *Romans*, from their more needfull care, to business little concerning them. Like unto this was the occasion, which not long before had provoked *Minutius* to adventure upon the *Carthaginians*. Hoping therefore to increase his honour, in like sort as he got it; he sent first his light armature, then his horse, and at length (seeing that *Hannibal* seconded his own troupes with fresh companies) he followed in person with the Legions. He was soon caught, & so hotly charged on all sides, that he knew neither how to make resistance, nor any safe retreat. In this dangerous case, whilst the *Romans* defended themselves losing many, and those of their best men: *Fabius* drew near, in very good order to relieve them. For this old Captain, perceiving afar off, into what extremity his new Colleague had rashly thrown himself and his followers, did the office of a good Citizen; and regarding more the benefit of his Country, than the disgrace which he had wrongfully sustained, sought rather to approve himself by hastening to do good, than by suffering his enemy to feel the reward of doing ill. Upon *Fabius* his approach, *Hannibal* retired: fearing to be well wetted with a shower, from the cloud (as he termed the Dictator) that had hung so long on the Hill-tops. *Minutius* forthwith submitted himself to *Fabius*; by whose benefit he confessed his life to have been saved. So from this time forwards the war proceeded coldly, as the Dictator would have it; both whilst his Office lasted which was not long, and likewise afterwards, when he delivered up his charge unto the Consuls, that followed his instructions.

*Servilius* the Consul had pursued in vain a *Carthaginian* fleet, to which he came never so within kenning. He ran along all the coast of *Italy*; took hostages of the *Sardinians* and *Corinthians*; passed over into *Africa*; and there negligently falling to spoil the country, was shamefully beaten aboard his ships, with the loss of a thousand men. Weighing anchor therefore in all haste, he returned home by *Sicily*; and (being so required by the Dictators letters) repaired to the camp, with his fellow-Consul, where they took charge of the Army.

## S. VII.

The Roman people, desirous to finish the war quickly, choose a rash and unworthy Consul. Great forces levied against Hannibal. Hannibal taketh the Romans provisions in the Castle of Cannæ. The new Consuls set forth against Hannibal.

With little pleasure did they of the poorer sort in *Rome* hear the great commendations that were given to *Fabius* by the principall Citizens. He had indeed preserved them from receiving a great overthrow; but he had neither finished the war, nor done any thing in appearance thereto tending. Rather it might seem that the reputation of this his one worthy act, was likely to countenance the slow proceedings or perhaps the cowardize (if it were no worse) of those that followed him, in protracting the work to a great length. Else, what meant the Consuls to sit idle the whole winter; contrary to all former custome; since it was never heard before, that any *Roman* Generall had willingly suffered the time of his command to run away without any performance: as if it were honourable to do just nothing? Thus they suspected they knew not what; and were ready every man to discharge the grief and anger of his own private loss, upon the ill administration of the publick.

This affection of the people, was very helpfull to *C. Terentius Varro*, in his suit for the Consulship. It behoved him to strike, whilst the Iron was hot: his own worth being little or none, and his credit over-weak, to make way into that high Dignity. But the Commi-

Commonalty were then in such a mood, as abundantly supplied all his defects. Wherein to help, he had a kinsman, *Bibius Herennius*, then Tribune of the People; who spared not to use the liberty of his place, in saying what he listed, without all regard of truth, or modesty. This bold Orator stuck not to affirm, that *Hannibal* was drawn into *Italy*, and suffered therein to range at his pleasure, by the Noblemen; That *Minutius* indeed with his two Legions, was likely to have been overthrown, and was rescued by *Fabius* with the other two: but, had all been joyned together, what they might have done, it was apparent, by the victory of *Minutius* when he commanded over all as Master of the horse; That without a *Plebeian* Consul, the war would never be as Master of the horse; That such of the *Plebeians* as had long since been advanced to honour by the people, were grown as proud as the old Nobility, and contemned the meaner sort, ever since themselves were freed from contempt of the more mighty; That therefore it was needfull to choose a Consul, who should be altogether a *Plebeian*, a meer new man, one that could boast of nothing but the Peoples love, nor could with more, than to keep it, by well deserving of them. By such persuasions the Multitude was won, to be wholly for *Terentius*: to the great vexation of the Nobles, who could not endure to see a man raised for none other virtue, than his detracting from their honour; and therefore opposed him with all their might. To hinder the desire of the People, it fell out, or at least was alledged, that neither of the two present Consuls could well be spared from attending upon *Hannibal*, to hold the Election. Wherefore a Dictator was named for that purpose; and he again deposed: either (as was pretended) for some religious impediment, or because the Fathers desired an *Inter-regnum*, wherein they might better hope to prevail in choice of the new Consuls. This *Inter-regnum* took name and being in *Rome*, at the death of *Romulus*; and was in use at the death of other Kings. The order of it was this. All the Fathers, or Senators, who at the first were an hundred, parted themselves into *Tens* or *Decuries*, and governed successively, by the space of five dayes, one *Decurie* after another in order: yet so, that the *Lictors*, by the space of five dayes, one *Decurie* after another in order: yet so, that the *Lictors*, carrying the *Fasces*, or bundles of rods and axes, waited only upon the chief or *Virgils*, carrying the *Fasces*, or bundles of rods and axes, waited only upon the chief of them with these Ensigns of power. This custome was retained in times of the Consuls; and put in use, when by death, or any casualty, there wanted ordinary Magistrates of the old year; to substitute new for the year following. The advantage of the Fathers herein was, that if the election were not like to go as they would have it, there needed no more, than to slip five dayes, and then was all to begin a new: by which interruption, the heat of the Multitude was commonly well allwaged. Upon such change of these, that were Presidents of the election, it was also lawfull unto new Petitioners, to sue for the Magistracies that lay void: which otherwise was not allowed; but a time limited, wherein they should publicly declare themselves to seek those offices. But no device would serve against the generall favour borne unto *Terentius*. One *Inter-regnum* passed over, and the malice of the Fathers, against the virtue (as it was beleaved) of this mean, but worthy man, seemed so manifest, that when the People had urged the business to dispatch, only *Terentius* was chosen Consul: in whose hand it was left, to hold the election of his Colleague. Hereupon all the former Petitioners gave over. For whereas men of ordinary mark had stood for the place before, it was now thought meet, that, both to supply the defect, and to bridle the violence of this unexpert, and hot-headed man, one of great sufficiency, and reputation, should be joyned with him, as both Companion and opposite. So *L. Emilius Paulus*, he who few years since had overcome the *Illyrians*, and chased *Demetrius Pharius* out of his Kingdome was urged by the Nobility to stand for the place; which he easily obtained, having no Competitor. It was not the desire of this honourable man, to trouble himself any more in such great business of the Common-wealth. For, notwithstanding his late good service, he, and *M. Livius* that had been his companion in office, where afterwards injuriously vexed by the people, and called unto judgement: wherein *Livius* was condemned, and *Emilius* hardly escaped. But of this injustice they shall put the *Romans* well in minde each of them in his second Consulship, wherein they shall honourably approve their worth; the one of them nobly dying, in the most grievous loss, the other bravely winning, in the most happy victory that ever befell that Common-wealth.

These new Consuls, *Varro* and *Paulus*, omitted no part of their diligence in preparing for the war: wherein though *Varro* made the greater noise, by telling what wonders he

he would work, and that he would aske no more, than once to have a fight of *Hannibal*, whom he promised to vanquish the very first day: yet the providence and care of *Paulus* travell'd more earnestly toward the accomplishment of that, whereof his fellow vainly boasted. He wrote unto the two old Consuls *Servilius* and *Atilius*, desiring them to abstain from hazard of the main chance; but nevertheless, to ply the *Carthaginians* with daily skirmish, and weaken them by degrees: that when he and his Colleague should take the field, with the great Army which they were now levying, they might finde the four old Legions well accustomed to the enemy, and the enemy well weakened to their hands. He was also very strict in his Musters, wherein the whole Senate assist him so carefully, as if in this Action they meant to refuse the slanders, with which *Terentius* and his adherents had burdened them. What number of men they rais'd, it is uncertain. Fourscore thousand foot, at the least, and six thousand horse, they were strong in the field, when the day came, which *Varro* had so greatly desired, of looking upon *Hannibal*.

*Hiero* the old King of *Syracuse*, as he had relieved the *Carthaginians*, when they were distressed by their own Mercenaries; so did he now send help to *Rome*, a thousand Archers, and Slingers, with great quantity of Wheat, Barly, and other provisions: fearing nothing more, than that one of these two mighty Cities should destroy the other, whereby his own estate would fall to ruine, that stood upright, by having them somewhat evenly ballanced. He gave them also counsell, to send forces into *Africa*; if (perhaps) by that means they might divert the war from home. His gifts, and good advice were lovingly accepted; and instructions were given to *Titus Octavius* the Praetor, which was to goe into *Sicily*, that he should accordingly pass over into *Africa*, if he found it expedient.

The great Levies, which the *Romans* made at this time, do much more serve to declare their puissance, than any, though larger accompt by Poll, of such as were not easily drawn into the field, and fitted for service. For, besides these Armies of the Consuls, and that which went into *Sicily*, twenty five thousand, with *L. Posthumus Albinus*, another of the Praetors, went against the *Gauls*, to reclaim that Province, which the passage of *Hannibal* through it, had taken from them. The contemplation of this their present strength might well embolden them to doe as they did. They sent Embassadors to *Philip*, the son of *Demetrius*, King of *Macedon*, requiring him to deliver into their hands *Demetrius Pharius*: who, having been their subject, and rebell, was fled into his Kingdom. They also sent to the *Illyrians*, to demand their tribute; whereof the day of payment was already past. What answer they received, it is not known: only this is known, that *Demetrius Pharius* was not sent unto them; and that *Philip* henceforth began to have an eye upon them, little to their good. As for the *Illyrian* money, by the shifts that they were driven soon after to make, it will appear, that the one half of it (how little soever) would have been welcome to *Rome*, and accepted, without any cavill about forfeiture for non-payment of the whole.

Whilst the City was buſied in these cares, the old Consuls lay as near unto *Hannibal* as possibly they could without incurring the necessity of a battell. Many skirmishes they had with him; wherein their success, for the most part, was rather good than great. Yet one mischance not only blemished the honour of their other services, but was indeed the occasion to draw on the misery following. *Hannibal* for the most part of that time, made his abode at *Geryon*; where lay all his store for the Winter. The *Romans* to be near him, lodged about *Canusium*; and, that they might not be driven to turn aside for all necessities, to the soles of good opportunities, they bestowed much of their provisions in the Castle of *Cannae*: for the town was razed the year before. This place *Hannibal* wan, and thereby not only furnished himself, but compelled his enemies to want many needfull things, unless they would be troubled with far carriage. Besides this, and more to his advantage, he enabled himself to abide in that open Country, fit for the service of his horse, longer than the *Romans*, having so many mouths to feed, could well endure to tarry; without offering battell, which he most desired. Of this mishap when *Servilius* had informed the Senate, letting them understand how this Peace taken by *Hannibal*, would serve him to command no small part of the Country adjacent; it then seemed needfull, even unto the Earthers themselves, to adventure a battell with the *Carthaginian*, rather than suffer him thus to take root in the ground

of

of *Italy*. Nevertheless answer was returned unto *Servilius*, that he should have patience yet awhile: for that the Consuls would shortly be there, with a power sufficient to do as need required.

When all things were ready in the City, and the season of the year commodious to take the field, the two Consuls, with their Army, set forth against *Hannibal*. This was always done with great solemnity: especially, whensoever they went forth to warre against any noble or redoubted Enemy. For Sacrifices, and solemn Vowes, were made unto *Jupiter*, and the rest of their gods, for good success and victory: which being performed, the Generals in warlike attire, with an honourable train of the principall men, (not only such as were of their kindred and alliance, or followed them to the war, as Voluntaries, for love, but a great number of others that meant to abide at home,) were accompanied on their way, and dismissed with friendly leave-taking, and good wishes. At this time, all the Fathers, and the whole Nobility, waited upon *Emilius Paulus*, as the only Man, whom they thought either worthy of this honour, or likely to doe his country remarkable service. *Terentius* his Attendants were the whole multitude of the poorer Citizens; a troupe no lesse in greatness, than the other was in dignity. At the parting, *Fabius* the late Dictator, is said to have exhorted the Consul *Paulus*, with many grave words, to shew his magnanimity, not only in dealing with the *Carthaginians*, but (which he thought harder) in bridling the outrageous folly of his fellow-Consul. The answer of *Paulus*, was, That he meant not again to run into danger of condemnation by offending the multitude; that he would doe his best for his Country: but if he saw his best were likely to be ill taken, he would think it lesse rashness to adventure upon the Enemies sword, than upon the malice of his own Citizens.

## §. VIII.

Diffension between the two Roman Consuls: Whether it be likely, that *Hannibal* was upon point of flying out of *Italy*, when the Romans pressed him to fight. The great battell of *Cannae*.

These new Generals, arriving at the Camp, dismissed *M. Atilius*, one of the last years Consuls, requesting it because of his age and weakness: *Servilius* they retained with them, as their Assistant. The first thing that *Emilius* thought necessary, was, to hearten his Souldiers with good words; who out of their bad success hitherto, had gathered more cause of fear, than of courage. He willed them to consider not only now, their victories in time past against the *Carthaginians*, and other more warlike Nations than were the *Carthaginians*, but even their own great numbers: which were no less than all that *Rome* at the present was able to set forth. He told them in what danger their Country stood; how the state and safety thereof rested upon their hands; using some such other common matter of perswasion. But the most effectual part of this Oration, was, That *Hannibal* with this his terrible Army, had not yet obtained one victory by plain force and valour: but that only by deceit and ambush he had stolne the honour, which he had gotten at *Trivia* & *Thrasymene*. Herewithall he taxed the inconsiderate rashness of *Sempronius* and *Flaminius*; of whom the one saw not his enemies, untill he was surrounded by them; the other scarce saw them, when they struck off his head, by reason of the thick mist, through the darkness whereof he went groping (as it were blinde-fold) into their snares. Finally, declaring what advantages they had against the Enemy; and how destitute the Enemy was of those helps, by which he had hitherto prevailed against them; he exhorted them to play the men, and do their best. They were easily perswaded: for the contemplation of their own multitude, and confidence of the *Roman* virtue in matter of Armes, gave them cause to think, that under a Captain so well experienced, and every way sufficient, as *Emilius* was known to be, they should easily prevail against the *Carthaginians*, that came short of them in all things else; save craft; which would not always thrive. But in one thing they mistook the meaning of their Generall. It was his desire that they should have heart to fight; not that they should lose the patience of a waiting a convenient season. But they, having pre-conceived a victory, thought all delays to be impediments: and thereby sought to robbe themselves of their best help; which

Uuuu

was,

was, good conduct. They remembered what talk they had heard at Rome: and were themselves affected with the vulgar desire, of ending the war quickly; wherein since *Emilius* had acknowledged, that the advantage was theirs, why did he make them forbear to use it? Thus thought the common Souldier: and thus also thought the Consul *Terentius*; who was no less popular in the Camp, than he had been in the City. Expectation is alwayes tedious; and never more, than when the Event is of most importance. All men longed, both at Rome, and in the Army, to be freed from the doubtfull passions of Hope and Fear: therefore *Terentius*, who hastened their desire to effect, was likely to win more thanks, than should his Colleague, though greater in performance.

Thus while the Romans think themselves to have the better of their enemies, they fall into an inconvenience, than which few are more dangerous; *Dissension* of their chief Commanders. *Varro* would fight: *Emilius* would too, but said that it was not yet time; why? because the enemy must shortly dislodge, and remove hence, into places less fit for his horse. But shall the Romans wait, till *Hannibal*, having eaten up his last years provisions, return into *Campania* to gather a second Harvest? This would (said *Varro*) favour too much of *Q. Fabius*. And your haste (said *Paulus*) doth favour no less of *C. Flaminius*. Their deeds were like their words: for they commanded by turns interchangeably every day. *Emilius* lodged six miles from *Hannibal*, where the ground was somewhat uneven. Thither if the *Carthaginians* would take pains to come, he doubted not to send them away in such haste, as they should not leave running till they were out of Italy. But they came not. *Terentius* therefore the next day descended into the Plains, his Colleague holding him, and beseeching him to stay. Nevertheless he sat down close by *Hannibal*: who, as an unbidden guest, gave him but a rude welcome and entertainment. The *Carthaginian* Horse, and light armour, fell upon the Roman Vant-couriers; and put the whole Army in tumult, whilst it was yet in march: but they were beaten off, not without loss, for that the Romans had among their *Velines*, some troops weightily armed, whereas the *Carthaginians* had none. The day following, *Emilius*, who could not handily withdraw the Army out of that level ground, incamped upon the River *Ausidus*, sending a third part of his forces over the water, to lye upon the Easterne bank, where they entrenched themselves. He never was more unwilling to fight, than at this present: because the ground served wholly for the advantage of his enemy; with whom he meant to deal, when occasion should draw him to more equal termes. Therefore he stirred not out of his Trenches; but fortified himself, expecting when *Hannibal* should dislodge, and remove towards *Gerijon*, *Canna*, or some other place, where his store lay, for want of necessaries: whereof an Army forraging the Country, was not likely to carry about with it sufficient quantity, for any long time.

Here it would not be passed over with silence, That *Livie* differeth much in his Relation from *Polybius*: telling many strange tales, of the misery into which *Hannibal* had been driven; and of base courtes that he devised to take, if the Romans could have retained their patience a little longer. He had (saith *Livie*) but ten dayes provision of meat. He had not money to pay his souldiers. They were an unruly Rabble, gathered out of several Nations, so that he knew not how to keep them in order; but that from murmuring, they fell to flat exclamations, first, about their Pay, and Provant, and afterwards for very famine. Especially the Spaniards were ready to forsake him, and run over to the Roman side. Yea *Hannibal* himself was once upon the point, to have ston away into *Gaul* with all his horse, and left his foot unto their miserable destinies. At length for lack of all other counsaile, he resolved to get him as far as he could from the Romans, into the Southermost parts of *Apulia*, to the end, that both his unfaithful Souldiers might finde the more difficulty in running from him; and that his hunger might be relieved with the more early harvest. But whilst he was about to put this device in execution, the Romans pressed him so hard, that they even forced him to that, which he most desired, even to fight a battail upon open Champain ground: wherein he was victorious. It was not uncommendable in *Livie*, to speak the best of his own Citizens; and, where they did ill, to say, That, without their own great folly, they had done passing well. Further also he may be excused; as writing only by report. For thus he saith, *Hannibal de fuga in Galliam (dicitur) agitate*; *Hannibal (is said) to have*

have bethought himself of flying into *Gaul*: where he makes it no more than a matter of hear-say; as perhaps was all the rest of this Relation. As for the process it self, it is very incredible. For if *Hannibal*, coming out of *Gaul*, through the *Marsibes* and *Bages*, of *Herraria*, could finde victuals enough, and all things needfull unto his Army, the Summer forgoing: what should hinder him to do the like this year; especially seeing he had plaid the carefull husband in making a great harvest; since he had long been Master of the open field; and besides, had gotten, by surprise, no small part of the Romans provisions? Suitable hereunto is all the rest. If *Hannibal* had taken nothing but corn and cattell, his Souldiers might perhaps have fallen into mutiny for pay. But he brought gold with him into Italy: and had so well increased his stock, since he came into that Country, that he had armed his African Souldiers, all Roman-like, and loaded his followers with spoil: having left wherewith to redeem as many of his own, as were taken by the enemy; when the Romans were not willing, as finding it not easie, to do the like. In this point therefore, we are to attend the generall agreement of Historians: who give it as a principall commendation unto *Hannibal*, That he alwayes kept his Army free from sedition, though it were composed of sundry Nations; no less different in Manners, Religion, and almost in Nature, than they were in languages: and well might he so do, having not only pronounced, That which of his men soever fought bravely with an Enemy, was thereby a *Carthaginian*, but solemnly protested and sworn, (besides other rewards) to make as many of them, as should deserve and seek it, free Citizens of *Carthage*. The running away into *Gaul*, was a senselesse device. *Hannibal*, being there with his whole Army, took so little pleasure in the Country and People, that he made all haste to get him out of it. And what should he now do there with his horse? or how could he be trusted, either there or elsewhere? yea, how could he desire to live, having betrayed all his Army, and relinquished his miserable foot, to the butchery of their enemies? This tale therefore *Plutarch* omitteth; who in writing the life of *Hannibal* takes in a manner all his directions from *Livie*. But of this & the like it is enough to say. That all Historians love to extoll their own Country-men; and where a loss cannot be dissembled, nor the honour of the victory taken from the Enemy, & given unto blind Fortune, there to lay all the blame on some strange misgovernment of their own forces: as if they might easily have won all, but lost all through such folly, as no Enemy can hope to find in them another time.

Now let us return back to the two Armies, where they lye encamped on the River *Ausidus*. *Varro* was perfwaded, that it concerned him in honour, to make good his word unto the people of Rome: and since he had thus long waited in vain, to get the consent of *Paulus*, now at length to use his own authority; and, without any more disputing of the matter, to fight when his own day came. When therefore it was his turn to command, at the first break of the day he began to passe the River, without staying to bid his Colleague good morrow. But *Paulus* came to him, and fought, as in former times, to have disswaded him from putting the estate of his Country to a needles hazard. Against whose words and substantiall arguments, *Terentius* could alledge none other than point of Honour. *Hannibal* had presented them battell at their Trenches: should they endure this Bravado? He had sent his *Numidian*s over the River but even the day before, who fell upon the Romans that were fetching water to the lesser Camp; and drove them shamefully to run within their defences, which also they made offer to assail: must this also be suffered? He would not endure it: for it could not but weaken the spirit of the Roman Souldier; which as yet was lively, and full of such courage, as promised assured victory. When *Emilius* perceived, that he could not hinder the obstinate resolution of his Companion, he took all care, that what he saw must be done, might be done well. Ten thousand Roman foot he caused to be left behinde, in the greater camp opposite unto the *Carthaginian*, to the intent, that either *Hannibal* might be compelled to leave behind him some answerable number, for defence of his Trenches: (which out of his paucity he was less able to spare from the battail, than were the Romans) or that these ten thousand, falling upon the *Carthaginian* Camp, when the fight began, and taking it with all the wealth therein, might thereby (as commonly do such accidents) terrifie and distract the Enemies in the heat of fight. This done, the two Consuls went over the water with their Army to the lesser Camp, whence also they drew forth their men, and ranged them in order of battail: the ground



on the East part of the River, seeming perhaps more fit for marshalling of their Army. *Hannibal* was glad of this, as he had great cause; and without any delay, passed likewise over, somewhat higher up the stream, which ran from the South; leaving in his own camp so many, as he thought would serve to defend it, and no more. To encourage his men, He bad them look about them, and view the ground well, upon which they were to fight. They did so. And could you (said he) pray for any greater fortune than to joyn battail with the *Romans* upon such a level ground, where the stronger in horse are sure to prevail? They all assented to him; and shewed by their countenances, that they were very glad of it. Well then (said he further) ye are first of all to thank the gods, that have brought them hither; and then Us, that have trained them along, and drawn them into necessity of playing for their lives, where they are sure to lose them. As for these *Romans*, I was fain to encourage you against them, when ye met them first: but now ye may even encourage your selves, by calling to minde that they are the men, whom ye have as often beaten as seen. Of one thing only I will put you in minde: That whereas hitherto you fought for other respects, as, to drive them before you out of *Gaul*; and to win the open Country, and fields of *Italy*; both of which ye have obtained: now are ye to fight for the Towns themselves, and all the riches within them; which this victory shall make yours. Therefore play the stout Souldiers: and ere many hours passe, ye shall be Lords of all that the *Romans* hold.

When he had said this; his brother *Mago* came to him, whom he had sent to view the countenance of the enemy. *Hannibal* asked him, what newes; and what work they were likely to have with these *Romans*? Work enough (answered *Mago*) for they are an horrible many. As horrible a many as they are (thus *Hannibal* replied) I tell thee, brother, that among them all, I search them never so diligently, thou shalt not find one man, whose name is *Mago*. With that he fell a laughing, and so did all that stood about him: which gladdened the souldiers, who thought their Generall would not be so merry, without great assurance. Whether it were so, that *Hannibal*, in the pride of his victories already gotten, valued one *Mago* above many thousand *Romans*; or whether he intimated, that the *Romans* were no lesse troubled with thinking upon *Mago* and his Companions, than was *Mago* with beholding their huge multitude; or whether he meant only to correct the sad mood of his brother with a jest, and shew himself merry unto the Souldiers: this his answer was more manly, than was the relation of his discoverer. But if *Hannibal* himself had been sent forth by *Mago*, to view the *Romans*, he could not have returned with a more gallant report in his mouth, than that which Captain *Gams*, before the battail of *Agincourt*, made unto our King *Henry* the first: saying, that of the *Frenchmen*, there were enow to be killed, enow to be taken prisoners, and enow to run away. Even such words as these, or such pleasant jests as this of *Hannibal*, are not without their moment; but serve many times, when battail is at hand, to work upon such passions, as must govern more of the buisnesse: especially, where other needfull care is wanting; without which they are but vain boasts.

In this great day, the *Carthaginian* excelled himself; expressing no lesse perfection of his military skill, than was greatnesse in his spirit and undertakings. For to omit the commodiounesse of the place, into which he had long before conceived the means to draw his enemies to battail; He marshalled his Army in such convenient order, that all hands were brought to fight, where every one might doe best service. His Darters, and Slingers of the *Baleares*, he sent off before him, to encounter with the *Roman Velites*. These were loose troops, answerable in a manner to those, which we call now by a French name, *Enfans Perdus*; but when we use our own termes, the *forlorne hope*. The groffe of his Army following them, he ordered thus. His *Africans*, armed after the *Roman* manner, with the spoils which they had gotten at *Trebia*, *Thrasymene*, or elsewhere; and well trained in the use of those weapons that were of more advantage, than those wherewith they had formerly served; made the two wings, very deep in File. Between these he ranged his *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, armed each after their own Country manner; their shields alike; but the *Gauls* using long broad swords, that were forcible in a down-right stroak; the *Spaniards*, short and well pointed blades, either to strike or thrust; the *Gauls*, naked from their navell upwards, as confident in their own fiercenesse: the *Spaniards*, wearing white cassocks embroidered with purple.

This

This medley of two Nations, differing as well in habit and furniture, as in quality, made a gallant shew; and terrible, because strange. The *Gauls* were strong of body, and furious in giving charge, but soon wearied, as accustomed to spend their violence at the first brunt, which disposition all that come of them have inherited to this day. The *Spaniards* were lesse eager, but more wary; neither ashamed to give ground, when they were over-pressed; nor afraid to return, and renew the fight, upon any small encouragement. As the roughnesse of the one, and patience of the other, served mutually to reduce each of them to a good and firm temper; so the place which they held in this battail, added confidence joyntly unto them both. For they saw themselves well and strongly flanked with *Carthaginians* and other *Africans*; whose name was grown terrible in *Spain*, by their Conquests; and in *Gaul*, by this their present war. Since therefore it could not be feared, that any great calamity should fall upon them, whilst the wings on either side stood fast: these *Barbarians* had no cause to shrink, or forbear to employ the uttermost of their hardinesse, as knowing that the enemy could not presse far upon them, without further ingaging himself than discretion would allow. Hereunto may be added that great advantage, which the *Carthaginian* had in horse: by which he was able, if the worst had hapned, to make a good retreat. The effect of contraries is many times alike. Desperation begetteth courage; but not greater, nor so lively, as doth assured Confidence. *Hannibal* therefore caused these *Gauls* and *Spaniards* to advance; leaving void the place wherein they had stood, and into which they might fall back, when they should be overhardly pressed. So, casting them into the form of a *Crescent*, He made them as it were his Vant-guard: the two points of this great half Moon, that looked toward the empty space from which he had drawn it, being narrow and thin, as serving only to guide it orderly back, when need should require: the foremost part of the Ring, swelling out toward the enemies, being well strengthened and thickened against all impression. The circle hereof seemeth to have been so great, that it shadowed the *Africans*, who stood behind it: though such figures, cut in brass, as I have seen of this Battail, present it more narrow; with little reason, as shall anon appear: as also in the same figures it is omitted, that any Companies of *Africans*, or others, were left in the Rear, to second the *Gauls* and *Spaniards*, when they were driven to retreat; though it be manifest, that *Hannibal* in person stood between the last ranks of his long Battalions, and in the head of his Rear, doubtlesse well accompanied with the choice of his own Nation. Between the left Battalion and the River *Ausidus*, were the *Gauls* and *Spanish* horse, under the command of *Afrubal*: On the right wing, toward the wide Plains, was *Hanno* (*Livie* saith *Maharbal*) with the *Numidian* light-horse. *Hannibal* himself, with his brother *Mago*, had the leading of the Rear. The whole summe of *Hannibals* Army in the field this day, was ten thousand horse, and forty thousand foot, his enemies having two to one against him in foot; and He, five to three against them in horse.

The *Roman* Army was marshalled in the usuall forme: but somewhat more narrow, and deep than was accustomed; perhaps, because this had been found convenient against the *Carthaginians*, in the former war. It was indeed no bad way of resistance against Elephants, to make the Ranks thick and short, but the Files long; as also to strengthen well the Rear, that it might stand fast compacted as a wall, under shelter whereof the disordered troups might really themselves. Thus much it seemes, that *Terentius* had learned of some old Souldiers; and therefore he now ordered his Battalies accordingly, as meaning to shew more skill, than was in his understanding. But the *Carthaginians* had here no Elephants with them in the field: their advantage was in Horse; against which, this manner of imbattailing was very unprofitable, forasmuch as their charge is better sustained in front, than upon a long flank. As for *Emilius*, it was not his day of command: He was but an Assistant; and in such cases it happens often, that wise men yeeld for very wearinesse unto the more contentious. Upon the right hand, and toward the River, were the *Roman* horse-men, under the Consul *Paulus*: On the left wing, was *C. Terentius Varro* the other Consul, with the rest of the horse, which were of the *Latines*, and other associates: *Cn. Servilius* the former years Consul, had the leading of the battail. The Sun was newly risen, and offended neither part; the *Carthaginians* having their faces Northward, the *Romans* toward the South.

After some light skirmish, between the *Roman Velites*; and *Hannibal* his Darters and Slingers

slingers of the Balears: *Asdrubal* brake upon the Consul *Paulus*, and was roughly encountered; not after the manner of service on horse-back, used in those times, wheeling about *Alman-like*; but each giving on in a right line. Pouldron to Pouldron, as having the River on the one hand, and the shoulder of the foot on the other hand; so that there was no way left, but to pierce and break thorow. Wherefore they not only used their Lances and Swords; but rushing violently amongst the Enemies, grasped one another: and so their horses running from under them, fell many to the ground; where starting up again, they began to deal blowes like foot-men. In conclusion, the *Roman* horse were over born, and driven by plain force to a staggering recoil. This the Consul *Paulus* could not remedy. For *Asdrubal*, with his boisterous *Gaules* and *Spaniards*, was not to be resisted by these *Roman* Gentlemen, unequall both in number, and in horsemanship. When the battails came to joyning, the *Roman* Legionaries found work enough, and somewhat more than enough, to break that great *Crescent*, upon which they first fell: so strongly for the while, did the *Gaules* and *Spanish* foot make resistance. Wherefore the two points of their battail drew towards the midst; by whose aid, these opposites were forced to disband, and flye back to their first place. This they did in great haste and fear: and were with no lesse haste, and tollly pursued. Upon the *Africans* that stood behinde them, they needed not to fall foul; both for that there was void room enough; and forasmuch as the Rear, or Hornes of this Moon, pointed into the safe retreat, where *Hannibal* with his *Carthaginians* was ready to re-enforce them, when time should require. In this hasty retreat, or flight of the *Gaules* and *Spaniards*, it hapned, as was necessary, that they who had stood in the limb or utter compass of the half Moon, made the innermost or concave surface thereof (disordered and broken though it were) when it was forced to turn the inside outward: the horns or points thereof, as yet, untouched, only turning round, & recoyling very little. So the *Romans*, in pursuing them, were inclosed in an half circle; which they should not have needed greatly to regard, (for that the sides of it were exceeding thin and broken; and the bottom of it, none other than a throng of men routed, and seeming unable to make resistance) had all the enemies foot been cast into this one great body, that was in a manner dissolved. But whilst the Legions, following their supposed victory, rushed on upon those that stood before them, and thereby unwittingly engaged themselves deeply within the principall strength of the Enemies, hedging them in on both hands; the two *African* Battalions on either side advanced so far, that getting beyond the Rear of them, they enclosed them, in a manner, behinde: and forward they could not pass far, without removing *Hannibal* and *Mago*; which made that way the least easie. Hereby it is apparent, That the great *Crescent*, before spoken of, was of such extent, as covered the *Africans*, who lay behind it undiscerned, untill now. For it is agreed, that the *Romans* were thus empaled *unawares*; and that they behaved themselves, as men that thought upon no other work, than what was found them by the *Gaules*. Neither is it credible, that they would have been so mad, as to run head-long, with the whole bulk of their Army, into the throat of slaughter; had they seen those weapons bent against them at the fist, which when they did see, they had little hope to escape. Much might be imputed to their heat of fight, and rashness of inferiour Captains: but since the Consul *Paulus*, a man so expert in war, being vanquished in horse, had put himself among the Legions; it cannot be supposed, that he and they did wilfully thus engage themselves. *Asdrubal*, having broken the troupes of *Roman* horse, that were led by the Consul *Paulus*, followed upon them along the River side, beating down and killing, as many as he could, (which were almost all of them) without regard of taking prisoners. The Consul himself was either driven upon his own Legions, or willingly did cast himself among them; as hoping by them to make good the day, notwithstanding the defeat of his horse. But he failed of this his expectation. Nevertheless he cheered up his men as well as he could, both with comfortable words, and with the example of his own stout behaviour: beating down and killing many of the enemies with his own hand. The like did *Hannibal* among his *Carthaginians*, in the same part of the battail; and with better success. For the Consul received a blow from a sling, that did him great hurt: and though a troupe of *Roman* Gentlemen, riding about him, did their best to save him from further harme; yet was he so hardly laid at, that he was compelled, by wounds and weakness, to forsake his horse. Hereupon all his company

of  
re of  
mans

The Roman Camp  
beyond the river

L. Aemilius Paulus

The Roman  
Velites

Cn: Scipilius w 80000 foot

C. Terentius Varro

Astribul

The Balcon

Spaniards & Gauls

Hanno or Maharbal

Afri:

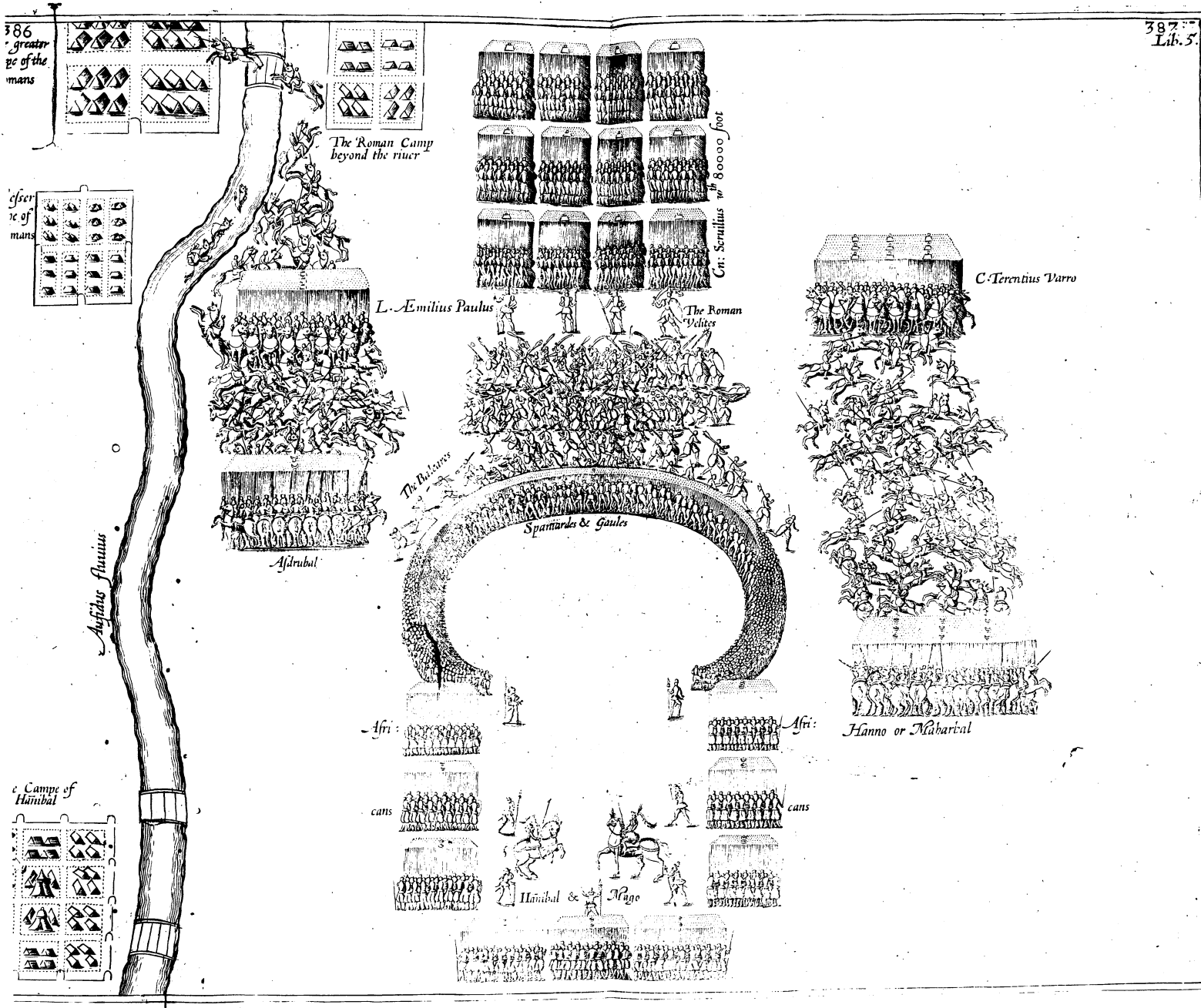
Afri:

e Campe of  
Hambal

cans

cans

Hambal & Nago

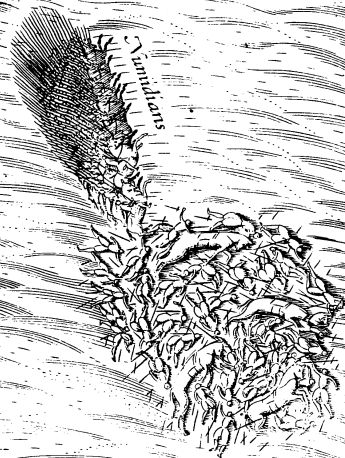
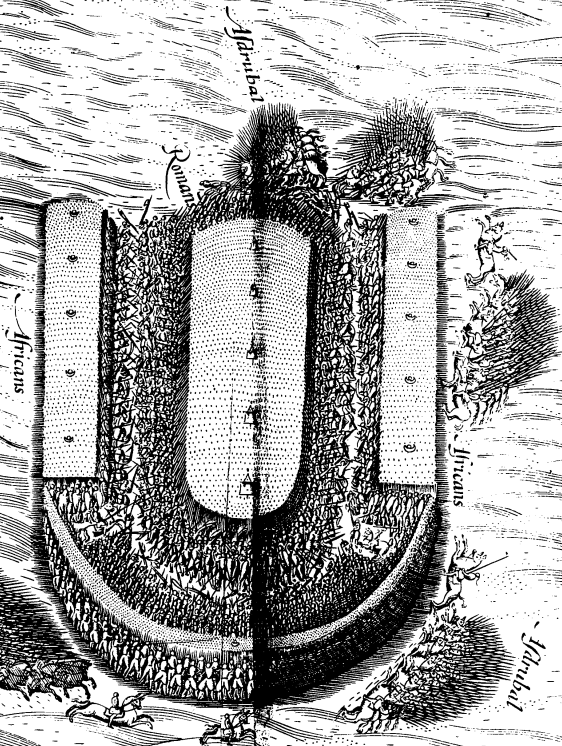
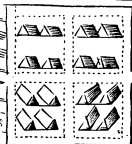
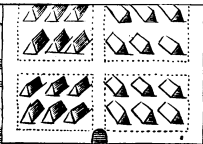


company alighted, thinking that the Consul had given order to do: as in many battails, the *Roman* men at armes had left their horses, to help their foot in distress. When *Hannibal* (for he was near at hand) perceived this, and understood that the Consul had willed his horse men to dismount; He was very glad of it, and pleasantly said, *I had rather he would have delivered them unto me, bound hand & foot*: meaning that he had them now almost as fast, as if they were so bound. All this while *C. Terentius Varro*, with the horse of his associates, in the left wing, was marvelously troubled by *Hanno* (or *Mahabal*) and the *Numidians*: who beating up and down about that great sandy Plain, raised a foul dust; which a strong South wind, blowing there accustomedly, drave in to the eyes and mouths of the *Romans*. These, using their advantage both of number and of lightness, wearied the Consul and his followers exceedingly: neither giving, nor sustaining any charge, but continually making offers, and wheeling about. Yet at the first they seemed to promise him an happy day of it. For when the battails were even ready to joyn; five hundred of these *Numidians* came picking away from their fellows, with their shields cast behind their backs, (as was the manner of those which yielded) and, throwing down their armes, rendred themselves. This was good luck to begin withall, if there had been good meaning. *Varro* had not leisure to examine them; but caused them, unweaponed as they were, to get them behind the Army, where he bade them rest quietly till all was done. These crafty adventurers did as he bade them, for a while; till they found opportunity to put in execution the purpose, for which they had thus yielded. Under their jackets they had short swords and poniards; besides which, they found other scattered weapons about the field of such as were slain, and therewithall slew upon the hindmost of the *Romans*, whilst all eyes and thoughts were bent another way: so that they did great mischief, and raised yet a greater terror. Thus *Hannibal*, in a plain levell ground, found means to lay an ambush at the back of his enemies. The last blow, that ended all fight and resistance, was given by the same hand which gave the first. *Asdrubal*, having in short space broken the *Roman* troupes of horse, and cut in pieces all, save the Company of *Emilius* that rushed into the grove of his foot, and a very few besides, that recovered some narrow passage, between the River and their own Battalions; did not stay to charge upon the face of the Legions, but fell back behind the Rear of his own, and fetching about, came up to the *Numidians*: with whom he joyned, and gave upon *Terentius*.

This fearful cloud, as it shewed at the first appearance what weather it had left behind it, on the other side: so did it prognosticate a dismal storm unto those upon whom it was ready now to fall. Wherefore *Terentius* his followers, having wearied themselves much in doing little, and seeing more work toward, than they could hope to sustain; thought it the best way, to avoid the danger by present flight. The Consul was no less wise than they, in apprehending the greatness of his own perill; nor more desperate, in striving to work impossibilities: it being impossible, when so many thrank from him, to sustain the impression alone, which he could not have indured with their assistance. Now he found that it was one thing to talk of *Hannibal* at Rome; and another, to encounter him. But of this, or of ought else, excepting hasty flight, his present leisure would not serve him to consider. Close at the heels of him and his flying troupes, followed the light *Numidians*, appointed by *Asdrubal* unto the pursuit, as fittest for that service. *Asdrubal* himself, with the *Gauls* and *Spanish* horse, compassing about, fell upon the backs of the *Romans*; that were ere this hardly distressed, and in a manner surrounded on all parts else: He brake them easily; who before made ill resistance, being inclosed, and laid at on every side, not knowing which way to turn. Here began a pitifull slaughter: the vanquished multitude thronging up and down, they knew not whither or which way, whilst every one sought to avoid those enemies, whom he saw nearest. Some of the *Roman* Gentlemen that were about *Emilius*, got up to horse, and saved themselves: which though it is hardly understood how they could do; yet I will rather believe it, than suppose that *Livie* so reporteth, to grace thereby his History with this following tale. *Cn. Cornelius Lentulus*, galloping along by a place where he saw the Consul sitting all bloodied upon a stone, invited him to rise and save himself; offering him his assistance and horse. But *Paulus* refused it, willing *Lentulus* to shift for himself, and not to lose time: saying, That it was not his purpose to be brought again into judgement by the People, either as an accuser of his Colleague, or as guilty himself.

self of that dayes losse. Further, he willed Lentulus to commend him to the Senate, and in particular to Fabius: willing them to fortifie Rome, as fast as well they could; and telling Fabius, that he lived and died mindfull of his whole some counsaile. These words (peradventure) or some to like purpose, the Consul uttered to Lentulus, either when against his will he was drawn to that Battail, or when he beheld the first defeat of his Horie; at what time he put himself in the head of his Legions. For I doubt not, but Hannibal knew what he said a good while before this; when he thought the Consul and his troupe, in little better case than if they had been bound. The whole Grosse of the Romans, was inclosed indeed as within a sack; whereof the African Battalions made the sides; the Spaniards, Gauls, and Hannibal with his Carthaginians, the bottome; and Asdrubal with his horie, closed up the mouth: in which part, they first of all were shuffled together, and began the Rout, wherein all the rest followed. *Emilius* therefore, who could not sit his horie, whilst the battail yet lasted, and whilst the spaces were somewhat open, by which he might have withdrawn himself, was now (had he never so well been mounted) unable to flye, having in his way so close a throng of his own miserable followers, and so many heaps of bodies, as fell aspace in that great Carnage. It sufficeth unto his honour, That in the Battail he fought no lesse valiantly, than he had warily before, both abstained himself, and dissuaded his fellow-Consul, from fighting at all. If, when the day was utterly lost, it had lien in his power to save his own life unto the good of his country, never more needing it; I should think, that he either too much esteemed himself; or being too faintly minded, was weary of the World, and his unthankfull Citizens. But if such a resolution were praise-worthy in *Emilius*, as proceeding out of Roman valour; then was the English vertue of the Lord *John Talbot*, Viscount *Lisle*, son to that famous Earle of *Shrewsbury*, who died in the Battell of *Chastillon*, more highly to be honoured. For *Emilius* was old, grievously, if not mortally, wounded, and accomptable for the overthrow received: *Talbot* was in the flowre of his youth, unhurt, easily able to have escaped, and not answerable for that dayes misfortune, when he refused to forsake his Father; who foreseeing the losse of the battail, and not meaning to stain his actions past by flying in his old age, exhorted this his noble son to be gone and leave him.

In this terrible overthrow died all the Roman foot, save two or three thousand, who (as *Livie* saith) escaped into the lesser camp; whence the same night, about six hundred of them brake forth, and joyning with such of those in the greater camp, as were willing to try their fortune, conveyed themselves away ere morning, about four thousand foot, and two hundred horie, partly in whole troupes, partly dispersed, into *Cannussum*: the next day the Roman camps, both lesse and greater, were yielded unto *Hannibal* by those that remained in them. *Polybius* hath no mention of this escape: only he reports, that the ten thousand, whom *Emilius* had left on the West side of *Ausidus* (as was shewed before) to set upon the camp of *Hannibal*, did as they were appointed; but ere they could effect their desire, which they had well-near done, the battail was lost: and *Hannibal*, coming over the water to them, drave them into their own camp; which they quickly yielded, having lost two thousand of their number. Like enough it is, that at the first sight of *Hannibal*, coming upon them with his victorious Army, a greater number of these did flee; and thereby escaped, whilst their fellowes, making defence in vain, retired into their camp, and held the enemy buied. For about two Legions they were (perhaps not half full, but made up by addition of others, whose fault or fortune was like) that having served at *Canna*, were afterwards extremely disgraced by the State of Rome, for that they had abandoned their companions fighting. Of the Roman horie what numbers escaped, it is uncertain: but very few they were that saved themselves in the first charge, by getting behinde the River; and *Terentius* the Consul recovered *Venusia*, with three score and ten at the most in his company. That he was so ill attended, it is no marvel: for *Venusia* lay many miles off to the Southward; so that his nearest way thither, had been through the midst of *Hannibals* Army, if the passage had been open. Therefore it must needs be, that when once he got out of sight, he turned up some by-way; so disappointing the *Numidians* that hunted contre. Of such as could not hold pace with the Consul, but took other wayes, and were scattered over the fields; two thousand, or thereabout, were gathered up by the *Numidians*, and made prisoners: the rest were slain, all save three hundred; who dispersed themselves in flight, as chance led





led them, and got into sundry Towns. There died in this great Battail of *Canna*, besides *L. Aemilius Paulus* the Consul, two of the *Roman* Quæstors or Treasurers, and one and twenty Colonels or Tribunes of the Souldiers, fourscore Senators, or such as had borne office, out of which they were to be chosen into the Senate. Many of these were of especial mark, as having been *Ædiles*, *Prætors* or Consuls: among whom was *Cn. Servilius*, the last years Consul, and *Minnius*, late Master of the horse. The number of prisoners, taken in this battail, *Livie* makes no greater than three thousand foot, & three hundred horse: too few to have defended for the space of one half hour, both the *Roman* Camps, which yet the same *Livie* saith, to have been over-cowardly yielded up. We may therefore do better, to give credit unto one of the prisoners, whom the same Historian shortly after introduceth, speaking in the Senate, and saying, That they were no less than eight thousand. It may therefore be, that these three thousand were only such as the Enemy spared, when the fury of Execution was past; but to these must be added about five thousand more, who yielded in the greater camp, when their company were either slain or fled. So the reckoning falls out right: which the *Romans*, especially the Consul *Varro*, had before cast up (as we say) without their Host; nothing so chargeable, as now they finde it. On the side of *Hannibal* there died some four thousand *Gauls*, fifteen hundred *Spaniards* and *Africans*, and two hundred horse, or thereabouts: a losse not sensible, in the joy of so great a victory; which if he had pursued, as *Maharbal* advised him, and forthwith marched away towards *Rome*; it is little doubted, but that the war had presently been at an end. But he beleev'd not so far in his own prosperity; and was therefore told, That he knew how to get, not how to use a victory.

## §. IX.

of things following the battail at Cannæ.

NOT without good cause doth *Polybius* reprehend those two Historians, *Fabius* the *Roman*, and *Philinus* the *Carthaginian*: who regarding more the pleasure of them, unto whose honour they consecrated their travails, than the truth of things, and information of posterity, magnified indifferently, whether good or bad, all actions and proceedings, the one of his *Carthaginians*, the other of his *Roman* Quirites, and Fathers conscript. No man of sound judgement will condemn this liberty of censure, which *Polybius* hath used. For, to recompence his juniority (such as it was) he produceth substantiall arguments, to justify his own Relation; and confuteth the vanity of those former authors, out of their own writings, by conference of places ill cohering: which pains is to be suspected, that he would not have taken, had he been born in either of these two Cities, but have spared some part of his diligence, and been contented to have all men think better and more honourably than he deserved, of his owne Country. The like disease it is to be feared, that we shall hereafter finde in others; and shall have some cause to wish, that either they were somewhat lesse *Roman*, or else, that some works of their opposite Writers were extant, that so we might at least hear both sides speak: being henceforth destitute of *Polybius* his help, that was a man indifferent. But since this cannot be, we must be sometimes bold, to observe the coherence of things, and beleve so much only to be true, as dependeth upon good reason, or (at least) fair probability. This attentive circumspection is needfull at the present: such is the repugnancy, or forgetfulness, which we find in the best Narration of things following the Battail of *Canna*. For it is said, that four thousand foot and horse gathered together about the Consul *Terentius* at *Venusia*; that others to the number of ten thousand got into *Cannussum*, choosing for their Captains, young *P. Scipio*, and *Ap. Claudius*; yet that the Consul *Terentius Varro*, joyning his company unto those of *Scipio* at *Cannussum*, wrote unto the Senate, that he had now well-near ten thousand men about him; that these letters of the Consul were brought to *Rome*, when the Senate was newly risen, that had been taking order for pacifying those tumults in the City, which grew upon the first bruit of the overthrow; and yet, that Embassadors from *Capua* (after some consultation, whether it were meet to send any, or without further circumstance, to side with *Hannibal*) were sent unto *Terentius*, and found him at *Venusia*, a pretty while before he wrote those letters, which overlook (in a manner) at *Rome* the first newes of the overthrow.

overthrow. Among such incoherences, I hold it the best way, to omit so much as hath not some particular connexion with matter ensuing: mutual dependency in things of this nature, being no small argument of truth.

When *Hannibal* had sacked the *Roman* camp, and trussed up the spoils, forthwith he dislodged, and marched away into *Samnium*; finding a disposition in the *Hirpines*, and many other people therabouts, to forsake the *Roman* party, and make alliance with *Carthage*. The first town that opened the gates unto him, was *Cossa*, where he laid up his baggage: and leaving his brother *Mago* to take in other places, he hasted into *Campania*. The generall affection of the multitude, in all the Cities of *Italy*, was inclinable unto him; not only in regard of their grievous losses, sustained abroad in the fields, which the *Romans* themselves, who could not hinder him from spoiling the Country, especially the poorer sort of them, did hardly indure; but in a loving respect unto that great courtesie (as it seemed) which he used unto such of them as became his prisoners. For as at other times, so now after this great victory at *Canna*, He had lovingly dismissed as many of the *Italian* Confederates of *Rome*, as fell into his hands: rebuking them gently for being so obdurate against him that had fought to deliver them from bondage. Neither spared he to win their love by gifts; pretending to admire their valour, but seeking indeed, by all ways and means, to make them his, whilst all other motives were concurrent. At this time also he began to deal kindly (though against his nature) with the *Roman* prisoners; telling them, that he bore no mortal hatred unto their Estate; but being provoked by injuries, sought to right himself and his Country; and fought with them, to try which of these two Cities, *Rome* or *Carthage*, should bear sovereign Rule, nor, which of them should be destroyed. So he gave them leave to choose ten of their number, that should be sent home to treat with the Fathers about their ransom: and together with these, he sent *Carthalo* a Noble man of *Carthage*, and General of his Horse, to feel the disposition of the Senate; whether it were bowed as yet by so much adversity, and could stoop unto desire of peace. But with the *Romans* these arts prevailed not, as shall be shewed in due place. The people of *Italy*, all, or most of them, save the *Roman* Colonies, or the *Latines*, were not only weary of their losses past; but entertained a deceivable hope, of changing their old Society for a better. Wherefore not only the *Samnites*, *Lucans*, *Brutians*, and *Apulians*, ancient enemies of *Rome*, and not until the former generation utterly subdued, began to re-assume their wonted spirits; but the *Campanians*, a Nation of all other in *Italy* most bound unto the State of *Rome*, and by many mutual affinities therewith as straightly conjoined, as were any save the *Latines*, changed on a sudden their love into hatred; without any other cause found, than change of fortune.

*Campania*, is the most goodly and fruitfull Province of *Italy*, if not (as some then thought) of all the Earth: and the City of *Capua*, answerable unto the country, whereof it was Head, so great, fair, and wealthy, that it seemed no less convenient a seat of the Empire, than was either *Rome* or *Carthage*. But of all qualities, bravery is the least requisite unto sovereign command. The *Campanians* were luxurious, idle, and proud: and valuing themselves like Javes by their feathers, despised the unfortunate vertue of the *Romans* their Patrons and Benefactors. Yet were there some of the principall among them, as in other Cities, that bore especial regard unto the Majesty of *Rome*, and could not indure to hear of Innovation. But the *Plebeian* faction had lately so prevailed within *Capua*, that all was governed by the pleasure of the Multitude; which wholly followed the direction of *Pacuvius Calavus* an ambitious Noble-man, whose credit grew, and was up-held by furthering all popular desires: whereof, the conjunction with *Hannibal* was not the least. Some of the *Capuans* had offered their city to the *Carthaginians* shortly after the battail of *Thrasymene*: whereupon chiefly it was, that *Hannibal* made his journey into *Campania*: the Dictator *Fabius* waiting upon him. At that time, either the neerfulness of the *Roman* Army, or some other fear of the *Capuans*, hindered them from breaking into actual rebellion. They had indeed no leisure to treat about any article of new Confederacy: or had leisure served, yet were the multitude (whose inconstant love *Hannibal* had won from the *Romans*, by gentle usage, and free dismissing of some prisoners in good account among them) unable to hold any such negotiation, without advice of the Senate; which mainly impugned it. So they that had promised to yield up their town to *Hannibal*, & meet him on the way, with some of their nobility that should assure him

him of all faithful meaning, were driven to sit still in a great perplexity: as having failed to let in this their new friend, yet sufficiently discovered themselves, to draw upon them the hatred of the *Romans*. In this case were no small number of the Citizens: who thereupon grew the more incensed against their Senate, on whom they cast all the blame, easily pardoning their own cowardize. The people holding so tender a regard of liberty, that even the lawful government of Magistrates grieved them, with an imaginary oppression; had now good cause to fear lest the Senators would become their Lords indeed, and by help of the *Romans* bring them under a more straight subjection, than ever they had endured. This fear being ready to break into some outrage, *Pacuvius* made use of, to serve his own ambition. He discoursed unto the Senate, as they sat in Council, about these motions troubling the city: and said, That he himself had both married a *Roman* Lady, and given his Daughter in marriage to a *Roman*: but, that the danger of forsaking of the *Roman* party was not now the greatest: for that the people were violently bent to murder all the Senate, and after to joyn themselves with *Hannibal*, who should countenance the fact, and save them harmless. This he spake, as a man well known to be beloved himself by the People, and privie unto their designs. Having thoroughly terrified the Senate, by laying open the danger hanging over them: He promised nevertheless to deliver them all, and to let things in quiet, if they would freely put themselves into his hands, offering his oath, or any other assurance that they should demand for his faithful meaning. They all agreed. Then shutting up the Court, and placing a guard of his own followers about it, that none might enter, nor issue forth, without his leave; He called the people to assembly: and speaking as much ill of the Senate, as he knew they would be glad to hear, he told them, that these wicked Governours were surprised by his policy, and all fast, ready to abide what sentence they would lay upon them. Only thus much he advised them, as a thing which necessity required, That they should choose a new Senate, before they satisfied their anger upon the old. So rehearsing unto them the names of one or two Senators; he asked what their judgement was of those. All cried out, that they were worthy of death. Choose then (said he) first of all some new ones into their places. Hereat the multitude, unprovided for such an election, was silent; until at last, some one or other adventured to name whom he thought fit. The men so nominated, were utterly disliked by the whole Assembly; either for some known fault, baseness and insufficiency; or else even because they were unknown, and therefore held unworthy. This difficulty in the new Election appearing more and more, whilst more were to be chosen; (the fittest man to be substituted, having been named among the first, and not thought fit enough) *Pacuvius* intreated, and easily prevailed with the people, that the present Senate might for this time be spared, in hope of amends hereafter; which (doublets) they would make; having thus obtained pardon of all offences past. Henceforth, not only the people, as in former times, honoured *Pacuvius*, and esteemed him their Patron; but the Senators also were governed by him, to whom they acknowledged themselves indebted, for saving all their lives. Neither did the Senate fail after this by all obsequiousness, to court the People; giving the reins unto their lawless Will, who else were likely to cast them down. All the city being thus of one mind; only fear of the *Romans* kept them from opening their gates to *Hannibal*. But after the Battail at *Canna*, this impediment was removed; and few there were that would open their mouths to speak against the Rebellion. Yet forasmuch as three hundred principall Gentlemen of the *Campanians*, did then serve the *Romans* in the Ile of *Sicily*: the Parents and Kinsmen of these prevailed so far, that Embassadors were sent unto *Terentius* the Consul; to see his present case, and what it could minister of Hope or Fear. These, wheresoever they found him, found him weakly attended, and as weak in spirit, as in followers. Yet they offered him formally the service of their State; and desired to know what he would command them. But he most basely lamented unto them the greatness of the *Roman* misfortune: saying, that all was lost; and that the *Campanians* must now, not help the *Romans*, who had nothing left wherewith to help themselves, but make war in their defence against the *Carthaginians*; as the *Romans* had sometimes done for the *Campanians* against the *Samnites*. Hereunto he is said to have added a foolish Inveective against *Hannibal* and his *Carthaginians*: telling, How he had taught them to make bridges of slaughtered carcasses, & to feed upon mans flesh; with such other stufte, as only bewrayed his own fear. As for the *Campanians* themselves,

He put them in mind of their present strength: they having thirty thousand foot, and four thousand horse; with money, and all provisions, in abundance: Thus he dismissed them, prouder than they came, and filled them with conceit of getting a great Lordship; whereas before they were somewhat timorous in adventuring to seek their own liberty. Having reported this at *Capua*: the same Embassadors were dispatched away to *Hannibal*, with whom they easily made alliance, upon these conditions; that the *Campanians* should be absolutely free, and ruled by their own Lawes; That no Citizens of theirs should be subject unto any *Carthaginian* Magistrate, in what case soever, whether in War or Peace; and that *Hannibal* should deliver unto the *Campanians* three hundred *Roman* prisoners, such as themselves would chuse, whom they might exchange for their 10 Gentlemen which were in *Scilicet*.

Against all this Negotiation, *Decius Magius*, an honourable Citizen, opposed himself earnestly: using, in vain, many persuasions, to the wilfull and head-strong Multitude; whom he put in minde of *Pyrrhus* and the *Tarentines*, wishing them not to change old friends for new acquaintance. This did he, when they were sending Embassadors unto *Hannibal*, and this also did he, when the new alliance was concluded; but most earnestly, when a *Carthaginian* Garrison was entering the town: at which time he gave advice, either to keep it out, or to fall upon it, and to cut it in pieces, that by such a notable piece of service, they might make amends unto the *Romans*, whom they had forsaken. 20

Advertisement hereof was given to *Hannibal*: who lying about *Naples* not farre off, sent for *Magius* to come speak with him in the camp. This *Magius* refused: alledging, that he was, by the late concluded Articles, free from subjection unto any *Carthaginian*; and therefore would not come. *Hannibal* thereupon halted himself towards *Capua*: forbearing to attempt any further upon *Naples*; which he thought to have taken in his way by *Scalado*, but found the walls too high, and was not well provided to lay siege unto it. At *Capua* he was entertained with great solemnity and pomp: all the people issuing forth of the town, to behold that great Commander, which had won so many noble victories. Having taken his pleasure in the sight of that goodly City, and passed over his first entertainments; He came into their Senate: where he commended their resolution, in shaking off the *Roman* yoke; promising, that ere long all *Italy* and *Rome* it self, should be driven to acknowledge *Capua* as chief, and receive Law from thence. As for *Decius Magius*, who openly took part with the *Romans* their enemies; He prayed them, that they would not think him a *Campan*, but a traitor to the State, and use him accordingly, giving sentence out of hand upon him, as he deserved. This was granted: and *Magius* delivered unto *Hannibal*: who unwilling to offend the *Capuans*, at his first coming, by putting to great a man to death, yet fearing that they might sue for his liberty, if he kept him alive, thought it best to send him away to *Carthage*. Thus *Hannibal* sealed his friendship with the *Campanians*: among whom, only this *Decius Magius* had openly dared to speak against him; being assisted by *Perella* the sonne of *Pacuvius*. This *Perella* would have murdered *Hannibal*, whilst he was at supper, the first night of his coming; had not his fathers authority kept him from attempting any such attempt. All the town (besides) were so earnest in the love of their new Society, that they are said to have murdered all the *Romans*, upon whom at the present they could lay hand; or, (which is all one) to have smothered them to death in an hot Bath. 30

The same course of fortune, with those of *Capua*, ran some other towns thereabouts, which depended on this, as their Mother-City. *Nola*, *Nuceria*, *Naples*, *Casertine*, and *Acerre*, were the Cities next adjoining, that stood out for the *Romans*. Against these *Hannibal* went, thinking to finde them weakly manned; as they were indeed, though stoutly defended.

The *Romans* at this time were not in case, to put Garrisons into all their walled towns; but were faine to leave all places, except a few of the most suspected, unto the faith and courage of the inhabitants. *Rome* it self was in extreme fear of *Hannibals* coming, at the first report of the overthrow at *Cannae*: and the grief of that losse was so general, and immoderate, that it much disturbed the provision against apparent danger. It was hard to judge, whether the losse already received, or the fear of destruction presently threatening, were the more terrible. All the Senators found work enough, to stint the noise and lamentable bewailings, whereof the streets were full. Courtiers were sent 50

sent forth, to bring assured tidings how all went: whereof when Letters from the Consul *Furro* had thoroughly informed them, they were so amazed, that they ran into barbarous superstition; and taking direction (as was said) from their fatal books busied alive two men and women, *Gauls* and *Greeks*, in their Oxe-market. If the books of *Sibyl* gave them such instructions; we may justly think that *Sibyl* her self was instructed by the Diuel. Yet is it not improbable, that extremity of fear caused them to hearken to wicked Sooth-sayers; whose detestable counsels they afterwards for their own honour (as ashamed of such Authors) imputed to the books of *Sibyl*. An Embassador was sent to *Delphi*, to consult with the oracle of *Apollon*; & enquire with what prayers and supplications 10 ons they might pacifie the gods, and obtain an end of these calamities. This is enough to discover the greatness of their fear; though not serving to give remedy. At that time came Letters out of *Sicily*, from the Prætor *Ostacilius*; whom the Senate had appointed, if he found it meet, to pass over into *Africk*. In these were contained newes of one *Carthaginian* fleet that wasted the kingdom of *Hieron* their good friend & confederate; & of another fleet, riding among the Isles *Ægætes*, which was in readines to set upon *Lilybæum*, and the rest of the *Roman* Province, if the Prætor stirred aside to the rescue of *Hieron*.

In the midst of these extremities, it was thought needfull to call home *Terentius* the Consul, that he might name a Dictator, to take sovereign charge of the Weal publique, with absolute power, as necessity required. It must needs seem strange, that all sorts of 20 people went forth to meet the Consul, and bid him welcome home, giving him thanks for that he had not despaired of the Weal publique. But this was done (as may seem) by order from the Senate: which therein (doubtless) provided wisely for upholding the generall reputation. If this coming into the City had renewed the lamentations and outcries of the people: what else would have followed, than a contempt of their wretchedness, among those that were subject unto their Dominion? Now in finding this occasion (though indeed he gave it not) of bestowing upon him their welcome, and thanks; they noised abroad a fame, which came perhaps unto the ears of *Hannibal*, of their Magnanimity and Confidence: that might seem grounded on their remaining strength. This therefore was wisely done. But whereas *Livie* would have us think, that it was done generally, and out of great spirit; let me be pardoned, if I beleve him not. It was done fearfully, and to cover their grief: had they dared to shew their indignation, they would have struck off his head; as in few years after, *Cn. Fulvius* had his life brought into question, and was banished by them, being less blame-worthy, for a smaller offence. *M. Junius*, by appointment of the Senate, was nominated Dictator, and *T. Sempronius*, Master of the 30 horse. These fell presently to mustering of Souldiers, of whom they raised four new Legions, and 1000. horse: though with much difficulty; as being faine to take up some that were very boyes. These four Legions are elsewhere forgotten in account of the forces levied by this Dictator; and two Legions only set down, that had been enrolled in the beginning of the year for custody of the City. So it may be, that these two Legions being drawn into the field; four new ones of *Prætextati*, or striplings were left in their places. In such raw Souldiers, and so few, little confidence was to be reposed; for which reason they increased their number, by adding unto them 8000. sturdy slaves, that were put in hope of liberty, if they should deserve it by manfull service. This notwithstanding, the Dictator proclaimed, That whosoever ought money & could not pay it, or had committed any capital offence, should forthwith be discharged of his debt or punishment, if he would serve in the War. To arme these Companies, they were faine to take down out of their Temples and Porches, the spoils of their enemies that had been there set up: among which, were 6000. Armour of the *Gauls*, that had been carryed in the Triumph of *C. Flaminius*, a little before the beginning of this War. To such mockery had God brought 40 the pride of the *Romans*, as a due reward of their insolent oppressions, that they were faine to issue forth of their own gates, in the habit of strangers, when *Hannibal* was ready to encounter them with his *Africans*, armed *Roman-like*.

About the same time it was that *Carthalo* with the Agents of the prisoners taken at *Cannae*, came to *Rome*. *Carthalo* was not admitted into the City, but commanded, whilst he was on the way, to be gone ere night out of the *Roman* Territory. To the messengers of the captives audience was given by the Senate. They made earnest Petition to be ransomed at the publick charge; not only the rears and lamentation of their poor kinsfolk, but the great need, wherein the City then stood, of able Souldiers, commanding 50 their

their suit; which yet they obtained not. Besides the generall custome of the *Romans* (held by long Tradition, and strengthened by a notable Precedent, when *Regulus* was overthrown, and taken prisoner in the former War) not to be too tender of such as had yielded to the enemy; much was alleged against these who now craved ransom: but the special point was, that they were willingly lost, since they might have saved themselves, as others did. It sufficed not unto these poor men, to say, that their offence was no greater than the Consuls; they were told, that this was great presumption. The truth was, the State wanted money; and therefore could not want excuses, whereby to avoid the disbursement: whether it were so, or not, that any such Plea was held about this matter of redemption, as we finde recorded. Neither must we regard it, that the slaves which were armed for the war, are said to have cost more, than the sum did amount unto, that would have ransomed these prisoners. For this is but a tale, devised to countenance the *Roman* proceedings, as if they had been severe; when as indeed the were suitable to the present fortune, poor and somewhat beggarly. Hereof it is no little proofe, That *Hannibal* valued those *Roman* slaves, whom he had taken in the Camp among their Masters, at no more, than every one the third part of a common Souldiers ransom: and likely it is, that he offered them at the price, whereat he thought them current. But if we should suppose, that by trading with *Hannibal*, a better bargain for slaves might have been made, than was by the State at home, in dealing with private men; yet must we withall consider, that these private men did only lend these slaves for a while unto the Common-wealth, and were afterwards contented to forbeare the price of them (when by order of the Senate they were enfranchised) until the War should be ended. If *Hannibal* would have given such long day of payment, it is likely that the *Romans* would have been his Chapmen: but, seeing he dealt only for ready money, they chose rather to say, We will not give, than, We cannot. The like austerity, upon the same reason, but contrary pretence, was used toward the Souldiers that escaped from that great Battell. These were charged for having fled: as the prisoners were, for not flying, when they might have done so. True it is, that in such cases (if ever) that which they call *Regione del Stato*, may serve for an excuse, when the Common-wealth, being driven to a miserable exigent, is faine to help it self, by doing injuries to private men. And so dealt the *Romans* now: condemning all those that had served at *Canna*, to be transported into *Scythia*; and there to serve, not as others did, until they had fulfilled twenty years in the Wars, or else were fifty years of age, but until this War should be ended, how long soever it lasted, and that without reward. The same thrifty censure was afterwards laid upon others, for their mis-behaviour: but never upon any man of quality, save only (a good while after this, at better leisure) upon *Cecilius Metellus*, and a few other hare-brain'd fooles his companions; who, being frightened out of their wits, with the terror of so great a losse, were devising, after the battell, which way to run out of *Italy*, when *Hannibal* as yet had scarce one town within it. The inequality of this rigour grew shortly distastfull to the Commonalty: and was openly blamed by a Tribune of the people; nevertheless it was quietly digested, the excuse being no lesse apparent than the fault.

*M. Junius* the Dictator, having dispatched all needfull businesse within the Citie, took the field with five and twenty thousand men. What he did with this Army, I cannot finde: nor more of him than this, That he spent the time about *Campania*; where (as may be presumed) he was not idle. To him therefore perhaps it may be ascribed, that *Hannibal* did no greater evill: for of any evil done to *Hannibal*, by the *Romans*, in this their weak estate, only *Marcellus* had the honour. *Marcellus*, being then one of the Prætors, lay at *Ofstia*, with a Fleet ready to set sail for *Scythia*, having one Legion aboard his ships; and fifteen hundred other Souldiers newly taken up: with which forces he was to defend that Iland, and do what harm he could in *Africa*. But hearing of the overthrow at *Canna*, he sent these of his new Levie to *Rome*, for defence of the City; and marched hastily with his Legion toward *Canusium*: delivering the Fleet, empty of Souldiers, to *P. Furius* his Colleague. Thence was he called by the Magistrates, and chief Citizens of *Nola*, to help them: who were like to be forced by the multitude (affected, as were the rest of the *Campanes*) to let in the *Carthaginian*; and knew not how to avoid this otherwise, than by seeming to deliberate about the articles of this new confederacy. Wherefore he made great journeys thitherward; and arrived even time enough

enough to prevent the Enemy. Many idle walks *Hannibal* made betwixt *Nola* and *Naples*: allaying by fair words and terrible threats the one and the other City. *Naples* was strong, and not infected with any the least touch of disloyalty: had also a sure Haven, whereby it stood in the less fear of losing much inconvenience, by spoyle of the Lands and Villages abroad in the Country. But at *Nola* it was thought a valuable consideration, That *Hannibal* was Master of the field: which if he laid wait, all the poor people were utterly undone. So thought the Multitude: & such talk used some, that had little fear of their own private want or poverty, but a great desire to gratifie the *Carthaginian*. Of these, one *L. Bantius* was chief; a stout young Gentleman, and Souldier of especial mark, well beloved in the City, and one that had done good service to the *Romans*; but was found by *Hannibal* half dead at *Canna*; and after much gentle usage, good attendance, and cure of his wounds, friendly dismissed with liberal gifts. He therefore thought, that it concerned him in honour, to return the greatest thanks he could unto so courteous an enemy. *Marcellus* perceiving this, wrought upon the same easie nature of the Gentleman: and taking notice of him, as if it had been by chance, seemed to wonder, why one that had so well deserved of the *Roman* State, had not repaired unto him the Prætor, who desired nothing more than such acquaintance. So with many commendations, gifts, and loving entertainment, being himself also a man highly reputed for his personal valour, he made this *Bantius* so far in love with him, that nothing could be attempted within *Nola*, against the *Romans*, whereof he had not presently advertisement. At the coming of *Marcellus*, *Hannibal* removed from about *Nola*; and allayd, as formerly he had done, the *Neapolitans*: but they had lately taken in a *Roman* Garrison; upon confidence whereof they gave him a peremptory answer, to his discontent. Thence went he to *Nuceria*, which he took by composition; and so returned back again to *Nola*. He was not ignorant, what good affection the common people of *Nola* bore unto him: who although they durst not stir in his quarrell, being over-awed by the *Roman* Garrison; yet if they saw *Marcellus* hardly bestead, and forced to turn his care from watching them within, to repelling the enemies assailing him without, like enough it seemed, that they would not be wanting unto the accomplishment of their own desires. He therefore brought his Army close to the Town, and skirmished often with *Marcellus*: not in hope thereby to do much good, but only to make shew of a meaning to force the Town; which he sought in the mean while to take by intelligence. In the night time there passed messages between him and the Citizens his partakers: whereby it was concluded, That if once *Marcellus*, with all his forces, could be trained into the field, the multitude within the Town should presently rise; and seizing upon the gates, exclude him as an Enemy. Of this Negotiation *Marcellus* was advertised: and fearing lest the Conspirators would shortly adventure, even to find him busied within the City, whilst the *Carthaginians* should scale the walls; he thought it the surest way, to cut off the Enemies hope, and send him away betimes.

Wherefore ordering his men in three companies, within three severall gates, looking towards the enemy: he gave a straight command, that all the Citizens should keep their houses. Thus he lay close a good part of the day, to the enemies great wonder; against whom he had customarily issued forth before more early, every day, to skirmish. But when it was further noted, that the walls were bare, and not a man appearing on them; then thought *Hannibal*, that surely all was discovered, and *Marcellus* now busied with the Citizens. Whereupon he bad his men bring ladders, and make ready for the assault: which was done in all haste. But when the *Carthaginians* were at the very walls, and thought nothing less, than that the *Romans* would meet them in the field: suddenly the middle gate was opened, whereat *Marcellus*, with the best and oldest of his Souldiers, brake forth upon them, with a great noise, to make his unexpected fall the more terrible. Whilst the *Carthaginians*, much out of order, were some of them flying before *Marcellus*, the rest making head against him: the other two gates opened, whereat in like sort issued they of the new levied Companies, upon the enemies backs. The sudden terrour was more available unto the *Romans*, than their force; yet the Execution was so great, that this was accounted as a victory, and reputed one of the bravest Acts performed in all that War, so far as much as hereby it was first proved, that *Hannibal* might be overcome. After this *Marcellus*, being freed from his enemies that were departed, took a strict account of the Citizens of *Nola*; condemning above

threecore and ten of high Treason, whose heads he struck off; and so leaving the town in quiet obedience unto their Senate, went and incamped hard by about *Suessula*. *Hannibal* in the mean season was gone to *Acerra*: where being excluded, he thought it no wisdom to lose time in perswasions, but laid siege unto it, and began on all sides to close it up. This terrified the People, who knew themselves unable to hold out. Therefore, before his Works were finished, and they quite surrounded; they stole out by night, and left him the Town empty: which he sacked and burnt. Then hearing newes of the Dictator, that he was about *Casiline*, thither went *Hannibal*, as being unwilling that an Enemy so near should disquiet him at *Capua*, where he meant to Winter. It seems, or rather indeed it is plain, that the late victory of *Marcellus* had nothing abated the spirit of the *Carthaginian*: who durst with a small part of his Army seek out the Dictator, that had with him the heart of the *Roman* strength. Wherefore the joy of his Enemies, upon so slight an occasion as the death of some two thousand of his men, at the most; and those not slain in plain battail, but by a sudden eruption; witnesse chiefly, in what great fear they stood of *Hannibal*, and how Crest-fallen they were: that having three years since demanded at *Carthage* the body of *Hannibal*, to be delivered unto their pleasure, by his own Citizens, could now please themselves, as with good newes, to hear, That in a skirmish not far from *Rome*, he appeared to be a man, and not resistlesse. At *Caslinum* the Dictator was not: but many Companies of *Italians*, Confederates of *Rome*, were gotten into the Town, and held it. Five hundred of the *Præfines* there were, and about four hundred of *Persians*, with some of the *Latines*. All these had the good hap, to come too late to the battail at *Canus*, being sent by their severall States to the Camp: whither whilest they were marching the tidings of that great misfortune encountered them, and sent them back sorrowfull, for they loved well their Lords the *Romans*, under whose government they lived happily. So came they all, one after another, to *Casiline*, where they met and stayed. Neither had they stayed there long, ere they heard newes from *Capua*. How that great City became the Ring-leader of all the *Campanes* into rebellion. The people of *Casiline* were affected as they of *Capua*: and therefore sought how to rid their hands of those *Præfines* and their fellows; but the Souldiers were too hard for them, and after many trains laid one for another, at last they slew all the Townsmen in a night, and fortified the Western part of the Town (for it was divided by the River *Vulturnus*) against the Enemy. If they had run away with the goods, and pretended, that these of *Casiline* were as the rest of the *Campanes*, all Traitors; they themselves might have been reputed, as no better than the *Mamertines*. But their constancy in defence of the place winneseth, upon what honest reasons they surprised it. *Hannibal* came thither, thinking to have encountered with greater forces: but these few found him more work than he expected. Divers assaults he gave, but was still repelled with losse: and many sallies they made, with variable event. The Enemy mined; and they countermined: opposing so much industry to his force, that he was driven to close them up, and seek to win them by famine. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, that was Master of the horse, lay with the *Roman* Army higher up the River: who fain would have relieved *Casiline*, but that the Dictator being gone to *Rome* about some matters of Religion, had given him an expresse charge not to fight till his return. *Marcellus* from *Suessula* could not come: his way being stopped by the overflowings of *Vulturnus*; the *Nolans* also beseeching him not to leave them, who were in danger of the *Campanes*, if he departed. Thus it is reported: but if the water stayed his journey, such entreaties were needlesse. Neither is it like that the Dictator tarried at *Rome* so long, as till extreame famine had consumed the Garrison in *Casiline*. Wherefore it may be thought, that the Town was lost, because the *Romans* durst not adventure to raise the siege. Barrels of corn were sent by night, floating down the River; and when some of these, being carried awry by an Eddie of water, stuck among the Willows on the bank, whereby this manner of relief was discovered and prevented; *Gracchus* cast a great quantity of Nuts into the stream, which faintly sustained the poor besieged men. At length when all food was spent, and whatsoever grew green under the Walls was gathered for Sallets, the *Carthaginians* ploughed up the ground; whereon the besieged presently sowed Rape-seed. *Hannibal* seeing this, admired their patience; and said, That he meant not to stay at *Casiline* untill the Rapes were grown. Wherefore though hitherto he had refused to hearken unto any Composition,

as intending to make them an example to all others, by punishing their obstinacy; yet now he was content, to grant them their lives at an indifferent ranfome; which when they had paid, he quietly dismissed them, according to his promise. Seven hundred *Carthaginians* he placed in *Casiline*, as a Garrison for defence of the *Campanes*; unto whom he restored it. To the *Præfines* Souldiers great thanks were given, and loving rewards; among which they had offer, in regard of their vertue, to be made Citizens of *Rome*. But their present condition pleased them so well, that they chose rather to continue, as they were in *Præfeste*: which is no weak proof, of the good estate, where in the Cities flourished, that were subject to the *Roman* Government. This siege of *Casiline* was not a little beneficiall to the *Romans*: as having long detained *Hannibal*, and consumed much of his time, that might otherwise have been better spent. For winter overtook him long before he could dispatch the businesse: which how to quit with his honour he knew not, when he was once engaged. Therefore he wintred at *Capua*: where he refreshed his Army, or rather corrupted it, as all Historians report, and made it effeminate; though, effeminate as it was, he therewithall did often beat the *Romans* in following times, as shall appear hereafter.

## §. X.

So the great supply that was decreed at *Carthage* to be sent to *Hannibal* into *Italic*. How by the malice of *Hanno*, and sloth or parsimony of the *Carthaginians*, the supply was too long deferred. That the riches of the *Carthaginians* grew faster, than of the *Romans*. Of *Fabius* and other old *Roman* Historians; how partiall they were in their writings.

When *Mago*, the son of *Amilcar*, had spent some time about the taking in of such *Italians*, as fell from the *Romans* after the battell at *Canus*; his brother *Hannibal* sent for him to *Capua*, and thence dispatched him away to *Carthage*, with the joyfull message of Victory. He told the *Carthaginian* Senate with how many *Roman* Generals his brother had fought, what Consuls he had chased, wounded or slain, how the Rout *Romans*, that in the former war never shunned any occasion of fight, were now grown so calm, that they thought their Dictator *Fabius* the only good Captain, because he never durst adventure to come to battell; That not without reason their spirits were thus abated, since *Hannibal* had slain of them above two hundred thousand, and taken above fifty thousand prisoners. He further told them of the *Brutians*, *Apulians*, *Samnites*, *Lucans*, and other people of *Italy*, that followed the fortune of those great victories, had revolted unto the *Carthaginians*. Among the rest he magnified *Capua*, as a goodly City, and fit to be not only (as already it was) Head of all the *Capuans*, but the chief seat of their Dominion in *Italy*: and there he informed them, how lovingly his brother had been entertained, where he meant to rest that winter attending their supply. As for the war, he said it was even at an end, if they would now pursue it closely, and not give the *Romans* any breathing time, wherein to re-collect themselves, and repair their broken forces. He willed them to consider, that the war was far from home, in the Enemies Country: that so many battels had much diminished his brothers Army; that the Souldiers, who had so well deserved, ought to be considered with liberall rewards; and that it was not good to burden their new *Italian* friends, with exactions of money, corn, and other necessities; but that these things must be sent from *Carthage*; which the victory would requite with large amends. Finally, he caused the golden rings, taken from the fingers of the *Roman* Knights that were slain, to be poured out openly in the Court: which being measured, filled (as some say) three bushels; or (as others would rather have it) no more than one; adding, that by this might appear the greatnesse of the *Roman* calamity, for as much as none but the principall of that order, were accustomed to wear that ornament.

Who so considers the former *Punicke Warre*, may easily find, that the State of *Carthage* never did receive, in all the durance the coast, any such hopeful advertisements from their Captains abroad. Wherefore it is no marvel, if the errand of *Mago* found extraordinary welcome. In the vehemency of this joy, *Himilco*, a Senator adverse to the faction of *Hanno*, is said to have demanded of that great perswader unto peace with *Rome*, whether

\* Thus *Livie* reports it; and credible it is, that while *Rome* was poor; the bravery of private men was not allowed; that so great, as the Law would have permitted, though otherwise *Jus Annus* the wearing of the Ring, was the general privilege of the *Roman* Senators.

Whether he were still of opinion, that *Hannibal* should be yielded up unto the *Romans*, or whether he would forbid them to give thanks unto the gods, for this their good success. Hereunto though it be not likely that *Hanno* made the same formall answer, which *Livie* puts into his mouth, calling the *Carthaginian* Senators *Patres conscripti*, by a term proper to the *Romans*; and putting them in minde of his own shamefull overthrow received at the Ilands *Agates*: yet the summe of his speech appears to have been no lesse malicious than it is set down, forasmuch as *Hannibal* himself, at his departure out of *Italy*, exclaimed against the wickedness of this *Hanno*; saying, that his hatred against the *Barbines*, had oppressed their Family, when otherwise it could not, with the ruine of *Carthage*. Therefore it may well be, that he made such a jest of these victories, as is reported, saying, It ill befecemed him, who had vanquished the *Romans* to call for more help as if he had been beaten, or him, that had taken their camp, filled forsooth with spoil, to make request for meat & money. To these cavils, if answer were needful, it might be said, That other booty than of horses and slaves, little was to be found in the *Roman* camp: the best of the Souldiers carrying no other wealth into the field, than a few \* silver studs in the bridles and trappings of their horses. If *Hannibal* had taken any main convoy of money and provisions, going to supply all wants of a great army in some other Province, (as the two *Scipio's* are afterwards said to have done, when they wan the camp of *Asdrubal*, that carried along with him all the wealth of *Spain*, in his journey towards *Italie*) then might such an objection more justly have bin made unto his demand of a supply. But the most likely part of *Hanno* his Oration, and wherein he best might hope to prevail, contained a perswasion to use their fortune with moderation; and now to seek peace, whilst they had so much the better in war.

What would have been the issue of this counsell, if it had bin followed, it were not easie to say. For though it be likely, that the *Roman* pride would have brooked much indignity, in freeing *Italie* from the danger of war; yet it is not likely, that the faith, so often broken to the *Carthaginians* in former times, would have bin kept entire, when any opinion of good advantage had called for revenge of so many shamefull overthrows, since after this war ended, and a new league concluded, no submissive behaviour could preserve *Carthage* from ruine, longer, than untill such time as *Rome* was at leisure from all other wars. This counsell therefore of *Hanno*, though it might seem temperate, was indeed very pestilent; and served only to hinder the performance of a noble resolution. For it was concluded by a main consent of the Senate, that forty thousand *Numidians*, forty Elephants, and great abundance of silver, should be sent over to *Hannibal*: and that, besides these, twenty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, should be levied in *Spain*; not only to supply, as need should require, the Armies in their Province, but to be transported into *Italy*.

This great aid, had it been as carefully sent, as it was readily decreed, the *Roman* Historians would not have found cause, to taxe the retchlesse improvidence of *Hannibal*, in forbearing to march directly from *Canna* to *Rome*, or in refreshing his Army among the delights of *Capua*: the next years work would have finished the business, with lesse dangerous adventure; and the pleasures, which his men enjoyed among the *Campanians*, would have been commended, as rewards by him well thought upon, wherewith to animate both them and others, that were to be employed in the following Warre. But either the too much carelesse of those, that were loth to make haste in laying out their money, before extreme necessity required it; or the crafty malice of *Hanno*, and his fellows, working upon the private humours of men, that had more feeling of their own commodity, than sense of the publick need; utterly perverted, and made unprofitable in the performance, the order that had been so well set down. The \* Elephants were sent: and some money peradventure, uncertain it is how long after. But those great forces of threescore thousand foot, and four thousand horse, came not into *Italy*, till much was lost of that which already had been gotten, and a great part of the old *Carthaginian* Army, was first consumed by time, and sundry accidents of warre. Only some small numbers, no way answering unto the proportion decreed, were sent into *Spain*; and the journey of *Asdrubal* thence through *France* into *Italy* much talked of, but he not enabled thereunto, till many years were past, and the *Romans* had recovered their strength.

Here we may note, what great riches the *Carthaginians* drew into their City, both

by the Tributes received from their subjects, and by their wealthy Trade of Merchandize. For it is not long, since the Warre of the Mercenaries, and the perfidious tyranny of the *Romans*, extorting in time of greatest necessity twelve hundred talents; had exceedingly impoverished *Carthage*: which was before brought into great want, even by the expence of so much money, as was to be disbursed for redeeming of peace, after the losse of *Agates*. Yet we see, what great Armies of *Numidians*, and *Spaniards*, besides those already on foot, are appointed to the service in *Italy*, and how little the *Carthaginians* fear the want of money in these chargeable undertakings: whereas the *Romans* on the other side, having three or four years together been forced to some extraordinary cost, are faine to go upon credit, even for the price of those slaves, which they bought of their own Citizens to arme for their defence. Such advantage in means to enrich their Treasury, had the wealthy Merchants of *Carthage*, trading in all parts of the *Mediterran* Sea, even from *Tyrrus* their Mother-City in the bottome of the straights unto the great Ocean, above the *Romans*: who lived on the fruits of their ground, and received their Tributes from people following the same course of life. When time therefore was come, that the hatred of *Rome* found leisure to shew it selfe, in the destruction of *Carthage*; the impudence of *Roman* falsehood, in seeking an honest colour wherewith to shadow the intended breach of faith, discovered plainly whence the jealousie was bred, that this mighty City would againe rebell. For the *Carthaginians*, having given up hostages, even before the *Roman* Army did set forth, to performe whatsoever should be enjoyned them, with condition, that their City might not be destroyed; and having accordingly, when they were so required, yielded up all their weapons, and engines of Warre; the *Romans* told them plainly, That the City of *Carthage*, which was the body of the Citizens, should be friendly dealt withall, but the Town must needs be demolished, and removed into some other place, that should be twelve miles distant from the Sea. For (said the *Romans*) This Trade of Merchandize, by which ye now live, is not so fit for peaceable men, such as ye promise to become hereafter, as is the Trade of Husbandry; an wholesome kind of life, and enduring men with many laudable qualities which enable their bodies, and make them very apt for conversation. This villainous dealing of the *Romans*, though figured with glowing words, plainly shewes, what good observation the elder *Cato* had made of the hasty growth of *Carthage* in riches. For, when being demanded his opinion in the Senate about any matter whatsoever it were, he added still this conclusion, *Thus I think, and that Carthage should be destroyed*; He may seem, not only to have had regard unto that present wealth, which at his being there he had found in the City, but much more unto these times, and the great height whereunto it rose, even suddenly as we see, out of many calamities, whilst the *Romans* thought, that it had not been in case to dare so terrible a War.

But as the *Carthaginians*, in gathering wealth, were more industrious and skilfull than the *Romans*; so came they far short of them in the honourable care of the publick good: having every one, or most of them, a more principal regard of his own private benefit. This made them (besides the negligence commonly found in victors) when the first heat of their affection (wherein they concluded to pursue the war strongly) was over-past, go more leisurely to work, than had been requisite in the execution. It was easie for *Hanno* to perwade covetous men, that they should first of all defend their own in *Spain*. This might be done with little charges. Afterwards, when that Province was secured, they might send an Army into *Italy*; so going to work orderly by degrees. For it were no wisdom to commit all the strength of the Common-wealth to one hazzard of fortune, against the enemies; or (which perhaps were worse) to the government of an ambitious man, and his brethren; who having once (if they could so do) finished the war, might easily make \* *Hannibal* a King, and subdue *Carthage*, with the forces that they had given him to the conquest of *Rome*.

By such malicious working of *Hanno*, and by their own slacknesse, incredulity, dullness, or niggardize, the *Carthaginians* were perswaded rather to make small disbursements in *Spain*, than to set up all their rest at once in *Italy*. Yet was it indeed impossible to hold a Country of so large extent, and so open a coast as that of *Spain*, free from all incursion of the Enemy: especially the affection of the Naturals being (as in a new conquest) ill established. A better way therefore it had been, to make a running Warre, by which

\* Liv. l. 22.

\* Liv. l. 26.

\* Off such ambition *Hanno* directly accused *Hannibal*, saying, that he made war, that he might live compassed with Legions; as knowing no other way to make himself a King, Liv. l. 21.



which the *Romans* might have been found occupied, even with the ordinary *Carthaginian* Garrisons or some little addition thereunto. For if it were thought meet, to defer the prosecution of their main intendment against *Rome* it self, until such time as every little thorne were pulled out of the sides of so great a Province, then must *Emporia* have been besieged and forced: which, by reason of alliance with the *Massilians*, gave unto the *Romans*, at all times when they pleased, a ready and secure Harbour. But the town of *Emporia*, was too strong to be wonne in haste: it had long defended it self against the *Barbarians*, having not above four hundred paces of wall to the main Land, and exceedingly well fortified: a great *Spanish* Town of the same name, lying without it, that was three miles in compass, very strong likewise, and friend unto the *Gracians*, though not over much trusted. Wherefore to force this town of *Emporia*, that was, besides the proper strength, like to be so well assisted by the *Massilians*, *Romans*, and some *Spaniards*, would have been a work of little lesse difficulty, than was the *Roman* warre (in appearance) after the battell at *Canna*: yea, it had been in effect none other, than to alter the feat of the war; which *Hannibal* had already fixed, with better judgement, near unto the gates of *Rome*. The difficulty of this attempt, being such as caused it altogether to be forborn; great folly it was, to be much troubled about expelling the *Romans* utterly out of *Spain*: whom they might more easily have diverted thence, and drawn home to their own doors, by making strong war upon their City. For even so the *Romans* afterwards removed *Hannibal* into *Africk*, by sending an Army to *Carthage*; and by taking the like course, they now endeavoured to change the feat of the war transferring it out of *Italy* into *Spain*. But the private affections of men, regarding the common good no otherwise, than as it is accessory to their own purposes, did make them easily wink at opportunities, and hope, that somewhat would fall out well of it self, though they set not to their helping hands. *Hanno* was a malicious wretch: yet they that thought him so, were well enough contented to hearken unto his discourses, as long as they were plausible, and tended to keep the purse full. In the mean while they suffered *Hannibal*, and all the noble house of *Amilcar*, to weary themselves in travell for the Common wealth: which all *Carthage* in general highly commended, but weakly assisted; as if the industry of these *Barchines* had bin somewhat more than needfull. Surely the *Carthaginians*, in general, were far less honourable than the people of *Rome*: not only in government of their subject Provinces, but in administration of their own estates; few of them preferring the respect of the Weal publick above their private interest. But as they thrived little in the end, by their parsimony used toward their own Mercenaries, when the former *Roman* war was finished: so the conclusion of this war present, will make them complain, with feeling sighes, of their negligence in supplying *Hannibal*, after the victory at *Canna*; when gladly they would give all their Treasures, to redeem the opportunity, that now they let passe, as if it were cost enough to send a few handfuls into *Spain*.

That both the *Spanish* business, and the state of *Africk* it self, depended wholly, or for the most part, upon successe of things in *Italie*, the course of actions following will make manifest. Particularly, how matters were ordered in *Spain* by the *Carthaginian* Governours, it is very hard, and almost impossible to set down. For, though we must not reprehend, in that worthy Historian *Livie*, the tender love of his own Country, which made him give credit unto *Fabius* and others; yet must we not, for his sake, believe those lyes, which the unpartial judgement of *Polybius* hath condemned, in the Writers that gave them originall. It were needlesse to rehearse all that may be found in *Polybius*, concerning the untruth of that *Roman* Historian *Fabius*. One example may suffice. He saith of *Amilcar* and his men at *Eryx*, in the former war, That, having clean spent their strength, and being even broken with many miseries, they were glad to submit themselves unto the *Romans*. Contrary hereunto we finde in the life of *Amilcar*, set down by *Amilius Probus*. That *Eryx* was in such sort held by the *Carthaginians*, that it seemed to be in as good condition, as if in those parts there had not been any war. These words, being referred to the brave resolution of the *Carthaginian* souldiers, and the singular vertue of their Generall, infusing such spirit into them, may be taken as not over liberall. For in the treaty of peace between *Amilcar* and *Cainus* when the *Roman* first of all required, that this Garrison of *Eryx* should lay down their Arms and forsake *Sicill*, threatening, that otherwise he would not talk of any composition:

*Amilcar*

*Amilcar* boldly bad him chuse, whether he would talk of it or no; for that the Armes which his Country had put into his hands to use against her enemies, it was not his purpose to yeeld up unto them. Now since the *Romans*, contrary to their custome upon like advantages, were content to let *Amilcar* have his wil, & not to stand with him upon point of honour, whilst otherwise they might quietly rid their hands of him; plain enough it is, that they were farr from thinking him a man contumacious with miseries, as *Fabius* would have him seem. Hereunto agrees the relation of *Polybius*: who flatly, and by name, chargeth *Fabius* with untruth, saying, that howsoever *Amilcar* and his Souldiers had endured all extremity, yet they behaved themselves as men that had no sense thereof; and were as far from being either vanquished or tyred, as were their Enemies. Such being the difference between *Fabius* (as also perhaps between other old Writers of the *Roman* story) & those that had more regard of truth, than of flattering the mighty city of *Rome*: we must take it in good part, that howsoever *Livie* introduceth *Hanno*, in one place, joyning very foolishly his own shamefull overthrow at the Ilands \* *Agates*, with the great services of *Amilcar* at *Eryx*, as if both of them had had a like event; yet elsewhere he forbearth not to put a more likely tale (though with as impudent a commemoration of his own unhappy conduct) into the same *Hanno* his mouth, making him say, That the affairs of *Carthage* went never better, than a little before the losse of their Fleet in that battail at Sea: wherein himself was Generall. Now, concerning the doings of the *Scipio's* in *Spain*, there is cause to wish, that this *Fabius*, with *Val. Antias*, & others of the like stamp, had either written (if they could not write more temperately) nothing at all; or that the tender affection of *Livie* to his *Rome*, had not caused him to think too well of their relations, which are such as follow.

# §. XI.

Strange reports of the Roman victories in Spain, before Asdrubal the son of Amilcar followed thence his brother Hannibal into Italy.

It hath been shewed already, how *P. Cornelius Scipio* the Consul returning from *Gaulle* into *Italy*, to encounter with *Hannibal* at his descent from the *Alpes*, sent before him his brother *Cneus*, with part of his Fleet and Army, into *Spain*. Two *Roman* Legions, with fourteen thousand foot of the Confederates, and twelve hundred horse, had been allotted unto the Consul, therewith to make war in *Spain* against *Hannibal*: who, since he was marching into *Italy* with the strength of his Army, *P. Scipio* beleaved, that a good part of these his own forces might well be spared from the *Spanish* Expedition; & therefore made bold to carry some of the number back with him, sending on his brother with the rest, as his Lieutenant. *Publius* himself remained in *Italy* all the time of his Consulship: which being expired, he was sent Proconsul into *Spain* by the Senate, with an Army of eight thousand men, and a Fleet of thirty Gallies.

The Acts of these two Brethren in their Province, were very great; and as they are reported, somewhat marvellous. For they continually prevailed in *Spain*, against the *Carthaginians*: whom they vanquished in so many battails, and withdrew from their Alliance so many of the *Spaniards* their Confederates; that we have cause to wonder, how the enemy could so often finde means to repair his forces, and return strong into the field. But as the *Romans*, by pretending to deliver the Country from the tyranny of *Carthage*, might easily win unto their Confederacy, as many as were galled with the *African* yoke, and durst adventure to break it: so the ancient reputation of the first Conquerors might serve to arme the Naturals against these Invaders; and to reclaim those, that had revolted unto the *Romans*, were it only by the memory of such ill successe, as the like rebellions in former times had found. Hereto may be added the *Carthaginian* Treasure: which easily raised Souldiers, among those valiant, but (in that Age) poor, and gold-thirsty Nations. Neither was it of small importance, that so many of the *Spaniards* had their children, kinsmen, and friends, abroad with *Hannibal* in his *Italian* Wars; or serving the *Carthaginians* in *Africk*. And peradventure, if we durst be bold to say it, the victories of the *Scipio's* were neither so many, nor so great, as they are set out by *Livie*. This we may be bold to say, that the great Captain *Fabius*, or *Livie* in his person, maketh an objection unto *Scipio*, which neither *Scipio*, nor *Livie* for him, doth

doth answer, That if Asdrubal were vanquished, as Scipio would say, by him in Spain: strange it was, and as little to his honour, as it had been extremely dangerous to Rome, that the same vanquished man should invade Italy. And it is indeed an incredible narration, That Asdrubal, being enclosed on all sides, and not knowing how to escape out of battell, save only by the steep descent of Rocks, over a great River that lay at his back, ran away with all his money, Elephants, and broken troupes, over Tagus, directly towards the Pyrenees, and so toward Italy; upon which he fell with more than three score thousand armed Souldiers. Neither do I see, how it hangs well together, That he chose a piece of ground very defensible, but most incommodious for his retreat, if he should happen to be vanquished; and yet, that he sent all his money and Elephants away before him, as not intending to abide the enemy: Or how it could be true, that these his Elephants, being so sent before, could hinder the Romans (for so have they said to have done in the last battell between him and Scipio) from breaking into his Camp. Wherefore we can no more than be sorry, that all Carthaginian records of this War, and Spanish, (if there were any) being utterly lost, we can know no more thereof, than what it hath pleased the Romans to tell us: unto whom it were no wisdom to give too much credit. In this regard, I will summarily run over the doings of the Scipio's in Spain; not greatly insisting on particulars, whereof there is no great certainty.

Cn. Cornelius landed at Emporia, an Haven town, not far within the Pyrenees, retaining still the same name with little inflexion. That by the fame of his clemency he allured many Nations to become subject unto Rome, as the story begins of him, I could easily believe, if I understood by what occasion they had need to use his clemency, or he to give such famous example thereof, being a meer stranger, and having no jurisdiction in the Country. Yet it is certain, that he was a man very courteous, and one that could well insinuate himself into the love of the Barbarians; among whom, his dexterity in practice had the better success, for that he seemed to have none other errand, than setting them at liberty. This pretext availed with some: others were to be hired with money: and some he compelled to yield by force or fear; especially when he had won a battail against Hanno. Into all Treaties of accord, made with these people, likely it is, that he againest to insert this Article, which the Romans in their Alliances never forgot, unless in long times past, and when they dealt with the Carthaginians, or their Superiors, *Majestatem Pop. Rom. comiter conservent*, which is, as Tullie interprets it, That they should gently (or kindly) uphold the Majesty of the People of Rome. This was in appearance nothing troublesome: yet implied it indeed an obscure covenant of subjection. And in this respect it may be true, That the Spaniards became *ditionis Romanæ*, of the Roman jurisdiction; though hereafter they will say, they had no such meaning. That part of the Country wherein Scipio landed, was newly subdued by Hannibal in his passage toward Italy; and therefore the more easily shaken out of obedience. Particularly in the Bargutians; Hannibal had found at his coming among them such an apprehension of the Roman greatness, as made him suspect, that any light occasion would make them start from the Carthaginians. Wherefore he not only appointed Hanno Governour over them, as over the rest of the Province between Iberus and the Pyrenees, but made him also their Lord, that is, (as I conceive it, for I do not think he gave the Principality of their Country unto Hanno and his Heirs.) He made him not onely Lieutenant-generall over them, in matters of War, and things concerning the holding them in obedience to Carthage; but took from them all inferior Officers of their own, leaving them to be governed by Hanno at his discretion. These therefore had good cause to rejoyce at the coming of Scipio: with whom others also (no doubt) found reasons to joyn; it being the custome of all conquered Nations in hatred of their present Lords, to throw themselves indifferently into the protection of others, that many times prove worse than the former. So were the Neapolitans, and Milanais, in the age of our Grand-fathers, weary by turns of the Spaniards and French, as more sensible still of the present evill which they felt, then regardfull of the greater mischief, whereinto they ran by seeking to avoid it. This bad affection of this Province, would not suffer Hanno to temporize. Ten thousand foot, and a thousand horse, Hannibal had left unto him: besides which, it is like, that some forces he was able to raise out of his Province. Therefore he adventured a battail with Scipio; wherein he was overthrown and taken. Following this victory, Scipio besieged *Stisium*, a town hard by, and won it,

it. But Asdrubal having passed Iberus, and coming too late to the relief of Hanno, with eight thousand foot, and a thousand horse, fell upon the Roman Sea-forces, that lay not far from *Tarracon*, whom he found carelesse, as after a victory, roaving abroad in the country; and with great slaughter drave them aboard their ships. This done, he ran up into the County, where he withdrew the *Ilergetes* from the Roman party, though they had given Hostages to Scipio. Scipio in the mean season was gone to visit and aide his Fleet: where having set things in order, he returned back, and made toward Asdrubal; who durst not abide his coming, but withdrew himself again over Iberus. So the *Ilergetes* were compelled by force; having lost *Athanasia* their chief City, to pay a fine to the Romans, and increase the number of their Hostages. The *Astetani* likewise, Confederates of the Carthaginians, were besieged in their chief Town: which they defended thirty dayes; hoping, in vain, that the sharp Winter, and great abundance of Snow that fell, would have made the Romans to dislodge. But they were fain at length to yeeld: and for this their oblinacy, they were amerced twenty talents of silver. During the siege, the *Lacetani* came to help their distressed Neighbours, and were beaten home by Scipio, leaving twelve thousand of their Company dead behind them. I cannot but wonder, how these *Lacetani*, that are said to be the first which embraced the friendship of Scipio, should, without any caute remembered, become Carthaginian on the sudden, in the next newes that we hear of them. As also it is strange, that all the Sea-coast Northward of Iberus, having lately become voluntarily *ditionis Romanæ*, subject unto Rome, should, in continuance of the Story, after a few lines, hold War against Scipio, without any resistance of the Carthaginians. Neither can I believe, that Asdrubal, as it were by a charme, stirred up the *Ilergetes*, making them lay aside all care of their Hostages, and take Armes in his quarrell; whilst himself had not the daring to stand against Scipio, but ran away, and saved himself beyond Iberus. *Philinus* perhaps, or some Carthaginian Writer, would have told it thus: That Scipio adventuring too far into the Country, was beaten by Asdrubal back to his ships, whence he durst not stir, untill Winter came on: at what time the Carthaginian returned into the heart of his Province, leaving some few Garrisons to defend those places, that after Scipio won, by returning upon them, unlooked for through a deep Snow. As for the *Lacetani*, *Ilergetes*, and the rest, we may reasonably think, that they fought their own benefit: helping themselves one while by the Romans against the Carthaginians; and contrariwise, upon sense of injuries received, or apprehension of more grievous tyranny, under which they feared to be brought by these new Masters, hearkening again unto the comfortable promises of those, that had ruled them before. For that it was their intent to live under their own Country Lawes, and not under Governours sent from Rome or Carthage, their demeanour in all Ages following may testify: even from henceforth unto the dayes of Augustus Cesar, till when they were never thoroughly conquered.

The year following this, Cn. Scipio had a victory against the Carthaginians in fight at Sea; or rather came upon them unlooked for, while they rode at Anchor, moit of their men being on shore. All their ships, that ran not too farre on ground, he took: and thereby grew Master of the whole coast; landing at pleasure, and doing great hurt in all places that were not well defended. After this victory, above one hundred and twenty Nations, or petty Estates in Spain, are said to have submitted themselves unto the Romans, or given Hostages: whereby Asdrubal was compelled to flye into the utmost corners of the land, and hide himself in *Lucania*. Yet it follows, that the *Ilergetes* did again rebell; that Asdrubal hereupon came over Iberus; and that Scipio (though having easily vanquished the *Ilergetes*) went not forth to meet him, but stirred up against him the *Celiberians*: that lately were become his subjects, and had given him hostages. These took from the Carthaginians three Towns, and vanquished him in two battails; wherein they flew fifteen thousand of his men, and took four thousand prisoners. Then arrived P. Scipio, with the supply before mentioned: and hence forward the two brethren joyntly administrated the businels in Spain.

The Carthaginians being occupied in the *Celiberian Warre*; the two Scipio's did hand cunctanter, without both fear or doubt, passe over Iberus, and besieged *Saguntum*. Little cause of doubt had they, if Cn. had already subdued many Nations beyond it, and, among many others, the same *Celiberians*, that with their proper forces were able to vanquish Asdrubal.

*Asdrubal*, *Boslar*, the Governor of *Saguntum*, a simple man, suffered himself to be persuaded by one *Acedix* a *Spaniard*, that the only way to get the favour and hearty good will of the country, was by freely restoring unto them their hostages; as resting without any pledge, assured of their faith. But the crafty *Spaniard*, being trusted with this message and restitution of the hostages, carried them all to the *Roman* Generals: perfwading them, as he had done *Boslar*, to make the Liberality their own. Hereby the *Romans* purchased much love, if the tale were true; and if it were not rather true, as afterward, and ere this we finde that all the *Spanish* Hostages were left in new *Carthage*. I am weary of rehearsing so many particularities, whereof I can believe so few. But since we find no better certainties, we must content our selves with these.

The year following was like unto this: *Asdrubal* must be beaten again. The two *Scipio's* divide their forces: *Cn.* makes war by Land, *P.* by Sea. *Asdrubal*, with much labour and entreaty, hath gotten four thousand foot, and five hundred horse out of *Africk*: He repairs his Fleet, and provides every way to make resistance. But all his chief Sea-men, and Masters of his Ships, revolt unto the *Romans*: because they had been chidden the last year for their negligence, which had betrayed the Navie. The revolt of these ship-masters animates to rebellion the *Carpetians*, or *Carpetani*, an In-land people about *Toledo*, in the very Center of *Spain*. These do much mischief, so that *Asdrubal* is faine to make a journey to them. His sudden coming cuts off some of them, that were found scattered abroad in the fields. But they, making head, so valiantly assaile him, that they drive him for very fear, to encamp himself strongly on an high piece of ground; whence he dares not come forth to give them battail. So they take a Town by force, wherein he had laid up all his provisions; and shortly make themselves Masters of the Country round about. This good successe breeds negligence; for which they dearly pay. *Asdrubal* comes upon them, takes them unprepared, beats them, kills the most of them, and dispereth the rest; so that the whole Nation yeeldeth to him the next day. Then come directions from *Carthage*, that *Asdrubal* should lead his Army forth into *Italy*, which we may wonder, why the *Carthaginians* would appoint him to do, if they had been informed by his letters in what hard case he was; and had so weakly supplied him, as is shewed before. But thus we find it reported: and that upon the very rumour of this his journey, almost all *Spain* was ready to fall to the *Romans*. *Asdrubal* therefore sends word presently to *Carthage*, That this must not be so: or, if they will needs have it so, that then they must send him a successor, and well attended with a strong Army, which to employ they should finde work more than enough; such notable men were the *Roman* Generals. But the Senate of *Carthage* is not much moved with this excuse; *Asdrubal* must needs be gone: *Himilco*, with such forces as are thought expedient for that service, both by land and sea, is sent to take the charge of *Spain*. Wherefore *Asdrubal* hath now no more to do, than to furnish himself with store of money, that he might have wherewithall to win the friendship of the *Gauls*; through whose Countries he must passe, as *Hannibal* had done before him. The *Carthaginians* were greatly to blame, for not remembering to ease him of his care. But since it can be no better, he layes great Impositions upon all the *Spaniards* his subjects: and having gotten together as much treasure as he could, onward he marcheth toward *Iberus*. The *Scipio's* hearing these newes, are careful how to arrest him on the way. They besiege *Ibera* (so called of the Rivers name running by it) the richest town in all those quarters, that was confederate with *Asdrubal*: who thereupon steps aside to relieve it. The *Romans* meet him and fight a battell with him: which they win the more easily, for that the *Spaniards*, his followers, had rather be vanquished at home, than get the victory, & afterwards be haled into *Italy*. Great numbers, are slain: and few should have escaped, but that the *Spaniards* ran away ere the battails were fully joyned. Their Camps so the *Romans* take and spoil: whereby (questionlesse) they are marvellously enriched; all the money that could be raked together in *Spain* being carried along in this *Italian* expedition. This dayes event joynes all *Spain* to the *Romans*, if any part of the Country stood in doubt before; and puts *Asdrubal* so far from all thought of travelling into *Italy*, that it leaves him small hope of keeping himself safe in *Spain*. Of these exploits advertisements is sent to *Rome*, and Letters to the Senate, from *P.* and *Cn. Scipio*, whereof the Contents are; That they have neither money, apparell, nor bread, wherewith to sustain their Army and Fleet; That all is wanting: so as unlesse they may be supplied from

Rome

*Rome*, they can neither hold their forces together, nor tarry any longer in the Province. These Letters come to *Rome* in an evil season; the State being scarcely able, after the loss at *Canna*, to help it self at home. Yet relief is sent: how hardly, and how much to the commendations of that love and care, which the private Citizens of *Rome* bare unto the Common-wealth, shall be inserted elsewhere into the relation of things whereof the truth is less questionable. At the coming of this supply, the two *Scipio's* pursue *Asdrubal*, and hunt him out of his lurking holes. What else can we think, that remember the last newes of him, and how fearfully he mistrusted his own safety? They find him, and *Magus* and *Amilcar* the son of *Bomilcar*, with an Army of threecore thousand men, besieging *Illiturgi*: (which the learned *Orelius*, and others, probably conjecture to have stood, where *Carinenna* is now in the Kingdome of *Aragon*; for there was *Illiturgi*, afterwards called *Forum Julii*, quite another way) a Town of the *Illerges* their nearest Neighbours, for having revolted unto the *Romans*. The town is greatly distressed; but most of all, for want of victuals. The *Romans* therefore brake through between the Enemies Camps, with terrible laughter of all that resist them: and having victualled the place, encourage the townsmen to defend their wals as stoutly, as they should anon behold them fighting manfully with the besiegers, in their behalf. So they issue forth, about sixteen thousand against threecore thousand: and killing more of the enemies, than themselves were in number, drave all the three *Carthaginian* Commanders, every one out of his quarter; and took that day, besides prisoners and other booty, fifty and eight Ensignes.

The *Carthaginian* Army, being thus beaten from *Illiturgi*, fall upon *Incibili*, that stood a little Southward from the mouth of *Iberus*. The *Spaniards* are blamed, as too greedy of earning money by war, for thus re-inforcing the broken *Carthaginians*. But it may be wondered, whence the *Carthaginians* had money to pay them: since *Asdrubal* was lately driven to poll the Countrey, wanting money of his own; and being beaten in his journey, had lost his wealthy carriages, when his Camp was taken after the battell by *Ibera*. Howsoever it happens, the *Carthaginians* (according to their custom) are beaten again at *Incibili*: where there were of them above thirteen thousand slain, and above three thousand taken; besides two and forty Ensigns, and nine Elephants. After this, (in a manner) all the people of *Spain* fell from them unto the *Romans*. Thus could *Fabius*, *Valerius*, *Autius*, or some other Historian, to whom *Livie* gave credit, conquer all *Spain* twice in one year, by winning famous victories, whereof these good Captains, *P.* and *Cn. Scipio*, perhaps were not aware.

The *Romans* notwithstanding this large access of Dominion, winter on their own side of *Iberus*. In the beginning of the next year, great Armies of the *Spaniards* rise against *Asdrubal*; and are overthrown by him. *P. Scipio*, to help these his friends, is forced to make great haste over the River. At *Castrum Altum*, a place in the midway between new *Carthage* and *Saguntum*, famous by the death of the great *Amilcar*, *Publius Scipio* incampeth: and stores the place with victuals, being strong and defensible; as intending to make it his seat for a while. But the Country round about is too full of Enemies: the *Carthaginian* horse have charged the *Romans* in their march, and are gone off clear; falling also upon some stragglers, or such as lagged behinde their fellows in march; they have cut off two thousand of them. Hereupon it is thought behoefull, to retire unto some place more assured. So *Publ.* withdraws himself unto *Mons victoria*: that rising somewhat Eastward from *Incibili*, over-looketh the Southerne Out-let of *Iberus*. Thither the *Carthaginians* pursue him: His brother *Cn.* repairs unto him; and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gefeo*, with a full Army, arrives to help his Companions. As they lie thus near incamped together, *P. Scipio* with some light-armed, going closely to view the places thereabouts, is discovered by the enemies: who are like to take him, but that he withdraws himself to an high piece of ground; where they besiege him, until his brother *Cn.* fetch him off. After this (but I know not why) *Castulo*, a great city of *Spain*, whence *Hannibal* had taken him a wife, joyneth with the *Romans*; though being farre distant from them, and seated on the head of the River *Betis*. Nevertheless the *Carthaginians* passe over *Iberus*, to besiege *Illiturgi* again, wherein lodgeth a *Roman* garriſon, hoping to win it by famine. We may justly wonder, what should move them to neglect the rebellion of *Castulo*, yea and the *Roman* Army lying so close by them, and to seek adventures further off, in that very place, wherein they had been so grievously beaten

Bbbbb

the

the year before. But thither they goe: and thither follows them *Cn. Scipio* with one Legion? who enters the Town by force, breaks cut upon them the next day, and in two battels kills above twelve thousand, and takes more than a thousand of them prisoners, with six and thirty Ensigns. This victory (doubtlesse) is remarkable: considering that the greatest *Roman* Legion at this time, consisted of no more than five thousand men. The vanquished *Carthaginians* beseege *Bigarra*: but that siege is also raised by *Cn. Scipio*. Thence the *Carthaginians* remove to *Manda*, where the *Romans* are soon at their heels. There is a great battail fought, that lasteth four hours, wherein the *Romans* get a notable victory: and a more notable would have gotten, had not *Cn. Scipio* been wounded. Thirty nine Elephants are killed, and twelve thousand men; three thousand prisoners taken, and seven and fifty Ensigns. The *Carthaginians* flee to *Auriges*; and the *Romans* pursue them. *Cn. Scipio* in a Litter is carried into the field, and vanquished the *Carthaginians* again: but kills not half so many of them, as before, good cause why, for there are fewer of them left to fight. Notwithstanding all these overthrowes, the *Spaniards*, a people feared even by nature to let war on foot, quickly fill up the broken troupes of *Asdrubal*, who having also hired some of the *Gauls*, adventures once more to try his fortune with the *Romans*. But he is beaten again: and loseth eight thousand of his men; besides Prisoners, Elephants, Ensignes, and other appurtenances. After so many victories, the *Romans* are even ashamed to leave *Saguntum* enthralled unto the *Carthaginians*, since, in behalf of that City, they had at first entred into this war. And well may we think it strange, that they had not recovered it long before, since we may remember, that long before this they had won all the Country once and again. But it must not be forgotten, that they had ere now besieged *Saguntum*; and were fain (as appears) to go their way without it: so as they need not to blush, for having so long forborne to do that, which ere now they had attempted, but were unable to performe. At the present they won *Saguntum*: and restored the possession thereof unto such of the poor dispersed Citizens, as they can finde out. They also waste and destroy the Country of the *Turdetani*, that had ministred unto *Hannibal* matter of quarrel against the *Saguntines*. This last action (questionlesse) was much to their honour; and wherein we may be assured, that the *Carthaginians* would have disturbed them if they had been able.

But overlooking now this long continuance of great victories, which the *Romans* have gotten in *Spain*, other print or token of all their brave exploits, we can perceive none, than this recovery of *Saguntum*: excepting the stopping of *Asdrubals* journey; which was indeed of greatest importance, but appertaining to their own defence. For they have landed at *Emporia*, an Haven town, built and peopled by a Colony of the *Phoceans*, kin to the *Masilians*, friends to the *Romans*; They have easily wonne to their party, lost, recovered, and lost again, some petty bordering Nations of the *Spaniards*, that are carried one while by perswasion, other-whiles by force, and sometimes by their own unfetled passions; and now finally they have won a Town, whereof the *Carthaginians* held inire possession, who had rooted out the old inhabitants. Wherefore we may easily believe, that when they took *Saguntum* (if they took it not by surprise; which is to be suspected, since in this Action we finde no particulars remembered, as when the same place was taken by *Hannibal*) they had gotten the better of their Enemies in some notable fight. In like sort also must we think, that all those battails lately remembered, after every one of which *Asdrubal* late down before some place, that had rebelled, or seemed ready to rebel, were prosperous unto the *Carthaginians*. For it is not the custome of Armies vanquished, to carry the war from Town to Town, and beleaguer Cities of their Enemies; but to fortifie themselves within their own places of strength, and therein to attend the levy and arrivall of new supplies. And surely, if the *Romans* had been absolute Masters of the field, when they won *Saguntum*, they would not have consumed a whole year following, in practising only with the *Celtiberians* the next adjoining people. Yet made they this, little lesse than two years business. Of these *Celtiberians* we hear before, That they have yeelded up themselves unto the *Romans*; for security of their faith, given Hostages to *Scipio*; and at his appointment, made warre against the *Carthaginians*, with their proper forces. Wherefore it is strange, that they are now thus hardly wrought; and not without expresse condition of a great summe, hired to serve in the *Roman* camp. How this may hold together I cannot perceive;

perceive; unless perhaps in those daies it were the *Roman* custome, or rather the custome of some bad Author whom *Livie* follows, to call every messenger, or straggler, that entered their camp, an Hostage of that people from whom he came.

The *Celtiberians* at length, hired with great rewards, send an Army of thirty thousand to help the *Romans*: out of which, three hundred the fittest men are chosen, and carried into *Italy*, there to deal with their Country-men that follow *Hannibal* in his wars. But if any of these three hundred return back into *Spain*, it is to be feared, that he brings with him such newes of the riches and welfare of *Hannibals* men, that all his fellows at home are the less unwilling to follow *Asdrubal*, when he shall next have a desire to lead them into *Italy*. Hercof we finde more than probability, when these mercenary *Celtiberians* meet the *Carthaginian* Army in the field. The two *Scipio's*, presuming on this access of strength, divide their forces, and seek out the Enemies, who lie not far off with three Armies. *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Amilcar*, is nearest at hand; even among the *Celtiberians*, at *Anitorgis*. With him *Cn. Scipio* doubts not to take good order: but the fear is, that this one part of the *Carthaginian* forces being destroyed; *Mago* the son of *Gefco*, leaving the newes, will make use of their distance, which is five dayes march, and, by running into the furthest parts of the Country, save themselves from being overtaken. *Publius* therefore must make the more haste, and take with him the better souldiers, that is, two parts of the old *Roman* Army; leaving the third part, and all the *Celtiberians*, to his brother. He that hath the longer journey to make, comes somewhat the sooner to his lives end. *Mago*, and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gefco*, are not studying how to run away: they finde no such necessity. They joyne their forces together; meet with *Publius Scipio*; and lay at him so hardly, that hee is driven to keep himself close within his Trenches: wherein he thinks himself not well assured. Especially he is vexed by *Masaniissa*, Prince of the *Masseyli*, *Namidiens*, bordering upon *Mauritania*, in the Region called now *Tremizen*: to whom the chief honour of this service is ascribed, for that he becomes afterward Confederate with the *Romans*. In this dangerous case, *P. Scipio* gets intelligence, that *Indibilis* a Spanish Prince, is coming with seven thousand and five hundred of the *Sussetani*, to joyn with his Enemies. Fearing therefore to be straight shut up, and besieged, he issues forth by night, to meet with *Indibilis* upon the way, leaving *T. Fonteius* his Lievtenant, with a small company to defend the camp. He meets with *Indibilis*, but is not able, according to his hope, to defeat him at the first encounter. The fight continues so long, that the *Namidian* horse appear (whom he thought to have been ignorant of his departure) and fall upon the *Romans* on all sides: neither are the *Carthaginians* far behinde; but come so fast upon him in Rear, that *P. Scipio*, uncertain which way to turne, yet fighting and animating his men, where need most requireth, is struck through with a lance, and slain: very few of his Army escaping the same destiny, through benefit of the dark night. The like end hath *Cn. Scipio* within nine and twenty dayes after. At his meeting with *Asdrubal*, the *Celtiberian* Mercenaries all forsake him; pretending that they had war in their owne Country. If *Anitorgis*, where *Asdrubal* then lay, were, as *Ortelius* following *Beuterus* takes it, a *Celtiberian* town; this was no vain pretence, but an apparent truth. But we may justly believe, that they were won by *Asdrubal*, and easily perswaded to take as much money for not fighting, as they should have had for hazarding their lives. *Cn. Scipio* therefore being unable to stay them, and no less unable, without their help, either to resist the enemy, or to joyn with his brother, maketh a very violent retreat; herein only differing from plain flight, that he keeps his men together. *Asdrubal* presseth hard upon him: and *Mago*, with *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Gefco*, having made an end of *Publius*, hasten to dispatch his brother after him. *Scipio* steals from them all by night; but is overtaken the next day by their horse, and arrested, in an open place of hard stony ground, where grows not so much as a shrub, unfit for defence of his Legions against such enemies. Yet a little Hill he findes of easie ascent on every side; which he takes for want of a more commodious place, and fortifies with pack-saddles, and other luggage, for default of a better Palliade. These weak defences the *Carthaginians* soon tear in sunder: and, breaking in on all hands, leave very few of them alive; that saving themselves, I know not how, within some woods adjoining, escape unto *T. Fonteius*, whom *Publius* had left in his camp, as is before said. It is a terrible overthrow, they say, out of which no man escapes. Yet, how they that were thus hemmed in on

every side, in so bare a ground as afforded not a shrub to cover them, could break out, and throwd themselves within woods adjoining. I should much wonder, did not a greater miracle following call away mine attention. *T. Fonteius* is in *P. Scipio's* camp, on the North side of *Iberus*, fearfull (as may be supposed) of his own life; since his Generall, with two parts of the *Roman* Army, had little hope to remain long safe within it. Thither comes *L. Martius*, a young *Roman* Gentleman of a notable spirit: who having gathered together the scattered Souldiers, and drawn some Companies out of their Garrisons, makes a pretty Army. The Souldiers, being to chuse a Generall by most voices, prefer this *L. Martius* before *Fonteius* the Lieutenent, as well they may. For *Asdrubal*, the sonne of *Gesco*, comming upon them; this *L. Martius* so encourageth his men, (fondly weeping when he led them forth, upon remembrance of their more honourable Generalls lately slain) and admonisheth them of their present necessity, that he bears the *Carthaginians* into their Trenches. A notable victory perhaps he might have gotten, but that he wisely founds the retreats, reserving the fury of his Souldiers to a greater occasion. The *Carthaginians* are at first amazed, and wonder whence this new boldness grows, in enemies lately vanquished, and now again little better than taken: but when they see, that the *Roman* dares not follow his advantage, they returne to their former security; and utterly despising him, set neither *Corps de garde* nor Sentinell, but rest secure, as if no enemy were near. *Martius* therefore animates his Souldiers with lively words; and tells them, That there is no adventure more safe, than that which is furthest from suspicion of being undertaken. They are soon perswaded to follow him, in any desperate piece of service. So he leads them forth by night, and steals upon the Camp of *Asdrubal*: where finding no guard, but the enemies fast asleep, or very drowlie, He enters without resistance, fires their Cabines, and gives a terrible alarm; so that all affrighted the *Carthaginians* runne head-long one upon another, they know not which way. All passages out of their Camp, *Martius* hath prepossest, so that there is no way to escape, save by leaping down the Rampart: which as many do, as can think upon it, and run away toward the Camp of *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Amilcar*, that lay six miles off. But *Martius* hath way-laid them. In a Valley between their two camps he hath bestow'd a *Roman* cohort; and I know not what number of Horse; so that into this Ambush they fall every one, and are cut in pieces. But lest perchance any should have escaped, and give the alarm before his comming; *Martius* hastens to be there as soon as they. By which diligent speed, He comes early in the morning upon this further camp: which with no great difficulty he enters, and partly by apprehension of danger which the Enemies conceived, when they beheld the *Roman* shields, foule, and bloodied with their former execution, He drives head-long into flight, all that can save themselves from the fury of the sword. Thirty seven thousand of the enemies perish in this nights work; besides a thousand eight hundred and thirty, taken prisoners. Hereunto *Valerius Antius* adds, that the camp of *Mago* was also taken, and seven thousand slain: and that in another battail with *Asdrubal*, there were slain ten thousand more; besides four thousand three hundred and thirty taken prisoners. Such is the power of some Historians. *Livie* therefore hath elsewhere well observed, That there is none so intemperate, as *Valerius Antius*, in multiplying the numbers that have fallen in battails. That, whilst *Martius* was making an Oration to his souldiers, a flame of fire shone about his head, *Livie* reporteth as a common tale, not giving thereto any credit: and temperately concludeth, That this Captaine *Martius* got a great name; which he might well doe, if with so small forces, and in such distress, He could clearly get off from the Enemies, and give them any parting blow, thought it were far less than that which is here set down.

Of these occurrents *L. Martius* sent word to *Rome*, not forgetting his own good service, whatsoever it was, but setting it out in such wise, as the Senate might judge him worthy to hold the place of their Vice-gerent in *Spain*: which the better to intimate unto them, He stiled himself Propretor. The Fathers were no less moved with the tidings than the case required: and therefore took such carefull order, for supplying their forces in *Spain*, that although *Hannibal* came to the gates of *Rome*, ere the companies levied to serve that Province, could be sent away; yet could they not stay a tide for defence of the City it self, but shipped them in all haste for *Spain*. As for the title of Propretor, which *Martius* had assumed, they thought it too great for him, and were offended

offended at his presumption in usurping it: foreseeing well, that it was a matter of ill consequence, to have the Souldiers abroad make choice, among themselves, of those that should command Armies and Provinces. Therefore *C. Claudius Nero* was dispatched away, with all convenient haste, into *Spain*: carrying with him about six thousand of the *Roman* foot, and as many of the *Latines*, with three hundred *Roman* horse, and of the *Latines* eight hundred.

It happened well, that about these times, the affairs of *Rome* began to prosper in *Italy*, and afforded means of sending abroad such a strong supply: otherwise the victories of *Martius* would ill have served, either to keep footing in *Spain*, or to stop the *Carthaginian* Armies from marching towards the *Alpes*. For when *Claudius*, landing with his new forces, took charge of that remainder of the Army, which was under *Martius* and *Fonteius*; he found surer tokens of the overthrowes received, than of those miraculous victories, whereof *Martius* had made his vaunts unto the Senate. The *Roman* party was forsaken by most of the *Spanish* friends: whom how to reclaim, it would not easily be devised. Yet *Claudius* advanced boldly towards *Asdrubal* the brother of *Hannibal*: whom he found among the *Ausertani*, near enough at hand, incamped in a place called *Lapides arvi*, out of which there was no issue, but only through a straight, whereon the *Roman* seized at his first comming. What should have tempted any man of understanding to incamp in such a place, I do not find: and as little reason can I find in that which followed. For it is said, That *Asdrubal*, seeing himself thus lockt up, made offer to depart forthwith out of all *Spain*, and quit the Province to the *Romans*, upon condition that he and his Army might be thence dismissed; That he spent many dayes, in entertaining parlee with *Claudius* about this business; That night by night he conveyed his footmen (a few at a time) through very difficult passages, out of the danger; and that finally taking advantage of a misty day, He stole away with all his Horse and Elephants, leaving his Camp empty. If we consider, that there were at the same time, besides this *Asdrubal*, two other *Carthaginian* Generals in *Spain*; we shall find no lesse cause to wonder at the simplicity of *Claudius*, who hoped to conclude a bargain for so great a Country, with one of these three Chieftains, than at the strange nature of those passages, through which the footmen could hardly creep out by night; the Horse and Elephants easily following them in a dark misty day. Wherefore in giving belief to such a tale, it is needfull that we suppose, both the danger wherein the *Carthaginians* were, and the conditions offered for their safe departure, to have been of far lesse value. Howsoever it was; neither this, nor ought else that the *Romans* could do, served to purchase any new friends in *Spain*, or to recover the old which they had lost. Like enough it is, that the old Souldiers, which had chosen *Martius* their Propretor, took it not well, that the Senate, regardless of their good deserts, had repealed their election, and sent a Propretor whom they fancied not so well. Some such occasion may have moved them to desire a Proconsul, and (perhaps) young *Scipio* by name: as if a title of greater dignity were needfull to work regard in the *Barbarians*; and the beloved memory of *Cn.* and *Publius*, likely to do good, were it revived in one of the same family. Whether upon these, or upon other reasons; *C. Claudius* was recalled out of the Province; and *Publius* the son of *P. Scipio* sent Proconsul into *Spain*.

This is that *Scipio*, who afterward transferred the war into *Africa*: where he happily ended it, to the great honour and benefit of his Country. He was a man of goodly presence, and singularly well conditioned: especially he excelled in Temperance, Continency, Bounty, and other virtues that purchase love; of which qualities what great eye he made, shall appear in the tenour of his Actions following. As for those things that are reported of him, favouring a little too much of the great *Alexanders* vanity, How he used to walk alone in the Capitoll, as one that had some secret conference with *Jupiter*; How a Dragon (which must have been one of the gods; and, in likelihood, *Jupiter* himself) was thought to have conversed with his Mother, entering her Chamber often, and vanishing away at the comming in of any man; and how of these matters he nourished the rumour, by doubtfull answers; I hold them no better than fables, devised by Historians, who thought thereby to add unto the glory of *Rome*: that this noble City might seem, not only to have surpassed other Nations in virtue of the generality, but also in great worth of one single man. To this end nothing is left out, that might serve to acorne this *Roman* Champion. For it is confidently written, as matter

of unquestionable truth, That when a Proconfull was to be chosen for *Spain*, there durst not any Captain of the principall Citizens offer himself as Petitioner for that honourable, but dangerous charge; That the people of *Rome* were much astonished thereat; That when the day of Election came, all the Princes of the City stood looking one another in the face, not one of them having the heart to adventure himself in such a desperate service; and finally, that this *P. Cornelius Scipio*, being then about four and twenty years of age, getting up on an high place where he might be seen of all the multitude, requested and obtained, that the office might be conferred upon him. If this were true, then were all the victories of *L. Martius* no better than dreams: and either very unreasonable was the fear of all the *Roman* Captains, who durst not follow *Claudius Nere*, that not long before was gone into *Spain* Propretor; or very bad intelligence they had out of the Province, which *Asdrubal* the *Carthaginian*, as we heard even now, was ready to abandon. But upon these incoherences, which I find in the too partial *Roman* Historians, I do not willingly insift.

*P. Scipio* was sent Proconful into *Spain*; & with him was joyned *M. Fannius Syllanus*, as Propretor, and his Coadjutor. They carryed with them ten thousand foot, and a thousand horse, in thirty *Quinguereme* Gallies. With these they landed at *Emporia*, and marched from thence to *Tarracon* alongst the Sea-coast. At the same of *Scipio*'s arrivall, it is said, that Embassages came to him apace from all quarters of the Province: which he entertained with such a majesty, as bred a wonderfull opinion of him. As for the enemies, they were greatly afraid of him: and so much the greater was their fear, by how much the lesse they could give any reason of it. If we must believe this, then must we needs believe, that their fear was even as great as could be: for very little cause there was, to be terrified with the fame of so young a man, which had as yet performed nothing. All the Winter following (or, as some think, all the next year) he did nothing: but spent the time perhaps, as his foregoers had done, in treating with the *Spaniards*. His first enterprize was against new *Carthage*: upon which he came unexpected, with five and twenty thousand foot, and two thousand five hundred horse; his Sea forces coasting him, and moderating their counsil in such wise, that they arrived there together with him. He assailed the Town by Land and Sea; and won it by assault the first day. The *Carthaginians* lost it, by their too much confidence upon the strength of it: which caused them to man it more slenderly, than was requisite. Yet it might have been well enough defended, if some *Fisher-men* of *Tarracon* had not discovered unto *Scipio*, a secret passage unto the wals; whereof the Townsmen themselves were either ignorant, or thought (at least) that their enemies could have no notice. This City of new *Carthage*, resembled the old and great *Carthage* in situation; standing upon a demy-Iland, between an Haven and a great Lake. All the Western side of the wals, and somewhat of the North, was fenced with this Lake: which the *Fisher-men* of *Tarracon* had sounded; and finding some part thereof a shelf, whereon at low water men might passe knee-deep, or (at most) wading up to the Navill, *Scipio* thrust therein some companies of his men; who recovered the top of the wals without resistance: the place being left without guard; as able to defend it self by the naturall strength. These falling suddenly upon the backs of the *Carthaginians* within the City, easily forced a gate, and gave free entrance to the *Roman* Army. What booty was found within the Town, *Livie* himself cannot certainly affirm; but is fain to say, That some *Roman* Historians told lies without measure, in way of amplification. By that small proportion of riches, which was afterward carried by *Scipio* into the *Roman* Treasury, we may easily perceive how great a vanity it was to say, That all the wealth of *Africk* and *Spain* was heaped up in that one Town. But therein were bestowed all the *Spanish* Hostages: (or at least of the adjoining Provinces) whom *Scipio* intreated with singular courtesie; restoring them unto their kindred and friends, in such gracious manner, as doubled the thanks due to so great a benefit. Hereupon a Prince of the *Celiberians*, and two petty Kings of the *Ilergetes* and *Lacetani*, nearest Neighbours to *Tarracon*, and dwelling on the North-side of *Iberus*, forsook the *Carthaginian* party, and joyned with the *Romans*. The speech of *Indibilis*, King of the *Ilergetes*, is much commended; for that he did not vaunt himself, as commonly fugitives use, of the pleasure, which he did unto the *Romans*, in revolting from their enemies, but rather excused this his changing side, as being there-to compelled by injuries of the *Carthaginians*, and invited by the honourable dealing of

*Scipio*

*Scipio*. This temperate estimation of his new professed friendship, was indeed no unsure token, that it should be long-lasting. But if the *Ilergetes* had long ere this (as we have heard before) forsaken the *Carthaginian* party, and stoutly held themselves as friends to *Cn. Scipio*: then could nothing have been devised more vain, than this Oration of *Indibilis* their King; excusing, as new, his taking part with the same, when he should have rather craved pardon for his breach of alliance, formerly contracted with the Father and the Uncle. Most likely therefore it is, that howsoever the two elder *Scipio*'s had gotten some few places among these their Neighbours, and held them by strength; yet were the *Romans* never masters of the Country, till this worthy Commander, by recovering their Hostages from the *Carthaginians*, and by his great munificence in sending them home, won unto himself the assured love and assistance of these Princes. The *Carthaginian* Generals, when they heard of this losse, were very sorry: yet nevertheless they set a good face on the matter; saying, That a young man, having stolon a Town by surpris, was too far transported, and overjoyed, but that shortly they would meet with him, and put him in mind of his Father and Uncle; which would alter his mood, and bring him to a more convenient temper.

Now if I should here interpose mine own conjecture; I should be bold to say, That the *Carthaginians* were at this time busie, in setting forth towards *Italy*; and that *Scipio*, to divert them, undertook new *Carthage*, as his Father and Uncle, upon the like occasion, fate down before *Ibera*. And in this respect I would suppose, that it had not been much amiss, if the passage over the Lake had been undiscovered, and the Town held out some longer while. For howsoever that particular Action was the more fortunate, in coming to such good issue upon the first day: yet in the generality of the business, between *Rome* and *Carthage*, it was more to be wished, that *Asdrubal* should be stayed from going into *Italy*, than that half of *Spain* should be taken from him. Whereas therefore he had nothing left to do, that should hinder his journey, *Mago*, and *Asdrubal*, the sonne of *Gesio*, were thought sufficient to hold *Scipio* work, in that lingering War of taking and retaking Towns, whilst the main of the *Carthaginian* forces, under *Asdrubal*, the son of *Amilcar*, went to a greater enterprize: even to fight in tryall of the Empire. But the *Roman* Historians tell this after another fashion; and say, That *Asdrubal* was beaten into *Italy*: whither he ran for fear, as thinking himself ill assured of the *Spaniards*, as long as they might but hear the name of *Scipio*. *Scipio*, say they, coming upon *Asdrubal*, his Vant-cursors charged so lustily the *Carthaginian* horse, that they drave them into their Trenches: and made it apparent, even by that small piece of service, how full of spirit the *Roman* Army was, and how dejected the Enemy. *Asdrubal* therefore by night retired out of that even ground, and occupied an Hill, compassed on three sides with the River, very steep of ascent, and not easie of access on the fore side; by which himself got up, and was to be followed by the *Romans*. On the top of it there was a Plain, whereon he strongly encamped himself: and in the mid-way, between the top and root of the Hill, was also another Plain; into which he descended, more upon bravery, that he might not seem to hide himself within the Trenches, than for that he durst adventure his Army to the hazzard of a battail, for which this was no equal ground. But such advantage of place could not save him from the *Romans*. They climbed up the Hill to him; they recovered even footing with him; drove him out of this lower Plain, up into his Camp on the Hill top: whither although the ascent were very difficult, and his Elephants bestowed in the smoothest places to hinder their approach; yet compassing about, and seeking passage where it was hardest to be found; but much more strongly breaking their way, where the *Carthaginians* had got up before them, they drave both men and Elephants head-long. I know not whither: for it is said, that there was no way to flye. Out of such a battell, wherein he had lost eight thousand men, *Asdrubal* is said to have escaped; and gathering together his dispersed troupes, to have marched toward the *Pyrenes*, having sent away his Elephants ere the fight began. Nevertheless, *Mago*, and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gesio*, are reported after this to have consulted with him about this War; and finally to have concluded, that go he needs must, were it but to carry all the *Spaniards* as far as might be, from the name of *Scipio*. How likely this was to have been true, it shall appear at his coming into *Italy*; whence these incoherent relations of the *Spanish* affairs have too long detained us.



*The great troubles that Hannibal raised in all quarters, to the City of Rome. Posthumius the Roman General, with his whole Army, is slain by the Gauls. Philip King of Macedonia enters into a League with Hannibal, against the Romans. The Romans, joining with the Aetolians, make war upon Philip in Greece: and afterwards conclude a peace with him, the better to interdict their business against the Carthaginians.*

WE left Hannibal wintering at Capua: where he and his new Confederates rejoiced (as may be thought) not a little, to hear the good news from Carthage of such mighty aide, as was decreed to be sent thence unto him. In former times he had found work enough, to carry the Romans corn into his own barns, and to drive away their Cattell to Geryon: his victories affording him little other profit, than sustenance for his Army; by making him master of the open field. He might perhaps have forced some walled towns in like sort as he did Geryon, and the Castle of Cannæ: but had he spent much time, about the getting of any one place well defended; the hunger, that his Army must have endured the Winter and Spring following, untill corn were ripe, would have grievously punished him for such employment of the Summer. This may have been the reason, why he forbore to adventure upon Rome, after his victory at Cannæ. For had he failed (as it was a matter of no certainty) to carry the City at his first coming; want of victuals would have compelled him to quit the enterprise. Yea many of the people that opened so hastily their gates unto him, upon the fresh bruit of his glorious success would have taken time of deliberation, and waited perhaps the event of another battail; if being, either for want of means to force the City, or of necessities to continue a siege before it, repelled (as might seem) from the walls of Rome, he had presented himself unto them with a lessened reputation, somewhat later in the year; when time to force their obedience was wanting, unless they would freely yield it. But this great part of the care and travel was past, when so many States of Italy were become his: the year following, the Samnites, and other old enemies of Rome, were like to receive a notable pleasure of their new alliance with Carthage, by helping to lay siege unto that proud City, which so long had held them in subjection. Thus the winter was passed over joyfully, saying that there came not any tidings of the preparations, to second the welcome report of those mighty forces, that were decreed and expected. The Spring grew on: and of the promised supply there arrived no more, than only the Elephants. How late it was ere these came, I finde not: onely we finde, that after this he had above thirty of them; whereas all, save one, that he brought over the Alpes, had been lost in his journey through the Marishes of Heiruria. Very bad excuse of this exceeding negligence, they that brought the Elephants could make unto Hannibal. If they were his friends, they told him truly, what mischiefs the perswasion of Hanno wrought among the too niggardly Carthaginians. Otherwise, they might perhaps informe him, that it was thought a safer, though a farther way about, to passe along through Spain and Gaul, as he himself had done; and increase the Army, by hyring the Barbarians in the journey; than to commit the main strength of their City, to the hazzard of the Seas: especially wanting a commodious Haven, to receive the Fleet that should carry such a number of Men, Horses, and Elephants, with all needfull provisions. With these allegations Hannibal must rest content; and seek, as well as he can, to satisfie his Italian Confederates. Therefore when time of the year served, He took the field: and having finished what rested to be done at Castilnum, sought to make himself Master of some good Haven-town thereabout; that might serve to entertain the Carthaginian Fleet, or take from his Enemies at home all excuse, which they might pretend by want thereof. To the same purpose, and to do what else was needfull, He sent Himilco unto the Lucrians, and Hanno to the Lucans: not forgetting at once to assay all quarters of Italy, yea, the Isles of Sicil and Sardinia; since the siege of Rome must needs be deferred unto another year. Hanno made an ill journey of it, being met, or overtaken, by T. Sempronius Longus: who slue above two thousand of his men; with the loss of fewer than three hundred Romans. But Himilco sped far better. By help of the Bruntians, his good friends, he won Petellia, or Pettia by force; after it had held out some moneths. He won likewise Consentia, and Croton, that was forsaken by the Inhabitants. Also the City of Locri, which

was

was of great importance, yeelded unto him: as did all other places thereabout; except only the Town of Rhegium, over against Sicil.

The great faith of the Petilians is worthy to be recorded, as a notable testimony of the good government, under which the Roman subjects lived. As for the Samnites, Campanians and others, whose earnestnesse in rebellion may seem to prove the contrary; we are to consider, That they had lately contended with Rome for Sovereignty, and were now transported with ambition: which reason can hardly moderate, or benefite allay. The Petilians, in the very beginning of their danger, did send to Rome for help: where their messengers received answer from the Senate, That the publick misfortunes had not left means, to relieve their Associates that were so far distant. The Petilian Messengers (Embassadours they are termed; as were all others, publickly sent from Cities of the Roman subjection, that had a private jurisdiction within themselves) fell down to the ground, and humbly besought the Fathers, not to give them away: promising to do and suffer whatsoever was possible, in defence of their Town, against the Carthaginians. Hereupon the Senate fell to consultation again: and having thoroughly considered all their forces remaining, plainly confessed, that it was not in their power to give any relief. Wherefore these Embassadours were willing to return home, and to bid their Citizens provide hereafter for their own safety, as having already discharged their faith to the utmost. All this notwithstanding, the Petilians (as was said) held out some moneths: and having striven in vain to defend themselves, when there was no apparent possibility gave to the Carthaginians a bloody victory over them; being vanquished as much by famine, as by any violence of the Asilarians.

The Romans at this time were indeed in such ill case, that Hannibal with a little help from Carthage, might have reduced them into terms of great extremity. For whereas, in a great bravery, before their loss at Cannæ, they had shewed their high minde, by entertaining the care of things far off, notwithstanding the great war that lay upon them so near at hand: it now fell out miserably all at once, that their fortune abroad was no whit better than at home. L. Posthumius Albinus their Prætor they had sent, with an Army of five and twenty thousand, into Gaul; to the Illyrian King Pinus they had sent for their tribute due, whereof the pay-day was past; willing him, if he desired forbearance, to deliver Hostages for his performance of what was due; and to Philip King of Macedon they had sent, to require, that he should deliver up unto them Demetrius Phariis their Subject and Rebel, whom he had received. But now from all quarters they hear tidings, little suitable to their former glorious conceits. Posthumius with all his Army was cut in pieces by the Gauls, in such sort, that scarce ten men escaped. The manner of his overthrow was very strange. There was a great Wood, called by the Gauls, Litana; through which he was to pass. Against his coming, the Enemies had lawed the trees so far, that a little force would serve to cast them down. When therefore Posthumius, with his whole Army, was entred into this dangerous passage, the Gauls that lay about the wood, began to cast down the trees: which falling one against another, bore all down to fast, that the Romans were overwhelmed, Men and Horses, in such wise, that no more escaped, than is said before. How this tedious work of sawing so many trees, could take desired effect, and neither be perceived, nor made frustrate, either by some winde, that might have blown all down before the Romans entred, or by some other of those many accidents, whereto the device was subject; I do not well conceive. Yet some such thing may have been done: and what failed in the stratagem, supplied with the Enemies sword. It is not perhaps worthy to be omitted, as a monument of the savage condition, wherewith Lombardie, a Country now so Civil, was infected in elder times, That of Posthumius his skull, being cleaned and trimmed up with gold, a drinking cup was made, and consecrated in their principall Temple, as an holy vessel, for the use of the Priest in their solemnities. Of this great overthrow, when word was brought to Rome, the amazement was no less than the calamity. But sorrow could give no remedy to the mischief: and anger was vain, where there wanted forces to revenge. Tribute from the Illyrians there came none: neither do I find, that any was a second time demanded; this we find, That with Pleuratus, and Scerdiletus Illyrian Kings, as also with Gentius, who reigned within a few years following, the Romans dealt upon even termes; entreating their assistance against Philip and Perseus; not commanding their duty, as Vassals. The Macedonian troubled them yet a little further. For

having

having assured his affairs in *Greece*, and enjoying leisure to look into the doings abroad, He sent Embassadors to *Hannibal*: with whom he made a league, upon these conditions, That the King in person should come into *Italy*, and with all his forces, by Land and Sea, assist the *Carthaginians* in the *Roman* war, until it were finished: That *Rome*, and all *Italy*, together with all the spoil therein to be gotten, should be left entire unto the State of *Carthage*: and that afterwards *Hannibal*, with his Army should passe into *Greece*, and there assist *Philip*, until he had subdued all his enemies: (which were the *Ætolians*, *Thracians*, King *Antiochus*, and others) leaving seembly unto him the full possession of that country, and the Isles adjoining. But such predisposition of Kingdomes and Provinces, is lightly controlled by the divine Providence, which therein shewes 10  
It self, not (as *Herodotus* falsely termes it, and like an *Atchist*) envious or malicious, but very just and majesticall, in upholding that unspeakable greatnes of Sovereignty, by which It rules the whole World, and all that therein is.

The first Embassadors that *Philip* sent, fell into the *Romans* hands, in their journey towards *Hannibal*: and being examined what they were, adventured upon a bold lie, saying, That they were sent from the King of *Macedon* to *Rome*, there to make a League with the Senate and people, and offer his help in this time of great necessity. These newes were so welcome, that the joy thereof took away all care of making better inquiry: So they were lovingly feasted, and freely dismissed with guides that should lead them the way, and shew them how to avoid the *Carthaginians*. But they being thus 20  
instructed concerning their journey, fell wilfully into the camp of *Hannibal*: who entertained them after a better fashion, and concluded the business, about which they came, upon the points before remembered. In their return homeward, they happened again unluckily to be descryed by the *Roman* Fleet; which mistrusting them to be of the *Carthaginian* party, gave them chase. They did their best to have escaped: but being overtaken, they suffered the *Romans* to come aboard; and trusting to the lie that once had served them, said it again, That having been sent from King *Philip*, to make a league with the People of *Rome*, they were not able by reason of the *Carthaginians* lying between, to get any farther than to *M. Valerius* the Prætor, unto whom they had signified the good affection of the King their Master. The tale was now less credible than 30  
before: and (which marred all) *Gesco*, *Boslar*, and *Mago*, with their followers, *Carthaginians* that were sent with them from *Hannibal* to ratifie the agreement, being presently detected, made the matter apparent. Wherefore a little inquisition served to finde all out: so that at length *Hannibal*'s own letters to King *Philip* were delivered up, and the whole business confected. The Embassadors and their followers were sent close prisoners to *Rome*; where the chief of them were cast into prison; and the rest sold for bond-slaves. Yet one of their ships that escaped, carried word into *Macedon* of all that had happened. Whereupon new Embassage was sent, that went and returned with better speed; concluding, as was agreed before; only with some losse of time.

The *Romans* were exceedingly perplexed: thinking with what heavy weight this *Macedonian* war, in an evil hour, was likely to fall upon them, when their shoulders were over-burdened with the load of the *Carthaginian*. Yet they took a noble resolution, and sutable unto that, whereby they kept off the storme, that else would have beaten upon them from *Spain*. They judged it more easie, with small forces to detain *Philip* in *Greece*, than with all their strength to resist him in *Italy*. And herein they were in the right. For, that the very reputation of a King of *Macedon*, joyning with *Hannibal* in such a time, would have sufficed to shake the allegiance, not only of the *Latines*, and other, their most faithfull Subjects, but even of the *Roman* Colonies, that held all privileges of the City, it will appear by the following successe of things. *M. Valerius* the Prætor, with twenty *Quinquereme* Gallies, was appointed to attend upon the *Macedonian*, and 50  
to set on foot some commotion in *Greece*; or to nourish the troubles already therein begun. *Philip* was busie about the Sea towns, that looked towards *Italy*, setting upon *Apollonia*, and thence falling upon *Oricum*, which he won, and so returned to *Apollonia* again. The *Epirots* craved help of *M. Valerius*: or rather accepted his kinde offers, who had none other business to do. The Garrison that *Philip* had left in *Oricum*, was strong enough to hold the Town-men in good order; but not to keep out the *Romans*: of whose daring to attempt any thing against him, on that side the Sea, *Philip* as then had no suspicion. *Valerius* therefore easly regained the Town; and sent thence a thousand

thousand men, under *Navius Crispus*, an undertaking and expert Captain; which got by night into *Apollonia*. These made a notable fallie; and brake into *Philip*'s Trenches with lo great slaughter, that they forced him to forsake his camp, and raise the siege. The King purposed (as it is said, to have departed thence by Sea: but *Valerius*, coming with his fleet from *Oricum*, stopped up the mouth of the River, so that he was faine to burn his ships, (which belike were no better than long boats) and depart ill furnished of carriages, by Land. After this *Valerius* dealt with the *Ætolians*, a Nation always enemy to the Crown of *Macedon*: and easily perswaded them (being so affected, as hath else where been shewed) to make strong war on *Philip*: wherein he promised them 10  
great assistance from the *Romans*. That which most moved the troubleme spirits of the *Ætolians*, was the hope of getting *Acarnania*: after which they had gaped long; and whereof the *Roman* was as liberall in making promise, as if already it had been his own. So a league was made between them: and afterward solemnly published at *Olympia*, by the *Ætolians*; and by the *Romans*, in their *Capitoll*. The conditions were, that from *Ætolia* to *Coreyra*, in which space *Acarnania* was contained, all the Country should be subdued, and left unto the *Ætolians*, the pillage only to be given to the *Romans*. And that if the *Ætolians* made peace with *Philip*, it should be with Provision, to hold no longer than whilest he obtained from doing injurie to the *Romans*, or their Associates. This was indeed the only point, whereat *Valerius* aimed, who promised as 20  
much on the *Romans* behalf, That they should not make peace with the *Macedonian*, unless it were with like condition of including the *Ætolians*. Into this league was place reserved for the *Lacedæmonsians* and *Eleans*, as to those that had made or favoured the side of *Cleomenes* against the *Macedonian*, to enter at their pleasure. The like regard was had of *Attalus*, *Pleuratus*, and *Scerdileius*: the first of which reigned at *Pergamus*, in *Asia* the lesse, a Prince hereafter much to be spoken of; the other two held some part of *Illyria*, about which the *Romans* were so far from contending with them, that gladly they sought to get their friendly acquaintance. But the names of these Associates are thrust into the Treaty, rather to give it countenance, than for any readines which they disclose to enter thereinto. The *Ætolians* alone, & chiefly *Scopas* their Prætor, with *Demetrius* and others, are yet a while the only men, of whom the *Roman* Generals must make much; as the late French King, *Henry* the fourth, when he had only the title of *Navarre*, was said to court the Majors of *Rochel*. *Philip* was not idle, when he heard whereunto the *Ætolians* tended. He repaired his Army; made a countenance of war upon the *Illyrians*, and other his borderers, that were wont in times of danger to infect the Kingdom of *Macedon*; wasted the Country about *Oricum* and *Apollonia*; and over-running the *Pelagonians*, *Dardaniens*, and others, whom he held suspected, came down into *Thessaly*, whence he made shew as if he would invade *Ætolia*. By the fame of this Expedition, He thought to stir up all the *Greeks* adjoining, against the *Ætolians*, whom they generally detested as a nest of Robbers, troubleme to all the Country. To which 40  
purpose, and to hinder the *Ætolians* from breaking into *Greece*, He left *Persus*, his son and heir, with four thousand men, upon their borders: with the rest of his Army, before greater business should overtake and entangle him. He made a long journey into *Thrace*, against a people called the *Mædes*, that were wont to fall upon *Macedon*, whenever the King was absent. The *Ætolians* hearing of his departure, armed as many as they could against the *Armanians*; in hope to subdue those their daily enemies, and win their little Country, ere he should be able to return. Hereto it much availed, that the *Romans* had already taken *Oeniada* and *Naxos*, *Acarnanian* Towns, conveniently situated to let in an Army and consigned them unto the *Ætolians*, according to the tenor of the contract lately made with them. But the stout resolution of the *Acarnanians*, 50  
to die (as we say) every mothers son of them, in defence of their Country; together with the great haste of the *Macedonian* (who layed aside all other business) to succour these his friends; caused the *Ætolians* to forsake their enterprize. When this Expedition was given over, the *Romans* and *Ætolians* fell upon *Acroia*, which they took: the *Romans* assailed by Sea, the *Ætolians* by Land. The *Ætolians* had the Town, and the *Romans* the spoil.

For these good services *M. Valerius* was chosen Consul at *Rome*; and *P. Salpiti* sent in his stead, to keep the war on foot in *Greece*. But besides the *Roman* help, *Attalus* out of *Asia* came over to assist the *Ætolians*. He was chiefly moved by his own jealousie

lousie of *Philips* greatness: though somewhat also tickled with the vanity of being chosen by the *Ætolians* their principall Magistrate: which honour, though no better than titular, he took in very loving part. Against the forces which *Attalus* and the *Romans* had sent, being joynd with the main power of *Ætolia*, *Philip* tried the fortune of two battails: and was victorious in each of them. Hereupon, these his troublesome neighbours desired peace of him, and used their best means to get it. But when the day appointed for the conclusion thereof, was come: their Embassadors, in stead of making submission, proposed unto him such intolerable conditions, as ill beleemed vanquished men to offer: and might therefore well testifie, that their minds were altered. It was not any love of peace, but fear of being besieged in their own Towns, that had made 10 them desirous of composition. This fear being taken away, by the encouragements of *Attalus* and the *Romans*, they were as fierce as ever: and thrust a garrison of their own, and some *Roman* friends, into *Eli*; which threatened *Achaia*, wherein *Philip* then lay. The *Romans*, making a cut over the straight from *Naupactus*, wasted the country in a terrible bravery: wherein *Philip* required him; coming upon them in great haste from the *Nemean* Games (which he was then celebrating) and lending them faster away, but nothing richer, than they came.

In the heat of this contention, *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*, fearing the growth of *Attalus*, no less than *Attalus* held suspected the power of *Philip*, sent a Navie into *Greece*, to assist the *Macedonian* party. The like did the *Carthaginians*: and upon greater reason, as being more interessed in the success of his affairs. *Philip* was too weak by Sea: and though he could man some two hundred ships, yet the vessels were such, as could not hold out against the *Roman* *Quinqueresmes*. Wherefore it behoved him, to use the help of his good friends the *Carthaginians*. But their aide came somewhat too late: which might better at first have kept those Enemies from fastening upon any part of *Greece*, than afterward it could serve to drive them out, when they had pierced into the bowels of that country. Ere *Philip* could attempt any thing by Sea, it was needfull that he should correct the *Eleans*, bad neighbours to the *Achaïans* his principall Confederates. But in assailing their Town, he was encountered by the *Ætolian* and *Roman* garrison, which drove him back with some loss. In such cases, especially where God intendeth a great 30 conversion of Empire, Fame is very powerful in working. The King had received no great detriment, in his retreat from *Eli*: rather he had given testimony of his personal valour, in fighting well on foot, when his horse was slain under him. He had also soon after taken a great multitude of the *Eleans*, to the number of four thousand, with some twenty thousand head of Cattel, which they had brought together in a place of safety, as they thought, when their Country was invaded. But it had hapned, that in his pursuit of the *Roman* foragers about *Sicyon*, his horse running hastily under a low tree, had torn off one of the hornes, which (after the fashion of those times) the King wore in his Crest. This was gathered up by an *Ætolian*, who carried it home, & shewed it as a token of *Philips* death. The horn was well known, and the tale believed. 40 All *Macedon* therefore was in an uproar: and not only the borderers, ready to fall upon the Country, but some Captains of *Philip*, easily corrupted; who thinking to make themselves a fortune in that change of things, ranne into such treason, as they might better hope to make good, than to excuse. Hereupon the King returned home, leaving not three thousand men, to assist his friends the *Achaïans*. He also took order, to have Beacons erected, that might give him notice of the enemies doings, upon whom he meant shortly to return. The affairs of *Macedon*, his presence quickly established. But in *Greece* all went ill-favouredly: especially in the Ile of *Eubœa*, where one *Plator* betrayed to *Attalus* and the *Romans*, the Town of *Oreum*, ere *Philip* could arrive to help it: where also the strong City of *Chalcis* was likely to have been lost, if he had not come 50 the sooner. He made such hasty marches, that he had almost taken *Attalus* in the City of *Opus*: This City, lying over against *Eubœa*, *Attalus* had won, more through the cowardize of the people, than any great force that he had used: now because the *Roman* Souldiers had defrauded him in the sack of *Oreum*, and taken all to themselves; it was need, that *Attalus* should make his best profit of the *Opuntians*, without admitting them to be his sharers. But whilst he was busied in drawing as much money as he could 26 Rom. the Citizens: the sudden tidings of *Philips* arrivall, made him leave all behinde out of him, and run away to the Sea-side, where he got aboard his ships, finding the *Romans* gone

gone before, upon the like fear. Either the indignity of this misadventure, or tydings of *Prusias* the *Bithynian* his invasion upon the kingdom of *Pergamus*, made *Attalus* returne home, without taying to take leave of his friends. So *Philip* recovered *Opus*, won *Torone*, *Triton*, *Drymus*, and many smal towns in those parts, performing likewise some actions, of more bravery than importance, against the *Ætolians*. In the mean season, *Machanidas*, the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, had been busie in *Peloponnesus*; but hearing of *Philips* arrivall, was returned home.

The *Lacedæmonians*, hearing certain report of *Cleomenes* his death in *Egypt*, went about to chooe two new kings, & to conform themselves to their old manner of government. But their estate was so far out of tune, that their hope of redressing things within the City, proved no less unfortunate, than had been their attempts of recovering a large dominion abroad. *Lycurgus* a tyrant rose up among them: upon whom succeeded this 10 *Machanidas*, and shortly after came *Navis*, that was worse than both of them. They held on the *Ætolian* and *Roman* side, for fear of the *Achaïans*, that were the chief Confederates of *Philip*, and hated extremely the name both of Tyrant and *Lacedæmonian*. But of these we shall speak more hereafter.

*Philip* entring into *Achaia*, and seeing his presence had brought the contentment of assurance to that Countrey; spake brave words to the Assembly of their States, saying, That he had to do with an Enemy, that was very nimble, and made warre by running 20 away. He told how he had followed them to *Chalcis*, to *Oreum*, to *Opus*, and now into *Achaia*: but could no where finde them, such haste they made, for fear of being overtaken. But slight, he said, was not alwaies prosperous: he should one day light upon them; as ere this he sundry times had done, and still to their losse. The *Achaïans* were glad to hear these words; and much the more glad, in regard of his good deeds accompanying them. For he restored unto their Nation some Towns that were in his hand, belonging to them of old. Likewise to the *Megalopolitans* their Confederates, he rendered *Aliphera*. The *Dymaïans*, that had been taken by the *Romans*, and sold for slaves, he sought out, ranlomed, and put in quiet possession of their own City. Further, passing over the *Corinthian* Gulfe, he fell upon the *Ætolians*; whom he drove into the mountains and woods, or other their strongest holds, and wasted their Country. 30 This done, he took leave of the *Achaïans*, and returned home by Sea, visited the people that were his subjects, or dependants; and animated them so well, that they rested fearless of any threatening danger. Then had he leisure to make war upon the *Dardaniens*, ill neighbours to *Macedon*: with whom nevertheless he was not so far occupied, but that he could go in hand with preparing a fleet of an hundred gallies, whereby to make himself Master of the Sea; the *Romans* (since the departure of *Attalus*) having not dared to meet or pursue him, when he lately ran along the coast of *Greece*, fast by them where they lay.

This good successe added much reputation to the *Macedonian*, and emboldened him 40 to make strong war upon the *Ætolians*, at their own doores. As for the *Romans* either some displeasure, conceived against their Confederates, or some fear of danger at home, when *Asdrubal* was ready to fall upon *Italy*, caused them to give over the care of things in *Greece*, and leave their friends there to their own fortunes. The *Ætolians* therefore being driven to great extremity, were faine to sue for peace unto *Philip*; and accept it, upon what ever conditions it best pleased him. The agreement was no sooner made, than *P. Sempronius* with ten thousand foot, a thousand horse, and thirty five gallies, came over in great haste (though somewhat too late) to trouble it. Hearing how things went in *Ætolia*, he turned aside to *Dyrrachium* & *Apollonia*, making a great noise, as if with these his own forces he would work wonders. But it was not long ere *Philip* 50 came to visit him, and found him tame enough. The King presented him battell, but he refused it: and suffering the *Macedonians* to waste the Countrey round about, before his eyes, kept himself closte within the wals of *Apollonia*, making some overtures of peace: which caused *Philip* to return home quietly. The *Romans* had not so great cause to be displeased with the *Ætolians*, as had *Philip*, to take in evil part the demeanor of the *Carthaginians*. For notwithstanding the royall offer that he made them, to serve their turn in *Italy*, and assist them, in getting their hearts desire, before he would expect any requital: they had not sent any fleet, as in reason they ought, and as (considering his want of sufficient ability by Sea) it is likely they were bound, either to secure the transportation of

of his Army, or to free his coast from the Roman and *Ætolian* Piracies. Onely once they came to his help, which was at his last journey into *Achaia*. But they were gone again before his arrivall: having done nothing, and pretending fear of being taken by the *Romans*, even at such time as *Philip*, with his own Navie, durst boldly pass by Sea, and found none that durst oppose him. This retchless dealing of the *Carthaginians*, may therefore seem to have been one of *Hanno* his tricks, whereof *Hannibal* so bitterly complained. For it could not but grieve this malicious man exceedingly, to hear that so great a King made offer to serve in person under *Hannibal*, and required the assistance of the same *Hannibal*, as of a man likely to make Monarchs, and alter the affairs of the world at pleasure. Therefore he had reason, such as envie could suggest, to perswade the *Carthaginians* unto a sale and thrifty course: which was, not to admit into the fellowship of their *Italian* wars so mighty a Prince; whom change of affection might make dangerous to their Empire, or his much affection unto *Hannibal*, more dangerous to their liberty. Rather they should do well to save charges, and feed the *Macedonian* with hopes; by making many promises of sending a fleet and some other succours. This would cost nothing, yet would it serve to terrifie the *Romans*, and compell them to send part of their forces from home, that might finde this Enemy work abroad. So should the *Roman* Armies be lessened in *Italy*, and *Philip*, when once he was engaged in the warre, be urged unto the prosecution, by his own necessity: putting the *Carthaginians* to little or no charges; yea, scarce to the labour of giving him thanks. Now if it might come to pass, as *Hannibal* every day did promise, that *Rome*, and all *Italy* should within a while be at the devotion of *Carthage*: better it were, that the City should be free, so as the troublesome *Greeks* might address their complaints unto the *Carthaginians*, as competent Judges between them and the *Macedonian*, than that *Hannibal*, with the power of *Africk*, should wait upon *Philip*, as his Executioner, to fulfill his will and pleasure, in doing such injuries, as would both make the name of a *Carthaginian* hatefull in *Greece*, and oblige *Philip* to be no less impudent, in fulfilling all requests of *Hannibal*. Whether the counsel of *Hanno* and his fellows were such as this, or whether the *Carthaginians*, of their own disposition, without his advice, were too sparing, and carelesly, the matter (as farre as concerned *Philip*) came to one reckoning. For they did him no manner of good, but rather dodged with him, even in their little courtesie which they most pretended. And this perhaps was part of the reason, why he began the building of an hundred Gallies, as if he would let them and others know, whereto his proper strength would have reached, had he not vainly given credit to faithlesse promises. When therefore the *Ætolians* had submitted themselves already: and when the *Romans* desired his friendship, as might be thought, for very fear of him, with reputation enough, and not as a forsaken Client of the *Carthaginians*, but a Prince able to have succoured them in their necessity, he might give over the warre, and, without reprehension, leave them to themselves. For he had wilfully entred into trouble for their sakes; but they despised him, as if the quarrell were merely his own, and he unable to manage it.

The vanity of which their conceits would appear unto them, when they should see, that with his proper strength he had finished the warre, and concluded it highly to his honour. So the year following it was agreed, by the mediation of the *Epirots*, *Acarnanians*, and others, That the *Romans* should retain three or four Towns of *Illyria*, which they had recovered in this war, being part of their old *Illyrian* conquest: Places no way belonging to the *Macedonian*; and therefore perhaps inserted into the covenants, that somewhat might seem to have been gotten. On the other side, the *Attinians* were appointed to return under the obedience of *Philip*: who, if they were (as *Ortelius* probably conjectures) the people of the Countrey about *Apollonia*, then did the *Romans* abandon part of their gettings; whereby it appears, that they did not give peace, as they would seem to have done, but accepted it, upon conditions somewhat to their losse.

The Confederates and Dependants of the *Macedonian*, comprehended in this Peace, were *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*, the *Acheans*, *Boeotians*, *Thessalians*, *Acarnanians*, and *Epirots*. On the *Roman* side were named, first, the people of *Ilium*, as an honourable remembrance of the *Romans* descent from *Troy*; then, *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*; *Pleurotus* an *Illyrian* Prince; and *Nabis* the tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, together with the *Eleans*, *Messenians*, and

and *Athenians*. The *Ætolians* were omitted, belike, as having agreed for themselves before. But the *Eleans* and *Messenians*, followers of the *Ætolians*, (and by them, as is most likely, comprised in their league with *Philip*) were also inserted by the *Romans*; that were never slow in offering their friendship to small and feeble Nations. As for the *Athenians*: they stood much upon their old honour; and loved to bear a part, though they did nothing, in all great actions. Yet the setting down of their names in this Treaty, served the *Romans* to good purpose: forasmuch as they were a busie people, and ministred occasion to renew the War, when means did better serve to follow it.

## §. XIII.

How the Romans began to recover their strength by degrees, The noble affection of the Romans, in relieving the publick necessities of their Common-weal.

It was a great fault in the *Carthaginians*, that embracing so many Enterprises at once, they followed all by the halves: and wasted more men and money to no purpose, than would have served (if good order had been taken) to finish the whole Warre, in farre shorter space; and make themselves Lords of all that the *Romans* held. This error had become the less harmfull, if their care of *Italy* had been such as it ought. But they suffered *Hannibal* to weary himself with expectation of their promised supplies: which were still deferred from year to year, caused as great opportunities to be lost, as a Conquerour could have desired. The death of *Posthumus*, and destruction of his whole Army in *Gaulle*; the begun rebellion of the *Sardinians*; the death of *Hiero* their friend in *Syracuse*; with great alterations, much to their prejudice, in the whole Isle of *Sicily*; as also that War of which we last spake, threatened from *Macedon*; happening all at one time, and that so nearly after their terrible overthrow at *Cannæ*, among so many revolts of their *Italian* Confederates; would utterly have lunk the *Roman* State; had the *Carthaginians*, if not the first year, yet at least the second, sent over to *Hannibal* the forces that were decreed. It is not to be doubted, that even this diversity of great hopes, appearing from all parts, administred matter unto *Hanno*, or such as *Hanno* was, wherupon to work. For though it were in the power of *Carthage*, to performe all that was decreed for *Italy*: yet could not that proportion hold, when so many new concurrences brought each along with them their new care; and required their severall Armies. This had not been a very bad excuse, if any one of the many occasions offered had been thoroughly prosecuted: though it stood with best reason, that the foundation of all other hopes and comforts, which was the prosperity of *Hannibal* in his *Italian* War, should have been strengthened; whatsoever had become of the rest. But the slender Troups, wherewith the *Carthaginians* fed the Warre in *Spain*; the lingring aide which they sent to uphold the *Sardinian* rebellion, when it was already well-near beaten down; their triling with *Philip*; and (amongst all these their attempts) their hasty catching at *Sicily*: little deserved to be thought good reasons of neglecting the main point, whereto all the rest had reference. Rather every one of these Actions, considered a part by it self, was no otherwise to be allowed, as discreetly undertaken, or substantially followed; than by making supposition. That the care of *Italy* made the *Carthaginians* more negligent in all things else. Yet if these allegations would not serve to content *Hannibal*, then must he patiently endure to know, that his own Citizens were jealous of his Greatnesse, and durst not trust him with so much power, as should enable him to wrong the State at home.

Whatsoever he heard or thought, *Hannibal* was glad to apply himself to Necessity; so to feed his *Italian* friends with hopes; and to trifle away the time about *Nola*, *Naples*, *Cumæ*, and other places: being loth to spend his Army in an hard siege, that was to be reserved for a work of more importance. Many offers he made upon *Nola*, but always with bad sadnesse. Once *Marcellus* fought a battell with him there: yet under the very Wallies of the Town; having the assistance of the Citizens, that were grown better affected to the *Roman* side, since the Heads that inclined them to rebellion, were cut off. About a thousand men *Hannibal* in that fight lost: which was no great marvell; his forces being then divided, and employed in sundry parts of *Italy* at once. *Naples* was even in those dayes, a strong City; and required a years work to have taken it by force.

Cccccc 2

Where

Wherefore the earnest desire of *Hannibal* to get it, was always frustrate. Upon the town of *Cuma* they of *Capua* had their plot, and were in hope to take it by cunning. They sent to the chief Magistrates of the *Cumans*, desiring them (as being also *Campanians*) to be present at a solemn sacrifice of the Nation, where they would consult about their general good: promising to bring thither a sufficient guard, to assure the whole Assembly from any danger that might come by the *Romans*. This motion the *Cumans* made shew to entertain; but privily sent word of all to *T. Sempronius Gracchus* the *Roman* Consul.

*Gracchus* was a very good man of war, and happily chosen Consul in so dangerous a time. His Colleague should have been *Postumius Albinus*, that was lately slain by the *Gauls*: after whose death *Marcellus* was chosen, as being judged the fittest man to encounter with *Hannibal*. But the *Roman* Augures either found some religious impediment that nullified the election of *Marcellus*; or at least they failed so to have done, because this was the first time, that ever two *Plebeian* Consuls were chosen together. *Marcellus* therefore gave over the place; and *Q. Fabius Maximus*, the late famous Dictator, was substituted in his room. But *Fabius* was detained in the City, about matters of religion or superstition: wherewith *Rome* was commonly, especially in times of danger, very much troubled. So *Gracchus* alone, with a Consular Army, waited upon *Hannibal* among the *Campanians*: not able to meet the enemy in field; yet intensive to all occasions, that should be presented. The *Volentes*, or Slaves, that lately had been armed, were no small part of his followers. These and the rest of his men, he continually trained: and had not a greater care, to make his Army skillfull in the exercises of war, than to keep it from quarrels that might arise by upbraiding one another with their base conditions.

Whilest the Consul was thus busied at *Linternum*, the Senators of *Cuma* sent him word of all that had passed between them and the *Capuans*. It was a good occasion to flesh his men, and make them confident against the Enemy; of whom hitherto they had had experience. *Gracchus* therefore put himself into *Cuma*: whence he issued at such time, as the Magistrates of that City were expected by the *Campanians*. The Sacrifice was to be performed by night, at a place called *Hama*: three miles from *Cuma*. There lay *Marius Albius* the chief Magistrate of *Capua*, with fourteen thousand men; not wholly intent either to the Sacrifice, or to any danger that might interrupt it; but rather desiring how to surprise others, than fearing himself to be assailed. The Consul therefore, suffering none to goe forth of *Cuma*, that might bear word of him to the Enemies, issued out of the town when it grew dark: his men being well refreshed with meat and sleep, the day before, that they might hold out the better in this nights service. So he came upon the *Capuans* unawares, and slew more than two thousand of them, together with their Commander, losing not above a hundred of his own men. Their camp he took; but carried not long to rise it, for fear of *Hannibal*, who lay not farre off. By this his providence, he escaped a greater loss, than he had brought upon the Enemies. For when *Hannibal* was informed how things went at *Hama*, forthwith he marched thither: hoping to finde those young souldiers, and slaves, busied in making spoile, and loading themselves with the booty. But they were all gotten safe within *Cuma*, which partly for anger, partly for desire of gaining it, and partly at the urgent entreaty of the *Capuans*, *Hannibal* assailed the next day. Much labour, and with ill successe, the *Carthaginians* and their followers spent about this town. They raised a wooden Tower against it, which they brought close unto the walls; thinking thereby to force an Entry. But the Defendants, on the inside of the wall, raised against this an high Tower; whence they made resistance, and found means at length to consume with fire the work of their Enemies. While the *Carthaginians* were busied in quenching the fire, the *Romans*, falling out of the town at two gates, charged them valiantly, and drove them to their Trenches, with the slaughter of about fourteen hundred. The Consul wisely founded the Retreat, ere his men were too far engaged, and *Hannibal* in a readiness to require their service. Neither would he, in the pride of his good success, adventure forth against the Enemy; who presented him battell the day following, near unto the walls. *Hannibal* therefore, seeing no likelihood to prevail in that which he had taken in hand, brake up the siege, and returned to his old camp at *Tifara*. About these times, and shortly after, when *Fabius* the other Consul had taken the field; some small towns were recovered by the *Romans*, and the people severely punished for their revolt.

The

The *Carthaginian* Army was too small, to fill with garrisons all places that had yeeded; and withall to abide (as it must do) strong in the field. Wherefore *Hannibal*, attending the supply from home, that should enable him to strike at *Rome* it self, was driven in the mean time to alter his course of war: and, instead of making (as formerly he had done) a general invasion upon the whole Country, to passe from place to place; and wait upon occasions, that grew dayly more commodious to the enemy, than to him. The Country of the *Hirpines* and *Samnites* was grievously wasted by *Marcellus*, in the absence of *Hannibal*: as also was *Campania*, by *Fabius* the Consul; when *Hannibal* having followed *Marcellus* to *Nola*, and received there the losse before mentioned, was gone to winter in *Apulia*. These people shewed not the like spirit in defending their lands, and fighting for the *Carthaginian* Empire, as in former times they had done, when they contended with the *Romans*, in their own behalf, to get the Sovereignty. They held it reason, that they should be protected by such as thought to have dominion over them: whereby at once they overburdened their new Lords; and gave unto their old, the more easie means to take revenge of their defection.

The people of *Rome* were very incentive, as necessity constrained them, to the work that they had in hand. They continued *Fabius* in his Consulship: and joyned with him *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*, whom they had appointed unto that honour the year before. Of these two, *Fabius* was called the Shield: and *Marcellus* the *Roman* Sword. In *Fabius* it was highly, and upon just reason, commended, That being himself Consul, and holding the Election, he did not stand upon nice points of formality, or regard what men might think of his ambition, but caused himself to be chosen with *Marcellus*; knowing in what need the City stood of able Commanders. The great name of these Consuls, and the great preparations which the *Romans* made, served to put the *Campanians* in fear, that *Capua* it self should be besieged. To prevent this, *Hannibal*, at their earnest entreaty, came from *Arpi*: (where he lay, hearkening after newes from *Tarentum*) and, having with his presence comforted these his friends, fell on the sudden upon *Puteoli*, a Sea-town of *Campania*; about which he spent three dayes in vain, hoping to have wonne it. The garrison in *Puteoli* was six thousand strong: and did their duty so well, that the *Carthaginian*, finding no hope of good successe, could only shew his anger upon the fields there, and about *Naples*; which having done, and once more (with as ill successe as before) assailed *Nola*, he bent his course to *Tarentum*: wherein he had very great intelligence. Whilest he was in his progresse thither; *Hanno* made a journey against *Beneventum*: and *T. Gracchus*, the last years Consul, hasting from *Nuceria*, met him there; and fought with him a battell. *Hanno* had with him about seventeen thousand foot, *Brutians* and *Lucans* for the most part: besides twelve hundred horse, very few of which were *Italians*, all the rest, *Numidian* and *Morres*. He held the *Roman* work four hours, ere it could be perceived to which side the victory would incline. But *Gracchus* his souldiers, which were all (in a manner) the late armed slaves, had received from their Generall a peremptory denunciation, That this day or never they must purchase their liberty, bringing every man for price thereof, an enemies head. The sweet reward of liberty was so greatly desired, that none of them feared any danger in earning it: whether that vain labour, imposed by their Generall, of cutting off the slain enemies heads, troubled them exceedingly; and hindered the service by employment of so many hands in a work so little concerning the victory. *Gracchus* thereto: finding his own error, wisely corrected it: proclaiming aloud, That they should cast away the heads, and spare the trouble of cutting off any more; for that all should have liberty immediately after the battell, if they wonne the day. This encouragement made them run headlong upon the Enemy; whom their desperate fury had soon overthrowen, if the *Roman* horse could have made their part good against the *Numidian*. But though *Hanno* did what he could, and pressed so hard upon the *Roman* battell, that four thousand of the slaves, (for fear either of him, or of the punishment which *Gracchus* had threatened before the battell unto those that should not valiantly behave themselves) retired unto a ground of strength; yet was he glad at length to save himself by flight, when the Grosse of his Army was broken; being unable to remedy the losse. Leaving the field, he was accompanied by no more than two thousand, most of which were horse; all the rest were either slain or taken. The *Roman* Generall gave unto all his Souldiers that reward of liberty which he had promised: but unto those four thousand, which had recoyled

Cccc 3

unto

unto the Hill, he added this light punishment; That as long as they served in the wars, they should neither eat nor drink otherwile than standing, unless sickness forced them to break his order. So the victorious army returned to *Beneventum*: where the newly enfranchised Souldiers were feasted in publick by the town-men; some sitting, some standing, and all of them having their heads covered (as was the custome of slaves manumitted) with caps of white wooll. The picture of this Feast (as a thing worthy of remembrance) was afterward hung up in a Table by *Gracchus*, in the Temple of Liberty, which his father had built and dedicated. This was indeed the first battell, worthy of great note, which the *Carthaginians* had lost since the coming of *Hannibal* into *Italy*: the victories of *Marcellus* at *Nola*, and of this *Gracchus* before at *Hama*, being things of small importance.

Thus the *Romans* through industry, by little and little, repaired the great Breach in their Estate, which *Hannibal* had made at *Canna*. But all this while, and long after this, their Treasury was so poor, that no industry nor art could serve to help it. The fruits of their grounds did only (and perhaps hardly) serve to feed their Towns and Armies, without any surplusage, that might be exchanged for other needfull commodities. Few they were in *Italy* that continued to pay them tribute: which also they could worse do than before; as living upon the same trade, and subject to the same inconveniences, which enfeebled *Rome* it self. *Sicil* and *Sardinia*, that were wont to yeeld great profit, hardly now maintained the *Roman* Armies, that lay in those Provinces, to hold them safe, and in good order. As for the Citizens of *Rome*, every one of them suffered his part of the detriment, which the Common-wealth sustained, and could now do least for his Countrey, when most need was: as also the number of them was much decreased; so as it money should be raised upon them by the *Popl*, yet must it be farre lesse, than in former times. The Senate therefore diligently considering the greatnesse of the warre within the bowels of *Italy*, that could not be thence expelled, without the exceeding charge of many good Armies; the perill, wherein *Sicil* and *Sardinia* stood, both of the *Carthaginians*, and of many among the Naturals declining from the friendship or subjection of *Rome*; the threats of the *Macedonian*, ready to land in the Eastern parts of *Italy*, if they were not at the cost to finde him work at home; the greater threats of *Asdrubal*, to follow his brother over the *Alpes*, as soon as he could rid himself of the *Scipio's* in *Spain*; and the poverty of the Common-wealth, which had not money for any one of these mortall dangers; were driven almost even to extream want of counsell. But being urged by the violence of swift necessity, signified in the letters of the two *Scipio's* from *Spain*; they resolved upon the only course, without the which the City could not have subsisted.

They called the people to assembly; wherein *Quintus Fulvius* the Prætor laid open the publick wants; and plainly said, That in this exigent, there must be no taking of money for victuall, weapons, apparell, or the like things needfull to the Souldiers; but that such as had stufte, or were Artificers, must trust the Common-wealth with the Loan of their commodities and labours, untill the warre were ended. Hereunto he so effectually exhorted all men, especially the Publicans or customers, and those which in former times had lived upon their dealing in the common Revenues, that the charge was undertaken by private men; and the Army in *Spain*, as well supplied, as if the Treasury had been full. Shortly after this, *Marcus Atilius Regulus*, and *Publius Furius Philus*, the *Roman* Censors, taking in hand the redresse of disorders within the City, were chiefly intire to the correction of those, that had misbehaved themselves in this present warre. They began with *L. Cecilius Metellus*, who after the battell at *Canna*, had held discourse with some of his Companions, about flying beyond the Seas; as if *Rome*, and all *Italy*, had been no better than lost. After him they took in hand those, that having brought to *Rome* the message of their fellowes made prisoners at *Canna*, returned not back to *Hannibal*, as they were bound by oath; but thought themselves thereof sufficiently discharged, in that they had stepped once back into his Camp, with pretence of taking better notice of the Captives names. All these were now pronounced infamous by the Censors: as also were a great many more; even whosoever had not served in the warres, after the terme which the Lawes appointed: Neither was the note of the Censors at this time (as otherwise it had used to be) hurtfull only in reputation: but greater weight was added thereunto, by this Decree of the Senate,

Senate, following; That all such as were noted with infamy by these Censors, should be transported into *Sicil*, there to serve untill the end of the Warre; under the same hard conditions, that were imposed upon the Remainder of the Army beaten at *Canna*. The office of the Censors was, to take the List and account of the Citizens; to choole or displace the Senators; and to set notes of disgrace (without further punishment) upon those, whose dishonest or unseemly behaviour fell not within the compais of the Law. They took also an account of the *Roman* Gentlemen: amongst whom they distributed the publick Horles of service, unto such as they thought meet; or took them away for their misbehaviour. Generally, they had the oversight of mens lives and manners: and their censure was much revered and feared; though it extended no further, than to putting men out of rank; or making them change their Tribe; or (which was the most that they could doe) causing them to pay some Duties to the Treasury, from which others were exempted. But betwixt the care of this generall Taxe, and matters of Morality, they had the charge of all publick Works; as mending of High-ways, Bridges, and Water-courses; the reparations of Temples, Porches, and such other buildings. If any man incroached upon the Streets, High-ways, or other places that ought to be common, the Censors compelled him to make amends. They had also the setting out of Lands, Customes, and other publick Revenues to farme: so that most of the Citizens of *Rome* were beholding unto this Office; as maintaining themselves by some of the Trades thereto belonging. And this was no small help to conserve the dignity of the Senate: the commonalty being obnoxious unto the Censors, which were always of that Order, and carefull to uphold the reputation thereof. But the Common-wealth being now impoverished by Warre, and having small store of Lands to let, or of customes that were worth the farming, *Regulus* & *Philus* troubled not themselves much with perusing the Temples, or other decayed places, that needed reparations: or if they took a view of what was requisite to be done in this kinde; yet forbore they to set any thing in hand, because they had not wherewith to pay. Herein again appeared a notable generosity of the *Romans*. They that had been accustomed in more happy times, to undertake such pieces of work, offered now themselves as willingly to the Censors, as if there had been no such want: promising liberally their cost and travell; without expectation of any payment, before the end of the Warre. In like sort, the Masters of those slaves, that lately had been enfranchised by *Gracchus*, were very well contented to forbear the price of them, untill the City were in better case to pay. In this generall inclination of the Multitude, to relieve, as farre forth as every one was able, the common necessity; all the goods of Orphans, and of Widowes living under Paronage, were brought into the Treasury; and there the Questor kept a Book of all that was laid out for the sustenance of these Widowes and Orphans: whilst the whole stock was used by the City. This good example of those which remained in the Town, prevailed with the Souldiers abroad; so that (the poorer sort excepted) they refused to take pay; and called those *Mercenaries*, that did accept it, when their Countrey was in so great want.

The twelve hundred Talents, wrongfully extorted from the *Carthaginians*, nor any injuries following, done by the *Romans* in the height of their pride; yielded half so much commodity, as might be laid in ballance against these miseries, whereinto their Estate was now reduced. Nevertheless if we consider things aright the calamities of this Warre did rather inable *Rome* to deal with those Enemies, whom she forthwith undertook, than abate or slacken the growth of that large Dominion, whereto she attained, ere the youngest of those men was dead, whose names we have already mentioned. For by this hammering, the *Roman* metall grew more hard and solide: and by paring the branches of private fortunes, the Root and Heart of the Common-wealth was corroborated. So grew the City of *Athens*, when *Xerxes* had burnt the Town to ashes, and taken from every particular Citizen, all hope of other felicity, than that which rested in the common happinesse of the universality. Certain it is, (as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath judiciously observed) That a State, whose dimension or stemme is small, may aptly serve to be foundation of a great Monarchy: which chiefly comes to passe, where all regard of domestick prosperity is laid aside; and every mans care addressed to the benefit of his Countrey. Hereof I might say that our Age hath seen a great example, in the united Provinces in the Netherlands; whose present riches, and



and strength grew chiefly from that ill assurance, which each of their Towns, or almost of their Families, perceived it self to hold, whilst the generality was oppressed by the Duke of *Alva*; were it so, that the people had thereby grown as warlike, as by extreme industry, and straining themselves to fill their publick Treasury, they are all grown wealthy, strong at Sea, & able to wage great Armies for their services by Land. Wherefore if we value at such a rate as we ought, the patient resolution, conformity to good Order, obedience to Magistrates, with many other Vertues, and above all other, the great love of the Common-weal, which was found in *Rome* in these dangerous times: we may truly say, That the City was never in greater likelihood to prosper. Neither can it be deemed otherwise, than that if the same affections of the people had lasted, when their Empire, being grown more large and beautifull, should in all reason have been more dear unto them; if the riches and delicacies of *Asia* had not infected them with sensuality, and carried their appetites mainly to those dangerous, wherein they thought their well-being to consist; if all the Citizens and Subjects of *Rome* could have believed their own interest to be as great, in those wars which these latter Emperours made for their defence, as in these which were managed by the Consuls: the Empire, founded upon so great vertue, could not have been thrown down by the hands of rude Barbarians, were they never so many. But unto all Dominions God hath set their periods: Who though he hath given unto Man the knowledge of those waies, by which Kingdomes rise and fall; yet hath left him subject unto the affections, which draw on these fatal! changes, in their times appointed.

## §. XIII.

*The Romans win some Towns back from Hannibal. Hannibal wins Tarentum. The siege of Capua. Two victories of Hannibal. The journey of Hannibal to the gates of Rome. Capua taken by the Romans.*

AS the people of *Rome* strained themselves to the utmost, for maintaining the Warre: so their Generals abroad omitted no part of industry, in seeking to recover what had been lost. The Town of *Casiline*, *Fabius* besieged. It was well defended by the *Carthaginian* garrison, and likely to have been relieved by those of *Capua*, if *Marcellus* from *Nola*, had not come to the assistance of his Colleague. Nevertheless, the place held out so obstinately, that *Fabius* was purposed to give it over: saying, that the enterprise was not great; yet as difficult, as a thing of more importance. But *Marcellus* was of a contrary opinion. He said, That many such things, as were not at first to have been undertaken by great Commanders, ought yet, when once they were taken in hand, to be prosecuted unto the best effect. So the siege held on: and the Town was pressed so hard, that the *Campans* dwelling therein grew fearfull, and craved parlee, offering to give it up, so as all might have leave to depart in safety, whither they pleased. Whilst they were thus treating of conditions: or whilst they were issuing forth, according to the composition already made; (for it is diversly reported) *Marcellus* seizing upon a Gate, entred with his Army, and put all to sword that came in their way. Fifty of those that were first gotten out, ran to *Fabius* the Consul, who saved them, and lent them to *Capua* in safety; all the rest were either slain, or made prisoners. If *Fabius* deserved Commendations, by holding his word good unto these fifty; I know not how the slaughter of the rest, or imprisonment afterward of such as escaped the heat of execution, could be excused by *Marcellus*. It may be that he helped himself, after the *Roman* fashion, with some equivocation, but he shall pay for it hereafter. In like sort was *Mount Marsam* in *Gasconie* taken by the Marshall *Monluc*, when I was a young man in *France*. For whilst he entertained parlee about composition; the besieged ranne all from their severall guards, upon hasty desire of being acquainted with the conditions proposed. The Marshall therefore discovering a part of the Walls unguarded, entred by *Scalado*, and put all save the Governour unto the sword. Herein that Governour of *Mount Marsam* committed two gross errors; the one, in that he gave no order for the Captains and Companies, to hold themselves in their places; the other, in that he was content to parlee without Pledges for assurance given and received. Some such oversight the Governour of *Casiline* seemeth to have committed; yet neither the advantage taken by *Marcellus*, or by *Monluc*, was very honourable.

able. When this Work was ended, many small Towns of the *Samnites*, and some of the *Lucans* and *Apulians*, were recovered: wherein were taken, or slain about five and twenty thousand of the Enemies; and the Country grievously wasted by *Fabius*, *Marcellus* lying sick at *Nola*.

*Hannibal* in the mean while was about *Tarentum*; waiting to hear from those, that had promised to give up the Town. But *M. Valerius* the *Roman* Propretor had thrust so many men into it, that the Traitors durst not stir. Wherefore the *Carthaginian* was faine to depart, having wearied himself in vain with expectation. Yet he wasted not the Countrey, but contented himself with hope, that they would please him better in time following. So he departed thence toward *Salapia*: which he chose for his winter place; and began to victuall it when Summer was but half past. It is said, that he was in love with a young *Wench* in that Town, in which regard it he began his winter more timely than otherwise he required, He did not like the *Romans*; whom necessity enforced, to make their Summer last as long as they were able to travell up and down the Countrey.

About this time began great troubles in *Sicill*, whither *Marcellus* the Consul was sent, to take such order for the Province, as need should require. Of the doings there, which wore out more time than his Consulship, we will speak hereafter.

The new Consuls, chosen at *Rome*, were *Q. Fabius* the sonne of the present Consul, and *T. Sempronius Gracchus* the second time. The *Romans* found it needfull for the publick service, to employ oftentimes their best able men: and therefore made it lawfull, during the war, to recontinue their Officers, and choose such as had lately held their places before; without regarding any distance of time, which was otherwise required. The old *Fabius* became Lieutenant unto his son: which was perhaps the respect, that most commended his sonne unto the place. It is noted, That when the old man came into the Camp, and his sonne rode forth to meet him: eleven of the twelve *Lictors*, which carried an axe with a bundle of rods before the Consul, suffered him, in regard of due reverence, to passe by them on horse-back, which was against the custom. But the son perceiving this, commanded the last of his *Lictors* to note it: who thereupon bade the old *Fabius* alight, and come to the Consul on his feet. The father chearfully did so, saying, It was my mind, sonne, to make tryall, whether thou didst understand thy self to be Consul. *Cassius Albinus* a wealthy Citizen of *Arpi*, who after the battell at *Cannae*, had holpen the *Carthaginian* into that Town, seeing now the fortune of the *Romans* to amend; came privily to this Consul *Fabius*, and offered to render it back unto him, if he might be therefore well rewarded. The Consul purposed to follow old examples; and to make this *Albinus* a pattern to all traitors; using him as *Camilus* and *Fabritius* had done those that offered their faithfull service against the *Falisci*, and King *Pyrrhus*. But *Q. Fabius* the father, was of another opinion: and said, it was a matter of dangerous consequence, That it should be thought more safe to revolt from the *Romans*, than to turn unto them. Wherefore it was concluded, that he should be sent to the Town of *Cales*, and there kept as prisoner, untill they could better resolve, what to do with him, or what use to make of him. *Hannibal* understanding that *Albinus* was gone and among the *Romans*, took it not sorrowfully; but thought this a good occasion to seize upon all the mans riches, which were great. Yet that he might seem rather severe, than covetous, he sent for the wife and children of *Albinus* into his camp: where having examined them by torment, partly concerning the departure and intentions of this fugitive, partly, and more strictly, about his riches, what they were, and where they lay, He condemned them, as partakers of the treason, to be burt alive; and took all their goods unto himself. *Fabius* the Consul shortly after came to *Arpi*: which he wonne by *Scalado*, in a stormy and rainy night. Five thousand of *Hannibals* Souldiers lay in the town; and of the *Arpines* themselves, there were about three thousand. These were thrust foremost by the *Carthaginian* Garrison, when it was understood, that the *Romans* had gotten over the Wall, and broken open a Gate. For the Souldiers held the townsmen suspected; and therefore thought it no wisdom to trust them at their backs. But after some little resistance, the *Arpines* gave over fight, and entertained parley with the *Romans*: protesting, that they had been betrayed by their Princes, and were become subject to the *Carthaginians*, against their wils. In proceesse of this discourse, the *Arpine* Prætor went unto the *Roman* Consul: and receiving his faith for security of the Town, presently

presently made head against the garrison. This notwithstanding, like it is that *Hannibal* men continued to make good resistance. For when almost a thousand of them, that were *Spaniards*, offered to leave their companions, and serve on the *Romans* side, it was yet covenanted, that the *Carthaginians* should be suffered to passe forth quietly, and return to *Hannibal*. This was performed: and *Arpi* became *Roman* again, with little other losse, than of him that had betrayed it. About the same time *Cliternum* was taken by *Sempronius Tuditanus*, one of the *Prætors*: and unto *Cneus Fulvius*, another of the *Prætors*, an hundred & twelve Gentlemen of *Capua* offered their service, upon no other condition, than to have their goods restored unto them, when their City should be recovered by the *Romans*. This was a thing of small importance: but considering the general hatred of the *Campanians* towards *Rome*, it served to discover the inclination of the *Italians* in those times; and how their affections recoyled from *Hannibal*, when there was no appearance of those mighty succours, that had been promised from *Carthage*. The *Consentines* also, and the *Thurines*, people of the *Bruttians*, which had yielded themselves to *Hannibal*, returned again to their old allegiance. Others would have followed their example, but that one *L. Pomponius*, who of a Publican had made himself a Captain, and gotten reputation by some petty exploits in foraging the Countrey, was slain by *Hanno*, with a great multitude of those that followed him. *Hannibal* in the mean while had all his care bent upon *Tarentum*; which if he could take, it seemed that it would stand him in good stead, for drawing over that help out of *Macedon*, which his *Carthaginians* failed to fend. Long he waited, ere he could bring his desire to pass: and being loth to hazard his forces, where he hoped to prevail by intelligence; He contented himself with taking in some poor Towns of the *Salentines*. At length, his Agents within *Tarentum*, found means to accomplish their purpose, and his with. One *Phileas*, that was of their conspiracy, who lay at *Rome* as Embassadour, practising with the Hostages of the *Tarentines*, and such as had the keeping of them, conveyed them by night out of the City. But he and his company the next day were so closely pursued, that all of them were taken, and brought back to *Rome*, where they suffered death as traitors. By reason of this cruelty, or severity, the people of *Tarentum* grew to hate the *Romans* more generally and earnestly than before. As for the Conspirators, they followed their business the more diligently, as knowing what reward they were to expect, if their intention should happen to be discovered. Wherefore they sent again to *Hannibal*: and acquainting him with the manner of their plot, made the same composition with him for the *Tarentines*, which they of *Capua* had made before. *Nico* and *Philomenes*, two the chief among them, used much to goe forth of the Town on hunting by night, as if they durst not take their pleasure by day, for fear of the *Carthaginians*. Seldome or never they missed of their game: for the *Carthaginians* prepared it ready for their hands, that they might not seem to have been abroad upon other occasion. From the camp of *Hannibal*, it was about three daies journey to *Tarentum*, if it should have marched thither with his whole Army. This caused his long abode in one place the less to be suspected: as also to make his enemies the more secure. He caused it to be given out, that he was sick. But when the *Romans* within *Tarentum*, were grown careless of such his neighbourhood, and the Conspirators had set their business in order; He took with him ten thousand the most expedite of his horse and foot; and long before break of day, made all speed thitherward. Fourscore light horse of the *Numidians* ran a great way before him, beating all the wayes, and killing any that they met, for fear lest he, and his troupe following him, should be discovered. It had been often the manner of some few *Numidian* horse, to do the like in former times. Wherefore the *Roman* Governour, when he heard tell in the evening, that some *Numidians* were abroad in the fields, took it for a sign, that *Hannibal* was not as yet dislodged; and gave order, that some companies should be sent out the next morning, to strip them of their booty, and send them gone. But when it grew dark night, *Hannibal* guided by *Philomenes*, came close to the town: where according to the tokens agreed upon, making a light to shew his arrivall, *Nico*, that was within the town, answered him with another light, in sign that he was ready. Presently *Nico* began to set upon one of the Gates, and to kill the watchmen. *Philomenes* went toward another gate: and whistling (as was his manner) called up the Porter, bidding him make hast, for that he had killed a great Bore, so heavy, that scarce two men could stand under it. So the Porter opened the wicket, and forthwith

forthwith entered two young men, loaden with the Bore; which *Hannibal* had prepared large enough, to be worthy the looking on. While the Porter stood on doring at the largeness of the beast, *Philomenes* ran him through with his Bore-spear: and letting in some thirty armed men, fell upon all the watch; whom when he had slain, he entered the great gate. So the Army of *Hannibal* entering *Tarentum* at two Gates went directly toward the Market place, where both parts met. Thence they were distributed by their General, and sent into all quarters of the City, with *Tarentines* to be the guides. They were commanded to kill all the *Romans*, and not to hurt the Citizens, or better performance hereof, *Hannibal* willed the Conspirators, that when any of their friends appeared in fight, they should bid him be quiet, and of good cheer. All the Town was in an uproar: but few could tell what the matter meant. A *Roman* trumpet was unskillfully sounded by a *Greek* in the Theater: which helped the suspicion, bon of the *Tarentines*, that the *Romans* were about to spoil the Town; and of the *Roman*, that the Citizens were in commotion. The Governour fled into the Port: and taking boat, got into the Citadell, that stood in the mouth of the Haven; whence he might easily perceive the next morning, how all had passed. *Hannibal* assembling the *Tarentines*, gave them to understand, what good affection he bore them; inveighed bitterly against the *Romans*, as tyrannous oppressors; and spake what else he thought it for the present. This done, and having gotten such spoil as was to be had of the Souldiers' goods in the Town, he addressed himself against the Citadell; hoping that if the Garrison would fallly out, he might give them such a blow, as should make them unable to defend the Piece. According to his expectation it partly fell out. For when he began to make his approaches, the *Romans* in a bravery falling forth, gave charge upon his men: who fell back of purpose according to direction, till they had drawn on as many as they could, and so far from their strength, as they durst adventure. Then gave *Hannibal* a sign to his *Carthaginians*, who lay prepared ready for the purpose: and fiercely setting upon the Enemy, drave him back with great slaughter, as fast as he could run; so that afterwards he durst not issue forth. The Citadell stood up on a Demi-Iland, that was plain ground; and fortified only with a Ditch and Wall against the Town, whereunto it was joyned by a cawley. This cawley *Hannibal* intended to fortifie in like sort against the Citadell; to the end that the *Tarentines* might be able, without his help, to keep themselves from all danger thence. His work in few dayes went so well forward, without impediment from the besieged, that he conceived hope of winning the piece it self, by taking a little more pains. Wherefore he made ready all sorts of engines, to force the place. But whilest he was busied in his works, there came by sea a strong supply from *Metapontum*: which took away all hope of prevailing; and made him return to his former counsell. Now so far as much as the *Tarentine* fleet lay within the haven, and could not pass forth, whilest the *Romans* held the Citadell: it seemed likely that the Town would suffer want, being debarred of accustomed trade and provisions by Sea: whilest the *Roman* garrison by help of their shipping, might easily be relieved, and enabled to hold out. Against this inconvenience, it was rather wished by the *Tarentines*, than any way hoped, that their fleet could get out of the haven; to guard the mouth of it, and cut off all supply from the Enemy. *Hannibal* told them, that this might well be done: for that their Town standing in plain ground, and their streets being fair and broad, it would be no hard matter to draw the Gallies over land, and lanch them into the Sea without. This he undertook, and effected: whereby the *Roman* garrison was reduced into great necessity; though with much patience it held out, and found *Hannibal* oftentimes otherwise busied, than his affairs required.

Thus with mutuall loss on both sides, the time passed: and the *Roman* forces, growing daily stronger, *Q. Fulvius Flaccus*, with *Appius Claudius*, lately chosen Consuls, prepared to besiege the great City of *Capua*. Three and twenty Legions the *Romans* had now armed. This was a great and hasty growth from that want of men, and of all necessities, whereinto the losse at *Canna* had reduced them. But to fill up these Legions, they were fain to take up young Boyes that were under seventeen years of age: and to send Commissioners above fifty miles round, for the seeking out of such Lads as might appear serviceable, and pressing them to the Wars, making yet a Law, that their years of service, whereinto they were bound by order of the City, should be reckoned, for their benefit, from this their beginning to young, as if they had been of lawful age.

Before

Before the *Roman* Army drew near, the *Campani* felt great want of victuals, as if they had already been besieged. This happened partly by sloth of the Nation, partly by the great waste and spoil, which the *Romans* had in fore-going years made upon their grounds. They sent therefore Embassadors to *Hannibal*, desiring him to succour them ere they were closed up, as they feared to be shortly. He gave them comfortable words, and set *Hanno* with an Army to supply their wants. *Hanno* appointed them a day, against which they should be ready with all manner of carriages, to store themselves with victuals, that he would provide. Neither did he promise more than he performed. For he used great quantity of grain, that had been laid up in Cities round about, to be brought into his Camp, three miles from *Beneventum*. Thither at the time 10 appointed, came no more than forty Carts or Wagons, with a few pack-horses, as if this had been nought to victual *Capua*. Such was the retchlessness of the *Campani*. *Hanno* was exceeding angry hereat: and told them they were worse than very beasts, since hunger could not teach them to have greater care. Wherefore he gave them a longer day; again which he made provision to store them thoroughly. Of all these doings word was sent to the *Roman* Consuls, from the Citizens of *Beneventum*. Therefore *Q. Fulvius* the Consul, taking with him such strength as he thought needful for the service, came into *Beneventum* by night; where with diligence he made inquiry into the behaviour of the Enemy. He learned, that *Hanno* with part of his Army was gone abroad 20 to make provisions; that some two thousand Wagons, with a great rabble of Carters and other Varles, lay among the *Carthaginians* in their Camp; so that little good order was kept: all thought being set upon a great harvest. Hereupon the Consul bade his men prepare themselves to assail the enemies camp: and leaving all his impediments within *Beneventum*, he marched thitherward so early in the morning, that he was there with the first break of day. By coming so unexpected, he had well near forced the camp on the sudden. But it was very strong, and very well defended: so that the longer the fight continued, the less desire had *Fulvius* to lose more of his men in the attempt; seeing many of them cast away, and yet little hope of doing good. Therefore he laid, that it were better to go home leisurely and substantially to work; to send for his fellow-Consul, with the rest of their Army; and to lye between *Hanno* 30 and home; that neither the *Campani* should depart thence, nor the *Carthaginians* be able to relieve them. Being thus discouraging, and about to sound the retreat; he saw that some of his men had gotten over the enemies Rampart. There was great booty; or (which was all one to the Souldier) an opinion of much that might be gotten in that Camp. Wherefore some Ensign-bearers threw their Ensigns over the Rampart, willing their men to fetch them out, unless they would endure the shame and dishonour following such a loss. Fear of such ignominy, than which nothing could be greater, made the Souldiers adventure so desperately; that *Fulvius*, perceiving the heat of his men, changed his purpose, and encouraged those that were somewhat backward, to follow the example of them that had already gotten over the Trenches. Thus the 40 camp was won: in which were slain above six thousand; and taken above seven thousand, besides all the store of victuals, and carriages, with abundance of booty; that *Hanno* had lately gotten from the *Roman* Confederates. This misadventure, and the nearer approach of both the Consuls, made them of *Capua* send a piteous Embassage to *Hannibal*: putting him in mind of all the love that he was wont to profess into their City; and how he had made shew to affect it no less than *Carthage*. But now, they said it would be lost, as *Arpi* was lately, if he gave not strong and speedy succour. *Hannibal* answered with comfortable words: and sent away two thousand horse, to keep their grounds from spoil, whilst he himself was detained about *Tarentum*, partly by hope of winning the Citadel, partly by the disposition, which he saw in many Towns adjoining, to yield unto him. Among the Hostages of the *Tarentines*, that lately had fled out of *Rome*, and being overtaken, suffered death for their attempt; were some of the *Metapontines*, and other Cities of the *Greeks*, inhabiting that Eastern part of *Italy*, which was called of old, *Magna Græcia*. These people took to heart the death of their Hostages, and thought the punishment greater than the offence. Wherefore the *Metapontines*, as soon as the *Roman* garrison was taken from them to defend the Citadel of *Tarentum*, made no more ado, but opened their gates to *Hannibal*. The *Turines* would have done the like; upon the like reason, had not some companies lye in their 50 Town;

Town; which they feared that they should not be able to master. Nevertheless, they helped themselves by cunning: inviting to their gates *Hanno* and *Mago*, that were near at hand: against whom whilst they proffered their service to *Atiniv* the *Roman* Captain, they drew him forth to fight, and recov'ling from him, closed up their gates. A little formality they used in pretending fear, lest the enemy should break in together with the *Romans*, in saving *Atiniv* himself, and sending him away by Sea; as also in consulting a small while (because perhaps many of their chief men were unacquainted with the practice) whether they should yield to the *Carthaginian* or no. But this disposition lasted not long: for they that had removed the chief impediment, easily prevailed in the rest; 10 and delivered up the Town to *Hanno* and *Mago*. This good success, and hope of the like, detained *Hannibal* in those quarters, whilst the Consuls fortifying *Beneventum* to secure their backs, addressed themselves to the siege of *Capua*.

Many disasters befell the *Romans*, in the beginning of this great enterprise. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, a very good man of War, that had of late been twice Consul, was slain, either by treachery of some *Lucans*, that drew him into ambush, or by some *Carthaginian* stragglers, among whom he fell unawares. His body, or his head, was very honourably interred, either by *Hannibal* himself, or (for the reports agree not) by the *Romans*; to whom *Hannibal* sent it. He was appointed to lie in *Beneventum*, there to secure the back of the Army that should besiege *Capua*. But his death hapned in an ill time, to the 20 great hinderance of that business. The Volones or Slaves lately manumitted, forsook their Ensigns, and went every one whither he thought good, as if they had been discharged by the decease of their Leader; so that it asked some labour to seek them out, and bring them back into their Camp. Nevertheless, the Consuls went forward with their work, & drawing near to *Capua*, did all acts of hostility, which they could. *Mago* the *Carthaginian*, and the Citizens of *Capua* gave them an hard welcome, wherein above fifteen hundred *Romans* were lost. Neither was it long ere *Hannibal* came thither, who fought with the Consuls, and had the better; in somuch, that he caused them to dislodge. They removed by night, and went several waies: *Fulvius* towards *Canne*, *Claudius* into *Lucania*. *Hannibal* followed after *Claudius*, who having led him a great walk, fetched a com- 30 p'asse about, and returned to *Capua*. It so fell out, that one *Marcus Centenius Penula*, a stout man, & one that with good commendations had discharged the place of a Centurion, lay with an Army not far from thence, where *Hannibal* rested, when he was weary of hunting after *Claudius*. This *Penula* had made great vaunts to the *Roman* Senate, of wonders which he would work, if he might be trusted with the leading of five thousand men. The Fathers were unwilling in such a time, to reject the virtue of any good Souldier, how mean soever his condition were. Wherefore they gave him the charge of eight thousand: and he himself being a proper man, and talking bravely, gathered up so many volunteers, as almost doubled his number. But meeting thus with *Hannibal*, he gave proof of the difference between a stout Centurion, and one able to command in 40 chief. He and his fellows were all (in a manner) slain, scarce a thousand of them escaping. Soon after this, *Hannibal* had word, that *Cneus Fulvius* a *Roman* Prætor with eighteen thousand men was in *Apulia*, very careless, and a man insufficient for the charge which he held. Thither therefore he hasted to visit him: hoping to deal the better with the main strength of *Rome*, which pointed at *Capua*, when he should have cut off those forces, that lay in the Provinces about, under men of small ability. Coming upon *Fulvius*, he found him and his men so jolly, that needs they would have fought the first night. Wherefore it was not to be doubted, what would happen the day following. So he bestowed *Mago* with three thousand of his lightest armed, in places thereabout most fit for ambush. Then offering battel to *Fulvius*, he soon had him in the trap: whence 50 he made him glad to escape alive; leaving all, save two thousand of his followers, dead behind him.

These two great blows, received the one presently after the other, much astonished the *Romans*. Nevertheless, all care was taken, to gather up the small reliques of the broken Armies: and that the Consuls should go substantially forwards with the siege of *Capua*: which was of great consequence, both in matter of reputation, and in many other respects. The two Consuls sat down before the Town, and *C. Claudius Nero*, one of the Prætors, came with his Army from *Suessula*, to their assistance. They made Proclamation, that whosoever would issue out of *Capua* before a certain day prefixed, should 50

have his pardon, and be suffered to enjoy all that unto him belonged: which day being past, there should be no grace expected. This offer was contumeliously rejected; the *Capuans* relying on their own strength, and the succours attended from *Hannibal*. Before the City was closed up, they sent messengers to the *Carthaginian*, which found him at *Brundisium*. He had made a long journey in hope of gaining the *Tarentine* Citadell: of which expectation failing, he turned to *Brundisium*, upon advertisement that he should be let in. There the *Capuans* met him, told him of their danger with earnest words; and were with words as bravely re-comforted. He bade them consider, how a few days since he had chased the Consuls out of their fields; and told them, that he would presently come thither again, and send the *Romans* going as fast as before. With this good answer 10 the Messengers returned, and hardly could get back into the City, which the *Romans* had almost intrenched round. As for *Hannibal* himself, he was of opinion, that *Capua*, being very well manned, and heartily devoted unto his friendship, would hold out a long time, and thereby give him leisure to do what he thought requisite among the *Tarentines*, and in those Eastern parts of *Italy*; whilst the *Roman* Army spent it self in a tedious siege. Thus he lingered; & thereby gave the Consuls time, both to fortifie themselves at *Capua*, and to dispatch the election of new Magistrates in *Rome*; whilst he himself pursued hopes that never found success.

*Claudius* and *Fulvius*, when their terme of Office was expired, were appointed to continue the siege at *Capua*; retaining the same Armies as Proconsuls. The Town-men often sallied out; rather in a bravery, than likelihood to work any matter of effect; the Enemy lying close within his Trenches, as intending without other violence, to subdue them by famine. Yet against the *Campan* horse (for their foot was easily beaten) the *Romans* used to thrust out some troops, that should hold them skirmish. In these exercises the *Capuans* usually had the better, to the great grief of their proud Enemy; who scorned to take foile at the hands of such Rebels. It was therefore devised, that some active and couragious young men should learn to ride behinde the *Roman* men at arms; leaping up, and again dismounting lightly, as occasion served. These were furnished like the *Felites*, having each of them three or four small darts: which alighting in time of conflict, they discharged thick upon the Enemies horse; whom vanquishing in this kind of service, they much disheartened in the main. The time thus passing, and famine daily increasing within the City, *Hannibal* came at length, not expected by the *Romans*; and taking a Fort of theirs, called *Galatia*, tell upon their Camp. At the same time the *Capuans* issued with their whole power, in as terrible manner as they could devise: setting all their multitude of unserviceable people by the walls, which with a loud noise of Pans and Balcons, troubled those that were occupied in fight. *Appius Claudius* opposing himself to the *Campan*s, easily defended his Trenches against them; and so well repressed them, that he drove them at length back into their City. Nevertheless, in pursuing them to their gates, He received a wound that accompanied him in short space after to his grave. *Q. Fulvius* was held harder to his task by *Hannibal*, and the *Carthaginian* Army. The *Roman* camp was even at point to have been lost; and *Hannibal* his Elephants, of which he brought three and thirty, were either gotten within the rampart, or else (for the report varies) being some of them slain upon it, fell into the ditches; & filled it up in such sort, that their bodies served as a bridge unto the Assailants. It is said, that *Hannibal* in this tumult caused some fugitives that could speak Latine well, to proclaim aloud as it were in the Consuls name, That every one of the Souldiers should shift for himself, and flie betimes unto the next hills, for as much as the Camp was already lost. But all would not serve. The fraud was detected; and the Army having sitten there so long, had at good leisure strongly intrenched it self; so as little hope there was to raise the siege by force.

This did extremely perplex the *Carthaginian*. The purchase of *Capua* had (as was thought) withheld him from taking *Rome* it self: and now his desire of winning the *Tarentine* Citadell, had well-near lost *Capua*; in respect of which, neither the Citadell, nor the City of *Tarentum* were to have been much regarded. Falling therefore into a desperate anger with himself and his hard fortune, that of so many great victories he had upon no greater use: on the sudden he entertained an haughty resolution, even to set upon *Rome*; and carry to the walls of that proud City, the danger of Warre that threatened *Capua*. This he thought would be a mean, to draw the *Roman* Generals, or 50

one of them at least, unto the defence of their owne home. If they rose from the siege with their whole Army, then had he his desire: If they divided their forces, then was it likely, that either he or the *Campan*s, should well enough deal with them apart. Neither did he despair, that the terror of his coming might so astonish the multitude within *Rome*, as he might enter some part or other of the City. His only fear was, left the *Campan*s, being ignorant of his purpose, should think he had forsaken them; and thereupon forthwith yeeld themselves to the Enemy. To prevent this danger, he sent letters to *Capua* by a subtle *Numidian*: who running as a fugitive into the *Roman* Camp, conveyed himself thence over the innermost Trenches into the City. The journey to 10 *Rome* was to be performed with great celerity: no small hope of good success resting in the suddenesse of his arrivall there. Wherefore he caused his men, to have in a readinesse ten dayes victuals; and prepared as many boats, as might in one night transport his Army over the River *Fulturnus*. This could not be done so closely, but that the *Roman* Generals, by some fugitives, had notice of his purpose. With this danger therefore they acquainted the Senate; which was therewith affected, according to the diversity of mens opinions, in a case of such importance. Some gave counsell to let alone *Capua*, yea, and all places else, rather then to put the Town of *Rome* into perill of being taken by the enemy. Others were so far from allowing of this, as they wondered how any man could think, that *Hannibal*, being unable to relieve *Capua*, should judge himself strong enough 20 to win *Rome*; and therefore stoutly said, That those Legions, which were kept at home for defence of the City, would serve the turn well enough, to keep him out and fend him thence, if he were so unwise as to come thither. But it was finally concluded, that Letters should be sent to *Fulvius* & *Claudius*, acquainting them perfectly with the forces, that at the present were in *Rome*: who, since they knew best what the strength was which *Hannibal* could bring along with him, were best able to judge, what was needfull to oppose him. So it was referred unto the discretion of these Generals at *Capua*, to do as they thought behoovefull: and if it might conveniently be, neither to raise their siege, nor yet to put the City of *Rome* into much adventure. According to this Decree of the Senate, 30 *Q. Fulvius* took fifteen thousand foot, and a thousand horse, the choice of his whole Army: with which he hastened toward *Rome*, leaving *App. Claudius*, who could not travell by reason of his wound, to continue the siege at *Capua*.

*Hannibal* having passed over *Fulturnus*, burnt up all his boats; and left nothing that might transport the Enemy, in case he should offer to pursue or coast him. Then hastened he away toward *Rome*, staying no longer in any one place, than he needs must. Yet found he the Bridges over *Liris* broken down by the people of *Fregella*: which as it stopped him a little on his way; so it made him the more grievously to spoyle their lands, while the Bridges were in mending. The nearer that he drew to *Rome*, the greater waste he made: his *Numidians* running before him: driving the Country, and killing or taking multitudes of all sorts and ages, that fled out of all parts round 40 about. The messengers of these newes came apace, one after another into the City; some few bringing true advertisements; but the most of them reporting the conceits of their own fear. All the streets and Temples in *Rome* were pestered with women, crying, and praying, and rubbing the Altars with their hair, because they could do none other good. The Senators were all in the great Market, or place of Assembly; ready to give their advice, if it were asked, or to take directions given by the Magistrates. All places of most importance were stuffed with souldiers: it being uncertain, upon which part *Hannibal* would fall. In the midst of this trepidation, there came newes that *Quintus Fulvius*, with part of the Army from *Capua*, was hastning to the defence of the City. The Office of a Proconsull did expire, at his returne home; and entry into the Gates of *Rome*. 50 Wherefore, that *Fulvius* might lose nothing by coming into the City in time of such need, an Act was passed, That he should have equal power with the Consuls during his abode there. He and *Hannibal* arrived at *Rome*, one soon after another: *Fulvius* having been long held occupied in passing over *Fulturnus*; and *Hannibal* receiving impediment in his journey, as much as the Country was able to give. The Consuls, and *Fulvius*, incamped without the gates of *Rome*, attending the *Carthaginian*. Thither they called the Senate: and as the danger grew nearer and greater; so took they more carefull and especial order against all occurrences. *Hannibal* came to the River *Anio* or *Anien*, three miles from the Town; whence he advanced with two thousand horse, D d d d d 2 and

and rode along a great way under the Walls, viewing the site thereof, and considering how he might best approach it. But he either went, or (as the *Roman* Story saith) was driven away, without doing or receiving any hurt. Many tumults rose in this while among the people; but were suppressed by care and diligence of the Senators. Above the rest one accident was both troublesome, and not without peril. Of *Numidians* that had shifted aside, and fallen (upon some displeasures) from *Hannibal* to the *Romans*, there were some twelve hundred then in *Rome*: which were appointed by the Consuls, to passe through the Town, from the Mount *Aventine*, to the Gate *Collina*, where it was thought that their service might be usefull, among broken wayes, and Garden walls lying in the suburbs. The faces of these men, and their furniture, wherein they differed 10 not from the followers of *Hannibal*; bred such mistaking, as caused a great uproar among the people: all crying out that *Aventine* was taken, and the Enemy gotten within the walls. The noise was such, that men could not be informed of the truth: and the streets were so full of cattell, and husbandmen, which were fled thither out of the Villages adjoining, that the passage was stopp'd up: and the poor *Numidians* pitifully beaten from the house tops, with stones and other weapons that came next to hand, by the desperate multitude, that would have run out at the Gates, had it not been certain who lay under the Walls. To remedy the like inconveniences, it was ordained, That all 20 which had been Dictators, Consuls, or Censors, should have authority as Magistrates, till the Enemy departed. The day following *Hannibal* passed over *Auien*, and presented battle to the *Romans*, who did not wisely if they undertook it. It is said, that a terrible shower of rain, caused both *Romans* and *Carthaginians* to return into their severall Camps: and that this happened two dayes together, the weather breaking up and clearing as soon as they were departed asunder: certain it is, that *Hannibal*, who had brought along with him no more than ten dayes provision, could not indure to stay there, untill his victuals were all spent. In which regard the *Romans*, if they suffered him to waste his time and provisions, knowing that he could not abide there long, did as became well advised men: if they offered to fight with him, and either had the better or were parted (as is said) by some accident of weather, the commendations must be given to their fortune. The terror of *Hannibals* coming to the City, how great so ever it was at the first, yet after some leisure, and better notice taken of their forces, which appeared lesse than the first apprehension had formed them, was much and soon abated. Hereunto it helped well, that at the same time the supply appointed for *Spain*, after the death of the two *Scipio's*, were sent out of the Town, & went forth at the gate, whilst one *Carthaginian* lay before another. In all *Panick terrors*, as they are called, whereof there is either no cause known, or no cause answerable to the greatnesse of the sudden consternation; it is a good remedy to do somewhat quite contrary to that which the danger would require, were it such as men have fashioned it in their amazed conceits. Thus did *Alexander* cause his soldiers to disarm themselves, when they were all on a sudden in a great fear of they 30 wit not what. And thus did *Clearchus* pacifie a foolish uproar in his Army, by proclaiming a reward unto him that could tell who had sent the Assie into the Camp. But in this present example of the *Romans*, appears withall a great magnanimity: whereby they sustained their reputation, and augmented it no lesse, than by this bold attempt of *Hannibal* it might seem to have been diminished. Neither could they more finely have checked the glorious conceits of their enemies, and taken away the disgrace of that fear, which clouded their valour at his first coming; than by making such demonstrations, when once they had recovered spirit, how little they esteemed him. To this purpose therefore that very piece of ground, on which the *Carthaginian* lay encamped, was sold in *Rome*: and sold it was nothing under the value, but at as good a rate, as if it had been in time of peace. This indignity comming to his ear, incensed *Hannibal* so much, that he made 50 port-sale of the Silver-smithes shops, which were near about the Market or Common place in *Rome*; as if his own title to the houses within the Town were no whit worse, than any *Roman* Citizens could be unto that piece of ground, whereon he raised his Tent. But this counter-practise was nothing worth. The *Romans* did seek to manifest that assurance which they justly had conceived; *Hannibal*, to make shew of continuing in an hope, which was already past. His victuals were almost spent: and of those ends, that he had propoosd unto himself, this journey had brought forth none other, than the fame of his much daring. Wherefore he brake up his Camp: and doing what spoil

spoil he could of the *Roman* Territory, without sparing religious places, wherein wealth was to be gotten, he passed like a tempest over the Country, and ran toward the Eastern Sea so fast, that he had almost taken the City of *Rhegium* before his arrival was feared or suspected. As for *Capua*, he gave it lost: and is likely to have cur'd the whole faction of *Hanno*, which thus disabled him to relieve that fair City, since he had no other way to vent his grief.

*Q. Fabius* returning back to *Capua*, made Proclamation a new, that whoso would yeeld, before a certain day, might safely do it: This, and the very return of *Fulvius*, without any more appearance of *Hannibal*, gave the *Capuans* to understand, that they 10 were abandoned, and their case desperate. To trust the *Roman* pardon proclaimed, every mans conscience of his own evil deserts, told him, that it was a vanity: and some faint hope was given, by *Hanno* and *Bostar*, Captains of the *Carthaginian* Garrison within the Town, that *Hannibal* should come again; if means could only be found, how to convey such Letters unto him as they would write. The carriage of the Letters was undertaken by some *Numidians*: who running as fugitives, out of the Town into the *Roman* camp, waited fit opportunity to make an escape thence with their packets. But it hapned ere they could convey themselves away, that one of them was detected by an harlot following him out of the Town; and the Letters of *Bostar* and *Hanno* were taken and opened, containing a vehement intreaty unto *Hannibal*, that he would not 20 thus forsake the *Capuans* and them. For (said they) we came not hither to make Warre against *Rhegium* and *Tarentum*, but against the *Romans*: whose Legions, wheresoever they lye, there also should the *Carthaginian* Army be ready to attend them; and by taking of such course, have we gotten those victories at *Trebia*, *Thrasymene*, and *Cannae*. In fine, they besought him, that he would not dishonour himself, and betray them to their enemies, by turning another way; as if it were his only care, that the City should not be taken in his full view: promising to make a desperate sally, if he would once more adventure to set upon the *Roman* Camp. Such were the hopes of *Bostar* and his fellow.

But *Hannibal* had already done his best: and now began to faint under the burden of that Warre, wherein as afterward he protested he was vanquished by *Hanno* and his Partisans in the *Carthaginian* Senate, rather than by any force of *Rome*. It may well be, as a thing incident in like cases, that some of those which were besieged in *Capua*, had been sent over by the *Hannoniens*, to observe the doings of *Hannibal*, and to check his proceedings. If this were so, justly might they curse their own malice, which had cast them into this remediless necessity. Howsoever it were, the Letters directed unto *Hannibal*, fell (as is shewed) into the *Roman* Proconsuls hands, who cutting off the hands of all such counterfeit fugitives, as carried such messages, whipt them back into the Town. This miserable spectacle brake the hearts of the *Capuans*, so that the multitude crying out upon the Senate, with menacing termes, caused them to assemble and consult, about the yeelding up of *Capua* unto the *Romans*. The bravest of the Senators and such as a few years since, had been most forward in joyning with *Hannibal*, understood well enough whereunto the matter tended. Wherefore one of them invited the rest home to supper: telling them, that when they had made good cheer, he would drink to them such an health, as should set them free from that cruel revenge, which the Enemies sought upon their bodies. About seven and twenty of the Senators there were; that liking well of this motion, ended their lives together, by drinking poison. All the rest hoping for more mercy than they had deserved, yeelded simply to discretion. So one of the Town-gates was set open; whereat a *Roman* Legion, with some other Companies, entering, disarmed the Citizens; apprehended the *Carthaginian* Garrison; and commanded all the Senators of *Capua* to go forth into the *Roman* camp. At their coming thither, the Proconsuls laid yrons upon them all, and commanding them to tell what store of gold and silver they had at home, sent them into safe custody; some to *Cales*, others to *Theonum*. Touching the generall multitude, they were reserved unto the discretion of the Senate: yet so hardly used by *Fulvius* in the meane while, that they had little cause of hope or comfort in this adversity. *Ap. Claudius* was brought even to the point of death, by the wound which he had lately received: yet was he not inexorable to the *Capuans*; as having loved them well in former times, & having given his daughter in marriage to that *Pacuvius*, of whom we spake before. But this facility

of his Colleague, made *Fulvius* the more hasty in taking vengeance: for fear, left upon the like respects, the *Roman* Senate might prove more gentle, than he thought behoovefull to the common safety, and honour of their State. Wherefore he took the pains to ride by night unto *Theanum*, and from thence to *Cales*: where he caused all the *Campan* prisoners to suffer death; binding them to stakes, and scourging them first a good while with rods; after which he struck off their heads.

This terrible example of vengeance, which the *Carthaginians* could not hinder, made all towns of *Italy* the less apt to follow the vain hope of the *Campan*s: and bred a general inclination, to return upon good conditions to the *Roman* side. The *Atellans*, *Calatines* and *Sabatines*, people of the *Campan*s, that in the former change had followed the fortune of *Capua*, made also now the like submission, for very fear and want of ability to resist. They were therefore used with the like rigour, by *Fulvius*: who dealt so extremely with them all, that he brought them into desperation. Wherefore some of their young gentlemen burning with fire of revenge, got into *Rome*: where they found means by night-time, to set on fire to many houses, that a great part of the City was like to have been consumed. The beginning of the fire in divers places at once, argued that it was no casualty. Wherefore liberty was proclaimed unto any slave, and other sufficient reward to any free man, that should discover who those Incendiaries were. Thus all came out; and the *Campan*s being detected by a slave of their own (to whom, above his liberty promised, was given about the sum of an hundred marks) had the punishment answerable to their deserts. *Fulvius* hereby being more and more incensed against this wretched people, held them in a manner as prisoners within their Walls: and this extreme severity caused them at length to become Suppliants unto the *Roman* Senate; that some period might be set unto their miseries. That whereupon the Senators, resolved in the end, was worse than all that which they had suffered before. Only two poor women in *Capua* (of which one had been an harlot) were found not guilty of the late rebellion. The rest were, some of them, with their wives and children sold for slaves, and their goods confiscated; others laid in prison, and referred to further deliberation: but the generality of them, commanded to depart out of *Campania* by a certain day, and confined unto several places, as best liked the angry victors. As for the town of *Capua*, it was suffered to stand, in regard of the beauty and commodious site: but no corporation or form of polity was allowed to be therein; only a *Roman* Provost was every year sent to govern over those that should inhabit it, and to do justice. This was the greatest act, and most important, hitherto done by the people of *Rome*, after many great losses in the present war. After this, the glory of *Hannibal* began to shine with a more dim light than before: his oil being far spent; and that which should have revived his flame, being unfortunately shed; as shall be told in place convenient.

## §. XV.

How the Carthaginians, making a party in Sardinia and Sicil, held War against the Romans in those Islands, and were overcome.

Whilest things passed thus in *Italy*, the commotions raised in *Sardinia* and *Sicil* by the *Carthaginians* and their friends, were brought to a quiet and happy end by the industrious valour of the *Romans*. The *Sardinian* rebellion was great and sudden: above thirty thousand being up in arms, ere the *Roman* forces could arrive there to suppress it. One *Harfcoras* with his son *Hyeflus*, mighty men in that Island, were the Ring leaders; being incited by *Hanno* a *Carthaginian*, that promised the assistance of his country. Neither were the *Carthaginians* in this enterprise so careless, as in the rest of their main undertakings, about the same time. Yet it had been better if their care had been directed unto the prosecution of that main business in *Italy*; where, on this and all other hopes depended. For it would have sufficed, if they could have hindered the *Romans* from sending an Army into *Sardinia*. *Harfcoras* with his followers might well enough have served to drive out *Quintus Mutius* the Prætor: who lay sick in the Province, and not more weak in his own body, than in his train. But whilest they sought revenge of that particular injury, whereof the sense was most grievous, they neglected the opportunity of requiring those that had done them wrong, and of the securing themselves from all injuries in the future. Their fortune also in this enter-

enterprise was such, as may seem to have encouraged them from being at the like charge, in cases of more importance. For whereas they sent over *Asdrubal*, surnamed the Bald, with a competent fleet and Army, assisted in this expedition by *Hanno* the Author of the rebellion, and by *Mago* a Gentleman of the *Barchine* house, and near kinsman to *Hannibal*: it so fell out, that the whole fleet, by extremity of foul weather, was cast upon the *Baleares*; so beaten, and in such evil plight, that the *Sardinians* had even spent their hearts, and were in a manner quite vanquished, ere these their friends could arrive to succour them.

*Titus Manlius* was sent from *Rome* with two and twenty thousand foot, and twelve hundred horse, to settle the estate of that Island, which he had taken in, and annexed unto the *Roman* dominion, long before this, in his Consulship. It was a laudable custom of the *Romans*, to preserve and uphold in their severall provinces, the greatness and reputation of those men, and their families, by whom each Province had been first subdued unto their Empire. If any injury were done unto the Provincials, if any grace were to be obtained from the Senate, or whatsoever accident required the assistance of a Patron; the first Conquerour, and his race after him, were the most ready and best approved means, to procure the benefit of the people subdued. Hereby the *Romans* held very fine intelligence, in every Province, and had always in readines fit men to reclaim their Subjects, if they fell into any such disorder, as would otherwise have required a greater charge and trouble. The coming of *Manlius* retained in obedience all that were not already broken too far out. Yet was *Harfcoras* so strong in field, that *Manlius* was compelled to arme his Mariners: without whom he could not have made up that number of two and twenty thousand, whereof we have spoken before: he landed at *Calariis*, or *Carallis*, where mooring his ships, he passed up into the Countrey, and sought out the Enemy. *Hyeflus*, the sonne of *Harfcoras*, had then the command of the *Sardinian* Army left unto him by his father, who was gone abroad into the Countrey, to draw in more friends to their side. This young gentleman would needs adventure to get honour, by giving battell to the *Romans* at his own discretion. So he rashly adventured to fight with an old Souldier: by whom he received a terrible overthrow; and lost in one day above thirty thousand of his followers. *Hyeflus* himself, with the rest of his broken troups, got into *Cornus*, the chief Town of the Island: whither *Manlius* pursued them. Very soon after this defeat came *Asdrubal* with his *Carthaginians*; too late to win all *Sardinia* in such haste as he might have done, if the tempest had not hindered his voyage: yet soon enough, and strong enough to save the Town of *Cornus*, and to put a new spirit into the Rebels. *Manlius* hereupon withdrew himself back to *Calariis*: where he had not stayed long, ere the *Sardinians* (such of them as adhered to the *Roman* party) craved his assistance; their Countrey being wasted by the *Carthaginians* and the rebels, with whom they had refused to joyn. This drew *Manlius* forth of *Calariis*: where, if he had stayed a little longer, *Asdrubal* would have sought him out with some blemish to his reputation. But the fame of *Asdrubal* and his company, appears to have been greater than was their strength. For after some triall made of them in few skirmishes, *Manlius* adventured all to the hazard of a battell; wherein he slew twelve thousand of the enemies; and took of the *Sardinians* and *Carthaginians* three thousand. Four hours the battell lasted; and victory at length fell to the *Romans*; by the flight of the Islanders, whose courages had been broken in their unprosperous fight, not many dayes before. The death of young *Hyeflus*, and of his father *Harfcoras*, that slew himself for grief, together with the captivity of *Asdrubal* himself, with *Mago* and *Hanno* the *Carthaginians*, made the victory the more famous. The vanquished Army fled into *Cornus*; whither *Manlius* followed them, and in short space won the Town. All other Cities of the Isle that had rebelled, followed the example of *Cornus*, and yielded unto the *Romans*, who imposing upon them such increase of tribute, or other punishment, as best suited with the nature of their severall offences, or their ability to pay, returned back to *Calariis* with a great booty, and from thence to *Rome* leaving *Sardinia* in quiet.

The war in *Sicil* was of greater length, and every way more burdensome to *Rome*: as also the victory brought more honour and profit, for that the *Romans* became thereby, not only saviors of their own, as in *Sardinia*; but Lords of the whole Countrey, by annexing the City and dominion of *Syracuse*, to that which they enjoyed before. Soon after



after the battell of *Canna*, the old King of *Syracuse* died; who had continued long a steadfast friend unto the *Romans*, and greatly relieved them in this present war. He left his kingdom to *Hieronymus* his grand-child, that was about fifteen years of age; *Gelo* his sonne, that should have been his heir, being dead before. To this young King his successour, *Hiero* appointed fifteen tutors: of which the principall were *Andronodorus*, *Zoilus*, and *Themistius*; who had married his daughters, or the daughters of *Gelo*. The rest were such, as he judged most likely to preserve the Kingdom, by the same art, whereby himself had gotten and so long kept it. But within a little while, *Andronodorus* waxing weary of so many coadjutors, began to commend the sufficiency of the young Prince, as extraordinary in one of his years; and said, that he was able to rule the kingdom without help of any Protector. Thus by giving over his own charge, he caused others to do the like: hoping thereby to get the king wholly into his hands; which came to passe in a fort, as he desired. For *Hieronymus*, laying aside all care of government, gave himself wholly over to his pleasures; or, if he had any regard of his Royall dignity, it was only in matter of exterior shew; as wearing a Diadem, with ornaments of purple, and being attended by an armed guard. Hereby he offended the eyes of his people, that had never seen the like in *Hiero*, or in *Gelo* his sonne. But much more he offended them, when by his insolent behaviour, suitable to his outward pompe, he gave proof, that in course of life, he would revive the memory of Tyrants dead long since, from whom he took the pattern of his habit. He grew proud, lustfull, cruell, and dangerous to all that were about him: so that such of his late tutors as could escape him by flight, were glad to live in banishment: the rest, being most of them put to death by the Tyrant, many of them dying by their own hands, to avoid the danger of his displeasure, that seemed worse than death it self. Only *Andronodorus*, *Zoilus*, and one *Thraso* continued in grace with him, and were his Counsellors, but not of his Cabinet. These, howsoever they agreed in other points; were at some dissension about the main point of adhering, either to the *Romans*, or to the *Carthaginians*. The two former of them were wholly for the Kings pleasure, which was set on change: but *Thraso*, having more regard of his honour and profit, was very earnest to continue the amity with *Rome*. Whilest as yet it remained somewhat doubtful which way the King would incline, a conspiracy against his person was detected by a Groome of his; to whom one *Theodorus* had broken the matter. *Theodorus* hereupon was apprehended, and tormented; thereby to wring out of him the whole practice, and the names of the undertakers. Long it was ere he would speak any thing: but yielding (as it seemed) in the end, unto the extremity of the torture, he confessed, that he had been set on by *Thraso*; whom he appeached of the treason, together with many more, that were near in love or place unto *Hieronymus*. All these therefore were put to death, being innocent of the crime wherewith they were charged. But they that were indeed the Conspirators, walked boldly in the streets, and never shrunk for the matter: assuring themselves, that the resolution of *Theodorus* would yeeld to no extremity. Thus they all escaped, and soon after found means to execute their purpose. The King himself, when *Thraso* was taken out of the way, quickly resolved upon siding with the *Carthaginians*; whereto he was very inclinable before. Young men, when first they grow Masters of themselves, love to seem wiser than their fathers, by taking different courses. And the Liberality of *Hiero* to the *Romans*, in their great necessity, had of late been such, as might have been termed excessive; were it not in regard of his providence; wherein he took order for his own Estate, that depended upon theirs. But the young Nephew taking little heed of dangers farre off, regarded only the things present; the weaknesse of *Rome*, the prevalent fortunes of *Carthage*, and the much money that his grand-father had layed out in vain, to shoulder up a falling house. Wherefore he dealt with *Hannibal*: who readily entred into good correspondence with him; that was maintained by *Hippocrates* and *Epicides*, *Carthaginians* borne, but grand-children of a banished *Syracusan*. These grew into such favour with *Hieronymus*, that they drew him whither they listed. So that when *App. Claudius* the Roman Prætor, hearing what was towards, made a motion of renewing the Confederacy, between the people of *Rome*, and the King of *Syracuse*; his messengers were dismissed with an open scoffe. For *Hieronymus* would needs have them tell him the order of the fight at *Canna*, that he might thereby learn how to accommodate himself; saying, that he could hardly believe the *Carthaginians*,  
10

so wonderfull was the victory as they reported it. Having thus dismissed the *Romans*, he sent Embassadors to *Carthage*, where he concluded a league: with condition, at first, that a great part of the Island should be annexed to his Dominion; but afterward, that he should reign over all *Sicily*; and the *Carthaginians* rest satisfied with what they could get in *Italy*. At these doings *Appius Claudius* did not greatly stir: partly for the indignities that were offered; partly for that it behoved not the *Romans* to entertain more quarrels, than were enforced upon them by necessity; and partly (as may seem) for that the reputation, both of himself, and of his City, had received such blemish, by that which hapned unto him in his journey, as much discountenanced him when he came into *Sicily*, and forbade him to look big. The money that *Hiero* had bestowed formerly upon the *Romans*, wherewith to relieve them in their necessity, this *Appius* was to carry back unto him: it being refused by the Roman Senat, with greater bravery than their present fortune would allow. But in stead of returning the money with thanks, as he had been directed, and as it had been noised abroad that he should do: the war against *Philip* King of *Macedon* (whereof we have spoken before) compelled the *Romans* to lay aside their vain-glory, and send word after him, that he should consign that money over to *Marcus Valerius*; of whose voyage into *Greece*, the City had not otherwise wherewith to bear the charge. This was done accordingly, and hereby *Claudius* (which name in the whole continuance of that Family is taxed with pride) his errand was changed, from a glorious ostentation of the Roman magnanimity, into such a pitifull tune of thanksgiving, as mult needs have bred sorrow and commiseration in so true a friend as *Hiero*, or, if it were delivered after his death, matter of pastime and scorn, in *Hieronymus* the new King.

But whilest *Hieronymus* was more desirous of war, than well resolved how to begin it: his own death changed the form of things, and bred a great innovation in the state of *Syracuse*, which thereby might have prospered more than ever, had it been wisely governed. *Hippocrates* and *Epicides*, of whom we spake before, were sent about the Country with two thousand men, to solicit the Towns, and perswade them to shake off their obedience to the *Romans*. The King himself with an Army of fifteen thousand horse and foot, went to *Leontium*, a City of his own Dominion: hoping that the fame of his preparation, would make the whole Island fall to him in all haste, and accept him for Sovereign. There the Conspirators took him on the sudden, as he was passing through a narrow street: and rushing between him and his guard, strook him dead. Forthwith liberty was proclaimed: and the found of that word so joyfully answered by the *Leontines*, that the guard of *Hieronymus* had little courage to revenge their Masters death. Yet, for fear of the worst, a great largesse was promised unto the Souldiers, with rewards unto their Captains; which wrought so effectually, that when many wicked acts of the murdered King were reckoned up, the Army, as in detestation of his bad life, suffered his carcase to lie unburied. These news ran quickly to *Syracuse*; whither some of the Conspirators, taking also of the Kings horses, posted away; to signifie all that had passed, to stirre up the people to liberty, and to prevent *Andronodorus*, if he or his followers would make offer to usurp a tyranny. The *Syracusians* hereupon presently took armes, and made themselves masters of their own City. *Andronodorus* on the other side fortified the Palace, and the Island; being yet uncertain what to do: between desire of making himself a sovereign Lord, and fear of suffering punishment as a Tyrant, if his enterprise mis-carried. His wife *Demarata*, that was the daughter of *Hiero*, cheished him in his hopes: putting him in minde of that well-known Proverb, which *Dionysius* had used; That a Tyrant should keep his place, till he were haled out of it by the heels, and not ride away from it on horse-back. But fear, and better counsell, prevailed so far, that *Andronodorus*, having slept upon the matter, dissembled his affections, and deferred his hope unto better opportunity. The next day he came forth, and made a speech unto the people; telling them, that he was glad to see, how prudently they behaved themselves in so great a change; that he had stood in fear, lest they would not have contained themselves within the bounds of discretion; but rather have sought to murder all without difference, that any way belonged to the Tyrant; and that, since he beheld their orderly proceeding, and their care, not to ravish their liberty perforce, but to wed it unto them for ever, he was willingly come to them forth of his strength, and surrendered up the charge committed unto him, by one that had bin an  
evil

evill master both to him and them. Hereupon great joy was made, and Prætors chosen (as in former times) to govern the City, of which *Andronodorus* was one, and the chief. But such was his desire of Sovereignty; and so vehement were the insatiations of his wife, that shortly he began to practise with *Hippocrates*, *Epicles*, and other Captains of the Mercenaries; hoping to make himself strong by their help, that were least pleased with the change. *Hippocrates* and *Epicles* had been with the *Syracusan* Prætors, and told them, that being sent from *Hannibal* to *Hieronymus*, they, according to instructions of their Captain, had done him, whilst he lived, what service they could; and that now they were desirous to return home. They requested therefore that they might be friendly dismissed, and witha convey, that might keep them from falling into the hands of the *Romans*, and set them safe at *Locri*. This was easily granted, both for that the *Syracusan* Magistrates were well contented to earn thanks of *Hannibal*, with such a little courtesie; and for that they thought it expedient, to rid their Town quickly of this troublesome couple, which were good souldiers, and gracious with the Army, but otherwise lewd men. It was not the desire of these two *Sicilians*, to be gone so hastily as they made shew; they were more mindfull of the business for which *Hannibal* had sent them. Wherefore they insinuated themselves into the bosomes of such as were most likely to fill the Army with tumult, especially of the *Roman* fugitives, and those that had cause to mistrust what should become of themselves, when the *Romans* and *Syracusians* were come to agreement. Such instruments as these, *Andronodorus* had great need of: as also of many other, to help him in his dangerous attempt. He found *Themistius*, that had married *Harmonia*, the sister of *Hieronymus*, ready to take his parts, as being carried with the like passions of his own, and of his wife. But in seeking to increase the number of his adherents, he revealed the matter to one, that revealed all to the rest of the Prætors. Hereupon it followed, that he, and *Themistius*, entering into the Senate, were slain out of hand: and afterward accused to the people, of all the evill which they had done, whilst *Hieronymus* lived, as by his authority; and now since attempted, in seeking to usurp the tyranny themselves. It was also declared, that the daughters of *Hiero* and *Gelo* were accessory to this dangerous treason: and that the unquiet spirits of these women would never cease to work, untill they had recovered those royall ornaments and Sovereign power, whereof their family was now dispossessed. These daughters therefore of *Hiero* and *Gelo* were also condemned to die, and executioners presently sent by the enraged people, to take away their lives. *Demarata* and *Harmonia* had perhaps deserved this heavy sentence: but *Heraclea*, the daughter of *Hiero*, and wife of *Sosippus*, being altogether innocent, was murdered, together with her two young daughters, in the hasty execution of this rash judgement. Her husband *Sosippus* was a lover of the Common-wealth; and in that respect so hated by *Hieronymus*, that being sent Embassadour to King *Ptolemy*, &c. he durst not return home, but stayed in *Egypt* as a banished man. This consideration, when it was too late, together with some pitifull accidents accompanying the slaughter, so affected the multitude, that (pardonning themselves) all cried out upon the Authors of so foule a butchery. Being thus incensed against the Senate; and knowing not otherwise how to satisfie their anger, they called for an election of new prætors, in the room of *Andronodorus* and *Themistius*, that were lately slain: meaning to substitute such in their places, as the Senators should have little cause to like. At the election were present a great rout, not only of the poorer Citizens, but of souldiers that pressed into the throng. One of these, named *Epicles* Prætor; another named *Hippocrates*: and the lesse that the old Prætors and Senators approved this nomination, the more eager was the multitude; and by a generall cry forced them to be accepted. These being made Prætors did what they could to hinder the agreement that was in hand, between the *Syracusians* and the *Romans*. But having striven in vain, and seeing that the people stood in fear of *Ap. Claudius*, and of *Marcellus* that was lately come into *Sicily*, they gave way unto the time, and suffered the old league of *Hiero* to be re-confirmed, which afterward they purposed to dissolve by practise. The *Leontines* had some need of a garison; and to them was sent *Hippocrates* the Prætor, attended by such fugitives, and mercenary souldiers, as were most burdenfome to *Syracuse*. Thither when he came, he began to do many acts of hostility against the *Romans*: first in secret, afterward more openly & boldly. *Marcellus*, rightly understanding the purpose of these two brethren, sent word unto the *Syracusians*, that they had already broken the

the league; and that the peace would never be kept sincerely, untill this turbulent pair of brethren were expelled the Island. *Epicles*, fearing to sustain the blame of his brothers proceedings, and more desirous to set forward the war, than to excuse any breach of peace, went himself unto the *Leontines*, whom he perswaded to rebell against the *Syracusians*. For he said, that since they had all of late served one Master, there was little reason why the *Leontines* should not be enfranchised by his death, as well as the *Syracusians*; yea or much rather, all things considered; since in their Treets the Tyrant was slain, and liberty first proclaimed. Wherefore, since they of *Syracuse* were not contented to enjoy the freedome purchased among the *Leontines*; but thought it good reason, that they should bear Dominion over those that had broken the Chain, having both the one and the other were bound: his advice was, that such their arrogance should be checked betimes, ere it could get any colour of right by prescription. Hereunto occasion was given by one article of the League, made of late by the *Romans* and *Syracusians*. For it was agreed, That all which had been subject to *Hiero* and *Hieronymus*, should henceforth be Vassals unto the State of *Syracuse*. Against this article, if the *Leontines* would take exception, and thereby challenge their own due; *Epicles* told them, that in this novelty of change, they had fit opportunity to recover the freedome, which their fathers had lost not many ages before. Neither was it unreasonable, which this crafty *Carthaginian* propounded; if the *Leontines* had been subdued by the same hand, which took liberty from the *Syracusians*. But seeing they had long since yielded unto *Syracuse*, and been subjected unto that City, by what forme soever it was governed; this claim of liberty was rather seasonable, than just. Nevertheless, the motion of *Epicles* was highly approved: inasmuch that when messengers came soon after from *Syracuse*, to rebuke the *Leontines*, for that which they had done against the *Romans*, and to denounce unto *Hippocrates* and *Epicles*, that they should get them gone, either to *Locri*, or whither else they listed, so that they stayed not in *Sicily*: word was returned, That they of *Leontium* had not requested the *Syracusians*, to make any bargains for them with the *Romans*, nor thought themselves bound to observe the covenants, which others without warrant had made in their names. This peremptory answer was forthwith reported unto *Marcellus* by the *Syracusians*; who offered him their assistance in doing justice upon the *Leontines* their Rebels; with condition, That when the Town was taken, it might be theirs again. *Marcellus* required no better satisfaction: but forthwith took the business in hand, which he dispatched in one day. At the first assault *Leontium* was taken, all save the Castle, whereinto *Hippocrates* and *Epicles* fled: and stealing thence away by night, conveyed themselves into the towne of *Herbesus*. The first thing that *Marcellus* did, when he had wonne the Towne, was the same, which other *Roman* Captains used after victory, to seek out the fugitive *Roman* slaves and renegado's, whom he caused all to die: the rest both of the Town-men and Souldiers, he took to mercy, forbearing also to strip or spoyle them. But the fame of his doings was bruited after a contrary sort. It was said, that he had slain Man, Woman, and Child, and put the Town to sack. These newes met the *Syracusan* Army upon the way, as it was going to joyne with *Marcellus*, who had ended his business before. About eight thousand Mercenaries there were, that had been sent forth of *Syracuse*, under *Sosis* and *Dionemus*, two of the Prætors, to serve against the *Leontines* and other rebels. These Captains were honest men, and well affected to their Countrey: but the Souldiers that followed them, had those diseases, with which all mercenaries are commonly infected. They took the matter deeply to heart, that their fellow souldiers (as now they termed those against whom they went) had been so cruelly butchered: and hereupon they fell to mutiny, though what to demand, or with whom to be angry, they could not tell. The Prætors therefore thought it best, to turne their unquiet thoughts another way, and set them awork in some place else: for as much as at *Leontium* there was no need of their service. So towards *Herbesus* they marched; where lay *Hippocrates* and *Epicles*, the architects of all this mischief, devising what further harme they might doe; but now so weakly accompanied, that they seemed unable to escape the punishments belonging to their offences past. Hereof the two brethren were no lesse well aware: and therefore adventured upon a remedy little lesse desperate than their present case. They issued forth of *Herbesus* unarmed, with Olive branches in their hands, in manner of Suppliants; and so presented themselves to the Army. Six hundred men of *Crete* were in the vanguard; that

that had been well used by *Hieronymus*: and some of them greatly bound unto *Hannibal*, who had taken them prisoners in the *Italian* war, and lovingly dismissed them. These *Cretians* therefore welcomed the two brethren, and bade them be of good cheer, saying, That no man should do them harme, as long as they could use their weapons. Herewithall the Army was at a stand; and the rumour of this accident ran swiftly from man to man, with general approbation. The Prætors thought to help the matter by severity, which would not serve. For when they commanded these two traitors to be laid in Irons, the exclamation was so violent against them, that fain they were to let all alone, and return, uncertain what course to take, unto *Megara*, where they were lodged the night before. Thither when they came, *Hippocrates* devised a trick, whereby to help himself, and better the uncertain case wherein he stood. He caused Letters, of his own penning, to be intercepted by some of his most trusty *Cretians*, directed (as they made shew) from the *Syracusian* Prætors to *Marcellus*. The contents hereof were, That *Marcellus* had well done, in committing all to the sword among the *Leontines*: but that it further behoved him, to make the like dispatch of all the mercenaries belonging to *Syracuse*, which were offensive, all of them in general, to the liberty of the City, and the peace with *Rome*. When this counterfeited Epistle was openly rehearsed, the uproar was such, that *Sofis* and his fellow Prætor, were glad to forsake the Camp, and flee for their lives. All the *Syracusians* remaining behind, had been cut in pieces by the enraged Souldiers, if the two Artificers of the sedition had not saved their lives, rather to keep them as pledges, and by them, to win their friends within the Town, than for any good will. They perswaded also a mischievous knave, that had served amongst the *Leontines*, to justify the bruit of *Marcellus* cruelty, and to carry home the newes to *Syracuse*, as an eye-witness. This incensed not only the multitude, but some of the Senate, and filled the whole town with causelesse indignation. In good time (said some) was the avarice and cruelty of the *Romans* detected: who, had they in like sort gotten into *Syracuse*, would have dealt much worse, where their greedy appetites might have been tempted with a far greater booty. Whilest they were thus discouraging, and devising how to keep out the wicked *Romans*, *Hippocrates* with his Army came to the gates, exhorting the Citizens to let him in, unless for want of help, they would be betrayed to their enemies. The Prætors, with the best and wisest of the Senate, would fain have kept him out: but the violence of the souldiers to force a gate, was no whit greater, than the head-strong fury of those within the Town, that laboured to break it open. So he entered, and immediately fell upon the Prætors, whom (being forsaken by all men) he put to the sword, and made slaughter of them and their followers untill night. The next day he went openly to work: and, after the common example of Tyrants, gave liberty unto all slaves and prisoners; and being fortified with adherents of the worst and basest sort, made himself and his brother Prætors, in Title, but in effect, Lords of *Syracuse*.

When *Marcellus* was advertised of this great alteration, he thought it no time for him to sit still, and attend the further issue. He sent Embassadours to *Syracuse*, that were not admitted into the Haven, but chafed out as enemies. Then drew he near with his Army: and lodging within a mile and a half of the Town, sent before him, some to require a parlee. These were entertained without the wals by the two new Prætors: to whom they declared, That the *Romans* were come thither, not with purpose to do hurt, but in favour of the *Syracusians*, which were oppressed by Tyrants; and to punish those that had murdered and banished so many of the principall Citizens. Wherefore they required, that those worthy men, their Confederates, which were chafed out of the Town, might be suffered to returne and enjoy their own; as also that the Authors of the great slaughter lately committed, might be delivered up. Hereto *Epicides* briefly answered, that if their errand had been to him, he could have told what to say to them: but since it was directed unto others, they should doe well to return, when those to whom they were sent, had the government in their hands. As for the war which they threatened, he told them, they should finde by experience, That to besiege *Syracuse* was another manner of work, than to take *Leontium*. Thus he sent them gone; and returned back into the City. Immediately began the siege, which endured longer than the *Romans* had expected. The quick and easie winning of *Leontium*, did put *Marcellus* in hope, that so long a circuit of wals as compassed *Syracuse*, being manned with

with no better kinde of Souldiers, than those with whom he had lately dealt, would in some part or other, be taken at the first assault. Wherefore he omitted no violence or terror in the very beginning; but did his best both by Land and Sea. Neverthel. He all his labour was disappointed, and his hope of prevailing by open force, taken from him by the ill success of two or three of the first assaults. Yet was it not the vertue of the Defendants, or any strength of the City, that bred such despair of hasty victory. But there lived at that time in *Syracuse* *Archimedes* the noble Mathematician: who at the request of *Hiero* the late King, that was his kinsman, had framed such engines of War, as being in this extremity put in use, did more mischief to the *Romans* than could have been wrought by the Canon, or any instruments of Gun-powder; had they in that age been knowne. This *Archimedes* discoursing once with *Hiero*, maintained that it were possible to remove the whole earth out of the place wherein it is, if there were some other earth, or place of sure footing, whereon a man might stand. For proof of this bold assertion, he performed some strange works; which made the King entreat him to convert his study unto things of use: that might preserve the City from danger of enemies. To such Mechanicall works, *Archimedes*, and the Philosophers of those times, had little affection. They held it an injury done unto the liberrall sciences, to submerge learned Propositions, unto the workmanship, and gain, of base handy-crafts men. And of this opinion *Plato* was an author: who greatly blamed some Geometricians, so that seemed unto him to proplane their science, by making it vulgar. Neither must we rashly task a man to wife as *Plato*, with the imputation of supercilious austerity, or affected singularity in his reprehension. For it hath been the unhappy fate of great inventions to be vilified, as idle fancies, or dreams, before they were published: and being once made known, to be under-valued; as falling within compass of the meanest wit, and things that every one could well have performed. Hereof (to omit that memorable example of *Columbus* his discovery, with the much different sorts of neglect, which he underwent before and after it) in a familiar and most homely example, we may see most apparent proof. He that looks upon our *English* Brewers, and their Servants, that are daily exercised in the Trade; will think it ridiculous to hear one say, that the making of *Malt*, was an invention, proceeding from some of an extraordinary knowledge in naturall Philosophy. Yet is not the skill of the inventors any whit the less, for that the labour of workmanship grows to be the trade of ignorant men. The like may be said of many handy-crafts: and particularly in the Printing of Books, which being devised, and bettered, by great scholars and wise men, grew afterward corrupted by those, to whom the practice fell; that is, by such, as could slubber things easily over, and feed their workmen at the cheapest rate. In this respect therefore, the Alchymists, and all others that have, or would seem to have any secret skill, whereof the publication might do good unto mankind: are not without excuse of their close concealing. For it is a kinde of injustice, that the long travels of an understanding brain, beside the losse of time, and other expence, should be cast away upon men of no worth; yeld less benefit unto the Author of a great work, than to meer strangers; and perhaps his enemies. And surely, if the passion of Envie have in it any thing allowable and naturall, as having Anger, Fear, and other like Affections: it is in some such case as this; and serveth against those, which would usurp the knowledge, wherewith God hath denied to indue them. Nevertheless, if we have regard unto common charity, and the great affection that every own ought to bear unto the generality of mankind, after the example of him that suffereth his sunne so shine upon the just, and unjust: it will appear more commendable in wise men, to enlarge themselves, and to publish unto the world, those good things that lye buried in their own bosomes. This ought specially to be done, so when a profitable knowledge hath not annexed to it some dangerous cunning, that may be perverted by evil men to a mischievous use. For if the secret of any rare *Antidote*, contained in it the skill of giving some deadly and irrecoverable poison: much better it were, that such a Jewell remain close in the hands of a wife and honest man; than being made common, binde all men to use the remedy, by teaching the worst men how to do mischief. But the works which *Archimedes* published, were such as tended unto very commendable ends. They were Engines, serving unto the defence of *Syracuse*, not fit for the *Syracusians* to carry abroad, to the hurt & oppression of others. Neither did he altogether publish the knowledge, how to use them, but reserved so much to his own

direction; that after his death more of the same kinde were not made, nor those of his own making were employed by the *Romans*. It sufficed unto this worthy man, that he had approved unto the vulgar, the dignity of his Science; and done especiall benefit to his Country. For to enrich a Mechanicall trade, or teach the Art of murdering men, it was besides his purpose.

*Marcellus* had caused certain of his *Quinquereme* Gallies to be fastned together, and Towers erected on them to beat the defendants from the wal. Against these *Archimedes* had sundry devices; of which any one fort might have repelled the assailants: but all of them together shewed the multiplicity of his great wit. He shot heavy stones & long pieces of timber, like unto the yeards of ships, which brake some of the Gallies by their force and weight. These afflicted such as lay farre off. They that were come nearer the wals, lay open to a continuall volly of shot, which they could not endure. Some with an yron grapple were taken by the prow and hoysted up, shaking out all the men, and afterwards falling down into the water. Some by strange Engines were lifted up into the ayre, where turning round a while, they were broken against the wals or cast upon the rocks: and all of them were so beaten that they durst never come to any second assault. In the like fort was the Land Army handled. Stones and timber, falling upon it like hail, did not only overwhelm the men, but brake down the *Roman* engines of battery; and forced *Marcellus* to give over the assault. For the remedy hereof it was conceived, that if the *Romans* could early before day get near unto the wals, they should be (as it were) 20 under the point blank, and receive no hurt by these terrible Instruments; which were wound up hard to shoot a great compass. But this vain hope cost many of the assailants lives: For the shot came down right upon them: and beating them from all parts of the wall, made a great slaughter of them, all the way as they fled (for they were unable to tarry by it) even till they were gotten very farre off. This did so terrifie the *Romans*, that if they perceived any piece of timber, or a ropes end, upon the wals, they ranne away, crying out, that *Archimedes* his engines were ready to discharge. Neither knew *Marcellus* how to overcome these difficulties, or to take away from his men, that fear, against the cause whereof he knew no remedy. If the engines had stood upon the wals, subject to firing, or any such annoyance from without, he might have holpen it by 30 some device, to make them unserviceable. But all, or the most of them were out of fight, being erected in the streets behind the wals, where *Archimedes* gave directions how to use them. Wherefore the *Roman* had no other way left than to cut off from the Town all provision of victuals, both by Land and by Sea.

This was a very desperate piece of work. For the enemies having so goodly an Haven; the Sea in a manner free; and the *Carthaginians* that were strong by Sea, willing to supply them: were not likely so soon to be consumed with famine, as the besiegers to be wearied out, by lying in Leaguer before so strong a City, having no probability to carry it. Yet, for want of better counsell to follow, this was thought the best, and most honourable course.

In the mean while, *Himilco*, Admirall of a *Carthaginian* Fleet, that had waited long about *Sicily*, being by *Hippocrates* advertised of these passages, went home to *Carthage*, and there to dealt with the Senate, that five and twenty thousand Foot, three thousand Horse, and twelve Elephants, were committed unto his charge, wherewith to make war upon the *Comans* in *Sicily* by Land. He took many Towns; and many that had anciently belonged unto the *Carthaginians*, did yeeld unto him. To remedy this mischief and to stay the inclination of men, which following the current of Fortune, beganne to turn unto the *Carthaginians*; *Marcellus* with a great part of his Army, rose from *Syracuse*, and went from place to place about the Island. He took *Pelorus* and *Herbessus*, which yeelded unto him. He took also *Megara* by force and sackt it 50 either to terrifie others that were obstinate, especially the *Syracusians*, or else because *Rome* was at this time poor, and his Army must have somewhat to keep it in heart. His especiall desire was to have saved *Agirgentum*: whither he came too late; for *Himilco* had gotten it before. Therefore he returned back toward *Syracuse*, carefully, and in as good order as he could, for fear of the *Carthaginian* that was too strong for him. The circumpection that he used, in regard of *Himilco*, stood him in good stead against a danger that he had not mistusted. For *Hippocrates*, leaving the charge of *Syracuse* unto his brother, had lately issued out of the City, with ten thousand foot, and five hundred horse,

horse, intending to joyne his forces with *Himilco*. *Marcellus* tell upon him, ere either was aware of the other: and the *Romans*, being in good order, got an easie victory against the disperfed and half unarmed *Syracusians*. The reputation hereof helped a little to keep the *Sicilians* from rebellion. Yet it was not long, ere *Himilco*, joyning with *Hippocrates*, ranne over all the Island at his pleasure, and presented battail to *Marcellus*, even at his Trenches; but the *Roman* wisely refused it. *Bomilcar* also a *Carthaginian*, entered with a great fleet into the Haven of *Syracuse*, and victualled the City. After this, the disposition of the Islanders changed so again, that although another Legion was come from *Rome*; which escaped from *Himilco*, and lately arrived at *Marcellus* his Campe: 10 yet many places revolted unto the *Carthaginians*, and flew or betrayed the *Roman* Garrisons.

In the midst of these troubles, Winter enforced both parts to take breath a while: and *Marcellus*, leaving some of his Army before *Syracuse*, that he might not seem to have given over the siege, went unto *Leontium*, where he lay intensive to all occasions. In the beginning of the Spring he stood in doubt, whether it were better to continue the laborious work of besieging *Syracuse*, or to turn all his forces to *Agirgentum*, against *Himilco* and *Hippocrates*. But it would greatly have impaired his reputation, if he had gone from *Syracuse*, as unable to prevail: and he himself was of an eager disposition, ever unwilling to give ground, or to quit, as not feasible, an enterprise that he had once taken in hand. He 20 came therefore to *Syracuse*: where though he found all the difficulties remaining as before, and no likelihood to take the City by force or famine; yet was he not without hope, that continuance of time would bring forth somewhat, which might fulfill his desire. Especially he assayed to prevail by reason, against which no place can hold out. And to this end, he dealt with the *Syracusan* Gentlemen that were in his Camp; exhorting them to practise with their friends that remained in the City. This was not easie for them to do, because the Town would hearken to no parlee. At length a slave unto one of these banished men, making thow to runge away from his Master, got into *Syracuse*, where he talked in private with some few, as he had been instructed. Thus began *Marcellus* to have intelligence within the City: whence the Conspirators used 30 to send him advertisement of their proceedings, by a fisher-boat that passed forth in the night: but when they were grown to the number of fourscore, and thought themselves able to effect somewhat of importance, all was discovered; and they like Traitors, put to death. In the mean while, one *Damasippus* a *Lacedemonian*, that had been sent out of the Town as an Embassadour to *Philip* King of *Macedon*, was fallen into the hands of *Marcellus*. *Epicides* was very desirous to ransom him: and many meetings were appointed for that purpose, not farre from the wals. There, one of the *Romans* looking upon the wall, and wanting the more compendious Art of Geometry, fell to numbering the stones: and making an estimate of the height, judged it less than it had been formerly deemed. Herewith he acquainted *Marcellus*: who causing better notice 40 to be taken of the place; and finding that ladders of no extraordinary length would reach it; made all thing ready, and waited a convenient time. It was the weakest part of the Town, and therefore the most strongly guarded: neither was there hope to prevail by force against *Archimedes*, if they failed to take it by surprize. But a fugitive out of the Town brought word, that a great feast was to be held unto *Diana*, which was to last three dayes: and that, because other good cheer was not so plentiful within the City, as in former times, *Epicides*, to gratifie the people, had made the more large distribution of wine. A better opportunity could not be wished. Wherefore *Marcellus* in the dead of the Festivall night, came unto the wals, which he took by *Scalado*. *Syracuse* was divided into four parts (or five, if *Epipole* were reckoned as one) each 50 of which were fortified as distinct Cities. When therefore *Marcellus* had gotten some pieces, he had the commodity of a better and safe lodging, with good store of booty, and better opportunity than before, to deal with the rest. For there were now a great many, as well of those in *Acradina* & the Island, inner parts of the Town, as of those that were already in the hands of *Marcellus*, that began to hearken unto composition, as being much terrified by the losse of those parts, which the *Romans* had taken and sackt. As for the weapons of *Archimedes*, little harme, or none they did, unto those that were sheltered under strong houses: although it may seem, that the inner wals were not altogether unfurnished of his help; since they held out a good while, and were not taken

by force. The *Roman* fugitives and Renegado's, were more careful than ever to defend the rest of the City: being sure to be rewarded with cruell death, if *Marcellus* could prevail. *Hippocrates* and *Himilco*, were daily expected; and *Bomilcar* was sent away to *Carthage*, to bring help from thence. It was not long ere *Hippocrates* and *Himilco* came: who fell upon the old Camp of the *Romans*, whilst *Epicles* sallied out of *Acraidia* upon *Marcellus*. But the *Romans* made such defence in each part, that the *Assailants* were repelled. Nevertheless, they continued to beset *Marcellus*: whom they held in a manner as faithfully besieged, as he himself did besiege the Town. But the pestilence at length consumed, together with the two Captains, a great part of the Army, and caused the rest to dislodge. The *Romans* were (though somewhat less) afflicted with the same pestilence, inasmuch that *Bomilcar* did put the City of *Carthage* in hope, that he might be taken where he lay, if any great forces were sent thither. This *Bomilcar* wanted no desire to do his Country service: but his courage was not answerable to his good will. He arrived at *Pachynus* with a strong fleet: where he staid, being loth to double the Cape, for that the winds did better serve the enemy than him. Thither sailed *Epicles* out of *Syracuse*: to acquaint him with the necessities of the City; and to draw him on. With much intreaty at length he came forward: but meeting with the *Roman* fleet, that was ready for him, he stood off into the deep, and sailed away to *Tarentum*, bidding *Sicil* farewell. Thence did not *Epicles* return into *Syracuse*, but went to *Agrirentum*: where he expected the issue, with a very faint hope of hearing any good newes.

The *Sicilian* Souldiers that remained alive of *Hippocrates* his Army, lay as near as they could safely, unto *Marcellus*, and some of them, in a strong town three miles off. These had done what good they could to *Syracuse*, by doing what hurt they could unto the *Romans*. But when they were informed, that the State of *Sicil* was given as desperate by the *Carthaginians*: they sent Embassadors to treat of peace; and made offer to compound, both for themselves, and for the Town. Hereunto *Marcellus* willingly gave ear: for he had staid there long enough; and had cause to fear, that after a little while, the *Carthaginians* might come thither strong again. He therefore agreed, both with the Citizens; and with the Souldiers that lay abroad; That they should be Masters of their own, enjoying their liberty and proper lawes; yet suffering the *Romans* to possess whatsoever had belonged unto the Kings. Hereupon they, to whom *Epicles* had left his charge, were put to death; new Leaders chosen; and the gates even ready to be opened unto *Marcellus*: when suddenly the *Roman* fugitives disturbed all. These perceiving their own condition to be desperate, perswading the other Mercenary Souldiers; That the Citizens had bargained only for themselves, and betrayed the Army to the *Romans*. Wherefore they presently took Armes, and fell upon the new chosen Prætors; whom they slew, and made election of six Captains that should command over all. But shortly it was found out, that there was no danger at all to the Souldiers, excepting only the fugitives. The Treaty was therefore again set on foot, and wanted little of conclusion: which yet was delayed; either by some fear of the Citizens, that had seen (as they thought) proof of the *Roman* avarice in the sack of *Epipola*, *Tyche*, and *Neapolis*, the parts already taken; or by some desire of *Marcellus* to get the Town by force, that he might use the liberty of a Conqueror, & make it wholly subject to *Rome*. *Mertius* a Spaniard was one of the six Captains that had been chosen in the last commotion: a man of such faith, as usually is found in Mercenaries, holding his own particular benefit above all other respects. With this Captain, *Marcellus* dealt secretly: having a fit instrument of the same Nation, one *Belligenes*, that went in company with the *Roman* Embassadors, daily passing to and fro. This crafty Agent perswaded *Mertius*, That the *Romans* had already gotten all *Spain*: and that if ever he purposed to make his own fortune good, either at home in *Spain*, or any where else; it was now the only time to do it, by conforming himself to the will of the *Roman* Generall. By such hopes the Spanish Captain was easily won, and sent forth his own brother among the *Syracusan* Embassadors to ratifie the covenant with *Marcellus*.

This under-hand dealing of *Marcellus* against the *Syracusians*, cannot well be commended as honest: neither was it afterwards thoroughly approved at his coming to *Rome*. For the benefits of *Hiero* to the *Romans* had been such, as deserved not to be required with the ruine of his Country: much less, that the miseries of his people, oppressed (though partly through their own folly) by an Army of Mercenaries, should minister

unto

unto the people of *Rome*, advantage against them. The poor Citizens could not make good their parts against the hired Souldiers; and therefore were faine to yield unto the time, and obey those Ministers of *Hannibal*, that ruled the Army. But as long as they were free after the death of *Hieronimus*; and now of late, when they had gathered courage by the flight of *Epicles*: it had been their chief care to maintain amity with the people of *Rome*. They had lately slain many the principall of *Epicles* his followers; and many of themselves had also been slain, both lately and in former times, because of this their desire unto the peace. What though it were true, that the Rascality, and some ill advised persons, joyed with the souldiers in hatred of the *Romans*, by occasion of the slaughter which they heard to be done at *Leontium*, and afterward beheld in those parts of their own City which was taken? Ought therefore the *Roman* Generall, in a treaty of peace held with the *Syracusians*, to make a bargain under-hand against them, with a Captain of the Mercenaries? These things were objected against *Marcellus*, at his return home: but the Senators thought it a great deal better, to comfort the *Syracusians* with gentle words, and promise of good usage in time to come, than to restore the booty, and give over the Dominion of a City, so great, wealthy, strong, and many wayes important. Nevertheless if we consider the many inconveniences and great mischiefs wherewith *Syracuse* was obnoxious; both by evil neighbours, and by that very form of policy, after which it was governed: we may truly affirme, That it received no small benefit, by becoming subject unto *Rome*. For thereby it was not only assured against all forraign enemies, domesticall conspiracies, and such Tyrants as of old had reigned therein: but freed from the necessity of banishing, or murdering, the most worthy Citizens; as also from all factions, intestine seditions, and a thousand the like miseries, that were wont to grow out of the jealousie, wherein they held their liberty in vain. Neither enjoyed that City, from her first foundation, any such long time of happiness, as that wherein it flourished, when it rested secure under the protection of *Rome*; and was no more molested by the disease of ambition; wherewith by *Marcellus* his victory it was thoroughly cured. But such benefit, arising from wrongs done, serves not to make injustice the more excusable: unless we should approve the answer of that Thief, who being found to have stolen a silver cup from a sick man, said, *Hee never leaves drinking*.

By the treason of *Mertius*, the *Roman* Army was let into possession of all *Syracuse*: wherein, the booty that it found, was said to have been no lesse, than could be hoped for, if they had taken *Carthage* it self; that maintained war by Land and Sea against them. All the goodly works and Imageries, wherewith *Syracuse* was marvellously adorned, were carried away to *Rome*; and nothing left untouched; save only the houses of those banished men, that had escaped from *Hippocrates* and *Epicles*, into the *Roman* Camp. Among other pitifull accidents; the death of *Archimedes* was greatly lamented, even by *Marcellus* himself. He was so busie about his Geometry, in drawing figures, that he hearkened not to the noyse, and uproar in the City; no, nor greatly attended the rude Souldier that was about to kill him. *Marcellus* took heavily the death of him; and caused his body to be honourably buried. Upon his Tomb (as he had ordained in his lifetime) was placed a Cylinder and a Sphere, with an inscription of the proportion between them; which he first found out. An invention of so little use, as this may seem, pleased that great Artist better, than the devising of all those engines, that made him so famous. Such difference is in the judgement of learned men, and of the vulgar sort. For many an one would think the money lost, that had been spent upon a son, whose studies in the University had brought forth such fruit, as the proportion between a Sphere and a Cylinder.

After the taking of *Syracuse*, all the Towns in *Sicil* yielded unto the *Romans*, except *Agrirentum* and a few places thereabout. At *Agrirentum* lay *Epicles* with one *Hanno* a *Carthaginian*, and *Mutines* an African, that was lately sent from *Hannibal*. This *Mutines* by many good pieces of service, had added some credit to the beaten *Carthaginian* side; and withall made his own name great. By his perswasions, *Hanno* and *Epicles* adventured to meet *Marcellus* without the Town, and not behave themselves as men expecting to be besieged. Neither was he more valiant in counsell, than in execution. Once and again he let upon the *Romans*, where they lay encamped, and drove them fearfully into their Trenches. This bred envie in *Epicles* & *Hanno*: especially in *Hanno*, that

E c c c c 3

that

that having been lately sent from *Carthage*, with commission and authority from the State, thought himself wronged greatly by *Hannibal*, in that he had sent unto him this *Mutines*, to be his companion, and to take upon him, like as good a man as himself. The indignity seemed the greater, when *Mutines* being to step aside unto *Heraclea*, for the pacifying of some troubles there among the *Numidians*, advised (as directing *Hanno* and *Epicles*) not to meddle with the enemy, untill his return. So much therefore the rather would *Hanno* fight: and offered battell unto *Marcellus*, before he sought it. It is like, that a great part of the *Roman* Army was left behinde in *Syracuse*, as need required: which made the *Carthaginians* the better able to deal with those that came against them. But whatsoever disproportion was between the two Armies; far greater were the odds 10 between the Captains. For howsoever the people of *Carthage* would give authority by favour; yet could they not give worth and ability, in matter of war. The *Numidians*, having before conceived some displeasure against their Captains: and being therefore some of them gone away to *Heraclea*, were much more offended, when they saw that the vain-glorious envie of *Hanno* carried him unto the fight, upon a foolish desire to get victory, without the help of *Mutines* their Countryman. Wherefore they sent unto the *Roman* General, and bade him be confident; for that it was not their purpose to shew themselves his enemies that day, but only look on, and see the proud *Carthaginians* well beaten by whom they had been misused. They made good their promise, and had their desire. For *Marcellus*, finding likelihood of truth in their message, did so lustily 20 set upon the enemies, that he brake them at the first charge; and with the slaughter of many thousands, drove them back into *Aggrigentum*.

If *Hanno* could have been contented, to follow the directions of one, that was a better man of War than himself, and not have hazarded a battell without need; the *Romans* would shortly have been reduced into termes of great difficulty in their *Sicilian* War. For *Marcellus* was shortly after to leave the Province; and soon upon his departure, there landed in the Iland a supply of eight thousand foot, and three thousand *Numidian* horse, that were sent from *Carthage*. The fame of this new Army drew many of the *Sicilians* into rebellion. The *Roman* Army consisting (for the most part) of the Legions of *Canne*, took it very hainously, that no good service done, could bring them into the favour of the Senate; but that, as banished men, they were sent far from home, and not suffered to return back to *Rome* with their Generall. *Mutines* had pacified his countremen the *Numidians*, & like an honest man, did what he could for those whom he served, without contending against the foolish pride of *Hanno*, finding that there was a great alteration; and a greater might have been, if the Army lately overthrown had been entire. *M. Cornelius* the *Roman* Prætor, used all diligence, both to pacifie his own men, and to hinder the *Carthaginians*. He recovered those In-land Towns that had rebelled: and though he could not hinder *Mutines* from over-running all the Country; yet he hindred the Country from revolting unto *Mutines*. Above threescore Towns, great and small, the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*: of which *Aggrigentum* was the principal, and far bigger than any of the rest. Thence issued *Mutines* as often as he pleased, in delight of the *Romans*: not only to the succour of his own adherents, but to the great waste of those that followed the contrary part. But *Hanno*, in stead of being pleased with all these good services, was filled more and more with envie, against the man that performed them. He had (belike) received instruction from old *Hanno* at *Carthage*, not to suffer *Hannibal*, or any *Hannibalian*, to have share in the honour of these *Sicilian* Wars: which were therefore perhaps the more diligently supplied; whilst *Italy* was neglected, that should have been regarded more than all the rest. Wherefore to shew his authority, and that it was not in the power of *Hannibal*, to appoint unto him an Assistant, or Director: He took away from *Mutines* his charge, 30 and gave it to his own sonne; thinking thereby to discountenance the man, and make him little esteemed, as one out of Office, among the *Numidians*. But it fell out quite contrary: and this spitefull dealing occasioned the losse of whatsoever the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicily*. For the *Numidians* were so incensed by the indignity offered unto their Countryman, being such a brave commander, that they offered him their service to requite the wrong; and were thenceforth absolutely at his own disposition. *M. Valerius* *Levinus*, the *Roman* Consul, was newly come into the Province, when this fell out: and with him did *Mutines* enter into intelligence. For he could no longer brook 40 this

these indignities; but being neither a *Carthaginian*, nor favoured by those that bore all the sway in *Carthage*: He thought it the wisest way, to play the best of his owne game, and forsake that City, which was likely to perish by the evill counsell that governed it. He did not therefore, as his Countrymen had lately done, content himself to see his Adversaries reap the bitter fruits of their owne malicious over-weening: and to suffer that harme, in doing whereof he would not bear a part; but conspired against them to deliver up *Aggrigentum*, and to help to expell them utterly out of *Sicily*. The Consul was glad of his friendship; and carefully followed his advertisements. Neither was there much cunning needfull, to the performance of that which *Mutines* had undertaken: For he with his *Numidians* did forcibly seize upon a gate; whereat they let in some *Roman* Companies, that lay near in a readinesse for the purpose. *Hanno*, when first he heard the noise, thought it had been no worse matter, than some such tumult of the *Numidians*, as he had been well acquainted with of late. But when, making haste to pacifie the trouble, he saw and heard, the *Romans* intermixed, among those discontented followers of *Mutines*, forthwith he betook himself to flight: and saving himself, with *Epicles*, in a small Bark, set sail for *Africk*; leaving all his Army and Adherents in *Sicily*, to the mercy of the *Romans*, that henceforward continued masters of the whole Iland.

*Levinus* the Consul having taken *Aggrigentum*, did sharp execution of justice upon all 50 the Citizens. The principall of them he scourged with rods, and afterwards beheaded, as was the manner of the *Romans*: all the rest of them he sold for slaves, and confiscated their goods; sending home to *Rome* the money that was raised of the booty. This was indeed a time, wherein *Rome* stood in no lesse necessity of gold, than of Steele: which may have been the reason, why *Levinus* dealt so cruelly with the *Aggrigentines*. Nevertheless the fame of such severity bred a terror among all the Dependents of the *Carthaginians*, so that in great haste they sought to make their peace. About forty Towns yielded themselves quickly unto the *Romans*; twenty were delivered up by Treason; and sixe only stayed to be wonne by force. These things done, *Levinus* returned home to *Rome*, carrying with him about four thousand men from *Aggrigentum*; that were a 30 company of out-laws, bankrupts, and banished men, accustomed to live by spoile of others in these troublesome times. He bestowed them about *Rhegium* in *Italy*, where they might exercise their own occupation against the *Bruttians*; a theevish kinde of people, that were enemies unto those of *Rhegium*, and to the *Romans*. As for *Mutines*, he was well rewarded, and made Citizen of *Rome*: where he lived in good accompt; accompanying the two *Scipios* in their journey against *Antiochus*, and therein doing (as it is said) very especiall service. So by this enterprise of *Sicily*, the *Carthaginians* wasted much of their forces, that with greater profit might have been employed in *Italy*: leaving yet unto the *Romans*, in the end of this warre, the entire possession of this Iland; which they wanted when it began.

## §. XVI.

How the war passed between the *Romans* and *Hannibal* in *Italy* from the taking of *Capua* to the great victory at *Metaurus*.

Shortly after the winning of *Capua*, *Marcellus* came to *Rome*: where for his good services done in the Iland of *Sicily*, he had granted unto him the honour of the lesser Triumph, which was called *Ovation*. The greater Triumph was denied him: because he had not finished the warre, but was faine to leave his Army behinde him in the Province. He stayed not long in *Rome*, before he was again chosen Consul 50 together with *M. Valerius* *Levinus*, who succeeded him in the government of *Sicily*, and was, at the time of his election, making war against King *Philip* in *Greece*. Great Complaint was made against the Consul *Marcellus*, by the *Syracusians*, for that which he had done unto them: they alleging their great friendship to the people of *Rome*, in the time of their late King *Hiero*; and affirming, that their City did never willingly break the alliance, excepting when it was oppressed by such Tyrants, as were not greater enemies to *Rome* than to all good men that lived in *Syracuse*. The Consul, on the other side, reckoned the labours and dangers whereunto they had put him: willing them to be moan themselves to the *Carthaginians* that had holpen them in their necessity; and not unto 10 the



the Romans whom they had kept out. Thus each part having some good matter to allege, the Senate made such an end of the controversy, as best agreed with the benefit of their own Common-wealth: blaming the too much rigour of *Marcellus*; yet not restoring the booty that he had taken, nor making the *Syracusians* free from their subjection, but comforting them with gentle words, and hopefull promises, as hath been shewed before. The two new Consuls *Marcellus* and *Lavinus*, were appointed to make war, as their lots should fall out; the one in *Italy*, the other in *Sicily*. The Isle of *Sicily* fell unto *Marcellus*; which Province he willingly changed with his Colleague, to the end that the *Syracusians* (whose cause had not as yet been heard in the Senate) might not seem hindred by fear, from uttering their grievances freely. Afterwards, when his business with them was dispatched, he gently undertook the patronage of them: which remained long in his Family, to the great benefit of their Country in times following. So *Valerius*, the other Consul, was sent into *Sicily*, whose doing there have been already rehearsed: but *Marcellus* was employed against *Hannibal*.

Before the Consuls departed out of *Rome*, they were much troubled with pressing of Souldiers to the war, and most of all, with getting Mariners for their Navie. They were all of the poorer sort, that used to be employed in Sea-services, especially in rowing. These could not live without present wages: neither was there money enough in the Treasury to give them pay. Wherefore it was ordained, that they should be set out at the expence of private men; who in this necessity of the State, were driven to sustain all publick charges. Hereat the people murmured, and were ready to fall into sedition; had not the Consuls deferred the matter unto further consideration. The Senate could ill tell, what to determine or doe, in a case of such extremity. For manifest it was, that the multitude had already endured so much, as well it could undergoe; and somewhat more, than could with honesty have been imposed upon it. Nevertheless it was impossible to maintain the war against the *Carthaginians*, or to keep the *Macedonian* out of *Italy* without a strong fleet. Wherefore, some were of opinion; That since the common Treasury was so empty, the people must be forced, by right or wrong, to take the burden upon them. At last the Consuls began to say, That no persuasions would be so effectual with the people, as good examples: and that if the Senators would follow the Consuls, like it was that the people also would follow the Senate. Wherefore they propounded, and it was immediately concluded, That every one of them should bring forth, and put into the Treasury, all the money that he had; and that no Senator should keep any vessell of gold, or plate whatsoever; excepting one Salt-seller, and a Bowle wherewith to make their offerings unto the gods; as also a Ring for himself, with such other tokens of ingenuity for his wife and children, as every one did use, and those of as small value as might be. This advice of the Consuls was not more thankfully accepted by the Senate, than the ready performance thereof by the Senate was highly applauded, and hastily followed by the Gentlemen of *Rome*. Neither did the Commonalty refuse to do that, which their betters had openly done before them. For since the publick necessity could no otherwise be holpen; every one was contented, that his private estate should run the same fortune with the Common-wealth, which if it suffered wrack, in vain could any particular man hope to enjoy the benefit of his proper substance. This magnanimity deserved well that greatness of Empire, whereof it was the foundation.

Convenient order being thus taken for an Army and Fleet: *Marcellus* went forth of the City against *Hannibal*; & *Lavinus* toward *Sicily*. The Army of *Hannibal* was greatly diminished, by long and hard service: neither did his *Carthaginians* seem to remember him, and think upon sending the promised supply, or any such proportion as he needed. His credit also among his *Italian* friends, was much weakened, by the loss of *Capua*: which gave them cause to look unto themselves; as if in his help there were little trust to be repoted, when they should stand in need. This he well perceived; yet could not tell how to remedy. Either he must thrust Garrisons into all Towns that he suspected, and thereby so diminish his Army, that he should not be able to keep the field: or else he must leave them to their own fidelity, which now began to waver. At length his jealousy grew so outrageous, that he sacked and wasted those places that he was unable to defend: thinking that the best way to enrich himself; and make unprofitable to his enemies, the purchase from which he could not hinder them. But by this example, many were quite alienated from him; and some of those, whom before he had least cause

to doubt. The town of *Salapia* yielded unto *Marcellus*; and betrayed unto him a gallant Regiment of *Numidian* horse, the best of all that served under *Hannibal*; which was a greater loss, than the Town it self. *Blasius* the author of this rebellion, could not bring his desire to effect; without getting the consent of one *Dafius*, that was his bitter enemy. Wherefore he brake the matter to this *Dafius* in private: and was by him accused unto *Hannibal*. But when he was convicted and charged of Treason, he so stoutly denied it, and by way of recrimination, so vehemently pressed his accuser with the same fault: that *Hannibal* thought it a matter devised out of meer malice; knowing well what enemies they were; and seeing that neither of them could bring any proof of what he affirmed. This notwithstanding, *Blasius* did not cease to presse his adversary anew, and urge him from time to time, with such lively reasons; that he who could not be believed by *Hannibal*, was contented at length to win the favour of *Marcellus*. Presently after this, the Consul took by force, *Maronea* and *Miles*, Towns of the *Samnites*, wherein he slew about three thousand of *Hannibal* his men.

*Hannibal* could not look to all at once; but was fain to catch advantages; where he might get them; the Romans now being grown stronger in the field than he. The best was, that his *Carthaginians*, having wearied themselves with ill speed in many petty enterprises, and laid aside all this while the care of *Italy*, to follow business of far less importance; had now at length resolved, to send presently the great supply, that had been so long promised and expected. This if they had done in better season, *Rome* it self might have been stricken down, the next year after that great blow received at *Canna*. But since that which is past cannot be amended, *Hannibal* must force himself to make a good countenance; and tell his followers, that this mighty succour would come time enough. For *Masinissa* was at *Carthage* with five thousand *Numidians*, ready to set sail for *Spain*, whither when he came, it was appointed that *Masinissa* should forthwith take his journey into *Italy*, of which there had been so much talk. These newes did not more comfort *Hannibal* & his followers, than terrifie the Romans. Wherefore each did their best; the Romans to prevent the threatening mischief, and win as much as they could upon *Hannibal*, before the coming of his brother; *Hannibal*, on the contrary, to hold his own, and weaken the Romans as much as he was able. He had intelligence, that *Cn. Fulvius*, a Roman Prætor lay near unto *Herdonea* to get the Town by practise. It was not long since, near unto the same place, another *Cn. Fulvius* had lost his Army. Therefore *Hannibal* made great marches thitherward; & came to *Herdonea* ere *Fulvius* heard news of his approach. As soon as he came, he offered battail to the Roman Prætor; who accepted it with more haste than good speed. The Roman Legions made good resistance a while, till they were compassed round with the *Carthaginian* horse. Then fell they to rout; and great slaughter was made of them. *Fulvius* himself, with twelve Tribunes or Coronels, were lost: of the common Souldiers, that were slain, the number is uncertain, some reporting seven, others thirteen thousand. The Town of *Herdonea*, because it was at point to have yielded unto *Fulvius*, *Hannibal* did set on fire: and putting those to death that had practised with the Enemy, carried away the multitude, whom he bestowed among the *Thurians* and *Metapontines*. The Consul *Marcellus* hearing of this, wrote unto the Senate: and exhorted them to be of good cheer, for that he would shortly abate the enemies pride. He followed the *Carthaginian* space; and overtaking him at *Numistro* in the Country of the *Lucians*, fought with him a battell: which beginning at nine of the clock in the morning, lasted untill night, & ended, by reason of the darkness, with uncertain victory. Afterward *Hannibal* departed thence into *Apulia*, whither *Marcellus* followed him. At *Venusia* they met, and had many skirmishes; but none of importance. *Hannibal* removed often; and fought to bring the enemy within danger of some ambush. But *Marcellus*, though he was very eager of battail, would yet adventure nothing, but by open day-light, and upon fair ground.

Thus passed the time away, untill *Q. Fabius Maximus*, and *Q. Fulvius*, he that lately had taken *Cigna*, were chosen Consuls. *Fabius* considering how much the Roman affairs were bettered by the taking of *Capua*, purposed that year to besiege *Tarentum*: which if he could win, like it was, that scarce one good City would afterwards remain true to *Hannibal*. Wherefore he vehemently exhorted his Colleague, and *Marcellus*, (to whom was continued the command of those Legions that served under him the year before) to presse the *Carthaginian* so hard, as he might have no leisure to help

*Tarentum*.

*Tarentum*. *Marcellus* was very glad of this charge: for he thought no *Roman* fitter than himself, to deal with *Hannibal* in open field. He followed him therefore to *Cannussum*, and thence from place to place: desiring ever to come to battail, but upon equal termes. The *Carthaginian* had not minde to hazzard much in fight: but thought it enough to entertain his enemy with skirmish; as being desirous to keep his Army strong untill the coming of *Asdrubal*. Yet could he not avoid the importunity of *Marcellus*, nor brook the indignity of being daily braved. He therefore bade his men to be lusty, and to beat soundly this hot-spirited *Roman* Captain, that would never suffer them to be at quiet; untill they once had cooled well his courage, by letting him bloud. Hereupon followed a battail; wherein *Hannibal* had the victory; took sixe Ensignes; and slew of the *Romans* almost three thousand, among which were some of mark. *Marcellus* was so in patient of this dishonour, that he rated his men, as Pefants, and base cowards: telling them, that they were the first of the *Roman* Legions, which had been beaten by *Hannibal*, by plain force and manhood, without being circumvented by any stragem. With these and many other the like words, which they were ashamed to hear, he did so vex them; that thinking themselves better able to endure any violence of the enemy, than such disreputable of their Generall; they besought him to pardon them, and lead them forth once again to fight. He did so: and placing those Companies foremost, that had lost their Ensignes the day before, bade them be carefull to winne a victory; whereof the newes might be at *Rome*, before the report of their shamefull overthrow. *Hannibal* was angry, to see that nothing could make this Enemy quiet: and therefore was ready to fight again; since all other motives continued the same, and his men had been heartned by the late victory. But the *Romans* were stirred up with desire of revenge, and of repairing their honour lost, which affections gave a sharp edge unto their valour: whereas the *Carthaginians* were grown dull, and weary by seeing themselves disappointed of their hope; and the enemy, notwithstanding their late victory, as ready to molest them as before. In this second battail *Marcellus* got the victory: which he purchased at so dear a rate, that neither he, nor *Hannibal*, had great cause to vaunt, the second night. For if eight thousand of the *Carthaginians* were slain, and three thousand of the *Roman* side, in this next battail, the difference was no greater, than even to recompence the late received overthrow: especially since the number of the *Romans* that were wounded, was so great, as disabled *Marcellus* from pursuing *Hannibal*, who dislodged by night. Nevertheless it sufficed, that *Fabius* the Consul here-by got leisure, to follow his businesse at *Tarentum* without any disturbance. *Q. Fulvius* the other Consul about the same time, took in many of the *Hirpines*, *Lucans*, and *Volscientes*, that willingly yielded themselves, and betrayed the Garrisons of *Hannibal* that lay in their Towns: whom *Fulvius* entertained in loving sort; gently rebuking them for their errors past, without punishing those that had been authors, or busie doers in the rebellion. That rabble of *Sicilian* thieves, which *Levinus* had lately brought from *Agaturna*, was then also set on work to besiege *Caulonia*, a Towne of the *Brutians*: and nothing was omitted, that might serve to divert *Hannibal*, from the succour of *Tarentum*.

*Q. Fabius* the Consul, having taken *Manduria* a Town of the *Salentines*, sat down before *Tarentum*: making all preparation that seemed needfull to carry it either by assault or long siege. Of the Garrisons in the Town, a good part were *Brutians*, placed there by *Hannibal*, under a Captain of their own Nation. This Captain fell in love with a *Tarentine* wench; whose brother served under *Fabius*. Hereof he gave notice by letters to her brother, as thinking belike to draw him from the *Roman* side; by telling him how rich, and of what great account her lover was. But her brother made the Consul acquainted with these newes: and said, that if the *Brutian* were farre in love, he might perhaps be wonne, by intreaty of his Mistress, to doe what he would have him. The Consul hearing this, and finding likelihood in the matter, willed his souldier to convey himself into the Town as a fugitive, and try what good might be done. It fell out according to his desire. The souldier grew acquainted with this *Brutian* Captain: and partly by his own persuasions, partly by the flattering entreaty of his sister; wanne him to betray the Town to the *Romans*. When they had agreed upon the businesse, and resolved how to order it, the same souldier got out of the Town by night, and acquainted the Consul with his proceedings: telling him in which part

that *Brutians* kept watch, and what might conveniently be done. So in the night time, *Fabius* gave an alarm to the City; especially about those parts of the wall, which were farthest from the place where he meant to enter. The Captains in the Town, prepared to make resistance in those places, where the noise did threaten them with greatest likelihood of danger. But *Fabius* himself with the choice of his men, came in great silence to the quarter of the *Brutians*: who being wrought by their Captain, helped the *Romans* to get up, and break open the next gate, whereat the Army was let in. The *Tarentines* and *Carthaginian* souldiers, made head against *Fabius* in the Market place: but (as hapneth in like cases, where the main confidence is already taken away) not very obstinately. *Nico*, *Democrates*, and *Philomenes*, with those that before had let in *Hannibal*, used now the last of their courage in dying against the *Romans*. *Carthalo*, who commanded the Garrison within the Town, offered himself prisoner: hoping to be well used, because of his hospitality that had passed between his Father and the Consul. But he was slain by the way, ere he could come at *Fabius*. The *Romans* did put all indifferently to the sword, in such sort, that they spared few of the *Brutians*. This slaughter of the *Brutians*, was thought to have been made by appointment of the Consul, to the end that he might seem to have wonne the Town by force and not by treason: though he thereby failed of his purpose; and neither had the glory which he expected, nor preserved his reputation of faithfull dealing, and keeping his word. The booty found in *Tarentum* was very great: whereof the *Roman* Treasury, whither it was carried, had great need. As for the Imageries, and other curiosities that were in the City, *Fabius* was contented to let them alone: and being told of some Idols that seemed worthy to be carried away, being very goodly pieces, in such habit & posture as if they were fighting: he said, Let us leave unto the *Tarentines* their angry gods.

*Hannibal* being gotten clear from *Marcellus*, fell upon those that besieged *Caulonia*. They fled at his coming: but he was so near, that they were faine to betake them to a hill, which served to no other purpose, than to bear off the first brunt. There they defended themselves a little while, and then they yielded. When this businesse was done, he hasted away to relieve *Tarentum*. But when he came within five miles of the City, he had news that it was lost. This grieved him: yet he said no more than this, *The Romans have also their Hannibals*, we have lost *Tarentum* in such sort as we got it. That he might not seem to turn back amazed, or in any fear of the victorious Consul; he incamped a few dayes together, so near as he was unto *Tarentum*: and thence departing to *Metapontum*, betought himself how to take *Fabius* in a trap. He caused the chief of the *Metapontines* to write unto *Fabius*, and offer to betray into his hands, the *Carthaginian* Garrison; with condition, that he should in that respect, forgive them all offences past. These letters were sent by two young men of the same city; who did their errand so well, that the Consul wrote back by them unto the *Metapontines*, and appointed the day, when they should expect him. Hereof *Hannibal* was exceeding glad: and at good leisure made ready his ambushes for the wary *Fabius*. But wherefore some secret notice of the plot were given; or whether indeed (as it is related) some tokens in sacrificing, terrified the superstitious *Roman*; the journey to *Metapontum* was deferred. Hereupon the same two messengers were employed again: but being apprehended, and threatened with torture, they discovered all.

This year was happy to the *Romans*, in all their warres: for they got every where, save only at *Caulonia*; where they lost a company of such lewd fellows, that it may seem good fortune, to have so been rid of them. But their common poverty, and disability to maintain their charge, continued, and grew greater than it was before. Thirty *Roman* Colonies were then in *Italy*: of which, twelve refused to contribute any longer to the Wars. For it was considered, that the Legions of *Cannae*, and those unhappy Companies that had been beaten under the one and the other *Cn. Fulvius*, were transported into *Sicily*, where they lived, in a sort, as banished men. This grieved their friends at home, and made them reckon up the more diligently those other miseries which they daily felt. Ten years together they had been exhausted with levies of men, and impositions of money: in every of which years they had received some notable overthrow. In this case the least that they could fear; or rather the best that they could hope; was to fall into the hands of the enemy to be made prisoners. For *Hannibal* did gently send home their people that was taken by him: whereas the *Romans* did banish from their

homes, those that had escaped. It was therefore likely to come to pass within a while, that they should be all consumed: since new souldiers were dayly pressed forth of their Towns; and the old ones never returned. Such talk was frequent among those of the Colonies: especially where they that were transported into *Sicily*, had most compassionate friends. Wherefore it was concluded by the people of *Ardea*, *Surium*, *Alba*, and other good Towns, to the number of twelve, That they should boldly deny unto the *Romans* their farther help. This was thought the likeliest way to obtain peace: whereof otherwise they saw little hope, as long as *Hannibal* lived. When the Consuls heard the Embassadors of these Towns make such declaration, and protest their disability of giving any farther help: they were much amazed. They willed the Embassadors to returne home, and bring a better answer, forasmuch as this was none other than treason: they bade them to consider, that the people were not *Campani* or *Tarentines*, but the off-spring of the *Romans*; and no lesse partakers of the Empire, than they that inhabited the Mother-City. But all would not serve, the Embassadors continuing to protest, that they had already done what they could; and that they had remaining, neither men, nor money. It was well for the *Romans*, that the other eighteen Colonies did not imitate these twelve; but shewed themselves willing to undergo whatsoever should be layed upon them, without shrinking under the burden. This their offer was so highly pleasing to the Consuls, that the Embassadors of those faithfull Colonies, were brought unto the Senate, and produced into the Assembly of the people: where, with commemoration of all their former good services, this their present love unto the State was magnified, and thanks accordingly bestowed upon them; with promise, that it should not be forgotten. As for the Embassadors of those twelve Colonies, that refused to contribute, it was thought best, neither to retain them in the City, nor yet to dismisse them, nor take any notice of them at all, but leave them to their own consideration of their ill deserving.

It may greatly be doubted, what the example of these twelve people would have wrought in those that were so willing to help the State, if *Asdrubal* had been then coming into *Italy*. For then must the *Romans* have betaken themselves wholly to their own defence; whereas now, to the great comfort of their subjects, they employed their forces in the conquest of *Italy*, with hopefull and fortunate success. Nevertheless, they were faine to open their most privie treasury; and thence take out the gold that had been laid up to serve them in cases of greatest extremity. Of the money thus extracted, one quarter was delivered to *Fabius* the Consul, to set him well out against the *Tarentines*; all the rest was sent into *Spain* to *Scipio*, for the maintenance of his Army; and to provide that *Asdrubal* might not passe from thence into *Italy*. It is likely that *Fabius* did not spend all his money; finding such easie success at *Tarentum*, as was shewed before. But to stop the journey of *Asdrubal*, neither the money sent into *Spain*, nor any victories won by *Scipio* could suffice. Nevertheless it fell out happily for the people of *Rome*, that this year, and the next were spent, before his coming; and they better prepared, than at less warning they could have been, to entertain him. Here it were not amiss to note, That since the *Romans*, being in so great necessity of money, were driven to furnish the Army in *Spain*, with the greatest part of all their stock that was left: it must needs be, that either the booty taken in new *Carthage*, was far less than fame had reported it; or else that *Scipio* had not as yet won it: howsoever *Livie* rather inclines to those, who say that he got it soon after his arrivall.

*M. Claudius Marcellus*, & *T. Quintus Crispinus*, were chosen Consuls after *Fabius* and *Fulvius*. In their year it was, that *Asdrubal* took his journey out of *Spain*, though he came not into *Italy* untill the year following. After the great battell at *Canna*, *Hannibal* had lost much time about *Cuma* and *Naples*, in seeking to make himself Master of a good Haven; for the landing of those succours that were promised from *Carthage*. The hope that he repozed in *Philip*, caused him to turn his principall care to the Easterne parts of *Italy*; where he made ready a fair entrance for the *Macedonian*, if he had been ready to come; but since his hope was vanished, and the long promised succour of *Asdrubal* was (though farre later than had been expedient) ready to arrive: he began to deal with the people of *Hetruria*, through whose Countries his brother was to passe, that therein he might make a party against the *Romans*. The loss of *Capua*, *Tarentum*, and many other towns, might have terrified all other of the *Italian* towns, from hearkening

to any solicitation of the *Carthaginians*. Yet the poverty of the *Romans*, & the wearines of their adherents, together with the tame of a greater Army coming than that which *Hannibal* brought into *Italy*, did imbolden many of the *Hetrurians*, especially the *Arentines*, to take such counsell as they thought most expedient for themselves, without regard of their fidelity to *Rome*. The *Roman* Senate, hearing the rumour of their conspiracy, sent *Marcellus* the new chosen Consul into *Hetruria*: whose coming did so terrifie them, that they rested quiet for a while. All the year following they were devising how to break out: as contrariwise the *Roman* Propretors, partly by terror of severe judgements and inquisitions; and partly by the force of two or three Legions, with which they visited all suspected places, kept them honest against their wils, and took many Hostages for better assurance. The two Consuls had an earnest desire, to make strong War upon *Hannibal* without more temporising: perswading themselves, that in battell they should be too strong for him. *Crispinus* had further his particular desire, to make his Consulship notable by the winning of some good Town: as *Fulvius* and *Fabius* had gotten honour by *Capua* and *Tarentum*. I therefore he went about the siege of *Locri*, one of the best Cities which the *Carthaginian* then held in *Italy*: and brought thither all sorts of engines, sending for a Fleet out of *Sicily* to help him. But *Hannibal* was not slow to relieve the City: the fame of whose approach, made *Crispinus* desist from his enterprise, and retire unto his Colleague, that lay at *Velesia*. Thither followed *Hannibal*, to whom the Consuls daily offered battell. This great man of War had no need to stand upon his reputation: which was already so confirmed, that his refusing to fight, was not likely to be ascribed unto fear; but rather deemed as part of his wisdom. He entertained the Consuls with many light skirmishes, and sought to take them at some advantage; reserving his own numbers as full as he could, unto a time of greater employment. In this lingering manner of War, *Marcellus* took no pleasure: but sought to compell the Enemy to battell, whether he would or no. The Admirall of the *Roman* Fleet about *Sicily*, *L. Cincius*, was commanded again to assail the Town of *Locri*: which might well enough be forced, if *Hannibal* continued as he began, to trifle away the time at *Venusia*. To the same purpose a part of the Garrison that lay in *Tarentum*, was appointed to go by land to the assistance of *Cincius*. But *Hannibal* had an eye behinde him. He laid an ambush in the way between *Tarentum* and *Locri*, whereinto the *Romans* fell: and having lost above three thousand of their Company, were well glad, the rest of them, to quit their enterprise, and save their own lives within *Tarentum*. As for the Consuls, it was the desire of *Hannibal* to waste their Army by little and little: which to doe, he neglected no advantage. There lay between him and them an Hillock, overgrown with wood, that seemed fit to cover a number of men: who lying there undiscerned, might fall upon such as should straggle from the *Roman* camp; and cut them off. Therefore he sent thither by night some companies of *Numidians*: whom he willed to keep themselves close, and attend their best advantage. To this piece of ground the Consuls thought it fit to remove their camp: *Marcellus* thinking that he never lay near enough unto *Hannibal*. Thither therefore both of them rode to view the place, accompanied with the son of *Marcellus*, a few Colonels, and other principall men: and not many more than two hundred horse, most of them *Hetrurians*. The *Numidian* Centinel gave warning of their approach to his fellows who discovered not themselves, until they had surrounded the Consuls and their train. The Consuls, as necessity compelled them, defended themselves: hoping to be quickly relieved from their camp that was near at hand. But the *Hetrurians* ran away from them, at the first: and left them in that great danger, to the weak assistance of no more than forty horse-men, that were of the Colonie of *Fregella*. These *Fregellans* abode by the Consuls, and did what they could to have brought them safe off. But when *Marcellus* was stricken thorow with a Lance, and fell down dead; then began every one to flist for himself, and escape as they might. *Crispinus* the other Consul, had his death wound, being stricken with two Darts; and young *Marcellus* was likewise wounded; yet these two recovered their camp: The rest of the Colonels and Officers, together with the Lictors that carried the bundles of Rods and Axes before the Consuls, were all slain or taken. To the dead body of the Consul *Marcellus*, *Hannibal* gave honourable Funeral, according to the custome of those times: and bestowing his ashes in a silver pot, covered it with a crown of gold; and so sent them to young *Marcellus*, to be by him interred, where he thought good.

Presently after this, *Crispinus* bethought himself, how that the signet Ring of *Marcellus* was fallen into the custody of *Hannibal*; who might use it to his own purposes, ere that which had happened were well known abroad. Wherefore he sent word unto all the Towns about; that his Colleague was slain, and that *Hannibal* had gotten his Ring: wishing them in that regard, to give no credit unto any letters therewithall signed. This providence of *Crispinus* was not more than requisite. For his messenger was but a little before come to *Salapia*, when another Messenger arrived there sent from *Hannibal*, bringing letters in the name of *Marcellus*, and sealed with the captive Ring; whereof the contents were: That it was his purpose to come the same night unto *Salapia*; where he willed, that the Souldiers of the Garrison should be in a readinesse, for such employment as he should think needfull. The device was plain, and no lesse plain was the revengeful minde which he bore against that City; because of his brave *Numidian* companies that had therein been betrayed. The *Salapians* hereupon bethought themselves, how to take their enemy in his own snare. They sent back the Messenger, which was a *Roman* fugitive, without letting him perceive any sign of distrust in them. This done, they prepared all things in a readinesse, for the entertainment of such a friend. Late in the night he came thither; with a troop of *Roman* fugitives armed *Roman*-like, leading the way. These all talking Latine together, called unto the Watch, and bade open the gate, for the Consul was there. The gate was opened fair and leisurely, and the Port-cullis drawn up no higher than needs it must be, to let them enter. But when fixe hundred of them were gotten in, down fell the Port-cullis again: and they that thought to have taken others, were taken themselves; being laid at on all hands by the *Salapians*, that quickly made an end with them.

*Hannibal* being thus over-reached with this stratagem, hasted away to *Locri*; whereunto *Cincius* the Admirall of the *Roman* fleet about *Ciail*, did lay hard siege. The first appearance of the *Numidians*, *Hannibal* his Vantcursors, made the *Romans* in all counted haste, run to their ships: leaving all their engines, and whatsoever was in their Camp, to the enemies disposition.

The *Roman* Senate hearing of these accidents, sent unto *Crispinus* the surviving Consul, and requested him to name a Dictator that might take charge of the Common-wealth, and dispatch the election of new Magistrates, with other businesse; whereunto himself was disabled by his hurts. He did so: and soon after died. Then was it thought needfull, that new Consuls should be chosen out of hand: forasmuch as two *Roman* Armies lay so near unto the Enemy, without any General. Especially it was desired, that Election should be made of such men as were not only valiant, but well advised: since the best, and most fortunate of their great Darters, *M. Marcellus*, by losing himself so strangely, had given them a fair warning, not to commit their Army unto rash heads. Among those that stood for the Consulship, *C. Claudius Nero*, was the most eminent. He was of great Nobility, a good Souldier, and one, whose many services in this present War, did forcibly commend unto the place. Yet he seemed a little too violent; and one, whose temper needed the allay of a more stayed wit. The fathers therefore endeavoured to joyn unto him in the Consulship, *M. Livius*: one that had borne the same Office long before. This *M. Livius* had been Consul with *L. Aemilius Paulus*, in the year foregoing the beginning of this Warre. After their Consulship, wherein they did good service, they had both of them been called into judgement by the people: and this *Livius* condemned; *Aemilius* hardly escaping. Though it hath been once already noted; yet I cannot forbear to remember it again: how it pleased God to upbraid the unthankfull *Romans*, with the malicious judgement, given by their multitude upon honourable men. For in the battel of *Canna*, it was apparent, what lamentable effects the memory of their injustice wrought: when *L. Aemilius* rather chose to yeeld to the froward ignorance of his Colleague; and afterward to die in the greatest overthrow that ever fell upon the State of *Rome*, than by resisting the pernicious courses of *Tarentius Varro*, to cast himself anew upon the danger of the popular fury. As for *M. Livius*, he is even now ready, and will so continue, to tell the people of their faults in a divers manner. Eight years together after his condemnation, had he been absent out of the city, and lived in his country Grange; still vexing himself with the indignity of his condemnation. *Marcellus* and *Livius*, being Consuls two or three years agoe, had brought him into *Rome*: where he lived private in discontented sort, as might appear, both

both by his carelesness in apparell, and by the wearing of his long hair and beard: which in that time were the badges of men afflicted. Very lately he was compelled by the Censors, to poll his hair, and come into the Senate: where he used to sit silent, and signifie his assent or dislike to what was propoosed, either in short formal words, or in passing from side to side, when the house was divided. At length it happened, that in some businesse weightily concerning one that was his kinsman, he stood up and made a free speech: whereby he drew all the Fathers to attention; and bade them enquire of him, and take better notice, what he was, and what he had been. The Senate was much altered since he had left it; many brave men were lost; new ones were chosen; such as rather served to fill up the number, than to answer to the dignity of the place: and they that were left of ancient standing, had even spent their Vertues to no great effect. Wherefore all began to say; that it was great pity, so worthy and able a man as this *Livius*, had been all this while forgotten; one of whom the Common-wealth stood in great need, yet had not used in this dangerous war. Now seeing that the Consuls ought, one of them, to be chosen a *Patrician*, the other of necessity a *Plebeian*: and since neither *Fabius*, nor *Valerius* *Livius*, being both of them *Patricians*, could be joyned with *Claudius Nero*; every one was of opinion, that there must be chosen and coupled together, two fitter men than *C. Claudius* and this *Marcius Livius*. But *Livius* would not endure to hear of this. He said it was unreasonable, that one condemned as a dishonest man, should afterwards be chosen Ruler of the City. If they had done ill to trust him with one Consulship, what meant they then to offer him another? With these, and the like phrases he resisted their desires: till by perswasions, and examples rehearsed, of such as had patiently digested injuries done by the people, and repayed good for evil; he was contented to accept the honour.

Here we may behold a true figure of that Embleme, with which *Themistocles* checked the ingratitude of the *Athenians*: resembling himself to a Plane-tree, the branches and boughs whereof men break in fair weather; but run under it for shelter in a storme. Such unthankfulness, to well-deserving men, is not rarely found in the outrageous multitude. Neither was the late example hereto much unlike, of *Philip* the second King of *Spain* his dealing with the Duke of *Avon*. For although he had committed the Duke to prison, upon some small offence conceived, without all regard of his former deserts: yet when his intended conquest of *Portugal*, required the service of a man, more than ordinarily sufficient; he stood no longer upon the scanning of late displeasures; but employed the same Duke, whom he had newly disgraced. Thus is wisdom often taught by necessity.

It was a dangerous year toward, when *C. Claudius Nero*, and *M. Livius* were chosen Consuls. *Asdrubal* was already come into *France*, and waited only; to have the wayes of the Alpes thawed by warm weather, for his passage into *Italy*. The *Romans* used at this time the service of three and twenty Legions: and wanted not employment for many more, if they had known how to levie and maintain them. Of these which they had, four served in *Spain*, two in *Sicily*, and two in *Sardinia*: the rest were so disposed, in severall parts of *Italy*, where need seemed to require, that only two Legions were left to each of the Consuls. But the Consuls were men of execution; and would not be tied to the punctuall observance of what the Senate thought fit. *M. Livius* would not stirre out of *Rome*, against so mighty a power as followed *Asdrubal*, until he had first obtained, that he might carry with him as many as could well be spared from other employments; and those, or the most of them, chosen Companies. It was true, that two Legions appointed to serve under *Lucius Porcius* a Prator of that year, among the *Cisalpine Gauls*, might be reckoned as an additament to the forces of *Livius*; to whom the War against *Asdrubal* was allotted. So might also two other Legions, that were among the *Salentines*, near unto *Tarentum*, under another of the Prators, be accounted a part of *Claudius* his Army, that was sent against *Hannibal*. Nevertheless, the Consuls, by the especial instance of *Livius*, did obtain, that all might be left to their own discretion. For newes came, that *Asdrubal* was already passing the Alpes; the *Ligurians*, who dwelt in the Country about *Genoa*, with their neighbour people, were in readinesse, to joyn with him; and *L. Porcius* sent word, that he would adventure no further, than he safely might. When all was ordered as themselves thought best, the two Consuls went forth of the City; each his several way. The people of *Rome* were now quite otherwise

affected, than they had been, when *L. Amilins Paulus* and *C. Terentius Varro*, were sent against *Hannibal*. They did no longer take upon them, to direct their Generals, or bid them dispart, and win the victory betimes : but rather they stood in fear, left all diligence, wisdom and valour should prove too little. For since few years had passed, wherein some one of their Generals had not been slain; and since it was manifest, that if either of these present Consuls were defeated, or put to the worst : the two *Carthaginians* would forthwith joyne, and make short work with the other : it seemed a greater happinesse than could be expected, that each of them should returne home Victor; and come off with honour, from such mighty opposition, as he was like to finde. With extreame difficulty had *Rome* held up her head, ever since the battell of *Canna*: though it were so, that *Hannibal* alone, with little help from *Carthage*, had continued the War in *Italy*. But there was now arrived another tonne of *Amilcar*; and one, that in his present Expedition, had seemed a man of more sufficiency than *Hannibal* himself. For whereas in that long and dangerous march, through barbarous Nations, over great Rivers and Mountains, that were thought unpassable, *Hannibal* had lost a great part of his Army: this *Asdrubal* in the same places, had multiplied his numbers; and gathering the people, that he found in the way, descended from the Alps like a rowling Snow-ball, far greater than he came over the Pyrenees at his first setting out of *Spain*. These considerations, and the like, of which fear presented many unto them; caused the people of *Rome*, to wait upon their Consuls out of the Town, like a pensive train of Mourners: 20 thinking upon *Marcellus* and *Crispinus*; upon whom in the like sort they had given attendance the last year; but saw neither of them returne alive, from a lesse dangerous War. Particularly, old *Q. Fabius* gave his accustomed advice to *M. Livius*, that he should abstain from giving, or taking battell, untill he well understood the Enemies condition. But the Consul made him a froward answer, and said, that he would fight the very first day: for that he thought it long, till he should either recover his honour by victory; or by seeing the overthrow of his own unjust Citizens, satisfie himself with the joy of a great, though not an honest revenge. But his meaning was better than his words.

Of the overthrow that *Asdrubal* received in *Spain* by *Scipio*, a little before he took his journey into *Italy*; such mention hath already been made, as agreed with the report of that noble Historian *Livie*. Yet I think it not amisse to adde in this place, what may be gathered out of the remaining fragments of *Polybius* his History concerning that accident: *Asdrubal* had wrestled with many difficulties in *Spain*; by reason of those Captains that were sent from the City of *Carthage*, to joyn with him in the administration of that Province: they being, as it may seem, of the *Hannonian* faction, which is to say, thus far forth Traytors, that they preferred the advantage of their own side, before the good of their Common-wealth. In what particulars they wronged this worthy sonne of *Amilcar*, and how they hindred his courtes undertakings, it cannot be known: since of those books, wherein *Polybius* hath exactly handled these matters, there are to us remaining only a few broken pieces. But by the spitefull dealing of *Hanno* in *Sicily* with *Mutines*, a better man of War than himself, whom *Hannibal* had sent into the Island: we may conceive, that against the brother of *Hannibal* it was thought needfull, by these mischievous Partizans of *Hanno*, to use the violent opposition of more earnest malice. Nevertheless, *Asdrubal* was a good Patriot: and therefore endured patiently such indignities, as *Mutines* could not long digest. His journey into *Italy* being resolved upon: he lay with part of the Army at *Bitula*, not far from the Mines of silver; whence he was to furnish his Expeditions. Thither came *Scipio*: and drave him out of his Camp, though he were strongly lodged, before the other *Carthaginian* Captains could, or would come to his assistance. The overthrow seems not to have 30 been so great, as it must have been supposed, if no way lay open to those that fled. Rather it appears, that *Asdrubal* dealt like a provident man, and seeing that his Camp was likely to be forced, sent away all his money with his Elephants before him: but staid behind himself to sustain the *Romans* a while, untill his carriages might be out of danger. Herein he had his desire. Afterwards, he gathered his broken troupes together: and retired in such sort, that *Scipio* thought it not good to pursue him, and so passed over *Tagnus*. Then taking unto him the forces assigned for his expedition, he marched away toward the Pyrenees: leaving the care of *Spain* unto his brother *Mago*, and to *Asdrubal* the

Excerpt. e. Polybius lib. l. 10. c. 11.

the sonne of *Gefso*; that thought himself the fittest man for the administration thereof. Fain would *Scipio* have stopped him on his journey, by sending to defend against him the ordinary way of the mountains. But whether *Asdrubal* took another way, or whether he forced the guards that *Scipio* had set to keep the Pyrenees (as the defence of hard passages commonly is to no good effect) he was not letted in his voyage by any such impediment. Comming into *Gaul*, and following the steps of his brother *Hannibal*: he found the Nations that lay in his way, so well affected, either to him or to his money that no passages were defended against him, nor any fort of resistance made; but he, and his Army well entertained, and their number much increased, by access of such as were desirous to take his pay. Of these he had the better choice: for that he was driven to winter in their Country; whilst that the passages of the Alps were closed up with Ice and Snow. The Mountainers likewise, that had to greatly molested *Hannibal* in his journey over the Alps, were easily won to take part with *Asdrubal*, when he travelled thorow their Country. For these poor men, at the first comming of *Hannibal*, were verily persuaded, that it was his purpose to rob them of their cattell; and to make spoil of that little wealth which they had painfully scraped together out of the desolate rocks. But now in process of time, they were better informed. Therefore understanding, that there were two mighty Cities, far disjoyned asunder, which made War upon each other, by Land and Sea; and that the Alps did only lie in the way: they gladly consented to take their part in the fortune of the Invaders. The like affection upon greater cause, was afterward found in the *Cispaline Gauls*. The *Ligurians* also joyined with *Asdrubal*: and so would the *Hetrurians* have done, if he had arrived in their Country. There was no other *Roman* Army near, than *L. Portius* with his two Legions; of whom there was no great fear. Therefore did *Asdrubal* set upon *Placentia*, a *Roman* Colony: in hope to make his comming the more terrible, by the destruction of that Town. But there he lost a great deal of time, and finally was driven to quit the enterprise: by undertaking which, he gave the *Roman* Consuls leisure to make ready for him; and caused his brother *Hannibal* (who upon the first bruit of *Asdrubal* his so timely, and easily passing the Alps, was about to leave his wintering Camps, and go 30 forth to meet with him) to sit still a while, as well aware, that *Placentia* would not be taken in haste.

*C. Claudius Nero* the *Roman* Consul, made what speed he could to meet with *Hannibal*, and stop him from joyning with his brother. He had about forty thousand foot, and five hundred horse: with which he daily offered battell to the *Carthaginians*; and had of him the better in many skirmishes. *Hannibal* was once driven to make a tedious march from the borders of the *Salentines* and *Apulians*, into the Country of the *Brutians*, there to encrease his forces; which were otherwise too weak for the journey intended. Afterward comming to *Grunentum*, a Town of the *Lucans*; he there fought unprosperously with *Nero* the Consul. Nevertheless, he got off, and marched away to *Venusia*. But *Nero* followed him, and had there again the better of him. Wherefore he was driven to return to *Metapontum*: where joyning with *Hanno*, that had made ready a good Army, he assayed again, to make way by force to his brother. So he passed onward, and came again to *Venusia*, having *Nero* still at his heels. Thence went he over the River *Ausidus*, to *Cannusum*, where he fate down, not far from the place, in which he had obtained his most memorable victory. There also did *Nero* sit down by him: and both of them rested, without making offer to fight. It seemed perhaps unto *Hannibal*, who knew the Country very well; that his brother might with little impediment, overcome the way to *Cannusum*: where if he could once again deal with both the Consuls, and all the *Roman* forces together, he had reason to hope for such another victory, as once he had 30 gotten in the same open Country. If this had so fallen out; *Rome* would have been undone for ever. But the *Carthaginians* should not have needed to win any second victory, in the naked Camps about *Canna*; if such an Army as this which *Asdrubal* now brings, had come to second *Hannibal*, when he was in his full strength; and the *Romans* not able to keep the field. Wherefore this worthy Generall had good reason afterward to say, that *Hanno* was the man, who by delaying the supply, did bear him out of *Italy*; which else no power of the *Romans* could have done.

Whilst *Nero* waited upon the *Carthaginians*, and thought it enough to hinder them from meeting with the Army that was comming to their succour: he was adverted of

*Asdrubal* his approach; by Letters and Messengers intercepted; as they were going to *Hannibal*. These gave notice, that *Asdrubal* had left the siege of *Placentia*, and drew on towards space: being already come within two hundred miles of his brother; notwithstanding all opposition that could be made by *Livie* the Consul. Of these news *Claudius Nero* was no less joyfull. For if *Hannibal* could once be joyned as head; unto that great body of an Army, which *Asdrubal* brought with him: it was most apparent, that howsoever the fortune of *Rome* should avoid, for the present, any great calamity; yet the very continuance of so strong a war at home, would enforce the *Latines*, and other faithful Associates, to lament under the burden; as twelve of the thirty *Roman* Colonies had already done. Wherefore he resolved, that it were better to make any desperate adventure, than to suffer the conjunction of two such malevolent Planets: whose pestilent influence, if not on the sudden, yet within few years, was like to work most lamentable effects. It seemed apparent, that his Colleague was unable to stay the progress of *Asdrubal*: neither were there any good Legions in a readiness, that could do service in such a needfull case; excepting those, that were already employed under the two Consuls. Hereupon he concluded, that it was not expedient for him to tie himself to his own charge, which was the warre against *Hannibal*: but rather that it behoved him, to help where more necessity required; and to carry part of his forces unto his Colleague. This could not be without much danger. Yet since the meeting of the two *Carthaginian* brethren, was farre more dangerous to the *Roman* Common-wealth: it seemed the best way to put Fortune in trust, with that which was of the lesse importance. Six thousand foot, and a thousand horse he therefore took, that were the very choice of his Army: and making shew, as if he would only step aside, to do some small piece of service near at hand; away he posted as fast as he could, to assist his fellow Consul. His Messengers ran before him, to give warning to all Towns by which he was to passe, that they should be ready to meet him with victuals, and all other necessaries for his Army. *Livius* the other Consul, at that time, lay encamped near unto *Sena Gallica*; and *Asdrubal* within half a mile of him. In six dayes *Nero* had finished his journey thither; and when he drew near, sent Messengers before him, to give notice of his coming. *Livie* thought it fittest that he should stay in some place of covert untill dark night, and then enter secretly into the Camp: lest the Enemy, perceiving this access of strength, should accordingly frame his counsels. This was done: and a token given, that the Colonels, Captains, and all Souldiers, as well horse as foot, that *Nero* had brought with him, should be lodged and entertained by men of their own fort. Their Company was somewhat increased by Voluntaries that joyned with him on the way. Nevertheless it was not needfull that the Quarter which received them, should be enlarged; since they had brought with them nothing but their armes. The next day they held a Councell of Warre: wherein some were of opinion, that it was best for their new arrived Companies to refresh themselves a few dayes after their weary journey, before they should be drawn forth to battell. But against this, *Nero* was very earnest: and besought his Colleague, to make use of him out of hand; that he might betimes return to his own camp, ere *Hannibal* should have notice of his absence. The Souldiers also of *Nero* were full of spirit; perceiving that the honour of the victory was like to be theirs: forasmuch as the battell would not have been undertaken, without this their coming to help. Finally, it was agreed when the Councell brake up, that the signe of battell should be hung out; which was commonly a purple coat over the Generals Pavilion.

*Asdrubal* was no less willing than the *Romans* to come to battell, having long desired it, and hitherto not found occasion before. But when he had put his men in order, and was riding before the head of his Army, to behold the Enemies countenance: it seemed to him, that they were more than they had been; and some of their armes and horses looked as though they had wanted dressing, after a long journey. Hereupon he began to withdraw his Army back into the camp: and gave order, that if no prisoners could be taken, by whom he might be certified of the truth; yet should there good observation be made, whether the Enemies camp were enlarged, or no; or what other alteration could be noted, that might shew their forces to be increased. The camp, as hath been said was not extended: but the trumpets that sounded only once in the Quarter of *L. Porcius*, the Prætor, did now, contrary to former custome, sound twice in the

the quarter of *Livius* the Consul. Hereat *Asdrubal* greatly mused: and being well acquainted with the *Roman* orders, held this for a sure token, that the other Consul was there arrived. How this might be, if *Hannibal* were alive, and in good case, he was not able to conjecture: but thought it the best way, to goe securely to work, till he might be better informed. Upon confidence in his own forces, he had not cared hitherto, how near he lay to the *Romans*; nor troubled himself perhaps with over-strongly fortifying his own camp. Yet when he now perceived, that somewhat was fallen out beside his expectation, he changed his resolution; and held it no dishonour to remove a little further off. So he fledged secretly by night, intending to get over the River *Metaurus*; whereby to ke himself as long as he could, from necessity of battell. But whether it were so, that his guides did steal away from him in the dark, so that he could not find the way to the Forde; or whether his carriages were too heavey, and hindred his speed: far he had not gone, ere the Consul *Nero* was at his heels with all the *Roman* horse, and stayed him from passing any further. Soon after came *L. Porcius* with the light armature: whom the other Consul followed anon with all the Legions; in good order, and ready for battell. *Asdrubal*, seeing himself overtaken with necessity to fight, omitted no care and circumspect on. His *Gauls*, in whom he reposed least confidence, he placed in his left wing upon a Hill, which the Enemy should not, without much difficulty, be able to climbe: in the right wing he stood himself with his *Africans* and *Spaniards*; his *Ligurians* he placed in the midle; and his Elephants he bestowed in the front of his battels. On the *Roman* side, *Nero* had the leading of the right wing, *Livius* of the left, and *Porcius* of the battell. Both *Romans* and *Carthaginians* well understood, how much depended upon the fortune of this day; and how little hope of safety there was unto the vanquished. Only the *Romans* herein seemed to have had the better in conceit and opinion; that they were to fight with men desirous to have fled from them. And, according to this presumption, came *Livius* the Consul with a proud bravery, to give charge on the *Africans*, by whom he was so sharply entertained, that the victory seemed very doubtfull. The *Africans* and *Spaniards* were stout Souldiers, and well acquainted with the manner of the *Roman* fight. The *Ligurians* also were a hardy Nation, and not accustomed to give ground; which they needed the less, or were able now to doe, being placed in the midle. *Livius* therefore, and *Porcius* found strong opposition: and with great slaughter on both sides, prevailed little or nothing. Besides other difficulties, they were exceedingly troubled by the Elephants, that brake their first ranks; and put them in such disorder, as the *Roman* Ensigns were driven to fall back. All this while *Claudius Nero*, labouring much in vain against a steep Hill, was unable to come to blowes with the *Gauls*, that stood opposite unto him, but out of danger. This made *Asdrubal* the more confident; who, seeing his own left wing safe, did the more boldly and fiercely make impression on the other side, upon the left wing of the *Romans*. But *Nero* perceiving that the place wherein he stood, was such as would compel him to remain idle till the fight were ended; took a part of his forces, and led them round behinde the forces of *Porcius* and *Livius*: which having compassed, he fell upon *Asdrubal*, and charged him in the flank. Here began the victory to be manifest on the *Roman* side. For *Nero*, finding none to resist him in front, ran all along the depth of *Asdrubal* his battell: and falling upon the skirts thereof, disordered the Enemies, and put all to rout. Of the *Spaniards* therefore and *Africans*, that were laid at on every side, the greatest part was slain. The *Ligurians* and *Gauls* escaped as they could; and saved themselves by timely flight. Of the Elephants four were taken alive: the rest were slain: some by the Enemies weapons, others by their own guides, that rode them. For when any of them, being fore wounded, began to waxe unruly, and rush back upon their own battels following them, the guide had in readiness a Mallet, and a Chizze, wherewith he gave them a stroke between the ears, in the joint of the neck, next unto the head, wherewith he killed the beasts upon a sudden. This speedy way of preventing such harme as the Elephants, being hurt, were wont to do to the squadrons following them, is said to have been the device of *Asdrubal* himself, who dyed in this battell.

Great commendations are given to *Asdrubal*, both by *Polybius* and by *Livie*. He is said at all times, to have shewed himself worthy of *Amilcar* his father, and *Hannibal* his brother: to have thriven with great patience against many difficulties, whereinto he fell



tell by the means of those Captains that were sent from *Carthage* into *Spain*; to have performed in this last battell all duties of a worthy General; and finally, when he saw the losse irreparable, to have ridden manfully into the thickest of his Enemies; where, fighting bravely, he was slain. Of the number that died with him in this battell, the report of *Livie*, and of *Polybius* do very much disagree. For *Livie* saith that the *Carthaginians* had no lesse an overthrow, than was that which they gave to the *Roman* at *Cannae*; that fifty six thousand of them were slain, five thousand and four hundred taken prisoners, and above four thousand *Roman* citizens, whom they had captives with them, delivered, and set at liberty. He saith also, that of the *Romans* and their Associates there were slain eight thousand: and of the booty, that it was exceeding great; not only in other kinds, but in gold and silver. Concerning the booty, *Polybius* hath no mention of it. Likely it is to have bin as rich as *Livie* reporteth it; for *Asdrubal* came well stored with money. But *Polybius* (who had no desire to make this battell of *Metanrus*, a parallel unto that of *Cannae*) reports no more than about ten thousand of the *Carthaginian* sides; & two thousand of the *Roman*, to have bin slain. The number of the prisoners he doth not mention: but only saith, That some of the *Carthaginian* Princes were taken alive, and that all the rest died in the battell. Whereby it may seem that they were all *Barchines*: forasmuch as they preferred the honour of themselves, and of their country, above their lives.

The joy of this victory was no lesse in *Rome*, than had been the fear of the event. For ever since it was known in what fort *Nero* had left his Army, the whole City was troubled, as much as lately at *Hannibal* his coming thither. Men thought it strange, that the Consull should make such a great adventure, as thus to put the one half of all the *Roman* forces unto hazzard of the Dice. For what if *Hannibal* should chance to have notice of this his departure, & either pursue him, or set upon the Army that staid behind, much weakened, and without a General? Thus did they talk; yet reserving their censure unto the successe; with liberty to approve or condemn, according to the issue. In the mean time the people filled the Market-place, the Women ran to the temples, with Vowes and Prayers; and the Senators were daily in counsell, waiting still ready at hand upon the Magistrates, as if some great matter were likely to fall out, that would aske every ones help. In brief, they were all so full of melancholy, that when the first newes of victory came, there were not many that would beleve it. Afterwards, when Messengers arrived from the Consuls, with Letters containing all that had passed, there was not only great and joyfull concourse of all sorts of men unto the Temples, but the very face of the City was altered; and men from thenceforth began to follow their private business, making contracts one with another (which they had long forborn to do) and attending their own affairs in such wise, as if *Hannibal* were already driven out of *Italy*.

*Nero* returning to his camp, threw forth openly the head of *Asdrubal* before the *Carthaginians*: and producing his *African* prisoners bound, sent two of them loose to give *Hannibal* notice of what had hapned. These two prisoners might have served well enough to certifie *Hannibal* of the mis-adventure, without doing wrong to the dead body of *Asdrubal*: especially since *Hannibal*, in honourable, and far different manner, had given buriall to *Gracchus* and *Marcellus*; yea, to all the *Roman* Generals, whose carcases fell into his hands. But it may seem, that howsoever the People of *Carthage* wanted much of the generous disposition, which was found among the *Romans*, in their love unto the Common-weal: yet in dealing with enemies, they were far more civilly, and lesse prone to the infoleny of revenge. The best excuse of this outrage done by *Nero*, is, that he hoped much more by the sudden terrour of such a spectacle, than by the simple relation of that which had passed, to make a deep impression of fear into the *Carthaginians*. It may also be said, That he forgot himself, being over-joyed with the greatness of his prosperity. For it was the battell of *Metanrus* that weighed down the ballance, and turned the Tide of the *Roman* fortune: which being then at the lowest Ebbe, ceased not after wards to flow, till it could not be contained within any banks. *Hannibal* having lost in this unhappy fight (besides the worthy Gentleman his brother) all the hope that so long sustained him in *Italy*, with-drew himself into the Country of the *Brutians*: and thither he caused all the *Lucans*, that were of his party, to remove; as likewise all that dwelt in *Metapontum*. For he wanted men to defend so many places as he held at the present, because they lay too far asunder. Where-

Wherefore he drew them all into a lesser compass in the utmost corner of *Italy*, it being a country of much fastness, and the people exceedingly devoted to his service. In this business *Nero* gave him no memorable impediment: either because *Hannibal* was too strong for him, having all his forces united; or because it is likely that this remove of the *Lucans* and *Metapontines*, was not before the end of Summer, when their harvest was gathered in: at what time the Senate called him home to *Rome*. *M. Livius* the other Consull tarried among the *Cisalpine* *Gauls* untill the end of summer; there to set things in such order as he thought requisite: which done, he wrote unto the Senate, that there was no more need of him and his Army in that Province, but that *L. Porcius*, with the two Legions that were there before, might very well discharge the place. For this cause, he desired leave to returne home; and that he might bring his Army with him. The Senate well understood his meaning: which was, to have the honour of triumph as he well deserved. But forasmuch as it was well known, what interest *Nero* had in the late victory: order was so given, that not only *Livie* with his Army should come home, but likewise *Nero*, though leaving his Army behinde him, to confront *Hannibal*. So the honour of triumph was granted to them both: in the pomp whereof, *Livie* made the greater shew, as riding in a Chariot, and followed by his Souldiers; because in his Province, and upon his day of command, the victory was gotten: his Army also being present at the triumph. But *Nero*, that rode on horse back, and without such attendance, was the more extolled by the People and Souldiers; by whom, the victory was in a manner wholly ascribed unto his great worth. Neither wanted *L. Veturius Philo*, and *Q. Caelius Metellus*, Lieutenants to the Generals, the due acknowledgement of their good service. For they were commended unto the People, as men worthy to be chosen Consuls: and Consuls they were chosen for the year following. But nothing was done by them, worthy of memory in their Consulship. Neither indeed for this year; which was the thirteenth of the present war, untill the eighteenth year wherein it ended, was there any matter of importance wrought in *Italy*, save only the taking of *Locri* from the *Carthaginians* by surprise. For *Hannibal* wanted strength, wherewith to make any great offer: and the *Romans* had little minde to provoke him; but thought it well that he was quiet. Such opinion had they conceived of him, that though all about him went to ruine, yet in him alone they thought there was force enough to hold himself upright. And surely, very notable are the commendations given unto him by *Polybius*, whom *Livie* therein follows: That making war upon a People of all other the most warlike, he obtained so many victories by his own good conduct; & that leading an Army, compounded of so many sundry nations, *Africans*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, *Carthaginians*, *Italians*, & *Greeks*, which were, neither in Language, Lawes, Conditions or any other thing, one like to another; he held them all in such good order, that they never fell to sedition among themselves, or against their General. But that which *Livie* adds hereto, is yet perhaps of greater admiration: That he sustained his Army, without help from other places, from this time forward, upon the hungry soile of the *Brutians*: which, when it was best manured in time of peace, could hardly suffice to nourish the Inhabitants. It is therefore apparent, that by his proper worth and vertue, he kept his Army in such order and obedience, rather than by any greatnesse of reward and booty: since, after the death of *Asdrubal*, hee made no invasion upon the wealthier parts of *Italy*; but held himself still among the poor *Brutians*. Where we must leave him; untill he be drawn into *Africa* by *Scipio*; whose doings will henceforth entertain, and lead us unto the end of this War.

## §. XVII.

How P. Cornelius Scipio the Roman made entire conquest of Spain.

## t. I.

How the Carthaginians were driven by Scipio from the Continent into the Isle of Gades.

**M**ago and *Asdrubal* the son of *Gesco*, took upon them the charge of *Spain*, when *Asdrubal* the sonne of *Amilcar* departed thence into *Italy*. These agreed together, that *Mago* should make a voyage to the *Baleares*; there to levie a supply of men;

men: and *Asdrubal* with-draw himself into *Lusitania* (which is now *Portugal*) whither the *Romans* had ill means to follow; being altogether unacquainted in those parts. *Mago* had soon ended his business, and returned into *Spain*: where he met with one *Hanno* (the same perhaps that had lately been employed in *Sicily*) who brought new forces out of *Africa*, and came to succeed in place of *Asdrubal* the *Barchine*. It is not unlikely that *Spain* was now the better, and more readily furnished with men, and all things needfull from *Carthage*; when that son of *Amilcar*, whose authority had been greatest, was thence departed. For hereby might the factious diligence of old *Hanno* approve it self, against that noble race of Warriors; when it should appear, that things did prosper much the better by being left unto the handling of other men. Whether it were upon desire to make good some such opinion raised of him at home, or whether upon confidence in the forces that he brought over: *Hanno* took the field, and led *Mago* with him; as purposing afresh to set upon the *Romans*. So he entred into the country of the *Celiberians*, not very far from new *Carthage*: where, by money, and over persuasions, he levied above nine thousand men.

*P. Scipio* in the mean while contained himself in the Eastern parts of *Spain*: attentive, as it may seem, to the proceedings of *Asdrubal*, the sonne of *Amilcar*, against whom, he is reported by some Writers to have sent part of his forces into *Italy*, to the assistance of *C. Claudius Nero*, and *M. Livius* the Consuls. But hearing of the levie made by *Hanno* and *Mago* among the *Celiberians*, he sent *M. Syllanus* the Propretor, with ten thousand foot, and five hundred horse. *Syllanus* got intelligence by some fugitive *Celiberians*, who became his guides, that their Countreimen incamped apart from the *Carthaginians* in great disorder: as men fearing no danger, because they were at home. Wherefore as closely as he was able, he drew neer to these *Celiberians*; and falling upon them on the sudden, gave them such an overthrow, that *Hanno* and *Mago* coming to their succour, instead of heartening and re-inforcing them, became partakers of the loss. *Mago* saved himself with all the horse, and old Companies of foot, which were about two thousand: and in ten dayes journey brought them safe to *Asdrubal*. The rest of the *Africans* were either slain or taken: among whom, *Hanno* had the ill luck to be taken prisoner; though he kept himself out of the fight until all was lost. As for the *Celiberians*, they knew better how to make shift, and saved most of themselves by running in to the woods.

It could no otherwise be, but that *Scipio* was much troubled with the danger wherein *Italy* stood, by the coming thither of *Asdrubal*. Ten thousand foot, and eighteen hundred horse he did therefore send out of *Spain* (as it is reported by some Authors) to the defence of his own Country; or was perhaps, about to send them: and thereupon remained at new *Carthage*, intente to the necessity and successe of his Countreimen at home. But when he had word of the great victory at *Metaurus*, which fell out long before the end of the Summer, then might he well adventure, to take in hand the entire conquest of *Spain*; which must needs be much alienated from the *Carthaginians*, by the report of such an overthrow. The *Spanish* Souldiers that served under *Hannibal*, and those that had been sent over into *Africa*, were as pledges heretofore, by whom their Country was held obnoxious to the *Carthaginians*. But when it was noised abroad, that all which had followed *Asdrubal* into *Italy*, were fallen into the hands of the *Romans*; and that *Hannibal* with his army was closed up in a straight, whence he could not get out: then did it greatly behove the *Spaniards* to conform themselves unto the will of the Victors. That it was the successe of things in *Italy*, which gave such confidence unto *Scipio*; it was the more probable, because he took not this great enterprise in hand, until the summer was almost spent. *Asdrubal* therefore used the benefit of the season; and by disposing his Army into many Garrisons, hindered the Enemy from doing any great exploit before winter. So the very length of way, and the time of the year, caused *Scipio* to return back: without any other matter performed, than that his brother *L. Scipio* took by assault the Town of *Oringis*.

Against the next years danger, *Asdrubal* prepared a great Army: and spared not cost; nor travell, in strengthening himself, for the tryall of his last fortune in *Spain*. With seventy thousand foot, four thousand horse, and two and thirty Elephants, he took the field: which number I believe, that he could hardly have raised, without boldly denying the truth of those reports that came from *Italy*. *Scipio* thought his *Roman* Legions

too weak to encounter with such a multitude. Wherefore he judged it needfull to use the help of his *Spanish* friends. But the death of his Father and Uncle, that were cast away by the treason of such false Auxiliaries, made him on the other side very doubtfull, of relying upon those, that might perhaps betray him in his greatest need. Yet since one *Colebus*, that was Lord of eight and twenty towns, had promised him the last Winter, to raise three thousand foot, and five hundred horse for his service: he resolved to make use of those, and some few others, that might help to make a shew; and yet not be able to do any great harme, if they would revolt. So with five and forty thousand foot, and three thousand horse, he sought out the Enemy; near unto whom he incamped. At his first coming, *Mago* and *Masaniissa* fell upon him; with hope to rake him unprepared, whilst he was making his lodgings. But he laid certain troupes of horse in covert: which, breaking upon them unexpected, caused them to fall off. They made at first an orderly retreat: but being more hardly pressed, they shortly betook themselves to plain flight. After this encounter, which added some courage to the *Romans*, and abated the presumption of the *Carthaginians*, there were daily skirmishes between the horse and light armature, on both sides; wherein was nothing done of importance. *Asdrubal* drew forth his Army, and arranged it before his Trenches: the like did *Scipio*; each of them to shew that he durst fight, yet not proceeding any farther. Thus they continued many daies: *Asdrubal* being still the first that issued forth in the morning; and the first that, in the evening, withdrew himself into his Trenches.

The *Spanish* Auxiliaries were placed on both sides in the wings; the *Carthaginians* were in the midst, with their Elephants before them; and opposite to these on the other side were the *Roman* Legions. When they had in this order confronted one another, though at farre distance, many dayes together: it grew to be the common opinion, that they should shortly meet in the same form; and be matched on each part, with the enemies long before designed. But *Scipio*, when he purposed indeed to fight, altered the form of his Army; and withall, came forth earlier than he had been wont. He caused his men and horses to be well fed betimes in the morning before day: and then sent forth his horse and light armature, to train out the *Carthaginians* with their bellies empty: using herein the same trick, whereby he might remember that *Hannibal* had beaten his father in the battell of *Tribia*. His *Roman* Legions he bestowed in the wings; his *Spaniards* in the middle. *Asdrubal* sent forth his horse in all haste, to entertain the *Romans*; whilst he himself arranged his men, in their wonted order at the Hill foot, upon which he incamped. In the skirmishes of the horse it could not be discerned which part had the better: since, being over-pressed on either side, they had a safe retreat unto their foot; and one troupe succeding another by course, returned to charge. This fight was protracted by *Scipio* to a great length: because his men, having well fed themselves, were like to hold out better than the enemy. But about noone he caused his wings to advance a good pace; leaving their battell of *Spaniards* far behind them, that came on leisurely, according to direction. The *Spanish* Mercenaries that stood in *Asdrubal* his wings, were no way comparable, save only in number, to the *Latine* and *Roman* Souldiers that came against them; for they were fresh Souldiers, levied in haste; and fighting only in respect of their pay. Being therefore charged in front by the Legions, and in flank, at the same time, by the *Roman Velites*, and by some cohorts, that were appointed to wheel about for the same purpose, they were sorely pressed; and with much difficulty made resistance. The *Carthaginians* would fain have succoured them; but that they durst not stir out of their places, because of the *Spanish* battell which was coming against them; though it were as yet far off. Thus the best part of *Asdrubal* his Army stood idle, until the wings were broken. For, had he adventured to meet with the *Spaniards*, he must have cast himself into the open space that lay before him between the *Roman* wings: to the depth whereof when he had arrived, he should have found himself inclosed in such sort, as was the Consul *Paulus* at the battell of *Cannæ*. Wherefore he did only employ his Elephants; which did, according to their manner, no greater harm to his Enemies, than to his friends. When they were chafed with wounds, they could no longer be ruled by their guides: but ran, as chance led them, and troubled both parts; or those perhaps the more, that were the more unwilling to kill them. In process of the fight, the *Romans*, who had well refreshed their bodies in the morning, endured lusty; when the others began to faint with travell and heat of the day.

Wherefore perceiving their advantage, they followed it the more hotly; and gave not over, till they had forc't the enemy to change his place, and run from him. *Asdrubal* did his best to have made an orderly retreat; and afterward again, to have caus'd his men turn head at the Hill foot. But the *Romans* would not suffer the victory to be extorted from them: neither was it easie to put fresh courage into the vanquish'd, led by the obstinate passion of fear, which hearkens to no persuasion. The Camp of *Asdrubal* had that day been taken, if a storm of rain, which fell violently on the sudden, and bred some superfluous in the *Romans*, had not caus'd them to give over.

The same night *Asdrubal* gave no rest to his men: but caus'd them, hungry, and over-laboured as they were, to take pains in fortifying the camp; wherein he feared to be assaulted. But little assurance could he have in the strength of his Trenches, when he had lost the hearts of his *Spanish* Souldiers. One *Attanes*, that was Lord of the *Turdians*, fled from him to the *Romans*, with a great Band of his Subjects: many followed this example; and soon after two strong Towns were yielded up to *Scipio*, and the *Garrisons* betrayed. It seems that the perverse fortune of this late battell, whereupon *Asdrubal* had set his rest, bred in the *Spaniards* a disposition, to beleve the more easily those reports which they heard from *Italy*. For henceforward, they never did good office to the *Carthaginians*. *Asdrubal*, perceiving this, withdrew himself, and march'd away faster than an ordinary pace, toward the Ocean Sea. *Scipio* followed the next morning, and overtaking the *Carthaginians* with his horse, caus'd them so oftoento make stand, that they were at length attached by the *Roman* Legions. Here began a cruell slaughter: for there was no resistance made, but all fell to rout, save only seven thousand that with *Asdrubal* himself recovered a very strong piece of ground, which they fortified in haste. The place he made shift a while to defend: but wanting there necessaries to sustain himself long, he was forsaken by some of those few, that continued hitherto partakers of his fortune. Wherefore he resolv'd to make shift for one; and stealing from his Company by night away to the Sea side, that was not farre thence, he took shipping, and set sail for *Gades*. When *Scipio* understood that *Asdrubal* was thus gone, he left *Syllanus* with ten thousand foot, and a thousand horse, to besiege their camp (which was not taken in haste, for *Mago* and *Masaniissa* staid in it) whilst he with the rest of the Army did what was needfull in the Country abroad. It was not long ere *Mago* and *Masaniissa* followed *Asdrubal* to *Gades*: and their Army disperst it self; some flying over to the *Romans*, others taking what way they liked. So upon all the Continent of *Spain*, there were only three Towns left, *Illiturgi*, *Castulo*, and *Astapa*, that made continuance of war against the *Romans*: of which only *Castulo* had a *Carthaginian* garrison, consisting of such as had saved themselves by flight in the late overthrow. Hereby it seems that the report of those Historians was ill grounded, who said, that *Castulo* yielded long since unto the *Romans*; though *Hannibal* took a wife in that City. For this was one of the last three towns that held out on the *Carthaginian* side. *Illiturgi* had sometimes bin inclinable to the *Romans*; if not altogether at their devotion. Yet after the death of the two elder *Scipio's*, following too earnestly the *Carthaginian* fortune, it not only rebelled, but with great cruelty betrayed and slew the poor men that escap'd thither from the overthrows. *Astapa* was a town that still adher'd to the *Carthaginians*; and, which was worse, had thivien by the spoyle of the *Romans* and their Confederates. Wherefore (though not untill the next year) *Scipio* went against these, and took himself *Illiturgi*, and *Castulo*: *Illiturgi* by assault, and with a general slaughter of the Inhabitants; *Castulo*, by treason of one *Cerdubellus*. *Astapa* was taken by *Lucius Marcinius*; or rather destroyed by the Inhabitants. For a great pile of wood was rais'd in the Market place: whereinto was thrown all the gold, and silver, with whatsoever else was precious; the women and children standing by it under a sure guard, that should kill and burn them if the *Romans* got into the Town. This provision being made, all the Inhabitants that could bear Armes, rush'd forth desperately, and fell upon the *Roman* Camp; where striving beyond their power, they were every one slain. Then was the Town forthwith set on fire, by those that had taken charge to do it: and many of the *Romans* consumed with the flame; whilst they rush'd over-hastily to catch the gold and silver, which they saw lying on the pile ready to melt.

*Asdrubal* being beaten into the Island of *Gades*, found no caule of long stay there: but return'd home to *Carthage*, with seven Gallies: leaving *Mago* behind him, to wait upon occasion.

occasion, if any should be offered. He visited in his way home, *Syphax* King of the *Masili*, a people of the *Numidians*, hoping to win him to the friendship of the *Carthaginians*. But he met with *Scipio*, as it were with his evil Angel, in the Kings port: who landing at the same time, carry'd *Syphax* quite another way. For *Scipio* having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, did forthwith bethink himself, how to finish the war, by putting them to the like distresse in *Africa*. Hereunto it seem'd that the help of *Syphax* would be much available: a King that had many times fallen out with the *Carthaginians*, and sustained much hurt by their procurements; of which in all likelihood he might easily be moved to seek revenge. He had also bin beholding to *P.* & *Cn. Scipio*, that sent him over a Captain into *Africa*, who instructed him so well in marching his forces, as he thereby often became victorious. Upon these reasons, the *Numidian* King sent Embassadors to *Rome*, and made league with the city in time of great extremity. So that hereby *P. Scipio* conceived hope of laying a good foundation to the War, which he intended in *Africa*, upon the friendship of this ill neighbour to the *Carthaginians*. For which cause he sent over *C. Laelius* his Embassador, to deal with *Syphax*: who declaring that the *Carthaginians* did very ill in *Italy*, and had nothing now at all to doe in *Spain*, easily perswaded the King to take part with those that had the better and were without question his better friends. Only *Syphax* request'd that the *Roman* Generall should visit him in person, to conclude the League; by which he was to enter into conditions of more importance, than in any former Treaty. Here to *Scipio* condescended, thinking the friendship of so great a King, that was neighbour to *Carthage*, and not far distant from *Spain*, well worthy of the adventure. So with two *Quinqueremes* Gallies he took Sea, and arriv'd in the Kings Port at the same time with *Asdrubal*. This would have bin very dangerous unto him, had he bin decry'd by his enemies further at Sea: but in the Haven they forbore to make offer one upon the other. *Syphax* might well be proud; seeing at one time, two such Captains of two most powerfull Cities, came to desire his friendship. He would have brought them to treat of peace: but the *Roman* excus'd himself, by want of such Commission from the Senate. He feasted them together: and shortly dismissed *Scipio*, with whom he readily enter'd into Covenant; which in time of performance, he as readily brake.

## §. II.

Funerall games held by *Scipio*. A Duell between two *Spanish* Princes. A digression concerning Duels.

*Scipio* returning into *Spain*, and resting that Winter, took vengeance the next year, upon those of *Illiturgi*, *Castulo*, & *Astapa*, as hath been said before. The conquest of the Country being then in a manner at an end, he performed at new *Carthage*, with great solemnity, some Vowes that he had made, and honoured the memory of his Father and Uncle, with funerall games, especially of those that fought at sharp, according to the manner of the times. Neither was it needfull that he should trouble himself with preparing slaves for that spectacle, to hazard their lives, as was used in the City of *Rome*: for there were enow, that either offer'd themselves as Voluntaries, or were lent from their Princes, to give proof in single combat, of the valour that was in their severall Countreys. Some also there were, that being in contention, which they could not, or would not otherwise end, agreed to refer the decision of their Controversies, to tryall of the sword, in single fight. Among these, the most eminent, were *Corbis* and *Orsus*; *Cosen-germans*: that contended for the principality of a Town call'd *Ibes*. *Corbis* was the elder, and the elder brothers son: wherefore he claim'd the Lordship, as eldest of the house, after the manner of our *Irish* Tradition. But the father of *Orsus* stood lately seized of the principality: which though himself receiv'd by the death of his elder brother, yet this his son would not let it go back, but claimed to hold it as heir unto his father, and old enough to rule. Fain would *Scipio* have compoun'd the matter. But they answer'd peremptorily, That all their friends and kindred had already labour'd in vain, to take up that quarrel; and that neither God nor Man, but only *Mars*, their god of battell, should be Umpire between them. So they had their wils: and the elder, who was also the stronger, and more skillfull at his weapon, easily vanquish'd the fool-hardiness of the younger.

Such combats have been very ancient, and perhaps more ancient, than any other kind of fight. We read of many performed before the Warre of Troy; by *Theseus*, *Hercules*, *Pollux*, and others: as also of two more at the Warre of Troy, the one between *Paris* and *Meneleus*; the other between *Heitor* and *Ajax*. Neither want there examples of them among the *Hebrewes*: whereof that between *David* and *Goliath*, and others performed by some of *David's* Worthies, against those that challenged them, are greatly celebrated. Unto the same kinde appertain the fight between twelve of the Tribe of *Juda*, and as many of the *Beniamites*. The *Romans* had many of them: whereof that was principal, in which they ventured their Dominion upon the heads of three brethren the *Horatii*, against the three brethren, *Curatii*, that were *Albans*. The combat of *Manlius Torquatus*; and shortly after, of *Valerius Corvinus*, with two Champions of the *Gauls*, which challenged any *Roman*, were of less importance, as having only reference to bravery. In *England* there was a great Combat fought between *Edmond Ironside*, and *Cannus* the *Dane*, for no less matter than the Kingdome. The use of them was very frequent in the *Saxon* times; almost upon every occasion, great or small. In the reign of *Edward* the third, who sustained the party of *Mountfort*, against the Earle of *Blois*, contending for the Dutchy of *Brittain*, there was a fight for honor of the Nations, between thirty of the *Britons*, and thirty *English*: two of which *English*, were *Calverley*, a brave Captain; and that Sir *Robert Knolles*, who afterwards became a renowned Commander in the *French* wars, & did highly honour his blood, whereof the Lord *Knolles* is defended. It were infinite to reckon the examples of the like, found in *English*, *French*, and *Italian* Histories. Most of them have been combats of bravery, and of *gaye de cœur*, as the *French* term it; for honour of severall Nations; for love of Mistresses; or whatsoever else gave occasion unto men, desirous to set out themselves. But besides those of this sort, there are two other natures of combats; which are, either upon accusation for life, or upon trial of Title and Inheritance, as in *Writ of right*. And of this latter kind, was that, of which we spake even now, between *Corbis* and *Orsua*. Unto these (me thinks) may be added, as of different condition from the rest, the combat upon Wager; such as were that between *David* and *Goliath*, or that between the *Horatii* and *Curatii*: in which without regard of Title, the Dominion of Nations, one over the other, is adventured upon the head of Champions. Upon an accusation for life, there was a combat appointed between the Lord *Henry of Boulbrooke* Duke of *Hereford*, and *Moubray* Duke of *Norfolk*. There was a combat performed by Sir *John Ansley* and one *Cattington*: whom *Ansley* charged with treason: and proved it upon him, by being victorious. The like was fought between *Robert of Mountfort*, and *Henry of Essex*. The like also, between a *Navarrois*, and one *Welsh* of *Grimby*, whom the *Navarrois* accused of treason: but, being beaten in fight, confessed that he had belyed him, and was therefore drawn and hanged. Whether our tryall by battell do determine, that the false accuser, if he be vanquished, shall suffer the punishment which had been due to the offender, if the accusation had been proved; I cannot affirm. But we every where find, That if he which is accused of treason, or, according to the customes of *Normandy*, of Murder, Rape, or burning of places (offences punished by death) be overcome, He shall suffer the pains appointed for those crimes. In combats for tryall of right, it is not so: neither is the Appellant or Defendant bound to fight in person, but he may try it by his Champion, as did *Paramour* and *Low*, or offered to do, in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*. And in this case, he that is beaten or yeeldeth, loseth only his cause, nor his life. Neither are the combats upon accusation, or tryall of right, fought in open field, as are those of bravery; but in *Camp close*, that is, within rails. Now this tryall by combat was so ordinary in *France*, before the time of *S. Lewis* and *Philip the fair* his grand-child, as every Lord of Fee, Ecclesiasticall or Temporall, had power to grant it within his own Jurisdiction: And it seemeth, that the *French* Kings, and other Lords, made their profit hereby. For in the \* *Memorials of the Chamber of Accounts*, is found an Article to this effect: That if a Combat were once accepted, and after, by consent of the Lord, were taken up, each of the parties should pay two shillings six pence; but if it were performed, then should the party vanquished forfeit an hundred and twelve shillings. And upon this custome grew the *French* Proverbe, which they use when as any man hath had an hard and unjust judgement; saying, That *He was tryed by the Law of Loray, or Berne; ou le battu paye l'amende*, where he that is beaten gives the recompence. Of these frequent

An. 11. Ric. 2.

An. 3. Ric. 2.

An. 9. Hen. 3.

\* Si homines de Loray vadia Duelli temere deciderint, &amp;c.

trials by battell that great learned man *Tuo*, Bishop of *Chartres*, did often complain, and specially against the *French* Church-men: as appears by \* his Letters to the Bishop of *Orleans*, to the Arch-deacon of *Paris*, to *Rembert* Archbishop of *Sens*, and to others; wherein he rebukes the judgement of their Churches, that had ratified such challenges of combat. But this liberty and kinde of tryall, was retrencht by *S. Lewis*, and *Philip the fair*; so that no man could decree or grant it, save the King himself. It hath since been granted, though more sparingly, by the *French* King, as to the Lord of *Carogues*, against *Jaques le Gris*, and to *Julian Romero* the *Spaniard*, against *Moro* his countyman: wherein Sir *Henry Knevet*, Father to the Lord *Knevet* now living, was Patron to *Romero* that had the victory; and lastly to the Lord of *Chast*. Now in those challenges, upon accusation of Treason, Murder, or other offence deserving death (and in those only) the rule held, That le defendeur estoit tenu de proposer ces defences par un dementir; The defendant was bound to plead not guilty, by giving the accuser the Lie: otherwise it was concluded, that the Defendant did sabbilement confesser le crime; silently confesse the crime. But after such time as *Francis* the *French* King, upon some dispute about breach of Faith, had sent the Lie unto the Emperor *Charles* the first, thereby to draw him to a personal combat: every petty companion in *France*, in imitation of their Master, made giving of the Lie mortality it self; holding it a matter of no small glory, to have it said, That the meanest Gentleman in *France* would not put up, what the great Emperor *Charles* the first had patiently endured.

From this beginning is derived a challenge of combat, grounded upon none of those occasions that were known to the Ancient. For, the Honour of Nations, the Tryall of Right, the Wager upon Champions, or the Objection and Refutation of capital offences, are none of them, nor all of them together, the argument of half so many Duels, as are founded upon meer private Anger, yea, or upon matter seeming worthy of anger in the opinion of the Duellists. So that in these dayes, wherein every man takes unto himself a Kingly liberty, to offer, accept, and appoint personall combats, the giving of the Lie, which ought to be the Negation only in accusations for life, is become the most fruitfull root of deadly quarrels. This is held a word so terrible, and a wrong so unpardonable, as will admit no other recompence, than the blood of him that gives it. Thus the fashion, taken up in haste by the *French* Gentlemen, after the pattern of their King, is grown to be a custome: whence we have derived a kind of Art and Philosophy of quarrell; with certain grounds and rules, from whence the points of honour, and the dependencies thereof, are deduced. Yea there are (among many no less ridiculous) some so mysticall curiosities herein, as that it is held a far greater dishonour, to receive from an enemy a slight touch with a Cane, than a sound blow with a Sword: the one having relation to a slave, the other to a souldier. I confess that the difference is pretty: though for my own part, if I had had any such Italianated enemy in former times, I should willingly have made with him such an exchange; and have given him the point of honour to boot.

But let us examine indifferently the offence of this terrible word, the Lie; with their conditions who are commonly of all other the most tender in receiving it. I say, that most of these, who present death on the points of their swords to all that give it them; use nothing so much in their conversation and course of life, as to speak and swear falsely. Yea it is thereby, that they shift and shuffle in the World, and abuse it. For how few are there among them, which, having assumed and sworn to pay the monies & other things they borrow, do not break their word and promise as often as they engage it? Nay, how few are there among them, that are not *Lyars by Record*, by being sued in some Court or other of Justice, upon breach of word or bond? For he which hath promised that he will pay money by a day, or promised anything else, wherein he faileth; hath directly lyed to him to whom the promise hath been made. Nay, what is the profession of love that men make now-a-days? What is the vowing of their service, and of all they have, used in their ordinary complements, and (in effect) to every man whom they bid not good morrow, or salute, other than a courteous and Court-like kinde of lying? It is (saith a wife *French* man, deniding therein the Apish custome of his Country) un marche & complot fait ensemble, semouquer, mentir, & piper les uns les autres; A kind of merchandise, and complot made among them, to mock, belie, and deuide each other: and so far now-a-days in fashion, and in use; as he that useth it not, is accounted either

G g g g g

duell

dull or Cynicall. True it is notwithstanding (omitting the old distinction) that there is great difference between these mannerly and complementall lies, with those which are sometime perswaded by necessity upon breach of promise; and those which men use out of cowardize and fear: the latter confessing themselves to be in greater awe of men, than of God; a vice of all other stiled the most villanous. But now for the *Lie* it self, as it is made the subject of all our deadly quarrels in effect: to it I say, That whosoever giveth another man the *Lie*, when it is manifest that he hath lied, doth him no wrong at all; neither ought it to be more hainously taken, than to tell him, he hath broken any promise which he hath otherwise made. For he that promiseth any thing, tells him, to whom he hath promised, that he will perform it; and, in not performing it, he had made himself a Lier. On the other side, He that gives any man the *Lie*, when he himself knows that he, to whom it is given, hath not lied; doth therein give the *Lie* directly to himself. And what cause have I, if I say that the Sun shines when it doth shine, and that another fellow tels me I lie, for it's midnight; to prosecute such an one to death, for making himself a foolish Ruffian, and a lyer in his own knowledge? For he that gives the *Lie* in any other dispute, than in defence of his Loyalty, or Life, gives it impertinently, and Ruffian-like. I will not deny but it is an extream rudenesse to taxe any man in publick with an untruth (if it be not pernicious, and to his prejudice against whom the untruth is uttered): But all that is rude, ought not to be civilized with death. That were more to admire and imitate a *French* custome, and a wicked one, than to admire and to follow the counsell of God. But you will say, that these discourses favour of cowardize. It is true; if you call it cowardize to fear God or hell: whereas he that is truly wise, and truly valiant, knows that there is nothing else to be feared. For against an Enemies sword, we shall find ten thousand seven-penny-men (waged at that price in the wars) that fear it as little, or perchance lesse, than any profest Sword-man in the world. *Diligentissima in tutela sui Fortitudo; Fortitudo is a diligent preserver of it self. It is (saith Aristotle) a mediocrity between doubting and daring. Sicut non Martyrem pona: sic nec fortem pugna; sed causa: As it is not the punishment that makes the Martyr: so it is not fighting that declares a valiant man; but fighting in a good cause.* In which, whosoever shall resolutely end his life, resolutely in respect of the cause, to wit, in defence of his Prince, Religion, or Country: as he may justly be numbred among the Martyrs of God; so may those that die with malicious hearts, in private combats, be called the Martyrs of the Devill. Neither do we indeed take our own revenge, or punish the injuries offered us, by the death of the injurious. For the true conquest of revenge is, to give him, of whom we would be revenged, cause to repent him: and not to lay the repentance of another mans death upon our own consciences; *Animasq; in vulnere ponere; And to drown our soules in the wounds and blood of our enemies.* Hereupon you will again ask me, if I condemn, in generous and noble spirits, the defence of their honours, being prest with injuries: I say that I do not, if the injuries be violent. For the Law of Nature, which is a branch of the Eternal Law: & the Lawes of all Christian Kings and States; do favour him that is assailed, in the slaughter of the assailant. You will secondly aske me, Whether a Noble-man, or a Gentleman, being challenged by *Cartel* by one of like quality, be not bound in point of honour to satisfie the challenger in private combat: I answer, that he is not: because (omitting the greatest, which is the point of Religion) the point of the Law is directly contrary and opposite to that, which they call the point of honour; The Law which hath dominion over it, which can judge it, which can destroy it; except you will stile those Acts honourable, where the Hang-man gives the Garland. For, seeing the Lawes of this Land have appointed the Hang-man to second the Conqueror, and the Lawes of God appointed the Devill to second the Conquered, dying in malice: I say, that he is both base & a fool, that accepts of any *Cartel* so accompanied. To this perchance it will be answered, That the Kings of England, & other Christian Kings, have seldome taken any such advantage over men of quality, who upon even terms have slain their private enemies. It is true, that as in times of trouble and combustion they have not often done it; so did our Noble-men and Gentlemen in former ages, in all important injuries, sue unto the Kings, to approve themselves by battell and publique combat. For as they dared not to brave the Law; so did they disdain to submit themselves unto the shamefull revenge thereof; the same revenge (because it detesteth murder) that hath declared against a common Cut-purse or other Thieves:

Nay

Nay let it be granted that a pardon be procured for such offenders: yet is not the man-slayer freed from his pardon. For these two remedies hath the party grieved notwithstanding; that is, to require justice by Grand Assize, or by battell upon his appeal, which (saith Sir Thomas Smith) is not denied; and he further saith (for I use his own words) That if the Defendant (to wit, the man-slayer) be convinced either by great Assize or by Battell, upon that appeal; the man-slayer shall dye notwithstanding the Princes pardon. So favourable (saith the same learned Gentleman) are our Princes, and the law of our Realme, to justice and to the punishment of blood violently shed. It may further be demanded, how our Noble-men and Gentlemen shall be repared in honour, where an enemy, taking the start either in words or blows, shall lay upon them an infamous unflattering? I say, that a Marshalls Court will easily give satisfaction in both. And if we hold it no disgrace to submit our selves for the recovery of our Debts, Goods, and Lands; & for all things else by which the lives of our selves, our wives, and children are sustained to the Judges of the Law; because it may be felony to take by violence even that which is our own: why should we not submit our selves unto the Judges of honour in cases of honour; because to recover our reputation by strong hand, may be murder? But yet again, it may be objected, That the losse of honour ought to be much more fearful unto us, than either the losse of our goods, of our lands, or of our lives; and I say too. But what is this honour, I mean honour indeed, and that which ought to be so dear unto us, other than a kind of History, or fame following actions of virtue, actions accompanied with difficulty or danger, and undertaken for the publick good? In these, he that is employed and trusted, if he fail in the performance, either through cowardize, or any other base affection; it is true that he loseth his honour. But the acting of a private combat, for a private respect, and most commonly a frivolous one, is not an action of vertue, because it is contrary to the Law of God, and of all Christian Kings: neither is it difficult, because even and equall in persons and armes: offered for a publick good, but tending to the contrary; because the losse or mutilation of an able man, is also a losse to the Common-weal.

Now that a Marshall of England hath power to save every mans fame and reputation, as far as reputation may sustain injury by words, I think no man doubteth. For so repents us of any evil words that we have given, and to confesse that we have done him wrong, unto whom we have given them, is a sufficient satisfaction; and as it may fall out, more than sufficient. For he that gives ill words in colour, and suddenly denies them, or repents himself of them upon advicement hath the disadvantage in point of reputation. Concerning blows, which are indeed not to be given but to those that are servile, whether sufficient recompence will be made for them, it shall appear by a notable example of a most worthy Gentleman *Monfieur de Pleſiſ*, that was stricken in France not long since by a Baron of the same Nation. The satisfaction which was given him by a judgement of the Constable and Marshalls of France, was this. In the open Court, wherein the Constable gave judgement, *M. de Pleſiſ* was set in a chair under the degrees where the Constable and Marshalls sat: the Baron, who had given him the blow, did kneel before him on both his knees, holding in his right hand a sword with the point towards himself, and in his left hand the like cudgel or bastinado, wherewith he had stricken *M. de Pleſiſ*; both which weapons he delivered into *Plesiſ* hands, submitting himself to such revenge, as it should please him to take with either of those weapons; the Constable and Marshalls having formerly left it to the will of *Plesiſ*, to use his own discretion in the revenge of his own wrongs. Now whether the Baron had reason to please himself, as one beforehand in point of honour, (who struck *M. de Pleſiſ* like a Ruffian coming behind him, and having the advantage of company, and his horses ready, thrust himself away on the sudden; but being afterwards taken, was taught to repent himself in this shamefull manner;) or whether *Monfieur de Pleſiſ* (of whose valour no man doubted) had not far juster cause to rest satisfied, since he might at his pleasure have beaten or wounded his enemy, but forgave him: let any wise man judge. To this, if it be said, That the Baron was constrained to make his submission, that his repentance was enforced, and not voluntary; and therefore no disgrace unto him: I answer, that one may say as well, that it is no disgrace to a Thief, when he is brought to the Gallows, to repent him of the Robberies by him committed, because his repentance also is constrained. And it is true, that enforced repentance is

G g g g g 3

no

Sir Thomas  
Smith in his  
Commentaries  
of England.

no grace in respect of a force, but in respect of the fact: which (but for our sins to God) makes all repentance shamefull; because all forced repentance is inflicted upon us for somewhat unworthy of a Gentleman, and of an honest man. Nay, voluntary repentance it self, as it hath relation to men, as itself either out of the fear of the ill that may befall us, or out of the acknowledgement of our own weakness. Certainly, as wise men, and valiant men do rather deride petty injuries or sudden injuries, that are not offered from malice fore-thought, than revenge them: so men, apt to quarrell, do commonly suspect their own valour; and rather desire, that thereby the world should believe them to be of great daring, than know any such resolution in themselves. For he that knows himself indeed to be an honest man, scorns to hunt after opinion.

Now the same power which the Constable and Marshalls of France have, hath also a Marshall of England, or his Deputies: by whose judgement in all disputes of honour, every mans reputation may be preserved, we may therefore as well submit our selves to the Judge of honour in all disputes of honour, as we do submit our selves in all controversies of livelihood and life, to the Judges of the Law. And, out of doubt, the institution of this Court of Chevalrie in England, in France, and elsewhere: was no lesse charitable than politick. For the bloud of many, violently spilt, doth not bring forth *honey bees*, as that of Bulls doth, which sting but the fingers or the face: but it produceth that monstrous beast, *Revenge*, which hath stung to death, and eaten up, of severall nations, so many noble personages; as there is nothing more lamentable, nor more threatening the wrath of God upon supreme Governours, than the permission.

His Majesty therefore (which Henry the fourth of France also endeavoured) hath done a most Kingly and Christian-like deed in Scotland, which the most renowned of all his Predecessors could never do: in bearing down and extinguishing that hereditary prosecution of malice, called the *deadly feud*; a conquest, which shall give him the honour of Prudence and Kingly power for evermore. And we have cause to hope, that his royall care shall be no lesse happy in preventing the like mischief, which threatens England, by the audacious, common, and brave, yet outrageous vanity of Duellists.

Unto this that I have spoken of lying, and of man-slaughter, it must be added, That each of these are of great Latitude, and worthy of reproof and vengeance proportionably; more or lesse, in their severall degrees. There is much difference between Lies of necessity upon breach of promise, or complementall lies; and such pernicious lies, as proceed from fear and cowardize, or are uttered by false witnesses: the former sort being excusable by weakness or levity; the latter being altogether detestable. No lesse, if not more, difference there is, between killing of a man in open field, with even weapons; & that killing, which the Scriptures call *killing by guile, dolo or per insidias*; though our Lawes do not much distinguish them in punishment. For in the latter, God, forsaking his own privilege, commandeth that the *guiltfull* murderer be drawn by force, from the protection of his Altar. Neither is every guilefull murder performed by the sword, nor by overt violence: but there is a guiltfull murder also, by poisoning; and by

Exod. 21.

Exod. 21. 14.  
Prov. 1. 11.Lib. 5. cap. 18.  
& cap. 11.

the pen, or by practice. For such distinction is found, between committing presumptuously upon a man, to *slay him with guile, and lying in wait for blood, privily*, for the innocent, without a cause, upon hope of spoile, after such manner as the net is spread before the eyes of the birds. France the first, Queen Mary of England, and the Kings Majesty now reigning, have given notable testimony of their justice, upon three Noble men, who committed *guiltfull murder*. Of the first kinde, King Francis upon the Lord of Talard: who being (saith the French Historian) *de hante & ancienne lignee, & supporteur de plusieurs grandes alliances; who being of high and ancient lineage, and supported by divers great alliances*, of which the Cardinall of Bellay (in especiall favour with the King) was one, was notwithstanding delivered over into the hands of the Hangman. Queen Mary, 50 upon a Noble man of her own Religion, and in many other respects very dear unto her. His Majesty, upon a Baron of Scotland; whose house was no lesse ancient and faithfull, than himself valiant, and greatly friended both at home and abroad. Of killing guiltfully by poison, and of punishment following such wicked Artificers, every age hath had too many examples. Of killing guiltfully by the pen (that I may not spake of any English Judge) the Author of the French Recherches gives unto us two notable instances: the one of des Elhars, who (saith Pasquier) *fit mourir Montaignu grand Maître de France, pour contenter l'opinion celuy dont il estoit lors idolâtre; & Dieu permit que depuis*

10

30

40

50

*il fut pendu & estranglé; Who caused Montaignu great Master of France to die to content his mind (to wit, the Duke of Burgoyne) whom at that time Elhars worshipped as his Idol. but God permitted, that he himself was soon after hanged and strangled.* The other was of the Great Francis the first, upon his Chancellor Poyet: who, to satisfy the Kings passion, practised the destruction of the Admirall Chabot; a man most nobly defended, and of great service. For as in other men, so in Kings, the passion of love growes old, and wears out by time. So the Kings affection being changed towards the Admirall, he charged him with some offences which he had formerly committed: The Admirall presuming upon the great good service which he had done the King in Piemont, & in the defence of Marseilles against the Emperour, gave the King other language than became him, and desired nothing so much, as a publike triall. Hereupon the King (it being easie to provoke an ill disposition) gave commission to the Chancellor, as President, and other Judges, upon an information of the Kings advocate, to question the Admiralls life. The Chancellor, an ambitious man, and of a large conscience, (which is not rare in men towards the law) proceeding highly to content the King; wrought with some of the Judges with great cunning; with others, with so sharp threats; and with the rest, with so fair promises; as albeit nothing could be proved against the Admirall, worthy of the Kings displeasure, yet the Chancellor subscribed, and got others to subscribe, to the forfeiture of his Estate, Offices, and Liberty; though not able to prevail against his life. But what was the Chancellors 10 reward (the King hating fallshood in so great a Magistrate) other than his own degradation, arraignment, and condemnation? *Belle leçon certes (saith Pasquier) a tout Prince par demerit toujours en soy, & ne laisser fléchir sa conscience debans les vagues d'une imagination favorable, qui pour fin de jeu le submerge; A fair lesson to all Judges, to dwell always in themselves, and not to suffer their consciences to float upon the waves of imaginary favour, which in the end overwhelms them.* And as for the Admirall, though it might have bin answered unto his friends, if any bewail his calamity as undeserved, That he was tried, according to his own desire, by the Laws of his Country, and by the Judges of Parliament; yet the Kings justice, surmounting all other his passions, gave back unto him his Honour, his Offices, his Liberty, and his Estate.

30

The last Acts of Scipio in Spain. His return to Rome, where he is chosen Consul.

The last business that troubled Scipio in Spain, grew by the rebellion of the people, and mutiny of his Souldiers. He fell dangerously sick, in such sort, that the rumor of his death ran current throughout Spain. This encouraged Mandonius and Indibilis, petty kings, that had forsaken the Carthaginians, & followed Scipio a while before, to take arms against the Romans. They were vainly persuaded, that after the Carthaginians were driven out, they themselves should become the mightiest in all Spain. But seeing now, that things were no way answerable to the greatness of their hopes; they thought it best, to take the present advantage, and hammer out their own fortunes. So they rally fell upon the Suesetani and Sedetani, Confederates of the Romans; and wasted their Country. Part of the Roman Army lying at Sucro, in stead of making head against these Rebels, grew to be affected with the like distemper. They had not reaped such profit of the Roman conquests, as might satisfy their desires; or as they thought easie to be gotten, if they might be their-own Carvers. Wherefore, when the death of Scipio was reported, they thought that the time served very well, to enrich themselves with the spoyle of the Country. Many outrages they committed: and, which was greatest of all, driving away their Colonels, that should have bridled their fury; they chose out of their own number two base fellows, Albinus Calenus, and Atrius Vmbro, to their Commanders. These took upon them all the Ensigns of Proconsuls, or Propretors; as if this their election had been like to that, wherein Lucius Marcius was chosen by the Souldiers, after the death of the two Scipios. But whilst they were devising what exploits they might doe, for the enriching of themselves, in a time of such combustion as was expected; there arrived more certain news, that Scipio was both alive, and in good health. There came also new Colonels, sent unto them from their Generall: who mildly rebuking their want of consideration, and seeming to beglad that they had no further over-



over-shot themselves; led them to *Carthage*, there to receive their pay. Before their coming, *Scipio* had resolved to do exemplary justice on the principal offenders; and to put the whole multitude of them in fear of what they had deserved. Therefore he caused *Syllanus* to make ready the Companies which lay before in the Town, as it were to make an Expedition against *Mandonius* and *Indibilis*: he caused *Albius* and *Atrius* with some thirty other of their Complices, to be secretly apprehended in their lodgings; he called th: Mutiners to Assembly; and having them unarmed as they were, encircled round by *Syllanus* and his companies, prepared for the purpose, he bitterly inveighed against them all as Traitors. This done, *Albius* and *Atrius*, with the other prisoners were haled to the stake, where they were whipt and beheaded, as was the *Roman* custom toward such offenders. The rest of the Souldiers, to the number of eight thousand, were caused to take their oath of obedience anew; and received every man his pay when he was sworn.

*Mandonius* & *Indibilis* continued in arms; notwithstanding that they had certain word of *Scipio* his life and health. Well they could have been contented to be quiet; but by the severity used to the *Roman* Souldiers, they stood in fear, as being *Spaniards*, and greater offenders, of harder measure. *Scipio* went against them, and found them in a valley, that was scarce large enough to hold all their Army. In the entrance thereof he fought with them; and sending *Lulus* with all his horse to fetch a compals about the hills, and charge them in rear, he overthrew them. *Indibilis* and *Mandonius* had after this, no hope remaining to preserve themselves and their estates, otherwise than by making submission. *Mandonius* therefore came to *Scipio*; and humbly craving pardon, both for himself and for his brother *Indibilis*, obtained his request; yet so, that they were taught to acknowledge themselves lesse free Princes, than formerly they had been.

Afterwards *Scipio* went toward *Gades*: and was met on the way by *Maianissa*, who secretly promised to do him all service, if the people of *Rome* would send him to make war in *Africk*. Unto *Mago* that lay in *Gades*, came directions from *Carthage*, that letting all care of *Spain* alone, he should thence depart from his Fleet into *Italy*; and there wage an Army of *Gauls* and *Ligurians*, to joyn with *Hannibal*. For this purpose, was money sent unto him from *Carthage*, and he himself laid hold upon all that he could find in the town of *Gades*; without sparing either private men, the common treasury, or the Temples. In 30 his voyage thence, he landed at *Carthage*, hoping to have taken it by surprise. But he failed in the attempt; and was so beaten to his ships, that he returned back to repose himself a while at *Gades*. The *Gaditanes*, offended with the robberies and spoil that he had made at his taking leave of them, would not suffer him again to enter into their City. By this he foresaw, that it would not be long ere they became *Roman*. Wherefore sending Messengers into the Town, to complain of this uncourteous dealing, he allured their Magistrates forth unto him; whom, notwithstanding all the excuse that they could make, he whipt and crucified. This done, he followed his former intended voyage; bidding *Spain* farewell for ever.

The Isle and City of *Gades*, was yielded to the *Romans*, presently after the departure 40 of *Mago*. Then did *Scipio* deliver up the Province, to those that were sent from *Rome* to succeed him therein: & himself with ten ships returned home. At his coming to *Rome*, he made suit for the honour of a triumph. But it was denied him: for that it had as yet bin granted unto no Proconsul, excepting to such, as received that dignity after a Consulship, as it were by prerogation. But, to make amends for this repulse, the election of new Consuls being then in hand, by general voice of the city *P. Cornelius Scipio* was chosen Consul, and *P. Licinius Crassus* joyned with him. This *Crassus*, being high Priest, or Bishop of the *Romans*, might not, by the custome of those times, go far from the City; as being to intend the matters of their superstition: though *Cæsar*, and others, who in ages following held the same office, were stayed by no such religious impediment, from being far & long absent. Hereby it came to passe, that *Scipio*, desiring to have the war transferred into *Africk*, was in no danger to lose that honourable charge, by any mischance of lot, in the division of Provinces; for that his Colleague was not capable of employment so far off.

## s. XVIII.

*Scipio obtains leave to make war in Africk. His preparations. Of Maianissa who was joy-ned with Scipio. The victories against Aldrubal and Syphax.*

**P**yb. *Cornelius Scipio*, and *P. Licinius Crassus*, entering into their Consulship, held a meeting of the Senate in the Capitol: wherein it was decreed, that *Scipio* should be allowed, to bestow part of the money which he had brought out of *Spain* into the treasure; upon the setting forth of solemn plays, that he had vowed to make whilst he 10 was busied in his *Spanish* wars. This helped well to revive the memory of his victories already gotten; and to give hope unto the People of greater victories in the war, which he intended to make in *Africk*. To the same purpose, did the *Spanish* Embassages avail much in the Senate; especially that of the *Saguntines*: who magnified his actions highly and deservedly; saying, That they were the most happy of all their countymen, since they being present, had seen him chosen Consul, and should carry home such joyful news. The *Saguntine* Embassadors were lovingly entertained by the Senate; as their faith to *Rome* (though costly it were both to them and to the *Romans*) had well deserved. Nevertheless, when *Scipio* proposed, that *Africk* might be decreed unto him for his Province, there 20 wanted not many, even of the principal men, that vehemently gainsaid him. Of these was *Q. Fabius Maximus* the chief: who seems to have been troubled with that disease, which too often caused men, renowned for long approved vertue, to look aquint upon the actions of those, that follow them in the same kinde. He alleged many reasons against the purpose of the Consul: whereof the chief were, That the Treasury was unable to sustain the charges of a war in *Africk*; and that it was extremely perillous to hazard so great forces where they could not at pleasure be recalled unto the defence of *Rome* it self, if need required. Hereunto he added many words concerning the danger wherein *Italy* stood, not only of *Hannibal*, but of *Mago* his brother, that was arming the *Ligurians*: as also concerning the honour of the Consul, which would (he said) be greater in letting *Italy* free from enemies, than it could be in doing any harm to *Africk*. Neither did he for- 30 get, both to elevate the *Spanish* wars, as of less moment than the intended voyage against *Carthage*, nor withall to lay great blame upon *Scipio*, for having suffered *Aldrubal* to pass into *Italy*: shewing, that it was greatly to be feared, lest the like might happen again; and that a new Army, notwithstanding the good success of *Scipio*, (if it hapned to be good) might be sent from *Carthage*, to the utter endangering of *Rome*, whilst the *Roman* forces were employed abroad. But the main point which he urged, was, That neither the Senate had ordained, nor the People commanded, *Africk* to be that year a Province: which the Consul nevertheless propounded in such wise, as if it were a matter already concluded, and no longer to be argued. *Scipio* on the other side, insisted upon this one point; That it was better to make an offensive, than a defensive war: especially against such as the *Car- 40 thaginians*, who being ill provided of able men at home, did furnish themselves, by help of money, with levies made abroad. As for the care of *Italy*, he doubted not, but *P. Licinius* his Colleague would be as well able to discharge it now, as others had done in times of greater danger. So promising to draw *Hannibal* into *Africk*, for defence of his own home; & taxing as civilly as he could, the envy of *Fabius*, which withstood such a gallant enterprise, he proposed the matter again to the Senate. Much altercation there was about the manner of his proceeding: forasmuch as it was noised abroad, that if he could not bring the Senate to his mind, he would carry it by the people. This offended many of the ancients: who resented in this honourable man, a little spice of that arrogancy, which in following ages grew to be much hotter, in those that had commanded long abroad. But in conclusion, 50 on, *Scipio* referred himself wholly to the Senates good will and pleasure; whereby he obtained thus much, That the Ile of *Sicily* might be appointed unto him for his Province; with leave to passe over into *Africk*, if he found it expedient.

Want of money, and no great liking to his voyage, made the *Roman* Senate have little care to furnish out *Scipio* to the war, by him intended upon *Africk*. Herewithall it fell out, that *Mago*, continuing on the sudden from the *Baleares* to *Genoa*, and winning the Town, bred a fear of no lesse terrible invasion upon *Italy*, than that which *Aldrubal* had lately made. He could not indeed raise any great Army of the *Ligurians*: for that he found them distracted with civill wars. Therefore he was driven to make choise of his

his party; and to help those whom he thought fittest for his turn, against the others. This troublesome business, though it occupied more of his time than he could willingly have spared: yet it got him reputation by his victories, and made the unsteady Gauls ready to enter into his pay. Hereupon the dispersed Legions of the Romans, that under Proconsuls, and Prætors, lay ready to be employed where need should require; were directed unto the borders of *Lombardie* and *Liguria*, there to make head against *Mago*. But all his menaces passed away in vapour. For a fleet, either comming to his aid from *Carthage*, or by him sent thither (the report is uncertain) laden with the booty that he had taken, fell into the hands of the Roman Prætor, that governed in *Sardinia*. This did much displease him: and though after a while, there came letters from *Carthage*, together with store of money, heartning him in his proceedings, yet some impediments which he found, and that fatal voyage of *Scipio* into *Africk* disturbed all; and made him be re-called home.

Against *Hannibal* was nothing done this year. Neither was any thing done by him, of which the Roman Historians have been pleased to take notice. Only it is said, that he spent the Summer by the Temple of *Juno Lucina*, where he raised an Altar, with a huge Title of all that he had performed, graven in *Punic* and *Greek* letters. Such account of winnings past, is commonly in Gamesters that are at the height of their fortune, a cause of remission and carelesse; in those that are upon the losing hand, a cause both of the fame for the present, and shortly after of dejection, when they finde a notable change. A great pestilence, infesting both the *Carthaginian* and the *Roman* Camp, is said to have been the occasion of this years idleness; which fell out not much amiss for the City of *Rome*, that was marvellously impoverished by this war; and had already tried the utmost way to defray the charges, which grew insupportable. To relieve the present necessity, it was well thought upon, that a great part of *Campania* (not many years since confiscated) should be sold, or let out: in which bargain, that the City might receive no losse, the tenth part of the fine was ordained as a reward unto the detectors of lands concealed.

Of this, or other money, none was given to *Scipio*. Neither was he allowed to make presse of Souldiers for his *African* voyage; neither did he over-much labour to obtain it. That which the Senate refused, the people did for him: or rather they did it for themselves, that were therein wiser than the Senate. It is usually found in Councils of estate, that the buse, or obstinate heads of a few, do carry all the rest. And many times men make a surrender of their own judgements, to the wisdom that hath gotten it self a name, by giving happy direction in troubles forepast. Therefore, he that reposeth himself upon the advice of many, shall often finde himself deceived: the counsell of those many being wholly directed by the Empire of a few, that over-sway the rest. *Q. Fabius* was accounted the Oracle of his time: for his wary nature sorted well with the business, that fell out in the chief of his employment. Unto him therefore *Q. Fulvius* adhered, with other of the Senators, that were grown old in following one course; from which they could not shift, as the change of times required. But the People (who though they could not well advise, and deliberate, yet could well apprehend) embraced the needfull resolution of *Scipio*: in such sort, that besides his *Roman* forces, he had from divers parts of *Italy* about seven thousand Voluntaries. He had also provision from the severall Towns: Corn, Iron, Canvas for sails, Axes, Beed-hooks, Hand-mills, and the like implements; Fire for building of ships, many thousands of Targets, Helmets, and Spears of all kinds: every place furnished him with that commodity, which it best could afford.

Unto this willingness of the People, the diligence of *Scipio* was correspondent. In the compass of five and forty dayes, he had both fell'd his Timber, built, and lanced twenty *Triremes*, and ten *Quinquerems* Gallies; wherewith he transported his Army into *Sicily*. In *Sicily* he found, besides other forces, two Legions, that had served at *Canus*: which were old Souldiers, and (as he himself well knew) not guilty of the overthrow; for which they had long undergone a heavy censure. They had served under *Marcellus* and *Lævinus*, at the taking of many Cities and strong pieces: in which regard, they were like to be of good use to him in *Africk*, where would be store of such employment. For increasing the number of his horse, he pressed three hundred *Sicilians*, all wealthy young men, and such as loved well their ease. These he afterward discharged from the War highly;

highly to their contentment: but with condition, that they should deliver their Horse and Arms, to as many *Roman* Gentlemen, which he brought over with him for the purpose. Whilest he was providing to have things in a readines for *Africk*, the banished *Locrians* that followed the *Roman* side, made him acquainted with an intelligence, whereby they hoped to recover their City. Some handicrafts-men, that wrought for the *Carthaginians* in one of the Citadels of *Locri*, (for there were two in the Town) being taken prisoners by the Romans, promised to betray the place, if they might be ranomed and rewarded. *Scipio* being advertised of this, gave order to have the attempt made by night: which happily succeeded; & that Citadel was surpris'd. The other Citadel was strongly defended by the *Carthaginian* Garrison, which sent to *Hannibal* for aide. The Romans in like sort, fearing lest their own paucity should make them too weak for *Hannibal*, craved help of the Consul *Scipio*. The Town-men were doubtfully affected: but the best, and most of them inclining to the Romans, kept *Hannibal* out; whom the comming of *Scipio* caused thence to depart; and caused likewise the *Carthaginian* Garrison to abandon the other Citadel. Many outrages were committed by the *Roman* Souldiers, that were left by *Scipio* in custody of the Town. Wherefore a vehement complaint was made by the *Locrians* unto the *Roman* Senate: not only against those of the Garrison: but much more against *Pleminius* the Captain, who gave bad example, and was worse than all the rest. Besides many Murders, Robberies, Rapes, and other villanies, the Temple of *Proserpina*, that had a great fame of sanctity, was spoiled by these barbarous Theeves. The *Locrians* therefore advised the Senate to make present amends to the goddess for this sacrilege: saying, that the like had never been committed, without notorious revenge by her taken upon the Authors. The Senate gave good ear to this complaint, comforted the *Locrians*, and redressed the injuries done unto them; sent for *Pleminius*, with other principall offenders; whom they cast into prison, and used according to their deserts: as also they restored unto *Proserpina* her money twice told. But old *Q. Fabius* was not herewithall contented. He laid much of the blame upon *Scipio*, that had placed such a man in *Locri*; and had not carefully hearkened to the complaints made against him, but suffered him to runne on in these wicked courses. By the sharp invective that *Q. Fabius* made, others took courage to speak what they pleased, as well against the demeanour of *Scipio*, as against the dissoluteness of his Army; which lay, as they said, idle in *Sicily*, neither mindfull of any service toward, nor fit for it if need should require. Finally, things were so far urged, that ten Legats were sent over into *Sicily*, together with the Prætor appointed for that Iland; two of the Tribunes, and one of the *Ædiles*; who should examine these matters; and either cause the General to return into *Italy*, or continue him in his charge, as they thought fit. The end of all was, they found him so well prepared against *Carthage*, as that they hastned him on his journey, and gave him high commendations at their return.

*Scipio* had already employed *Lælius* in *Africk*, rather to make discovery, than to work any other great effect of war. He took a great booty: and struck no little terror into the *Carthaginians*; who saw their affairs to be upon terms of change. But the greatest fruit of his journey was, That speaking with *Masaniissa*, he well informed himself of the state of *Africk*, and knew what was to be expected of those two Kings, that had promised to joyn with the Romans at their landing.

Concerning *Masaniissa* his revolt from the *Carthaginians*, and his compact made under-hand with the Romans, *Lælius* doth profite. That there was no such evident cause thereof at the present; but that the long continuance of his faith and constancy, in following times, must help to prove, that this his change, was not without some good cause. But *Appianus* (an Historian far inferior to *Lælius*, both in worth and time) gives one reason for probable of this, and many accidents thereto belonging, as that it carries with it a great appearance of necessity. Only the doubt is, How it could any way come to passe, that the knowledge of such a matter should have escaped the diligence of *Lælius*, if it had been true: unless we should believe, that he wilfully forbore to rehearse a Tragedie; the sorrow whereof would cause men to think amiss of *Scipio*. Howsoever it was, thus *Appian* tells it: and many circumstances of things done, confirm it. *Asdrubal*, the son of *Gelo*, had a fair daughter, whom both King *Syphax* and *Masaniissa* loved. *Masaniissa*, being brought up at *Carthage*, and being withall a goodly Gentleman of person, and excellent in qualities, was chosen by *Asdrubal* to be his son-in-law.

When

When the virgin was betrothed unto him, he went into *Spain*, and there did great service. But afterwards, the *Carthaginian* Senate thought the marriage of *Asdrubal's* daughter to be a matter of State: and bestowed her upon *Syphax*, without standing to acquaint her father or *Masaniissa* therewithall. This they did, for that *Syphax* was the more mighty Prince; and for that the indignity of the repulse, had made him become their enemy. Hereof *Masaniissa* was advertised; and forthwith entred into intelligence with *Scipio*, secretly as he thought; yet not so secretly, but some notice was taken of it: which would have cost him his life, had he not with great circumspection conveyed himself home into his father's Kingdom. Thus far forth we may believe *Appianus*: all the narration well cohering with things past, and following. Only it seems, that howsoever *Sophonista*, the daughter of *Asdrubal*, was promised by the *Carthaginians* unto *Syphax*: yet since this their courtship proceeded from fear, he thought it wilde to continue and increase the same their fear, by making fair promises to the *Romans*, untill *Asdrubal* had sent for his daughter from *Carthage*, & the marriage was consummated. In other matters concerning the war it self, wherein *Appian* differs much from *Livie*, and from *Polibius*, whom (as appears by the broken pieces of his works remaining) *Livie* did follow, it will be no offence, to take little heed unto his reports.

*Masaniissa* was the sonne of *Gala*, a King of the *Numidians*: whose father dying, the Crown descended, by order of the Country, unto *Desales* the brother, not unto *Masaniissa* the son. But this Uncle of *Masaniissa* shortly dyed: and his elder sonne, who took possession of the kingdom, was vanquished, and slain in battell by a Rebel, that made himself Protector over the younger which was a childe. The Traitor fortified himself against *Masaniissa*, whose returne he feared, by Alliances with the *Carthaginians* and *Syphax*. But all would not serve: He and his Pupill, were dispossessed of their Estates by *Masaniissa*, that was a skilfull Warriour, and well beloved for the memory of his father *Gala*. The *Carthaginians* in reason would have been glad, that *Masaniissa*, who had done them notable service, was thus confirmed in his Estate, had they not been guilty of the injury by them done unto him, whilst his Uncle or Cousin reigned, and he seemed unlikely to stand them in any stead. But *Syphax*, by their procurement, and perhaps by his own malice, towards his Corrival, warred upon him, and over-charging him with numbers, drave him out of his Kingdom. Nevertheless *Masaniissa* still retained the hearts of his people; & thereby remained strong enough, to infect both *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*; though he was often put in distresse, by great forces that were sent against him. He therefore keeping much about the lesser *Syrtis*, between the borders of the *Carthaginians* and the Nation of the *Garamants*, expected the coming of the *Romans*: yet so, as he made long roads over all the Countrey, even as far as *Hippo*; and when *Lalius* arrived thereabouts, exhorted and encouraged him to hasten on *Scipio* to the invasion of *Africk*.

But *Syphax*, in whose great aide and succour was reposed more hope of good successe, than could be expected from the good will of poor *Masaniissa*, sent an Embassage into *Syrtis* about the same time, which was little pleasing unto *Scipio*. He excused himself of his promise lately made: and signified his alliance with the *Carthaginians*; adding, That he could not choose but fight for the defence of *Africk*, wherein he was born and reigned; and for the defence of his beloved wives Country, if it were invaded. Nevertheless he promised to remain a Neuter, so long as the *Romans* and *Carthaginians* held war abroad, far enough from *Africk*, as hitherto they had done. This message hastened *Scipio* in his expedition, much more than any perswasion could have done. For the promised assistance of *Syphax* had not a little advanced his enterprise; in procuring both the assent of the Senate, and the forwardnesse of many Adventurers. Left therefore the failing of this hope, should work too great a change in common opinion, He thought it the best way, to prevent all discourse, and set the war undertaken immediately on foot. The Embassadors he dismissed in haste, with letters to their King: wherein he willed him to consider, that what he had promised, he had also sworn; and therefore should do well to make it good. Having sent them away, He called his Souldiers together; and bade them make ready for the voyage, which he intended no longer to defer. For, said he, *Masaniissa* hath been with *Lalius*: and *Syphax* hath newly sent to mee; greatly wondering upon what I should thus stay; and saying, That they will provide for themselves, if I fail their expectation by tarrying any longer. This fine tale

tales prevented all further inquisition, that might else have been made concerning the message of these Embassadors: whose followers had been seen walking up and down *Syrtis*. And lest any thing should afterwards break out, that might hinder the business, *Scipio* immediately sent about his fleet unto *Lilybæum*: and requesting by letters *M. Pomponius*, that was Prætor in *Sicily*, to meet him there; hastened thither with his Army. At *Lilybæum* he agreed with the Prætor, about the division of the Legions between them, which to leave behinde for defence of the Iland; and which to carry with him into *Africk*. What numbers he transported, it is not certain: some Historians reckoning only ten thousand foot, and two and twenty hundred horse; others increasing them to five and thirty thousand, horse and foot. Concerning his directions for embarking, and other matters belonging to their course, I hold it needlesse to set them down: since they were points of ordinary care, and which it is like that neither he, when he took his voyage into *Spain*, nor others upon like occasions, have omitted; they being also word for word set down by an Historian, who borrowed them from *Livie*, and fitted them to a Prince of later age.

This Roman Army landed in *Africk*, near to a fore-land then called the fair *Promontorie*: which how far it was from *Carthage*, or toward what point of the Compass, I cannot precisely affirm; because it is uncertain, whether it were that Cape or Head-land which bore the name of *Mercurie*, and lay to the North-east of *Carthage*; or whether that of *Apollo*, which lay Northerly from *Carthage*, and by West. The coming of *Masaniissa* unto *Scipio* at his first arrivall, help to confirm the opinion of *Xylandrus*, who thinks the fair *Promontorie* to have been the same, that was also called *Mercuries Cape*, since with little difficulty *Masaniissa* might come thither from the lesser *Syrtis*, whereabout was his common abiding. But forasmuch as without any memorable impediment soon after his arrivall, *Scipio* encamped before *Vicia*, that stood Westward from *Carthage* beyond the River *Bagradas*: it may rather seem, that he landed within the *Promontorie* of *Apollo*, whence the way to *Vicia* was not long. This is also strongly proved; for that out of *Carthage* were sent, the next day, five hundred horse to trouble him in his dis-embarking. Neither was it so hard for *Masaniissa*, that roved about the Countrey with a troupe of horse, to finde out the *Romans*, though they landed far from the place to the which he usually resorted, like as before he had met with *Lalius* at *Hippo*: that was farther off; as it would have been for *Scipio*, with his Army and Carriages, to overcome the trouble of a long journey, and fetch a great compass to *Vicia*, by Land; when he might have disembarked nearer unto it. Nevertheless it may pass as a conjecture, that *Scipio* came first of all to *Emporia*, a plentiful Region about the lesser *Syrtis*; since he gave charge to the Masters of his ships, at the setting forth from *Lilybæum*, to shape their course for that coast. The Countrey thereabout was very rich, and fit for sustenance of an Army: neither were the Inhabitants warlike, or well provided to make resistance. Thus much perhaps *Masaniissa* had signified unto *Lalius*, when he spake with him at *Hippo*: thinking that the *Romans*, howsoever they made brave promises, would not come strong enough to fight at head. But when he saw their Fleet and Army to be such, as not only served to invade the lands of *Carthage*, but threatened a conquest of the City and whole Estate: then might he better advise them to set sail for *Vicia*, and make war upon the Enemies at their own doors.

The *Carthaginians* had at that time neither any Captain of great worth at home, nor better Army than of raw Souldiers; that were levied, or to be levied in haste. *Asdrubal* the son of *Gisco*, the same that had lately been chased out of *Spain* by *Scipio*, was their best man of war. And good enough perhaps he was thought by *Hanno* and his fellows, of whose faction he was: or if ought were wanting in him, yet his Riches and Nobility, together with the affinity of King *Syphax*, made him passable. He was then with the King his son-in-law, working him no doubt against the *Romans*: when letters were brought from *Carthage*, both to *Syphax* and to him, informing them of the Invasion: entreating the one of them to give assistance, and commanding the other to make his repair unto the City, where he was chosen Generall. But ere these could be ready, *Scipio* had beaten the troupe of *Carthaginian* horse, that were sent out of the City to disturb his landing; and slain *Hanno* a young Gentleman, that was their Leader. He had also taken and sacked a Town of the *Carthaginians*: wherein, besides other booty, he took eight thousand prisoners; all which he conveyed aboard his Hulks or Ships of burden.

burden, and sent them back laden into *Stiel*. He took likewise a Town called *Salera*, which he held and fortified. In *Salera* lay another *Hanno*, with four thousand *Numidian* horse: whose service being fitter for the field, than for defence of walled places, made *Scipio* to perceive the unskilfulness of their Leader, that had thus housed them. Wherefore he sent *Masanissa* before him: who rode up to the gates; and, by making a bravado, trained out the improvident *Hanno* so far, that he drew him unto a place, where the *Romans* lay in wait for him. The victory was easily gotten, and *Hanno* either taken, or slain. With those that fled, the *Romans* entered pell-mell into the town, which presently they made their own. Thence went *Scipio* to *Vtica*, a City of great importance, of which mention hath been formerly made, and fate down before it. Forty 10  
 dayes he spent about it, assailing it both by Land and Sea, and using all his engines of battery, whereof he had plenty, yet was in no likelihood of prevailing. And now the Summer was quite spent: so that it was time for him to choose a place, and fortifie his Winter-Camp, which must be well stored against the year following. Whilest thus necessity urged him to leave *Vtica*: and thence of taking the repulse in his first great enterprise, rather than any hope of better successe, caused him to stay there: *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* gave him the honour of a fair pretence to leave the siege. *Asdrubal* had made a 20  
 Levie of thirty thousand foot, and three thousand horse: yet adventured not with this ill-trained Army to draw near unto the *Romans*, before the coming of *Syphax*. *Syphax* brought with him unto *Carthage* fifty thousand foot, and ten thousand horse: which joyning unto the forces of *Asdrubal*, they marched bravely toward *Scipio*, who thereby took occasion to dislodge. He chose for his Winter-Camp the banks of an Inlet, that had good harbour for his Navie. His foot-men he lodged on a Promontory, joyning to the Continent by an arme of Land: his horse-men he bestowed upon lower ground, on the other shoar: in the bottom of the Creek he moored his ships; and there he quartered the Mariners, with all that belonged unto the Fleet. The whole camp he strongly fortified, and to attended the season of the year, when it should serve him again to fight. Of catell and other booty *Masanissa* had brought in great store, by driving the 30  
 Countrey, before the coming of *Asdrubal* and *Syphax*. Corn also he had gotten some: and great store was sent him from *Stiel* and *Sardinia*. Likewise apparell for his Souldiers, was sent from home, or from *Sardinia*: though scarce enough to serve turne, for that it was a matter of more cost. The ships that brought these things, he freighted homewards with such part of his booty, as he could best spare; especially with captives to be sold for slaves. *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* encamped near unto *Scipio*: not so strongly fortifying themselves, as did the *Romans*, either for that they wanted the severe institution, which the *Romans* used in the discipline of war, or for that they presumed upon their multitude, against which they found in *Scipio* no disposition to issue forth of his strength, and fight. So the Winter passed without action.

When Spring drew near, *Scipio* thought it good to assay his old friend the *Numidian* King, if perhaps he might be won by persuasions to forsake the *Carthaginians*. 40  
 It was considered, that those *Barbarians* were naturally unconstant; and particularly, that *Syphax* had given proof before this of his much levity. It might therefore be hoped, That having wearied himself, by lodging a whole Winter in the Camp: and being peradventure no less weary with satiety of his wife, who had caused him to enter into this war: he might be moved with a little entreaty to withdraw himself home into his Kingdome, and rest a Newer. But it is not unlikely, that such a friend as this King, had been highly entertained and honoured in the City of *Carthage*, which was near at hand, as often as during this Winter it had pleased him, or as he had been invited, to make a step thither and repose himself a while: his wife Queen *Sophoniba* lying also there at the same time, to cherish him in his resolution. Howsoever it were, *Syphax* did only make an overture of peace: propounding it as reasonable, That *Hannibal* 50  
 should be recalled out of *Italy* by the *Carthaginians*: and that the *Romans* in like sort should quietly depart out of *Africa*, and so make an end of the war: wherewith now both *Africa* and *Europe* were disquieted. Unto this would not *Scipio* at the first give ear: yet being pressed earnestly by many messages from *Syphax*, and desiring to continue the innercourse of Embassadors; he began to make shew, as if he would consider of the motion. He was given to understand by those whom he had sent unto the King, That the *Enemies* had their camps without any great defence of earth, full of wooden Cab-  
 bins,

bins, and covered with boughs: and that the *Numidians*, such of them as came first with *Syphax*, used coverings of Mats and Reeds; others, that came later, had thatched their lodgings with drie boughs and leaves: under which they lay carelessly without their Trenches. Upon this advertisement he bethought himself, That it would not be hard for him to set their camps on fire, and thereby give them a notable overthrow. Without help of some such stratagem, he foresaw that it would be a work of great difficulty for him, to proceed in his wars when time should serve. It was a plain open Country wherein he lay: and the *Enemies* had great advantage of him in number, especially in horse; which, upon such ground, could not be resisted by the *Roman* Legions. The longer therefore that he thought upon the matter; the more needfull he found it for himself, to make some sudden attempt upon their Camp. To this end he sent 10  
 many Embassadors, under pretence of treating about the Peace; but indeed of purpose to discover all that might concern the intended surprize. With these Embassadors he sent, as Attendants, many old Souldiers, disguised like slaves; that wandering (as it were) idle up and down the Camp, might observe the waies and entrances, with whatsoever else was needfull. When he had learned as much as he desired: upon the sudden he sent word to *Syphax*, that it was vain to hold any longer Treaty, forasmuch as he could not get the consent of his Councell of war; without whole approbation, all that himself could do, was no more, than the good will of one man. This he did, to 20  
 the end that, without any breach of faith, he might put his design in execution. The Truce being thus cut off, *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* were very penitive: as having lately perswaded themselves, that their trouble was almost at an end. But since it could be no better, they began to devise, by what art they might draw *Scipio* out of his Camp, and provoke him to battail in those Plains. This if they could do, they hoped to make his Councell of war repent as greatly the refusal of peace, as did *Marcus Attilius* after the like presumption. But if he should refuse to come forth of his Trenches, what else remained than to besiege him? Which they themselves were well able to do by land, and the *Carthaginian* Fleet should do by Sea, that was making ready for the purpose. By such discourses these two comforted themselves; recompencing (in concept) the 30  
 losse of their hopes past, with that of victory to come. But herein they were extremely and worthily disappointed: for that consulting about the future, they provided not against present danger, but continued in the same negligence, which was grown upon them by the long discourse of peace. As for *Scipio*, he was not idle, but made preparation out of hand, as it were to do somewhat against *Vtica*. Two thousand Souldiers he had made ready, and appointed to take the same piece of ground, whereon he lay against *Vtica* before. This he did, partly to keep secret that which he had in hand, left being suspected by his own Souldiers, the Enemy might happen to have notice of it; partly to hinder those of *Vtica* from setting upon the few, that he purposed to leave behinde him in his Camp. He caused his men that night to sup well, and betimes; that they 40  
 might be ready for the journey. After supper, he appointed such Companies as he thought fit, to the defence of his Camp; all the rest of the Army he led forth, about nine of the clock at night. The *Carthaginians* lay from him seven miles and an halfe: whom he purposed to undertake himself with the one half of his army; the other half he committed to *Lelius* and *Masanissa*, whom he sent before him to set upon the camp of *Syphax*, that was farther off. It was his meaning, that the camp of *Syphax* should be on a light fire, ere he would meddle with the *Carthaginians*. For the fire might seem to have taken hold by casualty upon the *Numidians*, that lay farther off: whereas if it first appeared in the camp of *Asdrubal*, it would be suspected as the doing of enemies, and give *Syphax* warning to look to himself. To this end therefore *Scipio* marched fair and 50  
 softly; that *Lelius* & *Masanissa*, who had a longer journey, and were to fetch a compass about for fear of being discovered, might have time to get before him, and do their feat. It was about two or three of the clock in the morning, when the camp of *Syphax* began to blaze: which not only the *Numidians*, but their King himself, imputed unto casualty; as thinking themselves safe enough from enemies, for that the *Carthaginians* lay interposed between them and the danger. Wherefore as if there were no more to do, some, starting half asleep; and others, that had sitten up late at drinking, ranne out of their Cabbins to quench the fire. But so great was the tumult, that they neither could rightly understand in what case they were, nor give any remedy to the mischance, as it  
 H h h h h 2 was

was supposed. Many were smothered and burnt in the flame, which grew greater and greater: many leaping into the Trenches for fear of the sudden mischief, were trampled to death by the multitude that followed them. They that escaped the fire, fell upon the enemies sword, which was ready to receive them. Especially *Masanissa*, that best knew the Country, did great execution upon them: having laid all the waies, by which he forelaw that they would seek to escape. The *Carthaginians* perceiving this fire, thought none other than that it was a pittifull mischance: so that some ran out to help the poor *Numidians*; carrying only what would serve to quench the fire. Others ran up to the Rampart: where, fearless of any danger toward themselves, they stood beholding the greatness of the flame, and lamenting the misfortune. This 10 fall out right as *Scipio* would have it. He therefore lost no time: but setting upon those that were running towards the *Numidians*, he killed some, and pursued the rest back into their camp, which in a little while he made to burn as bright, as did that of *Syphax*. *Asdrubal* seeing this, and knowing that the *Romans* were there, did not stand to make resistance, but shifted only for himself, and escaped with a few of his horse about him. If *Hannibal*, or any of the *Barchine* faction, had been taken in such a manner: it is more than probable, that old *Hanno* would have judged him worthy to be crucified. It would then have been said, that with lesse than one half of thirty thousand men, he might at least have given some bad recompence, to them that were taking pains in kindling these fires, had he not been only careful how to save his own tearfull head. Nevertheless 20 *Polybius* acknowledgeth, and it is most likely to have been true, That if *Asdrubal*, or any of those about him, would have striven to shew valour, when the Camp was once on fire: He should not thereby have done any manner of good, because of the tumult and confusion. I shall not need to tell what a fearfull thing it was, to hear the cries of so many thousands that perished by fire and sword, or to behold the cruell flame that consumed them; which (as *Polybius* affirms) none that hath being is able to describe. It is enough to say, That of those many thousands, very few did escape, which accompanied *Asdrubal* and *Syphax* in their severall wayes of flight. Besides these also there were some scatterers, especially of the *Numidians*, that saved themselves in the dark: but they were not many, as after shall appear. Surely it must needs have been 30 very hard to tell, how many were burnt or otherwise made away, and what numbers escaped in the dark of night. Wherefore *Livie*, who in the rest of this Relation as often elsewhere, doth follow *Polybius*, may seem to have followed some lesse worthy Author, and him no good Arithmetician, in casting up the summe. For he reckons only two thousand foot, and five hundred horse, to have escaped; forty thousand to have perished by sword or fire: and above six thousand to have been taken prisoners: the whole number of all which together, is far short of fourscore and thirteen thousand, which were in these two Camps.

*Asdrubal*, putting himself into the next town that was very strongly fortified, thought there to find the *Romans* work, until the *Carthaginians* at good leisure might repair their Army. He had with him no more than two thousand foot, and five hundred horse: which he thought sufficient to defend the Town; if the Town-men would not be wanting to themselves. But he found the Inhabitants of the place very earnest in contention, whether it were better to fight, or to yield. Unto this disputation, he well forelaw, that the arrivall of *Scipio* would soon give an end. Wherefore, lest they should lay hold upon him, and seek the Victors favour by delivering him up, he shrunk away betimes, and made all hast to *Carthage*. As for the town which he left; it opened the gates to *Scipio*, at his first coming: and thereby preserved it self from all manner of losse. The next two Towns adjoining would needs be valiant, and make countenance of war: but their strength not being answerable, they were soon taken by *Scipio*; who 50 abandoned them to the pleasure of his Souldiers. This being done, he returned to the siege of *Vtica*.

The *Carthaginians* were sore troubled, as they had good reason, when, in stead of either Peace or Victory, which they lately hoped for, they heard newes of such a lamentable overthrow. Necessity enforced them to make hasty provision for the future: but how to doe it, few of them saw any means. Some gave advice to crave peace of *Scipio*: others, to send for *Hannibal* out of *Italy*; but the most, and they which finally prevailed, were of opinion, That notwithstanding the losse of this Army, they might well defend

defend themselves against the *Romans*, by raising new forces: especially, if *Syphax* would not leave them. It was therefore concluded, That they should bend all their care this way, levying in all hast another Army; and sending Embassadours to deal with *Syphax*, who lay then at a Town called *Abba*, not passing eight miles from *Carthage*. Immediately the same their unfortunate Commander, *Asdrubal* the son of *Gefso*, was employed to make new levies of men: and Queen *Sophoniba* went forth with Embassadours to her husband *Syphax*; who having gathered together as many as he could of his subjects that had escaped from the late slaughter, was thinking to return into his own Kingdome. *Sophoniba* laboured to with her husband, that at length she won 10 him to her own desire. And it fell out at the same time, that four thousand *Spaniards*, waged by the *Carthaginians*, were brought over to serve in *Africk*. Of these were made such brave reports, as if their courage, and the Armes which they used, were not to be resisted. Even the multitude within *Carthage* beleeveth these tales, and were more glad than they had cause to be; which is great wonder, since in one Age, the whole country of *Spain* had been twice conquered; first, by the *Carthaginians* themselves, and after by the *Romans*. But with *Syphax* these tales prevailed much: which the *Carthaginian* Embassadours helped with a lye, saying, That there were come ten thousand of these terrible *Spaniards*. Upon this confidence, the people of *Carthage* and their friends gathered such spirit, that in thirty dayes they made up an Army, consisting well near of thirty thousand men, reckoning the *Spaniards*, and *Syphax* with his *Numidians* in the number. So they incamped in a Region called, *The great Fields*, about five dayes journey from *Vtica*. *Scipio* hearing of this, came from *Vtica* thither, to visit them: leaving behinde him his impediments, with some part of his Army, to make a shew of continuing the siege. Two or three dayes, after the meeting of both armies, passed away in skirmish, without any great thing done. It had now been time for *Asdrubal* to follow the example of the *Roman Fabius*, and seek to weary out the Enemy by delays. But either (which is likely) he was a farre worse Commander, or else, it was not in his power to give such directions as best pleased himself. The fourth day the Armies met in bat- 20 tle: wherein the *Romans* were marshalled by *Scipio* after their wonted manner, having 30 their Italian horse in the right wing; and *Masanissa* with his *Numidians* in the left. On the contrary side, *Asdrubal* and his *Carthaginians* had the right wing; *Syphax*, the left; and the *Spaniards*, the battail. The victory was gotten without many blowes: for the untrained followers of *Syphax* and *Asdrubal*, could not sustain the first charge of the *Italians*, or of *Masanissa*. Only the *Spaniards* fought a long time, even until they were all in a manner slain: rather as men desperate, and not hoping for mercy, since they were thus come over to fight against *Scipio*, who had otherwise deserved of them, than upon any likelihood or conceit of victory. This their obstinacy was beneficiall to those that fled; for that it hindered the *Romans* from making any great pursuit. Hereby *Asdrubal*, and *Syphax* escaped: *Asdrubal*, to *Carthage*; and *Syphax* home to his owne 40 Kingdome: whether his wife was either gone before, or immediately followed him.

*Scipio* having thus gotten the mastery of the field, took counsaill about the prosecution of the war. It was resolved upon as the best course, That he himself, with part of the Army, should attempt the Cities round about him: and that *Masanissa*, with his *Numidians*, and *Lalius*, with some of the *Roman* Legions, should follow after *Syphax*; not permitting him to take rest within his own Kingdome, where easily else he might repair his forces, and put them to new trouble. This advice, it seems that *Masanissa* gave: who knew best the quality of the *Numidians*; and what good might be done among them, by the reputation of a victory. The least that could be expected, was his restitution into his own Kingdome, usurped by *Syphax*: which to accomplish, it no lesse 50 concerned the *Romans* at the present, than it did himself. According to this order concluded, *Lalius* was sent away with *Masanissa*: and *Scipio* stayed behinde, carrying the war from town to town. Many places yielded for fear; many were taken by force; and all the subjects of *Carthage* wavered in their fidelity, as if the time were now come, wherein they might take notice of those unreasonable burdens, which their proud Masters had laid upon them for maintenance of the war in *Spain* and *Italy*. What to doe in this case, the *Carthaginians* could hardly resolve. Fortune was their enemy; they had lost their Armies, and many of their Towns: neither durst they make bold to trouble their own subjects with any violent exaction of men or money; who nevertheless of

their own tree will be likely to give little help. Very much it grieved them to send for *Hannibal* out of *Italy*: yet since there was no other hope remaining, than in him and his good Army; it was decreed, That Embassadors should be forthwith sent to call him home. Some there were that gave advice, to set out a fleet against that of *Scipio*, that rode before *Vtica*, weakly manned, and easie to be taken, whilst *Scipio* himself was busied in the Iland Countreys. Some were of opinion, That it should be their principall care, to fortifie by all means the City of *Carthage*: upon the safety whereof they said all depended: adding, that whilst they were true, and at unity among themselves, they might well enough subsist, and expect those opportunities, with which Fortune (doubtlesse) would present them. These counsels were not rejected; but order was forthwith taken, both for all things concerning the defence of the City, and for the attempt upon the Roman fleet at *Vtica*. Nevertheless, it was considered, that thereby they should only protract the warre; without any advancing their own affairs towards likelihood of victory, no, though it should fall out, that all the ships at *Vtica* might be taken or destroyed. Wherefore the determination held concerning *Hannibal*, That he should immediately come over into *Africk*, as the last refuge of *Carthage*. The Councell was no sooner broken up, than all the Senators betook themselves to the execution of that which was decreed: some, to the fortification of the Town: some, to make ready the Fleet; and some, appointed thereunto, forthwith to embarque themselves for *Italy*.

In this their trepidation *Scipio* came to *Tunes*, a City in those dayes very strong, and standing in prospect almost of every part of *Carthage*. This place, or rather some defensible piece adjoining, he easily took; the garrison forsaking it, and running away as soons as he drew near. But whilst he was about there to incamp, and fortifie himself against the City, he might perceive the *Carthaginian* Fleet setting forth, and making towards *Vtica*: What this meant, he readily conceived; and stood in great fear, lest his own ships that were very ill prepared for Sea-fight (as being heavily laden with engines of battery, and wholly disposed in such order, as was most convenient for assaulting the town) should make bad resistance, against a fleet appointed for that special service. Wherefore he hastened away towards *Vtica*, to assist with his presence in this needfull case. It fell out well, that he had sent his carriages, and all the great booty which he drew along with him, thither before, at his going to *Tunes*. For had not he now made great expedition, he should have come too late. Neither could he indeed have been there in due time, if the *Carthaginians* had used such diligence as was convenient. But they rested one night in harbour by the way: and at their coming to *Vtica*, they tarried awhile to make a bravado; presenting themselves in order of battell, as if the *Romans* would have put forth to Sea against them. But *Scipio* had no such intent: he thought it would be sufficient, if he could preserve his Gallies. As for the pleasure of their bravery at Sea; it should little avail the *Carthaginians*, if they got nothing by it, and lost their whole estate by Land. Wherefore he took his ships of burden, and lashing them together with cables, in four ranks, one behind another, made a four-fold bridge over the Channell of the Haven; whereon he placed a thousand of his choice men, with store of Darts, and other casting weapons, to make defence. Some open spaces he left, whereat his Frigots, and other small Vessels, might run out and back again upon any advantage or need: but these he covered with planks, using the masts and yards of his ships instead of rafters, to joine all together, that his men might help one another, and the bridge itself not be torne asunder. Scarce was this work finished, when the *Carthaginians*, seeing none issue forth against them, came into the Haven. The fight between them and the *Romans* that were in the Hulks, was rather like to the assaulting of a wall, than to any Sea-fight. For they that stood upon the bridge, had sure footing, and threw their weapons downwards, with their whole strength and violence; which the *Carthaginians* out of their Gallies, that were lower and unsteady, could not do. But the Roman Frigots & long boats, adventuring forth from behind the bridge, were greatly over-born by the force of the Gallies; and were one occasion of that small loss which followed. They that stood upon the Bridge were neither able to relieve them, nor yet could freely bestow their weapons among the *Carthaginians*, as before; for fear of hurting these their friends, that were intangled and mixed among the enemies. The *Carthaginians* had brought with them grappling hooks, hanging at Iron chains. These they threw upon the masts and yards which served as arches to joyn the bridge together: then rowing

ing backwards, they tore all asunder, in such sort, that one ship followed another, and all the first rank was broken, or defaced. The Defendants had no other way, than to save themselves as hastily as they could, by shifting into the next rank of ships, that lay behind them untouched. Neither did the *Carthaginians* trouble themselves any further in this laborious work: but having haled away fixe ships of burden, and towed them out of the Haven, returned hometo *Carthage*. Their welcome was greater than their victory: because among so many grievous losses, only this exploit had succeeded well, though it were of small importance.

Whilst things thus passed about *Carthage*, *Lelius* and *Masanissa*, in their journey against *Syphax*, found as good success as could be desired. The fame of the victories already gotten, restored *Masanissa* to his Kingdom, without farther contention: the *Masafly*, his subjects, joyfully receiving him, & forsaking the usurpers. But here they stayed not: neither indeed would *Syphax* permit them to be quier. He had such abundance of men and horses, that he felt not greatly the losses past: and therefore being solicited by *Adrubal* and *Sophonibus*, he prepared again for warre. But before the instigation of his beloved wife; the losse of the *Masafly* would let him take no rest: neither was it the purpose of *Lelius* and *Masanissa*, to give him any breathing time. It is common in men, to depart no little unwillingly from that which they have gotten by extortion, than from their proper inheritance; but to think all alike their own, whereof they are in possession, be the title unto some part never so unjust. Herunto alludes the fable of the young Kite, which thought that she had vomited up her own guts, when it was only the garbage of some other fowle, that she had hastily swallowed, and was not able to digest. But whether or no, *Syphax*, like the young Kite, beleeveth the Kingdom of the *Masafly* to be part of his entrails: *Lelius* and *Masanissa* will shortly give him somewhat that shall make him cast his gorge. For to this purpose chiefly are they come so far. It concerned the *Romans* to dispose (if it might be) the King, whose false and hollow friendship towards them, had been converted into strong enmity; as also to set in his place another, who might do them such good offices, as *Syphax* had lately done unto the *Carthaginians*. How easily this might be effected, *Masanissa* knew best, as being well acquainted with the nature of those Countreys; wherein, even to this day though there be many strong Towns, yet the fortune of a battail is enough, to translate the Kingdom from one Competitor to another. So they met with *Syphax*, who came against them with no lesse an Army, than his former, and marshalled in the Roman order, according to the skill, which he had learned of the *Roman Centurion*, long ago sent unto him out of *Spain* from *Cn. Scipio*. But though he could teach his men how to march in order; yet could he not teach them to fight courageously. They were a rabble of all sorts, gathered up in haste: and few of them had seen warre before. Encamping neer unto the *Romans*, it fell out, as commonly, that some small troupes of horse on both sides, encountered one another in the mid-way: and they that had the worst, were defeated by other of their fellows. By continuance of the skirmish, more and more were drawn out from either Camp: so that at length *Syphax*, unwilling to dishearten his men by taking any foil at their first meeting with the Enemy, came up with all his horse, which were the best part of his forces, and therewith over-charged *Masanissa*, whose numbers were faire lesse. But whilst he was prosecuting his hope of victory: some *Roman* squadrons of Foot came against him through their own troups of horse, which fell to the sides, and made a lane for them. So their battail standing now more firm, than a little before; *Syphax* was unable, though he laboured much in vain, to make them give ground. *Masanissa* likewise, and his troups grew confident upon this assistance: and charging afresh the Enemy, that could not make way forward, caused him to give back. Herewithall the Legions came in sight: which terrified to the *Numidian* horse, that they began presently to disband. Fain would *Syphax* have stayed them from flight: and to that end made head in person against the *Romans*; with hope, that his men would be ashamed to leave him. But it fell out unhappily, that he was cast from his horse, which received a wound, and so taken prisoner. Of others that were slain or taken, the multitude was not great. It sufficed, that they forsook the place, and fled, and that their King, upon whom all depended, was in the *Romans* hand. *Masanissa* told *Lelius*, that this victory should make an end of the *Numidian* war; it presently they hastened away to *Cirra* the chief City of the Kingdom; whither he himself desired



to be sent before with the Horse, carrying *Syphax* along with him. Hereunto *Laelius* agreed. *Masanissa* coming to *Cirta*, before any newes of the Kings mischance was there arrived, called out the chief of the City to parlee: wherein by many fair promises and threats, but especially by shewing unto them *Syphax* bound, he prevailed so farre, that the gates were forthwith opened unto him; and every one strove to get his favour, that was like to be their King hereafter. Among the rest, Queen *Sophonisba* yielded her self into his hands, and vehemently besought him, that the might not be delivered up unto the *Romans*. Her youth, and excellent beauty, commended her suit, that *Masanissa* forthwith granted it, & to make good his promise, married her himself that very day: thereby to prevent *Laelius* and *Scipio* from determining otherwise of her, since she was his wife. But *Laelius*, when he came thither, took the matter hainously, so that at first he would have haled her away, together with *Syphax* and other prisoners, and have sent her unto *Scipio*. But being over-intreated by *Masanissa*, he suffered the matter to rest a while as he found it, and referred all to *Scipio*'s discretion: to whom he sent away *Syphax* and other captives immediately; following shortly after himself with *Masanissa*, when they had done what was needfull in the Kingdome.

At the coming of *Syphax*, there was great joy in the *Roman* Camp: the mighty Armies which he had lately brought into the field, and his entertainment of *Scipio* and *Asdrubal*, both at one time, when *Rome* and *Carthage* together sought his friendship; with such o. her commemoration of his past and present fortune, mislirting to every 20 one a large argument of discourse. *Scipio* demanded of him, what had moved him, not only to forsake the *Roman* friendship, but to make war upon them, unprovoked. He briefly answered, That his wife had moved him to do so; calling her a Fury, and a pestilent creature: and saying, that *Masanissa* was no wiser than himself, since he had now taken the same woman to his wife, who would shortly draw him to the same courses. Hereat *Scipio* was greatly troubled: and stood in great doubt, lest this perillous woman should deprive him of *Masanissa*, as she had done of *Syphax*. It was not long, ere *Masanissa* and *Laelius* came unto him: both of whom together he lovingly welcomed; and highly commended in publick, for their notable service in this Expedition. Then taking *Masanissa* apart, he brake with him, as touching *Sophonisba*: letting him under- 30 stand, that the *Romans* had title to her head, and that she was a mischievous enemy of theirs. Wherefore he intreated him to moderate his affections: and not to deface the memory of his great services already done (for which he should be highly rewarded to his own contentment) by committing a great offence upon little reason. *Masanissa* blusht, and wept: and finally promised to be governed by *Scipio*, whom he nevertheless intreated, to think upon his faith given to *Sophonisba*, that she should not be delivered into the *Romans* power. So he departed to his own Tent, where, after some time spent in agony, he called unto him a servant of his that had the custody of his poyson (which Princes used then to have in a readinesse, against all mischances that might make them unwilling to live:) and tempering a poyson for *Sophonisba*, sent it unto her with this 40 message; That gladly he would have had her to live with him as his wife: but since they who had power to hinder him of his desire, would not yeeld thereto, he sent her a cup, that should preserve her from falling alive into the hands of the *Romans*; willing her to remember her birth and estate, and accordingly to take order for her self.

At the receipt of this Message and Present, the only said; That if her husband had no better token to send unto his new wife, the must accept of this; adding, That the might have dyed more honourably, if she had not wedded so lately before her funeral. And herewithall he boldly drank off the poyson. Thus *Livie* reporteth. But *Appian* varies from this; and sets it down agreeably to that which hath been spoken before, concerning the precontract between *Masanissa* and *Sophonisba*. He saith, That after 50 the taking of *Syphax*, Embassadors from *Cirta* met with *Laelius* and *Masanissa* upon their way thither, yielding up their City, and the Kings Palace: and that *Sophonisba*, for her own private, sent messengers to excuse her marriage with *Syphax*, as made against her will, by compulsion of those in whose power she was. *Masanissa* readily admitted this excuse, and accepted her to wife. But when *Scipio* had received information from *Syphax*, how cunning in perswasion *Sophonisba* was; and that all her thoughts laboured for the good of *Carthage*, he fell out about her with *Masanissa* at his returne, and challenged her, as a part of the booty belonging to the *Romans*. *Masanissa* said, the

was

was his own wife, and unto him betrothed many years before. But *Scipio* would not hear of this: or if it were true, yet he said it was no reason, that *Masanissa* should keep her in possession, as long as it was disputable, unto whom she might appertain. Wherefore he willed him first of all to produce her, and then afterwards, to make his claim unto her, wherein he should have no wrong. Herewithall he sent to fetch her away: and *Masanissa* accompanied the messengers, as it were to deliver her: but making her acquainted with the necessity, gave unto her a cup of poyson; wherewith she ended her life, before they came, that should have apprehended her. So, she shewed unto the *Romans* her dead body, which he royally interred. The sudden violence of *Masanissa*'s his love, and the ready

content of *Sophonisba* to marry with him: added not so much credit unto this relation of 10 *Appian*, as doth the want of all other evident cause (which *Livie* notes) of the sudden falling out between him and the *Carthaginians*, under whom he had been trained up, and done them great service. Howsoever it were, *Scipio*, hearing of this tragical accident, sent for *Masanissa*, and comforted him as well as he could, lest his melancholy should lead him to some inconvenience. Having therefore gently rebuked him for his rashness, he brought him forth in presence of the Army, where extolling his noble acts, and shewing how highly he had deserved of the City of *Rome*, he proclaimed him King, and gave unto him a Crown of gold, with other Royall ornaments. This was indeed the ready way 20 to divert his thoughts from the sad remembrance of what which was past, unto the more cheerful contemplation of good fortune, that began to smile upon him.

This was the first time that the *Romans* took upon them to create or proclaim a King. Which honour though *Masanissa* well deserved: yet would not the Title have redounded unto his great benefit; neither should he have been much beholding to them for it, if he had not by their means recovered possession of his Country, together with the greatest part of *Syphax*'s Dominions. It seemeth not unlikely, that had he remained a *Numer* in these wars, and sustained himself with his troupe of horse, in such sort as he did before the coming of the *Romans*; he might nevertheless have recovered his proper inheritance, by the love of his own subjects without other help, when *Syphax* had once or twice been vanquished. As for the enlargement of his Kingdome, it was not more than he deserved: 30 neither were the *Romans* then in case, to make a conquest of *Numidia*, for themselves; neither could they have wished a fitter opportunity, than of such a man, upon whom to bestow it, that was their assured friend, and passable withall among the *Numidians*, as being (for the *Masseyls* were a *Numidian* Tribe) a great Prince of the same Nation. Yet thus liberality of the *Romans*, was noised abroad as very glorious: & the *Romans* themselves, in a politick sort of gravity, took highly upon them; as if even their saluting him by the name of King, had been a matter of great consequence. He thrived indeed well after it: and by their maintenance waxed mighty in times following, incroaching upon his neighbours on all sides; but most of all upon the State of *Carthage*, whereto they were little displeased. Hence it grew that *Perenna* the son of *Syphax* (of whom we shall shortly 40 speak more) which held some pieces of his fathers Kingdome, desiring friendship of the *Romans*, & promising by all means to deserve their love, requested therewithall, that they would call him King. But though it were so, that never any before him had made this a matter of suit: yet the *Roman* Senate was *punitius* herein, and answered very gravely, That it was not their custome to give the honour of that appellation, save only unto such Kings, as had greatly deserved of their City. Thus they made it a matter of State; and in process of time grew so proud of this their imaginary prerogative, that they imputed as a singular benefit unto Kings, that no way depended upon them, the salutation by \* that \* *Caesars* Comen- 50 name, though it were not accompanied with any other favour or profit thence redounding.

## §. XIX.

The Carthaginians desire Truce, and break it.

THE *Carthaginians* were extremely dismayed, when they heard of the great calamity, that was befall their good friend *Syphax*; and understood that *Masanissa* their mortall enemy, had got possession of his Kingdome: To increase their fear, *Scipio* returned again to *Tunes* in view of their City: where he made an end of that Fortification, which he had begun at his last being there. The *Carthagi-* 50 *nians*

\* Excerpt. 6 Po  
p. lib. 15,  
Liv. lib. 30.

mans had neither forces, nor courage, to withstand him: but their hearts so failed them, that they sent forth unto them thirty Embassadors, Princes of the city, which were their Privie Council, to make suit for peace. These being admitted into the presence of *Scipio*, did not only prostrate themselves on the ground; but kissed the \* feet of him, and of those that late in Council with him.

Answerable to this base adoration was their speech: that followed. They confessed themselves to have unjustly broken the Peace between them and *Rome*; and to have deserved whatsoever punishment it should please the *Romans* to inflict upon them. Yet they humbly besought *Scipio* and the rest, that in common regard of those misfortunes, whereto all men are subject, they would shew mercy unto the City of *Carthage*, and let it remain, as a monument of their clemency; which by the folly of her Citizens, had now twice deserved to be overthrown. Herewithall they did not forget, to lay the blame upon *Hannibal*: who without their appointment had begun the War: and was maintained in his doings by a Faction, without the good liking of the whole City. By this it appears, that these Embassadors were no *Barbarians*: but rather, that they were *Hannibal*, and the choice of his company, who had now their long desired work in hand, of suing unto the *Romans* for peace. Whatsoever they were, it must needs be that they were most insolent men over those that were subject unto their power, for they would not have made such adoration to the *Romans* in their own necessity unless they themselves had expected the like, where they had the advantage.

It was not unknown to *Scipio*, or to his assistants, in what poor case the city of *Rome* then was; and how unable to defray the charges of continuing the war. Neither were the *Carthaginians*, notwithstanding the losse of so many Armies, in such ill case, as the *Romans* themselves had very lately been. For they had money enough, wherewith to wage more men: they had a City far stronger than *Rome*; and they had the Sea free. But they wanted the *Roman* resolution: and therefore distrusted the wals of *Carthage*, though *Nicaea* weaker City, had all this while held out against *Scipio*, and could not yet be forced by him and his army, though so often victorious in the field. *Scipio* therefore accepted their submission, and told them, That though he came into *Africk*, to make a conquest, and not Peace: yet having the Conquest as it were in his hand, he would not deny to grant them the Peace which they desired; for thereby should all Nations understand, that the people of *Rome* did follow the rule of Justice, both in making war, and in concluding it. The Conditions which he imposed upon them, were these; That they should render up unto him all the prisoners that they had taken, together with all *Renegades* and fugitive slaves: That they should withdraw their Armies out of *Italy* and *Gaul*: That they should not meddle in *Spain*, nor yet in any Iland between *Italy* and *Africk*: That they should deliver up all their ships of war, save twenty; and that they should pay a great summe of money, with certain hundred thousand bullocks of wheat and barley. To consider of these Articles, he gave them three dayes: and when they had approved them, he granted a Truce; that they might send Embassadors unto the *Roman* Senate.

After this done, *Masaniassa* was dismissed, and went home into his Kingdome, as if the war had been already at an end. *Syphax* was a little before sent with *Laelius* unto *Rome*: where the fame of these victories filled men with joy, and gave hope, that the long endured miseries would be shortly at an end. Wherefore all the Temples were set open; and an holy day appointed for thanksgiving and supplication to their gods. *Laelius* was accompanied with Embassadors from King *Masaniassa*: who gratulating the happy successe of the *Romans* in their *African* war, and giving thanks unto the Senate for the benefits done by *Scipio* unto their Master, made request for the *Numidians*, such as were now his subjects and prisoners in *Rome*, that they might be bestowed upon him, who by rendering them to liberty, should do an act very plausible, that would make him gracious among his people in the beginning of his reign. The *Roman* Senate were not behinde with *Masaniassa* in complement: but shewing themselves to be highly pleased with all that *Scipio* had done, and should do for him, they called him King again; released his *Numidians* that were captives; and sent him two purple Cassocks, that had each of them one gold button, with such other presents, as in time of their poverty might serve to testify their good will. Scarcely were these and *Laelius* gone from *Rome*, when the newes came, that Embassadors from *Carthage* were arrived to desire peace. These Embassadors

were

were not admitted into the City, but were lodged without: untill *Laelius* being sent for, came back from *Ostia*, to be present when their demands were to be heard. Then was audience given them in the Temple of *Bellona*; that stood in the Suburbs. The errand of these Embassadors was peace, but the meaning of them and of their City, was only to win time, and get respite for war; untill *Hannibal* and *Mago* should come out of *Italy*, either to chafe the *Romans* out of *Africk*, or to obtain peace for *Carthage*, by terror of their great names and Armies, upon more easie conditions. Wherefore they made an idle discourse of the League, that was concluded between them and *Lutatus Catulus*, at the end of the former war. This League they said, all things well considered, did still remain in force: neither had there since been any war at all, between the people of *Rome* and the *Carthaginians*. For it was only *Hannibal*, that without any leave from *Carthage*, had of his own head besieged and razed the Town of *Saguntum*: and after that adventured in like sort, without Commission, to pass the *Alpes*, and trouble (as he had done) the quiet of *Italy*. This being so, their Message was none other, than to desire, that the League before spoken of, made in the time of *Catulus*, might hereafter stand in force; as indeed it hitherto did, and ought to do. The Senators had cause to wonder at this tale, hearing these Embassadors make (as it were) a jest of a warre, that had been so terrible. Wherefore they asked them a great many questions, concerning that peace made by *Lutatus*, and other passages following between the two Cities. But they excused themselves, by their age: (for they were all young men) and said, That those things were beyond their knowledge and remembrance. Forthwith it appeared, That all was but collusion, and that they sought no other than to gain time, untill they might repair the war. Wherefore they were sent home in company of *Laelius*, without any conclusion at all of peace; and, in effect, without answer. This notwithstanding, we find in *Polybius*, That the Senate received advertisement from *Scipio*, of that which had passed between him and the *Carthaginians* in this Treaty of peace, approved the Conditions by him propounded, and gave him licence thereupon, to proceed unto conclusion. This may with good reason be believed, since it was not unknown, that if the war continued, all these goodly hopes must rest upon the most uncertain issue of one battel between *Hannibal* and *Scipio*: wherein if fortune should be averie to them, their forces in *Africk* were no better than quite lost.

Matters thus hanging in suspense, before the *Carthaginian* Embassadors came back from *Rome*, a Fleet out of *Sicily*, wherein were two hundred ships of burden, and thirty Gallies, being bound for *Africk*, to victual the *Roman* Camp, was overtaken by foul-weather at Sea, and hardly escaping wrack, was dispersed, and driven aground in divers parts of the Bay of *Carthage*, even in view, and under command of the City.

There was at that time, as we find in *Appian*, and may gather out of *Polybius*, a great dearth of victuals in *Carthage*, which caused the people to cry out upon their Magistrates, that they should not let such a booty escape them, saying, that the danger of famine was greater and worse, than of breaking Truce. Whether it were so that hunger urged them, or that they yielded to their own greedy desires: the multitude in *Carthage* understood (as it seems) that all this discourse of Peace in hand, was no better than meer mockery, and therefore cared not for observation of particular points, when they meant deceit in the whole. It was the manner in *Carthage*, as likewise in *Alexandria*, for all the rascality, together with women and boyes, to be meddling in uproars: the clamors of the boyes being in such tumults no lesse violent than of the men. Wherefore it is no marvel, if little regard were had of reason, or of honour, in any such commotion. A Fleet was sent out under *Asdrubal*, to gather up the dispersed *Roman* ships of burden (for the Gallies, by force of Oars, recovered the station whereto their camp adjoynd) and bring them into *Carthage*; which was done. *Scipio* was hereat much offended: not only for the losse; and for that the Town was thereby relieved; but for that by this breach of Truce, he foresaw the intention of the *Carthaginians* to renew the war, and put him to more trouble. Wherefore he sent Embassadors unto them, both to require satisfaction for the injury done; and to deterre them from entertaining any other hope, than in the peace which they had so much desired. These gave the *Carthaginians* to understand, That Letters were come from *Rome* unto *Scipio*, with allowance to conclude the Peace, upon those conditions which he had propounded. But (say they) we hold it strange, That ye, who so lately have cast your selves to the ground before us, & kissed our feet

after

\* Excerpt. 6 Po  
p. lib. 15,

\* App. de bell  
p. lib. 15,

\* Excerpt. 6 Po  
p. lib. 15,

after an unusuall manner of humility, confessing your selves to have perfidiously broken the League that was between us, and thereby to have deserved such punishment as is due unto Rebels; should so soon forget what ye then uttered, and run headlong again into the same crimes, for which ye acknowledged your selves worthy to be destroyed, having only recourse unto our mercy. We are not ignorant, that it is the confidence which ye repose in Hannibal, that thus emboldens you. Yet were it not amiss, that ye should consider, how long he hath been pent up in a corner of Italy, among the Brutians, where he is in a manner besieged, and unable to stir: so that ye are like to find his help wanting in your greatest need. Or let it be supposed, that he were now in Africk, and ready to give us battail: yet should it well agree with your wisdom, to doubt what might befall, remembering that he is a man, and not invincible. Now if it should happen that he were overcome, what refuge have ye left unto your selves against hereafter? What gods will ye either swear by, to be believed, or call upon in your misery? What words, and lamentable gesture will ye henceforth use, to move compassion? Surely ye have already wasted all your force of persuasion, and shall not again deceive us, if ye refuse the grace, whereof at this present ye are capable. It is no marvell though the Carthaginians were angry, when they heard themselves upbraided with the base demeanour of their Embassadors. For it was not the general opinion of the city, that the Truce was broken by themselves: though it had pleased Hanno, or such as were of his faction, to gratifie the Romans with all manner of submission; and to renounce not only their hope of the future, but all justification of matters past. And indeed it seems, that the Roman Embassadors were very much delighted, in the rehearsal of that point which was yielded unto them, as knowing that thereon depended the justice of the quarrell. But the Carthaginians took this in soill part, that hardly they could refrain from doing violence unto the men, who had used unto them such insolent speeches. Yet the fury of the multitude was in some sort appeased; either by Hanno, whom Appian, (I know not why) calls Hanno the Great: or by the very reverence, due unto the place of those that had uttered such liberal words. So they were dismissed in friendly sort, although it were without answer to their Proposition. There were also two gallies appointed for their safe convoy home; though with little intent of good unto their persons. Asdrubal was then in the mid-way, as men sailed from Carthage towards Africa. He, whether only desirous to please the multitude, of whose disposition he was informed, or whether directed by publick order to cut off these Embassadors in their way homeward, lay waiting for them behind a Cape, that was a little beyond the mouth of the river Bagradas. Their Convoy having brought them on the way, as farre as to the mouth of Bagradas, wished them a good voyage; and so took leave of them, as if they had been then in safety, since the Roman Camp was even in sight. The Embassadors took this in ill part; not as fearing any danger toward, but thinking themselves too much neglected, forasmuch as their attendants did so abruptly leave them. But no sooner had they doubled the Cape, than Asdrubal fell upon them, in such manner, as they might well discern his purpose; which was to have stemmed them. They rowed hard therefore: and being in a *Quinquereme*, that had more banks of Oares, than had any Gallie of Asdrubal, they slipped away, and made him over-shoot himself. Yet he gave them chase, and had well-near surprised them. But they discovered some Roman Companies on the shoar over against them, and therefore adventured to runne their Vessell aground: whereby they saved their own lives, though a great part of their company were slain, or hurt. This practice of the Carthaginians was inexcusable: and for the same cause perhaps were the Citizens heartned in such a dishonourable attempt, by those that were desirous to continue the war; that thereby they might be driven to studie nothing else, than how to get the victory, as having none other hope remaining. Yet likely it is, that the same fear, which had caused them to make such earnest suit for peace, would also have caused them to be better advised, than thus to abandon all hope of Treaty; had they not been given to understand, that Hannibal was already landed in Africk, in whom they reposed no small confidence, but verily perswaded themselves, that he would change their fortune, and teach the Romans to hold themselves contented with more easie conditions, than were those that Scipio, in the pride of his fortune, had of late propounded.

§. XX.

In what sort Hannibal spent the time after the battell of Metaurus: The doings of Mago in Italy. Hannibal and Mago called out of Italy. How the Romans were diversly affected by Hannibals departure.

Ever since the loss of that battell at Metaurus, Hannibal remained in the Countrey of the Brutians, waiting for another supply from Carthage. The Roman Consuls that succeeded unto Claudius and Livius, by whom Asdrubal was overcome and slain, were contented to be quiet all their year. Neither did Licinius the Colleague of Scipio, ought worthy of remembrance against Hannibal, being hindred by the pestilence that was in his Army. Sempronius the Consul, who followed Licinius; and Cn. Servilius Capio, who followed Sempronius, were earnestly bent to have done somewhat: but their diligence was in a manner fruitlesse. In some skirmishes with Hannibal, they had the better; in some the worse: and a few poor Towns they got from him, as it were by stealth; his care being more to preserve his Army, than to keep those places that were weak.

The Romans had at this time so many great pieces of work in hand, that their chief enemy was become not the chief part of their care. Their thoughts were mainly bent upon Africk, wherein they were at no small charges to maintain the Army, which (as was hoped) should bring the War to a short and happy conclusion. They stood nevertheless in much fear of Mago, the brother of Hannibal: who took exceeding pains among the Ligurians and Gauls to raise an Army, wherewith to kindle anew the War in Italy, that began to wax cold. Mago solicited also the Hertrurians, and found them so ready to stir in his behalf, that if he could have entred their Countrey strong, it might have proved no less needfull for Scipio to returne home out of Africk, than shortly it was for Hannibal to make speed unto the defence of Carthage. These dangers caused the Romans to employ one of their Consuls or Proconsuls, with an Army, among the Hertrurians; another among the Gauls; and a third among the Ligurians: forasmuch as it was uncertain, upon which side Mago would break out. Being thus buied, it is no wonder though they forbore to overcharge Hannibal with any great power.

As for Mago, when things were in some readines for his setting forwards, he met in the Countrey of the Insubrians, which is about Milan, with M. Cornelius the Roman Proconsul, and P. Quinctilius Varus one of the Prætors. With these he fought a battell, wherein though his vertue shewed it self worthy of his Father and Brethren; yet his fortune was Carthaginian. The fight continued a long while doubtfull; in such sort that the Roman Commanders began to distrust the issue. Wherefore Quinctilius the Prætor, taking unto him all the Roman Horse, thought to have shaken the Enemies to pieces. The Legions at the same time gave a loud shout: & strained themselves hard, as if at that brunt the victory should have been carried before them. But Mago opposed his Elephants to the Horse: the service of those beasts being fitter for such use, than against the Squadrons of Foot. The figure, sent and braying of these Elephants, did so affright the Horse, that they started aside, and were scattered over the field; their Riders being unable to manage them. Hereby the Numidians got advantage upon them: whose manner of fight was more available against those that were loose, than against the troupes that were close and thick. Then fell the Elephants upon the Legions: which entertained them after the accustomed manner, with a shower of darts, and killed four of them; causing all the rest to give back. This notwithstanding, the same Legions were so vehemently pressed by the Enemy; that more for shame of running away, than by any great force to make resistance, they held their ground. The Proconsul therefore brought up those forces, which he had kept unto the last, to succour where need should most require. Against these, Mago employed some of his Gauls, whom he had in readines for the like occasion. But the Gauls discharged their parts very ill. They were soon beaten off, and recoiled so hastily, that they brought fear upon all the rest. When Mago saw that his men began to shrink, He put himself in the head of his Army; and held them so well to it, that keeping their order, they made a fair Retreat, with their faces toward the Enemy. But at length he received a grievous wound in his thigh; whereof shortly after he dyed. He was taken up, and carried out of danger by some of his owne

men: the rest of them, after little further resistance, provided every one for himself: So the *Romans* obtained victory, not without great cost: as purchasing the death of about five thousand enemies, with the loss of two thousand and three hundred of the *Prætors* Army, besides those that dyed of the *Proconuls* Legions; also besides divers Colonels, Captains, and Gentlemen of mark that fell in this hot piece of service. Neither were there any prisoners taken; whereby it may seem that the Enemies did not fall to rout, before they had recovered some ground that might assure them from pursuit. However it were, this victory would have much imported for the assurance of *Italy*, if the State of *Carthage* could longer have permitted these valiant sonnes of *Amilcar* to abide therein. But *Mago* with-drawing himself (by easie journeys, because of his wound) into *Liguria*, found there Embassadors from *Carthage* attending him: who gave him to understand the pleasure of their City, which was, That both he and *Hannibal* should presently repair home with all their forces; not staying any longer to think upon the conquest of *Italy*, since *Carthage* it self was ready to be lost. He obeyed this Commandement, and imbarqued thortly his Army, but dyed of his wound about *Sardinia*, in the way homewards.

About the same time *Hannibal* received the like command from *Carthage*, to returne into *Africk*. He heard it with great impatience; gnashing his teeth, and groaning, and hardly keeping in the tears, that were ready to burst out, whilst the Embassadors were delivering their errand. When their message was done; He told them, That *this was yet plain dealing*. For, said He, *They that now directly bid me come home, have long agoe done their best to hale me out of Italy; though more closely and crookedly they went to work, by stopping the supply that should have enabled me to manage the War here*. Scipio therefore shall not need to brag, that he hath drawn me home by the heels: it is *Hanno* that hath wrought this noble feat, & overbhelmed the bowle of the *Barchines*, for lack of other means to do it, with the ruine of *Carthage*. He had before prepared a Fleet in readines, doubting that which after came to pass: wherein he imbarqued, besides his own men, as many of the *Italians* as were content to be partakers of his fortune. Many there were, that shrunk back from him, and refused to do service in this expedition: of whom, such as he could take, he slew; not sparing those that fled into the Temple of *Juno Lacinia*, which had been held an inviolable Sanctuary unto that day. He was indeed then wholly transported with rage; and departed out of *Italy* no less passionate, than men are wont to be, when they leave their own Countreys to go into exile. He looked back unto the shore: accusing both gods and men; and cursing his own dulnesse, in that he had not led his Army from *Canna*, nor and bloudy as it was, directly unto the wals of *Rome*. With such vexation of spirit he quitted the possession of *Italy*: wherein he had lived almost half his time.

If it could have been foretold unto the *Romans*, in the first beginning of this Warre, with what exceeding joy in times following they should entertain the newes of *Hannibal*'s departure out of *Italy*: they would (I think) lesse earnestly have pressed the *Carthaginians* to send him thither. When sure advertisement was brought unto the City, that *Hannibal* was gone with all his Army: an Holy-day was appointed for thanksgiving unto their gods; and extraordinary great sacrifices publickly made, for joy of such happy tydings. Yet old *Q. Fabius* was of opinion, That the danger did still remain the same, though the place were changed: for that *Hannibal* at his coming into *Africk*, would find *P. Scipio* other manner of work, than he had been troubled with at any time before; and would do greater matters in his own Country, than ever he was able to performe abroad in a land of strangers. The remove of the War from their own doors, and the conceit of that victory for which they hoped; was enough to make them presume further, than at other times they would have done. When therefore the *Saguntine* Embassadors brought unto them a great mass of Gold and Silver, together with some Agents of the *Carthaginians* taken by them in *Spain*: only the *Carthaginian* prisoners were accepted, the treasure was rendred back unto the *Saguntines* that had surprised it. Upon like confidence of the future, a little before this, order was taken for the repayment of those monies that had bin borrowed in time of more necessity from private men. Hence also proceeded the severe chastisement laid upon those 12. Colonies, that for want either of means or of good will, had refused to give aid to the *Romans*. They were commanded, and enforced to give double the number of Foot to that which they had

had been wont to set out for the Wars, with a proportion of Horse answerable to the very most of their ability. So confident were the *Romans* grown, though their wealth were not as yet futable to the greatness of their spirit, upon the good success of the battell at *Metaurus*, and the hopes which they reposed in *Scipio*. All this notwithstanding, when they considered more nearly of that which might happen: and were informed that the terrible Army, whereof *Italy* had been few daies since discharged, was landed safe in *Africk*: they began to revolve a thousand fearful matters in their heads, and to stand in doubt, lest *Q. Fabius* (who died about the same time) would be found a true Prophet. For, bethinking themselves of that which might comfort them in their hopes: they found in the victories against *Syphax* & *Asdrubal* no specialty of such great worth, as might promise the like success against another manner of Generall, followed by other manner of men, than were either of those two. The *Numidian* King had been wont to bring into the field a rascall multitude of half skallions, that were good for nothing, being himself a fit Captain for such Souldiers. Likewise *Asdrubal* the son of *Cecilio* was a Commander well thought of by the *Carthaginian* Senate, but otherwise, one that in the field was only good at saving himself by a swift retreat. But now there came an Army of men, hardened from their childhood with incredible patience, fleshed many hundred times in *Roman* blood, and wearing the spoils, not only of good Souldiers, but of brave Captains, by them slain. Such talk used the people of *Rome*, saying, That *Scipio* was like to meet in battell with many that had slain *Roman* Prætors, yea, and Consuls with their own hands; with many that had been first in getting over the Trenches of severall *Roman* Camps, or in winning the tops of wals at the siege of towns; briefly, that he should now be opposed by an Army, as good as ever had served in war, and following the dreadful name of *Hannibal*.

## §. XXI.

*Hannibal* in *Africk* prepares to fight with *Scipio*; treats with him about peace in vain; loseth a battell at *Nedagara*, and persuades the *Carthaginians* to sue for peace. Of the peace granted from *Rome* to *Carthage*.

**H** *Hannibal* disembarked his Army at *Leptis*, almost an hundred miles from *Carthage*, Eastward from the Headland of *Mercure*, and somewhat more than one degree to the South. He was ill provided of Horse; which it was not easie for him to transport out of *Italy*. Therefore it beloveth him to land, as he did, somewhat farre from the enemy; that he might furnish himself of these and the like needfull helps against the day of battell. From *Leptis* he passed on to *Adrumetum*, and so along through the In-land Country gathering friends unto him by the way. *Tycheus* a *Numidian* Prince, and familiar friend of *Syphax*, was said to have in those dayes the best Horses of service, that were to be found in *Africk*. Him therefore did *Hannibal* allure unto his party: making him understand, that if the *Romans* got the victory, it should be easie for *Masaniassa*, by their countenance and help to oppress both him, and as many other of the neighbour Princes as hindered his prospect. This argument, and the fame of him that used it, prevailed with *Tycheus*, who shortly after brought unto the *Carthaginian* two thousand Horse. *Appian* further adds, That *Mecetillus*, (the same who had made himself Protector over *Masaniassa* his Cousins; and was Head of a Family, and adverse to the *Numidian* Kings of that race) brought to *Hannibal* another thousand Horse: as likewise, that *Vermina* the Son of *Syphax*, holding a great part of his Fathers Kingdome, began at the same time to assail the places that yielded obedience to *Masaniassa*. This *Vermina*, as we find in *Livy*, came with more than 16. thousand men (for he lost more than so many) to succour *Hannibal* when it was too late.

The *Carthaginians* were at this time in such hard estate, or at least so impatient of the state wherein they were; that they could not attend the leisure of those preparations, which would have made the victory assured. When they considered the worth of *Hannibal*, and the greatness of his AAs: it offended them to think, that they had been so base as to make humble suit unto the *Romans* for peace; whilst they had such a brave Champion alive, to maintain their cause by Warre. But when as they bethought themselves of their own sufferings, which, for want of *Roman* magnanimity to endure them,

them appeared greater than indeed they were: then cryed they out earnestly that it was no time to linger, but presently to fight; that so they might see an end of these troubles, either good or bad: and to this purpose they sent their Mandates to *Hannibal*: requiring him without any further protraction, to do what he could doe out of hand. *Hannibal* made answer, That they were his good Lords, and had power to dispose of him and his Army: but since he was Generall of their forces, He thought it reasonable that they should suffer him to do as a Generall ought to do; and to chosse his own times. Nevertheless, to give them satisfaction, He made great marches to *Zama*; and there encamped.

The breach of Truce made by the *Carthaginians*: The violence done to his Embassadors: and the news of *Hannibal* his being landed in *Africk*, made *Scipio* to understand the resolution of the *Carthaginians*, which was, not to yeeld unto any conditions unprofitable for themselves, as long as they were able to make resistance. Wherefore he sent unto *Masanissa*: and informed him of all that was fallen out, praying him to come away with speed, and lay all other business apart. Ten *Roman* Companies, of Horse and Foot together, *Masanissa* had with him: that were lent unto him by *Scipio*, to do him service in the establishing and enlarging of his Kingdom. But he well understood, that those and many more besides all his own forces, would but little avail him; if *Hannibal* should drive the *Romans* out of *Africk*. Wherefore taking such order as he could upon the sudden, for the safety of his own kingdom; with four thousand Horse, and six thousand Foot, he made all haste unto *Scipio*.

Soon after the beginning of these new troubles, the *Carthaginian* Embassadors that had been at *Rome*, returned back unto the conduct of *Laelius* and *Fulvius*: who brought them safe to the *Roman* Camp. There when they arrived & understood what had lately passed, especially how their Citizens had behaved themselves towards the *Roman* Embassadors: they made little doubt, how their own heads should answer for such notorious outrage. To confirm them in this opinion:

*M. Babius* one of the late Embassadors that had bin in *Carthage*, being left by *Scipio* to take charge of the Camp, laid hands upon them and detained them; sending word unto his Generall, who was gone abroad to make War in the Countrey, that he had them in his power, and that now the *Carthaginians* might be repaid in their own Coin, for the injury by them lately done. *Scipio* was very glad to hear of this, and commanded *Babius* to use them with all possible courtesie, and send them safe home. By thus doing, He brake the hearts of his enemies; & caused them to acknowledge themselves (which was a great victory) far less honourable than the *Romans*. This notwithstanding, he made more cruel War upon them than before: taking their Towns by force; and putting them to sack, without hearkning to any Composition. It was the manner of the *Romans*, as often as they took a Town by assault, to put all that came in their way to the sword, whatsoever they were, without regard. This they did, to make themselves terrible: and the better to work such impression in the minds of those, with whom they had to do, they used oftentimes to kill the very Dogs and other Beasts, that ran athwart them in the streets; hewing their bodies asunder as men delighted in shedding of blood. This being their practice at other times: it is likely that now they omitted no piece of cruelty; when they meant to give proof of their vehement indignation, and revengefull minds, for the injuries received. Hence it partly grew, that the *Carthaginians* were so earnest in pressing *Hannibal* to fight.

*Hannibal* being incamped at *Zama*, sent forth his Scouts and Spies, to discover where the *Romans* lay, what they were doing, and as much as might be, of their demeanour. Some of these were taken & brought unto *Scipio*: who in stead of trussing them up, gave them free leave to view his Camp at pleasure, appointing ore to conduct them up and down, and shew them whatsoever they desired. This done, He gave them leave to depart; & sent them away safe unto their Generall. *Hannibal* understanding this, admired the bravery and courage of his enemy: with whom on the sudden he grew desirous to have an Enter-view, and personall conference; and signified so much unto him by a messenger sent of purpose. Of this motion the *Roman* liked well: and returned answer, that He would meet him shortly in a place convenient. The next day *Masanissa* came with his Army: whom *Scipio* taking with him, removed unto a Town called *Nedagara*; near unto which he fate down, in a place otherwise commodious, and close

Excerpt. 2. P.  
108.10.10.

by a water, that might opportunely serve his Camp. Thence he sent word unto the *Carthaginians*, That the time and place did fitly serve, if he had ought to say to him. *Hannibal* thereupon removed from *Zama*, and came within four miles of the enemy: where he incamped well to his own good liking in all things else; excepting that his men were driven to take much pains, in fetching their water somewhat farre off. Then was order taken for their meeting: and the two Generalls each of them with a troop of Horse, rode forth of their Camps, till they came unto a piece of ground; which was before well searched for fear of ambush. There they will their followers to stand off: and themselves with each of them one Interpreter, encountered each other in the mid-way between their Companies. They remained a while silent, viewing one the other with mutuall admiration. Then began the *Carthaginian*, saluting the *Roman*, to deliver his minde to this effect: That it had been better both for *Carthage*, and *Rome*, if they could have limited & contained their ambition within the shores of *Africk* and of *Italy*; for that the Countreys of *Sicil* and of *Spain*, about which their fathers and themselves had driven, were no sufficient recompence for so many Fleets as had been lost, and of so much blood as had been shed, in making those costly purchases. But since things past could not be recalled: He said, That it was meet for them to consider, unto what extreme dangers their own Cities had been exposed, by the greedy desire of extending their Empires abroad; and that it was even time for them now at length to make an end of their obnoxious contention, and pray the gods to endue them with greater wisdom hereafter. And to such peaceable disposition, He affirmed that his own years, and long tryall of Fortune, both good and evill, had made him inclinable. But much he feared, that *Scipio*, by want of the like experience, might rather fixe his minde upon uncertain hopes, than upon a contemplation of that mutability, whereto all humane affairs are subject. Yet (said he) mine own example may peradventure suffice to teach thee moderation. For I am that same *Hannibal*, who after my victory at *Cannae*, won the greatest part of *Italy*: and devided with my self, what I should do with your City of *Rome*, which I hoped verily to have taken. Once I brought mine army to your walls, as thou hast since brought thine to ours of *Carthage*: but now, see the change! I stand here entreating thee to grant us peace. This may serve as a document of Fortunes instability. I have fought with thy father *Scipio*: He was the first of the *Roman* Generalls that ever met me in the field. I did then little think, that the time would come, that I should have such business, as now at the present, with his son. But this is even one of Fortunes pageants, whereof she hath many. And thou must have experience of the like in thy self, who knowest how soon? Think upon *M. Atilius*: If he would have hearkned unto such persuasions, as I now use to thee, he might have returned home to *Rome* an happy man, and so might thou doe now, if any reasonable offer will give thee satisfaction. How saist thou? Canst thou be contented, that all *Spain*, *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, and whatsoever Islands else are situate between *Italy* and *Africk* be abandoned by the *Carthaginians* for ever, and left unto the *Romans*, to bear dominion therein? Thou shalt have glory enough by effecting this much: and the *Romans* may well be glad of such a bargain. As for us, our own quiet shall henceforth give us contentment. And the same contentment of ours, shall make us faithfully observe the peace with you. But if thou thinkest all too little, I must desire thee to ponder well how great an hazard thou must undergoe for obtaining a very little more, than that which thou must have without contention. It is now in thine own power to lay hold upon good fortune, if it please thee: stay but untill to morrow night, and thou must take such fortune as it please the gods. The issue of battail is uncertain, and many times beguileth expectation. Men and steel we shall each of us bring into the field, but of the victory neither of us hath assurance. Let us therefore without more ado make peace. And do not tell me that some false-hearted Citizens of ours dealt fraudulently of late in the like treaty: It is I *Hannibal* that now desire peace with thee, which I would never do, if I thought it not expedient for my countrey. And thinking it expedient, I will always maintain it, like as I have maintained, unto my power, as long as the gods did not envie me, the war by me begun.

Hereunto *Scipio* made answer, That it was no ambitious desire of ruling in *Sicil* and in *Spain* which had moved the *Romans* to enter into this or the former War: but that the defence of the *Mamertines*, and afterwards of the *Saguntines*, their confederates, had caused them to put on those armes; which the gods by the final issue of the Wars had approved, and would approve to be most just. As for the mutability of Fortune,

he said, that he was not thereof ignorant; and that without any note of insolence or overweening, he might well refuse the conditions offered. For was it not plain that all these Countries, with which the Carthaginians now so willingly departed, were already won from the Romans? If, said he, these conditions had bin propounded whilst as yet ye detained some part of Italy, they might peradventure not have been rejected. But as the case now stands, I see no reason why I should remit unto you any one piece of these my former demands, to which the Carthaginians have yielded already, and thought me to be gracious in dealing so moderately. Rather I say, that the injuries which they have done me since, have made them unworthy of obtaining peace upon so friendly terms. But I cannot blame thee, Hannibal, though thou wouldst be glad to make thy Citizens understand, from how much of their burden they are by thy means eased. Only thou must think, that in like sort it concerns me in honour not to let them be gainers or savers by the wrongs which they have done of late. Thou knowest well, that besides those offers which thou here hast made, they were well contented to restore unto us ransom-free, all prisoners that they have of ours, to pay us five thousand talents, to deliver up their Gallies, and to deliver hostages for assurance of fair dealing. And must they now be discharged of all this by their breach of truce, their spoiling of our fleet, and their violating our embassadours? No so. But if they can be contented, besides all this, to make such amends as I shall require, for these injuries newly done, then will I take advice with my counsell what answer to give you; otherwise you may even prepare for war, and blame your own selves for that I have denied you peace.

Hereupon they brake off: and returned each to his own Camp, with no other neues than war; bidding their Souldiers prepare for a battell, wherein should be decided the quarrell between Rome and Carthage. The next morning at break of day they issued into the field: a notable march; and such as hath very seldom been found; whether we regard the Generals, their Armies, the two Cities that contended, or the great importance of the battell at hand. Scipio ordered his men after the Roman manner: placing first the *Hastati*, divided into their Maniples, or small Battalions, with a reasonable distance between them: Not far behind these followed the *Principes*, likewise divided; and so after them the *Triarii*. But herein Scipio altered a little the ordinary custome of the Romans: He placed not the Maniples of his *Principes* opposite unto the void spaces between the *Hastati*; that so the *Hastati*, as was usual, might fall back between the *Principes*; but he placed them directly one behind another, as it were, in File. This he did, because of the Elephants, whereof Hannibal had many. For of those beasts the danger was lesse whilst there was open way to let them through. Therefore he took such order, that when they had passed through the spaces between the first Battalions, they should not come upon the *Principes* in Front. Unto his *Velites*, or those of the light armature that were to begin the fight, he gave direction, that when they found themselves to be overcharged, either by the Enemies, or (which was most to be feared) by the Elephants, they should run back through those lanes that were between the Maniples; and that those which were swiftest, or otherwise best able, should continue on their flight, until they were got behind all their own Army; thereby leaving room enough unto those that were wounded, or cast behind, to save themselves on the void ground, that was betwixt the first and second, or the second and third batels, without cloying up the way between the Maniples, which he desired to keep open. His Italian horse he placed in the left wing, under C. Lelius. In the right wing was Masaniissa with his Numidians. He himself riding up and down, exhorted his men to do valiantly; using words, not many, but forcible. He bade them remember what they had achieved, since their coming into *Africk*. He told them, that if this day were theirs, the Warre was at an end: and that their victory in this War, should make them Lords of all the World, for that afterwards, none would be found able to resist them. On the contrary, if they were beaten, he asked them whither they would flee. They were far from home, yea, and far from their own standing Camp: neither was there any place in *Africk*, that would give them shelter: if they fell into the Carthaginians hands, they knew what to expect. And therefore there was none other way, but death or victory: unless they would live like wretched slaves under most mercilesse enemies. In such necessity, he said, that they which consider themselves to be, and take resolution answerable therunto, have never been known to fail of getting victory.

Hannibal on the other side placed his Elephants, that were more than fourscore, in Front

Front of his Battell. Next behind these, he made his Vanguard all of Mercenaries, *Ligurians*, *Gauls*, *Baleares*, and *Moors*. Then followed his Battell, which was of Carthaginians & Africans, more interested in the quarrel than were those Mercenaries; though not so good souldiers: but to help (if it might be) their want of courage, they had with them four thousand Macedonians, lately sent from King Philip. More than the space of a furlong behind these came his Rereward, consisting of those brave Souldiers which had served him in his Italian wars; and were the only men, in whom he reposed any confidence. Opposite to Lelius, in his own right wing he bestowed the Carthaginian Horse. Trychaus and the Numidians he placed in his left wing against Masaniissa. He was indeed farre too weak for the Enemy in Horse, both in number and in goodnesse. For Trychaus and Metellus had no more than three thousand; and those not so well exercised, as were the four thousand of Masaniissa. The Carthaginians also were no more, nor none other than such as could be levied in the hast of a few dayes; and the remainder of those, that had of late been often vanquished, and accustomed to flye. But it was no time for Hannibal, neither had he perhaps authority, to make these his companions alight and serve on foot, setting better men in their saddles. All that he could have done, was to stay a little longer, and expect more help. Had Vermina the son of Syphax come thither, as he did in few dayes after, with sixteen thousand and upwards, the most of them Horse, the advantage of number might have served well to supply all other defect. Yet since the Lords of Carthage would brook no delay, Hannibal must be faine to comfort himself with the hope that he reposed in his old Italian souldiers; whose vertue had wrought greater wonders, when it was more strongly opposed. He encouraged therefore his men, with words agreeable to their several conditions: promising unto the Mercenaries bountifull rewards, threatening the Carthaginians with inevitable servitude if they lost that day: but especially animating his old fellow-souldiers, by the many victories which they had obtained against far greater numbers. He bade them to look upon the Enemies, and make an estimate, whether they were any thing like so many as that huge Army which they had slaughtered at Cannae. He willed them to remember, That it was one P. Scipio, even the father of this man, whom they had first of all compelled to run away. He told them, that these Legions, which they even beheld, were for the most part of them, the very worst of the Roman Souldiers; yonder such, as for their dauntless fight out of sundry batels, could no longer be trusted to bear Armes in their own Country. As for the rest, they were young men, the sons of Cowards, and bred up in the continual fear of those weapons, by which their fathers were daily slain or chased. Wherefore he intreated these his old companions, upon whose vertue he meant wholly to repose himself, that they would this day strive to make good their honour, and to purchase the fame of men invincible.

Such exhortations used the two Generals before the fight. When they drew near together, the Numidian horsemen on both sides began to skirmish. The Trumpets, and other instruments of war, sounded to battell: and Hannibal commanded his Elephants to break upon the Romans. Of these Elephants (as they were always an uncertain kinde of help) those that stood near unto the point of the left wing, turned back for fear: and ran upon their own Numidian horse, which they affrighted and disordered. Masaniissa espying this, gave charge upon the same Numidians; and not suffering them to re-ally themselves, drave them quite out of the field. The rest of the beasts made a great spoil of the Roman Velites, whom they followed into the spaces between the Maniples: but without any harme to the Battalions themselves; which gave them open way, accordingly as Scipio had well provided. Divers of them receiving many wounds, and growing therewith furious, could no longer be governed; but ran back upon the right point of their own battell, and beyond that into the open field. Herewithall they disordered the Carthaginian Horse which were in that wing: against whom they gave to Lelius the same advantage that Masaniissa had against the Numidians; which he used in like sort. In the mean while, the batels of foot advanced, and drew near together with a slow and stately pace, till they were almost within a weapons cast: at what time they gave a shout, and ran one at the other. The Mercenaries for a time seemed both in audacity, and in quicknesse to have the better of the Romans; wounding many, and doing more harme, than they took. But the Roman discipline after a while prevailed against the boisterous violence of these untrained Barbarians. Whereunto it helped not a little, that the battell



of the *Principes*, following somewhat near after the *Hastati*, encouraged their fellows; and shewed themselves ready, if need were, to relieve them. Contrariwise, the Mercenaries, received no manner of help or comfort, from those that should have seconded them. For the new-leaved *Carthaginians* and *Africans*, when they saw their hired Souldiers give back, did also themselves retire. This caused the *Ligurians*, *Gauls*, and the rest, to think themselves betrayed: whereupon they inclined unto flight. The *Carthaginian* Battell was herewith more terrified than before, so as it refused to give way unto the Mercenaries for their safe retreat, and yet withall forbore to make head against the Enemies, that pursued them. It was no time to aske them what they meant by this: Fear and Indignation caused those that were at once chased by the *Romans*, and betrayed, as they thought, by their own fellows, to turne their armes with an heedlesse fury againe both the one and the other. Thus were many of the *Carthaginians* beaten down and slain, through their own indiscretion, by their own Mercenaries. The *Roman Hastati* in like sort, fighting with desperate men in a throng, had their hands so full of work, that the *Principes* were faine to come up unto them, and help to over-bear this great medley of enemies, that were together by the ears among themselves. In this place was made a great slaughter, both of the Mercenaries and of the *Carthaginians*: which, hindering one another, could neither fight, nor easily flye. Such of them as escaped, ran towards *Hannibal*: who kept his ground, and would not stir one foot, to help or save these Run-aways. He caused his men to bend their Pikes at those of his own side, that would have rushed upon him: whom he thereby compelled to turn aside beyond his battell, and save themselves in the open field. The ground, over which the *Romans* were now to march, ere they could meet with *Hannibal*, was covered with heaps of dead bodies and weapons; and so slippery with blood, that *Scipio* began to stand in great doubt, lest the orders of his Battalions should be dissolved in passing that way. In such case, if he should fight with that warlike Army, which he saw before him, remaining yet entire, and without fear expecting him; He might be well assured to receive a notable overthrow. He caused therefore the *Hastati* to make a stand there where they were, opposite to the main battell of the *Hannibalsians*. Then drawing up his *Principes* and *Triarii*, he placed them, when they had overcome the bad way, all in one Front with the *Hastati*, and made of them his two Cornets. This done, he advanced towards *Hannibal*: who entertained him after another manner, than ever he had been received in his life before. All the dayes work till now, seemed to have been a matter of pastime, in regard of the sharp Conflict, that was maintained between these notable Souldiers. The *Romans* were encouraged by their having prevailed all the day before: they were also far the more in number. But these old Souldiers of *Hannibal* were fresh, (and perhaps the better men.) They fought with such obstinate resolution, that no man gave back one foot; but rather chose to die on the ground whereon he stood. So that, after a long time, it was uncertain which part had the worse: unless it may seem, that the *Romans* were beginning to shrink; for as much as the return of 40

Excerpt 6 Po-  
lyb. lib. 15.

In this battell there dyed of the *Romans* fifteen hundred and upwards: on the *Carthaginian* side, above twenty thousand; besides as many that were taken; of whom, *Sopater* Captain of the *Macedonians* was one. The singular skill that *Hannibal* shewed in this his last fight, is highly commended by *Polybius*; and was acknowledged, as *Livie* reports, by *Scipio* himself. But the Enemies were too strong for him in Horse; and being enjoyned, as he was, by the State of *Carthage*, to take battell with such disadvantage, he could work no marvels. He saved himself with a few horse; and stayed not in his journey, till he came to *Adrumetum*. Thence he was sent for to *Carthage*; from which he had been absent six and thirty years. At his coming into the Senate, He said plainly, That there was none other way left, than to take such peace as could be gotten. Wherefore the *Carthaginians* not knowing what other course to take, resolved to send Embassadors again, and try the favour of *Scipio*, whose Armes they could not now resist.

*Scipio* having spoiled the Enemies Camp, returned back to *Vtica*: where he found *P. Lentulus* newly arrived, with fifty Gallies and an hundred Ships of burden. With this

this Fleet, and that which he had before, He thought it best to make towards *Carthage*: rather of purpose to terrifie the City, than with any hope to take it. His Legions he committed unto *Cn. Octavius*; whom he willed to meet him there by land. Then sending *Laelius* away to *Rome* with newes of the victory, he sail from *Vtica* towards *Carthage*. He was encountered on the way by ten Embassadors from the City: who bearing up with the admirall Gally, began to use the pittifull gesture of suppliants. But they received none other answer, than that they should meet him at *Tunes*, where he would give them audience. So rowing along before the City, and viewing it more in bravery, than with meaning to attempt it, he returned back to *Vtica*, and called back *Octavius* thither, with whom in person He set forwards to *Tunes*. As they were in their journey thither, they heard the newes, that *Vermina* the son of *Syphax*, was coming with an Army of more horse than Foot, to the succour of those that were already vanquished. This *Vermina* seems to have been both carelesse of getting intelligence how things passed, and very defective in all other duties requisite in the Commander of an Army. Part of the *Roman* too, with all their power of Horse, was sent against him: which did not only bear him, but so compass him in, that he hardly escaped himself with a few; leaving fifteen thousand of his followers dead behinde him, and twelve hundred taken prisoners. If this good company had been with *Hannibal* at *Nadagara*, they should have been far better conducted, and might well have changed the Fortune of the day; which the 50 *Carthaginians* lost by default of Horse. But God had otherwise determined. It is not to be doubted, that this victory, though it were no great access to the formers; yet served well to daunt the *Carthaginians*, and imprint in them the greater fear of *Scipio*. When he came to *Tunes*, there met him thirty Embassadors from *Carthage*: whose behaviour, though it was more pittifull than it had been before, yet procured it less commiseration, by reason of their late false dealing, after they had in like sort humbled themselves. Nevertheless it was considered, what a long and laborious work it would prove, to besiege the mighty City of *Carthage*. And particularly, *Scipio* stood in great doubt, lest the honour of this way, if it were protracted, should be taken out of his hands, and given to one of the Consuls. *Cn. Servilius Capio*, that Consul who had charge of the war against 50 *Hannibal* at such time as he departed out of *Italy*: was bold to pass over into the Isle of *Sicily* (as it were in chafe of *Hannibal* by him terrified and driven away) with a purpose thence to have proceeded into *Africa*; and taken from *Scipio* the command of the Army there. But a Dictator was chosen of purpose, to restrain the ambition of this Consul *Servilius*. After him followed *Tiberius Claudius*, who made suit for the same Province of *Africa*: and was therein so earnest, that though neither the Senate, nor People, would grant him his desire; yet he needs would be going, procuring only leave of the Senate, that he being Consul might joyn with *Scipio*, were it with no more than equall authority. But ere he could have his Fleet, and all things in a readines for the journey, where- in no man cared to further him, Winter came on, and he was only tost at Sea with 40 foul weather; first upon the Coast of *Hetruria*, and afterwards by *Sardinia*, where his Consulship expired, and so he returned home a private man. Then came the joyfull newes to *Rome*, of the victory obtained against *Hannibal*, and that the war was now even at an end. Yet was *Lentulus* the new Consul so passionate, in desiring *Africa* for his Province, That he said he would suffer nothing to pass in the Senate, until he had first his will. Much ado there was about this: and after many contentions, both in the Senate, and before the people, at last it was ordered, That if peace were granted, it should be granted by *Scipio*; if the war continued, *Scipio* should have command therein by Land, and the Consul at Sea. The ambition of these men, caused *Scipio* to give the more favourable answer unto the *Carthaginian* Embassadors. He willed them to consider 50 what they had deserved: and in regard thereof, to think themselves well dealt withal; in that he was contented to leave unto them their liberty and their own Lawes, without appointing any Governour over them, or Garrison to hold them in subjection; leaving also unto them their possessions in *Africa*, such as they were at the beginning of this war. As touching the rest he was at a point, that, before he either granted them peace or truce, they should make satisfaction for wrongs which they had done, whilst the late Treaty was in dependence. Hereunto if they would yeeld, then required He, That immediately they should deliver up to the *Romans* all prisoners, fugitives, & renegado's; that they had of theirs; likewise all their Gallies, excepting ten: & all their Elephants. That they should make

no warre at all thenceforth out of *Africk*, neither yet within *Africk*, without licence of the *Romans*: That the Countries, Towns, goods whatsoever, belonging any wise unto *Malania*, or to any of his Ancestors, which were in their possession, should be all by them restor'd unto him: That they should finde corn for the Roman Army, and wages for their Auxiliaries, during the time of Truce, untill the Peace were fully concluded: that they should pay ten thousand Talents of Silver, in the term of fifty years, by two hundred Talents a year, and that for offence of Conditions, they should give an hundred hostages: such as *Scipio* would choose, being none of them under fourteen years of age, nor above thirty.

With these conditions the Embassadors returned home, and reported them unto the City. They were very displeasing; and therefore one *Gesco* stood up to speak against them: and exhorted the people, who gave good attention, that they should not condescend unto such intolerable demands. But *Hannibal* perceiving this, and noting withall what favourable audience was given to this vain Oratour, by the unquiet, yet unwearlike Multitude, was bold to pull him down from his standing, by plain force. Hereat all the people murmured, as if their common liberty were too much wronged, by such insolence of this presumptuous Captain. Which *Hannibal* perceiving, rose up and spake unto them, saying, That they ought to pardon him, if he had done otherwise than the customes of the City would allow; forasmuch as he had been thence absent ever since he was a Boy of nine years old, untill he was now a man of five and forty. Having thus excus'd himself of the disorder, he discours'd unto them concerning the Peace: and perswaded them to accept it, as wanting ability to defend themselves, had the Demands of the Enemy been yet more rigorous. Finally, upon good advice, they resolv'd to yeeld unto the Conditions propounded by *Scipio*: to whom they paid out of hand five and twenty thousand pounds weight in Silver, in recompence of damages, and injuries by them done to his Fleet and Embassadors. *Scipio* granted them Truce for three moneths, in which time they might negotiate with the State of *Rome*, about confirmation of the League. But herewithall he gave injunction, that they should neither in the mean while send Embassadors any whither else, nor yet dismiss any Embassadors to them sent, without first making him acquainted what they were, and what their errand was.

At this time *Hanno*, and they of his Faction, were become wise and honourable men, by the miseries whereinto *Carthage* was fallen through their malicious counsels. *Asdrubal*, surnamed the *Kid*, a venerable man, and a great friend of *Hanno*, was chief of the Embassages which they sent to *Rome* for obtaining peace. They went thither in company of *Scipio* his Embassadors, who related unto the Senate and People these joyfull newes. About the same time arriv'd at *Rome* Embassadors from *Philip* King of *Macedon*: who, together with the *Carthaginians*, were fain to wait a while for audience, till the election of new Consuls then in hand was finished; and order taken, for the provinces of them, and the new Prætors. Then were the *Macedonian* Embassadors call'd into the Senate: who first answering unto some points, wherein the *Romans* had lately signified unto their King, that they found themselves grieved; returned the blame upon those *Greeks* themselves, that had made their complaint at *Rome*. Then accus'd they *Marcus Aurelius*: who being one of the three Embassadors, that had lately been sent from *Rome* unto King *Philip*, arriv'd in *Greece* behind his fellows, and there leaving men, made war upon the King, without any regard at all of the League, that was between him and the *Romans*. Further they desired of the Senate, That one *Sopater*, a *Macedonian* Gentleman, with other of their Country-men, that had lately serv'd *Hannibal* for Pay, and being taken prisoners in *Africk*, were kept in bonds by *Scipio*, might be releas'd and deliver'd unto them. Unto all this *M. Furius*, whom *Aurelius* had sent to *Rome* for that purpose, made a sharp answer. He said, that the *Greeks* which were confederate with *Rome*, endur'd so many injuries at the hands of *Philip*, that *M. Aurelius* was fain to stay behind, to help them as I might; which else were like to be brought under the Kings subjection. As for *Sopater*, he affirm'd him to be one of the Kings Counsell, and very inward with him: one that serv'd not for money, but carry'd money with him, and four thousand men, sent from the King to the aid of *Hannibal*. About these points, when the *Macedonian* Embassadors could make unto the Senate no good answer, they were willing to return, and tell their Master, That war he sought, and

and war he should find, if he proceeded as he had begun. For in two main points He had broken the League, that was between him and the *Romans*: first, in that he had wronged their Confederates; and secondly, in that he had aid'd their Enemies against them with men and money.

These quarrels with *Philip*, that promised to open a way into *Greece* and the Eastern Countreys, help'd well the *Carthaginian* Embassadors in their solicitation of Peace. They appear'd a very reverend company, when they enrr'd into the Senate: and *Asdrubal* above the rest was much respected, as one, whose good offices had kept the *Romans* from necessity of sending Embassadors to *Carthage*, upon the like errand. He liberally granted, that the justice of the quarrell had been wholly on the *Romans* side; saying, that it was the fault of some violent men, through which the Peace was broken. Yet could he not altogether excuse the City that had been too vehement in the prosecution of bad counsell. But if *Hanno* and himself might have had their wils, the *Carthaginians*, even at the best of their Fortune, should have granted the peace which they now desired. Herewithall he commended the moderation of the *Romans*, as no small argument of their valour; by which alwaies they had been victorious. To the same effect spake the rest of the Embassadors: all of them entreating to have the peace ratified; though some with more lamentable words than others, according to the diversity of their file. They had patience enough to endure such reproof of Perjury, as they themselves might have laid upon the *Romans*, if their diligence and fortune had been such as the *Romans* was. Among the rest, when one of the Senators demanded, by what gods they would swear to keep the peace hereafter: *Asdrubal* made answer, Even by the same gods, that are so severe unto those that violate their Leagues.

*Lenulus* the Consul, interposing the authority of his office, would have hindred the Senate from proceeding unto conclusion of peace; for that hereby he was like to lose the honour which he purpos'd to get by making war in *Africk*. But the matter was propounded unto the people, in whom rest'd the Sovereign Command of *Rome*; and by them refer'd wholly unto the pleasure of the Senate. So it was decreed, that *Scipio*, with ten Delegates, sent unto him from *Rome* of purpose, should make a League with the *Carthaginians*, upon such Conditions as seem'd best: which were none other, than the same which he had already propounded. For this favour the *Carthaginian* Embassadors humbly thanked the Senate; and crav'd licence, that they might visit their Count imen, which were prisoners in *Rome*: afterwards, that they might ranfome and carry home with them some that were their especial friends; of whom they gave in writing almost two hundred names. Whereupon the Senate ordain'd, that two hundred of those Prisoners, which the Embassadors would choose, should be sent over into *Africk*, and be freely restor'd to liberty by *Scipio*, when the peace was fully concluded. So they took leave, and return'd home, in company of the ten Delegates, that were appointed by the Senate to joyn with *Scipio* in commission.

At their coming into *Africk*, the peace was given, and accepted, without any controversy or disputation. The Prisoners, Fugitives and Renegado's were deliver'd up to *Scipio*: likewise the Gallies, and the Elephants. *Scipio* took more vengeance upon the Renegado's than upon the Fugitives; and upon those of the *Romans*, than upon the *Latines* or other *Italians*. The *Latines* he beheaded: the *Romans* he crucified. About the first payment of their money, the *Carthaginians* were somewhat troubled. For though perhaps their common Treasury could have spar'd two hundred Talents for the present; yet since the pension was annuall, and to continue fifty years: it was thought meet to lay the burden upon the Citizens. At the collection of the sum there was piteous lamentation, as if now the *Roman* yoke had begun to pinch them; so as many, even of the Senators, could not forbear weeping. Contrariwise, *Hannibal* could not refrain from laughter. For which when he was check'd by *Asdrubal Hædus*, and told, That it was worst of all beleeved him to laugh, since he had been the cause why all others did weep; He answer'd, That laughter did not alwaies proceed from joy; but sometimes from extremity of indignation: Yet said He, My laughter is more reasonable, and lesse absurd, than your tears. For ye should have wept when ye gave up your ships and Elephants, and when ye bound your own hands from the use of armes, without the good leave of the *Romans* first obtained. This miserable condition keeps us under, and holds us in assur'd servitude. But of these matters ye had no feeling. Now, when a little money is wrang out of your private purses,

purposes, ye have thereof some sense. God grant that the time com: not hereafter, wherein ye shall acknowledge, that it was the very least part of your misery for which ye have shed these tears. Thus discomfited Hannibal unto those, who tasting the bitter fruits of their own malicious counsell, repented when it was too late, and instead of cursing their own disorders, which had bred this grievous disease, accused the Physician, whose noble endeavours had been employed in procuring the remedy.

Scipio being to take leave of Africk, produced Masanissa, and magnified him in presence of the Army, with high commendations not undeservedly. To him also he assigned over those towns of King Syphax, which the Romans at that present held: wherein to say truth, he gave him but his due, and that which otherwise he knew not well how to bestow. But the love of the Romans, and friendship of Scipio, was fully answerable, now and hereafter, to all the deservings of this Numidian King. About Carthage there rested no more to be done. Wherefore the Romans embarked themselves for Sicily: where when they arrived at Lilybaeum, Scipio with some part of his Army took his way home to Rome by land, and sent the rest before him thither by Sea. His journey through Italy was no less glorious than any triumph: all the people thronging out of the Towns and Villages, to do him honour as he passed along. He entered the City in Triumph: neither was there ever before, or after, any triumph celebrated with so great joy of the people, as was this of Scipio; though, in bravery of the pomp, there were others in time shortly following, that exceeded this. Whether Syphax were carried through the City in this Triumph, and dyed soon after in prison; or whether he were dead a while before; it cannot be affirmed. Thus much may be avowed, That it was a barbarous custom of the Romans, to insult over the calamities of mighty Princes, by leading them contumeliously in Triumph; yea, though they were such, as had always made fair and courteous war. But hereof we shall have better example ere the same age passe. It was neither the person of Syphax, nor any other glory of the spectacle, that so much beautified the Triumph of Scipio; as did the contemplation of that grievous war past, whereof the Romans had bin in a manner without hope that ever they should see Italy free. This made them look cheerfully upon the Author of so great a conversion; and filled them with more joy, than they well could moderate. Wherefore they gave to Scipio the Title of the African: filling him by the name of that Province which he had subdued. This honourable kinde of surname, taken from a conquered Province, grew afterwards more common, and was usurped by men of less desert: especially by many of the Cæsars, who sometimes arrogated unto themselves the title of Countreys, wherein they had performed little or nothing; as if such glorious Attributes could have made them like in vertue unto Scipio the African.

Excerpt. Po.  
lib. 1. c. 6.

#### CHAP. IV.

40

Of Philip the father of Perseus King of Macedon: his first Acts and War with the Romans; by whom he was subdued.

##### §. I.

How the Romans grew acquainted in the East-Countries, and desirous of War there: The beginning of many Princes, with great Wars, at one time. The Aetolians over-run Peloponnesus, Philip and his Associates make war against the Aetolians, Alteration of the State in Sparta, The Aetolians invade Greece and Macedon, and are invaded at home by Philip.

50

Plus, in vita  
Berarii.



F the great similitude found in worldly events, the limitation of matter hath been assigned as a probable cause. For since Nature is confined unto a subject that is not unbounded; the works of Nature must needs be finite, and many of them resemble one the other. Now in those actions, that seem to have their whole dependance upon the will of man, we are less to wonder, if we finde lesse variety: since it is no great portion of things which is obnoxious

obnoxious unto humane power; and since they are the same affections, by which the wils of sundry men are over-ruled, in managing the affairs of our daily life. It may be observed in the change of Empires, before those times whereof we now write, how the Assyrians or Chaldeans invaded the kingdom of the Medes, with two hundred thousand Foot, and threescore thousand Horse: but failing in their intended conquest, they became subject within a while themselves unto the Medes and Persians. In like manner Darius, and after him Xerxes, fell upon the Greeks with such number of men, as might have seemed resistlesse. But after that the Persians were beaten home again, their Empire was never secure of the Greeks: who at all times of leisure from intestine Warre, devised upon that conquest the end, which finally they made under the great Alexander.

If Nabuchodonosor with his rough old Souldiers, had undertaken the Medes: or Cyrus with his well-trained Army, had made attempt upon Greece, the issue might, in humane reason, have been farre different. Yet would it then have been expedient for them to employ the travell and vertue of their men, rather than the greatnesse of their names against those people; that were no lesse valiant, though lesse renowned, than their own. For the menacing words used by Cyrus, and some small displeasures done to the Greeks (in which kinde it may be, that Nabuchodonosor likewise offended the Medes and Persians) were not so available to victory, as to draw on revenge in the future. Great Kingdomes, when they decay in strength, suffer as did the old Lion, for the oppression done in his youth; being pinched by the Wolfe, gored by the Bull, yea and kicked by the Ass. But Princes are often carried away from reason, by misunderstanding the language of Fame: and despising the vertue that makes little noise, adventure to provoke it against themselves; as if it were not possible that their own glory should be soiled by any of lesse noed excellence. Against the same stone, whereat Xerxes, and before him (as I take it) Evilmerodach, had stumbled, Pyrrhus the Epirot hath dasht his foot. He was not indeed the King of all Greece; though most of mark, and a better Souldier than any other Greekish King, when he entered into war against the Romans. This war he undertook as it were for his minds sake: having received no injury, but hoping by the glory of his name, and of the Greeks that served under him, to prevail so easily against the barbarous Romans, that they should only serve as a step to his further intended conquests of Sicily and Africk. But when the Romans by their victory against Pyrrhus, had found their own vertue to be of richer metall, than was the more shining valour of the Greeks: then did all the bravery of the Epirot (his Elephants and whatsoever else had served to make him terrible) serve only to make the Romans, in time following, to think more highly of themselves. For since they had overcome the best Warriour in Greece, even Him, that, being thus beaten by them, could in a year after Spain prevent

make himself Lord of Greece and Macedon: what should hinder them from the conquest of all those unwarlike Provinces, which in compasse of 12. years a Macedonian King of late memory had won? Certainly there was hereunto requisite no more, than to bring to their own devotion by some good means, the whole Country of Greece: all the rest, this done, would follow of it self. How to deal with the Greeks, Philip and Alexander had shewed away which, or perhaps a better, they might learn, by getting more acquaintance with the Nation.

When therefore the first Punick war was ended, which followed soon after the wars of Pyrrhus and of the Tarantines: then were the Romans at good leisure to hearken after newes in Greece; and to entertain any good occasion, that should be on that side presented. They had a io then a strong Fleet: and were become, though not otherwise very skilfull Mariners, yet good fighters at Sea. So it fell out as happily as could be wished, that the Illyrian Queen Teuta made at the same time cruell war upon the Greeks: wasting their Countrey, and lacking their Towns, only because they were unable to resist, though they had done her none offence. Into this quarrell if the Romans were desirous to enter; the Queen was not slow to give them cause. And their happy accomplishing of that war which they made with Her, was, in their own opinion, a matter not unworthy to make their Patronage to be desired by the Greeks. But no such thing happened: though they sent Embassadors, as it were to offer themselves; by signifying, that for love of Greece they had undertaken this Illyrian war. Thus began the first acquaintance betwixt the Greeks and Romans: which afterwards encreased very hastily, through the indiscretion of King Philip the Macedonian; whose busines

Lib. 5. c. 5. §. 7.

Kkkkk

with

with them, being now the subject of our story, it is meet that we should relate (though somewhat briefly) the beginning of his reign, and his first Actions. It was like to prove a busie time in the world, when, within the space of 4. years, new Kings began to reign in the most of all Countries known; and 3. of them young boies, in 3. of the greatest kingdomes. This hapned from the third year of the hundred thirty ninth Olympiad, unto the third of the Olympiad following. For in this time died *Seleucus Ceraunus* King of *Asia* and *Syria* in whose room succeeded his brother *Antiochus*, afterwards called the Great. *Ptolemy Philopater* succeeded in the Kingdom of *Egypt* unto his father *Euergetes*. And *Philip* the son of *Demetrius*, being 16. or 17. years old, received the Kingdom of *Macedon*, together with the Patronage of the *Achaens* and most of the *Greeks*, by the decease of his Uncle *Antigonus Dofon*, that was called the Tutor or Protector. About the same time a so was the like change in *Cappadocia*, *Lacedamon*, and the Countries about Mount *Taurus*. For *Ariarathes* then began his reign in *Cappadocia*. *Lycurgus* found means to make himself King over the *Lacedemonians*, whose Common-weal, since the flight of *Cleomenes*, had continued in a manner headlesse; and *Acheus*, a kinsman of *Antiochus*, but a Rebell unto him, occupied the Regions near unto Mount *Taurus*, and kept a while the State of a mighty King. Lastly, in the second and third years of the 100. and fortieth Olympiad it was, that open war brake out between *Rome* and *Carthage*, and that *Hannibal* began his great Invasion upon *Italy*. Those troubles of the Western world, which were indeed the greatest we have already followed unto an end: Of *Antiochus*, *Ptolemy*, and the rest, we shall speak hereafter, when the *Romans* find them out.

*Philip*, soon after the beginning of his reign, came into *Peloponnesus*; greatly desired of the *Achaens*, and many others his dependants. That Country, having freed it self by the help of *Antigonus* from the danger (accounted great) of an easie subjection unto *Cleomenes*, was now become no lesse obnoxious to the *Macedonian*, than it should have been to the *Spartans*; and therewithall it lay open unto the violence of the *Aetolians*, who despised even the *Macedonian* Kings, that were Patrons thereof. The *Aetolians* were no men to be idle, nor were much addicted unto any other Art than war. Therefore wanting employment, they fell upon the *Messenians* that were their own Clients, and (excepting the *Eleans*, that were anciently of their consanguinity) the only good friends which they had at the present in *Peloponnesus*. Their invasion was no lesse unexpected, than it was unjust: whereby with greater ease they made spoil of the Country; finding none prepared to make resistance. The *Achaens*, were called by the *Messenians* to help: which they did the more willingly; because the *Aetolians* passing without leave through their Territory, had (as was their manner) done what harm they listed. Old *Aratus* could hardly abide these *Aetolians*; as both knowing well their nature, and remembering the injuries, wherewith most ingratefully they had requited no small benefits done to them by the *Achaens*. He was therefore so hasty to fall upon this their Army, that he could hardly endure to stay few daies untill the time of his own Office came; being chosen Prætor of the *Achaens* for the year following. But his anger was greater than his courage: and he shewed himself a man fitter (as hath been already noted of him) for any other service, than leading of an Army. He suffered them to passe quietly along with their booty, through a part of the Country, wherein he might very easily have distressed them; and afterwards pressed them so near, when they had recovered ground of advantage, that they easily defeated all his Army. So they departed home rich, and well animated to return again. As for the *Achaens*, they got hereby only the friendship of the *Messenians*: with whom, by licence of King *Philip*, they made Confederacy. Shortly after, the *Aetolians* invaded *Peloponnesus* again; having no more to do, than to passe over the narrow Straights of the *Corinthian Bay*, called now the Gulph of *Lepanto*, where they might land in the Country of the *Eleans*. There joyned with them, in this their second invasion, a great number of the *Illyrians*: who neglecting that Condition imposed upon them by the *Romans*, of setting out no ships of war unto the coast of *Greece*: made bold to seek adventures again, and did great mischief. *Demetrius Phariurus*, a creature of the *Romans*, commanded a part of these *Illyrians*: who shortly repented him of this his voyage; which caused him to lose his Kingdom, as is shewed before. But this *Demetrius* went another way, & fell upon the Islands of the *Cyclades* in the *Aegean* sea: whence returning, he did some good offices for King *Philip*, or his friends. The rest of the *Illyrians* under *Scerdilaidas*, or *Scerdiletus*, having

Lib. 5. cap. 2.  
§. 6. libid.

Chap. 3. §. 1.

gotten what they could else-where by roving at Sea, accompanied the *Aetolians* into *Peloponnesus*: who made greater havock in the Country now, than in their former Expedition, and returned home without finding any resistance.

Of these things great complaint was made unto *Philip*, when he came to *Corinth*. And because men were desirous to satisfie themselves with some speedy revenge: there were that urged to have some grievous punishment laid upon the *Lacedemonians*; who were thought underhand to have favoured the *Aetolians*, in meer despite of the *Achaens* and *Macedonians*; by whom themselves had lately been subdued. It is true, that the *Lacedemonians* had been so affected: and (which was worse) at the arrivall of *Philip*, they slew such friends of his, as having checked their inclination, seemed likely to appeach them of the intended rebellion. Neither durst they well commit themselves to judgement: but intreated the King, that he would abstain from coming to them with an Army: since their Town was lately much disquieted with civil discord, which they hoped soon to appease, and meant alwayes to remain at his devotion. *Philip* was easily satisfied with this: not for that he (or rather old *Aratus*, who then wholly governed him) did mis-understand the *Lacedemonians*: but for that a greater work in hand, which ought not to be interrupted. There met at *Corinth* in presence of the King, the Embassadors of the *Achaens*, *Boeotians*, *Epirots*, and *Acarnanians*: all complaining upon the *Aetolians*; and desiring to have war decreed against them, by common assent. *Philip* sent his letters unto the *Aetolians*, requiring them to make ready their answer in some convenient time: if they could alledge any thing in excuse of that which they had done. They returned word, that a Diet should be holden at *Rhium* for that purpose: whither if it pleased him to come, or send, he should be well informed of the men and their whole meaning. The King prepared to have been there at the day. But when the *Aetolians* understood this for certain, they adjourned the Councell unto a further time: saying, That such weighty matters ought not to be handled, save in the great Parliament of all *Aetolia*. This trick of Law notwithstanding, open war was proclaimed against them. And they, as it were to shew how well they had deserved it, made election of *Scopas* to be their Prætor, that was Author of these Invasions made on *Peloponnesus*; and the only man, in a fort, upon whom they must have laid the blame of these actions, if they would have shifted it from the publick.

After this, *Philip* went unto *Macedon*, where he prepared busily for the war against the year following. He also assayed the *Illyrian*, *Scerdilaidas*, with fair words and promises; whom he easily won from the *Aetolian* side, forasmuch as the *Aetolians* had couzened him of his share, when he was partner with them in their late robberies. In like sort the *Achaens*, who had first of all others proclaimed the war in their own Country, sent unto the *Acarnanians*, *Epirots*, *Messenians*, and *Lacedemonians*: requesting them forthwith to declare themselves, and to denounce war unto the *Aetolians*; without staying (as it were) to await the event. Hereunto they received divers answers according to the qualities of those with whom they dealt. The *Acarnanians*, a free-hearted and valiant, though a small Nation, and bordering upon the *Aetolians*, of whom they stood in continual danger; said, that they could not honestly refuse to shew their faithfull meaning in that war, which was concluded by generall assent. The *Epirots* that were more mighty, were nevertheless more cunning and reserved: so that they stood upon a needles point, and desired to be held excused, untill *Philip* (of whose meaning they needed not to have made any doubt) should first proclaim the war. The *Messenians*, for whose cause the war was undertaken, excused themselves, by reason of a Town which the *Aetolians* held upon their borders, and said, that they durst not be over-bold, untill that bridle were taken out of their mouths. As for the *Lacedemonians*, the chief of them studied only, how to manage the treason for which their City had been so lately pardoned: and therefore dismissed the Embassadors of the Confederates, without any answer at all. They had three years together continued subject against their wills to the *Macedonians*, expecting still when *Cleomenes* should return out of *Egypt* to reign over them again, and maintain, as he was wont, the honour of their City. In this regard they chose not any Kings, but were contented with the rule of *Ephori*. Of these there were some, that thought the publique safety to consist, in holding their faith with the *Macedonian* that had preserved them. And hereto they referred all their counsails: bring perhaps a little moved with respect of the benefit, which might redound

Kkkkk 2

unt

unto themselves, by adhering firmly to those which at the present bore rule over them. Others, and those the greater part, were still devising, how to make all ready for *Cleomenes* against his return; and sought to join with the *Ætolians*, which were the most likely to give him strong assistance. The *Macedonian* faction had the more authority, and durst more freely speak their minds: but the contrary side was the more passionate, & spared not by murders or any other violent courses, to let forward their desire. Neither did it suffice, that about these times there came certain report of *Cleomenes* his death. For it was the liberty and honour of *Sparta*, which these intended: fancying unto themselves the glory of their Ancestors in such Ages past, as were not like to come again. *Cleomenes* was, they knew, the most able man to restore them unto their greatness and lustre; 10 which once he had in a manner performed: But since he was dead, and that, without injury to his well-deserving virtue, they might proceed to the election of new Kings: Kings they would have, and those of the race of *Hercules*, as in former times; for that without such helps, they must continue little better than subjects unto the *Macedonian*, and far less by him respected, than were the *Achaans*. Thus were they transported by contemplation of their old Nobility and fame. Some of the most working spirits among them, procured the *Ætolians* to send an Embassy to *Sparta*: which propounded the matter openly unto the people, whereof no one of the Citizens durst have made himself the Author. Much disputation, and hot, there was, between those of the *Macedonian* party, and these their opposites: in such wise that nothing could be concluded, until 20 by massacre or banishment of all, or the chief, that spake against the *Ætolians*, the diversity of opinion was taken quite away. Then forthwith a League was concluded between the *Lacedæmonians* and *Ætolians*: without all regard of the *Macedonians* or *Achaans*, who had spared the City, when they might have destroyed it. Then also they went in hand with the election of new Kings: wherein their diligence was so nice, and so regardless of their ancient Laves, as touching the choosing of the one King, that we may justly wonder, how they grew so careless in making choice of the other. In the one of their Royall Families they found *Agessipolis*, the son of *Agessipolis*, the son of King *Cleombrotus*: and him they admitted to reign over them, as their apparent to his grandfather. This *Agessipolis* was a young Boy, standing in need of a Guardian: and had 30 an Uncle, his Fathers brother, that was fit for the Government. Yet because the Law required, that the son, how young soever, should have his fathers whole right and title: the *Lacedæmonians*, though standing in need of a man, were so punctual in observation of the Law, that they made this child their King, and appointed his Uncle *Cleomenes* to be his Protector. But in the other branch of the Royall Family, though there was no want of heirs: yet would not the people trouble themselves about any of them, to examine the goodness of his Claim, but made election of one *Lycurgus*, who having no manner of title to the Kingdom, bestowed upon each of the *Ephori*, a Talent, and thereby made himself be saluted King of *Sparta*, and a Gentleman of the race of *Hercules*. This *Lycurgus*, to gratifie his Partisans, and to approve his worth by action, invaded the Country of the *Argives*: which lay open and unguarded, as in a time of 40 peace. There he did great spoil, and won divers Towns; whereof two he retained, and annexed unto the State of *Lacedæmon*. After such open hostility, the *Lacedæmonians* declared themselves on the *Ætolian* side; and proclaimed war against the *Achaans*.

Thus the beginnings of the war fell out much otherwise, than the *Achaans* and their Confederates had expected, when they first made preparation. *Philip* was not ready: the *Epirots* gave uncertain answer: the *Messenians* would not stir: all the burden must lye upon themselves and the poor *Acarnanians*, whom the *Ætolians*, by favour of the *Eleans*, could invade at pleasure, as they were like to do; and by help of 50 the *Lacedæmonians*, could assail on all parts at once. It was not long ere the *Ætolians*, passing over the Bay of *Corinth*, surprised the Town of *Ægira*: which if they could have held, they should thereby grievously have molested the *Achaans*, for that it stood in the mid-way between *Ægium* and *Sicyon*, two of their principall Cities, and gave open way into the heart of all their Country. But as *Ægira* was taken by surprise: so was it presently lost again, through greediness of spoile; whilst they that should have made it their first care, to assure the place unto themselves, by occupying the citadel and other pieces of strength, fell heedlessly to ransack private houses, and thereby gave 41

the Citizens leave to make head, by whom they were driven with great slaughter back unto their Fleet. About the same time, another *Ætolian* Army landing among the *Eleans*, fell upon the Western Coast of *Archia*; waiting all the Territory of the *Dymeans* and other people, that were first beginners of the *Achaean* Confederacy. The *Dymeans* and their neighbours made head against these Invaders, but were so well beaten, that the enemy grew bolder with them than before. They sent for help unto their Prætor, and to all the Towns of their Society in vain. For the *Achaans* having lately been much weakened by *Cleomenes*, were now able to do little of themselves: neither could they get any strength of Mercenaries; forasmuch as at the end of *Cleomenes* his war, they had 10 covetously withheld part of their due from those that served them therein. So through this disability of the *Achaans*, and insufficiency of their Prætor; the *Dymeans*, with others, were driven to withhold their contribution heretofore made for the publick service, & to convert the money to their own defence. *Lycurgus* also with his *Lacedæmonians*, began to win upon the *Acarnanians*, that were confederate with *Philip* & the *Achaans*. *Philip* came to the borders of the *Ætolians*, whilst their Army was thus employed a far off in *Peloponnesus*. The *Epirots* joyed all their forces with him: and by such their willing readines, drew him to the siege of a Frontier piece, which they desired to get into their own hands; for that, by commodity thereof, they hoped shortly to make themselves Masters of *Ambracia*. There he spent forty dayes, ere he could end the business; 20 which tended only to the benefit of the *Epirots*. Had he entered into the heart of *Ætolia* at his first coming in; it was thought that he might have had an end of the war. But it happens oft, that the violence of great Armies is broken upon small Towns or Ports: and not seldom, that the importunity of Associates, to have their own desires fulfilled, converts the preparations of great Kings to those uses for which they never were intended; thereby hindering the prosecution of their main designs. Thus was our King *Henry* the eighth led aside, and quite out of his way, by *Maximilian* the Emperor to the siege of *Tourney*; at such time as the French King *Lewis* the twelfth, hearing that the strong City of *Terwyn* was lost, and that his Cavalry, wherein rested his chief confidence, two thousand were beaten by the Earl of *Essex* with seven hundred *English*, was thinking to 30 withdraw himself into *Britain*, in fear that *Henry* would have come to *Paris*.

The stay that *Philip* made at *Ambracia*, did wondrously embolden the *Ætolians*: in such sort, as their Prætor *Scopas* adventured to lead all their forces out of the Country; and therewith not only to over-run *Thessalie*, but to make impression into *Macedon*. He ran as far as to *Dimin*, a City of *Macedon* upon the *Ægean* Sea: which, being forsaken by the Inhabitants at his coming, he took, and razed to the ground. He spared neither Temple, nor any other of the goodly buildings therein, but overturned all: and among the rest, he threw down the Statues that were there erected, of the *Macedonian* Kings. For this he was highly honoured by his Country-men at his return; forasmuch as hereby they thought their Nation to be grown terrible, not only (as before) unto 40 *Peloponnesus*, but even to *Macedon* it self. But this their pride was soon abated; and they rewarded shortly at home in their own Country, for their pains taken at *Dimin*. *Philip* having dispatched his work at *Ambracia*, made a strong invasion upon *Ætolia*. He took *Phocis*, *Metropolis*; *Oenide*, *Pasinum*, *Elau*; and divers other Towns and Castles of theirs: of which he burnt some, and fortified others. He also beat the *Ætolians* in sundry skirmishes: and wasted all the Country over, without receiving any harme. This done, while he was about to make a cut over the Straights into *Peloponnesus*, and to do the like spoil in the Country of the *Eleans*, whereto he was vehemently solicited by the *Achaean* Embassadors; news came out of *Macedon*, that the *Dardanians* were ready with a great Army to fall upon the Country. These *Dardanians* were a barbarous people, divided by Mount *Hemus* from the Northern part of *Macedon*, and were accustomed to seek booty in that wealthy Kingdom, when they found their own times. Having therefore intelligence, that *Philip* was about to make a journey into *Peloponnesus*; they purposed in his absence, which they thought would be long, to get what they could for themselves in his Country; as had been their manner upon the like advantages. This made the King to dismiss the *Achaean* Embassadors, (whom he should have accompanied home with his Army) and to bid them have patience untill another year. So he took his way homewards: and as he was passing out of *Acarnania* into *Epirus*, there repaired unto him *Demetrius Pharius*, with no more than 50

one Ship, that was newly chased out of his Kingdome by the Romans. This Demetrius had lately shewed himself a friend to Antigonus Dofon in the wars of Cleomenes: and returning in his last Voyage from the Cyclades, was ready at their first request, to take part with Philips Captains. These, or the like considerations, made him welcome unto the Macedonian King: whose Counsellor he was ever after. The Dardaniens hearing of the Kings return, brake up their Army, and gave over for the present their invasion of Macedonia: towards which they were already on their way.

All that summer following the King rested at Larissa in Thessalie, whilst his people gathered in their Harvest. But the Agolians rested not. They avenged themselves upon the Epirots: whom for the harmes by them and Philip done in Aetolia, they required with all extremities of War, among which, the most notable was the ruine of the most famous Temple of Dodona. When Winter grew on, & all thought of war, until another year, was laid aside: Philip stole a journey into Peloponnesus, with five thousand Foot, & about four hundred Horse. As soon as he was within Corinth, He commanded the gates to be shut, that no word should be carryed forth of his arrivall. He sent privily for old Aratus to come thither unto him: with whom he took order, when, and in what places, he would have the Achaean Souldiers ready to meet him. The enemies were then abroad in the Countrey, with somewhat more than two thousand Foot, and an hundred Horse; little thinking to meet with such opposition. Indeed they had little cause to fear: since the Achaeans themselves were not aware that the King was in their Land with his Macedonians; untill they heard, that these two thousand Eleans, Aetolians, and their fellows, were by him surprised, and all made prisoners, or slain. By this exploit which he did at his first coming, Philip got very much reputation, and likewise he purchased both reputation and love, by divers actions immediately following. He won Plophus, an exceeding strong Town, in the borders of Arcadia, which the Eleans and Aetolians then held. He won it by assault at his first coming: wherein it much availed him, that the Enemy, not believing that he would undertake such a piece of work at such an unreasonable time of the year, was careless of providing even such store of weapons, as might have served to defend it. The Town was preserved by the King from sack, and given to the Achaeans, of his own meer motion, before they requested it. Thence went he to Lacon, which yielded for very fear; hearing how easily he had taken Plophus. This Town also he gave to the Achaeans. The like liberality he used towards others, that had ancient title unto places by him recovered. Then fell he upon the Countrey of Elis, where was much wealth to be gotten: for that the people were addicted to husbandry, and lived abroad in Villages; even such as were of the wealthier sort among them. So he came to the City of Olympia: where having done sacrifice to Jupiter, feasted his Captains, and refreshed his Army three dayes; He proceeded on to the spoil of those, that had taken pleasure to share with the Aetolians, in the spoils of their otherwise-deserving neighbours. Great abundance of Cattell he took, with great numbers of slaves, and much wealth of all sorts, such as could be found in rich villages. Then fell he in hand with the Towns, wherinto a great multitude of the Countrey-people were fled. Some of these were taken at the first assault. Some yielded for fear. Some prevented the labour of his journey, by sending Embassadors to yeeld before he came. And some that were held with Garrisons against their wils, took courage, to set themselves at liberty, by seeing the King so near: to whose Patronage thenceforth they betook themselves. And many places were spoiled by the Etolian Captains; because they distrusted their ability to hold them. So the King won more Towns in the Countrey, than the sharpness of winter would suffer him to stay there dayes. Fain he would have fought with the Aetolians: but they made such hast from him, that he could not overtake them, till they had covered themselves within the Town of Samicum; where they thought to have been safe. But Philip assaulted them therein so forcibly, that he made them glad to yeeld the place; obtaining license to depart with their lives and armes. Having performed so much in this expedition, the King reposed himself a while in Megalopolis, and then removed to Argos, where he spent all the rest of the winter.

Before the Kings arrivall in Peloponnesus, the Lacedaemonians, with Lycurgus their new King, had gotten somewhat in Arcadia, & threatned to do great matters. But when they were admonished, by the calamity that fell upon the Eleans, of the danger hanging over their own heads; they quitted their winnings, and withdrew themselves home.

This

This Lycurgus, as he had so other right to the Kingdome of Sparta, than that which he could buy with money, so was he neither free from danger of conspiracies made against him; nor from those jealousies, with which Usurpers are commonly perplexed. There was one Chilon, of the Royall blood, that thinking himself to have best right unto the Kingdome, purposed to make way thereunto by massacre of his opposites; & afterwards to confirm himself, by propounding unto the multitude such reformation of the State as was most popular: namely, by making an equal distribution of all the lands among the whole number of the Citizens, according to the ancient institution of that Commonwealth. He won to his party some two hundred men, with whom he fell upon the Ephori; as they were together at supper, and slew them all. Then went he to Lycurgus his house: who perceiving the danger, stole away and fled. It remained that he should give account of these doings to the people, and procure them to take part with him. But their minds being not hereto predisposed; they so little regarded his goodly offers, as even whilst he was using his best persuasions, they were consulting how to apprehend him. Chilon perceived wherabout they went, and distanced presently away. So he lived afterwards among the Achaeans a banished man, & hated of his own people. As for Lycurgus, he returned home: & suspecting thenceforth all those of Hercules his race, found means to drive out his fellow-King young Agesipolis; whereby he made himself Lord alone. His doings grew to be suspected in such sort, as once he should have been apprehended by the Ephori. But though his actions hitherto might have been defended, yet rather than to adventure himself into judgement, he chose to flee for a time, and sojourn among his friends the Aetolians. His well-known velenemy in opposition to the Macedonians, had procured unto him such good liking among the people, that in his absence they began to consider the weakness of their own surmises against him; and pronouncing him innocent, recalled him home to his Estate. But in time following, he took better heed unto himself: not by amending his condition (for he grew a Tyrant, and was so acknowledged) but by taking order, that it should not be in the power of the Citizens to expell him when they listed. By what actions he got the name of a Tyrant, or at what time it was, that he chased Agesipolis out of the City; I do not certainly find. Like enough it is, That his being the first of three usurpers, which followed in order one after another, made him to be placed in the rank of Tyrants; which the last of the three very justly deserved. Whatsoever he was toward some private Citizens, in the war against Philip, he behaved himself as a provident man, and carefull of his Countreys good.

## §. II.

How Philip was misadvised by ill Counsellors: who afterwards wrought treason against him; and were justly punished. He invadeth the Aetolians a second time: and forceth them to sue for peace: which is granted unto them.

Whilst the King lay at Argos devising upon his business for the year following, some ambitious men that were about him, studied so diligently for their own greatness, as they were like to have spoiled all that he took in hand. Antigonus Dofon had left unto Philip such Counsellors, as to him did seem the fittest men for governing of his youth. The chief of these was Apelles; that had the charge of his person, & also the ordering of his Treasures. This man, seeming to himself a great Politician, thought that he should do a notable piece of service to his Prince, if he could reduce the Achaeans unto the same degree of subjection, wherein the Macedonians lived. To bring this to passe, during the late Expedition he had caused some of the Macedonians to thrust the Achaeans out of their lodgings, and to strip them of the booty that they had gotten. Proceeding further, as occasion fell out, he was bold to chastise some of that Nation; causing his Ministers to take and whip them. If any of them offered (as there were some of them that could not refrain) to help their fellows; them he laid by the heels, and punished as Mutiners. Herby he thought to bring it to passe by little and little, that they should be qualified with an habite of blind obedience; and think nothing unjust that pleased the King. But these Achaeans were tenderly sensible in matters of liberty: wherof if they could have been contented to suffer any little



little diminution, they needed not have troubled the *Macedonians* to help them in the war against *Cleomenes*. They bemoaned themselves unto old *Aratus*; and besought him to think upon some good order, that they might not be oppressed by degrees. *Aratus* forthwith dealt earnestly with the King; as in a matter more weighty than at first it might seem. The King bestowed gracious words upon those that had been wronged, and forbade *Apelles* to follow the course begun. Hereat *Apelles* was inwardly vexed, though he dissembled his choler for a time. He thought so well of his own Project, that he could not endure to lay it aside; being perhaps unable to do the King any valuable service, in business of other nature. He purposed therefore hereafter to begin at the head; since, in biting at the tail, the fish had shot away from his mouth. It could not otherwise be than that among the *Achaens* there were some, who bore no hearty affection to *Aratus*. These he enquired out, and sending for them, entertained them with words of Court; promising to become their special friend, and commend them unto the King. Then brake he his purpose with the King himself: letting him know, that as long as he continued to make much of *Aratus*, he must be fain to deal precisely with the *Achaens*, and as it were by Indenture, according to the letter of the Contract: whereas if he would be pleased, to give countenance unto those others whom he himself commended, then should the *Achaens*, and all other *Peloponnesians*, be quickly brought to conform themselves unto the duty of obedient Subjects. By such persuasions, he drew the King to be present at *Ægium*, where the *Achaens* were to hold election of a new Prætor. There with much more labour, than would have been needfull in a business of more importance, the King by fair words and threatnings together, obtained so much, that *Eperatus*, a very insufficient man, but one of *Aratus*'s new favourites, was chosen Prætor, in stead of one more worthy, for whom *Aratus* had laboured. This was thought a good introduction unto greater matters that should follow. The King from thence passed along by *Patras* and *Dyma*, to a very strong Castle held by the *Eleans*, which was called *Tichos*. The garrison yielded it up for fear, at his first coming: whereof he was glad, for that he had an earnest desire to bestow it upon the *Dymeans*, as he presently did.

The King thought it strange, that all this while he heard of no messengers from the *Eleans*, to sue for peace. For at his departure out of their Country the last Winter, he had let loose one *Amphidamus* a Captain of theirs, that was his prisoner; because he found him an intelligent man, and one that undertook to make them forsake their alliance with the *Ætolians*, and joyn with him upon reasonable termes. This if they could be contented to do, he willed *Amphidamus* to let them understand, that he would render unto them freely all prisoners which he had of theirs; That he would defend them from all forraign invasions; and that they should hold their liberty entire, living after their own Lawes, without paying any manner of Tribute, or being kept under by any garrison. These conditions were not to be despised, if they had found credit as they might have done. But when *Philip* came to the Castle of *Tichos*, and made a new invasion upon their Country: then began the *Eleans*, (that were not before over-hasty to believe such fair promises) to suspect *Amphidamus* as a Traitor, and one that was set on work for no other end, than to breed a mutual diffidence between them and the *Ætolians*. Wherefore they purposed to lay hands upon him, and send him prisoner into *Ætolia*. But he perceived their intent, and got away to *Dyma*: in good time for himself, in better for *Aratus*. For the King (as was said) marveling what should be the cause, that he heard no news from the *Eleans*, concerning the offers which he had made unto them by *Amphidamus*: *Apelles* his Counsellor thereby took occasion to supplant *Aratus*. He said that old *Aratus*, and his son together, had such devices in their heads, as tended little to the Kings good: And long of them he said it was, that the *Eleans* did thus hold out. For when *Amphidamus* was dismissed home, the two *Arati*, (the father and the son) had taken him aside and given him to understand, that it would be very prejudiciall to all *Peloponnesus*, if the *Eleans* once became at the devotion of the *Macedonians*: And this was the true cause, why neither *Amphidamus* was very careful in doing this message, nor the *Eleans* in hearkning to the Kings offers. All this was a false lye, devised by *Apelles* himself, upon no other ground than his own malice. *Philip* had no sooner heard this tale, but in a great rage he sent for the two *Arati*, and bade *Apelles* rehearse it over again to their faces. *Apelles* did so, and with a bold countenance, taking

talking to them as to men already convicted. And when he had said all the rest, ere either *Philip* or they spake any word; He added this clause as it were in the Kings name: Since the King hath found you such ungratefull wretches; it is his meaning to hold a Parliament of the *Achaens*; and therein having made it known what ye are to depart into *Macedon*, and leave you to your selves. Old *Aratus* gravely admonished the King; That whensoever he heard any accusation, especially against a friend of his own, or a man of worth, He should forbear a while to give credit, until he had diligently examined the business. For such deliberation was Kingly, and he should never thereof repent him. At the present he said there needed no more, than to call in those that had heard his talk with *Amphidamus*, and especially him that had brought this goodly tale to *Apelles*. For it would be a very absurd thing, that the King should make himself the Author of a report in the open Parliament of *Achaia*, whereof there was none other evidence, than one mans *yes*, and anothers *no*. Hereof the King liked well; and said that he would make sufficient inquiry. So passed a few daies: wherein whilst *Apelles* delayed to bring in the proof, which indeed he wanted, *Amphidamus* came from *Elis*, and told what had befallen him there. The King was not forgetfull, to examine him about the conspiracy of the *Arati*: which when he found no better than a meer device against his honourable friends; he entertained them in loving manner as before. As for his love to *Apelles*, though it was hereby somewhat cooled; yet by means of long acquaintance and daily employment, no remission therein could be discerned.

The unrefrall temper of *Apelles*, having with much vehemency brought nothing to pass, began (as commonly Ambition useth) to swell and grow venomous for want of his free motion. He betakes himself to his cunning again: and as before, being checkt in his doings with those of the vulgar, he had prepared a snare for the *Arati*: so failing of them, he thinks it wilde to lay for the King himself, and for all at once which were about him. In such manner sometime, the Spider thought to have taken the Swallow which drave away flies out of the chimney; but was carved (net and all) into the Aire by the bird, that was too strong to be caught and held by the subtle workmanship of a Cob-web. Of the four that next unto *Apelles* were left by *Antigonus* in chief place about *Philip*; *Tawion*, his Lievtenant in *Peloponnesus*, and *Alexander* Captain of the Guard, were faithfull men, and such as would not be corrupted. The other two, *Leontius* Captain of the *Targettiers*, and *Megalæus* chief of the Secretaries, were easily won to be at *Apelles*'s disposition. This politician therefore studied how to remove the other two from their places, and put some Creatures of his own into their rooms. Against *Alexander* he went to work the ordinary way, by calumny and privy detraction. But for the supplanting of *Tawion* he used more finess; loading him with daily commendations, as a notable man of war, and one, whom for his many vertues the King might ill spare from being alwaies in his presence. By such Art he thought to have removed him, as we say, *Out of Gods blessing into a wisme Sun*. In the mean season *Aratus* retired himself; and sought to avoid the dangerous friendship of the King by forbearing to meddle in affairs of State. As for the new Prætor of *Achaia*, lately chosen by such vehement instance of the King; He was a man of no dispatch, and one that had no grace with the people. Wherefore a great deal of time was lost, whilst *Philip* wanted both the money and the Corn, wherewith he should have been furnished by the *Achaens*. This made the King understand his own error; which he wisely sought to reform betimes. He perswaded the *Achaens* to rejoyne their Parliament from *Ægium*, to *Sycion*, the Town of *Aratus*. There he dealt with the old man and his son, perswading them to forget what was past; and laying all the blame upon *Apelles*, on whom theretofore he intended to keep a more diligent eye. So by the travell of these worthy men, he easily obtained what he would of the *Achaens*. Fifty talents they gave him out of hand; with great store of Corn: and further decreed, that so long as he himself in person followed the wars in *Peloponnesus*, he should receive ten talents a moneth. Being thus enabled, he began to provide shipping, that so he might invade the *Ætolians*, *Eleans*, and *Lacedemonians*, that were maritime people, at his pleasure, and hinder their excursions by Sea.

It vexed *Apelles* beyond measure, to see things go forward so well without his help; even by the ministry of those whom he most hated. Wherefore he entred into conspiracy with *Leontius* and *Megalæus*: binding himself and them by Oath, to crosse and bring

bring to nought, as well as they were able, all that the King should take in hand. By so doing, they thought to bring it to passe, that very want of ability to do any thing without them; should make him speak them fair, and be glad to submit himself to their directions. The King it is like had stood in some awe of them whilest he was a child; and therefore these wise men perswaded themselves, that by looking big upon him; and imputing unto him all that fell out ill through their own misgovernment of his affairs, they might rule him as a child still. *Apelles* would needs go to *Chalcis*, there to take order for the provisions, which were to come that way out of *Macedon*: The other two staid behinde with the King, to play their parts; all more mindfull of their wicked oarh, than of their duty.

His Fleet and Army being in a readinesse: *Philip* made countenance, as if he would have bent all his forces against the *Eleans*, to whose aid therefore the *Aetolians* sent men, little fearing that the mischief would have fallen, as soon after it did, upon themselves. But against the *Eleans* and those that came to help them, *Philip* thought it enough to leave the *Acheans*, with some part of his and their Mercenaries. He himself with the body of his Army putting to Sea, landed in the Ile of *Cephalenia*: whence the *Aetolians*, dwelling over against it, used to furnish themselves of shipping, when they went to rove abroad. There he besieged the Town of *Palaea*, that had been very serviceable to the Enemy against him and his Confederates; and might be very useful to him, if he could get it. Whilest he lay before this Town, there came unto him fifteen ships of war from *Scerdlaidas*; and many good Souldiers, from the *Epirots*, *Acarnanians*, and *Messinians*. But the Town was obstinate; and would not be terrified with numbers. It was naturally fenced on all parts save one, on which side *Philip* carried a Mine to the wall, wherewith he overthrew two hundred foot thereof. *Leontius* Captain of the *Targettiers*, was appointed by the King to make the assault. But he, remembering his covenant with *Apelles*, did both wilfully forbear to do his best; and caused others to do the like. So the *Macedonians* were put to foile, and many slain, not of the worst Souldiers; but such as had gotten over the breach, and would have carried the Town, if the Treason of their Captain, and some by him corrupted, had not hindered the victory. The King was angry with this, but there was no remedy; and therefore he thought upon breaking up the siege. For it was easier unto the Townes-men to make up the gap in their wall, than for him to make it wider. Whilest he stood thus perplexed and uncertain what course to take: the *Messinians* and *Acarnanians* lay hard upon him, each of them desirous to draw him into their own Countrey. The *Messinians* alleged, that *Lycurgus* was busie in wasting their Countrey: upon whom the King might come unawares in one day; the *Etesian* winds which then blew, serving fitly for his Navigation. Hereto also *Leontius* perswaded; who considered that those winds, as they would easily carry him thither, so would they detain him there perforce (blowing all the Dog-dayes: and make him spend the Summer to small or no purpose. But *Aratus* gave better counsell, and prevailed: he shewed how unfitting it were, to let the *Aetolians* over-run all *Thessaly* again, and some part of *Macedon*, whilest the King withdrew his Army farre off to seek small adventures. Rather, he said that the time now served well to carry the war into *Aetolia*: since the Prætor was gone hence abroad on roving, with the one half of their strength. As for *Lycurgus*, he was not strong enough to do much harm in *Peloponnesus*: and it might suffice, if the *Acheans* were appointed to make head against them. According to this advice, the King set sail for *Aetolia*, and enters the Bay of *Ambrycia*, which divided the *Aetolians* from *Acarnania*. The *Acarnanians* were glad to see him on their borders; and joyned with him as many of them as could bear arms, to help in taking vengeance upon their bad neighbours. He marched up into the in-land Countrey: and taking some places by the way, which he filled with Garrisons to assure his Retreat; he pulled on to *Thermum*, which was the receptacle of the *Aetolians*, and surest place of defence in all extremities. The Countrey round about was a great fastnesse, environed with rocky Mountains of very narrow, steep, and difficult ascent. There did the *Aetolians* use to hold all their chief meetings, their Fairs, their election of Magistrates, and their solemn Games: There also they used to bestow the most precious of their goods, as in a place of greatest security. This opinion of the naturall strength, had made them careless in looking unto it. When *Philip* therefore had overcome the bad way, there was nothing else to do than to take spoils wherof

wherof he found such plenty, that he thought the pains of his journey well recompenced. So he loaded his Army: and consuming all that could not be carried away, for so not to raze a goodly Temple, the chief of all belonging unto the *Aetolians*; in remembrance of their late courtesie, shewed upon the Temples of *Drum* and *Dodona*. This burning of the Temple, might (questionlesse) more for the Kings honour have been forborne. But perhaps he thought, as *Monseigneur du Gourgues* the French Captain told the *Spaniards* in *Florida*, That they which had no faith, needed no Church. At his return from *Thermum*, the *Aetolians* laid for him: which that they would do, he beleevved before; and therefore was not taken unawares. Three thousand of them there were that lying in ambush, fell upon his skirts: but he laid a Counter-ambush for them, of his *Illyrians*; who slaying behinde the rest, did set upon the backs of the *Aetolians*, whilest they were busily charging in Rear the Army that went before. So with slaughter of the enemy, he returned the same way that he came: and burning down those places that he had taken before, as also wasting the Countrey round about him, he safely carried all that he had gotten aboard his fleet. Once the *Aetolians* made countenance of fight, issuing out of *Syratus* in great bravery. But they were beaten home faster than they came, and folloved to their very gates.

The joy of this victorious expedition being every way compleat, and not deformed (as commonly happens) by any sinister accident; it pleased the King to make a great feast unto all his friends and Captains. Thither were invited among the rest *Leontius*, with his fellow *Megalæas*. They came because they could not chuse: but their heavy looks argued, what little pleasure they took in the Kings prosperity. It grieved them to think, that they should be able to give no better account unto *Apelles*, of their hindering the Kings business; since *Apelles* himself, as will be shewed anon, had played his own part with a most mischievous dexterity. Finding *Aratus* on the way home to his Tent: they fell to reviling him, throwing stones at him, so that they caused a great uprore; many running in (as happens in such cases) to take part with the one or the other. The King sending to inquire of the matter, was truly informed of all that had passed. Which made him fend for *Leontius* and his fellows. But *Leontius* was gotten out of the way: *Megalæas*, and another with him, came. The King began to rate them for their disorder: and they, to give him froward answers: inso much, as they said at length, That they would never give over, till they had rewarded *Aratus* with a mischief as he deserved. Hereupon the King committed them to ward. *Leontius* hearing of this, comes boldly to the King, with his *Targettiers* at his heels: and with a proud grace demanded, who it was that had dared to lay hands upon *Megalæas*, yea and to cast him into prison? Why said the King, it was even I. This resolute answer, which *Leontius* had not expected, made him depart both sad and angry; seeing himself out-frowned, and not knowing how to remedy the matter. Shortly after *Megalæas* was called forth to his answer, and was charged by *Aratus* with many great crimes. Among which were, The hinderance of the Kings victory at *Palaea*, and the Compact made with *Apelles*: matters no lesse touching *Leontius*, that stood by as a looker on, than *Megalæas* that was accused. In conclusion, the presumptions against him were so strong, and his answers thereto so weak, that he, and *Crinon* one of his fellows, were condemned in twenty Talents: *Crinon* being remanded back to prison; and *Leontius* becoming Bail for *Megalæas*. This was done upon the way home-wards, as the King was returning to *Corinth*.

*Philip* dispatched well a great deal of business this year. For as soon as he was at *Corinth*, he took in hand an Expedition against the *Lacedæmonians*. These and the *Eleans* had done what harm they could in *Peloponnesus*, whilest the King was absent. The *Acheans* had opposed them as well as they could; with ill success, yet so as they hindered them from doing such harm as else they would have done. But when *Philip* came, he over-ran the countrey about *Lacedæmon*: & was in a manner at the gates of *Sparta*, ere men could well beleve that he was returned out of *Aetolia*. He took not in this Expedition any Cities, but made great waste in the fields: and having beaten the enemy in some skirmishes, carried back with him to *Corinth* a rich booty of cattell, slaves, and other Countrey spoil. At *Corinth* he found attending him, Embassadors from the *Rhodiens*, and *Chians*, that requested him to set *Greece* at quiet, by granting peace unto the *Aetolians*. They had gracious audience: and he willed them to deal first with the *Aetolians*; who if they would make the same request, should not finde him unreasonable. The

*Ætoli*ans had sped ill that year: neither saw they any likely hopes for the years following. The Army that they had sent forth to waste *Thessaly* and *Macedon*, found such opposition on the way; that not daring to proceed, it returned home without bringing any thing to effect. In the mean season they had been grievously afflicted, as before is shewed, by *Philip* in the centre of their own Country. All *Greece* and *Macedon* was up in arms against them, and their weak Allies the *Eleians* and *Lacedæmonians*. Neither was it certain, how long the one or other of these their *Peloponnesian* friends should be able to hold out, since they were not strong enough to keep the field, but had already suffered those miseries of war, which by a little continuance would make them glad, each to seek their own peace, without regard of their Confederates. Wherefore the *Ætoli*ans readily entered into this negotiation of Peace: and taking truce for thirty daies with the King, dealt with him by intercession of the same Embassadors, to intreat his presence at a Diet of that nation, that should be held at *Rhium*; whether if he would vouchsafe to come, they promised that he should finde them conformable to any good reason.

Whilst the fe things were in hand, *Leontius* and *Megaleas* thought to have terrified the King, by raising sedition against him in the Army. But this device sortd to no good effect. The souldiers were easily & quickly incensd against many of the Kings friends, who were said to be the cause, why they were not rewarded with so much of the booty, as they thought to belong of right unto them. But their anger spent it self in a noise, and breaking open of doors, without further harm done. This was enough to inform the King (who easily pacified his men with gentle words) that some about him were very false. Yea the Souldiers themselves, repeating of their intolerance, desired to have the Authors of the tumult fought out, and punished according to their deserts. The King made shew as if he had not cared to make such inquisition. But *Leontius* and *Megaleas* were afraid, lest the matter would soon come out of it self to their extreme danger. Wherefore they sent unto *Apelles*, the Head and Architect of their treason, requesting him speedily to repair unto *Corinth*, where he might stand between them and the Kings displeasure. *Apelles* had not all this while been wanting to the business, undertaken by him and his treacherous companions. He had taken upon him, as a man that had the Kings heart in his own hand: and thereby was he grown in to such credit, that all the Kings Officers in *Macedon* and *Thessaly* addressed themselves unto him, and received from him their dispatc in every business. Likewise the *Greeks* in all their flattering Decrees, took occasion to magnifie the virtue of *Apelles*, making slight mention (only in fashion sake) of the King: who seemed no better than the Minister and Executioner of *Apelles* his will and pleasure. Such was the arrogancy of this great man, in setting himself out unto the people: but in managing the Kings affairs, he made it his special care, that money and all things needfull for the publique service, should be wanting. Yea he enforced the King, for very need, to sell his own Plate and household vessels: thinking to resolve these and all other difficulties, by only saying, *See, be ruled wholly by me, and all shall be as you would wish*. Hereto if the King would give assent, then had this Politician obtained his hearts desire. Now taking his journey from *Chalcis* in the Isle of *Eubœa*, to the City of *Corinth* where *Philip* then lay: he was fetcht in with great pomp and royalty, by a great number of the Captains and Souldiers, which *Leontius* and *Megaleas* drew forth to meet him on the way. So entering the City with a goodly train, he went directly to the Court, and towards the Kings chamber. But *Philip* was well aware of his pride, and had vehement suspicion of his falshood. Wherefore one was sent to tell him, that he should wait a while, or come another time, for the King was not now at leisure to be spoken with. It was a pretty thing, that such a check as this made all his attendants forsake him, as a man in disgrace; in such sort, that going thence to his lodging, he had none to follow him save his own Pages. After this, the King vouchsafed him now and then some slender graces: but in consultations, or other matters of privacy, he used him not at all. This taught *Megaleas* to look to himself, and run away betimes. Hereupon the King sent forth *Taurion* his Lieutenant of *Peloponnesus*, with all the Targettiers, as it were to do some piece of service, but indeed of purpose to apprehend *Leontius* in the absence of his followers. *Leontius* being taken, dispatched away a messenger presently to his Targettiers, to signify what was befallen him: and they forthwith sent unto the King in his behalf. They made request, That if any other thing were objected against him, he might not be

called

called forth to trial before their return: as for the debt of *Megaleas*, if that were all the matter, they said they were ready to make a purse for his discharge. This affection of the souldiers made *Philip* more hasty then else he would have been, to take away the Traitors life. Neither was it long, ere letters of *Megaleas* were intercepted, which he wrote unto the *Ætoli*ans; vilifying the King with opprobrious words, and bidding them not to hearken after peace, but to hold out a while, for that *Philip* was even ready to sink under the burden of his own poverty. By this the King understood more perfectly the falshood, not only of *Megaleas*, but of *Apelles*; whose cunning head had laboured all this while to keep him so poor. Wherefore he sent one to pursue *Megaleas*, that was fled to *Thebes*. As for *Apelles*, he committed both him, his son, and another that was inward with him, to prison; wherein all of them shortly ended their lives. *Megaleas* also, neither daring to stand to trial, nor knowing whither to flee, was weary of his own life; and slew himself about the same time.

The *Ætoli*ans, as they had begun this war upon hope of accomplishing what they listed in the Nonage of *Philip*: so finding that the vigour of this young Prince tempered with the cold advice of *Aratus*, wrought very effectually toward their overthrow; they grew very desirous to make an end of it. Nevertheless, being a turbulent Nation, and ready to lay hold upon all advantages, when they heard what was happened in the Court, the death of *Apelles*, *Leontius*, and *Megaleas*, together with some indignation thereupon conceived by some of the Kings Targettiers, they began to hope anew, that these troubles would be long lasting, and thereupon brake the day appointed for the meeting at *Rhium*. Of this was *Philip* nothing sorry. For being in good hope thoroughly to tame this unquiet Nation; he thought it much to concern his own honour, that all the blame of the beginning and continuing the War should rest upon themselves. Wherefore he willed his Confederates to lay aside all thought of peace, and to prepare for War against the year following; wherein he hoped to bring it to an end. Then gratified he his *Macedonian* Souldiers, by yielding to let them winter in their own Country. In his return homeward, he called into judgement one *Ptolomy*, a companion with *Apelles* and *Leontius* in their Treasons: who was therefore condemned by the *Macedonians*; and suffered death. These were the same *Macedonians*, that lately could not endure to hear of *Leontius* his imprisonment; yet now they think the man worthy to die that was but his adherent. So vain is the confidence, on which Rebels use to build, in their favour with the Multitude.

During his abode in *Macedon*, *Philip* won some bordering Towns, from which the *Dardani*ans, *Ætoli*ans, and other his ill neighbours, were accustomed to make rodes into his Kingdom: when he had thus provided for safety of his own; the *Ætoli*ans might well know what they were to expect. But there came again Embassadors from the *Rhodian* and *Chian*ns, with others from *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, and from the Citie of *Bisantium*, re-continuing the former solicitation about the peace. This fashion had been taken up in matters of *Greece*, ever since the Kings that reigned after *Alexander*, had taken upon them to set the whole Country at liberty: No sooner was any Province or City in danger to be oppressed and subdued by force of war, but presently there were found Interestors, who pitying the effusion of *Greekish* blood, would importune the stronger to relinquish his advantage. By doing such friendly offices in time of need, the Princes and States abroad sought to binde unto them those people, that were howsoever weak in numbers, yet very good souldiers. But hereby it came to passe, that the more froward fort, especially the *Ætoli*ans, whose whole Nation was addicted to falshood and robbery, durst enter boldly into quarrels with all their neighbours: being well assured that if they had the worst, *The love of Greece* would be sufficient for to redeem their quiet. They had, since the late Treaty of Peace, done what harm they could in *Peloponnesus*: but being beaten by the *Acheans*, and standing in fear to be more soundly beaten at home, they desired now, more earnestly than before, to make an end of the War as soon as they might. *Philip* made such answer unto the Embassadors, as he had done the former year; That he gave not occasion to the beginning of this War, nor was at the present afraid to continue it, or unwilling to end it: But that the *Ætoli*ans, if they had a desire to live in rest, must first be dealt withall, to signify plainly their determination, whereto himself would return such answer as he should think fit.

Philip had at this time no great liking unto the Peace, being a young Prince, and in hope to increase the honour which he daily got by the War. But it happened in the midst of this Negotiation, that he was advertised by letters out of Macedonia, what a notable victory Hannibal had obtained against the Romans in the battell at Thrasymene. These letters he communicated unto Demetrius Pharius: who greatly encouraged him to take part with Hannibal: and not to sit still, as an idle beholder of the Italian War. Hereby he grew more inclinable than before unto Peace with the Ætolians: which was concluded shortly in a meeting at Napaëtur. There did Agelaus an Ætolian make a great Oration: telling, how happy it was for the Greeks, that they might at their own pleasure dispute about finishing War between themselves, without being molested by the Barbarians. For when once either the Romans or Carthaginians had subdued one the other; it was not to be doubted, that they would forthwith look Eastward, and seek by all means to set footing in Greece. For this cause he said it were good, that their Country should be at peace within it self: and that Philip, if he were desirous of War, should lay hold on the opportunity, now fitly serving to enlarge his Dominion, by winning somewhat in Italy.

Such advice could the Ætolians then give, when they stood in fear of danger threatening them at hand: but being soon after weary of rest, as being accustomed to enrich themselves by pillage, they were so far from observing and following their own good counsell, that they invited the Romans into Greece, whereby they brought themselves, and the whole Country (but themselves before any other part of the Country) under servitude of strangers. The Condition of this Peace was simple, That every one should keep what they held at the present, without making restitution, or any amends for damages past.

## §. III.

Philip, at the persuasion of Demetrius Pharius, enters into League with Hannibal against the Romans. The tenour of the League between Hannibal and Philip.

THIS being agreed upon: the Greeks betook themselves to quiet courses of life; and Philip to prepare for the business of Italy, about which he consulted with Demetrius Pharius. And thus passed the time away, till the great battell of Cannæ: after which he joynd in league with Hannibal, as hath been shewed before. Demetrius Pharius bore great malice unto the Romans; and knew no other way to be avenged upon them, or to recover his own lost Kingdom, than by procuring the Macedonians, that was in a manner wholly guided by his counsell, to take part with their enemies. It had otherwise been far more expedient for Philip, to have supported the weaker of those two great Cities against the more mighty. For by so doing, he should perhaps have brought them to peace upon some equal terms; and thereby, as did Hiero, a far weaker Prince, have both secured his own Estate, and caused each of them to be desirous of chief place in his friendship. The issue of the counsell which he followed, will appear soon after this. His first quarrell with the Romans; the trouble which they and the Ætolians did put him to in Greece; and the Peace which they made with him for a time, upon such Conditions that might easily be broken, have been related in another place, as belonging unto the second Punic War. Wherefore I will only here set down the tenour of the League between Him and Carthage; which may seem not unworthy to be read, if only in regard of the form it self then used: though it had been over-long to have been inserted into a more buisie piece.

50

THE

The Oath and Covenants between HANNIBAL Generall of the Carthaginians, and XENOPHANES, Embassadour of PHILIP King of Macedon.

THIS is the League ratified by oath, which Hannibal the Generall, and with him Mago, Myrcal, and Barmocal, as also the Senators of Carthage that are present, and all the Carthaginians that are in his Army, have made with Xenophanes the son of Cleomachus Athenian, whom King Philip the son of Demetrius hath sent unto us, for himself and the Macedonians, and his Associates: Before Jupiter, and Juno, and Apollo: before \* the God \*<sup>Dæmon</sup> of the Carthaginians, Hercules and Tolaus: before Mars, Triton, Neptune: before the Gods accompanying Arms, the Sun, the Moon, and the Earth: before Rivers and Meadows, and Waters: before all the Gods that have power over Carthage: before all the Gods that rule over Macedon, and the rest of Greece: before all the Gods that are Presidents of War, and present at the making of this League. Hannibal the Generall hath said, and all the Senators that are with him, and all the Carthaginians in his Army: Be it agreed between You and Us, that this Oath stand for friendship and loving affection, that We become friends, familiar, and brethren, Upon Covenant, that the safety of the Lords the Carthaginians, and of Hannibal the Generall, and those that are with him, and of the Rulers of Provinces of the Carthaginians, using the same Laws, and of the Ætolians, and as many Cities and Nations as obey the Carthaginians, and of the Souldiers & Associates, and of all Towns and Nations with which we hold friendship in Italy, Gaule, and Liguria, & with whom we shall hold friendship, or make alliance hereafter in this Region; be preferred by King Philip and the Macedonians, and such of the Greeks as are their Associates. In like manner shall King Philip and the Macedonians, and other the Greeks his Associates, be saved and preferred by the Carthaginian Armies, and by the Ætolians, and by all Cities and Nations that obey the Carthaginians, and by their Associates and Souldiers, and by all Nations and Cities in Italy, Gaule, and Liguria, that are of our Alliance, or shall hereafter joyn with Us in Italy. We shall not take Counsell one against the other, nor deal fraudulently one with the other. With all readinesse and good will, without deceit or subtilty, We shall be enemies unto the enemies of the Carthaginians, excepting those Kings, Towns, and Havens, with which We have already league and friendship. We also shall be enemies to the enemies of King Philip, excepting those Kings, Cities, and Nations, with which we have already league and friendship. The War that We have with the Romans, have We also with them, untill the Gods shall give Us a new and happy end. We shall aid Us with those things whereof we have need, and shall do according to the Covenants between Us. But if the Gods shall not give unto You and Us their help in this War against the Romans and their Associates; then if the Romans offer friendship, We shall make friendship in such wise, that We shall be partakers of the same friendship, With Condition, That they shall not have power to make War upon You: Neither shall the Romans be Lord over the Coreyans, nor over those of Apollonia, nor Dyrrhachium, nor over Pharus, nor Dimalle, nor the Parthini, nor Attimania. They shall also render unto Demetrius Pharius all those that belong unto him, as many as are within the Romans Dominions. But if the Romans (after such peace made) shall make War upon You or Us; We will succour one another in that War, as either shall have need. The same shall be observed in War made by any other, excepting those Kings, Cities, and States, with whom we hold already league and friendship. To this league if We or Te shall think fit to add or detract, such addition or detraction shall be made by our common consent.



LIII 2

§. IIII.

## §. IIII.

*How Philip yielded to his naturall vices, being therein soothed by Demetrius Pharius. His desire to tyrannize upon the free States his Associates: With the troubles into which he thereby fell, whilest he bore a part in the second Punick War. He poisoneth Aratus: and grows hateful to the Achæans.*

**H**itherto Philip had carried himself as a vertuous Prince. And though with more commendation of his wildome, he might have offered his friendship to the Romans, that were like to be oppressed, than to the Carthaginians, who had the better hand: yet this his meddling in the Punick War, proceeded from a royall greatnesse of minde, with a desire to secure and increase his own estate, adding therewithall reputation to his Country. But in this businesse he was guided (as hath been said) by Demetrius Pharius: who, looking throughly into his nature, did accommodate himself to his desires: and thereby shortly governed him as he listed. For the vertues of Philip were not indeed such as they seemed. He was lustfull, bloody, and tyrannicall: desirous of power to do what he listed, and not otherwise listig to do what he ought, than so far forth, as by making a fair shew he might breed in men such good opinion of him, as should help to serve his turn in all that he took in hand. Before he should busie himself in Italy, he thought it requisite in good policy, to bring the Greeks that were his Associates, under a more absolute form of subjection. Hereunto Apelles had advised him before: and he had liked reasonably well of the counsell. But Apelles was a boysterous Counsellor, and one that referring all to his own glory, thought himself deeply wronged, if he might not wholly have his own way, but were driven to await the Kings opportunity at other times. Demetrius Pharius could well be contented to observe the Kings humours: and guided, like a Coach-man, with the reins in his hand, those affections which himself did only seem to follow. Therefore he grew daily more and more in credit: so as, without any manner of contention, he supplanted Aratus which the violence of Apelles could never do.

There arose about these times a very hot Faction, among the Messenians, between the Nobility and Commons: their vehement thoughts being rather diverted (as happens often after a foreigne War) unto domestical objects, than allayed and reduced unto a more quiet temper. In proceesse of no long time, the contention among them grew so violent, that Philip was intreated to compound the differences. He was glad of this: resolving so to end the matter, that they should not henceforth strive any more about their Government: for that he would assume it wholly to himself. At his coming thither, he found Aratus busie among them to make all friends, after a better manner than agreed with his own secret purpose. Wherefore he consulted not with this reverend old man: but talked in private with such of the Messenians as repaired unto him. He asked the Governors, what they meant to stand thus disputing: and whether they had not Laws to bridle the insolence of the unruly Rabble: Contrariwise, in talking with the heads of the popular Faction, he said it was strange, that they being so many, would suffer themselves to be opposed by a few: as if they had not hands to defend themselves from Tyrants. Thus whilest each of them presumed on the Kings assistance; they thought it best to go roundly to work, ere that he were gone that should countenance their doings. The Governors therefore would have apprehended some seditious Orators, that were, they said, the stirrers up of the multitude unto sedition. Upon this occasion, the people took Arms: and running upon the Nobility and Magistrates, killed of them in a rage, almost two hundred. Philip thought, it seems, that it would be easie to worry the Sheep, when the Dogs their guardians were slain. But his falsehood and double dealing was immediately found out. Neither did the younger Aratus forbear to tell him of it in publick, with very bitter and disgracefull words. The King was angry at this. But having already done more than was commendable, or excusable: and yet further intending to take other things in hand wherein he should need the help and countenance of his best friends; he was content to smother his displeasure, and make as fair weather as he could. He led old Aratus aside by the hand; and went up into the Castle of Ithome, that was over Messene. There he pretended to do sacrifice: and sacrifice he did. But it was his purpose to keep the place to his own use:

use; for that it was of notable strength, and would serve to command the further parts of Peloponnesus, as the Citadel of Corinth, which he had already, commanded the entrance into that Country. Whilest he was therefore sacrificing, and had the entralls of the beast delivered into his hands, as was the manner; he shewed them to Aratus, and gently asked him, whether the tokens that he saw therein did signifie, That being now in possession of this place, he should quietly go out of it, or rather keep it to himself. He thought perhaps, that the old man would have soothed him a little; were it only for desire to make amends for the angry words newly spoken by his son. But as Aratus stood doubtfull what to answer, Demetrius Pharius gave this verdict: *If thou be a Sooth-sayer, thou mayst go thy wayes, and let slip this good advantage; if thou be a King, thou must not neglect the opportunity, but hold the Oxe by both his horns.* Thus he spake; resembling Ithome and Acrocorinthus unto the two horns of Peloponnesus. Yet would Philip needs hear the opinion of Aratus: who told him plainly, That it were well done to keep the place, if it might be kept without breach of his faith unto the Messenians: But if, by seizing upon Ithome, he must lose all the other Castles that he held, and especially the strongest Castle of all that was left unto him by Antigonus, which was his credit; then were it far better to depart with his souldiers, and keep men in duty, as he had done hitherto, by their own good wills, than by fortifying any strong places against them, to make them of his friends become his enemies.

To this good advice, Philip yielded at the present: but not without some dislike thenceforth growing between him and the Arats; whom he thought more froward than befemed them, in contradicting his will. Neither was the old man desirous at all, to deal any longer in the Kings affairs, or be inward with him. For, as he plainly discovered his tyrannous purposes; so likewise he perceived, that in resorting to his house, he had been dishonest with his sons wife. He therefore staid at home: where at good leisure he might repent, that in despite of Cleomenes, his own Country-man, and a temperate Prince, he had brought the Macedonians into Peloponnesus.

Philip made a Voyage out of Peloponnesus into Epirus, wherein Aratus refused to bear him company. In this journey he found by experience what Aratus had lately told him, That unhoneest counsells are not so profitable in deed, as in appearance. The Epirots were his followers and dependants; and so they purposed to continue. But he would needs have them so to remain, whether they purposed it or not. Wherefore to make them the more obnoxious unto his will, he seized upon their Town of Oricum, and laid siege to Apollonia; having no good colour of these doings: but thinking himself strong enough to do what he listed, and not seeing whence they should procure friends to help them. Thus in stead of settling the Country, as his intended Voyage into Italy required: he kindled a fire in it which he could never quench, untill it had laid hold on his own Palace. Whilest he was thus labouring to binde the hands that should have fought for him in Italy, M. Valerius the Roman came into those parts; who not onely maintained the Epirots against him, but procured the Etolians to break the Peace, which they had lately made with him.

Thus began that War; the occurrences whereof we have related before, in the place whereto it belonged. In managging whereof, though Philip did the offices of a good Captain: yet when leisure served, he made it apparent that he was a vicious King. He had not quite left his former desire, of oppressing the liberty of the Messenians; but made another journey into their Country, with hope to deceive them as before. They understood him better now than before; and therefore were not halcy to trust him too far. When he saw that his cunning would not serve, he went to work by force; and calling them his enemies, invaded them with open War. But in that War he could do little good; perhaps, because none of his Confederates were desirous to help him in such an enterprise. In this attempt upon Messene, he lost Demetrius Pharius; that was his Counsellor and Flatterer, not his Perverter; as appears by his growing daily more naught in following times. The worse that he sped, the more angry he waxed against those that seemed not to favour his injurious doings. Wherefore, by the ministry of Taurion, his Lievetenant, he poisoned old Aratus; and shortly after that, he poisoned also the younger Aratus: hoping that these things would never have been known, because they were done secretly, and the poysons themselves were more sure than manifest in operation. The Sicyonians, and all the people of Achaia, decreed unto

*Aratus* more than humane honours, as Sacrifices, Hymns, and Processions, to be celebrated every year twice, with a Priest ordained unto him for that purpose; as was accustomed unto the *Heroes*, or men, whom they thought to be translated into the number of the gods. Hereunto they are said to have been encouraged by an Oracle of *Apollo*: which is like enough to have been true, since the help of the Divell is never failing to the increase of Idolatry.

The loving memory of *Aratus* their Patron, and singular Benefactor, could not but work in the *Acheans* a marvellous dislike of that wicked King which had made him thus away. He shal therefore hear of this hereafter, when they better dare to take counsel for themselves. At the present, the murder was not generally known or believed: neither were they in case to subsist, without his help that had committed it. The *Ætoli-ans* were a most outrageous people, great darers, and shamelesse robbers. With these the *Romans* made a league: whereof the Conditions were soon divulged, especially that main point, concerning the division of the purchase which they should make, namely, That the *Ætoli-ans* should have the Country and Towns; but the *Romans* the spoil, and carry away the people to sell for slaves. The *Acheans*, who in times of greater quiet, could not endure to make straight alliance with the *Ætoli-ans*, as knowing their unwill disposition; were much the more averse from them, when they perceived how they had called in the *Barbarians* (for such did the *Greeks* account all other Nations except their own) to make havock of the Country. The same consideration moved also the *Lacedæmonians* to stand off a while, before they would declare themselves for the *Ætoli-ans*, whose friendship they had embraced in the late war. The industry therefore of *Philip*, and the great care which he seemed to take of the *Acheans* his Confederates, sufficed to retain them: especially, at such time, as their own necessity was thereto concurrent. More particularly he obliged unto himself the *Dymeans* by an inestimable benefit: recovering their Town, after it had been taken by the *Romans* and *Ætoli-ans*; and redeeming their people whereof they might be found, that had been carried away captive, and sold abroad for slaves. Thus might he have blotted out the memory of offences past; if the malignity of his naturall condition had not other whiles broken out, and given men to understand, that it was the Time, and not his Vertue, which caused him to make such a shew of goodness. Among other foule acts, whereof he was not ashamed; He took *Polycratia* the wife of the younger *Aratus*, and carried her into *Macedon*: little regarding how this might serve to confirm in the people their opinion, that he was guilty of the old mans death. But of such faults he shal be told, when the *Romans* make war upon him the second time: for, of that which happened in this their first Invasion, I hold it superfluous to make repetition.

## §. V.

Of *Philopœmen* Generall of the *Acheans*: and of *Machanidas*, Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*. A battell between them, wherein *Machanidas* is slain.

IT happens often, that the decease of one eminent man discovers the vertue of another. In the place of *Aratus* there stood up *Philopœmen*: whose notable valour, and great skill in Arms, made the Nation of the *Acheans* redoubtable among all the *Greeks*, and carelesse of such protection, as in former times they had needed against the violence of their neighbours. This is that *Philopœmen*: who being then a young man, and having no command, did especiall service to *Antigonus* at the battell of *Sellasia* against *Cleomenes*. Thence forward untill now he had spent the most part of his time in the Isle of *Crete*: the Inhabitants whereof being a valiant people, and seldom or never at peace between themselves; he bettered among them his knowledge, and practice in the Art of War. At his return home, he had charge of the Horse: wherein he carried himself so strictly, travelling with all the Cities of the Confederacy to have his followers well mounted, and armed at all pieces: as also he so diligently trained them up in all exercise of service, that he made the *Acheans* very strong in that part of their forces. Being afterward chosen Prætor or Generall of the Nation, he had no lesse care to reform their military discipline throughout, whereby his Country might be strong enough to defend it self, and not any longer (as in former times) need to depend upon the help of others. He perswaded the *Acheans* to cut off their vain expence

expence of bravery, in apparell, household-stuffe, and curious fare, and to bestow that cost upon their Armes: wherein by how much they were the more gallant, by so much were they like to prove the better Souldiers, and futable in behaviour, unto the pride of their furniture. They had served hitherto with little light Bucklers, and slender Darts, to cast afar off; that were usefull in skirmishing at some distance, or for surprises, or sudden and hasty Expeditions, whereto *Aratus* had been most accustomed. But when they came to handie-strokes, they were good for nothing, so long as they were wholly driven to rely upon the courage of their Mercenaries. *Philopœmen* altered this: causing them to arme themselves more weightily, to use a larger kind of shield, with good swords, and strong pikes, fit for service at hand. He taught them also to fight in close order, and altered the form of their embattelling: not making the Files so deep as had been accustomed, but extending the Front, that he might use the service of many hands.

Eight moneths were spent of that year, in which he first was Prætor of the *Acheans*; when *Machanidas* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon* caused him to make trial, how his souldiers had profited by his discipline. This *Machanidas* was the successor unto *Lycurgus*, a man more violent than his fore-goer. He kept in pay a strong Army of Mercenaries: and he kept them not only to fight for *Sparta*, but to hold the City in obedience to himself perforce. Wherefore it behoved him not to take part with the *Acheans*, that were favours of liberty; but to strengthen himself by friendship of the *Ætoli-ans*: who, in making Alliances, took no further notice of vice or vertue, than as it had reference to their own profit. The people also of *Lacedæmon*, through their inveterate hatred unto the *Argives*, *Acheans*, and *Macedonians*; were in like sort (all or most of them) inclinable to the *Ætoli-ans* Faction. Very unwisely. For in seeking to take revenge upon those, that had lately hindred them from getting the Lordship of *Peloponnesus*; they hindred themselves thereby from recovering the Mastery of their own City. This affection of the *Spartans*, together with the regard of his own security, and no small hope of good that would follow, suffered not *Machanidas* to be idle; but alwaies made him ready to fall upon his neighbours backs, and take of theirs what he could, whilet they were enforced, by greater necessity, to turne face another way. Thus had he often done, especially in the absence of *Philip*: whose sudden coming into those parts, or some other opposition made against him, had usually made him faile of his attempts. At the present he was stronger in men, than were the *Acheans*, and though his own men better Souldiers than were theirs.

Whilet *Philip* therefore was busied else-where, he entred the Country of the *Macedonians*: being not without hope to doe as *Cleomenes* had done before him; yea and perhaps to get the \* Lordship of *Peloponnesus*, as having stronger friends and weaker opposition, than *Cleomenes* had found. But *Philopœmen* was ready to entertain him at *Man-tinea*; where was fought between them a great battell. The Tyrant had brought into the field upon Carts a great many of engines, wherewith to beat upon the Squadrons of his enemies, and put them in disorder. To prevent this danger, *Philopœmen* sent forth his light armature a good way before him; so as *Machanidas* was faine to doe the like. To second these, from the one and the other side came in continuall supply; till at length all the Mercenaries, both of the *Acheans* and of *Machanidas*, were drawn up to the fight: being so far advanced, each before their own Phalanx, that it could no otherwise be discerned which pressed forward, or which recoyled, than by rising of the dust. Thus were *Machanidas* his engines made unserviceable, by the interposition of his own men; in such manner as the Cannon is hindred from doing execution, in most of the battels fought in these our times. The Mercenaries of the Tyrant prevailed at length: not only by their advantage of number, but (as *Polybius* well observeth) by firmness, in standing their opposites in degree of courage; wherein usually the hired Souldiers of Tyrants exceed those that are waged by free States. For as it is true, that a free people are much more valiant than they which live oppressed by Tyranny, since the one, by doing their best in fight, have hope to acquire somewhat beneficiall to themselves, whereas the other do fight (as it were) to assure their own servitude: so the Mercenaries of a Tyrant, being made partakers with him in the fruits of his prosperity, have as good cause to maintain his quarrell as their own; whereas they that serve under a free State, have no other motive to doe manfully, than their bare stipend. Further than this, when a free State hath gotten the victory, many companies (if not all) of foreign Auxiliaries are

\* Excerpt.  
Foll. 111.  
Plut. in vita  
Philopœmen.

Polyb. lib. 2.



are presently cast; & therefore such good fellows, will not take much pains to bring the war to an end. But the victory of a Tyrant, makes him stand in need of more such helpers; because that after it he doth wrong to more, as having more subjects; and therefore stands in fear of more, that should seek to take revenge upon him. The Trepidaries therefore of the *Acheans*, being forced to give ground, were urged so violently in their retreat by those of *Machanidas*, that shortly they betook themselves to flight; & could not be staid by any persuasions of *Philopomen*, but ran away quite beyond the battell of the *Acheans*. This disaster had been sufficient to take from *Philopomen* the honour of the day; had he not wisely observed the demeanour of *Machanidas*, and found in him that error which might restore the victory. The Tyrant with his Mercenaries gave chase to unto those that fled: leaving behind him in good order of battell his *Lacedaemonians*; whom he thought sufficient to deal with the *Acheans*, that were already disheartened by the flight of their companions. But when this his rashness had carried him out of fight, *Philopomen* advanced towards the *Lacedaemonians* that stood before him. There lay between them athwart the Country a long ditch, without water at that time; and therefore passable (as it seemed) without much difficulty, especially for Foot. The *Lacedaemonians* adventured over it, as thinking themselves better soldiers than the *Acheans*, who had in a manner already lost the day. But hereby they greatly disordered their own Battell; and had no sooner the foremost of them recovered the further bank, than they were stoutly charged by the *Acheans*, who drave them headlong into the ditch again. Their first ranks being broken, all the rest began to shrink: so as *Philopomen* getting over the ditch, easily chased them out of the Field. *Philopomen* knew better how to use his advantage, than *Machanidas* had done. He suffered not all his Army to disband and follow the chase, but retained with him a sufficient strength, for the custody of a bridge that was over the ditch, by which he knew that the Tyrant must come back. The Tyrant with his Mercenaries returning from the chase, looked very heavily when he saw what was fallen out. Yet, with a lusty troupe of Horse about him, he made towards the bridge: hoping to find the *Acheans* in disorder; and to set upon their backs, as they were carelessly pursuing their Victory. But when he and his Company saw *Philopomen* ready to make good the bridge against them; then began every one to look, which way he might shift for himself. The Tyrant, with no more than two in his company, rode along the ditch side; and searched for an easie passage over. He was easily discovered by his purple Cassock, and the costly trappings of his Horse. *Philopomen* therefore leaving the charge of the bridge unto another, coasted him all the way as he rode; and falling upon him at length in the ditch it self, as he was getting over it, slew him there with his own hand. There died in this Battell on the *Lacedaemonians* side about four thousand: and more than four thousand were taken prisoners. Of the *Achean* Mercenaries, probable it is, that the loss was not greatly cared for; since that War was at an end, and for their money they might hire more when they should have need.

40

## §. VI.

Philip having peace with Rome, and with all Greece, prepares against Asia. Of the Kings of Pergamus, Cappadocia, Pontus, Paphlagonia, Bithynia, and their Linages. Of the Galatians.

BY this victory the *Acheans* learned to think well of themselves. Neither needed they indeed after a while (such was their discipline and continual exercise) to account themselves in matter of war inferiour to any, that should have brought against them no great odds of number. As for the *Macedonian*, he made no great use of them. But when he had once concluded peace with the *Romans* and *Aetolians*, he studied how to enlarge his Dominion Eastward; since the fortune of his friends the *Carthaginians* declined in the West. He took in hand many matters together, or very neerly together, and some of them not honest: wherein if the *Acheans* would have done him service, they must, by helping him to oppress others that never had wronged him, have taught him the way how to deal with themselves. He greatly hated *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, who had joyned with the *Romans* and *Aetolians* in war against him.

This

This *Attalus*, though a King, was scarce yet a Nobleman, otherwife than as he was enabled by his own, and by his Fathers vertue. His fortune began in *Philetarus* his Uncle: who being grieved, by reason of a mishap which he had when he was a child, grew afterwards thereby to be the more esteemed: as great men in those times repoted much confidence in Eunuchs, whose affections could not be obliged unto wives or children. He was entertained into the family of *Docimus*, a Captain following *Antigonus* the first; and after the death of *Antigonus*, he accompanied his Master, that betook himself to *Lyfymachus* King of *Thrace*. *Lyfymachus* had a good opinion of him; and put him in trust with his money and accounts. But when at length he stood in fear of this King, that grew a bloody Tyrant; he fled into *Asia*, where he seized upon the Town of *Pergamus*, and nine thousand talents belonging to *Lyfymachus*. The town and money, together with his own service, he offered unto *Selenchus* the first, that then was ready to give *Lyfymachus* battell. His offer was kindly accepted, but never performed; for that *Selenchus*, having slain *Lyfymachus*, died shortly after himself, before he made use of *Philetarus* or his money. So this Eunuch still retained *Pergamus*, with the Country round about it; and reigned therein twenty years as an absolute King. He had two brethren: of which the elder is said to have been a poor Carter; and the younger perhaps not much better, before such time they were raised by the fortune of this Eunuch. *Philetarus* left his Kingdom to the elder of these, or to the son of the elder, called *Eumenes*. This *Eumenes* enlarged his Kingdom; making his advantage of the dissention between *Selenchus Galvinius* and *Antiochus Hierax*, the sons of the second *Antiochus*. He fought a battell with *Hierax*, neer unto *Sardes*, and won the victory. At which time, to animate his men against the *Gauls* that served under his Enemy, he used a pretty device. He wrote the word *Victory* upon the hand of his Soothsayer, in such colours as would easily come off: and when the hot liver of the beast that was sacrificed, had cleanly taken the print of the letters, He published this unto his Army as a Miracle; plainly foretelling that the gods would be assitant in that Battell.

After this Victory, he grew a dreadful enemy to *Selenchus*: who never durst attempt to recover from him, by War, the Territory that he had gotten and held. Finally, when he had reigned two and twenty years, he died by a surfeit of over-much drink, and left his Kingdom to *Attalus*, of whom we now entreat, that was son unto *Attalus* the youngest brother of *Philetarus*. *Attalus* was an undertaking Prince, very bountifull, and no lesse valiant. By his own proper forces he restored his friend *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian* into his Kingdom, whence he had been expelled. He was grievously molested by *Acheans*: who setting up himself as King against *Antiochus the Great*, reigned in the lesser *Asia*. He was besieged in his own City of *Pergamus*: but by the help of the *Telissage*, a Nation of the *Gauls*, whom he called over out of *Thrace*, he recovered all that he had lost. When these *Gauls* had once gotten footing in *Asia*, they never wanted employment, but were either entertained by some of the Princes reigning in those quarters, or interposed themselves, without invitation; and found themselves work in quarrels of their own making. They caused *Prusias* King of *Bithynia* to cease from his war against *Bizantium*. Whereunto when he had condescended; they nevertheless within a while after invaded his Kingdom. He obtained against them a great victory; and used it with great cruelty, sparing neither age nor sex. But the swarm of them increasing, they occupied the Region about *Hellepont*: where, in seating themselves, they were much beholding unto *Attalus*. Nevertheless, presuming afterwards upon their strength, they forced their Neighbour Princes and Cities to pay them tribute: in the sharp exaction whereof, they had no more respect unto *Attalus*, than to any that had worse deserved of them. By this they compelled him to fight against them: and so being victorious, compelled them to contain themselves within the bounds of that Province, which took name from them in time following, and was called *Galatia*. Yet continued they still to oppress the weakest of their neighbours, and to fill up the Arms of those that could best hire them.

The Kings reigning in those parts, were the posterity of such, as had saved themselves and their Provinces, in the slothfull reign of the *Persians*; or in the busie times of *Alexander*, and his *Macedonian* followers. The *Cappadocians* were very ancient. For the first of their line had married with *Atossa*, sister unto the great King *Cyrus*. Their Country was taken from them by *Perdices*, as is shewed before. But the son of that King,

\* J. E. Front.  
Strab. l. i. c. ii.

King, whom *Perdiccas* crucified, esp'ying his time while the *Macedonians* were at civil wars among themselves; recovered his Dominion, and passed it over to his off-spring. The Kings of *Pontus* had also their beginning from the *Persian* Empire; and are said to have issued from the royall house of *Achemenes*. The *Paplagonians* derived themselves from *Pylmenes*, a King that assisted *Priamus* at the war of *Troy*. These, applying themselves unto the times, were always conformable unto the strongest. The Ancestors of *Prusias* had begun to reign in *Bythinia*, some few generations before that of the great *Alexander*. They lay somewhat out of the *Macedonian* way: by whom therefore, having other employment, they were the lesse molested. *Calantus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, where he was vanquished. They 10 had afterwards to do with a Lieutenant of *Athionorus*, that made them somewhat more humble. And thus they shuffled, as did the rest, untill the reign of *Prusias*, whom we have already sometimes mentioned.

## §. VII.

*The Town of Cios taken by Philip, at the instance of Prusias, King of Bythinia, and cruelly destroyed. By this and the like actions, Philip grows hateful to many of the Greeks; and is warred upon by Attalus King of Pergamus, and by the Rhodians*

*Prusias*, as a neighbour King, had many quarrels with *Attalus*; whose greatness he suspected. He therefore strengthened himself, by taking to wife the daughter of *Philip*; as *Attalus*, on the contrary side, entered into a strict Confederacy with the *Etolians*, *Rhodians*, and other of the *Greeks*. But when *Philip* had ended his *Etolian* war, and was devising with *Antiochus* about sharing between them two the Kingdom of *Egypt*, wherein *Ptolomy Philopater*, a friend unto them both, was newly dead; and had left his son *Phol. Epiphames*, a young child, his heir: the *Bythinian* entreated this his Father-in-law to come over into *Asia*, there to win the Town of the *Ciani*, and bestow it upon him. *Prusias* had no right unto the Town, nor just matter of quarrell against it; but it was fitly feared for him, and therewithall rich. *Philip* came, as one that 30 could not well deny to help his Son-in-law. But hereby he mightily offended no small part of *Greece*. Embassadors came to him whilst he lay at the siege, from the *Rhodians*, and divers other States: intreating him to forsake the enterprize. He gave dilatory, but otherwise gentle answers: making shew as if he would condescend to their request, when he intended nothing lesse. At length he got the Town: where, even in presence of the Embassadors, of whose solicitation he had seemed so regardfull, he omitted no part of cruelty. Hereby he rendered himself odious to his neighbours, as a perfidious and cruell Prince. Especially his fact was detested of the *Rhodians*, who had made vehement intercession for the poor *Ciani*: and were advertised by Embassadors of purpose sent unto them from *Philip*. That, howsoever it were in his power to win 40 the Town as soon as he listed, yet in regard of his love to the *Rhodians*, he was contented to give it over. And by this his clemency, the Embassadors said, that he would manifest unto the world what slanderous tongues they were, which noised abroad such reports; as went of his falshood and oppression. Whilst the Embassadors were declaiming at *Rhodes* in the Theatre to this effect; there came some that made a true relation of what had hapned: shewing that *Philip* had sacked and destroyed the Town of *Cios*, and, after a cruell slaughter of the Inhabitants, had made slaves of all that escaped the sword. If the *Rhodians* took this in great despight, no lesse were the *Etolians* inflamed against him: since they had sent a Captain to take charge of the Town; being warned before by his doings at *Lysimachia* and *Chalcedon* (which he had with- 50 drawn from their Confederacy to his own) what little trust was to be reposed in the faith of this King. But most of all others was *Attalus* moved with consideration of the *Macedonians* violent ambition, and of his own estate. He had much to lose; and was not without hope of getting much, if he could make a strong party in *Greece*. He had already, as a new King, followed the example of *Alexanders* Captains, in purchasing with much liberality the love of the *Athenians*; which were notable Trumpeters of other mens virtue, having lost their own. On the friendship of the *Etolians* he had cause to presume; having bound them unto him by good offices, many and great, in their late

war

war with *Philip*. The *Rhodians* that were mighty at Sea, and held very good intelligence with the *Egyptians*, *Syrians*, and many other Princes and States, he easily drew into a freight alliance with him, by their hatred newly conceived against *Philip*.

Upon confidence in these his friends, but most of all, in the ready assistance of the *Rhodians*, *Attalus* prepared to deal with the *Macedonian* by open war. It had been unreasonable to procrastinate, and expect whereto the doings of the enemy tended, since his desire to fasten upon *Asia* was manifest, and his falshood no lesse manifest, than was such his desire. They met with him shortly not far from *Chios*, and fought with him a battell at Sea: wherein though *Attalus* was driven to run his own ship on ground, hardly escaping to land: though the Admirall of the *Rhodians* took his deaths wound: and though *Philip* after the battell took harbor under a Promontory, by which they had fought, so that he had the gathering of the wracks upon the shore: Yet forasmuch as he had suffered far greater losse of ships and men, than had the enemy; and since he durst not in few days after put forth to Sea, when *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* came to brave him in his Port; the honour of the victory was adjudged to his enemies. This notwithstanding, *Philip* afterwards besieged and won some towns in *Caria*: whether only in a bravery, and to despight his opposites; or whether upon any hopeful desire of conquest, it is uncertain. The stratagem, by which he won *Prinassus*, is worthy of noting. He attempted it by a mine; and finding the earth so stony, that it resisted his works, he nevertheless commanded the Pioners to make a noise under ground; and secretly in the night time he raised great mounts about the entrance of the mine, to breed an opinion in the besieged, that the work went marvellously forward. At length he sent word to the Town-men, that by his undermining, two acres of their wall stood onely upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, and entred by a Breach, they should expect no mercy. The *Prinassians* little thought, that he had fetched all his earth and rubbish by night a great way off, to raise up those heaps, which they saw; but rather that all had been extracted out of the mine. Wherefore they suffered themselves to be out-faced, and gave up the Town as lost, which the enemy had no hope to win by force. But *Philip* could not stay to settle himself in those parts. *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* were too strong for him at Sea, and compelled him to make haste back into *Macedon*; whither they followed him all the way in manner of pursuit.

## §. VIII.

*The Romans, after their Carthaginian war, seek matter of quarrell against Philip. The Athenians upon slight cause, proclaim war against Philip; moved thereto by Attalus; whom they slatter. Philip wins divers Towns; and makes peremptory answer to the Roman Embassador. The furious resolution of the Atydenti.*

These *Asiaticque* matters, which no way concerned the *Romans*, yet served well to make a noise in *Rome*; and fill the peoples heads, if not with a desire of making war in *Macedon*, at least with a conceit that it were expedient so to doe. The *Roman* Senate was perfectly informed of the state of those Eastern Countries; and knew that there was none other Nation than the *Greeks*, which lay between them and the Lordship of *Asia*. These *Greeks* were factious, and seldom or never at peace. As for the *Macedonian*; though length of time, and continuall dealings in *Greece* ever since the reigns of *Philip* and *Alexander*, had left no difference between him and the Naturalls: yet most of them abhorred his Dominion, because he was originally forsooth a *Barbarian*: many of them hated him upon ancient quarrels: and they that had been most beholding unto him, were nevertheless weary of him, by reason of his personall faults. 10 All this gave hope, that the affaires of *Greece* would not long detain the *Roman* Armies: especially since the divisions of the Country were such, that every petty Estate was apt to take counsell apart for it self, without much regarding the generality. But the poore Commonalty of *Rome* had no great affection to such a chargeable enterprize. They were already quite exhausted, by that grievous war with *Hannibal*: wherein they had given by Loan to the Republike, all their money: neither had they as yet received, neither did they receive untill fifteene or sixteene years after this, their whole sum back again. That part of payment also which was already made, being not in present money, but much of it in Land: it behoved them to rest a while; and bestow the

more

more diligence in tilling their grounds, by how much they were the lesse able to be-  
 row cost: Wherefore they took no pleasure to hear, that *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* had  
 sent Embassadours to sollicite them against *Philip*, with report of his bold attempts in  
*Asia*: or that *M. Aurelius*, their Agent in *Greece*, had sent letters of the same tenour to  
 the Senate, and magnified his intelligence, by setting out the preparations of this dan-  
 gerous enemy, that solicited not onely the Towns upon the Continent, but all the  
 Islands in those Seas, visiting them in person, or sending Embassadours, as one that  
 meant shortly to hold war with the *Romans* upon their own ground. *Philip* had indeed  
 no such intent: neither was he much too strong, either of himself, or by his alliance in  
 to be resisted by *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*; especially with the help of the *Æ-*  
*tolians* their good friends, and (in a manner) his own professed enemies. But such things  
 must be published abroad, if onely to predispose men unto the war, and give it the  
 more honest colour.

*Philip* was a man of ill condition; and therefore could not thrive by intermeddling in  
 the affaires of those that were more mighty than himself. He was too unskillfull, or o-  
 therwise too unapt, to retain his old friends: yet would he needs be seeking new ene-  
 mies. And he found them such, as he deserved to have them: for he offered his helpe  
 to their destruction, when they were in misery, and had done him no harm. It behoved  
 him therefore, either to have strained his forces to the utmost in making war upon  
 them; or in desisting from that injurious course, to have made amends for the wrongs  
 past; by doing friendly offices of his own accord. But he, having broken that League  
 of peace, which is of all other the most naturall, binding all men to offer no violence  
 willingly, unless they thinke themselves justly provoked; was afterwards too fondly  
 persuaded, that he might well be secure of the *Romans*, because of the written Coven-  
 ants of peace between him and them. There is not any forme of oath, whereby such  
 Articles of peace can be held inviolable, save onely \* by the water of *Styx*, that is, by *Nec-*  
*essitie*: which whilest it bindes one party, or both unto performance making it appa-  
 rent, that he shall be a loser who starts from the Conditions; it may so long (and so  
 long onely) be presumed, that there shall be no breach. Till *Hannibal* was vanquished,  
 the *Romans* never hearkened after *Philip*: for necessity made them let him alone. But  
 when once they had peace with *Carthage*; then was the River of *Styx* dried up: and  
 then could they swear as \* *Mercurie* did in the Comedy, by their own selves, even by  
 their good swords, that they had good reason to make war upon him. The voyage of  
*Sopater* into *Asick*, and the present war against *Attalus*, were matter of quarrell as much  
 as needed: or if this were not enough; the *Athenians* helped to furnish them with more.

The *Athenians*, being at this time Lords of no more than their own barren Territory,  
 took state upon them nevertheless, as in their ancient fortune. Two young Gentlemen  
 of *Asarnania* entring into the Temple of *Ceres*, in the dayes of Initiation, (wherein were  
 delivered the mysteries of Religion, or rather of idolatrous superstition, vainly said to  
 be available unto felicity after this life) discovered themselves by some impertinent  
 questions, to be none of those that were initiated. Hereupon they were brought before  
 the officers: and though it was apparent, that they came into the place by meer error,  
 not thinking to have therein done amiss; yet, as it had been for some heinous crime,  
 they were put to death. All their Country-men at home took this in ill part; and sought  
 to revenge it as a publike injury, by war upon the *Athenians*. Procuring therefore of  
*Philip* some *Macedonians* to help them, they entred into *Attica*: who wasted it with fire  
 and sword; & carried thence a great booty. This indignity stirred up the high-minded  
*Athenians*; and made them think upon doing more, than they had ability to performe.  
 All which at the present they could doe, was to send Embassadours to king *Attalus*; gra-  
 tulating his happy successe against *Philip*, and intreating him to visit their City. *Attalus*  
 was hereto the more willing, because he understood that the *Roman* Embassadours, ho-  
 vering about *Greece* for matter of intelligence, had a purpose to be there at the same  
 time. So he went thither, accompanied, besides his own followers, with some of the *Rho-*  
*dians*. Landing in the *Piræus*, he found the *Romans* there, with whom he had much  
 friendly conference: they rejoicing that he continued enemy to *Philip*; and he being  
 no lesse glad, when he heard of their purpose to renew the war. The *Athenians* came out  
 of their City, all the Magistrates, Priests, and Citizens, with their wives and children,  
 in as solemne a pomp as they could devise, to meet and honour the King. They entertain-

tained the *Romans* that were with him, in very loving manner: but towards *Attalus*  
 himself they omitted no point of observance, which their flattery could suggest. At  
 his first coming into the City, they called the people to Assembly: where they desired  
 him to honour them with his presence, and let them hear him speak. But he excused  
 himself; saying, That with an evil grace he should recount unto them those many be-  
 nefits, by which he studied to make them know what love he bore them. Wherefore  
 it was thought fit, that he should deliver in writing, what he would have to be pro-  
 pounded. He did so. The points of his Declaration were; first, what he had willingly  
 done for their sake: then, what had lately passed between him and *Philip*: lastly, an ex-  
 hortation unto them, to declare themselves against the *Macedonian*, whilest he with  
 the *Rhodians* and the *Romans*, were willing and ready to take their part: which if they  
 now refused to do, he protested, that afterwards it would be vain to crave his help.  
 There needed little intreaty: for they wereas willing to proclaim the war, as he to  
 desire it. As for other matters, they loaded him with immoderate honours: and ob-  
 tained, That unto the ten Tribes, whereof the body of their Citizens consisted, should  
 be added another, and called after his name; as if he were in part one of their Foun-  
 ders. To the *Rhodians* they also decreed a Crown of Gold, in reward of their vertue;  
 and made all the *Rhodians* free Citizens of *Athens*.

Thus began a great noise of war, wherein little was left unto the *Romans* for their  
 part; *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* taking all upon them. But while these were vainly mis-  
 pending the time, in seeking to draw the *Ætolians* to their party: that contrary to  
 their old manner were glad to be at quiet: *Philip* won the Towns of *Maronea* and *Æ-*  
*nus*, with many other strong places about the *Hellepont*. Likewise passing over the  
*Hellepont*, he laid siege unto *Abydus*; and won it, though he was fain to stay there long.  
 The Town held out, rather upon an obstinate resolution, and hope of succour from  
*Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, than any great ability to defend it self against so mighty an  
 Enemy. But the *Rhodians* sent thither onely one *Quadrirème* Gallie: and *Attalus* no  
 more than three hundred men, far too weak an aid to make good the place. The *Rom-*  
*an* Embassadours wondred much at this great negligence of them that had taken so  
 much upon them.

These Embassadours, *C. Claudius*, *M. Æmilius*, and *P. Sempronius*, were sent unto *Pto-*  
*lomy* Epibanes King of *Egypt*, to acquaint him with their victory against *Hannibal* and  
 the *Carthaginians*; as also to thank him for his favour unto them shewed in that war;  
 and to desire the continuance thereof, if they should need it against *Philip*. This *Egyptian*  
 King was now in the third or fourth year of his reign, which (as his father *Philopater*  
 had done before him) he began a very young boy. The courtesie for which the *Rom-*  
*ans* were to thank him, was, that out of *Egypt* they had lately been supplied with  
 corn, in a time of extreme dearth; when the miseries of War had made all their own  
 Provinces unable to relieve them. This message could not but be welcome to the *E-*  
*gyptian*: since it was well known, how *Philip* and *Antiochus* had combined themselves  
 against him, conspiring to take away his Kingdom. And therefore it might in reason be  
 hoped, that he, or his Councell for him, should offer to supply the *Romans* with corn:  
 since this their *Macedonian* Expedition concerned his Estate no lesse than theirs.

But as the errand was for the most part complementall; so had the Embassadours  
 both leisure and direction from the Senate, to look unto the things of *Greece* by the  
 way. Wherefore they agreed, that *M. Æmilius* the youngest of them should step aside,  
 and visit *Philip*, to trie if he could make him leave the siege of *Abydus*; which else he  
 was like to carry. *Æmilius*, coming to *Philip*, tells him, that his doings are contrary to  
 the League that he had made with the *Romans*. For *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, upon  
 whom he made war, were Confederate with *Rome*: and the Town of *Abydus*, which he  
 was now besieging, had a kinde of dependancy upon *Attalus*. Hereto *Philip* answered,  
 That *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* had made war upon him: and that he did onely requite  
 them with the like. Do you also (said *Æmilius*) requite these poor *Abydeni* with such terri-  
 ble War, for any the like Invasion by them first made upon you? The King was angry to  
 hear himself thus taken short: and therefore he roundly made answer to *Æmilius*; It is  
 your youth, Sir, and your beauty, and (above all,) your being a Roman, that makes you thus  
 presumptuous. But I would wish ye to remember the League that ye have made with me, and  
 to keep it: If ye do otherwise, I will make ye understand, that the Kingdome, and Name of

M m m m

Macedon

\* Sir Francis  
 Bacon de Jap.  
 Vetræum.

\* Plant.  
 Ampoir.

*Macedon is in matter of War, no lesse noble than the Roman.* So he dismissed the Embassadors, and had the Town immediately yielded to his discretion. The people had entertained a resolution, to have died every one of them, and set their Town on fire; binding themselves hereto by a fearfull oath, when Philip denied to accept them upon reasonable conditions. But having in desperate fight, once repelling him from the Breach, lost the greatest number of their Youth: it was thought meet by the Governours and Ancients of the City to change this resolution; and take such peace as could be gotten. So they carried out their Gold and Silver to Philip: about which whilst they were busie, the memory of their oath wrought so effectually in the younger sort; that, by exhortation of the Priests, they fell to murdering their women, children, and themselves. Hereof the King had so little compassion, that he said, he would grant the *Abydeni* three dayes leisure to die: and to that end forbade his men to enter the town; or hazzard themselves in interrupting the violence of those mad fools.

## §. IX.

*The Romans decree war against Philip, and send one of their Consuls into Greece, as it were in defence of the Athenians their Confederates. How poor the Athenians were at this time both in quality and estate.*

His calamity of the *Abydeni*, was likened by the Romans unto that of the *Saguntines*: which indeed it neerer resembled; though Rome was not alike interested in the quarrell. But to help themselves with pretence for the War, they had found out another *Saguntum*, even the Citie of *Athens*: which if the *Macedonian* should win, then rested there no more to do, than that he should presently imbarque himself for *Italy*, whither he would come; not as *Hannibal* from *Saguntum*, in five moneths, but in the short space of five dayes sailing. Thus *P. Sulpitius* the Consul told the multitude, when he exhorted them to make War upon Philip; which at his first propounding they had denied. The example of *Pyrrhus* was by him alledged; to shew, what Philip, with the power of a greater Kingdome, might dare to undertake: as also the fortunate voyage of *Scipio* into *Africa*; to shew the difference of making War abroad, and admitting it into the bowels of their own Country. By such arguments was the Commonalty of Rome induced to beleve, that this War with the *Macedonian* was both just and necessary. So it was decreed; and immediately the same Consul halted away towards *Macedon*, having that Province allotted unto him before, and all things in a readinesse, by order from the Senate; who followed other Motives than the people must be acquainted with. Great thanks were given to the *Athenian* Embassadors, of their constancy (as was said) in not changing their faith at such times as they stood in danger of being besieged. And indeed great thanks were due to them, though not upon the same occasion. For the people of Rome had no cause to think it a benefit unto themselves; that any *Greek* Town, refusing to sue unto the *Macedonian* for peace, requested their help against him. But the Senate, intending to take in hand the Conquest of the Eastern parts, had reason to give thanks unto those, that ministered the occasion. Since therefore it was an untrue suggestion, That Philip was making ready for *Italy*; and since neither *Attalus*, the *Rhodian*, nor any other State in those quarters, desired the Romans to give them protection: these busie-headed *Athenians*, who falling out with the *Acarnanians*, and consequently with Philip, a matter of May-game, (as was shewed before) sent Embassadors into all parts of the World, even to *Pholomy* of *Egypt*, and to the Romans, as well as to *Attalus*, and others their neighbours; must be accepted as cause of the War, and Authors of the benefit thence redounding.

Nevertheless as it loves to fall out where the meaning differs from the pretence; the doings of *P. Sulpitius* the Consul were such, as might have argued *Athens* to be the least part of his care. He failed not about *Peloponnesus*, but took the ready way to *Macedon*, and landing about the River of *Asopus*, between *Dyrrhacium* and *Apollonia*, there began the War. Soon upon his coming, the *Athenian* Embassadors were with him, and craved his help: whereof they could make no benefit whilst he was far from them. They bemoaned themselves as men besieged, and intreated him to deliver them.

them. For which cause he sent unto them *C. Claudius* with twenty Gallies, and a competent number of men: but the main of his forces he retained with him, for the prosecution of a greater designe. The *Athenians* were not indeed besieged: only some Rovers from *Chalcis*, in the Isle of *Eubœa*, and some bands of adventurers out of *Corinth*, used to take their ships, and spoile their fields; because they had declared themselves against King Philip, that was Lord of these two Towns. The robberies done by these Pyrats and Free-booters, were by the more eloquent than war-like *Athenians*, in this declining Age of their Fortune and Vertue, called a Siege. From such detriment the arrival of *Claudius*, and shortly after of three *Rhodian* Gallies, easily preserved them. As for the *Athenians* themselves, they that had been wont in ancient times to undertake the conquests of *Egypt*, *Cyprus*, and *Cicilia*; to make war upon the great *Perſian* King, and to hold so much of *Greece* in subjection, as made them redoubtable unto all the rest; had now no more than three ships, and those open ones, not much better than long boats. Yet thought they not themselves a whit the worse men, but stood as highly upon the glory and vertue of their Ancestors, as if it had been fill their own.

## §. X.

*The Town of Chalcis in Eubœa taken and sacked by the Romans and their Associates, that lay in Garrison at Athens. Philip attempteth to take Athens by surprise: maketh the Countrey about, and makes a journey into Peloponnesus. Of Nabis the Tyrant of Lacedæmon, and his wife. Philip offers to make war against Nabis for the Achæans. He returneth home through Attica, which he spoileth again: and provides against the Enemies. Some exploits of the Romans. Divers Princes joyn with them. Great labouring to draw the Ætolians into the war.*

Philip returning home from *Abydos*, heard news of the Roman Consul his being about *Apollonia*. But ere he stirred forth to give him entertainment, or perhaps before he had well resolved, whether it were best a while to sit still, and trie what might be done for obtaining of peace, or whether to make opposition, and resist these Invaders with all his forces: he received advertisement from *Chalcis* of a grievous mishap there befallen him, by procurement of the *Athenians*. For *C. Claudius* with his Romans, finding no such work at *Athens* as they had expected, or was answerable to the fame that went abroad, purposed to do somewhat that might quicken the war, and make his own employment better. He grew soon weary of sitting as a Scar-crow, to save the *Athenians* grounds from spoile; and therefore gladly took in hand a business of more importance. The Town of *Chalcis* was very negligently guarded by the *Macedonian* Souldiers therein, for that there was no Enemy at hand: and more negligently by the Towns-men, who reposed themselves upon their Garrison. Hereof *Claudius* having advertisement, sailed thither by night, for fear of being descried: and arriving there a little before break of day, took it by Scalado. He used no mercy, but slew all that came in his way: and wanting men to keep it, (unless he should have left the heartlesse *Athenians* to their own defence) he set it on fire; consuming the Kings Magazines of Corn, and all provisions for War, which were plentifully filled. Neither were he and his Associates contented with the great abundance of spoil which they carried aboard their ships, and with enlarging all those, whom Philip, as in a place of most security, kept there imprisoned: but to shew their despite and hatred unto the King, they overthrew and brake in pieces the Statues to him there erected. This done, they halted away towards *Athens*: where the news of their exploit was like to be joyfully welcomed. The King lay then at *Demetrias*, about some 20. miles thence; so whither when these tidings, or part of them, were brought him, though he saw that it was too late to remedy the matter; yet he made all haste to take revenge. He thought to have taken the *Athenians*, with their trusty friends, busie at work in ransacking the Town, and loading themselves with spoil: but they were gone before his coming. Five thousand light-armed foot he had with him, and three hundred horse: whereof leaving at *Chalcis* only a few to bury the dead, he marched from thence away speedily toward *Athens*: thinking it not unpossible to take his enemies, in the joy of their Victory, as full of negligence, as they had taken *Chalcis*. Neither had he much failed of his expectation, if a Foot-post that stood Scout for the City upon the borders, had not descried him.

him afar off, and swiftly carried word of his approach to *Athens*. It was mid-night when this Post came thither: who found all the Town asleep, as fearless of any danger. But the Magistrates, hearing his report, caused a trumpet out of their Citadell to sound the Alarm, and with all speed made ready for defence. Within a few hours *Philip* was there: who seeing the many lights, and other signes of busie preparation usall in such a case, understood that they had news of his coming; and therefore willed his men to repose themselves till it were day. It is like, that the paucity of his followers did help well to animate the Citizens, which beheld them from the walls. Wherefore though *Claudius* were not yet returned (who was to fetch a compass about by sea, and had no cause of haste) yet having in the Town some mercenary Souldiers, which they kept of their own, besides the great multitude of Citizens; they adventured to issue forth at a gate, whereto they saw *Philip* make approach. The King was glad of this; reckoning all those his own, that were thus hardy. He therefore onely willed his men to follow his example; and presently gave charge upon them. In that fight he gave singular proof of his valour: and beating down many of the Enemies with his own hands, drave them with great slaughter back into the City. The heat of his courage transported him further than discretion would have allowed, even to the very gate. But he retired without harm taking; for that they which were upon the Towers over the gate, could not use their casting weapons against him, without much endangering their own people that were thronging before him into the City. There was a temple of *Hercules*, a place of exercise, with a Grove, and many goodly Monuments besides, neer adjoining unto *Athens*: of which he spared none; but suffered the rage of his anger to extend, even unto the sepulchres of the dead. The next day came the *Romans*, and some Companies of *Attalus* his men from *Egina*; too late in regard of what was already past: but in good time to prevent him of satisfying his anger to the full, which as yet he had not done. So he departed from thence to *Corinth*, and hearing that the *Acheans* held a Parliament at *Argos*, he came thither to them unexpected.

The *Acheans* were devising upon war: which they intended to make against *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*: who being started up in the room of *Machanidas*, did greater mischief than any that went before him. This Tyrant relied wholly upon his mercenaries: and of his subjects had no regard. He was a cruell oppressor; a greedy extortioner upon those that lived under him; and one that in his naturall condition smelt rankly of the Hangman. In these qualities, his wife *Apege* was very fitly matched with him, since his dexterity was no greater in spoiling the men, than hers in fleecing their wives; whom she would never suffer to be at quiet, till they had presented her with all their jewels, and apparel. Her husband was so delighted with her property, that he caused an Image to be made, lively representing her; and apparelled it with such costly garments as he used to wear. But it was indeed an Engine, serving to torment men. Hereof he made use, when he meant to trie the vertue of his Rhetorick. For calling unto him some rich man, of whose money he was desirous; he would bring him into the room where this counterfeit *Apege* stood, and there use all his art of perswasion, to get what he desired, as it were by good will. If he could not so speed, but was answered with excuses; then took he the refractory denier by the hand, and told him, that perhaps his Wife *Apege* (who sat by in a Chair) could perswade more effectually. So he led him to the Image, that rose up and opened the arms, as it were for imbracement. Those arms were full of sharp iron nails, the like whereof was also sticking in the breasts, though hidden with her clothes: and herewith she griped the poor wretch, to the pleasure of the Tyrant, that laughed at his cruell death. Such, and worse (for it were long to tell all here that is spoken of him) was *Nabis* in his government. In his dealings abroad he combined with the *Ætolians*, as *Machanidas* and *Lycurgus* had done before him. By these he grew into acquaintance with the *Romans*; and was comprehended in the League which they made with *Philip*, at the end of their former War. Of *Philopemen*'s vertue he stood in fear; and therefore durst not provoke the *Acheans*, as long as they had such an able Commander. But when *Cycliades*, a far worse Captain, was their Prator, and all, or the greatest part of their Mercenaries were discharged; *Philopemen* being also gone into *Crete*, to follow his beloved occupation of War; then did *Nabis* fall upon their Territory; and wasting all the fields, made them distrust their own safety in the Towns.

Against

Against this Tyrant the *Acheans* were preparing for War, when *Philip* came among them; and had set down what proportion of Souldiers every City of their Corporation should furnish out. But *Philip* willed them not to trouble themselves with the care of this business; forasmuch as he alone would ease them of this War, & take the burden upon himself. With exceeding joy and thanks they accepted of this kinde offer. But then he told them, That, whilst he made War upon *Lacedæmon*, he ought not to leave his own Towns ungarded. In which respect he thought they would be pleased to send a few men to *Corinth*, and some Companies into the Isle of *Eubæa*; that so he might securely pursue the War against *Nabis*. Immediately they found out his device; which was none other, than to engage their Nation in his War against the *Romans*. Wherefore their Prator *Cycliades* made him answer, That their Laws forbade them to conclude any other matters in their Parliament, than those for which it was assembled. So passing the Decree, upon which they had agreed before, for preparing War against *Nabis*, he brake up the Assembly, with every mans good liking; whereas in former times, he had been thought no better than one of the Kings Parasites.

It grieved the King to have thus failed in his purpose with the *Acheans*. Nevertheless he gathered up among them a few Voluntaries; and so returned by *Corinth* back into *Attica*. There he met with *Philoxenus* one of his Captains, that with two thousand men had been doing what harm he might unto the Countrey. With this addition of strength, he attempted the Castle of *Elenfene*, the Haven of *Pyrene*, and even the City of *Athens*. But the *Romans* made such haste after him by Sea, thrusting themselves into every of these places; that he could no more than wreak his anger upon those goodly Temples, with which the Land of *Attica* was at that time singularly beautified. So he destroyed all the works of their notable Artificers, wrought in excellent Marble; which they had in plenty of their own; or, having long ago been Masters of the Sea, had brought from other places, where best choice was found. Neither did he onely pull all down: but caused his men to break the very stones, that they might be unserviceable to their reparation. His losse at *Chalcis* being thus revenged upon *Athens*, he went home into *Macedon*: and there made provision, both against the *Roman* Consul that lay about *Apollonia*; and against the *Dardaniens*, with other his bad neighbours, which were likely to infect him. Among his other cares he forgot not the *Ætolians*: to whose Parliament, shortly to be held at *Naupactus*, he sent an Embassage, requesting them to continue in his friendship. Thus was *Philip* occupied.

*Sulpitius* the *Roman* Consul encamped upon the River of *Apfus*. Thence he sent forth *Apustius* his Lieutenent, with part of the Army, to waste the borders of *Macedon*. *Apustius* took sundry Castles and Towns; using such extremity of sword and fire at *Antipatria*, the first good Town which he won by force, that none durst afterwards make resistance, unless they knew themselves able to hold out. Returning towards the Consul with his spoil, he was charged in the Reer, upon the passage of a brook, by *Athenagoras* a *Macedonian* Captain: but the *Romans* had the better, and killing many of these enemies, took prisoners many more, to the increase of their booty, with which they arrived in safety at their Camp. The success of this Expedition, though it were not great, yet served to draw into the *Roman* friendship those that had formerly no good inclination to the *Macedonian*. These were *Pleuratus*, the son of *Scerdilaidas* the *Illyrian*; *Aminander* King of the *Atthamians*, and *Bato* the son of *Longarus*, a Prince of the *Dardaniens*. They offered their assistance unto the Consul, who thanked them: and said, That he would shortly make use of *Pleuratus* and *Bato*, when he entered into *Macedon*: but that the friendship of *Aminander*, whose Country lay between the *Ætolians* and *Thessaly*, might be perhaps available with the *Ætolians*, to stir them up against *Philip*.

So the present care was wholly set upon the *Ætolian* Parliament at hand. Thither came Embassadors from the *Macedonian*, *Romans*, and *Athenians*. Of which, the *Macedonian* spake first, and said: That as there was nothing fallen out, which should occasion the breach of peace between his Master and the *Ætolians*; so was it to be hoped, that they would not suffer themselves, without good cause, to be carried away after other mens fancies. He prayed them to consider, how the *Romans* heretofore had made their wars, as if their war in *Greece* tended onely to the defence of the *Ætolians*, and yet notwithstanding had been angry, that the *Ætolians*, by making peace with *Philip*, had no longer

M m m m 3

need

need of such their Patronage. What might it be that made them so busie, in obtruding their protection upon those that needed it not? Surely it was even the generall hatred, which these *Barbarians* bore unto the *Greeks*. For even after the same sort had they lent their help to the *Mamertines*: and afterwards delivered *Syracuse*, when it was oppressed by *Carthaginian* Tyrants, but now both *Syracuse* & *Messana*, were subject unto the *Rods* and *Axes* of the *Romans*. To the same effect he alledged many examples, adding, That in like sort it would happen to the *Ætoli*ans: who if they drew such masters into *Greece*, must not look hereafter to hold, as now, free Parliaments of their own, wherein to consult about War and Peace: the *Romans* would ease them of this care, and fend them such a Moderator, as went every year from *Rome* to *Syracuse*. Wherefore he concluded, that it was best for them, whilest as yet they might, and whilest one of them as yet could help the other, to continue in their League with *Philip*: with whom if at any time, upon light occasion, they hapned to fall out, they might as lightly be reconciled: and with whom they had three yeeres ago made the peace which still continued; although that the very same *Romans* were then against it, who fought to break it now. It would have troubled the *Romans*, to frame a good answer to these objections. For the *Macedonian* had spoken the very truth, in shewing wherunto this their Patronage, which they offered with such importunity, did tend. Wherefore the *Athenians* were set on by them to speak next: who had store of eloquence, and matter of recrimination enough, to make *Philip* odious. These affirmed, that it was a great impudence in the *Macedonian* Embassadour, to call the *Romans* by the name of *Barbarians*: knowing in what barbarous manner his own King had, in few dayes past, made War upon the gods themselves, by destroying all their Temples in *Attica*. Herewithall they made a pitifull rehearfall of their own calamities: and said, that if *Philip* might have his will, *Ætolia*, and all the rest of *Greece*, should feel the same that *Attica* had felt; yea, that *Athen*s itself, together with *Minerva*, *Jupiter*, *Ceres*, and other of the gods, were like to have felt, if the Walls and the *Roman* arms had not defended them.

Then spake the *Romans*: who excusing, as well as they could, their own oppression of all those, in whose defence they had heretofore taken Arms, went roundly to the point in hand. They said, that they had of late made War in the *Ætoli*ans behalf, and that the *Ætoli*ans had without their consent made peace: whereof since the *Ætoli*ans must excuse themselves, by alledging that the *Romans*, being busied with *Carthage*, wanted leisure to give them aid convenient; so this excuse being now taken away, and the *Romans* wholly bent against their common Enemy, it concerned the *Ætoli*ans to take part with them in their war and victory, unless they had rather perish with *Philip*.

It might easily be perceived, that they which were so vehement, in offering their help ere it was desired, were themselves carried unto the War by more earnest motives, than a simple desire to help those friends, with whom they had no great acquaintance. This may have been the cause, why *Dorymachus* the *Ætoli*an Prætor shifted them off a while with a dilatory answer: though he told his Country-men, That by reserving themselves, till the matter were inclined one way or other, they might afterwards take part with those that had the better fortune. His answer was, first, in generall terms: That over-much haste was an enemy to good counsell: for which cause they must further deliberate, ere they concluded. But coming neerer to the matter in hand, he passed a Decree, That the Prætor might at any time call an Assembly of the State, and therein conclude upon this business; any Law to the contrary notwithstanding: whereas otherwise it was unlawfull to treat of such affaires, excepting two of their great Parliaments, that were held at set times.

## §. XI.

The meeting of Philip with the Romans, and skirmishing with them on his borders. The *Ætoli*ans invade his Dominions, and are beaten home. Some doings of Attalus and the Roman Fleet.

*Philip* was glad to hear, that the *Romans* had sped no better in their solicitation of the *Ætoli*ans. He thought them hereby disappointed in the very beginning, of one great help; and meant himself to disappoint them of another. His son *Perseus*, a very boy, was sent to keep the Streights of *Pelagonia* against the *Dardani*ans; having with him

him some of the Kings Councell, to govern both him and his Army. It was judged, as may seem, that the presence of the Kings son, how young soever, would both encourage his Followers, and terrifie the Enemies, by making them at least beleieve, that he was not weakly attended. And this may have been the reason, why the same *Perseus*, a few yeeres before this, was in like manner left upon the borders of *Ætolia* by his father; whom earnest business called thence another way. No danger of enemies being left on either hand: it was thought that the *Macedonian* Fleet under *Heraclides*, would serve to keep *Attalus*, with the *Rhodians* and *Romans*, from doing harm by Sea, when the Kings back was turned: who took his journey Westward against *Sulpicius* the Consul.

The Armies met in the Country of the *Deffaretii*, a people in the utmost borders of *Macedon* towards *Illyria*, about the Mountains of *Candavia*; that running along from *Hæmus* in the North, untill they joyn in the South with *Pindus*, inclose the Western parts of *Macedon*. Two or three dayes they lay in fight the one of the other, without making offer of battell. The Consul was the first that issued forth of his Camp into the open field. But *Philip* was not confident in the strength which he had then about him; and therefore thought it better to send forth some of his light-armed Mercenaries, and some part of his horse, to entertain them with skirmish. These were easily vanquished by the *Romans*, and driven back into their Camp. Now although it was so, that the King was unwilling to hazard all at first upon a Cast, and therefore sent for *Perseus* with his Companies, to increase his own forces: yet being no lesse unwilling to lose too much in reputation; he made shew a day after, as if he would have fought. He had found the advantage of a place fit for ambush, wherein he bestowed as many as he thought meet of his Targettiers: and so gave charge to *Athenagoras*, one of his Captains, to provoke out the *Romans* to fight; instructing both him and the Targettiers, how to behave themselves respectively, as opportunity should fall out. The *Romans* had no mistrust of any ambush, having fought upon the same ground a day before. Wherefore perhaps they might have sustained some notable detriment, if the Kings directions had been well followed. For when *Athenagoras* began to fall back, they charged him so hotly, that they drove him to an hasty flight, and pursued him as hard as they were able. But the Captains of the Targettiers, not staying to let them run into the danger, discovered themselves before it was time; and thereby made frustrate the work, to which they were appointed. The Consul hereby gathered, that the King had some desire to trie the fortune of a battell: which he therefore presented the second time; leading forth his Army, and setting it in order, with Elephants in the front: a kinde of help which the *Romans* had never used before, but had taken these of late from the *Carthaginians*. Such are the alterations wrought by Time. It was scarce above fourscore yeeres ere this, that *Pyrrhus* carried Elephants out of *Greece* into *Italy*, to affright the *Romans*, who had never seen any of those beasts before. But now the same *Romans* (whilest possibly some were yet alive, which had known that Expedition of *Pyrrhus*) come into *Macedon*, bringing Elephants with them: whereof the *Macedonians* and *Greeks* have none. *Philip* had patience to let the Consul brave him at his Trenches: wherein he did wisely; for the *Roman* had greater need to fight, than he. *Sulpicius* was unwilling to loose time: neither could he without great danger, lying so near the Enemy, that was strong in horse, send his men to fetch in corn out of the fields. Wherefore he removed 8. miles off: presuming that *Philip* would not adventure to meet him on even ground; and so the more boldly he suffered his Forragers to over-run the Country. The King was nothing sorry of this; but permitted the *Romans* to take their good pleasure: even till their presumption, and his own supposed fear, should make them careless. When this was come to passe, he took all his horse, and light-armed foot, with which he occupied a place in the mid-way, between the Forragers and their Camp. There he stayed in covert with part of his forces, to keep the passages that none should escape. The rest he sent abroad the Country, to fall upon the stragglers: willing them to put all to the sword, and let none run home with news to the Camp. The slaughter was great: and those which escaped the hands of them that were sent abroad to scowre the fields, lighted all or most of them upon the King and his companies in their flight: so as they were cut off by the way. Long it was ere the Camp had news of this. But in the end there escaped some: who though they could not make any



any perfect relation how the matter went: yet by telling what had hapned to themselves, raised a great multitude. *Sulpicius* hereupon sends forth all his horse, and bids them help their fellows where they saw it needfull: He himself with the Legions followed. The companies of horse divided themselves accordingly as they met with adventures upon the way, into many parts: not knowing where was most of the danger. Such of them as lighted upon *Philips* Troops, that were canvassing the field, took their task where they found it: But the main bulk of them fell upon the King himself. They had the disadvantage; as coming fewer, and unprepared, to one that was ready for them. So they were beaten away; and their fellows also might have been, if the King had well bethought himself, and given over in time. But while, not contented with such an harvest, he was too greedy about a poor gleanings; the *Roman* Legions appeared in sight: which emboldened their horse to make a re-charge. Then the danger apparent, enforced the *Macedonians* to look to their own safety. They ran which way they could: and (as men that lie in wait for others, are seldom heedfull of that which may befall themselves) to escape the Enemy, they declined the fairest way; so as they were plunged in Marishes and Bogs, wherein many of them were lost. The Kings horse was slain under him: and there had he been cast away, if a loving subject of his had not alighted, mounted him upon his own horse; and delivered him out of perill, at the expence of his own life, that running on foot was overtaken and killed.

In the common opinion *Philip* was charged with improvident rashness; & the Consul, with as much dulness, for his dayes service. A little longer stay would have delivered the King from these enemies without any blow: since when all the fields about them were wasted, they must needs have retired back to the Sea. On the other side, it was not thought unlikely, That if the *Romans* following the King, had set upon his Camp, at such time as he fled thither, half amazed with fear of being either slain or taken, they might have won it. But that noble Historian, *Livie*, (as is commonly his manner) hath judiciously observed, That neither the one, nor the other, were much too blame in this dayes work. For the main body of the Kings Army lay safe in his Camp; and could not be so astonished with the losse of two or three hundred horse, that it should therefore have abandoned the defence of the Trenches. And as for the King himself, he was advertised, that *Pleuratus* the *Illyrian*, and the *Dardaniens*, were fallen upon his Country; when they found the passage therinto open, after *Perseus* was called away from custody of the Streights. This was it which made him adventure to do somewhat betimes; that he might let the *Romans* going the sooner, and afterwards look unto his troublesome neighbours. In consideration of this, *Philip* was desirous to clear himself of the *Romans*, as soon as he might. And to that purpose he sent unto the Consul; requesting a day of truce for buriall of the dead. But in stead of so doing, he marched away by night, and left fires in his Camp to beguile the enemy, as if he had not stirred out of the place. *Sulpicius*, when he heard of the Kings departure, was not slow to follow him. He overtook the *Macedonians* in a place of strength, which they had fenced (for it was a woody ground) by cutting down trees, and laying them athwart the way where it was most open. In making of such places good, the *Macedonian* Phalanx was of little use; being a square battell of pikes, not fit for every ground. The Archers of *Crete* were judged, and were indeed, more serviceable in that case. But they were few; and their arrows were of small force against the *Roman* shields. The *Macedonians* therefore helped them by flinging of stones. But to no purpose. For the *Romans* got within them; and forced them to quit the place. This victory (such as it was) laid open unto the Consul some poor Towns thereabout; which partly were taken by strong hand, partly yielded for fear. But the spoil of these, and of the fields adjoining, was not sufficient to maintain his Army; and therefore he returned back to *Apollonia*.

The *Dardaniens*, hearing that *Philip* was come back, withdrew themselves apace out of the Country. The King sent *Athenagoras* to wait upon them home; whilest he himself went against the *Ætolians*. For *Damocritus* the Prætor of the *Ætolians*, who had reserved himself and his Nation unto the event of things, hearing report, that *Philip* was beaten once and again; as also that *Pleuratus* and the *Dardaniens* were fallen upon *Macedon*; grew no lesse busie on the sudden, than before he had been wife. He persuaded his Nation to take their time: and so, not staying to proclaim War, joynd his forces with *Aminander* the *Athamian*; and made invasion upon *Thessaly*. They took, and cruelly

cruelly sacked a few Towns: whereby they grew confident; as if, without any danger, they might do what they listed. But *Philip* came upon them ere they looked for him: and killing them as they lay dispersed, was like to have taken their Camp, if *Aminander* more warie than the *Ætolians*, had not helped at need, and made the Retreat through his own mountainous Country.

About the same time the *Roman* Fleet, assisted by *Attalus* and the *Rhodiens*, had taken some small Islands in the *Ægean* Sea. They took likewise the Town of *Oreum* in the Isle of *Eubæa*; and some other places thereabout. The Towns were given unto *Attalus*, after the same Compact that had formerly been made with the *Ætolians*: the goods therein found were given unto the *Romans*; and the people, for slaves. Other attempts on that side were hindred; either by foul weather at Sea; or by want of daring, and of meanes.

## §. XII

*Villius* the *Roman* Consul wastes a yeer to no effect. War of the Gauls in Italy. An Embassadour of the *Romans* to *Carthage*, *Mañissa*, and *Vermina*. The *Macedonian* prepares for defence of his Kingdom: and *T. Quintius Flaminius* is sent against him.

Thus the time ran away: and *P. Villius* a new Consul, took charge of the War in *Macedon*. He was troubled with a mutiny of his oldest Souldiers: whereof two thousand, having served long in *Sicily* and *Africa*, thought themselves much wronged, in that they could not be suffered to look unto their own estates at home. They were (belike) of the Legions that had served at *Cannæ*: as may seem by their complaint, of having been long absent from *Italy*; whither faine they would have returned, when by their Colonels they were shipped for *Macedon*. How *Villius* dealt with them, it is uncertaine. For the History of his yeer is lost: whereof the mille is not great, since he did nothing memorable. *Valerius Antius*, as we finde in *Livie*, hath adorned this *Villius* with a great exploit against *Philip*. Yet since *Livie* himself, an Historian to whom few of the best are matchable, could finde no such thing recorded in any good Author; we may reasonably beleeve, that *Villius* his yeer was idle.

In the beginning of this *Macedonian* war, the *Romans* found more trouble than could have been expected with the *Gauls*. Their Colony of *Placentia*, a goodly and strong Town, which neither *Hannibal*, nor after him *Asdrubal*, had been able to force; was taken by these *Barbarians*, and burnt in a manner to the ground. In like sort *Cremona* was attempted; but saved herself, taking warning by her neighbours calamity. *Amilcar* a *Carthaginian*, that stayed behinde *Asdrubal*, or *Mago* in those parts; was now become Captain of the *Gauls*, in these their enterprises. This when the *Romans* heard, they sent Embassadours to the *Carthaginians*: giving them to understand, That if they were not weary of the peace, it behoved them to call home, and deliver up, this their Citizen *Amilcar*; who made war in *Italy*. Hereunto it was added (perhaps left the message might seem otherwise to have favoured a little of some feare) That of the fugitive slaves belonging to the *Romans*, there were some reported to walk up and down in *Carthage*: which if it were so, then ought they to be restored back to their Masters; as was conditioned in the late peace. The Embassadours that were sent on this errand, had further charge to treat with *Mañissa*, as also with *Vermina* the son of *Syphax*. Unto *Mañissa*, besides matter of complement, they were to signifie what pleasure he might doe them, by lending them some of his *Numidian* Horse, to serve in their war against the *Macedonian*. *Vermina* had entreated the Senate, to vouchsafe unto him the name of King: and promised thereafter to deserve it, by his readinesse in doing them all good offices. But they were somewhat scrupulous in the matter: and said, That having been, and being still (as they took it) their Enemy, He ought first of all to desire peace; for that the name of King, was an honour which they used not to conferre upon any, save one upon such as had royally deserved it at their hands. The authority to make peace with him; was wholly committed unto these Embassadours, upon such termes as they should think fit; without further relation to the Senate and People. For they were then busied with greater cares. The *Carthaginians* made a gentle answer, That they wholly disclaimed *Amilcar*: banishing him, and confiscating his goods. As for the Fugitives: they had restored as many as they could finde; and would in that point, as far as was requisite,

requisite, give satisfaction to the Senate. Herewithall they sent a great proportion of Corn to Rome; and the like unto the Army that was in Macedonia. King Masaniſſa would have lent unto the Romans two thousand of his Numidian horse: but they were contented with half the number; and would accept no more. Vermina met with the Embassadors, to give them entertainment, on the borders of his Kingdom; and without any dispute, agreed with them upon terms of peace.

Thus were the Romans busied in taking order for their Macedonian War, that they might pursue it strongly, and without interruption. As for Amilcar and his Gader: they laid siege unto Crenoma; where L. Furius a Roman Pretor came upon them, fought a battell with them, and overcame them. Amilcar the Carthaginian died in this battell. 10 and the fruit of the victory was such, as both made amends for losses past, and left the worke easie to those, that afterwards should have the managing of war among those Gauls. So was there good leisure to think upon the businesse of Macedonia: where Philip was carefully providing to give contentment unto his Subjects, by punishing a bad Counsellour whom they hated; as also to assure unto himself the Achæans, by rendering unto them some Towns that he held of theirs; and finally to strengthen his Kingdom, not onely by exercising and training his people, but by fortifying the passages that led thereinto out of Epirus. This was in doing, when Villius, having unprofitably laboured to finde way into Macedonia, taking a journey (as Sulpicius had done before him) wherein he could not be supplied with victuals, determined at length to trie a new course. 20 But then came advertisement, that T. Quintius Flaminius was chosen Consul, and had Macedonia allotted him for his Province; whose coming was expected; and he very shortly arrived at the Army.

## §. XIII.

The Romans begin to make war by negotiation. T. Quintius wins a passage against Philip. Theſſaly waſted by Philip, the Romans, and Ætolians. The Achæans forsaking the Macedonian, take part with the Romans. A treaty of peace, that was vaine. Philip delivers Argos to Nabis the Tyrant, who presently enters into League with the Romans.

The Romans had not been wont in former times, to make War after such a trifling manner. It was their use, to give battell to the Enemy, as soon as they met with him. If he refused it, they besieged his Towns: and so forced him to trie the fortune of a day, with his disadvantage in reputation, when he had long forborne it (as it would be interpreted) upon knowledge of his own weaknesse. But in this their War with Philip, they began to learne of the subtle Greeks, the art of Negotiation: wherein hitherto they were not grown so fine, as within a little while they proved. Their Treasury was poor, and stood indebted, \* many yeeres after this unto private men, for part of those monies that had been borrowed in the second Punick War. This had made the Commonalty averse from the Macedonian War; and had thereby driven the Senators, greedy of the enterprize, to make use of their cunning. Yet being weary of the slow pace wherewith their businesse went forward, they determined to increase their Army, that they might have the lesse need to rely upon their Confederates. So they levied eight thousand Foot, and eight hundred Horse (the greater part of them of the Latines) which they sent with T. Quintius Flaminius, the new Consul, into Macedonia. Their Navie, and other meanes could well have served for the setting forth and transportation of a greater Army: but by straining themselves to the most of their ability, they should (besides other difficulties incident unto the sustenance of those that are too many and too far from home) have bred some jealousy in their friends of Greece, and thereby have lost some friends, yea, perhaps have increased the number of their enemies, more than of their own Souldiers. This present augmentation of the forces was very requisite; for that Attalus, about the same time, excused himself unto them, by his Embassadors; requesting that either they would undertake the defence of his Kingdom against Antiochus, who invaded it; or else that they would not take it uncourteously, that he quitted the War with Philip, and returned home, to looke unto that which more concerned him. Their answer was remarkable. They said, That it was not their manner to use the aide of their friends, longer than their friends had good opportunity, and could also be well contented to afford it; That they could not

nor honestly take part with Attalus, their good friend though he were, against Antiochus, whom they held in the like account; but, That they would deal with Antiochus by Embassadors, and (as common friends unto both of the kings) do their best to persuade an atonement between them. In such loving fashion did they now carry themselves, towards their good friend the King Antiochus; who reciprocally at their intreaty, withdrew his Army from the kingdom of Attalus. But how little they regarded these terms of friendship, after that once they had made an end with Philip, it will very soon appear. T. Quintius halting away from Rome, came betimes into his Province, with the supply decreed unto him; which consisted, for the most part, of old Souldiers, that had served in Spain and Affricke. He found Villius the old Consul, (whom at his coming he presently discharged) and King Philip of Macedonia, encamped one against the other, in the Streights of Epirus; by the river of Aſſus, or Aous. It was manifest, that either the Romans must fetch a compasse about, and seek their way into Macedonia, through the poor Country of the Dissertians; or else win, by force, that passage which the King defended. In taking the former way, they had already two yeeres together mis-spent their time, and been forced to returne back without profit, for want of victuals: whereof they could neither carry with them store sufficient, nor finde it on the way. But if they could once get over these Mountains, which divided the South of Epirus from Theſſaly, then should they enter into a plentifull Country; and, which by long dependance on the Macedonian, was become (in a manner) part of his Kingdom, whereof it made the South border. Nevertheless, the desire of winning this passage, was greater than the likelihood. For the river of Aſſus, running along through that valley which alone was open between the Mountains, made it all a deep Marish and unpassable Bogge: a very narrow way excepted, and a path cut out of the maine rock by mans hand. Wherefore Quintius allailed to climbe in the Mountains: but finding himself disappointed of this hope, through the diligence of his enemy, who neglected not the guard of them that was very easie; he was compelled to sit still, without doing any thing for the space of forty dayes.

This long time of rest gave hope unto Philip, that the war might bee ended by composition, upon some reasonable terms. He therefore so dealt with some of the Epirots, among whom he had many friends, that He and the Consul had a meeting together, but nothing was effected. The Consul would have him to set all Towns of Greece at liberty; and make amends for the injuries, which he had done to many people in his late Wars. Philip was contented to give liberty to those whom he had subdued of late; but unto such, as had been long subject unto him and his Ancestors, He thought it against all reason, that he should relinquish his claime and dominion over them. He also said, That as far forth as it should appear that he had done wrong unto any Town or people whatsoever, He could well be pleased to make such amends, as might seem convenient in the judgement of some free State, that had not been interested in those quarrells. But herewithall Quintius was not satisfied. There needed (he said) no judgement or compromise; forasmuch as it was apparent, that Philip had always been the invader; and had not made War, as one provoked, in his own defence. After this altercation, when they should come to particulars, and when the Consul was required to name those Towns, that he would have to be set at liberty; the first that he named were the Theſſalians: These had been subjects (though conditionall) unto the Macedonian Kings, ever since the dayes of Alexander the Great, and of Philip his Father. Wherefore, as soon as Flaminius had named the Theſſalians; the King in a rage demanded what sharper condition He would have laid upon him, had he been but vanquished. And herewithall abruptly he flang away; refusing to heare any more of such discourse.

After this the Consul strove in vaine two or three dayes together, to have prevailed against the difficulties of that passage which Philip kept. When he had well wearied himself, and could not resolve what course to take: there came to him an Heards-man sent from Charopus a Prince of the Epirots that favoured the Romans, who having long kept beasts in those Mountains, was thoroughly acquainted with all by-paths, & therefore undertook to guide the Romans, without any danger, to a place where they should have advantage of the Enemy. This guide, for fear of treacherous dealing, was fast bound: and being promised a great reward, in case he made good his word, had such Com.

Companies as was thought fit, appointed to follow his directions. They travelled by night (it being then about the full of the Moon) and rested in the day-time, for fear of being discovered. When they had recovered the hill-tops, and were above the *Macedonians*, (though undiscovered by them, because at their banks) they raised a great smoke, whereby they gave notice of their success unto the Consul. Some skirmishes, whilst they were on their journey, *T. Quintius* had held with the *Macedonians*; thereby to avert him from thought of that which was intended. But when on the third morning he saw the smoke arise more and more plainly, and thereby knew that his men had attained unto the place whither they were sent, he pressed as near as he could unto the Enemies Camp, and assailed them in their strength. He prevailed as little as in former times, untill the shouting of those that ran down the hill, & charged *Philip* on the back, astonished so the *Macedonians*, that they betook themselves to flight. The King, upon first apprehension of the danger, made all speed away to save himself. Yet anon considering, that the difficulty of the passage must needs hinder the *Romans* from pursuing him: he made a stand at the end of five miles, and gathered there together his broken troops, of whom he found wanting no more than two thousand men. The greatest loss was of his Camp and provisions: if not rather perhaps of his reputation; for that now the *Macedonians* began to stand in fear, lest being driven from a place of such advantage, they should hardly make good their party against the Enemy, upon equal ground. Neither was *Philip* himself much better persuaded. Wherefore he caused the *Thessalians*, as many of them as in his hasty retreat he could visit, to forsake their Towns and Country, carrying away with them as much as they were able, and spoiling all the rest. But all of them could not be persuaded, thus to abandon (for the pleasure of their King) their ancient habitations, and all the substance which they had gotten. Some there were that forcibly resisted him; which they might the better doe, for that he could not stay to use any great compulsion. He also himself took it very grievously, that he was driven to make such waste of a most pleasant and fruitful Country, which had ever been well affected unto him: so that a little hinderance did serve, to make him break off his purpose, and withdraw himselfe home into his Kingdome of *Macedon*.

The *Etolians* and *Athamanians*, when this fell out, were even in a readinesse to invade *Thessaly*; wherinto the ways lay more open, out of their severall Countries. When therefore they heard for certaintie, that *Philip* was beaten by the *Romans*: they forelotted not the occasion, but made all speed, each of them to lay hold upon what they might. *T. Quintius* followed them within a little while: but they had gotten so much before his coming, that he, in gleaming after their harvest, could not finde enough to maintain his Army. Thus were the poore *Thessalians*, of whose liberty the *Romans* a few dayes since had made shew to be very desirous, wasted by the same *Romans* and their Confederates; not knowing which way to turne themselves, or whom to avoide. *T. Quintius* won *Phaleria* by assault: *Metropolis* and *Piera* yielded unto him. *Rhage* he besieged: and having made a faire breach, yet was unable to force it; so stoutly it was defended both by the Inhabitants, and by a *Macedonian* garrison therein. *Philip* also at the same time, having somewhat recollected his spirits, hovered about *Tempe* with his Army, thrusting men into all places, that were like to be distressed. So the Consul, having well-near spent his victuals, and seeing no hope to prevail at *Rhage*; brake up his siege, and departed out of *Thessaly*. He had appointed his ships of burden to meet him at *Anticyra*, an Haven Town of *Phocis*, on the Gulph of *Corinth*: which Country being friend to the *Macedonian*, he presently invaded; not so much for hatred unto the people, as because it lay conveniently seated between *Thessaly* and other regions, where-in he had business, or was shortly like to have. Many Towns in *Phocis* he won by assault: many were yielded up unto him for fear; and within short space he had (in effect) maltreated it all.

In the meane time *L. Quintius* the Consul's brother, being then Admirall for the *Romans* in this war, joynd with King *Attalus* and the *Rhodian* Fleet. They won two Cities in *Euboea*; and afterward laid siege unto *Cenchree*, an Haven and Arceanall of the *Corinthians* on their Easterne Sea. This enterprize did somewhat help forward the *Acheans*, in their desire to leave the part of *Philip*; since it might come to passe, that *Corinth* it self, ere long time were spent; and that *Cenchree*, with other places appertaining

to *Corinth*, now very shortly should be rendred unto their Nation, by favour of the *Romans*.

But there were other motives, inducing the *Acheans* to preferre the friendship of the *Romans*, before the patronage of *Philip*; whereto they had been long accustomed. For this King had so many waies offended them in time of peace, that they thought it the best course to rid their hands of him; whilst being intangled in a dangerous War, he wanted means to hinder the execution of such counsell as they should hold the safest. His tyrannous practices to make himselfe their absolute Lord: his poisoning of *Aratus* their old Governour: his false dealing with the *Messonians*, *Epirots*, and other people their old Confederates, and his own dependants: together with many particular outrages by him committed; and caused them long since to hold him as a necessary evil, even whilst they were unable to be without his assistance. But since by the vertue of *Philopemen*, they were grown somewhat confident in their own strength, so as without the *Macedonians* help they could as well subsist, as having him to friend: then did they one-ly think how evil he was; and thereupon rejoyce the more, in that he was become no longer necessary. It angered him to perceive how they stood affected: and therefore he sent murderers to take away the life of \* *Philopemen*. But failing in this enterprize; and being detected, he did thereby onely set fire to the Wood, which was thoroughly dry before, and prepared to burn. *Philopemen* wrought so with the *Acheans*, that no discourse was more familiar with them, than what great cause they had to withdraw themselves from the *Macedonian*. *Cycliadas*, a principal man among them, and lately their Prator, was expelled by them, for shewing himselfe passionate in the cause of *Philip*; and *Aristaeus* chosen Prator, who laboured to joine them in society with the *Romans*.

These news were very welcome to *T. Quintius*. Embassadours were sent from the *Romans* and their Confederates, King *Attalus*, the *Rhodians* and *Athenians*, to treat with the *Acheans*, making promise, that they should have *Corinth* restored unto them, if they would forsake the *Macedonian*. A Parliament of the *Acheans* was held at *Scycon*, to deliberate and resolve in this weighty case. Therein the *Romans* and their adherents desired the *Acheans* to joine with them in making War upon *Philip*. Contrariwise, the Embassadours of *Philip*, whom he had also sent for this business, admonishing the *Acheans* of their Alliance with the King, and of their faith due unto him; requested them, that they would be contented to remain as Neuters. This moderate request of *Philip's* Embassadours did no way advance their Masters cause. Rather it gave the *Acheans* to understand, That he, who could be satisfied with so little at their hands, knew himselfe unable to gratifie them in any reciprocal demand. Yet were there many in that great Councell, who remembering the benefits of *Philip* and *Antigonus*, laboured earnestly for the preservation of the ancient League. But in fine, the sense of late injuries, and expectation of like or worse from him in the future; prevailed against the memory of those old good turns, which he (and *Antigonus* before him) had partly sold unto them, & partly had used as baits, whereby to allure them into absolute subjection. Neither was it perhaps of the least importance; That the *Romans* were strong, and likely to prevail in the end. So after much altercation, the Decree passed, That they should thence-forward renounce the *Macedonian*, and take part with his enemies in this War. With *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* they forthwith entred into society: with the *Romans* (because no League would be of force, untill the Senate and people had approved it) they forbore to decree any society at the present, untill the return of those Embassadours from *Rome*, which they determined to send thither of purpose. The *Megalopolitans*, *Dymeans*, and *Argives*, having done their best for the *Macedonian*, as by many respects they were bound, rose up out of the Councell, and departed before the passing of the Decree; which they could not resist, nor yet with honesty thereto give assent. For this their good will, and greater, which they shortly manifested, the *Argives* had so little thank; that all the rest of the *Acheans* may be the better held excused, for escaping how they might, out of the hands of so fell a Prince.

Soon after this, upon a solemn day at *Argos*, the affection of the Citizens discovered itselfe so plainly, in the behalf of *Philip*, that they which were his Partisans within the Town, made no doubt of putting the City into his hands, if they might have any small assistance. *Philocles* a Lieutenent of the Kings, lay then in *Corinth*, which he had manfully defended against the *Romans* and *Attalus*. Him the Conspirators drew to

N n n n

Argos;

\* Plat. in vit.  
Philopem.  
769. l. 23.

*Argos*; whither coming on a sudden, and finding the multitude ready to joyn with him, he easily compelled the *Achaean* Garrison to quit the place.

This getting of *Argos*, together with the good defence of *Corinth*, and some other Towns, as it helped *Philip* a little in his reputation, so they gave him hope to obtain some good end by Treaty, whilst as yet with his honour he might seek it: and when (the Winter being now come on) a new Consul would shortly be chosen; who should take the work out of *Titus* his hands; if it were not concluded the sooner. *Titus* had the like respect unto himself; and therefore thought it best, since more could not be done, to pre-dispose things unto a Conclusion, for his own reputation. The meeting was appointed to be held on the Sea-shore, in the Bay then called the *Malian*, or *Lami-an Bay*, now (as is supposed) the *Gulf of Zion*, in the *Egean Sea*, or *Archipelago*. Thither came *Titus* with *Aminander* the *Athamian*; an Embassador of *Attalus*; the Admirall of *Rhodes*; and some Agents for the *Ætolians* and *Achaens*. *Philip* had with him some few of his own Captains, and *Cycladas*, lately banished for his sake out of *Achaia*. He refused to come on shore: though fearing (as he said) none but the immortal Gods; yet misdoubting some treachery in the *Ætolians*. The demands of *Titus* in behalf of the *Romans*, were, That he should set all Cities of *Greece* at liberty; deliver up to the *Romans* and their Confederates, all prisoners which he had of theirs, and Renegadoes; likewise whatsoever he held of theirs in *Illyria*; and whatsoever about *Greece* or *Asia* he had gotten from *Pholomy* then King of *Egypt*, after his fathers death. *Attalus* demanded restitution to be made, entire of Ships, Towns, and Temples by him taken and spoiled in the late War between them. The *Rhodians* would have again the Country of *Perea*, lying over against their Islands; as also that he should withdraw his garrisons out of divers Towns about the *Hellepont*, and other Havens of their friends. The *Achaens* desired restitution of *Argos* and *Corinth*: about the one of which they might, not unjustly, quarrell with him; the other had been long his own by their consent. The *Ætolians* took upon them angrily, as Patrons of *Greece*: willing him to depart out of it, even out of the whole Country, leaving it free; and withall to deliver up unto them, whatsoever he held that had at any time been theirs. Neither were they herewithall content; but insolently declaimed against him, for that which he had lately done in *Thessaly*; corrupting (as they said) the rewards of the Victors, by destroying, when he was vanquished, those Towns, which else they might have gotten. To answer these malapart *Ætolians*, *Philip* commanded his Gallie to be rowed nearer the shore. But they began to plie him afresh: telling him that he must obey his betters, unless he were able to defend himself by force of Arms. He answered them (as he was much given to gybing) with sundry scoffes; and especially with one, which made the *Roman* Consul understand what manner of companions these *Ætolians* were. For he said, That he had often dealt with them; as likewise the best of the *Greeks*; desiring them to abrogate a wicked law, which permitted them to take spoile from spoile: yet could he get no better an answer, than that they would sooner take *Ætolia* out of *Ætolia*. *Titus* wondered what might be the meaning of this strange Law. So the King told him, That they held it a laudable custome, as often as War happened between their friends, to hold up the quarrell, by sending Voluntaries to serve on both sides, that should spoile both the one and the other. As for the liberty of *Greece*, he said it was strange that the *Ætolians* should be so careful thereof, since divers Tribes of their own, which he there named, were indeed no *Grecians*: wherefore he would fain know, whether the *Romans* would give him leave to make slaves of those *Ætolians*, which were no *Greeks*. *Titus* hereat smiled, and was no whit offended, to hear the *Ætolians* well railed up; touching whom he began to understand, how odious they were in all the Country. As for that general demand of setting all *Greece* at liberty, *Philip* acknowledged, that it might well seeme so the greatnesse of the *Romans*; though he would also consider, what might betwix his own dignity. But that the *Ætolians*, *Rhodians*, and other petty Estates, should thus presume, under countenance of the *Romans*, to take upon them, as if by their great might he should be thereunto compelled: it was, he said, a strange and ridiculous insolence. The *Achaens* he charged with much ingratitude; reciting against them some Decrees of their own; wherein they had laden both *Antigonus* and him, with more than humane honours. Nevertheless he said, that he would render *Argos* unto them: but as touching *Corinth*, that he would further deliberate with *Titus* himself.

Thus

Thus he addressed himself wholly to the *Roman* General; unto whom if he could give satisfaction, he cared little for all the rest. With *Attalus* and the *Rhodians*, his late war (he said) was onely defensive; they having been the offerers: or if he gave them any occasion, it was onely in helping *Prusias*, his son-in-law; neither did he see why they should rather seek amends at his hands, than he at theirs. For whereas they complained, that spoiling a Temple of *Venus*, he had cut down the Grove, and pleasant walks thereabouts: what could he do more, than send Gardners thither with young plants; if one King of another would stand to ask such recompence? Thus he jested the matter out: but offered nevertheless, in honour of the *Romans*, to give back the Region of *Perea* to the *Rhodians*; as likewise to *Attalus*, the Ships and Prisoners of his, whereof he had then possession. Thus ended that dayes conference, because it was late: *Philip* requiring a nights leisure to think upon the Articles, which were many, and he ill provided of Council, wherewith to advise about them. For your being so ill provided of Council (said *Titus*) may even thank your self; as having murdered all your friends, that were wont to advise you faithfully. The next day *Philip* came not, until it was late at night; excusing his long stay by the weightinesse of the things propounded, whereon he could not suddenly tell how to resolve. But it was beleev'd, that he thereby sought to abridge the *Ætolians* of leisure to rail at him. And this was the more likely, for that he desired conference in private with the *Roman* General. The sum of his discourse, as *Titus* afterward related it, was, That he would give the *Achaens* both *Argos* and *Corinth*; as also that he would render unto *Attalus* and the *Rhodians* what he had promised the day before; likewise to the *Ætolians*, that he would grant some part of their demands; and to the *Romans*, whatsoever they did challenge. This when *Titus* his associates heard, they exclaimed against it, saying, That if the King were suffered to retain any thing in *Greece*, he would shortly get possession of all which he now rendered up. The noise that they made came to *Philip*'s ear: who thereupon desired a third day of meeting; and protested, that if he could not persuade them, he would suffer himself to be perswaded by them. So the third day they met early in the morning: at what time the King intreated them all, that they would with sincere affection hearken unto good offers of peace; and immediately conclude it, if they could like well of those Conditions which he had already tendered; or otherwise, that they would make truce with him for the present, and let him send Embassadors to *Rome*, where he would referre himself to the courtesie of the Senate.

This was even as *Quintus* would have it: who stood in doubt, lest a new Consul might happen to defraud him of the honour, which he expected by ending of the War. So he easily prevailed with the rest to assent hereunto: so far as much as it was Winter, a time unfit for service in the War; and since, without authority of the Senate, he should be unable to proceed resolutely either in War or Peace. Further, he willed them to send their severall Embassadors to *Rome*, which intimating unto the Senate what each of them required, should easily hinder *Philip* from obtaining any thing to their prejudice. Among the rest, he perswaded King *Aminander* to make a journey to *Rome* in person: knowing well, that the name of a King, together with the confluence of so many Embassadors, would serve to make his own actions more glorious in the City. All this tended to procure that his own command of the Army in *Greece* might be prorogued. And to the same end had he dealt with some of the Tribunes of the people at *Rome*: who had already (though as yet he knew not so much) obtained it for him, partly by their authority, partly by good reasons which they alleged unto the Senate.

The Embassadors of the *Greeks*, when they had audience at *Rome*, spake bitterly against the King, with good liking of the Senate; which was more desirous of victory, than of satisfaction. They magnified the honourable purpose of the *Romans*, in undertaking to set *Greece* at liberty. But this (they said) could never be effected; unless especial care were taken, that the King should be dispossessed of *Corinth*, *Chalcis*, & *Demetrias*. In this point they were so vehement, producing a Map of the Country, and making demonstration how those places held all the rest in servility; that the Senate agreed to have it even so as they desired. When therefore the Embassadors of *Philip* were brought in, and began to have made a long Oration; they were briefly cut off in the midst of their Preface, with this one demand: Whether their Master would yeeld up *Corinth*, *Chalcis*, and *Demetrias*. Hereto they made answer, That concerning those places,

Nnnn 2 the

the King had given them no direction or commission what to say or do. This was enough. The Senate would no longer hearken to *Philips* desire of peace; wherein they said he did no better than trifle. Yet might his Embassadors have truly said, That neither the *Ætolians*, *Acheans*, nor any of their fellows, had in the late Treaty required by name, that *Chalcis* and *Demetrias* should be yielded up. For which of them indeed could make any claim to either of these Towns? As for *Corinth*, whereto the *Acheans* had some right; (though their right were no better, than that, having stoln it from one *Macedonian* King in a night, they had, after mature deliberation, made it away by bargain unto another) *Philip* had already condescended to give it back unto them. And this perhaps would have been alledged, even against the *Greeks*, in excuse of the King, by some of *T. Quintius* his friends; that so he might have had honour to conclude the war, if a successor had been decreed unto him. But since he was appointed to continue Generall: neither his friends at *Rome*, nor he himself, after the returne of the Embassadors unto *Greece*, cared to give care unto any talk of peace.

*Philip* seeing that his *Acheans* had forsaken him, and joyned with their common enemies; thought even to deal with them in the like manner, by reconciling himself unto *Nabis*, whom they hated most. There were not many yeeres past, since the *Lacedæmonians* under *Cleomenes*, with little other help than their own strength, had been almost strong enough both for the *Macedonians* and *Acheans* together. But now the condition of things was altered. *Nabis* his force consisted, in a manner, wholly in his Mercenaries: for he was a Tyrant, though styling himself King. Yet he sorely vexed the *Acheans*: and therefore seemed to *Philip* one likely to stand him in great stead, if he could be won. To this purpose it was thought meet, that the Town of *Argos*, which could not otherwise be easily defended, should be consigned over into his hands; in hope, that such a benefit would serve to tie him fast unto the *Macedonian*. *Philocles* the Kings Lieutenant, who was appointed to deal with *Nabis*, added further, That it was his Masters purpose to make a freight alliance with the *Lacedæmonians*, by giving some daughters of his own in marriage unto *Nabis* his sons. This could not but be well taken. Yet *Nabis* made some scruple in accepting the Town of *Argos*; unless by decree of the Citizens themselves he might be called into it. Hereabout *Philocles* dealt with the *Argives*: but found them so averse, that in open assembly of the people, they detested the very name of the Tyrant, with many railing words. *Nabis* hearing of this, thought he had thereby a good occasion to rob and fleece them. So he willed *Philocles*, without more ado, to make over the Town which he was ready to receive. *Philocles* accordingly did let him with his Army into it by night; and gave him possession of the strongest places therein. Thus dealt *Philip* with the *Argives*: who for very love had forsaken the *Acheans*, to take his part. Early in the morning, the Tyrant made himself master of all the gates. A few of the principall men, understanding how things went, fled out of the City at the first tumult. Wherefore they were all banished, and their goods confiscated. The rest of the chief Citizens that stayed behind, were commanded to bring forth, out of hand, all their Gold and Silver. Also a great imposition of money was laid upon all those that were thought able to pay it. Such as made their contribution readily, were dismissed without more ado. But if any stood long upon the matter: or played the thieves in purloining their own goods; they were put to the whip, and besides losse of their wealth, had their torments to boot. This done, the Tyrant began to make popular laws; namely, such as might serve to make him gracious with the rascall multitude: abrogating all debts, and dividing the Lands of the rich among the poor. By such art of oppressing the great ones, it hath been an old custome of Tyrants, to assure themselves of the Vulgar for a time.

As soon as *Nabis* had gotten *Argos*, He sent the newes to *T. Quintius*; and offered to joyn with him against *Philip*. *Titus* was glad of it: so as he took the paines to crosse over the Straights into *Peloponnesus*, there to meet with *Nabis*. They had soon agreed (though King *Attalus*, who was present with the Consul, made some cavill touching *Argos*) and the Tyrant lent unto the *Roman*, six hundred of his Mercenaries of *Crete*: as also he agreed with the *Acheans*, upon a Truce for four moneths, reserving the final conclusion of peace between them untill the War of *Philip* should be ended; which after this continued not long,

## §. XIII.

The battell at *Cynoscephale*, wherein *Philip* was vanquished by *T. Quintius*.

*Titus Quintius*, as soon as he understood that he was appointed to have command of the Army, without any other limitation of time, than during the pleasure of the Senate; made all things ready for diligent pursuit of the War. The like did *Philip*: who having failed in his negotiation of peace, and no lesse failed in his hopes of getting *Nabis* to friend in that War; meant afterwards wholly to rely upon himself.

*Titus* had in his Army about six and twenty thousand: and *Philip* a proportionable number. But neither of them knew the others strength, or what his Enemy intended to do. Onely *Titus* heard that *Philip* was in *Thessaly*, and thereupon addressed himself to seek him out. They had like to have met unawares, neer unto the City of *Phere*: where the vantage-grounds on both sides discovered each other; and sent word thereof unto their severall Captains. But neither of them were over hasty to commit all to hazard upon so short warning. The day following each of them sent out three hundred Horse, with as many light-armed Foot, to make a better discovery. These met, and fought a long while: returning finally back unto their severall Camps, with little advantage unto either side. The Country about *Phere* was thick set with trees: and otherwise full of gardens and mud-walls; which make it improper for the service of the *Macedonian Phalanx*. Wherefore the King dislodged, intending to remove back into *Scotus*, in the Frontier of *Macedon*; where he might be plentifully served with all necessaries. *Titus* conceived aright his meaning; and therefore purposed also to march thitherwards; were it onely to waste the Country. There lay between them a great ledge of hills, which hindered the one from knowing what course the other took. Nevertheless they encamped not far asunder, both the first and the second night; though neither of them understood what was become of the other. The third day was very tempestuous; and forced each of them to take up his lodging where he found it by chance. Then sent they forth discoverers again, in greater number than before. These meeting together, held a long fight, wherein at first the *Macedonians* had the worse. But *Philip* anon sent in such strong supply; that if the resistance of the *Ætolians* had not been desperate, the *Romans* their fellows had been driven back into their Camp. Yet all resistance notwithstanding, the *Macedonians* prevailed: so that *Titus* himself was faine to bring forth his Legions, that were not a little discouraged, by the defeat of all their Horse, to animate those which were in flight.

It was altogether besides the Kings purpose to put the fortune of a battell in trust that day, with so much of his Estate as might thereon depend. But the newes came to him thick and tumultuously, how the enemies fled, and how the day was his own, if he could use an occasion, the like whereof he should not often finde. This caused him to alter his purpose: in so much as he embattelled his men; & climbed up those hills, which, for that the knops thereon had some resemblance unto Dogs heads, were called, by a word signifying as much, *Cynoscephale*. As soon as he was on the hill-top; it did him good to see that they of his own light armature were busie in fight, almost at the very Camp of the Enemies; whom they had repelled so far. He had also liberty to choose his ground, as might serve best his advantage; forasmuch as the *Romans* were quite driven from all parts of the Hill. But of this commodity he could make no great use: the roughnesse of the place among those Dogs heads, as they were called, serving nothing aptly for his *Phalanx*. Nevertheless he found convenient room, wherein to marshall the one part of his Army: and gave order unto his Captains, to follow with the rest; embattelling them as they might. Whilst he was doing this: He perceived that his Horsemen and light armature began to shrink, as being fallen upon the *Roman* Legions, by force whereof they were driven to recoyle. He sets forward to help them: and they no lesse hastily draw unto him for succour; having the *Romans* not far behind them.

As the Legions began to climb the Hill; *Philip* commanded those of his *Phalanx* to charge their pikes, and entertain them. Here *Titus* found an extreme difficult piece

of work. For this *Phalanx* being a great square battell of armed pikes, like in all points to those which are now used in our modern Wars: and being in like manner used, as are ours; was not to be resisted by the *Roman* Targettiers, as long as the *Phalanx* it self held together undissolved. The *Macedonians* were embattelled in very close order: so that two of them stood opposite to one of the *Romans*; as also the pikes of the first rank had their points advanced two or three foot before their fore-men. Wherefore it is no marvell if the *Romans* gave back: every one of them being troubled (as it were) with ten enemies at once; and not able to come nearer to the next of them, than the length of a dozen foot, or thereabout. *Titus* finding this, and not knowing how to remedy it, was greatly troubled: for that still the *Phalanx* bare down all which came in the way. But in the mean while he observed, That they which were appointed by *Philip* to make his left wing, were not able through the much unevenness of the ground, to put themselves in order: so as either they kept their places on the Hill-tops; or else (which was worse) upon desire either of beholding the pastime, or of seeming to be partakers in the work, ran foolishly along by the side of their fellows, which were occupied in fight.

Of this their disorder he made great and present use. He caused the right wing of his battell to march up the Hill against these ill-ordered troupes: his Elephants leading the way, to increase the terror. The *Macedonians* were readier to dispute what should be done in such a case, than well advised what to do; as having no one man appointed to command that part in chief. Indeed if they should have done their best, it could not have served; since the ground whereon they stood, made their weapons unusefull. For let it be supposed, that *Philip* having six and twenty thousand in his Army (as he is said to have been equal to the Enemy in number) had four thousand Horse, four thousand Targettiers, and four thousand light-armed: so shall there remain fourteen thousand Pikes; whereof himself had embattelled the one half in a *Phalanx*; the other half in the left wing, are they whom *Quintius* is ready now to charge. The *Phalanx* having usually sixteen in File, must, when it consisted of seven thousand, have well-neer four hundred and forty in rank: but four hundred would serve, to make a Front long enough; the other forty or seven and thirty Files might be cut off, and reckoned in the number of the Targettiers, or light-armed. Allowing therefore, as *Polybius* doth, to every man of them three foot of ground: this Front must have occupied twelve hundred foot, or two hundred and forty paces; that is, very near a quarter of a mile in length. Such a space of open Champaign, free from incumbrance of Trees, Ditches, Hillocks, or the like impediments, that must of necessity disjoin this close battell of the *Phalanx*; was not every-where to be found. Here at *Cynosephale* *Philip* had so much room, as would onely suffice for the one half of his men; the rest were fain to stand still and look about them, being hindered from putting themselves in order, by the roughness of the *Dogs heads*. But the *Romans*, to whom all grounds were much alike, were not hindered from coming up unto them; nor found any difficulty in murthering those Enemies, whose feet were in a manner bound by the discommodity of the place. The very first impression of the Elephants, caused them to give back; and the coming on of the Legions, to betake themselves to flight. A *Roman* Tribune or Colonel, seeing the victory on that part assured, left the prosecution of it unto others: and being followed by twenty Ensignes or Maniples, that is, (as they might fall out) by some two thousand men, took in hand a notable piece of work; and mainly helpful to making of the victory compleat. He considered that *Philip*, in pursuing the right wing of the *Romans*, was run on so far, as that himself with his fellows, in mounting the Hill to charge the left wing of the *Macedonians*, was already gotten above the Kings head. Wherefore he turned to the left hand, and making down the Hill after the Kings *Phalanx*, fell upon it in the Rear. The hindermost ranks of the *Phalanx*, all of them indeed save the first five, were accustomed, when the battells came to joyning, to carry their pikes upright; and with the whole weight of their bodies to thrust on their fore-men: and so were they doing at the present. This was another great inconvenience in the *Macedonian Phalanx*. That it served neither for offence nor defence, except onely in Front. For though it were so, that *Alexander*, when he was to fight with *Darius* in *Meopotamia*, arranged his *Phalanx* in such order, that all the four sides of it were as so many Fronts looking sundry ways,

Excerpt. & Polyb. lib. 17.

waies, because he expected that he should be encompassed round: yet is it to be understood, that herein he altered the usuall form; as also at the same time he embattelled his men in loose order, that so with ease they might turn their weapons which way need should require. Likewise it is to be considered, that *Alexander's* men being thus disposed, were fit onely to keep their own ground; not being able to follow upon the enemy, unless their hindmost ranks could have marched backwards. But in this present case of *Philip*, there was no such provision for resistance. Therefore his men, being otherwise unable to help themselves, threw down their weapons & fled. The King himself had thought until now, that the fortune of the battel was every where alike, & the day his own. But hearing the noise behind him, and turning a little aside with a troupe of horse, to see how all went; when he beheld his men casting down their weapons, and the *Romans* at his back on the higher ground; he presently betook himself to flight. Neither staid he afterwards in any place (except onely a small while about *Tempe*, there to collect such as were dispersed in this overthrow) until he was gotten into his own kingdom of *Macedon*.

There died of the *Roman* Army in this battel, about seven hundred: of the *Macedonians* about eight thousand were slain; and five thousand taken prisoners.

### §. XV.

<sup>50</sup> *T. Quintius* fallth out with the *Ætoliens*, and grants truce unto *Philip*, with conditions upon which the peace is ratified. Liberty proclaimed unto the *Greeks*. The *Romans* quarrell with *Antiochus*.

**T**he *Ætoliens* wonderfully vaunted themselves; and desired to have it noised through all *Greece*, that the victory at *Cynosephale* was gotten (in a manner) wholly by their valour. They had gotten indeed the most of the booty by sacking the *Macedonian* Camp, whilest the *Romans* were busied in the chase. *Titus* therefore being offended both at their vain-glory, and at their ravenous condition; purposed to teach them better manners, by regarding them as slightly, as they thought highly of themselves. He also well perceived, That by using them with any extraordinary favour, he should greatly offend the rest of his confederates in *Greece*; who detested the *Ætoliens* much more vehemently, than ever they had done the *Macedonians*. But this displeasure brake not forth yet a while.

After the battel, *Titus* made haste unto *Larissa*, a City in *Thessaly*, which he presently took. Before his coming, *Philip* had sent thither one of his Courtiers to burn all his letters, and passages whatsoever in writing, betwixt him and others: of which many were there kept. It was well done of the King, that among the cares of so much adversity, he forgot not to provide for the safety of his friends. Yet by thus doing, they of *Larissa* might well perceive, that he gave them as already lost. Wherefore we finde not that they, or any of their neighbours, did make delay of opening their gates to *Titus*. At the same time, the Town of *Lewas*, bordering upon *Acarnania*, was taken by the *Roman* Fleet, and very soon after, all the *Acarnanians*, a warlike Nation, and in hatred of the *Ætoliens* ever true to *Philip*, gave up themselves unto the *Romans*, hearing of the victory at *Cynosephale*. The *Rhodians* also were then in hand with the conquest of *Persea*, a Region of the Continent over against the Island; whereof they had demanded restitution in the late Treaty of Peace. They did herein more manly, than any other of the *Greeks*; forasmuch as they awaited not the good leisure of the *Romans*; but with an Army of their own, and some help which they borrowed of the *Acheans* and other their friends, gave battel to *Diocrates* the Kings Lieutenant, wherein they had the victory, and consequently recovered the whole Province. It angered *Philip* worse than all this, that the *Dardaniens* gathered courage out of his affliction, to invade his Kingdom; wasting and spoiling, as if all had been abandoned to their discretion. This made him gather an Army in all haste of 6000. Foot, and 500. horse: wherewith coming upon them, he drave them, with little or no losse of his own, and great slaughter of theirs, hastily out of the Kingdom. Which done, he returned to *Thessalonica*.

In this one enterprise he had successe answerable to his desire: but seeing what bad fortune accompanied his affairs, in all other parts at the same time, he thought it wisdome to yeeld unto necessity; and therefore sent in all haste *Limneus* and *Demofthenes* with



with *Cycliadas* the banished *Achean*, in whom he reposed much confidence, Embassadors unto *Titus*. These had conference a long while in private, which *Titus* and some of his *Roman* Colonels: by whom they were gently entertained, and in very friendly wise dismissed. It seems that he had Commission, to refer all unto *Titus* his own discretion; as *Philip* himself in few daies after did. There was granted unto him a Truce for fifteen daies: in which time, the King himself might come and speak with the *Roman* Generall. In the mean season, many suspicious rumours went of *Titus*, as if he had been corrupted with great rewards from the King, to betray the *Greeks* his Confederates. Of these bruits the *Ætolians* were chief authors: who being wont to regard neither friendship nor honesty, where profit them a wrong way, judged alike of all men else. But against the day appointed for the meeting betwixt him and *Philip*, *Titus* had sent letters unto his Associates; willing them to have their Agents ready by a time appointed, at the entrance of *Tempe*, where the treaty should be held. There when they were all assembled, they entered into consultation before the kings arrival, what should be most expedient for the common benefit of them all, and for every state in particular. The poor king *Aminander* besought them all, and especially the *Romans*, that they would think upon him; and, considering his weakness which he confessed, make such provision, that after the *Romans* had turned their backs, and were gone home, *Philip* might not wreak his anger upon him who was not able to resist. Then spake *Alexander*, one of the *Ætolians*: who commending *Titus* so much as he had thus assembled the 20 Confederates to advise upon their own good, and had willed them to deliver their minds freely: added, That in the main of the purpose which he had in hand, he was utterly deceived: for that by making peace with *Philip*, he could neither allure the *Romans* of their quiet, nor the *Greeks* of their liberty. There was, he said, none other end to be made of the war, which could agree either with the purpose of the Senate and people of *Rome*, or with the fair promises made by *Titus* himself unto the *Greeks*, than the chasing of *Philip* quite out of his kingdom. And to this effect he made a long discourse. But *Titus* answered, That this *Ætolian* was ill acquainted, either with the good pleasure of the Senate and people of *Rome*, or with the laudable customs which they generally held: for that it was not the manner of the *Romans*, to seek the utter destruction of any King or Nation, at such time as they first made war with them; untill by some rebellion they found it a matter of necessity, to take such a rigorous course. And hereof he alledged the *Carthaginians* as a notable example: adding, That victory, to generous minds, was onely an inducement to moderation. As concerning the publick benefit of *Greece*, it was (he said) expedient, that the kingdom of *Macedon* should be greatly weakened and brought low; not that it should be utterly destroyed: forasmuch as it served as a bar to the *Thracians*, *Gauls*, and a multitude of other salvage Nations, which would soon overflow the whole continent of *Greece*, if this kingdom were not interposed. Wherefore he concluded, that if *Philip* would yeeld unto those demands, wherewith he had pressed him in the former Treaty; then was there no reason to deny him peace. As for the *Ætolians*: if they thought otherwise, it should be at their own pleasure, to take counsell apart for themselves as they thought good. Then began *Phaneas*, another of the *Ætolians*, to say, that all was come to nothing; for that ere long, *Philip* would trouble all the *Greeks*, no lesse than he had done in time before. But *Titus* interrupted him, and bade him leave his babblings; saying, That himself would take such order, as that *Philip*, were he never so desirous, should thenceforth not have it in his power to molest the *Greeks*.

The next day King *Philip* came thither: whom *Titus* used friendly: and suffering him to repose himself that night, held a Councell the day following; wherein the King yeelded unto all that had bin required at his hands; offering yet further to stand to the 50 good pleasure of the Senate, if they would have more added to the Conditions. *Phaneas* the *Ætolian*, insulting over him, said, It was to be hoped, that he would then at length give up to the *Ætolians* a many of Towns, (which he there named) bidding him speak whether he would or no. His answer was, that they might take them all. But *Titus* interposing himself, said it should be otherwise. These were *Thessalian* Towns, and should be all free: one of them onely excepted, which not long ago had refused to commit it self to the faith of the *Romans*, & therefore should now be given to the *Ætolians*. Hereat *Phaneas* cried out, that it was too great an injury, thus to be defrauded of the

Towns

Towns that had sometime belonged unto their Common-weale. Rather he willed *Titus* to consider, that by an ancient Covenant between him and the *Romans*, all the towns taken ought to be their own, and the *Romans* to have nothing save the pillage and captives. It is true, that there had been such a condition in the former war: but it ceased to be of any validity, as soon as the *Ætolians* made peace with *Philip*. And thus much *Titus* gave them to understand; asking them whether they thought it reasonable, that all the towns in *Greece*, which had let in the *Romans* by compulsion, should be delivered into subjection of the *Ætolians*. The rest of the Confederates were very much delighted with these angry passages between the *Romans* and the *Ætolians*: neither had they great reason to fear any hard measure; since *Titus* was so earnest in behalf of those *Thessalians*, to give them liberty, though they had stood out against him, even till very fear made them open their gates. Wherefore they opposed not themselves; but gave their consent willingly unto a Truce for four Moneths.

The chief cause that moved *Titus* to grant peace so readily to the *Macedonians*, besides that laudable custom by him before alledged, was, the fame of *Antiochus* his coming with an army from *Syria*, and drawing neer toward *Europe*. He had also perhaps yet a greater motive; even the consideration that his successor might happen to defraud him of the honour, if the war should happen to be protracted. And he was in the right. For when his letters, together with Embassadors from the *Macedonian*, and sundry 10 States of *Greece*, came unto *Rome*, new Consuls were chosen: who (especially the one of them) stood very earnestly against the peace: alledging frivolous matter of their own suspicion, in hope to get the honour of concluding the war. The Senate began to be doubtfully affected, between the Embassadors of *Philip*, offering to stand to whatsoever was demanded; and the letters of *Titus*, pressing them to accept this offer, on the one side, and the importunity of the Consul on the other; who said, that all these goodly shews were fraudulent, and that the King would rebel, as soon as the Army was called out of *Greece*. But the matter was taken out of the Senators hands by two of the Tribunes, that referred it to an Assembly of the People; by whose sovereign authority it was concluded, that peace should be granted to the King. So ten Embassadors 30 were sent from *Rome*, over into *Greece*: in which number were they that had been Consuls before *Titus*: and it was ordained by their advice, that *Titus* should go through with the business of Peace. These would very faine have retained those three important Cities of *Corinth*, *Chalcis*, and *Demetrias*, untill the estate of *Greece* were somewhat better settled. But finally, *Titus* prevailed so, that *Corinth* was (though not immediately) rendered unto the *Acheans*; and all the other *Greek* towns which *Philip* held, as well in *Asia* as in *Greece*, restored unto liberty.

The Conditions of the Peace granted unto *Philip*, were, That before the celebration of the next \* *Isthmian Games*, He should withdraw his Garrisons out of all the *Greek* \* *Excerpt. 2. Pol. Leg. 5.* towns which he held, and confine them over to the *Romans*: That he should deliver 40 up unto them all Captives that he had of theirs, and all Renegado's: Likewise all his ships of war, reserving to himself only five of the lesser sort, and one of extraordinary greatness, wherein sixteen men laboured at every oare: Further, that he should pay a thousand talents, the one half in hand, the other in ten years following, by even portions. Hereto \* *Livie* adds, That he was forbidden to make war out of *Macedon*, with- \* *Liv. lib. 33.* out permission of the Senate. But I finde not that he observed this Article, or was at any time charged with the breach of it. Four hundred talents he had already delivered to *Titus*, together with his younger son *Demetrius*, to remain as hostage for his true dealing in this matter of peace, at such time as he lately sent his Embassadors to *Rome*: when it was promised, that the money, and his son, should be restored back unto him, 50 if the Senate were not pleased with the agreement. Whether this money were reckoned as part of the thousand talents, I cannot finde: and it seemeth otherwise, forasmuch as young *Demetrius*, who, together with those four hundred talents, was given for hostage, remained still in custody of the *Romans*, as a part of the bargain which *Titus* formerly had made. Letters also were then sent by *Titus* unto *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*: giving him to understand, what agreement was made with *Philip* in behalf of the *Greeks*; and how the Senate held it reasonable, that the *Cians*, most miserably spoiled and oppressed by *Philip*, to gratifie this *Bithynian* his son-in-law, should be restored to liberty, and permitted to enjoy the same benefit of the *Romans*, which other of their Nation did.

did. What effect these letters wrought, it was not greatly material; since the *Romans* were shortly busied with *Antiochus*, in such wise, that they had not leisure to examine the conformity of *Prusias* to their will.

All *Greece* rejoiced at the good bargain which *Titus* had made with *Philip*. Onely the *Ætolians* found themselves aggrieved that they were utterly neglected: which was to the rest no small part of their contentment. The *Ætolians* continued to favour the *Macedonian*; and thereby occasioned much trouble unto themselves. There were some among them well-affected to the *Romans*: who, seeing how things were like to go, made their complaint unto *Titus*; saying, that they were no better than lost, for the good will which they had borne unto him; unless at this time, when he lay close by them with his Army, their Prætor, which was head of the opposite Faction, might be made away. *Titus* refused to have a hand in the execution, yet nevertheless did animate them in their purpose. So they committed the fact, and hoped to have kept themselves undiscovered. But when the murder came out, and somewhat was confessed by those which were put to torture: the hatred of the people brake out violently against the *Romans*: in such wise, that howsoever they durst not take Arms against them, yet such of them as they found stragling from their Camp, they murdered in all parts of the country. This was detested within a while, and many of the dead bodies found. Hereupon *Titus* requires of the *Ætolians*, to have the murderers delivered into his hands; and for five hundred souldiers, which he had lost by them, to have paid unto him five hundred talents. In stead of making any such amends, they paid him with excuses; which he would not take as good satisfaction. He sends Embassadors to the *Acheans* and *Athenians*, informing them what had hapned: and requested them not to take it amiss, though he dealt with these their friends as they had deserved. Herewithall he falls to wasting their country; and besiegeth two such towns of theirs, as did seem to be most culpable of the murders lately done. But the Embassadors of the *Acheans* and *Athenians* (especially of the *Acheans*, who offered, if he needed them, to help him in this war; yet belought him rather to grant peace unto the *Ætolians*) prevailed so far with him, that he was pacified with 30. talents, and the punishment of such as were known offenders.

In like sort, though not so violently, were many States of *Greece* distracted: some among them rejoicing that they were free from the *Macedonians*; others greatly doubting, that the *Roman* would prove a worse neighbour. The *Ætolian* would have been glad of any Commotion; and therefore published rumours abroad, That it was the purpose of the *Romans*, to keep in their own hands all those places, wherein *Philip* lately had his Garrisons. Little did they, or the rest of the *Greeks*, conceive, that this *Macedonian* war served as an introduction to the war to be made in *Asia* against King *Antiochus*; where grew the fruit, that was to be reaped of this and many other victories. Wherefore to stay the progresse of bad rumors, when the *Isthmian games* were held, which in time of peace were never without great solemnity and concourse; *Titus* in that great assembly of all *Greece*, caused proclamation to be made by sound of Trumpet to this effect, That the Senate and people of *Rome*, and *Titus Quintius Flaminius* the General, having vanquished King *Philip* and the *Macedonians*, did will to be at liberty, free from Impositions, free from Garrisons, and living at their own Laws, the *Corinthians*, *Phocians*, *Locrians*, *Eubæans*, *Acheans* of *Phthiotis*, *Magneſians*, *Theſſalians*, and *Peræthebians*. The suddenness of this Proclamation astonished men: so as though they applauded it with a great shout, yet presently they cried out to hear it again, as if they durst scarce credit their own ears. The *Greeks* were Craft-masters in the Art of giving thanks, which they rendered now to *T. Quintius* with so great affection, as that they had well-near smothered him, by thronging officiously about him.

This good will of the *Greeks*, was like to be much more available unto the *Romans* so in their war against *Antiochus*, than could have been the possession of a few Towns, yea, or of all those Provinces which were named in the Proclamation. Upon confidence hereof, no sooner were the *Isthmian games* at an end, than *Titus*, with the *Romans* that were of his Councell, gave audience to *Hagesianax* and *Lysias*, king *Antiochus* his Embassadors: whom they wished to signify unto their Lord, That he should do well to abstain from the free cities in *Asia*, and not vex them with war: as also to restore whatsoever he had occupied, belonging to the Kings, *Ptolomy* or *Philip*. Moreover they wished him by these his Embassadors, that he should not passe over his Army into *Europe*; adding,

adding, That some of them would visit him in person ere it were long, to talk with him further concerning these points. This done, they fell to accomplishing their promises unto the *Greeks*; to the rest they gave what they had promised. But the *Phocians* and *Locrians* they gave unto the *Ætolians*; whom they thought it no wisdom to offend overmuch, being shortly to take a greater work in hand. The *Acheans* of *Phthiotis* they annexed unto the *Theſſalians*; all save the town of *Thebes* in *Phthiotis*, the same which had been abandoned by *T. Quintius* to the *Ætolians* in the last Treaty with *Philip*. The *Ætolians* contended very earnestly about *Pharſalus* and *Lencas*. But they were put off with a dilatory answer, and rejected unto the Senate: for howsoever somewhat the Councell might favour them, yet was it not meet that they should have their will, as it were in despite of *Titus*. So the *Acheans* were restored *Corinth*, *Triphylia*, and *Heræa*. So the *Corinthians* were made free indeed, (though the *Romans* yet a while kept the *Acrocorinth*) for that all which were partakers of the *Achean* common-wealth, enjoyed their liberty in as absolute manner as they could desire. To *Pleuratus* the *Illyrian* were given one or two places, taken by the *Romans* from *Philip*: and upon *Aminander* were bestowed those Castles, which he had gotten from *Philip* during this war; to reign in them, and the grounds which they commanded, as he did among his *Athamanians*. The *Rhodians* had been their own Carvers. *Attalus* was dead a little before the Victory; and therefore lost his share. Yet many that were with *Titus* in Councell, would have given the towns of *Oreum* and *Eretria*, in the Isle of *Eubæa*, to his son and successor King *Enmenes*. But finally it was concluded, that these as well as the rest of the *Eubæans*, should be suffered to enjoy their liberty. *Orestis*, a little Province of the kingdom of *Macedon*, bordering on *Epirus*, and lying towards the *Ionian* Sea, had yielded unto the *Romans* long ere this, and since continued true to them: for which cause it was also set at liberty, and made a free estate by it self.

These businesses being dispatcht, it remained, that all care should be used, not how to avoid the war with King *Antiochus*, but how to accomplish it with most ease and prosperity. Wherefore Embassadors were sent, both to *Antiochus* himself, to pick matter of quarrell; and about unto others, to pre-dispose them unto the assisting of the *Romans* therein. What ground and matter of War against this King, the *Romans* now had, or shortly after found: as also how their Embassadors and Agents dealt and sped abroad; I refer unto another place.



## CHAP. V.

The Wars of the Romans with Antiochus the Great, and his Adherents.

### §. I.

What Kings of the races of Seleucus and Ptolomie reigned in Asia and Egypt before Antiochus the Great.

**S**eleucus Nicator, the first of his race, King of *Asia* and *Syria*, died in the end of the hundred twenty and fourth Olympiad. He was treacherously slain by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, at an Altar called *Argos*; having (as is said) been warned before by an Oracle, to beware of *Argos*, as the fatal place of his death. But I never have read that any mans life hath been preserved, or any mischance avoided by the predictions of such Divellish Oracles. Rather I beleave, that many such predictions of the Heathen gods, have been ante-dated by their Priests; or by others, which deviled them after the event.

*Antiochus Soter*, the son and heir of this *Seleucus*, was dearly beloved of his father: who surrendered unto him his own wife *Sratonica*, when he understood how much the young Prince was enamoured on her. Wherefore *Ptolomy Ceraunus* had great cause to fear, that the death of *Seleucus* would not be unrevengeed by this his Successour. But *Antiochus* was contented to be pacified, either with gifts, or perhaps onely with faire words, containing himself within *Asia*; and letting *Ceraunus* enjoy that quietly, which he

he had purchased in *Europe*, with the blood of *Seleucus*. It is said of this *Antiochus*, that although he married with the Queen *Stratonica* in his fathers life, yet out of modesty he forbore to embrace her, till his father was dead. So that perhaps his incestuous love was partly, if not chiefly, the cause of his not prosecuting that revenge; whereunto Nature should have urged him. Afterwards he had wars with *Antigonus Gonatus*, and with *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia*. Alfo *Lutarus* and *Leonortus*, Kings or Captains of the *Gauls*, were set upon him by the same *Nicomedes*. With these he fought a great battell: wherein, though otherwise the enemies had all advantage against him, yet by the terror of his Elephants, which affrighted both their horses and them, he won the victory. He took in hand an enterprise against *Ptolomy Philadelphus*: but finding ill success in the beginning, he soon gave it over. To this King *Antiochus Soter* it was, that *Berosus* the *Chaldean* dedicated his History of *Assyria*; the same which hath since been excellently falsified by the Friar *Annins*. He left behind him one son, called *Antiochus Theos*; and one daughter, called *Apame*, that was married unto the King of *Cyrene*. So he died about the end of the hundred twenty and ninth Olympiad, or the beginning of the Olympiad following, in the fiftieth or one and fiftieth yeer of the Kingdom of the *Greeks*, when he had reigned nineteen yeeres.

*Antiochus*, surnamed *Theos*, or the god, had this vain and impious title given to him, by flattery of the *Milesians*; whom he delivered from *Timarchus*, a Tyrant that oppressed them. He held long and difficult, but fruitlesse war with *Ptolomy Philadelphus* 20 King of *Egypt*; which finally he compounded, by taking to wife *Berenice* the daughter of *Ptolomy*.

Of these two Kings, and of this Lady *Berenice*, *S. Hierom* and other Interpreters have understood that Prophecy of *Daniel*: *The Kings daughter of the South shall come to the King of the North to make an agreement*; and that which followeth.

*Ptolomy Philadelphus* was a great lover of Peace and Learning; and (setting apart his incestuous marriage with his own sister *Arifnoe*) a very excellent Prince: howsoever, the worthiest of all that race. It was he that built, and furnished with Books, that famous Library in *Alexandria*: which to adorn, and to honour the more, he sent unto *Elezazar*, then high Priest of the *Jews*, for the Books of *Moses* and other Scriptures. The 30 benefits of this King unto the *Jews* had formerly been very great: for he had set at liberty as many of them, as his father held in slavery throughout all *Egypt*; and he had sent unto the \* Temple of God in *Jerusalem* very rich Presents. Wherefore *Elezazar*, yielding to the Kings desire, presented him with an Hebrew copie: which *Ptolomy* caused to be translated into *Greek*, by seventy two of the most grave and learned persons that could be found among all the Tribes. In this number of the 72 Interpreters, or (as they are commonly called) the *Seventy*, *Iesus* the son of *Syrach*, is thought by *Genebrard* to have been one: who that he lived in this Age, it seems to me very sufficiently proved by *Janfenius*, in his Preface unto *Ecclesiasticus*. The whole passage of this business between *Philadelphus* and the high Priest, was written (as \* *Iosephus* affirms) by *Aristus* 40 *stus* that was employed therein. Forty yeeres *Ptolomy Philadelphus* was King; reckoning the time wherein he joyntly reigned with his father. He was exceedingly beloved of his people; and highly magnified by Poets, and other Writers. Towards his end he grew more voluptuous, than he had been in his former yeers: in which time he boasted, that he alone had found out the way how to live for ever. If this had been referred unto his honourable deeds, it might have stood with reason: otherwise, the Gout, with which he was often troubled, was enough to reach him his own error. He was the first of the Kings, derived from *Alexanders* Successors, that entered into League with the *Romans*: as also his off-spring was the last among those Royall Families, which by them was rooted up.

*Antiochus Theos* had another wife, called *Laodice*, at such time as he married with *Berenice* the daughter of this *Ptolomy*. After his second marriage, he used his first wife with no better regard, than if she had been his Concubine. *Laodice* hated him for this: yet adventured not to seek revenge, until her own son *Seleucus Callinicus* was of ability to be King. This was two or three yeeres after the death of *Ptolomy Philadelphus*: at what time the poisoned her husband *Theos*; and, by permission of *Seleucus* her son, murdered 50

Genebrard. l. 2.  
Jus. Mart. in  
Paran.

D. m. 11. 6.

\* Aug. de civit.  
Dei. l. 8. c. 42.

a Jof. ant. l. 12.  
cap. 2.  
Concerning  
that Book  
which now  
goes under  
the name of  
Arifian; many  
learned  
men, & among  
the rest, *Laodiceus* Vices,  
hold supposition  
that it is  
counterfeit, &  
the invention  
of some late  
Author. Surely  
if it were to  
be suspected in  
no better regard,  
than if she had been his  
Concubine. *Laodice* hated him for this: yet  
adventured not to seek revenge, until her own  
son *Seleucus Callinicus* was of ability to  
be King. This was two or three yeeres after  
the death of *Ptolomy Philadelphus*: at what  
time the poisoned her husband *Theos*; and, by  
permission of *Seleucus* her son, murdered

since a new Edition of it is come forth, purged from faults, (as the Papists term those Books, wherein they have changed what they please) and set forth by *Middendorpius* at *Colen*, An. Dom. 1578.

*Berenice*,

*Berenice*, together with a sonne that she had borne to *Antiochus*. *Justine* reports, that *Berenice* saved her selfe, together with the young Prince her childe, a while in the Sanctuary at *Daphne*; and that not only some Cities of *Asia* prepared to succour her, but her brother *Ptolomy Evergetes*, King of *Egypt*, came to rescue her with an Army; though too late, for she was slain before.

With such cruelties *Seleucus Callinicus*, succeeding unto his Father, that had fifteen yeeres beene King, began his reign. His subjects were highly offended at his wicked nature, which they discovered in his first entrance. Wherefore it was like, that his Estate would have beene much endangered, if *Ptolomy Evergetes*, who came against him, 10 had not beene drawne backe into his owne Countrey, by some Commotions there in hand. For there were none that would beare armes against *Ptolomy*, in defence of their owne King: but rather they sided with the *Egyptians*, who tooke *Laodice* the Kings mother, and rewarded her with death as she had well deserved. Wherefore *Seleucus*, being freed from this invasion, by occasion of those domestick troubles which recalled *Evergetes* home into *Egypt*, went about a dangerous piece of worke, even to make Warre upon his owne subjects, because of their bad affection towards him; when as it had bin much better, by well deserving, to have changed their hatred into love. A great Fleet he prepared: in furnishing and manning whereof he was at such charges, that he scarce left himselfe any other hope, if that should miscarry. Herein he embarked himselfe; and putting to Sea, did meet with such a tempest, as devoured all save himselfe, and a very few of his friends that hardly escaped. This calamity, having left him nothing else in a manner than this naked body, turned nevertheless to his great good; as anon after it seemed. For when his subjects understood in what sort the gods (as they conceived it) had punished him for his offences: they had commiseration of his Estate; and, presuming that he would thenceforth become a new man, offered unto him their service with great alacrity. This revived him, and filled him with such spirit; as thinking himselfe well enough able to deale with the *Egyptians*, he made ready a mighty Army for that purpose. But his fortune was no better at Land, than it had beene at Sea. Hee was vanquished by *Ptolomy* in a great battell: whence he escaped hardly, no better attended, than after his late shipwracke. Having therefore backe to *Antioch*, and fearing 30 that the enemy would soone be at his heeles; He wrote unto his brother *Antiochus Hierax*, who lay then in *Asia*, praying him to bring succour with all speed; and promising, in recompence of his faith and diligence, the Dominion of a great part of *Asia*. *Antiochus* was then but fourteen yeeres old, but extremely ambitious; and therefore glad of such an occasion to make himselfe great. Hee levied a mighty Army of the *Gauls*; wherewith he set forward to help his brother, or rather to get what he could for himselfe. Hereof *Ptolomy* being advertised; and having no desire to put himselfe in danger more then he needed; tooke Truce with *Seleucus* for tenne yeeres. No sooner was *Seleucus* freed from this care of the *Egyptian* War, but his brother *Antiochus* came upon him, 40 and needs would fight with him, as knowing himselfe to have the better Army. So *Seleucus* was vanquished againe; and saved himselfe with so few about him, that he was verily supposed to have perished in the battell. Thus did Gods Justice take revenge of those murders by which the Crowne was purchased; and settled (as might have beene thought) on the head of this bloody King. *Antiochus* was very glad to heare of his brothers death, as if thereby he had purchased his hearts desire. But the *Gauls*, his Mercenaries, were gladder then hee. For when he led them against *Eumenes* King of *Pergeum*, being in hope to get honour by making a Conquest in the beginning of his Reigne: these perfidious Barbarians tooke counsell against him, and devised how to stripe him of all that he had. They thought it very likely, that if there were none of 50 the Royall house to make head against them; it would be in their power, to doe what should be best pleasing to themselves, in the lower *Asia*. Wherefore they laid hands on *Antiochus*, and enforced him to ransom himselfe with money, as if he had beene their lawfull Prisoner. Neither were they so contented; but made him enter into such Composition with them, as tended but little to his honour. In the meane while *Seleucus* had gathered a new Armie; and prepared once more to try his fortune against his brother. *Eumenes* hearing of this, thought the season fit for himselfe, to make his profite of their discord. *Antiochus* fought with him, and was beaten: which is no great marvel, since he had great reason to stand in no lesse feare of the *Gauls*, his own souldiers, than

O o o o o

than

than of the enemy with whom he had to deal. After this, *Eumenes* won much in *Asia*; whilst *Antiochus* went against his brother. In the second battell, fought between the brethren, *Seleucus* had the upper hand: and *Antiochus Hierax* or the Hawk, (which surname was given him, because he fought his prey upon every one, without care whether he were provoked or not) soared away as far as he could, both from his brother, and from his own *Gaules*. Having fetcht a great compassse through *Mesopotamia* and *Armenia*, He fell at length in *Cappadocia*; where his father-in-law King *Artamenes* took him up. He was entertained very lovingly in outward shew: but with a meaning to betray him. This he soon perceived: and therefore betook him to his wings again; though he knew not well, which way to bend his flight. At length he resolved to bestow himself upon *Ptolemy*; his own conscience telling him, what evil he had meant unto *Seleucus* his brother; and therefore what little good he was reciprocally to expect at his hands. Infidelity can finde no sure harbour. *Ptolemy* well understood the perfidious and turbulent nature of this *Hierax*. Wherefore he laid him up in close prison: whence though by means of an harlot, he got out; yet flying from his keepers, he fell into the hands of thieves, by whom he was murdered. Near about the same time died *Seleucus*. The *Parthians* and *Bactrians* had rebelled against him, during his wars with his brother. He therefore made a journey against *Arfaces* founder of the *Parthian* Kingdom: where, in his evil fortune, or rather Gods vengeance, adhered so closely to him, that he was taken prisoner. *Arfaces* dealt friendly with him, and dismissed him, having every way given him roiall entertainment: but in returning home, he brake his neck by a fall from his horse, and so ended his unhappy reign of twenty years. He had to wife *Laodice* the sister of *Andromachus*, one of his most trusty Captains: which was father unto that *Achaus*, who making his advantage of this affinity, became shortly after (as he killed himself) a King; though, rather indeed, a great troubler of the world in those parts. By *Laodice* he had two sons; *Seleucus* the third, surnamed *Cerannus*; and *Antiochus* the third, called afterwards the Great.

*Seleucus Cerannus* reigned only three years; in which time he made War upon *Attalus* the first, that was King of *Pergamus*. Being weak of body through sickness, and in want of money, he could not keep his men of War in good order: and finally he was slain by treason of *Nicanor* and *Apaturus* a *Gaule*. His death was revenged by *Achaus*, who slew the Traitors, and took charge of the Army: which he ruled very wisely, and faithfully a while; *Antiochus* the brother of *Seleucus* being a Child.

## S. II.

The beginning of the Great *Antiochus* his reign. Of *Ptolemy* *Euergetes*, and *Philopater*, Kings of *Egypt*. War between *Antiochus* and *Philopater*. The rebellion of *Molo*: an expedition of *Antiochus* against him. The recontinuance of *Antiochus* his Egyptian war: with the passages between the two Kings: the victory of *Ptolemy*, and peace concluded. Of *Achæus*, and his rebellion; his greatness, and his fall. *Antiochus* his expedition against the *Parthians*, *Bactrians*, and *Indians*. Somewhat of the Kings reigning in *India*, after the death of the Great *Alexander*.

*Antiochus* was scarcely fifteen years old, when he began his reign, which lasted sixe and thirty years. In his minority, he was wholly governed by one *Hermias*, an ambitious man, and one which maligned all vertue, that he found in any of the Kings faithful servants. This vile quality in a Counsellor of such great place, how harmful it was unto his Lord, and finally unto himself; the successe of things will shortly discover.

Soon after the beginning of *Antiochus* his reign, *Ptolemy* *Euergetes* King of *Egypt* died; and left his heir *Ptolemy* *Philopater*, a young Boy likewise, as hath elsewhere been remembered. This was that *Euergetes*, who relieved *Aratus* & the *Achaens*, who afterwards took part with *Cleomenes*; & lovingly entertained him, when he was chased out of *Greece* by *Antigonus* *Gonatas*. He annexed unto his Dominion the Kingdom of *Cyrene* by taking to wife *Berenice*, the daughter of King *Magas*. He was the third of the *Ptolemies*, and the last good king of that race. The name of *Euergetes*, or the doer of good, was given to him by the *Egyptians*; not so much for the great spoils which he brought home, after his victories

Stories in *Syria*; as for that he recovered some of those Images or Idols, which *Cambyses*, when he conquered *Egypt*, had carried into *Persia*. He was ready to have made War upon the *Jews*, for that *Onias* their high Priest, out of meer covetousness of money, refused to pay unto him his yearly tribute of 20. talents: but he was pacified by the widome of *Josaphat* a *Jew*, to whom afterwards he let in farm the Tributes and customes that belonged unto him in those parts of *Syria* which he held. For *Celestisria*, with *Palastina*, and all those parts of the Country that lay nearest unto *Egypt*, were held by the *Egyptians*, either as having fallen to the share of *Ptolemy* the first, at such time as the great *Antigonus* was vanquished and slain in the battell at *Ipsus*; or as being won by this *Euergetes*, in the troublesome and unhappy reign of *Seleucus* *Calcinicus*. The victories of this *Euergetes* in *Syria*, with the contentions that lasted for many succeeding ages between the *Ptolemies* and the *Seleucides*; were all foretold by *Daniel* in the Prophecie before cited, which is expounded by *S. Hierome*. This *Ptolemy* *Euergetes* reigned six & twenty years; and died towards the end of the hundred thirty and ninth Olympiad. It may seem by that which we find in the Prologue unto *Jesús* the son of *Syrach* his book, that he should have reigned a much longer time. For *Syrachides* there saith that he came into *Egypt* in the eight and thirtieth year, when *Euergetes* was King. It may therefore be, That either this King reigned long together with his father: or that those eight and thirty years were the years of *Jesús* his own age; if not perhaps reckoned (as the *Jews* did otherwhiles reckon) from some notable accident that had befallen them.

Not long after the death of *Euergetes*, *Hermias* the Counsellor, and in a manner the Protector of King *Antiochus*, incited his Lord unto war against the *Egyptian*; for the recovery of *Celestisria* and the Countries adjoining. This counsell was very unseasonably given, when *Molo*, the Kings Lieutenant in *Media*, was broken out into rebellion, and sought to make himself absolute Lord of that rich Country. Nevertheless *Hermias*, being more forward than wise, maintained stiffly, that it was most expedient and agreeable with the Kings honour, to send forth against a rebellious Captain, other Captains that were faithfull; whilst he in person made War upon one that was like himself, a King. No man durst gain-say the resolution of *Hermias*; who therefore sent *Xenatas* an *Achaean*, with such forces as he thought expedient, against the Rebel; whilst in the mean season an Army was preparing for the Kings expedition into *Celestisria*. The King having marched from *Apamea* to *Laodicea*, and so over the Desarts into the Vally of *Mastias*, between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-libanus*; found his way there stopped by *Theodorus* an *Etolian*, that served under *Ptolemy*. So he consumed the time there a while to none effect: and then came news, that *Xenatas*, his Captain, was destroyed with his whole Army; and *Molo* thereby become Lord of all the Country, as far as unto *Babylon*.

*Xenatas*, whilst he was yet on his journey, and drew near to the River of *Tygris*; received many advertisements, by such assailed over unto him from the Enemy, That the followers of *Molo* were, for the most part, against their wils drawn by their Commander to bear arms against their King. This report was not altogether false; but *Molo* himself stood in some doubt lest his followers would leave him in time of necessity. *Xenatas* therefore making shew, as if he had prepared to pass the River by Boats in face of his enemy; left in the night time such as he thought meet to defend his Camp; and with all the four of his Army went over *Tygris*, in a place ten miles lower than *Molo* his Camp. *Molo* heard of this, and sent forth his horse to give impediment: but hearing that *Xenatas* could not so be stopped, He himself dislodged, and took his journey towards *Media*; leaving all his baggage behind him in his Camp. Whether he did this, as distrustful of the faith of his own souldiers; or whether thereby to deceive his Enemy; the great folly of *Xenatas* made his stratagem prosperous. For *Xenatas*, having born himself proudly before, upon the countenance of *Hermias*, by whom he was advanced unto this charge; did now presume that all should give way to his authority, without putting him to much trouble of using the sword. Wherefore he suffered his men to feast with the provisions which they found ready in the forsaken Camp: or rather he commanded them so to do, by making Proclamation, That they should cherish up themselves against the journey, which he intended to take the next day, in pursuit of the Rebels that fled. And to the same purpose he buified himselfe, in transporting the remainder of his Army, which he had left on the other side of *Tygris*. But *Molo* went

no further that day, than he could easily return the same night. Wherefore understanding what good rule the Kings men kept: he made such haste back unto them, that he came upon them early in the morning; whilst they were yet heavy with the Wine and other good cheer that they had spent at supper. So *Xenias* and a very few with him, died fighting in defence of the Camp: the rest were slaughtered without making resistance; and many of them ere they were perfectly awake. Likewise the Camp on the other side of Tygris, was easily taken by *Molo*: the Captains flying thence, to save their own lives. In the heat of this victory, the Rebels marched unto *Seleucia*, which he presently took: and, mastering within a little while the Province of *Babylonia*, and all the Countrey down to the red Sea, or Bay of *Persia*, He hastened unto *Susa*; where at his first coming, he won the City: but failing to take the Castle that was exceeding strong, returned back to *Seleucia*, there to give order concerning this business.

The report of these things coming to *Antiochus*, whilst he lay (as is said before) in the Vale of *Massyas*, filled him with great sorrow, and his Camp with trouble. He took counsell what to do in this needfull case; and was well advised by *Epigenes*, the best man of War he had about him, to let alone this enterprise of *Calasyria*; and bend his forces thither, where more need required them. This counsell was put in execution with all convenient haste. Yet was *Epigenes* dismissed by the way, and soon after slain, by the practice of *Hermias*; who could not endure to hear good counsell given contrary to his own good liking and allowance. In the journey against *Molo*, the name and presence of the King was more available, than any oddes which he had of the Rebels strength. *Molo* distrusted his own followers: and thought, that neither his late good success, nor any other consideration, would serve to hold them from returning to the Kings obedience; if once they beheld his person. Wherefore he thought it safest for him to assail the Kings Camp in the night time. But going in hand with this, He was discovered by some that fled over from him to the King. This caused him to return back to his Camp: which by some error, took alarm at his return; and was hardly quieted, when *Antiochus* appeared in fight. The King was thus forward in giving battell to *Molo*, upon confidence which he had that many would revolt unto him. Neither was he deceived in this his belief. For not a few men or Ensignes: but all the left wing of the enemy which was opposite unto the King, changed side forthwith as soon as ever they had fight of the Kings person; and were ready to do him service against *Molo*. This was enough to have won the victory: but *Molo* thorned the work, by killing himself; as did also divers of his friends, who for fear of torments, prevented the Hang-man with their own swords.

After this Victory came joyfull newes, that the Queen *Laodice* daughter of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, which was married unto *Antiochus* a while before, had brought forth a son. Fortune seemed bountifull unto the King: and therefore he purposed to make what use he could of her friendly disposition while it lasted. Being now in the Eastern parts of his kingdom, He judged it convenient to visit his frontiers, were it only to terrifie the *Barbarians*, that bordered upon him. Hereunto his Counsellor *Hermias* gave assent: not so much respecting the Kings honour, as considering what good might thereby happen to himself. For if it should come to passe, that the King were taken out of the world by any casualty: then made he no doubt of becoming Protector to the young Prince; and thereby of lengthening his own Government. *Antiochus* therefore went against *Artabazanes*, who reigned among the *Atropatians*; having the greatest part of his kingdom situate between the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Sea. This barbarous King was very old and fearful; and therefore yielded unto whatsoever conditions it pleased *Antiochus* to lay upon him. So in this journey *Antiochus* got honour, such as well contented him; and then returned homewards. Upon the way, a Physician of his brake with him as concerning *Hermias*; informing him truly how odious he was to the people; and how dangerous he would be shortly unto the Kings own life. *Antiochus* believed this, as having long suspected the same *Hermias*, but not daring for fear of him to utter his suspicions. It was therefore agreed, that he should be made away on the sudden: which was done, he being trained forth by a sleight, a good way out of the Camp, and there killed without warning or disputation. The King needed not to have used so much art in ridding his hands of a man so much detested. For howsoever he seemed gracious whilst he was alive: yet they that for fear had been most obsequious to him

him, whilst he was in case to do them hurt, was as ready as the foremost, to speak of him as he had deserved, when once they were secure of him: yea, his wife and children, lying then at *Apamea*, were stoned to death by the wives and children of the Citizens; whose indignation brake forth the more outrageously, the longer that it had been concealed.

About these times, *Achans* (of whom we spake before) thinking that *Antiochus* might happen to perish in some of these expeditions which he took in hand; was bold to set a Diademe upon his own head, and take upon him as a King. His purpose was to have invaded Syria: but the fame of *Antiochus* his returning thitherwards, made him quit the enterprise; and study to set some handsome colour on his former presumption. It is very strange that *Antiochus* neither went against *Achans*; nor yet dissembled the notice which he had taken of these his traitorous purposes: but wrote unto him, signifying that he knew all, and upbraiding him with such infidelity, as any offender might know to be unpardonable. By these means he emboldened the Traitor: who being already detected, might better hope to maintain his former actions by strong hand, than to excuse them or get pardon by submission. *Antiochus* had at that time a vehement desire to recover *Calasyria*, or what else he could, of the Dominions of *Ptolemy Philopater* in those parts. He began with *Seleucia*, a very strong City near to the mouth of the River *Orontes*; which ere long he won, partly by force, partly by corrupting with bribes the Captains that lay therein. This was that *Seleucia*, whereto *Antigenus the Great*, who founded it, gave the name of *Antigonia*: but *Seleucus* getting it shortly after, called it *Seleucia*; and *Ptolemy Evergetes* having lately won it, might if it had pleased him, have changed the name into *Ptolemais*. Such is the vanity of men, that hope to purchase an endless memoriall unto their names, by works proceeding rather from their greatness, than from their virtue; which therefore no longer are their own, than the same greatness hath continuance. *Theodotus* the *Ætolian*, he that before had opposed himself to *Antiochus*, and defended *Calasyria* in the behalf of *Ptolemy*, was now grown sorry, that he had used so much faith & diligence, in service of an unthankful and luxurious Prince. Wherefore as a Mercenary, he began to have regard to his own profit: which thinking to find greater, by applying himself unto him that was (questionlesse) the more worthy of these two Kings, he offered to deliver up unto *Antiochus*, the Cities of *Tyrrus* and *Ptolemais*. Whilst he was devising about this treason, and had already sent messengers to King *Antiochus*: his practice was detected, and he besieged in *Ptolemais* by one of *Ptolemies* Captains, that was more faithfull than himself. But *Antiochus* halting to his rescue, vanquished this Captain who met him on the way: and afterwards got possession, not only of *Tyrrus* and *Ptolemais*, with a good Fleet of the Egyptian Kings that was in those Havens: but of so many other Towns in that Countrey, as emboldened him to think upon making a journey into Egypt it self. *Agathocles* and *Sosibius* bore all the sway in Egypt at that time: *Ptolemy* himself being loth to have his pleasures interrupted, with business of so small importance, as the safety of his Kingdom. Wherefore these two agreed together, to make provision as hastily, and yet as secretly as might be for the War: and nevertheless at the same time, to presse *Antiochus* with daily Embassadors to some good agreement. There came in the heat of this business, Embassadors from *Rhodes*, *Byzantium*, and *Cyzicus*, as likewise from the *Ætolians*; according to the usuall courtship of the Greeks, desiring to take up the quarrell.

These were all entertained in *Memphis*, by *Agathocles* and *Sosibius*: who intreated them to deal effectually with *Antiochus*. But whilst this treaty lasted, great preparations were made at *Alexandria* for the War: wherein these two Counsellors perwaded themselves reasonably, that the victory would be their own; if they could get for money, a sufficient number of the Greeks to take their parts. *Antiochus* heard only what was done at *Memphis*, and how desirous the Governours of Egypt were to be at quiet: whereunto he gave the readier belief, not only for that he knew the disposition of *Ptolemy*, but because the *Rhodians*, and other Embassadors, coming from *Memphis*, discoursed unto him all after one manner, as being all deceived by the cunning of *Agathocles*: & his fellow: *Antiochus* therefore having wearied himself, at the long siege of a Town called *Dura*, which he could not win: and being desirous to refresh himself and his Army in *Seleucia*, during the winter which then came on; granted to the Egyptian a Truce for four

moneths, with promise that he would be ready to hearken unto equall Conditions, when they should be offered. It was not his meaning to be so courteous, as he would fain have seemed, but only to lull his enemies asleep, whilst he took time to refresh himself; and to bring *Achaens* to some good order, whose treason daily grew more open and violent. The same negligence which he thought the *Egyptian* would have used, He used himself; as presuming, that when time of the year better served, little force would be needfull; for that the Towns would voluntarily yeeld unto him, since *Ptolemy* provided not for their defence. Nevertheless, he gave audience to the Embassadors, and had often conference with those that were sent out of *Egypt*: pleasing himself well, to dispute about the justice of his quarrell; which he purposed shortly to make good by 10 the sword, whether it were just or no. He said, that it was agreed between *Selencus* his Ancestor, and *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagi*, That all *Syria*, if they could win it from *Antigonus*, should be given in possession to *Selencus*: and that this bargain was afterwards ratified, by generall consent of all the Confederates, after the battell at *Ipsus*. But *Ptolemies* men would acknowledge no such bargain. They said that *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagi*, had won *Calefryia*, and the Provinces adjoining, for himself: as also that he had sufficiently gratified *Selencus*, by lending him forces to recover his Province of *Babylon*, and the Countreies about the River of *Euphrates*. Thus whilst neither of them greatly cared for peace; they were in the end of their dispute, as far from concluding, as at the beginning. *Ptolemy* demanded restitution; *Antiochus* thought, that 20 he had not as yet gotten all that was his own: Also *Ptolemy* would needs have *Achaens* comprehended in the League between them, as one of their Confederates; But *Antiochus* would not endure to hear of this, exclaiming against it as a shamefull thing, that one King should offer to deal so with another, as to take his rebell unto protection, and seek to joyn him in Confederacy with his own Sovereign Lord. When the Truce was expired, and *Antiochus* prepared to take the field again: contrary to his expectation, he was informed, That *Ptolemy*, with a very puissant Army, was coming up against him out of *Egypt*. Setting forward therefore to meet with the Enemy, he was encountered on the way by those Captains of *Ptolemy*, that had resisted him the year before. They held against him the passages of *Libanus*, whence nevertheless he drave them: and 30 proceeding onward in his journey, won so many places, that he greatly encreased his reputation; and thereby drew the *Arabians*, with divers of the bordering people, to become his followers. As the two Kings drew near together: many Captains of *Ptolemy* forsook his pay, and fled over to *Antiochus*. This notwithstanding, the *Egyptian* had the courage to meet his enemy in the field. The battell was fought at *Raphia*: where it was not to be decided, whether the *Egyptians* or *Asiatiques* were the better Souldiers, (for that the strength of both Armies consisted in Mercenaries, chiefly of the *Greeks*, *Thracians*, and *Gauls*;) but whether of the Kings was the more fortunate. *Ptolemy*, with *Arctinoe* his Sister and Wife, rode up and down encouraging his men; the like did *Antiochus* on the other side: each of them rehearsing the brave deeds of his Ancestors; 40 as not having of their own, whereby to value themselves. *Antiochus* had the more Elephants, as also his being of *Asia*, had they been fewer, would have beaten those of *Affrick*. Wherefore by the advantage of those beasts, He drave the Enemies before him, in that part of the battell wherein he fought himself. But *Ptolemy* had the better men by whose valour he brake the Grosse of his enemies battell, and won the victory; whilst *Antiochus* was heedlessly following upon those, whom he had compelled to retire. *Antiochus* had brought into the field above seventy thousand foot, and six thousand horse; whereof though he lost scarce ten thousand foot, and not four hundred horse; yet the same of his overthrow took from him all those places which he had lately won. When therefore he was returned home to *Antioch*: He began to stand in fear, lest 50 *Ptolemy* and *Achaens*, setting upon him both at once, should put him in danger of his whole Estate. This caused him to send Embassadors to the *Egyptian*, to treat of peace; which was readily granted; it being much against the nature of *Ptolemy* to vex himself thus with the tedious businesse of War. So *Ptolemy* having staid three moneths in *Syria*, returned home into *Egypt*, clad with the reputation of a Conqueror; to the great admiration of his Subjects and of all those that were acquainted with his voluptuous and slothfull condition.

*Achaens* was not comprised in the league between these two Kings: or if he had been

been included therein; yet would not the *Egyptian* have taken the pains, of making a second expedition for his sake. The best was, that he thought himself strong enough, if fortune were not too much against him, to deal with *Antiochus*. Neither was he confident without great reason: for besides his many victories, whereby he had gotten all that belonged unto *Antiochus* on this side of *Taurus*, he had also good successe against *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*; that was an able man of war, and commanded a strong Army. Neither was he, as *Molo* the Rebelle had been, one of mean regard otherwise, and carried beyond himself by apprehending the vantage of some opportunity: but Cousin-german to the King, as hath been shewed before; and now lately the Kings 10 brother-in-law, by taking to wife a younger daughter of the same *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, which was also called *Laodice*, as was her sister the Queen, *Antiochus* his wife. These things had added Majesty unto him, and had made his followers greatly to respect him, even as one to whom a Kingdome was belonging. Neither made it a little for him, That King *Ptolemy* of *Egypt* held him in the nature of a friend: and that King *Antiochus* was now lately vanquished in the battell at *Raphia*; and had thereby lost all his gettings in *Syria*. But all these hopes and likelihoods came to nothing: for the King of *Pontus*, if he would meddle in that quarrell between sons-in-law, had no reason to take part against the more honourable. As for the Egyptian, he was not only slothfull, but hindered by a rebellion of his own subjects, from helping his friends 20 abroad. For the people of *Egypt*, of whom *Ptolemy*, contrary to the manner of his Progenitors, had armed a great number to serve in the late expedition; began to entertain a good opinion of their own valour, thinking it not intierior to the *Macedonian*. Hereupon they refused to suffer as much as formerly they had done: since they less esteemed, than they had done, the force of the Kings mercenary *Greeks*; which had hitherto kept them in straight subjection. Thus brake out a war between the King and his subjects: wherein though the ill-guided force of the multitude was finally broken; yet King *Ptolemy* thereby wasted much of his strength, and much of his time, that might have been spent, as he thought, much better in revelling; or, as others thought, in succouring *Achaens*. As for *Antiochus*, He had no sooner made his peace with the *Egyptian*, 30 than he turned all his care to the preparation of war against *Achaens*. To this purpose he entred into League with *Attalus*; that so he might distract the forces of his Rebelle, and find him work on all sides. Finally, his diligence and fortune were such, that within a while he had pent up *Achaens* into the City of *Sardes*; where he held him about two years besieged. The City was very strong, and well victualled: so as there appeared not, when the second year came, any greater likelihood of taking it, than in the first years siege. In the end, one *Lagoras* a *Cretan* found means how to enter the Town. The Castle it self was upon a very high rock, and in a manner impregnable; as also the Town-wall adjoining to the Castle, in that part which was called the *Same*, was in like manner situate upon steep Rocks, and almost inaccessible; that hung over 40 a deep bottom, whereinto the dead carcasses of Horses and other beasts, yea, and sometimes of men, used to be thrown. Now it was observed by *Lagoras*, that the Ravens and other birds of prey, which haunted that place by reason of their food which was there never wanting, used to flye up unto the top of the Rocks, and to pitch upon the walls, where they rested without any disturbance. Observing this often, he reasoned with himself, and concluded that those parts of the wall were left unguarded, as being thought unapproachable. Hereof he informed the King: who approved his judgement, and gave unto him the leading of such men, as he desired for the accomplishing of the enterprize. The successe was agreeable to that which *Lagoras* had afore conceived; and though with much labour, yet without resistance, he scaled those rocks, and whilst a generall assault 50 was made) entred the town in that part, which was at other times unguarded, then unthought upon. In the same place had the *Persians*, under *Cyrus*, gotten into *Sardes*; when *Craesus* thought himself secure on that side. But the Citizens took not warning by the example of a losse many ages past: and therefore out of memory. *Achaens* held still the Castle: which not only seemed by nature impregnable, but was very well stored with all necessaries, & manned with a sufficient number, of such as were to him well assured. *Antiochus* therefore was constrained to waste much time about it: having none other hope to prevail, than by famishing the inclosed. Besides the usuall tediousness of expectation, his businesse called him thence away into the higher *Asia*, where the *Ba-*  
*trians*



*Arrians*, and *Parthians* with the *Hyrcanians*, had erected kingdoms taken out of his Dominions, upon which they still incroached. But he thought it not safe, to let *Achaus* break loose again. On the other side there were some Agents of *Ptolemy* the *Egyptian*, and good friends unto *Achaus*; that made it their whole study, how to deliver this besieged Prince. If they could rescue his person, they cared for no more: but presumed that when he should appear in the Countries under *Taurus*, he would soon have an Army at command, and be strong enough to hold *Antiochus* as hardly to work as at any time before. Wherefore they dealt with one *Bolis* a *Cretan*, that was acquainted well with all the waies in the Countrey, and particularly with the by-paths and exceeding difficult passages among those Rocks, whereon the Castle of *Sardes* stood. Him they tempted with great rewards, which he should receive at the hands of *Ptolemy*, as well as of *Achaus*; to do his best for performance of their desire. He undertook the business: and gave such likely reasons of bringing all to good effect, that they wrote unto *Achaus*, by one *Arianus*, a trusty messenger, whom *Bolis* found means to convey into the Castle. The faith of these Negotiators *Achaus* held most assured. They also wrote unto him in privie Characters, or Ciphers, where-with none save he and they were acquainted: whereby he knew, that it was no fained device of his Enemies, in the name of his friends. As for the messenger, he was a trusty fellow, and one whom *Achaus* found by examination, heartily affected unto their side. But the Contents of the Epistle, which were, that he should be confident in the faith of *Bolis*, and of one *Cambylus* whom *Bolis* had won unto the business, did somewhat trouble him. They were men to him unknown: and *Cambylus* was a follower of *Antiochus*; under whom he had the command of those *Cretans*, which held one of the Forts that blocked up the Castle of *Sardes*. Never theless other way to escape he saw none, than by putting himself to some adventure. When the messenger had therefore passed often to and fro, it was at length concluded, That *Bolis* himself should come speak with *Achaus*, and conduct him forth. There was none other than good faith meant by any of the rest, save only by *Bolis* and *Cambylus*, which were *Cretans*, and (as all their Countrymen, \* some few excepted, have been, and still are,) false knaves. These two held a consultation together, that was, as *Polybius* observes it, rightly *Cretical*: neither concerning the safety of him whose deliverance they undertook, nor touching the discharge of their own faith; but only how to get most with least ado and danger to themselves. Briefly they concluded, That first of all they would equally share between them ten Talents, which they had already received in hand: and then, That they would reveal the matter to *Antiochus*; offering to deliver *Achaus* unto him, if they might be well rewarded both with present money, and with promise of consideration answerable to the greatness of such a service, when it should be dispatched. *Antiochus* hearing this promise of *Cambylus*, was no less glad, than were the friends of *Achaus* well pleased with the comfortable promises of *Bolis*. At length when all things were in readines on both sides, and that *Bolis* with *Arianus* was to get up into the Castle, and convey *Achaus* thence: He first went with *Cambylus* to speak with the King, who gave him very private audience; and confirmed unto him by word of mouth the assurance of his liberal promises. And after that, putting on the countenance of an honest man, and of one that was faithful unto *Ptolemy*, whom he had long served, he accompanied *Arianus* up into the Castle. At his coming thither, he was lovingly entertained; yet questioned at large by *Achaus*, touching all the weight of the business in hand. But he discoursed so well, and with such gravity, that there appeared no reason of distrusting either his faith or judgement. He was an old Souldier, had long been a Captain under *Ptolemy*, and did not thrust himself into this business, but was invited by honourable and faithful men. He had also taken a safe course, in winning (as it seemed) that other Countryman of his, who kept a Fort that stood in their way; and thereby had already sundry times given safe passage and repassage unto *Arianus*. But against all these comfortable hopes, the importance of so great an adventure stirred up some diffidence. *Achaus* therefore dealt wisely, and said, that he would yet stay in the Castle a little longer: but that he meant to send away with *Bolis* three or four of his friends; from whom when he received better advertisement, concerning the likelihood of the enterprise, then would he issue forth himself. Hereby he took order, not to commit himself wholly unto the faith of a man unknown. But as *Polybius* well notes, he did not consider that

\* Among these few I do not except one, calling himself Judæan.

John Andrew Cretan, who in one of his late shameful Lillies, wherein he traduced our King, Religion, & Countrey, with all the good and worthy men of whom he could learn the names, hath by inserting my name twice believed me calling me a *Parisian*, and one that hath been dangerous unto my Sovereign. It is an honour to be ill spoken of by so diligent a supporter of *Treasons*, and *Archtreason*. Lies in regard whereof I may not deny him the commendation of *Cretical* no less voluminous, than he in multiplicity of names beyond any the *Cretians* in elder times, that were always *Lyars*, evil bellies, and flow bellies. as *Polybius* 1.8.

he played the *Cretian* with a man of *Crete*: which is to say, that he had to do with one, whose knavery could not be avoided by circumspection. *Bolis* and *Cambylus* had laid their plots thus. That if *Achaus* came forth alone, then should he easily be taken by the ambush prepared for him: if he were accompanied with many of his friends, then should *Arianus* be appointed to lead the way, as one that of late had trodden it oft; & *Bolis* following behind, should have an eye upon *Achaus* to prevent him, not only from escaping in the tumult, but from breaking his own neck, or otherwise killing himself: to the end that being taken alive, he might be so *Antiochus* the more welcome Present. And in such order came they now forth: *Arianus* going before as Guide; the rest following as the way served, and *Bolis* in the Rear. *Achaus* made none acquainted with his purpose, till the very instant of his departure. Then signified he the matter to his Wife *Laedice*, and comforting her with hope as well as he could, appointed four of his special friends to bear him company. They were all disguised: and one of them alone took upon him to have knowledge of the *Greek* tongue, speaking and answering as need should require for all as if the rest had been *Barbarians*. *Bolis* followed them, craftily devising upon his business, and much perplexed. For (saith *Polybius*) though he were of *Crete*, and prone to surmise any thing to the mischief of another; yet could he not see in the dark, or know which of them was *Achaus*, or whether *Achaus* himself were there. The way was very uneasy, and in some places dangerous; especially to those that knew it not. Wherefore they were fain to stay in divers places, and help one another up or down. But upon every occasion they were all of them very officious towards *Achaus*; lending him their hands, and taking such care of him, as easily gave *Bolis* to understand, that he was the man: and so by their unseasonable duty, they undid their Lord. When they came to the place where *Cambylus* lay in wait, *Bolis* whistled, and presently clasped *Achaus* about the middle, holding him fast that he could not stir: So they were all taken by the Ambush, and carried forthwith to *Antiochus*; who sat up watching in his Pavilion, expecting the event. The sight of *Achaus*, brought in bound unto him, did so astonish the King that he was unable to speak a word, and anon brake out into weeping. Yet was he before informed of the plot, which might have kept him from admiration: as also the next morning betimes, assembling his friends together, he condemned *Achaus* to a cruel death: which argues, that he was not moved with pity towards this unhappy man. Wherefore it was the general regard of calamities, incident unto great fortunes, that wrung from him these tears: as also the rarity of the accident, that made both him and his friends to wonder: though it be so, that such a course as this of his, in employing two mischievous knaves against one Traitor, doth not rarely succeed well; according to that Spanish Proverb, *A un traidor dos allevoslos*. The death of *Achaus* brought such astonishment upon those which held the Castle, that after a while they gave up the place and themselves unto the King; whereby he got entire possession of all to him belonging in the lesser *Asia*.

40 Some years passed after this, ere *Antiochus* was ready for his expedition against the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians*. The *Parthians* were a little Nation of obscure beginnings, and commonly subject unto those that ruled in *Media*. In the great shuffling for Provinces, after the death of *Alexander*, the Government over them was committed by *Antipater* to one *Philip*, a man of small regard: shortly they fell to *Eumenes*; then to *Antigonus*; and from him, together with the *Medes*, to *Selencus*; under whose posterity they continued untill the Reign of *Selencus Calinicus*, being ruled by Lieutenant of the *Syrian* Kings. The lustful insolency of one of these Lieutenants, together with the misfortune of *Calinicus*, that was vanquished and thought to be slain by the *Gauls*; did stir up *Asaces*, a noble man of the Country, to seek revenge of injuries done, and so animate them to rebell. So he slew the Kings Lieutenant; made himself king of the *Parthians*, and Lord of *Hyrcania*; fought prosperously with those that disturbed him in his beginnings; and took *Selencus Calinicus* prisoner in battell, whom he royally entertained and dismissed. Hereby he won reputation as a lawful king: and by good government of his Countrey, procured unto himself such love of his Subjects, that his name was continued unto his successours, like as that of the *Ptolemies* in *Egypt*, and that of the *Cæsars* afterwards in *Rome*. Much about the same time the *Bactrians* rebelled: though these at length, and all belonging unto the *Seleucide* beyond *Euphrates*, increased the *Parthians* dominion. Now *Antiochus* went against them with so strong an army,

that they durst not meet him in plain field; but kept themselves in woods or places of strength, and defended the Straights and passages of mountains. The resistances they made availed them not. For *Antiochus* had with him so great a multitude, and so well forced, as he needed not to turn out of the way, from those that lay fortified against him, in Woods and Straights between their mountains; it being easie to spare out of so great a number, as many as fetching a compass about, might either get above the enemies heads; or come behind, and charge them on the back. Thus did he often employ against him his light armature: wherewith he caused them to dislodge, and give way unto his Phalanx; upon which they durst not adventure themselves in open ground. *Arfaces*, the second of the name, (for his father was dead before this) was then King of *Parthia*: who though he was confident in the fidelity of his own subjects; yet feared to encounter with so mighty an Invader. His hope was, that the bad waies and Defarts would have caused *Antiochus*, when he was at *Ecbatane* in *Media*, to give over the journey, without proceeding much further. This not so falling out: He caused the Wells and Springs in the Wilderness, through which his Enemy must pass, to be dammed up and spoiled. By which means, and the resistance before spoken of, when he could not prevail, He withdrew himself out of the way; suffering the Enemy to take his pleasure for a time, in wasting the Countrey: wherein without some victory obtained, he could make no long abode. *Antiochus* hereby found, That *Arfaces* was nothing strongly provided for the War. Wherefore he marched through the heart of *Parthia*: and then forward into *Hyrcania* where he won *Tambrace*, the chief City of that Province. This indignity and many other losses, caused *Arfaces* at length, when he had gathered an Army that seemed strong enough, to adventure a battell. The issue thereof was such as gave together of the Kings hope of accomplishing his desires, without exceeding difficulty. Wherefore *Arfaces* craved peace, and at length obtained it: *Antiochus* thinking it not amiss, to make him a friend, whom he could not make a subject.

The next expedition of *Antiochus*, was against *Euthydemus* King of the *Bactrians*; one that indeed had not rebelled against him or his Ancestors: but having gotten the Kingdome from those that had rebelled, kept it himself. With *Euthydemus* he fought a battell by the River *Arins*, where he had the victory. But the victory was not so greatly to his honour, as was the testimony which he gave of his own private valour, in obtaining it. He was thought that day to have demeaned him more courageously, than did any one man in all his Army. His horse was slain under him; and he himself received a wound in his mouth, whereby he lost some of his teeth. As for *Euthydemus*, He withdrew himself back unto the furthestmost parts of his Kingdome, and afterwards protracted the War, seeking how to end it by composition. So Embassadors passed between the Kings: *Antiochus* complaining, That a Countrey of his was unjustly usurped from him: *Euthydemus* answering, That he had won it from the children of the Usurpers: and further, That the *Bactrians*, a wilde Nation, could hardly be retained in order, save by a King of their own; for that they bordered upon the *Scythians*, with whom if they should join, it would be greatly to the danger of all the Provinces that lay behind them. These allegations, together with his own weariness, pacified *Antiochus*, and made him willing to grant Peace, upon reasonable Conditions. *Demetrius*, the son of *Euthydemus*, being a goodly gentleman, and employed by his father, as Embassador in this Treaty of Peace, was not a little available unto a good conclusion: for *Antiochus* liked him so well, that he promised to give him in marriage, one of his own daughters; and therewithall permitted *Euthydemus* to retain the Kingdome, causing him nevertheless to deliver up all his Elephants; as also to bind himself by oath, to such Covenants as he thought requisite.

So *Antiochus* leaving the *Bactrian* in quiet, made a journey over *Caucasus*, and came to the borders of *India*, where he renewed with *Sophaganeus*, King of the *Indians*, the society that had been between their Ancestors. The *Indians* had remained subject unto the *Macedonians* for a little while, after *Alexanders* death. *Enmenes* in his War against *Antigonus*, raised part of his forces out of their Countrey. But when *Antigonus* (after his victory) turned Westward, and was overbusied in a great civil War: then did one *Sandrocotus*, an *Indian*, stir up his Country men to rebellion; making himself their Captain, and taking upon him, as protector of their liberty. This Of-

fice and Title he soon changed, though not without some contention, into the Name and Majesty of a King. Finally he got unto himself (having an Army of six hundred thousand men) if not all *India*, yet as much of it as had bin *Alexanders*. In this estate he had well confirmed himself, ere *Selenus Nicator* could find leisure to call him to account. Neither did he faint, or humble himself at the coming of *Selenus*: but met him in the field, as ready to defend his own, so strongly and well appointed, that the *Macedonian* was contented to make both peace and affinity with him, taking only a reward of fifty Elephants. This League, made by the Founders of the *Indian* and *Syrian* kingdoms, was continued by some Offices of love between their children, and now renewed by *Antiochus*: whose number of Elephants were increased thereupon, by the *Indian* king, to an hundred & fifty: as also he was promised, to have some treasure sent after him; which he left one to receive. Thus parted these two great kings. Neither had the *Indians*, from this time forwards in many generations, any business worthy of remembrance with the western countries. The posterity of *Sandrocotus* is thought to have retained that kingdome unto the dayes of *Augustus Caesar*: to whom *Porus*, then reigning in *India*, sent Embassadors with presents, and an Epistle written in *Greek*, wherein among other things, he said, That he had command over six hundred Kings. There is also found, scattered in sundry Authors, the mention of some which held that kingdome in divers Ages, even unto the time of *Constantine the Great*: being all peradventure of the same race. But *Antiochus*, who in this Treaty with *Sophaganeus* carried himself as the worthier person, receiving Presents, and after marching home through *Drangiana* and *Carmania*, with such reputation, that all the Potentates, not only in the higher *Asia*, but on the hither side of *Taurus*, humbled themselves unto him, and called him *The Great*: saw an end of his own greatness within few years ensuing, by presuming to stand upon points with the *Romans*; whose Greatness was the same in deed, that his was only in seeming.

## §. III.

The lewd reign of *Ptolemy Philopater* in *Egypt*: with the tragickall end of his favorites, when he was dead. *Antiochus* prepares to war on the young child *Ptolemy* Epiphanes, the son of *Philopater*. His irresolution in preparing for drivers wars at once. His voyage towards the *Hellspont*. He seeks to hold amity with the *Romans*, who make friendly shew to him; intending nevertheless to have war with him. His doings against the *Hellspont*; which the *Romans* made the first ground of their quarrell to him.

His expedition being finished, *Antiochus* had leisure to repose himself a while; and study which way to convert the terror of his puissance, for the enlargement of his Empire. Within two or three years *Ptolemy Philopater* died: leaving his son *Ptolemy Epiphanes*, a young Boy, his successor in the kingdome; unlikely by him to be well defended against a neighbour so mighty and ambitious. This *Ptolemy* furnished *Philopater*, there is to say, a lover of his Father, is thought to have had that surname given him in meer derision; as having made away both his Father and Mother. His young years being newly past, his childhood when he began to reign, may seem to discharge him of so horrible a crime, as his Fathers death: yet the beastliness of all his following life, makes him not unlike to have done any mischief, whereof he could be accused. Having won the battell at *Raphiah*, He gave himself over to sensuality, and was wholly governed by a Strumpet called *Agathocles*. At her instigation He murdered his own wife and sister; which had adventured her self with him, in that only dangerous action by him undertaken and performed with honour. The Lieutenant-ships of his Provinces, with all Commands in his Army, and Offices whatsoever, were wholly referred unto the disposition of this *Agathocles*, and her brother *Agathocles*, and *Oenanthe* a filthy bawd that was no other unto them both. So these three governed the Realm at their pleasure, to the great grief of all the Countrey, till *Philopater* died: who having reigned seventeen years, left none other son than *Ptolemy Epiphanes*, a child of five years old, begotten on *Asinoe* that was his sister and wife. After the Kings death *Agathocles* began to take upon him, as protector of young *Epiphanes*, and Governor of the Land. He assembled the *Macedons* (which were the kings ordinary forces in pay, not all born in *Macedonia*, but the race of those that abode in *Egypt* with *Ptolemy* the first, and

and would not be accounted *Egyptians*, as neither would the Kings themselves) and bringing forth unto them his sister *Agathocles*, with the young King in her arms; began a solemn oration. He told them, That the deceased father of this their King, had committed the child into the arms of his sister, but unto the faith of them: on whose valiant right hands, the whole state of the kingdom did now relye. He besought them therefore that they would be faithful, and, as great need was, defend their King against the treason of one *Tlepolemus*, an ambitious man, who traitorously went about to let the Diademe upon his owne head, being a mere stranger to the Royall blood. Herewithall he produced before them a witness, that should justifie his accusation against *Tlepolemus*. Now though it were so, that he delivered all this with a fained passion of sorrow, and counterfeiting teares: yet the *Macedons* that heard him, regarded not any word that he spake; but stood laughing, and talking one to another, what a shamelesse dissembler he was to take so much upon him, as if he knew not how greatly he was hated. And so brake up the Assembly: he that had called it, being (scarce aware how *Agathocles* therefore, whom the old Kings favour had made mighty, but neither wise nor well qualified, thought to goe to worke, as had formerly been his manner, by using his authority, to the suppression of those that he distrusted. He haled out of a Temple the mother-in-law of *Tlepolemus*; and cast her into prison. This filled *Alexandria* with rumors, and made the people (though accustomed to suffer greater things, whilest they were committed in the old kings name) to meet in knots together, and utter one to another their mindes; wherein they had conceived extreme hate, against these three pernicious Mis-governours of the old King. Besides their consideration of the present injurie done to *Tlepolemus*, they were somewhat also moved with feare of harme, which in way of requitall, *Tlepolemus* was likely to doe unto the Citie. For he was thought a man most unapt for Government, as afterwards he proved, yet no bad Souldier, and well beloved of the Armie. It was also then in his power, to stop the provision of victuals which was to come into *Alexandria*. As these motives wrought with the people, so by the remedy which *Agathocles* used, were the *Macedons* more hastily, and more violently stirred unto uproare. He secretly apprehended one of their number, whom he suspected of conspiracie against him; & delivered him unto a follower of his own, to be examined by torture. This poore Souldier was carried into an inner roome of the Palace, and there stripped out of all his apparell to be tormented. But whilest the whippes were brought forth, and all things even in a readinesse for that purpose, there was brought unto the minister of *Agathocles*, a sad report of *Tlepolemus* his being at hand. Hereupon the Examiner, and his Torturers, one after another, went out of the roome, leaving *Moeragenes* the Souldier alone by himselfe, and the doors open. He perceiving this, naked as he was, conveighed himselfe out of the Palace, and got unto the *Macedonians* of whom he found some in a Temple there by at dinner. The *Macedonians* were as fierce in maintenance of their Priviledges, as are the *Turkes Fanizars*. Being assured therefore that one of their fellows had thus bene used, they fell to Armes in a great rage, and began to force the Palace: crying out, That they would see the King, and not leave him in possession of such a dangerous man. The whole multitude in the City, with lowd clamours, made no lesse ado than the Souldiers, though to lesse effect. So the old Bawd *Oenanthe* fled into a Temple: her Sonne and Daughter stayed in the Court, untill the King was taken from them; and they, by his permission which he easily gave, and by appointment of those that now had him in their hands, delivered up to the furie of the people. *Agathocles* himselfe was stabbed to death, by some which therein did the office of friends; though in manner of enemies. His sister was dragged naked up and downe the streets; as was also his mother, with all to them belonging: the enraged multitude committed upon them a barbarous execution of justice; biting them, pulling out their eyes, and tearing them in pieces.

These troubles in *Egypt*, served well to stir up King *Antiochus*; who had very good leisure, though he wanted all pretence, to make war upon young *Ptolemy*. *Philip* of *Macedon* had the same desire to get what part he could of the childes estate. But it happened well, that *Ptolemy Philopater* in the *Punicke* Warre, which was now newly ended, had done many good offices unto the *Romans*. Unto them therefore the *Egyptians* addressed themselves, and craved helpe against these two kings: who though they secretly maligned one the other; yet had entred into covenant to divide betwene them

all

all that belonged unto this *Orphan*; whose Father had been Confederate with them both. So \* *M. Lepidus* was sent from *Rome*, to protect from all violence the King of \* *Isid. lib. 30.* *Egypt*, especially against *Antiochus*. As for the *Macedonian*; He was very soon found bused, with war at his own doors. Alfo *Scopas* the *Asolian*, being a Pensioner to the *Egyptians*, was sent into *Greece* to raise an Army of Mercenaries. What *Lepidus* did in *Egypt*, I do not finde: and therefore think it not improbable, that he was sent thither only one of the three Embassadors, in the beginning of the War with *Philip*, as hath been shewed before. As for *Scopas*; he shortly after went up into *Syria* with his Army: where he wonning in many places, among the rest of his Aids, he subdued the *Jewes*; who seem to have yielded themselves, a little before unto *Antiochus*, at such time as they saw him prepare for his War, & despaired of receiving help from *Egypt*. But it was not long, ere all these victories of *Scopas* came to nothing. For the very next year following, which was (according to *Eusebius*) the same year that *Philip* was beaten at *Cynosephala*, *Antiochus* vanquished *Scopas* in battail, and recovered all that had been lost. Among the rest the *Jewes* with great willingness returned under his obedience; and were therefore by him very gently entreated.

The Land of *Egypt* this great King did so bear to invade; and gave it out, that he meant to bestow a daughter of his own in marriage unto *Ptolemy*; either hoping, as may seem, that the Countrey would willingly submit it self unto him; if this young child should happen to miscarry; or else that greater purchase might be made in the Western parts of *Asia*, whilest *Philip* was held over-laboured by the *Romans*. It appears that he was very much distracted; hunting (as we say) two Hares at once with one Hound. The quarrels between *Attalus*, *Philip* and the *Greeks*, promised to afford him great advantage, if he should bring his Army to the *Hellspont*. On the other side, the state of *Egypt* being such as hath been declared, seemed easily to be swallowed up at once. Once while therefore he took what he could get in *Syria*: where all were willing to yield him obedience. Another while, letting *Egypt* alone, He was about to make invasion upon *Attalus* his Kingdome; yet suffered himself easily to be persuaded by the *Roman* Embassadors, and desisted from that entreprize. Having thus far gratified the *Romans*; He sends Embassadors to the Senate, to conclude a perfect amity between him and them. It is not lightly to be overpassed, That these his Embassadors were lovingly entertained at *Rome*; and dismissed, with a Decree and answer of the Senate, altogether to the honour of King *Antiochus*. But this answer of the *Romans* was not sincere; being rather framed according to regard of the Kings good liking, than of their own intent. They had not yet made an end with *Philip*: neither would they gladly be troubled with two great wars at once. Wherefore, not standing much upon the nice examination of what belonged unto their honour, they were content to give good words for the present. In the mean time *Antiochus* fights with *Scopas* in *Syria*, and shortly prepares to win some Towns elsewhere, belonging unto *Ptolemy*; yet what he sends an Army Westward, intending to make what profit he can of the distractions in *Greece*. Likewise it is considerable, as an argument of his much irresolution. How notwithstanding his attempts upon both of their Kingdomes, he offered one of his daughters to *Ptolemy*, and another to *Eumenes* the son of *Attalus*, newly King of *Pergamus*; seeking each of their friendships, at one and the same time, when he sought to make each of them a spoile. Thus was he acting and deliberating at once, being carried with an inexplicable desire of repugnancies, which is a disease of great, and overruling fortunes. How ever it was, He sent an Army to *Sardes* by Land, under two of his sons: willing them there to stay for him; whilest he himself with a Fleet of one hundred Gallies, and two hundred other vessels, intended to pass along by the Coasts of *Cilicia* and *Caria*, taking in such places as he held for the *Egyptian*. It was a notable act of the *Rhodians*, that, whilest the war of *Philip* lay yet upon their hands, they adventured upon this great *Antiochus*. They sent unto him a proud Embassage: whereby they gave him to understand, That if he passed forward beyond a certain Promontory in *Cilicia*, they would meet him and fight with him; not for any quarrell of theirs unto him; but because he should not joyn with *Philip* their enemy, and help him against the *Romans*. It was insolently done of them, neither seemed it otherwise, to prescribe such limits unto the King: yet he tempered his anger, and without any shew of indignation gave a gentle answer; partly himself to their Embassadors;

Pppp

adours;

fadors; partly unto their whole city, by Embassadors which he thither sent. He shewed his desire to renew the ancient Confederacies between his Ancestors and them: & wiled them not to be afraid, lest his coming should tend unto any hurt, either of them, or of their confederates. As touching the Romans whom they thought that he would molest: they were (he said) his very good friends; whereof, he thought there needed no better proof, than the entertainment and answer by them newly given to his Embassadors.

The Rhodians appear to have been a cunning people, and such as could foresee what weather was like to happen. This answer of the King, and the relation of what had passed between his Embassadors and the Senate, moved them not a whit, when they were informed shortly after, that the Macedonian war was ended at the battail of Cynoscephala. They knew that Antiochus his turn would be next; and prepared to be forward on the stronger side. Wherefore they would not be contented to sit still, unless the towns on the South coast of Asia, belonging to Ptolemy their friend and Confederate were suffered to be at quiet. Herein also they did well, for that they had ever been greatly beholding to all the race of the Ptolemies. They therefore in this time of necessity, gave what aid they could unto all the subjects of the Egyptian in those parts. In like manner did King Eumenes, the son of Attalus, prognosticate as concerning the war that followed, between Antiochus and the Romans. For when King Antiochus made a friendly offer, to bestow one of his daughters upon him in marriage: He excused himself, and would not have her. Attalus and Philetarus, his brethren, wondered at this. But he told them, that the Romans would surely make war upon Antiochus; and therein finally prevail. Wherefore he said, that by abstaining from this affinity, it should be in his power to joyn with the Romans, and strengthen himself greatly with their friendship. Contrariwise, if he leaned to Antiochus: as he must be partaker in his overthrow; so was he sure to be oppressed by him, as by an over-mighty neighbour, if he hapned to win the victory.

Antiochus himself wintred about Ephesus; where he took such order as he thought convenient for reducing of Smyrna and Lampsaenus to obedience; that had usurped their liberty, and obstinately strove to maintain it, in hope that the Romans would protect them. In the beginning of the Spring he sailed unto the Hellespont: where having won some Towns that Philip had gotten not long before this, he passed over into Europe side; and in short space mastered the Chersonesus. Thence went he to Lyfismachia: which the Thracians had gotten & destroyed, when Philip withdrew his garrison thence, to employ it in the Roman war. The Etolians objected as a crime unto Philip, in the conference before T. Quintius, that he had oppressed Lyfismachia, by thrusting therein a garrison. Hereupon Philip made answer, that his garrison did not oppress the town but save it from the Barbarians: who took and sacked it, as soon as the Macedonians were gone. That this answer was good and substantiall, though it were not acceptable as such, might appear by the miserable case, in which Antiochus found Lyfismachia at his coming thither. For the town was utterly razed by the Barbarians; and the people carried away into slavery. Wherefore the King took order to have it re-edified: as also to redeem those that were in bondage; and to recollect as many of the Citizens, as were dispersed in the Country thereabout. Likewise he was carefull to allure thither, by hopeful promises, new inhabitants, and to replenish the City with the wonted frequency. Now to the end that men should not be terrified from coming thither to dwell by any fear of the neighbour Thracians: he took a journey in hand against those barbarous people, with the one half of his Army; leaving the other half to repair the City. These pains he took; partly in regard of the convenient situation, and former glory of Lyfismachia; partly for that he thought it highly redounding unto his own honour, to recover and establish the dominion in those parts which his fore-father Seleucus Nicator had won from Lyfismachus; & thereby made his Kingdom of greater extent, than it occupied in any following time. But for this ambition he shal dearly pay; and as after that victory against Lyfismachus, the death of King Seleucus followed shortly; so shall a deadly wound of the Kingdom founded by Seleucus ensue very speedily, after the reconquest of the same Country, which was the last of Seleucus his purchases.

## §. IIII.

*The Romans hold friendly correspondence with Antiochus, during their war with Philip: after which they quarrell with him. The doings of Hannibal at Carthage: whence he is chased by his enemies, and by the Romans: His flight unto the King Antiochus. The Etolians murmur against the Romans in Greece. The war of the Romans and Achaeans with Nabis the Tyrant of Lacedaemon. The departure of the Romans out of Greece. T. Quintius his Triumph. Peace denied to Antiochus by the Romans.*

For the Romans, though they were unable to smother their desire of war with Antiochus, whereof notice was already taken both by their friends and by their enemies: yet was it much against their will to keep the rumour on foot, which they meant shortly to make good of this intended war, so long as they wanted matter of quarrell; whereof they were furnished, by this enterprise of the Kings about Lyfismachia. It was not long, since King Attalus, a friend and a helper of the Romans in their war with Philip, could obtain of them none other help aganist Antiochus, than Embassadors to speak for him, because the one of these Kings was held no less a friend than the other. Neither did there afterwards pass between them any other offices, than very friendly. Antiochus at the request of their Embassadors, withdrew his Invasion from the Kingdome of Pergamus: also very shortly after he sent Embassadors to them, to make a perfect League of amity between them. This was wildest as yet they were buised with Philip, and therefore had reason to answer his good will with good acceptance: as they did in outward shew. But when the Macedonian war was at an end, and all, or most of all the States in Greece, were become little better than Clients unto the Romans: then was all this good correspondence changed into terms of worle, but more plain meaning. For T. Quintius, with his ten counsellors sent from Rome, required (as ha. h. bin \* shewed chap. 4. §. 4. before) with a commination of war, this Kings gratulation of their victory; as also his long-proffered amity, and desire to continue in the same.

These ten Counsellors were able to inform T. Quintius, and acquaint him with the purpose of the Senate: whereof yet it seems that he was not ignorant before; since, in regard of Antiochus, he was the more inclinable unto peace with Philip. It was therefore agreed, when they divided themselves to make progress through divers quarters of Greece for the execution of their late Decree, That two of them should visit King Antiochus; and the rest, where occasion served, use diligence to make a party strong against him. Neither was the Senate at Rome unmindfull of the business: wherein lest T. Quintius, with his ten Assistants, should happen to forget any thing: to their parts belonging; L. Cornelius was sent from Rome, of purpose to deal with the King about those controversies, that were between him and Ptolemy. What other private instructions Cornelius had, we may conjecture by the managing of this his Embassage. For coming to Selymbria: and there understanding that P. Philinus and L. Terentius, having bin sent by Titus, were at Lyfismachia, He hastned thither; whither also came P. Lentulus (another of the ten Counsellors) from Bargilla, to be present at the Conference. Hegesibax and Lyfias were also there; the same, who had lately brought from Titus those pre-emptory Conditions, which the Embassadors present shal expound unto their Master. After a few dayes Antiochus returned from his Thracian Expedition. The meeting and entertainment between him and these Romans, was in a pearance full of love: But when they came to treat of the business in hand; this good mood was quite altered. L. Cornelius, in two or three words, briefly delivered his errand from Rome: which was, That Antiochus had reason to deliver back unto Ptolemy those Towns of his, whereof he had lately gotten possession. Hereunto he added, and that very earnestly, That he must also give up the Towns of late belonging unto Philip; and by him newly occupied. For what could be more absurd, than such folly in the Romans, as to let Antiochus enjoy the profit of that war, wherein they had laboured so much, and he done nothing? Further he warned the King, that he should not molest those Cities that were free: and finally he demanded of him, upon what reason he was come over with so great an Army unto Europe; for that other cause of his journey there was none probable, than a purpose to make war upon the Romans? To this the King made answer; That he wondered why the Romans should so trouble themselves, with thinking

upon the matters of *Asia*: wherewith he prayed them to let him alone; even as he, without such curiosity, suffered them to do in *Italy* what they thought good. As for his coming over into *Europe*: they saw well enough what business had drawn him thither; namely the war against the barbarous *Thracians*: the rebuilding of *Lysimachia*, and the recovery of Towns to him belonging, in *Thrace*, & *Chersonesus*. Now concerning his title unto that country, He derived it from *Seleucus*: who made conquest thereof, by his victory against *Lysimachus*. Neither was it so, that any of the places in controversy between him and the other Kings, had been still of old belonging to the *Macedonians* or *Egyptians*; but had been seized on by them, or by others from whom they received them, at such time as his Ancestors, being Lords of those Countries, were hindered by multiplicity of business, from looking unto all that was their own. Finally he willed them, neither to stand in fear of him, as if he intended ought against them from *Lysimachia*; since it was his purpose to bestow this city upon one of his sons, that should reign therein: nor yet to be grieved with his proceedings in *Asia*; either against the free cities, or against the King of *Egypt*; since it was his meaning to make the free Cities beholden unto himself, and to joyn ere long with *Ptolemy*, not only in friendship, but in a bond of near affinity. *Cornelius* having heard this, and being perhaps unable to refuse it, would needs hear further, what the Embassadors of *Smyrnia* and of *Lampisacum*, whom he had there with him, could say for themselves. The Embassadors of *Lampisacum* being called in, began a tale, wherein they seemed to accuse the King before the *Romans*, as it were before competent Judges. *Antiochus* therefore interrupted them, and bade them hold their peace, forasmuch as he had not chosen the *Romans*; but would rather take the Citizens of *Rhodes*, to be Arbitrators between him and them.

Thus the Treaty held some few daies, without any likelihood of effect. The *Romans*, having not laid their complaints in such sort, as they might be a convenient foundation of the war by them intended: nor yet having purpose to depart well satisfied, and thereby to corroborate the present peace, were doubtfull how to order the matter, in such wise as they might neither too rudely, like boistrous *Gale-Greeks*, pretend only the goodness of their swords; nor yet over-modestly, to retain among the *Greeks* an opinion of their justice, forbear the occasion of making themselves great. The King on the other side was weary of these tedious guests; that would take none answer, and yet scarce knew what to say. At length came news, without any certain author, that *Ptolemy* was dead. Hereof neither the King, nor the *Romans*, would take notice, though each of them were desirous to hasten into *Egypt*: *Antiochus*, to take possession of the Kingdom, and *L. Cornelius*, to prevent him thereof, and set the Country in good order. *Cornelius* was sent from *Rome* Embassador both to *Antiochus* and to *Ptolemy*: which gave him occasion to take leave, and prepare for his *Egyptian* voyage. Both he, and his fellow Embassadors, had good leave to depart all together: and the King forthwith made ready, to be in *Egypt* with the first. To his son *Seleucus* he committed his Army, and left him to oversee the building of *Lysimachia*: but all his Sea-forces he took along with him, and sailed unto *Ephesus*. Thence he sent Embassadors to *T. Quintus*: whom he requested to deal with him in this matter of peace, after such sort as might stand with honesty and good faith. But as he was further proceeding on his voyage, he was perfectly informed that *Ptolemy* was alive. This made him bear another way from *Egypt*: and afterwards a tempest, with a grievous shipwrack, made him without any further attempt on the way, glad to have safely recovered his Port of *Selencia*. Thence went he to *Antiochia*, where he wintered: secure as might appear, of the *Roman* war.

But the *Romans* had not so done with him. During the Treaty at *Lysimachia*, (at least while not long before or after it) one of their Embassadors that had been sent unto the *Macedonians*, gave him counsel, as in a point highly tending to his good; not to rest contented with the peace which was granted unto him by the *Romans*; but to desire society with them, whereby they should be bound to have the same friends and enemies. And this he advised him to do quickly, before the War brake out with *Antiochus*, lest otherwise he might seem, to have awaited some fit occasion of taking Arms again. They who dealt thus plainly, did not mean to be satisfied with weak excuses in like manner some of the *Greeks*, were solicited; and particularly the *Aetolians*, That

That constantly and faithfully they should abide in the friendship of the people of *Rome*. It was needles to say plainly whereto this entreaty tended: the froward answer made by the *Aetolians*, declares them to have well understood the purpose. They complained, that they were not alike honoured by the *Romans* after the victory, as they had been during the War. They that so complained were the most moderate of them. Others cried out that they had been wronged, and defrauded of what was promised unto them: upbraiding withall the *Romans*, as men to them beholding; not only for their victory over *Philip*, but even for helping them to set foot in *Greece*, which else they never could have done. Hereto the *Roman* gave gentle answers: telling them that there was no more to do, than to send Embassadors to the Senate, and utter their griefs; and then should all be well.

Such care took the *Romans* in *Greece*, for their War intended against *Antiochus*. The same hereof arriving at *Carthage*, gave matter unto the enemies of *Hannibal*, wherewith both to pick a thank of the *Roman* Senate, and to chase out of their city this honourable man, whom they so greatly hated. He had of late exercised his virtue against them in the Civill administration; and given them an overthrow, or two, in the long Robe. The Judges at that time bore all the sway in *Carthage*: holding their places during life; and having subject unto them, the lives, goods, and fame of all the rest. Neither did they use this their power with moderation: but conspired in such wise together, that who so offended any one of them, should have them all to be his enemies; which being once known, He was sure to be soon accused and condemned. In this their impotent rule of the city, *Hannibal* was chosen Prætor. By virtue of which Office, though he was superior unto them during that year: yet had it not been their manner to bear much regard unto such an annual Magistrate, as at the years end must be accountable to them, if ought were laid unto his charge. *Hannibal* therefore sending for one of the Questors, or Officers of the Treasury, to come and speak with him: the proud Questor set lightly thereby, and would not come. For he was of the adverse Faction to *Hannibal*; and men of his place were to be chosen into the Order of Judges: in contemplation whereof, he was filled already with the spirit of future Greavances. But he had not to do with such a tame Prætor, as were they that had occupied the place before. *Hannibal* sent for him by a Pursivant; and having thus apprehended him, brought him into judgement before a publique assembly of the people. There he not only shewed what the undutifull stubbornness of this Questor had been; but how unsufferable the insolency of all the Judges at the present was: whose unbridled power made them to regard neither Lawes nor Magistrates. To this Oration when he perceived that all the Citizens were attentive and favourable; He forthwith propounded a Law, which passed with the generall good liking; That the Judges should be chosen from year to year, and no one man be continued in that Office two years together. If this Law had been passed, before he passed over *Iberus*: it would not perhaps have been in the power of *Hannibal*, to have brought him unto necessity of reforming another grievance, concerning the *Roman* Tribute. This Tribute the *Carthaginians* were faine to levie by Taxation laid upon the whole Commonalty, as wanting money in their publique Treasury, wherewith to defray either that, or divers other needfull charges. *Hannibal* considering this, began to examine the publique Revenues; and to take a perfect note, both how much came into the Treasury, by wayes and means whatsoever; and in what sort it was thence laid out. So he found, That the ordinary charges of the Common-wealth did not exhaust the Treasury: but that wicked Magistrates, and corrupt Officers, turning the greatest part of the monies to their own use, were thereby faine to load the people with needles burdens. Hereof he made such plain demonstration, That these Robbers of the common Treasury were compelled to restore, with shame, what they had gotten by knavery: and so the *Carthaginians* were freed from the necessity of making such poor shifts, as formerly they had used, when they knew not the value of their own Estate. But as the virtue of *Hannibal* was highly commended by all that were good Citizens: so they of the *Roman* Faction, which had, since the making of the peace untill now, little regarded him, began to rage extremely; as being by him stript of their ill-gotten goods and ill-employed authority, both at once, even when they thought themselves to have been in full possession of the vanquished *Carthage*. Wherefore they sent letters to their friends

at Rome: where them they complained, as if the *Barchine* Faction grew strong again, and *Hannibal* would shortly be in arms. Questionless, if oppressing the City by injustice, and robbing the Treasury, were the only way to hold *Carthage* in peace with Rome: these Enemies to the *Barchines* might well cry out, That having done their best already to keep all in quiet, they saw none other likelihood than of War. But having none other matter to alledge, than their own inventions: they said, That *Hannibal* was like unto a wilde beast, which would never be tamed: That secret messages past between him, and King *Antiochus*: and that he was wont to complain of idleness, as if it were harmful to *Carthage*; with what else to like effect they could imagine. These accusations they directed not unto the Senate: but addressing their letters craftily, every one to the best of his own friends at Rome, and such as were Senators; they wrought so well, that neither publique notice of their Conspiracy was taken at *Carthage*; nor the authority of the Roman Senate, wanting to the furtherance of their malicious purpose. Only *P. Scipio* is said to have admonished the *Fathers*, that they should not thus dishonourably subscribe, and become seconds to the accusers of *Hannibal*: as if they would oppress, by laboring or countenancing false witnesses against him; the man, against whom in war they had not of long time prevailed, nor used their victory in such base manner, when they obtained it. But the Romans were not all so great-minded as *Scipio*: they wished for some such advantage against *Hannibal*; and were glad to have found it. Three Embassadors they sent over to *Carthage*, *C. Servilius*, *Q. Terentius*, and *M. Claudius Marcellus*: whose very names import sufficient cause of bad affection to *Hannibal*. These having past the Sea, were entertained by those that had procured their coming; and, being by them instructed how to carry themselves, gave out, That they were sent to end some controversies, between the *Carthaginians* and *Masaniissa*. But *Hannibal* had kept such good espial upon the Romans, that he knew their meaning well enough: against which he was never unprepared. It were enough to say, That he escaped them by flight: but in the actions of so famous a man, I hold it not impertinent to rehearse the particularities. Having openly shewed himself, as was his manner, in the place of Assembly, He went forth of the Town when it began to wax dark, accompanied with two which were ignorant of his determination; though such as he might well trust. He had appointed Horios to be in a readines at a certain place: whence riding all night, He came to a Tower of his own by the Sea-side. There had he a ship furnished with all things needfull; as having long expected the necessity of some such journey. So hee bade *Africk* farewell, lamenting the misfortune of his Country, more than his owne. Passing over to the Ile of *Cercina*: He found there in the Haven some Merchants ships of *Carthage*. They saluted him respectively: and the chieft among them began to enquire, whither he was bound. He said, He went Embassador to *Tyre*: and that he intended there in the Island to make a sacrifice; whereto he invited all the Merchants, and Masters of the Ships. It was hot weather: and therefore he would needs hold his Feast upon the shore, where, because there wanted covert, He made them bring thither all their sails and yards to be used in stead of Tents. They did so, and feasted with him till it was late at night: at which time he left them there asleep: and putting to Sea, held on his course to *Tyre*. All that night, and the day following, He was sure not to be pursued. For the Merchants did neither make haste to send any newes of him to *Carthage*, as thinking him to be gone Embassador: neither could they, without some loss of time, such of them as made most speed homeward, get away from *Cercina*; being busied a while in fixing their tackle. At *Carthage*, the misdeeds of so great a person was diversely construed. Some guessed aright, that he was fled. But the more common opinion was, That the Romans had made him away. At length came news where he had been seen: and then the Roman Embassadors, having none other errand thither, accused him (with an evill grace) as a troubler of the Peace; whereby they only discovered the mischief by them intended against him, and the malice of their Senate; missing the while their purpose, and causing men to understand, that he fled not thus without great reason.

*Hannibal* coming to *Tyre*, the Mother-City of *Carthage*, was there entertained Royally: as one, in whose great worth and honour the *Tyrians*, by reason of affinity between their Cities, thought themselves to have interest. Thence went he to *Antioch*; and, finding the King departed, visited his son in *Daphne*: who friendly welcomed

med him, and sent him unto his Father at *Ephesus*; that exceedingly rejoyced at his coming.

As *Antiochus* had cause to be glad, in that he had gotten *Hannibal*: so had the Romans no great cause to be therefore sorry; otherwise than as they had much disgraced themselves, by discovery of their impotent malice, in chasing him thus out of his Country. For it would not prove alike easie unto this great Commander to make stout Souldiers of base *Asiatics*; as it had been by his training and discipline, to make very serviceable and skilfull men of War of the *Spaniards*, *Africans*, *Gauls*, and other Nations, that were hardy, though unexperienced. Or were it supposed, that one mans worth, especially being so extraordinary, could alter the nature of a cowardly people: yet was it therewithall considerable, that the vanities of *Antiochus*, the pride of his Court, the baseness of his Flatterers, and a thousand other such vexations, would be far more powerfull in making unprofitable the virtue of *Hannibal*, now a desolate and banished man, than had been the villany of *Hanno* and his Complices, hindering him in those actions wherein he had the high Command, and was seconded by his warlike brethren. Wherefore the name of this Great *Carthaginian*, would only help to ennoble the Roman Victory: or if it further served to hearten *Antiochus*, and make him less careful to avoid the war; then should it further serve, to justify the Romans in their quarrell. And it seems indeed that it was no little part of their care, to get a fair pretence of making war. For *Antiochus*, as is said before, having newly sent Embassadors to *T. Quintius*, requiring that the Peace might faithfully be kept: it was not probable, that he had any meaning to take Arms; unless by meer violence he were thereto enforced. Only the *Etolians* were greatly suspected, as a turbulent people, desirous of innovation, and therefore providing with this Great King; whom they wished to see among them in Greece. In this regard, and to appeale them; they had of late been answered with gentle words by one of the ten Counsaillers, That the Senate would grant them whatsoever with reason they should ask. But this promise was too large, and unadvised. For when their Embassadors came to Rome, the Senate would grant them nothing; but wholly referred them to *T. Quintius*, who favoured them least. Hereat they murmured, but knew not how to right themselves: otherwise than by speaking such words, as might hasten the Romans out of Greece for very shame; who had no desire to be thence gone.

The daily talk at Rome was of war with *Antiochus*; but in Greece, when the Romans would leave the Country. For the *Etolians* were wont to upbraid the rest of the Greeks with the vain liberty which the Romans had proclaimed, saying, That these their Deliverers had laid heavier fetters upon them, than formerly they did wear; but yet brighter and fairer, than those of the *Macedonian*: likewise, that it was a gracious act of *Titus* to take from the legs of the Greeks their chain, and tie it about their necks. There was indeed no cause of tarrying longer in Greece, if the Romans had no other meaning than what they pretended. For *Philip* had made no delay, in accomplishment of that which was laid upon him: all the Towns of Greece were at liberty, and the whole Country at peace, both with the Romans; and within it self. As for *Antiochus*; He made it his daily suit, That the Peace between him and Rome, such as it was, might be confirmed; and strengthened by a League of more assurance. Nevertheless, *T. Quintius* would needs fear that *Antiochus* meant forthwith to seize upon Greece, as soon as he and his Army were thence departed. And in this regard, he retained still in his own hands *Chalcis*, *Demetrius*, and the *Acrocorinthus*: by benefit of which Towns, he might the better withstand the dangerous Invasion like to be made by *Antiochus*. Suitable unto the doings of *Quintius* were the reports of the ten Embassadors, that had ben sent over to assist him; when they returned back into the City. *Antiochus*, they said, would questionless fall upon Greece: wherein he should find not only the *Etolians*, but *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedamon*, ready to give him entertainment. Wherefore there was none other way, than to do somewhat against these their suspected enemies: especially against *Nabis*, who could worst make resistance; whilst *Antiochus* was far away in Syria; and not intensive to his business. These reports went not only current through the City, among the Vulgar; but found such credit with the chief of the Senate, that in the following year, against which time it was expected that *Antiochus* should be ready to take his great enterprise in hand; *P. Cornelius Scipio* the African, desired, and obtained, a second Consulship, with intention to be General in the War, against the King and his

*Hannibal*.



*Hannibal*. For the present, the business with *Nabis* was referred unto *Titus*; to deal with him as he thought good. This would be a fair colour of his longer tarriance in *Greece*. Therefore he was glad of the employment: whereof also he knew that many of the *Greeks* would not be sorry; though for his own part, he wanted all good pretence of taking it in hand. For *Nabis* had entered into friendship with him, two or three years before this, as is already shewed, whilst he had war with *Philip*: and had further been contented for the *Romans* sake to be at peace with the *Achaens*; neither since that time had he done any thing, whereby he should draw upon himself this War. He was indeed a detestable Tyrant, and hated of the *Achaens*; as one, that besides his own wicked Conditions, had formerly done to them great mischief. *Titus* therefore had a plausible Theme, whereon to discourse before the Embassages of all the Confederate Cities; which he caused to meet for that purpose at *Corinth*. He told them, That in the war with *Philip*, not only the *Greeks*, but the *Romans* themselves, had each their motives apart (which he there briefly rehearsed) that should stir them up and cause them to be earnest. But in this which he now propounded to them concerning *Nabis*, the *Romans* had none other interest, than only the making perfect of their honour, in setting all *Greece* at liberty: which noble action was in some sort maimed, or incomplete, whilst the noble City of *Argos* was left in subjection to a Tyrant, that had lately occupied it. It therefore belonged unto them, the *Greeks*, duly to consider, whether they thought the deliverance of *Argos* a matter worthy to be undertaken; or whether otherwise to avoid all further trouble, they could be well contented to leave it as it was. This concerned them, and not the *Romans*: who in taking this work in hand, or letting it alone, would wholly be ruled by the *Greeks* themselves. The *Athenian* Ambassador made answer herunto very eloquently, and as pleasing as he could devise. He gave thanks to the *Romans* for what was past; extolled their virtues at large; and magnified them highly in regard of this their proposition: wherein unrequested they freely made offer to continue that bounty, which at the vehement request of their poor Associates, they had already of late extended unto the *Greeks*. To this he added, That great pity it was to hear, such notable virtue and high deserts ill spoken of by some: which took upon them, out of their own imagination, to foretell what harm these their Benefactors meant to do hereafter: when as Thankfulness rather would have required an acknowledgement of the benefits and pleasures already received. Every one found the meaning of this last clause, which was directly against the *Etolians*. Wherefore *Alexander* the *Etolian* rose up, and told the *Athenians* their own: putting them in mind of their ancient glory, in those times when their City had been the Leader of all *Greece*, for defence and recovery of the liberty generally: from which honour they were now so far fallen, that they became Parasites unto those whom they thought most mighty; and by their base affection, would lead all the rest into servitude. Then spake he against the *Achaens*, Clients that had been along time unto the *Macedonian*; and Soldiers of *Philip*, until they ran away from his adversity. These, he said, had gotten *Corinth*, and much now have war be made for their sakes, to the end that they might also be Lords of *Argos*: whereas the *Etolians*, that had first made war with *Philip*, and always been friends unto the *Romans*, were now defrauded of some places, anciently to them belonging. Neither did he thus contain himself, but objected unto the *Romans*, fraudulent dealing: so far as much as they kept their Garrisons in *Demetrias*, *Chaleis*, and the *Acrocorinth*, having been always wont to profess, That *Greece* could never be at liberty, whilst those places were not free. Also now at last, what else did they seek by this discourse of war with *Nabis*, than businesses: wherewith to find themselves occupied, that so they might have some seeming cause of abiding longer in the Country? But they should do well if they meant as they spake, to carry their Legions home out of *Greece*: which could not indeed be free, till their departure. As for *Nabis*, the *Etolians* themselves did promise, & would undertake, That they would either cause him to yield to reason, and relinquish *Argos* freely, withdrawing thence his Garrison; or else compel him by force of Arms, to submit himself to the good pleasure of all *Greece*, that was now at unity. These words had been reasonable, if they had proceeded from better men. But it was apparent, that no regard of the common liberty wrought so much with these *Etolians*; as did their own ravenous desire of oppressing others, and getting unto themselves, that worse would use it, the whole Dominion in *Greece*, which *Philip* had

had lost. Neither could they well dissemble this; making it no small part of their grievance, That the old League was forgotten: wherein it had been covenanted, That the *Romans* should enjoy the spoil of all; but leave the Towns and Lands in possession of the *Etolians*. This, and the remembrance of a thousand mischiefs by them done, in former times, made the whole assembly, especially the *Achaens*, cry out upon them: entreating the *Romans* to take such order before they went, that not only *Nabis* might be compelled to do right; but the *Etolian* themselves be enforced to keep home, and leave their neighbours in quiet. All this was highly to the pleasure of *Titus*: who saw, that by discountenancing the *Etolians*, He was become the more gracious with all the rest. But whether it pleased him so well that *Antiochus* his Embassadors did presently after lie hard upon him, to draw the peace to some good conclusion, it may be greatly doubted. He cast them off with a slight answer: telling them, that the ten Embassadors or Counsellors which had been sent unto him from *Rome*, to be his assistants in these matters of weight, were now returned home; and that, without them, it was not in his power to conclude upon any thing.

Now concerning the *Lacedemonian* war: it was very soon ended. For *Titus* used the help of all his confederates; and made as great preparation against *Nabis*, both by Land and Sea, as if he should have had to do with *Philip*. Besides the *Roman* forces, King *Eumenes* with a Navie, and the *Rhodian* Fleet, were invited to the service: as also *Philip* of *Macedon* sent aid by Land; doing therein poorly, whether it were to get favour of the *Romans*, or whether to make one among the number, in seeking revenge upon *Nabis*, that had done him injury. But the most forward in this Expedition were the *Achaens*, who set out ten thousand Foot, and a thousand Horse. As for the *Etolians*: rather to hold good fashion, and found their dispositions, than in hope to speed, their help was required; whereof they excused themselves as well as they thought best. Thus are the *Achaens* now become the prime friends of the *Romans* in *Greece*; having removed the *Etolians* from that degree of favour: like as they themselves hereafter (though not in all haste) shall be supplanted of the same *Lacedemonians*, against whom they are now marching.

Some of the *Argivians*, more bold than wise, began a conspiracy against the *Lacedemonians* that held their Town; meaning to open their gates unto the *Roman*. But ere *Titus* drew near, they were all detected and slain: excepting a very few, that escaped out of the Town. The fame of this Commotion, caused the Army to march apace toward *Argos*; with hope to be there, before things were at quiet. But there was no stir within the Walls: the execution done upon the first movers, having terrified all the rest of the Citizens. *Titus* then thought it better, to assail *Nabis* in the head of his strength at *Lacedamon*, than to consume time about other places; especially at *Argos*: for the freedom whereof since the War was made, pity it were, that the calamities of the war should thereon fall most heavily.

*Nabis* was in readines an Army of fifteen thousand, wherewith to defend himself against these Invaders. Five thousand of them were Mercenaries: the rest, of his own Country; but such as were of all others the worst, as manumitted slaves, malefactors and base peasants, unto whom his Tyranny was beneficial. Of the good and worthy Citizens he stood in doubt; and since he could not hope to win their love, his meaning was to hold them quiet by fear. He called them all to an assembly: and compassing them round in with his Army, told them of the danger that was toward him and them. If they could agree within themselves; they might, he said, hope the better to withstand the common Enemy. But so far as much as turbulent heads were invited by light occasions, to raise tumults, and work dangerous confusion: it seemed unto him the safest, and the most reason to suspect. So should he keep them innocent perforce; and thereby preserve not only the City and his own person from danger, but them also from the punishment, which else they might have incurred. Hereupon he cries and apprehends about fourscore of them; whom he leads away to prison, and the next night putteth them all to death. Thus was he sure that they neither should offend; nor yet break loose. As for the death of them, if it should happen to be noised abroad: what could it else do than terrify the people: who must thereby understand, that it was a mortal crime to be suspected? And to the same purpose his cruelty extended it self unto

some poor wretches : whom he accused of a meaning to flie to the Enemy. These were only whipt through all the streets, and slain. Having thus affrighted the Citizens: He turned the more freely, all his thoughts toward the Enemy, that came on apace. He welcomed them with a sally : wherein, as commonly happens, the Souldiers of the Town had the better at first ; but were at length repelled with loss. *Titus* abode not many days before *Sparta* : but over-ran the County, hoping belike to provoke the Tyrant forth to battall. The *Roman* Fleet at the same time with King *Eumenes* and the *Rhodian*s, laid siege unto *Gythium*, the only or principall Town that *Nabis* had. Likely they were to have taken it by force, when there appeared hope of getting it by treason. There were two Governours within the Town equall in authority : whereof the one, either for fear, or desire of reward, had a purpose to let in the *Romans*. But the other, finding what was in hand, and being somewhat more faithfull, slue the Traitor ; after whose death, he himself alone made the better defence. Yet when *T. Quintus* with part of his Army came thither to *Gythium* : this Captain of the Town had not the heart to abide the uttermost, and await what either Time or his Master might do for him, but was contented to give up the place : yet upon Condition, to depart in safety to *Sparta* with his Garrison. *Pythagoras*, the son-in-law of *Nabis*, and brother unto his wife, was come from *Argos*, whereof he had the Government, with a thousand Souldiers, Mercenaries, and two thousand *Argives* : it being (as may seem) the Tyrants purpose, to relieve *Gythium* : which he thought would have held longer out. But when they heard that it was lost, then began they to think upon finishing the war, by some reasonable Composition. *Pythagoras* therefore was sent his Embassadour to *Titus* : requesting only that he would appoint a time and place for *Nabis* to meet and speak with him. This was granted. In that Parke the Tyrant spake very reasonably for himself : proving, that he suffered wrong, and had done none, and that by many good arguments : whereof the sum was, That whatsoever they now did, or could object unto him, was of older date than the League which they had made with him. Whereupon he inferred, That neither for his keeping the town of *Argos*, nor for any other cause by them alledged, they ought to make war upon him ; since *Argos*, and all other their allegations whatsoever, had not hindered them, in time of their more need of him, from entering into that League with him ; which was never broken on his part, nor ought to be on theirs. But *Quintus* was not herewith satisfied. He charged him with tyranny, & gave instance, as easily he might, of divers barbarous cruelties by him committed. In all which points so far as they knew this *Nabis* to be guilty, before they made Peace and Confederacy with him ; it was expedient, that some other cause of this Invasion should be alledged. Whereupon he said further, That this tyrant had occupied *Messene*, a Town Conceded with the *Romans* : That he had bargained to joyn with *Philip* ; when he was their enemy, not only in League, but also in affinity : and that his Fleet had robbed many of their ships, about the Cape of *Malea*. Now touching this Piracy, since in the Articles by *Titus* propounded unto *Nabis*, there was no restitution mentioned, other than of ships by him taken from the *Greeks* his neighbours, with whom he had long held war : it may seem to have been objected, only by way of Complement, and to enlarge the volume of those complaints, that were otherwise very frivolous. As for *Messene*, and the bargain of Alliance made with *Philip* : they were matters foregoing the League, that was made between the *Romans* and this tyrant ; and therefore not to have been mentioned. All this it seems that *Ariston*, the Prætor of the *Achaens*, very well perceived : who therefore doubting lest the *Romans*, (that were wont to seek to much of their own justice, honour, and faithfull dealing) should now relent, and forbear to molest him, who, though a wicked man, was yet their Confederate, and had never done them wrong ; framed his discourse to another end. He entreated *Nabis* to consider well of his own estate, and to settle his fortunes ; whilst he might do it without hazard : alledging the examples of many tyrants that had ruled in the neighbourhood, and herein committed great outrages ; yet were afterwards contented to surrender their Estates, and lived in great security, honour, and happiness, as private men. Thus they discoursed untill night. The next day *Nabis* was contented to relinquish *Argos* ; and requested them, to deliver unto him in writing their other demands, that he might take counsell with his friends. The issue of all was, that, in regard of the charges, whereat the Confederates must be, for maintenance of an Army to lie in League all that

that Winter (as there was no hope of making short work) before the City of *Sparta* : they were contented to make peace with the Tyrant, upon such Conditions as *Titus* should think meet. Besides the restitution of *Argos*, and all the places thereon depending, *Titus* propounded many other Conditions to *Nabis*, and some of them very grievous. He would not suffer the *Lacedæmonians* to have ought to do in the Ile of *Crete* ; nor to make any Confederacies, nor war, either in that Island or elsewhere ; nor to build any Town or Castle upon his own Lands ; nor to keep any other shipping, than two small Barks ; besides many other troublesome injunctions ; with imposition of an hundred talents in silver to be paid out of hand, and fifty talents yearly, for eight years next ensuing. For observance of these Covenants he demanded five hostages, such as he himself should name ; and one of them to be the Tyrants own son. If it had been the meaning of *Titus*, to withdraw the war from *Nabis*, because it was not grounded upon justice : then had it been enough, if not more than enough, to take *Argos* from him, which he himself did offer, though it were for fear, to deliver up. But if it were thought reasonable, to dispense a little with the *Roman* faith, in regard of the great benefit which thereby might redound unto the state of their best friends in *Greece* ; by the extirpation of this tyranny : then should this enterprize, when once it was taken in hand, have bin prosecuted unto the very utmost. As for this middle course which the *Romans* held : as it was not honourable unto them, to enrich themselves by the spoil of one that had not offended them ; nor pleasing to the *Achaens*, who judged it ever after a great blemish to the noble acts of *Titus* : so did it minister unto the *Ætolians*, and to such as curiously pried into the faults of those which took upon them to be Patrons of *Greece*, no barren subject of malicious discourse. For since *Philip*, a King, and descended of many famous Kings, might not be suffered by these Masterly *Romans*, to hold any one of those Countries or Towns in *Greece*, that had belonged unto his Ancestors : it was thought very strange, that *Lacedæmon*, once the most famous City among all the *Greeks*, was by the same *Romans* left in possession of a tyrant, that had usurped it but yesterday : and he therein rooted by their authority, as their friend and Confederate. *Nabis* on the other side thought himself unmercifully dealt withall, by the self-same *Romans*, whose amity he had preferred in time of a doubtful war, before the love and affinity of the *Macedonian* King, that had committed the City of *Argos* into his hands. But falsely had he dealt with the *Macedonian* : and falsely was he dealt with by those, to whom he did betake himself. Among these Articles propounded, there was nothing that pleased him, save only that for the banished *Lacedæmonians* ; (of whom a great number were in the *Roman* Camp, having among them *Agæopolis* the natural King of *Sparta*, that being a young child he was driven out by *Lycurgus* the first of the Tyrants) there was made no provision, to have them restored unto their City and Estates ; but only leave required for as many of their wives, as would be contented, to live abroad with them in banishment. Wherefore he forbore to give consent unto these demands : and sustained an assault or two ; hoping belike that the enemies would soon be weary. But his fearful nature shortly overcame the resolution, which the sense of these injuries had put into him. So yielding unto all that had been propounded, He delivered the hostages ; and thereupon obtained peace, that was confirmed afterwards at *Rome* by the Senate and People. From this time forward, He thought the *Romans* far more wicked than himself ; and was ready upon the first advantage, to do them all the mischief that he could.

The *Argives* had heard newes that *Lacedæmon* was even at point of being taken. This erected them, and gave them heart to think upon their own good. So they adventured to set upon the Garrison ; which was much weakened, by the remove of the three thousand carryed thence by *Pythagoras* to help the tyrant at *Sparta*. There needed unto their liberty no more, than that all of them joyntly should set their hands to the getting of it ; which no sooner they did than they obtained it. Presently after this came *T. Quintus* to *Argos*, where he was joyfully welcomed. He was deservedly acknowledged as author of that benefit, whereon the Citizens had layed hold without staying for him : and that he might the better entitle himself thereto, he caused the liberty of the *Argives* to be proclaimed at the *Nemean* games, as ratifying it by his authority. The City was annexed again to the Councill of *Achaia* ; whereby the *Achaens* were no more strengthened, than the *Argives* themselves were secured from danger of replese ;

into the same extremities out of which they had newly escaped.

After this, *Titus* found little business or none wherewith to set on work his Army in Greece. *Antiochus* was about to send another Embassy to *Rome*, desiring peace and friendship of the Senate. Things being therefore in appearance wholly disposed unto quiet, *Scipio* of the *Africans*, that was chosen Consul at *Rome*, could not have his desire, of being sent Commander into Greece. The unsyncre meaning of *Antiochus*, and the tumultuous disposition of the *Ætolians*, were held as considerations worthy of regard: yet not sufficient causes of making war. Neither appeared there any more honest way, of confuting the *Ætolians*, and of thoroughly persuading all the *Greeks* (which was not to be neglected, by those that meant to assure unto themselves the patronage of Greece) that the good of the Country was their sole intent: than by withdrawing thence their Legions, and leaving the Nation unto itself, till occasion should be ripe, and call them over again. Wherefore after *Titus* had spent a Winter there, without any matter of employment; either found, or at any near distance appearing, he called an Assembly of *Delegates*, from all parts of Greece to *Corinth*: where he meant to bid them farewell. There he recounted unto them all that had passed since his coming into those parts; and willed them to value the Roman friendship, according to the difference of estate, wile in the *Romans* found and left them. Hereto he added some wholesome counsell, touching the moderate use of their liberty, & the care which they ought to have of living peaceably and without faction. Lastly he gave up *Acrocrinthus* to the *Achaïans*, withdrawing thence the Roman Garrison, and promising to do the like (which very soon he did) at *Chalcis* and *Demetrias*; that so it might be known, what Iyers the *Ætolians* were, who had accused the *Romans*, of a purpose to retain those places. With joyfull acclamations did the *Greeks*, esteem their good liking of that which *Titus* had said and done: as also (at his request) they agreed, to ransom and enlarge all *Romans*, that had been sold into their Country by *Hannibal*.

This *Titus* crowned his actions in Greece with an happy end: and by leaving the Country before his departure was urged, left therein behind him the memory of his virtue and benefits untainted by jealousy and suspic on of any evil meaning. At his coming to the City, He had the honour of a Triumph, which was the goodliest of all that *Rome* had until that date beheld. Three days together the shew of his pomp continued: as being set out with the spoils of a Country, more abundant in things worthy of such a spectacle, than any wherein the *Romans* had before made War. All sorts of Armes, with Statues and curious pieces of Brasse or Marble, taken from the Enemy, were carried in the first day as Pageant. The second day, was brought in, all the treasure of Gold and Silver: Some in the rude Masse unwrought, some in divers sorts of Coins, and some in Vessels of sunary kinds, that were the more highly prized by the workmanship. Among these were ten shields, all of Silver; and one of pure Gold. The third day *Titus* himself entered the City in his Triumphphant Chariot. Before him were carried an hundred and fourteen Crowns of Gold, bestowed upon him by divers Cities. There were also led the beasts for Sacrifice, the Prisoners, and the hostages: among which, *Demetrius* the son of King *Philip*, and *Armenes* the son of *Nabis*, were principal. After him followed his Army, and (which added much grace, and good liking to the shew) the *Roman* Captives, by his procurement redeemed from slavery in Greece.

Not long after this triumph, He procured audience of the Senate for many Embassages, that were come out of Greece and Asia. They had all very favourable answers, excepting those of King *Antiochus*: whom the Senate would not hear, but referred over to *T. Quintus*, and the ten that had bin his Counsellors; because their business was said to be somewhat intricate. Hereat the Kings Embassadors wondred. They said unto *Titus* and his Associates, that they could not discern wherein consisted any perplexity of their message. For all treaties of peace and friendship, were either between the Victor and the vanquished, between those that having lived together, were upon equal terms of advantage, or between those that had lived alwaies in good agreement, without any quarrell. Unto the Victor, they said, that the vanquished must yeeld; and patiently endure the imposition of some Covenants, that else might seem unreasonable Where War had been made, and no advantage gotten: there was it usuall to demand and make restitution of things and places claimed, gotten or lost; accordingly as both parts could

could agree. But between those which had never fallen out, there ought no Conditions of establishing friendship to be proposed: since it was reasonable, that each part should hold their own; and neither carry it self as superiour to the other, in prescribing ought that might be troublesome. Now of this last kind, was the league and friendship that had been so long in conclusion, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*. Which being so: they held it strange, that the *Romans* should thus insist on points no way concerning them, and take up in them to prescribe unto the King, what Cities of Asia he should set at liberty, from what cities they would give him leave to exact his wonted Tributes; either putting or not putting his Garrisons into them, as the Senate should think fit.

Hereto *Quintus* answered, that since they went so dutifully to work, He would also do the like. Wherefore he propounded unto them two Conditions, and gave them their choice whether to accept: Either that it should be lawful for the *Romans* to take part in Asia with any that would seek their friendship; Or if King *Antiochus* misliked this, and would have them forbear to meddle in Asia, that then he should abandon whatsoever he had gotten in Europe. This was plain dealing; but a reasonable nor pertinent answer, so that which the Kings Embassadors had propounded. For if the *Romans* might be hired to abstain from Asia, by the gift of all that *Antiochus* had lately won in Europe: then did not the affairs of *Smyrna*, *Lampsacus*, or any other *Asiaticques*, whom they were pleased to reckon as their Confederates, binde them in honour to make War with a King that sought their love, and had never done them injury. But they knew very well, that *Antiochus* could not without great shame be so base, as to deliver up unto them the City of *Lysimachia*, whereon he had of late been at so much cost; in building it up even from the foundation, and repopling it with Inhabitants, that had all been dispersed, or captive to the *Barbarians*. And so much the Embassadors with great indignation alleged: saying, That *Antiochus* desired friendship of the *Romans*; but so, as it might stand with his honour. Now in point of honour, the *Romans* took upon them as if their cause were far the superiour. For it was, they said, their purpose to set at liberty those towns which the King would oppress and hold in subjection: especially since those towns were of *Greekish* blood and language, and fell, in that regard, under the patronage which *Rome* had afforded unto all Greece besides. By this colour they might soon have left *Antiochus* King of not many subjects on the hither side of *Euphrates*. Neither did they forbear to say, That unless he would quit what he held in Europe, it was their meaning not only to protect those which relyed upon them in Asia, but therein to make new Alliances: namely (as might be understood) with such as were his subjects. Wherefore they urged his Embassadors to come to a point, and tell them plainly which of these two Conditions their King would accept. For lack of a pleasing answer, which the Embassadors could not hereto make, little wanted of giving presently defiance to the King. But they suffered themselves to be entreated, & were contented once again to send over *F. Villius*, & others that had bin already with the king at *Lysimachia*, by whom they might receive a final answer, whether these demands made by *Quintus* and his Associates would be accepted, yea, or no. By this respite of time, and the fruitless Treaties ensuing, *Antiochus* got the leisure of two years; or thereabouts, to prepare for War; finding in the *Romans* all that while, no disposition to let him live in peace.

s. V.

Of the long Wars which the Romans had with the Gauls, Ligurians, and Spaniards. Of M. Porcius Cato. Injuries done by Masinissa to the Carthaginians, that sue to the Romans for justice in vain.

The *Insubrians*, *Bojians*, and other of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, together with the *Ligurians*, made often and (in a manner) continual war upon the *Romans* in Italy, even from such time as *Hannibal* and his brother *Mago* departed thence, until such time as they themselves were utterly subdued: which was not, before the *Romans* were almost at the very height of their Empire. These Nations, having served under *Mago* for wages, and afterwards having gotten *Amilcar* a *Carthaginian*, to be Leader unto them all, as hath been already shewed; by this their fellowship, in

Qqqqq

Armes

Ch. 1. §. 8. of  
this Book.

Arms, grew to be such willing partakers each of others fortune, that seldom afterwards either the *Gauls* or *Ligurians* did stir alone; but that their Companions, hearing it, were ready to second them. How the *Romans* first prevailed, and got large possessions in *Gallia Cisalpine*, now called *Lumbardie*; it hath been long since rehearsed between the first and second *Punic Wars*. As also it hath since appeared, how they lost the greatest part of their hold in that Country, by means of *Hannibal* his passage there-through. Neither is it likely that the re-conquest would have been more difficult or tedious unto the *Romans*, than was the first purchase: if, besides the greater employments which they had of their Armies abroad, their forces appointed unto this war, had not been distracted by the *Ligurians*; that alwaies made them to proceed warily, having an eye to the danger at their backs. The *Ligurians* were a stout Nation, light and swift of body; well practised in laying ambushes, and not discouraged with any overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again. Their Country was mountainous, rough, woody, and full of straight and dangerous passages. Few good Towns they had; but many Castles, exceedingly well fortified by nature: so as without much labour, they could neither be taken or besieged. They were also very poor, and had little or nothing that might give contentment unto a victorious Army that should spoyle their Land. In these respects, they served excellently well to train up the *Roman* Souldiers to hardnes and military patience: teaching them (besides other exercises of War) to endure much, and live contented with a little. Their quarrel to *Rome*, grew partly from their love unto the *Gauls*, their neighbours and companions, partly from their delight in robbing and spoiling the Territory of their borderers, that were subject unto *Rome*. But their obstinate continuance in the war which they had begun, seems to have been grounded upon the Condition of all Salvages; To be friends or foes, by custome, rather than by Judgement: and to acknowledge no such virtue in Leagues, or formal conclusions of peace, as ought to hinder them from using their advantage; or taking revenge of injuries when they return to minde. This quality is found in all, or most of the West-Indians: who, if they be demanded a reason of the Wars between them and any of their neighbours, do use commonly this answer, *It hath still been the custome for us and them, so fight one against the other.*

Divers overthrowes, though none that were great, these *Ligurians* gave unto the *Romans*; but many more, and greater, they received. Often they fought peace, when they found themselves in distress, and brake it again as often, when they thought it profitable so to do. The best was, that as their Country was a good place of exercise unto the *Romans*, so out of their own Country they did little harm: not sending any great Armies far from home; perhaps, because they knew not how to make war, save on their own ground.

The Country of *Spain*, as it was the first part of the Continent out of *Italy* that became subject unto the *Romans*: so was it the last of all their provinces, which was wholly and thoroughly by them subdued. It is likened in figure by some Geographers unto an Oxe-hide: & the *Romans* found in it the property of that Oxe-hide which *Calanus* the *Indian* shewed unto the Great *Alexander*, as an Embleme of his large Dominions. For treading upon any side of it, the further parts would rise from the ground. And thus was it with *Spain*. Seldome did it happen that those parts from which the *Roman* Armies lay farthest, were not up in rebellion. The *Spaniards* were a very hard Nation, and easily stirred up to arms; but had not much knowledge in the art of war, nor any good Captains. They wanted also (which was their principal hinderance) good intelligence among themselves: and being divided into many small Signories, that had little other communion than of language, they seldom or never provided in general for the common good of their Country; but made it their chief care, each of them to look unto their own Territory. Such private respects made them often to fall asunder, when many had united themselves together, for chasing out of the *Romans*. And these were the causes of their often overthrowes: as desire of liberty, rather than complaint of any wrong done to them, was the cause of their often taking arms.

The *Carthaginians* had been accustomed, to make evacuation of this Cholerick *Spanish* humour; by employing, as Mercenaries in their wars abroad, those that were most likely to be unquiet at home. They had also taken Souldiers from one part of the Country, and used them in another: finding means to pay them all, out of the profits which

which they raised upon the whole Country; as being far better husbands, and of more dexterity than were the *Romans*, in that kinde. But contrariwise, the *Romans*, using the service of their own Legions, and of their sure friends the *Latines*, had little business for the *Spaniards*; and therefore were faine to have much business with them. *Spain* was too far distant, and withal too great for them to send over Colonies thither, whereby to hold it in good order, according to the consil that they took in *Italy*. Wherefore it remained, that they should alwaies maintain such Armies in the Country, as might serve to hold it in obedience perforce; and such heedfull Captains as might be still ready to oppose the *Barbarians* in their first Commotion. This they did; and thereby held the Country; 10 though seldom in peace.

Very soon after the departure of *Scipio*, there was raised War in *Spain* against the *Romans*, even upon the same general ground, that was the foundation of all the *Spanish Wars* following. It was thought unreasonable, that the *Spaniards* should one while help the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, and another while the *Romans* against the *Carthaginians*, safely forgetting to help themselves against those that were strangers, yet usurped the Dominion over them. But the forces which *Scipio* had left behinde him in that Country, being well acquainted with the manner of War in those parts, suppressed this rebellion by many victories: and, together with subjection, brought peace upon the Country: which lasted five years. This Victory of the *Romans*, though it happily ended the War: yet left it still remaining the cause of the War; which after five years brake out again. The *Spaniards* fought a battell with the *Roman* Proconsul, whom they slew; and had a great Victory, that filled them with greater hopes. Yet the happy success of their Wars in *Greece*, made the *Romans* think it enough to send thither two Praetors, and with each of them some two Legions. These did somewhat: yet not so much, but that *M. Porcius Cato*, who was Consul the year following, and sent into that Province; found at his coming little left to do, than the reconquering of all *Spain*. But it fell out happily, that all the *Spaniards* were not of one minde: some were faithfull to *Rome*; and some were idle beholders of the pains that others took. Yet when *Cato* had won a great Victory upon the chieftest of them; they rose against him in many parts of the Country, and put him unto much new trouble. Whilest he was about to make a journey against those that were as yet unsubdued: some of the lately vanquished, were even ready to rebell. He therefore disarmed them: which they took so heavily, that many of them slew themselves for very grief. Hearing of this, and well understanding that such desperation might work dangerous effects; He called unto him the principall among them: and commending unto them peace and quietness, which they never had disturbed but unto their own great losse, He prayed them to devise what course might be taken for holding them assured unto *Rome*, without further trouble. None of them could, or would give counsel in a matter of this nature. Having therefore talked with them once or twice, and finding their invention barren in this kinde of Subject; He gave expresse charge, That upon a day appointed they should throw down the wals of all their Towns. Afterwards he carried the war about from place to place; and with singular industry finished it in short time. Neither thought he it any disgrace to him or to *Rome*, in this time of danger, to imitate the *Carthaginians*, and hire an Army of the *Celtiberians*, against other of their Countymen: excusing the indignity, such as it seemed, with a jest, That if he were vanquished and slain, then should he need to pay them nothing; whereas if he had the Victory, He could pay them with the enemies money. Finally, He brought the War to good end, that in long time after, though *Spain* were often troublesome, yet was it in no danger of being lost. He increased also the publique Revenues in that Province, by 30 causing some Mines of Iron and Silver to be wrought, that had before lain unregarded. Herein he did benefit the Common-wealth by a vertue much agreeable to his own peculiar disposition.

For this *M. Cato* was not only very notable in the Art of War, which might well be then termed the occupation of the *Romans*; but so well furnished with all other useful qualities, that very little was wanting in him, which might seem requisite to the accomplishment of a perfect man. He was very skillful in the *Roman* Lawes, a man of great Eloquence, and not unprofitable in any business either private or publique. Many books he wrote: whereof the principal were, of the *Roman* antiquities, & of husbandry. In matter

of husbandry he was notable, and thereby most increased his substance; being of mean birth, and the first of his house. Strong of body he was, and exceeding temperate: so as he lived in perfect health to very old age. But that which most commended him unto the better sort of the *Romans*, was his great lincency of life, abstinence from bribes, and fashioning himself to the ancient laudable Customes of the City. Herein he had merited singular commendations, if the vehemency of his nature had not caused him to malign the vertue of that noble *Scipio the African*, and some other worthy men; that were no lesse honest than himself, though far less rigid, and more gallant in behaviour. Otherwise, He was a very good Citizen, and one of such temper, that he could fashion himself to all occasions; as if he were never out of his Element. He loved business so well, 10 rather hated vice so earnestly, that even unto the end of his life, He was exercised in defending himself or accusing others. For at the age of fourscore and six years, he pleaded in his own defence: and four years after, he accused *Sergius Galba* unto the people. So began the Nobility of *Cato* his family, which ended in his great grand-child *M. Cato the African*: one that being of like vertue and fervency, had all his good purposes done, and was finally wearied out of his life, by men of such nobility and greatness as this his Ancestor had continually vexed.

The *Spanish Wars*, after *Cato* his departure out of the Country, though they were not very dangerous, yet were they many, and the Country seldom free from insurrection, in one part or other. The *Roman* Prators therefore, of which two every year 20 were sent over Commanders into *Spain* (that was divided into Governments) did rarely fail of such work, as might afford the honour of Triumph. One slew thirteen thousand *Spaniards* in a battell: another took fifty Towns; and a third enforced many States of the Country to sue for peace. Thus every one of them, or most of them, did some laudable service; and yet so, that commonly there were of men, towns, and people, new that rebelled, in stead of the old that were slain, taken, or reclaimed. At the causes hereof, I have already pointed; and therefore think it enough to say, That the business in *Spain* required not the employment of a *Roman* Consul, from such time as *Cato* thence departed, until the *Numantian War* broke out, which was very long after.

In all other Countries to the West of the *Tonian Seas*, the *Romans* had peace; but so 30 had not the *Carthaginians*. For when *Hannibal* was gone from them, and that the enemies of the *Barchine* House promised all felicity which *Rome* could grant, unto themselves and their obedient City: *Masaniissa* fell to disputing with the sword, about the title to the best part of their Lands. He began with *Emporia*, a fruitful Region about the lesser *Syrus*: wherein, among other Cities, was that of *Lepis*, which daily paid a Talent unto *Carthage* for Tribute. This Country the *Numidian* challenged; and by winning some part of it, seemed to better his claim unto the whole. He had a great advantage: for that the *Carthaginians* might not make any War, without leave obtained from their Masters the *Romans*. They had none other way of redress, than by sending to *Rome* 40 their Complaint of his doings. And surely they wanted not good matter to allege, if the Judges had been impartial. For besides that *Scipio*, in limiting out to them their bounds, had left them the possession of this Country: *Masaniissa* himself, now very lately pursuing a Rebell that fled out of his Kingdom, desired leave of the *Carthaginians*, for himself to passe through it in his way to *Cyrene*: thereby acknowledging (had it otherwise been questionable) that the Country was theirs. This notwithstanding, *Masaniissa* had wherewith to justify his proceedings, especially unto the *Roman Senate*. He gave the *Fathers* to understand by his Embassadors, what faithlesse people the *Carthaginians* were, and how ill affected to the State of *Rome*. There had lately been sent unto them from *Hannibal*, one that should perswade them to take part with *Antiochus*. 50 This man they had examined upon some suspicion of his errand; yet neither arresting him nor his ship, had thereby afforded him means to escape. Hence the *Numidian* concluded, that certainly it was their purpose to rebell; and therefore good policy to keep them down.

As for the Country of *Emporia*: it had alwaies, he said, been theirs that were able to hold it by strong hand: and so belonged sometime unto the *Numidian* Kings; though now of late it was in possession of the *Carthaginians*. But if the truth were known, the Citizens of *Carthage* had not any very warrantable title unto any more ground, than that

that whereon their City stood; or scarcely to so much. For they were no better than strangers in *Africa*, that had gotten leave there to build upon so much ground, as they could encompass with an Oxe-hide cut into small thongs. Whatsoever they held without such a compass, was purchased by fraud, and wrongful encroachments. This considered, *Masaniissa* requested of the Senate, that they would not adjudge unto such usurpers, the Country sometimes appertaining to the Ancestors of him their assured friend. The *Romans* having heard these allegations on both sides, found the matter so doubtful, that they could not on the sudden tell what to determine. Wherefore, because they would do nothing rashly; they sent over three Embassadors, of whom *P. Scipio the African* 10 was one and the chief, to decide the controversie: yet secretly giving them instructions, to leave all as they found it, without making any end one way or other. The Embassadors followed their directions, and left all doubtful. So was it likely, that *Masaniissa* with a strong army should quickly prevail against those that could no more than talk of their right, and exclaim against the wrong. By such Arts were the *Carthaginians* held, not only from stirring in favour of King *Antiochus*, if they had there to any disposition; but were prepared by little and little, unto their final destruction: that came upon them, when the *Romans* had leisure to express the utmost of their hatred.

## §. V I.

The *Aetolians* labour to provoke *Antiochus*, *Philip*, and *Nabis*, to war upon the *Romans*, by whom they hold themselves wronged and disgraced. *Nabis* besiegeth *Gythium*, and wasteth some part of *Achæa*. The exact skill of *Philopemen* in advantage of ground: whereby he utterly vanquisheth *Nabis*. *Antiochus* being denied peace by the *Romans*, joyns with the *Aetolians*. The *Aetolians* surprize *Demetrius*; and by killing *Nabis*, their Confederates, seize upon *Sparta*. But they are driven out by the Citizens: who at *Philopemen* his persuasions annex themselves to the *Achæans*.

30 ALL *Greece* being at peace, and the *Roman* Armies thence departed: it grieved much the *Aetolians* to think, that they who had promised unto themselves the whole spoil of *Philip*, and the highest reputation among the *Greeks*; were not only disappointed of their covetous hopes, but quite forsaken by their ancient dependants; and of all other the most unregarded. Yet was there made a great access to their Estate; by adding much unto them, of that which had been taken from the *Macedonian*. This might well have sufficed them, if their desires had not been immoderate; and their indignation more vehement, than their desire. But they were not so pleased with that which they had, since they thought it no more than part of their due: as they were vexed with the denial of that which they claimed, and with finding themselves to be wholly defeated, wherein they thought that they had unufferable wrong. Wherefore they de- 40 stituted, in a Parliament which they shortly held, by what means they best might right themselves; and give the *Romans* a sorrowfull knowledge of the difference between their enmity and friendship. To this purpose they soon agreed, as concurring all in one affection; That they would not only perswade *Antiochus* to make war upon the *Romans*, as one to whom the *Romans* had long refused peace; but that they would deal with the King of *Macedon* their ancient enemy, and with *Nabis* the Tyrant of *Lacedæmon*, to joyn all together in a new Confederacy: whose joyned forces could not in all likelihood, but far surmount those of the *Romans*, *Achæans*, *Rhodians*, and King *Eumenes*, with all that were of their Faction. This was a great enterprise, which the *Aetolians* took in hand, and well 50 befecoming them, for they were great darters. They sent Embassadors to all these Kings, with perswasions, as they thought most forcible. But *Philip* was irresolute; and *Antiochus* willing to try first all other courtes. *Nabis* the *Lacedæmonian*, who neither (as *Philip*) had lost much, nor (as *Antiochus*) was in fear of any War; yet shewed himself of all other the most forward: and not staying so much as to seek any good pretence, began immediately to lay siege unto *Gythium*, that had been lately taken from him by the *Romans*. The *Achæans*, to whose care chiefly *Titus* at his departure had commended the affairs of *Peloponnesus*, were not slow to admonish *Nabis* of his duty: neither would they have staid long from repressing his violence by open war; had not some of them thought

it wisdom to ask Counsell of the *Romans*, and particularly of *T. Quintius*, before they engaged themselves in a business of such importance. Whilst thus they spent the time in sending Embassadors, and were advised by *Quintius* to let all alone, and to wait for the coming of the *Roman* forces, that would shortly be amongst them: *Nabis* was bold to give them juster cause of complaint, by waisting their own Territory.

*Philopamen* was then Pretor of the *Acheans*, who had long been absent in *Crete*, making War there for his minds sake and recreation. Unto him the *Acheans* referred themselves, giving him leave to order the War at his pleasure, either staying till the *Romans* came, or doing otherwise, as he should think best. He made all haste to relieve *Gythium* by Sea; fearing lest the Town, and the *Achean* Garrison within it, should be lost, if he used any delay. But *Philopamen* was so bad a Sea-man, that he knew not a strong Ship from a rotten. He made a *Quadrivene* Gally his Admirall, that had fourcore years agoe been counted a gallant Vessell, in the Navie of *Antigonus Gonatas*. Neither was the rest of his Fleet so good, as might encounter with that of the *Lacedaemonians*. Only it fell out well, that he committed himself to a light Pinnace or Brigandine, that fought better with her wings, than with her talons. For his admirall Gally was stemmed at the first; and being rotten with age, sprang so many leaks, and took in water so fast, that she was faine to yeeld without further resistance. When the rest of the Fleet saw what was become of their Admirall, all were presently discouraged, and saved themselves with what speed they could. But *Philopamen* was not herewith daunted. If he had failed in Sea-service, which was none of his Occupation, He said, that he would make amends by Land. The Tyrant withdrew part of his Army from the siege of *Gythium*, to stop the *Acheans*, if they should invade his Countrey. But upon these which were placed in guard of *Laconia*, *Philopamen* came unexpected, fired their Camp, and put all, save a very few of them, to the sword. Then marched he with all his Army towards *Lacedaemon*: within ten miles wherof he was when the tyrant met him, that had already taken *Gythium*. It was not expected that *Nabis* would have been ready for them so soon. Or if he should come from *Gythium*, with any part of his forces: yet was it thought that he must overtake them, and charge them in Rere. They marched therefore almost securely, in a long troop reaching some five miles; having their Horse, and the greatest part of their Auxiliaries at their backs, to bear off any sudden impression. But *Nabis*, who formerly understood, or at least suspected, what course they would take, appeared in the front of them with all his Army; encamped there where they meant to have lodged. It was the custome of *Philopamen*, when he walked or travelled abroad with his friends, to mark the situation of the Countrey about him; and to discourse what might befall an Army marching the same way. He would suppose, that having with him there such a number of Souldiers, ordered and sorted in such manner, and marching towards such a place; he were upon that ground encountered by a greater Army, or better prepared to the fight. Then would he put the question, Whether it were fit for him to hold on his way, retire, or make a stand? What piece of ground it were meet for him to seize upon; and in what manner he might best do it; in what fort he should order his men; where bestow his carriages, and under what Guard in what fort encamp himself; and which way march the day following? By such continuall meditation, He was grown so perfect, that he did never meet with any difficulty, whence he could not explicate himself and his followers. At this time he made a stand: and having drawn up his Rere, He encamped near unto the place where he was; within half a mile of the Enemy. His baggage with all thereto belonging, he bestowed on a Rock; encompassing them round with his Souldiers. The ground was rough, the wayes bad, and the day almost quite spent; so as *Nabis* could not at the present greatly molest him. Both Armies were to water at one Brook; whereto the *Acheans* lay the nearer. This watering therefore was first to minister the like occasion of skirmish. *Philopamen* understood this; and laid an ambush in place convenient; wherein to the Mercenaries of *Nabis* fell, and were slaughtered in great numbers. Presently after this, he caused one of his own Auxiliaries to go to the Tyrant, as a fugitive, and tell him, that the *Acheans* had a purpose to get between him and *Lacedaemon*; whereby they would both debar his return into the City, and withall encourage the people to take Armes for the recovery of their freedom. The Tyrant hearing this, marched hastily away; and left his Camp, which hardly otherwise would have been forced.

Some

Some companies he made to stay behind, and shew themselves upon the Rampart, thereby to conceal his departure. But *Philopamen* was not to be beguiled. He easily won the Camp, and gave chase to *Nabis*: whose followers being overtaken, had no courage to turn about & make head. The enemies being thus dispersed, & fled into woods where they lay in covert all that day: *Philopamen* conceived a right, that their fear & necessity would teach them to creep homewards, and save themselves, when it grew dark. Wherefore in the evening, when he had gathered together all those of his light-armature, which had followed the chase whilest it was day, he led forth the rest that had well refreshed themselves, and occupied the two most ordinary passages unto *Lacedaemon*. So *Nabis* his men, when it was dark night, perceiving in *Philopamens* Camp great store of lights, thought that all had been at rest: and therefore adventured to make an escape home. But they were so way-laid, that hardly one quarter of them got into *Sparta*. Thirty daies together after this, did *Philopamen* waite the Country round about, whilest *Nabis* durst not issue forth of his town; and then returned home, leaving the tyrant in a manner without forces.

The *Roman* Embassadors were then in *Greece*, and *T. Quintius* among them, labouring to make their party strong against *Antiochus* and *Nabis*, whom they knew to be solicited by the *Atolians*. Very fair countenance they also made unto *Philip*; and with comfortable promises drew him to make shew, whatsoever he thought, of good correspondence. They promised to restore unto him his son: and were contented to let him hope, that he should receive other favours at their hands; and regain possession of many places, by them taken from him. Thus did the *Romans* prepare for war against *Antiochus* in *Greece*, whilest their Embassadors that were with him in *Asia*, denied otherwise to grant him Peace, than if he would yeeld unto one of the Conditions, by them so often propounded. The long absence of this King in *Syria*, where he had accomplished the marriage between *Ptolemy* and his daughter; together with the death of young *Antiochus* the Kings son, which hapened during the Treaty, and hindered, or seemed to hinder the King from giving audience in person to the Embassadors; caused them to return home to *Rome*; as uncertain of their answer as at their setting forth.

One thing that might have been, and partly was, beneficiall unto them, they brought to passe during their abode at *Ephesus*; either by cunning, or (as *Livie* rather thinks) by chance. Finding *Hannibal* there, they discomfited often with him, and blamed him for having this fled unto *Antiochus*, upon a causeless suspicion wherein he held the *Romans*; that honoured his vertue, and intended him no harm. Many have affirmed that *P. Scipio* was one of these Embassadors; and that he, among other discourses with *Hannibal*, demanded once, Which of all the famous Captains that had lived, *Hannibal* judged the most worthy? So *Hannibal* gave to *Alexander* of *Macedon* the first place: to *Pyrrius* the second: and the third he challenged unto himself. But *Scipio*, who thought his own title better, than that it ought to be so forgotten, asked yet further, What wouldst thou have said then, *Hannibal*, if thou hadst vanquished me? To whom the *Carthaginian* replied, Then would not I have given the first place to *Alexander*, but have claimed it as due unto my self. Now whether this were so, or otherwise, the often and friendly conference of *Hannibal* with the *Roman* Embassadors, made him suspected of *Antiochus*; who therefore did forbear a while to use his counsell. Yet afterwards, when *Hannibal* perceived this change in the King, and plainly desired him to tell the cause thereof, heard what it was; he easily recovered his former grace and credit. For he told how his Father had caused him to swear at the Altars, when he was a little boy, that he never should be friend unto the *Romans*. Wherefore he willed the King not to regard any vainfurnishes: but to know thus much, that so long as he thought upon war with *Rome*, so long would *Hannibal* do him all good service: whereas contrariwise, if he intended to make peace, then should it behove him to use the counsell of some other man.

The *Atolians*, and their friends, were no less busied all this while, in making their party strong against the *Romans*, than were the *Romans* in mustering up their friends in *Greece*. They had so often dealt with *Antiochus*, vaunting much of their own forces, and arrogating to themselves the honour of the victory against *Philip*, that finally they prevailed with him, especially when the *Roman* Embassadors had left him without hope of peace, unless he would buy it at too dear a rate. They dealt in like sort with the *Macedonians*.

But



But in vain. He understood the *Romans*, and himself, too well. Wherefore it concerned them to improve their own forces to the uttermost: as knowing that all the burden must lie upon *Antiochus* and themselves, without help from any, save only from some few that were discontented in *Greece*. Whilst they were about this, and had with them an Ambassador of the King *Antiochus*, that animated them to resolution, the *Athenian* Embassadors, whom *Titus* had requested to be at their meeting, stayed their vehemency a little, by exhorting them, not to conclude rashly, without first hearing the *Romans*, that lay near at hand. For want of a ready answer hereto, they were contented to approve the motion. *Titus* hearing this, thought it a business worthy of his presence. For since *Antiochus* had now declared himself against the *Romans*, it would be no small piece of service, to withdraw from his friendship, those by whose encouragement he had made the adventure. Wherefore he came to their *Panatholium*, or great Assembly of the Nation; where he forgot nothing that might serve to appease them. He willed them to consider the weight of the enterprise which they took in hand; whereby *Greece* was like to become a Champaign-field, on which to the ruine of the Country, the *Romans* and King *Antiochus*, that commanded no small part of the World, should fight for the Mastery: the *Ætoliens*, as Masters in that kind of Fence, setting them on, and becoming

\* *Liv. 35.* *the Sticklers*. As for those grievances which did thus exasperate them, and urge them to such violent courses, he willed them to consider how slight they were, and how much better they might do, to send Embassadors to *Rome*, that should either plead their right in the Senate, or (if their right unto the places which they claimed, were not good) make request to have what they desired: than thus to set the world in an uproar, and be afterwards the first that should repent it. But what he said, or could say, it skilled not much. They had already done ill, to make the Ambassador of the King, whose help they had sought, wait so long for an answer, and stay doubting what good end they should make with the *Romans*. Neither was it newes unto them, to hear those comfortable words; that, by sending to *Rome*, they might happen to obtain what they desired, either as their right, or else by way of favour. For with such Terms had they been feasted once already: and were by the Senate rejected unto *Titus*: who having it in his own power, gave them no satisfaction; yet would now again refer them to the Senate. This was only loss of time, and might abate their credit with *Antiochus*. Wherefore without more ado they made a Decree, That King *Antiochus* the Great should be intreated to come over into *Greece*, as well to let the Country at liberty, as also to decide the controversies depending between the *Romans* and *Ætoliens*. Such a Decree they would not have made, had they not understood the Kings minde before. Having made it, they forgot no point of bravery, whereby to vaunt themselves to the Kings Embassadors, and against the *Romans*. *Titus* desired of their Prætor, to let him see a Copy of this new Decree. The Prætor answered, That then he had other things to do: but that this Decree, and their further answer, they would shortly let him know, if he came to their Camp in *Italy* upon the river of *Tibris*. Gentler words would have done better, as the *Ætoliens* are like to understand hereafter. But having thus begun, they meant henceforth to go on unduly to work. The care of the war they referred unto the more private Council of their Nation; that no occasion might slip, in waiting for the Authority of a generall assembly. The *Apocleti* (so were the privie Councell of *Ætolia* called) went as hotly to work as any of the youngest heads could have done. They laid a plot, how to get into their hands at one time the Towns of *Chalcis*, *Demetrias*, and *Sparta*: to each of which they sent men for the purpose. *Demetrias* they took upon the sudden; entring some of them as friends, to conduct home a principall man of the City: who for speaking words against *T. Quintius*, had been driven to flee thence; but was, by intercession of those that loved him, again recalled. His *Ætolian* companions, that were not many, seized upon a Gate; whereat they let in a troop which they had left not far behind them: and so fell to murdering the chief of the *Roman* Faction. At *Chalcis* they sped not so well. Thither also they had a banished man to bring home: but they came so strong, that their purpose was discovered, and the Town prepared to defend itself against them. Being therefore demanded the cause of this hostility, they gave a gentle answer, saying, That they came not thither as enemies, but only to deliver the Town from the *Romans*; who more insolently domineered over it, than ever the *Macedonians* had done. By which Rhetorick they prevailed no more, than they could do by plain force.

force. For the Towns-men replied, That they neither found any abridgement of their liberty, nor needed any Garrison to keep them from the *Romans*, from whom they neither feared any danger, nor received injury. So this business was dashed. The attempt upon *Sparta* was more strange and desperate. *Nabis* their good friend, was Lord of the Town, styling himself King: but more truly by all men called Tyrant. He had well-near lost all, by means of the overthrow which *Philopamen* had lately given him: since he durst not stir abroad; and daily expected the mischief, that on all sides threatened him. Wherefore he sent messengers, one after another, to the *Ætoliens*; requesting them, That as he had not been slow to stir in their behalf, but adventured himself upon the utmost of danger, when all others were backward; so they would be pleased to send him what help they might, since his bad fortune had caused him presently to need it. It hath been often said, That the ravenous *Ætoliens* were only true to themselves, and regarded neither faith nor friendship, otherwise, than as it might conduce to their own ends. And so dealt they now. For since *Nabis* his mercenary forces, which upheld his Tyranny, were in a manner consumed: they thought it expedient for their Estate, to put him out of the way; and, by so doing, to assure *Lacedæmon* unto themselves. To this purpose, they sent thither *Alexamenus*, one whom they thought a man fit for such a work. To him they gave a thousand Foot, and thirty Horse, chosen for the purpose. These thirty were by *Demetrius* the Prætor brought into the Council of the

\* *Apocleti*, where they were commanded to be no wiser than they should be, nor to think that they were sent to make war with the *Acheans*, or to do ought else, save only what *Alexamenus* should command them; which were it never so desperate, and in seeming against all reason; yet must they understand, that unless they performed it, they should have no good welcome home. So *Alexamenus* came to the Tyrant, whom he encouraged with brave words: telling him that *Antiochus* was already in *Europe*, and would be anon in *Greece*, meaning to cover all the Land and Sea with his mighty Armies; and that the *Romans* were like to finde other manner of work, than of late with *Philip*: since the Elephants of this great King, without other help, would suffice to tread them down. As for the *Ætoliens*, he said, that if need should so require, they would presently send away to *Lacedæmon* all the forces that they could raise: But that they were very desirous at the present, to make as goodly a muster as they could, before the great king; which caused them to send him thither afore with no greater company. Hereupon he willed *Nabis* to take heart; bring forth his men, that had bin long pent up in the City; and train them without the walls: as if shortly he should employ them in work of conquest, rather than defence. *Nabis* was glad of this: and daily exercised his men in the field: riding up and down with this *Alexamenus*, and no more than three or four horse about him; from one point to another, to order and behold them. During this time of exercise, *Alexamenus* made it his fashion, to step aside alone to his *Ætoliens*, and say somewhat as he thought fit: which done, he still returned again to *Nabis*. But when he saw time for the great work which he had in hand, he then went aside to his thirty horsemen, and bade them remember the task enjoyned them at their setting forth; telling them, that they were all in case of banished men, unless they would anon come up to him, and help him to finish that which they should see him take in hand. Herewith all the Tyrant began to draw near them: and *Alexamenus* making towards him, charged him on the sudden, and struck him down. The thirty *Ætoliens* never stood to deliberate upon the matter, but all flew in; and, before any succour could arrive, had made an end of this wretched *Nabis*. Presently upon the fact committed, the Tyrant his Mercenaries ran unto the dead body: where in stead of seeking revenge, they stood foolishly gazing as beholders. *Alexamenus* with his *Ætoliens* halted into the City, and seized on the Palace: where he fell to ransacking the Treasure; and troubled himself with none other care, as though all were already done. Such of his followers as were dispersed in the Town, did also the like; with the greater indignation of the Citizens: who seeing themselves free by the death of the Tyrant, could not indure to see those that had slain him, begin to tyrannize anew. Wherefore all the town was shortly in arms: and for lack of another Captain, they took a little Boy of the Royal stock, that had been brought up with *Nabis* his children, whom they mounted upon a good Horse, and made him their Chief. So they fell upon the *Ætoliens* that were idly straggling about; and put them all to the sword. *Alexamenus* with

with not many of his Company, were slain in keeping the Citadel: and those few that escaped thence into *Aracida*, were taken by the Magistrates, who sold them all as bond-slaves. In this doubtfull Estate of things at *Lacedæmon*, *Philopæmen* came thither: who calling out the chief of the City, and speaking such words unto them, as *Alexamenes* should have done after he had slain the Tyrant, easily perswaded them for their own good and safety, to incorporate themselves with the *Achaans*. Thus by the enterprise, no lesse dishonourable than difficult, of the *Ætolians*, and the small, but effectually, travell of *Philopæmen*, the *Achaans* made a notable purchase: and *Lacedæmon*, that had hitherto bin governed either by Kings, or by Tyrants that called themselves Kings, became the member of a Common-wealth, whereof the name had scarce any reputation, when *10* *Sparta* ruled over all *Greece*.

## s. VII.

*Antiochus*, perswaded by *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, comes over into *Greece* ill attended. Sundry passages between him, the *Ætolians*, *Chalcidians*, and others. He wins *Chalcis*, and thereby the whole Ile of *Eubœa*. The vanity of the Kings Embassadors and the *Ætolians*, with the civill answer of *Titus* to their discourse, before the *Achaans*. That it concerned the *Greeks* to have desired peace between the *Romans* and *Antiochus*, as the best assurance of their own liberty. Of many petty Estates that fell to the King. Of *Aminander*, and as *20* idle vanity, by which King *Philip* was lost. *Hannibal* gives good counsell in vain. Some Towns won in *Thessaly*. The King retires to *Chalcis*, where he marrieth a young wife, and revels away the rest of Winter. Upon the coming of the Roman Consul all forsake *Antiochus*. He with two thousand *Ætolians* keeps the Straights of *Thermopyla*. He is beaten, and flees into *Asia*: leaving all in *Greece* unto the victors.

**A***ntiochus* was troubled much in *Asia* with *Smyrna* and *Lampsacæ*, that would not hearken to any Composition. He thought it neither safe nor honourable, to leave them Enemies behind him; and to win them by force, was more than hitherto he was able. Yet he was desirous, with all speed convenient, to shew himself in *Greece*; where *30* he had bin told, that his presence would effect wonders. It was said, that in all the country there was a very small number, which bore hearty affection unto the *Romans*: that *Nabis* was already up in arms: That *Philip* was like a Bando in a chain, desiring nothing more, than to break loose; and that the *Ætolians*, without whom the *Romans* had done nothing, nor nothing could have done, were ready to confer upon him the greatness, which they had unworthily bestowed upon insolent *Barbarians*. Of all this the least part was true. Yet that which was true made such a noise, as added credit unto all the rest. Whilest therefore the king was thinking to send *Hannibal* into *Africa*, there to molest the *Romans*; & so give him the better leisure of using his own opportunities in *Greece*: *Thoas* the *Ætolian* came over to him, and bad him lay all other care aside; for that his countrymen had already taken *Demetrias*, a Town of main importance, that should give him *40* entertainment, whence he might proceed as became the greatness of his vertue & fortune. This did serve to cut off all deliberation. As for *Hannibal*, *Thoas* was bold to tel the king, first, that it was not expedient for him to divide his forces at such a time, when the very reputation of his numbers, brought into *Greece*, might serve to lay open unto him all places, without need of using violence: and secondly, that in any such great enterprise there could not be chosen a more unfit man to be employed in the kings service, than was that famous *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian*. For he said, that the king should as greatly feel the losse of a fleet or Army, perishing under such a notable commander if his fortune were bad, as if the same had miscarried under one of meaner quality: whereas nevertheless if *50* *Hannibal* prevailed, *Hannibal* alone should have all the honour, & not *Antiochus*. In this regard he was of opinion, that such a renowned Warriour should be alwaies near unto the Kings person, to give advice: which being followed as often as it was found commodious, the good success would wholly redound unto the honour of him that had the sovereign Command; even of the King himself. *Antiochus* gladly hearkened unto this admonition; being jealous of the vertue, that shined brighter than the Majesty of his own fortune. And thereupon he laid aside the determination, which tended more to the advancement of his desires, than did any thing else by him then or after thought upon.

Presently

Presently after this, He made ready for *Greece*. Before his setting forth, in a frivolous pomp of ceremony, he went up from the Sea-side to *Ilum*; there to do sacrifice to *Minerva* of *Troy*. Thence passing over the *Ægean* Sea, He came to *Demetrias*. *Eurylochus* the *Magnetian*, the same whom the *Ætolians* had lately waited on home, when by that pretext they won *Demetrias*; was now the chief man, and ruler of his Nation. He therefore with his Countrymen, in great frequency, came to do their duties to the King *Antiochus*, and bid him welcome. The King was glad of this: and took it as a sign of good luck, to be so entertained at the beginning. But it may be suspected, that the *Magnetians* found not the like cause of joy. For whereas they had expected a Fleet and Army somewhat like to that of *Xerxes*: they saw three hundred ships, of which, no more *10* than forty were serviceable for the Wars, with an Army of ten thousand Foot, five hundred Horse, and six Elephants. The *Ætolians* no sooner heard of his coming than they called a Parliament, and made a Decree, whereby they invited him into their country. He knew before that they would so do; and was therefore well oned on his way towards them, when they met him that brought the Decree. At his coming to *Lamia*, the *Ætolians* gave him as joyfull entertainment as they could devise. Being brought into their Council, he made an Oration: wherein he desired them to hold him excused; that he came not followed with a greater Army. This was, he said, in true estimation, a sign of his good will: in that he staid not to make all things ready, but hasted unto their *20* aide, even whilest the season was unfit for Navigation. Yet it should not be long ere the hope of all those which had expected him, would be satisfied unto the full. For it was his meaning to fill all *Greece* with Armies, and all the Sea-coast with his Fleets. Neither would he spare for any charge, travel, or danger, to follow the business which he had undertaken: even to drive the *Romans* and their authority out of *Greece*; leaving the Country free indeed, and the *Ætolians* therein the chief. Now as the Armies that were following him, should be very great; so was it his meaning, that all provisions to them belonging should be correspondent; because he would not be any way burdensome unto his Confederates. But at the present he must needs intreat them, having thus *30* hastily come over unto their aid, unprovided of many necessities, that they would help him with Corn and other victuals, whereof he stood in need. So he left them to their consultation: the conclusion whereof was, after a little dispute, (for a vain motion was made by some, that the differences between the *Romans* and them, should be put by Compromise to the decision of *Antiochus*) that they would yield unto the Kings desire, and assist him with all their forces. Here we may observe, how vain a thing it is for an absolute Prince to engage himself, as did *Antiochus*, in a business of dangerous importance upon the promised assurance of a State that is merely popular. For if the vehemency of *Thoas*, and some other of that Faction, had not prevailed in this Council, the *Ætolians*, for gain of two or three Towns, yea, for hope of such gain that might have deceived them, were like to have abandoned this King their friend, unto the *40* discretion of the *Romans*. And what remedy had there been, if this had so fallen out? He could have bemoaned himself to *Thoas*, and complained of the wrong: but he must have been contented with this answer, That the fault was in those of the opposite side; whom *Thoas* would therefore have pronounced to be very wicked men. It happened much better for the present, though in the future it proved much worse, both for him, and for the *Ætolians*. He was chosen General of all their forces: and thirty Commissioners were appointed to be about him, as a Council of War for the Nation. These armed such as readily they could, whilest it was in dispute where they should begin the War. *Chalcis* was thought the meetest place to be first undertaken: whither if they came suddenly, they should not peradventure need to use much force. The King had *50* brought with him into *Ætolia* but a thousand Foot, leaving the rest behind him at *Demetrias*. With these he hasted away directly toward *Chalcis*; being overtaken by no great number of the *Ætolians*, which accompanied him thither. At his coming, the Magistrates, and some of the chief Citizens, issued forth to parle with him. There the *Ætolians* began, as they had lately done before, to tell, how the *Romans* had only in words and false semblance, set *Greece* at liberty. But such liberty as might be true and usefull, they said, would never be obtained; untill by removing the necessity of obeying their pleasure that were most mighty, every severall estate had where to finde redress of any pressure. And to this end was the great *Antiochus* come thither; as a King well

well able to counterpoise, yea to overweigh the *Romans*: who nevertheless desired them only, so to joyn with him in League, as that if either the *Romans* or he should offer them wrong, they might keep it in their power, to seek redresse at the others hands. The *Chalcidians* made hereto the same answer, which, to the like allegations, they had made not long before: That their freedom was not imaginary, but absolute; for which they were to thank the *Romans*; without whose good liking, they would enter into no new confederacy. That which they spake of themselves, they could likewise affirm of all the *Greeks*: forasmuch as none of them paid any tribute, was kept under by any Garrison, or lived otherwise than by their own *Laws*, and without being tied unto conditions which displeased them. Wherefore they wondered, why the King should thus trouble himself to deliver Cities that were already free. But since he, and the *Ætolians*, requested their friendship; they besought both him and the *Ætolians*, to do a friendly Office, in depriving from them quietly, and leaving them in such good case as they were. With this answer the King departed: for he was not, as then, strong enough to force them. But very soon after, he brought thither a greater power, which terrified them, and made them yield: before all the succours could arrive, which *Titus* had sent for their defence.

The chief City of *Eubœa* being thus gotten, all the rest of the Island shortly yielded to *Antiochus*. Four or five hundred *Roman* Souldiers, that came over late to have defended *Chalcis*, reposed themselves at *Delium*, a little town of *Boœtia*, lying over against the Island; where was a Temple and Grove, consecrated unto *Apollo*, that had the privilege of an inviolable Sanctuary. In this place were some of them walking, & beholding the things there to be seen, whilst others were busied as they found cause, without fear of any danger, as being in such a place, and no war hitherto proclaimed. But *Menippus* one of *Antiochus* his Captains, that had wearied himself in many vain Treaties of peace took advantage of their carelessness, and used them with all extremity of war. Very few of them escaped: fifty were taken, and the rest slain. Hereat *Quintus* was grieved: yet so, as it pleased him well to consider, that his *Romans* had now more just cause than before, so make war upon the King.

*Antiochus* liked well these beginnings, and sent Embassadors into all quarters of *Greece*, in hope, that his reputation should persuade very many to take his part. The wiser sort returned such answer, as the *Chalcidians* had done. Some reserved themselves untill he should come among them: knowing that either, if he came not, he must hold them excused for not daring to stir; or if he came, the *Romans* must pardon their just fear, in yielding to the stronger. None of those that lay far off, joyned with him in true meaning, save the *Eleans*, that alwaies favoured the *Ætolians*, and now feared the *Achaans*. Little reason there was, that he should think to draw the *Achaans* to his party. Nevertheless he assayed them, upon a vain hope, that the envie which *Titus* was said to bear unto *Philopamens* vertue, had bred a secret dislike between that Nation and the *Romans*. Wherefore both he and the *Ætolians* sent Embassadors to the Councell at *Aegium* that spured not brave words, if the *Achaans* would have been so taken. The Kings Embassador told of great Armies and fleets that were coming; reckoning up the *Dahans*, *Medians*, *Elimeans*, and *Caducians*; names that were not every day heard of, and therefore as he thought, the more terrible. Then told he them what notable men at Sea, the *Sydæmans*, *Tyrians*, *Aradians*, and *Pamphilians* were; such indeed as could not be resisted. Now concerning money and all warlike furniture: it was, he said, well known, that the Kingdoms of *Asia* had alwaies thereof great plenty. So as they were much deceived: who considering the late war made against *Philip*, did think that this with *Antiochus* would prove the like: the case was too far different. Yet this most powerful King, that for the liberty of *Greece* was come from the utmost parts of the East; requested no more of the *Achaans*, than that they would hold themselves as neutrall, and quietly look on, whilst he took order with the *Romans*. To the same effect spake the *Ætolian* Embassador, and further added; that in the battell at *Cynosephale*, neither *Titus* had done the part of a General, nor the *Romans* of good Souldiers: but that both he and his Army had bin there destroyed, had they not been protected by vertue of the *Ætolians*, which carried the day. *Titus* was present at the Councell, and heard all this: to which he made as fit answer, as could have been desired. He told the *Achaans*, That neither the Kings Embassador, nor the *Ætolian*, did so greatly labour to persuade those unto whom they addressed

addressed their Orations; as to vaunt themselves the one unto the other. So as a man might well discern, what good correspondencie in vanity it was, that had thus linked the King and the *Ætolians* together. For even such brags as here they made before the *Achaans*, who knew them to be lyars, had the *Ætolians* also made unto King *Antiochus*: proclaiming the victory over *Philip* to be merely their Act: and the whole Countrey of *Greece* to be dependent on them. Interchangeably had they been feasted by the King, with such tales as his Embassador told even now, of *Dahans*, and *Aradians*, and *Elimeans*, and a many others: that were all but a company of *Syrians*, such as were wont to be sold about for bond-slaves, and good for little else. These divers names of rascall people were, he said, like to the diversity of Venison, wherewith a friend of his at *Chalcis* (no such vaunter as were these Embassadors) had sometime feasted him. For all that variety, wherewith he wondered, was none other, as his Host then merrily told him, than so many pieces of one tame swine, drest after severall fashions, with variety of sauces. Setting therefore aside this vanity of idle pomp: it were good to make judgement of the great King, by his present doings. He had notwithstanding all this great noise, no more than ten thousand men about him: for which little Army he was fain in a manner to beg victuals of the *Ætolians*; and take up money at usury, to defray his charges. And thus he ran up and down the Countrey; from *Demetrius* to *Lamia*; thence back to *Chalcis*; and being there shut out, to *Demetrius* again. These were the fruits of lies: wherewith, since both *Antiochus* and the *Ætolians* had each deluded other; meet it was that they should, as perhaps already they did, repent, whilst wiser men took heed by their example. To a favourable Auditory much persuasion is needful. The *Achaans* did not love so well the *Ætolians*, as to desire that they should become Princes of *Greece*: but rather wished to see them, of all other, made the veriest abjects. Wherefore they stood not to hearken after newes, what *Antiochus* did, how he sped in *Eubœa*, or what other Cities were like to take his part: but readily proclaimed War against him, and against the *Ætolians*.

How the hatred between these two Nations grew inveterate; sufficiently appears in the story foregoing. Now have they gotten each their Patrons: the one, the *Romans*; the other, King *Antiochus*. Herein did each of them unwisely: though far the greater blame ought to be laid on the turbulent spirits of the *Ætolians*. For when the *Romans* departed out of *Greece*, and left the Countrey at rest: there was nothing more greatly to have been desired, than that they might never finde occasion to return with an Army thither again. And in this respect ought the *Greeks* to have fought, not how *Smyrna* and *Lampascus* might recover their liberty (which had never been held a matter worth regarding, untill now of late) but how the powers of the East and West, divided and kept asunder by their Countrey, as two Seas by an *Isthmus*, or neck of land, might be kept from overflowing the bar that parted them. Neither had the *Romans* any better pretence for their seeking to make free those base *Asiaticques*, who originally were *Greeks*, than the general applause, wherewith all the nation entertained this their loving offer. Yet were *Lysimachia*, and the Towns in *Thrace*, lately gotten by *Antiochus*, pretended as a very great cause of fear, that should move them to take arms even in their own defence. But if all *Greece* would have made intercession, and requested that things might continue as they were, promising jointly to assist the *Romans*, with their whole forces both by Land and Sea, whensoever King *Antiochus* should make the least offer to stir against them: then had not only this quarrell been at an end; but the *Roman* Patronage over the Countrey, had been far from growing, as soon after it did, into a Lordly rule.

The *Achaans* were at this time, in a manner the only Nation of *Greece*, that freely and generously declared themselves altogether for the *Romans*, their friends and benefactors. All the rest gave doubtfull answers of hope unto both sides: or if some few, as did the *Thessalians*, were firm against *Antiochus*; yet helped they not one another in the quarrel, nor shewed themselves his enemies, till he pressed them with open force. The *Boeotians* willingly received him, as soon as he entred upon their borders, not so much for fear of his power, as in hatred of *Titus* and the *Romans*, by whom they had been somewhat hardly used. *Ammander* the *Atthamian*, besides his old friendship with the *Ætolians*, was caught with a bait, which it may be doubted, whether he did more foolishly swallow, or *Antiochus* cast out. He had married the daughter of an *Arcadian*, that was an

idle-headed man, and vaunted himself to be descended from Alexander the Great: naming his two sons, in that regard, *Philip* & *Alexander*. *Philip*, the elder of these brethren, accompanied his sister to the poor Court of *Athamania*: where having made his folly known, by talking of his Pedegree; He was judged by *Antiochus* and the *Ætolians*, a man fit for their turns. They made him believe, that in regard of his high parentage, and the famous memory of *Alexander* his forefather; it was their purpose, to do their best for the conquest of *Macedon*: in his behoof: since no man had thereto so good title as he. But for the enabling of them hereunto; it behaved him to draw *Aminander* to their party, that so they might the sooner have done with the *Romans*. *Philip* was highly pleased herewith; and by persuasions of himself, or of his sister, effected as much as they desired. 10 But the first piece of service done by this imaginary King (whether it proceeded from his own phrenzies in hope to get love of the *Macedonians* that should be his subjects: or whether from some vanity in King *Antiochus* that employed him) wrought more harm to his friends, than he and *Aminander* were able to good. There were two thousand men committed to his leading: with which he marched unto *Cynosephala*, there to gather up the bones of the slaughtered *Macedonians*; whom their King had suffered all this while to lie unburied. The *Macedons* troubled not themselves to think on this charitable act, as if it were to them any benefit at all: but King *Philip* took it in high indignation; as interely unto his desphight. Wherefore he presently sent unto the *Romans*; and gave them to understand, that he was ready with all his power to aid them wherein soever they should be pleased to use him.

The *Ætolians*, *Magnetics*, *Eubæans*, *Boeotians*, and *Athamanians*, having now all joyined with him; *Antiochus* took counsell of them about the prosecution of the War in hand. The chief question was, Whether it were meet for him to invade *Thessaly*, that would not hearken to his persuasions; or whether to let all alone untill the Spring: because it was now mid-winter. Some thought one thing, and some another; confirming each his own sentence, with the weightiest reasons which he could alledge; as in a matter of great importance. *Hannibal* was at this meeting: who had long been cast aside, as a vessel of no use, but was now required to deliver his opinion. He freely told the King, That what he should now utter, was even the same which he would have spoken, had he 30 counsell at any time before been asked since their coming into *Greece*. For the *Magnetics*, *Boeotians*, and other their good friends, which now so willingly took their parts: what were they else than so many poor estates, that wanting force of their own, did adjoyne themselves for fear unto him, that was strongest for the present; and would afterwards, when they saw it expedient, be as ready to fall to the contrary side, alledging the same fear for their excuse? Wherefore he thought it most behoovefull to win King *Philip* of *Macedon* unto their party: who (besides that being once engaged, he should not afterwards have power to recoyle and forsake them at his pleasure) was a mighty Prince; and one that had means to sustain the *Roman* War with his proper forces. Now that *Philip* might be easily persuaded to joyne with them; the benefit likely to redound unto himself, by their society, was a very strong Argument: though indeed 40 what need was there, of proving by inference the likelihood of this hope: For, said hee, These *Ætolians* here present; and namely, this *Thoas*, being lately Embassadour from them into *Asia*, among other *Motives* which he then used to excite the King unto this Expedition, insisted mainly on the same point. He told us that *Philip* was moved beyond all patience, with the Lordly insolence of the *Romans*; likening that King to some wild beast, that was chained or locked up within some grate, and would faine break loose. If this be so: let us break his chain, and pull down the grate, that he may regain his liberty, and satisfy his angry stomack, upon those that are common enemies to us and him. But if it prove otherwise, and that his fear be greater than his indignation: then shall it behove us to look unto 50 him; that he may not seek to please his good masters the *Romans*, by offending us. Towson *Seleucus* is now at *Lysimachia*, with part of your Army: if *Philip* will not hearken to your Embassage, let *Seleucus* be in readinesse to fall upon *Macedon*, and find him work to defend his own on the other side, without putting us here to trouble. Thus much concerning *Philip*, and the present war in *Greece*. But more generally for the managing of this great enterprise, wherein you are now imbarqued against the *Romans*; I told you my opinion at the beginning: whereto had you then given ear, the *Romans* by this time should have heard other news; than that *Chalcis* in *Eubœa* was become ours. *Italy* & *Gaul* should have bin on fire with war; and little

little to their comfort, they should have understood, that *Hannibal* was again come into *Italy*. Neither do I see what should hinder us even now from taking the same course. Send for all your Fleet & Army hither (but in any case let ships of burden come along with them, laden with store of victuals: For as the case now stands, we have here too few hands, and too many mouths) Wherefore let the one half be employed against *Italy*; whilst you in person with the other half, tarrying on this side the *Ionian* Sea, may both take order for the affairs of *Greece*, and therewithall make countenance, as if you were even ready to follow us into *Italy*: yea, and be ready to follow us indeed, if it shall be requisite. This is my advice, 10 who though perhaps I am not very skilfull in all sorts of war; yet how to war with the *Romans*, I have been instructed by long experience, both to their cost and mine own. Of this Counsell which I give, I promise you my faithfull and diligent service for the execution: but what counsell soever you please to follow, I wish it may be prosperous. Many were pleased with the great spirit of the man, and said he had spoken bravely; but of all this was nothing done; save only that one was sent into *Asia*; to make all things ready there. In the mean while they went in hand with *Thessaly*; about which they had before disputed. There when they had won one Town by force, many other places, doubting their own strength, were glad to make submission. But *Larissa*, that was chief of the Country, stood out: not regarding any terrible threats of the King, that lay before the walls with his whole Army. This their faith and courage was rewarded by good fortune. For *M. Babine*, a Roman Propretor, did send help thither. Likewise *Philip* of *Macedon* professed himself enemy unto *Antiochus*; whereby the fame of the succour coming to *Larissa*, grew such, as wrought more than the succour could have done, had it arrived. For *Antiochus* perceiving many fires on the Mountains tops afar off; thought that a great Army of *Romans* and *Macedonians* had been coming upon him. Therefore excusing himselfe by the time of the year: He brake up his siege, and marched away to *Chalcis*. At *Chalcis* he fell in love with a young Maiden, daughter unto a Citizen of the Town; whom, without regard of the much disproportion that was between them, both in years and fortune, He shortly married; and so spent the winter following as delightfully as he could, without thinking upon the War in hand. His great men and Captains followed his example, and the souldiers as readily imitated their Captains: in such wise, that when he took the field, he might evidently perceive in what loose manner of discipline his Army had 30 passed the winter. But *M. Acilius Glabrio*, the *Roman* Consul, shall meet him very shortly, and help him to reclaim them from this looseness of nuptiall Revels; by setting them to harder exercise.

*M. Acilius* was chosen Consul with *P. Cornelius Scipio Nasica*. The war against *Antiochus* fell to him by lot; whereas otherwise He was no way so honourable, as *Nasica*, his Colleague: unto whom fell a charge, of far less credit and importance. *Nasica*, besides the great Nobility of his Family, had bin long since, in time of the *Punic* War, crowned with the title of *The best man in Rome*: when the Senate for very fear and superstition, 40 on durst not have so pronounced him, had they not thought him, as being commanded by Oracle, that none other man than the very best, should entertain an old stone, which they Devil then taught them to call *The Mother of the gods*. But no prerogative of Birth, Vertue, or good Opinion, gave such advantage to the better man, as to make choice of his own Province; or arrogate more unto himself, than his lot should afford him. This unpartial distribution of employments, helped well to maintain peace and concord. *P. Scipio* therefore was appointed to make War against the *Bojians*; wherein he purchased the honour of a Triumph, nothing so glorious as was that of his Colleague; though purchased with harder service, requiring the more ability in matter of War. But *M. Acilius* went over into *Greece*, with ten thousand foot, two thousand horse, and fifteen 50 Elephants. *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, notwithstanding his late Alliance with King *Antiochus*; and *Philip* King of *Macedon*; had lately sent Embassadors to *Rome*, making offer to come each of them in person with all his forces into *Ætolia*, there to assist the Consul in this War. *Ptolemy* sent also gold and silver, toward the defraying of charges; as one that meant none other than good earnest. But he was too young and dwelt too far off. So his money was returned unto him with thanks; and his loving offer as lovingly refused. Unto *Philips* Embassadors answer was made, that this his friendly offer was gratefully accepted: and that the Senate and People of *Rome* would think themselves beholding to him, for the assistance that he should give to *Acilius* the Consul.

Consul. *Masaniſſa* likewise, and the *Carthaginians*, did strive, which of them should be most forward in gratifying the *Romans*. Each of them promised a great quantity of grain: which they would send partly to *Rome*; partly to the Army in *Greece*. And here in *Masaniſſa* far out-went the poor City of *Carthage*; as also in that he offered to lend the Consul five hundred horse, and twenty Elephants. On the other side, the *Carthaginians* undertook to set out a Fleet at their own charges; and to bring in at one payment, all the Tribute-money which was behind, & ought to be discharged by many yearly pensions. But the *Romans* did neither think it good, to let them arm a Fleet; nor would let them redeem themselves out of Tribute, by paying all at once. As for the Corn, it was accepted, with condition, that they should be contented to receive the price of it.

The haſty and ridiculous iſſue of this War, that began with ſuch noiſe and preparations, were hardly credible: were not the difference exceeding great between the *Roman* and the *Aſiatic* ſouldier. *Antiochus* had gotten this Spring a few towns of *Acarnania*, after the ſame manner as he had prevailed in other parts of *Greece*, partly by fair words, and treaſon of the Rulers; partly by terror, that was like to prove their excuſe, when they ſhould again forſake him. But King *Philip* and *Babius* having recovered many places; and the *Roman* Consul being arrived, againſt whom none made reſiſtance; he was glad to withdraw himſelf. *Aminander* fled out of his *Athamania*: which the *Macedonian* took and enjoyed; as in recompence of his good ſervice to the *Romans*. *Philip* the brother of *Aminander*'s wife, was taken by the Consul; made a mocking-ſtock, and ſent away prisoner to *Rome*. The *Theſſalians* uſed much more diligence in returning to their old friends, than they had done in yielding to the King. All their Cities one after another, gave up themſelves: the Garrilſons of *Antiochus*, compounding only for their own lives, and departing unarmed: yet ſo, that a thouſand of them ſtayed behinde, and took pay of the *Romans*. This did wonderfully perplex *Antiochus*; who having withdrawn himſelf to *Chalcis*, and hearing how things went, cryed out upon his friends: and ſaid, That they had betrayed him. He had taken a great deal of toyle during one half of a winter, and ſpent the other half in ſuch Nuptials, as were little to his honour: after which in time of need, he found all the promiſes of the *Ætolians* merely verball: and himſelf reduced into terms of great extremity. He therefore admired *Hannibal* as a wife man, yea, a very Prophet, that had foreſeen all this long before. Nevertheless, He ſent word to the *Ætolians*, that they ſhould now make ready all their forces: as conſidering their own need to be no leſſe than his. But the *Ætolians* had cauſe to think, that they themſelves were ſhamefully diſappointed by *Antiochus*; who having promiſed to do great wonders, was in all this while ſeconded by no greater numbers out of *Aſia*, than ſo many as would fill up the ſame ten thouſand which he firſt brought over. Yet came there ſome of them, though fewer than at any time before, which joyned with him. Hereat the King was angry: and could get no better ſatisfaction, than that *Thous* and his ſollowes had done their beſt in vain, to have made all the Nation take Arms. Since therefore neither his own men came over to him out of *Aſia*, nor his friends of *Greece* would appear in this time of danger: He ſeized upon the Straights of *Thermopyla*; as meaning to defend them againſt the *Romans*, untill more help ſhould come. Of the Straights of *Thermopyla*, there hath been ſpoken enough \* before, upon many occasions: and then chiefly, when they were defended by *Leonidas* againſt the huge Army of *Xerxes*. Wherefore it may eaſily be conceived, how the *Romans*, that landed about *Apollonia*, and ſo came onwards into *Theſſaly*, were unable to paſſe that Ledge of Mountains, dividing the one half of *Greece*, unleſſe they could win this difficult entrance. But there was great difference between *Leonidas* and *Antiochus*. The former of theſe, with an handful of men, defended this paſſage two or three daies together, againſt a World of men coming to invade the Country. The latter, having taken upon him to do great miracles, and effect what he liſted himſelf in *Greece*: did commit himſelf unto the ſafety of this place, when he was charged by not many more than he had in his own Army. There whileſt he lay, He ſent earneſt meſſengers one after another to the *Ætolians*, entreating them not to forſake him thus; but at leaſt wife now to help, and keep the tops of the mountains, left the *Romans*, finding any by-path, ſhould come down upon him. By this importunity, he got of them two thouſand, that undertook to make good the few paſſages: by which only and not without extreme difficulty, it was poſſible for the Enemy to aſcend. The *Roman* Conſull in like ſort prepared to force

the Straights; without ſtaying to expect King *Philip*: that was hindered by ſickneſs from accompanying him. He had with him *M. Porcius Cato*, and *L. Valerius Flaccus*, that had both of them been Conſuls. Theſe he ſent forth by night with two thouſand men, to try whether by any means they could get up to the *Ætolians*. He himſelf encouraged his Army: not only by telling them with what baſe conditioned enemies they had to deal: but what rich kingdomes *Antiochus* held, that ſhould bountifully reward them if they were victors. This was on the day before the battell. All that night *Cato* had a ſore journey (for what hapned unto *L. Valerius* it is uncertain, ſave only that he failed in his intent) and ſo much the worſe, for that he had no ſkilfull guide. Seeing therefore his men exceedingly tyred, with climbing up ſteepy Rocks and crooked waies: He commanded them to reſt themſelves; whileſt he, being a very able man of body, took in hand the diſcovery, accompanied with no more than one of like mettle to himſelf. After a great deal of trouble, he found at length a path: which he took to be, as indeed it was, the beſt way leading unto the Enemies. So thither he brought his men; and held on the ſame path till toward break of day. It was a place not haunted, becauſe in time of peace, there was a fair way through the Straights below, that required no ſuch trouble of climbing; neither had this entrance of the *Thermopyla* been ſo often the Seat of War, as might cauſe any travellers to ſearch out the paſſages of thoſe deſolate Mountains. Wherefore the way that *Cato* followed, though it were the beſt; yet did it lead him to a bog at the end, which would ſuffer him to paſs no further. So he ſtaid there untill day-light: by which he diſcovered both the Camp of the *Greeks* underneath him; and ſome of the *Ætolians* very near unto him, that were keeping watch. He therefore ſent forth a luſty Crue of his men, whom he thought fitteſt for that ſervice; and willed them by any means to get him ſome priſoners. This was effected: and he thereby underſtood, that theſe *Ætolians* were no more than ſix hundred; as alſo that King *Antiochus* lay beneath in the Valley. So he preſently ſet upon the *Ætolians*, overthrew them, ſlew a great part of them, and chaſed the reſt, that by flying to their Camp, guided him unto it. The fight was already begun between the Armies below: and the *Romans*, that had eaſily repelled the Kings men, and driven them unto their Camp, found 30 it in a manner a deſperate piece of work to aſſault the Camp it ſelf, which occupied the whole breadth of the Straights; was notably fortified; and not only defended by *Antiochus* his long Pikes, which were beſt at that kinde of ſervice; but by Archers & Slingers that were placed over them on the Hill-side, and powdered down a ſhowre of weapons on their heads. But *Cato* his approach determined the matter. It was thought at firſt that the *Ætolians* had been coming to help the Kings men: but when the *Roman* armes and enſigns were diſcovered, ſuch was the terrour, that none made offer of reſiſtance; but all of them forſook the camp, and fled. The ſlaughter was not great: for that the badneſs of the way did hinder the *Roman* Army from making purſuit. Yet this daies loſſe drove *Antiochus* out of *Greece*, who directly fled to *Chalcis*; and from thence with 40 the firſt opportunity got him back into *Aſia*.

All the Cities that had imbraced the friendship of *Antiochus*, prepared forthwith to entertain the *Romans*, and intreat for pardon: ſetting open their gates; and preſenting themſelves unto the Conſul, in manner of ſuppliants. Briefly, in few dayes all was recovered that *Antiochus* had gained: the *Ætolians* only ſtanding out, becauſe they knew not what elſe to do. Neither did the Conſul give them any reſpite. At his returne from *Chalcis*, he met with King *Philip*, that having recovered health, came to joyn with him againſt *Antiochus*: over whom ſince the victory was already gotten, He did graſtulate unto the *Romans* their good ſucceſſe; and offered to take part with them in the *Ætolian* War. So it was agreed, That the Conſul ſhould beſiege *Heraclea*; and *Philip* *Lamia*; 50 at the ſame time. Each of them plied his work hard; eſpecially *Philip*, who ſain would have taken *Lamia* before the Conſul ſhould come to help him. But it could not be. For his *Macedonians* that uſed to work by Myne, were overmuch hindered by the ſtony ground. Yet was *Lamia* even ready to be taken, when the Conſul, having won *Heraclea*, came thither; and told *Philip*, that the ſpoil of theſe towns was a reward unto thoſe that had fought at *Thermopyla*. Herewith *Philip* muſt be contented; and therefore went his way quietly. But *Antius* that could ſo ill indure to ſee *Philip* in likelihood of thriving by the *Romans* victory got not *Lamia* himſelf: untill ſuch time as another Conſul was ready to caſe him of his charge.

The losse of *Heracles* did so affright the *Aetolians*, that they thought no way safer than to desire peace. Yet had they sent unto King *Antiochus* presently after his flight: intreating him not to forsake them utterly, but either to return with all those forces which he had purposed to bring into *Greece*; or if any thing withheld him from coming in person, at least wife to help them with money and other aide. They prayed him to consider, that this did not only concern him in honour; but appertained unto his own safety: since it would be much to his hurt, if the *Aetolians* being wholly subdued, the *Romans*, without any enemies at their backs, might set upon him in *Asia*. He considered well of this, and found their words true. Therefore he delivered unto *Nicaner*, one of their Embassadors, a sum of money, that might serve to defray the charges of the War: promising that ere long he would send them strong aid, both by Land and Sea. 10  
*Thom*, another of their Embassadors, He retained with him: who willingly stayed, that he might urge the King to make his word good. But when *Heracles* was taken from them; then did the *Aetolians* lay aside all hope of amending their fortune by the help of *Antiochus*; and made suit unto the Consul to obtain peace, upon any reasonable Condition. The Consul would scarce vouchsafe to give them audience, but said, He had other business in hand; only he granted them ten daies of Truce, and sent *L. Valerius Flaccus* with them to *Hypata*; willing them to make him acquainted with as much as they would have delivered unto himself. At their coming to *Hypata*, they began, as men favouring their own cause, to alledge how well they had deserved of the *Romans*. 20  
 Whereto *Flaccus* would not hearken. He told them plainly, That the memory of such good offices past, was quite obliterated by the malice which they had shewed of late. Wherefore he willed them to acknowledge their fault, and to accept pardon. Better they thought to do so even betimes, than to stay till they were reduced unto terms of more extremity. Hereupon they agreed to commit themselves unto the faith of the *Romans*; and to that effect sent Embassadors to the Consul. This phrase of committing unto the faith, signified, in their use of it, little else than the acknowledgement of a fault done, and the craving of pardon. But the *Romans* used those words in another sense; and counted them all one, as *yielding to discretion*. Wherefore when the Consul heard them speak in this manner: He asked them whether their meaning were agreeable to their words. They answered that it was: and shewed him the decree of their Nation, lately made to this purpose. Then said he, I command you first of all, That none of you presume to go into *Asia*, upon any business private or publick: then, That ye deliver up unto me *Dicaearchus* the *Aetolian*, *Menebratus* the *Epirot*, *Aminander* the *Athamanian*, and such of his Countreymen as have followed him in revolting from us. 30  
 Whilst he was yet speaking: *Phameas* the Embassador interrupted him; and prayed him not to mistake the custome of the *Greeks*, who had yielded themselves unto his faith, not unto slavery. What? (said the Consul) Do ye stand to plead Custome with me, being now at my discretion? Bring hither a chain. With that, chains were brought; and an iron collar by his appointment fitted unto every one of their necks. This did affright them, that they stood dumb and knew not what to say. But *Valerius* and some others entreated the Consul, not to deal thus hardly with them, since they came as Embassadors; though since, their Condition was altered. *Phameas* also spake for himself: and said, That neither he, nor yet the *Apoelati* or ordinary Councell for the Nation, were able to fulfill these injunctions, without approbation of the generall Assembly. For which cause he entreated yet further ten daies respite; and had granted unto him Truce for so long.

This surresiance of War, during ten, and other ten dayes together, began presently after the taking of *Heracles*; when *Philip* had been commanded away from *Lamia*, that else he might have won. Now because of the indignity herein offered unto that King, 50  
 and to the end that he might not return home with his Army, like one that could not be trusted in employment: especially the *Romans* being like hereafter to have further need of him in the continuance of this War: He was desired to set upon the *Athamanians*, and some other petty Nations their borderers, whilst the Consul was busie with the *Aetolians*; taking for his reward, all that he could get. And he got in that space all *Athamania*, *Perrhabia*, *Aperantia*, and *Dolopia*. For the *Aetolians*, hearing what had befallen their Embassadors, were so enraged, That although they were very ill provided for War; yet they could not endure to hear more talk of Peace. And it happened, that

that *Nicaner* about the same time was come back from *Antiochus*, with money & hopeful promises: the *Romans* abiding still about *Heracles* & *Philip* having lately risen from before *Lamia*, yet not being far gone thence. His money *Nicaner* conveyed into *Lamia*, by very unskillfull dexterity. But he himself being to passe further to the Assembly of the *Aetolians*, there to make report of his Embassage; was very much perplexed about this his journey, which lay between the *Roman* and *Macedonian* Camps. Yet he made the adventure: and keeping as far as he could from the *Roman* side, fell upon a Station of *Macedonians*; by whom he was taken, and led unto their King. He expected no good; but either to be delivered unto the *Romans*, or used ill enough by *Philip*. But it seems, that the King had not hitherto concocted well the indignity, of his being sent away from *Lamia*. For he commanded his servants to entreat *Nicaner* friendly: and he himself being then at supper, did visit him as soon as he rose up: giving him to understand, That the *Aetolians* did now reap the fruits of their own madnesse, forasmuch as they could never hold themselves contented, but would needs be calling strangers into *Greece*. They had pleased themselves well, in their acquaintance first with the *Romans*, and then with King *Antiochus*; but himself, being their neighbour, they could never well endure. It was now therefore, he said, high time for them to have regard unto his friendship, wherof hitherto they never made any trial: for surely their good affection, one unto the other, would be much more available unto each of them, than their mutual catching of advantages; whereby they had wrought themselves much displeasure. 20  
 Thus much the King willed *Nicaner* to signify unto his Countreymen; and privately to hold in mind the courtesie which he then did him, in sending him safe home. So giving him a Compy to guard him to *Hypata*, he lovingly dismissed him. For this benefit, *Nicaner* was always after dutifully affected to the crown of *Macedon*: so as in the war of *Perseus* he made himself suspected unto the *Romans*, and therefore was had away to *Rome*, where he ended his life.

When the Consul understood, that the *Aetolians* refused to make their submission, in such wise as he required it: he forthwith meant to prosecute the war against them, without any longer forbearance. They were preparing to make head against him at *Naupactus*: whither he therefore directly marched, to try what they could or durst. The siege of *Naupactus* was of greater length, than the *Romans* had preconceived it: for it was a strong City, and well manned. But *Aetolius* stood upon point of honour; when he thought that he should have been a loser, by rising from before it without Victory. So he staid there well-near all the following time of his Consulship; whilst the *Macedonian* king and the *Acheans* made far better use of the *Roman* Victory. *Philip*, as is said before, being allowed to take in such places as had revolted unto *Antiochus*, and were not hitherto reclaimed, won the strong City of *Demetrias*, and with an hasty course of Victory, subdued the *Athamanians* and others. The *Acheans* called to account the *Eleans* and *Messenians*: which had long been addicted to the *Aetolian* side; and followed it, in taking part with *Antiochus*. The *Eleans* gave good words; whereby they saved themselves from trouble a while. The *Messenians* being more stout, before they were invaded, had none other help when the *Achean* Praetor wasted their Countrey, than to offer themselves unto the *Romans*. *Titus* was then at *Corinth*: to whom they sent word, That at his Commandement their gates should be opened; but that unto the *Acheans* it was not their meaning to yield. A message from *Titus* to the *Achean* Praetor, did suffice to call home the Army, and finish the War: as also the peremptory Command of the same *Titus*, caused the *Messenians* to annex themselves unto the *Acheans*, and become part of their Common-weal. Such was now the Majesty of a *Roman* Embassador. *Titus* did favour the *Acheans*; yet could not like it well, that either they or any other should 50  
 take too much upon them. He thought it enough, that they had their liberty, and were strong enough to defend it against any of their neighbours. That they should make themselves great Lords, and able to dispute with the *Romans* upon even terms, it was no part of his desire. They had lately bought the Ile of *Zacynthus*; which had once bin *Philips*, and was afterward given by him to *Aminander*, who sent a Governor thither. But when *Aminander* in this present war, was driven out of his own Kingdome by *Philip*; then did the Governour of *Zacynthus* offer to sell the Ile to the *Acheans*; whom he thought ready Chappmen. *Titus* liked not of this: but plainly told them, That the *Romans* would be their own Carvers, and take what they thought good, of the Lands belonging to their



their Enemies; as a reward of the victory which they had obtained. It was bootlesse to dispute. Wherefore the *Achaens* referred themselves unto his discretion. So he told them, that their Commonwealth was like a Tortoise, whereof *Peloponnesus* was the shell: and that, holding themselves within that compass, they were out of danger; but if they would needs be looking abroad, they should lie open to blowes, which might greatly hurt them. Having said these things thus in *Peloponnesus*, he went over to *Naupactus*: where *Glabrio* the Consul had lain two months, that might have been far better spent. There, whether out of compassion which he had upon the *Ætolians*, or out of dislike of King *Philip* thriving so fast: he persuaded the Consul to grant unto the besieged, and to the whole Nation, so long truce, that they might send Embassadors to *Rome*; and submitting themselves, crave pardon of the Senate. Most like it is, that *Naupactus* was in great danger: else would not the *Ætolians* have made such earnest suit as they did unto *Titus*, for procuring of this favour. But if *Glabrio* had bin sure to carry it in any short space, it may well be thought he would not have gone away without it, since the winning of that Town, wherein was then the whole flour of the Nation, would have made the promised submission much more humble and sincere. When they came unto *Rome*, no entreaty could help them to better Conditions, than one of these two; That either they should wholly submit themselves to the good pleasure of the Senate, Or else pay a thousand talents, and make neither peace nor war with any, further than as the *Romans* should give approbation. They had not so much money: neither could they well hope to be gently dealt withall, if they should give themselves away unto discretion; which what it signified, they now understood. Wherefore they desired to have it set down, in what points, and how far forth they should yield unto the good pleasure of the Senate. But hereof they could get no certain answer: so that they were dismissed as enemies, after long and vain attendance.

Whilest the *Ætolians* were pursuing their hopes of peace, the Consul had little to do in *Greece*; & therefore took upon him gravely to set things in order among the tractable *Achaens*. He would have had them to restore the banished *Lacedæmonians* home into their Country; and to take the *Eleans* into the fellowship of their Commonwealth. This the *Achaens* liked well enough: but they did not like it, that the *Romans* should be meddling in all occurrences. Wherefore they deferred the restitution of the banished *Lacedæmonians*: intending to make it an Act of their own meer grace. As for the *Eleans*, they were loth to be beholding to the *Romans*, and thereby to disparage the *Achaens*: into whose Corporation they were desirous to be admitted, and saw that they should have their desire, without such compulsive mediation.

The *Roman* Admirall *C. Livius*, much about the same time, fought a battell at Sea with *Polixenidas*, Admirall to the King *Antiochus*. King *Enmenes* brought help to the *Romans*, though it was not great: and five and twenty sail of *Rhadians* came after the battell, when they were following the Chafe. The Kings Fleet was the better of sail; but that of the *Romans* the better manned. Wherefore *Polixenidas* being vanquished in fight, was yet out of danger; as soon as he betook himself to a speedy retreat.

And such end had the first years war between King *Antiochus* and the *Romans*. After this, as many of the *Greeks* as had followed the vain hopes of the *Ætolians*, were glad to excuse themselves by fear; thinking themselves happy when by Embassadors they had obtained pardon. On the contrary side, *Philip* of *Macedon*, Arch-enemy of late unto the *Romans*, did now send to gratulate this their victory: and, in recompence of his good affection, had restored unto him *Demetrius* his younger son; whom some few years they had kept as an hostage. Also King *Ptolemy* of *Egypt*, gratulating the *Roman* Victory, sent word how greatly all *Asia* and *Syria* were thereby terrified. In which regard he desired the Senate not to foreflow time; but to send an Army, as soon as might be, into *Asia*: promising, that his assistance, whereinsoever it pleased them to use it, should not be wanting. This *Ptolemy* was the son-in-law of King *Antiochus*: but he was the friend of fortune. He understood long before, as did all that were indifferent beholders of the contention, that the *Romans* were like to have the upper hand. The same did *Antiochus* now begin to suspect, who had thought himself a while as safe at *Ephesus*, as if he had been in another world: but was told by *Hannibal*, That it was not so far out of *Greece* into *Asia*, as out of *Italy* into *Greece*, and that there was no doubt but the *Romans* would soon be there, and make him try the chance of a battell for his kingdome.

## s. VIII.

Lucius Scipio, having with him Publius the African his elder brother, for his Lieutenant, is sent into *Greece*. He grants long Truce to the *Ætolians*; that so he might at leisure passe into *Asia*. Much troublesome businesse by Sea, and divers fights. An invasion upon *Eumenes* his Kingdome, with the siege of *Pergamus*, raised by an handful of the *Achaens*. L. Scipio the Consul comes into *Asia*: where *Antiochus* most earnestly desireth peace, and is denied it. The battell of *Magnesia*: wherein *Antiochus* being vanquished, yieldeth to the *Romans* good pleasure. The conditions of the peace. In what sort the *Romans* used their victory. L. Cornelius Scipio, after a most sumptuous triumph over *Antiochus*, is surnamed The Asiaticque, as his brother was styled The African.

Lucius Cornelius Scipio, the brother of P. Scipio the African, was chosen Consul at *Rome* with C. Lælius. Lælius was very gracious in the Senate: and therefore being desirous (as generally all Consuls were) of the more honourable employment, offered to refer to the aibirement of the Senate, if L. Cornelius would be so pleased, the disposition of their Provinces; without putting it to the hazzard of a Lottery. Lucius having talked with his brother Publius, approved well of the motion. Such a question had not of long time bin put unto the Fathers: who therefore were the more desirous to make an unblamable Decree. But the matter being otherwise somewhat indifferent, P. Scipio the African said openly thus much, That if the Senate would appoint his brother to the war against *Antiochus*, He himself would follow his brother in that war, as his Lieutenant. These words were heard with such approbation, that the controvertie was forthwith at an end. For if *Antiochus* relied upon *Hannibal*, and should happen to be directed wholly by that great Captain, what better man could they oppose, than Scipio: that had bin victorious against that same great Worthy? But indeed a worse man might have served well enough the turn. For *Hannibal* had no absolute command, nor scarce any trust of great importance: excepting now and then in consultation: where his wilddome was much approved, but his liberty and high spirit as much disliked. It is worthy of remembrance, as a sign of the freedom that he used in his censures, even whilest he lived in such a Court. *Antiochus* mulstered his Army in presence of this famous Captain: thinking, as may seem, to have made him wish, that he had bin served by such brave men in *Italy*. For they were gallantly decked, both Men, Horses, and Elephants, with such costly furniture of gold, silver, and purple, as glittered with a terrible bravery on a Sun-shine day. Whereupon the King, well pleasing himself with that goodly spectacle, asked *Hannibal* what he thought, and whether all this were not enough for the *Romans*. Enough (said *Hannibal*) were the *Romans* the most covetous men in all the world: meaning that all his cost upon the backs of cowardly *Asiaticques*, was no better than a spoil to animate good Souldiers.

How little this answer pleased the king, it is easie to guess. The little life that he made of this *Carthaginian*, testifies that his dislike of the man, caused him to lose the use of his service, when he stood in greatest necessity thereof.

The Scipios made all haste away from *Rome* as soon as they could. They carried with them, besides other Souldiers newly prest to the war, about five thousand Voluntaries, that had served under P. Africanus. There was also a Fleet of thirty *Quinquereme* Gallies, and twenty *Triremes* newly built, appointed unto L. Emilius Regillus, that was chosen Admirall the same year for that voyage. At their coming into *Greece*, they found the old Consul *Glabrio* besieging *Amphissa* a City of the *Ætolians*. The *Ætolians* after that they were denied peace, had expected him once again at *Naupactus*. Wherefore they not only fortified that Town, but kept all the passages thereto leading; which heedlesly, as in a time of confusion, they had left unregarded the last year. *Glabrio* knowing this, deceived their expectation, and fell upon *Lamia*: which being not long since much weakened by *Philip*, and now by him attempted on the sudden; was carried at the second assault. Thence went he to *Amphissa*: which he had almost gotten, when L. Scipio, his successor, came with thirteen thousand Foot, and five hundred Horse, and took charge of the Army. The Town of *Amphissa* was presently forsaken by the Inhabitants: but they had a Castle, or higher Town, that was impregnable; whereinto they all retired. The *Armenian* Embassadors had dealt with P. Scipio, in behalf of the *Ætolians*.

lions: entreating him to stand their friend, and help them in obtaining some tolerable condition of peace. He gave them gentle words, and willed them to perswade the *Aetolians*, that they should faithfully and with true meaning desire it. This was gladly taken. But many messages passing to and fro: though *Publius* continued to put them in good hope; yet the Consul made still the same answer, with which they had bin chafed from *Rome*. The Conclusion was, That they should sue for a longer time of respite from war: whereby at more leisure they might attend some better disposition of the Senate; or any helpfull commodity which time should afford. So they obtained half a years truce: after which, the winter was like to afford them another half years leisure of breathing. Hereof were they not more glad, than was *P. Scipio*: who thought all time lost, to which with-held the War from passing over into *Asia*.

The business of *Aetolia* being thus laid aside, and the old Consul *Glabrio* sent home into *Italy*, the *Scipio's* marched into *Thessaly*, intending thence to take their way by Land, through *Macedon* and *Thrace* unto the *Hell's point*. Yet they considered, that hereby they must commit themselves unto the loyalty of King *Philip*: who might either do them some mischief by the way, if he were disposed to watch a notable advantage: or at the least, would he be unfaithfull; though he were not so courageous, yet might he take such order with the *Thracians*, that even for want of victuals, if by no greater inconvenience, they should be disgracefully forced to return. He had promised them the utmost of his furtherance: wherein, whether he meant sincerely, they thought to make some trial, by causing a Gentleman to ride Post unto him, and observe his doings as he should take him on the sudden. The King was merry at a feast, and drinking when the Messenger came: whom he lovingly bade welcome; and shewed him the next day, not only what provision of victuals he had made for the Army, but how he had made bridges over the rivers, and mended the bad waies by which they were to passe. With these good newes *Gracchus* returned back in haste unto the *Scipio's*: who entering into *Macedon*, found all things in a readines, that might help to advance their journey. The King entertained them royally, and brought them on their way, even to the *Hell's point*: where they stayed a good while, untill their Navie was in readines to transport them into *Asia*.

Much was done at Sea in the beginning of this year; though, for the most part, little of importance. *Polyxenidas*, the Admirall of *Antiochus*, was a banished *Rhodian*: true to the King; and desirous of revenge upon his Countrymen, that had expelled him. He, hearing that the *Rhodian Fleet* was at *Samos*, the *Romans* and *Eumenes* having not as yet put to Sea, thought to do somewhat upon those that were so early in their diligence, before their fellows should arrive to help them. Yet went he craftily to work, and sent word, as in great secrecy, to the *Rhodian Admirall*, That if the sentence of his banishment might be repealed, He would, in requitall thereof, betray all the Kings Fleet. After many passages to and fro, this was believed: and the *Rhodian Admirall* grew so careless, expecting still when he should receive a watch-word from *Polyxenidas* that he himself was taken by *Polyxenidas* in his own Haven. The Kings Fleet setting forth from *Ephesus* by night; and, for fear of being discovered, resting one day in harbour by the way, came the second night to *Samos*: where, by morning it was ready to enter the Haven. *Pausistratus* the *Rhodian Admirall* seeing this, thought it his best way of resistance to bestow his men on the two head-lands or points of the Haven; so to guard the mouth of it: for that he saw no likelihood of defending himself by Sea. But *Polyxenidas* had already landed some Companies in another part of the Island: which falling upon the back of *Pausistratus*, compelled him to alter his directions, and command his men aboard. This could not be without great confusion: so as the enemies took him out of all order, and sunk or boarded all his Navie, five excepted, that by a sudden device made shift to escape. Each of them hung out a burning Crescent upon two poles, at the Beak-head; and then rowed forwards directly upon the enemy: who having not bethought himself what shift to make against such unexpected danger of firing, was content to give way unto these desperate Gallies; for fear lest they should burn, together with themselves, a part of the Kings fleet.

Not long after this, the *Romans* had some loss by tempest: whereof *Polyxenidas* could not take such advantage as he had hoped; because, putting to Sea for that purpose, he was driven back again by the like foul weather. But the *Rhodians*, to shew that they

they were not discouraged, set forth twenty other Gallies: the *Romans* also with King *Eumenes*, repaired their fleet, and all of them together, in great bravery, presented battell to *Polyxenidas* before the Haven of *Ephesus*. When he durst not accept it: they went from place to place, attempting many things, as either they were entreated by the *Rhodians*, or perswaded by some appearing hopes of doing good. Yet performed they little or nothing: for that one while they were hindred by storms at Sea; and another while by strong resistance made against them at Land.

*Eumenes* with his Fleet was compelled to forsake them; and return home to the defence of his own Kingdom. For *Antiochus* wasted all the grounds about *Elaea* and *Pergamus*: and leaving his son *Seleucus* to besiege the royall City of *Pergamus*, did with the rest of his Army spoile the whole Country thereabout. *Attalus* the brother of king *Eumenes*, was then in *Pergamus*, having with him no better men to defend the City, than were they that lay against it. Wherefore he had reason to stand in fear; being too much inferior in number. There came to his aid a thousand foot, and an hundred horse of the *Achaens*: old souldiers all, and trained up under *Philopamen*, whose Scholar, in the art of war, *Diophanes* their commander was. This *Diophanes*, beholding from the walls of *Pergamus*, which was an high town, the demeanour of the enemy; began to disdain that such men as they should hold them besieged. For *Seleucus* his army which was encamped at the hill-foot, seeing that none durst fall forth upon them, grew so careless: as otherwise than by spoiling all behind their backs, they seemed to forget that they were in an enemies country. *Diophanes* therefore spake with *Attalus*: and told him that he would go forth to visit them. *Attalus* had no liking to this adventure; for he said, that the march was nothing equal. But the *Achaen* would needs have his wil: & issuing forth, encamped not far from the enemy. They of *Pergamus* thought him little better than mad. As for the besiegers, they wondered at first what his meaning was; but when they saw that he held himself quiet, they made a jest of his boldnes, & laughed to see with what an handful of men he looked so stoutly. So they returned unto their former negligence & disorders. Which *Diophanes* perceiving, He commanded all his men to follow him, even as fast as they wel might: and he himself, with the hundred horse, brake out on the sudden upon the station which was next at hand. Very few of the enemies had their horses ready saddled, but more few, or none had the hearts to make resistance: so as he drave them all out of their Camp, & chased them as far as he might safely adventure, with great slaughter of them, and no loss of his own. Hereat all the Citizens of *Pergamus* (who had covered the walls of the town, men and women, to behold this spectacle) were very joyfull; and highly magnified the verue of these *Achaens*. Yet would they not therefore issue forth of their gates, to help the *Achaens* in doing what remained to be done. The next day *Seleucus* encamped half a mile further from the Town, than he had done before: and against him went forth *Diophanes* the second time; who quietly rested a while in his old Station. When they had stayed many hours, looking who should begin: *Seleucus*, in fair order as he came, withdrew himself toward his lodging that was further off. *Diophanes* moved not whilst the enemy was in sight: but as soon as the ground between them hindred the prospect, he followed them in all haste, and soon overtaking them with his horse, charged them in Rere; so as he brake them, and with all his forces pursued them at the heels, to their very Trenches. This boldnes of the *Achaens*, and the baseness of his own men, caused *Seleucus* to quit the siege, little to his honour. Such being the quality of these *Asiatiques*, *Philopamen* had cause to tell the *Romans*, That he envied their victory. For when *Antiochus* lay feasting at *Chalcis* after his marriage, and his souldiers betook themselves to Riot, as it had bin in a time of great security: a good man of war might have cut all their throats, even as they were tripling in their victualling houses; so which *Philopamen* said that he would have done, had he bin Generall of the *Achaens*, and not as he then was, a private man.

*Antiochus* was full of business: and turning his care from one thing to another, with a great deal of travell, brought almost nothing to passe. He had bin at *Pergamus*: into which *Eumenes*, leaving the *Romans*, did put himself with a few of his Horse and light armature. Before *Pergamus* he left his son, as before hath been shewed, and went to *Elaea*: whither he heard that *Emilius* the Roman Admirall was come to bring succour to *Eumenes*. There he made an Overture of peace: about which to consult, *Eumenes* was sent for by *Emilius*, and came from *Pergamus*. But when it was considered, that no conclusion could be made without the Consul: this Treaty brake off. Then followed the

the overthrow newly mentioned; which caused *Seleucus* to give over the siege of *Pergamus*. Afterwards, four or five Towns of scarce any worth or note were taken by the King; and the *Syrian* Fleet, being of seven and thirty Saile, was beaten by the *Rhodian* which was of like number. But of this victory the *Rhodians* had no great cause to rejoice: for that *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian*, who, together with *Apollonius* a Courtier of *Antiochus*, was Admiral of the *Syrians*, did them in a manner as great hurt as they could do to *Apollonius*; and having the victory taken out of his hands, by *Apollonius* his flight, yet made such a retreat, that the *Rhodians* durst not far adventure upon him. Now of these Actions which were but as Prefaces unto the war, the last and greatest was a victory of the *Romans* by Sea, against *Polyxenidas* the Kings Admirall. The battell was fought by *Myonesus* a Promontory in *Asia*: where *Polyxenidas* had with him four-score and nine Gallies; and five of them greater than any of the *Romans*. This being all the strength which he could make by Sea: we may note the vanity of those brags, wherewith *Antiochus* vaunted the last year. That his Armada should cover all the shores of *Greece*. The *Romans* had eight and fifty Gallies; the *Rhodians* two and twenty: the *Roman* being the stronger built, and more stoutly manned; the *Rhodians* more light-timbered and thin planked, having all advantage of speed, and good Sea-men. Neither forgot they to help themselves by the same device, with which five of their Gallies had lately escaped from *Samos*. For with fire in their prowes they ran upon the enemy: who declining them for fear, laid open his side: and was thereby in greater danger of being stemmed. After no long fight, the Kings Navy hoyted fail: and, having a fair wind, bore away toward *Ephesus* as fast as they could. Yet forty of their Gallies they left behind them: whereof thirteen were taken, all the rest burnt or sunk. The *Romans* and their fellows lost only two or three ships: but got hereby the absolute Mastery of the Sea.

The report of this misadventure, may seem to have taken from *Antiochus* all use of reason. For as if no hope had bin remaining to defend those places that he held in *Europe*, the presently with drew his Garrisons from *Lyfimachia*: which might easily have been kept even till the end of Winter following, and having reduced the besiegers (if the siege had been continued obstinately) unto termes of great extremity. He also gave over the siege of *Colophon*: and laying aside all thought save only of defence, drew together all his Army; and sent for help to his Father-in-law, King *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian*.

Thus the *Roman* Consull, without impediment, not only came to the *Hellepont*, but had yeelded unto him all places there, belonging to *Antiochus* on *Europe* side. The Fleet was also then in a readines to transport him over into *Asia*: where *Eumenes* had taken such care before, that he landed quietly at his own good ease; even as if the Country had been his already. The first newes that he heard of the enemy, was by an Embassadour that came to sue for peace. This Embassadour declared in his Masters name, That the same things which had hindered him from obtaining peace of the *Romans* heretofore, did now perfwade him, that he should easily come to good agreement with them. For in all dispositions heretofore, *Smyrna*, *Lampsacus*, and *Lyfimachia*, had been the places about which they varied. Seeing therefore the King had now already given over *Lyfimachia*; and was further purposed, not to strive with the *Romans* about *Lampsacus* and *Smyrna*: what reason was there, why they should need to trouble him with war? If it was their desire, that any other Towns upon the Coast of *Asia*, not mentioned by them in any former Treaties, should be also set at liberty, or otherwise delivered into their hands: the King would not refuse to gratifie them therein. Briefly, let them take some part of *Asia*: so as the bounds, dividing them from the King, might not be uncertain, and it should be quietly put into their hands. If all this were not enough, the King would likewise bear half the charges, wheratt they had been in this War. So praying the *Romans* to hold themselves contented with these good offers, and not to be too insolent upon confidence of their fortune, he expected their answer. These offers which to the Embassadour seemed so great, were judged by the *Romans* to be very little. For they thought it reasonable, that the King should bear all the charges of the war, since it began through his own fault: and that He should not only depart out of those few Towns, which he held in *Æolis* and *Ionis*, but quite out of *Asia* the lesse, and keep himself on the other side of Mount *Taurus*. When the Embassadour therefore saw,

that

that no better bargain could be made, He dealt with *P. Scipio* in private: and to him he promised a great quantity of gold, together with the free restitution of his son; who (it is uncertain by what mischance) was taken prisoner, and most honourably entertained by the King. *Scipio* would not hearken to the offer of gold: nor otherwise to the restitution of his son, than upon Condition, That it might be with making such amends for the benefit, as became a private man. As for the publique businesse: He only said thus much, That since *Antiochus* had already forsaken *Lyfimachia*, and suffered the war to take hold on his own Kingdome; there was now none other way for him, than either to fight, or yeeld to that which was required at his hands. Wherefore, said he, tell your King in my name, that I would advise him to refuse no Condition whereby he may have peace.

The King was not any whit moved with his advice. For seeing that the Consull demanded of him no lesse, than if he had been already subdued: little reason there was that he should fear to come to battell; wherein he could lose, as he thought, no more, than by seeking to avoid it he must give way. He had with him three-score and ten thousand Foot, and twelve thousand Horse; besides two and fifty Indian Elephants; and many Chariots armed with hooks or fythes, according to the manner of the Eastern Countries. Yet was he nothing pleased, to hear that the Consull drew near him apace, as one hastening to fight. But howsoever he was affected, He made fo little shew of fear, that hearing *P. Scipio* to lie sick at *Elaa*, He sent thither unto him his son without ransom: as one both desirous to comfort this noble Warriour in his sickness, and without at first desirous to retain the young Gentleman for a pledge of his own safety. Thus ought his bounty to be constant. Otherwise it might be suspected, That herein he dealt craftily. For since he could have none other ransom of *Scipio*, than such as an honourable man, that had no great store of wealth, might pay: better it was to do such a courtesie before the battell, as would afterwards have been little worth, than to stay untill the *Romans*, perhaps victorious, should exact it at his hands. *P. Scipio* was greatly comforted with the recovery of his son: so as the joy thereof was thought, to have been much available unto his health. An recompence of the Kings humanity, He said only thus much unto those that brought him this acceptable Present, I am now able to make your King none other amends, than by advising him not to fight untill he shall hear that I am in the Camp. What he meant by this, it is hard to conjecture. *Antiochus* resolved to follow his counsell: and therefore withdrew himself from about *Thyatira*, beyond the River of *Phrygius* or *Hyllus*, unto *Magnesia* by *Sypilus*: where encamping, he fortified himself as strongly as he could. Thither followed him *L. Scipio* the Consull, and sat down within four miles of him. About a thousand of the Kings Horse, most of them *Gallo-Greeks*, came to bid the *Romans* welcome: of whom at first they slew some; and were anon, with some losse, driven back over the River. Two dayes were quietly spent, whilst neither the King nor the *Romans* would passe the water. The third day the *Romans* made the adventure: wherein they found no disturbance: nor were at all opposed, untill they came within two miles and a half of *Antiochus* his Camp. There as they were taking up their lodging, they were charged by three thousand Horse and Foot: whom the ordinary Corps de garde repelled. Four dayes together after this, each of them brought forth their Armies, and set them in order before the Trenches, without advancing any further. The fifth day the *Romans* came half way forward, and presented battail, which the King would not accept. Thereupon the Consull took advice what was to be done. For either they must fight upon whatsoever disadvantage, or else resolve to abide by it all winter, far from any Country of their friends, and therefore subject unto many difficulties: unless they would stain their honour by returning far back, to winter in a more convenient place; and so defer the war untill the next Spring. The *Roman* Souldier was thoroughly perswaded of that Enemies base temper. Wherefore it was the generall Cry, That this great Army should be assailed, even in the Camp where it lay: as if rather there were so many beasts to be slaughtered, than men to be fought with. Yet a day or two passed, in discovering the fortifications of *Antiochus*, and the safest way to set upon him. All this while *P. Scipio* came not. Wherefore the King, being loth to dishearten his men, by seeming to stand in fear of the Enemy, resolved to put the matter to triall. So when the *Romans* took the field again, and ordered their Battels:

SSSS

He

He also did the like, and advanced so far, that they might understand his meaning to fight.

The Roman Army consisted of four Legions, two Roman and two Latine: in each of which were five thousand and four hundred men. The Latines, as usually, were in the points, the Roman, in the mean battell. All of them, according to their wonted form, were divided into *Maniples*. The *Hastati* had the leading: after them followed the *Principes*, at such distance as was usual, and last of all, the *Triarii*. Now beside these, there were about three thousand *Auxiliaries*; partly *Acheans*, and partly such as belonged to *Eumenes*: which were placed in an equal Front beyond the Latines in the right wing. Ulmost of all (save some five hundred *Cretians*, and of the *Trallians*) were almost three thousand Horse: of which, *Eumenes* had brought thither eight hundred, the rest being Roman. The left wing was fenced by the bank of the River: yet four troupes of Horse were placed there, though such help seemed in a manner needless. Two thousand *Voluntaries*, *Macedonians* and *Thracians*, were left to guard the Camp. The Consul had with him sixteen African Elephants, which he bestowed in his Rere: forasmuch as had they come to fight with those of *Antiochus*, they only would have served to discourage his men; as being sure to be beaten: the Indian being far the greater, and more courageous beasts: whereof *Antiochus* had likewise much advantage in number.

The Kings Army being compounded of many Nations, diversly appointed, and not so all accustomed to one manner of fight, was ordered according to the severall kindes, in such wise as each might be of most use. The main strength of his Foot consisted in sixteen thousand, armed all *Macedonian*-like, and called *Phalangiers*. These he placed in the midst, and divided into ten Battalions: every one having two and thirty in File, and fifty in Front. Between every Battalion were two Elephants, goodly beasts, and such as being adorned with Frontals, high Crests, Towers on their backs, and besides him that governed the Elephant, four men in every Tower, made a gallant and terrible shew. On the right hand of these were fifteen hundred horse of the *Gallio-Greeks*: then, three thousand Barbd Horse: and a Regiment of almost a thousand Horse, called the *Agema*, that were all *Medians*, the choice of the Country, and accompanied by some others. All which Troups of Horse, divided in their severall kindes, do seem to have followed one another in depth, rather than to have been stretched out in Front. Adjoyning unto these, were sixteen Elephants together in one flock. A little further to the right hand, was the Kings own Regiment; called the *Argyralpides*, or *Silver-shields*, by a name borrowed from their furniture, but nothing like so valiant as those of the same name, that had served under Great *Alexander*: then, twelve hundred Archers on horseback, three thousand light-armed Foot, two thousand and five hundred Archers of *Myfia*; with four thousand slingers and Archers of the *Citians*, and *Elymaans*. On the left hand of the *Phalangiers*, were placed the like numbers of *Gallio-Greeks*, and Barbd Horse: as also two thousand horse that were sent from *Ariarathes*, with two thousand and seven hundred of divers Nations; and a Regiment of a thousand Horse more lightly armed, that were called *The Kings Troup*, being *Syrians*, *Phrygians*, and *Lydians*. In Front of all these Horse were the Chariots armed with hooks or lythes, and the *Dromedaries*, wheron sat *Arabians* with long Rapiers, that would serve to reach from those high Camels. Beyond these were, as in the right wing, a rabble of many Nations, *Carians*, *Cicilians*, *Pamphylians*, *Pisidians*, *Cyrians*, *Elymaans*, and many others, having also with them sixteen Elephants. *Antiochus* himself commanded in the right wing: *Seleucus* in the left: and three of his principall Captains commanded over the *Phalangiers*.

The first onser was given by the *Dromedaries*, and armed Chariots: of which the one, being like to terrifie the Horse; the other, to break the Squadrons of the Foot; *Eumenes* with a few light-armed *Cretians*, Archers, Darters, and Slingers, easily made frustrate the danger threatened by them both. For with shoutings, and noises, and some wounds, they were driven out of the field; and running back upon their own men, did the same harm which they had intended to the Enemies. Wherefore the Roman Horse following this advantage, charged upon the left wing: whereas they found no resistance; some being out of order; others being without courage. It is shameful to rehearse, and so strange, that it may hardly seem credible: that the *Phalangiers*, with

with such variety of *Auxiliaries*, made little or no resistance, but all of them fled, in a manner, as soon as they were charged. Only the King, *Antiochus* himself, being in the left wing of his own battail: and seeing the Latines, that stood opposite unto him, weakly flanked with Horse: gave upon them courageously, and forced them to retire. But *M. Aemilius*, that had the Guard of the Roman Camp, issued forth with all his power to help his fellows: and, what by perswasion, what by threats, made them renew the fight. Succour also came from the right wing, where the Romans were already victorious: whereof when *Antiochus* discovered the approach; He not only turned his Horse about, but ran away upon the spur without further tarriance. The Camp was defended a little while: and with no great valour, though by a great multitude that were fled into it. *Antiochus* is said to have lost in this battell fifty thousand Foot, and four thousand Horse; besides those that were taken. Of the Romans, there were not slain above three hundred Foot, and four and twenty Horse: of *Eumenes* his followers five and twenty.

*Antiochus* fled to *Sardes*, and from thence to *Apamea*, the same night, hearing that *Seleucus* was gone thither before. He left the custody of *Sardes*, and the Castle there, to one whom he thought faithfull. But the Towns-men and Souldiers were so dismayed with the greatness of the Overthrow; that one mans faith was worth nothing. All the Towns in those parts, without expecting summons, yielded up themselves by Embassadours: whom they sent to the Romans, whilst they were on the way. Neither were many dayes spent, ere *Antiochus* his Embassadour was in the Camp: having none other errand, than to know what it would please the Romans to impose upon the King his Master. *P. Scipio* was now come to his brother, who obtained leave to make the answer, because it should be gentle. They required no more than they had lately done: which was, that he should quite abandon his Dominions on this side *Taurus*. For their charges in that War; they required fifteen thousand Talents: five hundred in hand; two thousand and five hundred, when the Senate and people of Rome should have confirmed the peace; and the other twelve thousand, in twelve years next ensuing, by even portions. Likewise they demanded four hundred talents for *Eumenes*; and some store of Corn, that was due to him upon a reckoning. Now besides twenty hostages which they required, very earnest they were to have *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoon* the *Ætolian*, with some others who had stirred up the King to this war, delivered into their hands. But any wise man might so easily have perceived, that it would be their purpose to make this one of their principall demands; as no great art was needfull to beguile their malice. The Kings Embassadour had full commission, to refuse nothing that should be enjoyed. Wherefore there was no more to do, than to send immediately to Rome for the ratification of the Peace.

There were new Consuls chosen in the mean while at Rome, *M. Fulvius*, & *Cn. Manlius Volsco*. The *Ætolians* desired peace, but could not obtain it: because they would accept neither of the two Conditions to them before propounded. So it was decreed, That one of the Consuls should make war upon the *Ætolians*; the other, upon *Antiochus* in Asia. Now though shortly there came news that *Antiochus* was already vanquished in battell, and had submitted himself unto all that could be required at his hands: yet since the State of Asia was not like to be so thoroughly settled by one Victory, but that many things might fall out worthy of the Romans care; *Cn. Manlius*, to whom Asia fell by lot, had not his Province changed.

Soon after this, came the Embassadours of King *Antiochus* to Rome, accompanied with the *Rhodians* and some others: yea, by King *Eumenes* in person; whose presence added a goodly lustre to the business in hand. Concerning the peace to be made with King *Antiochus*, there was no disputation: it was generally approved. All the trouble was about the distribution of the purchase. King *Eumenes* reckoned up his own deserts, and comparing himself with *Masanissa* hoped that the Romans would be more bountifull to him than they had been to the *Numidian*, since they had found him a King indeed, whereas *Masanissa* was only such in title; and since both he and his Father had alwayes been their friends, even in the worst of the Roman fortune. Yet was there much ado to make him tell what he would have: He still referring himself to their courtisie, and they desiring him to speak plain. At length he craved that they would bestow upon him, as much of the Country by them taken from *Antiochus*, as they

had no purpose to keep in their own hands. Neither thought he it needfull, that they should trouble themselves with the care of giving liberty to many of the *Greek Towns*, that were on *Asia* side. For since the most of those Towns had been partakers with the King in his War; it was no reason that they should be gainers by his overthrow. The *Rhodians* did not like of this. They desired the Senate to be truly Patrons of the *Grecian* liberty; and to call to minde, that no small part of *Greece* it self had been subject unto *Philip*; and to serve him in his War: which was not alledged against them as a cause why they should not be made free, after that *Philip* was overcome. But the main point whereon they insisted, was this, That the Victory of the *Romans* against King *Antiochus* was so great, as easily might satisfie the desires of all their friends. The Senate was glad to hear of this; and very bountifullly gave away so much, that every one had cause to be well pleased.

Such end had the war against King *Antiochus*: after which, *L. Cornelius Scipio*, returning home, had granted unto him the honour of a Triumph: the pomp whereof exceeded in riches, not only that of *Titus Quintus Flaminius*, but of any ten that *Rome* had beheld untill that day. Now forasmuch as the surname of *The African* had been given unto *P. Scipio*, it was thought convenient by some, to reward *L. Scipio* with the title of *the Asiaticque*: which the fortune of his Victory had no lesse deserved, though the vertue, requisite to the purchase thereof, was no way correspondent.

## §. IX.

*The Ætolians and the Gallo-Greeks, vanquished by the Roman Consuls Fulvius and Manlius. Manlius hardly obtains a Triumph: being charged (among other objections) with attempting to have passed the bounds appointed as fatal to the Romans by Sibyl. of Sibyls Prophecies; the Books of Hermes; and that Inscription, Simoni Deo Sancto. The ingratitude of Rome to the two Scipio's: and that beginning and faction among the Roman Nobility.*

**M**ARC *Fulvius* and *Cn. Manlius* had the same charge divided between them, 30 which *L. Cornelius Scipio*, now stiled *Asiaticus*, had lately undergone. It was found more than one mans work, to look at once to *Greece* and to *Asia*. And for this reason was it apparent, that *L. Scipio* had granted so long a Truce to the *Ætolians*. But since, in this long Interim of Truce, that haughty little Nation had not sought to humble it self to the *Roman Majesty*, it was now to be brought unto more lowly terms than any other of the *Greeks*. The best was that so great a storm fell not unexpected upon the *Ætolians*. They had foreseen the danger, when their Embassadours were utterly denied peace at *Rome*: and they had provided the last remedy, which was, to entreat the *Rhodians* and *Athenians* to become intercessours for them. Neither were they so dejected, with any terrible apprehensions, that they could not well devise, even upon helping themselves, by repurchase of Countries lost, where they spied 40 advantage.

Poor King *Aminander* lived in exile among them, whilst *Philip* of *Macedon* kept for him, possession of his Lands and Castles. But the *Athamanians* (besides that many of them bore a naturall affection to their own Prince) having been long accustomed to serve a Mountain Lord, that conversed with them after an homely manner; could not endure the proud and insolent manner of command, used by the Captains of *Philip* his Garrisons. They sent therefore some few of them to their King, & offered their service towards his restitution. At the first there were only four of them; neither grew they, at length, to more than two and fifty, which undertook the work. Yet, assurance, that all the rest would follow, made *Aminander* willing to try his fortune. He was at the borders with a thousand *Ætolians*, upon the day appointed: at what time his two and fifty adventurers, having divided themselves into four parts, occupied, by the ready assistance of the multitude, four of the chief Towns in the Country, to his use. The fame of this good successe at the first; with divers letters running from place to place, whereby men were exhorted to do their best in helping forward the Action, made the Lieutenants of *Philip* unable to think upon resistance. One of them held the Town of *Theium* a few dayes; giving thereby some leisure unto his King to pro-

provide for the rescue. But when he had done his best, he was forced thence and could only tell *Philip*, whom he met on the way, that all was lost. *Philip* had brought from home six thousand men; of whom, when the greater part could not hold out, in such a running march, he left all save two thousand behinde him, and so came to *Athenaum*, a little *Athamanian* Castle, that still was his, as being on the frontier of *Macedon*. Thence he sent *Zeno*, who had kept *Theium* a while, to take a place lying over *Argitheæ*, that was chief of the Country. *Zeno* did as he was appointed: yet neither he, nor the King had the boldnesse to descend upon *Argitheæ*, for that they might perceive the *Athamanians*, all along the hill sides, ready to come down upon them, when they should be busie.

10 Wherefore nothing was thought more honourable than a safe retreat: especially when *Aminander* came in fight with his thousand *Ætolians*. The *Macedonians* were called back, from wards *Argitheæ*, and presently withdrawn by their King towards his own borders. But they were not suffered to depart in quiet at their pleasure. The *Athamanians* and *Ætolians* way-laid them, and pursued them so closely, that their retreat was in manner of a plain flight, with great losse of men and armes, few of those elcaping, that were left behinde, as to make a countenance of holding somewhat in the Country, untill *Philip* his return.

The *Ætolians* having found the busines of *Athamanian* so easie, made an attempt in their own behalf, upon the *Amphilochians* and *Aperantians*. These had belonged unto their Nation, and were lately taken by *Philip*; from whom they diligently revolted, and became *Ætolians* again. The *Dolopians* lay next; that had been ever belonging to the *Macedonian*, and so did still purpose to continue. These took Armes at first: but soon laid them away; seeing their neighbours ready to fight with them in the *Ætolian* quarrell, and seeing their own King so hastily gone, as if he meant not to return.

Of these victories the joy was the lesse, for that newes came of *Antiochus* his last overthrow, and of *M. Fulvius* the new Consul his hasting with an Army into *Greece*. *Aminander* sent his excuses to *Rome*, praying the Senate not to take it in despite, that he had recovered his own from *Philip* with such help as he could get. Neither seems it that the *Romans* were much offended to hear of *Philip* his losses: for of this fault they 30 neither were sharp correctors, nor earnest reprovers. *Fulvius* went in hand with the businesse, about which he came, and layed siege to *Ambracia*, a goodly City, that had been the chief seat of *Pyrrhus* his Kingdom. With this he began, for that it was of too great importance to be abandoned by the *Ætolians*; yet could not by them be relieved, unless they would adventure to fight upon equal ground. To help the *Ambracians*, it was not in the *Ætolians* power: for they were, at the same time, vexed by the *Illyrians* at sea, and ready to be driven from their new conquest, by *Persens* the son of *P. Philip*, who invaded the Counties of the *Amphilochians* and *Dolopians*. They were unable to deal with so many at once; and therefore as earnestly sought peace with the *Romans*, as they stoutly made head against the rest. In the mean while the *Athenian* and *Rho-* 40 dian Embassadours came, who besought the Consul to grant them peace. It helped well that *Ambracia* made strong resistance, and would not be terrified, by any violence of the Assailants, or danger that might seem to threaten. The Consul had no desire to spend half his time about one City, and so be driven to leave unto his successeur the honour of finishing the War. Wherefore he gladly hearkened unto the *Ætolians*, and bade them seek peace with faithful intent, without thinking it over-dear, at a reasonable price; considering with how great a part of his Kingdom their friend *Antiochus* had made the same purchase. He also gave leave to *Aminander*, offering his service as a mediatur, to put himself into *Ambracia*, and try what good his persuasions might do with the Citizens. So after many demands and excuses, the conclusion was (such as was grievous to the weaker, but not unufferable. The same 50 Embassadours of the *Athenians* and *Rhodians*, accompanied those of the *Ætolians* to *Rome*, for procuring the confirmation of Peace. Their eloquence and credit was the more needfull in this intercession, for that *Philip* had made a very grievous complaint about the losse of those Countries, which they had lately taken from him. Hereof the Senate could not but take notice; though it did not hinder the peace, which those good Mediatours of *Rhodes* and *Athens* did earnestly sollicit. The *Ætolians* were bound to uphold the Majesty of the people of *Rome*, and to observe divers Articles, which made them the lesse free, and more obnoxious to the *Romans*, than

any people of *Greece*; they having been the first that called these their Masters into the Country. The Ile of *Cephalenia* was taken from them by the *Romans*: who kept it for themselves (as not long since they had gotten *Zacynthus* from the *Achaens*, by stiffly pressing their own right) that so they might have possession along the coast of *Greece*, whilst they seemed to forbear the Country. But concerning those places, whereto *Philip*, or others might lay claim, there was set down an order so perplexed, as would necessarily require to have the *Romans* Judges of their controversies, when they should arise. And hereof good use will be shortly made: when want of employment elsewhere, shall cause a more Lordly Inquisition to be held, upon the affairs of *Macedon* and *Greece*.

*Cn. Manlius*, the other Consull, had at the same time war in *Asia*, with the *Gallo-Greeks* and others. His Army was the same that had followed *L. Scipio*, of whose victory, his acts were the consummation. He visited those Countries on the hither side of *Taurus*, that had scarce heard of the *Romans*; to whom they were abandoned by *Antiochus*. Among these there were some petty Lords, or Tyrants, some free Cities, and some that were together at wars, without regard of the great alteration that hapned in *Asia*. From every of these he got somewhat; and by their quarrels found occasion to visit those Provinces, into which he should else have wanted an errand. He was even laden with booty, when, having fetcht a compass about *Asia*, he came at length upon the *Gallo-Greeks*. These had long domineered over the Country: though of late times, it was rather the fame & terror of their fore-past acts, than any present virtue of theirs, which held them up in reputation. Of the *Romans* they had lately such trial, when they served under King *Antiochus*, as made them to acknowledge themselves far the worse men. Wherefore they thought it no small part of their safety, that they dwelt upon the River *Haly*, in an In-land Country, where those enemies were not very like to search them out. But when such hopes failed; and when some Princes of their own Nation, that had been friends of *Eumenes*, exhorted the rest to yield: then was no counsell thought so good, as to forsake their houses and Country, and, with all that they could carry or drive, to betake themselves unto the high mountains of *Olympus* and *Margana*. These mountains were exceeding hard of ascent, though none should undertake the custody. Being therefore well manned and victualled for a long time; as also the natural strength being help'd by such fortification as promised greatest assurance: it was thought, that the Consul would either forbear the attempt of forcing them, or easily be repelled, and that finally, when he had stayed there a while, winter, and much want, should force him to dislodge. Yet all this availed not. For, whereas the *Gallo-Greeks* had been careless of furnishing themselves with casting weapons, as if stones would have served well enough for that purpose: the *Romans*, who came far otherwise appointed, found greater advantage in the difference of Armes than impediment in disadvantage of ground. Archers and Slingers did easily prevail against casters of stones; especially being such as were these *Gallo-Greeks*, neither exercised in that manner of fight, nor having prepared their stones before-hand, but catching up what lay next, the too great, and the too little, oftner than those of a fit size. Finally the *Barbarians*, wanting defensive Armes, could not hold out against the Arrows and the weapons of the *Roman* light armature: but were driven from a piece of ground, which they had undertaken to make good, up into their Camp on the top of the mountain; and being forced out of their Camp, had none other way left, than to cast themselves headlong down the steep rocks. Few of the men escaped alive: all their wives, children and goods became a prey unto the *Romans*. In the very like manner, were the rest of that Nation overcome soon after, at the other mountain: only more of them saved themselves by flight, as having fairer way at their backs.

These wars being ended: *Fulvius* and *Manlius* were appointed by the Senate, each of them to retain as Proconsull, his Province for another year. *Fulvius*, in his second year, did little or nothing. *Manlius* gave peace to those whom he had vanquished; as likewise to *Aviarius* the *Cappadocian*, and some others, not by him vanquished, but submitting themselves for fear of the *Roman* Armes. He drew from them all, what profit he could: and laid upon them such conditions, as he thought expedient. He also did finish the league of peace with *Antiochus*; whereto he swore, and received the Kings oath

oath by Embassadors, whom he sent for that purpose. Finally, having set in order the matters of *Asia*, he took his way toward the *Hellepont*, laden with spoil, as carrying with him (besides other treasures) all that the *Gallo-Greeks* had in so many years extorted from the wealthy Provinces that lay round about them. Neither did this Army of *Manlius* return home, rich in money alone, or cattell, or things of needfull use, which the *Roman* Souldier had been wont to take as the only good purchase; but furnished with sumptuous household-stuffe, and slaves of price, excellent Cooks, and Musicians for banquets, and in a word, with the seeds of that luxury, which finally over-grew and choaked the *Roman* vertue.

The Country of *Thrace* lay between *Hellepont* and the Kingdome of *Macedon*, which way *Manlius* was to take his journey homeward. *L. Scipio* had found no impediment among the *Thracians*: either for that he passed through them, without any such booty as might provoke them; or perhaps rather, because *Philip* of *Macedon* had taken order, that the *Barbarians* should not stir. But when *Manlius* came along with a huge train of baggage, the *Thracians* could not so well contain themselves. Neither was it thought, that *Philip* took it otherwiser than very pleasantly, to have this *Roman* Army robbed, & well beaten on the way. He had cause to be angry, seeing how little himself was regarded, and what great rewards were given to *Eumenes*. For he understood, and afterwards gave the *Romans* to understand, that *Eumenes* could not have abidden in his own Kingdome, if the people of *Rome* had not made war in *Asia*: whereas contrariwise, *Antiochus* had offered unto himself three thousand talents, and fifty ships of war, to take part with him and the *Ætolians*, promising moreover to restore unto him all the *Greek* Cities, that had been taken from him by the *Romans*. Such being the difference between him and *Eumenes*, when the war began: he thought it no even dealing of the *Romans*, after their victory, to give away not only the half of *Asia*, but *Chersonesus*, and *Lysimachia* in *Europe*, to *Eumenes*; whereas upon himself they bestowed not any one Town. It agreed not indeed with his Nobility to go to *Rome* and beg Favour in the Senate, as *Eumenes* and the *Rhadians* had lately done. He had entertained lovingly the two *Scipios*, whom he thought the most honourable men in *Rome*; and was grown into near acquaintance with *Pullius*, holding correspondence with him by letters, whereby he made himself acquainted with the wars in *Spain* and *Africa*. This perhaps he deemed sufficient, to breed in the *Romans* a due respect of him. But *Eumenes* took a surer way. For the *Scipios* had not the disposing of that which they won from *Antiochus*: as neither indeed had *Manlius*, nor the ten Delegates assisting him; but the Senate of *Rome*, by which those Delegates were chosen, and instructed how to proceed. When *Philip* therefore saw these upstart Kings of *Pergamus*, whom he accounted as base companions, advanced so highly, and made greater than himself; yea himself unregarded, contemned, and exposed to many wrongs: then found he great cause to wish, that he had not so hastily declared himself against *Antiochus*, or rather that he had joyned with *Antiochus* and the *Ætolians*, by whom he might have been freed from his insolent Masters. But what great argument of such discontentedness the *Macedonian* had, we shall very shortly be urged to discourse more at large. At the present it was believed, that the *Thracians* were by him set on, to assail the *Romans* passing through their Country. They knew all advantages; & they sell, unexpected, upon the carriages that were beset in the midst of the Army; whereof part had already passed a dangerous wood through which the baggage followed; part was not yet so far advanced. There was enough to get, and enough to leave behind: though both the getting and the saving, did cost many lives, as well of the *Barbarians*, as of the *Romans*. They fought until it grew night: and then the *Thracians* withdrew themselves; not without as much of the booty, as was to their full content. And of such trouble there was more, though lesse dangerous, before the Army could get out of *Thrace* into *Macedon*. Through the Kingdome they had a fair march into *Epirus*; and so to *Apollonia*, which was their handle of *Greece*.

To *Manlius*, and to *Fulvius*, when each of them returned to the City, was granted the honour of Triumph. Yet not without contradiction: especially to *Manlius*, whom some of the ten Delegates, appointed to assist him, did very bitterly tax, as an unworthy commander. Touching the rest of their accusation; it sufficeth that he made good answer, and was approved by the chief of the Senate. One clause is worthy of more particular consideration. Reprehending his desire to have hindered the peace with *Antiochus*; they



Lid. 38.

Tull. d. Divin.  
lib. 2.Isaac, Cafaub.  
Exercit. 1. ad  
Annal. Barin. 10.  
C. 11.Enf. Eccl. hist.  
cap. 13.

they said, *That with much ado he was kept from leading his army over Taurus, and adventuring upon the calamity threatened by Sibyls verses, unto those that should passe the fatal bounds.* What calamity or overthrow this was, wherewith *Sibyls* prophecy threatened the Roman Captain or Army, that should passe over *Taurus*, I do not conceive. *Pompey* was the first, that marched with an Army beyond those limits: though the victories of *Lucullus* had opened unto him the way, and had before hand won, in a fort, the Countries on the other side of the Mount, which *Lucullus* gave to one of *Antiochus* his race, though *Pompey* occupied the n for the *Romans*. But we finde not, that either *Lucullus* or *Pompey* suffered any losse, in presuming to neglect the bounds appointed by *Sibyl*. Indeed the accomplishment of this prophecy, fell out near about one time, with the restitution of *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, that was forbidden unto the *Romans* by the same *Sibyl*. It may therefore seem to have had reference unto the same things, that were denounced, as like to happen upon the reduction of the *Egyptian* King. Whether the Oracles of *Sibyl* had in them any truth, and were not, as *Tullius* no: eth, *semita a random in the large field of Time*, there to take root, and get credit by event; I will not here dispute. But I hold this more probable, than that the restitution of *Ptolemy* to his Kingdome by *Gabinus* the Roman, should have any way betokened the coming of our Saviour: as some both ancient and modern Christian Writers have been well pleased to interpret *Sibyl* in that prophecy. Of the *Sibylline* predictions, I have sometimes thought reverently: though not knowing what they were (as I think few men know) yet following the common belief and good authority. But observance of the shamefull Idolatry, that upon all occasions was advanced in *Rome* by the books of *Sibyl*, had well prevailed upon my credulity, and made me suspect, though not the faith and pious meaning, yet the judgement of *Ensebius*: when that learned and excellent work of Master *Cafaubou* upon the Annals of Cardinall *Baronius*, did altogether free me from mine error; making it apparent, That not only those prophecies of *Sibyl*, wherein Christ fo plainly was shewed, but even the books of *Hermes*, which have born such reputation, were no better than counterfeited pieces, and at first entertained (whosoever devised them) by the undifferent zeal of such, as delighted in seeing the Christian Religion strengthened with forein proofs. And in the same rank, I think, we ought to place that notable History, reported by *Ensebius* from no mean Authors. Of the honour which was done to *Simon Magus* in *Rome*; namely of an Altar to him erected, with an inscription, *Simoni Deo Sancto*, that is, *To Simon the holy god*. For what can be more strange, than that a thing so memorable, and so publike, should have been quite omitted by *Tacitus*, by *Suetonius*, by *Dion*, and by all which wrote of those times? Philosophers and Poets would not have suffered the matter to escape in silence, had it been true; neither can it be thought that *Seneca*, who then lived and flourished, would have obtained from speaking any word of an argument so famous. Wherefore I am perswaded, that this inscription, *Simoni Deo Sancto*, was, by some bad *Criticisme*, taken amiss in place of *Simoni Sango*: a title four hundred years older than the time of *Simon Magus*. For the goods of one *Virivivus* a Rebelle, had many ages before been consecrated *Simoni Sango*, that is, *To the Spirit or Demi-god Sanguis*, in whose Chappell they were bestowed. So as either by the ill shape of the old *Roman* letters, or by some spoil that time had wrought upon them; it might easily come to passe, that the words should be misse-read, *Simoni Sancto*, and that some Christian who had heard of *Simon Magus*, but not of *Sanguis*, thereupon should frame the conjecture, which now passeth for a true History. Such conjectures, being entertained without examination, find credit by Tradition, whereby also, many times, their fashion is amended, and made more Historical, than was conceived by the Author. But it cannot be safe, to let our faith (which ought to stand firm upon a sure foundation) lean over-hardly on a well painted, yet rotten post.

Now concerning the Triumph of *Cn. Manlius*, it may be numbred among a few of the richest, which ever the City beheld. Out of that which he brought into the Treasury, was made the last payment of those monies which the common-wealth had borrowed from private men, in the second *Punick War*. So long was it, that *Rome* had still some feeling of *Hannibal*: which being past, there was remaining neither care, nor memory, of any danger. This Triumph of *Manlius* was deferred by him, even so long as he well could: for that he thought it not safe, to make his entrance into the City, untill

the

the heat of an Inquisition, then raging therein, should be allayed. The two *Scipio's* were called one after other, into judgement, by two Tribunes of the people, men, only by this accusation, known to Posterity. *P. Scipio the African*, with whom they began, could not endure that such unworthy men should question him, of purloining from the Common Treasury, or of being hired with bribes by *Antiochus*, to make an ill bargain for his Country. When therefore his day of answer came, he appeared before the Tribunes, not humbly as one accused, but followed by a great train of his friends and Clients, with which he passed through the middle of the Assembly, and offered himself to speak. Having audience, he told the people, That upon the same day of the 10 year he had fought a great battell with *Hannibal*, and finished the *Punick War* by a signal victory. In memory whereof, he thought it no fit season to brabble at the Law, but intended to visit the Capitol, and there give thanks to *Jupiter*, and the rest of the gods, by whose grace, both on that day and at other times, he had well and happily discharged the most weighty business of the Common-wealth. And hereto he invited with him all the Citizens: requesting them, That if ever since the seventeenth year of his life, untill he now grew old, the honourable places by them conferred upon him, had prevented the capacity of his age, and yet his deserts had exceeded the greatness of those honourable places: then would they pray, that the Princes and great ones of their City might still be like to him. These words were heard with great approbation: so as all the people, even the Officers of the 10 court followed *Scipio*, leaving the Tribunes alone, with none about them, excepting their own slaves and a Cryer, by whom ridiculously they cited him to judgement, untill for very shame, as not knowing what else to do, they granted him, unrequested, a further day. After this, when the *African* perceived that the Tribunes would not let fall their suit, but enforce him to submit himself to a disgracefull triall: he willingly relinquished the City, and his unthankfull *Romans*, that could suffer him to undergo so much indignity. The rest of his time he spent at *Literum*: quietly with a few of his inward friends, and without any desire of seeing *Rome* again. How many years he lived, or whether he lived one whole year, in this voluntary banishment, it is uncertain. The report of his dying in the same year, with *Hannibal* and *Philopamen*, as also of his private behaviour 30 at *Literum*, render it probable, that he out-lived the Tribuneship of his accusers; who meant to have drawn him back to his answer, if one of their Colleagues (as one of them had power to hinder all the rest from proceeding) had not caused them to desist. Howsoever it was, the same Tribunes went more sharply to work with *L. Scipio the Asiaticque*. They propounded a Decree unto the People, touching money received of *Antiochus*, & not brought into the common Treasury, that the Senate should give charge unto one of the Prætors, to inquire, and judicially determine thereof. In favour of this Decree, an Oration was made by *Cato*, the supposed author of these contentions, & instigator of the Tribunes. He was a man of great, but not perfect, vertue, temperate, valiant, and of singular industry; frugal also, both of the publike, and of his own; so as in this kinde 40 he was even faulty: for though he would not be corrupted with bribes, yet was he unmercifull and unconscionable, in seeking to increase his own wealth, by such means as the Law did warrant. Ambition was his vice, which being poysoned with envie, troubled both himself and the whole City, whilst he lived. His mean birth caused him to hate the Nobility, especially those that were in chief estimation. Neither did he spare to bite at such as were of his own rank, men raised by desert, if their advancement were like to hinder his: but lately before this, when *Glaborius*, whose Lievtenant he had been at *Thermopyla*, was his Competitor for the Censhorship, and likely to carry it, he took an Oath against him, which was counted as no better than malicious perjury. That he had not brought into the common Treasury some vessels of gold and silver, gotten in the 50 Camp of *Antiochus*. Now the hatred which he bare unto the *Scipio's* grew partly, (besides his generall spight at the Nobility) from his own first rising, wherein he was countenanced by *Fabius Maximus*, who brooked not the *African*, partly from some check, that was given unto himself, in the *African* voyage, by *P. Scipio*, whose Treasurer he then was. For when *Cato* did utter his dislike of the Consul's bad husbandry (judging Magnificence to be no better) in some peremptory manner, *Scipio* plainly told him, That he had no need of such double diligence in his Treasurer. Wherefore, either not caring what lies he published, or for want of judgement, thinking unworthily of the vertue that was far above him, *Cato* filled *Rome* with untrue reports against his Generall, whose noble

noble deeds confuted sufficiently the author of such false tales. And thus began the hatred: which being not regarded nor thought upon by the *Scipio's*, whilst it was nourished by their enemy, brake out upon advantage, especially against *L. Scipio*: his brother being dead, or out of the way. A severe inquiry and judgement being appointed of purpose against *Scipio*, matters were so carried, that he was soon condemned in a sum of money, far exceeding his ability to pay. For non-payment, his body should have been laid up in prison: but from this rigour of the Law he was freed by *Tiberius Gracchus*, the same Tribune who had caused the suit against the *African* to be let fall. In his estate, which was confiscated to the use of the City, when there neither appeared any sign of his having been beholding to *Antiochus*, nor was found so much as what he had been condemned to pay, then fell his accusers, and all whose hands had been against him, into the indignation of the People. But for this was *L. Scipio* no whit the better. His kindred, friends, and Clients, made such a Collection for him, as would have set him in better estate than before, if he had accepted it. He took no more than such of his own goods, as were of necessary use, being redeemed for him by his nearest friends.

And thus began the civil war of the *Tongue*, in the *Roman* pleadings: which had either not been, or not been much regardable, untill now, since the *Punic* War. Security of danger from abroad, and some want of sufficient employment, were especial helps to the kindling of this fire; which first caught hold upon that great Worthy, to whose virtue *Rome* was indebted, for changing into so great security her extreme danger. But these factious contentions did no long while contain themselves within heat of words, and cunning practice. For when the Art of leading the multitude, in such quarrelsome business, grew to perfection, they that found themselves overmatched by their adversaries at this kind of weapon, began to make opposition, first, with clubs and stones, afterward with swords; and finally, proceeded from frays and murders in the streets, unto battail in the open field. *Cornelia*, daughter of *Scipio the African*, a Lady of rare virtue, that in honour of her two sons was more commonly named *Mother of the Gracchi*, saw those her two sons whilst they were but young, slaughtered in *Rome*, together with some of their friends, by those whom they opposed, and their death not revenged by order of Law, but rather approved by the Senate. At these times the Senators began to take upon them Authority, more than was to them belonging. They conferred upon the Consuls all the whole power of the City, under this form, *Let the Consuls provide, that the Commonwealth receive no detriment*. By this decree of theirs, and by their proclaiming any Citizen enemy to the State, they thought to have won a great advantage over the multitude. But after the death of *C. Gracchus*, and of *Saturninus* a popular man, whom by such authority they did put out of the way, it was not long ere *Marinus* a famous Captain of theirs, was so condemned, who by force of arms returned into the City, and murdered all the principall Senators: whereupon began the civil wars; which giving unto *Sylla*, who prevailed therein, means to make himself absolute Lord of *Rome*, taught *Cesar*, a man of higher spirit, to affect and obtain the like sovereign power, when by the like Decree of the Senate he was provoked. It is true, that never any Consul had finally cause to rejoyce, of his having put in execution such authority to him committed by the Senate. But as the fury of the multitude, in passing their Lawes, by hurding of stones, and other violence, made the City stand in need of a Sovereign Lord: so the vehemency of the Senate, in condemning as enemies those that would not submit themselves, when they were over-topped by voyces in the House, did compell *Cesar*, or give him at least pretence, to right himself by arms: wherewith prevailing against his adversaries, he took such order, that neither Senate nor people, should thenceforth be able to do him wrong. So by intestine discord, the *Romans* consuming all or most of their principall Citizens, lost their own freedome, and became subjects unto the arbitrary government of one: suffering this change in three generations, after this beginning of their insolent rule, wherein they took upon them as the highest Lords on earth, to do even what they listed. Yet had not *Rome* indeed attained hitherto unto compleat greatness, nor believed of her self as if she had, whilst a King fate crowned on the Throne of *Alexander*, continuing and upholding the reputation of a former Empire. Wherefore this consummation of her honour was thought upon betimes. How it was effected, the sequel will discover.



## CHAP. VI.

## The second Macedonian VVarre.

## §. III.

- 10 The Condition wherein those Princes and Estates remained, which were associates of the Romans, when the warre with *Antiochus* was finished. The Romans quarrell with Philip. They dealt insolently with the Achaeans. The Macedonian, being unready for war, obtains peace at *Rome*, by his son *Demetrius*; of whom thenceforth he becomes jealous.



- 20 FROM the overthrow of *Antiochus*, although *Philip of Macedon*, *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, the Commonwealth of the *Achaens*, and all other the States of *Greece*, were governed by the same Lawes and Magistrates, as they formerly had been, before the arrivall of the Romans in those parts: yet in very truth (the publique declaration excepted) they were none other than absolute vassals to the People of *Rome*. For of those five Prerogatives belonging to a Monarch, or unto Sovereign power, in whomsoever it rest; namely, To make Lawes, To create Magistrates, To arbitrate Peace and War, To best Money, and to reserve (as the French call it) *le dernier Ressort*, or the last Appeals, the Romans had assumed four; and the greatest of those to absolutely, that is, The Appeal, or last resort, as every petty injury offered to each other by the forenamed Kings or States, was heard and determined either by the Roman Embassadors, or Commissioners, in those places whence the Complaint came, or otherwise by the Senators themselves within *Rome*, from whose arbitrement, or direction, if either King or Commonwealth declined, He or they were beaten, and informed to obedience, or had their Estates and Regalities utterly dissolved. Nevertheless it is true, that they had their own Lawes, and Officers of their own ordaining: yet so, as neither the Lawes were of force, when the Romans interpolated their will to the contrary, neither was their election of Magistrates so free, as that they had not therein especial regard unto the good pleasure of these their Masters.

- And to such degree of servitude the severall Estates of *Greece* did bow very gently: either as being thankfull for their deliverance from a yoke more sensibly grievous, or, as being skilfull in the Art of flattery, and therein taking delight, since therein consisted their chief hope of thriving; or, as being more fearfull of displeasing the strongest, than mindfull of their own honour. But *Eumenes* living further off, & being most obsequious  
40 unto the Romans, was not, of long time, questioned about any of his doings: his conformity unto them in matter of war & peace, together with the diversion of their thoughts another way, giving him leave to use his own even as he listed, untill they should otherwise dispose of him. Neither was it a little available to him, that his Kingdome bordered upon the Nations, by them not thoroughly subdued. For upon the same reason (as well as upon his own high deserts) were they very loving unto *Masaniiss*, and to his House, untill *Carthage* was ruined, and their Dominion settled in *Africa*: as likewise afterwards to the Kings of *Mauritania*, *Cappadocia*, and others: holding people in subjection unto themselves, by the Ministry of Kings, especially of such Kings, as were useful and obsequious unto them.

- 50 Now the Macedonian was of a more noble temper; and shewed himself not forgetfull of his own former greatness, the honour of his race, or the high reputation of his Kingdome. But such magnanimity was none otherwise construed by the Romans, then as want of due reverence to their estate, and a valuation of himself against them: which, in the pride of their fortune, they could not indure. Wherefore notwithstanding that he had lately given passage to their Armies through his Country, prepared the waies for them, and furnished them both with victuals, and other things needfull, to transport them over the *Hellepont* into *Asia*, against *Antiochus*: yet upon the complaint of *Eumenes* and the States of *Thessaly* and *Thrace*, he was commanded to abandon the Cities of *Amus* and *Mantinea*,

*Maronea*, with all Pieces and places demanded by any of his neighbours; whereof many of them he had lately conquered, by direction or licence, even from the *Romans* themselves.

These Towns of *Ennus* and *Maronea* had been part of *Lysimachus* his Kingdome: who from *Thrace* Northwards, and to the Northwest, extended his Dominion very far. He is thought to have made himself Lord of *Transylvania*: in which Province it is said, \* That innumerable Medals of gold have been found, in the age of our Grand-fathers, each of them weighing two or three Crowns, and stamped with his Image on the one side, on the other side with *Victory*. Of all these Lordships, the possession, or rather the title (for he lived not to settle his estate in *Europe*) fell to *Selenus Nicator* by right of war, wherein he vanquished and slew *Lysimachus*: as also, by the like right, *Ptolemy Cerannus* thought them his own, when he had murdered *Selenus*. But the inundation of the *Gauls*, which the Kingdome of *Macedon* could not sustain, did shortly and easily wash away from that crown, together with the more part of *Thrace*, all those kinds of land newly thereto annexed. Somewhat of this was afterwards regained by *Antigonus* the son of *Demetrius*, and his successors: though not much, for they were otherwise busied. The fury of the *Gauls* being over-past, those Countreys; which lately had been oppressed by them, recovered their liberty; and not only held it, but learned, some of them, especially the *Dardanians* and wilde *Thracians*, to find their advantages, and make use of them, even upon *Macedon*. Against the mischiefs commonly done by these, King *Philip* did provide the most convenient remedies: by shutting up the waies, whereby the *Dardanians* might enter into his Kingdome; and by occupying *Lysimachia*, with some other Towns in *Thrace*, which he fortified, as Bulwarks of his own Countrey, against the *Barbarians*. Now, although it behoved him thus to do, for the defence of his own estate: yet forasmuch as these Towns were, in a manner, at absolute liberty, his possession of them was thought to partake more of violence than of justice. And in this respect he was formerly accused by the *Ætoliens*, of wrongfull usurpation and oppression, in his having occupied *Lysimachia*. Hereto he made a good answer. That his Garrison did only save it from the *Thracians*: who as soon as he thence withdrew his men, did seize upon the Town, and ruine it. The like perhaps he might have said, touching *Ennus* and *Maronea*; That they were places unable to defend themselves, and Gates, by which the *Barbarians* might have entrance into his Kingdome. But this Plea did not avail him, in the disputation about *Lysimachia*: and in the present question, the *Romans* were not without their own title; since *Antiochus* had gotten all the Countrey thereabout, whilst *Philip* was busied in his former war: and since they, by their victory, had gotten unto themselves all the title, which *Antiochus* thereto could pretend. Wherefore he only submitted his right unto the good pleasure of the Senate: referring it unto their disposition, Whether *Ennus* and *Maronea* should be set at liberty: whether left in his hand, or whether bestowed upon *Eumenes*; who begged them, as an appendix to *Lysimachia* and *Chersonesus*, that were already his by their gift. What they would determine, he might easily perceive, by the demeanor of their Embassadors towards him: who sitting as Judges between him and all that made complaint upon him, gave sentence against him in every controversy. Nevertheless, he sent Embassadors to *Rome*, there to maintain his right unto these Towns; wherein he thought, that equity (if it might prevail) was wholly on his side. For he had holpen their Consuls in the war against *Antiochus* and the *Ætoliens*: wherein whatsoever he had gotten for himself, was now taken from him by their Embassadors: and would they now deprive him of those two towns, lying so fitly for the guard of his kingdome, which he had gotten to himself out of the ruins of *Antiochus*, like as out of his own ruins *Antiochus* had gotten in those quarters a great deal more? By such allegations either he was likely to prevail, or at leastwise to gain time, wherein he might bethink himself what he had to do. It was not long ere he had word from *Rome*, That the Senate were no more equal to him, than had been their Embassadors. Wherefore, considering how insolently the *Maronites* had behaved themselves, in pleading against him for their liberty, he took counsel of his own passions; and (as by nature he was very cruell) gave order to *Onomastus*, that was Warden of the Sea-coasts, to handle these *Maronites* in such sort, as they might have little joy of the liberty by them so earnestly desired. *Onomastus* employed *Cassander*, one of the Kings men dwelling in *Maronea*, and willed him to let in the *Thracians*

\* Hist. of Hungary by Mart. Pume. lib. 5.

dians by night, that they might sack the Town, and use all cruelties of war. This was done: but so ill taken by the *Roman* Embassadors who had better notice, than could have been feared, of these proceedings; that the King was by them directly charged with the crime, and called more strictly, than became his Majesty, to an accompt. He would have removed the blame from himself, and layed it even upon the *Maronites*: affirming, that they, in heat of their Factions, being some inclinable to him, other some to *Eumenes*, had fallen into such outrage, that they had cut one anothers throats. And hereof he willed the Embassadors to enquire among the *Maronites* themselves: as well knowing, that they who survived, were either his own friends, or so terrified and amazed by the late execution of his vengeance among them, that they durst not utter an offensive word. But he found the *Romans* more severe, and more thoroughly informed in the business, than to rest contented with such an answer. He was plainly told, That if he would discharge himself of the crime objected; he must send *Onomastus* and *Cassander* to *Rome*, there to be examined as the Senate should think fit. This did not a little trouble him. Yet he collected his spirits, and said, that *Cassander* should be at their disposition: but concerning *Onomastus*, who had not been at *Maronea*, nor near to it, he requested them not to presse him; since it stood not with his honour so lightly to give away his friends. As for *Cassander*, because he should tell no tales; He took order to have him paysoned by the way. By this we see, that the doctrine, which *Machiavel* taught unto *Cesar Borgia*, to employ men in mischievous actions, and afterwards to destroy them when they have performed the mischief, was not of his own invention. All ages have given us examples of this goodly policy, the latter having been apt scholars in this lesson to the more ancient: as the reign of *Henry* the eighth, here in *England*, can bear good witness; and therein especially the Lord *Cromwell*, who perished by the same unjust Law that himself had devised, for the taking away of another mans life.

Such actions of *Philip* made an unpleasant noise at *Rome*, & were like to have brought upon him the war which he feared, before he was ready to entertain it. Wherefore he employed his younger son *Demetrius* as Ambassador unto the Senate: giving him instructions, how to make answer to all complaints, and withall to deliver his own grievances in such wise, that it ought were amiss, yet might it appear that he had been strongly urged to take such courses. The sum of his Embassage was, to pacifie the *Romans*, and make all even for the present. *Demetrius* himself was known to be very acceptable unto the Senate; as having been well approved by them, when he was Hostage in *Rome*: and therefore seemed the more likely to prevail somewhat; were it only in regard that would be born unto his person.

Whilst this businessse with the *Macedonian* hung in suspense, and whilst he, by his readinesse to make submission, seemed likely to divert from himself some other way the *Roman* armes: the same Embassadors, that had been Judges between him and his neighbours, made their progresse through the rest of *Greece*; and took notice of the controversies, which they found between some Estates in the Countrey. The greatest cause that was heard before them, was the complaint of the banished *Lacedemonians* against the *Acheans*. It was objected unto the *Acheans*, That they had committed a grievous slaughter upon many Citizens of *Lacedamon*: That unto this cruelty they had added a greater, in throwing down the wals of the City: as also further, in changing the Lawes, and abrogating the famous Institutions of *Lycurgus*. Hereto *Lycortas*, the Prætor of the *Acheans*, made answer, That these banished *Lacedemonians*, who now took upon them to accuse the Nation that had once protected them; were notoriously known to be the men, who had themselves committed that murder, whereof shamefully they laid the blame upon others: the *Acheans* having not only called those unto judgement, that were supposed to be chief Authors of a Rebellion against both them and the *Romans*: and these Plaintiffs having slain them, upon private, though just hatred, as they were coming to make answer for themselves. Concerning their throwing down the Wals of *Lacedamon*, he said it was most agreeable to *Lycurgus* his Ordinance: who, having perswaded his Citizens to defend their Town and liberty by their proper vertue, did inhibit unto them all kinds of fortifications: as the Retreats and Nests either of Cowards, or (whereof *Lacedamon* had wofull experience) of Tyrants and Usurpers. Further he shewed, how the same Tyrants that had built these wals

T t t t

and

and hemmed in the *Spartans*, had also quite abolished *Lycorgus* his ordinances; and governed the City by their own lawless Will. As for the *Acheans*, they communicated their own Lawes, which they held for the best, or else would soon change them and take better, unto the *Lacedamonians*, whom they found without Lawes, or any tolerable forme of policy. For conclusion, *Lycortas* plainly told *App. Claudius*, the chief of the Embassadors, That he and his Countrymen held it strange, being friends and faithfull Allies of the *Romans*, to see themselves thus constrained to answer and give account of their actions, as vassals & slaves unto the people of *Rome*. For if they were indeed at liberty: why might not the *Acheans* as well require to be satisfied about that which the *Romans* had done at *Capua*, as the *Romans* had busied themselves, to take account how things went at *Lacedamon*; for if the *Romans* would stand upon their greatness; and intimate as they begun, that the liberty of their friends was nothing worth, longer than should please themselves to ratifie it: then must the *Acheans* have recourse unto those Agreements that were confirmed by oath, and which without perjury could not be violated; as reverencing, and indeed fearing the *Romans*, but much more, the immortall gods. To this bold answer of *Lycortas Appius* found little to reply. Yet taking state upon him, he pronounced more like a Master than a Judge, that if the *Acheans* would not be ruled by fair means, and earn thanks whilest they might; they should be compelled with a mischief, to do what was required at their hands, whether they would or no. This altercation was in the Parliament of the *Acheans*, which groined to hear the Lordly words of *Appius*. Yet fear prevailed above indignation: and it was permitted unto the *Romans* to do as they listed. Hereupon the Embassadors restored some banished and condemned men: but the *Roman* Senate, very soon after, did make void all judgements of death or banishment, that had been laid by the *Acheans*, upon any Citizen of *Lacedamon*; as likewise they made it a matter of disputation, whether or no the City and Territory of *Lacedamon* should be suffered to continue a member of the *Achean* Common-wealth; or, taken from them and made as it had been an Estate by it self. By bringing such a matter into question, the *Romans* well declared, that they held it to depend upon their own will, how much or how little any of their Confederates should be suffered to enjoy: though by contributing *Sparta* to the councill of *Achaia*, they discovered no lesse, as to them seemed, the love which they bare unto the *Acheans*, than the power which they had over them.

Into such slavery had the *Greeks*, and all Kings and Common-wealths whatsoever, bordering upon any part of the Mediterrann Seas, reduced themselves, by calling in the *Romans* to their succour. They wanted not the good counsel and persuasions of many wise and temperate men among them; they had also the examples of the *Italians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, and *Africans*, all subdued by the *Romans*; and, by seeking Patronage, made meer Vassals; to instruct them, what in the like case they should expect: yet could not the true reasons of Estate and Policy so prevail with them, but their private passions, and neighbouring hatred, which hath evermore bought revenge at the price of self-ruine, brought them from the honour which they enjoyed, of being free Princes and cities, into most base and fearfull servility.

All this made well for *Philip* of *Macedon*: who though he saw the *Greeks* very far from daring to stir against those, by whom both he and they were kept in awe; yet was he not without hope, that (few of them excepted, whom the *Romans* by freeing from his subjection, had made his implacable enemies) in hearty affection all the country would be his, whensoever he should raise Armies, as shortly he was like to do. Young *Demetrius*, coming home from *Rome*, brought with him the desired ratification of peace; though qualified with much indignity soon following. He had been long used at *Rome*, and heard with great favour in the Senate. There, being confounded with the multitude of objections, whereto his youth, unskillfull in the Art of wrangling, could not readily make answer: it was permitted unto him, to read such brief notes as he had received from his Father, and out of those the Senate were contented to gather satisfaction; more for *Demetrius* his own sake, as they then said, and wrote into *Macedon*, than for any goodinle in the defence. Such pride of theirs, in remitting his faults at the intreaty of his son, together with some insolence of his son, growing (as appeared) from this favour of the *Romans*; did increase in *Philip*.

his hatred unto *Rome*, and breed in him a jealousy of his too forward son. To set him forward in these passions, there came daily new Embassadors from *Rome*, some bringing one commendement, some another; and some requiring him to fulfill those things, which had been imposed upon him by their fore-goes. Neither were there wanting that observed his countenance: and when he had fulfilled all that was required at his hands, yet laid it to his charge, that he had done things unwillingly, and would be obedient no longer than he needs must. With these Embassadors young *Demetrius* was conversant: rather perhaps out of simplicity, and for that they made much of him, than for any ambitious respect; yet a great deal more than was pleasing to his father. So the rumour grew current through all *Macedon*, That *Perseus*, the elder son of the King, should not succeed unto his father; but that the Diademe should be conferred upon *Demetrius*; if not by some other pretence, yet by meer favour of the *Romans*. This offended not only *Perseus*, but *Philip* him self: who suspected his younger son, as more *Roman* than his own; and accordingly mis-contrived all his doings. But ere we proceed unto the bitter fruits of this jealousy; it will not be amisse to speak of some memorable accidents that were in the mean time.

## §. II.

The death of *Philopœmen*, *Hannibal*, and *Scipio*. That the Military profession is of all other the most unhappy: notwithstanding some examples, which may seem to prove the contrary.

THE *Romans* wanting other matter of quarrell in the Continent of *Greece*, had of late been so peremptory with the *Acheans*; that they seemed not unlike'y to take part against them, in any controversy that should be mov'd. Hereupon the *Messenians*, who against their will were annexed unto the *Achean* Common-wealth, having long been of a contrary Fact on thereto; grew bold to withdraw themselves from that Society, with purpose to set up againe the Estate of their own, severed from communion with any other. This was the device of some that were powerful in their City; who finding the multitude only inclinable to their purpose, and not overstrongly affected in the businesse; were carefull to seek occasion of reducing things to such passe, that all their Citizens might be entangled in a necessity of standing out, and of not returning to the *Achean* League. And hereupon they began to do some acts of hostility; whereby it was probable that blood should be drawn, and either side so far exasperated, that little hope of agreement would be left. Upon the fame of their commotion and proceedings, *Philopœmen*, then Prætor of the *Acheans*, levied such forces as he could in haste, and went against them. Many principal Gentlemen of the *Acheans*, especially of the *Megalopolitans*, were soon in a readinesse to wait upon him. Besides these, which were all, or for the most part, horse, he had some Auxiliaries out of *Thrace* and *Crete*, that usually were kept in pay. Thus accompanied, he met with *Dinocrates*, Captain of the *Messenians*: whom he charged, and forced to run. But whilest his horsemen were too earnest in following the chase; there arrived by chance a supply of five hundred from *Messene*, which gave new courage unto those that fled. So the Enemies began to make head again: and with the help of those, who very seasonably came to their aide, compelled *Philopœmen*'s horsemen to turn back. *Philopœmen* himself had long been lick of an Ague, and was then very weak: yet the greatness of his courage would not suffer him to be negligent of their safety, which had so willingly adventured themselves under his conduct. He took up on him to make the Retreat: and suffering his horsemen to passe along by him in a narrow lane, he often turned about against the *Messenians*; whom the reputation, and the knowledge of his great worth, did terrifie from approaching over near to him. But it fell out unhappily, that being cast to ground by a fall off his horse, and being withall in very weak plight of body, he was unable to get up again. So the Enemies came upon him, and took him; yet scarce believed their fortune to be so good, although their eyes were witnesses. The first messenger that brought these newes to *Messene*, was so far from being beleaved, that he was hardly thought to be in his right wits. But when the truth was affirmed by many reports, all the City ran forth to meet him,

him, and behold the spectacle seeming so incredible. They caused him to be brought into the Theater, that there they might satiate themselves with beholding him. The greatest part of them had compassion on his misfortune: and in commemoration both of his virtue, and of the singular benefits by him done unto them, especially in delivering them from *Nabis* the Tyrant: began to manifest their good will for his delivery. Contrariwise, *Dinocrates* and his faction were desirous hastily to take away his life: because they held him a man implacable, and one that would never leave any disgrace, or injury, done to him, unrevenge'd. They durst not one trust another with the keeping of him: but committed him into a strong vault under ground, that had been made for the custody of their Treasure. So thither they let him down fast bound, and with an engine laid a heavy stone upon the mouth of the Vault. There he had not stayed long, ere his enemies had concluded his present death. The Hangman of the City was let down unto him, with a cup of poyson, which *Philopamen* took in his hand: and asking no more than whether the Horsemen were escaped, and particularly whether *Lycortas* was safe; when he heard an answer to his minde, he said it was well: and so with a cheerful countenance, drank his last draught. He was seventy years old, and weakened with long sickness, whereby the poyson wrought the sooner, and easily took away his life. The *Achaens*, when they missed him in their flight, were marvellously offended with themselves, for that they had been more mindfull to preserve their own lives, than to look unto the safety of so excellent a Commander. Whilest they were devising what to do in such a case: they got advertisement of his being taken. All *Achaia* was by this report vehemently afflicted: so as Embassadors were forthwith dispatched unto *Messene*, craving his enlargement: and yet preparation made withall, to obtain it by force, in case that fair means would not serve. *Lycortas* was chosen General of the Army against *Messene*: who comming thither, and laying siege to the Town, enforced it in short space to yeeld. Then *Dinocrates* knowing what he was to expect, laid hands upon himself, and made an end of his own life. The rest of those that had been partakers in the murder, were compelled to wait in bonds upon the ashes of *Philopamen* that were carryed home in solemne pomp to *Megalopolis*; where they were all of them slain at his funeral, as sacrifices to his Ghost whom they had offended. *Q. Martins*, a Roman Embassador, was then in *Greece*; whence, upon one occasion or other, the Roman Embassadors were seldom absent. He would have intervened in this businesse of *Messene*, had not *Lycortas* made short work, and left him nothing to do.

About the same time was *T. Quintius Flaminius* sent Embassador to *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*: not so much to withdraw him from prosecuting the war against *Emenes*, as to entreat him that he would deliver *Hannibal*, the most spiteful enemy in all the world unto the Senate and People of *Rome*, into his hands. *Prusias* (therein unworthy of the Crown he wore) did readily condescend: or rather (as *Livie* thinks) to gratifie the Romans, he determined either to kill *Hannibal*, or to deliver him alive to *Flaminius*. For upon the first conference between the King and *Flaminius*, a troupe of Souldiers were directed to guard and environ the lodging where *Hannibal* lay. That famous Captain having found cause before this to suspect the faith of *Prusias*, had devised some secret salies underground to save himself from any unreasonable and sudden assault. But finding now that all parts about him were fore-closed, he had recourse to his last remedy: which he then was constrained to practice, as well to frustrate his enemies of their triumphing over him, as to save himself from their torture and mercilesse hands; who, as he well knew, would neither respect his famous enterprises, his honour, nor his age. When therefore he saw no way to escape, nor counsell to resort unto, he took the poyson into his hand, which he alwaies preierved for a sure Antidote against the sharpest diseases of ad-  
verse fortune; which being ready to swallow down, he uttered these words: *I will now* (said he) *deliver the Romans of that fear which hath so many years posselt them: that fear, which makes them impatient to attend the death of an old man. This victory of Flaminius, over me, which am disarmed, and betrayed into his hands, shall never be numbred among the rest of his hericall deeds: No, it shall make it manifest to all the Nations of the world, how far the ancient Roman vertue is degenerate and corrupted. For such was the noblesse of their forefathers, as when Pyrrhus invaded them in Italy, & was ready to give them battle at their own doors, they gave him knowledge of the treason intended against him by poy-*

son, whereas these of a latter race have employed *Flaminius*, a man who hath heretofore been one of their consuls, so practise with *Prusias*, contrary to the honor of a King, contrary to his Faith given, and contrary to the Eaws of Hospitality, to slaughter or deliver up his own Guest. He then cursing the person of *Prusias*, and all his, and desiring the immortal gods to revenge his fidelity, drank off the poyson, and dyed.

In this year also as soon Authors have reported, to accompany *Philopamen* and *Hannibal*, died *Scipio* the African; these being all of them, as great Captains as ever the world had; but not more famous than unfortunate. Certainly, for *Hannibal*, whose Tragedy we have now finished, had he been Prince of the *Carthaginians*, and one who by his authority might have commanded such supplies, as the War which he undertook, required; it is probable, that he had torn up the *Roman* Empire by the roots. But he was so strongly crost by a cowardly and envious Faction at home, as his proper vertue, wanting publicke force to sustaine it, did lastly dissolve it self in his own, and in the Common misery of his Country and Common-weale.

Hence it comes, to wit, from the envy of our equals, and jealousie of our Masters, be they Kings or Common-weales, that there is no profession more unprosperous than that of men of war, and great capitaines, being no Kings. For besides the envy and jealousie of men, the spoyle, rapes, famine, slaughter of the innocent, vastation and burnings, with a world of miseries laid on the labouring man, are so hateful to God, as with good reason did *Manlius* the Marshall of *France* confesse, That, were not the mercies of God infinite, & without restriction, it were in vain for those of his profession to hope for any portion of them: seeing the cruelties, by them permitted and committed, were also infinite. Howsoever, this is true, That the victories which are obtained by many of the greatest Commanders, are commonly either ascribed to those that serve under them, to Fortune, or the cowardise of the Nation against whom they serve. For the most of others, whose vertues have raised them above the level of their inferiours, and have surmounted their envy: yet have they been rewarded in the end, either with disgrace, banishment, or death. Among the Romans, we finde many examples hereof; as *Coriolanus*, *M. Livius*, *L. Emilius*, and this our *Scipio*, whom we have lately buried. Among the Greeks we read of not many, that escaped these rewards. Yea long before these times, it was a Legacie that *David* bequeathed unto his victorious Captaine *Joab*. With this fare *Alexander* feasted *Pernio*, *Philotas*, and others; and prepared it for *Antipater* and *Cassander*. Hereunto *Valentinian* the Emperor invited *Atius*: who, after many other victories, overthrow *Attilia* of the *Hunnes*, in the greatest battel for the well fighting and resolution of both Armies, that ever was stricken in the world; for there fell of those that fought, beside run-aways, an hundred and fourscore thousand. Hereupon it was well and boldly told unto the Emperor by *Proximus*, That in killing of *Atius*, he had cut off his own right hand with his left: for it was not long after, that *Maximus* (by whose perswasion *Valentinian* slew *Atius*) murdered the Emperor; which hee never durst attempt *Atius* living. And besides the loss of that Emperor, it is true, That with *Atius*, the glory of the Western Empire was rather dissolved, than obscured. The same unworthy destiny, or a far worse, had *Bellisarius*, whose undertakings and victories were so difficult and glorious, as after-ages suspected them for fabulous. For he had his eyes torne out of his head by *Justinian*: and he died a blinde begger. *Narses* also, to the great prejudice of Christian Religion, was disgraced by *Justinian*. That rule of *Cato* against *Scipio*, hath been well observed in every age since then; to wit, That the Common-weale cannot be accounted free, which standeth in awe of any one man. And hence have the *Turkes* drawne another Principle, and indeed, a Turkish one, That every warlike Prince should rather destroy his greatest men of war, than suffer his own glory to be obscured by them. For this cause did *Bajazet* the second dispatch *Bassa Acomas*, *Selim*, *Strangle Bassa Mustapha*, and most of those Princes bring to ruine the most of their *Vissiers*. Of the Spanish Nation, the great *Gonsalvo*, who drove the French out of *Naples*: and *Ferdinando Cortese*, who conquered *Mexico*, were crowned with nettles, not with Lawrel. The Earles of *Egmond* and *Horn* had no heads left them to wear garlands on. And that the great Capitaines of all Nations have been paid with this copper Coine, there are examples more than too many. On the contrary, it may be said, That many have acquired the State of Princes, Kings, and Emperours, by their great ability in matter of War. This I confesse. Yet must it be had withall

in consideration, that these high places have been given or offered unto very few, as rewards of their military virtue; though many have usurped them, by the help and favour of those Armies which they commanded. Neither is it unregardable, That the Tyrants which have oppressed the liberty of free Cities: and the Lieutenants of Kings or Emperours, which have traitorously cast down their Masters, and stepped up into their seats, were not all of them good men of war: but have used the advantage of some commotion, or many of them by base and cowardly practices, have obtained those dignities, which undeservedly were ascribed to their perloral worth. So that the number of those that have purchased absolute greatness by the greatness of their warlike virtue, is farre more in seeming than indeed. *Phocas* was a souldier, and by the help of the Souldiers he got the Empire from his Lord *Mauritius*: but he was a coward, and with a barbarous cruelty, seldome found in any other then cowards, he slew first the children of *Mauritius*, a Prince that never had done him wrong, before his face, and after them *Mauritius* himself. This his bloody aspiring was but as a debt, which was paid unto him again by *Heraclius*: who took from him the Imperial Crown, unjustly gotten; and set it on his own head. *Leontius* laid hold upon the Emperour *Jusline*, cut off his nose and eares, and sent him into banishment: but Gods vengeance rewarded him with the same punishment, by the hands of *Tiberius*, to whose charge he had left his own men of war. *Jusline*, having recovered forces, lighted on *Tiberius*, and barbed him after the same fashion, *Philippicus* commanding the forces of *Jusline*, murdered both the Emperour and his son. *Anastasius*, the vassal of this new Tyrant, surprised his Master *Philippicus*, and thrust out both his eyes. But with *Anastasius*, *Theodosius* dealt more gently: for having wrested the Scepter out of his hands, he enforced him to become a Priest. It were an endless and a needles work to tell, how *Leo* rewarded this *Theodosius*, how many others have been repaid with their own cruelty, by men alike ambitious and cruel; or how many hundreds, or rather thousands, hoping of Capitaines to make themselves Kings, have by Gods justice miserably perished in the attempt. The ordinary, and perhaps the best way of thriving by the practice of Armes, is to take what may be gotten by the spoyle of Enemies, and the liberality of those Princes and Cities, in whose service one hath well deserved. But scarce one of a thousand have prospered by this course. For that observation, made by *Salomon*, of unthankfulness in this kinde, hath been found belonging to all Countries and Ages: *A little City, and a few men in it, and a great King came against it, and compassed it about, and builded Forts against it: And there was found a poor and wiseman therein, and he delivered the City by his wisdom: but none remembered this poor man.* Great Monarchs are unwilling to pay great thanks, lest thereby they should acknowledge themselves to have been indebted for great benefits: which the unwise sort of them think to favour of some impotency in themselves. But in this respect they are oftentimes coufused and abused; which proves that weakness to be in them indeed, whereof they so gladly shun the opinion. Contrariwise, free Estates are bountiful in giving thanks, yet so, as those thanks are not of long endurance. But concerning other profit which their Capitaines have made, by enriching themselves with the spoyle of the Enemy, they are very inquisitive to search into it, and to strip the well-deservers out of their gettings: yea most injuriously to rob them of their own, upon a false supposition: that even they whose hands are most clean from such offences, have purloyned somewhat from the common Treasury. Hereof I need not to produce examples: that of the two *Scripto's* being so lately recited.

In my late Sovereignes time, although for the wars, which for her own safety, she was constrained to undertake, her Majesty had no less cause to use the service of Martial men both by Sea and Land, then any of her Predecessors for many years had yet according to the destiny of that profession, I do not remember that any of hers, the Lord Admiral excepted, her eldest, and most prosperous Commander, were either enriched, or otherwise honoured, for any service by them performed. And that her Majesty had many advised, valiant, and faithful men, the prosperity of her affaires did well witness, who in all her dayes never received dishonor, by the cowardise or infidelity of any Commander, by her self chosen and employed.

For as all her old Capitaines by Land died poor men, as *Malbey*, *Randol*, *Dyewry*, *Reade*, *Wilsford*, *Layton*, *Pellam*, *Gilbert*, *Constable*, *Bonchier*, *Barkeley*, *Bingham*, &c others:

so those of a later and more dangerous employment, whereof *Norrice* and *Vere* were the most famous, and who have done as great honor to our Nation (for the means they had) as ever any did; those (I say) with many other brave Colonels, have left behind them (besides the reputation which they purchased with many travels and wounds) no title nor estate to their posterity. As for the *L. Thomas Burrough*, and *Peregrine Berty*, *L. Willoughby of Eresby*, two very worthy and exceeding valiant Commanders, they brought with them into the world their Titles and Estates.

That her Majesty in the advancement of her Men of war did sooner believe other men than her self, a disease unto which many wise Princes, besides her self, have been subject, I say that that such a confidence, although it may seem altogether to excuse her Noble Nature, yet can it not but in some sort accuse her of weakness. And exceeding strange it were, were not the cause manifest enough, that where the prosperous actions are so exceedingly prized, the Actors are so unprosperous and so generally neglected. The cause, I say, which hath wrought one and the same effect in all times, and among all Nations, is this; that those which are nearest the person of Princes (which Martial men seldome are) can with no good grace commend, or at least magnifie a profession far more noble than their own, seeing therein they should only mind their Masters of the wrong they did unto others, in giving less honor and reward to men of far greater deserving, and of far greater use than themselves.

But his Majesty hath already paid the greatest part of that debt. For besides the relieving by Pensions all the poorer sort, he hath honored more Martial men than all the Kings of England have done for this hundred yeeres.

He hath given a Coronet to the Lord *Thomas Howard* for his chargeable and remarkable service, as well in the year 1588. as at *Calix*, the Islands, and in our own Sea; having first commanded as a Captain, twice admiral of a Squadron, and twice Admiral in chief. His Majesty hath changed the Baronies of *Montjoy* and *Burley* into Earldomes; and created *Sidney* Vicount, *Knolles*, *Russel*, *Carew*, *Danvers*, *Arundel* of Warder, *Gerald*, and *Chichester*, Barons, for their governments and services in the *Netherlands*, *France*, *Ireland*, and elsewhere.

*Philip, making provision for war against the Romans, deals hardly with many of his own subjects. His negotiation with the Bassarna. His cruelty. He suspecteth his son Demetrius. Demetrius accused by his brother Perseus, and shortly after slain by his fathers appointment. Philip repenteth him of his sons death, whom he findeth to have been innocent, and intending to revenge it on Perseus, he dieth.*

### §. III.

*Mintius Martius* the Roman Ambassador, who travelled up and down, seeking what work might be found about *Greece*, had received instruction from the Senate, to use the utmost of his diligence in looking into the Estate of *Macedon*. At his return home, that he might not seem to have discovered nothing, he told the Fathers, that *Philip* had done whatsoever they enjoyed him; yet so, as it might appear, that such his obedience would last no longer, than meer necessity should enforce him thereunto. He added further, That all the doings and sayings of that King did wholly tend unto rebellion, about which he was devising. Now it was so indeed, that *Philip* much repented him of his faithful obsequiousness to the Romans, and foresaw their intent, which was, to get his Kingdome into their own hands; with safety of their honour, if they could finde convenient means; or otherwise (as to him seemed apparent) by what means soever. He was in an ill case: as having been already vanquished by them; having lost exceedingly both in strength and reputation; having subjects that abhorred to hear of War with *Rome*; and having neither neighbour nor friend, that, if he were thereto urged, would adventure to take his part: yet he provided as well as he could devise, against the necessity which he daily feared. Such of his own people as dwelt in the maritime Towns, and gave him cause to suspect that they would do but bad service against the Romans, he compelled to forsake their dwellings, and removed them all into *Emathia*. The Cities and Country, whence these were transplanted, he filled with a multitude of *Thracians*, whose faith he thought a great deal more assured against



against those enemies that were terrible to the *Macedonians*. Further, he devised upon alluring the *Bastarna*, a strong and hardy Nation, that dwelt beyond the river of *Danubius*, to abandon their fear, and come to him with all their multitude: who besides other great rewards, would help them to root out the *Dardanius*, and take possession of their Country. These were like to do him notable service against the *Romans*; being not only stout fighting men, but such, as being planted in those quarters by him, would bear respect unto him alone. The least benefit that could be hoped by their arrival, must be the utter extirpation of the *Dardanius*; a People always troublesome to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, whensoever they found advantage. Neither was it judged any hard matter, to persuade those *Bastarna*, by hope of spoyle, and other incitements, 10 into a more desperate Expedition, through *Illyria*, and the Countries upon the *Adriaticke* Sea, into *Italy* it self. It was not known who should withstand them upon the way: rather it was thought, that the *Scordisci*, and peradventure some others, through whose Country they were to pass, would accompany them against the *Romans*, were it only in hope of spoyle. Now to facilitate the remove of these *Bastarna* from their own habitations, into the Land of the *Dardanius*, upon the border of *Macedon*, a long and tedious journey unto them, that carried with them their wives and children: *Philip* with gifts did purchase the good will of some *Thracian* Princes, Lords of the Countries through which they were to pass. And thus he sought means to strengthen himself, with help of the wilde Nations, which neither knew the *Romans*, nor were known unto them; since he was not like to finde assistance from any civil Nation, about the whole compass of the *Mediterranean* Seas. But these devices were long ere they took effect: so as the *Bastarna* came not before such time as he was dead; his death being the overthrow of that purpose. In the mean time he neglected not the trayning of his men to war, and the exercise of them in some small Expeditions against those wilde people that bordered upon him, and stood worst affected toward him.

But these his counsels and proceedings were miserably disturbed by the calamities that fell upon him, both in his Kingdome, and in his own house. The Families and whole Townships, which he had caused much against their wils to forsake their ancient dwellings, and betake themselves to such new habitations, as he in his discretion thought meet for them, were vehemently offended at the change. Yet their anger at first contained it self within words: he having done them no great wrong in that alteration, otherwise than by neglecting their affection to the places wherein they had long lived: which also he did unwillingly, being himself over-ruled by necessity, that seemed apparent. This evil therefore would soon have been determined, had not his cruel and vindictive nature made it worse. He could not pardon words proceeding from just sorrow: but imputed all to traiterous malice; and accordingly sought revenge whereit was needful. In his rage he caused many to die: among whom were some eminent men; and few or none of them deservedly. This increased the hatred of the people, and turned their former exclamations into bitter curses. Which grew the more general, when the King in a barbarous and base fury, mistrusting all alike whom hee had injured, thought himself unlike to be safe, untill he should have massacred all the children of those parents, whom tyrannically he had put to death. In the execution of this his unmanly pleasure, some accidents, more tragical than perhaps he could have desired, gave men cause to think (as they could not in reason think otherwise) that, not without vengeance poured on him from Heaven, he felt the like misery in his own children. It is hard to say what the *Romans* intended, in the extraordinary favour which they shewed unto *Demetrius*, the Kings younger son. It may well be (though it may be also suspected) that they had no purpose to make and nourish dissention between the brethren, but only to cherish the vertue and towardlines of *Demetrius*, like as we find it in their Histories. But their notable favour towards this young Prince, and his mutual respect of them, bred extreame jealousy in the fathers head. If any custome of the *Romans*, the manner of their life, the fashion of their apparel, or the unsightly contriving and building (as then it was) of the Town of *Rome*, were jested at in ordinary discourse and table-talk, *Demetrius* was sure to be presently on fire, defending and praising them, even in such points as rather needed excuse. This, and his daily conversation with their Embassadors as often as they came, gave his father cause.

cause to think, that he was no fit partaker of any counsell held against them. Wherefore he communicated all his devices with his elder son *Perseus*: who fearing to much left his brother should step between him and the succession, converted wholly unto his destruction, that grace which he had with his father. *Perseus* was then thirty years old, of a stirring spirit, though much defective in valour. *Demetrius* was younger by five years, more open and unwary in his actions, yet thought old and crafty enough, to entertain more dangerous practices, than his free speeches discovered. The jealous head of the King having entertained such suspicions that were much increased by the cunning practice of his elder son, a slight occasion made the fire break out, that had long lain smothered. A Muster and ceremonious lustration of the Army, was wont to be made at certain times with great solemnity. The manner of it at the present was thus: They cleft in twain a bunch, and threw the head and forepart, with the entrails, on the right hand, and the hinder part on the left hand of the way which the Army was to passe. This done the armes of all the Kings of *Macedon*, from the very first original, were born before the Army. Then followed the King between his two sons: after him came his own band, and they of his guard; whom all the rest of the *Macedonians* followed. Having performed other ceremonies, the Army was divided into two parts: which under the Kings two sons, charged each other in manner of a true fight, using poles, and the like, in stead of their pikes and accustomed weapons. But in this 20 present skirmish there appeared some extraordinary contention for the victory: whether happening by chance, or whether the two Captains did over-earnestly seek each to get the upper hand, as a betokening of their good successe in a greater triall. Some small hurt there was done, and wounds given, even with those stakes, untill *Perseus* his side at length recoyled. *Perseus* himself was sorry for this, as it had been some bad presage: but his friends were glad, and thought, that hereof might be made good use. They were of the craftier sort: who, perceiving which way the Kings favour bent, and how all the courtes of *Demetrius* led unto his own ruine, addressed their services to the more malicious and crafty head. And now they said, that this victory of *Demetrius* would afford matter of complaint against him; as if the heat of his ambition had carried him 30 beyond the rules of that solemn pastime. Each of the brethren was that day to feast his own companions, and each of them had spies in the others lodging, to observe what was said and done. One of *Perseus* his Intelligencers behaved himself so indifferently, that he was taken & well beaten by three or four of *Demetrius* his men, who turned him out of doors. After some store of wine, *Demetrius* told his companions, that he would go visit his brother, and see what cheer he kept. They agreed to his motion, excepting such of them as had ill handled his brothers man: yet he would leave none of his train behinde, but forced them all to bear him company. They, fearing to be ill rewarded for their late diligence, armed themselves secretly to prevent all danger. Yet was there such good espial kept, that this their coming armed was forthwith made 40 known to *Perseus*: who thereupon tumultuously locked up his doors, as if he stood in fear to be assaulted in his house. *Demetrius* wondered to see himself excluded, and feared very angrily with his brother. But *Perseus* bidding him be gone as an enemy, and one whose murderous purpose was detected, sent him away with an entertainment no better than defiance. The next day the matter was brought before the King. The elder brother accused the younger unto the father of them both. Much there was alledged, & in effect the same that hath been here recited, save that by misconstruction all was made worke. But the main point of the accusation, and which did aggravate all the rest, was, That *Demetrius* had undertaken this murder, and would perhaps also dare to undertake a greater, upon confidence of the *Romans*; by whom he knew that he should be defended and born out. For *Perseus* made shew, as if the *Romans* did hate him; because he bore a due respect unto his father, and was sorry to see him spoiled, and daily robbed of somewhat by them. And for this cause he said it was, that they did animate his brother against him: as also that they sought how to win unto *Demetrius* the love of the *Macedonians*. For proof hereof he cited a letter, sent of late from *Titus Quintus* to the King himself: whereof the contents were, That he had done wisely in sending *Demetrius* to *Rome*; and that he should yet further do well to send him thither again, accompanied with a greater and more honourable train of *Macedonian* Lords. Hence he enforced, That this counsell was given by *Titus*, of purpose to shake the allegiance of those, that should

should wait upon his brother to Rome; and make them, forgetting their duties to their old King, become servants to this young traitor *Demetrius*. Hereto *Demetrius* made answer, by rehearsing all passages of the day and night foregoing, in such manner as he remembered them, and had conceived of them: bitterly reprehending *Perseus*, that converted matters of pastime, and what was done or spoken in wine, to such an accusation, whereby he sought his innocent brothers death. As for the love which the *Romans* did bear him, he said that it grew, if not by his own virtue, at leastwise from their opinion thereof: so as by any impious practice, he were more like to lose it wholly, than to increase it. In this wretched pleading there wanted no such passions, as are incident to fathers, children, and brethren, besides those that are common to all Plaintiffs and Defendants, before ordinary Judges. The King pronounced like a father, though a jealous father, That he would conclude nothing upon the excess or error, whatsoever it were, of one day and night, nor upon one hours audience of the matter, but upon better observation of their lives, manners, and whole carriage of themselves both in word and deed. And herein he may seem to have dealt both justly and compassionately. But from this time forward he gave himself over wholly to *Perseus*: using so little conference with his younger son, that when he had matters of weight in hand, such especially as concerned the *Romans*, he liked neither to have him present, nor near unto him. Above all, he had especial care, to learn out what had passed between *Demetrius* and *T. Quintinus*, or any other of the *Roman* great ones. And to this purpose he sent Embassadors to Rome, *Philoctes* & *Apelles*; men whom he thought no way interested in the quarrels between the brethren, though indeed they altogether depended on the elder, whom they saw the more in grace. These brought home with them a letter, said to be written by *Titus* (whose seal they had counterfeited) unto the King. The contents whereof were, A deprecation for the young Prince, with an intimation, as by way of granting it, That his youthful and ambitious desires had caused him to enter into practices unjustifiable, against his elder brother, which yet should never take effect: for that *Titus* himself would not be author, or abettor of any impious device. This manner of excuse did forcibly persuade the king to think his son a dangerous Traitor. To strengthen him in this opinion, one *Didas*, to whom he gave *Demetrius* in custody, made shew as if he had pitted the estate of the unhappy Prince, and so wrung out of him his secret intentions, which he shortly discovered unto *Philip*. It was the purpose of *Demetrius* to flye secretly to Rome; where he might hope not only to live in safety, from his father and brother, but in greater likelihood, than he could finde at home, of bettering such claim as he had in reversion unto the Crown of Macedonia. Whatsoever his hopes and meanings were, all came to nought through the falshood of *Didas*, who, playing on both hands, offered unto the Prince his help for making the escape, and in the mean while revealed the whole matter to the King. So *Philip* resolved to put his son to death, without further expence of time. It was thought beforesufficient to make him away privily, for fear lest the *Romans* should take the matter to heart, and hold it as a proof sufficient, at least, of the Kings despite against him, if not of his meaning to renew the war. *Didas* therefore was commanded to rid the unhappy Prince out of his life. This accursed Minister of his Kings unadvised sentence, first gave poison to *Demetrius*: which wrought neither so hastily, nor so secretly, as was desired. Hereupon he sent a couple of Ruffians, to finish the tragedy: who villainously accomplished their work, by smothering that Prince, in whose life consisted the greatest hope of Macedonia.

In all the race of *Antigonus* there had not been found a King, that had thus cruelly dealt with any Prince of his own blood. The houses of *Lyfimachus* and *Cassander* fell either with themselves, or even upon their heels; by intestine discord and jealousies, grounded on desire of sovereign rule, or fear of losing it. By the like unnatural hatred, had almost bin cut off the lines of *Ptolemy* and of *Seleucus*: which, though narrowly they escaped the danger, yet were their kingdoms thereby grievously distempered. Contrariwise, it was worthy of extraordinary note, how that upstart family of the Kings of *Pergamus* had raised it self to marvellous greatness, in very short space, from the condition of meeke slavery: whereof a principall cause was, the brotherly love maintained by them, with singular commendation of their piety. Neither was *Philip* ignorant of these examples; but is said to have propounded the last of them to his own children, as a pattern for them to imitate. Certainly he had reason so to do: not

more

more in regard of the benefits which his enemies reaped by their concord, than in remembrance of the tender fosterage, wherewith King *Antigonus* his Tutor had faithfully cherished him in his minority. But he was himself of an unmerciful nature; and therefore unfit to be a good persuader or a kindly afficionado. The murders by him done upon many of his friends, together with the barbarous outrages, which for the satiating of his blood-thirsty appetite, he delightfully had committed upon many innocents, both strangers, and subjects of his own; did now procure vengeance down from Heaven, that rewarded him with a draught of his own poyson. After the death of his son, he too late began to examine the crimes that had been objected; and to weigh them in a more equal balance. Then found he nothing that could give him satisfaction, or by good probability induce him to think that malice had not been contriver of the whole process. His only remaining son *Perseus* could to all dissemble the pleasure which he took in being freed from all danger of competition, as there might easily be perceived in him a notable change, proceeding from some other cause, than the remove of those dangers which he had lately pretended. The *Romans* were now no less to be feared than at other times, when he, as having accomplished the most of his desires, left off his usual trouble of minde, and carelesly of making provision against them. He was more diligently courted, than in former times, by those that well understood the difference between a rising and a setting Sun. As for old *Philip*, he was left in a manner so desolate, some expecting his death, and some scarce enduring the tediousness of such expectation. This bred in the King a deep melancholy; and filled his head with suspicious imaginations; the like whereof he had never been slow to apprehend. He was much vexed; and so much the more, for that he knew neither well to whom, nor perfectly whereof to complain. One honourable man, a Cousin of his, named *Antigonus*, continued so true to *Philip*, that he grew thereby hateful to *Perseus*; and thus becoming subject unto the same jealous impressions which troubled the King, became also partaker of his secrets. This Counsellor, when he found that the anger conceived against *Perseus* would not vent itself, and give ease to the King, until the truth were known whether *Demetrius* were guilty or no of the treason objected, as also that *Philoctes* and *Apelles*, (the Embassadors which had brought from Rome that Epistle of *Flamininus*, that served as the greatest evidence against *Demetrius*) were suspected of forgery in the business: made diligent inquiry after the truth. In this doing, he found one *Xychnus*, a man most likely to have understood what false dealing was used by those Embassadors. Him he apprehended, brought to the Court, and presented unto the King: saying, that this fellow knew all, and must therefore be made to utter what he knew. *Xychnus* for fear of torture, uttered as much as was before suspected: confessing against himself, that he had been employed by the Embassadors in that wicked piece of business. No marvel, if the Fathers passions were extreme, when he understood that by the unnatural practice of one son, he had so wretchedly cast away another, far more virtuous and innocent. He raged exceedingly against himself, and withall against the Authors of the mischief. Upon the first newes of this discovery, *Apelles* fled away, and got into Italy. *Philoctes* was taken: and either forasmuch as he could not deny it when *Xychnus* confronted him, yielded himself guilty; or else was put to torture. *Perseus* was now grown stronger, than that he should need to flye the country: yet not so stout as to adventure himself into his fathers presence. He kept on the borders of the Kingdome towards Thrace, whilst his father wintred at *Demetrius*. *Philip* therefore, not hoping to get into his power, this his ungracious son, took a resolution, to aliene the Kingdome from him, and confer it upon *Antigonus*. But his weak body, and excessive grief of minde, so disabled him in the travell thereto belonging, that ere he could bring his purpose to effect, he was constrained to yeeld to nature. He had reigned about two and forty years: alwayes full of trouble; as vexed by others, and vexing himself with continual wars, of which that with the *Romans* was most unhappy, and few or none of the rest found the conclusion, which a wise Prince would have desired, of bringing forth together both honour and profit. But for all the evil that befell him, he might thank his own perverse condition: since his Uncle, King *Antigonus*, had left unto him an estate, so great, and so well settled, as made it easie for him, to accomplish any moderate desires, if he had not abhorred all good counsell. Wherefore he was justly punished by feeling the difference between the imaginary happinesse of a Tyrant, which he affected, and the

the life of a King, whereof he little cared to perform the duty. His death, even whilst yet it was only drawing near, was fore-signified unto *Perseus*, by *Caligene* the Physician, who also concealed it a while from those that were about the Court. So *Perseus* came thither on the sudden, and took possession of the Kingdom: which in fine he no less improvidently lost, than he had wickedly gotten.

## §. IV.

*How the Bastarna fell upon Dardania. The behaviour of Perseus in the beginning of his reign. Some wars of the Romans: and how they suffered Masanissa cruelly to oppress the Carthaginians. They quarrelled with Perseus. They allow not their Confederates to make war without their leave obtained. The Treason of Callicrates, whereby all Greece became more obnoxious to Rome, than in former times. Further quarrels to Perseus. He seeks friendship of the Achaens, and is withstood by Callicrates. The Romans discover their intent of warring upon him.*

Immediately upon the death of *Philip*, came the *Bastarna* into *Thrace*, where order had been taken, long before, both for the free passage, and for the indemnity of the Country. This compact was friendly observed, as long as no other was known than that *Philip* did live to recompense all that should be done, or sustained, for his service. But when it was heard, that a new King reigned in *Macedon*, and not heard with-  
all, that he took any care what became of the enterprize: then was all dash and confounded. The *Thracians* would no longer afford so good markets unto these strangers, as formerly they had done. On the other side, the *Bastarna* would not be contented with reason, but became their own carvers. Thus each part having lost the rich hopes  
reposed in *Philip*, grew carefull of thriving in the present; with little regard of right or wrong. Within a while they fell to blowes; and the *Bastarna* had the upper hand, so as they chased the *Thracians* out of the plain Countries. But the victors made little use of their good fortune. For whether by reason of some overthrow, received by them in as-  
saulting a place of strength; or whether because of extreme bad weather, which is said to  
have afflicted them as it were miraculously: all of them returned home, save thirty thou-  
sand, which pierced on into *Dardania*. How these thirty thousand sped in their voyage, I do not finde. It seems that by the careless use of some victories, they drew losse up-  
on themselves: and finally took that occasion, to follow their companions back into their own Country.

As for *Perseus*, he thought it not expedient, in the novelty of his reign, to embroile himself in a war so dangerous, as that with the *Romans* was likely to prove. Wherefore he wholly gave his minde to the settling of his Estate, which well done, he might afterwards accommodate himself, as the condition of his affairs should require, either for war or peace. To prevent all danger of rebellion, he quickly took away the life of *Anti-  
gonus*. To win love of his people, he sat personally to hear their causes in judgement, (though herein he was so over-diligent and curious, that one might have perceived this  
his virtue of justice to be no better than fained) as also he gratified them with many deli-  
cious spectacles, magnificently by him set forth. Above all, he had care to avoid all ne-  
cessity of war with *Rome*: and therefore made it his first work, to send Embassadors thi-  
ther, to renew the league; which he obtained, and was by the Senate saluted King, and  
friend unto the State. Neither was he negligent in seeking to purchase good will of the  
*Greeks*, and other his neighbours: but was rather herein so excessively bountifull, that it  
may seem a wonder how in few years, to his utter ruine, he became so griping and tena-  
cious. His fear was indeed the mastering passion, which over-ruled him, and changed him  
into so many shapes, as made it hard to discern which of his other qualities were natu-  
rally his own. For proof of this, there is requisite no more, than the relation of his actions  
past and following.

The *Romans* continued, as they had long, busie in wars against the *Spaniards* and *Ligurians*; people often vanquished, and as often breaking forth into new rebellion. They also conquered *Isria*; subdued the rebelling *Sardinians*; and had some quarrels, though to little effect, with the *Illyrians* and others. Over the *Carthaginians* they bore, as  
ever since the victory, a heavy hand; and suffered *Masanissa* to take from them what he  
listed.

listed. The *Carthaginians*, like obedient Vassals to *Rome*, were afraid, though in defence of their own, to take armes: from which they were bound by an Article of peace, ex-  
cept it were with leave of the *Romans*. *Masanissa* therefore had great advantage over  
them, and was not ignorant how to use it. He could get possession by force, of whatso-  
ever he desired, ere their complaining Embassadors could be at *Rome*: and then were the  
*Romans* not hardly entreated to leave things as they found them.

So had he once dealt before, in taking from them the Country of *Emporia*; and so  
did he use them again and again; with pretence of title, where he had any; otherwise,  
without it. *Gala* the Father of *Masanissa* had wonne some land from the *Carthaginians*,  
which afterward *Syphax* wanne from *Gala*, and within a while, restored to the right own-  
ers, for love of his wife *Sophonisba*, and of *Asdrubal* his father-in law. This did *Ma-  
sanissa* take from them by force: and by the *Romans* (to whose judgement the case was  
referred) was permitted quietly to hold it. The *Carthaginians* had now good experi-  
ence, how beneficial it was for their Estate, to use all manner of submissive obedience  
to *Rome*. They had scarcely digested this injury, when *Masanissa* came upon them a-  
gain, and took from them above seventy Towns and Castles, without any colour  
of right. Hereof by their Embassadors, they made lamentable complaint unto the  
*Roman* Senate. They shewed how grievously they were oppressed by reason of two  
Articles in their League: That they should not make war out of their own Lands;  
nor with any Confederates of the *Romans*. Now although it were so that they might  
lawfully withstand the violence of *Masanissa*, invading their Country; howsoever he  
was pleased to call it his: yet since he was Confederate with the *Romans*, they durst not  
pretume to bear defensive armes against him, but suffered themselves to be eaten up,  
for fear of incurring the *Romans* indignation. Wherefore they intreated, that they  
might have fairer justice; or be suffered to defend their own by strong hand; or at  
least, if right must wholly give place to favor, that the *Romans* yet would be pleased to  
determine, how far forth *Masanissa* should be allowed to proceed in these outrages. If  
none of these petitions could be obtained, then desired they, that the *Romans* would  
let them understand, wherein they had offended since the time that *Scipio* gave them  
peace; and vouchsafe to inflict on them such punishment as they themselves in honour  
should think meet: for that better and more to their comfort it were, to suffer at once  
what should be appointed by such Judges; than continually to live in fear, and norie o-  
therwise draw breath, than at the mercy of this *Numidian* Hangman. And herewithal  
the Embassadors threw themselves prostrate on the ground, weeping: in hope to move  
compassion.

Here may we behold the fruits of their envy to that valiant house of the *Barchines*; of  
their irresolution in prosecuting a war so important, as *Hannibal* made for them in *Italy*,  
and of their half-penny-worthing in matter of expence when they had adventured their  
whole estate in the purchase of a great Empire. Now are they servants, even to the ser-  
vants of those men, whose fathers they have often chased, slain, taken & sold as bondslaves  
in the Streets of *Carthage*, and in all cities of *Affrick* & *Greece*. Now have they enough of  
that *Roman* peace, which *Hanno* so often and so earnestly desired. Only they want peace  
with *Masanissa*, once their mercenary; and now their master, or rather their tormentor; out  
of whose cruel hands, they beseech their masters to take the office of correcting them.  
In such case are they, and adore the *Romans*, whom they see flourishing in such prosperi-  
ty as might have been their owne. But the *Romans* had far better entreated *Varro*, who  
lost the battel at *Canna*; than *Hannibal* that wan it was used by the *Carthaginians*:  
they had freely bestowed, every man of them, all his private riches upon the Common-  
wealth, and employed their labours for the publicke, without craving recompence: as al-  
so they had not thought it much, though being in extremum want, to set out an Army  
into *Spain*, at what time the enemy lay under their own walls. These were no *Cartha-  
ginian* virtues: and therefore the *Carthaginians*, having fought against their betters,  
must patiently endure the miseries belonging to the vanquished. Their pitiful be-  
haviour bred peradventure some commiseration; yet their tears may seem to have  
been mistrusted, as proceeding no less from envy to the *Romans*, than from any  
feeling of their own calamity. They thought themselves able to fight with *Masanissa*:  
which estimation of their forces was able to make them, after a little while, enter into  
comparisons with *Rome*. Wherefore they obtained not such leave as they sought,  
V v v v v of

of defending their own right by arms: but contrariwise, when without leave obtained, they presumed to far, the destruction of *Carthage* was thought an easie punishment of that offence. At the present, they received a gentle answer; though they had otherwise little amends. *Gulussa* the son of *Masanissa* was then in *Rome*; and had not as yet craved audience. He therefore was called before the Senate; where he was demanded the reason of his coming; and had related unto him the complaint made by the *Carthaginians* against his father. He answered, That his Father not being thoroughly aware of any Embassadors thither sent from *Carthage*, had therefore not given him instructions, how to deal in that business. Onely it was known, that the *Carthaginians* had held Council divers nights, in the Temple of *Æsculapins*: whereupon he himself was dispatched away to *Rome*, there to intreat the Senate, that these common enemies of the *Romans*, and of his Father, might not be overmuch trusted; especially against his Father, whom they hated most maliciously, for his constant faith to the people of *Rome*. This answer gave little satisfaction. Wherefore the Senate replied, that for *Masanissa* his sake, they had done, and would do, whatsoever was reasonable; but that it stood not with their justice, to allow of this his violence, in taking from the *Carthaginians* those Lands, which by the covenants of the League, were granted unto them freely to enjoy. With this milde rebuke they dismissed *Gulussa*, bestowing on him friendly presents (as also they did to the *Carthaginians*) and wished him to tell his Father, that he should do well to send Embassadors, more fully instructed in this matter. This happened when the *Macedonian* war was even ready to begin: at which time the *Romans* were not willing too much to offend, either the *Carthaginians* (for fear of urging them unseasonably to rebellion) or *Masanissa*, at whose hands they expected no little help. So were they aided both by the *Carthaginians*, and *Masanissa*: by the *Carthaginians*, partly for fear, partly for hope of better usage in the future; by *Masanissa*, in way of thankfulness; though if it had happened (which was unlikely) that they should be vanquished, he made none other account, than that all *Africa* round about him, and *Carthage* therewithal, should be his own.

In the midst of all these cares, the *Romans* had not been unmindful of *Perseus*. They visited him daily with Embassadors; that is, with honourable spies to observe his behaviour. These he entertained kindly at first, until (which fell out ere long) he perceived whereto their diligence tended. First they quarrelled with him about the troubles in *Dardania*: neither would they take any satisfaction, until the *Bastarnæ* were thence gone; though he protested, that he had not sent for them. Afterward they pried narrowly into his doings; and were no less ill contented with good offices, by him done, to sundry of his neighbours, than with those wrongs, which (they said) that he did unto other some. Where he did harm to any; they called it, making war upon their friends: Where he did good; they called such his bounty, seeking friends to take his part against them. The *Dræpians*, his subjects, (upon what occasion it is uncertain) rebelled, and with exquisite torments slew *Euphranor*, whom he had appointed their Governour. It seems that *Euphranor* had played the Tyrant among them. For they were a people without strength to resist the *Macedonian*: and therefore unlikely to have presumed far, unless either they had been extremely provoked; or else were secretly animated by the *Romans*. Whatsoever it was that bred this courage in them, *Perseus* did soon allay it, and reclaim them by strong hand. But the *Romans* took very angrily this presumption of the King: even as if he had invaded some Country of their *Italian* Confederates, and not corrected his own rebels at home. Faine they would have had him to draw in the same yoke with the *Carthaginians*; whereunto had he humbled once his neck, they could themselves have done the part of *Masanissa*, though *Eumenes*, or some other fit for that purpose, had been wanting. And to this effect, they told him, That the Conditions of the League between them were such as made it unlawful, both to his Father heretofore, and now to him, to take arms without their licence first obtained.

To the same pias they would also faine have reduced the *Greeks*, and generally all their adherents, even such as had entred into league with them upon equal termes: whom usually they rewarded with a frown, whensoever they presumed to right themselves by force of Arms, without seeking first the Oracle at *Rome*. Hereof the *Achaëns* had good experience: whose confidence in their proper strength, made them otherwhiles bold to be their own carvers, and whose hope of extraordinary favour at *Rome* caused them.

them the more willingly to refer their causes to arbitrement. For when they wear about to have chastised the *Messenian* by wars, *T. Quintus* rebuked them, as too arrogant, in taking such a work in hand, without his authority: yet by his authority he ended the matter, wholly to their good liking. Semblably at other times were they reprehended, even with Lordly threats, when they took upon them to carry any business of importance, by their own power, without standing unto the good grace of the *Romans*. Who nevertheless upon submission, were apt enough to do them right. Thus were they tamed by little and little, and taught to forget their absolute liberty, as by which they were not like to thrive; especially in usurping the practice of Arms, which belonged only to the Imperial City. In learning this hard lesson, they were such untoward schoolers, that they needed, and not long after felt, very sharpe correction. Yet was there no small part of blame to be imputed unto their Masters. For the *Roman* Senate, being desirous to humble the *Achaëns*, refused not only to give them such aide as they requested, and as they challenged by the tenour of the League between them; but further, with a careless insolence, rejected this honest and reasonable petition, That the Enemy might not be supplied from *Italy*, with victuals or arms. Herewith not content, the Fathers, as wearied with dealing in the affairs of *Greece*, pronounced openly, That if the *Argives*, *Lacedæmonians*, or *Corinthians* would revolt from the *Achaëns*; they themselves would think it a business no way concerning them.

This was presently after the death of *Philopamen*: at what time it was believed, that the Common wealth of *Achaia* was like to fall into much distress; were it not upheld by countenance of the *Romans*. All this notwithstanding; when *Lycortas* Prætor of the *Achaëns* had utterly subdued the *Messenians* farre sooner than was expected; and when as not only no town rebelled from the *Achaëns*, but many entered into their corporation; then did the *Romans* with an ill-favoured grace, tell the same Embassadors, to whose petition they had made such bad answer (and who as yet were not gone out of the City). That they had straightly forbidden all manner of succour to be carried to *Messene*. Thus thinking, by a fained gravity, to have served their own turnes; they manifested their condition; both to set on the weaker against the stronger and more suspected; and also to assume unto themselves a Sovereign power, in directing all matters of war, which dissemblingly they would have seemed to neglect. In like manner dealt they with all their Confederates: not permitting any of them to make war; whether offensive or defensive; though it were against meer strangers; without interposing the authority of the Senate and people of *Rome*: unless peradventure, sometimes they winked at such violence, as did help towards the accomplishment of their own secret malice. Now these *Roman* Arts, howsoever many (for gainful or timorous respects) would seem to understand them; yet were generally displeasing unto all men endued with free spirits. Only the *Athenians*, once the most turbulent City in *Greece*, having neither subjects of their own that might rebel, nor power whereto with to bring any into subjection; for want of more noble argument wherein to practise their eloquence that was become the whole remainder of their ancient commendations, were much delighted in flattering the most mighty. So they kept themselves in grace with the *Romans*, remained free from all trouble, until the war of *Antisthenes*: being men unfit for action, and thereby innocent; yet bearing a part in many great actions, as Grattulators of the *Roman* victories, and Pardon-cravers for the vanquished. Such were the *Athenians* become. As for those other Common-wealths and Kingdomes that with over-nice diligence, strove to preserve their Liberties and Lands, from consuming by piece-meale: they were to be devoured whole, and swallowed up at once. Especially the *Macedonian*, as the most unpliant, and wherein many of the *Greeks* began to have affiance, was necessarily to be made an example, how much better it were to bow, than to break.

Neither *Perseus* nor the *Romans* were ignorant, how the *Greeks* at this time stood affected. *Perseus*, by reason of his neer neighbourhood, and of the daily commerce between them and his subjects, could not want good information of all that might concern him, in their affaires. He well knew, that all of them now apprehended the danger which *Philopamen* had long since foretold, of the miserable subjection, wherinto *Greece* was likely to be reduced, by the *Roman* Patronage. Indeed they not only perceived the approaching danger, but as being tenderly sensible of their liberty, felt themselves

themselves grieved with the present subjection, whereto already they were become obnoxious. Wherefore though none of them had the courage, in matters of the publike to fall out with the *Romans*, yet all of them had the care to choose among themselves none other Magistrates, than such as affected the good of their Country, and would for no ambition, or other servile respect, be flatterers of the greatness which kept all in fear. Thus it seemed likely, that all domestical conspiracies would soon be at an end; when honesty, and love of the Common-weale, became the fairest way to preferment. Of this careful provision for the safety of *Greece*, the *Romans* were not thoroughly advertised: either because things were diligently concealed from their Embassadors, whom all men knew to be little better then spies; or because little account was made of that intelligence, which was brought in by such Traitors (of whom every Citie in *Greece* had too many) as were men unregarded among their own people, and therefore more like to speak maliciously than truly; or perhaps because the Embassadors themselves, being all Senators, and capable of the greatest Office or charge, had no will to find out other matter of trouble, than was fitting to their own desires of employment. But it is hard to conceal that which many know, from those that are feared or flattered by many. The *Achaens* being to send Embassadors to *Rome*, that should both excuse them, as touching some point wherein they refused to obey the Senate; and inform the Senate better in the same business, chose one *Callistrates*, among others, to go in that Embassy. By their making choice of such a man, one may perceive the advantage, which mischievous wretches, who commonly are forward in pursuing their vile desires, have against the plaine sort of honest men, that least earnestly thrust themselves into the troublesome business of the weale publike. For this *Callistrates* was in such wise transported with ambition, that he chose much rather to betray his Country, than to let any other be of more authority than himself therein. Wherefore in stead of well discharging his credence, and alledging what was meetest in justification of his people, he uttered a quite contrary tale; and strongly encouraged the *Romans*, to oppress both the *Achaens*, and all the rest of *Greece*, with a far more heavy hand. He told the Senate, that it was high time for them to look unto the settling of their authority, among his forward Countreymen; if they meant not wholly to forgo it. For now there was taken up a custome, to stand upon points of confederacie, and laws: as if these were principally to be had in regard; any injunction from *Rome* notwithstanding.

Hence grew it, that the *Achaens*, both now, and at other times, did what best pleased themselves, and answered the *Romans* with excuses: as if it were enough to say, That by some condition of League, or by force of some Law, they were discharged or hindered, from obeying the decrees of the Senate. This would not be so, if hee, and some other of his opinion, might have their wils: who ceased not to affirme, That no Columns, or Monuments erected, nor no solemn oath of the whole Nation, to ratifie the observance of Confederacie or statute, ought to be of force, when the *Romans* willed the contrary. But it was even the fault of the *Romans* themselves, that the multitude refused to give ear unto such persuasions. For howsoever in popular Estates, the found of libertie used to be more plausible, than any discourse tending against it: yet if they which undertook the maintenance of an argument, seeming never so bad, were sure by their so doing, to procure their own good, the number of them would increase apace, and they become the prevalent faction. It was therefore strange how the *Fathers* could so neglect the advancement of those, that sought wholly to enlarge the amplitude of the *Roman* majesty. More wisely, though with seditious and rebellious purpose, did the *Greeks*; who many times, yea and ordinarily, conferred great honours, upon men otherwise of little account or desert, only for having uttered some brave words against the *Romans*. The *Fathers* hearing these and the like reasons, wherewith he exhorted them to handle roughly those that were obstinate, and by cherishing their friends, to make their party strong; resolved to follow this good counsell, in every point; yea to deprecate all those that held with the right, and to set up their own followers, were it by right or by wrong. And to this end, they not only dealt thenceforth more peremptorily with the *Achaens*, than had been their manner in former times; but wrote at the present unto all Cities of *Greece*, requiring them to see that their mandate (which was concerning the restitution of those that were banished out of *Lacedaemon*) should be fulfilled. Particularly in behalf of *Callistrates*, they advised all men to be such,

and

and so affected, as he was, in their several common weales. With this dispatch, *Callistrates* returned home a joyfull man: having brought his Country into the way of ruine, but himself into the way of preferment. Nevertheless he forbore to vaunt himself of his eloquence used in the Senate. Only he so reported his Embassy, that all men became fearful of the danger, wherewith he threatened those that should presume to oppose the *Romans*. By such Arts he obtained to be made Prætor of the *Achaens*: in which Magistracy, as in all his courses following, he omitted nothing, that might serve to manifest his ready obsequiousness unto those whom he had made his Patrons.

Now as the *Romans* by threatening termes wan many flatterers, and lost as many true friends: so *Perseus* on the other side, thinking by liberal gifts, and hopeful promises, to assure unto himself those that ill could brook his enemies; got indeed a multitude of partakers, though little honeste than his enemies had. Thus were all the Cities of *Greece* distracted with factions: some holding with the *Romans*, some with the *Macedonian*, and some few, respecting only the good of the Estates wherein they lived. Hereat the Lords of the Senate were highly offended; and thought it an indignity not sufferable, That a King, no better than their vassal, should dare to become head of a faction against them. This therefore must be reckoned in the number of his trespasses: wherof if not any one alone, yet all of them together, shall afford them just occasion to make war upon him. *Perseus* having finished his business among the *Dolopians*, made a journey to *Apollo* his Temple at *Delphi*. He took his Army along with him: yet went, and returned in such peaceable and friendly wise, that no place was the worie for his journey, but the good affection towards him generally increased thereby. With those that were in his way, he dealt himself; so such as lay further off, he sent Embassadors or letters: praying them, That the memory of all wrongs whatsoever, done by his father, might be buried with his father; since his own meaning was to hold friendship sincerely with all his neighbours. The *Romans* perhaps could have been pleased better, if he had behaved himself after a contrary fashion, and done some acts of hostility in his passage. Yet as if he ought not to have taken such a journey, without their licence; this also was made a valuable matter, and cast into the heap of his faults. He labored greatly to recover the love of the *Achaens*: which his father had so lost, that by a solemn decree, they forbade any *Macedonian* to enter their territories. It was jealousy perhaps; no less than hatred, which caused them, at the first, to make such a decree. For howsoever *Philip* had by many vile acts, especially by the death of the two *Arati*, given them cause to abhor him; yet in the publike administration of their estate, he had, for the more part, been to them so beneficial, that not without much ado, and at length, without any general consent, they resolved to forsake him. Wherefore it was needfull, even for preservation of concord among them, to use all circumspection, that he might not, by his agents, negotiate, and hold intelligence with any, in a country towards him, so doubtfully affected; especially when by hearkening to his messages, they might make themselves suspected by their new friends. But the continuance of this decree, beyond the time of War, and when a ll danger of innovation was past, was uncivil, if not inhumane; as notwithstanding no good fruit. For although they were not, in like sort, forbidden the kingdom of *Macedon*: yet understanding what would be due to them, if they should adventure thither, none of them durst set foot therein. Hence it came to pass, that their bondmen, knowing a safe harbour, out of which their masters could not fetch them, ran daily away in great numbers: exceedingly to the loss of such, as made of their slaves very profitable use. But *Perseus* took hold upon this occasion: as fitly serving to pacifie those, whose enmity saie he would have changed into love. He therefore apprehended all these fugitives, to send them home againe: and wrote unto the *Achaens*, That as for those which will unto them, he had taken paines to restore back their servants, so should they do very well to take order for keeping them, that hereafter they might not run away again. His meaning was readily understood, and his letters kindly accepted by the greater part, being openly rehearsed by the Prætor, before the Council. But *Callistrates* took the matter very angrily; and bade them be advised what they did: for that this was none other, than a plain device, to make them depart from the friendship of the *Romans*. Herewithal he took upon him, somewhat liberally, to make the *Achaens* beforehand acquainted with the War, that was comming up on *Perseus* from *Rome*. Hee told

V v v v v 3

told them how *Philip* had made preparations for the same war; how *Demetrius* had been made away, because of his good affection to the *Romans*; and how *Perseus* had since his being King, done many things, tending to the breach of peace. Briefly, He rehearsed all those matters, which were afterwards alledged by the *Romans*; the invasion of the *Balkan*, upon the *Dardanians*; the Kings journey against the *Dolopians*; his voyage to *Delphi*; and finally, his peaceable behavior, which was (he said) a dangerous temptation of men to his party. Wherefore he advised them to expect the event of things, and not over-hastily to enter into any degree of friendship with the *Macedonians*. Hereto good answer was made by the Pretors brother: That *Calliocrates* was too earnest in so light a matter; and that, being neither one of the Kings Cabinet, nor of the *Roman Senate*, he made himself too well acquainted with all that had passed, or was like to follow. For it was well known, that *Perseus* had renewed his League with the *Romans*; that he was by them saluted King, and friend to the Estate; and that he had lovingly entertained their Embassadors: This being so, why might not the *Acheans*, as well as the *Aetolians*, *Thessalians*, *Epirots*, and all the *Greeks*, hold with him such correspondence, as common humanity required? Nevertheless *Calliocrates* was grown a man so terrible, by his *Roman* acquaintance, that they durst not over-stiffly gainsay him. Therefore the matter was referred unto further deliberation: and answer made the whilst, That since the King had only sent a letter with an Embassador, they knew not how to resolve. Better it was to say thus, than that they were afraid to do as they thought most reasonable and convenient. But when *Perseus* herewith not contented, would needs urge them further, and send Embassadors: then were they faine, without any good pretence, to put on a countenance of anger, and deny to give audience: which was proof sufficient (to one that could understand) of the condition wherein they lived. For harkening to this advice of *Calliocrates*, they were soon after highly commended by a *Roman* Embassador: whereby it became apparent, that the *Romans* intended War upon the *Macedonian*; though hitherto no cause of War was given.

## s. V.

How *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* was busied with *Pharnaces*, the *Rhodians*, and others. His hatred to the *Macedonian*: whom he accredits to the *Roman Senate*. The Senate honors him greatly, and condemns his enemies the *Rhodians* with the causes thereof. The usual flatteries of the *Macedonian* Embassadors. *Perseus* his attempt upon *Eumenes*. The brotherly love between *Eumenes* and *Attalus*. *Perseus* his device to poison some of the *Roman* Senators: whereupon they decree war against him, and send him defiance. Other things concerning the justice of this war.

*Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* had been troubled about these times, by the Kings *Pharnaces* and *Mithridates*, his neighbours. He had taken the right course, in making first his complaint to the *Romans*: by whom he was animated with comfortable words, and promise. That they, by their authority, would end the business to his content. But in conclusion, by the help of the Kings, *Prusias* and *Ariarathes*, he ended the war himself; and brought his Enemies to seek and accept peace, on such conditions as pleased him to give them. After this, being at good leisure, he began to consider how the affairs of *Macedon* stood under *Perseus*. His hatred to *Perseus*, was very great: and therefore he was glad to understand, that the hatred of the *Romans*, to the same his Enemy was as great, and withal notorious. Now, besides his ancient and hereditary quarrel with the *Macedonians*, it vexed him exceedingly, That his own honors (whereof the *Greeks*, prodigal in that kind, had heaped immoderate store on his father and him) began to wane every where *Italy*: whilst *Perseus*, either by his currying favour or by the envy born to the *Romans*, had gotten their best liking and wishes. For despite of this indignity, He stirred up the *Lycians* against the *Rhodians* his old friends: and in helping these rebels was so violent, that he proceeded, in a manner, open War. But final pleasure found he in these poor and indirect courses of revenge.

The *Lycians* could not be saved by his Patronage from severe and cruel chastisement, given to them by the *Rhodians*. This rendered him contemptible: as likewise, his acts of hostility, little different from robberies, made him hateful to those which loved him before. As for his honours in the Cities of *Greece*; they not only continued

falling into neglect; but were abrogated by a decree of the *Acheans*, as too unmeasured, misbecoming them to give, and affected by him beyond the proportion of his deservings. All this (which he needed not to have regarded, had he not been too vainly ambitious) beset him; especially for his being over-servicable to the *Romans*, and for his malice to that noble Kingdom; which if it fell, the liberty of *Greece* was not like to stand. Now for the redress hereof, he thought it vain to strive any longer with bounty, against such an Adversary, as by hopeful promises alone, without any great performance, had over-topped him in the general favour. And therefore he resolved even to overturn the foundations of this popularity, by inducing the *Romans* utterly to take away from the eyes of men this Idol, the *Macedonian* Kingdom, which all so vainly worshipped. Neither would it prove a difficult matter, to persuade those that were already desirous: rather he was like to be highly thanked, for setting forward their wishes; and perhaps to be recompensed with some piece of the kingdom, as he had been rewarded, for the like service, when *Antiochus* was vanquished.

To this end he made a second voyage to *Rome*: where though he had little to say; which they knew not before, yet his words were heard with such attention, as if they had contained some strange novelty, and so pondered by the Fathers, as if the weight of them were to turn the balance, that before was equal. The death of *Demetrius*, the expedition of the *Balkan* into *Dardania*, that of *Perseus* himself against the *Dolopians*, and to *Delphi*, the great estimation of the *Macedonian* in *Greece*, his intermeddling in business of his neighbours, his riches and his great provisions, were all the material points of *Eumenes* his discourse. Only he descended unto particulars, having searched into all (as he professed) like unto a Spie. He said, that *Perseus* had thirty thousand foot, and five thousand horse, of his own, money in a readiness to entertain ten thousand Mercenaries for ten years, armes to furnish a number thrice as great; The *Thracians* his friends at hand, ready, at a call, to bring him Souldiers as many as he should require; and that he prepared victuals for ten years, because he would not be driven, either to live upon spoyle, or to take from his own Subjects. Herewithall he prayed them to consider, that King *Selencus*, the son and successor of *Antiochus* the Great, had given his daughter *Laodice* in marriage to *Perseus*; *Perseus* not wooing, but *Selencus* offering the match; That King *Prusias* of *Bithynia*, by earnest suite, had gotten to wife the sister of *Perseus*; and that these marriages were solemnized with great concurrence of Embassadors from all quarters. Neither spared he to tell them, (though seeming loth to utter it plainly) That even the envy to their Estate was the cause, why many that could not endure to hear of amity with *Philip*, were now grown marvellously well affected to his son. All this, and some facts of *Perseus*, which might either be denied or justified, (as that he had procured the death of some which were friends to the *Romans*, and that he had expelled *Abrypolis* the *Illyrian*, who invaded *Macedon*, out of his kingdom, or Lordship) *Eumenes* failed not to amplify unto the most saying, that he thought it his duty to forewarn them: since it would be to himself a great shame, if *Perseus* got the start of him, and were in *Italy* making war upon the *Romans*, ere *Eumenes* could come thither to tell them of the danger.

It were too great folly, to believe that the *Romans* stood in fear of *Perseus*, lest he should set upon them in *Italy*. Nevertheless, forasmuch as they loved not to make war without faire pretence, not only of wrong done to them or their associates, but of further hurt intended: great thanks were given to *Eumenes*, who had every way furnished them with such goodly colour, to beautifie their intendment. Now though it were so that he told them little else than what they knew before: yet his person, and the manner of his coming, made all seem greater. For if upon any relation made by their own Embassadors, or upon tales devised by their flatterers and spies, they had warred against *Perseus*, ere he had committed any open act of hostility against them; his injustice and oppression would have been most manifest. But when the wrongs to them done were so notorious, and the danger threatening them so terrible, that such a Prince as *Eumenes* came out of his own kingdom, as far as from *Asia*, to bid them look to themselves; who could blame them, if they took the speediest order to obtaine their own right and security? Toward this justification of the war, and magnifying the necessity that enforced them thereto, their more than usual curiosity, in concealing what *Eumenes* had uttered in the Senate, when they could not but understand that his errand



was well known, helped not a little. The Macedonian and Rhodian Embassadors were at Rome, provided of answers to the words, which they knew before-hand that he would speak; and with matter of recrimination. The vanity, either of him, or of some about him, seems to have disclosed all: when the weariness of the *Fathers*, in hiding that which all men knew, made a notable shew of some fearful apprehension; against which, it behoved their wisdom to neglect no possible remedy. Wherefore careless audience was given to the Rhodian Embassadors; who accused *Eumenes*, as one more troublesome to *Asia*, than *Antiochus* had ever been, and a provoker of the *Lycians* to rebellion. The Rhodians had with great pomp conveyed by sea unto *Perseus*, his bride *Ladias*; which friendly office, as the Macedonian bountifully required, so the Romans despatchingly accepted. Hence it grew, that when the *Lycians*, as already vanquished, were settling themselves in their obedience to the people of *Rhodes*, Embassadors came from Rome with strange news, which gave new life to the rebellion. For the Senate pronounced, That it stood not with the manner of the Romans, to alien quite from their own protection any people or Nation by them vanquished: and that the *Lycians* were by them assigned unto those of *Rhodes*, not as meer vassals, but as dependants and associates. For proof hereof, they referred themselves unto the commentaries of the ten Embassadors; whom they had sent to dispose of things in *Asia*, after the victory against King *Antiochus*. Hereat *Eumenes*, *Masaniassa*, the *Ætolians*, and all other Kings or Estates that were beholding to Rome for increasing the number of their subjects, had cause to find themselves agreed, if they well considered the matter: since by force of this or the like decree, those their subjects might easily be made their fellows, whosoever it should please the Senate: though it were so, that all men knew the present meaning of the Senate: which was only to plague the Rhodians for their good will to *Perseus*, by setting them and the *Lycians* together by the ears. The *Fathers* could therefore see no reason to dislike *Eumenes*, upon this complaint made by the Rhodian Embassadors, which indeed more nearly touched themselves. Rather they honoured the King so much the more: for that others (as they would needs take it) conspired against him, because of his love to Rome.

But the Macedonian Embassy they heard not so carelessly as angrily: though peradventure it well contented them to find cause of anger. For whereas at other times all care had been taken, to pacify them with gentle words and excuses: now heard they plainer language, and were told, That King *Perseus* desired much to give them satisfaction, concerning any deed or word of his, that might favour of hostility; but that, if his travel in this kind proved vain, then would he be ready to defend himself by arms, and stand to the chance of war, which often falls out contrary to expectation. These big words may seem to have proceeded from the vehemency of *Harpalus*, that was chief of the Embassadors: rather than from instruction given by the King, with whole faint heart they agreed not. Yet was there good reason, why *Perseus* himself might, at this time, think to speed better by a shew of daring, than he was like to do by any submission. For the eyes of all Greece being now cast upon him, as on the greatest hope of deliverance from the Roman servitude; it was not expedient, that he should lessen, or perhaps utterly cut off, the general expectation, and the good affection born to him, which thereon depended, by discovering his too much weakness of spirit, unanswerable to a work of such importance. Wherefore he, or his Embassador for him, was bold to set a good countenance on a game not very bad, but subject (in appearance) to fortune; which might have been his, had he known how to use it.

Now that this bravery (as better it may be termed than courage) proceeded from the Kings own heart, it appears by his daring to adventure soon after, on a practice that more justly might anger the Romans, and give them fairer shew of reason to make war upon him. It was known that *Eumenes*, in returning home, would take *Delphi* in his way, and there do sacrifice to *Apollo*. *Perseus* deadly hating him, and thirsting after his blood, resolved to way-lay him, and by making there of him a sacrifice, to rid his own hands of a most mischievous enemy. So there were appointed three or four stout Russians to do the murder: who placing themselves behind a broken mud-wall, on the side of a very narrow path leading up from the Sea to the Temple, did thence assault the King; whom they forcibly bruited with great stones, and left for dead. They might have finished their work, such was the opportunity of the place which they had chosen; but fear of being

being apprehended, made them, without staying to see all sure, flee in such haste, that they killed one of their own companions, who could not hold pace with them, because he should not discover them. *Eumenes* was conveyed away to the little Ile of *Ægina*, where he was cured: being all the while kept so secretly, that the fame of his death was current in *Asia*. Hence it came, that his brother *Attalus* took upon him as King, and either took or would have taken to wife (supposing it belike a matter of State) *Stratonice* the daughter of king *Ariarathes*, whom he then thought the widow of *Eumenes*. It may well be numbered among the rare examples of brotherly love, That when the king turned alive home, *Attalus* going forth to meet him and do his duty, as in former times, received none other check than, that he should forbear to marry with the Queen until he were well assured of the Kings death. More than this, *Eumenes* never speak of these matters, but bequeathed at his death, unto the same brother, both his wife and kingdom. As likewise *Attalus* forbore to attempt any thing to the prejudice of the king his brother: though the Romans (youth whom he continued and grew in special favour, when *Eumenes* fell into their hatred) were in good readiness, to have transferred the kingdom from his brother to him. By such concord of brethren was the kingdom of *Pergamas* raised and upheld; as might also that of *Macedon* have been, if *Demetrius* had lived and employed his grace with the Romans, to the benefit of *Perseus*.

It is likely that *Perseus* was very glad, when he understood that his ministers had both accomplished his will, and had saved all from discovery. But as he was deceived in the main point, and heard shortly after, that *Eumenes* lived, so was he beguiled in that other hope, of the concealment; which he vainly esteemed the less material. For he had written to one *Praxe*, a Gentlewoman of *Delphi*, to entertain the men whom he sent about this business: and she, being apprehended by *C. Valerius*, a Roman Embassador, then attending upon the matters of Greece, was carried to Rome. Thus all came to light. *Valerius* also brought with him to Rome, out of Greece one *Rammius*, a Citizen of *Brundisium*; who coming newly from the Court of *Macedon*, laden with a dangerous secret, had presently sought out the Embassador; and thereof discharged himself. *Brundisium* was the ordinary Port for ships passing between Italy and Greece. There had *Rammius* a faire house; wherein he gave entertainment, being a wealthy man, to Embassadors, and other honourable personages, both Romans and Macedonians, journeying to and from. By occasion of such his hospitality, he was commended to *Perseus*; and invited into *Macedon* with friendly letters; as one, whose many courtesies to his Embassadors, the King was studious to requite. At his coming he was much made of, and shortly, with more familiarity than he expected or desired, made partaker of the Kings secrets. The summe of all was, That he must needs do a turn, in giving to such of the Romans as the King should hereafter name, a poyson of rare quality; sure in operation; yet not to be perceived either in the taking or afterward. He durst not refuse to accept this employment: for fear lest the vertue of this medicine should be cryed upon himself. But being once at liberty, he discovered all. *Rammius* was but one man; and one whom the King had never seen before, nor was like to fee again; and, therefore, besides that the Kings denial ought to be as good as such a fellows affirmation, the accusation was improbable. Thus did *Perseus*, in time short following, answer for himself; and in like sort concerning the attempt upon *Eumenes*: denying to have had any hand, either in the one or the other: yet withal professing, That such objections were not to be made unto a King, to prove the rightfulness of making war upon him; but rather unto a subject pleading for his life in judgement. But howsoever the Romans neglected the getting of stronger proof (which might have been easie) than any that we finde by them produced: yet the Senate greatly stand to dispute the matter with him: these his treacheries being held to inexcusable. And as for his Royal Estate, wherein he supposed that they ought not to touch him for such private offences, it gave him no privilege: they judging him to have offended in the nature of a King. Herein surely they wanted not good reason. For if he might not lawfully make war upon *Eumenes* their confederate; that is, if he might not send men to waste the kingdom of *Pergamus*, or to besiege the Townes: might he not send men to murder the King? If it were no less breach of the league to destroy the send Russians to murder the King? If it were no less breach of the league to destroy the Senators by fire or famine, then by violence of the sword, was it lawful for him to do it by poyson? Wherefore they presently decreed war against him; and sent Embassadors

dours to denounce it unto him, unless he would yeeld to make such amends as they should require. He seemed at this time to have been so confident in the general favour of *Greece*, and other comfortable appearances, that if he desired not war, yet he did not fear it: or at least he thought by thew of courage, to make his enemies more calm. He caused the Embassadors to dance attendance, till being weary, they departed without audience. Then called he them back, and bade them do their errand. They made a tedious rehearsal of all matters, which they had long bin collecting against him, and wherewith *Eu-menus* had charged him: adding thereto, that he had entertained long and secret conference in the Ile of *Samos*, with Embassadors sent to him out of *Asia*, about some ill purpose. In regard of all which they peremptorily required satisfaction; as was their manner when they intended to give defiance. Better they might have stood upon the evidence, brought against him by *Rammin* and *Praxo*. For if those accusations could be verified, then wanted they not good ground whereon to build: of which otherwise they were destitute; it being no fault in a King, to be strong, wel-beloved, and wel-friended. *Perseus* answered, for the present, in a rage, calling the *Romans*, greedy, proud, insolent, and underminers of him by their daily Embassadors, that were no better than meer spies. Finally, he promised to give them in writing their full answer: which was to this effect, That he would no longer stand to the league made between them and his father, and renewed by himself indeed only for fear, but wished them to descend to more equal conditions; whereupon he, for his part, would advise, as they might also do for theirs.

Polyb. Leg. 9.

Liv. lib. 33.

In the form of the league between *Philip* and the *Romans*, as is set down by *Polybius*, we find no condition, binding the *Macedonian* to any inconvenience in the future, excepting those which he immediately performed. But *Livius* inserts a clause, whereby he was expressly forbidden to make any war abroad, without leave of the *Romans*. It is most likely, that all the *Roman* confederates were included in this peace: whereby every one of the neighbours round about *Macedon*, entring shortly into league with *Rome*, did so bind the Kings hands, that he could no more make war abroad, then if he had been restrained by plain covenant. And thus might that seem an article of the peace, which never was agreed upon, but only was inferred by consequence. Now if the *Romans* would urge this point further, and say, that the *Macedonian* might not bear defensive arms, without their permission; then had *Perseus* very just reason to find himself aggrieved. For since they had allowed his father, without controule, to make war in *Thrace*, (whilest they themselves were unacquainted with the *Thracians*) and elsewhere abroad, though he asked not their licence: why should they now interpret the bargain after another fashion? Was it now become lawful for him to chastise his own Rebels, or to repay an *Illyrian* that invaded *Macedon*? By such allegations he maintained the right of his cause, in very milde sort; when it was too late. At the present, by disclaiming the league as unjust, he ministred occasion unto the Embassadors, to give him defiance. Having heard the worst of their message, he commanded them to be gone out of his Kingdom in three dayes. But either he should have been less vehement, or more constant in his resolution. For if his heart could serve him to undertake the war, he should courageously have managed it, and have slipt to work immediately, whilest the *Enemy* was unprepared, not have lost opportunity, as now and often he did, in hope of obtaining a worse peace than the former.

## §. VI.

59

## §. VI.

The *Romans* solicit the *Greeks*, to joyn with them in the war against *Perseus*. How the *Greeks* stood affected in that war. The timorousness of *Perseus*. *Martius* a *Roman* Ambassador deludes him with hope of peace. His forces. He takes the field, and wins part of *Thessaly*. The forces of *Licinius* the *Roman* Consul: and what assistants the *Romans* had in this war. Of *Tempe* in *Thessaly*, and what advantages the *Macedonian* had, or might have had, but lost by his fear. *Perseus* braves the *Romans*: fights with them, knows not how to use his victories, sues for peace, and is denied it by the vanquished. *Perseus* having the worse in a skirmish, forsakes all the Countrey lying without *Tempe*. The *Bæotians* rebel against the *Romans*, and are rigorously punished. The *Roman* Commanders unfortunate in the war against *Perseus*. The vex the *Greeks* their friends; for whose ease the *Senate* makes provision, having heard their complaints. The flattering *Alabanders*.

SO long had the *Romans* been seeking occasion to take in hand this *Macedonian* war, that well they might have been ready for it, when it came; and not (as they were) behinde hand in provisions. But it was on a sudden that they met with a confluence of good pretences to make the war: whereof, if no one alone had weight enough, yet all of them together seemed more than sufficient. This opportunity of making their cause honest in common opinion, was not to be neglected: though otherwise they were unprepared for the action. Wherefore knowing, or having reason to believe, that their own strength was such as would prevail in the end; they hastily embraced the faire occasion of beginning, and referred other cares to the diligence of Time. Neither was this their unreadiness a smal help, towards examining the disposition of the *Greeks* and others; who must afterwards dearly pay for any backwardness found in their good will. There was not indeed any cause to fear, that all of the *Greeks* or other Eastern people should conspire together, and take part with the *Macedonian*: such was the dissention between their several Estates; howsoever the generality of them were inclined the same way. Nevertheless Embassadors were sent to deal with them all; and to crave their help against *Perseus*, or rather to demand it, in no less ample manner, than heretofore they had yeilded it against *Philip* and *Antiochus*, in wars pretending the liberty of *Greece*. The Embassadors used as gentle words for fashions sake, as if they had stood in doubt that their request might happen to be denied. But the *Greeks* were now grown well acquainted with such *Roman* courtessie: and understood that not only such as made refusal, but even they who might seem to have granted half unwillingly, were like to hear other manner of words, when once this business was ended. Wherefore none of them were scrupulous in promising the best of their help to the *Romans*: the *Achaans* and *Rhodians*, which were chief among them, being rather doubtful, even when they had done their best, lest it should be ill taken, as if they had halted in some part of their duty. It is strange, that men could be so earnest to set up the side, whereof they gladly would have seen the ruine. The vulgar fort was every where addicted to *Perseus*; of the Nobles and Rulers, if some were vehemently *Roman*, they wanted not opposers, that were wholly *Macedonian*; yea, the wisest and most honest, who regarded only the benefit of their Countrey, wished better to *Perseus* than to the *Romans*. And of this number *Polybius* the chief of Historians was one: who though He judged the victory of *Perseus*, like to prove hurtful unto *Greece*, yet wished he the *Romans* ill to thrive, that so the *Greeks* might recover perfect liberty: for his endeavours in which course, he was at length tyrannically handled, as shall be shewed hereafter. This considered, it appears, that an extraordinary fear, and not only reverence of the Imperial City, made the *Achaans*, and other Estates of *Greece*, thus conformable to the *Romans*. The occasion of this their fear, may be justly imputed unto the timorous demeanor of *Perseus* himself. He had undertaken a war, whereof the benefit should redound, not only to his own Kingdome, but unto all that were oppressed by the *Romans*. Yet no sooner were some few companies brought over-sea, to make a countenance of meaning somewhat against him, than he began to speak the enemy faire, and sue for Peace at *Rome*. Since therefore it was known, that every final thing would serve to terrifie him: and consequently, that it should at all times be in the *Romans* power, by

Polyb. Leg. 75.

75. c. 80.

Polyb. Leg. 77.

by giving him any tolerable conditions of peace, to take revenge at leisure upon those which had afflicted him: little cause was there why any should adventure to partake with him. He made indeed a great noise; leading about his army; taking by force or composition some few Towns, and soliciting all to joyn with him. But wife men could not be so beguiled. For at the same time, he sought all means of pacification: and to that end, made humble suit unto the *Roman* Embassadors. *Q. Martins*, the chief of those Embassadors, and a man of more fineness than was usual among the *Romans*, made shew of inclination to the Kings desire; and gave out such comfortable words, that the King entreated, and obtained a meeting at the River *Peneus*. There did *Martius* very gently rebuke the King, and charge him with those crimes that are before mentioned. Whereto though *Perseus* made none other answer, than the same which they could have made for him, yet the Embassadors, and especially *Martius*, took it in good part, as therewith satisfied: and advised him to give the like satisfaction to the Senate. That this might conveniently be done, a truce was agreed upon. Thus had *Martius* his desire: which was, to make the King lose time. For *Perseus* had all things then in readines, and might have done much, ere the *Roman* Army could have been in *Greece*. But by the interposition of this truce, he no way increased his forces; hee suffered a most convenient season, of winning upon the enemy, to slip away; and obtained in recompence nothing else, than leisure and vaine hope. Yet was he pleased herewith, as it had bin with some victory: publishing a copy of the disputation between him 20 and the *Romans*, whereby he gave men to understand, how much he had the better, and what great hope there was of peace. He sent Embassadors also to the *Rhodians*, of whose good will to him he was best perswaded; not only to let them know how much he was superiour in cause; but to intreat them, that they would take upon them, as Moderators, to compound the differences between him and the *Romans*, if perhaps, notwithstanding the goodness of his cause, he should be denied peace. These were poor helpers. For hereby it appeared, that his late standing upon point of Honour, was no better than meervanity, his own safety being the utmost of his ambition. This his fearfulness might seem excusable, and the blame thereof to appertaine unto the *Greeks*; who deceived his expectation, by being wanting to him in time of a necessity, that was partly 30 their own: had it not been his office, who took upon him as their Champion, to give such a manly beginning to the war, as might encourage all others to follow him. But his timorous quality being found, men grew daily more and more averse from him; and were careful, not to put their shoulders to a falling wall. The *Rhodians*, among whom he had many stout partizans, desired him not to crave any thing at their hands, in which they might seem to do against the good liking of the *Romans*. The *Boeotians* also, who had entered of late into a strict society with the *Macedonians*; renounced it now, and made the like with the *Romans*: to whom further, in a sort, they yielded themselves as vassals. Neither was *Martius* contented to accept their submission under a general form; but caused their severall Towns to make covenant apart, each for it self; to the end, that be- 40 ing thus distracted into many little Common-wealths, they might not (were they never so desirous to rebel) have such force to do hurt, as when they agreed, and were incorporated in one, under the Citie of *Thebes*. This work, of separating the *Boeotians* from *Thebes* their head, was more than *Agesilaus* could effect, or *Epaminondas* would suffer, then when all *Greece* followed the *Lacedaemonians*. So far more available to *Thebes*, being destitute of help from abroad, was the virtue of *Epaminondas* and a few brave Citizens, than was the society with King *Perseus*, against a number not so great as followed the *Lacedaemonians*.

*Martius* brought this to effect, whilst the King sat still, as being bound by the truce: and having done this, he turned to the City; where vaunting what he had wrought by his craft, he was commended, and (though some reproved it as dishonest) employed againe by the Senate, with commission to deale as he should think expedient. Touching the Embassadors which *Perseus* had sent, audience was given to them, for that they should not plainly see how their master was deluded: but neither excuse, nor intreaty, would serve their turn: the Senate being resolyd before hand what to do. It was enough that they were admitted into the City, and had thirty daies respite allowed them to depart out of *Italy*: whereas they, who came last on the same errand, did their message without the wals, in the Temple of *Bellona* (the usual place of giving audience to open

open enemies, or to such Commanders, as might not, by reason of some custome enter the City) and had only the short warning of eleven daies, to be gone out of *Italy*. Neither did this poor courtiese serve alone to hide the craft of *Martius*, as if he had meant none other than good earnest: but it was a like y mean, both to keep a long while from *Perseus* the knowledge of his businesse, and to stagger his resolution, when he should need it most firm.

And accordingly it fell out. For *Licinius* the *Roman* Consul was at *Apollonia*, in a manner as soon, as the *Macedonian* Embassadors were with their King at *Pella*. Which, though it were enough to have roused *Perseus*, and have made him lay aside all coward- 10 ly hope of getting pardon, yet was he content to deliberate a while. Whether it were not better to offer himself tributary to the *Romans*, and to redeem their good will with some part of his Kingdome, that so he might enjoy the rest; than to put all at once to hazard. But finally, the stoutest counsell prevailed; which also was the wisest, and so would have proved, had it been stoutly and wisely followed. He now began, as if the war had not begun untill now, to do what should have been done long afore. He caused all his forces to be drawn together; and appointed their Rendezvous at *Citium*, a Town in *Macedon*. All being in readinesse, he did royall sacrifice, with an hundred beasts, to I know not what *Minerva*, that was peculiarly honoured in his Country: and then with all his Courtiers, and those of his guard, he forward to *Citium*. His army 20 he found consisting of nine and thirty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, whereof about twelve thousand foot, and a thousand horse were strangers, of sundry nations, most part *Thracians*; the rest of his own *Macedonians*. These he animated with lively speeches, laying before them the glory of their ancestors, the insolency of the *Romans*, the goodness of his cause, the greatness of his provisions, and the many advantages which they had of the Enemy, especially in numbers. They answered him cheerfully, with loud acclamations, and bade him be of good courage. From all cities of *Macedon* there came likewise messengers, offering to help him with money and victuals, according to their severall abilities. He gave them thanks: but answered, That his own provisions would abundantly suffice, willing them only to furnish him with carts, for his 30 engines and munition.

Out of his own Kingdome he issued forth into *Thessaly*: knowing that the *Romans* were to pass through that Countrey, in their journey towards him. Some Towns of *Thessaly* opened their gates unto him, without making offer to defend themselves; some he barked, thinking them too strong or well manned; and some he won by force. Of these last was *Nyle*, a Town thought impregnable, and therefore, not more stoutly than proudly defended by the inhabitants, who gave contumelious language to the assailants. It was taken by reason of a fall; which the Townsmen rashly made, and being driven back, received the *Macedonians*, that entred pell mell with them at the gate. All cruelty of war was practised here: to the greater terror of the obstinate. So *Scutaria* and *Con-* 40 *nus* (townes of much importance, especially *Connus*, which stood in the Straights of *Osia*, leading into *Tempe*) yielded at the first. Having well fortified this passage, the King marched onwards to *Sicorium*, a towne seated on the foot of mount *Osia*, where he rested a while, expecting news of the Enemy.

*Licinius* the Consul brought with him only two *Roman* Legions: being promised other strength of auxiliaries, which was thought sufficient. *Eumenes* and *Attalus* his brother came to him in *Thessaly*, with four thousand foot, and a thousand horse. Thither also came, from every part of *Greece*, such aid as the severall Estates could afford, or thought expedient to send: which from the most of them was very little. Of the Kings abroad; *Misanissus* sent thither his son *Misagenes*, with a thousand foot, as many horse, and two and twenty Elephants. *Antiochus* the *Cappadocian*, by reason of 50 his affinity with *Eumenes*, was friend to the *Romans*, and had lent to *Rome* his young son, there to be brought up: yet he did little or nothing in this war; perhaps because *Eumenes* himself began within a while, but when it was too late, to be otherwise advised than he had been in the beginning. *Prusias* was content to be a looker on: as being allied to *Perseus*, and yet fearing the *Romans*. *Antiochus* and *Ptolemy* (though *Ptolemy* was then young, and under Tutors) had businesse of their own; the *Syrian* meaning to invade the *Egyptian*: yet each of them promised help to the *Romans*, which they cared not to perform. *Gentius* the *Illyrian* was inclinable to the *Macedonian*, yet

yet made good countenance to the *Romans*, for fear. It was a pretty trick, wherewith *M. Lucretius*, the *Roman* Admirals brother, served him, for this his counterfeit good-will. This King had four and fifty ships, riding in the haven of *Dyrrachium*, uncertain to what purpose: all which *Lucretius* took away, after a very kinde sort, making shew to believe, That for none other end than to serve the *Romans*, their good friend *Genius* had sent thither this fleet. But whatsoever *Genius* thought in the beginning, s he foolishly lost both his Kingdome and himself, in the end of this war; by offering, rather than giving, his help to *Perseus*.

With none other company than what he brought over the sea, *Licinius* came into *Thessaly*: to sojourn with a painfull journey, through the mountainous country of *A-* 10  
*thamania*, which stood in his way from *Epirus*; that if *Perseus* had been ready, attending his descent into the Plains, the *Romans* must needs have taken a great overthrow. He refreshed himself and his wearied army, by the River *Peneus*; where he encamped, attending his auxiliaries, that came in as fast as they could. It was not any slender help, that could enable him to deal with *Perseus*. Therefore he resolved, to abide where he then was, and keep his trenches, untill his numbers were sufficiently increased: contenting himself in the mean while, to have gotten quiet entrance into the Country. The land of *Thessaly*, in which these two armies lay, was better affected to the *Romans*, than any part of *Greece* besides: as having been freed by them from a more heavy yoke of bondage to the *Macedonian*, when there was little hope or expectation of such a benefit. It was generally rich, fruitfull, and abounding in all things needfull to mans life. In the midst of it, but somewhat more to the East, was that beautiful valley of *Tempe*, so exceedingly full of all delights, that the name was often used at large, to signifie the most pleasant and goodly places. This valley of it self was not great; but adding to it those huge mountains *Ossa* and *Olympus* (famous in Poësie) with their Spurs or Branches, by which it was on all sides enclosed; it occupied the better part of *Thessaly*. And this way were the *Romans* to enter into *Macedon*; unless they would make an hungry journey, through the country of the *Thesprotians*, as in the former war with *Philip*, they had long, in vain, attempted to do. *Perseus* therefore had no small advantage, by being master of the straights leading into *Tempe*: though far greater he might have had, if by 30  
mis-spending of time he had not lost it. For in defending the ragged passages of these mountains, he were able to put the *Romans* often to the worse; yea to win upon them (for a while) every year more than other, both in strength and reputation: unquestionless he might have done far greater things, had he seized upon the straights of *Aonia*, which his father once kept, and defended all the Country behinde the mountains of *Pindus*. Surely not without extreme difficulty, must the *Romans* have either travelled by land, with all their carriages and impediments, through places wherein was no relief to be found; or else have committed their Armies, and all things thereto needfull, unto the mercy of Seas that were very dangerous, if they would have sought other way into *Macedon*, than through the heart of *Greece*: upon neither of which courses 40  
they once deviled, notwithstanding any trouble which they found in this present war. It may perhaps be said, that the *Greeks*, and others whom the King must have left on his back, would have made him unable to defend any places too far from his own home. But they were all, excepting the *Thessalians*, better affected now to him, than they had been to his father in the former war. The *Asolians*, upon whom the *Asiaticum* depended, grew into suspicion with the *Romans* (as we shall finde anon) even as soon as they met with *Perseus*. The *Boeotians*, how politically soever *Marius* had wrought with them, adventured themselves desperately in the *Macedonian* quarrell: what would they have done, if he at first had done his best? The *Rhodian*, *Illyrian*, yea and *Eumenes* himself, after a while began to waver, when they saw 50  
things go better with *Perseus*, than they had expected. So that if in stead of discouraging his friends, by suing basely for peace, he had raised their hopes, by any brave performance in the beginnings, and increased the number of his well-willers, yea and bought down with money (as he might have done) some of his enemies, and among them, *Eumenes*, who offered for good recompence, to forget his broken head: then might the *Romans* perhaps have bin compelled to forsake their imperious patronage over *Greece*, and to render the liberty, by them given, entire, which; otherwise was but imaginary. Such benefit of this war, since it was hoped for afterwards, might with greater reason have bin expected.

expected at first, from greater advantages. But as a fearfull company running from their enemies, till some river stay their flight; are there compelled by meer desperation to do such acts, as done, while the battell lasted, would have won the victory: so fell it out with *Perseus*. In seeking to avoid the danger of that war, whereof he should have sought the honour, he left his friends that would have stood by him, and gave them cause to provide for their own safety: yet being over-taken by necessity, he chose rather to set his back to the mountains of *Tempe*, and defend himself with his proper forces; than to be driven into such misery, as was inevitable, if he gave a little further ground. What was performed by him or the *Romans*, all the while that he kept his footing in *Thessaly*, 10  
it is hard to shew particularly, for that the history of those things is much perilled. Wherefore we must be contented with the sum.

The Consul having no desire to fight, untill such time as all his forces were arrived; kept within his trenches, & lay still encamped by the River of *Peneus*, about three miles from *Larissa*. That which persuaded the Consul to protract the time, did contrariwise incite the King, to put the matter unto a hasty triall. Wherefore he invited the *Romans* into the field; by waisting the land of the *Therians* their confederates. Finding them patient of this indignity; he grew bold to adventure even unto their trenches: out of which if they issued, it was likely, that his advantage in horse would make the victory his own. At his comming they were troubled; for that it was sudden: yet no way terrified; as knowing themselves to be safely lodged. They sent out a few of King *Eumenes* 30  
his horse, and with them some light armed foot, to entertain skirmish. The Captain, and some other of these were slain: but no matter of importance done; for that neither *Licinius*, nor *Eumenes*, found it reasonable to hazzard battell. Thus day after day, a while toge-her, *Perseus* continued offering battall: which they still refused. Hereby his boldness much increased; and much more his reputation: to the grief of those who being so far come to make a Conquest, could ill digest the shame, that fell upon them by their enduring these bravadoes. The Town of *Sycerium*, where *Perseus* then lay, was twelve miles from the *Romans*: neither was there any convenient watering in that long march, which used to take up four hours of the morning; but he 40  
was faine to bring water along with him in carts, that his men might not be both weary and thirsty when they came to fight. For remedy of these inconveniences, he found out a lodging, seven miles nearer to the enemy: whom he visited the next day by the Sun rising. His comming at such an unusual hour, filled the Camp with tumult: in so much as though he brought with him only his horse and light armature, that were unfit to assail the trenches, yet the Consul thought it necessary, and resolved to give check to his pride. Wherefore he sent forth his brother *C. Licinius*, King *Eumenes*, *Attalus*, and many brave Captains, with all his power of horse, his Velites, and all the rest of his light armature, to try their fortune: he himself remaining in the Camp, with his Legions in readinesse. The honour of this morning, was the *Macedo-* 50  
*nian* Kings, for he obtained the victory in a manner entire (though the *Thessalians* made a good retreat) with little losse of his own. But he discovered his weaknesse ere night, by hearkening, as Princes commonly do, to counsel given by one of his own temper. For whereas the *Romans* were in great fear lest he should assault their camp; and to that purpose, upon the first newes of his successe, his Phalanx was brought unto him by the Captains, though unfit for: he nevertheless took it for sound advice, which indeed was timorous and base, To work warily, and moderate his victory; by which means it was said, that either he should get honest conditions of peace, or at leastwise many companions of his fortune. Certainly it was like, that his good fortune would exalt the hope and courage of his friends. Yet had it been greater, and had he won the 50  
*Roman* Camp, his friends would have been the more, and the bolder. But over-great was his folly, in hoping then for peace: and in suing for it, even when he had the victory; what else did he, than proclaim unto all which would become his partakers, that neither good nor bad fortune should keep him from yielding to the *Romans*, whensoever they would be pleased to accept him: At this time the joy of his victory would admit none of these considerations. He had slain of the *Roman* horse two hundred, and taken of them prisoners the like number. Of their foot he had slain about two thousand: losing of his own no more than twenty horse and forty foot. The *Roman* Camp, after this disaster, was full of heavinesse and fear: it being much doubted that

the enemy would set upon it. *Enneius* gave counsell to dislodge by night, and remove to a surer place beyond the River *Peneus*. The Consul, though alhamed to professe by fodoing, in what fear he stood; yet thought it better to acknowledge the losse past, than by standing on proud termes, to draw upon himself a greater calamity. So he passed the River in the dead of the night, and encamped more strongly on the further side. The *Ætoliens* were sorely blamed for this losse: as if rather a traitorous meaning, than any true fear, had occasioned their flight, wherein the rest of the *Greeks* followed them. Five of them that were men of especiall mark, had been observed to be the first which turned their backs: an observation likely to cost them dear, at a time of better leisure. As for the *Thessalians*, their vertue was honoured with reward: so as the *Greeks* 10 might learn, by examples of either kinde, that if they would shun indignation, or in-eur favour, then must they adventure no lesse for their Lords the *Romans*, than gladly they would do for their own liberty. Thus fared it with the Consul and his Army. *Perseus* came the next day to correct the former dayes error; which how great it was, he not untill then found. The *Romans* were gotten into a place of safety; whither they could never have attained, if the King had either pressed his victory, or given better heed to them that night: his light armature alone being sufficient to have routed them whilest they were conveying themselves to the other side of *Peneus*. But it was vain to tell what might have been done, since there was no remedy. The *Romans* were beaten, even the flower of their City, The Gentlemen of *Rome*, out 20 of whom were chosen their Senators, and consequently the Generals themselves, Praetors, Consuls, and all that bore office or command among them; yea, they were beaten so shamefully, that they stole away by night, and suffered him to gather up the spoils of them without resistance, as yielding themselves overcome. With such brave words did the King set out the glory of his action; dividing the spoils among his followers. But there was much wanting within him, to have made his honour found. He came nearer to the *Romans*, and encamped at *Mopselus*, a place in the mid way between *Tempe* and *Larissa*: as if it were his meaning to presse them somewhat harder. Nevertheless he was easily perswaded to use the occasion, which he seemed to have, of obtaining peace. Therefore he sent unto the Consul, and offered to yield unto the same 30 Conditions, wherein his Father had been bound to the *Romans*; if the war might so take end. It were needlesse here again to shew the folly of this his course. Towards the accomplishment of this desired peace, there was in the Consul no greater power than to grant a truce, whilest Embassadors might go to *Rome*: it resting in the Senate and People to approve the conditions and ratifie the league. And of such a truce granted by *Martius*, he had lately found no small discommodity redounding. But *Licinius* dealt plainly, and returned answer, That other hope of peace there was none; save that *Perseus* would yeld both his Kingdome and person, simply and absolutely, to discretion of the Senate. A mainly part it was of *Licinius* to be so resolute in adversity. On the other side, it argued a very faint heart in *Perseus*, that having received an answer so peremp-tory 40 he still persisted, making vain offers of greater tribute. Finding that the peace which he so much desired, could not be purchased with money, the King withdrew himself back to *Sycorium*. There he lay hearkening what the Enemy did; whose forces were well repaired by the coming of *Misagenes* the son of *Masaniassa*, with the aide before mentioned. This distance between the King and them, caused the *Romans* to wax the more bold in making their harvest: about which businesse they ranged over all the fields. Their carelesse demeanour gave him hope to do some notable exploit: which he attempted, both upon their Camp, and upon those that were abroad. The Camp he thought to have sised on the sudden: but the alarm being taken in good season, he failed in the enterprize. As for the forrageis; he had a good hand upon them, if he could have with-drawn it, and given over in time. But whilest he strove to force a guard, he was visited 50 by the Consul, by whom either in a skirmish of horse, or (for the report is divers) in a great battell, he was overcome. This misadventure, whether great or small, caused *Perseus*, after a few dayes, to fall back into *Macedon*; as being naturally given to fear dan-ger, even where none was; whereby what losse he felt, will appear hereafter. He left all behinde him, save only *Tempe*, weakly guarded: and consequently an easie prey to the *Romans*.

After the Kings departure, *Licinius* went straight unto *Comus*, hoping to have taken

it,

it, and so to have gotten entrance into *Tempe*. But finding the work too hard, he returned back unto the *Perrabians* and others; from whom he won some towns, and among the rest, *Larissa*. There were sundry towns thereabout, bearing the same name of *Larissa*: so that which the Consul took, may seem not to have belonged unto the *Thessalians*; unless, perhaps, after his victory, *Perseus* did greater acts than we find re-corded, and got some part of *Thessaly*.

Of matters happening in *Greece* at this time, it is hard to give a precise account; for that the histories of them are greatly defective. One may think it strange, that the *Bœotians*, whom a *Roman* Embassador could terrifie, and bring altogether to his own will, 10 should not be afraid of a *Roman* Army, then on foot in *Greece*, and a Navie on their coast. But more strange it is, that the *Thebans*, from whom their dependants were taken by the Art of *Martius*, were more true to *Rome*, than other petty towns, which by that same distraction of the *Bœotians*, became within themselves more absolute, than formerly they had been. The causes hereof were to have been fought among the changes happening in their variable factions: whereof the knowledge is now lost. Some of them rebelled, and were thoroughly punished by *Læretius* the *Roman* Admi-rall: who got so much by spoyling them, that he would have brought others to rebell in like sort, if by extreme oppression he could have driven them so far. Neither was *Licinius* the Consul undiligent in the same kinde. What his doings were, after such 20 time as he was at leisure from *Perseus*, I finde no where mentioned. Only this is said in general; That in the war which he made, he cruelly and covetously demeaned himself.

After the same fashion dealt they, that commanded in the year following; *Hofilius* the Consul, and *Horrensus* the Admirall, or Prætor of the Fleet. *Hofilius* shewed more of his industry, in picking quarrels with the Confederates of *Rome*, than in pro-secuting the war against the *Macedonian*. For concerning the *Roman* war upon his King-dome, after that the Consul had sought passage in vain over certain mountains, *Per-seus* seemed, in a manner, free from it. He was troubled indeed on that side which look- 30 ed towards *Illyria*, by *Ap. Claudius*, whom the Consul sent thither with an Army of four thousand, and who, by levies made upon the Confederates, doubled this his Ar-mey. But *Claudius* thinking to have taken *Viskana*, a border town of *Illyria*, by treason, came thither in such carelesse order, that the inhabitants which had made shew of trea-son, with purpose only to train him into danger; sallied forth upon him, overthrew him, and chased him so far; that hardly he escaped with the fourth part of his compa-ny. Yet this town of *Viskana*, shortly after became *Roman*: which howsoever it hap-pened, *Perseus* very soon recovered it, and many other places therewithall: *Colys* a *Thracian* King, securing him on the one side of *Macedon*; and *Cephalus* an *Epirot*, revol-ved from the *Romans*, on the other, *Perseus* likewise made a painfull journey into *Æto- 40 lia*; where he was promised to be admitted into *Siramis*, that was the strongest City in that Region. Of this hope though he were disappointed by those of the *Romans* fac-tion, yet in his return home, he took in *Aperantia*; and shortly heard good newses, that *Ap. Claudius* was again thoroughly beaten by *Cleonus*, one of his Lieutenants. Such success he had the *Macedonian* war under *Hofilius*. The same Consul offended much the *Greeks*, by the strict inquisition which his Embassadors made into mens affection to-wards *Rome*. For these Embassadors travelling thorow all the Cities of *Peloponnesus*, gave out speeches tending to shew, That they liked no better of those who fought not by might and main to advance their businesse, than of those which were of the *Mac-e-donian* faction. Their meaning was, to have accused by name, in the Parliament of 50 *Achaia*, *Lycortas* that worthy Commander, who nobly followed the steps of *Philopoe-men*, and together with him, his son *Polybius*, who soon after was Generall of the *Achaean* horse, but more notable by that excellent history which he wrote, than by his great employments, which he well and honourably discharged. The sum of the accusation should have been; That these were not hearty friends unto the *Romans*, but such as abstained from raising troubles, more for lack of opportunity than for any love to the common quiet. But since no colour of truth could be found, that might give countenance to such a tale; it was thought better, for the present, to let it alone, & give gentle words, as if all were well. In like manner dealt they among the *Ætoliens*: They demanded hostages, and found some in the Council that approved the motion: as also among

the *ACHÆSIANS*, there were that entreated to have *Roman* garriſons beſtowed in their towns. But neither the one nor the other of theſe propoſitions took effect. They of the *Roman* faction, accuſed not only ſuch as were inclinable to the *Macedonian*, but alſo the good Patriots, making it no leſſe than a matter of treaſon, to be a *Grecian* in *Greece*. On the contrary ſide, there wanted no ſome, who roundly told theſe pick-thanks of their baſe flattery; rating them openly, in ſuch ſort, that one of them hardly eſcaped being ſtoned, even in preſence of the Embaſſadors. Thus was all full of accuſations, and excuſes: among which the Embaſſadors carried themſelves, as men that could beleeye none ill; though it were well enough known what they thought. The beſt was, that an order from the Senate was glad: for it was, or ſeemed, a good remedy of many inconveniences. But they that ſtanding on privilege hereof, reſuſed to fulfill every commendement, were numbred among the Patriots; which in the end of this war proved little better, if not worſe, than to have been Traytors. The Senate was driven to let down this order, by reaſon of many & vehement complaints brought to *Rome*, concerning the wrongs done by *Roman* Magiſtrates, and eſpecially by the *Admirals*, *Lucretius* and *Hortenſius*. *Lucretius* was condemned in a great ſum of money, for the wrongs by him done: highly to the commendation of the *Romans*, in that they loved not to have their ſubjects oppreſſed. *Hortenſius* being ſtill in office, had warning to amend.

Among the great number of Embaſſages that came to *Rome* about this time, either to ſeek redreſſe of injuries, or to offer their ſervices, it is note-worthy, that from *Alabanda*, a town of the leſſer *Aſia*, there was preſented unto the Senate, and well accepted, a moſt baſe piece of flattery. Theſe *Alabanders* brought three hundred horſemens targets, and a crown of gold, to beſtow upon *Jupiter* in the Capitol. But having a deſire to gratifie the *Romans* with ſome exquisite token of their duſtfull obedience, wherein they would be ſingular, and being not able to reach unto any great performance: they built a Temple, unto the town *Rome*, and appointed anniversary games to be celebrated among them, in honour of that goddeſſe. Now who can wonder at the arrogant folly of *Alexander*, *Antigonius*, *Ptolemy*, and the like vain men, that would be thought gods, or at the ſhamefull flattery of ſuch as beſtowed upon men, and not the moſt vertuous of men, divine honours; when he ſees a town of houſes, wherein powerfull men dwell, worſhipped as a goddeſſe; and receiving (without ſcorn of the givers, or ſhame of the Preſent) the title of *Deity*, at the gift of ſuch a rascal City as *Alabanda*?

## §. VII.

*Q. Marcius* the *Roman* Conſul, with extreme difficulty and danger, enters into *Tempe*. The cowardice of *Perſeus* in abandoning *Tempe*. The town of *Dium* quitted by *Marcius*, repaired and ſanctified by the King. The *Romans* attempt many places, with ill ſucceſſe. Their affairs in hard ſtate. *Marcius* a cunning and a bad man. *Polybius* ſent Embaſſador to *Marcius* from the *Achaens*. *Polybius* his beſt wiſdome beneficiall to the *Achaens*. King *Eumenes* grows averſe from the *Romans*. *Perſeus* negotiates with *Antiochus*, and *Eumenes*. His falſe dealing with *Genchus* King of *Illyria*; whom he draws into the *Roman* war. He ſends Embaſſadors to the *Rhodians*; who vainly take upon them to be arbitrators between him and the *Romans*. *Perſeus* loſeth a mighty ſuccour of the *Baſtarnæ*, by his wretched perſonamy.

After two years of the *Macedonian* war, things were further out of tune in *Greece*, than when the war began; which had been thought likely to reform all thoſe Countries, and bring them to what paſſe the *Romans* deſired; as it did in the end. *Perſeus* had hitherto the better, and was ſtronger now, than when he lived in peace. He had enlarged his borders on the *Illyrian* ſide; his friends, in all parts of *Greece*, took courage daily; and his reputation grew ſuch, as cauſed thoſe that were before wholly *Roman*, to ſuſpect what the iſſue of the war might prove, and thereupon to become wiſe for themſelves. Contrariwiſe, *Licinius*, & *Hofilius* the Conſuls, had one after the

the other ſpent their time in vain, ſeeking way into *Macedon*; and deſtroyed the glorious enterprize of conqueſt, by many loſſes received. The *Roman* Admirals had ſo demeaned themſelves, that many towns even of the beſt affected to *Rome*, kept them out by force. Generally, the fear was great on the *Roman* ſide; and the Army much leſſened, not only by casualties of war, but by the facility of the Tribunes or Colonels, or elſe of the Conſul himſelf (for they laid the blame one upon the other) in licenſing the ſouldiers to depart. *Quintius Marcius* the new Conſul, who ſucceeded unto *Hofilius*, was to amend all this: which nevertheleſſe was more than he knew how to do; though he brought with him a ſtrong ſupply of men. He began hoſtly to ſet the war on foot, which a long time had ſlept. And he began the right way: not ſeeking to force the ſtraights that were ſurely guarded, but taking pains to climb the mountains which were thought able to forbid all paſſage over them, without help or need of any cuſtody. The King heard of his approach; and being uncertain what way he meant to take, diſtributed his own forces, to the defence of all places which might give entrance, or permit aſſent. But the Conſul proceeded in his journey: with hope, either not to be diſcovered by the Enemy, or to break through all oppoſition, or at leaſtwiſe, to fight on as convenient ground, as they ſhould have that lay to ſtop him, and at length, if all failed, to make a ſafe retreat. He ſent before him ſour thouſand of his moſt expedient foot, to diſcover the waies. Two daies was this company troubled, in overcoming the difficulty of no more than fifteen miles: after which they had ſight of the Enemy, that lay to deny their paſſage. They occupied therefore a ſafe piece of ground, and ſent back word to the Conſul, where they were; intreating him to haſten unto them: which he did. The *Macedonians* were not a whit dumayed at his arrivall; but met him, and fought with him, two or three daies together; each returning to his own Camp at night, with little loſſe on either ſide. This bickering was on the narrow ridge of a mountain, which gave ſcarcely room unto three to march in front. So that very few hands came to be employed: all the reſt were beholders. In this caſe it was impoſſible to get forwards: yet a ſhame to return. Wherefore *Marcius* took the only courſe remaining; and indeed the beſt: Part of his men he left with *Pepilius*, to attend upon the *Macedonians*; whiſt he, with the reſt, ſought a commodious about, and fought out wayes that never had been troden. Herein he found extreme difficulty: which notwithstanding he overcame. Beſides the troubles commonly incident to ſuch journeys, through places uſuſt for habitation, he was compelled, by labour of hand, to make paths where none were, yea, where Nature might ſeem to have intended, that none ſhould be. So ſteep he found the deſcent of the mountains, in this way which he took: that of ſeven miles, which they travelled the firſt day, his men were compelled, for the more part, to rowle themſelves down, as not daring to truſt their feet. Neither was this the worſt. For they met with rocks, that ſtood one over another, ſo upright, and cumbersome to get down; that their Elephants were afraid of that giddy proſpect, and caſting their governours, made a terrible noiſe, which affrighted the horſes, and bred great confulion. Having therefore gone, or wallowed, four miles of this grievous journey; there was nothing more deſired by the ſouldiers, than that they might be ſuffered to creep back again, the ſame way which they had come. But ſhift was made to let down the Elephants, by a kinde of bridges, like unto falling draw-bridges whereof the one end was joynted to the edge of the cliff; the other ſuſtained by two long poſts, ſtafened in the ground below. Upon theſe two poſts, or poles, (which indeed, not being very ſtrong, ſince it was intended that they ſhould be either cut or broken) were ſtafened two raſters, anſwerable in length to the diſtance, between the higher and the lower fall: ſo as the end of one bridge might reach to the beginning of another. Theſe were covered with planks and turfe; that they might ſeem continent with the ground; ſo to make the beaſts adventurous to go upon them. If there were a plain of any good extent from the foot of a rock, to the next downfall; then might the bridge be ſhorter. When an Elephant was gone a pretty way, upon one of theſe; the poſts upholding the frame were cut aſunder; thereby cauſing him to ſink down unto the next bridge; whence he was conveyed in like manner; to the third, and onward ſtill to the very bottoome. Thus went they down ſliding, ſome on their feet, others on their buttocks, till they came to an even valley. By this it appears, how thoroughly provided the



*Romans* used to be in their journeys, of things needfull in all occasions: as also what inestimable pains they took in this descent, about the conveyance of themselves and all their carriages down the mountains. The next day they rested; staying for *Popilius* and his company, who hardly or perhaps never, should have overtaken them, if the Enemy had followed, and set upon him from aloft. The third and fourth dayes journeys were like unto the first: save that custom, and the nearness to their wayes end without meeting enemy, caused them the better to endure the labour.

*Persius* could not be ignorant of the *Romans* coming towards him: since they fought with his men upon the passage, three dayes together, he lying so nigh, that he might well-near have heard the noise. Yet was he possessed with fear; that he neither stirred 10 to help his own men, or to hinder the Confull, nor made any provision for that which might fall out; but as one void of counsell, late hearkening after the event. Four only passages there were, leading into *Tempe*: the first by *Connus*; which the *Romans* were unable to force: the second and third were the same which *Martius* had attempted in vain, and another like unto it: the last, by the City of *Dium* out of *Macedon*. All these were sufficiently guarded: and whosoever would seek any other way, must be faine to take such pains as *Martius* had undergone. The entrance by *Dium* was fairer than any of the rest: whereof only the King had benefit; for that his enemies could not get thither, save through the valley it self, into which they must first pierce another way. *Dium* stood upon the foot of the huge mountain *Olympus*; about a mile 20 from the sea: of which mile, the River *Helicon* becoming the sea lake, and called *Baphyas*, took up the one half: the rest being such as might easily have been fortified. Besides all these, there was in the midst of *Tempe*, a passage which men might easily keep: where the spurs of the mountains, reaching far into the valley, drew near to the very banks of *Peneus*, a goodly and deep river which ran through it. Wherefore nothing had been more easie, than to make the Conful repent him of his troublesome journey: if *Persius* could have seen his own advantages. For the *Roman* Army was not only in ill case to fight, after the vexation of that miserable travell: but must needs have either perished for want of victuals, or been forced to return the same way that he came, if the King had made good the straight of *Dium*. To have returned, 30 and climbed up with their Elephants and carriages, against those rocks, from which, with extreme labour, they could hardly get down, it seems a matter of impossibility: especially considering how the enemy from above their heads, would have beaten upon them; being now aware of the path which they had taken, though he knew it not when they stole away from him. It may therefore be thought strange, that the *Romans* did not rather take their journey into *Macedon*, from the side of *Illyria*, whence that Kingdom had often been invaded, as lying open on that part: than put themselves to the trouble of breaking into *Tempe*, whence, after that they were arrived, there was no means to escape, without forcing one of those passages, which they despaired to win. But the cowardize of *Persius* did commend the counsell by them followed, as wise. For 40 he no sooner heard that the Enemy was come over the Mountains into *Tempe*; than he feared like one out of his wits, saying, That he was vanquished, and had lost all without battall. Herewithall he began to take out of *Dium*, what he could carry away in haste; and straightwaies abandoned the Town. In the same vehemency of amazement, he sent a strait commandment to *Thessalonica*, that the Arsenall there should be set on fire, and to *Pella*, that his treasures there should be cast into the sea: as if the *Romans* were like presently to be masters of these two Cities. *Nicias*, who was appointed to drown the treasure, performed it as hastily as well as he could: though soon after, his master grew sorry for the losse; and it was all, in a manner, recovered by Divers from under the water. But *Andronicus*, who had charge to set fire on the Kings 50 Arsenall, deferred the execution; foreseeing that repentance might follow: and so he prevented the damage. Whether *Nicias*, for his absolute and blinde obedience, or *Andronicus*, for his careful providence, merited the greater commendation, or more easie pardon; it rested in the King to interpret. The reward of their service, was this. *Persius* growing ashamed of his mad cowardize, that appeared in this hasty direction; caused them both to be slain. Also those poor men, which had fetched his treasure out of the Sea by their diving, were payed their wages after the same sort: that so there might be no witness of the Kings base folly. Such end must they fear, who are privie

privy to dishonourable actions of great Princes. If *Persius* would have gone surely to work, for the hiding of his fault; then must he so royally have behaved himself, that no man might beleve him to be the author of any unworthy act or counsell. But his vertue was of no such capacity. He thought it enough to lay the blame upon others. And therefore, having called *Hippias* away (the Captain which had stopped the Confull on the top of the mountain) and *Asclepiodatus* from defence of the passages, where o they were by him appointed: he rated them openly; saying, that they had betrayed unto the Enemy the gates and bars of *Macedon*. Of this reproach, if they would discharge themselves, by laying it upon him, to whom of right it belonged: then might they have sped 10 as did *Nicias* and *Andronicus*.

The Conful *Martius* had great cause to rejoyce, for that the King so hastily relinquished his possession of *Tempe*, and all the passages leading thereinto: since the *Roman* Army, this notwithstanding, was halfly able to subsist, for want of victuals. He took *Dium* without resistance, and thence went forward into *Macedon*: wherein having travelled about a dayes journey, and gotten one town that yielded, he was compelled by meer lack of food for his men, to return back towards *Thessaly*. His fleet came to him, in this time of necessity, well appointed to have holpen him in the war: but having left behinde, at *Magnesi*, the ships of burthen, which carried the provisions. Wherefore it fell out happily, that one of his Lieutenants had been careful to occupy the Ca- 20 les about *Tempe*, which were forsaken by the *Macedonians*: for by those wayes only might he be brought into the Army. To meet the sooner with this corn, which was most desirously expected, he forsook *Dium*, and went to *Phila*; by which foolish journey (if not worke thin foolish) he lost more, than a little the longer fasting had been worth. It is probable that his carts, with all or the most of his store, were lost among the mountains: for otherwise it had been madnesse to put himself on such an enterprise, so slenderly provided, as that without enforcement, or fight of the Enemy, he should be faine to quit it. Howsoever it was: men thought him a coward, or at least a bad man of war; since he thus recoyled and gave off, when it most behooved him to have prosecuted the action.

30 By understanding the folly, or cowardize of *Martius*; the King recollected himself, understood his own error; sought to hide it by such poor means as have been shewed, and laboured to make what amends he could. He quickly repossessed the town of *Dium*, which he hastily repaired, finding it dismantled by the *Romans*. This done, he encamped strongly by the River of *Empeus*: meaning there to stop the Enemies proceeding all that Summer. Lesse diligence, more timely used, would have been enough, not only to have delivered *Martius* into his hand, who had beguiled him with an idle hope of peace, but to have given him such a noble victory, as might cause the *Romans* to seek a good end of the war upon fair conditions, and not to begin again in haste. Yet this recovery and fortification of *Dium*, was to the Conful an exceeding hinderance. For lit- 40 tle or nothing could afterward be done toward the conquest in hand, in all the continuance of his office. Only the town of *Heraclis*, standing on the River of *Peneus*, five miles from *Dium*, was taken by force, or rather by a trick of climbing upon mens heads, somewhat after the manner of our tumblers. But it made such defence as it could, and was not given up for fear. After this, *Martius* did set a bold face towards *Dium*, as if he would have taken it again, and have driven the King further off: though his intent or hope was nothing like so great: his chief care, being to provide for his wintering. He sent the Admirall to make attempt upon the Sea-towns, *Thessalonica*, *Cassandrea*, *Demetrias*, and others. All these were assailed: but in vain. The fields about *Thessalonica* were wasted; and some companies, that sundry times adventured forth of the Town, 50 were still put to the worfe. As for the Town it self; there was danger in coming near it, either by land or Sea; by reason of the engines, which shot from the wals, and reached unto the fleet. Wherefore the Admirall letting fall from thence, ran along by *Enia*, and *Antigonis*, (standing near to each of them; and both doing and receiving hurt) until he came to *Pallene* in the territory of *Cassandrea*. There King *Eumenes* joyned with him, bringing twenty ships of War: and five other were sent thither from King *Prusias*. With this access of strength, the Admirall was bold to try his fortune at *Cassandrea*: which was bad. There was a new ditch lately cast by *Persius*, before the town: which while the *Romans* were filling up, question was made, what became of the earth taken thence



assailed with help of *Eumenes* and *Prusias*. Herewith he willed *Eumenes* to consider, that when *Macedon* was taken out of their way, they would be doing with him in *Asia*, which lay next at hand; yea, that already they began to think better of *Prusias*, than of him. In like sort he admonished *Antiochus*, not to look for any good conclusion of his war with the *Egyptian*, so long as the *Romans* could make him give over, by denouncing their will and pleasure. Finally, he requested both of them, either to compell the *Romans* to surcease from their war upon *Macedon*; or else to hold them as common enemies unto all Kings: *Antiochus* lay far out of the *Romans* way: and therefore was little troubled with such remonstrances. *Eumenes* was more nearly toucht; and as he felt part of this to be true, so had he reason to stand in doubt of the rest. Yet when he should give answer, he began to offer a bargain of peace for money. He thought the *Romans* to be no less weary, than *Perseus* was afraid. Wherefore he promised for his own part, that if he might have fifteen hundred Talents for withdrawing his hand from this war, then would he remain a Neuter therein: and that for some greater quantity of money (how much I shinde not) he would also bring the *Romans* to condescend unto peace: and for assurance of his true meaning herein, he offered to give hostages. *Perseus* liked well to receive the hostages: but not to lay out the money; especially before hand, as was required. He would fain have peace with *Rome*, and not with *Eumenes* only. For procuring of this, he promised to be at any reasonable cost; but he would lay down the money in the Temple at *Samothrace*: whence it should be delivered unto *Eumenes*, after that the peace was fully concluded and ratified. The Isle of *Samothrace* was *Perseus* his own: and therefore *Eumenes* thought the money no nearer to him, being there, than if it remained in *Pella*. Besides, his labour deserved somewhat, howsoever the business might happen to succeed: so that needs he would have part of his wages in *press*. Thus the two Kings did no more than lose time; and *Eumenes* grew suspected of the *Romans*, as a Traitor.

After the same manner dealt *Perseus* with King *Gentius* the *Illyrian*. He had attempted this *Illyrian* before; who dealt plainly, and said, That without money he could not stir. Hereunto *Perseus* loved not to hearken; thinking, that his Treasures would serve at the last cast, to deliver him from all his fears. But when the *Romans* had gotten within *Tempe*; then did his fear urge him to prodigality; so as he agreed to pay three hundred Talents which *Gentius* demanded for a recompence. So the bargain was soon made, and pledges on both sides delivered for performance. This was openly done by *Perseus*, to the end that all his Army might have comfort, by such access of strength to their party. Presently upon the bargain made, Embassadors were sent to *Rhodes*, from both *Perseus* and *Gentius*: who desired the *Rhodians* to take upon them, as arbitrators, between *Perseus* and the *Romans*, and to bring the war to an end. The *Rhodians* thinking that *Marius* the Consul was no less desirous of peace than the *Macedonian*, arrogantly promised, that they, by their authority, would make peace; wishing the Kings to shew themselves conformable. But the *Roman* Senate, hearing proud words to the same effect, from the *Rhodian* Embassadors, gave an answer as disdainfull, angry, and menacing, as they could devise: so as this vain glory of the *Rhodians* was thoroughly chastised; and more thoroughly should have been, if their submission had not been as humble, as their folly was proud. Such use of *Gentius* his friendship, made *Perseus*, without laying out one ounce of silver. Now fain he would have hastened this young and rash *Illyrian* to enter with all speed into the War: but then must the money be hastened away. *Pantauchus* the *Macedonian* Embassador, who remained with *Gentius* exhorted him daily to begin the War by land and sea, whilst the *Romans* were unprovided. But finding what it was that made all to stay; he sent word to *Perseus*. Hereupon ten Talents were sent to *Pantauchus*: who delivered it to the young King, as earnest of that which followed. More followed indeed; and sealed up with the seal of the *Illyrians*, but carried by *Macedonians*, and not too fast. Before this money came into *Illyria*, *Gentius* had layed hands upon two *Roman* Embassadors, and cast them into prison. Which *Perseus* no sooner heard, than he recalled his Treasure-bearers, and sent them with their load to *Pella*; for that now the *Illyrian* was of necessity to make war with the *Romans*, whether he were hired thereto or not.

There came about the same time, through *Illyria* to the aid of *Perseus*, under one *Clondicus* a petty King, ten thousand horse and ten thousand foot of the *Ganles*, which were

were (as *Plutarch* hath it) the *Bastarnæ*. These had before-hand made their bargain, and were to receive present pay at the first. At their entry into the Kingdom, *Perseus* sent one to them; desiring their Captains to come visit him, whom he promised to gratify with goodly rewards; hoping that the multitude would take good words for payment. But the first question that their Generall asked, was, Whether the King had sent money to give their souldiers their pay in hand, according to his bargain? Hereto the messenger had not wit to answer. Why then (said *Clondicus*) tell thy Master, that the *Ganls* will not sit one foot further, untill they have gold, as was agreed, and hostages. *Perseus* hereupon took counsell: if to utter his own opinion before men so wife that they would not contradict him, were to take counsell. He made an invective against the incivility and avarice of the *Bastarnæ*: who came with such numbers, as could not but be dangerous to him and to his Kingdom. Five thousand horse of them he said would be as many as he should need to use; and not so many, that he should need to fear them. It had been well done, if any of his Counsellors would have told him, That there wanted not employment for the whole Army of them, since without any danger to the Kingdom, they might be let out, by the way of *Porrebia*, into *Thessaly*: where wasting the Countrey, and filling themselves with spoil, they should make the *Romans* glad to forsake *Tempe*, even for hunger and all manner of want; therein doing the King notable service, whether they won any victory or not. This, and a great deal more, might have been alledged, if any man had dared to give advice freely. In conclusion, *Antigonus*, the same messenger that had been with them before, was sent again, to let them know the Kings minde. He did his errand: upon which followed a great murmur of those many thousands that had been drawn so far to no purpose. But *Clondicus* asked him now again, Whether he had brought the money along with him to pay those five thousand, whom the King would entertain. Hereto when it was perceived that *Antigonus* could make no better answer, than shifting excuses, the *Bastarnæ* returned presently towards *Dannubius*, wasting the neighbour parts of *Thrace*; yet suffering this crafty messenger to escape unhurt: which was more than he could have well expected.

Thus dealt *Perseus*, like a carefull Treasurer, and one that would preserve his money for the *Romans*, without diminishing the sum. But of this painful Office he was very soon discharged by *L. Æmilius Paulus* the new Consul: who in fifteen dayes after his setting forth from *Italy*, brought the kingdom of *Macedon* to that end, for which God had appointed over it a king to foolish and so cowardly.

## §. VIII.

Of *L. Æmilius Paulus* the Consul. His journey. He forceth *Perseus* to discamp. He will not hazard battell with any disadvantage. Of an Eclipse of the Moon. *Æmilius* his superstition. The battell of *Pydna*. *Perseus* his flight. He forsakes his Kingdom: which hastily yeelds to *Æmilius*. *Perseus* at *Samothrace*. He yeelds himself to the *Roman* Admirall, and is sent prisoner to *Æmilius*.

BY the War of *Macedon*, the *Romans* hitherto had gotten much dishonour. Which, though it were not accompanied with any danger, yet the indignity so moved them, that either \* they decreed that Province to *L. Æmilius Paulus*, *Plut. in vid. Acrop.* without putting it, as was otherwise their manner, to the chance of lot, between him and his fellow Consul; or at least were gladder that the lot had cast it upon him, than that so worthy a man was advanced to the dignity of a second Consulship. He refused to propound unto the Senate any thing that concerned his Province; untill by Embassadors, thither sent to view the estate of the War, it was perfectly understood, in what condition both the *Roman* forces, and the *Macedonian*, at the present remained. This being thoroughly known to be such, as hath been already told, the Senate appointed a strong supply, not only to the Consul, but unto the Navie, and likewise to the Army that lay between *Illyria* and *Epirus*; from which *Ap. Claudius* was removed, and *L. Anicius* sent thither in his place. *Æmilius*, before his departure from *Rome*, making an Oration to the People, as was the custome, spake with much gravity and authority. He requested those that thought themselves wise

Y y y y

enough:

enough to manage this war, either to accompany him into *Macedon*, and there assist him with their advice; or else to govern their tongues at home, and not take upon them to give directions by hearsay, and censure by idle reports: for he told them plainly, that he would frame his doings to occasions; not to the expectation of the multitude. The like speech of his father *L. Amylius*, who died valiantly in the Battell of *Carma*, might well be living in some of their memories; which was enough to make them conform themselves the more gladly unto the instructions given by a wise and resolute Consul.

All his businesse within the City being dispatched, *Amylius* was honourably attended, at his setting forth on his journey, with an especial hope of men, that he should finish the war, though that he should finish it so soon & happily, was more than could have bin hoped or imagined. He came to *Brundisium*: whence, when the winde came fair, he set sail at break of day, and arrived safely at the Isle of *Coreyra* before night. Thence passed he to *Delphi*: where having done sacrifice to *Apollo*, after the fifth day he set forwards to the Camp, and was there in five dayes more. So are there but five of the fifteen dayes remaining, in which he finished the war.

*Perseus* lay strongly encamped at *Dium*; having spared no labour of men & of women to fortifie the banks of *Enipeus*, where it was foordable in dry weather: so as there was little hope, or none, to force him; and consequently, as little possibility to enter that way into *Macedon*. One great inconvenience troubling the *Romans*, and much disabling them to make attempt upon *Dium*, was lack of fresh water. For there were ten miles between *Dium* and *Tempe*; all the way lying between the Sea shore and the foot of *Olympus*, without any Brook or Spring breaking forth on that side. But *Amylius* found present remedy for this, by digging Wells on the shore; where he found sweet Springs: as commonly there is no shore that want's them, though they rise not above the ground. Want of this knowledge was enough to hinder *Martius* from taking up his lodging any nearer to the Enemy, than the Town of *Heraclea*, on the River of *Peneus*; where he had watering at pleasure, but could performe no service of any worth. Yet when the *Roman* Camp had such means to lye close to the *Macedonian*, as it presently did, the passage onward being defended as hath been shewed, seemed no lesse difficult than before. Wherefore it was necessary to search another way: which by enquiry was soon found out. There was a narrow passage over *Olympus*, leading into *Perrabia*; hard of ascent, but slenderly guarded, and therefore promising a fair journey. *Martius* either had not been informed hereof, or durst not attempt it; or perhaps could not get his Souldiers to make the adventure; they fearing lest it would prove such a piece of work as had been their march over *Ossa* into *Tempe*. But *Paulus* was a man of greater industry, courage, and ability to command. He had reformed, even at his first coming, many disorders in the *Roman* Camp: teaching the souldiers among other good lessons, to be obedient and ready in execution; without troubling themselves, as had been their manner, to examine the doings and purposes of their Generall. And now he appointed about five thousand men to this enterprise; whereof he committed the charge unto *Scipio Amylianus* and *Q. Fabius Maximus*, his own sons by nature, but adopted the one of them, by a son of *Scipio the African*; the other, by one of the *Fabii*. *Scipio* took with him some light-armed *Thracians* and *Cretians*; but his main strength was of Legionaries. For the Kings guard, upon the mountain, consisted in a manner, wholly of Archers and Slingers; who, though, at some distance they might do notable service against those that should climb up unto them; yet when the darkness took away their aim, they were liketo make a bad nights work, being to deal with those that were armed to fight at hand. To conceal the businesse about which they went, *Scipio* and *Fabius* took a wrong way towards the Fleet, where victuals were provided for their journey: at being noised, that they were to run along the coast of *Macedon* by sea, and waste the country. All the way that they were passing the mountains (which was about three dayes) the Consul made shew of a meaning to let upon *Perseus* where he lay, rather to divert the Kings attention from that which was his main Enterprise, than upon any hope to do good, in seeking to get over *Enipeus*. The channel of *Enipeus*, which received in Winter time a great fall of waters from the mountains, was exceeding deep and broad; and the ground of it was such, as though at the present it lay well-near all dry, yet it served not for those that were weightily armed to fight upon. Wherefore *Amylius* employed none save his *Vetites*; of whom the Kings light ar-

mature

mature had advantage at far distance, though the *Romans* were better appointed for the close. The Engines from off the Towers which *Perseus* had raised on his own bank, did also beat upon the *Romans*, and gave them to understand, that their labour was in vain. Yet *Amylius* persisted as he had begun; & recontinued his assault, such as it could be, the second day. This might have served to teach the *Macedonians*, that some greater work was in hand: since otherwise a good Captain, as *Amylius* was known to be, would not have troubled himself with making such bravado's, that were somewhat costly. But *Perseus* looked only unto that which was before his eyes: until his men, that came running fearfully down the Mountain, brought word into the camp, that the *Romans* were following at their backs. Then was all full of tumult; and the King himself no lesse (if not more) amazed than any of the rest. Order was forthwith given to dislodge: or rather without order, in all tumultuous haste, the Camp was broken up, and a speedy retreat made to *Pydna*. Whether it were so, that they which had custody of the passage were taken sleeping, or whether they were beaten by plain force, *Scipio* and *Fabius* had very good success in their journey. It may well be, that they slept until the *Romans* came somewhat near to them; and then taking alarm, when their arrows and slings could do little service, were beaten at handy-strokes: so as the different relations that are cited by *Plutarch* out of *Polybius*, and an Epistle of *Scipio*, may each of them have been true. Thus was an open way cleared into *Macedon*: which had beneffited by *Martius* in the 20 year foregoing; but was closed up again, through his not prosecuting so rich an opportunity.

*Perseus* was in an extreme doubt what course to take, after this unhappy beginning. Some gave advice to man his Towns, and so to linger out the War: having been taught by the last years example, how resolute the people were in making defence. But far worse counsell prevailed: as generally it doth in turbulent and fearful deliberations. The King resolved to put all at once to hazzard of battell: fearing belike to put himself into any one Town, lest that should be first of all besieged; and he therein (as cowardly natures always are jealous) not over-carefully relieved. This was even that same that *Amylius*, or any invader, should have desired. So a place was chosen near unto *Pydna*, that served well for the *Phalanx*, and had likewise on the sides of it some pieces of higher ground, fit for the Archers and light armature. There he abode the coming of the enemy; who stayed not long behinde him. As soon as the *Romans* had sight of the Kings Army; which with greater fear than discretion, had hastened away from them, forsaking the Camp that was to notably well fortified: they desired nothing more, than to give battell immediately: doubting lest otherwise the King should change his minde, and get further off. And to this effect *Scipio* brake with the Consul, praying him not to lose occasion by delay. But *Amylius* told him, that he spake like a young man; and therefore willed him to have patience. The *Romans* were tyred with their journey; had no Camp wherein to rest themselves; nor any thing there, save only the bare ground whereon they trod. For these, and the like respects, the Consul made a stand: and shewing himself unto the *Macedonian*, who did the like, in order of battell, gave charge to have the Camp measured out and entrenched behinde the Army; whereunto at good leisure, he fell back, without any manner of trouble. After a nights rest, it was hoped both by the *Romans* and the *Macedonians*, that the matter should be determined; each part thinking their own Generall too blame, for that they had not fought the same day. As for the King, he excused himself by the backwardness of the enemy, who advanced no further; but kept upon ground serving ill for the *Phalanx*: as on the other side, the Consul had the reasons before shewed, which he communicated to those about him the next day.

That evening (which followed the third of September, by the *Roman* account) *C. Sulpicius Gallus*, a Colonel, or Tribune of a Legion, who had the former year been Praetor, foretold unto the Consul, and with his good liking unto the Army, an Eclipse of the Moon, which was to be the same night: wiling the souldiers not to be troubled therewith, for that it was naturall, and might be known long before it was seen. It was the manner of the *Romans*, in such eclipses to bear Pans of Brass, and Basons, as we do in following swarm of Bees; thinking that thereby they did the Moon great ease, and helped her in her labour. But this prognostication of *Sulpitius* converted their superstition into admiration of his deep skill, when they saw it verified. Con-

Y y y y y 2

trariwise

trariwife, the *Macedonians* howled and made a great noyse, as long as the Eclipse lasted: rather perhaps because it was their tation, than for that they were terrified therewith, as with a prodigious betokening their losse; since their desire to fight was so whit lessened by it. I will not here stand to dispute, Whether such Eclipses do signifie, or cause any alteration in civill affairs, and matte s that have small dependance on naturall complexion: for the argument is too large. More worthy of observation it is, how superstition captivates the widsome of the worst, where the help of true religion is wanting. *Amphilus*, though he were sufficiently instructed concerning this defect of the Moon, that it was no supernatural thing, nor above the reach of humane understanding, so as he should need to trouble himself with any devout regard thereof: yet could he not refrain from doing his duty to this Moon, and congratulating with sacrifice her delivery, as soon as she shone out bright again: for which he is commended even by *Plutarch*, a sage Philosopher, as a godly and religious man. If *Sulpicius* perhaps did not assist him in this foolish devotion, yet is it like, that he, being a Senatour, and one of the Councell for war, was partaker the next morning in a sacrifice done to *Hercules*; which was no lesse foolish. For a great part of the day was vainly consumed, ere *Hercules* could be pleased with any sacrifice, and vouchsafe to shew tokens of good luck in the entrails of the beasts. At length, in the belly of the one and twentieth sacrifice, was found a promise of victory to *Amphilus*: but with condition, That he should not give the onset. *Hercules* was a *Greek*, and partiall, as nearer in alliance to the *Macedonian* than to the *Roman*. Wherefore it had been better to call upon the new goddess, lately canonized at *Alabanda*; or upon *Romulus*, founder of their City, on whom the *Romans* had bestowed his Deity; or (if a God of elder date were more authentically upon *Mars* the Father of *Romulus*, to whom belonged the guidance of military affairs; and who therefore would have limited his favour, with no injunctions contrary to the rules of war.

Now concerning the Battell, *Amphilus* was thoroughly perswaded, that the king meant to abide it: for that otherwise he would not have stayed at *Pydna*, when as, a little before, his leisure served, to retire whither he listed, the *Romans* being further off. In regard of this, and perhaps of the tokens appearing in the Sacrifices, the Consul thought that he might wait upon advantage, without making any great haste. Neither was it to be neglected, that the morning Sun was full in the *Romans* faces: which would be much to their hinderance all the forenoon. Since therefore *Perseus* kept his ground, that was commodious for the *Phalanx*, & *Amphilus* sent forth part of his men to bring in Wood and Fodder, there was no likelihood of fighting that day. But about ten of the clock in the morning, a small occasion brought to passe that, which whereto neither of the Generals had over-earnest desire.

A Horse brake loose at watering, which two or three of the *Roman* souldiers followed into the river, wading after him up to the knees. The Kings men lay on the further bank, whence a couple of *Thracians* ran into the Water, to draw this horse over to their own side. These fell to blowes, as in a private quarrel; and one of the *Thracians* was slain. His Countreimen seeing this, halted to revenge their fellowes death, and followed those that had slain him over the river. Hereupon company came in, to help on each part, until the number grew such, as made it past a fray, and caused both the Armies to be careful of the event. In fine, each of the Generals placed his men in order of battell, accordingly as the manner of his country, & the arms wherewith they served, did require. The ground was a flat level, save that on the sides a few hillocks were raised here and there; whereof each part might take what advantage it could. The *Macedonians* were the greater number, the *Romans* the better souldiers, and better appointed. Both the King and the Consul encouraged their men with lively words: which the present condition could bountifully afford. But the King, having finished his Oration, and sent on his men, withdrew himself into *Pydna*: there to do sacrifice, as he pretended, unto *Hercules*. It is the lesse marvell, that he durst adventure battell, since he had bethought himself of such a stratageme, whereby to save his own person. As for *Hercules*, he liked not the sacrifice of a Coward: whose unseasonable devotion could be no better than hypocrisie. For he that will pray for a good Harvest, ought also to Plow, Sowe, and Weed his Ground. When therefore the King returned to the battell, he found it no better than lost: and he, in looking to his own safety, caused it to be lost altogether, by beginning the flight.

The

The acts of this day, such as we finde recorded, are, That the *Roman* Elephants could do no manner of good; That the *Macedonian Phalanx* did so stoutly presse onwards, and beat off all which came before it, as *Amphilus* was therat much astonished, that the *Pelignians* rushing desperately on the *Phalanx*, were over-borne, many of them slain, and the *Squadrans* following them so discouraged herewith, as they retired apace towards an hill. These were the things that fell out averse to the *Romans*; and which the Consul beholding is said to have rent his coat-armour for grief. If the King with all his power of horse, had in like manner done his devoyre, the victory might have been his own. That which turned the fortune of the battell, was the same which doubleste the Consul expected, even from the beginning: the difficulty or almost the impossibility of holding the *Phalanx* long in order. For whilst some of the *Romans* small battalions pressed hard upon one part of it, and others recoyled from it; it was necessary (if the *Macedonians* would follow upon those which were put to the worse) that some files having open way before them, should advance themselves beyond the rest that were held at a stand. This coming so to passe, admonished the Consul what was to be done. The long pikes of the *Macedonians* were of little use, when they were charged in flank by the *Roman* Targetters; according to the direction given by *Amphilus*, when he saw the front of the enemies great battell become unequal, and the ranks in some places open, by reason of the unequal resistance which they found. Thus was the use of the *Phalanx* proved unavailable against many small squadrons, as it had been formerly in the battell of *Cynoscephale*: yea this form of embattailing was found unseizable against the other, by reason, that being not every where alike distressed, it would break off itself, though here were little such inconvenience of ground, as had been at *Cynoscephale*. Chap. 4. §. 14.

*Perseus*, when he saw his battell begin to rout, turned his bridle presently, and ran amain towards *Pella*. All his horse escaped, in a manner untouched, and a great number followed him; the little harm which they had taken, witnessing the little good service which they had done. As for the poor foot, they were left to the mercy of the Enemy: who slew above twenty thousand of them; though having little cause to be furious, as having lost in that battell, only some fourscore, or sixscore men at the most. Some of the foot, escaping from the execution, overtook the King and his company in a wood; where they fell to rayling at the horsemen, calling them cowards, traitors, and such other names, till at length they fell to blowes. The King was in doubt lest they had ill meaning to himself: and therefore turned out of the common way, being followed by such as thought it good. The rest of the company disperied themselves: every one as his own occasions guided him. Of those that kept along with their King, the number began within a while to lessen. For he fell to devising upon whom he might lay the blame of that daies misfortune, which was most due to himself: thereby causing those that knew his nature, to shrink away from him, how they could. At his coming to *Pella*, he found his Pages and household servants, ready to attend him, as they had been wont. But of his great men that had escaped from the battell, there was none appearing in the Court. In this melancholy time, there were two of his Treasurers that had the boldnesse to come to him, and tell him roundly of his faults. But in reward of their unseasonable admonitions, he stabbed them both to death. After this, none whom he sent for would come at him. This boded no good. Wherefore standing in fear, lest they that refused to come at his call, would shortly dare some greater mischief, he stole out of *Pella* by night. Of his friends he had with him only *Evander* (who had been employed to kill *Eumenes* at *Delphi*) and two other. There followed him likewise about 500. *Cretians*, more for love of his money than of him. To these he gave of his plate, as much as was worth about fifty talents, though shortly he could need them of some part thereof; making shew as if he would have redeemed it, but never paying the money. The third day after the battell he came to *Amphipolis*, where he exhorted the Townes-men to fidelity, with tears: and his own speech being hindered by tears, appointed *Evander* to speak what himself would have uttered. But the *Amphipolitans* made it their chief care to look well to themselves. Upon the first fame of the overthrow, they had emptied their town of two thousand *Thracians* that lay there in garrison: sending them forth under colour of a gainfull employment, and shutting the gates after them. And now to be rid of the King, they plainly

Y yyy 3

bade

bad *Evander* to be gone. The King hearing this, had no minde to tarry: but embarking himself and the treasure which he had there, in certain vessels that he found in the river *Styrmon*, passed over the life of *Samos* thence: where he hoped to live safe, by privilege of the religious Sanctuary therein.

of the religious Sanctuary the rein.

These miserable shifts of the King make it the lesse doubtfull, how all the Kingdome fell into the power of *Amyllus*, within fo few daies after his victory. *Pydna*, which was nearest at hand, was the last that yielded. About six thousand of the soldiers, that were of sundry Nations, fled out of the battell into that Town, and prepared for defence: the confused rubble of fo many strangers hindering all deliberation and consent. *Hippius*, who had kept the passage over *Ossa* against *Martius*, with *Pantauchus*, who had been sent Embassadour to *Genius* the *Illyrian*, were the first that came in: yielding themselves, and the Town of *Berea*, whither they had retired out of the battell. With the like meslage came others from *Thessalonica*, from *Pella*, and from all the Towns of *Macedon*, within two dayes: the losse of the head bereaving the whole body of all sense and strength. Neither did they of *Pydna*, stand any longer, when they knew that the King had forsaken his Country: but opened their gates upon such termes, that the sack of it was granted to the *Roman Army*. *Amyllus* lent abroad into the Country, such as he thought meetest, to take charge of other Cities: he himself marching towards *Pella*. He found in *Pella* no more than three hundred Talents; the same whereof *Perseus* had lately defrauded the *Illyrian*. But within a very little while he shall have more.

more.

It was soon understood, that *Perseus* had taken Sanctuary in the Temple at *Samothrace*: his own letters to the Consul confirming the report. He sent these letters by persons of such mean condition, that his case was pitied, for that he wanted the service of better men. The scope of this writing was, to desire favour: which though he begged in terms ill becoming a King, yet since the inscription of his Epistle was, *King Perseus to the Consul Paulus*; the Consul, who had taken from him his Kingdom, and would not allow him to retain the Title, refused to make any answer thereunto. So there came other letters, as humble as could be expected: whereby he craved and obtained, that some might be sent to confer with him about matters of his present estate. Nevertheless, in this conference, he was marvellous earnest, that he might be allowed still to retain the name of King. And to this end it was, perhaps, that he had so carefully preserved his Treasure, unto the very last: flattering himself with such vain hopes as these; That the *Romans* would neither violate a Sanctuary, nor yet neglect those great riches in his possession; but compound with him for money, letting him have his desire to live at ease, and to be called King. Yea, it seems that he had indeed, even from the beginning, a desire to live in this Isle of *Samothrace*: both for that in one of his consultations about the War, he was dejected by his friends, from seeking to exchange his Kingdom of Macedonia, for \* such a paltry Iland; and for that he offered to lay up the money which *Eumenes* demanded, in the holy Temple that was there. But he finds it otherwise. They urge him to give place unto necessity, and without more ado, to yield to the discretion and mercy of the people of *Rome*. This is so far against his minde, that the conference breaks off without effect. Presently there arrives at *Samothrace* *Cn. Octavius* the *Roman* Admirall, with his fleet: who assays, as well by terrible threats, as by fair language, to draw the King out of his lurking hole; wherein, for fear of imprisonment, he had now already imprisoned himself. When all would not serve, a question was moved to the *Samothracians*; How they durst pollute their Temple, by receiving into it one that had violated the like holy privilege of Sanctuary, by attempting the murder of King *Eumenes* at *Delphi*? This went to the quick. The *Samothracians*, being now in the power of the *Romans*, take this matter to heart; and send word to the King, that *Evander*, who lives with him in the Temple, is accused of an impious fact, committed at *Delphi*, whereof unless he can clear himself in judgement, he must not be suffered to prophane that holy place, by his abiding in it. The reverence borne to his Majesty, now past, makes them forbear to say, that *Perseus* himself is charged with the same crime. But what will this avail, when the minister of the fact being brought into judgement, shall (as is to be feared) appeach the author? *Perseus* therefore willeth *Evander* to have consideration of the little favour that can be expected at the *Romans*.

mans hand; who are like to be presidents and overseers of this judgement: so as it were better to dye valiantly, since none other hope remains, than hope to make good an ill cause; where though he had a good plea, yet it could not help him. Of this motion *Evander* seems to like well: and either kills himself, or hoping to escape thence, by deferring the time as it were to get payson wherewith to end his life, is killed by the Kings commandement. The death of this man, who had stuck to *Perseus* in all times of need, makes all the Kings friends that remained hitherto, to forsake him: so as none are left with him, save his wife and children, with his Pages. It is much to be suspected, that they which leave him upon this occasion, will tell perillous tales, and say, that the King hath lost the priviledge of this holy Sanctuary, by murdering *Evander* therein. Or if the *Romans* will affirm so much, who shall dare to gainsay them? Since therefore there is nothing but a point of formality, and even that also lyable to dispute, which preserveth him from captivity, he purpoeth to make an escape, and flye, with his Treasures, unto *Cotys* his good friend, into *Thrace*. *Oroandes*, a *Cretian*, lay at *Samothrace* with one ship, who easily was persuaded to wait the King thence. With all secrecy the Kings money, as much as could be so conveyed, was carryed aboard by night; and the King himself, with his wife and \* children (if rather it were not true, that he had with him only \* *Philip*. *Plutarc. in vit. Amil. Liv. lib. 45. Liv. lib. 42.* his elder son, who was only by adoption his son, being his \* brother by nature) with much ado got out at a window by a rope, and over a mud wall. At his coming into the Sea-side, he found no *Oroandes* there: the *Cretian* had played a *Cretian* trick, and was gone with the money to his own home. So it began to wax clear day, whilst *Perseus* was searching all along the shoar: who had stayed so long about this, that he might fear to be intercepted ere he could recover the Temple. He ran therefore amain towards his lodging: and thinking it not safe to enter it the common way, lest he should be taken, he hid himself in an obscure corner. His Pages missing him, ran up and down making inquiry; till *Ottavius* made Proclamation, That all the Kings Pages, and *Macedonians* whatsoever, abiding with their master in *Samothrace*, should have their lives and liberty, with all to them belonging, which they had either in that Isle, or at home in *Macedon*, conditionally, That they should presently yield themselves to the *Romans*. Hereupon they all came in. Likewise *Ion*, a *Thesalonian*, to whom the King had given the custody of his children, delivered them up to *Ottavius*. Lastly, *Perseus* himself, with his son *Philip*, accusing the gods of *Samothrace*, that had no better protected him, rendered himself and made the *Roman* victory compleat. If he had not trusted in those gods of *Samothrace*, but employed his whole care in the defence of *Macedon*, without other hope of living, than of reigning therein; he might well have brought this war to an happier end. Now, by dividing his cogitations, and pursuing, at once, those contrary hopes of saving his Kingdome by arms, and himself by flight, he is become a spectacle of misery, and one among the number of those Princes, that have bin wretched by their own default. He was presently sent away to *Amyntus*; before whom he fell to the ground so basely, that he seemed thereby to dishonour the victory over himself, as gotten upon one of abject quality, and therefore the lesse to be esteemed. *Amyntus* used to him the language of a gentle Victor: blaming him, though mildly, for having, with so hostile a minde, made war upon the *Romans*. Hereto good answer might have been returned by one of better spirit. As for *Perseus*, he answered all with a fearful silence. He was comforted with hope of life, or (as the Consul termed it) almost assurance; for that such was the mercy of the people at *Rome*. After these good words, being invited to the Consuls Table, and respectively entreated, he was committed prisoner to *O. Aelius*.

Such end had this *Macedonian War*, after four years continuance: and such end there-  
50 withall had the Kingdome of *Macedon*; the glory whereof, that had sometime filled all  
parts of the World then known, was now translated unto *Rome*.



## §. IX.

Gentius, King of the Illyrians, taken by the Romans.

ABOUT the same time, and with like celerity, *Anicius* the Roman Prætor, who succeeded unto *App. Claudius*, had the like success against King *Gentius* the Illyrian. *Gentius* had an Army of fifteen thousand; with which he was at *Lissus*, ready to assist King *Perseus* as soon as the money should come, whereof he had received only ten Talents. But *Anicius* arrested him on the way, fought with him, overcame him, and drave him into \* *Scodra*. This Town was very defensible by nature, besides the help of fortification; and strongly manned with all the force of *Illyria*; which, assisted with the King's presence, made it seem impossible to be won, in any not a very long time. Yet *Anicius* was confident in his late victory; and therefore presented his Army before the walls, making countenance to give an assault. The *Illyrians*, that might easily have defended themselves within the Town, would needs issue forth and fight. They were it seems, rather passionate than courageous: for they were beaten; and thereupon forthwith began amazedly to treat about yielding. The King sent Embassadors; by whom, at first, he desired truce for three daies, that he might deliberate concerning his estate. It ill became him, who had laid violent hands on the Roman Embassadors, to have recourse to such meditation. But he thought his own fault pardonable, in as much as hitherto there was no greater harm done by him, than the casting of those Embassadors into prison, where they were still alive. Having obtained three daies respite, he passed up a River, within half a mile of the Roman Camp, into the Lake of *Scodra*, as it were to consult the more privately; though indeed, to hearken whether the report were true, that his brother *Cavacantius* was coming to his rescue. Finding that no such help was toward, it is wonder, that he was so foolish as to return into *Scodra*. He sent messengers craving access unto the Prætor before whom having lamented his folly past (which, excepting the dishonesty, was not so great as his folly present) he fell down humbly, and yielded himself to discretion. All the Towns of his kingdom, together with his wife, children, brother, friends, were presently given up. So this war ended in thirty daies: the People of *Rome* not knowing that it was begun, until *Perseus*, one of the Embassadors that had been imprisoned, brought word from *Anicius* how all had passed.

## §. VII.

How the Romans behaved themselves in Greece and Macedon after their victory over Perseus.

NOW began the Romans to swell with the pride of their fortune; and to look tyrannically upon those that had been unmannerly toward them before, whilst the war with *Perseus* seemed full of danger. The *Rhodian* Embassadors were still at *Rome*; when the tidings of these victories were brought thither. Wherefore it was thought good to call them into the Senate, and bid them do their errand again. This they performed with a bad grace, saying, that they were sent from *Rhodes* to make an overture of peace; forasmuch as it was thought, that this war was no less grievous to the Romans themselves, than to the *Macedonians* and many others: but that now they were very glad, and in behalf of the Romans did congratulate with the Senate and people of *Rome*, that it was ended much more happily than had been expected. Hereto the Senate made answer, That the *Rhodians* had sent this Embassy to *Rome*, not for love of *Rome*, but in favour of the *Macedonian*; whose partizans they were, and should to be taken. By these threats, and the desire of some (covetous of the charge) to have War proclaimed against *Rhodes*; the Embassadors were so affrighted, that in mourning apparel, as humble suppliants, they went about the City, beseeching all men, especially the great ones, to pardon their indiscretion; and not to prosecute them with vengeance, for some foolish words. This danger of Warre from *Rome* being known at *Rhodes*, all that had been any

any whit averse from the Romans in the late War of *Macedon*, were either taken and condemned, or sent prisoners to *Rome*; excepting some that slew themselves for fear, whose goods also were confiscated. Yet this procured little grace; and less would have done, if old *M. Cato*, a man by nature vehement, had not uttered a mild sentence, and advertised the Senate, That in decreeing war against *Rhodes* they should much dishonour themselves, and make it thought, that \* rather the wealth of that City, which they were greedy to ransack, than any just cause, had moved them thereto. This consideration, together with their good deserts in the wars of *Philip* and *Antiochus*, helped well the *Rhodians*: among whom, none of any mark remained alive, save those that had been of the Roman faction. All which notwithstanding, many years passed, ere by importunate suit, they could be admitted into the society of the Romans: a favour which till now they had not esteemed; but thought themselves better without it, as equal friends.

With the like, or greater severity, did the Romans make themselves terrible in all parts of *Greece*. *Amynius* himself made progress through the Country, visiting all the famous places therein, as for his pleasure: yet not forgetting to make them understand what power he had over them. More than five hundred of the chief Citizens in *Demetrius* were slain at one time by those of the Roman faction, and with help of the Roman soldiers. Others fled, or were banished, and their goods confiscated. Of which things, when complaint was made to the Consul, the redress was such as required not the pains of making supplication. His friends, that is to say, those which betrayed unto the Romans the liberty of their Country, he fastened like a King, with excessive cheer; yet so, that he had all things very cheap in his Camp: an easie matter, since no man durst be backward in sending provisions, nor set on them the due price. Embassadors likewise were sent from *Rome*, some, to give order for settling the estate of *Macedon*, towards which they had more particular instruction from the Senate, than was usual in such cases; and some, to visit the affairs of *Greece*. The Kingdom of *Macedon* was set at liberty by *Amynius* and the Embassadors, his assistants, who had order therefore from the Senate. But this liberty was such as the Romans used to bestow. The best part of it was, That the Tribute which had been payed unto the Kings, was lessened by half. As for the rest; the Country was divided into four parts, and they forbidden commerce one with the other. All the Nobility were sent captive into *Italy*, with their wives and children, as many as were above fifteen years old. The ancient Lawes of the Country were abrogated, and new given by *Amynius*. Such mischief the Senate thought it better to do, at the first alteration of things in this Province, and in the time of Conquest, than other wise to leave any inconvenience that should be worse in the future. But concerning the *Greeks*, that were not subjects to *Rome*, the things done to them could deserve no better name than meer tyranny, yea, and shameless perjury; were it not so, that the familiar custom, among Princes and great Estates, of violating Leagues, doth make the Oathes of confederation seem of no validity. The Embassadors that were sent to visit the *Greeks*, called before them all such men of note, from every quarter, as had any way discovered an unserviceable disposition towards the Romans. These they sent to *Rome*; where they were made sure enough. Some of these had sent letters to *Perseus*, which fell at length into the Romans hands; and in that respect, though they were no subjects, yet wanted there not colour, for using them as traitors, or at least as enemies. But since only two men were beheaded, for having been openly on the *Macedonian* side; and since it is confessed, that the good Patriots were no less affected in this inquisition, than they that had sold themselves to the King: this manner of proceeding was inexcusable Tyranny. With the *Acheans* these Embassadors were to deal more formally; not so much because that Common-wealth was strong; (though this were to be regarded by them, having no Commission to make or denounce War) and like to prove untractable, if manliest wrong were offered; as for that there appeared no manner of sign, by letters, or otherwise, whereby any one of the *Acheans* could be suspiciously charged to have held correspondence with the *Macedonian*. It was also so, that neither *Callistates*, nor any of his adherents, had been employed by the Nation, in doing or offering their service to the Romans; but only such as were the best Patriots. Yet would not therefore the Embassadors neglect to use the benefit of the time: wherein, since all men trembled for fear of *Rome*, the season served fitly to rank the *Acheans* with the rest.

And

And hereto *Callicrates* was very urgent: fearing, and procuring them to fear in behalf of him and his friends, that if some sharp order were not now taken, he and his fellows should be made to pay for their mischievous devices, ere long time passed. So the Embassadours came among the *Achaens*: where one of them, in open assembly of the Nation, spake as *Callicrates* had before instructed him. He said, that some of the chief among them, had with money and other means befriended *Perseus*. This being so, he desired that all such men might be condemned, whom, after sentence given, he would name unto them. After sentence given (cried out the whole assembly) what justice were this? Name them first, and let them answer, which if they cannot well doe, we will soon condemn them. Then said the *Roman* boldly, that all their Pretors, as many as 10 had led their Armies, were guilty of this crime. If this were true, said *Xenon*, a temperate man, and confident in his innocence, then should I likewise have been friend to *Perseus*: whereof if any man can accuse me, I shall thoroughly answer him, either here presently, or before the Senate at *Rome*. Upon these words of *Xenon* the Embassador laid hold, and said that even so it were the best way for him and the rest to purge themselves before the Senate at *Rome*. Then began he to name others, and left not until he had cited above a thousand, willing them to appear and answer before the Senate. This might even be termed the captivity of *Greece*; wherein so many of the honestest and worthiest men were carried from home, for none other cause, than their love unto their Country, to be punished according to the will of those, who could not endure that virtue, and regard of the publick liberty should dwell together in any of the *Greeks*. At their coming to *Rome*, they were all cast into prison, as men already condemned by the *Achaens*. Many Embassages were sent from *Achaia* (where it is to be wondred, that any such honest care of these innocent men could be remaining: since honesty had been thus punished as a vice, in so many of the worthiest among them) to informe the Senate, that these men were neither condemned by the *Achaens*, nor yet held to be offenders. But in stead of better answer, it was pronounced; That the Senate thought it not expedient for the Country, that these men should return into *Achaia*. Neither could any solicitation of the *Achaens*, who never ceased to importune the Senate for their liberty, prevail at all; 30 untill after seventeen years, fewer than thirty of them were enlarged, of whom that wise and vertuous man *Polybius*, the great Historian, was one. All the rest were either dead in prison, or having made offer to escape, whether upon the way before they came to *Rome*, or whether out of Jayle, after that they were committed thereto, suffered death as malefactors.

This was a gentle correction, in regard of what was done upon the *Epirots*. For the Senate being desirous to preserve the *Macedonian* Treasure whole, yet withall, to gratifie the *Souldiers*, gave order, that the whole Country of *Epirus* should be put to sack. This was a barbarous and horrible cruelty; as also it was performed by *Amylius* with mischievous subtilty. Having taken leave of the *Greeks*, and of the *Macedonians*, with bidding them well to use the liberty bestowed upon them by the people of *Rome*; hee 40 sent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men out of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had; and sent along with them, into every of their Towns, what companies of men he thought convenient, as it were to fetch the money. But he gave secret instructions to the Captains, that upon a certain day by him appointed, they should fall to sack, every one the Town wherein to he was sent. Thus in one day were threescore and ten Cities, all confederate with the *Romans*, spoiled by the *Roman* Souldiers; and besides other acts of hostility in a time of peace, a hundred and fifty thousand of that Nation made slaves. It may be granted, that some of the *Epirots* deserved punishment, as having favoured *Perseus*. But since they among this people, that were thought guilty of this offence, yea, or but coldly affected to the *Romans*, had been already sent into *Italy*, there to receive their due; and since this Nation, in general, was not only at the present in good obedience, but had even in this war done good service to the *Romans*: I hold this act so wicked, that I should not believe it, had any one Writer delivered the contrary. But the truth being manifest by consent of all, it is the lesse marvellous that God was pleased to make *Amylius* child-lesse, even in the glory of his triumph, how great soever otherwise his virtues were.

In such manner dealt the *Romans*, after their victory, with the *Greeks* and *Macedonians*.

ans. How terrible they were to other Kingdomes abroad, it will appear by the efficacy of an Embassage sent from them to *Antiochus*; whereof before we speak, we must say somewhat of *Antiochus* his foregoers, of himself, and of his affairs about which these Embassadours came.

## §. XI.

The war of *Antiochus* upon *Egypt* brought to end by the *Roman* Embassadours.

- 10 *Antiochus* the Great, after his peace with the *Romans*, did nothing that was memorable in the short time following of his reign and life. He died the six and thirtieth year after he had worn a Crown, and in the seventeenth or eighteenth of *Ptolemy Epiphanes*; while he attempted to rob the Temple of *Bel*, or (according to *Justin*) of *Jupiter*. He left behind him three sons, *Seleucus*, *Philopator*, *Antiochus* *Epiphanes*, *Demetrius Soter*; and one daughter, *Cleopatra*, whom he had given in marriage to *Ptolemy Epiphanes* King of *Egypt*. *Seleucus*, the fourth of that name, and the eldest of *Antiochus* his sons, reigned in *Syria* twelve years, according to *Eusebius*, *Appian*, and *Sulpitius*: though *Iosephus* give him but seven. A Prince, who as he was storkish by nature, so the great losse which his father *Antiochus* had received, took from him the means of managing any great affair. Of him, about three hundred years before his birth, *Daniel* gave this judgement, *Et stabit in loco ejus vilissimus & indignus decore regio*. And in his place (speaking of *Antiochus*, the Father of this man) shall stand up a vile person, unworthy the honour of a King. Under this *Seleucus*, those things were done which are spoken of *Onias* the high Priest, in these words, and other to the same effect: What time as the holy City was inhabited with all peace, because of the godliness of *Onias* the Priest, it came to passe, that even the King did honour the place, and garnished the Temple with great gifts. And all that is written in the third Chapter of the second of *Maccabees*, of *Simon* of *Benjamin*, who by *Apollonius* betrayed the Treasures of the Temple: and of *Heliadorus* sent by the King to seize them; of his miraculous striking by God, and his recovery 30 at the prayers of *Onias*; of the Kings death, and of his successeur *Antiochus Epiphanes*. It is therefore from the reign of this King, that the books of the *Maccabees* take beginning. Which books seem not to be delivered by one and the same hand. For the first book, although it touch upon *Alexander* the Great, yet it hath nothing else of his story; nor of the acts of his successors, till the time of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, the brother & successor of this *Seleucus*; from whom downward to the death of *Simon Maccabeus* (who died in the hundred threescore & seventeenth year of the *Greeks* in *Syria*) that first book treateth. The Author of the second book, although he take the Story somewhat further off, by way of a Proeme, yet he endeth with the hundred and one and fiftieth year of the *Grecian* reign, and with the death of *Nicanor*, slain by *Judas*: remembering in the fourth 40 Chapter the practice of *Jafon* the brother of *Onias*, who after the death of *Seleucus*, prevailed with *Antiochus Epiphanes*, his successor, for the Priesthood. It is also held by *Sanctus*, and other grave Writers, that it was in the time of this *Onias*, that *Arius* King of the *Spartans* sent Embassadors to the *Jewes*, as to their brothers and kinsmen. Which intelligence between them and the *Greeks*, *Jonathan* the brother and successor of *Judas*, remembering in the Preamble of that Epistle, which he himself directed to the people of *Sparta* by *Numenius* and *Antipater* his Embassadours, whom he employed at the same time to the Senate of *Rome*, repeating also the former Letters word by word, which *Arius* had sent to *Onias* the high Priest, whereto *Iosephus* adds, that the name of the *Lacedaemonian* Embassador was *Demoteles*, and that the Letters had a square Volume, and 50 were sealed with an Eagle holding a Dragon in her claws.

Now to this *Seleucus*, the fourth of that name, succeeded *Antiochus Epiphanes*, in the hundred and seven and thirtieth year of the *Greeks* in *Syria*. He was the second son of the Great *Antiochus*: and he obtained his kingdom by procuring the death of the King his brother; which also he usurped from his brothers son.

*Ptolemy Philometor*, his Nephew by his sister *Cleopatra*, being then very young, had been about seven years King of *Egypt*.

*Ptolemy Epiphanes*, the Father of this King *Philometor*, had reigned in *Egypt* four and twenty year, in great quiet, but doing little or nothing that was memorable. *Philop*

of Macedonia, and the great Antiochus, had agreed to divide his Kingdome between them, whilest he was a child. But they found such other businesse cleave long with the Romans, as made them give over their unjust purpose; especially Antiochus, who gave with his daughter in marriage, unto this Ptolemy, the Provinces of Calesyria, Phenice, and Judea, which he had won by his victory over Scopas, that was Generall of the Egyptian forces in those parts. Nevertheless, Ptolemy adhered to the Romans: whereby he lived in the greater security. He left behinde him two sons, this Ptolemy Philometor, and Ptolemy Physcon, with a daughter Cleopatra. Cleopatra was wife to the elder of her brethren, and after his death to the younger, by whom he was cast off, and her daughter taken in her stead. Such were the marriages of these Egyptian Kings.

Ptolemy Philometor, so called (that is, the lover of his mother) by a bitter nick-name, because he slew her, fell into hatred with his subjects, and was like to be chased out of his Kingdome, his younger brother being set up against him. Physcon having a strong party, got possession of Alexandria; and Philometor held himself in Memphis, craving succour of King Antiochus his Uncle. Hereof Antiochus was glad: who under colour to take upon him the protection of the young Prince, sought by all means possible to possess himself of that Kingdome. He sent Apollonius the son of Mnesticus Embassadour into Egypt, and under colour to assist the Kings Coronation, he gave him instructions to perswade the governors of the young King Philometor, to deliver the King his Nephew, with the principall places of that Kingdome, into his hands, pretending an extraordinary care and desire of his Nephews safety and well doing. And the better to answer all arguments to the contrary, he prepared a forcible Army to attend him. Thus came he alongst the coast of Syria to Foppe, and from thence on the sudden he turned himself towards Jerusalem; where, by Jafon the Priest, (a Chaplain fit for such a Patron) he was with all pomp and solemnity received into the City. For though lately, in the time of Seleucus, the brother and predecessor of Epiphanes, that impious Traytor Simon of the Tribe of Benjamin, Ruler of the Temple, when he would have delivered the treasures thereof to Apollonius Governour of Calesyria and Phenicia, was disappointed of his wicked purpose by miracle from heaven; the said Apollonius being stricken by the Angell of God, and recovering again at the prayer of Onias: yet sufficed not this example to terrifie others from the like ungodly practices. Presently upon the death of Seleucus, this Jafon, the brother of Onias, seeking to supplant his brother, and to obtain the Priesthood for himself, offered unto the King three hundred and threescore talents of silver, with other rents and sums of money. So he got his desire, though he not long enjoyed it.

This naughty dealing of Jafon, and his being over-reached by another in the same kind, calls to mind a by-word taken up among the Achaeans, when as that mischievous Callicrates, who had been too hard for all worthy and virtuous men, was beaten at his own weapon, by one of his own condition. It went thus:

One fire than other burns more forcibly,  
One Wolfe than other Wolves does bite more sore,  
One Hawk than other Hawks more swift does fly.  
So one most mischievous of men before,  
Callicrates, false knave as knave might be,  
Met with Menalcidas more false than he.

And even thus fell it out with Jafon: who within three years after was betrayed, and overbidden by Menelaus the brother of Simon, that for three hundred talents more obtained the Priesthood for himself: Jafon the cupon being forced to flye from Jerusalem, and to hide himself among the Ammonites.

From Jerusalem Antiochus marched into Phenicia, to augment the numbers of his men of war, and to prepare a fleet for his expedition into Egypt; with which, and with a mighty army of land-forces, He went about to reign over Egypt, that he might have the dominion of two Realmes, and entered Egypt with a mighty company, with Chariots and Elephants, with Horsemen, and with a great Navie, and moved war against Ptolemaeus King of Egypt, but Ptolemaeus was afraid of him, and fled, & many were wounded to death. He won many strong Cities, and took away the spoils of the Land of Egypt. Thus was fulfilled

Prophecy of Daniel. He shall enter into the quiet and plentiful Provinces, and he shall do Dan. 11. 24. that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers fathers. Never indeed had any of the Kings of Syria so great a victory over the Egyptians, nor took from them so great riches. For he gave a notable overthrow to the Captains of Ptolemy, between Pelusium and the Hill Callius, after which he entred and sackt the greatest and richest of all the Cities of Egypt, Alexandria excepted, which he could not force. In conclusion, after that Antiochus had smitten Egypt, he turned again, and went up towards Israel and Jerusalem with a mighty people, and entred proudly into the Sanctuary, and took away the golden Altar, and the Candlestick for the light, and all the instruments thereof, and the table of the shew-bread, and the pouring Vessels, and the Bells, and the golden Basons, and the Vail, and the Crowns, and the golden Apparell. He took also the Silver, and the gold, and the precious Jewels, and the secret Treasures: and when he had taken away all, he departed into his own Land, after he had murdered many men.

It was about the beginning of the Macedonian war that Antiochus took in hand this Egyptian businesse. At what time he first laid claime to Calesyria, justifying his title by the same allegations which his father had made; and stiffly averring, that this Province had not been consigned over to the Egyptians, or given in dowrie with Cleopatra. Easie it was to approve his right unto that which he had already gotten, when he in a faire way to get all Egypt. The Achaeans, Rhodians, Athenians, and other of the Greeks, pressed him, by severall Embassages, to some good conclusion. But his answer was, that if the Alexandrians could be contented to receive their King his Nephew Philometor, the elder brother of the Ptolemies, then should the war be presently at an end; otherwise not. Yet when he saw, that it was an hard piece of work to take Alexandria by force: he thought it better to let the two brothers consume themselves with intestine war than by the terror of his arms, threatening destruction unto both of them, to put into them any desire of coming to agreement. He therefore withdrew his forces for the present; leaving the Ptolemies in very weak estate, the younger almost ruined by his invasion; the elder hated and forsaken by his people.

But how weak soever these Egyptians were, their hatred was thought to be so strong that Antiochus might leave them to the prosecution thereof, and follow, at good leisure, his other businesse at Jerusalem, or elsewhere. So after the sack of Jerusalem, he rested him a while at Antioch, and then made a journey into Cilicia, to suppress the Rebellion of the Thracians and others in those parts, who had been given, as it were, by way of dowry to a Concubine of the Kings, called Antiochis. For Governour of Syria in his absence he left one Andronicus, a man of great authority about him. In the mean while, Menelaus the brother of Simon, the same who had thrust Jafon out of the Priesthood, and promised the King three hundred talents for an In-come, committing the charge of the Priesthood to his brother Lyfismachus, stole certain Vessels of gold out of the Temple: whereof he presented a part to Andronicus the Kings Lieventant, and sold the rest at Tyre, and other Cities adjoining. This he did, as it seemeth, to advance the payment of the three hundred talents promised; the same being now by Sosstratus eagerly demanded. Hereof when Onias the Priest (formerly dispossessed by Jafon) had certain knowledge, being moved with zeal, and detesting the sacriledge of Menelaus, he reproved him for it; and fearing his revenge, he withdrew himself into a Sanctuary at Daphne.

Daphne was a place of delight adjoining as a suburb to Antioch. In compasse it had about ten miles: wherein were the Temples of Apollo and Diana, with a Grove, sweet Springs, banquetting places, and the like; which were wholly, in a manner, abused to lust and other such voluptuousnesse. Whether it were well done of Onias to commit himself to the protection of Apollo and Diana, or to claim privilege from the holiness of a ground consecrated to any of the Heathen gods, I will not stand to discourse. Onely I say for mine own opinion, that the inconvenience is far lesse, to hold this book as Apocryphall, than to judge this fearfull shift which Onias (though a virtuous man) made for his life, either commendable or allowable, as the book seems to do. As for this refuge, it could not save the life of the poor old man: for Menelaus taking Andronicus apart, prayed him to slay Onias. So when he came to Onias, he counselled him craftily, giving him his right hand with an oath, and perswaded him to come out of the Sanctuary; so he slew him incontinently without any regard of righteousness. Hereof

Zzzzz

when complaint was made to *Antiochus* after his return out of *Cilicia*, He took away *Andronicus* his garment of purple, and rent his clothes, and commanded him to be led throughout the City; and in the same place where he had committed the wickedness against *Onias*, he was slain as a murderer. In taking revenge of this innocent mans death, I should have thought that this wicked King had once in his life time done Justice. But presently after this, at the suit of one *Ptolemy*, a Traitor to *Ptolemy Philometor*, he condemned innocent men to death, who justly complained against *Menelaus*, and his brother *Lysimachus*, for a second robbing of the Temple, and carrying thence the Vessels of gold remaining. Hereby it is manifest, that he was guided by his own outrageous will, and not by any regard of justice: since he revenged the death of *Onias*, he slew 10 those that were in the same cause with *Onias*; Who, had they told their case, yea, before the *Scythians*, they should have been heard as innocent. By reason of such his unsteadiness, this King was commonly termed *Epimanes*, that is, Mad, in stead of *Epiphanes*, which signifies Noble, or Illustrious.

After this, *Antiochus* made preparation for a second voyage into *Egypt*, and then were there seen throughout all the City of *Jerusalem*, forty dayes long, horsemen running in the air with robes of gold, and as bands of Spear-men, and as troops of Horsemen set in array, encountering and coursing one against another. Of these prodigious signes, or rather fore-warnings of God, all Historiies have delivered us, some more, some lesse. Before the destruction of *Jerusalem* by *Vespasian*, a Star in the form of a sword appeared in the Heavens directly over the city, after which there followed a slaughter like unto this of *Epiphanes*, though far greater. In the *Cymbrian* wars, *Pliny* tells us, that Armies were seen fighting in the aire from the morning till the evening.

In the time of Pope *John* the eleventh, a fountain poured out blood in stead of water, in or neer the City of *Genoa*; soon after which the City was taken by the *Saracens*, with great slaughter. Of these and the like prodigious signes, *Vipera* hath collected many, and very remarkable. But this one seemeth to me most memorable, because the most notorious. All men know, that in the Emperour *Nero*, the off-spring of the *Cæsars*, as well naturall as adopted, took end; whereof this notable signe gave warning.

When *Livia* was first married to *Augustus*, an Eagle let fall into her arms a white Hen, holding a Laurell branch in her mouth. *Livia* caused this Hen to be carefully nourished, and the Laurell branch to be planted: of the Hen came a fair increase of white Poultry; and from the little branch there sprang up in time a Grove of Laurell: so that afterwards, in all triumphs, the Conquerours did use to carry in their hands a branch of Bayes taken out of this Grove; and after the triumphs ended, to set it again in the same ground: which branches were observed, when they hapned to wither, to fore-tell the death of those persons who carried them in triumph. And in the last year of *Nero*, all the broods of the white Hens died, and the whole Grove of Bayes withered at once. Moreover, the heads of all the *Cæsars* Statues, and the Scepter placed in *Augustus* his hand, were stricken down with lightning. That the Jews did not think such strange signes to be unworthy of regard; it appears by their calling up-on God, and praying, that these tokens might turn to good.

Now, as the first voyage of *Antiochus* into *Egypt* was occasioned by discord of the two brethren therein reigning; so was this second Expedition caused by their good agreement. For the elder *Ptolemy* being left in *Memphis*, not strong enough to force his brother, who had defended *Alexandria* against all the power of their Uncle; thought it the best way to seek entrance into that royall City, rather by perswasion than by arms. *Physcon* had not yet forgotten the terror of the former siege: the *Alexandrines*, though they loved not *Philometor*, yet loved they worse to live in scarcity of victuals (which was already great among them, and like to grow extreme) since nothing was brought in from the Country; and the friends of the younger brother saw no likelihood of good issue to be hoped for without reconciliation. These good helps, and above all these, the loving disposition of *Cleopatra*, who then was in *Alexandria*, encouraged *Philometor*, in his purpose. But that which made him earnestly desirous to accomplish it, was the fear wherein he stood of his Uncle. For though *Antiochus* was gone out of *Egypt* with his Army; yet had he left behind him a strong Garrison in *Pelusium*: retaining that City, which was the Key of *Egypt*, to his

own use. This consideration wrought also with *Physcon*, and with those that were about him; so as by the vehement mediation of *Cleopatra* their sister, the two brethren made an end of all quarrells.

When the news of this accord was brought to *Antiochus*, he was greatly enraged: for notwithstanding that he had pretended no other thing than the establishment of the King *Philometor* his Nephew, and a meaning to subject his younger brother unto him, which he gave in answer to all Embassadors; yet he now prepared to make a sharpe warre upon them both. And to this end he presently furnished and sent out his Navy towards *Cyprus*, and drew his land Army into *Calefryria*, ready to enter *Egypt* the 10 Spring following. When he was on his way as far as *Rhinocorura*, he met with Embassadors sent from *Ptolemy*. Their errand was partly to yeeld thanks to *Antiochus* for the establishing of *Philometor* in his Kingdome; partly to beseech him, That he would rather be pleased to signifie what he required to have done in *Egypt*, which should be performed, than to enter it as an enemy with so puissant an Army. But *Antiochus* returned this short answer, That he would neither call back his Fleet, nor withdraw his Army, upon any other condition; than that *Ptolemy* should surrender into his hands, together with the City of *Pelusium*, the whole Territory thereto belonging: and that he should also abandon and leave unto him the Ile of *Cyprus*, with all the right that he had unto either of them, for ever. For answer unto these demands, he set down a day certaine, and a short one. Which being come and past, without any accord made, the Syrian Fleet entred *Nilus*, and recovered as well those places which appertained to *Ptolemy* in *Arabia*, as in *Egypt* it self, for *Memphis*, and all about it, received *Antiochus*, being unable to resist him. The King having now no stop in his way to *Alexandria*, passed on thitherwards by easie journeyes.

Of all these troubles past, as well as of the present danger wherein *Egypt* stood, the *Romans* had notice long ago. But they found, or were contented to finde, little reason for them to intermeddle therein. For it was a civil warre: and wherein *Antiochus* seemed to take part with the juster cause. Yet they gave signification, that it would be much displeasing unto them, to have the Kingdome of *Egypt* taken from the rightful owners. More they could not, or would not do; being troubled with the 30 *Perseus*; and therefore loath to provoke *Antiochus* too far. Nevertheless, the Egyptian Kings being reconciled, and standing joyntly in need of helpe against their Uncle, who prepared and made open war against them both: it was to be expected, that not only the *Romans*, but many of the *Greeks*, as being thereto obliged by notable benefits, should arme in defence of their Kingdome. *Rome* had been sustained with food from *Egypt*, in the war of *Hannibal*; when *Italie* lying waste, had neither corn nor money wherewith to buy sufficient store. By helpe of the Egyptian had *Aratus* laid the foundation of that greatness, whereto the *Achaans* attained. And by the like 40 helpe had *Rhodes* been defended against *Demetrius Poliorcetes*. Neither were these friendly turns, which that bountifull house of the *Ptolemies* had done for sundry people abroad, ill followed, or seconded, by other as bad in requital: but with continuance of sutable beneficence, from time to time encreased. Wherefore the two brothers sent abroad confidently for ayde; especially to the *Rhodiens* and *Achaans*, who seemed most able to give it effectually. To the *Romans* *Physcon* and *Cleopatra* had sent, a yeer since: but their Embassadors lay still in *Rome*. Of the *Achaans* they desired in particular, that *Lycomas* the brave warrior might be sent unto them, as General of all the *Auxiliaries*, and his son *Polybius*, General of the Horse. Hereunto the *Achaans* readily consented: and would immediately have made performance, if *Callicrates* had 50 not interposed his mischievous art. He whether seeking occasion to vaunt his obsequiousness to the *Romans*, or much rather envying those noble Captaines whose service the Kings desired; withstood the common voyce, which was, That their Nation should, not with such small numbers as were requested, but with all their power, be ayding unto the *Ptolemies*. For it was not now (he said) convenient time to entangle themselves in any such business, as might make them the less able to yeeld unto the *Romans* what help soever should be required in the *Macedonian* war. And in this sentence, he, with those of his faction, obstinately persisted; terrifying others with big words, as it were in behalf of the *Romans*. But *Polybius* affirmed, that *Martius*

the late Consul had signified unto him, that the *Romans* were past all need of help: adding further, that a thousand foot and two hundred horse, might well be spared to the aid of their Benefactors, the *Egyptian* Kings, without disabling their Nation to perform any service to the *Romans*; for as much as the *Achaens* could without trouble, raise thirty or forty thousand Souldiers. All this notwithstanding, the resolution was deferred from one meeting to another; and finally broken by the violence of *Calliocrates*. For when it was thought that the Decree should have passed; he brought into the Theater where the Assembly was held, a Messenger with letters from *Marius*: whereby the *Achaens* were desired to conform themselves to the *Roman* Senate; and to labour, as the Senate had done, by sending Embassadors to set *Egypt* in peace. This was an advice against all reason. For the Senate had indeed sent Embassadors to make peace; but as in a time of greater business elsewhere, with such milde words, that nothing was effected. Wherefore it was not likely that the *Achaens* should do any good in the same kind. Yet *Polybius* and his friends durst not gain-say the *Roman* Council, which had force of an injunction. So the Kings were left in much distress; disappointed of their expectation. But within a while was *Perseus* overcome: and then might the Embassadors, sent from the *Roman* Senate, perform as much as any Army could have done.

Audience had been lately given by the Senate, unto those Embassadors of *Phrycon* and *Cleopatra*: which having stayed more than a whole year in the City, brought nothing of their business to effect until now. The Embassadors delivered their message in the name of those that had sent them: though it concerned (which perhaps they knew not) *Philometor*, no less than his brother and sister.

In this ambassage of *Ptolemy*, now requesting help from *Rome*, appeared a notable change of his fortune, from such as it had been before three or four years last past. For in the beginning of these his troubles, which began with the *Macedonian* War; either he, or *Eulam*, or *Lenax* (upon whom the blame was afterwards laid) which had the government of him, thought his affairs in such good estate, that not only he determined to set upon *Antiochus* for *Galatrya*, but would have interposed himself between the *Romans* and *Perseus*, as a competent Arbitrator; though it fell out well, that his Embassadors was by a friend perswaded to forget that point of his errand. From these high thoughts he fell on the sudden, by the rebellion of his brother and subjects, to live under protection of the same *Antiochus*. And now at such time as by atonement with his brother and subjects, he might have seemed to stand in no need of such protection, he hath remaining none other help whereby to save both his kingdom & life, than what can be obtained by their intercession which were employed against him. This miserable condition of him, his brother and sister shewed it self, even in the habit of those Embassadors. They were poorly clad; the haire of their heads and beards overgrown, as was their manner in time of affliction; and they carried in their hands branches of Olive. Thus they entered into the Senate, and there fell groveling and prostrate, upon the floor. Their garments were not so mean and mournful, nor their looks and countenances so sad and dejected, but that their speech was than either of the other far more lamentable. For having told in what danger their King and Countrey stood, they made a pitiful and grievous complaint unto the Senate, beseeching them to have compassion of their Estate, and of their Princes, who had always remained friendly & faithful to the *Romans*. They said that the people of *Rome* had so much heretofore favored this *Antiochus* in particular, and were of such account and authority, with all other Kings and Nations, as if they pleased but to send their Embassadors, and let *Antiochus* know that the Senate was offended with his undertaking upon the King their Confederate, then would he presently raise his siege from before *Alexandria*, and with-draw his Army out of *Egypt* into *Syria*. But that if the Senate protracted any time, or used any delay, then should *Ptolemy* and *Cleopatra* be shortly driven out of their Realms, and make repair to *Rome*, with shameful dishonour to the Senate and people thereof, in that, in the extremest dangers of all their fortunes, they had not vouchsafed to relieve them.

The Lords of the Senate moved with compassion, sent incontinently *C. Popilius Lenus*, *C. Decimus* and *A. Hostilius*, as Embassadors to determine and end the war between those Kings. In commission they had first to find King *Ptolemy*, and then *Antiochus*, to

to let them both understand, that unless they surceased, and gave over Arms, they would take that King no more for a friend to the Senate and people of *Rome*, whom they found obstinate, or using delay. So these *Romans*, together with the *Alexandrine* Embassadors, took their leave, and went onward their way within three dayes after.

Whilst *Popilius* and his fellows were on their way toward *Egypt*, *Antiochus* had transported his Army over *Lusine*, some forty miles from *Alexandria*. So near was he to the end of his journey, when the *Roman* Embassadors met him. After greeting and salutations at their first encounter, *Antiochus* offered his right hand to *Popilius*; but *Popilius* filled it with a Roll of paper; willing him to read those Mandates of the Senate before he did any thing else. *Antiochus* did so; and having a little while considered of the business, he told *Popilius*, That he would advise with his friends, and then give the Embassadors their answer. But *Popilius*, according to his ordinary blunt manner of speech, which he had by nature, made a Circle about the King with a Rod which he held in his hand, willing him to make him such an answer as he might report to the Senate, before he moved out of that Circle. The King astonished at this so rude and violent a Commandment, after he had stayed and pawsed a while, I will be content (quoth he) to do whatsoever the Senate shall ordain. Then *Popilius* gave unto the King his hand, as to a Friend and Allie of the *Romans*.

Thus *Antiochus* departed out of *Egypt*, without any good issue of his costly Expedition; even in such manner as \* *Daniel* had prophesied long before: yea, fulfilling every particular circumstance, both of returning, and of doing mischief to *Fernsalem* after his return; like as if these things had rather been historified than foretold by the Prophet. As for the *Roman* Embassadors, they stayed a while, and sealed the kingdom of *Egypt*, leaving it unto the elder brother; and appointed the younger to reign over *Cyrene*. This done, they departed towards *Cyprus*; which they left, as it had been, in the power of the *Egyptian*, having first sent away *Antiochus* Fleet, which had already given an overthrow to the *Egyptian* ships.

30

s. XII.

How the *Romans* were dreadfull to all Kings. Their demeanour towards Eumenes, Prusias, Maserissa, and Cotys. The end of *Perseus* and his children. The instability of Kingly Estates. The Triumphs of *Paulus*, *Anicius*, and *Octavius*. With the Conclusion of the Work.

BY this peremptory demeanour of *Popilius*, in doing his Message, and by the ready obedience of King *Antiochus* to the will of the Senate; we may perceive how terrible the *Romans* were grown, through their conquest of *Macedon*. The same *Popilius* had bin well contented, a year before this, to lay aside the roughness of his natural condition, & to give good language to the *Achaens* and *Asiatians*, when he went Embassador to those people of *Greece*, that were of far lesse power than the King *Antiochus*. Likewise, *Antiochus* had with good words, and no more than good words, dismissed other Embassadors which came from *Rome*, in such sort, as they complained not, much lesse used any menacing termes, though he performed nothing of their request. But now the case was altered. So found other Kings as well as *Antiochus*.

*Eumenes* sent to *Rome* his brother *Attalus*, to gratulate the victory over *Perseus*; and to crave help or countenance of the Senate against the *Gallo-greeks*, which molested him. Very welcome was *Attalus*, and lovingly entertained by most of the Senators: who had him be confident, and request of the Senate his brothers kingdom for himself; for it should surely be given him. These hopefull promises tickled *Attalus* with such ambition, that he either approved, or seemed to approve the motion. But his honest nature was soon reclaimed by the faithfull counsell of *Stratus* a *Phylian*; whom *Eumenes* had sent to *Rome* of purpose to keep his brother upright. So, when he came into the Senate, he delivered the errand about which he had bin sent, recounting his own services done to the *Romans* in the late war, \* wherewithall he forgot not to make of his brother as good mention

Z z z z z 3

mention as he could : and finally, requested, That the Towns of *Amus* and *Maronea* might be bestowed upon himself. \* By his omitting to sue for his brother's Kingdom, the Senate conceived opinion, that he meant to crave another day of audience for that business alone. Wherefore to make him understand how gracious he was; they not only granted all his desire, but in the presents which they gave unto him (as was their custom to Embassadors that came with an acceptable message) they used singular magnificence: Neverthelesse *Attalus* took no notice of their meaning, but went his way, contented with what they had already granted. This did so highly displease the Senate, that whilst he was yet in *Italy*, they gave order for the liberty of *Amus* and *Maronea*: thereby making ineffectuall their promise; which otherwise they could not, without shame, revoke. And as for the *Gallo-Greeks*, which were about to invade the Kingdom of *Perseus*; they sent Embassadors to them, with such instructions, as rather encouraged than hindered them in their purpose. The displeasure of the Senate being so manifest; *Bumenes* thought it worthy of his labour to make another voyage to *Rome*. He might well blame the folly of his second voyage thither, for this necessity of the third: since, by his malice to *Perseus*, he had laid open unto these ambitious Potentates the way to his own doors. No sooner was he come into *Italy*, than the Senate was ready to send him going. It was not thought expedient to use him as an enemy, that came to visit them in love: neither could they, in so doing, have avoided the note of singular inconstancy: and to entertain him as a friend, was more then their hatred to him, for his ingratitude; as they deemed it, would permit. Wherefore they made a Decree, That no King should be suffered to come to *Rome*; and by vertue thereof sent him home, without expence of much farther complement.

*Prusias* King of *Bithynia* had been at *Rome* somewhat before; where he was welcomed after a better fashion. He had learned to behave himself as humbly as the proud *Romans* could respect or desire. For, entering into the Senate, he lay down, and kissed the threshold, calling the *Fathers* his gods and favours; as also he used to wear a Cap, after the manner of slaves newly manumitted, professing himself an enfranchised bondman of the people of *Rome*. He was indeed naturally a slave, and one that by such abject flattery kept himself safe, though doing other wise greater mischief than any wherewith *Perseus* had been charged. His errand was, besides matter of complement, to commend unto the Senate the care of his son *Nicomedes*, whom he brought with him to *Rome*, there to receive education. Further petition he made to have some Towns added to his kingdom: whereto, because the grant would have bin unjust, he received a cold answer. But concerning the Wardship of his son, it was undertaken by the Senate: which, vaunting of the pleasure lately done to *Egypt*, in freeing it from *Antiochus*, willed him thereby to consider, what effectuall protection the *Romans* gave unto the children of Kings, that were to their patronage commended.

But above all other Kings, *Masaniissa* held his credit with the *Romans* good. His quarrels were endlesse with the *Carthaginians*: which made the friendship of the *Romans* to him the more assured. In all controversies they gave judgement on his side: and whereas he had invaded the Countrey of *Emporia*, holding the Lands, but unable to win the Towns; the *Romans* (though at first they could finde no pretext, whereby to countenance him in this oppression) compelled finally the *Carthaginians* both to let go all their hold, and to pay five hundred Talents to the *Numidian*, for having hindered him of his due so long. Now indeed had *Rome* good leisure to devise upon the ruine of *Carthage*: after which, the race of *Masaniissa* himself was shortly by them rooted up. But hereof the old King never dreamed. He sent to *Rome* one of his sons, to congratulate the victory over *Perseus*; and offered to come thither himself, there to sacrifice for joy unto Jupiter in the Capitol. His good will was lovingly accepted; his son rewarded; and he entreated to stay at home.

*Corys* the *Thracian* sent Embassadors to excuse himself touching the aide by him given to *Perseus*, for that the *Macedonian* had him bound by hostages; and to intreat, That his son, which was taken with the children of *Perseus*, might be set at liberty, for convenient ranfome. His excuse was not taken; since he had voluntarily obliged himself to *Perseus*, by giving hostages without necessity: Yet was his sonne given back to him ranfome-free, with admonition, to carry himself better towards the

Romans

*Romans* in time following. His Kingdom lay between *Macedon* and some barbarous Nations; in which respect, it was good to hold him in fair terms.

As for those unhappy Kings *Perseus* and *Gentius*, they were led through *Rome*, with their children and friends, in the Triumphs of *Amilius* and *Anicius*. *Perseus* had often made suit to *Amilius*, that he might not be put to such disgrace: but he still received one scornfull answer, That it lay in his own power to prevent it; whereby was meant, that he might kill himself. And surely, had he not hoped for greater mercy than he found, he would rather have sought his death in *Macedon*, than to have bin beholding to the courtesy of his insolent enemies for a wretched life. The issue of the *Roman* clemency, wherof *Amilius* had given him hope, was no better than this: After that he, and his fellow King, had been led in chains through the streets, before the Chariots of their triumphing Victors, they were committed to prison, wherein they remained without hope of release. It was the manner, that when the Triumpher turned his Chariot up towards the Capitol, there to do sacrifice, he should command the captives to be had away to prison, and there put to death: so as the honour of the Vanquisher, and misery of those that were overcome, might be both together at the utmost. This last sentence of death was remitted unto *Perseus*: yet so, that he had little joy of his life; but either famished himself, or (for it is diversly reported) was kept watching perforce by those that had him in custody; and so dyed for want of sleep. Of his sons, two died; it is uncertain how. The youngest called *Alexander* (only in name like unto the Great, though destined sometimes perhaps by his father, unto the fortunes of the Great) became a Joyner, or Turner, or, at his best preferment, a Scribe under the *Roman* Officers. In such poverty ended the Royall house of *Macedon*: and it ended on the sudden; though some eight-score years after the death of that Monarch, unto whose ambition this whole Earth seemed too narrow.

If *Perseus* had known it before, that his own son should one day be compelled to earn his living by handi-work, in a painfull Occupation; it is like; that he would not, as in a wantonnesse of Sovereignty have commanded those poor men to be slain, which had recovered his treasures out of the sea, by their skill in the feat of diving. He would rather have been very gentle, and would have considered, that the greatest oppressors, and the most undertrodden wretches, are all subject unto the One high Power governing all alike with absolute command. But such is our unhappinesse: in stead of that blessed counsel, *Do as ye would be done unto*, a sentence teaching all moderation, and pointing out the way to felicity; we entertain that arrogant thought, *I will be like to the most High*: that is, I will do what shall please my self. One hath said truly:

— *Et qui noluit occidere quonquam posse voluit.*

Even they that have no murderous will,  
Would have it in their power to kill.

All, or the most have a vain desire of ability to do evill without controll: which is a dangerous temptation unto the performance. God, who best can judge what is expedient, hath granted such power to very few: among whom also, very few there are, that use it not to their own hurt. For who sees not that a Prince, by racking his Sovereign authority to the utmost extent, enableth (besides the danger to his own person) some one of his own sons or nephews to root up all his progeny? Shall not many excellent Princes, notwithstanding their brotherhood, or other nearnesse in blood, be driven to slatter the Wife, the Minion, or perhaps the Harlot that governs one, the most unworthy of his whole house, yet reigning over all: the untimely death of many Princes which could not humble themselves to such slattery; and the common practice of the *Turkish* Emperours to murder all their brethren, without expecting till they offend, are good proofs hereof. Hereunto may be added, that the heir of the same *Roger Mortimer*, who murdered most traitorously and barbarously King *Edward* the second; was, by reason of a marriage, proclaimed, in time not long after following, heir apparent to the Crown of *England*: which had he obtained, then had all the power of *Edward* fallen into the race of his mortall enemy, to exercise the same upon the Line of that unhappy King. Such examples of the instabillity whereto all mortall affairs are subject;

Juv. sat. 10.



\* The true Law  
of free Monar-  
chies.

Chap. 3. §. 4.

subject; as they teach moderation, and admonish the transitory gods of Kingdoms, not to authorize by wicked precedents, the evil that may fall on their own posterity: so do they necessarily make us understand, how happy that Country is, which hath obtained a King able to conceive and teach, That \* *God is the first and sharpest Schoolemaster that can be desired for such Kings; as think this world ordained for them, without contrivement to turn it upside-down at their pleasure.*

Now concerning the Triumph of *Lucius Aemilius Paulus*, it was in all points like unto that of *T. Quintius Flaminius*: though far more glorious, in regard of the Kings own person, that was led along therein, as part of his own spoils; and in regard likewise both of the Conquest and of the Booty. So great was the quantity of Gold and Silver <sup>10</sup> carried by *Paulus* into the *Roman* Treasury, that from thenceforth, until the civil wars which followed upon the death of *Julius Caesar*, the Estate had no need to burthen it self with any Tribute. Yet was this noble Triumph likely to have been hindered by the soldiers; who grudget at their General, for not having dealt more bountifully with them. But the Princes of the Senate over-ruled the People and Souldiers herein, and brought them to reason by severe exhortations. Thus *Paulus* enjoyed as much honour of his victory as men could give. Nevertheless, it pleased God to take away from him his two remaining sons, that were not given in adoption: of which, the one dyed five dayes before the Triumph; the other three dayes after it. This loss he bore wisely: and told the People, That he hoped to see the Common-wealth flourish in a continuance of prosper- <sup>20</sup> ity, since the joy of his victory was requited with his own private calamity, in stead of the publick.

About the same time, *Octavius* the Admirall, who had brought *Perseus* out of *Savathrace*; and *Antoine* the Pretor, who had conquered *Illyria*, and taken King *Genius* prisoner, made their severall triumphs. The glory of which magnificent spectacles, together with the confluence of Embassadors from all parts; and Kings; either visiting the Imperiall City, or offering to visit her, and do their duties in person; were *known* to say unto *Rome*, *Summe superbiæ, Take upon thee the Majesty that thy deserts have purchased.*

<sup>30</sup> BY this which we have already set down, is seen the beginning and end of the three first Monarchies of the world; whereof the Founders and Erectors thought, that they could never have ended. That of *Rome* which made the fourth, was also at this time almost at the highest. We have left it flourishing in the middle of the field; having rooted up, or cut down all that kept it from the eyes and admiration of the world. But after some continuance, it shall begin to lose the beauty it had; the storms of ambition shall beat her great boughes and branches one against another; her leaves shall fall off, her limbs wither, and a rabble of barbarous Nations enter the field, and cut her down.

<sup>40</sup> Now these great Kings, and conquering Nations, have bin the subject of those ancient Histories, which have been preserved, and yet remain among us; and withall of so many tragical Poets, as in the persons of powerfull Princes, and other mighty men have complained against infidelity, Time, Destiny, and most of all against the Variable success of worldly things, and Instability of Fortune. To these undertakings, these great Lords of the world have been stirred up, rather by the desire of Fame, which ploweth up the Aere, and soweth in the Winde; than by the affection of bearing rule, which draweth after it so much vexation and so many cares. And that this is true, the good advice of *Cicero* to *Pyrhus* proves. And certainly, as Fame hath often been dangerous to the living, so is it to the dead of no use at all; because separate from knowledge. Which were it otherwise, and the extreme ill bargain of buying this lasting discourse, under- <sup>50</sup> stood by them which are dissolved; they themselves would then rather have withied, to have stohn out of the world without noise, than to be put in minde, that they have purchased the report of their actions in the world, by rapine, oppression, and cruelty: by giving in spoyle the innocent and labouring soul to the idle and insolent, and by having emptied the Cities of the world of their ancient Inhabitants, and filled them again with so many and so variable sorts of sorrowes.

Since the fall of the *Roman* Empire (omitting that of the *Germaner*, which had neither greatness nor continuance) there hath been no State fearfull in the East, but that

of the *Turk*: nor in the West any Prince that hath spred his wings far over his nest, but the *Spaniard*; who since the time that *Ferdinand* expelled the *Moors* out of *Granado*, have made many attempts to make themselves Masters of all *Europe*. And it is true, that by the treasures of both Indies, & by the many kingdoms which they possess in *Europe*, they are at this day the most powerful. But as the *Turke* is now counterpoised by the *Persian*, so in stead of so many Millions as have been spent by the *English*, *French*, and *Netherlands* in a defensive war, and in diversions against them, it is easie to demonstrate, that with the charge of two hundred thousand pound continued but for two years, or three at the most, they may not only be perswaded to live in peace, but all their swell- <sup>10</sup> ing and overflowing streams may be brought back into their natural channels and old banks. These two Nations, I say, are at this day the most eminent, and to be regarded; the one seeking to root out the Christian Religion altogether, the other the truth and sincere profession thereof; the one to joyne all *Europe* to *Asia*, the other the rest of all *Europe* to *Spain*.

For the rest, if we seek a reason of the succession and continuance of this boundless ambition in mortal men, we may add to that which hath been already said; That the Kings and Princes of the world have alwayes laid before them the actions, but not the ends of those great Ones which preceded them. They are always transported with the glory of the one, but they never minde the misery of the other, till they finde the ex- <sup>20</sup> pience in themselves. They neglect the advice of God, while they enjoy life, or hope it; but they follow the counsel of Death, upon his first approach. It is he that puts into man all the wisdom of the world, without speaking a word; which God with all the words of his Law, promises, or threats, doth infuse. Death, which hateth and destroyeth man, is believed; God, which hath made him, and loves him, is alwayes deferred. I have considered (saith *Salomon*) all the works that are under the Sun, and behold, all is vanity and vexation of spirit: but who believes it till Death tels it us? It was Death, which opening the conscience of *Charles* the first, made him enjoyn his son *Philip* to restore *Navarre*, and King *Francis* the first of *France*, to command that justice should be done upon the Murderers of the *Protestants* in *Merindol* and *Cabrieres*, which till then <sup>30</sup> he neglected. It is therefore death alone that can suddenly make man to know himself. He tels the proud and insolent, that they are but Abjects, and humbles them at the instant; makes them cry, complaine, and repent; yea, even to hate their forepassed happiness. He takes the account of the rich, and proves him a beggers a naked begger, which hath interest in nothing, but in the gravel that fills his mouth. He holds a Glasse before the eyes of the most beaurifull, and makes them see therein their deformity and rottenness; and they acknowledge it.

O eloquent, just, and mighty Death! whom none could advise, thou hast perswaded what none have dared, thou hast done, and whom all the world hath flattered, thou only hast cast out of the world and despised: thou hast drawn together all the far stre- <sup>40</sup> tched greatnesses, all the pride, cruelty, and ambition of man, and covered it all over with these two narrow words, *Hic jacet*.

Lastly, whereas this Book, by the title it hath, calls it self, *The first part of the General History of the World*, implying a second and third Volume; which I also intended, and have hewn out; besides many other discouragements, perswading my silence, it hath pleased God to take that glorious Prince out of the world, to whom they were directed; whose unspeakable and never enough lamented loss hath taught me to say with *Job*, *Vespa est in Lucum Cithara mea, & Organum meum in vocem flentium.*

FINIS.

## TO THE READER.

**T**He use of Chronologicall Tables is needfull to all Histori-  
 cals, that reach to any  
 length of time; and most of all, to those that are most general: since they can-  
 not, like Annals, yearly set down all occurrences not coherent. This here fol-  
 lowing, may serve as an Index to the present part of this work, pointing unto  
 the severall matters, that having fallen out at one time, are far dis-joynd in  
 the years of the first Patriarchs may seem to have been well-neer compleat, yet in the reigns  
 of the Kings of Juda and Israel, we finde many fractions, and the last year, or years, of  
 one King reckoned also as the foremost of another. The same is most likely to have fallen out  
 in many other, though not so precisely recorded. Hereto may be added the divers and imper-  
 fect forms of the year, which were in use among sundry Nations, causing the \* Sommer \* See lib. 2.  
 moneths, in processe of some ages, to fall into the winter; and so breeding extreme confu- cap. 3. sect. 5.  
 sion in the reckoning of their times. Neither is it a small part of trouble, to choose out of so  
 many, and so utterly disagreeing computations, as have already gotten authority, what may  
 probably be held for truth. All this, and a great deale more, is to be alleged, in excuse of  
 30 such error, as a more intensitive and perfect Calculator shall happen to finde herein. It may  
 serve to free the book, and likewise the Reader (if but of mean judgement) from any no-  
 torious Anachronicisme; which ought to suffice. The book indeed will need it, even in that  
 regard; not onely for some errors of the Presse, in the numbring of years, but for some  
 hastic mis-reckonings of mine own, which I desire to have hereby reformed, in hope that  
 the printing of this Table shall not want carefull diligence. The Reader, if he be not of-  
 fended with the rest, shall finde reason to be pleased with this, as tending wholly to his  
 own ease.

The titles over the Columns, have reference to that which follows under them, as will readily  
 be conceived. Where two titles, or more, are over the head, as [ <sup>same</sup> Macchabe ] there do the numbers  
 30 underneath proportionably answer, the higher to the higher, the lower to the lower. For exam-  
 ple, The walls of Jerusalem were finished in the 319. year from the building of Rome, and  
 in the 314. from Nabonassar. In like manner it is to be understood, That Jeholaphat began  
 his reign in the 3774. of the Julian Æra, in the 3092. of the world, and in the 99. year of  
 the Temple. This needs not more illustration, nor indeed so much, to those that are acquainted  
 with works of this kinde. To avoid prolixity, I have forbore to insert those years, which I  
 finde not signed with some regardable accident, as with the birth or death of some Patriarch;  
 the beginning of some Kings reign; some change of Government; some battell fought, or the  
 like. So of the 13. years wherein Sylvius Capetus reigned over the Latines, I note onely the  
 first, that is, omitting all between the 4. of Jeholaphat, wherein Capetus began, unto  
 the 17. wherein Sylvius Aventinus succeeded, and wherein Jehoram first reigned with Je-  
 40 holaphat his father. For I thought it vain to have filled up a page with 12. lines of idle ci-  
 phers, numbring forth 2. 3. 4. 5. and so still onwards, till I had come to the first of Aventi-  
 nus, and the 17. of Jeholaphat. In setting down the Kings, without notable interruption:  
 every one, what place he held in order of succession: as whether he were the first, second, fifth,  
 seventh, or so forth, in rank of those that reigned in his country, without notable interruption:  
 Before the name is the first year of his reign; at the end or foot of the name (as the space gives  
 leave) is the whole number of years in which he reigned, in the spaces following underneath,  
 are those years of his, which were concurrent with the beginning of some other King, or with the  
 year of any remarkable accident. Where two numbers, or more, are found before one Kings  
 50 name; there it is to be understood, that the same year belonged not onely to the King then be-  
 ginning, but unto some one, or more of his foregoers: as the first year of Jehoram King of  
 Israel, was the same with the second of his brother Ahaziah, and the 22. of his father Ahab.  
 So where two or three names are found in one space, as in the 3077. year of the World, Zimri,  
 Tibni, and Omri, it is meant, that every one of them reigned in some part of the same year,  
 which is reckoned the second of Ela, and the first of Omri. Particularly, under the reigns of  
 the Egyptian Kings, are set down the years of those Dynasties, which it was thought meet to  
 insert; as likewise otherwiles, the day, the moneth, upon which Nabonassar's year began,  
 which, how it varied from other years, may be found in the place last above cited.

## To the Reader.

*Concerning the Æra, or account of years, from Iphitus, who began the Olympiads, from Rome built, from Nabonassar, and the like; as it much as was thought convenient hath been said, where due place was, in the book it self: so as it remaineth only to note, that under the title of Olympiads, is set down, first the number of the Olympiad, and beneath it, the year of that Olympiad: as that Cyrus began his reign in Persia, in the 55. Olympiad, and the first year thereof.*

Now, for that the years of the world, of the Olympiads, of Rome, of Nabonassar, and other, had not beginning in one month, but some of them in March, some in April, some about Midsummer, and some at other times: the better to expresse their severall beginnings, some painfull Chronologers have divided them proportionably in their severall Columns, opposing that of the one year to part of the other: not (as I have here done) cutting all overboard with one straight line, as if all had begun and ended at one time. But this labour have I feared, as more troublefull than usefull, since the more part would not have apprehended the meaning, and since the learned might well be without it. It will only be needfull to observe, that howsoever the Aera of the Olympiads be 24 years elder than that of Rome, and 29. than that of Nabonassar, yet the reigns of some King may have begun at such a time of the year as did not suite with this difference. But hereof I take little regard. The more curious will easily finde my meaning: the vulgar will not finde the difficulty. One familiar example will explain all. Queen Elizabeth began her reign the 17. of November, in the year of our Lord 1558. She was crowned, held a Parliament, brake it up, threw down Images, and reformed many things in religion, all in her first year, yet not all in that year 1558, but the greater part in the year following, together we begin with the first of January, or with the 25. of March. The like may be otherwhiles found in this Table, but so, as the difference is never of a whole year.

The Julian Period, which I have placed as the greater number, over the years of the World, was delivered by that honourable, and excellently learned Joseph Scaliger: being accommodated to the Julian years, now in use among us. It consisteth of 7980, years, which result from the multiplication of 19, 28, and 15, that is, of the Cycle of the Moon, the Cycle of the Sun, and the years of an Indiction. Being divided by any of these, it leaves the number of the present year, or if no fraction remain, it shews the last year of that Cycle to be current. For example, in the 4498. of this Period, when was fought the great battell of Cannæ, the Prime or golden number was 14, the Cycle of the Sun, 18, and consequently the Dominical letter F. as may be found by dividing the same number of the Julian Period 4498. by 19. for the Prime, by 28. for the Cycle of the Sun. This Julian Period, after the present account, always exceeds the years of the world by 682. Besides the former use, and other thence redounding, it is a better Character of a year, than any other *Æra* (as) From the beginning of the World, From the Flood,

From Troy taken, or the like) which are of more uncertain position. More I shall not need to write, as touching the use or explication of these Tables. Neither was thus much requisite to such as are conversant in works of this kinde: it sufficeth if hereby all be made plain enough to the vulgar.

A  
CHRONOLOGICALL TABLE.

Years of the Julian Period, World,  
Patriarchs, &c.

[illegible]



	Julian. World promis.	Sem.	Salab.	Heber.	Abra- ham.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	
	1781 2099 16	541	406	376	91	6 1, Ari- us, 36	91	22	
born when Abraham was 100. years old com- 101. current.	2791 2109 25	551	416	386	101	11	101	32	1, Isaac 180
he last year of Salab.	2800 2126 43	568	433	403	118	28	118	49	18
	2811 2129 46	571		406	121	7 1, Ara- lus, 46	121	52	21
	2812 2130 47	572		407	122	2	122	6 1, E- git, 34	22
rai the wife of Abraham died this year.	2827 2145 62	587		422	137	17	137	16	37
act took Rebecca to wife, when he was 40. years pleat.	2831 2149 66	591		426	141	21	141	20	41
he last year of Sem.	3840 2158 75	600		435	150	30	150	29	50
	Julian. World. promis.	Heber.	Abra- ham.	Isaac.	Jacob.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Ar- gives.
	2846 2164 81	441	156	56		36	156	7 1, Thori- machus, 45	
	2851 2169 86	446	161	61	1, Jacob. 147	8 1, Bale- us, 30	161	6 1, Ina- chus, 50	
Abraham died this year.	2865 2183 100	460	175	75	15	15	175	20	15
Heber died this year.	2869 2187 104	464		79	19	19	179	24	19
the 17. Dynastie, called of the Shepherds, beginning year, lasted 103 years.	2891 2199 116			91	31	1, Arma- muthers, 38	191	36	31
	2760 1209 126			101	41	11	201	1, Lencip. pus, 53	41
	2901 2219 136			111	51	21	211	11	1, Phoro- nens, 60
the Flood of Ougeis a thousand and twenty years be- fore the Olympiads.	2919 2237 154			129	69	1, Bolo- cus Prif- cus, 35	229	29	19
See lib. 1. c. 7. §. 2.	2942 2260 177			152	92	24	252	52	42
	2944 2262 179			154	94	26	254	9 1, 2, 4, 47	44
	2952 2270 187			162	102	34	264	9	52
See L. 2. c. 2. §. 6.	2954 2272 189			164	104	1, 1, 1 1, Bole- us, 52	3	11	54

	Julian. World. promis.		Isaac.	Jacob.	Affria.	Egypt.	Sicyon.	Argives.	
Joseph sold into Egypt.	2959 2277 194		169	109	6	1, 0, 115 72, 115	16	59	18
	2961 2279 196		171	111	8	3 81	18	1. 3 1. Apr. 35	20
The last year of Isaac.	2970 2288 205		180	120	17	12 90	27	10	29
Israel into Egypt.	2980 2298 215			130	27	22 100	37	20	39
The eighteenth Dynastie in Egypt, which lasted 248 years.	2984 2302 219			134	31	26 1	41	24	43
	2991 2309 226			141	38	33 8	1. 10 1. Pere- tus. 46	31	50
	2996 2314 231			146	43	38 13	6	1. 4 1. Argus.	55
Jacob dies in Egypt.	2997 2315 232			147	44	39 14	7	2	
	Julian. World. promis.	Joseph.	Affria.		Egypt.	Sicyon.	Argives.		
	3006 2324 241	65	12 1. Alad- 32		48 23	16	11		
	3037 2355 272	96	32		79 54	11 1. 1. 1 1. 1. 1 48	42		
	3038 2356 273	97	13 1. Mamit- 30		80 55	2	43		
The last year of Joseph.	3051 2369 286	110	14		92 68	15	56		
	3066 2384 301		29		108 83	30	1. 5 1. Pirajis, 0 1. 1		

Julian. World. promise	Moses	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argives.		
3118 2436 353	3	16 1. Adamilus, or Mamilius, 30	12 135	34	53		
3120 2438 355	5	3	14 137	36	6 1. Phorbos, 35		
3121 2439 356	6	4	8 1. Orus, 1. or Baf- ris, 38, 138.	37	2	Athe- nians.	
3148 2465 383	33	17 1. Sparetus, 40	28 165	13 1. Marat- thius, 30	29		
3151 2469 386	36	4	31 168	4	32	1 1. Co- croptis, 50	
3155 2473 390	40	8	35 172	8	7 1. Tripas, 46	5	
3159 2477 374	44	12	1. Thermuth, or Achercheres, 20 12, 176.	12	5	9	
3171 2489 406	56	24	10 1. Kathoris, or A- cheron, 9, 188.	24	17	21	
3178 2469 413	63	31	8 195	14 1. Marat- thius, 20	24	28	
3180 2498 415	65	33	11 1. Chencres, 16 127	3	26	30	
3188 2506 423	37	18 1. Alcatades. 40	9 205	11	34	38	
3195 2513 430	80	8	16 212	18	41	45	
Julian. World. Exod.	Moses	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argos.	Athens	
3196 2514 1	81	9	12 1. Acherres, 8 213	19	42	46	
3198 2516 3	83	11	3 215	15 1. Kobi- reus, 55	44	48	
3201 2519 6	86	14	6 218	4	8 1. Crotopus, 21 1. Crotopus, 21 1. Crotopus, 21	2 1. Crotopus, 21 1. Crotopus, 21 1. Crotopus, 21	
3204 2522 9	89	17	13 1. Cherres, 15 221	7	4	4	
3211 2529 16	96	24	8 228	14	11	3 1. Amybi- ryon, 12	
3219 2537 24	104	32	14 1. Amicus, or Danaus, 5, 236	22	19	9	
3222 2540 27	107	35	4 239	25	9 1. Sthenelus, 11	12	

He visits his brethren the Israelites, kills an Egyptian, and flies into Midian.

Moses his wandering into Egypt.

The Passover. Israel delivered out of Egypt. The Law given. The first of the 480 years Exodus to the building of the Temple.

The Flood of Deucalion, and confederation of Phoenicians about this time.

Julian. World. Exod.	Moses	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argos.	Athens	
3223 2541 18	108	36	5 240	26	2	4 1. Eril- beus, 50	
3224 2542 29	109	37	15 1. Ramesses, 68 241	27	3	2	Troy.
3228 2546 35	113	19 1. Amyntas, 4	5 245	31	7	6	
3229 2547 34	114	2	6 246	32	8	7	1. Dar- danus, 6
3233 2551 38	118	6	10 250	36	10 1. Danaus, 50	11	5
3235 2553 40	120	8	12 252	38	3	13	7
Julian. World. Exod.	Israel	Affyria	Egypt.	Sicyon	Argos.	Athens	Troy.
3236 2554 41	1	9	13 253	39	4	14	8
3253 2571 58	18	26	30 270	16 1. Co- roptis, 30	21	31	25
3254 2572 59	2	27	31 271	2	22	32	26
3273 2591 78	20	20 1. Belochus the second, 25	50 290	21	41	1. Pan- dion, 40	45
3283 2601 88	30	11	60 300	17 1. Epe- neus, 35	11 1. Lynceus, 41	11	55
3292 2610 97	39	20	16 1. Menophis, 40 309	10	10	20	64
3293 2611 98	40	21	2 310	11	11	21	1. Eril- beus, 50
3294 2612 99	3	22	3 311	12	12	22	2
3298 2616 103	5	21 1. Belopares, 30	7	16	16	26	6
3313 2631 118	20	16	22 330	31	31	6 1. Eril- beus, 50	21
3318 2636 123	25	21	27 335	18 1. Lam- don, 40	36	6	26
3324 2642 129	31	27	33 341	7	12 1. Abbas, 2	12	32
3328 2646 133	35	22 1. Lampides.	37 345	11	5	16	36



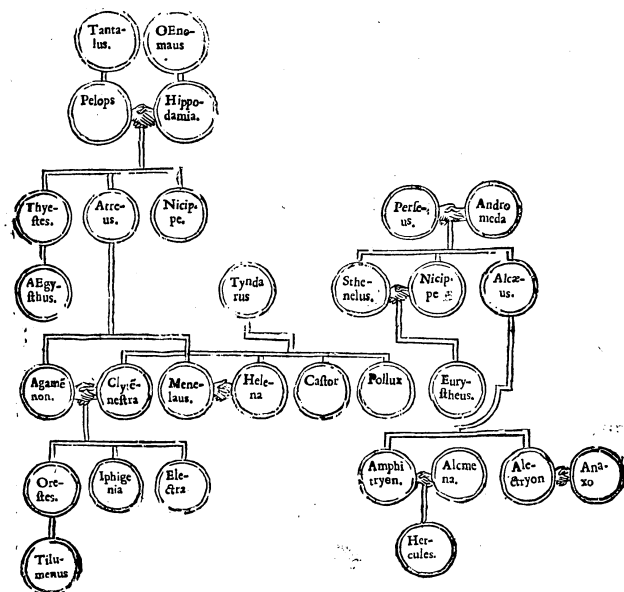
be 19. Dynastic : of the Larties, 194. years,  
2. c. 26. 8. 4.

Tantalus in Phrygia.

elops in Pisa, who gave name to Peloponnesus.

on and Xuthus the sons of Hellen.  
re lib. 2. c. 17. 9. 6.

for the death of Acrisius, the Kingdom of the Argives was  
divided into many small parts, and overgrown by that of Myce-  
nae, whereof some Kings descended from Perseus, others from  
Agamemnon, as in the Pedegree following.



	Juon World Exod.	Israel	Affria.	Egypt.	Seyon.	Myce- nae.	Athen.	Troy.
	3399 2717 201	26	20	13 68	42		37	4 1. Iliu, 55
	3402 2720 207	29	23	16 71	45	1. Eury- stheus. 45	40	4
	3403 2721 208	30	24	17 72	20 1. Poly- bus, 45	2	8 1. Pandie the 225	5
	3410 2728 215	37	25 1. Ponnias, 45	24 79	8	9	8	12
	3414 2732 219	5 1. Gede- on, 40	5	28 82	12	13	12	16
Pandion chased out of his Kingdom, which is recovered by his son Theseus, in few years after. The omission of this interreg- num, and reckoning the years in the forty eight of Theseus, on the numbering them apart by themselves, breeds an answerable dif- ference in the times of the Athenians following, as of Minos, Pe- lops, and the rest.	3427 2745 222	14	28	41 96	25	26	25	29
	3432 2750 237	19	23	46 101	30	31	9 1. Aeg- na, 40	34
Oedipus in Thebes.	3443 2761 248	30	34	57 112	21 1. Ina- chus, 4	42	12	45
	3447 2765 252	34	38	61 116	5	1. Aeneas and Thy- estes, 65	16	49
	3453 2771 258	40	44	19 1. Anemphis, 122 40	11	7	22	55
	3454 2772 259	6 1. Abi- melch.	45	2 123	12	8	23	5 1. Lamedon. 96
	3455 2773 260	2	26 1. Solarmus, 19	3 124	13	9	24	2
	3457 2775 262	7 1. Ibo- las 23	3	5 126	15	11	26	4
	3474 2762 279	18 1. Mitreus, 27	27 143	22 143	32	28	43	21
	3480 2792 285	8 1. Iair. 22	7	28 149	38	34	10 1. The- mus, 30.	27
	3485 2803 290	6	12	33 154	32 1. Phe- stus, 8	39	6	32
	3490 2808 295	11	17	38 159	6	44	11	6 1. Priamus. 40
	3493 2811 298	14	20	20 1. Anemmus 162 26	33 1. Adra- stus, 4	47	14	4
	3497 2815 302	18	24	51 166	24 1. Poly- phides, 32	51	18	8
	3501 2819 306	22	28 1. Teutanes, 32	9 170	5	55	22	12

	Julian World. Exad.	Israel.	Affria.	Egypt.	Sicion.	Myce- ne.	Athen.	Troy.	
	3502 2820 307	9 1. Lph- ia. 6	2	10 171	6	56	23	13	
	3505 2826 315	10 1. Il- zan. 7	8	15 177	12	62	29	19	
	3510 2828 315	3	10	18 179	14	64 1. Mne ste 24	11 3		
	3512 2830 317	5	12	20 181	16	1. Agamem- non. 16	3	23	
	3515 2833 320	11 1. Elon 10	15	23 184	19	4	6	26	
the war of Troy began this year.	3519 2837 324	5	19	21 1. Thueris, 7 188	23	8	10	30	
	3525 2843 330	12 1. Ab- don. 8	25	7 194	29	14	16	36	
the 20. Dynasty, called the Diopolitani, began in Egypt, and lasted 178. years, See lib. 2. 26. §. 4.	3526 2844 331	2	26	20 1. Dynastie, 178	30	15	17	37	
	3528 2846 333	4	28	3	25 1. Pelag- us, 20	17	19	39	
Troy taken 408. years, before the beginning of the See lib. 2. c. 14. §. 1.	3529 2847 334	5	29	4	2	18	20	40. Troy ta- ken.	
	Julian World Exad.	From Troy taken.	Israel.	Affria.	Egypt.	Sicion.	Myce- ne.	Athen.	The Kingdom of the Latins
	3530 2848 335	1	6	30	5	3	1. Agamem- non. 6	21	
	3533 2851 338	4	13 1. Samson, 20	29 1. Tem- 40	8	6	4	24	1. Aeneas, 3
	3534 2852 339	5	2	2	9	7	5	12 1. Demop- hon, 33	2
	3536 2854 341	7	4	4	11	9	1. Ore- thes, 70	3	1. Afcianus, 38
	3548 2866 353	19	16	16	23	26 1. Zeucir- pus. 31	13	15	13
	3553 2871 358	2	14 1. Eli, 40	21	28	6	18	20	18
	3567 2885 372	38	15	35	42	20	32	13 1. Osin- tes, 12	32
	3573 2891 378	44	21	30 1. Ty- neus 30	48	26	38	7	38
	3574 2892 379	45	22	2	49	27	39	8	1. Syl. Post- humus. 29

	Julian World. Exad.	From Troy taken.	Israel.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Sicion.	Myce- ne.	Athen.	The Kingdom of the Latins
The Sicionian Kings ended in Zeucippus.	3579 2897 384	50	27	7	54	32	44	14 1. Afbi- lus, 1.	6
	3580 2898 385	51	28	8	55		45	15 1. Timar- tes, 8.	7
	3588 2906 393	59	36	16	63		53	16 1. Melan- tus, 37	15
	3593 2911 398	64	15 1. Samuel, & af- ter him Saul, 40	21	68		58	6	20
	3603 2921 405	74	11	31 1. Derc- lus, 40.	78		68	16	1. Sylvius A- neas, 31.
	3606 2924 411	77	14	4	81		1. Tisame- nus, 2	19	4
The descent of the Heraclida into Peloponnesus, gave end to the Kingdom of Mycenae, and beginning to the Kingdom of Spar- ta, Carinib, and Messene, the Kings whereof, I refer to infer in this table.	3609 2927 414	80	17	7	84			22	7
	3625 2943 430	96	33	23	100			17 1. Co- lurus, 21	23
	Julian World. Exad.	From Troy taken.	Israel.	Aff- ria.	Egypt.	Athen.	Latins.		
	3633 2951 438	104	1. David, 40.	31	108	9	31		
	3634 2951 439	105	2	32	109	10	1. Syl. Le- tinus, 50		
	3643 2961 448	114	11	32 1. Eupre- des, 38.	118	19	10		
The Medontide succeed unto the Athenian King: af- ter the death of Codrus. See lib. 2. c. 17. §. 10.	3646 2964 451	117	14	4	121	1. Me- don, 20.	13		
	3666 2984 471	137	34	24	141	1. Agla- fus, 36	33		
Vaphres reigneth in Egypt, See L. 2. c. 26. §. 5.	3673 2991 478	144	1. Salomon, 40	31	148	8	40		
Solomon began to build the Temple 480. years com- put after the deliverance out of Egypt.	3676 2994 481	3	147	4	34	151	11	43	
	3681 2999	6	152	9	33 1. Leoll- bones, 43	156	16	48	
	3684 3002	9	155	12	4	159	19	6 1. Syl. Alba.	
	3692 3010	17	163	20	12	1. Selac- 26 167	27	9	
	3702 3020	27	173	30	22	11	177	3 1. Archi- pus, 19	19

	Julian World.	Temple	from Troy taken.	Israel.	Affyria.	Egypt.	Athens.	Latine.	
Dynastie in Egypt, which lasted 130 years.	3704 3022	29	175	32	24	13 1	3	21	
Jonick migration after the taking of Troy, 180 See L.2.c.17.5.6.	3709 3027	34	180	37	29	18 6	8	26	
	Julian World. Temple	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria.	Egypt.	Athens	Latins.	
	3713 3031	148	1. Rehoboam. 17	1. Jeroboam. 22	33	22 10	12	30	
	3718 3036	189	6	6	38	15 15	17	35	
	3721 3039	192	9	9	41	4 18	4 (Tesp- Puis, 41)	38	
	3723 3041	194	11	11	43	6 20	3	7 18, 4- 9, 20	
	3726 3044	197	14	14	1. Pyritbiades. 30	9 23	6	4	
	3730 3048	201	2 1. Abijam, 3	18	5	13 27	10	8	
	3733 3051	204	3 1. Afa. 41	21	8	16 30	13	11	
	3734 3052	205	2 1. Nadeb. 2	22	9	17 31	14	12	
	3735 3053	206	3 1. Baafba, 24	2	10	18 32	15	13	
	3749 3067	220	17	15	24	32 46	29	1. Syl. Cap. 28	
	3756 3074	227	24	22	1. Ophrateus. 20	39 53	36	8	
	3758 3076	229	26	24 4 1. Elda. 2.	3	41 55	38	10	
Of the 21. Dynastie. The Dynasties following limit.	3759 3077	230	27	1. Zimri. 6. Tibai. 7. Omri 12	4	42 56	39	11	
	3762 3080	233	30	4	7	45 50	3 1Pbor- 4, 31	14	
	3768 3086	239	36	10	13	1. C. De- opi, 56 65	7	20	
	3770 3088	241	38	12 8 1. Athab, 22.	15	3 67	9	22	
	3774 3092	245	4 1. Jeholaphat. 25	5	19	7 71	13	26	

	Julian World. Temple	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria.	Egypt.	Athens.	Latine.	
	3776 3094	247	3	7	16 1. Ophra- lanes. 50	9 73	15	28	
	3777 3095	248	4	8	2	10 74	16	1. Syl. Capetus. 13	
Of Jehoram his sundry beginnings to reign. See lib. 2.c.20.5.1. & 2.	3790 3108	261	17 5 1. Jehoram.	21 9 1. Abazia, 2	15	23 87	29	1. Syl. Ty- le mas 3	
	3791 3109	262	18 2	10 1. Jehoram	16	24 88	30	2	
	3793 3111	264	20 0	3	18	26 90	6 1. Meqa- d-s. 30	4	
	3793 3113	266	22 1. Jehoram a- gim, 8.	5	20	28 92	3	6	
Jeholaphat dies, and Jehoram reigns alone.	3798 3116	269	25 4	8	23	31 95	6	1. Syl. A- gippa.	
	3802 3120	273	6 1. Abazia. 1.	12	27	35 99	10	5	
	3803 3121	274	7 1. Athalia.	11 7	28	36 100	11	6	
	3809 3125	280	8 1. Jous, 40.	7	34	42 106	17	12	
Carthage built. L.2.c.22.5.6.	3819 3137	290	11	17	44	52 116	27	22	
	3825 3143	294	15	21	48	65 120	1. Diog- netus, 28	26	
	3824 3142	295	16	22	49	1. C. De- opi, 50. 121	2	27	
	3826 3144	297	18	24	50 151	3 172	4	29	
	3831 3149	302	23	1. Jobuahaz, 17	6	8 128	9	34	
The end of the 21. Dynastie. The Dynasties following limit.	3833 3151	304	25	3	8	10 130	11	36	
	3839 3157	310	31	9	14	16 164	17	1. Syl. Al- ladus, 19	
Joas reigned with his Father. L.2.c.22.5.7.	3845 3163	316	37	15 13 1. Joas.	20	22	23	7	
Joas reigns alone.	3847 3165	318	39	1. Joas, 16	22	24	25	9	
	3848 3166	319	40 9 1. Amasia, 20	2	23	25	26	10	

	Julian. World. Templ.	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyr- ria.	Egypt.	Athens.	Latins	
	3251 3269 176	332	4	5	26	28	8 1 Phere- dis. 19	13	
	3258 3166 185	329	11	12	33	35	8 1 Syl. A- veninus. 37		
	3262 3180 187	333	15	16 14 1 Jeroboam. 41	37	39	12	5	
	3268 3186 193	339	21	7	38 1 Sarda- napalus. 20	45	18	11	
	3270 3188 195	341	23	9	3	47	9 1 Ari- piron. 20	12	
	3274 3192 199	345	27	13	7	1. Mi- cerinus. 6	5	16	
	Julian. World. Templ.	Troy.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyr- ria.	Egypt.	Athens	Latins	Media.
L. 2. C. 22. §. 11.	3277 3195 202	348	1. Interregnum 11 years.	16	10	4	8	19	
	3280 3198 205	351	4	19	13	2. Boc- choris. 44	11	22	
L. 2. C. 22. §. 12.	3287 3205 212	358	11	26	20. Sar- dnapalus slain.	8	18	29	
L. 2. C. 33. §. 1. & 4.	3288 3206 213	359	10 1. Vazias, Azarias. 52	27		9	19	30	1. A- bates. 8
	3290 3208 215	361	3	29		11	10 1 Theopo- lus. 27.	32	3
L. 2. C. 23. §. 4.	3292 3210 217	363	5	31	1. Belus or Pbul. 48	13	3	34	5
	3295 3213 220	366	8	34	4	16	6	14 1 Syl. Pyocas. 11	8
L. 2. C. 23. §. 1.	3293 3211 222	374	16	1. Interregnum 23 years.	12	24	14	9	16
	3296 3234 241	387	29	14	25	37	27	22	2 1 Syl- mus. 30
	3297 3235 242	388	30	15	26	38	11 1 Agam- nestor. 27	23	2
	3298 3236 243	389	31	16	27	39	2	11 1 Syl. A- mulius. 44	3
	3294 3242 245	395	37	22	33	1. A. Guba de after him. A. nos. 6	8	7	9
Zacharia began at the very end of the year. L. 2. C. 31. §. 1.	3295 3143 250	396	38	13 11 Zachariah fix Monetis.	34	2	9	8	10

	Julian. World. Temple	Troy.			Juda.	Israel.	Affyria	Egypt.	Athens	Latins	Media.
	3296 3244 251	397			39	35	3	10	9	11	
This year nearly concurs with the first of Mena- don.	3297 3245 252	398			40	1	36	4	11	10	12
	3290 3248 255	401			43	4	39	1. Sabon- ous th. p. 10	14	13	15
	3297 3255 262	408	Iphit.	Olym- piads.	50	18 1. Pek- dia. 2	46	4	12 1. Adchy- lus. 23	20	22
The beginning of the Olympiads. L. 2. c. 23. §. 5.	3298 3256 263	409	1	1	51	2	47	9	2	21	23
	3299 3257 264	410	2	1	52	1. Pek- dia. 10	48	10	3	22	24
L. 2. c. 23. §. 6.	3294 3258 265	411	3	1 3	1. J. A. 16	2	1. Tiglat- Pileser. 2	11	4	23	25
	Julian. World. Templ.	Iphit.	Olym.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria	Egypt.	Athens	Latins	Media.	
	3296 3264 271	9	3	7	8	7	17	10	29	3 1. Medi- dus. 40	
	3295 3273 280	18	5 2	16 1. A. 10	17	16	26	19	38	10	
	3299 3277 284	22	6 2	5	1. Inter- regnum 7. 3. 27.	20	30	23	42	14	
	3296 3278 285	23	6 3	6	2	21	31	13 1. A. C- mer. 2	43	15	
	Julian. World. Templ.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olym.	Juda.	Israel.	Affyria	Egypt.	Athens	Romans	Media.
Rome built, Lib. 2. chap. 14 §. 5. Croops the first, governing in Athens for ten years: after him succeeded six, chosen each after other for the like time; then the Office became Annual.	3292 3280 287	1	25	7 1	8	4	25	33	1 1. Ca- rops. 10	1 1. Rome- ter. 37	17
	3296 3284 291	5	29	8 1	12	20 1. Hoja 9	27	37	5	5	21
The Era of Nabonassar. L. 2. c. 25. §. 1.	3297 3285 292	6	30	8 2	13	2	3 1. S. 10. 1. S. 10. 1. Nabonassar 19	38	6	6	22
Ezekiah began in the very end of this year. L. 2. 25. §. 1.	3298 3286 293	7	31	8 2	14 1. E. 11 1. E. 11	3	2	39	7	7	23
This year concurs with the first of Ezekiah. Ibid.	3299 3287 294	8	32	8 4	15	4	3	40	8	8	24
The beginning of the first Messenian War. Whereof L. 2. c. 27. §. 4. It lasted 20. years.	3297 3289 296	10	34	9 2	3	6	5	42	10	10	26
Samaria is besieged by Salmanassar.	3292 3290 297	11	35	9 3	4	7	6	43		11	27

The Captivity of the ten Tribes.	3974	13	10	6	9	8	45	13	29
	3292	8	37	1					
	299								
L. 2. c. 26. §. 7.	3976	15	10	8		10	47	15	31
	3294	10	39	3		1. Seta-cherib, 7			
	301								
Sennacherib's Army destroyed, and he slain. L. 2. c. 25. §. 2.	3980	19	11	12	Kings of Assyria, 12	5	Se-cherib, 33	19	35
	3298	14	43	3					
	301								
Merodach gets the whole Empire. This year or in end of the year foregoing. An eclipse of the Moon.	3982	21	12	14		7	3	21	37
	3300	16	45	1					
	307								
L. 2. c. 27. §. 2.	3985	22	12	15	1. Merodach, or Mardacompasus	1. Asarhaddon, 10	4	22	38
	3301	17	46	2					
	208								
Two eclipses of the Moon, in the second year of Sardanapadus.	3986	25	13	18	4	4	7	25	4
	3304	20	49	1					1. Sardanapadus, 13
	311								
L. 2. c. 27. §. 2.	3993	32	14	25	1. Merodach, 40	11	14	32	8
	3311	27	56	4					
	318								
The beginning of the second Median War, which lasted about 18 years.	3994	33	15	26	2	15	33	9	
	3312	28	57	1					
	319								
L. 2. c. 27. §. 2.	3997	36	15	29	5	18	36	12	1
	3319	31	60	4					1. Gyges, 38
	322								
L. 2. c. 27. §. 2.	3998	37	16	30	6	19	37	13	2
	3316	31	61	1	1. Mardach, 41				
	323								
L. 2. c. 27. §. 2.	3999	38	16	2	7	20	38	14	3
	3317	33	62	2					1. Deion, 53
	324								
L. 2. c. 27. §. 2.	4000	39	16	3	8	21	39	15	4
	3318	34	63	3					1. Numa Pompilius, 43
	325								
The beginning of the second Median War, which lasted about 18 years.	4013	52	19	16	21	1. Inter-regnum, 2	14	15	17
	3334	47	76	4					
	338								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4015	54	20	18	23	1. 12. Princes, 15	16	17	19
	3333	49	78	2					
	340								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4020	68	23	32	37	1. Pam-niceus, 44	30	31	33
	3347	63	92	4					
	354								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4038	72	24	36	5	34	38	37	
	3351	67	96	4	1. Ben-merodach, 41				
	358								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4035	74	25	38	3	7	36	37	2
	3353	69	98	2					1. Ar-hy, 49
	360								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4043	82	27	46	11	15	45	9	
	3361	77	106	2					1. Tullus Hostilius, 32
	368								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4052	91	29	55	20	24	10	18	
	3370	86	115	3					1. Pyrrhus, 24
	377								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 3.	4053	92	29	55	21	25	11	2	19
	3371	87	116	4	1. A-mon, 2				
	378								

	Julian World, Temp.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Juda.	Chal-dea.	Egypt.	Rome.	Media.	Lydia.
The expedition of the Scythians. L. 2. c. 28. §. 3. & 4.	4054	93	117	30	2	1. Nabu-laffer, 35	26	12	3	20
	3372									
	379	88								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 1.	4055	94	118	30	16	1. Jeli-ly, 31.	27	13	4	21
	3373									
	380	89								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 1.	4073	112	136	34	19	1. Ne-ly, 17.	31	22	39	
	3391									
	298	107								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 1. & 2.	4075	114	138	35	21	1. Ance-ly, 34	24	41		
	3393									
	400	109								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 1. & 2.	4076	115	139	35	22	1. Jeli-ly, 31.	25	42		
	3394									
	401	110								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 1. & 2.	4084	123	147	37	30	1. Jeli-ly, 31.	12	10	9	3.
	3402									1. Sady-ates, 31.
	409	118								
Nabuchodonosor had reigned one year with his Father, which is regarded in Assyrian call observations concerning his time.	4085	124	148	37	17	1. Jeli-ly, 31.	13	11	10	2
	3402									
	410	119								
L. 2. c. 25 §. 1 & c. 28. §. 6.	4086	125	149	38	18	1. Jeli-ly, 31.	14	12	11	3
	3404									
	411	120								
L. 2. c. 25 §. 1 & c. 28. §. 6.	4089	128	152	39	5	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	17	15	14	6
	3407									
	414	123								
Zedekiah his journey to Babylon.	4090	129	153	39	5	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	16	15	7	
	3408									
	415	124								
L. 2. c. 28. §. 6.	4096	135	159	40	8	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	7	22	21	4.
	3414									1. Hal-ates, 57.
	421	130								
Jerusalem taken by Nabuchodonosor, with whose 18. for the more part, and partly with whose 19. this year concurred.	4099	138	162	41	4	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	10	24	4	
	3417									
	424	133								
Jerusalem destroyed.	4102	141	165	42	7	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	4	27	7	
	3420									
	427	136								
Egypt conquered by Nabuchodonosor.	4106	145	169	43	11	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	5	8	31	11
	3424									
	431	140								
L. 3. c. 1. §. 8. & 9.	4107	146	170	43	1	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	6	9	32	12
	3425									
	441	150								
L. 3. c. 1. §. 8. & 9.	4111	150	174	44	5	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	13	36	16	
	3429									
	445	155								
Nabuchodonosor lives wilde: and his kingdom is governed by others for him, during seven years.	4116	155	179	45	10	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	18	38	21	
	3434									
	450	150								
L. 3. c. 1. §. 13.	4125	154	188	47	19	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	15	27	10	30
	3443									
	4127	166	190	48	21	1. Nabu-laffer, 35.	17	29	12	32
	3445									

	Julian and World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Juda.	Chal- dea. <small>1 Laboro- sardach, 9 mon.</small>	Egypt.	Rome.	Media.	Lydia.	
<b>ouchadnezzar recovers his sense and kingdom.</b>	4131	170	194	49	25		21	33	16	36	
<b>L. 3.c.1. 60.</b>	3449	165		2							
<b>be 37. of Jeconia his captivity compleat, and he en- d.</b>	4133	172	196	49	27	Eviden- tadach, 26	23	35	18	38	
	3451	167		4							
	4137			50							
	3455	176	200	4	31	5	27	6 1. Servo- as Tullu- 44	22	42	
<b>by years, &amp; the conquest of Egypt past, Amasis be- has reign: this being inclusively the 41. and there- the next year seems concurrent with Amasis his 1</b>	4151	190	214	45	54	19	Ana- lis, 34	15	5	56	
	3469	185		2							
	4153			54			2		3	5 1. Cræ- us, 14	
	3471	192	216	4	47	21		17			
	Julian. World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Perfia	Chaldea.	Egypt.	Rome.	Media.	Lydia.	Jewes.
	4154	193	217	55	1. Cyn- in Persi- 23	22	3	18	4	2	48
	3472	188		1							
<b>The seven Sages of Greece.</b>	4159	198	222	50	6	1. Bal- thasar, 17	8	23	9	7	53
	3477	195		2							
<b>Pisistratus makes himself Tyrant in Athens.</b>	4164	203	227	57	11	6	13	28	14	12	58
	3482	198		3							
	4166	205	229	58	13	8	15	30	16	14 Cræsus 24, 14 Cyrus, 17	60
	3484	200		1							
<b>The end of the Chaldean Empire.</b>	4175	214	238	60	22	17. Bal- thasar flour.	24	39	25		69
	3493	209		2							
	4176	215	239	60	3	1. Da- rius 1st Mede, 2	23	40	26		70
	3491	210		3							
<b>The beginning of Cyprus his Empire.</b>	4177	215	240	60	1. Cy- rus, 7	2	26	41			Years from 1. Cyrus
<b>His Edict of liberty to the Jewes.</b>	3495	211		4							Zoro- babel.
	4181	220	244	61	5		30	7 1. Targu- m, 31	5		One's Zorobabel and Nchemias ac- counted as ge- nerous of the Jewes, unto the 32 of Artaxerxes Mnemon But these were many before Nchemias, as I self witness Ch. 5. v. 15. for that the houses of them, be- number and names are uncertain.
	3499	215		4							
	4184	223	247	62	1. Cam- byses, 7		33	4	8		
	3502	218		3							
<b>The 2. first years of Esammeticus, and part of the third mo- added to the years of his fathers, it be true that Cambyses an Egypt presently on the death of Amasis, L. 3.c.4. 5. 2.</b>	4186	225	249	63	3	1. Esam- meticus, 3	6	10			
	3504	220		1							
<b>The conquest of Egypt by Cambyses.</b>	4188	227	251	63	5		3	8	12		
	3506	222		3							
	Julian. World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Perfia	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece	Jewes.	From Cyrus.	
<b>Cambyses reigned seven years and five months, so as his last year was filled up by the Magi, and (as may seem) a good part of the next, L. 3.c.4. 5. 4.</b>	4191	230	254	64	The Ma- gi one year.		11			15	
	3509	225		2							
	4192	231		64	1. Dar- ius 1st flour, 26		12			16	
	3510	226		3							

	Julian World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olym.	Perfia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	from Cy- rus.
	4197	236	260	65	6		17	Hippias the son of Pisistratus Tyrant in Athens.	21
	3515	231		4					
	4204	243	267	67	24th of the month of the year by Di- odorus.		42		23
	3522	238		3					
<b>The Tarquines expelled Rome.</b> L. 4. c. 1. 5. 1.	4205	244	268	67	14		25		29
	3523	239		4					
<b>The Carthaginians first League with Rome.</b> L. 5. c. 1. 5. 2.	4206	245	269	68			brutus & Publ. Col.	Confus.	30
	3524	240		1					
<b>L. 3.c.5. 5. 4.</b>	4211	250	274	69	20. Darius the rege- darius a gainst the Egyptians				35
	3529	245		2					
	4212	251		69				The Athenians and Ionians take Sardes.	36
	3530	246	275	3	21				
	4222	261		72			sp. Capi- us Poph. Carnatus Carnatus.	The battle of Marathon.	46
	3540	256	285	1	31				
	4220	205	289	73	35	Agypt rebel- led against Darius.			50
	3544	260		1					
	4228	267		73	4 1. Xer- xes, 21				50
	3546	262	291	3					
<b>The Law Agraria in Rome propounded, for division of Lands: which bred great commotion.</b>	4229	268		73	2	Egypt recov- ered by Xer- xes.	Proc. Vir- ginia. Sp. Capius	Conf.	52
	3547	263	292	4					
<b>An Eclipse of the Sun. L. 3.c.6. 5. 2.</b>	4233	272		74	6. The great muster of Xerxes his army at Sardes.				57
	3551	267		4					
<b>L. 3.c.6. 5. 3. &amp; 6.</b>	4234	273	297	75	7			the battles of Thermopylae, Ar- temisium, and Ga- lami.	58
	3552	268		1					
<b>L. 3.c.6. 5. 9, 10, &amp; 11.</b>	4235	274		75	8. Xerxes his tragi- call love.			The battle of Platæa and My- cale.	59
	3553	269	298	2				The Athenians re- cover walls and city of Ionia, and the foundation of this temple.	62
<b>L. 3.c. 7. 5. 1. &amp; 2.</b>	4237	276		75	10				
	3555	271	300	4					
	4244	283		77				The great victory of Simon at Eurygarden and elsewhere.	68
	3562	278	307	3	17				
<b>L. 3.c. 7. 5. 3.</b>	4248	287		78	12. The death of Xerxes by the treason of Ata- banus.				72
	3566	282	311	3					
	4249	288		78				the mischief of being banished from 10 Artaxerxes.	73
	3567	283	312	4					
	4251	290		94	3	mans 11 up to King by the E- gyptians.			75
	3569	285	314	2					
<b>L. 3.c. 7. 5. 5. &amp; 7.</b>	4255	294		80	7. The massages of Hector.			Darius van- quished by the Persians.	76. Darius conquered the Persians. Darius was killed by his sons, or by others, according to the writers.
	3573	289		2					
	4264	303	327	82	16			The Decree of the Senate of the Roman People.	10
	3582	298		3					



Julian. World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphitus.	Olym.	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	Events from 650 to Dionet.
4265	304		82	17			Symon voyags to Cyprus, in which he dyed.	89
4268	299	328	4					91
4268			83	20			A plague, for 36 years, between Athens & Sparta.	92
4286	307	331	3					94
4272	311		84	24				96
4290	306	335	3					18
4273	312		84	25			The conquest of Samos by the A- thenians and I- oniens.	97
3591	307	336	4					19
4278	317		86	30			The Athenians & the Corinthians at- tack the Corinthi- ans.	102
3596	312	341	1					24
4280	319		86					104
4280	314	343	3	32				26
4283	322		87					107
4283	322	346	3	25			The first year of the Pelopon- nesian War.	29
3601	317		2					39
4289	328		88					113
3607	323	352	4					35
4290	329		89	8			The victory of the Athenians at Salamis.	114
3608	324	353	1	1. Darius (Nabon. 19- 20)				36
4291	331		89	3				116
3610	326	355	3					38
4301	340		91					125
3619	335	364	4					48
4302	341		92					128
3620	336	365	1					50
4304	343		92	15				130
3622	338		93					52
4306	345		93	17				132
3624	340	369	1					54
4307	346		93					134
3625	341	370	2	18				56
4308	347		93	19				136
3626	342	371	3					58
4309	348		93					138
3627	343	372	4					60
4311	350		94					140
3629	345	374	2					62
4313	352		94					142
3631	347	376	4					64

	Jusan and World.	Rome, and Nabon.	Iybit.	Olym- piads	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	Jews From Cyrus Daniel.
L.3.c.11.5.4.	4318 3636	357 352	581	96 1	10	6		Agessilus war- reid in Asia.	142 64
L.3.c.11.5.7.	4320 3638	359 354	383	96 3	12	8		The victory of Cimon at Gni- lus &c.	144 64
	4321 3639	360 355	384	96 4	13	9	Was taken by Camilus.	Xenophon and Plato flourish.	145 67
	4325 3643	364 359	388	97 4	17		the remarkable story of Camillus over the Etruski.		149 71
L.4.c.7.5.1. L.3.c.11.5.9.	4326 3644	365 360	389	98 1	18		Rome taken and burnt by the Gauls.	The Peace of Antalcidas.	150 72
	4327 3645	376 361	390	98 2	19	4 1. Nectanebus.			151 73
	4332 3650	371 366	395	99 3	24	6	M. Manlius Ca- pitoline put to death.	The Lacedaemon- ians take the City of Thebes by assault.	156 78
L.3.c.11.5.11.	4336 3654	375 370	399	100 3	28	10		The Babylonians renew their Citadel and make Babylon war upon the Lacedaemonians.	160 82
	4340 3658	379 374	403	101 3	32	14			164 86
L.3.c.12.5.1.	4343 3661	382 377	406	102 2	35	17		The famous battail of Leu- stra.	167 89
L.3.c.12.5.4.	4345 3663	384 379	408	102 4	37		L. Sextus a Ple- beian, and L. Aemilius, Consuls.	The happy growth of the Theban Estate.	169 91
	4351 3669	390 385	414	104 2	43 Many Praen- ces rebell against Artaxerxes, and are soon reduced.	7		The great battail of Mantinea, E- paminondas dies.	175 97 Jonathan
L.3.c.12.5.8.	4352 3670	391 386	415	104 3	10 1. Ochus. 25	8. Tachus betray- ed by Ag. Silius. 1. Nectanebus, 12		176 about this time High Priest.	178 98
	4354 3672	393 388	417	105 1	3	3		1 Philip King of Macedon 24 y. & part of the 25	100
L.4.c.1.5.4.	4359 1677	398 393	422	106 2	8	8		6. The Phœcian war begins.	183 105
	4364 3682	403 398	427	107 3	13. Ocnus re- conquers E- gypt.	13. Nectanebus flee into Elio- pota.		11	188 110
L.4.c.1.5.6.	4368 3686	407 402	431	108 3	17			15. The end of the Phœcian War.	192 114
L.5.c.1.5.4.1.4.	4369 3687	408 403	432	108 4	18			10. Timotheus his voyage into Sicily.	193 115
	4370 3688	409 404	433	109 1	19	Nabonassar. Novemb. the 17		17. Philip wrests Ilyria and draws the Thebaisians to his side from.	194 116
After this the years from Cy- rus and Daniel are too few, by	4375 3693	414 409	438	110 2	11 1. Arif. 3.			22	199 Judas High Priest, 16

	Julian and World.	Rome, and Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Persia.	Egypt.	Rome.	Greece.	Jews From Cyrus Daniel.
	4370	415	459	110	2			23 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	2
	3694	410		3				25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	199
	3378	417	441	111	1. Darius 6 years and 6 months.	Nab. n. Novemb. 15		25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	201
	3696	412		1				25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	123
	4379	418	442	111	2			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	5
	3697	413		2	2			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	202
	380	419		111				25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	124
	3608	414	413	3	3			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	6
	4381	420		111	4			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	203
4.c.7.S.1.	369	415	444	4	the battail of Lysus.			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	125
4.c.2.S.5.6.&7.&L.5 8.	382	421	445	112	5			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	7
	3700	416		1				25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	204
	4383	422	446	112	6			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	126
an Eclipse of the Moon.	3701	417		2	The battail of Arbela.			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	9
4.c.2.S.13.	4384	423	447	112	7			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	206
	3702	418		3	Darius slain by Belshazzar.			25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	10
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	207
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	129
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	7
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	131
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	16
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	135
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	101
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	136
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	4
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	139
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	5
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	140
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	7
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	142
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	8
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	143
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	12
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	147
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	13
								25 The battle of the Eclips. 8th day of the cap. General of the Greek.	148

	Julian and World.	Rome, and Nabon.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria and the Kingdome of the Greeks.	Greece.	Rome.	Jews Daniel.
The Era of the Kingdome of the Greeks.	4404	443	467	117	7	14	1. Seleucus, 30	Lib. 4.c.5.5-7		14
Alexanders Cap- tains assume the name of Kings.	3722	438		3			3	Athen 1.c. free by Demetrius the son of Antigonus.		149
	3724	440	469	118	9		16 Ptolemy overcom by Demetrius at Cyprus.			16
	4413	452	476	119	16	23	1. The battail at Issus, where An- tigonus was slain.			23
L.4.c.6. S.4.	3731	447		4			10			158
	4414	453	477	120	17	24	1. Seleucus makes alliance with De- metrius.			159
	3732	448					11			4
	4417	456	480	120			14			162
	3735	451		4			18			8
L.4.c.6. S.7.	4421	460	484	121	1. Demetrius, 6	31	18			166
	3739	455		4						
	4427	466	490	123	1. Pyrrhus, 7. Monarch.	37	24			172
	4745	461		2						2
	4428	467	491	123	1. Lysimachus, 5	38	25			173
	3746	452		3						3
	4429	468	492	123	2	39 9 1. Ptolemy Philadelphus, 38	26			174
	3747	463		4			26			6
The translation of the Bible by the Sep- tuagint.	4432	471	495	124	5	4	29			177
L.4.c.6. S. 9. & 27.S. 2.	3750	466		3			29			7
	4433	472	496	124	6. Lyfmachus slain.	5	30 Seleucus slain in the end of the 12. Olymp. Ptolemy and Lysim.			178
4.c.7.S.3.&7.	3751	467		4	Seleucus 7. Mon.	6	30			8
	4434	473	497	124	1. Paul. Ceranus, Antigonos, Seleucus, Siphonius.	6	1. Antiochus Se- ler.			179
	3752	468		1			19 The Gauls great sent in Macedon Greece, under Bren- nus and Belgius.			10
	4436	475	499	125	1. Antigonos Gonatas, 26	8	33			181
	3754	470		1			5			12
L.5.c.2.S.6.	4438	477	501	126	3		35 About this time the Achaeans be- gan their society.			183
	3756	472		1			6			13
	4439	478	502	126	4	11	25			184
	3757	473		2			8			15
L.4.c.7.S.5.	4441	480	504	125	6	13	38 Pyrrhus slain at Argos.			186
	3759	475		4			12			19
The Translation by the Septuagint finished, this of Philadelphus.	4445	484	508	127	10	17	42			190
	3763	497		4			18. Nabo- nassar, 29			191
	4446	485	509	128	11		90			5
	3764	480		1			12. Nabo- nassar, 28			5
The more Judicious Roman Legate have been often persuaded, that Lysias had killed whom so name.	4450	489	513	129	15		47			5
	3768	484		1						5

	Julian. and I'ord.	Rome. Nabor.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria and the Kingdom of the Greeks.	Greece.	Romans.	Jewes. Danie.	Consuls.
							1. Antiochus Thus. 15			8	L. Valerius.
	4453	492	516	129	18	25				198	T. Octavius.
	3771	487	517	4						9	G. Duilius.
L. 5. c. 1. § 6.	4454	393	517	130	19	26	2		Julius his vi- tory at Sea.	199	Cn. Cornelius.
	772	488		1			51		Regulus pal- eth into A- frick.	12	M. Atil. Reg.
	4457	496	520	130	22	29	5			202	Cn. Cornelius.
	3772	491		4			54			13	L. Manlius.
L. 5. c. 1. § 8.	4458	497	521	131	23	30	6		Marcus Cury- menis Preto) of the Achæan.	203	Q. Ceditus.
	776	492		1			55			18	L. Cæcilius.
	4463	502	526	132	28	35	11		Aratus recovers Sicyon, & joins to the Achæans.	208	C. Furius.
	781	497		2			60			19	C. Atilius.
The Roman Consul beates Sylvanus.	4464	504	527	132	29	36	12		Regulus his death.	209	L. Manlius.
The beginning of the Pa- rian Kingdom.	3782	498		2			61			20	P. Claudius.
	4465	504	528	132	30	37	13		Shipwreck & u- happy fight of the Romans at Sic.	210	P. Claudius. Prætor, and L. Jun.
	3783	499		4			62			22	L. Cæcilius.
	4467	506	530	133	32		15			212	M. Fabius.
	3785	501		3			64			24	M. Fabius.
	4467	508	532	133	34	3				214	C. Atilius.
Lucilius the Cartha- inian in Sicil.	3787	503		4			66			27	C. Luc. Catul.
	4472	511	535	134		6	4		Lucilius his great victory at Agædis.	217	A. Posthumus.
	3790	506		3			69			Onias 1	Q. Lucilius.
The war of the Mer- caries with the Car- thaginians. L. 5. c. 2.	4473	512	536	134	2	7	5		Aratus winnes Corinth.	218	A. Manlius.
	3791	507		4			70			16	C. Claudius.
	4473	513	537	135	3		6			17	M. Sempronius.
	7392	508		1			71			18	M. Sempronius.
The war with the Carthaginians ended.	4476	515	539	135	5	10	8		The Romans take Sardinia from the Carthaginians.	221	Falco.
	3794	510		3			73			9	Lepidus.
	4482	521	545	137		16	14			227	Mæcilius.
	3800	516		1			79			12	M. Emilius.
	4483	522	546	137	2	17	15		A Roman Embas- sador slain by Queen Teuta.	230	M. Junius.
	3801	517		2			80			10	L. Posthumus.
L. 5. c. 2. § 7.	4485	524	548	137	4	19	17		Teuta, Queen of Illyria, subdued by the Romans.	234	C. Fulvius.
	3803	519		4			82			16	L. Emilius.
L. 5. c. 5. § 1.	4489	528	552	138	8	23				224	C. Atilius.
	3807	523		4						19	C. Cornelius.
Flaminius was al- consul this year. See L. 5. c. 2. § 8.	4492	531	555	139		11	26		Marcus his vi- tory over the Gauls about Illyria.	237	M. Marcellus.
	3810	526		3						20	P. Cornelius.
L. 5. c. 5. § 2.	4493	532	556	139	12		2			238	M. Minutius.
	3811	527		4			90			20	L. Velutius.
	4494	533	557	140			3			239	C. Lucilius.
	3812	528		1			91				

	Julian. world.	Rome. Nabor.	Iphit.	Olymp.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria & King- dom of the Greeks.	Greece.	Rome.	Jewes and Danis.	Consuls.
Hannibal takes Sa- guntum.	4495	534	558	140			4			22	L. Emilius.
	3813	529		2		3	92			240	M. Livius.
The beginning of the second Punic war.	4496	534	559	140			5		The battles of Ticinus and Trebia.	23	P. Cor. Scipio.
	3814	529		3		4	93			241	T. Sempronius.
The occurrences of this war, as referred by Polyb. 5. to the 3. of the 14. O- lymp. This battle of Trebia was fought in the Spring: the Olympian year began at the summer solstice. Hannibal and Marcellus Reno King of Syracuse Hieronymus succeeds.	4497	536	560	140			6		The battles of Thymene.	24	Cn. Servilius.
	3815	530		4			94			25	C. Terent. Var- ro.
	4498	537	561	141			7		The great bat- telle at Canne.	243	L. Em. Paul.
	3816	532		1			95			26	L. Posthumus.
	4499	538	562	141			8		Posthumus the Consul slain by the Gauls.	244	T. Semp. Grac. Q. Fabius.
	3817	533		2		6	96			247	Q. Claudius.
The two Scipios slain in Spain, Hannibal wins Za- mora.	4502	541	565	142			11		Syracuse won by Marcell. Capua besieged.	247	L. Onias Hieroph.
	3829	536		1		9	99			2	Cn. Fulvius.
Hannibal at the walls of Rome.	4503	542	566	142			12		Young Scipio sent into Spain. Capua won by the Romans.	248	P. Sulpicius.
	3821	537		2		10	100			6	C. Claud. Nero.
	4507	546	570	143			16		The battle at Metaurus.	252	M. Livius.
	3825	561		2		15	104			7	Q. Cæcilius.
	4508	547	571	143			17		Scipio drives the Carthaginians quite out of Spain.	253	L. Veturius.
	3826	542		3		15	105			19	Cænegus.
	4510	549	573	144			19		Scipio invades Africa.	255	P. Sempronius.
	3828	544		1		17	107			10	Servilius, and Servilius.
	4511	550	574	144			20		King Syphax taken.	256	
	3829	545		2		18	108			11	T. Claudius.
	4512	551	575	144			21		Hannibal van- quished by Scipio.	257	M. Servilius.
	3830	546		3		19	109			12	Lentulus.
The end of the second Punic war; and begin- ning of the Macedonian war with Philip. This year the next were three lunars of the Moon.	4513	552	576	144			22		Scipio tri- umphs over Carthage.	258	Fatus.
	3831	547		4		20	110			15	T. Q. Flaminius.
	4516	555	579	145			25		L. 5. c. 4. § 13.	261	Sex. Ælim.
	3834	550		3			113			16	Cænegus. Q. Minutius.
L. 5. c. 5. § 14.	4517	556	580	145			26			17	L. Furius.
	3835	551		4			114			262	
Hannibal expelled Carthage. L. 5. c. 5. § 14. & c. 4. § 15.	4518	557	581	146			27		The battle at Cynoscephale.	263	Marcellus.
	3836	552		1			115		25. Peace be- tween Philip & the Romans.	18	M. Cato.
	4519	558	582	146			28			264	L. Valerius.
C. 5. 5. 5.	3837	553		2		26	116			21	L. Quintus.
	4522	561	585	147			31. Antiochus at Chalcis.			267	Cn. Domitius.
C. 5. 5. 7.	3840	556		1		29	119			22	Atti. Gid- bris.
	4523	562	586	147			30		Antiochus van- quished at Ther- mopylae. 120.	268	Nafca.
	3841	557		2		31	121			23	L. Scipio.
	4524	563	587	147			33			269	C. Lælius.
	3842	558		3			121				

	Julian World.	Rome. Nabon.	Iphit.	Olym- piads.	Macedon.	Egypt.	Syria & king- dome of the Greeks.	Greece.	Rome. Sextian hisself the Roma	Jewes and Daniel	Consuls.
c.5. 5.9.	4527	566	590	148	34	18	36		26	Lepidus.	
	3845	561		2			124		272	Flaminius.	
	4528	567		148	55	19	6		27	S. Posthumus.	
	3846	562	591	3			1. Seleucus Phi- lippi 112.		273	Marcius.	
c.6. 5.2.	4531	570		149	38	22	4		30	Marcellus.	
	3849	565	594	2			128		276	Fabius.	
c.6. 5.3.	4532	571		149			5		31	Panius.	
	3850	566	595	3		23	129		277	Cn. Babius.	
	4533	572		149			6		32	Cethegus.	
	3851	567	596	4	40	24	130		278	M. Babius.	
	4534	573		150	41		7		33	A. Posthumus.	
	3852	568	597	1			131		279	Piso.	
	4535	574		150		2	8		34	Piso.	
	3853	569	598	2			132		280	Manlius.	
	4540	579		151	6	7	7		39	Sp. Posthumus.	
	3858	574	603	3			1. Antiochus Epi- phanius, 12.		285	Sevola.	
	4541	580		151			2			L. Posthumus.	
	3859	575	604	4	7	8	138			M. Popilius.	
	4543	582		152			4		c.6. 5.6	P. Licinius.	
	3861	577	606	2		10	140			C. Calfus.	
	4545	584		152	11		6			Martius.	
	3863	579	608	4			143		290	Servilius.	
	4546	585		153			7		Cap. 6. 5.8. 9.	L. L. M. P. M.	
	3864	580	609	1			143			C. Licinius.	
	4547	586		153			8		C.6. 5. 10. &	P. C. 5. 10. &	
	3865	581	610	2		14	144		12.	Junius.	
	4549	588		153			10			Torgatus.	
	3867	581	612	4		16	146			Ollavius.	

FINIS.

# An Alphabetical Table of the Principall Contents of the First and Second Books of the First Part of the History of the VWorld.

Wherein the first number signifieth the Leaf,  
the second the Line.

<b>A</b>		
Abacur age before Noah died,	107 time;	238. 30
Abag, a generall name of the Kings of the	Amalekites,	265. 50
Agenor his proceeding,	Agamemnon and Menelaus at variance,	304. 30
Agamemnon and Menelaus at variance,	Aide forraign ill invited,	388. 10
Aide forraign ill invited,	All formes are in the first Mover,	495. 4
All formes are in the first Mover,	All Kings called Jupiters by the ancient,	12. 10
All Kings called Jupiters by the ancient,	Albion,	75. 10
Albion,	Albion, anciently called Magog,	31. 10
Albion, anciently called Magog,	Alba longa, founded by Alcanius,	500.
Alba longa, founded by Alcanius,	Amphiarus his destiny,	369. 30
Amphiarus his destiny,	Amazias his dissimulation,	467. 20
Amazias his dissimulation,	His base Idolatry,	469. 10.
His base Idolatry,	His quarrell against Israel,	470. 4.
His quarrell against Israel,	his overthrow,	471. 3
his overthrow,	his exprobratours,	475. 10.
his exprobratours,	his Flatterers,	475. 5.
his Flatterers,	474. 5. he is generally hated,	475. 5
474. 5. he is generally hated,	Ambition the first sin,	365. 50
Ambition the first sin,	Annius, quite contrary to Moses in the sim- ulation of Henoch,	63. 10.
Annius, quite contrary to Moses in the sim- ulation of Henoch,	his vanity in plant- ing Gomer in Italy and Tubal in Spain,	113. ult.
his vanity in plant- ing Gomer in Italy and Tubal in Spain,	the twelfth of Nimrods reign,	113. ult.
the twelfth of Nimrods reign,	Contradictory to himself,	113. 10.
Contradictory to himself,	How to be credited,	198. 9
How to be credited,	His Philo,	454. 40
His Philo,	An answer to some few objections against certain particulars in the fourth and fifth chapters of Genesis,	63. 30
An answer to some few objections against certain particulars in the fourth and fifth chapters of Genesis,	Answer of a Germane Prince to those that perswaded him to become a Lutheran,	249. 30
Answer of a Germane Prince to those that perswaded him to become a Lutheran,	An Indian, presented unto Solyman the Turks Generall, in Anno 1570. who had out-lived three hundred years,	66. 40
An Indian, presented unto Solyman the Turks Generall, in Anno 1570. who had out-lived three hundred years,	Andromeda her delivery by Perseus,	318.
Andromeda her delivery by Perseus,	An enemies approbation, the best witness.	391. 2
An enemies approbation, the best witness.	Androclus, the Founder of Ephesus,	421.
Androclus, the Founder of Ephesus,	Anastatius the Emperour slain by Light- ning,	503. 5
Anastatius the Emperour slain by Light- ning,	Antioch upon the River Orontes, whereof S. Peter was Bishop,	139. 50
Antioch upon the River Orontes, whereof S. Peter was Bishop,	Apollo	

## The Table.

Apollo his Temple at Delphos, consumed with fire from heaven, under Julian Apostata: with the divers ruins it suffered, 82. 20  
 Armenia and Mesopotamia, first! of all known by the name of Eden. 45. 10  
 Araxes, a Nation of Annius his making, 101. 50  
 Ararat's misprison cleared, 106. 40  
 Arados, a City in the Ile of Arados, where S. Peter preached (according to Clement) & founded a Church in honour of our Lady, 839. 20  
 Aram Naharajim, now Mesopotamia, 151. 30  
 Argives, how they came to be called Danai, 132. 10  
 Aristides his Ephemerides of Dreams, 175. 50  
 Armeus, otherwise Danaus, King of Egypt, expelled thence by his brother Egyptus, 205. Afterwards King of Argos in Greece, ibid.  
 Arad, King of the Canaanites, surpriseth divers Israelites, 250. 50  
 Arcas, the son of Orchomenus, of whom Aradia took name, 267. 6  
 Arias Montanus his derivation of the name Heber, 269. 30  
 Arbaces destroyed Ninive, 482. 20. his too much lenity, ibid.  
 Aristodemus his blinde Zeal, with the fruits thereof, 529. 50  
 Aristocrates his perfidy, 530. 6. Worthily rewarded, 531. 30  
 Aristomenes his valour during the siege of Era, his strange escape out of prison, 531. 30  
 his death and buriall, 530. 30  
 Ascania, a Lake bordering on Phrygia, 145. 10  
 Assur, the name thereof diversly taken, 162. ult.  
 Assyrians demand aid of Croesus, 192. 30  
 Astarte, 282. 50  
 Afcalus, one of the sons of Hymenæus, 319. 40  
 Afcalon, the birth-City of Herod, Christ's persecutor, 320. 3. Repaired by Richard K. of England, ibid.  
 Afclepius his practice to cure the French, 404. 50  
 Alychis his sharp Law, 520. 10  
 Athos, an exceeding high mountain between Macedon and Thrace, and how far it casts shade, 105. 50  
 Athenians true Originals, 121. 30. Their pride, 367. 30

Atlas, divers of that name, 268. 40  
 Athalia her practices, 446. 40. Her cruelty, 450. 10. Her sacrilege, 452. 40. Her indiscretion and death, 460. 10  
 Atolla her wantonnesse, 457. 30  
 Auguftines answer to those that take the Tree of Life allegorically, 57. 20. His discourse on the Arke, 94. 10. His Milanous, 175. 50. His opinion concerning Baal and Astarte, 282. 50

### B

Abel was forty years in building, 100. 30. Not walled till Semiramis time, 187  
 Babylonians Dove, 183. 40  
 Balonymus invested in the Kingdom of Zidon, 306. 40  
 Bafan, an exceeding fertile Region, 334. 49  
 Baelium, growing plentifully in Havilah or Susiana, 50. 20  
 Before the beginning, there was neither primary matter to be informed, nor form to inform, nor any being but Eternal, 1. 30  
 Belus (properly) the first that peaceably and with generall allowance exercised sovereign power, 159. 10. His Sepulchre, 165. 50  
 Bel, the signification thereof, 165. 10  
 Bellonius his report of the Pyramides in Egypt, 184. 10  
 Belrephon and Pegasus moralized, 356. 40  
 Bel-zebubs Temple, 318. 10  
 Benhadad, twice overthrown by Ahab, 341. 10  
 Beroaldus his solution of the doubts arising of the difficulty of the Text, that a River went out of Eden, 46  
 Bersabe, why not named by S. Matthew, 415. 20. 50  
 Bethsaida, the native City of the Apostles, Peter, Andrew, and Philip, 296. ult.  
 Bethlehem, the native City of Ibzai, Elimelech and Christ, 327. 10  
 Bethsan, anciently Nyfa, built by Liber Pater, 300. 10  
 Bozius his indiscretion, 310. 20  
 Boreas his rape of Orithya, 354. 5  
 Britains Boats in the time of the Romans, 135. 1  
 Their manner of fight, 213. 5  
 Briareus moralized, 439. 1

### C

Abala, what it importeth, 67. 40  
 Cadmus, the first that brought letters into

## The Table.

into Batia, 268. 30  
 Cain, his departure from Gods presence, 61. 20  
 not to be understood literally, 62. 20  
 A Vagabond, how understood, 472. 30  
 Caponi his resolution, 177. 40  
 Cardans mortal Devils, 335  
 Carthaginians, anciently Tyrians, 494. 10  
 Carthaginians butchery, 298. 50  
 Castle of Pilgrims, 91. 10  
 Cataractæ Coeli, probably expounded, 60.  
 Cause of Adam and Eves disobedience, 60.  
 Cebim, afterward called Macedon, 126  
 Ceder, the native City of Barac, 295. 20  
 Chaldean, Babylonia, Shinaar: three names of one Country, 42. 20  
 Chaldeans, descended of Arphaxad, 145. 10  
 Chalybes, and their condition of life, 117. 40  
 Cham, intituled Jupiter Hammon by the Egyptians, 79. 10  
 Charan, sometime called Charre, Haran, and Aran: are the same Charan in Mesopotamia, 41. 30. Famous by the overthrow of Crassus, 42. 10  
 Chebar, mentioned by Ezechiel, but a branch of Euphrates, 50. 50  
 Chemmis his Pyramis, 419. 10  
 Cheops his daughter, ibid. 30  
 Chifon, on whose banks the Idolatrous Priests of Achab were slaughtered, 299. 10  
 Cidarim, a garment belonging unto the Persian Kings, 194. 10  
 Cimbr, whence so named, 118. 30  
 Cimmerians invade Asia, 532. 10  
 Cirovill Law defined, 243. 40  
 Cleantes his description of G O D by his attributes and properties, 81. 10  
 Codrus his resolution, 420. 40  
 Collis Achillæ, a steep Mountain, 254. 10  
 Coimestors tale of Moses and Tharbis, 210. 50  
 Conjectures on the time of Deucalions Flood, and Phaetons conflagration, 86. 3  
 Contingency, not a virtue, but a degree unto it, 240. 40  
 Congo, diverted from Christian religion, 246. 40  
 Contemporaries with Joshua, 278. 1. & ibid.  
 Contemporaries with Othoniel, 352. 10  
 Conjecturall reasons, why Succoth and Peniel refused to aide the Israelites their Brethren, 360. 30  
 Confidence in signes, in stead of the substance, 390. 5  
 Corall in the Red Sea, 219. 30  
 Correction of the Julian year by Pope Gregory the Thirteenth, 215. 40  
 Cornelius Tacitus contradictory unto himself, 349. 50  
 Counesse of Desmond her long life, 60  
 Creon his cruelty, 371  
 Cruelty the chief cause of the Flood, 61. 20. 10  
 Cursing of parents, 339. 30  
 Cuth, the son of Ham, with his sons Sheba, Havilah &c. first seated in the valley of Shinaar: which Region was afterwards denominated after the name of Havilah, 32. 20  
 Cuth, and the region of the Ismaelites, extended directly North from Ethiopia, 52. 40  
 Cuth, mistaken for Ethiopia, proved, ibid.  
 Cuth, being taken for Ethiopia, is the cause of much mistaking in Scriptures, 129. 50  
 Customs of Tanistry in Ireland, 244. 50  
 Cyril his comparison of Cain and the Fewes, 61. 50  
 Cyaxares forceth Ninive, 541. 50. Is compelled to abandon Assyria, 542. 10. His extremity and remedy, 547. 50

### D

Dagon, the Idoll of the Philistines, described, 182. ult.  
 Dalagua, an Island in the Red Sea, 219. 20  
 Dardania, built by Dardanus, 206. 30  
 David his election to the Kingdom, 399. 20. his combat with Goliath, 400. 1. his many dangers in Sauls time, 404. 40. his justice on the fellow that avowed himself to have slain Saul, 405. 40. his imprecation against Joab, 406. ult. his justice on Rechab and Baanah, for murdering Ishboeth, ibid. 407. 20. His dancing before the Arke, and deriding Micol, 408. 6. He is prohibited to build the Temple, ibid. 10. His taking and demolishing of Gath, ibid. 40. endangered by Ishbubenob, ibid. 56. His destruction of the Moabites, 409. 10. His ambassage to Hanan, 410. 7. &c. His victory at Helam, ibid. His crosses after his adultery with Bathsheba, 411. 40. His extreme sorrow for the death of Abalom, 413. 5. His reason for delivering Sauls sons, or kinsmen, to the Gibeonites, 414. (\* 3)

## The Table.

414.4. His love to Jonathan, expressed in sparing his son Mephiboseth, <i>ibidem</i>	Country bordering it, 43.10. An Island of that name in Tygris, described 45.30. known by the name of Geferta, 46.30
His speech in Parliament, and the approbation thereof, 415.40. His advice to Salomon concerning Shimci, 416.40.5. His death, personage, and internall gifts, <i>ibid.</i> 20	Education inverteth influence, 14.4
Debris of cruelty and mercy never left unsatisfied, 361.2	Effects of fear, 262.10
Deceit in all professions, 177.2	Eglon subdueth Israel, 329.6
Deiocius his strict form of government, 532.30. He built Tanris, formerly called Ercatane, <i>ibid.</i> 50	Elius or Sol his pedegree, 78.20
Deircetis Temple, 319.50	Emaus overthrow by Earthquake, 322.50
Deucalion and Phaeton, contemporaries with Moles, 267.20	Emims, Giants of huge stature, 218.2
Devils policy, 175.30	Enoch and Elias at the time of the Flood could not be in the terrestriall Paradise, 38.10
Diagoras his three sons, 492.40	Enoch, the first City of the world, built by Cain, 62.10
Difference of Translations about the signification of Gopher, whereof the Ark was made, 93.30	Epaphus, Founder of Memphis in Egypt, 205.20
Difference of Authors, concerning the Mountains of Ararat, 104.30	Epaminondas, Author of the Messenians replantation in their old possessions, 532.10
Difference between Necromancers and Witches, 178.30	Ephori in Lacedamon, the time of their beginning, 363.20
Difference between Emath and Hamath, reconciled, 139.50	Ephraimites quarrell with Gideon, 360.10
Diffidence, the Bar to Moses and Aarons entry into the Land of promise, 254.4	Epiphanius his answer to such as draw the truth of the story of Paradise, to a meer Allegoricall understanding, 32.10
Diodorus his report for the originall of the Gods, 76.30	Era, betrayed by a slave, 530.50
Distance between the Flood and Abraham, 190.30. and between the Flood of Ogyges, and that of Noah, 84.30	Error of such as understood the sons of God, Gen. 5.24. to be Angels, 69.30
Distance between Tyre and Zidon, 282.10	Esay the Prophet, his cruell death, 523.50
Divers repaired from Age to Youth, 66.50	Esongaber, where Solomon built his fleet, 253.1
Divers computations of years, 214.30	Evangelion diversly taken, 236.30
Divers appellations of the Red-Sea, 218.54	Euphrates and Tygris, two guides to Eden, 40.1. Being two of the four heads, whereinto the River of Paradise is divided, 45.20
Divers things in the Scripture referred to the reading of other books, which by injury of time are lost or perished, 257.30	Euphrates it self is divided into four branches, 47.20
Divers Mercuries, 138.31	Eulchius his error, 518.50
Dodanim, the fourth son of Javan, the first planter of Rhodes, 126.10	Ezekia his godly beginning, 504.20. Is besieged by Sennacherib, 506.30. Miraculously delivered, 507.30. &c. his oversight, 508.20
Dogs first brought by the Spaniards into Hispaniola, changed into Wolves, 95.10	F
Domitian his shamelesse spectacle, 361.50	Ficus Indica described, 57.50. Allegoricall, 59.10
Doubts concerning the time of the Earths division after the Flood, 147.1	First or last naming in Scripture, no proof who was first or last born, 167.40
E	Fortescue his report of a judgement given at Salisbury, 247.20
Asie to draw those men back, whom rage without reason hath led on, 366.30	Frederick Barbaroffa his end and buriall, 321.20
Eden of Paradise, described by the	From the same place where man had his beginning, from thence again had Men their

## The Table.

their in crease, 55.20	G
Amala a strong City, forced by Vespasian, 335.30	Ganges falleth into the Ocean divers degrees to the Eastward from Indus, 49.50
Gaza, a goodly City, surprized by Alexander Janneus King of the Jewes, 335.10	Geharites and Simonians, 315.40
Geharites and Simonians, 315.40	Gehon, Founder of Cairo, 515.40
Gehon disproved to be Nilus, 52.2. So confessed by Pererius, 52.40	Geometrical cubite not used in Scripture, 95.30
Geometrical cubite not used in Scripture, 95.30	Gergesus, the first son of Canaan, first Founder of Berytus (afterward called Felix Julia) in Phoenicia, 338.40
Gergesus, the first son of Canaan, first Founder of Berytus (afterward called Felix Julia) in Phoenicia, 338.40	Geographers Maps, 489.40
Geographers Maps, 489.40	Georgians, from what place they take their names, 105.20
Georgians, from what place they take their names, 105.20	Giants, men of great stature and strength, to have been before the Flood, proved by Scriptures, and that there are like now by experience, 70.20
Giants, men of great stature and strength, to have been before the Flood, proved by Scriptures, and that there are like now by experience, 70.20	Gideon his oversight and overthrow, 361.20. His Contemporaries, <i>ibid.</i>
Gideon his oversight and overthrow, 361.20. His Contemporaries, <i>ibid.</i>	God foreknew and comprehended the beginning and end before they were, 28.10
God foreknew and comprehended the beginning and end before they were, 28.10	He worketh the greatest things by the weakest means, 211.10. His first punishment of the Egyptians, was in changing those Rivers into blood, whereinto formerly their Fathers had thrown the Hebrewes innocent children, 212.10. His secret hand in all manner of accidents, 260.40. His punishment of places for the peoples sakes, 349.10
He worketh the greatest things by the weakest means, 211.10. His first punishment of the Egyptians, was in changing those Rivers into blood, whereinto formerly their Fathers had thrown the Hebrewes innocent children, 212.10. His secret hand in all manner of accidents, 260.40. His punishment of places for the peoples sakes, 349.10	Godly use to be made of praying toward the East, 31.30
Godly use to be made of praying toward the East, 31.30	Gog and Magog; what is understood by them, 116.4
Gog and Magog; what is understood by them, 116.4	Good Spirits not to be constrained, 178.20
Good Spirits not to be constrained, 178.20	Golden age, 155.40
Golden age, 155.40	Great slaughter of the Israelites, 252.3
Great slaughter of the Israelites, 252.3	Greeks vanity in holding that no Flood preceded that of Ogyges, 84.10. Their malice, 144.10
Greeks vanity in holding that no Flood preceded that of Ogyges, 84.10. Their malice, 144.10	Gyges obtaineth the Kingdome of Lydia, 510.40
Gyges obtaineth the Kingdome of Lydia, 510.40	H
H	Abdon, Judge of Israel, in whose time happened the destruction of Troy, 367.50
Abdon, Judge of Israel, in whose time happened the destruction of Troy, 367.50	Father of forty sons, and thirty grandchildren, 377.20
Father of forty sons, and thirty grandchildren, 377.20	Halon the Tartar seareth Damascus, 339.40
Halon the Tartar seareth Damascus, 339.40	Halyattes his reason for defending the Scythians against Cyaxares, 546.30
Halyattes his reason for defending the Scythians against Cyaxares, 546.30	Ham, father of the Egyptians, 126.50
Ham, father of the Egyptians, 126.50	Haran, the eldest son of Terah, 188.50
Haran, the eldest son of Terah, 188.50	Havilah, one of Joctans sons, seated in the Continent of the East India, 150.50
Havilah, one of Joctans sons, seated in the Continent of the East India, 150.50	Hebron, where Adam, Abraham, Isaac, & Jacob were buried, 322.30
Hebron, where Adam, Abraham, Isaac, & Jacob were buried, 322.30	Helen the Emperesse her sumptuous Chapell, 297.50
Helen the Emperesse her sumptuous Chapell, 297.50	Hellen and Melantho, sons of Deucalion, 267.50
Hellen and Melantho, sons of Deucalion, 267.50	Henoch was not dissolved as the rest, 69.2
Henoch was not dissolved as the rest, 69.2	Henricus Mechliniensis his observations touching the generall Flood, 86.50
Henricus Mechliniensis his observations touching the generall Flood, 86.50	Hercules, native of Thyrsimbia, to whom the twelve labours are ascribed, 71.3
Hercules, native of Thyrsimbia, to whom the twelve labours are ascribed, 71.3	Herod his Harbrow, 302.30
Herod his Harbrow, 302.30	Herodium a magnificent Castle, built by Herod, 327.30
Herodium a magnificent Castle, built by Herod, 327.30	Herodotus his testimony of Eden, and the Country adjoining, 48.10. His argument, that Helen was not at Troy during the siege, 384.2
Herodotus his testimony of Eden, and the Country adjoining, 48.10. His argument, that Helen was not at Troy during the siege, 384.2	Hierusalem, how uncertain the time is of her first building, 347.1
Hierusalem, how uncertain the time is of her first building, 347.1	Hippones his cruell justice, 510.20
Hippones his cruell justice, 510.20	Hiram his displeasure against Solomon, 288.10. His policy in holding league with Israel, 309.50
Hiram his displeasure against Solomon, 288.10. His policy in holding league with Israel, 309.50	Historians, borrowers of Poets, 457.2. His caution, 511.30
Historians, borrowers of Poets, 457.2. His caution, 511.30	Homer and Hesiod, placed in Hell (for their fictions) by Pythagoras, 79.30. his partiality in Achilles praise, 386.30
Homer and Hesiod, placed in Hell (for their fictions) by Pythagoras, 79.30. his partiality in Achilles praise, 386.30	Hookers definition of Law, 227.1
Hookers definition of Law, 227.1	Horatii and Curtii their combats, 535.20
Horatii and Curtii their combats, 535.20	How the text, speaking of four heads (into which the River of Paradise was divided) is to be understood, 47.50
How the text, speaking of four heads (into which the River of Paradise was divided) is to be understood, 47.50	How the Tree of Life is understood by the Hebrewes, 56.50
How the Tree of Life is understood by the Hebrewes, 56.50	How ridiculous their resolution is, that reckon the Ages of the first Patriarchs by Lunar or Egyptian years, 65.40
How ridiculous their resolution is, that reckon the Ages of the first Patriarchs by Lunar or Egyptian years, 65.40	How far the education and simplicity of these times differ from former Ages, 67.10
How far the education and simplicity of these times differ from former Ages, 67.10	How the certain knowledge of the Creation came to Moles, 67.10
How the certain knowledge of the Creation came to Moles, 67.10	How the appointed number of creatures to be saved, might have place in the Arke, 95.50
How the appointed number of creatures to be saved, might have place in the Arke, 95.50	How the west part of America, to the South of Panama, came to be called Fern, 149.10
How the west part of America, to the South of Panama, came to be called Fern, 149.10	Hus



## The Table.

Hus, the country of Job, how bounded, by S. Paul and S. James, 20. 10  
 146. 6  
 Indus descent into the Ocean, 50. 3  
 India, the first peopled Country after the Flood, 49. 20  
 In whose time it was that Moses led Israel out of Egypt, 208. 10  
 Invention of Alcinous Gardens drawn by Homer from Moses his description of Paradise, 32. 50  
 Invention of Ethnick sacrifice ascribed to Cain, 73. 30  
 Joab his jealousy, of his place and dignity, 407. 10  
 Joas, King of Judah (in probability) not the naturall son of Ahaziah, 435. 40. His forwardnesse to repair the Temple, 461. 50. Is forced to buy his peace, 462. 50 His cowardise, 464. 50. His death, 465. 30  
 Joas, King of Israel, his triumphant entry into Jerusalem, 471. 10. His error, ibid. 50  
 His end, 433. 20  
 Job his sepulchre, 336. 50. whose was, 366. 50. Whence were his friends, Elihu and the rest, 1337. 20  
 John, the son of Levi, his commotions, 288. 30  
 Jonas, the story of his prophesie, 481. 40  
 Jonathan, his happy resolution, 398. 10  
 Jones and Medes, from whom defended, 119. 30. Jones expelled Peloponnesus, 401. 50  
 Joppa in Judaea, founded before the Flood, 84. 40  
 Burnt to the ground by the Romans, 312. 1  
 Joseph his reason in favouring the Egyptian Priests, 201. ult. Esteemed the first Mercury, 269. 20  
 Josephus, the first Author of mistaking Pison for Ganges, 50. 50. Mistaken in his own sale, 127. 40. Condemned together with Apollinaris, for avowing Moses to have married both Tharbis and Sippora, 128. 40  
 Joseph Scaliger his short answer, 486. 20  
 His retragation, 487. 20  
 Josias his zeal to God, 536. 40. His fidelity to the King of Babel, 538. 3. His death, ibid. 40  
 Josua his remove from Sittim unto the banks of Jordan, 274. 3. His passage thorow it, ibid. 20. His skill in war, 275. 10  
 His keeping faith with the Gibeonites, ibid. 30. His death, 277. 30. His Sepulchre, 312. 50  
 Fotapata, a strong City, fortified by Josephus, 297. 5  
 Jotham

**I** Alpha, a strong place forced by Titus, 297. 20  
 Idanthura his answer to Darius his letters, 273. 10  
 Idle Chroniclers, 369. 1  
 Idolaters vanity, 167. 10  
 Jehoada his godly care, 453. 10. his policy, 459. 20. He proclaimeth Joas, ibid. His honourable interment, 461. 7  
 Jehoakim his impiety, 555. 10. He revolteth from Nabuchodonosor, 552. 20. His death and buriall, ibid.  
 Jehoram his cruelty towards his Brethren, 444. 19. and was the first that erected irreligion by force, ibidem. He loseth Libna, ibidem 40. &c. is oppressed by the Philistims and Arabians, 445. 40. His wretched end, 446. 40  
 Jehoishaphat his great numbers of Soldiers, 2 Chron. 17. how to be understood, 439. 50. &c. is reprehended for aiding Ahab, 440. 40. Loseth his fleet by shipwrack, 441. 4. In great extremity for want of water, ibid. ibid.  
 Jechu and his proceedings, 446. 20. his execution of Baals priests, 451. 50. His ingratitude and punishment, 452. 10  
 Jephtha his just defence against the Ammonites, 325. 7  
 Jeremie the Prophet his death and buriall, 555. 20  
 Jericho, one of the Toparchies of Judaea, 344. 40  
 Jeroboam his wicked policy, 314. 10. His end, ibid.  
 Jeisrael, where Naboth was stoned, 301. 20  
 Jethro or Jothor, Raguel or Revel, and Hobab, all one person, 267. 27. His departure from Moses, 224. 30  
 Jewish impiety, 359. ult.  
 Improbability of their conjecture, That place Paradise beyond the Ocean, 36. 50  
 Improbability of the confusion of tongues at the birth of Peleg, 99. 50  
 Improbability of the short time of ten years, allowed by some for the finishing of Babel, 113. 30  
 Improbability of the waters standing upright (like wals) in the Red Sea, as some Schoolemen have fancied, 220. 20  
 Image and Similitude taken in one sense

## The Table.

Jotham his Encomion, by Josephus, 439. 20  
 Irreligious cavilling, 280. 20. and irreligious policy, 431. 30  
 Isaac his birth, rather a miracle wrought upon Sarah than upon Abraham, 185. 50  
 His prophesie, 444. 30  
 Icah and Sarah, two names of one signification, 188. 40  
 Isles of Eliza, mentioned by Ezekiel, 124. 50  
 Ismaelites and Amalekites, posselt of the Countreies between Havilah and Sur, wasted afterwards by Saul, 407. 10  
 Israel punished in Sauls time for slaughter of the Gibeonites, contrary to the faith before given by Jolua, 276. 20  
 Israelites overthrown by the Philistims, 389. 40  
 Jupiter Belus, the son of Nimrod, 79. 2  
 Jupiter, renowned among the Greeks and Romans, born not long before the war of Troy, ibid. 10  
 Justice vendible, 392. 50  
**K** Enites and Madianites of two sorts, 224. 10  
 Kethura, wife to Abraham, the maternal Ancestor of the Kenites, 223. 50  
 Kingdome gained by an Asses losse, 394. 40  
 Kingdome of Argos translated to Mycenae, 358. 20  
 Kings made by God and lawes divine; by humane lawes only so declared, 82. 40  
**L** Actantius his judgement of the first Mercury, 269. 20  
 Law amongst the Romans, 175. 20  
 Law humane defined, 242. 20  
 Law nationall defined, 243. 30  
 Law abused grievously punished, 393. 40  
 Law of Moses diversly taken, 233. 50  
 Law-makers, no lesse beneficiall to their Countreies, than the greatest Conquerours, 225. 20  
 Lawes, not imposed as a burthen, but a blessing, 241. 20  
 Lehabim, the son of Mizraim, called Hercules Lybius, 201. 10  
 Letters among the Chinois long before either Egyptians or Phancians, 98. 40  
 Licentious disorder, proved (upon better tryall) no lesse perillous than an unadmirable bondage, 152. 30  
 Lords of Thoron, whence denominated, 287. 50  
 Lucian his supposall concerning Helen, 384. 5. His errand to Hell to speak with Homer, 404. 8  
 Ludim, the eldest son of Mizraim, first Progenitor of the Lybians in Africa, 142. 40  
 Lycurgus his Law, 229. 20  
 Lyda, (afterward Diopolis) where S. Petter cured Aneas of the palseie, 143. 4  
**M** Achabees Sepulchre, 319. 5  
 Machanajim where the Angels met Jacob for his defence, 331. 50  
 Macharus, a strong City and Castle, where John Baptista was beheaded, 325. ult.  
 Madianites slain by Gideon, 264. 40  
 Magdalen, the habitation of Mary Magdalen, 297. 4  
 Magick, according to Plato, 171. 20. improperly termed Necromancy, 174. 30. A helper in knowing the Divinity of Christ, ibid. 4  
 Mahometane Arabians descended of the Ismaelites, 53. 30  
 Man, wherein he chiefly resembleth God, or may be called the shadow of God, 23. 10  
 Manner of fight at the Trojan war, 386. 6  
 Many thousand Jewes overwhelmed in rebuilding the Temple under Julian Apostata, 82. 40  
 Many of the Species, which now seem differing, were not at the time of the generall Deluge in rerum natura, 94. 50  
 Maresa, the Native City of Michaeas, 322. 20  
 Margiana, where Alexander feasted himself and his Army, 107. 50  
 Marus his Labyrinth, 524. 40  
 Means which the Greeks were forced to use for maintenance of the siege before Troy, 384. 50  
 Medusa moralized, 356. 30  
 Menahem his inhumane cruelty, 480. 20  
 Menon (first husband of Semiramis) his death, 169. 30  
 Mercator his conceit, That Nimrod and Ninus were one and the same person, answered, 159. 50  
 Merchants of Eden traded with the City of Tyre, 159. 50  
 Mercurius Trismegistus his writings, in some places (probably) corrupted, 269. 10  
 His two last speeches, ibid. 50. His many books, 271. 30  
 Merodach investeth himself in the kingdome of Babylon, 508. 40  
 Messene

### The Table.

*Difference in Sicily, by what occasion so* 163. 40  
*med.* 531. 50  
*Minaus and Menis, names or titles of dig-* 194. 30  
*nity,* 203. 10  
*Miriam her Sepulchre,* 353. 40  
*Mock-Divinity,* 175. 1  
*Moloch described with his sacrifice,* 494. 4  
*Money, not used in Greece in Homers time,* 368. 4  
*Monuments of Jupiters Tombe in the*  
*Mount Fafius, remaining in Epiphanius his*  
*time,* 76. 20  
*Mofal, or Mokal, anciently called Seleucia*  
*Parthorum,* 44. 30  
*Mofcovians from whence descended,* 120. 50  
*Their wooing,* 548. 50  
*Mofes Bar-cephas his opinion concerning*  
*the Tree of Knowledge,* 57. 50  
*Mofes did not number the generations be-*  
*fore the Flood precisely,* 64. 40. *his prefer-*  
*vation,* 210. 20. *His birth-time,* 221. 50. *His*  
*compass by the Rivers of Zared and Arnon,*  
*256. 5. His message to Schon King of the A-*  
*morites, ibid. 40. His reason for not entering*  
*immediately into Judea, after his victory*  
*against Schon,* 258. 5. *His death,* 260. 5  
*Mountains and Rivers, formerly named*  
*of the Ancient after their own names, or their*  
*Ancestors names: and the cause why,* 126  
*20. 20.*  
*Mountains of Paria, their length,* 159. 30  
*Mourning for Thammuz,* 283. 30  
*Musef-magick,* 178. 40  
*Multiplicity of gods,* 168. 6  
*Myria a great lake in Egypt,* 515. 40  
*N*  
*Naboth, the eldest sonne of Iſmael,* 262. 3  
*Nabuchodonosor overthrown*  
*Necho 350. 30. His peremptory message to*  
*Jehojakim, ibid. 50. His conquest of Egypt,*  
*551. 40. He besiegeth Tyre, ibid. 14. He puts*  
*Jehojakim to death, 552. 20. He besiegeth*  
*Jerusalem, 553. 30. And forceth it, 554. 7*  
*He deſtroyeth the Temple, ibid. 40.*  
*Nahas, a cruel King of the Ammonites,*  
*333. 50.*  
*Nebo, the Idol Oracle of the Moabites,*  
*326. 50.*  
*Nectar and Ambrosia, alluding in the*  
*Poets to the Tree of life,* 57. 30  
*Nefforians, part of their generall Epistle to*  
*the Pope,* 46. 2  
*Nimrod, seated in the confluence of those*  
*Rivers which was erd Paradise,* 52. 20. *The*

*first founder of Ninive, 112. 6. his buildings* 163. 40  
*Ninias, son to Semiramis, an effeminate*  
*Prince,* 194. 30  
*Ninive formerly called Campſor,* 181. 50  
*Ninus his time of Government, after the*  
*Flood, 134. The first notorious sacrificer to*  
*Idols,* 163. 8  
*Noah his sundry appellations, 91. 30. Ana-*  
*nologically conferred with Janus, 108. 10. A*  
*City of that name upon the banks of the Red*  
*Sea, ibid. 40. He never came so far Westward*  
*as Babylon, 100. 30. Is no more remembered*  
*in Scripture after his sacrifice, and the cause,*  
*101. 10. His children came not altogether to*  
*Shinar,* 103. 30  
*Nobility in parchment,* 157. 10  
*Noema, or Naamathi, the sister of Tubal-*  
*cain, expounded by Saint Auguftine,* 73. 40  
*Numa his Law, 169. 10. his grave, 534. 39*  
*His books,* *ibid.*  
*O*  
*Oake of Mambre,* 255. 30  
*Obedience to Princes commended*  
*without distinction,* 154. 30  
*Occasion of obscurity in the Egyptian stories,*  
*197. 50. and of the supplicatory letters of the*  
*Nestorians to the Pope, in the year 1552. 45.*  
*50*  
*Oceanus and Hesperus, Contemporaries*  
*with Moſes,* 266. 40  
*Of the Masse, indigested matter, or Chaos,*  
*created in the beginning,* 4. 50  
*Offences punished without form of judge-*  
*ment, cause the offenders to seem innocent,*  
*437. 50*  
*Ogyges Contemporary with Jacob,* 84. 10  
*Olympiads whence so called,* 490. 40  
*One of the pillars erected by Seth, the*  
*third from Adam, was by Josephus testi-*  
*mony, to be seen in his dayes,* 35. 20  
*Ophir, one of Joctans sons, seated in the*  
*Moluccas in the East India,* 148. 50  
*Opinions concerning the length of mans life*  
*66. 30. And concerning Jupiter, the son of*  
*Saturne and Ops, 75. 30. And concerning*  
*Mofes his birth time, 207. 10. And concern-*  
*ing Nimrod,* 114. 40  
*Oracles of Amphiarus.* 175. 10  
*Origen his Sepulchre,* 320. 30  
*Oroſius his report of Pharaohs Chariot*  
*wheels,* 221. 30  
*Orpheus his instruction to Mulaeus con-*  
*cerning God,*  
*Orus the second, (or Buſiris) Author of the*  
*Edict for drowning the Hebrew Children,*  
*204. 2.*  
*Oſiris*

## The Table.

Officer, the eldest son of Cham. 200. 30  
oysters growing on trees, 58. 20

**P**  
Pacuvius his wife carriage with the  
Commons in Capua, 490. 30  
Painters wives Iland, ibid. 10  
Palm-trees, whereof the people do make  
Bread, Honie, Wine, Vinegar, and fine Flax,  
48. 30  
Paradise of Eden, truly taken for the pro-  
per name of a place, 30. 30. By knowing the  
place whereof, we may better judge of the be-  
ginning, 44. 20. A City of that name in Ca-  
lofryia, 49. 20  
Paternall authority in transferring birth-  
right, 422. 50  
Paternity and Eldership, the first govern-  
ment, 151. 50  
Patience wounded, 389. 20  
Pelaſgus, king of Arcadia, 265. 50  
Pelafium, a great City upon the branch of  
Nilus, next Arabia, 130. 40  
People in the Indies, near far greater watri-  
falls than the Cascade of Nilus, are not deaf  
at all, 38. 3  
Perander a cruel Tyrant, 549. 30  
Petra, the native City of Ruth, 327. 40  
Pharaoh his Sorcerers Frogs, 179. 6  
His Army wherewith he purſued the Iſrael-  
ites, 213. 8  
Pharaoh his deviliſh policy, 209. 40. The  
ground of his cruelty, 210. 6  
Pharaoh Vaphres, Father-in-law to Sa-  
lomon, 202. 40  
Pheron, ſon to Seſoſtris, aſſumeſh his  
Fathers name, 203. 30. Is ſtricken blind,  
ibid. Recovered, ibid.  
Philifſim, deſtroyed with Thunder, 392.  
10. Their policy in not proſecuting the vi-  
ſtory after Sauls death, 4. 6. 1  
Philophers ignorant in nature, and the  
ways of her working, 11. 50  
Philoftratus in vita Apollonii Tiantii,  
found true, though fabuloſly expreſſed, 98. 30  
Phineus, and the Harpies, 363. 40  
Phenicians navigation about Africa, 359.  
10

Phraortes, overtrown in his attempt of  
Niniue, 541. 40  
Phunum, ſometime a principall City of the  
Edomites, 256. 10  
Phux, the third ſon of Ham, firſt plan-  
ted in Libya, 137. 10  
Piety puniſhed, 519. 40  
Pinda his miracle, 426. 40  
Piſon, fully taken for Ganges, and Gehon,  
faſly for Nilus, 36. 50  
Piſon and Tigris joyning under Apamia,  
50. 40

Plato his differing from Moſes in that  
place where God made answer by his Angell:  
Exiſtens miſt me ad vos, 79. 50. His judge-  
ment concerning God, 81. 30  
Pluto his Rape of Proſerпина, 353. 40  
Power ſevered from piety, pernicious, 393.  
40  
Pride, fooliſh and wretched, 469. 30  
Princes ruling in divers parts of the world  
at the time of the Law given in Mount Si-  
nai, 232. 10  
Probability that Nahor and Haran, did  
not perſiſt in Idolatry, 186. 40. and that Job  
lived in the time of Moſes, 211. 40. And  
that the Greeks lay not before Troy the firſt  
nine years, 384. ult.  
Prodigie, preceding the flood of Oggyes:  
with a diſcourſe thereon, 85. 20  
Prometheus his Vulture moralized, 88.  
50. His Fire, 266. 4  
Proteus, what he was probably, 517. 5  
Plammiticus, abandoned by his own fol-  
lowers and Countrymen, 525. 50. His long  
ſiege of Aconis, 526. 10. His provident  
conſe to divert the Scythians from Egypt,  
527. 50  
Ptolemæus Lathurus defeateſh Alexan-  
der King of the Jewes, 300. 40  
Pygmalion, King of Tyre, in whoſe time  
Dido ſailed into Africk, and built Carthage,  
507. 50  
Pythagoras his Eagle, 178. 30. His golden  
precept, 236. 10

**R**  
Abba, where Urias was ſlain, 333  
20  
Rameſes, a City in Goſen, from whence  
the Iſraelites made thir firſt march toward  
the Red Sea, 215. 30  
Rameſſes or Egyptus, under whom  
Moſes was born, 206. 7  
Reaſons why the Jewes omitted Circumci-  
ſion during their abode in the wildernes. And  
proving the Tyrians to have been Originally  
Idolaters, 274. 20. And reaſons moving the  
Ammonites to make War upon Jabs Gi-  
lead, 394. 50  
Recem, now called Crac and Moſera, a  
ſtrong City, where the Soldanes of Egypt  
kept their treaſures, 327. 30  
Red colour ſuperſtitioſly obſerved by the  
Egyptians, 212. 40  
Reges Arabum & Saba, in Pal. 72. ex-  
pounded according to the Hebrew, 43. 4  
Regions lying between Armenia and ſcy-  
thia, 102. 40  
Rei-

## The Table.

Reineccius his conceit of the names of Troes, Teucris, and Thracas,	178. 50
Romulus his description,	503. 20
Ruth and Janus Contemporaries,	119.20
S	
Saba, the son of Joctan, seated in India,	148.40
Saffa, the birth-City of Zebedeus,	297. 50
Alpheus, James, and John, Sages of Greece, in whose time they flourished,	403. 10
Saint George his Sepulchre,	312. 6
Saladine dishonourably repulsed,	288. 10
He acquireth the Sovereignty of Egypt,	516. 30
Salomon anointed King, 426.3. His education, 422.10. His reasons for Adonijahs death, 422. Wherein the chief excellency of his wisdom consisted, 423.30. His letter to Hiram, 424.10. The answer to it, ibid. 30	
His Garrisons, 427.20. His Ring disposed of evil spirits, 429. 30. His frailty,	504. 50
Samaria founded by Amri, or Homri, 311. 20. Subverted by the sons of Hircanus, ibid. 30. Where Helisaeus, Abdias, and John the Baptist were buried, ibid. Samaritans a perfidious Nation, 139. 10	
Sanar, the first bringer of the Turks into Egypt,	512. 2
Saul, elected (probably) by lot,	395.20
His disobedience, 398.40. His cruelty, 400. 10. His end, and dishonour after his death,	ibid. 30
Schoole-men, all grosse, in holding the Countries under the Equinoctiall uninhabitable,	
Scorners rewarded,	504. 40
Scriptures more ancient than all other Antiquity,	110. 50
Scutlet his calculation,	504.10
Scythia Saga, or Saca, under the Mountains of Paropamisus, 102. 6. Scythia intra Imaum, bounded by Marius Niger, ibid.	30
Sehon discomfited,	258.40
Seleucia, anciently called Chalanne, 41.40	
Semiramis her policy in obtaining of the Empire, 182.20. Her Army against Staurobates, 183.20. Her overthrow, ibid. 40	
Sennacherib his expedition against the Jews, according to Herodotus, 522.10	
Seneca, his judgement of Nature, Fate, or Fortune,	173. 7
Sephora and Thua, famous Mid-wives,	209. 40
Sephoris, the City of Joachim and Anna, the Parents of the Virgin Mary,	297. 30
Sesostris, endangered by his brothers treason, 203.20. His Coach,	430. 10
Seth, worshipped by the Egyptians,	74 40
Setheica, a principall Province in Egypt, ibid.	
Sheba and Rama border the Persian Gulfe,	40.50
Shishak his policy in entertaining Adad and Jeroboam,	314. 8
Simon Magus his end,	177. 50
Sinai and Horeb but one Mountain,	225. 40
Single Combats,	406.20
Sixtus Quintus his answer to a Fryer,	457. 50
Slave, why so called,	420. 50
Socrates suffered death for acknowledging one only powerfull God,	37.20
Spaniards pride in America, 146.40. Their plantation in the East at Manila, 425.40	
Spartans obstinacy,	529. 7
Spring perpetuall in the South of Armenia,	48. 50
Stars and other celestia bodies, incline the will by mediation of the sensitive appetite,	28. 30
Statues erected by the woman, whom Christ cured of the bloody issue,	292. 10
Sterculius, mentioned by S. Augustine,	498.10
Strange execution of the Citizens of Cadabra committed on themselves,	333. 20
Strato, King of Zidon expelled by Alexander Macedon, 306.20. Another of the same name, slain by his own wife,	ibid. 40
Sagar made by the Sun,	289. ult.
Susa, in the Province of Elam, sometimes the Seat-Royal of the Kings of Persia, 144.40	
Syria described,	278. 50
T	
Talus, destroyed by Medea,	365. 10
Tamberlain his Trophee of victory,	339. 50
Tanais and Volga, whence they truly arise: with the vanity of the Riphae, and Hyperborei Mountains,	103.2
Tantalus moralized,	354. 50
Tarichia, a City, forced by Vaspasian,	298. 20
Taurus, whereon the Arke rested. Taurus his stealth of Europa,	
Telaasar inhabited by the Edenites, 43.20	
called Thiluthe by Am. Marcellinus, sometimes a garrison Town against the Assyrians,	ibid. 40
Teman, the City whence Eliphaz came to reason with Job, where situate,	309
Temper	

## The Table.

Temper of the lower part of Eden,	55.50
Teneriffe in the Canaries, the highest mountain known in the world,	105. 50
Tercus his rape of Philomel,	354. 57
Testimonies of the Ancient concerning Moles,	271.30
Tharsus in Cilicia, the native City of Saint Paul, founded by Tharsis the second son of Javan,	135.30
That which seemeth most casual and subject to fortune, is yet disposed by the ordinance of God,	17.40
That the Flood made no such alteration as is generally received,	36. 9
That the Stars and other celestia bodies, incline the will by the mediation of the sensitive appetite,	30.20
The means that David grew rich by,	417.50
Theseus his worthy exploits,	367. 20
Thirst of coquetousnesse,	392.50
Though unsearchable to the Devill,	206. 40.
Three generall opinions of Paradise,	33. 10
Three things especially are the natural causes of a long and an healthfull life,	66. ult.
Three causes why Moles forbore to conduct the Israelites thorow Arabia,	217. 10
Thua and Sephora, famous Midwives,	209. 40
Thulis an Egyptian King, of whom strange matters are reported,	517. 20
Thuoris, supposed to be Proteus,	516.50
Thuras the first Mars,	166. 10
Tiber, whence it took the name,	501. 4
Tiberius restraineth humane sacrifices,	370.40
Tygris, separated from Danubius by the sea of Hellepont and all Asia the less, 38. 40. it overflowed Nineve,	477. 20
Time, wherein men might attain to be such as they ought, oft-times mispent in seeking to be such as they are not,	474. 40
Tiras, father of the Thracians,	123. 10
Tohu oppress by Hadadezer, and succoured by David,	403. 30
Token of liberty with the wicked, to despise the service of God,	462. 20
Tornicellus his pains to prove the Book of Judith Canonical,	533.30
Toftatus his opinion of Ophir,	150. 10
Traditionall oblations,	153.30
Treachery rightly rewarded,	531.20
Treason in fashion,	412.3
Treasure anciently used to be buried with the dead,	1419.50
Trees of life and knowledge,	56.40
Tree of life, how understood by the Hebrews,	ibid. 50
Tree of knowldege, so called of the event,	60.4
Tribute denied, causeth Sennacherib to make war on Ezechias,	506.20
Troy, when destroyed,	337. 10
Two sorts of Kenites and Madianites,	224. 10
Two Edens,	40. 20
Tydeus his quarrell with Polynices, and the issue thereof,	369.30
Tyranny of Saul towards Jonathan, 398. 30. and towards Abim. Ich,	400. 20
Trust in worldly prosperity, how vain,	448. 30
Tyrants are the last that hear of any mischief against them,	459.40
Tyrannous dominion of the Scythians in Asia,	459.40
Tyrannous dominion of the Scythians in Asia,	547.40
Tyre besieged by the Chaldeans,	551.40
Tyrrenus, the first bringer of vines into France,	103.40
V	
Vagabonds, how to be understood,	62. 20
Valour of the Cimmerians,	543. ult.
Vanity of Homer, in description of the fight between Hector and Achilles,	386.30
Vanity of superstition,	390.10
Vanity of many great men of War in valuing themselves too highly,	
Vanity of Becanus his Gigantomachia,	69. 50
Vanity of Chronologers, in taking Amraphel for Nimrod,	189.40
Vanity of the Greeks, used in the Olympiagames,	492.40
Vaphres father-in-law to Salomon,	518. 20
Vanity of opinions concerning the rape of Helen,	582. 30
Valco de Gama, the first finder of the Cape of good hope,	539.10
Vatablus his opinion concerning Eden,	44.2
Vengeance cast upon Israel for the ingratitude of Jehu,	452. 20
Virtue truly heroical,	459.40
Virtue of Josias in his child-hood,	536. 30
Venetians, probably descended from the Trojans,	387.30
Venetus his report of Japan,	99.1
(*)	Victory

## The Table.

Victory of Iephta, envied by the Ephraimites, and the issue thereof,	372.20
Victory begotten security,	411.10
Victory of Nabuchodonozor against Nebuchadnezzar,	550.30
Violence towards Parents punished with death,	239.30
Virgils opinion touching the Originall of the Trojans,	377.50
Uncertainty of Authors, about the time when Homer lived,	403.30
Vnwarlike people hardened by custome of danger,	541.40
Voluptuousnesse of Sardanapalus,	476.30
Uriah his death, considered with the slaughter done by Salomon upon his elder brother,	394.4
Urim and Thummim of the Iewish priests	395.20
Use to be made of praying toward the East,	31.30
Use of letters found out before the Flood,	67.50
Uses of the Morall, Ceremoniall, and Iudicial Lawes,	237.50
Uzziah punished by God, for meddling with the Priests office,	481.10
W	
Antonnesse of Atossa,	457.30
Wariness of the Romans in establishing Rome for the Seat of the Empire,	483.40
War concluded upon uneven terms, if Nations breaketh out with greater violence,	529.30
Way attempted to be made for passage of ships from Nilus into the Red Sea,	538.50
West part of America how it came to be called Peru,	149.20
Why S. Paul may probably be thought chiefly to intend, in the account of time from Israels coming out of Egypt to the division of the promised Land,	376.10
What kinde of Prophets they were, with whom Saul encountered and prophecied,	395.10
What year of the world David died in,	492.20
What Cinæi they were, against whom Balaam prophecied, Ios. 19. 33.	230.40
What kinde of Kings those five were, mentioned, Gen. 14.	219.30
What part of the Red Sea Moses passeth thro.	219.30
What might be the cause of Ieholaphars taking his son to be partner in his Kingdom,	442.40
Whence the conceit of Orpheus and Hercules sprang, that Giants were the sons of Heaven and Earth,	70.7
Whence the fable arose, of dividing the world between the three sons of Saturn,	73.40
Whence the word (Slave) had its original,	420.50
Where it was that Christ remained, whilest Joseph and Mary feared Herod,	208. ult.
Which Magog Ezechiel had reference to,	117.3
Which Havilah it is that P. son compasseth,	150.50
Which Belus was the more ancient,	163.50
Who they were that first instituted the Nemean Games	370.7
Who were supposed to be the first Inventors of Navigation,	114.30
Wholesome severity rather desired, than remission of liberty,	532.30
Why the Babylonians gave a Dove in their Ensigns,	183.40
Wickednesse quickly planted, but not easily rooted up again,	540.10
Wicked Instigators,	446.50
William of Tyre his report, concerning the Egyptian Caliph,	512.4
Wine and strong drink, prohibited to teeming women,	388.50
Wisdom better than all worldly riches,	423.10
Wisdom of man, blinde in looking into the counsel of God,	456.40
Wife at home, and foolish abroad,	470.30
Witches transmutations,	178.1
Woman given to man for a Comforter, not for a Counsaier.	60.40
Women, with Idolatry pervert Salomon,	429.40
Wonder of a Nation,	532.4
Wondering at any thing in this world, is folly, considering the folly of the world,	457.50. &c.
Words of Image and Similitude, taken in one and the same sense by Saint Paul and Saint James,	196.30
Worldly men, and their condition,	396.40
Worlds first written received Law,	232.10
Worship done to Christ by the Magi,	141.10
Wretched pride,	469.30
Writers on the place of Paradise, diversly conceived,	28.30

FINIS.

## An Alphabetical Table of the Principall Contents of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Books of the First Part of the History of the WORLD.

Wherein the first number signifieth the Leaf,  
the second the Line.

A		death of himself, his Mother, and Grand-mother,	342.10
Brocomas his Comrade,	94.10	Alcetas his unhappy end,	193.40
Achæmenes his association with Arbaces,	23.40	Alciades his cunning dealing with the Spartan Embassadors,	81.10
Acrocorinthus, a strong Citadel of Corinth	338.30	banish himself, 82.40. and seeketh revenge upon his own Citizens,	83.1.
Adherbal his notable victory at Sea against the Romans,	210.50	He is reuoked from banishment, 84.30. His great favour with Tisaphernes, ibid. 50. Again unjustly exiled, 86.4. His friendship & good counsel is rejected, 87.30. His death,	88.20
Advantage of absolute Lords, above such as are served by Voluntaries,	79.40	Alexander the son of Amyntas King of Macedon, his magnanimity and prudence,	41.40
Adversity is alwaies sure to hear of her errors,	319.20	It rectifies the understanding,	456.20
Advisednesse and rashnesse,	370.30	Alexander M. chosen Captain General of the Greeks,	140.40
Ægira taken by surprise, and lost again through greedinesse of spoil,	504.50	He winneth Thebes, 140.20. His clemency to the race of Pindarus, ibid. 50. His cruelty to his Mother-in-lawes Kinsmen, 142.20. His gracious dealing with the Cities of his first Conquest in Asia, 144.30. His policy in sending the Persian targets to the Cities of Greece,	145.40
Æmylius Paulus his great circumspetion, 379.40. His encouragement to his Souldiers, 381.30. His care to prevent the mischief imminent, through the head-strong conduct of his vain glorious Colleague,	383.50	His easie passage through the straits of Cilicia, 150.20. His many good fortunes at once, 150.20. His answer to Darius his Letter after the battail of Issus, ibid. 50. He releaseth Apollo, ibid. 34. His wisdom in Dio, 151.20. His affection of Deity, 153.20. His passage over Tigris, 154.30. His answer to Darius his Embassadors, 156.20. The number of his Army, 157.4. Hath Arbela, with a great masse of treasure, yielded unto him, 157.50. Waxeth contemptible amongst his followers, 160.20. His happy temerity, 165.3. His stratagem to win the passage of a rock, ibid. 10. His grosse affection of flattery, 168.30. &c. His passage over the River Oxus, ibid. 50. His cruelty to a colony of Greeks, 172.30. His munificence to Omphis, ibid.	
Ætolians ingratitude, 341.40. &c. their pride abated, 589.20. who being the first drawers of the Romans into Greece, are the first whose necks are galled with their yoke,	502.46	He loseth most part of his Army, 175.3	
Agathocles his degrees, whereby he obtained the Kingdome of Syracuse, 289.4. He overthroweth the Carthaginians, 291.3. Is himself shortly after besieged by them, with the strange course he takes to raise the siege, 292.50. His perfidy toward Ophellas, 292.50. His error in not making timely peace with the Carthaginians, 293.4. His amazed flight into Sicily, ibid. 30. His bloody nature, ibid. 40. His wretched end,	294.20	His marriage with Statira, ibid. 40. His lamentation for Ephestions death, 176.20. His last draught,	ibid. 40.
Agefilaus his sacrifice thrown down from the Altar, 111.10. He deludeth Tisaphernes, ibi. 30. He driveth Pharnabazus out of his camp, 120.40. He mastereth Bæotia, 115.20. His disloyalty, 128.40. His death, ibid. 50		Alterations of time,	521.30
Agis his great care for the good of Sparta, unworthily recompenced with the lamentable		Alliance between Hannibal and the Romans,	

(\*\*2)

Al.

## The Table.

## The Table.

Altinius his Treason worthily punished, 425.40  
 Amasis his entry to the Kingdom of Egypt, 19.2  
 Ambition making haste to her own ruine, 369.30  
 Ambition of divers Consuls, to wrest the honour of the War in Africk, out of Scipio's hands, 597.30  
 Ambition, malignant of others vertue, is a vile quality in a great counsellor, 643.43  
 Amilcar, father of the great Hannibal, invadeth and wasteth Italy, 312.40. he resigneth his charge to Gelsco, 315.50. His passage over the river Badagras, 329.20. His first victory over the Mercenaries, ibid. 40  
 His humanity to his prisoners, affrights the Captains of the Mutines, 330.10. His notable entrapping of the Rebels, and the terrible execution done upon them, 333.5  
 He besiegeth Tunes, ibid. 30. Is made Generall in the Spanish expedition, 336.20. His singular virtue acknowledged by his most deadly enemies, ibid. His death, ibid. 40  
 Amyntas (almost) expelled out of Macedon, 118.2  
 Amyntas obtaineth the Kingdom of Egypt, 89.10  
 Andronodorus his subtilty in resigning his Protectorship, 436.10. his close dealing to attain the Sovereignty, 437.50. His death, 438.20  
 Angra, a strong Fort, 310.10  
 Antigonus the Great, his politick escape from Perdiccas, 187.50. Is made General of the Macedonian Army, 192.20. His barbarous usage to the dead corps of Alctas, 193.40. His reasons for not entering Macedon, 200.40. His politick surprize of Eumenes his carriages, 209.30. His subtle plot in betraying Eumenes, 210.30. His just payment of the Traitors, 211.4. His preparation against Ptolemy, 213.4. He enforceth Tyre, by famine, to render it self, 214.10. His journey into Phrygia, 216.50. He forceth Cassander to retire into Macedon, 227.40. His intent to marry with Cleopatra, Sister to Alexander, 227.40. His fleet in great extremity, 233.3. His departure out of Egypt, ibid. 30. His vain ostentation, 235.1. His unwonted sadness, 237.1. His end and conditions, ibid. 30  
 Antigonus the younger, the son of Demetrius, Is made King of Macedon, 256.20  
 His fond ostentation to the Gauls Embassadors, ibid. 40. is forced to abandon his camp, ibid. 50. Is forsaken of his own Soldiers, and expelled his kingdom, 258.2. He ray-

seth anew Army against Pyrrhus, 259.10 and recobtaineth his kingdom, ibid. 40. His policy in getting Acrocorinthus, 338.20  
 Antigonus, surnamed Tutor, made Protector to Philip the son of Demetrius, 339.3. His expedition into Achaia, 346.40. Is made Captain Generall over the Achaeans, and their Confederates, 347.20. He vanquisheth Cleomenes at Salsia, 349.50. His death, 350.10  
 Antiochus the Great, marcheth against Molo, his Rebell, 566.20. Wins the victory by his name and presence, ibid. 30. He winneth Seleucia from the Egyptian, 557.20. He flieth to Ptolemy for peace after his overthrow to Raphi, 558.50. He taketh Sardes, 559.30. his expedition against the Parthians, 561.ult. his passage to the Indians, 562.50. he re-edifieth Lysimachia, 566.30. His embassage to the Romans, 568.40  
 His vain brags, 581.20. His embassage to the Achaeans, 582.20. he is driven out of Greece, 585.30. and is utterly defeated by the Romans, 589.27  
 Antipater sends to Craterus for succour, 181.30. Is besieged in Lamia, 182.10. He cometh to the aid of the Macedonian camp, 184.20. His subtle dealing with the Greeks in the treaty of peace, ibid. 20. He changeth the Government of Athens, 249.20. He returneth with the king into Macedon, 192.20  
 his qualities, 194.10  
 Apelles, his device to supplant Aratus, 508.50. Happily discovered, 509.10. His conspiracy against the king, ibid. 30. His arrogance, and treachery towards the King, 516.30. He is dasht out of countenance, and forsaken his company, by a simple check from the King, ibid. 50. and is imprisoned, where he dies, 517.10  
 Apollo's Oracle concerning Cyrus, 7.50  
 Apollonides his treachery, 192.40  
 App. Claudius arrives at Messina in favour of the Mamertines, 269.4. He giveth an overthrow unto the Carthaginians, 270.40  
 Apries, the King of Egypt put to death by his subjects, 12.50  
 Apfus, or Aous, a great River in the straits of Epirus, 796.40  
 Aratus expelleth the Tyrant of Sicyon, 339.50. And surpriseth the Citadell of Corinth, 340.10. being led with private passion, he makes a bad bargain for his country, 344.20. his violent opposition against the League with Cleomenes, 345.40. his obstinacy against all the gentle offers of Cleomenes, 350.10

Archimedes his strange engines in defence of Syracuse, 442.7. his death and sepulture, 445.40  
 Argives at dissention among themselves, 82.10  
 Argos, the name of an Altar in Greece, 551.40  
 Aridæus his weaknesse, 180.30  
 Armagoras surpriseth the Persian fleet, 44.ult. is assisted by the Athenians, 45.10  
 He surpriseth Sardes, and burneth it, ibid. is overthrown by the Edonians, 46.10  
 Aristides his integrity, 59.30  
 Aristodemus his fruitlesse flattery, 231.50  
 Art of quarrell, 476.30  
 Art of Tyrants, 532.1  
 Artabazus his bootlesse counsell, 49.20  
 he flieth into Thrace, 61.20. is together with his whole family put to death by exquisite torments, 67.40  
 Artabazus highly favoured by Alexander, for his fidelity to Darius, 162.40. and is made Governour of Bactria, 186.30  
 Artaxerxes his vain ostentation, 95.50  
 his message to the Greeks, 96.20. His base minde, 97.40  
 Artemisia, her sound advice to Xerxes, 56.10  
 Asdrubal, the son of Amilcar, his strange flight towards Italy, 411.30. His terrible entry into Italy, 456.20. His main overthrow, 457.20. his death and commendations, 459.50  
 Asdrubal the son of Gelsco, is chosen Generall of the Carthaginians, 477.20. &c. is fired out of his Camp by Scipio, 480.10  
 and flieth to Carthage, ibid. 30. He raiseth new forces, 481.60. and is put to flight by the Romans, ibid. 40  
 Assembly of the Grecian Estates, upon the treaty of peace with Philip, 584.10  
 Athenians constancy, 58.30. they send a fleet into Egypt against the Persian, 68.20  
 they enforce Aegina to render upon most base conditions, 70.30. they invade Samos, 72.10. and subdue Mitylene, 74.58. their rough answer to the Spartan Embassadors,

83.4. Their stratagem against Syracuse, 279.10. They besiege it, ibid. 40. their obstinacy in the war of Sicil, 280.4. Are beaten at Scaby the Syracusians, ibid. 30. their last Sea fight in Sicil, 281.8. the miserable end of their whole Army, 282.20  
 Attilius M. his victory by Sea, against the Carthaginians, 509.50  
 Aulis in Boetia, a goodly Haven, 111.10  
 B  
 Babylon, the greatnesse thereof, 30.40  
 Bagoas his malicious cruelty, 175.20  
 Balthazar, not the son but the Grand-child of Nabuchodonosor, 7.40. miserably slain by his own people, 5.30  
 Bantius his easie nature, 395.9  
 Barbarous resolution, 102.8  
 Battail of Metaurus, 458.50  
 Battail of Nadagara, 494.3  
 Battail of Magnesia, 540.10  
 Benefit and Grace, 27.40  
 Benefits arising from wrongs done, make not injustice the more excusable, 445.30  
 Boeotians re-enter their own Land, and recover their liberty, 71.50  
 Bravery, of all qualities, is the least requisite unto Sovereign command, 390.40  
 Britomarcus, slain in single fight by Marcellus, 357.30  
 Britons policy against the French, 265.10  
 Brutus his over-great severity, 247.40  
 Burrough his wastage of the English thorough the Straits of Ellenour, 309.50  
 C  
 Calamities of war, in some cases rather enable than weaken Kingdomes, 423.40  
 Calpas, a goodly Haven, 106.10  
 Callinicus his bloody entry to the Kingdom of Asia: and his unfortunate reign, 553.7  
 Cambyfes his chief reason, in hindering the building of the City & Temple of Jerusalem, 33.10. he marryeth his own sisters, ibid. 40. his cruelty to the dead, 36.40. His attempt against the Temple of Jupiter Ammon, ibid. 50. his dream, and the issue thereof, 74.4. His death, ibid. 40  
 Camillus F. his integrity, 249.20. unjustly banished, ibid. 30. his notable service against the Gauls, 250.10  
 Campanians submit to the Romans, 250  
 Captains unhappy, but happy Clerks, 614.10  
 Care taken to avoid good admonition, 319.20  
 Car-

## The Table.

Carthage described, 266. 10. The special causes of her destruction, *ibid.* 30  
 Carthaginians policy to separate the Syracusians from the Selinuntines, 282. 30. their sacrifice to Saturne, with the event thereof, 293. 10. Their wofull oversight, 316. 50  
 Their consternation, 482. 3. They assaile the Romans in the haven of Utica, *ibid.* 50. their great joy upon a small occasion, 483. 6. Their dishonourable Embassage to Scipio, 486. 3  
 Their impatience lusteth them many helps, 419. 50. Their bootlesse sorrow, *ibid.* Their envie to the Barchines, repayed with advantage, 540. 30  
 Carthalo his fortunate successe against the Romans, 311. 20  
 Caesarer his secret conference with Antigonus, 195. 20. His entry into Piræus, 198. 10. He reduceth Athens to obedience, 199. 10  
 He builds Cassandria, and re-edifies Thebes, 204. 10. his politick dealing with Alexander the son of Polyperchon, 215. 30. He vanquisheth Glaucius King of the Illyrians, 216. 10. He putteth Roxane and her son to death, 225. 50. His cruelty repayed on his own booke, 241. 50  
 C. Cassius his wife answer, 83. 50  
 Cato his generall conclusion in Senate, 468  
 His condition, 339. 30  
 Ceraunus repaireth to Seleucus, 245. 10  
 his treachery against him, *ibid.* 30. his good successe in Macedon and Thrace, 254. 10. perfidious love to his sister, *ibid.* 30. his foolish pride and miserable end, 255. 10  
 Ceraphim, or Hagiographa of the Jewes, 2. 10.  
 Charidemus his good counsell to Darius *ill rewarded*, 149. 4  
 Charles the Fifth, his advice to his son Philip, 300. 10  
 Choice ill made, 628  
 Cimon, Generall of the Athenians, 66. 40. He reduceth Phaelis to the subjection, *ibid.* he obtaineth two victories in one day, *ibid.* He overthroweth the Phœnicians fleet, *ibid.* and is sent with a strong Navie, to take in the Ile of Cyprus, 68. 40. His death, 70. 40  
 Cincinnatus his noble expedition against the Volscians, 249. 10  
 Cleodas his bootlesse perswasion, 141.  
 Cleander and his Complices, worthily rewarded, 175. 20.  
 Clearchus driveth the Persians out of their Camp, 97. 30. his confident message to the Persian, *ibid.* 50. his overmuch credulity, and death, 99. 10  
 Cleomenes his victory against Aratus, 343. 30. he restoreth the ancient discipline of Lycurgus, *ibid.* 40. his great spirit and good carriage in managing his affairs, *ibid.* his great victory at Dymes, 345. 20. his winning of Argos, 347. 7. is enforced to abandon Acrocorinthus, 347. 10. his bold affront given to Antigonus, 348. 30. is put to flight by Antigonus, and lovingly entertained by Ptolemy Euergetes, 400. 1. His unfortunate end, *ibid.* 50  
 Chyrea a Port Town on Africk side, 300  
 Cocles his admirable resolution, 248. 1  
 Combates of divers kindes, 466. 1  
 Commodity of a retrait, is a great advancement to flie running away, 367. 40  
 Conditions of truce between the Athenians and Lacedæmonians, 75. 50  
 Concolitanus and Anerocetus, with a mighty Army of Gaules invade the Romans 354. 30. but are overthrowen, together with the greatest part of their forces, 356. 30  
 Congruity of natures in a rare couple, 532. 30  
 Conon his famous retrait, 108. 10  
 Conquest of revenge, what it is truly, 468. 30  
 Consultation rightly Creticall, 550  
 Contempt used against Princes, lesse pardonable than ill deeds, 286. 7  
 Contradictions in the Romish history, about the wars of the two Scipio's in Spain, 401. 40  
 Convenience and inconvenience of an army consisting of divers Nations and Languages, 316. 50  
 Coriolanus his dangerous war against the Romans, 284. 40  
 Counsaill prevaileth nothing, where opportunities are neglected, 354. 40  
 Courage not answerable to goodwill, 444. 10  
 Court wars, 335. 10  
 Cowardize and courage strangely intermixed, 340. 20  
 Craft of the Romans in obscure covenants, 402. 30  
 Craterus his malice, 166. 20  
 He is sent back into Macedon, and made Lieutenant thereof, 176. 4. He joyneth with Antipater, 184. 30. His marriage with the daughter of Antipater, 186. 10. He reduceth the Ætolians into hard terms, *ibid.* 20. his over-much hast to encounter Eumenes, 190. 10. Is deceived in his expectation, *ibid.* 40. His death, 191. 8  
 Cratippus answer to Pompey, 26. 40  
 Croesus his cause of enmity with the Medes,

## The Table.

Medes, 22. 50. His Pedegree, 25. 50. His many conquests, 26. 7. His security and delusions, *ibid.* 20. Contemnes Sandanes his good counsell, *ibid.* 30. flyeth to Sardes, *ibid.* ult. is there besieged, 27. 20  
 Cruelly in Lords, begetteth hatred in subjects, 522. 10  
 Curtius and Trogus mistaken, in Alexanders arrivall on the banks of Tanais, 169. 30  
 Custome of conquered Nations, 402. 50  
 Cyna, mother to Euridice, 191. 40  
 Cyncas, a principall Counsellor to Pyrrhus, 251. 50. is sent Embassadour to the Romans, 253. 30  
 Cyrus his first military service, 18. 40  
 He overthroweth the Assyrians, 22. 50. His name made reverend by his goodnesse, 25. 20  
 His policy in pursuing Croesus 27. 10. His great mercy, *ibid.* 40. his war in Scythia, 28. 10. His siege of Babylon, *ibid.* 30. his forcible entry into it, 30. 10. His sepulchre and Epitaph, 31. 30  
 Cyrus Brother to Artaxerxes, his policy in levying Soldiers, 93. 20. his unfortunate valour, 95. 20  
 D  
 Amaratus, the paternall Ancestour of the Tarquinii, 426. 50  
 Danger in constituting two Generals of contrary factions, 331. 10  
 Danger at hand neglected, through vain hope of future victory, 479. 30  
 Darius, the son of Hydaspes, his message to the Scythians, 40. 50. strangely answered, 41. 3. His difficult escape, *ibid.* 10  
 his jealousie of Histæus, 46. 20  
 Darius Nothus seizeth the kingdom of Persia, 89. 10. He recovereth all that his Father and Grandfather had lost in Asia, *ibid.* 30. His death, *ibid.* 40  
 Darius his vain insolency, 142. 30. his Army, and their condition, *ibid.* 40. is discomfited at Issus, 150. 20. he offereth conditions of peace to Alexander, 155. 50. his retreat into Media, 157. 40. his hard destiny still to follow the worst counsell, 161. 10. his wofull dejection, *ibid.* 30. his last speech to Polystratus, 162. 20  
 Deceit over-reacheth by fraud, 454. 3  
 Decius Magus his constancy toward the Romans, 392. 10  
 Delay, the sharpest Enemy to an invading Army, 145. ult.  
 Demetrius the son of Antigonus the elder, his love to Eumenes, 210. 40. his vain journey into Cilicia, 218. 10. he taketh Cilices with his Camp and Army, 221. 30. his wantonnesse well punished, 229. 10. he translateth Sicyon, and calleth it Demetrias, 225. 50. his haplesse successe, 227. 10. He obtaineth Cilicia, 238. ult. his gentle dealing with the ungratefull Athenians, 240. 10. his weaknesse most apparent in his most Greatnesse, 242. 40  
 his unprincipally sentence, *ibid.* 50. he repelleth Pyrrhus, 243. 30. is hardly pursued by Agathocles, 244. 10. his passage over Lycus, *ibid.* 20  
 Demetrius the son of Antigonus Gonatas, expelleth Alexander the son of Pyrrhus, out of Macedon and Epirus, 338. 20  
 Decayed in vertue, after he became king, *ibid.* 50  
 Demetrius Pharius, expelled his Kingdom by the Romans, & entertained by King Philip, 506. 3. he procurerth Philip to make a league with Hannibal, 518. 20. A cunning observer of Philips humours, 520. 20  
 is slain in attempting of Messene, *ibid.* 30  
 Demosthenes his temerity corrected, 280. 10. his good counsaill rejected, 281. 30. is abandoned by Nicias, 282. 4. and basely murdered, *ibid.*  
 Desire of rule belongeth to the nobler part of Reason, 325. 20  
 Desperation derided by obdurate nesse, 530. 7  
 Dienecees his resolute answer, 53. 1  
 Dion, banisht for his good meaning, 286. 50. He returneth with an Army, and entereth Syracuse, 287. 40. is again expelled, *ibid.* his death, with the revenge thereof, 288. 4  
 Dionysius the elder, aspireth to the Kingdom of Syracuse, 283. 20. his revenge taken on his revolted followers, *ibid.* 50. is excluded, and recovereth Syracuse, 284. 10. his powerfull Navie, *ibid.* 40. his perfidious dealing with Himilco, patterned, 1585. 20  
 He sacketh Tauromentum, *ibid.* 30. his siege of Rhegium, *ibid.* his death, and his condition, 286. 20  
 Dionysius the younger his barbarous cruelty, 286. 30. his hard dealing against Dion, 387. 30. is expelled Syracuse, *ibid.* 40. He recovereth it again, 288. 7. He surrendreth the same to Timoleon, *ibid.* 40  
 Disenfe common to Princes & private persons, 296. 40  
 Dissension between Commanders, 292  
 Doctrine of policy, 122. 5  
 Dreams sometimes too true, *ibid.* 4  
 Duilius his policy in fighting with the Carthaginian Gallies, 397. 20. he raiseth the siege of Segesta, 398. 20  
 Duty out of season, 572. 50  
 (\* \* 4)



## The Table.

**E**loquence dearly bought, 138. 2  
 Emperor of Congo his Guard, 164. 10  
 Emporia, a Town of a great importance  
 in Spain, 400. 7  
 Enterchange of victory between Hannibal and Marcellus, 450. 10  
 Envoie of the Spartans, 216. 10  
 Epaminondas driveth his enemies from their fortifications, 121. 40. he invadeth Peloponnesus, 122. 30. his politick dealing with the Spartans and Mantineans, 125. 20. his notable prowess, 126. ult. his death, 127. 40  
 Epicles his crafty dealing with the Leontines, 439. 2. his costly feasting of the Syracusians, 443. 50  
 Error of mans judgement, in valuing things according to common opinion, 326. 4  
 Errors that are especially to be avoided by a General, 370. 30  
 Euergetes, and the cause of such his denomination, 552. 20  
 Eumenes is made Governour of Cappadocia, 182. 10. his open dealing, 189. 50. his policy in preventing Craterus, ibid. he killeth Neoptolemus in single fight, ibid. 50  
 his wisdom in redeeming the love of his people, 191. 20. the condition of his Army, 192. 30. his admirable resolution, ibid. is set at liberty by Antigonus, 199. 40. his Country and condition, 201. 5. his profitable use of a fained dream, 205. 20. his passage into Persia, ibid. 40. He fortifieth the Castle of Susa, 205. ult. his singular dexterity in ordering his Army, 206. 40. his politick delusion of Antigonus, 207. 20. his provident circumspicion, ibid. 40. his meer vertue the sole cause of his overthrow, 208. 20. his unfortunate end, 210. 50  
 Eumenes King of Pergamus his policy to animate his soldiers, 609. 24. he waxeeth contemptible, 631. 24. his voyage to Rome to complain against Perseus, 731. 50  
 Euridice her incest and murder, 132. 40  
 Euridice her title to the Empire of Macedon after Alexanders death, 178. 1. she calleth Callander to her succour, 202. 10. is abandoned by her own followers, ibid. 20  
 Expectation is alwaies seditions, when the event is of most importance, 282. 6

**F**Abius his advised temporizing, 274. 50  
 He divideth the Legions with Minutius, 377. 40. his grave counsaill to Amylius, with his answer thereunto, 381. 20. &c.  
 his unanswerable objection to Scipio, 402. 1. his rivall of his sons judgement, 425. 20

his recovery of Tarentum, and by what means, 450. 40. his envie at the growing vertue of Scipio, 473. 20. his opinion touching Hannibals departure out of Italy, 490  
 He dieth much about the same time, 491. 9  
 Faith of the Petilians toward the Romans, 413. 3  
 Fayal taken by the English, 307. 20  
 Fear pretended where War is intended, 663. 3  
 Flaminius his costly jealousy, 372. 5  
 Flattery beyond basenesse, 341. 9  
 Flight is sometimes commendable, 368. 30  
 Fons Solis of a strange Nature, 153. 40  
 Fortitude is a diligent preserver of it self, 468. 20  
 Friends taken for enemies, 432. 5  
 Friendship sought after a strange manner, 656. 10  
 Fruit of popular jealousy, 373. 8  
 Fury of a multitude, 546. 9

**G**ades is yielded to the Romans, 472. 30  
 Gams report to Henry 5. at the bartail of Agincourt, 384. 30  
 Gauls, their furious invasion of Rome, 249. 40. overthrown by Antigonus, 237. 10  
 Gelon, Prince of Syracuse, 276. 1. His victory against the Carthaginians, ibid. 70. his dog, ibid. 40  
 Gelco his provident course in transporting the Carthaginian Army from Sicil to Carthage, 315. 50. is sent to pacifie the Mutiniers, 317. 50. is detained prisoner by them, 319. 20  
 God bereaveth a man of half his vertue that day, when he casteth him into bondage, 328. 10  
 Greeks terrible to the Barbarians, 93. 50  
 Gracchus his victory at Beneventum, 421. 50  
 Gylippus commeth to the relief of Syracuse, 279. 40. He wins the Athenians Fort, 280. 30. He taketh Nicias prisoner, 232. 10.

**H**Annibal his great valour & wisdom, 359. 20. his hereditary hatred against the Romans, 362. 50. his passage over Rhodanus, 363. 50. & over the Alps, 364. 20. he vanquisheth the Taurini, and forceth their Town, 366. 30. his exemplary Rhetorick;

## The Table.

Ibid. ult. his politick dissimulation of the Gauls, 368. 40. his taking of Clastidium, 369. his perill amongst the Gauls, 371. 8  
 his dealing with the Romans after a trick of their own, 372. 30. his stratageme in passing the Hills of Callicula and Casiline, 375. 10. his encouragement to his soldiers, 384. 4. his order in the marshalling of his Army at the battell of Canne, ibid. 40. his intelligence in Nola, 395. 20. his siege of Casiline, 395. 20. his Army at Capua, not so effeminate as is supposed, 397. 10. his bootlesse attempt upon Cumæ, 420. 40. the fear of the Romans at his approach to their City, 431. 30. he dislodgeth from before it, 433. 1. his over-much credulity, 499. 10. his victory against Cn. Fulvius, ibid. 40. his stratageme against Fabius discovered, 451. 30. his politick surprize of Marcellus, 453. 40. his notable commendations, 461. 30. he raiseth an Altar, with an inscription of his victories, 474. 10. his speech at his departure from Italy, 490. 20. He landeth at Lepcis, and winneth many to his party, 491. 30  
 his speech to Scipio upon their meeting in Africk, 493. 20. his resolved dealing with a vain Orator, 498. 10. his languishing in a generall calamitie, 499. 50. his escape from Carthage, 561. his conference with the Romans, 576. his free speech to Antiochus, 593  
 his death, 615  
 Hanno, Admirall of the Carthaginian fleet, 313. 40. is intercepted and overthrown by Catulus, 314. 10. he is a bitter enemy to Amilcar, 317. 20. his ill conduct of the Carthaginian Army, 328. 50. his malicious jests at Hannibals victories, 398. 10  
 his unjust accusation of Hannibal, 399. 50  
 Hardinesse is unworthy the name of valour, which hath no regard of honesty or friendship, 341. 30  
 Hermias his unreasonable counsell unto Antiochus, 544. 6. &c.  
 Hermocrates his policy to detain the Athenians, 281. 40. his unjust banishment and death, 282. 50  
 Hieroms woman-Cow, 17. 50  
 Hieron the elder chosen King of Syracuse, 268. 50. his league with the Carthaginians for exterminating the Mamertines out of Sicil, 269. 1. his great oversight in encountering with Claudius, 270. 30. he dislodgeth from Messana, ibid. 50  
 Hieron the younger relieveth Carthage, 332. 30. His wife forecast in relieving the Carthaginians and Romans, when they were oppressed, 380. 10

Hieronymus, the last King of Syracuse, his qualities, 436. 10. his death, 437. 30  
 Himilco recovereth many Towns in Sicil, 284. 30. He besiegeth Syracuse, 285. 10  
 his treacherous peace with Dionysius repayed with like perfidie, ibid. 30  
 Hippocrates his counterfeite Epistle, with the success thereof, 440. 10  
 His Majesties prudence and kingly power, 460. 20. his justice, ibid. 50. his great bounty and honour conferred upon martiall men, 618. 20  
 Histiaius his practices against the Persian, 44. 40. his escape from Darius his Lieutenants, and death, 46. 20  
 Historians generall affection, 383. 30  
 Hollanders passage by the mouth of the Duke of Parma's Cannon, 309. 50  
 Honour without trust, 159. 1. Honour that is acquired by detracting from others worth, seldometh thrive with the possessor, 379. 16

**I**nces his crafty dealing with the Corinthians, 288. 20  
 He besiegeth them in the Castle of Syracuse, ibid. 40. is taken by Timoleon, and put to death, 289. 20  
 Impudence of Roman falsehood, 399. 10  
 Inarus, King of Lybia, hanged by the Persians, 70. 5  
 Incoherences in the relation of the Roman History, 386. 50  
 Inequality of rigour, 395. 50  
 Infidelity findes no sure harbor, 543  
 Injuries newly received, abolish the memory of old good turns, 541. 4  
 Insolency well rewarded, 303. 7  
 Insolency of a mutinous Army, 317. 30  
 Inter-regnum among the Romans, and the nature thereof, 379. 20  
 John Lord Talbot, and Amilius Paulus paralleled, 388. 20  
 Joachim the High Priest instituteth the Feast of Purim, 71. 20  
 Isaurians desperate resolution, 187. 10

**K**ing James his prudence, and kingly power, 470. 10. his justice, ibid. 30. his bounty and honour conferred upon martiall men, 618. 10  
 Knowledge in a Commander, what his Enemy ought to do, is a speciall mean to prevent all hostile attempts, 314. 10  
 Lacc-

# The Table.

# The Table.

**L.**  
**L**acedaemonians, their patient valour, 60.  
 7. Their condon of life, 76. 20. Are  
 driven to hard termes, 76. 20. they  
 vain over-weening, *ibid.* 40. they lose their  
 old true friends for new false ones, 77. 50.  
 their Embasie to Corinth, 78. 50.  
 Laodice her malicious revenge, 541. 30.  
 worthily punished, *ibid.* 50.  
 League between the Romans and Aetoli-  
 ans, 415. 10.  
 League between the Lacedaemonians and  
 Aetolians, 504. 20.  
 Lemnia, a Curiſan, her notable resolution,  
 43. 40.  
 Lentulus his speech to Aemilius, at the  
 battail of Cannæ, with the Comment, 387. 50.  
 Leonatus departeth out of Babylon, 179.  
 40. and is slain in fight against the Atheni-  
 ans, 184. 20.  
 Leonidas his admirable promeſſe, 52. 40.  
 Leontius his quarrell with Aratus, and  
 the iſſue thereof, 15. 30. he raiſeth ſedition  
 in the Army, 516. 10. being detected, is put  
 to death, 517. 20.  
 Leontines levieth an Army against the  
 Macedonians, 181. 20. he overthroweth  
 Antipater, 182. 10. is slain at the ſiege of  
 Lamia, 183. 40.  
 Leptines his great loſſe at Sea, 284. 40.  
 Letters from the Carthaginians in Capua  
 directed to Hannibal, intercepted by the Ro-  
 mans, with the iſſue thereof, 433. 10.  
 Leutychides his ſucceſſfull ſtratagem,  
 61. 50.  
 Liberty in counſail, 149. 20.  
 Liberty chained, 609. 1.  
 Lie: from what ground it is become ſo  
 terrible a word, 467. 10. Their conditions  
 that are moſt tender in taking it, *ibid.* 40.  
 Lyers by Record, *ibid.* 50.  
 Liguarians, their Nature and Condition,  
 570.  
 Lora-Law, 566. 50.  
 Love purchaſed by milde Governours with-  
 out empaireing a jot of Maieſty, 324. 50.  
 Lycidas, the moſt full of himſelf, his  
 wife and children, 59. 8.  
 Lycophron expelled Theſſaly, 135. 30.  
 Lycurgus buyes his election to the King-  
 dome of Sparta, 52. 10. he expelleth his fel-  
 low King, and eſtabliſheth his own tyranny,  
 507. 20.  
 Lyſimachus murdereth his ſon in Law,  
 241. 40. is taken priſoner by the Thracians,  
 242. 10. his City Lyſimachia ruined by earth-  
 quake, and himſelf with his whole Family,  
 ſhorly after extirpate, 244. 30.

**M.**  
**M**achiavel his obſervation upon mer-  
 cenary Souldiers, 322. 30. his Leſſon  
 to Caſar Borgia, 611. 16.  
 Magnificence of the Plataeans, 60. 10.  
 Mago commeth to ſuccour Cetes, 288.  
 50. abandons him through fear, and hang-  
 eth himſelf, 289. 4.  
 Mago, the brother of Hannibal, his joy-  
 full meſſage of the victory at Cannæ, 397.  
 20. his departure from Gades toward Italy,  
 477. 30. he winneth Genna, 473. 50. he  
 fighteth a battail with a Roman Procon-  
 ſull, wherein he receiveth his death's wound,  
 489. 30.  
 Mamertines treachery to the Meſſenians,  
 268. 4. are beſieged in Meſſena, 269. 1. &c.  
 Their impudent requeſt to the Romans, *ibid.*  
 49.  
 Mandavile his Monnment, 173. 40.  
 Mandonius rebelleth against the Romans,  
 463. 30. and being overthrowen is gently  
 pardoned, 472. 20.  
 Manlius his victory against the Sardin-  
 ians, 435. 20.  
 Marcellus repelleth Hannibal from the  
 ſiege of Nola, 395. 50. his diſhonourable ad-  
 vantage taken upon Caſiline, 474. 40. He  
 taketh Leontium, 439. 30. he beſiegeth Syra-  
 cuſe, 440. 50. his profitable circumſpection,  
 442. 50. his under-hand dealing against  
 the Syracuſians, during treaty of peace, 444.  
 50. his winning of Syracuſe, 453. 50. His  
 death, 445. 30.  
 Mardonius, Generall of Xerxes Army  
 against the Greeks, 49. 40. his fearfull ſlat-  
 tery, 57. 40. his Embaſſage to Athens, 58. 10.  
 He moveth Attica, *ibid.* 40. he burneth  
 Athens 59. 40. is ſlain with many thouſand  
 Perſians, 61. 50.  
 Marſhall of England, his power to pre-  
 ſerve every ones ſame and reputation, 469.  
 Martius his miraculous victories, 408.  
 10. proved idle dreams, 410. 40.  
 Martyrs, 468. 30.  
 Maſaniſſa proſſereth his ſervice to Scipio  
 against the Carthaginians, 475. 40. the  
 cauſe of his revolt from them to the Romans,  
 475. 40. He defeateth Hanno and his com-  
 pany, 478. 2. he purſueth Syphax, 481. 40.  
 is reſtored to his kingdom, 483. 10. he lea-  
 deth Syphax bound unto Cirra, where he  
 murdereth Sophoniſba, 484. 10. His heavie  
 Meſſage and Preſent unto her, *ibid.* 40. is  
 highly magnified by the Romans, and pro-  
 claimed King, 485. 50.  
 Maſites and his wives unfortunate ends,  
 63. 40.  
 Matho

Matho his mutinow Oration against the  
 Carthaginians, 318. 20. Is choſen by the mu-  
 tiners for one of their chief Captains, 319.  
 1. His furious Sally upon the Carthaginians,  
 333. 40. Is utterly defeated, and taken priſo-  
 ner, 334. 20.  
 Mazus his treacherous cowardice, 158. 1.  
 Megasthenes his report of Nabuchodon-  
 noſor, 7. 30.  
 Melcager proclaimeth Aridæus King,  
 179. 20. his plot against Perdiccas is disco-  
 vered, *ibid.* 40. his death, 180. 40.  
 Men that lye in wait for others, are ſel-  
 dome heedful of what may befall themſelves,  
 522. 10.  
 Menedemus and his Army overthrowen by  
 Spitamenes, 170. 3.  
 Menelaus his great indiſcretion, 230. 10.  
 Is beſieged in Salamis, *ibid.* 40. Is forced  
 to yeeld up the Town and his Army, 231.  
 40.  
 Metapontines and Thurines yeeld to Han-  
 nibal, 428. 50.  
 Midias his detestable murder, 108. 40.  
 Miltiades good ſervice ill rewarded, 48.  
 20.  
 Minos his purſuit of Dædalus, 273. 30.  
 Molo rebelleth against Antiochus, 644.  
 28. Is forced to retire towards Media, *ibid.*  
 50. upon advertisement returnes, and by  
 ſurprize overthroweth Xocentus and his  
 whole Army, 545. 11. Is abandoned by his  
 followers, and layeth hands on himſelf. *ibid.*  
 44.  
 Murder by guile, 470. 30.  
 Muſter of the Macedonians, with the an-  
 cient manner thereof, 620.  
 Mutines his good ſervice, procures him en-  
 vie, 445. 50.  
 His wrongfull diſgrace by the Carthagini-  
 ans, loſteth them Sicil, 446. 50.

## N

**N**abis defeated by Philopœmen, 575.  
 47. and is ſlain by treachery of the  
 Aetolians, 578.  
 Naburzanus his insolent behaviour toward  
 Darius, 159. 50.  
 Nature miſchievous,  
 20. 10.  
 Neceſſity, and other reaſons of employing  
 Mercenaries in the wars of the Netherlands,  
 323. 40.  
 Neoptolemus his diſimulation with Eu-  
 menes, 189. 30. Is ſhamefully beaten, *ibid.*  
 40.  
 Nicanor timely put into Athens by Cal-  
 ſander, 196. 20. He ſurprizeth Piræus I-  
 20.

bid. 40. His victory at Sea against Clitus,  
 198. 50.  
 Nicias abandoneth the Athenian Gallies,  
 281. 30. Is entangled in his paſſage to Car-  
 rina, 281. 1. yeeldeth himſelf, and is barbar-  
 ously murdered, 282. 10.  
 Nitocris a Magnificent Princeſſe, 19. 50.

## O

**O**bservations of celeſtiall bodies, the ſu-  
 reſt marks of Time, 220. 40.  
 Observations in the change of Em-  
 pires, 401. 2.  
 Offenders are alwaies afraid of their fel-  
 lows, if more innocent than themſelves,  
 331. 4.  
 Office of the Roman Cenſors, 423. 1.  
 Olympias, enemy to Antipater, 181. 40.  
 is revoked into Macedon, 194. 30. Her in-  
 humane cruelty, 202. 30. is condemned unto  
 death, 204. 20. her great Eſtate, and perverſe  
 conditions, *ibid.*  
 Orchards in the Aire, 16. 30.  
 Orestes murdered by his Tutor Aëropus,  
 132. 30.  
 Oſtentation checked by unexpected neceſ-  
 ſity, 437. 7.

## P

**P**acuvius Calavius an ambitious No-  
 bleman of Capua, 390. 40. his poliſtick  
 courſe taken to oblige both the Senate  
 and People of Capua unto him, 391. 10.  
 Panick terrors, 432. 30.  
 Panormus, now called Palermo, by whom  
 founded, 373. 50.  
 Papyrius his encouragement to the Romans  
 against the Samnites, 147. 50.  
 Paſſionie without thrift, 400. 4.  
 Paſſion in extremity, 27. 20.  
 Patience of the Spaniards, 312. 5.  
 Patience of awaiting a convenient ſeaſon,  
 is of great importance for obtaining victory,  
 381. 30.  
 Paulanias advanceth to ſuccour the Athe-  
 nians, 59. 30. he recovereth Bizantium from  
 the Perſians, 66. 1. is condemned as a traitor,  
 and dyeth in baniſhment, 114.  
 30.  
 Perdiccas his Nature and Quality, 178.  
 40. his fond over-weening, *ibid.* 50. He  
 joyneth with Leonatus, 180. 20. his policy  
 to entrap Melcager, 189. 20. is made the  
 Kings Protectour and Commander of his for-  
 ces, *ibid.* 30. he conquereth Cappadocia, 182.  
 40. his unfortunate paſſage over Nilus, 188.  
 20.  
 Perſepolis

## The Table.

*Persepolis burnt at the request of an Haribid.*  
*Perseus is sent by his Father against the Dardanians,* 520. 38. *his timorous Nature,* 624. 30. *is blamed by the Romans for reducing his rebellious subjects to obedience,* 626. 30. &c. *his journey to Delphi,* 629. 40. *A good Treasurer for the Romans,* 642. 34. &c. *resolveth to fight with the Romans,* 755. *is there overthrown, and the first that fled thence,* 657. *He takes Sanctuary,* 958. *his fond conceit in preserving his Treasures,* ibid. *is conquered by Cretians,* 650. *his base dejection before Æmylius,* 662. *is led Captive to Rome; where he dies miserably.* 773

*Perrians overthrown by their own policy,* 63. 5. *Their barbarous cruelty towards their prisoners,* 159. 40. *Their slavish subjection,* 223. 40. *Petelia, a strong City in Italy,* 324. 50. *Peucestes affrighted at the approach of Antigonus,* 207. 20. *His base retreat from the Army,* 209. 20. *worthily rewarded for his treachery to Eumenes,* 211. 50. *Phalanx of the Macedonians,* 533. *Phalaris his just Tyranny,* 275. 30. *His death,* ibid. *Pharnabazus assisteth the Thracians against the Greeks,* 106. 30. *He repelleth Agesilaus,* 11. 40. *His politick dealing among the Greeks,* 115. 2. *He marrieth one of Artaxerxes his daughters,* 117. 20. *Pharnus and his seven sons,* 218. *Phidippides his familiar Devil,* 47. 20. *Philadelphus the first of the Egyptian Kings that made league with the Romans,* 461. 30. *Phileterus his fortunate mishap,* 509. 10

*Philip of Macedon is left for an Hostage with the Illyrians,* 132. 50. *his escape away* 133. 20. *He vanquisheth Argæus,* ibid. 40. *his politick Donative of Pydna to the Olympians,* 134. 20. *he delivereth Pheres from the tyranny of Lycophrone,* ibid. 10. *he overthroweth Onomarchus and his whole Army,* 135. 30. *he winneth Olynthus,* 136. 10. *his arbitrement for the Kingdom of Thrace,* ibidem 20. *his policy in aiding the Boeotians,* ibid. *he invadereth Asia,* 138. 30. *His last feast,* ibid. 30. *his divers issues,* 139. 40

*Philip, King of Macedon, son of Demetrius expelleth Attalus out of Opus,* 416. 50. *his gallant demeanour towards the Achæans his Confederates,* 417. 20. *his Embassage to the Romans,* ibid. 50. *is forced to*

*quit Ætolia, for the defence of his own Country,* 418. 40. *His successfull expedition against the Eleans and Ætolians,* 419. 2. *is forced to rise from before Palæa, by the Treason of one of his own Captains,* 510. 30. *he wasteth Ætolia, and carryeth away a great booty,* 515. 20. &c. *he granteth peace to the Ætolians,* 518. 10. *and enters into League with Hannibal,* ibid. 30. *His double hand dealing with the Nobility and Commons of Messene,* 520. 30. *By his unjust courses make his Friends his Enemies,* 521. 30. *his odious dissimulation,* 526. 30. *his stratageme in the winning of Prinasus,* 527. 20. *his unskilfulnesse or unaptnesse to retain old Friends, and his forwardnesse in seeking new Enemies,* 528. 10. *he subdueth the Country of Athamania,* 587. 10. *his magnanimity constrained by the Romans, as want of reverence to their Estate,* 509. 30. *is enforced to abandon divers Towns by him conquered, with leave of the Romans,* ibid. *his cruelty towards the Maronites,* 610

*He grows jealous of his son Demetrius,* 613. *whom he puts to death,* 621. *his end,* 623

*Philistus, a notable Parasite,* 286. 50. *is taken and executed,* 287. 40. *Philopœmen his first military action,* 349. 5. *his great dexterity and sufficiency in War,* 522. 50. *he killeth Machanidas the Tyrant of Lacedæmon,* 424. 30. *he was a bad Sea-man,* 575. 5. *his policy to overthrow Nabis,* ibid. 50. *his lamentable end,* 614. 10

*Phocion is made chief Ruler in Athens,* 186. 6. *his just dealing,* 199. 40. *is deprived, and compelled to flye for his life,* 197. 10

*His Commendation,* ibid. 5. *Phyllides his Stratageme,* 118. 40 &c.

*Pisistratus his divers changes of fortune,* 43. 2

*Polybius his impartiall dealing,* 371. 50

*His worthy reprehension of Fabius the Roman Historian,* 401. 7

*Polyperchon is made protector of the King and Empire of Macedon,* 194. 6

*His unthankfull Nature,* 195. 40

*His cruelty to his old friend,* 197. 40

*His dishonourable departure from Megalopolis,* 198. 30

*His Treachery unto his Sovereign,* 202. 10

*And to his young Pupil,* 227. 10

*Polyx-*

## The Table.

*Polyxenicidas surpriseth the Rhodian Fleet,* 594. 10  
*Porcius Cato his condition,* 607. 2. &c.  
*Porus his manly answer to Alexander,* 172. 40. *Is restored to his estate, with a great enlargement,* 173. 30

*Power of the Medes,* 22. 40  
*Poyet, Chancellor to Francis the first, worthily punished for his falshood,* 463. 4  
*Prænestines honest resolution,* 396. 20  
*Their admirable patience,* 397. 7  
*Preferment acquired by courting the multitude,* 356. 50  
*Pride beaten with her own weapons,* 393. 50. *and punished with contempt,* 446. 20  
*Provisions of War, and absolute power of command, are of greater use in need, than the willing readinesse of Friends,* 74. 30

*Pfammones his gentle reprehension of Alexander,* 153. 50  
*Ptolemy Lagus his subtle dealing, to debar all claim to the Macedonian Empire,* 178. 20. *Is greatly beloved of the Egyptians,* 187. 20. *He sedeth with Antipater,* ibid. *His happy compassion,* 191. 20. *He scowres the Sea with his Fleet, under the conduct of Seleucus,* 214. 20. *He subdueth Cyprus,* 218. 20. *He surpriseth Gaſa, and taketh Tyre and Sidon,* 219. 30. *He retireth into Egypt,* 222. 4. *He obtaineth Sicily and Corinth,* 226. 50  
*His politick course against Antigonus,* 233. 20. *He besiegeth Salamis,* 240. 20. *His Vertues,* 245. 6

*Ptolemy Euergetes, King of Egypt, who taketh part with Cleomenes,* 345. 10  
*Publicola his sincerity,* 247. 30  
*Punic Faith,* 240. 30  
*Purpose intended by men, but dispensed by God,* 345. 40  
*Pyrrhus his hard beginning,* 241. 10. *His personall valour,* 242. 20. *Is made Patron of the Athenians,* 243. 50. *is forsaken by the Macedonians,* 245. 20. *is called into Italy by the Tarentines,* 251. 50. *His offer of peace to the Romans with their answer,* 252. 30. *His Tyranny in Sicily, and departure thence,* 255. 50. *He recalls his forces out of Italy,* 258. 10. *his excels for his dissembling with Sparta,* ibid. 30. *His fatal surprize of Argos,* 259. 30  
*Python employed against the Rebels in Asia,* 182. 50. *Is deſcended, and slain by Antigonus,* 212. 20

*Quintius his quipping answer to Philp,* 543. 20. *his profitable observation,* 546. 30. *His check given to the insolent Ætolians,* 584. 50. *His triumph,* 568. 24. *His grief mixed with gladnesse,* 482. 30. *His peremptory command and power,* 591. 2.

R

*Reasons moving the Romans to undertake the war in Sicily,* 269. 50  
*Rebellion of divers Provinces against the Persian,* 122. 50  
*Rebels confidence in the multitude, how vain a thing it is,* 517. 30  
*Recklesnesse of the Campanians,* 428. 10  
*Regulus his encounter with a monstrous Serpent,* 300. 50  
*He forceth Tunes,* 401. 6. *His death,* 302. 40.

*Retreat in the head of an Enemies Army, how dangerous,* 335. 50  
*Rhodians recover Peræa from the Macedonian,* 547. 40

*Their stout message to Antiochus,* 565. 50  
*are slighted by the Romans,* 732. 50  
*Romans, their admirable courage and industry,* 304. 7. *Their great losse by Sea,* ibid. 20. *Their whole losse by Sea during the first Punic War,* 314. 50. *Their answer in Senate to one of Privernum,* ibidem 30. *Their policy to pick a quarrell,* 337. 10. *Their confederacy with the Saguntines,* ibid. 30. *Their great forces at the time of Concolitanus his invasion,* 354. 40. *Their Embassage to Carthage,* 361. 40. *Their precipitate affection,* 379. 40. *Their magnanimity in the midst of their greatest troubles,* 380. 30. *Their miserable condition immediately after the battail of Cannæ,* 392. 50. *The hard shifts they were driven to,* 393. 40. *Their policy in upholding, in their severall Provinces, the greatnesse and reputation of such (and their families) as had first subdued them to their Empire,* 495. 10. *Their generall affection to the good of the Common-weal,* 484. 30. *Are abandoned by twelve of their own Colonies,* 451. 50. *Their imaginary Prerogative,* 485. 50. *Their custome when they took a Town by assault,* 492. 20. *Their colourable thanks to the Athenians,* 530. 40. *Their first use of Elephants in fight,* 535. 30  
*Their answer to the Embassadors of Attalus,* 138. 50  
*Their imperious answer to Antiochus his Embassadors,* 150. 50  
*Their reasons not to be sorry for Hannibals escape,* 571. 3  
*Rome nothing so tyrannous as Carthage,* 321. 50

Rowing

## The Table.

Rowing after a strange fashion. 269. 50  
 Roxane payed with her own coin, 225. 50

Rule of the husband over the wife, and of  
 parents over their children, 326. 20  
 Rimmers cast out of purpose, to give an ho-  
 nest colour to the war against Philip, 528. 10

### S

Aguntines fear of Hannibal, 359. 50  
 Saguntum recovered by the Romans, 406. 50.  
 Saguntum found out in Athens, 530. 20

Samniters and Hetrurians become Tribu-  
 tary to Rome, 250. 50  
 Sark, near Carnsey, taken by the French,  
 and again recovered, 170. 30  
 Scandal his opinion concerning Naboni-  
 dus, 7. 10

Scipio P. is sent Proconsul into Spain,  
 409. 40. He winneth Carthage, 410. 20  
 His victory against Hanno and Mago, 362. 20.  
 His wary use of his Spanish friends, 463. 2.  
 He expelleth the Carthaginians out of the  
 Continent of Spain, 494. 30. His exempla-  
 ry justice upon his mutinous Souldiers, 472. 2.  
 Is chosen Consul, ibid. 40. Is farthered  
 by the people in his African voyage, against  
 the liking of the Senate, 474. 40. He recove-  
 reth Leri, 475. 7. The politick use he made  
 of Syphax his Embassage, 476. 50. He lan-  
 deth in Africk, 477. 10. The manner of his  
 winter-Camp, 478. 20. His stratageme to  
 fire the Camps of Syphax and Asdrubal,  
 479. 40. His fight with the Carthaginians  
 in the Haven of Vtica, 482. 40. His dislike  
 taken at Malanissa his marriage with So-  
 phonisba, 484. 30. &c. His Embassage to  
 the Carthaginians, 487. 50. His courteous  
 usage of the Carthaginian Embassadors,  
 492. 30. His answer to Hannibal upon their  
 meeting in Africk, 493. 50. His triumphant  
 return through Italy to Rome, 500. 10. Is  
 enforced to abandon Rome, through the ma-  
 lice of the Tribunes, 706. 40. His death,  
 ibid.

Seleucus flyeth to Ptolemy, 212. 20. he  
 surpriseth Nicanors Camp. 220. 20. &c.  
 He overthroweth Antigonus, 227. 30. his  
 marriage with Stratonica, 238. 10. his jea-  
 lousie of Demetrius, 244. 40. his pretence  
 of quarrell against Lylimachus, 245. 20.  
 his short joy, ibid. 40  
 Sempronius recalled with his Army  
 from his determined voyage into Africk for  
 the defence of Italy, 366. 40  
 Senones, a people of the Gauls, expelled

out of their Country by the Romans, 353. 50

Sicil, Whence so named, 272. 50  
 Slaves in Nature though not in Law, 326. 50  
 Sophonisba her tragicall end, 484. 40  
 Spaniards smothered to death, 165. 20  
 Spendius, a principall Ring-leader of the  
 Carthaginian Mutiners, 318. 6. he takes  
 the field against Amilcar, 332. 50. is crucifi-  
 ed before Tunes, 333. 30.  
 Sphodrias his fond attempt upon the ha-  
 ven of Athens, 119. 20  
 Spitamenes murdered by his wife, 171. 10

Spoyle and riches of most force with the  
 common Souldier, 148. 30  
 Spoyle divided before victory gotten,  
 350. 40  
 State of great spirit, but small force, 110. 30

Stedfastnesse in taking revenge, is wrong-  
 fully held a point of honour, 330. 30  
 Stipendiaries of Tyrannis, fight more con-  
 trarily than those of free Cities or States,  
 323. 30

Stratageme of the Capnians against those of  
 Cuna, 420. 2  
 Styx, 528. 20  
 Sulpicius the Roman Consul, invadeth  
 Macedon, 530. 30. forceth Antipatria, 533. 30.  
 Is enforced to retire to Apollonia, 536. 50

Superstition of the Persians, 46. 30  
 Syphax entreats into league with the Ro-  
 mans, 465. 10. but afterwards fideth with  
 the Carthaginians against them, 476. 40. he  
 bringeth aide to Carthage, 478. 20. his retch-  
 less manner of encamping, 479. 4. Is fired  
 thence by Scipio, ibid. 50. Is driven home  
 into his own Kingdome, 481. 40. he fight-  
 eth a battell with Malanissa and Lelius,  
 wherein he is taken prisoner, 483. 50. his ex-  
 clamation against Sophonisba, 484. 20. and  
 is sent prisoner to Rome, 486. 40

Syracusians Petalisme, 227. 30. their un-  
 fortunate expedition against Ducetius, ibid.  
 30. their war with the Athenians, 278. 10  
 they lock up the Athenians Fleet in their  
 haven, 280. 40

### T

Tanistry a Custome in Ireland, 465. 50  
 Teleucius surpriseth the Athenian  
 navie, 117. 10  
 Temerity of the Roman Consuls, 303. 40  
 Terentius Varro his base carriage of him-  
 self towards the Campan Embassadors,  
 391. 30

Teuta

## The Table.

Teuta, Queen of Illyria, her insolent  
 handling the Roman Embassadors, 351. 40.  
 is enforced to beg peace of the Romans, 353. 5.

Thanks ill bestowed but in way of policy,  
 393. 20

Thebans sent Embassadors to Athens,  
 114. 10. Their Army before Sparta, 120. 30.

Thebes glad to be rid of her founder, 217. 40.

Themistocles his policy to alienate the  
 Ionians from the Persians, 54. 6. His sharp  
 answer to an unbecoming taunt, 55. 30. His  
 predominating vertue, 57. 30. His policy to  
 rid Xerxes out of Greece, ibid. 50. Is sent on  
 Embassage to Lacedæmon, 65. 10. His plane-  
 tree, 455. 20.

Theocles his discovery of Sicil, 274. 40

Theramenes enforced to drink poison,  
 90. 50

Thimbro assisteth the Ionians, against  
 the Persian, 107. 30. Is slain by Struthas,  
 116. 30

Thrasylbulus surpriseth Phila, 91. 7. and  
 taketh Piræus, ibid. 20. he taketh part with  
 the Thebans, 114. 10. recovereth Bizantium  
 from the Lacedæmonians, 115. 50. And is  
 slain at Aspendus, 116. 30

Thrasylbulus his just punishment, 227. 4  
 Tiberius his vain curiosity, 16. 20  
 Timoleon is sent to the aid of Syracuse,  
 288. 10. His stratagem to free himself from  
 the Carthaginian Gallies, ibid. 20. He sur-  
 priseth Ictes his Army, ibid. He demoli-  
 sheth the Castle of Syracuse, 289. 4. His  
 great victory over the Carthaginians, ibid.  
 10. He freeth Sicil of all her Tyrants, ibid. 20

Tissaphernes his perfidious dealing with  
 Cyrus, 92. 30. Becomes odious for his base  
 conditions, 93. 10. his treacherous Embassage  
 to the Grecian Army, 98. 40. He burneth the  
 Country about the Greeks, 100. 20. his cowar-  
 dize, 109. 50. is finally overtaken by his own  
 cunning, 111. 50

Tithraustes his wise course against the  
 Greeks, 113. 20  
 Treason obruded upon guiltless persons,  
 through the false accusation of a principal  
 conspirator, 426. 30

Treaty between Philip of Macedon and  
 T. Quintius, 542. 4. and between the Romans  
 and Antiochus, 567. 40

Trust repaid in known Traitors, well wor-  
 thy to be betrayed, 351. 10

Truth of good tidings many times not

presently enquired, through the sudden joy of  
 a vain report, 414. 20

Tyranny persecuted by its own power,  
 319. 40. properly defined, ibid. 50. It is a di-  
 strict vice from all others, 325. 20. The true  
 names thereof, 326. 5

### V

Valour of small force without advised-  
 nesse, 332. 10  
 Valour scornes to hunt after opinion,  
 470. 19

Vanity for a Prince to ingage himself in a  
 businesse of a dangerous importance upon the  
 promised assurance of a State meely popular,  
 581. 37

Varro T. his invective against Fabius,  
 377. 20. his vain boasting, 380. 1. his obli-  
 vion against his Colleagues good counsell,  
 382. 20. his manner of embattailing the Ro-  
 man Army, 385. 40. his chieftest wisdom time-  
 ly flight, 387. 40

Vermina, the Son of Syphax, overthrowen  
 by the Romans, 557. 10

Vertue unfortunate contemned, 78. 20

Vertue justly termed Heroicall, 327. 20

Victory never friendlesse, 286. 30

Victory to generous mindes is only an in-  
 ducement to moderation, 584. 30

Victory beyond hope, 559. 7

Violence of great Armies is often broken  
 upon small Towns or Forts, 505. 20

Vtica, a goodly City in Africk, 528. 30.

### W

Want of money findes many blinde  
 excuses, 394. 7.  
 Water of Styx, 518. 20

Wisdomes with the latest, 27. 20. Wise men  
 are not moved with every rumour, 375. 3  
 Wisdome often taught by necessity, 455. 30

Wretchedness of subjects, living under the  
 government of a tyrannical City, 321. 10

Wrongs that are insolent, are most grievous  
 320. 5.

### X

Xantippus made Generall of the Car-  
 thaginians, 301. 20. He vanquisheth  
 the Romans, 302. 17

Xenetas is sent with forces by Antiochus,  
 to suppress Molo, 555. 30

His politick passage over Tygris, ibid. 40

but is made fruitlesse through his own folly,  
 556. 4. &c.

Xenophon

# The Table.

Xenophon his wise answer to the Embassadors of Tissaphernes, 99.30. His providence for safety of the Army, 100.10. He conducteth the Army over the River Centrites, *ibid.* 50. He defeateth Teribazus, 101.30. His advised answer unto the Sino-pian Embassadors, 103.10. His speech to his Souldiers, 106.50. He ransacks Bithynia,

107.7

Xerxes his barbarous ingratitude, 50.20. His resolution on a wrong ground, 51.50. His distraction, beholding the Greeks resolution, 52.40. He refuseth the counsaile of Arte-

midia, and followeth worse, 56.20. His dishonourable return to Persia, 57.40. Is fortunate against the Egyptians, but not against the Greeks, 64.5. His dishonourable peace with the Greeks, 67.10. His own son executed for his death, which was contrived by another, *ibid.* 30.

Z

Zopyrus his dear love to Darius, 39.50. Zioberis, a very great River in Parthia, 162.30.



FINIS.